

$\langle Version \rangle \equiv$   
2.2.2

$\langle Date \rangle \equiv$   
July 6 2014

# WHIZARD<sup>1</sup>

Wolfgang Kilian,<sup>2</sup> Thorsten Ohl,<sup>3</sup> Jürgen Reuter<sup>4</sup>

Version 2.2.2, July 6 2014

with contributions from: Fabian Bach, Felix Braam, David Gordo  
Gomez, Sebastian Schmidt, Marco Sekulla, Christian Speckner,  
Daniel Wiesler



<sup>1</sup>The original meaning of the acronym is *W, Higgs, Z, And Respective Decays*. The current program is much more than that, however.

<sup>2</sup>e-mail: [kilian@physik.uni-siegen.de](mailto:kilian@physik.uni-siegen.de)

<sup>3</sup>e-mail: [ohl@physik.uni-wuerzburg.de](mailto:ohl@physik.uni-wuerzburg.de)

<sup>4</sup>e-mail: [juergen.reuter@desy.de](mailto:juergen.reuter@desy.de)

### **Abstract**

WHIZARD is an application of the VAMP algorithm: Adaptive multi-channel integration and event generation. The bare VAMP library is augmented by modules for Lorentz algebra, particles, phase space, etc., such that physical processes with arbitrary complex final states [well, in principle. . .] can be integrated and *unweighted* events be generated.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Changes</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Tools</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Preliminaries . . . . .	3
2.2	Parallelization . . . . .	5
2.3	File utilities . . . . .	5
2.3.1	Finding an I/O unit . . . . .	5
2.3.2	Deleting a file . . . . .	6
2.3.3	String auxiliary functions . . . . .	7
2.3.4	Formatting numbers . . . . .	9
2.3.5	Auxiliary stuff . . . . .	10
2.4	Unit tests . . . . .	11
2.4.1	Parameters . . . . .	11
2.4.2	Type for storing test results . . . . .	12
2.4.3	Wrapup . . . . .	14
2.4.4	Tool for Unit Tests . . . . .	14
2.5	Operating-system interface . . . . .	16
2.5.1	Path variables . . . . .	16
2.5.2	System dependencies . . . . .	17
2.5.3	Dynamic linking . . . . .	23
2.5.4	Predicates . . . . .	26
2.5.5	Shell access . . . . .	27
2.5.6	Querying for a directory . . . . .	27
2.5.7	Fortran compiler and linker . . . . .	28
2.5.8	Controlling OpenMP . . . . .	31
2.5.9	Unit tests . . . . .	32
2.6	CPU timing . . . . .	34
2.6.1	Timer . . . . .	39
2.6.2	Unit tests . . . . .	41
2.7	Hashtables . . . . .	45
2.7.1	The hash function . . . . .	46
2.7.2	The hash table . . . . .	46
2.7.3	Hashtable insertion . . . . .	48
2.7.4	Hashtable lookup . . . . .	50
2.8	Message and signal handling . . . . .	51
2.8.1	Logfile . . . . .	60
2.8.2	Checking values . . . . .	62
2.8.3	Suppression of numerical noise . . . . .	65

2.8.4	Signal handling . . . . .	65
2.9	C wrapper for sigaction . . . . .	68
2.10	C wrapper for printf . . . . .	70
2.11	Interface for formatted I/O . . . . .	71
2.11.1	Parsing a C format string . . . . .	72
2.11.2	API . . . . .	79
2.11.3	Test . . . . .	79
2.12	Bytes and such . . . . .	81
2.12.1	8-bit words: bytes . . . . .	81
2.12.2	32-bit words . . . . .	83
2.12.3	Operations on 32-bit words . . . . .	86
2.12.4	64-bit words . . . . .	88
2.13	MD5 Checksums . . . . .	90
2.13.1	Blocks . . . . .	91
2.13.2	Messages . . . . .	93
2.13.3	Message I/O . . . . .	95
2.13.4	Auxiliary functions . . . . .	97
2.13.5	Auxiliary stuff . . . . .	97
2.13.6	MD5 algorithm . . . . .	98
2.13.7	User interface . . . . .	100
2.13.8	Unit tests . . . . .	101
2.14	Permutations . . . . .	103
2.14.1	Permutations . . . . .	103
2.14.2	Operations on binary codes . . . . .	108
2.15	Sorting . . . . .	109
2.15.1	Implementation . . . . .	109
2.15.2	Concatenating arrays . . . . .	113
2.15.3	Unit tests . . . . .	113
<b>3</b>	<b>Text handling</b>	<b>117</b>
3.1	Internal files . . . . .	118
3.1.1	iostat codes . . . . .	118
3.1.2	The line type . . . . .	118
3.1.3	The ifile type . . . . .	119
3.1.4	I/O on ifiles . . . . .	120
3.1.5	Ifile tools . . . . .	123
3.1.6	Line pointers . . . . .	123
3.1.7	Access lines via pointers . . . . .	124
3.2	Lexer . . . . .	126
3.2.1	Input streams . . . . .	127
3.2.2	Keyword list . . . . .	130
3.2.3	Lexeme templates . . . . .	132
3.2.4	The lexer setup . . . . .	137
3.2.5	The lexeme type . . . . .	140
3.2.6	The lexer object . . . . .	143
3.2.7	The lexer routine . . . . .	144
3.2.8	Diagnostics . . . . .	147
3.2.9	Unit tests . . . . .	148
3.3	Syntax rules . . . . .	150
3.3.1	Syntax rules . . . . .	150

3.3.2	I/O . . . . .	153
3.3.3	Completing syntax rules . . . . .	155
3.3.4	Accessing rules . . . . .	157
3.3.5	Syntax tables . . . . .	159
3.3.6	Accessing the syntax table . . . . .	165
3.3.7	I/O . . . . .	166
3.4	The parser . . . . .	168
3.4.1	The token type . . . . .	168
3.4.2	Retrieve token contents . . . . .	173
3.4.3	The parse tree: nodes . . . . .	175
3.4.4	Filling nodes . . . . .	177
3.4.5	Accessing nodes . . . . .	181
3.4.6	The parse tree . . . . .	184
3.4.7	Access the parser . . . . .	191
3.4.8	Tools . . . . .	191
3.4.9	Applications . . . . .	192
3.4.10	Unit tests . . . . .	193
3.5	XML Parser . . . . .	196
3.5.1	Cached Stream . . . . .	196
3.5.2	Attributes . . . . .	198
3.5.3	The Tag Type . . . . .	200
3.5.4	Unit tests . . . . .	207
3.5.5	Auxiliary Routines . . . . .	207
3.5.6	Basic Tag I/O . . . . .	207
3.5.7	Optional Tag . . . . .	210
3.5.8	Optional Tag . . . . .	212
3.5.9	Basic Tag I/O . . . . .	214
<b>4</b>	<b>Physics library</b>	<b>216</b>
4.1	C-compatible Particle Type . . . . .	217
4.2	Lorentz algebra . . . . .	219
4.2.1	Three-vectors . . . . .	219
4.2.2	Four-vectors . . . . .	225
4.2.3	Conversions . . . . .	230
4.2.4	Angles . . . . .	233
4.2.5	More kinematical functions (some redundant) . . . . .	238
4.2.6	Lorentz transformations . . . . .	243
4.2.7	Functions of Lorentz transformations . . . . .	244
4.2.8	Invariants . . . . .	244
4.2.9	Boosts . . . . .	245
4.2.10	Rotations . . . . .	247
4.2.11	Composite Lorentz transformations . . . . .	249
4.2.12	Applying Lorentz transformations . . . . .	250
4.2.13	Special Lorentz transformations . . . . .	250
4.2.14	Special functions . . . . .	252
4.3	Special Physics functions . . . . .	255
4.3.1	Running $\alpha_s$ . . . . .	255
4.3.2	Catani-Seymour Parameters . . . . .	258
4.3.3	Mathematical Functions . . . . .	259
4.3.4	Loop Integrals . . . . .	260

4.3.5	More on $\alpha_s$ . . . . .	262
4.3.6	Functions for Catani-Seymour dipoles . . . . .	263
4.3.7	Distributions for integrated dipoles and such . . . . .	265
4.4	QCD Coupling . . . . .	273
4.4.1	Coupling: Abstract Data Type . . . . .	274
4.4.2	Fixed Coupling . . . . .	275
4.4.3	Running Coupling . . . . .	276
4.4.4	Running Coupling, determined by $\Lambda_{\text{QCD}}$ . . . . .	277
4.4.5	Wrapper type . . . . .	277
4.4.6	Unit tests . . . . .	279
<b>5</b>	<b>Physics Analysis</b>	<b>282</b>
5.1	Analysis tools . . . . .	283
5.1.1	Output formats . . . . .	284
5.1.2	Graph options . . . . .	284
5.1.3	Drawing options . . . . .	289
5.1.4	Observables . . . . .	293
5.1.5	Output . . . . .	297
5.1.6	Histograms . . . . .	299
5.1.7	Plots . . . . .	309
5.1.8	Graphs . . . . .	315
5.1.9	Analysis objects . . . . .	321
5.1.10	Analysis object iterator . . . . .	327
5.1.11	Analysis store . . . . .	330
5.1.12	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X driver file . . . . .	333
5.1.13	API . . . . .	334
5.1.14	Unit tests . . . . .	342
5.2	Fastjet interface . . . . .	345
5.2.1	Re-exported symbols . . . . .	345
5.2.2	Unit tests . . . . .	346
5.3	PDG arrays . . . . .	348
5.3.1	Type definition . . . . .	348
5.3.2	Parameters . . . . .	349
5.3.3	Basic operations . . . . .	349
5.3.4	Matching . . . . .	351
5.3.5	Sorting . . . . .	355
5.3.6	PDG array list . . . . .	356
5.3.7	Unit tests . . . . .	363
5.4	subevents . . . . .	370
5.4.1	Particles . . . . .	370
5.4.2	C-compatible particle type . . . . .	378
5.4.3	subevents . . . . .	378
5.4.4	Eliminate numerical noise . . . . .	392
5.5	User Code Interface . . . . .	392
5.5.1	User Code Management . . . . .	393
5.5.2	Interfaces for user-defined functions . . . . .	396
5.5.3	Interfaces for user-defined interactions . . . . .	398
5.6	Variables . . . . .	400
5.6.1	Variable list entries . . . . .	401
5.6.2	Setting values . . . . .	416

5.6.3	Copies and pointer variables . . . . .	419
5.6.4	Variable lists . . . . .	421
5.6.5	Tools . . . . .	430
5.6.6	Process-specific variables . . . . .	437
5.6.7	Observable initialization . . . . .	439
5.6.8	Observables . . . . .	442
5.6.9	API for variable lists . . . . .	447
5.6.10	Linking model variables . . . . .	452
5.7	Expressions . . . . .	458
5.7.1	Tree nodes . . . . .	459
5.7.2	Operation types . . . . .	476
5.7.3	Specific operators . . . . .	481
5.7.4	Compiling the parse tree . . . . .	509
5.7.5	Auxiliary functions for the compiler . . . . .	568
5.7.6	Evaluation . . . . .	569
5.7.7	Evaluation syntax . . . . .	576
5.7.8	Set up appropriate parse trees . . . . .	585
5.7.9	The evaluation tree . . . . .	587
5.7.10	Direct evaluation . . . . .	596
5.7.11	Unit tests . . . . .	600
<b>6</b>	<b>Physics Models</b>	<b>605</b>
6.1	Model module . . . . .	605
6.1.1	Physics Parameters . . . . .	606
6.1.2	Particle codes . . . . .	609
6.1.3	Spin codes . . . . .	610
6.1.4	Particle data . . . . .	610
6.1.5	Vertex data . . . . .	624
6.1.6	Vertex lookup table . . . . .	627
6.1.7	Model data . . . . .	631
6.1.8	Reading models from file . . . . .	649
6.1.9	Model list . . . . .	658
6.1.10	Model instances . . . . .	661
6.1.11	Unit tests . . . . .	663
6.2	Automatic generation of process components . . . . .	668
6.2.1	Constraints: Abstract types . . . . .	669
6.2.2	Specific constraints . . . . .	671
6.2.3	Tables of states . . . . .	676
6.2.4	Top-level methods . . . . .	681
6.2.5	Splitting algorithm . . . . .	682
6.2.6	Tools . . . . .	686
6.2.7	Access results . . . . .	686
6.2.8	Unit tests . . . . .	687
<b>7</b>	<b>Quantum Numbers</b>	<b>696</b>
7.1	Helicities . . . . .	697
7.1.1	Helicity types . . . . .	697
7.1.2	Predicates . . . . .	700
7.1.3	Accessing contents . . . . .	701
7.1.4	Comparisons . . . . .	701



7.1.5	Tools . . . . .	703
7.2	Colors . . . . .	704
7.2.1	The color type . . . . .	704
7.2.2	Predicates . . . . .	709
7.2.3	Accessing contents . . . . .	711
7.2.4	Comparisons . . . . .	712
7.2.5	Tools . . . . .	713
7.2.6	Unit tests . . . . .	722
7.2.7	The Madgraph color model . . . . .	724
7.3	Flavors: Particle properties . . . . .	728
7.3.1	The flavor type . . . . .	728
7.4	Quantum numbers . . . . .	744
7.4.1	The quantum number type . . . . .	744
7.4.2	I/O . . . . .	747
7.4.3	Accessing contents . . . . .	749
7.4.4	Predicates . . . . .	751
7.4.5	Comparisons . . . . .	752
7.4.6	Operations . . . . .	755
7.4.7	The quantum number mask . . . . .	757
7.4.8	Setting mask components . . . . .	759
7.4.9	Mask predicates . . . . .	761
7.4.10	Operators . . . . .	761
7.4.11	Mask comparisons . . . . .	761
7.4.12	Apply a mask . . . . .	762
7.5	State matrices . . . . .	765
7.5.1	Nodes of the quantum state trie . . . . .	765
7.5.2	State matrix . . . . .	770
7.5.3	State iterators . . . . .	780
7.5.4	Operations on quantum states . . . . .	786
7.5.5	Factorization . . . . .	793
7.5.6	Unit tests . . . . .	796
7.6	Interactions . . . . .	801
7.6.1	External interaction links . . . . .	802
7.6.2	Internal relations . . . . .	804
7.6.3	The interaction type . . . . .	805
7.6.4	Methods inherited from the state matrix member . . . . .	811
7.6.5	Accessing contents . . . . .	817
7.6.6	Modifying contents . . . . .	824
7.6.7	Handling Linked interactions . . . . .	826
7.6.8	Recovering connections . . . . .	832
7.6.9	Unit tests . . . . .	834
7.7	Matrix element evaluation . . . . .	836
7.7.1	Array of pairings . . . . .	837
7.7.2	The evaluator type . . . . .	837
7.7.3	Auxiliary structures for evaluator creation . . . . .	840
7.7.4	Creating an evaluator: Matrix multiplication . . . . .	848
7.7.5	Creating an evaluator: square . . . . .	859
7.7.6	Accessing contents . . . . .	874
7.7.7	Inherited procedures . . . . .	875
7.7.8	Deleting the evaluator . . . . .	879

7.7.9	Creating an evaluator: identity . . . . .	880
7.7.10	Creating an evaluator: quantum number sum . . . . .	881
7.7.11	Evaluation . . . . .	883
7.7.12	Unit tests . . . . .	884
<b>8</b>	<b>Particles</b>	<b>892</b>
8.1	Polarization . . . . .	892
8.1.1	The polarization type . . . . .	893
8.1.2	Basic initializer and finalizer . . . . .	894
8.1.3	I/O . . . . .	894
8.1.4	Accessing contents . . . . .	895
8.1.5	Initialization from state matrix . . . . .	896
8.1.6	Specific initializers . . . . .	897
8.1.7	Operations . . . . .	904
8.1.8	Sparse Matrix . . . . .	906
8.1.9	Polarization Matrix . . . . .	907
8.1.10	Data Translation . . . . .	911
8.1.11	Unit tests . . . . .	913
8.2	Particles . . . . .	921
8.2.1	The particle type . . . . .	922
8.2.2	Particle sets . . . . .	932
8.2.3	I/O formats . . . . .	937
8.2.4	Expression interface . . . . .	952
8.2.5	Unit tests . . . . .	954
<b>9</b>	<b>Initial State</b>	<b>960</b>
9.1	Beam structure . . . . .	960
9.1.1	Beam structure elements . . . . .	961
9.1.2	Beam structure type . . . . .	961
9.1.3	Polarization . . . . .	966
9.1.4	Beam momenta . . . . .	967
9.1.5	Get contents . . . . .	968
9.1.6	Unit Tests . . . . .	972
9.2	Beams for collisions and decays . . . . .	978
9.2.1	Beam data . . . . .	979
9.2.2	Initializers: beam structure . . . . .	983
9.2.3	Initializers: collisions . . . . .	984
9.2.4	Initializers: decays . . . . .	987
9.2.5	Sanity check . . . . .	987
9.2.6	The beams type . . . . .	988
9.2.7	Inherited procedures . . . . .	990
9.2.8	Accessing contents . . . . .	990
9.2.9	Unit tests . . . . .	991
<b>10</b>	<b>Spectra and structure functions</b>	<b>997</b>
10.1	Tools . . . . .	997
10.1.1	Momentum splitting . . . . .	998
10.1.2	Constant data . . . . .	1000
10.1.3	Sampling recoil . . . . .	1001
10.1.4	Splitting . . . . .	1003

10.1.5	Recovering the splitting . . . . .	1005
10.1.6	Extract data . . . . .	1006
10.1.7	Unit tests . . . . .	1006
10.2	Mappings for structure functions . . . . .	1024
10.2.1	Base type . . . . .	1024
10.2.2	Methods for self-tests . . . . .	1026
10.2.3	Implementation: standard mapping . . . . .	1028
10.2.4	Implementation: resonance pair mapping . . . . .	1030
10.2.5	Implementation: on-shell mapping . . . . .	1032
10.2.6	Implementation: endpoint mapping . . . . .	1034
10.2.7	Implementation: endpoint mapping with resonance . . . . .	1036
10.2.8	Implementation: endpoint mapping for on-shell particle . . . . .	1038
10.2.9	Implementation: ISR endpoint mapping . . . . .	1040
10.2.10	Implementation: ISR endpoint mapping, resonant . . . . .	1042
10.2.11	Implementation: ISR on-shell mapping . . . . .	1045
10.2.12	Implementation: Endpoint + ISR power mapping . . . . .	1047
10.2.13	Implementation: Endpoint + ISR + resonance . . . . .	1049
10.2.14	Implementation: Endpoint + ISR power mapping, on-shell . . . . .	1051
10.2.15	Basic formulas . . . . .	1054
10.2.16	Unit tests . . . . .	1071
10.3	Structure function base . . . . .	1090
10.3.1	Abstract structure-function data type . . . . .	1091
10.3.2	Structure-function chain configuration . . . . .	1093
10.3.3	Structure-function instance . . . . .	1094
10.3.4	Accessing the structure function . . . . .	1106
10.3.5	Direct calculations . . . . .	1108
10.3.6	Structure-function instance . . . . .	1109
10.3.7	Structure-function chain . . . . .	1109
10.3.8	Chain instances . . . . .	1115
10.3.9	Access to the chain instance . . . . .	1128
10.3.10	Unit tests . . . . .	1130
10.3.11	Test implementation: structure function . . . . .	1131
10.3.12	Test implementation: pair spectrum . . . . .	1136
10.3.13	Test implementation: generator spectrum . . . . .	1141
10.4	Photon radiation: ISR . . . . .	1187
10.4.1	Physics . . . . .	1188
10.4.2	Implementation . . . . .	1190
10.4.3	The ISR data block . . . . .	1190
10.4.4	The ISR object . . . . .	1195
10.4.5	Kinematics . . . . .	1196
10.4.6	ISR application . . . . .	1199
10.4.7	Unit tests . . . . .	1200
10.5	EPA . . . . .	1214
10.5.1	Physics . . . . .	1214
10.5.2	The EPA data block . . . . .	1215
10.5.3	The EPA object . . . . .	1219
10.5.4	Kinematics . . . . .	1222
10.5.5	EPA application . . . . .	1224
10.5.6	Unit tests . . . . .	1225
10.6	EWA . . . . .	1236

10.6.1	Physics	1236
10.6.2	The EWA data block	1238
10.6.3	The EWA object	1243
10.6.4	Kinematics	1247
10.6.5	EWA application	1250
10.6.6	Unit tests	1251
10.7	Lepton collider beamstrahlung: CIRCE1	1263
10.7.1	Physics	1263
10.7.2	The CIRCE1 data block	1264
10.7.3	Random Number Generator for CIRCE	1268
10.7.4	The CIRCE1 object	1268
10.7.5	Kinematics	1271
10.7.6	CIRCE1 application	1273
10.7.7	Unit tests	1274
10.8	Lepton Collider Beamstrahlung and Photon collider: CIRCE2	1282
10.8.1	Physics	1282
10.8.2	The CIRCE2 data block	1283
10.8.3	Random Number Generator for CIRCE	1287
10.8.4	The CIRCE2 object	1287
10.8.5	Kinematics	1289
10.8.6	CIRCE2 application	1291
10.8.7	Unit tests	1292
10.9	Energy-scan spectrum	1298
10.9.1	Data type	1299
10.9.2	The Energy-scan object	1301
10.9.3	Kinematics	1303
10.9.4	Energy scan application	1304
10.9.5	Unit tests	1305
10.10	Using beam event data	1308
10.10.1	Data type	1309
10.10.2	The beam events object	1312
10.10.3	Kinematics	1314
10.10.4	Beam events application	1316
10.10.5	Unit tests	1316
10.11	LHAPDF	1321
10.11.1	The module	1321
10.11.2	LHAPDF library interface	1322
10.11.3	The LHAPDF status	1324
10.11.4	LHAPDF initialization	1324
10.11.5	Kinematics	1326
10.11.6	The LHAPDF data block	1328
10.11.7	The LHAPDF object	1332
10.11.8	Structure function	1335
10.11.9	Strong Coupling	1336
10.11.10	Unit tests	1338
10.12	Builtin PDF sets	1343
10.12.1	The module	1343
10.12.2	The PDF builtin data block	1344
10.12.3	The PDF object	1347
10.12.4	Kinematics	1350

10.12.5	Structure function . . . . .	1351
10.12.6	Strong Coupling . . . . .	1352
10.12.7	Unit tests . . . . .	1353
10.13	User Plugin for Structure Functions . . . . .	1358
10.13.1	The module . . . . .	1358
10.13.2	The user structure function data block . . . . .	1359
10.13.3	The interaction . . . . .	1362
10.13.4	The user structure function . . . . .	1364
10.13.5	Kinematics . . . . .	1365
10.14	HOPPET interface . . . . .	1368
<b>11</b>	<b>Phase space and hard matrix elements</b>	<b>1369</b>
11.1	Process data block . . . . .	1370
11.2	Abstract phase-space module . . . . .	1371
11.2.1	Phase-space channels . . . . .	1371
11.2.2	Property collection . . . . .	1376
11.2.3	Kinematics configuration . . . . .	1379
11.2.4	Extract data . . . . .	1384
11.2.5	Phase-space point instance . . . . .	1385
11.2.6	Auxiliary stuff . . . . .	1393
11.2.7	Unit tests . . . . .	1393
11.3	Single-particle phase space . . . . .	1408
11.3.1	Configuration . . . . .	1408
11.3.2	Kinematics implementation . . . . .	1410
11.3.3	Unit tests . . . . .	1414
11.4	Mappings . . . . .	1422
11.4.1	Default parameters . . . . .	1422
11.4.2	The Mapping type . . . . .	1424
11.4.3	Screen output . . . . .	1424
11.4.4	Define a mapping . . . . .	1425
11.4.5	Retrieve contents . . . . .	1427
11.4.6	Compare mappings . . . . .	1428
11.4.7	Mappings of the invariant mass . . . . .	1429
11.4.8	Step mapping . . . . .	1435
11.4.9	Mappings of the polar angle . . . . .	1437
11.5	Phase-space trees . . . . .	1441
11.5.1	Particles . . . . .	1442
11.5.2	The phase-space tree type . . . . .	1444
11.5.3	PHS tree setup . . . . .	1448
11.5.4	Phase-space evaluation . . . . .	1459
11.6	The phase-space forest . . . . .	1469
11.6.1	Phase-space setup parameters . . . . .	1470
11.6.2	Equivalences . . . . .	1471
11.6.3	Groves . . . . .	1474
11.6.4	The forest type . . . . .	1476
11.6.5	Screen output . . . . .	1478
11.6.6	Accessing contents . . . . .	1481
11.6.7	Read the phase space setup from file . . . . .	1483
11.6.8	Preparation . . . . .	1489
11.6.9	Accessing the particle arrays . . . . .	1491

11.6.10	Find equivalences among phase-space trees . . . . .	1493
11.6.11	Interface for channel equivalences . . . . .	1494
11.6.12	Phase-space evaluation . . . . .	1496
11.6.13	Unit tests . . . . .	1498
11.7	Finding phase space parameterizations . . . . .	1501
11.7.1	The mapping modes . . . . .	1502
11.7.2	The cascade type . . . . .	1503
11.7.3	Creating new cascades . . . . .	1510
11.7.4	Tools . . . . .	1511
11.7.5	Hash entries for cascades . . . . .	1511
11.7.6	The cascade set . . . . .	1514
11.7.7	Adding cascades . . . . .	1523
11.7.8	External particles . . . . .	1526
11.7.9	Cascade combination I: flavor assignment . . . . .	1528
11.7.10	Cascade combination II: kinematics setup and check . . .	1529
11.7.11	Cascade combination III: node connections and tree fusion	1535
11.7.12	Cascade set generation . . . . .	1538
11.7.13	Groves . . . . .	1541
11.7.14	Generate the phase space file . . . . .	1542
11.7.15	Unit tests . . . . .	1544
11.8	WOOD phase space . . . . .	1546
11.8.1	Configuration . . . . .	1547
11.8.2	Phase-space generation . . . . .	1549
11.8.3	Phase-space configuration . . . . .	1552
11.8.4	Kinematics implementation . . . . .	1558
11.8.5	Evaluation . . . . .	1559
11.8.6	Unit tests . . . . .	1560
<b>12</b>	<b>Random Number Generation</b>	<b>1578</b>
12.1	Generic Random-Number Generator . . . . .	1578
12.1.1	Generator type . . . . .	1579
12.1.2	RNG Factory . . . . .	1580
12.1.3	Unit tests . . . . .	1581
12.2	TAO Random-Number Generator . . . . .	1586
12.2.1	Generator type . . . . .	1586
12.2.2	Unit tests . . . . .	1589
12.3	Select from a weighted sample . . . . .	1592
12.3.1	Selector type . . . . .	1592
12.3.2	Unit tests . . . . .	1595
<b>13</b>	<b>Multi-Channel Integration</b>	<b>1597</b>
13.1	Generic Integrator . . . . .	1597
13.1.1	MCI: integrator . . . . .	1598
13.1.2	MCI instance . . . . .	1607
13.1.3	MCI state . . . . .	1611
13.1.4	MCI sampler . . . . .	1613
13.1.5	Results record . . . . .	1615
13.1.6	Unit tests . . . . .	1616
13.2	Simple midpoint integration . . . . .	1639
13.2.1	Integrator . . . . .	1639

13.2.2	Integrator instance . . . . .	1646
13.2.3	Unit tests . . . . .	1650
13.3	VAMP interface . . . . .	1665
13.3.1	Grid parameters . . . . .	1666
13.3.2	History parameters . . . . .	1667
13.3.3	Integration pass . . . . .	1668
13.3.4	Integrator . . . . .	1674
13.3.5	Sampler as Workspace . . . . .	1694
13.3.6	Integrator instance . . . . .	1695
13.3.7	Sampling function . . . . .	1705
13.3.8	Integrator instance: evaluation . . . . .	1706
13.3.9	VAMP exceptions . . . . .	1707
13.3.10	Unit tests . . . . .	1708
<b>14</b>	<b>Process Libraries</b>	<b>1746</b>
14.1	Process library interface . . . . .	1747
14.1.1	Overview . . . . .	1747
14.1.2	Workflow . . . . .	1747
14.1.3	The module . . . . .	1748
14.1.4	Writers . . . . .	1749
14.1.5	Process records in the library driver . . . . .	1753
14.1.6	The process library driver object . . . . .	1755
14.1.7	Write makefile . . . . .	1760
14.1.8	Write driver file . . . . .	1762
14.1.9	Interface bodies for informational functions . . . . .	1765
14.1.10	Interfaces for C-library matrix element . . . . .	1780
14.1.11	Retrieving the tables . . . . .	1782
14.1.12	Returning a procedure pointer . . . . .	1784
14.1.13	Hooks . . . . .	1785
14.1.14	Make source, compile, link . . . . .	1786
14.1.15	Clean up generated files . . . . .	1787
14.1.16	Further Tools . . . . .	1789
14.1.17	Load the library . . . . .	1789
14.1.18	MD5 sums . . . . .	1792
14.1.19	Test . . . . .	1794
14.2	Abstract process core configuration . . . . .	1821
14.2.1	Process core definition type . . . . .	1822
14.2.2	Process core template . . . . .	1824
14.2.3	Process driver . . . . .	1825
14.2.4	Process driver for intrinsic process . . . . .	1826
14.3	Particle Specifiers . . . . .	1826
14.3.1	Base type . . . . .	1827
14.3.2	Wrapper type . . . . .	1828
14.3.3	The atomic type . . . . .	1830
14.3.4	List . . . . .	1835
14.3.5	Sum . . . . .	1838
14.3.6	Expression Expansion . . . . .	1840
14.3.7	Test . . . . .	1840
14.4	Process library access . . . . .	1845
14.4.1	Auxiliary stuff . . . . .	1847

14.4.2	Process definition objects . . . . .	1847
14.4.3	Process library . . . . .	1867
14.4.4	Use the library . . . . .	1882
14.4.5	Collect model-specific libraries . . . . .	1884
14.4.6	Test . . . . .	1885
14.5	Process Library Stacks . . . . .	1907
14.5.1	The stack entry type . . . . .	1908
14.5.2	The prclib stack type . . . . .	1908
14.5.3	Operating on Stacks . . . . .	1909
14.5.4	Accessing Contents . . . . .	1909
14.5.5	Unit tests . . . . .	1910
14.6	Trivial matrix element for tests . . . . .	1912
14.6.1	Process definition . . . . .	1913
14.6.2	Driver . . . . .	1915
14.6.3	Shortcut . . . . .	1917
14.6.4	Test . . . . .	1918
<b>15</b>	<b>Integration and Process Objects</b>	<b>1926</b>
15.1	Integration results . . . . .	1926
15.1.1	Integration results entry . . . . .	1927
15.1.2	Combined integration results . . . . .	1934
15.1.3	Access results . . . . .	1943
15.1.4	Results display . . . . .	1947
15.2	Abstract process core . . . . .	1952
15.2.1	The process core . . . . .	1953
15.2.2	Storage for intermediate results . . . . .	1958
15.2.3	Helicity selection data . . . . .	1959
15.3	Process observables . . . . .	1960
15.3.1	Abstract base type . . . . .	1961
15.3.2	Initialization . . . . .	1962
15.3.3	Evaluation . . . . .	1963
15.3.4	Implementation for partonic events . . . . .	1964
15.3.5	Implementation for full events . . . . .	1969
15.3.6	Test . . . . .	1975
15.4	Parton states . . . . .	1981
15.4.1	Abstract base type . . . . .	1982
15.4.2	Common Initialization . . . . .	1985
15.4.3	Evaluator initialization: isolated state . . . . .	1986
15.4.4	Evaluator initialization: connected state . . . . .	1988
15.4.5	Cuts and expressions . . . . .	1990
15.4.6	Evaluation . . . . .	1992
15.4.7	Accessing the state . . . . .	1994
15.5	Complete Elementary Processes . . . . .	1995
15.5.1	The Process Object . . . . .	1998
15.5.2	Metadata . . . . .	2021
15.5.3	Generic Configuration Data . . . . .	2025
15.5.4	Beam configuration . . . . .	2029
15.5.5	Multi-channel integration . . . . .	2037
15.5.6	Process Components . . . . .	2045
15.5.7	Process terms . . . . .	2048



15.5.8	Default Iterations . . . . .	2052
15.5.9	Constant process data . . . . .	2055
15.5.10	Compute an amplitude . . . . .	2060
15.5.11	Process instances . . . . .	2062
15.5.12	Accessing the process instance . . . . .	2102
15.5.13	Particle sets . . . . .	2106
15.5.14	Unit tests . . . . .	2107
15.6	Process Stacks . . . . .	2150
15.6.1	The process entry type . . . . .	2151
15.6.2	The process stack type . . . . .	2151
15.6.3	Push . . . . .	2153
15.6.4	Data Access . . . . .	2154
15.6.5	Unit tests . . . . .	2155
<b>16</b>	<b>Parton shower and interface to hadronization</b>	<b>2159</b>
16.1	Basics of the shower . . . . .	2160
16.1.1	PDF Interface of the shower . . . . .	2160
16.1.2	Parameters . . . . .	2161
16.2	Parton module for the shower . . . . .	2168
16.2.1	The basic type definitions . . . . .	2169
16.2.2	Routines . . . . .	2169
16.2.3	The analytic FSR . . . . .	2186
16.3	Main shower module . . . . .	2191
16.4	Talking to PYTHIA . . . . .	2264
16.5	Matching . . . . .	2280
16.5.1	MLM matching . . . . .	2280
16.5.2	CKKW matching . . . . .	2317
<b>17</b>	<b>Events</b>	<b>2333</b>
17.1	Abstract Event Transforms . . . . .	2333
17.1.1	Abstract base type . . . . .	2334
17.1.2	Implementation: Trivial transform . . . . .	2339
17.1.3	Unit tests . . . . .	2340
17.2	Decays . . . . .	2343
17.2.1	Final-State Particle Configuration . . . . .	2344
17.2.2	Final-State Particle . . . . .	2345
17.2.3	Decay Term Configuration . . . . .	2346
17.2.4	Decay Term . . . . .	2348
17.2.5	Decay Root Configuration . . . . .	2351
17.2.6	Decay Root Instance . . . . .	2355
17.2.7	Decay Configuration . . . . .	2359
17.2.8	Decay Instance . . . . .	2360
17.2.9	Stable Particles . . . . .	2363
17.2.10	Unstable Particles . . . . .	2365
17.2.11	Decay Chain . . . . .	2370
17.2.12	Decay as Event Transform . . . . .	2375
17.2.13	Unit tests . . . . .	2378
17.3	Shower . . . . .	2391
17.3.1	PDF Parameters . . . . .	2392
17.3.2	Configuration Parameters . . . . .	2392

17.3.3	Shower Application Interface . . . . .	2396
17.3.4	Event Transform . . . . .	2422
17.3.5	Unit Tests . . . . .	2427
17.4	Complete Events . . . . .	2432
17.4.1	Event configuration . . . . .	2433
17.4.2	Event normalization . . . . .	2435
17.4.3	The event type . . . . .	2437
17.4.4	Initialization . . . . .	2440
17.4.5	Evaluation . . . . .	2443
17.4.6	Reset to empty state . . . . .	2445
17.4.7	Squared Matrix Element and Weight . . . . .	2446
17.4.8	Generation . . . . .	2449
17.4.9	Recovering an event . . . . .	2450
17.4.10	Access content . . . . .	2452
17.4.11	Unit tests . . . . .	2455
<b>18</b>	<b>Matrix Element Implementations</b>	<b>2467</b>
18.1	Template matrix elements . . . . .	2467
18.1.1	Process definition . . . . .	2468
18.1.2	The Template Matrix element writer . . . . .	2471
18.1.3	Driver . . . . .	2483
18.1.4	High-level process definition . . . . .	2484
18.1.5	The <code>prc_template_me_t</code> wrapper . . . . .	2484
18.1.6	Test . . . . .	2490
18.2	0'MEGA Interface . . . . .	2497
18.2.1	Process definition . . . . .	2498
18.2.2	The 0'MEGA writer . . . . .	2501
18.2.3	Driver . . . . .	2510
18.2.4	High-level process definition . . . . .	2510
18.2.5	The <code>prc_omega_t</code> wrapper . . . . .	2511
18.2.6	Test . . . . .	2518
<b>19</b>	<b>Event I/O</b>	<b>2538</b>
19.1	Event Sample Data . . . . .	2538
19.1.1	Event Sample Data . . . . .	2538
19.1.2	Unit tests . . . . .	2541
19.2	Abstract I/O Handler . . . . .	2544
19.2.1	Process pointer . . . . .	2545
19.2.2	Type . . . . .	2546
19.2.3	Unit tests . . . . .	2549
19.3	Raw Event I/O . . . . .	2555
19.3.1	Type . . . . .	2555
19.3.2	Unit tests . . . . .	2561
19.4	Event Generation Checkpoints . . . . .	2567
19.4.1	Type . . . . .	2568
19.4.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2568
19.4.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2568
19.4.4	Message header . . . . .	2572
19.4.5	Unit tests . . . . .	2572
19.5	HEP Common Blocks . . . . .	2574

19.5.1	Event characteristics . . . . .	2575
19.5.2	Particle characteristics . . . . .	2576
19.5.3	The HEPUP common block . . . . .	2576
19.5.4	Run parameter output (verbose) . . . . .	2580
19.5.5	Run parameter output (other formats) . . . . .	2581
19.5.6	The HEPEUP common block . . . . .	2582
19.5.7	The HEPEVT common block . . . . .	2586
19.5.8	Event output . . . . .	2589
19.5.9	Event output in various formats . . . . .	2591
19.5.10	Event input in various formats . . . . .	2594
19.5.11	Data Transfer: particle sets . . . . .	2594
19.6	HEP Common and Events . . . . .	2597
19.6.1	Data Transfer: events . . . . .	2598
19.7	LHEF Input/Output . . . . .	2600
19.7.1	Type . . . . .	2600
19.7.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2601
19.7.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2602
19.7.4	Les Houches Event File: header/footer . . . . .	2612
19.7.5	Version-Specific Code: 1.0 . . . . .	2613
19.7.6	Version-Specific Code: 2.0 . . . . .	2614
19.7.7	Version-Specific Code: 3.0 . . . . .	2617
19.7.8	Auxiliary . . . . .	2621
19.7.9	Unit tests . . . . .	2622
19.8	HepMC events . . . . .	2637
19.8.1	Interface check . . . . .	2638
19.8.2	FourVector . . . . .	2639
19.8.3	Polarization . . . . .	2641
19.8.4	GenParticle . . . . .	2644
19.8.5	GenVertex . . . . .	2651
19.8.6	Vertex-particle-in iterator . . . . .	2654
19.8.7	Vertex-particle-out iterator . . . . .	2656
19.8.8	GenEvent . . . . .	2659
19.8.9	Event-particle iterator . . . . .	2667
19.8.10	I/O streams . . . . .	2669
19.8.11	Unit tests . . . . .	2671
19.9	HepMC Output . . . . .	2674
19.9.1	Type . . . . .	2675
19.9.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2675
19.9.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2676
19.9.4	Unit tests . . . . .	2679
19.10	ASCII File Formats . . . . .	2682
19.10.1	Type . . . . .	2682
19.10.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2684
19.10.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2685
19.10.4	Unit tests . . . . .	2691
19.11	STDHEP File Formats . . . . .	2712
19.11.1	Type . . . . .	2713
19.11.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2714
19.11.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2714
19.11.4	Variables . . . . .	2719

19.11.5	Unit tests . . . . .	2719
19.12	Event Weight Output . . . . .	2724
19.12.1	Type . . . . .	2725
19.12.2	Specific Methods . . . . .	2725
19.12.3	Common Methods . . . . .	2725
19.12.4	Unit tests . . . . .	2728
<b>20</b>	<b>The SUSY Les Houches Accord</b>	<b>2733</b>
20.0.5	Preprocessor . . . . .	2734
20.0.6	Lexer and syntax . . . . .	2735
20.0.7	Interpreter . . . . .	2737
20.0.8	Auxiliary function . . . . .	2743
20.0.9	Parser . . . . .	2755
20.0.10	API . . . . .	2756
20.0.11	Unit tests . . . . .	2757
<b>21</b>	<b>NLO infrastructure</b>	<b>2760</b>
21.1	BLHA interface . . . . .	2760
21.1.1	Configuration . . . . .	2762
21.1.2	OLP matrix element interface . . . . .	2781
21.1.3	OLP driver . . . . .	2784
<b>22</b>	<b>Integration and simulation</b>	<b>2785</b>
22.1	Iterations . . . . .	2785
22.1.1	The iterations list . . . . .	2786
22.1.2	Tools . . . . .	2788
22.1.3	Test . . . . .	2789
22.2	User-controlled File I/O . . . . .	2791
22.2.1	The file type . . . . .	2792
22.2.2	The file list . . . . .	2794
22.3	Runtime data . . . . .	2798
22.3.1	Container for parse nodes . . . . .	2798
22.3.2	Container for particle data . . . . .	2801
22.3.3	The data type . . . . .	2804
22.3.4	Output . . . . .	2805
22.3.5	Clear . . . . .	2808
22.3.6	Initialization . . . . .	2808
22.3.7	Local copies . . . . .	2823
22.3.8	Finalization . . . . .	2827
22.3.9	Filling Contents . . . . .	2827
22.3.10	Get contents . . . . .	2830
22.3.11	Test . . . . .	2833
22.4	Select implementations . . . . .	2846
22.4.1	Process Core Definition . . . . .	2848
22.4.2	Process core allocation . . . . .	2849
22.4.3	Process core update and restoration . . . . .	2850
22.4.4	Integrator allocation . . . . .	2850
22.4.5	Phase-space allocation . . . . .	2852
22.4.6	Random-number generator . . . . .	2853
22.4.7	Structure function configuration data . . . . .	2854

22.4.8	Event I/O stream	2868
22.4.9	QCD coupling	2872
22.4.10	Parton Shower	2874
22.4.11	Event Transform	2874
22.4.12	SLHA Interface	2875
22.4.13	Test	2876
22.5	Process Configuration	2897
22.5.1	Data Type	2897
22.5.2	Test	2899
22.6	Compilation	2904
22.6.1	The data type	2905
22.6.2	API for library compilation and loading	2907
22.6.3	Compiling static executable	2907
22.6.4	API for executable compilation	2912
22.6.5	Test	2913
22.6.6	Test static build	2916
22.7	Integration	2919
22.7.1	The integration type	2920
22.7.2	Initialization	2921
22.7.3	Integration	2925
22.7.4	API for integration objects	2927
22.7.5	Test	2931
22.8	Event Streams	2947
22.8.1	Event Stream Array	2947
22.8.2	Unit Tests	2952
22.9	Simulation	2958
22.9.1	Event counting	2960
22.9.2	Simulation: component sets	2962
22.9.3	Process-core Safe	2963
22.9.4	Process Object	2963
22.9.5	Simulation entry	2964
22.9.6	Entries for alternative environment	2969
22.9.7	The simulation type	2972
22.9.8	Event Stream I/O	2986
22.9.9	Event Stream Array	2987
22.9.10	Recover event	2989
22.9.11	Extract contents	2989
22.9.12	Auxiliary	2992
22.9.13	Test	2992
<b>23</b>	<b>Top level API</b>	<b>3022</b>
23.1	Commands	3022
23.1.1	The command type	3023
23.1.2	Options	3027
23.1.3	Specific command types	3028
23.2	User-controlled output to data files	3092
23.2.1	Print custom-formatted values	3094
23.2.2	The command list	3141
23.2.3	Compiling the parse tree	3142
23.2.4	Executing the command list	3143

23.2.5	Command list syntax . . . . .	3143
23.2.6	Unit Tests . . . . .	3150
23.3	Toplevel module WHIZARD . . . . .	3205
23.3.1	Options . . . . .	3207
23.3.2	Parse tree stack . . . . .	3208
23.3.3	The <b>whizard</b> object . . . . .	3209
23.3.4	Initialization and finalization . . . . .	3209
23.3.5	Initialization and finalization (old version) . . . . .	3212
23.3.6	Execute command lists . . . . .	3213
23.3.7	The WHIZARD shell . . . . .	3215
23.3.8	Self-tests . . . . .	3216
23.4	Driver program . . . . .	3221
23.5	Whizard-C-Interface . . . . .	3230
<b>24</b>	<b>Cross References</b>	<b>3240</b>
24.1	Identifiers . . . . .	3240
24.2	Chunks . . . . .	3240

# Chapter 1

# Changes

For a comprehensive list of changes confer the ChangeLog file or the subversion log.

# Chapter 2

## Tools

This part contains modules needed for auxiliary purposes:

**limits** Compile-time (integer) constants: fixed array sizes, input field lengths, and such. Any module that uses such constants has to access them via **limits**.

**mpi90** Parallel execution (currently disabled!). This module contains dummy replacements for the message passing interface subroutines.

**diagnostics** Error and diagnostic message handling. Any messages and errors issued by WHIZARD functions are handled by the subroutines in this module, if possible.

**files** Files and auxiliary routines that do not belong anywhere else.

**permutations** Handle permutations of integers.

**unix\_args** Parse the command-line arguments and options. This part is system-dependent, and we provide a replacement if the functions are not available.

### 2.1 Preliminaries

The WHIZARD file header:

```
<File header>≡
! WHIZARD <Version> <Date>
!
! Copyright (C) 1999-2014 by
!   Wolfgang Kilian <kilian@physik.uni-siegen.de>
!   Thorsten Ohl <ohl@physik.uni-wuerzburg.de>
!   Juergen Reuter <juergen.reuter@desy.de>
!
!   with contributions from
!   Christian Speckner <cnspeckn@googlemail.com>
!   and Fabian Bach, Felix Braam, Sebastian Schmidt, Daniel Wiesler
!
! WHIZARD is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it
! under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
```



```

! the Free Software Foundation; either version 2, or (at your option)
! any later version.
!
! WHIZARD is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
! WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
! MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
! GNU General Public License for more details.
!
! You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
! along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software
! Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.
!
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
! This file has been stripped of most comments. For documentation, refer
! to the source 'whizard.nw'

```

We are strict with our names:

```

<Standard module head>≡
    implicit none
    private

```

This is the way to invoke the kinds module (not contained in this source)

```

<Use kinds>≡
    use kinds, only: default !NODEP!

```

And we make heavy use of variable-length strings

```

<Use strings>≡
    use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

```

Some parameters (buffer sizes etc.) are hardcoded. They are collected in this module:

```

<limits.f90>≡
    <File header>

    module limits

        use iso_fortran_env, only: iostat_end, iostat_eor !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>

    <Standard module head>

    <Limits: public parameters>

    end module limits

```

The version string is used for checking files. Note that the string length MUST NOT be changed, because reading binary files relies on it.

```

<Limits: public parameters>≡
    integer, parameter, public :: VERSION_STRLEN = 255
    character(len=VERSION_STRLEN), parameter, public :: &
        & VERSION_STRING = "WHIZARD version <Version> (<Date>)"

```

We collect format string for the different numerical output formats here.

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_19 = "ES19.12"
    character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_18 = "ES18.11"

```

```

character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_17 = "ES17.10"
character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_16 = "ES16.9"
character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_15 = "ES15.8"
character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_14 = "ES14.7"
character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_13 = "ES13.6"
character(*), parameter, public :: FMT_12 = "ES12.5"

```

## 2.2 Parallelization

*This section has been removed, it was never used even in WHIZARD1. Parallelization should be reimplemented from scratch.*

## 2.3 File utilities

This module provides miscellaneous tools associated with strings and files:

- Finding a free unit
- Selecting an output unit (stdout if undefined)
- Upper and lower case for strings
- Formatting a number for T<sub>E</sub>X output.

```

<file_utils.f90>≡
<File header>

module file_utils

    use iso_fortran_env, only: stdout => output_unit !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: MIN_UNIT, MAX_UNIT !NODEP!
    use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <File utils: public>

    <File utils: interfaces>

contains

    <File utils: procedures>

end module file_utils

```

### 2.3.1 Finding an I/O unit

Fortran 95 (even Fortran 2003) has no notion of implicit I/O units. Therefore, we have to find a free unit by trial and error.

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    integer, parameter, public :: MIN_UNIT = 11, MAX_UNIT = 99

```

```

<File utils: public>≡
    public :: free_unit

<File utils: procedures>≡
    function free_unit () result (unit)
        integer :: unit
        logical :: exists, is_open
        integer :: i, status
        do i = MIN_UNIT, MAX_UNIT
            inquire (unit=i, exist=exists, opened=is_open, iostat=status)
            if (status == 0) then
                if (exists .and. .not. is_open) then
                    unit = i; return
                end if
            end if
        end do
        unit = -1
    end function free_unit

```

```

<Use file utils>≡
    use file_utils !NODEP!

```

Return the given unit, if present, otherwise the default STDOUT unit.

```

<File utils: public>+≡
    public :: output_unit

<File utils: procedures>+≡
    function output_unit (unit) result (u)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        if (present (unit)) then
            u = unit
        else
            u = stdout
        end if
    end function output_unit

```

### 2.3.2 Deleting a file

Fortran does not contain a command for deleting a file. Here, we provide a subroutine that deletes a file if it exists. We do not handle the subtleties, so we assume that it is writable if it exists.

```

<File utils: public>+≡
    public :: delete_file

<File utils: procedures>+≡
    subroutine delete_file (name)
        character(*), intent(in) :: name
        logical :: exist
        integer :: u
        inquire (file = name, exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
            u = free_unit ()
            open (unit = u, file = name)

```

```

        close (u, status = "delete")
    end if
end subroutine delete_file

```

### 2.3.3 String auxiliary functions

These are, unfortunately, not part of Fortran.

```

<File utils: public>+≡
    public :: upper_case
    public :: lower_case

<File utils: interfaces>≡
    interface upper_case
        module procedure upper_case_char, upper_case_string
    end interface
    interface lower_case
        module procedure lower_case_char, lower_case_string
    end interface

<File utils: procedures>+≡
    function upper_case_char (string) result (new_string)
        character(*), intent(in) :: string
        character(len(string)) :: new_string
        integer :: pos, code
        integer, parameter :: offset = ichar('A')-ichar('a')
        do pos = 1, len (string)
            code = ichar (string(pos:pos))
            select case (code)
            case (ichar('a'):ichar('z'))
                new_string(pos:pos) = char (code + offset)
            case default
                new_string(pos:pos) = string(pos:pos)
            end select
        end do
    end function upper_case_char

    function lower_case_char (string) result (new_string)
        character(*), intent(in) :: string
        character(len(string)) :: new_string
        integer :: pos, code
        integer, parameter :: offset = ichar('a')-ichar('A')
        do pos = 1, len (string)
            code = ichar (string(pos:pos))
            select case (code)
            case (ichar('A'):ichar('Z'))
                new_string(pos:pos) = char (code + offset)
            case default
                new_string(pos:pos) = string(pos:pos)
            end select
        end do
    end function lower_case_char

    function upper_case_string (string) result (new_string)

```

```

    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(string_t) :: new_string
    new_string = upper_case_char (char (string))
end function upper_case_string

function lower_case_string (string) result (new_string)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(string_t) :: new_string
    new_string = lower_case_char (char (string))
end function lower_case_string

```

Quote underscore characters for use in T<sub>E</sub>X output.

```

<File utils: public>+≡
    public :: quote_underscore

<File utils: procedures>+≡
    function quote_underscore (string) result (quoted)
        type(string_t) :: quoted
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
        type(string_t) :: part
        type(string_t) :: buffer
        buffer = string
        quoted = ""
        do
            call split (part, buffer, "_")
            quoted = quoted // part
            if (buffer == "") exit
            quoted = quoted // "\"
        end do
    end function quote_underscore

```

Convert a FORTRAN string into a zero terminated C string.

```

<File utils: public>+≡
    public :: string_f2c

<File utils: interfaces>+≡
    interface string_f2c
        module procedure string_f2c_char, string_f2c_var_str
    end interface string_f2c

<File utils: procedures>+≡
    pure function string_f2c_char (i) result (o)
        character(*), intent(in) :: i
        character(kind=c_char, len=len (i) + 1) :: o
        o = i // c_null_char
    end function string_f2c_char

    pure function string_f2c_var_str (i) result (o)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: i
        character(kind=c_char, len=len (i) + 1) :: o
        o = char (i) // c_null_char
    end function string_f2c_var_str

```

### 2.3.4 Formatting numbers

Format a number with  $n$  significant digits for use in T<sub>E</sub>X documents.

*(File utils: public)*+≡

```
public :: tex_format
```

*(File utils: procedures)*+≡

```
function tex_format (rval, n_digits) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  real(default), intent(in) :: rval
  integer, intent(in) :: n_digits
  integer :: e, n, w, d
  real(default) :: absval
  real(default) :: mantissa
  character :: sign
  character(20) :: format
  character(80) :: cstr
  n = min (abs (n_digits), 16)
  if (rval == 0) then
    string = "0"
  else
    absval = abs (rval)
    e = log10 (absval)
    if (rval < 0) then
      sign = "-"
    else
      sign = ""
    end if
    select case (e)
    case (:-3)
      d = max (n - 1, 0)
      w = max (d + 2, 2)
      write (format, "('(F',IO,'.',IO,'A,IO,A)')") w, d
      mantissa = absval * 10._default ** (1 - e)
      write (cstr, fmt=format) mantissa, "\times 10^{", e - 1, "}"
    case (-2:0)
      d = max (n - e, 1 - e)
      w = max (d + e + 2, d + 2)
      write (format, "('(F',IO,'.',IO,')')") w, d
      write (cstr, fmt=format) absval
    case (1:2)
      d = max (n - e - 1, -e, 0)
      w = max (d + e + 2, d + 2, e + 2)
      write (format, "('(F',IO,'.',IO,')')") w, d
      write (cstr, fmt=format) absval
    case default
      d = max (n - 1, 0)
      w = max (d + 2, 2)
      write (format, "('(F',IO,'.',IO,'A,IO,A)')") w, d
      mantissa = absval * 10._default ** (- e)
      write (cstr, fmt=format) mantissa, "\times 10^{", e, "}"
    end select
    string = sign // trim (cstr)
  end if
end function tex_format
```

Write a number for use in Metapost code:

```

<File utils: public>+=
  public :: mp_format
<File utils: procedures>+=
  function mp_format (rval) result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    real(default), intent(in) :: rval
    character(16) :: tmp
    write (tmp, "(G16.8)")  rval
    string = lower_case (trim (adjustl (trim (tmp))))
  end function mp_format

```

### 2.3.5 Auxiliary stuff

Write a separator line.

```

<File utils: public>+=
  public :: write_separator
  public :: write_separator_double
<File utils: procedures>+=
  subroutine write_separator (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    write (u, "(A)")  repeat ("-", 72)
  end subroutine write_separator

  subroutine write_separator_double (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    write (u, "(A)")  repeat ("=", 72)
  end subroutine write_separator_double

```

```

<File utils: public>+=
  public :: write_indent
<File utils: procedures>+=
  subroutine write_indent (unit, indent)
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    integer, intent(in), optional :: indent
    if (present (indent)) then
      write (unit, "(1x,A)", advance="no")  repeat (" ", indent)
    end if
  end subroutine write_indent

```

Conditional format string.

```

<File utils: public>+=
  public :: pac_fmt

```

```

<File utils: procedures>+=
  subroutine pac_fmt (fmt, fmt_orig, fmt_pac, pacify)
    character(*), intent(in) :: fmt_orig, fmt_pac
    character(*), intent(out) :: fmt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    logical :: pacified
    pacified = .false.
    if (present (pacify)) pacified = pacify
    if (pacified) then
      fmt = fmt_pac
    else
      fmt = fmt_orig
    end if
  end subroutine pac_fmt

```

## 2.4 Unit tests

Here, we provide functionality for automated unit tests. Each test is required to produce output which is compared against a reference file. If the two are identical, we signal success. Otherwise, we signal failure and write the output to a file.

```

<unit_tests.f90>=
  <File header>

  module unit_tests

    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>

    <Standard module head>

    <Tests: public>

    <Tests: parameters>

    <Tests: types>

    <Tests: interfaces>

    contains

    <Tests: procedures>

  end module unit_tests

```

### 2.4.1 Parameters

Building blocks of file names:

```

<Tests: parameters>=
  character(*), parameter :: ref_prefix = "ref-output/"

```



```

character(*), parameter :: ref = ".ref"

character(*), parameter :: err_prefix = "err-output/"
character(*), parameter :: err = ".out"

```

## 2.4.2 Type for storing test results

We store the results of the individual unit tests in a linked list. Here is the entry:

```

<Tests: public>≡
  public :: test_results_t

<Tests: types>≡
  type :: test_result_t
    logical :: success = .false.
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(string_t) :: description
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  end type test_result_t

  type :: test_results_t
    private
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: first => null ()
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: last => null ()
    integer :: n_success = 0
    integer :: n_failure = 0
    contains
    <Tests: test results: TBP>
  end type test_results_t

```

Add a test result.

```

<Tests: test results: TBP>≡
  procedure, private :: add => test_results_add

<Tests: procedures>≡
  subroutine test_results_add (list, name, description, success)
    class(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: list
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: name
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: description
    logical, intent(in) :: success
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: result
    allocate (result)
    result%success = success
    result%name = name
    result%description = description
    if (associated (list%first)) then
      list%last%next => result
    else
      list%first => result
    end if
    list%last => result
    if (success) then
      list%n_success = list%n_success + 1
    end if
  end subroutine test_results_add

```

```

else
    list%n_failure = list%n_failure + 1
end if
end subroutine test_results_add

```

Display the current state.

*<Tests: test results: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure, private :: write => test_results_write

```

*<Tests: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine test_results_write (list, u)
    class(test_results_t), intent(in) :: list
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: result
    write (u, "(A)") "*** Test Summary ***"
    if (list%n_success > 0) then
        write (u, "(2x,A)") "Success:"
        result => list%first
        do while (associated (result))
            if (result%success) write (u, "(4x,A,': ',A)") &
                char (result%name), char (result%description)
            result => result%next
        end do
    end if
    if (list%n_failure > 0) then
        write (u, "(2x,A)") "Failure:"
        result => list%first
        do while (associated (result))
            if (.not. result%success) write (u, "(4x,A,': ',A)") &
                char (result%name), char (result%description)
            result => result%next
        end do
    end if
    write (u, "(A,I0)") "Total    = ", list%n_success + list%n_failure
    write (u, "(A,I0)") "Success = ", list%n_success
    write (u, "(A,I0)") "Failure = ", list%n_failure
    write (u, "(A)") "*** End of test Summary ***"
end subroutine test_results_write

```

Return true if all tests were successful (or no test).

*<Tests: test results: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure, private :: report => test_results_report

```

*<Tests: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine test_results_report (list, success)
    class(test_results_t), intent(in) :: list
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    success = list%n_failure == 0
end subroutine test_results_report

```

Delete the list.

*<Tests: test results: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure, private :: final => test_results_final

```

```

<Tests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine test_results_final (list)
    class(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: list
    type(test_result_t), pointer :: result
    do while (associated (list%first))
      result => list%first
      list%first => result%next
      deallocate (result)
    end do
    list%last => null ()
    list%n_success = 0
    list%n_failure = 0
  end subroutine test_results_final

```

### 2.4.3 Wrapup

This will write results, report status, and finalize. This is the only method which we need to access from outside.

```

<Tests: test results: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: wrapup => test_results_wrapup

<Tests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine test_results_wrapup (list, u, success)
    class(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: list
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    call list%write (u)
    if (present (success)) call list%report (success)
    call list%final ()
  end subroutine test_results_wrapup

```

### 2.4.4 Tool for Unit Tests

This procedure takes a test routine as an argument. It runs the test, output directed to a temporary file. Then, it compares the file against a reference file.

The test routine must take the output unit as argument.

```

<Tests: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine unit_test (u)
      integer, intent(in) :: u
    end subroutine unit_test
  end interface

```

The test routine can print to screen and, optionally, to a logging unit.

```

<Tests: public>+≡
  public :: test

```

*<Tests: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine test (test_proc, name, description, u_log, results)
  procedure(unit_test) :: test_proc
  character(*), intent(in) :: name
  character(*), intent(in) :: description
  integer, intent(in) :: u_log
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  integer :: u_test, u_ref, u_err
  logical :: exist
  character(256) :: buffer1, buffer2
  integer :: iostat1, iostat2
  logical :: success
  write (*, "(A)", advance="no") "Running test: " // name
  write (u_log, "(A)") "Test: " // name
  u_test = free_unit ()
  open (u_test, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
  call test_proc (u_test)
  rewind (u_test)
  inquire (file=ref_prefix//name//ref, exist=exist)
  if (exist) then
    u_ref = free_unit ()
    open (u_ref, file=ref_prefix//name//ref, status="old", action="read")
    COMPARE_FILES: do
      read (u_test, "(A)", iostat=iostat1) buffer1
      read (u_ref, "(A)", iostat=iostat2) buffer2
      if (iostat1 /= iostat2) then
        success = .false.
        exit COMPARE_FILES
      else if (iostat1 < 0) then
        success = .true.
        exit COMPARE_FILES
      else if (buffer1 /= buffer2) then
        success = .false.
        exit COMPARE_FILES
      end if
    end do COMPARE_FILES
    close (u_ref)
  else
    write (*, "(A)", advance="no") " ... no reference output available"
    write (u_log, "(A)") " No reference output available."
    success = .false.
  end if
  if (success) then
    write (*, "(A)") " ... success."
    write (u_log, "(A)") " Success."
  else
    write (*, "(A)") " ... failure. See: " // err_prefix//name//err
    write (u_log, "(A)") " Failure."
    rewind (u_test)
    u_err = free_unit ()
    open (u_err, file=err_prefix//name//err, &
          action="write", status="replace")
    WRITE_OUTPUT: do
      read (u_test, "(A)", end=1) buffer1

```

```

        write (u_err, "(A)") trim (buffer1)
    end do WRITE_OUTPUT
1    close (u_err)
    end if
    close (u_test)
    call results%add (name, description, success)
end subroutine test

```

## 2.5 Operating-system interface

For specific purposes, we need direct access to the OS (system calls). This is, of course, system dependent. The current version is valid for GNU/Linux; we expect to use a preprocessor for this module if different OSs are to be supported.

The current implementation lacks error handling.

```

<os_interface.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module os_interface

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use system_dependencies !NODEP!
    use limits, only: DLERROR_LEN, ENVVAR_LEN !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    <Standard module head>

    <OS interface: public>

    <OS interface: types>

    <OS interface: interfaces>

    contains

    <OS interface: procedures>

    <OS interface: tests>

  end module os_interface

```

### 2.5.1 Path variables

This is a transparent container for storing user-defined path variables.

```

<OS interface: public>≡
  public :: paths_t

```

```

<OS interface: types>≡
  type :: paths_t
    type(string_t) :: prefix
    type(string_t) :: exec_prefix
    type(string_t) :: bindir
    type(string_t) :: libdir
    type(string_t) :: includedir
    type(string_t) :: datarootdir
    type(string_t) :: localprefix
    type(string_t) :: libtool
    type(string_t) :: lhapdfdir
  end type paths_t

<OS interface: public>+≡
  public :: paths_init

<OS interface: procedures>≡
  subroutine paths_init (paths)
    type(paths_t), intent(out) :: paths
    paths%prefix = ""
    paths%exec_prefix = ""
    paths%bindir = ""
    paths%libdir = ""
    paths%includedir = ""
    paths%datarootdir = ""
    paths%localprefix = ""
    paths%libtool = ""
    paths%lhapdfdir = ""
  end subroutine paths_init

```

## 2.5.2 System dependencies

We store all potentially system- and user/run-dependent data in a transparent container. This includes compiler/linker names and flags, file extensions, etc.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
  public :: os_data_t

<OS interface: types>+≡
  type :: os_data_t
    logical :: use_libtool
    logical :: use_testfiles
    type(string_t) :: fc
    type(string_t) :: fcflags
    type(string_t) :: fcflags_pic
    type(string_t) :: fc_src_ext
    type(string_t) :: cc
    type(string_t) :: cflags
    type(string_t) :: cflags_pic
    type(string_t) :: obj_ext
    type(string_t) :: ld
    type(string_t) :: ldflags
    type(string_t) :: ldflags_so
    type(string_t) :: ldflags_static

```

```

type(string_t) :: ldflags_hepmc
type(string_t) :: ldflags_hoppet
type(string_t) :: shlib_ext
type(string_t) :: makeflags
type(string_t) :: prefix
type(string_t) :: exec_prefix
type(string_t) :: bindir
type(string_t) :: libdir
type(string_t) :: includedir
type(string_t) :: datarootdir
type(string_t) :: whizard_omega_binpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_includes
type(string_t) :: whizard_ldflags
type(string_t) :: whizard_libtool
type(string_t) :: whizard_modelpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_models_libpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_susypath
type(string_t) :: whizard_gmlpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_cutspath
type(string_t) :: whizard_texpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_testdatapath
type(string_t) :: whizard_modelpath_local
type(string_t) :: whizard_models_libpath_local
type(string_t) :: whizard_omega_binpath_local
type(string_t) :: whizard_circe2path
type(string_t) :: whizard_beamsimpath
type(string_t) :: whizard_mulipath
type(string_t) :: pdf_builtin_datapath
logical :: event_analysis = .false.
logical :: event_analysis_ps = .false.
logical :: event_analysis_pdf = .false.
type(string_t) :: latex
type(string_t) :: mpost
type(string_t) :: gml
type(string_t) :: dvips
type(string_t) :: ps2pdf
type(string_t) :: gosampath
type(string_t) :: golemath
type(string_t) :: formath
type(string_t) :: qgrafath
type(string_t) :: ninjath
type(string_t) :: samuraipath
end type os_data_t

```

Since all are allocatable strings, explicit initialization is necessary.

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
integer, parameter, public :: ENVVAR_LEN = 1000

<OS interface: public>+≡
public :: os_data_init

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine os_data_init (os_data, paths)
type(os_data_t), intent(out) :: os_data
type(paths_t), intent(in), optional :: paths

```

```

character(len=ENVVAR_LEN) :: home
type(string_t) :: localprefix, local_includes
os_data%use_libtool = .true.
inquire (file = "TESTFLAG", exist = os_data%use_testfiles)
call get_environment_variable ("HOME", home)
if(present(paths)) then
    if (paths%localprefix == "") then
        localprefix = trim (home) // "/.whizard"
    else
        localprefix = paths%localprefix
    end if
else
    localprefix = trim (home) // "/.whizard"
end if
local_includes = localprefix // "/lib/whizard/mod/models"
os_data%whizard_modelpath_local = localprefix // "/share/whizard/models"
os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local = localprefix // "/lib/whizard/models"
os_data%whizard_omega_binpath_local = localprefix // "/bin"
os_data%fc          = DEFAULT_FC
os_data%fcflags     = DEFAULT_FCFLAGS
os_data%fcflags_pic = DEFAULT_FCFLAGS_PIC
os_data%fc_src_ext  = DEFAULT_FC_SRC_EXT
os_data%cc          = DEFAULT_CC
os_data%cflags      = DEFAULT_CFLAGS
os_data%cflags_pic  = DEFAULT_CFLAGS_PIC
os_data%obj_ext     = DEFAULT_OBJ_EXT
os_data%ld          = DEFAULT_LD
os_data%ldflags     = DEFAULT_LDFLAGS
os_data%ldflags_so  = DEFAULT_LDFLAGS_SO
os_data%ldflags_static = DEFAULT_LDFLAGS_STATIC
os_data%ldflags_hepmc = DEFAULT_LDFLAGS_HEPMC
os_data%ldflags_hoppet = DEFAULT_LDFLAGS_HOPPET
os_data%shlib_ext   = DEFAULT_SHLIB_EXT
os_data%makeflags   = DEFAULT_MAKEFLAGS
os_data%prefix      = PREFIX
os_data%exec_prefix = EXEC_PREFIX
os_data%bindir      = BINDIR
os_data%libdir      = LIBDIR
os_data%includedir  = INCLUDEDIR
os_data%datarootdir = DATAROOTDIR
if (present (paths)) then
    if (paths%prefix /= "") os_data%prefix = paths%prefix
    if (paths%exec_prefix /= "") os_data%exec_prefix = paths%exec_prefix
    if (paths%bindir /= "") os_data%bindir = paths%bindir
    if (paths%libdir /= "") os_data%libdir = paths%libdir
    if (paths%includedir /= "") os_data%includedir = paths%includedir
    if (paths%datarootdir /= "") os_data%datarootdir = paths%datarootdir
end if
if (os_data%use_testfiles) then
    os_data%whizard_omega_binpath = WHIZARD_TEST_OMEGA_BINPATH
    os_data%whizard_includes      = WHIZARD_TEST_INCLUDES
    os_data%whizard_ldflags       = WHIZARD_TEST_LDFLAGS
    os_data%whizard_libtool       = WHIZARD_LIBTOOL_TEST
    os_data%whizard_modelpath     = WHIZARD_TEST_MODELPATH

```



```

os_data%whizard_models_libpath = WHIZARD_TEST_MODELS_LIBPATH
os_data%whizard_susypath       = WHIZARD_TEST_SUSYPATH
os_data%whizard_gmlpath        = WHIZARD_TEST_GMLPATH
os_data%whizard_cutspath       = WHIZARD_TEST_CUTSPATH
os_data%whizard_texpath        = WHIZARD_TEST_TEXPATH
os_data%whizard_testdatapath   = WHIZARD_TEST_TESTDATAPATH
os_data%whizard_circe2path     = WHIZARD_TEST_CIRCE2PATH
os_data%whizard_beamsimpath    = WHIZARD_TEST_BEAMSIMPATH
os_data%whizard_mulipath       = WHIZARD_TEST_MULIPATH
os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath   = PDF_BUILTIN_TEST_DATAPATH
else
  if (os_dir_exist (local_includes)) then
    os_data%whizard_includes = "-I" // local_includes // " //" &
      WHIZARD_INCLUDES
  else
    os_data%whizard_includes = WHIZARD_INCLUDES
  end if
  os_data%whizard_omegabspath = WHIZARD_OMEGA_BINPATH
  os_data%whizard_ldflags     = WHIZARD_LDFLAGS
  os_data%whizard_libtool     = WHIZARD_LIBTOOL
  if (present(paths)) then
    if (paths%libtool /= "") os_data%whizard_libtool = paths%libtool
  end if
  os_data%whizard_modelpath    = WHIZARD_MODELPATH
  os_data%whizard_models_libpath = WHIZARD_MODELS_LIBPATH
  os_data%whizard_susypath     = WHIZARD_SUSYPATH
  os_data%whizard_gmlpath      = WHIZARD_GMLPATH
  os_data%whizard_cutspath     = WHIZARD_CUTSPATH
  os_data%whizard_texpath      = WHIZARD_TEXPATH
  os_data%whizard_testdatapath = WHIZARD_TESTDATAPATH
  os_data%whizard_circe2path   = WHIZARD_CIRCE2PATH
  os_data%whizard_beamsimpath  = WHIZARD_BEAMSIMPATH
  os_data%whizard_mulipath     = WHIZARD_MULIPATH
  os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath = PDF_BUILTIN_DATAPATH
end if
os_data%event_analysis      = EVENT_ANALYSIS      == "yes"
os_data%event_analysis_ps   = EVENT_ANALYSIS_PS   == "yes"
os_data%event_analysis_pdf  = EVENT_ANALYSIS_PDF  == "yes"
os_data%latex               = PRG_LATEX // " " // OPT_LATEX
os_data%mpost               = PRG_MPOST // " " // OPT_MPOST
os_data%gml                 = os_data%whizard_gmlpath // "/gml" // " " // OPT_MPOST &
  // " " // "--gml_dir " // os_data%whizard_gmlpath
os_data%dvips               = PRG_DVIPS
os_data%ps2pdf              = PRG_PS2PDF
call os_data_expand_paths (os_data)
os_data%gosampath           = GOSAM_DIR
os_data%golempath           = GOLEM_DIR
os_data%formpath            = FORM_DIR
os_data%qgrafpath           = QGRAF_DIR
os_data%ninjapath           = NINJA_DIR
os_data%samurai_path        = SAMURAI_DIR
end subroutine os_data_init

```

Replace occurrences of GNU path variables (such as  $\${\text{prefix}}$ ) by their values.

Do this for all strings that could depend on them, and do the replacement in reverse order, since the path variables may be defined in terms of each other.

*(OS interface: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine os_data_expand_paths (os_data)
  type(os_data_t), intent(inout) :: os_data
  integer, parameter :: N_VARIABLES = 6
  type(string_t), dimension(N_VARIABLES) :: variable, value
  variable(1) = "${prefix}";      value(1) = os_data%prefix
  variable(2) = "${exec_prefix}"; value(2) = os_data%exec_prefix
  variable(3) = "${bindir}";      value(3) = os_data%bindir
  variable(4) = "${libdir}";      value(4) = os_data%libdir
  variable(5) = "${includedir}";  value(5) = os_data%includedir
  variable(6) = "${datarootdir}"; value(6) = os_data%datarootdir
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_omega_binpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_includes)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_ldflags)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_libtool)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_modelpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_models_libpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_susypath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_gmlpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_cutspath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_texpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_testdatapath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_circe2path)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_beamsimpath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_mulipath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_modelpath_local)
  call expand_paths (os_data%whizard_omega_binpath_local)
  call expand_paths (os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath)
  call expand_paths (os_data%latex)
  call expand_paths (os_data%mpost)
  call expand_paths (os_data%gml)
  call expand_paths (os_data%dvips)
  call expand_paths (os_data%ps2pdf)
contains
  subroutine expand_paths (string)
    type(string_t), intent(inout) :: string
    integer :: i
    do i = N_VARIABLES, 1, -1
      string = replace (string, variable(i), value(i), every=.true.)
    end do
  end subroutine expand_paths
end subroutine os_data_expand_paths

```

Write contents

*(OS interface: public)*+≡

```

public :: os_data_write

```

*(OS interface: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine os_data_write (os_data, unit)
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit

```

```

integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)") "OS data:"
write (u, *) "use_libtool      = ", os_data%use_libtool
write (u, *) "use_testfiles   = ", os_data%use_testfiles
write (u, *) "fc              = ", char (os_data%fc)
write (u, *) "fcflags        = ", char (os_data%fcflags)
write (u, *) "fcflags_pic     = ", char (os_data%fcflags_pic)
write (u, *) "fc_src_ext      = ", char (os_data%fc_src_ext)
write (u, *) "cc              = ", char (os_data%cc)
write (u, *) "cflags         = ", char (os_data%cflags)
write (u, *) "cflags_pic     = ", char (os_data%cflags_pic)
write (u, *) "obj_ext        = ", char (os_data%obj_ext)
write (u, *) "ld             = ", char (os_data%ld)
write (u, *) "ldflags        = ", char (os_data%ldflags)
write (u, *) "ldflags_so      = ", char (os_data%ldflags_so)
write (u, *) "ldflags_static = ", char (os_data%ldflags_static)
write (u, *) "ldflags_hepmc   = ", char (os_data%ldflags_hepmc)
write (u, *) "ldflags_hoppet  = ", char (os_data%ldflags_hoppet)
write (u, *) "shlib_ext      = ", char (os_data%shlib_ext)
write (u, *) "makeflags       = ", char (os_data%makeflags)
write (u, *) "prefix         = ", char (os_data%prefix)
write (u, *) "exec_prefix     = ", char (os_data%exec_prefix)
write (u, *) "bindir         = ", char (os_data%bindir)
write (u, *) "libdir         = ", char (os_data%libdir)
write (u, *) "includedir      = ", char (os_data%includedir)
write (u, *) "datarootdir     = ", char (os_data%datarootdir)
write (u, *) "whizard_omega_binpath = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_omega_binpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_includes   = ", char (os_data%whizard_includes)
write (u, *) "whizard_ldflags   = ", char (os_data%whizard_ldflags)
write (u, *) "whizard_libtool    = ", char (os_data%whizard_libtool)
write (u, *) "whizard_modelpath  = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_modelpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_models_libpath = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_modelpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_susypath     = ", char (os_data%whizard_susypath)
write (u, *) "whizard_gmlpath      = ", char (os_data%whizard_gmlpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_cutspath     = ", char (os_data%whizard_cutspath)
write (u, *) "whizard_texpath      = ", char (os_data%whizard_texpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_circe2path    = ", char (os_data%whizard_circe2path)
write (u, *) "whizard_beamsimpath   = ", char (os_data%whizard_beamsimpath)
write (u, *) "whizard_mulipath      = ", char (os_data%whizard_mulipath)
write (u, *) "whizard_testdatapath = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_testdatapath)
write (u, *) "whizard_modelpath_local = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_modelpath_local)
write (u, *) "whizard_models_libpath_local = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local)
write (u, *) "whizard_omega_binpath_local = ", &
char (os_data%whizard_omega_binpath_local)
write (u, *) "event_analysis      = ", os_data%event_analysis
write (u, *) "event_analysis_ps   = ", os_data%event_analysis_ps
write (u, *) "event_analysis_pdf  = ", os_data%event_analysis_pdf

```

```

write (u, *) "latex = ", char (os_data%latex)
write (u, *) "mpost = ", char (os_data%mpost)
write (u, *) "gml = ", char (os_data%gml)
write (u, *) "dvips = ", char (os_data%dvips)
write (u, *) "ps2pdf = ", char (os_data%ps2pdf)
if (os_data%gosampath /= "") then
  write (u, *) "gosam = ", char (os_data%gosampath)
  write (u, *) "golem = ", char (os_data%golempath)
  write (u, *) "form = ", char (os_data%formpath)
  write (u, *) "qgraf = ", char (os_data%qgrafpath)
  write (u, *) "ninja = ", char (os_data%ninjapath)
  write (u, *) "samurai = ", char (os_data%samuraipath)
end if
end subroutine os_data_write

```

### 2.5.3 Dynamic linking

We define a type that holds the filehandle for a dynamically linked library (shared object), together with functions to open and close the library, and to access functions in this library.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
  public :: dlaccess_t

<OS interface: types>+≡
  type :: dlaccess_t
  private
    type(string_t) :: filename
    type(c_ptr) :: handle = c_null_ptr
    logical :: is_open = .false.
    logical :: has_error = .false.
    type(string_t) :: error
  contains
    <OS interface: dlaccess: TBP>
  end type dlaccess_t

```

Output. This is called by the output routine for the process library.

```

<OS interface: dlaccess: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => dlaccess_write

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine dlaccess_write (object, unit)
    class(dlaccess_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    write (unit, "(1x,A)") "DL access info:"
    write (unit, "(3x,A,L1)") "is open = ", object%is_open
    if (object%has_error) then
      write (unit, "(3x,A,A,A)") "error = ', char (object%error), '"
    else
      write (unit, "(3x,A)") "error = [none]"
    end if
  end subroutine dlaccess_write

```

The interface to the library functions:

*(OS interface: interfaces)*≡

```

interface
  function dlopen (filename, flag) result (handle) bind(C)
  import
    character(c_char), dimension(*) :: filename
    integer(c_int), value :: flag
    type(c_ptr) :: handle
  end function dlopen
end interface

interface
  function dlclose (handle) result (status) bind(C)
  import
    type(c_ptr), value :: handle
    integer(c_int) :: status
  end function dlclose
end interface

interface
  function dlerror () result (str) bind(C)
  import
    type(c_ptr) :: str
  end function dlerror
end interface

interface
  function dlsym (handle, symbol) result (fptr) bind(C)
  import
    type(c_ptr), value :: handle
    character(c_char), dimension(*) :: symbol
    type(c_funptr) :: fptr
  end function dlsym
end interface

```

This reads an error string and transforms it into a `string_t` object, if an error has occurred. If not, set the error flag to false and return an empty string.

*(Limits: public parameters)*+≡

```
integer, parameter, public :: DLERROR_LEN = 160
```

*(OS interface: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine read_dlerror (has_error, error)
  logical, intent(out) :: has_error
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: error
  type(c_ptr) :: err_cptr
  character(len=DLERROR_LEN, kind=c_char), pointer :: err_fptr
  integer :: str_end
  err_cptr = dlerror ()
  if (c_associated (err_cptr)) then
    call c_f_pointer (err_cptr, err_fptr)
    has_error = .true.
    str_end = scan (err_fptr, c_null_char)
    if (str_end > 0) then
      error = err_fptr(1:str_end-1)
    end if
  end if
end subroutine read_dlerror

```

```

        else
            error = err_fptr
        end if
    else
        has_error = .false.
        error = ""
    end if
end subroutine read_dlerror

```

This is the Fortran API. Init/final open and close the file, i.e., load and unload the library.

Note that a library can be opened more than once, and that for an ultimate close as many `dlclose` calls as `dlopen` calls are necessary. However, we assume that it is opened and closed only once.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: dlaccess_init
    public :: dlaccess_final

<OS interface: dlaccess: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => dlaccess_init
    procedure :: final => dlaccess_final

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dlaccess_init (dlaccess, prefix, libname, os_data)
        class(dlaccess_t), intent(out) :: dlaccess
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix, libname
        type(os_data_t), intent(in), optional :: os_data
        type(string_t) :: filename
        logical :: exist
        dlaccess%filename = libname
        filename = prefix // "/" // libname
        inquire (file=char(filename), exist=exist)
        if (.not. exist) then
            filename = prefix // "/.libs/" // libname
            inquire (file=char(filename), exist=exist)
            if (.not. exist) then
                dlaccess%has_error = .true.
                dlaccess%error = "Library '" // filename // "' not found"
                return
            end if
        end if
        dlaccess%handle = dlopen (char (filename) // c_null_char, ior ( &
            RTLD_LAZY, RTLD_LOCAL))
        dlaccess%is_open = c_associated (dlaccess%handle)
        call read_dlerror (dlaccess%has_error, dlaccess%error)
    end subroutine dlaccess_init

    subroutine dlaccess_final (dlaccess)
        class(dlaccess_t), intent(inout) :: dlaccess
        integer(c_int) :: status
        if (dlaccess%is_open) then
            status = dlclose (dlaccess%handle)
            dlaccess%is_open = .false.
            call read_dlerror (dlaccess%has_error, dlaccess%error)
        end if
    end subroutine dlaccess_final

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine dlaccess_final

```

Return true if an error has occurred.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: dlaccess_has_error

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    function dlaccess_has_error (dlaccess) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(dlaccess_t), intent(in) :: dlaccess
        flag = dlaccess%has_error
    end function dlaccess_has_error

```

Return the error string currently stored in the dlaccess object.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: dlaccess_get_error

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    function dlaccess_get_error (dlaccess) result (error)
        type(string_t) :: error
        type(dlaccess_t), intent(in) :: dlaccess
        error = dlaccess%error
    end function dlaccess_get_error

```

The symbol handler returns the C address of the function with the given string name. (It is a good idea to use `bind(C)` for all functions accessed by this, such that the name string is well-defined.) Call `c_f_procpointer` to cast this into a Fortran procedure pointer with an appropriate interface.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: dlaccess_get_c_funptr

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    function dlaccess_get_c_funptr (dlaccess, fname) result (fptr)
        type(c_funptr) :: fptr
        type(dlaccess_t), intent(inout) :: dlaccess
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: fname
        fptr = dlsym (dlaccess%handle, char (fname) // c_null_char)
        call read_dlerror (dlaccess%has_error, dlaccess%error)
    end function dlaccess_get_c_funptr

```

#### 2.5.4 Predicates

Return true if the library is loaded. In particular, this is false if loading was unsuccessful.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: dlaccess_is_open

```

```

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
  function dlaccess_is_open (dlaccess) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(dlaccess_t), intent(in) :: dlaccess
    flag = dlaccess%is_open
  end function dlaccess_is_open

```

### 2.5.5 Shell access

This is the standard system call for executing a shell command, such as invoking a compiler.

In F2008 there will be the equivalent built-in command `execute_command_line`.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
  public :: os_system_call

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine os_system_call (command_string, status, verbose)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: command_string
    integer, intent(out), optional :: status
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    logical :: verb
    integer :: stat
    verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    if (verb) &
      call msg_message ("command: " // char (command_string))
    stat = system (char (command_string) // c_null_char)
    if (present (status)) then
      status = stat
    else if (stat /= 0) then
      if (.not. verb) &
        call msg_message ("command: " // char (command_string))
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)") "Return code = ", stat
      call msg_message ()
      call msg_fatal ("System command returned with nonzero status code")
    end if
  end subroutine os_system_call

<OS interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    function system (command) result (status) bind(C)
      import
      integer(c_int) :: status
      character(c_char), dimension(*) :: command
    end function system
  end interface

```

### 2.5.6 Querying for a directory

This queries for the existence of a directory. There is no standard way to achieve this in FORTRAN, and if we were to call into `libc`, we would need access to C



macros for evaluating the result, so we resort to calling `test` as a system call.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: os_dir_exist

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    function os_dir_exist (name) result (res)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        logical :: res
        integer :: status
        call os_system_call ('test -d "' // name // '"', status=status)
        res = status == 0
    end function os_dir_exist

```

## 2.5.7 Fortran compiler and linker

Compile a single module for use in a shared library, but without linking.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: os_compile_shared

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine os_compile_shared (src, os_data, status)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: src
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        integer, intent(out), optional :: status
        type(string_t) :: command_string
        if (os_data%use_libtool) then
            command_string = &
                os_data%whizard_libtool // " --mode=compile " // &
                os_data%fc // " " // &
                "-c " // &
                os_data%whizard_includes // " " // &
                os_data%fcflags // " " // &
                "' " // src // os_data%fc_src_ext // "' "
        else
            command_string = &
                os_data%fc // " " // &
                "-c " // &
                os_data%fcflags_pic // " " // &
                os_data%whizard_includes // " " // &
                os_data%fcflags // " " // &
                "' " // src // os_data%fc_src_ext // "' "
        end if
        call os_system_call (command_string, status)
    end subroutine os_compile_shared

```

Link an array of object files to build a shared object library. In the libtool case, we have to specify a `-rpath`, otherwise only a static library can be built. However, since the library is never installed, this `rpath` is irrelevant.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: os_link_shared

```

```

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine os_link_shared (objlist, lib, os_data, status)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: objlist, lib
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  integer, intent(out), optional :: status
  type(string_t) :: command_string
  if (os_data%use_libtool) then
    command_string = &
      os_data%whizard_libtool // " --mode=link " // &
      os_data%fc // " " // &
      "-module " // &
      "-rpath /usr/local/lib" // " " // &
      os_data%fcflags // " " // &
      os_data%whizard_ldflags // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags // " " // &
      "-o '" // lib // ".la' " // &
      objlist
  else
    command_string = &
      os_data%ld // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags_so // " " // &
      os_data%fcflags // " " // &
      os_data%whizard_ldflags // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags // " " // &
      "-o '" // lib // os_data%shlib_ext // "' " // &
      objlist
  end if
  call os_system_call (command_string, status)
end subroutine os_link_shared

```

Link an array of object files / libraries to build a static executable.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
public :: os_link_static

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine os_link_static (objlist, exec_name, os_data, status)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: objlist, exec_name
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  integer, intent(out), optional :: status
  type(string_t) :: command_string
  if (os_data%use_libtool) then
    command_string = &
      os_data%whizard_libtool // " --mode=link " // &
      os_data%fc // " " // &
      "-static-libtool-libs " // &
      os_data%fcflags // " " // &
      os_data%whizard_ldflags // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags_static // " " // &
      "-o '" // exec_name // "' " // &
      objlist // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags_hepmc // " " // &
      os_data%ldflags_hoppet
  else

```

```

        command_string = &
            os_data%ld // " " // &
            os_data%ldflags_so // " " // &
            os_data%fcflags // " " // &
            os_data%whizard_ldflags // " " // &
            os_data%ldflags // " " // &
            os_data%ldflags_static // " " // &
            "-o '" // exec_name // "' " // &
            objlist // " " // &
            os_data%ldflags_hepmc // " " // &
            os_data%ldflags_hoppet
    end if
    call os_system_call (command_string, status)
end subroutine os_link_static

```

Determine the name of the shared library to link. If libtool is used, this is encoded in the .la file which resides in place of the library itself.

*<OS interface: public>+≡*

```
public :: os_get_dlname
```

*<OS interface: procedures>+≡*

```

function os_get_dlname (lib, os_data, ignore, silent) result (dlname)
    type(string_t) :: dlname
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: lib
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, silent
    type(string_t) :: filename
    type(string_t) :: buffer
    logical :: exist, required, quiet
    integer :: u
    u = free_unit ()
    if (present (ignore)) then
        required = .not. ignore
    else
        required = .true.
    end if
    if (present (silent)) then
        quiet = silent
    else
        quiet = .false.
    end if
    if (os_data%use_libtool) then
        filename = lib // ".la"
        inquire (file=char(filename), exist=exist)
        if (exist) then
            open (unit=u, file=char(filename), action="read", status="old")
            SCAN_LTFILE: do
                call get (u, buffer)
                if (extract (buffer, 1, 7) == "dlname=") then
                    dlname = extract (buffer, 9)
                    dlname = remove (dlname, len (dlname))
                    exit SCAN_LTFILE
                end if
            end do SCAN_LTFILE
        end if
    end if
end function os_get_dlname

```

```

        close (u)
    else if (required) then
        if (.not. quiet) call msg_fatal (" Library '" // char (lib) &
            // "': libtool archive not found")
        dlname = ""
    else
        if (.not. quiet) call msg_message ("[No compiled library '" &
            // char (lib) // "']")
        dlname = ""
    end if
else
    dlname = lib // os_data%shlib_ext
    inquire (file=char(dlname), exist=exist)
    if (.not. exist) then
        if (required) then
            if (.not. quiet) call msg_fatal (" Library '" // char (lib) &
                // "' not found")
        else
            if (.not. quiet) call msg_message &
                ("[No compiled process library '" // char (lib) // "']")
            dlname = ""
        end if
    end if
end if
end function os_get_dlname

```

## 2.5.8 Controlling OpenMP

OpenMP is handled automatically by the library for the most part. Here is a convenience routine for setting the number of threads, with some diagnostics.

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
    public :: openmp_set_num_threads_verbose

<OS interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine openmp_set_num_threads_verbose (num_threads, openmp_logging)
        integer, intent(in) :: num_threads
        integer :: n_threads
        logical, intent(in), optional :: openmp_logging
        logical :: logging
        if (present (openmp_logging)) then
            logging = openmp_logging
        else
            logging = .true.
        end if
        n_threads = num_threads
        if (openmp_is_active ()) then
            if (num_threads == 1) then
                if (logging) then
                    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "OpenMP: Using ", num_threads, &
                        " thread"
                    call msg_message
                end if
            end if
            n_threads = num_threads
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

else if (num_threads > 1) then
  if (logging) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "OpenMP: Using ", num_threads, &
      " threads"
    call msg_message
  end if
  n_threads = num_threads
else
  if (logging) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "OpenMP: " &
      // "Illegal value of openmp_num_threads (", num_threads, &
      ") ignored"
    call msg_error
  end if
  n_threads = openmp_get_default_max_threads ()
  if (logging) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "OpenMP: Using ", &
      n_threads, " threads"
    call msg_message
  end if
end if
if (n_threads > openmp_get_default_max_threads ()) then
  if (logging) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)") "OpenMP: " &
      // "Number of threads is greater than library default of ", &
      openmp_get_default_max_threads ()
    call msg_warning
  end if
end if
call openmp_set_num_threads (n_threads)
else if (num_threads /= 1) then
  if (logging) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "openmp_num_threads set to ", &
      num_threads, ", but OpenMP is not active: ignored"
    call msg_warning
  end if
end if
end if
end subroutine openmp_set_num_threads_verbose

```

### 2.5.9 Unit tests

```

<OS interface: public>+≡
  public :: os_interface_test
<OS interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine os_interface_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <OS interface: execute tests>
  end subroutine os_interface_test

```

Write a Fortran source file, compile it to a shared library, load it, and execute the contained function.

```

<OS interface: execute tests>≡
    call test (os_interface_1, "os_interface_1", &
        "check OS interface routines", &
        u, results)

<OS interface: tests>≡
    subroutine os_interface_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(dlaccess_t) :: dlaccess
        type(string_t) :: fname, libname, ext
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(string_t) :: filename_src, filename_obj
        abstract interface
            function so_test_proc (i) result (j) bind(C)
                import c_int
                integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i
                integer(c_int) :: j
            end function so_test_proc
        end interface
        procedure(so_test_proc), pointer :: so_test => null ()
        type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr
        integer :: unit
        integer(c_int) :: i
        call os_data_init (os_data)
        fname = "so_test"
        filename_src = fname // os_data%fc_src_ext
        if (os_data%use_libtool) then
            ext = ".lo"
        else
            ext = os_data%obj_ext
        end if
        filename_obj = fname // ext
        libname = fname // os_data%shlib_ext

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: OS interface"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check os_interface routines"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* write source file 'so_test.f90'"
        write (u, "(A)")
        unit = free_unit ()
        open (unit=unit, file=char(filename_src), action="write")
        write (unit, "(A)") "function so_test (i) result (j) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i"
        write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: j"
        write (unit, "(A)") " j = 2 * i"
        write (unit, "(A)") "end function so_test"
        close (unit)
        write (u, "(A)")  "* compile and link as 'so_test.so/dylib'"
        write (u, "(A)")
        call os_compile_shared (fname, os_data)
        call os_link_shared (filename_obj, fname, os_data)
        write (u, "(A)")  "* load library 'so_test.so/dylib'"
        write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call dlaccess_init (dlaccess, var_str ("."), libname, os_data)
if (dlaccess_is_open (dlaccess)) then
    write (u, "(A)") "      success"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "      failure"
end if
write (u, "(A)")  "* load symbol 'so_test'"
write (u, "(A)")
c_fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (dlaccess, fname)
if (c_associated (c_fptr)) then
    write (u, "(A)") "      success"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "      failure"
end if
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, so_test)
write (u, "(A)") "* Execute function from 'so_test.so/dylib'"
i = 7
write (u, "(A,1x,I1)") "      input  = ", i
write (u, "(A,1x,I1)") "      result = ", so_test(i)
if (so_test(i) / i .ne. 2) then
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Compiling and linking ISO C functions failed."
else
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Successful."
end if
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
call dlaccess_final (dlaccess)
end subroutine os_interface_1

```

## 2.6 CPU timing

This is a simplified module which replaces `clock.f90` below. The time is now stored in a simple derived type which just holds a floating-point number.

`<cputime.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```
module cputime
```

*<Use kinds>*

*<Use file utils>*

*<Use strings>*

```
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
```

```
    use unit_tests
```

*<Standard module head>*

*<CPU time: public>*

*<CPU time: types>*

*<CPU time: interfaces>*

contains

*<CPU time: procedures>*

*<CPU time: tests>*

end module cputime

The CPU time is a floating-point number with an arbitrary reference time. It is single precision (default real, not `real(default)`). It is measured in seconds.

*<CPU time: public>*≡

public :: time\_t

*<CPU time: types>*≡

type :: time\_t

private

logical :: known = .false.

real :: value = 0

contains

*<CPU time: time: TBP>*

end type time\_t

*<CPU time: time: TBP>*≡

procedure :: write => time\_write

*<CPU time: procedures>*≡

subroutine time\_write (object, unit)

class(time\_t), intent(in) :: object

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit

integer :: u

u = output\_unit (unit)

write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Time in seconds ="

if (object%known) then

write (u, "(1x,ES10.3)") object%value

else

write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown]"

end if

end subroutine time\_write

Set the current time

*<CPU time: time: TBP>*+≡

procedure :: set\_current => time\_set\_current

*<CPU time: procedures>*+≡

subroutine time\_set\_current (time)

class(time\_t), intent(out) :: time

integer :: msec

call system\_clock (msec)

time%value = real (msec) / 1000.

time%known = time%value > 0

end subroutine time\_set\_current

Assign to a `real`(default value. If the time is undefined, return zero.

*<CPU time: public>*+≡

public :: assignment(=)



```

<CPU time: interfaces>+=
  interface assignment(=)
    module procedure real_assign_time
    module procedure real_default_assign_time
  end interface

```

```

<CPU time: procedures>+=
  pure subroutine real_assign_time (r, time)
    real, intent(out) :: r
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    if (time%known) then
      r = time%value
    else
      r = 0
    end if
  end subroutine real_assign_time

  pure subroutine real_default_assign_time (r, time)
    real(default), intent(out) :: r
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    if (time%known) then
      r = time%value
    else
      r = 0
    end if
  end subroutine real_default_assign_time

```

Assign an integer or (single precision) real value to the time object.

```

<CPU time: time: TBP>+=
  generic :: assignment(=) => time_assign_from_integer, time_assign_from_real
  procedure, private :: time_assign_from_integer
  procedure, private :: time_assign_from_real

```

```

<CPU time: procedures>+=
  subroutine time_assign_from_integer (time, ival)
    class(time_t), intent(out) :: time
    integer, intent(in) :: ival
    time%value = ival
    time%known = .true.
  end subroutine time_assign_from_integer

  subroutine time_assign_from_real (time, rval)
    class(time_t), intent(out) :: time
    real, intent(in) :: rval
    time%value = rval
    time%known = .true.
  end subroutine time_assign_from_real

```

Add times and compute time differences. If any input value is undefined, the result is undefined.

```

<CPU time: time: TBP>+=
  generic :: operator(-) => subtract_times
  generic :: operator(+) => add_times

```

```

    procedure, private :: subtract_times
    procedure, private :: add_times
<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    pure function subtract_times (t_end, t_begin) result (time)
        type(time_t) :: time
        class(time_t), intent(in) :: t_end, t_begin
        if (t_end%known .and. t_begin%known) then
            time%known = .true.
            time%value = t_end%value - t_begin%value
        end if
    end function subtract_times

    pure function add_times (t1, t2) result (time)
        type(time_t) :: time
        class(time_t), intent(in) :: t1, t2
        if (t1%known .and. t2%known) then
            time%known = .true.
            time%value = t1%value + t2%value
        end if
    end function add_times

```

Check if a time is known, so we can use it:

```

<CPU time: time: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_known => time_is_known
<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    function time_is_known (time) result (flag)
        class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
        logical :: flag
        flag = time%known
    end function time_is_known

```

We define functions for converting the time into ss / mm:ss / hh:mm:ss / dd:mm:hh:ss.

```

<CPU time: time: TBP>+≡
    generic :: expand => time_expand_s, time_expand_ms, &
        time_expand_hms, time_expand_dhms
    procedure, private :: time_expand_s
    procedure, private :: time_expand_ms
    procedure, private :: time_expand_hms
    procedure, private :: time_expand_dhms
<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    subroutine time_expand_s (time, sec)
        class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
        integer, intent(out) :: sec
        if (time%known) then
            sec = time%value
        else
            call msg_bug ("Time: attempt to expand undefined value")
        end if
    end subroutine time_expand_s

```

```

subroutine time_expand_ms (time, min, sec)
  class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
  integer, intent(out) :: min, sec
  if (time%known) then
    if (time%value >= 0) then
      sec = mod (int (time%value), 60)
    else
      sec = - mod (int (- time%value), 60)
    end if
    min = time%value / 60
  else
    call msg_bug ("Time: attempt to expand undefined value")
  end if
end subroutine time_expand_ms

subroutine time_expand_hms (time, hour, min, sec)
  class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
  integer, intent(out) :: hour, min, sec
  call time%expand (min, sec)
  hour = min / 60
  if (min >= 0) then
    min = mod (min, 60)
  else
    min = - mod (-min, 60)
  end if
end subroutine time_expand_hms

subroutine time_expand_dhms (time, day, hour, min, sec)
  class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
  integer, intent(out) :: day, hour, min, sec
  call time%expand (hour, min, sec)
  day = hour / 24
  if (hour >= 0) then
    hour = mod (hour, 24)
  else
    hour = - mod (- hour, 24)
  end if
end subroutine time_expand_dhms

```

Use the above expansions to generate a time string.

```

<CPU time: time: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: to_string_s => time_to_string_s
  procedure :: to_string_ms => time_to_string_ms
  procedure :: to_string_hms => time_to_string_hms
  procedure :: to_string_dhms => time_to_string_dhms

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
  function time_to_string_s (time) result (str)
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    type(string_t) :: str
    character(256) :: buffer
    integer :: s
    call time%expand (s)
    write (buffer, "(I0,'s')") s

```

```

    str = trim (buffer)
end function time_to_string_s

function time_to_string_ms (time, blank) result (str)
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    logical, intent(in), optional :: blank
    type(string_t) :: str
    character(256) :: buffer
    integer :: s, m
    logical :: x_out
    x_out = .false.
    if (present (blank)) x_out = blank
    call time%expand (m, s)
    write (buffer, "(I0,'m:',I2.2,'s')") m, abs (s)
    str = trim (buffer)
    if (x_out) then
        str = replace (str, len(str)-1, "X")
    end if
end function time_to_string_ms

function time_to_string_hms (time) result (str)
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    type(string_t) :: str
    character(256) :: buffer
    integer :: s, m, h
    call time%expand (h, m, s)
    write (buffer, "(I0,'h:',I2.2,'m:',I2.2,'s')") h, abs (m), abs (s)
    str = trim (buffer)
end function time_to_string_hms

function time_to_string_dhms (time) result (str)
    class(time_t), intent(in) :: time
    type(string_t) :: str
    character(256) :: buffer
    integer :: s, m, h, d
    call time%expand (d, h, m, s)
    write (buffer, "(I0,'d:',I2.2,'h:',I2.2,'m:',I2.2,'s')") &
        d, abs (h), abs (m), abs (s)
    str = trim (buffer)
end function time_to_string_dhms

```

### 2.6.1 Timer

A timer can measure real (wallclock) time differences. The base type corresponds to the result, i.e., time difference. The object contains two further times for start and stop time.

```

<CPU time: public>+≡
    public :: timer_t

<CPU time: types>+≡
    type, extends (time_t) :: timer_t
    private
    logical :: running = .false.

```

```

        type(timer_t) :: t1, t2
    contains
        <CPU time: timer: TBP>
    end type timer_t

```

Output. If the timer is running, we indicate this, otherwise write just the result.

```

<CPU time: timer: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => timer_write

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    subroutine timer_write (object, unit)
        class(timer_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (object%running) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "Time in seconds = [running]"
        else
            call object%time_t%write (u)
        end if
    end subroutine timer_write

```

Start the timer: store the current time in the first entry and adapt the status. We forget any previous values.

```

<CPU time: timer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: start => timer_start

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    subroutine timer_start (timer)
        class(timer_t), intent(out) :: timer
        call timer%t1%set_current ()
        timer%running = .true.
    end subroutine timer_start

```

Restart the timer: simply adapt the status, keeping the start time.

```

<CPU time: timer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: restart => timer_restart

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
    subroutine timer_restart (timer)
        class(timer_t), intent(inout) :: timer
        if (timer%t1%known .and. .not. timer%running) then
            timer%running = .true.
        else
            call msg_bug ("Timer: restart attempt from wrong status")
        end if
    end subroutine timer_restart

```

Stop the timer: store the current time in the second entry, adapt the status, and compute the elapsed time.

```

<CPU time: timer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: stop => timer_stop

```

```

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
  subroutine timer_stop (timer)
    class(timer_t), intent(inout) :: timer
    call timer%t2%set_current ()
    timer%running = .false.
    call timer%evaluate ()
  end subroutine timer_stop

```

This is separate, available for the unit test.

```

<CPU time: timer: TBP>+≡
  procedure, private :: evaluate => timer_evaluate

<CPU time: procedures>+≡
  subroutine timer_evaluate (timer)
    class(timer_t), intent(inout) :: timer
    timer%time_t = timer%t2 - timer%t1
  end subroutine timer_evaluate

```

## 2.6.2 Unit tests

```

<CPU time: public>+≡
  public :: cputime_test

<CPU time: tests>≡
  subroutine cputime_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <CPU time: execute tests>
  end subroutine cputime_test

```

### Basic tests

Check basic functions of the time object. The part which we can't check is getting the actual time from the system clock, since the output will not be reproducible. However, we can check time formats and operations.

```

<CPU time: execute tests>≡
  call test (cputime_1, "cputime_1", &
    "time operations", &
    u, results)

<CPU time: tests>+≡
  subroutine cputime_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(time_t) :: time, time1, time2
    real :: t
    integer :: d, h, m, s

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: cputime_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check time operations"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Undefined time"

```

```

write (u, *)

call time%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Set time to zero"
write (u, *)

time = 0
call time%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Set time to 1.234 s"
write (u, *)

time = 1.234
call time%write (u)

t = time
write (u, "(1x,A,F6.3)") "Time as real =", t

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Compute time difference"
write (u, *)

time1 = 5.33
time2 = 7.55
time = time2 - time1

call time1%write (u)
call time2%write (u)
call time%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Compute time sum"
write (u, *)

time = time2 + time1

call time1%write (u)
call time2%write (u)
call time%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Expand time"
write (u, *)

time1 = ((24 + 1) * 60 + 1) * 60 + 1
time2 = ((3 * 24 + 23) * 60 + 59) * 60 + 59

call time1%expand (s)
write (u, 1) "s =", s
call time1%expand (m,s)
write (u, 1) "ms =", m, s

```

```

call time1%expand (h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "hms =", h, m, s
call time1%expand (d,h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "dhms =", d, h, m, s

call time2%expand (s)
write (u, 1) "s =", s
call time2%expand (m,s)
write (u, 1) "ms =", m, s
call time2%expand (h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "hms =", h, m, s
call time2%expand (d,h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "dhms =", d, h, m, s

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Expand negative time"
write (u, *)

time1 = - (((24 + 1) * 60 + 1) * 60 + 1)
time2 = - (((3 * 24 + 23) * 60 + 59) * 60 + 59)

call time1%expand (s)
write (u, 1) "s =", s
call time1%expand (m,s)
write (u, 1) "ms =", m, s
call time1%expand (h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "hms =", h, m, s
call time1%expand (d,h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "dhms =", d, h, m, s

call time2%expand (s)
write (u, 1) "s =", s
call time2%expand (m,s)
write (u, 1) "ms =", m, s
call time2%expand (h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "hms =", h, m, s
call time2%expand (d,h,m,s)
write (u, 1) "dhms =", d, h, m, s

1 format (1x,A,1x,4(I0,:,':'))

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* String from time"
write (u, *)

time1 = ((24 + 1) * 60 + 1) * 60 + 1
time2 = ((3 * 24 + 23) * 60 + 59) * 60 + 59

write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_s ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_ms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_hms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_dhms ())

write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_s ())

```



```

write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_ms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_hms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_dhms ())

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Blanking out the last second entry"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_ms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_ms (.true.))

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* String from negative time"
write (u, *)

time1 = -(((24 + 1) * 60 + 1) * 60 + 1)
time2 = -(((3 * 24 + 23) * 60 + 59) * 60 + 59)

write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_s ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_ms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_hms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time1%to_string_dhms ())

write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_s ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_ms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_hms ())
write (u, "(A)") char (time2%to_string_dhms ())

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: cputime_1"

end subroutine cputime_1

```

## Timer tests

Check a timer object.

```

<CPU time: execute tests>+≡
  call test (cputime_2, "cputime_2", &
    "timer", &
    u, results)

<CPU time: tests>+≡
subroutine cputime_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(timer_t) :: timer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: cputime_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check timer"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Undefined timer"
  write (u, *)

```

```

call timer%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Start timer"
write (u, *)

call timer%start ()
call timer%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Stop timer (injecting fake timings)"
write (u, *)

call timer%stop ()
timer%t1 = 2
timer%t2 = 5
call timer%evaluate ()
call timer%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Restart timer"
write (u, *)

call timer%restart ()
call timer%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Stop timer again (injecting fake timing)"
write (u, *)

call timer%stop ()
timer%t2 = 10
call timer%evaluate ()
call timer%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: cputime_2"

end subroutine cputime_2

```

## 2.7 Hashtables

Hash tables, like lists, are not part of Fortran and must be defined on a per-case basis. In this section we define a module that contains a hash function.

Furthermore, for reference there is a complete framework of hashtable type definitions and access functions. This code is to be replicated where hash tables are used, mutatis mutandis.

```

<hashes.f90>≡
  <File header>

```

```

module hashes

```

```

    use kinds, only: i8, i32 !NODEP!
    use bytes

    <Standard module head>

    <Hashes: public>

contains

    <Hashes: procedures>

end module hashes

```

### 2.7.1 The hash function

This is the one-at-a-time hash function by Bob Jenkins (from Wikipedia), re-implemented in Fortran. The function works on an array of bytes (8-bit integers), as could be produced by, e.g., the `transfer` function, and returns a single 32-bit integer. For determining the position in a hashtable, one can pick the lower bits of the result as appropriate to the hashtable size (which should be a power of 2). Note that we are working on signed integers, so the interpretation of values differs from the C version. This should not matter in practice, however.

```

    <Hashes: public>≡
        public :: hash

    <Hashes: procedures>≡
        function hash (key) result (hashval)
            integer(i32) :: hashval
            integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key
            type(word32_t) :: w
            integer :: i
            w = 0_i32
            do i = 1, size (key)
                w = w + key(i)
                w = w + ishft (w, 10)
                w = ieor (w, ishft (w, -6))
            end do
            w = w + ishft (w, 3)
            w = ieor (w, ishft (w, -11))
            w = w + ishft (w, 15)
            hashval = w
        end function hash

```

### 2.7.2 The hash table

We define a generic hashtable type (that depends on the `hash_data_t` type) together with associated methods.

This is a template:

```

    <Hashtables: types>≡

```

```

type :: hash_data_t
  integer :: i
end type hash_data_t

```

Associated methods:

*(Hashtables: procedures)*≡

```

subroutine hash_data_final (data)
  type(hash_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
end subroutine hash_data_final

subroutine hash_data_write (data, unit)
  type(hash_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, *) data%i
end subroutine hash_data_write

```

Each hash entry stores the unmasked hash value, the key, and points to actual data if present. Note that this could be an allocatable scalar in principle, but making it a pointer avoids deep copy when expanding the hashtable.

*(Hashtables: types)*+≡

```

type :: hash_entry_t
  integer(i32) :: hashval = 0
  integer(i8), dimension(:), allocatable :: key
  type(hash_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
end type hash_entry_t

```

The hashtable object holds the actual table, the number of filled entries and the number of entries after which the size should be doubled. The mask is equal to the table size minus one and thus coincides with the upper bound of the table index, which starts at zero.

*(Hashtables: types)*+≡

```

type :: hashtable_t
  integer :: n_entries = 0
  real :: fill_ratio = 0
  integer :: n_entries_max = 0
  integer(i32) :: mask = 0
  type(hash_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
end type hashtable_t

```

Initializer: The size has to be a power of two, the fill ratio is a real (machine-default!) number between 0 and 1.

*(Hashtables: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine hashtable_init (hashtable, size, fill_ratio)
  type(hashtable_t), intent(out) :: hashtable
  integer, intent(in) :: size
  real, intent(in) :: fill_ratio
  hashtable%fill_ratio = fill_ratio
  hashtable%n_entries_max = size * fill_ratio
  hashtable%mask = size - 1

```

```

        allocate (hashtable%entry (0:hashtable%mask))
    end subroutine hashtable_init

```

Finalizer: This calls a `hash_data_final` subroutine which must exist.

```

(Hashtables: procedures) +=
subroutine hashtable_final (hashtable)
    type(hashtable_t), intent(inout) :: hashtable
    integer :: i
    do i = 0, hashtable%mask
        if (associated (hashtable%entry(i)%data)) then
            call hash_data_final (hashtable%entry(i)%data)
            deallocate (hashtable%entry(i)%data)
        end if
    end do
    deallocate (hashtable%entry)
end subroutine hashtable_final

```

Output. Here, we refer to a `hash_data_write` subroutine.

```

(Hashtables: procedures) +=
subroutine hashtable_write (hashtable, unit)
    type(hashtable_t), intent(in) :: hashtable
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    do i = 0, hashtable%mask
        if (associated (hashtable%entry(i)%data)) then
            write (u, *) i, "(hash =", hashtable%entry(i)%hashval, ")", &
                hashtable%entry(i)%key
            call hash_data_write (hashtable%entry(i)%data, unit)
        end if
    end do
end subroutine hashtable_write

```

### 2.7.3 Hashtable insertion

Insert a single entry with the hash value as trial place. If the table is filled, first expand it.

```

(Hashtables: procedures) +=
subroutine hashtable_insert (hashtable, key, data)
    type(hashtable_t), intent(inout) :: hashtable
    integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key
    type(hash_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    integer(i32) :: h
    if (hashtable%n_entries >= hashtable%n_entries_max) &
        call hashtable_expand (hashtable)
    h = hash (key)
    call hashtable_insert_rec (hashtable, h, h, key, data)
end subroutine hashtable_insert

```

We need this auxiliary routine for doubling the size of the hashtable. We rely on the fact that default assignment copies the data pointer, not the data themselves. The temporary array must not be finalized; it is deallocated automatically together with its allocatable components.

```

(Hashtables: procedures) +=
subroutine hashtable_expand (hashtable)
  type(hashtable_t), intent(inout) :: hashtable
  type(hash_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: table_tmp
  integer :: i, s
  allocate (table_tmp (0:hashtable%mask))
  table_tmp = hashtable%entry
  deallocate (hashtable%entry)
  s = 2 * size (table_tmp)
  hashtable%n_entries = 0
  hashtable%n_entries_max = s * hashtable%fill_ratio
  hashtable%mask = s - 1
  allocate (hashtable%entry (0:hashtable%mask))
  do i = 0, ubound (table_tmp, 1)
    if (associated (table_tmp(i)%data)) then
      call hashtable_insert_rec (hashtable, table_tmp(i)%hashval, &
        table_tmp(i)%hashval, table_tmp(i)%key, table_tmp(i)%data)
    end if
  end do
end subroutine hashtable_expand

```

Insert a single entry at a trial place  $h$ , reduced to the table size. Collision resolution is done simply by choosing the next element, recursively until the place is empty. For bookkeeping, we preserve the original hash value. For a good hash function, there should be no clustering.

Note that if the new key exactly matches an existing key, nothing is done.

```

(Hashtables: procedures) +=
recursive subroutine hashtable_insert_rec (hashtable, h, hashval, key, data)
  type(hashtable_t), intent(inout) :: hashtable
  integer(i32), intent(in) :: h, hashval
  integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key
  type(hash_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
  integer(i32) :: i
  i = iand (h, hashtable%mask)
  if (associated (hashtable%entry(i)%data)) then
    if (size (hashtable%entry(i)%key) /= size (key)) then
      call hashtable_insert_rec (hashtable, h + 1, hashval, key, data)
    else if (any (hashtable%entry(i)%key /= key)) then
      call hashtable_insert_rec (hashtable, h + 1, hashval, key, data)
    end if
  else
    hashtable%entry(i)%hashval = hashval
    allocate (hashtable%entry(i)%key (size (key)))
    hashtable%entry(i)%key = key
    hashtable%entry(i)%data => data
    hashtable%n_entries = hashtable%n_entries + 1
  end if
end subroutine hashtable_insert_rec

```

## 2.7.4 Hashtable lookup

The lookup function has to parallel the insert function. If the place is filled, check if the key matches. Yes: return the pointer; no: increment the hash value and check again.

```
(Hashtables: procedures) +=  
  function hashtable_lookup (hashtable, key) result (ptr)  
    type(hash_data_t), pointer :: ptr  
    type(hashtable_t), intent(in) :: hashtable  
    integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key  
    ptr => hashtable_lookup_rec (hashtable, hash (key), key)  
  end function hashtable_lookup  
  
(Hashtables: procedures) +=  
  recursive function hashtable_lookup_rec (hashtable, h, key) result (ptr)  
    type(hash_data_t), pointer :: ptr  
    type(hashtable_t), intent(in) :: hashtable  
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: h  
    integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key  
    integer(i32) :: i  
    i = iand (h, hashtable%mask)  
    if (associated (hashtable%entry(i)%data)) then  
      if (size (hashtable%entry(i)%key) == size (key)) then  
        if (all (hashtable%entry(i)%key == key)) then  
          ptr => hashtable%entry(i)%data  
        else  
          ptr => hashtable_lookup_rec (hashtable, h + 1, key)  
        end if  
      else  
        ptr => hashtable_lookup_rec (hashtable, h + 1, key)  
      end if  
    else  
      ptr => null ()  
    end if  
  end function hashtable_lookup_rec  
  
(Hashtables: public) =  
  public :: hashtable_test  
  
(Hashtables: procedures) +=  
  subroutine hashtable_test ()  
    type(hash_data_t), pointer :: data  
    type(hashtable_t) :: hashtable  
    integer(i8) :: i  
    call hashtable_init (hashtable, 16, 0.25)  
    do i = 1, 10  
      allocate (data)  
      data%i = i*i  
      call hashtable_insert (hashtable, [i, i+i], data)  
    end do  
    call hashtable_insert (hashtable, [2_i8, 4_i8], data)  
    call hashtable_write (hashtable)  
    data => hashtable_lookup (hashtable, [5_i8, 10_i8])  
    if (associated (data)) then
```

```

        print *, "lookup:", data%i
    else
        print *, "lookup: --"
    end if
    data => hashtable_lookup (hashtable, [6_i8, 12_i8])
    if (associated (data)) then
        print *, "lookup:", data%i
    else
        print *, "lookup: --"
    end if
    data => hashtable_lookup (hashtable, [4_i8, 9_i8])
    if (associated (data)) then
        print *, "lookup:", data%i
    else
        print *, "lookup: --"
    end if
    call hashtable_final (hashtable)
end subroutine hashtable_test

```

## 2.8 Message and signal handling

We are not so ambitious as to do proper exception handling in WHIZARD, but at least it may be useful to have a common interface for diagnostics: Results, messages, warnings, and such. As module variables we keep a buffer where the current message may be written to and a level indicator which tells which messages should be written on screen and which ones should be skipped. Alternatively, a string may be directly supplied to the message routine: this overrides the buffer, avoiding the necessity of formatted I/O in trivial cases.

```

<diagnostics.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module diagnostics

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    use system_dependencies !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: BUFFER_SIZE, MAX_ERRORS !NODEP!
    use file_utils !NODEP!
    use iso_fortran_env, only: &
      stdout => output_unit, stdin => input_unit !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <Diagnostics: public>

    <Diagnostics: parameters>

    <Diagnostics: types>

    <Diagnostics: variables>

```



*<Diagnostics: interfaces>*

contains

*<Diagnostics: procedures>*

end module diagnostics

Diagnostics levels:

*<Diagnostics: parameters>*≡

```
integer, parameter :: &
    & TERMINATE=-2, BUG=-1, &
    & FATAL=1, ERROR=2, WARNING=3, MESSAGE=4, RESULT=5, DEBUG=6
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>*≡

```
integer, save :: msg_level = RESULT
```

Mask fatal errors so that are treated as normal errors. Useful for interactive mode.

*<Diagnostics: public>*≡

```
public :: mask_fatal_errors
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>*+≡

```
logical, save :: mask_fatal_errors = .false.
```

How to handle bugs and unmasked fatal errors. Either execute a normal stop statement, or call the C `exit()` function, or try to cause a program crash by dereferencing a null pointer.

*<Diagnostics: parameters>*+≡

```
integer, parameter :: TERM_STOP = 0, TERM_EXIT = 1, TERM_CRASH = 2
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>*+≡

```
integer, save :: handle_fatal_errors = TERM_EXIT
```

Keep track of errors. This might be used for exception handling, later. The counter is incremented only for screen messages, to avoid double counting.

*<Diagnostics: public>*+≡

```
public :: msg_count
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>*+≡

```
integer, dimension(TERMINATE:DEBUG), save :: msg_count = 0
```

Keep a list of all errors and warnings. Since we do not know the number of entries beforehand, we use a linked list.

*<Diagnostics: types>*≡

```
type :: string_list
    character(len=BUFFER_SIZE) :: string
    type(string_list), pointer :: next
end type string_list
type :: string_list_pointer
    type(string_list), pointer :: first, last
end type string_list_pointer
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>*+≡

```
type(string_list_pointer), dimension(TERMINATE:WARNING), save :: &
    & msg_list = string_list_pointer (null(), null())
```

Add the current message buffer contents to the internal list.

```

<Diagnostics: procedures>≡
subroutine msg_add (level)
  integer, intent(in) :: level
  type(string_list), pointer :: message
  select case (level)
  case (TERMINATE:WARNING)
    allocate (message)
    message%string = msg_buffer
    nullify (message%next)
    if (.not.associated (msg_list(level)%first)) &
      & msg_list(level)%first => message
    if (associated (msg_list(level)%last)) &
      & msg_list(level)%last%next => message
    msg_list(level)%last => message
    msg_count(level) = msg_count(level) + 1
  end select
end subroutine msg_add

```

Initialization:

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
public :: msg_list_clear

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
subroutine msg_list_clear
  integer :: level
  type(string_list), pointer :: message
  do level = TERMINATE, WARNING
    do while (associated (msg_list(level)%first))
      message => msg_list(level)%first
      msg_list(level)%first => message%next
      deallocate (message)
    end do
    nullify (msg_list(level)%last)
  end do
  msg_count = 0
end subroutine msg_list_clear

```

Display the summary of errors and warnings (no need to count fatals...)

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
public :: msg_summary

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
subroutine msg_summary (unit)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  call expect_summary (unit)
1  format (A,1x,I2,1x,A,I2,1x,A)
  if (msg_count(ERROR) > 0 .and. msg_count(WARNING) > 0) then
    write (msg_buffer, 1) "There were", &
      & msg_count(ERROR), "error(s) and ", &
      & msg_count(WARNING), "warning(s). "
    call msg_message (unit=unit)
  else if (msg_count(ERROR) > 0) then
    write (msg_buffer, 1) "There were", &

```

```

        & msg_count(ERROR), "error(s) and no warnings."
    call msg_message (unit=unit)
else if (msg_count(WARNING) > 0) then
    write (msg_buffer, 1) "There were no errors and ", &
        & msg_count(WARNING), "warning(s)."
    call msg_message (unit=unit)
end if
end subroutine msg_summary

```

Print the list of all messages of a given level.

*<Diagnostics: public>+≡*

```
public :: msg_listing
```

*<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine msg_listing (level, unit, prefix)
    integer, intent(in) :: level
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: prefix
    type(string_list), pointer :: message
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    if (present (unit)) u = unit
    message => msg_list(level)%first
    do while (associated (message))
        if (present (prefix)) then
            write (u, "(A)") prefix // trim (message%string)
        else
            write (u, "(A)") trim (message%string)
        end if
        message => message%next
    end do
    flush (u)
end subroutine msg_listing

```

There is a hard limit on the line length which we should export. This buffer size is used both by the message handler and by the lexer below.

*<Limits: public parameters>+≡*

```
integer, parameter, public :: BUFFER_SIZE = 1000
```

The message buffer:

*<Diagnostics: public>+≡*

```
public :: msg_buffer
```

*<Diagnostics: variables>+≡*

```
character(len=BUFFER_SIZE), save :: msg_buffer = " "
```

After a message is issued, the buffer should be cleared:

*<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine buffer_clear
    msg_buffer = " "
end subroutine buffer_clear

```

The generic handler for messages. If the unit is omitted (or = 6), the message is written to standard output if the precedence is sufficiently high (as determined by the value of `msg_level`). If the string is omitted, the buffer is used. In any case, the buffer is cleared after printing. In accordance with FORTRAN custom, the first column in the output is left blank. For messages and warnings, an additional exclamation mark and a blank is prepended. Furthermore, each message is appended to the internal message list (without prepending anything).

*(Diagnostics: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine message_print (level, string, str_arr, unit, logfile)
  integer, intent(in) :: level
  character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: str_arr
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: logfile
  type(string_t) :: prep_string, aux_string, head_footer
  integer :: lu, i
  logical :: severe, is_error
  severe = .false.
  head_footer = "*****"
  aux_string = ""
  is_error = .false.
  select case (level)
  case (TERMINATE)
    prep_string = ""
  case (BUG)
    prep_string = "*** WHIZARD BUG: "
    aux_string = "***"
    severe = .true.
    is_error = .true.
  case (FATAL)
    prep_string = "*** FATAL ERROR: "
    aux_string = "***"
    severe = .true.
    is_error = .true.
  case (ERROR)
    prep_string = "*** ERROR: "
    aux_string = "***"
    is_error = .true.
  case (WARNING)
    prep_string = "Warning: "
  case (MESSAGE, DEBUG)
    prep_string = "| "
  case default
    prep_string = ""
  end select
  if (present(string)) msg_buffer = string
  lu = log_unit
  if (present(unit)) then
    if (unit /= stdout) then
      if (severe) write (unit, "(A)") char(head_footer)
      if (is_error) write (unit, "(A)") char(head_footer)
      write (unit, "(A,A)") char(prep_string), trim(msg_buffer)
      if (present (str_arr)) then

```

```

        do i = 1, size(str_arr)
            write (unit, "(A,A)") char(aux_string), char(trim(str_arr(i)))
        end do
    end if
    if (is_error) write (unit, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    if (severe) write (unit, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    flush (unit)
    lu = -1
else if (level <= msg_level) then
    if (severe) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    if (is_error) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    print "(A,A)", char(prepare_string), trim(msg_buffer)
    if (present (str_arr)) then
        do i = 1, size(str_arr)
            print "(A,A)", char(aux_string), char(trim(str_arr(i)))
        end do
    end if
    if (is_error) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    if (severe) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    flush (stdout)
    if (unit == log_unit) lu = -1
end if
else if (level <= msg_level) then
    if (severe) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    if (is_error) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    print "(A,A)", char(prepare_string), trim(msg_buffer)
    if (present (str_arr)) then
        do i = 1, size(str_arr)
            print "(A,A)", char(aux_string), char(trim(str_arr(i)))
        end do
    end if
    if (is_error) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    if (severe) print "(A)", char(head_footer)
    flush (stdout)
end if
if (present (logfile)) then
    if (.not. logfile) lu = -1
end if
if (logging .and. lu >= 0) then
    if (severe) write (lu, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    if (is_error) write (lu, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    write (lu, "(A,A)") char(prepare_string), trim(msg_buffer)
    if (present (str_arr)) then
        do i = 1, size(str_arr)
            write (lu, "(A,A)") char(aux_string), char(trim(str_arr(i)))
        end do
    end if
    if (is_error) write (lu, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    if (severe) write (lu, "(A)") char(head_footer)
    flush (lu)
end if
call msg_add (level)
call buffer_clear
end subroutine message_print

```

The specific handlers. In the case of fatal errors, bugs (failed assertions) and normal termination execution is stopped. For non-fatal errors a message is printed to standard output if no unit is given. Only if the number of MAX\_ERRORS errors is reached, we abort the program. There are no further actions in the other cases, but this may change.

*(Diagnostics: public)*+≡

```
public :: msg_terminate
public :: msg_bug, msg_fatal, msg_error, msg_warning
public :: msg_message, msg_result, msg_debug
```

*(Diagnostics: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine msg_terminate (string, unit, quit_code)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
  integer, intent(in), optional :: quit_code
  integer(c_int) :: return_code
  call release_term_signals ()
  if (present (quit_code)) then
    return_code = quit_code
  else
    return_code = 0
  end if
  if (present (string)) &
    call message_print (MESSAGE, string, unit=unit)
  call msg_summary (unit)
  if (return_code == 0 .and. expect_failures /= 0) then
    return_code = 5
    call message_print (MESSAGE, &
      "WHIZARD run finished with 'expect' failure(s).", unit=unit)
  else if (return_code == 7) then
    call message_print (MESSAGE, &
      "WHIZARD run finished with failed self-test.", unit=unit)
  else
    call message_print (MESSAGE, "WHIZARD run finished.", unit=unit)
  end if
  call message_print (0, &
    "|=====|", unit=u
  call logfile_final ()
  call msg_list_clear ()
  if (return_code /= 0) then
    call exit (return_code)
  else
    !!! Should implement WHIZARD exit code (currently only via C)
    ! stop
    call exit (0)
  end if
end subroutine msg_terminate

subroutine msg_bug (string, arr, unit)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
  logical, pointer :: crash_ptr
```

```

call message_print (BUG, string, arr, unit)
call msg_summary (unit)
select case (handle_fatal_errors)
case (TERM_EXIT)
    call message_print (TERMINATE, "WHIZARD run aborted.", unit=unit)
    call exit (-1_c_int)
case (TERM_CRASH)
    print *, "*** Intentional crash ***"
    crash_ptr => null ()
    print *, crash_ptr
end select
stop "WHIZARD run aborted."
end subroutine msg_bug

recursive subroutine msg_fatal (string, arr, unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
logical, pointer :: crash_ptr
if (mask_fatal_errors) then
    call msg_error (string, arr, unit)
else
    call message_print (FATAL, string, arr, unit)
    call msg_summary (unit)
    select case (handle_fatal_errors)
    case (TERM_EXIT)
        call message_print (TERMINATE, "WHIZARD run aborted.", unit=unit)
        call exit (1_c_int)
    case (TERM_CRASH)
        print *, "*** Intentional crash ***"
        crash_ptr => null ()
        print *, crash_ptr
    end select
    stop "WHIZARD run aborted."
end if
end subroutine msg_fatal

subroutine msg_error (string, arr, unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
call message_print (ERROR, string, arr, unit)
if (msg_count(ERROR) >= MAX_ERRORS) then
    mask_fatal_errors = .false.
    call msg_fatal (" Too many errors encountered.")
else if (.not.present(unit) .and. .not.mask_fatal_errors) then
    call message_print (MESSAGE, "                (WHIZARD run continues)")
end if
end subroutine msg_error

subroutine msg_warning (string, arr, unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr

```

```

    call message_print (WARNING, string, arr, unit)
end subroutine msg_warning

subroutine msg_message (string, unit, arr, logfile)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
    logical, intent(in), optional :: logfile
    call message_print (MESSAGE, string, arr, unit, logfile)
end subroutine msg_message

subroutine msg_result (string, arr, unit, logfile)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
    logical, intent(in), optional :: logfile
    call message_print (RESULT, string, arr, unit, logfile)
end subroutine msg_result

subroutine msg_debug (string, arr, unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: string
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: arr
    call message_print (DEBUG, string, arr, unit)
end subroutine msg_debug

```

Interface to the standard clib exit function

*<Diagnostics: interfaces>*≡

```

interface
    subroutine exit (status) bind (C)
        use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
        integer(c_int), value :: status
    end subroutine exit
end interface

```

*<Limits: public parameters>*+≡

```

integer, parameter, public :: MAX_ERRORS = 10

```

Print the WHIZARD banner:

*<Diagnostics: public>*+≡

```

public :: msg_banner

```

*<Diagnostics: procedures>*+≡

```

subroutine msg_banner (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: n_proc
    call message_print (0, "|=====|")
    call message_print (0, "|")
    call message_print (0, "|    WW          WW WW  WW WW  WWWWWW    WW    WWWWW  WWWWW")
    call message_print (0, "|    WW  WW    WW  WW  WW  WW    WW    WWWW    WW  WW  WW")
    call message_print (0, "|    WW WW WW  WW  WWWWWWW  WW    WW    WW  WW  WWWWW  WW")
    call message_print (0, "|    WWW  WWWW    WW  WW  WW  WW    WWWWWWWW  WW  WW  WW")
    call message_print (0, "|    WW    WW    WW  WW  WW  WW  WWWWWW  WW    WW  WW  WW  WWWWW")
    call message_print (0, "|")

```





```

    public :: logging
<Diagnostics: variables>+≡
    integer, save :: log_unit = -1
    logical, target, save :: logging = .false.
<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: logfile_init
<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine logfile_init (filename)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
        call msg_message ("Writing log to '" // char (filename) // "'")
        if (.not. logging) call msg_message ("(Logging turned off.)")
        log_unit = free_unit ()
        open (file = char (filename), unit = log_unit, &
            action = "write", status = "replace")
    end subroutine logfile_init

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: logfile_final
<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine logfile_final ()
        if (log_unit >= 0) then
            close (log_unit)
            log_unit = -1
        end if
    end subroutine logfile_final

```

This returns the valid logfile unit only if the default is write to screen, and if logfile is not set false.

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: logfile_unit
<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    function logfile_unit (unit, logfile)
        integer :: logfile_unit
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: logfile
        if (logging) then
            if (present (unit)) then
                if (unit == stdout) then
                    logfile_unit = log_unit
                else
                    logfile_unit = -1
                end if
            else if (present (logfile)) then
                if (logfile) then
                    logfile_unit = log_unit
                else
                    logfile_unit = -1
                end if
            else
                logfile_unit = log_unit
            end if
        end if
    end function logfile_unit

```

```

    else
        logfile_unit = -1
    end if
end function logfile_unit

```

## 2.8.2 Checking values

The `expect` function does not just check a value for correctness (actually, it checks if a logical expression is true); it records its result here. If failures are present when the program terminates, the exit code is nonzero.

```

<Diagnostics: variables>+≡
    integer, save :: expect_total = 0
    integer, save :: expect_failures = 0

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: expect_record

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine expect_record (success)
        logical, intent(in) :: success
        expect_total = expect_total + 1
        if (.not. success) expect_failures = expect_failures + 1
    end subroutine expect_record

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: expect_clear

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine expect_clear ()
        expect_total = 0
        expect_failures = 0
    end subroutine expect_clear

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: expect_summary

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine expect_summary (unit, force)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: force
        logical :: force_output
        force_output = .false.; if (present (force)) force_output = force
        if (expect_total /= 0 .or. force_output) then
            call msg_message ("Summary of value checks:", unit)
            write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A,1x,I0,1x,A,1x,A,1x,I0)") &
                "Failures:", expect_failures, "/", "Total:", expect_total
            call msg_message (unit=unit)
        end if
    end subroutine expect_summary

```

Helpers for converting integers into strings with minimal length.

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
  public :: int2string
  public :: int2char
  public :: int2fixed

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
  pure function int2fixed (i) result (c)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    character(200) :: c
    c = ""
    write (c, *) i
    c = adjustl (c)
  end function int2fixed

  pure function int2string (i) result (s)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type (string_t) :: s
    s = trim (int2fixed (i))
  end function int2string

  pure function int2char (i) result (c)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    character(len (trim (int2fixed (i)))) :: c
    c = int2fixed (i)
  end function int2char

```

Dito for reals.

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
  public :: real2string
  public :: real2char
  public :: real2fixed

<Diagnostics: interfaces>+≡
  interface real2string
    module procedure real2string_list, real2string_fmt
  end interface
  interface real2char
    module procedure real2char_list, real2char_fmt
  end interface

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
  pure function real2fixed (x, fmt) result (c)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    character(*), intent(in), optional :: fmt
    character(200) :: c
    c = ""
    write (c, *) x
    c = adjustl (c)
  end function real2fixed

  pure function real2fixed_fmt (x, fmt) result (c)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    character(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    character(200) :: c

```

```

    c = ""
    write (c, fmt) x
    c = adjustl (c)
end function real2fixed_fmt

pure function real2string_list (x) result (s)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    type(string_t) :: s
    s = trim (real2fixed (x))
end function real2string_list

pure function real2string_fmt (x, fmt) result (s)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    character(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    type(string_t) :: s
    s = trim (real2fixed_fmt (x, fmt))
end function real2string_fmt

pure function real2char_list (x) result (c)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    character(len_trim (real2fixed (x))) :: c
    c = real2fixed (x)
end function real2char_list

pure function real2char_fmt (x, fmt) result (c)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    character(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    character(len_trim (real2fixed_fmt (x, fmt))) :: c
    c = real2fixed_fmt (x, fmt)
end function real2char_fmt

```

Dito for complex values; we do not use the slightly ugly FORTRAN output form here but instead introduce our own. Ifort and Portland seem to have problems with this, therefore temporarily disable it.

```

<CCC Diagnostics: public>≡
    public :: cmplx2string
    public :: cmplx2char

<CCC Diagnostics: procedures>≡
    pure function cmplx2string (x) result (s)
        complex(default), intent(in) :: x
        type(string_t) :: s
        s = real2string (real (x, default))
        if (aimag (x) /= 0) s = s // " + " // real2string (aimag (x)) // " I"
    end function cmplx2string

    pure function cmplx2char (x) result (c)
        complex(default), intent(in) :: x
        character(len (char (cmplx2string (x)))) :: c
        c = char (cmplx2string (x))
    end function cmplx2char

```

### 2.8.3 Suppression of numerical noise

```
<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: pacify

<Diagnostics: interfaces>+≡
    interface pacify
        module procedure pacify_real_default
        module procedure pacify_complex_default
    end interface pacify

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine pacify_real_default (x, tolerance)
        real(default), intent(inout) :: x
        real(default), intent(in) :: tolerance
        if (abs (x) < tolerance) x = 0
    end subroutine pacify_real_default

    elemental subroutine pacify_complex_default (x, tolerance)
        complex(default), intent(inout) :: x
        real(default), intent(in) :: tolerance
        if (abs (real (x)) < tolerance) &
            x = cmplx (0._default, aimag (x), kind=default)
        if (abs (aimag (x)) < tolerance) &
            x = cmplx (real (x), 0._default, kind=default)
    end subroutine pacify_complex_default
```

### 2.8.4 Signal handling

Killing the program by external signals may leave the files written by it in an undefined state. This can be avoided by catching signals and deferring program termination. Instead of masking only critical sections, we choose to mask signals globally (done in the main program) and terminate the program at predefined checkpoints only. Checkpoints are after each command, within the sampling function (so the program can be terminated after each event), and after each iteration in the phase-space generation algorithm.

Signal handling is done via a C interface to the `sigaction` system call. When a signal is raised that has been masked by the handler, the corresponding variable is set to the value of the signal. The variables are visible from the C signal handler.

The signal `SIGINT` is for keyboard interrupt (ctrl-C), `SIGTERM` is for system interrupt, e.g., at shutdown. The `SIGXCPU` and `SIGXFSZ` signals may be issued by batch systems.

```
<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: wo_sigint
    public :: wo_sigterm
    public :: wo_sigxcpu
    public :: wo_sigxfsz
```

```

<Diagnostics: variables>+≡
    integer(c_int), bind(C), volatile :: wo_sigint = 0
    integer(c_int), bind(C), volatile :: wo_sigterm = 0
    integer(c_int), bind(C), volatile :: wo_sigxcpu = 0
    integer(c_int), bind(C), volatile :: wo_sigxfsz = 0

```

Here are the interfaces to the C functions. The routine `mask_term_signals` forces termination signals to be delayed. `release_term_signals` restores normal behavior. However, the program can be terminated anytime by calling `terminate_now_if_signal` which inspects the signals and terminates the program if requested..

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: mask_term_signals

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mask_term_signals ()
        integer(c_int) :: status
        logical :: ok
        wo_sigint = 0
        ok = wo_mask_sigint () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Masking SIGINT failed")
        wo_sigterm = 0
        ok = wo_mask_sigterm () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Masking SIGTERM failed")
        wo_sigxcpu = 0
        ok = wo_mask_sigxcpu () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Masking SIGXCPU failed")
        wo_sigxfsz = 0
        ok = wo_mask_sigxfsz () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Masking SIGXFSZ failed")
    end subroutine mask_term_signals

<Diagnostics: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_mask_sigint () bind(C)
        import
    end function wo_mask_sigint
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_mask_sigterm () bind(C)
        import
    end function wo_mask_sigterm
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_mask_sigxcpu () bind(C)
        import
    end function wo_mask_sigxcpu
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_mask_sigxfsz () bind(C)
        import
    end function wo_mask_sigxfsz
    end interface

```

```

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: release_term_signals

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    subroutine release_term_signals ()
        integer(c_int) :: status
        logical :: ok
        ok = wo_release_sigint () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Releasing SIGINT failed")
        ok = wo_release_sigterm () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Releasing SIGTERM failed")
        ok = wo_release_sigxcpu () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Releasing SIGXCPU failed")
        ok = wo_release_sigxfsz () == 0
        if (.not. ok) call msg_error ("Releasing SIGXFSZ failed")
    end subroutine release_term_signals

<Diagnostics: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_release_sigint () bind(C)
            import
        end function wo_release_sigint
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_release_sigterm () bind(C)
            import
        end function wo_release_sigterm
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_release_sigxcpu () bind(C)
            import
        end function wo_release_sigxcpu
    end interface
    interface
        integer(c_int) function wo_release_sigxfsz () bind(C)
            import
        end function wo_release_sigxfsz
    end interface

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: signal_is_pending

<Diagnostics: procedures>+≡
    function signal_is_pending () result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        flag = &
            wo_sigint /= 0 .or. &
            wo_sigterm /= 0 .or. &
            wo_sigxcpu /= 0 .or. &
            wo_sigxfsz /= 0
    end function signal_is_pending

<Diagnostics: public>+≡
    public :: terminate_now_if_signal

```



```

⟨Diagnostics: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine terminate_now_if_signal ()
  if (wo_sigint /= 0) then
    call msg_terminate ("Signal SIGINT (keyboard interrupt) received.", &
      quit_code=int (wo_sigint))
  else if (wo_sigterm /= 0) then
    call msg_terminate ("Signal SIGTERM (termination signal) received.", &
      quit_code=int (wo_sigterm))
  else if (wo_sigxcpu /= 0) then
    call msg_terminate ("Signal SIGXCPU (CPU time limit exceeded) received.", &
      quit_code=int (wo_sigxcpu))
  else if (wo_sigxfsz /= 0) then
    call msg_terminate ("Signal SIGXFSZ (file size limit exceeded) received.", &
      quit_code=int (wo_sigxfsz))
  end if
end subroutine terminate_now_if_signal

```

## 2.9 C wrapper for sigaction

This implements calls to `sigaction` and the appropriate signal handlers in C.

```

⟨signal_interface.c⟩≡
/*
  ⟨File header⟩
*/
#include <signal.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

extern int wo_sigint;
extern int wo_sigterm;
extern int wo_sigxcpu;
extern int wo_sigxfsz;

static void wo_handler_sigint (int sig) {
  wo_sigint = sig;
}

static void wo_handler_sigterm (int sig) {
  wo_sigterm = sig;
}

static void wo_handler_sigxcpu (int sig) {
  wo_sigxcpu = sig;
}

static void wo_handler_sigxfsz (int sig) {
  wo_sigxfsz = sig;
}

int wo_mask_sigint () {
  struct sigaction sa;
  sigset_t blocks;

```

```

    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = wo_handler_sigint;
    return sigaction(SIGINT, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_mask_sigterm () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = wo_handler_sigterm;
    return sigaction(SIGTERM, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_mask_sigxcpu () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = wo_handler_sigxcpu;
    return sigaction(SIGXCPU, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_mask_sigxfsz () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = wo_handler_sigxfsz;
    return sigaction(SIGXFSZ, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_release_sigint () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = SIG_DFL;
    return sigaction(SIGINT, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_release_sigterm () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = SIG_DFL;

```

```

    return sigaction(SIGTERM, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_release_sigxcpu () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = SIG_DFL;
    return sigaction(SIGXCPU, &sa, NULL);
}

int wo_release_sigxfsz () {
    struct sigaction sa;
    sigset_t blocks;
    sigfillset (&blocks);
    sa.sa_flags = 0;
    sa.sa_mask = blocks;
    sa.sa_handler = SIG_DFL;
    return sigaction(SIGXFSZ, &sa, NULL);
}

```

## 2.10 C wrapper for printf

The `printf` family of functions is implemented in C with an undefined number of arguments. This is not supported by the `bind(C)` interface. We therefore write wrappers for the versions of `sprintf` that we will actually use.

```

⟨sprintf_interface.c⟩≡
/*
  ⟨File header⟩
*/
#include <stdio.h>

int sprintf_none(char* str, const char* format) {
    return sprintf(str, format);
}

int sprintf_int(char* str, const char* format, int val) {
    return sprintf(str, format, val);
}

int sprintf_double(char* str, const char* format, double val) {
    return sprintf(str, format, val);
}

int sprintf_str(char* str, const char* format, const char* val) {
    return sprintf(str, format, val);
}

⟨sprintf interfaces⟩≡
interface

```

```

function sprintf_none (str, fmt) result (stat) bind(C)
  use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
  integer(c_int) :: stat
  character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: str
  character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: fmt
end function sprintf_none
end interface

interface
  function sprintf_int (str, fmt, val) result (stat) bind(C)
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    integer(c_int) :: stat
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: str
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    integer(c_int), value :: val
  end function sprintf_int
end interface

interface
  function sprintf_double (str, fmt, val) result (stat) bind(C)
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    integer(c_int) :: stat
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: str
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    real(c_double), value :: val
  end function sprintf_double
end interface

interface
  function sprintf_str(str, fmt, val) result (stat) bind(C)
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    integer(c_int) :: stat
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: str
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: fmt
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: val
  end function sprintf_str
end interface

```

## 2.11 Interface for formatted I/O

For access to formatted printing (possibly input), we interface the C `printf` family of functions. There are two important issues here:

1. `printf` takes an arbitrary number of arguments, relying on the C stack. This is not interoperable. We interface it with C wrappers that output a single integer, real or string and restrict the allowed formats accordingly.
2. Restricting format strings is essential also for preventing format string attacks. Allowing arbitrary format string would create a real security hole in a Fortran program.
3. The string returned by `sprintf` must be allocated to the right size.

```

⟨formats.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module formats

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    ⟨Use strings⟩
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    ⟨Standard module head⟩

    ⟨Formats: public⟩

    ⟨Formats: parameters⟩

    ⟨Formats: types⟩

    ⟨Formats: interfaces⟩

    contains

    ⟨Formats: procedures⟩

    ⟨Formats: tests⟩

  end module formats

```

### 2.11.1 Parsing a C format string

The C format string contains characters and format conversion specifications. The latter are initiated by a % sign. If the next letter is also a %, a percent sign is printed and no conversion is done. Otherwise, a conversion is done and applied to the next argument in the argument list. First comes an optional flag (#, 0, -, +, or space), an optional field width (decimal digits starting not with zero), an optional precision (period, then another decimal digit string), a length modifier (irrelevant for us, therefore not supported), and a conversion specifier: **d** or **i** for integer; **e**, **f**, **g** (also upper case) for double-precision real, **s** for a string.

We explicitly exclude all other conversion specifiers, and we check the specifiers against the actual arguments.

#### A type for passing arguments

This is a polymorphic type that can hold integer, real (double), and string arguments.

```

⟨Formats: parameters⟩≡
  integer, parameter :: ARGTYPE_NONE = 0
  integer, parameter :: ARGTYPE_LOG = 1
  integer, parameter :: ARGTYPE_INT = 2
  integer, parameter :: ARGTYPE_REAL = 3

```

```
integer, parameter :: ARGTYPE_STR = 4
```

The integer and real entries are actually scalars, but we avoid relying on the allocatable-scalar feature and make them one-entry arrays. The character entry is a real array which is a copy of the string.

Logical values are mapped to strings (true or false), so this type parameter value is mostly unused.

*<Formats: public>*≡

```
public :: sprintf_arg_t
```

*<Formats: types>*≡

```
type :: sprintf_arg_t
private
integer :: type = ARGTYPE_NONE
integer(c_int), dimension(:), allocatable :: ival
real(c_double), dimension(:), allocatable :: rval
character(c_char), dimension(:), allocatable :: sval
end type sprintf_arg_t
```

*<Formats: public>*+≡

```
public :: sprintf_arg_init
```

*<Formats: interfaces>*≡

```
interface sprintf_arg_init
module procedure sprintf_arg_init_log
module procedure sprintf_arg_init_int
module procedure sprintf_arg_init_real
module procedure sprintf_arg_init_str
end interface
```

*<Formats: procedures>*≡

```
subroutine sprintf_arg_init_log (arg, lval)
type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(out) :: arg
logical, intent(in) :: lval
arg%type = ARGTYPE_STR
if (lval) then
allocate (arg%sval (5))
arg%sval = ['t', 'r', 'u', 'e', c_null_char]
else
allocate (arg%sval (6))
arg%sval = ['f', 'a', 'l', 's', 'e', c_null_char]
end if
end subroutine sprintf_arg_init_log

subroutine sprintf_arg_init_int (arg, ival)
type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(out) :: arg
integer, intent(in) :: ival
arg%type = ARGTYPE_INT
allocate (arg%ival (1))
arg%ival = ival
end subroutine sprintf_arg_init_int

subroutine sprintf_arg_init_real (arg, rval)
type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(out) :: arg
```

```

    real(default), intent(in) :: rval
    arg%type = ARGTYPE_REAL
    allocate (arg%rval (1))
    arg%rval = rval
end subroutine sprintf_arg_init_real

subroutine sprintf_arg_init_str (arg, sval)
    type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(out) :: arg
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sval
    integer :: i
    arg%type = ARGTYPE_STR
    allocate (arg%sval (len (sval) + 1))
    do i = 1, len (sval)
        arg%sval(i) = extract (sval, i, i)
    end do
    arg%sval(len (sval) + 1) = c_null_char
end subroutine sprintf_arg_init_str

```

*(Formats: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine sprintf_arg_write (arg, unit)
    type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(in) :: arg
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    select case (arg%type)
    case (ARGTYPE_NONE)
        write (u, *) "[none]"
    case (ARGTYPE_INT)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x)", advance = "no") "[int]"
        write (u, *) arg%ival
    case (ARGTYPE_REAL)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x)", advance = "no") "[real]"
        write (u, *) arg%rval
    case (ARGTYPE_STR)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x,A)", advance = "no") "[string]", ''
        write (u, *) arg%rval, ''
    end select
end subroutine sprintf_arg_write

```

Return an upper bound for the length of the printed version; in case of strings the result is exact.

*(Formats: procedures)*+≡

```

elemental function sprintf_arg_get_length (arg) result (length)
    integer :: length
    type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(in) :: arg
    select case (arg%type)
    case (ARGTYPE_INT)
        length = log10 (real (huge (arg%ival(1)))) + 2
    case (ARGTYPE_REAL)
        length = log10 (real (radix (arg%rval(1))) ** digits (arg%rval(1))) + 8
    case (ARGTYPE_STR)
        length = size (arg%sval)
    case default

```

```

        length = 0
    end select
end function sprintf_arg_get_length

```

*(Formats: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sprintf_arg_apply_printf (arg, fmt, result, actual_length)
    type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(in) :: arg
    character(c_char), dimension(:), intent(in) :: fmt
    character(c_char), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: result
    integer, intent(out) :: actual_length
    integer(c_int) :: ival
    real(c_double) :: rval
    select case (arg%type)
    case (ARGTYPE_NONE)
        actual_length = sprintf_none (result, fmt)
    case (ARGTYPE_INT)
        ival = arg%ival(1)
        actual_length = sprintf_int (result, fmt, ival)
    case (ARGTYPE_REAL)
        rval = arg%rval(1)
        actual_length = sprintf_double (result, fmt, rval)
    case (ARGTYPE_STR)
        actual_length = sprintf_str (result, fmt, arg%sval)
    case default
        call msg_bug ("sprintf_arg_apply_printf called with illegal type")
    end select
    if (actual_length < 0) then
        write (msg_buffer, *) "Format: '", fmt, "'"
        call msg_message ()
        write (msg_buffer, *) "Output: '", result, "'"
        call msg_message ()
        call msg_error ("I/O error in sprintf call")
        actual_length = 0
    end if
end subroutine sprintf_arg_apply_printf

```

## Container type for the output

There is a procedure which chops the format string into pieces that contain at most one conversion specifier. Pairing this with a `sprintf_arg` object, we get the actual input to the `sprintf` interface. The type below holds this input and can allocate the output string.

*(Formats: types)+≡*

```

type :: sprintf_interface_t
    private
    character(c_char), dimension(:), allocatable :: input_fmt
    type(sprintf_arg_t) :: arg
    character(c_char), dimension(:), allocatable :: output_str
    integer :: output_str_len = 0
end type sprintf_interface_t

```



```

<Formats: procedures>+≡
subroutine sprintf_interface_init (intf, fmt, arg)
  type(sprintf_interface_t), intent(out) :: intf
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: fmt
  type(sprintf_arg_t), intent(in) :: arg
  integer :: fmt_len, i
  fmt_len = len (fmt)
  allocate (intf%input_fmt (fmt_len + 1))
  do i = 1, fmt_len
    intf%input_fmt(i) = extract (fmt, i, i)
  end do
  intf%input_fmt(fmt_len+1) = c_null_char
  intf%arg = arg
  allocate (intf%output_str (len (fmt) + sprintf_arg_get_length (arg) + 1))
end subroutine sprintf_interface_init

```

```

<Formats: procedures>+≡
subroutine sprintf_interface_write (intf, unit)
  type(sprintf_interface_t), intent(in) :: intf
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, *) "Format string = ", "'", intf%input_fmt, "'"
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x)", advance = "no") "Argument = "
  call sprintf_arg_write (intf%arg, unit)
  if (intf%output_str_len > 0) then
    write (u, *) "Result string = ", &
      "'", intf%output_str (1:intf%output_str_len), "'"
  end if
end subroutine sprintf_interface_write

```

Return the output string:

```

<Formats: procedures>+≡
function sprintf_interface_get_result (intf) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(sprintf_interface_t), intent(in) :: intf
  character(kind = c_char, len = max (intf%output_str_len, 0)) :: buffer
  integer :: i
  if (intf%output_str_len > 0) then
    do i = 1, intf%output_str_len
      buffer(i:i) = intf%output_str(i)
    end do
    string = buffer(1:intf%output_str_len)
  else
    string = ""
  end if
end function sprintf_interface_get_result

```

```

<Formats: procedures>+≡
subroutine sprintf_interface_apply_sprintf (intf)
  type(sprintf_interface_t), intent(inout) :: intf
  call sprintf_arg_apply_sprintf &
    (intf%arg, intf%input_fmt, intf%output_str, intf%output_str_len)

```

```
end subroutine sprintf_interface_apply_sprintf
```

Import the interfaces defined in the previous section:

```
<Formats: interfaces> +=  
  <sprintf interfaces>
```

## Scan the format string

Chop it into pieces that contain one conversion specifier each. The zero-th piece contains the part before the first specifier. Check the specifiers and allow only the subset that we support. Also check for an exact match between conversion specifiers and input arguments. The result is an allocated array of `sprintf_interface` object; each one contains a piece of the format string and the corresponding argument.

```
<Formats: procedures> +=  
  subroutine chop_and_check_format_string (fmt, arg, intf)  
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: fmt  
    type(sprintf_arg_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: arg  
    type(sprintf_interface_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: intf  
    integer :: n_args, i  
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: split_fmt  
    type(string_t) :: word, buffer, separator  
    integer :: pos, length, l  
    logical :: ok  
    type(sprintf_arg_t) :: arg_null  
    ok = .true.  
    length = 0  
    n_args = size (arg)  
    allocate (split_fmt (0:n_args))  
    split_fmt = ""  
    buffer = fmt  
    SCAN_ARGS: do i = 1, n_args  
      FIND_CONVERSION: do  
        call split (buffer, word, "%", separator=separator)  
        if (separator == "") then  
          call msg_message (''' // char (fmt) // ''')  
          call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &  
            // "too few conversion specifiers in format string")  
          ok = .false.; exit SCAN_ARGS  
        end if  
        split_fmt(i-1) = split_fmt(i-1) // word  
        if (extract (buffer, 1, 1) /= "%") then  
          split_fmt(i) = "%"  
          exit FIND_CONVERSION  
        else  
          split_fmt(i-1) = split_fmt(i-1) // "%"  
        end if  
      end do FIND_CONVERSION  
      pos = verify (buffer, "#0-+ ") ! Flag characters (zero or more)  
      split_fmt(i) = split_fmt(i) // extract (buffer, 1, pos-1)  
      buffer = remove (buffer, 1, pos-1)
```

```

pos = verify (buffer, "123456890") ! Field width
word = extract (buffer, 1, pos-1)
if (len (word) /= 0) then
    call read_int_from_string (word, len (word), 1)
    length = length + 1
end if
split_fmt(i) = split_fmt(i) // word
buffer = remove (buffer, 1, pos-1)
if (extract (buffer, 1, 1) == ".") then
    buffer = remove (buffer, 1, 1)
    pos = verify (buffer, "1234567890") ! Precision
    split_fmt(i) = split_fmt(i) // "." // extract (buffer, 1, pos-1)
    buffer = remove (buffer, 1, pos-1)
end if
! Length modifier would come here, but is not allowed
select case (char (extract (buffer, 1, 1))) ! conversion specifier
case ("d", "i")
    if (arg(i)%type /= ARGTYPE_INT) then
        call msg_message ('"' // char (fmt) // '"')
        call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &
            // "argument type mismatch: integer value expected")
        ok = .false.; exit SCAN_ARGS
    end if
case ("e", "E", "f", "F", "g", "G")
    if (arg(i)%type /= ARGTYPE_REAL) then
        call msg_message ('"' // char (fmt) // '"')
        call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &
            // "argument type mismatch: real value expected")
        ok = .false.; exit SCAN_ARGS
    end if
case ("s")
    if (arg(i)%type /= ARGTYPE_STR) then
        call msg_message ('"' // char (fmt) // '"')
        call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &
            // "argument type mismatch: logical or string value expected")
        ok = .false.; exit SCAN_ARGS
    end if
case default
    call msg_message ('"' // char (fmt) // '"')
    call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &
        // "illegal or incomprehensible conversion specifier")
    ok = .false.; exit SCAN_ARGS
end select
split_fmt(i) = split_fmt(i) // extract (buffer, 1, 1)
buffer = remove (buffer, 1, 1)
end do SCAN_ARGS
if (ok) then
    FIND_EXTRA_CONVERSION: do
        call split (buffer, word, "%", separator=separator)
        split_fmt(n_args) = split_fmt(n_args) // word // separator
        if (separator == "") exit FIND_EXTRA_CONVERSION
        if (extract (buffer, 1, 1) == "%") then
            split_fmt(n_args) = split_fmt(n_args) // "%"
            buffer = remove (buffer, 1, 1)

```

```

else
  call msg_message (''' // char (fmt) // ''')
  call msg_error ("C-formatting string: " &
    // "too many conversion specifiers in format string")
  ok = .false.; exit FIND_EXTRA_CONVERSION
end if
end do FIND_EXTRA_CONVERSION
split_fmt(n_args) = split_fmt(n_args) // buffer
allocate (intf (0:n_args))
call sprintf_interface_init (intf(0), split_fmt(0), arg_null)
do i = 1, n_args
  call sprintf_interface_init (intf(i), split_fmt(i), arg(i))
end do
else
  allocate (intf (0))
end if
contains
subroutine read_int_from_string (word, length, l)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: word
  integer, intent(in) :: length
  integer, intent(out) :: l
  character(len=length) :: buffer
  buffer = word
  read (buffer, *) l
end subroutine read_int_from_string
end subroutine chop_and_check_format_string

```

## 2.11.2 API

*<Formats: public>+≡*

public :: sprintf

*<Formats: procedures>+≡*

```

function sprintf (fmt, arg) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: fmt
  type(sprintf_arg_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: arg
  type(sprintf_interface_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: intf
  integer :: i
  string = ""
  call chop_and_check_format_string (fmt, arg, intf)
  if (size (intf) > 0) then
    do i = 0, ubound (intf, 1)
      call sprintf_interface_apply sprintf (intf(i))
      string = string // sprintf_interface_get_result (intf(i))
    end do
  end if
end function sprintf

```

## 2.11.3 Test

*<Formats: public>+≡*

```

public :: format_test

<Formats: procedures>+≡
subroutine format_test (u, results)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Formats: execute tests>
end subroutine format_test

<Formats: execute tests>≡
call test (format_1, "format_1", &
  "check formatting routines", &
  u, results)

<Formats: tests>≡
subroutine format_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  write (u, "(A)")  "*** Test 1: a string ***"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call test_run (var_str("%s"), 1, [4], ['abcdefghij'], u)
  write (u, "(A)")  "*** Test 2: two integers ***"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call test_run (var_str("%d,%d"), 2, [2, 2], ['42', '13'], u)
  write (u, "(A)")  "*** Test 3: floating point number ***"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call test_run (var_str("%8.4f"), 1, [3], ['42567.12345'], u)
  write (u, "(A)")  "*** Test 4: general expression ***"
  call test_run (var_str("%g"), 1, [3], ['3.1415'], u)
contains
  subroutine test_run (fmt, n_args, type, buffer, unit)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: fmt
    integer, intent(in) :: n_args, unit
    logical :: lval
    integer :: ival
    real(default) :: rval
    integer :: i
    type(string_t) :: string
    type(sprintf_arg_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: arg
    integer, dimension(n_args), intent(in) :: type
    character(*), dimension(n_args), intent(in) :: buffer
    write (unit, "(A,A)")  "Format string :", char(fmt)
    write (unit, "(A,I1)")  "Number of args:", n_args
    allocate (arg (n_args))
    do i = 1, n_args
      write (unit, "(A,I1)")  "Argument (type ) = ", type(i)
      select case (type(i))
      case (ARGTYPE_LOG)
        read (buffer(i), *) lval
        call sprintf_arg_init (arg(i), lval)
      case (ARGTYPE_INT)
        read (buffer(i), *) ival
        call sprintf_arg_init (arg(i), ival)
      case (ARGTYPE_REAL)
        read (buffer(i), *) rval
        call sprintf_arg_init (arg(i), rval)

```

```

        case (ARGTYPE_STR)
            call sprintf_arg_init (arg(i), var_str (trim (buffer(i))))
        end select
    end do
    string = sprintf (fmt, arg)
    write (unit, "(A,A,A)" "Result: '", char (string), "'")
    deallocate (arg)
end subroutine test_run
end subroutine format_1

```

## 2.12 Bytes and such

In a few instances we will need the notion of a byte (8-bit) and a word (32 bit), even a 64-bit word. A block of 512 bit is also needed (for MD5).

We rely on integers up to 64 bit being supported by the processor. The main difference to standard integers is the interpretation as unsigned integers.

```

<bytes.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module bytes

      use kinds, only: i8, i32, i64 !NODEP!
  <Use file utils>

  <Standard module head>

  <Bytes: public>

  <Bytes: types>

  <Bytes: parameters>

  <Bytes: interfaces>

  contains

  <Bytes: procedures>

  end module bytes

```

### 2.12.1 8-bit words: bytes

This is essentially a wrapper around 8-bit integers. The wrapper emphasises their special interpretation as a sequence of bits. However, we interpret bytes as unsigned integers.

```

<Bytes: public>≡
  public :: byte_t

<Bytes: types>≡
  type :: byte_t
  private

```

```

        integer(i8) :: i
    end type byte_t

```

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
    public :: byte_zero
<Bytes: parameters>≡
    type(byte_t), parameter :: byte_zero = byte_t (0_i8)

```

Set a byte from 8-bit integer:

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
    public :: assignment(=)
<Bytes: interfaces>≡
    interface assignment(=)
        module procedure set_byte_from_i8
    end interface
<Bytes: procedures>≡
    subroutine set_byte_from_i8 (b, i)
        type(byte_t), intent(out) :: b
        integer(i8), intent(in) :: i
        b%i = i
    end subroutine set_byte_from_i8

```

Write a byte in one of two formats: either as a hexadecimal number (two digits, default) or as a decimal number (one to three digits). The decimal version is nontrivial because bytes are unsigned integers. Optionally append a newline.

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
    public :: byte_write
<Bytes: interfaces>+≡
    interface byte_write
        module procedure byte_write_unit, byte_write_string
    end interface
<Bytes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine byte_write_unit (b, unit, decimal, newline)
        type(byte_t), intent(in), optional :: b
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: decimal, newline
        logical :: dc, nl
        type(word32_t) :: w
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        dc = .false.; if (present (decimal)) dc = decimal
        nl = .false.; if (present (newline)) nl = newline
        if (dc) then
            w = b
            write (u, '(I3)', advance='no') w%i
        else
            write (u, '(z2.2)', advance='no') b%i
        end if
        if (nl) write (u, *)
    end subroutine byte_write_unit

```

The string version is hex-only

```
<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine byte_write_string (b, s)
  type(byte_t), intent(in) :: b
  character(len=2), intent(inout) :: s
  write (s, '(z2.2)') b%i
end subroutine byte_write_string
```

### 2.12.2 32-bit words

This is not exactly a 32-bit integer. A word is to be filled with bytes, and it may be partially filled. The filling is done lowest-byte first, highest-byte last. We count the bits, so `fill` should be either 0, 8, 16, 24, or 32. In printing words, we correspondingly distinguish between printing zeros and printing blanks.

```
<Bytes: public>+≡
public :: word32_t

<Bytes: types>+≡
type :: word32_t
  private
  integer(i32) :: i
  integer :: fill = 0
end type word32_t
```

Assignment: the word is filled by inserting a 32-bit integer

```
<Bytes: interfaces>+≡
interface assignment(=)
  module procedure word32_set_from_i32
  module procedure word32_set_from_byte
end interface

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine word32_set_from_i32 (w, i)
  type(word32_t), intent(out) :: w
  integer(i32), intent(in) :: i
  w%i = i
  w%fill = 32
end subroutine word32_set_from_i32
```

Reverse assignment to a 32-bit integer. We do not check the fill status.

```
<Bytes: interfaces>+≡
interface assignment(=)
  module procedure i32_from_word32
end interface

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine i32_from_word32 (i, w)
  integer(i32), intent(out) :: i
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
  i = w%i
end subroutine i32_from_word32
```



Filling with a 8-bit integer is slightly tricky, because in this interpretation integers are unsigned.

```

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine word32_set_from_byte (w, b)
    type(word32_t), intent(out) :: w
    type(byte_t), intent(in) :: b
    if (b%i >= 0_i8) then
      w%i = b%i
    else
      w%i = 2_i32*(huge(0_i8)+1_i32) + b%i
    end if
    w%fill = 32
  end subroutine word32_set_from_byte

```

Check the fill status

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
  public :: word32_empty, word32_filled, word32_fill

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
  function word32_empty (w)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
    logical :: word32_empty
    word32_empty = (w%fill == 0)
  end function word32_empty

  function word32_filled (w)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
    logical :: word32_filled
    word32_filled = (w%fill == 32)
  end function word32_filled

  function word32_fill (w)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
    integer :: word32_fill
    word32_fill = w%fill
  end function word32_fill

```

Partial assignment: append a byte to a partially filled word. (Note: no assignment if the word is filled, so check this before if necessary.)

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
  public :: word32_append_byte

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine word32_append_byte (w, b)
    type(word32_t), intent(inout) :: w
    type(byte_t), intent(in) :: b
    type(word32_t) :: w1
    if (.not. word32_filled (w)) then
      w1 = b
      call mvbits (w1%i, 0, 8, w%i, w%fill)
      w%fill = w%fill + 8
    end if
  end subroutine word32_append_byte

```

Extract a byte from a word. The argument *i* is the position, which may be 0, 1, 2, or 3.

For the final assignment, we set the highest bit separately. Otherwise, we might trigger an overflow condition for a compiler with strict checking turned on.

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
    public :: byte_from_word32

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
    function byte_from_word32 (w, i) result (b)
        type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(byte_t) :: b
        integer(i32) :: j
        j = 0
        if (i >= 0 .and. i*8 < w%fill) then
            call mvbits (w%i, i*8, 8, j, 0)
        end if
        b%i = int (ibclr (j, 7), kind=i8)
        if (btest (j, 7)) b%i = ibset (b%i, 7)
    end function byte_from_word32

```

Write a word to file or STDOUT. We understand words as unsigned integers, therefore we cannot use the built-in routine unchanged. However, we can make use of the existence of 64-bit integers and their output routine.

In hexadecimal format, the default version prints eight hex characters, highest-first. The `bytes` version prints four bytes (two-hex characters), lowest first, with spaces in-between. The decimal bytes version is analogous. In the `bytes` version, missing bytes are printed as whitespace.

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
    public :: word32_write

<Bytes: interfaces>+≡
    interface word32_write
        module procedure word32_write_unit
    end interface

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine word32_write_unit (w, unit, bytes, decimal, newline)
        type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: bytes, decimal, newline
        logical :: dc, by, nl
        type(word64_t) :: ww
        integer :: i, u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        by = .false.; if (present (bytes)) by = bytes
        dc = .false.; if (present (decimal)) dc = decimal
        nl = .false.; if (present (newline)) nl = newline
        if (by) then
            do i = 0, 3
                if (i>0) write (u, '(1x)', advance='no')
                if (8*i < w%fill) then
                    call byte_write (byte_from_word32 (w, i), unit, decimal=decimal)

```

```

        else if (dc) then
            write (u, '(3x)', advance='no')
        else
            write (u, '(2x)', advance='no')
        end if
    end do
else if (dc) then
    ww = w
    write (u, '(I10)', advance='no') ww%i
else
    select case (w%fill)
    case ( 0)
    case ( 8); write (6, '(1x,z8.2)', advance='no') ibits (w%i, 0, 8)
    case (16); write (6, '(1x,z8.4)', advance='no') ibits (w%i, 0,16)
    case (24); write (6, '(1x,z8.6)', advance='no') ibits (w%i, 0,24)
    case (32); write (6, '(1x,z8.8)', advance='no') ibits (w%i, 0,32)
    end select
end if
if (nl) write (u, *)
end subroutine word32_write_unit

```

### 2.12.3 Operations on 32-bit words

Define the usual logical operations, as well as addition (mod  $2^{32}$ ). We assume that all operands are completely filled.

*(Bytes: public)*+≡

```
public :: not, ior, ieor, iand, ishft, ishftc
```

*(Bytes: interfaces)*+≡

```

interface not
    module procedure word_not
end interface
interface ior
    module procedure word_or
end interface
interface ieor
    module procedure word_eor
end interface
interface iand
    module procedure word_and
end interface
interface ishft
    module procedure word_shft
end interface
interface ishftc
    module procedure word_shftc
end interface

```

*(Bytes: procedures)*+≡

```

function word_not (w1) result (w2)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1
    type(word32_t) :: w2
    w2 = not (w1%i)

```

```

end function word_not

function word_or (w1, w2) result (w3)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1, w2
  type(word32_t) :: w3
  w3 = ior (w1%i, w2%i)
end function word_or

function word_eor (w1, w2) result (w3)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1, w2
  type(word32_t) :: w3
  w3 = ieor (w1%i, w2%i)
end function word_eor

function word_and (w1, w2) result (w3)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1, w2
  type(word32_t) :: w3
  w3 = iand (w1%i, w2%i)
end function word_and

function word_shft (w1, s) result (w2)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1
  integer, intent(in) :: s
  type(word32_t) :: w2
  w2 = ishft (w1%i, s)
end function word_shft

function word_shftc (w1, s) result (w2)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1
  integer, intent(in) :: s
  type(word32_t) :: w2
  w2 = ishftc (w1%i, s, 32)
end function word_shftc

```

Addition is defined mod  $2^{32}$ , i.e., without overflow checking. This means that we have to work around a possible overflow check enforced by the compiler.

$\langle \text{Bytes: public} \rangle + \equiv$

```
public :: operator(+)
```

$\langle \text{Bytes: interfaces} \rangle + \equiv$

```

interface operator(+)
  module procedure word_add
  module procedure word_add_i8
  module procedure word_add_i32
end interface

```

$\langle \text{Bytes: procedures} \rangle + \equiv$

```

function word_add (w1, w2) result (w3)
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1, w2
  type(word32_t) :: w3
  integer(i64) :: j
  j = int (ibclr (w1%i, 31), i64) + int (ibclr (w2%i, 31), i64)
  w3 = int (ibclr (j, 31), kind=i32)
  if (btest (j, 31)) then

```

```

        if (btest (w1%i, 31) .eqv. btest (w2%i, 31)) w3 = ibset (w3%i, 31)
    else
        if (btest (w1%i, 31) .neqv. btest (w2%i, 31)) w3 = ibset (w3%i, 31)
    end if
end function word_add

function word_add_i8 (w1, i) result (w3)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1
    integer(i8), intent(in) :: i
    type(word32_t) :: w3
    integer(i64) :: j
    j = int (ibclr (w1%i, 31), i64) + int (ibclr (i, 7), i64)
    if (btest (i, 7)) j = j + 128
    w3 = int (ibclr (j, 31), kind=i32)
    if (btest (j, 31) .neqv. btest (w1%i, 31)) w3 = ibset (w3%i, 31)
end function word_add_i8

function word_add_i32 (w1, i) result (w3)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w1
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: i
    type(word32_t) :: w3
    integer(i64) :: j
    j = int (ibclr (w1%i, 31), i64) + int (ibclr (i, 31), i64)
    w3 = int (ibclr (j, 31), kind=i32)
    if (btest (j, 31)) then
        if (btest (w1%i, 31) .eqv. btest (i, 31)) w3 = ibset (w3%i, 31)
    else
        if (btest (w1%i, 31) .neqv. btest (i, 31)) w3 = ibset (w3%i, 31)
    end if
end function word_add_i32

```

#### 2.12.4 64-bit words

These objects consist of two 32-bit words. They thus can hold integer numbers larger than  $2^{32}$  (to be exact,  $2^{31}$  since FORTRAN integers are signed). The order is low-word, high-word.

*<Bytes: public>+≡*

```
public :: word64_t
```

*<Bytes: types>+≡*

```

type :: word64_t
private
integer(i64) :: i
end type word64_t

```

Set a 64 bit word:

*<Bytes: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface assignment(=)
module procedure word64_set_from_i64
module procedure word64_set_from_word32
end interface

```

```

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine word64_set_from_i64 (ww, i)
  type(word64_t), intent(out) :: ww
  integer(i64), intent(in) :: i
  ww%i = i
end subroutine word64_set_from_i64

```

Filling with a 32-bit word:

```

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine word64_set_from_word32 (ww, w)
  type(word64_t), intent(out) :: ww
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: w
  if (w%i >= 0_i32) then
    ww%i = w%i
  else
    ww%i = 2_i64*(huge(0_i32)+1_i64) + w%i
  end if
end subroutine word64_set_from_word32

```

Extract a byte from a word. The argument *i* is the position, which may be between 0 and 7.

For the final assignment, we set the highest bit separately. Otherwise, we might trigger an overflow condition for a compiler with strict checking turned on.

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
public :: byte_from_word64, word32_from_word64

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
function byte_from_word64 (ww, i) result (b)
  type(word64_t), intent(in) :: ww
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(byte_t) :: b
  integer(i64) :: j
  j = 0
  if (i >= 0 .and. i*8 < 64) then
    call mvbits (ww%i, i*8, 8, j, 0)
  end if
  b%i = int (ibclr (j, 7), kind=i8)
  if (btest (j, 7)) b%i = ibset (b%i, 7)
end function byte_from_word64

```

Extract a 32-bit word from a 64-bit word. The position is either 0 or 1.

```

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
function word32_from_word64 (ww, i) result (w)
  type(word64_t), intent(in) :: ww
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(word32_t) :: w
  integer(i64) :: j
  j = 0
  select case (i)
    case (0); call mvbits (ww%i, 0, 32, j, 0)
    case (1); call mvbits (ww%i, 32, 32, j, 0)
  end select
end function word32_from_word64

```

```

end select
w = int (ibclr (j, 31), kind=i32)
if (btest (j, 31)) w = ibset (w%i, 31)
end function word32_from_word64

```

Print a 64-bit word. Decimal version works up to  $2^{63}$ . The **words** version uses the 'word32' printout, separated by two spaces. The low-word is printed first. The **bytes** version also uses the 'word32' printout. This implies that the lowest byte is first. The default version prints a hexadecimal number without spaces, highest byte first.

```

<Bytes: public>+≡
public :: word64_write

<Bytes: interfaces>+≡
interface word64_write
  module procedure word64_write_unit
end interface

<Bytes: procedures>+≡
subroutine word64_write_unit (ww, unit, words, bytes, decimal, newline)
  type(word64_t), intent(in) :: ww
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: words, bytes, decimal, newline
  logical :: wo, by, dc, nl
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  wo = .false.; if (present (words)) wo = words
  by = .false.; if (present (bytes)) by = bytes
  dc = .false.; if (present (decimal)) dc = decimal
  nl = .false.; if (present (newline)) nl = newline
  if (wo .or. by) then
    call word32_write_unit (word32_from_word64 (ww, 0), unit, by, dc)
    write (u, '(2x)', advance='no')
    call word32_write_unit (word32_from_word64 (ww, 1), unit, by, dc)
  else if (dc) then
    write (u, '(I19)', advance='no') ww%i
  else
    write (u, '(Z16)', advance='no') ww%i
  end if
  if (nl) write (u, *)
end subroutine word64_write_unit

```

## 2.13 MD5 Checksums

Implementing MD5 checksums allows us to check input/file integrity on the basis of a well-known standard. The building blocks have been introduced in the **bytes** module.

```

<md5.f90>≡
<File header>

```

```

module md5

```

```

    use kinds, only: i8, i32, i64 !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use bytes
    use limits, only: BUFFER_SIZE, LF, EOR, EOF !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    <Standard module head>

    <MD5: public>

    <MD5: types>

    <MD5: variables>

    <MD5: interfaces>

contains

    <MD5: procedures>

    <MD5: tests>

end module md5

```

### 2.13.1 Blocks

A block is a sequence of 16 words (64 bytes or 512 bits). We anticipate that blocks will be linked, so include a pointer to the next block. There is a fill status (word counter), as there is one for each word. The fill status is equal to the number of bytes that are in, so it may be between 0 and 64.

```

<MD5: types>≡
    type :: block_t
    private
    type(word32_t), dimension(0:15) :: w
    type(block_t), pointer :: next => null ()
    integer :: fill = 0
end type block_t

```

Check if a block is completely filled or empty:

```

<MD5: procedures>≡
    function block_is_empty (b)
    type(block_t), intent(in) :: b
    logical :: block_is_empty
    block_is_empty = (b%fill == 0 .and. word32_empty (b%w(0)))
end function block_is_empty

    function block_is_filled (b)
    type(block_t), intent(in) :: b
    logical :: block_is_filled
    block_is_filled = (b%fill == 64)
end function block_is_filled

```



Append a single byte to a block. Works only if the block is not yet filled.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine block_append_byte (bl, by)
  type(block_t), intent(inout) :: bl
  type(byte_t), intent(in) :: by
  if (.not. block_is_filled (bl)) then
    call word32_append_byte (bl%w(bl%fill/4), by)
    bl%fill = bl%fill + 1
  end if
end subroutine block_append_byte
```

The printing routine allows for printing as sequences of words or bytes, decimal or hex.

*(MD5: interfaces)≡*

```
interface block_write
  module procedure block_write_unit
end interface
```

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine block_write_unit (b, unit, bytes, decimal)
  type(block_t), intent(in) :: b
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: bytes, decimal
  logical :: by, dc
  integer :: i, u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  by = .false.; if (present (bytes)) by = bytes
  dc = .false.; if (present (decimal)) dc = decimal
  do i = 0, b%fill/4 - 1
    call newline_or_blank (u, i, by, dc)
    call word32_write (b%w(i), unit, bytes, decimal)
  end do
  if (.not. block_is_filled (b)) then
    i = b%fill/4
    if (.not. word32_empty (b%w(i))) then
      call newline_or_blank (u, i, by, dc)
      call word32_write (b%w(i), unit, bytes, decimal)
    end if
  end if
  write (u, *)
contains
subroutine newline_or_blank (u, i, bytes, decimal)
  integer, intent(in) :: u, i
  logical, intent(in) :: bytes, decimal
  if (decimal) then
    select case (i)
      case (0)
      case (2,4,6,8,10,12,14); write (u, *)
      case default
        write (u, '(2x)', advance='no')
      end select
  else if (bytes) then
```

```

        select case (i)
        case (0)
        case (4,8,12); write (u, *)
        case default
            write (u, '(2x)', advance='no')
        end select
    else
        if (i == 8) write (u, *)
    end if
end subroutine newline_or_blank
end subroutine block_write_unit

```

### 2.13.2 Messages

A message (within this module) is a linked list of blocks.

*<MD5: types>+≡*

```

type :: message_t
private
type(block_t), pointer :: first => null ()
type(block_t), pointer :: last => null ()
integer :: n_blocks = 0
end type message_t

```

Clear the message list

*<MD5: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine message_clear (m)
type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
type(block_t), pointer :: b
nullify (m%last)
do
    b => m%first
    if (.not.(associated (b))) exit
    m%first => b%next
    deallocate (b)
end do
m%n_blocks = 0
end subroutine message_clear

```

Append an empty block to the message list

*<MD5: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine message_append_new_block (m)
type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
if (associated (m%last)) then
    allocate (m%last%next)
    m%last => m%last%next
    m%n_blocks = m%n_blocks + 1
else
    allocate (m%first)
    m%last => m%first
    m%n_blocks = 1
end if

```

```
end subroutine message_append_new_block
```

Initialize: clear and allocate the first (empty) block.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine message_init (m)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  call message_clear (m)
  call message_append_new_block (m)
end subroutine message_init
```

Append a single byte to a message. If necessary, allocate a new block. If the message is empty, initialize it.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine message_append_byte (m, b)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  type(byte_t), intent(in) :: b
  if (.not. associated (m%last)) then
    call message_init (m)
  else if (block_is_filled (m%last)) then
    call message_append_new_block (m)
  end if
  call block_append_byte (m%last, b)
end subroutine message_append_byte
```

Append zero bytes until the current block is filled up to the required position. If we are already beyond that, append a new block and fill that one.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine message_pad_zero (m, i)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(block_t), pointer :: b
  integer :: j
  if (associated (m%last)) then
    b => m%last
    if (b%fill > i) then
      do j = b%fill + 1, 64 + i
        call message_append_byte (m, byte_zero)
      end do
    else
      do j = b%fill + 1, i
        call message_append_byte (m, byte_zero)
      end do
    end if
  end if
end subroutine message_pad_zero
```

This returns the number of bits within a message. We need a 64-bit word for the result since it may be more than  $2^{31}$ . This is also required by the MD5 standard.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
function message_bits (m) result (length)
```

```

type(message_t), intent(in) :: m
type(word64_t) :: length
type(block_t), pointer :: b
integer(i64) :: n_blocks_filled, n_bytes_extra
if (m%n_blocks > 0) then
  b => m%last
  if (block_is_filled(b)) then
    n_blocks_filled = m%n_blocks
    n_bytes_extra = 0
  else
    n_blocks_filled = m%n_blocks - 1
    n_bytes_extra = b%fill
  end if
  length = n_blocks_filled * 512 + n_bytes_extra * 8
else
  length = 0_i64
end if
end function message_bits

```

### 2.13.3 Message I/O

Append the contents of a string to a message. We first cast the character string into a 8-bit integer array and then append this byte by byte.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine message_append_string (m, s)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  character(len=*), intent(in) :: s
  integer(i64) :: i, n_bytes
  integer(i8), dimension(:), allocatable :: buffer
  integer(i8), dimension(1) :: mold
  type(byte_t) :: b
  n_bytes = size (transfer (s, mold))
  allocate (buffer (n_bytes))
  buffer = transfer (s, mold)
  do i = 1, size (buffer)
    b = buffer(i)
    call message_append_byte (m, b)
  end do
  deallocate (buffer)
end subroutine message_append_string

```

Append the contents of a 32-bit integer to a message. We first cast the 32-bit integer into a 8-bit integer array and then append this byte by byte.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine message_append_i32 (m, x)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  integer(i32), intent(in) :: x
  integer(i8), dimension(4) :: buffer
  type(byte_t) :: b
  integer :: i
  buffer = transfer (x, buffer, size(buffer))
  do i = 1, size (buffer)

```

```

        b = buffer(i)
        call message_append_byte (m, b)
    end do
end subroutine message_append_i32

```

Append one line from file to a message. Include the newline character.

*<MD5: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine message_append_from_unit (m, u, iostat)
    type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    character(len=BUFFER_SIZE) :: buffer
    read (u, *, iostat=iostat) buffer
    call message_append_string (m, trim (buffer))
    call message_append_string (m, LF)
end subroutine message_append_from_unit

```

Fill a message from file. (Each line counts as a string.)

*<MD5: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine message_read_from_file (m, f)
    type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: f
    integer :: u, iostat
    u = free_unit ()
    open (file=f, unit=u, action='read')
    do
        call message_append_from_unit (m, u, iostat=iostat)
        if (iostat < 0) exit
    end do
    close (u)
end subroutine message_read_from_file

```

Write a message. After each block, insert an empty line.

*<MD5: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface message_write
    module procedure message_write_unit
end interface

```

*<MD5: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine message_write_unit (m, unit, bytes, decimal)
    type(message_t), intent(in) :: m
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: bytes, decimal
    type(block_t), pointer :: b
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    b => m%first
    if (associated (b)) then
        do
            call block_write_unit (b, unit, bytes, decimal)
            b => b%next
            if (.not. associated (b)) exit
        end do
        write (u, *)
    end if
end subroutine message_write_unit

```

```

        end do
    end if
end subroutine message_write_unit

```

### 2.13.4 Auxiliary functions

These four functions on three words are defined in the MD5 standard:

```

⟨MD5: procedures⟩+≡
function ff (x, y, z)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: x, y, z
    type(word32_t) :: ff
    ff = ior (iand (x, y), iand (not (x), z))
end function ff

function fg (x, y, z)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: x, y, z
    type(word32_t) :: fg
    fg = ior (iand (x, z), iand (y, not (z)))
end function fg

function fh (x, y, z)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: x, y, z
    type(word32_t) :: fh
    fh = ieor (ieor (x, y), z)
end function fh

function fi (x, y, z)
    type(word32_t), intent(in) :: x, y, z
    type(word32_t) :: fi
    fi = ieor (y, ior (x, not (z)))
end function fi

```

### 2.13.5 Auxiliary stuff

This defines and initializes the table of transformation constants:

```

⟨MD5: variables⟩≡
    type(word32_t), dimension(64), save :: t
    logical, save :: table_initialized = .false.

⟨MD5: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine table_init
    type(word64_t) :: ww
    integer :: i
    if (.not.table_initialized) then
        do i = 1, 64
            ww = int (4294967296d0 * abs (sin (i * 1d0)), kind=i64)
            t(i) = word32_from_word64 (ww, 0)
        end do
        table_initialized = .true.
    end if
end subroutine table_init

```

This encodes the message digest (4 words) into a 32-character string.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
function digest_string (aa) result (s)
  type(word32_t), dimension (0:3), intent(in) :: aa
  character(len=32) :: s
  integer :: i, j
  do i = 0, 3
    do j = 0, 3
      call byte_write (byte_from_word32 (aa(i), j), s(i*8+j*2+1:i*8+j*2+2))
    end do
  end do
end function digest_string
```

### 2.13.6 MD5 algorithm

Pad the message with a byte x80 and then pad zeros up to a full block minus two words; in these words, insert the message length (before padding) as a 64-bit word, low-word first.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine message_pad (m)
  type(message_t), intent(inout) :: m
  type(word64_t) :: length
  integer(i8), parameter :: ipad = -128 ! z'80'
  type(byte_t) :: b
  integer :: i
  length = message_bits (m)
  b = ipad
  call message_append_byte (m, b)
  call message_pad_zero (m, 56)
  do i = 0, 7
    call message_append_byte (m, byte_from_word64 (length, i))
  end do
end subroutine message_pad
```

Apply a series of transformations onto a state a,b,c,d, where the transform function uses each word of the message together with the predefined words. Finally, encode the state as a 32-character string.

*(MD5: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine message_digest (m, s)
  type(message_t), intent(in) :: m
  character(len=32), intent(out) :: s
  integer(i32), parameter :: ia = 1732584193 ! z'67452301'
  integer(i32), parameter :: ib = -271733879 ! z'efcdab89'
  integer(i32), parameter :: ic = -1732584194 ! z'98badcfe'
  integer(i32), parameter :: id = 271733878 ! z'10325476'
  type(word32_t) :: a, b, c, d
  type(word32_t) :: aa, bb, cc, dd
  type(word32_t), dimension(0:15) :: x
  type(block_t), pointer :: bl
  call table_init
  a = ia; b = ib; c = ic; d = id
```

```

bl => m%first
do
  if (.not.associated (bl)) exit
  x = bl%w
  aa = a;  bb = b;  cc = c;  dd = d
  call transform (ff, a, b, c, d, 0, 7, 1)
  call transform (ff, d, a, b, c, 1, 12, 2)
  call transform (ff, c, d, a, b, 2, 17, 3)
  call transform (ff, b, c, d, a, 3, 22, 4)
  call transform (ff, a, b, c, d, 4, 7, 5)
  call transform (ff, d, a, b, c, 5, 12, 6)
  call transform (ff, c, d, a, b, 6, 17, 7)
  call transform (ff, b, c, d, a, 7, 22, 8)
  call transform (ff, a, b, c, d, 8, 7, 9)
  call transform (ff, d, a, b, c, 9, 12, 10)
  call transform (ff, c, d, a, b, 10, 17, 11)
  call transform (ff, b, c, d, a, 11, 22, 12)
  call transform (ff, a, b, c, d, 12, 7, 13)
  call transform (ff, d, a, b, c, 13, 12, 14)
  call transform (ff, c, d, a, b, 14, 17, 15)
  call transform (ff, b, c, d, a, 15, 22, 16)
  call transform (fg, a, b, c, d, 1, 5, 17)
  call transform (fg, d, a, b, c, 6, 9, 18)
  call transform (fg, c, d, a, b, 11, 14, 19)
  call transform (fg, b, c, d, a, 0, 20, 20)
  call transform (fg, a, b, c, d, 5, 5, 21)
  call transform (fg, d, a, b, c, 10, 9, 22)
  call transform (fg, c, d, a, b, 15, 14, 23)
  call transform (fg, b, c, d, a, 4, 20, 24)
  call transform (fg, a, b, c, d, 9, 5, 25)
  call transform (fg, d, a, b, c, 14, 9, 26)
  call transform (fg, c, d, a, b, 3, 14, 27)
  call transform (fg, b, c, d, a, 8, 20, 28)
  call transform (fg, a, b, c, d, 13, 5, 29)
  call transform (fg, d, a, b, c, 2, 9, 30)
  call transform (fg, c, d, a, b, 7, 14, 31)
  call transform (fg, b, c, d, a, 12, 20, 32)
  call transform (fh, a, b, c, d, 5, 4, 33)
  call transform (fh, d, a, b, c, 8, 11, 34)
  call transform (fh, c, d, a, b, 11, 16, 35)
  call transform (fh, b, c, d, a, 14, 23, 36)
  call transform (fh, a, b, c, d, 1, 4, 37)
  call transform (fh, d, a, b, c, 4, 11, 38)
  call transform (fh, c, d, a, b, 7, 16, 39)
  call transform (fh, b, c, d, a, 10, 23, 40)
  call transform (fh, a, b, c, d, 13, 4, 41)
  call transform (fh, d, a, b, c, 0, 11, 42)
  call transform (fh, c, d, a, b, 3, 16, 43)
  call transform (fh, b, c, d, a, 6, 23, 44)
  call transform (fh, a, b, c, d, 9, 4, 45)
  call transform (fh, d, a, b, c, 12, 11, 46)
  call transform (fh, c, d, a, b, 15, 16, 47)
  call transform (fh, b, c, d, a, 2, 23, 48)
  call transform (fi, a, b, c, d, 0, 6, 49)

```



```

    call transform (fi, d, a, b, c, 7, 10, 50)
    call transform (fi, c, d, a, b, 14, 15, 51)
    call transform (fi, b, c, d, a, 5, 21, 52)
    call transform (fi, a, b, c, d, 12, 6, 53)
    call transform (fi, d, a, b, c, 3, 10, 54)
    call transform (fi, c, d, a, b, 10, 15, 55)
    call transform (fi, b, c, d, a, 1, 21, 56)
    call transform (fi, a, b, c, d, 8, 6, 57)
    call transform (fi, d, a, b, c, 15, 10, 58)
    call transform (fi, c, d, a, b, 6, 15, 59)
    call transform (fi, b, c, d, a, 13, 21, 60)
    call transform (fi, a, b, c, d, 4, 6, 61)
    call transform (fi, d, a, b, c, 11, 10, 62)
    call transform (fi, c, d, a, b, 2, 15, 63)
    call transform (fi, b, c, d, a, 9, 21, 64)
    a = a + aa
    b = b + bb
    c = c + cc
    d = d + dd
    bl => bl%next
end do
s = digest_string ([a, b, c, d])
contains
<MD5: Internal subroutine transform>
end subroutine message_digest

```

And this is the actual transformation that depends on one of the previous functions, four words, and three integers. The implicit arguments are *x*, the word from the message to digest, and *t*, the entry in the predefined table.

```

<MD5: Internal subroutine transform>≡
subroutine transform (f, a, b, c, d, k, s, i)
  interface
    function f (x, y, z)
      import word32_t
      type(word32_t), intent(in) :: x, y, z
      type(word32_t) :: f
    end function f
  end interface
  type(word32_t), intent(inout) :: a
  type(word32_t), intent(in) :: b, c, d
  integer, intent(in) :: k, s, i
  a = b + ishftc (a + f(b, c, d) + x(k) + t(i), s)
end subroutine transform

```

### 2.13.7 User interface

```

<MD5: public>≡
public :: md5sum

<MD5: interfaces>+≡
interface md5sum
  module procedure md5sum_from_string
  module procedure md5sum_from_unit

```

```
end interface
```

This function computes the MD5 sum of the input string and returns it as a 32-character string

```
<MD5: procedures>+≡
function md5sum_from_string (s) result (digest)
  character(len=*), intent(in) :: s
  character(len=32) :: digest
  type(message_t) :: m
  call message_append_string (m, s)
  call message_pad (m)
  call message_digest (m, digest)
  call message_clear (m)
end function md5sum_from_string
```

This funct. reads from unit u (an unformatted sequence of integers) and computes the MD5 sum.

```
<MD5: procedures>+≡
function md5sum_from_unit (u) result (digest)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(len=32) :: digest
  type(message_t) :: m
  character :: char
  integer :: iostat
  READ_CHARS: do
    read (u, "(A)", advance="no", iostat=iostat) char
    select case (iostat)
    case (0)
      call message_append_string (m, char)
    case (EOR)
      call message_append_string (m, LF)
    case (EOF)
      exit READ_CHARS
    case default
      call msg_fatal &
        ("Computing MD5 sum: I/O error while reading from scratch file")
    end select
  end do READ_CHARS
  call message_pad (m)
  call message_digest (m, digest)
  call message_clear (m)
end function md5sum_from_unit
```

### 2.13.8 Unit tests

```
<MD5: public>+≡
public :: md5_test

<MD5: procedures>+≡
subroutine md5_test (u, results)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<MD5: execute tests>
```

```
end subroutine md5_test
```

This function checks the implementation by computing the checksum of certain strings and comparing them with the known values.

$$\langle MD5: \text{execute tests} \rangle \equiv$$

```
call test (md5_1, "md5_1", &
          "check MD5 sums", &
          u, results)
```

$$\langle MD5: tests \rangle \equiv$$
[illegible]

```
write (u, "(A)")    "* Test output: MD5"
write (u, "(A)")    "* Purpose: test MD5 sums"
write (u, "(A)")
```

```
do i = 1, n
  write (u, "(A)") "MD5 test string = " // ' '// &
    trim (teststring(i)) // ' '
  s = md5sum (trim (teststring(i)))
  write (u, "(A)") "MD5 check sum   = " // trim (s)
  write (u, "(A)") "Ref check sum   = " // result(i)
  if (s == result(i)) then
    call msg_message ("=> ok", u)
  else
    call msg_message ("=> MD5 sum self-test failed", u)
  end if
end do
```

```

end do
  call msg_message ("=====
end subroutine md5 1

```

## 2.14 Permutations

```
<permutations.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module permutations  
  
    use kinds, only: TC !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Permutations: public>  
  
    <Permutations: types>  
  
    <Permutations: interfaces>  
  
  contains  
  
    <Permutations: procedures>  
  
  end module permutations
```

### 2.14.1 Permutations

A permutation is an array of integers. Each integer between one and `size` should occur exactly once.

```
<Permutations: public>≡  
  public :: permutation_t  
  
<Permutations: types>≡  
  type :: permutation_t  
    private  
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: p  
  end type permutation_t
```

Initialize with the identity permutation.

```
<Permutations: public>+≡  
  public :: permutation_init  
  public :: permutation_final  
  
<Permutations: procedures>≡  
  elemental subroutine permutation_init (p, size)  
    type(permutation_t), intent(inout) :: p  
    integer, intent(in) :: size  
    integer :: i  
    allocate (p%p (size))  
    forall (i = 1:size)  
      p%p(i) = i  
    end forall  
  end subroutine permutation_init  
  
  elemental subroutine permutation_final (p)  
    type(permutation_t), intent(inout) :: p
```

```

        deallocate (p%p)
    end subroutine permutation_final

```

I/O:

```

(Permutations: public) +=
    public :: permutation_write

(Permutations: procedures) +=
    subroutine permutation_write (p, u)
        type(permutation_t), intent (in) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (p%p)
            if (size (p%p) < 10) then
                write (u,"(1x,I1)", advance="no") p%p(i)
            else
                write (u,"(1x,I3)", advance="no") p%p(i)
            end if
        end do
        write (u, *)
    end subroutine permutation_write

```

Administration:

```

(Permutations: public) +=
    public :: permutation_size

(Permutations: procedures) +=
    elemental function permutation_size (perm) result (s)
        type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
        integer :: s
        s = size (perm%p)
    end function permutation_size

```

Extract an entry in a permutation.

```

(Permutations: public) +=
    public :: permute

(Permutations: procedures) +=
    elemental function permute (i, p) result (j)
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer :: j
        if (i > 0 .and. i <= size (p%p)) then
            j = p%p(i)
        else
            j = 0
        end if
    end function permute

```

Check whether a permutation is valid: Each integer in the range occurs exactly once.

```

(Permutations: public) +=
    public :: permutation_ok

```

```

<Permutations: procedures>+=
  elemental function permutation_ok (perm) result (ok)
    type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
    logical :: ok
    integer :: i
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: set
    ok = .true.
    allocate (set (size (perm%p)))
    set = .false.
    do i = 1, size (perm%p)
      ok = (perm%p(i) > 0 .and. perm%p(i) <= size (perm%p))
      if (.not.ok) return
      set(perm%p(i)) = .true.
    end do
    ok = all (set)
  end function permutation_ok

```

Find the permutation that transforms the second array into the first one. We assume that this is possible and unique and all bounds are set correctly.

This cannot be elemental.

```

<Permutations: public>+=
  public :: permutation_find

<Permutations: procedures>+=
  subroutine permutation_find (perm, a1, a2)
    type(permutation_t), intent(inout) :: perm
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: a1, a2
    integer :: i, j
    if (allocated (perm%p)) deallocate (perm%p)
    allocate (perm%p (size (a1)))
    do i = 1, size (a1)
      do j = 1, size (a2)
        if (a1(i) == a2(j)) then
          perm%p(i) = j
          exit
        end if
        perm%p(i) = 0
      end do
    end do
  end subroutine permutation_find

```

Find all permutations that transform an array of integers into itself. The resulting permutation list is allocated with the correct length and filled.

The first step is to count the number of different entries in `code`. Next, we scan `code` again and assign a mask to each different entry, true for all identical entries. Finally, we recursively permute the identity for each possible mask.

The permutation is done as follows: A list of all permutations of the initial one with respect to the current mask is generated, then the permutations are generated in turn for each permutation in this list with the next mask. The result is always stored back into the main list, starting from the end of the current list.

```

<Permutations: public>+=
  public :: permutation_array_make

```

*(Permutations: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine permutation_array_make (pa, code)
  type(permutation_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pa
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: code
  logical, dimension(size(code)) :: mask
  logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: imask
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_i
  type(permutation_t) :: p_init
  type(permutation_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_tmp
  integer :: psize, i, j, k, n_different, n, nn_k
  psize = size (code)
  mask = .true.
  n_different = 0
  do i=1, psize
    if (mask(i)) then
      n_different = n_different + 1
      mask = mask .and. (code /= code(i))
    end if
  end do
  allocate (imask(psize, n_different), n_i(n_different))
  mask = .true.
  k = 0
  do i=1, psize
    if (mask(i)) then
      k = k + 1
      imask(:,k) = (code == code(i))
      n_i(k) = factorial (count(imask(:,k)))
      mask = mask .and. (code /= code(i))
    end if
  end do
  n = product (n_i)
  allocate (pa (n))
  call permutation_init (p_init, psize)
  pa(1) = p_init
  nn_k = 1
  do k = 1, n_different
    allocate (p_tmp (n_i(k)))
    do i = nn_k, 1, -1
      call permutation_array_with_mask (p_tmp, imask(:,k), pa(i))
      do j = n_i(k), 1, -1
        pa((i-1)*n_i(k) + j) = p_tmp(j)
      end do
    end do
    deallocate (p_tmp)
    nn_k = nn_k * n_i(k)
  end do
  call permutation_final (p_init)
  deallocate (imask, n_i)
end subroutine permutation_array_make

```

Make a list of permutations of the elements marked true in the `mask` array. The final permutation list must be allocated with the correct length ( $n!$ ). The third argument is the initial permutation to start with, which must have the same

length as the mask array (this is not checked).

*(Permutations: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine permutation_array_with_mask (pa, mask, p_init)
  type(permutation_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pa
  logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
  type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: p_init
  integer :: plen
  integer :: i, ii, j, fac_i, k, x
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: index
  plen = size (pa)
  allocate (index(count(mask)))
  ii = 0
  do i = 1, size (mask)
    if (mask(i)) then
      ii = ii + 1
      index(ii) = i
    end if
  end do
  pa = p_init
  ii = 0
  fac_i = 1
  do i = 1, size (mask)
    if (mask(i)) then
      ii = ii + 1
      fac_i = fac_i * ii
      x = permute (i, p_init)
      do j = 1, plen
        k = ii - mod (((j-1)*fac_i)/plen, ii)
        call insert (pa(j), x, k, ii, index)
      end do
    end if
  end do
  deallocate (index)
contains
  subroutine insert (p, x, k, n, index)
    type(permutation_t), intent(inout) :: p
    integer, intent(in) :: x, k, n
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
    integer :: i
    do i = n, k+1, -1
      p%p(index(i)) = p%p(index(i-1))
    end do
    p%p(index(k)) = x
  end subroutine insert
end subroutine permutation_array_with_mask

```

The factorial function is needed for pre-determining the number of permutations that will be generated:

*(Permutations: procedures)+≡*

```

function factorial (n) result (f)
  integer, intent(in) :: n
  integer :: f
  integer :: i

```



```

f = 1
do i=2, abs(n)
  f = f*i
end do
end function factorial

```

### 2.14.2 Operations on binary codes

Binary codes are needed for phase-space trees. Since the permutation function uses permutations, and no other special type is involved, we put the functions here.

This is needed for phase space trees: permute bits in a tree binary code. If no permutation is given, leave as is. (We may want to access the permutation directly here if this is efficiency-critical.)

```

⟨Permutations: public⟩+=
  public :: tc_permute

⟨Permutations: procedures⟩+=
  function tc_permute (k, perm, mask_in) result (pk)
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: k, mask_in
    type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
    integer(TC) :: pk
    integer :: i
    pk = iand (k, mask_in)
    do i = 1, size (perm%p)
      if (btest(k,i-1)) pk = ibset (pk, perm%p(i)-1)
    end do
  end function tc_permute

```

This routine returns the number of set bits in the tree code value **k**. Hence, it is the number of externals connected to the current line. If **mask** is present, the complement of the tree code is also considered, and the smaller number is returned. This gives the true distance from the external states, taking into account the initial particles. The complement number is increased by one, since for a scattering diagram the vertex with the sum of all final-state codes is still one point apart from the initial particles.

```

⟨Permutations: public⟩+=
  public :: tc_decay_level

⟨Permutations: interfaces⟩=
  interface tc_decay_level
    module procedure decay_level_simple
    module procedure decay_level_complement
  end interface

⟨Permutations: procedures⟩+=
  function decay_level_complement (k, mask) result (l)
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: k, mask
    integer :: l
    l = min (decay_level_simple (k), &
      & decay_level_simple (ieor (k, mask)) + 1)
  end function decay_level_complement

```

```

function decay_level_simple (k) result(l)
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
  integer :: l
  integer :: i
  l = 0
  do i=0, bit_size(k)-1
    if (btest(k,i)) l = l+1
  end do
end function decay_level_simple

```

## 2.15 Sorting

This small module provides functions for sorting integer or real arrays.

```

<sorting.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module sorting

    <Use kinds>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    <Standard module head>

    <Sorting: public>

    <Sorting: interfaces>

    contains

    <Sorting: procedures>

    <Sorting: tests>

  end module sorting

```

### 2.15.1 Implementation

The `sort` function returns, for a given integer or real array, the array sorted by increasing value. The current implementation is *mergesort*, which has  $O(n \ln n)$  behavior in all cases, and is stable for elements of equal value.

The `sort_abs` variant sorts by increasing absolute value, where for identical absolute value, the positive number comes first.

```

<Sorting: public>≡
  public :: sort
  public :: sort_abs

<Sorting: interfaces>≡
  interface sort
    module procedure sort_int

```

```

    module procedure sort_real
end interface

interface sort_abs
    module procedure sort_int_abs
end interface

```

This variant of integer sort returns The body is identical, just the interface differs.

```

<Sorting: procedures>≡
function sort_int (val_in) result (val)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val_in
    integer, dimension(size(val_in)) :: val
<Sorting: sort>
end function sort_int

function sort_real (val_in) result (val)
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: val_in
    real(default), dimension(size(val_in)) :: val
<Sorting: sort>
end function sort_real

function sort_int_abs (val_in) result (val)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val_in
    integer, dimension(size(val_in)) :: val
<Sorting: sort abs>
end function sort_int_abs

```

```

<Sorting: sort>≡
    val = val_in( order (val_in) )

```

```

<Sorting: sort abs>≡
    val = val_in( order_abs (val_in) )

```

The `order` function returns, for a given integer or real array, the array of indices of the elements sorted by increasing value.

```

<Sorting: public>+≡
    public :: order
    public :: order_abs

<Sorting: interfaces>+≡
interface order
    module procedure order_int
    module procedure order_real
end interface

interface order_abs
    module procedure order_int_abs
end interface

```

```

<Sorting: procedures>+≡
function order_int (val) result (idx)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
    integer, dimension(size(val)) :: idx

```

```

<Sorting: order>
end function order_int

function order_real (val) result (idx)
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
  integer, dimension(size(val)) :: idx
<Sorting: order>
end function order_real

function order_int_abs (val) result (idx)
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
  integer, dimension(size(val)) :: idx
<Sorting: order abs>
end function order_int_abs

```

We start by individual elements, merge them to pairs, merge those to four-element subarrays, and so on. The last subarray can extend only up to the original array bound, of course, and the second of the subarrays to merge should contain at least one element.

```

<Sorting: order>≡
  <Sorting: order1>
    call merge (idx(b1:e2), idx(b1:e1), idx(b2:e2), val)
  <Sorting: order2>

<Sorting: order abs>≡
  <Sorting: order1>
    call merge_abs (idx(b1:e2), idx(b1:e1), idx(b2:e2), val)
  <Sorting: order2>

<Sorting: order1>≡
  integer :: n, i, s, b1, b2, e1, e2
  n = size (idx)
  forall (i = 1:n)
    idx(i) = i
  end forall
  s = 1
  do while (s < n)
    do b1 = 1, n-s, 2*s
      b2 = b1 + s
      e1 = b2 - 1
      e2 = min (e1 + s, n)

```

```

    <Sorting: order2>≡
      end do
      s = 2 * s
    end do

```

The merging step does the actual sorting. We take two sorted array sections and merge them to a sorted result array. We are working on the indices, and comparing is done by taking the associated `val` which is real or integer.

```

<Sorting: interfaces>+≡
  interface merge
    module procedure merge_int
    module procedure merge_real
  end interface

```

```

interface merge_abs
  module procedure merge_int_abs
end interface

```

```

<Sorting: procedures>+≡
  subroutine merge_int (res, src1, src2, val)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: res
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src1, src2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
    integer, dimension(size(res)) :: tmp
    <Sorting: merge>
  end subroutine merge_int

  subroutine merge_real (res, src1, src2, val)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: res
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src1, src2
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
    integer, dimension(size(res)) :: tmp
    <Sorting: merge>
  end subroutine merge_real

  subroutine merge_int_abs (res, src1, src2, val)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: res
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src1, src2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val
    integer, dimension(size(res)) :: tmp
    <Sorting: merge abs>
  end subroutine merge_int_abs

```

```

<Sorting: merge>≡
  <Sorting: merge1>
    if (val(src1(i1)) <= val(src2(i2))) then
  <Sorting: merge2>

```

We keep the elements if the absolute values are strictly ordered. If they are equal in magnitude, we keep them if the larger value comes first, or if they are equal.

```

<Sorting: merge abs>≡
  <Sorting: merge1>
    if (abs (val(src1(i1))) < abs (val(src2(i2))) .or. &
        (abs (val(src1(i1))) == abs (val(src2(i2))) .and. &
        val(src1(i1)) >= val(src2(i2)))) then
  <Sorting: merge2>

  <Sorting: merge1>≡
    integer :: i1, i2, i
    i1 = 1
    i2 = 1
    do i = 1, size (tmp)
  <Sorting: merge2>≡
    tmp(i) = src1(i1); i1 = i1 + 1
    if (i1 > size (src1)) then

```

```

        tmp(i+1:) = src2(i2:)
        exit
    end if
else
    tmp(i) = src2(i2); i2 = i2 + 1
    if (i2 > size (src2)) then
        tmp(i+1:) = src1(i1:)
        exit
    end if
end if
end do
res = tmp

```

### 2.15.2 Concatenating arrays

Not precisely a sorting function, but useful: Concatenate two arrays.

```

<Sorting: public>+≡
public :: concat

<Sorting: interfaces>+≡
interface concat
    module procedure concat_int
    module procedure concat_real
end interface

<Sorting: procedures>+≡
function concat_int (val1, val2) result (val12)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: val1, val2
    integer, dimension(size(val1)+size(val2)) :: val12
<Sorting: concat>
end function concat_int

function concat_real (val1, val2) result (val12)
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: val1, val2
    integer, dimension(size(val1)+size(val2)) :: val12
<Sorting: concat>
end function concat_real

<Sorting: concat>≡
val12(:size(val1)) = val1
val12(size(val1)+1:) = val2

```

### 2.15.3 Unit tests

```

<Sorting: public>+≡
public :: sorting_test

<Sorting: procedures>+≡
subroutine sorting_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<Sorting: execute tests>
end subroutine sorting_test

```

This checks whether the sorting routine works correctly.

*<Sorting: execute tests>*≡

```
call test (sorting_1, "sorting_1", &
          "check sorting routines", &
          u, results)
```

*<Sorting: tests>*≡

```
subroutine sorting_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, parameter :: NMAX = 10
  real(default), dimension(NMAX) :: rval
  integer, dimension(NMAX) :: ival
  real, dimension(NMAX,NMAX) :: harvest_r
  integer, dimension(NMAX,NMAX) :: harvest_i
  integer, dimension(NMAX,NMAX) :: harvest_a
  integer :: i, j
  harvest_r(:, 1) = [0.9976, 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 2) = [0.5668, 0.9659, 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 3) = [0.7479, 0.3674, 0.4806, 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., 0., &
                    0.]
  harvest_r(:, 4) = [0.0738, 0.0054, 0.3471, 0.3422, 0., 0., 0., 0., &
                    0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 5) = [0.2180, 0.1332, 0.9005, 0.3868, 0.4455, 0., 0., &
                    0., 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 6) = [0.6619, 0.0161, 0.6509, 0.6464, 0.3230, &
                    0.8557, 0., 0., 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 7) = [0.4013, 0.2069, 0.9685, 0.5984, 0.6730, &
                    0.4569, 0.3300, 0., 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 8) = [0.1004, 0.7555, 0.6057, 0.7190, 0.8973, &
                    0.6582, 0.1507, 0.6123, 0., 0.]
  harvest_r(:, 9) = [0.9787, 0.9991, 0.2568, 0.5509, 0.6590, &
                    0.5540, 0.9778, 0.9019, 0.6579, 0.]
  harvest_r(:,10) = [0.7289, 0.4025, 0.9286, 0.1478, 0.6745, &
                    0.7696, 0.3393, 0.1158, 0.6144, 0.8206]

  harvest_i(:, 1) = [18, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 2) = [14, 9, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 3) = [ 7, 8,11, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 4) = [19,19,14,19, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 5) = [ 1,14,15,18,14, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 6) = [16,11, 1, 9,11, 2, 0, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 7) = [11,10,17, 6,13,13,10, 0, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 8) = [ 5, 1, 2,10, 7, 0,15,12, 0, 0]
  harvest_i(:, 9) = [15,19, 2, 6,11, 0, 2, 4, 2, 0]
  harvest_i(:,10) = [ 1, 4, 8, 4,11, 0, 8, 7,19,13]

  harvest_a(:, 1) = [-6,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 2) = [-8, -9,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 3) = [ 4, -3,  3,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 4) = [-6,  6,  2, -2,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 5) = [ 1, -2,  0, -6,  8,  0,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 6) = [-2, -1, -8, -5,  8, -5,  0,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 7) = [-9,  0, -6,  2,  5,  3,  2,  0,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 8) = [-5, -7,  6,  7, -3,  0, -7,  4,  0,  0]
  harvest_a(:, 9) = [ 5,  0, -1, -7,  5,  2,  7, -3,  3,  0]
```

```

harvest_a(:,10) = [-9, 2, -6, 3, -9, 5, 5, 7, 5, -9]

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Sorting"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test sorting routines"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Sorting real values:"

do i = 1, NMAX
  write (u, "(A)")
  rval(:i) = harvest_r(:,i)
  write (u, "(10(1x,F7.4))") rval(:i)
  rval(:i) = sort (rval(:i))
  write (u, "(10(1x,F7.4))") rval(:i)
  do j = i, 2, -1
    if (rval(j)-rval(j-1) < 0) &
      write (u, "(A)") "*** Sorting failure. ***"
  end do
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sorting integer values:"

do i = 1, NMAX
  write (u, "(A)")
  ival(:i) = harvest_i(:,i)
  write (u, "(10(1x,I2))") ival(:i)
  ival(:i) = sort (ival(:i))
  write (u, "(10(1x,I2))") ival(:i)
  do j = i, 2, -1
    if (ival(j)-ival(j-1) < 0) &
      write (u, "(A)") "*** Sorting failure. ***"
  end do
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sorting integer values by absolute value:"

do i = 1, NMAX
  write (u, "(A)")
  ival(:i) = harvest_a(:,i)
  write (u, "(10(1x,I2))") ival(:i)
  ival(:i) = sort_abs (ival(:i))
  write (u, "(10(1x,I2))") ival(:i)
  do j = i, 2, -1
    if (abs(ival(j))-abs(ival(j-1)) < 0 .or. &
      (abs(ival(j))==abs(ival(j-1))) .and. ival(j)>ival(j-1)) &
      write (u, "(A)") "*** Sorting failure. ***"
  end do
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sorting_1"

```



```
end subroutine sorting_1
```

## Chapter 3

# Text handling

WHIZARD has to handle complex structures in input (and output) data. Doing this in a generic and transparent way requires a generic lexer and parser. The necessary modules are implemented here:

**ifiles** Implementation of line-oriented internal files in a more flexible way (linked lists of variable-length strings) than the Fortran builtin features.

**lexers** Read text and transform it into a token stream.

**syntax\_rules** Define the rules for interpreting tokens, to be used by the parser.

**parser** Categorize tokens (keyword, string, number etc.) and use a set of syntax rules to transform the input into a parse tree.

## 3.1 Internal files

The internal files introduced here (`ifile`) are a replacement for the built-in internal files, which are fixed-size arrays of fixed-length character strings. The `ifile` type is a doubly-linked list of variable-length character strings with line numbers.

```
<ifiles.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module ifiles  
  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: EOF !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Ifiles: public>  
  
    <Ifiles: types>  
  
    <Ifiles: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Ifiles: subroutines>  
  
  end module ifiles
```

### 3.1.1 iostat codes

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡  
  integer, parameter, public :: EOF = iostat_end, EOR = iostat_eor
```

### 3.1.2 The line type

The line entry type is for internal use, it is the list entry to be collected in an `ifile` object.

```
<Ifiles: types>≡  
  type :: line_entry_t  
    private  
    type(line_entry_t), pointer :: previous => null ()  
    type(line_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()  
    type(string_t) :: string  
    integer :: index  
  end type line_entry_t
```

Create a new list entry, given a varying string as input. The line number and pointers are not set, these make sense only within an `ifile`.

```
<Ifiles: subroutines>≡  
  subroutine line_entry_create (line, string)
```

```

    type(line_entry_t), pointer :: line
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    allocate (line)
    line%string = string
end subroutine line_entry_create

```

Destroy a single list entry: Since the pointer components should not be deallocated explicitly, just deallocate the object itself.

```

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine line_entry_destroy (line)
        type(line_entry_t), pointer :: line
        deallocate (line)
    end subroutine line_entry_destroy

```

### 3.1.3 The ifile type

The internal file is a linked list of line entries.

```

<Ifiles: public>≡
    public :: ifile_t

<Ifiles: types>+≡
    type :: ifile_t
    private
        type(line_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
        type(line_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
        integer :: n_lines = 0
    end type ifile_t

```

We need no explicit initializer, but a routine which recursively deallocates the contents may be appropriate. After this, existing line pointers may become undefined, so they should be nullified before the file is destroyed.

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: ifile_clear

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine ifile_clear (ifile)
        type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
        type(line_entry_t), pointer :: current
        do while (associated (ifile%first))
            current => ifile%first
            ifile%first => current%next
            call line_entry_destroy (current)
        end do
        nullify (ifile%last)
        ifile%n_lines = 0
    end subroutine ifile_clear

```

The finalizer is just an alias for the above.

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: ifile_final

```

```

<Ifiles: interfaces>+=
  interface ifile_final
    module procedure ifile_clear
  end interface

```

### 3.1.4 I/O on ifiles

Fill an ifile from an ordinary external file, i.e., I/O unit. If the ifile is not empty, the old contents will be destroyed. We can read a fixed-length character string, an ISO varying string, an ordinary internal file (character-string array), or from an external unit. In the latter case, lines are appended until EOF is reached. Finally, there is a variant which reads from another ifile, effectively copying it.

```

<Ifiles: public>+=
  public :: ifile_read

<Ifiles: interfaces>+=
  interface ifile_read
    module procedure ifile_read_from_string
    module procedure ifile_read_from_char
    module procedure ifile_read_from_unit
    module procedure ifile_read_from_char_array
    module procedure ifile_read_from_ifile
  end interface

<Ifiles: subroutines>+=
  subroutine ifile_read_from_string (ifile, string)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, string)
  end subroutine ifile_read_from_string

  subroutine ifile_read_from_char (ifile, char)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    character(*), intent(in) :: char
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, char)
  end subroutine ifile_read_from_char

  subroutine ifile_read_from_char_array (ifile, char)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    character(*), dimension(:), intent(in) :: char
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, char)
  end subroutine ifile_read_from_char_array

  subroutine ifile_read_from_unit (ifile, unit, iostat)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, unit, iostat)
  end subroutine ifile_read_from_unit

```

```

subroutine ifile_read_from_ifile (ifile, ifile_in)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile_in
  call ifile_clear (ifile)
  call ifile_append (ifile, ifile_in)
end subroutine ifile_read_from_ifile

```

Append to an ifile. The same as reading, but without resetting the ifile. In addition, there is a routine for appending a whole ifile.

*(Ifiles: public)+≡*

```

public :: ifile_append

```

*(Ifiles: interfaces)+≡*

```

interface ifile_append
  module procedure ifile_append_from_string
  module procedure ifile_append_from_char
  module procedure ifile_append_from_unit
  module procedure ifile_append_from_char_array
  module procedure ifile_append_from_ifile
end interface

```

*(Ifiles: subroutines)+≡*

```

subroutine ifile_append_from_string (ifile, string)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
  type(line_entry_t), pointer :: current
  call line_entry_create (current, string)
  current%index = ifile%n_lines + 1
  if (associated (ifile%last)) then
    current%previous => ifile%last
    ifile%last%next => current
  else
    ifile%first => current
  end if
  ifile%last => current
  ifile%n_lines = current%index
end subroutine ifile_append_from_string

subroutine ifile_append_from_char (ifile, char)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  character(*), intent(in) :: char
  call ifile_append_from_string (ifile, var_str (trim (char)))
end subroutine ifile_append_from_char

subroutine ifile_append_from_char_array (ifile, char)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  character(*), dimension(:), intent(in) :: char
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (char)
    call ifile_append_from_string (ifile, var_str (trim (char(i))))
  end do
end subroutine ifile_append_from_char_array

subroutine ifile_append_from_unit (ifile, unit, iostat)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: unit
integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
type(string_t) :: buffer
integer :: ios
ios = 0
READ_LOOP: do
    call get (unit, buffer, iostat = ios)
    if (ios == EOF .or. ios > 0) exit READ_LOOP
    call ifile_append_from_string (ifile, buffer)
end do READ_LOOP
if (present (iostat)) then
    iostat = ios
else if (ios > 0) then
    call get (unit, buffer) ! trigger error again
end if
end subroutine ifile_append_from_unit

subroutine ifile_append_from_ifile (ifile, ifile_in)
type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile_in
type(line_entry_t), pointer :: current
current => ifile_in%first
do while (associated (current))
    call ifile_append_from_string (ifile, current%string)
    current => current%next
end do
end subroutine ifile_append_from_ifile

```

Write the ifile contents to an external unit

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
public :: ifile_write

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
subroutine ifile_write (ifile, unit, iostat)
type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
integer :: u
type(line_entry_t), pointer :: current
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
current => ifile%first
do while (associated (current))
    call put_line (u, current%string, iostat)
    current => current%next
end do
end subroutine ifile_write

```

Convert the ifile to an array of strings, which is allocated by this function:

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
public :: ifile_to_string_array

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
subroutine ifile_to_string_array (ifile, string)
type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile

```

```

type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), allocatable :: string
type(line_entry_t), pointer :: current
integer :: i
allocate (string (ifile_get_length (ifile)))
current => ifile%first
do i = 1, ifile_get_length (ifile)
    string(i) = current%string
    current => current%next
end do
end subroutine ifile_to_string_array

```

### 3.1.5 Ifile tools

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
public :: ifile_get_length

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
function ifile_get_length (ifile) result (length)
    integer :: length
    type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
    length = ifile%n_lines
end function ifile_get_length

```

### 3.1.6 Line pointers

Instead of the implicit pointer used in ordinary file access, we define explicit pointers, so there can be more than one at a time.

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
public :: line_p

<Ifiles: types>+≡
type :: line_p
private
    type(line_entry_t), pointer :: p => null ()
end type line_p

```

Assign a file pointer to the first or last line in an ifile:

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
public :: line_init

<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
subroutine line_init (line, ifile, back)
    type(line_p), intent(inout) :: line
    type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
    logical, intent(in), optional :: back
    if (present (back)) then
        if (back) then
            line%p => ifile%last
        else
            line%p => ifile%first
        end if
    else

```



```

        line%p => ifile%first
    end if
end subroutine line_init

```

Remove the pointer association:

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: line_final
<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine line_final (line)
        type(line_p), intent(inout) :: line
        nullify (line%p)
    end subroutine line_final

```

Go one step forward

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: line_advance
<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine line_advance (line)
        type(line_p), intent(inout) :: line
        if (associated (line%p)) line%p => line%p%next
    end subroutine line_advance

```

Go one step backward

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: line_backspace
<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine line_backspace (line)
        type(line_p), intent(inout) :: line
        if (associated (line%p)) line%p => line%p%previous
    end subroutine line_backspace

```

Check whether we are accessing a valid line

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: line_is_associated
<Ifiles: subroutines>+≡
    function line_is_associated (line) result (ok)
        logical :: ok
        type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
        ok = associated (line%p)
    end function line_is_associated

```

### 3.1.7 Access lines via pointers

We do not need the ifile as an argument to these functions, because the `line` type will point to an existing ifile.

```

<Ifiles: public>+≡
    public :: line_get_string

```

```

<Ifiles: subroutines>+=
function line_get_string (line) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
  if (associated (line%p)) then
    string = line%p%string
  else
    string = ""
  end if
end function line_get_string

```

Variant where the line pointer is advanced after reading.

```

<Ifiles: public>+=
public :: line_get_string_advance
<Ifiles: subroutines>+=
function line_get_string_advance (line) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(line_p), intent(inout) :: line
  if (associated (line%p)) then
    string = line%p%string
    call line_advance (line)
  else
    string = ""
  end if
end function line_get_string_advance

```

```

<Ifiles: public>+=
public :: line_get_index
<Ifiles: subroutines>+=
function line_get_index (line) result (index)
  integer :: index
  type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
  if (associated (line%p)) then
    index = line%p%index
  else
    index = 0
  end if
end function line_get_index

```

```

<Ifiles: public>+=
public :: line_get_length
<Ifiles: subroutines>+=
function line_get_length (line) result (length)
  integer :: length
  type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
  if (associated (line%p)) then
    length = len (line%p%string)
  else
    length = 0
  end if
end function line_get_length

```

## 3.2 Lexer

The lexer purpose is to read from a line-separated character input stream (usually a file) and properly chop the stream into lexemes (tokens). [The parser will transform lexemes into meaningful tokens, to be stored in a parse tree, therefore we do not use the term 'token' here.] The input is read line-by-line, but interpreted free-form, except for quotes and the comment syntax. (Fortran 2003 would allow us to use a stream type for reading.)

In an object-oriented approach, we can dynamically create and destroy lexers, including the lexer setup.

The main lexer function is to return a lexeme according to the basic lexer rules (quotes, comments, whitespace, special classes). There is also a routine to write back a lexeme to the input stream (but only once).

For the rules, we separate the possible characters into classes. Whitespace usually consists of blank, tab, and line-feed, where any number of consecutive whitespace is equivalent to one. Quoted strings are enclosed by a pair of quote characters, possibly multiline. Comments are similar to quotes, but interpreted as whitespace. Numbers are identified (not distinguishing real and integer) but not interpreted. Other character classes make up identifiers.

```
<lexers.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module lexers  
  
  <Use strings>  
  <Use file utils>  
  use limits, only: EOF, EOR !NODEP!  
  use limits, only: LF !NODEP!  
  use limits, only: WHITESPACE_CHARS, LCLETTERS, UCLETTERS, DIGITS !NODEP!  
  use diagnostics !NODEP!  
  use ifiles, only: ifile_t  
  use ifiles, only: line_p, line_is_associated, line_init, line_final  
  use ifiles, only: line_get_string_advance  
  use unit_tests  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <Lexer: public>  
  
  <Lexer: parameters>  
  
  <Lexer: types>  
  
  <Lexer: interfaces>  
  
contains  
  
  <Lexer: procedures>  
  
  <Lexer: tests>  
  
end module lexers
```

### 3.2.1 Input streams

For flexible input, we define a generic stream type that refers to either an external file, an external unit which is already open, a string, an `ifile` object (internal file, i.e., string list), or a line pointer to an `ifile` object. The stream type actually follows the idea of a formatted external file, which is line-oriented. Thus, the stream reader always returns a whole record (input line).

Note that only in the string version, the stream contents are stored inside the stream object. In the `ifile` version, the stream contains only the line pointer, while in the external-file case, the line pointer is implicitly created by the runtime library.

```
<Lexer: public>≡
    public :: stream_t

<Lexer: types>≡
    type :: stream_t
        type(string_t), pointer :: filename => null ()
        integer, pointer :: unit => null ()
        type(string_t), pointer :: string => null ()
        type(ifile_t), pointer :: ifile => null ()
        type(line_p), pointer :: line => null ()
        integer :: record = 0
        logical :: eof = .false.
    end type stream_t
```

The initializers refer to the specific version. The stream should be undefined before calling this.

```
<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: stream_init

<Lexer: interfaces>≡
    interface stream_init
        module procedure stream_init_filename
        module procedure stream_init_unit
        module procedure stream_init_string
        module procedure stream_init_ifile
        module procedure stream_init_line
    end interface

<Lexer: procedures>≡
    subroutine stream_init_filename (stream, filename)
        type(stream_t), intent(out) :: stream
        character(*), intent(in) :: filename
        integer :: unit
        unit = free_unit ()
        open (unit=unit, file=filename, status="old", action="read")
        call stream_init_unit (stream, unit)
        allocate (stream%filename)
        stream%filename = filename
    end subroutine stream_init_filename

    subroutine stream_init_unit (stream, unit)
        type(stream_t), intent(out) :: stream
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
```

```

        allocate (stream%unit)
        stream%unit = unit
        stream%eof = .false.
    end subroutine stream_init_unit

subroutine stream_init_string (stream, string)
    type(stream_t), intent(out) :: stream
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    allocate (stream%string)
    stream%string = string
end subroutine stream_init_string

subroutine stream_init_ifile (stream, ifile)
    type(stream_t), intent(out) :: stream
    type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
    type(line_p) :: line
    call line_init (line, ifile)
    call stream_init_line (stream, line)
    allocate (stream%ifile)
    stream%ifile = ifile
end subroutine stream_init_ifile

subroutine stream_init_line (stream, line)
    type(stream_t), intent(out) :: stream
    type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
    allocate (stream%line)
    stream%line = line
end subroutine stream_init_line

```

The finalizer restores the initial state. If an external file was opened, it is closed.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: stream_final

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine stream_final (stream)
        type(stream_t), intent(inout) :: stream
        if (associated (stream%filename)) then
            close (stream%unit)
            deallocate (stream%unit)
            deallocate (stream%filename)
        else if (associated (stream%unit)) then
            deallocate (stream%unit)
        else if (associated (stream%string)) then
            deallocate (stream%string)
        else if (associated (stream%ifile)) then
            call line_final (stream%line)
            deallocate (stream%line)
            deallocate (stream%ifile)
        else if (associated (stream%line)) then
            call line_final (stream%line)
            deallocate (stream%line)
        end if
    end subroutine stream_final

```

This returns the next record from the input stream. Depending on the stream type, the stream pointers are modified: Reading from external unit, the external file is advanced (implicitly). Reading from string, the string is replaced by an empty string. Reading from ifile, the line pointer is advanced. Note that the `iostat` argument is mandatory.

*<Lexer: public>+≡*

`public :: stream_get_record`

*<Lexer: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine stream_get_record (stream, string, iostat)
  type(stream_t), intent(inout) :: stream
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
  integer, intent(out) :: iostat
  if (associated (stream%unit)) then
    if (stream%eof) then
      iostat = EOF
    else
      call get (stream%unit, string, iostat=iostat)
      if (iostat == EOR) then
        iostat = 0
        stream%record = stream%record + 1
      end if
      if (iostat == EOF) then
        iostat = 0
        stream%eof = .true.
        if (len (string) /= 0) stream%record = stream%record + 1
      end if
    end if
  else if (associated (stream%string)) then
    if (len (stream%string) /= 0) then
      string = stream%string
      stream%string = ""
      iostat = 0
      stream%record = stream%record + 1
    else
      string = ""
      iostat = EOF
    end if
  else if (associated (stream%line)) then
    if (line_is_associated (stream%line)) then
      string = line_get_string_advance (stream%line)
      iostat = 0
      stream%record = stream%record + 1
    else
      string = ""
      iostat = EOF
    end if
  else
    call msg_bug (" Attempt to read from uninitialized input stream")
  end if
end subroutine stream_get_record
```

Return the current stream source as a message string.

*<Lexer: public>+≡*

```

public :: stream_get_source_info_string
<Lexer: procedures>+≡
function stream_get_source_info_string (stream) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(stream_t), intent(in) :: stream
  character(20) :: buffer
  if (associated (stream%filename)) then
    string = "File '" // stream%filename // "' (unit = "
    write (buffer, "(IO)") stream%unit
    string = string // trim (buffer) // ")"
  else if (associated (stream%unit)) then
    write (buffer, "(IO)") stream%unit
    string = "Unit " // trim (buffer)
  else if (associated (stream%string)) then
    string = "Input string"
  else if (associated (stream%ifile) .or. associated (stream%line)) then
    string = "Internal file"
  else
    string = ""
  end if
end function stream_get_source_info_string

```

Return the index of the record just read as a message string.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: stream_get_record_info_string
<Lexer: procedures>+≡
function stream_get_record_info_string (stream) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(stream_t), intent(in) :: stream
  character(20) :: buffer
  string = stream_get_source_info_string (stream)
  if (string /= "") string = string // ", "
  write (buffer, "(IO)") stream%record
  string = string // "line " // trim (buffer)
end function stream_get_record_info_string

```

### 3.2.2 Keyword list

The lexer should be capable of identifying a token as a known keyword. To this end, we store a list of keywords:

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: keyword_list_t
<Lexer: types>+≡
type :: keyword_entry_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type keyword_entry_t

type :: keyword_list_t

```

```

private
type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
end type keyword_list_t

```

Add a new string to the keyword list, unless it is already there:

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: keyword_list_add

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine keyword_list_add (keylist, string)
type(keyword_list_t), intent(inout) :: keylist
type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: k_entry_new
if (.not. keyword_list_contains (keylist, string)) then
allocate (k_entry_new)
k_entry_new%string = string
if (associated (keylist%first)) then
keylist%last%next => k_entry_new
else
keylist%first => k_entry_new
end if
keylist%last => k_entry_new
end if
end subroutine keyword_list_add

```

Return true if a string is a keyword.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: keyword_list_contains

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
function keyword_list_contains (keylist, string) result (found)
type(keyword_list_t), intent(in) :: keylist
type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
logical :: found
found = .false.
call check_rec (keylist%first)
contains
recursive subroutine check_rec (k_entry)
type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: k_entry
if (associated (k_entry)) then
if (k_entry%string /= string) then
call check_rec (k_entry%next)
else
found = .true.
end if
end if
end subroutine check_rec
end function keyword_list_contains

```

Write the keyword list

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: keyword_list_write

```



```

<Lexer: interfaces>+≡
    interface keyword_list_write
        module procedure keyword_list_write_unit
    end interface

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine keyword_list_write_unit (keylist, unit)
        type(keyword_list_t), intent(in) :: keylist
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        write (unit, "(A)") "Keyword list:"
        if (associated (keylist%first)) then
            call keyword_write_rec (keylist%first)
            write (unit, *)
        else
            write (unit, "(1x,A)") "[empty]"
        end if
    contains
        recursive subroutine keyword_write_rec (k_entry)
            type(keyword_entry_t), intent(in), pointer :: k_entry
            if (associated (k_entry)) then
                write (unit, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (k_entry%string)
                call keyword_write_rec (k_entry%next)
            end if
        end subroutine keyword_write_rec
    end subroutine keyword_list_write_unit

```

Clear the keyword list

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: keyword_list_final

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine keyword_list_final (keylist)
        type(keyword_list_t), intent(inout) :: keylist
        call keyword_destroy_rec (keylist%first)
        nullify (keylist%last)
    contains
        recursive subroutine keyword_destroy_rec (k_entry)
            type(keyword_entry_t), pointer :: k_entry
            if (associated (k_entry)) then
                call keyword_destroy_rec (k_entry%next)
                deallocate (k_entry)
            end if
        end subroutine keyword_destroy_rec
    end subroutine keyword_list_final

```

### 3.2.3 Lexeme templates

This type is handled like a rudimentary regular expression. It determines the lexer behavior when matching a string. The actual objects made from this type and the corresponding matching routines are listed below.

```

<Lexer: types>+≡
    type :: template_t

```

```

private
integer :: type
character(256) :: charset1, charset2
integer :: len1, len2
end type template_t

```

These are the types that valid lexemes can have:

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: T_KEYWORD, T_IDENTIFIER, T_QUOTED, T_NUMERIC

<Lexer: parameters>≡
integer, parameter :: T_KEYWORD = 1
integer, parameter :: T_IDENTIFIER = 2, T_QUOTED = 3, T_NUMERIC = 4

```

These are special types:

```

<Lexer: parameters>+≡
integer, parameter :: EMPTY = 0, WHITESPACE = 10
integer, parameter :: NO_MATCH = 11, IO_ERROR = 12, OVERFLOW = 13
integer, parameter :: UNMATCHED_QUOTE = 14

```

In addition, we have EOF which is a negative integer, normally  $-1$ . Printout for debugging:

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexeme_type_write (type, unit)
integer, intent(in) :: type
integer, intent(in) :: unit
select case (type)
case (EMPTY);      write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " EMPTY      "
case (WHITESPACE); write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " WHITESPACE "
case (T_IDENTIFIER);write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " IDENTIFIER "
case (T_QUOTED);   write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " QUOTED      "
case (T_NUMERIC);  write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " NUMERIC      "
case (IO_ERROR);   write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " IO_ERROR    "
case (OVERFLOW);   write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " OVERFLOW    "
case (UNMATCHED_QUOTE); write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " UNMATCHEDQ "
case (NO_MATCH);   write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " NO_MATCH    "
case (EOF);        write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " EOF          "
case default;      write(unit,"(A)",advance="no") " [illegal]   "
end select
end subroutine lexeme_type_write

subroutine template_write (tt, unit)
type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
integer, intent(in) :: unit
call lexeme_type_write (tt%type, unit)
write (unit, "(A)", advance="no") " '" // tt%charset1(1:tt%len1) // "' "
write (unit, "(A)", advance="no") " '" // tt%charset2(1:tt%len2) // "' "
end subroutine template_write

```

The matching functions all return the number of matched characters in the provided string. If this number is zero, the match has failed.

The `template` functions are declared `pure` because they appear in `forall` loops below.

A template for whitespace:

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
  pure function template_whitespace (chars) result (tt)
    character(*), intent(in) :: chars
    type(template_t) :: tt
    tt = template_t (WHITESPACE, chars, "", len (chars), 0)
  end function template_whitespace

```

Just match the string against the character set.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
  subroutine match_whitespace (tt, s, n)
    type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    integer, intent(out) :: n
    n = verify (s, tt%charset1(1:tt%len1)) - 1
    if (n < 0) n = len (s)
  end subroutine match_whitespace

```

A template for normal identifiers. To match, a lexeme should have a first character in class `chars1` and an arbitrary number of further characters in class `chars2`. If the latter is empty, we are looking for a single-character lexeme.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
  pure function template_identifier (chars1, chars2) result (tt)
    character(*), intent(in) :: chars1, chars2
    type(template_t) :: tt
    tt = template_t (T_IDENTIFIER, chars1, chars2, len(chars1), len(chars2))
  end function template_identifier

```

Here, the first letter must match, the others may or may not.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
  subroutine match_identifier (tt, s, n)
    type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    integer, intent(out) :: n
    if (verify (s(1:1), tt%charset1(1:tt%len1)) == 0) then
      n = verify (s(2:), tt%charset2(1:tt%len2))
      if (n == 0) n = len (s)
    else
      n = 0
    end if
  end subroutine match_identifier

```

A template for quoted strings. The same template applies for comments. The first character set indicates the left quote (could be a sequence of several characters), the second one the matching right quote.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
  pure function template_quoted (chars1, chars2) result (tt)
    character(*), intent(in) :: chars1, chars2
    type(template_t) :: tt
    tt = template_t (T_QUOTED, chars1, chars2, len (chars1), len (chars2))
  end function template_quoted

```

Here, the beginning of the string must exactly match the first character set, then we look for the second one. If found, return. If there is a first quote but no second one, return a negative number, indicating this error condition.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine match_quoted (tt, s, n, range)
  type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
  character(*), intent(in) :: s
  integer, intent(out) :: n
  integer, dimension(2), intent(out) :: range
  character(tt%len1) :: ch1
  character(tt%len2) :: ch2
  integer :: i
  ch1 = tt%charset1
  if (s(1:tt%len1) == ch1) then
    ch2 = tt%charset2
    do i = tt%len1 + 1, len (s) - tt%len2 + 1
      if (s(i:i+tt%len2-1) == ch2) then
        n = i + tt%len2 - 1
        range(1) = tt%len1 + 1
        range(2) = i - 1
        return
      end if
    end do
    n = -1
    range = 0
  else
    n = 0
    range = 0
  end if
end subroutine match_quoted

```

A template for real numbers. The first character set is the set of allowed exponent letters. In accordance with the other functions we return the lexeme as a string but do not read it.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
pure function template_numeric (chars) result (tt)
  character(*), intent(in) :: chars
  type(template_t) :: tt
  tt = template_t (T_NUMERIC, chars, "", len (chars), 0)
end function template_numeric

```

A numeric lexeme may be real or integer. We purposely do not allow for a preceding sign. If the number is followed by an exponent, this is included, otherwise the rest is ignored.

There is a possible pitfall with this behavior: while the string `1e3` will be interpreted as a single number, the analogous string `1a3` will be split into the number `1` and an identifier `a3`. There is no easy way around such an ambiguity. We should make sure that the syntax does not contain identifiers like `a3` or `e3`.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine match_numeric (tt, s, n)
  type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
  character(*), intent(in) :: s

```

```

integer, intent(out) :: n
integer :: i, n0
character(10), parameter :: digits = "0123456789"
character(2), parameter :: signs = "-+"
n = verify (s, digits) - 1
if (n < 0) then
    n = 0
    return
else if (s(n+1:n+1) == ".") then
    i = verify (s(n+2:), digits) - 1
    if (i < 0) then
        n = len (s)
        return
    else if (i > 0 .or. n > 0) then
        n = n + 1 + i
    end if
end if
n0 = n
if (n > 0) then
    if (verify (s(n+1:n+1), tt%charset1(1:tt%len1)) == 0) then
        n = n + 1
        if (verify (s(n+1:n+1), signs) == 0) n = n + 1
        i = verify (s(n+1:), digits) - 1
        if (i < 0) then
            n = len (s)
        else if (i == 0) then
            n = n0
        else
            n = n + i
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine match_numeric

```

The generic matching routine. With Fortran 2003 we would define separate types and use a SELECT TYPE instead.

*<Lexer: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine match_template (tt, s, n, range)
    type(template_t), intent(in) :: tt
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    integer, intent(out) :: n
    integer, dimension(2), intent(out) :: range
    select case (tt%type)
    case (WHITESPACE)
        call match_whitespace (tt, s, n)
        range = 0
    case (T_IDENTIFIER)
        call match_identifier (tt, s, n)
        range(1) = 1
        range(2) = len_trim (s)
    case (T_QUOTED)
        call match_quoted (tt, s, n, range)
    case (T_NUMERIC)

```

```

        call match_numeric (tt, s, n)
        range(1) = 1
        range(2) = len_trim (s)
    case default
        call msg_bug ("Invalid lexeme template encountered")
    end select
end subroutine match_template

```

Match against an array of templates. Return the index of the first template that matches together with the number of characters matched and the range of the relevant substring. If all fails, these numbers are zero.

*<Lexer: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine match (tt, s, n, range, ii)
    type(template_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: tt
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    integer, intent(out) :: n
    integer, dimension(2), intent(out) :: range
    integer, intent(out) :: ii
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (tt)
        call match_template (tt(i), s, n, range)
        if (n /= 0) then
            ii = i
            return
        end if
    end do
    n = 0
    ii = 0
end subroutine match

```

### 3.2.4 The lexer setup

This object contains information about character classes. As said above, one class consists of quoting chars (matching left and right), another one of comment chars (similar), a class of whitespace, and several classes of characters that make up identifiers. When creating the lexer setup, the character classes are transformed into lexeme templates which are to be matched in a certain predefined order against the input stream.

BLANK should always be taken as whitespace, some things may depend on this. TAB is also fixed by convention, but may in principle be modified. Newline (DOS!) and linefeed are also defined as whitespace.

*<Limits: public parameters>+≡*

```

character, parameter, public :: BLANK = ' ', TAB = achar(9)
character, parameter, public :: CR = achar(13), LF = achar(10)
character, parameter, public :: BACKSLASH = achar(92)
character(*), parameter, public :: WHITESPACE_CHARS = BLANK// TAB // CR // LF
character(*), parameter, public :: LCLETTERS = "abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz"
character(*), parameter, public :: UCLETTERS = "ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ"
character(*), parameter, public :: DIGITS = "0123456789"

```

The lexer setup, containing the list of lexeme templates. No defaults yet. The type with index zero will be assigned to the NO\_MATCH lexeme.

The keyword list is not stored, just a pointer to it. We anticipate that the keyword list is part of the syntax table, and the lexer needs not alter it. Furthermore, the lexer is typically finished before the syntax table is.

```

<Lexer: parameters>+≡
    integer, parameter :: CASE_KEEP = 0, CASE_UP = 1, CASE_DOWN = 2

<Lexer: types>+≡
    type :: lexer_setup_t
    private
    type(template_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tt
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: type
    integer :: keyword_case = CASE_KEEP
    type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list => null ()
end type lexer_setup_t

```

Fill the lexer setup object. Some things are hardcoded here (whitespace, alphanumeric identifiers), some are free: comment chars (but these must be single, and comments must be terminated by line-feed), quote chars and matches (must be single), characters to be read as one-character lexeme, special classes (characters of one class that should be glued together as identifiers).

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_setup_init (setup, &
        comment_chars, quote_chars, quote_match, &
        single_chars, special_class, &
        keyword_list, upper_case_keywords)
    type(lexer_setup_t), intent(inout) :: setup
    character(*), intent(in) :: comment_chars
    character(*), intent(in) :: quote_chars, quote_match
    character(*), intent(in) :: single_chars
    character(*), dimension(:), intent(in) :: special_class
    type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: upper_case_keywords
    integer :: n, i
    if (present (upper_case_keywords)) then
        if (upper_case_keywords) then
            setup%keyword_case = CASE_UP
        else
            setup%keyword_case = CASE_DOWN
        end if
    else
        setup%keyword_case = CASE_KEEP
    end if
    n = 1 + len (comment_chars) + len (quote_chars) + 1 &
        + len (single_chars) + size (special_class) + 1
    allocate (setup%tt(n))
    allocate (setup%type(0:n))
    n = 0
    setup%type(n) = NO_MATCH
    n = n + 1
    setup%tt(n) = template_whitespace (WHITESPACE_CHARS)

```

```

setup%type(n) = EMPTY
forall (i = 1:len(comment_chars))
    setup%tt(n+i) = template_quoted (comment_chars(i:i), LF)
    setup%type(n+i) = EMPTY
end forall
n = n + len (comment_chars)
forall (i = 1:len(quote_chars))
    setup%tt(n+i) = template_quoted (quote_chars(i:i), quote_match(i:i))
    setup%type(n+i) = T_QUOTED
end forall
n = n + len (quote_chars)
setup%tt(n+1) = template_numeric ("EeDd")
setup%type(n+1) = T_NUMERIC
n = n + 1
forall (i = 1:len (single_chars))
    setup%tt(n+i) = template_identifier (single_chars(i:i), "")
    setup%type(n+i) = T_IDENTIFIER
end forall
n = n + len (single_chars)
forall (i = 1:size (special_class))
    setup%tt(n+i) = template_identifier &
        (trim (special_class(i)), trim (special_class(i)))
    setup%type(n+i) = T_IDENTIFIER
end forall
n = n + size (special_class)
setup%tt(n+1) = template_identifier &
    (LCLETTERS//UCLETTERS, LCLETTERS//DIGITS//"_"/UCLETTERS)
setup%type(n+1) = T_IDENTIFIER
n = n + 1
if (n /= size (setup%tt)) &
    call msg_bug ("Size mismatch in lexer setup")
setup%keyword_list => keyword_list
end subroutine lexer_setup_init

```

The destructor is needed only if the object is not itself part of an allocatable array

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_setup_final (setup)
    type(lexer_setup_t), intent(inout) :: setup
    deallocate (setup%tt, setup%type)
    setup%keyword_list => null ()
end subroutine lexer_setup_final

```

For debugging: Write the lexer setup

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_setup_write (setup, unit)
    type(lexer_setup_t), intent(in) :: setup
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    integer :: i
    write (unit, "(A)") "Lexer setup:"
    if (allocated (setup%tt)) then
        do i = 1, size (setup%tt)
            call template_write (setup%tt(i), unit)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine lexer_setup_write

```



```

        write (unit, '(A)', advance = "no") " -> "
        call lexeme_type_write (setup%type(i), unit)
        write (unit, *)
    end do
else
    write (unit, *) "[empty]"
end if
if (associated (setup%keyword_list)) then
    call keyword_list_write (setup%keyword_list, unit)
end if
end subroutine lexer_setup_write

```

### 3.2.5 The lexeme type

An object of this type is returned by the lexer. Apart from the lexeme string, it gives information about the relevant substring (first and last character index) and the lexeme type. Interpreting the string is up to the parser.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexeme_t

<Lexer: types>+≡
    type :: lexeme_t
    private
        integer :: type = EMPTY
        type(string_t) :: s
        integer :: b = 0, e = 0
    end type lexeme_t

```

Debugging aid:

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexeme_write

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexeme_write (t, unit)
        type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        select case (t%type)
        case (T_KEYWORD)
            write (u, *) "KEYWORD:  ' " // char (t%s) // "' "
        case (T_IDENTIFIER)
            write (u, *) "IDENTIFIER: ' " // char (t%s) // "' "
        case (T_QUOTED)
            write (u, *) "QUOTED:    ' " // char (t%s) // "' "
        case (T_NUMERIC)
            write (u, *) "NUMERIC:   ' " // char (t%s) // "' "
        case (UNMATCHED_QUOTE)
            write (u, *) "Unmatched quote: "// char (t%s)
        case (OVERFLOW); write (u, *) "Overflow: "// char (t%s)
        case (EMPTY);   write (u, *) "Empty lexeme"
        case (NO_MATCH); write (u, *) "No match"
        case (IO_ERROR); write (u, *) "IO error"
    end subroutine

```

```

        case (EOF);      write (u, *) "EOF"
        case default
            write (u, *) "Error"
        end select
    end subroutine lexeme_write

```

Store string and type in a lexeme. The range determines the beginning and end of the relevant part of the string. Check for a keyword.

*<Lexer: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine lexeme_set (t, keyword_list, s, range, type, keyword_case)
    type(lexeme_t), intent(out) :: t
    type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
    type(string_t) :: keyword
    integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: range
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    integer, intent(in), optional :: keyword_case
    t%type = type
    if (present (keyword_case)) then
        select case (keyword_case)
            case (CASE_KEEP);    keyword = s
            case (CASE_UP);      keyword = upper_case (s)
            case (CASE_DOWN);    keyword = lower_case (s)
        end select
    else
        keyword = s
    end if
    if (type == T_IDENTIFIER) then
        if (associated (keyword_list)) then
            if (keyword_list_contains (keyword_list, keyword)) &
                t%type = T_KEYWORD
            end if
        end if
        select case (t%type)
            case (T_KEYWORD);    t%s = keyword
            case default;        t%s = s
        end select
        t%b = range(1)
        t%e = range(2)
    end subroutine lexeme_set

subroutine lexeme_clear (t)
    type(lexeme_t), intent(out) :: t
    t%type = EMPTY
    t%s = ""
end subroutine lexeme_clear

```

Retrieve the lexeme string, the relevant part of it, and the type. The last function returns true if there is a break condition reached (error or EOF).

*<Lexer: public>+≡*

```

public :: lexeme_get_string
public :: lexeme_get_contents
public :: lexeme_get_delimiters

```

```

public :: lexeme_get_type
<Lexer: procedures>+≡
function lexeme_get_string (t) result (s)
  type(string_t) :: s
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  s = t%s
end function lexeme_get_string

function lexeme_get_contents (t) result (s)
  type(string_t) :: s
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  s = extract (t%s, t%b, t%e)
end function lexeme_get_contents

function lexeme_get_delimiters (t) result (del)
  type(string_t), dimension(2) :: del
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  del(1) = extract (t%s, finish = t%b-1)
  del(2) = extract (t%s, start = t%e+1)
end function lexeme_get_delimiters

function lexeme_get_type (t) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  type = t%type
end function lexeme_get_type

```

Check for a generic break condition (error/eof) and for eof in particular.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: lexeme_is_break
public :: lexeme_is_eof

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
function lexeme_is_break (t) result (break)
  logical :: break
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  select case (t%type)
    case (EOF, IO_ERROR, OVERFLOW, NO_MATCH)
      break = .true.
    case default
      break = .false.
  end select
end function lexeme_is_break

function lexeme_is_eof (t) result (ok)
  logical :: ok
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: t
  ok = t%type == EOF
end function lexeme_is_eof

```

### 3.2.6 The lexer object

We store the current lexeme and the current line. The line buffer is set each time a new line is read from file. The working buffer has one character more, to hold any trailing blank. Pointers to line and column are for debugging, they will be used to make up readable error messages for the parser.

*<Lexer: public>+≡*

public :: lexer\_t

*<Lexer: types>+≡*

type :: lexer\_t

private

type(lexer\_setup\_t) :: setup

type(stream\_t), pointer :: stream => null ()

type(lexeme\_t) :: lexeme

type(string\_t) :: previous\_line2

type(string\_t) :: previous\_line1

type(string\_t) :: current\_line

integer :: lines\_read = 0

integer :: current\_column = 0

integer :: previous\_column = 0

type(string\_t) :: buffer

type(lexer\_t), pointer :: parent => null ()

end type lexer\_t

Create-setup wrapper

*<Lexer: public>+≡*

public :: lexer\_init

*<Lexer: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine lexer_init (lexer, &
    comment_chars, quote_chars, quote_match, &
    single_chars, special_class, &
    keyword_list, upper_case_keywords, &
    parent)
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    character(*), intent(in) :: comment_chars
    character(*), intent(in) :: quote_chars, quote_match
    character(*), intent(in) :: single_chars
    character(*), dimension(:), intent(in) :: special_class
    type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: upper_case_keywords
    type(lexer_t), target, intent(in), optional :: parent
    call lexer_setup_init (lexer%setup, &
        comment_chars = comment_chars, &
        quote_chars = quote_chars, &
        quote_match = quote_match, &
        single_chars = single_chars, &
        special_class = special_class, &
        keyword_list = keyword_list, &
        upper_case_keywords = upper_case_keywords)
    if (present (parent)) lexer%parent => parent
    call lexer_clear (lexer)
end subroutine lexer_init
```

Clear the lexer state, but not the setup. This should be done when the lexing starts, but it is not known whether the lexer was used before.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_clear

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_clear (lexer)
        type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
        call lexeme_clear (lexer%lexeme)
        lexer%previous_line2 = ""
        lexer%previous_line1 = ""
        lexer%current_line = ""
        lexer%lines_read = 0
        lexer%current_column = 0
        lexer%previous_column = 0
        lexer%buffer = ""
    end subroutine lexer_clear

```

Reset lexer state and delete setup

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_final

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_final (lexer)
        type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
        call lexer_clear (lexer)
        call lexer_setup_final (lexer%setup)
    end subroutine lexer_final

```

### 3.2.7 The lexer routine

For lexing we need to associate an input stream to the lexer.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_assign_stream

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
        type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
        type(stream_t), intent(in), target :: stream
        lexer%stream => stream
    end subroutine lexer_assign_stream

```

The lexer. The lexer function takes the lexer and returns the currently stored lexeme. If there is none, it is read from buffer, matching against the lexeme templates in the lexer setup. Empty lexemes, i.e., comments and whitespace, are discarded and the buffer is read again until we have found a nonempty lexeme (which may also be EOF or an error condition).

The initial state of the lexer contains an empty lexeme, so reading from buffer is forced. The empty state is restored after returning the lexeme. A nonempty lexeme is present in the lexer only if `lex_back` has been executed before.

The workspace is the `lexer%buffer`, treated as a sort of input stream. We chop off lexemes from the beginning, adjusting the buffer to the left. Whenever the buffer is empty, or we are matching against an open quote which has not terminated, we read a new line and append it to the right. This may result in special conditions, which for simplicity are also returned as lexemes: I/O error, buffer overflow, end of file. If the latter happens during reading a quoted string, we return an unmatched-quote lexeme. Obviously, the special-condition lexemes have to be caught by the parser.

Note that reading further lines is only necessary when reading a quoted string. Otherwise, the line-feed that ends each line is interpreted as whitespace which terminates a preceding lexeme, so there are no other valid multiline lexemes.

To enable meaningful error messages, we also keep track of the line number of the last line read, and the beginning and the end of the current lexeme with respect to this line.

The lexer is implemented as a function that returns the next lexeme (i.e., token). It uses the `lexer` setup and modifies the buffers and pointers stored within the lexer, a side effect. The lexer reads from an input stream object, which also is modified by this reading, e.g., a line pointer is advanced.

```

(Lexer: public)+≡
    public :: lex

(Lexer: procedures)+≡
    subroutine lex (lexeme, lexer)
        type(lexeme_t), intent(out) :: lexeme
        type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
        integer :: iostat1, iostat2
        integer :: pos
        integer, dimension(2) :: range
        integer :: template_index, type
        if (.not. associated (lexer%stream)) &
            call msg_bug ("Lexer called without assigned stream")
        GET_LEXEME: do while (lexeme_get_type (lexer%lexeme) == EMPTY)
            if (len (lexer%buffer) /= 0) then
                iostat1 = 0
            else
                call lexer_read_line (lexer, iostat1)
            end if
            select case (iostat1)
            case (0)
                MATCH_BUFFER: do
                    call match (lexer%setup%tt, char (lexer%buffer), &
                                pos, range, template_index)
                    if (pos >= 0) then
                        type = lexer%setup%type(template_index)
                        exit MATCH_BUFFER
                    else
                        pos = 0
                        call lexer_read_line (lexer, iostat2)
                        select case (iostat2)
                        case (EOF); type = UNMATCHED_QUOTE; exit MATCH_BUFFER
                        case (1);   type = IO_ERROR;       exit MATCH_BUFFER
                        case (2);   type = OVERFLOW;        exit MATCH_BUFFER

```

```

        end select
    end if
    end do MATCH_BUFFER
    case (EOF); type = EOF
    case (1);   type = IO_ERROR
    case (2);   type = OVERFLOW
    end select
    call lexeme_set (lexer%lexeme, lexer%setup%keyword_list, &
        extract (lexer%buffer, finish=pos), range, type, &
        lexer%setup%keyword_case)
    lexer%buffer = remove (lexer%buffer, finish=pos)
    lexer%previous_column = lexer%current_column
    lexer%current_column = lexer%current_column + pos
end do GET_LEXEME
lexeme = lexer%lexeme
call lexeme_clear (lexer%lexeme)
end subroutine lex

```

Read a line and append it to the input buffer. If the input buffer overflows, return `iostat=2`. Otherwise, `iostat=1` indicates an I/O error, and `iostat=-1` the EOF.

The input stream may either be an external unit or a `ifile` object. In the latter case, a line is read and the line pointer is advanced.

Note that inserting LF between input lines is the Unix convention. Since we are doing this explicitly when gluing lines together, we can pattern-match against LF without having to worry about the system.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_read_line (lexer, iostat)
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    type(string_t) :: current_line
    current_line = lexer%current_line
    call stream_get_record (lexer%stream, lexer%current_line, iostat)
    if (iostat == 0) then
        lexer%lines_read = lexer%lines_read + 1
        lexer%previous_line2 = lexer%previous_line1
        lexer%previous_line1 = current_line
        lexer%buffer = lexer%buffer // lexer%current_line // LF
        lexer%previous_column = 0
        lexer%current_column = 0
    end if
end subroutine lexer_read_line

```

Once in a while we have read one lexeme to many, which can be pushed back into the input stream. Do not do this more than once.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: lexer_put_back

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: lexeme
    if (lexeme_get_type (lexer%lexeme) == EMPTY) then

```

```

        lexer%lexeme = lexeme
    else
        call msg_bug (" Lexer: lex_back fails; probably called twice")
    end if
end subroutine lexer_put_back

```

### 3.2.8 Diagnostics

For debugging: print just the setup

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_write_setup

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_write_setup (lexer, unit)
        type(lexer_t), intent(in) :: lexer
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call lexer_setup_write (lexer%setup, u)
    end subroutine lexer_write_setup

```

This is useful for error printing: show the current line with index and a pointer to the current column within the line.

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_show_location

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_show_location (lexer)
        type(lexer_t), intent(in) :: lexer
        type(string_t) :: loc_str
        if (associated (lexer%parent)) then
            call lexer_show_source (lexer%parent)
            call msg_message ("[includes]")
        else
            call msg_message ()
        end if
        if (associated (lexer%stream)) then
            call msg_message &
                (char (stream_get_record_info_string (lexer%stream)) // ":")
        end if
        if (lexer%lines_read >= 4) call msg_result ("[...]")
        if (lexer%lines_read >= 3) call msg_result (char (lexer%previous_line2))
        if (lexer%lines_read >= 2) call msg_result (char (lexer%previous_line1))
        if (lexer%lines_read >= 1) then
            call msg_result (char (lexer%current_line))
            loc_str = repeat (" ", lexer%previous_column)
            loc_str = loc_str // "^"
            if (lexer%current_column > lexer%previous_column) then
                loc_str = loc_str &
                    // repeat ("-", max (lexer%current_column &
                        - lexer%previous_column - 1, 0)) &
                    // "^"
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine lexer_show_location

```



```

        call msg_result (char (loc_str))
    end if
end subroutine lexer_show_location

```

This just prints the current stream source.

```

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine lexer_show_source (lexer)
    type(lexer_t), intent(in) :: lexer
    if (associated (lexer%parent)) then
        call lexer_show_source (lexer%parent)
        call msg_message ("[includes]")
    else
        call msg_message ()
    end if
    if (associated (lexer%stream)) then
        call msg_message &
            (char (stream_get_source_info_string (lexer%stream)) // ":")
    end if
end subroutine lexer_show_source

```

### 3.2.9 Unit tests

```

<Lexer: public>+≡
public :: lexer_test

<Lexer: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<Lexer: execute tests>
end subroutine lexer_test

```

Test the lexer by lexing and printing all lexemes from unit u, one per line, using preset conventions.

```

<Lexer: execute tests>≡
    call test (lexer_1, "lexer_1", &
        "check lexer", u, results)

<Lexer: tests>≡
subroutine lexer_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
    type(stream_t), target :: stream
    type(string_t) :: string
    type(lexeme_t) :: lexeme
    string = "abcdefghij"
    call lexer_init (lexer, &
        comment_chars = "", &
        quote_chars = "<'\"", &
        quote_match = ">'\"", &
        single_chars = "?*+|=,()", &
        special_class = ["."], &

```

```

        keyword_list = null ()
    call stream_init (stream, string)
    call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
do
    call lex (lexeme, lexer)
    call lexeme_write (lexeme, u)
    if (lexeme_is_break (lexeme)) exit
end do
    call stream_final (stream)
    call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine lexer_1

```

### 3.3 Syntax rules

This module provides tools to handle syntax rules in an abstract way.

```
<syntax_rules.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module syntax_rules  
  
  <Use strings>  
  <Use file utils>  
  use limits, only: UNQUOTED !NODEP!  
  use diagnostics !NODEP!  
  use ifiles, only: line_p, line_init, line_get_string_advance, line_final  
  use ifiles, only: ifile_t, ifile_get_length  
  use lexers  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <Syntax: public>  
  
  <Syntax: parameters>  
  
  <Syntax: types>  
  
  <Syntax: interfaces>  
  
contains  
  
  <Syntax: subroutines>  
  
end module syntax_rules
```

#### 3.3.1 Syntax rules

Syntax rules are used by the parser. They determine how to translate the stream of lexemes as returned by the lexer into the parse tree node. A rule may be terminal, i.e., replace a matching lexeme into a terminal node. The node will contain the lexeme interpreted as a recognized token:

- a keyword: unquoted fixed character string;
- a real number, to be determined at runtime;
- an integer, to be determined at runtime;
- a boolean value, to be determined at runtime;
- a quoted token (e.g., string), to be determined at runtime;
- an identifier (unquoted string that is not a recognized keyword), to be determined at runtime.

It may be nonterminal, i.e., contain a sequence of child rules. These are matched consecutively (and recursively) against the input stream; the resulting node will be a branch node.

- the file, i.e., the input stream as a whole;
- a sequence of syntax elements, where the last syntax element may be optional, or optional repetitive;

Sequences carry a flag that tells whether the last child is optional or may be repeated an arbitrary number of times, corresponding to the regexp modifiers `?`, `*`, and `+`.

We also need an alternative rule; this will be replaced by the node generated by one of its children that matches; thus, it does not create a node of its own.

- an alternative of syntax elements.

We also define special types of sequences as convenience macros:

- a list: a sequence where the elements are separated by a separator keyword (e.g., commas), the separators are thrown away when parsing the list;
- a group: a sequence of three tokens, where the first and third ones are left and right delimiters, the delimiters are thrown away;
- an argument list: a delimited list, containing both delimiters and separators.

It would be great to have a polymorphic type for this purpose, but until Fortran 2003 is out we have to emulate this.

Here are the syntax element codes:

```

<Syntax: public>≡
  public :: S_UNKNOWN
  public :: S_LOGICAL, S_INTEGER, S_REAL, S_COMPLEX, S_QUOTED
  public :: S_IDENTIFIER, S_KEYWORD
  public :: S_SEQUENCE, S_LIST, S_GROUP, S_ARGS
  public :: S_ALTERNATIVE
  public :: S_IGNORE

<Syntax: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter :: &
    S_UNKNOWN = 0, &
    S_LOGICAL = 1, S_INTEGER = 2, S_REAL = 3, S_COMPLEX = 4, &
    S_QUOTED = 5, S_IDENTIFIER = 6, S_KEYWORD = 7, &
    S_SEQUENCE = 8, S_LIST = 9, S_GROUP = 10, S_ARGS = 11, &
    S_ALTERNATIVE = 12, &
    S_IGNORE = 99

```

We need arrays of rule pointers, therefore this construct.

```

<Syntax: types>≡
  type :: rule_p
  private
    type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: p => null ()
  end type rule_p

```

Return the association status of the rule pointer:

```

<Syntax: subroutines>≡
  elemental function rule_is_associated (rp) result (ok)
    logical :: ok
    type (rule_p), intent(in) :: rp
    ok = associated (rp%p)
  end function rule_is_associated

```

The rule type is one of the types listed above, represented by an integer code. The keyword, for a non-keyword rule, is an identifier used for the printed syntax table. The array of children is needed for nonterminal rules. In that case, there is a modifier for the last element (blank, "?", "\*", or "+"), mirrored in the flags **opt** and **rep**. Then, we have the character constants used as separators and delimiters for this rule. Finally, the **used** flag can be set to indicate that this rule is the child of another rule.

```

<Syntax: types>+≡
  public :: syntax_rule_t

<Syntax: types>+≡
  type :: syntax_rule_t
    private
    integer :: type = S_UNKNOWN
    logical :: used = .false.
    type(string_t) :: keyword
    type(string_t) :: separator
    type(string_t), dimension(2) :: delimiter
    type(rule_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: child
    character(1) :: modifier = ""
    logical :: opt = .false., rep = .false.
  end type syntax_rule_t

```

Initializer: Set type and key for a rule, but do not (yet) allocate anything.

Finalizer: not needed (no pointer components).

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
  subroutine syntax_rule_init (rule, key, type)
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    rule%keyword = key
    rule%type = type
    select case (rule%type)
    case (S_GROUP)
      call syntax_rule_set_delimiter (rule)
    case (S_LIST)
      call syntax_rule_set_separator (rule)
    case (S_ARGS)
      call syntax_rule_set_delimiter (rule)
      call syntax_rule_set_separator (rule)
    end select
  end subroutine syntax_rule_init

```

### 3.3.2 I/O

These characters will not be enclosed in quotes when writing syntax rules:

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    character(*), parameter, public :: &
        UNQUOTED = "(),|_//LCLETTERS//UCLETTERS//DIGITS
```

Write an account of the rule. Setting `short` true will suppress the node type. Setting `key_only` true will suppress the definition. Setting `advance` false will suppress the trailing newline.

```
<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_write

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine syntax_rule_write (rule, unit, short, key_only, advance)
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: short, key_only, advance
        logical :: typ, def, adv
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        typ = .true.; if (present (short)) typ = .not. short
        def = .true.; if (present (key_only)) def = .not. key_only
        adv = .true.; if (present (advance)) adv = advance
        select case (rule%type)
        case (S_UNKNOWN); call write_atom ("???", typ)
        case (S_IGNORE); call write_atom ("IGNORE", typ)
        case (S_LOGICAL); call write_atom ("LOGICAL", typ)
        case (S_INTEGER); call write_atom ("INTEGER", typ)
        case (S_REAL); call write_atom ("REAL", typ)
        case (S_COMPLEX); call write_atom ("COMPLEX", typ)
        case (S_IDENTIFIER); call write_atom ("IDENTIFIER", typ)
        case (S_KEYWORD); call write_atom ("KEYWORD", typ)
        case (S_QUOTED)
            call write_quotes (typ, def, del = rule%delimiter)
        case (S_SEQUENCE)
            call write_sequence ("SEQUENCE", typ, def, size (rule%child))
        case (S_GROUP)
            call write_sequence ("GROUP", typ, def, size (rule%child), &
                del = rule%delimiter)
        case (S_LIST)
            call write_sequence ("LIST", typ, def, size (rule%child), &
                sep = rule%separator)
        case (S_ARGS)
            call write_sequence ("ARGUMENTS", typ, def, size (rule%child), &
                del = rule%delimiter, sep = rule%separator)
        case (S_ALTERNATIVE)
            call write_sequence ("ALTERNATIVE", typ, def, size (rule%child), &
                sep = var_str ("|"))
        end select
        if (adv) write (u, *)
contains
        subroutine write_type (type)
            character(*), intent(in) :: type
            character(11) :: str
```

```

    str = type
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") str
end subroutine write_type
subroutine write_key
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (wkey (rule))
end subroutine write_key
subroutine write_atom (type, typ)
    character(*), intent(in) :: type
    logical, intent(in) :: typ
    if (typ) call write_type (type)
    call write_key
end subroutine write_atom
subroutine write_maybe_quoted (string)
    character(*), intent(in) :: string
    character, parameter :: q = '"'
    character, parameter :: qq = '''
    if (verify (string, UNQUOTED) == 0) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance = "no") trim (string)
    else if (verify (string, q) == 0) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance = "no") qq // trim (string) // qq
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance = "no") q // trim (string) // q
    end if
end subroutine write_maybe_quoted
subroutine write_quotes (typ, def, del)
    logical, intent(in) :: typ, def
    type(string_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: del
    if (typ) call write_type ("QUOTED")
    call write_key
    if (def) then
        write (u, "(1x,'=')", advance="no")
        call write_maybe_quoted (char (del(1)))
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "...
        call write_maybe_quoted (char (del(2)))
    end if
end subroutine write_quotes
subroutine write_sequence (type, typ, def, n, del, sep)
    character(*), intent(in) :: type
    logical, intent(in) :: typ, def
    integer, intent(in) :: n
    type(string_t), dimension(2), intent(in), optional :: del
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sep
    integer :: i
    if (typ) call write_type (type)
    call write_key
    if (def) then
        write (u, "(1x,'=')", advance="no")
        if (present (del)) call write_maybe_quoted (char (del(1)))
        do i = 1, n
            if (i > 1 .and. present (sep)) &
                call write_maybe_quoted (char (sep))
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                char (wkey (syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr(rule, i)))
            if (i == n) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") trim (rule%modifier)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine write_sequence

```

```

        end do
        if (present (del)) call write_maybe_quoted (char (del(2)))
    end if
end subroutine write_sequence
end subroutine syntax_rule_write

```

In the printed representation, the keyword strings are enclosed as <...>, unless they are bare keywords. Bare keywords are enclosed as '...' if they contain a character which is not a letter, digit, or underscore. If they contain a single-quote character, they are enclosed as "...". (A keyword must not contain both single- and double-quotes.)

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
function wkey (rule) result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
    select case (rule%type)
    case (S_KEYWORD)
        if (verify (rule%keyword, UNQUOTED) == 0) then
            string = rule%keyword
        else if (scan (rule%keyword, "'") == 0) then
            string = "'" // rule%keyword // "'"
        else
            string = '...' // rule%keyword // '...'
        end if
    case default
        string = "<" // rule%keyword // ">"
    end select
end function wkey

```

### 3.3.3 Completing syntax rules

Set the separator and delimiter entries, using defaults:

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
subroutine syntax_rule_set_separator (rule, separator)
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: separator
    if (present (separator)) then
        rule%separator = separator
    else
        rule%separator = ","
    end if
end subroutine syntax_rule_set_separator

subroutine syntax_rule_set_delimiter (rule, delimiter)
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
    type(string_t), dimension(2), intent(in), optional :: delimiter
    if (present (delimiter)) then
        rule%delimiter = delimiter
    else
        rule%delimiter = ["(", ")"]
    end if
end subroutine syntax_rule_set_delimiter

```



```
end subroutine syntax_rule_set_delimiter
```

Set the modifier entry and corresponding flags:

*<Syntax: subroutines>+≡*

```
function is_modifier (string) result (ok)
  logical :: ok
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
  select case (char (string))
    case (" ", "?", "*", "+"); ok = .true.
    case default; ok = .false.
  end select
end function is_modifier

subroutine syntax_rule_set_modifier (rule, modifier)
  type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: modifier
  rule%modifier = char (modifier)
  select case (rule%modifier)
    case (" ")
    case ("?"); rule%opt = .true.
    case ("*"); rule%opt = .true.; rule%rep = .true.
    case ("+"); rule%rep = .true.
    case default
      call msg_bug (" Syntax: sequence modifier '" // rule%modifier &
        // "' is not one of '+' '*' '?'")
  end select
end subroutine syntax_rule_set_modifier
```

Check a finalized rule for completeness

*<Syntax: subroutines>+≡*

```
subroutine syntax_rule_check (rule)
  type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
  if (rule%keyword == "") call msg_bug ("Rule key not set")
  select case (rule%type)
    case (S_UNKNOWN); call bug (" Undefined rule")
    case (S_IGNORE, S_LOGICAL, S_INTEGER, S_REAL, S_COMPLEX, &
      S_IDENTIFIER, S_KEYWORD)
    case (S_QUOTED)
      if (any (rule%delimiter == "")) call bug (" Missing quote character(s)")
    case (S_SEQUENCE)
    case (S_GROUP)
      if (any (rule%delimiter == "")) call bug (" Missing delimiter(s)")
    case (S_LIST)
      if (rule%separator == "") call bug (" Missing separator")
    case (S_ARGS)
      if (any (rule%delimiter == "")) call bug (" Missing delimiter(s)")
      if (rule%separator == "") call bug (" Missing separator")
    case (S_ALTERNATIVE)
    case default
      call bug (" Undefined syntax code")
  end select
  select case (rule%type)
    case (S_SEQUENCE, S_GROUP, S_LIST, S_ARGS, S_ALTERNATIVE)
```

```

        if (allocated (rule%child)) then
            if (.not.all (rule_is_associated (rule%child))) &
                call bug (" Child rules not all associated")
        else
            call bug (" Parent rule without children")
        end if
    case default
        if (allocated (rule%child)) call bug (" Non-parent rule with children")
    end select
contains
    subroutine bug (string)
        character(*), intent(in) :: string
        call msg_bug (" Syntax table: Rule " // char (rule%keyword) // ": " &
            // string)
    end subroutine bug
end subroutine syntax_rule_check

```

### 3.3.4 Accessing rules

This is the API for syntax rules:

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_get_type

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_get_type (rule) result (type)
        integer :: type
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        type = rule%type
    end function syntax_rule_get_type

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_get_key

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_get_key (rule) result (key)
        type(string_t) :: key
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        key = rule%keyword
    end function syntax_rule_get_key

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_get_separator
    public :: syntax_rule_get_delimiter

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_get_separator (rule) result (separator)
        type(string_t) :: separator
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        separator = rule%separator
    end function syntax_rule_get_separator

    function syntax_rule_get_delimiter (rule) result (delimiter)
        type(string_t), dimension(2) :: delimiter

```

```

    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
    delimiter = rule%delimiter
end function syntax_rule_get_delimiter

```

Accessing child rules. If we use `syntax_rule_get_n_sub` for determining loop bounds, we do not need a check in the second routine.

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_get_n_sub
    public :: syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_get_n_sub (rule) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        if (allocated (rule%child)) then
            n = size (rule%child)
        else
            n = 0
        end if
    end function syntax_rule_get_n_sub

    function syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr (rule, i) result (sub)
        type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: sub
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        sub => rule%child(i)%p
    end function syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr

    subroutine syntax_rule_set_sub (rule, i, sub)
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: sub
        rule%child(i)%p => sub
    end subroutine syntax_rule_set_sub

```

Return the modifier flags:

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_last_optional
    public :: syntax_rule_last_repetitive

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_last_optional (rule) result (opt)
        logical :: opt
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        opt = rule%opt
    end function syntax_rule_last_optional
    function syntax_rule_last_repetitive (rule) result (rep)
        logical :: rep
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        rep = rule%rep
    end function syntax_rule_last_repetitive

```

Return true if the rule is atomic, i.e., logical, real, keyword etc.

```
<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_rule_is_atomic

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_rule_is_atomic (rule) result (atomic)
        logical :: atomic
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
        select case (rule%type)
            case (S_LOGICAL, S_INTEGER, S_REAL, S_COMPLEX, S_IDENTIFIER, &
                 S_KEYWORD, S_QUOTED)
                atomic = .true.
            case default
                atomic = .false.
        end select
    end function syntax_rule_is_atomic
```

### 3.3.5 Syntax tables

A syntax table contains the tree of syntax rules and, for direct parser access, the list of valid keywords.

#### Types

The syntax contains an array of rules and a list of keywords. The array is actually used as a tree, where the top rule is the first array element, and the other rules are recursively pointed to by this first rule. (No rule should be used twice or be unused.) The keyword list is derived from the rule tree.

Objects of this type need the target attribute if they are associated with a lexer. The keyword list will be pointed to by this lexer.

```
<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_t

<Syntax: types>+≡
    type :: syntax_t
        private
        type(syntax_rule_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: rule
        type(keyword_list_t) :: keyword_list
    end type syntax_t
```

#### Constructor/destructor

Initialize and finalize syntax tables

```
<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_init
    public :: syntax_final
```

There are two ways to create a syntax: hard-coded from rules or dynamically from file.

```

<Syntax: interfaces>≡
interface syntax_init
  module procedure syntax_init_from_ifile
end interface

```

The syntax definition is read from an ifile object which contains the syntax definitions in textual form, one rule per line. This interface allows for determining the number of rules beforehand.

To parse the rule definitions, we make up a temporary lexer. Obviously, we cannot use a generic parser yet, so we have to hardcode the parsing process.

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+=
subroutine syntax_init_from_ifile (syntax, ifile)
  type(syntax_t), intent(out), target :: syntax
  type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  type(line_p) :: line
  type(string_t) :: string
  integer :: n_token
  integer :: i
  call lexer_init (lexer, &
    comment_chars = "", &
    quote_chars = "<'\"", &
    quote_match = ">'\"", &
    single_chars = "?*+|=,()", &
    special_class = ["."], &
    keyword_list = null ())
  allocate (syntax%rule (ifile_get_length (ifile)))
  call line_init (line, ifile)
  do i = 1, size (syntax%rule)
    string = line_get_string_advance (line)
    call set_rule_type_and_key (syntax%rule(i), string, lexer)
  end do
  call line_init (line, ifile)
  do i = 1, size (syntax%rule)
    string = line_get_string_advance (line)
    select case (syntax%rule(i)%type)
      case (S_QUOTED, S_SEQUENCE, S_GROUP, S_LIST, S_ARGS, S_ALTERNATIVE)
        n_token = get_n_token (string, lexer)
        call set_rule_contents &
          (syntax%rule(i), syntax, n_token, string, lexer)
    end select
  end do
  call line_final (line)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
  call syntax_make_keyword_list (syntax)
  if (.not. all (syntax%rule%used)) then
    do i = 1, size (syntax%rule)
      if (.not. syntax%rule(i)%used) then
        call syntax_rule_write (syntax%rule(i), 6)
      end if
    end do
  end if
end do

```

```

        call msg_bug (" Syntax table: unused rules")
    end if
end subroutine syntax_init_from_ifile

```

For a given rule defined in the input, the first task is to determine its type and key. With these, we can initialize the rule in the table, postponing the association of children.

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+=
subroutine set_rule_type_and_key (rule, string, lexer)
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    type(stream_t), target :: stream
    type(lexeme_t) :: lexeme
    type(string_t) :: key
    character(2) :: type
    call lexer_clear (lexer)
    call stream_init (stream, string)
    call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
    call lex (lexeme, lexer)
    type = lexeme_get_string (lexeme)
    call lex (lexeme, lexer)
    key = lexeme_get_contents (lexeme)
    call stream_final (stream)
    if (trim (key) /= "") then
        select case (type)
            case ("IG"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_IGNORE)
            case ("LO"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_LOGICAL)
            case ("IN"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_INTEGER)
            case ("RE"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_REAL)
            case ("CO"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_COMPLEX)
            case ("ID"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_IDENTIFIER)
            case ("KE"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_KEYWORD)
            case ("QU"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_QUOTED)
            case ("SE"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_SEQUENCE)
            case ("GR"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_GROUP)
            case ("LI"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_LIST)
            case ("AR"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_ARGS)
            case ("AL"); call syntax_rule_init (rule, key, S_ALTERNATIVE)
            case default
                call lexer_show_location (lexer)
                call msg_bug (" Syntax definition: unknown type '" // type // "'")
            end select
        else
            print *, char (string)
            call msg_bug (" Syntax definition: empty rule key")
        end if
    end subroutine set_rule_type_and_key

```

This function returns the number of tokens in an input line.

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+=
function get_n_token (string, lexer) result (n)
    integer :: n

```

```

type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
type(stream_t), target :: stream
type(lexeme_t) :: lexeme
integer :: i
call lexer_clear (lexer)
call stream_init (stream, string)
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
i = 0
do
    call lex (lexeme, lexer)
    if (lexeme_is_break (lexeme)) exit
    i = i + 1
end do
n = i
call stream_final (stream)
end function get_n_token

```

This subroutine extracts the rule contents for an input line. There are three tasks: (1) determine the number of children, depending on the rule type; (2) find and set the separator and delimiter strings, if required; (3) scan the child rules, find them in the syntax table and associate the parent rule with them.

(*Syntax: subroutines*)+≡

```

subroutine set_rule_contents (rule, syntax, n_token, string, lexer)
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(inout) :: rule
    type(syntax_t), intent(in), target :: syntax
    integer, intent(in) :: n_token
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    type(stream_t), target :: stream
    type(lexeme_t), dimension(n_token) :: lexeme
    integer :: i, n_children
    call lexer_clear (lexer)
    call stream_init (stream, string)
    call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
    do i = 1, n_token
        call lex (lexeme(i), lexer)
    end do
    call stream_final (stream)
    n_children = get_n_children ()
    call set_delimiters
    if (n_children > 1) call set_separator
    if (n_children > 0) call set_children
contains
    function get_n_children () result (n_children)
        integer :: n_children
        select case (rule%type)
        case (S_QUOTED)
            if (n_token /= 6) call broken_rule (rule)
            n_children = 0
        case (S_GROUP)
            if (n_token /= 6) call broken_rule (rule)
            n_children = 1

```

```

case (S_SEQUENCE)
  if (is_modifier (lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token)))) then
    if (n_token <= 4) call broken_rule (rule)
    call syntax_rule_set_modifier &
      (rule, lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token)))
    n_children = n_token - 4
  else
    if (n_token <= 3) call broken_rule (rule)
    n_children = n_token - 3
  end if
case (S_LIST)
  if (is_modifier (lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token)))) then
    if (n_token <= 4 .or. mod (n_token, 2) /= 1) &
      call broken_rule (rule)
    call syntax_rule_set_modifier &
      (rule, lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token)))
  else if (n_token <= 3 .or. mod (n_token, 2) /= 0) then
    call broken_rule (rule)
  end if
  n_children = (n_token - 2) / 2
case (S_ARGS)
  if (is_modifier (lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token-1)))) then
    if (n_token <= 6 .or. mod (n_token, 2) /= 1) &
      call broken_rule (rule)
    call syntax_rule_set_modifier &
      (rule, lexeme_get_string (lexeme(n_token-1)))
  else if (n_token <= 5 .or. mod (n_token, 2) /= 0) then
    call broken_rule (rule)
  end if
  n_children = (n_token - 4) / 2
case (S_ALTERNATIVE)
  if (n_token <= 3 .or. mod (n_token, 2) /= 0) call broken_rule (rule)
  n_children = (n_token - 2) / 2
end select
end function get_n_children
subroutine set_delimiters
  type(string_t), dimension(2) :: delimiter
  select case (rule%type)
  case (S_QUOTED, S_GROUP, S_ARGS)
    delimiter(1) = lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(4))
    delimiter(2) = lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(n_token))
    call syntax_rule_set_delimiter (rule, delimiter)
  end select
end subroutine set_delimiters
subroutine set_separator
  type(string_t) :: separator
  select case (rule%type)
  case (S_LIST)
    separator = lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(5))
    call syntax_rule_set_separator (rule, separator)
  case (S_ARGS)
    separator = lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(6))
    call syntax_rule_set_separator (rule, separator)
  end select
end subroutine set_separator

```



```

end subroutine set_separator
subroutine set_children
  allocate (rule%child(n_children))
  select case (rule%type)
  case (S_GROUP)
    call syntax_rule_set_sub (rule, 1, syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, &
      lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(5))))
  case (S_SEQUENCE)
    do i = 1, n_children
      call syntax_rule_set_sub (rule, i, syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, &
        lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(i+3))))
    end do
  case (S_LIST, S_ALTERNATIVE)
    do i = 1, n_children
      call syntax_rule_set_sub (rule, i, syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, &
        lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(2*i+2))))
    end do
  case (S_ARGS)
    do i = 1, n_children
      call syntax_rule_set_sub (rule, i, syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, &
        lexeme_get_contents (lexeme(2*i+3))))
    end do
  end select
end subroutine set_children
subroutine broken_rule (rule)
  type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
  call lexer_show_location (lexer)
  call msg_bug (" Syntax definition: broken rule '" &
    // char (wkey (rule)) // "'")
end subroutine broken_rule
end subroutine set_rule_contents

```

This routine completes the syntax table object. We assume that the rule array is set up. We associate the top rule with the first entry in the rule array and build up the keyword list.

The keyword list includes delimiters and separators. Filling it can only be done after all rules are set. We scan the rule tree. For each keyword that we find, we try to add it to the keyword list; the pointer to the last element is carried along with the recursive scanning. Before appending a keyword, we check whether it is already in the list.

*(Syntax: subroutines)*+≡

```

subroutine syntax_make_keyword_list (syntax)
  type(syntax_t), intent(inout), target :: syntax
  type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
  rule => syntax%rule(1)
  call rule_scan_rec (rule, syntax%keyword_list)
contains
  recursive subroutine rule_scan_rec (rule, keyword_list)
    type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
    type(keyword_list_t), intent(inout) :: keyword_list
    integer :: i
    if (rule%used) return
    rule%used = .true.

```

```

select case (rule%type)
case (S_UNKNOWN)
  call msg_bug (" Syntax: rule tree contains undefined rule")
case (S_KEYWORD)
  call keyword_list_add (keyword_list, rule%keyword)
end select
select case (rule%type)
case (S_LIST, S_ARGS)
  call keyword_list_add (keyword_list, rule%separator)
end select
select case (rule%type)
case (S_GROUP, S_ARGS)
  call keyword_list_add (keyword_list, rule%delimiter(1))
  call keyword_list_add (keyword_list, rule%delimiter(2))
end select
select case (rule%type)
case (S_SEQUENCE, S_GROUP, S_LIST, S_ARGS, S_ALTERNATIVE)
  if (.not. allocated (rule%child)) &
    call msg_bug (" Syntax: Non-terminal rule without children")
case default
  if (allocated (rule%child)) &
    call msg_bug (" Syntax: Terminal rule with children")
end select
if (allocated (rule%child)) then
  do i = 1, size (rule%child)
    call rule_scan_rec (rule%child(i)%p, keyword_list)
  end do
end if
end subroutine rule_scan_rec
end subroutine syntax_make_keyword_list

```

The finalizer deallocates the rule pointer array and deletes the keyword list.

```

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
subroutine syntax_final (syntax)
  type(syntax_t), intent(inout) :: syntax
  if (allocated (syntax%rule)) deallocate (syntax%rule)
  call keyword_list_final (syntax%keyword_list)
end subroutine syntax_final

```

### 3.3.6 Accessing the syntax table

Return a pointer to the top rule

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
public :: syntax_get_top_rule_ptr

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
function syntax_get_top_rule_ptr (syntax) result (rule)
  type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
  type(syntax_t), intent(in), target :: syntax
  if (allocated (syntax%rule)) then
    rule => syntax%rule(1)
  else

```

```

        rule => null ()
    end if
end function syntax_get_top_rule_ptr

```

Assign the pointer to the rule associated with a given key (assumes that the rule array is allocated)

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_get_rule_ptr

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, key) result (rule)
        type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
        type(syntax_t), intent(in), target :: syntax
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (syntax%rule)
            if (syntax%rule(i)%keyword == key) then
                rule => syntax%rule(i)
                return
            end if
        end do
        call msg_bug (" Syntax table: Rule " // char (key) // " not found")
    end function syntax_get_rule_ptr

```

Return a pointer to the keyword list

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    function syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax) result (keyword_list)
        type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list
        type(syntax_t), intent(in), target :: syntax
        keyword_list => syntax%keyword_list
    end function syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr

```

### 3.3.7 I/O

Write a readable representation of the syntax table

```

<Syntax: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_write

<Syntax: subroutines>+≡
    subroutine syntax_write (syntax, unit)
        type(syntax_t), intent(in) :: syntax
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        integer :: i
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(A)") "Syntax table:"
        if (allocated (syntax%rule)) then
            do i = 1, size (syntax%rule)
                call syntax_rule_write (syntax%rule(i), u)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine syntax_write

```

```
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[not allocated]"
    end if
    call keyword_list_write (syntax%keyword_list, u)
end subroutine syntax_write
```

## 3.4 The parser

On a small scale, the parser interprets the string tokens returned by the lexer; they are interpreted as numbers, keywords and such and stored as a typed object. On a large scale, a text is read, parsed, and a syntax rule set is applied such that the tokens are stored as a parse tree. Syntax errors are spotted in this process, so the resulting parse tree is syntactically correct by definition.

```
<parser.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module parser

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: DIGITS, FMT_19 !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use md5
    use unit_tests
    use lexers
    use syntax_rules

    <Standard module head>

    <Parser: public>

    <Parser: types>

    <Parser: interfaces>

    contains

    <Parser: procedures>

    <Parser: tests>

  end module parser
```

### 3.4.1 The token type

Tokens are elements of the parsed input that carry a value: logical, integer, real, quoted string, (unquoted) identifier, or known keyword. Note that non-keyword tokens also have an abstract key attached to them.

This is an obvious candidate for polymorphism.

```
<Parser: types>≡
  type :: token_t
  private
  integer :: type = S_UNKNOWN
  logical, pointer :: lval => null ()
  integer, pointer :: ival => null ()
  real(default), pointer :: rval => null ()
  complex(default), pointer :: cval => null ()
```

```

        type(string_t), pointer :: sval => null ()
        type(string_t), pointer :: kval => null ()
        type(string_t), dimension(:), pointer :: quote => null ()
    end type token_t

```

Create a token from the lexeme returned by the lexer: Allocate storage and try to interpret the lexeme according to the type that is requested by the parser. For a keyword token, match the lexeme against the requested key. If successful, set the token type, value, and key. Otherwise, set the type to S\_UNKNOWN.

*(Parser: procedures)*≡

```

subroutine token_init (token, lexeme, requested_type, key)
    type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
    type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: lexeme
    integer, intent(in) :: requested_type
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
    integer :: type
    type = lexeme_get_type (lexeme)
    token%type = S_UNKNOWN
    select case (requested_type)
    case (S_LOGICAL)
        if (type == T_IDENTIFIER) call read_logical &
            (char (lexeme_get_string (lexeme)))
    case (S_INTEGER)
        if (type == T_NUMERIC) call read_integer &
            (char (lexeme_get_string (lexeme)))
    case (S_REAL)
        if (type == T_NUMERIC) call read_real &
            (char (lexeme_get_string (lexeme)))
    case (S_COMPLEX)
        if (type == T_NUMERIC) call read_complex &
            (char (lexeme_get_string (lexeme)))
    case (S_IDENTIFIER)
        if (type == T_IDENTIFIER) call read_identifier &
            (lexeme_get_string (lexeme))
    case (S_KEYWORD)
        if (type == T_KEYWORD) call check_keyword &
            (lexeme_get_string (lexeme), key)
    case (S_QUOTED)
        if (type == T_QUOTED) call read_quoted &
            (lexeme_get_contents (lexeme), lexeme_get_delimiters (lexeme))
    case default
        print *, requested_type
        call msg_bug (" Invalid token type code requested by the parser")
    end select
    if (token%type /= S_UNKNOWN) then
        allocate (token%kval)
        token%kval = key
    end if
contains
subroutine read_logical (s)
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    select case (s)
    case ("t", "T", "true", "TRUE", "y", "Y", "yes", "YES")

```

```

        allocate (token%lval)
        token%lval = .true.
        token%type = S_LOGICAL
    case ("f", "F", "false", "FALSE", "n", "N", "no", "NO")
        allocate (token%lval)
        token%lval = .false.
        token%type = S_LOGICAL
    end select
end subroutine read_logical
subroutine read_integer (s)
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    integer :: tmp, iostat
    if (verify (s, DIGITS) == 0) then
        read (s, *, iostat=iostat) tmp
        if (iostat == 0) then
            allocate (token%ival)
            token%ival = tmp
            token%type = S_INTEGER
        end if
    end if
end subroutine read_integer
subroutine read_real (s)
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    real(default) :: tmp
    integer :: iostat
    read (s, *, iostat=iostat) tmp
    if (iostat == 0) then
        allocate (token%rval)
        token%rval = tmp
        token%type = S_REAL
    end if
end subroutine read_real
subroutine read_complex (s)
    character(*), intent(in) :: s
    complex(default) :: tmp
    integer :: iostat
    read (s, *, iostat=iostat) tmp
    if (iostat == 0) then
        allocate (token%cval)
        token%cval = tmp
        token%type = S_COMPLEX
    end if
end subroutine read_complex
subroutine read_identifier (s)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
    allocate (token%sval)
    token%sval = s
    token%type = S_IDENTIFIER
end subroutine read_identifier
subroutine check_keyword (s, key)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
    if (key == s) token%type = S_KEYWORD
end subroutine check_keyword

```

```

subroutine read_quoted (s, del)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
  type(string_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: del
  allocate (token%sval, token%quote(2))
  token%sval = s
  token%quote(1) = del(1)
  token%quote(2) = del(2)
  token%type = S_QUOTED
end subroutine read_quoted
end subroutine token_init

```

Manually set a token to a keyword.

```

<Parser: procedures>+≡
subroutine token_init_key (token, key)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
  token%type = S_KEYWORD
  allocate (token%kval)
  token%kval = key
end subroutine token_init_key

```

Reset a token to an empty state, freeing allocated memory, and deallocate the token itself.

```

<Parser: procedures>+≡
subroutine token_final (token)
  type(token_t), intent(inout) :: token
  token%type = S_UNKNOWN
  if (associated (token%lval)) deallocate (token%lval)
  if (associated (token%ival)) deallocate (token%ival)
  if (associated (token%rval)) deallocate (token%rval)
  if (associated (token%sval)) deallocate (token%sval)
  if (associated (token%kval)) deallocate (token%kval)
  if (associated (token%quote)) deallocate (token%quote)
end subroutine token_final

```

Check for empty=valid token:

```

<Parser: procedures>+≡
function token_is_valid (token) result (valid)
  logical :: valid
  type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
  valid = token%type /= S_UNKNOWN
end function token_is_valid

```

Write the contents of a token.

```

<Parser: procedures>+≡
subroutine token_write (token, unit)
  type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  select case (token%type)
  case (S_LOGICAL)

```



```

        write (u, "(L1)") token%lval
case (S_INTEGER)
    write (u, "(I0)") token%ival
case (S_REAL)
    write (u, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") token%rval
case (S_COMPLEX)
    write (u, "('('," // FMT_19 // ",','," // FMT_19 // ",')')") token%cval
case (S_IDENTIFIER)
    write (u, "(A)") char (token%sval)
case (S_KEYWORD)
    write (u, "(A,A)" '[keyword]' // char (token%kval)
case (S_QUOTED)
    write (u, "(A)" &
        char (token%quote(1)) // char (token%sval) // char (token%quote(2))
case default
    write (u, "(A)" '[empty]'
end select
end subroutine token_write

```

Token assignment via deep copy. This is useful to avoid confusion when the token is transferred to some parse-tree node.

```

(Parser: interfaces)≡
interface assignment(=)
    module procedure token_assign
    module procedure token_assign_integer
    module procedure token_assign_real
    module procedure token_assign_complex
    module procedure token_assign_logical
    module procedure token_assign_string
end interface

```

We need to copy only the contents that are actually assigned, the other pointers remain disassociated.

```

(Parser: procedures)+≡
subroutine token_assign (token, token_in)
    type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token_in
    token%type = token_in%type
    select case (token%type)
    case (S_LOGICAL); allocate (token%lval); token%lval = token_in%lval
    case (S_INTEGER); allocate (token%ival); token%ival = token_in%ival
    case (S_REAL); allocate (token%rval); token%rval = token_in%rval
    case (S_COMPLEX); allocate (token%cval); token%cval = token_in%cval
    case (S_IDENTIFIER); allocate (token%sval); token%sval = token_in%sval
    case (S_QUOTED); allocate (token%sval); token%sval = token_in%sval
        allocate (token%quote(2)); token%quote = token_in%quote
    end select
    if (token%type /= S_UNKNOWN) then
        allocate (token%kval); token%kval = token_in%kval
    end if
end subroutine token_assign

```

We need to copy only the contents that are actually assigned, the other pointers remain disassociated.

*(Parser: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine token_assign_integer (token, ival)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  integer, intent(in) :: ival
  token%type = S_INTEGER
  allocate (token%ival)
  token%ival = ival
end subroutine token_assign_integer

subroutine token_assign_real (token, rval)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  real(default), intent(in) :: rval
  token%type = S_REAL
  allocate (token%rval)
  token%rval = rval
end subroutine token_assign_real

subroutine token_assign_complex (token, cval)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  complex(default), intent(in) :: cval
  token%type = S_COMPLEX
  allocate (token%cval)
  token%cval = cval
end subroutine token_assign_complex

subroutine token_assign_logical (token, lval)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  logical, intent(in) :: lval
  token%type = S_LOGICAL
  allocate (token%lval)
  token%lval = lval
end subroutine token_assign_logical

subroutine token_assign_string (token, sval)
  type(token_t), intent(out) :: token
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: sval
  token%type = S_QUOTED
  allocate (token%sval)
  token%sval = sval
  allocate (token%quote(2)); token%quote = ''
end subroutine token_assign_string

```

### 3.4.2 Retrieve token contents

These functions all do a trivial sanity check that should avoid crashes.

*(Parser: procedures)*+≡

```

function token_get_logical (token) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
  if (associated (token%lval)) then

```

```

        lval = token%lval
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "logical")
    end if
end function token_get_logical

function token_get_integer (token) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
    if (associated (token%ival)) then
        ival = token%ival
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "integer")
    end if
end function token_get_integer

function token_get_real (token) result (rval)
    real(default) :: rval
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
    if (associated (token%rval)) then
        rval = token%rval
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "real")
    end if
end function token_get_real

function token_get_cmplx (token) result (cval)
    complex(default) :: cval
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
    if (associated (token%cval)) then
        cval = token%cval
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "complex")
    end if
end function token_get_cmplx

function token_get_string (token) result (sval)
    type(string_t) :: sval
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
    if (associated (token%sval)) then
        sval = token%sval
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "string")
    end if
end function token_get_string

function token_get_key (token) result (kval)
    type(string_t) :: kval
    type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
    if (associated (token%kval)) then
        kval = token%kval
    else
        call token_mismatch (token, "keyword")
    end if
end if

```

```

end function token_get_key

function token_get_quote (token) result (quote)
  type(string_t), dimension(2) :: quote
  type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
  if (associated (token%quote)) then
    quote = token%quote
  else
    call token_mismatch (token, "quote")
  end if
end function token_get_quote

<Parser: procedures>+≡
subroutine token_mismatch (token, type)
  type(token_t), intent(in) :: token
  character(*), intent(in) :: type
  write (6, "(A)", advance="no") "Token: "
  call token_write (token)
  call msg_bug (" Token type mismatch; value required as " // type)
end subroutine token_mismatch

```

### 3.4.3 The parse tree: nodes

The parser will generate a parse tree from the input stream. Each node in this parse tree points to the syntax rule that was applied. (Since syntax rules are stored in a pointer-type array within the syntax table, they qualify as targets.) A leaf node contains a token. A branch node has subnodes. The subnodes are stored as a list, so each node also has a `next` pointer.

```

<Parser: public>≡
public :: parse_node_t

<Parser: types>+≡
type :: parse_node_t
private
  type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule => null ()
  type(token_t) :: token
  integer :: n_sub = 0
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sub_first => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sub_last => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: next => null ()
contains
  <Parser: parse node: TBP>
end type parse_node_t

```

Container for parse node pointers, useful for creating pointer arrays:

```

<Parser: public>+≡
public :: parse_node_p

<Parser: types>+≡
type :: parse_node_p
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: ptr => null ()
end type parse_node_p

```

Output. The first version writes a node together with its sub-node tree, organized by indentation.

```

(Parser: parse node: TBP)≡
    procedure :: write => parse_node_write_rec

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_write_rec

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    recursive subroutine parse_node_write_rec (node, unit, short, depth)
        class(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: short
        integer, intent(in), optional :: depth
        integer :: u, d
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        d = 0; if (present (depth)) d = depth
        call parse_node_write (node, u, short=short)
        current => node%sub_first
        do while (associated (current))
            write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") repeat ("| ", d)
            call parse_node_write_rec (current, unit, short, d+1)
            current => current%next
        end do
    end subroutine parse_node_write_rec

```

This does the actual output for a single node, without recursion.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_write

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_write (node, unit, short)
        class(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: short
        integer :: u
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(' + ')", advance = "no")
        if (associated (node%rule)) then
            call syntax_rule_write (node%rule, u, &
                short=short, key_only=.true., advance=.false.)
        if (token_is_valid (node%token)) then
            write (u, "(' = ')", advance="no")
            call token_write (node%token, u)
        else if (associated (node%sub_first)) then
            write (u, "(' = ')", advance="no")
            current => node%sub_first
            do while (associated (current))
                call syntax_rule_write (current%rule, u, &
                    short=.true., key_only=.true., advance=.false.)
                current => current%next
            end do
            write (u, *)
        end if
    end subroutine parse_node_write

```

```

        else
            write (u, *)
        end if
    else
        write (u, *) "[empty]"
    end if
end subroutine parse_node_write

```

Finalize the token and recursively finalize and deallocate all sub-nodes.

```

<Parser: public>+≡
    public :: parse_node_final

<Parser: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine parse_node_final (node, recursive)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current
        logical, intent(in), optional :: recursive
        logical :: rec
        rec = .true.; if (present (recursive)) rec = recursive
        call token_final (node%token)
        if (rec) then
            do while (associated (node%sub_first))
                current => node%sub_first
                node%sub_first => node%sub_first%next
                call parse_node_final (current)
                deallocate (current)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine parse_node_final

```

### 3.4.4 Filling nodes

The constructors allocate and initialize the node. There are two possible initializers (in a later version, should correspond to different type extensions).

First, leaf (terminal) nodes. The token constructor does the actual work, looking at the requested type and key for the given rule and matching against the lexeme contents. If it fails, the token will keep the type `S_UNKNOWN` and remain empty. Otherwise, we have a valid node which contains the new token.

If the lexeme argument is absent, the token is left empty.

```

<Parser: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parse_node_create_leaf (node, rule, lexeme)
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
        type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: lexeme
        allocate (node)
        node%rule => rule
        call token_init (node%token, lexeme, &
            syntax_rule_get_type (rule), syntax_rule_get_key (rule))
        if (.not. token_is_valid (node%token)) deallocate (node)
    end subroutine parse_node_create_leaf

```

This version allows us to manually create a leaf node that holds a keyword.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_create_key

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_create_key (node, rule)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(out) :: node
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
        node%rule => rule
        call token_init_key (node%token, syntax_rule_get_key (rule))
    end subroutine parse_node_create_key

```

This version allows us to manually create a leaf node that holds a fixed value.  
Only one of the optional values should be provided.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_create_value

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_create_value (node, rule, ival, rval, cval, sval, lval)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(out) :: node
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
        integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
        complex(default), intent(in), optional :: cval
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sval
        logical, intent(in), optional :: lval
        node%rule => rule
        call parse_node_set_value (node, ival, rval, cval, sval, lval)
    end subroutine parse_node_create_value

```

Directly set the value without changing anything else.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_set_value

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_set_value (node, ival, rval, cval, sval, lval)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
        integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
        complex(default), intent(in), optional :: cval
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sval
        logical, intent(in), optional :: lval
        if (present (ival)) then
            node%token = ival
        else if (present (rval)) then
            node%token = rval
        else if (present (cval)) then
            node%token = cval
        else if (present (lval)) then
            node%token = lval
        else if (present (sval)) then
            node%token = sval
        end if
    end subroutine parse_node_set_value

```

Second, branch nodes. We first assign the rule:

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_create_branch

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_create_branch (node, rule)
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
        type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
        allocate (node)
        node%rule => rule
    end subroutine parse_node_create_branch

```

Append a sub-node. The sub-node must exist and be a valid target, otherwise nothing is done.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_append_sub

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_append_sub (node, sub)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sub
        if (associated (sub)) then
            if (associated (node%sub_last)) then
                node%sub_last%next => sub
            else
                node%sub_first => sub
            end if
            node%sub_last => sub
        end if
    end subroutine parse_node_append_sub

```

For easy access, once the list is complete we count the number of sub-nodes. If there are no subnodes, the whole node is deleted.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_freeze_branch

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_freeze_branch (node)
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current
        node%n_sub = 0
        current => node%sub_first
        do while (associated (current))
            node%n_sub = node%n_sub + 1
            current => current%next
        end do
        if (node%n_sub == 0) deallocate (node)
    end subroutine parse_node_freeze_branch

```

Replace the syntax rule. This makes sense only if the parse node adheres to the syntax of the new rule.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_replace_rule

```



```

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_node_replace_rule (node, rule)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
    node%rule => rule
  end subroutine parse_node_replace_rule

```

Replace the last subnode by the target node. Since the subnodes are stored as a linked list, we can do this only if we copy the subnodes. Furthermore, the target node must also be copied, and the `next` pointer of the copy is nullified. This ensures that we cannot modify the originals at the subnode level.

All copies are shallow copies. This implies that further modifications at the sub-subnode level will affect the original nodes and must therefore be forbidden.

Use with care, this invites to memory mismanagement. The copy nodes can be deallocated, but not finalized, since its subnodes are the same objects as the subnodes of the target node.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_node_replace_last_sub

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_node_replace_last_sub (node, pn_target)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(inout), target :: node
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_target
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current, current_copy, previous
    integer :: i
    select case (node%n_sub)
    case (1)
      allocate (current_copy)
      current_copy = pn_target
      node%sub_first => current_copy
    case (2:)
      current => node%sub_first
      allocate (current_copy)
      current_copy = current
      node%sub_first => current_copy
      previous => current_copy
      do i = 1, node%n_sub - 2
        current => current%next
        allocate (current_copy)
        current_copy = current
        previous%next => current_copy
        previous => current_copy
      end do
      allocate (current_copy)
      current_copy = pn_target
      previous%next => current_copy
    case default
      call parse_node_write (node)
      call msg_bug ("replace_last_sub' called for non-branch parse node")
    end select
    current_copy%next => null ()
    node%sub_last => current_copy
  end subroutine parse_node_replace_last_sub

```

### 3.4.5 Accessing nodes

Return the node contents. Check if pointers are associated. No check when accessing a sub-node; assume that `parse_node_n_sub` is always used for the upper bound.

The token extractor returns a pointer.

*<Parser: public>+≡*

```
public :: parse_node_get_rule_ptr
public :: parse_node_get_n_sub
public :: parse_node_get_sub_ptr
public :: parse_node_get_next_ptr
public :: parse_node_get_last_sub_ptr
```

*<Parser: procedures>+≡*

```
function parse_node_get_rule_ptr (node) result (rule)
  type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
  if (associated (node%rule)) then
    rule => node%rule
  else
    rule => null ()
    call parse_node_undefined (node, "rule")
  end if
end function parse_node_get_rule_ptr
```

```
function parse_node_get_n_sub (node) result (n)
  integer :: n
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
  n = node%n_sub
end function parse_node_get_n_sub
```

```
function parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, n, tag, required) result (sub)
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sub
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
  integer, intent(in), optional :: n
  character(*), intent(in), optional :: tag
  logical, intent(in), optional :: required
  integer :: i
  sub => node%sub_first
  if (present (n)) then
    do i = 2, n
      if (associated (sub)) then
        sub => sub%next
      else
        return
      end if
    end do
  end if
  call parse_node_check (sub, tag, required)
end function parse_node_get_sub_ptr
```

```
function parse_node_get_next_ptr (sub, n, tag, required) result (next)
```

```

type(parse_node_t), pointer :: next
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: sub
integer, intent(in), optional :: n
character(*), intent(in), optional :: tag
logical, intent(in), optional :: required
integer :: i
next => sub%next
if (present (n)) then
    do i = 2, n
        if (associated (next)) then
            next => next%next
        else
            exit
        end if
    end do
end if
call parse_node_check (next, tag, required)
end function parse_node_get_next_ptr

function parse_node_get_last_sub_ptr (node, tag, required) result (sub)
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sub
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
character(*), intent(in), optional :: tag
logical, intent(in), optional :: required
sub => node%sub_last
call parse_node_check (sub, tag, required)
end function parse_node_get_last_sub_ptr

(Parser: procedures)+≡
subroutine parse_node_undefined (node, obj)
type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
character(*), intent(in) :: obj
call parse_node_write (node, 6)
call msg_bug (" Parse-tree node: " // obj // " requested, but undefined")
end subroutine parse_node_undefined

```

Check if a parse node has a particular tag, and if it is associated:

```

(Parser: public)+≡
public :: parse_node_check

(Parser: procedures)+≡
subroutine parse_node_check (node, tag, required)
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
character(*), intent(in), optional :: tag
logical, intent(in), optional :: required
if (associated (node)) then
    if (present (tag)) then
        if (parse_node_get_rule_key (node) /= tag) &
            call parse_node_mismatch (tag, node)
        end if
    else
        if (present (required)) then
            if (required) &
                call msg_bug (" Missing node, expected <" // tag // ">")
        end if
    end if
end subroutine parse_node_check

```

```

        end if
    end if
end subroutine parse_node_check

```

This is called by a parse-tree scanner if the expected and the actual nodes do not match

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_mismatch

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    subroutine parse_node_mismatch (string, parse_node)
        character(*), intent(in) :: string
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: parse_node
        call parse_node_write (parse_node)
        call msg_bug (" Syntax mismatch, expected <" // string // ">.")
    end subroutine parse_node_mismatch

```

The following functions are wrappers for extracting the token contents.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_get_logical
    public :: parse_node_get_integer
    public :: parse_node_get_real
    public :: parse_node_get_cmplx
    public :: parse_node_get_string
    public :: parse_node_get_key
    public :: parse_node_get_rule_key

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    function parse_node_get_logical (node) result (lval)
        logical :: lval
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
        lval = token_get_logical (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
    end function parse_node_get_logical

    function parse_node_get_integer (node) result (ival)
        integer :: ival
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
        ival = token_get_integer (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
    end function parse_node_get_integer

    function parse_node_get_real (node) result (rval)
        real(default) :: rval
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
        rval = token_get_real (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
    end function parse_node_get_real

    function parse_node_get_cmplx (node) result (cval)
        complex(default) :: cval
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
        cval = token_get_cmplx (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
    end function parse_node_get_cmplx

    function parse_node_get_string (node) result (sval)
        type(string_t) :: sval

```

```

    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
    sval = token_get_string (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
end function parse_node_get_string

function parse_node_get_key (node) result (kval)
    type(string_t) :: kval
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
    kval = token_get_key (parse_node_get_token_ptr (node))
end function parse_node_get_key

function parse_node_get_rule_key (node) result (kval)
    type(string_t) :: kval
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
    kval = syntax_rule_get_key (parse_node_get_rule_ptr (node))
end function parse_node_get_rule_key

function parse_node_get_token_ptr (node) result (token)
    type(token_t), pointer :: token
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
    if (token_is_valid (node%token)) then
        token => node%token
    else
        call parse_node_undefined (node, "token")
    end if
end function parse_node_get_token_ptr

```

Return a MD5 sum for a parse node. The method is to write the node to a scratch file and to evaluate the MD5 sum of that file.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_node_get_md5sum

(Parser: procedures)+≡
    function parse_node_get_md5sum (pn) result (md5sum_pn)
        character(32) :: md5sum_pn
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
        integer :: u
        u = free_unit ()
        open (unit = u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
        call parse_node_write_rec (pn, unit=u)
        rewind (u)
        md5sum_pn = md5sum (u)
        close (u)
    end function parse_node_get_md5sum

```

### 3.4.6 The parse tree

The parse tree is a tree of nodes, where leaf nodes hold a valid token, while branch nodes point to a list of sub-nodes.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
    public :: parse_tree_t

```

```

(Parser: types)+≡
  type :: parse_tree_t
  private
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: root_node => null ()
  end type parse_tree_t

```

The parser. Its arguments are the parse tree (which should be empty initially), the lexer (which should be already set up), the syntax table (which should be valid), and the input stream. The input stream is completely parsed, using the lexer setup and the syntax rules as given, and the parse tree is built accordingly.

If `check_eof` is absent or true, the parser will complain about trailing garbage. Otherwise, it will ignore it.

By default, the input stream is matched against the top rule in the specified syntax. If `key` is given, it is matched against the rule with the specified key instead.

Failure at the top level means that no rule could match at all; in this case the error message will show the top rule.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_init

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_tree_init &
    (parse_tree, syntax, lexer, key, check_eof)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(inout) :: parse_tree
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    type(syntax_t), intent(in), target :: syntax
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: key
    logical, intent(in), optional :: check_eof
    type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: rule
    type(lexeme_t) :: lexeme
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    logical :: ok, check
    check = .true.; if (present (check_eof)) check = check_eof
    call lexer_clear (lexer)
    if (present (key)) then
      rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax, key)
    else
      rule => syntax_get_top_rule_ptr (syntax)
    end if
    if (associated (rule)) then
      call parse_node_match_rule (node, rule, ok)
      if (ok) then
        parse_tree%root_node => node
      else
        call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
      end if
    end if
    if (check) then
      call lex (lexeme, lexer)
      if (.not. lexeme_is_eof (lexeme)) then
        call lexer_show_location (lexer)
        call msg_fatal (" Syntax error " &
          // "(at or before the location indicated above)")
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine parse_tree_init

```

```

        end if
    else
        call msg_bug (" Parser failed because syntax is empty")
    end if
contains
    <Parser: internal subroutines of parse_tree_init>
end subroutine parse_tree_init

```

The parser works recursively, following the rule tree, building the tree of nodes on the fly. If the given rule matches, the node is filled on return. If not, the node remains empty.

```

<Parser: internal subroutines of parse_tree_init>≡
recursive subroutine parse_node_match_rule (node, rule, ok)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    logical, parameter :: debug = .false.
    integer :: type
    if (debug) write (6, "(A)", advance="no") "Parsing rule: "
    if (debug) call syntax_rule_write (rule, 6)
    node => null ()
    type = syntax_rule_get_type (rule)
    if (syntax_rule_is_atomic (rule)) then
        call lex (lexeme, lexer)
        if (debug) write (6, "(A)", advance="no") "Token: "
        if (debug) call lexeme_write (lexeme, 6)
        call parse_node_create_leaf (node, rule, lexeme)
        ok = associated (node)
        if (.not. ok) call lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
    else
        select case (type)
        case (S_ALTERNATIVE); call parse_alternative (node, rule, ok)
        case (S_GROUP);      call parse_group (node, rule, ok)
        case (S_SEQUENCE);   call parse_sequence (node, rule, .false., ok)
        case (S_LIST);        call parse_sequence (node, rule, .true., ok)
        case (S_ARGS);        call parse_args (node, rule, ok)
        case (S_IGNORE);      call parse_ignore (node, ok)
        end select
    end if
    if (debug) then
        if (ok) then
            write (6, "(A)", advance="no") "Matched rule: "
        else
            write (6, "(A)", advance="no") "Failed rule: "
        end if
        call syntax_rule_write (rule)
        if (associated (node)) call parse_node_write (node)
    end if
end subroutine parse_node_match_rule

```

Parse an alternative: try each case. If the match succeeds, the node has been filled, so return. If nothing works, return failure.

```

<Parser: internal subroutines of parse_tree_init>+≡
recursive subroutine parse_alternative (node, rule, ok)

```

```

type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
logical, intent(out) :: ok
integer :: i
do i = 1, syntax_rule_get_n_sub (rule)
    call parse_node_match_rule (node, syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr (rule, i), ok)
    if (ok) return
end do
ok = .false.
end subroutine parse_alternative

```

Parse a group: the first and third lexemes have to be the delimiters, the second one is parsed as the actual node, using now the child rule. If the first match fails, return with failure. If the other matches fail, issue an error, since we cannot lex back more than one item.

```

<Parser: internal subroutines of parse_tree_init>+≡
recursive subroutine parse_group (node, rule, ok)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(string_t), dimension(2) :: delimiter
    delimiter = syntax_rule_get_delimiter (rule)
    call lex (lexeme, lexer)
    if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) == delimiter(1)) then
        call parse_node_match_rule (node, syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr (rule, 1), ok)
        if (ok) then
            call lex (lexeme, lexer)
            if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) == delimiter(2)) then
                ok = .true.
            else
                call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
            end if
        else
            call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
        end if
    else
        call lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
        ok = .false.
    end if
end subroutine parse_group

```

Parsing a sequence. The last rule element may be special: optional and/or repetitive. Each sub-node that matches is appended to the sub-node list of the parent node.

If `sep` is true, we look for a separator after each element.

```

<Parser: internal subroutines of parse_tree_init>+≡
recursive subroutine parse_sequence (node, rule, sep, ok)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
    logical, intent(in) :: sep
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: current
    integer :: i, n
    logical :: opt, rep, cont

```



```

type(string_t) :: separator
call parse_node_create_branch (node, rule)
if (sep) separator = syntax_rule_get_separator (rule)
n = syntax_rule_get_n_sub (rule)
opt = syntax_rule_last_optional (rule)
rep = syntax_rule_last_repetitive (rule)
ok = .true.
cont = .true.
SCAN_RULE: do i = 1, n
  call parse_node_match_rule &
    (current, syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr (rule, i), cont)
  if (cont) then
    call parse_node_append_sub (node, current)
    if (sep .and. (i < n .or. rep)) then
      call lex (lexeme, lexer)
      if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) /= separator) then
        call lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
        cont = .false.
        exit SCAN_RULE
      end if
    end if
  else
    if (i == n .and. opt) then
      exit SCAN_RULE
    else if (i == 1) then
      ok = .false.
      exit SCAN_RULE
    else
      call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
    end if
  end if
end do SCAN_RULE
if (rep) then
  do while (cont)
    call parse_node_match_rule &
      (current, syntax_rule_get_sub_ptr (rule, n), cont)
    if (cont) then
      call parse_node_append_sub (node, current)
      if (sep) then
        call lex (lexeme, lexer)
        if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) /= separator) then
          call lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
          cont = .false.
        end if
      end if
    else
      if (sep) call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
    end if
  end do
end if
call parse_node_freeze_branch (node)
end subroutine parse_sequence

```

Argument list: We use the `parse_group` code, but call `parse_sequence` inside.

*(Parser: internal subroutines of parse\_tree\_init)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine parse_args (node, rule, ok)
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
  type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in), target :: rule
  logical, intent(out) :: ok
  type(string_t), dimension(2) :: delimiter
  delimiter = syntax_rule_get_delimiter (rule)
  call lex (lexeme, lexer)
  if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) == delimiter(1)) then
    call parse_sequence (node, rule, .true., ok)
    if (ok) then
      call lex (lexeme, lexer)
      if (lexeme_get_string (lexeme) == delimiter(2)) then
        ok = .true.
      else
        call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
      end if
    else
      call parse_error (rule, lexeme)
    end if
  else
    call lexer_put_back (lexer, lexeme)
    ok = .false.
  end if
end subroutine parse_args

```

The IGNORE syntax reads one lexeme and discards it if it is numeric, logical or string/identifier (but not a keyword). This is a successful match. Otherwise, the match fails. The node pointer is returned disassociated in any case.

*(Parser: internal subroutines of parse\_tree\_init)+≡*

```

subroutine parse_ignore (node, ok)
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
  logical, intent(out) :: ok
  call lex (lexeme, lexer)
  select case (lexeme_get_type (lexeme))
    case (T_NUMERIC, T_IDENTIFIER, T_QUOTED)
      ok = .true.
    case default
      ok = .false.
  end select
  node => null ()
end subroutine parse_ignore

```

If the match fails and we cannot step back:

*(Parser: internal subroutines of parse\_tree\_init)+≡*

```

subroutine parse_error (rule, lexeme)
  type(syntax_rule_t), intent(in) :: rule
  type(lexeme_t), intent(in) :: lexeme
  character(80) :: buffer
  integer :: u, iostat
  call lexer_show_location (lexer)
  u = free_unit ()
  open (u, status = "scratch")
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Expected syntax:"
  call syntax_rule_write (rule, u)
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Found token:"

```

```

call lexeme_write (lexeme, u)
rewind (u)
do
  read (u, "(A)", iostat=iostat)  buffer
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  call msg_message (trim (buffer))
end do
call msg_fatal (" Syntax error " &
  // "(at or before the location indicated above)")
end subroutine parse_error

```

The finalizer recursively deallocates all nodes and their contents. For each node, `parse_node_final` is called on the sub-nodes, which in turn deallocates the token or sub-node array contained within each of them. At the end, only the top node remains to be deallocated.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_final

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(inout) :: parse_tree
    if (associated (parse_tree%root_node)) then
      call parse_node_final (parse_tree%root_node)
      deallocate (parse_tree%root_node)
    end if
  end subroutine parse_tree_final

```

Print the parse tree. Print one token per line, indented according to the depth of the node.

The `verbose` version includes type identifiers for the nodes.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_write

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_tree_write (parse_tree, unit, verbose)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    logical :: short
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    short = .true.; if (present (verbose)) short = .not. verbose
    write (u, "(A)") "Parse tree:"
    if (associated (parse_tree%root_node)) then
      call parse_node_write_rec (parse_tree%root_node, unit, short, 1)
    else
      write (u, *) "[empty]"
    end if
  end subroutine parse_tree_write

```

This is a generic error that can be issued if the parse tree does not meet the expectations of the parser. This most certainly indicates a bug.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_bug

```

```

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_tree_bug (node, keys)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
    character(*), intent(in) :: keys
    call parse_node_write (node)
    call msg_bug (" Inconsistency in parse tree: expected " // keys)
  end subroutine parse_tree_bug

```

### 3.4.7 Access the parser

For scanning the parse tree we give access to the top node, as a node pointer. Of course, there should be no write access.

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_get_root_ptr

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  function parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree) result (node)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in), target :: parse_tree
    node => parse_tree%root_node
  end function parse_tree_get_root_ptr

```

### 3.4.8 Tools

This operation traverses the parse tree and simplifies any occurrences of a set of syntax rules. If such a parse node has only one sub-node, it is replaced by that subnode. (This makes sense only of the rules to eliminate have no meaningful token.)

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_tree_reduce

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_tree_reduce (parse_tree, rule_key)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(inout) :: parse_tree
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rule_key
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn
    pn => parse_tree%root_node
    if (associated (pn)) then
      call parse_node_reduce (pn, null(), null())
    end if
  contains
    recursive subroutine parse_node_reduce (pn, pn_prev, pn_parent)
      type(parse_node_t), intent(inout), pointer :: pn
      type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_prev, pn_parent
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_sub, pn_sub_prev, pn_tmp
      pn_sub_prev => null ()
      pn_sub => pn%sub_first
      do while (associated (pn_sub))
        call parse_node_reduce (pn_sub, pn_sub_prev, pn)
        pn_sub_prev => pn_sub
        pn_sub => pn_sub%next
      end do
    end subroutine parse_node_reduce
  end subroutine parse_tree_reduce

```

```

end do
if (parse_node_get_n_sub (pn) == 1) then
  if (matches (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn), rule_key)) then
    pn_tmp => pn
    pn => pn%sub_first
    if (associated (pn_prev)) then
      pn_prev%next => pn
    else if (associated (pn_parent)) then
      pn_parent%sub_first => pn
    else
      parse_tree%root_node => pn
    end if
    if (associated (pn_tmp%next)) then
      pn%next => pn_tmp%next
    else if (associated (pn_parent)) then
      pn_parent%sub_last => pn
    end if
    call parse_node_final (pn_tmp, recursive=.false.)
    deallocate (pn_tmp)
  end if
end if
end subroutine parse_node_reduce
function matches (key, key_list) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: key
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key_list
  integer :: i
  flag = .true.
  do i = 1, size (key_list)
    if (key == key_list(i)) return
  end do
  flag = .false.
end function matches
end subroutine parse_tree_reduce

```

### 3.4.9 Applications

For a file of the form

```

process foo, bar
  <something>
process xyz
  <something>

```

get the *<something>* entry node for the first matching process tag. If no matching entry is found, the node pointer remains unassociated.

*<Parser: public>*+≡

```

public :: parse_tree_get_process_ptr

```

*<Parser: procedures>*+≡

```

function parse_tree_get_process_ptr (parse_tree, process) result (node)
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(in), target :: parse_tree

```

```

type(string_t), intent(in) :: process
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node_root, node_process_def
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node_process_phs, node_process_list
integer :: j
node_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)
if (associated (node_root)) then
  node_process_phs => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_root)
  SCAN_FILE: do while (associated (node_process_phs))
    node_process_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_process_phs)
    node_process_list => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_process_def, 2)
    do j = 1, parse_node_get_n_sub (node_process_list)
      if (parse_node_get_string &
        (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_process_list, j)) &
        == process) then
        node => parse_node_get_next_ptr (node_process_def)
        return
      end if
    end do
    node_process_phs => parse_node_get_next_ptr (node_process_phs)
  end do SCAN_FILE
  node => null ()
else
  node => null ()
end if
end function parse_tree_get_process_ptr

```

### 3.4.10 Unit tests

```

(Parser: public)+≡
  public :: parse_test

(Parser: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parse_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  (Parser: execute tests)
  end subroutine parse_test

```

This checks the parser.

```

(Parser: execute tests)≡
  call test (parse_1, "parse_1", &
    "check the parser", &
    u, results)

(Parser: tests)≡
  subroutine parse_1 (u)
    use ifiles
    use lexers
    integer, intent(in) :: u

    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(syntax_t), target :: syntax
    type(lexer_t) :: lexer

```

```

type(stream_t), target :: stream
type(parse_tree_t), target :: parse_tree

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Parsing"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test parse routines"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ expr = term addition*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ addition = plus_or_minus term")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ term = factor multiplication*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ multiplication = times_or_over factor")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ factor = atom exponentiation*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ exponentiation = '^' atom")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT atom = real | delimited_expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO delimited_expr = ( expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT plus_or_minus = '+' | '-'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT times_or_over = '*' | '/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '-'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '*'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '^'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "REA real")

write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents (syntax definition):"
call ifile_write (ifile, u)
write (u, "(A)")  "EOF"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_init (syntax, ifile)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call syntax_write (syntax, u)
write (u, "(A)")

call lexer_init (lexer, &
comment_chars = "", &
quote_chars = "'", &
quote_match = "'", &
single_chars = "+-*/^()", &
special_class = [""] , &
keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax))
call lexer_write_setup (lexer, u)
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, "(27+8^3-2/3)*(4+7)^2*99")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents (input file):"
call ifile_write (ifile, u)
write (u, "(A)")  "EOF"
print *

call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax, lexer)
call stream_final (stream)

```

```

call parse_tree_write (parse_tree, u, .true.)
print *

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup, everything should now be empty:"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call parse_tree_write (parse_tree, u, .true.)
write (u, "(A)")

call lexer_final (lexer)
call lexer_write_setup (lexer, u)
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_final (ifile)
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
call ifile_write (ifile, u)
write (u, "(A)")  "EOF"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_final (syntax)
call syntax_write (syntax, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: parser_1"

end subroutine parse_1

```



## 3.5 XML Parser

The XML parser is actually independent from the previous modules of `lexer` and `parser`. However, for a generic I/O interface we make use of the `stream_t` facility.

We need the XML parser for reading and writing LHEF data files. Only a subset of XML is actually relevant. The parser is of the “pull” type, i.e., the program steers the reading of XML data in a context-sensitive manner.

```
<xml.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module xml

    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: BLANK, TAB !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use ifiles
    use lexers

    <Standard module head>

    <XML: public>

    <XML: types>

    contains

    <XML: procedures>

    <XML: tests>

  end module xml
```

### 3.5.1 Cached Stream

The stream type as defined in the `lexer` module is versatile regarding the choice of input channel, but it does not allow reading a section more than once. Here, we define an extension where we can return a string to the stream, which is stored in a cache variable, and presented to the caller for the next read.

```
<XML: public>≡
  public :: cstream_t

<XML: types>≡
  type, extends (stream_t) :: cstream_t
    logical :: cache_is_empty = .true.
    type(string_t) :: cache
    contains
    <XML: cstream: TBP>
  end type cstream_t
```

The initializers are simply inherited. We require a generic.

```

<XML: cstream: TBP>≡
  generic :: init => init_filename, init_unit, init_string, &
    init_ifile, init_line
  procedure :: init_filename => cstream_init_filename
  procedure :: init_unit => cstream_init_unit
  procedure :: init_string => cstream_init_string
  procedure :: init_ifile => cstream_init_ifile
  procedure :: init_line => cstream_init_line

<XML: procedures>≡
  subroutine cstream_init_filename (cstream, filename)
    class(cstream_t), intent(out) :: cstream
    character(*), intent(in) :: filename
    call stream_init (cstream%stream_t, filename)
  end subroutine cstream_init_filename

  subroutine cstream_init_unit (cstream, unit)
    class(cstream_t), intent(out) :: cstream
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    call stream_init (cstream%stream_t, unit)
  end subroutine cstream_init_unit

  subroutine cstream_init_string (cstream, string)
    class(cstream_t), intent(out) :: cstream
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    call stream_init (cstream%stream_t, string)
  end subroutine cstream_init_string

  subroutine cstream_init_ifile (cstream, ifile)
    class(cstream_t), intent(out) :: cstream
    type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
    call stream_init (cstream%stream_t, ifile)
  end subroutine cstream_init_ifile

  subroutine cstream_init_line (cstream, line)
    class(cstream_t), intent(out) :: cstream
    type(line_p), intent(in) :: line
    call stream_init (cstream%stream_t, line)
  end subroutine cstream_init_line

```

Finalizer: also inherited

```

<XML: cstream: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => cstream_final

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cstream_final (cstream)
    class(cstream_t), intent(inout) :: cstream
    cstream%cache_is_empty = .true.
    call stream_final (cstream%stream_t)
  end subroutine cstream_final

```

Get record: now, if there is a cache string, return this instead of the record from the stream.

```

<XML: cstream: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_record => cstream_get_record

<XML: procedures>+=
  subroutine cstream_get_record (cstream, string, iostat)
    class(cstream_t), intent(inout) :: cstream
    type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    if (cstream%cache_is_empty) then
      call stream_get_record (cstream%stream_t, string, iostat)
    else
      string = cstream%cache
      cstream%cache_is_empty = .true.
      iostat = 0
    end if
  end subroutine cstream_get_record

```

Revert: return the (partially read) record to the stream, putting it in the cache.

```

<XML: cstream: TBP>+=
  procedure :: revert_record => cstream_revert_record

<XML: procedures>+=
  subroutine cstream_revert_record (cstream, string)
    class(cstream_t), intent(inout) :: cstream
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    if (cstream%cache_is_empty) then
      cstream%cache = string
      cstream%cache_is_empty = .false.
    else
      call msg_bug ("CStream: attempt to revert twice")
    end if
  end subroutine cstream_revert_record

```

### 3.5.2 Attributes

A tag attribute has a name and a value; both are strings. When the attribute is defined, the `known` flag indicates this.

```

<XML: types>+=
  type :: attribute_t
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(string_t) :: value
    logical :: known = .false.
  contains
    <XML: attribute: TBP>
  end type attribute_t

```

Output in standard format, non-advancing. (If the value is unknown, we indicate this by a question mark, which is non-standard.)

```

<XML: attribute: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => attribute_write

```

```

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine attribute_write (object, unit)
    class(attribute_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(A,'=')", advance = "no") char (object%name)
    if (object%known) then
      write (u, "(A,A,A)", advance = "no") '""', char (object%value), '''
    else
      write (u, "(?'')", advance = "no")
    end if
  end subroutine attribute_write

```

This is a genuine constructor. The value is optional.

```

<XML: public>+≡
  public :: xml_attribute

<XML: procedures>+≡
  function xml_attribute (name, value) result (attribute)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: value
    type(attribute_t) :: attribute
    attribute%name = name
    if (present (value)) then
      attribute%value = value
      attribute%known = .true.
    else
      attribute%known = .false.
    end if
  end function xml_attribute

```

Set a value explicitly.

```

<XML: attribute: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_value => attribute_set_value

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine attribute_set_value (attribute, value)
    class(attribute_t), intent(inout) :: attribute
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: value
    attribute%value = value
    attribute%known = .true.
  end subroutine attribute_set_value

```

Extract a value. If unset, return "?"

```

<XML: attribute: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_value => attribute_get_value

<XML: procedures>+≡
  function attribute_get_value (attribute) result (value)
    class(attribute_t), intent(in) :: attribute
    type(string_t) :: value
    if (attribute%known) then
      value = attribute%value
    end if
  end function attribute_get_value

```

```

    else
        value = "?"
    end if
end function attribute_get_value

```

### 3.5.3 The Tag Type

The basic entity is the internal representation of an XML tag. The tag has a name, a well-defined set of attributes which may be mandatory or optional, and a flag that determines whether there is content or not. The content itself is not stored in the data structure.

```

<XML: public>+≡
    public :: xml_tag_t

<XML: types>+≡
    type :: xml_tag_t
        type(string_t) :: name
        type(attribute_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: attribute
        logical :: has_content = .false.
    contains
        <XML: tag: TBP>
    end type xml_tag_t

```

Initialization. There are different versions, depending on content.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>≡
    generic :: init => init_no_attributes
    procedure :: init_no_attributes => tag_init_no_attributes

<XML: procedures>+≡
    subroutine tag_init_no_attributes (tag, name, has_content)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(out) :: tag
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        logical, intent(in), optional :: has_content
        tag%name = name
        allocate (tag%attribute (0))
        if (present (has_content)) tag%has_content = has_content
    end subroutine tag_init_no_attributes

```

This version sets attributes.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    generic :: init => init_with_attributes
    procedure :: init_with_attributes => tag_init_with_attributes

<XML: procedures>+≡
    subroutine tag_init_with_attributes (tag, name, attribute, has_content)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(out) :: tag
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(attribute_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: attribute
        logical, intent(in), optional :: has_content
        tag%name = name
        allocate (tag%attribute (size (attribute)))
        tag%attribute = attribute
    end subroutine tag_init_with_attributes

```

```

        if (present (has_content)) tag%has_content = has_content
    end subroutine tag_init_with_attributes

```

Set an attribute value explicitly.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_attribute => tag_set_attribute
<XML: procedures>+≡
    subroutine tag_set_attribute (tag, i, value)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(inout) :: tag
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: value
        call tag%attribute(i)%set_value (value)
    end subroutine tag_set_attribute

```

Get an attribute value.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_attribute => tag_get_attribute
<XML: procedures>+≡
    function tag_get_attribute (tag, i) result (value)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(in) :: tag
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(string_t) :: value
        value = tag%attribute(i)%get_value ()
    end function tag_get_attribute

```

Output to an I/O unit, default STDOUT. We use non-advancing output.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    generic :: write => write_without_content
    procedure :: write_without_content => tag_write
<XML: procedures>+≡
    subroutine tag_write (tag, unit)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(in) :: tag
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "('<',A)", advance = "no") char (tag%name)
        do i = 1, size (tag%attribute)
            write (u, "(ix)", advance = "no")
            call tag%attribute(i)%write (u)
        end do
        if (tag%has_content) then
            write (u, "('>')", advance = "no")
        else
            write (u, "(' />')", advance = "no")
        end if
    end subroutine tag_write

```

If there is content, we should write the context next (arbitrary format), the write the corresponding closing tag. Again, non-advancing.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: close => tag_close

```

```

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine tag_close (tag, unit)
    class(xml_tag_t), intent(in) :: tag
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "('</',A,'>')", advance = "no") char (tag%name)
  end subroutine tag_close

```

Given content as a single string, we can write tag, content, and closing at once

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
  generic :: write => write_with_content
  procedure :: write_with_content => tag_write_with_content

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine tag_write_with_content (tag, content, unit)
    class(xml_tag_t), intent(in) :: tag
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: content
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call tag%write (u)
    write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") char (content)
    call tag%close (u)
  end subroutine tag_write_with_content

```

Input from stream. We know what we are looking for, so we check if the name matches, then fill attributes. We report an error if (a) an I/O error occurs, (b) we reach EOF before encountering the tag, (c) if the tag is incomplete.

Trailing text after reading a tag is put back to the input stream.

We assume that the tag is not broken across records, and that there is only one tag within the record. This is more restricted than standard XML.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read => tag_read

<XML: procedures>+≡
  subroutine tag_read (tag, cstream, success)
    class(xml_tag_t), intent(inout) :: tag
    type(cstream_t), intent(inout) :: cstream
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    type(string_t) :: string
    integer :: iostat, p1, p2
    character(2), parameter :: WS = BLANK // TAB
    logical :: done

    ! Skip comments and blank lines
    FIND_NON_COMMENT: do
      FIND_NONEMPTY_RECORD: do
        call cstream%get_record (string, iostat)
        if (iostat /= 0) call err_io ()
        p1 = verify (string, WS)
        if (p1 > 0) exit FIND_NONEMPTY_RECORD
      end do FIND_NONEMPTY_RECORD
    end do FIND_NON_COMMENT

```

```

! Look for comment beginning
p2 = p1 + 3
if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= "<!--") exit FIND_NON_COMMENT

! Look for comment end, then restart
string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
FIND_COMMENT_END: do
  do p1 = 1, len (string) - 2
    p2 = p1 + 2
    if (extract (string, p1, p2) == "-->") then

      ! Return trailing text to the stream
      string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
      if (string /= "") call cstream%revert_record (string)
      exit FIND_COMMENT_END

    end if
  end do
  call cstream%get_record (string, iostat)
  if (iostat /= 0) call err_io ()
end do FIND_COMMENT_END
end do FIND_NON_COMMENT

! Look for opening <
p2 = p1
if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= "<") then
  call cstream%revert_record (string)
  success = .false.; return
else

  ! Look for tag name
  string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
  p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err_incomplete ()
  p2 = p1 + len (tag%name) - 1
  if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= tag%name) then
    call cstream%revert_record ("<" // string)
    success = .false.; return
  else

    ! Look for attributes
    string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
    READ_ATTRIBUTES: do
      call tag%read_attribute (string, done)
      if (done) exit READ_ATTRIBUTES
    end do READ_ATTRIBUTES

    ! Look for closing >
    p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err_incomplete ()
    p2 = p1
    if (extract (string, p1, p1) == ">") then
      tag%has_content = .true.
    else

```



```

        ! Look for closing />
        p2 = p1 + 1
        if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= ">") call err_incomplete ()
    end if

    ! Return trailing text to the stream
    string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
    if (string /= "") call cstream%revert_record (string)
    success = .true.

end if
end if

contains

subroutine err_io ()
    select case (iostat)
    case (:-1)
        call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading tag '" // char (tag%name) &
            // "': end of file")
    case (1:)
        call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading tag '" // char (tag%name) &
            // "': I/O error")
    end select
    success = .false.
end subroutine err_io

subroutine err_incomplete ()
    call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading tag '" // char (tag%name) &
        // "': tag incomplete")
    success = .false.
end subroutine err_incomplete

end subroutine tag_read

```

Read a single attribute. If the attribute is valid, assign the value. Setting a value twice should be an error, but is not detected. If the attribute is unknown, ignore it. If we reach the closing sign, report this.

```

<XML: tag: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read_attribute => tag_read_attribute

<XML: procedures>+≡
    subroutine tag_read_attribute (tag, string, done)
        class(xml_tag_t), intent(inout) :: tag
        type(string_t), intent(inout) :: string
        logical, intent(out) :: done
        character(2), parameter :: WS = BLANK // TAB
        type(string_t) :: name, value
        integer :: p1, p2, i

        p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err ()
        p2 = p1

        ! Look for first terminating '>' or '>/'

```

```

if (extract (string, p1, p2) == ">") then
  done = .true.
else
  p2 = p1 + 1
  if (extract (string, p1, p2) == ">") then
    done = .true.
  else

    ! Look for '='
    p2 = scan (string, '=')
    if (p2 == 0) call err ()
    name = trim (extract (string, p1, p2 - 1))

    ! Look for '"'
    string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
    p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err ()
    p2 = p1
    if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= '"') call err ()

    ! Look for matching '"' and get value
    string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
    p1 = 1
    p2 = scan (string, '"')
    if (p2 == 0) call err ()
    value = extract (string, p1, p2 - 1)

    SCAN_KNOWN_ATTRIBUTES: do i = 1, size (tag%attribute)
      if (name == tag%attribute(i)%name) then
        call tag%attribute(i)%set_value (value)
        exit SCAN_KNOWN_ATTRIBUTES
      end if
    end do SCAN_KNOWN_ATTRIBUTES

    string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
    done = .false.
  end if
end if

contains

subroutine err ()
  call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading attributes of '" // char (tag%name) &
    // "': syntax error")
end subroutine err

end subroutine tag_read_attribute

```

Read the content string of a tag. We check for the appropriate closing tag and report it. If a closing tag does not match in name, ignore it.

Note: this assumes that no tag with the same name is embedded in the current content. Also, we do not check for XML validity inside the content.

*<XML: tag: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: read_content => tag_read_content
```

```

<XML: procedures>+≡
subroutine tag_read_content (tag, cstream, content, closing)
  class(xml_tag_t), intent(in) :: tag
  type(cstream_t), intent(inout) :: cstream
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: content
  type(string_t) :: string
  logical, intent(out) :: closing
  integer :: iostat
  integer :: p0, p1, p2
  character(2), parameter :: WS = BLANK // TAB
  call cstream%get_record (content, iostat)
  if (iostat /= 0) call err_io ()
  closing = .false.
  FIND_CLOSING: do p0 = 1, len (content) - 1

    ! Look for terminating </
    p1 = p0
    p2 = p1 + 1
    if (extract (content, p1, p2) == "</") then

      ! Look for closing tag name
      string = extract (content, p2 + 1)
      p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err_incomplete ()
      p2 = p1 + len (tag%name) - 1
      if (extract (string, p1, p2) == tag%name) then

        ! Tag name matches: look for final >
        string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
        p1 = verify (string, WS); if (p1 == 0) call err_incomplete ()
        p2 = p1
        if (extract (string, p1, p2) /= ">") call err_incomplete ()

        ! Return trailing text to the stream
        string = extract (string, p2 + 1)
        if (string /= "") call cstream%revert_record (string)
        content = extract (content, 1, p0 -1)
        closing = .true.
        exit FIND_CLOSING

      end if
    end if
  end do FIND_CLOSING

contains

subroutine err_io ()
  select case (iostat)
  case (-1)
    call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading content of '" // char (tag%name) &
      // "': end of file")
  case (1:)
    call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading content of '" // char (tag%name) &
      // "': I/O error")
  end select

```

```

        closing = .false.
    end subroutine err_io

    subroutine err_incomplete ()
        call msg_fatal ("XML: Error reading content '" // char (tag%name) &
            // "' : closing tag incomplete")
        closing = .false.
    end subroutine err_incomplete

end subroutine tag_read_content

```

### 3.5.4 Unit tests

```

<XML: public>+≡
    public :: xml_test

<XML: tests>≡
    subroutine xml_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <XML: execute tests>
end subroutine xml_test

```

### 3.5.5 Auxiliary Routines

Show the contents of a temporary file, i.e., open unit.

```

<XML: tests>+≡
    subroutine show (u_tmp, u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u_tmp, u
        character (80) :: buffer
        integer :: iostat
        write (u, "(A)") "File content:"
        rewind (u_tmp)
        do
            read (u_tmp, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
            if (iostat /= 0) exit
            write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
        end do
        rewind (u_tmp)
    end subroutine show

```

### 3.5.6 Basic Tag I/O

Write a tag and read it again, using a temporary file.

```

<XML: execute tests>≡
    call test (xml_1, "xml_1", &
        "basic I/O", &
        u, results)

```

```

<XML: tests>+≡
subroutine xml_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag
  integer :: u_tmp
  type(cstream_t) :: cstream
  logical :: success

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: xml_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: write and read tag"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Empty tag"
  write (u, *)

  u_tmp = free_unit ()
  open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

  allocate (tag)
  call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
  call tag%write (u_tmp)
  write (u_tmp, *)
  deallocate (tag)

  call show (u_tmp, u)

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "Result from read:"
  call cstream%init (u_tmp)
  allocate (tag)
  call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
  call tag%read (cstream, success)
  call tag%write (u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,L1)")  "success = ", success
  deallocate (tag)
  call cstream%final ()

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag with preceding blank lines"
  write (u, *)

  u_tmp = free_unit ()
  open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

  allocate (tag)
  call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
  write (u_tmp, *)
  write (u_tmp, "(A)")  "    "
  write (u_tmp, "(2x)", advance = "no")
  call tag%write (u_tmp)
  write (u_tmp, *)
  deallocate (tag)

```

```

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag with preceding comments"
write (u, *)

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
write (u_tmp, "(A)") "<!-- comment -->"
write (u_tmp, *)
write (u_tmp, "(A)") "<!-- multiline"
write (u_tmp, "(A)") "      comment -->"
call tag%write (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
deallocate (tag)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag with name mismatch"
write (u, *)

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("wrongname"))

```

```

call tag%write (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
deallocate (tag)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: xml_1"

end subroutine xml_1

```

### 3.5.7 Optional Tag

Write and read two tags, one of them optional.

```

<XML: execute tests>+≡
  call test (xml_2, "xml_2", &
    "optional tag", &
    u, results)

<XML: tests>+≡
  subroutine xml_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag1, tag2
    integer :: u_tmp
    type(cstream_t) :: cstream
    logical :: success

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: xml_2"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: handle optional tag"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)") "* Optional tag present"
    write (u, *)

    u_tmp = free_unit ()
    open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

    allocate (tag1)
    call tag1%init (var_str ("option"))
    call tag1%write (u_tmp)
    write (u_tmp, *)

```

```

allocate (tag2)
call tag2%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag2%write (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
deallocate (tag1, tag2)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag1)
call tag1%init (var_str ("option"))
call tag1%read (cstream, success)
call tag1%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, *)
allocate (tag2)
call tag2%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag2%read (cstream, success)
call tag2%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
deallocate (tag1, tag2)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "* Optional tag absent"
write (u, *)

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag2)
call tag2%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag2%write (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
deallocate (tag2)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag1)
call tag1%init (var_str ("option"))
call tag1%read (cstream, success)
call tag1%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, *)
allocate (tag2)
call tag2%init (var_str ("tagname"))

```



```

call tag2%read (cstream, success)
call tag2%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
deallocate (tag1, tag2)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: xml_2"

end subroutine xml_2

```

### 3.5.8 Optional Tag

Write and read a tag with single-line content.

```

<XML: execute tests>+≡
  call test (xml_3, "xml_3", &
    "content", &
    u, results)

<XML: tests>+≡
  subroutine xml_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag
    integer :: u_tmp
    type(cstream_t) :: cstream
    logical :: success, closing
    type(string_t) :: content

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: xml_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: handle tag with content"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag without content"
    write (u, *)

    u_tmp = free_unit ()
    open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

    allocate (tag)
    call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
    call tag%write (u_tmp)
    write (u_tmp, *)
    deallocate (tag)

    call show (u_tmp, u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Result from read:"
    call cstream%init (u_tmp)
    allocate (tag)
    call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
    call tag%read (cstream, success)

```

```

call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, "(A,L1)") "content = ", tag%has_content
write (u, *)
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag with content"
write (u, *)

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"), has_content = .true.)
call tag%write (var_str ("Content text"), u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
deallocate (tag)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%read_content (cstream, content, closing)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") char (content)
call tag%close (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, "(A,L1)") "content = ", tag%has_content
write (u, "(A,L1)") "closing = ", closing
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Tag with multiline content"
write (u, *)

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"), has_content = .true.)
call tag%write (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)
write (u_tmp, "(A)") "Line 1"
write (u_tmp, "(A)") "Line 2"
call tag%close (u_tmp)
write (u_tmp, *)

```

```

deallocate (tag)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"))
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
do
  call tag%read_content (cstream, content, closing)
  if (closing) exit
  write (u, "(A)") char (content)
end do
call tag%close (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, "(A,L1)") "content = ", tag%has_content
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: xml_3"

end subroutine xml_3

```

### 3.5.9 Basic Tag I/O

Write a tag and read it again, using a temporary file.

```

<XML: execute tests>+≡
  call test (xml_4, "xml_4", &
    "attributes", &
    u, results)

<XML: tests>+≡
  subroutine xml_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag
    integer :: u_tmp
    type(cstream_t) :: cstream
    logical :: success

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: xml_4"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: handle tag with attributes"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)") "* Tag with one mandatory and one optional attribute,"
    write (u, "(A)") "* unknown attribute ignored"
    write (u, *)

```

```

u_tmp = free_unit ()
open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"), &
               [xml_attribute (var_str ("a1"), var_str ("foo")), &
                xml_attribute (var_str ("a3"), var_str ("gee"))])
call tag%write (u_tmp)
deallocate (tag)

call show (u_tmp, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Result from read:"
call cstream%init (u_tmp)
allocate (tag)
call tag%init (var_str ("tagname"), &
               [xml_attribute (var_str ("a1")), &
                xml_attribute (var_str ("a2"), var_str ("bar"))])
call tag%read (cstream, success)
call tag%write (u)
write (u, *)
deallocate (tag)
call cstream%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: xml_4"

end subroutine xml_4

```

## Chapter 4

# Physics library

This part consists of two modules:

**constants** Physical and mathematical parameters that never change. The file has been moved to the **src/misc** subdirectory of the **WHIZARD** project.

**c\_particles** A simple data type for particles which is C compatible.

**lorentz** Define three-vectors, four-vectors and Lorentz transformations and common operations for them.

**sm\_physics** Here, running functions are stored for special kinematical setup like running coupling constants, Catani-Seymour dipoles, or Sudakov factors.

## 4.1 C-compatible Particle Type

For easy communication with C code, we introduce a simple C-compatible type for particles. It has the contents of the `prt_t` type defined in the `subevents` module below (except the source information).

The `c_prt` type is transparent, and its contents should be regarded as part of the interface.

```
<c_particles.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module c_particles

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: FMT_14, FMT_19 !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <C Particles: public>

    <C Particles: types>

    contains

    <C Particles: procedures>
    end module c_particles

  <C Particles: public>≡
    public :: c_prt_t

  <C Particles: types>≡
    type, bind(C) :: c_prt_t
      integer(c_int) :: type = 0
      integer(c_int) :: pdg = 0
      integer(c_int) :: polarized = 0
      integer(c_int) :: h = 0
      real(c_double) :: pe = 0
      real(c_double) :: px = 0
      real(c_double) :: py = 0
      real(c_double) :: pz = 0
      real(c_double) :: p2 = 0
    end type c_prt_t
```

This is for debugging only, there is no C binding. It is a simplified version of `prt_write`.

```
<C Particles: public>+≡
  public :: c_prt_write

  <C Particles: procedures>≡
    subroutine c_prt_write (prt, unit)
      type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      integer :: u, i
      u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
```

```

write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no")  prt("
write (u, "(I0,':')", advance="no")  prt%type
if (prt%polarized /= 0) then
    write (u, "(I0,'/',I0,'|')", advance="no")  prt%pdg, prt%h
else
    write (u, "(I0,'|')", advance="no")  prt%pdg
end if
write (u, "(" // FMT_14 // ",','," // FMT_14 // ",','," // &
    FMT_14 // ",','," // FMT_14 // ")", advance="no") &
    prt%pe, prt%px, prt%py, prt%pz
write (u, "( '|'," // FMT_19 // ")", advance="no")  prt%p2
write (u, "(A)"  " )"
end subroutine c_prt_write

```

## 4.2 Lorentz algebra

Define Lorentz vectors, three-vectors, boosts, and some functions to manipulate them.

To make maximum use of this, all functions, if possible, are declared elemental (or pure, if this is not possible).

```
<lorentz.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module lorentz  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use constants, only: pi, twopi, degree !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_15, FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use c_particles  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Lorentz: public>  
  
    <Lorentz: public operators>  
  
    <Lorentz: public functions>  
  
    <Lorentz: types>  
  
    <Lorentz: parameters>  
  
    <Lorentz: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Lorentz: procedures>  
  end module lorentz
```

### 4.2.1 Three-vectors

First of all, let us introduce three-vectors in a trivial way. The functions and overloaded elementary operations clearly are too much overhead, but we like to keep the interface for three-vectors and four-vectors exactly parallel. By the way, we might attach a label to a vector by extending the type definition later.

```
<Lorentz: public>≡  
  public :: vector3_t  
  
<Lorentz: types>≡  
  type :: vector3_t  
    private  
    real(default), dimension(3) :: p  
  end type vector3_t
```



Output a vector

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
    public :: vector3_write

(Lorentz: procedures)≡
    subroutine vector3_write (p, unit, testflag)
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        character(len=7) :: fmt
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_15, testflag)
        write(u, "(1x,A,3(1x," // fmt // "))" ) 'P = ', p%p
    end subroutine vector3_write

```

This is a three-vector with zero components

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
    public :: vector3_null

(Lorentz: parameters)≡
    type(vector3_t), parameter :: vector3_null = &
        vector3_t ([ 0._default, 0._default, 0._default ])

```

Canonical three-vector:

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
    public :: vector3_canonical

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector3_canonical (k) result (p)
        type(vector3_t) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        p = vector3_null
        p%p(k) = 1
    end function vector3_canonical

```

A moving particle ( $k$ -axis, or arbitrary axis). Note that the function for the generic momentum cannot be elemental.

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
    public :: vector3_moving

(Lorentz: interfaces)≡
    interface vector3_moving
        module procedure vector3_moving_canonical
        module procedure vector3_moving_generic
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector3_moving_canonical (p, k) result(q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        q = vector3_null
        q%p(k) = p

```

```

end function vector3_moving_canonical
pure function vector3_moving_generic (p) result(q)
  real(default), dimension(3), intent(in) :: p
  type(vector3_t) :: q
  q%p = p
end function vector3_moving_generic

```

Equality and inequality

```

<Lorentz: public operators>≡
  public :: operator(==), operator(/=)

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(==)
    module procedure vector3_eq
  end interface
  interface operator(/=)
    module procedure vector3_neq
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function vector3_eq (p, q) result (r)
    logical :: r
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r = all (p%p == q%p)
  end function vector3_eq
  elemental function vector3_neq (p, q) result (r)
    logical :: r
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r = any (p%p /= q%p)
  end function vector3_neq

```

Define addition and subtraction

```

<Lorentz: public operators>+≡
  public :: operator(+), operator(-)

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(+)
    module procedure add_vector3
  end interface
  interface operator(-)
    module procedure sub_vector3
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function add_vector3 (p, q) result (r)
    type(vector3_t) :: r
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r%p = p%p + q%p
  end function add_vector3
  elemental function sub_vector3 (p, q) result (r)
    type(vector3_t) :: r
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r%p = p%p - q%p
  end function sub_vector3

```

The multiplication sign is overloaded with scalar multiplication; similarly division:

```

(Lorentz: public operators)+≡
    public :: operator(*), operator(/)

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface operator(*)
        module procedure prod_integer_vector3, prod_vector3_integer
        module procedure prod_real_vector3, prod_vector3_real
    end interface
    interface operator(/)
        module procedure div_vector3_real, div_vector3_integer
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function prod_real_vector3 (s, p) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = s * p%p
    end function prod_real_vector3
    elemental function prod_vector3_real (p, s) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = s * p%p
    end function prod_vector3_real
    elemental function div_vector3_real (p, s) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = p%p/s
    end function div_vector3_real
    elemental function prod_integer_vector3 (s, p) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        integer, intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = s * p%p
    end function prod_integer_vector3
    elemental function prod_vector3_integer (p, s) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        integer, intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = s * p%p
    end function prod_vector3_integer
    elemental function div_vector3_integer (p, s) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        integer, intent(in) :: s
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = p%p/s
    end function div_vector3_integer

```

The multiplication sign can also indicate scalar products:

```

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡

```

```

interface operator(*)
  module procedure prod_vector3
end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prod_vector3 (p, q) result (s)
    real(default) :: s
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    s = dot_product (p%p, q%p)
  end function prod_vector3

<Lorentz: public functions>≡
  public :: cross_product

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface cross_product
    module procedure vector3_cross_product
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function vector3_cross_product (p, q) result (r)
    type(vector3_t) :: r
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    integer :: i
    do i=1,3
      r%p(i) = dot_product (p%p, matmul(epsilon_three(i,:,:), q%p))
    end do
  end function vector3_cross_product

```

Exponentiation is defined only for integer powers. Odd powers mean take the square root; so `p**1` is the length of `p`.

```

<Lorentz: public operators>+≡
  public :: operator(**)

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(**)
    module procedure power_vector3
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function power_vector3 (p, e) result (s)
    real(default) :: s
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    integer, intent(in) :: e
    s = dot_product (p%p, p%p)
    if (e/=2) then
      if (mod(e,2)==0) then
        s = s**(e/2)
      else
        s = sqrt(s)**e
      end if
    end if
  end function power_vector3

```

Finally, we need a negation.

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(-)
    module procedure negate_vector3
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function negate_vector3 (p) result (q)
    type(vector3_t) :: q
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, 3
      if (p%p(i) == -p%p(i)) then
        q%p(i) = 0
      else
        q%p(i) = -p%p(i)
      end if
    end do
  end function negate_vector3

```

The sum function can be useful:

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: sum

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface sum
    module procedure sum_vector3
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  pure function sum_vector3 (p) result (q)
    type(vector3_t) :: q
    type(vector3_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    integer :: i
    do i=1, 3
      q%p(i) = sum (p%p(i))
    end do
  end function sum_vector3

```

Any component:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: vector3_get_component

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function vector3_get_component (p, k) result (c)
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    real(default) :: c
    c = p%p(k)
  end function vector3_get_component

```

Extract all components. This is not elemental.

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: vector3_get_components

```

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  pure function vector3_get_components (p) result (a)
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), dimension(3) :: a
    a = p%p
  end function vector3_get_components

```

This function returns the direction of a three-vector, i.e., a normalized three-vector. If the vector is null, we return a null vector.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: direction

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface direction
    module procedure vector3_get_direction
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function vector3_get_direction (p) result (q)
    type(vector3_t) :: q
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default) :: pp
    pp = p**1
    if (pp /= 0) then
      q%p = p%p / pp
    else
      q%p = 0
    end if
  end function vector3_get_direction

```

## 4.2.2 Four-vectors

In four-vectors the zero-component needs special treatment, therefore we do not use the standard operations. Sure, we pay for the extra layer of abstraction by losing efficiency; so we have to assume that the time-critical applications do not involve four-vector operations.

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: vector4_t

<Lorentz: types>+≡
  type :: vector4_t
  private
    real(default), dimension(0:3) :: p = &
      [0._default, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default]
  end type vector4_t

```

Output a vector

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: vector4_write

```

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
subroutine vector4_write (p, unit, show_mass, testflag)
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: show_mass
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u
  character(len=7) :: fmt
  call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_15, testflag)
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write(u, "(1x,A,1x," // fmt // ")") 'E = ', p%p(0)
  write(u, "(1x,A,3(1x," // fmt // ")") 'P = ', p%p(1:)
  if (present (show_mass)) then
    if (show_mass) &
      write (u, "(1x,A,1x," // fmt // ")") 'M = ', p**1
  end if
end subroutine vector4_write

```

Binary I/O

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
public :: vector4_write_raw
public :: vector4_read_raw

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
subroutine vector4_write_raw (p, u)
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  write (u) p%p
end subroutine vector4_write_raw

subroutine vector4_read_raw (p, u, iostat)
  type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
  read (u, iostat=iostat) p%p
end subroutine vector4_read_raw

```

This is a four-vector with zero components

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
public :: vector4_null

<Lorentz: parameters>+≡
type(vector4_t), parameter :: vector4_null = &
  vector4_t ([ 0._default, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default ])

```

Canonical four-vector:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
public :: vector4_canonical

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
elemental function vector4_canonical (k) result (p)
  type(vector4_t) :: p
  integer, intent(in) :: k
  p = vector4_null

```

```

    p%p(k) = 1
end function vector4_canonical

```

A particle at rest:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
    public :: vector4_at_rest

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function vector4_at_rest (m) result (p)
        type(vector4_t) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: m
        p = vector4_t ([ m, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default ])
    end function vector4_at_rest

```

A moving particle ( $k$ -axis, or arbitrary axis)

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
    public :: vector4_moving

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface vector4_moving
        module procedure vector4_moving_canonical
        module procedure vector4_moving_generic
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function vector4_moving_canonical (E, p, k) result (q)
        type(vector4_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: E, p
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        q = vector4_at_rest(E)
        q%p(k) = p
    end function vector4_moving_canonical
    elemental function vector4_moving_generic (E, p) result (q)
        type(vector4_t) :: q
        real(default), intent(in) :: E
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p(0) = E
        q%p(1:) = p%p
    end function vector4_moving_generic

```

Equality and inequality

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(==)
        module procedure vector4_eq
    end interface
    interface operator(/=)
        module procedure vector4_neq
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function vector4_eq (p, q) result (r)
        logical :: r
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
        r = all (p%p == q%p)

```



```

end function vector4_eq
elemental function vector4_neq (p, q) result (r)
  logical :: r
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
  r = any (p%p /= q%p)
end function vector4_neq

```

Addition and subtraction:

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(+)
    module procedure add_vector4
  end interface
  interface operator(-)
    module procedure sub_vector4
  end interface
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function add_vector4 (p,q) result (r)
    type(vector4_t) :: r
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r%p = p%p + q%p
  end function add_vector4
  elemental function sub_vector4 (p,q) result (r)
    type(vector4_t) :: r
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    r%p = p%p - q%p
  end function sub_vector4

```

We also need scalar multiplication and division:

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(*)
    module procedure prod_real_vector4, prod_vector4_real
    module procedure prod_integer_vector4, prod_vector4_integer
  end interface
  interface operator(/)
    module procedure div_vector4_real
    module procedure div_vector4_integer
  end interface
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prod_real_vector4 (s, p) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q
    real(default), intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = s * p%p
  end function prod_real_vector4
  elemental function prod_vector4_real (p, s) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q
    real(default), intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = s * p%p
  end function prod_vector4_real
  elemental function div_vector4_real (p, s) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q

```

```

    real(default), intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = p%p/s
end function div_vector4_real
elemental function prod_integer_vector4 (s, p) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q
    integer, intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = s * p%p
end function prod_integer_vector4
elemental function prod_vector4_integer (p, s) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q
    integer, intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = s * p%p
end function prod_vector4_integer
elemental function div_vector4_integer (p, s) result (q)
    type(vector4_t) :: q
    integer, intent(in) :: s
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    q%p = p%p/s
end function div_vector4_integer

```

Scalar products and squares in the Minkowski sense:

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(*)
        module procedure prod_vector4
    end interface
    interface operator(**)
        module procedure power_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prod_vector4 (p, q) result (s)
        real(default) :: s
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
        s = p%p(0)*q%p(0) - dot_product(p%p(1:), q%p(1:))
    end function prod_vector4

```

The power operation for four-vectors is signed, i.e.,  $p^{**1}$  is positive for timelike and negative for spacelike vectors. Note that  $(p^{**1})^{**2}$  is not necessarily equal to  $p^{**2}$ .

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function power_vector4 (p, e) result (s)
        real(default) :: s
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: e
        s = p*p
        if (e/=2) then
            if (mod(e,2)==0) then
                s = s**(e/2)
            elseif (s>=0) then
                s = sqrt(s)**e
            end if
        end if
    end function power_vector4

```

```

        else
            s = -(sqrt(abs(s))*e)
        end if
    end if
end function power_vector4

```

Finally, we introduce a negation

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(-)
        module procedure negate_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function negate_vector4 (p) result (q)
        type(vector4_t) :: q
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer :: i
        do i = 0, 3
            if (p%p(i) == -p%p(i)) then
                q%p(i) = 0
            else
                q%p(i) = -p%p(i)
            end if
        end do
    end function negate_vector4

```

The sum function can be useful:

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface sum
        module procedure sum_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    pure function sum_vector4 (p) result (q)
        type(vector4_t) :: q
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
        integer :: i
        do i=0, 3
            q%p(i) = sum (p%p(i))
        end do
    end function sum_vector4

```

### 4.2.3 Conversions

Manually set a component of the four-vector:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
    public :: vector4_set_component

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    subroutine vector4_set_component (p, k, c)
        type(vector4_t), intent(inout) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        real(default), intent(in) :: c
    end subroutine

```

```

    p%p(k) = c
end subroutine vector4_set_component

```

Any component:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
    public :: vector4_get_component

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function vector4_get_component (p, k) result (c)
        real(default) :: c
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        c = p%p(k)
    end function vector4_get_component

```

Extract all components. This is not elemental.

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
    public :: vector4_get_components

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    pure function vector4_get_components (p) result (a)
        real(default), dimension(0:3) :: a
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        a = p%p
    end function vector4_get_components

```

This function returns the space part of a four-vector, such that we can apply three-vector operations on it:

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: space_part

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface space_part
        module procedure vector4_get_space_part
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function vector4_get_space_part (p) result (q)
        type(vector3_t) :: q
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        q%p = p%p(1:)
    end function vector4_get_space_part

```

This function returns the direction of a four-vector, i.e., a normalized three-vector. If the four-vector has zero space part, we return a null vector.

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface direction
        module procedure vector4_get_direction
    end interface

```

```

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  elemental function vector4_get_direction (p) result (q)
    type(vector3_t) :: q
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default) :: qq
    q%p = p%p(1:)
    qq = q**1
    if (qq /= 0) then
      q%p = q%p / qq
    else
      q%p = 0
    end if
  end function vector4_get_direction

```

This function returns the four-vector as an ordinary array. A second version for an array of four-vectors.

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
  public :: array_from_vector4

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
  interface array_from_vector4
    module procedure array_from_vector4_1
    module procedure array_from_vector4_2
  end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  pure function array_from_vector4_1 (p) result (a)
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), dimension(0:3) :: a
    a = p%p
  end function array_from_vector4_1

  pure function array_from_vector4_2 (p) result (a)
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), dimension(0:3, size(p)) :: a
    integer :: i
    forall (i=1:size(p))
      a(0:3,i) = p(i)%p
    end forall
  end function array_from_vector4_2

```

Transform the momentum of a `c_prt` object into a four-vector:

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
  public :: vector4_from_c_prt

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  elemental function vector4_from_c_prt (c_prt) result (p)
    type(vector4_t) :: p
    type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: c_prt
    p%p(0) = c_prt%pe
    p%p(1) = c_prt%px
    p%p(2) = c_prt%py
    p%p(3) = c_prt%pz
  end function vector4_from_c_prt

```

Initialize a `c_prt_t` object with the components of a four-vector as its kinematical entries. Compute the invariant mass, or use the optional mass-squared value instead.

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
    public :: vector4_to_c_prt

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector4_to_c_prt (p, p2) result (c_prt)
        type(c_prt_t) :: c_prt
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: p2
        c_prt%pe = p%p(0)
        c_prt%px = p%p(1)
        c_prt%py = p%p(2)
        c_prt%pz = p%p(3)
        if (present (p2)) then
            c_prt%p2 = p2
        else
            c_prt%p2 = p ** 2
        end if
    end function vector4_to_c_prt

```

#### 4.2.4 Angles

Return the angles in a canonical system. The angle  $\phi$  is defined between  $0 \leq \phi < 2\pi$ . In degenerate cases, return zero.

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: azimuthal_angle

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface azimuthal_angle
        module procedure vector3_azimuthal_angle
        module procedure vector4_azimuthal_angle
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector3_azimuthal_angle (p) result (phi)
        real(default) :: phi
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        if (any(p%p(1:2)/=0)) then
            phi = atan2(p%p(2), p%p(1))
            if (phi < 0) phi = phi + twopi
        else
            phi = 0
        end if
    end function vector3_azimuthal_angle
    elemental function vector4_azimuthal_angle (p) result (phi)
        real(default) :: phi
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        phi = vector3_azimuthal_angle (space_part (p))
    end function vector4_azimuthal_angle

```

Azimuthal angle in degrees

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: azimuthal_angle_deg

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface azimuthal_angle_deg
        module procedure vector3_azimuthal_angle_deg
        module procedure vector4_azimuthal_angle_deg
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector3_azimuthal_angle_deg (p) result (phi)
        real(default) :: phi
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        phi = vector3_azimuthal_angle (p) / degree
    end function vector3_azimuthal_angle_deg
    elemental function vector4_azimuthal_angle_deg (p) result (phi)
        real(default) :: phi
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        phi = vector4_azimuthal_angle (p) / degree
    end function vector4_azimuthal_angle_deg

```

The azimuthal distance of two vectors. This is the difference of the azimuthal angles, but cannot be larger than  $\pi$ : The result is between  $-\pi < \Delta\phi \leq \pi$ .

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: azimuthal_distance

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface azimuthal_distance
        module procedure vector3_azimuthal_distance
        module procedure vector4_azimuthal_distance
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function vector3_azimuthal_distance (p, q) result (dphi)
        real(default) :: dphi
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
        dphi = vector3_azimuthal_angle (q) - vector3_azimuthal_angle (p)
        if (dphi <= -pi) then
            dphi = dphi + twopi
        else if (dphi > pi) then
            dphi = dphi - twopi
        end if
    end function vector3_azimuthal_distance
    elemental function vector4_azimuthal_distance (p, q) result (dphi)
        real(default) :: dphi
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
        dphi = vector3_azimuthal_distance &
            (space_part (p), space_part (q))
    end function vector4_azimuthal_distance

```

The same in degrees:

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: azimuthal_distance_deg

```

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface azimuthal_distance_deg
    module procedure vector3_azimuthal_distance_deg
    module procedure vector4_azimuthal_distance_deg
  end interface
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function vector3_azimuthal_distance_deg (p, q) result (dphi)
    real(default) :: dphi
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    dphi = vector3_azimuthal_distance (p, q) / degree
  end function vector3_azimuthal_distance_deg
  elemental function vector4_azimuthal_distance_deg (p, q) result (dphi)
    real(default) :: dphi
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p,q
    dphi = vector4_azimuthal_distance (p, q) / degree
  end function vector4_azimuthal_distance_deg

```

The polar angle is defined  $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$ . Note that ATAN2 has the reversed order of arguments: ATAN2(Y,X). Here,  $x$  is the 3-component while  $y$  is the transverse momentum which is always nonnegative. Therefore, the result is nonnegative as well.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: polar_angle
<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface polar_angle
    module procedure polar_angle_vector3
    module procedure polar_angle_vector4
  end interface
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function polar_angle_vector3 (p) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    if (any(p%p/=0)) then
      theta = atan2 (sqrt(p%p(1)**2 + p%p(2)**2), p%p(3))
    else
      theta = 0
    end if
  end function polar_angle_vector3
  elemental function polar_angle_vector4 (p) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    theta = polar_angle (space_part (p))
  end function polar_angle_vector4

```

This is the cosine of the polar angle:  $-1 \leq \cos \theta \leq 1$ .

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: polar_angle_ct
<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface polar_angle_ct
    module procedure polar_angle_ct_vector3
    module procedure polar_angle_ct_vector4
  end interface

```



```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function polar_angle_ct_vector3 (p) result (ct)
    real(default) :: ct
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    if (any(p%p/=0)) then
      ct = p%p(3) / p**1
    else
      ct = 1
    end if
  end function polar_angle_ct_vector3
  elemental function polar_angle_ct_vector4 (p) result (ct)
    real(default) :: ct
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    ct = polar_angle_ct (space_part (p))
  end function polar_angle_ct_vector4

```

The polar angle in degrees.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: polar_angle_deg

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface polar_angle_deg
    module procedure polar_angle_deg_vector3
    module procedure polar_angle_deg_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function polar_angle_deg_vector3 (p) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    theta = polar_angle (p) / degree
  end function polar_angle_deg_vector3
  elemental function polar_angle_deg_vector4 (p) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    theta = polar_angle (p) / degree
  end function polar_angle_deg_vector4

```

This is the angle enclosed between two three-momenta. If one of the momenta is zero, we return an angle of zero. The range of the result is  $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$ . If there is only one argument, take the positive  $z$  axis as reference.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: enclosed_angle

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface enclosed_angle
    module procedure enclosed_angle_vector3
    module procedure enclosed_angle_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function enclosed_angle_vector3 (p, q) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    theta = acos (enclosed_angle_ct (p, q))

```

```

end function enclosed_angle_vector3
elemental function enclosed_angle_vector4 (p, q) result (theta)
  real(default) :: theta
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
  theta = enclosed_angle (space_part (p), space_part (q))
end function enclosed_angle_vector4

```

The cosine of the enclosed angle.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: enclosed_angle_ct

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface enclosed_angle_ct
    module procedure enclosed_angle_ct_vector3
    module procedure enclosed_angle_ct_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function enclosed_angle_ct_vector3 (p, q) result (ct)
    real(default) :: ct
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    if (any(p%p/=0).and.any(q%p/=0)) then
      ct = p*q / (p**1 * q**1)
      if (ct>1) then
        ct = 1
      else if (ct<-1) then
        ct = -1
      end if
    else
      ct = 1
    end if
  end function enclosed_angle_ct_vector3
  elemental function enclosed_angle_ct_vector4 (p, q) result (ct)
    real(default) :: ct
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    ct = enclosed_angle_ct (space_part (p), space_part (q))
  end function enclosed_angle_ct_vector4

```

The enclosed angle in degrees.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: enclosed_angle_deg

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface enclosed_angle_deg
    module procedure enclosed_angle_deg_vector3
    module procedure enclosed_angle_deg_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function enclosed_angle_deg_vector3 (p, q) result (theta)
    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    theta = enclosed_angle (p, q) / degree
  end function enclosed_angle_deg_vector3
  elemental function enclosed_angle_deg_vector4 (p, q) result (theta)

```

```

    real(default) :: theta
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    theta = enclosed_angle (p, q) / degree
end function enclosed_angle_deg_vector4

```

The polar angle of the first momentum w.r.t. the second momentum, evaluated in the rest frame of the second momentum. If the second four-momentum is not timelike, return zero.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: enclosed_angle_rest_frame
    public :: enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame
    public :: enclosed_angle_deg_rest_frame

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface enclosed_angle_rest_frame
        module procedure enclosed_angle_rest_frame_vector4
    end interface
    interface enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame
        module procedure enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame_vector4
    end interface
    interface enclosed_angle_deg_rest_frame
        module procedure enclosed_angle_deg_rest_frame_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function enclosed_angle_rest_frame_vector4 (p, q) result (theta)
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        real(default) :: theta
        theta = acos (enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame (p, q))
    end function enclosed_angle_rest_frame_vector4
    elemental function enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame_vector4 (p, q) result (ct)
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        real(default) :: ct
        if (invariant_mass(q) > 0) then
            ct = enclosed_angle_ct ( &
                space_part (boost(-q, invariant_mass (q)) * p), &
                space_part (q))
        else
            ct = 1
        end if
    end function enclosed_angle_ct_rest_frame_vector4
    elemental function enclosed_angle_deg_rest_frame_vector4 (p, q) &
        result (theta)
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        real(default) :: theta
        theta = enclosed_angle_rest_frame (p, q) / degree
    end function enclosed_angle_deg_rest_frame_vector4

```

#### 4.2.5 More kinematical functions (some redundant)

The scalar transverse momentum (assuming the  $z$  axis is longitudinal)

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: transverse_part

```

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface transverse_part
    module procedure transverse_part_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function transverse_part_vector4 (p) result (pT)
    real(default) :: pT
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    pT = sqrt(p%p(1)**2 + p%p(2)**2)
  end function transverse_part_vector4

```

The scalar longitudinal momentum (assuming the  $z$  axis is longitudinal). Identical to momentum\_z\_component.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: longitudinal_part

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface longitudinal_part
    module procedure longitudinal_part_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function longitudinal_part_vector4 (p) result (pL)
    real(default) :: pL
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    pL = p%p(3)
  end function longitudinal_part_vector4

```

Absolute value of three-momentum

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: space_part_norm

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface space_part_norm
    module procedure space_part_norm_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function space_part_norm_vector4 (p) result (p3)
    real(default) :: p3
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    p3 = sqrt (p%p(1)**2 + p%p(2)**2 + p%p(3)**2)
  end function space_part_norm_vector4

```

The energy (the zeroth component)

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: energy

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface energy
    module procedure energy_vector4
    module procedure energy_vector3
    module procedure energy_real
  end interface

```

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function energy_vector4 (p) result (E)
    real(default) :: E
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    E = p%p(0)
  end function energy_vector4

```

Alternative: The energy corresponding to a given momentum and mass. If the mass is omitted, it is zero

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function energy_vector3 (p, mass) result (E)
    real(default) :: E
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: mass
    if (present (mass)) then
      E = sqrt (p**2 + mass**2)
    else
      E = p**1
    end if
  end function energy_vector3

  elemental function energy_real (p, mass) result (E)
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: mass
    if (present (mass)) then
      E = sqrt (p**2 + mass**2)
    else
      E = abs (p)
    end if
  end function energy_real

```

The invariant mass of four-momenta. Zero for lightlike, negative for spacelike momenta.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: invariant_mass

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface invariant_mass
    module procedure invariant_mass_vector4
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function invariant_mass_vector4 (p) result (m)
    real(default) :: m
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default) :: msq
    msq = p*p
    if (msq >= 0) then
      m = sqrt (msq)
    else
      m = - sqrt (abs (msq))
    end if
  end function invariant_mass_vector4

```

The invariant mass squared. Zero for lightlike, negative for spacelike momenta.

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: invariant_mass_squared

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface invariant_mass_squared
        module procedure invariant_mass_squared_vector4
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function invariant_mass_squared_vector4 (p) result (msq)
        real(default) :: msq
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        msq = p*p
    end function invariant_mass_squared_vector4

```

The transverse mass. If the mass squared is negative, this value also is negative.

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: transverse_mass

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface transverse_mass
        module procedure transverse_mass_vector4
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function transverse_mass_vector4 (p) result (m)
        real(default) :: m
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default) :: msq
        msq = p%p(0)**2 - p%p(1)**2 - p%p(2)**2
        if (msq >= 0) then
            m = sqrt (msq)
        else
            m = - sqrt (abs (msq))
        end if
    end function transverse_mass_vector4

```

The rapidity (defined if particle is massive or  $p_{\perp} > 0$ )

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
    public :: rapidity

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
    interface rapidity
        module procedure rapidity_vector4
    end interface

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental function rapidity_vector4 (p) result (y)
        real(default) :: y
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        y = .5 * log( (energy (p) + longitudinal_part (p)) &
            &          /(energy (p) - longitudinal_part (p)))
    end function rapidity_vector4

```

The pseudorapidity (defined if  $p_{\perp} > 0$ )

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: pseudorapidity

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface pseudorapidity
        module procedure pseudorapidity_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function pseudorapidity_vector4 (p) result (eta)
        real(default) :: eta
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        eta = -log( tan (.5 * polar_angle (p)))
    end function pseudorapidity_vector4

```

The rapidity distance (defined if both  $p_{\perp} > 0$ )

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: rapidity_distance

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface rapidity_distance
        module procedure rapidity_distance_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function rapidity_distance_vector4 (p, q) result (dy)
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        real(default) :: dy
        dy = rapidity (q) - rapidity (p)
    end function rapidity_distance_vector4

```

The pseudorapidity distance (defined if both  $p_{\perp} > 0$ )

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: pseudorapidity_distance

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface pseudorapidity_distance
        module procedure pseudorapidity_distance_vector4
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function pseudorapidity_distance_vector4 (p, q) result (deta)
        real(default) :: deta
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        deta = pseudorapidity (q) - pseudorapidity (p)
    end function pseudorapidity_distance_vector4

```

The distance on the  $\eta - \phi$  cylinder:

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: eta_phi_distance

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface eta_phi_distance
        module procedure eta_phi_distance_vector4
    end interface

```

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function eta_phi_distance_vector4 (p, q) result (dr)
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p, q
    real(default) :: dr
    dr = sqrt ( &
      pseudorapidity_distance (p, q)**2 &
      + azimuthal_distance (p, q)**2)
  end function eta_phi_distance_vector4

```

#### 4.2.6 Lorentz transformations

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: lorentz_transformation_t

<Lorentz: types>+≡
  type :: lorentz_transformation_t
    private
    real(default), dimension(0:3, 0:3) :: L
    contains
    <Lorentz: lorentz_transformation: TBP>
  end type lorentz_transformation_t

```

Output:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: lorentz_transformation_write

<Lorentz: lorentz_transformation: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => lorentz_transformation_write

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lorentz_transformation_write (L, unit)
    class(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    integer :: i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A,3(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "L00 = ", L%L(0,0)
    write (u, "(1x,A,3(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "L0j = ", L%L(0,1:3)
    do i = 1, 3
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,3(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") &
        "L", i, "0 = ", L%L(i,0)
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,3(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") &
        "L", i, "j = ", L%L(i,1:3)
    end do
  end subroutine lorentz_transformation_write

```

Extract all components:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: lorentz_transformation_get_components

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  pure function lorentz_transformation_get_components (L) result (a)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L

```



```

real(default), dimension(0:3,0:3) :: a
a = L%L
end function lorentz_transformation_get_components

```

#### 4.2.7 Functions of Lorentz transformations

For the inverse, we make use of the fact that  $\Lambda^{\mu\nu}\Lambda_{\mu\rho} = \delta_{\rho}^{\nu}$ . So, lowering the indices and transposing is sufficient.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: inverse

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface inverse
    module procedure lorentz_transformation_inverse
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function lorentz_transformation_inverse (L) result (IL)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: IL
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    IL%L(0,0) = L%L(0,0)
    IL%L(0,1:) = -L%L(1:,0)
    IL%L(1:,0) = -L%L(0,1:)
    IL%L(1:,1:) = transpose(L%L(1:,1:))
  end function lorentz_transformation_inverse

```

#### 4.2.8 Invariants

These are used below. The first array index is varying fastest in FORTRAN; therefore the extra minus in the odd-rank tensor epsilon.

```

<Lorentz: parameters>+≡
  integer, dimension(3,3), parameter :: delta_three = &
    & reshape( source = (/ 1,0,0, 0,1,0, 0,0,1 /), &
    & shape = (/3,3/) )
  integer, dimension(3,3,3), parameter :: epsilon_three = &
    & reshape( source = (/ 0, 0,0, 0,0,-1, 0,1,0,&
    & 0, 0,1, 0,0, 0, -1,0,0,&
    & 0,-1,0, 1,0, 0, 0,0,0 /),&
    & shape = (/3,3,3/) )

```

This could be of some use:

```

<Lorentz: public>+≡
  public :: identity

<Lorentz: parameters>+≡
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), parameter :: &
    & identity = &
    & lorentz_transformation_t ( &
    & reshape( source = (/ 1._default, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default, &
    & 0._default, 1._default, 0._default, 0._default, &
    & 0._default, 0._default, 1._default, 0._default, &
    & 0._default, 0._default, 0._default, 1._default /),&
    & shape = (/ 4,4 /) ) )

```

```

(Lorentz: public)+≡
  public :: space_reflection

(Lorentz: parameters)+≡
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), parameter :: &
    & space_reflection = &
    & lorentz_transformation_t ( &
    & reshape( source = (/ 1._default, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default, &
    &                                0._default,-1._default, 0._default, 0._default, &
    &                                0._default, 0._default,-1._default, 0._default, &
    &                                0._default, 0._default, 0._default,-1._default /), &
    &                                shape = (/ 4,4 /) ) )

```

### 4.2.9 Boosts

We build Lorentz transformations from boosts and rotations. In both cases we can supply a three-vector which defines the axis and (hyperbolic) angle. For a boost, this is the vector  $\vec{\beta} = \vec{p}/E$ , such that a particle at rest with mass  $m$  is boosted to a particle with three-vector  $\vec{p}$ . Here, we have

$$\beta = \tanh \chi = p/E, \quad \gamma = \cosh \chi = E/m, \quad \beta\gamma = \sinh \chi = p/m \quad (4.1)$$

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
  public :: boost

(Lorentz: interfaces)+≡
  interface boost
    module procedure boost_from_rest_frame
    module procedure boost_from_rest_frame_vector3
    module procedure boost_generic
    module procedure boost_canonical
  end interface

```

In the first form, the argument is some four-momentum, the space part of which determines a direction, and the associated mass (which is not checked against the four-momentum). The boost vector  $\gamma\vec{\beta}$  is then given by  $\vec{p}/m$ . This boosts from the rest frame of a particle to the current frame. To be explicit, if  $\vec{p}$  is the momentum of a particle and  $m$  its mass,  $L(\vec{p}/m)$  is the transformation that turns  $(m; \vec{0})$  into  $(E; \vec{p})$ . Conversely, the inverse transformation boosts a vector *into* the rest frame of a particle, in particular  $(E; \vec{p})$  into  $(m; \vec{0})$ .

```

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  elemental function boost_from_rest_frame (p, m) result (L)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: m
    L = boost_from_rest_frame_vector3 (space_part (p), m)
  end function boost_from_rest_frame
  elemental function boost_from_rest_frame_vector3 (p, m) result (L)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
    type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: m
    type(vector3_t) :: beta_gamma
    real(default) :: bg2, g, c
    integer :: i,j

```

```

if (m /= 0) then
  beta_gamma = p / m
  bg2 = beta_gamma**2
else
  bg2 = 0
end if
if (bg2 /= 0) then
  g = sqrt(1 + bg2); c = (g-1)/bg2
  L%L(0,0) = g
  L%L(0,1:) = beta_gamma%p
  L%L(1:,0) = L%L(0,1:)
  do i=1,3
    do j=1,3
      L%L(i,j) = delta_three(i,j) + c*beta_gamma%p(i)*beta_gamma%p(j)
    end do
  end do
else
  L = identity
end if
end function boost_from_rest_frame_vector3

```

A canonical boost is a boost along one of the coordinate axes, which we may supply as an integer argument. Here,  $\gamma\beta$  is scalar.

*(Lorentz: procedures)* +=

```

elemental function boost_canonical (beta_gamma, k) result (L)
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
  real(default), intent(in) :: beta_gamma
  integer, intent(in) :: k
  real(default) :: g
  g = sqrt(1 + beta_gamma**2)
  L = identity
  L%L(0,0) = g
  L%L(0,k) = beta_gamma
  L%L(k,0) = L%L(0,k)
  L%L(k,k) = L%L(0,0)
end function boost_canonical

```

Instead of a canonical axis, we can supply an arbitrary axis which need not be normalized. If it is zero, return the unit matrix.

*(Lorentz: procedures)* +=

```

elemental function boost_generic (beta_gamma, axis) result (L)
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
  real(default), intent(in) :: beta_gamma
  type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: axis
  if (any(axis%p/=0)) then
    L = boost_from_rest_frame_vector3 (beta_gamma * axis, axis**1)
  else
    L = identity
  end if
end function boost_generic

```

### 4.2.10 Rotations

For a rotation, the vector defines the rotation axis, and its length the rotation angle.

```
<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: rotation
```

```
<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface rotation
        module procedure rotation_generic
        module procedure rotation_canonical
        module procedure rotation_generic_cs
        module procedure rotation_canonical_cs
    end interface
```

If  $\cos \phi$  and  $\sin \phi$  is already known, we do not have to calculate them. Of course, the user has to ensure that  $\cos^2 \phi + \sin^2 \phi = 1$ , and that the given axis **n** is normalized to one. In the second form, the length of **axis** is the rotation angle.

```
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function rotation_generic_cs (cp, sp, axis) result (R)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
        real(default), intent(in) :: cp, sp
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: axis
        integer :: i,j
        R = identity
        do i=1,3
            do j=1,3
                R%L(i,j) = cp*delta_three(i,j) + (1-cp)*axis%p(i)*axis%p(j) &
                    & - sp*dot_product(epsilon_three(i,j,:), axis%p)
            end do
        end do
    end function rotation_generic_cs
    elemental function rotation_generic (axis) result (R)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: axis
        real(default) :: phi
        if (any(axis%p/=0)) then
            phi = abs(axis**1)
            R = rotation_generic_cs (cos(phi), sin(phi), axis/phi)
        else
            R = identity
        end if
    end function rotation_generic
```

Alternatively, give just the angle and label the coordinate axis by an integer.

```
<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function rotation_canonical_cs (cp, sp, k) result (R)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
        real(default), intent(in) :: cp, sp
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        integer :: i,j
        R = identity
        do i=1,3
            do j=1,3
```

```

        R%L(i,j) = -sp*epsilon_three(i,j,k)
    end do
    R%L(i,i) = cp
end do
R%L(k,k) = 1
end function rotation_canonical_cs
elemental function rotation_canonical (phi, k) result (R)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
    real(default), intent(in) :: phi
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    R = rotation_canonical_cs(cos(phi), sin(phi), k)
end function rotation_canonical

```

This is viewed as a method for the first argument (three-vector): Reconstruct the rotation that rotates it into the second three-vector.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
    public :: rotation_to_2nd

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
    interface rotation_to_2nd
        module procedure rotation_to_2nd_generic
        module procedure rotation_to_2nd_canonical
    end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function rotation_to_2nd_generic (p, q) result (R)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p, q
        type(vector3_t) :: a, b, ab
        real(default) :: ct, st
        if (any (p%p /= 0) .and. any (q%p /= 0)) then
            a = direction (p)
            b = direction (q)
            ab = cross_product(a,b)
            ct = a*b; st = ab**1
            if (st /= 0) then
                R = rotation_generic_cs (ct, st, ab/st)
            else if (ct < 0) then
                R = space_reflection
            else
                R = identity
            end if
        else
            R = identity
        end if
    end function rotation_to_2nd_generic

```

The same for a canonical axis: The function returns the transformation that rotates the  $k$ -axis into the direction of  $p$ .

```

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
    elemental function rotation_to_2nd_canonical (k, p) result (R)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: R
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
        type(vector3_t) :: b, ab
        real(default) :: ct, st

```

```

integer :: i, j
if (any (p%p /= 0)) then
  b = direction (p)
  ab%p = 0
  do i = 1, 3
    do j = 1, 3
      ab%p(j) = ab%p(j) + b%p(i) * epsilon_three(i,j,k)
    end do
  end do
  ct = b%p(k); st = ab**1
  if (st /= 0) then
    R = rotation_generic_cs (ct, st, ab/st)
  else if (ct < 0) then
    R = space_reflection
  else
    R = identity
  end if
else
  R = identity
end if
end function rotation_to_2nd_canonical

```

#### 4.2.11 Composite Lorentz transformations

This function returns the transformation that, given a pair of vectors  $p_{1,2}$ , (a) boosts from the rest frame of the c.m. system (with invariant mass  $m$ ) into the lab frame where  $p_i$  are defined, and (b) turns the given axis (or the canonical vectors  $\pm e_k$ ) in the rest frame into the directions of  $p_{1,2}$  in the lab frame. Note that the energy components are not used; for a consistent result one should have  $(p_1 + p_2)^2 = m^2$ .

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
public :: transformation

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
interface transformation
  module procedure transformation_rec_generic
  module procedure transformation_rec_canonical
end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
elemental function transformation_rec_generic (axis, p1, p2, m) result (L)
  type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: axis
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p1, p2
  real(default), intent(in) :: m
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
  L = boost (p1 + p2, m)
  L = L * rotation_to_2nd (axis, space_part (inverse (L) * p1))
end function transformation_rec_generic
elemental function transformation_rec_canonical (k, p1, p2, m) result (L)
  integer, intent(in) :: k
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p1, p2
  real(default), intent(in) :: m
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L

```

```

    L = boost (p1 + p2, m)
    L = L * rotation_to_2nd (k, space_part (inverse (L) * p1))
end function transformation_rec_canonical

```

#### 4.2.12 Applying Lorentz transformations

Multiplying vectors and Lorentz transformations is straightforward.

```

<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(*)
    module procedure prod_LT_vector4
    module procedure prod_LT_LT
    module procedure prod_vector4_LT
  end interface

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prod_LT_vector4 (L, p) result (np)
    type(vector4_t) :: np
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    np%p = matmul (L%L, p%p)
  end function prod_LT_vector4
  elemental function prod_LT_LT (L1, L2) result (NL)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: NL
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L1,L2
    NL%L = matmul (L1%L, L2%L)
  end function prod_LT_LT
  elemental function prod_vector4_LT (p, L) result (np)
    type(vector4_t) :: np
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    np%p = matmul (p%p, L%L)
  end function prod_vector4_LT

```

#### 4.2.13 Special Lorentz transformations

These routines have their application in the generation and extraction of angles in the phase-space sampling routine. Since this part of the program is time-critical, we calculate the composition of transformations directly instead of multiplying rotations and boosts.

This Lorentz transformation is the composition of a rotation by  $\phi$  around the 3 axis, a rotation by  $\theta$  around the 2 axis, and a boost along the 3 axis:

$$L = B_3(\beta\gamma) R_2(\theta) R_3(\phi) \quad (4.2)$$

Instead of the angles we provide sine and cosine.

```

<Lorentz: public functions>+≡
  public :: LT_compose_r3_r2_b3

<Lorentz: procedures>+≡
  elemental function LT_compose_r3_r2_b3 &
    (cp, sp, ct, st, beta_gamma) result (L)
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L

```

```

real(default), intent(in) :: cp, sp, ct, st, beta_gamma
real(default) :: gamma
if (beta_gamma==0) then
  L%L(0,0) = 1
  L%L(1:,0) = 0
  L%L(0,1:) = 0
  L%L(1,1:) = (/ ct*cp, -ct*sp, st /)
  L%L(2,1:) = (/ sp, cp, 0._default /)
  L%L(3,1:) = (/ -st*cp, st*sp, ct /)
else
  gamma = sqrt(1 + beta_gamma**2)
  L%L(0,0) = gamma
  L%L(1,0) = 0
  L%L(2,0) = 0
  L%L(3,0) = beta_gamma
  L%L(0,1:) = beta_gamma * (/ -st*cp, st*sp, ct /)
  L%L(1,1:) = (/ ct*cp, -ct*sp, st /)
  L%L(2,1:) = (/ sp, cp, 0._default /)
  L%L(3,1:) = gamma * (/ -st*cp, st*sp, ct /)
end if
end function LT_compose_r3_r2_b3

```

Different ordering:

$$L = B_3(\beta\gamma) R_3(\phi) R_2(\theta) \quad (4.3)$$

*(Lorentz: public functions)*+≡

```
public :: LT_compose_r2_r3_b3
```

*(Lorentz: procedures)*+≡

```

elemental function LT_compose_r2_r3_b3 &
  (ct, st, cp, sp, beta_gamma) result (L)
type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L
real(default), intent(in) :: ct, st, cp, sp, beta_gamma
real(default) :: gamma
if (beta_gamma==0) then
  L%L(0,0) = 1
  L%L(1:,0) = 0
  L%L(0,1:) = 0
  L%L(1,1:) = (/ ct*cp, -sp, st*cp /)
  L%L(2,1:) = (/ ct*sp, cp, st*sp /)
  L%L(3,1:) = (/ -st, 0._default, ct /)
else
  gamma = sqrt(1 + beta_gamma**2)
  L%L(0,0) = gamma
  L%L(1,0) = 0
  L%L(2,0) = 0
  L%L(3,0) = beta_gamma
  L%L(0,1:) = beta_gamma * (/ -st, 0._default, ct /)
  L%L(1,1:) = (/ ct*cp, -sp, st*cp /)
  L%L(2,1:) = (/ ct*sp, cp, st*sp /)
  L%L(3,1:) = gamma * (/ -st, 0._default, ct /)
end if
end function LT_compose_r2_r3_b3

```



This function returns the previous Lorentz transformation applied to an arbitrary four-momentum and extracts the space part of the result:

$$\vec{n} = [B_3(\beta\gamma) R_2(\theta) R_3(\phi) p]_{\text{space part}} \quad (4.4)$$

The second variant applies if there is no rotation

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
  public :: axis_from_p_r3_r2_b3, axis_from_p_b3

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  elemental function axis_from_p_r3_r2_b3 &
    (p, cp, sp, ct, st, beta_gamma) result (n)
    type(vector3_t) :: n
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: cp, sp, ct, st, beta_gamma
    real(default) :: gamma, px, py
    px = cp * p%p(1) - sp * p%p(2)
    py = sp * p%p(1) + cp * p%p(2)
    n%p(1) = ct * px + st * p%p(3)
    n%p(2) = py
    n%p(3) = -st * px + ct * p%p(3)
    if (beta_gamma/=0) then
      gamma = sqrt(1 + beta_gamma**2)
      n%p(3) = n%p(3) * gamma + p%p(0) * beta_gamma
    end if
  end function axis_from_p_r3_r2_b3

  elemental function axis_from_p_b3 (p, beta_gamma) result (n)
    type(vector3_t) :: n
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: beta_gamma
    real(default) :: gamma
    n%p = p%p(1:3)
    if (beta_gamma/=0) then
      gamma = sqrt(1 + beta_gamma**2)
      n%p(3) = n%p(3) * gamma + p%p(0) * beta_gamma
    end if
  end function axis_from_p_b3

```

#### 4.2.14 Special functions

The standard phase space function:

```

(Lorentz: public functions)+≡
  public :: lambda

(Lorentz: procedures)+≡
  elemental function lambda (m1sq, m2sq, m3sq)
    real(default) :: lambda
    real(default), intent(in) :: m1sq, m2sq, m3sq
    lambda = (m1sq - m2sq - m3sq)**2 - 4*m2sq*m3sq
  end function lambda

```

Return a pair of head-to-head colliding momenta, given the collider energy, particle masses, and optionally the momentum of the c.m. system.

*<Lorentz: public functions>+≡*

public :: colliding\_momenta

*<Lorentz: procedures>+≡*

```
function colliding_momenta (sqrts, m, p_cm) result (p)
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p
  real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in), optional :: m
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: p_cm
  real(default), dimension(2) :: dmsq
  real(default) :: ch, sh
  real(default), dimension(2) :: E0, p0
  integer, dimension(2), parameter :: sgn = (/1, -1/)
  if (sqrts == 0) then
    call msg_fatal (" Colliding beams: sqrts is zero (please set sqrts)")
    p = vector4_null; return
  else if (sqrts <= 0) then
    call msg_fatal (" Colliding beams: sqrts is negative")
    p = vector4_null; return
  end if
  if (present (m)) then
    dmsq = sgn * (m(1)**2-m(2)**2)
    E0 = (sqrts + dmsq/sqrts) / 2
    if (any (E0 < m)) then
      call msg_fatal &
        (" Colliding beams: beam energy is less than particle mass")
      p = vector4_null; return
    end if
    p0 = sgn * sqrt (E0**2 - m**2)
  else
    E0 = sqrts / 2
    p0 = sgn * E0
  end if
  if (present (p_cm)) then
    sh = p_cm / sqrts
    ch = sqrt (1 + sh**2)
    p = vector4_moving (E0 * ch + p0 * sh, E0 * sh + p0 * ch, 3)
  else
    p = vector4_moving (E0, p0, 3)
  end if
end function colliding_momenta
```

This subroutine is for the purpose of numerical checks and comparisons. The idea is to set a number to zero if it is numerically equivalent with zero. The equivalence is established by comparing with a **tolerance** argument. We implement this for vectors and transformations.

*<Lorentz: public functions>+≡*

public :: pacify

*<Lorentz: interfaces>+≡*

```
interface pacify
  module procedure pacify_vector3
```

```

        module procedure pacify_vector4
        module procedure pacify_LT
    end interface pacify

    (Lorentz: procedures)+≡
    elemental subroutine pacify_vector3 (p, tolerance)
        type(vector3_t), intent(inout) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: tolerance
        where (abs (p%p) < tolerance) p%p = 0
    end subroutine pacify_vector3

    elemental subroutine pacify_vector4 (p, tolerance)
        type(vector4_t), intent(inout) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: tolerance
        where (abs (p%p) < tolerance) p%p = 0
    end subroutine pacify_vector4

    elemental subroutine pacify_LT (LT, tolerance)
        type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(inout) :: LT
        real(default), intent(in) :: tolerance
        where (abs (LT%L) < tolerance) LT%L = 0
    end subroutine pacify_LT

```

## 4.3 Special Physics functions

Here, we declare functions that are specific for the Standard Model, including QCD: fixed and running  $\alpha_s$ , Catani-Seymour dipole terms, loop functions, etc.

To make maximum use of this, all functions, if possible, are declared elemental (or pure, if this is not possible).

```

<sm_physics.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module sm_physics

    <Use kinds>
    use constants !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: MZ_REF, ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF, LAMBDA_QCD_REF !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <SM physics: public>

    <SM physics: parameters>

    contains

    <SM physics: procedures>

  end module sm_physics

```

### 4.3.1 Running $\alpha_s$

First we set a reference value for  $\alpha_s(M_Z) = 0.1178$ .

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
  real(default), public, parameter :: MZ_REF = 91.188_default
  real(default), public, parameter :: ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF = 0.1178_default
  real(default), public, parameter :: LAMBDA_QCD_REF = 200.e-3_default

```

Then we define the coefficients of the beta function of QCD (as a reference cf. the Particle Data Group), where  $n_f$  is the number of active flavors in two different schemes:

$$\beta_0 = 11 - \frac{2}{3}n_f \quad (4.5)$$

$$\beta_1 = 51 - \frac{19}{3}n_f \quad (4.6)$$

$$\beta_2 = 2857 - \frac{5033}{9}n_f + \frac{325}{27}n_f^2 \quad (4.7)$$

$$b_0 = \frac{1}{12\pi} (11C_A - 2n_f) \quad (4.8)$$

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{24\pi^2} (17C_A^2 - 5C_An_f - 3C_Fn_f) \quad (4.9)$$

$$b_2 = \frac{1}{(4\pi)^3} \left( \frac{2857}{54} C_A^3 - \frac{1415}{54} C_A^2 n_f - \frac{205}{18} C_A C_F n_f + C_F^2 n_f + \frac{79}{54} C_A n_f^2 + \frac{11}{9} C_F n_f^2 \right) \quad (4.10)$$

$\langle SM \text{ physics: public} \rangle \equiv$

```
public :: beta0, beta1, beta2, coeff_b0, coeff_b1, coeff_b2
```

$\langle SM \text{ physics: procedures} \rangle \equiv$

```
pure function beta0 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: beta0
  beta0 = 11.0_default - two/three * nf
end function beta0

pure function beta1 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: beta1
  beta1 = 51.0_default - 19.0_default/three * nf
end function beta1

pure function beta2 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: beta2
  beta2 = 2857.0_default - 5033.0_default / 9.0_default * &
    nf + 325.0_default/27.0_default * nf**2
end function beta2

pure function coeff_b0 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: coeff_b0
  coeff_b0 = (11.0_default * CA - two * nf) / (12.0_default * pi)
end function coeff_b0

pure function coeff_b1 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: coeff_b1
  coeff_b1 = (17.0_default * CA**2 - five * CA * nf - three * CF * nf) / &
    (24.0_default * pi**2)
end function coeff_b1

pure function coeff_b2 (nf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: nf
  real(default) :: coeff_b2
  coeff_b2 = (2857.0_default/54.0_default * CA**3 - &
    1415.0_default/54.0_default * &
    CA**2 * nf - 205.0_default/18.0_default * CA*CF*nf &
    + 79.0_default/54.0_default * CA*nf**2 + &
    11.0_default/9.0_default * CF * nf**2) / (four*pi)**3
end function coeff_b2
```

There should be two versions of running  $\alpha_s$ , one which takes the scale and  $\Lambda_{\text{QCD}}$  as input, and one which takes the scale and e.g.  $\alpha_s(m_Z)$  as input. Here, we take the one which takes the QCD scale and scale as inputs from the PDG book.

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: running_as, running_as_lam

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  pure function running_as (scale, al_mz, mz, order, nf) result (ascale)
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: al_mz, nf, mz
    integer, intent(in), optional :: order
    integer :: ord
    real(default) :: az, m_z, as_log, n_f, b0, b1, b2, ascale
    real(default) :: as0, as1
    if (present(mz)) then
      m_z = mz
    else
      m_z = MZ_REF
    end if
    if (present(order)) then
      ord = order
    else
      ord = 0
    end if
    if (present(al_mz)) then
      az = al_mz
    else
      az = ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF
    end if
    if (present(nf)) then
      n_f = nf
    else
      n_f = 5
    end if
    b0 = coeff_b0 (n_f)
    b1 = coeff_b1 (n_f)
    b2 = coeff_b2 (n_f)
    as_log = one + b0 * az * log(scale**2/m_z**2)
    as0 = az / as_log
    as1 = as0 - as0**2 * b1/b0 * log(as_log)
    select case (ord)
      case (0)
        ascale = as0
      case (1)
        ascale = as1
      case (2)
        ascale = as1 + as0**3 * (b1**2/b0**2 * ((log(as_log))**2 - &
          log(as_log) + as_log - one) - b2/b0 * (as_log - one))
    end select
  end function running_as

  pure function running_as_lam (nf, scale, lambda, order) result (ascale)
    real(default), intent(in) :: nf, scale
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: lambda

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: order
real(default) :: lambda_qcd
real(default) :: as0, as1, logmul, b0, b1, b2, ascale
integer :: ord
if (present (lambda)) then
    lambda_qcd = lambda
else
    lambda_qcd = LAMBDA_QCD_REF
end if
if (present(order)) then
    ord = order
else
    ord = 0
end if
b0 = beta0(nf)
b1 = beta1(nf)
b2 = beta2(nf)
logmul = log(scale**2/lambda_qcd**2)
as0 = four*pi / b0 / logmul
as1 = as0 * (one - two* b1 / b0**2 * log(logmul) / logmul)
select case (ord)
case (0)
    ascale = as0
case (1)
    ascale = as1
case (2)
    ascale = as1 + as0 * four * b1**2/b0**4/logmul**2 * &
        ( (log(logmul) - 0.5_default)**2 + &
          b2*b0/8.0_default/b1**2 - five/four)
end select
end function running_as_lam

```

### 4.3.2 Catani-Seymour Parameters

These are fundamental constants of the Catani-Seymour dipole formalism. Since the corresponding parameters for the gluon case depend on the number of flavors which is treated as an argument, there we do have functions and not parameters.

$$\gamma_q = \gamma_{\bar{q}} = \frac{3}{2}C_F \quad \gamma_g = \frac{11}{6}C_A - \frac{2}{3}T_R N_f \quad (4.11)$$

$$K_q = K_{\bar{q}} = \left(\frac{7}{2} - \frac{\pi^2}{6}\right) C_F \quad K_g = \left(\frac{67}{18} - \frac{\pi^2}{6}\right) C_A - \frac{10}{9}T_R N_f \quad (4.12)$$

$\langle SM \text{ physics: parameters} \rangle \equiv$

```

real(kind=default), parameter, public :: gamma_q = three/two * CF, &
    k_q = (7.0_default/two - pi**2/6.0_default) * CF

```

$\langle SM \text{ physics: public} \rangle + \equiv$

```

public :: gamma_g, k_g

```

```

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function gamma_g (nf) result (gg)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: nf
    real(kind=default) :: gg
    gg = 11.0_default/6.0_default * CA - two/three * TR * nf
  end function gamma_g

  elemental function k_g (nf) result (kg)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: nf
    real(kind=default) :: kg
    kg = (67.0_default/18.0_default - pi**2/6.0_default) * CA - &
          10.0_default/9.0_default * TR * nf
  end function k_g

```

### 4.3.3 Mathematical Functions

The dilogarithm. This simplified version is bound to double precision, and restricted to argument values less or equal to unity, so we do not need complex algebra. The wrapper converts it to default precision (which is, of course, a no-op if double=default).

The routine calculates the dilogarithm through mapping on the area where there is a quickly convergent series (adapted from an F77 routine by Hans Kuijf, 1988): Map  $x$  such that  $x$  is not in the neighbourhood of 1. Note that  $|z| = -\ln(1-x)$  is always smaller than 1.10, but  $\frac{1 \cdot 10^{19}}{19!} \text{Bernoulli}_{19} = 2.7 \times 10^{-15}$ .

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: Li2

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  function Li2 (x)
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    real(default) :: Li2
    Li2 = real( Li2_double (real(x, kind=double)), kind=default)
  end function Li2

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  function Li2_double (x) result (Li2)
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    real(kind=double), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=double) :: Li2
    real(kind=double), parameter :: pi2_6 = pi**2/6
    if (abs(1-x) < 1.E-13_double) then
      Li2 = pi2_6
    else if (abs(1-x) < 0.5_double) then
      Li2 = pi2_6 - log(1-x) * log(x) - Li2_restricted (1-x)
    else if (abs(x).gt.1.d0) then
      call msg_bug (" Dilogarithm called outside of defined range.")
      !!! Insert dilogarithm identity, not used yet
      ! Li2 = -pi2_6 - 0.5_default * log(-x) * log(-x) - Li2_restricted (1/x)
    else
      Li2 = Li2_restricted (x)

```



```

end if
contains
function Li2_restricted (x) result (Li2)
  real(kind=double), intent(in) :: x
  real(kind=double) :: Li2
  real(kind=double) :: tmp, z, z2
  z = - log (1-x)
  z2 = z**2
! Horner's rule for the powers z^3 through z^19
  tmp = 43867._double/798._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 /342._double - 3617._double/510._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 /272._double + 7._double/6._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 /210._double - 691._double/2730._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 /156._double + 5._double/66._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 /110._double - 1._double/30._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 / 72._double + 1._double/42._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 / 42._double - 1._double/30._double
  tmp = tmp * z2 / 20._double + 1._double/6._double
! The first three terms of the power series
  Li2 = z2 * z * tmp / 6._double - 0.25_double * z2 + z
end function Li2_restricted
end function Li2_double

```

#### 4.3.4 Loop Integrals

These functions appear in the calculation of the effective one-loop coupling of a (pseudo)scalar to a vector boson pair.

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: faux

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function faux (x) result (y)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    complex(default) :: y
    if (1 <= x) then
      y = asin(sqrt(1/x))**2
    else
      y = - 1/4.0_default * (log((1 + sqrt(1 - x))/ &
        (1 - sqrt(1 - x))) - cmplx (0.0_default, pi, kind=default))**2
    end if
  end function faux

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: fonehalf

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function fonehalf (x) result (y)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    complex(default) :: y
    if (x==0) then
      y = 0
    else
      y = - 2.0_default * x * (1 + (1 - x) * faux(x))
    end if
  end function fonehalf

```

```

        end if
    end function fonehalf

<SM physics: public>+≡
    public :: fonehalf_pseudo

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
    function fonehalf_pseudo (x) result (y)
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        complex(default) :: y
        if (x==0) then
            y = 0
        else
            y = - 2.0_default * x * faux(x)
        end if
    end function fonehalf_pseudo

<SM physics: public>+≡
    public :: fone

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
    elemental function fone (x) result (y)
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        complex(default) :: y
        if (x==0) then
            y = 2.0_default
        else
            y = 2.0_default + 3.0_default * x + &
                3.0_default * x * (2.0_default - x) * &
                faux(x)
        end if
    end function fone

<SM physics: public>+≡
    public :: gaux

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
    elemental function gaux (x) result (y)
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        complex(default) :: y
        if (1 <= x) then
            y = sqrt(x - 1) * asin(sqrt(1/x))
        else
            y = sqrt(1 - x) * (log((1 + sqrt(1 - x)) / &
                (1 - sqrt(1 - x)))) - &
                cmplx (0.0_default, pi, kind=default)) / 2.0_default
        end if
    end function gaux

<SM physics: public>+≡
    public :: tri_i1

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function tri_i1 (a,b) result (y)
    real(default), intent(in) :: a,b
    complex(default) :: y
    if (a < epsilon(a) .or. b < epsilon(b)) then
      y = 0
    else
      y = a*b/2.0_default/(a-b) + a**2 * b**2/2.0_default/(a-b)**2 * &
        (faux(a) - faux(b)) + &
        a**2 * b/(a-b)**2 * (gaux(a) - gaux(b))
    end if
  end function tri_i1

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: tri_i2

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function tri_i2 (a,b) result (y)
    real(default), intent(in) :: a,b
    complex(default) :: y
    if (a < epsilon(a) .or. b < epsilon(b)) then
      y = 0
    else
      y = - a * b / 2.0_default / (a-b) * (faux(a) - faux(b))
    end if
  end function tri_i2

```

#### 4.3.5 More on $\alpha_s$

These functions are for the running of the strong coupling constants,  $\alpha_s$ .

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: run_b0

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function run_b0 (nf) result (bnull)
    integer, intent(in) :: nf
    real(default) :: bnull
    bnull = 33.0_default - 2.0_default * nf
  end function run_b0

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: run_b1

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function run_b1 (nf) result (bone)
    integer, intent(in) :: nf
    real(default) :: bone
    bone = 6.0_default * (153.0_default - 19.0_default * nf)/run_b0(nf)**2
  end function run_b1

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: run_aa

```

```

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function run_aa (nf) result (aaa)
    integer, intent(in) :: nf
    real(default) :: aaa
    aaa = 12.0_default * PI / run_b0(nf)
  end function run_aa

```

```

<SM physics: pubic functions>≡
  public :: run_bb

```

```

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function run_bb (nf) result (bbb)
    integer, intent(in) :: nf
    real(default) :: bbb
    bbb = run_b1(nf) / run_aa(nf)
  end function run_bb

```

#### 4.3.6 Functions for Catani-Seymour dipoles

For the automated Catani-Seymour dipole subtraction, we need the following functions.

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: ff_dipole

```

```

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  pure subroutine ff_dipole (v_ijk,y_ijk,p_ij,pp_k,p_i,p_j,p_k)
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p_i, p_j, p_k
    type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p_ij, pp_k
    real(kind=default), intent(out) :: y_ijk
    real(kind=default) :: z_i
    real(kind=default), intent(out) :: v_ijk
    z_i = (p_i*p_k) / ((p_k*p_j) + (p_k*p_i))
    y_ijk = (p_i*p_j) / ((p_i*p_j) + (p_i*p_k) + (p_j*p_k))
    p_ij = p_i + p_j - y_ijk/(1.0_default - y_ijk) * p_k
    pp_k = (1.0/(1.0_default - y_ijk)) * p_k
    !!! We don't multiply by alpha_s right here:
    v_ijk = 8.0_default * PI * CF * &
      (2.0 / (1.0 - z_i*(1.0 - y_ijk)) - (1.0 + z_i))
  end subroutine ff_dipole

```

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: fi_dipole

```

```

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  pure subroutine fi_dipole (v_ija,x_ija,p_ij,pp_a,p_i,p_j,p_a)
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p_i, p_j, p_a
    type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p_ij, pp_a
    real(kind=default), intent(out) :: x_ija
    real(kind=default) :: z_i
    real(kind=default), intent(out) :: v_ija
    z_i = (p_i*p_a) / ((p_a*p_j) + (p_a*p_i))
    x_ija = ((p_i*p_a) + (p_j*p_a) - (p_i*p_j)) &

```

```

      / ((p_i*p_a) + (p_j*p_a))
p_ij = p_i + p_j - (1.0_default - x_ija) * p_a
pp_a = x_ija * p_a
!!! We don't not multiply by alpha_s right here:
v_ija = 8.0_default * PI * CF * &
      (2.0 / (1.0 - z_i + (1.0 - x_ija)) - (1.0 + z_i)) / x_ija
end subroutine fi_dipole

```

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: if_dipole

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
pure subroutine if_dipole (v_kja,u_j,p_aj,pp_k,p_k,p_j,p_a)
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p_k, p_j, p_a
  type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p_aj, pp_k
  real(kind=default), intent(out) :: u_j
  real(kind=default) :: x_kja
  real(kind=default), intent(out) :: v_kja
  u_j = (p_a*p_j) / ((p_a*p_j) + (p_a*p_k))
  x_kja = ((p_a*p_k) + (p_a*p_j) - (p_j*p_k)) &
    / ((p_a*p_j) + (p_a*p_k))
  p_aj = x_kja * p_a
  pp_k = p_k + p_j - (1.0_default - x_kja) * p_a
  v_kja = 8.0_default * PI * CF * &
    (2.0 / (1.0 - x_kja + u_j) - (1.0 + x_kja)) / x_kja
end subroutine if_dipole

```

This function depends on a variable number of final state particles whose kinematics all get changed by the initial-initial dipole insertion.

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: ii_dipole

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
pure subroutine ii_dipole (v_jab,v_j,p_in,p_out,flag_1or2)
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_in
  type(vector4_t), dimension(size(p_in)-1), intent(out) :: p_out
  logical, intent(in) :: flag_1or2
  real(kind=default), intent(out) :: v_j
  real(kind=default), intent(out) :: v_jab
  type(vector4_t) :: p_a, p_b, p_j
  type(vector4_t) :: k, kk
  type(vector4_t) :: p_aj
  real(kind=default) :: x_jab
  integer :: i
  !!! flag_1or2 decides whether this a 12 or 21 dipole
  if (flag_1or2) then
    p_a = p_in(1)
    p_b = p_in(2)
  else
    p_b = p_in(1)
    p_a = p_in(2)
  end if
  !!! We assume that the unresolved particle has always the last
  !!! momentum

```

```

p_j = p_in(size(p_in))
x_jab = ((p_a*p_b) - (p_a*p_j) - (p_b*p_j)) / (p_a*p_b)
v_j = (p_a*p_j) / (p_a * p_b)
p_aj = x_jab * p_a
k = p_a + p_b - p_j
kk = p_aj + p_b
do i = 3, size(p_in)-1
  p_out(i) = p_in(i) - 2.0*((k+kk)*p_in(i))/((k+kk)*(k+kk)) * (k+kk) + &
    (2.0 * (k*p_in(i)) / (k*k)) * kk
end do
if (flag_1or2) then
  p_out(1) = p_aj
  p_out(2) = p_b
else
  p_out(1) = p_b
  p_out(2) = p_aj
end if
v_jab = 8.0_default * PI * CF * &
  (2.0 / (1.0 - x_jab) - (1.0 + x_jab)) / x_jab
end subroutine ii_dipole

```

### 4.3.7 Distributions for integrated dipoles and such

The Dirac delta distribution, modified for Monte-Carlo sampling:

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: delta

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function delta (x,eps) result (z)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
    real(kind=default) :: z
    if (x > 1.0_default - eps) then
      z = 1.0_default/eps
    else
      z = 0
    end if
  end function delta

```

The  $+$ -distribution,  $P_+(x) = \left(\frac{1}{1-x}\right)_+$ , for the regularization of soft-collinear singularities. The constant part for the Monte-Carlo sampling is the integral over the splitting function divided by the weight for the WHIZARD numerical integration over the interval.

```

<SM physics: public>+≡
  public :: plus_distr

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
  elemental function plus_distr (x,eps) result (plusd)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
    real(kind=default) :: plusd
    if (x > (1.0_default - eps)) then
      plusd = log(eps)/eps
    else
      plusd = one/(one-x)
    end if
  end function plus_distr

```

```

end if
end function plus_distr

```

The splitting function in  $D = 4$  dimensions, regularized as  $+$ -distributions if necessary:

$$P^{qq}(x) = P^{\bar{q}q}(x) = C_F \cdot \left( \frac{1+x^2}{1-x} \right)_+ \quad (4.13)$$

$$P^{qg}(x) = P^{\bar{q}g}(x) = C_F \cdot \frac{1+(1-x)^2}{x} \quad (4.14)$$

$$P^{gq}(x) = P^{g\bar{q}}(x) = T_R \cdot [x^2 + (1-x)^2] \quad (4.15)$$

$$P^{gg}(x) = 2C_A \left[ \left( \frac{1}{1-x} \right)_+ + \frac{1-x}{x} - 1 + x(1-x) \right] + \delta(1-x) \left( \frac{11}{6}C_A - \frac{2}{3}N_f T_R \right) \quad (4.16)$$

Since the number of flavors summed over in the gluon splitting function might depend on the physics case under consideration it is implemented as an input variable.

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pqq

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pqq (x,eps) result (pqqx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
    real(kind=default) :: pqqx
    if (x > (1.0_default - eps)) then
      pqqx = (eps-one)/two + two*log(eps)/eps - three*(eps-one)/eps/two
    else
      pqqx = (one + x**2)/(one-x)
    end if
    pqqx = CF * pqqx
  end function pqq

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pgq

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pgq (x) result (pgqx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: pgqx
    pgqx = TR * (x**2 + (one - x)**2)
  end function pgq

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pqg

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pqg (x) result (pqgx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: pqgx
    pqgx = CF * (one + (one - x)**2) / x
  end function pqg

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pgg
⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pgg (x, nf, eps) result (pggx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, nf, eps
    real(kind=default) :: pggx
    pggx = two * CA * ( plus_distr (x, eps) + (one-x)/x - one + &
                        x*(one-x)) + delta (x, eps) * gamma_g(nf)
  end function pgg

```

For the  $qq$  and  $gg$  cases, there exist “regularized” versions of the splitting functions:

$$P_{\text{reg}}^{qq}(x) = -C_F \cdot (1 + x) \quad (4.17)$$

$$P_{\text{reg}}^{gg}(x) = 2C_A \left[ \frac{1-x}{x} - 1 + x(1-x) \right] \quad (4.18)$$

$$(4.19)$$

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pqq_reg
⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pqq_reg (x) result (pqqregx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: pqqregx
    pqqregx = - CF * (one + x)
  end function pqq_reg

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: pgg_reg
⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  elemental function pgg_reg (x) result (pggregx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: pgregx
    pgregx = two * CA * ((one - x)/x - one + x*(one - x))
  end function pgg_reg

```

Here, we collect the expressions needed for integrated Catani-Seymour dipoles, and the so-called flavor kernels. We always distinguish between the “ordinary” Catani-Seymour version, and the one including a phase-space slicing parameter,  $\alpha$ .

The standard flavor kernels  $\bar{K}^{ab}$  are:

$$\bar{K}^{qg}(x) = \bar{K}^{\bar{q}g}(x) = P^{qg}(x) \log((1-x)/x) + CF \times x \quad (4.20)$$

$$\bar{K}^{gq}(x) = \bar{K}^{g\bar{q}}(x) = P^{gq}(x) \log((1-x)/x) + TR \times 2x(1-x) \quad (4.21)$$

$$\bar{K}^{qq} = C_F \left[ \left( \frac{2}{1-x} \log \frac{1-x}{x} \right)_+ - (1+x) \log((1-x)/x) + (1-x) \right] - (5 - \pi^2) \cdot C_F \cdot \delta(1-x) \quad (4.22)$$

$$\bar{K}^{gg} = 2C_A \left[ \left( \frac{1}{1-x} \log \frac{1-x}{x} \right)_+ + \left( \frac{1-x}{x} - 1 + x(1-x) \right) \log((1-x)/x) \right] - \delta(1-x) \left[ (f \right. \quad (4.23)$$



```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: kbarqg

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function kbarqg (x) result (kbarqgx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: kbarqgx
    kbarqgx = pqg(x) * log((one-x)/x) + CF * x
  end function kbarqg

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: kbargq

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function kbargq (x) result (kbargqx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x
    real(kind=default) :: kbargqx
    kbargqx = pqg(x) * log((one-x)/x) + two * TR * x * (one - x)
  end function kbargq

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: kbarqq

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function kbarqq (x,eps) result (kbarqqx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
    real(kind=default) :: kbarqqx
    kbarqqx = CF*(log_plus_distr(x,eps) - (one+x) * log((one-x)/x) + (one - &
      x) - (five - pi**2) * delta(x,eps))
  end function kbarqq

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: kbargg

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function kbargg (x,eps,nf) result (kbarggx)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps, nf
    real(kind=default) :: kbarggx
    kbarggx = CA * (log_plus_distr(x,eps) + two * ((one-x)/x - one + &
      x*(one-x) * log((1-x)/x))) - delta(x,eps) * &
      ((50.0_default/9.0_default - pi**2) * CA - &
      16.0_default/9.0_default * TR * nf)
  end function kbargg

```

The  $\tilde{K}$  are used when two identified hadrons participate:

$$\tilde{K}^{ab}(x) = P_{\text{reg}}^{ab}(x) \cdot \log(1-x) + \delta^{ab} \mathbf{T}_a^2 \left[ \left( \frac{2}{1-x} \log(1-x) \right)_+ - \frac{\pi^2}{3} \delta(1-x) \right] \quad (4.24)$$

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function ktildeqq (x,eps) result (ktildeqqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(kind=default) :: ktildeqqx
  ktildeqqx = pqq_reg (x) * log(one-x) + CF * ( - log2_plus_distr (x,eps) &
    - pi**2/three * delta(x,eps))
end function ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function ktildeqq (x,eps) result (ktildeqqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(kind=default) :: ktildeqqx
  ktildeqqx = pqg (x) * log(one-x)
end function ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function ktildeqq (x,eps) result (ktildeqqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(kind=default) :: ktildeqqx
  ktildeqqx = pgq (x) * log(one-x)
end function ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: ktildeqq

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function ktildegg (x,eps) result (ktildeggx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(kind=default) :: ktildeggx
  ktildeggx = pgg_reg (x) * log(one-x) + CA * ( - &
    log2_plus_distr (x,eps) - pi**2/three * delta(x,eps))
end function ktildegg

```

The insertion operator might not be necessary for a GOLEM interface but is demanded by the Les Houches NLO accord. It is a three-dimensional array, where the index always gives the inverse power of the DREG expansion parameter,  $\epsilon$ .

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: insert_q

```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
pure function insert_q ()
  real(kind=default), dimension(0:2) :: insert_q
  insert_q(0) = gamma_q + k_q - pi**2/three * CF
  insert_q(1) = gamma_q
  insert_q(2) = CF
end function insert_q

```

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: insert_g

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  pure function insert_g (nf)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: nf
    real(kind=default), dimension(0:2) :: insert_g
    insert_g(0) = gamma_g (nf) + k_g (nf) - pi**2/three * CA
    insert_g(1) = gamma_g (nf)
    insert_g(2) = CA
  end function insert_g

```

For better convergence, one can exclude regions of phase space with a slicing parameter from the dipole subtraction procedure. First of all, the  $K$  functions get modified:

$$K_i(\alpha) = K_i - \mathbf{T}_i^2 \log^2 \alpha + \gamma_i(\alpha - 1 - \log \alpha) \quad (4.25)$$

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: k_q_al, k_g_al

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  pure function k_q_al (alpha)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: alpha
    real(kind=default) :: k_q_al
    k_q_al = k_q - CF * (log(alpha))**2 + gamma_q * &
      (alpha - one - log(alpha))
  end function k_q_al

  pure function k_g_al (alpha, nf)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: alpha, nf
    real(kind=default) :: k_g_al
    k_g_al = k_g (nf) - CA * (log(alpha))**2 + gamma_g (nf) * &
      (alpha - one - log(alpha))
  end function k_g_al

```

The  $+$ -distribution, but with a phase-space slicing parameter,  $\alpha$ ,  $P_{1-\alpha}(x) = \left(\frac{1}{1-x}\right)_{1-x}$ . Since we need the fatal error message here, this function cannot be elemental.

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: plus_distr_al

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function plus_distr_al (x,alpha,eps) result (plusd_al)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps, alpha
    real(kind=default) :: plusd_al
    if ((1.0_default - alpha) .ge. (1.0_default - eps)) then
      call msg_fatal ('sm_physics, plus_distr_al: alpha and epsilon chosen wrongly')
    elseif (x < (1.0_default - alpha)) then
      plusd_al = 0
    else if (x > (1.0_default - eps)) then
      plusd_al = log(eps/alpha)/eps
    else
      plusd_al = one/(one-x)
    end if
  end function

```

```
end function plus_distr_al
```

Introducing phase-space slicing parameters, these flavor kernels become: The standard flavor kernels  $\bar{K}^{ab}$  are:

$$\bar{K}_\alpha^{qg}(x) = \bar{K}_\alpha^{\bar{q}g}(x) = P^{qg}(x) \log(\alpha(1-x)/x) + CF \times x \quad (4.26)$$

$$\bar{K}_\alpha^{gq}(x) = \bar{K}_\alpha^{g\bar{q}}(x) = P^{gq}(x) \log(\alpha(1-x)/x) + TR \times 2x(1-x) \quad (4.27)$$

$$\bar{K}_\alpha^{qq} = C_F(1-x) + P_{\text{reg}}^{qq}(x) \log \frac{\alpha(1-x)}{x} + C_F \delta(1-x) \log^2 \alpha + C_F \left( \frac{2}{1-x} \log \frac{1-x}{x} \right)_+ - \left( \gamma_q - \right) \quad (4.28)$$

```
<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: kbarqg_al

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
function kbarqg_al (x,alpha,eps) result (kbarqgx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, alpha, eps
  real(kind=default) :: kbarqgx
  kbarqgx = pqg (x) * log(alpha*(one-x)/x) + CF * x
end function kbarqg_al

<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: kbargq_al

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
function kbargq_al (x,alpha,eps) result (kbargqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, alpha, eps
  real(kind=default) :: kbargqx
  kbargqx = pgq (x) * log(alpha*(one-x)/x) + two * TR * x * (one-x)
end function kbargq_al

<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: kbarqq_al

<SM physics: procedures>+≡
function kbarqq_al (x,alpha,eps) result (kbarqqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, alpha, eps
  real(kind=default) :: kbarqqx
  kbarqqx = CF * (one - x) + pqq_reg(x) * log(alpha*(one-x)/x) &
    + CF * log_plus_distr(x,eps) &
    - (gamma_q + k_q_al(alpha) - CF * &
      five/6.0_default * pi**2 - CF * (log(alpha))**2) * &
      delta(x,eps) + &
      CF * two/(one -x)*log(alpha*(two-x)/(one+alpha-x))
  if (x < (one-alpha)) then
    kbarqqx = kbarqqx - CF * two/(one-x) * log((two-x)/(one-x))
  end if
end function kbarqq_al

<SM physics: public>+≡
public :: kbargg_al
```

```

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function kbargg_al (x,alpha,eps,nf) result (kbarggx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, alpha, eps, nf
  real(kind=default) :: kbarggx
  kbarggx = pgg_reg(x) * log(alpha*(one-x)/x) &
    + CA * log_plus_distr(x,eps) &
    - (gamma_g(nf) + k_g_al(alpha,nf) - CA * &
      five/6.0_default * pi**2 - CA * (log(alpha))**2) * &
      delta(x,eps) + &
      CA * two/(one-x)*log(alpha*(two-x)/(one+alpha-x))
  if (x < (one-alpha)) then
    kbarggx = kbarggx - CA * two/(one-x) * log((two-x)/(one-x))
  end if
end function kbargg_al

```

The  $\tilde{K}$  flavor kernels in the presence of a phase-space slicing parameter, are:

$$\tilde{K}^{ab}(x, \alpha) = P^{qq, \text{reg}}(x) \log \frac{1-x}{\alpha} + \dots \quad (4.29)$$

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: ktildeqq_al

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function ktildeqq_al (x,alpha,eps) result (ktildeqqx)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps, alpha
  real(kind=default) :: ktildeqqx
  ktildeqqx = pqq_reg(x) * log((one-x)/alpha) + CF*( &
    - log2_plus_distr_al(x,alpha,eps) - Pi**2/three * delta(x,eps) &
    + (one+x**2)/(one-x) * log(min(one,(alpha/(one-x)))) &
    + two/(one-x) * log((one+alpha-x)/alpha))
  if (x > (one-alpha)) then
    ktildeqqx = ktildeqqx - CF*two/(one-x)*log(two-x)
  end if
end function ktildeqq_al

```

This is a logarithmic  $+$ -distribution,  $\left(\frac{\log((1-x)/x)}{1-x}\right)_+$ . For the sampling, we need the integral over this function over the incomplete sampling interval  $[0, 1 - \epsilon]$ , which is  $\log^2(x) + 2Li_2(x) - \frac{\pi^2}{3}$ . As this function is negative definite for  $\epsilon > 0.1816$ , we take a hard upper limit for that sampling parameter, irrespective of the fact what the user chooses.

```

⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
public :: log_plus_distr

⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
function log_plus_distr (x,eps) result (lpd)
  real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(kind=default) :: lpd, eps2
  eps2 = min (eps, 0.1816_default)
  if (x > (1.0_default - eps2)) then
    lpd = ((log(eps2))**2 + two*Li2(eps2) - pi**2/three)/eps2
  else
    lpd = two*log((one-x)/x)/(one-x)
  end if
end function log_plus_distr

```

```

end function log_plus_distr

Logarithmic +-distribution,  $2 \left( \frac{\log(1/(1-x))}{1-x} \right)_+$ .
⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: log2_plus_distr
⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function log2_plus_distr (x,eps) result (lpd)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps
    real(kind=default) :: lpd
    if (x > (1.0_default - eps)) then
      lpd = - (log(eps))**2/eps
    else
      lpd = two*log(one/(one-x))/(one-x)
    end if
  end function log2_plus_distr

Logarithmic +-distribution with phase-space slicing parameter,  $2 \left( \frac{\log(1/(1-x))}{1-x} \right)_{1-\alpha}$ .
⟨SM physics: public⟩+≡
  public :: log2_plus_distr_al
⟨SM physics: procedures⟩+≡
  function log2_plus_distr_al (x,alpha,eps) result (lpd_al)
    real(kind=default), intent(in) :: x, eps, alpha
    real(kind=default) :: lpd_al
    if ((1.0_default - alpha) .ge. (1.0_default - eps)) then
      call msg_fatal ('alpha and epsilon chosen wrongly')
    elseif (x < (one - alpha)) then
      lpd_al = 0
    elseif (x > (1.0_default - eps)) then
      lpd_al = - ((log(eps))**2 - (log(alpha))**2)/eps
    else
      lpd_al = two*log(one/(one-x))/(one-x)
    end if
  end function log2_plus_distr_al

```

## 4.4 QCD Coupling

We provide various distinct implementations of the QCD coupling. In this module, we define an abstract data type and three implementations: fixed, running with  $\alpha_s(M_Z)$  as input, and running with  $\Lambda_{\text{QCD}}$  as input. We use the functions defined above in the module `sm_physics` but provide a common interface. Later modules may define additional implementations.

```

⟨sm_qcd.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module sm_qcd

    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    ⟨Use file utils⟩

```

```

    use limits, only: FMT_12, MZ_REF, ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF, LAMBDA_QCD_REF !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use md5
    use unit_tests

    use sm_physics !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <SM qcd: public>

    <SM qcd: types>

    <SM qcd: interfaces>

    contains

    <SM qcd: procedures>

    <SM qcd: tests>

    end module sm_qcd

```

#### 4.4.1 Coupling: Abstract Data Type

This is the abstract version of the QCD coupling implementation.

```

<SM qcd: public>≡
    public :: alpha_qcd_t

<SM qcd: types>≡
    type, abstract :: alpha_qcd_t
    contains
    <SM qcd: alpha qcd: TBP>
    end type alpha_qcd_t

```

There must be an output routine.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd: TBP>≡
    procedure (alpha_qcd_write), deferred :: write

<SM qcd: interfaces>≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine alpha_qcd_write (object, unit)
            import
            class(alpha_qcd_t), intent(in) :: object
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        end subroutine alpha_qcd_write
    end interface

```

This method computes the running coupling, given a certain scale. All parameters (reference value, order of the approximation, etc.) must be set before calling this.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd: TBP>+≡
    procedure (alpha_qcd_get), deferred :: get

```

```

⟨SM qcd: interfaces⟩+≡
  abstract interface
    function alpha_qcd_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
      import
      class(alpha_qcd_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
      real(default), intent(in) :: scale
      real(default) :: alpha
    end function alpha_qcd_get
  end interface

```

#### 4.4.2 Fixed Coupling

In this version, the  $\alpha_s$  value is fixed, the `scale` argument of the `get` method is ignored. There is only one parameter, the value. By default, this is the value at  $M_Z$ .

```

⟨SM qcd: public⟩+≡
  public :: alpha_qcd_fixed_t

⟨SM qcd: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (alpha_qcd_t) :: alpha_qcd_fixed_t
    real(default) :: val = ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF
  contains
    ⟨SM qcd: alpha qcd fixed: TBP⟩
  end type alpha_qcd_fixed_t

```

Output.

```

⟨SM qcd: alpha qcd fixed: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => alpha_qcd_fixed_write

⟨SM qcd: procedures⟩≡
  subroutine alpha_qcd_fixed_write (object, unit)
    class(alpha_qcd_fixed_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (fixed coupling):"
    write (u, "(5x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") "alpha = ", object%val
  end subroutine alpha_qcd_fixed_write

```

Calculation: the scale is ignored in this case.

```

⟨SM qcd: alpha qcd fixed: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: get => alpha_qcd_fixed_get

⟨SM qcd: procedures⟩+≡
  function alpha_qcd_fixed_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
    class(alpha_qcd_fixed_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default) :: alpha
    alpha = alpha_qcd%val
  end function alpha_qcd_fixed_get

```



### 4.4.3 Running Coupling

In this version, the  $\alpha_s$  value runs relative to the value at a given reference scale. There are two parameters: the value of this scale (default:  $M_Z$ ), the value of  $\alpha_s$  at this scale, and the number of effective flavors. Furthermore, we have the order of the approximation.

```

<SM qcd: public>+≡
    public :: alpha_qcd_from_scale_t

<SM qcd: types>+≡
    type, extends (alpha_qcd_t) :: alpha_qcd_from_scale_t
        real(default) :: mu_ref = MZ_REF
        real(default) :: ref = ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF
        integer :: order = 0
        integer :: nf = 5
    contains
        <SM qcd: alpha qcd from scale: TBP>
    end type alpha_qcd_from_scale_t

```

Output.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd from scale: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => alpha_qcd_from_scale_write

<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    subroutine alpha_qcd_from_scale_write (object, unit)
        class(alpha_qcd_from_scale_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (running coupling):"
        write (u, "(5x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Scale mu = ", object%mu_ref
        write (u, "(5x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") "alpha(mu) = ", object%ref
        write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "LL order = ", object%order
        write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "N(flv) = ", object%nf
    end subroutine alpha_qcd_from_scale_write

```

Calculation: here, we call the function for running  $\alpha_s$  that was defined in `sm_physics` above. The function does not take into account thresholds, so the number of flavors should be the correct one for the chosen scale. Normally, this should be the  $Z$  boson mass.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd from scale: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get => alpha_qcd_from_scale_get

<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    function alpha_qcd_from_scale_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
        class(alpha_qcd_from_scale_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(default) :: alpha
        alpha = running_as (scale, &
            alpha_qcd%ref, alpha_qcd%mu_ref, alpha_qcd%order, &
            real (alpha_qcd%nf, kind=default))
    end function alpha_qcd_from_scale_get

```

#### 4.4.4 Running Coupling, determined by $\Lambda_{\text{QCD}}$

In this version, the input are the value  $\Lambda_{\text{QCD}}$  and the order of the approximation.

```

<SM qcd: public>+≡
    public :: alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t
<SM qcd: types>+≡
    type, extends (alpha_qcd_t) :: alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t
        real(default) :: lambda = LAMBDA_QCD_REF
        integer :: order = 0
        integer :: nf = 5
    contains
        <SM qcd: alpha qcd from lambda: TBP>
        end type alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t

```

Output.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd from lambda: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => alpha_qcd_from_lambda_write
<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    subroutine alpha_qcd_from_lambda_write (object, unit)
        class(alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (Lambda_QCD as input):"
        write (u, "(5x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Lambda_QCD = ", object%lambda
        write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "LL order = ", object%order
        write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "N(flv) = ", object%nf
    end subroutine alpha_qcd_from_lambda_write

```

Calculation: here, we call the second function for running  $\alpha_s$  that was defined in `sm_physics` above. The  $\Lambda$  value should be the one that is appropriate for the chosen number of effective flavors. Again, thresholds are not incorporated.

```

<SM qcd: alpha qcd from lambda: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get => alpha_qcd_from_lambda_get
<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    function alpha_qcd_from_lambda_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
        class(alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(default) :: alpha
        alpha = running_as_lam (real (alpha_qcd%nf, kind=default), scale, &
            alpha_qcd%lambda, alpha_qcd%order)
    end function alpha_qcd_from_lambda_get

```

#### 4.4.5 Wrapper type

We could get along with a polymorphic QCD type, but a monomorphic wrapper type with a polymorphic component is easier to handle and probably safer (w.r.t. compiler bugs). However, we keep the object transparent, so we can set the type-specific parameters directly (by a `dispatch` routine).

```

<SM qcd: public>+≡

```

```

    public :: qcd_t
<SM qcd: types>+≡
    type :: qcd_t
        class(alpha_qcd_t), allocatable :: alpha
        character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    contains
        <SM qcd: qcd: TBP>
    end type qcd_t

```

Output. We first print the polymorphic `alpha` which contains a headline, then any extra components.

```

<SM qcd: qcd: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => qcd_write

<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    subroutine qcd_write (qcd, unit, show_md5sum)
        class(qcd_t), intent(in) :: qcd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: show_md5sum
        logical :: show_md5
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        show_md5 = .true.; if (present (show_md5sum)) show_md5 = show_md5sum
        if (allocated (qcd%alpha)) then
            call qcd%alpha%write (u)
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (coupling undefined)"
        end if
        if (show_md5 .and. qcd%md5sum /= "") &
            write (u, "(5x,A,A,A)") "md5sum = '", qcd%md5sum, "'"
    end subroutine qcd_write

```

Compute a MD5 sum for the `alpha_s` setup. This is done by writing them to a temporary file, using a standard format.

```

<SM qcd: qcd: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_alphas_md5sum => qcd_compute_alphas_md5sum

<SM qcd: procedures>+≡
    subroutine qcd_compute_alphas_md5sum (qcd)
        class(qcd_t), intent(inout) :: qcd
        integer :: unit
        if (allocated (qcd%alpha)) then
            unit = free_unit ()
            open (unit, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
            call qcd%alpha%write (unit)
            rewind (unit)
            qcd%md5sum = md5sum (unit)
            close (unit)
        end if
    end subroutine qcd_compute_alphas_md5sum

```

Retrieve the MD5 sum of the qcd setup.

```

⟨SM qcd: qcd: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum => qcd_get_md5sum

⟨SM qcd: procedures⟩+≡
    function qcd_get_md5sum (qcd) result (md5sum)
        character(32) :: md5sum
        class(qcd_t), intent(inout) :: qcd
        md5sum = qcd%md5sum
    end function qcd_get_md5sum

```

#### 4.4.6 Unit tests

```

⟨SM qcd: public⟩+≡
    public :: sm_qcd_test

⟨SM qcd: tests⟩≡
    subroutine sm_qcd_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    ⟨SM qcd: execute tests⟩
    end subroutine sm_qcd_test

```

#### QCD Coupling

We check two different implementations of the abstract QCD coupling.

```

⟨SM qcd: execute tests⟩≡
    call test (sm_qcd_1, "sm_qcd_1", &
        "running alpha_s", &
        u, results)

⟨SM qcd: tests⟩+≡
    subroutine sm_qcd_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sm_qcd_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: compute running alpha_s"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Fixed:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (alpha_qcd_fixed_t :: qcd%alpha)
        call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

        call qcd%write (u)
        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)")  "alpha_s (mz)    =", &
            qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
        write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)")  "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
            qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
    end subroutine sm_qcd_1

```

```

write (u, *)
deallocate (qcd%alpha)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from MZ (LO):"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t :: qcd%alpha)
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)    =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from MZ (NLO):"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t)
    alpha%order = 1
end select
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)    =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from MZ (NNLO):"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t)
    alpha%order = 2
end select
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)    =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
write (u, *)

deallocate (qcd%alpha)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from Lambda_QCD (LO):"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

allocate (alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t :: qcd%alpha)
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)      =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from Lambda_QCD (NLO):"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t)
    alpha%order = 1
end select
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)      =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Running from Lambda_QCD (NNLO):"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t)
    alpha%order = 2
end select
call qcd%compute_alphas_md5sum ()

call qcd%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (mz)      =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (MZ_REF)
write (u, "(1x,A,F10.7)") "alpha_s (1 TeV) =", &
    qcd%alpha%get (1000._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sm_qcd_1"

end subroutine sm_qcd_1

```

## Chapter 5

# Physics Analysis

This part contains the structures and tools that are necessary for defining parameters, particle sets, analysis objects such as histograms, and expressions that deal with them.

These are the modules:

**analysis** Observables, histograms, and plots.

**pdg\_arrays** Useful for particle aliases (e.g., 'quark' for  $u, d, s$  etc.)

**pvt\_lists** Particle lists/arrays used for analyzing events.

**variables** Store values of various kind, used by expressions and accessed by the command interface.

**expressions** Expressions of values of all kinds. Includes the API for recording analysis data.

## 5.1 Analysis tools

This module defines structures useful for data analysis. These include observables, histograms, and plots.

Observables are quantities that are calculated and summed up event by event. At the end, one can compute the average and error.

Histograms have their bins in addition to the observable properties. Histograms are usually written out in tables and displayed graphically.

In plots, each record creates its own entry in a table. This can be used for scatter plots if called event by event, or for plotting dependencies on parameters if called once per integration run.

Graphs are container for histograms and plots, which carry their own graphics options.

The type layout is still somewhat obfuscated. This would become much simpler if type extension could be used.

```
<analysis.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module analysis

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: HISTOGRAM_HEAD_FORMAT, HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT !NODEP!
    use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use os_interface
    use unit_tests
    use ifiles

    <Standard module head>

    <Analysis: public>

    <Analysis: parameters>

    <Analysis: types>

    <Analysis: interfaces>

    <Analysis: variables>

    contains

    <Analysis: procedures>

    <Analysis: tests>

  end module analysis
```



### 5.1.1 Output formats

These formats share a common field width (alignment).

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡  
    character(*), parameter, public :: HISTOGRAM_HEAD_FORMAT = "1x,A15,3x"  
    character(*), parameter, public :: HISTOGRAM_INTG_FORMAT = "3x,I9,3x"  
    character(*), parameter, public :: HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT = FMT_19
```

### 5.1.2 Graph options

These parameters are used for displaying data. They apply to a whole graph, which may contain more than one plot element.

The GAMELAN code chunks are part of both `graph_options` and `drawing_options`. The `drawing_options` copy is used in histograms and plots, also as graph elements. The `graph_options` copy is used for `graph` objects as a whole. Both copies are usually identical.

```
<Analysis: public>≡  
    public :: graph_options_t  
  
<Analysis: types>≡  
    type :: graph_options_t  
    private  
    type(string_t) :: id  
    type(string_t) :: title  
    type(string_t) :: description  
    type(string_t) :: x_label  
    type(string_t) :: y_label  
    integer :: width_mm = 130  
    integer :: height_mm = 90  
    logical :: x_log = .false.  
    logical :: y_log = .false.  
    real(default) :: x_min = 0  
    real(default) :: x_max = 1  
    real(default) :: y_min = 0  
    real(default) :: y_max = 1  
    logical :: x_min_set = .false.  
    logical :: x_max_set = .false.  
    logical :: y_min_set = .false.  
    logical :: y_max_set = .false.  
    type(string_t) :: gmlcode_bg  
    type(string_t) :: gmlcode_fg  
end type graph_options_t
```

Initialize the record, all strings are empty. The limits are undefined.

```
<Analysis: public>+≡  
    public :: graph_options_init  
  
<Analysis: procedures>≡  
    subroutine graph_options_init (graph_options)  
        type(graph_options_t), intent(out) :: graph_options  
        graph_options%id = ""  
        graph_options%title = ""
```

```

graph_options%description = ""
graph_options%x_label = ""
graph_options%y_label = ""
graph_options%gmlcode_bg = ""
graph_options%gmlcode_fg = ""
end subroutine graph_options_init

```

Set individual options.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: graph_options_set

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine graph_options_set (graph_options, id, &
    title, description, x_label, y_label, width_mm, height_mm, &
    x_log, y_log, x_min, x_max, y_min, y_max, &
    gmlcode_bg, gmlcode_fg)
    type(graph_options_t), intent(inout) :: graph_options
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: id
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: title
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: description
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: x_label, y_label
    integer, intent(in), optional :: width_mm, height_mm
    logical, intent(in), optional :: x_log, y_log
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_min, x_max, y_min, y_max
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: gmlcode_bg, gmlcode_fg
    if (present (id)) graph_options%id = id
    if (present (title)) graph_options%title = title
    if (present (description)) graph_options%description = description
    if (present (x_label)) graph_options%x_label = x_label
    if (present (y_label)) graph_options%y_label = y_label
    if (present (width_mm)) graph_options%width_mm = width_mm
    if (present (height_mm)) graph_options%height_mm = height_mm
    if (present (x_log)) graph_options%x_log = x_log
    if (present (y_log)) graph_options%y_log = y_log
    if (present (x_min)) graph_options%x_min = x_min
    if (present (x_max)) graph_options%x_max = x_max
    if (present (y_min)) graph_options%y_min = y_min
    if (present (y_max)) graph_options%y_max = y_max
    if (present (x_min)) graph_options%x_min_set = .true.
    if (present (x_max)) graph_options%x_max_set = .true.
    if (present (y_min)) graph_options%y_min_set = .true.
    if (present (y_max)) graph_options%y_max_set = .true.
    if (present (gmlcode_bg)) graph_options%gmlcode_bg = gmlcode_bg
    if (present (gmlcode_fg)) graph_options%gmlcode_fg = gmlcode_fg
end subroutine graph_options_set

```

Write a simple account of all options.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: graph_options_write

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine graph_options_write (gro, unit)
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit

```

```

integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit)
1 format (A,1x,'"',A,'"')
2 format (A,1x,L1)
3 format (A,1x,ES19.12)
4 format (A,1x,I0)
5 format (A,1x,'[undefined]')
write (u, 1) "title      =", char (gro%title)
write (u, 1) "description =", char (gro%description)
write (u, 1) "x_label     =", char (gro%x_label)
write (u, 1) "y_label     =", char (gro%y_label)
write (u, 2) "x_log      =", gro%x_log
write (u, 2) "y_log      =", gro%y_log
if (gro%x_min_set) then
    write (u, 3) "x_min      =", gro%x_min
else
    write (u, 5) "x_min      ="
end if
if (gro%x_max_set) then
    write (u, 3) "x_max      =", gro%x_max
else
    write (u, 5) "x_max      ="
end if
if (gro%y_min_set) then
    write (u, 3) "y_min      =", gro%y_min
else
    write (u, 5) "y_min      ="
end if
if (gro%y_max_set) then
    write (u, 3) "y_max      =", gro%y_max
else
    write (u, 5) "y_max      ="
end if
write (u, 4) "width_mm   =", gro%width_mm
write (u, 4) "height_mm  =", gro%height_mm
write (u, 1) "gmlcode_bg =", char (gro%gmlcode_bg)
write (u, 1) "gmlcode_fg =", char (gro%gmlcode_fg)
end subroutine graph_options_write

```

Write a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X header/footer for the analysis file.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_options_write_tex_header (gro, unit)
type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit)
if (gro%title /= "") then
    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)") "\section{" // char (gro%title) // "}"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "\section{" // char (quote_underscore (gro%id)) // "}"
end if
if (gro%description /= "") then

```

```

        write (u, "(A)") char (gro%description)
        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(A)") "\vspace*{\baselineskip}"
    end if
    write (u, "(A)") "\vspace*{\baselineskip}"
    write (u, "(A)") "\unitlength 1mm"
    write (u, "(A,IO,',',IO,A)") &
        "\begin{gmlgraph*}(", &
        gro%width_mm, gro%height_mm, &
        ")[dat]"
end subroutine graph_options_write_tex_header

subroutine graph_options_write_tex_footer (gro, unit)
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, width, height
    width = gro%width_mm - 10
    height = gro%height_mm - 10
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(A)") " begingmleps " "Whizard-Logo.eps";"
    write (u, "(A,IO,A,IO,A)") &
        " base := (", width, "*unitlength,", height, "*unitlength);"
    write (u, "(A)") " height := 9.6*unitlength;"
    write (u, "(A)") " width := 11.2*unitlength;"
    write (u, "(A)") " endgmleps;"
    write (u, "(A)") "\end{gmlgraph*}"
end subroutine graph_options_write_tex_footer

```

Return the analysis object ID.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function graph_options_get_id (gro) result (id)
    type(string_t) :: id
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    id = gro%id
end function graph_options_get_id

```

Create an appropriate `setup` command (linear/log).

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function graph_options_get_gml_setup (gro) result (cmd)
    type(string_t) :: cmd
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    type(string_t) :: x_str, y_str
    if (gro%x_log) then
        x_str = "log"
    else
        x_str = "linear"
    end if
    if (gro%y_log) then
        y_str = "log"
    else
        y_str = "linear"
    end if
    cmd = "setup (" // x_str // ", " // y_str // ");"
end function graph_options_get_gml_setup

```

```
end function graph_options_get_gml_setup
```

Return the labels in GAMELAN form.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```
function graph_options_get_gml_x_label (gro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
  cmd = 'label.bot (<' // '<' // gro%x_label // '>' // '>', out);'
end function graph_options_get_gml_x_label

function graph_options_get_gml_y_label (gro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
  cmd = 'label.ulft (<' // '<' // gro%y_label // '>' // '>', out);'
end function graph_options_get_gml_y_label
```

Create an appropriate **graphrange** statement for the given graph options. Where the graph options are not set, use the supplied arguments, if any, otherwise set the undefined value.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```
function graph_options_get_gml_graphrange &
  (gro, x_min, x_max, y_min, y_max) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_min, x_max, y_min, y_max
  type(string_t) :: x_min_str, x_max_str, y_min_str, y_max_str
  character(*), parameter :: fmt = "(ES15.8)"
  if (gro%x_min_set) then
    x_min_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (gro%x_min, fmt)))
  else if (present (x_min)) then
    x_min_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (x_min, fmt)))
  else
    x_min_str = "???"
  end if
  if (gro%x_max_set) then
    x_max_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (gro%x_max, fmt)))
  else if (present (x_max)) then
    x_max_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (x_max, fmt)))
  else
    x_max_str = "???"
  end if
  if (gro%y_min_set) then
    y_min_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (gro%y_min, fmt)))
  else if (present (y_min)) then
    y_min_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (y_min, fmt)))
  else
    y_min_str = "???"
  end if
  if (gro%y_max_set) then
    y_max_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (gro%y_max, fmt)))
  else if (present (y_max)) then
    y_max_str = "#" // trim (adjustl (real2string (y_max, fmt)))
  else
    y_max_str = "???"
  end if
```

```

        y_max_str = "??"
    end if
    cmd = "graphrange (" // x_min_str // ", " // y_min_str // "), " &
        // "(" // x_max_str // ", " // y_max_str // ");"
end function graph_options_get_gml_graphrange

```

Get extra GAMELAN code to be executed before and after the usual drawing commands.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function graph_options_get_gml_bg_command (gro) result (cmd)
    type(string_t) :: cmd
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    cmd = gro%gmlcode_bg
end function graph_options_get_gml_bg_command

function graph_options_get_gml_fg_command (gro) result (cmd)
    type(string_t) :: cmd
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: gro
    cmd = gro%gmlcode_fg
end function graph_options_get_gml_fg_command

```

Append the header for generic data output in ifile format. We print only labels, not graphics parameters.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine graph_options_get_header (pl, header, comment)
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in) :: pl
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
    type(string_t) :: c
    if (present (comment)) then
        c = comment
    else
        c = ""
    end if
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "ID: " // pl%id)
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "title: " // pl%title)
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "description: " // pl%description)
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "x axis label: " // pl%x_label)
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "y axis label: " // pl%y_label)
end subroutine graph_options_get_header

```

### 5.1.3 Drawing options

These options apply to an individual graph element (histogram or plot).

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: drawing_options_t

```

```

<Analysis: types>+=
  type :: drawing_options_t
    type(string_t) :: dataset
    logical :: with_hbars = .false.
    logical :: with_base = .false.
    logical :: piecewise = .false.
    logical :: fill = .false.
    logical :: draw = .false.
    logical :: err = .false.
    logical :: symbols = .false.
    type(string_t) :: fill_options
    type(string_t) :: draw_options
    type(string_t) :: err_options
    type(string_t) :: symbol
    type(string_t) :: gmlcode_bg
    type(string_t) :: gmlcode_fg
  end type drawing_options_t

```

Write a simple account of all options.

```

<Analysis: public>+=
  public :: drawing_options_write

<Analysis: procedures>+=
  subroutine drawing_options_write (dro, unit)
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
1   format (A,1x,'"',A,'"')
2   format (A,1x,L1)
    write (u, 2) "with_hbars =", dro%with_hbars
    write (u, 2) "with_base  =", dro%with_base
    write (u, 2) "piecewise  =", dro%piecewise
    write (u, 2) "fill       =", dro%fill
    write (u, 2) "draw       =", dro%draw
    write (u, 2) "err        =", dro%err
    write (u, 2) "symbols    =", dro%symbols
    write (u, 1) "fill_options=", char (dro%fill_options)
    write (u, 1) "draw_options=", char (dro%draw_options)
    write (u, 1) "err_options =", char (dro%err_options)
    write (u, 1) "symbol     =", char (dro%symbol)
    write (u, 1) "gmlcode_bg  =", char (dro%gmlcode_bg)
    write (u, 1) "gmlcode_fg  =", char (dro%gmlcode_fg)
  end subroutine drawing_options_write

```

Init with empty strings and default options, appropriate for either histogram or plot.

```

<Analysis: public>+=
  public :: drawing_options_init_histogram
  public :: drawing_options_init_plot

<Analysis: procedures>+=
  subroutine drawing_options_init_histogram (dro)
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(out) :: dro

```

```

dro%dataset = "dat"
dro%with_hbars = .true.
dro%with_base = .true.
dro%piecewise = .true.
dro%fill = .true.
dro%draw = .true.
dro%fill_options = "withcolor col.default"
dro%draw_options = ""
dro%err_options = ""
dro%symbol = "fshape(circle scaled 1mm())"
dro%gmlcode_bg = ""
dro%gmlcode_fg = ""
end subroutine drawing_options_init_histogram

```

```

subroutine drawing_options_init_plot (dro)
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(out) :: dro
  dro%dataset = "dat"
  dro%draw = .true.
  dro%fill_options = "withcolor col.default"
  dro%draw_options = ""
  dro%err_options = ""
  dro%symbol = "fshape(circle scaled 1mm())"
  dro%gmlcode_bg = ""
  dro%gmlcode_fg = ""
end subroutine drawing_options_init_plot

```

Set individual options.

*<Analysis: public>+≡*

```
public :: drawing_options_set
```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine drawing_options_set (dro, dataset, &
  with_hbars, with_base, piecewise, fill, draw, err, symbols, &
  fill_options, draw_options, err_options, symbol, &
  gmlcode_bg, gmlcode_fg)
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(inout) :: dro
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: dataset
  logical, intent(in), optional :: with_hbars, with_base, piecewise
  logical, intent(in), optional :: fill, draw, err, symbols
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: fill_options, draw_options
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: err_options, symbol
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: gmlcode_bg, gmlcode_fg
  if (present (dataset)) dro%dataset = dataset
  if (present (with_hbars)) dro%with_hbars = with_hbars
  if (present (with_base)) dro%with_base = with_base
  if (present (piecewise)) dro%piecewise = piecewise
  if (present (fill)) dro%fill = fill
  if (present (draw)) dro%draw = draw
  if (present (err)) dro%err = err
  if (present (symbols)) dro%symbols = symbols
  if (present (fill_options)) dro%fill_options = fill_options
  if (present (draw_options)) dro%draw_options = draw_options
  if (present (err_options)) dro%err_options = err_options
  if (present (symbol)) dro%symbol = symbol

```



```

    if (present (gmlcode_bg)) dro%gmlcode_bg = gmlcode_bg
    if (present (gmlcode_fg)) dro%gmlcode_fg = gmlcode_fg
end subroutine drawing_options_set

```

There are separate commands for drawing the curve and for drawing errors. The symbols are applied to the latter. First of all, we may have to compute a baseline:

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function drawing_options_get_calc_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  if (dro%with_base) then
    cmd = "calculate " // dro%dataset // ".base (" // dro%dataset // ") " &
      // "(x, #0);"
  else
    cmd = ""
  end if
end function drawing_options_get_calc_command

```

Return the drawing command.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function drawing_options_get_draw_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  if (dro%fill) then
    cmd = "fill"
  else if (dro%draw) then
    cmd = "draw"
  else
    cmd = ""
  end if
  if (dro%fill .or. dro%draw) then
    if (dro%piecewise) cmd = cmd // " piecewise"
    if (dro%draw .and. dro%with_base) cmd = cmd // " cyclic"
    cmd = cmd // " from (" // dro%dataset
    if (dro%with_base) then
      if (dro%piecewise) then
        cmd = cmd // ", " // dro%dataset // ".base\" ! "
      else
        cmd = cmd // " ~ " // dro%dataset // ".base\" ! "
      end if
    end if
    cmd = cmd // ")"
    if (dro%fill) then
      cmd = cmd // " " // dro%fill_options
      if (dro%draw) cmd = cmd // " outlined"
    end if
    if (dro%draw) cmd = cmd // " " // dro%draw_options
    cmd = cmd // ";"
  end if
end function drawing_options_get_draw_command

```

The error command draws error bars, if any.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function drawing_options_get_err_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  if (dro%err) then
    cmd = "draw piecewise " &
      // "from (" // dro%dataset // ".err)" &
      // " " // dro%err_options // ";"
  else
    cmd = ""
  end if
end function drawing_options_get_err_command

```

The symbol command draws symbols, if any.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function drawing_options_get_symb_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  if (dro%symbols) then
    cmd = "phantom" &
      // " from (" // dro%dataset // ")" &
      // " withsymbol (" // dro%symbol // ");"
  else
    cmd = ""
  end if
end function drawing_options_get_symb_command

```

Get extra GAMELAN code to be executed before and after the usual drawing commands.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function drawing_options_get_gml_bg_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  cmd = dro%gmlcode_bg
end function drawing_options_get_gml_bg_command

function drawing_options_get_gml_fg_command (dro) result (cmd)
  type(string_t) :: cmd
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in) :: dro
  cmd = dro%gmlcode_fg
end function drawing_options_get_gml_fg_command

```

#### 5.1.4 Observables

The observable type holds the accumulated observable values and weight sums which are necessary for proper averaging.

```

<Analysis: types>+≡
type :: observable_t
  private
  real(default) :: sum_values = 0

```

```

    real(default) :: sum_squared_values = 0
    real(default) :: sum_weights = 0
    real(default) :: sum_squared_weights = 0
    integer :: count = 0
    type(string_t) :: obs_label
    type(string_t) :: obs_unit
    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
end type observable_t

```

Initialize with defined properties

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine observable_init (obs, obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options)
    type(observable_t), intent(out) :: obs
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
    if (present (obs_label)) then
        obs%obs_label = obs_label
    else
        obs%obs_label = ""
    end if
    if (present (obs_unit)) then
        obs%obs_unit = obs_unit
    else
        obs%obs_unit = ""
    end if
    if (present (graph_options)) then
        obs%graph_options = graph_options
    else
        call graph_options_init (obs%graph_options)
    end if
end subroutine observable_init

```

Reset all numeric entries.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine observable_clear (obs)
    type(observable_t), intent(inout) :: obs
    obs%sum_values = 0
    obs%sum_squared_values = 0
    obs%sum_weights = 0
    obs%sum_squared_weights = 0
    obs%count = 0
end subroutine observable_clear

```

Record a a value. Always successful for observables.

*<Analysis: interfaces>≡*

```

interface observable_record_value
    module procedure observable_record_value_unweighted
    module procedure observable_record_value_weighted
end interface

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine observable_record_value_unweighted (obs, value, success)

```

```

type(observable_t), intent(inout) :: obs
real(default), intent(in) :: value
logical, intent(out), optional :: success
obs%sum_values = obs%sum_values + value
obs%sum_squared_values = obs%sum_squared_values + value**2
obs%sum_weights = obs%sum_weights + 1
obs%sum_squared_weights = obs%sum_squared_weights + 1
obs%count = obs%count + 1
if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine observable_record_value_unweighted

subroutine observable_record_value_weighted (obs, value, weight, success)
type(observable_t), intent(inout) :: obs
real(default), intent(in) :: value, weight
logical, intent(out), optional :: success
obs%sum_values = obs%sum_values + value * weight
obs%sum_squared_values = obs%sum_squared_values + value**2 * weight
obs%sum_weights = obs%sum_weights + abs (weight)
obs%sum_squared_weights = obs%sum_squared_weights + weight**2
obs%count = obs%count + 1
if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine observable_record_value_weighted

```

Here are the statistics formulas:

1. Unweighted case: Given a sample of  $n$  values  $x_i$ , the average is

$$\langle x \rangle = \frac{\sum x_i}{n} \quad (5.1)$$

and the error estimate

$$\Delta x = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \langle \sum (x_i - \langle x \rangle)^2 \rangle} \quad (5.2)$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \left( \frac{\sum x_i^2}{n} - \frac{(\sum x_i)^2}{n^2} \right)} \quad (5.3)$$

2. Weighted case: Instead of weight 1, each event comes with weight  $w_i$ .

$$\langle x \rangle = \frac{\sum x_i w_i}{\sum w_i} \quad (5.4)$$

and

$$\Delta x = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \left( \frac{\sum x_i^2 w_i}{\sum w_i} - \frac{(\sum x_i w_i)^2}{(\sum w_i)^2} \right)} \quad (5.5)$$

For  $w_i = 1$ , this specializes to the previous formula.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function observable_get_n_entries (obs) result (n)
integer :: n
type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
n = obs%count

```

```

end function observable_get_n_entries

function observable_get_average (obs) result (avg)
  real(default) :: avg
  type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
  if (obs%sum_weights /= 0) then
    avg = obs%sum_values / obs%sum_weights
  else
    avg = 0
  end if
end function observable_get_average

function observable_get_error (obs) result (err)
  real(default) :: err
  type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
  real(default) :: var, n
  if (obs%sum_weights /= 0) then
    select case (obs%count)
    case (0:1)
      err = 0
    case default
      n = obs%count
      var = obs%sum_squared_values / obs%sum_weights &
        - (obs%sum_values / obs%sum_weights) ** 2
      err = sqrt (max (var, 0._default) / (n - 1))
    end select
  else
    err = 0
  end if
end function observable_get_error

```

Write label and/or physical unit to a string.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function observable_get_label (obs, wl, wu) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
  logical, intent(in) :: wl, wu
  type(string_t) :: obs_label, obs_unit
  if (wl) then
    if (obs%obs_label /= "") then
      obs_label = obs%obs_label
    else
      obs_label = "\textrm{Observable}"
    end if
  else
    obs_label = ""
  end if
  if (wu) then
    if (obs%obs_unit /= "") then
      if (wl) then
        obs_unit = "\;[" // obs%obs_unit // "]"
      else
        obs_unit = obs%obs_unit
      end if
    end if
  end if
end function observable_get_label

```

```

        end if
    else
        obs_unit = ""
    end if
else
    obs_unit = ""
end if
string = obs_label // obs_unit
end function observable_get_label

```

### 5.1.5 Output

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine observable_write (obs, unit)
    type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    real(default) :: avg, err, relerr
    integer :: n
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    avg = observable_get_average (obs)
    err = observable_get_error (obs)
    if (avg /= 0) then
        relerr = err / avg
    else
        relerr = 0
    end if
    n = observable_get_n_entries (obs)
    if (obs%graph_options%title /= "") then
        write (u, "(A,1x,3A)") &
            "title      =", "'", char (obs%graph_options%title), "'"
    end if
    if (obs%graph_options%description /= "") then
        write (u, "(A,1x,3A)") &
            "description =", "'", char (obs%graph_options%description), "'"
    end if
    write (u, "(A,1x," // HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT // ") ", advance = "no") &
        "average      =", avg
    call write_unit ()
    write (u, "(A,1x," // HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT // ") ", advance = "no") &
        "error[abs]   =", err
    call write_unit ()
    write (u, "(A,1x," // HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT // ") ") &
        "error[rel]  =", relerr
    write (u, "(A,1x,I0)") &
        "n_entries   =", n
contains
    subroutine write_unit ()
        if (obs%obs_unit /= "") then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") char (obs%obs_unit)
        else
            write (u, *)
        end if
    end subroutine write_unit
end subroutine observable_write

```

```

end subroutine write_unit
end subroutine observable_write

```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X output.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine observable_write_driver (obs, unit, write_heading)
  type(observable_t), intent(in) :: obs
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: write_heading
  real(default) :: avg, err
  integer :: n_digits
  logical :: heading
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  heading = .true.; if (present (write_heading)) heading = write_heading
  avg = observable_get_average (obs)
  err = observable_get_error (obs)
  if (avg /= 0 .and. err /= 0) then
    n_digits = max (2, 2 - int (log10 (abs (err / real (avg, default)))))
  else if (avg /= 0) then
    n_digits = 100
  else
    n_digits = 1
  end if
  if (heading) then
    write (u, "(A)")
    if (obs%graph_options%title /= "") then
      write (u, "(A)") "\section{" // char (obs%graph_options%title) &
        // "}"
    else
      write (u, "(A)") "\section{Observable}"
    end if
    if (obs%graph_options%description /= "") then
      write (u, "(A)") char (obs%graph_options%description)
      write (u, *)
    end if
    write (u, "(A)") "\begin{flushleft}"
  end if
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "  $\langle$ " ! $ sign
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (observable_get_label (obs, wl=.true., wu=.false.))
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\rangle = "
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (tex_format (avg, n_digits))
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\pm"
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (tex_format (err, 2))
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\;{"
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (observable_get_label (obs, wl=.false., wu=.true.))
  write (u, "(A)") "}"
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "  \quad[n_{\text{entries}}] = "
  write (u, "(IO)", advance="no") observable_get_n_entries (obs)
  write (u, "(A)") "]"$ " ! $ fool Emacs' noweb mode
  if (heading) then
    write (u, "(A)") "\end{flushleft}"
  end if
end if

```

```
end subroutine observable_write_driver
```

## 5.1.6 Histograms

### Bins

*<Analysis: types>+≡*

```
type :: bin_t
  private
  real(default) :: midpoint = 0
  real(default) :: width = 0
  real(default) :: sum_weights = 0
  real(default) :: sum_squared_weights = 0
  real(default) :: sum_excess_weights = 0
  integer :: count = 0
end type bin_t
```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine bin_init (bin, midpoint, width)
  type(bin_t), intent(out) :: bin
  real(default), intent(in) :: midpoint, width
  bin%midpoint = midpoint
  bin%width = width
end subroutine bin_init
```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
elemental subroutine bin_clear (bin)
  type(bin_t), intent(inout) :: bin
  bin%sum_weights = 0
  bin%sum_squared_weights = 0
  bin%sum_excess_weights = 0
  bin%count = 0
end subroutine bin_clear
```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine bin_record_value (bin, normalize, weight, excess)
  type(bin_t), intent(inout) :: bin
  logical, intent(in) :: normalize
  real(default), intent(in) :: weight
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: excess
  real(default) :: w, e
  if (normalize) then
    if (bin%width /= 0) then
      w = weight / bin%width
      if (present (excess)) e = excess / bin%width
    else
      w = 0
      if (present (excess)) e = 0
    end if
  else
    w = weight
    if (present (excess)) e = excess
  end if
```



```

end if
bin%sum_weights = bin%sum_weights + abs (w)
bin%sum_squared_weights = bin%sum_squared_weights + w ** 2
if (present (excess)) &
    bin%sum_excess_weights = bin%sum_excess_weights + abs (e)
bin%count = bin%count + 1
end subroutine bin_record_value

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function bin_get_midpoint (bin) result (x)
    real(default) :: x
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    x = bin%midpoint
end function bin_get_midpoint

```

```

function bin_get_width (bin) result (w)
    real(default) :: w
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    w = bin%width
end function bin_get_width

```

```

function bin_get_n_entries (bin) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    n = bin%count
end function bin_get_n_entries

```

```

function bin_get_sum (bin) result (s)
    real(default) :: s
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    s = bin%sum_weights
end function bin_get_sum

```

```

function bin_get_error (bin) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    err = sqrt (bin%sum_squared_weights)
end function bin_get_error

```

```

function bin_get_excess (bin) result (excess)
    real(default) :: excess
    type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
    excess = bin%sum_excess_weights
end function bin_get_excess

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine bin_write_header (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(120) :: buffer
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (buffer, "(A,4(1x," //HISTOGRAM_HEAD_FORMAT // "),2x,A)") &
        "#", "bin midpoint", "value", "error", "&

```

```

        "excess      ", "n"
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end subroutine bin_write_header

    subroutine bin_write (bin, unit)
        type(bin_t), intent(in) :: bin
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(1x,4(1x," // HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT // "),2x,IO)") &
            bin_get_midpoint (bin), &
            bin_get_sum (bin), &
            bin_get_error (bin), &
            bin_get_excess (bin), &
            bin_get_n_entries (bin)
    end subroutine bin_write

```

## Histograms

*<Analysis: types>+≡*

```

    type :: histogram_t
    private
    real(default) :: lower_bound = 0
    real(default) :: upper_bound = 0
    real(default) :: width = 0
    integer :: n_bins = 0
    logical :: normalize_bins = .false.
    type(observable_t) :: obs
    type(observable_t) :: obs_within_bounds
    type(bin_t) :: underflow
    type(bin_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: bin
    type(bin_t) :: overflow
    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
    type(drawing_options_t) :: drawing_options
end type histogram_t

```

## Initializer/finalizer

Initialize a histogram. We may provide either the bin width or the number of bins. A finalizer is not needed, since the histogram contains no pointer (sub)components.

*<Analysis: interfaces>+≡*

```

    interface histogram_init
        module procedure histogram_init_n_bins
        module procedure histogram_init_bin_width
    end interface

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine histogram_init_n_bins (h, id, &
        lower_bound, upper_bound, n_bins, normalize_bins, &

```

```

        obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(histogram_t), intent(out) :: h
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
real(default), intent(in) :: lower_bound, upper_bound
integer, intent(in) :: n_bins
logical, intent(in) :: normalize_bins
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
real(default) :: bin_width
integer :: i
call observable_init (h%obs_within_bounds, obs_label, obs_unit)
call observable_init (h%obs, obs_label, obs_unit)
h%lower_bound = lower_bound
h%upper_bound = upper_bound
h%n_bins = max (n_bins, 1)
h%width = h%upper_bound - h%lower_bound
h%normalize_bins = normalize_bins
bin_width = h%width / h%n_bins
allocate (h%bin (h%n_bins))
call bin_init (h%underflow, h%lower_bound, 0._default)
do i = 1, h%n_bins
    call bin_init (h%bin(i), &
        h%lower_bound - bin_width/2 + i * bin_width, bin_width)
end do
call bin_init (h%overflow, h%upper_bound, 0._default)
if (present (graph_options)) then
    h%graph_options = graph_options
else
    call graph_options_init (h%graph_options)
end if
call graph_options_set (h%graph_options, id = id)
if (present (drawing_options)) then
    h%drawing_options = drawing_options
else
    call drawing_options_init_histogram (h%drawing_options)
end if
end subroutine histogram_init_n_bins

subroutine histogram_init_bin_width (h, id, &
    lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width, normalize_bins, &
    obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(histogram_t), intent(out) :: h
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
real(default), intent(in) :: lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width
logical, intent(in) :: normalize_bins
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
integer :: n_bins
if (bin_width /= 0) then
    n_bins = nint ((upper_bound - lower_bound) / bin_width)
else
    n_bins = 1

```

```

end if
call histogram_init_n_bins (h, id, &
    lower_bound, upper_bound, n_bins, normalize_bins, &
    obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
end subroutine histogram_init_bin_width

```

Initialize a histogram by copying another one.

Since `h` has no pointer (sub)components, intrinsic assignment is sufficient. Optionally, we replace the drawing options.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine histogram_init_histogram (h, h_in, drawing_options)
    type(histogram_t), intent(out) :: h
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h_in
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
    h = h_in
    if (present (drawing_options)) then
        h%drawing_options = drawing_options
    end if
end subroutine histogram_init_histogram

```

## Fill histograms

Clear the histogram contents, but do not modify the structure.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine histogram_clear (h)
    type(histogram_t), intent(inout) :: h
    call observable_clear (h%obs)
    call observable_clear (h%obs_within_bounds)
    call bin_clear (h%underflow)
    if (allocated (h%bin)) call bin_clear (h%bin)
    call bin_clear (h%overflow)
end subroutine histogram_clear

```

Record a value. Successful if the value is within bounds, otherwise it is recorded as under-/overflow. Optionally, we may provide an excess weight that could be returned by the unweighting procedure.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine histogram_record_value_unweighted (h, value, excess, success)
    type(histogram_t), intent(inout) :: h
    real(default), intent(in) :: value
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: excess
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    integer :: i_bin
    call observable_record_value (h%obs, value)
    if (h%width /= 0) then
        i_bin = floor (((value - h%lower_bound) / h%width) * h%n_bins) + 1
    else
        i_bin = 0
    end if
    if (i_bin <= 0) then
        call bin_record_value (h%underflow, .false., 1._default, excess)
    end if
end subroutine histogram_record_value_unweighted

```

```

        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    else if (i_bin <= h%n_bins) then
        call observable_record_value (h%obs_within_bounds, value)
        call bin_record_value &
            (h%bin(i_bin), h%normalize_bins, 1._default, excess)
        if (present (success)) success = .true.
    else
        call bin_record_value (h%overflow, .false., 1._default, excess)
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end if
end subroutine histogram_record_value_unweighted

```

Weighted events: analogous, but no excess weight.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine histogram_record_value_weighted (h, value, weight, success)
    type(histogram_t), intent(inout) :: h
    real(default), intent(in) :: value, weight
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    integer :: i_bin
    call observable_record_value (h%obs, value, weight)
    if (h%width /= 0) then
        i_bin = floor (((value - h%lower_bound) / h%width) * h%n_bins) + 1
    else
        i_bin = 0
    end if
    if (i_bin <= 0) then
        call bin_record_value (h%underflow, .false., weight)
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    else if (i_bin <= h%n_bins) then
        call observable_record_value (h%obs_within_bounds, value, weight)
        call bin_record_value (h%bin(i_bin), h%normalize_bins, weight)
        if (present (success)) success = .true.
    else
        call bin_record_value (h%overflow, .false., weight)
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end if
end subroutine histogram_record_value_weighted

```

## Access contents

Inherited from the observable component (all-over average etc.)

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function histogram_get_n_entries (h) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    n = observable_get_n_entries (h%obs)
end function histogram_get_n_entries

function histogram_get_average (h) result (avg)
    real(default) :: avg
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    avg = observable_get_average (h%obs)

```

```

end function histogram_get_average

function histogram_get_error (h) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    err = observable_get_error (h%obs)
end function histogram_get_error

```

Analogous, but applied only to events within bounds.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function histogram_get_n_entries_within_bounds (h) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    n = observable_get_n_entries (h%obs_within_bounds)
end function histogram_get_n_entries_within_bounds

function histogram_get_average_within_bounds (h) result (avg)
    real(default) :: avg
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    avg = observable_get_average (h%obs_within_bounds)
end function histogram_get_average_within_bounds

function histogram_get_error_within_bounds (h) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    err = observable_get_error (h%obs_within_bounds)
end function histogram_get_error_within_bounds

```

Get the number of bins

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function histogram_get_n_bins (h) result (n)
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    integer :: n
    n = h%n_bins
end function histogram_get_n_bins

```

Check bins. If the index is zero or above the limit, return the results for underflow or overflow, respectively.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function histogram_get_n_entries_for_bin (h, i) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    if (i <= 0) then
        n = bin_get_n_entries (h%underflow)
    else if (i <= h%n_bins) then
        n = bin_get_n_entries (h%bin(i))
    else
        n = bin_get_n_entries (h%overflow)
    end if
end function histogram_get_n_entries_for_bin

```

```

function histogram_get_sum_for_bin (h, i) result (avg)
  real(default) :: avg
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  if (i <= 0) then
    avg = bin_get_sum (h%underflow)
  else if (i <= h%n_bins) then
    avg = bin_get_sum (h%bin(i))
  else
    avg = bin_get_sum (h%overflow)
  end if
end function histogram_get_sum_for_bin

function histogram_get_error_for_bin (h, i) result (err)
  real(default) :: err
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  if (i <= 0) then
    err = bin_get_error (h%underflow)
  else if (i <= h%n_bins) then
    err = bin_get_error (h%bin(i))
  else
    err = bin_get_error (h%overflow)
  end if
end function histogram_get_error_for_bin

function histogram_get_excess_for_bin (h, i) result (err)
  real(default) :: err
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  if (i <= 0) then
    err = bin_get_excess (h%underflow)
  else if (i <= h%n_bins) then
    err = bin_get_excess (h%bin(i))
  else
    err = bin_get_excess (h%overflow)
  end if
end function histogram_get_excess_for_bin

```

Return a pointer to the graph options.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function histogram_get_graph_options_ptr (h) result (ptr)
  type(graph_options_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(histogram_t), intent(in), target :: h
  ptr => h%graph_options
end function histogram_get_graph_options_ptr

```

Return a pointer to the drawing options.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function histogram_get_drawing_options_ptr (h) result (ptr)
  type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(histogram_t), intent(in), target :: h
  ptr => h%drawing_options

```

```
end function histogram_get_drawing_options_ptr
```

## Output

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine histogram_write (h, unit)
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call bin_write_header (u)
  if (allocated (h%bin)) then
    do i = 1, h%n_bins
      call bin_write (h%bin(i), u)
    end do
  end if
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)" ) "#", "Underflow:"
  call bin_write (h%underflow, u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)" ) "#", "Overflow:"
  call bin_write (h%overflow, u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)" ) "#", "Summary: data within bounds"
  call observable_write (h%obs_within_bounds, u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)" ) "#", "Summary: all data"
  call observable_write (h%obs, u)
  write (u, *)
end subroutine histogram_write
```

Write the GAMELAN reader for histogram contents.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine histogram_write_gml_reader (h, filename, unit)
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  character(*), parameter :: fmt = "(ES15.8)"
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(2x,A)" ) 'fromfile "' // char (filename) // '":'
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'key "# Histogram:";'
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'dx := #' &
    // real2char (h%width / h%n_bins / 2, fmt) // ';'
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'for i withinblock:'
  write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'get x, y, y.d, y.n, y.e;'
  if (h%drawing_options%with_hbars) then
    write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'plot (' // char (h%drawing_options%dataset) &
      // ')' (x,y) hbar dx;'
  else
    write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'plot (' // char (h%drawing_options%dataset) &
      // ')' (x,y);'
```



```

end if
if (h%drawing_options%err) then
  write (u, "(6x,A)") 'plot (' // char (h%drawing_options%dataset) &
    // '.err) ' &
    // '(x,y) vbar y.d;'
end if
!!! Future excess options for plots
! write (u, "(6x,A)") 'if show_excess: ' // &
!           & 'plot(dat.e)(x, y plus y.e) hbar dx; fi'
write (u, "(4x,A)") 'endfor'
write (u, "(2x,A)") 'endfrom'
end subroutine histogram_write_gml_reader

```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and GAMELAN output.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine histogram_write_gml_driver (h, filename, unit)
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(string_t) :: calc_cmd, bg_cmd, draw_cmd, err_cmd, symb_cmd, fg_cmd
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call graph_options_write_tex_header (h%graph_options, unit)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_setup (h%graph_options))
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_graphrange &
    (h%graph_options, x_min=h%lower_bound, x_max=h%upper_bound))
  call histogram_write_gml_reader (h, filename, unit)
  calc_cmd = drawing_options_get_calc_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (calc_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (calc_cmd)
  bg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_bg_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (bg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (bg_cmd)
  draw_cmd = drawing_options_get_draw_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (draw_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (draw_cmd)
  err_cmd = drawing_options_get_err_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (err_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (err_cmd)
  symb_cmd = drawing_options_get_symb_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (symb_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (symb_cmd)
  fg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_fg_command (h%drawing_options)
  if (fg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (fg_cmd)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_x_label (h%graph_options))
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_y_label (h%graph_options))
  call graph_options_write_tex_footer (h%graph_options, unit)
  write (u, "(A)") "\vspace*{2\baselineskip}"
  write (u, "(A)") "\begin{flushleft}"
  write (u, "(A)") "\textbf{Data within bounds:} \\"
  call observable_write_driver (h%obs_within_bounds, unit, &
    write_heading=.false.)
  write (u, "(A)") "\\[0.5\baselineskip]"
  write (u, "(A)") "\textbf{All data:} \\"
  call observable_write_driver (h%obs, unit, write_heading=.false.)
  write (u, "(A)") "\end{flushleft}"
end subroutine histogram_write_gml_driver

```

Return the header for generic data output as an ifile.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine histogram_get_header (h, header, comment)
  type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
  type(string_t) :: c
  if (present (comment)) then
    c = comment
  else
    c = ""
  end if
  call ifile_append (header, c // "WHIZARD histogram data")
  call graph_options_get_header (h%graph_options, header, comment)
  call ifile_append (header, &
    c // "range: " // real2string (h%lower_bound) &
    // " - " // real2string (h%upper_bound))
  call ifile_append (header, &
    c // "counts total: " &
    // int2char (histogram_get_n_entries_within_bounds (h)))
  call ifile_append (header, &
    c // "total average: " &
    // real2string (histogram_get_average_within_bounds (h)) // " +- " &
    // real2string (histogram_get_error_within_bounds (h)))
end subroutine histogram_get_header

```

## 5.1.7 Plots

### Points

```

<Analysis: types>+≡
type :: point_t
  private
  real(default) :: x = 0
  real(default) :: y = 0
  real(default) :: yerr = 0
  real(default) :: xerr = 0
  type(point_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type point_t

<Analysis: interfaces>+≡
interface point_init
  module procedure point_init_contents
  module procedure point_init_point
end interface

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine point_init_contents (point, x, y, yerr, xerr)
  type(point_t), intent(out) :: point
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, y
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: yerr, xerr
  point%x = x
  point%y = y

```

```

        if (present (yerr)) point%yerr = yerr
        if (present (xerr)) point%xerr = xerr
    end subroutine point_init_contents

    subroutine point_init_point (point, point_in)
        type(point_t), intent(out) :: point
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point_in
        point%x = point_in%x
        point%y = point_in%y
        point%yerr = point_in%yerr
        point%xerr = point_in%xerr
    end subroutine point_init_point

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

    function point_get_x (point) result (x)
        real(default) :: x
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point
        x = point%x
    end function point_get_x

    function point_get_y (point) result (y)
        real(default) :: y
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point
        y = point%y
    end function point_get_y

    function point_get_xerr (point) result (xerr)
        real(default) :: xerr
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point
        xerr = point%xerr
    end function point_get_xerr

    function point_get_yerr (point) result (yerr)
        real(default) :: yerr
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point
        yerr = point%yerr
    end function point_get_yerr

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine point_write_header (unit)
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        character(120) :: buffer
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (buffer, "(A,4(1x," // HISTOGRAM_HEAD_FORMAT // "))" &
            "#", "x", "y", "yerr", "xerr"
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end subroutine point_write_header

    subroutine point_write (point, unit)
        type(point_t), intent(in) :: point
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u

```

```

u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(1x,4(1x," // HISTOGRAM_DATA_FORMAT // "))" ) &
    point_get_x (point), &
    point_get_y (point), &
    point_get_yerr (point), &
    point_get_xerr (point)
end subroutine point_write

```

## Plots

*<Analysis: types>+≡*

```

type :: plot_t
private
type(point_t), pointer :: first => null ()
type(point_t), pointer :: last => null ()
integer :: count = 0
type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t) :: drawing_options
end type plot_t

```

## Initializer/finalizer

Initialize a plot. We provide the lower and upper bound in the  $x$  direction.

*<Analysis: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface plot_init
module procedure plot_init_empty
module procedure plot_init_plot
end interface

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine plot_init_empty (p, id, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(plot_t), intent(out) :: p
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
if (present (graph_options)) then
    p%graph_options = graph_options
else
    call graph_options_init (p%graph_options)
end if
call graph_options_set (p%graph_options, id = id)
if (present (drawing_options)) then
    p%drawing_options = drawing_options
else
    call drawing_options_init_plot (p%drawing_options)
end if
end subroutine plot_init_empty

```

Initialize a plot by copying another one, optionally merging in a new set of drawing options.

Since `p` has pointer (sub)components, we have to explicitly deep-copy the original.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_init_plot (p, p_in, drawing_options)
  type(plot_t), intent(out) :: p
  type(plot_t), intent(in) :: p_in
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
  type(point_t), pointer :: current, new
  current => p_in%first
  do while (associated (current))
    allocate (new)
    call point_init (new, current)
    if (associated (p%last)) then
      p%last%next => new
    else
      p%first => new
    end if
    p%last => new
    current => current%next
  end do
  p%count = p_in%count
  p%graph_options = p_in%graph_options
  if (present (drawing_options)) then
    p%drawing_options = drawing_options
  else
    p%drawing_options = p_in%drawing_options
  end if
end subroutine plot_init_plot
```

Finalize the plot by deallocating the list of points.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_final (plot)
  type(plot_t), intent(inout) :: plot
  type(point_t), pointer :: current
  do while (associated (plot%first))
    current => plot%first
    plot%first => current%next
    deallocate (current)
  end do
  plot%last => null ()
end subroutine plot_final
```

## Fill plots

Clear the plot contents, but do not modify the structure.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_clear (plot)
  type(plot_t), intent(inout) :: plot
  plot%count = 0
  call plot_final (plot)
end subroutine plot_clear
```

Record a value. Successful if the value is within bounds, otherwise it is recorded as under-/overflow.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_record_value (plot, x, y, yerr, xerr, success)
  type(plot_t), intent(inout) :: plot
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, y
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: yerr, xerr
  logical, intent(out), optional :: success
  type(point_t), pointer :: point
  plot%count = plot%count + 1
  allocate (point)
  call point_init (point, x, y, yerr, xerr)
  if (associated (plot%first)) then
    plot%last%next => point
  else
    plot%first => point
  end if
  plot%last => point
  if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine plot_record_value
```

## Access contents

The number of points.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
function plot_get_n_entries (plot) result (n)
  integer :: n
  type(plot_t), intent(in) :: plot
  n = plot%count
end function plot_get_n_entries
```

Return a pointer to the graph options.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
function plot_get_graph_options_ptr (p) result (ptr)
  type(graph_options_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(plot_t), intent(in), target :: p
  ptr => p%graph_options
end function plot_get_graph_options_ptr
```

Return a pointer to the drawing options.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
function plot_get_drawing_options_ptr (p) result (ptr)
  type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(plot_t), intent(in), target :: p
  ptr => p%drawing_options
end function plot_get_drawing_options_ptr
```

## Output

This output format is used by the GAMELAN driver below.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_write (plot, unit)
  type(plot_t), intent(in) :: plot
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(point_t), pointer :: point
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call point_write_header (u)
  point => plot%first
  do while (associated (point))
    call point_write (point, unit)
    point => point%next
  end do
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)" ) "#", "Summary:"
  write (u, "(A,1x,I0)" ) &
    "n_entries =", plot_get_n_entries (plot)
  write (u, *)
end subroutine plot_write
```

Write the GAMELAN reader for plot contents.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_write_gml_reader (p, filename, unit)
  type(plot_t), intent(in) :: p
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(2x,A)" ) 'fromfile "' // char (filename) // '":'
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'key "# Plot:";'
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'for i withinblock:'
  write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'get x, y, y.err, x.err;'
  write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'plot (' // char (p%drawing_options%dataset) &
    // ')' (x,y);'
  if (p%drawing_options%err) then
    write (u, "(6x,A)" ) 'plot (' // char (p%drawing_options%dataset) &
      // '.err) (x,y) vbar y.err hbar x.err;'
  end if
  write (u, "(4x,A)" ) 'endfor'
  write (u, "(2x,A)" ) 'endfrom'
end subroutine plot_write_gml_reader
```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and GAMELAN output. Analogous to histogram output.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine plot_write_gml_driver (p, filename, unit)
  type(plot_t), intent(in) :: p
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(string_t) :: calc_cmd, bg_cmd, draw_cmd, err_cmd, symb_cmd, fg_cmd
  integer :: u
```

```

u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call graph_options_write_tex_header (p%graph_options, unit)
write (u, "(2x,A)") &
    char (graph_options_get_gml_setup (p%graph_options))
write (u, "(2x,A)") &
    char (graph_options_get_gml_graphrange (p%graph_options))
call plot_write_gml_reader (p, filename, unit)
calc_cmd = drawing_options_get_calc_command (p%drawing_options)
if (calc_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (calc_cmd)
bg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_bg_command (p%drawing_options)
if (bg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (bg_cmd)
draw_cmd = drawing_options_get_draw_command (p%drawing_options)
if (draw_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (draw_cmd)
err_cmd = drawing_options_get_err_command (p%drawing_options)
if (err_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (err_cmd)
symb_cmd = drawing_options_get_symb_command (p%drawing_options)
if (symb_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (symb_cmd)
fg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_fg_command (p%drawing_options)
if (fg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (fg_cmd)
write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_x_label (p%graph_options))
write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_y_label (p%graph_options))
call graph_options_write_tex_footer (p%graph_options, unit)
end subroutine plot_write_gml_driver

```

Append header for generic data output in ifile format.

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine plot_get_header (plot, header, comment)
    type(plot_t), intent(in) :: plot
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
    type(string_t) :: c
    if (present (comment)) then
        c = comment
    else
        c = ""
    end if
    call ifile_append (header, c // "WHIZARD plot data")
    call graph_options_get_header (plot%graph_options, header, comment)
    call ifile_append (header, &
        c // "number of points: " &
        // int2char (plot_get_n_entries (plot)))
end subroutine plot_get_header

```

### 5.1.8 Graphs

A graph is a container for several graph elements. Each graph element is either a plot or a histogram. There is an appropriate base type below (the `analysis_object_t`), but to avoid recursion, we define a separate base type here. Note that there is no actual recursion: a graph is an analysis object, but a graph cannot contain graphs.

(If we could use type extension, the implementation would be much more transparent.)



## Graph elements

Graph elements cannot be filled by the **record** command directly. The contents are always copied from elementary histograms or plots.

*(Analysis: types)+≡*

```
type :: graph_element_t
private
integer :: type = AN_UNDEFINED
type(histogram_t), pointer :: h => null ()
type(plot_t), pointer :: p => null ()
end type graph_element_t
```

*(Analysis: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine graph_element_final (el)
type(graph_element_t), intent(inout) :: el
select case (el%type)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
deallocate (el%h)
case (AN_PLOT)
call plot_final (el%p)
deallocate (el%p)
end select
el%type = AN_UNDEFINED
end subroutine graph_element_final
```

Return the number of entries in the graph element:

*(Analysis: procedures)+≡*

```
function graph_element_get_n_entries (el) result (n)
integer :: n
type(graph_element_t), intent(in) :: el
select case (el%type)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM); n = histogram_get_n_entries (el%h)
case (AN_PLOT);      n = plot_get_n_entries (el%p)
case default;       n = 0
end select
end function graph_element_get_n_entries
```

Return a pointer to the graph / drawing options.

*(Analysis: procedures)+≡*

```
function graph_element_get_graph_options_ptr (el) result (ptr)
type(graph_options_t), pointer :: ptr
type(graph_element_t), intent(in) :: el
select case (el%type)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM); ptr => histogram_get_graph_options_ptr (el%h)
case (AN_PLOT);      ptr => plot_get_graph_options_ptr (el%p)
case default;       ptr => null ()
end select
end function graph_element_get_graph_options_ptr

function graph_element_get_drawing_options_ptr (el) result (ptr)
type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: ptr
type(graph_element_t), intent(in) :: el
```

```

        select case (el%type)
        case (AN_HISTOGRAM); ptr => histogram_get_drawing_options_ptr (el%h)
        case (AN_PLOT);      ptr => plot_get_drawing_options_ptr (el%p)
        case default;        ptr => null ()
        end select
    end function graph_element_get_drawing_options_ptr

```

Output, simple wrapper for the plot/histogram writer.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_element_write (el, unit)
    type(graph_element_t), intent(in) :: el
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(graph_options_t), pointer :: gro
    type(string_t) :: id
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    gro => graph_element_get_graph_options_ptr (el)
    id = graph_options_get_id (gro)
    write (u, "(A,A)" ' #', repeat ("-", 78))
    select case (el%type)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "# Histogram: "
        write (u, "(1x,A)" char (id)
        call histogram_write (el%h, unit)
    case (AN_PLOT)
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "# Plot: "
        write (u, "(1x,A)" char (id)
        call plot_write (el%p, unit)
    end select
end subroutine graph_element_write

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_element_write_gml_reader (el, filename, unit)
    type(graph_element_t), intent(in) :: el
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    select case (el%type)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM); call histogram_write_gml_reader (el%h, filename, unit)
    case (AN_PLOT);      call plot_write_gml_reader (el%p, filename, unit)
    end select
end subroutine graph_element_write_gml_reader

```

## The graph type

The actual graph type contains its own `graph_options`, which override the individual settings. The `drawing_options` are set in the graph elements. This distinction motivates the separation of the two types.

*<Analysis: types>+≡*

```

type :: graph_t
    private
    type(graph_element_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: el

```

```

    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
end type graph_t

```

### Initializer/finalizer

The graph is created with a definite number of elements. The elements are filled one by one, optionally with modified drawing options.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_init (g, id, n_elements, graph_options)
    type(graph_t), intent(out) :: g
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer, intent(in) :: n_elements
    type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
    allocate (g%el (n_elements))
    if (present (graph_options)) then
        g%graph_options = graph_options
    else
        call graph_options_init (g%graph_options)
    end if
    call graph_options_set (g%graph_options, id = id)
end subroutine graph_init

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_insert_histogram (g, i, h, drawing_options)
    type(graph_t), intent(inout), target :: g
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(histogram_t), intent(in) :: h
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
    type(graph_options_t), pointer :: gro
    type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: dro
    type(string_t) :: id
    g%el(i)%type = AN_HISTOGRAM
    allocate (g%el(i)%h)
    call histogram_init_histogram (g%el(i)%h, h, drawing_options)
    gro => histogram_get_graph_options_ptr (g%el(i)%h)
    dro => histogram_get_drawing_options_ptr (g%el(i)%h)
    id = graph_options_get_id (gro)
    call drawing_options_set (dro, dataset = "dat." // id)
end subroutine graph_insert_histogram

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine graph_insert_plot (g, i, p, drawing_options)
    type(graph_t), intent(inout) :: g
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(plot_t), intent(in) :: p
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
    type(graph_options_t), pointer :: gro
    type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: dro
    type(string_t) :: id
    g%el(i)%type = AN_PLOT
    allocate (g%el(i)%p)
    call plot_init_plot (g%el(i)%p, p, drawing_options)

```

```

        gro => plot_get_graph_options_ptr (g%el(i)%p)
        dro => plot_get_drawing_options_ptr (g%el(i)%p)
        id = graph_options_get_id (gro)
        call drawing_options_set (dro, dataset = "dat." // id)
    end subroutine graph_insert_plot

```

Finalizer.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine graph_final (g)
    type(graph_t), intent(inout) :: g
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (g%el)
        call graph_element_final (g%el(i))
    end do
    deallocate (g%el)
end subroutine graph_final

```

## Access contents

The number of elements.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function graph_get_n_elements (graph) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(graph_t), intent(in) :: graph
    n = size (graph%el)
end function graph_get_n_elements

```

Retrieve a pointer to the drawing options of an element, so they can be modified. (The `target` attribute is not actually needed because the components are pointers.)

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function graph_get_drawing_options_ptr (g, i) result (ptr)
    type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: ptr
    type(graph_t), intent(in), target :: g
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    ptr => graph_element_get_drawing_options_ptr (g%el(i))
end function graph_get_drawing_options_ptr

```

## Output

The default output format just writes histogram and plot data.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine graph_write (graph, unit)
    type(graph_t), intent(in) :: graph
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (graph%el)
        call graph_element_write (graph%el(i), unit)
    end do

```

```
end subroutine graph_write
```

The GAMELAN driver is not a simple wrapper, but it writes the plot/histogram contents embedded the complete graph. First, data are read in, global background commands next, then individual elements, then global foreground commands.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine graph_write_gml_driver (g, filename, unit)
  type(graph_t), intent(in) :: g
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  type(string_t) :: calc_cmd, bg_cmd, draw_cmd, err_cmd, symb_cmd, fg_cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(drawing_options_t), pointer :: dro
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call graph_options_write_tex_header (g%graph_options, unit)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") &
    char (graph_options_get_gml_setup (g%graph_options))
  write (u, "(2x,A)") &
    char (graph_options_get_gml_graphrange (g%graph_options))
  do i = 1, size (g%el)
    call graph_element_write_gml_reader (g%el(i), filename, unit)
    calc_cmd = drawing_options_get_calc_command &
      (graph_element_get_drawing_options_ptr (g%el(i)))
    if (calc_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (calc_cmd)
  end do
  bg_cmd = graph_options_get_gml_bg_command (g%graph_options)
  if (bg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (bg_cmd)
  do i = 1, size (g%el)
    dro => graph_element_get_drawing_options_ptr (g%el(i))
    bg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_bg_command (dro)
    if (bg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (bg_cmd)
    draw_cmd = drawing_options_get_draw_command (dro)
    if (draw_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (draw_cmd)
    err_cmd = drawing_options_get_err_command (dro)
    if (err_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (err_cmd)
    symb_cmd = drawing_options_get_symb_command (dro)
    if (symb_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (symb_cmd)
    fg_cmd = drawing_options_get_gml_fg_command (dro)
    if (fg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (fg_cmd)
  end do
  fg_cmd = graph_options_get_gml_fg_command (g%graph_options)
  if (fg_cmd /= "") write (u, "(2x,A)") char (fg_cmd)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_x_label (g%graph_options))
  write (u, "(2x,A)") char (graph_options_get_gml_y_label (g%graph_options))
  call graph_options_write_tex_footer (g%graph_options, unit)
end subroutine graph_write_gml_driver
```

Append header for generic data output in ifile format.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine graph_get_header (graph, header, comment)
  type(graph_t), intent(in) :: graph
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
```

```

type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
type(string_t) :: c
if (present (comment)) then
    c = comment
else
    c = ""
end if
call ifile_append (header, c // "WHIZARD graph data")
call graph_options_get_header (graph%graph_options, header, comment)
call ifile_append (header, &
    c // "number of graph elements: " &
    // int2char (graph_get_n_elements (graph)))
end subroutine graph_get_header

```

### 5.1.9 Analysis objects

This data structure holds all observables, histograms and such that are currently active. We have one global store; individual items are identified by their ID strings.

(This should rather be coded by type extension.)

```

<Analysis: parameters>≡
integer, parameter :: AN_UNDEFINED = 0
integer, parameter :: AN_OBSERVABLE = 1
integer, parameter :: AN_HISTOGRAM = 2
integer, parameter :: AN_PLOT = 3
integer, parameter :: AN_GRAPH = 4

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: AN_UNDEFINED, AN_HISTOGRAM, AN_OBSERVABLE, AN_PLOT, AN_GRAPH

<Analysis: types>+≡
type :: analysis_object_t
private
type(string_t) :: id
integer :: type = AN_UNDEFINED
type(observable_t), pointer :: obs => null ()
type(histogram_t), pointer :: h => null ()
type(plot_t), pointer :: p => null ()
type(graph_t), pointer :: g => null ()
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type analysis_object_t

```

#### Initializer/finalizer

Allocate with the correct type but do not fill initial values.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_object_init (obj, id, type)
type(analysis_object_t), intent(out) :: obj
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
integer, intent(in) :: type
obj%id = id

```

```

obj%type = type
select case (obj%type)
case (AN_OBSERVABLE); allocate (obj%obs)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM);  allocate (obj%h)
case (AN_PLOT);       allocate (obj%p)
case (AN_GRAPH);      allocate (obj%g)
end select
end subroutine analysis_object_init

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_object_final (obj)
type(analysis_object_t), intent(inout) :: obj
select case (obj%type)
case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
deallocate (obj%obs)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
deallocate (obj%h)
case (AN_PLOT)
call plot_final (obj%p)
deallocate (obj%p)
case (AN_GRAPH)
call graph_final (obj%g)
deallocate (obj%g)
end select
obj%type = AN_UNDEFINED
end subroutine analysis_object_final

```

Clear the analysis object, i.e., reset it to its initial state. Not applicable to graphs, which are always combinations of other existing objects.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_object_clear (obj)
type(analysis_object_t), intent(inout) :: obj
select case (obj%type)
case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
call observable_clear (obj%obs)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
call histogram_clear (obj%h)
case (AN_PLOT)
call plot_clear (obj%p)
end select
end subroutine analysis_object_clear

```

## Fill with data

Record data. The effect depends on the type of analysis object.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_object_record_data (obj, &
x, y, yerr, xerr, weight, excess, success)
type(analysis_object_t), intent(inout) :: obj
real(default), intent(in) :: x
real(default), intent(in), optional :: y, yerr, xerr, weight, excess

```

```

logical, intent(out), optional :: success
select case (obj%type)
case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
  if (present (weight)) then
    call observable_record_value_weighted (obj%obs, x, weight, success)
  else
    call observable_record_value_unweighted (obj%obs, x, success)
  end if
case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
  if (present (weight)) then
    call histogram_record_value_weighted (obj%h, x, weight, success)
  else
    call histogram_record_value_unweighted (obj%h, x, excess, success)
  end if
case (AN_PLOT)
  if (present (y)) then
    call plot_record_value (obj%p, x, y, yerr, xerr, success)
  else
    if (present (success)) success = .false.
  end if
case default
  if (present (success)) success = .false.
end select
end subroutine analysis_object_record_data

```

Explicitly set the pointer to the next object in the list.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_object_set_next_ptr (obj, next)
  type(analysis_object_t), intent(inout) :: obj
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: next
  obj%next => next
end subroutine analysis_object_set_next_ptr

```

### Access contents

Return a pointer to the next object in the list.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function analysis_object_get_next_ptr (obj) result (next)
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: next
  type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
  next => obj%next
end function analysis_object_get_next_ptr

```

Return data as appropriate for the object type.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function analysis_object_get_n_elements (obj) result (n)
  integer :: n
  type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
  select case (obj%type)
  case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
    n = 1

```



```

    case (AN_PLOT)
        n = 1
    case (AN_GRAPH)
        n = graph_get_n_elements (obj%g)
    case default
        n = 0
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_n_elements

function analysis_object_get_n_entries (obj, within_bounds) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
    logical :: wb
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
        n = observable_get_n_entries (obj%obs)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
        wb = .false.; if (present (within_bounds)) wb = within_bounds
        if (wb) then
            n = histogram_get_n_entries_within_bounds (obj%h)
        else
            n = histogram_get_n_entries (obj%h)
        end if
    case (AN_PLOT)
        n = plot_get_n_entries (obj%p)
    case default
        n = 0
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_n_entries

function analysis_object_get_average (obj, within_bounds) result (avg)
    real(default) :: avg
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
    logical :: wb
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
        avg = observable_get_average (obj%obs)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
        wb = .false.; if (present (within_bounds)) wb = within_bounds
        if (wb) then
            avg = histogram_get_average_within_bounds (obj%h)
        else
            avg = histogram_get_average (obj%h)
        end if
    case default
        avg = 0
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_average

function analysis_object_get_error (obj, within_bounds) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj

```

```

logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
logical :: wb
select case (obj%type)
case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
    err = observable_get_error (obj%obs)
case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
    wb = .false.; if (present (within_bounds)) wb = within_bounds
    if (wb) then
        err = histogram_get_error_within_bounds (obj%h)
    else
        err = histogram_get_error (obj%h)
    end if
case default
    err = 0
end select
end function analysis_object_get_error

```

Return pointers to the actual contents:

*(Analysis: procedures)*+≡

```

function analysis_object_get_observable_ptr (obj) result (obs)
    type(observable_t), pointer :: obs
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE); obs => obj%obs
    case default;         obs => null ()
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_observable_ptr

function analysis_object_get_histogram_ptr (obj) result (h)
    type(histogram_t), pointer :: h
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM); h => obj%h
    case default;       h => null ()
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_histogram_ptr

function analysis_object_get_plot_ptr (obj) result (plot)
    type(plot_t), pointer :: plot
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_PLOT); plot => obj%p
    case default;   plot => null ()
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_plot_ptr

function analysis_object_get_graph_ptr (obj) result (g)
    type(graph_t), pointer :: g
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_GRAPH); g => obj%g
    case default;    g => null ()
    end select
end function analysis_object_get_graph_ptr

```

Return true if the object has a graphical representation:

```
<Analysis: procedures>+≡  
function analysis_object_has_plot (obj) result (flag)  
  logical :: flag  
  type(analysys_object_t), intent(in) :: obj  
  select case (obj%type)  
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM); flag = .true.  
    case (AN_PLOT);      flag = .true.  
    case (AN_GRAPH);     flag = .true.  
    case default;        flag = .false.  
  end select  
end function analysis_object_has_plot
```

## Output

```
<Analysis: procedures>+≡  
subroutine analysis_object_write (obj, unit, verbose)  
  type(analysys_object_t), intent(in) :: obj  
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit  
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose  
  logical :: verb  
  integer :: u  
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return  
  verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose  
  write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)  
  select case (obj%type)  
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE)  
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "# Observable:"  
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)  
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "# Histogram: "  
    case (AN_PLOT)  
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "# Plot: "  
    case (AN_GRAPH)  
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "# Graph: "  
    case default  
      write (u, "(A)") "# [undefined analysis object]"  
      return  
  end select  
  write (u, "(1x,A)") char (obj%id)  
  select case (obj%type)  
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE)  
      call observable_write (obj%obs, unit)  
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)  
      if (verb) then  
        call graph_options_write (obj%h%graph_options, unit)  
        write (u, *)  
        call drawing_options_write (obj%h%drawing_options, unit)  
        write (u, *)  
      end if  
      call histogram_write (obj%h, unit)  
    case (AN_PLOT)
```

```

        if (verb) then
            call graph_options_write (obj%p%graph_options, unit)
            write (u, *)
            call drawing_options_write (obj%p%drawing_options, unit)
            write (u, *)
        end if
        call plot_write (obj%p, unit)
    case (AN_GRAPH)
        call graph_write (obj%g, unit)
    end select
end subroutine analysis_object_write

```

Write the object part of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X driver file.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_object_write_driver (obj, filename, unit)
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_OBSERVABLE)
        call observable_write_driver (obj%obs, unit)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
        call histogram_write_gml_driver (obj%h, filename, unit)
    case (AN_PLOT)
        call plot_write_gml_driver (obj%p, filename, unit)
    case (AN_GRAPH)
        call graph_write_gml_driver (obj%g, filename, unit)
    end select
end subroutine analysis_object_write_driver

```

Return a data header for external formats, in ifile form.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_object_get_header (obj, header, comment)
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in) :: obj
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
    select case (obj%type)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
        call histogram_get_header (obj%h, header, comment)
    case (AN_PLOT)
        call plot_get_header (obj%p, header, comment)
    end select
end subroutine analysis_object_get_header

```

### 5.1.10 Analysis object iterator

Analysis objects are containers which have iterable data structures: histograms/bins and plots/points. If they are to be treated on a common basis, it is useful to have an iterator which hides the implementation details.

The iterator is used only for elementary analysis objects that contain plot

data: histograms or plots. It is invalid for meta-objects (graphs) and non-graphical objects (observables).

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_iterator_t

<Analysis: types>+≡
    type :: analysis_iterator_t
    private
    integer :: type = AN_UNDEFINED
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: object => null ()
    integer :: index = 1
    type(point_t), pointer :: point => null ()
end type

```

The initializer places the iterator at the beginning of the analysis object.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    subroutine analysis_iterator_init (iterator, object)
    type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(out) :: iterator
    type(analysis_object_t), intent(in), target :: object
    iterator%object => object
    if (associated (iterator%object)) then
        iterator%type = iterator%object%type
        select case (iterator%type)
        case (AN_PLOT)
            iterator%point => iterator%object%p%first
        end select
    end if
end subroutine analysis_iterator_init

```

The iterator is valid as long as it points to an existing entry. An iterator for a data object without array data (observable) is always invalid.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_iterator_is_valid

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    function analysis_iterator_is_valid (iterator) result (valid)
    logical :: valid
    type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(in) :: iterator
    if (associated (iterator%object)) then
        select case (iterator%type)
        case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
            valid = iterator%index <= histogram_get_n_bins (iterator%object%h)
        case (AN_PLOT)
            valid = associated (iterator%point)
        case default
            valid = .false.
        end select
    else
        valid = .false.
    end if
end function analysis_iterator_is_valid

```

Advance the iterator.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_iterator_advance

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    subroutine analysis_iterator_advance (iterator)
        type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: iterator
        if (associated (iterator%object)) then
            select case (iterator%type)
            case (AN_PLOT)
                iterator%point => iterator%point%next
            end select
            iterator%index = iterator%index + 1
        end if
    end subroutine analysis_iterator_advance

```

Retrieve the object type:

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_iterator_get_type

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    function analysis_iterator_get_type (iterator) result (type)
        integer :: type
        type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(in) :: iterator
        type = iterator%type
    end function analysis_iterator_get_type

```

Use the iterator to retrieve data. We implement a common routine which takes the data descriptors as optional arguments. Data which do not occur in the selected type trigger to an error condition.

The iterator must point to a valid entry.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_iterator_get_data

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    subroutine analysis_iterator_get_data (iterator, &
        x, y, yerr, xerr, width, excess, index, n_total)
        type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(in) :: iterator
        real(default), intent(out), optional :: x, y, yerr, xerr, width, excess
        integer, intent(out), optional :: index, n_total
        select case (iterator%type)
        case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
            if (present (x)) &
                x = bin_get_midpoint (iterator%object%h%bin(iterator%index))
            if (present (y)) &
                y = bin_get_sum (iterator%object%h%bin(iterator%index))
            if (present (yerr)) &
                yerr = bin_get_error (iterator%object%h%bin(iterator%index))
            if (present (xerr)) &
                call invalid ("histogram", "xerr")
            if (present (width)) &
                width = bin_get_width (iterator%object%h%bin(iterator%index))
            if (present (excess)) &
                excess = bin_get_excess (iterator%object%h%bin(iterator%index))

```

```

        if (present (index)) &
            index = iterator%index
        if (present (n_total)) &
            n_total = histogram_get_n_bins (iterator%object%h)
    case (AN_PLOT)
        if (present (x)) &
            x = point_get_x (iterator%point)
        if (present (y)) &
            y = point_get_y (iterator%point)
        if (present (yerr)) &
            yerr = point_get_yerr (iterator%point)
        if (present (xerr)) &
            xerr = point_get_xerr (iterator%point)
        if (present (width)) &
            call invalid ("plot", "width")
        if (present (excess)) &
            call invalid ("plot", "excess")
        if (present (index)) &
            index = iterator%index
        if (present (n_total)) &
            n_total = plot_get_n_entries (iterator%object%p)
    case default
        call msg_bug ("analysis_iterator_get_data: called " &
            // "for unsupported analysis object type")
    end select
contains
    subroutine invalid (typestr, objstr)
        character(*), intent(in) :: typestr, objstr
        call msg_bug ("analysis_iterator_get_data: attempt to get '" &
            // objstr // "' for type '" // typestr // "'")
    end subroutine invalid
end subroutine analysis_iterator_get_data

```

### 5.1.11 Analysis store

This data structure holds all observables, histograms and such that are currently active. We have one global store; individual items are identified by their ID strings and types.

```

<Analysis: variables>≡
    type(analysis_store_t), save :: analysis_store

<Analysis: types>+≡
    type :: analysis_store_t
    private
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: first => null ()
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: last => null ()
    end type analysis_store_t

```

Delete the analysis store

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_final

```

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_final ()
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: current
  do while (associated (analysis_store%first))
    current => analysis_store%first
    analysis_store%first => current%next
    call analysis_object_final (current)
  end do
  analysis_store%last => null ()
end subroutine analysis_final

```

Append a new analysis object

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_append_object (id, type)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in) :: type
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  allocate (obj)
  call analysis_object_init (obj, id, type)
  if (associated (analysis_store%last)) then
    analysis_store%last%next => obj
  else
    analysis_store%first => obj
  end if
  analysis_store%last => obj
end subroutine analysis_store_append_object

```

Return a pointer to the analysis object with given ID.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
function analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id) result (obj)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  obj => analysis_store%first
  do while (associated (obj))
    if (obj%id == id) return
    obj => obj%next
  end do
end function analysis_store_get_object_ptr

```

Initialize an analysis object: either reset it if present, or append a new entry.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_init_object (id, type, obj)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in) :: type
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj, next
  obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
  if (associated (obj)) then
    next => analysis_object_get_next_ptr (obj)
    call analysis_object_final (obj)
    call analysis_object_init (obj, id, type)
    call analysis_object_set_next_ptr (obj, next)
  else

```



```

        call analysis_store_append_object (id, type)
        obj => analysis_store%last
    end if
end subroutine analysis_store_init_object

```

Get the type of a analysis object

*<Analysis: public>+≡*

```

public :: analysis_store_get_object_type

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function analysis_store_get_object_type (id) result (type)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer :: type
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: object
    object => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
    if (associated (object)) then
        type = object%type
    else
        type = AN_UNDEFINED
    end if
end function analysis_store_get_object_type

```

Return the number of objects in the store.

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

function analysis_store_get_n_objects () result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: current
    n = 0
    current => analysis_store%first
    do while (associated (current))
        n = n + 1
        current => current%next
    end do
end function analysis_store_get_n_objects

```

Allocate an array and fill it with all existing IDs.

*<Analysis: public>+≡*

```

public :: analysis_store_get_ids

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_store_get_ids (id)
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: id
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: current
    integer :: i
    allocate (id (analysis_store_get_n_objects()))
    i = 0
    current => analysis_store%first
    do while (associated (current))
        i = i + 1
        id(i) = current%id
        current => current%next
    end do
end subroutine analysis_store_get_ids

```

### 5.1.12 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X driver file

Write a driver file for all objects in the store.

```
<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_all (filename_data, unit)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename_data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  call analysis_store_write_driver_header (unit)
  obj => analysis_store%first
  do while (associated (obj))
    call analysis_object_write_driver (obj, filename_data, unit)
    obj => obj%next
  end do
  call analysis_store_write_driver_footer (unit)
end subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_all
```

Write a driver file for an array of objects.

```
<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_obj (filename_data, id, unit)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename_data
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  integer :: i
  call analysis_store_write_driver_header (unit)
  do i = 1, size (id)
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id(i))
    if (associated (obj)) &
      call analysis_object_write_driver (obj, filename_data, unit)
  end do
  call analysis_store_write_driver_footer (unit)
end subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_obj
```

The beginning of the driver file.

```
<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_header (unit)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, '(A)') "\documentclass[12pt]{article}"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{gamelan}"
  write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{amsmath}"
  write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{ifpdf}"
  write (u, '(A)') "\ifpdf"
  write (u, '(A)') "  \DeclareGraphicsRule{*}{mps}{*}{"
  write (u, '(A)') "\else"
  write (u, '(A)') "  \DeclareGraphicsRule{*}{eps}{*}{"
  write (u, '(A)') "\fi"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, '(A)') "\begin{document}"
  write (u, '(A)') "\begin{gmlfile}"
```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, '(A)') "\begin{gmlcode}"
write (u, '(A)') " color col.default, col.excess;"
write (u, '(A)') " col.default = 0.9white;"
write (u, '(A)') " col.excess = red;"
write (u, '(A)') " boolean show_excess;"
!!! Future excess options for plots
! if (mcs(1)%plot_excess .and. mcs(1)%unweighted) then
!   write (u, '(A)') " show_excess = true;"
! else
write (u, '(A)') " show_excess = false;"
! end if
write (u, '(A)') "\end{gmlcode}"
write (u, *)
end subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_header

```

The end of the driver file.

```

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_footer (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write(u, *)
write(u, '(A)') "\end{gmlfile}"
write(u, '(A)') "\end{document}"
end subroutine analysis_store_write_driver_footer

```

### 5.1.13 API

#### Creating new objects

The specific versions below:

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_init_observable

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_init_observable (id, obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options)
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
type(observable_t), pointer :: obs
call analysis_store_init_object (id, AN_OBSERVABLE, obj)
obs => analysis_object_get_observable_ptr (obj)
call observable_init (obs, obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options)
end subroutine analysis_init_observable

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_init_histogram

<Analysis: interfaces>+≡
interface analysis_init_histogram
module procedure analysis_init_histogram_n_bins

```

```

    module procedure analysis_init_histogram_bin_width
end interface

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_init_histogram_n_bins &
    (id, lower_bound, upper_bound, n_bins, normalize_bins, &
     obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
real(default), intent(in) :: lower_bound, upper_bound
integer, intent(in) :: n_bins
logical, intent(in) :: normalize_bins
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
type(histogram_t), pointer :: h
call analysis_store_init_object (id, AN_HISTOGRAM, obj)
h => analysis_object_get_histogram_ptr (obj)
call histogram_init (h, id, &
    lower_bound, upper_bound, n_bins, normalize_bins, &
    obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
end subroutine analysis_init_histogram_n_bins

```

```

subroutine analysis_init_histogram_bin_width &
    (id, lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width, normalize_bins, &
     obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
real(default), intent(in) :: lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width
logical, intent(in) :: normalize_bins
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: obs_label, obs_unit
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
type(histogram_t), pointer :: h
call analysis_store_init_object (id, AN_HISTOGRAM, obj)
h => analysis_object_get_histogram_ptr (obj)
call histogram_init (h, id, &
    lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width, normalize_bins, &
    obs_label, obs_unit, graph_options, drawing_options)
end subroutine analysis_init_histogram_bin_width

```

*<Analysis: public>+≡*

```

public :: analysis_init_plot

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_init_plot (id, graph_options, drawing_options)
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
type(plot_t), pointer :: plot
call analysis_store_init_object (id, AN_PLOT, obj)
plot => analysis_object_get_plot_ptr (obj)
call plot_init (plot, id, graph_options, drawing_options)

```

```

end subroutine analysis_init_plot

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_init_graph

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_init_graph (id, n_elements, graph_options)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in) :: n_elements
  type(graph_options_t), intent(in), optional :: graph_options
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  type(graph_t), pointer :: graph
  call analysis_store_init_object (id, AN_GRAPH, obj)
  graph => analysis_object_get_graph_ptr (obj)
  call graph_init (graph, id, n_elements, graph_options)
end subroutine analysis_init_graph

```

## Recording data

This procedure resets an object or the whole store to its initial state.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_clear

<Analysis: interfaces>+≡
interface analysis_clear
  module procedure analysis_store_clear_obj
  module procedure analysis_store_clear_all
end interface

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_store_clear_obj (id)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
  if (associated (obj)) then
    call analysis_object_clear (obj)
  end if
end subroutine analysis_store_clear_obj

subroutine analysis_store_clear_all ()
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  obj => analysis_store%first
  do while (associated (obj))
    call analysis_object_clear (obj)
    obj => obj%next
  end do
end subroutine analysis_store_clear_all

```

There is one generic recording function whose behavior depends on the type of analysis object.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_record_data

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_record_data (id, x, y, yerr, xerr, &
    weight, excess, success, exist)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: y, yerr, xerr, weight, excess
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success, exist
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
    if (associated (obj)) then
        call analysis_object_record_data (obj, x, y, yerr, xerr, &
            weight, excess, success)
        if (present (exist)) exist = .true.
    else
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
        if (present (exist)) exist = .false.
    end if
end subroutine analysis_record_data

```

## Build a graph

This routine sets up the array of graph elements by copying the graph elements given as input. The object must exist and already be initialized as a graph.

*<Analysis: public>+≡*

```

public :: analysis_fill_graph

```

*<Analysis: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine analysis_fill_graph (id, i, id_in, drawing_options)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id_in
    type(drawing_options_t), intent(in), optional :: drawing_options
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
    type(graph_t), pointer :: g
    type(histogram_t), pointer :: h
    type(plot_t), pointer :: p
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
    g => analysis_object_get_graph_ptr (obj)
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id_in)
    if (associated (obj)) then
        select case (obj%type)
            case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
                h => analysis_object_get_histogram_ptr (obj)
                call graph_insert_histogram (g, i, h, drawing_options)
            case (AN_PLOT)
                p => analysis_object_get_plot_ptr (obj)
                call graph_insert_plot (g, i, p, drawing_options)
            case default
                call msg_error ("Graph '" // char (id) // "': Element '" &
                    // char (id_in) // "' is neither histogram nor plot.")
        end select
    else
        call msg_error ("Graph '" // char (id) // "': Element '" &

```

```

        // char (id_in) // '' is undefined.")
    end if
end subroutine analysis_fill_graph

```

## Retrieve generic results

Check if a named object exists.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_exists

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    function analysis_exists (id) result (flag)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        logical :: flag
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
        flag = .true.
        obj => analysis_store%first
        do while (associated (obj))
            if (obj%id == id) return
            obj => obj%next
        end do
        flag = .false.
    end function analysis_exists

```

The following functions should work for all kinds of analysis object:

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_get_n_elements
    public :: analysis_get_n_entries
    public :: analysis_get_average
    public :: analysis_get_error

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    function analysis_get_n_elements (id) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
        obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
        if (associated (obj)) then
            n = analysis_object_get_n_elements (obj)
        else
            n = 0
        end if
    end function analysis_get_n_elements

    function analysis_get_n_entries (id, within_bounds) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
        obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
        if (associated (obj)) then
            n = analysis_object_get_n_entries (obj, within_bounds)
        else

```

```

        n = 0
    end if
end function analysis_get_n_entries

function analysis_get_average (id, within_bounds) result (avg)
    real(default) :: avg
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
    logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
    if (associated (obj)) then
        avg = analysis_object_get_average (obj, within_bounds)
    else
        avg = 0
    end if
end function analysis_get_average

function analysis_get_error (id, within_bounds) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
    logical, intent(in), optional :: within_bounds
    obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
    if (associated (obj)) then
        err = analysis_object_get_error (obj, within_bounds)
    else
        err = 0
    end if
end function analysis_get_error

```

Return true if any analysis object is graphical

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_has_plots

<Analysis: interfaces>+≡
    interface analysis_has_plots
        module procedure analysis_has_plots_any
        module procedure analysis_has_plots_obj
    end interface

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    function analysis_has_plots_any () result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
        flag = .false.
        obj => analysis_store%first
        do while (associated (obj))
            flag = analysis_object_has_plot (obj)
            if (flag) return
        end do
    end function analysis_has_plots_any

    function analysis_has_plots_obj (id) result (flag)
        logical :: flag

```



```

type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: id
type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
integer :: i
flag = .false.
do i = 1, size (id)
  obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id(i))
  if (associated (obj)) then
    flag = analysis_object_has_plot (obj)
    if (flag) return
  end if
end do
end function analysis_has_plots_obj

```

## Iterators

Initialize an iterator for the given object. If the object does not exist or has wrong type, the iterator will be invalid.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_init_iterator

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_init_iterator (id, iterator)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(analysis_iterator_t), intent(out) :: iterator
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
  if (associated (obj)) call analysis_iterator_init (iterator, obj)
end subroutine analysis_init_iterator

```

## Output

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
public :: analysis_write

<Analysis: interfaces>+≡
interface analysis_write
  module procedure analysis_write_object
  module procedure analysis_write_all
end interface

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
subroutine analysis_write_object (id, unit, verbose)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  obj => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
  if (associated (obj)) then
    call analysis_object_write (obj, unit, verbose)
  else
    call msg_error ("Analysis object '" // char (id) // "' not found")
  end if
end if

```

```

end subroutine analysis_write_object

subroutine analysis_write_all (unit, verbose)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: obj
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  obj => analysis_store%first
  do while (associated (obj))
    call analysis_object_write (obj, unit, verbose)
    obj => obj%next
  end do
end subroutine analysis_write_all

<Analysis: public>+≡
  public :: analysis_write_driver

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
  subroutine analysis_write_driver (filename_data, id, unit)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename_data
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: id
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    if (present (id)) then
      call analysis_store_write_driver_obj (filename_data, id, unit)
    else
      call analysis_store_write_driver_all (filename_data, unit)
    end if
  end subroutine analysis_write_driver

<Analysis: public>+≡
  public :: analysis_compile_tex

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
  subroutine analysis_compile_tex (file, has_gmlcode, os_data)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
    logical, intent(in) :: has_gmlcode
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(string_t) :: setenv
    integer :: status
    if (os_data%event_analysis_ps) then
      BLOCK: do
        if (os_data%whizard_texpath /= "") then
          setenv = "TEXINPUTS=" // os_data%whizard_texpath // ":$TEXINPUTS "
        else
          setenv = ""
        end if
        call os_system_call (setenv // os_data%latex // " " // file, status)
        if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
        if (has_gmlcode) then
          call os_system_call (os_data%gml // " " // file, status)
          if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
          call os_system_call (setenv // os_data%latex // " " // file, &
                               status)
          if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
        end if
      end BLOCK
    end if
  end subroutine analysis_compile_tex

```

```

        end if
        call os_system_call (os_data%dvips // " -o " // file // ".ps " &
            // file, status)
        if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
        if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
            call os_system_call (os_data%ps2pdf // " " // file // ".ps", &
                status)
            if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
        end if
        exit BLOCK
    end do BLOCK
    if (status /= 0) then
        call msg_error ("Unable to compile analysis output file")
    end if
else
    call msg_warning ("Skipping results display because " &
        // "latex/mpost/dvips is not available")
end if
end subroutine analysis_compile_tex

```

Write header for generic data output to an ifile.

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_get_header

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    subroutine analysis_get_header (id, header, comment)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: header
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: comment
        type(analysis_object_t), pointer :: object
        object => analysis_store_get_object_ptr (id)
        if (associated (object)) then
            call analysis_object_get_header (object, header, comment)
        end if
    end subroutine analysis_get_header

```

#### 5.1.14 Unit tests

```

<Analysis: public>+≡
    public :: analysis_test

<Analysis: procedures>+≡
    subroutine analysis_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Analysis: execute tests>
    end subroutine analysis_test

<Analysis: execute tests>≡
    call test (analysis_1, "analysis_1", &
        "check elementary analysis building blocks", &
        u, results)

```

```

<Analysis: tests>≡
subroutine analysis_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: id1, id2, id3, id4
  integer :: i
  id1 = "foo"
  id2 = "bar"
  id3 = "hist"
  id4 = "plot"

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Analysis"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test the analysis routines"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call analysis_init_observable (id1)
  call analysis_init_observable (id2)
  call analysis_init_histogram_bin_width &
    (id3, 0.5_default, 5.5_default, 1._default, normalize_bins=.false.)
  call analysis_init_plot (id4)
  do i = 1, 3
    write (u, "(A,1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "data = ", real(i,default)
    call analysis_record_data (id1, real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id2, real(i,default), &
      weight=real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id3, real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id4, real(i,default), real(i,default)**2)
  end do
  write (u, "(A,10(1x,I5))") "n_entries = ", &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id1), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id2), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id3), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id3, within_bounds = .true.), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id4), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id4, within_bounds = .true.)
  write (u, "(A,10(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "average = ", &
    analysis_get_average (id1), &
    analysis_get_average (id2), &
    analysis_get_average (id3), &
    analysis_get_average (id3, within_bounds = .true.)
  write (u, "(A,10(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "error = ", &
    analysis_get_error (id1), &
    analysis_get_error (id2), &
    analysis_get_error (id3), &
    analysis_get_error (id3, within_bounds = .true.)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)") "* Clear analysis #2"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call analysis_clear (id2)
  do i = 4, 6
    print *, "data = ", real(i,default)
    call analysis_record_data (id1, real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id2, real(i,default), &

```

```

                                weight=real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id3, real(i,default))
    call analysis_record_data (id4, real(i,default), real(i,default)**2)
end do
write (u, "(A,10(1x,I5))") "n_entries = ", &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id1), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id2), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id3), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id3, within_bounds = .true.), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id4), &
    analysis_get_n_entries (id4, within_bounds = .true.)
write (u, "(A,10(1x," // FMT_19 // "))") "average = ", &
    analysis_get_average (id1), &
    analysis_get_average (id2), &
    analysis_get_average (id3), &
    analysis_get_average (id3, within_bounds = .true.)
write (u, "(A,10(1x," // FMT_19 // "))") "error = ", &
    analysis_get_error (id1), &
    analysis_get_error (id2), &
    analysis_get_error (id3), &
    analysis_get_error (id3, within_bounds = .true.)
write (u, "(A)")
call analysis_write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call analysis_clear ()
call analysis_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: analysis_1"
end subroutine analysis_1

```

## 5.2 Fastjet interface

The FastJet library is linked externally, if available. The wrapper code is also in a separate directory. Here, we define WHIZARD-specific procedures and tests.

```
<jets.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module jets  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use unit_tests  
    use fastjet !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Jets: public>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Jets: procedures>  
  
    <Jets: tests>  
  
  end module jets
```

### 5.2.1 Re-exported symbols

We use this module as a proxy for the FastJet interface, therefore we re-export some symbols.

```
<Jets: public>≡  
  public :: fastjet_available  
  public :: fastjet_init  
  public :: jet_definition_t  
  public :: pseudojet_t  
  public :: pseudojet_vector_t  
  public :: cluster_sequence_t  
  public :: assignment (=)
```

The initialization routine prints the banner.

```
<Jets: procedures>≡  
  subroutine fastjet_init ()  
    call print_banner ()  
  end subroutine fastjet_init
```

The jet algorithm codes (actually, integers)

```
<Jets: public>+≡  
  public :: kt_algorithm  
  public :: cambridge_algorithm  
  public :: antikt_algorithm  
  public :: genkt_algorithm  
  public :: cambridge_for_passive_algorithm  
  public :: genkt_for_passive_algorithm
```

```

public :: ee_kt_algorithm
public :: ee_genkt_algorithm
public :: plugin_algorithm
public :: undefined_jet_algorithm

```

## 5.2.2 Unit tests

```

<Jets: public>+≡
  public :: jets_test

<Jets: procedures>+≡
  subroutine jets_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type (test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Jets: execute tests>
  end subroutine jets_test

```

This test is actually the minimal example from the FastJet manual, translated to Fortran.

Note that FastJet creates pseudojet vectors, which we mirror in the `pseudojet_vector_t`, but immediately assign to pseudojet arrays. Without automatic finalization available in the compilers, we should avoid this in actual code and rather introduce intermediate variables for those objects, which we can finalize explicitly.

```

<Jets: execute tests>≡
  call test (jets_1, "jets_1", &
    "basic FastJet functionality", &
    u, results)

<Jets: tests>≡
  subroutine jets_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u

    type(pseudojet_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt, jets, constituents
    type(jet_definition_t) :: jet_def
    type(cluster_sequence_t) :: cs

    integer, parameter :: dp = default
    integer :: i, j

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: jets_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test basic FastJet functionality"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Print banner"
    call print_banner ()

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare input particles"
    allocate (prt (3))
    call prt(1)%init ( 99._dp, 0.1_dp, 0._dp, 100._dp)
    call prt(2)%init (  4._dp,-0.1_dp, 0._dp,  5._dp)
    call prt(3)%init (-99._dp, 0._dp,  0._dp, 99._dp)

```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Define jet algorithm"
call jet_def%init (antikt_algorithm, 0.7_dp)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cluster particles according to jet algorithm"

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,A)") "Clustering with ", jet_def%description ()
call cs%init (pseudojet_vector (prt), jet_def)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sort output jets"
jets = sorted_by_pt (cs%inclusive_jets ())

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Print jet observables and constituents"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(4x,3(7x,A3))") "pt", "y", "phi"
do i = 1, size (jets)
  write (u, "(A,1x,I0,A,3(1x,F9.5))") &
    "jet", i, ":", jets(i)%perp (), jets(i)%rap (), jets(i)%phi ()
  constituents = jets(i)%constituents ()
  do j = 1, size (constituents)
    write (u, "(4x,A,1x,I0,A,F9.5)") &
      "constituent", j, "'s pt:", constituents(j)%perp ()
  end do
  do j = 1, size (constituents)
    call constituents(j)%final ()
  end do
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

do i = 1, size (prt)
  call prt(i)%final ()
end do
do i = 1, size (jets)
  call jets(i)%final ()
end do
call jet_def%final ()
call cs%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: jets_1"

end subroutine jets_1

```



## 5.3 PDG arrays

For defining aliases, we introduce a special type which holds a set of (integer) PDG codes.

```
<pdg_arrays.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module pdg_arrays  
  
  <Use file utils>  
    use sorting  
    use unit_tests  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <PDG arrays: public>  
  
  <PDG arrays: parameters>  
  
  <PDG arrays: types>  
  
  <PDG arrays: interfaces>  
  
contains  
  
  <PDG arrays: procedures>  
  
  <PDG arrays: tests>  
  
end module pdg_arrays
```

### 5.3.1 Type definition

Using an allocatable array eliminates the need for initializer and/or finalizer.

```
<PDG arrays: public>≡  
  public :: pdg_array_t  
  
<PDG arrays: types>≡  
  type :: pdg_array_t  
    private  
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg  
    contains  
    <PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP>  
  end type pdg_array_t
```

Output

```
<PDG arrays: public>+≡  
  public :: pdg_array_write  
  
<PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP>≡  
  procedure :: write => pdg_array_write
```

```

(PDG arrays: procedures)≡
subroutine pdg_array_write (aval, unit)
  class(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "PDG("
  if (allocated (aval%pdg)) then
    do i = 1, size (aval%pdg)
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ", "
      write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") aval%pdg(i)
    end do
  end if
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ")"
end subroutine pdg_array_write

```

### 5.3.2 Parameters

We need an UNDEFINED value:

```

(PDG arrays: parameters)≡
integer, parameter, public :: UNDEFINED = 0

```

### 5.3.3 Basic operations

Assignment. We define assignment from and to an integer array. Note that the integer array, if it is the l.h.s., must be declared allocatable by the caller.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
public :: assignment(=)

(PDG arrays: interfaces)≡
interface assignment(=)
  module procedure pdg_array_from_int_array
  module procedure pdg_array_from_int
  module procedure int_array_from_pdg_array
end interface

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
subroutine pdg_array_from_int_array (aval, iarray)
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: aval
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: iarray
  allocate (aval%pdg (size (iarray)))
  aval%pdg = iarray
end subroutine pdg_array_from_int_array

elemental subroutine pdg_array_from_int (aval, int)
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: aval
  integer, intent(in) :: int
  allocate (aval%pdg (1))
  aval%pdg = int
end subroutine pdg_array_from_int

subroutine int_array_from_pdg_array (iarray, aval)

```

```

integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: iarray
type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
if (allocated (aval%pdg)) then
    allocate (iarray (size (aval%pdg)))
    iarray = aval%pdg
else
    allocate (iarray (0))
end if
end subroutine int_array_from_pdg_array

```

Length of the array.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: pdg_array_get_length

(PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get_length => pdg_array_get_length

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    elemental function pdg_array_get_length (aval) result (n)
        class(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
        integer :: n
        if (allocated (aval%pdg)) then
            n = size (aval%pdg)
        else
            n = 0
        end if
    end function pdg_array_get_length

```

Return the element with index i.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: pdg_array_get

(PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get => pdg_array_get

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    elemental function pdg_array_get (aval, i) result (pdg)
        class(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer :: pdg
        pdg = aval%pdg(i)
    end function pdg_array_get

```

Explicitly set the element with index i.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: set => pdg_array_set

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    subroutine pdg_array_set (aval, i, pdg)
        class(pdg_array_t), intent(inout) :: aval
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        aval%pdg(i) = pdg
    end subroutine pdg_array_set

```

Replace element with index *i* by a new array of elements.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: pdg_array_replace

(PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: replace => pdg_array_replace

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    function pdg_array_replace (aval, i, pdg_new) result (aval_new)
        class(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg_new
        type(pdg_array_t) :: aval_new
        integer :: n, l
        n = size (aval%pdg)
        l = size (pdg_new)
        allocate (aval_new%pdg (n + l - 1))
        aval_new%pdg(:i-1) = aval%pdg(:i-1)
        aval_new%pdg(i:i+l-1) = pdg_new
        aval_new%pdg(i+l:) = aval%pdg(i+l:)
    end function pdg_array_replace

```

Concatenate two PDG arrays

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: operator(//)

(PDG arrays: interfaces)+≡
    interface operator(//)
        module procedure concat_pdg_arrays
    end interface

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    function concat_pdg_arrays (aval1, aval2) result (aval)
        type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
        integer :: n1, n2
        if (allocated (aval1%pdg) .and. allocated (aval2%pdg)) then
            n1 = size (aval1%pdg)
            n2 = size (aval2%pdg)
            allocate (aval%pdg (n1 + n2))
            aval%pdg(:n1) = aval1%pdg
            aval%pdg(n1+1:) = aval2%pdg
        else if (allocated (aval1%pdg)) then
            aval = aval1
        else if (allocated (aval2%pdg)) then
            aval = aval2
        end if
    end function concat_pdg_arrays

```

### 5.3.4 Matching

A PDG array matches a given PDG code if the code is present within the array. If either one is zero (UNDEFINED), the match also succeeds.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: operator(.match.)

(PDG arrays: interfaces)+≡
    interface operator(.match.)
        module procedure pdg_array_match_integer
        module procedure pdg_array_match_pdg_array
    end interface

```

Match a single code against the array.

```

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    elemental function pdg_array_match_integer (aval, pdg) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        if (allocated (aval%pdg)) then
            flag = pdg == UNDEFINED &
                .or. any (aval%pdg == UNDEFINED) &
                .or. any (aval%pdg == pdg)
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function pdg_array_match_integer

```

Match two arrays. Succeeds if any pair of entries matches.

```

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    function pdg_array_match_pdg_array (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
        if (allocated (aval1%pdg) .and. allocated (aval2%pdg)) then
            flag = any (aval1 .match. aval2%pdg)
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function pdg_array_match_pdg_array

```

Comparison. Here, we take the PDG arrays as-is, assuming that they are sorted.

The ordering is a bit odd: first, we look only at the absolute values of the PDG codes. If they all match, the particle comes before the antiparticle, scanning from left to right.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: operator(<)
    public :: operator(>)
    public :: operator(<=)
    public :: operator(>=)
    public :: operator(==)
    public :: operator(/=)

(PDG arrays: interfaces)+≡
    interface operator(<)
        module procedure pdg_array_lt
    end interface
    interface operator(>)

```

```

        module procedure pdg_array_gt
    end interface
    interface operator(<=)
        module procedure pdg_array_le
    end interface
    interface operator(>=)
        module procedure pdg_array_ge
    end interface
    interface operator(==)
        module procedure pdg_array_eq
    end interface
    interface operator(/=)
        module procedure pdg_array_ne
    end interface

```

*(PDG arrays: procedures)* +=

```

elemental function pdg_array_lt (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
    logical :: flag
    integer :: i
    if (size (aval1%pdg) /= size (aval2%pdg)) then
        flag = size (aval1%pdg) < size (aval2%pdg)
    else
        do i = 1, size (aval1%pdg)
            if (abs (aval1%pdg(i)) /= abs (aval2%pdg(i))) then
                flag = abs (aval1%pdg(i)) < abs (aval2%pdg(i))
                return
            end if
        end do
        do i = 1, size (aval1%pdg)
            if (aval1%pdg(i) /= aval2%pdg(i)) then
                flag = aval1%pdg(i) > aval2%pdg(i)
                return
            end if
        end do
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function pdg_array_lt

elemental function pdg_array_gt (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
    logical :: flag
    flag = .not. (aval1 < aval2 .or. aval1 == aval2)
end function pdg_array_gt

elemental function pdg_array_le (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
    logical :: flag
    flag = aval1 < aval2 .or. aval1 == aval2
end function pdg_array_le

elemental function pdg_array_ge (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
    logical :: flag

```

```

        flag = .not. (aval1 < aval2)
    end function pdg_array_ge

    elemental function pdg_array_eq (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
        logical :: flag
        if (size (aval1%pdg) /= size (aval2%pdg)) then
            flag = .false.
        else
            flag = all (aval1%pdg == aval2%pdg)
        end if
    end function pdg_array_eq

    elemental function pdg_array_ne (aval1, aval2) result (flag)
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
        logical :: flag
        flag = .not. (aval1 == aval2)
    end function pdg_array_ne

```

Equivalence. Two PDG arrays are equivalent if either one contains UNDEFINED or if each element of array 1 is present in array 2, and vice versa.

*(PDG arrays: public)*+≡

```

    public :: operator(.eqv.)
    public :: operator(.neqv.)

```

*(PDG arrays: interfaces)*+≡

```

    interface operator(.eqv.)
        module procedure pdg_array_equivalent
    end interface
    interface operator(.neqv.)
        module procedure pdg_array_inequivalent
    end interface

```

*(PDG arrays: procedures)*+≡

```

    elemental function pdg_array_equivalent (aval1, aval2) result (eq)
        logical :: eq
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: match1, match2
        integer :: i
        if (allocated (aval1%pdg) .and. allocated (aval2%pdg)) then
            eq = any (aval1%pdg == UNDEFINED) &
                .or. any (aval2%pdg == UNDEFINED)
        if (.not. eq) then
            allocate (match1 (size (aval1%pdg)))
            allocate (match2 (size (aval2%pdg)))
            match1 = .false.
            match2 = .false.
            do i = 1, size (aval1%pdg)
                match2 = match2 .or. aval1%pdg(i) == aval2%pdg
            end do
            do i = 1, size (aval2%pdg)
                match1 = match1 .or. aval2%pdg(i) == aval1%pdg
            end do
            eq = all (match1) .and. all (match2)
        end if
    end function pdg_array_equivalent

```

```

        end if
    else
        eq = .false.
    end if
end function pdg_array_equivalent

elemental function pdg_array_inequivalent (aval1, aval2) result (neq)
    logical :: neq
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1, aval2
    neq = .not. pdg_array_equivalent (aval1, aval2)
end function pdg_array_inequivalent

```

### 5.3.5 Sorting

Sort a PDG array by absolute value, particle before antiparticle. After sorting, we eliminate double entries.

```

<PDG arrays: public>+≡
    public :: sort_abs

<PDG arrays: interfaces>+≡
    interface sort_abs
        module procedure pdg_array_sort_abs
    end interface

<PDG arrays: pdg array: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: sort_abs => pdg_array_sort_abs

<PDG arrays: procedures>+≡
    function pdg_array_sort_abs (aval1, unique) result (aval2)
        class(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval1
        logical, intent(in), optional :: unique
        type(pdg_array_t) :: aval2
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: tmp
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
        integer :: i, n
        logical :: uni
        uni = .false.; if (present (unique)) uni = unique
        n = size (aval1%pdg)
        if (uni) then
            allocate (tmp (n), mask(n))
            tmp = sort_abs (aval1%pdg)
            mask(1) = .true.
            do i = 2, n
                mask(i) = tmp(i) /= tmp(i-1)
            end do
            allocate (aval2%pdg (count (mask)))
            aval2%pdg = pack (tmp, mask)
        else
            allocate (aval2%pdg (n))
            aval2%pdg = sort_abs (aval1%pdg)
        end if
    end function pdg_array_sort_abs

```



### 5.3.6 PDG array list

A PDG array list, or PDG list, is an array of PDG-array objects with some convenience methods.

```

(PDG arrays: public)+≡
    public :: pdg_list_t

(PDG arrays: types)+≡
    type :: pdg_list_t
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: a
        contains
        (PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)
    end type pdg_list_t

```

Output, as a comma-separated list without advancing I/O.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)≡
    procedure :: write => pdg_list_write

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    subroutine pdg_list_write (object, unit)
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (allocated (object%a)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%a)
                if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ", "
                call object%a(i)%write (u)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine pdg_list_write

```

Initialize for a certain size. The entries are initially empty PDG arrays.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
    generic :: init => pdg_list_init_size
    procedure, private :: pdg_list_init_size

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    subroutine pdg_list_init_size (pl, n)
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(out) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        allocate (pl%a (n))
    end subroutine pdg_list_init_size

```

Initialize with a definite array of PDG codes. That is, each entry in the list becomes a single-particle PDG array.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
    generic :: init => pdg_list_init_int_array
    procedure, private :: pdg_list_init_int_array

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    subroutine pdg_list_init_int_array (pl, pdg)
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(out) :: pl
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg

```

```

integer :: i
allocate (pl%a (size (pdg)))
do i = 1, size (pdg)
    pl%a(i) = pdg(i)
end do
end subroutine pdg_list_init_int_array

```

Set one of the entries. No bounds-check.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
generic :: set => pdg_list_set_int
generic :: set => pdg_list_set_int_array
generic :: set => pdg_list_set_pdg_array
procedure, private :: pdg_list_set_int
procedure, private :: pdg_list_set_int_array
procedure, private :: pdg_list_set_pdg_array

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
subroutine pdg_list_set_int (pl, i, pdg)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    pl%a(i) = pdg
end subroutine pdg_list_set_int

subroutine pdg_list_set_int_array (pl, i, pdg)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
    pl%a(i) = pdg
end subroutine pdg_list_set_int_array

subroutine pdg_list_set_pdg_array (pl, i, pa)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    pl%a(i) = pa
end subroutine pdg_list_set_pdg_array

```

Array size, not the length of individual entries

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
procedure :: get_size => pdg_list_get_size

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
function pdg_list_get_size (pl) result (n)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer :: n
    if (allocated (pl%a)) then
        n = size (pl%a)
    else
        n = 0
    end if
end function pdg_list_get_size

```

Return an entry, as a PDG array.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get => pdg_list_get

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
  function pdg_list_get (pl, i) result (pa)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pa
    pa = pl%a(i)
  end function pdg_list_get

```

Check if the list entries are all either mutually disjoint or identical. The individual entries (PDG arrays) should already be sorted, so we can test for equality.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: is_regular => pdg_list_is_regular

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
  function pdg_list_is_regular (pl) result (flag)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    logical :: flag
    integer :: i, j, s
    s = pl%get_size ()
    flag = .true.
    do i = 1, s
      do j = i + 1, s
        if (pl%a(i) .match. pl%a(j)) then
          if (pl%a(i) /= pl%a(j)) then
            flag = .false.
            return
          end if
        end if
      end do
    end do
  end function pdg_list_is_regular

```

Sort the list. First, each entry gets sorted, including elimination of doublers. Then, we sort the list, using the first member of each PDG array as the marker. No removal of doublers at this stage.

If `n_in` is supplied, we do not reorder the first `n_in` particle entries.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: sort_abs => pdg_list_sort_abs

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
  function pdg_list_sort_abs (pl, n_in) result (pl_sorted)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
    type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_sorted
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pa
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg, map
    integer :: i, n0
    call pl_sorted%init (pl%get_size ())
    if (allocated (pl%a)) then
      allocate (pa (size (pl%a)))

```

```

do i = 1, size (pl%a)
  pa(i) = pl%a(i)%sort_abs (unique = .true.)
end do
allocate (pdg (size (pa)), source = 0)
do i = 1, size (pa)
  if (allocated (pa(i)%pdg)) then
    if (size (pa(i)%pdg) > 0) then
      pdg(i) = pa(i)%pdg(1)
    end if
  end if
end do
if (present (n_in)) then
  n0 = n_in
else
  n0 = 0
end if
allocate (map (size (pdg)))
map(:n0) = [(i, i = 1, n0)]
map(n0+1:) = n0 + order_abs (pdg(n0+1:))
do i = 1, size (pa)
  call pl_sorted%set (i, pa(map(i)))
end do
end if
end function pdg_list_sort_abs

```

Compare sorted lists: equality. The result is undefined if some entries are not allocated.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
generic :: operator (==) => pdg_list_eq
procedure, private :: pdg_list_eq

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
function pdg_list_eq (pl1, pl2) result (flag)
class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl1, pl2
logical :: flag
integer :: i
flag = .false.
if (allocated (pl1%a) .and. allocated (pl2%a)) then
  if (size (pl1%a) == size (pl2%a)) then
    do i = 1, size (pl1%a)
      associate (a1 => pl1%a(i), a2 => pl2%a(i))
        if (allocated (a1%pdg) .and. allocated (a2%pdg)) then
          if (size (a1%pdg) == size (a2%pdg)) then
            if (size (a1%pdg) > 0) then
              if (a1%pdg(1) /= a2%pdg(1)) return
            end if
          else
            return
          end if
        else
          return
        end if
      end if
    end do
  end if
end function
end associate
end do

```

```

        flag = .true.
    end if
end if
end function pdg_list_eq

```

Compare sorted lists. The result is undefined if some entries are not allocated.

The ordering is quite complicated. First, a shorter list comes before a longer list. Comparing entry by entry, a shorter entry comes first. Next, we check the first PDG code within corresponding entries. This is compared by absolute value. If equal, particle comes before antiparticle. Finally, if all is equal, the result is false.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
    generic :: operator (<) => pdg_list_lt
    procedure, private :: pdg_list_lt
(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
    function pdg_list_lt (p1, p2) result (flag)
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: p1, p2
        logical :: flag
        integer :: i
        flag = .false.
        if (allocated (p1%a) .and. allocated (p2%a)) then
            if (size (p1%a) < size (p2%a)) then
                flag = .true.; return
            else if (size (p1%a) > size (p2%a)) then
                return
            else
                do i = 1, size (p1%a)
                    associate (a1 => p1%a(i), a2 => p2%a(i))
                        if (allocated (a1%pdg) .and. allocated (a2%pdg)) then
                            if (size (a1%pdg) < size (a2%pdg)) then
                                flag = .true.; return
                            else if (size (a1%pdg) > size (a2%pdg)) then
                                return
                            else
                                if (size (a1%pdg) > 0) then
                                    if (abs (a1%pdg(1)) < abs (a2%pdg(1))) then
                                        flag = .true.; return
                                    else if (abs (a1%pdg(1)) > abs (a2%pdg(1))) then
                                        return
                                    else if (a1%pdg(1) > 0 .and. a2%pdg(1) < 0) then
                                        flag = .true.; return
                                    else if (a1%pdg(1) < 0 .and. a2%pdg(1) > 0) then
                                        return
                                    end if
                                end if
                            end if
                        end if
                    end do
                end do
                flag = .false.
            end if
        end if
    end function pdg_list_lt

```

```

end if
end function pdg_list_lt

```

Replace an entry. In the result, the entry #i is replaced by the contents of the second argument. The result is not sorted.

If n\_in is also set and i is less or equal to n\_in, replace #i only by the first entry of pl\_insert, and insert the remainder after entry n\_in.

*(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: replace => pdg_list_replace

```

*(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡*

```

function pdg_list_replace (pl, i, pl_insert, n_in) result (pl_out)
  class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl_insert
  integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
  type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_out
  integer :: n, n_insert, n_out, k
  n = pl%get_size ()
  n_insert = pl_insert%get_size ()
  n_out = n + n_insert - 1
  call pl_out%init (n_out)
!   if (allocated (pl%a)) then
!       do k = 1, i - 1
!           pl_out%a(k) = pl%a(k)
!       end do
!   end if
  if (present (n_in)) then
    pl_out%a(i) = pl_insert%a(1)
    do k = i + 1, n_in
      pl_out%a(k) = pl%a(k)
    end do
    do k = 1, n_insert - 1
      pl_out%a(n_in+k) = pl_insert%a(1+k)
    end do
    do k = 1, n - n_in
      pl_out%a(n_in+k+n_insert-1) = pl%a(n_in+k)
    end do
  else
!   if (allocated (pl_insert%a)) then
!       do k = 1, n_insert
!           pl_out%a(i-1+k) = pl_insert%a(k)
!       end do
!   end if
!   if (allocated (pl%a)) then
!       do k = 1, n - i
!           pl_out%a(i+n_insert-1+k) = pl%a(i+k)
!       end do
!   end if
!   end if
end function pdg_list_replace

```

Replace the entries of pl by the matching entries of pl\_match, one by one. This

is done in-place. If there is no match, return failure.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: match_replace => pdg_list_match_replace

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
  subroutine pdg_list_match_replace (pl, pl_match, success)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl_match
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    integer :: i, j
    success = .true.
    SCAN_ENTRIES: do i = 1, size (pl%a)
      do j = 1, size (pl_match%a)
        if (pl%a(i) .match. pl_match%a(j)) then
          pl%a(i) = pl_match%a(j)
          cycle SCAN_ENTRIES
        end if
      end do
      success = .false.
    end do SCAN_ENTRIES
  end subroutine pdg_list_match_replace

```

Just check if a PDG array matches any entry in the PDG list. The second version returns the position of the match within the list. An optional mask indicates the list elements that should be checked.

```

(PDG arrays: pdg list: TBP)+≡
  generic :: operator (.match.) => pdg_list_match_pdg_array
  procedure, private :: pdg_list_match_pdg_array
  procedure :: find_match => pdg_list_find_match_pdg_array

(PDG arrays: procedures)+≡
  function pdg_list_match_pdg_array (pl, pa) result (flag)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    logical :: flag
    flag = pl%find_match (pa) /= 0
  end function pdg_list_match_pdg_array

  function pdg_list_find_match_pdg_array (pl, pa, mask) result (i)
    class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    logical, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: mask
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (pl%a)
      if (present (mask)) then
        if (.not. mask(i)) cycle
      end if
      if (pl%a(i) .match. pa) return
    end do
    i = 0
  end function pdg_list_find_match_pdg_array

```

### 5.3.7 Unit tests

```
<PDG arrays: public>+=  
    public :: pdg_arrays_test  
  
<PDG arrays: procedures>+=  
    subroutine pdg_arrays_test (u, results)  
        integer, intent(in) :: u  
        type (test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results  
<PDG arrays: execute tests>  
    end subroutine pdg_arrays_test
```

Basic functionality.

```
<PDG arrays: execute tests>=  
    call test (pdg_arrays_1, "pdg_arrays_1", &  
        "create and sort PDG array", &  
        u, results)  
  
<PDG arrays: tests>=  
    subroutine pdg_arrays_1 (u)  
        integer, intent(in) :: u  
  
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pa, pa1, pa2, pa3, pa4, pa5, pa6  
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg  
  
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: pdg_arrays_1"  
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create and sort PDG arrays"  
        write (u, "(A)")  
  
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Assignment"  
        write (u, "(A)")  
  
        call pa%write (u)  
        write (u, *)  
        write (u, "(A,I0)") "length = ", pa%get_length ()  
        pdg = pa  
        write (u, "(A,3(1x,I0))") "contents = ", pdg  
  
        write (u, *)  
        pa = 1  
        call pa%write (u)  
        write (u, *)  
        write (u, "(A,I0)") "length = ", pa%get_length ()  
        pdg = pa  
        write (u, "(A,3(1x,I0))") "contents = ", pdg  
  
        write (u, *)  
        pa = [1, 2, 3]  
        call pa%write (u)  
        write (u, *)  
        write (u, "(A,I0)") "length = ", pa%get_length ()  
        pdg = pa  
        write (u, "(A,3(1x,I0))") "contents = ", pdg  
        write (u, "(A,I0)") "element #2 = ", pa%get (2)
```



```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Replace"
write (u, *)

pa = pa%replace (2, [-5, 5, -7])
call pa%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sort"
write (u, *)

pa = [1, -7, 3, -5, 5, 3]
call pa%write (u)
write (u, *)
pa1 = pa%sort_abs ()
pa2 = pa%sort_abs (unique = .true.)
call pa1%write (u)
write (u, *)
call pa2%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compare"
write (u, *)

pa1 = [1, 3]
pa2 = [1, 2, -2]
pa3 = [1, 2, 4]
pa4 = [1, 2, 4]
pa5 = [1, 2, -4]
pa6 = [1, 2, -3]

write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "< ", &
    pa1 < pa2, pa2 < pa3, pa3 < pa4, pa4 < pa5, pa5 < pa6, pa6 < pa1
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "> ", &
    pa1 > pa2, pa2 > pa3, pa3 > pa4, pa4 > pa5, pa5 > pa6, pa6 > pa1
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "<=", &
    pa1 <= pa2, pa2 <= pa3, pa3 <= pa4, pa4 <= pa5, pa5 <= pa6, pa6 <= pa1
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") ">=", &
    pa1 >= pa2, pa2 >= pa3, pa3 >= pa4, pa4 >= pa5, pa5 >= pa6, pa6 >= pa1
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "==", &
    pa1 == pa2, pa2 == pa3, pa3 == pa4, pa4 == pa5, pa5 == pa6, pa6 == pa1
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "/=", &
    pa1 /= pa2, pa2 /= pa3, pa3 /= pa4, pa4 /= pa5, pa5 /= pa6, pa6 /= pa1

write (u, *)
pa1 = [0]
pa2 = [1, 2]
pa3 = [1, -2]

write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") ".eqv ", &
    pa1 .eqv. pa1, pa1 .eqv. pa2, &
    pa2 .eqv. pa2, pa2 .eqv. pa3

```

```

write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "neqv", &
    pa1 .neqv. pa1, pa1 .neqv. pa2, &
    pa2 .neqv. pa2, pa2 .neqv. pa3

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,6(1x,L1))") "match", &
    pa1 .match. 0, pa1 .match. 1, &
    pa2 .match. 0, pa2 .match. 1, pa2 .match. 3

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: pdg_arrays_1"

end subroutine pdg_arrays_1

```

PDG array list, i.e., arrays of arrays.

```

(PDG arrays: execute tests)+≡
call test (pdg_arrays_2, "pdg_arrays_2", &
    "create and sort PDG lists", &
    u, results)

(PDG arrays: tests)+≡
subroutine pdg_arrays_2 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u

type(pdg_array_t) :: pa
type(pdg_list_t) :: pl, pl1

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: pdg_arrays_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create and sort PDG lists"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Assignment"
write (u, "(A)")

call pl%init (3)
call pl%set (1, 42)
call pl%set (2, [3, 2])
pa = [5, -5]
call pl%set (3, pa)
call pl%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,I0)") "size = ", pl%get_size ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sort"
write (u, "(A)")

pl = pl%sort_abs ()
call pl%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract item #3"
write (u, "(A)")

pa = pl%get (3)
call pa%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Replace item #3"
write (u, "(A)")

call pl1%init (2)
call pl1%set (1, [2, 4])
call pl1%set (2, -7)

pl = pl%replace (3, pl1)
call pl%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: pdg_arrays_2"

end subroutine pdg_arrays_2

```

Check if a (sorted) PDG array lists is regular. The entries (PDG arrays) must not overlap, unless they are identical.

```

(PDG arrays: execute tests)+≡
call test (pdg_arrays_3, "pdg_arrays_3", &
  "check PDG lists", &
  u, results)

(PDG arrays: tests)+≡
subroutine pdg_arrays_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u

  type(pdg_list_t) :: pl

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: pdg_arrays_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check for regular PDG lists"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Regular list"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call pl%init (4)
  call pl%set (1, [1, 2])
  call pl%set (2, [1, 2])
  call pl%set (3, [5, -5])
  call pl%set (4, 42)
  call pl%write (u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(L1)") pl%is_regular ()

  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Irregular list"
write (u, "(A)")

call pl%init (4)
call pl%set (1, [1, 2])
call pl%set (2, [1, 2])
call pl%set (3, [2, 5, -5])
call pl%set (4, 42)
call pl%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(L1)") pl%is_regular ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: pdg_arrays_3"

end subroutine pdg_arrays_3

```

Compare PDG array lists. The lists must be regular, i.e., sorted and with non-overlapping (or identical) entries.

```

(PDG arrays: execute tests)+≡
call test (pdg_arrays_4, "pdg_arrays_4", &
  "compare PDG lists", &
  u, results)

(PDG arrays: tests)+≡
subroutine pdg_arrays_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u

  type(pdg_list_t) :: pl1, pl2, pl3

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: pdg_arrays_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check for regular PDG lists"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Create lists"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call pl1%init (4)
  call pl1%set (1, [1, 2])
  call pl1%set (2, [1, 2])
  call pl1%set (3, [5, -5])
  call pl1%set (4, 42)
  write (u, "(I1,1x)", advance = "no") 1
  call pl1%write (u)
  write (u, *)

  call pl2%init (2)
  call pl2%set (1, 3)
  call pl2%set (2, [5, -5])
  write (u, "(I1,1x)", advance = "no") 2
  call pl2%write (u)
  write (u, *)

  call pl3%init (2)

```

```

call pl3%set (1, 4)
call pl3%set (2, [5, -5])
write (u, "(I1,1x)", advance = "no") 3
call pl3%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* a == b"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(2x,A)") "123"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 1, pl1 == pl1, pl1 == pl2, pl1 == pl3
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 2, pl2 == pl1, pl2 == pl2, pl2 == pl3
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 3, pl3 == pl1, pl3 == pl2, pl3 == pl3

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* a < b"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(2x,A)") "123"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 1, pl1 < pl1, pl1 < pl2, pl1 < pl3
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 2, pl2 < pl1, pl2 < pl2, pl2 < pl3
write (u, "(I1,1x,4L1)") 3, pl3 < pl1, pl3 < pl2, pl3 < pl3

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: pdg_arrays_4"

end subroutine pdg_arrays_4

```

Match-replace: translate all entries in the first list into the matching entries of the second list, if there is a match.

```

<PDG arrays: execute tests>+≡
  call test (pdg_arrays_5, "pdg_arrays_5", &
    "match PDG lists", &
    u, results)

<PDG arrays: tests>+≡
  subroutine pdg_arrays_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u

    type(pdg_list_t) :: pl1, pl2, pl3
    logical :: success

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: pdg_arrays_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: match-replace"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create lists"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call pl1%init (2)
    call pl1%set (1, [1, 2])

```

```

call pl1%set (2, 42)
call pl1%write (u)
write (u, *)
call pl3%init (2)
call pl3%set (1, [42, -42])
call pl3%set (2, [1, 2, 3, 4])
call pl1%match_replace (pl3, success)
call pl3%write (u)
write (u, "(1x,A,1x,L1,':',1x)", advance="no")  "=>", success
call pl1%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, *)

call pl2%init (2)
call pl2%set (1, 9)
call pl2%set (2, 42)
call pl2%write (u)
write (u, *)
call pl2%match_replace (pl3, success)
call pl3%write (u)
write (u, "(1x,A,1x,L1,':',1x)", advance="no")  "=>", success
call pl2%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: pdg_arrays_5"

end subroutine pdg_arrays_5

```

## 5.4 subevents

The purpose of subevents is to store the relevant part of the physical event (either partonic or hadronic), and to hold particle selections and combinations which are constructed in cut or analysis expressions.

```
<subevents.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module subevents  
  
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_14, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use c_particles !NODEP!  
    use jets  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use sorting  
    use pdg_arrays  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Subevents: public>  
  
    <Subevents: parameters>  
  
    <Subevents: types>  
  
    <Subevents: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Subevents: procedures>  
  
  end module subevents
```

### 5.4.1 Particles

For the purpose of this module, a particle has a type which can indicate a beam, incoming, outgoing, or composite particle, flavor and helicity codes (integer, undefined for composite), four-momentum and invariant mass squared. (Other particles types are used in extended event types, but also defined here.) Furthermore, each particle has an allocatable array of ancestors – particle indices which indicate the building blocks of a composite particle. For an incoming/outgoing particle, the array contains only the index of the particle itself.

For incoming particles, the momentum is inverted before storing it in the particle object.

```
<Subevents: parameters>≡  
  integer, parameter, public :: PRT_UNDEFINED = 0  
  integer, parameter, public :: PRT_BEAM = -9  
  integer, parameter, public :: PRT_INCOMING = 1  
  integer, parameter, public :: PRT_OUTGOING = 2
```

```

integer, parameter, public :: PRT_COMPOSITE = 3
integer, parameter, public :: PRT_VIRTUAL = 4
integer, parameter, public :: PRT_RESONANT = 5
integer, parameter, public :: PRT_BEAM_REMNANT = 9

```

## The type

We initialize only the type here and mark as unpolarized. The initializers below do the rest.

```

<Subevents: public>≡
    public :: prt_t

<Subevents: types>≡
    type :: prt_t
    private
        integer :: type = PRT_UNDEFINED
        integer :: pdg
        logical :: polarized = .false.
        integer :: h
        type(vector4_t) :: p
        real(default) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: src
    end type prt_t

```

Initializers. Polarization is set separately. Finalizers are not needed.

```

<Subevents: procedures>≡
    subroutine prt_init_beam (prt, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
        prt%type = PRT_BEAM
        call prt_set (prt, pdg, - p, p2, src)
    end subroutine prt_init_beam

    subroutine prt_init_incoming (prt, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
        prt%type = PRT_INCOMING
        call prt_set (prt, pdg, - p, p2, src)
    end subroutine prt_init_incoming

    subroutine prt_init_outgoing (prt, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
    end subroutine prt_init_outgoing

```



```

    prt%type = PRT_OUTGOING
    call prt_set (prt, pdg, p, p2, src)
end subroutine prt_init_outgoing

subroutine prt_init_composite (prt, p, src)
    type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
    prt%type = PRT_COMPOSITE
    call prt_set (prt, 0, p, p**2, src)
end subroutine prt_init_composite

```

This version is for temporary particle objects, so the `src` array is not set.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_init_combine

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
        type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
        type(vector4_t) :: p
        integer, dimension(0) :: src
        prt%type = PRT_COMPOSITE
        p = prt1%p + prt2%p
        call prt_set (prt, 0, p, p**2, src)
    end subroutine prt_init_combine

```

Init from a pseudojet object.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prt_init_pseudojet (prt, jet, src)
        type(prt_t), intent(out) :: prt
        type(pseudojet_t), intent(in) :: jet
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
        type(vector4_t) :: p
        prt%type = PRT_COMPOSITE
        p = vector4_moving (jet%e(), &
            vector3_moving ([jet%px(), jet%py(), jet%pz()]))
        call prt_set (prt, 0, p, p**2, src)
    end subroutine prt_init_pseudojet

```

## Accessing contents

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_get_pdg

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_get_pdg (prt) result (pdg)
        integer :: pdg
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        pdg = prt%pdg
    end function prt_get_pdg

```

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_get_momentum

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_get_momentum (prt) result (p)
        type(vector4_t) :: p
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        p = prt%p
    end function prt_get_momentum

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_get_msq

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_get_msq (prt) result (msq)
        real(default) :: msq
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        msq = prt%p2
    end function prt_get_msq

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_is_polarized

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_is_polarized (prt) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        flag = prt%polarized
    end function prt_is_polarized

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: prt_get_helicity

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_get_helicity (prt) result (h)
        integer :: h
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        h = prt%h
    end function prt_get_helicity

```

## Setting data

Set the PDG, momentum and momentum squared, and ancestors. If allocation-assignment is available, this can be simplified.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prt_set (prt, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
        prt%pdg = pdg
        prt%p = p
    end subroutine prt_set

```

```

prt%p2 = p2
if (allocated (prt%src)) then
  if (size (src) /= size (prt%src)) then
    deallocate (prt%src)
    allocate (prt%src (size (src)))
  end if
else
  allocate (prt%src (size (src)))
end if
prt%src = src
end subroutine prt_set

```

Set the particle PDG code separately.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine prt_set_pdg (prt, pdg)
    type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    prt%pdg = pdg
  end subroutine prt_set_pdg

```

Set the momentum separately.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine prt_set_p (prt, p)
    type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    prt%p = p
  end subroutine prt_set_p

```

Set the squared invariant mass separately.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine prt_set_p2 (prt, p2)
    type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), intent(in) :: p2
    prt%p2 = p2
  end subroutine prt_set_p2

```

Set helicity (optional).

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prt_polarize (prt, h)
    type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: h
    prt%polarized = .true.
    prt%h = h
  end subroutine prt_polarize

```

## Conversion

Transform a `prt_t` object into a `c_prt_t` object.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: c_prt

```

```

<Subevents: interfaces>≡
  interface c_prt
    module procedure c_prt_from_prt
  end interface

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  elemental function c_prt_from_prt (prt) result (c_prt)
    type(c_prt_t) :: c_prt
    type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
    c_prt%type = prt%type
    c_prt%pdg = prt%pdg
    if (prt%polarized) then
      c_prt%polarized = 1
    else
      c_prt%polarized = 0
    end if
    c_prt%h = prt%h
    c_prt%pe = energy (prt%p)
    c_prt%px = vector4_get_component (prt%p, 1)
    c_prt%py = vector4_get_component (prt%p, 2)
    c_prt%pz = vector4_get_component (prt%p, 3)
    c_prt%p2 = prt%p2
  end function c_prt_from_prt

```

## Output

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: prt_write

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prt_write (prt, unit)
    type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "prt("
    select case (prt%type)
    case (PRT_UNDEFINED); write (u, "('?:')", advance="no")
    case (PRT_BEAM); write (u, "('b:~')", advance="no")
    case (PRT_INCOMING); write (u, "('i:~')", advance="no")
    case (PRT_OUTGOING); write (u, "('o:~')", advance="no")
    case (PRT_COMPOSITE); write (u, "('c:~')", advance="no")
    end select
    select case (prt%type)
    case (PRT_BEAM, PRT_INCOMING, PRT_OUTGOING)
      if (prt%polarized) then
        write (u, "(I0,'/',I0,'|~')", advance="no") prt%pdg, prt%h
      else
        write (u, "(I0,'|~')", advance="no") prt%pdg
      end if
    end select
    select case (prt%type)
    case (PRT_BEAM, PRT_INCOMING, PRT_OUTGOING, PRT_COMPOSITE)

```

```

        write (u, "(" // FMT_14 // ",'," // FMT_14 // ",'," // &
             FMT_14 // ",'," // FMT_14 // ") ", advance="no") &
             array_from_vector4 (prt%p)
        write (u, "('|'," // FMT_19 // ") ", advance="no") prt%p2
    end select
    if (allocated (prt%src)) then
        write (u, "('|'," // FMT_19 // ") ", advance="no")
        do i = 1, size (prt%src)
            write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") prt%src(i)
        end do
    end if
    write (u, "(A)" " ")
end subroutine prt_write

```

## Tools

Two particles match if their `src` arrays are the same.

```

<Subevents: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(.match.)
        module procedure prt_match
    end interface

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_match (prt1, prt2) result (match)
        logical :: match
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
        if (size (prt1%src) == size (prt2%src)) then
            match = all (prt1%src == prt2%src)
        else
            match = .false.
        end if
    end function prt_match

```

The combine operation makes a pseudoparticle whose momentum is the result of adding (the momenta of) the pair of input particles. We trace the particles from which a particle is built by storing a `src` array. Each particle entry in the `src` list contains a list of indices which indicates its building blocks. The indices refer to an original list of particles. Index lists are sorted, and they contain no element more than once.

We thus require that in a given pseudoparticle, each original particle occurs at most once.

The result is `intent(inout)`, so it will not be initialized when the subroutine is entered.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prt_combine (prt, prt_in1, prt_in2, ok)
        type(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt_in1, prt_in2
        logical :: ok
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: src
        call combine_index_lists (src, prt_in1%src, prt_in2%src)
    end subroutine prt_combine

```

```

    ok = allocated (src)
    if (ok) call prt_init_composite (prt, prt_in1%p + prt_in2%p, src)
end subroutine prt_combine

```

This variant does not produce the combined particle, it just checks whether the combination is valid (no common src entry).

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: are_disjoint

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    function are_disjoint (prt_in1, prt_in2) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt_in1, prt_in2
        flag = index_lists_are_disjoint (prt_in1%src, prt_in2%src)
    end function are_disjoint

```

src Lists with length > 1 are built by a combine operation which merges the lists in a sorted manner. If the result would have a duplicate entry, it is discarded, and the result is unallocated.

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine combine_index_lists (res, src1, src2)
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src1, src2
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: res
        integer :: i1, i2, i
        allocate (res (size (src1) + size (src2)))
        if (size (src1) == 0) then
            res = src2
            return
        else if (size (src2) == 0) then
            res = src1
            return
        end if
        i1 = 1
        i2 = 1
        LOOP: do i = 1, size (res)
            if (src1(i1) < src2(i2)) then
                res(i) = src1(i1); i1 = i1 + 1
                if (i1 > size (src1)) then
                    res(i+1:) = src2(i2:)
                    exit LOOP
                end if
            else if (src1(i1) > src2(i2)) then
                res(i) = src2(i2); i2 = i2 + 1
                if (i2 > size (src2)) then
                    res(i+1:) = src1(i1:)
                    exit LOOP
                end if
            else
                deallocate (res)
                exit LOOP
            end if
        end do LOOP
    end subroutine combine_index_lists

```

This function is similar, but it does not actually merge the list, it just checks whether they are disjoint (no common `src` entry).

*(Subevents: procedures)*+≡

```
function index_lists_are_disjoint (src1, src2) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src1, src2
  integer :: i1, i2, i
  flag = .true.
  i1 = 1
  i2 = 1
  LOOP: do i = 1, size (src1) + size (src2)
    if (src1(i1) < src2(i2)) then
      i1 = i1 + 1
      if (i1 > size (src1)) then
        exit LOOP
      end if
    else if (src1(i1) > src2(i2)) then
      i2 = i2 + 1
      if (i2 > size (src2)) then
        exit LOOP
      end if
    else
      flag = .false.
      exit LOOP
    end if
  end do LOOP
end function index_lists_are_disjoint
```

## 5.4.2 C-compatible particle type

### 5.4.3 subevents

Particles are collected in subevents. This type is implemented as a dynamically allocated array, which need not be completely filled. The value `n_active` determines the number of meaningful entries.

#### Type definition

*(Subevents: public)*+≡

```
public :: subevt_t
```

*(Subevents: types)*+≡

```
type :: subevt_t
  private
  integer :: n_active = 0
  type(prt_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
contains
  (Subevents: subevt: TBP)
end type subevt_t
```

Initialize, allocating with size zero (default) or given size. The number of contained particles is set equal to the size.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_init

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_init (subevt, n_active)
        type(subevt_t), intent(out) :: subevt
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_active
        if (present (n_active)) subevt%n_active = n_active
        allocate (subevt%prt (subevt%n_active))
    end subroutine subevt_init

```

(Re-)allocate the subevent with some given size. If the size is greater than the previous one, do a real reallocation. Otherwise, just reset the recorded size. Contents are untouched, but become invalid.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_reset

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_reset (subevt, n_active)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        integer, intent(in) :: n_active
        subevt%n_active = n_active
        if (subevt%n_active > size (subevt%prt)) then
            deallocate (subevt%prt)
            allocate (subevt%prt (subevt%n_active))
        end if
    end subroutine subevt_reset

```

Output. No prefix for the headline 'subevt', because this will usually be printed appending to a previous line.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_write

<Subevents: subevt: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => subevt_write

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_write (object, unit, prefix)
        class(subevt_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        character(*), intent(in), optional :: prefix
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "subevent:"
        do i = 1, object%n_active
            if (present (prefix)) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") prefix
            write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") i
            call prt_write (object%prt(i), unit)
        end do
    end subroutine subevt_write

```



Defined assignment: transfer only meaningful entries. This is a deep copy (as would be default assignment).

```

<Subevents: interfaces>+≡
    interface assignment(=)
        module procedure subevt_assign
    end interface

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_assign (subevt, subevt_in)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt_in
        if (.not. allocated (subevt%prt)) then
            call subevt_init (subevt, subevt_in%n_active)
        else
            call subevt_reset (subevt, subevt_in%n_active)
        end if
        subevt%prt(:subevt%n_active) = subevt_in%prt(:subevt%n_active)
    end subroutine subevt_assign

```

## Fill contents

Store incoming/outgoing particles which are completely defined.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_set_beam
    public :: subevt_set_incoming
    public :: subevt_set_outgoing
    public :: subevt_set_composite

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_set_beam (subevt, i, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: src
        if (present (src)) then
            call prt_init_beam (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, src)
        else
            call prt_init_beam (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, (/ i /))
        end if
    end subroutine subevt_set_beam

    subroutine subevt_set_incoming (subevt, i, pdg, p, p2, src)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: p2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: src
        if (present (src)) then
            call prt_init_incoming (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, src)

```

```

else
    call prt_init_incoming (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, (/ i /))
end if
end subroutine subevt_set_incoming

subroutine subevt_set_outgoing (subevt, i, pdg, p, p2, src)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: p2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: src
    if (present (src)) then
        call prt_init_outgoing (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, src)
    else
        call prt_init_outgoing (subevt%prt(i), pdg, p, p2, (/ i /))
    end if
end subroutine subevt_set_outgoing

subroutine subevt_set_composite (subevt, i, p, src)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: src
    call prt_init_composite (subevt%prt(i), p, src)
end subroutine subevt_set_composite

```

Separately assign flavors, simultaneously for all incoming/outgoing particles.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_set_pdg_beam
    public :: subevt_set_pdg_incoming
    public :: subevt_set_pdg_outgoing

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_set_pdg_beam (subevt, pdg)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
        integer :: i, j
        j = 1
        do i = 1, subevt%n_active
            if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_BEAM) then
                call prt_set_pdg (subevt%prt(i), pdg(j))
                j = j + 1
                if (j > size (pdg)) exit
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine subevt_set_pdg_beam

    subroutine subevt_set_pdg_incoming (subevt, pdg)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
        integer :: i, j
        j = 1
        do i = 1, subevt%n_active

```

```

        if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_INCOMING) then
            call prt_set_pdg (subevt%prt(i), pdg(j))
            j = j + 1
            if (j > size (pdg)) exit
        end if
    end do
end subroutine subevt_set_pdg_incoming

subroutine subevt_set_pdg_outgoing (subevt, pdg)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
    integer :: i, j
    j = 1
    do i = 1, subevt%n_active
        if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_OUTGOING) then
            call prt_set_pdg (subevt%prt(i), pdg(j))
            j = j + 1
            if (j > size (pdg)) exit
        end if
    end do
end subroutine subevt_set_pdg_outgoing

```

Separately assign momenta, simultaneously for all incoming/outgoing particles.

*<Subevents: public>+≡*

```

public :: subevt_set_p_beam
public :: subevt_set_p_incoming
public :: subevt_set_p_outgoing

```

*<Subevents: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine subevt_set_p_beam (subevt, p)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    integer :: i, j
    j = 1
    do i = 1, subevt%n_active
        if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_BEAM) then
            call prt_set_p (subevt%prt(i), p(j))
            j = j + 1
            if (j > size (p)) exit
        end if
    end do
end subroutine subevt_set_p_beam

subroutine subevt_set_p_incoming (subevt, p)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    integer :: i, j
    j = 1
    do i = 1, subevt%n_active
        if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_INCOMING) then
            call prt_set_p (subevt%prt(i), p(j))
            j = j + 1
            if (j > size (p)) exit
        end if
    end if
end subroutine subevt_set_p_incoming

```

```

        end do
    end subroutine subevt_set_p_incoming

    subroutine subevt_set_p_outgoing (subevt, p)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
        integer :: i, j
        j = 1
        do i = 1, subevt%n_active
            if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_OUTGOING) then
                call prt_set_p (subevt%prt(i), p(j))
                j = j + 1
                if (j > size (p)) exit
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine subevt_set_p_outgoing

```

Separately assign the squared invariant mass, simultaneously for all incoming/outgoing particles.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_set_p2_beam
    public :: subevt_set_p2_incoming
    public :: subevt_set_p2_outgoing

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_set_p2_beam (subevt, p2)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p2
        integer :: i, j
        j = 1
        do i = 1, subevt%n_active
            if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_BEAM) then
                call prt_set_p2 (subevt%prt(i), p2(j))
                j = j + 1
                if (j > size (p2)) exit
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine subevt_set_p2_beam

    subroutine subevt_set_p2_incoming (subevt, p2)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p2
        integer :: i, j
        j = 1
        do i = 1, subevt%n_active
            if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_INCOMING) then
                call prt_set_p2 (subevt%prt(i), p2(j))
                j = j + 1
                if (j > size (p2)) exit
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine subevt_set_p2_incoming

    subroutine subevt_set_p2_outgoing (subevt, p2)

```

```

type(subvt_t), intent(inout) :: subvt
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p2
integer :: i, j
j = 1
do i = 1, subvt%n_active
  if (subvt%prt(i)%type == PRT_OUTGOING) then
    call prt_set_p2 (subvt%prt(i), p2(j))
    j = j + 1
    if (j > size (p2)) exit
  end if
end do
end subroutine subvt_set_p2_outgoing

```

Set polarization for an entry

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
public :: subvt_polarize

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
subroutine subvt_polarize (subvt, i, h)
  type(subvt_t), intent(inout) :: subvt
  integer, intent(in) :: i, h
  call prt_polarize (subvt%prt(i), h)
end subroutine subvt_polarize

```

## Accessing contents

Return true if the subevent has entries.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
public :: subvt_is_nonempty

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
function subvt_is_nonempty (subvt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(subvt_t), intent(in) :: subvt
  flag = subvt%n_active /= 0
end function subvt_is_nonempty

```

Return the number of entries

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
public :: subvt_get_length

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
function subvt_get_length (subvt) result (length)
  integer :: length
  type(subvt_t), intent(in) :: subvt
  length = subvt%n_active
end function subvt_get_length

```

Return a specific particle. The index is not checked for validity.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
public :: subvt_get_prt

```

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
function subevt_get_prt (subevt, i) result (prt)
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  prt = subevt%prt(i)
end function subevt_get_prt

```

Return the partonic energy squared. We take the particles with flag PRT\_INCOMING and compute their total invariant mass.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: subevt_get_sqrts_hat
<Subevents: procedures>+≡
function subevt_get_sqrts_hat (subevt) result (sqrts_hat)
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt
  real(default) :: sqrts_hat
  type(vector4_t) :: p
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, subevt%n_active
    if (subevt%prt(i)%type == PRT_INCOMING) then
      p = p + prt_get_momentum (subevt%prt(i))
    end if
  end do
  sqrts_hat = p ** 1
end function subevt_get_sqrts_hat

```

```

<Subevents: interfaces>+≡
interface c_prt
  module procedure c_prt_from_subevt
  module procedure c_prt_array_from_subevt
end interface

```

```

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
function c_prt_from_subevt (subevt, i) result (c_prt)
  type(c_prt_t) :: c_prt
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  c_prt = c_prt_from_prt (subevt%prt(i))
end function c_prt_from_subevt

function c_prt_array_from_subevt (subevt) result (c_prt_array)
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt
  type(c_prt_t), dimension(subevt%n_active) :: c_prt_array
  c_prt_array = c_prt_from_prt (subevt%prt(1:subevt%n_active))
end function c_prt_array_from_subevt

```

## Operations with subevents

The join operation joins two subevents. When appending the elements of the second list, we check for each particle whether it is already in the first list. If yes, it is discarded. The result list should be initialized already.

If a mask is present, it refers to the second subevent. Particles where the mask is not set are discarded.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_join

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_join (subevt, pl1, pl2, mask2)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl1, pl2
        logical, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: mask2
        integer :: n1, n2, i, n
        n1 = pl1%n_active
        n2 = pl2%n_active
        call subevt_reset (subevt, n1 + n2)
        subevt%prt(:n1) = pl1%prt(:n1)
        n = n1
        if (present (mask2)) then
            do i = 1, pl2%n_active
                if (mask2(i)) then
                    if (disjoint (i)) then
                        n = n + 1
                        subevt%prt(n) = pl2%prt(i)
                    end if
                end if
            end do
        else
            do i = 1, pl2%n_active
                if (disjoint (i)) then
                    n = n + 1
                    subevt%prt(n) = pl2%prt(i)
                end if
            end do
        end if
        subevt%n_active = n
    contains
        function disjoint (i) result (flag)
            integer, intent(in) :: i
            logical :: flag
            integer :: j
            do j = 1, pl1%n_active
                if (.not. are_disjoint (pl1%prt(j), pl2%prt(i))) then
                    flag = .false.
                    return
                end if
            end do
            flag = .true.
        end function disjoint
    end subroutine subevt_join

```

The combine operation makes a subevent whose entries are the result of adding (the momenta of) each pair of particles in the input lists. We trace the particles from which a particles is built by storing a `src` array. Each particle entry in the `src` list contains a list of indices which indicates its building blocks. The indices

refer to an original list of particles. Index lists are sorted, and they contain no element more than once.

We thus require that in a given pseudoparticle, each original particle occurs at most once.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_combine

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_combine (subevt, pl1, pl2, mask12)
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl1, pl2
        logical, dimension(:,,:), intent(in), optional :: mask12
        integer :: n1, n2, i1, i2, n, j
        logical :: ok
        n1 = pl1%n_active
        n2 = pl2%n_active
        call subevt_reset (subevt, n1 * n2)
        n = 1
        do i1 = 1, n1
            do i2 = 1, n2
                if (present (mask12)) then
                    ok = mask12(i1,i2)
                else
                    ok = .true.
                end if
                if (ok) call prt_combine &
                    (subevt%prt(n), pl1%prt(i1), pl2%prt(i2), ok)
                if (ok) then
                    CHECK_DOUBLES: do j = 1, n - 1
                        if (subevt%prt(n) .match. subevt%prt(j)) then
                            ok = .false.; exit CHECK_DOUBLES
                        end if
                    end do CHECK_DOUBLES
                    if (ok) n = n + 1
                end if
            end do
        end do
        subevt%n_active = n - 1
    end subroutine subevt_combine

```

The collect operation makes a single-entry subevent which results from combining (the momenta of) all particles in the input list. As above, the result does not contain an original particle more than once; this is checked for each particle when it is collected. Furthermore, each entry has a mask; where the mask is false, the entry is dropped.

(Thus, if the input particles are already composite, there is some chance that the result depends on the order of the input list and is not as expected. This situation should be avoided.)

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
    public :: subevt_collect

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
    subroutine subevt_collect (subevt, pl1, mask1)

```



```

type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl1
logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask1
type(prt_t) :: prt
integer :: i
logical :: ok
call subevt_reset (subevt, 1)
subevt%n_active = 0
do i = 1, pl1%n_active
  if (mask1(i)) then
    if (subevt%n_active == 0) then
      subevt%n_active = 1
      subevt%prt(1) = pl1%prt(i)
    else
      call prt_combine (prt, subevt%prt(1), pl1%prt(i), ok)
      if (ok) subevt%prt(1) = prt
    end if
  end if
end do
end subroutine subevt_collect

```

The cluster operation is similar to `collect`, but applies a jet algorithm. The result is a subevent consisting of jets and, possibly, unclustered extra particles. As above, the result does not contain an original particle more than once; this is checked for each particle when it is collected. Furthermore, each entry has a mask; where the mask is false, the entry is dropped.

The algorithm: first determine the (pseudo)particles that participate in the clustering. They should not overlap, and the mask entry must be set. We then cluster the particles, using the given jet definition. The result particles are retrieved from the cluster sequence. We still have to determine the source indices for each jet: for each input particle, we get the jet index. Accumulating the source entries for all particles that are part of a given jet, we derive the jet source entries. Finally, we delete the C structures that have been constructed by FastJet and its interface.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: subevt_cluster

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_cluster (subevt, pl1, mask1, jet_def)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl1
    logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask1
    type(jet_definition_t), intent(in) :: jet_def
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: src, src_tmp
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map, jet_idx
    type(pseudojet_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: jet_in, jet_out
    type(pseudojet_vector_t) :: jv_in, jv_out
    type(cluster_sequence_t) :: cs
    integer :: i, j, k, n_src, n_active
    n_active = 0
    allocate (map (pl1%n_active), source = 0)
    allocate (src (0))
    do i = 1, pl1%n_active

```

```

      if (mask1(i)) then
        call combine_index_lists (src_tmp, src, pl1%prt(i)%src)
        if (allocated (src_tmp)) then
          call move_alloc (from=src_tmp, to=src)
          n_active = n_active + 1
          map(n_active) = i
        end if
      end if
    end do
    allocate (jet_in (count (map /= 0)))
    do i = 1, size (jet_in)
      call jet_in(i)%init (prt_get_momentum (pl1%prt(map(i))))
    end do
    call jv_in%init (jet_in)
    call cs%init (jv_in, jet_def)
    jv_out = cs%inclusive_jets ()
    allocate (jet_idx (size (jet_in)))
    call cs%assign_jet_indices (jv_out, jet_idx)
    allocate (jet_out (jv_out%size ()))
    jet_out = jv_out
    call subvt_reset (subvt, size (jet_out))
    do i = 1, size (jet_out)
      src = 0
      n_src = 0
      do j = 1, size (jet_idx)
        if (jet_idx(j) == i) then
          associate (prt => pl1%prt(map(j)))
          do k = 1, size (prt%src)
            src(n_src + k) = prt%src(k)
          end do
          n_src = n_src + size (prt%src)
        end associate
      end if
    end do
    call prt_init_pseudojet (subvt%prt(i), jet_out(i), src(:n_src))
  end do
  do i = 1, size (jet_out)
    call jet_out(i)%final ()
  end do
  call jv_out%final ()
  call cs%final ()
  call jv_in%final ()
  do i = 1, size (jet_in)
    call jet_in(i)%final ()
  end do
end subroutine subvt_cluster

```

Return a list of all particles for which the mask is true.

*<Subevents: public>+≡*

public :: subvt\_select

*<Subevents: procedures>+≡*

subroutine subvt\_select (subvt, pl, mask1)

type(subvt\_t), intent(inout) :: subvt

```

type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl
logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask1
integer :: i, n
call subevt_reset (subevt, pl%n_active)
n = 0
do i = 1, pl%n_active
  if (mask1(i)) then
    n = n + 1
    subevt%prt(n) = pl%prt(i)
  end if
end do
subevt%n_active = n
end subroutine subevt_select

```

Return a subevent which consists of the single particle with specified `index`. If `index` is negative, count from the end. If it is out of bounds, return an empty list.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: subevt_extract

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_extract (subevt, pl, index)
    type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
    type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: index
    if (index > 0) then
      if (index <= pl%n_active) then
        call subevt_reset (subevt, 1)
        subevt%prt(1) = pl%prt(index)
      else
        call subevt_reset (subevt, 0)
      end if
    else if (index < 0) then
      if (abs (index) <= pl%n_active) then
        call subevt_reset (subevt, 1)
        subevt%prt(1) = pl%prt(pl%n_active + 1 + index)
      else
        call subevt_reset (subevt, 0)
      end if
    else
      call subevt_reset (subevt, 0)
    end if
  end subroutine subevt_extract

```

Return the list of particles sorted according to increasing values of the provided integer or real array. If no array is given, sort by PDG value.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: subevt_sort

<Subevents: interfaces>+≡
  interface subevt_sort
    module procedure subevt_sort_pdg
    module procedure subevt_sort_int
    module procedure subevt_sort_real

```

```
end interface
```

*<Subevents: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine subevt_sort_pdg (subevt, pl)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl
  integer :: n
  n = subevt%n_active
  call subevt_sort_int (subevt, pl, abs (3 * subevt%prt(:n)%pdg - 1))
end subroutine subevt_sort_pdg
```

```
subroutine subevt_sort_int (subevt, pl, ival)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: ival
  call subevt_reset (subevt, pl%n_active)
  subevt%n_active = pl%n_active
  subevt%prt = pl%prt( order (ival) )
end subroutine subevt_sort_int
```

```
subroutine subevt_sort_real (subevt, pl, rval)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pl
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rval
  call subevt_reset (subevt, pl%n_active)
  subevt%n_active = pl%n_active
  subevt%prt = pl%prt( order (rval) )
end subroutine subevt_sort_real
```

Return the list of particles which have any of the specified PDG codes (and optionally particle type: beam, incoming, outgoing).

The `pack` command was buggy in some gfortran versions, therefore it is unrolled. The unrolled version may be more efficient, actually.

*<Subevents: public>+≡*

```
public :: subevt_select_pdg_code
```

*<Subevents: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine subevt_select_pdg_code (subevt, aval, subevt_in, prt_type)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
  type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: subevt_in
  integer, intent(in), optional :: prt_type
  integer :: n_active, n_match
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
  integer :: i, j
  n_active = subevt_in%n_active
  allocate (mask (n_active))
  forall (i = 1:n_active) &
    mask(i) = aval .match. subevt_in%prt(i)%pdg
  if (present (prt_type)) &
    mask = mask .and. subevt_in%prt(:n_active)%type == prt_type
  n_match = count (mask)
  call subevt_reset (subevt, n_match)
```

```

!!! !!! !!! Workaround for gfortran compiler bug
! subevt%prt(:n_match) = pack (subevt_in%prt(:n_active), mask)
j = 0
do i = 1, n_active
  if (mask(i)) then
    j = j + 1
    subevt%prt(j) = subevt_in%prt(i)
  end if
end do
end subroutine subevt_select_pdg_code

```

#### 5.4.4 Eliminate numerical noise

This is useful for testing purposes: set entries to zero that are smaller in absolute values than a given tolerance parameter.

Note: instead of setting the tolerance in terms of EPSILON (kind-dependent), we fix it to  $10^{-16}$ , which is the typical value for double precision. The reason is that there are situations where intermediate representations (external libraries, files) are limited to double precision, even if the main program uses higher precision.

```

<Subevents: public>+≡
  public :: pacify

<Subevents: interfaces>+≡
  interface pacify
    module procedure pacify_prt
    module procedure pacify_subvt
  end interface pacify

<Subevents: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pacify_prt (prt)
    class(prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default) :: e
    e = 1e-16_default * energy (prt%p)
    call pacify (prt%p, 10 * e)
    call pacify (prt%p2, 1e4 * e)
  end subroutine pacify_prt

  subroutine pacify_subvt (subvt)
    class(subvt_t), intent(inout) :: subvt
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, subvt%n_active
      call pacify (subvt%prt(i))
    end do
  end subroutine pacify_subvt

```

### 5.5 User Code Interface

Here we collect interface code that enables the user to inject his own code into the WHIZARD workflow. The code uses data types defined above, and is

referenced in the `expressions` module.

```

<user_code_interface.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module user_code_interface

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use c_particles !NODEP!
    use os_interface

    <Standard module head>

    <User Code: public>

    <User Code: variables>

    <User Code: interfaces>

    contains

    <User Code: procedures>

  end module user_code_interface

```

### 5.5.1 User Code Management

This data structure globally holds the filehandle of the user-code library:

```

<User Code: public>≡
  public :: has_user_lib

<User Code: variables>≡
  type(dlaccess_t), save :: user_lib_handle
  logical, save :: has_user_lib = .false.
  type(string_t), save :: user

```

Compile, link and load user code files. Dlopen all user-provided libraries, included the one just compiled (if any).

By default, we are looking for a library `user.so/dylib`. If this is not present, try `user.f90` and compile it. This can be overridden.

In detail: First, compile all sources explicitly specified on the command line. Then collect all libraries specified on the command line, including `user.so` if it was generated. If there is still no code, check for an existing `user.f90` and compile this. Link everything into a `user.la` libtool library. When done, dlopen all libraries that we have so far.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
  public :: user_code_init

```

```

{User Code: procedures}≡
subroutine user_code_init (user_src, user_lib, user_target, rebuild, os_data)
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: user_src, user_lib
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: user_target
  logical, intent(in) :: rebuild
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  type(string_t) :: user_src_file, user_obj_files, user_lib_file
  logical :: exist
  type(c_funptr) :: fptr
  integer :: i
  call msg_message ("Initializing user code")
  user = user_target; if (user == "") user = "user"
  user_obj_files = ""
  inquire (file = char (user) // ".la", exist = exist)
  if (rebuild .or. .not. exist) then
    do i = 1, size (user_src)
      user_src_file = user_src(i) // os_data%fc_src_ext
      inquire (file = char (user_src_file), exist = exist)
      if (exist) then
        call msg_message ("Found user-code source '" &
          // char (user_src_file) // "'.")
        call compile_user_src (user_src_file, user_obj_files)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("User-code source '" // char (user_src_file) &
          // "' not found")
      end if
    end do
    do i = 1, size (user_lib)
      user_lib_file = user_lib(i) // ".la"
      inquire (file = char (user_lib_file), exist = exist)
      if (exist) then
        call msg_message ("Found user-code library '" &
          // char (user_lib_file) // "'.")
      else
        user_lib_file = user_lib(i) // os_data%shlib_ext
        inquire (file = char (user_lib_file), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
          call msg_message ("Found user-code library '" &
            // char (user_lib_file) // "'.")
        else
          call msg_fatal ("User-code library '" // char (user_lib(i)) &
            // "' not found")
        end if
      end if
    end if
    user_obj_files = user_obj_files // " " // user_lib_file
  end do
  if (user_obj_files == "") then
    user_src_file = user // os_data%fc_src_ext
    inquire (file = char (user_src_file), exist = exist)
    if (exist) then
      call msg_message ("Found user-code source '" &
        // char (user_src_file) // "'.")
      call compile_user_src (user_src_file, user_obj_files)
    else

```

```

        call msg_fatal ("User-code source '" // char (user_src_file) &
            // "' not found")
    end if
end if
if (user_obj_files /= "") then
    call link_user (char (user), user_obj_files)
end if
end if
call dlaccess_init &
    (user_lib_handle, var_str ("."), &
        user // os_data%shlib_ext, os_data)
if (dlaccess_has_error (user_lib_handle)) then
    call msg_error (char (dlaccess_get_error (user_lib_handle)))
    call msg_fatal ("Loading user code library '" // char (user) &
        // ".la' failed")
else
    call msg_message ("User code library '" // char (user) &
        // ".la' successfully loaded")
    has_user_lib = .true.
end if
contains
subroutine compile_user_src (user_src_file, user_obj_files)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: user_src_file
    type(string_t), intent(inout) :: user_obj_files
    type(string_t) :: basename, ext
    logical :: exist
    basename = user_src_file
    call split (basename, ext, ".", back=.true.)
    if ("." // ext == os_data%fc_src_ext) then
        inquire (file = char (user_src_file), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
            call msg_message ("Compiling user code file '" &
                // char (user_src_file) // "'")
            call os_compile_shared (basename, os_data)
            user_obj_files = user_obj_files // " " // basename // ".lo"
        else
            call msg_error ("User code file '" // char (user_src_file) &
                // "' not found.")
        end if
    else
        call msg_error ("User code file '" // char (user_src_file) &
            // "' should have file extension '" &
            // char (os_data%fc_src_ext) // "'")
    end if
end subroutine compile_user_src
subroutine link_user (user_lib, user_obj_files)
    character(*), intent(in) :: user_lib
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: user_obj_files
    call msg_message ("Linking user code library '" &
        // user_lib // char (os_data%shlib_ext) // "'")
    call os_link_shared (user_obj_files, var_str (user_lib), os_data)
end subroutine link_user
end subroutine user_code_init

```



Unload all user-code libraries.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_code_final

<User Code: procedures>+≡
    subroutine user_code_final ()
        if (has_user_lib) then
            call dlaccess_final (user_lib_handle)
            has_user_lib = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine user_code_final

```

Try to load the possible user-defined procedures from the dlopened libraries. If a procedure is not found, do nothing.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_code_find_proc

<User Code: procedures>+≡
    function user_code_find_proc (name) result (fptr)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(c_funptr) :: fptr
        integer :: i
        fptr = c_null_funptr
        !!! Ticket #529
        ! fptr = libmanager_get_c_funptr (char (user), char (name))
        if (.not. c_associated (fptr)) then
            if (has_user_lib) then
                fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (user_lib_handle, name)
                if (.not. c_associated (fptr)) then
                    call msg_fatal ("User procedure '" // char (name) // "' not found")
                end if
            else
                call msg_fatal ("User procedure '" // char (name) &
                    // "' called without user library (missing -u flag?)")
            end if
        end if
    end function user_code_find_proc

```

### 5.5.2 Interfaces for user-defined functions

The following functions represent user-defined real observables. There may be one or two particles as argument, the result is a real value.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_obs_int_unary
    public :: user_obs_int_binary
    public :: user_obs_real_unary
    public :: user_obs_real_binary

<User Code: interfaces>≡
    abstract interface
        function user_obs_int_unary (prt1) result (ival) bind(C)
            use iso_c_binding !NODEP!

```

```

        use c_particles !NODEP!
        type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
        integer(c_int) :: ival
    end function user_obs_int_unary
end interface

abstract interface
    function user_obs_int_binary (prt1, prt2) result (ival) bind(C)
        use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
        use c_particles !NODEP!
        type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
        integer(c_int) :: ival
    end function user_obs_int_binary
end interface

abstract interface
    function user_obs_real_unary (prt1) result (rval) bind(C)
        use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
        use c_particles !NODEP!
        type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
        real(c_double) :: rval
    end function user_obs_real_unary
end interface

abstract interface
    function user_obs_real_binary (prt1, prt2) result (rval) bind(C)
        use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
        use c_particles !NODEP!
        type(c_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
        real(c_double) :: rval
    end function user_obs_real_binary
end interface

```

The following function takes an array of C-compatible particles and return a single value. The particle array represents a subevent. For C interoperability, we have to use an assumed-size array, hence the array size has to be transferred explicitly.

The cut function returns an `int`, which we should interpret as a logical value (nonzero=true).

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_cut_fun

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        function user_cut_fun (prt, n_prt) result (iflag) bind(C)
            use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
            use c_particles !NODEP!
            type(c_prt_t), dimension(*), intent(in) :: prt
            integer(c_int), intent(in) :: n_prt
            integer(c_int) :: iflag
        end function user_cut_fun
    end interface

```

The event-shape function returns a real value.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_event_shape_fun

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        function user_event_shape_fun (prt, n_prt) result (rval) bind(C)
            use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
            use c_particles !NODEP!
            type(c_prt_t), dimension(*), intent(in) :: prt
            integer(c_int), intent(in) :: n_prt
            real(c_double) :: rval
        end function user_event_shape_fun
    end interface

```

### 5.5.3 Interfaces for user-defined interactions

The following procedure interfaces pertain to user-defined interactions, e.g., spectra or structure functions.

This subroutine retrieves the basic information for setting up the interaction and event generation. All parameters are `intent(inout)`, so we can provide default values. `n_in` and `n_out` are the number of incoming and outgoing particles, respectively. `n_states` is the total number of distinct states that should be generated (counting all states of the incoming particles). `n_col` is the maximal number of color entries a particle can have. `n_dim` is the number of input parameters, i.e., integration dimensions, that the structure function call requires for computing kinematics and matrix elements. `n_var` is the number of variables (e.g., momentum fractions) that the structure function call has to transfer from the kinematics to the dynamics evaluation.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_int_info

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine user_int_info (n_in, n_out, n_states, n_col, n_dim, n_var) &
            bind(C)
            use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
            integer(c_int), intent(inout) :: n_in, n_out, n_states, n_col
            integer(c_int), intent(inout) :: n_dim, n_var
        end subroutine user_int_info
    end interface

```

This subroutine retrieves the settings for the quantum number mask of a given particle index in the interaction. A nonzero value indicates that the corresponding quantum number is to be ignored. The lock index is the index of a particle that the current particle is related to. The relation applies if quantum numbers of one of the locked particles are summed over. (This is intended for helicity.)

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_int_mask

```

```

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine user_int_mask (i_prt, m_flv, m_hel, m_col, i_lock) bind(C)
      use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i_prt
      integer(c_int), intent(inout) :: m_flv, m_hel, m_col, i_lock
    end subroutine user_int_mask
  end interface

```

This subroutine retrieves the quantum numbers for the particle index `i_prt` in state `i_state`. The `flv` value is a PDG code. The `hel` value is an integer helicity (twice the helicity for fermions). The `col` array is an array which has at most `n_col` entries (see above). All parameters are `intent(inout)` since default values exist. In particular, if a mask entry is set by the previous procedure, the corresponding quantum number is ignored anyway.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
  public :: user_int_state

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine user_int_state (i_state, i_prt, flv, hel, col) bind(C)
      use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i_state, i_prt
      integer(c_int), intent(inout) :: flv, hel
      integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: col
    end subroutine user_int_state
  end interface

```

This subroutine takes an array of particle objects with array length `n_in` and an array of input parameters between 0 and 1 with array length `n_dim`. It returns an array of particle objects with array length `n_out`. In addition, it returns an array of internal variables (e.g., momentum fractions, Jacobian) with array length `n_var` that is used by the following subroutine for evaluating the dynamics, i.e., the matrix elements.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
  public :: user_int_kinematics

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine user_int_kinematics (prt_in, rval, prt_out, xval) bind(C)
      use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
      use c_particles !NODEP!
      type(c_prt_t), dimension(*), intent(in) :: prt_in
      real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(in) :: rval
      type(c_prt_t), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: prt_out
      real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(out) :: xval
    end subroutine user_int_kinematics
  end interface

```

This subroutine takes the array of variables (e.g., momentum fractions) with length `n_var` which has been generated by the previous subroutine and a real variable, the energy scale of the event. It returns an array of matrix-element

values, one entry for each quantum state `n_states`. The ordering of matrix elements must correspond to the ordering of states.

```

<User Code: public>+≡
    public :: user_int_evaluate

<User Code: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine user_int_evaluate (xval, scale, fval) bind(C)
            use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
            real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(in) :: xval
            real(c_double), intent(in) :: scale
            real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(out) :: fval
        end subroutine user_int_evaluate
    end interface

```

## 5.6 Variables

The user interface deals with variables that are handled similar to full-fledged programming languages. The system will add a lot of predefined variables (model parameters, flags, etc.) that are accessible to the user by the same methods.

Variables can be of various type: logical (boolean/flag), integer, real (default precision), subevents (used in cut expressions), arrays of PDG codes (aliases for particles), strings. Furthermore, in cut expressions we have unary and binary observables, which are used like real parameters but behave like functions.

```

<variables.f90>≡
    <File header>

    module variables

        <Use kinds>
        <Use strings>
        <Use file utils>
        use limits, only: FMT_14, FMT_19 !NODEP!
        use diagnostics !NODEP!
        use lorentz !NODEP!
        use pdg_arrays
        use subevents

        <Standard module head>

        <Variables: public>

        <Variables: parameters>

        <Variables: types>

        <Variables: interfaces>

    contains

```

```
⟨Variables: procedures⟩
```

```
end module variables
```

### 5.6.1 Variable list entries

Variable (and constant) values can be of one of the following types:

```
⟨Variables: parameters⟩≡
```

```
integer, parameter, public :: V_NONE = 0, V_LOG = 1, V_INT = 2, V_REAL = 3
integer, parameter, public :: V_CMPLX = 4, V_SEV = 5, V_PDG = 6, V_STR = 7
integer, parameter, public :: V_OBS1_INT = 11, V_OBS2_INT = 12
integer, parameter, public :: V_OBS1_REAL = 21, V_OBS2_REAL = 22
integer, parameter, public :: V_UOBS1_INT = 31, V_UOBS2_INT = 32
integer, parameter, public :: V_UOBS1_REAL = 41, V_UOBS2_REAL = 42
```

#### The type

This is an entry in the variable list. It can be of any type; in each case only one value is allocated. It may be physically allocated upon creation, in which case `is_allocated` is true, or it may contain just a pointer to a value somewhere else, in which case `is_allocated` is false.

The flag `is_defined` is set when the variable is given a value, even the undefined value. (Therefore it is distinct from `is_known`.) This matters for variable declaration in the SINDARIN language. The variable is set up in the compilation step and initially marked as defined, but after compilation all variables are set undefined. Each variable becomes defined when it is explicitly set. The difference matters in loops.

`is_locked` means that it cannot be given a value using the interface routines `var_list_set_XXX` below. It can only be initialized, or change automatically due to a side effect.

`is_copy` means that this is a local copy of a global variable. The copy has a pointer to the original, which can be used to restore a previous value.

`is_intrinsic` means that this variable is defined by the program, not by the user. Intrinsic variables cannot be (re)declared, but their values can be reset unless they are locked. `is_user_var` means that the variable has been declared by the user. It could be a new variable, or a local copy of an intrinsic variable.

The flag `is_known` is a pointer which parallels the use of the value pointer. For pointer variables, it is set if the value should point to a known value. For ordinary variables, it should be true.

The value is implemented as a set of alternative type-specific pointers. This emulates polymorphism, and it allows for actual pointer variables. Observable-type variables have function pointers as values, so they behave like macros. The functions make use of the particle objects accessible via the pointers `prt1` and `prt2`.

Finally, the `next` pointer indicates that we are making lists of variables. A more efficient implementation might switch to hashes or similar; the current implementation has  $O(N)$  lookup.

```
⟨Variables: public⟩≡
```

```
public :: var_entry_t
```

```

<Variables: types>≡
  type :: var_entry_t
  private
    integer :: type = V_NONE
    type(string_t) :: name
    logical :: is_allocated = .false.
    logical :: is_defined = .false.
    logical :: is_locked = .false.
    logical :: is_copy = .false.
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: original => null ()
    logical :: is_intrinsic = .false.
    logical :: is_user_var = .false.
    logical, pointer :: is_known => null ()
    logical,          pointer :: lval => null ()
    integer,          pointer :: ival => null ()
    real(default),    pointer :: rval => null ()
    complex(default), pointer :: cval => null ()
    type(subevt_t),   pointer :: pval => null ()
    type(pdg_array_t), pointer :: aval => null ()
    type(string_t),   pointer :: sval => null ()
    procedure(obs_unary_int), nopass, pointer :: obs1_int => null ()
    procedure(obs_unary_real), nopass, pointer :: obs1_real => null ()
    procedure(obs_binary_int), nopass, pointer :: obs2_int => null ()
    procedure(obs_binary_real), nopass, pointer :: obs2_real => null ()
    type(prt_t), pointer :: prt1 => null ()
    type(prt_t), pointer :: prt2 => null ()
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  end type var_entry_t

```

## Interfaces for the observable functions

```

<Variables: public>+≡
  public :: obs_unary_int
  public :: obs_unary_real
  public :: obs_binary_int
  public :: obs_binary_real

<Variables: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    function obs_unary_int (prt1) result (ival)
      import
      integer :: ival
      type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
    end function obs_unary_int
  end interface
  abstract interface
    function obs_unary_real (prt1) result (rval)
      import
      real(default) :: rval
      type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
    end function obs_unary_real
  end interface
  abstract interface

```

```

function obs_binary_int (prt1, prt2) result (ival)
  import
  integer :: ival
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
end function obs_binary_int
end interface
abstract interface
  function obs_binary_real (prt1, prt2) result (rval)
    import
    real(default) :: rval
    type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  end function obs_binary_real
end interface

```

## Initialization

Initialize an entry, optionally with a physical value. We also allocate the `is_known` flag and set it if the value is set.

```

<Variables: public>+=
  public :: var_entry_init_log
  public :: var_entry_init_int
  public :: var_entry_init_real
  public :: var_entry_init_cmplx
  public :: var_entry_init_pdg_array
  public :: var_entry_init_subevt
  public :: var_entry_init_string

<Variables: procedures>=
  subroutine var_entry_init_log (var, name, lval, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    logical, intent(in), optional :: lval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
    var%name = name
    var%type = V_LOG
    allocate (var%lval, var%is_known)
    if (present (lval)) then
      var%lval = lval
      var%is_defined = .true.
      var%is_known = .true.
    else
      var%is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
    if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
    var%is_allocated = .true.
  end subroutine var_entry_init_log

  subroutine var_entry_init_int (var, name, ival, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
    logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user

```



```

var%name = name
var%type = V_INT
allocate (var%ival, var%is_known)
if (present (ival)) then
    var%ival = ival
    var%is_defined = .true.
    var%is_known = .true.
else
    var%is_known = .false.
end if
if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_int

subroutine var_entry_init_real (var, name, rval, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
    var%name = name
    var%type = V_REAL
    allocate (var%rval, var%is_known)
    if (present (rval)) then
        var%rval = rval
        var%is_defined = .true.
        var%is_known = .true.
    else
        var%is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
    if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
    var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_real

subroutine var_entry_init_cmplx (var, name, cval, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    complex(default), intent(in), optional :: cval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
    var%name = name
    var%type = V_CMPLX
    allocate (var%cval, var%is_known)
    if (present (cval)) then
        var%cval = cval
        var%is_defined = .true.
        var%is_known = .true.
    else
        var%is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
    if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
    var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_cmplx

```

```

subroutine var_entry_init_subevt (var, name, pval, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional :: pval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_SEV
  allocate (var%pval, var%is_known)
  if (present (pval)) then
    var%pval = pval
    var%is_defined = .true.
    var%is_known = .true.
  else
    var%is_known = .false.
  end if
  if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
  if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
  var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_subevt

subroutine var_entry_init_pdg_array (var, name, aval, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), optional :: aval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_PDG
  allocate (var%aval, var%is_known)
  if (present (aval)) then
    var%aval = aval
    var%is_defined = .true.
    var%is_known = .true.
  else
    var%is_known = .false.
  end if
  if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
  if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
  var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_pdg_array

subroutine var_entry_init_string (var, name, sval, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic, user
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_STR
  allocate (var%sval, var%is_known)
  if (present (sval)) then
    var%sval = sval
    var%is_defined = .true.
    var%is_known = .true.
  else

```

```

        var%is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
    if (present (user)) var%is_user_var = user
    var%is_allocated = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_string

```

Initialize an entry with a pointer to the value and, for numeric/logical values, a pointer to the `is_known` flag.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_init_log_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_int_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_real_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_cmplx_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_pdg_array_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_subevt_ptr
    public :: var_entry_init_string_ptr

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    subroutine var_entry_init_log_ptr (var, name, lval, is_known, intrinsic)
        type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        logical, intent(in), target :: lval
        logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
        logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
        var%name = name
        var%type = V_LOG
        var%lval => lval
        var%is_known => is_known
        if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
        var%is_defined = .true.
    end subroutine var_entry_init_log_ptr

    subroutine var_entry_init_int_ptr (var, name, ival, is_known, intrinsic)
        type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        integer, intent(in), target :: ival
        logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
        logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
        var%name = name
        var%type = V_INT
        var%ival => ival
        var%is_known => is_known
        if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
        var%is_defined = .true.
    end subroutine var_entry_init_int_ptr

    subroutine var_entry_init_real_ptr (var, name, rval, is_known, intrinsic)
        type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        real(default), intent(in), target :: rval
        logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
        logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
        var%name = name

```

```

var%type = V_REAL
var%rval => rval
var%is_known => is_known
if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_real_ptr

subroutine var_entry_init_cmplx_ptr (var, name, cval, is_known, intrinsic)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  complex(default), intent(in), target :: cval
  logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_CMPLX
  var%cval => cval
  var%is_known => is_known
  if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
  var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_cmplx_ptr

subroutine var_entry_init_pdg_array_ptr (var, name, aval, is_known, intrinsic)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), target :: aval
  logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_PDG
  var%aval => aval
  var%is_known => is_known
  if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
  var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_pdg_array_ptr

subroutine var_entry_init_subevt_ptr (var, name, pval, is_known, intrinsic)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(subevt_t), intent(in), target :: pval
  logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
  var%name = name
  var%type = V_SEV
  var%pval => pval
  var%is_known => is_known
  if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
  var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_subevt_ptr

subroutine var_entry_init_string_ptr (var, name, sval, is_known, intrinsic)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(string_t), intent(in), target :: sval
  logical, intent(in), target :: is_known

```

```

    logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
    var%name = name
    var%type = V_STR
    var%sval => sval
    var%is_known => is_known
    if (present (intrinsic)) var%is_intrinsic = intrinsic
    var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_string_ptr

```

Initialize an entry with an observable. The procedure pointer is not yet set.

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_init_obs (var, name, type, prt1, prt2)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    type(prt_t), intent(in), target :: prt1
    type(prt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: prt2
    var%type = type
    var%name = name
    var%prt1 => prt1
    if (present (prt2)) var%prt2 => prt2
    var%is_intrinsic = .true.
    var%is_defined = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_obs

```

Mark an entry as undefined if it is a user-defined variable object, so force re-initialization.

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_undefine (var)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    var%is_defined = .not. var%is_user_var
    var%is_known = var%is_defined .and. var%is_known
end subroutine var_entry_undefine

```

Clear an entry: mark it as unknown.

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```

public :: var_entry_clear

```

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_clear (var)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    var%is_known = .false.
end subroutine var_entry_clear

```

Lock an entry: forbid resetting the entry after initialization.

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked
    if (present (locked)) then
        var%is_locked = locked
    else

```

```

        var%is_locked = .true.
    end if
end subroutine var_entry_lock

```

## Finalizer

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_final

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    subroutine var_entry_final (var)
        type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
        if (var%is_allocated) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_LOG); deallocate (var%lval)
            case (V_INT); deallocate (var%ival)
            case (V_REAL); deallocate (var%rval)
            case (V_CMPLX); deallocate (var%cval)
            case (V_SEV); deallocate (var%pval)
            case (V_PDG); deallocate (var%aval)
            case (V_STR); deallocate (var%sval)
            end select
            deallocate (var%is_known)
            var%is_allocated = .false.
            var%is_defined = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine var_entry_final

```

## Output

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_write

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine var_entry_write (var, unit, model_name, show_ptr, &
        intrinsic, pacified)
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
        logical, intent(in), optional :: show_ptr
        logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacified
        logical :: num_pac
        real(default) :: rval
        complex(default) :: cval
        integer :: u
        character(len=7) :: fmt
        call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_14, pacified)
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        if (present (intrinsic)) then
            if (var%is_intrinsic .neqv. intrinsic) return
        end if
        if (.not. var%is_defined) then

```

```

        write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "[undefined]"
    end if
    if (.not. var%is_intrinsic) then
        write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "[user variable]"
    end if
    num_pac = .false.
    if (present (pacified)) num_pac = pacified
    if (associated (var%original)) then
        if (present (model_name)) then
            write (u, "(A,A)", advance="no") char(model_name), "."
        end if
    end if
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (var%name)
    if (var%is_locked) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "*"
    if (var%is_allocated) then
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " = "
    else if (var%type /= V_NONE) then
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " => "
    end if
    select case (var%type)
    case (V_NONE); write (u, *)
    case (V_LOG)
        if (var%is_known) then
            if (var%lval) then
                write (u, "(A)") "true"
            else
                write (u, "(A)") "false"
            end if
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown logical]"
        end if
    case (V_INT)
        if (var%is_known) then
            write (u, "(I0)") var%ival
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown integer]"
        end if
    case (V_REAL)
        if (var%is_known) then
            rval = var%rval
            if (num_pac) then
                call pacify (rval, 10 * epsilon (1._default))
            end if
            write (u, "(" // fmt // ")") rval
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown real]"
        end if
    case (V_CMPLX)
        if (var%is_known) then
            cval = var%cval
            if (num_pac) then
                call pacify (cval, 10 * epsilon (1._default))
            end if
            write (u, "(" // fmt // ", " // fmt // ", " // fmt // ", " // fmt // ")") cval

```

```

        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown complex]"
        end if
    case (V_SEV)
        if (var%is_known) then
            call subevt_write (var%pval, unit, prefix=" ")
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown subevent]"
        end if
    case (V_PDG)
        if (var%is_known) then
            call pdg_array_write (var%aval, u); write (u, *)
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown PDG array]"
        end if
    case (V_STR)
        if (var%is_known) then
            write (u, "(A)") ''' // char (var%sval) // '''
        else
            write (u, "(A)") "[unknown string]"
        end if
    case (V_OBS1_INT); write (u, *) "[int] = unary observable"
    case (V_OBS2_INT); write (u, *) "[int] = binary observable"
    case (V_OBS1_REAL); write (u, *) "[real] = unary observable"
    case (V_OBS2_REAL); write (u, *) "[real] = binary observable"
    case (V_UOBS1_INT); write (u, *) "[int] = unary user observable"
    case (V_UOBS2_INT); write (u, *) "[int] = binary user observable"
    case (V_UOBS1_REAL); write (u, *) "[real] = unary user observable"
    case (V_UOBS2_REAL); write (u, *) "[real] = binary user observable"
end select
if (present (show_ptr)) then
    if (show_ptr .and. var%is_copy .and. associated (var%original)) then
        write (u, "(' => ')", advance="no")
        call var_entry_write (var%original, unit)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_write

```

## Accessing contents

*{Variables: public}*+≡

```

public :: var_entry_get_name
public :: var_entry_get_type

```

*{Variables: procedures}*+≡

```

function var_entry_get_name (var) result (name)
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
    name = var%name
end function var_entry_get_name

```

```

function var_entry_get_type (var) result (type)
    integer :: type

```



```

        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        type = var%type
    end function var_entry_get_type

```

Return true if the variable is defined. This the case if it is allocated and known, or if it is a pointer.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_is_defined

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_entry_is_defined (var) result (defined)
        logical :: defined
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        defined = var%is_defined
    end function var_entry_is_defined

```

Return true if the variable is locked

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_is_locked

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_entry_is_locked (var) result (locked)
        logical :: locked
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        locked = var%is_locked
    end function var_entry_is_locked

```

Return true if the variable is intrinsic

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_is_intrinsic

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_entry_is_intrinsic (var) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        flag = var%is_intrinsic
    end function var_entry_is_intrinsic

```

Return true if the variable is a copy

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_entry_is_copy

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_entry_is_copy (var) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
        flag = var%is_copy
    end function var_entry_is_copy

```

Return components

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```
public :: var_entry_is_known
public :: var_entry_get_lval
public :: var_entry_get_ival
public :: var_entry_get_rval
public :: var_entry_get_cval
public :: var_entry_get_aval
public :: var_entry_get_pval
public :: var_entry_get_sval
```

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```
function var_entry_is_known (var) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  flag = var%is_known
end function var_entry_is_known

function var_entry_get_lval (var) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  lval = var%lval
end function var_entry_get_lval

function var_entry_get_ival (var) result (ival)
  integer :: ival
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  ival = var%ival
end function var_entry_get_ival

function var_entry_get_rval (var) result (rval)
  real(default) :: rval
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  rval = var%rval
end function var_entry_get_rval

function var_entry_get_cval (var) result (cval)
  complex(default) :: cval
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  cval = var%cval
end function var_entry_get_cval

function var_entry_get_aval (var) result (aval)
  type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  aval = var%aval
end function var_entry_get_aval

function var_entry_get_pval (var) result (pval)
  type(subevt_t) :: pval
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
  pval = var%pval
end function var_entry_get_pval

function var_entry_get_sval (var) result (sval)
```

```

    type(string_t) :: sval
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in) :: var
    sval = var%sval
end function var_entry_get_sval

```

Return pointers to components

*(Variables: public)+≡*

```

    public :: var_entry_get_known_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_lval_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_ival_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_rval_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_cval_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_aval_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_pval_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_sval_ptr

```

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```

    function var_entry_get_known_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        logical, pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%is_known
    end function var_entry_get_known_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_lval_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        logical, pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%lval
    end function var_entry_get_lval_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_ival_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        integer, pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%ival
    end function var_entry_get_ival_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        real(default), pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%rval
    end function var_entry_get_rval_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_cval_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        complex(default), pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%cval
    end function var_entry_get_cval_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_pval_ptr (var) result (ptr)
        type(subvt_t), pointer :: ptr
        type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
        ptr => var%pval
    end function var_entry_get_pval_ptr

```

```

    function var_entry_get_aval_ptr (var) result (ptr)

```

```

    type(pdg_array_t), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%aval
end function var_entry_get_aval_ptr

function var_entry_get_sval_ptr (var) result (ptr)
    type(string_t), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%sval
end function var_entry_get_sval_ptr

```

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```

    public :: var_entry_get_prt1_ptr
    public :: var_entry_get_prt2_ptr

```

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

function var_entry_get_prt1_ptr (var) result (ptr)
    type(prt_t), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%prt1
end function var_entry_get_prt1_ptr

function var_entry_get_prt2_ptr (var) result (ptr)
    type(prt_t), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%prt2
end function var_entry_get_prt2_ptr

```

We would like to also use functions here (for consistency), but a nagfor bug temporarily forces use to use subroutines.

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```

    public :: var_entry_assign_obs1_int_ptr
    public :: var_entry_assign_obs1_real_ptr
    public :: var_entry_assign_obs2_int_ptr
    public :: var_entry_assign_obs2_real_ptr

```

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_assign_obs1_int_ptr (ptr, var)
    procedure(obs_unary_int), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%obs1_int
end subroutine var_entry_assign_obs1_int_ptr

subroutine var_entry_assign_obs1_real_ptr (ptr, var)
    procedure(obs_unary_real), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%obs1_real
end subroutine var_entry_assign_obs1_real_ptr

subroutine var_entry_assign_obs2_int_ptr (ptr, var)
    procedure(obs_binary_int), pointer :: ptr
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    ptr => var%obs2_int
end subroutine var_entry_assign_obs2_int_ptr

```

```

subroutine var_entry_assign_obs2_real_ptr (ptr, var)
  procedure(obs_binary_real), pointer :: ptr
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
  ptr => var%obs2_real
end subroutine var_entry_assign_obs2_real_ptr

```

## 5.6.2 Setting values

Undefine the value.

*{Variables: procedures}*+≡

```

subroutine var_entry_clear_value (var)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
  var%is_known = .false.
end subroutine var_entry_clear_value

```

*{Variables: public}*+≡

```

public :: var_entry_set_log
public :: var_entry_set_int
public :: var_entry_set_real
public :: var_entry_set_cmplx
public :: var_entry_set_pdg_array
public :: var_entry_set_subevt
public :: var_entry_set_string

```

*{Variables: procedures}*+≡

```

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_log &
  (var, lval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
  type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
  logical, intent(in) :: lval
  logical, intent(in) :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
  integer :: u
  u = logfile_unit ()
  var%lval = lval
  var%is_known = is_known
  var%is_defined = .true.
  if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_log (var%original, lval, is_known)
  end if
  if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
      call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name)
      call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u)
      if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
  end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_log

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_int &
  (var, ival, is_known, verbose, model_name)

```

```

type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
integer, intent(in) :: ival
logical, intent(in) :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u
u = logfile_unit ()
var%ival = ival
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_int (var%original, ival, is_known)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name)
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_int

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_real &
    (var, rval, is_known, verbose, model_name, pacified)
type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
real(default), intent(in) :: rval
logical, intent(in) :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, pacified
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u
u = logfile_unit ()
var%rval = rval
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_real &
        (var%original, rval, is_known, pacified = pacified)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write &
            (var, model_name=model_name, pacified = pacified)
        call var_entry_write &
            (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_real

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_cmplx &
    (var, cval, is_known, verbose, model_name, pacified)
type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
complex(default), intent(in) :: cval
logical, intent(in) :: is_known

```

```

logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, pacified
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u
u = logfile_unit ()
var%cval = cval
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_cmplx &
        (var%original, cval, is_known, pacified = pacified)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write &
            (var, model_name=model_name, pacified = pacified)
        call var_entry_write &
            (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_cmplx

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_pdg_array &
    (var, aval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
logical, intent(in) :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u
u = logfile_unit ()
var%aval = aval
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_pdg_array (var%original, aval, is_known)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name)
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_pdg_array

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_subevt &
    (var, pval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pval
logical, intent(in) :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u

```

```

u = logfile_unit ()
var%pval = pval
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_subevt (var%original, pval, is_known)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name)
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_subevt

recursive subroutine var_entry_set_string &
    (var, sval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
type(string_t), intent(in) :: sval
logical, intent(in) :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
integer :: u
u = logfile_unit ()
var%sval = sval
var%is_known = is_known
var%is_defined = .true.
if (associated (var%original)) then
    call var_entry_set_string (var%original, sval, is_known)
end if
if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name)
        call var_entry_write (var, model_name=model_name, unit=u)
        if (u >= 0) flush (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_set_string

```

### 5.6.3 Copies and pointer variables

Initialize an entry with a copy of an existing variable entry. The copy is physically allocated with the same type as the original.

*{Variables: procedures}+≡*

```

subroutine var_entry_init_copy (var, original, user)
type(var_entry_t), intent(out) :: var
type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: original
logical, intent(in), optional :: user
type(string_t) :: name
logical :: intrinsic
name = var_entry_get_name (original)

```



```

intrinsic = original%is_intrinsic
select case (original%type)
case (V_LOG)
    call var_entry_init_log (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_INT)
    call var_entry_init_int (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_REAL)
    call var_entry_init_real (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_CMPLX)
    call var_entry_init_cmplx (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_SEV)
    call var_entry_init_subevt (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_PDG)
    call var_entry_init_pdg_array (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
case (V_STR)
    call var_entry_init_string (var, name, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
end select
var%is_copy = .true.
end subroutine var_entry_init_copy

```

Clear the pointer to the original.

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_entry_clear_original_pointer (var)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    var%original => null ()
end subroutine var_entry_clear_original_pointer

```

Set the pointer to the original. For a free parameter, the variable holds both the value and the pointer. For a derived parameter, we associate the pointer directly. Derived parameters thus need not be synchronized explicitly.

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_entry_set_original_pointer (var, original)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: original
    if (var_entry_is_locked (original)) then
        call var_entry_lock (var)
    end if
    var%original => original
end subroutine var_entry_set_original_pointer

```

Synchronize a variable with its original: if a pointer exists, set the value to be equal to value pointed to.

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_entry_synchronize (var)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    if (associated (var%original)) then
        var%is_defined = var%original%is_defined
        var%is_known = var%original%is_known
        if (var%original%is_known) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_LOG); var%lval = var%original%lval
            case (V_INT); var%ival = var%original%ival

```

```

        case (V_REAL); var%rval = var%original%rval
        case (V_CMPLX); var%cval = var%original%cval
        case (V_SEV);  var%pval = var%original%pval
        case (V_PDG);  var%aval = var%original%aval
        case (V_STR);  var%sval = var%original%sval
    end select
end if
end if
end subroutine var_entry_synchronize

```

Restore the previous value of the original, using the value stored in the variable.  
This is a side-effect operation.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
subroutine var_entry_restore (var)
    type(var_entry_t), intent(inout) :: var
    if (associated (var%original)) then
        if (var%is_known) then
            select case (var%type)
                case (V_LOG);  var%original%lval = var%lval
                case (V_INT);  var%original%ival = var%ival
                case (V_REAL); var%original%rval = var%rval
                case (V_CMPLX); var%original%cval = var%cval
                case (V_SEV);  var%original%pval = var%pval
                case (V_PDG);  var%original%aval = var%aval
                case (V_STR);  var%original%sval = var%sval
            end select
        end if
    end if
end subroutine var_entry_restore

```

## 5.6.4 Variable lists

### The type

Variable lists can be linked together. No initializer needed. They are deleted separately.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_t

<Variables: types>+≡
    type :: var_list_t
        private
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: last  => null ()
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: next  => null ()
    end type var_list_t

```

### Constructors

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_link

```

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_link (var_list, next)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: next
  var_list%next => next
end subroutine var_list_link

```

Append a new entry to an existing list.

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  if (associated (var_list%last)) then
    var_list%last%next => var
  else
    var_list%first => var
  end if
  var_list%last => var
  if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) call var_entry_write (var)
  end if
end subroutine var_list_append

```

```

{Variables: public}+=
public :: var_list_append_log
public :: var_list_append_int
public :: var_list_append_real
public :: var_list_append_cmplx
public :: var_list_append_subevt
public :: var_list_append_pdg_array
public :: var_list_append_string

```

```

{Variables: interfaces}+=
interface var_list_append_log
  module procedure var_list_append_log_s
  module procedure var_list_append_log_c
end interface
interface var_list_append_int
  module procedure var_list_append_int_s
  module procedure var_list_append_int_c
end interface
interface var_list_append_real
  module procedure var_list_append_real_s
  module procedure var_list_append_real_c
end interface
interface var_list_append_cmplx
  module procedure var_list_append_cmplx_s
  module procedure var_list_append_cmplx_c
end interface
interface var_list_append_subevt
  module procedure var_list_append_subevt_s
  module procedure var_list_append_subevt_c
end interface

```

```

interface var_list_append_pdg_array
  module procedure var_list_append_pdg_array_s
  module procedure var_list_append_pdg_array_c
end interface
interface var_list_append_string
  module procedure var_list_append_string_s
  module procedure var_list_append_string_c
end interface
(Variables: procedures)+≡
subroutine var_list_append_log_s &
  (var_list, name, lval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  logical, intent(in), optional :: lval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  allocate (var)
  call var_entry_init_log (var, name, lval, intrinsic, user)
  if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
  call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_log_s

subroutine var_list_append_int_s &
  (var_list, name, ival, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
  logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  allocate (var)
  call var_entry_init_int (var, name, ival, intrinsic, user)
  if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
  call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_int_s

subroutine var_list_append_real_s &
  (var_list, name, rval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  allocate (var)
  call var_entry_init_real (var, name, rval, intrinsic, user)
  if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
  call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_real_s

subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_s &
  (var_list, name, cval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  complex(default), intent(in), optional :: cval
  logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user

```

```

    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_cmplx (var, name, cval, intrinsic, user)
    if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_s

subroutine var_list_append_subevt_s &
    (var_list, name, pval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional :: pval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_subevt (var, name, pval, intrinsic, user)
    if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_subevt_s

subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_s &
    (var_list, name, aval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), optional :: aval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_pdg_array (var, name, aval, intrinsic, user)
    if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_s

subroutine var_list_append_string_s &
    (var_list, name, sval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_string (var, name, sval, intrinsic, user)
    if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_string_s

subroutine var_list_append_log_c &
    (var_list, name, lval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    logical, intent(in), optional :: lval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_log_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), lval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)

```

```

end subroutine var_list_append_log_c

subroutine var_list_append_int_c &
    (var_list, name, ival, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_int_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), ival, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
end subroutine var_list_append_int_c

subroutine var_list_append_real_c &
    (var_list, name, rval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_real_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), rval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
end subroutine var_list_append_real_c

subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_c &
    (var_list, name, cval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    complex(default), intent(in), optional :: cval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_cmplx_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), cval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
end subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_c

subroutine var_list_append_subevt_c &
    (var_list, name, pval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional :: pval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_subevt_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), pval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
end subroutine var_list_append_subevt_c

subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_c &
    (var_list, name, aval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), optional :: aval
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
    call var_list_append_pdg_array_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), aval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
end subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_c

subroutine var_list_append_string_c &
    (var_list, name, sval, locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)

```

```

type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
character(*), intent(in) :: name
character(*), intent(in), optional :: sval
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic, user
if (present (sval)) then
    call var_list_append_string_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), var_str (sval), &
        locked, verbose, intrinsic, user)
else
    call var_list_append_string_s &
        (var_list, var_str (name), &
        locked=locked, verbose=verbose, intrinsic=intrinsic, user=user)
end if
end subroutine var_list_append_string_c

```

*(Variables: public)+≡*

```

public :: var_list_append_log_ptr
public :: var_list_append_int_ptr
public :: var_list_append_real_ptr
public :: var_list_append_cmplx_ptr
public :: var_list_append_pdg_array_ptr
public :: var_list_append_subevt_ptr
public :: var_list_append_string_ptr

```

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine var_list_append_log_ptr &
    (var_list, name, lval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
logical, intent(in), target :: lval
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_log_ptr (var, name, lval, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_log_ptr

```

```

subroutine var_list_append_int_ptr &
    (var_list, name, ival, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
integer, intent(in), target :: ival
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_int_ptr (var, name, ival, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_int_ptr

```

```

subroutine var_list_append_real_ptr &

```

```

        (var_list, name, rval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
real(default), intent(in), target :: rval
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_real_ptr (var, name, rval, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_real_ptr

subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_ptr &
    (var_list, name, cval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
complex(default), intent(in), target :: cval
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_cmplx_ptr (var, name, cval, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_cmplx_ptr

subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_ptr &
    (var_list, name, aval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), target :: aval
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_pdg_array_ptr (var, name, aval, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_pdg_array_ptr

subroutine var_list_append_subevt_ptr &
    (var_list, name, pval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
type(subevt_t), intent(in), target :: pval
logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_subevt_ptr (var, name, pval, is_known, intrinsic)
if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_subevt_ptr

```



```

subroutine var_list_append_string_ptr &
    (var_list, name, sval, is_known, locked, verbose, intrinsic)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in), target :: sval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: locked, verbose, intrinsic
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_string_ptr (var, name, sval, is_known, intrinsic)
    if (present (locked)) call var_entry_lock (var, locked)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var, verbose)
end subroutine var_list_append_string_ptr

```

## Finalizer

Finalize, delete the list entry by entry. Follow link only if requested explicitly.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_final

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine var_list_final (var_list, follow_link)
        type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        var_list%last => null ()
        do while (associated (var_list%first))
            var => var_list%first
            var_list%first => var%next
            call var_entry_final (var)
            deallocate (var)
        end do
        if (present (follow_link)) then
            if (follow_link .and. associated (var_list%next)) then
                call var_list_final (var_list%next, follow_link)
                deallocate (var_list%next)
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine var_list_final

```

## Output

Optionally, show only variables of a certain type.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_write

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine var_list_write &
        (var_list, unit, follow_link, only_type, prefix, model_name, show_ptr, &
         intrinsic, pacified)
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
integer, intent(in), optional :: only_type
character(*), intent(in), optional :: prefix
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
logical, intent(in), optional :: show_ptr
logical, intent(in), optional :: intrinsic
logical, intent(in), optional :: pacified
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
integer :: u, length
logical :: write_this, write_next
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
if (present (prefix)) length = len (prefix)
var => var_list%first
if (associated (var)) then
  do while (associated (var))
    if (present (only_type)) then
      write_this = only_type == var%type
    else
      write_this = .true.
    end if
    if (write_this .and. present (prefix)) then
      if (prefix /= extract (var%name, 1, length)) &
        write_this = .false.
    end if
    if (write_this) then
      call var_entry_write &
        (var, unit, model_name = model_name, show_ptr = show_ptr, &
          intrinsic = intrinsic, pacified = pacified)
    end if
    var => var%next
  end do
end if
write_next = associated (var_list%next)
if (present (follow_link)) &
  write_next = write_next .and. follow_link
if (write_next) then
  call var_list_write (var_list%next, &
    unit, follow_link, only_type, prefix, model_name, show_ptr, &
    intrinsic, pacified)
end if
end subroutine var_list_write

```

Write only a certain variable.

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```
public :: var_list_write_var
```

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

recursive subroutine var_list_write_var &
  (var_list, name, unit, type, follow_link, &
   model_name, show_ptr, pacified)
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: type
logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
logical, intent(in), optional :: show_ptr
logical, intent(in), optional :: pacified
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
    (var_list, name, type, follow_link=follow_link, defined=.true.)
if (associated (var)) then
    call var_entry_write &
        (var, unit, model_name = model_name, &
        show_ptr = show_ptr, pacified = pacified)
else
    write (u, "(A)") char (name) // " = [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine var_list_write_var

```

### 5.6.5 Tools

Return a pointer to the variable list linked to by the current one.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_get_next_ptr

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_list_get_next_ptr (var_list) result (next_ptr)
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: next_ptr
        type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
        next_ptr => var_list%next
    end function var_list_get_next_ptr

```

Return a pointer to the variable with the requested name. If no such name exists, return a null pointer. In that case, try the next list if present, unless `follow_link` is unset. If `defined` is set, ignore entries that exist but are undefined.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_get_var_ptr

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    recursive function var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, type, follow_link, defined) result (var)
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        integer, intent(in), optional :: type
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link, defined
        logical :: ignore_undef, search_next
        ignore_undef = .true.; if (present (defined)) ignore_undef = .not. defined
        var => var_list%first
        if (present (type)) then
            do while (associated (var))

```

```

        if (var%type == type) then
            if (var%name == name) then
                if (ignore_undef .or. var%is_defined) return
            end if
        end if
        var => var%next
    end do
else
    do while (associated (var))
        if (var%name == name) then
            if (ignore_undef .or. var%is_defined) return
        end if
        var => var%next
    end do
end if
search_next = associated (var_list%next)
if (present (follow_link)) &
    search_next = search_next .and. follow_link
if (search_next) &
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list%next, name, type, defined=defined)
end function var_list_get_var_ptr

```

Return the variable type

*<Variables: public>+≡*

public :: var\_list\_get\_type

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

function var_list_get_type (var_list, name, follow_link) result (type)
    integer :: type
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, follow_link=follow_link)
    if (associated (var)) then
        type = var%type
    else
        type = V_NONE
    end if
end function var_list_get_type

```

Return true if the variable exists.

*<Variables: public>+≡*

public :: var\_list\_exists

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

function var_list_exists (var_list, name, follow_link) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, follow_link=follow_link)

```

```

        flag = associated (var)
    end function var_list_exists

```

Return true if the variable is declared as intrinsic.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_is_intrinsic

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_list_is_intrinsic (var_list, name, follow_link) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, follow_link=follow_link)
        if (associated (var)) then
            flag = var%is_intrinsic
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function var_list_is_intrinsic

```

Return true if the value is known.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_is_known

<Variables: interfaces>+≡
    interface var_list_is_known
        module procedure var_list_is_known_s
        module procedure var_list_is_known_c
    end interface

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_list_is_known_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, follow_link=follow_link)
        if (associated (var)) then
            flag = var%is_known
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function var_list_is_known_s

    function var_list_is_known_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        character(*), intent(in) :: name
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
        flag = var_list_is_known_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
    end function var_list_is_known_c

```

Return true if the value is locked.

```
<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_is_locked

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    function var_list_is_locked (var_list, name, follow_link) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, follow_link=follow_link)
        if (associated (var)) then
            flag = var_entry_is_locked (var)
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function var_list_is_locked
```

Return the value, assuming that the type is correct. We consider only variable entries that have been defined.

For convenience, allow both variable and fixed-length (literal) strings.

```
<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_get_lval
    public :: var_list_get_ival
    public :: var_list_get_rval
    public :: var_list_get_cval
    public :: var_list_get_pval
    public :: var_list_get_aval
    public :: var_list_get_sval

<Variables: interfaces>+≡
    interface var_list_get_lval
        module procedure var_list_get_lval_s
        module procedure var_list_get_lval_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_ival
        module procedure var_list_get_ival_s
        module procedure var_list_get_ival_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_rval
        module procedure var_list_get_rval_s
        module procedure var_list_get_rval_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_cval
        module procedure var_list_get_cval_s
        module procedure var_list_get_cval_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_pval
        module procedure var_list_get_pval_s
        module procedure var_list_get_pval_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_aval
        module procedure var_list_get_aval_s
```

```

        module procedure var_list_get_aval_c
    end interface
    interface var_list_get_sval
        module procedure var_list_get_sval_s
        module procedure var_list_get_sval_c
    end interface

```

*{Variables: procedures}+≡*

```

function var_list_get_lval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_LOG, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            lval = var%lval
        else
            lval = .false.
        end if
    else
        lval = .false.
    end if
end function var_list_get_lval_s

function var_list_get_ival_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_INT, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            ival = var%ival
        else
            ival = 0
        end if
    else
        ival = 0
    end if
end function var_list_get_ival_s

function var_list_get_rval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (rval)
    real(default) :: rval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_REAL, follow_link, defined=.true.)

```

```

    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            rval = var%rval
        else
            rval = 0
        end if
    else
        rval = 0
    end if
end function var_list_get_rval_s

function var_list_get_cval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (cval)
    complex(default) :: cval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_CMPLX, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            cval = var%cval
        else
            cval = 0
        end if
    else
        cval = 0
    end if
end function var_list_get_cval_s

function var_list_get_aval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (aval)
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_PDG, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            aval = var%aval
        end if
    end if
end function var_list_get_aval_s

function var_list_get_pval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (pval)
    type(subvt_t) :: pval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_SEV, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then

```



```

        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            pval = var%pval
        end if
    end if
end function var_list_get_pval_s

function var_list_get_sval_s (var_list, name, follow_link) result (sval)
    type(string_t) :: sval
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
        (var_list, name, V_STR, follow_link, defined=.true.)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var_has_value (var)) then
            sval = var%sval
        else
            sval = ""
        end if
    else
        sval = ""
    end if
end function var_list_get_sval_s

function var_list_get_lval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    lval = var_list_get_lval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_lval_c

function var_list_get_ival_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    ival = var_list_get_ival_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_ival_c

function var_list_get_rval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (rval)
    real(default) :: rval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    rval = var_list_get_rval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_rval_c

function var_list_get_cval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (cval)
    complex(default) :: cval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link

```

```

        cval = var_list_get_cval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
    end function var_list_get_cval_c

function var_list_get_aval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (aval)
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    aval = var_list_get_aval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_aval_c

function var_list_get_pval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (pval)
    type(subvt_t) :: pval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    pval = var_list_get_pval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_pval_c

function var_list_get_sval_c (var_list, name, follow_link) result (sval)
    type(string_t) :: sval
    character(*), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
    sval = var_list_get_sval_s (var_list, var_str (name), follow_link)
end function var_list_get_sval_c

```

Check for a valid value, given a pointer. Issue error messages if invalid.

*<Variables: procedures>+≡*

```

function var_has_value (var) result (valid)
    logical :: valid
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (var%is_known) then
            valid = .true.
        else
            call msg_error ("The value of variable '" // char (var%name) &
                // "' is unknown but must be known at this point.")
            valid = .false.
        end if
    else
        call msg_error ("Variable '" // char (var%name) &
            // "' is undefined but must have a known value at this point.")
        valid = .false.
    end if
end function var_has_value

```

### 5.6.6 Process-specific variables

We allow the user to set a numeric process ID for each declared process.

*<Variables: public>+≡*

```

public :: var_list_init_num_id

```

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_init_num_id (var_list, proc_id, num_id)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: proc_id
  integer, intent(in), optional :: num_id
  call var_list_set_procvar_int (var_list, proc_id, &
    var_str ("num_id"), num_id)
end subroutine var_list_init_num_id

```

Integration results are stored in special variables. They are initialized by this subroutine. The values may or may not already known.

Note: the values which are accessible are those that are unique for a process with multiple MCI records. The rest has been discarded.

```

{Variables: public}+=
public :: var_list_init_process_results

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_init_process_results (var_list, proc_id, &
  n_calls, integral, error, accuracy, chi2, efficiency)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: proc_id
  integer, intent(in), optional :: n_calls
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: integral, error, accuracy
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: chi2, efficiency
  call var_list_set_procvar_real (var_list, proc_id, &
    var_str ("integral"), integral)
  call var_list_set_procvar_real (var_list, proc_id, &
    var_str ("error"), error)
end subroutine var_list_init_process_results

```

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_set_procvar_int (var_list, proc_id, name, ival)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: proc_id
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  integer, intent(in), optional :: ival
  type(string_t) :: var_name
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  var_name = name // "(" // proc_id // ")"
  var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_name)
  if (.not. associated (var)) then
    call var_list_append_int (var_list, var_name, ival, intrinsic=.true.)
  else if (present (ival)) then
    call var_list_set_int (var_list, var_name, ival, is_known=.true.)
  end if
end subroutine var_list_set_procvar_int

subroutine var_list_set_procvar_real (var_list, proc_id, name, rval)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: proc_id
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: rval
  type(string_t) :: var_name

```

```

type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
var_name = name // "(" // proc_id // ")"
var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_name)
if (.not. associated (var)) then
    call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_name, rval, intrinsic=.true.)
else if (present (rval)) then
    call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_name, rval, is_known=.true.)
end if
end subroutine var_list_set_procvar_real

```

### 5.6.7 Observable initialization

Observables are formally treated as variables, which however are evaluated each time the observable is used. The arguments (pointers) to evaluate and the function are part of the variable-list entry.

The procedure pointer should be set by this subroutine. This, however, triggers a bug in nagfor 5.2(649). As a workaround, we return the variable pointer, so the pointer can be set directly.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
subroutine var_list_set_obs (var_list, name, type, var, prt1, prt2)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
integer, intent(in) :: type
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
type(prt_t), intent(in), target :: prt1
type(prt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: prt2
allocate (var)
call var_entry_init_obs (var, name, type, prt1, prt2)
call var_list_append (var_list, var)
end subroutine var_list_set_obs

```

Unary and binary observables are different. Most unary observables can be equally well evaluated for particle pairs. Binary observables cannot be evaluated for single particles.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
public :: var_list_set_observables_unary
public :: var_list_set_observables_binary

<Variables: procedures>+≡
subroutine var_list_set_observables_unary (var_list, prt1)
type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
type(prt_t), intent(in), target :: prt1
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
call var_list_set_obs &
    (var_list, var_str ("PDG"), V_OBS1_INT, var, prt1)
var% obs1_int => obs_pdg1
call var_list_set_obs &
    (var_list, var_str ("Hel"), V_OBS1_INT, var, prt1)
var% obs1_int => obs_helicity1
call var_list_set_obs &
    (var_list, var_str ("M"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_signed_mass1

```

```

call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("M2"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_mass_squared1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("E"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_energy1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Px"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_px1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Py"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_py1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Pz"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_pz1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("P"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_p1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Pl"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_pl1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Pt"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_pt1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Theta"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_theta1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Phi"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_phi1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Rap"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_rap1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Eta"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_eta1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Theta_RF"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_theta_rf1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("Dist"), V_OBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
var% obs1_real => obs_dist1
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("_User_obs_real"), V_UOBS1_REAL, var, prt1)
call var_list_set_obs &
  (var_list, var_str ("_User_obs_int"), V_UOBS1_INT, var, prt1)
end subroutine var_list_set_observables_unary

subroutine var_list_set_observables_binary (var_list, prt1, prt2)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(prt_t), intent(in), target :: prt1
  type(prt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: prt2
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  call var_list_set_obs &

```

```

      (var_list, var_str ("PDG"), V_OBS2_INT, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_int => obs_pdg2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Hel"), V_OBS2_INT, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_int => obs_helicity2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("M"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_signed_mass2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("M2"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_mass_squared2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("E"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_energy2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Px"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_px2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Py"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_py2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Pz"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_pz2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("P"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_p2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Pl"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_pl2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Pt"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_pt2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Theta"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_theta2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Phi"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_phi2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Rap"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_rap2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Eta"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_eta2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Theta_RF"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_theta_rf2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("Dist"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_dist2
call var_list_set_obs &
      (var_list, var_str ("kT"), V_OBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
var% obs2_real => obs_ktmeasure
call var_list_set_obs &

```

```

        (var_list, var_str ("_User_obs_real"), V_UOBS2_REAL, var, prt1, prt2)
    call var_list_set_obs &
        (var_list, var_str ("_User_obs_int"), V_UOBS2_INT, var, prt1, prt2)
end subroutine var_list_set_observables_binary

```

Check if a variable name is defined as an observable:

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
function string_is_observable_id (string) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    select case (char (string))
    case ("PDG", "Hel", "M", "M2", "E", "Px", "Py", "Pz", "P", "Pl", "Pt", &
        "Theta", "Phi", "Rap", "Eta", "Theta_RF", "Dist", "kT")
        flag = .true.
    case default
        flag = .false.
    end select
end function string_is_observable_id

```

### 5.6.8 Observables

These are analogous to the unary and binary numeric functions listed above. An observable takes the `pval` component(s) of its one or two argument nodes and produces an integer or real value.

#### Integer-valued unary observables

The PDG code

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
integer function obs_pdg1 (prt1) result (pdg)
    type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
    pdg = prt_get_pdg (prt1)
end function obs_pdg1

```

The helicity. The return value is meaningful only if the particle is polarized, otherwise an invalid value is returned (-9).

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
integer function obs_helicity1 (prt1) result (h)
    type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
    if (prt_is_polarized (prt1)) then
        h = prt_get_helicity (prt1)
    else
        h = -9
    end if
end function obs_helicity1

```

#### Real-valued unary observables

The invariant mass squared, obtained from the separately stored value.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡

```

```

real(default) function obs_mass_squared1 (prt1) result (p2)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p2 = prt_get_msq (prt1)
end function obs_mass_squared1

```

The signed invariant mass, which is the signed square root of the previous observable.

```

<Variables: procedures>+=
real(default) function obs_signed_mass1 (prt1) result (m)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  real(default) :: msq
  msq = prt_get_msq (prt1)
  m = sign (sqrt (abs (msq)), msq)
end function obs_signed_mass1

```

The particle energy

```

<Variables: procedures>+=
real(default) function obs_energy1 (prt1) result (e)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  e = energy (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_energy1

```

Particle momentum (components)

```

<Variables: procedures>+=
real(default) function obs_px1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt1), 1)
end function obs_px1

real(default) function obs_py1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt1), 2)
end function obs_py1

real(default) function obs_pz1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt1), 3)
end function obs_pz1

real(default) function obs_p1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = space_part_norm (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_p1

real(default) function obs_pl1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = longitudinal_part (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_pl1

real(default) function obs_pt1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = transverse_part (prt_get_momentum (prt1))

```



```
end function obs_pt1
```

Polar and azimuthal angle (lab frame).

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```
real(default) function obs_theta1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = polar_angle (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_theta1
```

```
real(default) function obs_phi1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = azimuthal_angle (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_phi1
```

Rapidity and pseudorapidity

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```
real(default) function obs_rap1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = rapidity (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_rap1
```

```
real(default) function obs_eta1 (prt1) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  p = pseudorapidity (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
end function obs_eta1
```

Meaningless: Polar angle in the rest frame of the 2nd argument.

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```
real(default) function obs_theta_rf1 (prt1) result (dist)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  call msg_fatal (" 'Theta_RF' is undefined as unary observable")
  dist = 0
end function obs_theta_rf1
```

Meaningless: Distance on the  $\eta$ - $\phi$  cylinder.

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```
real(default) function obs_dist1 (prt1) result (dist)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  call msg_fatal (" 'Dist' is undefined as unary observable")
  dist = 0
end function obs_dist1
```

## Integer-valued binary observables

These observables are meaningless as binary functions.

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```
integer function obs_pdg2 (prt1, prt2) result (pdg)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  call msg_fatal (" PDG_Code is undefined as binary observable")
  pdg = 0
```

```

end function obs_pdg2

integer function obs_helicity2 (prt1, prt2) result (h)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  call msg_fatal (" Helicity is undefined as binary observable")
  h = 0
end function obs_helicity2

```

## Real-valued binary observables

The invariant mass squared, obtained from the separately stored value.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_mass_squared2 (prt1, prt2) result (p2)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
  p2 = prt_get_msq (prt)
end function obs_mass_squared2

```

The signed invariant mass, which is the signed square root of the previous observable.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_signed_mass2 (prt1, prt2) result (m)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  real(default) :: msq
  call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
  msq = prt_get_msq (prt)
  m = sign (sqrt (abs (msq)), msq)
end function obs_signed_mass2

```

The particle energy

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_energy2 (prt1, prt2) result (e)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
  e = energy (prt_get_momentum (prt))
end function obs_energy2

```

Particle momentum (components)

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_px2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
  p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt), 1)
end function obs_px2

real(default) function obs_py2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2

```

```

type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt), 2)
end function obs_py2

```

```

real(default) function obs_pz2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = vector4_get_component (prt_get_momentum (prt), 3)
end function obs_pz2

```

```

real(default) function obs_p2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = space_part_norm (prt_get_momentum (prt))
end function obs_p2

```

```

real(default) function obs_pl2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = longitudinal_part (prt_get_momentum (prt))
end function obs_pl2

```

```

real(default) function obs_pt2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = transverse_part (prt_get_momentum (prt))
end function obs_pt2

```

Enclosed angle and azimuthal distance (lab frame).

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```

real(default) function obs_theta2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
p = enclosed_angle (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))
end function obs_theta2

```

```

real(default) function obs_phi2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
type(prt_t) :: prt
call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
p = azimuthal_distance (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))
end function obs_phi2

```

Rapidity and pseudorapidity distance

*(Variables: procedures)+≡*

```

real(default) function obs_rap2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
p = rapidity_distance &
    (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))

```

```

end function obs_rap2

real(default) function obs_eta2 (prt1, prt2) result (p)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(prt_t) :: prt
  call prt_init_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
  p = pseudorapidity_distance &
    (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))
end function obs_eta2

```

Polar angle in the rest frame of the 2nd argument.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_theta_rf2 (prt1, prt2) result (theta)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  theta = enclosed_angle_rest_frame &
    (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))
end function obs_theta_rf2

```

Distance on the  $\eta$ - $\phi$  cylinder.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_dist2 (prt1, prt2) result (dist)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  dist = eta_phi_distance &
    (prt_get_momentum (prt1), prt_get_momentum (prt2))
end function obs_dist2

```

Durham kT measure.

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
real(default) function obs_ktmeasure (prt1, prt2) result (kt)
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  real (default) :: q2, e1, e2
  ! Normalized scale to one for now! (#67)
  q2 = 1
  e1 = energy (prt_get_momentum (prt1))
  e2 = energy (prt_get_momentum (prt2))
  kt = (2/q2) * min(e1**2, e2**2) * &
    (1 - enclosed_angle_ct(prt_get_momentum (prt1), &
      prt_get_momentum (prt2)))
end function obs_ktmeasure

```

### 5.6.9 API for variable lists

Set a new value. If the variable holds a pointer, this pointer is followed, e.g., a model parameter is actually set. If `ignore` is set, do nothing if the variable does not exist. If `verbose` is set, echo the new value.

The specific versions:

```

<Variables: public>+≡
public :: var_list_set_log
public :: var_list_set_int
public :: var_list_set_real

```

```

public :: var_list_set_cmplx
public :: var_list_set_subevt
public :: var_list_set_pdg_array
public :: var_list_set_string

{Variables: procedures}+=
subroutine var_list_set_log &
    (var_list, name, lval, is_known, ignore, verbose, model_name)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    logical, intent(in) :: lval
    logical, intent(in) :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_LOG)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_LOG)
                call var_entry_set_log (var, lval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
            case default
                call var_mismatch_error (name)
            end select
        else
            call var_locked_error (name)
        end if
    else
        call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_log

subroutine var_list_set_int &
    (var_list, name, ival, is_known, ignore, verbose, model_name)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in) :: ival
    logical, intent(in) :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_INT)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_INT)
                call var_entry_set_int (var, ival, is_known, verbose, model_name)
            case default
                call var_mismatch_error (name)
            end select
        else
            call var_locked_error (name)
        end if
    else
        call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_int

```

```

end if
end subroutine var_list_set_int

subroutine var_list_set_real &
  (var_list, name, rval, is_known, ignore, &
   verbose, model_name, pacified)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  real(default), intent(in) :: rval
  logical, intent(in) :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose, pacified
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_REAL)
  if (associated (var)) then
    if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
      select case (var%type)
      case (V_REAL)
        call var_entry_set_real &
          (var, rval, is_known, verbose, model_name, pacified)
      case default
        call var_mismatch_error (name)
      end select
    else
      call var_locked_error (name)
    end if
  else
    call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
  end if
end subroutine var_list_set_real

subroutine var_list_set_cmplx &
  (var_list, name, cval, is_known, ignore, &
   verbose, model_name, pacified)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  complex(default), intent(in) :: cval
  logical, intent(in) :: is_known
  logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose, pacified
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_CMPLX)
  if (associated (var)) then
    if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
      select case (var%type)
      case (V_CMPLX)
        call var_entry_set_cmplx &
          (var, cval, is_known, verbose, model_name, pacified)
      case default
        call var_mismatch_error (name)
      end select
    else
      call var_locked_error (name)
    end if
  end if

```

```

else
    call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
end if
end subroutine var_list_set_cmplx

subroutine var_list_set_pdg_array &
    (var_list, name, aval, is_known, ignore, verbose, model_name)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
    logical, intent(in) :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_PDG)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_PDG)
                call var_entry_set_pdg_array &
                    (var, aval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
            case default
                call var_mismatch_error (name)
            end select
        else
            call var_locked_error (name)
        end if
    else
        call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_pdg_array

subroutine var_list_set_subevt &
    (var_list, name, pval, is_known, ignore, verbose, model_name)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pval
    logical, intent(in) :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_SEV)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_SEV)
                call var_entry_set_subevt &
                    (var, pval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
            case default
                call var_mismatch_error (name)
            end select
        else
            call var_locked_error (name)
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```

    else
        call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_subevt

subroutine var_list_set_string &
    (var_list, name, sval, is_known, ignore, verbose, model_name)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sval
    logical, intent(in) :: is_known
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore, verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, V_STR)
    if (associated (var)) then
        if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
            select case (var%type)
            case (V_STR)
                call var_entry_set_string &
                    (var, sval, is_known, verbose, model_name)
            case default
                call var_mismatch_error (name)
            end select
        else
            call var_locked_error (name)
        end if
    else
        call var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_string

subroutine var_mismatch_error (name)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    call msg_fatal ("Type mismatch for variable '" // char (name) // "'")
end subroutine var_mismatch_error

subroutine var_locked_error (name)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    call msg_error ("Variable '" // char (name) // "' is not user-definable")
end subroutine var_locked_error

subroutine var_missing_error (name, ignore)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore
    logical :: error
    if (present (ignore)) then
        error = .not. ignore
    else
        error = .true.
    end if
    if (error) then
        call msg_fatal ("Variable '" // char (name) // "' has not been declared")
    end if
end if

```



```
end subroutine var_missing_error
```

### 5.6.10 Linking model variables

The variable list of a model can be linked to the global variable list, so the model variables become available. However, the model may change during the execution of the command list, and this is not known at compile time. So, we make a copy of all variables that can be modified by the user; this will include all variables that are present in any of the models. At runtime, the linked list and the pointers to it can be exchanged, but the global variables will stay.

Append a single model variable to the local variable list. The pointer to the original is not set (yet). Check first if it already exists; in that case, do nothing.

```
{Variables: public}+=
  public :: var_list_init_copy

{Variables: procedures}+=
  subroutine var_list_init_copy (var_list, model_var, user)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: model_var
    logical, intent(in), optional :: user
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    if (.not. var_list_exists &
        (var_list, model_var%name, follow_link = .false.)) then
      allocate (var)
      call var_entry_init_copy (var, model_var, user)
      call var_list_append (var_list, var)
    end if
  end subroutine var_list_init_copy
```

Append all model variables, or reuse (unset) them if they already exist. If `derived_only` is set, copy only derived parameters; these are real parameters that are locked. How should we (should we at all?) generalize this to complex parameters?

```
{Variables: public}+=
  public :: var_list_init_copies

{Variables: procedures}+=
  subroutine var_list_init_copies (var_list, model_vars, derived_only)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: model_vars
    logical, intent(in), optional :: derived_only
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: model_var, var
    type(string_t) :: name
    logical :: copy_all, locked, derived
    integer :: type
    copy_all = .true.
    if (present (derived_only)) copy_all = .not. derived_only
    model_var => model_vars%first
    do while (associated (model_var))
      name = var_entry_get_name (model_var)
      type = var_entry_get_type (model_var)
      locked = var_entry_is_locked (model_var)
```

```

        derived = type == V_REAL .and. locked
        if (copy_all .or. derived) then
            var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
                (var_list, name, type, follow_link = .false.)
            if (associated (var)) then
                call var_entry_clear_value (var)
            else
                allocate (var)
                call var_entry_init_copy (var, model_var)
                call var_list_append (var_list, var)
            end if
        end if
        model_var => model_var%next
    end do
end subroutine var_list_init_copies

```

Clear all previously allocated pointers to some model:

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
subroutine var_list_clear_original_pointers (var_list)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var => var_list%first
    do while (associated (var))
        call var_entry_clear_original_pointer (var)
        var => var%next
    end do
end subroutine var_list_clear_original_pointers

```

Assign the pointer to the original for a single variable.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_set_original_pointer

<Variables: procedures>+≡
subroutine var_list_set_original_pointer (var_list, name, model_vars)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: model_vars
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var, model_var
    integer :: type
    model_var => var_list_get_var_ptr (model_vars, name)
    if (associated (model_var)) then
        type = var_entry_get_type (model_var)
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, type, follow_link=.false.)
        if (associated (var)) then
            call var_entry_set_original_pointer (var, model_var)
        end if
    end if
end subroutine var_list_set_original_pointer

```

Assign pointers to the originals for all variables in the model variable list.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_set_original_pointers

```

```

<Variables: procedures>+=
  subroutine var_list_set_original_pointers (var_list, model_vars)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: model_vars
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var, model_var
    type(string_t) :: name
    integer :: type
    model_var => model_vars%first
    do while (associated (model_var))
      name = var_entry_get_name (model_var)
      type = var_entry_get_type (model_var)
      var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name, type, follow_link=.false.)
      if (associated (var)) then
        call var_entry_set_original_pointer (var, model_var)
      end if
      model_var => model_var%next
    end do
  end subroutine var_list_set_original_pointers

```

Synchronize the local variable list with the model variable list (which is accessed by the pointers assigned in the previous subroutine).

If `reset_pointers` is unset, do not reset pointers but just update values where a variable is a copy. Resetting pointers is done only in the local variable list.

```

<Variables: public>+=
  public :: var_list_synchronize

<Variables: procedures>+=
  subroutine var_list_synchronize (var_list, model_vars, reset_pointers)
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: model_vars
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reset_pointers
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    if (present (reset_pointers)) then
      if (reset_pointers) then
        call var_list_clear_original_pointers (var_list)
        call var_list_set_original_pointers (var_list, model_vars)
      end if
    end if
    var => var_list%first
    do while (associated (var))
      call var_entry_synchronize (var)
      var => var%next
    end do
  end subroutine var_list_synchronize

```

This is the inverse operation: synchronize the model variable list with the current variable list. This is necessary after discarding a local variable list.

For accessing all model variables, we should follow the links first, then scan the current list.

```

<Variables: public>+=
  public :: var_list_restore

```

```

<Variables: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine var_list_restore (var_list, follow_link)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
  logical :: rec
  rec = .true.; if (present (follow_link)) rec = follow_link
  if (rec .and. associated (var_list%next)) then
    call var_list_restore (var_list%next, rec)
  end if
  var => var_list%first
  do while (associated (var))
    call var_entry_restore (var)
    var => var%next
  end do
end subroutine var_list_restore

```

Mark all entries in the current variable list as undefined. This is done when a local variable list is discarded. If the local list is used again (by a loop), the entries will be re-initialized.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
public :: var_list_undefine

<Variables: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine var_list_undefine (var_list, follow_link)
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout) :: var_list
  logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  logical :: rec
  rec = .true.; if (present (follow_link)) rec = follow_link
  var => var_list%first
  do while (associated (var))
    call var_entry_undefine (var)
    var => var%next
  end do
  if (rec .and. associated (var_list%next)) then
    call var_list_undefine (var_list%next, follow_link=follow_link)
  end if
end subroutine var_list_undefine

```

Make a deep copy of a variable list. The copy does not contain any pointer variables. Clear the original pointer after use, since the original may be lost when the copy is in use.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
public :: var_list_init_snapshot

<Variables: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine var_list_init_snapshot (var_list, vars_in, follow_link)
  type(var_list_t), intent(out) :: var_list
  type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: vars_in
  logical, intent(in), optional :: follow_link
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var, var_in
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list_next

```

```

logical :: rec
rec = .true.; if (present (follow_link)) rec = follow_link
var_in => vars_in%first
do while (associated (var_in))
    allocate (var)
    call var_entry_init_copy (var, var_in)
    call var_entry_set_original_pointer (var, var_in)
    call var_entry_synchronize (var)
    call var_entry_clear_original_pointer (var)
    call var_list_append (var_list, var)
    var_in => var_in%next
end do
if (rec .and. associated (vars_in%next)) then
    allocate (var_list_next)
    call var_list_init_snapshot (var_list_next, vars_in%next)
    call var_list_link (var_list, var_list_next)
end if
end subroutine var_list_init_snapshot

```

Check if a user variable can be set. The new flag is set if the user variable has an explicit declaration. If an error occurs, return V\_NONE as variable type.

Also determine the actual type of generic numerical variables, which enter the procedure with type V\_NONE.

```

<Variables: public>+≡
    public :: var_list_check_user_var

<Variables: procedures>+≡
    subroutine var_list_check_user_var (var_list, name, type, new)
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        integer, intent(inout) :: type
        logical, intent(in) :: new
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
        if (string_is_observable_id (name)) then
            call msg_error ("Variable name '" // char (name) &
                // "' is reserved for an observable")
            type = V_NONE
            return
        end if
        if (string_is_integer_result_var (name)) type = V_INT
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, name)
        if (associated (var)) then
            if (type == V_NONE) then
                type = var_entry_get_type (var)
            end if
            if (var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
                call msg_error ("Variable '" // char (name) &
                    // "' is not user-definable")
                type = V_NONE
                return
            else if (new) then
                if (var_entry_is_intrinsic (var)) then
                    call msg_error ("Intrinsic variable '" &
                        // char (name) // "' redeclared")

```

```

        type = V_NONE
        return
    end if
    if (var_entry_get_type (var) /= type) then
        call msg_error ("Variable '" // char (name) // "' " &
            // "redeclared with different type")
        type = V_NONE
        return
    end if
end if
else
    if (string_is_result_var (name)) then
        call msg_error ("Result variable '" // char (name) // "' " &
            // "set without prior integration")
        type = V_NONE
        return
    else if (string_is_num_id (name)) then
        call msg_error ("Numeric process ID '" // char (name) // "' " &
            // "set without process declaration")
        type = V_NONE
        return
    else if (.not. new) then
        call msg_error ("Variable '" // char (name) // "' " &
            // "set without declaration")
        type = V_NONE
        return
    end if
end if
end subroutine var_list_check_user_var

```

Check if a variable name is a result variable of integer type:

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
function string_is_integer_result_var (string) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(string_t) :: buffer, name, separator
    buffer = string
    call split (buffer, name, "(", separator=separator) ! ")"
    if (separator == "(") then
        select case (char (name))
            case ("num_id", "n_calls")
                flag = .true.
            case default
                flag = .false.
        end select
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function string_is_integer_result_var

```

Check if a variable name is an integration-result variable:

```

{Variables: procedures}+=
function string_is_result_var (string) result (flag)

```

```

logical :: flag
type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
type(string_t) :: buffer, name, separator
buffer = string
call split (buffer, name, "(", separator=separator) ! ")"
if (separator == "(") then
  select case (char (name))
  case ("integral", "error")
    flag = .true.
  case default
    flag = .false.
  end select
else
  flag = .false.
end if
end function string_is_result_var

```

Check if a variable name is a numeric process ID:

```

⟨Variables: procedures⟩+≡
function string_is_num_id (string) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
  type(string_t) :: buffer, name, separator
  buffer = string
  call split (buffer, name, "(", separator=separator) ! ")"
  if (separator == "(") then
    select case (char (name))
    case ("num_id")
      flag = .true.
    case default
      flag = .false.
    end select
  else
    flag = .false.
  end if
end function string_is_num_id

```

## 5.7 Expressions

In this module we define the structures needed to parse a user-defined expression, to compile it into an evaluation tree, and to evaluate it.

We have two flavors of expressions: one with particles and one without particles. The latter version is used for defining cut/selection criteria and for online analysis.

```

⟨expressions.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

```

```

module expressions

  use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
  ⟨Use kinds⟩

```

```

    <Use strings>
        use constants !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
        use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!
        use diagnostics !NODEP!
        use lorentz !NODEP!
        use unit_tests
        use md5
        use formats
        use sorting
        use ifiles
        use lexers
        use syntax_rules
        use parser
        use analysis
        use jets
        use pdg_arrays
        use subevents
        use user_code_interface
        use variables

    <Standard module head>

    <Expressions: public>

    <Expressions: types>

    <Expressions: interfaces>

    <Expressions: variables>

    contains

    <Expressions: procedures>

    <Expressions: tests>

    end module expressions

```

### 5.7.1 Tree nodes

The evaluation tree consists of branch nodes (unary and binary) and of leaf nodes, originating from a common root. The node object should be polymorphic. For the time being, polymorphism is emulated here. This means that we have to maintain all possibilities that the node may hold, including associated procedures as pointers.

The following parameter values characterize the node. Unary and binary operators have sub-nodes. The other are leaf nodes. Possible leafs are literal constants or named-parameter references.

```

    <Expressions: types>≡
        integer, parameter :: EN_UNKNOWN = 0, EN_UNARY = 1, EN_BINARY = 2
        integer, parameter :: EN_CONSTANT = 3, EN_VARIABLE = 4
        integer, parameter :: EN_CONDITIONAL = 5, EN_BLOCK = 6

```



```

integer, parameter :: EN_RECORD_CMD = 7
integer, parameter :: EN_OBS1_INT = 11, EN_OBS2_INT = 12
integer, parameter :: EN_OBS1_REAL = 21, EN_OBS2_REAL = 22
integer, parameter :: EN_UOBS1_INT = 31, EN_UOBS2_INT = 32
integer, parameter :: EN_UOBS1_REAL = 41, EN_UOBS2_REAL = 42
integer, parameter :: EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY = 101, EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY = 102
integer, parameter :: EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY = 111, EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY = 112
integer, parameter :: EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY = 121, EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY = 122
integer, parameter :: EN_INT_FUN_UNARY = 131, EN_INT_FUN_BINARY = 132
integer, parameter :: EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY = 141, EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY = 142
integer, parameter :: EN_FORMAT_STR = 161

```

*(Expressions: types)* +=

```

type :: eval_node_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: tag
  integer :: type = EN_UNKNOWN
  integer :: result_type = V_NONE
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
  type(string_t) :: var_name
  logical, pointer :: value_is_known => null ()
  logical,          pointer :: lval => null ()
  integer,          pointer :: ival => null ()
  real(default),    pointer :: rval => null ()
  complex(default), pointer :: cval => null ()
  type(subevt_t),   pointer :: pval => null ()
  type(pdg_array_t), pointer :: aval => null ()
  type(string_t),   pointer :: sval => null ()
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: arg0 => null ()
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: arg1 => null ()
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: arg2 => null ()
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: arg3 => null ()
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: arg4 => null ()
  procedure(obs_unary_int), nopass, pointer :: obs1_int => null ()
  procedure(obs_unary_real), nopass, pointer :: obs1_real => null ()
  procedure(obs_binary_int), nopass, pointer :: obs2_int => null ()
  procedure(obs_binary_real), nopass, pointer :: obs2_real => null ()
  integer, pointer :: prt_type => null ()
  integer, pointer :: index => null ()
  real(default), pointer :: tolerance => null ()
  integer, pointer :: jet_algorithm => null ()
  real(default), pointer :: jet_r => null ()
  type(prt_t), pointer :: prt1 => null ()
  type(prt_t), pointer :: prt2 => null ()
  procedure(unary_log), nopass, pointer :: op1_log => null ()
  procedure(unary_int), nopass, pointer :: op1_int => null ()
  procedure(unary_real), nopass, pointer :: op1_real => null ()
  procedure(unary_cmplx), nopass, pointer :: op1_cmplx => null ()
  procedure(unary_pdg), nopass, pointer :: op1_pdg => null ()
  procedure(unary_sev), nopass, pointer :: op1_sev => null ()
  procedure(unary_str), nopass, pointer :: op1_str => null ()
  procedure(unary_cut), nopass, pointer :: op1_cut => null ()
  procedure(unary_evi), nopass, pointer :: op1_evi => null ()
  procedure(unary_evr), nopass, pointer :: op1_evr => null ()

```

```

procedure(binary_log), nopass, pointer :: op2_log => null ()
procedure(binary_int), nopass, pointer :: op2_int => null ()
procedure(binary_real), nopass, pointer :: op2_real => null ()
procedure(binary_cmplx), nopass, pointer :: op2_cmplx => null ()
procedure(binary_pdg), nopass, pointer :: op2_pdg => null ()
procedure(binary_sev), nopass, pointer :: op2_sev => null ()
procedure(binary_str), nopass, pointer :: op2_str => null ()
procedure(binary_cut), nopass, pointer :: op2_cut => null ()
procedure(binary_evi), nopass, pointer :: op2_evi => null ()
procedure(binary_evr), nopass, pointer :: op2_evr => null ()
end type eval_node_t

```

Finalize a node recursively. Allocated constants are deleted, pointers are ignored.

*(Expressions: procedures)*≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_final_rec (node)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
  select case (node%type)
  case (EN_UNARY)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
  case (EN_BINARY)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg2)
  case (EN_CONDITIONAL)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg2)
  case (EN_BLOCK)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
  case (EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY, &
        EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY, EN_INT_FUN_UNARY, EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    deallocate (node%index)
    deallocate (node%prt1)
  case (EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY, EN_INT_FUN_BINARY, EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg2)
    deallocate (node%index)
    deallocate (node%prt1)
    deallocate (node%prt2)
  case (EN_FORMAT_STR)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    if (associated (node%arg1)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    deallocate (node%ival)
  case (EN_RECORD_CMD)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg0)
    if (associated (node%arg1)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg1)
    if (associated (node%arg2)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg2)
    if (associated (node%arg3)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg3)

```

```

        if (associated (node%arg4)) call eval_node_final_rec (node%arg4)
    end select
    select case (node%type)
    case (EN_UNARY, EN_BINARY, EN_CONDITIONAL, EN_CONSTANT, EN_BLOCK, &
        EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY, EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY, EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_INT_FUN_UNARY, EN_INT_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY, EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY, &
        EN_FORMAT_STR, EN_RECORD_CMD)
        select case (node%result_type)
        case (V_LOG); deallocate (node%lval)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (node%ival)
        case (V_REAL); deallocate (node%rval)
        case (V_CMPLX); deallocate (node%cval)
        case (V_SEV); deallocate (node%pval)
        case (V_PDG); deallocate (node%aval)
        case (V_STR); deallocate (node%sval)
        end select
        deallocate (node%value_is_known)
    end select
end subroutine eval_node_final_rec

```

## Leaf nodes

Initialize a leaf node with a literal constant.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_log (node, lval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    logical, intent(in) :: lval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_LOG
    allocate (node%lval, node%value_is_known)
    node%lval = lval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_log

subroutine eval_node_init_int (node, ival)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    integer, intent(in) :: ival
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_INT
    allocate (node%ival, node%value_is_known)
    node%ival = ival
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_int

subroutine eval_node_init_real (node, rval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    real(default), intent(in) :: rval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_REAL
    allocate (node%rval, node%value_is_known)

```

```

    node%rval = rval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_real

subroutine eval_node_init_cmplx (node, cval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    complex(default), intent(in) :: cval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_CMPLX
    allocate (node%cval, node%value_is_known)
    node%cval = cval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_cmplx

subroutine eval_node_init_subevt (node, pval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(subevt_t), intent(in) :: pval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_SEV
    allocate (node%pval, node%value_is_known)
    node%pval = pval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_subevt

subroutine eval_node_init_pdg_array (node, aval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_PDG
    allocate (node%aval, node%value_is_known)
    node%aval = aval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_pdg_array

subroutine eval_node_init_string (node, sval)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sval
    node%type = EN_CONSTANT
    node%result_type = V_STR
    allocate (node%sval, node%value_is_known)
    node%sval = sval
    node%value_is_known = .true.
end subroutine eval_node_init_string

```

Initialize a leaf node with a pointer to a named parameter

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_log_ptr (node, name, lval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    logical, intent(in), target :: lval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_LOG

```

```

    node%lval => lval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_log_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_int_ptr (node, name, ival, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in), target :: ival
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_INT
    node%ival => ival
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_int_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_real_ptr (node, name, rval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    real(default), intent(in), target :: rval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_REAL
    node%rval => rval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_real_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_cmplx_ptr (node, name, cval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    complex(default), intent(in), target :: cval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_CMPLX
    node%cval => cval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_cmplx_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_subevt_ptr (node, name, pval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), target :: pval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_SEV
    node%pval => pval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_subevt_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_pdg_array_ptr (node, name, aval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node

```

```

    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in), target :: aval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_PDG
    node%aval => aval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_pdg_array_ptr

subroutine eval_node_init_string_ptr (node, name, sval, is_known)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in), target :: sval
    logical, intent(in), target :: is_known
    node%type = EN_VARIABLE
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_STR
    node%sval => sval
    node%value_is_known => is_known
end subroutine eval_node_init_string_ptr

```

## Branch nodes

Initialize a branch node, sub-nodes are given.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_branch (node, tag, result_type, arg1, arg2)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: tag
    integer, intent(in) :: result_type
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target, optional :: arg2
    if (present (arg2)) then
        node%type = EN_BINARY
    else
        node%type = EN_UNARY
    end if
    node%tag = tag
    node%result_type = result_type
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg1 => arg1
    if (present (arg2)) node%arg2 => arg2
end subroutine eval_node_init_branch

```

Allocate the node value according to the result type.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
    select case (node%result_type)
    case (V_LOG); allocate (node%lval)
    case (V_INT); allocate (node%ival)
    case (V_REAL); allocate (node%rval)

```

```

case (V_CMPLX); allocate (node%cval)
case (V_PDG); allocate (node%aval)
case (V_SEV); allocate (node%pval)
    call subevt_init (node%pval)
case (V_STR); allocate (node%sval)
end select
allocate (node%value_is_known)
node%value_is_known = .false.
end subroutine eval_node_allocate_value

```

Initialize a node with an observable. This includes a procedure pointer. The input is a variable entry from the stack which holds the necessary information.

The user-observable version does not contain a pointer. The appropriate procedure is called directly at evaluation time. Furthermore, this is a branch node with a reference to the string-expression node which determines the name of the user procedure.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_obs (node, var, arg)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(var_entry_t), intent(in), target :: var
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target, optional :: arg
    integer :: var_type
    node%tag = var_entry_get_name (var)
    var_type = var_entry_get_type (var)
    select case (var_type)
    case (V_OBS1_INT)
        node%type = EN_OBS1_INT
        call var_entry_assign_obs1_int_ptr (node%obs1_int, var)
    case (V_OBS2_INT)
        node%type = EN_OBS2_INT
        call var_entry_assign_obs2_int_ptr (node%obs2_int, var)
    case (V_OBS1_REAL)
        node%type = EN_OBS1_REAL
        call var_entry_assign_obs1_real_ptr (node%obs1_real, var)
    case (V_OBS2_REAL)
        node%type = EN_OBS2_REAL
        call var_entry_assign_obs2_real_ptr (node%obs2_real, var)
    case (V_UOBS1_INT)
        node%type = EN_UOBS1_INT
    case (V_UOBS2_INT)
        node%type = EN_UOBS2_INT
    case (V_UOBS1_REAL)
        node%type = EN_UOBS1_REAL
    case (V_UOBS2_REAL)
        node%type = EN_UOBS2_REAL
    end select
    select case (var_type)
    case (V_OBS1_INT, V_OBS2_INT, V_UOBS1_INT, V_UOBS2_INT)
        node%result_type = V_INT
        allocate (node%ival, node%value_is_known)
        node%value_is_known = .false.
    case (V_OBS1_REAL, V_OBS2_REAL, V_UOBS1_REAL, V_UOBS2_REAL)
        node%result_type = V_REAL
    end select
end subroutine eval_node_init_obs

```

```

        allocate (node%rval, node%value_is_known)
        node%value_is_known = .false.
    end select
    select case (var_type)
    case (V_OBS1_INT, V_OBS1_REAL, V_UOBS1_INT, V_UOBS1_REAL)
        node%prt1 => var_entry_get_prt1_ptr (var)
    case (V_OBS2_INT, V_OBS2_REAL, V_UOBS2_INT, V_UOBS2_REAL)
        node%prt1 => var_entry_get_prt1_ptr (var)
        node%prt2 => var_entry_get_prt2_ptr (var)
    end select
    select case (var_type)
    case (V_UOBS1_INT, V_UOBS1_REAL, V_UOBS2_INT, V_UOBS2_REAL)
        if (present (arg)) node%arg0 => arg
    end select
end subroutine eval_node_init_obs

```

Initialize a block node which contains, in addition to the expression to be evaluated, a variable definition. The result type is not yet assigned, because we can compile the enclosed expression only after the var list is set up.

Note that the node always allocates a new variable list and appends it to the current one. Thus, if the variable redefines an existing one, it only shadows it but does not reset it. Any side-effects are therefore absent and need not be undone outside the block.

If the flag **new** is set, a variable is (re)declared. This must not be done for intrinsic variables. Vice versa, if the variable is not existent, the **new** flag is required.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine eval_node_init_block (node, name, type, var_def, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out), target :: node
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: var_def
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    node%type = EN_BLOCK
    node%tag = "var_def"
    node%var_name = name
    node%arg1 => var_def
    allocate (node%var_list)
    call var_list_link (node%var_list, var_list)
    if (var_def%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        select case (type)
        case (V_LOG)
            call var_list_append_log (node%var_list, name, var_def%lval)
        case (V_INT)
            call var_list_append_int (node%var_list, name, var_def%ival)
        case (V_REAL)
            call var_list_append_real (node%var_list, name, var_def%rval)
        case (V_CMPLX)
            call var_list_append_cmplx (node%var_list, name, var_def%cval)
        case (V_PDG)
            call var_list_append_pdg_array &
                (node%var_list, name, var_def%aval)
        case (V_SEV)

```



```

        call var_list_append_subevt &
            (node%var_list, name, var_def%pval)
    case (V_STR)
        call var_list_append_string (node%var_list, name, var_def%sval)
    end select
else
    select case (type)
    case (V_LOG); call var_list_append_log_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%lval, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_INT); call var_list_append_int_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%ival, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_REAL); call var_list_append_real_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%rval, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_CMPLX); call var_list_append_cmplx_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%cval, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_PDG); call var_list_append_pdg_array_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%aval, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_SEV); call var_list_append_subevt_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%pval, var_def%value_is_known)
    case (V_STR); call var_list_append_string_ptr &
        (node%var_list, name, var_def%sval, var_def%value_is_known)
    end select
end if
end subroutine eval_node_init_block

```

Complete block initialization by assigning the expression to evaluate to `arg0`.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine eval_node_set_expr (node, arg, result_type)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg
    integer, intent(in), optional :: result_type
    if (present (result_type)) then
        node%result_type = result_type
    else
        node%result_type = arg%result_type
    end if
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg0 => arg
end subroutine eval_node_set_expr

```

Initialize a conditional. There are three branches: the condition (evaluates to logical) and the two alternatives (evaluate both to the same arbitrary type).

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_conditional (node, result_type, cond, arg1, arg2)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    integer, intent(in) :: result_type
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: cond, arg1, arg2
    node%type = EN_CONDITIONAL
    node%tag = "cond"
    node%result_type = result_type
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg0 => cond
    node%arg1 => arg1

```

```

node%arg2 => arg2
end subroutine eval_node_init_conditional

```

Initialize a recording command (which evaluates to a logical constant). The first branch is the ID of the analysis object to be filled, the optional branches 1 to 4 are the values to be recorded.

If the event-weight pointer is null, we record values with unit weight. Otherwise, we use the value pointed to as event weight.

There can be up to four arguments which represent  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $\Delta y$ ,  $\Delta x$ . Therefore, this is the only node type that may fill four sub-nodes.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_init_record_cmd &
  (node, event_weight, id, arg1, arg2, arg3, arg4)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  real(default), pointer :: event_weight
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: id
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), optional, target :: arg1, arg2, arg3, arg4
  call eval_node_init_log (node, .true.)
  node%type = EN_RECORD_CMD
  node%rval => event_weight
  node%tag = "record_cmd"
  node%arg0 => id
  if (present (arg1)) then
    node%arg1 => arg1
    if (present (arg2)) then
      node%arg2 => arg2
      if (present (arg3)) then
        node%arg3 => arg3
        if (present (arg4)) then
          node%arg4 => arg4
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if
end if
end subroutine eval_node_init_record_cmd

```

Initialize a node for operations on subevents. The particle lists (one or two) are inserted as `arg1` and `arg2`. We allocated particle pointers as temporaries for iterating over particle lists. The procedure pointer which holds the function to evaluate for the subevents (e.g., combine, select) is also initialized.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (node, arg1, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(unary_sev) :: proc
  node%type = EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_SEV
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)

```

```

        allocate (node%prt1)
        node%op1_sev => proc
    end subroutine eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary

subroutine eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (node, arg1, arg2, name, proc)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1, arg2
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    procedure(binary_sev) :: proc
    node%type = EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_SEV
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg1 => arg1
    node%arg2 => arg2
    allocate (node%index, source = 0)
    allocate (node%prt1)
    allocate (node%prt2)
    node%op2_sev => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary

```

Similar, but for particle-list functions that evaluate to a real value.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_eval_fun_unary (node, arg1, name)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    node%type = EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_REAL
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg1 => arg1
    allocate (node%index, source = 0)
    allocate (node%prt1)
end subroutine eval_node_init_eval_fun_unary

subroutine eval_node_init_eval_fun_binary (node, arg1, arg2, name)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1, arg2
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    node%type = EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY
    node%tag = name
    node%result_type = V_REAL
    call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
    node%arg1 => arg1
    node%arg2 => arg2
    allocate (node%index, source = 0)
    allocate (node%prt1)
    allocate (node%prt2)
end subroutine eval_node_init_eval_fun_binary

```

These are for particle-list functions that evaluate to a logical value.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_log_fun_unary (node, arg1, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(unary_cut) :: proc
  node%type = EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_LOG
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  allocate (node%prt1)
  node%op1_cut => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_log_fun_unary

subroutine eval_node_init_log_fun_binary (node, arg1, arg2, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1, arg2
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(binary_cut) :: proc
  node%type = EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_LOG
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  node%arg2 => arg2
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  allocate (node%prt1)
  allocate (node%prt2)
  node%op2_cut => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_log_fun_binary

```

These are for particle-list functions that evaluate to an integer value.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

subroutine eval_node_init_int_fun_unary (node, arg1, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(unary_evi) :: proc
  node%type = EN_INT_FUN_UNARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_INT
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  allocate (node%prt1)
  node%op1_evi => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_int_fun_unary

subroutine eval_node_init_int_fun_binary (node, arg1, arg2, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1, arg2
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(binary_evi) :: proc

```

```

node%type = EN_INT_FUN_BINARY
node%tag = name
node%result_type = V_INT
call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
node%arg1 => arg1
node%arg2 => arg2
allocate (node%index, source = 0)
allocate (node%prt1)
allocate (node%prt2)
node%op2_evi => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_int_fun_binary

```

These are for particle-list functions that evaluate to a real value.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_real_fun_unary (node, arg1, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(unary_evr) :: proc
  node%type = EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_INT
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  allocate (node%prt1)
  node%op1_evr => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_real_fun_unary

subroutine eval_node_init_real_fun_binary (node, arg1, arg2, name, proc)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), target :: arg1, arg2
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  procedure(binary_evr) :: proc
  node%type = EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY
  node%tag = name
  node%result_type = V_INT
  call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
  node%arg1 => arg1
  node%arg2 => arg2
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  allocate (node%prt1)
  allocate (node%prt2)
  node%op2_evr => proc
end subroutine eval_node_init_real_fun_binary

```

Initialize a node for a string formatting function (sprintf).

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_init_format_string (node, fmt, arg, name, n_args)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(out) :: node
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: fmt, arg
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  integer, intent(in) :: n_args

```

```

node%type = EN_FORMAT_STR
node%tag = name
node%result_type = V_STR
call eval_node_allocate_value (node)
node%arg0 => fmt
node%arg1 => arg
allocate (node%ival)
node%ival = n_args
end subroutine eval_node_init_format_string

```

If particle functions depend upon a condition (or an expression is evaluated), the observables that can be evaluated for the given particles have to be thrown on the local variable stack. This is done here. Each observable is initialized with the particle pointers which have been allocated for the node.

The integer variable that is referred to by the `Index` pseudo-observable is always known when it is referred to.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_set_observables (node, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: node
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  logical, save, target :: known = .true.
  allocate (node%var_list)
  call var_list_link (node%var_list, var_list)
  allocate (node%index, source = 0)
  call var_list_append_int_ptr &
    (node%var_list, var_str ("Index"), node%index, known, intrinsic=.true.)
  if (.not. associated (node%prt2)) then
    call var_list_set_observables_unary &
      (node%var_list, node%prt1)
  else
    call var_list_set_observables_binary &
      (node%var_list, node%prt1, node%prt2)
  end if
end subroutine eval_node_set_observables

```

## Output

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_write (node, unit, indent)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: node
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer, intent(in), optional :: indent
  integer :: u, ind
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") repeat ("| ", ind) // "o "
  select case (node%type)
  case (EN_UNARY, EN_BINARY, EN_CONDITIONAL, &
    EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY, EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY, &
    EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY, &
    EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY, EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY, &
    EN_INT_FUN_UNARY, EN_INT_FUN_BINARY, &

```

```

        EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY, EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[" // char (node%tag) // "]" = "
case (EN_CONSTANT)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[const] ="
case (EN_VARIABLE)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (node%tag) // " => "
case (EN_OBS1_INT, EN_OBS2_INT, EN_OBS1_REAL, EN_OBS2_REAL, &
    EN_UOBS1_INT, EN_UOBS2_INT, EN_UOBS1_REAL, EN_UOBS2_REAL)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (node%tag) // " ="
case (EN_BLOCK)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[" // char (node%tag) // "]" // &
        char (node%var_name) // " [expr] = "
case default
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[???" = "
end select
select case (node%result_type)
case (V_LOG)
    if (node%value_is_known) then
        if (node%lval) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "true"
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "false"
        end if
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown logical]"
    end if
case (V_INT)
    if (node%value_is_known) then
        write (u, "(1x,I0)") node%ival
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown integer]"
    end if
case (V_REAL)
    if (node%value_is_known) then
        write (u, "(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") node%rval
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown real]"
    end if
case (V_CMPLX)
    if (node%value_is_known) then
        write (u, "(1x,'('," // FMT_19 // ",','," // &
            FMT_19 // ",')')") node%cval
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown complex]"
    end if
case (V_SEV)
    if (char (node%tag) == "@evt") then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[event subevent]"
    else if (node%value_is_known) then
        call subevt_write &
            (node%pval, unit, prefix = repeat ("| ", ind + 1))
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "[unknown subevent]"
    end if

```

```

case (V_PDG)
  write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
  call pdg_array_write (node%aval, u); write (u, *)
case (V_STR)
  if (node%value_is_known) then
    write (u, "(A)" ' "' // char (node%sval) // "'')
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)" "[unknown string]")
  end if
case default
  write (u, "(1x,A)" "[empty]")
end select
select case (node%type)
case (EN_OBS1_INT, EN_OBS1_REAL, EN_UOBS1_INT, EN_UOBS1_REAL)
  write (u, "(A,6x,A)", advance="no") repeat ("| ", ind), "prt1 ="
  call prt_write (node%prt1, unit)
case (EN_OBS2_INT, EN_OBS2_REAL, EN_UOBS2_INT, EN_UOBS2_REAL)
  write (u, "(A,6x,A)", advance="no") repeat ("| ", ind), "prt1 ="
  call prt_write (node%prt1, unit)
  write (u, "(A,6x,A)", advance="no") repeat ("| ", ind), "prt2 ="
  call prt_write (node%prt2, unit)
end select
end subroutine eval_node_write

recursive subroutine eval_node_write_rec (node, unit, indent)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: node
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer, intent(in), optional :: indent
  integer :: u, ind
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
  call eval_node_write (node, unit, indent)
  select case (node%type)
  case (EN_UNARY)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) &
      call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
  case (EN_BINARY)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) &
      call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
      call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)
  case (EN_BLOCK)
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
  case (EN_CONDITIONAL)
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg2, unit, ind+1)
  case (EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY, &
        EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY, EN_INT_FUN_UNARY, EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY)
    if (associated (node%arg0)) &
      call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
      call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)

```



```

case (EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY, EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY, &
      EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY, EN_INT_FUN_BINARY, EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY)
  if (associated (node%arg0)) &
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg0, unit, ind+1)
  call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)
  call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg2, unit, ind+1)
case (EN_RECORD_CMD)
  if (associated (node%arg1)) then
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg1, unit, ind+1)
  if (associated (node%arg2)) then
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg2, unit, ind+1)
  if (associated (node%arg3)) then
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg3, unit, ind+1)
  if (associated (node%arg4)) then
    call eval_node_write_rec (node%arg4, unit, ind+1)
  end if
  end if
  end if
end select
end subroutine eval_node_write_rec

```

### 5.7.2 Operation types

For the operations associated to evaluation tree nodes, we define abstract interfaces for all cases.

Particles/subevents are transferred by-reference, to avoid unnecessary copying. Therefore, subroutines instead of functions. (Furthermore, the function version of `unary_prt` triggers an obscure bug in nagfor 5.2(649) [invalid C code].)

*(Expressions: interfaces)*≡

```

abstract interface
  logical function unary_log (arg)
    import eval_node_t
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
  end function unary_log
end interface
abstract interface
  integer function unary_int (arg)
    import eval_node_t
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
  end function unary_int
end interface
abstract interface
  real(default) function unary_real (arg)
    import default
    import eval_node_t
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
  end function unary_real
end interface
abstract interface
  complex(default) function unary_cmplx (arg)
    import default

```

```

        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
    end function unary_cplx
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine unary_pdg (pdg_array, arg)
        import pdg_array_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: pdg_array
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
    end subroutine unary_pdg
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine unary_sev (subevt, arg, arg0)
        import subevt_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
    end subroutine unary_sev
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine unary_str (string, arg)
        import string_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg
    end subroutine unary_str
end interface
abstract interface
    logical function unary_cut (arg1, arg0)
        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: arg0
    end function unary_cut
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine unary_evi (ival, arg1, arg0)
        import eval_node_t
        integer, intent(out) :: ival
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
    end subroutine unary_evi
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine unary_evr (rval, arg1, arg0)
        import eval_node_t, default
        real(default), intent(out) :: rval
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
    end subroutine unary_evr
end interface
abstract interface
    logical function binary_log (arg1, arg2)

```

```

        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end function binary_log
end interface
abstract interface
    integer function binary_int (arg1, arg2)
        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end function binary_int
end interface
abstract interface
    real(default) function binary_real (arg1, arg2)
        import default
        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end function binary_real
end interface
abstract interface
    complex(default) function binary_cmplx (arg1, arg2)
        import default
        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end function binary_cmplx
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine binary_pdg (pdg_array, arg1, arg2)
        import pdg_array_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: pdg_array
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end subroutine binary_pdg
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine binary_sev (subevt, arg1, arg2, arg0)
        import subevt_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
    end subroutine binary_sev
end interface
abstract interface
    subroutine binary_str (string, arg1, arg2)
        import string_t
        import eval_node_t
        type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
    end subroutine binary_str
end interface
abstract interface
    logical function binary_cut (arg1, arg2, arg0)
        import eval_node_t
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: arg0

```

```

        end function binary_cut
    end interface
    abstract interface
        subroutine binary_evi (ival, arg1, arg2, arg0)
            import eval_node_t
            integer, intent(out) :: ival
            type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
            type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
        end subroutine binary_evi
    end interface
    abstract interface
        subroutine binary_evr (rval, arg1, arg2, arg0)
            import eval_node_t, default
            real(default), intent(out) :: rval
            type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: arg1, arg2
            type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: arg0
        end subroutine binary_evr
    end interface

```

The following subroutines set the procedure pointer:

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_log (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_log) :: op
    en%op1_log => op
end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_log

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_int (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_int) :: op
    en%op1_int => op
end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_int

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_real (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_real) :: op
    en%op1_real => op
end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_real

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_cmplx) :: op
    en%op1_cmplx => op
end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_cmplx

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_pdg (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_pdg) :: op
    en%op1_pdg => op
end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_pdg

subroutine eval_node_set_op1_sev (en, op)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
    procedure(unary_sev) :: op

```

```

        en%op1_sev => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_sev

    subroutine eval_node_set_op1_str (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(unary_str) :: op
        en%op1_str => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op1_str

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_log (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_log) :: op
        en%op2_log => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_log

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_int (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_int) :: op
        en%op2_int => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_int

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_real (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_real) :: op
        en%op2_real => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_real

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_cmplx) :: op
        en%op2_cmplx => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_cmplx

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_pdg (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_pdg) :: op
        en%op2_pdg => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_pdg

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_sev (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_sev) :: op
        en%op2_sev => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_sev

    subroutine eval_node_set_op2_str (en, op)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
        procedure(binary_str) :: op
        en%op2_str => op
    end subroutine eval_node_set_op2_str

```

### 5.7.3 Specific operators

Our expression syntax contains all Fortran functions that make sense. These functions have to be provided in a form that they can be used in procedures pointers, and have the abstract interfaces above. For some intrinsic functions, we could use specific versions provided by Fortran directly. However, this has two drawbacks: (i) We should work with the values instead of the eval-nodes as argument, which complicates the interface; (ii) more importantly, the **default** real type need not be equivalent to double precision. This would, at least, introduce system dependencies. Finally, for operators there are no specific versions.

Therefore, we write wrappers for all possible functions, at the expense of some overhead.

#### Binary numerical functions

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```
integer function add_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival + en2%ival
end function add_ii
real(default) function add_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival + en2%rval
end function add_ir
complex(default) function add_ic (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival + en2%cval
end function add_ic
real(default) function add_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval + en2%ival
end function add_ri
complex(default) function add_ci (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval + en2%ival
end function add_ci
complex(default) function add_cr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval + en2%rval
end function add_cr
complex(default) function add_rc (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval + en2%cval
end function add_rc
real(default) function add_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval + en2%rval
end function add_rr
complex(default) function add_cc (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval + en2%cval
end function add_cc

integer function sub_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
```

```

        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival - en2%ival
    end function sub_ii
    real(default) function sub_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival - en2%rval
    end function sub_ir
    real(default) function sub_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval - en2%ival
    end function sub_ri
    complex(default) function sub_ic (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival - en2%cval
    end function sub_ic
    complex(default) function sub_ci (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval - en2%ival
    end function sub_ci
    complex(default) function sub_cr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval - en2%rval
    end function sub_cr
    complex(default) function sub_rc (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval - en2%cval
    end function sub_rc
    real(default) function sub_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval - en2%rval
    end function sub_rr
    complex(default) function sub_cc (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval - en2%cval
    end function sub_cc

    integer function mul_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival * en2%ival
    end function mul_ii
    real(default) function mul_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival * en2%rval
    end function mul_ir
    real(default) function mul_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval * en2%ival
    end function mul_ri
    complex(default) function mul_ic (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival * en2%cval
    end function mul_ic
    complex(default) function mul_ci (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2

```

```

        y = en1%cval * en2%ival
    end function mul_ci
    complex(default) function mul_rc (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval * en2%cval
    end function mul_rc
    complex(default) function mul_cr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval * en2%rval
    end function mul_cr
    real(default) function mul_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval * en2%rval
    end function mul_rr
    complex(default) function mul_cc (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval * en2%cval
    end function mul_cc

    integer function div_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        if (en2%ival == 0) then
            if (en1%ival >= 0) then
                call msg_warning ("division by zero: " // int2char (en1%ival) // &
                    " / 0 ; result set to 0")
            else
                call msg_warning ("division by zero: (" // int2char (en1%ival) // &
                    ") / 0 ; result set to 0")
            end if
            y = 0
            return
        end if
        y = en1%ival / en2%ival
    end function div_ii
    real(default) function div_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival / en2%rval
    end function div_ir
    real(default) function div_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval / en2%ival
    end function div_ri
    complex(default) function div_ic (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival / en2%cval
    end function div_ic
    complex(default) function div_ci (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%cval / en2%ival
    end function div_ci
    complex(default) function div_rc (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval / en2%cval
    end function div_rc

```



```

complex(default) function div_cr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval / en2%rval
end function div_cr
real(default) function div_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval / en2%rval
end function div_rr
complex(default) function div_cc (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval / en2%cval
end function div_cc

integer function pow_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  integer :: a, b
  real(default) :: rres
  a = en1%ival
  b = en2%ival
  if ((a == 0) .and. (b < 0)) then
    call msg_warning ("division by zero: " // int2char (a) // &
      " ^ (" // int2char (b) // ") ; result set to 0")
    y = 0
    return
  end if
  rres = real(a, default) ** b
  y = rres
  if (real(y, default) /= rres) then
    if (b < 0) then
      call msg_warning ("result of all-integer operation " // &
        int2char (a) // " ^ (" // int2char (b) // &
        ") has been truncated to " // int2char (y), &
        (/ var_str ("Chances are that you want to use " // &
          "reals instead of integers at this point.") //))
    else
      call msg_warning ("integer overflow in " // int2char (a) // &
        " ^ " // int2char (b) // " ; result is " // int2char (y), &
        (/ var_str ("Using reals instead of integers might help.") //))
    end if
  end if
end function pow_ii
real(default) function pow_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval ** en2%ival
end function pow_ri
complex(default) function pow_ci (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%cval ** en2%ival
end function pow_ci
real(default) function pow_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival ** en2%rval
end function pow_ir
real(default) function pow_rr (en1, en2) result (y)

```

```

        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval ** en2%rval
    end function pow_rr
complex(default) function pow_cr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = en1%cval ** en2%rval
end function pow_cr
complex(default) function pow_ic (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = en1%ival ** en2%cval
end function pow_ic
complex(default) function pow_rc (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = en1%rval ** en2%cval
end function pow_rc
complex(default) function pow_cc (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = en1%cval ** en2%cval
end function pow_cc

integer function max_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = max (en1%ival, en2%ival)
end function max_ii
real(default) function max_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = max (real (en1%ival, default), en2%rval)
end function max_ir
real(default) function max_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = max (en1%rval, real (en2%ival, default))
end function max_ri
real(default) function max_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = max (en1%rval, en2%rval)
end function max_rr
integer function min_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = min (en1%ival, en2%ival)
end function min_ii
real(default) function min_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = min (real (en1%ival, default), en2%rval)
end function min_ir
real(default) function min_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = min (en1%rval, real (en2%ival, default))
end function min_ri
real(default) function min_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = min (en1%rval, en2%rval)
end function min_rr

integer function mod_ii (en1, en2) result (y)

```

```

        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = mod (en1%ival, en2%ival)
    end function mod_ii
real(default) function mod_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = mod (real (en1%ival, default), en2%rval)
end function mod_ir
real(default) function mod_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = mod (en1%rval, real (en2%ival, default))
end function mod_ri
real(default) function mod_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = mod (en1%rval, en2%rval)
end function mod_rr
integer function modulo_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = modulo (en1%ival, en2%ival)
end function modulo_ii
real(default) function modulo_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = modulo (real (en1%ival, default), en2%rval)
end function modulo_ir
real(default) function modulo_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = modulo (en1%rval, real (en2%ival, default))
end function modulo_ri
real(default) function modulo_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = modulo (en1%rval, en2%rval)
end function modulo_rr

```

## Unary numeric functions

(*Expressions: procedures*)+≡

```

real(default) function real_i (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = en%ival
end function real_i
real(default) function real_c (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = en%cval
end function real_c
integer function int_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = en%rval
end function int_r
complex(default) function cmplx_i (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = en%ival
end function cmplx_i
integer function int_c (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en

```

```

        y = en%cval
    end function int_c
complex(default) function cmplx_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = en%rval
end function cmplx_r
integer function nint_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = nint (en%rval)
end function nint_r
integer function floor_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = floor (en%rval)
end function floor_r
integer function ceiling_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = ceiling (en%rval)
end function ceiling_r

integer function neg_i (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = - en%ival
end function neg_i
real(default) function neg_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = - en%rval
end function neg_r
complex(default) function neg_c (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = - en%cval
end function neg_c
integer function abs_i (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = abs (en%ival)
end function abs_i
real(default) function abs_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = abs (en%rval)
end function abs_r
real(default) function abs_c (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = abs (en%cval)
end function abs_c
integer function sgn_i (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = sign (1, en%ival)
end function sgn_i
real(default) function sgn_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = sign (1._default, en%rval)
end function sgn_r

real(default) function sqrt_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en

```

```

        y = sqrt (en%rval)
    end function sqrt_r
    real(default) function exp_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = exp (en%rval)
    end function exp_r
    real(default) function log_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = log (en%rval)
    end function log_r
    real(default) function log10_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = log10 (en%rval)
    end function log10_r

    complex(default) function sqrt_c (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = sqrt (en%cval)
    end function sqrt_c
    complex(default) function exp_c (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = exp (en%cval)
    end function exp_c
    complex(default) function log_c (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = log (en%cval)
    end function log_c

    real(default) function sin_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = sin (en%rval)
    end function sin_r
    real(default) function cos_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = cos (en%rval)
    end function cos_r
    real(default) function tan_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = tan (en%rval)
    end function tan_r
    real(default) function asin_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = asin (en%rval)
    end function asin_r
    real(default) function acos_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = acos (en%rval)
    end function acos_r
    real(default) function atan_r (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = atan (en%rval)
    end function atan_r

    complex(default) function sin_c (en) result (y)

```

```

        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = sin (en%cval)
    end function sin_c
complex(default) function cos_c (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = cos (en%cval)
end function cos_c

real(default) function sinh_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = sinh (en%rval)
end function sinh_r
real(default) function cosh_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = cosh (en%rval)
end function cosh_r
real(default) function tanh_r (en) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
    y = tanh (en%rval)
end function tanh_r
!!! These are F2008 additions but accepted by nagfor 5.3 and gfortran 4.6+
!!! Currently not used.
!   real(default) function asinh_r (en) result (y)
!       type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
!       y = asinh (en%rval)
!   end function asinh_r
!   real(default) function acosh_r (en) result (y)
!       type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
!       y = acosh (en%rval)
!   end function acosh_r
!   real(default) function atanh_r (en) result (y)
!       type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
!       y = atanh (en%rval)
!   end function atanh_r

```

## Binary logical functions

Logical expressions:

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

    logical function ignore_first_ll (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en2%lval
    end function ignore_first_ll
    logical function or_ll (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%lval .or. en2%lval
    end function or_ll
    logical function and_ll (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%lval .and. en2%lval
    end function and_ll

```

Comparisons:

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```
logical function comp_lt_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival < en2%ival
end function comp_lt_ii
logical function comp_lt_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival < en2%rval
end function comp_lt_ir
logical function comp_lt_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval < en2%ival
end function comp_lt_ri
logical function comp_lt_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval < en2%rval
end function comp_lt_rr

logical function comp_gt_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival > en2%ival
end function comp_gt_ii
logical function comp_gt_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival > en2%rval
end function comp_gt_ir
logical function comp_gt_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval > en2%ival
end function comp_gt_ri
logical function comp_gt_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval > en2%rval
end function comp_gt_rr

logical function comp_le_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival <= en2%ival
end function comp_le_ii
logical function comp_le_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%ival <= en2%rval
end function comp_le_ir
logical function comp_le_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval <= en2%ival
end function comp_le_ri
logical function comp_le_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  y = en1%rval <= en2%rval
end function comp_le_rr

logical function comp_ge_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
```

```

        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival >= en2%ival
    end function comp_ge_ii
    logical function comp_ge_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival >= en2%rval
    end function comp_ge_ir
    logical function comp_ge_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval >= en2%ival
    end function comp_ge_ri
    logical function comp_ge_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval >= en2%rval
    end function comp_ge_rr

    logical function comp_eq_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival == en2%ival
    end function comp_eq_ii
    logical function comp_eq_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival == en2%rval
    end function comp_eq_ir
    logical function comp_eq_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval == en2%ival
    end function comp_eq_ri
    logical function comp_eq_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval == en2%rval
    end function comp_eq_rr
    logical function comp_eq_ss (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%sval == en2%sval
    end function comp_eq_ss

    logical function comp_ne_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival /= en2%ival
    end function comp_ne_ii
    logical function comp_ne_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%ival /= en2%rval
    end function comp_ne_ir
    logical function comp_ne_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval /= en2%ival
    end function comp_ne_ri
    logical function comp_ne_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
        y = en1%rval /= en2%rval
    end function comp_ne_rr
    logical function comp_ne_ss (en1, en2) result (y)

```



```

    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    y = en1%sval /= en2%sval
end function comp_ne_ss

```

Comparisons with tolerance:

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

logical function comp_se_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%ival - en2%ival) <= en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival == en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_se_ii
logical function comp_se_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%rval - en2%ival) <= en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval == en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_se_ri
logical function comp_se_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%ival - en2%rval) <= en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival == en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_se_ir
logical function comp_se_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%rval - en2%rval) <= en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval == en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_se_rr
logical function comp_ns_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%ival - en2%ival) > en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival /= en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_ns_ii
logical function comp_ns_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = abs (en1%rval - en2%ival) > en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval /= en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_ns_ri

```

```

logical function comp_ns_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = abs (en1%ival - en2%rval) > en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%ival /= en2%rval
  end if
end function comp_ns_ir
logical function comp_ns_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = abs (en1%rval - en2%rval) > en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%rval /= en2%rval
  end if
end function comp_ns_rr

logical function comp_ls_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = en1%ival <= en2%ival + en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%ival <= en2%ival
  end if
end function comp_ls_ii
logical function comp_ls_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = en1%rval <= en2%ival + en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%rval <= en2%ival
  end if
end function comp_ls_ri
logical function comp_ls_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = en1%ival <= en2%rval + en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%ival <= en2%rval
  end if
end function comp_ls_ir
logical function comp_ls_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = en1%rval <= en2%rval + en1%tolerance
  else
    y = en1%rval <= en2%rval
  end if
end function comp_ls_rr

logical function comp_ll_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
    y = en1%ival < en2%ival - en1%tolerance

```

```

else
    y = en1%ival < en2%ival
end if
end function comp_ll_ii
logical function comp_ll_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval < en2%ival - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval < en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_ll_ri
logical function comp_ll_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%ival < en2%rval - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival < en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_ll_ir
logical function comp_ll_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval < en2%rval - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval < en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_ll_rr

logical function comp_gs_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%ival >= en2%ival - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival >= en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_gs_ii
logical function comp_gs_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval >= en2%ival - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval >= en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_gs_ri
logical function comp_gs_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%ival >= en2%rval - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival >= en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_gs_ir
logical function comp_gs_rr (en1, en2) result (y)

```

```

    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval >= en2%rval - en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval >= en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_gs_rr

logical function comp_gg_ii (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%ival > en2%ival + en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival > en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_gg_ii

logical function comp_gg_ri (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval > en2%ival + en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval > en2%ival
    end if
end function comp_gg_ri

logical function comp_gg_ir (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%ival > en2%rval + en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%ival > en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_gg_ir

logical function comp_gg_rr (en1, en2) result (y)
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    if (associated (en1%tolerance)) then
        y = en1%rval > en2%rval + en1%tolerance
    else
        y = en1%rval > en2%rval
    end if
end function comp_gg_rr

```

## Unary logical functions

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

    logical function not_l (en) result (y)
        type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
        y = .not. en%lval
    end function not_l

```

## Unary PDG-array functions

Make a PDG-array object from an integer.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
subroutine pdg_i (pdg_array, en)
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: pdg_array
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en
  pdg_array = en%ival
end subroutine pdg_i

```

## Binary PDG-array functions

Concatenate two PDG-array objects.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
subroutine concat_cc (pdg_array, en1, en2)
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(out) :: pdg_array
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  pdg_array = en1%aval // en2%aval
end subroutine concat_cc

```

## Unary particle-list functions

Combine all particles of the first argument. If **en0** is present, create a mask which is true only for those particles that pass the test.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
subroutine collect_p (subevt, en1, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask1
  integer :: n, i
  n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  allocate (mask1 (n))
  if (present (en0)) then
    do i = 1, n
      en0%index = i
      en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
      call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
      mask1(i) = en0%lval
    end do
  else
    mask1 = .true.
  end if
  call subevt_collect (subevt, en1%pval, mask1)
end subroutine collect_p

```

Cluster the particles of the first argument. If **en0** is present, create a mask which is true only for those particles that pass the test.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
subroutine cluster_p (subevt, en1, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0

```

```

logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask1
integer :: n, i
! Should not be hardcoded!
type(jet_definition_t) :: jet_def
call jet_def%init (en1%jet_algorithm, en1%jet_r)
n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
allocate (mask1 (n))
if (present (en0)) then
  do i = 1, n
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    mask1(i) = en0%lval
  end do
else
  mask1 = .true.
end if
call subevt_cluster (subevt, en1%pval, mask1, jet_def)
call jet_def%final ()
end subroutine cluster_p

```

Select all particles of the first argument. If `en0` is present, create a mask which is true only for those particles that pass the test.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine select_p (subevt, en1, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask1
  integer :: n, i
  n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  allocate (mask1 (n))
  if (present (en0)) then
    do i = 1, subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
      en0%index = i
      en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
      call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
      mask1(i) = en0%lval
    end do
  else
    mask1 = .true.
  end if
  call subevt_select (subevt, en1%pval, mask1)
end subroutine select_p

```

Extract the particle with index given by `en0` from the argument list. Negative indices count from the end. If `en0` is absent, extract the first particle. The result is a list with a single entry, or no entries if the original list was empty or if the index is out of range.

This function has no counterpart with two arguments.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine extract_p (subevt, en1, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt

```

```

type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
integer :: index
if (present (en0)) then
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_INT); index = en0%ival
    case default
        call eval_node_write (en0)
        call msg_fatal (" Index parameter of 'extract' must be integer.")
    end select
else
    index = 1
end if
call subevt_extract (subevt, en1%pval, index)
end subroutine extract_p

```

Sort the subevent according to the result of evaluating `en0`. If `en0` is absent, sort by default method (PDG code, particles before antiparticles).

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sort_p (subevt, en1, en0)
type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ival
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: rval
integer :: i, n
n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
if (present (en0)) then
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_INT); allocate (ival (n))
    case (V_REAL); allocate (rval (n))
    end select
    do i = 1, n
        en0%index = i
        en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
        select case (en0%result_type)
        case (V_INT); ival(i) = en0%ival
        case (V_REAL); rval(i) = en0%rval
        end select
    end do
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_INT); call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval, ival)
    case (V_REAL); call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval, rval)
    end select
else
    call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval)
end if
end subroutine sort_p

```

The following functions return a logical value. `all` evaluates to true if the condition `en0` is true for all elements of the subevent. `any` and `no` are analogous.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

function all_p (en1, en0) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  integer :: i, n
  n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  lval = .true.
  do i = 1, n
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    lval = en0%lval
    if (.not. lval) exit
  end do
end function all_p

function any_p (en1, en0) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  integer :: i, n
  n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  lval = .false.
  do i = 1, n
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    lval = en0%lval
    if (lval) exit
  end do
end function any_p

function no_p (en1, en0) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  integer :: i, n
  n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  lval = .true.
  do i = 1, n
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    lval = .not. en0%lval
    if (lval) exit
  end do
end function no_p

```

This is the interface to user-supplied observables. The node `en0` evaluates to a string that indicates the procedure name. We search for the procedure in the dynamic library and load it into the procedure pointer which is then called. `en1` is the subevent on which the external code operates. The external function



returns a `c_int`, which we translate into a real value.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

function user_obs_int_p (en0, prt1) result (ival)
  integer :: ival
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  type(string_t) :: name
  procedure(user_obs_int_unary), pointer :: user_obs
  call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
  if (en0%value_is_known) then
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_STR); name = en0% sval
    case default
      call msg_bug ("user_obs: procedure name must be a string")
      name = ""
    end select
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_obs)
    ival = user_obs (c_prt (prt1))
  else
    call eval_node_write_rec (en0)
    call msg_fatal ("User observable name is undefined")
  end if
end function user_obs_int_p

function user_obs_real_p (en0, prt1) result (rval)
  real(default) :: rval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1
  type(string_t) :: name
  procedure(user_obs_real_unary), pointer :: user_obs
  call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
  if (en0%value_is_known) then
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_STR); name = en0% sval
    case default
      call msg_bug ("user_obs: procedure name must be a string")
      name = ""
    end select
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_obs)
    rval = user_obs (c_prt (prt1))
  else
    call eval_node_write_rec (en0)
    call msg_fatal ("User observable name is undefined")
  end if
end function user_obs_real_p

```

This is the interface to user-supplied cut code. The node `en0` evaluates to a string that indicates the procedure name.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

function user_cut_p (en1, en0) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0

```

```

type(string_t) :: name
procedure(user_cut_fun), pointer :: user_cut
call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
select case (en0%result_type)
case (V_STR); name = en0%sval
case default
    call msg_bug ("user_cut: procedure name must be a string")
    name = ""
end select
call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_cut)
lval = user_cut (c_prt (en1%pval), &
                int (subevt_get_length (en1%pval), kind=c_int)) &
    /= 0
end function user_cut_p

```

The following function returns an integer value, namely the number of particles for which the condition is true. If there is no condition, it returns simply the length of the subevent.

A function would be more natural. Making it a subroutine avoids another compiler bug (internal error in nagfor 5.2 (649)). (See the interface `unary_evi`.)

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine count_a (ival, en1, en0)
integer, intent(out) :: ival
type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
integer :: i, n, count
n = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
if (present (en0)) then
    count = 0
    do i = 1, n
        en0%index = i
        en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
        if (en0%lval) count = count + 1
    end do
    ival = count
else
    ival = n
end if
end subroutine count_a

```

This evaluates a user-defined event-shape observable for the current subevent.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine user_event_shape_a (rval, en1, en0)
real(default), intent(out) :: rval
type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
type(string_t) :: name
procedure(user_event_shape_fun), pointer :: user_event_shape
if (.not. present (en0)) call msg_bug &
    ("user_event_shape called without procedure name")
call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
select case (en0%result_type)

```

```

case (V_STR); name = en0%sval
case default
  call msg_bug ("user_event_shape: procedure name must be a string")
  name = ""
end select
call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_event_shape)
rval = user_event_shape (c_prt (en1%pval), &
  int (subevt_get_length (en1%pval), kind=c_int))
end subroutine user_event_shape_a

```

## Binary particle-list functions

This joins two subevents, stored in the evaluation nodes `en1` and `en2`. If `en0` is also present, it amounts to a logical test returning true or false for every pair of particles. A particle of the second list gets a mask entry only if it passes the test for all particles of the first list.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine join_pp (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask2
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
  allocate (mask2 (n2))
  mask2 = .true.
  if (present (en0)) then
    do i = 1, n1
      en0%index = i
      en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
      do j = 1, n2
        en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
        mask2(j) = mask2(j) .and. en0%lval
      end do
    end do
  end if
  call subevt_join (subevt, en1%pval, en2%pval, mask2)
end subroutine join_pp

```

Combine two subevents, i.e., make a list of composite particles built from all possible particle pairs from the two lists. If `en0` is present, create a mask which is true only for those pairs that pass the test.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine combine_pp (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  logical, dimension(:, :), allocatable :: mask12
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)

```

```

n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
if (present (en0)) then
  allocate (mask12 (n1, n2))
  do i = 1, n1
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
  do j = 1, n2
    en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    mask12(i,j) = en0%lval
  end do
end do
call subevt_combine (subevt, en1%pval, en2%pval, mask12)
else
  call subevt_combine (subevt, en1%pval, en2%pval)
end if
end subroutine combine_pp

```

Combine all particles of the first argument. If `en0` is present, create a mask which is true only for those particles that pass the test w.r.t. all particles in the second argument. If `en0` is absent, the second argument is ignored.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine collect_pp (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask1
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
  allocate (mask1 (n1))
  mask1 = .true.
  if (present (en0)) then
    do i = 1, n1
      en0%index = i
      en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    do j = 1, n2
      en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
      call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
      mask1(i) = mask1(i) .and. en0%lval
    end do
  end do
end if
call subevt_collect (subevt, en1%pval, mask1)
end subroutine collect_pp

```

Select all particles of the first argument. If `en0` is present, create a mask which is true only for those particles that pass the test w.r.t. all particles in the second argument. If `en0` is absent, the second argument is ignored, and the first argument is transferred unchanged. (This case is not very useful, of course.)

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine select_pp (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt

```

```

type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask1
integer :: i, j, n1, n2
n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
allocate (mask1 (n1))
mask1 = .true.
if (present (en0)) then
  do i = 1, n1
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    do j = 1, n2
      en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
      call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
      mask1(i) = mask1(i) .and. en0%lval
    end do
  end do
end if
call subevt_select (subevt, en1%pval, mask1)
end subroutine select_pp

```

Sort the first subevent according to the result of evaluating `en0`. From the second subevent, only the first element is taken as reference. If `en0` is absent, we sort by default method (PDG code, particles before antiparticles).

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine sort_pp (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ival
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: rval
integer :: i, n1
n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
if (present (en0)) then
  select case (en0%result_type)
  case (V_INT); allocate (ival (n1))
  case (V_REAL); allocate (rval (n1))
  end select
  do i = 1, n1
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, i)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_INT); ival(i) = en0%ival
    case (V_REAL); rval(i) = en0%rval
    end select
  end do
  select case (en0%result_type)
  case (V_INT); call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval, ival)
  case (V_REAL); call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval, rval)
  end select
end subroutine sort_pp

```

```

else
    call subevt_sort (subevt, en1%pval)
end if
end subroutine sort_pp

```

The following functions return a logical value. `all` evaluates to true if the condition `en0` is true for all valid element pairs of both subevents. Invalid pairs (with common `src` entry) are ignored.

`any` and `no` are analogous.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

function all_pp (en1, en2, en0) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
    integer :: i, j, n1, n2
    n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
    n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
    lval = .true.
    LOOP1: do i = 1, n1
        en0%index = i
        en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
        do j = 1, n2
            en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
            if (are_disjoint (en0%prt1, en0%prt2)) then
                call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
                lval = en0%lval
                if (.not. lval) exit LOOP1
            end if
        end do
    end do LOOP1
end function all_pp

```

```

function any_pp (en1, en2, en0) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
    integer :: i, j, n1, n2
    n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
    n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
    lval = .false.
    LOOP1: do i = 1, n1
        en0%index = i
        en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
        do j = 1, n2
            en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
            if (are_disjoint (en0%prt1, en0%prt2)) then
                call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
                lval = en0%lval
                if (lval) exit LOOP1
            end if
        end do
    end do LOOP1
end function any_pp

```

```

function no_pp (en1, en2, en0) result (lval)
  logical :: lval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
  lval = .true.
  LOOP1: do i = 1, n1
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    do j = 1, n2
      en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
      if (are_disjoint (en0%prt1, en0%prt2)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
        lval = .not. en0%lval
        if (lval) exit LOOP1
      end if
    end do
  end do LOOP1
end function no_pp

```

This function evaluates an observable for a pair of particles. From the two particle lists, we take the first pair without `src` overlap. If there is no valid pair, we revert the status of the value to unknown.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_pp (en1, en2, en0, rval, is_known)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  real(default), intent(out) :: rval
  logical, intent(out) :: is_known
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
  rval = 0
  is_known = .false.
  LOOP1: do i = 1, n1
    en0%index = i
    en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
    do j = 1, n2
      en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
      if (are_disjoint (en0%prt1, en0%prt2)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
        rval = en0%rval
        is_known = .true.
        exit LOOP1
      end if
    end do
  end do LOOP1
end subroutine eval_pp

```

This is the interface to user-supplied observables. The node `en0` evaluates to a

string that indicates the procedure name. We search for the procedure in the dynamic library and load it into the procedure pointer which is then called. `en1` is the subevent on which the external code operates. The external function returns a `c_int`, which we translate into a real value.

*(Expressions: procedures)*  $\vdash \equiv$

```
function user_obs_int_pp (en0, prt1, prt2) result (ival)
  integer :: ival
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(string_t) :: name
  procedure(user_obs_int_binary), pointer :: user_obs
  call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
  if (en0%value_is_known) then
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_STR); name = en0%sval
    case default
      call msg_bug ("user_obs: procedure name must be a string")
      name = ""
    end select
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_obs)
    ival = user_obs (c_prt (prt1), c_prt (prt2))
  else
    call eval_node_write_rec (en0)
    call msg_fatal ("User observable name is undefined")
  end if
end function user_obs_int_pp

function user_obs_real_pp (en0, prt1, prt2) result (rval)
  real(default) :: rval
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en0
  type(prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
  type(string_t) :: name
  procedure(user_obs_real_binary), pointer :: user_obs
  call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
  if (en0%value_is_known) then
    select case (en0%result_type)
    case (V_STR); name = en0%sval
    case default
      call msg_bug ("user_obs: procedure name must be a string")
      name = ""
    end select
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name), user_obs)
    rval = user_obs (c_prt (prt1), c_prt (prt2))
  else
    call eval_node_write_rec (en0)
    call msg_fatal ("User observable name is undefined")
  end if
end function user_obs_real_pp
```

The following function returns an integer value, namely the number of valid particle-pairs from both lists for which the condition is true. Invalid pairs (with common `src` entry) are ignored. If there is no condition, it returns the number of valid particle pairs.



A function would be more natural. Making it a subroutine avoids another compiler bug (internal error in nagfor 5.2 (649)). (See the interface `binary_num`.)

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine count_pp (ival, en1, en2, en0)
  integer, intent(out) :: ival
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  integer :: i, j, n1, n2, count
  n1 = subevt_get_length (en1%pval)
  n2 = subevt_get_length (en2%pval)
  if (present (en0)) then
    count = 0
    do i = 1, n1
      en0%index = i
      en0%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i)
      do j = 1, n2
        en0%prt2 = subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j)
        if (are_disjoint (en0%prt1, en0%prt2)) then
          call eval_node_evaluate (en0)
          if (en0%ival) count = count + 1
        end if
      end do
    end do
  else
    count = 0
    do i = 1, n1
      do j = 1, n2
        if (are_disjoint (subevt_get_prt (en1%pval, i), &
                               subevt_get_prt (en2%pval, j))) then
          count = count + 1
        end if
      end do
    end do
  end if
  ival = count
end subroutine count_pp

```

This function makes up a subevent from the second argument which consists only of particles which match the PDG code array (first argument).

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine select_pdg_ca (subevt, en1, en2, en0)
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), optional :: en0
  if (present (en0)) then
    call subevt_select_pdg_code (subevt, en1%aval, en2%pval, en0%ival)
  else
    call subevt_select_pdg_code (subevt, en1%aval, en2%pval)
  end if
end subroutine select_pdg_ca

```

## Binary string functions

Currently, the only string operation is concatenation.

```
<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine concat_ss (string, en1, en2)
    type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
    type(eval_node_t), intent(in) :: en1, en2
    string = en1%sval // en2%sval
  end subroutine concat_ss
```

### 5.7.4 Compiling the parse tree

The evaluation tree is built recursively by following a parse tree. Debug option:

```
<Expressions: variables>≡
  logical, parameter :: debug = .false.
```

Evaluate an expression. The requested type is given as an optional argument; default is numeric (integer or real).

```
<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_genexpr &
    (en, pn, var_list, result_type)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    integer, intent(in), optional :: result_type
    if (debug) then
      print *, "read genexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    if (present (result_type)) then
      select case (result_type)
        case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
          call eval_node_compile_expr (en, pn, var_list)
        case (V_LOG)
          call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en, pn, var_list)
        case (V_SEV)
          call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en, pn, var_list)
        case (V_PDG)
          call eval_node_compile_cexpr (en, pn, var_list)
        case (V_STR)
          call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en, pn, var_list)
      end select
    else
      call eval_node_compile_expr (en, pn, var_list)
    end if
    if (debug) then
      call eval_node_write (en)
      print *, "done genexpr"
    end if
  end subroutine eval_node_compile_genexpr
```

## Numeric expressions

This procedure compiles a numerical expression. This is a single term or a sum or difference of terms. We have to account for all combinations of integer and real arguments. If both are constant, we immediately do the calculation and allocate a constant node.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_expr (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term, pn_addition, pn_op, pn_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  type(string_t) :: key
  integer :: t1, t2, t
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read expr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_term)))
  case ("term")
    call eval_node_compile_term (en, pn_term, var_list)
    pn_addition => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term, tag="addition")
  case ("addition")
    en => null ()
    pn_addition => pn_term
  case default
    call parse_node_mismatch ("term|addition", pn)
  end select
  do while (associated (pn_addition))
    pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_addition)
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op, tag="term")
    call eval_node_compile_term (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    t2 = en2%result_type
    if (associated (en)) then
      en1 => en
      t1 = en1%result_type
    else
      allocate (en1)
      select case (t2)
      case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en1, 0)
      case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en1, 0._default)
      case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en1, cmplx &
        (0._default, 0._default, kind=default))
      end select
      t1 = t2
    end if
    t = numeric_result_type (t1, t2)
    allocate (en)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_op)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
      select case (char (key))
      case ("+")
        select case (t1)

```

```

case (V_INT)
  select case (t2)
    case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, add_ii (en1, en2))
    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, add_ir (en1, en2))
    case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, add_ic (en1, en2))
  end select
case (V_REAL)
  select case (t2)
    case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, add_ri (en1, en2))
    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, add_rr (en1, en2))
    case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, add_rc (en1, en2))
  end select
case (V_CMPLX)
  select case (t2)
    case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, add_ci (en1, en2))
    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, add_cr (en1, en2))
    case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, add_cc (en1, en2))
  end select
end select
case ("-")
  select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
      select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, sub_ii (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sub_ir (en1, en2))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sub_ic (en1, en2))
      end select
    case (V_REAL)
      select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, sub_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sub_rr (en1, en2))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sub_rc (en1, en2))
      end select
    case (V_CMPLX)
      select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sub_ci (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sub_cr (en1, en2))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sub_cc (en1, en2))
      end select
  end select
end select
call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
deallocate (en1, en2)
else
  call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, t, en1, en2)
  select case (char (key))
    case ("+")
      select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int (en, add_ii)
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, add_ir)
            case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, add_ic)

```

```

        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
            case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, add_ri)
            case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, add_rr)
            case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, add_rc)
        end select
    case (V_CMPLX)
        select case (t2)
            case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, add_ci)
            case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, add_cr)
            case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, add_cc)
        end select
    end select
case ("-")
    select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_int  (en, sub_ii)
                case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, sub_ir)
                case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, sub_ic)
            end select
        case (V_REAL)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, sub_ri)
                case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, sub_rr)
                case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, sub_rc)
            end select
        case (V_CMPLX)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, sub_ci)
                case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, sub_cr)
                case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, sub_cc)
            end select
        end select
    end select
end if
    pn_addition => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_addition)
end do
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done expr"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_expr

```

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_term (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_factor, pn_multiplication, pn_op, pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: t1, t2, t

```

```

if (debug) then
    print *, "read term"; call parse_node_write (pn)
end if
pn_factor => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, tag="factor")
call eval_node_compile_factor (en, pn_factor, var_list)
pn_multiplication => &
    parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_factor, tag="multiplication")
do while (associated (pn_multiplication))
    pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_multiplication)
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op, tag="factor")
    en1 => en
    call eval_node_compile_factor (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    t1 = en1%result_type
    t2 = en2%result_type
    t = numeric_result_type (t1, t2)
    allocate (en)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_op)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        select case (char (key))
        case ("*")
            select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, mul_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, mul_ir (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, mul_ic (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, mul_ri (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, mul_rr (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, mul_rc (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_CMPLX)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, mul_ci (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, mul_cr (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, mul_cc (en1, en2))
                end select
            end select
        case ("/")
            select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, div_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, div_ir (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_real (en, div_ir (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, div_ri (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, div_rr (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, div_rc (en1, en2))
                end select
        end select
    end if
end do

```

```

        case (V_CMPLX)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, div_ci (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, div_cr (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, div_cc (en1, en2))
            end select
        end select
    end select
    call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
    call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
    deallocate (en1, en2)
else
    call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, t, en1, en2)
    select case (char (key))
        case ("*")
            select case (t1)
                case (V_INT)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int (en, mul_ii)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mul_ir)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, mul_ic)
                    end select
                case (V_REAL)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mul_ri)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mul_rr)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, mul_rc)
                    end select
                case (V_CMPLX)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, mul_ci)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, mul_cr)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, mul_cc)
                    end select
            end select
        case ("/")
            select case (t1)
                case (V_INT)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int (en, div_ii)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, div_ir)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, div_ic)
                    end select
                case (V_REAL)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, div_ri)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, div_rr)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, div_rc)
                    end select
                case (V_CMPLX)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, div_ci)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, div_cr)
                        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, div_cc)
                    end select
            end select
        end select
    end select

```

```

        end select
    end select
end select
end if
    pn_multiplication => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_multiplication)
end do
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done term"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_term

```

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_factor (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_value, pn_exponentiation, pn_op, pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: t1, t2, t
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read factor"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_value => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    call eval_node_compile_signed_value (en, pn_value, var_list)
    pn_exponentiation => &
        parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_value, tag="exponentiation")
    if (associated (pn_exponentiation)) then
        pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_exponentiation)
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op)
        en1 => en
        call eval_node_compile_signed_value (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
        t1 = en1%result_type
        t2 = en2%result_type
        t = numeric_result_type (t1, t2)
        allocate (en)
        key = parse_node_get_key (pn_op)
        if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
            select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, pow_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, pow_ir (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, pow_ic (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, pow_ri (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, pow_rr (en1, en2))
                case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, pow_rc (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_CMPLX)
                select case (t2)

```



```

        case (V_INT);    call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, pow_ci (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, pow_cr (en1, en2))
        case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, pow_cc (en1, en2))
    end select
end select
call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
deallocate (en1, en2)
else
    call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, t, en1, en2)
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_int  (en, pow_ii)
        case (V_REAL,V_CMPLX);  call eval_type_error (pn, "exponentiation", t1)
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, pow_ri)
        case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, pow_rr)
        case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_type_error (pn, "exponentiation", t1)
        end select
    case (V_CMPLX)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT);    call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, pow_ci)
        case (V_REAL);   call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, pow_cr)
        case (V_CMPLX);  call eval_node_set_op2_cmplx (en, pow_cc)
        end select
    end select
end if
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done factor"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_factor

```

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_signed_value (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1
    integer :: t
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read signed value"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
    case ("signed_value")
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
        call eval_node_compile_value (en1, pn_arg, var_list)
        t = en1%result_type
        allocate (en)

```

```

    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        select case (t)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, neg_i (en1))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, neg_r (en1))
            case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, neg_c (en1))
        end select
        call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
        deallocate (en1)
    else
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, var_str ("-"), t, en1)
        select case (t)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, neg_i)
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, neg_r)
            case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, neg_c)
        end select
    end if
case default
    call eval_node_compile_value (en, pn, var_list)
end select
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done signed value"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_signed_value

```

Integer, real and complex values have an optional unit. The unit is extracted and applied immediately. An integer with unit evaluates to a real constant.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_value (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read value"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
        case ("integer_value", "real_value", "complex_value")
            call eval_node_compile_numeric_value (en, pn)
        case ("pi")
            call eval_node_compile_constant (en, pn)
        case ("I")
            call eval_node_compile_constant (en, pn)
        case ("variable")
            call eval_node_compile_variable (en, pn, var_list)
        case ("result")
            call eval_node_compile_result (en, pn, var_list)
        case ("user_observable")
            call eval_node_compile_user_observable (en, pn, var_list)
        case ("expr")
            call eval_node_compile_expr (en, pn, var_list)
        case ("block_expr")
            call eval_node_compile_block_expr (en, pn, var_list)
        case ("conditional_expr")

```

```

        call eval_node_compile_conditional (en, pn, var_list)
case ("unary_function")
    call eval_node_compile_unary_function (en, pn, var_list)
case ("binary_function")
    call eval_node_compile_binary_function (en, pn, var_list)
case ("eval_fun")
    call eval_node_compile_eval_function (en, pn, var_list)
case ("count_fun", "user_event_fun")
    call eval_node_compile_numeric_function (en, pn, var_list)
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch &
        ("integer|real|complex|constant|variable|" // &
        "expr|block_expr|conditional_expr|" // &
        "unary_function|binary_function|numeric_pexpr", pn)
end select
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done value"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_value

```

Real, complex and integer values are numeric literals with an optional unit attached. In case of an integer, the unit actually makes it a real value in disguise. The signed version of real values is not possible in generic expressions; it is a special case for numeric constants in model files (see below). We do not introduce signed versions of complex values.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_numeric_value (en, pn)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_val, pn_unit
    allocate (en)
    pn_val => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    pn_unit => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_val)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
case ("integer_value")
    if (associated (pn_unit)) then
        call eval_node_init_real (en, &
            parse_node_get_integer (pn_val) * parse_node_get_unit (pn_unit))
    else
        call eval_node_init_int (en, parse_node_get_integer (pn_val))
    end if
case ("real_value")
    if (associated (pn_unit)) then
        call eval_node_init_real (en, &
            parse_node_get_real (pn_val) * parse_node_get_unit (pn_unit))
    else
        call eval_node_init_real (en, parse_node_get_real (pn_val))
    end if
case ("complex_value")
    if (associated (pn_unit)) then
        call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, &
            parse_node_get_cmplx (pn_val) * parse_node_get_unit (pn_unit))
    end if
    end select
end subroutine eval_node_compile_numeric_value

```

```

else
    call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, parse_node_get_cmplx (pn_val))
end if
case ("neg_real_value")
    pn_val => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2))
    pn_unit => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_val)
    if (associated (pn_unit)) then
        call eval_node_init_real (en, &
            - parse_node_get_real (pn_val) * parse_node_get_unit (pn_unit))
    else
        call eval_node_init_real (en, - parse_node_get_real (pn_val))
    end if
case ("pos_real_value")
    pn_val => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2))
    pn_unit => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_val)
    if (associated (pn_unit)) then
        call eval_node_init_real (en, &
            parse_node_get_real (pn_val) * parse_node_get_unit (pn_unit))
    else
        call eval_node_init_real (en, parse_node_get_real (pn_val))
    end if
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch &
        ("integer_value|real_value|complex_value|neg_real_value|pos_real_value", pn)
end select
end subroutine eval_node_compile_numeric_value

```

These are the units, predefined and hardcoded. The default energy unit is GeV, the default angular unit is radians. We include units for observables of dimension energy squared. Luminosities are normalized in inverse femtobarns.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

function parse_node_get_unit (pn) result (factor)
    real(default) :: factor
    real(default) :: unit
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_unit, pn_unit_power
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_frac, pn_num, pn_int, pn_div, pn_den
    integer :: num, den
    pn_unit => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_unit)))
    case ("TeV"); unit = 1.e3_default
    case ("GeV"); unit = 1
    case ("MeV"); unit = 1.e-3_default
    case ("keV"); unit = 1.e-6_default
    case ("eV"); unit = 1.e-9_default
    case ("meV"); unit = 1.e-12_default
    case ("nbarn"); unit = 1.e6_default
    case ("pbarn"); unit = 1.e3_default
    case ("fbarn"); unit = 1
    case ("abarn"); unit = 1.e-3_default
    case ("rad"); unit = 1
    case ("mrad"); unit = 1.e-3_default
    case ("degree"); unit = degree

```

```

case ("%"); unit = 1.e-2_default
case default
    call msg_bug (" Unit '' // &
        char (parse_node_get_key (pn)) // '' is undefined.")
end select
pn_unit_power => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_unit)
if (associated (pn_unit_power)) then
    pn_frac => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_unit_power, 2)
    pn_num => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_frac)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_num)))
    case ("neg_int")
        pn_int => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_num, 2)
        num = - parse_node_get_integer (pn_int)
    case ("pos_int")
        pn_int => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_num, 2)
        num = parse_node_get_integer (pn_int)
    case ("integer_literal")
        num = parse_node_get_integer (pn_num)
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch ("neg_int|pos_int|integer_literal", pn_num)
    end select
    pn_div => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_num)
    if (associated (pn_div)) then
        pn_den => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_div, 2)
        den = parse_node_get_integer (pn_den)
    else
        den = 1
    end if
else
    num = 1
    den = 1
end if
factor = unit ** (real (num, default) / den)
end function parse_node_get_unit

```

There are only two predefined constants, but more can be added easily.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_constant (en, pn)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read constant"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    allocate (en)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn)))
    case ("pi"); call eval_node_init_real (en, pi)
    case ("I"); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, imago)
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch ("pi or I", pn)
    end select
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done constant"
    end if
end if

```

```
end subroutine eval_node_compile_constant
```

Compile a variable, with or without a specified type. Take the list of variables, look for the name and make a node with a pointer to the value. If no type is provided, the variable is numeric, and the stored value determines whether it is real or integer.

We explicitly demand that the variable is defined, so we do not accidentally point to variables that are declared only later in the script but have come into existence in a previous compilation pass.

Variables may actually be anonymous, these are expressions in disguise. In that case, the expression replaces the variable name in the parse tree, and we allocate an ordinary expression node in the eval tree.

Variables of type V\_PDG (pdg-code array) are not treated here. They are handled by `eval_node_compile_cvariable`.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```
recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_variable (en, pn, var_list, var_type)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  integer, intent(in), optional :: var_type
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_name
  type(string_t) :: var_name
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  logical, target, save :: no_lval
  real(default), target, save :: no_rval
  type(subvt_t), target, save :: no_pval
  type(string_t), target, save :: no_sval
  logical, target, save :: unknown = .false.
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read variable"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  if (present (var_type)) then
    select case (var_type)
      case (V_REAL, V_OBS1_REAL, V_OBS2_REAL, V_INT, V_OBS1_INT, &
            V_OBS2_INT, V_CMPLX)
        pn_name => pn
      case default
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
    end select
  else
    pn_name => pn
  end if
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_name)))
    case ("expr")
      call eval_node_compile_expr (en, pn_name, var_list)
    case ("lexpr")
      call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en, pn_name, var_list)
    case ("sexpr")
      call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en, pn_name, var_list)
    case ("pexpr")
      call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en, pn_name, var_list)
    case ("variable")
      var_name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
```

```

if (present (var_type)) then
  select case (var_type)
    case (V_LOG); var_name = "?" // var_name
    case (V_SEV); var_name = "@" // var_name
    case (V_STR); var_name = "$" // var_name ! $ sign
  end select
end if
var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
      (var_list, var_name, var_type, defined=.true.)
allocate (en)
if (associated (var)) then
  select case (var_entry_get_type (var))
    case (V_LOG)
      call eval_node_init_log_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_lval_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_INT)
      call eval_node_init_int_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_ival_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_REAL)
      call eval_node_init_real_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_CMPLX)
      call eval_node_init_cmplx_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_cval_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_SEV)
      call eval_node_init_subevt_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_pval_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_STR)
      call eval_node_init_string_ptr &
            (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_sval_ptr (var), &
             var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
    case (V_OBS1_INT, V_OBS2_INT, V_OBS1_REAL, V_OBS2_REAL)
      call eval_node_init_obs (en, var)
    case default
      call parse_node_write (pn)
      call msg_fatal ("Variable of this type " // &
                     "is not allowed in the present context")
      if (present (var_type)) then
        select case (var_type)
          case (V_LOG)
            call eval_node_init_log_ptr (en, var_name, no_lval, unknown)
          case (V_SEV)
            call eval_node_init_subevt_ptr &
                  (en, var_name, no_pval, unknown)
          case (V_STR)
            call eval_node_init_string_ptr &
                  (en, var_name, no_sval, unknown)
        end select
      else

```

```

        call eval_node_init_real_ptr (en, var_name, no_rval, unknown)
    end if
end select
else
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_error ("This variable is undefined at this point")
    if (present (var_type)) then
        select case (var_type)
        case (V_LOG)
            call eval_node_init_log_ptr (en, var_name, no_lval, unknown)
        case (V_SEV)
            call eval_node_init_subevt_ptr &
                (en, var_name, no_pval, unknown)
        case (V_STR)
            call eval_node_init_string_ptr (en, var_name, no_sval, unknown)
        end select
    else
        call eval_node_init_real_ptr (en, var_name, no_rval, unknown)
    end if
end if
end select
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done variable"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_variable

```

In a given context, a variable has to have a certain type.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine check_var_type (pn, ok, type_actual, type_requested)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    integer, intent(in) :: type_actual
    integer, intent(in), optional :: type_requested
    if (present (type_requested)) then
        select case (type_requested)
        case (V_LOG)
            select case (type_actual)
            case (V_LOG)
            case default
                call parse_node_write (pn)
                call msg_fatal ("Variable type is invalid (should be logical)")
                ok = .false.
            end select
        case (V_SEV)
            select case (type_actual)
            case (V_SEV)
            case default
                call parse_node_write (pn)
                call msg_fatal &
                    ("Variable type is invalid (should be particle set)")
                ok = .false.
            end select
        case (V_PDG)

```



```

select case (type_actual)
case (V_PDG)
case default
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_fatal &
        ("Variable type is invalid (should be PDG array)")
    ok = .false.
end select
case (V_STR)
select case (type_actual)
case (V_STR)
case default
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_fatal &
        ("Variable type is invalid (should be string)")
    ok = .false.
end select
case default
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_bug ("Variable type is unknown")
end select
else
select case (type_actual)
case (V_REAL, V_OBS1_REAL, V_OBS2_REAL, V_INT, V_OBS1_INT, &
    V_OBS2_INT, V_CMPLX)
case default
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_fatal ("Variable type is invalid (should be numeric)")
    ok = .false.
end select
end if
ok = .true.
end subroutine check_var_type

```

Retrieve the result of an integration. If the requested process has been integrated, the results are available as special variables. (The variables cannot be accessed in the usual way since they contain brackets in their names.)

Since this compilation step may occur before the processes have been loaded, we have to initialize the required variables before they are used.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_result (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_prc_id
    type(string_t) :: key, prc_id, var_name
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read result"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    pn_prc_id => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)

```

```

prc_id = parse_node_get_string (pn_prc_id)
var_name = key // "(" // prc_id // ")"
var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_name)
if (associated (var)) then
  allocate (en)
  select case (char(key))
  case ("num_id", "n_calls")
    call eval_node_init_int_ptr &
      (en, var_name, var_entry_get_ival_ptr (var), &
        var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
  case ("integral", "error")
    call eval_node_init_real_ptr &
      (en, var_name, var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var), &
        var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
  end select
else
  call msg_fatal ("Result variable '" // char (var_name) &
    // "' is undefined (call 'integrate' before use)")
end if
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)
  print *, "done result"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_result

```

This user observable behaves like a variable. We link the node to the generic user-observable entry in the variable list. The syntax element has an argument which provides the name of the user variable, this is stored as an eval-node alongside with the variable. When the variable value is used, the user-supplied external function is called and provides the (real) result value.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_user_observable (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_arg, pn_obs
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0
  integer :: res_type
  type(string_t) :: var_name
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read user observable"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_key)))
  case ("user_obs")
    res_type = V_REAL
  case default
    call parse_node_write (pn_key)
    call msg_bug ("user_observable: wrong keyword")
  end select
  pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  pn_obs => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)

```

```

call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en0, pn_obs, var_list)
select case (res_type)
case (V_INT); var_name = "_User_obs_int"
case (V_REAL); var_name = "_User_obs_real"
end select
var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_name, defined=.true.)
allocate (en)
if (associated (var)) then
call eval_node_init_obs (en, var, en0)
else
call parse_node_write (pn)
call msg_error ("This variable is undefined at this point")
end if
if (debug) then
call eval_node_write (en)
print *, "done user observable"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_user_observable

```

Functions with a single argument. For non-constant arguments, watch for functions which convert their argument to a different type.

(*Expressions: procedures*)+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_unary_function (en, pn, var_list)
type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_fname, pn_arg
type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1
type(string_t) :: key
integer :: t
if (debug) then
print *, "read unary function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
end if
pn_fname => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_fname, tag="function_arg1")
call eval_node_compile_expr &
(en1, parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg, tag="expr"), var_list)
t = en1%result_type
allocate (en)
key = parse_node_get_key (pn_fname)
if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
select case (char (key))
case ("complex")
select case (t)
case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, cmplx_i (en1))
case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, cmplx_r (en1))
case (V_CMPLX); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()
case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
end select
case ("real")
select case (t)
case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, real_i (en1))
case (V_REAL); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()

```

```

        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_real (en, real_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("int")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_int (en, int_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_int (en, int_c (en1))
    end select
case ("nint")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_int (en, nint_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("floor")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_int (en, floor_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("ceiling")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1; en1 => null ()
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_int (en, ceiling_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("abs")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, abs_i (en1))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, abs_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_real (en, abs_c (en1))
    end select
case ("sgn")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, sgn_i (en1))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sgn_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("sqrt")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sqrt_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sqrt_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("exp")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, exp_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, exp_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("log")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, log_r (en1))

```

```

        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, log_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("log10")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, log10_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("sin")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sin_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, sin_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("cos")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, cos_r (en1))
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, cos_c (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("tan")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, tan_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("asin")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, asin_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("acos")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, acos_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("atan")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, atan_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("sinh")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, sinh_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("cosh")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, cosh_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("tanh")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, tanh_r (en1))
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select

```

```

        end select
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch ("function name", pn_fname)
    end select
    if (associated (en1)) then
        call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
        deallocate (en1)
    end if
else
    select case (char (key))
    case ("complex")
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, V_CMPLX, en1)
    case ("real")
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, V_REAL, en1)
    case ("int", "nint", "floor", "ceiling")
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, V_INT, en1)
    case default
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, t, en1)
    end select
    select case (char (key))
    case ("complex")
        select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, cmplx_i)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, cmplx_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("real")
        select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, real_i)
        case (V_REAL); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, real_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("int")
        select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, int_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, int_c)
        end select
    case ("nint")
        select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, nint_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("floor")
        select case (t)
        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, floor_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("ceiling")
        select case (t)

```

```

        case (V_INT); deallocate (en); en => en1
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, ceiling_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("abs")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, abs_i)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, abs_r)
        case (V_CMPLX);
            call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, V_REAL, en1)
            call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, abs_c)
        end select
case ("sgn")
    select case (t)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_int (en, sgn_i)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, sgn_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("sqrt")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, sqrt_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, sqrt_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("exp")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, exp_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, exp_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("log")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, log_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, log_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("log10")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, log10_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("sin")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, sin_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, sin_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("cos")
    select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, cos_r)
        case (V_CMPLX); call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en, cos_c)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
    end select
case ("tan")

```

```

        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, tan_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("asin")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, asin_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("acos")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, acos_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("atan")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, atan_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("sinh")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, sinh_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("cosh")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, cosh_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case ("tanh")
        select case (t)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op1_real (en, tanh_r)
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch ("function name", pn_fname)
    end select
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done function"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_unary_function

```

Functions with two arguments.

*(Expressions: procedures)* + ≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_binary_function (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_fname, pn_arg, pn_arg1, pn_arg2
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: t1, t2

```



```

if (debug) then
  print *, "read binary function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
end if
pn_fname => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_fname, tag="function_arg2")
pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg, tag="expr")
pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1, tag="expr")
call eval_node_compile_expr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
call eval_node_compile_expr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
t1 = en1%result_type
t2 = en2%result_type
allocate (en)
key = parse_node_get_key (pn_fname)
if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
  select case (char (key))
    case ("max")
      select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, max_ii (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, max_ir (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
          end select
        case (V_REAL)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, max_ri (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, max_rr (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
          end select
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t1)
      end select
    case ("min")
      select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, min_ii (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, min_ir (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
          end select
        case (V_REAL)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, min_ri (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, min_rr (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
          end select
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t1)
      end select
    case ("mod")
      select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
          select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, mod_ii (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, mod_ir (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)

```

```

        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, mod_ri (en1, en2))
            case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, mod_rr (en1, en2))
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
        end select
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t1)
    end select
case ("modulo")
    select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, modulo_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, modulo_ir (en1, en2))
                case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case (V_REAL)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_real (en, modulo_ri (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, modulo_rr (en1, en2))
                case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
    end select
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch ("function name", pn_fname)
end select
call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
deallocate (en1)
else
    call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, t1, en1, en2)
    select case (char (key))
    case ("max")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int (en, max_ii)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, max_ir)
                    case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, max_ri)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, max_rr)
                    case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
                end select
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
        end select
    case ("min")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int (en, min_ii)

```

```

        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, min_ir)
        case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
    end select
case (V_REAL)
    select case (t2)
        case (V_INT);  call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, min_ri)
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, min_rr)
        case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
    end select
    case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
end select
case ("mod")
    select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int  (en, mod_ii)
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mod_ir)
                case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case (V_REAL)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mod_ri)
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, mod_rr)
                case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
    end select
case ("modulo")
    select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_int  (en, modulo_ii)
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, modulo_ir)
                case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case (V_REAL)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, modulo_ri)
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_real (en, modulo_rr)
                case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
            end select
        case default;  call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t2)
    end select
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch ("function name", pn_fname)
end select
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done function"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_binary_function

```

## Variable definition

A block expression contains a variable definition (first argument) and an expression where the definition can be used (second argument). The `result_type` decides which type of expression is expected for the second argument. For numeric variables, if there is a mismatch between real and integer type, insert an extra node for type conversion.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```
recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_block_expr &
  (en, pn, var_list, result_type)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  integer, intent(in), optional :: result_type
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_var_spec, pn_var_subspec
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_var_type, pn_var_name, pn_var_expr
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr
  type(string_t) :: var_name
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  integer :: var_type
  logical :: new
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read block expr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  new = .false.
  pn_var_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var_spec)))
  case ("var_num");      var_type = V_NONE
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec)
  case ("var_int");      var_type = V_INT
    new = .true.
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
  case ("var_real");     var_type = V_REAL
    new = .true.
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
  case ("var_cmplx");    var_type = V_CMPLX
    new = .true.
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
  case ("var_logical_new"); var_type = V_LOG
    new = .true.
    pn_var_subspec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_subspec, 2)
  case ("var_logical_spec"); var_type = V_LOG
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
  case ("var_plist_new"); var_type = V_SEV
    new = .true.
    pn_var_subspec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_subspec, 2)
  case ("var_plist_spec"); var_type = V_SEV
    new = .true.
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
  case ("var_alias");    var_type = V_PDG
    new = .true.
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
```

```

case ("var_string_new");  var_type = V_STR
    new = .true.
    pn_var_subspec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_subspec, 2)
case ("var_string_spec");  var_type = V_STR
    pn_var_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch &
        ("logical|int|real|plist|alias", pn_var_type)
end select
pn_var_expr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_var_name, 2)
pn_expr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_var_spec, 2)
var_name = parse_node_get_string (pn_var_name)
select case (var_type)
case (V_LOG);  var_name = "?" // var_name
case (V_SEV);  var_name = "@" // var_name
case (V_STR);  var_name = "$" // var_name      ! $ sign
end select
call var_list_check_user_var (var_list, var_name, var_type, new)
call eval_node_compile_genexpr (en1, pn_var_expr, var_list, var_type)
call insert_conversion_node (en1, var_type)
allocate (en)
call eval_node_init_block (en, var_name, var_type, en1, var_list)
call eval_node_compile_genexpr (en2, pn_expr, en%var_list, result_type)
call eval_node_set_expr (en, en2)
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done block expr"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_block_expr

```

Insert a conversion node for integer/real/complex transformation if necessary.  
What shall we do for the complex to integer/real conversion?

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine insert_conversion_node (en, result_type)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    integer, intent(in) :: result_type
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en_conv
    select case (en%result_type)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (result_type)
        case (V_REAL)
            allocate (en_conv)
            call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("real"), V_REAL, en)
            call eval_node_set_op1_real (en_conv, real_i)
            en => en_conv
        case (V_CMPLX)
            allocate (en_conv)
            call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("complex"), V_CMPLX, en)
            call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en_conv, cmplx_i)
            en => en_conv
        end select
    case (V_REAL)

```

```

select case (result_type)
case (V_INT)
  allocate (en_conv)
  call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("int"), V_INT, en)
  call eval_node_set_op1_int (en_conv, int_r)
  en => en_conv
case (V_CMPLX)
  allocate (en_conv)
  call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("complex"), V_CMPLX, en)
  call eval_node_set_op1_cmplx (en_conv, cmplx_r)
  en => en_conv
end select
case (V_CMPLX)
select case (result_type)
case (V_INT)
  allocate (en_conv)
  call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("int"), V_INT, en)
  call eval_node_set_op1_int (en_conv, int_c)
  en => en_conv
case (V_REAL)
  allocate (en_conv)
  call eval_node_init_branch (en_conv, var_str ("real"), V_REAL, en)
  call eval_node_set_op1_real (en_conv, real_c)
  en => en_conv
end select
case default
end select
end subroutine insert_conversion_node

```

## Conditionals

A conditional has the structure `if lexpr then expr else expr`. So we first evaluate the logical expression, then depending on the result the first or second expression. Note that the second expression is mandatory.

The `result_type`, if present, defines the requested type of the `then` and `else` clauses. Default is numeric (int/real). If there is a mismatch between real and integer result types, insert conversion nodes.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_conditional &
  (en, pn, var_list, result_type)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  integer, intent(in), optional :: result_type
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_condition, pn_expr
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_maybe_elseif, pn_elseif_branch
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_maybe_else, pn_else_branch, pn_else_expr
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
  integer :: restype
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read conditional"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if

```

```

pn_condition => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2, tag="lexpr")
pn_expr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_condition, 2)
call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en0, pn_condition, var_list)
call eval_node_compile_genexpr (en1, pn_expr, var_list, result_type)
if (present (result_type)) then
    restype = major_result_type (result_type, en1%result_type)
else
    restype = en1%result_type
end if
pn_maybe_elseif => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_expr)
select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_maybe_elseif)))
case ("maybe_elseif_lexpr", &
      "maybe_elseif_lexpr", &
      "maybe_elseif_pexpr", &
      "maybe_elseif_cexpr", &
      "maybe_elseif_sexpr")
    pn_elseif_branch => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_maybe_elseif)
    pn_maybe_else => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_maybe_elseif)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_maybe_else)))
    case ("maybe_else_lexpr", &
          "maybe_else_pexpr", &
          "maybe_else_cexpr", &
          "maybe_else_sexpr")
        pn_else_branch => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_maybe_else)
        pn_else_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_else_branch, 2)
    case default
        pn_else_expr => null ()
    end select
    call eval_node_compile_elseif &
        (en2, pn_elseif_branch, pn_else_expr, var_list, restype)
case ("maybe_else_lexpr", &
      "maybe_else_lexpr", &
      "maybe_else_pexpr", &
      "maybe_else_cexpr", &
      "maybe_else_sexpr")
    pn_maybe_else => pn_maybe_elseif
    pn_maybe_elseif => null ()
    pn_else_branch => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_maybe_else)
    pn_else_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_else_branch, 2)
    call eval_node_compile_genexpr &
        (en2, pn_else_expr, var_list, restype)
case ("endif")
    call eval_node_compile_default_else (en2, restype)
case default
    call msg_bug ("Broken conditional: unexpected " &
        // char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_maybe_elseif)))
end select
call eval_node_create_conditional (en, en0, en1, en2, restype)
call conditional_insert_conversion_nodes (en, restype)
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done conditional"
end if

```

```
end subroutine eval_node_compile_conditional
```

This recursively generates 'elsif' conditionals as a chain of sub-nodes of the main conditional.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```
recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_elsif &
  (en, pn, pn_elsif_expr, var_list, result_type)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_elsif_expr
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  integer, intent(inout) :: result_type
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_next, pn_condition, pn_expr
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
  pn_condition => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2, tag="lexpr")
  pn_expr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_condition, 2)
  call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en0, pn_condition, var_list)
  call eval_node_compile_genexpr (en1, pn_expr, var_list, result_type)
  result_type = major_result_type (result_type, en1%result_type)
  pn_next => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn)
  if (associated (pn_next)) then
    call eval_node_compile_elsif &
      (en2, pn_next, pn_elsif_expr, var_list, result_type)
    result_type = major_result_type (result_type, en2%result_type)
  else if (associated (pn_elsif_expr)) then
    call eval_node_compile_genexpr &
      (en2, pn_elsif_expr, var_list, result_type)
    result_type = major_result_type (result_type, en2%result_type)
  else
    call eval_node_compile_default_else (en2, result_type)
  end if
  call eval_node_create_conditional (en, en0, en1, en2, result_type)
end subroutine eval_node_compile_elsif
```

This makes a default 'else' branch in case it was omitted. The default value just depends on the expected type.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```
subroutine eval_node_compile_default_else (en, result_type)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  integer, intent(in) :: result_type
  type(subvt_t) :: pval_empty
  type(pdg_array_t) :: aval_undefined
  allocate (en)
  select case (result_type)
  case (V_LOG); call eval_node_init_log (en, .false.)
  case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int (en, 0)
  case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real (en, 0._default)
  case (V_CMPLX)
    call eval_node_init_cmplx (en, (0._default, 0._default))
  case (V_SEV)
    call subvt_init (pval_empty)
    call eval_node_init_subvt (en, pval_empty)
  case (V_PDG)
```



```

        call eval_node_init_pdg_array (en, aval_undefined)
    case (V_STR)
        call eval_node_init_string (en, var_str (""))
    case default
        call msg_bug ("Undefined type for 'else' branch in conditional")
    end select
end subroutine eval_node_compile_default_else

```

If the logical expression is constant, we can simplify the conditional node by replacing it with the selected branch. Otherwise, we initialize a true branching.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_create_conditional (en, en0, en1, en2, result_type)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en, en0, en1, en2
    integer, intent(in) :: result_type
    if (en0%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        if (en0%lval) then
            en => en1
            call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
            deallocate (en2)
        else
            en => en2
            call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
            deallocate (en1)
        end if
    else
        allocate (en)
        call eval_node_init_conditional (en, result_type, en0, en1, en2)
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_create_conditional

```

Return the numerical result type which should be used for the combination of the two result types.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

function major_result_type (t1, t2) result (t)
    integer :: t
    integer, intent(in) :: t1, t2
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
            t = t2
        case default
            call type_mismatch ()
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT)
            t = t1
        case (V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
            t = t2
        case default
            call type_mismatch ()
        end select
    end select
end function

```

```

case (V_CMPLX)
  select case (t2)
    case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
      t = t1
    case default
      call type_mismatch ()
  end select
case default
  if (t1 == t2) then
    t = t1
  else
    call type_mismatch ()
  end if
end select
contains
  subroutine type_mismatch ()
    call msg_bug ("Type mismatch in branches of a conditional expression")
  end subroutine type_mismatch
end function major_result_type

```

Recursively insert conversion nodes where necessary.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine conditional_insert_conversion_nodes (en, result_type)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout), target :: en
  integer, intent(in) :: result_type
  select case (result_type)
    case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
      call insert_conversion_node (en%arg1, result_type)
      if (en%arg2%type == EN_CONDITIONAL) then
        call conditional_insert_conversion_nodes (en%arg2, result_type)
      else
        call insert_conversion_node (en%arg2, result_type)
      end if
    end select
end subroutine conditional_insert_conversion_nodes

```

## Logical expressions

A logical expression consists of one or more singlet logical expressions concatenated by ;. This is for allowing side-effects, only the last value is used.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_lexpr (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term, pn_sequel, pn_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read lexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, tag="lsinglet")
  call eval_node_compile_lsinglet (en, pn_term, var_list)

```

```

pn_sequel => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term, tag="lsequel")
do while (associated (pn_sequel))
  pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_sequel, 2, tag="lsinglet")
  en1 => en
  call eval_node_compile_lsinglet (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
  allocate (en)
  if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
    call eval_node_init_log (en, ignore_first_ll (en1, en2))
    call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
    call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
    deallocate (en1, en2)
  else
    call eval_node_init_branch &
      (en, var_str ("lsequel"), V_LOG, en1, en2)
    call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, ignore_first_ll)
  end if
  pn_sequel => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_sequel)
end do
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)
  print *, "done lexpr"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_lexpr

```

A logical singlet expression consists of one or more logical terms concatenated by or.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_lsinglet (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term, pn_alternative, pn_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read lsinglet"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, tag="lterm")
  call eval_node_compile_lterm (en, pn_term, var_list)
  pn_alternative => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term, tag="alternative")
  do while (associated (pn_alternative))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_alternative, 2, tag="lterm")
    en1 => en
    call eval_node_compile_lterm (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
      call eval_node_init_log (en, or_ll (en1, en2))
      call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
      call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
      deallocate (en1, en2)
    else
      call eval_node_init_branch &
        (en, var_str ("alternative"), V_LOG, en1, en2)
      call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, or_ll)
    end if
    pn_alternative => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_alternative)
  end do
end subroutine eval_node_compile_lsinglet

```

```

        end if
        pn_alternative => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_alternative)
    end do
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done lsinglet"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_lsinglet

```

A logical term consists of one or more logical values concatenated by **and**.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_lterm (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term, pn_coincidence, pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read lterm"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    call eval_node_compile_lvalue (en, pn_term, var_list)
    pn_coincidence => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term, tag="coincidence")
    do while (associated (pn_coincidence))
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_coincidence, 2)
        en1 => en
        call eval_node_compile_lvalue (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
        allocate (en)
        if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
            call eval_node_init_log (en, and_ll (en1, en2))
            call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
            call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
            deallocate (en1, en2)
        else
            call eval_node_init_branch &
                (en, var_str ("coincidence"), V_LOG, en1, en2)
            call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, and_ll)
        end if
        pn_coincidence => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_coincidence)
    end do
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done lterm"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_lterm

```

Logical variables are disabled, because they are confused with the l.h.s. of compared expressions.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_lvalue (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list

```

```

if (debug) then
    print *, "read lvalue"; call parse_node_write (pn)
end if
select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
case ("true")
    allocate (en)
    call eval_node_init_log (en, .true.)
case ("false")
    allocate (en)
    call eval_node_init_log (en, .false.)
case ("negation")
    call eval_node_compile_negation (en, pn, var_list)
case ("lvariable")
    call eval_node_compile_variable (en, pn, var_list, V_LOG)
case ("lexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en, pn, var_list)
case ("block_lexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_block_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_LOG)
case ("conditional_lexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_conditional (en, pn, var_list, V_LOG)
case ("compared_expr")
    call eval_node_compile_compared_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_REAL)
case ("compared_sexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_compared_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_STR)
case ("all_fun", "any_fun", "no_fun", "user_cut_fun")
    call eval_node_compile_log_function (en, pn, var_list)
case ("record_cmd")
    call eval_node_compile_record_cmd (en, pn, var_list)
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch &
        ("true|false|negation|lvariable|" // &
        "lexpr|block_lexpr|conditional_lexpr|" // &
        "compared_expr|compared_sexpr|logical_pexpr", pn)
end select
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done lvalue"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_lvalue

```

A negation consists of the keyword not and a logical value.

(*Expressions: procedures*) + ≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_negation (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read negation"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
    call eval_node_compile_lvalue (en1, pn_arg, var_list)
    allocate (en)

```

```

if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
    call eval_node_init_log (en, not_1 (en1))
    call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
    deallocate (en1)
else
    call eval_node_init_branch (en, var_str ("not"), V_LOG, en1)
    call eval_node_set_op1_log (en, not_1)
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done negation"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_negation

```

## Comparisons

Up to the loop, this is easy. There is always at least one comparison. This is evaluated, and the result is the logical node `en`. If it is constant, we keep its second sub-node as `en2`. (Thus, at the very end `en2` has to be deleted if `en` is (still) constant.)

If there is another comparison, we first check if the first comparison was constant. In that case, there are two possibilities: (i) it was true. Then, its right-hand side is compared with the new right-hand side, and the result replaces the previous one which is deleted. (ii) it was false. In this case, the result of the whole comparison is false, and we can exit the loop without evaluating anything else.

Now assume that the first comparison results in a valid branch, its second sub-node kept as `en2`. We first need a copy of this, which becomes the new left-hand side. If `en2` is constant, we make an identical constant node `en1`. Otherwise, we make `en1` an appropriate pointer node. Next, the first branch is saved as `en0` and we evaluate the comparison between `en1` and the a right-hand side. If this turns out to be constant, there are again two possibilities: (i) true, then we revert to the previous result. (ii) false, then the wh

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_compared_expr (en, pn, var_list, type)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_comparison, pn_expr1
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read comparison"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (type)
    case (V_INT, V_REAL)
        pn_expr1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, tag="expr")
        call eval_node_compile_expr (en1, pn_expr1, var_list)
        pn_comparison => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_expr1, tag="comparison")
    case (V_STR)
        pn_expr1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, tag="sexpr")

```

```

        call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en1, pn_expr1, var_list)
        pn_comparison => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_expr1, tag="str_comparison")
    end select
    call eval_node_compile_comparison &
        (en, en1, en2, pn_comparison, var_list, type)
    pn_comparison => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_comparison)
    SCAN_FURTHER: do while (associated (pn_comparison))
        if (en%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
            if (en%lval) then
                en1 => en2
                call eval_node_final_rec (en); deallocate (en)
                call eval_node_compile_comparison &
                    (en, en1, en2, pn_comparison, var_list, type)
            else
                exit SCAN_FURTHER
            end if
        else
            allocate (en1)
            if (en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
                select case (en2%result_type)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int      (en1, en2%ival)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real    (en1, en2%rval)
                    case (V_STR); call eval_node_init_string    (en1, en2%sval)
                end select
            else
                select case (en2%result_type)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_int_ptr &
                        (en1, var_str ("(previous)"), en2%ival, en2%value_is_known)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_real_ptr &
                        (en1, var_str ("(previous)"), en2%rval, en2%value_is_known)
                    case (V_STR); call eval_node_init_string_ptr &
                        (en1, var_str ("(previous)"), en2%sval, en2%value_is_known)
                end select
            end if
            en0 => en
            call eval_node_compile_comparison &
                (en, en1, en2, pn_comparison, var_list, type)
            if (en%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
                if (en%lval) then
                    call eval_node_final_rec (en); deallocate (en)
                    en => en0
                else
                    call eval_node_final_rec (en0); deallocate (en0)
                    exit SCAN_FURTHER
                end if
            else
                en1 => en
                allocate (en)
                call eval_node_init_branch (en, var_str ("and"), V_LOG, en0, en1)
                call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, and_ll)
            end if
        end if
        pn_comparison => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_comparison)
    end do SCAN_FURTHER

```

```

    if (en%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. associated (en2)) then
        call eval_node_final_rec (en2); deallocate (en2)
    end if
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done compared_expr"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_compared_expr

```

This takes two extra arguments: **en1**, the left-hand-side of the comparison, is already allocated and evaluated. **en2** (the right-hand side) and **en** (the result) are allocated by the routine. **pn** is the parse node which contains the operator and the right-hand side as subnodes.

If the result of the comparison is constant, **en1** is deleted but **en2** is kept, because it may be used in a subsequent comparison. **en** then becomes a constant. If the result is variable, **en** becomes a branch node which refers to **en1** and **en2**.

(*Expressions: procedures*) +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_comparison &
    (en, en1, en2, pn, var_list, type)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en, en1, en2
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    integer, intent(in) :: type
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_op, pn_arg
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: t1, t2
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_op)
    select case (type)
    case (V_INT, V_REAL)
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op, tag="expr")
        call eval_node_compile_expr (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    case (V_STR)
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op, tag="sexpr")
        call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    end select
    t1 = en1%result_type
    t2 = en2%result_type
    allocate (en)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("tolerance"))
        en1%tolerance => var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var)
        select case (char (key))
        case ("<")
            select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_lt_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ll_ir (en1, en2))
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)

```



```

        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ll_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ll_rr (en1, en2))
    end select
end select
case (">")
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_gt_ii (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_gt_ir (en1, en2))
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_gt_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_gt_rr (en1, en2))
        end select
    end select
case ("<=")
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_le_ii (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_le_ir (en1, en2))
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_le_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_le_rr (en1, en2))
        end select
    end select
case (">=")
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ge_ii (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ge_ir (en1, en2))
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ge_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ge_rr (en1, en2))
        end select
    end select
case ("==")
    select case (t1)
    case (V_INT)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_eq_ii (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_eq_ir (en1, en2))
        end select
    case (V_REAL)
        select case (t2)
        case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_eq_ri (en1, en2))
        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_eq_rr (en1, en2))
        end select
    end select

```

```

        end select
    case (V_STR)
        select case (t2)
            case (V_STR); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_eq_ss (en1, en2))
        end select
    end select
case ("<>")
    select case (t1)
        case (V_INT)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ne_ii (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ns_ir (en1, en2))
            end select
        case (V_REAL)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_INT); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ns_ri (en1, en2))
                case (V_REAL); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ns_rr (en1, en2))
            end select
        case (V_STR)
            select case (t2)
                case (V_STR); call eval_node_init_log (en, comp_ne_ss (en1, en2))
            end select
        end select
    end select
call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
deallocate (en1)
else
    call eval_node_init_branch (en, key, V_LOG, en1, en2)
    select case (char (key))
        case ("<")
            select case (t1)
                case (V_INT)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_lt_ii)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ll_ir)
                    end select
                case (V_REAL)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ll_ri)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ll_rr)
                    end select
                end select
            end select
        case (">")
            select case (t1)
                case (V_INT)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gt_ii)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gg_ir)
                    end select
                case (V_REAL)
                    select case (t2)
                        case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gg_ri)
                        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gg_rr)
                    end select
            end select
    end select

```

```

        end select
    case ("<=")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_le_ii)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ls_ir)
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ls_ri)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ls_rr)
                end select
            end select
        end select
    case (">=")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ge_ii)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gs_ir)
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gs_ri)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_gs_rr)
                end select
            end select
        end select
    case ("==")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_eq_ii)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_se_ir)
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_se_ri)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_se_rr)
                end select
            case (V_STR)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_STR); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_eq_ss)
                end select
            end select
        end select
    case ("<>")
        select case (t1)
            case (V_INT)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ne_ii)
                    case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ns_ir)
                end select
            case (V_REAL)
                select case (t2)
                    case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ns_ri)

```

```

        case (V_REAL); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ns_rr)
      end select
    case (V_STR)
      select case (t2)
        case (V_STR); call eval_node_set_op2_log (en, comp_ne_ss)
      end select
    end select
  end select
  var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("tolerance"))
  en1%tolerance => var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var)
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_comparison

```

## Recording analysis data

The `record` command is actually a logical expression which always evaluates true.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_record_cmd (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_tag, pn_arg
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg1, pn_arg2, pn_arg3, pn_arg4
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2, en3, en4
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  real(default), pointer :: event_weight
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read record_cmd"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  pn_tag => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_key)))
  case ("record")
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("event_weight"))
    if (associated (var)) then
      event_weight => var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var)
    else
      event_weight => null ()
    end if
  case ("record_unweighted")
    event_weight => null ()
  case ("record_excess")
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("event_excess"))
    if (associated (var)) then
      event_weight => var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var)
    else
      event_weight => null ()
    end if
  end select
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_tag)))

```

```

case ("analysis_id")
  allocate (en0)
  call eval_node_init_string (en0, parse_node_get_string (pn_tag))
case default
  call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en0, pn_tag, var_list)
end select
allocate (en)
if (associated (pn_arg)) then
  pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
  call eval_node_compile_expr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
  if (en1%result_type == V_INT) &
    call insert_conversion_node (en1, V_REAL)
  pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
  if (associated (pn_arg2)) then
    call eval_node_compile_expr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
    if (en2%result_type == V_INT) &
      call insert_conversion_node (en2, V_REAL)
  pn_arg3 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg2)
  if (associated (pn_arg3)) then
    call eval_node_compile_expr (en3, pn_arg3, var_list)
    if (en3%result_type == V_INT) &
      call insert_conversion_node (en3, V_REAL)
  pn_arg4 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg3)
  if (associated (pn_arg4)) then
    call eval_node_compile_expr (en4, pn_arg4, var_list)
    if (en4%result_type == V_INT) &
      call insert_conversion_node (en4, V_REAL)
    call eval_node_init_record_cmd &
      (en, event_weight, en0, en1, en2, en3, en4)
  else
    call eval_node_init_record_cmd &
      (en, event_weight, en0, en1, en2, en3)
  end if
else
  call eval_node_init_record_cmd (en, event_weight, en0, en1, en2)
end if
else
  call eval_node_init_record_cmd (en, event_weight, en0, en1)
end if
else
  call eval_node_init_record_cmd (en, event_weight, en0)
end if
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)
  print *, "done record_cmd"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_record_cmd

```

## Particle-list expressions

A particle expression is a subevent or a concatenation of particle-list terms (using join).

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_pexpr (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_pterm, pn_concatenation, pn_op, pn_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  type(subvt_t) :: subvt
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read pexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_pterm => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  call eval_node_compile_pterm (en, pn_pterm, var_list)
  pn_concatenation => &
    parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_pterm, tag="pconcatenation")
  do while (associated (pn_concatenation))
    pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_concatenation)
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op)
    en1 => en
    call eval_node_compile_pterm (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
      call subvt_join (subvt, en1%pval, en2%pval)
      call eval_node_init_subvt (en, subvt)
      call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
      call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
      deallocate (en1, en2)
    else
      call eval_node_init_branch &
        (en, var_str ("join"), V_SEV, en1, en2)
      call eval_node_set_op2_sev (en, join_pp)
    end if
    pn_concatenation => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_concatenation)
  end do
  if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done pexpr"
  end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_pexpr

```

A particle term is a subevent or a combination of particle-list values (using combine).

*(Expressions: procedures)* +  $\equiv$

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_pterm (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_pvalue, pn_combination, pn_op, pn_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  type(subvt_t) :: subvt
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read pterm"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_pvalue => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)

```

```

call eval_node_compile_pvalue (en, pn_pvalue, var_list)
pn_combination => &
    parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_pvalue, tag="pcombination")
do while (associated (pn_combination))
    pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_combination)
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op)
    en1 => en
    call eval_node_compile_pvalue (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        call subevt_combine (subevt, en1%pval, en2%pval)
        call eval_node_init_subevt (en, subevt)
        call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
        call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
        deallocate (en1, en2)
    else
        call eval_node_init_branch &
            (en, var_str ("combine"), V_SEV, en1, en2)
        call eval_node_set_op2_sev (en, combine_pp)
    end if
    pn_combination => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_combination)
end do
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done pterm"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_pterm

```

A particle-list value is a PDG-code array, a particle identifier, a variable, a (grouped) pexpr, a block pexpr, a conditional, or a particle-list function.

The **cexpr** node is responsible for transforming a constant PDG-code array into a subevent. It takes the code array as its first argument, the event subevent as its second argument, and the requested particle type (incoming/outgoing) as its zero-th argument. The result is the list of particles in the event that match the code array.

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_pvalue (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_prefix_cexpr
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2, en0
    type(string_t) :: key
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    logical, save, target :: known = .true.
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read pvalue"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
    case ("pexpr_src")
        call eval_node_compile_prefix_cexpr (en1, pn, var_list)
        allocate (en2)
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("@evt"))

```

```

if (associated (var)) then
  call eval_node_init_subevt_ptr &
    (en2, var_str ("@evt"), var_entry_get_pval_ptr (var), known)
  allocate (en)
  call eval_node_init_branch &
    (en, var_str ("prt_selection"), V_SEV, en1, en2)
  call eval_node_set_op2_sev (en, select_pdg_ca)
  allocate (en0)
  pn_prefix_cexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  key = parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_prefix_cexpr)
  select case (char (key))
  case ("incoming_prt")
    call eval_node_init_int (en0, PRT_INCOMING)
    en%arg0 => en0
  case ("outgoing_prt")
    call eval_node_init_int (en0, PRT_OUTGOING)
    en%arg0 => en0
  end select
else
  call parse_node_write (pn)
  call msg_bug (" Missing event data while compiling pvalue")
end if
case ("pvariable")
  call eval_node_compile_variable (en, pn, var_list, V_SEV)
case ("pexpr")
  call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en, pn, var_list)
case ("block_pexpr")
  call eval_node_compile_block_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_SEV)
case ("conditional_pexpr")
  call eval_node_compile_conditional (en, pn, var_list, V_SEV)
case ("join_fun", "combine_fun", "collect_fun", "cluster_fun", &
  "select_fun", "extract_fun", "sort_fun")
  call eval_node_compile_prt_function (en, pn, var_list)
case default
  call parse_node_mismatch &
    ("prefix_cexpr|pvariable|" // &
    "grouped_pexpr|block_pexpr|conditional_pexpr|" // &
    "prt_function", pn)
end select
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)
  print *, "done pvalue"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_pvalue

```

## Particle functions

This combines the treatment of 'join', 'combine', 'collect', 'cluster', 'select', and 'extract' which all have the same syntax. The one or two argument nodes are allocated. If there is a condition, the condition node is also allocated as a logical expression, for which the variable list is augmented by the appropriate (unary/binary) observables.



*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_prt_function (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_clause, pn_key, pn_cond, pn_args
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg0, pn_arg1, pn_arg2
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
  type(string_t) :: key
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read prt_function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause)
  pn_cond => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  if (associated (pn_cond)) &
    pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cond, 2)
  pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
  pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args)
  pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
  key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
  call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
  allocate (en)
  if (.not. associated (pn_arg2)) then
    select case (char (key))
    case ("collect")
      call eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (en, en1, key, collect_p)
    case ("cluster")
      if (fastjet_available ()) then
        call fastjet_init ()
      else
        call msg_fatal &
          ("'cluster' function requires FastJet, which is not enabled")
      end if
      call eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (en, en1, key, cluster_p)
      var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("jet_algorithm"))
      en1%jet_algorithm => var_entry_get_ival_ptr (var)
      var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("jet_r"))
      en1%jet_r => var_entry_get_rval_ptr (var)
    case ("select")
      call eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (en, en1, key, select_p)
    case ("extract")
      call eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (en, en1, key, extract_p)
    case ("sort")
      call eval_node_init_prt_fun_unary (en, en1, key, sort_p)
    case default
      call msg_bug (" Unary particle function '" // char (key) // &
        "' undefined")
    end select
  else
    call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
    select case (char (key))
    case ("join")

```

```

        call eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, join_pp)
    case ("combine")
        call eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, combine_pp)
    case ("collect")
        call eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, collect_pp)
    case ("select")
        call eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, select_pp)
    case ("sort")
        call eval_node_init_prt_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, sort_pp)
    case default
        call msg_bug (" Binary particle function '" // char (key) // &
            "' undefined")
    end select
end if
if (associated (pn_cond)) then
    call eval_node_set_observables (en, var_list)
    select case (char (key))
    case ("extract", "sort")
        call eval_node_compile_expr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
    case default
        call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
    end select
    en%arg0 => en0
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done prt_function"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_prt_function

```

The `eval` expression is similar, but here the expression `arg0` is mandatory, and the whole thing evaluates to a numeric value.

(*Expressions: procedures*) +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_eval_function (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_arg0, pn_args, pn_arg1, pn_arg2
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read eval_function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
    pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg0)
    pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args)
    pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
    call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (.not. associated (pn_arg2)) then
        call eval_node_init_eval_fun_unary (en, en1, key)
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_eval_function

```

```

else
    call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
    call eval_node_init_eval_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key)
end if
call eval_node_set_observables (en, var_list)
call eval_node_compile_expr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
if (en0%result_type /= V_REAL) &
    call msg_fatal (" 'eval' function does not result in real value")
call eval_node_set_expr (en, en0)
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done eval_function"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_eval_function

```

Logical functions of subevents.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_log_function (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_str
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg0, pn_args, pn_arg1, pn_arg2
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read log_function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
    case ("all_fun", "any_fun", "no_fun")
        pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
        pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg0)
    case ("user_cut_fun")
        pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        pn_str => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
        pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_str)
        pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_str)
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch &
            ("all_fun|any_fun|no_fun|user_cut_fun", &
            pn)
    end select
    pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args)
    pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
    call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (.not. associated (pn_arg2)) then
        select case (char (key))
        case ("all")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_unary (en, en1, key, all_p)
        case ("any")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_unary (en, en1, key, any_p)

```

```

        case ("no")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_unary (en, en1, key, no_p)
        case ("user_cut")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_unary (en, en1, key, user_cut_p)
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Unary logical particle function '" // char (key) // &
                "' undefined")
        end select
    else
        call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
        select case (char (key))
        case ("all")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, all_pp)
        case ("any")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, any_pp)
        case ("no")
            call eval_node_init_log_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, no_pp)
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Binary logical particle function '" // char (key) // &
                "' undefined")
        end select
    end if
    if (associated (pn_arg0)) then
        call eval_node_set_observables (en, var_list)
        select case (char (key))
        case ("all", "any", "no")
            call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
        case ("user_cut")
            call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Compiling logical particle function: missing mode")
        end select
        call eval_node_set_expr (en, en0, V_LOG)
    end if
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done log_function"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_log_function

```

Numeric functions of subevents.

(*Expressions: procedures*)+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_numeric_function (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_clause, pn_key, pn_cond, pn_args
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg0, pn_arg1, pn_arg2
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: key
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read numeric_function"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))

```

```

case ("count_fun")
  pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  pn_key   => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause)
  pn_cond  => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  if (associated (pn_cond)) then
    pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cond, 2)
  else
    pn_arg0 => null ()
  end if
  pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
case ("user_event_fun")
  pn_key   => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  pn_cond  => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  pn_arg0  => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cond)
  pn_args  => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_cond)
end select
pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args)
pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en1, pn_arg1, var_list)
allocate (en)
if (.not. associated (pn_arg2)) then
  select case (char (key))
  case ("count")
    call eval_node_init_int_fun_unary (en, en1, key, count_a)
  case ("user_event_shape")
    call eval_node_init_real_fun_unary (en, en1, key, user_event_shape_a)
  case default
    call msg_bug ("Unary subevent function '" // char (key) // &
      "' undefined")
  end select
else
  call eval_node_compile_pexpr (en2, pn_arg2, var_list)
  select case (char (key))
  case ("count")
    call eval_node_init_int_fun_binary (en, en1, en2, key, count_pp)
  case default
    call msg_bug ("Binary subevent function '" // char (key) // &
      "' undefined")
  end select
end if
if (associated (pn_arg0)) then
  call eval_node_set_observables (en, var_list)
  select case (char (key))
  case ("count")
    call eval_node_compile_lexpr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
    call eval_node_set_expr (en, en0, V_INT)
  case ("user_event_shape")
    call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en0, pn_arg0, en%var_list)
    call eval_node_set_expr (en, en0, V_REAL)
  end select
end if
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)

```

```

        print *, "done numeric_function"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_numeric_function

```

## PDG-code arrays

A PDG-code expression is either prefixed by `incoming` or `outgoing`, a block, or a conditional. In any case, it evaluates to a constant.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_prefix_cexpr (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_avalue, pn_prt
    type(string_t) :: key
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read prefix_cexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_avalue => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    key = parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_avalue)
    select case (char (key))
    case ("incoming_prt")
        pn_prt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_avalue, 2)
        call eval_node_compile_cexpr (en, pn_prt, var_list)
    case ("outgoing_prt")
        pn_prt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_avalue, 1)
        call eval_node_compile_cexpr (en, pn_prt, var_list)
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch &
            ("incoming_prt|outgoing_prt", &
            pn_avalue)
    end select
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done prefix_cexpr"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_prefix_cexpr

```

A PDG array is a string of PDG code definitions (or aliases), concatenated by `'.'`. The code definitions may be variables which are not defined at compile time, so we have to allocate sub-nodes. This analogous to `eval_node_compile_term`.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_cexpr (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_prt, pn_concatenation
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read cexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if

```

```

pn_prt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
call eval_node_compile_avalue (en, pn_prt, var_list)
pn_concatenation => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_prt)
do while (associated (pn_concatenation))
    pn_prt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_concatenation, 2)
    en1 => en
    call eval_node_compile_avalue (en2, pn_prt, var_list)
    allocate (en)
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        call concat_cc (aval, en1, en2)
        call eval_node_init_pdg_array (en, aval)
        call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
        call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
        deallocate (en1, en2)
    else
        call eval_node_init_branch (en, var_str (":"), V_PDG, en1, en2)
        call eval_node_set_op2_pdg (en, concat_cc)
    end if
    pn_concatenation => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_concatenation)
end do
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done cexpr"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_cexpr

```

Compile a PDG-code type value. It may be either an integer expression or a variable of type PDG array, optionally quoted.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_avalue (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read avalue"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
    case ("pdg_code")
        call eval_node_compile_pdg_code (en, pn, var_list)
    case ("cvariable", "variable", "prt_name")
        call eval_node_compile_cvariable (en, pn, var_list)
    case ("cexpr")
        call eval_node_compile_cexpr (en, pn, var_list)
    case ("block_cexpr")
        call eval_node_compile_block_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_PDG)
    case ("conditional_cexpr")
        call eval_node_compile_conditional (en, pn, var_list, V_PDG)
    case default
        call parse_node_mismatch &
            ("grouped_cexpr|block_cexpr|conditional_cexpr|" // &
             "pdg_code|cvariable|prt_name", pn)
    end select
    if (debug) then

```

```

        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done avalue"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_avalue

```

Compile a PDG-code expression, which is the key PDG with an integer expression as argument. The procedure is analogous to `eval_node_compile_unary_function`.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_pdg_code (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1
    type(string_t) :: key
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    integer :: t
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read PDG code"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
    call eval_node_compile_expr &
        (en1, parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg, tag="expr"), var_list)
    t = en1%result_type
    allocate (en)
    key = "PDG"
    if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
        select case (t)
            case (V_INT)
                call pdg_i (aval, en1)
                call eval_node_init_pdg_array (en, aval)
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
        call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
        deallocate (en1)
    else
        select case (t)
            case (V_INT); call eval_node_set_op1_pdg (en, pdg_i)
            case default; call eval_type_error (pn, char (key), t)
        end select
    end if
    if (debug) then
        call eval_node_write (en)
        print *, "done function"
    end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_pdg_code

```

This is entirely analogous to `eval_node_compile_variable`. However, PDG-array variables occur in different contexts.

To avoid name clashes between PDG-array variables and ordinary variables, we prepend a character (\*). This is not visible to the user.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_cvariable (en, pn, var_list)

```



```

type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_name
type(string_t) :: var_name
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
type(pdg_array_t), target, save :: no_aval
logical, target, save :: unknown = .false.
if (debug) then
    print *, "read cvariable"; call parse_node_write (pn)
end if
pn_name => pn
var_name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_name, V_PDG, defined=.true.)
allocate (en)
if (associated (var)) then
    call eval_node_init_pdg_array_ptr &
        (en, var_entry_get_name (var), var_entry_get_aval_ptr (var), &
        var_entry_get_known_ptr (var))
else
    call parse_node_write (pn)
    call msg_error ("This PDG-array variable is undefined at this point")
    call eval_node_init_pdg_array_ptr (en, var_name, no_aval, unknown)
end if
if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done cvariable"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_cvariable

```

## String expressions

A string expression is either a string value or a concatenation of string values.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_sexpr (en, pn, var_list)
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_svalue, pn_concatenation, pn_op, pn_arg
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (debug) then
        print *, "read sexpr"; call parse_node_write (pn)
    end if
    pn_svalue => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
    call eval_node_compile_svalue (en, pn_svalue, var_list)
    pn_concatenation => &
        parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_svalue, tag="str_concatenation")
    do while (associated (pn_concatenation))
        pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_concatenation)
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op)
        en1 => en
        call eval_node_compile_svalue (en2, pn_arg, var_list)
    end do

```

```

allocate (en)
if (en1%type == EN_CONSTANT .and. en2%type == EN_CONSTANT) then
  call concat_ss (string, en1, en2)
  call eval_node_init_string (en, string)
  call eval_node_final_rec (en1)
  call eval_node_final_rec (en2)
  deallocate (en1, en2)
else
  call eval_node_init_branch &
    (en, var_str ("concat"), V_STR, en1, en2)
  call eval_node_set_op2_str (en, concat_ss)
end if
pn_concatenation => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_concatenation)
end do
if (debug) then
  call eval_node_write (en)
  print *, "done sexpr"
end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_sexpr

```

A string value is a string literal, a variable, a (grouped) sexpr, a block sexpr, or a conditional.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_svalue (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read svalue"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
  case ("svariable")
    call eval_node_compile_variable (en, pn, var_list, V_STR)
  case ("sexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en, pn, var_list)
  case ("block_sexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_block_expr (en, pn, var_list, V_STR)
  case ("conditional_sexpr")
    call eval_node_compile_conditional (en, pn, var_list, V_STR)
  case ("sprintf_fun")
    call eval_node_compile_sprintf (en, pn, var_list)
  case ("string_literal")
    allocate (en)
    call eval_node_init_string (en, parse_node_get_string (pn))
  case default
    call parse_node_mismatch &
      ("svariable|" // &
        "grouped_sexpr|block_sexpr|conditional_sexpr|" // &
        "string_function|string_literal", pn)
  end select
  if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done svalue"
  end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_svalue

```

```

end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_svalue

```

There is currently one string function, `sprintf`. For `sprintf`, the first argument (no brackets) is the format string, the optional arguments in brackets are the expressions or variables to be formatted.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_compile_sprintf (en, pn, var_list)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_clause, pn_key, pn_args
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg0
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en0, en1
  integer :: n_args
  type(string_t) :: key
  if (debug) then
    print *, "read sprintf_fun"; call parse_node_write (pn)
  end if
  pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
  pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause)
  pn_arg0 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
  call eval_node_compile_sexpr (en0, pn_arg0, var_list)
  if (associated (pn_args)) then
    call eval_node_compile_sprintf_args (en1, pn_args, var_list, n_args)
  else
    n_args = 0
    en1 => null ()
  end if
  allocate (en)
  key = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
  call eval_node_init_format_string (en, en0, en1, key, n_args)
  if (debug) then
    call eval_node_write (en)
    print *, "done sprintf_fun"
  end if
end subroutine eval_node_compile_sprintf

```

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eval_node_compile_sprintf_args (en, pn, var_list, n_args)
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  integer, intent(out) :: n_args
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
  integer :: i
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en1, en2
  n_args = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn)
  en => null ()
  do i = n_args, 1, -1
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, i)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_arg)))

```

```

case ("lvariable")
  call eval_node_compile_variable (en1, pn_arg, var_list, V_LOG)
case ("svariable")
  call eval_node_compile_variable (en1, pn_arg, var_list, V_STR)
case ("expr")
  call eval_node_compile_expr (en1, pn_arg, var_list)
case default
  call parse_node_mismatch ("variable|svariable|lvariable|expr", pn_arg)
end select
if (associated (en)) then
  en2 => en
  allocate (en)
  call eval_node_init_branch &
    (en, var_str ("sprintf_arg"), V_NONE, en1, en2)
else
  allocate (en)
  call eval_node_init_branch &
    (en, var_str ("sprintf_arg"), V_NONE, en1)
end if
end do
end subroutine eval_node_compile_sprintf_args

```

Evaluation. We allocate the argument list and apply the Fortran wrapper for the `sprintf` function.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine evaluate_sprintf (string, n_args, en_fmt, en_arg)
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
  integer, intent(in) :: n_args
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en_fmt
  type(eval_node_t), intent(in), optional, target :: en_arg
  type(eval_node_t), pointer :: en_branch, en_var
  type(sprintf_arg_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: arg
  type(string_t) :: fmt
  logical :: autoformat
  integer :: i, j, sprintf_argc
  autoformat = .not. associated (en_fmt)
  if (autoformat) fmt = ""
  if (present (en_arg)) then
    sprintf_argc = 0
    en_branch => en_arg
    do i = 1, n_args
      select case (en_branch%arg1%result_type)
        case (V_CMPLX); sprintf_argc = sprintf_argc + 2
        case default ; sprintf_argc = sprintf_argc + 1
      end select
      en_branch => en_branch%arg2
    end do
    allocate (arg (sprintf_argc))
    j = 1
    en_branch => en_arg
    do i = 1, n_args
      en_var => en_branch%arg1
      select case (en_var%result_type)

```

```

case (V_LOG)
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), en_var%lval)
    if (autoformat) fmt = fmt // "%s "
case (V_INT);
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), en_var%ival)
    if (autoformat) fmt = fmt // "%i "
case (V_REAL);
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), en_var%rval)
    if (autoformat) fmt = fmt // "%g "
case (V_STR)
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), en_var%sval)
    if (autoformat) fmt = fmt // "%s "
case (V_CMPLX)
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), real (en_var%cval, default))
    j = j + 1
    call sprintf_arg_init (arg(j), aimag (en_var%cval))
    if (autoformat) fmt = fmt // "(%g + %g * I) "
case default
    call eval_node_write (en_var)
    call msg_error ("sprintf is implemented " &
        // "for logical, integer, real, and string values only")
end select
j = j + 1
en_branch => en_branch%arg2
end do
else
    allocate (arg(0))
end if
if (autoformat) then
    string = sprintf (trim (fmt), arg)
else
    string = sprintf (en_fmt%sval, arg)
end if
end subroutine evaluate_sprintf

```

### 5.7.5 Auxiliary functions for the compiler

Issue an error that the current node could not be compiled because of type mismatch:

```

(Expressions: procedures) +=
subroutine eval_type_error (pn, string, t)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: pn
    character(*), intent(in) :: string
    integer, intent(in) :: t
    type(string_t) :: type
    select case (t)
    case (V_NONE); type = "(none)"
    case (V_LOG); type = "'logical'"
    case (V_INT); type = "'integer'"
    case (V_REAL); type = "'real'"
    case (V_CMPLX); type = "'complex'"
    case default; type = "(unknown)"

```

```

end select
call parse_node_write (pn)
call msg_fatal (" The " // string // &
               " operation is not defined for the given argument type " // &
               char (type))
end subroutine eval_type_error

```

If two numerics are combined, the result is integer if both arguments are integer, if one is integer and the other real or both are real, than its argument is real, otherwise complex.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

function numeric_result_type (t1, t2) result (t)
  integer, intent(in) :: t1, t2
  integer :: t
  if (t1 == V_INT .and. t2 == V_INT) then
    t = V_INT
  else if (t1 == V_INT .and. t2 == V_REAL) then
    t = V_REAL
  else if (t1 == V_REAL .and. t2 == V_INT) then
    t = V_REAL
  else if (t1 == V_REAL .and. t2 == V_REAL) then
    t = V_REAL
  else
    t = V_CMPLX
  end if
end function numeric_result_type

```

### 5.7.6 Evaluation

Evaluation is done recursively. For leaf nodes nothing is to be done.

Evaluating particle-list functions: First, we evaluate the particle lists. If a condition is present, we assign the particle pointers of the condition node to the allocated particle entries in the parent node, keeping in mind that the observables in the variable stack used for the evaluation of the condition also contain pointers to these entries. Then, the assigned procedure is evaluated, which sets the subevent in the parent node. If required, the procedure evaluates the condition node once for each (pair of) particles to determine the result.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

recursive subroutine eval_node_evaluate (en)
  type(eval_node_t), intent(inout) :: en
  logical :: exist
  select case (en%type)
  case (EN_UNARY)
    if (associated (en%arg1)) then
      call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
      en%value_is_known = en%arg1%value_is_known
    else
      en%value_is_known = .false.
    end if
  if (en%value_is_known) then
    select case (en%result_type)

```

```

        case (V_LOG); en%lval = en% op1_log (en%arg1)
        case (V_INT); en%ival = en% op1_int (en%arg1)
        case (V_REAL); en%rval = en% op1_real (en%arg1)
        case (V_CMPLX); en%cval = en% op1_cmplx (en%arg1)
        case (V_PDG);
            call en% op1_pdg (en%aval, en%arg1)
        case (V_SEV)
            if (associated (en%arg0)) then
                call en% op1_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg0)
            else
                call en% op1_sev (en%pval, en%arg1)
            end if
        case (V_STR)
            call en% op1_str (en%sval, en%arg1)
        end select
    end if
case (EN_BINARY)
    if (associated (en%arg1) .and. associated (en%arg2)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
        en%value_is_known = &
            en%arg1%value_is_known .and. en%arg2%value_is_known
    else
        en%value_is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        select case (en%result_type)
            case (V_LOG); en%lval = en% op2_log (en%arg1, en%arg2)
            case (V_INT); en%ival = en% op2_int (en%arg1, en%arg2)
            case (V_REAL); en%rval = en% op2_real (en%arg1, en%arg2)
            case (V_CMPLX); en%cval = en% op2_cmplx (en%arg1, en%arg2)
            case (V_PDG)
                call en% op2_pdg (en%aval, en%arg1, en%arg2)
            case (V_SEV)
                if (associated (en%arg0)) then
                    call en% op2_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0)
                else
                    call en% op2_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg2)
                end if
            case (V_STR)
                call en% op2_str (en%sval, en%arg1, en%arg2)
        end select
    end if
case (EN_BLOCK)
    if (associated (en%arg1) .and. associated (en%arg0)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg0)
        en%value_is_known = en%arg0%value_is_known
    else
        en%value_is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        select case (en%result_type)
            case (V_LOG); en%lval = en%arg0%lval

```

```

        case (V_INT);  en%ival = en%arg0%ival
        case (V_REAL); en%rval = en%arg0%rval
        case (V_CMPLX); en%cval = en%arg0%cval
        case (V_PDG);  en%aval = en%arg0%aval
        case (V_SEV);  en%pval = en%arg0%pval
        case (V_STR);  en%sval = en%arg0%sval
    end select
end if
case (EN_CONDITIONAL)
    if (associated (en%arg0)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg0)
        en%value_is_known = en%arg0%value_is_known
    else
        en%value_is_known = .false.
    end if
    if (en%arg0%value_is_known) then
        if (en%arg0%lval) then
            call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
            en%value_is_known = en%arg1%value_is_known
            if (en%value_is_known) then
                select case (en%result_type)
                    case (V_LOG);  en%lval = en%arg1%lval
                    case (V_INT);  en%ival = en%arg1%ival
                    case (V_REAL); en%rval = en%arg1%rval
                    case (V_CMPLX); en%cval = en%arg1%cval
                    case (V_PDG);  en%aval = en%arg1%aval
                    case (V_SEV);  en%pval = en%arg1%pval
                    case (V_STR);  en%sval = en%arg1%sval
                end select
            end if
        else
            call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
            en%value_is_known = en%arg2%value_is_known
            if (en%value_is_known) then
                select case (en%result_type)
                    case (V_LOG);  en%lval = en%arg2%lval
                    case (V_INT);  en%ival = en%arg2%ival
                    case (V_REAL); en%rval = en%arg2%rval
                    case (V_CMPLX); en%cval = en%arg2%cval
                    case (V_PDG);  en%aval = en%arg2%aval
                    case (V_SEV);  en%pval = en%arg2%pval
                    case (V_STR);  en%sval = en%arg2%sval
                end select
            end if
        end if
    end if
    ! call eval_node_write_rec (en)  !!! Debugging
case (EN_RECORD_CMD)
    exist = .true.
    en%lval = .false.
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg0)
    if (en%arg0%value_is_known) then
        if (associated (en%arg1)) then
            call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)

```



```

if (en%arg1%value_is_known) then
  if (associated (en%arg2)) then
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
    if (en%arg2%value_is_known) then
      if (associated (en%arg3)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg3)
        if (en%arg3%value_is_known) then
          if (associated (en%arg4)) then
            call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg4)
            if (en%arg4%value_is_known) then
              if (associated (en%rval)) then
                call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
                  en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
                  en%arg3%rval, en%arg4%rval, &
                  weight=en%rval, exist=exist, &
                  success=en%lval)
              else
                call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
                  en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
                  en%arg3%rval, en%arg4%rval, &
                  exist=exist, success=en%lval)
              end if
            end if
          end if
        else
          if (associated (en%rval)) then
            call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
              en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
              en%arg3%rval, &
              weight=en%rval, exist=exist, &
              success=en%lval)
          else
            call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
              en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
              en%arg3%rval, &
              exist=exist, success=en%lval)
          end if
        end if
      end if
    else
      if (associated (en%rval)) then
        call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
          en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
          en%arg3%rval, &
          weight=en%rval, exist=exist, &
          success=en%lval)
      else
        call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
          en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
          exist=exist, success=en%lval)
      end if
    end if
  end if
else
  if (associated (en%rval)) then
    call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
      en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
      weight=en%rval, exist=exist, &
      success=en%lval)
  else
    call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
      en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
      exist=exist, success=en%lval)
  end if
end if
end if
else
  if (associated (en%rval)) then
    call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
      en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
      weight=en%rval, exist=exist, &
      success=en%lval)
  else
    call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
      en%arg1%rval, en%arg2%rval, &
      exist=exist, success=en%lval)
  end if
end if
end if
else
  if (associated (en%rval)) then
    call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &

```

```

                                en%arg1%rval, &
                                weight=en%rval, exist=exist, success=en%lval)
        else
            call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, &
                                      en%arg1%rval, &
                                      exist=exist, success=en%lval)
        end if
    end if
end if
else
    if (associated (en%rval)) then
        call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, 1._default, &
                                    weight=en%rval, exist=exist, success=en%lval)
    else
        call analysis_record_data (en%arg0%sval, 1._default, &
                                    exist=exist, success=en%lval)
    end if
end if
if (.not. exist) then
    call msg_error ("Analysis object '" // char (en%arg0%sval) &
                  // "' is undefined")
    en%arg0%value_is_known = .false.
end if
end if
case (EN_OBS1_INT)
    en%ival = en% obs1_int (en%prt1)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_OBS2_INT)
    en%ival = en% obs2_int (en%prt1, en%prt2)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_OBS1_REAL)
    en%rval = en% obs1_real (en%prt1)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_OBS2_REAL)
    en%rval = en% obs2_real (en%prt1, en%prt2)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_UOBS1_INT)
    en%ival = user_obs_int_p (en%arg0, en%prt1)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_UOBS2_INT)
    en%ival = user_obs_int_pp (en%arg0, en%prt1, en%prt2)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_UOBS1_REAL)
    en%rval = user_obs_real_p (en%arg0, en%prt1)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_UOBS2_REAL)
    en%rval = user_obs_real_pp (en%arg0, en%prt1, en%prt2)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
case (EN_PRT_FUN_UNARY)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
    en%value_is_known = en%arg1%value_is_known
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        if (associated (en%arg0)) then
            en%arg0%index => en%index

```

```

        en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
        call en% op1_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg0)
    else
        call en% op1_sev (en%pval, en%arg1)
    end if
end if
case (EN_PRT_FUN_BINARY)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
    en%value_is_known = &
        en%arg1%value_is_known .and. en%arg2%value_is_known
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        if (associated (en%arg0)) then
            en%arg0%index => en%index
            en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
            en%arg0%prt2 => en%prt2
            call en% op2_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0)
        else
            call en% op2_sev (en%pval, en%arg1, en%arg2)
        end if
    end if
case (EN_EVAL_FUN_UNARY)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
    en%value_is_known = subevt_is_nonempty (en%arg1%pval)
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        en%arg0%index => en%index
        en%index = 1
        en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
        en%prt1 = subevt_get_prt (en%arg1%pval, 1)
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg0)
        en%rval = en%arg0%rval
    end if
case (EN_EVAL_FUN_BINARY)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
    en%value_is_known = &
        subevt_is_nonempty (en%arg1%pval) .and. &
        subevt_is_nonempty (en%arg2%pval)
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        en%arg0%index => en%index
        en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
        en%arg0%prt2 => en%prt2
        en%index = 1
        call eval_pp (en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0, en%rval, en%value_is_known)
    end if
case (EN_LOG_FUN_UNARY)
    call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
    en%value_is_known = .true.
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        en%arg0%index => en%index
        en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
        en%lval = en% op1_cut (en%arg1, en%arg0)
    end if
case (EN_LOG_FUN_BINARY)

```

```

call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
en%value_is_known = .true.
if (en%value_is_known) then
  en%arg0%index => en%index
  en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
  en%arg0%prt2 => en%prt2
  en%lval = en% op2_cut (en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0)
end if
case (EN_INT_FUN_UNARY)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
  en%value_is_known = en%arg1%value_is_known
  if (en%value_is_known) then
    if (associated (en%arg0)) then
      en%arg0%index => en%index
      en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
      call en% op1_evi (en%ival, en%arg1, en%arg0)
    else
      call en% op1_evi (en%ival, en%arg1)
    end if
  end if
case (EN_INT_FUN_BINARY)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
  en%value_is_known = &
    en%arg1%value_is_known .and. &
    en%arg2%value_is_known
  if (en%value_is_known) then
    if (associated (en%arg0)) then
      en%arg0%index => en%index
      en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
      en%arg0%prt2 => en%prt2
      call en% op2_evi (en%ival, en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0)
    else
      call en% op2_evi (en%ival, en%arg1, en%arg2)
    end if
  end if
case (EN_REAL_FUN_UNARY)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
  en%value_is_known = en%arg1%value_is_known
  if (en%value_is_known) then
    if (associated (en%arg0)) then
      en%arg0%index => en%index
      en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
      call en% op1_evr (en%rval, en%arg1, en%arg0)
    else
      call en% op1_evr (en%rval, en%arg1)
    end if
  end if
case (EN_REAL_FUN_BINARY)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
  call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg2)
  en%value_is_known = &
    en%arg1%value_is_known .and. &

```

```

        en%arg2%value_is_known
    if (en%value_is_known) then
        if (associated (en%arg0)) then
            en%arg0%index => en%index
            en%arg0%prt1 => en%prt1
            en%arg0%prt2 => en%prt2
            call en% op2_evr (en%rval, en%arg1, en%arg2, en%arg0)
        else
            call en% op2_evr (en%rval, en%arg1, en%arg2)
        end if
    end if
case (EN_FORMAT_STR)
    if (associated (en%arg0)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg0)
        en%value_is_known = en%arg0%value_is_known
    else
        en%value_is_known = .true.
    end if
    if (associated (en%arg1)) then
        call eval_node_evaluate (en%arg1)
        en%value_is_known = &
            en%value_is_known .and. en%arg1%value_is_known
        if (en%value_is_known) then
            call evaluate_sprintf (en%sval, en%ival, en%arg0, en%arg1)
        end if
    else
        if (en%value_is_known) then
            call evaluate_sprintf (en%sval, en%ival, en%arg0)
        end if
    end if
end select
if (debug) then
    print *, "evaluated"
    call eval_node_write (en)
end if
end subroutine eval_node_evaluate

```

### 5.7.7 Evaluation syntax

We have two different flavors of the syntax: with and without particles.

```

<Expressions: variables>+≡
    type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_expr
    type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_pexpr

```

These are for testing only and may be removed:

```

<Expressions: public>≡
    public :: syntax_expr_init
    public :: syntax_pexpr_init

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_expr_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile

```

```

        call define_expr_syntax (ifile, particles=.false., analysis=.false.)
        call syntax_init (syntax_expr, ifile)
        call ifile_final (ifile)
    end subroutine syntax_expr_init

    subroutine syntax_pexpr_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        call define_expr_syntax (ifile, particles=.true., analysis=.false.)
        call syntax_init (syntax_pexpr, ifile)
        call ifile_final (ifile)
    end subroutine syntax_pexpr_init

    <Expressions: public>+≡
        public :: syntax_expr_final
        public :: syntax_pexpr_final

    <Expressions: procedures>+≡
        subroutine syntax_expr_final ()
            call syntax_final (syntax_expr)
        end subroutine syntax_expr_final

        subroutine syntax_pexpr_final ()
            call syntax_final (syntax_pexpr)
        end subroutine syntax_pexpr_final

    <Expressions: public>+≡
        public :: syntax_pexpr_write

    <Expressions: procedures>+≡
        subroutine syntax_pexpr_write (unit)
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
            call syntax_write (syntax_pexpr, unit)
        end subroutine syntax_pexpr_write

    <Expressions: public>+≡
        public :: define_expr_syntax

    Numeric expressions.

    <Expressions: procedures>+≡
        subroutine define_expr_syntax (ifile, particles, analysis)
            type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
            logical, intent(in) :: particles, analysis
            type(string_t) :: numeric_pexpr
            type(string_t) :: var_plist, var_alias
            if (particles) then
                numeric_pexpr = " | numeric_pexpr"
                var_plist = " | var_plist"
                var_alias = " | var_alias"
            else
                numeric_pexpr = ""
                var_plist = ""
                var_alias = ""
            end if
            call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ expr = subexpr addition*")

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT subexpr = addition | term")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ addition = plus_or_minus term")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ term = factor multiplication*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ multiplication = times_or_over factor")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ factor = value exponentiation?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ exponentiation = to_the value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT plus_or_minus = '+' | '-'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT times_or_over = '*' | '/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT to_the = '^' | '**")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '-'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '*'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '^'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '**")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT value = signed_value | unsigned_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ signed_value = '-' unsigned_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT unsigned_value = " // &
    "numeric_value | constant | variable | " // &
    "result | user_observable | " // &
    "grouped_expr | block_expr | conditional_expr | " // &
    "unary_function | binary_function" // &
    numeric_pexpr)
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT numeric_value = integer_value | " &
    // "real_value | complex_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ integer_value = integer_literal unit_expr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ real_value = real_literal unit_expr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ complex_value = complex_literal unit_expr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "INT integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "REA real_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "COM complex_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ unit_expr = unit unit_power?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT unit = " // &
    "TeV | GeV | MeV | keV | eV | meV | " // &
    "nbarn | pbarn | fbarn | abarn | " // &
    "rad | mrad | degree | '%")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY TeV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY GeV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY MeV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY keV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY eV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY meV")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY nbarn")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY pbarn")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY fbarn")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY abarn")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY rad")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY mrad")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY degree")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '%")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ unit_power = '^' frac_expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT frac_expr = frac | grouped_frac")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_frac = ( frac_expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ frac = signed_int div?")

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT signed_int = " &
    // "neg_int | pos_int | integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ neg_int = '-' integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pos_int = '+' integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ div = '/' integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT constant = pi | I")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY pi")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY I")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE variable")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ result = result_key result_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT result_key = " // &
    "num_id | integral | error")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ user_observable = user_obs user_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY user_obs")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG user_arg = ( sexpr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY num_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY integral")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY error")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO result_arg = ( process_id )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE process_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ unary_function = fun_unary function_arg1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ binary_function = fun_binary function_arg2")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT fun_unary = " // &
    "complex | real | int | nint | floor | ceiling | abs | sgn | " // &
    "sqrt | exp | log | log10 | " // &
    "sin | cos | tan | asin | acos | atan | " // &
    "sinh | cosh | tanh")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY complex")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY real")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY int")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY nint")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY floor")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY ceiling")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY abs")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sgn")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sqrt")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY exp")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY log")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY log10")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sin")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY cos")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY tan")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY asin")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY acos")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY atan")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sinh")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY cosh")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY tanh")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT fun_binary = max | min | mod | modulo")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY max")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY min")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY mod")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY modulo")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG function_arg1 = ( expr )")

```



```

call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG function_arg2 = ( expr, expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_expr = ( expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_expr = let var_spec in expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY let")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT var_spec = " // &
    "var_num | var_int | var_real | var_complex | " // &
    "var_logical" // var_plist // var_alias // " | var_string")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_num = var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_int = int var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_real = real var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_complex = complex var_name '=' complex_expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT complex_expr = " // &
    "cexpr_real | cexpr_complex")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG cexpr_complex = ( expr, expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cexpr_real = expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE var_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '='")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY in")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ conditional_expr = " // &
    "if lexpr then expr maybe_elseif_expr maybe_else_expr endif")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_elseif_expr = elseif_expr*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_else_expr = else_expr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elseif_expr = elseif lexpr then expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_expr = else expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY if")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY then")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY elseif")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY else")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY endif")
call define_lexpr_syntax (ifile, particles, analysis)
call define_sexpr_syntax (ifile)
if (particles) then
    call define_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
    call define_cexpr_syntax (ifile)
    call define_var_plist_syntax (ifile)
    call define_var_alias_syntax (ifile)
    call define_numeric_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
    call define_logical_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
end if

end subroutine define_expr_syntax

```

Logical expressions.

*(Expressions: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine define_lexpr_syntax (ifile, particles, analysis)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    logical, intent(in) :: particles, analysis
    type(string_t) :: logical_pexpr, record_cmd
    if (particles) then
        logical_pexpr = " | logical_pexpr"
    else
        logical_pexpr = ""
    end if
    if (analysis) then

```

```

        record_cmd = " | record_cmd"
    else
        record_cmd = ""
    end if
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ lexpr = lsinglet lsequel*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ lsequel = ';' lsinglet")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ lsinglet = lterm alternative*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ alternative = or lterm")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ lterm = lvalue coincidence*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ coincidence = and lvalue")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY ';'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY or")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY and")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT lvalue = " // &
        "true | false | lvariable | negation | " // &
        "grouped_lexpr | block_lexpr | conditional_lexpr | " // &
        "compared_expr | compared_sexpr" // &
        logical_pexpr // record_cmd)
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY true")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY false")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ lvariable = '?' alt_lvariable")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '?'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT alt_lvariable = variable | grouped_lexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ negation = not lvalue")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY not")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_lexpr = ( lexpr )")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_lexpr = let var_spec in lexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT var_logical = " // &
        "var_logical_new | var_logical_spec")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_logical_new = logical var_logical_spec")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY logical")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_logical_spec = '?' var_name = lexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ conditional_lexpr = " // &
        "if lexpr then lexpr maybe_elseif_lexpr maybe_else_lexpr endif")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_elseif_lexpr = elseif_lexpr*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_else_lexpr = else_lexpr?")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elseif_lexpr = elseif lexpr then lexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_lexpr = else lexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ compared_expr = expr comparison+")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ comparison = compare expr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT compare = " // &
        "< | > | <= | >= | == | <>")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '<'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '>'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '<='")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '>='")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '=='")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '<>'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ compared_sexpr = sexpr str_comparison+")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ str_comparison = str_compare sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT str_compare = '==' | '<>'")
    if (analysis) then
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ record_cmd = " // &
            "record_key analysis_tag record_arg?")
    end if

```

```

    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT record_key = " // &
        "record | record_unweighted | record_excess")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY record")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY record_unweighted")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY record_excess")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT analysis_tag = analysis_id | sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE analysis_id")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG record_arg = ( expr+ )")
end if
end subroutine define_lexpr_syntax

```

String expressions.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_sexpr_syntax (ifile)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sexpr = svalue str_concatenation*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ str_concatenation = '&' svalue")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '&'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT svalue = " // &
        "grouped_sexpr | block_sexpr | conditional_sexpr | " // &
        "svariable | string_function | string_literal")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_sexpr = ( sexpr )")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_sexpr = let var_spec in sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ conditional_sexpr = " // &
        "if lexpr then sexpr maybe_elseif_sexpr maybe_else_sexpr endif")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_elseif_sexpr = elseif_sexpr*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_else_sexpr = else_sexpr?")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elseif_sexpr = elseif lexpr then sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_sexpr = else sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ svariable = '$' alt_svariable")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '$'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT alt_svariable = variable | grouped_sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT var_string = " // &
        "var_string_new | var_string_spec")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_string_new = string var_string_spec")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY string")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_string_spec = '$' var_name = sexpr") ! $
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT string_function = sprintf_fun")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sprintf_fun = sprintf_clause sprintf_args?")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sprintf_clause = sprintf sexpr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sprintf")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG sprintf_args = ( sprintf_arg* )")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT sprintf_arg = " &
        "// "lvariable | svariable | expr")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO string_literal = '""'...'""'")
end subroutine define_sexpr_syntax

```

Expressions that evaluate to subevents.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
    type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pexpr = pterm pconcatenation*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pconcatenation = '&' pterm")

```

```

! call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '&'" )   !!! (Key exists already)
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pterm = pvalue pcombination*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pcombination = '+' pvalue")
! call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")   !!! (Key exists already)
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT pvalue = " // &
    "pexpr_src | pvariable | " // &
    "grouped_pexpr | block_pexpr | conditional_pexpr | " // &
    "prt_function")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pexpr_src = prefix_cexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT prefix_cexpr = " // &
    "incoming_prt | outgoing_prt")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ incoming_prt = incoming cexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY incoming")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ outgoing_prt = cexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pvariable = '@' alt_pvariable")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '@'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT alt_pvariable = variable | grouped_pexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_pexpr = '[' pexpr ']'" )
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_pexpr = let var_spec in pexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ conditional_pexpr = " // &
    "if lexpr then pexpr maybe_elseif_pexpr maybe_else_pexpr endif")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_elseif_pexpr = elseif_pexpr*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_else_pexpr = else_pexpr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elseif_pexpr = elseif lexpr then pexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_pexpr = else pexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT prt_function = " // &
    "join_fun | combine_fun | collect_fun | cluster_fun | " // &
    "select_fun | extract_fun | sort_fun")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ join_fun = join_clause pargs2")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ combine_fun = combine_clause pargs2")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ collect_fun = collect_clause pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cluster_fun = cluster_clause pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ select_fun = select_clause pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ extract_fun = extract_clause pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sort_fun = sort_clause pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ join_clause = join condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ combine_clause = combine condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ collect_clause = collect condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cluster_clause = cluster condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ select_clause = select condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ extract_clause = extract position?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sort_clause = sort criterion?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY join")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY combine")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY collect")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY cluster")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY select")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ condition = if lexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY extract")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ position = index expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sort")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ criterion = by expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY index")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY by")

```

```

    call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG pargs2 = '[' pexpr, pexpr ']'")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG pargs1 = '[' pexpr, pexpr? ']'")
end subroutine define_pexpr_syntax

```

Expressions that evaluate to PDG-code arrays.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_cexpr_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cexpr = avalue concatenation*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ concatenation = ':' avalue")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY ':'")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT avalue = " // &
    "grouped_cexpr | block_cexpr | conditional_cexpr | " // &
    "variable | pdg_code | prt_name")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_cexpr = ( cexpr )")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_cexpr = let var_spec in cexpr")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ conditional_cexpr = " // &
    "if lexpr then cexpr maybe_elseif_cexpr maybe_else_cexpr endif")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_elseif_cexpr = elseif_cexpr*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ maybe_else_cexpr = else_cexpr?")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elseif_cexpr = elseif lexpr then cexpr")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_cexpr = else cexpr")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pdg_code = pdg pdg_arg")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY pdg")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG pdg_arg = ( expr )")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO prt_name = '""'... '""'")
end subroutine define_cexpr_syntax

```

Extra variable types.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_var_plist_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT var_plist = var_plist_new | var_plist_spec")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_plist_new = subevt var_plist_spec")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY subevt")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_plist_spec = '@' var_name '=' pexpr")
end subroutine define_var_plist_syntax

subroutine define_var_alias_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ var_alias = alias var_name '=' cexpr")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY alias")
end subroutine define_var_alias_syntax

```

Particle-list expressions that evaluate to numeric values

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_numeric_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT numeric_pexpr = " &
    "// "eval_fun | count_fun | event_shape_fun")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ eval_fun = eval expr pargs1")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ count_fun = count_clause pargs1")

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ count_clause = count condition?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY eval")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY count")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT event_shape_fun = user_event_fun")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ user_event_fun = " &
    // "user_event_shape user_arg pargs1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY user_event_shape")
end subroutine define_numeric_pexpr_syntax

```

Particle-list functions that evaluate to logical values.

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine define_logical_pexpr_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT logical_pexpr = " // &
    "all_fun | any_fun | no_fun | user_cut_fun")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ all_fun = all lexpr pargs1")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ any_fun = any lexpr pargs1")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ no_fun = no lexpr pargs1")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY all")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY any")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY no")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ user_cut_fun = user_cut user_arg pargs1")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY user_cut")
end subroutine define_logical_pexpr_syntax

```

All characters that can occur in expressions (apart from alphanumeric).

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, particles)
  type(lexer_t), intent(out) :: lexer
  logical, intent(in) :: particles
  type(keyword_list_t), pointer :: keyword_list
  if (particles) then
    keyword_list => syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_pexpr)
  else
    keyword_list => syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_expr)
  end if
  call lexer_init (lexer, &
    comment_chars = "#!", &
    quote_chars = "'", &
    quote_match = "'", &
    single_chars = "()[];:&%?${}@", &
    special_class = (/ "+-*/^", "<>=~ " /) , &
    keyword_list = keyword_list)
end subroutine lexer_init_eval_tree

```

### 5.7.8 Set up appropriate parse trees

Parse an input stream as a specific flavor of expression. The appropriate expression syntax has to be available.

*(Expressions: public)*+≡

```

public :: parse_tree_init_expr

```

```

public :: parse_tree_init_lexpr
public :: parse_tree_init_pexpr
public :: parse_tree_init_cexpr
public :: parse_tree_init_sexpr

```

*(Expressions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine parse_tree_init_expr (parse_tree, stream, particles)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  logical, intent(in) :: particles
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  call lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, particles)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  if (particles) then
    call parse_tree_init &
      (parse_tree, syntax_pexpr, lexer, var_str ("expr"))
  else
    call parse_tree_init &
      (parse_tree, syntax_expr, lexer, var_str ("expr"))
  end if
  call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_tree_init_expr

subroutine parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, particles)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  logical, intent(in) :: particles
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  call lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, particles)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  if (particles) then
    call parse_tree_init &
      (parse_tree, syntax_pexpr, lexer, var_str ("lexpr"))
  else
    call parse_tree_init &
      (parse_tree, syntax_expr, lexer, var_str ("lexpr"))
  end if
  call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_tree_init_lexpr

subroutine parse_tree_init_pexpr (parse_tree, stream)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  call lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, .true.)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  call parse_tree_init &
    (parse_tree, syntax_pexpr, lexer, var_str ("pexpr"))
  call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_tree_init_pexpr

subroutine parse_tree_init_cexpr (parse_tree, stream)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer

```

```

    call lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, .true.)
    call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
    call parse_tree_init &
        (parse_tree, syntax_pexpr, lexer, var_str ("cexpr"))
    call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_tree_init_cexpr

subroutine parse_tree_init_sexpr (parse_tree, stream, particles)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
    type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
    logical, intent(in) :: particles
    type(lexer_t) :: lexer
    call lexer_init_eval_tree (lexer, particles)
    call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
    if (particles) then
        call parse_tree_init &
            (parse_tree, syntax_pexpr, lexer, var_str ("sepr"))
    else
        call parse_tree_init &
            (parse_tree, syntax_expr, lexer, var_str ("sepr"))
    end if
    call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_tree_init_sexpr

```

### 5.7.9 The evaluation tree

The evaluation tree contains the initial variable list and the root node.

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
    public :: eval_tree_t

<Expressions: types>+≡
    type :: eval_tree_t
    private
    type(var_list_t) :: var_list
    type(eval_node_t), pointer :: root => null ()
contains
    <Expressions: eval tree: TBP>
end type eval_tree_t

```

Init from stream, using a temporary parse tree.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eval_tree_init_stream &
        (eval_tree, stream, var_list, subvt, result_type)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), target, optional :: subvt
    integer, intent(in), optional :: result_type
    type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_root
    integer :: type
    type = V_REAL; if (present (result_type)) type = result_type

```



```

select case (type)
case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
    call parse_tree_init_expr (parse_tree, stream, present (subevt))
case (V_LOG)
    call parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, present (subevt))
case (V_SEV)
    call parse_tree_init_pexpr (parse_tree, stream)
case (V_PDG)
    call parse_tree_init_cexpr (parse_tree, stream)
case (V_STR)
    call parse_tree_init_sexpr (parse_tree, stream, present (subevt))
end select
nd_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)
if (associated (nd_root)) then
    select case (type)
    case (V_INT, V_REAL, V_CMPLX)
        call eval_tree_init_expr (eval_tree, nd_root, var_list, subevt)
    case (V_LOG)
        call eval_tree_init_lexpr (eval_tree, nd_root, var_list, subevt)
    case (V_SEV)
        call eval_tree_init_pexpr (eval_tree, nd_root, var_list, subevt)
    case (V_PDG)
        call eval_tree_init_cexpr (eval_tree, nd_root, var_list, subevt)
    case (V_STR)
        call eval_tree_init_sexpr (eval_tree, nd_root, var_list, subevt)
    end select
end if
call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_stream

```

API: Init from a given parse-tree node. If we evaluate an expression that contains particle-list references, the original subevent has to be supplied. The initial variable list is optional.

*(Expressions: public)+≡*

```

public :: eval_tree_init_expr
public :: eval_tree_init_lexpr
public :: eval_tree_init_pexpr
public :: eval_tree_init_cexpr
public :: eval_tree_init_sexpr

```

*(Expressions: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine eval_tree_init_expr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
    call eval_tree_set_var_list (eval_tree, var_list, subevt)
    call eval_node_compile_expr &
        (eval_tree%root, parse_node, eval_tree%var_list)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_expr

subroutine eval_tree_init_lexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)

```

```

    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    call eval_tree_set_var_list (eval_tree, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_node_compile_lexpr &
        (eval_tree%root, parse_node, eval_tree%var_list)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_lexpr

subroutine eval_tree_init_pexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subvt)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    call eval_tree_set_var_list (eval_tree, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_node_compile_pexpr &
        (eval_tree%root, parse_node, eval_tree%var_list)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_pexpr

subroutine eval_tree_init_cexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subvt)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    call eval_tree_set_var_list (eval_tree, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_node_compile_cexpr &
        (eval_tree%root, parse_node, eval_tree%var_list)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_cexpr

subroutine eval_tree_init_sexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subvt)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    call eval_tree_set_var_list (eval_tree, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_node_compile_sexpr &
        (eval_tree%root, parse_node, eval_tree%var_list)
end subroutine eval_tree_init_sexpr

```

This extra API function handles numerical constant expressions only. The only nontrivial part is the optional unit.

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
    public :: eval_tree_init_numeric_value

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eval_tree_init_numeric_value (eval_tree, parse_node)
        type(eval_tree_t), intent(out), target :: eval_tree
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
        call eval_node_compile_numeric_value (eval_tree%root, parse_node)
    end subroutine eval_tree_init_numeric_value

```

Initialize the variable list with the initial one; if a particle list is provided, add a pointer to this as variable @evt. If the event weight is provided as a real-valued target, add a pointer to it as well.

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eval_tree_set_var_list &
    (eval_tree, var_list, subevt)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(inout), target :: eval_tree
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
    logical, save, target :: known = .true.
    call var_list_link (eval_tree%var_list, var_list)
    if (present (subevt)) call var_list_append_subevt_ptr &
      (eval_tree%var_list, var_str ("@evt"), subevt, known, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
  end subroutine eval_tree_set_var_list

```

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
  public :: eval_tree_final

```

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(inout) :: eval_tree
    call var_list_final (eval_tree%var_list)
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
      call eval_node_final_rec (eval_tree%root)
      deallocate (eval_tree%root)
    end if
  end subroutine eval_tree_final

```

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
  public :: eval_tree_evaluate

```

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(inout) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
      call eval_node_evaluate (eval_tree%root)
    end if
  end subroutine eval_tree_evaluate

```

Check if the eval tree is allocated.

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
  public :: eval_tree_is_defined

```

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
  function eval_tree_is_defined (eval_tree) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    flag = associated (eval_tree%root)
  end function eval_tree_is_defined

```

Check if the eval tree result is constant.

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
  public :: eval_tree_is_constant

```

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
function eval_tree_is_constant (eval_tree) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
  if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
    flag = eval_tree%root%type == EN_CONSTANT
  else
    flag = .false.
  end if
end function eval_tree_is_constant

```

Insert a conversion node at the root, if necessary (only for real/int conversion)

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
public :: eval_tree_convert_result

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
subroutine eval_tree_convert_result (eval_tree, result_type)
  type(eval_tree_t), intent(inout) :: eval_tree
  integer, intent(in) :: result_type
  if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
    call insert_conversion_node (eval_tree%root, result_type)
  end if
end subroutine eval_tree_convert_result

```

Return the value of the top node, after evaluation. If the tree is empty, return the type of V\_NONE. When extracting the value, no check for existence is done. For numeric values, the functions are safe against real/integer mismatch.

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
public :: eval_tree_get_result_type
public :: eval_tree_result_is_known
public :: eval_tree_result_is_known_ptr
public :: eval_tree_get_log
public :: eval_tree_get_int
public :: eval_tree_get_real
public :: eval_tree_get_cmplx
public :: eval_tree_get_pdg_array
public :: eval_tree_get_subevt
public :: eval_tree_get_string

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
function eval_tree_get_result_type (eval_tree) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
  if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
    type = eval_tree%root%result_type
  else
    type = V_NONE
  end if
end function eval_tree_get_result_type

function eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
  if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then

```

```

        select case (eval_tree%root%result_type)
        case (V_LOG, V_INT, V_REAL)
            flag = eval_tree%root%value_is_known
        case default
            flag = .true.
        end select
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function eval_tree_result_is_known

function eval_tree_result_is_known_ptr (eval_tree) result (ptr)
    logical, pointer :: ptr
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    logical, target, save :: known = .true.
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        select case (eval_tree%root%result_type)
        case (V_LOG, V_INT, V_REAL)
            ptr => eval_tree%root%value_is_known
        case default
            ptr => known
        end select
    else
        ptr => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_result_is_known_ptr

function eval_tree_get_log (eval_tree) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) lval = eval_tree%root%lval
end function eval_tree_get_log

function eval_tree_get_int (eval_tree) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        select case (eval_tree%root%result_type)
        case (V_INT); ival = eval_tree%root%ival
        case (V_REAL); ival = eval_tree%root%rval
        case (V_CMPLX); ival = eval_tree%root%cval
        end select
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_int

function eval_tree_get_real (eval_tree) result (rval)
    real(default) :: rval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        select case (eval_tree%root%result_type)
        case (V_REAL); rval = eval_tree%root%rval
        case (V_INT); rval = eval_tree%root%ival
        case (V_CMPLX); rval = eval_tree%root%cval
        end select
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_real

```

```

        end if
    end function eval_tree_get_real

function eval_tree_get_cmplx (eval_tree) result (cval)
    complex(default) :: cval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        select case (eval_tree%root%result_type)
            case (V_CMPLX); cval = eval_tree%root%cval
            case (V_REAL); cval = eval_tree%root%rval
            case (V_INT); cval = eval_tree%root%ival
        end select
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_cmplx

function eval_tree_get_pdg_array (eval_tree) result (aval)
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        aval = eval_tree%root%aval
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_pdg_array

function eval_tree_get_subevt (eval_tree) result (pval)
    type(subevt_t) :: pval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        pval = eval_tree%root%pval
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_subevt

function eval_tree_get_string (eval_tree) result (sval)
    type(string_t) :: sval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        sval = eval_tree%root%sval
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_string

```

Return a pointer to the value of the top node.

*(Expressions: public)* +=

```

    public :: eval_tree_get_log_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_int_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_real_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_cmplx_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_subevt_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_pdg_array_ptr
    public :: eval_tree_get_string_ptr

```

*(Expressions: procedures)* +=

```

function eval_tree_get_log_ptr (eval_tree) result (lval)
    logical, pointer :: lval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then

```

```

        lval => eval_tree%root%lval
    else
        lval => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_log_ptr

function eval_tree_get_int_ptr (eval_tree) result (ival)
    integer, pointer :: ival
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        ival => eval_tree%root%ival
    else
        ival => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_int_ptr

function eval_tree_get_real_ptr (eval_tree) result (rval)
    real(default), pointer :: rval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        rval => eval_tree%root%rval
    else
        rval => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_real_ptr

function eval_tree_get_cmplx_ptr (eval_tree) result (cval)
    complex(default), pointer :: cval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        cval => eval_tree%root%cval
    else
        cval => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_cmplx_ptr

function eval_tree_get_subevt_ptr (eval_tree) result (pval)
    type(subevt_t), pointer :: pval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        pval => eval_tree%root%pval
    else
        pval => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_subevt_ptr

function eval_tree_get_pdg_array_ptr (eval_tree) result (aval)
    type(pdg_array_t), pointer :: aval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        aval => eval_tree%root%aval
    else
        aval => null ()
    end if
end if

```

```

end function eval_tree_get_pdg_array_ptr

function eval_tree_get_string_ptr (eval_tree) result (sval)
    type(string_t), pointer :: sval
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        sval => eval_tree%root%sval
    else
        sval => null ()
    end if
end function eval_tree_get_string_ptr

```

*<Expressions: public>+≡*

```
public :: eval_tree_write
```

*<Expressions: eval tree: TBP>≡*

```
procedure :: write => eval_tree_write
```

*<Expressions: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine eval_tree_write (eval_tree, unit, write_var_list)
    class(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: write_var_list
    integer :: u
    logical :: vl
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    vl = .false.; if (present (write_var_list)) vl = write_var_list
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Evaluation tree:"
    if (associated (eval_tree%root)) then
        call eval_node_write_rec (eval_tree%root, unit)
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[empty]"
    end if
    if (vl) call var_list_write (eval_tree%var_list, unit)
end subroutine eval_tree_write

```

Use the written representation for generating an MD5 sum:

*<Expressions: public>+≡*

```
public :: eval_tree_get_md5sum
```

*<Expressions: procedures>+≡*

```

function eval_tree_get_md5sum (eval_tree) result (md5sum_et)
    character(32) :: md5sum_et
    type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree
    integer :: u
    u = free_unit ()
    open (unit = u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
    call eval_tree_write (eval_tree, unit=u)
    rewind (u)
    md5sum_et = md5sum (u)
    close (u)
end function eval_tree_get_md5sum

```



### 5.7.10 Direct evaluation

These procedures create an eval tree and evaluate it on-the-fly, returning only the final value. The evaluation must yield a well-defined value, unless the `is_known` flag is present, which will be set accordingly.

```
(Expressions: public)+≡
  public :: eval_log
  public :: eval_int
  public :: eval_real
  public :: eval_cmplx
  public :: eval_subvt
  public :: eval_pdg_array
  public :: eval_string

(Expressions: procedures)+≡
  function eval_log &
    (parse_node, var_list, subvt, is_known) result (lval)
    logical :: lval
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
    type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
    call eval_tree_init_lexpr &
      (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
      if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
      lval = eval_tree_get_log (eval_tree)
    else if (present (is_known)) then
      is_known = .false.
    else
      call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
      lval = .false.
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
  end function eval_log

  function eval_int &
    (parse_node, var_list, subvt, is_known) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subvt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subvt
    logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
    type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
    call eval_tree_init_expr &
      (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subvt)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
      if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
      ival = eval_tree_get_int (eval_tree)
    else if (present (is_known)) then
      is_known = .false.
    else
      ival = 0
    end if
  end function eval_int
```

```

        call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
        ival = 0
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_int

function eval_real &
    (parse_node, var_list, subevt, is_known) result (rval)
    real(default) :: rval
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
    logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
    type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
    call eval_tree_init_expr &
        (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
        if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
        rval = eval_tree_get_real (eval_tree)
    else if (present (is_known)) then
        is_known = .false.
    else
        call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
        rval = 0
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_real

function eval_cplx &
    (parse_node, var_list, subevt, is_known) result (cval)
    complex(default) :: cval
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
    logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
    type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
    call eval_tree_init_expr &
        (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
        if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
        cval = eval_tree_get_cplx (eval_tree)
    else if (present (is_known)) then
        is_known = .false.
    else
        call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
        cval = 0
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_cplx

function eval_subevt &
    (parse_node, var_list, subevt, is_known) result (pval)

```

```

type(subevt_t) :: pval
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
call eval_tree_init_pexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
    if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
    pval = eval_tree_get_subevt (eval_tree)
else if (present (is_known)) then
    is_known = .false.
else
    call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
end if
call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_subevt

function eval_pdg_array &
    (parse_node, var_list, subevt, is_known) result (aval)
type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
call eval_tree_init_cexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
    if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
    aval = eval_tree_get_pdg_array (eval_tree)
else if (present (is_known)) then
    is_known = .false.
else
    call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
end if
call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_pdg_array

function eval_string &
    (parse_node, var_list, subevt, is_known) result (sval)
type(string_t) :: sval
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
call eval_tree_init_sexpr &
    (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then

```

```

        if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
        sval = eval_tree_get_string (eval_tree)
    else if (present (is_known)) then
        is_known = .false.
    else
        call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
        sval = ""
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
end function eval_string

```

Here is a variant that returns numeric values of all possible kinds, the appropriate kind to be selected later:

```

<Expressions: public>+≡
    public :: eval_numeric

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eval_numeric &
        (parse_node, var_list, subevt, ival, rval, cval, &
         is_known, result_type)
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: parse_node
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
        type(subevt_t), intent(in), optional, target :: subevt
        integer, intent(out), optional :: ival
        real(default), intent(out), optional :: rval
        complex(default), intent(out), optional :: cval
        logical, intent(out), optional :: is_known
        integer, intent(out), optional :: result_type
        type(eval_tree_t), target :: eval_tree
        call eval_tree_init_expr &
            (eval_tree, parse_node, var_list, subevt)
        call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
            if (present (ival)) ival = eval_tree_get_int (eval_tree)
            if (present (rval)) rval = eval_tree_get_real (eval_tree)
            if (present (cval)) cval = eval_tree_get_cmplx (eval_tree)
            if (present (is_known)) is_known = .true.
        else
            call eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
            if (present (ival)) ival = 0
            if (present (rval)) rval = 0
            if (present (cval)) cval = 0
            if (present (is_known)) is_known = .false.
        end if
        if (present (result_type)) &
            result_type = eval_tree_get_result_type (eval_tree)
        call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
    end subroutine eval_numeric

```

Error message with debugging info:

```

<Expressions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eval_tree_unknown (eval_tree, parse_node)
        type(eval_tree_t), intent(in) :: eval_tree

```

```

    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: parse_node
    call parse_node_write_rec (parse_node)
    call eval_tree_write (eval_tree)
    call msg_error ("Evaluation yields an undefined result, inserting default")
end subroutine eval_tree_unknown

```

### 5.7.11 Unit tests

```

<Expressions: public>+=
    public :: expressions_test

<Expressions: procedures>+=
    subroutine expressions_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type (test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Expressions: execute tests>
    end subroutine expressions_test

```

Testing the routines of the expressions module. First a simple unary observable and the node evaluation.

```

<Expressions: execute tests>=
    call test (expressions_1, "expressions_1", &
        "check simple observable", &
        u, results)

<Expressions: tests>=
    subroutine expressions_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
        type(eval_node_t), pointer :: node => null ()
        type(prt_t), pointer :: prt => null ()
        type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var => null ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Expressions"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple observable and node evaluation"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Setting a unary observable:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (var_list)
        allocate (prt)
        call var_list_set_observables_unary (var_list, prt)
        call var_list_write (var_list, u)
        var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, var_str ("PDG"))

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluating the observable node:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (node)
        call eval_node_init_obs (node, var)
        call eval_node_write (node, u)
    end subroutine expressions_1

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call eval_node_final_rec (node)
deallocate (node)
call var_list_final (var_list)
deallocate (var_list)
deallocate (prt)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: expressions_1"

end subroutine expressions_1

```

Parse a complicated expression, transfer it to a parse tree and evaluate.

```

<Expressions: execute tests>+≡
call test (expressions_2, "expressions_2", &
  "check expression transfer to parse tree", &
  u, results)

<Expressions: tests>+≡
subroutine expressions_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(stream_t) :: stream
  type(eval_tree_t) :: eval_tree
  type(string_t) :: expr_text
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Expressions"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test parse routines"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_expr_init ()
  call syntax_write (syntax_expr, u)
  allocate (var_list)
  call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)
  call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_str ("x"), -5._default)
  call var_list_append_int (var_list, var_str ("foo"), -27)
  call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_str ("mb"), 4._default)
  expr_text = &
    "let real twopi = 2 * pi in" // &
    " twopi * sqrt (25.d0 - mb^2)" // &
    " / (let int mb_or_0 = max (mb, 0) in" // &
    "      1 + (if -1 TeV <= x < mb_or_0 then abs(x) else x endif))"
  call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
  call stream_init (stream, ifile)
  call var_list_write (var_list, unit = u)
  call eval_tree_init_stream (eval_tree, stream, var_list=var_list)
  call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
  call eval_tree_write (eval_tree, u)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Input string:"
  write (u, "(A,A)")  "      ", char (expr_text)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call stream_final (stream)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
call var_list_final (var_list)
deallocate (var_list)
call syntax_expr_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: expressions_2"

end subroutine expressions_2

```

Test a subevent expression.

```

<Expressions: execute tests>+≡
call test (expressions_3, "expressions_3", &
  "check subevent expressions", &
  u, results)

<Expressions: tests>+≡
subroutine expressions_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(subvt_t) :: subvt

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Expressions"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test subevent expressions"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize subevent:"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call subvt_init (subvt)
  call subvt_reset (subvt, 1)
  call subvt_set_incoming (subvt, 1, &
    22, vector4_moving (1.e3_default, 1.e3_default, 1), &
    0._default, [2])
  call subvt_write (subvt, u)
  call subvt_reset (subvt, 4)
  call subvt_reset (subvt, 3)
  call subvt_set_incoming (subvt, 1, &
    21, vector4_moving (1.e3_default, 1.e3_default, 3), &
    0._default, [1])
  call subvt_polarize (subvt, 1, -1)
  call subvt_set_outgoing (subvt, 2, &
    1, vector4_moving (0._default, 1.e3_default, 3), &
    -1.e6_default, [7])
  call subvt_set_composite (subvt, 3, &
    vector4_moving (-1.e3_default, 0._default, 3), &
    (/ 2, 7 /))
  call subvt_write (subvt, u)

  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: expressions_3"

end subroutine expressions_3

```

Test expressions from a PDG array.

```

<Expressions: execute tests>+≡
  call test (expressions_4, "expressions_4", &
    "check pdg array expressions", &
    u, results)

<Expressions: tests>+≡
  subroutine expressions_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(subvt_t), target :: subvt
    type(string_t) :: expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(eval_tree_t) :: eval_tree
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Expressions"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test pdg array expressions"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_pexpr_init ()
    call syntax_write (syntax_pexpr, u)
    allocate (var_list)
    call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)
    aval = 0
    call var_list_append_pdg_array (var_list, var_str ("particle"), aval)
    aval = [11,-11]
    call var_list_append_pdg_array (var_list, var_str ("lepton"), aval)
    aval = 22
    call var_list_append_pdg_array (var_list, var_str ("photon"), aval)
    aval = 1
    call var_list_append_pdg_array (var_list, var_str ("u"), aval)
    call subvt_init (subvt)
    call subvt_reset (subvt, 6)
    call subvt_set_incoming (subvt, 1, &
      1, vector4_moving (1._default, 1._default, 1), 0._default)
    call subvt_set_incoming (subvt, 2, &
      -1, vector4_moving (2._default, 2._default, 1), 0._default)
    call subvt_set_outgoing (subvt, 3, &
      22, vector4_moving (3._default, 3._default, 1), 0._default)
    call subvt_set_outgoing (subvt, 4, &
      22, vector4_moving (4._default, 4._default, 1), 0._default)
    call subvt_set_outgoing (subvt, 5, &
      11, vector4_moving (5._default, 5._default, 1), 0._default)
    call subvt_set_outgoing (subvt, 6, &
      -11, vector4_moving (6._default, 6._default, 1), 0._default)

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Expression:"
expr_text = &
    "let alias quark = pdg(1):pdg(2):pdg(3) in" // &
    "  any E > 3 GeV " // &
    "    [sort by - Pt " // &
    "      [select if Index < 6 " // &
    "        [photon:pdg(-11):pdg(3):quark " // &
    "          & incoming particle]]]" // &
    "  and" // &
    "  eval Theta [extract index -1 [photon]] > 45 degree" // &
    "  and" // &
    "  count [incoming photon] * 3 > 0"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "  ", char (expr_text)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract the evaluation tree:"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call eval_tree_init_stream (eval_tree, stream, var_list, subevt, V_LOG)
call eval_tree_write (eval_tree, u)
call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate the tree:"
write (u, "(A)")

call eval_tree_write (eval_tree, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call stream_final (stream)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
call var_list_final (var_list)
deallocate (var_list)
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: expressions_4"

end subroutine expressions_4

```

## Chapter 6

# Physics Models

A model object represents a physics model. It contains a table of particle data, a list of parameters, and a vertex table. The list of parameters is a variable list which includes the real parameters (which are pointers to the particle data table) and PDG array variables for the particles themselves. The vertex list is used for phase-space generation, not for calculating the matrix element.

Model definitions are read from model files. Therefore, this module contains a parser for model files. The parameter definitions (derived parameters) are Sindarin expressions.

The models, as read from file, are stored in a model library which is a simple list of model definitions. For setting up a process object we should make a copy (an instance) of a model, which gets the current parameter values from the global variable list.

### 6.1 Model module

```
<models.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module models  
  
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!  
    <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: i8, i32 !NODEP!  
    use kinds, only: c_default_float !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    use limits, only: FMT_19, VERTEX_TABLE_SCALE_FACTOR !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    use unit_tests  
    use md5  
    use os_interface  
    use hashes, only: hash  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use ifiles  
    use syntax_rules  
    use lexers  
    use parser
```

```

    use pdg_arrays
    use variables
    use expressions

    <Standard module head>

    <Models: public>

    <Models: parameters>

    <Models: types>

    <Models: interfaces>

    <Models: variables>

    contains

    <Models: procedures>

    <Models: tests>

    end module models

```

### 6.1.1 Physics Parameters

A parameter has a name, a value. Derived parameters also have a definition in terms of other parameters, which is stored as an `eval_tree`. External parameters are set by an external program.

The `pn` component is a pointer to the parameter definition inside the model parse tree. It allows us to recreate the `eval_tree` when making copies (instances) of the parameter object.

```

<Models: parameters>≡
    integer, parameter :: PAR_NONE = 0
    integer, parameter :: PAR_INDEPENDENT = 1, PAR_DERIVED = 2
    integer, parameter :: PAR_EXTERNAL = 3

<Models: public>≡
    public :: parameter_t

<Models: types>≡
    type :: parameter_t
    private
    integer :: type = PAR_NONE
    type(string_t) :: name
    real(default) :: value = 0
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn => null ()
    type(eval_tree_t) :: eval_tree
    end type parameter_t

```

Initialization depends on parameter type. Independent parameters are initialized by a constant value or a constant numerical expression (which may contain

a unit). Derived parameters are initialized by an arbitrary numerical expression, which makes use of the current variable list. The expression is evaluated by the function `parameter_reset`.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine parameter_init_independent_value (par, name, value)
  type(parameter_t), intent(out) :: par
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  real(default), intent(in) :: value
  par%type = PAR_INDEPENDENT
  par%name = name
  par%value = value
end subroutine parameter_init_independent_value

subroutine parameter_init_independent (par, name, pn)
  type(parameter_t), intent(out) :: par
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  par%type = PAR_INDEPENDENT
  par%name = name
  par%pn => pn
  call eval_tree_init_numeric_value (par%eval_tree, pn)
  par%value = eval_tree_get_real (par%eval_tree)
end subroutine parameter_init_independent

subroutine parameter_init_derived (par, name, pn, var_list)
  type(parameter_t), intent(out) :: par
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  par%type = PAR_DERIVED
  par%name = name
  par%pn => pn
  call eval_tree_init_expr (par%eval_tree, pn, var_list=var_list)
  call parameter_reset_derived (par)
end subroutine parameter_init_derived

subroutine parameter_init_external (par, name)
  type(parameter_t), intent(out) :: par
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  par%type = PAR_EXTERNAL
  par%name = name
end subroutine parameter_init_external

```

The finalizer is needed for the evaluation tree in the definition.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine parameter_final (par)
  type(parameter_t), intent(inout) :: par
  call eval_tree_final (par%eval_tree)
end subroutine parameter_final

```

All derived parameters should be recalculated if some independent parameters have changed:

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine parameter_reset_derived (par)
  type(parameter_t), intent(inout) :: par
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_DERIVED)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (par%eval_tree)
    par%value = eval_tree_get_real (par%eval_tree)
  end select
end subroutine parameter_reset_derived

```

Direct access to the parameter value:

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

function parameter_get_value_ptr (par) result (val)
  real(default), pointer :: val
  type(parameter_t), intent(in), target :: par
  val => par%value
end function parameter_get_value_ptr

```

Output. [We should have a formula format for the eval tree, suitable for input and output!]

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine parameter_write (par, unit, write_defs)
  type(parameter_t), intent(in) :: par
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: write_defs
  logical :: defs
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  defs = .false.; if (present (write_defs)) defs = write_defs
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_INDEPENDENT)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "parameter"
  case (PAR_DERIVED)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "derived"
  case (PAR_EXTERNAL)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "external"
  end select
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x,A)", advance="no") char (par%name), "= "
  write (u, "(" // FMT_19 // ")", advance="no") par%value
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_DERIVED)
    if (defs) then
      call eval_tree_write (par%eval_tree, unit)
    else
      write (u, *)
    end if
  case default
    write (u, *)
  end select
end subroutine parameter_write

```

Screen output variant.

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine parameter_show_independent (par, l, u)
  type(parameter_t), intent(in) :: par
  integer, intent(in) :: l, u
  character(len=1) :: buffer
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_INDEPENDENT)
    buffer = par%name
    write (u, "(4x,A,1x,'=',1x," // FMT_19 // ")") buffer, par%value
  end select
end subroutine parameter_show_independent

subroutine parameter_show_derived (par, l, u)
  type(parameter_t), intent(in) :: par
  integer, intent(in) :: l, u
  character(len=1) :: buffer
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_DERIVED)
    buffer = par%name
    write (u, "(4x,A,1x,'=',1x," // FMT_19 // ")") buffer, par%value
  end select
end subroutine parameter_show_derived

subroutine parameter_show_external (par, l, u)
  type(parameter_t), intent(in) :: par
  integer, intent(in) :: l, u
  character(len=1) :: buffer
  select case (par%type)
  case (PAR_EXTERNAL)
    buffer = par%name
    write (u, "(4x,A,1x,'=',1x," // FMT_19 // ")") buffer, par%value
  end select
end subroutine parameter_show_external

```

### 6.1.2 Particle codes

Let us define a few particle codes independent of the model.

SM fermions:

```

⟨Models: types⟩ +=
  integer, parameter, public :: ELECTRON = 11

```

Gauge bosons:

```

⟨Models: types⟩ +=
  integer, parameter, public :: GLUON = 21
  integer, parameter, public :: PHOTON = 22
  integer, parameter, public :: Z_BOSON = 23
  integer, parameter, public :: W_BOSON = 24

```

Hadrons:

```

⟨Models: types⟩ +=
  integer, parameter, public :: PROTON = 2212

```

```

<Models: types>+=
    integer, parameter, public :: PION = 111
    integer, parameter, public :: PIPLUS = 211
    integer, parameter, public :: PIMINUS = - PIPLUS

```

Hadron remnants (internal)

```

<Models: types>+=
    integer, parameter, public :: HADRON_REMNANT = 90
    integer, parameter, public :: HADRON_REMNANT_SINGLET = 91
    integer, parameter, public :: HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET = 92
    integer, parameter, public :: HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET = 93

```

Generic particles for internal use in event analysis:

```

<Models: types>+=
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_ANY = 81
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_VISIBLE = 82
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_CHARGED = 83
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_COLORED = 84

```

Further particle codes for internal use:

```

<Models: types>+=
    integer, parameter, public :: INVALID = 97
    integer, parameter, public :: KEYSTONE = 98
    integer, parameter, public :: COMPOSITE = 99

```

### 6.1.3 Spin codes

Somewhat redundant, but for better readability we define named constants for spin types. If the mass is nonzero, this is equal to the number of degrees of freedom.

```

<Models: types>+=
    integer, parameter, public :: UNKNOWN=0
    integer, parameter, public :: SCALAR=1, SPINOR=2, VECTOR=3, &
        VECTORSPINOR=4, TENSOR=5

```

Isospin types and charge types are counted in an analogous way, where charge type 1 is charge 0, 2 is charge 1/3, and so on. Zero always means unknown. Note that charge and isospin types have an explicit sign.

Color types are defined as the dimension of the representation.

### 6.1.4 Particle data

The particle-data type holds all information that pertains to a particular particle within a particular model. Information such as spin type, particle code etc. is stored within the object itself, while mass and width are associated to parameters, otherwise assumed zero.

```

<Models: public>+=
    public :: particle_data_t

```

*<Models: types>+≡*

```

type :: particle_data_t
private
  type(string_t) :: longname
  integer :: pdg = UNDEFINED
  logical :: is_visible = .true.
  logical :: is_parton = .false.
  logical :: is_gauge = .false.
  logical :: is_left_handed = .false.
  logical :: is_right_handed = .false.
  logical :: has_antiparticle = .false.
  logical :: p_is_stable = .true.
  logical :: p_decays_isotropically = .false.
  logical :: p_decays_diagonal = .false.
  logical :: a_is_stable = .true.
  logical :: a_decays_isotropically = .false.
  logical :: a_decays_diagonal = .false.
  logical :: p_polarized = .false.
  logical :: a_polarized = .false.
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name, anti
  type(string_t) :: tex_name, tex_anti
  integer :: spin_type = UNDEFINED
  integer :: isospin_type = 1
  integer :: charge_type = 1
  integer :: color_type = 1
  real(default), pointer :: mass_val => null ()
  type(parameter_t), pointer :: mass_src => null ()
  real(default), pointer :: width_val => null ()
  type(parameter_t), pointer :: width_src => null ()
  integer :: multiplicity = 1
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_decay
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: a_decay
end type particle_data_t

```

Initialize particle data with PDG long name and PDG code.  $\text{\TeX}$  names should be initialized to avoid issues with accessing unallocated string contents.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

public :: particle_data_init

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine particle_data_init (prt, longname, pdg)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(out) :: prt
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: longname
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  prt%longname = longname
  prt%pdg = pdg
  prt%tex_name = ""
  prt%tex_anti = ""
end subroutine particle_data_init

```

Copy quantum numbers from another particle. Do not compute the multiplicity yet, because this depends on the association of the `mass_src` pointer.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*



```

subroutine particle_data_copy (prt, prt_src)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt_src
  prt%is_visible = prt_src%is_visible
  prt%is_parton = prt_src%is_parton
  prt%is_gauge = prt_src%is_gauge
  prt%is_left_handed = prt_src%is_left_handed
  prt%is_right_handed = prt_src%is_right_handed
  prt%p_is_stable = prt_src%p_is_stable
  prt%p_decays_isotropically = prt_src%p_decays_isotropically
  prt%p_decays_diagonal = prt_src%p_decays_diagonal
  prt%a_is_stable = prt_src%a_is_stable
  prt%a_decays_isotropically = prt_src%a_decays_isotropically
  prt%a_decays_diagonal = prt_src%a_decays_diagonal
  prt%p_polarized = prt_src%p_polarized
  prt%a_polarized = prt_src%a_polarized
  prt%spin_type = prt_src%spin_type
  prt%isospin_type = prt_src%isospin_type
  prt%charge_type = prt_src%charge_type
  prt%color_type = prt_src%color_type
  prt%has_antiparticle = prt_src%has_antiparticle
  if (allocated (prt_src%name)) then
    if (allocated (prt%name)) deallocate (prt%name)
    allocate (prt%name (size (prt_src%name)), source = prt_src%name)
  end if
  if (allocated (prt_src%anti)) then
    if (allocated (prt%anti)) deallocate (prt%anti)
    allocate (prt%anti (size (prt_src%anti)), source = prt_src%anti)
  end if
  prt%tex_name = prt_src%tex_name
  prt%tex_anti = prt_src%tex_anti
  if (allocated (prt_src%p_decay)) then
    if (allocated (prt%p_decay)) deallocate (prt%p_decay)
    allocate (prt%p_decay (size (prt_src%p_decay)), source = prt_src%p_decay)
  end if
  if (allocated (prt_src%a_decay)) then
    if (allocated (prt%a_decay)) deallocate (prt%a_decay)
    allocate (prt%a_decay (size (prt_src%a_decay)), source = prt_src%a_decay)
  end if
end subroutine particle_data_copy

```

Set particle quantum numbers.

*<Models: public>*+≡

```
public :: particle_data_set
```

*<Models: procedures>*+≡

```

subroutine particle_data_set (prt, &
  is_visible, is_parton, is_gauge, is_left_handed, is_right_handed, &
  p_is_stable, p_decays_isotropically, p_decays_diagonal, &
  a_is_stable, a_decays_isotropically, a_decays_diagonal, &
  p_polarized, a_polarized, &
  name, anti, tex_name, tex_anti, &
  spin_type, isospin_type, charge_type, color_type, &
  mass_src, width_src, &

```

```

    p_decay, a_decay)
type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
logical, intent(in), optional :: is_visible, is_parton, is_gauge
logical, intent(in), optional :: is_left_handed, is_right_handed
logical, intent(in), optional :: p_is_stable
logical, intent(in), optional :: p_decays_isotropically, p_decays_diagonal
logical, intent(in), optional :: a_is_stable
logical, intent(in), optional :: a_decays_isotropically, a_decays_diagonal
logical, intent(in), optional :: p_polarized, a_polarized
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: name, anti
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: tex_name, tex_anti
integer, intent(in), optional :: spin_type, isospin_type
integer, intent(in), optional :: charge_type, color_type
type(parameter_t), intent(in), pointer, optional :: mass_src, width_src
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: p_decay, a_decay
if (present (is_visible)) prt%is_visible = is_visible
if (present (is_parton)) prt%is_parton = is_parton
if (present (is_gauge)) prt%is_gauge = is_gauge
if (present (is_left_handed)) prt%is_left_handed = is_left_handed
if (present (is_right_handed)) prt%is_right_handed = is_right_handed
if (present (p_is_stable)) prt%p_is_stable = p_is_stable
if (present (p_decays_isotropically)) &
    prt%p_decays_isotropically = p_decays_isotropically
if (present (p_decays_diagonal)) &
    prt%p_decays_diagonal = p_decays_diagonal
if (present (a_is_stable)) prt%a_is_stable = a_is_stable
if (present (a_decays_isotropically)) &
    prt%a_decays_isotropically = a_decays_isotropically
if (present (a_decays_diagonal)) &
    prt%a_decays_diagonal = a_decays_diagonal
if (present (p_polarized)) prt%p_polarized = p_polarized
if (present (a_polarized)) prt%a_polarized = a_polarized
if (present (name)) then
    if (allocated (prt%name)) deallocate (prt%name)
    allocate (prt%name (size (name)), source = name)
end if
if (present (anti)) then
    if (allocated (prt%anti)) deallocate (prt%anti)
    allocate (prt%anti (size (anti)), source = anti)
    prt%has_antiparticle = .true.
end if
if (present (tex_name)) prt%tex_name = tex_name
if (present (tex_anti)) prt%tex_anti = tex_anti
if (present (spin_type)) prt%spin_type = spin_type
if (present (isospin_type)) prt%isospin_type = isospin_type
if (present (charge_type)) prt%charge_type = charge_type
if (present (color_type)) prt%color_type = color_type
if (present (mass_src)) then
    prt%mass_src => mass_src
    if (associated (mass_src)) then
        prt%mass_val => parameter_get_value_ptr (mass_src)
    else
        prt%mass_val => null ()
    end if
end if

```

```

end if
if (present (width_src)) then
  prt%width_src => width_src
  if (associated (width_src)) then
    prt%width_val => parameter_get_value_ptr (width_src)
  else
    prt%width_val => null ()
  end if
end if
if (present (spin_type) .or. present (mass_src)) then
  call particle_data_set_multiplicity (prt)
end if
if (present (p_decay)) then
  if (allocated (prt%p_decay)) deallocate (prt%p_decay)
  if (size (p_decay) > 0) &
    allocate (prt%p_decay (size (p_decay)), source = p_decay)
end if
if (present (a_decay)) then
  if (allocated (prt%a_decay)) deallocate (prt%a_decay)
  if (size (a_decay) > 0) &
    allocate (prt%a_decay (size (a_decay)), source = a_decay)
end if
end subroutine particle_data_set

```

Calculate the multiplicity given spin type and mass.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_data_set_multiplicity (prt)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  if (prt%spin_type /= SCALAR) then
    if (associated (prt%mass_src)) then
      prt%multiplicity = prt%spin_type
    else if (prt%is_left_handed .or. prt%is_right_handed) then
      prt%multiplicity = 1
    else
      prt%multiplicity = 2
    end if
  end if
end subroutine particle_data_set_multiplicity

```

Set the mass/width value (not the pointer). The mass/width pointer must be allocated.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_data_set_mass (prt, mass)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  real(default), intent(in) :: mass
  if (associated (prt%mass_val)) prt%mass_val = mass
end subroutine particle_data_set_mass

subroutine particle_data_set_width (prt, width)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  real(default), intent(in) :: width
  if (associated (prt%width_val)) prt%width_val = width
end subroutine particle_data_set_width

```

Loose ends

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: particle_data_freeze
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine particle_data_freeze (prt)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  if (.not. allocated (prt%name)) allocate (prt%name (0))
  if (.not. allocated (prt%anti)) allocate (prt%anti (0))
end subroutine particle_data_freeze
```

Output

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine particle_data_write (prt, unit)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(3x,A,1x,A)", advance="no") "particle", char (prt%longname)
  write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") prt%pdg
  if (.not. prt%is_visible) write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "invisible"
  if (prt%is_parton) write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "parton"
  if (prt%is_gauge) write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "gauge"
  if (prt%is_left_handed) write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "left"
  if (prt%is_right_handed) write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "right"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "name"
  if (allocated (prt%name)) then
    do i = 1, size (prt%name)
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") ' ' // char (prt%name(i)) // ' '
    end do
    write (u, *)
    if (prt%has_antiparticle) then
      write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "anti"
      do i = 1, size (prt%anti)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") ' ' // char (prt%anti(i)) // ' '
      end do
      write (u, *)
    end if
    if (prt%tex_name /= "") then
      write (u, "(5x,A)") &
        "tex_name " // ' ' // char (prt%tex_name) // ' '
    end if
    if (prt%has_antiparticle .and. prt%tex_anti /= "") then
      write (u, "(5x,A)") &
        "tex_anti " // ' ' // char (prt%tex_anti) // ' '
    end if
  else
    write (u, "(A)") "???"
  end if
  write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "spin "
  select case (mod (prt%spin_type - 1, 2))
```

```

case (0); write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") (prt%spin_type-1) / 2
case default; write (u, "(I0,A)", advance="no") prt%spin_type-1, "/2"
end select
! write (u, "(2x,A,I1,A)") "! [multiplicity = ", prt%multiplicity, "]"
if (abs (prt%isospin_type) /= 1) then
  write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "isospin "
  select case (mod (abs (prt%isospin_type) - 1, 2))
  case (0); write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") &
    sign (abs (prt%isospin_type) - 1, prt%isospin_type) / 2
  case default; write (u, "(I0,A)", advance="no") &
    sign (abs (prt%isospin_type) - 1, prt%isospin_type), "/2"
  end select
end if
if (abs (prt%charge_type) /= 1) then
  write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "charge "
  select case (mod (abs (prt%charge_type) - 1, 3))
  case (0); write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") &
    sign (abs (prt%charge_type) - 1, prt%charge_type) / 3
  case default; write (u, "(I0,A)", advance="no") &
    sign (abs (prt%charge_type) - 1, prt%charge_type), "/3"
  end select
end if
if (prt%color_type /= 1) then
  write (u, "(2x,A,I0)", advance="no") "color ", prt%color_type
end if
write (u, *)
if (associated (prt%mass_src)) then
  write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "mass " // char (prt%mass_src%name)
  if (associated (prt%width_src)) then
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "width " // char (prt%width_src%name)
  else
    write (u, *)
  end if
end if
call particle_data_write_decays (prt, u)
end subroutine particle_data_write

```

Write decay and polarization data.

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine particle_data_write_decays (prt, unit)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  if (.not. prt%p_is_stable) then
    if (allocated (prt%p_decay)) then
      write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "p_decay"
      do i = 1, size (prt%p_decay)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (prt%p_decay(i))
      end do
      if (prt%p_decays_isotropically) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "isotropic"
      else if (prt%p_decays_diagonal) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "diagonal"
      end if
    end if
  end if
end subroutine

```

```

        end if
        write (u, *)
    end if
else if (prt%p_polarized) then
    write (u, "(5x,A)") "p_polarized"
end if
if (.not. prt%a_is_stable) then
    if (allocated (prt%a_decay)) then
        write (u, "(5x,A)", advance="no") "a_decay"
        do i = 1, size (prt%a_decay)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (prt%a_decay(i))
        end do
        if (prt%a_decays_isotropically) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "isotropic"
        else if (prt%a_decays_diagonal) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "diagonal"
        end if
        write (u, *)
    end if
else if (prt%a_polarized) then
    write (u, "(5x,A)") "a_polarized"
end if
end subroutine particle_data_write_decays

```

Screen version of output.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_data_show (prt, l, u)
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: l, u
    character(len=1) :: buffer
    integer :: i
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
    buffer = particle_data_get_name (prt, .false.)
    write (u, "(4x,A,1x,I8)", advance="no") buffer, &
        particle_data_get_pdg (prt)
    if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt)) then
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "polarized"
    else if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt)) then
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "decays:"
        call particle_data_get_decays (prt, decay)
        do i = 1, size (decay)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (decay(i))
        end do
        write (u, *)
    else
        write (u, *)
    end if
    if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
        buffer = particle_data_get_name (prt, .true.)
        write (u, "(4x,A,1x,I8)", advance="no") buffer, &
            particle_data_get_pdg_anti (prt)
        if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .true.)) then
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "polarized"
        else if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt, .true.)) then

```

```

        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "decays:"
        call particle_data_get_decays (prt, decay, .true.)
        do i = 1, size (decay)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (decay(i))
        end do
        write (u, *)
    else
        write (u, *)
    end if
end if
end if
end subroutine particle_data_show

```

Retrieve data:

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: particle_data_get_pdg
    public :: particle_data_get_pdg_anti

<Models: procedures>+≡
    elemental function particle_data_get_pdg (prt) result (pdg)
        integer :: pdg
        type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
        pdg = prt%pdg
    end function particle_data_get_pdg

    elemental function particle_data_get_pdg_anti (prt) result (pdg)
        integer :: pdg
        type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
        if (prt%has_antiparticle) then
            pdg = - prt%pdg
        else
            pdg = prt%pdg
        end if
    end function particle_data_get_pdg_anti

```

Predicates:

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: particle_data_is_visible
    public :: particle_data_is_parton
    public :: particle_data_is_gauge
    public :: particle_data_is_left_handed
    public :: particle_data_is_right_handed
    public :: particle_data_has_antiparticle
    public :: particle_data_is_stable
    public :: particle_data_get_decays
    public :: particle_data_decays_isotropically
    public :: particle_data_decays_diagonal
    public :: particle_data_is_polarized

<Models: procedures>+≡
    elemental function particle_data_is_visible (prt) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
        flag = prt%is_visible
    end function particle_data_is_visible

```

```

elemental function particle_data_is_parton (prt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  flag = prt%is_parton
end function particle_data_is_parton

elemental function particle_data_is_gauge (prt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  flag = prt%is_gauge
end function particle_data_is_gauge

elemental function particle_data_is_left_handed (prt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  flag = prt%is_left_handed
end function particle_data_is_left_handed

elemental function particle_data_is_right_handed (prt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  flag = prt%is_right_handed
end function particle_data_is_right_handed

elemental function particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  flag = prt%has_antiparticle
end function particle_data_has_antiparticle

elemental function particle_data_is_stable (prt, anti) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  logical, intent(in), optional :: anti
  if (present (anti)) then
    if (anti) then
      flag = prt%a_is_stable
    else
      flag = prt%p_is_stable
    end if
  else
    flag = prt%p_is_stable
  end if
end function particle_data_is_stable

subroutine particle_data_get_decays (prt, decay, anti)
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: decay
  logical, intent(in), optional :: anti
  if (present (anti)) then
    if (anti) then
      allocate (decay (size (prt%a_decay)), source = prt%a_decay)
    else

```



```

        allocate (decay (size (prt%p_decay)), source = prt%p_decay)
    end if
else
    allocate (decay (size (prt%p_decay)), source = prt%p_decay)
end if
end subroutine particle_data_get_decays

elemental function particle_data_decays_isotropically &
    (prt, anti) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: anti
    if (present (anti)) then
        if (anti) then
            flag = prt%a_decays_isotropically
        else
            flag = prt%p_decays_isotropically
        end if
    else
        flag = prt%p_decays_isotropically
    end if
end function particle_data_decays_isotropically

elemental function particle_data_decays_diagonal &
    (prt, anti) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: anti
    if (present (anti)) then
        if (anti) then
            flag = prt%a_decays_diagonal
        else
            flag = prt%p_decays_diagonal
        end if
    else
        flag = prt%p_decays_diagonal
    end if
end function particle_data_decays_diagonal

elemental function particle_data_is_polarized (prt, anti) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: anti
    logical :: a
    if (present (anti)) then
        a = anti
    else
        a = .false.
    end if
    if (a) then
        flag = prt%a_polarized
    else
        flag = prt%p_polarized
    end if
end function

```

```
end function particle_data_is_polarized
```

Names. Return the first name in the list (or the first antiparticle name)

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: particle_data_get_name
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
elemental function particle_data_get_name &
  (prt, is_antiparticle) result (name)
  type(string_t) :: name
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  logical, intent(in) :: is_antiparticle
  name = prt%longname
  if (is_antiparticle) then
    if (prt%has_antiparticle) then
      if (allocated (prt%anti)) then
        if (size(prt%anti) > 0) name = prt%anti(1)
      end if
    else
      if (allocated (prt%name)) then
        if (size (prt%name) > 0) name = prt%name(1)
      end if
    end if
  else
    if (allocated (prt%name)) then
      if (size (prt%name) > 0) name = prt%name(1)
    end if
  end if
end function particle_data_get_name
```

Same for the T<sub>E</sub>X name.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: particle_data_get_tex_name
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
elemental function particle_data_get_tex_name &
  (prt, is_antiparticle) result (name)
  type(string_t) :: name
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  logical, intent(in) :: is_antiparticle
  if (is_antiparticle) then
    if (prt%has_antiparticle) then
      name = prt%tex_anti
    else
      name = prt%tex_name
    end if
  else
    name = prt%tex_name
  end if
  if (name == "") name = particle_data_get_name (prt, is_antiparticle)
end function particle_data_get_tex_name
```

Quantum numbers

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: particle_data_get_spin_type
public :: particle_data_get_multiplicity
public :: particle_data_get_isospin_type
public :: particle_data_get_charge_type
public :: particle_data_get_color_type
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
elemental function particle_data_get_spin_type (prt) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type = prt%spin_type
end function particle_data_get_spin_type

elemental function particle_data_get_multiplicity (prt) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type = prt%multiplicity
end function particle_data_get_multiplicity

elemental function particle_data_get_isospin_type (prt) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type = prt%isospin_type
end function particle_data_get_isospin_type

elemental function particle_data_get_charge_type (prt) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type = prt%charge_type
end function particle_data_get_charge_type

elemental function particle_data_get_color_type (prt) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
  type = prt%color_type
end function particle_data_get_color_type
```

In the MSSM, neutralinos can have a negative mass. This is relevant for computing matrix elements. However, within the WHIZARD main program we are interested only in kinematics, therefore we return the absolute value of the particle mass. If desired, we can extract the sign separately.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: particle_data_get_charge
public :: particle_data_get_mass
public :: particle_data_get_mass_sign
public :: particle_data_get_width
public :: particle_data_get_isospin
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
elemental function particle_data_get_charge (prt) result (charge)
  real(default) :: charge
  type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
```

```

    if (prt%charge_type /= 0) then
        charge = real (sign ((abs(prt%charge_type) - 1), &
            prt%charge_type), default) / 3
    else
        charge = 0
    end if
end function particle_data_get_charge

elemental function particle_data_get_mass (prt) result (mass)
    real(default) :: mass
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (associated (prt%mass_val)) then
        mass = abs (prt%mass_val)
    else
        mass = 0
    end if
end function particle_data_get_mass

elemental function particle_data_get_mass_sign (prt) result (sgn)
    integer :: sgn
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (associated (prt%mass_val)) then
        sgn = sign (1._default, prt%mass_val)
    else
        sgn = 0
    end if
end function particle_data_get_mass_sign

elemental function particle_data_get_width (prt) result (width)
    real(default) :: width
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (associated (prt%width_val)) then
        width = prt%width_val
    else
        width = 0
    end if
end function particle_data_get_width

elemental function particle_data_get_isospin (prt) result (isospin)
    real(default) :: isospin
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (prt%isospin_type /= 0) then
        isospin = real (sign (abs(prt%isospin_type) - 1, &
            prt%isospin_type), default) / 2
    else
        isospin = 0
    end if
end function particle_data_get_isospin

```

Given an array of particles, return a PDG-array object that consists of all charged particles in the array. We need to explicitly add their antiparticles.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```
function particle_data_get_charged_pdg (prt) result (aval)
```

```

type(pdg_array_t) :: aval, aval_p, aval_a
type(particle_data_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
aval_p = pack ( prt%pdg, abs (prt%charge_type) > 1)
aval_a = pack (-prt%pdg, abs (prt%charge_type) > 1 &
               .and. prt%has_antiparticle )
aval = aval_p // aval_a
end function particle_data_get_charged_pdg

```

The same for color.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

function particle_data_get_colored_pdg (prt) result (aval)
type(pdg_array_t) :: aval, aval_p, aval_a
type(particle_data_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
aval_p = pack ( prt%pdg, abs (prt%color_type) > 1)
aval_a = pack (-prt%pdg, abs (prt%color_type) > 1 &
               .and. prt%has_antiparticle )
aval = aval_p // aval_a
end function particle_data_get_colored_pdg

```

### 6.1.5 Vertex data

The vertex object contains an array of particle-data pointers, for which we need a separate type. (We could use the flavor type defined in another module.)

The program does not (yet?) make use of vertex definitions, so they are not stored here.

*<Models: types>+≡*

```

type :: particle_p
type(particle_data_t), pointer :: p => null ()
end type particle_p

```

*<Models: types>+≡*

```

type :: vertex_t
logical :: trilinear
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
type(particle_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
end type vertex_t

```

Initialize using PDG codes. The model is used for finding particle data pointers associated with the pdg codes.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine vertex_init (vtx, pdg, model)
type(vertex_t), intent(out) :: vtx
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
type(model_t), intent(in), target, optional :: model
integer :: i
allocate (vtx%pdg (size (pdg)))
allocate (vtx%prt (size (pdg)))
vtx%trilinear = size (pdg) == 3
vtx%pdg = pdg
if (present (model)) then

```

```

do i = 1, size (pdg)
  vtx%prt(i)%p => model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg(i))
end do
end if
end subroutine vertex_init

```

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine vertex_write (vtx, unit)
  type(vertex_t), intent(in) :: vtx
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "vertex"
  do i = 1, size (vtx%prt)
    if (associated (vtx%prt(i)%p)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
        '"" // char (particle_data_get_name &
          (vtx%prt(i)%p, vtx%pdg(i) < 0)) &
        // '""
    else
      write (u, "(1x,I7)", advance="no") vtx%pdg(i)
    end if
  end do
  write (u, *)
end subroutine vertex_write

```

Single-particle lookup: Given a particle code, we return matching codes if present, otherwise zero. Actually, we return the antiparticles of the matching codes, as appropriate for computing splittings.

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine vertex_get_match (vtx, pdg1, pdg2)
  type(vertex_t), intent(in) :: vtx
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg1
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pdg2
  integer :: i, j
  do i = 1, size (vtx%pdg)
    if (vtx%pdg(i) == pdg1) then
      allocate (pdg2 (size (vtx%pdg) - 1))
      do j = 1, i-1
        pdg2(j) = anti (j)
      end do
      do j = i, size (pdg2)
        pdg2(j) = anti (j+1)
      end do
      exit
    end if
  end do
contains
  function anti (i) result (pdg)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer :: pdg
    if (vtx%prt(i)%p%has_antiparticle) then
      pdg = - vtx%pdg(i)
    end if
  end function anti

```

```

        else
            pdg = vtx%pdg(i)
        end if
    end function anti
end subroutine vertex_get_match

```

To access this from the outside, we create an iterator. The iterator has the sole purpose of returning the matching particles for a given array of PDG codes.

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: vertex_iterator_t

<Models: types>+≡
    type :: vertex_iterator_t
        private
        type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
        integer :: vertex_index = 0
    contains
        procedure :: init => vertex_iterator_init
        procedure :: get_next_match => vertex_iterator_get_next_match
    end type vertex_iterator_t

```

We initialize the iterator for a particular model with the `pdg` index of the particle we are looking at.

```

<Models: procedures>+≡
    subroutine vertex_iterator_init (it, model, pdg)
        class(vertex_iterator_t), intent(out) :: it
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
        it%model => model
        allocate (it%pdg (size (pdg)), source = pdg)
    end subroutine vertex_iterator_init

    subroutine vertex_iterator_get_next_match (it, pdg_match)
        class(vertex_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pdg_match
        integer :: i, j
        do i = it%vertex_index + 1, size (it%model%vtx)
            do j = 1, size (it%pdg)
                call vertex_get_match (it%model%vtx(i), it%pdg(j), pdg_match)
                if (allocated (pdg_match)) then
                    it%vertex_index = i
                    return
                end if
            end do
        end do
        it%vertex_index = 0
    end subroutine vertex_iterator_get_next_match

```

### 6.1.6 Vertex lookup table

The vertex lookup table is a hash table: given two particle codes, we check which codes are allowed for the third one.

The size of the hash table should be large enough that collisions are rare. We first select a size based on the number of vertices (multiplied by six because all permutations count), with some margin, and then choose the smallest integer power of two larger than this.

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    integer, parameter, public :: VERTEX_TABLE_SCALE_FACTOR = 60
<Models: procedures>+≡
    function vertex_table_size (n_vtx) result (n)
        integer(i32) :: n
        integer, intent(in) :: n_vtx
        integer :: i, s
        s = VERTEX_TABLE_SCALE_FACTOR * n_vtx
        n = 1
        do i = 1, 31
            n = ishft (n, 1)
            s = ishft (s,-1)
            if (s == 0) exit
        end do
    end function vertex_table_size
```

The specific hash function takes two particle codes (arbitrary integers) and returns a 32-bit integer. It makes use of the universal function `hash` which operates on a byte array.

```
<Models: procedures>+≡
    function hash2 (pdg1, pdg2)
        integer(i32) :: hash2
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2
        integer(i8), dimension(1) :: mold
        hash2 = hash (transfer ((/pdg1, pdg2/), mold))
    end function hash2
```

Each entry in the vertex table stores the two particle codes and an array of possibilities for the third code.

```
<Models: types>+≡
    type :: vertex_table_entry_t
        integer :: pdg1 = 0, pdg2 = 0
        integer :: n = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg3
    end type vertex_table_entry_t
```

The vertex table:

```
<Models: types>+≡
    type :: vertex_table_t
        type(vertex_table_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
        integer :: n_collisions = 0
        integer(i32) :: mask
    end type vertex_table_t
```



Initializing the vertex table: This is done in two passes. First, we scan all permutations for all vertices and count the number of entries in each bucket of the hashtable. Then, the buckets are allocated accordingly and filled.

Collision resolution is done by just incrementing the hash value until an empty bucket is found. The vertex table size is fixed, since we know from the beginning the number of entries.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine vertex_table_init (vt, prt, vtx)
  type(vertex_table_t), intent(out) :: vt
  type(particle_data_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
  type(vertex_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: vtx
  integer :: n_vtx, vt_size, i, p1, p2, p3
  integer, dimension(3) :: p
  n_vtx = size (vtx)
  vt_size = vertex_table_size (count (vtx%trilinear))
  vt%mask = vt_size - 1
  allocate (vt%entry (0:vt_size-1))
  do i = 1, n_vtx
    if (vtx(i)%trilinear) then
      p = vtx(i)%pdg
      p1 = p(1); p2 = p(2)
      call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
      if (p(2) /= p(3)) then
        p2 = p(3)
        call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
      end if
      if (p(1) /= p(2)) then
        p1 = p(2); p2 = p(1)
        call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
        if (p(1) /= p(3)) then
          p2 = p(3)
          call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
        end if
      end if
      if (p(1) /= p(3)) then
        p1 = p(3); p2 = p(1)
        call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
        if (p(1) /= p(2)) then
          p2 = p(2)
          call create (hash2 (p1, p2))
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end do
  do i = 0, vt_size - 1
    allocate (vt%entry(i)%pdg3 (vt%entry(i)%n))
  end do
  vt%entry%n = 0
  do i = 1, n_vtx
    if (vtx(i)%trilinear) then
      p = vtx(i)%pdg
      p1 = p(1); p2 = p(2); p3 = p(3)
      call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
    end if
  end do

```

```

        if (p(2) /= p(3)) then
            p2 = p(3); p3 = p(2)
            call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
        end if
        if (p(1) /= p(2)) then
            p1 = p(2); p2 = p(1); p3 = p(3)
            call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
            if (p(1) /= p(3)) then
                p2 = p(3); p3 = p(1)
                call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
            end if
        end if
        if (p(1) /= p(3)) then
            p1 = p(3); p2 = p(1); p3 = p(2)
            call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
            if (p(1) /= p(2)) then
                p2 = p(2); p3 = p(1)
                call register (hash2 (p1, p2))
            end if
        end if
    end if
end do
contains
recursive subroutine create (hashval)
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: hashval
    integer :: h
    h = iand (hashval, vt%mask)
    if (vt%entry(h)%n == 0) then
        vt%entry(h)%pdg1 = p1
        vt%entry(h)%pdg2 = p2
        vt%entry(h)%n = 1
    else if (vt%entry(h)%pdg1 == p1 .and. vt%entry(h)%pdg2 == p2) then
        vt%entry(h)%n = vt%entry(h)%n + 1
    else
        vt%n_collisions = vt%n_collisions + 1
        call create (hashval + 1)
    end if
end subroutine create
recursive subroutine register (hashval)
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: hashval
    integer :: h
    h = iand (hashval, vt%mask)
    if (vt%entry(h)%pdg1 == p1 .and. vt%entry(h)%pdg2 == p2) then
        vt%entry(h)%n = vt%entry(h)%n + 1
        vt%entry(h)%pdg3(vt%entry(h)%n) = p3
    else
        call register (hashval + 1)
    end if
end subroutine register
end subroutine vertex_table_init

```

Output

```

⟨Models: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine vertex_table_write (vt, unit)

```

```

type(vertex_table_t), intent(in) :: vt
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
character(9) :: size_pdg3
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)") "vertex hash table:"
write (u, "(A,I7)") " size = ", size (vt%entry)
write (u, "(A,I7)") " used = ", count (vt%entry%  
n /= 0)
write (u, "(A,I7)") " coll = ", vt%  
n_collisions
do i = lbound (vt%entry, 1), ubound (vt%entry, 1)
  if (vt%entry(i)%  
n /= 0) then
    write (size_pdg3, "(I7)") size (vt%entry(i)%pdg3)
    write (u, "(A,1x,I7,1x,A,2(1x,I7),A," // &
      size_pdg3 // "(1x,I7))") &
      " ", i, ":", vt%entry(i)%pdg1, &
      vt%entry(i)%pdg2, "->", vt%entry(i)%pdg3
  end if
end do
end subroutine vertex_table_write

```

Return the array of particle codes that match the given pair.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine vertex_table_match (vt, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3)
  type(vertex_table_t), intent(in) :: vt
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pdg3
  call match (hash2 (pdg1, pdg2))
contains
  recursive subroutine match (hashval)
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: hashval
    integer :: h
    h = iand (hashval, vt%mask)
    if (vt%entry(h)%  
n == 0) then
      allocate (pdg3 (0))
    else if (vt%entry(h)%pdg1 == pdg1 .and. vt%entry(h)%pdg2 == pdg2) then
      allocate (pdg3 (size (vt%entry(h)%pdg3)))
      pdg3 = vt%entry(h)%pdg3
    else
      call match (hashval + 1)
    end if
  end subroutine match
end subroutine vertex_table_match

```

Return true if the triplet is represented as a vertex.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

function vertex_table_check (vt, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3) result (flag)
  type(vertex_table_t), intent(in) :: vt
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2, pdg3
  logical :: flag
  flag = check (hash2 (pdg1, pdg2))
contains
  recursive function check (hashval) result (flag)
    integer(i32), intent(in) :: hashval

```

```

integer :: h
logical :: flag
h = iand (hashval, vt%mask)
if (vt%entry(h)%n == 0) then
  flag = .false.
else if (vt%entry(h)%pdg1 == pdg1 .and. vt%entry(h)%pdg2 == pdg2) then
  flag = any (vt%entry(h)%pdg3 == pdg3)
else
  flag = check (hashval + 1)
end if
end function check
end function vertex_table_check

```

### 6.1.7 Model data

A model object holds all information about parameters, particles, and vertices. For models that require an external program for parameter calculation, there is the pointer to a function that does this calculation, given the set of independent and derived parameters.

When reading a model, we create a parse tree. Parameter definitions are available via parse nodes. Since we may need those later when making model instances, we keep the whole parse tree in the model definition (but not in the instances).

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_t

<Models: types>+≡
  type :: model_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: name
  character(32) :: md5sum = ""
  type(parameter_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
  type(particle_data_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
  type(vertex_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: vtx
  type(vertex_table_t) :: vt
  type(var_list_t) :: var_list
  type(string_t) :: dlname
  procedure(model_init_external_parameters), nopass, pointer :: &
    init_external_parameters => null ()
  type(dlaccess_t) :: dlaccess
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
  contains
  <Models: model: TBP>
end type model_t

```

This is the interface for a procedure that initializes the calculation of external parameters, given the array of all parameters.

```

<Models: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine model_init_external_parameters (par) bind (C)
    import
  end interface

```

```

        real(c_default_float), dimension(*), intent(inout) :: par
    end subroutine model_init_external_parameters
end interface

```

Initialization: Specify the number of parameters, particles, vertices and allocate memory. If an associated DL library is specified, load this library.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_init &
    (model, name, libname, os_data, n_par, n_prt, n_vtx)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name, libname
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    integer, intent(in) :: n_par, n_prt, n_vtx
    type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr
    type(string_t) :: libpath
    call model_basic_init (model, name, n_par, n_prt, n_vtx)
    if (libname /= "") then
        if (.not. os_data%use_testfiles) then
            libpath = os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local
            model%dlname = os_get_dlname ( &
                libpath // "/" // libname, os_data, ignore=.true.)
        end if
        if (model%dlname == "") then
            libpath = os_data%whizard_models_libpath
            model%dlname = os_get_dlname (libpath // "/" // libname, os_data)
        end if
    else
        model%dlname = ""
    end if
    if (model%dlname /= "") then
        if (.not. dlaccess_is_open (model%dlaccess)) then
            if (logging) &
                call msg_message ("Loading model auxiliary library '" &
                    // char (libpath) // "/" // char (model%dlname) // "'")
            call dlaccess_init (model%dlaccess, os_data%whizard_models_libpath, &
                model%dlname, os_data)
            if (dlaccess_has_error (model%dlaccess)) then
                call msg_message (char (dlaccess_get_error (model%dlaccess)))
                call msg_fatal ("Loading model auxiliary library '" &
                    // char (model%dlname) // "' failed")
                return
            end if
            c_fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (model%dlaccess, &
                var_str ("init_external_parameters"))
            if (dlaccess_has_error (model%dlaccess)) then
                call msg_message (char (dlaccess_get_error (model%dlaccess)))
                call msg_fatal ("Loading function from auxiliary library '" &
                    // char (model%dlname) // "' failed")
                return
            end if
            call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, model% init_external_parameters)
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```
end subroutine model_init
```

For a model instance, we do not attempt to load a DL library. This is the core of the full initializer above.

```
<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_basic_init (model, name, n_par, n_prt, n_vtx)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer, intent(in) :: n_par, n_prt, n_vtx
    model%name = name
    allocate (model%par (n_par))
    allocate (model%pvt (n_prt))
    allocate (model%vtx (n_vtx))
  end subroutine model_basic_init
```

Finalization: The variable list contains allocated pointers, also the parse tree. We also close the DL access object, if any, that enables external parameter calculation.

```
<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_final

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_final (model)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (model%par)) then
      do i = 1, size (model%par)
        call parameter_final (model%par(i))
      end do
    end if
    call var_list_final (model%var_list)
    if (model%dlname /= "") call dlaccess_final (model%dlaccess)
    call parse_tree_final (model%parse_tree)
  end subroutine model_final
```

Output. By default, the output is in the form of an input file. If `verbose` is true, for each derived parameter the definition (eval tree) is displayed, and the vertex hash table is shown.

```
<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_write

<Models: model: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => model_write

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_write (model, unit, verbose, &
    show_md5sum, show_variables, show_parameters, &
    show_particles, show_vertices)
    class(model_t), intent(in) :: model
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_md5sum
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_variables
```

```

logical, intent(in), optional :: show_parameters
logical, intent(in), optional :: show_particles
logical, intent(in), optional :: show_vertices
logical :: verb, show_md5, show_var, show_par, show_prt, show_vtx
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
show_md5 = .true.; if (present (show_md5sum)) &
    show_md5 = show_md5sum
show_par = .true.; if (present (show_parameters)) &
    show_par = show_parameters
show_prt = .true.; if (present (show_particles)) &
    show_prt = show_particles
show_vtx = .true.; if (present (show_vertices)) &
    show_vtx = show_vertices
show_var = verb; if (present (show_variables)) &
    show_var = show_variables
write (u, "(A,A,A)" 'model ', char (model%name), "'")
if (show_md5 .and. model%md5sum /= "") &
    write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)" "! md5sum = ", model%md5sum, "'")
if (show_par) then
    write (u, *)
    do i = 1, size (model%par)
        call parameter_write (model%par(i), unit, verbose)
    end do
end if
if (show_prt) then
    write (u, *)
    do i = 1, size (model%prt)
        call particle_data_write (model%prt(i), unit)
    end do
end if
if (show_vtx) then
    write (u, *)
    do i = 1, size (model%vtx)
        call vertex_write (model%vtx(i), unit)
    end do
    if (verb) then
        write (u, *)
        call vertex_table_write (model%vt, unit)
    end if
end if
if (show_var) then
    write (u, *)
    call var_list_write (model%var_list, unit)
end if
end subroutine model_write

```

Screen output, condensed form.

```

<Models: public>+≡
public :: model_show

<Models: model: TBP>+≡
procedure :: show => model_show

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_show (model, unit)
  class(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i, u, l
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(A,1x,A)") "Model:", char (model%name)
  l = max (maxval (len (particle_data_get_name (model%prt, .false.))), &
    maxval (len (particle_data_get_name (model%prt, .true.))))
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "Particles:"
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    call particle_data_show (model%prt(i), l, u)
  end do
  l = maxval (len (model%par%name))
  if (any (model%par%type == PAR_INDEPENDENT)) then
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "Independent parameters:"
    do i = 1, size (model%par)
      call parameter_show_independent (model%par(i), l, u)
    end do
  end if
  if (any (model%par%type == PAR_DERIVED)) then
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "Derived parameters:"
    do i = 1, size (model%par)
      call parameter_show_derived (model%par(i), l, u)
    end do
  end if
  if (any (model%par%type == PAR_EXTERNAL)) then
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "External parameters:"
    do i = 1, size (model%par)
      call parameter_show_external (model%par(i), l, u)
    end do
  end if
end subroutine model_show

```

Show the list of stable, unstable, polarized, or unpolarized particles, respectively.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

public :: model_show_stable
public :: model_show_unstable
public :: model_show_polarized
public :: model_show_unpolarized

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_show_stable (model, unit)
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "Stable particles:"
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    associate (prt => model%prt(i))
      if (particle_data_is_stable (prt, .false.)) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
          char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .false.))
      end if
    end associate
  end do
end subroutine model_show_stable

```



```

        if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
            if (particle_data_is_stable (prt, .true.)) then
                write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                    char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .true.))
            end if
        end if
    end associate
end do
write (u, *)
end subroutine model_show_stable

subroutine model_show_unstable (model, unit)
    type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "Unstable particles:"
    do i = 1, size (model%prt)
        associate (prt => model%prt(i))
            if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt, .false.)) then
                write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                    char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .false.))
            end if
            if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
                if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt, .true.)) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                        char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .true.))
                end if
            end if
        end associate
    end do
    write (u, *)
end subroutine model_show_unstable

subroutine model_show_polarized (model, unit)
    type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "Polarized particles:"
    do i = 1, size (model%prt)
        associate (prt => model%prt(i))
            if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .false.)) then
                write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                    char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .false.))
            end if
            if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
                if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .true.)) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                        char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .true.))
                end if
            end if
        end associate
    end do
end do

```

```

        write (u, *)
    end subroutine model_show_polarized

    subroutine model_show_unpolarized (model, unit)
        type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") "Unpolarized particles:"
        do i = 1, size (model%prt)
            associate (prt => model%prt(i))
                if (.not. particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .false.)) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                        char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .false.))
                end if
                if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
                    if (.not. particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .true.)) then
                        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
                            char (particle_data_get_name (prt, .true.))
                    end if
                end if
            end associate
        end do
        write (u, *)
    end subroutine model_show_unpolarized

```

Accessing contents:

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: model_get_name

<Models: model: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_name => model_get_name

<Models: procedures>+≡
    function model_get_name (model) result (name)
        type(string_t) :: name
        class(model_t), intent(in) :: model
        name = model%name
    end function model_get_name

```

Retrieve the MD5 sum of a model (actually, of the model file).

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: model_get_md5sum

<Models: procedures>+≡
    function model_get_md5sum (model) result (md5sum)
        character(32) :: md5sum
        type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
        md5sum = model%md5sum
    end function model_get_md5sum

```

Retrieve a MD5 sum for the current model parameter values and decay/polarization settings. This is done by writing them to a temporary file, using a standard

format.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: model_get_parameters_md5sum
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
function model_get_parameters_md5sum (model) result (par_md5sum)
  character(32) :: par_md5sum
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
  integer :: unit, i
  call model_parameters_to_array (model, par)
  unit = free_unit ()
  open (unit, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
  write (unit, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") par
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    associate (prt => model%prt(i))
      if (.not. prt%p_is_stable .or. .not. prt%a_is_stable &
        .or. prt%p_polarized .or. prt%a_polarized) then
        write (unit, "(3x,A)") char (prt%longname)
        call particle_data_write_decays (prt, unit)
      end if
    end associate
  end do
  rewind (unit)
  par_md5sum = md5sum (unit)
  close (unit)
end function model_get_parameters_md5sum
```

Parameters are defined by an expression which may be constant or arbitrary.

*<Models: interfaces>+≡*

```
interface model_set_parameter
  module procedure model_set_parameter_constant
  module procedure model_set_parameter_parse_node
end interface
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine model_set_parameter_constant (model, i, name, value)
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  real(default), intent(in) :: value
  logical, save, target :: known = .true.
  call parameter_init_independent_value (model%par(i), name, value)
  call var_list_append_real_ptr &
    (model%var_list, name, parameter_get_value_ptr (model%par(i)), known, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
end subroutine model_set_parameter_constant

subroutine model_set_parameter_parse_node (model, i, name, pn, constant)
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
```

```

logical, intent(in) :: constant
logical, save, target :: known = .true.
if (constant) then
    call parameter_init_independent (model%par(i), name, pn)
else
    call parameter_init_derived (model%par(i), name, pn, model%var_list)
end if
call var_list_append_real_ptr &
    (model%var_list, name, parameter_get_value_ptr (model%par(i)), &
    is_known=known, locked=.not.constant, intrinsic=.true.)
end subroutine model_set_parameter_parse_node

subroutine model_set_parameter_external (model, i, name)
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    logical, save, target :: known = .true.
    call parameter_init_external (model%par(i), name)
    call var_list_append_real_ptr &
        (model%var_list, name, parameter_get_value_ptr (model%par(i)), &
        is_known=known, locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
end subroutine model_set_parameter_external

```

Make a copy of a parameter. The eval tree should not be copied, since it should refer to the new variable list. The safe solution is to make use of the above initializers, which also take care of the building a new variable list, but then copy the actual values.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_copy_parameter (model, i, par)
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(parameter_t), intent(in) :: par
    select case (par%type)
    case (PAR_INDEPENDENT)
        if (associated (par%pn)) then
            call model_set_parameter_parse_node (model, i, par%name, par%pn, &
                constant = .true.)
        else
            call model_set_parameter_constant (model, i, par%name, par%value)
        end if
    case (PAR_DERIVED)
        call model_set_parameter_parse_node (model, i, par%name, par%pn, &
            constant = .false.)
    case (PAR_EXTERNAL)
        call model_set_parameter_external (model, i, par%name)
    end select
    model%par(i)%value = par%value
end subroutine model_copy_parameter

```

Return the pointer to a parameter

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

function model_get_parameter_ptr (model, par_name) result (par)
    type(parameter_t), pointer :: par

```

```

type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: par_name
integer :: i
par => null ()
if (present (par_name)) then
  do i = 1, size (model%par)
    if (model%par(i)%name == par_name) then
      par => model%par(i); exit
    end if
  end do
  if (.not. associated (par)) then
    call msg_fatal (" Model '" // char (model%name) // "' // &
      " has no parameter '" // char (par_name) // "'")
  end if
end if
end function model_get_parameter_ptr

```

Return the value of a particular parameter

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_get_parameter_value

<Models: procedures>+≡
  function model_get_parameter_value (model, par_name) result (val)
    real(default) :: val
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: par_name
    val = parameter_get_value_ptr (model_get_parameter_ptr (model, par_name))
  end function model_get_parameter_value

```

Return the number of parameters

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_get_n_parameters

<Models: procedures>+≡
  function model_get_n_parameters (model) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
    n = size (model%par)
  end function model_get_n_parameters

```

Transform the parameters into a single real-valued array. The first version uses the Fortran default kind, the second one the C default kind. (Usually, the two will be identical).

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_parameters_to_array
  public :: model_parameters_to_c_array

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_parameters_to_array (model, array)
    type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: array
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (array)) deallocate (array)
    allocate (array (size (model%par)))

```

```

do i = 1, size (model%par)
  array(i) = model%par(i)%value
end do
end subroutine model_parameters_to_array

subroutine model_parameters_to_c_array (model, array)
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  real(c_default_float), dimension(:), allocatable :: array
  allocate (array (size (model%par)))
  array = model%par%value
end subroutine model_parameters_to_c_array

subroutine model_parameters_from_c_array (model, array)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  real(c_default_float), dimension(:), intent(in) :: array
  if (size (array) == size (model%par)) then
    model%par%value = array
  else
    call msg_bug ("Model '" // char (model%name) // "': size mismatch " &
      // "in parameter array")
  end if
end subroutine model_parameters_from_c_array

```

Rcalculate all derived parameters.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: model_parameters_update
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_parameters_update (model)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer :: i
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
  do i = 1, size (model%par)
    call parameter_reset_derived (model%par(i))
  end do
  if (associated (model%init_external_parameters)) then
    call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, par)
    call model%init_external_parameters (par)
    call model_parameters_from_c_array (model, par)
  end if
end subroutine model_parameters_update

```

Initialize particle data with PDG long name and PDG code.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_init_particle (model, i, longname, pdg)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: longname
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
  call particle_data_init (model%prt(i), longname, pdg)
  aval = pdg
  call var_list_append_pdg_array &

```

```

        (model%var_list, longname, aval, locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
    end subroutine model_init_particle

```

Copy quantum numbers from another particle

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine model_copy_particle_data (model, i, name_src)
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name_src
    call particle_data_copy (model%prt(i), &
        model_get_particle_ptr (model, &
            model_get_particle_pdg (model, name_src)))
end subroutine model_copy_particle_data

```

Set particle quantum numbers individually. Names get a \* prepended.

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
    is_visible, is_parton, is_gauge, is_left_handed, is_right_handed, &
    name, anti, tex_name, tex_anti, &
    spin_type, isospin_type, charge_type, color_type, &
    mass_src, width_src)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    logical, intent(in), optional :: is_visible, is_parton, is_gauge
    logical, intent(in), optional :: is_left_handed, is_right_handed
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: name, anti
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: tex_name, tex_anti
    integer, intent(in), optional :: spin_type, isospin_type
    integer, intent(in), optional :: charge_type, color_type
    type(parameter_t), intent(in), optional, pointer :: mass_src, width_src
    integer :: j
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    logical, parameter :: is_stable = .true.
    logical, parameter :: decays_isotropically = .false.
    logical, parameter :: decays_diagonal = .false.
    logical, parameter :: p_polarized = .false.
    logical, parameter :: a_polarized = .false.
    call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
        is_visible, is_parton, is_gauge, is_left_handed, is_right_handed, &
        is_stable, decays_isotropically, decays_diagonal, &
        is_stable, decays_isotropically, decays_diagonal, &
        p_polarized, a_polarized, &
        name, anti, tex_name, tex_anti, &
        spin_type, isospin_type, charge_type, color_type, &
        mass_src, width_src)
    if (present (name)) then
        aval = particle_data_get_pdg (model%prt(i))
        do j = 1, size (name)
            call var_list_append_pdg_array &
                (model%var_list, name(j), aval, locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
        end do
    end if
    if (present (anti)) then

```

```

        aval = - particle_data_get_pdg (model%prt(i))
        do j = 1, size (anti)
            call var_list_append_pdg_array &
                (model%var_list, anti(j), aval, locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine model_set_particle_data

```

Mark a particle as unstable and provide a list of names for its decay processes. In contrast with the previous subroutine which is for internal use, we address the particle by its PDG code. If the index is negative, we address the antiparticle.

*(Models: public)+≡*

```

public :: model_set_unstable
public :: model_set_stable

```

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine model_set_unstable (model, pdg, decay, isotropic, diagonal)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: decay
    logical, intent(in), optional :: isotropic, diagonal
    integer :: i
    i = model_get_particle_index (model, pdg)
    if (pdg > 0) then
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
            p_is_stable = .false., p_decay = decay, &
            p_decays_isotropically = isotropic, &
            p_decays_diagonal = diagonal)
    else
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
            a_is_stable = .false., a_decay = decay, &
            a_decays_isotropically = isotropic, &
            a_decays_diagonal = diagonal)
    end if
end subroutine model_set_unstable

subroutine model_set_stable (model, pdg)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    integer :: i
    i = model_get_particle_index (model, pdg)
    if (pdg > 0) then
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
            p_is_stable = .true.)
    else
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
            a_is_stable = .true.)
    end if
end subroutine model_set_stable

```

Mark a particle as polarized.

*(Models: public)+≡*

```

public :: model_set_polarized
public :: model_set_unpolarized

```



*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_set_polarized (model, pdg)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  integer :: i
  i = model_get_particle_index (model, pdg)
  if (pdg > 0) then
    call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
      p_polarized = .true.)
  else
    call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
      a_polarized = .true.)
  end if
end subroutine model_set_polarized

```

```

subroutine model_set_unpolarized (model, pdg)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  integer :: i
  i = model_get_particle_index (model, pdg)
  if (pdg > 0) then
    call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
      p_polarized = .false.)
  else
    call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), &
      a_polarized = .false.)
  end if
end subroutine model_set_unpolarized

```

Revert all polarized (unstable) particles to unpolarized (stable) status, respectively.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

public :: model_clear_unstable
public :: model_clear_polarized

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_clear_unstable (model)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    associate (prt => model%prt(i))
      if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt, .false.)) then
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), p_is_stable = .true.)
      end if
      if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
        if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (prt, .true.)) then
          call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), a_is_stable = .true.)
        end if
      end if
    end associate
  end do
end subroutine model_clear_unstable

subroutine model_clear_polarized (model)

```

```

type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
integer :: i
do i = 1, size (model%prt)
  associate (prt => model%prt(i))
    if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .false.)) then
      call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), p_polarized = .false.)
    end if
    if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) then
      if (particle_data_is_polarized (prt, .true.)) then
        call particle_data_set (model%prt(i), a_polarized = .false.)
      end if
    end if
  end associate
end do
end subroutine model_clear_polarized

```

Finalize the particle data: allocate zero-sized arrays for particle name as defaults.

```

<Models: procedures>+≡
subroutine model_freeze_particle_data (model, i)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  call particle_data_freeze (model%prt(i))
end subroutine model_freeze_particle_data

```

Return the total number of particles in the model.

```

<Models: public>+≡
public :: model_get_n_particles

<Models: procedures>+≡
function model_get_n_particles (model) result (n)
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  integer :: n
  n = size (model%prt)
end function model_get_n_particles

```

Find the index that belongs to a particle.

```

<Models: procedures>+≡
function model_get_particle_index (model, pdg, nocheck) result (index)
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  logical, intent(in), optional :: nocheck
  integer :: index
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    if (model%prt(i)%pdg == abs (pdg)) then
      index = i; return
    end if
  end do
  if (present (nocheck)) then
    if (nocheck) then
      index = 0
    end if
  end if
end function model_get_particle_index

```

```

        return
    end if
end if
write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A,1x,A)" &
      "No particle with PDG code", pdg, &
      "is contained in model", &
      char (model_get_name (model)))
call msg_fatal ()
end function model_get_particle_index

```

Return a pointer to the particle-data object that belongs to the specified PDG code. If enabled, use a fallback model if the code is not found in the current model.

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: model_get_particle_ptr

<Models: procedures>+≡
    function model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg, alt_model) result (prt)
        type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: alt_model
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        integer :: i
        prt => null ()
        if (pdg /= UNDEFINED) then
            i = model_get_particle_index (model, pdg, nocheck = present (alt_model))
            if (i > 0) then
                prt => model%prt(i)
            else if (present (alt_model)) then
                i = model_get_particle_index (alt_model, pdg, nocheck = .true.)
                if (i > 0) then
                    prt => alt_model%prt(i)
                else
                    write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A,1x,A,1x,A,1x,A)" &
                          "No particle with PDG code", pdg, &
                          "is contained in models", &
                          char (model_get_name (model)), "or", &
                          char (model_get_name (alt_model)))
                    call msg_fatal ()
                end if
            end if
        end if
    end function model_get_particle_ptr

```

Test if a particle with the given PDG code exists in the model.

```

<Models: public>+≡
    public :: model_test_particle

<Models: procedures>+≡
    function model_test_particle (model, pdg) result (exists)
        logical :: exists
        type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg

```

```

integer :: i
prt => null ()
if (pdg /= UNDEFINED) then
  do i = 1, size (model%prt)
    if (model%prt(i)%pdg == abs (pdg)) then
      prt => model%prt(i); exit
    end if
  end do
  exists = associated(prt)
else
  exists = .false.
end if
end function model_test_particle

```

Set the value, not the pointer. If the PDG code is not valid, do nothing.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

public :: model_set_particle_mass
public :: model_set_particle_width

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_set_particle_mass (model, pdg, mass)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  real(default), intent(in) :: mass
  type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
  prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg)
  if (associated (prt)) call particle_data_set_mass (prt, mass)
end subroutine model_set_particle_mass

subroutine model_set_particle_width (model, pdg, width)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  real(default), intent(in) :: width
  type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
  prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg)
  if (associated (prt)) call particle_data_set_width (prt, width)
end subroutine model_set_particle_width

```

Return the PDG code that matches a particle name or belongs to a particle index.

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

public :: model_get_particle_pdg

```

*<Models: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface model_get_particle_pdg
  module procedure model_get_particle_pdg_name
  module procedure model_get_particle_pdg_index
end interface model_get_particle_pdg

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

function model_get_particle_pdg_name (model, name) result (pdg)
  integer :: pdg
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name

```

```

integer :: i
pdg = UNDEFINED
do i = 1, size (model%prt)
  if (model%prt(i)%longname == name) then
    pdg = particle_data_get_pdg (model%prt(i)); exit
  else if (any (model%prt(i)%name == name)) then
    pdg = particle_data_get_pdg (model%prt(i)); exit
  else if (any (model%prt(i)%anti == name)) then
    pdg = - particle_data_get_pdg (model%prt(i)); exit
  end if
end do
if (pdg == UNDEFINED) then
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A,1x,A,1x,A)") &
    "No particle with name '", char (name), &
    "' is contained in model", &
    char (model_get_name (model))
  call msg_fatal ()
end if
end function model_get_particle_pdg_name

function model_get_particle_pdg_index (model, index) result (pdg)
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: index
  integer :: pdg
  pdg = model%prt(index)%pdg
end function model_get_particle_pdg_index

```

Return a pointer to the variable list.

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_get_var_list_ptr

<Models: procedures>+≡
  function model_get_var_list_ptr (model) result (var_list)
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    var_list => model%var_list
  end function model_get_var_list_ptr

```

Vertex definition.

```

<Models: interfaces>+≡
  interface model_set_vertex
    module procedure model_set_vertex_pdg
    module procedure model_set_vertex_names
  end interface

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_set_vertex_pdg (model, i, pdg)
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
    call vertex_init (model%vtx(i), pdg, model)
  end subroutine model_set_vertex_pdg

  subroutine model_set_vertex_names (model, i, name)

```

```

type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
integer, intent(in) :: i
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: name
integer, dimension(size(name)) :: pdg
integer :: j
do j = 1, size (name)
    pdg(j) = model_get_particle_pdg (model, name(j))
end do
call vertex_init (model%vtx(i), pdg, model)
end subroutine model_set_vertex_names

```

Lookup functions

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: model_match_vertex
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_match_vertex (model, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3)
type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
integer, intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2
integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pdg3
call vertex_table_match (model%vt, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3)
end subroutine model_match_vertex

```

*<Models: public>+≡*

```
public :: model_check_vertex
```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

function model_check_vertex (model, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3) result (flag)
logical :: flag
type(model_t), intent(in) :: model
integer, intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2, pdg3
flag = vertex_table_check (model%vt, pdg1, pdg2, pdg3)
end function model_check_vertex

```

### 6.1.8 Reading models from file

This procedure defines the model-file syntax for the parser, returning an internal file (ifile).

Note that arithmetic operators are defined as keywords in the expression syntax, so we exclude them here.

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine define_model_file_syntax (ifile)
type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ model_def = model_name_def " // &
    "parameters derived_pars external_pars particles vertices")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ model_name_def = model model_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY model")
call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO model_name = '...'" // &
    "...'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ parameters = parameter_def*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ parameter_def = parameter par_name " // &
    "'=' any_real_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT any_real_value = " &

```

```

// "neg_real_value | pos_real_value | real_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ neg_real_value = '-' real_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ pos_real_value = '+' real_value")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY parameter")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE par_name")
! call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '='")          !!! Key already exists
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ derived_pars = derived_def*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ derived_def = derived par_name " // &
"'" '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY derived")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ external_pars = external_def*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ external_def = external par_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY external")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ particles = particle_def*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ particle_def = particle prt_longname " // &
"prt_pdg prt_details")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY particle")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE prt_longname")
call ifile_append (ifile, "INT prt_pdg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT prt_details = prt_src | prt_properties")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_src = like prt_longname prt_properties")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY like")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_properties = prt_property*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT prt_property = " // &
"parton | invisible | gauge | left | right | " // &
"prt_name | prt_anti | prt_tex_name | prt_tex_anti | " // &
"prt_spin | prt_isospin | prt_charge | " // &
"prt_color | prt_mass | prt_width")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY parton")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY invisible")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY gauge")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY left")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY right")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_name = name name_def+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_anti = anti name_def+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_tex_name = tex_name name_def")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_tex_anti = tex_anti name_def")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY anti")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY tex_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY tex_anti")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT name_def = name_string | name_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO name_string = '...'"")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE name_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_spin = spin frac")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY spin")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_isospin = isospin frac")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY isospin")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_charge = charge frac")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY charge")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_color = color integer_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY color")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_mass = mass par_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY mass")

```

```

    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_width = width par_name")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY width")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ vertices = vertex_def*")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ vertex_def = vertex name_def+")
    call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY vertex")
    call define_expr_syntax (ifile, particles=.false., analysis=.false.)
end subroutine define_model_file_syntax

```

The model-file syntax and lexer are fixed, therefore stored as module variables:

*<Models: variables>+≡*

```

    type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_model_file

```

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

    public :: syntax_model_file_init

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine syntax_model_file_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        call define_model_file_syntax (ifile)
        call syntax_init (syntax_model_file, ifile)
        call ifile_final (ifile)
    end subroutine syntax_model_file_init

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine lexer_init_model_file (lexer)
        type(lexer_t), intent(out) :: lexer
        call lexer_init (lexer, &
            comment_chars = "#!", &
            quote_chars = '"{', &
            quote_match = '"}', &
            single_chars = "():", &
            special_class = (/ "+-*/^", "<>= " /), &
            keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_model_file))
    end subroutine lexer_init_model_file

```

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

    public :: syntax_model_file_final

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine syntax_model_file_final ()
        call syntax_final (syntax_model_file)
    end subroutine syntax_model_file_final

```

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

    public :: syntax_model_file_write

```

*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine syntax_model_file_write (unit)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        call syntax_write (syntax_model_file, unit)
    end subroutine syntax_model_file_write

```

*<Models: public>+≡*

```

    public :: model_read

```



*<Models: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine model_read (model, filename, os_data, exist)
  type(model_t), intent(out), target :: model
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  logical, intent(out) :: exist
  type(string_t) :: file
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  integer :: unit
  character(32) :: model_md5sum
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_model_def, nd_model_name_def
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_parameters, nd_derived_pars
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_external_pars
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_particles, nd_vertices
  type(string_t) :: model_name, lib_name
  integer :: n_par, n_der, n_ext, n_prt, n_vtx
  real(c_default_float), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
  integer :: i
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_par_def
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_der_def
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_ext_def
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_prt
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_vtx
  type(pdg_array_t) :: prt_undefined
  file = filename
  inquire (file=char(file), exist=exist)
  if ((.not. exist) .and. (.not. os_data%use_testfiles)) then
    file = os_data%whizard_modelpath_local // "/" // filename
    inquire (file = char (file), exist = exist)
  end if
  if (.not. exist) then
    file = os_data%whizard_modelpath // "/" // filename
    inquire (file = char (file), exist = exist)
  end if
  if (.not. exist) then
    call msg_fatal ("Model file '" // char (filename) // "' not found")
    return
  end if
  if (logging) call msg_message ("Reading model file '" // char (file) // "'")
  call lexer_init_model_file (lexer)
  unit = free_unit ()
  open (file=char(file), unit=unit, action="read", status="old")
  model_md5sum = md5sum (unit)
  close (unit)
  call stream_init (stream, char (file))
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  call parse_tree_init (model%parse_tree, syntax_model_file, lexer)
  call stream_final (stream)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
  ! call parse_tree_write (parse_tree)      !!! Debugging
  nd_model_def => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (model%parse_tree)
  nd_model_name_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_model_def)
  model_name = parse_node_get_string &

```

```

        (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_model_name_def, 2))
nd_parameters => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_model_name_def)
if (associated (nd_parameters)) then
    if (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_parameters) == "parameters") then
        n_par = parse_node_get_n_sub (nd_parameters)
        nd_par_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_parameters)
        nd_derived_pars => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_parameters)
    else
        n_par = 0
        nd_derived_pars => nd_parameters
        nd_parameters => null ()
    end if
else
    n_par = 0
    nd_derived_pars => null ()
end if
if (associated (nd_derived_pars)) then
    if (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_derived_pars) == "derived_pars") then
        n_der = parse_node_get_n_sub (nd_derived_pars)
        nd_der_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_derived_pars)
        nd_external_pars => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_derived_pars)
    else
        n_der = 0
        nd_external_pars => nd_derived_pars
        nd_derived_pars => null ()
    end if
else
    n_der = 0
    nd_external_pars => null ()
end if
if (associated (nd_external_pars)) then
    if (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_external_pars) == "external_pars") then
        n_ext = parse_node_get_n_sub (nd_external_pars)
        lib_name = "external." // model_name
        nd_ext_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_external_pars)
        nd_particles => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_external_pars)
    else
        n_ext = 0
        lib_name = ""
        nd_particles => nd_external_pars
        nd_external_pars => null ()
    end if
else
    n_ext = 0
    lib_name = ""
    nd_particles => null ()
end if
if (associated (nd_particles)) then
    if (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_particles) == "particles") then
        n_prt = parse_node_get_n_sub (nd_particles)
        nd_prt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_particles)
        nd_vertices => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_particles)
    else
        n_prt = 0

```

```

        nd_vertices => nd_particles
        nd_particles => null ()
    end if
else
    n_prt = 0
    nd_vertices => null ()
end if
if (associated (nd_vertices)) then
    n_vtx = parse_node_get_n_sub (nd_vertices)
    nd_vtx => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_vertices)
else
    n_vtx = 0
end if
call model_init (model, model_name, lib_name, os_data, &
    n_par + n_der + n_ext, n_prt, n_vtx)
model%md5sum = model_md5sum
do i = 1, n_par
    call model_read_parameter (model, i, nd_par_def)
    nd_par_def => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_par_def)
end do
do i = n_par + 1, n_par + n_der
    call model_read_derived (model, i, nd_der_def)
    nd_der_def => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_der_def)
end do
do i = n_par + n_der + 1, n_par + n_der + n_ext
    call model_read_external (model, i, nd_ext_def)
    nd_ext_def => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_ext_def)
end do
if (associated (model% init_external_parameters)) then
    call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, par)
    call model% init_external_parameters (par)
    call model_parameters_from_c_array (model, par)
end if
prt_undefined = UNDEFINED
call var_list_append_pdg_array &
    (model%var_list, var_str ("particle"), &
    prt_undefined, locked = .true., intrinsic=.true.)
do i = 1, n_prt
    call model_read_particle (model, i, nd_prt)
    nd_prt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_prt)
end do
do i = 1, n_vtx
    call model_read_vertex (model, i, nd_vtx)
    nd_vtx => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_vtx)
end do
call var_list_append_pdg_array &
    (model%var_list, var_str ("charged"), &
    particle_data_get_charged_pdg (model%prt), locked = .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_pdg_array &
    (model%var_list, var_str ("colored"), &
    particle_data_get_colored_pdg (model%prt), locked = .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
end subroutine model_read

```

Parameters are real values (literal) with an optional unit.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_read_parameter (model, i, node)
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node_name, node_val
  type(string_t) :: name
  node_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2)
  name = parse_node_get_string (node_name)
  node_val => parse_node_get_next_ptr (node_name, 2)
  call model_set_parameter (model, i, name, node_val, constant=.true.)
end subroutine model_read_parameter

```

Derived parameters have any numeric expression as their definition.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_read_derived (model, i, node)
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
  type(string_t) :: name
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr
  name = parse_node_get_string (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2))
  pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 4)
  call model_set_parameter (model, i, name, pn_expr, constant=.false.)
end subroutine model_read_derived

```

External parameters have no definition; they are handled by an external library.

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_read_external (model, i, node)
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node
  type(string_t) :: name
  name = parse_node_get_string (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2))
  call model_set_parameter_external (model, i, name)
end subroutine model_read_external

```

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_read_particle (model, i, node)
  type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_src, nd_props, nd_prop
  type(string_t) :: longname
  integer :: pdg
  type(string_t) :: name_src
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name
  longname = parse_node_get_string (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2))
  pdg = parse_node_get_integer (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 3))
  call model_init_particle (model, i, longname, pdg)

```

```

nd_src => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 4)
if (associated (nd_src)) then
  if (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_src) == "prt_src") then
    name_src = parse_node_get_string (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_src, 2))
    call model_copy_particle_data (model, i, name_src)
    nd_props => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_src, 3)
  else
    nd_props => nd_src
  end if
nd_prop => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_props)
do while (associated (nd_prop))
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_prop)))
  case ("invisible")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, is_visible=.false.)
  case ("parton")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, is_parton=.true.)
  case ("gauge")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, is_gauge=.true.)
  case ("left")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, is_left_handed=.true.)
  case ("right")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, is_right_handed=.true.)
  case ("prt_name")
    call read_names (nd_prop, name)
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, name=name)
  case ("prt_anti")
    call read_names (nd_prop, name)
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, anti=name)
  case ("prt_tex_name")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      tex_name = parse_node_get_string &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2)))
  case ("prt_tex_anti")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      tex_anti = parse_node_get_string &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2)))
  case ("prt_spin")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      spin_type = read_frac &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2), 2))
  case ("prt_isospin")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      isospin_type = read_frac &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2), 2))
  case ("prt_charge")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      charge_type = read_frac &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2), 3))
  case ("prt_color")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
      color_type = parse_node_get_integer &
      (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2)))
  case ("prt_mass")
    call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &

```

```

        mass_src = model_get_parameter_ptr &
        (model, parse_node_get_string &
        (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2)))
    case ("prt_width")
        call model_set_particle_data (model, i, &
        width_src = model_get_parameter_ptr &
        (model, parse_node_get_string &
        (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_prop, 2)))
    case default
        call msg_bug (" Unknown particle property '" &
        // char (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_prop)) // "'")
    end select
    if (allocated (name)) deallocate (name)
    nd_prop => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_prop)
end do
end if
call model_freeze_particle_data (model, i)
end subroutine model_read_particle

```

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine model_read_vertex (model, i, node)
    type(model_t), intent(inout) :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name
    call read_names (node, name)
    call model_set_vertex (model, i, name)
end subroutine model_read_vertex

```

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine read_names (node, name)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: node
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: name
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_name
    integer :: n_names, i
    n_names = parse_node_get_n_sub (node) - 1
    allocate (name (n_names))
    nd_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2)
    do i = 1, n_names
        name(i) = parse_node_get_string (nd_name)
        nd_name => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_name)
    end do
end subroutine read_names

```

*(Models: procedures)*+≡

```

function read_frac (nd_frac, base) result (qn_type)
    integer :: qn_type
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in) :: nd_frac
    integer, intent(in) :: base
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: nd_num, nd_den
    integer :: num, den
    nd_num => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_frac)
    nd_den => parse_node_get_next_ptr (nd_num)

```

```

select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (nd_num)))
case ("integer_literal")
    num = parse_node_get_integer (nd_num)
case ("neg_int")
    num = - parse_node_get_integer (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_num, 2))
case ("pos_int")
    num = parse_node_get_integer (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_num, 2))
case default
    call parse_tree_bug (nd_num, "int|neg_int|pos_int")
end select
if (associated (nd_den)) then
    den = parse_node_get_integer (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (nd_den, 2))
else
    den = 1
end if
if (den == 1) then
    qn_type = sign (1 + abs (num) * base, num)
else if (den == base) then
    qn_type = sign (abs (num) + 1, num)
else
    call parse_node_write_rec (nd_frac)
    call msg_fatal (" Fractional quantum number: wrong denominator")
end if
end function read_frac

```

### 6.1.9 Model list

List of currently active models

```

⟨Models: types⟩+≡
type :: model_entry_t
type(model_t) :: model
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type model_entry_t

⟨Models: public⟩+≡
public :: model_list_t

⟨Models: types⟩+≡
type :: model_list_t
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
contains
⟨Models: model list: TBP⟩
end type model_list_t

```

Write an account of the model list.

```

⟨Models: model list: TBP⟩≡
procedure :: write => model_list_write

⟨Models: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine model_list_write (object, unit, verbose)
class(model_list_t), intent(in) :: object

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
current => object%first
if (associated (current)) then
  do while (associated (current))
    call model_write (current%model, unit, verbose)
    current => current%next
    if (associated (current)) write (u, *)
  end do
end if
end subroutine model_list_write

```

Add a new model with given name to the list, if it does not yet exist. If successful, return a pointer to the new model.

```

<Models: model list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: add => model_list_add

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_list_add (model_list, &
    name, os_data, n_par, n_prt, n_vtx, model)
    class(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    integer, intent(in) :: n_par, n_prt, n_vtx
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
    if (model_list%model_exists (name)) then
      model => null ()
    else
      allocate (current)
      if (associated (model_list%first)) then
        model_list%last%next => current
      else
        model_list%first => current
      end if
      model_list%last => current
      model => current%model
      call model_init (model, name, var_str (""), os_data, &
        n_par, n_prt, n_vtx)
    end if
  end subroutine model_list_add

```

Read a new model from file and add to the list, if it does not yet exist. Finalize the model by allocating the vertex table. Return a pointer to the new model. If unsuccessful, return the original pointer.

```

<Models: model list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_model => model_list_read_model

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_list_read_model (model_list, name, filename, os_data, model)
    class(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list

```



```

type(string_t), intent(in) :: name, filename
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
logical :: exist
if (.not. model_list%model_exists (name)) then
    allocate (current)
    call model_read (current%model, filename, os_data, exist)
    if (.not. exist) return
    if (current%model%name /= name) then
        call msg_fatal ("Model file '" // char (filename) // &
            "' contains model '" // char (current%model%name) // &
            "' instead of '" // char (name) // "'")
        call model_final (current%model); deallocate (current)
        return
    end if
    if (associated (model_list%first)) then
        model_list%last%next => current
    else
        model_list%first => current
    end if
    model_list%last => current
    call vertex_table_init &
        (current%model%vt, current%model%prt, current%model%vtx)
    model => current%model
else
    model => model_list%get_model_ptr (name)
end if
end subroutine model_list_read_model

```

Check if a model exists by examining the list

*(Models: model list: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: model_exists => model_list_model_exists

```

*(Models: procedures)+≡*

```

function model_list_model_exists (model_list, name) result (exists)
class(model_list_t), intent(in) :: model_list
logical :: exists
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
current => model_list%first
do while (associated (current))
    if (current%model%name == name) then
        exists = .true.
        return
    end if
    current => current%next
end do
exists = .false.
end function model_list_model_exists

```

Return a pointer to a named model

*(Models: model list: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_model_ptr => model_list_get_model_ptr

```

```

⟨Models: procedures⟩+≡
function model_list_get_model_ptr (model_list, name) result (model)
  class(model_list_t), intent(in) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
  current => model_list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (current%model%name == name) then
      model => current%model
      return
    end if
    current => current%next
  end do
  model => null ()
end function model_list_get_model_ptr

```

Delete the list of models

```

⟨Models: model list: TBP⟩+≡
procedure :: final => model_list_final

⟨Models: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine model_list_final (model_list)
  class(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
  type(model_entry_t), pointer :: current
  model_list%last => null ()
  do while (associated (model_list%first))
    current => model_list%first
    model_list%first => model_list%first%next
    call model_final (current%model)
    deallocate (current)
  end do
end subroutine model_list_final

```

### 6.1.10 Model instances

A model instance is a copy of a model object. The parameters are true copies. The particle data and the variable list pointers should point to the copy, so modifying the parameters has only a local effect. Hence, we build them up explicitly. The vertex array is also rebuilt, it contains particle pointers. Finally, the vertex hash table can be copied directly since it contains no pointers.

The multiplicity entry depends on the association of the `mass_src` entry and therefore has to be set at the end.

The instance must carry the `target` attribute.

```

⟨Models: public⟩+≡
public :: model_init_instance

⟨Models: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine model_init_instance (model, orig)
  type(model_t), intent(out), target :: model
  type(model_t), intent(in) :: orig
  integer :: n_par, n_prt, n_vtx

```

```

integer :: i, j
type(pdg_array_t) :: prt_undefined
type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
n_par = size (orig%par)
n_prt = size (orig%prt)
n_vtx = size (orig%vtx)
call model_basic_init (model, orig%name, n_par, n_prt, n_vtx)
model%md5sum = orig%md5sum
do i = 1, n_par
    call model_copy_parameter (model, i, orig%par(i))
end do
prt_undefined = UNDEFINED
call var_list_append_pdg_array &
    (model%var_list, var_str ("particle"), &
    prt_undefined, locked = .true., intrinsic=.true.)
do i = 1, n_prt
    associate (prt => model%prt(i))
        associate (prt_src => orig%prt(i))
            call model_init_particle (model, i, prt_src%longname, prt_src%pdg)
            call particle_data_copy (prt, prt_src)
            if (associated (prt_src%mass_src)) then
                prt%mass_src => &
                    model_get_parameter_ptr (model, prt_src%mass_src%name)
                prt%mass_val => parameter_get_value_ptr (prt%mass_src)
            end if
            if (associated (prt_src%width_src)) then
                prt%width_src => &
                    model_get_parameter_ptr (model, prt_src%width_src%name)
                prt%width_val => parameter_get_value_ptr (prt%width_src)
            end if
            call particle_data_set_multiplicity (prt)
        end associate
        aval = particle_data_get_pdg (prt)
        do j = 1, size (prt%name)
            call var_list_append_pdg_array &
                (model%var_list, prt%name(j), aval, locked=.true., &
                intrinsic=.true.)
        end do
        if (prt%has_antiparticle) then
            aval = - particle_data_get_pdg (prt)
            do j = 1, size (prt%anti)
                call var_list_append_pdg_array &
                    (model%var_list, prt%anti(j), aval, locked=.true., &
                    intrinsic=.true.)
            end do
        end if
    end associate
end do
model%init_external_parameters => orig%init_external_parameters
call model_parameters_update (model)
do i = 1, n_vtx
    call vertex_init (model%vtx(i), orig%vtx(i)%pdg, model)
end do
model%vt = orig%vt

```

```

call var_list_append_pdg_array &
  (model%var_list, var_str ("charged"), &
   particle_data_get_charged_pdg (model%prt), locked = .true., &
   intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_pdg_array &
  (model%var_list, var_str ("colored"), &
   particle_data_get_colored_pdg (model%prt), locked = .true., &
   intrinsic=.true.)
end subroutine model_init_instance

```

Turn a pointer to a model into a true copy, i.e., a new instance.

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: model_pointer_to_instance

<Models: procedures>+≡
  subroutine model_pointer_to_instance (model)
    type(model_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: model
    type(model_t), pointer :: model_tmp
    model_tmp => model
    allocate (model)
    call model_init_instance (model, model_tmp)
  end subroutine model_pointer_to_instance

```

### 6.1.11 Unit tests

```

<Models: public>+≡
  public :: models_test

<Models: tests>≡
  subroutine models_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Models: execute tests>
  end subroutine models_test

```

### Construct a Model

Here, we construct a toy model explicitly without referring to a file.

```

<Models: execute tests>≡
  call test (models_1, "models_1", &
    "construct model", &
    u, results)

<Models: tests>+≡
  subroutine models_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t) :: x_longname
    type(string_t), dimension(2) :: parname

```

```

type(string_t), dimension(2) :: x_name
type(string_t), dimension(1) :: x_anti
type(string_t) :: x_tex_name, x_tex_anti
type(string_t) :: y_longname
type(string_t), dimension(2) :: y_name
type(string_t) :: y_tex_name

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: models_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: create a model"
write (u, *)

model_name = "Test model"
call model_list%add (model_name, os_data, 2, 2, 3, model)
parname(1) = "mx"
parname(2) = "coup"
call model_set_parameter (model, 1, parname(1), 10._default)
call model_set_parameter (model, 2, parname(2), 1.3_default)
x_longname = "X_LEPTON"
x_name(1) = "X"
x_name(2) = "x"
x_anti(1) = "Xbar"
x_tex_name = "X^+"
x_tex_anti = "X^-"
call model_init_particle (model, 1, x_longname, 99)
call model_set_particle_data (model, 1, &
    .true., .false., .false., .false., .false., &
    x_name, x_anti, x_tex_name, x_tex_anti, &
    SPINOR, -3, 2, 1, model_get_parameter_ptr (model, parname(1)))
y_longname = "Y_COLORON"
y_name(1) = "Y"
y_name(2) = "yc"
y_tex_name = "Y^0"
call model_init_particle (model, 2, y_longname, 97)
call model_set_particle_data (model, 2, &
    .false., .false., .true., .false., .false., &
    name=y_name, tex_name=y_tex_name, &
    spin_type=SCALAR, isospin_type=2, charge_type=1, color_type=8)
call model_set_vertex (model, 1, (/ 99, 99, 99 /))
call model_set_vertex (model, 2, (/ 99, 99, 99, 99 /))
call model_set_vertex (model, 3, (/ 99, 97, 99 /))
call model_list%write (u)

call model_list%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: models_1"

end subroutine models_1

```

## Read a Model

Read a predefined model from file.

*(Models: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (models_2, "models_2", &
          "read model", &
          u, results)
<Models: tests>+≡
subroutine models_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: models_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: read a model from file"
  write (u, *)

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)

  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"), &
                             os_data, model)
  call model_list%write (u)

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Variable list"
  write (u, *)

  call var_list_write (model%var_list, u)

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call model_list%final ()
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: models_2"

end subroutine models_2

```

## Model Instance

Read a predefined model from file and create an instance.

```

<Models: execute tests>+≡
call test (models_3, "models_3", &
          "model instance", &
          u, results)
<Models: tests>+≡
subroutine models_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(model_t), pointer :: instance

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: models_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: create a model instance"
write (u, *)

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)
allocate (instance)
call model_init_instance (instance, model)

call model_write (instance, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Variable list"
write (u, *)

call var_list_write (instance%var_list, u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_final (instance)
deallocate (instance)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: models_3"

end subroutine models_3

```

## Unstable and Polarized Particles

Read a predefined model from file and define decays and polarization.

```

<Models: execute tests>+≡
    call test (models_4, "models_4", &
        "handle decays and polarization", &
        u, results)

<Models: tests>+≡
    subroutine models_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model, model_instance
        character(32) :: md5sum

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: models_4"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: set and unset decays and polarization"

```

```

write (u, *)

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Read model from file"

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)

md5sum = model_get_parameters_md5sum (model)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,3A)")  "MD5 sum (parameters) = '", md5sum, "'"

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set particle decays and polarization"
write (u, *)

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [var_str ("dec1"), var_str ("dec2")])
call model_set_polarized (model, 6)
call model_set_unstable (model, -6, [var_str ("fdec")])

call model_write (model, u)

md5sum = model_get_parameters_md5sum (model)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,3A)")  "MD5 sum (parameters) = '", md5sum, "'"

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a model instance"

allocate (model_instance)
call model_init_instance (model_instance, model)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Revert particle decays and polarization"
write (u, *)

call model_set_stable (model, 25)
call model_set_unpolarized (model, 6)
call model_set_stable (model, -6)

call model_write (model, u)

md5sum = model_get_parameters_md5sum (model)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,3A)")  "MD5 sum (parameters) = '", md5sum, "'"

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Show the model instance"
write (u, *)

call model_write (model_instance, u)

```



```

md5sum = model_get_parameters_md5sum (model_instance)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,3A)") "MD5 sum (parameters) = '", md5sum, "'"

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_final (model_instance)
deallocate (model_instance)
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: models_4"

end subroutine models_4

```

## 6.2 Automatic generation of process components

This module provides the functionality for automatically generating radiation corrections or decays, provided as lists of PDG codes.

```

<auto_components.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module auto_components

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use os_interface
    use unit_tests
    use pdg_arrays
    use models

    <Standard module head>

    <Auto components: public>

    <Auto components: types>

    <Auto components: interfaces>

    contains

    <Auto components: procedures>

    <Auto components: tests>

  end module auto_components

```

### 6.2.1 Constraints: Abstract types

An abstract type that denotes a constraint on the automatically generated states. The concrete objects are applied as visitor objects at certain hooks during the splitting algorithm.

```

⟨Auto components: types⟩≡
  type, abstract :: split_constraint_t
  contains
    ⟨Auto components: split constraint: TBP⟩
  end type split_constraint_t

```

By default, all checks return true.

```

⟨Auto components: split constraint: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: check_before_split => split_constraint_check_before_split
  procedure :: check_before_insert => split_constraint_check_before_insert
  procedure :: check_before_record => split_constraint_check_before_record

⟨Auto components: procedures⟩≡
  subroutine split_constraint_check_before_split (c, table, pl, k, passed)
    class(split_constraint_t), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    passed = .true.
  end subroutine split_constraint_check_before_split

  subroutine split_constraint_check_before_insert (c, table, pa, pl, passed)
    class(split_constraint_t), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    passed = .true.
  end subroutine split_constraint_check_before_insert

  subroutine split_constraint_check_before_record (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
    class(split_constraint_t), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    passed = .true.
  end subroutine split_constraint_check_before_record

```

A transparent wrapper, so we can collect constraints of different type.

```

⟨Auto components: types⟩+≡
  type :: split_constraint_wrap_t
    class(split_constraint_t), allocatable :: c
  end type split_constraint_wrap_t

```

A collection of constraints.

```

⟨Auto components: public⟩≡

```

```

    public :: split_constraints_t
  <Auto components: types>+≡
    type :: split_constraints_t
      class(split_constraint_wrap_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: cc
      contains
      <Auto components: split constraints: TBP>
    end type split_constraints_t

```

Initialize the constraints set with a specific number of elements.

```

  <Auto components: split constraints: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => split_constraints_init

  <Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine split_constraints_init (constraints, n)
      class(split_constraints_t), intent(out) :: constraints
      integer, intent(in) :: n
      allocate (constraints%cc (n))
    end subroutine split_constraints_init

```

Set a constraint.

```

  <Auto components: split constraints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set => split_constraints_set

  <Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine split_constraints_set (constraints, i, c)
      class(split_constraints_t), intent(inout) :: constraints
      integer, intent(in) :: i
      class(split_constraint_t), intent(in) :: c
      allocate (constraints%cc(i)%c, source = c)
    end subroutine split_constraints_set

```

Apply checks.

`check_before_split` is applied to the particle list that we want to split.

`check_before_insert` is applied to the particle list `pl` that is to replace the particle `pa` that is split. This check may transform the particle list.

`check_before_record` is applied to the complete new particle list that results from splitting before it is recorded.

```

  <Auto components: split constraints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: check_before_split => split_constraints_check_before_split
    procedure :: check_before_insert => split_constraints_check_before_insert
    procedure :: check_before_record => split_constraints_check_before_record

  <Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine split_constraints_check_before_split &
      (constraints, table, pl, k, passed)
      class(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
      class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
      type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
      integer, intent(in) :: k
      logical, intent(out) :: passed
      integer :: i
      passed = .true.
      do i = 1, size (constraints%cc)

```

```

        call constraints%cc(i)%c%check_before_split (table, pl, k, passed)
        if (.not. passed) return
    end do
end subroutine split_constraints_check_before_split

subroutine split_constraints_check_before_insert &
    (constraints, table, pa, pl, passed)
    class(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    integer :: i
    passed = .true.
    do i = 1, size (constraints%cc)
        call constraints%cc(i)%c%check_before_insert (table, pa, pl, passed)
        if (.not. passed) return
    end do
end subroutine split_constraints_check_before_insert

subroutine split_constraints_check_before_record &
    (constraints, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
    class(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    integer :: i
    passed = .true.
    do i = 1, size (constraints%cc)
        call constraints%cc(i)%c%check_before_record (table, pl, n_loop, passed)
        if (.not. passed) return
    end do
end subroutine split_constraints_check_before_record

```

## 6.2.2 Specific constraints

### Number of particles

Specific constraint: The number of particles plus the number of loops, if any, must remain less than the given limit. Note that the number of loops is defined only when we are recording the entry.

*(Auto components: types)+≡*

```

type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_n_tot
    private
    integer :: n_max = 0
contains
    procedure :: check_before_split => constraint_n_tot_check_before_split
    procedure :: check_before_record => constraint_n_tot_check_before_record
end type constraint_n_tot

```

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: constrain_n_tot

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    function constrain_n_tot (n_max) result (c)
        integer, intent(in) :: n_max
        type(constraint_n_tot) :: c
        c%n_max = n_max
    end function constrain_n_tot

    subroutine constraint_n_tot_check_before_split (c, table, pl, k, passed)
        class(constraint_n_tot), intent(in) :: c
        class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
        type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        logical, intent(out) :: passed
        passed = pl%get_size () < c%n_max
    end subroutine constraint_n_tot_check_before_split

    subroutine constraint_n_tot_check_before_record (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
        class(constraint_n_tot), intent(in) :: c
        class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
        type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
        logical, intent(out) :: passed
        passed = pl%get_size () + n_loop <= c%n_max
    end subroutine constraint_n_tot_check_before_record

```

## Number of loops

Specific constraint: The number of loops is limited, independent of the total number of particles.

```

<Auto components: types>+≡
    type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_n_loop
        private
        integer :: n_loop_max = 0
    contains
        procedure :: check_before_record => constraint_n_loop_check_before_record
    end type constraint_n_loop

<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: constrain_n_loop

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    function constrain_n_loop (n_loop_max) result (c)
        integer, intent(in) :: n_loop_max
        type(constraint_n_loop) :: c
        c%n_loop_max = n_loop_max
    end function constrain_n_loop

    subroutine constraint_n_loop_check_before_record &
        (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
        class(constraint_n_loop), intent(in) :: c

```

```

class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
logical, intent(out) :: passed
passed = n_loop <= c%n_loop_max
end subroutine constraint_n_loop_check_before_record

```

## Particles allowed in splitting

Specific constraint: The entries in the particle list ready for insertion are matched to a given list of particle patterns. If a match occurs, the entry is replaced by the corresponding pattern. If there is no match, the check fails.

```

<Auto components: types>+≡
type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_insert
  private
  type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_match
contains
  procedure :: check_before_insert => constraint_insert_check_before_insert
end type constraint_insert

<Auto components: public>+≡
public :: constrain_insert

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function constrain_insert (pl_match) result (c)
  type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl_match
  type(constraint_insert) :: c
  c%pl_match = pl_match
end function constrain_insert

subroutine constraint_insert_check_before_insert (c, table, pa, pl, passed)
  class(constraint_insert), intent(in) :: c
  class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
  type(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
  logical, intent(out) :: passed
  call pl%match_replace (c%pl_match, passed)
end subroutine constraint_insert_check_before_insert

```

## Particles required in final state

Specific constraint: The entries in the recorded state must be a superset of the entries in the given list (for instance, the lowest-order state).

```

<Auto components: types>+≡
type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_require
  private
  type(pdg_list_t) :: pl
contains
  procedure :: check_before_record => constraint_require_check_before_record
end type constraint_require

```

We check the current state by matching all particle entries against the stored particle list, and crossing out the particles in the latter list when a match is found. The constraint passed if all entries have been crossed out.

For an `if_table` in particular, we check the final state only.

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
  public :: constrain_require

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
  function constrain_require (pl) result (c)
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    type(constraint_require) :: c
    c%pl = pl
  end function constrain_require

  subroutine constraint_require_check_before_record &
    (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
    class(constraint_require), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
    integer :: i, k, n_in
    select type (table)
    type is (if_table_t)
      n_in = 2
    class default
      n_in = 0
    end select
    allocate (mask (c%pl%get_size ()), source = .true.)
    do i = n_in + 1, pl%get_size ()
      k = c%pl%find_match (pl%get (i), mask)
      if (k /= 0) mask(k) = .false.
    end do
    passed = .not. any (mask)
  end subroutine constraint_require_check_before_record

```

## Radiation

Specific constraint: We have radiation pattern if the original particle matches an entry in the list of particles that should replace it. The constraint prohibits this situation.

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
  public :: constrain_radiation

<Auto components: types>+≡
  type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_radiation
  private
  contains
    procedure :: check_before_insert => &
      constraint_radiation_check_before_insert
  end type constraint_radiation

```

```

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function constrain_radiation () result (c)
    type(constraint_radiation) :: c
end function constrain_radiation

subroutine constraint_radiation_check_before_insert (c, table, pa, pl, passed)
    class(constraint_radiation), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(inout) :: pl
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    passed = .not. (pl .match. pa)
end subroutine constraint_radiation_check_before_insert

```

## Mass sum

Specific constraint: The sum of masses within the particle list must not exceed a given limit. For in/out state combinations, we check initial and final state separately.

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
public :: constrain_mass_sum

<Auto components: types>+≡
type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_mass_sum
    private
    real(default) :: mass_limit = 0
contains
    procedure :: check_before_record => constraint_mass_sum_check_before_record
end type constraint_mass_sum

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function constrain_mass_sum (mass_limit) result (c)
    real(default), intent(in) :: mass_limit
    type(constraint_mass_sum) :: c
    c%mass_limit = mass_limit
end function constrain_mass_sum

subroutine constraint_mass_sum_check_before_record &
    (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
    class(constraint_mass_sum), intent(in) :: c
    class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    select type (table)
    type is (if_table_t)
        passed = mass_sum (pl, 1, 2, table%model) <= c%mass_limit &
            .and. mass_sum (pl, 3, pl%get_size (), table%model) <= c%mass_limit
    class default
        passed = mass_sum (pl, 1, pl%get_size (), table%model) <= c%mass_limit
    end select
end subroutine constraint_mass_sum_check_before_record

```



## Initial state particles

Specific constraint: The two incoming particles must both match the given particle list. This is checked for the generated particle list, just before it is recorded.

```
<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: constrain_in_state

<Auto components: types>+≡
    type, extends (split_constraint_t) :: constraint_in_state
    private
        type(pdg_list_t) :: pl
    contains
        procedure :: check_before_record => constraint_in_state_check_before_record
    end type constraint_in_state

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    function constrain_in_state (pl) result (c)
        type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        type(constraint_in_state) :: c
        c%pl = pl
    end function constrain_in_state

    subroutine constraint_in_state_check_before_record &
        (c, table, pl, n_loop, passed)
        class(constraint_in_state), intent(in) :: c
        class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: table
        type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: n_loop
        logical, intent(out) :: passed
        integer :: i
        select type (table)
        type is (if_table_t)
            passed = .false.
            do i = 1, 2
                if (.not. (c%pl .match. pl%get (i))) return
            end do
        end select
        passed = .true.
    end subroutine constraint_in_state_check_before_record
```

### 6.2.3 Tables of states

Automatically generate a list of possible process components for a given initial set (a single massive particle or a preset list of states).

The set of process components are generated by recursive splitting, applying constraints on the fly that control and limit the process. The generated states are accumulated in a table that we can read out after completion.

```
<Auto components: types>+≡
    type, extends (pdg_list_t) :: ps_entry_t
        integer :: n_loop = 0
        integer :: n_rad = 0
```

```

        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: previous => null ()
        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
    end type ps_entry_t

```

This is the wrapper type for the decay tree for the list of final states and the final array. First, an abstract base type:

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: ps_table_t

<Auto components: types>+≡
    type, abstract :: ps_table_t
        private
            type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
            logical :: loops = .false.
            type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
            type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
        contains
            <Auto components: ps table: TBP>
    end type ps_table_t

```

The extensions: one for decay, one for generic final states. The decay-state table stores the initial particle. The final-state table is indifferent, and the initial/final state table treats the first two particles in its list as incoming antiparticles.

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: ds_table_t

<Auto components: types>+≡
    type, extends (ps_table_t) :: ds_table_t
        private
            integer :: pdg_in = 0
        contains
            <Auto components: ds table: TBP>
    end type ds_table_t

    type, extends (ps_table_t) :: fs_table_t
        contains
            <Auto components: fs table: TBP>
    end type fs_table_t

    type, extends (fs_table_t) :: if_table_t
        contains
            <Auto components: if table: TBP>
    end type if_table_t

```

Finalizer: we must deallocate the embedded list.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => ps_table_final

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ps_table_final (object)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: object
        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: current
        do while (associated (object%first))

```

```

        current => object%first
        object%first => current%next
        deallocate (current)
    end do
    nullify (object%last)
end subroutine ps_table_final

```

Write the table. A base writer for the body and specific writers for the headers.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: base_write => ps_table_base_write
    procedure (ps_table_write), deferred :: write

<Auto components: interfaces>≡
    interface
        subroutine ps_table_write (object, unit)
            import
            class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: object
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        end subroutine ps_table_write
    end interface

<Auto components: ds table: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => ds_table_write

<Auto components: fs table: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => fs_table_write

<Auto components: if table: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => if_table_write

```

The first `n_in` particles will be replaced by antiparticles in the output, and we write an arrow if `n_in` is present.

```

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ps_table_base_write (object, unit, n_in)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
        integer :: u, i, j, n0
        u = output_unit (unit)
        entry => object%first
        do while (associated (entry))
            write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")
            if (present (n_in)) then
                do i = 1, n_in
                    write (u, "(1x)", advance = "no")
                    pdg = entry%get (i)
                    do j = 1, size (pdg)
                        prt => model_get_particle_ptr (object%model, pdg(j))
                        if (j > 1) write (u, "(:)")", advance = "no")
                        write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") &
                            char (particle_data_get_name (prt, pdg(j) >= 0))
                    end do
                end do
            end if
            entry = entry%next
        end do
    end subroutine

```

```

        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance = "no")  "=>"
        n0 = n_in + 1
    else
        n0 = 1
    end if
    do i = n0, entry%get_size ()
        write (u, "(1x)", advance = "no")
        pdg = entry%get (i)
        do j = 1, size (pdg)
            prt => model_get_particle_ptr (object%model, pdg(j))
            if (j > 1) write (u, "(::)", advance = "no")
            write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") &
                char (particle_data_get_name (prt, pdg(j) < 0))
        end do
    end do
    if (object%loops) then
        write (u, "(2x,['I0','I0,']')") entry%n_loop, entry%n_rad
    else
        write (u, *)
    end if
    entry => entry%next
end do
end subroutine ps_table_base_write

subroutine ds_table_write (object, unit)
    class(ds_table_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    prt => model_get_particle_ptr (object%model, object%pdg_in)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,A)") "Decays for particle:", &
        char (particle_data_get_name (prt, object%pdg_in < 0))
    call object%base_write (u)
end subroutine ds_table_write

subroutine fs_table_write (object, unit)
    class(fs_table_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Table of final states:"
    call object%base_write (u)
end subroutine fs_table_write

subroutine if_table_write (object, unit)
    class(if_table_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Table of in/out states:"
    call object%base_write (u, n_in = 2)
end subroutine if_table_write

```

Initialize with a predefined set of final states, or in/out state lists.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    generic :: init => ps_table_init
    procedure, private :: ps_table_init

<Auto components: if table: TBP>+≡
    generic :: init => if_table_init
    procedure, private :: if_table_init

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ps_table_init (table, model, pl, constraints)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(out) :: table
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(pdg_list_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: pl
        type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
        logical :: passed
        integer :: i
        table%model => model
        do i = 1, size (pl)
            call table%record (pl(i), 0, 0, constraints, passed)
            if (.not. passed) then
                call msg_fatal ("Registering process components: constraint failed")
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine ps_table_init

    subroutine if_table_init (table, model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
        class(if_table_t), intent(out) :: table
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(pdg_list_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: pl_in, pl_out
        type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
        integer :: i, j, k, p, n_in, n_out
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pa_in
        type(pdg_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pl
        allocate (pl (size (pl_in) * size (pl_out)))
        k = 0
        do i = 1, size (pl_in)
            n_in = pl_in(i)%get_size ()
            allocate (pa_in (n_in))
            do p = 1, n_in
                pa_in(p) = pl_in(i)%get (p)
            end do
            do j = 1, size (pl_out)
                n_out = pl_out(j)%get_size ()
                k = k + 1
                call pl(k)%init (n_in + n_out)
                do p = 1, n_in
                    call pl(k)%set (p, invert_pdg_array (pa_in(p), model))
                end do
                do p = 1, n_out
                    call pl(k)%set (n_in + p, pl_out(j)%get (p))
                end do
            end do
            deallocate (pa_in)
        end do
    end subroutine if_table_init

```

```

        call table%init (model, pl, constraints)
    end subroutine if_table_init

```

Enable loops for the table. This affects both splitting and output.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: enable_loops => ps_table_enable_loops

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ps_table_enable_loops (table)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
        table%loops = .true.
    end subroutine ps_table_enable_loops

```

## 6.2.4 Top-level methods

Create a table for a single-particle decay. Construct all possible final states from a single particle with PDG code `pdg_in`. The construction is limited by the given `constraints`.

```

<Auto components: ds table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: make => ds_table_make

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ds_table_make (table, model, pdg_in, constraints)
        class(ds_table_t), intent(out) :: table
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg_in
        type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
        type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_in
        type(pdg_list_t), dimension(0) :: pl
        logical :: passed
        call table%init (model, pl, constraints)
        table%pdg_in = pdg_in
        call pl_in%init (1)
        call pl_in%set (1, [pdg_in])
        call table%split (pl_in, 0, constraints)
    end subroutine ds_table_make

```

Split all entries in a growing table, starting from a table that may already contain states. Add and record split states on the fly.

```

<Auto components: fs table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: radiate => fs_table_radiate

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine fs_table_radiate (table, constraints)
        class(fs_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
        type(split_constraints_t) :: constraints
        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: current
        integer :: i, s
        logical :: passed
        current => table%first
        do while (associated (current))
            call table%split (current, 0, constraints, record = .true.)
        end do
    end subroutine fs_table_radiate

```

```

        current => current%next
    end do
end subroutine fs_table_radiate

```

### 6.2.5 Splitting algorithm

Recursive splitting. First of all, we record the current `pdg_list` in the table, subject to `constraints`, if requested. We also record copies of the list marked as loop corrections.

When we record a particle list, we sort it first.

If there is room for splitting, We take a PDG array list and the index of an element, and split this element in all possible ways. The split entry is inserted into the list, which we split further.

The recursion terminates whenever the split array would have a length greater than  $n_{\text{max}}$ .

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: split => ps_table_split

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine ps_table_split (table, pl, n_rad, constraints, &
        record)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: n_rad
        type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
        logical, intent(in), optional :: record
        integer :: n_loop, i
        logical :: passed
        type(vertex_iterator_t) :: vit
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg2
        if (present (record)) then
            if (record) then
                n_loop = 0
                INCR_LOOPS: do
                    call table%record_sorted (pl, n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
                    if (.not. passed) exit INCR_LOOPS
                    if (.not. table%loops) exit INCR_LOOPS
                    n_loop = n_loop + 1
                end do INCR_LOOPS
            end if
        end if
        do i = 1, pl%get_size ()
            call constraints%check_before_split (table, pl, i, passed)
            if (passed) then
                pdg1 = pl%get (i)
                call vit%init (table%model, pdg1)
                SCAN_VERTICES: do
                    call vit%get_next_match (pdg2)
                    if (allocated (pdg2)) then
                        call table%insert (pl, n_rad, i, pdg2, constraints)
                    else

```

```

        exit SCAN_VERTICES
    end if
end do SCAN_VERTICES
end if
end do
end subroutine ps_table_split

```

The worker part: insert the list of particles found by vertex matching in place of entry *i* in the PDG list. Then split/record further.

The *n\_in* parameter tells the replacement routine to insert the new particles after entry *n\_in*. Otherwise, they follow index *i*.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: insert => ps_table_insert

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine ps_table_insert &
        (table, pl, n_rad, i, pdg, constraints, n_in)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
        integer, intent(in) :: n_rad, i
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
        type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
        type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_insert
        logical :: passed
        integer :: k, s
        s = size (pdg)
        call pl_insert%init (s)
        do k = 1, s
            call pl_insert%set (k, pdg(k))
        end do
        call constraints%check_before_insert (table, pl%get (i), pl_insert, passed)
        if (passed) then
            call table%split (pl%replace (i, pl_insert, n_in), n_rad + s - 1, &
                constraints, record = .true.)
        end if
    end subroutine ps_table_insert

```

Special case: If we are splitting an initial particle, there is slightly more to do. We loop over the particles from the vertex match and replace the initial particle by each of them in turn. The remaining particles must be appended after the second initial particle, so they will end up in the out state. This is done by providing the *n\_in* argument to the base method as an optional argument.

Note that we must call the base-method procedure explicitly, so the *table* argument keeps its dynamic type as *if\_table* inside this procedure.

```

<Auto components: if table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: insert => if_table_insert

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine if_table_insert &
        (table, pl, n_rad, i, pdg, constraints, n_in)
        class(if_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
        class(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl

```



```

integer, intent(in) :: n_rad, i
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_work
integer :: p
if (i > 2) then
  call ps_table_insert (table, pl, n_rad, i, pdg, constraints)
else
  allocate (pdg_work (size (pdg)))
  do p = 1, size (pdg)
    pdg_work(1) = pdg(p)
    pdg_work(2:p) = pdg(1:p-1)
    pdg_work(p+1:) = pdg(p+1:)
    call ps_table_insert (table, &
      pl, n_rad, i, pdg_work, constraints, n_in = 2)
  end do
end if
end subroutine if_table_insert

```

Sort before recording. In the case of the `if_table`, we do not sort the first `n_in` particle entries. Instead, we check whether they are allowed in the `pl_beam` PDG list, if that is provided.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record_sorted => ps_table_record_sorted

<Auto components: if table: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record_sorted => if_table_record_sorted

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ps_table_record_sorted &
    (table, pl, n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
    class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop, n_rad
    type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    call table%record (pl%sort_abs (), n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
  end subroutine ps_table_record_sorted

  subroutine if_table_record_sorted &
    (table, pl, n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
    class(if_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop, n_rad
    type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    integer :: i
    call table%record (pl%sort_abs (2), n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
  end subroutine if_table_record_sorted

```

Record an entry: insert into the list. Check the ordering and insert it at the correct place, unless it is already there.

We record an array only if its mass sum is less than the total available energy.  
This restriction is removed by setting `constrained` to false.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record => ps_table_record

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ps_table_record (table, pl, n_loop, n_rad, constraints, passed)
    class(ps_table_t), intent(inout) :: table
    type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
    integer, intent(in) :: n_loop, n_rad
    type(split_constraints_t), intent(in) :: constraints
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: current
    logical :: mass_limit
    if (.not. pl%is_regular ()) return
    call constraints%check_before_record (table, pl, n_loop, passed)
    if (.not. passed) return
    current => table%first
    do while (associated (current))
      if (pl == current) then
        if (n_loop == current%n_loop) return
      else if (pl < current) then
        call insert
        return
      end if
      current => current%next
    end do
    call insert
contains
    subroutine insert ()
      type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: entry
      allocate (entry)
      entry%pdg_list_t = pl
      entry%n_loop = n_loop
      entry%n_rad = n_rad
      if (associated (current)) then
        if (associated (current%previous)) then
          current%previous%next => entry
          entry%previous => current%previous
        else
          table%first => entry
        end if
        entry%next => current
        current%previous => entry
      else
        if (associated (table%last)) then
          table%last%next => entry
          entry%previous => table%last
        else
          table%first => entry
        end if
        table%last => entry
      end if
    end subroutine insert
end

```

```
end subroutine ps_table_record
```

### 6.2.6 Tools

Compute the mass sum for a PDG list object, counting the entries with indices between (including) `n1` and `n2`. Rely on the requirement that if an entry is a PDG array, this array must be degenerate in mass.

```
<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function mass_sum (pl, n1, n2, model) result (m)
  type(pdg_list_t), intent(in) :: pl
  integer, intent(in) :: n1, n2
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
  real(default) :: m
  type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
  integer :: i
  m = 0
  do i = n1, n2
    pdg = pl%get (i)
    prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg(1))
    m = m + particle_data_get_mass (prt)
  end do
end function mass_sum
```

Invert a PDG array, replacing particles by antiparticles. This depends on the model.

```
<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function invert_pdg_array (pa, model) result (pa_inv)
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pa
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pa_inv
  type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
  integer :: i, pdg
  pa_inv = pa
  do i = 1, pa_inv%get_length ()
    pdg = pa_inv%get (i)
    prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, pdg)
    if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (prt)) call pa_inv%set (i, -pdg)
  end do
end function invert_pdg_array
```

### 6.2.7 Access results

Return the number of generated decays.

```
<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_length => ps_table_get_length

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
function ps_table_get_length (ps_table) result (n)
  class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: ps_table
```

```

integer :: n
type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: entry
n = 0
entry => ps_table%first
do while (associated (entry))
    n = n + 1
    entry => entry%next
end do
end function ps_table_get_length

```

Return an allocated array of decay products (PDG codes). If requested, return also the loop and radiation order count.

```

<Auto components: ps table: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_pdg_out => ps_table_get_pdg_out

<Auto components: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ps_table_get_pdg_out (ps_table, i, pa_out, n_loop, n_rad)
        class(ps_table_t), intent(in) :: ps_table
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pa_out
        integer, intent(out), optional :: n_loop, n_rad
        type(ps_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        integer :: n, j
        n = 0
        entry => ps_table%first
        FIND_ENTRY: do while (associated (entry))
            n = n + 1
            if (n == i) then
                allocate (pa_out (entry%get_size ()))
                do j = 1, entry%get_size ()
                    pa_out(j) = entry%get (j)
                    if (present (n_loop)) n_loop = entry%n_loop
                    if (present (n_rad)) n_rad = entry%n_rad
                end do
                exit FIND_ENTRY
            end if
            entry => entry%next
        end do FIND_ENTRY
    end subroutine ps_table_get_pdg_out

```

## 6.2.8 Unit tests

```

<Auto components: public>+≡
    public :: auto_components_test

<Auto components: tests>≡
    subroutine auto_components_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Auto components: execute tests>
    end subroutine auto_components_test

```

## Generate Decay Table

Determine all kinematically allowed decay channels for a Higgs boson, using default parameter values.

```
(Auto components: execute tests)≡
    call test (auto_components_1, "auto_components_1", &
        "generate decay table", &
        u, results)

(Auto components: tests)+≡
    subroutine auto_components_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt
        type(ds_table_t) :: ds_table
        type(split_constraints_t) :: constraints

        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: auto_components_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Purpose: determine Higgs decay table"
        write (u, *)

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call os_data_init (os_data)

        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Read Standard Model"

        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), var_str ("SM.mdl"), &
            os_data, model)

        prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, 25)

        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Higgs decays n = 2"
        write (u, *)

        call constraints%init (2)
        call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (2))
        call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (particle_data_get_mass (prt)))

        call ds_table%make (model, 25, constraints)
        call ds_table%write (u)
        call ds_table%final ()

        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Higgs decays n = 3 (w/o radiative)"
        write (u, *)

        call constraints%init (3)
        call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (3))
        call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (particle_data_get_mass (prt)))
        call constraints%set (3, constrain_radiation ())

        call ds_table%make (model, 25, constraints)
```

```

call ds_table%write (u)
call ds_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Higgs decays n = 3 (w/ radiative)"
write (u, *)

call constraints%init (2)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (3))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (particle_data_get_mass (prt)))

call ds_table%make (model, 25, constraints)
call ds_table%write (u)
call ds_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: auto_components_1"

end subroutine auto_components_1

```

## Generate radiation

Given a final state, add radiation (NLO and NNLO). We provide a list of particles that is allowed to occur in the generated final states.

```

<Auto components: execute tests>+≡
  call test (auto_components_2, "auto_components_2", &
    "generate NLO corrections, final state", &
    u, results)

<Auto components: tests>+≡
  subroutine auto_components_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pl, pl_zzh
    type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_match
    type(fs_table_t) :: fs_table
    type(split_constraints_t) :: constraints
    real(default) :: sqrts
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: auto_components_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "** Purpose: generate radiation (NLO)"
    write (u, *)

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

```

```

call os_data_init (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Read Standard Model"

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), var_str ("SM.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* LO final state"
write (u, *)

allocate (pl (2))
call pl(1)%init (2)
call pl(1)%set (1, 1)
call pl(1)%set (2, -1)
call pl(2)%init (2)
call pl(2)%set (1, 21)
call pl(2)%set (2, 21)
do i = 1, 2
    call pl(i)%write (u); write (u, *)
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize FS table"
write (u, *)

call constraints%init (1)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (3))

call fs_table%init (model, pl, constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, unconstrained"
write (u, *)

call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)
call fs_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, &
    &complete but mass-constrained"
write (u, *)

sqrts = 50

call constraints%init (2)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (3))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (sqrts))

call fs_table%init (model, pl, constraints)
call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)

```

```

call fs_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Generate NLO corrections, restricted"
write (u, *)

call pl_match%init ([1, -1, 21])

call constraints%init (2)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (3))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_insert (pl_match))

call fs_table%init (model, pl, constraints)
call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)
call fs_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Generate NNLO corrections, restricted, with one loop"
write (u, *)

call pl_match%init ([1, -1, 21])

call constraints%init (3)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_n_loop (1))
call constraints%set (3, constrain_insert (pl_match))

call fs_table%init (model, pl, constraints)
call fs_table%enable_loops ()
call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)
call fs_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Generate NNLO corrections, restricted, with loops"
write (u, *)

call constraints%init (2)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_insert (pl_match))

call fs_table%init (model, pl, constraints)
call fs_table%enable_loops ()
call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)
call fs_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "** Generate NNLO corrections, restricted, to Z Z H, &
                  &no loops"
write (u, *)

allocate (pl_zzh (1))

```



```

call pl_zzh(1)%init (3)
call pl_zzh(1)%set (1, 23)
call pl_zzh(1)%set (2, 23)
call pl_zzh(1)%set (3, 25)

call constraints%init (3)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (5))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (500._default))
call constraints%set (3, constrain_require (pl_zzh(1)))

call fs_table%init (model, pl_zzh, constraints)
call fs_table%radiate (constraints)
call fs_table%write (u)
call fs_table%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: auto_components_2"

end subroutine auto_components_2

```

## Generate radiation from initial and final state

Given a process, add radiation (NLO and NNLO). We provide a list of particles that is allowed to occur in the generated final states.

```

<Auto components: execute tests>+≡
  call test (auto_components_3, "auto_components_3", &
    "generate NLO corrections, in and out", &
    u, results)

<Auto components: tests>+≡
  subroutine auto_components_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pl_in, pl_out
    type(pdg_list_t) :: pl_match, pl_beam
    type(if_table_t) :: if_table
    type(split_constraints_t) :: constraints
    real(default) :: sqrts
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: auto_components_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate radiation (NLO)"
    write (u, *)

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Read Standard Model"

```

```

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), var_str ("SM.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* LO initial state"
write (u, *)

allocate (pl_in (2))
call pl_in(1)%init (2)
call pl_in(1)%set (1, 1)
call pl_in(1)%set (2, -1)
call pl_in(2)%init (2)
call pl_in(2)%set (1, -1)
call pl_in(2)%set (2, 1)
do i = 1, 2
    call pl_in(i)%write (u); write (u, *)
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* LO final state"
write (u, *)

allocate (pl_out (1))
call pl_out(1)%init (1)
call pl_out(1)%set (1, 23)
call pl_out(1)%write (u); write (u, *)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize FS table"
write (u, *)

call constraints%init (1)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))

call if_table%init (model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
call if_table%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, unconstrained"
write (u, *)

call if_table%radiate (constraints)
call if_table%write (u)
call if_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, &
    &complete but mass-constrained"
write (u, *)

sqrts = 100
call constraints%init (2)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))

```

```

call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (sqrts))

call if_table%init (model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
call if_table%radiate (constraints)
call if_table%write (u)
call if_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, &
                  &mass-constrained, restricted beams"
write (u, *)

call pl_beam%init (3)
call pl_beam%set (1, 1)
call pl_beam%set (2, -1)
call pl_beam%set (3, 21)

call constraints%init (3)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_in_state (pl_beam))
call constraints%set (3, constrain_mass_sum (sqrts))

call if_table%init (model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
call if_table%radiate (constraints)
call if_table%write (u)
call if_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NLO corrections, restricted"
write (u, *)

call pl_match%init ([1, -1, 21])

call constraints%init (4)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (4))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_in_state (pl_beam))
call constraints%set (3, constrain_mass_sum (sqrts))
call constraints%set (4, constrain_insert (pl_match))

call if_table%init (model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
call if_table%radiate (constraints)
call if_table%write (u)
call if_table%final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate NNLO corrections, restricted, Z preserved, &
                  &with loops"
write (u, *)

call constraints%init (5)
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (5))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_in_state (pl_beam))
call constraints%set (3, constrain_mass_sum (sqrts))
call constraints%set (4, constrain_insert (pl_match))

```

```

call constraints%set (5, constrain_require (pl_out(1)))

call if_table%init (model, pl_in, pl_out, constraints)
call if_table%enable_loops ()
call if_table%radiate (constraints)
call if_table%write (u)
call if_table%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: auto_components_3"

end subroutine auto_components_3

```

## Chapter 7

# Quantum Numbers

We introduce separate types and modules for particle quantum numbers and use them for defining independent particles and entangled states.

**helicities** Types and methods for spin density matrices.

**colors** Dealing with colored particles, using the color-flow representation.

**flavors** PDG codes and particle properties, depends on the model.

**quantum\_states** Quantum numbers and density matrices for entangled particle systems.

## 7.1 Helicities

This module defines types and tools for dealing with helicity information.

```
<helicities.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module helicities  
  
    <Use file utils>  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Helicities: public>  
  
    <Helicities: types>  
  
    <Helicities: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Helicities: procedures>  
  
  end module helicities
```

### 7.1.1 Helicity types

Helicities may be defined or undefined, corresponding to a polarized or unpolarized state. Each helicity is actually a pair of helicities, corresponding to an entry in the spin density matrix. Obviously, diagonal entries are distinguished. In addition, we have a ghost flag that would apply to FP ghosts in particular.

```
<Helicities: public>≡  
  public :: helicity_t  
  
<Helicities: types>≡  
  type :: helicity_t  
    private  
    logical :: defined = .false.  
    integer :: h1, h2  
    logical :: ghost = .false.  
  end type helicity_t
```

Initializers:

```
<Helicities: public>+≡  
  public :: helicity_init  
  
<Helicities: interfaces>≡  
  interface helicity_init  
    module procedure helicity_init0, helicity_init0g  
    module procedure helicity_init1, helicity_init1g  
    module procedure helicity_init2, helicity_init2g  
  end interface
```

```

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine helicity_init0 (hel)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
  end subroutine helicity_init0

  elemental subroutine helicity_init0g (hel, ghost)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    hel%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine helicity_init0g

  elemental subroutine helicity_init1 (hel, h)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: h
    hel%defined = .true.
    hel%h1 = h
    hel%h2 = h
  end subroutine helicity_init1

  elemental subroutine helicity_init1g (hel, h, ghost)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: h
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call helicity_init1 (hel, h)
    hel%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine helicity_init1g

  elemental subroutine helicity_init2 (hel, h2, h1)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: h1, h2
    hel%defined = .true.
    hel%h2 = h2
    hel%h1 = h1
  end subroutine helicity_init2

  elemental subroutine helicity_init2g (hel, h2, h1, ghost)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: h1, h2
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call helicity_init2 (hel, h2, h1)
    hel%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine helicity_init2g

```

Set the ghost property separately:

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_set_ghost

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine helicity_set_ghost (hel, ghost)
    type(helicity_t), intent(inout) :: hel
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    hel%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine helicity_set_ghost

```

Undefine:

```
<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_undefine

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine helicity_undefine (hel)
    type(helicity_t), intent(inout) :: hel
    hel%defined = .false.
    hel%ghost = .false.
  end subroutine helicity_undefine
```

Diagonalize by removing the second entry (use with care!)

```
<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_diagonalize

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine helicity_diagonalize (hel)
    type(helicity_t), intent(inout) :: hel
    hel%h2 = hel%h1
  end subroutine helicity_diagonalize
```

Output (no linebreak). No output if undefined.

```
<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_write

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  subroutine helicity_write (hel, unit)
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    if (hel%defined) then
      if (hel%ghost) then
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "h*"
      else
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "h("
      end if
      write (u, "(IO)", advance="no") hel%h1
      if (hel%h1 /= hel%h2) then
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "|"
        write (u, "(IO)", advance="no") hel%h2
      end if
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ")"
    else if (hel%ghost) then
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "h*"
    end if
  end subroutine helicity_write
```

Binary I/O. Write contents only if defined.

```
<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_write_raw
  public :: helicity_read_raw
```



```

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  subroutine helicity_write_raw (hel, u)
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    write (u) hel%defined
    if (hel%defined) then
      write (u) hel%h1, hel%h2
      write (u) hel%ghost
    end if
  end subroutine helicity_write_raw

  subroutine helicity_read_raw (hel, u, iostat)
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
    read (u, iostat=iostat) hel%defined
    if (hel%defined) then
      read (u, iostat=iostat) hel%h1, hel%h2
      read (u, iostat=iostat) hel%ghost
    end if
  end subroutine helicity_read_raw

```

### 7.1.2 Predicates

Check if the helicity is defined:

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_is_defined

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental function helicity_is_defined (hel) result (defined)
    logical :: defined
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    defined = hel%defined
  end function helicity_is_defined

```

Return true if the two helicities are equal or the particle is unpolarized:

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_is_diagonal

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental function helicity_is_diagonal (hel) result (diagonal)
    logical :: diagonal
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    if (hel%defined) then
      diagonal = hel%h1 == hel%h2
    else
      diagonal = .true.
    end if
  end function helicity_is_diagonal

```

Return the ghost flag

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_is_ghost

```

```

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  elemental function helicity_is_ghost (hel) result (ghost)
    logical :: ghost
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    ghost = hel%ghost
  end function helicity_is_ghost

```

### 7.1.3 Accessing contents

This returns a two-element array and thus cannot be elemental. The result is unpredictable if the helicity is undefined.

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: helicity_get

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
  pure function helicity_get (hel) result (h)
    integer, dimension(2) :: h
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    h(1) = hel%h2
    h(2) = hel%h1
  end function helicity_get

```

### 7.1.4 Comparisons

When comparing helicities, if either one is undefined, they are considered to match. In other words, an unpolarized particle matches any polarization. In the `dmatch` variant, it matches only diagonal helicity.

The ghost flag is ignored when matching, but matters when testing for equality.

```

<Helicities: public>+≡
  public :: operator(.match.)
  public :: operator(.dmatch.)
  public :: operator(==)
  public :: operator(/=)

<Helicities: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.match.)
    module procedure helicity_match
  end interface
  interface operator(.dmatch.)
    module procedure helicity_match_diagonal
  end interface
  interface operator(==)
    module procedure helicity_eq
  end interface
  interface operator(/=)
    module procedure helicity_neq
  end interface

```

```

<Helicities: procedures>+=
  elemental function helicity_match (hel1, hel2) result (eq)
    logical :: eq
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel1, hel2
    if (hel1%defined .and. hel2%defined) then
      eq = (hel1%h1 == hel2%h1) .and. (hel1%h2 == hel2%h2)
    else
      eq = .true.
    end if
  end function helicity_match

  elemental function helicity_match_diagonal (hel1, hel2) result (eq)
    logical :: eq
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel1, hel2
    if (hel1%defined .and. hel2%defined) then
      eq = (hel1%h1 == hel2%h1) .and. (hel1%h2 == hel2%h2)
    else if (hel1%defined) then
      eq = hel1%h1 == hel1%h2
    else if (hel2%defined) then
      eq = hel2%h1 == hel2%h2
    else
      eq = .true.
    end if
  end function helicity_match_diagonal

<Helicities: procedures>+=
  elemental function helicity_eq (hel1, hel2) result (eq)
    logical :: eq
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel1, hel2
    if (hel1%defined .and. hel2%defined) then
      eq = (hel1%h1 == hel2%h1) .and. (hel1%h2 == hel2%h2) &
        .and. (hel1%ghost .eqv. hel2%ghost)
    else if (.not. hel1%defined .and. .not. hel2%defined) then
      eq = hel1%ghost .eqv. hel2%ghost
    else
      eq = .false.
    end if
  end function helicity_eq

<Helicities: procedures>+=
  elemental function helicity_neq (hel1, hel2) result (neq)
    logical :: neq
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel1, hel2
    if (hel1%defined .and. hel2%defined) then
      neq = (hel1%h1 /= hel2%h1) .or. (hel1%h2 /= hel2%h2) &
        .or. (hel1%ghost .neqv. hel2%ghost)
    else if (.not. hel1%defined .and. .not. hel2%defined) then
      neq = hel1%ghost .neqv. hel2%ghost
    else
      neq = .true.
    end if
  end function helicity_neq

```

### 7.1.5 Tools

Merge two helicity objects by taking the first entry from the first and the second entry from the second argument. Makes sense only if the input helicities were defined and diagonal. The handling of ghost flags is not well-defined; one should verify beforehand that they match.

```
<Helicities: public>+≡
    public :: operator(.merge.)

<Helicities: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(.merge.)
        module procedure merge_helicities
    end interface

<Helicities: procedures>+≡
    elemental function merge_helicities (hel1, hel2) result (hel)
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel1, hel2
        if (helicity_is_defined (hel1) .and. helicity_is_defined (hel2)) then
            call helicity_init2g (hel, hel2%h1, hel1%h1, hel1%ghost)
        else if (helicity_is_defined (hel1)) then
            hel = hel1
        else if (helicity_is_defined (hel2)) then
            hel = hel2
        end if
    end function merge_helicities
```

## 7.2 Colors

This module defines a type and tools for dealing with color information.

Each particle can have zero or more (in practice, usually not more than two) color indices. Color indices are positive; flow direction can be determined from the particle nature.

While parton shower matrix elements are diagonal in color, some special applications (e.g., subtractions for NLO matrix elements) require non-diagonal color matrices.

```
<colors.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module colors  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Colors: public>  
  
    <Colors: types>  
  
    <Colors: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Colors: procedures>  
  
    <Colors: tests>  
  
  end module colors
```

### 7.2.1 The color type

A particle may have an arbitrary number of color indices (in practice, from zero to two, but more are possible). This object acts as a container.

The fact that color comes as an array prohibits elemental procedures in some places. (May add interfaces and multi versions where necessary.)

The color may be undefined; this corresponds to unallocated arrays.

NOTE: Due to a compiler bug in nagfor 5.2, we do not use allocatable but fixed-size arrays with dimension 2. Only nonzero entries count. This may be more efficient anyway, but gives up some flexibility. However, the squaring algorithm currently works only for singlets, (anti)triplets and octets anyway, so two components are enough.

```
<Colors: public>≡  
  public :: color_t  
  
<Colors: types>≡  
  type :: color_t
```

```

    private
    integer, dimension(2) :: c1 = 0, c2 = 0
    logical :: ghost = .false.
end type color_t

```

Initializers:

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_init

<Colors: interfaces>≡
    interface color_init
        module procedure color_init_undefined, color_init_undefined_ghost
        module procedure color_init_array, color_init_array_ghost
        module procedure color_init_arrays, color_init_arrays_ghost
    end interface

```

Undefined color: array remains unallocated

```

<Colors: procedures>≡
    pure subroutine color_init_undefined (col)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
    end subroutine color_init_undefined

    pure subroutine color_init_undefined_ghost (col, ghost)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
        logical, intent(in) :: ghost
        col%ghost = ghost
    end subroutine color_init_undefined_ghost

```

This defines color from an arbitrary length color array, suitable for any representation. We may have two color arrays (non-diagonal matrix elements). This cannot be elemental. The third version assigns an array of colors, using a two-dimensional array as input.

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    pure subroutine color_init_array (col, c1)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1
        col%c1 = pack (c1, c1 /= 0, col%c1)
        col%c2 = col%c1
    end subroutine color_init_array

    pure subroutine color_init_array_ghost (col, c1, ghost)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1
        logical, intent(in) :: ghost
        call color_init_array (col, c1)
        col%ghost = ghost
    end subroutine color_init_array_ghost

    pure subroutine color_init_arrays (col, c1, c2)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1, c2
        if (size (c1) == size (c2)) then

```

```

        col%c1 = pack (c1, c1 /= 0, col%c1)
        col%c2 = pack (c2, c2 /= 0, col%c2)
    else if (size (c1) /= 0) then
        col%c1 = pack (c1, c1 /= 0, col%c1)
        col%c2 = col%c1
    else if (size (c2) /= 0) then
        col%c1 = pack (c2, c2 /= 0, col%c2)
        col%c2 = col%c1
    end if
end subroutine color_init_arrays

pure subroutine color_init_arrays_ghost (col, c1, c2, ghost)
    type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1, c2
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call color_init_arrays (col, c1, c2)
    col%ghost = ghost
end subroutine color_init_arrays_ghost

```

This version is restricted to singlets, triplets, antitriplets, and octets: The input contains the color and anticolor index, each of the may be zero.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_init_col_acl

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine color_init_col_acl (col, col_in, acl_in)
        type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
        integer, intent(in) :: col_in, acl_in
        integer, dimension(0) :: null_array
        select case (col_in)
        case (0)
            select case (acl_in)
            case (0)
                call color_init_array (col, null_array)
            case default
                call color_init_array (col, (/ -acl_in /))
            end select
        case default
            select case (acl_in)
            case (0)
                call color_init_array (col, (/ col_in /))
            case default
                call color_init_array (col, (/ col_in, -acl_in /))
            end select
        end select
    end subroutine color_init_col_acl

```

This version is used for the external interface. We convert a fixed-size array of colors (for each particle) to the internal form by packing only the nonzero entries.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_init_from_array

```

```

<Colors: interfaces>+≡
  interface color_init_from_array
    module procedure color_init_from_array1, color_init_from_array1g
    module procedure color_init_from_array2, color_init_from_array2g
  end interface

```

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  pure subroutine color_init_from_array1 (col, c1)
    type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1
    logical, dimension(size(c1)) :: mask
    mask = c1 /= 0
    col%c1 = pack (c1, mask, col%c1)
    col%c2 = col%c1
  end subroutine color_init_from_array1

  pure subroutine color_init_from_array1g (col, c1, ghost)
    type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: c1
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call color_init_from_array1 (col, c1)
    col%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine color_init_from_array1g

  pure subroutine color_init_from_array2 (col, c1)
    integer, dimension(:, :), intent(in) :: c1
    type(color_t), dimension(size(c1,2)), intent(out) :: col
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (c1,2)
      call color_init_from_array1 (col(i), c1(:,i))
    end do
  end subroutine color_init_from_array2

  pure subroutine color_init_from_array2g (col, c1, ghost)
    integer, dimension(:, :), intent(in) :: c1
    type(color_t), dimension(size(c1,2)), intent(out) :: col
    logical, intent(in), dimension(:) :: ghost
    call color_init_from_array2 (col, c1)
    col%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine color_init_from_array2g

```

Set the ghost property

```

<Colors: public>+≡
  public :: color_set_ghost

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine color_set_ghost (col, ghost)
    type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    col%ghost = ghost
  end subroutine color_set_ghost

```



Undefine the color state:

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_undefine

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine color_undefine (col, undefine_ghost)
        type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
        logical, intent(in), optional :: undefine_ghost
        col%c1 = 0
        col%c2 = 0
        if (present (undefine_ghost)) then
            if (undefine_ghost) col%ghost = .false.
        else
            col%ghost = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine color_undefine

```

Output. As dense as possible, no linebreak. If color is undefined, no output.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_write

<Colors: interfaces>+≡
    interface color_write
        module procedure color_write_single
        module procedure color_write_array
    end interface

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine color_write_single (col, unit)
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        if (color_is_defined (col)) then
            write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "c("
            if (col%c1(1) /= 0) write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") col%c1(1)
            if (any (col%c1 /= 0)) write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
            if (col%c1(2) /= 0) write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") col%c1(2)
            if (.not. color_is_diagonal (col)) then
                write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "|"
                if (col%c2(1) /= 0) write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") col%c2(1)
                if (any (col%c2 /= 0)) write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
                if (col%c2(2) /= 0) write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") col%c2(2)
            end if
            write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ")"
        else if (col%ghost) then
            write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "c*"
        end if
    end subroutine color_write_single

    subroutine color_write_array (col, unit)
        type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        integer :: i

```

```

u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "["
do i = 1, size (col)
  if (i > 1) write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
  call color_write_single (col(i), u)
end do
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "]"
end subroutine color_write_array

```

Binary I/O. For allocatable colors, this would have to be modified.

*<Colors: public>+≡*

```

public :: color_write_raw
public :: color_read_raw

```

*<Colors: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine color_write_raw (col, u)
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  logical :: defined
  defined = color_is_defined (col) .or. color_is_ghost (col)
  write (u) defined
  if (defined) then
    write (u) col%c1, col%c2
    write (u) col%ghost
  end if
end subroutine color_write_raw

subroutine color_read_raw (col, u, iostat)
  type(color_t), intent(out) :: col
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
  logical :: defined
  read (u, iostat=iostat) defined
  if (defined) then
    read (u, iostat=iostat) col%c1, col%c2
    read (u, iostat=iostat) col%ghost
  end if
end subroutine color_read_raw

```

## 7.2.2 Predicates

Return the definition status

*<Colors: public>+≡*

```

public :: color_is_defined

```

*<Colors: procedures>+≡*

```

elemental function color_is_defined (col) result (defined)
  logical :: defined
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  defined = any (col%c1 /= 0)
end function color_is_defined

```

Diagonal color objects have only one array allocated:

```
<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_is_diagonal

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    elemental function color_is_diagonal (col) result (diagonal)
        logical :: diagonal
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        if (color_is_defined (col)) then
            diagonal = all (col%c1 == col%c2)
        else
            diagonal = .true.
        end if
    end function color_is_diagonal
```

Return the ghost flag

```
<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_is_ghost

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    elemental function color_is_ghost (col) result (ghost)
        logical :: ghost
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        ghost = col%ghost
    end function color_is_ghost
```

The ghost parity: true if the color-ghost flag is set.

```
<Colors: interfaces>+≡
    interface color_ghost_parity
        module procedure color_ghost_parity0
        module procedure color_ghost_parity1
    end interface

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    pure function color_ghost_parity0 (col) result (parity)
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        logical :: parity
        parity = color_is_ghost (col)
    end function color_ghost_parity0

    pure function color_ghost_parity1 (col) result (parity)
        type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
        logical :: parity
        logical, dimension(size(col)) :: p
        integer :: i
        forall (i = 1:size(col))
            p(i) = color_ghost_parity0 (col(i))
        end forall
        parity = mod (count (p), 2) == 1
    end function color_ghost_parity1
```

### 7.2.3 Accessing contents

Return the number of color indices. We assume that it is identical for both arrays.

```
(Colors: procedures)+≡  
  elemental function color_number (col) result (n)  
    integer :: n  
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col  
    n = count (col%c1 /= 0)  
  end function color_number
```

Return the (first) color/anticolor entry (assuming that color is diagonal). The result is a positive color index.

```
(Colors: public)+≡  
  public :: color_get_col  
  public :: color_get_acl  
  
(Colors: procedures)+≡  
  elemental function color_get_col (col) result (c)  
    integer :: c  
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col  
    integer :: i  
    do i = 1, size (col%c1)  
      if (col%c1(i) > 0) then  
        c = col%c1(i)  
        return  
      end if  
    end do  
    c = 0  
  end function color_get_col  
  
  elemental function color_get_acl (col) result (c)  
    integer :: c  
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col  
    integer :: i  
    do i = 1, size (col%c1)  
      if (col%c1(i) < 0) then  
        c = - col%c1(i)  
        return  
      end if  
    end do  
    c = 0  
  end function color_get_acl
```

Return the color index with highest absolute value

```
(Colors: public)+≡  
  public :: color_get_max_value  
  
(Colors: interfaces)+≡  
  interface color_get_max_value  
    module procedure color_get_max_value0  
    module procedure color_get_max_value1  
    module procedure color_get_max_value2  
  end interface
```

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function color_get_max_value0 (col) result (cmax)
    integer :: cmax
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
    cmax = maxval (abs (col%c1))
  end function color_get_max_value0

  pure function color_get_max_value1 (col) result (cmax)
    integer :: cmax
    type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
    cmax = maxval (color_get_max_value0 (col))
  end function color_get_max_value1

  function color_get_max_value2 (col) result (cmax)
    integer :: cmax
    type(color_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: col
    integer, dimension(size(col, 2)) :: cm
    integer :: i
    forall (i = 1:size(col, 2))
      cm(i) = color_get_max_value1 (col(:,i))
    end forall
    cmax = maxval (cm)
  end function color_get_max_value2

```

## 7.2.4 Comparisons

Similar to helicities, colors match if they are equal, or if either one is undefined.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
  public :: operator(.match.)
  public :: operator(==)
  public :: operator(/=)

<Colors: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.match.)
    module procedure color_match
  end interface
  interface operator(==)
    module procedure color_eq
  end interface
  interface operator(/=)
    module procedure color_neq
  end interface

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function color_match (col1, col2) result (eq)
    logical :: eq
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col1, col2
    if (color_is_defined (col1) .and. color_is_defined (col2)) then
      eq = all (col1%c1 == col2%c1) .and. all (col1%c2 == col2%c2)
    else
      eq = .true.
    end if
  end function color_match

```

```

end function color_match

elemental function color_eq (col1, col2) result (eq)
  logical :: eq
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col1, col2
  if (color_is_defined (col1) .and. color_is_defined (col2)) then
    eq = all (col1%c1 == col2%c1) .and. all (col1%c2 == col2%c2) &
      .and. (col1%ghost .eqv. col2%ghost)
  else if (.not. color_is_defined (col1) &
    .and. .not. color_is_defined (col2)) then
    eq = col1%ghost .eqv. col2%ghost
  else
    eq = .false.
  end if
end function color_eq

```

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function color_neq (col1, col2) result (neq)
    logical :: neq
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col1, col2
    if (color_is_defined (col1) .and. color_is_defined (col2)) then
      ! if (size (col1%c1) == size (col2%c1)) then
      !   neq = any (col1%c1 /= col2%c1) .or. any (col1%c2 /= col2%c2) &
      !     .or. (col1%ghost .neqv. col2%ghost)
      ! else
      !   neq = .true.
      ! end if
    else if (.not. color_is_defined (col1) &
      .and. .not. color_is_defined (col2)) then
      neq = col1%ghost .neqv. col2%ghost
    else
      neq = .true.
    end if
  end function color_neq

```

### 7.2.5 Tools

Shift color indices by a common offset.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
  public :: color_add_offset

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine color_add_offset (col, offset)
    type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
    integer, intent(in) :: offset
    where (col%c1 /= 0) col%c1 = col%c1 + sign (offset, col%c1)
    where (col%c2 /= 0) col%c2 = col%c2 + sign (offset, col%c2)
  end subroutine color_add_offset

```

Reassign color indices for an array of colored particle in canonical order. The allocated size of the color map is such that two colors per particle can be accom-

modated.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_canonicalize

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine color_canonicalize (col)
        type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: col
        integer, dimension(2*size(col)) :: map
        integer :: n_col, i, j, k
        n_col = 0
        do i = 1, size (col)
            do j = 1, size (col(i)%c1)
                if (col(i)%c1(j) /= 0) then
                    k = find (abs (col(i)%c1(j)), map(:n_col))
                    if (k == 0) then
                        n_col = n_col + 1
                        map(n_col) = abs (col(i)%c1(j))
                        k = n_col
                    end if
                    col(i)%c1(j) = sign (k, col(i)%c1(j))
                end if
                if (col(i)%c2(j) /= 0) then
                    k = find (abs (col(i)%c2(j)), map(:n_col))
                    if (k == 0) then
                        n_col = n_col + 1
                        map(n_col) = abs (col(i)%c2(j))
                        k = n_col
                    end if
                    col(i)%c2(j) = sign (k, col(i)%c2(j))
                end if
            end do
        end do
    contains
    function find (c, array) result (k)
        integer :: k
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: array
        integer :: i
        k = 0
        do i = 1, size (array)
            if (c == array (i)) then
                k = i
                return
            end if
        end do
    end function find
end subroutine color_canonicalize

```

Return an array of different color indices from an array of colors. The last argument is a pseudo-color array, where the color entries correspond to the position of the corresponding index entry in the index array. The colors are assumed to be diagonal.

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡

```

```

subroutine extract_color_line_indices (col, c_index, col_pos)
  type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
  integer, dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: c_index
  type(color_t), dimension(size(col)), intent(out) :: col_pos
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: c_tmp
  integer :: i, j, k, n, c
  allocate (c_tmp (sum (color_number (col))))
  n = 0
  SCAN1: do i = 1, size (col)
    SCAN2: do j = 1, 2
      c = abs (col(i)%c1(j))
      if (c /= 0) then
        do k = 1, n
          if (c_tmp(k) == c) then
            col_pos(i)%c1(j) = k
            cycle SCAN2
          end if
        end do
        n = n + 1
        c_tmp(n) = c
        col_pos(i)%c1(j) = n
      end if
    end do SCAN2
  end do SCAN1
  allocate (c_index (n))
  c_index = c_tmp(1:n)
end subroutine extract_color_line_indices

```

Given a color array, pairwise contract the color lines in all possible ways and return the resulting array of arrays. The input color array must be diagonal, and each color should occur exactly twice, once as color and once as anticolor.

Gluon entries with equal color and anticolor are explicitly excluded.

This algorithm is generic, but for long arrays it is neither efficient, nor does it avoid duplicates. It is intended for small arrays, in particular for the state matrix of a structure-function pair.

*<Colors: public>+≡*

public :: color\_array\_make\_contractions

*<Colors: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine color_array_make_contractions (col_in, col_out)
  type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col_in
  type(color_t), dimension(:,:), intent(out), allocatable :: col_out
  type :: entry_t
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map
  type(color_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: col
  type(entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type entry_t
type :: list_t
  integer :: n = 0
  type(entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
  type(entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
end type list_t
type(list_t) :: list
type(entry_t), pointer :: entry

```



```

integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: c_index
type(color_t), dimension(size(col_in)) :: col_pos
integer :: n_prt, n_c_index
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map
integer :: i, j, c
n_prt = size (col_in)
call extract_color_line_indices (col_in, c_index, col_pos)
! print *, c_index      !!! Debugging
n_c_index = size (c_index)
allocate (map (n_c_index))
map = 0
call list_append_if_valid (list, map)
entry => list%first
do while (associated (entry))
    do i = 1, n_c_index
        if (entry%map(i) == 0) then
            c = c_index(i)
            do j = i + 1, n_c_index
                if (entry%map(j) == 0) then
                    map = entry%map
                    map(i) = c
                    map(j) = c
                    call list_append_if_valid (list, map)
                end if
            end do
        end if
    end do
    entry => entry%next
end do
call list_to_array (list, col_out)
contains
subroutine list_append_if_valid (list, map)
    type(list_t), intent(inout) :: list
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: map
    type(entry_t), pointer :: entry
    integer :: i, j, c, p
    entry => list%first
    do while (associated (entry))
        if (all (map == entry%map)) return
        entry => entry%next
    end do
    allocate (entry)
    allocate (entry%map (n_c_index))
    entry%map = map
    allocate (entry%col (n_prt))
    do i = 1, n_prt
        do j = 1, 2
            c = col_in(i)%c1(j)
            if (c /= 0) then
                p = col_pos(i)%c1(j)
                if (map(p) /= 0) then
                    entry%col(i)%c1(j) = sign (map(p), c)
                else
                    entry%col(i)%c1(j) = c
                end if
            end if
        end do
    end do
end subroutine

```

```

        endif
        entry%col(i)%c2(j) = entry%col(i)%c1(j)
    end if
end do
if (any (entry%col(i)%c1 /= 0) .and. &
    entry%col(i)%c1(1) == - entry%col(i)%c1(2)) return
end do
! call color_write (entry%col); print *, map      !!! Debugging
if (associated (list%last)) then
    list%last%next => entry
else
    list%first => entry
end if
list%last => entry
list%n = list%n + 1
end subroutine list_append_if_valid
subroutine list_to_array (list, col)
    type(list_t), intent(inout) :: list
    type(color_t), dimension(:, :), intent(out), allocatable :: col
    type(entry_t), pointer :: entry
    integer :: i
    allocate (col (n_prt, list%n - 1))
    do i = 0, list%n - 1
        entry => list%first
        list%first => list%first%next
        if (i /= 0) col(:, i) = entry%col
        deallocate (entry)
    end do
    list%last => null ()
end subroutine list_to_array
end subroutine color_array_make_contractions

```

Invert the color index, switching from particle to antiparticle. For gluons, we have to swap the order of color entries.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: color_invert

<Colors: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine color_invert (col)
        type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
        col%c1 = - col%c1
        col%c2 = - col%c2
        if (col%c1(1) < 0 .and. col%c1(2) > 0) then
            col%c1 = col%c1(2:1:-1)
            col%c2 = col%c2(2:1:-1)
        end if
    end subroutine color_invert

```

Make a color map for two matching color arrays. The result is an array of integer pairs.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: set_color_map

```

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  subroutine set_color_map (map, col1, col2)
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(out), allocatable :: map
    type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col1, col2
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: map1
    integer :: i, j, k
    allocate (map1 (2, 2 * sum (color_number (col1))))
    k = 0
    do i = 1, size (col1)
      do j = 1, size (col1(i)%c1)
        if (col1(i)%c1(j) /= 0 &
          .and. all (map1(1,:k) /= abs (col1(i)%c1(j)))) then
          k = k + 1
          map1(1,k) = abs (col1(i)%c1(j))
          map1(2,k) = abs (col2(i)%c1(j))
        end if
        if (col1(i)%c2(j) /= 0 &
          .and. all (map1(1,:k) /= abs (col1(i)%c2(j)))) then
          k = k + 1
          map1(1,k) = abs (col1(i)%c2(j))
          map1(2,k) = abs (col2(i)%c2(j))
        end if
      end do
    end do
    allocate (map (2, k))
    map(:, :) = map1(:, :k)
  end subroutine set_color_map

```

Translate colors which have a match in the translation table (an array of integer pairs). Color that do not match an entry are simply transferred; this is done by first transferring all components, then modifying entries where appropriate.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
  public :: color_translate

<Colors: interfaces>+≡
  interface color_translate
    module procedure color_translate0
    module procedure color_translate0_offset
    module procedure color_translate1
  end interface

```

```

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  subroutine color_translate0 (col, map)
    type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: map
    type(color_t) :: col_tmp
    integer :: i
    col_tmp = col
    do i = 1, size (map,2)
      where (abs (col%c1) == map(1,i))
        col_tmp%c1 = sign (map(2,i), col%c1)
      end where
      where (abs (col%c2) == map(1,i))

```

```

        col_tmp%c2 = sign (map(2,i), col%c2)
    end where
end do
col = col_tmp
end subroutine color_translate0

subroutine color_translate0_offset (col, map, offset)
    type(color_t), intent(inout) :: col
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: map
    integer, intent(in) :: offset
    logical, dimension(size(col%c1)) :: mask1, mask2
    type(color_t) :: col_tmp
    integer :: i
    col_tmp = col
    mask1 = col%c1 /= 0
    mask2 = col%c2 /= 0
    do i = 1, size (map,2)
        where (abs (col%c1) == map(1,i))
            col_tmp%c1 = sign (map(2,i), col%c1)
            mask1 = .false.
        end where
        where (abs (col%c2) == map(1,i))
            col_tmp%c2 = sign (map(2,i), col%c2)
            mask2 = .false.
        end where
    end do
    col = col_tmp
    where (mask1) col%c1 = sign (abs (col%c1) + offset, col%c1)
    where (mask2) col%c2 = sign (abs (col%c2) + offset, col%c2)
end subroutine color_translate0_offset

subroutine color_translate1 (col, map, offset)
    type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: col
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: map
    integer, intent(in), optional :: offset
    integer :: i
    if (present (offset)) then
        do i = 1, size (col)
            call color_translate0_offset (col(i), map, offset)
        end do
    else
        do i = 1, size (col)
            call color_translate0 (col(i), map)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine color_translate1

```

Merge two color objects by taking the first entry from the first and the second entry from the second argument. Makes sense only if the input colors are defined (and diagonal). If either one is undefined, transfer the defined one.

For a color ghost, color is not defined. These have to be treated separately.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
    public :: operator(.merge.)

```

```

<Colors: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.merge.)
    module procedure merge_colors
  end interface

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function merge_colors (col1, col2) result (col)
    type(color_t) :: col
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col1, col2
    if (color_is_defined (col1) .and. color_is_defined (col2)) then
      call color_init_arrays (col, col1%c1, col2%c1)
    else if (color_is_defined (col1)) then
      col = col1
    else if (color_is_defined (col2)) then
      col = col2
    else if (color_is_ghost (col1)) then
      col = col1
    else if (color_is_ghost (col2)) then
      col = col2
    end if
  end function merge_colors

```

Compute the color factor, given two interfering color arrays.

```

<Colors: public>+≡
  public :: compute_color_factor

<Colors: procedures>+≡
  function compute_color_factor (col1, col2, nc) result (factor)
    real(default) :: factor
    type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col1, col2
    integer, intent(in), optional :: nc
    type(color_t), dimension(size(col1)) :: col
    integer :: ncol, nloops, nghost
    ncol = 3; if (present (nc)) ncol = nc
    col = col1 .merge. col2
    nloops = count_color_loops (col)
    nghost = count (color_is_ghost (col))
    factor = real (ncol, default) ** (nloops - nghost)
    if (color_ghost_parity (col)) factor = - factor
  end function compute_color_factor

```

We have a pair of color index arrays which corresponds to a squared matrix element. We want to determine the number of color loops in this square matrix element. So we first copy the colors (stored in a single color array with a pair of color lists in each entry) to a temporary where the color indices are shifted by some offset. We then recursively follow each loop, starting at the first color that has the offset, resetting the first color index to the loop index and each further index to zero as we go. We check that (a) each color index occurs twice within the left (right) color array, (b) the loops are closed, so we always come back to a line which has the loop index.

In order for the algorithm to work we have to conjugate the colors of initial state particles (one for decays, two for scatterings) into their corresponding

anticolors of outgoing particles.

*<Colors: public>+≡*

public :: count\_color\_loops

*<Colors: procedures>+≡*

```
function count_color_loops (col) result (count)
  integer :: count
  type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
  type(color_t), dimension(size(col)) :: cc
  integer :: i, n, offset
  ! print *, "Count color loops:"      !!! Debugging
  ! call color_write (col); print *    !!! Debugging
  cc = col
  n = size (cc)
  offset = n
  call color_add_offset (cc, offset)
  ! print *, offset                    !!! Debugging
  ! call color_write (cc); print *    !!! Debugging
  count = 0
  SCAN_LOOPS: do
    do i = 1, n
      ! print *, i, ':', cc(i)%c1    !!! Debugging
      if (color_is_defined (cc(i))) then
        if (any (cc(i)%c1 > offset)) then
          ! print *, 'start', i    !!! Debugging
          count = count + 1
          call follow_line1 (pick_new_line (cc(i)%c1, count, 1))
          cycle SCAN_LOOPS
        end if
      end if
    end do
    exit SCAN_LOOPS
  end do SCAN_LOOPS
contains
function pick_new_line (c, reset_val, sgn) result (line)
  integer :: line
  integer, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: c
  integer, intent(in) :: reset_val
  integer, intent(in) :: sgn
  integer :: i
  if (any (c == count)) then
    line = count
  else
    do i = 1, size (c)
      if (sign (1, c(i)) == sgn .and. abs (c(i)) > offset) then
        line = c(i)
        c(i) = reset_val
        return
      end if
    end do
    call color_mismatch
  end if
end function pick_new_line
subroutine reset_line (c, line)
  integer, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: c
```

```

integer, intent(in) :: line
integer :: i
do i = 1, size (c)
  if (c(i) == line) then
    c(i) = 0
    return
  end if
end do
end subroutine reset_line
recursive subroutine follow_line1 (line)
integer, intent(in) :: line
integer :: i
! print *, 'follow line 1:', line      !!! Debugging
if (line == count) then
  ! print *, 'loop closed'            !!! Debugging
  return
end if
do i = 1, n
  if (any (cc(i)%c1 == -line)) then
    call reset_line (cc(i)%c1, -line)
    ! print *, 'found', -line, ' resetting c1:'  !!! Debugging
    ! call color_write (cc); print *              !!! Debugging
    call follow_line2 (pick_new_line (cc(i)%c2, 0, sign (1, -line)))
    return
  end if
end do
call color_mismatch ()
end subroutine follow_line1
recursive subroutine follow_line2 (line)
integer, intent(in) :: line
integer :: i
! print *, 'follow line 2:', line      !!! Debugging
do i = 1, n
  if (any (cc(i)%c2 == -line)) then
    call reset_line (cc(i)%c2, -line)
    ! print *, 'found', -line, ' resetting c2:'  !!! Debugging
    ! call color_write (cc); print *              !!! Debugging
    call follow_line1 (pick_new_line (cc(i)%c1, 0, sign (1, -line)))
    return
  end if
end do
call color_mismatch ()
end subroutine follow_line2
subroutine color_mismatch ()
call color_write (col)
print *
call msg_bug (" Color flow mismatch (color loops should be closed)")
end subroutine color_mismatch
end function count_color_loops

```

## 7.2.6 Unit tests

*<Colors: public>+≡*

```

    public :: color_test
  <Colors: procedures>+=
    subroutine color_test (u, results)
      integer, intent(in) :: u
      type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Colors: execute tests>
    end subroutine color_test

```

This is a color counting test.

```

  <Colors: execute tests>=
    call test (color_1, "color_1", &
      "check color counting", &
      u, results)
  <Colors: tests>=
    subroutine color_1 (u)
      integer, intent(in) :: u
      type(color_t), dimension(4) :: col1, col2, col
      type(color_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: col3
      type(color_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: col_array
      integer :: count, i
      call color_init_col_acl (col1, [1, 0, 2, 3], [0, 1, 3, 2])
      col2 = col1
      call color_write (col1, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      call color_write (col2, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      col = col1 .merge. col2
      call color_write (col, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      count = count_color_loops (col)
      write (u, "(A,I1)") "Number of color loops (3): ", count
      call color_init_col_acl (col2, [1, 0, 2, 3], [0, 2, 3, 1])
      call color_write (col1, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      call color_write (col2, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      col = col1 .merge. col2
      call color_write (col, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      count = count_color_loops (col)
      write (u, "(A,I1)") "Number of color loops (2): ", count
      write (u, "(A)")
      allocate (col3 (4))
      call color_init_from_array (col3, &
        reshape ([1, 0, 0, -1, 2, -3, 3, -2], &
          [2, 4]))
      call color_write (col3, u)
      write (u, "(A)")
      call color_array_make_contractions (col3, col_array)
      write (u, "(A)") "Contractions:"
      do i = 1, size (col_array, 2)
        call color_write (col_array(:,i), u)
        write (u, "(A)")
      end do
    end subroutine color_1

```



```

end do
deallocate (col3)
write (u, "(A)")
allocate (col3 (6))
call color_init_from_array (col3, &
    reshape ([1, -2, 3, 0, 0, -1, 2, -4, -3, 0, 4, 0], &
        [2, 6]))
call color_write (col3, u)
write (u, "(A)")
call color_array_make_contractions (col3, col_array)
write (u, "(A)") "Contractions:"
do i = 1, size (col_array, 2)
    call color_write (col_array(:,i), u)
    write (u, "(A)")
end do
end subroutine color_1

```

### 7.2.7 The Madgraph color model

This section describes the method for matrix element and color flow calculation within Madgraph.

For each Feynman diagram, the colorless amplitude for a specified helicity and momentum configuration (in- and out- combined) is computed:

$$A_d(p, h) \quad (7.1)$$

Inserting color, the squared matrix element for definite helicity and momentum is

$$M^2(p, h) = \sum_{dd'} A_d(p, h) C_{dd'} A_{d'}^*(p, h) \quad (7.2)$$

where  $C_{dd'}$  describes the color interference of the two diagrams  $A_d$  and  $A_{d'}$ , which is independent of momentum and helicity and can be calculated for each Feynman diagram pair by reducing it to the corresponding color graph. Obviously, one could combine all diagrams with identical color structure, such that the index  $d$  runs only over different color graphs. For colorless diagrams all elements of  $C_{dd'}$  are equal to unity.

The hermitian matrix  $C_{dd'}$  is diagonalized once and for all, such that it can be written in the form

$$C_{dd'} = \sum_{\lambda} c_d^{\lambda} \lambda c_{d'}^{\lambda*}, \quad (7.3)$$

where the eigenvectors  $c_d$  are normalized,

$$\sum_d |c_d^{\lambda}|^2 = 1, \quad (7.4)$$

and the  $\lambda$  values are the corresponding eigenvalues. In the colorless case, this means  $c_d = 1/\sqrt{N_d}$  for all diagrams ( $N_d$  = number of diagrams), and  $\lambda = N_d$  is the only nonzero eigenvalue.

Consequently, the squared matrix element for definite helicity and momentum can also be written as

$$M^2(p, h) = \sum_{\lambda} A_{\lambda}(p, h) \lambda A_{\lambda}^*(p, h) \quad (7.5)$$

with

$$A_\lambda(p, h) = \sum_d c_d^\lambda A_d(p, h). \quad (7.6)$$

For generic spin density matrices, this is easily generalized to

$$M^2(p, h, h') = \sum_\lambda A_\lambda(p, h) \lambda A_\lambda(p, h')^* \quad (7.7)$$

To determine the color flow probabilities of a given momentum-helicity configuration, the color flow amplitudes are calculated as

$$a_f(p, h) = \sum_d \beta_d^f A_d(p, h), \quad (7.8)$$

where the coefficients  $\beta_d^f$  describe the amplitude for a given Feynman diagram (or color graph)  $d$  to correspond to a definite color flow  $f$ . They are computed from  $C_{dd'}$  by transforming this matrix into the color flow basis and neglecting all off-diagonal elements. Again, these coefficients do not depend on momentum or helicity and can therefore be calculated in advance. This gives the color flow transition matrix

$$F^f(p, h, h') = a_f(p, h) a_f^*(p, h') \quad (7.9)$$

which is assumed diagonal in color flow space and is separate from the color-summed transition matrix  $M^2$ . They are, however, equivalent (up to a factor) to leading order in  $1/N_c$ , and using the color flow transition matrix is appropriate for matching to hadronization.

Note that the color flow transition matrix is not normalized at this stage. To make use of it, we have to fold it with the in-state density matrix to get a pseudo density matrix

$$\hat{\rho}_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}, h'_{\text{out}}) = \sum_{h_{\text{in}} h'_{\text{in}}} F^f(p, h, h') \rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}}, h'_{\text{in}}) \quad (7.10)$$

which gets a meaning only after contracted with projections on the outgoing helicity states  $k_{\text{out}}$ , given as linear combinations of helicity states with the unitary coefficient matrix  $c(k_{\text{out}}, h_{\text{out}})$ . Then the probability of finding color flow  $f$  when the helicity state  $k_{\text{out}}$  is measured is given by

$$P^f(p, k_{\text{out}}) = Q^f(p, k_{\text{out}}) / \sum_f Q^f(p, k_{\text{out}}) \quad (7.11)$$

where

$$Q^f(p, k_{\text{out}}) = \sum_{h_{\text{out}} h'_{\text{out}}} c(k_{\text{out}}, h_{\text{out}}) \hat{\rho}_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}, h'_{\text{out}}) c^*(k_{\text{out}}, h'_{\text{out}}) \quad (7.12)$$

However, if we can assume that the out-state helicity basis is the canonical one, we can throw away the off diagonal elements in the color flow density matrix and normalize the ones on the diagonal to obtain

$$P^f(p, h_{\text{out}}) = \hat{\rho}_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}, h_{\text{out}}) / \sum_f \hat{\rho}_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}, h_{\text{out}}) \quad (7.13)$$

Finally, the color-summed out-state density matrix is computed by the scattering formula

$$\rho_{\text{out}}(p, h_{\text{out}}, h'_{\text{out}}) = \sum_{h_{\text{in}} h'_{\text{in}}} M^2(p, h, h') \rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}}, h'_{\text{in}}) \quad (7.14)$$

$$= \sum_{h_{\text{in}} h'_{\text{in}} \lambda} A_{\lambda}(p, h) \lambda A_{\lambda}(p, h')^* \rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}}, h'_{\text{in}}), \quad (7.15)$$

The trace of  $\rho_{\text{out}}$  is the squared matrix element, summed over all internal degrees of freedom. To get the squared matrix element for a definite helicity  $k_{\text{out}}$  and color flow  $f$ , one has to project the density matrix onto the given helicity state and multiply with  $P^f(p, k_{\text{out}})$ .

For diagonal helicities the out-state density reduces to

$$\rho_{\text{out}}(p, h_{\text{out}}) = \sum_{h_{\text{in}} \lambda} \lambda |A_{\lambda}(p, h)|^2 \rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}}). \quad (7.16)$$

Since no basis transformation is involved, we can use the normalized color flow probability  $P^f(p, h_{\text{out}})$  and express the result as

$$\rho_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}) = \rho_{\text{out}}(p, h_{\text{out}}) P^f(p, h_{\text{out}}) \quad (7.17)$$

$$= \sum_{h_{\text{in}} \lambda} \frac{|a^f(p, h)|^2}{\sum_f |a^f(p, h)|^2} \lambda |A_{\lambda}(p, h)|^2 \rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}}). \quad (7.18)$$

From these considerations, the following calculation strategy can be derived:

- Before the first event is generated, the color interference matrix  $C_{dd'}$  is computed and diagonalized, so the eigenvectors  $c_d^{\lambda}$ , eigenvalues  $\lambda$  and color flow coefficients  $\beta_d^f$  are obtained. In practice, these calculations are done when the matrix element code is generated, and the results are hardcoded in the matrix element subroutine as **DATA** statements.
- For each event, one loops over helicities once and stores the matrices  $A_{\lambda}(p, h)$  and  $a^f(p, h)$ . The allowed color flows, helicity combinations and eigenvalues are each labeled by integer indices, so one has to store complex matrices of dimension  $N_{\lambda} \times N_h$  and  $N_f \times N_h$ , respectively.
- The further strategy depends on the requested information.
  1. If colorless diagonal helicity amplitudes are required, the eigenvalues  $A_{\lambda}(p, h)$  are squared, summed with weight  $\lambda$ , and the result contracted with the in-state probability vector  $\rho_{\text{in}}(p, h_{\text{in}})$ . The result is a probability vector  $\rho_{\text{out}}(p, h_{\text{out}})$ .
  2. For colored diagonal helicity amplitudes, the color coefficients  $a^f(p, h)$  are also squared and used as weights to obtain the color-flow probability vector  $\rho_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}})$ .
  3. For colorless non-diagonal helicity amplitudes, we contract the tensor product of  $A_{\lambda}(p, h)$  with  $A_{\lambda}(p, h')$ , weighted with  $\lambda$ , with the correlated in-state density matrix, to obtain a correlated out-state density matrix.

4. In the general (colored, non-diagonal) case, we do the same as in the colorless case, but return the un-normalized color flow density matrix  $\hat{\rho}_{\text{out}}^f(p, h_{\text{out}}, h'_{\text{out}})$  in addition. When the relevant helicity basis is known, the latter can be used by the caller program to determine flow probabilities. (In reality, we assume the canonical basis and reduce the correlated out-state density to its diagonal immediately.)

## 7.3 Flavors: Particle properties

This module contains a type for holding the flavor code, and all functions that depend on the model, i.e., that determine particle properties.

The PDG code is packed in a special **flavor** type. (This prohibits meaningless operations, and it allows for a different implementation, e.g., some non-PDG scheme internally, if appropriate at some point.) In addition, the flavor object holds a pointer to a **particle\_data** object which is centrally stored (as part of a physics model). In this way, all particle data can be accessed using just the **flv** object without having to carry them around.

The pointer component imposes a technical restriction: Assignment of flavor objects cannot be used, directly or indirectly, in pure, and thus in elemental procedures.

```
<flavors.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module flavors  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use pdg_arrays  
    use colors, only: color_t, color_init  
    use models  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Flavors: public>  
  
    <Flavors: types>  
  
    <Flavors: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Flavors: procedures>  
  
  end module flavors
```

### 7.3.1 The flavor type

The flavor type is an integer representing the PDG code, or undefined (zero). Negative codes represent antiparticles.

For full generality, and analogy with helicity and color, we allow for non-diagonal flavor indices in density matrices. This is probably academic; an obscure application is the definition of proper isospin states.

Further properties of the given flavor can be retrieved via the particle-data pointer, if it is associated.

```
<Flavors: public>≡  
  public :: flavor_t
```

```

<Flavors: types>≡
  type :: flavor_t
  private
    integer :: f = UNDEFINED
    type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt => null ()
  end type flavor_t

```

Initializer form. If the model is assigned, the procedure is impure, therefore we have to define a separate array version.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
  public :: flavor_init

<Flavors: interfaces>≡
  interface flavor_init
    module procedure flavor_init0_empty
    module procedure flavor_init0
    module procedure flavor_init0_particle_data
    module procedure flavor_init0_model
    module procedure flavor_init0_model_alt
    module procedure flavor_init0_name_model
    module procedure flavor_init1_model
    module procedure flavor_init1_model_alt
    module procedure flavor_init1_name_model
    module procedure flavor_init2_model
    module procedure flavor_init2_model_alt
    module procedure flavor_init_aval_model
  end interface

<Flavors: procedures>≡
  elemental subroutine flavor_init0_empty (flv)
    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
  end subroutine flavor_init0_empty

  elemental subroutine flavor_init0 (flv, f)
    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, intent(in) :: f
    flv%f = f
  end subroutine flavor_init0

  subroutine flavor_init0_particle_data (flv, particle_data)
    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
    type(particle_data_t), intent(in), target :: particle_data
    flv%f = particle_data_get_pdg (particle_data)
    flv%prt => particle_data
  end subroutine flavor_init0_particle_data

  subroutine flavor_init0_model (flv, f, model)
    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    flv%f = f
    flv%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, f)
  end subroutine flavor_init0_model

  subroutine flavor_init0_model_alt (flv, f, model, alt_model)

```

```

    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model, alt_model
    flv%f = f
    flv%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, f, alt_model)
end subroutine flavor_init0_model_alt

subroutine flavor_init1_model (flv, f, model)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (f)
        call flavor_init0_model (flv(i), f(i), model)
    end do
end subroutine flavor_init1_model

subroutine flavor_init1_model_alt (flv, f, model, alt_model)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model, alt_model
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (f)
        call flavor_init0_model_alt (flv(i), f(i), model, alt_model)
    end do
end subroutine flavor_init1_model_alt

subroutine flavor_init2_model (flv, f, model)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, dimension(:, :), intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (f, 2)
        call flavor_init1_model (flv(:,i), f(:,i), model)
    end do
end subroutine flavor_init2_model

subroutine flavor_init2_model_alt (flv, f, model, alt_model)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: flv
    integer, dimension(:, :), intent(in) :: f
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model, alt_model
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (f, 2)
        call flavor_init1_model_alt (flv(:,i), f(:,i), model, alt_model)
    end do
end subroutine flavor_init2_model_alt

subroutine flavor_init0_name_model (flv, name, model)
    type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    flv%f = model_get_particle_pdg (model, name)
    flv%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, flv%f)
end subroutine flavor_init0_name_model

```

```

subroutine flavor_init1_name_model (flv, name, model)
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: flv
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: name
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (name)
    call flavor_init0_name_model (flv(i), name(i), model)
  end do
end subroutine flavor_init1_name_model

```

This version transforms a PDG array value into a flavor array. The flavor array must be allocatable.

```

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
subroutine flavor_init_aval_model (flv, aval, model)
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
  pdg = aval
  allocate (flv (size (pdg)))
  call flavor_init (flv, pdg, model)
end subroutine flavor_init_aval_model

```

Undefine the flavor state:

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
public :: flavor_undefine
<Flavors: procedures>+≡
elemental subroutine flavor_undefine (flv)
  type(flavor_t), intent(inout) :: flv
  flv%f = UNDEFINED
  flv%prt => null ()
end subroutine flavor_undefine

```

Output: dense, no linebreak

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
public :: flavor_write
<Flavors: procedures>+≡
subroutine flavor_write (flv, unit)
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  if (associated (flv%prt)) then
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "f("
  else
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "p("
  end if
  write (u, "(I0)", advance="no") flv%f
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ")"
end subroutine flavor_write

```



Binary I/O. Currently, the model information is not written/read, so after reading the particle-data pointer is empty.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
    public :: flavor_write_raw
    public :: flavor_read_raw

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine flavor_write_raw (flv, u)
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        write (u) flv%f
    end subroutine flavor_write_raw

    subroutine flavor_read_raw (flv, u, iostat)
        type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
        read (u, iostat=iostat) flv%f
    end subroutine flavor_read_raw

```

## Assignment

Default assignment of flavor objects is possible, but cannot be used in pure procedures, because a pointer assignment is involved.

Assign the particle pointer separately. This cannot be elemental, so we define a scalar and an array version explicitly. We refer to an array of flavors, not an array of models.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
    public :: flavor_set_model

<Flavors: interfaces>+≡
    interface flavor_set_model
        module procedure flavor_set_model_single
        module procedure flavor_set_model_array
        module procedure flavor_set_model_array2
    end interface

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine flavor_set_model_single (flv, model)
        type(flavor_t), intent(inout) :: flv
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        if (flv%f /= UNDEFINED) &
            flv%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, flv%f)
    end subroutine flavor_set_model_single

    subroutine flavor_set_model_array (flv, model)
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: flv
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (flv)
            if (flv(i)%f /= UNDEFINED) &
                flv(i)%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, flv(i)%f)
        end do

```

```

end subroutine flavor_set_model_array

subroutine flavor_set_model_array2 (flv, model)
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(inout) :: flv
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer :: i, j
  do i = 1, size (flv, 2)
    do j = 1, size (flv, 1)
      if (flv(j,i)%f /= UNDEFINED) &
        flv(j,i)%prt => model_get_particle_ptr (model, flv(j,i)%f)
    end do
  end do
end subroutine flavor_set_model_array2

```

## Predicates

Return the definition status

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
  public :: flavor_is_defined

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function flavor_is_defined (flv) result (defined)
    logical :: defined
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    defined = flv%f /= UNDEFINED
  end function flavor_is_defined

```

Check for valid flavor (including undefined):

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
  public :: flavor_is_valid

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function flavor_is_valid (flv) result (valid)
    logical :: valid
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    valid = flv%f /= INVALID
  end function flavor_is_valid

```

Return true if the particle-data pointer is associated. (Debugging aid)

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
  public :: flavor_is_associated

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
  elemental function flavor_is_associated (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    flag = associated (flv%prt)
  end function flavor_is_associated

```

## Accessing contents

With the exception of the PDG code, all particle properties are accessible only via the `prt` pointer. If this is unassigned, some access function will crash.

Return the flavor as an integer

```
(Flavors: public)+≡
    public :: flavor_get_pdg

(Flavors: procedures)+≡
    elemental function flavor_get_pdg (flv) result (f)
        integer :: f
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        f = flv%f
    end function flavor_get_pdg
```

Return the flavor of the antiparticle

```
(Flavors: public)+≡
    public :: flavor_get_pdg_anti

(Flavors: procedures)+≡
    elemental function flavor_get_pdg_anti (flv) result (f)
        integer :: f
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        if (associated (flv%prt)) then
            if (particle_data_has_antiparticle (flv%prt)) then
                f = -flv%f
            else
                f = flv%f
            end if
        else
            f = 0
        end if
    end function flavor_get_pdg_anti
```

Absolute value:

```
(Flavors: public)+≡
    public :: flavor_get_pdg_abs

(Flavors: procedures)+≡
    elemental function flavor_get_pdg_abs (flv) result (f)
        integer :: f
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        f = abs (flv%f)
    end function flavor_get_pdg_abs
```

Generic properties

```
(Flavors: public)+≡
    public :: flavor_is_visible
    public :: flavor_is_parton
    public :: flavor_is_beam_remnant
    public :: flavor_is_gauge
    public :: flavor_is_left_handed
    public :: flavor_is_right_handed
```

```

public :: flavor_is_antiparticle
public :: flavor_has_antiparticle
public :: flavor_is_stable
public :: flavor_get_decays
public :: flavor_decays_isotropically
public :: flavor_decays_diagonal
public :: flavor_is_polarized

(Flavors: procedures)+≡
  elemental function flavor_is_visible (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      flag = particle_data_is_visible (flv%prt)
    else
      flag = .false.
    end if
  end function flavor_is_visible

  elemental function flavor_is_parton (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      flag = particle_data_is_parton (flv%prt)
    else
      flag = .false.
    end if
  end function flavor_is_parton

  elemental function flavor_is_beam_remnant (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    select case (abs (flv%f))
    case (HADRON_REMNANT, &
           HADRON_REMNANT_SINGLET, HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET)
      flag = .true.
    case default
      flag = .false.
    end select
  end function flavor_is_beam_remnant

  elemental function flavor_is_gauge (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      flag = particle_data_is_gauge (flv%prt)
    else
      flag = .false.
    end if
  end function flavor_is_gauge

  elemental function flavor_is_left_handed (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then

```

```

        if (flv%f > 0) then
            flag = particle_data_is_left_handed (flv%prt)
        else
            flag = particle_data_is_right_handed (flv%prt)
        end if
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function flavor_is_left_handed

elemental function flavor_is_right_handed (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        if (flv%f > 0) then
            flag = particle_data_is_right_handed (flv%prt)
        else
            flag = particle_data_is_left_handed (flv%prt)
        end if
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function flavor_is_right_handed

elemental function flavor_is_antiparticle (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    flag = flv%f < 0
end function flavor_is_antiparticle

elemental function flavor_has_antiparticle (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        flag = particle_data_has_antiparticle (flv%prt)
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function flavor_has_antiparticle

elemental function flavor_is_stable (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        flag = particle_data_is_stable (flv%prt, anti = flv%f < 0)
    else
        flag = .true.
    end if
end function flavor_is_stable

subroutine flavor_get_decays (flv, decay)
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: decay
    logical :: anti

```

```

    anti = flv%f < 0
    if (.not. particle_data_is_stable (flv%prt, anti)) then
        call particle_data_get_decays (flv%prt, decay, anti)
    end if
end subroutine flavor_get_decays

elemental function flavor_decays_isotropically (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        flag = particle_data_decays_isotropically (flv%prt, anti = flv%f < 0)
    else
        flag = .true.
    end if
end function flavor_decays_isotropically

elemental function flavor_decays_diagonal (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        flag = particle_data_decays_diagonal (flv%prt, anti = flv%f < 0)
    else
        flag = .true.
    end if
end function flavor_decays_diagonal

elemental function flavor_is_polarized (flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        flag = particle_data_is_polarized (flv%prt, anti = flv%f < 0)
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function flavor_is_polarized

```

Names:

*(Flavors: public)*+≡

```

    public :: flavor_get_name
    public :: flavor_get_tex_name

```

*(Flavors: procedures)*+≡

```

    elemental function flavor_get_name (flv) result (name)
        type(string_t) :: name
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        if (associated (flv%prt)) then
            name = particle_data_get_name (flv%prt, flv%f < 0)
        else
            name = "?"
        end if
    end function flavor_get_name

    elemental function flavor_get_tex_name (flv) result (name)
        type(string_t) :: name

```

```

type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
if (associated (flv%prt)) then
    name = particle_data_get_tex_name (flv%prt, flv%f < 0)
else
    name = "?"
end if
end function flavor_get_tex_name

```

*(Flavors: public)*+≡

```

public :: flavor_get_spin_type
public :: flavor_get_multiplicity
public :: flavor_get_isospin_type
public :: flavor_get_charge_type
public :: flavor_get_color_type

```

*(Flavors: procedures)*+≡

```

elemental function flavor_get_spin_type (flv) result (type)
    integer :: type
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        type = particle_data_get_spin_type (flv%prt)
    else
        type = 1
    end if
end function flavor_get_spin_type

```

```

elemental function flavor_get_multiplicity (flv) result (type)
    integer :: type
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        type = particle_data_get_multiplicity (flv%prt)
    else
        type = 1
    end if
end function flavor_get_multiplicity

```

```

elemental function flavor_get_isospin_type (flv) result (type)
    integer :: type
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        type = particle_data_get_isospin_type (flv%prt)
    else
        type = 1
    end if
end function flavor_get_isospin_type

```

```

elemental function flavor_get_charge_type (flv) result (type)
    integer :: type
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        type = particle_data_get_charge_type (flv%prt)
    else
        type = 1
    end if

```

```

end function flavor_get_charge_type

elemental function flavor_get_color_type (flv) result (type)
  integer :: type
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  if (associated (flv%prt)) then
    if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
      type = - particle_data_get_color_type (flv%prt)
    else
      type = particle_data_get_color_type (flv%prt)
    end if
  else
    type = 1
  end if
end function flavor_get_color_type

```

These functions return real values:

```

<Flavors: public>+=
  public :: flavor_get_charge
  public :: flavor_get_mass
  public :: flavor_get_width
  public :: flavor_get_isospin

<Flavors: procedures>+=
  elemental function flavor_get_charge (flv) result (charge)
    real(default) :: charge
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
        charge = particle_data_get_charge (flv%prt)
      else
        charge = - particle_data_get_charge (flv%prt)
      end if
    else
      charge = 0
    end if
  end function flavor_get_charge

  elemental function flavor_get_mass (flv) result (mass)
    real(default) :: mass
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      mass = particle_data_get_mass (flv%prt)
    else
      mass = 0
    end if
  end function flavor_get_mass

  elemental function flavor_get_width (flv) result (width)
    real(default) :: width
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
      width = particle_data_get_width (flv%prt)
    else

```



```

        width = 0
    end if
end function flavor_get_width

elemental function flavor_get_isospin (flv) result (isospin)
    real(default) :: isospin
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (associated (flv%prt)) then
        if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
            isospin = particle_data_get_isospin (flv%prt)
        else
            isospin = - particle_data_get_isospin (flv%prt)
        end if
    else
        isospin = 0
    end if
end function flavor_get_isospin

```

## Comparisons

If one of the flavors is undefined, the other defined, they match.

*(Flavors: public)*+≡

```

    public :: operator(.match.)
    public :: operator(==)
    public :: operator(/=)

```

*(Flavors: interfaces)*+≡

```

    interface operator(.match.)
        module procedure flavor_match
    end interface
    interface operator(==)
        module procedure flavor_eq
    end interface
    interface operator(/=)
        module procedure flavor_neq
    end interface

```

*(Flavors: procedures)*+≡

```

    elemental function flavor_match (flv1, flv2) result (eq)
        logical :: eq
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv1, flv2
        if (flv1%f /= UNDEFINED .and. flv2%f /= UNDEFINED) then
            eq = flv1%f == flv2%f
        else
            eq = .true.
        end if
    end function flavor_match

    elemental function flavor_eq (flv1, flv2) result (eq)
        logical :: eq
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv1, flv2
        if (flv1%f /= UNDEFINED .and. flv2%f /= UNDEFINED) then
            eq = flv1%f == flv2%f
        else if (flv1%f == UNDEFINED .and. flv2%f == UNDEFINED) then

```

```

        eq = .true.
    else
        eq = .false.
    end if
end function flavor_eq

```

```

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
elemental function flavor_neq (flv1, flv2) result (neq)
    logical :: neq
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv1, flv2
    if (flv1%f /= UNDEFINED .and. flv2%f /= UNDEFINED) then
        neq = flv1%f /= flv2%f
    else if (flv1%f == UNDEFINED .and. flv2%f == UNDEFINED) then
        neq = .false.
    else
        neq = .true.
    end if
end function flavor_neq

```

## Tools

Merge two flavor indices. This works only if both are equal or either one is undefined, because we have no off-diagonal flavor entries. Otherwise, generate an invalid flavor.

We cannot use elemental procedures because of the pointer component.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
public :: operator(.merge.)

<Flavors: interfaces>+≡
interface operator(.merge.)
    module procedure merge_flavors0
    module procedure merge_flavors1
end interface

```

```

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
function merge_flavors0 (flv1, flv2) result (flv)
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv1, flv2
    if (flavor_is_defined (flv1) .and. flavor_is_defined (flv2)) then
        if (flv1 == flv2) then
            flv = flv1
        else
            flv%f = INVALID
        end if
    else if (flavor_is_defined (flv1)) then
        flv = flv1
    else if (flavor_is_defined (flv2)) then
        flv = flv2
    end if
end function merge_flavors0

function merge_flavors1 (flv1, flv2) result (flv)

```

```

type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv1, flv2
type(flavor_t), dimension(size(flv1)) :: flv
integer :: i
do i = 1, size (flv1)
    flv(i) = flv1(i) .merge. flv2(i)
end do
end function merge_flavors1

```

Generate consecutive color indices for a given flavor. The indices are counted starting with the stored value of *c*, so new indices are created each time this (impure) function is called. The counter can be reset by the optional argument *c\_seed* if desired. The optional flag *reverse* is used only for octets. If set, the color and anticolor entries of the octet particle are exchanged.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
    public :: color_from_flavor

<Flavors: interfaces>+≡
    interface color_from_flavor
        module procedure color_from_flavor0
        module procedure color_from_flavor1
    end interface

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
function color_from_flavor0 (flv, c_seed, reverse) result (col)
    type(color_t) :: col
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    integer, intent(in), optional :: c_seed
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reverse
    integer, save :: c = 1
    logical :: rev
    if (present (c_seed)) c = c_seed
    rev = .false.; if (present (reverse)) rev = reverse
    select case (flavor_get_color_type (flv))
    case (1)
    case (3)
        call color_init (col, (/ c /)); c = c + 1
    case (-3)
        call color_init (col, (/ -c /)); c = c + 1
    case (8)
        if (rev) then
            call color_init (col, (/ c+1, -c /)); c = c + 2
        else
            call color_init (col, (/ c, -(c+1) /)); c = c + 2
        end if
    end select
end function color_from_flavor0

function color_from_flavor1 (flv, c_seed, reverse) result (col)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer, intent(in), optional :: c_seed
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reverse
    type(color_t), dimension(size(flv)) :: col
    integer :: i
    col(1) = color_from_flavor0 (flv(1), c_seed, reverse)

```

```

do i = 2, size (flv)
  col(i) = color_from_flavor0 (flv(i), reverse=reverse)
end do
end function color_from_flavor1

```

This procedure returns the flavor object for the antiparticle. The antiparticle code may either be the same code or its negative.

```

<Flavors: public>+≡
  public :: flavor_anti

<Flavors: procedures>+≡
  function flavor_anti (flv) result (aflv)
    type(flavor_t) :: aflv
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    if (flavor_has_antiparticle (flv)) then
      aflv%f = - flv%f
    else
      aflv%f = flv%f
    end if
    aflv%prt => flv%prt
  end function flavor_anti

```

## 7.4 Quantum numbers

This module collects helicity, color, and flavor in a single type and defines procedures

```
<quantum_numbers.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module quantum_numbers  
  
    <Use file utils>  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use colors  
    use helicities  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Quantum numbers: public>  
  
    <Quantum numbers: types>  
  
    <Quantum numbers: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Quantum numbers: procedures>  
  
  end module quantum_numbers
```

### 7.4.1 The quantum number type

```
<Quantum numbers: public>≡  
  public :: quantum_numbers_t  
  
<Quantum numbers: types>≡  
  type :: quantum_numbers_t  
    private  
    type(flavor_t) :: f  
    type(color_t) :: c  
    type(helicity_t) :: h  
  end type quantum_numbers_t
```

Define quantum numbers: Initializer form. All arguments may be present or absent.

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡  
  public :: quantum_numbers_init  
  
<Quantum numbers: interfaces>≡  
  interface quantum_numbers_init  
    module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_f  
    module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_c  
    module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_h  
    module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_fc  
    module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_fh
```

```

module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_ch
module procedure quantum_numbers_init0_fch
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_f
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_c
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_h
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_fc
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_fh
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_ch
module procedure quantum_numbers_init1_fch
end interface

```

*(Quantum numbers: procedures)*≡

```

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_f (qn, flv)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  qn%f = flv
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_f

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_c (qn, col)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  qn%c = col
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_c

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_h (qn, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
  qn%h = hel
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_h

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fc (qn, flv, col)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  qn%f = flv
  qn%c = col
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fc

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fh (qn, flv, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
  qn%f = flv
  qn%h = hel
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fh

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_ch (qn, col, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
  qn%c = col
  qn%h = hel
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_ch

```

```

subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fch (qn, flv, col, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
  type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
  qn%f = flv
  qn%c = col
  qn%h = hel
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init0_fch

subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_f (qn, flv)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (qn)
    call quantum_numbers_init0_f (qn(i), flv(i))
  end do
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_f

subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_c (qn, col)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
  type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (qn)
    call quantum_numbers_init0_c (qn(i), col(i))
  end do
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_c

subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_h (qn, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
  type(helicity_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: hel
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (qn)
    call quantum_numbers_init0_h (qn(i), hel(i))
  end do
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_h

subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fc (qn, flv, col)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (qn)
    call quantum_numbers_init0_fc (qn(i), flv(i), col(i))
  end do
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fc

subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fh (qn, flv, hel)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  type(helicity_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: hel
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (qn)
    call quantum_numbers_init0_fh (qn(i), flv(i), hel(i))
  end do
end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fh

```

```

        end do
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fh

    subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_ch (qn, col, hel)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
        type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
        type(helicity_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: hel
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (qn)
            call quantum_numbers_init0_ch (qn(i), col(i), hel(i))
        end do
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_ch

    subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fch (qn, flv, col, hel)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: qn
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
        type(color_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
        type(helicity_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: hel
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (qn)
            call quantum_numbers_init0_fch (qn(i), flv(i), col(i), hel(i))
        end do
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_init1_fch

```

### 7.4.2 I/O

Write the quantum numbers in condensed form, enclosed by square brackets. For convenience, introduce also an array version.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_write

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface quantum_numbers_write
        module procedure quantum_numbers_write_single
        module procedure quantum_numbers_write_array
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    subroutine quantum_numbers_write_single (qn, unit)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "["
        if (flavor_is_defined (qn%f)) then
            call flavor_write (qn%f, u)
            if (color_is_defined (qn%c) .or. helicity_is_defined (qn%h)) &
                write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
        end if
        if (color_is_defined (qn%c) .or. color_is_ghost (qn%c)) then
            call color_write (qn%c, u)
            if (helicity_is_defined (qn%h)) write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
        end if
    end subroutine

```



```

        if (helicity_is_defined (qn%h)) then
            call helicity_write (qn%h, u)
        end if
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "]"
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_write_single

subroutine quantum_numbers_write_array (qn, unit)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: i
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "["
    do i = 1, size (qn)
        if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " / "
        if (flavor_is_defined (qn(i)%f)) then
            call flavor_write (qn(i)%f, u)
            if (color_is_defined (qn(i)%c) .or. helicity_is_defined (qn(i)%h)) &
                write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
        end if
        if (color_is_defined (qn(i)%c) .or. color_is_ghost (qn(i)%c)) then
            call color_write (qn(i)%c, u)
            if (helicity_is_defined (qn(i)%h)) write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
        end if
        if (helicity_is_defined (qn(i)%h)) then
            call helicity_write (qn(i)%h, u)
        end if
    end do
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "]"
end subroutine quantum_numbers_write_array

```

Binary I/O.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_write_raw
    public :: quantum_numbers_read_raw

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    subroutine quantum_numbers_write_raw (qn, u)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        call flavor_write_raw (qn%f, u)
        call color_write_raw (qn%c, u)
        call helicity_write_raw (qn%h, u)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_write_raw

    subroutine quantum_numbers_read_raw (qn, u, iostat)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(out) :: qn
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
        call flavor_read_raw (qn%f, u, iostat=iostat)
        call color_read_raw (qn%c, u, iostat=iostat)
        call helicity_read_raw (qn%h, u, iostat=iostat)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_read_raw

```

### 7.4.3 Accessing contents

Color and helicity can be done by elemental functions. Flavor needs explicit specifics because of the pointer assignment.

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_get_flavor
    public :: quantum_numbers_get_color
    public :: quantum_numbers_get_helicity

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface quantum_numbers_get_flavor
        module procedure quantum_numbers_get_flavor0
        module procedure quantum_numbers_get_flavor1
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    function quantum_numbers_get_flavor0 (qn) result (flv)
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        flv = qn%f
    end function quantum_numbers_get_flavor0

    function quantum_numbers_get_flavor1 (qn) result (flv)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
        type(flavor_t), dimension(size(qn)) :: flv
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (qn)
            flv(i) = qn(i)%f
        end do
    end function quantum_numbers_get_flavor1

    elemental function quantum_numbers_get_color (qn) result (col)
        type(color_t) :: col
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        col = qn%c
    end function quantum_numbers_get_color

    elemental function quantum_numbers_get_helicity (qn) result (hel)
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        hel = qn%h
    end function quantum_numbers_get_helicity

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_set_flavor
    public :: quantum_numbers_set_color
    public :: quantum_numbers_set_helicity

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface quantum_numbers_set_flavor
        module procedure quantum_numbers_set_flavor0
        module procedure quantum_numbers_set_flavor1
    end interface
```

```

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  subroutine quantum_numbers_set_flavor0 (qn, flv)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    qn%f = flv
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_flavor0

  subroutine quantum_numbers_set_flavor1 (qn, flv)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (flv)
      qn(i)%f = flv(i)
    end do
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_flavor1

  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color (qn, col)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
    qn%c = col
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color

  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_set_helicity (qn, hel)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    qn%h = hel
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_helicity

```

This just resets the ghost property of the color/helicity part:

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_set_color_ghost
  public :: quantum_numbers_set_helicity_ghost

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color_ghost (qn, ghost)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call color_set_ghost (qn%c, ghost)
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color_ghost

  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_set_helicity_ghost (qn, ghost)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    logical, intent(in) :: ghost
    call helicity_set_ghost (qn%h, ghost)
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_helicity_ghost

```

Assign a model to the flavor part of quantum numbers.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_set_model

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
  interface quantum_numbers_set_model
    module procedure quantum_numbers_set_model_single
    module procedure quantum_numbers_set_model_array
  end interface

```

```

end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  subroutine quantum_numbers_set_model_single (qn, model)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    call flavor_set_model (qn%f, model)
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_model_single

  subroutine quantum_numbers_set_model_array (qn, model)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    call flavor_set_model (qn%f, model)
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_model_array

```

This is a convenience function: return the color type for the flavor (array).

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_get_color_type

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_get_color_type (qn) result (color_type)
    integer :: color_type
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    color_type = flavor_get_color_type (qn%f)
  end function quantum_numbers_get_color_type

```

#### 7.4.4 Predicates

Check if the flavor index is valid (including UNDEFINED).

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_are_valid

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_are_valid (qn) result (valid)
    logical :: valid
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    valid = flavor_is_valid (qn%f)
  end function quantum_numbers_are_valid

```

Check if the flavor part has its particle-data pointer associated (debugging aid).

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_are_associated

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_are_associated (qn) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    flag = flavor_is_associated (qn%f)
  end function quantum_numbers_are_associated

```

Check if the helicity and color quantum numbers are diagonal. (Unpolarized/colorless also counts as diagonal.) Flavor is diagonal by definition.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_are_diagonal

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_are_diagonal (qn) result (diagonal)
    logical :: diagonal
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    diagonal = helicity_is_diagonal (qn%h) .and. color_is_diagonal (qn%c)
  end function quantum_numbers_are_diagonal

```

Check if the color and/or helicity part has the ghost property.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_is_color_ghost
  public :: quantum_numbers_is_helicity_ghost

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_is_color_ghost (qn) result (ghost)
    logical :: ghost
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    ghost = color_is_ghost (qn%c)
  end function quantum_numbers_is_color_ghost

  elemental function quantum_numbers_is_helicity_ghost (qn) result (ghost)
    logical :: ghost
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    ghost = helicity_is_ghost (qn%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_is_helicity_ghost

```

### 7.4.5 Comparisons

Matching and equality is derived from the individual quantum numbers. The variant `fhmatch` matches only flavor and helicity. The variant `dhmatch` matches only diagonal helicity, if the matching helicity is undefined.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: operator(.match.)
  public :: operator(.fmatch.)
  public :: operator(.fhmatch.)
  public :: operator(.dhmatch.)
  public :: operator(==)
  public :: operator(/=)

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.match.)
    module procedure quantum_numbers_match
  end interface
  interface operator(.fmatch.)
    module procedure quantum_numbers_match_f
  end interface
  interface operator(.fhmatch.)
    module procedure quantum_numbers_match_fh
  end interface

```

```

interface operator(.dhmatch.)
  module procedure quantum_numbers_match_hel_diag
end interface
interface operator(==)
  module procedure quantum_numbers_eq
end interface
interface operator(/=)
  module procedure quantum_numbers_neq
end interface

(Quantum numbers: procedures) +=
  elemental function quantum_numbers_match (qn1, qn2) result (match)
    logical :: match
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    match = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f) .and. &
      (qn1%c .match. qn2%c) .and. &
      (qn1%h .match. qn2%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_match

  elemental function quantum_numbers_match_f (qn1, qn2) result (match)
    logical :: match
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    match = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f)
  end function quantum_numbers_match_f

  elemental function quantum_numbers_match_fh (qn1, qn2) result (match)
    logical :: match
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    match = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f) .and. &
      (qn1%h .match. qn2%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_match_fh

  elemental function quantum_numbers_match_hel_diag (qn1, qn2) result (match)
    logical :: match
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    match = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f) .and. &
      (qn1%c .match. qn2%c) .and. &
      (qn1%h .dhmatch. qn2%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_match_hel_diag

  elemental function quantum_numbers_eq (qn1, qn2) result (eq)
    logical :: eq
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    eq = (qn1%f == qn2%f) .and. &
      (qn1%c == qn2%c) .and. &
      (qn1%h == qn2%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_eq

  elemental function quantum_numbers_neq (qn1, qn2) result (neq)
    logical :: neq
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
    neq = (qn1%f /= qn2%f) .or. &
      (qn1%c /= qn2%c) .or. &
      (qn1%h /= qn2%h)
  end function quantum_numbers_neq

```

Two sets of quantum numbers are compatible if the individual quantum numbers are compatible, depending on the mask. Flavor has to match, regardless of the flavor mask.

If the color flag is set, color is compatible if the ghost property is identical. If the color flag is unset, color has to be identical. I.e., if the flag is set, the color amplitudes can interfere. If it is not set, they must be identical, and there must be no ghost. The latter property is used for expanding physical color flows.

Helicity is compatible if the mask is unset, otherwise it has to match. This determines if two amplitudes can be multiplied (no mask) or traced (mask).

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_are_compatible

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function quantum_numbers_are_compatible (qn1, qn2, mask) &
        result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
        if (mask%h .or. mask%hd) then
            flag = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f) .and. (qn1%h .match. qn2%h)
        else
            flag = (qn1%f .match. qn2%f)
        end if
        if (mask%c) then
            flag = flag .and. (color_is_ghost (qn1%c) .eqv. color_is_ghost (qn2%c))
        else
            flag = flag .and. &
                .not. (color_is_ghost (qn1%c) .or. color_is_ghost (qn2%c)) .and. &
                (qn1%c == qn2%c)
        end if
    end function quantum_numbers_are_compatible

```

This is the analog for a single quantum-number set. We just check for color ghosts; they are excluded if the color mask is unset (color-flow expansion).

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_are_physical

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function quantum_numbers_are_physical (qn, mask) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
        if (mask%c) then
            flag = .true.
        else
            flag = .not. color_is_ghost (qn%c)
        end if
    end function quantum_numbers_are_physical

```

## 7.4.6 Operations

Inherited from the color component: reassign color indices in canonical order.

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_canonicalize_color

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    subroutine quantum_numbers_canonicalize_color (qn)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: qn
        call color_canonicalize (qn%c)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_canonicalize_color
```

Inherited from the color component: make a color map for two matching quantum-number arrays.

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_set_color_map

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color_map (map, qn1, qn2)
        integer, dimension(:,:), intent(out), allocatable :: map
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
        call set_color_map (map, qn1%c, qn2%c)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_set_color_map
```

Inherited from the color component: translate the color part using a color-map array

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_translate_color

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface quantum_numbers_translate_color
        module procedure quantum_numbers_translate_color0
        module procedure quantum_numbers_translate_color1
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    subroutine quantum_numbers_translate_color0 (qn, map, offset)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
        integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: map
        integer, intent(in), optional :: offset
        call color_translate (qn%c, map, offset)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_translate_color0

    subroutine quantum_numbers_translate_color1 (qn, map, offset)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: qn
        integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: map
        integer, intent(in), optional :: offset
        call color_translate (qn%c, map, offset)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_translate_color1
```

Inherited from the color component: return the color index with highest absolute value

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value
```



```

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
interface quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value
  module procedure quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value0
  module procedure quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value1
  module procedure quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value2
end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value0 (qn) result (cmax)
  integer :: cmax
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
  cmax = color_get_max_value (qn%c)
end function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value0

function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value1 (qn) result (cmax)
  integer :: cmax
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
  cmax = color_get_max_value (qn%c)
end function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value1

function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value2 (qn) result (cmax)
  integer :: cmax
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: qn
  cmax = color_get_max_value (qn%c)
end function quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value2

```

Inherited from the color component: add an offset to the indices of the color part

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
public :: quantum_numbers_add_color_offset

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_add_color_offset (qn, offset)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
  integer, intent(in) :: offset
  call color_add_offset (qn%c, offset)
end subroutine quantum_numbers_add_color_offset

```

Given a quantum number array, return all possible color contractions, leaving the other quantum numbers intact.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
public :: quantum_number_array_make_color_contractions

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
subroutine quantum_number_array_make_color_contractions (qn_in, qn_out)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_in
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), intent(out), allocatable :: qn_out
  type(color_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: col
  integer :: i
  call color_array_make_contractions (qn_in%c, col)
  allocate (qn_out (size (col, 1), size (col, 2)))
  do i = 1, size (qn_out, 2)
    qn_out(:,i)%f = qn_in%f
  end do
end subroutine quantum_number_array_make_color_contractions

```

```

        qn_out(:,i)%c = col(:,i)
        qn_out(:,i)%h = qn_in%h
    end do
end subroutine quantum_number_array_make_color_contractions

```

Inherited from the color component: invert the color, switching particle/antiparticle.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_invert_color

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_invert_color (qn)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
        call color_invert (qn%c)
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_invert_color

```

Merge two quantum number sets: for each entry, if both are defined, combine them to an off-diagonal entry (meaningful only if the input was diagonal). If either entry is undefined, take the defined one.

For flavor, off-diagonal entries are invalid, so both flavors must be equal, otherwise an invalid flavor is inserted.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: operator(.merge.)

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(.merge.)
        module procedure merge_quantum_numbers0
        module procedure merge_quantum_numbers1
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    function merge_quantum_numbers0 (qn1, qn2) result (qn3)
        type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn3
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
        qn3%f = qn1%f .merge. qn2%f
        qn3%c = qn1%c .merge. qn2%c
        qn3%h = qn1%h .merge. qn2%h
    end function merge_quantum_numbers0

    function merge_quantum_numbers1 (qn1, qn2) result (qn3)
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn1, qn2
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(qn1)) :: qn3
        qn3%f = qn1%f .merge. qn2%f
        qn3%c = qn1%c .merge. qn2%c
        qn3%h = qn1%h .merge. qn2%h
    end function merge_quantum_numbers1

```

### 7.4.7 The quantum number mask

The quantum numbers mask is true for quantum numbers that should be ignored or summed over. The three mandatory entries correspond to flavor, color, and helicity, respectively.

There is an additional entry `cg`: If false, the color-ghosts property should be kept even if color is ignored. This is relevant only if `c` is set, otherwise it is always false.

The flag `hd` tells that only diagonal entries in helicity should be kept. If `h` is set, `hd` is irrelevant and will be kept `.false`.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_t

<Quantum numbers: types>+≡
  type :: quantum_numbers_mask_t
    private
    logical :: f = .false.
    logical :: c = .false.
    logical :: cg = .false.
    logical :: h = .false.
    logical :: hd = .false.
  end type quantum_numbers_mask_t

```

Define a quantum number mask: Constructor form

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: new_quantum_numbers_mask

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function new_quantum_numbers_mask &
    (mask_f, mask_c, mask_h, mask_cg, mask_hd) result (mask)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
    logical, intent(in) :: mask_f, mask_c, mask_h
    logical, intent(in), optional :: mask_cg
    logical, intent(in), optional :: mask_hd
    call quantum_numbers_mask_init &
      (mask, mask_f, mask_c, mask_h, mask_cg, mask_hd)
  end function new_quantum_numbers_mask

```

Define quantum numbers: Initializer form

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_init

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_init &
    (mask, mask_f, mask_c, mask_h, mask_cg, mask_hd)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(out) :: mask
    logical, intent(in) :: mask_f, mask_c, mask_h
    logical, intent(in), optional :: mask_cg, mask_hd
    mask%f = mask_f
    mask%c = mask_c
    mask%h = mask_h
    if (present (mask_cg)) then
      if (mask%c) mask%cg = mask_cg
    else
      mask%cg = mask_c
    end if
    if (present (mask_hd)) then
      if (.not. mask%h) mask%hd = mask_hd
    end if

```

```
end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_init
```

Write a quantum numbers mask

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_write

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
  interface quantum_numbers_mask_write
    module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_write_single
    module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_write_array
  end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_write_single (mask, unit)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "["
    write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask%f
    write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask%c
    if (.not.mask%cg) write (u, "('g')", advance="no")
    write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask%h
    if (mask%hd) write (u, "('d')", advance="no")
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "]"
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_write_single

  subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_write_array (mask, unit)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "["
    do i = 1, size (mask)
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "/"
      write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask(i)%f
      write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask(i)%c
      if (.not.mask(i)%cg) write (u, "('g')", advance="no")
      write (u, "(L1)", advance="no") mask(i)%h
      if (mask(i)%hd) write (u, "('d')", advance="no")
    end do
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "]"
  end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_write_array
```

## 7.4.8 Setting mask components

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_set_flavor
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_set_color
  public :: quantum_numbers_mask_set_helicity

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_flavor (mask, mask_f)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(inout) :: mask
```

```

        logical, intent(in) :: mask_f
        mask%f = mask_f
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_flavor

    elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_color (mask, mask_c, mask_cg)
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(inout) :: mask
        logical, intent(in) :: mask_c
        logical, intent(in), optional :: mask_cg
        mask%c = mask_c
        if (present (mask_cg)) then
            if (mask%c) mask%cg = mask_cg
        else
            mask%cg = mask_c
        end if
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_color

    elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_helicity (mask, mask_h, mask_hd)
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(inout) :: mask
        logical, intent(in) :: mask_h
        logical, intent(in), optional :: mask_hd
        mask%h = mask_h
        if (present (mask_hd)) then
            if (.not. mask%h) mask%hd = mask_hd
        end if
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_set_helicity

```

The following routines assign part of a mask, depending on the flags given.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_mask_assign

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_assign &
        (mask, mask_in, flavor, color, helicity)
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(inout) :: mask
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask_in
        logical, intent(in), optional :: flavor, color, helicity
        if (present (flavor)) then
            if (flavor) then
                mask%f = mask_in%f
            end if
        end if
        if (present (color)) then
            if (color) then
                mask%c = mask_in%c
                mask%cg = mask_in%cg
            end if
        end if
        if (present (helicity)) then
            if (helicity) then
                mask%h = mask_in%h
                mask%hd = mask_in%hd
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine quantum_numbers_mask_assign

```

### 7.4.9 Mask predicates

Return true if either one of the entries is set:

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: any

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface any
        module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_any
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    function quantum_numbers_mask_any (mask) result (match)
        logical :: match
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
        match = mask%f .or. mask%c .or. mask%h .or. mask%hd
    end function quantum_numbers_mask_any
```

### 7.4.10 Operators

The OR operation is applied to all components.

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: operator(.or.)

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
    interface operator(.or.)
        module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_or
    end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function quantum_numbers_mask_or (mask1, mask2) result (mask)
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask1, mask2
        mask%f = mask1%f .or. mask2%f
        mask%c = mask1%c .or. mask2%c
        if (mask%c) mask%cg = mask1%cg .or. mask2%cg
        mask%h = mask1%h .or. mask2%h
        if (.not. mask%h) mask%hd = mask1%hd .or. mask2%hd
    end function quantum_numbers_mask_or
```

### 7.4.11 Mask comparisons

Return true if the two masks are equivalent / differ:

```
<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: operator(.eqv.)
    public :: operator(.neqv.)
```

```

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.eqv.)
    module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_eqv
  end interface
  interface operator(.neqv.)
    module procedure quantum_numbers_mask_neqv
  end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function quantum_numbers_mask_eqv (mask1, mask2) result (eqv)
    logical :: eqv
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask1, mask2
    eqv = (mask1%f .eqv. mask2%f) .and. &
          (mask1%c .eqv. mask2%c) .and. &
          (mask1%cg .eqv. mask2%cg) .and. &
          (mask1%h .eqv. mask2%h) .and. &
          (mask1%hd .eqv. mask2%hd)
  end function quantum_numbers_mask_eqv

  elemental function quantum_numbers_mask_neqv (mask1, mask2) result (neqv)
    logical :: neqv
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask1, mask2
    neqv = (mask1%f .neqv. mask2%f) .or. &
          (mask1%c .neqv. mask2%c) .or. &
          (mask1%cg .neqv. mask2%cg) .or. &
          (mask1%h .neqv. mask2%h) .or. &
          (mask1%hd .neqv. mask2%hd)
  end function quantum_numbers_mask_neqv

```

#### 7.4.12 Apply a mask

Applying a mask to the quantum number object means undefining those entries where the mask is set. The others remain unaffected.

The `hd` mask has the special property that it “diagonalizes” helicity, i.e., the second helicity entry is dropped and the result is a diagonal helicity quantum number.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
  public :: quantum_numbers_undefine
  public :: quantum_numbers_undefined

<Quantum numbers: interfaces>+≡
  interface quantum_numbers_undefined
    module procedure quantum_numbers_undefined0
    module procedure quantum_numbers_undefined1
    module procedure quantum_numbers_undefined11
  end interface

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, mask)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(inout) :: qn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
    if (mask%f) call flavor_undefine (qn%f)
    if (mask%c) call color_undefine (qn%c, undefine_ghost=mask%cg)

```

```

    if (mask%h) then
        call helicity_undefine (qn%h)
    else if (mask%hd) then
        if (.not. helicity_is_diagonal (qn%h)) then
            call helicity_diagonalize (qn%h)
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine quantum_numbers_undefine

function quantum_numbers_undefined0 (qn, mask) result (qn_new)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
    type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn_new
    qn_new = qn
    call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn_new, mask)
end function quantum_numbers_undefined0

function quantum_numbers_undefined1 (qn, mask) result (qn_new)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(qn)) :: qn_new
    qn_new = qn
    call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn_new, mask)
end function quantum_numbers_undefined1

function quantum_numbers_undefined11 (qn, mask) result (qn_new)
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(qn)) :: qn_new
    qn_new = qn
    call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn_new, mask)
end function quantum_numbers_undefined11

```

Return true if the input quantum number set has entries that would be removed by the applied mask, e.g., if polarization is defined but `mask%h` is set:

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_are_redundant

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function quantum_numbers_are_redundant (qn, mask) &
        result (redundant)
        logical :: redundant
        type(quantum_numbers_t), intent(in) :: qn
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
        redundant = .false.
        if (mask%f) then
            redundant = flavor_is_defined (qn%f)
        end if
        if (mask%c) then
            redundant = color_is_defined (qn%c)
        end if
        if (mask%h) then
            redundant = helicity_is_defined (qn%h)
        else if (mask%hd) then

```



```

        redundant = .not. helicity_is_diagonal (qn%h)
    end if
end function quantum_numbers_are_redundant

```

Return true if the helicity flag is set or the diagonal-helicity flag is set.

```

<Quantum numbers: public>+≡
    public :: quantum_numbers_mask_diagonal_helicity

<Quantum numbers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function quantum_numbers_mask_diagonal_helicity (mask) &
        result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
        flag = mask%h .or. mask%hd
    end function quantum_numbers_mask_diagonal_helicity

```

## 7.5 State matrices

This module deals with the internal state of a particle system, i.e., with its density matrix in flavor, color, and helicity space.

```
<state_matrices.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module state_matrices  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use colors  
    use helicities  
    use quantum_numbers  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <State matrices: public>  
  
    <State matrices: parameters>  
  
    <State matrices: types>  
  
    <State matrices: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <State matrices: procedures>  
  
    <State matrices: tests>  
  
  end module state_matrices
```

### 7.5.1 Nodes of the quantum state trie

A quantum state object represents an unnormalized density matrix, i.e., an array of possibilities for flavor, color, and helicity indices with associated complex values. Physically, the trace of this matrix is the summed squared matrix element for an interaction, and the matrix elements divided by this value correspond to the flavor-color-helicity density matrix. (Flavor and color are diagonal.)

We store density matrices as tries, that is, as trees where each branching represents the possible quantum numbers of a particle. The first branching is the first particle in the system. A leaf (the node corresponding to the last particle) contains the value of the matrix element.

Each node contains a flavor, color, and helicity entry. Note that each of those entries may be actually undefined, so we can also represent, e.g., unpolarized particles.

The value is meaningful only for leaves, which have no child nodes. There is a pointer to the parent node which allows for following the trie downwards from a leaf, it is null for a root node. The child nodes are implemented as a list, so there is a pointer to the first and last child, and each node also has a **next** pointer to the next sibling.

The root node does not correspond to a particle, only its children do. The quantum numbers of the root node are irrelevant and will not be set. However, we use a common type for the three classes (root, branch, leaf); they may easily be distinguished by the association status of parent and child.

## Node type

The node is linked in all directions: the parent, the first and last in the list of children, and the previous and next sibling. This allows us for adding and removing nodes and whole branches anywhere in the trie. (Circular links are not allowed, however.). The node holds its associated set of quantum numbers. The integer index, which is set only for leaf nodes, is the index of the corresponding matrix element value within the state matrix.

Temporarily, matrix-element values may be stored within a leaf node. This is used during state-matrix factorization. When the state matrix is **frozen**, these values are transferred to the matrix-element array within the host state matrix.

```

<State matrices: types>≡
  type :: node_t
  private
  type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn
  type(node_t), pointer :: parent => null ()
  type(node_t), pointer :: child_first => null ()
  type(node_t), pointer :: child_last => null ()
  type(node_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  type(node_t), pointer :: previous => null ()
  integer :: me_index = 0
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: me_count
  complex(default) :: me = 0
end type node_t

```

## Operations on nodes

Recursively deallocate all children of the current node. This includes any values associated with the children.

```

<State matrices: procedures>≡
  pure recursive subroutine node_delete_offspring (node)
  type(node_t), pointer :: node
  type(node_t), pointer :: child
  child => node%child_first
  do while (associated (child))
    node%child_first => node%child_first%next
    call node_delete_offspring (child)
    deallocate (child)
    child => node%child_first
  end do

```

```

        node%child_last => null ()
    end subroutine node_delete_offspring

```

Remove a node including its offspring. Adjust the pointers of parent and siblings, if necessary.

*(State matrices: procedures)+≡*

```

    pure subroutine node_delete (node)
        type(node_t), pointer :: node
        call node_delete_offspring (node)
        if (associated (node%previous)) then
            node%previous%next => node%next
        else if (associated (node%parent)) then
            node%parent%child_first => node%next
        end if
        if (associated (node%next)) then
            node%next%previous => node%previous
        else if (associated (node%parent)) then
            node%parent%child_last => node%previous
        end if
        deallocate (node)
    end subroutine node_delete

```

Append a child node

*(State matrices: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine node_append_child (node, child)
        type(node_t), target, intent(inout) :: node
        type(node_t), pointer :: child
        allocate (child)
        if (associated (node%child_last)) then
            node%child_last%next => child
            child%previous => node%child_last
        else
            node%child_first => child
        end if
        node%child_last => child
        child%parent => node
    end subroutine node_append_child

```

## I/O

Output of a single node, no recursion. We print the quantum numbers in square brackets, then the value (if any).

*(State matrices: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine node_write (node, me_array, verbose, unit, testflag)
        type(node_t), intent(in) :: node
        complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: me_array
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, testflag
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical :: verb
        integer :: u
        character(len=7) :: fmt

```

```

call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_17, testflag)
verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call quantum_numbers_write (node%qn, u)
if (node%me_index /= 0) then
  write (u, "(A,I0,A)", advance="no") " => ME(", node%me_index, ")"
  if (present (me_array)) then
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " = "
    write (u, "('(', " // fmt // ",',', " // fmt // ",')')", &
      advance="no") pacify_complex (me_array(node%me_index))
  end if
end if
write (u, *)
if (verb) then
  call ptr_write ("parent      ", node%parent)
  call ptr_write ("child_first", node%child_first)
  call ptr_write ("child_last ", node%child_last)
  call ptr_write ("next       ", node%next)
  call ptr_write ("previous   ", node%previous)
end if
contains
subroutine ptr_write (label, node)
character(*), intent(in) :: label
type(node_t), pointer :: node
if (associated (node)) then
  write (u, "(10x,A,1x,'->',1x)", advance="no") label
  call quantum_numbers_write (node%qn, u)
  write (u, *)
end if
end subroutine ptr_write
end subroutine node_write

```

Recursive output of a node:

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine node_write_rec (node, me_array, verbose, &
  indent, unit, testflag)
type(node_t), intent(in), target :: node
complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: me_array
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, testflag
integer, intent(in), optional :: indent
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
type(node_t), pointer :: current
logical :: verb
integer :: i, u
verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
i = 0; if (present (indent)) i = indent
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
current => node%child_first
do while (associated (current))
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") repeat (" ", i)
  call node_write (current, me_array, verbose=verb, &
    unit=u, testflag=testflag)
  call node_write_rec (current, me_array, verbose=verb, &
    indent=i+2, unit=u, testflag = testflag)
end do

```

```

        current => current%next
    end do
end subroutine node_write_rec

```

Binary I/O. Matrix elements are written only for leaf nodes.

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine node_write_raw_rec (node, u)
    type(node_t), intent(in), target :: node
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    logical :: associated_child_first, associated_next
    call quantum_numbers_write_raw (node%qn, u)
    associated_child_first = associated (node%child_first)
    write (u) associated_child_first
    associated_next = associated (node%next)
    write (u) associated_next
    if (associated_child_first) then
        call node_write_raw_rec (node%child_first, u)
    else
        write (u) node%me_index
        write (u) node%me
    end if
    if (associated_next) then
        call node_write_raw_rec (node%next, u)
    end if
end subroutine node_write_raw_rec

recursive subroutine node_read_raw_rec (node, u, parent, iostat)
    type(node_t), intent(out), target :: node
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(node_t), intent(in), optional, target :: parent
    integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
    logical :: associated_child_first, associated_next
    type(node_t), pointer :: child
    call quantum_numbers_read_raw (node%qn, u, iostat=iostat)
    read (u, iostat=iostat) associated_child_first
    read (u, iostat=iostat) associated_next
    if (present (parent)) node%parent => parent
    if (associated_child_first) then
        allocate (child)
        node%child_first => child
        node%child_last => null ()
        call node_read_raw_rec (child, u, node, iostat=iostat)
        do while (associated (child))
            child%previous => node%child_last
            node%child_last => child
            child => child%next
        end do
    else
        read (u, iostat=iostat) node%me_index
        read (u, iostat=iostat) node%me
    end if
    if (associated_next) then
        allocate (node%next)
        call node_read_raw_rec (node%next, u, parent, iostat=iostat)
    end if
end subroutine node_read_raw_rec

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine node_read_raw_rec

```

## 7.5.2 State matrix

### Definition

The quantum state object is a container that keeps and hides the root node. For direct accessibility of values, they are stored in a separate array. The leaf nodes of the quantum-number tree point to those values, once the state matrix is finalized.

The `norm` component is redefined if a common factor is extracted from all nodes.

```

<State matrices: public>≡
    public :: state_matrix_t

<State matrices: types>+≡
    type :: state_matrix_t
    private
        type(node_t), pointer :: root => null ()
        integer :: depth = 0
        integer :: n_matrix_elements = 0
        logical :: leaf_nodes_store_values = .false.
        integer :: n_counters = 0
        complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: me
        real(default) :: norm = 1
    end type state_matrix_t

```

This initializer allocates the root node but does not fill anything. We declare whether values are stored within the nodes during state-matrix construction, and how many counters should be maintained (default: none).

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_init

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine state_matrix_init (state, store_values, n_counters)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state
        logical, intent(in), optional :: store_values
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_counters
        allocate (state%root)
        if (present (store_values)) &
            state%leaf_nodes_store_values = store_values
        if (present (n_counters)) state%n_counters = n_counters
    end subroutine state_matrix_init

```

This recursively deletes all children of the root node, restoring the initial state. The matrix element array is not finalized, since it does not contain physical entries, just pointers.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_final

```

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine state_matrix_final (state)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    if (allocated (state%me)) deallocate (state%me)
    if (associated (state%root)) call node_delete (state%root)
    state%depth = 0
    state%n_matrix_elements = 0
  end subroutine state_matrix_final

```

Output: Present the tree as a nested list with appropriate indentation.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_write

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_matrix_write (state, unit, write_value_list, &
    verbose, testflag)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    logical, intent(in), optional :: write_value_list, verbose, testflag
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    complex(default) :: me_dum
    character(len=7) :: fmt
    integer :: u
    integer :: i
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_17, testflag)
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A," // fmt // ")") "State matrix: norm = ", state%norm
    if (associated (state%root)) then
      if (allocated (state%me)) then
        call node_write_rec (state%root, state%me, verbose=verbose, &
          indent=1, unit=u, testflag=testflag)
      else
        call node_write_rec (state%root, verbose=verbose, indent=1, &
          unit=u, testflag=testflag)
      end if
    end if
    if (present (write_value_list)) then
      if (write_value_list .and. allocated (state%me)) then
        do i = 1, size (state%me)
          write (u, "(1x,I0,A)", advance="no") i, ":"
          me_dum = state%me(i)
          if (real(state%me(i)) == -real(state%me(i))) then
            me_dum = &
              cmplx (0._default, aimag(me_dum), kind=default)
          end if
          if (aimag(me_dum) == -aimag(me_dum)) then
            me_dum = &
              cmplx (real(me_dum), 0._default, kind=default)
          end if
          write (u, "('(', " // fmt // ",','," // fmt // &
            ",')')") me_dum
        end do
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine state_matrix_write

```



Binary I/O. The auxiliary matrix-element array is not written, but reconstructed after reading the tree.

Note: To be checked. Might be broken, don't use (unless trivial).

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_write_raw
  public :: state_matrix_read_raw

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_matrix_write_raw (state, u)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    logical :: associated_root
    associated_root = associated (state%root)
    write (u) associated_root
    if (associated_root) then
      write (u) state%depth
      write (u) state%norm
      call node_write_raw_rec (state%root, u)
    end if
  end subroutine state_matrix_write_raw

  subroutine state_matrix_read_raw (state, u, iostat)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
    logical :: associated_root
    read (u, iostat=iostat) associated_root
    if (associated_root) then
      read (u, iostat=iostat) state%depth
      read (u, iostat=iostat) state%norm
      call state_matrix_init (state)
      call node_read_raw_rec (state%root, u, iostat=iostat)
      call state_matrix_freeze (state)
    end if
  end subroutine state_matrix_read_raw

```

## Properties of the quantum state

A state is defined if its root is allocated:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_is_defined

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  elemental function state_matrix_is_defined (state) result (defined)
    logical :: defined
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    defined = associated (state%root)
  end function state_matrix_is_defined

```

A state is empty if its depth is zero:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_is_empty

```

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  elemental function state_matrix_is_empty (state) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    flag = state%depth == 0
  end function state_matrix_is_empty

```

Return the number of matrix-element values.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  function state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    n = state%n_matrix_elements
  end function state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements

```

Return the number of leaves. This can be larger than the number of independent matrix elements.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_get_n_leaves

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  function state_matrix_get_n_leaves (state) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    n = 0
    call state_iterator_init (it, state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      n = n + 1
      call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
  end function state_matrix_get_n_leaves

```

Return the depth:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_get_depth

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  function state_matrix_get_depth (state) result (depth)
    integer :: depth
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    depth = state%depth
  end function state_matrix_get_depth

```

Return the norm:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_get_norm

```

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_matrix_get_norm (state) result (norm)
  real(default) :: norm
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
  norm = state%norm
end function state_matrix_get_norm

```

## Retrieving contents

Return the quantum number array, using an index. We have to scan the state matrix since there is no shortcut.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers (state, i) result (qn)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(state%depth) :: qn
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  integer :: k
  k = 0
  call state_iterator_init (it, state)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    k = k + 1
    if (k == i) then
      qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
      return
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
end function state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers

```

Return a single matrix element using its index. Works only if the shortcut array is allocated.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_get_matrix_element

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_matrix_get_matrix_element (state, i) result (me)
  complex(default) :: me
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  if (allocated (state%me)) then
    me = state%me(i)
  else
    me = 0
  end if
end function state_matrix_get_matrix_element

```

Return the color index with maximum absolute value that is present within the state matrix.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_get_max_color_value

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    function state_matrix_get_max_color_value (state) result (cmax)
        integer :: cmax
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
        if (associated (state%root)) then
            cmax = node_get_max_color_value (state%root)
        else
            cmax = 0
        end if
    contains
        recursive function node_get_max_color_value (node) result (cmax)
            integer :: cmax
            type(node_t), intent(in), target :: node
            type(node_t), pointer :: current
            cmax = quantum_numbers_get_max_color_value (node%qn)
            current => node%child_first
            do while (associated (current))
                cmax = max (cmax, node_get_max_color_value (current))
                current => current%next
            end do
        end function node_get_max_color_value
    end function state_matrix_get_max_color_value

```

## Building the quantum state

The procedure generates a branch associated to the input array of quantum numbers. If the branch exists already, it is used.

Optionally, we set the matrix-element index, a value (which may be added to the previous one), and increment one of the possible counters. We may also return the matrix element index of the current node.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_add_state

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    subroutine state_matrix_add_state &
        (state, qn, index, value, sum_values, counter_index, me_index)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
        integer, intent(in), optional :: index
        complex(default), intent(in), optional :: value
        logical, intent(in), optional :: sum_values
        integer, intent(in), optional :: counter_index
        integer, intent(out), optional :: me_index
        logical :: set_index, get_index, add
        set_index = present (index)
        get_index = present (me_index)
        add = .false.; if (present (sum_values)) add = sum_values
        if (state%depth == 0) then

```

```

        state%depth = size (qn)
    else if (state%depth /= size (qn)) then
        call state_matrix_write (state)
        call msg_bug ("State matrix: depth mismatch")
    end if
    if (size (qn) > 0) call node_make_branch (state%root, qn)
contains
    recursive subroutine node_make_branch (parent, qn)
        type(node_t), pointer :: parent
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
        type(node_t), pointer :: child
        logical :: match
        match = .false.
        child => parent%child_first
        SCAN_CHILDREN: do while (associated (child))
            match = child%qn == qn(1)
            if (match) exit SCAN_CHILDREN
            child => child%next
        end do SCAN_CHILDREN
        if (.not. match) then
            call node_append_child (parent, child)
            child%qn = qn(1)
        end if
        select case (size (qn))
        case (1)
            if (.not. match) then
                state%n_matrix_elements = state%n_matrix_elements + 1
                child%me_index = state%n_matrix_elements
            end if
            if (set_index) then
                child%me_index = index
            end if
            if (get_index) then
                me_index = child%me_index
            end if
            if (present (counter_index)) then
                if (.not. allocated (child%me_count)) then
                    allocate (child%me_count (state%n_counters))
                    child%me_count = 0
                end if
                child%me_count(counter_index) = child%me_count(counter_index) + 1
            end if
            if (present (value)) then
                if (add) then
                    child%me = child%me + value
                else
                    child%me = value
                end if
            end if
        case (2:)
            call node_make_branch (child, qn(2:))
        end select
    end subroutine node_make_branch
end subroutine state_matrix_add_state

```

Remove irrelevant flavor/color/helicity labels and the corresponding branchings. The masks indicate which particles are affected; the masks length should coincide with the depth of the trie (without the root node). Recursively scan the whole tree, starting from the leaf nodes and working up to the root node. If a mask entry is set for the current tree level, scan the children there. For each child within that level make a new empty branch where the masked quantum number is undefined. Then recursively combine all following children with matching quantum number into this new node and move on.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_collapse

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    subroutine state_matrix_collapse (state, mask)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
        type(state_matrix_t) :: red_state
        if (state_matrix_is_defined (state)) then
            call state_matrix_reduce (state, mask, red_state)
            call state_matrix_final (state)
            state = red_state
        end if
    end subroutine state_matrix_collapse

```

Transform the given state matrix into a reduced state matrix where some quantum numbers are removed, as indicated by the mask. The procedure creates a new state matrix, so the old one can be deleted after this if it is no longer used.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_reduce

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    subroutine state_matrix_reduce (state, mask, red_state)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: red_state
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(mask)) :: qn
        call state_matrix_init (red_state)
        call state_iterator_init (it, state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
            qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
            call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, mask)
            call state_matrix_add_state (red_state, qn)
            call state_iterator_advance (it)
        end do
    end subroutine state_matrix_reduce

```

This subroutine sets up the matrix-element array. The leaf nodes acquire the index values that point to the appropriate matrix-element entry.

We recursively scan the trie. Once we arrive at a leaf node, the index is increased and associated to that node. Finally, we allocate the matrix-element array with the appropriate size.

If matrix element values are temporarily stored within the leaf nodes, we scan the state again and transfer them to the matrix-element array.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_freeze

<State matrices: interfaces>≡
    interface state_matrix_freeze
        module procedure state_matrix_freeze1
        module procedure state_matrix_freeze2
    end interface

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    subroutine state_matrix_freeze1 (state)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout), target :: state
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it
        if (associated (state%root)) then
            if (allocated (state%me)) deallocate (state%me)
            allocate (state%me (state%n_matrix_elements))
            state%me = 0
        end if
        if (state%leaf_nodes_store_values) then
            call state_iterator_init (it, state)
            do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
                state%me(state_iterator_get_me_index (it)) &
                    = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
                call state_iterator_advance (it)
            end do
            state%leaf_nodes_store_values = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine state_matrix_freeze1

    subroutine state_matrix_freeze2 (state)
        type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), target :: state
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (state)
            call state_matrix_freeze1 (state(i))
        end do
    end subroutine state_matrix_freeze2

```

## Direct access to the value array

Several methods for setting a value directly are summarized in this generic:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_set_matrix_element

<State matrices: interfaces>+≡
    interface state_matrix_set_matrix_element
        module procedure state_matrix_set_matrix_element_qn
        module procedure state_matrix_set_matrix_element_all
        module procedure state_matrix_set_matrix_element_array
        module procedure state_matrix_set_matrix_element_single
        module procedure state_matrix_set_matrix_element_clone
    end interface

```

Set a value that corresponds to a quantum number array:

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_qn (state, qn, value)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
  complex(default), intent(in) :: value
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  if (.not. allocated (it%state%me)) then
    allocate (it%state%me (size(qn)))
  end if
  call state_iterator_init (it, state)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    if (all (qn == state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it))) then
      call state_iterator_set_matrix_element (it, value)
      return
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
end subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_qn

```

Set all matrix elements to a single value

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_all (state, value)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  complex(default), intent(in) :: value
  if (.not. allocated (state%me)) then
    allocate (state%me (state%n_matrix_elements))
  end if
  state%me = value
end subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_all

```

Set the matrix-element array directly.

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_array (state, value)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: value
  if (.not. allocated (state%me)) then
    allocate (state%me (size (value)))
  end if
  state%me = value
end subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_array

pure subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_single (state, i, value)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  complex(default), intent(in) :: value
  if (.not. allocated (state%me)) then
    allocate (state%me (state%n_matrix_elements))
  end if
  state%me(i) = value
end subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_single

```



Clone the matrix elements from another (matching) state matrix.

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_clone (state, state1)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1
    if (.not. allocated (state1%me)) return
    if (.not. allocated (state%me)) allocate (state%me (size (state1%me)))
    state%me = state1%me
  end subroutine state_matrix_set_matrix_element_clone

```

Add a value to a matrix element

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_add_to_matrix_element

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_matrix_add_to_matrix_element (state, i, value)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    complex(default), intent(in) :: value
    state%me(i) = state%me(i) + value
  end subroutine state_matrix_add_to_matrix_element

```

### 7.5.3 State iterators

Accessing the quantum state from outside is best done using a specialized iterator, i.e., a pointer to a particular branch of the quantum state trie. Technically, the iterator contains a pointer to a leaf node, but via parent pointers it allows to access the whole branch where the leaf is attached. For quick access, we also keep the branch depth (which is assumed to be universal for a quantum state).

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_t

<State matrices: types>+≡
  type :: state_iterator_t
    private
    integer :: depth = 0
    type(state_matrix_t), pointer :: state => null ()
    type(node_t), pointer :: node => null ()
  end type state_iterator_t

```

The initializer: Point at the first branch. Note that this cannot be pure, thus not be elemental, because the iterator can be used to manipulate data in the state matrix.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_init

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_iterator_init (it, state)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(out) :: it
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
    it%state => state
    it%depth = state%depth
  end subroutine state_iterator_init

```

```

if (state_matrix_is_defined (state)) then
  it%node => state%root
  do while (associated (it%node%child_first))
    it%node => it%node%child_first
  end do
else
  it%node => null ()
end if
end subroutine state_iterator_init

```

Go forward. Recursively programmed: if the next node does not exist, go back to the parent node and look at its successor (if present), etc.

There is a possible pitfall in the implementation: If the dummy pointer argument to the `find_next` routine is used directly, we still get the correct result for the iterator, but calling the recursion on `node%parent` means that we manipulate a parent pointer in the original state in addition to the iterator. Making a local copy of the pointer avoids this. Using pointer intent would be helpful, but we do not yet rely on this F2003 feature.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_advance

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_iterator_advance (it)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
    call find_next (it%node)
  contains
    recursive subroutine find_next (node_in)
      type(node_t), intent(in), target :: node_in
      type(node_t), pointer :: node
      node => node_in
      if (associated (node%next)) then
        node => node%next
        do while (associated (node%child_first))
          node => node%child_first
        end do
        it%node => node
      else if (associated (node%parent)) then
        call find_next (node%parent)
      else
        it%node => null ()
      end if
    end subroutine find_next
  end subroutine state_iterator_advance

```

If all has been scanned, the iterator is at an undefined state. Check for this:

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_is_valid

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  function state_iterator_is_valid (it) result (defined)
    logical :: defined
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    defined = associated (it%node)
  end function state_iterator_is_valid

```

```
end function state_iterator_is_valid
```

Return the matrix-element index that corresponds to the current node

```
<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_iterator_get_me_index

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_iterator_get_me_index (it) result (n)
integer :: n
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
n = it%node%me_index
end function state_iterator_get_me_index
```

Return the number of times this quantum-number state has been added (noting that it is physically inserted only the first time). Note that for each state, there is an array of counters.

```
<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_iterator_get_me_count

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_iterator_get_me_count (it) result (n)
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
if (allocated (it%node%me_count)) then
allocate (n (size (it%node%me_count)))
n = it%node%me_count
else
allocate (n (0))
end if
end function state_iterator_get_me_count
```

Use the iterator to retrieve quantum-number information:

```
<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers
public :: state_iterator_get_flavor
public :: state_iterator_get_color
public :: state_iterator_get_helicity

<State matrices: interfaces>+≡
interface state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers
module procedure state_iterator_get_qn_multi
module procedure state_iterator_get_qn_slice
module procedure state_iterator_get_qn_range
module procedure state_iterator_get_qn_single
end interface

interface state_iterator_get_flavor
module procedure state_iterator_get_flv_multi
module procedure state_iterator_get_flv_slice
module procedure state_iterator_get_flv_range
module procedure state_iterator_get_flv_single
end interface
```

```

interface state_iterator_get_color
  module procedure state_iterator_get_col_multi
  module procedure state_iterator_get_col_slice
  module procedure state_iterator_get_col_range
  module procedure state_iterator_get_col_single
end interface

interface state_iterator_get_helicity
  module procedure state_iterator_get_hel_multi
  module procedure state_iterator_get_hel_slice
  module procedure state_iterator_get_hel_range
  module procedure state_iterator_get_hel_single
end interface

```

These versions return the whole quantum number array

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

function state_iterator_get_qn_multi (it) result (qn)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(it%depth) :: qn
  type(node_t), pointer :: node
  integer :: i
  node => it%node
  do i = it%depth, 1, -1
    qn(i) = node%qn
    node => node%parent
  end do
end function state_iterator_get_qn_multi

function state_iterator_get_flv_multi (it) result (flv)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
  type(flavor_t), dimension(it%depth) :: flv
  flv = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &
    (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it))
end function state_iterator_get_flv_multi

function state_iterator_get_col_multi (it) result (col)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
  type(color_t), dimension(it%depth) :: col
  col = quantum_numbers_get_color &
    (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it))
end function state_iterator_get_col_multi

function state_iterator_get_hel_multi (it) result (hel)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
  type(helicity_t), dimension(it%depth) :: hel
  hel = quantum_numbers_get_helicity &
    (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it))
end function state_iterator_get_hel_multi

```

An array slice (derived from the above).

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

function state_iterator_get_qn_slice (it, index) result (qn)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it

```

```

integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(index)) :: qn
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(it%depth) :: qn_tmp
qn_tmp = state_iterator_get_qn_multi (it)
qn = qn_tmp(index)
end function state_iterator_get_qn_slice

function state_iterator_get_flv_slice (it, index) result (flv)
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
type(flavor_t), dimension(size(index)) :: flv
flv = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &
      (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, index))
end function state_iterator_get_flv_slice

function state_iterator_get_col_slice (it, index) result (col)
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
type(color_t), dimension(size(index)) :: col
col = quantum_numbers_get_color &
      (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, index))
end function state_iterator_get_col_slice

function state_iterator_get_hel_slice (it, index) result (hel)
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
type(helicity_t), dimension(size(index)) :: hel
hel = quantum_numbers_get_helicity &
      (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, index))
end function state_iterator_get_hel_slice

```

An array range (implemented directly).

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

function state_iterator_get_qn_range (it, k1, k2) result (qn)
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
integer, intent(in) :: k1, k2
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(k2-k1+1) :: qn
type(node_t), pointer :: node
integer :: i
node => it%node
SCAN: do i = it%depth, 1, -1
  if (k1 <= i .and. i <= k2) then
    qn(i-k1+1) = node%qn
  else
    node => node%parent
  end if
end do SCAN
end function state_iterator_get_qn_range

function state_iterator_get_flv_range (it, k1, k2) result (flv)
type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
integer, intent(in) :: k1, k2
type(flavor_t), dimension(k2-k1+1) :: flv
flv = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &

```

```

        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k1, k2))
end function state_iterator_get_flv_range

function state_iterator_get_col_range (it, k1, k2) result (col)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    integer, intent(in) :: k1, k2
    type(color_t), dimension(k2-k1+1) :: col
    col = quantum_numbers_get_color &
        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k1, k2))
end function state_iterator_get_col_range

function state_iterator_get_hel_range (it, k1, k2) result (hel)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    integer, intent(in) :: k1, k2
    type(helicity_t), dimension(k2-k1+1) :: hel
    hel = quantum_numbers_get_helicity &
        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k1, k2))
end function state_iterator_get_hel_range

```

Just a specific single element

*(State matrices: procedures)*+≡

```

function state_iterator_get_qn_single (it, k) result (qn)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn
    type(node_t), pointer :: node
    integer :: i
    node => it%node
    SCAN: do i = it%depth, 1, -1
        if (i == k) then
            qn = node%qn
            exit SCAN
        else
            node => node%parent
        end if
    end do SCAN
end function state_iterator_get_qn_single

function state_iterator_get_flv_single (it, k) result (flv)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    flv = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &
        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k))
end function state_iterator_get_flv_single

function state_iterator_get_col_single (it, k) result (col)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    integer, intent(in) :: k
    type(color_t) :: col
    col = quantum_numbers_get_color &
        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k))
end function state_iterator_get_col_single

```

```

function state_iterator_get_hel_single (it, k) result (hel)
  type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
  integer, intent(in) :: k
  type(helicity_t) :: hel
  hel = quantum_numbers_get_helicity &
    (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, k))
end function state_iterator_get_hel_single

```

Retrieve the matrix element value associated with the current node.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_get_matrix_element

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  function state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it) result (me)
    complex(default) :: me
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    if (it%state%leaf_nodes_store_values) then
      me = it%node%me
    else if (it%node%me_index /= 0) then
      me = it%state%me(it%node%me_index)
    else
      me = 0
    end if
  end function state_iterator_get_matrix_element

```

Set the matrix element value using the state iterator.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_iterator_set_matrix_element

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_iterator_set_matrix_element (it, value)
    type(state_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
    complex(default), intent(in) :: value
    if (it%node%me_index /= 0) then
      it%state%me(it%node%me_index) = value
    end if
  end subroutine state_iterator_set_matrix_element

```

## 7.5.4 Operations on quantum states

Return a deep copy of a state matrix.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: assignment(=)

<State matrices: interfaces>+≡
  interface assignment(=)
    module procedure state_matrix_assign
  end interface

```

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_assign (state_out, state_in)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state_out
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state_in
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  if (.not. state_matrix_is_defined (state_in)) return
  call state_matrix_init (state_out)
  call state_iterator_init (it, state_in)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    call state_matrix_add_state (state_out, &
      state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), &
      state_iterator_get_me_index (it))
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
  if (allocated (state_in%me)) then
    allocate (state_out%me (size (state_in%me)))
    state_out%me = state_in%me
  end if
end subroutine state_matrix_assign

```

Determine the indices of all diagonal matrix elements.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_get_diagonal_entries

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_get_diagonal_entries (state, i)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: i
  integer, dimension(state%n_matrix_elements) :: tmp
  integer :: n
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  n = 0
  call state_iterator_init (it, state)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    if (all (quantum_numbers_are_diagonal ( &
      state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)))) then
      n = n + 1
      tmp(n) = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
  allocate (i(n))
  if (n > 0) i = tmp(:n)
end subroutine state_matrix_get_diagonal_entries

```

Normalize all matrix elements, i.e., multiply by a common factor. Assuming that the factor is nonzero, of course.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_renormalize

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_renormalize (state, factor)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  complex(default), intent(in) :: factor

```



```

state%me = state%me * factor
end subroutine state_matrix_renormalize

```

Renormalize the state matrix by its trace, if nonzero. The renormalization is reflected in the state-matrix norm.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_normalize_by_trace

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_normalize_by_trace (state)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  real(default) :: trace
  trace = state_matrix_trace (state)
  if (trace /= 0) then
    state%me = state%me / trace
    state%norm = state%norm * trace
  end if
end subroutine state_matrix_normalize_by_trace

```

Analogous, but renormalize by maximal (absolute) value.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_normalize_by_max

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_normalize_by_max (state)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  real(default) :: m
  m = maxval (abs (state%me))
  if (m /= 0) then
    state%me = state%me / m
    state%norm = state%norm * m
  end if
end subroutine state_matrix_normalize_by_max

```

Explicitly set the norm of a state matrix.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_set_norm

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_set_norm (state, norm)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
  real(default), intent(in) :: norm
  state%norm = norm
end subroutine state_matrix_set_norm

```

Return the sum of all matrix element values.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
public :: state_matrix_sum

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
function state_matrix_sum (state) result (value)
  complex(default) :: value
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state

```

```

        value = sum (state%me)
    end function state_matrix_sum

```

Return the trace of a state matrix, i.e., the sum over all diagonal values. If `qn_in` is provided, only branches that match this quantum-numbers array are considered.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_trace

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    function state_matrix_trace (state, qn_in) result (trace)
        complex(default) :: trace
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: qn_in
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it
        allocate (qn (state_matrix_get_depth (state)))
        trace = 0
        call state_iterator_init (it, state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
            qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
            if (present (qn_in)) then
                if (.not. all (qn .match. qn_in)) then
                    call state_iterator_advance (it); cycle
                end if
            end if
            if (all (quantum_numbers_are_diagonal (qn))) then
                trace = trace + state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
            end if
            call state_iterator_advance (it)
        end do
    end function state_matrix_trace

```

Append new states which are color-contracted versions of the existing states. The matrix element index of each color contraction coincides with the index of its origin, so no new matrix elements are generated. After this operation, no `freeze` must be performed anymore.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: state_matrix_add_color_contractions

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
    subroutine state_matrix_add_color_contractions (state)
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout), target :: state
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: qn
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: qn_con
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: me_index
        integer :: depth, n_me, i, j
        depth = state_matrix_get_depth (state)
        n_me = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state)
        allocate (qn (depth, n_me))
        allocate (me_index (n_me))
        i = 0

```

```

call state_iterator_init (it, state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
  i = i + 1
  qn(:,i) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
  me_index(i) = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
  call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
do i = 1, n_me
  call quantum_number_array_make_color_contractions (qn(:,i), qn_con)
  do j = 1, size (qn_con, 2)
    call state_matrix_add_state (state, qn_con(:,j), index = me_index(i))
  end do
end do
end subroutine state_matrix_add_color_contractions

```

This procedure merges two state matrices of equal depth. For each quantum number (flavor, color, helicity), we take the entry from the first argument where defined, otherwise the second one. (If both are defined, we get an off-diagonal matrix.) The resulting trie combines the information of the input tries in all possible ways. Note that values are ignored, all values in the result are zero.

*<State matrices: public>+≡*

```
public :: merge_state_matrices
```

*<State matrices: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine merge_state_matrices (state1, state2, state3)
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state1, state2
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state3
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it1, it2
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(state1%depth) :: qn1, qn2
  if (state1%depth /= state2%depth) then
    call state_matrix_write (state1)
    call state_matrix_write (state2)
    call msg_bug ("State matrices merge impossible: incompatible depths")
  end if
  call state_matrix_init (state3)
  call state_iterator_init (it1, state1)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it1))
    qn1 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it1)
    call state_iterator_init (it2, state2)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it2))
      qn2 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it2)
      call state_matrix_add_state &
        (state3, qn1 .merge. qn2)
      call state_iterator_advance (it2)
    end do
    call state_iterator_advance (it1)
  end do
  call state_matrix_freeze (state3)
end subroutine merge_state_matrices

```

Multiply matrix elements from two state matrices. Choose the elements as given by the integer index arrays, multiply them and store the sum of products

in the indicated matrix element. The suffixes mean: c=conjugate first factor; f=include weighting factor.

Note that the `dot_product` intrinsic function conjugates its first complex argument. This is intended for the c suffix case, but must be reverted for the plain-product case.

We provide analogous subroutines for just summing over state matrix entries. The `evaluate_sum` variant includes the state-matrix norm in the evaluation, the `evaluate_me_sum` takes into account just the matrix elements proper.

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_evaluate_product
  public :: state_matrix_evaluate_product_cf
  public :: state_matrix_evaluate_square_c
  public :: state_matrix_evaluate_sum
  public :: state_matrix_evaluate_me_sum

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  pure subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_product &
    (state, i, state1, state2, index1, index2)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1, state2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1, index2
    state%me(i) = &
      dot_product (conjg (state1%me(index1)), state2%me(index2))
    state%norm = state1%norm * state2%norm
  end subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_product

  pure subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_product_cf &
    (state, i, state1, state2, index1, index2, factor)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1, state2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1, index2
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: factor
    state%me(i) = &
      dot_product (state1%me(index1), factor * state2%me(index2))
    state%norm = state1%norm * state2%norm
  end subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_product_cf

  pure subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_square_c (state, i, state1, index1)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1
    state%me(i) = &
      dot_product (state1%me(index1), state1%me(index1))
    state%norm = abs (state1%norm) ** 2
  end subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_square_c

  pure subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_sum (state, i, state1, index1)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1

```

```

state%me(i) = &
    sum (state1%me(index1)) * state1%norm
end subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_sum

pure subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_me_sum (state, i, state1, index1)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(inout) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state1
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1
    state%me(i) = sum (state1%me(index1))
end subroutine state_matrix_evaluate_me_sum

```

Outer product (of states and matrix elements):

```

<State matrices: public>+≡
    public :: outer_multiply

<State matrices: interfaces>+≡
    interface outer_multiply
        module procedure outer_multiply_pair
        module procedure outer_multiply_array
    end interface

```

This procedure constructs the outer product of two state matrices.

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine outer_multiply_pair (state1, state2, state3)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state1, state2
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state3
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it1, it2
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(state1%depth) :: qn1
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(state2%depth) :: qn2
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(state1%depth+state2%depth) :: qn3
    complex(default) :: val1, val2
    call state_matrix_init (state3, store_values=.true.)
    call state_iterator_init (it1, state1)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it1))
        qn1 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it1)
        val1 = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it1)
        call state_iterator_init (it2, state2)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it2))
            qn2 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it2)
            val2 = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it2)
            qn3(:state1%depth) = qn1
            qn3(state1%depth+1:) = qn2
            call state_matrix_add_state (state3, qn3, value=val1 * val2)
            call state_iterator_advance (it2)
        end do
        call state_iterator_advance (it1)
    end do
    call state_matrix_freeze (state3)
end subroutine outer_multiply_pair

```

This executes the above routine iteratively for an arbitrary number of state matrices.

```

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
subroutine outer_multiply_array (state_in, state_out)
  type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), intent(in), target :: state_in
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state_out
  type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: state_tmp
  integer :: i, n
  n = size (state_in)
  select case (n)
  case (0)
    call state_matrix_init (state_out)
  case (1)
    state_out = state_in(1)
  case (2)
    call outer_multiply_pair (state_in(1), state_in(2), state_out)
  case default
    allocate (state_tmp (n-2))
    call outer_multiply_pair (state_in(1), state_in(2), state_tmp(1))
    do i = 2, n - 2
      call outer_multiply_pair (state_tmp(i-1), state_in(i+1), state_tmp(i))
    end do
    call outer_multiply_pair (state_tmp(n-2), state_in(n), state_out)
    call state_matrix_final (state_tmp)
  end select
end subroutine outer_multiply_array

```

### 7.5.5 Factorization

In physical events, the state matrix is factorized into single-particle state matrices. This is essentially a measurement.

In a simulation, we select one particular branch of the state matrix with a probability that is determined by the matrix elements at the leaves. (This makes sense only if the state matrix represents a squared amplitude.) The selection is based on a (random) value  $x$  between 0 and one that is provided as the third argument.

For flavor and color, we select a unique value for each particle. For polarization, we have three options (modes). Option 1 is to drop helicity information altogether and sum over all diagonal helicities. Option 2 is to select a unique diagonal helicity in the same way as flavor and color. Option 3 is, for each particle, to trace over all remaining helicities in order to obtain an array of independent single-particle helicity matrices.

Only branches that match the given quantum-number array `qn_in`, if present, are considered. For this array, color is ignored.

If the optional `correlated_state` is provided, it is assigned the correlated density matrix for the selected flavor-color branch, so multi-particle spin correlations remain available even if they are dropped in the single-particle density matrices.

The algorithm is as follows: First, we determine the normalization by summing over all diagonal matrix elements. In a second scan, we select one of the diagonal matrix elements by a cumulative comparison with the normalized random number. In the corresponding quantum number array, we undefine the

helicity entries. Then, we scan the third time. For each branch that matches the selected quantum number array (i.e., definite flavor and color, arbitrary helicity), we determine its contribution to any of the single-particle state matrices. The matrix-element value is added if all other quantum numbers are diagonal, while the helicity of the chosen particle may be arbitrary; this helicity determines the branch in the single-particle state.

As a result, flavor and color quantum numbers are selected with the correct probability. Within this subset of states, each single-particle state matrix results from tracing over all other particles. Note that the single-particle state matrices are not normalized.

The flag `ok` is set to false if the matrix element sum is zero, so factorization is not possible. This can happen if an event did not pass cuts.

```

<State matrices: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter, public :: FM_IGNORE_HELICITY = 1
  integer, parameter, public :: FM_SELECT_HELICITY = 2
  integer, parameter, public :: FM_FACTOR_HELICITY = 3

<State matrices: public>+≡
  public :: state_matrix_factorize

<State matrices: procedures>+≡
  subroutine state_matrix_factorize &
    (state, mode, x, ok, single_state, correlated_state, qn_in)
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: mode
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(state_matrix_t), &
      dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: single_state
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(out), optional :: correlated_state
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: qn_in
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    real(default) :: s, xt
    complex(default) :: value
    integer :: i, depth
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn, qn1
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: diagonal
    logical, dimension(:, :), allocatable :: mask
    ok = .true.
    if (x /= 0) then
      xt = x * state_matrix_trace (state, qn_in)
    else
      xt = 0
    end if
    s = 0
    depth = state_matrix_get_depth (state)
    allocate (qn (depth), qn1 (depth), diagonal (depth))
    call state_iterator_init (it, state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
      if (present (qn_in)) then
        if (.not. all (qn .fmatch. qn_in)) then

```

```

        call state_iterator_advance (it); cycle
    end if
end if
if (all (quantum_numbers_are_diagonal (qn))) then
    value = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
    if (real (value, default) < 0) then
        call state_matrix_write (state)
        print *, value
        call msg_bug ("Event generation: " &
            // "Negative real part of squared matrix element value")
        value = 0
    end if
    s = s + value
    if (s > xt) exit
end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
if (.not. state_iterator_is_valid (it)) then
    if (s == 0) ok = .false.
    call state_iterator_init (it, state)
end if
allocate (single_state (depth))
call state_matrix_init (single_state, store_values=.true.)
if (present (correlated_state)) &
    call state_matrix_init (correlated_state, store_values=.true.)
qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
select case (mode)
case (FM_SELECT_HELICITY) ! single branch selected; shortcut
    do i = 1, depth
        call state_matrix_add_state (single_state(i), &
            (/qn(i)/), value=value)
    end do
    if (.not. present (correlated_state)) then
        call state_matrix_freeze (single_state)
        return
    end if
end select
allocate (qn_mask (depth))
call quantum_numbers_mask_init (qn_mask, .false., .false., .false., .true.)
call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, qn_mask)
select case (mode)
case (FM_FACTOR_HELICITY)
    allocate (mask (depth, depth))
    mask = .false.
    forall (i = 1:depth) mask(i,i) = .true.
end select
call state_iterator_init (it, state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    qn1 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
    if (all (qn .match. qn1)) then
        diagonal = quantum_numbers_are_diagonal (qn1)
        value = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
        select case (mode)
        case (FM_IGNORE_HELICITY) ! trace over diagonal states that match qn

```



```

        if (all (diagonal)) then
            do i = 1, depth
                call state_matrix_add_state (single_state(i), &
                    (/qn(i)/), value=value, sum_values=.true.)
            end do
        end if
        case (FM_FACTOR_HELICITY) ! trace over all other particles
            do i = 1, depth
                if (all (diagonal .or. mask(:,i))) then
                    call state_matrix_add_state (single_state(i), &
                        (/qn1(i)/), value=value, sum_values=.true.)
                end if
            end do
        end select
        if (present (correlated_state)) &
            call state_matrix_add_state (correlated_state, qn1, value=value)
        end if
        call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
    call state_matrix_freeze (single_state)
    if (present (correlated_state)) &
        call state_matrix_freeze (correlated_state)
end subroutine state_matrix_factorize

```

*<State matrices: procedures>+≡*

```

elemental function pacify_complex (c_in) result (c_pac)
    complex(default), intent(in) :: c_in
    complex(default) :: c_pac
    c_pac = c_in
    if (real(c_pac) == -real(c_pac)) then
        c_pac = &
            cmplx (0._default, aimag(c_pac), kind=default)
    end if
    if (aimag(c_pac) == -aimag(c_pac)) then
        c_pac = &
            cmplx (real(c_pac), 0._default, kind=default)
    end if
end function pacify_complex

```

### 7.5.6 Unit tests

*<State matrices: public>+≡*

```

public :: state_matrix_test

```

*<State matrices: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine state_matrix_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<State matrices: execute tests>
end subroutine state_matrix_test

```

Create two quantum states of equal depth and merge them.

```

<State matrices: execute tests>≡
    call test (state_matrix_1, "state_matrix_1", &
        "check merge of quantum states of equal depth", &
        u, results)
<State matrices: tests>≡
    subroutine state_matrix_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(state_matrix_t) :: state1, state2, state3
        type(flavor_t), dimension(3) :: flv
        type(color_t), dimension(3) :: col
        type(helicity_t), dimension(3) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: state_matrix_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create and merge two quantum states"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* State matrix 1"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call state_matrix_init (state1)
        call flavor_init (flv, [1, 2, 11])
        call helicity_init (hel, [1, 1, 1])
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (state1, qn)
        call helicity_init (hel, [1, 1, 1], [-1, 1, -1])
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (state1, qn)
        call state_matrix_freeze (state1)
        call state_matrix_write (state1, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* State matrix 2"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call state_matrix_init (state2)
        call color_init (col(1), [501])
        call color_init (col(2), [-501])
        call color_init (col(3), [0])
        call helicity_init (hel, [-1, -1, 0])
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn, col, hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (state2, qn)
        call color_init (col(3), [99])
        call helicity_init (hel, [-1, -1, 0])
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn, col, hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (state2, qn)
        call state_matrix_freeze (state2)
        call state_matrix_write (state2, u)

        write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Merge the state matrices"
write (u, "(A)")

call merge_state_matrices (state1, state2, state3)
call state_matrix_write (state3, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Collapse the state matrix"
write (u, "(A)")

call state_matrix_collapse (state3, &
    new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., &
                             (/ .true., .false., .false. /)))
call state_matrix_write (state3, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call state_matrix_final (state1)
call state_matrix_final (state2)
call state_matrix_final (state3)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: state_matrix_1"
write (u, "(A)")

end subroutine state_matrix_1

```

Create a correlated three-particle state matrix and factorize it.

```

<State matrices: execute tests>+≡
call test (state_matrix_2, "state_matrix_2", &
    "check factorizing 3-particle state matrix", &
    u, results)

<State matrices: tests>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_2 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(state_matrix_t) :: state
type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: single_state
type(state_matrix_t) :: correlated_state
complex(default) :: z, val
complex(default), dimension(-1:1) :: v
integer :: f, h11, h12, h21, h22, i, mode
type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
type(color_t), dimension(2) :: col
type(helicity_t), dimension(2) :: hel
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(2) :: qn
logical :: ok

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: state_matrix_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: factorize correlated 3-particle state"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

z = 1 / 2._default
v(-1) = (0.6_default, 0._default)
v( 1) = (0._default, 0.8_default)
call state_matrix_init (state)
do f = 1, 2
  do h11 = -1, 1, 2
    do h12 = -1, 1, 2
      do h21 = -1, 1, 2
        do h22 = -1, 1, 2
          call flavor_init (flv, [f, -f])
          call color_init (col(1), [1])
          call color_init (col(2), [-1])
          call helicity_init (hel, [h11,h12], [h21, h22])
          call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
          val = z * v(h11) * v(h12) * conjg (v(h21) * v(h22))
          call state_matrix_add_state (state, qn)
        end do
      end do
    end do
  end do
end do
call state_matrix_freeze (state)
call state_matrix_write (state, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,'('," // FMT_19 // ",',''," // FMT_19 // ",')')") &
  "* Trace = ", state_matrix_trace (state)
write (u, "(A)")

do mode = 1, 3
  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A,I1)")  "* Mode = ", mode
  call state_matrix_factorize &
    (state, mode, 0.15_default, ok, single_state, correlated_state)
  do i = 1, size (single_state)
    write (u, "(A)")
    call state_matrix_write (single_state(i), u)
    write (u, "(A,'('," // FMT_19 // ",',''," // FMT_19 // ",')')") &
      "Trace = ", state_matrix_trace (single_state(i))
  end do
  write (u, "(A)")
  call state_matrix_write (correlated_state, u)
  write (u, "(A,'('," // FMT_19 // ",',''," // FMT_19 // ",')')") &
    "Trace = ", state_matrix_trace (correlated_state)
  call state_matrix_final (single_state)
  call state_matrix_final (correlated_state)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```

```

call state_matrix_final (state)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: state_matrix_2"

end subroutine state_matrix_2

```

Create a colored state matrix and add color contractions.

```

<State matrices: execute tests>+≡
call test (state_matrix_3, "state_matrix_3", &
  "check factorizing 3-particle state matrix", &
  u, results)

<State matrices: tests>+≡
subroutine state_matrix_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(state_matrix_t) :: state
  type(flavor_t), dimension(4) :: flv
  type(color_t), dimension(4) :: col
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: state_matrix_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: add color connections to colored state"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call state_matrix_init (state)
  call flavor_init (flv, &
    (/ 1, -HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, -1, HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET /))
  call color_init (col(1), [17])
  call color_init (col(2), [-17])
  call color_init (col(3), [-19])
  call color_init (col(4), [19])
  call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv=flv, col=col)
  call state_matrix_add_state (state, qn)
  call flavor_init (flv, &
    (/ 1, -HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, 21, HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET /))
  call color_init (col(1), [17])
  call color_init (col(2), [-17])
  call color_init (col(3), [3, -5])
  call color_init (col(4), [5, -3])
  call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv=flv, col=col)
  call state_matrix_add_state (state, qn)
  call state_matrix_freeze (state)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* State:"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call state_matrix_write (state, u)
  call state_matrix_add_color_contractions (state)

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "* State with contractions:"
write (u, "(A)")

call state_matrix_write (state, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call state_matrix_final (state)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: state_matrix_3"

end subroutine state_matrix_3

```

## 7.6 Interactions

This module defines the `interaction_t` type. It is an extension of the `state_matrix_t` type.

The state matrix is a representation of a multi-particle density matrix. It implements all possible flavor, color, and quantum-number assignments of the entries in a generic density matrix, and it can hold a complex matrix element for each entry. (Note that this matrix can hold non-diagonal entries in color and helicity space.) The `interaction_t` object associates this with a list of momenta, such that the whole object represents a multi-particle state.

The `interaction_t` holds information about which particles are incoming, virtual (i.e., kept for the records), or outgoing. Each particle can be associated to a source within another interaction. This allows us to automatically fill those interaction momenta which have been computed or defined elsewhere. It also contains internal parent-child relations and flags for (virtual) particles which are to be treated as resonances.

A quantum-number mask array summarizes, for each particle within the interaction, the treatment of flavor, color, or helicity (expose or ignore). A list of locks states which particles are bound to have an identical quantum-number mask. This is useful when the mask is changed at one place.

```

<interactions.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module interactions

    <Use kinds>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use sorting
    use subevents
    use expressions
    use flavors
    use colors

```

```

    use helicities
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices

    <Standard module head>

    <Interactions: public>

    <Interactions: types>

    <Interactions: interfaces>

contains

    <Interactions: procedures>

    <Interactions: tests>

end module interactions

```

### 7.6.1 External interaction links

Each particle in an interaction can have a link to a corresponding particle in another interaction. This allows to fetch the momenta of incoming or virtual particles from the interaction where they are defined. The link object consists of a pointer to the interaction and an index.

```

<Interactions: types>≡
    type :: external_link_t
    private
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int => null ()
        integer :: i
    end type external_link_t

```

Set an external link.

```

<Interactions: procedures>≡
    subroutine external_link_set (link, int, i)
        type(external_link_t), intent(out) :: link
        type(interaction_t), target, intent(in) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        if (i /= 0) then
            link%int => int
            link%i = i
        end if
    end subroutine external_link_set

```

Reassign an external link to a new interaction (which should be an image of the original target).

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine external_link_reassign (link, int_src, int_target)
        type(external_link_t), intent(inout) :: link
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_src
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_target
    end subroutine external_link_reassign

```

```

        if (associated (link%int)) then
            if (link%int%tag == int_src%tag) link%int => int_target
        end if
    end subroutine external_link_reassign

```

Return true if the link is set

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function external_link_is_set (link) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(external_link_t), intent(in) :: link
        flag = associated (link%int)
    end function external_link_is_set

```

Return the interaction pointer.

```

<Interactions: public>≡
    public :: external_link_get_ptr

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function external_link_get_ptr (link) result (int)
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
        type(external_link_t), intent(in) :: link
        int => link%int
    end function external_link_get_ptr

```

Return the index within that interaction

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: external_link_get_index

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function external_link_get_index (link) result (i)
        integer :: i
        type(external_link_t), intent(in) :: link
        i = link%i
    end function external_link_get_index

```

Return a pointer to the momentum of the corresponding particle. If there is no association, return a null pointer.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function external_link_get_momentum_ptr (link) result (p)
        type(vector4_t), pointer :: p
        type(external_link_t), intent(in) :: link
        if (associated (link%int)) then
            p => link%int%p(link%i)
        else
            p => null ()
        end if
    end function external_link_get_momentum_ptr

```



## 7.6.2 Internal relations

In addition to the external links, particles within the interaction have parent-child relations. Here, more than one link is possible, and we set up an array.

```
<Interactions: types>+=  
  type :: internal_link_list_t  
    private  
    integer :: length = 0  
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: link  
    contains  
    <Interactions: internal link list: TBP>  
  end type internal_link_list_t
```

Output, non-advancing.

```
<Interactions: internal link list: TBP>=  
  procedure :: write => internal_link_list_write  
  
<Interactions: procedures>+=  
  subroutine internal_link_list_write (object, unit)  
    class(internal_link_list_t), intent(in) :: object  
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit  
    integer :: u, i  
    u = output_unit (unit)  
    do i = 1, object%length  
      write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") object%link(i)  
    end do  
  end subroutine internal_link_list_write
```

Append an item. Start with an array size of 2 and double the size if necessary.

```
<Interactions: internal link list: TBP>+=  
  procedure :: append => internal_link_list_append  
  
<Interactions: procedures>+=  
  subroutine internal_link_list_append (link_list, link)  
    class(internal_link_list_t), intent(inout) :: link_list  
    integer, intent(in) :: link  
    integer :: l  
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: tmp  
    l = link_list%length  
    if (allocated (link_list%link)) then  
      if (l == size (link_list%link)) then  
        allocate (tmp (2 * l))  
        tmp(:l) = link_list%link  
        call move_alloc (from = tmp, to = link_list%link)  
      end if  
    else  
      allocate (link_list%link (2))  
    end if  
    l = l + 1  
    link_list%link(l) = link  
    link_list%length = l  
  end subroutine internal_link_list_append
```

Return true if the link list is nonempty:

```

<Interactions: internal link list: TBP>+=
  procedure :: has_entries => internal_link_list_has_entries

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  function internal_link_list_has_entries (link_list) result (flag)
    class(internal_link_list_t), intent(in) :: link_list
    logical :: flag
    flag = link_list%length > 0
  end function internal_link_list_has_entries

```

Return the list length

```

<Interactions: internal link list: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_length => internal_link_list_get_length

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  function internal_link_list_get_length (link_list) result (length)
    class(internal_link_list_t), intent(in) :: link_list
    integer :: length
    length = link_list%length
  end function internal_link_list_get_length

```

Return an entry.

```

<Interactions: internal link list: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_link => internal_link_list_get_link

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  function internal_link_list_get_link (link_list, i) result (link)
    class(internal_link_list_t), intent(in) :: link_list
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer :: link
    if (i <= link_list%length) then
      link = link_list%link(i)
    else
      call msg_bug ("Internal link list: out of bounds")
    end if
  end function internal_link_list_get_link

```

### 7.6.3 The interaction type

An interaction is an entangled system of particles. Thus, the interaction object consists of two parts: the subevent, and the quantum state which technically is a trie. The subnode levels beyond the trie root node are in correspondence to the subevent, so both should be traversed in parallel.

The subevent is implemented as an allocatable array of four-momenta. The first **n\_in** particles are incoming, **n\_vir** particles in-between can be kept for bookkeeping, and the last **n\_out** particles are outgoing.

Distinct interactions are linked by their particles: for each particle, we have the possibility of links to corresponding particles in other interactions. Furthermore, for bookkeeping purposes we have a self-link array **relations** where the parent-child relations are kept, and a flag array **resonant** which is set for an intermediate resonance.

Each momentum is associated with masks for flavor, color, and helicity. If a mask entry is set, the associated quantum number is to be ignored for that particle. If any mask has changed, the flag `update` is set.

We can have particle pairs locked together. If this is the case, the corresponding mask entries are bound to be equal. This is useful for particles that go through the interaction.

The interaction tag serves bookkeeping purposes. In particular, it identifies links in printout.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_t

<Interactions: types>+≡
    type :: interaction_t
        private
        integer :: tag = 0
        type(state_matrix_t) :: state_matrix
        integer :: n_in = 0
        integer :: n_vir = 0
        integer :: n_out = 0
        integer :: n_tot = 0
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: p_is_known
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
        type(external_link_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: source
        type(internal_link_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: parents
        type(internal_link_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: children
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: resonant
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: hel_lock
        logical :: update_state_matrix = .false.
        logical :: update_values = .false.
    end type interaction_t

```

Initialize the particle array with a fixed size. The first `n_in` particles are incoming, the rest outgoing. Masks are optional. There is also an optional tag. The interaction still needs fixing the values, but that is to be done after all branches have been added.

Interaction tags are assigned consecutively, using a `saved` variable local to this procedure. If desired, we can provide a seed for the interaction tags. Such a seed should be positive. The default seed is one. `tag=0` indicates an empty interaction.

If `set_relations` is set and true, we establish parent-child relations for all incoming and outgoing particles. Virtual particles are skipped; this option is normally used only for interactions without virtual particles.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_init

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_init &
        (int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, &
         tag, resonant, mask, hel_lock, set_relations, store_values)
        type(interaction_t), intent(out) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out
        integer, intent(in), optional :: tag
    end subroutine interaction_init

```

```

logical, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: resonant
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: mask
integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: hel_lock
logical, intent(in), optional :: set_relations, store_values
logical :: set_rel
integer :: i, j
set_rel = .false.; if (present (set_relations)) set_rel = set_relations
call interaction_set_tag (int, tag)
call state_matrix_init (int%state_matrix, store_values)
int%n_in = n_in
int%n_vir = n_vir
int%n_out = n_out
int%n_tot = n_in + n_vir + n_out
allocate (int%p_is_known (int%n_tot))
int%p_is_known = .false.
allocate (int%p (int%n_tot))
allocate (int%source (int%n_tot))
allocate (int%parents (int%n_tot))
allocate (int%children (int%n_tot))
allocate (int%resonant (int%n_tot))
if (present (resonant)) then
    int%resonant = resonant
else
    int%resonant = .false.
end if
allocate (int%mask (int%n_tot))
allocate (int%hel_lock (int%n_tot))
if (present (mask)) then
    int%mask = mask
end if
if (present (hel_lock)) then
    int%hel_lock = hel_lock
else
    int%hel_lock = 0
end if
int%update_state_matrix = .false.
int%update_values = .true.
if (set_rel) then
    do i = 1, n_in
        do j = 1, n_out
            call interaction_relate (int, i, n_in + j)
        end do
    end do
end if
end subroutine interaction_init

```

Set or create a unique tag for the interaction. Without interaction, reset the tag counter.

*(Interactions: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine interaction_set_tag (int, tag)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout), optional :: int
    integer, intent(in), optional :: tag
    integer, save :: stored_tag = 1

```

```

if (present (int)) then
  if (present (tag)) then
    int%tag = tag
  else
    int%tag = stored_tag
    stored_tag = stored_tag + 1
  end if
else if (present (tag)) then
  stored_tag = tag
else
  stored_tag = 1
end if
end subroutine interaction_set_tag

```

The public interface for the previous procedure only covers the reset functionality.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: reset_interaction_counter

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine reset_interaction_counter (tag)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: tag
    call interaction_set_tag (tag=tag)
  end subroutine reset_interaction_counter

```

Finalizer: The state-matrix object contains pointers.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_final

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  elemental subroutine interaction_final (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    call state_matrix_final (int%state_matrix)
  end subroutine interaction_final

```

Output. The `verbose` option refers to the state matrix output.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_write

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_write &
    (int, unit, verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass, show_state, testflag)
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_state, testflag
    integer :: u
    integer :: i, index_link
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_link
    logical :: show_st
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    show_st = .true.; if (present (show_state)) show_st = show_state
    if (int%tag /= 0) then
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Interaction: ", int%tag
    end if
  end subroutine interaction_write

```

```

do i = 1, int%n_tot
  if (i == 1 .and. int%n_in > 0) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Incoming:"
  else if (i == int%n_in + 1 .and. int%n_vir > 0) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Virtual:"
  else if (i == int%n_in + int%n_vir + 1 .and. int%n_out > 0) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing:"
  end if
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)", advance="no") "Particle", i
  if (allocated (int%resonant)) then
    if (int%resonant(i)) then
      write (u, "(A)") "[r]"
    else
      write (u, *)
    end if
  else
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (allocated (int%p)) then
    if (int%p_is_known(i)) then
      call vector4_write (int%p(i), u, show_mass, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(A)") " [momentum undefined]"
    end if
  else
    write (u, "(A)") " [momentum not allocated]"
  end if
  if (allocated (int%mask)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "mask [fch] = "
    call quantum_numbers_mask_write (int%mask(i), u)
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (int%parents(i)%has_entries () &
    .or. int%children(i)%has_entries ()) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "internal links:"
    call int%parents(i)%write (u)
    if (int%parents(i)%has_entries () &
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "=>"
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "X"
    if (int%children(i)%has_entries () &
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "=>"
    call int%children(i)%write (u)
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (allocated (int%hel_lock)) then
    if (int%hel_lock(i) /= 0) then
      write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "helicity lock:", int%hel_lock(i)
    end if
  end if
  if (external_link_is_set (int%source(i))) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "source:"
    int_link => external_link_get_ptr (int%source(i))
    index_link = external_link_get_index (int%source(i))
    write (u, "(1x,'(,I0,)',I0)", advance="no") &

```

```

        int_link%tag, index_link
        write (u, *)
    end if
end do
if (present (show_momentum_sum)) then
    if (allocated (int%p) .and. show_momentum_sum) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Incoming particles (sum):"
        call vector4_write &
            (sum (int%p(1:int%n_in)), u, show_mass = show_mass)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particles (sum):"
        call vector4_write &
            (sum (int%p(int%n_in+int%n_vir+1:)), u, show_mass = show_mass)
        write (u, *)
    end if
end if
if (show_st) then
    call state_matrix_write (int%state_matrix, &
        write_value_list=verbose, verbose=verbose, &
        unit=unit, testflag = testflag)
end if
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Interaction: [empty]"
end if
end subroutine interaction_write

```

Assignment: We implement this as a deep copy. This applies, in particular, to the state-matrix and internal-link components. Furthermore, the new interaction acquires a new tag.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
    public :: assignment(=)

<Interactions: interfaces>=
    interface assignment(=)
        module procedure interaction_assign
    end interface

<Interactions: procedures>+=
    subroutine interaction_assign (int_out, int_in)
        type(interaction_t), intent(out) :: int_out
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
        call interaction_set_tag (int_out)
        int_out%state_matrix = int_in%state_matrix
        int_out%n_in = int_in%n_in
        int_out%n_out = int_in%n_out
        int_out%n_vir = int_in%n_vir
        int_out%n_tot = int_in%n_tot
        if (allocated (int_in%p_is_known)) then
            allocate (int_out%p_is_known (size (int_in%p_is_known)))
            int_out%p_is_known = int_in%p_is_known
        end if
        if (allocated (int_in%p)) then
            allocate (int_out%p (size (int_in%p)))
            int_out%p = int_in%p
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

end if
if (allocated (int_in%source)) then
    allocate (int_out%source (size (int_in%source)))
    int_out%source = int_in%source
end if
if (allocated (int_in%parents)) then
    allocate (int_out%parents (size (int_in%parents)))
    int_out%parents = int_in%parents
end if
if (allocated (int_in%children)) then
    allocate (int_out%children (size (int_in%children)))
    int_out%children = int_in%children
end if
if (allocated (int_in%resonant)) then
    allocate (int_out%resonant (size (int_in%resonant)))
    int_out%resonant = int_in%resonant
end if
if (allocated (int_in%mask)) then
    allocate (int_out%mask (size (int_in%mask)))
    int_out%mask = int_in%mask
end if
if (allocated (int_in%hel_lock)) then
    allocate (int_out%hel_lock (size (int_in%hel_lock)))
    int_out%hel_lock = int_in%hel_lock
end if
int_out%update_state_matrix = int_in%update_state_matrix
int_out%update_values = int_in%update_values
end subroutine interaction_assign

```

#### 7.6.4 Methods inherited from the state matrix member

Until F2003 is standard, we cannot implement inheritance directly. Therefore, we need wrappers for “inherited” methods.

Make a new branch in the state matrix if it does not yet exist. This is not just a wrapper but it introduces the interaction mask: where a quantum number is masked, it is not transferred but set undefined. After this, the value array has to be updated.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_add_state

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_add_state &
        (int, qn, index, value, sum_values, counter_index, me_index)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
        integer, intent(in), optional :: index
        complex(default), intent(in), optional :: value
        logical, intent(in), optional :: sum_values
        integer, intent(in), optional :: counter_index
        integer, intent(out), optional :: me_index
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(size(qn)) :: qn_tmp
        qn_tmp = qn

```



```

call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn_tmp, int%mask)
call state_matrix_add_state &
    (int%state_matrix, qn_tmp, index, value, sum_values, &
    counter_index, me_index)
int%update_values = .true.
end subroutine interaction_add_state

```

Freeze the quantum state: First collapse the quantum state, i.e., remove quantum numbers if any mask has changed, then fix the array of value pointers.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_freeze

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_freeze (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    if (int%update_state_matrix) then
        call state_matrix_collapse (int%state_matrix, int%mask)
        int%update_state_matrix = .false.
        int%update_values = .true.
    end if
    if (int%update_values) then
        call state_matrix_freeze (int%state_matrix)
        int%update_values = .false.
    end if
end subroutine interaction_freeze

```

Return true if the state matrix is empty.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_is_empty

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_is_empty (int) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    flag = state_matrix_is_empty (int%state_matrix)
end function interaction_is_empty

```

Get the number of values stored in the state matrix:

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_n_matrix_elements

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (int) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    n = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (int%state_matrix)
end function interaction_get_n_matrix_elements

```

Get the norm of the state matrix (if the norm has been taken out, otherwise this would be unity).

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_norm

```

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_norm (int) result (norm)
  real(default) :: norm
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  norm = state_matrix_get_norm (int%state_matrix)
end function interaction_get_norm

```

Get the quantum number array that corresponds to a given index.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_quantum_numbers

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_quantum_numbers (int, i) result (qn)
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  allocate (qn (state_matrix_get_depth (int%state_matrix)))
  qn = state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers (int%state_matrix, i)
end function interaction_get_quantum_numbers

```

Get the matrix element that corresponds to a set of quantum numbers, a given index, or return the whole array.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_matrix_element

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_matrix_element (int, i) result (me)
  complex(default) :: me
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  me = state_matrix_get_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, i)
end function interaction_get_matrix_element

```

Set the complex value(s) stored in the quantum state.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_set_matrix_element

<Interactions: interfaces>+≡
interface interaction_set_matrix_element
  module procedure interaction_set_matrix_element_qn
  module procedure interaction_set_matrix_element_all
  module procedure interaction_set_matrix_element_array
  module procedure interaction_set_matrix_element_single
  module procedure interaction_set_matrix_element_clone
end interface

```

Indirect access via the quantum number array:

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_qn (int, qn, val)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn
  complex(default), intent(in) :: val
  call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, qn, val)
end subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_qn

```

Set all entries of the matrix-element array to a given value.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_all (int, value)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    complex(default), intent(in) :: value
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, value)
  end subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_all

```

Set the matrix-element array directly.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_array (int, value)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: value
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, value)
  end subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_array

  pure subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_single (int, i, value)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    complex(default), intent(in) :: value
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, i, value)
  end subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_single

```

Clone from another (matching) interaction.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_clone (int, int1)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (int%state_matrix, int1%state_matrix)
  end subroutine interaction_set_matrix_element_clone

```

Get the indices of any diagonal matrix elements.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
  public :: interaction_get_diagonal_entries

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_get_diagonal_entries (int, i)
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: i
    call state_matrix_get_diagonal_entries (int%state_matrix, i)
  end subroutine interaction_get_diagonal_entries

```

Renormalize the state matrix by its trace, if nonzero. The renormalization is reflected in the state-matrix norm.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
  public :: interaction_normalize_by_trace

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_normalize_by_trace (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    call state_matrix_normalize_by_trace (int%state_matrix)
  end subroutine interaction_normalize_by_trace

```

Analogous, but renormalize by maximal (absolute) value.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_normalize_by_max

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_normalize_by_max (int)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        call state_matrix_normalize_by_max (int%state_matrix)
    end subroutine interaction_normalize_by_max

```

Explicitly set the norm value (of the state matrix).

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_set_norm

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_set_norm (int, norm)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        real(default), intent(in) :: norm
        call state_matrix_set_norm (int%state_matrix, norm)
    end subroutine interaction_set_norm

```

Return the maximum absolute value of color indices.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_max_color_value

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_max_color_value (int) result (cmax)
        integer :: cmax
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        cmax = state_matrix_get_max_color_value (int%state_matrix)
    end function interaction_get_max_color_value

```

Factorize the state matrix into single-particle state matrices, the branch selection depending on a (random) value between 0 and 1; optionally also return a correlated state matrix.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_factorize

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_factorize &
        (int, mode, x, ok, single_state, correlated_state, qn_in)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: mode
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        logical, intent(out) :: ok
        type(state_matrix_t), &
            dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: single_state
        type(state_matrix_t), intent(out), optional :: correlated_state
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: qn_in
        call state_matrix_factorize &
            (int%state_matrix, mode, x, ok, single_state, correlated_state, qn_in)
    end subroutine interaction_factorize

```

Sum all matrix element values

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_sum

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  function interaction_sum (int) result (value)
    complex(default) :: value
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    value = state_matrix_sum (int%state_matrix)
  end function interaction_sum

```

Append new states which are color-contracted versions of the existing states. The matrix element index of each color contraction coincides with the index of its origin, so no new matrix elements are generated. After this operation, no **freeze** must be performed anymore.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_add_color_contractions

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_add_color_contractions (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    call state_matrix_add_color_contractions (int%state_matrix)
  end subroutine interaction_add_color_contractions

```

Multiply matrix elements from two interactions. Choose the elements as given by the integer index arrays, multiply them and store the sum of products in the indicated matrix element. The suffixes mean: c=conjugate first factor; f=include weighting factor.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_evaluate_product
  public :: interaction_evaluate_product_cf
  public :: interaction_evaluate_square_c
  public :: interaction_evaluate_sum
  public :: interaction_evaluate_me_sum

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  pure subroutine interaction_evaluate_product &
    (int, i, int1, int2, index1, index2)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1, int2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1, index2
    call state_matrix_evaluate_product &
      (int%state_matrix, i, int1%state_matrix, int2%state_matrix, &
        index1, index2)
  end subroutine interaction_evaluate_product

  pure subroutine interaction_evaluate_product_cf &
    (int, i, int1, int2, index1, index2, factor)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1, int2
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1, index2
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: factor

```

```

    call state_matrix_evaluate_product_cf &
      (int%state_matrix, i, int1%state_matrix, int2%state_matrix, &
       index1, index2, factor)
end subroutine interaction_evaluate_product_cf

pure subroutine interaction_evaluate_square_c (int, i, int1, index1)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1
  call state_matrix_evaluate_square_c &
    (int%state_matrix, i, int1%state_matrix, index1)
end subroutine interaction_evaluate_square_c

pure subroutine interaction_evaluate_sum (int, i, int1, index1)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1
  call state_matrix_evaluate_sum &
    (int%state_matrix, i, int1%state_matrix, index1)
end subroutine interaction_evaluate_sum

pure subroutine interaction_evaluate_me_sum (int, i, int1, index1)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index1
  call state_matrix_evaluate_me_sum &
    (int%state_matrix, i, int1%state_matrix, index1)
end subroutine interaction_evaluate_me_sum

```

### 7.6.5 Accessing contents

Return the integer tag.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
  public :: interaction_get_tag

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  function interaction_get_tag (int) result (tag)
    integer :: tag
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    tag = int%tag
  end function interaction_get_tag

```

Return the number of particles.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
  public :: interaction_get_n_tot
  public :: interaction_get_n_in
  public :: interaction_get_n_vir
  public :: interaction_get_n_out

```

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_n_tot (int) result (n_tot)
  integer :: n_tot
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  n_tot = int%n_tot
end function interaction_get_n_tot

function interaction_get_n_in (int) result (n_in)
  integer :: n_in
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  n_in = int%n_in
end function interaction_get_n_in

function interaction_get_n_vir (int) result (n_vir)
  integer :: n_vir
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  n_vir = int%n_vir
end function interaction_get_n_vir

function interaction_get_n_out (int) result (n_out)
  integer :: n_out
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  n_out = int%n_out
end function interaction_get_n_out

```

Return a momentum index. The flags specify whether to keep/drop incoming, virtual, or outgoing momenta. Check for illegal values.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function idx (int, i, outgoing)
  integer :: idx
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
  logical :: in, vir, out
  if (present (outgoing)) then
    in = .not. outgoing
    vir = .false.
    out = outgoing
  else
    in = .true.
    vir = .true.
    out = .true.
  end if
  idx = 0
  if (in) then
    if (vir) then
      if (out) then
        if (i <= int%n_tot) idx = i
      else
        if (i <= int%n_in + int%n_vir) idx = i
      end if
    else if (out) then
      if (i <= int%n_in) then

```

```

        idx = i
    else if (i <= int%n_in + int%n_out) then
        idx = int%n_vir + i
    end if
else
    if (i <= int%n_in) idx = i
end if
else if (vir) then
    if (out) then
        if (i <= int%n_vir + int%n_out) idx = int%n_in + i
    else
        if (i <= int%n_vir) idx = int%n_in + i
    end if
else if (out) then
    if (i <= int%n_out) idx = int%n_in + int%n_vir + i
end if
if (idx == 0) then
    call interaction_write (int)
    print *, i, in, vir, out
    call msg_bug (" Momentum index is out of range for this interaction")
end if
end function idx

```

Return all or just a specific four-momentum.

*<Interactions: public>+≡*

```

public :: interaction_get_momenta
public :: interaction_get_momentum

```

*<Interactions: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface interaction_get_momenta
    module procedure interaction_get_momenta_all
    module procedure interaction_get_momenta_idx
end interface

```

*<Interactions: procedures>+≡*

```

function interaction_get_momenta_all (int, outgoing) result (p)
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
    integer :: i
    if (present (outgoing)) then
        if (outgoing) then
            allocate (p (int%n_out))
        else
            allocate (p (int%n_in))
        end if
    else
        allocate (p (int%n_tot))
    end if
    do i = 1, size (p)
        p(i) = int%p(idx (int, i, outgoing))
    end do
end function interaction_get_momenta_all

```

```

function interaction_get_momenta_idx (int, jj) result (p)

```



```

    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: jj
    allocate (p (size (jj)))
    p = int%p(jj)
end function interaction_get_momenta_idx

function interaction_get_momentum (int, i, outgoing) result (p)
    type(vector4_t) :: p
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
    p = int%p(idx (int, i, outgoing))
end function interaction_get_momentum

```

This is a variant as a subroutine. Redundant, but the function above fails at times for gfortran 4.5.0 (double allocation, compiler bug).

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_momenta_sub

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_get_momenta_sub (int, p, outgoing)
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (p)
            p(i) = int%p(idx (int, i, outgoing))
        end do
    end subroutine interaction_get_momenta_sub

```

Transfer PDG codes, masses (initialization) and momenta to a predefined subevent. We use the flavor assignment of the first branch in the interaction state matrix. Only incoming and outgoing particles are transferred. Switch momentum sign for incoming particles.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_to_subevt
    public :: interaction_momenta_to_subevt

<Interactions: interfaces>+≡
    interface interaction_momenta_to_subevt
        module procedure interaction_momenta_to_subevt_id
        module procedure interaction_momenta_to_subevt_tr
    end interface

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_to_subevt (int, j_beam, j_in, j_out, subevt)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: j_beam, j_in, j_out
        type(subevt_t), intent(out) :: subevt
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
        integer :: n_beam, n_in, n_out, i, j
        allocate (flv (int%n_tot))

```

```

flv = quantum_numbers_get_flavor (interaction_get_quantum_numbers (int, 1))
n_beam = size (j_beam)
n_in = size (j_in)
n_out = size (j_out)
call subevt_init (subevt, n_beam + n_in + n_out)
do i = 1, n_beam
  j = j_beam(i)
  call subevt_set_beam (subevt, i, &
    flavor_get_pdg (flv(j)), &
    vector4_null, &
    flavor_get_mass (flv(j)) ** 2)
end do
do i = 1, n_in
  j = j_in(i)
  call subevt_set_incoming (subevt, n_beam + i, &
    flavor_get_pdg (flv(j)), &
    vector4_null, &
    flavor_get_mass (flv(j)) ** 2)
end do
do i = 1, n_out
  j = j_out(i)
  call subevt_set_outgoing (subevt, n_beam + n_in + i, &
    flavor_get_pdg (flv(j)), &
    vector4_null, &
    flavor_get_mass (flv(j)) ** 2)
end do
end subroutine interaction_to_subevt

subroutine interaction_momenta_to_subevt_id (int, j_beam, j_in, j_out, subevt)
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: j_beam, j_in, j_out
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  call subevt_set_p_beam &
    (subevt, - interaction_get_momenta (int, j_beam))
  call subevt_set_p_incoming &
    (subevt, - interaction_get_momenta (int, j_in))
  call subevt_set_p_outgoing &
    (subevt, interaction_get_momenta (int, j_out))
end subroutine interaction_momenta_to_subevt_id

subroutine interaction_momenta_to_subevt_tr &
  (int, j_beam, j_in, j_out, lt, subevt)
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: j_beam, j_in, j_out
  type(subevt_t), intent(inout) :: subevt
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: lt
  call subevt_set_p_beam &
    (subevt, - lt * interaction_get_momenta (int, j_beam))
  call subevt_set_p_incoming &
    (subevt, - lt * interaction_get_momenta (int, j_in))
  call subevt_set_p_outgoing &
    (subevt, lt * interaction_get_momenta (int, j_out))
end subroutine interaction_momenta_to_subevt_tr

```

Return a shallow copy of the state matrix:

```
<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int) result (state)
        type(state_matrix_t), pointer :: state
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
        state => int%state_matrix
    end function interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr
```

Return the array of resonance flags

```
<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_resonance_flags

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_resonance_flags (int) result (resonant)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        logical, dimension(size(int%resonant)) :: resonant
        resonant = int%resonant
    end function interaction_get_resonance_flags
```

Return the quantum-numbers mask (or part of it)

```
<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_mask

<Interactions: interfaces>+≡
    interface interaction_get_mask
        module procedure interaction_get_mask_all
        module procedure interaction_get_mask_slice
    end interface

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_mask_all (int) result (mask)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(size(int%mask)) :: mask
        mask = int%mask
    end function interaction_get_mask_all

    function interaction_get_mask_slice (int, index) result (mask)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(size(index)) :: mask
        mask = int%mask(index)
    end function interaction_get_mask_slice
```

Compute the invariant mass squared of the incoming particles (if any, otherwise outgoing).

```
<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_s
```

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_s (int) result (s)
  real(default) :: s
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  if (int%n_in /= 0) then
    s = sum (int%p(:int%n_in)) ** 2
  else
    s = sum (int%p(int%n_vir+1:)) ** 2
  end if
end function interaction_get_s

```

Compute the Lorentz transformation that transforms the incoming particles from the center-of-mass frame to the lab frame where they are given. If the c.m. mass squared is negative or zero, return the identity.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_cm_transformation

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
function interaction_get_cm_transformation (int) result (lt)
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: lt
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  type(vector4_t) :: p_cm
  real(default) :: s
  if (int%n_in /= 0) then
    p_cm = sum (int%p(:int%n_in))
  else
    p_cm = sum (int%p(int%n_vir+1:))
  end if
  s = p_cm ** 2
  if (s > 0) then
    lt = boost (p_cm, sqrt (s))
  else
    lt = identity
  end if
end function interaction_get_cm_transformation

```

Return flavor, momentum, and position of the first outgoing unstable particle present in the interaction. Note that we need not iterate through the state matrix; if there is an unstable particle, it will be present in all state-matrix entries.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_get_unstable_particle

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_get_unstable_particle (int, flv, p, i)
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
  type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
  type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p
  integer, intent(out) :: i
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  type(flavor_t), dimension(int%n_tot) :: flv_array
  call state_iterator_init (it, int%state_matrix)
  flv_array = state_iterator_get_flavor (it)

```

```

do i = int%n_in + int%n_vir + 1, int%n_tot
  if (.not. flavor_is_stable (flv_array(i))) then
    flv = flv_array(i)
    p = int%p(i)
    return
  end if
end do
end subroutine interaction_get_unstable_particle

```

Return the complete set of *outgoing* flavors, assuming that the flavor quantum number is not suppressed.

*<Interactions: public>+≡*

```
public :: interaction_get_flv_out
```

*<Interactions: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_get_flv_out (int, flv)
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: flv
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_state
  integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, n_state, i
  n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int)
  n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int)
  n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int)
  n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int)
  n_state = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (int)
  allocate (flv (n_out, n_state))
  allocate (flv_state (n_tot))
  i = 1
  call state_iterator_init (it, interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int))
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    flv_state = state_iterator_get_flavor (it)
    flv(:,i) = flv_state(n_in+n_vir+1:)
    i = i + 1
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
end subroutine interaction_get_flv_out

```

### 7.6.6 Modifying contents

Set the quantum numbers mask.

*<Interactions: public>+≡*

```
public :: interaction_set_mask
```

*<Interactions: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_set_mask (int, mask)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
  int%mask = mask
  int%update_state_matrix = .true.
end subroutine interaction_set_mask

```

Merge a particular mask entry, respecting a possible helicity lock for this entry. We apply an OR relation, which means that quantum numbers are summed over if either of the two masks requires it.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_merge_mask_entry (int, i, mask)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask_tmp
  integer :: ii
  ii = idx (int, i)
  if (int%mask(ii) .neqv. mask) then
    int%mask(ii) = int%mask(ii) .or. mask
    if (int%hel_lock(ii) /= 0) then
      call quantum_numbers_mask_assign (mask_tmp, mask, helicity=.true.)
      int%mask(int%hel_lock(ii)) = int%mask(int%hel_lock(ii)) .or. mask_tmp
    end if
  end if
  int%update_state_matrix = .true.
end subroutine interaction_merge_mask_entry

```

Fill the momenta array, do not care about the quantum numbers of particles.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
public :: interaction_reset_momenta
public :: interaction_set_momenta
public :: interaction_set_momentum

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_reset_momenta (int)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  int%p = vector4_null
  int%p_is_known = .true.
end subroutine interaction_reset_momenta

subroutine interaction_set_momenta (int, p, outgoing)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
  logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
  integer :: i, index
  do i = 1, size (p)
    index = idx (int, i, outgoing)
    int%p(index) = p(i)
    int%p_is_known(index) = .true.
  end do
end subroutine interaction_set_momenta

subroutine interaction_set_momentum (int, p, i, outgoing)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  logical, intent(in), optional :: outgoing
  integer :: index
  index = idx (int, i, outgoing)
  int%p(index) = p

```

```

    int%p_is_known(index) = .true.
end subroutine interaction_set_momentum

```

This more sophisticated version of setting values is used for structure functions, in particular if nontrivial flavor, color, and helicity may be present: set values selectively for the given flavors. If there is more than one flavor, scan the interaction and check for a matching flavor at the specified particle location. If it matches, insert the value that corresponds to this flavor.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_set_flavored_values

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_set_flavored_values (int, value, flv_in, pos)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: value
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv_in
        integer, intent(in) :: pos
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        integer :: i
        if (size (value) == 1) then
            call interaction_set_matrix_element (int, value(1))
        else
            call state_iterator_init (it, int%state_matrix)
            do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
                flv = state_iterator_get_flavor (it, pos)
                SCAN_FLV: do i = 1, size (value)
                    if (flv == flv_in(i)) then
                        call state_iterator_set_matrix_element (it, value(i))
                        exit SCAN_FLV
                    end if
                end do SCAN_FLV
                call state_iterator_advance (it)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine interaction_set_flavored_values

```

### 7.6.7 Handling Linked interactions

Store relations between corresponding particles within one interaction. The first particle is the parent, the second one the child. Links are established in both directions.

These relations have no effect on the propagation of momenta etc., they are rather used for mother-daughter relations in event output.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_relate

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_relate (int, i1, i2)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout), target :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i1, i2
        if (i1 /= 0 .and. i2 /= 0) then

```

```

        call int%children(i1)%append (i2)
        call int%parents(i2)%append (i1)
    end if
end subroutine interaction_relate

```

Transfer internal parent-child relations defined within interaction `int1` to a new interaction `int` where the particle indices are mapped to. Some particles in `int1` may have no image in `int`. In that case, a child entry maps to zero, and we skip this relation.

Also transfer resonance flags.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
    public :: interaction_transfer_relations

<Interactions: procedures>+=
    subroutine interaction_transfer_relations (int1, int2, map)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout), target :: int2
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: map
        integer :: i, j, k
        do i = 1, size (map)
            do j = 1, int1%parents(i)%get_length ()
                k = int1%parents(i)%get_link (j)
                call interaction_relate (int2, map(k), map(i))
            end do
            if (map(i) /= 0) then
                int2%resonant(map(i)) = int1%resonant(i)
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine interaction_transfer_relations

```

Make up internal parent-child relations for the particle(s) that are connected to a new interaction `int`.

If `resonant` is defined and true, the connections are marked as resonant in the result interaction

```

<Interactions: public>+=
    public :: interaction_relate_connections

<Interactions: procedures>+=
    subroutine interaction_relate_connections &
        (int, int_in, connection_index, &
        map, map_connections, resonant)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout), target :: int
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_in
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: connection_index
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: map, map_connections
        logical, intent(in), optional :: resonant
        logical :: reson
        integer :: i, j, i2, k2
        reson = .false.; if (present (resonant)) reson = resonant
        do i = 1, size (map_connections)
            k2 = connection_index(i)
            do j = 1, int_in%children(k2)%get_length ()
                i2 = int_in%children(k2)%get_link (j)

```



```

        call interaction_relate (int, map_connections(i), map(i2))
    end do
    int%resonant(map_connections(i)) = reson
end do
end subroutine interaction_relate_connections

```

Return the number of source/target links of the internal connections of particle i.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_n_children
    public :: interaction_get_n_parents

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_n_children (int, i) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        n = int%children(i)%get_length ()
    end function interaction_get_n_children

    function interaction_get_n_parents (int, i) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        n = int%parents(i)%get_length ()
    end function interaction_get_n_parents

```

Return the source/target links of the internal connections of particle i as an array.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_get_children
    public :: interaction_get_parents

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_get_children (int, i) result (idx)
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: idx
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer :: k, l
        l = int%children(i)%get_length ()
        allocate (idx (l))
        do k = 1, l
            idx(k) = int%children(i)%get_link (k)
        end do
    end function interaction_get_children

    function interaction_get_parents (int, i) result (idx)
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: idx
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer :: k, l
        l = int%parents(i)%get_length ()
        allocate (idx (l))
        do k = 1, l

```

```

        idx(k) = int%parents(i)%get_link (k)
    end do
end function interaction_get_parents

```

Add a source link from an interaction to a corresponding particle within another interaction. These links affect the propagation of particles: the two linked particles are considered as the same particle, outgoing and incoming.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_set_source_link

<Interactions: interfaces>+≡
    interface interaction_set_source_link
        module procedure interaction_set_source_link_int
    end interface

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_set_source_link_int (int, i, int1, i1)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int1
        integer, intent(in) :: i1
        if (i /= 0) call external_link_set (int%source(i), int1, i1)
    end subroutine interaction_set_source_link_int

```

Reassign links to a new interaction (which is an image of the current interaction).

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_reassign_links

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_reassign_links (int, int_src, int_target)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_src
        type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_target
        integer :: i
        if (allocated (int%source)) then
            do i = 1, size (int%source)
                call external_link_reassign (int%source(i), int_src, int_target)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine interaction_reassign_links

```

Since links are one-directional, if we want to follow them backwards we have to scan all possibilities. This procedure returns the index of the particle within `int` which points to the particle `i1` within interaction `int1`. If unsuccessful, return zero.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_find_link

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    function interaction_find_link (int, int1, i1) result (i)
        integer :: i
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int, int1
        integer, intent(in) :: i1
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_tmp

```

```

do i = 1, int%n_tot
  int_tmp => external_link_get_ptr (int%source(i))
  if (int_tmp%tag == int1%tag) then
    if (external_link_get_index (int%source(i)) == i1) return
  end if
end do
i = 0
end function interaction_find_link

```

The inverse: return interaction pointer and index for the ultimate source of *i* within *int*.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
  public :: interaction_find_source

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  subroutine interaction_find_source (int, i, int1, i1)
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(interaction_t), intent(out), pointer :: int1
    integer, intent(out) :: i1
    type(external_link_t) :: link
    link = interaction_get_ultimate_source (int, i)
    int1 => external_link_get_ptr (link)
    i1 = external_link_get_index (link)
  end subroutine interaction_find_source

```

Follow source links recursively to return the ultimate source of a particle.

```

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
  function interaction_get_ultimate_source (int, i) result (link)
    type(external_link_t) :: link
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_src
    integer :: i_src
    link = int%source(i)
    if (external_link_is_set (link)) then
      do
        int_src => external_link_get_ptr (link)
        i_src = external_link_get_index (link)
        if (external_link_is_set (int_src%source(i_src))) then
          link = int_src%source(i_src)
        else
          exit
        end if
      end do
    end if
  end function interaction_get_ultimate_source

```

Update mask entries by merging them with corresponding masks in interactions linked to the current one. The mask determines quantum numbers which are summed over.

Note that both the mask of the current interaction and the mask of the

linked interaction are updated (side effect!). This ensures that both agree for the linked particle.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_exchange_mask

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_exchange_mask (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer :: i, index_link
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_link
    do i = 1, int%n_tot
      if (external_link_is_set (int%source(i))) then
        int_link => external_link_get_ptr (int%source(i))
        index_link = external_link_get_index (int%source(i))
        call interaction_merge_mask_entry &
          (int, i, int_link%mask(index_link))
        call interaction_merge_mask_entry &
          (int_link, index_link, int%mask(i))
      end if
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (int)
  end subroutine interaction_exchange_mask

```

Copy momenta from interactions linked to the current one.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_receive_momenta

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_receive_momenta (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer :: i, index_link
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_link
    do i = 1, int%n_tot
      if (external_link_is_set (int%source(i))) then
        int_link => external_link_get_ptr (int%source(i))
        index_link = external_link_get_index (int%source(i))
        call interaction_set_momentum (int, int_link%p(index_link), i)
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine interaction_receive_momenta

```

The inverse operation: Copy momenta back to the interactions linked to the current one.

```

<Interactions: public>+=
  public :: interaction_send_momenta

<Interactions: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_send_momenta (int)
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    integer :: i, index_link
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_link
    do i = 1, int%n_tot
      if (external_link_is_set (int%source(i))) then
        int_link => external_link_get_ptr (int%source(i))

```

```

        index_link = external_link_get_index (int%source(i))
        call interaction_set_momentum (int_link, int%p(i), index_link)
    end if
end do
end subroutine interaction_send_momenta

```

For numerical comparisons: pacify all momenta in an interaction.

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_pacify_momenta

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_pacify_momenta (int, acc)
        type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
        real(default), intent(in) :: acc
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, int%n_tot
            call pacify (int%p(i), acc)
        end do
    end subroutine interaction_pacify_momenta

```

## 7.6.8 Recovering connections

When creating an evaluator for two interactions, we have to know by which particles they are connected. The connection indices can be determined if we have two linked interactions. We assume that `int1` is the source and `int2` the target, so the connections of interest are stored within `int2`. A connection is found if either the source is `int1`, or the (ultimate) source of a particle within `int2` coincides with the (ultimate) source of a particle within `int1`. The result is an array of index pairs.

To make things simple, we scan the interaction twice, once for counting hits, then allocate the array, then scan again and store the connections.

The connections are scanned for `int2`, which has sources in `int1`. It may happen that the order of connections is interchanged (crossed). We require the indices in `int1` to be sorted, so we reorder both index arrays correspondingly before returning them. (After this, the indices in `int2` may be out of order.)

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: find_connections

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine find_connections (int1, int2, n, connection_index)
        type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1, int2
        integer, intent(out) :: n
        integer, dimension(:,:), intent(out), allocatable :: connection_index
        integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: conn_index_tmp
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ordering
        integer :: i, j, k
        type(external_link_t) :: link2, link1
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_link, int_link1
        n = 0
        do i = 1, size (int2%source)
            link2 = interaction_get_ultimate_source (int2, i)

```

```

if (external_link_is_set (link2)) then
  int_link => external_link_get_ptr (link2)
  if (int_link%tag == int1%tag) then
    n = n + 1
  else
    k = external_link_get_index (link2)
    do j = 1, size (int1%source)
      link1 = interaction_get_ultimate_source (int1, j)
      if (external_link_is_set (link1)) then
        int_link1 => external_link_get_ptr (link1)
        if (int_link1%tag == int_link%tag) then
          if (external_link_get_index (link1) == k) then
            n = n + 1
          end if
        end if
      end if
    end do
  end if
end if
end do
allocate (conn_index_tmp (n, 2))
n = 0
do i = 1, size (int2%source)
  link2 = interaction_get_ultimate_source (int2, i)
  if (external_link_is_set (link2)) then
    int_link => external_link_get_ptr (link2)
    if (int_link%tag == int1%tag) then
      n = n + 1
      conn_index_tmp(n,1) = external_link_get_index (int2%source(i))
      conn_index_tmp(n,2) = i
    else
      k = external_link_get_index (link2)
      do j = 1, size (int1%source)
        link1 = interaction_get_ultimate_source (int1, j)
        if (external_link_is_set (link1)) then
          int_link1 => external_link_get_ptr (link1)
          if (int_link1%tag == int_link%tag) then
            if (external_link_get_index (link1) == k) then
              n = n + 1
              conn_index_tmp(n,1) = j
              conn_index_tmp(n,2) = i
            end if
          end if
        end if
      end do
    end if
  end if
end do
allocate (connection_index (n, 2))
if (n > 1) then
  allocate (ordering (n))
  ordering = order (conn_index_tmp(:,1))
  connection_index = conn_index_tmp(ordering,:)
else

```

```

        connection_index = conn_index_tmp
    end if
end subroutine find_connections

```

### 7.6.9 Unit tests

```

<Interactions: public>+≡
    public :: interaction_test

<Interactions: procedures>+≡
    subroutine interaction_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Interactions: execute tests>
    end subroutine interaction_test

```

Generate an interaction of a polarized virtual photon and a colored quark which may be either up or down. Remove the quark polarization. Generate another interaction for the quark radiating a photon and link this to the first interaction. The radiation ignores polarization; transfer this information to the first interaction to simplify it. Then, transfer the momentum to the radiating quark and perform a splitting.

```

<Interactions: execute tests>≡
    call test (interaction_1, "interaction_1", &
        "check interaction setup", &
        u, results)

<Interactions: tests>≡
    subroutine interaction_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(interaction_t), target :: int, rad
        type(vector4_t), dimension(3) :: p
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
        p(2) = vector4_moving (500._default, 500._default, 1)
        p(3) = vector4_moving (500._default, -500._default, 1)
        p(1) = p(2) + p(3)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: interaction"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check routines for interactions"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call interaction_init (int, 1, 0, 2, set_relations=.true., &
            store_values = .true. )
        call int_set (int, 1, -1, 1, 1, &
            cmplx (0.3_default, 0.1_default, kind=default))
        call int_set (int, 1, -1, -1, 1, &
            cmplx (0.5_default, -0.7_default, kind=default))
        call int_set (int, 1, 1, 1, 1, &
            cmplx (0.1_default, 0._default, kind=default))
        call int_set (int, -1, 1, -1, 2, &
            cmplx (0.4_default, -0.1_default, kind=default))
        call int_set (int, 1, 1, 1, 2, &
            cmplx (0.2_default, 0._default, kind=default))
    end subroutine interaction_1

```

```

call interaction_freeze (int)
call interaction_set_momenta (int, p)
mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false.,.false., (/ .true.,.true.,.true./))
call interaction_init (rad, 1, 0, 2, &
    mask=mask, set_relations=.true., store_values = .true.)
call rad_set (1)
call rad_set (2)
call interaction_set_source_link (rad, 1, int, 2)
call interaction_exchange_mask (rad)
call interaction_receive_momenta (rad)
p(1) = interaction_get_momentum (rad, 1)
p(2) = 0.4_default * p(1)
p(3) = p(1) - p(2)
call interaction_set_momenta (rad, p(2:3), outgoing=.true.)
call interaction_freeze (int)
call interaction_freeze (rad)
call interaction_set_matrix_element &
    (rad, cmplx (0._default, 0._default, kind=default))
call interaction_write (int, u)
write (u, "(A)")
call interaction_write (rad, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
call interaction_final (int)
call interaction_final (rad)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test interaction_1: successful."
contains
subroutine int_set (int, h1, h2, hq, q, val)
    type(interaction_t), target, intent(inout) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: h1, h2, hq, q
    type(flavor_t), dimension(3) :: flv
    type(color_t), dimension(3) :: col
    type(helicity_t), dimension(3) :: hel
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
    complex(default), intent(in) :: val
    call flavor_init (flv, (/21, q, -q/))
    call color_init_col_acl (col(2), 5, 0)
    call color_init_col_acl (col(3), 0, 5)
    call helicity_init (hel, [h1, hq, -hq], [h2, hq, -hq])
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
    call interaction_add_state (int, qn)
    call interaction_set_matrix_element (int, val)
end subroutine int_set
subroutine rad_set (q)
    integer, intent(in) :: q
    type(flavor_t), dimension(3) :: flv
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
    call flavor_init (flv, (/ q, q, 21 /))
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv)
    call interaction_add_state (rad, qn)
end subroutine rad_set
end subroutine interaction_1

```



## 7.7 Matrix element evaluation

The `evaluator_t` type is an extension of the `interaction_t` type. It represents either a density matrix as the square of a transition matrix element, or the product of two density matrices. Usually, some quantum numbers are summed over in the result.

The `interaction_t` subobject represents a multi-particle interaction with incoming, virtual, and outgoing particles and the associated (not necessarily diagonal) density matrix of quantum state. When the evaluator is initialized, this interaction is constructed from the input interaction(s).

In addition, the initialization process sets up a multiplication table. For each matrix element of the result, it states which matrix elements are to be taken from the input interaction(s), multiplied (optionally, with an additional weight factor) and summed over.

Eventually, to a processes we associate a chain of evaluators which are to be evaluated sequentially. The physical event and its matrix element value(s) can be extracted from the last evaluator in such a chain.

Evaluators are constructed only once (as long as this is possible) during an initialization step. Then, for each event, momenta are computed and transferred among evaluators using the links within the interaction subobject. The multiplication tables enable fast evaluation of the result without looking at quantum numbers anymore.

`<evaluators.f90>`≡

*<File header>*

`module evaluators`

*<Use kinds>*

*<Use strings>*

*<Use file utils>*

`use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!`

`use diagnostics !NODEP!`

`use lorentz !NODEP!`

`use unit_tests`

`use os_interface`

`use models`

`use flavors`

`use colors`

`use helicities`

`use quantum_numbers`

`use state_matrices`

`use interactions`

*<Standard module head>*

*<Evaluators: public>*

*<Evaluators: parameters>*

*<Evaluators: types>*

*<Evaluators: interfaces>*

```
contains

  <Evaluators: procedures>

  <Evaluators: tests>

end module evaluators
```

### 7.7.1 Array of pairings

The evaluator contains an array of `pairing_array` objects. This makes up the multiplication table.

Each pairing array contains two list of matrix element indices and a list of numerical factors. The matrix element indices correspond to the input interactions. The corresponding matrix elements are to be multiplied and optionally multiplied by a factor. The results are summed over to yield one specific matrix element of the result evaluator.

```
<Evaluators: types>≡
  type :: pairing_array_t
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i1, i2
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: factor
  end type pairing_array_t

<Evaluators: procedures>≡
  elemental subroutine pairing_array_init (pa, n, has_i2, has_factor)
    type(pairing_array_t), intent(out) :: pa
    integer, intent(in) :: n
    logical, intent(in) :: has_i2, has_factor
    allocate (pa%i1 (n))
    if (has_i2) allocate (pa%i2 (n))
    if (has_factor) allocate (pa%factor (n))
  end subroutine pairing_array_init
```

### 7.7.2 The evaluator type

Possible variants of evaluators:

```
<Evaluators: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter :: &
    EVAL_UNDEFINED = 0, &
    EVAL_PRODUCT = 1, &
    EVAL_SQUARED_FLOWS = 2, &
    EVAL_SQUARE_WITH_COLOR_FACTORS = 3, &
    EVAL_COLOR_CONTRACTION = 4, &
    EVAL_IDENTITY = 5, &
    EVAL_QN_SUM = 6
```

The evaluator type contains the result interaction and an array of pairing lists, one for each matrix element in the result interaction.

```
<Evaluators: public>≡
  public :: evaluator_t
```

```

<Evaluators: types>+≡
type :: evaluator_t
  private
  integer :: type = EVAL_UNDEFINED
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_in1 => null ()
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_in2 => null ()
  type(interaction_t) :: int
  type(pairing_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pairing_array
contains
  <Evaluators: evaluator: TBP>
end type evaluator_t

```

Output.

```

<Evaluators: evaluator: TBP>≡
procedure :: write => evaluator_write

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
subroutine evaluator_write (eval, unit, &
  verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass, show_state, show_table, testflag)
  class(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass
  logical, intent(in), optional :: show_state, show_table, testflag
  logical :: conjugate, square, show_tab
  integer :: u, i, j
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  show_tab = .true.; if (present (show_table)) show_tab = .false.
  ! write (u, "(1x,A)") "Evaluator:"      !!! Debugging
  call interaction_write &
    (eval%int, unit, verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass, &
      show_state, testflag)
  if (show_tab) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Matrix-element multiplication"
    write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "Input interaction 1:"
    if (associated (eval%int_in1)) then
      write (u, "(1x,I0)") interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in1)
    else
      write (u, "(A)") " [undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "Input interaction 2:"
    if (associated (eval%int_in2)) then
      write (u, "(1x,I0)") interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in2)
    else
      write (u, "(A)") " [undefined]"
    end if
    select case (eval%type)
    case (EVAL_SQUARED_FLOWS, EVAL_SQUARE_WITH_COLOR_FACTORS)
      conjugate = .true.
      square = .true.
    case default
      conjugate = .false.
      square = .false.
    end select
    if (eval%type == EVAL_IDENTITY) then

```

```

        write (u, "(1X,A)") "Identity evaluator, pairing array unused"
        return
    end if
    if (allocated (eval%pairing_array)) then
        do i = 1, size (eval%pairing_array)
            write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A)") "ME(", i, ") = "
            do j = 1, size (eval%pairing_array(i)%i1)
                write (u, "(4x,A)", advance="no") "+"
                if (allocated (eval%pairing_array(i)%i2)) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)", advance="no") &
                        "ME1(", eval%pairing_array(i)%i1(j), ")"
                    if (conjugate) then
                        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "* x"
                    else
                        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " x"
                    end if
                    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)", advance="no") &
                        "ME2(", eval%pairing_array(i)%i2(j), ")"
                else if (square) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "|"
                    write (u, "(A,I0,A)", advance="no") &
                        "ME1(", eval%pairing_array(i)%i1(j), ")"
                    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "|^2"
                else
                    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)", advance="no") &
                        "ME1(", eval%pairing_array(i)%i1(j), ")"
                end if
            end if
            if (allocated (eval%pairing_array(i)%factor)) then
                write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "x"
                write (u, "(1x,'('," // FMT_19 // ",',''," // FMT_19 // &
                    ",')')") eval%pairing_array(i)%factor(j)
            else
                write (u, *)
            end if
        end do
    end do
    end if
    ! print *, size (eval%pairing_array)      !!! Debugging
end if
end subroutine evaluator_write

```

Assignment: Deep copy of the interaction component.

*(Evaluators: public)* +=

```
public :: assignment(=)
```

*(Evaluators: interfaces)* ≡

```
interface assignment(=)
    module procedure evaluator_assign
end interface

```

*(Evaluators: procedures)* +=

```
subroutine evaluator_assign (eval_out, eval_in)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out) :: eval_out
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval_in

```

```

eval_out%type = eval_in%type
eval_out%int_in1 => eval_in%int_in1
eval_out%int_in2 => eval_in%int_in2
eval_out%int = eval_in%int
if (allocated (eval_in%pairing_array)) then
    allocate (eval_out%pairing_array (size (eval_in%pairing_array)))
    eval_out%pairing_array = eval_in%pairing_array
end if
end subroutine evaluator_assign

```

### 7.7.3 Auxiliary structures for evaluator creation

Creating an evaluator that properly handles all quantum numbers requires some bookkeeping. In this section, we define several auxiliary types and methods that organize and simplify this task. More structures are defined within the specific initializers (as local types and internal subroutines).

These types are currently implemented in a partial object-oriented way: We define some basic methods for initialization etc. here, but the evaluator routines below do access their internals as well. This simplifies some things such as index addressing using array slices, at the expense of losing some clarity.

#### Index mapping

Index mapping are abundant when constructing an evaluator. To have arrays of index mappings, we define this:

```

(Evaluators: types)+≡
type :: index_map_t
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
end type index_map_t

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
elemental subroutine index_map_init (map, n)
    type(index_map_t), intent(out) :: map
    integer, intent(in) :: n
    allocate (map%entry (n))
end subroutine index_map_init

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
function index_map_exists (map) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(index_map_t), intent(in) :: map
    flag = allocated (map%entry)
end function index_map_exists

(Evaluators: interfaces)+≡
interface size
    module procedure index_map_size
end interface

```

```

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
function index_map_size (map) result (s)
  integer :: s
  type(index_map_t), intent(in) :: map
  if (allocated (map%entry)) then
    s = size (map%entry)
  else
    s = 0
  end if
end function index_map_size

```

```

(Evaluators: interfaces)+≡
interface assignment(=)
  module procedure index_map_assign_int
  module procedure index_map_assign_array
end interface

```

```

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
elemental subroutine index_map_assign_int (map, ival)
  type(index_map_t), intent(inout) :: map
  integer, intent(in) :: ival
  map%entry = ival
end subroutine index_map_assign_int

subroutine index_map_assign_array (map, array)
  type(index_map_t), intent(inout) :: map
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: array
  map%entry = array
end subroutine index_map_assign_array

```

```

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
elemental subroutine index_map_set_entry (map, i, ival)
  type(index_map_t), intent(inout) :: map
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  integer, intent(in) :: ival
  map%entry(i) = ival
end subroutine index_map_set_entry

```

```

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
elemental function index_map_get_entry (map, i) result (ival)
  integer :: ival
  type(index_map_t), intent(in) :: map
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  ival = map%entry(i)
end function index_map_get_entry

```

## Index mapping (two-dimensional)

This is a variant with a square matrix instead of an array.

```

(Evaluators: types)+≡
type :: index_map2_t

```

```

        integer :: s = 0
        integer, dimension(:, :), allocatable :: entry
    end type index_map2_t

    <Evaluators: procedures> +=
    elemental subroutine index_map2_init (map, n)
        type(index_map2_t), intent(out) :: map
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        map%s = n
        allocate (map%entry (n, n))
    end subroutine index_map2_init

    <Evaluators: procedures> +=
    function index_map2_exists (map) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(index_map2_t), intent(in) :: map
        flag = allocated (map%entry)
    end function index_map2_exists

    <Evaluators: interfaces> +=
    interface size
        module procedure index_map2_size
    end interface

    <Evaluators: procedures> +=
    function index_map2_size (map) result (s)
        integer :: s
        type(index_map2_t), intent(in) :: map
        s = map%s
    end function index_map2_size

    <Evaluators: interfaces> +=
    interface assignment(=)
        module procedure index_map2_assign_int
    end interface

    <Evaluators: procedures> +=
    elemental subroutine index_map2_assign_int (map, ival)
        type(index_map2_t), intent(inout) :: map
        integer, intent(in) :: ival
        map%entry = ival
    end subroutine index_map2_assign_int

    <Evaluators: procedures> +=
    elemental subroutine index_map2_set_entry (map, i, j, ival)
        type(index_map2_t), intent(inout) :: map
        integer, intent(in) :: i, j
        integer, intent(in) :: ival
        map%entry(i,j) = ival
    end subroutine index_map2_set_entry

```

```

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  elemental function index_map2_get_entry (map, i, j) result (ival)
    integer :: ival
    type(index_map2_t), intent(in) :: map
    integer, intent(in) :: i, j
    ival = map%entry(i,j)
  end function index_map2_get_entry

```

### Auxiliary structures: particle mask

This is a simple container of a logical array.

```

<Evaluators: types>+≡
  type :: prt_mask_t
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
  end type prt_mask_t

```

```

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prt_mask_init (mask, n)
    type(prt_mask_t), intent(out) :: mask
    integer, intent(in) :: n
    allocate (mask%entry (n))
  end subroutine prt_mask_init

```

```

<Evaluators: interfaces>+≡
  interface size
    module procedure prt_mask_size
  end interface

```

```

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  function prt_mask_size (mask) result (s)
    integer :: s
    type(prt_mask_t), intent(in) :: mask
    s = size (mask%entry)
  end function prt_mask_size

```

### Quantum number containers

Trivial transparent containers:

```

<Evaluators: types>+≡
  type :: qn_list_t
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: qn
  end type qn_list_t

  type :: qn_mask_array_t
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
  end type qn_mask_array_t

```



### Auxiliary structures: connection entries

This type is used as intermediate storage when computing the product of two evaluators or the square of an evaluator. The quantum-number array **qn** corresponds to the particles common to both interactions, but irrelevant quantum numbers (color) masked out. The index arrays **index\_in** determine the entries in the input interactions that contribute to this connection. **n\_index** is the size of these arrays, and **count** is used while filling the entries. Finally, the quantum-number arrays **qn\_in\_list** are the actual entries in the input interaction that contribute. In the product case, they exclude the connected quantum numbers.

Each evaluator has its own **connection\_table** which contains an array of **connection\_entry** objects, but also has stuff that specifically applies to the evaluator type. Hence, we do not generalize the **connection\_table\_t** type.

The filling procedure **connection\_entry\_add\_state** is specific to the various evaluator types.

*(Evaluators: types)+≡*

```
type :: connection_entry_t
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_conn
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_index
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: count
  type(index_map_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: index_in
  type(qn_list_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_in_list
end type connection_entry_t
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine connection_entry_init &
  (entry, n_count, n_map, qn_conn, count, n_rest)
  type(connection_entry_t), intent(out) :: entry
  integer, intent(in) :: n_count, n_map
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_conn
  integer, dimension(n_count), intent(in) :: count
  integer, dimension(n_count), intent(in) :: n_rest
  integer :: i
  allocate (entry%qn_conn (size (qn_conn)))
  allocate (entry%n_index (n_count))
  allocate (entry%count (n_count))
  allocate (entry%index_in (n_map))
  allocate (entry%qn_in_list (n_count))
  entry%qn_conn = qn_conn
  entry%n_index = count
  entry%count = 0
  if (size (entry%index_in) == size (count)) then
    call index_map_init (entry%index_in, count)
  else
    call index_map_init (entry%index_in, count(1))
  end if
  do i = 1, n_count
    allocate (entry%qn_in_list(i)%qn (n_rest(i), count(i)))
  end do
end subroutine connection_entry_init
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine connection_entry_write (entry, unit)
  type(connection_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i, j
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  call quantum_numbers_write (entry%qn_conn, unit)
  write (u, *)
  do i = 1, size (entry%n_index)
    write (u, *) "Input interaction", i
    do j = 1, entry%n_index(i)
      if (size (entry%n_index) == size (entry%index_in)) then
        write (u, "(2x,I0,4x,I0,2x)", advance = "no") &
          j, index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(i), j)
      else
        write (u, "(2x,I0,4x,I0,2x,I0,2x)", advance = "no") &
          j, index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), j), &
            index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(2), j)
      end if
      call quantum_numbers_write (entry%qn_in_list(i)%qn(:,j), unit)
      write (u, *)
    end do
  end do
end subroutine connection_entry_write

```

## Color handling

For managing color-factor computation, we introduce this local type. The `index` is the index in the color table that corresponds to a given matrix element index in the input interaction. The `col` array stores the color assignments in rows. The `factor` array associates a complex number with each pair of arrays in the color table. The `factor_is_known` array reveals whether a given factor is known already or still has to be computed.

```

(Evaluators: types)+≡
  type :: color_table_t
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: index
    type(color_t), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: col
    logical, dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: factor_is_known
    complex(default), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: factor
  end type color_table_t

```

This is the initializer. We extract the color states from the given state matrices, establish index mappings between the two states (implemented by the array `me_index`), make an array of color states, and initialize the color-factor table. The latter is two-dimensional (includes interference) and not yet filled.

```

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
  subroutine color_table_init (color_table, state, n_tot)
    type(color_table_t), intent(out) :: color_table
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  end subroutine color_table_init

```

```

type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
type(state_matrix_t) :: state_col
integer :: index, n_col_state
allocate (color_table%index &
         (state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state)))
color_table%index = 0
allocate (qn (n_tot))
call state_matrix_init (state_col)
call state_iterator_init (it, state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    index = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn, col = state_iterator_get_color (it))
    call state_matrix_add_state (state_col, qn, &
                                me_index = color_table%index(index))
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
n_col_state = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state_col)
allocate (color_table%col (n_tot, n_col_state))
call state_iterator_init (it, state_col)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    index = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    color_table%col(:,index) = state_iterator_get_color (it)
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
call state_matrix_final (state_col)
allocate (color_table%factor_is_known (n_col_state, n_col_state))
allocate (color_table%factor (n_col_state, n_col_state))
color_table%factor_is_known = .false.
end subroutine color_table_init

```

Output (debugging use):

(*Evaluators: procedures*)+≡

```

subroutine color_table_write (color_table, unit)
type(color_table_t), intent(in) :: color_table
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: i, j
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit)
write (u, *) "Color table:"
if (allocated (color_table%index)) then
    write (u, *) "  Index mapping state => color table:"
    do i = 1, size (color_table%index)
        write (u, "(3x,I0,2x,I0,2x)") i, color_table%index(i)
    end do
    write (u, *) "  Color table:"
    do i = 1, size (color_table%col, 2)
        write (u, "(3x,I0,2x)", advance = "no") i
        call color_write (color_table%col(:,i), unit)
        write (u, *)
    end do
    write (u, *) "  Defined color factors:"
    do i = 1, size (color_table%factor, 1)
        do j = 1, size (color_table%factor, 2)
            if (color_table%factor_is_known(i,j)) then

```

```

        write (u, *) i, j, color_table%factor(i,j)
    end if
end do
end do
end if
end subroutine color_table_write

```

This subroutine sets color factors, based on information from the hard matrix element: the list of pairs of color-flow indices (in the basis of the matrix element code), the list of corresponding factors, and the list of mappings from the matrix element index in the input interaction to the color-flow index in the hard matrix element object.

We first determine the mapping of color-flow indices from the hard matrix element code to the current color table. The mapping could be nontrivial because the latter is derived from iterating over a state matrix, which may return states in non-canonical order. The translation table can be determined because we have, for the complete state matrix, both the mapping to the hard interaction (the input `col_index_hi`) and the mapping to the current color table (the component `color_table%index`).

Once this mapping is known, we scan the list of index pairs `color_flow_index` and translate them to valid color-table index pairs. For this pair, the color factor is set using the corresponding entry in the list `col_factor`.

(*Evaluators: procedures*)+≡

```

subroutine color_table_set_color_factors (color_table, &
    col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi)
    type(color_table_t), intent(inout) :: color_table
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: col_flow_index
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: col_factor
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: col_index_hi
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: hi_to_ct
    integer :: n_cflow
    integer :: hi_index, me_index, ct_index, cf_index
    integer, dimension(2) :: hi_index_pair, ct_index_pair
    n_cflow = size (col_index_hi)
    if (size (color_table%index) /= n_cflow) &
        call msg_bug ("Mismatch between hard matrix element and color table")
    allocate (hi_to_ct (n_cflow))
    do me_index = 1, size (color_table%index)
        ct_index = color_table%index(me_index)
        hi_index = col_index_hi(me_index)
        hi_to_ct(hi_index) = ct_index
    end do
    do cf_index = 1, size (col_flow_index, 2)
        hi_index_pair = col_flow_index(:,cf_index)
        ct_index_pair = hi_to_ct(hi_index_pair)
        color_table%factor(ct_index_pair(1), ct_index_pair(2)) = &
            col_factor(cf_index)
        color_table%factor_is_known(ct_index_pair(1), ct_index_pair(2)) = .true.
    end do
end subroutine color_table_set_color_factors

```

This function returns a color factor, given two indices which point to the matrix

elements of the initial state matrix. Internally, we can map them to the corresponding indices in the color table. As a side effect, we store the color factor in the color table for later lookup. (I.e., this function is impure.)

```
(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
function color_table_get_color_factor (color_table, index1, index2, nc) &
  result (factor)
  real(default) :: factor
  type(color_table_t), intent(inout) :: color_table
  integer, intent(in) :: index1, index2
  integer, intent(in), optional :: nc
  integer :: i1, i2
  ! print *, "compute color factor ", index1, index2    !!! Debugging
  i1 = color_table%index(index1)
  i2 = color_table%index(index2)
  ! print *, "  indices = ", i1, i2                    !!! Debugging
  if (color_table%factor_is_known(i1,i2)) then
    factor = color_table%factor(i1,i2)
    ! print *, "    is known : ", factor                !!! Debugging
  else
    factor = compute_color_factor &
      (color_table%col(:,i1), color_table%col(:,i2), nc)
    color_table%factor(i1,i2) = factor
    color_table%factor_is_known(i1,i2) = .true.
    ! print *, "    computed : ", factor                !!! Debugging
  end if
end function color_table_get_color_factor
```

#### 7.7.4 Creating an evaluator: Matrix multiplication

The evaluator for matrix multiplication is the most complicated variant.

The initializer takes two input interactions and constructs the result evaluator, which consists of the interaction and the multiplication table for the product (or convolution) of the two. Normally, the input interactions are connected by one or more common particles (e.g., decay, structure function convolution).

In the result interaction, quantum numbers of the connections can be summed over. This is determined by the `qn_mask_conn` argument. The `qn_mask_rest` argument is its analog for the other particles within the result interaction. (E.g., for the trace of the state matrix, all quantum numbers are summed over.) Finally, the `connections_are_resonant` argument tells whether the connecting particles should be marked as resonant in the final event record. This is useful for decays.

The algorithm consists of the following steps:

1. **find\_connections**: Find the particles which are connected, i.e., common to both input interactions. Either they are directly linked, or both are linked to a common source.
2. **compute\_index\_bounds\_and\_mappings**: Compute the mappings of particle indices from the input interactions to the result interaction. There is a separate mapping for the connected particles.

3. **accumulate\_connected\_states**: Create an auxiliary state matrix which lists the possible quantum numbers for the connected particles. When building this matrix, count the number of times each assignment is contained in any of the input states and, for each of the input states, record the index of the matrix element within the new state matrix. For the connected particles, reassign color indices such that no color state is present twice in different color-index assignment. Note that helicity assignments of the connected state can be (and will be) off-diagonal, so no spin correlations are lost in decays.

Do this for both input interactions.

4. **allocate\_connection\_entries**: Allocate a table of connections. Each table row corresponds to one state in the auxiliary matrix, and to multiple states of the input interactions. It collects all states of the unconnected particles in the two input interactions that are associated with the particular state (quantum-number assignment) of the connected particles.
5. **fill\_connection\_table**: Fill the table of connections by scanning both input interactions. When copying states, reassign color indices for the unconnected particles such that they match between all involved particle sets (interaction 1, interaction 2, and connected particles).
6. **make\_product\_interaction**: Scan the table of connections we have just built. For each entry, construct all possible pairs of states of the unconnected particles and combine them with the specific connected-particle state. This is a possible quantum-number assignment of the result interaction. Now mask all quantum numbers that should be summed over, and append this to the result state matrix. Record the matrix element index of the result. We now have the result interaction.
7. **make\_pairing\_array**: First allocate the pairing array with the number of entries of the result interaction. Then scan the table of connections again. For each entry, record the indices of the matrix elements which have to be multiplied and summed over in order to compute this particular matrix element. This makes up the multiplication table.
8. **record\_links**: Transfer all source pointers from the input interactions to the result interaction. Do the same for the internal parent-child relations and resonance assignments. For the connected particles, make up appropriate additional parent-child relations. This allows for fetching momenta from other interactions when a new event is filled, and to reconstruct the event history when the event is analyzed.

After all this is done, for each event, we just have to evaluate the pairing arrays (multiplication tables) in order to compute the result matrix elements in their proper positions. The quantum-number assignments remain fixed from now on.

```
(Evaluators: public)+≡
public :: evaluator_init_product
```

```

(Evaluators: interfaces)+≡
interface evaluator_init_product
  module procedure evaluator_init_product_ii
  module procedure evaluator_init_product_ie
  module procedure evaluator_init_product_ei
  module procedure evaluator_init_product_ee
end interface

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
subroutine evaluator_init_product_ii &
  (eval, int_in1, int_in2, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
   connections_are_resonant)

  type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in1, int_in2
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in), optional :: qn_mask_rest
  logical, intent(in), optional :: connections_are_resonant

  type(qn_mask_array_t), dimension(2) :: qn_mask_in

  type :: connection_table_t
    integer :: n_conn = 0
    integer, dimension(2) :: n_rest = 0
    integer :: n_tot = 0
    integer :: n_me_conn = 0
    type(state_matrix_t) :: state
    type(index_map_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: index_conn
    type(connection_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
    type(index_map_t) :: index_result
  end type connection_table_t
  type(connection_table_t) :: connection_table

  integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
  integer, dimension(2) :: n_rest
  integer :: n_conn

  integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: connection_index
  type(index_map_t), dimension(2) :: prt_map_in
  type(index_map_t) :: prt_map_conn
  type(prt_mask_t), dimension(2) :: prt_is_connected
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
    qn_mask_conn_initial

  integer :: i

  eval%type = EVAL_PRODUCT
  eval%int_in1 => int_in1
  eval%int_in2 => int_in2
  ! print *, "Evaluator product"          !!! Debugging
  ! print *, "First interaction"         !!! Debugging
  ! call interaction_write (int_in1)      !!! Debugging
  ! print *                               !!! Debugging
  ! print *, "Second interaction"         !!! Debugging

```

```

! call interaction_write (int_in2)      !!! Debugging
! print *                             !!! Debugging

call find_connections (int_in1, int_in2, n_conn, connection_index)
if (n_conn == 0) then
  call msg_message ("First interaction:")
  call interaction_write (int_in1)
  call msg_message ("Second interaction:")
  call interaction_write (int_in2)
  call msg_fatal ("Evaluator product: no connections found between factors")
end if
call compute_index_bounds_and_mappings &
  (int_in1, int_in2, n_conn, &
   n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
   n_rest, prt_map_in, prt_map_conn)

call prt_mask_init (prt_is_connected(1), interaction_get_n_tot (int_in1))
call prt_mask_init (prt_is_connected(2), interaction_get_n_tot (int_in2))
do i = 1, 2
  prt_is_connected(i)%entry = .true.
  prt_is_connected(i)%entry(connection_index(:,i)) = .false.
end do
allocate (qn_mask_conn_initial (n_conn))
qn_mask_conn_initial = &
  interaction_get_mask (int_in1, connection_index(:,1)) .or. &
  interaction_get_mask (int_in2, connection_index(:,2))
allocate (qn_mask_in(1)%mask (interaction_get_n_tot (int_in1)))
allocate (qn_mask_in(2)%mask (interaction_get_n_tot (int_in2)))
qn_mask_in(1)%mask = interaction_get_mask (int_in1)
qn_mask_in(2)%mask = interaction_get_mask (int_in2)

call connection_table_init (connection_table, &
  interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in1), &
  interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in2), &
  qn_mask_conn_initial, &
  n_conn, connection_index, n_rest)
call connection_table_fill (connection_table, &
  interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in1), &
  interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in2), &
  connection_index, prt_is_connected)
call make_product_interaction (eval%int, &
  n_in, n_vir, n_out, &
  connection_table, &
  prt_map_in, prt_is_connected, &
  qn_mask_in, qn_mask_conn_initial, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest)
! call connection_table_write (connection_table)      !!! Debugging
call make_pairing_array (eval%pairing_array, &
  interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int), &
  connection_table)
call record_links (eval%int, &
  int_in1, int_in2, connection_index, prt_map_in, prt_map_conn, &
  prt_is_connected, connections_are_resonant)
call connection_table_final (connection_table)

```



```

! print *, "Result evaluator"                !!! Debugging
! call evaluator_write (eval)                !!! Debugging

if (interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int) == 0) then
  print *, "Evaluator product"
  print *, "First interaction"
  call interaction_write (int_in1)
  print *
  print *, "Second interaction"
  call interaction_write (int_in2)
  print *
  call msg_fatal ("Product of density matrices is empty", &
    [var_str (" -----"), &
    var_str ("This happens when two density matrices are convoluted "), &
    var_str ("but the processes they belong to (e.g., production "), &
    var_str ("and decay) do not match. This could happen if the "), &
    var_str ("beam specification does not match the hard "), &
    var_str ("process. Or it may indicate a WHIZARD bug.")])
end if

contains

subroutine compute_index_bounds_and_mappings &
  (int1, int2, n_conn, &
   n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
   n_rest, prt_map_in, prt_map_conn)
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int1, int2
  integer, intent(in) :: n_conn
  integer, intent(out) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
  integer, dimension(2), intent(out) :: n_rest
  type(index_map_t), dimension(2), intent(out) :: prt_map_in
  type(index_map_t), intent(out) :: prt_map_conn
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: index
  integer :: n_in1, n_vir1, n_out1
  integer :: n_in2, n_vir2, n_out2
  integer :: k
  n_in1 = interaction_get_n_in (int1)
  n_vir1 = interaction_get_n_vir (int1)
  n_out1 = interaction_get_n_out (int1) - n_conn
  n_rest(1) = n_in1 + n_vir1 + n_out1
  n_in2 = interaction_get_n_in (int2) - n_conn
  n_vir2 = interaction_get_n_vir (int2)
  n_out2 = interaction_get_n_out (int2)
  n_rest(2) = n_in2 + n_vir2 + n_out2
  n_in = n_in1 + n_in2
  n_vir = n_vir1 + n_vir2 + n_conn
  n_out = n_out1 + n_out2
  n_tot = n_in + n_vir + n_out
  call index_map_init (prt_map_in, n_rest)
  call index_map_init (prt_map_conn, n_conn)
  allocate (index (n_tot))
  index = (/ (i, i = 1, n_tot) /)
  prt_map_in(1)%entry(1 : n_in1) = index( 1 : n_in1)
  k = n_in1

```

```

prt_map_in(2)%entry(1 : n_in2) = index(k+1 : k+n_in2)
k = k + n_in2
prt_map_in(1)%entry(n_in1+1 : n_in1+n_vir1) = index(k+1 : k+n_vir1)
k = k + n_vir1
prt_map_in(2)%entry(n_in2+1 : n_in2+n_vir2) = index(k+1 : k+n_vir2)
k = k + n_vir2
prt_map_conn%entry = index(k+1 : k+n_conn)
k = k + n_conn
prt_map_in(1)%entry(n_in1+n_vir1+1 : n_rest(1)) = index(k+1 : k+n_out1)
k = k + n_out1
prt_map_in(2)%entry(n_in2+n_vir2+1 : n_rest(2)) = index(k+1 : k+n_out2)
end subroutine compute_index_bounds_and_mappings

subroutine connection_table_init &
  (connection_table, state_in1, state_in2, qn_mask_conn, &
   n_conn, connection_index, n_rest)
  type(connection_table_t), intent(out) :: connection_table
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state_in1, state_in2
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn
  integer, intent(in) :: n_conn
  integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: connection_index
  integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: n_rest
  integer, dimension(2) :: n_me_in
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_conn) :: qn
  integer :: i, me_index_in, me_index_conn, n_me_conn
  integer, dimension(2) :: me_count
  connection_table%n_conn = n_conn
  connection_table%n_rest = n_rest
  n_me_in(1) = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state_in1)
  n_me_in(2) = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state_in2)
  allocate (connection_table%index_conn (2))
  call index_map_init (connection_table%index_conn, n_me_in)
  connection_table%index_conn = 0
  call state_matrix_init (connection_table%state, n_counters=2)
  do i = 1, 2
    select case (i)
    case (1); call state_iterator_init (it, state_in1)
    case (2); call state_iterator_init (it, state_in2)
    end select
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it, connection_index(:,i))
      call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, qn_mask_conn)
      call quantum_numbers_canonicalize_color (qn)
      me_index_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
      call state_matrix_add_state (connection_table%state, qn, &
        counter_index = i, me_index = me_index_conn)
      call index_map_set_entry (connection_table%index_conn(i), &
        me_index_in, me_index_conn)
      call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
  end do
  n_me_conn = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (connection_table%state)
  connection_table%n_me_conn = n_me_conn

```

```

allocate (connection_table%entry (n_me_conn))
call state_iterator_init (it, connection_table%state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    me_count = state_iterator_get_me_count (it)
    call connection_entry_init (connection_table%entry(i), 2, 2, &
        state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), &
        me_count, n_rest)
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
end subroutine connection_table_init

subroutine connection_table_final (connection_table)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(inout) :: connection_table
    call state_matrix_final (connection_table%state)
end subroutine connection_table_final

subroutine connection_table_write (connection_table, unit)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(in) :: connection_table
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: i, j
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, *) "Connection table:"
    call state_matrix_write (connection_table%state, unit)
    if (allocated (connection_table%index_conn)) then
        write (u, *) " Index mapping input => connection table:"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_conn)
            write (u, *) " Input state", i
            do j = 1, size (connection_table%index_conn(i))
                write (u, *) j, &
                    index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_conn(i), j)
            end do
        end do
    end if
    if (allocated (connection_table%entry)) then
        write (u, *) " Connection table contents:"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
            call connection_entry_write (connection_table%entry(i), unit)
        end do
    end if
    if (index_map_exists (connection_table%index_result)) then
        write (u, *) " Index mapping connection table => output:"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
            write (u, *) i, &
                index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, i)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine connection_table_write

subroutine connection_table_fill &
    (connection_table, state_in1, state_in2, &
    connection_index, prt_is_connected)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(inout) :: connection_table

```

```

type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state_in1, state_in2
integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: connection_index
type(prt_mask_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: prt_is_connected
type(state_iterator_t) :: it
integer :: index_in, index_conn
integer :: color_offset
integer :: n_result_entries
integer :: i, k
color_offset = state_matrix_get_max_color_value (connection_table%state)
do i = 1, 2
  select case (i)
    case (1); call state_iterator_init (it, state_in1)
    case (2); call state_iterator_init (it, state_in2)
  end select
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    index_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    index_conn = index_map_get_entry &
      (connection_table%index_conn(i), index_in)
    if (index_conn /= 0) then
      call connection_entry_add_state &
        (connection_table%entry(index_conn), i, &
          index_in, &
          state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), &
          connection_index(:,i), prt_is_connected(i), &
          color_offset)
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
  color_offset = color_offset &
    + state_matrix_get_max_color_value (state_in1)
end do
n_result_entries = 0
do k = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
  n_result_entries = &
    n_result_entries + product (connection_table%entry(k)%n_index)
end do
call index_map_init (connection_table%index_result, n_result_entries)
end subroutine connection_table_fill

subroutine connection_entry_add_state &
  (entry, i, index_in, qn_in, connection_index, prt_is_connected, &
    color_offset)
type(connection_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
integer, intent(in) :: i
integer, intent(in) :: index_in
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_in
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: connection_index
type(prt_mask_t), intent(in) :: prt_is_connected
integer, intent(in) :: color_offset
integer :: c
integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: color_map
entry%count(i) = entry%count(i) + 1
c = entry%count(i)
call quantum_numbers_set_color_map &

```

```

        (color_map, qn_in(connection_index), entry%qn_conn)
    call index_map_set_entry (entry%index_in(i), c, index_in)
    entry%qn_in_list(i)%qn(:,c) = pack (qn_in, prt_is_connected%entry)
    call quantum_numbers_translate_color &
        (entry%qn_in_list(i)%qn(:,c), color_map, color_offset)
end subroutine connection_entry_add_state

subroutine make_product_interaction (int, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, &
    connection_table, &
    prt_map_in, prt_is_connected, &
    qn_mask_in, qn_mask_conn_initial, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest)
type(interaction_t), intent(out), target :: int
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out
type(connection_table_t), intent(inout), target :: connection_table
type(index_map_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: prt_map_in
type(prt_mask_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: prt_is_connected
type(qn_mask_array_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: &
    qn_mask_conn_initial
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in), optional :: qn_mask_rest
type(index_map_t), dimension(2) :: prt_index_in
type(index_map_t) :: prt_index_conn
integer :: n_tot, n_conn
integer, dimension(2) :: n_rest
integer :: i, j, k, m
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
integer :: result_index
n_conn = connection_table%n_conn
n_rest = connection_table%n_rest
n_tot = sum (n_rest) + n_conn
allocate (qn (n_tot), qn_mask (n_tot))
do i = 1, 2
    call index_map_init (prt_index_in(i), n_rest(i))
    prt_index_in(i) = &
        prt_map_in(i)%entry ((/ (j, j = 1, n_rest(i)) /))
end do
call index_map_init (prt_index_conn, n_conn)
prt_index_conn = prt_map_conn%entry ((/ (j, j = 1, n_conn) /))
do i = 1, 2
    if (present (qn_mask_rest)) then
        qn_mask(prt_index_in(i)%entry) = &
            pack (qn_mask_in(i)%mask, prt_is_connected(i)%entry) &
            .or. qn_mask_rest
    else
        qn_mask(prt_index_in(i)%entry) = &
            pack (qn_mask_in(i)%mask, prt_is_connected(i)%entry)
    end if
end do
qn_mask(prt_index_conn%entry) = qn_mask_conn_initial .or. qn_mask_conn
call interaction_init (eval%int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, mask=qn_mask)

```

```

m = 1
do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
  entry => connection_table%entry(i)
  qn(prt_index_conn%entry) = &
    quantum_numbers_undefined (entry%qn_conn, qn_mask_conn)
  do j = 1, entry%n_index(1)
    qn(prt_index_in(1)%entry) = entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:,j)
    do k = 1, entry%n_index(2)
      qn(prt_index_in(2)%entry) = entry%qn_in_list(2)%qn(:,k)
      call interaction_add_state (int, qn, me_index = result_index)
      call index_map_set_entry &
        (connection_table%index_result, m, result_index)
      m = m + 1
    end do
  end do
end do
call interaction_freeze (int)
end subroutine make_product_interaction

subroutine make_pairing_array (pa, n_matrix_elements, connection_table)
  type(pairing_array_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: pa
  integer, intent(in) :: n_matrix_elements
  type(connection_table_t), intent(in), target :: connection_table
  type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entries
  integer :: i, j, k, m, r
  allocate (pa (n_matrix_elements))
  allocate (n_entries (n_matrix_elements))
  n_entries = 0
  do m = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
    r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
    n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
  end do
  call pairing_array_init &
    (pa, n_entries, has_i2=.true., has_factor=.false.)
  m = 1
  n_entries = 0
  do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
    entry => connection_table%entry(i)
    do j = 1, entry%n_index(1)
      do k = 1, entry%n_index(2)
        r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
        n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
        pa(r)%i1(n_entries(r)) = &
          index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), j)
        pa(r)%i2(n_entries(r)) = &
          index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(2), k)
        m = m + 1
      end do
    end do
  end do
end subroutine make_pairing_array

subroutine record_links (int, &

```

```

        int_in1, int_in2, connection_index, prt_map_in, prt_map_conn, &
        prt_is_connected, connections_are_resonant)
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in1, int_in2
integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: connection_index
type(index_map_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: prt_map_in
type(index_map_t), intent(in) :: prt_map_conn
type(prt_mask_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: prt_is_connected
logical, intent(in), optional :: connections_are_resonant
type(index_map_t), dimension(2) :: prt_map_all
integer :: i, j, k, ival
call index_map_init (prt_map_all(1), size (prt_is_connected(1)))
k = 0
j = 0
do i = 1, size (prt_is_connected(1))
    if (prt_is_connected(1)%entry(i)) then
        j = j + 1
        ival = index_map_get_entry (prt_map_in(1), j)
        call index_map_set_entry (prt_map_all(1), i, ival)
    else
        k = k + 1
        ival = index_map_get_entry (prt_map_conn, k)
        call index_map_set_entry (prt_map_all(1), i, ival)
    end if
    call interaction_set_source_link (int, ival, int_in1, i)
end do
call interaction_transfer_relations (int_in1, int, prt_map_all(1)%entry)
call index_map_init (prt_map_all(2), size (prt_is_connected(2)))
j = 0
do i = 1, size (prt_is_connected(2))
    if (prt_is_connected(2)%entry(i)) then
        j = j + 1
        ival = index_map_get_entry (prt_map_in(2), j)
        call index_map_set_entry (prt_map_all(2), i, ival)
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, ival, int_in2, i)
    else
        call index_map_set_entry (prt_map_all(2), i, 0)
    end if
end do
call interaction_transfer_relations (int_in2, int, prt_map_all(2)%entry)
call interaction_relate_connections (int, &
    int_in2, connection_index(:,2), prt_map_all(2)%entry, &
    prt_map_conn%entry, connections_are_resonant)
end subroutine record_links

end subroutine evaluator_init_product_ii

subroutine evaluator_init_product_ie &
    (eval, int_in1, eval_in2, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
    connections_are_resonant)
type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in1
type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval_in2
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn

```

```

    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in), optional :: qn_mask_rest
    logical, intent(in), optional :: connections_are_resonant
    call evaluator_init_product_ii &
        (eval, int_in1, eval_in2%int, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
         connections_are_resonant)
end subroutine evaluator_init_product_ie

subroutine evaluator_init_product_ei &
    (eval, eval_in1, int_in2, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
     connections_are_resonant)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval_in1
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in2
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in), optional :: qn_mask_rest
    logical, intent(in), optional :: connections_are_resonant
    call evaluator_init_product_ii &
        (eval, eval_in1%int, int_in2, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
         connections_are_resonant)
end subroutine evaluator_init_product_ei

subroutine evaluator_init_product_ee &
    (eval, eval_in1, eval_in2, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
     connections_are_resonant)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval_in1, eval_in2
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in) :: qn_mask_conn
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), intent(in), optional :: qn_mask_rest
    logical, intent(in), optional :: connections_are_resonant
    call evaluator_init_product_ii &
        (eval, eval_in1%int, eval_in2%int, qn_mask_conn, qn_mask_rest, &
         connections_are_resonant)
end subroutine evaluator_init_product_ee

```

### 7.7.5 Creating an evaluator: square

The generic initializer for an evaluator that squares a matrix element. Depending on the provided mask, we select the appropriate specific initializer for either diagonal or non-diagonal helicity density matrices.

*(Evaluators: public)* +=

```
public :: evaluator_init_square
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine evaluator_init_square (eval, int_in, qn_mask, &
    col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi, expand_color_flows, nc)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in), optional :: col_flow_index
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_factor
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_index_hi
    logical, intent(in), optional :: expand_color_flows
    integer, intent(in), optional :: nc

```



```

    if (all (quantum_numbers_mask_diagonal_helicity (qn_mask))) then
        call evaluator_init_square_diag (eval, int_in, qn_mask, &
            col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi, expand_color_flows, nc)
    else
        call evaluator_init_square_nondiag (eval, int_in, qn_mask, &
            col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi, expand_color_flows, nc)
    end if
end subroutine evaluator_init_square

```

### Color-summed squared matrix (diagonal helicities)

The initializer for an evaluator that squares a matrix element, including color factors. The mask must be such that off-diagonal matrix elements are excluded.

If `color_flows` is set, the evaluator keeps color-flow entries separate and drops all interfering color structures. The color factors are set to unity in this case.

There is only one input interaction. The quantum-number mask is an array, one entry for each particle, so they can be treated individually. For academic purposes, we allow for the number of colors being different from three (but 3 is the default).

The algorithm is analogous to multiplication, with a few notable differences:

1. The connected particles are known, the correspondence is one-to-one. All particles are connected, and the mapping of indices is trivial, which simplifies the following steps.
2. `accumulate_connected_states`: The matrix of connected states encompasses all particles, but color indices are removed. However, ghost states are still kept separate from physical color states. No color-index reassignment is necessary.
3. The table of connections contains single index and quantum-number arrays instead of pairs of them. They are paired with themselves in all possible ways.
4. `make_squared_interaction`: Now apply the predefined quantum-numbers mask, which usually collects all color states (physical and ghosts), and possibly a helicity sum.
5. `make_pairing_array`: For each pair of input states, compute the color factor (including a potential ghost-parity sign) and store this in the pairing array together with the matrix-element indices for multiplication.
6. `record_links`: This is again trivial due to the one-to-one correspondence.

*(Evaluators: public)+≡*

```
public :: evaluator_init_square_diag
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine evaluator_init_square_diag (eval, int_in, qn_mask, &
    col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi, expand_color_flows, nc)
```

```
type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
```

```

type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in), optional :: col_flow_index
complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_factor
integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_index_hi
logical, intent(in), optional :: expand_color_flows
integer, intent(in), optional :: nc

integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask_initial

type :: connection_table_t
  integer :: n_tot = 0
  integer :: n_me_conn = 0
  type(state_matrix_t) :: state
  type(index_map_t) :: index_conn
  type(connection_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
  type(index_map_t) :: index_result
end type connection_table_t
type(connection_table_t) :: connection_table

logical :: sum_colors
type(color_table_t) :: color_table

if (present (expand_color_flows)) then
  sum_colors = .not. expand_color_flows
else
  sum_colors = .true.
end if

if (sum_colors) then
  eval%type = EVAL_SQUARE_WITH_COLOR_FACTORS
else
  eval%type = EVAL_SQUARED_FLOWS
end if
eval%int_in1 => int_in

! print *, "Interaction square with color factors (diag)" !!! Debugging
! print *, "Input interaction" !!! Debugging
! call interaction_write (int_in) !!! Debugging

n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_in)
n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int_in)
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int_in)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int_in)

allocate (qn_mask_initial (n_tot))
qn_mask_initial = interaction_get_mask (int_in)
call quantum_numbers_mask_set_color &
  (qn_mask_initial, sum_colors, mask_cg=.false.)
if (sum_colors) then
  call color_table_init &
    (color_table, interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in), n_tot)
  if (present (col_flow_index) .and. present (col_factor) &

```

```

        .and. present (col_index_hi)) then
        call color_table_set_color_factors &
            (color_table, col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi)
    end if
    ! call color_table_write (color_table)      !!! Debugging
end if

call connection_table_init (connection_table, &
    interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in), &
    qn_mask_initial, qn_mask, n_tot)
call connection_table_fill (connection_table, &
    interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in))
call make_squared_interaction (eval%int, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
    connection_table, sum_colors, qn_mask_initial .or. qn_mask)
call make_pairing_array (eval%pairing_array, &
    interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int), &
    connection_table, sum_colors, color_table, n_in, n_tot, nc)
call record_links (eval%int, int_in, n_tot)
call connection_table_final (connection_table)
! print *, "Result evaluator:"      !!! Debugging
! call evaluator_write (eval)      !!! Debugging

contains

subroutine connection_table_init &
    (connection_table, state_in, qn_mask_in, qn_mask, n_tot)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(out) :: connection_table
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state_in
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
    integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_tot) :: qn
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    integer :: i, n_me_in, me_index_in
    integer :: me_index_conn, n_me_conn
    integer, dimension(1) :: me_count
    connection_table%n_tot = n_tot
    n_me_in = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state_in)
    call index_map_init (connection_table%index_conn, n_me_in)
    connection_table%index_conn = 0
    call state_matrix_init (connection_table%state, n_counters=1)
    call state_iterator_init (it, state_in)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
        qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
        if (all (quantum_numbers_are_physical (qn, qn_mask))) then
            call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, qn_mask_in)
            me_index_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
            call state_matrix_add_state (connection_table%state, qn, &
                counter_index = 1, me_index = me_index_conn)
            call index_map_set_entry (connection_table%index_conn, &
                me_index_in, me_index_conn)
        end if
        call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
end subroutine connection_table_init

```

```

end do
n_me_conn = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (connection_table%state)
connection_table%n_me_conn = n_me_conn
allocate (connection_table%entry (n_me_conn))
call state_iterator_init (it, connection_table%state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
  i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
  me_count = state_iterator_get_me_count (it)
  call connection_entry_init (connection_table%entry(i), 1, 2, &
    state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), me_count, (/n_tot/))
  call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
end subroutine connection_table_init

subroutine connection_table_final (connection_table)
  type(connection_table_t), intent(inout) :: connection_table
  call state_matrix_final (connection_table%state)
end subroutine connection_table_final

subroutine connection_table_write (connection_table, unit)
  type(connection_table_t), intent(in) :: connection_table
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, *) "Connection table:"
  call state_matrix_write (connection_table%state, unit)
  if (index_map_exists (connection_table%index_conn)) then
    write (u, *) "  Index mapping input => connection table:"
    do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_conn)
      write (u, *) i, &
        index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_conn, i)
    end do
  end if
  if (allocated (connection_table%entry)) then
    write (u, *) "  Connection table contents"
    do i = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
      call connection_entry_write (connection_table%entry(i), unit)
    end do
  end if
  if (index_map_exists (connection_table%index_result)) then
    write (u, *) "  Index mapping connection table => output"
    do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
      write (u, *) i, &
        index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, i)
    end do
  end if
end subroutine connection_table_write

subroutine connection_table_fill (connection_table, state)
  type(connection_table_t), intent(inout) :: connection_table
  type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
  integer :: index_in, index_conn, n_result_entries
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it

```

```

integer :: k
call state_iterator_init (it, state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    index_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    index_conn = &
        index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_conn, index_in)
    if (index_conn /= 0) then
        call connection_entry_add_state &
            (connection_table%entry(index_conn), &
                index_in, &
                state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it))
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
n_result_entries = 0
do k = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
    n_result_entries = &
        n_result_entries + connection_table%entry(k)%n_index(1) ** 2
end do
call index_map_init (connection_table%index_result, n_result_entries)
connection_table%index_result = 0
end subroutine connection_table_fill

subroutine connection_entry_add_state (entry, index_in, qn_in)
    type(connection_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: index_in
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_in
    integer :: c
    entry%count = entry%count + 1
    c = entry%count(1)
    call index_map_set_entry (entry%index_in(1), c, index_in)
    entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:,c) = qn_in
end subroutine connection_entry_add_state

subroutine make_squared_interaction (int, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
    connection_table, sum_colors, qn_mask)
    type(interaction_t), intent(out), target :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
    type(connection_table_t), intent(inout), target :: connection_table
    logical, intent(in) :: sum_colors
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
    type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    integer :: result_index, n_contrib
    integer :: i, m
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_tot) :: qn
    call interaction_init (eval%int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, mask=qn_mask)
    m = 0
    do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
        entry => connection_table%entry(i)
        qn = quantum_numbers_undefined (entry%qn_conn, qn_mask)
        if (.not. sum_colors) call quantum_numbers_invert_color (qn(1:n_in))
        call interaction_add_state (int, qn, me_index = result_index)
        n_contrib = entry%n_index(1) ** 2
    end do
end subroutine make_squared_interaction

```

```

        connection_table%index_result%entry(m+1:m+n_contrib) = result_index
        m = m + n_contrib
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (int)
end subroutine make_squared_interaction

subroutine make_pairing_array (pa, &
    n_matrix_elements, connection_table, sum_colors, color_table, &
    n_in, n_tot, nc)
    type(pairing_array_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: pa
    integer, intent(in) :: n_matrix_elements
    type(connection_table_t), intent(in), target :: connection_table
    logical, intent(in) :: sum_colors
    type(color_table_t), intent(inout) :: color_table
    type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_tot
    integer, intent(in), optional :: nc
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entries
    integer :: i, k, l, ks, ls, m, r
    integer :: color_multiplicity_in
    allocate (pa (n_matrix_elements))
    allocate (n_entries (n_matrix_elements))
    n_entries = 0
    do m = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
        r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
        n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
    end do
    call pairing_array_init &
        (pa, n_entries, has_i2 = sum_colors, has_factor = sum_colors)
    m = 1
    n_entries = 0
    do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
        entry => connection_table%entry(i)
        do k = 1, entry%n_index(1)
            if (sum_colors) then
                color_multiplicity_in = &
                    product (abs (quantum_numbers_get_color_type &
                        (entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:n_in, k))))
            end if
            do l = 1, entry%n_index(1)
                r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
                n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
                ks = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), k)
                ls = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), l)
                pa(r)%i1(n_entries(r)) = ks
                pa(r)%i2(n_entries(r)) = ls
                pa(r)%factor(n_entries(r)) = &
                    color_table_get_color_factor (color_table, ks, ls, nc) &
                    / color_multiplicity_in
                m = m + 1
            end do
        end do
    else
        r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
        n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
        ks = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), k)
    end if
end do

```

```

        pa(r)%i1(n_entries(r)) = ks
        m = m + 1
    end if
end do
end do
end subroutine make_pairing_array

subroutine record_links (int, int_in, n_tot)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
    integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
    integer, dimension(n_tot) :: map
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, n_tot
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, i, int_in, i)
    end do
    map = (/ (i, i = 1, n_tot) /)
    call interaction_transfer_relations (int_in, int, map)
end subroutine record_links

end subroutine evaluator_init_square_diag

```

### Color-summed squared matrix (support nodiagonal helicities)

The initializer for an evaluator that squares a matrix element, including color factors. Unless requested otherwise by the quantum-number mask, the result contains off-diagonal matrix elements. (The input interaction must be diagonal since it represents an amplitude, not a density matrix.)

There is only one input interaction. The quantum-number mask is an array, one entry for each particle, so they can be treated individually. For academic purposes, we allow for the number of colors being different from three (but 3 is the default).

The algorithm is analogous to the previous one, with some additional complications due to the necessity to loop over two helicity indices.

*(Evaluators: public)*+≡

```
public :: evaluator_init_square_nondiag
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine evaluator_init_square_nondiag (eval, int_in, qn_mask, &
    col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi, expand_color_flows, nc)
```

```

    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in), optional :: col_flow_index
    complex(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_factor
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: col_index_hi
    logical, intent(in), optional :: expand_color_flows
    integer, intent(in), optional :: nc

    integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask_initial

```

```

type :: connection_table_t
  integer :: n_tot = 0
  integer :: n_me_conn = 0
  type(state_matrix_t) :: state
  type(index_map2_t) :: index_conn
  type(connection_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
  type(index_map_t) :: index_result
end type connection_table_t
type(connection_table_t) :: connection_table

logical :: sum_colors
type(color_table_t) :: color_table

if (present (expand_color_flows)) then
  sum_colors = .not. expand_color_flows
else
  sum_colors = .true.
end if

if (sum_colors) then
  eval%type = EVAL_SQUARE_WITH_COLOR_FACTORS
else
  eval%type = EVAL_SQUARED_FLOWS
end if
eval%int_in1 => int_in

! print *, "Interaction square with color factors (nondiag)" !!! Debugging
! print *, "Input interaction" !!! Debugging
! call interaction_write (int_in) !!! Debugging
n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_in)
n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int_in)
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int_in)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int_in)

allocate (qn_mask_initial (n_tot))
qn_mask_initial = interaction_get_mask (int_in)
call quantum_numbers_mask_set_color &
  (qn_mask_initial, sum_colors, mask_cg=.false.)
if (sum_colors) then
  call color_table_init &
    (color_table, interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in), n_tot)
  if (present (col_flow_index) .and. present (col_factor) &
    .and. present (col_index_hi)) then
    call color_table_set_color_factors &
      (color_table, col_flow_index, col_factor, col_index_hi)
  end if
  ! call color_table_write (color_table) !!! Debugging
end if

call connection_table_init (connection_table, &
  interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in), &
  qn_mask_initial, qn_mask, n_tot)
call connection_table_fill (connection_table, &

```



```

        interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in))
call make_squared_interaction (eval%int, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
    connection_table, sum_colors, qn_mask_initial .or. qn_mask)
! call connection_table_write (connection_table)      !!! Debugging
call make_pairing_array (eval%pairing_array, &
    interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int), &
    connection_table, sum_colors, color_table, n_in, n_tot, nc)
call record_links (eval%int, int_in, n_tot)
call connection_table_final (connection_table)

! print *, "Result evaluator:"      !!! Debugging
! call evaluator_write (eval)      !!! Debugging

contains

subroutine connection_table_init &
    (connection_table, state_in, qn_mask_in, qn_mask, n_tot)
type(connection_table_t), intent(out) :: connection_table
type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state_in
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_tot) :: qn1, qn2, qn
type(state_iterator_t) :: it1, it2, it
integer :: i, n_me_in, me_index_in1, me_index_in2
integer :: me_index_conn, n_me_conn
integer, dimension(1) :: me_count
connection_table%n_tot = n_tot
n_me_in = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (state_in)
call index_map2_init (connection_table%index_conn, n_me_in)
connection_table%index_conn = 0
call state_matrix_init (connection_table%state, n_counters=1)
call state_iterator_init (it1, state_in)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it1))
    qn1 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it1)
    me_index_in1 = state_iterator_get_me_index (it1)
    call state_iterator_init (it2, state_in)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it2))
        qn2 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it2)
        if (all (quantum_numbers_are_compatible (qn1, qn2, qn_mask))) then
            qn = qn1 .merge. qn2
            call quantum_numbers_undefine (qn, qn_mask_in)
            me_index_in2 = state_iterator_get_me_index (it2)
            call state_matrix_add_state (connection_table%state, qn, &
                counter_index = 1, me_index = me_index_conn)
            call index_map2_set_entry (connection_table%index_conn, &
                me_index_in1, me_index_in2, me_index_conn)
        end if
        call state_iterator_advance (it2)
    end do
    call state_iterator_advance (it1)
end do
n_me_conn = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (connection_table%state)

```

```

connection_table%n_me_conn = n_me_conn
allocate (connection_table%entry (n_me_conn))
call state_iterator_init (it, connection_table%state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    me_count = state_iterator_get_me_count (it)
    call connection_entry_init (connection_table%entry(i), 1, 2, &
        state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), me_count, (/n_tot/))
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
end subroutine connection_table_init

subroutine connection_table_final (connection_table)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(inout) :: connection_table
    call state_matrix_final (connection_table%state)
end subroutine connection_table_final

subroutine connection_table_write (connection_table, unit)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(in) :: connection_table
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: i, j
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, *) "Connection table:"
    call state_matrix_write (connection_table%state, unit)
    if (index_map2_exists (connection_table%index_conn)) then
        write (u, *) "  Index mapping input => connection table:"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_conn)
            do j = 1, size (connection_table%index_conn)
                write (u, *)  i, j, &
                    index_map2_get_entry (connection_table%index_conn, i, j)
            end do
        end do
    end if
    if (allocated (connection_table%entry)) then
        write (u, *) "  Connection table contents"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
            call connection_entry_write (connection_table%entry(i), unit)
        end do
    end if
    if (index_map_exists (connection_table%index_result)) then
        write (u, *) "  Index mapping connection table => output"
        do i = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
            write (u, *)  i, &
                index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, i)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine connection_table_write

subroutine connection_table_fill (connection_table, state)
    type(connection_table_t), intent(inout), target :: connection_table
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
    integer :: index1_in, index2_in, index_conn, n_result_entries
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it1, it2

```

```

integer :: k
call state_iterator_init (it1, state)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it1))
  index1_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it1)
  call state_iterator_init (it2, state)
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it2))
    index2_in = state_iterator_get_me_index (it2)
    index_conn = index_map2_get_entry &
      (connection_table%index_conn, index1_in, index2_in)
    if (index_conn /= 0) then
      call connection_entry_add_state &
        (connection_table%entry(index_conn), &
          index1_in, index2_in, &
          state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it1) &
            .merge. &
          state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it2))
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it2)
  end do
  call state_iterator_advance (it1)
end do
n_result_entries = 0
do k = 1, size (connection_table%entry)
  n_result_entries = &
    n_result_entries + connection_table%entry(k)%n_index(1)
end do
call index_map_init (connection_table%index_result, n_result_entries)
connection_table%index_result = 0
end subroutine connection_table_fill

subroutine connection_entry_add_state (entry, index1_in, index2_in, qn_in)
  type(connection_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
  integer, intent(in) :: index1_in, index2_in
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_in
  integer :: c
  entry%count = entry%count + 1
  c = entry%count(1)
  call index_map_set_entry (entry%index_in(1), c, index1_in)
  call index_map_set_entry (entry%index_in(2), c, index2_in)
  entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:,c) = qn_in
end subroutine connection_entry_add_state

subroutine make_squared_interaction (int, &
  n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
  connection_table, sum_colors, qn_mask)
  type(interaction_t), intent(out), target :: int
  integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
  type(connection_table_t), intent(inout), target :: connection_table
  logical, intent(in) :: sum_colors
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
  type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer :: result_index
  integer :: i, k, m
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_tot) :: qn

```

```

call interaction_init (eval%int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, mask=qn_mask)
m = 0
do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
  entry => connection_table%entry(i)
  do k = 1, size (entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn, 2)
    qn = quantum_numbers_undefined &
      (entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:,k), qn_mask)
    if (.not. sum_colors) &
      call quantum_numbers_invert_color (qn(1:n_in))
    call interaction_add_state (int, qn, me_index = result_index)
    call index_map_set_entry (connection_table%index_result, m + 1, &
      result_index)
    m = m + 1
  end do
end do
call interaction_freeze (int)
end subroutine make_squared_interaction

subroutine make_pairing_array (pa, &
  n_matrix_elements, connection_table, sum_colors, color_table, &
  n_in, n_tot, nc)
  type(pairing_array_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: pa
  integer, intent(in) :: n_matrix_elements
  type(connection_table_t), intent(in), target :: connection_table
  logical, intent(in) :: sum_colors
  type(color_table_t), intent(inout) :: color_table
  type(connection_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_tot
  integer, intent(in), optional :: nc
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entries
  integer :: i, k, k1s, k2s, m, r
  integer :: color_multiplicity_in
  allocate (pa (n_matrix_elements))
  allocate (n_entries (n_matrix_elements))
  n_entries = 0
  do m = 1, size (connection_table%index_result)
    r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
    n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
  end do
  call pairing_array_init &
    (pa, n_entries, has_i2 = sum_colors, has_factor = sum_colors)
  m = 1
  n_entries = 0
  do i = 1, connection_table%n_me_conn
    entry => connection_table%entry(i)
    do k = 1, entry%n_index(1)
      r = index_map_get_entry (connection_table%index_result, m)
      n_entries(r) = n_entries(r) + 1
      if (sum_colors) then
        k1s = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), k)
        k2s = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(2), k)
        pa(r)%i1(n_entries(r)) = k1s
        pa(r)%i2(n_entries(r)) = k2s
        color_multiplicity_in = &

```

```

        product (abs (quantum_numbers_get_color_type &
                      (entry%qn_in_list(1)%qn(:n_in, k))))
    pa(r)%factor(n_entries(r)) = &
        color_table_get_color_factor (color_table, k1s, k2s, nc) &
        / color_multiplicity_in
else
    k1s = index_map_get_entry (entry%index_in(1), k)
    pa(r)%i1(n_entries(r)) = k1s
end if
m = m + 1
end do
end do
end subroutine make_pairing_array

subroutine record_links (int, int_in, n_tot)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
    integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
    integer, dimension(n_tot) :: map
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, n_tot
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, i, int_in, i)
    end do
    map = (/ (i, i = 1, n_tot) /)
    call interaction_transfer_relations (int_in, int, map)
end subroutine record_links

end subroutine evaluator_init_square_nondiag

```

### Copy with additional contracted color states

This evaluator involves no square or multiplication, its matrix elements are just copies of the (single) input interaction. However, the state matrix of the interaction contains additional states that have color indices contracted. This is used for copies of the beam or structure-function interactions that need to match the hard interaction also in the case where its color indices coincide.

*(Evaluators: public)*+≡

```
public :: evaluator_init_color_contractions
```

*(Evaluators: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine evaluator_init_color_contractions (eval, int_in)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
    integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
    type(state_matrix_t) :: state_with_contractions
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: me_index
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: result_index
    eval%type = EVAL_COLOR_CONTRACTION
    eval%int_in1 => int_in
    ! print *, "Interaction with additional color contractions" !!! Debugging
    ! print *, "Input interaction" !!! Debugging
    ! call interaction_write (int_in) !!! Debugging
    n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_in)

```

```

n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int_in)
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int_in)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int_in)
state_with_contractions = interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_in)
call state_matrix_add_color_contractions (state_with_contractions)
call make_contracted_interaction (eval%int, &
    me_index, result_index, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, &
    state_with_contractions, interaction_get_mask (int_in))
call make_pairing_array (eval%pairing_array, me_index, result_index)
call record_links (eval%int, int_in, n_tot)
call state_matrix_final (state_with_contractions)
! print *, "Result evaluator:"      !!! Debugging
! call evaluator_write (eval)      !!! Debugging

```

contains

```

subroutine make_contracted_interaction (int, &
    me_index, result_index, &
    n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot, state, qn_mask)
type(interaction_t), intent(out), target :: int
integer, dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: me_index
integer, dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: result_index
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
type(state_iterator_t) :: it
integer :: n_me, i
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(n_tot) :: qn
call interaction_init (int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, mask=qn_mask)
n_me = state_matrix_get_n_leaves (state)
allocate (me_index (n_me))
allocate (result_index (n_me))
call state_iterator_init (it, state)
i = 0
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = i + 1
    me_index(i) = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)
    call interaction_add_state (int, qn, me_index = result_index(i))
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
call interaction_freeze (int)
end subroutine make_contracted_interaction

subroutine make_pairing_array (pa, me_index, result_index)
type(pairing_array_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: pa
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: me_index, result_index
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entries
integer :: n_matrix_elements, r, i
n_matrix_elements = size (me_index)
allocate (pa (n_matrix_elements))
allocate (n_entries (n_matrix_elements))
n_entries = 1

```

```

    call pairing_array_init &
      (pa, n_entries, has_i2=.false., has_factor=.false.)
    do i = 1, n_matrix_elements
      r = result_index(i)
      pa(r)%i1(1) = me_index(i)
    end do
end subroutine make_pairing_array

subroutine record_links (int, int_in, n_tot)
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_in
  integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
  integer, dimension(n_tot) :: map
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, n_tot
    call interaction_set_source_link (int, i, int_in, i)
  end do
  map = (/ (i, i = 1, n_tot) /)
  call interaction_transfer_relations (int_in, int, map)
end subroutine record_links

end subroutine evaluator_init_color_contractions

```

### Auxiliary procedure for initialization

This will become a standard procedure in F2008. The result is true if the number of true values in the mask is odd. We use the function for determining the ghost parity of a quantum-number array.

```

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
function parity (mask)
  logical :: parity
  logical, dimension(:) :: mask
  integer :: i
  parity = .false.
  do i = 1, size (mask)
    if (mask(i)) parity = .not. parity
  end do
end function parity

```

### 7.7.6 Accessing contents

Return the interaction component, as a pointer to avoid any copying.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
public :: evaluator_get_int_ptr

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
function evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval) result (int)
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
  type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval
  int => eval%int
end function evaluator_get_int_ptr

```

### 7.7.7 Inherited procedures

Return true if the state matrix within the interaction is empty.

```
<Evaluators: public>+≡
    public :: evaluator_is_empty

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
    function evaluator_is_empty (eval) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
        flag = interaction_is_empty (eval%int)
    end function evaluator_is_empty
```

Return the integer tag.

```
<Evaluators: public>+≡
    public :: evaluator_get_tag

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
    function evaluator_get_tag (eval) result (tag)
        integer :: tag
        type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
        tag = interaction_get_tag (eval%int)
    end function evaluator_get_tag
```

Get the norm of the state matrix (if the norm has been taken out, otherwise this would be unity).

```
<Evaluators: public>+≡
    public :: evaluator_get_norm

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
    function evaluator_get_norm (eval) result (norm)
        real(default) :: norm
        type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
        norm = interaction_get_norm (eval%int)
    end function evaluator_get_norm
```

Return the number of particles.

```
<Evaluators: public>+≡
    public :: evaluator_get_n_tot
    public :: evaluator_get_n_in
    public :: evaluator_get_n_vir
    public :: evaluator_get_n_out

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
    function evaluator_get_n_tot (eval) result (n_tot)
        integer :: n_tot
        type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
        n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (eval%int)
    end function evaluator_get_n_tot

    function evaluator_get_n_in (eval) result (n_in)
        integer :: n_in
        type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
        n_in = interaction_get_n_in (eval%int)
```



```

end function evaluator_get_n_in

function evaluator_get_n_vir (eval) result (n_vir)
  integer :: n_vir
  type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
  n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (eval%int)
end function evaluator_get_n_vir

function evaluator_get_n_out (eval) result (n_out)
  integer :: n_out
  type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
  n_out = interaction_get_n_out (eval%int)
end function evaluator_get_n_out

```

Return a specific matrix element.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_get_matrix_element

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  function evaluator_get_matrix_element (eval, i) result (value)
    complex(default) :: value
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
    integer :: i
    value = interaction_get_matrix_element (eval%int, i)
  end function evaluator_get_matrix_element

```

Sum all matrix element values.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_sum

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  function evaluator_sum (eval) result (value)
    complex(default) :: value
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
    value = interaction_sum (eval%int)
  end function evaluator_sum

```

Renormalize the state matrix by its trace, if nonzero. The renormalization is reflected in the state-matrix norm.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_normalize_by_trace

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evaluator_normalize_by_trace (eval)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
    call interaction_normalize_by_trace (eval%int)
  end subroutine evaluator_normalize_by_trace

```

Analogous, but renormalize by maximal (absolute) value.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_normalize_by_max

```

```

<Evaluators: procedures>+=
  subroutine evaluator_normalize_by_max (eval)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
    call interaction_normalize_by_max (eval%int)
  end subroutine evaluator_normalize_by_max

```

Append color-contracted states. Matrix element array and multiplication table are unaffected by this.

```

<Evaluators: public>+=
  public :: evaluator_add_color_contractions

<Evaluators: procedures>+=
  subroutine evaluator_add_color_contractions (eval)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
    call interaction_add_color_contractions (eval%int)
  end subroutine evaluator_add_color_contractions

```

Return the quantum-numbers mask of the enclosed interaction.

```

<Evaluators: public>+=
  public :: evaluator_get_mask

<Evaluators: procedures>+=
  function evaluator_get_mask (eval) result (mask)
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval
    allocate (mask (interaction_get_n_tot (eval%int)))
    mask = interaction_get_mask (eval%int)
  end function evaluator_get_mask

```

Extend the linking of interactions to evaluators.

```

<Evaluators: public>+=
  public :: interaction_set_source_link
  public :: evaluator_set_source_link

<Evaluators: interfaces>+=
  interface interaction_set_source_link
    module procedure interaction_set_source_link_eval
  end interface
  interface evaluator_set_source_link
    module procedure evaluator_set_source_link_int
    module procedure evaluator_set_source_link_eval
  end interface

<Evaluators: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_set_source_link_eval (int, i, eval1, i1)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval1
    integer, intent(in) :: i, i1
    call interaction_set_source_link (int, i, eval1%int, i1)
  end subroutine interaction_set_source_link_eval

  subroutine evaluator_set_source_link_int (eval, i, int1, i1)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int1

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: i, i1
call interaction_set_source_link (eval%int, i, int1, i1)
end subroutine evaluator_set_source_link_int

subroutine evaluator_set_source_link_eval (eval, i, eval1, i1)
type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval1
integer, intent(in) :: i, i1
call interaction_set_source_link (eval%int, i, eval1%int, i1)
end subroutine evaluator_set_source_link_eval

```

Receive from / send momenta to the linked interactions.

*<Evaluators: public>+≡*

```

public :: evaluator_receive_momenta
public :: evaluator_send_momenta

```

*<Evaluators: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine evaluator_receive_momenta (eval)
type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
call interaction_receive_momenta (eval%int)
end subroutine evaluator_receive_momenta

subroutine evaluator_send_momenta (eval)
type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
call interaction_send_momenta (eval%int)
end subroutine evaluator_send_momenta

```

Reassign external source links from one to another.

*<Evaluators: public>+≡*

```

public :: evaluator_reassign_links

```

*<Evaluators: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface evaluator_reassign_links
module procedure evaluator_reassign_links_eval
module procedure evaluator_reassign_links_int
end interface

```

*<Evaluators: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine evaluator_reassign_links_eval (eval, eval_src, eval_target)
type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval_src
type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval_target
if (associated (eval%int_in1)) then
if (interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in1) &
== interaction_get_tag (eval_src%int)) then
eval%int_in1 => eval_target%int
end if
end if
if (associated (eval%int_in2)) then
if (interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in2) &
== interaction_get_tag (eval_src%int)) then
eval%int_in2 => eval_target%int
end if
end if

```

```

end if
call interaction_reassign_links (eval%int, eval_src%int, eval_target%int)
end subroutine evaluator_reassign_links_eval

subroutine evaluator_reassign_links_int (eval, int_src, int_target)
type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_src
type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_target
if (associated (eval%int_in1)) then
  if (interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in1) &
    == interaction_get_tag (int_src)) then
    eval%int_in1 => int_target
  end if
end if
if (associated (eval%int_in2)) then
  if (interaction_get_tag (eval%int_in2) &
    == interaction_get_tag (int_src)) then
    eval%int_in2 => int_target
  end if
end if
call interaction_reassign_links (eval%int, int_src, int_target)
end subroutine evaluator_reassign_links_int

```

Return flavor, momentum, and position of the first unstable particle present in the interaction.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
public :: evaluator_get_unstable_particle

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
subroutine evaluator_get_unstable_particle (eval, flv, p, i)
type(evaluator_t), intent(in) :: eval
type(flavor_t), intent(out) :: flv
type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p
integer, intent(out) :: i
call interaction_get_unstable_particle (eval%int, flv, p, i)
end subroutine evaluator_get_unstable_particle

```

### 7.7.8 Deleting the evaluator

Only the interaction component needs finalization.

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
public :: evaluator_final

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
elemental subroutine evaluator_final (eval)
type(evaluator_t), intent(inout) :: eval
call interaction_final (eval%int)
end subroutine evaluator_final

```

### 7.7.9 Creating an evaluator: identity

The identity evaluator creates a copy of the first input evaluator; the second input is not used.

All particles link back to the input evaluator and the internal relations are copied. As evaluation does take a shortcut by cloning the matrix elements, the pairing array is not used and does not have to be set up.

```
<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_init_identity

<Evaluators: interfaces>+≡
  interface evaluator_init_identity
    module procedure evaluator_init_identity_i
    module procedure evaluator_init_identity_e
  end interface

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evaluator_init_identity_i (eval, int)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
    integer :: n_in, n_out, n_vir, n_tot
    integer :: i
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map
    type(state_matrix_t), pointer :: state
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it

    eval%type = EVAL_IDENTITY
    eval%int_in1 => int
    nullify (eval%int_in2)
    n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int)
    n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int)
    n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int)
    n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int)
    call interaction_init (eval%int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, &
      mask=interaction_get_mask (int), &
      resonant=interaction_get_resonance_flags (int))
    do i = 1, n_tot
      call interaction_set_source_link (eval%int, i, int, i)
    end do
    allocate (map(n_tot))
    map = (/i, i = 1, n_tot/)
    call interaction_transfer_relations (int, eval%int, map)
    state => interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int)
    call state_iterator_init (it, state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      call interaction_add_state (eval%int, &
        state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), &
        state_iterator_get_me_index (it))
      call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (eval%int)

  end subroutine evaluator_init_identity_i
```

```

subroutine evaluator_init_identity_e (eval, eval1)
  type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
  type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval1
  call evaluator_init_identity_i (eval, eval1%int)
end subroutine evaluator_init_identity_e

```

### 7.7.10 Creating an evaluator: quantum number sum

This evaluator operates on the diagonal of a density matrix and sums over the quantum numbers specified by the mask. The optional argument **drop** allows to drop a particle from the resulting density matrix. The handling of virtuals is not completely sane, especially in connection with dropping particles.

When summing over matrix element entries, we keep the separation into entries and normalization (in the corresponding evaluation routine below).

```

<Evaluators: public>+≡
  public :: evaluator_init_qn_sum

<Evaluators: interfaces>+≡
  interface evaluator_init_qn_sum
    module procedure evaluator_init_qn_sum_i
    module procedure evaluator_init_qn_sum_e
  end interface

<Evaluators: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evaluator_init_qn_sum_i (eval, int, qn_mask, drop)
    type(evaluator_t), intent(out), target :: eval
    type(interaction_t), target, intent(in) :: int
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
    logical, intent(in), optional, dimension(:) :: drop
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it_old, it_new
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: pairing_proto
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pairing_sizes
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map
    integer :: n_in, n_out, n_vir, n_tot, n_me_old, n_me_new
    integer :: i, j
    type(state_matrix_t), pointer :: state_new, state_old
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
    logical :: matched
    logical, dimension(size (qn_mask)) :: dropped
    integer :: ndropped
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: inotdropped
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: resonant

    eval%type = EVAL_QN_SUM
    eval%int_in1 => int
    nullify (eval%int_in2)
    if (present (drop)) then
      dropped = drop
    else
      dropped = .false.
    end if
    ndropped = count (dropped)

```

```

n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int)
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int) - ndropped
n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int) - ndropped

allocate (inotdropped (n_tot))
i = 1
do j = 1, n_tot + ndropped
  if (dropped (j)) cycle
  inotdropped(i) = j
  i = i + 1
end do

allocate (mask(n_tot + ndropped))
mask = interaction_get_mask (int)
allocate (resonant(n_tot + ndropped))
resonant = interaction_get_resonance_flags (int)
call interaction_init (eval%int, n_in, n_vir, n_out, &
  mask = mask(inotdropped) .or. qn_mask(inotdropped), &
  resonant = resonant(inotdropped))
i = 1
do j = 1, n_tot + ndropped
  if (dropped(j)) cycle
  call interaction_set_source_link (eval%int, i, int, j)
  i = i + 1
end do
allocate (map(n_tot + ndropped))
i = 1
do j = 1, n_tot + ndropped
  if (dropped (j)) then
    map(j) = 0
  else
    map(j) = i
    i = i + 1
  end if
end do
call interaction_transfer_relations (int, eval%int, map)

n_me_old = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (int)
allocate (pairing_proto(n_me_old, n_me_old))
allocate (pairing_sizes(n_me_old))
pairing_sizes = 0
state_old => interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int)
state_new => interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (eval%int)
call state_iterator_init (it_old, state_old)
allocate (qn(n_tot + ndropped))
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_old))
  qn = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_old)
  if (.not. all (quantum_numbers_are_diagonal (qn))) then
    call state_iterator_advance (it_old)
  cycle
end if
matched = .false.

```

```

call state_iterator_init (it_new, state_new)
if (interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int) > 0) then
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_new))
    if (all (qn(inotdropped) .match. &
      state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_new))) &
    then
      matched = .true.
      i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it_new)
      exit
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it_new)
  end do
end if
if (.not. matched) then
  call interaction_add_state (eval%int, qn(inotdropped))
  i = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int)
end if
pairing_sizes(i) = pairing_sizes(i) + 1
pairing_proto(pairing_sizes(i), i) = &
  state_iterator_get_me_index (it_old)
! print *, &                                     !!! Debugging
!      i, pairing_sizes(i), state_iterator_get_me_index (it_old)
call state_iterator_advance (it_old)
end do
call interaction_freeze (eval%int)

n_me_new = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (eval%int)
allocate (eval%pairing_array(n_me_new))
do i = 1, n_me_new
  ! print *, i, pairing_sizes(i)                !!! Debugging
  call pairing_array_init (eval%pairing_array(i), &
    pairing_sizes(i), .false., .false.)
  eval%pairing_array(i)%i1 = pairing_proto(:pairing_sizes(i), i)
end do

end subroutine evaluator_init_qn_sum_i

subroutine evaluator_init_qn_sum_e (eval, eval1, qn_mask, drop)
  type(evaluator_t), intent(out) :: eval
  type(evaluator_t), intent(in), target :: eval1
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask
  logical, dimension(:), optional, intent(in) :: drop
  call evaluator_init_qn_sum_i (eval, eval1%int, qn_mask, drop)
end subroutine

```

### 7.7.11 Evaluation

When the input interactions (which are pointed to in the pairings stored within the evaluator) are filled with values, we can activate the evaluator, i.e., calculate the result values which are stored in the interaction.

The evaluation of matrix elements can be done in parallel. A `forall` construct is not appropriate, however. We would need `do concurrent` here. Nev-



ertheless, the evaluation functions are marked as `pure`.

```

(Evaluators: evaluator: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => evaluator_evaluate

(Evaluators: procedures)+≡
  subroutine evaluator_evaluate (eval)
    class(evaluator_t), intent(inout), target :: eval
    integer :: i
    select case (eval%type)
    case (EVAL_PRODUCT)
      do i = 1, size(eval%pairing_array)
        call interaction_evaluate_product (eval%int, i, &
          eval%int_in1, eval%int_in2, &
          eval%pairing_array(i)%i1, eval%pairing_array(i)%i2)
      end do
    case (EVAL_SQUARE_WITH_COLOR_FACTORS)
      do i = 1, size(eval%pairing_array)
        call interaction_evaluate_product_cf (eval%int, i, &
          eval%int_in1, eval%int_in1, &
          eval%pairing_array(i)%i1, eval%pairing_array(i)%i2, &
          eval%pairing_array(i)%factor)
      end do
    case (EVAL_SQUARED_FLOWS)
      do i = 1, size(eval%pairing_array)
        call interaction_evaluate_square_c (eval%int, i, &
          eval%int_in1, &
          eval%pairing_array(i)%i1)
      end do
    case (EVAL_COLOR_CONTRACTION)
      do i = 1, size(eval%pairing_array)
        call interaction_evaluate_sum (eval%int, i, &
          eval%int_in1, &
          eval%pairing_array(i)%i1)
      end do
    case (EVAL_IDENTITY)
      call interaction_set_matrix_element (eval%int, eval%int_in1)
    case (EVAL_QN_SUM)
      do i = 1, size (eval%pairing_array)
        call interaction_evaluate_me_sum (eval%int, i, &
          eval%int_in1, eval%pairing_array(i)%i1)
        call interaction_set_norm &
          (eval%int, interaction_get_norm (eval%int_in1))
      end do
    end select
  end subroutine evaluator_evaluate

```

### 7.7.12 Unit tests

Test: Create two interactions. The interactions are twofold connected. The first connection has a helicity index that is kept, the second connection has a helicity index that is summed over. Concatenate the interactions in an evaluator, which thus contains a result interaction. Fill the input interactions with values,

activate the evaluator and print the result.

```

<Evaluators: public>+=
    public :: evaluator_test

<Evaluators: procedures>+=
    subroutine evaluator_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Evaluators: execute tests>
    end subroutine evaluator_test

<Evaluators: execute tests>=
    call test (evaluator_1, "evaluator_1", &
        "check evaluators (1)", &
        u, results)

<Evaluators: tests>=
    subroutine evaluator_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(interaction_t), target :: int_qqtt, int_tbw, int1, int2
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
        type(color_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: col
        type(helicity_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
        integer :: f, c, h1, h2, h3
        type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: p
        type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: qn_mask_conn
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask2
        type(evaluator_t), target :: eval, eval2, eval3

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
            var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

        write (u, "(A)")    "*** Evaluator for matrix product"
        write (u, "(A)")    "***   Construct interaction for qq -> tt"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call interaction_init (int_qqtt, 2, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
        allocate (flv (4), col (4), hel (4), qn (4))
        allocate (qn_mask2 (4))
        do c = 1, 2
            select case (c)
            case (1)
                call color_init_col_acl (col, [1, 0, 1, 0], [0, 2, 0, 2])
            case (2)
                call color_init_col_acl (col, [1, 0, 2, 0], [0, 1, 0, 2])
            end select
        end do
        do f = 1, 2
            call flavor_init (flv, [f, -f, 6, -6], model)
            do h1 = -1, 1, 2

```

```

        call helicity_init (hel(3), h1)
        do h2 = -1, 1, 2
            call helicity_init (hel(4), h2)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
            call interaction_add_state (int_qqtt, qn)
        end do
    end do
end do
call interaction_freeze (int_qqtt)
deallocate (flv, col, hel, qn)
write (u, "(A)") "**** Construct interaction for t -> bW"
call interaction_init (int_tbw, 1, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
allocate (flv (3), col (3), hel (3), qn (3))
call flavor_init (flv, [6, 5, 24], model)
call color_init_col_acl (col, [1, 1, 0], [0, 0, 0])
do h1 = -1, 1, 2
    call helicity_init (hel(1), h1)
    do h2 = -1, 1, 2
        call helicity_init (hel(2), h2)
        do h3 = -1, 1
            call helicity_init (hel(3), h3)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
            call interaction_add_state (int_tbw, qn)
        end do
    end do
end do
call interaction_freeze (int_tbw)
deallocate (flv, col, hel, qn)
write (u, "(A)") "**** Link interactions"
call interaction_set_source_link (int_tbw, 1, int_qqtt, 3)
qn_mask_conn = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false.,.false.,.true.)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "**** Show input"
call interaction_write (int_qqtt, unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
call interaction_write (int_tbw, unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "**** Evaluate product"
call evaluator_init_product &
    (eval, int_qqtt, int_tbw, qn_mask_conn)
call eval%write (unit = u)

call interaction_init (int1, 2, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
call interaction_init (int2, 1, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
p(1) = vector4_moving (1000._default, 1000._default, 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (200._default, 200._default, 2)
p(3) = vector4_moving (100._default, 200._default, 1)
p(4) = p(1) - p(2) - p(3)
call interaction_set_momenta (int1, p)
q(1) = vector4_moving (50._default,-50._default, 3)
q(2) = p(2) + p(4) - q(1)
call interaction_set_momenta (int2, q, outgoing=.true.)
call interaction_set_matrix_element &

```

```

        (int1, ((2._default,0._default), (4._default,1._default), (-3._default,0._default)))
call interaction_set_matrix_element &
        (int2, ((-3._default,0._default), (0._default,1._default), (1._default,2._default)))
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval)
call eval%evaluate ()
call interaction_write (int1, unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
call interaction_write (int2, unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
call eval%write (unit = u)
print *
call interaction_final (int1)
call interaction_final (int2)
call evaluator_final (eval)

print *
print *, "*** Evaluator for matrix square"
allocate (flv(4), col(4), qn(4))
call interaction_init (int1, 2, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
call flavor_init (flv, (/1, -1, 21, 21/), model)
call color_init (col(1), (/1/))
call color_init (col(2), (/2/))
call color_init (col(3), (/2, -3/))
call color_init (col(4), (/3, -1/))
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn)
call color_init (col(3), (/3, -1/))
call color_init (col(4), (/2, -3/))
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn)
call color_init (col(3), (/2, -1/))
call color_init (col(4), .true.)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn)
call interaction_freeze (int1)
! [qn_mask2 not set since default is false]
call evaluator_init_square (eval, int1, qn_mask2, nc=3)
call evaluator_init_square_nondiag (eval2, int1, qn_mask2)
qn_mask2 = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., .true.)
call evaluator_init_square_diag (eval3, eval%int, qn_mask2)
call interaction_set_matrix_element &
        (int1, ((2._default,0._default), (4._default,1._default), (-3._default,0._default)))
call interaction_set_momenta (int1, p)
call interaction_write (int1, unit = u)
print *
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval)
call eval%evaluate ()
call eval%write (unit = u)
print *
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval2)
call eval2%evaluate ()
call eval2%write (unit = u)
print *
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval3)

```

```

    call eval3%evaluate ()
    call eval3%write (unit = u)
    call interaction_final (int1)
    call evaluator_final (eval)
    call evaluator_final (eval2)
    call evaluator_final (eval3)
end subroutine evaluator_1

```

*(Evaluators: execute tests)*+≡

```

    call test (evaluator_2, "evaluator_2", &
        "check evaluators (2)", &
        u, results)

```

*(Evaluators: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine evaluator_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(interaction_t), target :: int
    integer :: h1, h2, h3, h4
    type(helicity_t), dimension(4) :: hel
    type(color_t), dimension(4) :: col
    type(flavor_t), dimension(4) :: flv
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn
    type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: p
    type(evaluator_t) :: eval
    integer :: i

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
        var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

    write (u, "(A)") "*** Creating interaction for e+ e- -> W+ W-"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call flavor_init (flv, [11, -11, 24, -24], model)
    do i = 1, 4
        call color_init (col (i))
    end do
    call interaction_init (int, 2, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
    do h1 = -1, 1, 2
        call helicity_init (hel(1), h1)
    do h2 = -1, 1, 2
        call helicity_init (hel(2), h2)
    do h3 = -1, 1
        call helicity_init (hel(3), h3)
    do h4 = -1, 1
        call helicity_init (hel(4), h4)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
        call interaction_add_state (int, qn)
    end do
    end do
end do
end do

```

```

        end do
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (int)
    call interaction_set_matrix_element (int, &
        ((cmplx (i, kind=default), i = 1, 36)))
    p(1) = vector4_moving (1000._default, 1000._default, 3)
    p(2) = vector4_moving (1000._default, -1000._default, 3)
    p(3) = vector4_moving (1000._default, &
        sqrt (1E6_default - 80._default**2), 3)
    p(4) = p(1) + p(2) - p(3)
    call interaction_set_momenta (int, p)
    write (u, "(A)") "*** Setting up evaluator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call evaluator_init_identity (eval, int)
    write (u, "(A)") "*** Transferring momenta and evaluating"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval)
    call eval%evaluate ()
    write (u, "(A)") "*****"
    write (u, "(A)") "    Interaction dump"
    write (u, "(A)") "*****"
    call interaction_write (int, unit = u)
    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)") "*****"
    write (u, "(A)") "    Evaluator dump"
    write (u, "(A)") "*****"
    call eval%write (unit = u)
    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)") "*** cleaning up"
    call interaction_final (int)
    call evaluator_final (eval)
end subroutine evaluator_2

```

*<Evaluators: execute tests>+≡*

```

call test (evaluator_3, "evaluator_3", &
    "check evaluators (3)", &
    u, results)

```

*<Evaluators: tests>+≡*

```

subroutine evaluator_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(interaction_t), target :: int
    integer :: h1, h2, h3, h4
    type(helicity_t), dimension(4) :: hel
    type(color_t), dimension(4) :: col
    type(flavor_t), dimension(4) :: flv1, flv2
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn
    type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: p
    type(evaluator_t) :: eval1, eval2, eval3

```

```

type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(4) :: qn_mask
integer :: i

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
    var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "*** Creating interaction for e+/mu+ e-/mu- -> W+ W-"
call flavor_init (flv1, (/11, -11, 24, -24/), model)
call flavor_init (flv2, (/13, -13, 24, -24/), model)
do i = 1, 4
    call color_init (col (i))
end do
call interaction_init (int, 2, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
do h1 = -1, 1, 2
    call helicity_init (hel(1), h1)
    do h2 = -1, 1, 2
        call helicity_init (hel(2), h2)
        do h3 = -1, 1
            call helicity_init (hel(3), h3)
            do h4 = -1, 1
                call helicity_init (hel(4), h4)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv1, col, hel)
                call interaction_add_state (int, qn)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv2, col, hel)
                call interaction_add_state (int, qn)
            end do
        end do
    end do
end do
call interaction_freeze (int)
call interaction_set_matrix_element (int, &
    (/ (cmplx (1, kind=default), i = 1, 72) /))
p(1) = vector4_moving (1000._default, 1000._default, 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (1000._default, -1000._default, 3)
p(3) = vector4_moving (1000._default, &
    sqrt (1E6_default - 80._default**2), 3)
p(4) = p(1) + p(2) - p(3)
call interaction_set_momenta (int, p)
write (u, "(A)")  "*** Setting up evaluators"
call quantum_numbers_mask_init (qn_mask, .false., .true., .true.)
call evaluator_init_qn_sum (eval1, int, qn_mask)
call quantum_numbers_mask_init (qn_mask, .true., .true., .true.)
call evaluator_init_qn_sum (eval2, int, qn_mask)
call quantum_numbers_mask_init (qn_mask, .false., .true., .false.)
call evaluator_init_qn_sum (eval3, int, qn_mask, &
    (/ .false., .false., .false., .true. /))
write (u, "(A)")  "*** Transferring momenta and evaluating"
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval1)
call eval1%evaluate ()
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval2)
call eval2%evaluate ()
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval3)

```

```

call eval3%evaluate ()
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
write (u, "(A)") "  Interaction dump"
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
call interaction_write (int, unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
write (u, "(A)") "  Evaluator dump --- spin sum"
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
call eval1%write (unit = u)
call interaction_write (evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval1), unit = u)
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
write (u, "(A)") "  Evaluator dump --- spin / flavor sum"
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
call eval2%write (unit = u)
call interaction_write (evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval2), unit = u)
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
write (u, "(A)") "  Evaluator dump --- flavor sum, drop last W"
write (u, "(A)") "*****"
call eval3%write (unit = u)
call interaction_write (evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval3), unit = u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "*** cleaning up"
call interaction_final (int)
call evaluator_final (eval1)
call evaluator_final (eval2)
call evaluator_final (eval3)
end subroutine evaluator_3

```



# Chapter 8

## Particles

In this chapter, we deal with particles which have well-defined quantum numbers. While within interactions, all correlations are manifest, a particle array is derived by selecting a particular quantum number set. This involves tracing over all other particles, as far as polarization is concerned. Thus, a particle has definite flavor, color, and a single-particle density matrix for polarization.

### 8.1 Polarization

Particle polarization is determined by a particular quantum state which has just helicity information. For defining polarizations, we adopt the phase convention for a spin-1/2 particle that

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \vec{\alpha} \cdot \vec{\sigma}) \quad (8.1)$$

with the polarization axis  $\vec{\alpha}$ . Using this, we define

1. Trivial polarization:  $\vec{\alpha} = 0$ . [This is unpolarized, but distinct from the particular undefined polarization matrix which has the same meaning.]
2. Circular polarization:  $\vec{\alpha}$  points in  $\pm z$  direction.
3. Transversal polarization:  $\vec{\alpha}$  points orthogonal to the  $z$  direction, with a phase  $\phi$  that is 0 for the  $x$  axis, and  $\pi/2 = 90^\circ$  for the  $y$  axis. For antiparticles, the phase switches sign, corresponding to complex conjugation.
4. Axis polarization, where we explicitly give  $\vec{\alpha}$ .

For higher spin, we retain this definition, but apply it to the two components with maximum and minimum weight. For massless particles, this is sufficient. For massive particles, we add the possibilities:

5. Longitudinal polarization: Only the 0-component is set. This is possible only for bosons.
6. Diagonal polarization: Explicitly specify all components in the helicity basis.

Obviously, this does not exhaust the possible density matrices for higher spin, but it should cover all practical applications.

```

<polarizations.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module polarizations

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use constants, only: imago !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_19 !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use models
    use flavors
    use colors
    use helicities
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices

    <Standard module head>

    <Polarizations: public>

    <Polarizations: types>

    <Polarizations: interfaces>

    contains

    <Polarizations: procedures>

    <Polarizations: tests>

  end module polarizations

```

### 8.1.1 The polarization type

This is not an extension, but rather a restriction of the quantum state. Flavor and color are ignored, there is just a one-particle helicity density matrix.

```

<Polarizations: public>≡
  public :: polarization_t

<Polarizations: types>≡
  type :: polarization_t
    logical :: polarized = .false.
    integer :: spin_type = 0
    integer :: multiplicity = 0
    type(state_matrix_t) :: state
  end type polarization_t

```

### 8.1.2 Basic initializer and finalizer

We need the particle flavor for determining the allowed helicity values. The density matrix is not set, but prepared to be filled later. This is private.

```
<Polarizations: procedures>≡  
  elemental subroutine polarization_init (pol, flv)  
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol  
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv  
    pol%spin_type = flavor_get_spin_type (flv)  
    pol%multiplicity = flavor_get_multiplicity (flv)  
    call state_matrix_init (pol%state, store_values = .true.)  
  end subroutine polarization_init
```

The finalizer has to be public. The quantum state contains memory allocated to pointers.

```
<Polarizations: public>+≡  
  public :: polarization_final  
  
<Polarizations: procedures>+≡  
  elemental subroutine polarization_final (pol)  
    type(polarization_t), intent(inout) :: pol  
    call state_matrix_final (pol%state)  
  end subroutine polarization_final
```

### 8.1.3 I/O

```
<Polarizations: public>+≡  
  public :: polarization_write  
  
<Polarizations: procedures>+≡  
  subroutine polarization_write (pol, unit)  
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol  
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit  
    integer :: u  
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return  
    write (u, "(1x,A,I1,A,I1,A)") &  
      "Polarization: [spin_type = ", pol%spin_type, &  
      ", mult = ", pol%multiplicity, "]"  
    call state_matrix_write (pol%state, unit=unit)  
  end subroutine polarization_write
```

Defined assignment: deep copy

```
<Polarizations: public>+≡  
  public :: assignment(=)  
  
<Polarizations: interfaces>≡  
  interface assignment(=)  
    module procedure polarization_assign  
  end interface
```

```

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
  subroutine polarization_assign (pol_out, pol_in)
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol_out
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol_in
    pol_out%polarized = pol_in%polarized
    pol_out%spin_type = pol_in%spin_type
    pol_out%multiplicity = pol_in%multiplicity
    pol_out%state = pol_in%state
  end subroutine polarization_assign

```

Binary I/O.

Note: currently disabled; state matrix raw I/O questionable.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
  public :: polarization_write_raw
  public :: polarization_read_raw

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
  subroutine polarization_write_raw (pol, u)
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    write (u) pol%polarized
    write (u) pol%spin_type
    write (u) pol%multiplicity
    if (state_matrix_is_defined (pol%state)) then
      call msg_bug ("Write polarization (raw): nontrivial state matrix not supported yet")
    else
      call state_matrix_write_raw (pol%state, u)
    end if
  end subroutine polarization_write_raw

  subroutine polarization_read_raw (pol, u, iostat)
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer, intent(out), optional :: iostat
    read (u, iostat=iostat) pol%polarized
    read (u, iostat=iostat) pol%spin_type
    read (u, iostat=iostat) pol%multiplicity
    call state_matrix_read_raw (pol%state, u, iostat=iostat)
  end subroutine polarization_read_raw

```

#### 8.1.4 Accessing contents

Return true if the particle is polarized. This is the case if the first (and only) entry in the quantum state has undefined helicity.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
  public :: polarization_is_polarized

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
  elemental function polarization_is_polarized (pol) result (polarized)
    logical :: polarized
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
    polarized = pol%polarized

```

```
end function polarization_is_polarized
```

Return true if the polarization is diagonal, i.e., all entries in the density matrix are diagonal.

```
<Polarizations: public>+≡
  public :: polarization_is_diagonal

<Polarizations: interfaces>+≡
  interface polarization_is_diagonal
    module procedure polarization_is_diagonal0
    module procedure polarization_is_diagonal1
  end interface

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
  function polarization_is_diagonal0 (pol) result (diagonal)
    logical :: diagonal
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    diagonal = .true.
    call state_iterator_init (it, pol%state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      diagonal = all (quantum_numbers_are_diagonal &
        (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it)))
      if (.not. diagonal) exit
      call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
  end function polarization_is_diagonal0

  function polarization_is_diagonal1 (pol) result (diagonal)
    type(polarization_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: pol
    logical, dimension(size(pol)) :: diagonal
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (pol)
      diagonal(i) = polarization_is_diagonal0 (pol(i))
    end do
  end function polarization_is_diagonal1
```

### 8.1.5 Initialization from state matrix

Here, the state matrix is already known (but not necessarily normalized). The result will be either unpolarized, or a normalized spin density matrix.

```
<Polarizations: public>+≡
  public :: polarization_init_state_matrix

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine polarization_init_state_matrix (pol, state)
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in), target :: state
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(helicity_t) :: hel
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
```

```

complex(default) :: value, t
call state_iterator_init (it, state)
flv = state_iterator_get_flavor (it, 1)
hel = state_iterator_get_helicity (it, 1)
if (helicity_is_defined (hel)) then
  call polarization_init (pol, flv)
  pol%polarized = .true.
  t = 0
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    hel = state_iterator_get_helicity (it, 1)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
    value = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
    call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value)
    if (helicity_is_diagonal (hel)) t = t + value
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
  call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
  if (t /= 0) call state_matrix_renormalize (pol%state, 1._default / t)
else
  call polarization_init_unpolarized (pol, flv)
end if
end subroutine polarization_init_state_matrix

```

### 8.1.6 Specific initializers

Unpolarized particle, no helicity labels in the density matrix. The value is specified as  $1/N$ , where  $N$  is the multiplicity.

Exception: for left-handed or right-handed particles (neutrinos), polarization is always circular with fraction unity.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
  public :: polarization_init_unpolarized

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
  subroutine polarization_init_unpolarized (pol, flv)
    type(polarization_t), intent(inout) :: pol
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
    complex(default) :: value
    if (flavor_is_left_handed (flv)) then
      call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, -1._default)
    else if (flavor_is_right_handed (flv)) then
      call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, 1._default)
    else
      call polarization_init (pol, flv)
      value = 1._default / flavor_get_multiplicity (flv)
      call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
      call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
      call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (pol%state, value)
    end if
  end subroutine polarization_init_unpolarized

```

Unpolarized particle, but explicit density matrix with helicity states allocated according to given flavor. Note that fermions have even spin type, bosons odd. The spin density matrix entries are scaled by **fraction**. This is used for initializing other polarizations:

$$\rho(f) = \frac{|f|}{N} \mathbf{1}.$$

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
    public :: polarization_init_trivial

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_trivial (pol, flv, fraction)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: fraction
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
        integer :: h, hmax
        logical :: fermion
        complex(default) :: value
        call polarization_init (pol, flv)
        pol%polarized = .true.
        if (present (fraction)) then
            value = fraction / pol%multiplicity
        else
            value = 1._default / pol%multiplicity
        end if
        fermion = mod (pol%spin_type, 2) == 0
        hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
        select case (pol%multiplicity)
        case (1)
            if (flavor_is_left_handed (flv)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, -hmax)
            else if (flavor_is_right_handed (flv)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, hmax)
            else
                call helicity_init (hel, 0)
            end if
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
        case (2)
            do h = -hmax, hmax, 2*hmax
                call helicity_init (hel, h)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
                call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
            end do
        case default
            do h = -hmax, hmax
                if (fermion .and. h == 0) cycle
                call helicity_init (hel, h)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
                call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
            end do
        end select
        call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)

```

```

    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (pol%state, value)
end subroutine polarization_init_trivial

```

The following three modes are useful mainly for spin-1/2 particle and massless particles of any nonzero spin. Only the highest-weight components are filled.

Circular polarization: The density matrix of the two highest-weight states is

$$\rho(f) = \frac{1-|f|}{2} \mathbf{1} + |f| \times \begin{cases} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, & f > 0; \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, & f < 0, \end{cases}$$

If the polarization fraction  $|f|$  is unity, we need only one entry in the density matrix.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
    public :: polarization_init_circular

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, fraction)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), intent(in) :: fraction
        type(helicity_t), dimension(2) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
        complex(default) :: value
        integer :: hmax
        call polarization_init (pol, flv)
        pol%polarized = .true.
        hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
        call helicity_init (hel(1), hmax)
        call helicity_init (hel(2), -hmax)
        if (abs (fraction) /= 1) then
            value = (1 + fraction) / 2
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(1))
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value)
            value = (1 - fraction) / 2
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(2))
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value)
        else
            value = abs (fraction)
            if (fraction > 0) then
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(1))
            else
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(2))
            end if
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value)
        end if
        call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
    end subroutine polarization_init_circular

```



Transversal polarization is analogous to circular, but we get a density matrix

$$\rho(f, \phi) = \frac{1 - |f|}{2} \mathbf{1} + \frac{|f|}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & e^{-i\phi} \\ e^{i\phi} & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The phase is  $\phi = 0$  for the  $x$ -axis,  $\phi = 90^\circ$  for the  $y$  axis as polarization vector. For an antiparticle, the phase switches sign, and for  $f < 0$ , the off-diagonal elements switch sign.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
    public :: polarization_init_transversal

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_transversal (pol, flv, phi, fraction)
        type(polarization_t), intent(inout) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), intent(in) :: phi, fraction
        call polarization_init_axis &
            (pol, flv, fraction * (/ cos (phi), sin (phi), 0._default/))
    end subroutine polarization_init_transversal

```

For axis polarization, we again set only the entries with maximum weight.

$$\rho(f, \phi) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 + \alpha_3 & \alpha_1 - i\alpha_2 \\ \alpha_1 + i\alpha_2 & 1 - \alpha_3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For an antiparticle,  $\alpha_2$  switches sign (complex conjugate).

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
    public :: polarization_init_axis

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_axis (pol, flv, alpha)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), dimension(3), intent(in) :: alpha
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
        type(helicity_t), dimension(2,2) :: hel
        complex(default), dimension(2,2) :: value
        integer :: hmax
        call polarization_init (pol, flv)
        pol%polarized = .true.
        hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
        call helicity_init (hel(1,1), hmax, hmax)
        call helicity_init (hel(1,2), hmax, -hmax)
        call helicity_init (hel(2,1), -hmax, hmax)
        call helicity_init (hel(2,2), -hmax, -hmax)
        value(1,1) = (1 + alpha(3)) / 2
        value(2,2) = (1 - alpha(3)) / 2
        if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
            value(1,2) = (alpha(1) + imago * alpha(2)) / 2
        else
            value(1,2) = (alpha(1) - imago * alpha(2)) / 2
        end if
        value(2,1) = conjg (value(1,2))
        if (value(1,1) /= 0) then

```

```

        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(1,1))
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value(1,1))
    end if
    if (value(2,2) /= 0) then
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(2,2))
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value(2,2))
    end if
    if (value(1,2) /= 0) then
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(1,2))
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value(1,2))
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel(2,1))
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value=value(2,1))
    end if
    call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
end subroutine polarization_init_axis

```

This version specifies the polarization axis in terms of  $r$  (polarization degree) and  $\theta, \phi$  (polar and azimuthal angles).

If one of the angles is a nonzero multiple of  $\pi$ , roundoff errors typically will result in tiny contributions to unwanted components. Therefore, include a catch for small numbers.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
    public :: polarization_init_angles

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_angles (pol, flv, r, theta, phi)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), intent(in) :: r, theta, phi
        real(default), dimension(3) :: alpha
        real(default), parameter :: eps = 10 * epsilon (1._default)
        alpha(1) = r * sin (theta) * cos (phi)
        alpha(2) = r * sin (theta) * sin (phi)
        alpha(3) = r * cos (theta)
        where (abs (alpha) < eps) alpha = 0
        call polarization_init_axis (pol, flv, alpha)
    end subroutine polarization_init_angles

```

Longitudinal polarization is defined only for massive bosons. Only the zero component is filled. Otherwise, unpolarized.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
    public :: polarization_init_longitudinal

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_longitudinal (pol, flv, fraction)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        real(default), intent(in) :: fraction
        integer :: spin_type, multiplicity
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
        complex(default) :: value
        integer :: n_values

```

```

value = abs (fraction)
spin_type = flavor_get_spin_type (flv)
multiplicity = flavor_get_multiplicity (flv)
if (mod (spin_type, 2) == 1 .and. multiplicity > 2) then
  if (fraction /= 1) then
    call polarization_init_trivial (pol, flv, 1 - fraction)
    n_values = state_matrix_get_n_matrix_elements (pol%state)
    call state_matrix_add_to_matrix_element &
      (pol%state, n_values/2 + 1, value)
  else
    call polarization_init (pol, flv)
    pol%polarized = .true.
    call helicity_init (hel, 0)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
    call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
    call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (pol%state, value)
  end if
else
  call polarization_init_unpolarized (pol, flv)
end if
end subroutine polarization_init_longitudinal

```

This is diagonal polarization: we specify all components explicitly. We use only the positive components. The sum is normalized to unity. We assume that the length of `alpha` is equal to the particle multiplicity.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
  public :: polarization_init_diagonal

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
  subroutine polarization_init_diagonal (pol, flv, alpha)
    type(polarization_t), intent(inout) :: pol
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: alpha
    type(helicity_t) :: hel
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
    logical, dimension(size(alpha)) :: mask
    real(default) :: norm
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: value
    logical :: fermion
    integer :: h, hmax, i
    mask = alpha > 0
    norm = sum (alpha, mask); if (norm == 0) norm = 1
    allocate (value (count (mask)))
    value = pack (alpha / norm, mask)
    call polarization_init (pol, flv)
    pol%polarized = .true.
    fermion = mod (pol%spin_type, 2) == 0
    hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
    i = 0
    select case (pol%multiplicity)
    case (1)
      if (flavor_is_left_handed (flv)) then
        call helicity_init (hel, -hmax)

```

```

        else if (flavor_is_right_handed (flv)) then
            call helicity_init (hel, hmax)
        else
            call helicity_init (hel, 0)
        end if
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
    case (2)
        do h = -hmax, hmax, 2*hmax
            i = i + 1
            if (mask(i)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, h)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
                call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
            end if
        end do
    case default
        do h = -hmax, hmax
            if (fermion .and. h == 0) cycle
            i = i + 1
            if (mask(i)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, h)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
                call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
            end if
        end do
    end select
    call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
    call state_matrix_set_matrix_element (pol%state, value)
end subroutine polarization_init_diagonal

```

Generic polarization: we generate all possible density matrix entries, but the values are left zero.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
    public :: polarization_init_generic

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine polarization_init_generic (pol, flv)
        type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
        logical :: fermion
        integer :: hmax, h1, h2
        call polarization_init (pol, flv)
        pol%polarized = .true.
        fermion = mod (pol%spin_type, 2) == 0
        hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
        select case (pol%multiplicity)
        case (1)
            if (flavor_is_left_handed (flv)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, -hmax)
            else if (flavor_is_right_handed (flv)) then
                call helicity_init (hel, hmax)
            end if
        end select
    end subroutine

```

```

else
    call helicity_init (hel, 0)
end if
call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
case (2)
do h1 = -hmax, hmax, 2*hmax
do h2 = -hmax, hmax, 2*hmax
    call helicity_init (hel, h1, h2)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
    call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
end do
end do
case default
do h1 = -hmax, hmax
    if (fermion .and. h1 == 0) cycle
do h2 = -hmax, hmax
    if (fermion .and. h2 == 0) cycle
    call helicity_init (hel, h1, h2)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
    call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn)
end do
end do
end select
call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
end subroutine polarization_init_generic

```

### 8.1.7 Operations

Combine polarization states by computing the outer product of the state matrices.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
public :: combine_polarization_states

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
subroutine combine_polarization_states (pol, state)
    type(polarization_t), dimension(:), intent(in), target :: pol
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(out) :: state
    call outer_multiply (pol%state, state)
end subroutine combine_polarization_states

```

Transform a polarization density matrix into a polarization vector. This is possible without information loss only for spin-1/2 and for massless particles. To get a unique answer in all cases, we consider only the components with highest weight. Obviously, this loses the longitudinal component of a massive vector, for instance.

This is the inverse operation of `polarization_init_axis` above, where the polarization fraction is set to unity.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
public :: polarization_get_axis

```

```

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
function polarization_get_axis (pol) result (alpha)
  real(default), dimension(3) :: alpha
  type(polarization_t), intent(in), target :: pol
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  complex(default), dimension(2,2) :: value
  type(helicity_t), dimension(2,2) :: hel
  type(helicity_t), dimension(1) :: hel1
  integer :: hmax, i, j
  if (pol%polarized) then
    hmax = pol%spin_type / 2
    call helicity_init (hel(1,1), hmax, hmax)
    call helicity_init (hel(1,2), hmax,-hmax)
    call helicity_init (hel(2,1),-hmax, hmax)
    call helicity_init (hel(2,2),-hmax,-hmax)
    value = 0
    call state_iterator_init (it, pol%state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
      hel1 = state_iterator_get_helicity (it)
      SCAN_HEL: do i = 1, 2
        do j = 1, 2
          if (hel1(1) == hel(i,j)) then
            value(i,j) = state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it)
            exit SCAN_HEL
          end if
        end do
      end do SCAN_HEL
      call state_iterator_advance (it)
    end do
    alpha(1) = value(1,2) + value(2,1)
    alpha(2) = imago * (value(1,2) - value(2,1))
    alpha(3) = value(1,1) - value(2,2)
  else
    alpha = 0
  end if
end function polarization_get_axis

```

This function returns polarization degree and polar and azimuthal angles  $(\theta, \phi)$  of the polarization axis.

```

(Polarizations: public)+≡
public :: polarization_to_angles

(Polarizations: procedures)+≡
subroutine polarization_to_angles (pol, r, theta, phi)
  type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
  real(default), intent(out) :: r, theta, phi
  real(default), dimension(3) :: alpha
  real(default) :: r12
  if (pol%polarized) then
    alpha = polarization_get_axis (pol)
    r = sqrt (sum (alpha**2))
    if (any (alpha /= 0)) then
      r12 = sqrt (alpha(1)**2 + alpha(2)**2)
      theta = atan2 (r12, alpha(3))
    end if
  end if
end subroutine polarization_to_angles

```

```

        if (any (alpha(1:2) /= 0)) then
            phi = atan2 (alpha(2), alpha(1))
        else
            phi = 0
        end if
    else
        theta = 0
    end if
else
    r = 0
    theta = 0
    phi = 0
end if
end subroutine polarization_to_angles

```

### 8.1.8 Sparse Matrix

We introduce a simpler implementation of a sparse matrix that should represent polarization. It consists of an integer array that represents the index values, and a complex array that represents the nonvanishing entries. The number of nonvanishing entries must be known for initialization, but the entries are filled one at a time.

This should eventually replace the more baroque polarization definition above, but in the first stage we introduce it just as an intermediage storage container.

Here is a base type without the special properties of a spin-density matrix.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
    public :: smatrix_t

<Polarizations: types>+≡
    type :: smatrix_t
        private
        integer :: dim = 0
        integer :: n_entry = 0
        integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: index
        complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: value
    contains
        <Polarizations: smatrix: TBP>
    end type smatrix_t

```

Output.

```

<Polarizations: smatrix: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => smatrix_write

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine smatrix_write (object, unit, indent)
        class(smatrix_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u, i, ind
        u = output_unit (unit)
        ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
        if (allocated (object%value)) then

```

```

        if (size (object%value) > 0) then
            do i = 1, object%n_entry
                write (u, "(1x,A,'@(')", advance="no") repeat (" ", ind)
                write (u, "(SP,9999(I2.1,':',1x))", advance="no") &
                    object%index(:,i)
                write (u, "('(', " // FMT_19 // ",','," // FMT_19 // &
                    ",')')'") object%value(i)
            end do
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") repeat (" ", ind)
            write (u, "(A)") "[empty matrix]"
        end if
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") repeat (" ", ind)
        write (u, "(A)") "[undefined matrix]"
    end if
end if
end subroutine smatrix_write

```

Initialization: allocate arrays to the correct size. We specify both the dimension of the matrix (if different from two, this is rather a generic tensor) and the number of nonvanishing entries.

```

<Polarizations: smatrix: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => smatrix_init
<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine smatrix_init (smatrix, dim, n_entry)
        class(smatrix_t), intent(out) :: smatrix
        integer, intent(in) :: dim
        integer, intent(in) :: n_entry
        smatrix%dim = dim
        smatrix%n_entry = n_entry
        allocate (smatrix%index (dim, n_entry))
        allocate (smatrix%value (n_entry))
    end subroutine smatrix_init

```

Fill: one entry at a time.

```

<Polarizations: smatrix: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_entry => smatrix_set_entry
<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine smatrix_set_entry (smatrix, i, index, value)
        class(smatrix_t), intent(inout) :: smatrix
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
        complex(default), intent(in) :: value
        smatrix%index(:,i) = index
        smatrix%value(i) = value
    end subroutine smatrix_set_entry

```

### 8.1.9 Polarization Matrix

As an extension of the more generic `smatrix` type, we implement a proper spin-density matrix. After the matrix has been filled, we can fix spin type and



multiplicity for a particle, check the matrix for consistency, and normalize it if necessary.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
    public :: pmatrix_t

<Polarizations: types>+≡
    type, extends (smatrix_t) :: pmatrix_t
    private
        integer :: spin_type = 0
        integer :: multiplicity = 0
        logical :: massive = .true.
        integer :: chirality = 0
        real(default) :: degree = 1
        logical :: pure = .false.
    contains
        <Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP>
    end type pmatrix_t

```

Output, including extra data. (The indent argument is ignored.)

```

<Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => pmatrix_write

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pmatrix_write (object, unit, indent)
        class(pmatrix_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Polarization: spin density matrix"
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "spin type      = ", object%spin_type
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "multiplicity = ", object%multiplicity
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "massive      = ", object%massive
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "chirality    = ", object%chirality
        write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7)") "pol.degree   = ", object%degree
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "pure state   = ", object%pure
        call object%smatrix_t%write (u, 1)
    end subroutine pmatrix_write

```

This assignment is trivial, but must be coded explicitly.

```

<Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP>+≡
    generic :: assignment(=) => pmatrix_assign_from_smatrix
    procedure, private :: pmatrix_assign_from_smatrix

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pmatrix_assign_from_smatrix (pmatrix, smatrix)
        class(pmatrix_t), intent(out) :: pmatrix
        type(smatrix_t), intent(in) :: smatrix
        pmatrix%smatrix_t = smatrix
    end subroutine pmatrix_assign_from_smatrix

```

Declare spin, multiplicity, and polarization degree. Check whether all entries fit, and whether this is a valid matrix.

The required properties are:

1. all entries apply to the given spin and mass type
2. the diagonal is real
3. only the upper of corresponding off-diagonal elements is specified, i.e., the row index is less than the column index
4. the trace is nonnegative and equal to the polarization degree (the remainder, proportional to the unit matrix, is understood to be present)
5. the trace of the matrix square is positive and less or equal to the trace of the matrix itself, which is the polarization degree. (If it is equal, we are dealing with a pure state).

*(Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP)+≡*

procedure :: normalize => pmatrix\_normalize

*(Polarizations: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine pmatrix_normalize (pmatrix, flv, degree, tolerance)
  class(pmatrix_t), intent(inout) :: pmatrix
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: degree
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: tolerance
  integer :: i, hmax
  logical :: fermion, ok
  real(default) :: trace, trace_sq
  real(default) :: tol
  tol = 0; if (present (tolerance)) tol = tolerance
  pmatrix%spin_type = flavor_get_spin_type (flv)
  pmatrix%massive = flavor_get_mass (flv) /= 0
  if (.not. pmatrix%massive) then
    if (flavor_is_left_handed (flv)) then
      pmatrix%chirality = -1
    else if (flavor_is_right_handed (flv)) then
      pmatrix%chirality = +1
    end if
  end if
  if (pmatrix%spin_type == SCALAR) then
    pmatrix%multiplicity = 1
  else if (pmatrix%massive) then
    pmatrix%multiplicity = pmatrix%spin_type
  else if (pmatrix%chirality == 0) then
    pmatrix%multiplicity = 2
  else
    pmatrix%multiplicity = 1
  end if
  if (present (degree)) then
    if (degree < 0 .or. degree > 1) &
      call msg_error ("polarization degree must be between 0 and 1")
    pmatrix%degree = degree
  end if
  if (size (pmatrix%index, 1) /= 2) call error ("wrong array rank")
  fermion = mod (pmatrix%spin_type, 2) == 0
  hmax = pmatrix%spin_type / 2
  if (pmatrix%n_entry > 0) then
    if (fermion) then
```

```

        if (pmatrx%massive) then
            ok = all (pmatrx%index /= 0) &
                .and. all (abs (pmatrx%index) <= hmax)
        else if (pmatrx%chirality == -1) then
            ok = all (pmatrx%index == -hmax)
        else if (pmatrx%chirality == +1) then
            ok = all (pmatrx%index == +hmax)
        else
            ok = all (abs (pmatrx%index) == hmax)
        end if
    else
        if (pmatrx%massive) then
            ok = all (abs (pmatrx%index) <= hmax)
        else
            ok = all (abs (pmatrx%index) == hmax)
        end if
    end if
    if (.not. ok) call error ("illegal index value")
else
    pmatrx%degree = 0
    pmatrx%pure = pmatrx%multiplicity == 1
    return
end if
trace = 0
do i = 1, pmatrx%n_entry
    associate (index => pmatrx%index(:,i), value => pmatrx%value(i))
        if (index(1) == index(2)) then
            if (abs (aimag (value)) > tol) call error ("diagonal must be real")
            value = real (value, kind=default)
            trace = trace + value
        else if (any (pmatrx%index(1,:) == index(2) &
            .and. pmatrx%index(2,:) == index(1))) then
            call error ("redundant off-diagonal entry")
        else if (index(2) < index (1)) then
            index = index([2,1])
            value = conjg (value)
        end if
    end associate
end do
if (abs (trace) <= tol) call error ("trace must not vanish")
trace = real (trace, kind=default)
pmatrx%value = pmatrx%value / trace * pmatrx%degree
trace_sq = (1 - pmatrx%degree ** 2) / pmatrx%multiplicity
do i = 1, pmatrx%n_entry
    associate (index => pmatrx%index(:,i), value => pmatrx%value(i))
        if (index(1) == index(2)) then
            trace_sq = trace_sq + abs (value) ** 2
        else
            trace_sq = trace_sq + 2 * abs (value) ** 2
        end if
    end associate
end do
if (pmatrx%multiplicity == 1) then
    pmatrx%pure = .true.

```

```

else if (abs (trace_sq - 1) <= tol) then
  pmatrix%pure = .true.
else if (trace_sq - 1 > tol .or. trace_sq < -tol) then
  print *, "Trace of matrix square = ", trace_sq
  call error ("not permissible as density matrix")
end if
contains
subroutine error (msg)
  character(*), intent(in) :: msg
  call pmatrix%write ()
  call msg_fatal ("Spin density matrix: " // msg)
end subroutine error
end subroutine pmatrix_normalize

```

A polarized matrix is defined as one with a positive polarization degree, even if the actual matrix is trivial.

```

<Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_polarized => pmatrix_is_polarized

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
  elemental function pmatrix_is_polarized (pmatrix) result (flag)
    class(pmatrix_t), intent(in) :: pmatrix
    logical :: flag
    flag = pmatrix%degree > 0
  end function pmatrix_is_polarized

```

Check if there are only diagonal entries.

```

<Polarizations: pmatrix: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_diagonal => pmatrix_is_diagonal

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
  elemental function pmatrix_is_diagonal (pmatrix) result (flag)
    class(pmatrix_t), intent(in) :: pmatrix
    logical :: flag
    flag = all (pmatrix%index(1,:) == pmatrix%index(2,:))
  end function pmatrix_is_diagonal

```

### 8.1.10 Data Translation

Create a `polarization_t` object from the contents of a normalized `pmatrix_t` object.

Note for off diagonal entries: the convention for the arguments of `helicity_init` is (h2,h1), so the helicity of the conjugate state is inserted first.

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
  public :: polarization_init_pmatrix

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
    type(pmatrix_t), intent(in) :: pmatrix
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn
    type(helicity_t) :: hel

```

```

integer :: i, h, h1, h2, hmin, hmax, dh
logical :: fermion
complex(default) :: value
pol%polarized = .true.
pol%spin_type = pmatrix%spin_type
pol%multiplicity = pmatrix%multiplicity
call state_matrix_init (pol%state, store_values = .true.)
fermion = mod (pol%spin_type, 2) == 0
h = pol%spin_type / 2
select case (pmatrix%chirality)
case (-1)
    hmin = -h
    hmax = -h
case (0)
    hmin = -h
    hmax = h
case (1)
    hmin = h
    hmax = h
end select
if (pol%multiplicity == 1) then
    dh = 1
else if (pol%multiplicity == 2) then
    dh = hmax - hmin
else
    dh = 1
end if
if (pmatrix%degree < 1) then
    value = (1 - pmatrix%degree) / pol%multiplicity
    do h = hmin, hmax, dh
        if (h == 0 .and. fermion) cycle
        call helicity_init (hel, h)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
        call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value = value)
    end do
end if
do i = 1, pmatrix%n_entry
    associate (index => pmatrix%index(:,i), value => pmatrix%value(i))
        h1 = index(1)
        h2 = index(2)
        if (h1 == h2) then
            call helicity_init (hel, h1)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value = value, &
                sum_values = .true.)
        else
            call helicity_init (hel, h2, h1)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value = value)
            call helicity_init (hel, h1, h2)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), hel)
            call state_matrix_add_state (pol%state, qn, value = conjg (value))
        end if
    end associate
end do

```

```

end do
call state_matrix_freeze (pol%state)
end subroutine polarization_init_pmatrix

```

### 8.1.11 Unit tests

```

<Polarizations: public>+≡
public :: polarization_test

<Polarizations: procedures>+≡
subroutine polarization_test (u, results)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<Polarizations: execute tests>
end subroutine polarization_test

```

#### Polarization type

Checking the setup for polarization.

```

<Polarizations: execute tests>≡
call test (polarization_1, "polarization_1", &
"check polarization setup", &
u, results)

<Polarizations: tests>≡
subroutine polarization_1 (u)
use os_interface
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(polarization_t) :: pol
type(flavor_t) :: flv
real(default), dimension(3) :: alpha
real(default) :: r, theta, phi

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: polarization_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test polarization setup"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model &
(var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Unpolarized fermion"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call flavor_init (flv, 1, model)
call polarization_init_unpolarized (pol, flv)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "    diagonal =", polarization_is_diagonal (pol)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Unpolarized fermion"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, 0._default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transversally polarized fermion, phi=0"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_transversal (pol, flv, 0._default, 1._default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "    diagonal =", polarization_is_diagonal (pol)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transversally polarized fermion, phi=0.9, frac=0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_transversal (pol, flv, 0.9_default, 0.8_default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "    diagonal =", polarization_is_diagonal (pol)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* All polarization directions of a fermion"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_generic (pol, flv)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)
call flavor_init (flv, 21, model)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized gluon, frac=0.3"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, 0.3_default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)
call flavor_init (flv, 23, model)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized massive vector, frac=-0.7"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, -0.7_default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_circular (pol, flv, 1._default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Longitudinally polarized massive vector, frac=0.4"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_longitudinal (pol, flv, 0.4_default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Longitudinally polarized massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_longitudinal (pol, flv, 1._default)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Diagonally polarized massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_diagonal &
      (pol, flv, [0._default, 1._default, 2._default])
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* All polarization directions of a massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call polarization_init_generic (pol, flv)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)
call flavor_init (flv, 21, model)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Axis polarization (0.2, 0.4, 0.6)"
write (u, "(A)")

alpha = [0.2_default, 0.4_default, 0.6_default]
call polarization_init_axis (pol, flv, alpha)
call polarization_write (pol, u)

```



```

write (u, "(A)") "    Recovered axis:"
alpha = polarization_get_axis (pol)
write (u, "(A)") "    Angle polarization (0.5, 0.6, -1)"
r = 0.5_default
theta = 0.6_default
phi = -1._default
call polarization_init_angles (pol, flv, r, theta, phi)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
write (u, "(A)") "    Recovered parameters (r, theta, phi):"
call polarization_to_angles (pol, r, theta, phi)
write (u, "(A,3(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "    ", r, theta, phi
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: polarization_1"

end subroutine polarization_1

```

### Sparse-Matrix type

Use a sparse density matrix universally as the input for setting up polarization.

```

<Polarizations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (polarization_2, "polarization_2", &
    "matrix polarization setup", &
    u, results)

<Polarizations: tests>+≡
subroutine polarization_2 (u)
  use os_interface
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(polarization_t) :: pol
  real(default), dimension(3) :: alpha
  type(pmatrix_t) :: pmatrix
  real(default), parameter :: tolerance = 1e-8_default

  write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: polarization_2"
  write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: matrix polarization setup"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)") "* Reading model file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

  write (u, "(A)") "* Unpolarized fermion"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call flavor_init (flv, 1, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 0)
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Unpolarized fermion"
write (u, "(A)")

call pmatrix%init (2, 0)
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transversally polarized fermion, phi=0"
write (u, "(A)")

call pmatrix%init (2, 3)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (2, [+1,+1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (3, [-1,+1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transversally polarized fermion, phi=0.9, frac=0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

call pmatrix%init (2, 3)

```

```

call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (2, [+1,+1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (3, [-1,+1], exp ((0._default, -0.9_default)))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.8_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Left-handed massive fermion, frac=1"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 11, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Left-handed massive fermion, frac=0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 11, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.8_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Left-handed massless fermion"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 12, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 0)
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

```

```

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Right-handed massless fermion, frac=0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, -12, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.5_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized gluon, frac=0.3"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 21, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.3_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized massive vector, frac=0.7"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 23, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.7_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Circularly polarized massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 23, model)

```

```

call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Longitudinally polarized massive vector, frac=0.4"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 23, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [0,0], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 0.4_default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Longitudinally polarized massive vector"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 23, model)
call pmatrix%init (2, 1)
call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [0,0], (1._default, 0._default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "polarized = ", pmatrix%is_polarized ()
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "diagonal = ", pmatrix%is_diagonal ()
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Axis polarization (0.2, 0.4, 0.6)"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv, 11, model)
alpha = [0.2_default, 0.4_default, 0.6_default]
alpha = alpha / sqrt (sum (alpha**2))
call pmatrix%init (2, 3)

```

```

call pmatrix%set_entry (1, [-1,-1], cmplx (1 - alpha(3), kind=default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (2, [1,-1], &
    cmplx (alpha(1), -alpha(2), kind=default))
call pmatrix%set_entry (3, [1,1], cmplx (1 + alpha(3), kind=default))
call pmatrix%normalize (flv, 1._default, tolerance)
call pmatrix%write (u)
write (u, *)

call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol, pmatrix)
call polarization_write (pol, u)
call polarization_final (pol)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: polarization_2"

end subroutine polarization_2

```

## 8.2 Particles

This module defines the `particle_t` object type, and the methods and operations that deal with it.

`<particles.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

module particles

*<Use kinds>*

*<Use strings>*

*<Use file utils>*

use limits, only: FMT\_16, FMT\_17, FMT\_19 !NODEP!

use diagnostics !NODEP!

use lorentz !NODEP!

use unit\_tests

use subevents

use expressions

use models

use flavors

use colors

use helicities

use quantum\_numbers

use state\_matrices

use interactions

use evaluators

use polarizations

use hepmc\_interface

*<Standard module head>*

*<Particles: public>*

*<Particles: parameters>*

```

    <Particles: types>

    <Particles: interfaces>

    contains

    <Particles: procedures>

    <Particles: tests>

    end module particles

```

### 8.2.1 The particle type

#### Particle status codes

The overall status codes (incoming/outgoing etc.) are inherited from the module `subevents`.

Polarization status:

```

<Particles: parameters>≡
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_UNPOLARIZED = 0
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY = 1
    integer, parameter, public :: PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION = 2

```

#### Definition

The quantum numbers are flavor (from which invariant particle properties can be derived), color, and polarization. The particle may be unpolarized. In this case, `hel` and `pol` are unspecified. If it has a definite helicity, the `hel` component is defined. If it has a generic polarization, the `pol` component is defined. For each particle we store the four-momentum and the invariant mass squared, i.e., the squared norm of the four-momentum. There is also an optional list of parent and child particles, for bookkeeping in physical events.

```

<Particles: public>≡
    public :: particle_t

<Particles: types>≡
    type :: particle_t
    private
        integer :: status = PRT_UNDEFINED
        integer :: polarization = PRT_UNPOLARIZED
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        type(color_t) :: col
        type(helicity_t) :: hel
        type(polarization_t) :: pol
        type(vector4_t) :: p = vector4_null
        real(default) :: p2 = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: child
    end type particle_t

```

Particle initializers:

```

(Particles: interfaces)≡
  interface particle_init
    module procedure particle_init_particle
    module procedure particle_init_state
    module procedure particle_init_hePMC
  end interface

```

Copy a particle. (Deep copy) The excludes the parent-child relations.

```

(Particles: procedures)≡
  subroutine particle_init_particle (prt_out, prt_in)
    type(particle_t), intent(out) :: prt_out
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt_in
    prt_out%status = prt_in%status
    prt_out%polarization = prt_in%polarization
    prt_out%flv = prt_in%flv
    prt_out%col = prt_in%col
    prt_out%hel = prt_in%hel
    prt_out%pol = prt_in%pol
    prt_out%p = prt_in%p
    prt_out%p2 = prt_in%p2
  end subroutine particle_init_particle

```

Initialize a particle using a single-particle state matrix which determines flavor, color, and polarization. The state matrix must have unique flavor and color. The factorization mode determines whether the particle is unpolarized, has definite helicity, or generic polarization. This mode is translated into the polarization status.

```

(Particles: procedures)+≡
  subroutine particle_init_state (prt, state, status, mode)
    type(particle_t), intent(out) :: prt
    type(state_matrix_t), intent(in) :: state
    integer, intent(in) :: status, mode
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    prt%status = status
    call state_iterator_init (it, state)
    prt%flv = state_iterator_get_flavor (it, 1)
    if (flavor_is_beam_remnant (prt%flv)) prt%status = PRT_BEAM_REMNANT
    prt%col = state_iterator_get_color (it, 1)
    select case (mode)
    case (FM_SELECT_HELICITY)
      prt%hel = state_iterator_get_helicity (it, 1)
      prt%polarization = PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY
    case (FM_FACTOR_HELICITY)
      call polarization_init_state_matrix (prt%pol, state)
      prt%polarization = PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION
    end select
  end subroutine particle_init_state

```

Initialize a particle from a HepMC particle object. The model is necessary for making a fully qualified flavor component. We have the additional flag



polarized which tells whether the polarization information should be interpreted or ignored, and the lookup array of barcodes. Note that the lookup array is searched linearly, a possible bottleneck for large particle arrays. If necessary, the barcode array could be replaced by a hash table.

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine particle_init_hepmc (prt, hpert, model, polarization, barcode)
  type(particle_t), intent(out) :: prt
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: hpert
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: polarization
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: barcode
  type(hepmc_polarization_t) :: hpol
  integer :: n_parents, n_children
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent_barcode, child_barcode
  integer :: i
  select case (hepmc_particle_get_status (hpert))
  case (1); prt%status = PRT_OUTGOING
  case (2); prt%status = PRT_RESONANT
  case (3); prt%status = PRT_VIRTUAL
  end select
  call flavor_init (prt%flv, hepmt_particle_get_pdg (hpert), model)
  if (flavor_is_beam_remnant (prt%flv)) prt%status = PRT_BEAM_REMNANT
  call color_init (prt%col, hepmt_particle_get_color (hpert))
  prt%polarization = polarization
  select case (polarization)
  case (PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
    hpol = hepmt_particle_get_polarization (hpert)
    call hepmt_polarization_to_hel (hpol, prt%flv, prt%hel)
    call hepmt_polarization_final (hpol)
  case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
    hpol = hepmt_particle_get_polarization (hpert)
    call hepmt_polarization_to_pol (hpol, prt%flv, prt%pol)
    call hepmt_polarization_final (hpol)
  end select
  prt%p = hepmt_particle_get_momentum (hpert)
  prt%p2 = hepmt_particle_get_mass_squared (hpert)
  n_parents = hepmt_particle_get_n_parents (hpert)
  n_children = hepmt_particle_get_n_children (hpert)
  allocate (parent_barcode (n_parents), prt%parent (n_parents))
  allocate (child_barcode (n_children), prt%child (n_children))
  parent_barcode = hepmt_particle_get_parent_barcodes (hpert)
  child_barcode = hepmt_particle_get_child_barcodes (hpert)
  do i = 1, size (barcode)
    where (parent_barcode == barcode(i)) prt%parent = i
    where (child_barcode == barcode(i)) prt%child = i
  end do
  if (prt%status == PRT_VIRTUAL .and. n_parents == 0) &
    prt%status = PRT_INCOMING
end subroutine particle_init_hepmc
```

Finalizer. The polarization component has pointers allocated.

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```
elemental subroutine particle_final (prt)
```

```

        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        call polarization_final (prt%pol)
    end subroutine particle_final

```

## I/O

*<Particles: public>+≡*

```

    public :: particle_write

```

*<Particles: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine particle_write (prt, unit, testflag)
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    logical :: pacified
    integer :: u
    real(default) :: pp2
    character(len=7) :: fmt
    pacified = .false.
    if (present (testflag)) pacified = testflag
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_19, FMT_16, testflag)
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    select case (prt%status)
    case (PRT_UNDEFINED); write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[~]"
    case (PRT_BEAM);      write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[b]"
    case (PRT_INCOMING);  write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[i]"
    case (PRT_OUTGOING);  write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[o]"
    case (PRT_VIRTUAL);   write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[v]"
    case (PRT_RESONANT);  write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[r]"
    case (PRT_BEAM_REMNANT); write (u, "(1x, A)", advance="no") "[x]"
    end select
    write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
    call flavor_write (prt%flv, unit)
    call color_write (prt%col, unit)
    select case (prt%polarization)
    case (PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
        call helicity_write (prt%hel, unit)
        write (u, *)
    case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
        write (u, *)
        call polarization_write (prt%pol, unit)
    case default
        write (u, *)
    end select
    call vector4_write (prt%p, unit, testflag = testflag)
    pp2 = prt%p2
    if (pacified) call pacify (pp2, tolerance = 1E-10_default)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x," // fmt // ")") "T = ", pp2
    if (allocated (prt%parent)) then
        if (size (prt%parent) /= 0) then
            write (u, "(1x,A,40(1x,I0))") "Parents: ", prt%parent
        end if
    end if
    if (allocated (prt%child)) then

```

```

        if (size (prt%child) /= 0) then
            write (u, "(1x,A,40(1x,I0))") "Children:", prt%child
        end if
    end if
end subroutine particle_write

```

Binary I/O:

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_write_raw (prt, u)
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    write (u) prt%status, prt%polarization
    call flavor_write_raw (prt%flv, u)
    call color_write_raw (prt%col, u)
    select case (prt%polarization)
    case (PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
        call helicity_write_raw (prt%hel, u)
    case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
        call polarization_write_raw (prt%pol, u)
    end select
    call vector4_write_raw (prt%p, u)
    write (u) prt%p2
    write (u) allocated (prt%parent)
    if (allocated (prt%parent)) then
        write (u) size (prt%parent)
        write (u) prt%parent
    end if
    write (u) allocated (prt%child)
    if (allocated (prt%child)) then
        write (u) size (prt%child)
        write (u) prt%child
    end if
end subroutine particle_write_raw

subroutine particle_read_raw (prt, u, iostat)
    type(particle_t), intent(out) :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    logical :: allocated_parent, allocated_child
    integer :: size_parent, size_child
    read (u, iostat=iostat) prt%status, prt%polarization
    call flavor_read_raw (prt%flv, u, iostat=iostat)
    call color_read_raw (prt%col, u, iostat=iostat)
    select case (prt%polarization)
    case (PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
        call helicity_read_raw (prt%hel, u, iostat=iostat)
    case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
        call polarization_read_raw (prt%pol, u, iostat=iostat)
    end select
    call vector4_read_raw (prt%p, u, iostat=iostat)
    read (u, iostat=iostat) prt%p2
    read (u, iostat=iostat) allocated_parent
    if (allocated_parent) then

```

```

        read (u, iostat=iostat) size_parent
        allocate (prt%parent (size_parent))
        read (u, iostat=iostat) prt%parent
    end if
    read (u, iostat=iostat) allocated_child
    if (allocated_child) then
        read (u, iostat=iostat) size_child
        allocate (prt%child (size_child))
        read (u, iostat=iostat) prt%child
    end if
end subroutine particle_read_raw

```

### Setting contents

Reset the status code. Where applicable, set  $p^2$  assuming that the particle is on-shell.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_reset_status

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine particle_reset_status (prt, status)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: status
        prt%status = status
        select case (status)
        case (PRT_BEAM, PRT_INCOMING, PRT_OUTGOING)
            prt%p2 = flavor_get_mass (prt%flv) ** 2
        end select
    end subroutine particle_reset_status

```

The color can be given explicitly.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_color

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine particle_set_color (prt, col)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        prt%col = col
    end subroutine particle_set_color

```

The flavor can be given explicitly.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_flavor

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_flavor (prt, flv)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
        prt%flv = flv
    end subroutine particle_set_flavor

```

Manually set the model for the particle flavor. This is required, e.g., if the particle has been read from file.

```

(Particles: public) +=
    public :: particle_set_model

(Particles: procedures) +=
    subroutine particle_set_model (prt, model)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        call flavor_set_model (prt%flv, model)
    end subroutine particle_set_model

```

The momentum is set independent of the quantum numbers.

```

(Particles: public) +=
    public :: particle_set_momentum

(Particles: procedures) +=
    elemental subroutine particle_set_momentum (prt, p, p2, on_shell)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: p2
        logical, intent(in), optional :: on_shell
        prt%p = p
        if (present (on_shell)) then
            if (on_shell) then
                if (flavor_is_associated (prt%flv)) then
                    prt%p2 = flavor_get_mass (prt%flv) ** 2
                    return
                end if
            end if
        end if
        if (present (p2)) then
            prt%p2 = p2
        else
            prt%p2 = p ** 2
        end if
    end subroutine particle_set_momentum

```

Set resonance information. This should be done after momentum assignment, because we need to know whether the particle is spacelike or timelike. The resonance flag is defined only for virtual particles.

```

(Particles: procedures) +=
    elemental subroutine particle_set_resonance_flag (prt, resonant)
        type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        logical, intent(in) :: resonant
        select case (prt%status)
            case (PRT_VIRTUAL)
                if (resonant) prt%status = PRT_RESONANT
        end select
    end subroutine particle_set_resonance_flag

```

Set children and parents information.

```

(Particles: public) +=
  public :: particle_set_children
  public :: particle_set_parents

(Particles: procedures) +=
  subroutine particle_set_children (prt, idx)
    type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: idx
    if (allocated (prt%child)) deallocate (prt%child)
    allocate (prt%child (count (idx /= 0)))
    prt%child = pack (idx, idx /= 0)
  end subroutine particle_set_children

  subroutine particle_set_parents (prt, idx)
    type(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: idx
    if (allocated (prt%parent)) deallocate (prt%parent)
    allocate (prt%parent (count (idx /= 0)))
    prt%parent = pack (idx, idx /= 0)
  end subroutine particle_set_parents

```

## Accessing contents

The status code.

```

(Particles: public) +=
  public :: particle_get_status

(Particles: procedures) +=
  elemental function particle_get_status (prt) result (status)
    integer :: status
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    status = prt%status
  end function particle_get_status

```

Return true if the status is either INCOMING, OUTGOING or RESONANT. BEAM is kept, if keep\_beams is set true.

```

(Particles: procedures) +=
  elemental function particle_is_real (prt, keep_beams) result (flag)
    logical :: flag, kb
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    kb = .false.
    if (present (keep_beams)) kb = keep_beams
    select case (prt%status)
    case (PRT_INCOMING, PRT_OUTGOING, PRT_RESONANT)
      flag = .true.
    case (PRT_BEAM)
      flag = kb
    case default
      flag = .false.
    end select

```

```
end function particle_is_real
```

Polarization status.

```
<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_polarization_status

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  elemental function particle_get_polarization_status (prt) result (status)
    integer :: status
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    status = prt%polarization
  end function particle_get_polarization_status
```

Return the PDG code from the flavor component directly.

```
<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_pdg

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  elemental function particle_get_pdg (prt) result (pdg)
    integer :: pdg
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    pdg = flavor_get_pdg (prt%flv)
  end function particle_get_pdg
```

Return the color and anticolor quantum numbers.

```
<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_color

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  pure function particle_get_color (prt) result (col)
    integer, dimension(2) :: col
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    col(1) = color_get_col (prt%col)
    col(2) = color_get_acl (prt%col)
  end function particle_get_color
```

Return the polarization density matrix (as a shallow copy).

```
<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_polarization

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  function particle_get_polarization (prt) result (pol)
    type(polarization_t) :: pol
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    pol = prt%pol
  end function particle_get_polarization
```

Return the helicity (if defined and diagonal).

```
<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_helicity
```

```

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  elemental function particle_get_helicity (prt) result (hel)
    integer :: hel
    integer, dimension(2) :: hel_arr
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    hel = 0
    if (helicity_is_defined (prt%hel) .and. &
        helicity_is_diagonal (prt%hel)) then
      hel_arr = helicity_get (prt%hel)
      hel = hel_arr (1)
    end if
  end function particle_get_helicity

```

Return the number of children/parents

```

<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_n_parents
  public :: particle_get_n_children

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  elemental function particle_get_n_parents (prt) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (allocated (prt%parent)) then
      n = size (prt%parent)
    else
      n = 0
    end if
  end function particle_get_n_parents

  elemental function particle_get_n_children (prt) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    if (allocated (prt%child)) then
      n = size (prt%child)
    else
      n = 0
    end if
  end function particle_get_n_children

```

Return the array of parents/children.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_get_parents
  public :: particle_get_children

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  function particle_get_parents (prt) result (parent)
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent
    if (allocated (prt%parent)) then
      allocate (parent (size (prt%parent)))
      parent = prt%parent
    else
      allocate (parent (0))
    end if
  end function

```



```

end function particle_get_parents

function particle_get_children (prt) result (child)
  type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: child
  if (allocated (prt%child)) then
    allocate (child (size (prt%child)))
    child = prt%child
  else
    allocate (child (0))
  end if
end function particle_get_children

```

Return momentum and momentum squared.

```

(Particles: public) +=
  public :: particle_get_momentum
  public :: particle_get_p2

(Particles: procedures) +=
  elemental function particle_get_momentum (prt) result (p)
    type(vector4_t) :: p
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    p = prt%p
  end function particle_get_momentum

  elemental function particle_get_p2 (prt) result (p2)
    real(default) :: p2
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    p2 = prt%p2
  end function particle_get_p2

```

### 8.2.2 Particle sets

A particle set is what is usually called an event: an array of particles. The individual particle entries carry momentum, quantum numbers, polarization, and optionally connections. There is (also optionally) a correlated state-density matrix that maintains spin correlations that are lost in the individual particle entries.

```

(Particles: public) +=
  public :: particle_set_t

(Particles: types) +=
  type :: particle_set_t
    ! private
    integer :: n_beam = 0
    integer :: n_in = 0
    integer :: n_vir = 0
    integer :: n_out = 0
    integer :: n_tot = 0
    type(particle_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
    type(state_matrix_t) :: correlated_state
  end type particle_set_t

```

A particle set can be initialized from an interaction or from a HepMC event record.

```

(Particles: public)+≡
    public :: particle_set_init

(Particles: interfaces)+≡
    interface particle_set_init
        module procedure particle_set_init_interaction
        module procedure particle_set_init_hepmc
    end interface

```

When a particle set is initialized from a given interaction, we have to determine the branch within the original state matrix that fixes the particle quantum numbers. This is done with the appropriate probabilities, based on a random number `x`. The `mode` determines whether the individual particles become unpolarized, or take a definite (diagonal) helicity, or acquire single-particle polarization matrices. The flag `keep_correlations` tells whether the spin-correlation matrix is to be calculated and stored in addition to the particles. The flag `keep_virtual` tells whether virtual particles should be dropped. Note that if virtual particles are dropped, the spin-correlation matrix makes no sense, and parent-child relations are not set.

For a correct disentangling of color and flavor (in the presence of helicity), we consider two interactions. `int` has no color information, and is used to select a flavor state. Consequently, we trace over helicities here. `int_flows` contains color-flow and potentially helicity information, but is useful only after the flavor combination has been chosen. So this interaction is used to select helicity and color, but restricted to the selected flavor combination.

`int` and `int_flows` may be identical if there is only a single (or no) color flow. If there is just a single flavor combination, `x(1)` can be set to zero.

The current algorithm of evaluator convolution requires that the beam particles are assumed outgoing (in the beam interaction) and become virtual in all derived interactions. In the particle set they should be re-identified as incoming. The optional integer `n_incoming` can be used to perform this correction.

The flag `is_valid` is false if factorization of the state is not possible, in particular if the squared matrix element is zero.

```

(Particles: procedures)+≡
    subroutine particle_set_init_interaction &
        (particle_set, is_valid, int, int_flows, mode, x, &
         keep_correlations, keep_virtual, n_incoming)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: particle_set
    logical, intent(out) :: is_valid
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int, int_flows
    integer, intent(in) :: mode
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: x
    logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations, keep_virtual
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_incoming
    type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: flavor_state
    type(state_matrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: single_state
    integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: qn
    logical :: ok
    integer :: i, j

```

```

if (present (n_incoming)) then
  n_in = n_incoming
  n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int) - n_incoming
else
  n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int)
  n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int)
end if
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (int)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int)
particle_set%n_in = n_in
particle_set%n_out = n_out
if (keep_virtual) then
  particle_set%n_vir = n_vir
  particle_set%n_tot = n_tot
else
  particle_set%n_vir = 0
  particle_set%n_tot = n_in + n_out
end if
call interaction_factorize &
  (int, FM_IGNORE_HELICITY, x(1), is_valid, flavor_state)
allocate (qn (n_tot,1))
do i = 1, n_tot
  qn(i,:) = state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers (flavor_state(i), 1)
end do
if (keep_correlations .and. keep_virtual) then
  call interaction_factorize (int_flows, mode, x(2), ok, &
    single_state, particle_set%correlated_state, qn(:,1))
else
  call interaction_factorize (int_flows, mode, x(2), ok, &
    single_state, qn_in=qn(:,1))
end if
is_valid = is_valid .and. ok
allocate (particle_set%prt (particle_set%n_tot))
j = 1
do i = 1, n_tot
  if (i <= n_in) then
    call particle_init &
      (particle_set%prt(j), single_state(i), PRT_INCOMING, mode)
    call particle_set_momentum &
      (particle_set%prt(j), interaction_get_momentum (int, i))
  else if (i <= n_in + n_vir) then
    if (.not. keep_virtual) cycle
    call particle_init &
      (particle_set%prt(j), single_state(i), PRT_VIRTUAL, mode)
    call particle_set_momentum &
      (particle_set%prt(j), interaction_get_momentum (int, i))
  else
    call particle_init &
      (particle_set%prt(j), single_state(i), PRT_OUTGOING, mode)
    call particle_set_momentum &
      (particle_set%prt(j), interaction_get_momentum (int, i), &
        on_shell = .true.)
  end if
  if (keep_virtual) then

```

```

        call particle_set_children &
            (particle_set%prt(j), interaction_get_children (int, i))
        call particle_set_parents &
            (particle_set%prt(j), interaction_get_parents (int, i))
    end if
    j = j + 1
end do
if (keep_virtual) then
    call particle_set_resonance_flag &
        (particle_set%prt, interaction_get_resonance_flags (int))
end if
call state_matrix_final (flavor_state)
call state_matrix_final (single_state)
end subroutine particle_set_init_interaction

```

If a particle set is initialized from a HepMC event record, we have to specify the treatment of polarization (unpolarized or density matrix) which is common to all particles. Correlated polarization information is not available.

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_set_init_hepmc &
    (particle_set, evt, model, polarization)
type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: particle_set
type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
integer, intent(in) :: polarization
type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t) :: it
type(hepmc_particle_t) :: prt
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: barcode
integer :: n_tot, i
n_tot = 0
call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_init (it, evt)
do while (hepmc_event_particle_iterator_is_valid (it))
    n_tot = n_tot + 1
    call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance (it)
end do
allocate (barcode (n_tot))
call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_reset (it)
do i = 1, n_tot
    barcode(i) = hepmc_particle_get_barcode &
        (hepmc_event_particle_iterator_get (it))
    call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance (it)
end do
allocate (particle_set%prt (n_tot))
call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_reset (it)
do i = 1, n_tot
    prt = hepmc_event_particle_iterator_get (it)
    call particle_init (particle_set%prt(i), &
        prt, model, polarization, barcode)
    call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance (it)
end do
call hepmc_event_particle_iterator_final (it)
particle_set%n_tot = n_tot
particle_set%n_beam = &

```

```

        count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_BEAM)
particle_set%n_in = &
        count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_INCOMING)
particle_set%n_out = &
        count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_OUTGOING)
particle_set%n_vir = &
        particle_set%n_tot - particle_set%n_in - particle_set%n_out
end subroutine particle_set_init_hePMC

```

Manually set the model for the stored particles.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_set_model

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_set_model (particle_set, model)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, particle_set%n_tot
            call particle_set_model (particle_set%prt(i), model)
        end do
    end subroutine particle_set_set_model

```

Pointer components are hidden inside the particle polarization, and in the correlated state matrix.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_final

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_final (particle_set)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
        if (allocated (particle_set%prt)) then
            call particle_final (particle_set%prt)
            deallocate(particle_set%prt)
        end if
        call state_matrix_final (particle_set%correlated_state)
    end subroutine particle_set_final

```

Output (default format)

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_write

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_write (particle_set, unit, testflag)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Particle set:"
        call write_separator (u)
        if (particle_set%n_tot /= 0) then
            do i = 1, particle_set%n_tot
                write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)", advance="no") "Particle", i
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine particle_set_write

```

```

        call particle_write (particle_set%prt(i), u, testflag)
    end do
    if (state_matrix_is_defined (particle_set%correlated_state)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, *) "Correlated state density matrix:"
        call state_matrix_write (particle_set%correlated_state, u)
    end if
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[empty]"
end if
end subroutine particle_set_write

```

### 8.2.3 I/O formats

Here, we define input/output of particle sets in various formats. This is the right place since particle sets contain most of the event information.

All write/read routines take as first argument the object, as second argument the I/O unit which in this case is a mandatory argument. Then follow further event data.

#### Internal binary format

This format is supposed to contain the complete information, so the particle data set can be fully reconstructed. The exception is the model part of the particle flavors; this is unassigned for the flavor values read from file.

NOTE: The input routine for a nontrivial state matrix is broken

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_write_raw
    public :: particle_set_read_raw

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_write_raw (particle_set, u)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        integer :: i
        write (u) &
            particle_set%n_beam, particle_set%n_in, &
            particle_set%n_vir, particle_set%n_out
        write (u) particle_set%n_tot
        do i = 1, particle_set%n_tot
            call particle_write_raw (particle_set%prt(i), u)
        end do
        if (state_matrix_is_defined (particle_set%correlated_state)) then
            call msg_bug ("Write particle set (raw): nontrivial state matrix not supported yet")
        else
            call state_matrix_write_raw (particle_set%correlated_state, u)
        end if
    end subroutine particle_set_write_raw

    subroutine particle_set_read_raw (particle_set, u, iostat)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: particle_set
        integer, intent(in) :: u

```

```

integer, intent(out) :: iostat
integer :: i
read (u, iostat=iostat) &
    particle_set%n_beam, particle_set%n_in, &
    particle_set%n_vir, particle_set%n_out
read (u, iostat=iostat) particle_set%n_tot
allocate (particle_set%prt (particle_set%n_tot))
do i = 1, size (particle_set%prt)
    call particle_read_raw (particle_set%prt(i), u, iostat=iostat)
end do
call state_matrix_read_raw (particle_set%correlated_state, u, iostat=iostat)
end subroutine particle_set_read_raw

```

## HepMC format

The master output function fills a HepMC GenEvent object that is already initialized, but has no vertices in it.

We first set up the vertex lists and enter the vertices into the HepMC event. Then, we assign first all incoming particles and then all outgoing particles to their associated vertices. Particles which have neither parent nor children entries (this should not happen) are dropped.

Finally, we insert the beam particles. If there are none, use the incoming particles instead. Transform a particle into a `hepmc_particle` object, including color and polarization. The HepMC status is equivalent to the HEPEVT status, in particular: 0 = null entry, 1 = physical particle, 2 = decayed/fragmented SM hadron, tau or muon, 3 = other unphysical particle entry, 4 = incoming particles, 11 = intermediate resonance such as squarks. The use of 11 for intermediate resonances is as done by HERWIG, see <http://herwig.hepforge.org/trac/wiki/FaQs>.

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_to_hepmc (prt, hprt)
    type(particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(out) :: hprt
    integer :: hepmc_status
    select case (particle_get_status (prt))
    case (PRT_UNDEFINED)
        hepmc_status = 0
    case (PRT_OUTGOING)
        hepmc_status = 1
    case (PRT_BEAM)
        hepmc_status = 4
    case (PRT_RESONANT)
        if(abs(particle_get_pdg(prt)) == 13 .or. &
            abs(particle_get_pdg(prt)) == 15) then
            hepmc_status = 2
        else
            hepmc_status = 11
        end if
    case default
        hepmc_status = 3
    end select
    call hepmc_particle_init (hprt, &

```

```

        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        hepmc_status)
call hepmc_particle_set_color (hpert, &
    particle_get_color (prt))
select case (particle_get_polarization_status (prt))
case (PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
    call hepmc_particle_set_polarization (hpert, &
        particle_get_helicity (prt))
case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
    call hepmc_particle_set_polarization (hpert, &
        particle_get_polarization (prt))
end select
end subroutine particle_to_hepmc

```

*(Particles: public)*+≡

```
public :: hepmc_event_from_particle_set
```

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine hepmc_event_from_particle_set (evt, particle_set)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: v
    type(hepmc_particle_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: hpert
    type(hepmc_particle_t), dimension(2) :: hbeam
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: is_beam
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: v_from, v_to
    integer :: n_vertices, n_tot, i
    n_tot = particle_set%n_tot
    allocate (v_from (n_tot), v_to (n_tot))
    call particle_set_assign_vertices (particle_set, v_from, v_to, n_vertices)
    allocate (v (n_vertices))
    do i = 1, n_vertices
        call hepmc_vertex_init (v(i))
        call hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v(i))
    end do
    allocate (hpert (n_tot))
    do i = 1, n_tot
        if (v_to(i) /= 0 .or. v_from(i) /= 0) then
            call particle_to_hepmc (particle_set%prt(i), hpert(i))
        end if
    end do
    allocate (is_beam (n_tot))
    is_beam = particle_get_status (particle_set%prt(1:n_tot)) == PRT_BEAM
    if (.not. any (is_beam)) then
        is_beam = particle_get_status (particle_set%prt(1:n_tot)) == PRT_INCOMING
    end if
    if (count (is_beam) == 2) then
        hbeam = pack (hpert, is_beam)
        call hepmc_event_set_beam_particles (evt, hbeam(1), hbeam(2))
    end if
    do i = 1, n_tot
        if (v_to(i) /= 0) then
            call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v(v_to(i)), hpert(i))
        end if
    end do
end subroutine

```



```

        end if
    end do
    do i = 1, n_tot
        if (v_from(i) /= 0) then
            call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v(v_from(i)), hpvt(i))
        end if
    end do
end subroutine hepmc_event_from_particle_set

```

## Get contents

Find parents/children of a particular particle recursively; the search terminates if a parent/child has status BEAM, INCOMING, OUTGOING or RESONANT.

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

function particle_set_get_real_parents (pset, i, keep_beams) result (parent)
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: is_real
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: is_parent, is_real_parent
    logical :: kb
    integer :: j, k
    kb = .false.
    if (present (keep_beams)) kb = keep_beams
    allocate (is_real (pset%n_tot))
    is_real = particle_is_real (pset%prt, kb)
    allocate (is_parent (pset%n_tot), is_real_parent (pset%n_tot))
    is_real_parent = .false.
    is_parent = .false.
    is_parent(particle_get_parents(pset%prt(i))) = .true.
    do while (any (is_parent))
        where (is_real .and. is_parent)
            is_real_parent = .true.
            is_parent = .false.
        end where
        mark_next_parent: do j = size (is_parent), 1, -1
            if (is_parent(j)) then
                is_parent(particle_get_parents(pset%prt(j))) = .true.
                is_parent(j) = .false.
                exit mark_next_parent
            end if
        end do mark_next_parent
    end do
    allocate (parent (count (is_real_parent)))
    j = 0
    do k = 1, size (is_real_parent)
        if (is_real_parent(k)) then
            j = j + 1
            parent(j) = k
        end if
    end do
end do

```

```

end function particle_set_get_real_parents

function particle_set_get_real_children (pset, i, keep_beams) result (child)
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: child
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: is_real
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: is_child, is_real_child
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    integer :: j, k
    logical :: kb
    kb = .false.
    if (present (keep_beams)) kb = keep_beams
    allocate (is_real (pset%n_tot))
    is_real = particle_is_real (pset%prt, kb)
    allocate (is_child (pset%n_tot), is_real_child (pset%n_tot))
    is_real_child = .false.
    is_child = .false.
    is_child(particle_get_children(pset%prt(i))) = .true.
    do while (any (is_child))
        where (is_real .and. is_child)
            is_real_child = .true.
            is_child = .false.
        end where
        mark_next_child: do j = 1, size (is_child)
            if (is_child(j)) then
                is_child(particle_get_children(pset%prt(j))) = .true.
                is_child(j) = .false.
                exit mark_next_child
            end if
        end do mark_next_child
    end do
    allocate (child (count (is_real_child)))
    j = 0
    do k = 1, size (is_child)
        if (is_real_child(k)) then
            j = j + 1
            child(j) = k
        end if
    end do
end function particle_set_get_real_children

```

Get the `n_tot`, `n_in`, and `n_out` values out of the particle set.

*(Particles: public)+≡*

```

public :: particle_set_get_n_beam
public :: particle_set_get_n_in
public :: particle_set_get_n_vir
public :: particle_set_get_n_out
public :: particle_set_get_n_tot

```

*(Particles: procedures)+≡*

```

function particle_set_get_n_beam (pset) result (n_beam)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer :: n_beam

```

```

        n_beam = pset%n_beam
    end function particle_set_get_n_beam

function particle_set_get_n_in (pset) result (n_in)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer :: n_in
    n_in = pset%n_in
end function particle_set_get_n_in

function particle_set_get_n_vir (pset) result (n_vir)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer :: n_vir
    n_vir = pset%n_in
end function particle_set_get_n_vir

function particle_set_get_n_out (pset) result (n_out)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer :: n_out
    n_out = pset%n_out
end function particle_set_get_n_out

function particle_set_get_n_tot (pset) result (n_tot)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer :: n_tot
    n_tot = pset%n_tot
end function particle_set_get_n_tot

```

Return a pointer to the particle corresponding to the number

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_get_particle

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    function particle_set_get_particle(pset, index) result(particle)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
        integer, intent(in) :: index
        type(particle_t) :: particle

        particle = pset%prt(index)
    end function particle_set_get_particle

```

## Tools

Given a subevent, reset status codes. If the new status is beam, incoming, or outgoing, we also make sure that the stored  $p^2$  value is equal to the on-shell mass squared.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_reset_status

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_reset_status (particle_set, index, status)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
        integer, intent(in) :: status
    end subroutine particle_set_reset_status

```

```

integer :: i
if (allocated (particle_set%prt)) then
  do i = 1, size (index)
    call particle_reset_status (particle_set%prt(index(i)), status)
  end do
end if
particle_set%n_beam = &
  count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_BEAM)
particle_set%n_in = &
  count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_INCOMING)
particle_set%n_out = &
  count (particle_get_status (particle_set%prt) == PRT_OUTGOING)
particle_set%n_vir = particle_set%n_tot &
  - particle_set%n_beam - particle_set%n_in - particle_set%n_out
end subroutine particle_set_reset_status

```

Reduce a particle set to the essential entries. The entries kept are those with status INCOMING, OUTGOING or RESONANT. BEAM is kept if keep\_beams is true. Other entries are skipped. The correlated state matrix, if any, is also ignored.

*(Particles: public)+≡*

```
public :: particle_set_reduce
```

*(Particles: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine particle_set_reduce (pset_in, pset_out, keep_beams)
  type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset_in
  type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: pset_out
  logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: status, map
  integer :: i, j
  logical :: kb
  kb = .false.; if (present (keep_beams)) kb = keep_beams
  allocate (status (pset_in%n_tot))
  status = particle_get_status (pset_in%prt)
  if (kb) pset_out%n_beam = count (status == PRT_BEAM)
  pset_out%n_in = count (status == PRT_INCOMING)
  pset_out%n_vir = count (status == PRT_RESONANT)
  pset_out%n_out = count (status == PRT_OUTGOING)
  pset_out%n_tot = &
    pset_out%n_beam + pset_out%n_in + pset_out%n_vir + pset_out%n_out
  allocate (pset_out%prt (pset_out%n_tot))
  allocate (map (pset_in%n_tot))
  map = 0
  j = 0
  if (kb) call copy_particles (PRT_BEAM)
  call copy_particles (PRT_INCOMING)
  call copy_particles (PRT_RESONANT)
  call copy_particles (PRT_OUTGOING)
  do i = 1, pset_in%n_tot
    if (map(i) == 0) cycle
    !!! !!! triggers nagfor bug!
    !!! call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    !!!   map (particle_set_get_real_parents (pset_in, i)))
    !!! call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    !!!   map (particle_set_get_real_children (pset_in, i)))
  end do

```

```

!!! !!! workaround:
call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    particle_set_get_real_parents (pset_in, i, kb))
call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    map (pset_out%prt(map(i))%parent))
call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    particle_set_get_real_children (pset_in, i, kb))
call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
    map (pset_out%prt(map(i))%child))
end do
contains
subroutine copy_particles (stat)
    integer, intent(in) :: stat
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, pset_in%n_tot
        if (status(i) == stat) then
            j = j + 1
            map(i) = j
            call particle_init (pset_out%prt(j), pset_in%prt(i))
        end if
    end do
end subroutine copy_particles
end subroutine particle_set_reduce

```

Remove the beam particles and beam remnants from the particle set if the keep beams flag is false. If keep beams is not given, the beam particles and the beam remnants are removed. The correlated state matrix, if any, is also ignored.

*(Particles: public)*+≡

```
public :: particle_set_apply_keep_beams
```

*(Particles: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine particle_set_apply_keep_beams (pset_in, pset_out, keep_beams)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset_in
    type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: pset_out
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: status, map
    integer :: i, j
    logical :: kb
    kb = .false.; if (present (keep_beams)) kb = keep_beams
    allocate (status (pset_in%n_tot))
    status = particle_get_status (pset_in%prt)
    if (kb) pset_out%n_beam = count (status == PRT_BEAM)
    pset_out%n_in = count (status == PRT_INCOMING)
    if (kb) then
        pset_out%n_vir = count (status == PRT_VIRTUAL) + count (status == PRT_RESONANT) &
            + count (status == PRT_BEAM_REMNANT)
    else
        pset_out%n_vir = count (status == PRT_VIRTUAL) + count (status == PRT_RESONANT)
    end if
    pset_out%n_out = count (status == PRT_OUTGOING)
    pset_out%n_tot = &
        pset_out%n_beam + pset_out%n_in + pset_out%n_vir + pset_out%n_out
    allocate (pset_out%prt (pset_out%n_tot))
    allocate (map (pset_in%n_tot))

```

```

map = 0
j = 0
if (kb) call copy_particles (PRT_BEAM)
call copy_particles (PRT_INCOMING)
if (kb) call copy_particles (PRT_BEAM_REMNANT)
call copy_particles (PRT_RESONANT)
call copy_particles (PRT_VIRTUAL)
call copy_particles (PRT_OUTGOING)
do i = 1, pset_in%n_tot
  if (map(i) == 0) cycle
  !!! !!! triggers nagfor bug!
  !!! call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  !!! map (particle_set_get_real_parents (pset_in, i)))
  !!! call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  !!! map (particle_set_get_real_children (pset_in, i)))
  !!! !!! workaround:
  call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  particle_set_get_real_parents (pset_in, i, kb))
  call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  map (pset_out%prt(map(i))%parent))
  call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  particle_set_get_real_children (pset_in, i, kb))
  call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(map(i)), &
  map (pset_out%prt(map(i))%child))
end do
contains
subroutine copy_particles (stat)
  integer, intent(in) :: stat
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, pset_in%n_tot
    if (status(i) == stat) then
      j = j + 1
      map(i) = j
      call particle_init (pset_out%prt(j), pset_in%prt(i))
    end if
  end do
end subroutine copy_particles
end subroutine particle_set_apply_keep_beams

```

Transform a particle set into HEPEVT-compatible form. In this form, for each particle, the parents and the children are contiguous in the particle array. Usually, this requires to clone some particles.

We do not know in advance how many particles the canonical form will have. To be on the safe side, allocate four times the original size.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
  public :: particle_set_to_hepevt_form

<Particles: procedures>+≡
  subroutine particle_set_to_hepevt_form (pset_in, pset_out, keep_beams)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset_in
    type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: pset_out
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset
    type :: particle_entry_t

```

```

integer :: src = 0
integer :: status = 0
integer :: orig = 0
integer :: copy = 0
end type particle_entry_t
type(particle_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map1, map2
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent, child
integer :: n_tot, n_parents, n_children, i, j, c, n

call particle_set_apply_keep_beams(pset_in, pset, keep_beams)
n_tot = pset%n_tot
allocate (prt (4 * n_tot))
allocate (map1(4 * n_tot))
allocate (map2(4 * n_tot))
map1 = 0
map2 = 0
allocate (child (n_tot))
allocate (parent (n_tot))
n = 0
do i = 1, n_tot
  if (particle_get_n_parents (pset%prt(i)) == 0) then
    call append (i)
  end if
end do
do i = 1, n_tot
  n_children = particle_get_n_children (pset%prt(i))
  if (n_children > 0) then
    child(1:n_children) = particle_get_children (pset%prt(i))
    c = child(1)
    if (map1(c) == 0) then
      n_parents = particle_get_n_parents (pset%prt(c))
      if (n_parents > 1) then
        parent(1:n_parents) = particle_get_parents (pset%prt(c))
        if (i == parent(1) .and. &
          any( (/map1(i)+j-1, j=1,n_parents)/) /= map1(parent(1:n_parents)))) &
          then
          do j = 1, n_parents
            call append (parent(j))
          end do
        end if
      else if (map1(i) == 0) then
        call append (i)
      end if
      do j = 1, n_children
        call append (child(j))
      end do
    end if
  else if (map1(i) == 0) then
    call append (i)
  end if
end do
do i = n, 1, -1
  if (prt(i)%status /= PRT_OUTGOING) then

```

```

        do j = 1, i-1
            if (prt(j)%status == PRT_OUTGOING) then
                call append(prt(j)%src)
            end if
        end do
        exit
    end if
end do
pset_out%n_beam = count (prt(1:n)%status == PRT_BEAM)
pset_out%n_in   = count (prt(1:n)%status == PRT_INCOMING)
pset_out%n_vir  = count (prt(1:n)%status == PRT_RESONANT)
pset_out%n_out  = count (prt(1:n)%status == PRT_OUTGOING)
pset_out%n_tot = n
allocate (pset_out%prt (n))
do i = 1, n
    call particle_init (pset_out%prt(i), pset%prt(prt(i)%src))
    call particle_reset_status (pset_out%prt(i), prt(i)%status)
    if (prt(i)%orig == 0) then
        !!! !!! This causes nagfor 5.2 (770) Panic
        !!! call particle_set_parents &
        !!!      (pset_out%prt(i), &
        !!!      map2 (particle_get_parents (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))))
        !!! !!! Workaround
        n_parents = particle_get_n_parents (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))
        parent(1:n_parents) = particle_get_parents (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))
        call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(i), &
            map2(parent(1:n_parents)))
    else
        call particle_set_parents (pset_out%prt(i), (/ prt(i)%orig /))
    end if
    if (prt(i)%copy == 0) then
        !!! !!! This causes nagfor 5.2 (770) Panic
        !!! call particle_set_children &
        !!!      (pset_out%prt(i), &
        !!!      map1 (particle_get_children (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))))
        !!! !!! Workaround
        n_children = particle_get_n_children (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))
        child(1:n_children) = particle_get_children (pset%prt(prt(i)%src))
        call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(i), &
            map1(child(1:n_children)))
    else
        call particle_set_children (pset_out%prt(i), (/ prt(i)%copy /))
    end if
end do
contains
subroutine append (i)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    n = n + 1
    if (n > size (prt)) &
        call msg_bug ("Particle set transform to HEPEVT: insufficient space")
    prt(n)%src = i
    prt(n)%status = particle_get_status (pset%prt(i))
    if (map1(i) == 0) then
        map1(i) = n
    end if
end subroutine

```



```

else
  prt(map2(i))%status = PRT_VIRTUAL
  prt(map2(i))%copy = n
  prt(n)%orig = map2(i)
end if
map2(i) = n
end subroutine append
end subroutine particle_set_to_hepevt_form

```

Reconstruct the momenta within an interaction object from a particle set. We start from the incoming particles, which should be stored at the beginning. (The number of incoming particles is provided separately, so we do not need to analyze the interaction or particle set for this.) We follow their children down the tree until the interaction is exhausted.

This implies that the particle set may contain a longer tree (e.g., decay chains) than the interaction. The remainder of the tree is simply ignored.

The detailed ordering of the subsequent sub-interactions may differ between the interaction and the particle set. However, within each sub-interaction, the ordering of particles must match.

It may happen that the particle set lacks beam and remnant particles which are present in the interaction. In this case, the beam particles (the first two entries in the interaction) will not be filled. However, we can use the source link of the beam particles to recover their momenta from the actual beam interaction (which is stored somewhere else), and then recover the beam-remnant momenta as the difference of the beam and parton momenta.

```

(Particles: public)+≡
  public :: particle_set_fill_interaction

(Particles: procedures)+≡
  subroutine particle_set_fill_interaction (pset, int, n_in, recover_beams)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: p_is_set
    logical :: recover
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_parent, j_parent
    integer :: n_tot, k
    n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int)
    recover = .false.; if (present (recover_beams)) recover = recover_beams
    allocate (p_is_set (n_tot), source = .false.)
    allocate (i_parent (n_in), source = [(k, k = 1, n_in)])
    allocate (j_parent (n_in), source = i_parent)
    do k = 1, n_in
      call fill_subint (i_parent(k), j_parent(k))
    end do
    if (recover) then
      do k = 1, n_in
        call recover_beam_and_remnant (k)
      end do
    end if
    if (.not. all (p_is_set)) then
      call particle_set_write (pset)
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

        call interaction_write (int)
        call msg_fatal ("Mismatch between particle set and interaction")
    end if
contains
    recursive subroutine fill_subint (i, j)
        integer, intent(in) :: i, j
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_child, j_child
        integer :: n_child, n_child_pset, k
        if (p_is_set(i)) return
        call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
            particle_get_momentum (pset%prt(j)), i)
        p_is_set(i) = .true.
        n_child = interaction_get_n_children (int, i)
        n_child_pset = particle_get_n_children (pset%prt(j))
        if (n_child /= 0 .and. n_child == n_child_pset) then
            allocate (i_child (n_child))
            allocate (j_child (n_child))
            i_child = interaction_get_children (int, i)
            j_child = particle_get_children (pset%prt(j))
            do k = 1, n_child
                call fill_subint (i_child(k), j_child(k))
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine fill_subint
    subroutine recover_beam_and_remnant (k)
        integer, intent(in) :: k
        integer :: k_src, k_in, k_rem
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_src
        integer, dimension(2) :: i_child
        call interaction_find_source (int, k, int_src, k_src)
        call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
            interaction_get_momentum (int_src, k_src), k)
        i_child = interaction_get_children (int, k)
        if (interaction_get_n_children (int, i_child(1)) > 0) then
            k_in = i_child(1); k_rem = i_child(2)
        else
            k_in = i_child(2); k_rem = i_child(1)
        end if
        call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
            interaction_get_momentum (int, k) &
            - interaction_get_momentum (int, k_in), k_rem)
    end subroutine recover_beam_and_remnant
end subroutine particle_set_fill_interaction

```

This reconstructs the hard interaction from a particle set. First the particle set is reduced to the incoming partons, then we add the direct children of those. The interaction and particle set should match in their array sizes. If we find a permutation of the particle flavors that matches one of the given flavor states, the assignment of momenta is made accordingly.

*(Particles: public)+≡*

```
public :: particle_set_extract_interaction
```

*(Particles: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine particle_set_extract_interaction (pset, int, flv_state)
```

```

type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv_state
integer :: n_in, n_out, n_tot
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: status, incoming, outgoing, index
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg, perm
integer :: i
logical :: ok
allocate (status (pset%n_tot))
status = particle_get_status (pset%prt)
n_in = count (status == PRT_INCOMING)
allocate (incoming (n_in))
incoming = pack ((/ (i, i = 1, pset%n_tot) /), status == PRT_INCOMING)
i = incoming (1)
n_out = particle_get_n_children (pset%prt(i))
allocate (outgoing (n_out))
outgoing = particle_get_children (pset%prt(i))
n_tot = n_in + n_out
if (n_in /= interaction_get_n_in (int) &
    .or. n_out /= interaction_get_n_out (int) &
    .or. n_tot /= interaction_get_n_tot (int)) then
    call msg_fatal &
        ("This event does not match the associated process (size)")
    return
end if
allocate (index (n_tot), pdg (n_tot), perm (n_tot))
index(:n_in) = incoming
index(n_in+1:) = outgoing
pdg = particle_get_pdg (pset%prt(index))
call find_flavor_ordering (flv_state, pdg, n_in, perm, ok)
if (.not. ok) then
    call particle_set_write (pset)
    call msg_fatal &
        ("This event does not match the associated process (flavors)")
    return
end if
do i = 1, n_tot
    call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
        particle_get_momentum (pset%prt(i)), perm(i))
end do
end subroutine particle_set_extract_interaction

```

Given a particle set with an arbitrary ordering of particles, we need the permutation that yields an ordering that is present in the state matrix. This can be found by examining the flavor table. The result is a permutation of the PDG array that matches a row in the flavor table. If ok is returned false, no match was found.

*(Particles: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine find_flavor_ordering (flv_state, pdg, n_in, perm, ok)
integer, dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv_state
integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg
integer, intent(in) :: n_in
integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: perm

```

```

logical, intent(out) :: ok
integer :: n_tot, f, i, j, k
logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: found
n_tot = size (pdg)
if (size (flv_state, 1) /= n_tot) then
    ok = .false.
    return
end if
do i = 1, n_in
    perm(i) = i
end do
allocate (found (n_tot))
ok = .false.
do f = 1, size (flv_state, 2)
    call find_ordering_for_this_state (flv_state(:,f))
end do
contains
subroutine find_ordering_for_this_state (pdg_state)
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg_state
    found = .false.
    if (all (pdg_state(1:n_in) == pdg(1:n_in))) then
        SCAN_INPUT: do j = n_in + 1, n_tot
            SCAN_STATE: do k = n_in + 1, n_tot
                if (found(k)) cycle SCAN_STATE
                if (pdg_state(k) == pdg(j)) then
                    found(k) = .true.
                    perm(j) = k
                    cycle SCAN_INPUT
                end if
            end do SCAN_STATE
        end do SCAN_INPUT
        return
    end do SCAN_INPUT
    ok = .true.
end if
end subroutine find_ordering_for_this_state
end subroutine find_flavor_ordering

```

This procedure reconstructs an array of vertex indices from the parent-child information in the particle entries, according to the HepMC scheme. For each particle, we determine which vertex it comes from and which vertex it goes to. We return the two arrays and the maximum vertex index.

For each particle in the list, we first check its parents. If for any parent the vertex where it goes to is already known, this vertex index is assigned as the current 'from' vertex. Otherwise, a new index is created, assigned as the current 'from' vertex, and as the 'to' vertex for all parents.

Then, the analogous procedure is done for the children.

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particle_set_assign_vertices

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particle_set_assign_vertices &
        (particle_set, v_from, v_to, n_vertices)
        type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set

```

```

integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: v_from, v_to
integer, intent(out) :: n_vertices
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent, child
integer :: n_parents, n_children, vf, vt
integer :: i, j, v
v_from = 0
v_to = 0
vf = 0
vt = 0
do i = 1, particle_set%n_tot
  n_parents = particle_get_n_parents (particle_set%prt(i))
  if (n_parents /= 0) then
    allocate (parent (n_parents))
    parent = particle_get_parents (particle_set%prt(i))
    SCAN_PARENTS: do j = 1, size (parent)
      v = v_to(parent(j))
      if (v /= 0) then
        v_from(i) = v; exit SCAN_PARENTS
      end if
    end do SCAN_PARENTS
    if (v_from(i) == 0) then
      vf = vf + 1; v_from(i) = vf
      v_to(parent) = vf
    end if
    deallocate (parent)
  end if
  n_children = particle_get_n_children (particle_set%prt(i))
  if (n_children /= 0) then
    allocate (child (n_children))
    child = particle_get_children (particle_set%prt(i))
    SCAN_CHILDREN: do j = 1, size (child)
      v = v_from(child(j))
      if (v /= 0) then
        v_to(i) = v; exit SCAN_CHILDREN
      end if
    end do SCAN_CHILDREN
    if (v_to(i) == 0) then
      vt = vt + 1; v_to(i) = vt
      v_from(child) = vt
    end if
    deallocate (child)
  end if
end do
n_vertices = max (vf, vt)
end subroutine particle_set_assign_vertices

```

#### 8.2.4 Expression interface

This converts a `particle_set` object as defined here to a more concise `subevt` object that can be used as the event root of an expression. In particular, the latter lacks virtual particles, spin correlations and parent-child relations.

*(Particles: public)*  $\vdash \equiv$

```

public :: particle_set_to_subevt
<Particles: procedures>+≡
subroutine particle_set_to_subevt (particle_set, subevt)
  type(particle_set_t), intent(in), target :: particle_set
  type(subevt_t), intent(out) :: subevt
  type(particle_t), pointer :: prt
  integer :: i, k
  integer, dimension(2) :: hel
  call subevt_init &
    (subevt, particle_set%n_beam + particle_set%n_in + particle_set%n_out)
  k = 0
  do i = 1, particle_set%n_tot
    prt => particle_set%prt(i)
    select case (particle_get_status (prt))
    case (PRT_BEAM)
      k = k + 1
      call subevt_set_beam (subevt, k, &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_p2 (prt))
    case (PRT_INCOMING)
      k = k + 1
      call subevt_set_incoming (subevt, k, &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_p2 (prt))
    case (PRT_OUTGOING)
      k = k + 1
      call subevt_set_outgoing (subevt, k, &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_p2 (prt))
    end select
    select case (particle_get_status (prt))
    case (PRT_BEAM, PRT_INCOMING, PRT_OUTGOING)
      if (prt%polarization == PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY) then
        if (helicity_is_diagonal (prt%hel)) then
          hel = helicity_get (prt%hel)
          call subevt_polarize (subevt, k, hel(1))
        end if
      end if
    end select
  end do
end subroutine particle_set_to_subevt

```

This replaces the particle\_set

```

<Particles: public>+≡
public :: particle_set_replace
<Particles: procedures>+≡
subroutine particle_set_replace (particle_set, newprt)
  type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
  type(particle_t), intent(in), dimension(:), allocatable :: newprt
  if (allocated (particle_set%prt)) deallocate (particle_set%prt)

```

```

allocate (particle_set%prt(size (newprt)))
particle_set%prt = newprt
particle_set%n_tot = size (newprt)
particle_set%n_beam = count (particle_get_status (newprt) == PRT_BEAM)
particle_set%n_in = count (particle_get_status (newprt) == PRT_INCOMING)
particle_set%n_out = count (particle_get_status (newprt) == PRT_OUTGOING)
particle_set%n_vir = particle_set%n_tot &
    - particle_set%n_beam - particle_set%n_in - particle_set%n_out
end subroutine particle_set_replace

```

Eliminate numerical noise

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: pacify

<Particles: interfaces>+≡
    interface pacify
        module procedure pacify_particle
        module procedure pacify_particle_set
    end interface pacify

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pacify_particle (prt)
        class(particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        real(default) :: e
        e = epsilon (1._default) * energy (prt%p)
        call pacify (prt%p, 10 * e)
        call pacify (prt%p2, 1e4 * e)
    end subroutine pacify_particle

    subroutine pacify_particle_set (pset)
        class(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: pset
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, pset%n_tot
            call pacify (pset%prt(i))
        end do
    end subroutine pacify_particle_set

```

### 8.2.5 Unit tests

Set up a chain of production and decay and factorize the result into particles.  
The process is  $d\bar{d} \rightarrow Z \rightarrow q\bar{q}$ .

```

<Particles: public>+≡
    public :: particles_test

<Particles: procedures>+≡
    subroutine particles_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Particles: execute tests>
    end subroutine particles_test

```

Check the basic setup of the `particle_set_t` type.

```
<Particles: execute tests>≡
    call test (particles_1, "particles_1", &
               "check particle_set routines", &
               u, results)

<Particles: tests>≡
    subroutine particles_1 (u)
<Particles: common test code 1>

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Particles"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test particle_set routines"
        write (u, "(A)")

<Particles: common test code 2>

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)") &
            "* Factorize (complete, polarized, correlated); write and read again"
        write (u, "(A)")

        int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval)
        call particle_set_init &
            (particle_set3, ok, int, int, FM_FACTOR_HELICITY, &
             [0.7_default, 0.7_default], .true., .true.)
        call particle_set_write (particle_set3, u)

!!! Raw I/O with state matrices currently disabled, cf. #627.
!!! unit = free_unit ()
!!! open (unit, action="readwrite", form="unformatted", status="scratch")
!!! call particle_set_write_raw (particle_set3, unit)
!!! rewind (unit)
!!! call particle_set_read_raw (particle_set4, unit, iostat=iostat)
!!! close (unit)
!!!
!!! write (u, "(A)")
!!! call particle_set_write (particle_set4, u)
!!! write (u, "(A)")
!!! write (u, "(A)")  "* Transform to a subevt object"
!!! write (u, "(A)")
!!!
!!! call particle_set_to_subevt (particle_set4, subevt)
!!! call subevt_write (subevt, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

        call particle_set_final (particle_set1)
        call particle_set_final (particle_set2)
        call particle_set_final (particle_set3)
        call particle_set_final (particle_set4)
        call evaluator_final (eval)
        call interaction_final (int1)
        call interaction_final (int2)
        call model_list%final ()
```



```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: particles_1"

end subroutine particles_1

```

If HepMC is available, check the routines via HepMC.

```

⟨Particles: execute tests⟩+≡
  if (hepmc_is_available ()) then
    call test (particles_2, "particles_2", &
      "check particle_set routines via HepMC", &
      u, results)
  end if

⟨Particles: tests⟩+≡
  subroutine particles_2 (u)
    ⟨Particles: common test code 1⟩

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Particles"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test particle_set routines via HepMC"
    write (u, "(A)")

    ⟨Particles: common test code 2⟩

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Transfer particle_set to HepMC, print, and output to"
    write (u, "(A)")  "      particles_test.hepmc.dat"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call hepmc_event_init (hepmc_event, 11, 127)
    call hepmc_event_from_particle_set (hepmc_event, particle_set2)
    call hepmc_event_print (hepmc_event)
    call hepmc_iostream_open_out &
      (iostream , var_str ("particles_test.hepmc.dat"))
    call hepmc_iostream_write_event (iostream, hepmc_event)
    call hepmc_iostream_close (iostream)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover from HepMC file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call particle_set_final (particle_set2)
    call hepmc_event_final (hepmc_event)
    call hepmc_event_init (hepmc_event)
    call hepmc_iostream_open_in &
      (iostream , var_str ("particles_test.hepmc.dat"))
    call hepmc_iostream_read_event (iostream, hepmc_event, ok)
    call hepmc_iostream_close (iostream)
    call particle_set_init (particle_set2, &
      hepmc_event, model, PRT_DEFINITE_HELICITY)
    call particle_set_write (particle_set2, u)

    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (particle_set1)
call particle_set_final (particle_set2)
call evaluator_final (eval)
call interaction_final (int1)
call interaction_final (int2)
call hepmc_event_final (hepmc_event)
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: particles_2"

end subroutine particles_2

```

*(Particles: common test code 1)*≡

```

use os_interface
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(flavor_t), dimension(3) :: flv
type(color_t), dimension(3) :: col
type(helicity_t), dimension(3) :: hel
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
type(vector4_t), dimension(3) :: p
type(interaction_t), target :: int1, int2
type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: qn_mask_conn, qn_rest
type(evaluator_t), target :: eval
type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set1, particle_set2
type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set3, particle_set4
type(subevt_t) :: subevt
type(hepmc_event_t) :: hepmc_event
type(hepmc_iostream_t) :: iostream
logical :: ok
integer :: unit, iostat

```

*(Particles: common test code 2)*≡

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initializing production process"

call interaction_init (int1, 2, 0, 1, set_relations=.true.)
call flavor_init (flv, [1, -1, 23], model)
call helicity_init (hel(3), 1, 1)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)

```

```

call interaction_add_state (int1, qn, value=(0.25_default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel(3), 1,-1)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn, value=(0._default, 0.25_default))
call helicity_init (hel(3),-1, 1)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn, value=(0._default,-0.25_default))
call helicity_init (hel(3),-1,-1)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn, value=(0.25_default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel(3), 0, 0)
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int1, qn, value=(0.5_default, 0._default))
call interaction_freeze (int1)
p(1) = vector4_moving (45._default, 45._default, 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (45._default,-45._default, 3)
p(3) = p(1) + p(2)
call interaction_set_momenta (int1, p)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup decay process"

call interaction_init (int2, 1, 0, 2, set_relations=.true.)
call flavor_init (flv, [23, 1, -1], model)
call color_init_col_acl (col, [0, 501, 0], [0, 0, 501])
call helicity_init (hel, [1, 1, 1], [1, 1, 1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(1._default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [1, 1, 1], [-1,-1,-1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(0._default, 0.1_default))
call helicity_init (hel, [-1,-1,-1], [1, 1, 1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(0._default,-0.1_default))
call helicity_init (hel, [-1,-1,-1], [-1,-1,-1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(1._default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [0, 1,-1], [0, 1,-1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(4._default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [0,-1, 1], [0, 1,-1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(2._default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [0, 1,-1], [0,-1, 1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(2._default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [0,-1, 1], [0,-1, 1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(4._default, 0._default))
call flavor_init (flv, [23, 2, -2], model)
call helicity_init (hel, [0, 1,-1], [0, 1,-1])
call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(0.5_default, 0._default))
call helicity_init (hel, [0,-1, 1], [0,-1, 1])

```

```

call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
call interaction_add_state (int2, qn, value=(0.5_default, 0._default))
call interaction_freeze (int2)
p(2) = vector4_moving (45._default, 45._default, 2)
p(3) = vector4_moving (45._default, -45._default, 2)
call interaction_set_momenta (int2, p)
call interaction_set_source_link (int2, 1, int1, 3)
call interaction_write (int1, u)
call interaction_write (int2, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Concatenate production and decay"

call evaluator_init_product (eval, int1, int2, qn_mask_conn, &
    connections_are_resonant=.true.)
call evaluator_receive_momenta (eval)
call eval%evaluate ()
call eval%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Factorize as subevent (complete, polarized)"
write (u, "(A)")

int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval)
call particle_set_init &
    (particle_set1, ok, int, int, FM_FACTOR_HELICITY, &
    [0.2_default, 0.2_default], .false., .true.)
call particle_set_write (particle_set1, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Factorize as subevent (in/out only, selected helicity)"
write (u, "(A)")

int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval)
call particle_set_init &
    (particle_set2, ok, int, int, FM_SELECT_HELICITY, &
    [0.9_default, 0.9_default], .false., .false.)
call particle_set_write (particle_set2, u)
call particle_set_final (particle_set2)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Factorize as subevent (complete, selected helicity)"
write (u, "(A)")

int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (eval)
call particle_set_init &
    (particle_set2, ok, int, int, FM_SELECT_HELICITY, &
    [0.7_default, 0.7_default], .false., .true.)
call particle_set_write (particle_set2, u)

```

## Chapter 9

# Initial State

### 9.1 Beam structure

This module stores the beam structure definition as it is declared in the SIN-DARIN script. The structure definition is not analyzed, just recorded for later use.

We do not capture any numerical parameters, just names of particles and structure functions.

```
<beam_structures.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module beam_structures  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    use variables  
    use polarizations  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Beam structures: public>  
  
    <Beam structures: types>  
  
    <Beam structures: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Beam structures: procedures>  
  
    <Beam structures: tests>
```

```
end module beam_structures
```

### 9.1.1 Beam structure elements

An entry in a beam-structure record consists of a string that denotes a type of structure function.

```
<Beam structures: types>≡
  type :: beam_structure_entry_t
    logical :: is_valid = .false.
    type(string_t) :: name
  contains
    <Beam structures: beam structure entry: TBP>
  end type beam_structure_entry_t
```

Output.

```
<Beam structures: beam structure entry: TBP>≡
  procedure :: to_string => beam_structure_entry_to_string

<Beam structures: procedures>≡
  function beam_structure_entry_to_string (object) result (string)
    class(bean_structure_entry_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (object%is_valid) then
      string = object%name
    else
      string = "none"
    end if
  end function beam_structure_entry_to_string
```

A record in the beam-structure sequence denotes either a structure-function entry, a pair of such entries, or a pair spectrum.

```
<Beam structures: types>+≡
  type :: beam_structure_record_t
    type(bean_structure_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
  end type beam_structure_record_t
```

### 9.1.2 Beam structure type

The beam-structure object contains the beam particle(s) as simple strings. The sequence of records indicates the structure functions by name. No numerical parameters are stored.

```
<Beam structures: public>≡
  public :: beam_structure_t

<Beam structures: types>+≡
  type :: beam_structure_t
  private
    integer :: n_beam = 0
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
    type(bean_structure_record_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: record
    type(smatrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: smatrix
```

```

    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: pol_f
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: theta
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: phi
contains
  <Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>
end type beam_structure_t

```

The finalizer deletes all contents explicitly, so we can continue with an empty beam record. (It is not needed for deallocation.) We have distinct finalizers for the independent parts of the beam structure.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final_sf => beam_structure_final_sf

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_structure_final_sf (object)
    class(bean_structure_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%prt)) deallocate (object%prt)
    if (allocated (object%record)) deallocate (object%record)
    object%n_beam = 0
  end subroutine beam_structure_final_sf

```

Output. The actual information fits in a single line, therefore we can provide a `to_string` method. The `show` method also lists the current values of relevant global variables.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => beam_structure_write
  procedure :: to_string => beam_structure_to_string

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_structure_write (object, unit)
    class(bean_structure_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "Beam structure: ", char (object%to_string ())
    if (allocated (object%smatrix)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%smatrix)
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0,A)") "polarization (beam ", i, "):"
        call object%smatrix(i)%write (u, indent=2)
      end do
    end if
    if (allocated (object%pol_f)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7,:',',F10.7)") "polarization degree =", &
        object%pol_f
    end if
    if (allocated (object%p)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ",:',','," // FMT_19 // &
        ")") "momentum =", object%p
    end if
    if (allocated (object%theta)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ",:',','," // FMT_19 // &
        ")") "angle th =", object%theta
    end if
  end subroutine beam_structure_write

```

```

end if
if (allocated (object%phi)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ",:',''," // FMT_19 // &
           ")") "angle ph =", object%phi
end if
end subroutine beam_structure_write

function beam_structure_to_string (object, sf_only) result (string)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: object
    logical, intent(in), optional :: sf_only
    type(string_t) :: string
    integer :: i, j
    logical :: with_beams
    with_beams = .true.; if (present (sf_only)) with_beams = .not. sf_only
    select case (object%n_beam)
    case (1)
        if (with_beams) then
            string = object%prt(1)
        else
            string = ""
        end if
    case (2)
        if (with_beams) then
            string = object%prt(1) // ", " // object%prt(2)
        else
            string = ""
        end if
        if (allocated (object%record)) then
            if (size (object%record) > 0) then
                if (with_beams) string = string // " => "
                do i = 1, size (object%record)
                    if (i > 1) string = string // " => "
                    do j = 1, size (object%record(i)%entry)
                        if (j > 1) string = string // ", "
                        string = string // object%record(i)%entry(j)%to_string ()
                    end do
                end do
            end if
        end if
    case default
        string = "[any particles]"
    end select
end function beam_structure_to_string

```

Initializer: dimension the beam structure record. Each array element denotes the number of entries for a record within the beam-structure sequence. The number of entries is either one or two, while the number of records is unlimited.

*(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init_sf => beam_structure_init_sf

```

*(Beam structures: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine beam_structure_init_sf (beam_structure, prt, dim_array)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt

```



```

integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: dim_array
integer :: i
call beam_structure%final_sf ()
beam_structure%n_beam = size (prt)
allocate (beam_structure%prt (size (prt)))
beam_structure%prt = prt
if (present (dim_array)) then
  allocate (beam_structure%record (size (dim_array)))
  do i = 1, size (dim_array)
    allocate (beam_structure%record(i)%entry (dim_array(i)))
  end do
else
  allocate (beam_structure%record (0))
end if
end subroutine beam_structure_init_sf

```

Set an entry, specified by record number and entry number.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_sf => beam_structure_set_sf

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_structure_set_sf (beam_structure, i, j, name)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
    integer, intent(in) :: i, j
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    associate (entry => beam_structure%record(i)%entry(j))
      entry%name = name
      entry%is_valid = .true.
    end associate
  end subroutine beam_structure_set_sf

```

Expand the beam-structure object. (i) For a pair spectrum, keep the entry. (ii) For a single-particle structure function written as a single entry, replace this by a record with two entries. (ii) For a record with two nontrivial entries, separate this into two records with one trivial entry each.

To achieve this, we need a function that tells us whether an entry is a spectrum or a structure function. It returns 0 for a trivial entry, 1 for a single-particle structure function, and 2 for a two-particle spectrum.

```

<Beam structures: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    function strfun_mode_fun (name) result (n)
      import
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
      integer :: n
    end function strfun_mode_fun
  end interface

```

Algorithm: (1) Mark entries as invalid where necessary. (2) Count the number of entries that we will need. (3) Expand and copy entries to a new record array. (4) Replace the old array by the new one.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: expand => beam_structure_expand

```

*(Beam structures: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine beam_structure_expand (beam_structure, strfun_mode)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  procedure(strfun_mode_fun) :: strfun_mode
  type(beam_structure_record_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: new
  integer :: n_record, i, j
  if (.not. allocated (beam_structure%record)) return
  do i = 1, size (beam_structure%record)
    associate (entry => beam_structure%record(i)%entry)
      do j = 1, size (entry)
        select case (strfun_mode (entry(j)%name))
          case (0); entry(j)%is_valid = .false.
        end select
      end do
    end associate
  end do
  n_record = 0
  do i = 1, size (beam_structure%record)
    associate (entry => beam_structure%record(i)%entry)
      select case (size (entry))
        case (1)
          if (entry(1)%is_valid) then
            select case (strfun_mode (entry(1)%name))
              case (1); n_record = n_record + 2
              case (2); n_record = n_record + 1
            end select
          end if
        case (2)
          do j = 1, 2
            if (entry(j)%is_valid) then
              select case (strfun_mode (entry(j)%name))
                case (1); n_record = n_record + 1
                case (2)
                  call beam_structure%write ()
                  call msg_fatal ("Pair spectrum used as &
                                &single-particle structure function")
              end select
            end if
          end do
        end select
      end associate
    end do
    allocate (new (n_record))
    n_record = 0
    do i = 1, size (beam_structure%record)
      associate (entry => beam_structure%record(i)%entry)
        select case (size (entry))
          case (1)
            if (entry(1)%is_valid) then
              select case (strfun_mode (entry(1)%name))
                case (1)
                  n_record = n_record + 1
                  allocate (new(n_record)%entry (2))
                  new(n_record)%entry(1) = entry(1)
            end if
          end select
        end associate
      end do
    end do
  end do

```

```

        n_record = n_record + 1
        allocate (new(n_record)%entry (2))
        new(n_record)%entry(2) = entry(1)
    case (2)
        n_record = n_record + 1
        allocate (new(n_record)%entry (1))
        new(n_record)%entry(1) = entry(1)
    end select
end if
case (2)
do j = 1, 2
    if (entry(j)%is_valid) then
        n_record = n_record + 1
        allocate (new(n_record)%entry (2))
        new(n_record)%entry(j) = entry(j)
    end if
end do
end select
end associate
end do
call move_alloc (from = new, to = beam_structure%record)
end subroutine beam_structure_expand

```

### 9.1.3 Polarization

To record polarization, we provide an allocatable array of **smatrix** objects, sparse matrices. The polarization structure is independent of the structure-function setup, they are combined only when an actual beam object is constructed.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: final_pol => beam_structure_final_pol
    procedure :: init_pol => beam_structure_init_pol

(Beam structures: procedures)+≡
    subroutine beam_structure_final_pol (beam_structure)
        class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
        if (allocated (beam_structure%smatrix)) deallocate (beam_structure%smatrix)
        if (allocated (beam_structure%pol_f)) deallocate (beam_structure%pol_f)
    end subroutine beam_structure_final_pol

    subroutine beam_structure_init_pol (beam_structure, n)
        class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        if (allocated (beam_structure%smatrix)) deallocate (beam_structure%smatrix)
        allocate (beam_structure%smatrix (n))
        if (.not. allocated (beam_structure%pol_f)) &
            allocate (beam_structure%pol_f (n), source = 1._default)
    end subroutine beam_structure_init_pol

```

Directly copy the spin density matrices.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: set_smatrix => beam_structure_set_smatrix

```

```

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_set_smatrix (beam_structure, i, smatrix)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(smatrix_t), intent(in) :: smatrix
  beam_structure%smatrix(i) = smatrix
end subroutine beam_structure_set_smatrix

```

Initialize one of the spin density matrices manually.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_smatrix => beam_structure_init_smatrix

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_init_smatrix (beam_structure, i, n_entry)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  integer, intent(in) :: n_entry
  call beam_structure%smatrix(i)%init (2, n_entry)
end subroutine beam_structure_init_smatrix

```

Set a polarization entry.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_sentry => beam_structure_set_sentry

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_set_sentry &
  (beam_structure, i, i_entry, index, value)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  integer, intent(in) :: i_entry
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: index
  complex(default), intent(in) :: value
  call beam_structure%smatrix(i)%set_entry (i_entry, index, value)
end subroutine beam_structure_set_sentry

```

Set the array of polarization fractions.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_pol_f => beam_structure_set_pol_f

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_set_pol_f (beam_structure, f)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: f
  if (allocated (beam_structure%pol_f)) deallocate (beam_structure%pol_f)
  allocate (beam_structure%pol_f (size (f)), source = f)
end subroutine beam_structure_set_pol_f

```

#### 9.1.4 Beam momenta

By default, beam momenta are deduced from the `sqrts` value or from the mass of the decaying particle, assuming a c.m. setup. Here we set them explicitly.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final_mom => beam_structure_final_mom

```

```

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_final_mom (beam_structure)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  if (allocated (beam_structure%p)) deallocate (beam_structure%p)
  if (allocated (beam_structure%theta)) deallocate (beam_structure%theta)
  if (allocated (beam_structure%phi)) deallocate (beam_structure%phi)
end subroutine beam_structure_final_mom

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
procedure :: set_momentum => beam_structure_set_momentum
procedure :: set_theta => beam_structure_set_theta
procedure :: set_phi => beam_structure_set_phi

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_structure_set_momentum (beam_structure, p)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
  if (allocated (beam_structure%p)) deallocate (beam_structure%p)
  allocate (beam_structure%p (size (p)), source = p)
end subroutine beam_structure_set_momentum

subroutine beam_structure_set_theta (beam_structure, theta)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: theta
  if (allocated (beam_structure%theta)) deallocate (beam_structure%theta)
  allocate (beam_structure%theta (size (theta)), source = theta)
end subroutine beam_structure_set_theta

subroutine beam_structure_set_phi (beam_structure, phi)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(inout) :: beam_structure
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: phi
  if (allocated (beam_structure%phi)) deallocate (beam_structure%phi)
  allocate (beam_structure%phi (size (phi)), source = phi)
end subroutine beam_structure_set_phi

```

### 9.1.5 Get contents

Look at the incoming particles. We may also have the case that beam particles are not specified, but polarization.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
procedure :: is_set => beam_structure_is_set
procedure :: get_n_beam => beam_structure_get_n_beam
procedure :: get_prt => beam_structure_get_prt

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
function beam_structure_is_set (beam_structure) result (flag)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
  logical :: flag
  flag = beam_structure%n_beam > 0 .or. beam_structure%asymmetric ()
end function beam_structure_is_set

function beam_structure_get_n_beam (beam_structure) result (n)
  class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure

```

```

integer :: n
n = beam_structure%n_beam
end function beam_structure_get_n_beam

function beam_structure_get_prt (beam_structure) result (prt)
class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
allocate (prt (size (beam_structure%prt)))
prt = beam_structure%prt
end function beam_structure_get_prt

```

Return the number of records.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
procedure :: get_n_record => beam_structure_get_n_record

(Beam structures: procedures)+≡
function beam_structure_get_n_record (beam_structure) result (n)
class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
integer :: n
if (allocated (beam_structure%record)) then
n = size (beam_structure%record)
else
n = 0
end if
end function beam_structure_get_n_record

```

Return an array consisting of the beam indices affected by the valid entries within a record. After expansion, there should be exactly one valid entry per record.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
procedure :: get_i_entry => beam_structure_get_i_entry

(Beam structures: procedures)+≡
function beam_structure_get_i_entry (beam_structure, i) result (i_entry)
class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
integer, intent(in) :: i
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_entry
associate (record => beam_structure%record(i))
select case (size (record%entry))
case (1)
if (record%entry(1)%is_valid) then
allocate (i_entry (2), source = [1, 2])
else
allocate (i_entry (0))
end if
case (2)
if (all (record%entry%is_valid)) then
allocate (i_entry (2), source = [1, 2])
else if (record%entry(1)%is_valid) then
allocate (i_entry (1), source = [1])
else if (record%entry(2)%is_valid) then
allocate (i_entry (1), source = [2])
else
allocate (i_entry (0))

```

```

        end if
    end select
end associate
end function beam_structure_get_i_entry

```

Return the name of the first valid entry within a record. After expansion, there should be exactly one valid entry per record.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get_name => beam_structure_get_name

(Beam structures: procedures)+≡
    function beam_structure_get_name (beam_structure, i) result (name)
        class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(string_t) :: name
        associate (record => beam_structure%record(i))
            if (record%entry(1)%is_valid) then
                name = record%entry(1)%name
            else if (size (record%entry) == 2) then
                name = record%entry(2)%name
            end if
        end associate
    end function beam_structure_get_name

```

Return true if the beam structure contains a particular structure function identifier (such as lhpdf, isr, etc.)

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: contains => beam_structure_contains

(Beam structures: procedures)+≡
    function beam_structure_contains (beam_structure, name) result (flag)
        class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
        character(*), intent(in) :: name
        logical :: flag
        integer :: i, j
        flag = .false.
        if (allocated (beam_structure%record)) then
            do i = 1, size (beam_structure%record)
                do j = 1, size (beam_structure%record(i)%entry)
                    flag = beam_structure%record(i)%entry(j)%name == name
                    if (flag) return
                end do
            end do
        end if
    end function beam_structure_contains

```

Return polarization data.

```

(Beam structures: beam structure: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: polarized => beam_structure_polarized
    procedure :: get_smatrix => beam_structure_get_smatrix
    procedure :: get_pol_f => beam_structure_get_pol_f
    procedure :: asymmetric => beam_structure_asymmetric

```

```

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
function beam_structure_polarized (beam_structure) result (flag)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    logical :: flag
    flag = allocated (beam_structure%smatrix)
end function beam_structure_polarized

function beam_structure_get_smatrix (beam_structure) result (smatrix)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    type(smatrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: smatrix
    allocate (smatrix (size (beam_structure%smatrix)), &
        source = beam_structure%smatrix)
end function beam_structure_get_smatrix

function beam_structure_get_pol_f (beam_structure) result (pol_f)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: pol_f
    allocate (pol_f (size (beam_structure%pol_f)), &
        source = beam_structure%pol_f)
end function beam_structure_get_pol_f

function beam_structure_asymmetric (beam_structure) result (flag)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    logical :: flag
    flag = allocated (beam_structure%p) &
        .or. allocated (beam_structure%theta) &
        .or. allocated (beam_structure%phi)
end function beam_structure_asymmetric

```

Return the beam momenta (the space part, i.e., three-momenta). This is meaningful only if momenta and, optionally, angles have been set.

```

<Beam structures: beam structure: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_momenta => beam_structure_get_momenta

<Beam structures: procedures>+≡
function beam_structure_get_momenta (beam_structure) result (p)
    class(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    type(vector3_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: theta, phi
    integer :: n, i
    if (allocated (beam_structure%p)) then
        n = size (beam_structure%p)
        if (allocated (beam_structure%theta)) then
            if (size (beam_structure%theta) == n) then
                allocate (theta (n), source = beam_structure%theta)
            else
                call msg_fatal ("Beam structure: mismatch in momentum vs. &
                    &angle theta specification")
            end if
        else
            allocate (theta (n), source = 0._default)
        end if
    if (allocated (beam_structure%phi)) then
        if (size (beam_structure%phi) == n) then

```



```

        allocate (phi (n), source = beam_structure%phi)
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Beam structure: mismatch in momentum vs. &
            &angle phi specification")
    end if
else
    allocate (phi (n), source = 0._default)
end if
allocate (p (n))
do i = 1, n
    p(i) = beam_structure%p(i) * vector3_moving ([ &
        sin (theta(i)) * cos (phi(i)), &
        sin (theta(i)) * sin (phi(i)), &
        cos (theta(i))] )
end do
if (n == 2) p(2) = - p(2)
else
    call msg_fatal ("Beam structure: angle theta/phi specified but &
        &momentum/a p undefined")
end if
end function beam_structure_get_momenta

```

### 9.1.6 Unit Tests

```

<Beam structures: public>+≡
    public :: beam_structures_test

<Beam structures: tests>≡
    subroutine beam_structures_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Beam structures: execute tests>
end subroutine beam_structures_test

```

#### Empty structure

```

<Beam structures: execute tests>≡
    call test (beam_structures_1, "beam_structures_1", &
        "empty beam structure record", &
        u, results)

<Beam structures: tests>+≡
    subroutine beam_structures_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_structures_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display empty beam structure record"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call beam_structure%write (u)
    end subroutine beam_structures_1

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_structures_1"

end subroutine beam_structures_1

```

## Nontrivial configurations

```

(Beam structures: execute tests) +=
  call test (beam_structures_2, "beam_structures_2", &
    "beam structure records", &
    u, results)
(Beam structures: tests) +=
  subroutine beam_structures_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
    integer, dimension(0) :: empty_array
    type(string_t) :: s

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_structures_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: setup beam structure records"
    write (u, "(A)")

    s = "s"

    call beam_structure%init_sf ([s], empty_array)
    call beam_structure%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1])
    call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
    call beam_structure%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [2])
    call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
    call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 2, var_str ("b"))
    call beam_structure%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [2, 1])
    call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
    call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 2, var_str ("b"))
    call beam_structure%set_sf (2, 1, var_str ("c"))
    call beam_structure%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_structures_2"

  end subroutine beam_structures_2

```

## Expansion

Provide a function that tells, for the dummy structure function names used here, whether they are considered a two-particle spectrum or a single-particle structure function:

```
(Beam structures: tests)+≡
function test_strfun_mode (name) result (n)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  integer :: n
  select case (char (name))
    case ("a"); n = 2
    case ("b"); n = 1
    case default; n = 0
  end select
end function test_strfun_mode

(Beam structures: execute tests)+≡
call test (beam_structures_3, "beam_structures_3", &
  "beam structure expansion", &
  u, results)

(Beam structures: tests)+≡
subroutine beam_structures_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
  type(string_t) :: s

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_structures_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: expand beam structure records"
  write (u, "(A)")

  s = "s"

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Pair spectrum (keep as-is)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1])
  call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
  call beam_structure%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")

  call beam_structure%expand (test_strfun_mode)
  call beam_structure%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure function pair (expand)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [2])
  call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("b"))
  call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 2, var_str ("b"))
  call beam_structure%write (u)
```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%expand (test_strfun_mode)
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure function (separate and expand)"
write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1])
call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("b"))
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%expand (test_strfun_mode)
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Combination"
write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1, 1])
call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
call beam_structure%set_sf (2, 1, var_str ("b"))
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%expand (test_strfun_mode)
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_structures_3"

end subroutine beam_structures_3

```

## Public methods

Check the methods that can be called to get the beam-structure contents.

```

<Beam structures: execute tests>+≡
  call test (beam_structures_4, "beam_structures_4", &
    "beam structure contents", &
    u, results)

<Beam structures: tests>+≡
  subroutine beam_structures_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
    type(string_t) :: s
    type(string_t), dimension(2) :: prt
    integer :: i

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_structures_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check the API"
write (u, "(A)")

s = "s"

write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure-function combination"
write (u, "(A)")

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1, 2, 2])
call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
call beam_structure%set_sf (2, 1, var_str ("b"))
call beam_structure%set_sf (3, 2, var_str ("c"))
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_beam = ", beam_structure%get_n_beam ()
prt = beam_structure%get_prt ()
write (u, "(1x,A,2(1x,A))")  "prt =", char (prt(1)), char (prt(2))

write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_record = ", beam_structure%get_n_record ()

do i = 1, 3
  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,A)")  "name(", i, ") = ", &
    char (beam_structure%get_name (i))
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,2(1x,I0))")  "i_entry(", i, ") =", &
    beam_structure%get_i_entry (i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_structures_4"

end subroutine beam_structures_4

```

## Polarization

The polarization properties are independent from the structure-function setup.

```

<Beam structures: execute tests>+≡
  call test (beam_structures_5, "beam_structures_5", &
    "polarization", &
    u, results)

<Beam structures: tests>+≡
  subroutine beam_structures_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
    integer, dimension(0) :: empty_array
    type(string_t) :: s

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_structures_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: setup polarization in beam structure records"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

s = "s"

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s], empty_array)
call beam_structure%init_pol (1)
call beam_structure%init_smatrix (1, 1)
call beam_structure%set_sentry (1, 1, [0,0], (1._default, 0._default))
call beam_structure%set_pol_f ([0.5_default])
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
call beam_structure%final_sf ()
call beam_structure%final_pol ()

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1])
call beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("a"))
call beam_structure%init_pol (2)
call beam_structure%init_smatrix (1, 2)
call beam_structure%set_sentry (1, 1, [-1,1], (0.5_default,-0.5_default))
call beam_structure%set_sentry (1, 2, [ 1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call beam_structure%init_smatrix (2, 0)
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: beam_structures_5"

end subroutine beam_structures_5

```

## Momenta

The momenta are independent from the structure-function setup.

```

<Beam structures: execute tests>+=
  call test (beam_structures_6, "beam_structures_6", &
    "momenta", &
    u, results)

<Beam structures: tests>+=
  subroutine beam_structures_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
    integer, dimension(0) :: empty_array
    type(string_t) :: s

    write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: beam_structures_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "** Purpose: setup momenta in beam structure records"
    write (u, "(A)")

    s = "s"

    call beam_structure%init_sf ([s], empty_array)
    call beam_structure%set_momentum ([500._default])

```

```

call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
call beam_structure%final_sf ()
call beam_structure%final_mom ()

call beam_structure%init_sf ([s, s], [1])
call beam_structure%set_momentum ([500._default, 700._default])
call beam_structure%set_theta ([0._default, 0.1_default])
call beam_structure%set_phi ([0._default, 1.51_default])
call beam_structure%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: beam_structures_6"

end subroutine beam_structures_6

```

## 9.2 Beams for collisions and decays

```

⟨beams.f90⟩≡
⟨File header⟩

module beams

  ⟨Use kinds⟩
  ⟨Use strings⟩
  use constants !NODEP!
  ⟨Use file utils⟩
  use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use md5
  use models
  use flavors
  use colors
  use polarizations
  use quantum_numbers
  use state_matrices
  use interactions
  use beam_structures

  ⟨Standard module head⟩

  ⟨Beams: public⟩

  ⟨Beams: types⟩

  ⟨Beams: interfaces⟩

contains

```

```
⟨Beams: procedures⟩
```

```
⟨Beams: tests⟩
```

```
end module beams
```

### 9.2.1 Beam data

The beam data type contains beam data for one or two beams, depending on whether we are dealing with beam collisions or particle decay. In addition, it holds the c.m. energy `sqrts`, the Lorentz transformation `L` that transforms the c.m. system into the lab system, and the pair of c.m. momenta.

```
⟨Beams: public⟩≡
```

```
public :: beam_data_t
```

```
⟨Beams: types⟩≡
```

```
type :: beam_data_t
  logical :: initialized = .false.
  integer :: n = 0
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mass
  type(pmatrix_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pmatrix
  logical :: lab_is_cm_frame = .true.
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_cm
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), allocatable :: L_cm_to_lab
  real(default) :: sqrts = 0
  character(32) :: md5sum = ""
contains
  ⟨Beams: beam data: TBP⟩
end type beam_data_t
```

Generic initializer. This is called by the specific initializers below. Initialize either for decay or for collision.

```
⟨Beams: procedures⟩≡
```

```
subroutine beam_data_init (beam_data, n)
  type(beam_data_t), intent(out) :: beam_data
  integer, intent(in) :: n
  beam_data%n = n
  allocate (beam_data%flv (n))
  allocate (beam_data%mass (n))
  allocate (beam_data%pmatrix (n))
  allocate (beam_data%p_cm (n))
  allocate (beam_data%p (n))
  beam_data%initialized = .true.
end subroutine beam_data_init
```

Finalizer: needed for the polarization components of the beams.

```
⟨Beams: public⟩+≡
```

```
public :: beam_data_final
```



```

<Beams: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_data_final (beam_data)
    type(beam_data_t), intent(inout) :: beam_data
    beam_data%initialized = .false.
  end subroutine beam_data_final

```

The verbose (default) version is for debugging. The short version is for screen output in the UI.

```

<Beams: public>+≡
  public :: beam_data_write

<Beams: beam data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => beam_data_write

<Beams: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_data_write (beam_data, unit, verbose, write_md5sum)
    class(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, write_md5sum
    integer :: prt_name_len
    logical :: verb, write_md5
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    write_md5 = verb; if (present (write_md5sum)) write_md5 = write_md5sum
    if (.not. beam_data%initialized) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam data: [undefined]"
      return
    end if
    prt_name_len = maxval (len (flavor_get_name (beam_data%flv)))
    select case (beam_data%n)
    case (1)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam data (decay):"
      if (verb) then
        call write_prt (1)
        call beam_data%pmatrx(1)%write (u)
        write (u, *) "R.f. momentum:"
        call vector4_write (beam_data%p_cm(1), u)
        write (u, *) "Lab momentum:"
        call vector4_write (beam_data%p(1), u)
      else
        call write_prt (1)
      end if
    case (2)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam data (collision):"
      if (verb) then
        call write_prt (1)
        call beam_data%pmatrx(1)%write (u)
        call write_prt (2)
        call beam_data%pmatrx(2)%write (u)
        call write_sqrts
        write (u, *) "C.m. momenta:"
        call vector4_write (beam_data%p_cm(1), u)
        call vector4_write (beam_data%p_cm(2), u)
        write (u, *) "Lab momenta:"
      end if
    end select
  end subroutine beam_data_write

```

```

        call vector4_write (beam_data%p(1), u)
        call vector4_write (beam_data%p(2), u)
    else
        call write_prt (1)
        call write_prt (2)
        call write_sqrts
    end if
end select
if (allocated (beam_data%L_cm_to_lab)) then
    if (verb) then
        call lorentz_transformation_write (beam_data%L_cm_to_lab, u)
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam structure: lab and c.m. frame differ"
    end if
end if
if (write_md5) then
    write (u, *) "MD5 sum: ", beam_data%md5sum
end if
contains
subroutine write_sqrts
    character(80) :: sqrts_str
    write (sqrts_str, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") beam_data%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "sqrts = " // trim (adjustl (sqrts_str)) // " GeV"
end subroutine write_sqrts
subroutine write_prt (i)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    character(80) :: name_str, mass_str
    write (name_str, "(A)") char (flavor_get_name (beam_data%flv(i)))
    write (mass_str, "(ES13.7)") beam_data%mass(i)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") &
        name_str(:prt_name_len) // " (mass = " &
        // trim (adjustl (mass_str)) // " GeV)"
    if (beam_data%pmatrx(i)%is_polarized ()) then
        write (u, "(2x,A)") "polarized"
    else
        write (u, *)
    end if
end subroutine write_prt
end subroutine beam_data_write

```

Return initialization status:

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_data_are_valid

(Beams: procedures)+≡
    function beam_data_are_valid (beam_data) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
        flag = beam_data%initialized
    end function beam_data_are_valid

```

Check whether beam data agree with the current values of relevant parameters.

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_data_check_scattering

```

```

<Beams: procedures>+≡
subroutine beam_data_check_scattering (beam_data, sqrts)
  type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: sqrts
  if (beam_data_are_valid (beam_data)) then
    if (present (sqrts)) then
      if (sqrts /= beam_data%sqrts) then
        call msg_error ("Current setting of sqrts is inconsistent " &
          // "with beam setup (ignored).")
      end if
    end if
  else
    call msg_bug ("Beam setup: invalid beam data")
  end if
end subroutine beam_data_check_scattering

```

Return the number of beams (1 for decays, 2 for collisions).

```

<Beams: public>+≡
  public :: beam_data_get_n_in
<Beams: procedures>+≡
function beam_data_get_n_in (beam_data) result (n_in)
  integer :: n_in
  type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
  n_in = beam_data%n
end function beam_data_get_n_in

```

Return the beam flavor

```

<Beams: public>+≡
  public :: beam_data_get_flavor
<Beams: procedures>+≡
function beam_data_get_flavor (beam_data) result (flv)
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
  type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
  allocate (flv (beam_data%n))
  flv = beam_data%flv
end function beam_data_get_flavor

```

Return the beam energies

```

<Beams: public>+≡
  public :: beam_data_get_energy
<Beams: procedures>+≡
function beam_data_get_energy (beam_data) result (e)
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: e
  type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
  allocate (e (beam_data%n))
  if (beam_data%initialized) then
    e = energy (beam_data%p)
  else
    e = 0
  end if
end function beam_data_get_energy

```

Return the c.m. energy.

```
<Beams: public>+≡  
    public :: beam_data_get_sqrts  
  
<Beams: procedures>+≡  
    function beam_data_get_sqrts (beam_data) result (sqrts)  
        real(default) :: sqrts  
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data  
        sqrts = beam_data%sqrts  
    end function beam_data_get_sqrts
```

Return true if the lab and c.m. frame are specified as identical.

```
<Beams: public>+≡  
    public :: beam_data_cm_frame  
  
<Beams: procedures>+≡  
    function beam_data_cm_frame (beam_data) result (flag)  
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data  
        logical :: flag  
        flag = beam_data%lab_is_cm_frame  
    end function beam_data_cm_frame
```

Return a MD5 checksum for beam data. If no checksum is present (because beams have not been initialized), compute the checksum of the sqrts value.

```
<Beams: public>+≡  
    public :: beam_data_get_md5sum  
  
<Beams: procedures>+≡  
    function beam_data_get_md5sum (beam_data, sqrts) result (md5sum_beams)  
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data  
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts  
        character(32) :: md5sum_beams  
        character(80) :: buffer  
        if (beam_data%md5sum /= "") then  
            md5sum_beams = beam_data%md5sum  
        else  
            write (buffer, *) sqrts  
            md5sum_beams = md5sum (buffer)  
        end if  
    end function beam_data_get_md5sum
```

## 9.2.2 Initializers: beam structure

Initialize the beam data object from a beam structure object, given energy and model.

```
<Beams: public>+≡  
    public :: beam_data_init_structure  
  
<Beams: procedures>+≡  
    subroutine beam_data_init_structure &  
        (beam_data, structure, sqrts, model, decay_rest_frame)  
        type(beam_data_t), intent(out) :: beam_data
```

```

type(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: structure
integer :: n_beam
real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
logical, intent(in), optional :: decay_rest_frame
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
n_beam = structure%get_n_beam ()
allocate (flv (n_beam))
call flavor_init (flv, structure%get_prt (), model)
if (structure%asymmetric ()) then
  if (structure%polarized ()) then
    call beam_data_init_momenta (beam_data, &
      structure%get_momenta (), flv, &
      structure%get_smatrix (), structure%get_pol_f ())
  else
    call beam_data_init_momenta (beam_data, &
      structure%get_momenta (), flv)
  end if
else
  select case (n_beam)
  case (1)
    if (structure%polarized ()) then
      call beam_data_init_decay (beam_data, flv, &
        structure%get_smatrix (), structure%get_pol_f (), &
        rest_frame = decay_rest_frame)
    else
      call beam_data_init_decay (beam_data, flv, &
        rest_frame = decay_rest_frame)
    end if
  case (2)
    if (structure%polarized ()) then
      call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, sqrts, flv, &
        structure%get_smatrix (), structure%get_pol_f ())
    else
      call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, sqrts, flv)
    end if
  case default
    call msg_bug ("Beam data: invalid beam structure object")
  end select
end if
end subroutine beam_data_init_structure

```

### 9.2.3 Initializers: collisions

This is the simplest one: just the two flavors, c.m. energy, polarization. Color is inferred from flavor. Beam momenta and c.m. momenta coincide.

```

(Beams: public)+≡
  public :: beam_data_init_sqrts

(Beams: procedures)+≡
  subroutine beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, sqrts, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
    type(beam_data_t), intent(out) :: beam_data
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts

```

```

type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
type(smatrix_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: smatrix
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: pol_f
real(default), dimension(size(flv)) :: E, p
call beam_data_init (beam_data, size (flv))
beam_data%sqrts = sqrts
beam_data%lab_is_cm_frame = .true.
select case (beam_data%n)
case (1)
  E = sqrts; p = 0
  beam_data%p_cm = vector4_moving (E, p, 3)
  beam_data%p = beam_data%p_cm
case (2)
  beam_data%p_cm = colliding_momenta (sqrts, flavor_get_mass (flv))
  beam_data%p = colliding_momenta (sqrts, flavor_get_mass (flv))
end select
call beam_data_finish_initialization (beam_data, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
end subroutine beam_data_init_sqrts

```

This version sets beam momenta directly, assuming that they are asymmetric, i.e., lab frame and c.m. frame do not coincide. Polarization info is deferred to a common initializer.

The Lorentz transformation that we compute here is not actually used in the calculation; instead, it will be recomputed for each event in the subroutine `phs_set_incoming_momenta`. We compute it here for the nominal beam setup nevertheless, so we can print it and, in particular, include it in the MD5 sum.

*(Beams: public)+≡*

```
public :: beam_data_init_momenta
```

*(Beams: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine beam_data_init_momenta (beam_data, p3, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
  type(beam_data_t), intent(out) :: beam_data
  type(vector3_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p3
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  type(smatrix_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: smatrix
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: pol_f
  type(vector4_t) :: p0
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p, p_cm_rot
  real(default), dimension(size(p3)) :: e
  real(default), dimension(size(flv)) :: m
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L_boost, L_rot
  call beam_data_init (beam_data, size (flv))
  m = flavor_get_mass (flv)
  e = sqrt (p3 ** 2 + m ** 2)
  allocate (p (beam_data%n))
  p = vector4_moving (e, p3)
  p0 = sum (p)
  beam_data%p = p
  beam_data%lab_is_cm_frame = .false.
  beam_data%sqrts = p0 ** 1
  L_boost = boost (p0, beam_data%sqrts)
  allocate (p_cm_rot (beam_data%n))
  p_cm_rot = inverse (L_boost) * p

```

```

allocate (beam_data%L_cm_to_lab)
select case (beam_data%n)
case (1)
    beam_data%L_cm_to_lab = L_boost
    beam_data%p_cm = vector4_at_rest (beam_data%sqrts)
case (2)
    L_rot = rotation_to_2nd (3, space_part (p_cm_rot(1)))
    beam_data%L_cm_to_lab = L_boost * L_rot
    beam_data%p_cm = &
        colliding_momenta (beam_data%sqrts, flavor_get_mass (flv))
end select
call beam_data_finish_initialization (beam_data, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
end subroutine beam_data_init_momenta

```

Final steps: If requested, rotate the beams in the lab frame, and set the beam-data components.

*(Beams: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine beam_data_finish_initialization (beam_data, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
    type(beam_data_t), intent(inout) :: beam_data
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    type(smatrix_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: smatrix
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: pol_f
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, beam_data%n
        beam_data%flv(i) = flv(i)
        beam_data%mass(i) = flavor_get_mass (flv(i))
        if (present (smatrix)) then
            if (size (smatrix) /= beam_data%n) &
                call msg_fatal ("Beam data: &
                    &polarization density array has wrong dimension")
            beam_data%pmatrix(i) = smatrix(i)
            if (present (pol_f)) then
                if (size (pol_f) /= size (smatrix)) &
                    call msg_fatal ("Beam data: &
                        &polarization fraction array has wrong dimension")
                call beam_data%pmatrix(i)%normalize (flv(i), pol_f(i))
            else
                call beam_data%pmatrix(i)%normalize (flv(i), 1._default)
            end if
        else
            call beam_data%pmatrix(i)%init (2, 0)
            call beam_data%pmatrix(i)%normalize (flv(i), 0._default)
        end if
    end do
    call beam_data_compute_md5sum (beam_data)
end subroutine beam_data_finish_initialization

```

The MD5 sum is stored within the beam-data record, so it can be checked for integrity in subsequent runs.

*(Beams: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine beam_data_compute_md5sum (beam_data)
    type(beam_data_t), intent(inout) :: beam_data
    integer :: unit

```

```

unit = free_unit ()
open (unit = unit, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
call beam_data_write (beam_data, unit, write_md5sum = .false., &
    verbose = .true.)
rewind (unit)
beam_data%md5sum = md5sum (unit)
close (unit)
end subroutine beam_data_compute_md5sum

```

### 9.2.4 Initializers: decays

This is the simplest one: decay in rest frame. We need just flavor and polarization. Color is inferred from flavor. Beam momentum and c.m. momentum coincide.

```

<Beams: public>+≡
    public :: beam_data_init_decay

<Beams: procedures>+≡
    subroutine beam_data_init_decay (beam_data, flv, smatrix, pol_f, rest_frame)
        type(beam_data_t), intent(out) :: beam_data
        type(flavor_t), dimension(1), intent(in) :: flv
        type(smatrix_t), dimension(1), intent(in), optional :: smatrix
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: pol_f
        logical, intent(in), optional :: rest_frame
        real(default), dimension(1) :: m
        m = flavor_get_mass (flv)
        if (present (smatrix)) then
            call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, m(1), flv, smatrix, pol_f)
        else
            call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, m(1), flv, smatrix, pol_f)
        end if
        if (present (rest_frame)) beam_data%lab_is_cm_frame = rest_frame
    end subroutine beam_data_init_decay

```

### 9.2.5 Sanity check

After the beams have been set, the initial-particle masses may have been modified. This can be checked here.

```

<Beams: public>+≡
    public :: beam_data_masses_are_consistent

<Beams: procedures>+≡
    function beam_data_masses_are_consistent (beam_data) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
        flag = all (beam_data%mass == flavor_get_mass (beam_data%flv))
    end function beam_data_masses_are_consistent

```



## 9.2.6 The beams type

Beam objects are interaction objects that contain the actual beam data including polarization and density matrix. For collisions, the beam object actually contains two beams.

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_t

(Beams: types)+≡
    type :: beam_t
    private
        type(interaction_t) :: int
    end type beam_t

```

The constructor contains code that converts beam data into the (entangled) particle-pair quantum state. First, we set the number of particles and polarization mask. (The polarization mask is handed over to all later interactions, so if helicity is diagonal or absent, this fact is used when constructing the hard-interaction events.) Then, we construct the entangled state that combines helicity, flavor and color of the two particles (where flavor and color are unique, while several helicity states are possible). Then, we transfer this state together with the associated values from the spin density matrix into the `interaction_t` object.

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_init

(Beams: procedures)+≡
    subroutine beam_init (beam, beam_data)
        type(beam_t), intent(out) :: beam
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in), target :: beam_data
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(beam_data%n) :: mask
        type(state_matrix_t), target :: state_hel, state_fc, state_tmp
        type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel, it_tmp
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
        type(polarization_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pol
        integer :: i
        mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., &
            .not. beam_data%pmatrix%is_polarized (), &
            mask_hd = beam_data%pmatrix%is_diagonal ())
        call interaction_init &
            (beam%int, 0, 0, beam_data%n, mask=mask, store_values=.true.)
        allocate (pol (beam_data%n))
        do i = 1, size (pol)
            call polarization_init_pmatrix (pol(i), beam_data%pmatrix(i))
        end do
        call combine_polarization_states (pol, state_hel)
        do i = 1, size (pol)
            call polarization_final (pol(i))
        end do
        allocate (qn (beam_data%n))
        call quantum_numbers_init &
            (qn, beam_data%flv, color_from_flavor (beam_data%flv, 1))
        call state_matrix_init (state_fc)
        call state_matrix_add_state (state_fc, qn)
    end subroutine beam_init

```

```

call merge_state_matrices (state_hel, state_fc, state_tmp)
call state_iterator_init (it_hel, state_hel)
call state_iterator_init (it_tmp, state_tmp)
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel))
    call interaction_add_state (beam%int, &
        state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_tmp), &
        value=state_iterator_get_matrix_element (it_hel))
    call state_iterator_advance (it_hel)
    call state_iterator_advance (it_tmp)
end do
call interaction_freeze (beam%int)
call interaction_set_momenta &
    (beam%int, beam_data%p, outgoing = .true.)
call state_matrix_final (state_hel)
call state_matrix_final (state_fc)
call state_matrix_final (state_tmp)
end subroutine beam_init

```

Finalizer:

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_final

(Beams: procedures)+≡
    elemental subroutine beam_final (beam)
        type(beam_t), intent(inout) :: beam
        call interaction_final (beam%int)
    end subroutine beam_final

```

I/O:

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: beam_write

(Beams: procedures)+≡
    subroutine beam_write (beam, unit, verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass)
        type(beam_t), intent(in) :: beam
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, show_momentum_sum, show_mass
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        select case (interaction_get_n_out (beam%int))
        case (1); write (u, *) "Decaying particle:"
        case (2); write (u, *) "Colliding beams:"
        end select
        call interaction_write &
            (beam%int, unit, verbose = verbose, show_momentum_sum = &
                show_momentum_sum, show_mass = show_mass)
    end subroutine beam_write

```

Defined assignment: deep copy

```

(Beams: public)+≡
    public :: assignment(=)

```

```

<Beams: interfaces>+=
  interface assignment(=)
    module procedure beam_assign
  end interface

```

```

<Beams: procedures>+=
  subroutine beam_assign (beam_out, beam_in)
    type(beam_t), intent(out) :: beam_out
    type(beam_t), intent(in) :: beam_in
    beam_out%int = beam_in%int
  end subroutine beam_assign

```

### 9.2.7 Inherited procedures

```

<Beams: public>+=
  public :: interaction_set_source_link

```

```

<Beams: interfaces>+=
  interface interaction_set_source_link
    module procedure interaction_set_source_link_beam
  end interface

```

```

<Beams: procedures>+=
  subroutine interaction_set_source_link_beam (int, i, beam1, i1)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    type(beam_t), intent(in), target :: beam1
    integer, intent(in) :: i, i1
    call interaction_set_source_link (int, i, beam1%int, i1)
  end subroutine interaction_set_source_link_beam

```

### 9.2.8 Accessing contents

Return the interaction component – as a pointer, to avoid any copying.

```

<Beams: public>+=
  public :: beam_get_int_ptr

```

```

<Beams: procedures>+=
  function beam_get_int_ptr (beam) result (int)
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    type(beam_t), intent(in), target :: beam
    int => beam%int
  end function beam_get_int_ptr

```

Set beam momenta directly. (Used for cascade decays.)

```

<Beams: public>+=
  public :: beam_set_momenta

```

```

<Beams: procedures>+=
  subroutine beam_set_momenta (beam, p)
    type(beam_t), intent(inout) :: beam
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    call interaction_set_momenta (beam%int, p)
  end subroutine beam_set_momenta

```

```
end subroutine beam_set_momenta
```

### 9.2.9 Unit tests

```
<Beams: public>+≡
  public :: beam_test

<Beams: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<Beams: execute tests>
  end subroutine beam_test
```

Test the basic beam setup.

```
<Beams: execute tests>≡
  call test (beam_1, "beam_1", &
    "check basic beam setup", &
    u, results)

<Beams: tests>≡
  subroutine beam_1 (u)
    use os_interface
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
    type(beam_t) :: beam
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(smatrix_t), dimension(2) :: smatrix
    real(default), dimension(2) :: pol_f
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test basic beam setup"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call model_list%read_model &
      (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* 1: Scattering process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    sqrts = 500
```

```

call flavor_init (flv, [1,-1], model)

call smatrix(1)%init (2, 1)
call smatrix(1)%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
pol_f(1) = 0.5_default

!!! 2.1 version:
! call polarization_init_circular (pol(1), flv(1), 0.5_default)

call smatrix(2)%init (2, 3)
call smatrix(2)%set_entry (1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
call smatrix(2)%set_entry (2, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
call smatrix(2)%set_entry (3, [-1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
pol_f(2) = 1._default

!!! 2.1 version:
! call polarization_init_transversal (pol(2), flv(2), 0._default, 1._default)
call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, sqrts, flv, smatrix, pol_f)
call beam_data_write (beam_data, u)
write (u, "(A)")
call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)
call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* 2: Decay"
write (u, "(A)")
call flavor_init (flv(1), 23, model)
call smatrix(1)%init (2, 1)
call smatrix(1)%set_entry (1, [0,0], (1._default, 0._default))
pol_f(1) = 0.4_default

!!! 2.1 version:
! call polarization_init_longitudinal (pol(1), flv(1), 0.4_default)
call beam_data_init_decay (beam_data, flv(1:1), smatrix(1:1), pol_f(1:1))
call beam_data_write (beam_data, u)
write (u, "(A)")
call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_1"

end subroutine beam_1

```

Test advanced beam setup.

*<Beams: execute tests>+≡*

```
call test (beam_2, "beam_2", &
  "beam initialization", &
  u, results)
```

*<Beams: tests>+≡*

```
subroutine beam_2 (u)
  use os_interface
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
  type(beam_t) :: beam
  real(default) :: sqrts
  type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
  integer, dimension(0) :: no_records
  type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: transfer beam polarization using &
    &beam structure"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* 1: Scattering process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  sqrts = 500
  call flavor_init (flv, [1,-1], model)
  call beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), no_records)

  call beam_structure%init_pol (2)

  call beam_structure%init_smatrix (1, 1)
  call beam_structure%set_sentry (1, 1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))

  call beam_structure%init_smatrix (2, 3)
  call beam_structure%set_sentry (2, 1, [1,1], (1._default, 0._default))
  call beam_structure%set_sentry (2, 2, [-1,-1], (1._default, 0._default))
  call beam_structure%set_sentry (2, 3, [-1,1], (1._default, 0._default))

  call beam_structure%set_pol_f ([0.5_default, 1._default])
  call beam_structure%write (u)
```

```

write (u, *)

call beam_data_init_structure (beam_data, beam_structure, sqrts, model)
call beam_data_write (beam_data, u)
write (u, *)

call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)

call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)
call beam_structure%final_pol ()
call beam_structure%final_sf ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* 2: Decay"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv(1), 23, model)
call beam_structure%init_sf ([flavor_get_name (flv(1))], no_records)

call beam_structure%init_pol (1)

call beam_structure%init_smatrix (1, 1)
call beam_structure%set_sentry (1, 1, [0,0], (1._default, 0._default))
call beam_structure%set_pol_f ([0.4_default])
call beam_structure%write (u)
write (u, *)

call beam_data_init_structure (beam_data, beam_structure, sqrts, model)
call beam_data_write (beam_data, u)
write (u, "(A)")
call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_2"

end subroutine beam_2

```

Test advanced beam setup, completely arbitrary momenta.

*(Beams: execute tests)* +≡

```

call test (beam_3, "beam_3", &
  "generic beam momenta", &
  u, results)

```

*<Beams: tests>+≡*

```

subroutine beam_3 (u)
  use os_interface
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
  type(beam_t) :: beam
  type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
  integer, dimension(0) :: no_records
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
  type(vector3_t), dimension(2) :: p3
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: beam_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up beams with generic momenta"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* 1: Scattering process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call flavor_init (flv, [2212,2212], model)

  p3(1) = vector3_moving ([5._default, 0._default, 10._default])
  p3(2) = -vector3_moving ([1._default, 1._default, -10._default])

  call beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), no_records)
  call beam_structure%set_momentum (p3 ** 1)
  call beam_structure%set_theta (polar_angle (p3))
  call beam_structure%set_phi (azimuthal_angle (p3))
  call beam_structure%write (u)
  write (u, *)

  call beam_data_init_structure (beam_data, beam_structure, 0._default, model)
  call beam_data_write (beam_data, u, verbose = .true.)
  write (u, *)

  write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Beam momenta reconstructed from LT:"
  p = beam_data%L_cm_to_lab * beam_data%p_cm
  call pacify (p, 1e-12_default)
  call vector4_write (p(1), u)
  call vector4_write (p(2), u)

```



```

write (u, "(A)")

call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)

call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)
call beam_structure%final_sf ()
call beam_structure%final_mom ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* 2: Decay"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv(1), 23, model)
p3(1) = vector3_moving ([10._default, 5._default, 50._default])

call beam_structure%init_sf ([flavor_get_name (flv(1))], no_records)
call beam_structure%set_momentum ([p3(1) ** 1])
call beam_structure%set_theta ([polar_angle (p3(1))])
call beam_structure%set_phi ([azimuthal_angle (p3(1))])
call beam_structure%write (u)
write (u, *)

call beam_data_init_structure (beam_data, beam_structure, 0._default, model)
call beam_data_write (beam_data, u, verbose = .true.)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam momentum reconstructed from LT:"
p(1) = beam_data%L_cm_to_lab * beam_data%p_cm(1)
call pacify (p(1), 1e-12_default)
call vector4_write (p(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")

call beam_init (beam, beam_data)
call beam_write (beam, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call beam_final (beam)
call beam_data_final (beam_data)
call beam_structure%final_sf ()
call beam_structure%final_mom ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: beam_3"

end subroutine beam_3

```

## Chapter 10

# Spectra and structure functions

### 10.1 Tools

This module contains auxiliary procedures that can be accessed by the structure function code.

```
(sf_aux.f90)≡  
  ⟨File header⟩  
  
  module sf_aux  
  
    ⟨Use kinds⟩  
    use constants, only: twopi !NODEP!  
    ⟨Use file utils⟩  
    use unit_tests  
  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
  
    ⟨Standard module head⟩  
  
    ⟨SF aux: public⟩  
  
    ⟨SF aux: parameters⟩  
  
    ⟨SF aux: types⟩  
  
    contains  
  
    ⟨SF aux: procedures⟩  
  
    ⟨SF aux: tests⟩  
  
  end module sf_aux
```

### 10.1.1 Momentum splitting

Let us consider first an incoming parton with momentum  $k$  and invariant mass squared  $s = k^2$  that splits into two partons with momenta  $q, p$  and invariant masses  $t = q^2$  and  $u = p^2$ . (This is an abuse of the Mandelstam notation.  $t$  is actually the momentum transfer, assuming that  $p$  is radiated and  $q$  initiates the hard process.) The energy is split among the partons such that if  $E = k^0$ , we have  $q^0 = xE$  and  $p^0 = \bar{x}E$ , where  $\bar{x} \equiv 1 - x$ .

We define the angle  $\theta$  as the polar angle of  $p$  w.r.t. the momentum axis of the incoming momentum  $k$ . Ignoring azimuthal angle, we can write the four-momenta in the basis  $(E, p_T, p_L)$  as

$$k = \begin{pmatrix} E \\ 0 \\ p \end{pmatrix}, \quad p = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{x}E \\ \bar{x}\bar{p}\sin\theta \\ \bar{x}\bar{p}\cos\theta \end{pmatrix}, \quad q = \begin{pmatrix} xE \\ -\bar{x}\bar{p}\sin\theta \\ p - \bar{x}\bar{p}\cos\theta \end{pmatrix}, \quad (10.1)$$

where the first two mass-shell conditions are

$$p^2 = E^2 - s, \quad \bar{p}^2 = E^2 - \frac{u}{\bar{x}^2}. \quad (10.2)$$

The second condition implies that, for positive  $u$ ,  $\bar{x}^2 > u/E^2$ , or equivalently

$$x < 1 - \sqrt{u}/E. \quad (10.3)$$

We are interested in the third mass-shell conditions:  $s$  and  $u$  are fixed, so we need  $t$  as a function of  $\cos\theta$ :

$$t = -2\bar{x}(E^2 - p\bar{p}\cos\theta) + s + u. \quad (10.4)$$

Solving for  $\cos\theta$ , we get

$$\cos\theta = \frac{2\bar{x}E^2 + t - s - u}{2\bar{x}p\bar{p}}. \quad (10.5)$$

We can compute  $\sin^2\theta$  numerically as  $\sin^2\theta = 1 - \cos^2\theta$ , but it is important to reexpress this in view of numerical stability. To this end, we first determine the bounds for  $t$ . The cosine must be between  $-1$  and  $1$ , so the bounds are

$$t_0 = -2\bar{x}(E^2 + p\bar{p}) + s + u, \quad (10.6)$$

$$t_1 = -2\bar{x}(E^2 - p\bar{p}) + s + u. \quad (10.7)$$

Computing  $\sin^2\theta$  from  $\cos\theta$  above, we observe that the numerator is a quadratic polynomial in  $t$  which has the zeros  $t_0$  and  $t_1$ , while the common denominator is given by  $(2\bar{x}p\bar{p})^2$ . Hence, we can write

$$\sin^2\theta = -\frac{(t - t_0)(t - t_1)}{(2\bar{x}p\bar{p})^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\theta = \frac{(t - t_0) + (t - t_1)}{4\bar{x}p\bar{p}}, \quad (10.8)$$

which is free of large cancellations near  $t = t_0$  or  $t = t_1$ .

If all is massless, i.e.,  $s = u = 0$ , this simplifies to

$$t_0 = -4\bar{x}E^2, \quad t_1 = 0, \quad (10.9)$$

$$\sin^2\theta = -\frac{t}{\bar{x}E^2} \left(1 + \frac{t}{4\bar{x}E^2}\right), \quad \cos\theta = 1 + \frac{t}{2\bar{x}E^2}. \quad (10.10)$$

Here is the implementation. First, we define a container for the kinematical integration limits and some further data.

```

<SF aux: public>≡
  public :: splitting_data_t

<SF aux: types>≡
  type :: splitting_data_t
    private
    logical :: collinear = .false.
    real(default) :: x0 = 0
    real(default) :: x1
    real(default) :: t0
    real(default) :: t1
    real(default) :: phi0 = 0
    real(default) :: phi1 = twopi
    real(default) :: E, p, s, u, m2
    real(default) :: x, xb, pb
    real(default) :: t = 0
    real(default) :: phi = 0
    contains
    <SF aux: splitting data: TBP>
  end type splitting_data_t

```

I/O for debugging:

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => splitting_data_write

<SF aux: procedures>≡
  subroutine splitting_data_write (d, unit)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: d
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)") "Splitting data:"
    write (u, "(2x,A,L1)") "collinear = ", d%collinear
1   format (2x,A,1x,ES15.8)
    write (u, 1) "x0  =", d%x0
    write (u, 1) "x   =", d%x
    write (u, 1) "xb  =", d%xb
    write (u, 1) "x1  =", d%x1
    write (u, 1) "t0  =", d%t0
    write (u, 1) "t   =", d%t
    write (u, 1) "t1  =", d%t1
    write (u, 1) "phi0 =", d%phi0
    write (u, 1) "phi  =", d%phi
    write (u, 1) "phi1 =", d%phi1
    write (u, 1) "E    =", d%E
    write (u, 1) "p    =", d%p
    write (u, 1) "pb   =", d%pb
    write (u, 1) "s    =", d%s
    write (u, 1) "u    =", d%u
    write (u, 1) "m2   =", d%m2
  end subroutine splitting_data_write

```

### 10.1.2 Constant data

This is the initializer for the data. The input consists of the incoming momentum, its invariant mass squared, and the invariant mass squared of the radiated particle.  $m_2$  is the *physical* mass squared of the outgoing particle. The  $t$  bounds depend on the chosen  $x$  value and cannot be determined yet.

```

(SF aux: splitting data: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init => splitting_data_init

(SF aux: procedures)+≡
  subroutine splitting_data_init (d, k, mk2, mr2, mo2, collinear)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(out) :: d
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: k
    real(default), intent(in) :: mk2, mr2, mo2
    logical, intent(in), optional :: collinear
    if (present (collinear)) d%collinear = collinear
    d%E = energy (k)
    d%x1 = 1 - sqrt (max (mr2, 0._default)) / d%E
    d%p = sqrt (d%E**2 - mk2)
    d%s = mk2
    d%u = mr2
    d%m2 = mo2
  end subroutine splitting_data_init

```

Retrieve the  $x$  bounds, if needed for  $x$  sampling. Generating an  $x$  value is done by the caller, since this is the part that depends on the nature of the structure function.

```

(SF aux: splitting data: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_x_bounds => splitting_get_x_bounds

(SF aux: procedures)+≡
  function splitting_get_x_bounds (d) result (x)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: d
    real(default), dimension(2) :: x
    x = [ d%x0, d%x1 ]
  end function splitting_get_x_bounds

```

Now set the momentum fraction and compute  $t_0$  and  $t_1$ .

[The calculation of  $t_1$  is subject to numerical problems. The exact formula is ( $s = m_i^2$ ,  $u = m_r^2$ )

$$t_1 = -2\bar{x}E^2 + m_i^2 + m_r^2 + 2\bar{x}\sqrt{E^2 - m_i^2}\sqrt{E^2 - m_r^2/\bar{x}^2}. \quad (10.11)$$

The structure-function paradigm is useful only if  $E \gg m_i, m_r$ . In a Taylor expansion for large  $E$ , the leading term cancels. The expansion of the square roots (to subleading order) yields

$$t_1 = xm_i^2 - \frac{x}{\bar{x}}m_r^2. \quad (10.12)$$

There are two cases of interest:  $m_i = m_o$  and  $m_r = 0$ ,

$$t_1 = xm_o^2 \quad (10.13)$$

and  $m_i = m_r$  and  $m_o = 0$ ,

$$t_1 = -\frac{x^2}{\bar{x}} m_i^2. \quad (10.14)$$

In both cases,  $t_1 \leq m_o^2$ .]

That said, it turns out that taking the  $t_1$  evaluation at face value leads to less problems than the approximation. We express the angles in terms of  $t - t_0$  and  $t - t_1$ . Numerical noise in  $t_1$  can then be tolerated.

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_t_bounds => splitting_set_t_bounds

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine splitting_set_t_bounds (d, x, xb)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(inout) :: d
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: x, xb
    real(default) :: tp, tm
    if (present (x)) d%x = x
    if (present (xb)) d%xb = xb
    if (d%xb /= 0) then
      d%pb = sqrt (max (d%E**2 - d%u / d%xb**2, 0._default))
    else
      d%pb = 0
    end if
    tp = -2 * d%xb * d%E**2 + d%s + d%u
    tm = -2 * d%xb * d%p * d%pb
    d%t0 = tp + tm
    d%t1 = tp - tm
    d%t = d%t1
  end subroutine splitting_set_t_bounds

```

### 10.1.3 Sampling recoil

Compute a value for the momentum transfer  $t$ , using a random number  $r$ . We assume a logarithmic distribution for  $t - m^2$ , corresponding to the propagator  $1/(t - m^2)$  with the physical mass  $m$  for the outgoing particle. Optionally, we can narrow the kinematical bounds.

If all three masses in the splitting vanish, the upper limit for  $t$  is zero. In that case, the  $t$  value is set to zero and the splitting will be collinear.

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: sample_t => splitting_sample_t

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
  subroutine splitting_sample_t (d, r, t0, t1)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(inout) :: d
    real(default), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: t0, t1
    real(default) :: tt0, tt1, tt0m, tt1m
    if (d%collinear) then
      d%t = d%t1
    else
      tt0 = d%t0; if (present (t0)) tt0 = max (t0, tt0)
      tt1 = d%t1; if (present (t1)) tt1 = min (t1, tt1)
      tt0m = tt0 - d%m2

```

```

    tt1m = tt1 - d%m2
    if (tt0m < 0 .and. tt1m < 0 .and. abs(tt0m) > &
        epsilon(tt0m) .and. abs(tt1m) > epsilon(tt0m)) then
        d%t = d%m2 + tt0m * exp (r * log (tt1m / tt0m))
    else
        d%t = tt1
    end if
end if
end subroutine splitting_sample_t

```

The inverse operation: Given  $t$ , we recover the value of  $r$  that would have produced this value.

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse_t => splitting_inverse_t
<SF aux: procedures>+≡
    subroutine splitting_inverse_t (d, r, t0, t1)
        class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: d
        real(default), intent(out) :: r
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: t0, t1
        real(default) :: tt0, tt1, tt0m, tt1m
        if (d%collinear) then
            r = 0
        else
            tt0 = d%t0; if (present (t0)) tt0 = max (t0, tt0)
            tt1 = d%t1; if (present (t1)) tt1 = min (t1, tt1)
            tt0m = tt0 - d%m2
            tt1m = tt1 - d%m2
            if (tt0m < 0 .and. tt1m < 0) then
                r = log ((d%t - d%m2) / tt0m) / log (tt1m / tt0m)
            else
                r = 0
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine splitting_inverse_t

```

This is trivial, but provided for convenience:

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: sample_phi => splitting_sample_phi
<SF aux: procedures>+≡
    subroutine splitting_sample_phi (d, r)
        class(splitting_data_t), intent(inout) :: d
        real(default), intent(in) :: r
        if (d%collinear) then
            d%phi = 0
        else
            d%phi = (1-r) * d%phi0 + r * d%phi1
        end if
    end subroutine splitting_sample_phi

```

Inverse:

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse_phi => splitting_inverse_phi

```

```

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
subroutine splitting_inverse_phi (d, r)
  class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: d
  real(default), intent(out) :: r
  if (d%collinear) then
    r = 0
  else
    r = (d%phi - d%phi0) / (d%phi1 - d%phi0)
  end if
end subroutine splitting_inverse_phi

```

### 10.1.4 Splitting

In this function, we actually perform the splitting. The incoming momentum  $k$  is split into (if no recoil)  $q_1 = (1 - x)k$  and  $q_2 = xk$ .

Apart from the splitting data, we need the incoming momentum  $k$ , the momentum transfer  $t$ , and the azimuthal angle  $\phi$ . The momentum fraction  $x$  is already known here.

Alternatively, we can split without recoil. The azimuthal angle is irrelevant, and the momentum transfer is always equal to the upper limit  $t_1$ , so the polar angle is zero. Obviously, if there are nonzero masses it is not possible to keep both energy-momentum conservation and at the same time all particles on shell. We choose for dropping the on-shell condition here.

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
procedure :: split_momentum => splitting_split_momentum

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
function splitting_split_momentum (d, k) result (q)
  class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: d
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: k
  real(default) :: st2, ct2, st, ct, cp, sp
  type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: rot
  real(default) :: tt0, tt1, den
  type(vector3_t) :: kk, q1, q2
  if (d%collinear) then
    if (d%s == 0 .and. d%u == 0) then
      q(1) = d%xb * k
      q(2) = d%x * k
    else
      kk = space_part (k)
      q1 = d%xb * (d%pb / d%p) * kk
      q2 = kk - q1
      q(1) = vector4_moving (d%xb * d%E, q1)
      q(2) = vector4_moving (d%x * d%E, q2)
    end if
  else
    den = 2 * d%xb * d%p * d%pb
    tt0 = max (d%t - d%t0, 0._default)
    tt1 = min (d%t - d%t1, 0._default)
    if (den**2 <= epsilon(den)) then
      st2 = 1
    end if
  end if
end function splitting_split_momentum

```



```

else
  st2 = - (tt0 * tt1) / den ** 2
end if
if (st2 > 1) then
  st2 = 1
end if
ct2 = 1 - st2
st = sqrt (max (st2, 0._default))
ct = sqrt (max (ct2, 0._default))
sp = sin (d%phi)
cp = cos (d%phi)
rot = rotation_to_2nd (3, space_part (k))
q1 = vector3_moving (d%xb * d%pb * [st * cp, st * sp, ct])
q2 = vector3_moving (d%p, 3) - q1
q(1) = rot * vector4_moving (d%xb * d%E, q1)
q(2) = rot * vector4_moving (d%x * d%E, q2)
end if
end function splitting_split_momentum

```

Momenta generated by splitting will in general be off-shell. They are on-shell only if they are collinear and massless. This subroutine puts them on shell by brute force, violating either momentum or energy conservation. The direction of three-momentum is always retained.

If the energy is below mass shell, we return a zero momentum.

```

<SF aux: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter, public :: KEEP_ENERGY = 0, KEEP_MOMENTUM = 1

<SF aux: public>+≡
  public :: on_shell

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine on_shell (p, m2, keep)
    type(vector4_t), intent(inout) :: p
    real(default), intent(in) :: m2
    integer, intent(in) :: keep
    real(default) :: E, E2, pn
    select case (keep)
    case (KEEP_ENERGY)
      E = energy (p)
      E2 = E ** 2
      if (E2 >= m2) then
        pn = sqrt (E2 - m2)
        p = vector4_moving (E, pn * direction (space_part (p)))
      else
        p = vector4_null
      end if
    case (KEEP_MOMENTUM)
      E = sqrt (space_part (p) ** 2 + m2)
      p = vector4_moving (E, space_part (p))
    end select
  end subroutine on_shell

```

### 10.1.5 Recovering the splitting

This is the inverse problem. We have on-shell momenta and want to deduce the splitting parameters  $x$ ,  $t$ , and  $\phi$ .

```

(SF aux: splitting data: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover => splitting_recover

(SF aux: procedures)+≡
  subroutine splitting_recover (d, k, q, keep)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(inout) :: d
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: k, q
    integer, intent(in) :: keep
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: rot
    type(vector4_t) :: q0, k0
    real(default) :: p1, p2, p3, pt2, pp2, pl
    real(default) :: aux, den, norm
    real(default) :: st2, ct2, ct
    rot = inverse (rotation_to_2nd (3, space_part (k)))
    q0 = rot * q
    p1 = vector4_get_component (q0, 1)
    p2 = vector4_get_component (q0, 2)
    p3 = vector4_get_component (q0, 3)
    pt2 = p1 ** 2 + p2 ** 2
    pp2 = p1 ** 2 + p2 ** 2 + p3 ** 2
    pl = abs (p3)
    k0 = vector4_moving (d%E, d%p, 3)
    select case (keep)
    case (KEEP_ENERGY)
      d%x = energy (q0) / d%E
      d%xb = 1 - d%x
      call d%set_t_bounds ()
      if (.not. d%collinear) then
        aux = (d%xb * d%pb) ** 2 * pp2 - d%p ** 2 * pt2
        den = d%p ** 2 - (d%xb * d%pb) ** 2
        if (aux >= 0 .and. den > 0) then
          norm = (d%p * pl + sqrt (aux)) / den
        else
          norm = 1
        end if
      end if
    case (KEEP_MOMENTUM)
      d%xb = sqrt (space_part (k0 - q0) ** 2 + d%u) / d%E
      d%x = 1 - d%xb
      call d%set_t_bounds ()
      norm = 1
    end select
    if (d%collinear) then
      d%t = d%t1
      d%phi = 0
    else
      if ((d%xb * d%pb * norm)**2 < epsilon(d%xb)) then
        st2 = 1
      else
        st2 = pt2 / (d%xb * d%pb * norm) ** 2
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

      if (st2 > 1) then
        st2 = 1
      end if
      ct2 = 1 - st2
      ct = sqrt (max (ct2, 0._default))
      if (ct /= -1) then
        d%t = d%t1 - 2 * d%xb * d%p * d%pb * st2 / (1 + ct)
      else
        d%t = d%t0
      end if
      if (p1 /= 0 .or. p2 /= 0) then
        d%phi = atan2 (-p2, -p1)
      else
        d%phi = 0
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine splitting_recover

```

### 10.1.6 Extract data

```

<SF aux: splitting data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_x => splitting_get_x

<SF aux: procedures>+≡
  function splitting_get_x (sd) result (x)
    class(splitting_data_t), intent(in) :: sd
    real(default) :: x
    x = sd%x
  end function splitting_get_x

```

### 10.1.7 Unit tests

```

<SF aux: public>+≡
  public :: sf_aux_test

<SF aux: tests>≡
  subroutine sf_aux_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <SF aux: execute tests>
  end subroutine sf_aux_test

```

### Momentum splitting: massless radiation

Compute momentum splitting for generic kinematics. It turns out that for  $x = 0.5$ , where  $t - m^2$  is the geometric mean between its upper and lower bounds (this can be directly seen from the logarithmic distribution in the function `sample_t` for  $r \equiv x = 1 - x = 0.5$ ), we arrive at an exact number  $t = -0.15$  for the given input values.

```

<SF aux: execute tests>≡

```

```

call test (sf_aux_1, "sf_aux_1", &
          "massless radiation", &
          u, results)
<SF aux: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_aux_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(splitting_data_t) :: sd
  type(vector4_t) :: k
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q, q0
  real(default) :: E, mk, mp, mq
  real(default) :: x, r1, r2, r1o, r2o
  real(default) :: k2, q0_2, q1_2, q2_2

  write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: sf_aux_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "** Purpose: compute momentum splitting"
  write (u, "(A)")  "          (massless radiated particle)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  E = 1
  mk = 0.3_default
  mp = 0
  mq = mk

  k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - mk**2), 3)
  k2 = k ** 2; call pacify (k2, 1e-10_default)

  x = 0.6_default
  r1 = 0.5_default
  r2 = 0.125_default

  write (u, "(A)")  "** (1) Non-collinear setup"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
  call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
  call sd%sample_t (r1)
  call sd%sample_phi (r2)

  call sd%write (u)

  q = sd%split_momentum (k)
  q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
  q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "Incoming momentum k ="
  call vector4_write (k, u)
  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
  call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "Radiated momentum p ="
  call vector4_write (q(1), u)
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q0_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q0_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q0_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

```

```

call sd%inverse_t (r1o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r1"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q0_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q0_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q0_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

call sd%inverse_t (r1o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r1"

```

```

write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* (2) Collinear setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2, collinear = .true.)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)

call sd%write (u)

q = sd%split_momentum (k)
q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

```

```

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q0_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q0_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q0_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="

```



```

call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q0_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q0_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q0_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_aux_1"

end subroutine sf_aux_1

```

### Momentum splitting: massless parton

Compute momentum splitting for generic kinematics. It turns out that for  $x = 0.5$ , where  $t - m^2$  is the geometric mean between its upper and lower bounds, we arrive at an exact number  $t = -0.36$  for the given input values.

```

<SF aux: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_aux_2, "sf_aux_2", &
    "massless parton", &
    u, results)

<SF aux: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_aux_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(splitting_data_t) :: sd
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q, q0
    real(default) :: E, mk, mp, mq
    real(default) :: x, r1, r2, r1o, r2o
    real(default) :: k2, q02_2, q1_2, q2_2

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_aux_2"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: compute momentum splitting"
    write (u, "(A)") "          (massless outgoing particle)"
    write (u, "(A)")

    E = 1

```

```

mk = 0.3_default
mp = mk
mq = 0

k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - mk**2), 3)
k2 = k ** 2; call pacify (k2, 1e-10_default)

x = 0.6_default
r1 = 0.5_default
r2 = 0.125_default

write (u, "(A)")  "* (1) Non-collinear setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%sample_t (r1)
call sd%sample_phi (r2)

call sd%write (u)

q = sd%split_momentum (k)
q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  q2_2, sd%t

call sd%inverse_t (r1o)

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: r1"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)")  "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))")  r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

```

```

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

call sd%inverse_t (r1o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r1"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* (2) Collinear setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2, collinear = .true.)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)

```

```

call sd%write (u)

q = sd%split_momentum (k)
q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"

```

```

write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_aux_2"

end subroutine sf_aux_2

```

### Momentum splitting: all massless

Compute momentum splitting for massless kinematics. In the non-collinear case, we need a lower cutoff for  $|t|$ , otherwise a logarithmic distribution is not possible.

```

<SF aux: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_aux_3, "sf_aux_3", &
  "massless parton", &
  u, results)

<SF aux: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_aux_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(splitting_data_t) :: sd
  type(vector4_t) :: k
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q, q0
  real(default) :: E, mk, mp, mq, qmin, qmax
  real(default) :: x, r1, r2, r1o, r2o
  real(default) :: k2, q02_2, q1_2, q2_2

  write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_aux_3"
  write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: compute momentum splitting"
  write (u, "(A)") " (all massless, q cuts)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  E = 1
  mk = 0
  mp = 0
  mq = 0
  qmin = 1e-2_default
  qmax = 1e0_default

  k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - mk**2), 3)
  k2 = k ** 2; call pacify (k2, 1e-10_default)

  x = 0.6_default
  r1 = 0.5_default
  r2 = 0.125_default

  write (u, "(A)") "* (1) Non-collinear setup"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%sample_t (r1, t1 = - qmin ** 2, t0 = - qmax **2)
call sd%sample_phi (r2)

call sd%write (u)

q = sd%split_momentum (k)
q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")

```



```

write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

call sd%inverse_t (r1o, t1 = - qmin ** 2, t0 = - qmax **2)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r1"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

call sd%inverse_t (r1o, t1 = - qmin ** 2, t0 = - qmax **2)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r1"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r1, r1o

call sd%inverse_phi (r2o)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: r2"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") r2, r2o

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* (2) Collinear setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2, collinear = .true.)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)

call sd%write (u)

q = sd%split_momentum (k)
q1_2 = q(1) ** 2; call pacify (q1_2, 1e-10_default)
q2_2 = q(2) ** 2; call pacify (q2_2, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q), u)
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: s"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%s, k2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%t, q2_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: u"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%u, q1_2

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%x, energy (q(2)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: 1-x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%xb, energy (q(1)) / energy (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep energy)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_ENERGY)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_ENERGY)

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Project on-shell (keep momentum)"

q0 = q
call on_shell (q0, [mp**2, mq**2], KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Incoming momentum k ="
call vector4_write (k, u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum sum p + q ="
call vector4_write (sum (q0), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Radiated momentum p ="
call vector4_write (q0(1), u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "Outgoing momentum q ="
call vector4_write (q0(2), u)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: mo^2"
q02_2 = q0(2) ** 2; call pacify (q02_2, 1e-10_default)
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") sd%m2, q02_2
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)") "* Recover parameters from outgoing momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

call sd%init (k, mk**2, mp**2, mq**2)
call sd%set_t_bounds (x, 1 - x)
call sd%recover (k, q0(2), KEEP_MOMENTUM)

write (u, "(A)") "Compare: x"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") x, sd%x
write (u, "(A)") "Compare: t"
write (u, "(2(1x,F11.8))") q2_2, sd%t

write (u, "(A)")
call sd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_aux_3"

end subroutine sf_aux_3

```

## 10.2 Mappings for structure functions

In this module, we provide a wrapper for useful mappings of the unit (hyper-)square that we can apply to a set of structure functions.

In some cases it is useful, or even mandatory, to map the MC input parameters nontrivially onto a set of structure functions for the two beams. In all cases considered here, instead of  $x_1, x_2, \dots$  as parameters for the beams, we generate one parameter that is equal, or related to, the product  $x_1 x_2 \dots$  (so it directly corresponds to  $\sqrt{s}$ ). The other parameters describe the distribution of energy (loss) between beams and radiations.

```
<sf_mappings.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module sf_mappings  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_13, FMT_14, FMT_15, FMT_16 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use constants, only: pi !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <SF mappings: public>  
  
    <SF mappings: parameters>  
  
    <SF mappings: types>  
  
    <SF mappings: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <SF mappings: procedures>  
  
    <SF mappings: tests>  
  
  end module sf_mappings
```

### 10.2.1 Base type

First, we define an abstract base type for the mapping. In all cases we need to store the indices of the parameters on which the mapping applies. Additional parameters can be stored in the extensions of this type.

```
<SF mappings: public>≡  
  public :: sf_mapping_t  
  
<SF mappings: types>≡  
  type, abstract :: sf_mapping_t  
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i  
  contains
```

```

    <SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>
end type sf_mapping_t

```

The output routine is deferred:

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>≡
    procedure (sf_mapping_write), deferred :: write

<SF mappings: interfaces>≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine sf_mapping_write (object, unit)
            import
            class(sf_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        end subroutine sf_mapping_write
    end interface

```

Initializer for the base type. The array of parameter indices is allocated but initialized to zero.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: base_init => sf_mapping_base_init

<SF mappings: procedures>≡
    subroutine sf_mapping_base_init (mapping, n_par)
        class(sf_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
        integer, intent(in) :: n_par
        allocate (mapping%i (n_par))
        mapping%i = 0
    end subroutine sf_mapping_base_init

```

Set an index value.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_index => sf_mapping_set_index

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_mapping_set_index (mapping, j, i)
        class(sf_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
        integer, intent(in) :: j, i
        mapping%i(j) = i
    end subroutine sf_mapping_set_index

```

Return the dimensionality, i.e., the number of parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_dim => sf_mapping_get_n_dim

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    function sf_mapping_get_n_dim (mapping) result (n)
        class(sf_mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
        integer :: n
        n = size (mapping%i)
    end function sf_mapping_get_n_dim

```

Computation: the values **p** are the input parameters, the values **r** are the output parameters. The values **rb** are defined as  $\bar{r} = 1 - r$ , but provided explicitly. They allow us to avoid numerical problems near  $r = 1$ .

The extra parameter **x\_free** indicates that the total energy has already been renormalized by this factor. We have to take such a factor into account in a resonance or on-shell mapping.

The Jacobian is **f**. We modify only the two parameters indicated by the indices **i**.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure (sf_mapping_compute), deferred :: compute

<SF mappings: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine sf_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
      import
      class(sf_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
      real(default), intent(out) :: f
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
      real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    end subroutine sf_mapping_compute
  end interface

```

The inverse mapping. Use **r** and/or **rb** to reconstruct **p** and also compute **f**.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure (sf_mapping_inverse), deferred :: inverse

<SF mappings: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine sf_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
      import
      class(sf_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
      real(default), intent(out) :: f
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
      real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    end subroutine sf_mapping_inverse
  end interface

```

## 10.2.2 Methods for self-tests

This is a shorthand for: inject parameters, compute the mapping, display results, compute the inverse, display again. We provide an output format for the parameters and, optionally, a different output format for the Jacobians.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: check => sf_mapping_check

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_mapping_check (mapping, u, p_in, pb_in, fmt_p, fmt_f)
    class(sf_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_in, pb_in

```

```

character(*), intent(in) :: fmt_p
character(*), intent(in), optional :: fmt_f
real(default), dimension(size(p_in)) :: p, pb, r, rb
real(default) :: f, tolerance
tolerance = 1.5E-17
p = p_in
pb= pb_in
call mapping%compute (r, rb, f, p, pb)
call pacify (p, tolerance)
call pacify (pb, tolerance)
call pacify (r, tolerance)
call pacify (rb, tolerance)
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "p =", p
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "pb=", pb
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "r =", r
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "rb=", rb
if (present (fmt_f)) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_f // "))" ) "f =", f
else
  write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "f =", f
end if
write (u, *)
call mapping%inverse (r, rb, f, p, pb)
call pacify (p, tolerance)
call pacify (pb, tolerance)
call pacify (r, tolerance)
call pacify (rb, tolerance)
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "p =", p
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "pb=", pb
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "r =", r
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "rb=", rb
if (present (fmt_f)) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_f // "))" ) "f =", f
else
  write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "f =", f
end if
write (u, *)
write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x," // fmt_p // "))" ) "*r=", product (r)
end subroutine sf_mapping_check

```

This is a consistency check for the self-tests: the integral over the unit square should be unity. We estimate this by a simple binning and adding up the values; this should be sufficient for a self-test.

The argument is the requested number of sampling points. We take the square root for binning in both dimensions, so the precise number might be different.

```

<SF mappings: sf mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: integral => sf_mapping_integral

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
function sf_mapping_integral (mapping, n_calls) result (integral)
  class(sf_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
  integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
  real(default) :: integral

```



```

integer :: n_dim, n_bin, k
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: p, pb, r, rb
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ii
real(default) :: dx, f, s

n_dim = mapping%get_n_dim ()
allocate (p (n_dim))
allocate (pb(n_dim))
allocate (r (n_dim))
allocate (rb(n_dim))
allocate (ii(n_dim))
n_bin = nint (real (n_calls, default) ** (1._default / n_dim))
dx = 1._default / n_bin
s = 0
ii = 1

SAMPLE: do
  do k = 1, n_dim
    p(k) = ii(k) * dx - dx/2
    pb(k) = (n_bin - ii(k)) * dx + dx/2
  end do
  call mapping%compute (r, rb, f, p, pb)
  s = s + f
INCR: do k = 1, n_dim
  ii(k) = ii(k) + 1
  if (ii(k) <= n_bin) then
    exit INCR
  else if (k < n_dim) then
    ii(k) = 1
  else
    exit SAMPLE
  end if
end do INCR
end do SAMPLE

integral = s / real (n_bin, default) ** n_dim

end function sf_mapping_integral

```

### 10.2.3 Implementation: standard mapping

This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is the product  $r_1 r_2$ , while  $p_2$  is related to the ratio.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_s_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_s_mapping_t
    logical :: power_set = .false.
    real(default) :: power = 1
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf standard mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_s_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf standard mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_s_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_s_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_s_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',IO,',',IO,')')", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A)" ": standard (" , object%power, ")")
  end subroutine sf_s_mapping_write

```

Initialize: index pair and power parameter.

```

<SF mappings: sf standard mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_s_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_s_mapping_init (mapping, power)
    class(sf_s_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: power
    call mapping%base_init (2)
    if (present (power)) then
      mapping%power_set = .true.
      mapping%power = power
    end if
  end subroutine sf_s_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf standard mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_s_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_s_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_s_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: r2
    integer :: j
    if (mapping%power_set) then
      call map_unit_square (r2, f, p(mapping%i), mapping%power)
    else
      call map_unit_square (r2, f, p(mapping%i))
    end if
    r = p
    rb= pb
    do j = 1, 2

```

```

        r(mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
        rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
    end do
end subroutine sf_s_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf standard mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse => sf_s_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_s_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_s_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p2
    integer :: j
    if (mapping%power_set) then
        call map_unit_square_inverse (r(mapping%i), f, p2, mapping%power)
    else
        call map_unit_square_inverse (r(mapping%i), f, p2)
    end if
    p = r
    pb = rb
    do j = 1, 2
        p(mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
        pb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - p2(j)
    end do
end subroutine sf_s_mapping_inverse

```

#### 10.2.4 Implementation: resonance pair mapping

This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is the product  $r_1 r_2$ , while  $p_2$  is related to the ratio, then it maps  $p_1$  to itself according to a Breit-Wigner shape, i.e., a flat prior distribution in  $p_1$  results in a Breit-Wigner distribution. Mass and width of the BW are rescaled by the energy, thus dimensionless fractions.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: sf_res_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_res_mapping_t
        real(default) :: m = 0
        real(default) :: w = 0
    contains
        <SF mappings: sf resonance mapping: TBP>
    end type sf_res_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf resonance mapping: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => sf_res_mapping_write

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_res_mapping_write (object, unit)
  class(sf_res_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
  if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
    write (u, "('(',I0,',',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
  end if
  write (u, "(A,F7.5,', ',F7.5,A)" ": resonance (" , object%m, object%w, ")")
end subroutine sf_res_mapping_write

```

Initialize: index pair and dimensionless mass and width parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf resonance mapping: TBP>+≡
procedure :: init => sf_res_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_res_mapping_init (mapping, m, w)
  class(sf_res_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
  real(default), intent(in) :: m, w
  call mapping%base_init (2)
  mapping%m = m
  mapping%w = w
end subroutine sf_res_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf resonance mapping: TBP>+≡
procedure :: compute => sf_res_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_res_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
  class(sf_res_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
  real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
  real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, p2
  real(default) :: fbw, f2, p1m
  integer :: j
  p2 = p(mapping%i)
  call map_breit_wigner &
    (p1m, fbw, p2(1), mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
  call map_unit_square (r2, f2, [p1m, p2(2)])
  f = fbw * f2
  r = p
  rb = pb
  do j = 1, 2
    r (mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
    rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
  end do
end subroutine sf_res_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf resonance mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_res_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_res_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_res_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p2
    real(default) :: fbw, f2, p1m
    call map_unit_square_inverse (r(mapping%i), f2, p2)
    call map_breit_wigner_inverse &
      (p2(1), fbw, p1m, mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
    p = r
    pb = rb
    p (mapping%i(1)) = p1m
    pb(mapping%i(1)) = 1 - p1m
    p (mapping%i(2)) = p2(2)
    pb(mapping%i(2)) = 1 - p2(2)
    f = fbw * f2
  end subroutine sf_res_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.5 Implementation: on-shell mapping

This is a degenerate version of the unit-square mapping where the product  $r_1 r_2$  is constant. This product is given by the rescaled squared mass. We introduce an artificial first parameter  $p_1$  to keep the counting, but nothing depends on it. The second parameter is the same  $p_2$  as for the standard unit-square mapping for  $\alpha = 1$ , it parameterizes the ratio of  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ .

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_os_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_os_mapping_t
    real(default) :: m = 0
    real(default) :: lm2 = 0
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf on-shell mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_os_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf on-shell mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_os_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_os_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_os_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
  end subroutine sf_os_mapping_write

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
  write (u, "('(',I0,',',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
end if
write (u, "(A,F7.5,A)" ": on-shell (" , object%m, ")")
end subroutine sf_os_mapping_write

```

Initialize: index pair and dimensionless mass parameter.

```

<SF mappings: sf on-shell mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_os_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_os_mapping_init (mapping, m)
    class(sf_os_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in) :: m
    call mapping%base_init (2)
    mapping%m = m
    mapping%lm2 = abs (2 * log (mapping%m))
  end subroutine sf_os_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping. The `x_free` parameter rescales the total energy, which must be accounted for in the enclosed mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf on-shell mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_os_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_os_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_os_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, p2
    integer :: j
    p2 = p(mapping%i)
    call map_on_shell (r2, f, p2, mapping%lm2, x_free)
    r = p
    rb = pb
    do j = 1, 2
      r (mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
      rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
    end do
  end subroutine sf_os_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse. The irrelevant parameter  $p_1$  is always set zero.

```

<SF mappings: sf on-shell mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_os_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_os_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_os_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
real(default), dimension(2) :: p2, r2
r2 = r(mapping%i)
call map_on_shell_inverse (r2, f, p2, mapping%lm2, x_free)
p = r
pb= rb
p (mapping%i(1)) = p2(1)
pb(mapping%i(1)) = 1 - p2(1)
p (mapping%i(2)) = p2(2)
pb(mapping%i(2)) = 1 - p2(2)
end subroutine sf_os_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.6 Implementation: endpoint mapping

This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is the product  $r_1 r_2$ , while  $p_2$  is related to the ratio. Furthermore, we enhance the region at  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = 1$ , which translates into  $p_1 = 1$  and  $p_2 = 0, 1$ . The enhancement is such that any power-like singularity is caught. This is useful for beamstrahlung spectra.

In addition, we allow for a delta-function singularity in  $r_1$  and/or  $r_2$ . The singularity is smeared to an interval of width  $\epsilon$ . If nonzero, we distinguish the kinematical momentum fractions  $r_i$  from effective values  $x_i$ , which should go into the structure-function evaluation. A bin of width  $\epsilon$  in  $r$  is mapped to  $x = 1$  exactly, while the interval  $(0, 1 - \epsilon)$  is mapped to  $(0, 1)$  in  $x$ . The Jacobian reflects this distinction, and the logical `in_peak` allows for an unambiguous distinction.

The delta-peak fraction is used only for the integration self-test.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_ep_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_ep_mapping_t
    real(default) :: a = 1
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf endpoint mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_ep_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_ep_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ep_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_ep_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',I0,',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,ES12.5,A)") ": endpoint (a =", object%a, ")"
  end subroutine sf_ep_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_ep_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ep_mapping_init (mapping, a)
    class(sf_ep_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: a
    call mapping%base_init (2)
    if (present (a)) mapping%a = a
  end subroutine sf_ep_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_ep_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ep_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_ep_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: px, r2
    real(default) :: f1, f2
    integer :: j
    call map_endpoint_1 (px(1), f1, p(mapping%i(1)), mapping%a)
    call map_endpoint_01 (px(2), f2, p(mapping%i(2)), mapping%a)
    call map_unit_square (r2, f, px)
    f = f * f1 * f2
    r = p
    rb= pb
    do j = 1, 2
      r (mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
      rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
    end do
  end subroutine sf_ep_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_ep_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ep_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_ep_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, px, p2
    real(default) :: f1, f2
    integer :: j
    do j = 1, 2

```



```

        r2(j) = r(mapping%i(j))
    end do
    call map_unit_square_inverse (r2, f, px)
    call map_endpoint_inverse_1 (px(1), f1, p2(1), mapping%a)
    call map_endpoint_inverse_01 (px(2), f2, p2(2), mapping%a)
    f = f * f1 * f2
    p = r
    pb= rb
    do j = 1, 2
        p (mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
        pb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - p2(j)
    end do
end subroutine sf_ep_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.7 Implementation: endpoint mapping with resonance

Like the endpoint mapping for  $p_2$ , but replace the endpoint mapping by a Breit-Wigner mapping for  $p_1$ . This covers resonance production in the presence of beamstrahlung.

If the flag `resonance` is unset, we skip the resonance mapping, so the parameter  $p_1$  remains equal to  $r_1 r_2$ , as in the standard s-channel mapping.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: sf_epr_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_epr_mapping_t
        real(default) :: a = 1
        real(default) :: m = 0
        real(default) :: w = 0
        logical :: resonance = .true.
    contains
    <SF mappings: sf endpoint/res mapping: TBP>
    end type sf_epr_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint/res mapping: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => sf_epr_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_epr_mapping_write (object, unit)
        class(sf_epr_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
        if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
            write (u, "('(',I0,',',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
        end if
        if (object%resonance) then
            write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,', ',F7.5,A)") ": ep/res (a = ", object%a, &
                " | ", object%m, object%w, ") "
        else

```

```

        write (u, "(A,F7.5,A)" ) ": ep/nores (a = ", object%a, ") "
    end if
end subroutine sf_epr_mapping_write

```

Initialize: if mass and width are not given, we initialize a non-resonant version of the mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint/res mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => sf_epr_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_epr_mapping_init (mapping, a, m, w)
        class(sf_epr_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
        real(default), intent(in) :: a
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: m, w
        call mapping%base_init (2)
        mapping%a = a
        if (present (m) .and. present (w)) then
            mapping%m = m
            mapping%w = w
        else
            mapping%resonance = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine sf_epr_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint/res mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute => sf_epr_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_epr_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
        class(sf_epr_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
        real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
        real(default), dimension(2) :: px, r2
        real(default) :: f1, f2
        integer :: j
        if (mapping%resonance) then
            call map_breit_wigner &
                (px(1), f1, p(mapping%i(1)), mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
        else
            px(1) = p(mapping%i(1))
            f1 = 1
        end if
        call map_endpoint_01 (px(2), f2, p(mapping%i(2)), mapping%a)
        call map_unit_square (r2, f, px)
        f = f * f1 * f2
        r = p
        rb= pb
        do j = 1, 2
            r (mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
            rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
        end do
    end subroutine sf_epr_mapping_compute

```

```
end subroutine sf_epr_mapping_compute
```

Apply inverse.

```
<SF mappings: sf endpoint/res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_epr_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_epr_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_epr_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: px, p2
    real(default) :: f1, f2
    integer :: j
    call map_unit_square_inverse (r(mapping%i), f, px)
    if (mapping%resonance) then
      call map_breit_wigner_inverse &
        (px(1), f1, p2(1), mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
    else
      p2(1) = px(1)
      f1 = 1
    end if
    call map_endpoint_inverse_01 (px(2), f2, p2(2), mapping%a)
    f = f * f1 * f2
    p = r
    pb = rb
    do j = 1, 2
      p (mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
      pb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - p2(j)
    end do
  end subroutine sf_epr_mapping_inverse
```

## 10.2.8 Implementation: endpoint mapping for on-shell particle

Analogous to the resonance mapping, but the  $p_1$  input is ignored altogether. This covers on-shell particle production in the presence of beamstrahlung.

```
<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_epo_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_epo_mapping_t
    real(default) :: a = 1
    real(default) :: m = 0
    real(default) :: lm2 = 0
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf endpoint/os mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_epo_mapping_t
```

Output.

```
<SF mappings: sf endpoint/os mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_epo_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_epo_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_epo_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',IO,',',IO,')')", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,A)") ": ep/on-shell (a = ", object%a, &
      " | ", object%m, ") "
  end subroutine sf_epo_mapping_write
```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```
<SF mappings: sf endpoint/os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_epo_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_epo_mapping_init (mapping, a, m)
    class(sf_epo_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in) :: a, m
    call mapping%base_init (2)
    mapping%a = a
    mapping%m = m
    mapping%lm2 = abs (2 * log (mapping%m))
  end subroutine sf_epo_mapping_init
```

Apply mapping.

```
<SF mappings: sf endpoint/os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_epo_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_epo_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_epo_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: px, r2
    real(default) :: f2
    integer :: j
    px(1) = 0
    call map_endpoint_01 (px(2), f2, p(mapping%i(2)), mapping%a)
    call map_on_shell (r2, f, px, mapping%lm2)
    f = f * f2
    r = p
    rb = pb
    do j = 1, 2
      r (mapping%i(j)) = r2(j)
    end do
```

```

        rb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - r2(j)
    end do
end subroutine sf_epo_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf endpoint/os mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse => sf_epo_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_epo_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
        class(sf_epo_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
        real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
        real(default), dimension(2) :: px, p2
        real(default) :: f2
        integer :: j
        call map_on_shell_inverse (r(mapping%i), f, px, mapping%lm2)
        p2(1) = 0
        call map_endpoint_inverse_01 (px(2), f2, p2(2), mapping%a)
        f = f * f2
        p = r
        pb = rb
        do j = 1, 2
            p (mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
            pb(mapping%i(j)) = 1 - p2(j)
        end do
    end subroutine sf_epo_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.9 Implementation: ISR endpoint mapping

Similar to the endpoint mapping above: This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is the product  $r_1 r_2$ , while  $p_2$  is related to the ratio. Furthermore, we enhance the region at  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = 1$ , which translates into  $p_1 = 1$  and  $p_2 = 0, 1$ .

The enhancement is such that ISR singularity  $(1 - x)^{-1+\epsilon}$  is flattened. This would be easy in one dimension, but becomes nontrivial in two dimensions.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: sf_ip_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_ip_mapping_t
        real(default) :: eps = 0
        contains
        <SF mappings: sf power mapping: TBP>
    end type sf_ip_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf power mapping: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => sf_ip_mapping_write

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_ip_mapping_write (object, unit)
  class(sf_ip_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
  if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
    write (u, "('(',I0,',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
  end if
  write (u, "(A,ES12.5,A)") ": isr (eps =", object%eps, ")"
end subroutine sf_ip_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf power mapping: TBP>+≡
procedure :: init => sf_ip_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_ip_mapping_init (mapping, eps)
  class(sf_ip_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps
  call mapping%base_init (2)
  if (present (eps)) mapping%eps = eps
  if (mapping%eps <= 0) &
    call msg_fatal ("ISR mapping: regulator epsilon must not be zero")
end subroutine sf_ip_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf power mapping: TBP>+≡
procedure :: compute => sf_ip_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_ip_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
  class(sf_ip_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
  real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
  real(default), dimension(2) :: px, pxb, r2, r2b
  real(default) :: f1, f2, xb, y, yb
  integer :: j
  call map_power_1 (xb, f1, pb(mapping%i(1)), 2 * mapping%eps)
  call map_power_01 (y, yb, f2, pb(mapping%i(2)), mapping%eps)
  px(1) = 1 - xb
  pxb(1) = xb
  px(2) = y
  pxb(2) = yb
  call map_unit_square_prec (r2, r2b, f, px, pxb)
  f = f * f1 * f2
  r = p
  rb = pb
  do j = 1, 2
    r (mapping%i(j)) = r2 (j)
    rb(mapping%i(j)) = r2b(j)
  end do
end subroutine sf_ip_mapping_compute

```

```

        end do
    end subroutine sf_ip_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf power mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse => sf_ip_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_ip_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
        class(sf_ip_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
        real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
        real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, r2b, px, pxb, p2, p2b
        real(default) :: f1, f2, xb, y, yb
        integer :: j
        do j = 1, 2
            r2(j) = r(mapping%i(j))
            r2b(j) = rb(mapping%i(j))
        end do
        call map_unit_square_inverse_prec (r2, r2b, f, px, pxb)
        xb = pxb(1)
        if (px(1) > 0) then
            y = px(2)
            yb = pxb(2)
        else
            y = 0.5_default
            yb = 0.5_default
        end if
        call map_power_inverse_1 (xb, f1, p2b(1), 2 * mapping%eps)
        call map_power_inverse_01 (y, yb, f2, p2b(2), mapping%eps)
        p2 = 1 - p2b
        f = f * f1 * f2
        p = r
        pb = rb
        do j = 1, 2
            p(mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
            pb(mapping%i(j)) = p2b(j)
        end do
    end subroutine sf_ip_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.10 Implementation: ISR endpoint mapping, resonant

Similar to the endpoint mapping above: This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is the product  $r_1 r_2$ , while  $p_2$  is related to the ratio. Furthermore, we enhance the region at  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = 1$ , which translates into  $p_1 = 1$  and  $p_2 = 0, 1$ .

The enhancement is such that ISR singularity  $(1 - x)^{-1+\epsilon}$  is flattened. This would be easy in one dimension, but becomes nontrivial in two dimensions.

The resonance can be turned off by the flag **resonance**.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡

```

```

public :: sf_ipr_mapping_t
<SF mappings: types>+=
type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_ipr_mapping_t
  real(default) :: eps = 0
  real(default) :: m = 0
  real(default) :: w = 0
  logical :: resonance = .true.
contains
  <SF mappings: sf power/res mapping: TBP>
end type sf_ipr_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/res mapping: TBP>=
procedure :: write => sf_ipr_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_write (object, unit)
  class(sf_ipr_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
  if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
    write (u, "('(',I0,',',I0,')')", advance="no") object%i
  end if
  if (object%resonance) then
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,', ',F7.5,A)") ": isr/res (eps = ", &
      object%eps, " | ", object%m, object%w, ")
  else
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A)") ": isr/res (eps = ", object%eps, ")
  end if
end subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_write

```

Initialize:

```

<SF mappings: sf power/res mapping: TBP>+=
procedure :: init => sf_ipr_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_init (mapping, eps, m, w)
  class(sf_ipr_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps, m, w
  call mapping%base_init (2)
  if (present (eps)) mapping%eps = eps
  if (mapping%eps <= 0) &
    call msg_fatal ("ISR mapping: regulator epsilon must not be zero")
  if (present (m) .and. present (w)) then
    mapping%m = m
    mapping%w = w
  else
    mapping%resonance = .false.
  end if
end subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_init

```



Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_ipr_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_ipr_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: px, pxb, r2, r2b
    real(default) :: f1, f2, y, yb
    integer :: j
    if (mapping%resonance) then
      call map_breit_wigner &
        (px(1), f1, p(mapping%i(1)), mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
    else
      px(1) = p(mapping%i(1))
      f1 = 1
    end if
    call map_power_01 (y, yb, f2, pb(mapping%i(2)), mapping%eps)
    pxb(1) = 1 - px(1)
    px(2) = y
    pxb(2) = yb
    call map_unit_square_prec (r2, r2b, f, px, pxb)
    f = f * f1 * f2
    r = p
    rb = pb
    do j = 1, 2
      r (mapping%i(j)) = r2 (j)
      rb(mapping%i(j)) = r2b(j)
    end do
  end subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_ipr_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_ipr_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, r2b, px, pxb, p2, p2b
    real(default) :: f1, f2, y, yb
    integer :: j
    do j = 1, 2
      r2 (j) = r (mapping%i(j))
      r2b(j) = rb(mapping%i(j))
    end do
    call map_unit_square_inverse_prec (r2, r2b, f, px, pxb)

```

```

if (px(1) > 0) then
  y = px(2)
  yb = pxb(2)
else
  y = 0.5_default
  yb = 0.5_default
end if
if (mapping%resonance) then
  call map_breit_wigner_inverse &
    (px(1), f1, p2(1), mapping%m, mapping%w, x_free)
else
  p2(1) = px(1)
  f1 = 1
end if
call map_power_inverse_01 (y, yb, f2, p2b(2), mapping%eps)
p2b(1) = 1 - p2(1)
p2 (2) = 1 - p2b(2)
f = f * f1 * f2
p = r
pb= rb
do j = 1, 2
  p (mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
  pb(mapping%i(j)) = p2b(j)
end do
end subroutine sf_ipr_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.11 Implementation: ISR on-shell mapping

Similar to the endpoint mapping above: This maps the unit square  $(r_1, r_2)$  such that  $p_1$  is ignored while the product  $r_1 r_2$  is constant.  $p_2$  is related to the ratio. Furthermore, we enhance the region at  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = 1$ , which translates into  $p_1 = 1$  and  $p_2 = 0, 1$ .

The enhancement is such that ISR singularity  $(1 - x)^{-1+\epsilon}$  is flattened. This would be easy in one dimension, but becomes nontrivial in two dimensions.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_ipo_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_ipo_mapping_t
    real(default) :: eps = 0
    real(default) :: m = 0
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf power/os mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_ipo_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/os mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_ipo_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_ipo_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit)
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
    write (u, "('(',IO,',',IO,')')", advance="no") object%i
end if
write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,A)") ": isr/os (eps = ", object%eps, &
    " | ", object%m, ")"
end subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/os mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => sf_ipo_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_init (mapping, eps, m)
        class(sf_ipo_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps, m
        call mapping%base_init (2)
        if (present (eps)) mapping%eps = eps
        if (mapping%eps <= 0) &
            call msg_fatal ("ISR mapping: regulator epsilon must not be zero")
        mapping%m = m
    end subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_init

```

Apply mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/os mapping: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute => sf_ipo_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
        class(sf_ipo_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
        real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
        real(default), dimension(2) :: px, pxb, r2, r2b
        real(default) :: f1, f2, y, yb
        integer :: j
        call map_power_01 (y, yb, f2, pb(mapping%i(2)), mapping%eps)
        px(1) = mapping%m ** 2
        if (present (x_free)) px(1) = px(1) / x_free
        pxb(1) = 1 - px(1)
        px(2) = y
        pxb(2) = yb
        call map_unit_square_prec (r2, r2b, f1, px, pxb)
        f = f1 * f2
        r = p
        rb = pb
        do j = 1, 2
            r (mapping%i(j)) = r2 (j)
            rb(mapping%i(j)) = r2b(j)
        end do
    end subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_compute

```

```
end subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_compute
```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf power/os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_ipo_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_ipo_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(2) :: r2, r2b, px, pxb, p2, p2b
    real(default) :: f1, f2, y, yb
    integer :: j
    do j = 1, 2
      r2(j) = r(mapping%i(j))
      r2b(j) = rb(mapping%i(j))
    end do
    call map_unit_square_inverse_prec (r2, r2b, f1, px, pxb)
    y = px(2)
    yb = pxb(2)
    call map_power_inverse_01 (y, yb, f2, p2b(2), mapping%eps)
    p2(1) = 0
    p2b(1) = 1
    p2(2) = 1 - p2b(2)
    f = f1 * f2
    p = r
    pb = rb
    do j = 1, 2
      p(mapping%i(j)) = p2(j)
      pb(mapping%i(j)) = p2b(j)
    end do
  end subroutine sf_ipo_mapping_inverse

```

## 10.2.12 Implementation: Endpoint + ISR power mapping

This is a combination of endpoint (i.e., beamstrahlung) and ISR power mapping. The first two parameters apply to the beamstrahlung spectrum, the last two to the ISR function for the first and second beam, respectively.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_ei_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_ei_mapping_t
    type(sf_ep_mapping_t) :: ep
    type(sf_ip_mapping_t) :: ip
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_ei_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_ei_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ei_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_ei_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',IO,3(' ',IO),')')", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,ES12.5,A,ES12.5,A)") ": ep/isr (a =", object%ep%a, &
      ", eps =", object%ip%eps, ")"
  end subroutine sf_ei_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_ei_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ei_mapping_init (mapping, a, eps)
    class(sf_ei_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: a, eps
    call mapping%base_init (4)
    call mapping%ep%init (a)
    call mapping%ip%init (eps)
  end subroutine sf_ei_mapping_init

```

Set an index value. We should communicate the appropriate indices to the enclosed sub-mappings, therefore override the method.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_index => sf_ei_mapping_set_index

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_ei_mapping_set_index (mapping, j, i)
    class(sf_ei_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    integer, intent(in) :: j, i
    mapping%i(j) = i
    select case (j)
    case (1:2); call mapping%ep%set_index (j, i)
    case (3:4); call mapping%ip%set_index (j-2, i)
    end select
  end subroutine sf_ei_mapping_set_index

```

Apply mapping. Now, the beamstrahlung and ISR mappings are independent of each other. The parameter subsets that are actually used should not overlap. The Jacobians are multiplied.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_ei_mapping_compute

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_ei_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
  class(sf_ei_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
  real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
  real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: q, qb
  real(default) :: f1, f2
  call mapping%ep%compute (q, qb, f1, p, pb, x_free)
  call mapping%ip%compute (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
  f = f1 * f2
end subroutine sf_ei_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_ei_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_ei_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
  class(sf_ei_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
  real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
  real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: q, qb
  real(default) :: f1, f2
  call mapping%ip%inverse (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
  call mapping%ep%inverse (q, qb, f1, p, pb, x_free)
  f = f1 * f2
end subroutine sf_ei_mapping_inverse

```

### 10.2.13 Implementation: Endpoint + ISR + resonance

This is a combination of endpoint (i.e., beamstrahlung) and ISR power mapping, adapted for an s-channel resonance. The first two internal parameters apply to the beamstrahlung spectrum, the last two to the ISR function for the first and second beam, respectively. The first and third parameters are the result of an overall resonance mapping, so on the outside, the first parameter is the total momentum fraction, the third one describes the distribution between beamstrahlung and ISR.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_eir_mapping_t

<SF mappings: types>+≡
type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_eir_mapping_t
  type(sf_res_mapping_t) :: res
  type(sf_epr_mapping_t) :: ep
  type(sf_ipr_mapping_t) :: ip
contains
  <SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>
end type sf_eir_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_eir_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eir_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_eir_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',IO,3(' ',IO),'')'", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,A,F7.5,' ',',F7.5,A)" &
      ": ep/isr/res (a =", object%ep%a, &
      ", eps =", object%ip%eps, " | ", object%res%m, object%res%w, ")")
  end subroutine sf_eir_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_eir_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eir_mapping_init (mapping, a, eps, m, w)
    class(sf_eir_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in) :: a, eps, m, w
    call mapping%base_init (4)
    call mapping%res%init (m, w)
    call mapping%ep%init (a)
    call mapping%ip%init (eps)
  end subroutine sf_eir_mapping_init

```

Set an index value. We should communicate the appropriate indices to the enclosed sub-mappings, therefore override the method.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_index => sf_eir_mapping_set_index

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eir_mapping_set_index (mapping, j, i)
    class(sf_eir_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    integer, intent(in) :: j, i
    mapping%i(j) = i
    select case (j)
      case (1); call mapping%res%set_index (1, i)
      case (3); call mapping%res%set_index (2, i)
    end select
    select case (j)
      case (1:2); call mapping%ep%set_index (j, i)
      case (3:4); call mapping%ip%set_index (j-2, i)
    end select
  end subroutine sf_eir_mapping_set_index

```

Apply mapping. Now, the beamstrahlung and ISR mappings are independent of each other. The parameter subsets that are actually used should not overlap. The Jacobians are multiplied.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_eir_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eir_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_eir_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: px, pxb, q, qb
    real(default) :: f0, f1, f2
    call mapping%res%compute (px, pxb, f0, p, pb, x_free)
    call mapping%ep%compute (q, qb, f1, px, pxb, x_free)
    call mapping%ip%compute (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
    f = f0 * f1 * f2
  end subroutine sf_eir_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-res mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_eir_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eir_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_eir_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: px, pxb, q, qb
    real(default) :: f0, f1, f2
    call mapping%ip%inverse (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
    call mapping%ep%inverse (q, qb, f1, px, pxb, x_free)
    call mapping%res%inverse (px, pxb, f0, p, pb, x_free)
    f = f0 * f1 * f2
  end subroutine sf_eir_mapping_inverse

```

## 10.2.14 Implementation: Endpoint + ISR power mapping, on-shell

This is a combination of endpoint (i.e., beamstrahlung) and ISR power mapping. The first two parameters apply to the beamstrahlung spectrum, the last two to the ISR function for the first and second beam, respectively. On top of that, we map the first and third parameter such that the product is constant. From the outside, the first parameter is irrelevant while the third parameter describes the distribution of energy (loss) among beamstrahlung and ISR.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
  public :: sf_eio_mapping_t

```



```

<SF mappings: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_mapping_t) :: sf_eio_mapping_t
    type(sf_os_mapping_t) :: os
    type(sf_epr_mapping_t) :: ep
    type(sf_ipr_mapping_t) :: ip
  contains
    <SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>
  end type sf_eio_mapping_t

```

Output.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_eio_mapping_write

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eio_mapping_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_eio_mapping_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "map"
    if (any (object%i /= 0)) then
      write (u, "('(',I0,3(' ',I0),')')", advance="no") object%i
    end if
    write (u, "(A,F7.5,A,F7.5,A,F7.5,A)") ": ep/isr/os (a =", object%ep%a, &
      ", eps =", object%ip%eps, " | ", object%os%m, ")"
  end subroutine sf_eio_mapping_write

```

Initialize: no extra parameters.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_eio_mapping_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eio_mapping_init (mapping, a, eps, m)
    class(sf_eio_mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: a, eps, m
    call mapping%base_init (4)
    call mapping%os%init (m)
    call mapping%ep%init (a)
    call mapping%ip%init (eps)
  end subroutine sf_eio_mapping_init

```

Set an index value. We should communicate the appropriate indices to the enclosed sub-mappings, therefore override the method.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_index => sf_eio_mapping_set_index

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eio_mapping_set_index (mapping, j, i)
    class(sf_eio_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    integer, intent(in) :: j, i
    mapping%i(j) = i
    select case (j)
      case (1); call mapping%os%set_index (1, i)

```

```

      case (3); call mapping%os%set_index (2, i)
    end select
    select case (j)
      case (1:2); call mapping%ep%set_index (j, i)
      case (3:4); call mapping%ip%set_index (j-2, i)
    end select
  end subroutine sf_eio_mapping_set_index

```

Apply mapping. Now, the beamstrahlung and ISR mappings are independent of each other. The parameter subsets that are actually used should not overlap. The Jacobians are multiplied.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => sf_eio_mapping_compute

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eio_mapping_compute (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_eio_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: px, pxb, q, qb
    real(default) :: f0, f1, f2
    call mapping%os%compute (px, pxb, f0, p, pb, x_free)
    call mapping%ep%compute (q, qb, f1, px, pxb, x_free)
    call mapping%ip%compute (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
    f = f0 * f1 * f2
  end subroutine sf_eio_mapping_compute

```

Apply inverse.

```

<SF mappings: sf ep-ip-os mapping: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => sf_eio_mapping_inverse

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_eio_mapping_inverse (mapping, r, rb, f, p, pb, x_free)
    class(sf_eio_mapping_t), intent(inout) :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p, pb
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    real(default), dimension(size(p)) :: px, pxb, q, qb
    real(default) :: f0, f1, f2
    call mapping%ip%inverse (r, rb, f2, q, qb, x_free)
    call mapping%ep%inverse (q, qb, f1, px, pxb, x_free)
    call mapping%os%inverse (px, pxb, f0, p, pb, x_free)
    f = f0 * f1 * f2
  end subroutine sf_eio_mapping_inverse

```

## 10.2.15 Basic formulas

### Standard mapping of the unit square

This mapping of the unit square is appropriate in particular for structure functions which are concentrated at the lower end. Instead of a rectangular grid, one set of grid lines corresponds to constant parton c.m. energy. The other set is chosen such that the jacobian is only mildly singular ( $\ln x$  which is zero at  $x = 1$ ), corresponding to an initial concentration of sampling points at the maximum energy. If **power** is greater than one (the default), points are also concentrated at the lower end.

The formula is (**power**= $\alpha$ ):

$$r_1 = (p_1^{p_2})^\alpha \quad (10.15)$$

$$r_2 = (p_1^{1-p_2})^\alpha \quad (10.16)$$

$$f = \alpha^2 p_1^{\alpha-1} |\log p_1| \quad (10.17)$$

and for the default case  $\alpha = 1$ :

$$r_1 = p_1^{p_2} \quad (10.18)$$

$$r_2 = p_1^{1-p_2} \quad (10.19)$$

$$f = |\log p_1| \quad (10.20)$$

*(SF mappings: procedures)* +=

```
subroutine map_unit_square (r, factor, p, power)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: r
  real(default), intent(out) :: factor
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: p
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: power
  real(default) :: xx, yy
  factor = 1
  xx = p(1)
  yy = p(2)
  if (present(power)) then
    if (p(1) > 0 .and. power > 1) then
      xx = p(1)**power
      factor = factor * power * xx / p(1)
    end if
  end if
  if (xx /= 0) then
    r(1) = xx ** yy
    r(2) = xx / r(1)
    factor = factor * abs (log (xx))
  else
    r = 0
  end if
end subroutine map_unit_square
```

This is the inverse mapping.

*(SF mappings: procedures)* +=

```
subroutine map_unit_square_inverse (r, factor, p, power)
  real(kind=default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: r
```

```

real(kind=default), intent(out) :: factor
real(kind=default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: p
real(kind=default), intent(in), optional :: power
real(kind=default) :: lg, xx, yy
factor = 1
xx = r(1) * r(2)
if (xx /= 0) then
  lg = log (xx)
  if (lg /= 0) then
    yy = log (r(1)) / lg
  else
    yy = 0
  end if
  p(2) = yy
  factor = factor * abs (lg)
  if (present(power)) then
    p(1) = xx**(1._default/power)
    factor = factor * power * xx / p(1)
  else
    p(1) = xx
  end if
else
  p = 0
end if
end subroutine map_unit_square_inverse

```

### Precise mapping of the unit square

A more precise version (with unit power parameter). This version should be numerically stable near  $x = 1$  and  $y = 0, 1$ . The formulas are again

$$r_1 = p_1^{p_2}, \quad r_2 = p_1^{\bar{p}_2}, \quad f = -\log p_1 \quad (10.21)$$

but we compute both  $r_i$  and  $\bar{r}_i$  simultaneously and make direct use of both  $p_i$  and  $\bar{p}_i$  as appropriate.

*(SF mappings: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine map_unit_square_prec (r, rb, factor, p, pb)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: r
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: factor
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: p
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: pb
  if (p(1) > 0.5_default) then
    call compute_prec_xy_1 (r(1), rb(1), p(1), pb(1), p (2))
    call compute_prec_xy_1 (r(2), rb(2), p(1), pb(1), pb(2))
    factor = - log_prec (p(1), pb(1))
  else if (p(1) > 0) then
    call compute_prec_xy_0 (r(1), rb(1), p(1), pb(1), p (2))
    call compute_prec_xy_0 (r(2), rb(2), p(1), pb(1), pb(2))
    factor = - log_prec (p(1), pb(1))
  else
    r = 0
    rb = 1
  end if
end subroutine map_unit_square_prec

```

```

        factor = 0
    end if
end subroutine map_unit_square_prec

```

This is the inverse mapping.

*<SF mappings: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine map_unit_square_inverse_prec (r, rb, factor, p, pb)
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: rb
    real(default), intent(out) :: factor
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: p
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: pb
    call inverse_prec_x (r, rb, p(1), pb(1))
    if (all (r > 0)) then
        if (rb(1) < rb(2)) then
            call inverse_prec_y (r, rb, p(2), pb(2))
        else
            call inverse_prec_y ([r(2),r(1)], [rb(2),rb(1)], pb(2), p(2))
        end if
        factor = - log_prec (p(1), pb(1))
    else
        p(1) = 0
        pb(1) = 1
        p(2) = 0.5_default
        pb(2) = 0.5_default
        factor = 0
    end if
end subroutine map_unit_square_inverse_prec

```

This is an auxiliary function: evaluate the expression  $\bar{z} = 1 - x^y$  in a numerically stable way. Instabilities occur for  $y = 0$  and  $x = 1$ . The idea is to replace the bracket by the first terms of its Taylor expansion around  $x = 1$  (read  $\bar{x} \equiv 1 - x$ )

$$1 - x^y = y\bar{x} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2}(1 - y)\bar{x} + \frac{1}{6}(2 - y)(1 - y)\bar{x}^2 \right) \quad (10.22)$$

whenever this is the better approximation. Actually, the relative numerical error of the exact formula is about  $\eta/(y\bar{x})$  where  $\eta$  is given by `epsilon(KIND)` in Fortran. The relative error of the approximation is better than the last included term divided by  $(y\bar{x})$ .

The first subroutine computes  $z$  and  $\bar{z}$  near  $x = 1$  where  $\log x$  should be expanded, the second one near  $x = 0$  where  $\log x$  can be kept.

*<SF mappings: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine compute_prec_xy_1 (z, zb, x, xb, y)
    real(default), intent(out) :: z, zb
    real(default), intent(in) :: x, xb, y
    real(default) :: a1, a2, a3
    a1 = y * xb
    a2 = a1 * (1 - y) * xb / 2
    a3 = a2 * (2 - y) * xb / 3
    if (abs (a3) < epsilon (a3)) then
        zb = a1 + a2 + a3
        z = 1 - zb
    end if
end subroutine compute_prec_xy_1

```

```

else
  z = x ** y
  zb = 1 - z
end if
end subroutine compute_prec_xy_1

subroutine compute_prec_xy_0 (z, zb, x, xb, y)
  real(default), intent(out) :: z, zb
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, xb, y
  real(default) :: a1, a2, a3, lx
  lx = -log (x)
  a1 = y * lx
  a2 = a1 * y * lx / 2
  a3 = a2 * y * lx / 3
  if (abs (a3) < epsilon (a3)) then
    zb = a1 + a2 + a3
    z = 1 - zb
  else
    z = x ** y
    zb = 1 - z
  end if
end subroutine compute_prec_xy_0

```

For the inverse calculation, we evaluate  $x = r_1 r_2$  in a stable way. Since it is just a polynomial, the expansion near  $x = 1$  is analytically exact, and we don't need to choose based on precision.

*(SF mappings: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine inverse_prec_x (r, rb, x, xb)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(out) :: x, xb
  real(default) :: a0, a1
  a0 = rb(1) + rb(2)
  a1 = rb(1) * rb(2)
  if (a0 > 0.5_default) then
    xb = a0 - a1
    x = 1 - xb
  else
    x = r(1) * r(2)
    xb = 1 - x
  end if
end subroutine inverse_prec_x

```

The inverse calculation for the relative momentum fraction

$$y = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\log r_2}{\log r_1}} \quad (10.23)$$

is slightly more complicated. We should take the precise form of the logarithm, so we are safe near  $r_i = 1$ . A series expansion is required if  $r_1 \ll r_2$ , since then  $y$  becomes small. (We assume  $r_1 < r_2$  here; for the opposite case, the arguments can be exchanged.)

*(SF mappings: procedures)* +≡

```

subroutine inverse_prec_y (r, rb, y, yb)

```

```

real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: r, rb
real(default), intent(out) :: y, yb
real(default) :: log1, log2, a1, a2, a3
log1 = log_prec (r(1), rb(1))
log2 = log_prec (r(2), rb(2))
a1 = - rb(1) / log2
a2 = - rb(1) ** 2 * (1 / log2**2 + 1 / (2 * log2))
a3 = - rb(1) ** 3 * (1 / log2**3 + 1 / log2**2 + 1 / (3 * log2))
if (abs (a3) < epsilon (a3)) then
  y = a1 + a2 + a3
  yb = 1 - y
else
  y = 1 / (1 + log2/log1)
  yb = 1 / (1 + log1/log2)
end if
end subroutine inverse_prec_y

```

We also need an evaluation of  $\log x$  which is stable near  $x = 1$ .

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
public :: log_prec

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
function log_prec (x, xb) result (lx)
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, xb
  real(default) :: a1, a2, a3, lx
  a1 = xb
  a2 = a1 * xb / 2
  a3 = a2 * xb * 2 / 3
  if (abs (a3) < epsilon (a3)) then
    lx = - a1 - a2 - a3
  else
    lx = log (x)
  end if
end function log_prec

```

### Mapping for on-shell s-channel

The limiting case, if the product  $r_1 r_2$  is fixed for on-shell production. The parameter  $p_1$  is ignored. In the inverse mapping, it is returned zero.

The parameter `x_free`, if present, rescales the total energy. If it is less than one, the rescaled mass parameter  $m^2$  should be increased accordingly.

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine map_on_shell (r, factor, p, lm2, x_free)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: r
  real(default), intent(out) :: factor
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: p
  real(default), intent(in) :: lm2
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_free
  real(default) :: lx
  lx = lm2; if (present (x_free)) lx = lx + log (x_free)
  r(1) = exp (- p(2) * lx)
  r(2) = exp (- (1 - p(2)) * lx)

```

```

        factor = lx
    end subroutine map_on_shell

    subroutine map_on_shell_inverse (r, factor, p, lm2, x_free)
        real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), intent(out) :: factor
        real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: lm2
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_free
        real(default) :: lx
        lx = lm2; if (present (x_free)) lx = lx + log (x_free)
        p(1) = 0
        p(2) = abs (log (r(1))) / lx
        factor = lx
    end subroutine map_on_shell_inverse

```

This is the standard Breit-Wigner mapping. We apply it to a single variable, independently of or in addition to a unit-square mapping. We assume here that the limits for the variable are 0 and 1, and that the mass  $m$  and width  $w$  are rescaled appropriately, so they are dimensionless and usually between 0 and 1.

If `x_free` is set, it rescales the total energy and thus mass and width, since these are defined with respect to the total energy.

*(SF mappings: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine map_breit_wigner (r, factor, p, m, w, x_free)
        real(default), intent(out) :: r
        real(default), intent(out) :: factor
        real(default), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), intent(in) :: m
        real(default), intent(in) :: w
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_free
        real(default) :: m2, mw, a1, a2, a3, z, tmp
        m2 = m ** 2
        mw = m * w
        if (present (x_free)) then
            m2 = m2 / x_free
            mw = mw / x_free
        end if
        a1 = atan (- m2 / mw)
        a2 = atan ((1 - m2) / mw)
        a3 = (a2 - a1) * mw
        z = (1-p) * a1 + p * a2
        if (-pi/2 < z .and. z < pi/2) then
            tmp = tan (z)
            r = max (m2 + mw * tmp, 0._default)
            factor = a3 * (1 + tmp ** 2)
        else
            r = 0
            factor = 0
        end if
    end subroutine map_breit_wigner

    subroutine map_breit_wigner_inverse (r, factor, p, m, w, x_free)
        real(default), intent(in) :: r

```



```

real(default), intent(out) :: factor
real(default), intent(out) :: p
real(default), intent(in) :: m
real(default), intent(in) :: w
real(default) :: m2, mw, a1, a2, a3, tmp
real(default), intent(in), optional :: x_free
m2 = m ** 2
mw = m * w
if (present (x_free)) then
  m2 = m2 / x_free
  mw = mw / x_free
end if
a1 = atan (- m2 / mw)
a2 = atan ((1 - m2) / mw)
a3 = (a2 - a1) * mw
tmp = (r - m2) / mw
p = (atan (tmp) - a1) / (a2 - a1)
factor = a3 * (1 + tmp ** 2)
end subroutine map_breit_wigner_inverse

```

### Mapping with endpoint enhancement

This is a mapping which is close to the unit mapping, except that at the endpoint(s), the output values are exponentially enhanced.

$$y = \tanh(a \tan(\frac{\pi}{2}x)) \quad (10.24)$$

We have two variants: one covers endpoints at 0 and 1 symmetrically, while the other one (which essentially maps one-half of the range), covers only the endpoint at 1.

*(SF mappings: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine map_endpoint_1 (x3, factor, x1, a)
  real(default), intent(out) :: x3, factor
  real(default), intent(in) :: x1
  real(default), intent(in) :: a
  real(default) :: x2
  if (abs (x1) < 1) then
    x2 = tan (x1 * pi / 2)
    x3 = tanh (a * x2)
    factor = a * pi/2 * (1 + x2 ** 2) * (1 - x3 ** 2)
  else
    x3 = x1
    factor = 0
  end if
end subroutine map_endpoint_1

subroutine map_endpoint_inverse_1 (x3, factor, x1, a)
  real(default), intent(in) :: x3
  real(default), intent(out) :: x1, factor
  real(default), intent(in) :: a
  real(default) :: x2
  if (abs (x3) < 1) then

```

```

        x2 = atanh (x3) / a
        x1 = 2 / pi * atan (x2)
        factor = a * pi/2 * (1 + x2 ** 2) * (1 - x3 ** 2)
    else
        x1 = x3
        factor = 0
    end if
end subroutine map_endpoint_inverse_1

subroutine map_endpoint_01 (x4, factor, x0, a)
    real(default), intent(out) :: x4, factor
    real(default), intent(in) :: x0
    real(default), intent(in) :: a
    real(default) :: x1, x3
    x1 = 2 * x0 - 1
    call map_endpoint_1 (x3, factor, x1, a)
    x4 = (x3 + 1) / 2
end subroutine map_endpoint_01

subroutine map_endpoint_inverse_01 (x4, factor, x0, a)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x4
    real(default), intent(out) :: x0, factor
    real(default), intent(in) :: a
    real(default) :: x1, x3
    x3 = 2 * x4 - 1
    call map_endpoint_inverse_1 (x3, factor, x1, a)
    x0 = (x1 + 1) / 2
end subroutine map_endpoint_inverse_01

```

### Mapping with endpoint enhancement (ISR)

This is another endpoint mapping. It is designed to flatten the ISR singularity which is of power type at  $x = 1$ , i.e., if

$$\sigma = \int_0^1 dx f(x) G(x) = \int_0^1 dx \epsilon (1-x)^{-1+\epsilon} G(x), \quad (10.25)$$

we replace this by

$$r = x^\epsilon \implies \sigma = \int_0^1 dr G(1 - (1-r)^{1/\epsilon}). \quad (10.26)$$

We expect that  $\epsilon$  is small.

The actual mapping is  $r \rightarrow x$  (so  $x$  emerges closer to 1). The Jacobian that we return is thus  $1/f(x)$ . We compute the mapping in terms of  $\bar{x} \equiv 1 - x$ , so we can achieve the required precision. Because some compilers show quite wild numeric fluctuations, we internally convert numeric types to explicit `double` precision.

```

⟨SF mappings: public⟩+≡
    public :: map_power_1
    public :: map_power_inverse_1

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine map_power_1 (xb, factor, rb, eps)
  real(default), intent(out) :: xb, factor
  real(default), intent(in) :: rb
  real(double) :: rb_db, factor_db, eps_db, xb_db
  real(default), intent(in) :: eps
  rb_db = real (rb, kind=double)
  eps_db = real (eps, kind=double)
  xb_db = rb_db ** (1 / eps_db)
  if (rb_db > 0) then
    factor_db = xb_db / rb_db / eps_db
    factor = real (factor_db, kind=default)
  else
    factor = 0
  end if
  xb = real (xb_db, kind=default)
end subroutine map_power_1

subroutine map_power_inverse_1 (xb, factor, rb, eps)
  real(default), intent(in) :: xb
  real(default), intent(out) :: rb, factor
  real(double) :: xb_db, factor_db, eps_db, rb_db
  real(default), intent(in) :: eps
  xb_db = real (xb, kind=double)
  eps_db = real (eps, kind=double)
  rb_db = xb_db ** eps_db
  if (xb_db > 0) then
    factor_db = xb_db / rb_db / eps_db
    factor = real (factor_db, kind=default)
  else
    factor = 0
  end if
  rb = real (rb_db, kind=default)
end subroutine map_power_inverse_1

```

Here we apply a power mapping to both endpoints. We divide the interval in two equal halves and apply the power mapping for the nearest endpoint, either 0 or 1.

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine map_power_01 (y, yb, factor, r, eps)
  real(default), intent(out) :: y, yb, factor
  real(default), intent(in) :: r
  real(default), intent(in) :: eps
  real(default) :: u, ub, zp, zm
  u = 2 * r - 1
  if (u > 0) then
    ub = 2 * (1 - r)
    call map_power_1 (zm, factor, ub, eps)
    zp = 2 - zm
  else if (u < 0) then
    ub = 2 * r
    call map_power_1 (zp, factor, ub, eps)
    zm = 2 - zp
  end if
end subroutine map_power_01

```

```

    else
        factor = 1 / eps
        zp = 1
        zm = 1
    end if
    y = zp / 2
    yb = zm / 2
end subroutine map_power_01

subroutine map_power_inverse_01 (y, yb, factor, r, eps)
    real(default), intent(in) :: y, yb
    real(default), intent(out) :: r, factor
    real(default), intent(in) :: eps
    real(default) :: ub, zp, zm
    zp = 2 * y
    zm = 2 * yb
    if (zm < zp) then
        call map_power_inverse_1 (zm, factor, ub, eps)
        r = 1 - ub / 2
    else if (zp < zm) then
        call map_power_inverse_1 (zp, factor, ub, eps)
        r = ub / 2
    else
        factor = 1 / eps
        ub = 1
        r = ub / 2
    end if
end subroutine map_power_inverse_01

```

### Structure-function channels

A structure-function chain parameterization (channel) may contain a mapping that applies to multiple structure functions. This is described by an extension of the `sf_mapping_t` type. In addition, it may contain mappings that apply to (other) individual structure functions. The details of these mappings are implementation-specific.

The `sf_channel_t` type combines this information. It contains an array of map codes, one for each structure-function entry. The code values are:

**none** MC input parameters  $r$  directly become energy fractions  $x$

**single** default mapping for a single structure-function entry

**multi/s** map  $r \rightarrow x$  such that one MC input parameter is  $\hat{s}/s$

**multi/resonance** as before, adapted to s-channel resonance

**multi/on-shell** as before, adapted to an on-shell particle in the s channel

**multi/endpoint** like multi/s, but enhance the region near  $r_i = 1$

**multi/endpoint/res** endpoint mapping with resonance

**multi/endpoint/os** endpoint mapping for on-shell

**multi/power/os** like multi/endpoint, regulating a power singularity

```

⟨SF mappings: parameters⟩≡
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_NONE = 0
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_SINGLE = 1
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_S = 2
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_RES = 3
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_ONS = 4
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_EP = 5
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_EPR = 6
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_EPO = 7
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_IP = 8
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_IPR = 9
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_IPO = 10
  integer, parameter :: SFMAP_MULTI_EI = 11

```

Then, it contains an allocatable entry for the multi mapping. This entry holds the MC-parameter indices on which the mapping applies (there may be more than one MC parameter per structure-function entry) and any parameters associated with the mapping.

There can be only one multi-mapping per channel.

```

⟨SF mappings: public⟩+≡
  public :: sf_channel_t

⟨SF mappings: types⟩+≡
  type :: sf_channel_t
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map_code
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: multi_mapping
    contains
    ⟨SF mappings: sf channel: TBP⟩
  end type sf_channel_t

```

The output format prints a single character for each structure-function entry and, if applicable, an account of the mapping parameters.

```

⟨SF mappings: sf channel: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => sf_channel_write

⟨SF mappings: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine sf_channel_write (object, unit)
    class(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (allocated (object%map_code)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%map_code)
        select case (object%map_code (i))
          case (SFMAP_NONE)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "-"
          case (SFMAP_SINGLE)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "+"
          case (SFMAP_MULTI_S)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "s"
          case (SFMAP_MULTI_RES)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "r"

```

```

        case (SFMAP_MULTI_ONS)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "o"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_EP)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "e"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_EPR)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "p"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_EPO)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "q"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_IP)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "i"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_IPR)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "i"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_IPO)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "i"
        case (SFMAP_MULTI_EI)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "i"
        end select
    end do
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "-"
end if
if (allocated (object%multi_mapping)) then
    write (u, "(1x,'/')" , advance="no")
    call object%multi_mapping%write (u)
else
    write (u, *)
end if
end if
end subroutine sf_channel_write

```

Initializer for a single `sf_channel` object.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => sf_channel_init

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_channel_init (channel, n_strfun)
        class(sf_channel_t), intent(out) :: channel
        integer, intent(in) :: n_strfun
        allocate (channel%map_code (n_strfun))
        channel%map_code = SFMAP_NONE
    end subroutine sf_channel_init

```

Assignment. This merely copies intrinsic assignment, but apparently the latter is bugged in gfortran 4.6.3, causing memory corruption.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    generic :: assignment (=) => sf_channel_assign
    procedure :: sf_channel_assign

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_channel_assign (copy, original)
        class(sf_channel_t), intent(out) :: copy
        type(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: original
        allocate (copy%map_code (size (original%map_code)))
        copy%map_code = original%map_code
        if (allocated (original%multi_mapping)) then

```

```

        allocate (copy%multi_mapping, source = original%multi_mapping)
    end if
end subroutine sf_channel_assign

```

This initializer allocates an array of channels with common number of structure-function entries, therefore it is not a type-bound procedure.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: allocate_sf_channels

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine allocate_sf_channels (channel, n_channel, n_strfun)
        type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: channel
        integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
        integer, intent(in) :: n_strfun
        integer :: c
        allocate (channel (n_channel))
        do c = 1, n_channel
            call channel(c)%init (n_strfun)
        end do
    end subroutine allocate_sf_channels

```

This marks a given subset of indices as single-mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: activate_mapping => sf_channel_activate_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_channel_activate_mapping (channel, i_sf)
        class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
        channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_SINGLE
    end subroutine sf_channel_activate_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel multichannel mapping. The length of the `i_sf` array must be 2. The parameter indices are not yet set.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_s_mapping => sf_channel_set_s_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_channel_set_s_mapping (channel, i_sf, power)
        class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: power
        channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_S
        allocate (sf_s_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
        select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
            type is (sf_s_mapping_t)
                call mapping%init (power)
            end select
    end subroutine sf_channel_set_s_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel resonance multichannel mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_res_mapping => sf_channel_set_res_mapping

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_res_mapping (channel, i_sf, m, w)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in) :: m, w
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_RES
  allocate (sf_res_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_res_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (m, w)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_res_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel on-shell multichannel mapping. The length of the `i_sf` array must be 2. (The first parameter actually becomes an irrelevant dummy.)

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_os_mapping => sf_channel_set_os_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_os_mapping (channel, i_sf, m)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in) :: m
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_ONS
  allocate (sf_os_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_os_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (m)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_os_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel endpoint mapping. The parameter  $a$  is the slope parameter (default 1); increasing it moves the endpoint region (at  $x = 1$  to lower values in the input parameter. region even more.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_ep_mapping => sf_channel_set_ep_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_ep_mapping (channel, i_sf, a)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: a
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EP
  allocate (sf_ep_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_ep_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (a = a)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_ep_mapping

```

This sets a resonant endpoint mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_epr_mapping => sf_channel_set_epr_mapping

```



```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_epr_mapping (channel, i_sf, a, m, w)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in) :: a, m, w
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EPR
  allocate (sf_epr_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
  type is (sf_epr_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (a, m, w)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_epr_mapping

```

This sets an on-shell endpoint mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_epo_mapping => sf_channel_set_epo_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_epo_mapping (channel, i_sf, a, m)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in) :: a, m
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EPO
  allocate (sf_epo_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
  type is (sf_epo_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (a, m)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_epo_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel power mapping, regulating a singularity of type  $(1 - x)^{-1+\epsilon}$ . The parameter  $\epsilon$  depends on the structure function.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_ip_mapping => sf_channel_set_ip_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_ip_mapping (channel, i_sf, eps)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_IP
  allocate (sf_ip_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
  type is (sf_ip_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (eps)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_ip_mapping

```

This sets an s-channel resonant power mapping, regulating a singularity of type  $(1 - x)^{-1+\epsilon}$  in the presence of an s-channel resonance. The parameter  $\epsilon$  depends on the structure function.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_ipr_mapping => sf_channel_set_ipr_mapping

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_ipr_mapping (channel, i_sf, eps, m, w)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps, m, w
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_IPR
  allocate (sf_ipr_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_ipr_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (eps, m, w)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_ipr_mapping

```

This sets an on-shell power mapping, regulating a singularity of type  $(1-x)^{-1+\epsilon}$  for the production of a single on-shell particle.. The parameter  $\epsilon$  depends on the structure function.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_ipo_mapping => sf_channel_set_ipo_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_ipo_mapping (channel, i_sf, eps, m)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: eps, m
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_IPO
  allocate (sf_ipo_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_ipo_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (eps, m)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_ipo_mapping

```

This sets a combined endpoint/ISR mapping.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_ei_mapping => sf_channel_set_ei_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_ei_mapping (channel, i_sf, a, eps)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: a, eps
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EI
  allocate (sf_ei_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
    type is (sf_ei_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (a, eps)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_ei_mapping

```

This sets a combined endpoint/ISR mapping with resonance.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_eir_mapping => sf_channel_set_eir_mapping

```

```

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_eir_mapping (channel, i_sf, a, eps, m, w)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: a, eps, m, w
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EI
  allocate (sf_eir_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
  type is (sf_eir_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (a, eps, m, w)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_eir_mapping

```

This sets a combined endpoint/ISR mapping, on-shell.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_eio_mapping => sf_channel_set_eio_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_channel_set_eio_mapping (channel, i_sf, a, eps, m)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_sf
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: a, eps, m
  channel%map_code(i_sf) = SFMAP_MULTI_EI
  allocate (sf_eio_mapping_t :: channel%multi_mapping)
  select type (mapping => channel%multi_mapping)
  type is (sf_eio_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (a, eps, m)
  end select
end subroutine sf_channel_set_eio_mapping

```

Return true if the mapping code at position i\_sf is SFMAP\_SINGLE.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_single_mapping => sf_channel_is_single_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
function sf_channel_is_single_mapping (channel, i_sf) result (flag)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: channel
  integer, intent(in) :: i_sf
  logical :: flag
  flag = channel%map_code(i_sf) == SFMAP_SINGLE
end function sf_channel_is_single_mapping

```

Return true if the mapping code at position i\_sf is any of the SFMAP\_MULTI mappings.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_multi_mapping => sf_channel_is_multi_mapping

<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
function sf_channel_is_multi_mapping (channel, i_sf) result (flag)
  class(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: channel
  integer, intent(in) :: i_sf
  logical :: flag
  select case (channel%map_code(i_sf))

```

```

    case (SFMAP_NONE, SFMAP_SINGLE)
        flag = .false.
    case default
        flag = .true.
    end select
end function sf_channel_is_multi_mapping

```

Return true if there is any nontrivial mapping in any of the channels.

Note: we provide an explicit public function. gfortran 4.6.3 has problems with the alternative implementation as a type-bound procedure for an array base object.

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: any_sf_channel_has_mapping
<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    function any_sf_channel_has_mapping (channel) result (flag)
        type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: channel
        logical :: flag
        integer :: c
        flag = .false.
        do c = 1, size (channel)
            flag = flag .or. any (channel(c)%map_code /= SFMAP_NONE)
        end do
    end function any_sf_channel_has_mapping

```

Set a parameter index for an active multi mapping. We assume that the index array is allocated properly.

```

<SF mappings: sf channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_par_index => sf_channel_set_par_index
<SF mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_channel_set_par_index (channel, j, i_par)
        class(sf_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
        integer, intent(in) :: j
        integer, intent(in) :: i_par
        call channel%multi_mapping%set_index (j, i_par)
    end subroutine sf_channel_set_par_index

```

## 10.2.16 Unit tests

```

<SF mappings: public>+≡
    public :: sf_mappings_test
<SF mappings: tests>≡
    subroutine sf_mappings_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF mappings: execute tests>
    end subroutine sf_mappings_test

```

## Check standard mapping

Probe the standard mapping of the unit square for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

```
<SF mappings: execute tests>≡
  call test (sf_mappings_1, "sf_mappings_1", &
    "standard pair mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_mappings_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe standard mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_s_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_s_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init ()
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0):"
    p = [0._default, 0._default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"
    p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.1):"
    p = [0.1_default, 0.1_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Compute integral:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

    deallocate (mapping)
```

```

allocate (sf_s_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_s_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (power=2._default)
    call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
    call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
end select

write (u, *)
call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0):"
p = [0._default, 0._default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"
p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.1,0.1):"
p = [0.1_default, 0.1_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_1"

end subroutine sf_mappings_1

```

## Channel entries

Construct channel entries and print them.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_mappings_2, "sf_mappings_2", &
        "structure-function mapping channels", &
        u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_mappings_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
    integer :: c

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: construct and display &
&mapping-channel objects"
write (u, "(A)")

call allocate_sf_channels (channel, n_channel = 6, n_strfun = 2)
call channel(2)%activate_mapping ([1])
call channel(3)%set_s_mapping ([1,2])
call channel(4)%set_s_mapping ([1,2], power=2._default)
call channel(5)%set_res_mapping ([1,2], m = 0.5_default, w = 0.1_default)
call channel(6)%set_os_mapping ([1,2], m = 0.5_default)

call channel(3)%set_par_index (1, 1)
call channel(3)%set_par_index (2, 4)

call channel(4)%set_par_index (1, 1)
call channel(4)%set_par_index (2, 4)

call channel(5)%set_par_index (1, 1)
call channel(5)%set_par_index (2, 3)

call channel(6)%set_par_index (1, 1)
call channel(6)%set_par_index (2, 2)

do c = 1, size (channel)
  write (u, "(I0,':')", advance="no")  c
  call channel(c)%write (u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_2"

end subroutine sf_mappings_2

```

### Check resonance mapping

Probe the resonance mapping of the unit square for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

The resonance mass is at  $1/2$  the energy, the width is  $1/10$ .

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_mappings_3, "sf_mappings_3", &
    "resonant pair mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_mappings_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(2) :: p

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_3"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "*"  Purpose: probe resonance pair mapping"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_res_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_res_mapping_t)
  call mapping%init (0.5_default, 0.1_default)
  call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
  call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
end select

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0):"
p = [0._default, 0._default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"
p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.1):"
p = [0.1_default, 0.1_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output end: sf_mappings_3"

end subroutine sf_mappings_3

```

### Check on-shell mapping

Probe the on-shell mapping of the unit square for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. In this case, the Jacobian is constant and given by  $|\log m^2|$ , so this is also the value of the integral. The factor results from the variable change in the  $\delta(m^2 - x_1 x_2)$  which multiplies the cross section for the case at hand.

For the test, the (rescaled) resonance mass is set at  $1/2$  the energy.



```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_mappings_4, "sf_mappings_4", &
    "on-shell pair mapping", &
    u, results)
<SF mappings: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_mappings_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe on-shell pair mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_os_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_os_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (0.5_default)
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0):"
    p = [0._default, 0._default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0.1):"
    p = [0._default, 0.1_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,1.0):"
    p = [0._default, 1.0_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Compute integral:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

    deallocate (mapping)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_4"

  end subroutine sf_mappings_4

```

## Check endpoint mapping

Probe the endpoint mapping of the unit square for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

```
<SF mappings: execute tests>+=  
  call test (sf_mappings_5, "sf_mappings_5", &  
    "endpoint pair mapping", &  
    u, results)  
  
<SF mappings: tests>+=  
  subroutine sf_mappings_5 (u)  
    integer, intent(in) :: u  
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping  
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p  
  
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_5"  
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe endpoint pair mapping"  
    write (u, "(A)")  
  
    allocate (sf_ep_mapping_t :: mapping)  
    select type (mapping)  
    type is (sf_ep_mapping_t)  
      call mapping%init ()  
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)  
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)  
    end select  
  
    call mapping%write (u)  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0):"  
    p = [0._default, 0._default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"  
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"  
    p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"  
    p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Compute integral:"
```

```

write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: sf_mappings_5"

end subroutine sf_mappings_5

```

### Check endpoint resonant mapping

Probe the endpoint mapping with resonance. Also calculates integrals.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_mappings_6, "sf_mappings_6", &
    "endpoint resonant mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_mappings_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p

    write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: sf_mappings_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "** Purpose: probe endpoint resonant mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_epr_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_epr_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (a = 1._default, m = 0.5_default, w = 0.1_default)
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0):"
    p = [0._default, 0._default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"
    p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

    write (u, *)

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Same mapping without resonance:"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_epr_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_epr_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (a = 1._default)
    call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
    call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
end select

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0):"
p = [0._default, 0._default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"
p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_6"

end subroutine sf_mappings_6

```

## Check endpoint on-shell mapping

Probe the endpoint mapping with an on-shell particle. Also calculates integrals.

```
<SF mappings: execute tests>+=  
  call test (sf_mappings_7, "sf_mappings_7", &  
    "endpoint on-shell mapping", &  
    u, results)  
  
<SF mappings: tests>+=  
  subroutine sf_mappings_7 (u)  
    integer, intent(in) :: u  
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping  
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p  
  
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_7"  
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe endpoint on-shell mapping"  
    write (u, "(A)")  
  
    allocate (sf_epo_mapping_t :: mapping)  
    select type (mapping)  
    type is (sf_epo_mapping_t)  
      call mapping%init (a = 1._default, m = 0.5_default)  
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)  
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)  
    end select  
  
    call mapping%write (u)  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0):"  
    p = [0._default, 0._default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"  
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.1,0.5):"  
    p = [0.1_default, 0.5_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"  
    p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]  
    call mapping%check (u, p, 1-p, "F7.5")  
  
    write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(A)")  "Compute integral:"  
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)
```

```

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_7"

end subroutine sf_mappings_7

```

### Check power mapping

Probe the power mapping of the unit square for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+=
  call test (sf_mappings_8, "sf_mappings_8", &
    "power pair mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+=
  subroutine sf_mappings_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p, pb

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe power pair mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_ip_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_ip_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (eps = 0.1_default)
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0.5):"
    p = [0._default, 0.5_default]
    pb= [1._default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.9,0.5):"
    p = [0.9_default, 0.5_default]
    pb= [0.1_default, 0.5_default]

```

```

call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.8):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.8_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.99,0.02):"
p = [0.99_default, 0.02_default]
pb= [0.01_default, 0.98_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_14, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.99,0.98):"
p = [0.99_default, 0.98_default]
pb= [0.01_default, 0.02_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_14, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_8"

end subroutine sf_mappings_8

```

### Check resonant power mapping

Probe the power mapping of the unit square, adapted for an s-channel resonance, for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_mappings_9, "sf_mappings_9", &
    "power resonance mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_mappings_9 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(2) :: p, pb

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_9"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe power resonant pair mapping"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_ipr_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_ipr_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (eps = 0.1_default, m = 0.5_default, w = 0.1_default)
    call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
    call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
end select

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0,0.5):"
p = [0._default, 0.5_default]
pb= [1._default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.9,0.5):"
p = [0.9_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.7,0.8):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.8_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.9999,0.02):"
p = [0.9999_default, 0.02_default]
pb= [0.0001_default, 0.98_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_15, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "Probe at (0.9999,0.98):"
p = [0.9999_default, 0.98_default]

```



```

pb= [0.0001_default, 0.02_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_15, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Same mapping without resonance:"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_ipr_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_ipr_mapping_t)
  call mapping%init (eps = 0.1_default)
  call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
  call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
end select

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0.5):"
p = [0._default, 0.5_default]
pb= [1._default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5,0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.9,0.5):"
p = [0.9_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.1_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.2):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7,0.8):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.8_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_9"

end subroutine sf_mappings_9

```

### Check on-shell power mapping

Probe the power mapping of the unit square, adapted for single-particle production, for different parameter values. Also calculates integrals. For a finite number of bins, they differ slightly from 1, but the result is well-defined because we are not using random points.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_mappings_10, "sf_mappings_10", &
    "power on-shell mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_mappings_10 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
  real(default), dimension(2) :: p, pb

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_10"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe power on-shell mapping"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (sf_ipo_mapping_t :: mapping)
  select type (mapping)
  type is (sf_ipo_mapping_t)
    call mapping%init (eps = 0.1_default, m = 0.5_default)
    call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
    call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
  end select

  call mapping%write (u)

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0.5):"
  p = [0._default, 0.5_default]
  pb= [1._default, 0.5_default]
  call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0.02):"
  p = [0._default, 0.02_default]
  pb= [1._default, 0.98_default]
  call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_15, FMT_12)

```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0,0.98):"
p = [0._default, 0.98_default]
pb= [1._default, 0.02_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_15, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_10"

end subroutine sf_mappings_10

```

### Check combined endpoint-power mapping

Probe the mapping for the beamstrahlung/ISR combination.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+=
call test (sf_mappings_11, "sf_mappings_11", &
"endpoint/power combined mapping", &
u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+=
subroutine sf_mappings_11 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
real(default), dimension(4) :: p, pb

write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_mappings_11"
write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: probe power pair mapping"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_ei_mapping_t :: mapping)
select type (mapping)
type is (sf_ei_mapping_t)
call mapping%init (eps = 0.1_default)
call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
call mapping%set_index (3, 3)
call mapping%set_index (4, 4)
end select

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7, 0.2, 0.4, 0.8):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default, 0.4_default, 0.8_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default, 0.6_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.9, 0.06, 0.95, 0.1):"
p = [0.9_default, 0.06_default, 0.95_default, 0.1_default]
pb= [0.1_default, 0.94_default, 0.05_default, 0.9_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_13, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_11"

end subroutine sf_mappings_11

```

### Check resonant endpoint-power mapping

Probe the mapping for the beamstrahlung/ISR combination.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+=
  call test (sf_mappings_12, "sf_mappings_12", &
    "endpoint/power resonant combined mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+=
  subroutine sf_mappings_12 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(4) :: p, pb

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_mappings_12"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: probe resonant combined mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_eir_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_eir_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (a = 1._default, &
        eps = 0.1_default, m = 0.5_default, w = 0.1_default)
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
      call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
      call mapping%set_index (3, 3)
      call mapping%set_index (4, 4)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0.5):"
p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7, 0.2, 0.4, 0.8):"
p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default, 0.4_default, 0.8_default]
pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default, 0.6_default, 0.2_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.9, 0.06, 0.95, 0.1):"
p = [0.9_default, 0.06_default, 0.95_default, 0.1_default]
pb= [0.1_default, 0.94_default, 0.05_default, 0.9_default]
call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_15, FMT_12)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

deallocate (mapping)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_12"

end subroutine sf_mappings_12

```

### Check on-shell endpoint-power mapping

Probe the mapping for the beamstrahlung/ISR combination.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+=
  call test (sf_mappings_13, "sf_mappings_13", &
    "endpoint/power on-shell combined mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF mappings: tests>+=
  subroutine sf_mappings_13 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(4) :: p, pb

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_mappings_13"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: probe on-shell combined mapping"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_eio_mapping_t :: mapping)
    select type (mapping)
    type is (sf_eio_mapping_t)
      call mapping%init (a = 1._default, eps = 0.1_default, m = 0.5_default)
      call mapping%set_index (1, 1)

```

```

        call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
        call mapping%set_index (3, 3)
        call mapping%set_index (4, 4)
    end select

    call mapping%write (u)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0.5):"
    p = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    pb= [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.5_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.7, 0.2, 0.4, 0.8):"
    p = [0.7_default, 0.2_default, 0.4_default, 0.8_default]
    pb= [0.3_default, 0.8_default, 0.6_default, 0.2_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_16)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Probe at (0.9, 0.06, 0.95, 0.1):"
    p = [0.9_default, 0.06_default, 0.95_default, 0.1_default]
    pb= [0.1_default, 0.94_default, 0.05_default, 0.9_default]
    call mapping%check (u, p, pb, FMT_14, FMT_12)

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "Compute integral:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F7.5)") "I =", mapping%integral (100000)

    deallocate (mapping)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_mappings_13"

end subroutine sf_mappings_13

```

## Check rescaling

Check the rescaling factor in on-shell basic mapping.

```

<SF mappings: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_mappings_14, "sf_mappings_14", &
        "rescaled on-shell mapping", &
        u, results)
<SF mappings: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_mappings_14 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        real(default), dimension(2) :: p, r
        real(default) :: f, x_free, m2

        write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_mappings_14"
        write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: probe rescaling in os mapping"
        write (u, "(A)")
    end subroutine sf_mappings_14

```

```

p = [0.1_default, 0.2_default]
x_free = 0.9_default
m2 = 0.5_default

call map_on_shell (r, f, p, -log (m2), x_free)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "p =", p
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "*r=", x_free * product (r)

write (u, *)

call map_on_shell_inverse (r, f, p, -log (m2), x_free)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "p =", p
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_14 // "))") "*r=", x_free * product (r)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_mappings_14"

end subroutine sf_mappings_14

```

## 10.3 Structure function base

```

⟨sf_base.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module sf_base

    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    ⟨Use strings⟩
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use pdg_arrays
    use models
    use flavors
    use helicities
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices
    use interactions
    use evaluators
    use particles
    use beams
    use sf_aux

```

```

    use sf_mappings

    <Standard module head>

    <SF base: public>

    <SF base: parameters>

    <SF base: types>

    <SF base: interfaces>

    <SF base: test types>

    contains

    <SF base: procedures>

    <SF base: tests>

    end module sf_base

```

### 10.3.1 Abstract structure-function data type

This type should hold all configuration data for a specific type of structure function. The base object is empty; the implementations will fill it.

```

<SF base: public>≡
    public :: sf_data_t

<SF base: types>≡
    type, abstract :: sf_data_t
    contains
    <SF base: sf data: TBP>
    end type sf_data_t

```

Output.

```

<SF base: sf data: TBP>≡
    procedure (sf_data_write), deferred :: write

<SF base: interfaces>≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine sf_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
            import
            class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
            logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        end subroutine sf_data_write
    end interface

```

Return true if this structure function is in generator mode. In that case, all parameters are free, otherwise bound. (We do not support mixed cases.) Default is: no generator.

```

<SF base: sf data: TBP>+≡

```



```

    procedure :: is_generator => sf_data_is_generator
  <SF base: procedures>+=
    function sf_data_is_generator (data) result (flag)
      class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
      logical :: flag
      flag = .false.
    end function sf_data_is_generator

```

Return the number of input parameters that determine the structure function.

```

  <SF base: sf data: TBP>+=
    procedure (sf_data_get_int), deferred :: get_n_par
  <SF base: interfaces>+=
    abstract interface
      function sf_data_get_int (data) result (n)
        import
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        integer :: n
      end function sf_data_get_int
    end interface

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG codes for the current setup. The codes can be an array of particles, for each beam.

```

  <SF base: sf data: TBP>+=
    procedure (sf_data_get_pdg_out), deferred :: get_pdg_out
  <SF base: interfaces>+=
    abstract interface
      subroutine sf_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
        import
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
      end subroutine sf_data_get_pdg_out
    end interface

```

Allocate a matching structure function interaction object and properly initialize it.

```

  <SF base: sf data: TBP>+=
    procedure (sf_data_allocate_sf_int), deferred :: allocate_sf_int
  <SF base: interfaces>+=
    abstract interface
      subroutine sf_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
        import
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
      end subroutine sf_data_allocate_sf_int
    end interface

```

Return the PDF set index, if applicable. We implement a default method which returns zero. The PDF (builtin and LHA) implementations will override this.

```

  <SF base: sf data: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_pdf_set => sf_data_get_pdf_set

```

```

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_data_get_pdf_set (data) result (pdf_set)
  class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer :: pdf_set
  pdf_set = 0
end function sf_data_get_pdf_set

```

### 10.3.2 Structure-function chain configuration

This is the data type that the `processes` module uses for setting up its structure-function chain. For each structure function described by the beam data, there is an entry. The `i` array indicates the beam(s) to which this structure function applies, and the `data` object contains the actual configuration data.

```

<SF base: public>+=
public :: sf_config_t

<SF base: types>+=
type :: sf_config_t
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data
contains
  <SF base: sf config: TBP>
end type sf_config_t

```

Output:

```

<SF base: sf config: TBP>=
procedure :: write => sf_config_write

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_config_write (object, unit)
  class(sf_config_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  if (allocated (object%i)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A,2(1x,I0))") "Structure-function configuration: &
      &beam(s)", object%i
    if (allocated (object%data)) call object%data%write (u)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Structure-function configuration: [undefined]"
  end if
end subroutine sf_config_write

```

Initialize.

```

<SF base: sf config: TBP>+=
procedure :: init => sf_config_init

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_config_init (sf_config, i_beam, sf_data)
  class(sf_config_t), intent(out) :: sf_config
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_beam
  class(sf_data_t), intent(in) :: sf_data

```

```

        allocate (sf_config%i (size (i_beam)), source = i_beam)
        allocate (sf_config%data, source = sf_data)
    end subroutine sf_config_init

```

Return the PDF set, if any.

```

⟨SF base: sf config: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: get_pdf_set => sf_config_get_pdf_set

⟨SF base: procedures⟩+≡
    function sf_config_get_pdf_set (sf_config) result (pdf_set)
        class(sf_config_t), intent(in) :: sf_config
        integer :: pdf_set
        pdf_set = sf_config%data%get_pdf_set ()
    end function sf_config_get_pdf_set

```

### 10.3.3 Structure-function instance

The `sf_int_t` data type contains an `interaction_t` object (it is an extension of this type) and a pointer to the `sf_data_t` configuration data. This interaction, or copies of it, is used to implement structure-function kinematics and dynamics in the context of process evaluation.

The status code `status` tells whether the interaction is undefined, has defined kinematics (but matrix elements invalid), or is completely defined. There is also a status code for failure. The implementation is responsible for updating the status.

The entries `mi2`, `mr2`, and `mo2` hold the squared invariant masses of the incoming, radiated, and outgoing particle, respectively. They are supposed to be set upon initialization, but could also be varied event by event.

If the radiated or outgoing mass is nonzero, we may need to apply an on-shell projection. The projection mode is stored as `on_shell_mode`.

The array `beam_index` is the list of beams on which this structure function applies (1, 2, or both). The arrays `incoming`, `radiated`, and `outgoing` contain the indices of the respective particle sets within the interaction, for convenient lookup. The array `par_index` indicates the MC input parameters that this entry will use up in the structure-function chain. The first parameter (or the first two, for a spectrum) in this array determines the momentum fraction and is thus subject to global mappings.

In the abstract base type, we do not implement the data pointer. This allows us to restrict its type in the implementations.

```

⟨SF base: public⟩+≡
    public :: sf_int_t

⟨SF base: types⟩+≡
    type, abstract, extends (interaction_t) :: sf_int_t
        integer :: status = SF_UNDEFINED
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mi2
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mr2
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mo2
        integer :: on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
        logical :: qmin_defined = .false.
        logical :: qmax_defined = .false.

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: qmin
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: qmax
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: beam_index
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: incoming
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: radiated
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: outgoing
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: par_index
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: par_primary
contains
  <SF base: sf_int: TBP>
end type sf_int_t

```

Status codes. The codes that refer to links, masks, and connections, apply to structure-function chains only.

The status codes are public.

```

<SF base: parameters>≡
integer, parameter, public :: SF_UNDEFINED = 0
integer, parameter, public :: SF_INITIAL = 1
integer, parameter, public :: SF_DONE_LINKS = 2
integer, parameter, public :: SF_FAILED_MASK = 3
integer, parameter, public :: SF_DONE_MASK = 4
integer, parameter, public :: SF_FAILED_CONNECTIONS = 5
integer, parameter, public :: SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS = 6
integer, parameter, public :: SF_SEED_KINEMATICS = 10
integer, parameter, public :: SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS = 11
integer, parameter, public :: SF_DONE_KINEMATICS = 12
integer, parameter, public :: SF_FAILED_EVALUATION = 13
integer, parameter, public :: SF_EVALUATED = 20

```

Write a string version of the status code:

```

<SF base: procedures>+≡
subroutine write_sf_status (status, u)
  integer, intent(in) :: status
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  select case (status)
  case (SF_UNDEFINED)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "undefined"
  case (SF_INITIAL)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "initialized"
  case (SF_DONE_LINKS)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "links set"
  case (SF_FAILED_MASK)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "mask mismatch"
  case (SF_DONE_MASK)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "mask set"
  case (SF_FAILED_CONNECTIONS)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "connections failed"
  case (SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "connections set"
  case (SF_SEED_KINEMATICS)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "incoming momenta set"
  case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
    write (u, "(1x,'[',A,']')") "kinematics failed"

```

```

case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
  write (u, "(1x,['',A,''])" "kinematics set"
case (SF_FAILED_EVALUATION)
  write (u, "(1x,['',A,''])" "evaluation failed"
case (SF_EVALUATED)
  write (u, "(1x,['',A,''])" "evaluated"
end select
end subroutine write_sf_status

```

Finalizer. Required because the base interaction needs a finalizer. We provide an implementation, which need not be overwritten if the implementation does not add finalizable subobjects.

```

<SF base: sf int: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => sf_int_final
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_int_final (object)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call interaction_final (object%interaction_t)
  end subroutine sf_int_final

```

This is the basic output routine. Display status and interaction.

```

<SF base: sf int: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_write => sf_int_base_write
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_int_base_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "SF instance:"
    call write_sf_status (object%status, u)
    if (allocated (object%beam_index)) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,I0))" "beam      =", object%beam_index
    if (allocated (object%incoming)) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,I0))" "incoming  =", object%incoming
    if (allocated (object%radiated)) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,I0))" "radiated  =", object%radiated
    if (allocated (object%outgoing)) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,I0))" "outgoing  =", object%outgoing
    if (allocated (object%par_index)) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,I0))" "parameter =", object%par_index
    if (object%qmin_defined) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "q_min     =", object%qmin
    if (object%qmax_defined) &
      write (u, "(3x,A,1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "q_max     =", object%qmax
    call interaction_write (object%interaction_t, u, testflag = testflag)
  end subroutine sf_int_base_write

```

The type string identifies the structure function class, and possibly more details about the structure function.

```

<SF base: sf int: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure (sf_int_type_string), deferred :: type_string
<SF base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        function sf_int_type_string (object) result (string)
            import
            class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: object
            type(string_t) :: string
        end function sf_int_type_string
    end interface

```

Output of the concrete object. We should not forget to call the output routine for the base type.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure (sf_int_write), deferred :: write
<SF base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine sf_int_write (object, unit, testflag)
            import
            class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: object
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
            logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        end subroutine sf_int_write
    end interface

```

Basic initialization: set the invariant masses for the particles and initialize the interaction. The caller should then add states to the interaction and freeze it.

The dimension of the mask should be equal to the sum of the dimensions of the mass-squared arrays, which determine incoming, radiated, and outgoing particles, respectively.

Optionally, we can define minimum and maximum values for the momentum transfer to the outgoing particle(s). If all masses are zero, this is actually required for non-collinear splitting.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: base_init => sf_int_base_init
<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_int_base_init &
        (sf_int, mask, mi2, mr2, mo2, qmin, qmax, hel_lock)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
        type (quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mask
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: mi2, mr2, mo2
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: qmin, qmax
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: hel_lock
        allocate (sf_int%mi2 (size (mi2)))
        sf_int%mi2 = mi2
        allocate (sf_int%mr2 (size (mr2)))
        sf_int%mr2 = mr2
        allocate (sf_int%mo2 (size (mo2)))
        sf_int%mo2 = mo2
        if (present (qmin)) then
            sf_int%qmin_defined = .true.
            allocate (sf_int%qmin (size (qmin)))

```

```

        sf_int%qmin = qmin
    end if
    if (present (qmax)) then
        sf_int%qmax_defined = .true.
        allocate (sf_int%qmax (size (qmax)))
        sf_int%qmax = qmax
    end if
    call interaction_init (sf_int%interaction_t, &
        size (mi2), 0, size (mr2) + size (mo2), &
        mask = mask, hel_lock = hel_lock, set_relations = .true.)
end subroutine sf_int_base_init

```

Set the indices of the incoming, radiated, and outgoing particles, respectively.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_incoming => sf_int_set_incoming
    procedure :: set_radiated => sf_int_set_radiated
    procedure :: set_outgoing => sf_int_set_outgoing

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_int_set_incoming (sf_int, incoming)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: incoming
        allocate (sf_int%incoming (size (incoming)))
        sf_int%incoming = incoming
    end subroutine sf_int_set_incoming

    subroutine sf_int_set_radiated (sf_int, radiated)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: radiated
        allocate (sf_int%radiated (size (radiated)))
        sf_int%radiated = radiated
    end subroutine sf_int_set_radiated

    subroutine sf_int_set_outgoing (sf_int, outgoing)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: outgoing
        allocate (sf_int%outgoing (size (outgoing)))
        sf_int%outgoing = outgoing
    end subroutine sf_int_set_outgoing

```

Initialization. This proceeds via an abstract data object, which for the actual implementation should have the matching concrete type. Since all implementations have the same signature, we can prepare a deferred procedure. The data object will become the target of a corresponding pointer within the `sf_int_t` implementation.

This should call the previous procedure.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure (sf_int_init), deferred :: init

<SF base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine sf_int_init (sf_int, data)
            import

```

```

        class(sf_int_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    end subroutine sf_int_init
end interface

```

Complete initialization. This routine contains initializations that can only be performed after the interaction object got its final shape, i.e., redundant helicities have been eliminated by matching with beams and process.

The default implementation does nothing.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_constants => sf_int_setup_constants

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_int_setup_constants (sf_int)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    end subroutine sf_int_setup_constants

```

Set beam indices, i.e., the beam(s) on which this structure function applies.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_beam_index => sf_int_set_beam_index

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_int_set_beam_index (sf_int, beam_index)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: beam_index
        allocate (sf_int%beam_index (size (beam_index)))
        sf_int%beam_index = beam_index
    end subroutine sf_int_set_beam_index

```

Set parameter indices, indicating which MC input parameters are to be used for evaluating this structure function.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_par_index => sf_int_set_par_index

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_int_set_par_index (sf_int, par_index)
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: par_index
        allocate (sf_int%par_index (size (par_index)))
        sf_int%par_index = par_index
    end subroutine sf_int_set_par_index

```

Initialize the structure-function kinematics, setting incoming momenta. We assume that array shapes match.

Three versions. The first version relies on the momenta being linked to another interaction. The second version sets the momenta explicitly. In the third version, we first compute momenta for the specified energies and store those.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
    generic :: seed_kinematics => sf_int_receive_momenta
    generic :: seed_kinematics => sf_int_seed_momenta
    generic :: seed_kinematics => sf_int_seed_energies

```



```

procedure :: sf_int_receive_momenta
procedure :: sf_int_seed_momenta
procedure :: sf_int_seed_energies

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_int_receive_momenta (sf_int)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
    call interaction_receive_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t)
    sf_int%status = SF_SEED_KINEMATICS
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_receive_momenta

subroutine sf_int_seed_momenta (sf_int, k)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: k
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
    call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, k, &
      outgoing=.false.)
    sf_int%status = SF_SEED_KINEMATICS
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_seed_momenta

subroutine sf_int_seed_energies (sf_int, E)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: E
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: k
  integer :: j
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
    allocate (k (size (E)))
    if (all (E**2 >= sf_int%mi2)) then
      do j = 1, size (E)
        k(j) = vector4_moving (E(j), &
          (3-2*j) * sqrt (E(j)**2 - sf_int%mi2(j)), 3)
      end do
      call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)
    end if
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_seed_energies

```

Tell if in generator mode. By default, this is false. To be overridden where appropriate; we may refer to the `is_generator` method of the `data` component in the concrete type.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: is_generator => sf_int_is_generator

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_int_is_generator (sf_int) result (flag)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  logical :: flag
  flag = .false.
end function sf_int_is_generator

```

Generate free parameters **r**. Parameters are free if they do not correspond to integration parameters (i.e., are bound), but are generated by the structure function object itself. By default, all parameters are bound, and the output values of this procedure will be discarded. With free parameters, we have to override this procedure.

The value **x\_free** is the renormalization factor of the total energy that corresponds to the free parameters. If there are no free parameters, the procedure will not change its value, which starts as unity. Otherwise, the fraction is typically decreased, but may also be increased in some cases.

```

(SF base: sf_int: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: generate_free => sf_int_generate_free

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_int_generate_free (sf_int, r, rb, x_free)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
    real(default), intent(inout) :: x_free
    r = 0
    rb= 1
  end subroutine sf_int_generate_free

```

Complete the structure-function kinematics, derived from an input parameter (array) *r* between 0 and 1. The interaction momenta are calculated, and we return *x* (the momentum fraction), and *f* (the Jacobian factor for the map  $r \rightarrow x$ ), if **map** is set.

If the **map** flag is unset, *r* and *x* values will coincide, and *f* will become unity. If it is set, the structure-function implementation chooses a convenient mapping from *r* to *x* with Jacobian *f*.

In the **inverse\_kinematics** variant, we exchange the intent of **x** and **r**. The momenta are calculated only if the optional flag **set\_momenta** is present and set.

```

(SF base: sf_int: TBP)+≡
  procedure (sf_int_complete_kinematics), deferred :: complete_kinematics
  procedure (sf_int_inverse_kinematics), deferred :: inverse_kinematics

(SF base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine sf_int_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
      import
      class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
      real(default), intent(out) :: f
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
      logical, intent(in) :: map
    end subroutine sf_int_complete_kinematics
  end interface

  abstract interface
    subroutine sf_int_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, &
      set_momenta)
      import
      class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x

```

```

        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    end subroutine sf_int_inverse_kinematics
end interface

```

Single splitting: compute momenta, given  $x$  input parameters. We assume that the incoming momentum is set. The status code is set to `SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS` if the  $x$  array does not correspond to a valid momentum configuration. Otherwise, it is updated to `SF_DONE_KINEMATICS`.

We force the outgoing particle on-shell. The on-shell projection is determined by the `on_shell_mode`. The radiated particle should already be on shell.

*(SF base: sf\_int: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: split_momentum => sf_int_split_momentum

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sf_int_split_momentum (sf_int, x, xb1)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(in) :: xb1
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    type(splitting_data_t) :: sd
    real(default) :: E1, E2
    logical :: fail
    if (sf_int%status >= SF_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
        k = interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)
        call sd%init (k, &
            sf_int%mi2(1), sf_int%mr2(1), sf_int%mo2(1), &
            collinear = size (x) == 1)
        call sd%set_t_bounds (x(1), xb1)
        select case (size (x))
        case (1)
        case (3)
            if (sf_int%qmax_defined) then
                if (sf_int%qmin_defined) then
                    call sd%sample_t (x(2), &
                        t0 = - sf_int%qmax(1) ** 2, t1 = - sf_int%qmin(1) ** 2)
                else
                    call sd%sample_t (x(2), &
                        t0 = - sf_int%qmax(1) ** 2)
                end if
            else
                if (sf_int%qmin_defined) then
                    call sd%sample_t (x(2), t1 = - sf_int%qmin(1) ** 2)
                else
                    call sd%sample_t (x(2))
                end if
            end if
            call sd%sample_phi (x(3))
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Structure function: impossible number of parameters")
        end select
    end if
end subroutine sf_int_split_momentum

```

```

end select
q = sd%split_momentum (k)
call on_shell (q, [sf_int%mr2, sf_int%mo2], &
  sf_int%on_shell_mode)
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, &
  q, outgoing=.true.)
E1 = energy (q(1))
E2 = energy (q(2))
fail = E1 < 0 .or. E2 < 0 &
  .or. E1 ** 2 < sf_int%mr2(1) &
  .or. E2 ** 2 < sf_int%mo2(1)
if (fail) then
  sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
else
  sf_int%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
end if
end if
end if
end subroutine sf_int_split_momentum

```

Pair splitting: two incoming momenta, two radiated, two outgoing. This is simple because we insist on all momenta being collinear.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: split_momenta => sf_int_split_momenta

<SF base: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_int_split_momenta (sf_int, x, xb1)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: xb1
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
  type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: q
  real(default), dimension(4) :: E
  logical :: fail
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
    select case (size (x))
    case (2)
    case default
      call msg_bug ("Pair structure function: recoil requested &
        &but not implemented yet")
    end select
    k(1) = interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)
    k(2) = interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 2)
    q(1:2) = xb1 * k
    q(3:4) = x * k
    select case (size (sf_int%mr2))
    case (2)
      call on_shell (q, &
        [sf_int%mr2(1), sf_int%mr2(2), &
        sf_int%mo2(1), sf_int%mo2(2)], &
        sf_int%on_shell_mode)
      call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, &
        q, outgoing=.true.)
      E = energy (q)
      fail = any (E < 0) &

```

```

        .or. any (E(1:2) ** 2 < sf_int%mr2) &
        .or. any (E(3:4) ** 2 < sf_int%mo2)
    case default; call msg_bug ("split momenta: incorrect use")
    end select
    if (fail) then
        sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
    else
        sf_int%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
    end if
end if
end subroutine sf_int_split_momenta

```

Pair spectrum: the reduced version of the previous splitting, without radiated momenta.

*(SF base: sf\_int: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: reduce_momenta => sf_int_reduce_momenta

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sf_int_reduce_momenta (sf_int, x)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default), dimension(2) :: E
    logical :: fail
    if (sf_int%status >= SF_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
        select case (size (x))
        case (2)
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Pair spectrum: recoil requested &
                &but not implemented yet")
        end select
        k(1) = interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)
        k(2) = interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 2)
        q = x * k
        call on_shell (q, &
            [sf_int%mo2(1), sf_int%mo2(2)], &
            sf_int%on_shell_mode)
        call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, &
            q, outgoing=.true.)
        E = energy (q)
        fail = any (E < 0) &
            .or. any (E ** 2 < sf_int%mo2)
        if (fail) then
            sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
        else
            sf_int%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
        end if
    end if
end subroutine sf_int_reduce_momenta

```

The inverse procedure: we compute the  $x$  array from the momentum configuration. In an overriding TBP, we may also set internal data that depend on this, for convenience.

NOTE: Here and above, the single-particle case is treated in detail, allowing for non-collinearity and non-vanishing masses and nontrivial momentum-transfer bounds. For the pair case, we currently implement only collinear splitting and assume massless particles. This should be improved.

NOTE: We should also improve this in the sense of extracting both  $x$  and  $\bar{x}$ , where for the latter we may consult the beam remnant. The current implementation is not sensitive to small  $\bar{x}$  values.

```

(SF base: sf_int: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover_x => sf_int_recover_x
  procedure :: base_recover_x => sf_int_recover_x

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_int_recover_x (sf_int, x, x_free)
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: q
    type(splitting_data_t) :: sd
    if (sf_int%status >= SF_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
      allocate (k (interaction_get_n_in (sf_int%interaction_t)))
      allocate (q (interaction_get_n_out (sf_int%interaction_t)))
      k = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.false.)
      q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
      select case (size (k))
      case (1)
        call sd%init (k(1), &
                     sf_int%mi2(1), sf_int%mr2(1), sf_int%mo2(1), &
                     collinear = size (x) == 1)
        call sd%recover (k(1), q(2), sf_int%on_shell_mode)
        x(1) = sd%get_x ()
        select case (size (x))
        case (1)
        case (3)
          if (sf_int%qmax_defined) then
            if (sf_int%qmin_defined) then
              call sd%inverse_t (x(2), &
                                t0 = - sf_int%qmax(1) ** 2, t1 = - sf_int%qmin(1) ** 2)
            else
              call sd%inverse_t (x(2), &
                                t0 = - sf_int%qmax(1) ** 2)
            end if
          else
            if (sf_int%qmin_defined) then
              call sd%inverse_t (x(2), t1 = - sf_int%qmin(1) ** 2)
            else
              call sd%inverse_t (x(2))
            end if
          end if
          call sd%inverse_phi (x(3))
        case default
          call msg_bug ("Structure function: impossible number &
                        &of parameters")
        end select
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

case (2)
  select case (size (x))
    case (2)
    case default
      call msg_bug ("Pair structure function: recoil requested &
        &but not implemented yet")
    end select
  select case (sf_int%on_shell_mode)
    case (KEEP_ENERGY)
      select case (size (q))
        case (4)
          x = energy (q(3:4)) / energy (k)
        case (2)
          x = energy (q) / energy (k)
        end select
    case (KEEP_MOMENTUM)
      select case (size (q))
        case (4)
          x = longitudinal_part (q(3:4)) / longitudinal_part (k)
        case (2)
          x = longitudinal_part (q) / longitudinal_part (k)
        end select
      end select
    end select
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_recover_x

```

Apply the structure function, i.e., evaluate the interaction. For the calculation, we may use the stored momenta, any further information stored inside the `sf_int` implementation during kinematics setup, and the given energy scale. It may happen that for the given kinematics the value is not defined. This should be indicated by the status code.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡
  procedure (sf_int_apply), deferred :: apply

<SF base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine sf_int_apply (sf_int, scale)
      import
      class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
      real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    end subroutine sf_int_apply
  end interface

```

### 10.3.4 Accessing the structure function

Return metadata. Once `interaction_t` is rewritten in OO, some of this will be inherited.

The number of outgoing is equal to the number of incoming particles. The radiated particles are the difference.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+≡

```

```

procedure :: get_n_in => sf_int_get_n_in
procedure :: get_n_rad => sf_int_get_n_rad
procedure :: get_n_out => sf_int_get_n_out

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_int_get_n_in (sf_int) result (n_in)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  integer :: n_in
  n_in = interaction_get_n_in (sf_int%interaction_t)
end function sf_int_get_n_in

function sf_int_get_n_rad (sf_int) result (n_rad)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  integer :: n_rad
  n_rad = interaction_get_n_out (sf_int%interaction_t) &
    - interaction_get_n_in (sf_int%interaction_t)
end function sf_int_get_n_rad

function sf_int_get_n_out (sf_int) result (n_out)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  integer :: n_out
  n_out = interaction_get_n_in (sf_int%interaction_t)
end function sf_int_get_n_out

```

Number of matrix element entries in the interaction:

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+=
procedure :: get_n_states => sf_int_get_n_states

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_int_get_n_states (sf_int) result (n_states)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  integer :: n_states
  n_states = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (sf_int%interaction_t)
end function sf_int_get_n_states

```

Return a specific state as a quantum-number array.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+=
procedure :: get_state => sf_int_get_state

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_int_get_state (sf_int, i) result (qn)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  allocate (qn (interaction_get_n_tot (sf_int%interaction_t)))
  qn = interaction_get_quantum_numbers (sf_int%interaction_t, i)
end function sf_int_get_state

```

Return the matrix-element values for all states. We can assume that the matrix elements are real, so we take the real part.

```

<SF base: sf_int: TBP>+=
procedure :: get_values => sf_int_get_values

```



```

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_int_get_values (sf_int, value)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: value
  integer :: i
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_EVALUATED) then
    do i = 1, size (value)
      value(i) = interaction_get_matrix_element &
        (sf_int%interaction_t, i)
    end do
  else
    value = 0
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_get_values

```

### 10.3.5 Direct calculations

Compute a structure function value (array) directly, given an array of  $x$  values and a scale. If the energy is also given, we initialize the kinematics for that energy, otherwise take it from a previous run.

We assume that the  $E$  array has dimension  $n_{in}$ , and the  $x$  array has  $n_{par}$ .

```

<SF base: sf int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_values => sf_int_compute_values

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_int_compute_values (sf_int, value, x, xb, scale, E)
  class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: value
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: xb
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: E
  real(default), dimension(size (x)) :: xx
  real(default) :: f
  if (present (E)) call sf_int%seed_kinematics (E)
  if (sf_int%status >= SF_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
    call sf_int%complete_kinematics (xx, f, x, xb, map=.false.)
    call sf_int%apply (scale)
    call sf_int%get_values (value)
    value = value * f
  else
    value = 0
  end if
end subroutine sf_int_compute_values

```

Compute just a single value for one of the states, i.e., throw the others away.

```

<SF base: sf int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_value => sf_int_compute_value

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_int_compute_value &
  (sf_int, i_state, value, x, xb, scale, E)

```

```

class(sf_int_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
integer, intent(in) :: i_state
real(default), intent(out) :: value
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: xb
real(default), intent(in) :: scale
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: E
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: value_array
if (sf_int%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
    allocate (value_array (sf_int%get_n_states ()))
    call sf_int%compute_values (value_array, x, xb, scale, E)
    value = value_array(i_state)
else
    value = 0
end if
end subroutine sf_int_compute_value

```

### 10.3.6 Structure-function instance

This is a wrapper for `sf_int_t` objects, such that we can build an array with different structure-function types. The structure-function contains an array (a sequence) of `sf_int_t` objects.

The object, it holds the evaluator that connects the preceding part of the structure-function chain to the current interaction.

It also stores the input and output parameter values for the contained structure function. The `r` array has a second dimension, corresponding to the mapping channels in a multi-channel configuration. There is a Jacobian entry `f` for each channel. The corresponding logical array `mapping` tells whether we apply the mapping appropriate for the current structure function in this channel. The `x` parameter values (energy fractions) are common to all channels.

*(SF base: types)+≡*

```

type :: sf_instance_t
class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: int
type(enumerator_t) :: eval
real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: r
real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: rb
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: m
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
end type sf_instance_t

```

### 10.3.7 Structure-function chain

A chain is an array of structure functions `sf`, initiated by a beam setup. We do not use this directly for evaluation, but create instances with copies of the contained interactions.

`n_par` is the total number of parameters that is necessary for completely determining the structure-function chain. `n_bound` is the number of MC input parameters that are requested from the integrator. The difference of `n_par` and

`n_bound` is the number of free parameters, which are generated by a structure-function object in generator mode.

```

<SF base: public>+≡
    public :: sf_chain_t

<SF base: types>+≡
    type, extends (beam_t) :: sf_chain_t
        type(beam_data_t), pointer :: beam_data => null ()
        integer :: n_in = 0
        integer :: n_strfun = 0
        integer :: n_par = 0
        integer :: n_bound = 0
        type(sf_instance_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf
        logical :: trace_enable = .false.
        integer :: trace_unit = 0
    contains
        <SF base: sf chain: TBP>
    end type sf_chain_t

```

Finalizer.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => sf_chain_final

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_chain_final (object)
        class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout) :: object
        integer :: i
        call object%final_tracing ()
        if (allocated (object%sf)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%sf, 1)
                associate (sf => object%sf(i))
                    if (allocated (sf%int)) then
                        call sf%int%final ()
                    end if
                end associate
            end do
        end if
        call beam_final (object%beam_t)
    end subroutine sf_chain_final

```

Output.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => sf_chain_write

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_chain_write (object, unit)
        class(sf_chain_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Incoming particles / structure-function chain:"
        if (associated (object%beam_data)) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_in      = ", object%n_in
            write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_strfun  = ", object%n_strfun

```

```

write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_par      = ", object%n_par
if (object%n_par /= object%n_bound) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_bound  = ", object%n_bound
end if
call beam_data_write (object%beam_data, u)
call write_separator (u)
call beam_write (object%beam_t, u)
if (allocated (object%sf)) then
  do i = 1, object%n_strfun
    associate (sf => object%sf(i))
      call write_separator (u)
      if (allocated (sf%int)) then
        call sf%int%write (u)
      else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF instance: [undefined]"
      end if
    end associate
  end do
end if
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_write

```

Initialize: setup beams. The `beam_data` target must remain valid for the lifetime of the chain, since we just establish a pointer. The structure-function configuration array is used to initialize the individual structure-function entries. The target attribute is needed because the `sf_int` entries establish pointers to the configuration data.

*<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => sf_chain_init

```

*<SF base: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine sf_chain_init (sf_chain, beam_data, sf_config)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(out) :: sf_chain
  type(beam_data_t), intent(in), target :: beam_data
  type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional, target :: sf_config
  integer :: i
  sf_chain%beam_data => beam_data
  sf_chain%n_in = beam_data_get_n_in (beam_data)
  call beam_init (sf_chain%beam_t, beam_data)
  if (present (sf_config)) then
    sf_chain%n_strfun = size (sf_config)
    allocate (sf_chain%sf (sf_chain%n_strfun))
    do i = 1, sf_chain%n_strfun
      call sf_chain%set_strfun (i, sf_config(i)%i, sf_config(i)%data)
    end do
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_init

```

Receive the beam momenta from a source to which the beam interaction is linked.

*<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: receive_beam_momenta => sf_chain_receive_beam_momenta
  <SF base: procedures>+=
    subroutine sf_chain_receive_beam_momenta (sf_chain)
      class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout), target :: sf_chain
      type(interaction_t), pointer :: beam_int
      beam_int => sf_chain%get_beam_int_ptr ()
      call interaction_receive_momenta (beam_int)
    end subroutine sf_chain_receive_beam_momenta

```

Explicitly set the beam momenta.

```

  <SF base: sf chain: TBP>+=
    procedure :: set_beam_momenta => sf_chain_set_beam_momenta
  <SF base: procedures>+=
    subroutine sf_chain_set_beam_momenta (sf_chain, p)
      class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout) :: sf_chain
      type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
      call beam_set_momenta (sf_chain%beam_t, p)
    end subroutine sf_chain_set_beam_momenta

```

Set a structure-function entry. We use the `data` input to allocate the `int` structure-function instance with appropriate type, then initialize the entry. The entry establishes a pointer to `data`.

The index `i` is the structure-function index in the chain.

```

  <SF base: sf chain: TBP>+=
    procedure :: set_strfun => sf_chain_set_strfun
  <SF base: procedures>+=
    subroutine sf_chain_set_strfun (sf_chain, i, beam_index, data)
      class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout) :: sf_chain
      integer, intent(in) :: i
      integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: beam_index
      class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
      integer :: n_par, j
      n_par = data%get_n_par ()
      call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_chain%sf(i)%int)
      associate (sf_int => sf_chain%sf(i)%int)
        call sf_int%init (data)
        call sf_int%set_beam_index (beam_index)
        call sf_int%set_par_index &
          ([ (j, j = sf_chain%n_par + 1, sf_chain%n_par + n_par)])
        sf_chain%n_par = sf_chain%n_par + n_par
        if (.not. data%is_generator ()) then
          sf_chain%n_bound = sf_chain%n_bound + n_par
        end if
      end associate
    end subroutine sf_chain_set_strfun

```

Return the number of structure-function parameters.

```

  <SF base: sf chain: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_n_par => sf_chain_get_n_par
    procedure :: get_n_bound => sf_chain_get_n_bound

```

```

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_chain_get_n_par (sf_chain) result (n)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(in) :: sf_chain
  integer :: n
  n = sf_chain%n_par
end function sf_chain_get_n_par

function sf_chain_get_n_bound (sf_chain) result (n)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(in) :: sf_chain
  integer :: n
  n = sf_chain%n_bound
end function sf_chain_get_n_bound

```

Return a pointer to the beam interaction.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+=
procedure :: get_beam_int_ptr => sf_chain_get_beam_int_ptr

<SF base: procedures>+=
function sf_chain_get_beam_int_ptr (sf_chain) result (int)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
  int => beam_get_int_ptr (sf_chain%beam_t)
end function sf_chain_get_beam_int_ptr

```

Enable the trace feature: record structure function data (input parameters,  $x$  values, evaluation result) to an external file.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+=
procedure :: setup_tracing => sf_chain_setup_tracing
procedure :: final_tracing => sf_chain_final_tracing

<SF base: procedures>+=
subroutine sf_chain_setup_tracing (sf_chain, file)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout) :: sf_chain
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
  if (sf_chain%n_strfun > 0) then
    sf_chain%trace_enable = .true.
    sf_chain%trace_unit = free_unit ()
    open (sf_chain%trace_unit, file = char (file), action = "write", &
      status = "replace")
    call sf_chain%write_trace_header ()
  else
    call msg_error ("Beam structure: no structure functions, tracing &
      &disabled")
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_setup_tracing

subroutine sf_chain_final_tracing (sf_chain)
  class(sf_chain_t), intent(inout) :: sf_chain
  if (sf_chain%trace_enable) then
    close (sf_chain%trace_unit)
    sf_chain%trace_enable = .false.
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_final_tracing

```

Write the header for the tracing file.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_trace_header => sf_chain_write_trace_header

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_write_trace_header (sf_chain)
    class(sf_chain_t), intent(in) :: sf_chain
    integer :: u
    if (sf_chain%trace_enable) then
      u = sf_chain%trace_unit
      write (u, "('# ',A)") "WHIZARD output: &
        &structure-function sampling data"
      write (u, "('# ',A,1x,I0)") "Number of sf records:", sf_chain%n_strfun
      write (u, "('# ',A,1x,I0)") "Number of parameters:", sf_chain%n_par
      write (u, "('# ',A)") "Columns: channel, p(n_par), x(n_par), f, Jac * f"
    end if
  end subroutine sf_chain_write_trace_header

```

Write a record which collects the structure function data for the current data point. For the selected channel, we print first the input integration parameters, then the  $x$  values, then the structure-function value summed over all quantum numbers, then the structure function value times the mapping Jacobian.

```

<SF base: sf chain: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: trace => sf_chain_trace

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_trace (sf_chain, c_sel, p, x, f, sf_sum)
    class(sf_chain_t), intent(in) :: sf_chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c_sel
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: p
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: f
    real(default), intent(in) :: sf_sum
    integer :: u, i
    if (sf_chain%trace_enable) then
      u = sf_chain%trace_unit
      write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") c_sel
      write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
      do i = 1, sf_chain%n_par
        write (u, "(1x," // FMT_17 // ")", advance="no") p(i,c_sel)
      end do
      write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
      do i = 1, sf_chain%n_par
        write (u, "(1x," // FMT_17 // ")", advance="no") x(i)
      end do
      write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
      write (u, "(2(1x," // FMT_17 // "))" sf_sum, f(c_sel) * sf_sum)
    end if
  end subroutine sf_chain_trace

```

### 10.3.8 Chain instances

A structure-function chain instance contains copies of the interactions in the configuration chain, suitably linked to each other and connected by evaluators.

After initialization, `out_sf` should point, for each beam, to the last structure function that affects this beam. `out_sf_i` should indicate the index of the corresponding outgoing particle within that structure-function interaction.

Analogously, `out_eval` is the last evaluator in the structure-function chain, which contains the complete set of outgoing particles. `out_eval_i` should indicate the index of the outgoing particles, within that evaluator, which will initiate the collision.

When calculating actual kinematics, we fill the `p`, `r`, and `x` arrays and the `f` factor. The `p` array denotes the MC input parameters as they come from the random-number generator. The `r` array results from applying global mappings. The `x` array results from applying structure-function local mappings. The `x` values can be interpreted directly as momentum fractions (or angle fractions, where recoil is involved). The `f` factor is the Jacobian that results from applying all mappings.

The `mapping` entry may store a global mapping that is applied to a combination of `x` values and structure functions, as opposed to mappings that affect only a single structure function. It is applied before the latter mappings, in the transformation from the `p` array to the `r` array. For parameters affected by this mapping, we should ensure that they are not involved in a local mapping.

```

<SF base: public>+≡
    public :: sf_chain_instance_t

<SF base: types>+≡
    type, extends (beam_t) :: sf_chain_instance_t
        type(sf_chain_t), pointer :: config => null ()
        integer :: status = SF_UNDEFINED
        type(sf_instance_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: out_sf
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: out_sf_i
        integer :: out_eval = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: out_eval_i
        integer :: selected_channel = 0
        real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: p, pb
        real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: r, rb
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: bound
        real(default) :: x_free = 1
        type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
    contains
        <SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>
    end type sf_chain_instance_t

```

Finalizer.

```

<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => sf_chain_instance_final

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_chain_instance_final (object)

```



```

class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
integer :: i
if (allocated (object%sf)) then
  do i = 1, size (object%sf, 1)
    associate (sf => object%sf(i))
      if (allocated (sf%int)) then
        call evaluator_final (sf%eval)
        call sf%int%final ()
      end if
    end associate
  end do
end if
call beam_final (object%beam_t)
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_final

```

Output.

Note: nagfor 5.3.1 appears to be slightly confused with the allocation status.  
We check both for allocation and nonzero size.

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: write => sf_chain_instance_write

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sf_chain_instance_write (object, unit)
  class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i, c
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Structure-function chain instance:"
  call write_sf_status (object%status, u)
  if (allocated (object%out_sf)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "outgoing (interactions) ="
    do i = 1, size (object%out_sf)
      write (u, "(1x,I0,':',I0)", advance="no") &
        object%out_sf(i), object%out_sf_i(i)
    end do
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (object%out_eval /= 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "outgoing (evaluators) ="
    do i = 1, size (object%out_sf)
      write (u, "(1x,I0,':',I0)", advance="no") &
        object%out_eval, object%out_eval_i(i)
    end do
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (allocated (object%sf)) then
    if (size (object%sf) /= 0) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Structure-function parameters:"
      do c = 1, size (object%f)
        write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)", advance="no") "Channel #", c, ":"
        if (c == object%selected_channel) then
          write (u, "(1x,A)") "[selected]"
        else
          write (u, *)
        end if
      end do
    end if
  end if

```

```

        end if
        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "p =", object%p(:,c)
        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "r =", object%r(:,c)
        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,ES13.7))") "f =", object%f(c)
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "m ="
        call object%channel(c)%write (u)
    end do
    write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "x =", object%x
    if (.not. all (object%bound)) then
        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,L1))") "bound =", object%bound
    end if
end if
end if
call write_separator (u)
call beam_write (object%beam_t, u)
if (allocated (object%sf)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%sf)
        associate (sf => object%sf(i))
            call write_separator (u)
            if (allocated (sf%int)) then
                if (allocated (sf%r)) then
                    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Structure-function parameters:"
                    do c = 1, size (sf%f)
                        write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)", advance="no") "Channel #", c, ":"
                        if (c == object%selected_channel) then
                            write (u, "(1x,A)") "[selected]"
                        else
                            write (u, *)
                        end if
                        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "r =", sf%r(:,c)
                        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,ES13.7))") "f =", sf%f(c)
                        write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,L1,7x))") "m =", sf%m(c)
                    end do
                    write (u, "(3x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "x =", sf%x
                end if
                call sf%int%write (u)
                if (.not. evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
                    call sf%eval%write (u)
                end if
            end if
        end associate
    end do
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_write

```

Initialize. This creates a copy of the interactions in the configuration chain, assumed to be properly initialized. In the copy, we allocate the `p` etc. arrays.

The brute-force assignment of the `sf` component would be straightforward, but at least gfortran 4.6.3 would like a more fine-grained copy. In any case, the copy is deep as far as allocatables are concerned, but for the contained `interaction_t` objects the copy is shallow, as long as we do not bind defined assignment to the type. Therefore, we have to re-assign the `interaction_t` components explicitly, this time calling the proper defined assignment. Fur-

thermore, we allocate the parameter arrays for each structure function.

```

<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_chain_instance_init
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_init (chain, config, n_channel)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(out), target :: chain
    type(sf_chain_t), intent(in), target :: config
    integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
    integer :: i, j
    integer :: n_par_tot, n_par, n_strfun
    chain%config => config
    n_strfun = config%n_strfun
    chain%beam_t = config%beam_t
    allocate (chain%out_sf (config%n_in), chain%out_sf_i (config%n_in))
    allocate (chain%out_eval_i (config%n_in))
    chain%out_sf = 0
    chain%out_sf_i = [(i, i = 1, config%n_in)]
    chain%out_eval_i = chain%out_sf_i
    n_par_tot = 0
    if (n_strfun /= 0) then
      allocate (chain%sf (n_strfun))
      do i = 1, n_strfun
        associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
          allocate (sf%int, source=config%sf(i)%int)
          sf%int%interaction_t = config%sf(i)%int%interaction_t
          n_par = size (sf%int%par_index)
          allocate (sf%r (n_par, n_channel)); sf%r = 0
          allocate (sf%rb(n_par, n_channel)); sf%rb = 0
          allocate (sf%f (n_channel)); sf%f = 0
          allocate (sf%m (n_channel)); sf%m = .false.
          allocate (sf%x (n_par)); sf%x = 0
          n_par_tot = n_par_tot + n_par
        end associate
      end do
      allocate (chain%p (n_par_tot, n_channel)); chain%p = 0
      allocate (chain%pb(n_par_tot, n_channel)); chain%pb = 0
      allocate (chain%r (n_par_tot, n_channel)); chain%r = 0
      allocate (chain%rb(n_par_tot, n_channel)); chain%rb = 0
      allocate (chain%f (n_channel)); chain%f = 0
      allocate (chain%x (n_par_tot)); chain%x = 0
      call allocate_sf_channels &
        (chain%channel, n_channel=n_channel, n_strfun=n_strfun)
    end if
    allocate (chain%bound (n_par_tot), source = .true.)
    do i = 1, n_strfun
      associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
        if (sf%int%is_generator ()) then
          do j = 1, size (sf%int%par_index)
            chain%bound(sf%int%par_index(j)) = .false.
          end do
        end if
      end associate
    end do
    chain%status = SF_INITIAL
  end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_init
```

Manually select a channel.

```
<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_channel => sf_chain_instance_select_channel

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_select_channel (chain, channel)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout) :: chain
    integer, intent(in), optional :: channel
    if (present (channel)) then
      chain%selected_channel = channel
    else
      chain%selected_channel = 0
    end if
  end subroutine sf_chain_instance_select_channel
```

Copy a channel-mapping object to the structure-function chain instance. We assume that assignment is sufficient, i.e., any non-static components of the **channel** object are allocatable und thus recursively copied.

After the copy, we extract the single-entry mappings and activate them for the individual structure functions. If there is a multi-entry mapping, we obtain the corresponding MC parameter indices and set them in the copy of the channel object.

```
<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_channel => sf_chain_instance_set_channel

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_set_channel (chain, c, channel)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout) :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    type(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: channel
    integer :: i, j, k
    if (chain%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
      chain%channel(c) = channel
      j = 0
      do i = 1, chain%config%n_strfun
        associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
          sf%m(c) = channel%is_single_mapping (i)
          if (channel%is_multi_mapping (i)) then
            do k = 1, size (sf%int%beam_index)
              j = j + 1
              call chain%channel(c)%set_par_index (j, sf%int%par_index(k))
            end do
          end if
        end associate
      end do
      chain%status = SF_INITIAL
    end if
  end subroutine sf_chain_instance_set_channel
```

Link the interactions in the chain. First, link the beam instance to its template in the configuration chain, which should have the appropriate momenta fixed.

Then, we follow the chain via the arrays `out_sf` and `out_sf_i`. The arrays are (up to) two-dimensional, the entries correspond to the beam particle(s). For each beam, the entry `out_sf` points to the last interaction that affected this beam, and `out_sf_i` is the out-particle index within that interaction. For the initial beam, `out_sf` is zero by definition.

For each entry in the chain, we scan the affected beams (one or two). We look for `out_sf` and link the out-particle there to the corresponding in-particle in the current interaction. Then, we update the entry in `out_sf` and `out_sf_i` to point to the current interaction.

```

(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: link_interactions => sf_chain_instance_link_interactions

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_link_interactions (chain)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    integer :: i, j, b
    if (chain%status >= SF_INITIAL) then
      do b = 1, chain%config%n_in
        int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, b, &
          chain%config%beam_t, b)
      end do
      if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
        do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
          associate (sf_int => chain%sf(i)%int)
            do j = 1, size (sf_int%beam_index)
              b = sf_int%beam_index(j)
              call link (sf_int%interaction_t, b, sf_int%incoming(j))
              chain%out_sf(b) = i
              chain%out_sf_i(b) = sf_int%outgoing(j)
            end do
          end associate
        end do
      end if
      chain%status = SF_DONE_LINKS
    end if
  contains
    subroutine link (int, b, in_index)
      type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
      integer, intent(in) :: b, in_index
      integer :: i
      i = chain%out_sf(b)
      select case (i)
      case (0)
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, in_index, &
          chain%beam_t, chain%out_sf_i(b))
      case default
        call interaction_set_source_link (int, in_index, &
          chain%sf(i)%int%interaction_t, chain%out_sf_i(b))
      end select
    end subroutine link
end subroutine link

```

```
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_link_interactions
```

Exchange the quantum-number masks between the interactions in the chain, so we can combine redundant entries and detect any obvious mismatch.

We proceed first in the forward direction and then backwards again.

After this is finished, we finalize initialization by calling the `setup_constants` method, which prepares constant data that depend on the matrix element structure.

```
<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
```

```
procedure :: exchange_mask => sf_chain_exchange_mask
```

```
<SF base: procedures>+≡
```

```
subroutine sf_chain_exchange_mask (chain)
  class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
  integer :: i
  if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_LINKS) then
    if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
      int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
      allocate (mask (interaction_get_n_out (int)))
      mask = interaction_get_mask (int)
      if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
        do i = 1, size (chain%sf) - 1
          call interaction_exchange_mask (chain%sf(i)%int%interaction_t)
        end do
        do i = size (chain%sf), 1, -1
          call interaction_exchange_mask (chain%sf(i)%int%interaction_t)
        end do
        if (any (mask .neqv. interaction_get_mask (int))) then
          chain%status = SF_FAILED_MASK
          return
        end if
        do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
          call chain%sf(i)%int%setup_constants ()
        end do
      end if
    end if
    chain%status = SF_DONE_MASK
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_exchange_mask
```

Initialize the evaluators that connect the interactions in the chain.

```
<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
```

```
procedure :: init_evaluators => sf_chain_instance_init_evaluators
```

```
<SF base: procedures>+≡
```

```
subroutine sf_chain_instance_init_evaluators (chain)
  class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
  integer :: i
  if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_MASK) then
```

```

if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
  if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .true.)
    int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
    do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
      associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
        call evaluator_init_product (sf%eval, &
          int, sf%int%interaction_t, &
          mask)
        if (evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
          chain%status = SF_FAILED_CONNECTIONS
          return
        end if
        int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (sf%eval)
      end associate
    end do
    call find_outgoing_particles ()
  end if
end if
chain%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS
end if
contains
<SF base: init evaluators: find outgoing particles>
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_init_evaluators

```

This is an internal subroutine of the previous one: After evaluators are set, trace the outgoing particles to the last evaluator. We only need the first channel, all channels are equivalent for this purpose.

For each beam, the outgoing particle is located by `out_sf` (the structure-function object where it originates) and `out_sf_i` (the index within that object). This particle is referenced by the corresponding evaluator, which in turn is referenced by the next evaluator, until we are at the end of the chain. We can trace back references by `interaction_find_link`. Knowing that `out_eval` is the index of the last evaluator, we thus determine `out_eval_i`, the index of the outgoing particle within that evaluator.

```

<SF base: init evaluators: find outgoing particles>≡
subroutine find_outgoing_particles ()
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int, int_next
  integer :: i, j, out_sf, out_i
  chain%out_eval = size (chain%sf)
  do j = 1, size (chain%out_eval_i)
    out_sf = chain%out_sf(j)
    out_i = chain%out_sf_i(j)
    if (out_sf == 0) then
      int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
      out_sf = 1
    else
      int => chain%sf(out_sf)%int%interaction_t
    end if
  do i = out_sf, chain%out_eval
    int_next => evaluator_get_int_ptr (chain%sf(i)%eval)
    out_i = interaction_find_link (int_next, int, out_i)
    int => int_next
  end do
end subroutine

```

```

        end do
        chain%out_eval_i(j) = out_i
    end do
end subroutine find_outgoing_particles

```

Compute the kinematics in the chain instance. We can assume that the seed momenta are set in the configuration beams. Scanning the chain, we first transfer the incoming momenta. Then, we use up the MC input parameter array **p** to compute the radiated and outgoing momenta.

In the multi-channel case, **c\_sel** is the channel which we use for computing the kinematics and the **x** values. In the other channels, we invert the kinematics in order to recover the corresponding rows in the **r** array, and the Jacobian **f**.

We first apply any global mapping to transform the input **p** into the array **r**. This is then given to the structure functions which compute the final array **x** and Jacobian factors **f**, which we multiply to obtain the overall Jacobian.

*<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: compute_kinematics => sf_chain_instance_compute_kinematics

```

*<SF base: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine sf_chain_instance_compute_kinematics (chain, c_sel, p_in)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c_sel
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_in
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    real(default) :: f_mapping
    logical, dimension(size (chain%bound)) :: bound
    integer :: i, j, c
    if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS) then
        call chain%select_channel (c_sel)
        int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
        call interaction_receive_momenta (int)
        if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
            if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
                forall (i = 1:size (chain%sf)) chain%sf(i)%int%status = SF_INITIAL
                !!! Bug in nagfor 5.3.1(907), fixed in 5.3.1(982)
                ! chain%p (:,c_sel) = unpack (p_in, chain%bound, 0._default)
                !!! Workaround:
                bound = chain%bound
                chain%p (:,c_sel) = unpack (p_in, bound, 0._default)
                chain%pb(:,c_sel) = 1 - chain%p(:,c_sel)
                chain%f = 1
                chain%x_free = 1
                do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
                    associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
                        call sf%int%generate_free (sf%r(:,c_sel), sf%rb(:,c_sel), &
                            chain%x_free)
                        do j = 1, size (sf%x)
                            if (.not. chain%bound(sf%int%par_index(j))) then
                                chain%p (sf%int%par_index(j),c_sel) = sf%r (j,c_sel)
                                chain%pb(sf%int%par_index(j),c_sel) = sf%rb(j,c_sel)
                            end if
                        end do
                    end associate
                end do
            end if
        end do
    end do
end subroutine

```



```

if (allocated (chain%channel(c_sel)%multi_mapping)) then
  call chain%channel(c_sel)%multi_mapping%compute &
    (chain%r(:,c_sel), chain%rb(:,c_sel), &
     f_mapping, &
     chain%p(:,c_sel), chain%pb(:,c_sel), &
     chain%x_free)
  chain%f(c_sel) = f_mapping
else
  chain%r(:,c_sel) = chain%p(:,c_sel)
  chain%rb(:,c_sel) = chain%pb(:,c_sel)
  chain%f(c_sel) = 1
end if
do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
  associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
    call sf%int%seed_kinematics ()
    do j = 1, size (sf%x)
      sf%r(j,c_sel) = chain%r(sf%int%par_index(j),c_sel)
      sf%rb(j,c_sel) = chain%rb(sf%int%par_index(j),c_sel)
    end do
    call sf%int%complete_kinematics &
      (sf%x, sf%f(c_sel), sf%r(:,c_sel), sf%rb(:,c_sel), &
       sf%m(c_sel))
    do j = 1, size (sf%x)
      chain%x(sf%int%par_index(j)) = sf%x(j)
    end do
    if (sf%int%status <= SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS) then
      chain%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
      return
    end if
    do c = 1, size (sf%f)
      if (c /= c_sel) then
        call sf%int%inverse_kinematics &
          (sf%x, sf%f(c), sf%r(:,c), sf%rb(:,c), sf%m(c))
        do j = 1, size (sf%x)
          chain%r(sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%r(j,c)
          chain%rb(sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%rb(j,c)
        end do
      end if
      chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * sf%f(c)
    end do
    if (.not. evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
      call evaluator_receive_momenta (sf%eval)
    end if
  end associate
end do
do c = 1, size (chain%f)
  if (c /= c_sel) then
    if (allocated (chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping)) then
      call chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping%inverse &
        (chain%r(:,c), chain%rb(:,c), &
         f_mapping, &
         chain%p(:,c), chain%pb(:,c), &
         chain%x_free)
      chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * f_mapping
    end if
  end if
end do

```

```

        else
            chain%p(:,c) = chain%r(:,c)
            chain%pb(:,c) = chain%rb(:,c)
        end if
    end if
end do
end if
end if
chain%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_compute_kinematics

```

This is a variant of the previous procedure. We know the  $x$  parameters and reconstruct the momenta and the MC input parameters  $p$ . We do not need to select a channel.

Note: this is probably redundant, since the method we actually want starts from the momenta, recovers all  $x$  parameters, and then inverts mappings. See below `recover_kinematics`.

```

(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => sf_chain_instance_inverse_kinematics

(SF base: procedures)+≡
    subroutine sf_chain_instance_inverse_kinematics (chain, x)
        class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
        real(default) :: f_mapping
        integer :: i, j, c
        if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS) then
            call chain%select_channel ()
            int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
            call interaction_receive_momenta (int)
            if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
                chain%f = 1
                if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
                    forall (i = 1:size (chain%sf)) chain%sf(i)%int%status = SF_INITIAL
                    chain%x = x
                    do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
                        associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
                            call sf%int%seed_kinematics ()
                            do j = 1, size (sf%x)
                                sf%x(j) = chain%x(sf%int%par_index(j))
                            end do
                            do c = 1, size (sf%f)
                                call sf%int%inverse_kinematics &
                                    (sf%x, sf%f(c), sf%r(:,c), sf%rb(:,c), sf%m(c), c==1)
                                chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * sf%f(c)
                                do j = 1, size (sf%x)
                                    chain%r (sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%r (j,c)
                                    chain%rb(sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%rb(j,c)
                                end do
                            end do
                        end do
                    end do
                    if (.not. evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
                        call evaluator_receive_momenta (sf%eval)
                    end if
                end if
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

        end if
    end associate
end do
do c = 1, size (chain%f)
    if (allocated (chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping)) then
        call chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping%inverse &
            (chain%r(:,c), chain%rb(:,c), &
             f_mapping, &
             chain%p(:,c), chain%pb(:,c), &
             chain%x_free)
        chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * f_mapping
    else
        chain%p(:,c) = chain%r(:,c)
        chain%pb(:,c) = chain%rb(:,c)
    end if
end do
end if
end if
chain%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_inverse_kinematics

```

Recover the kinematics: assuming that the last evaluator has been filled with a valid set of momenta, we travel the momentum links backwards and fill the preceding evaluators and, as a side effect, interactions. We stop at the beam interaction.

After all momenta are set, apply the `inverse_kinematics` procedure above, suitably modified, to recover the  $x$  and  $p$  parameters and the Jacobian factors.

The `c_sel` (channel) argument is just used to mark a selected channel for the records, otherwise the recovery procedure is independent of this.

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: recover_kinematics => sf_chain_instance_recover_kinematics

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sf_chain_instance_recover_kinematics (chain, c_sel)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c_sel
    real(default) :: f_mapping
    integer :: i, j, c
    if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS) then
        call chain%select_channel (c_sel)
        if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
            do i = size (chain%sf), 1, -1
                associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
                    if (.not. evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
                        call evaluator_send_momenta (sf%eval)
                    end if
                end associate
            end do
            chain%f = 1
            if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
                forall (i = 1:size (chain%sf)) chain%sf(i)%int%status = SF_INITIAL
                chain%x_free = 1
            end if
        end if
    end if
end subroutine

```

```

do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
  associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
    call sf%int%seed_kinematics ()
    call sf%int%recover_x (sf%x, chain%x_free)
    do j = 1, size (sf%x)
      chain%x(sf%int%par_index(j)) = sf%x(j)
    end do
    do c = 1, size (sf%f)
      call sf%int%inverse_kinematics &
        (sf%x, sf%f(c), sf%r(:,c), sf%rb(:,c), sf%m(c), c==1)
      chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * sf%f(c)
      do j = 1, size (sf%x)
        chain%r (sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%r (j,c)
        chain%rb(sf%int%par_index(j),c) = sf%rb(j,c)
      end do
    end do
  end associate
end do
do c = 1, size (chain%f)
  if (allocated (chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping)) then
    call chain%channel(c)%multi_mapping%inverse &
      (chain%r(:,c), chain%rb(:,c), &
        f_mapping, &
        chain%p(:,c), chain%pb(:,c), &
        chain%x_free)
    chain%f(c) = chain%f(c) * f_mapping
  else
    chain%p(:,c) = chain%r(:,c)
    chain%pb(:,c) = chain%rb(:,c)
  end if
end do
end if
end if
chain%status = SF_DONE_KINEMATICS
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_recover_kinematics

```

Return the initial beam momenta to their source, thus completing kinematics recovery. Obviously, this works as a side effect.

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: return_beam_momenta => sf_chain_instance_return_beam_momenta

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sf_chain_instance_return_beam_momenta (chain)
  class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: chain
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
  if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
    int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
    call interaction_send_momenta (int)
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_return_beam_momenta

```

Evaluate all interactions in the chain and the product evaluators. We provide

a *scale* argument that is given to all structure functions in the chain.

```

(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => sf_chain_instance_evaluate

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_evaluate (chain, scale)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: out_int
    real(default) :: sf_sum
    integer :: i
    if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
      if (allocated (chain%sf)) then
        if (size (chain%sf) /= 0) then
          do i = 1, size (chain%sf)
            associate (sf => chain%sf(i))
              call sf%int%apply (scale)
              if (sf%int%status <= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
                chain%status = SF_FAILED_EVALUATION
              return
            end if
            if (.not. evaluator_is_empty (sf%eval)) then
              call sf%eval%evaluate ()
            end if
          end associate
        end do
        out_int => chain%get_out_int_ptr ()
        sf_sum = interaction_sum (out_int)
        call chain%config%trace &
          (chain%selected_channel, chain%p, chain%x, chain%f, sf_sum)
      end if
    end if
    chain%status = SF_EVALUATED
  end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_evaluate

```

### 10.3.9 Access to the chain instance

Transfer the outgoing momenta to the array *p*. We assume that array sizes match.

```

(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_out_momenta => sf_chain_instance_get_out_momenta

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_get_out_momenta (chain, p)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: chain
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    integer :: i, j
    if (chain%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
      do j = 1, size (chain%out_sf)
        i = chain%out_sf(j)
        select case (i)

```

```

        case (0)
            int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
        case default
            int => chain%sf(i)%int%interaction_t
        end select
        p(j) = interaction_get_momentum (int, chain%out_sf_i(j))
    end do
end if
end subroutine sf_chain_instance_get_out_momenta

```

Return a pointer to the last evaluator in the chain (to the interaction).

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_out_int_ptr => sf_chain_instance_get_out_int_ptr

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

function sf_chain_instance_get_out_int_ptr (chain) result (int)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: chain
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    if (chain%out_eval == 0) then
        int => beam_get_int_ptr (chain%beam_t)
    else
        int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (chain%sf(chain%out_eval)%eval)
    end if
end function sf_chain_instance_get_out_int_ptr

```

Return the index of the j-th outgoing particle, within the last evaluator.

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_out_i => sf_chain_instance_get_out_i

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

function sf_chain_instance_get_out_i (chain, j) result (i)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in) :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: j
    integer :: i
    i = chain%out_eval_i(j)
end function sf_chain_instance_get_out_i

```

Return the mask for the outgoing particle(s), within the last evaluator.

*(SF base: sf chain instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_out_mask => sf_chain_instance_get_out_mask

```

*(SF base: procedures)+≡*

```

function sf_chain_instance_get_out_mask (chain) result (mask)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: chain
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    allocate (mask (chain%config%n_in))
    int => chain%get_out_int_ptr ()
    mask = interaction_get_mask (int, chain%out_eval_i)
end function sf_chain_instance_get_out_mask

```

Return the array of MC input parameters that corresponds to channel *c*. This is the *p* array, the parameters before all mappings.

The *p* array may be deallocated. This should correspond to a zero-size *r* argument, so nothing to do then.

```

<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_mcpair => sf_chain_instance_get_mcpair
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_chain_instance_get_mcpair (chain, c, r)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in) :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    if (allocated (chain%p)) r = pack (chain%p(:,c), chain%bound)
  end subroutine sf_chain_instance_get_mcpair

```

Return the Jacobian factor that corresponds to channel *c*.

```

<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_f => sf_chain_instance_get_f
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  function sf_chain_instance_get_f (chain, c) result (f)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in) :: chain
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default) :: f
    if (allocated (chain%f)) then
      f = chain%f(c)
    else
      f = 1
    end if
  end function sf_chain_instance_get_f

```

Return the evaluation status.

```

<SF base: sf chain instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_status => sf_chain_instance_get_status
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  function sf_chain_instance_get_status (chain) result (status)
    class(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in) :: chain
    integer :: status
    status = chain%status
  end function sf_chain_instance_get_status

```

### 10.3.10 Unit tests

```

<SF base: public>+≡
  public :: sf_base_test
<SF base: tests>≡
  subroutine sf_base_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF base: execute tests>
  end subroutine sf_base_test

```

### 10.3.11 Test implementation: structure function

This is a template for the actual structure-function implementation which will be defined in separate modules.

#### Configuration data

The test structure function uses the `Test` model. It describes a scalar within an arbitrary initial particle, which is given in the initialization. The radiated particle is also a scalar, the same one, but we set its mass artificially to zero.

```
<SF base: public>+=  
  public :: sf_test_data_t  
  
<SF base: test types>=  
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: sf_test_data_t  
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()  
    integer :: mode = 0  
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_in  
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_out  
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_rad  
    real(default) :: m = 0  
    logical :: collinear = .true.  
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: qbounds  
  contains  
    <SF base: sf test data: TBP>  
  end type sf_test_data_t
```

Output.

```
<SF base: sf test data: TBP>=  
  procedure :: write => sf_test_data_write  
  
<SF base: procedures>+=  
  subroutine sf_test_data_write (data, unit, verbose)  
    class(sf_test_data_t), intent(in) :: data  
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit  
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose  
    integer :: u  
    u = output_unit (unit)  
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test data:"  
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "model      = ", char (data%model%get_name ())  
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "incoming  = "  
    call flavor_write (data%flv_in, u); write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "outgoing  = "  
    call flavor_write (data%flv_out, u); write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "radiated  = "  
    call flavor_write (data%flv_rad, u); write (u, *)  
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "mass      = ", data%m  
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "collinear = ", data%collinear  
    if (.not. data%collinear .and. allocated (data%qbounds)) then  
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "qmin      = ", data%qbounds(1)  
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "qmax      = ", data%qbounds(2)  
    end if  
  end subroutine sf_test_data_write
```



Initialization.

```

<SF base: sf test data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => sf_test_data_init

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_data_init (data, model, pdg_in, collinear, qbounds, mode)
    class(sf_test_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    logical, intent(in), optional :: collinear
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in), optional :: qbounds
    integer, intent(in), optional :: mode
    data%model => model
    if (present (mode)) data%mode = mode
    if (pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1) /= 25) then
      call msg_fatal ("Test spectrum function: input flavor must be 's'")
    end if
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in, 25, model)
    data%m = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in)
    if (present (collinear)) data%collinear = collinear
    call flavor_init (data%flv_out, 25, model)
    call flavor_init (data%flv_rad, 25, model)
    if (present (qbounds)) then
      allocate (data%qbounds (2))
      data%qbounds = qbounds
    end if
  end subroutine sf_test_data_init

```

Return the number of parameters: 1 if only consider collinear splitting, 3 otherwise.

```

<SF base: sf test data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_n_par => sf_test_data_get_n_par

<SF base: procedures>+=
  function sf_test_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(sf_test_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    if (data%collinear) then
      n = 1
    else
      n = 3
    end if
  end function sf_test_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG code: 25

```

<SF base: sf test data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => sf_test_data_get_pdg_out

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(sf_test_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    pdg_out(1) = 25
  end subroutine sf_test_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the matching interaction.

```

<SF base: sf test data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => sf_test_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(sf_test_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (sf_test_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine sf_test_data_allocate_sf_int

```

## Interaction

```

<SF base: test types>+=
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: sf_test_t
    type(sf_test_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default) :: x = 0
  contains
    <SF base: sf test int: TBP>
  end type sf_test_t

```

Type string: constant

```

<SF base: sf test int: TBP>=
  procedure :: type_string => sf_test_type_string

<SF base: procedures>+=
  function sf_test_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "Test"
  end function sf_test_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF base: sf test int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write => sf_test_write

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine sf_test_write

```

Initialize. We know that `data` will be of concrete type `sf_test_data_t`, but we have to cast this explicitly.

For this implementation, we set the incoming and outgoing masses equal to the physical particle mass, but keep the radiated mass zero.

Optionally, we can provide minimum and maximum values for the momentum transfer.

```

<SF base: sf test int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => sf_test_init

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_init (sf_int, data)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
    type(helicity_t) :: hel0
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .false.)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
      if (allocated (data%qbounds)) then
        call sf_int%base_init (mask, &
          [data%m**2], [0._default], [data%m**2], &
          [data%qbounds(1)], [data%qbounds(2)])
      else
        call sf_int%base_init (mask, &
          [data%m**2], [0._default], [data%m**2])
      end if
      sf_int%data => data
      call helicity_init (hel0, 0)
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in, hel0)
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), data%flv_rad, hel0)
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), data%flv_out, hel0)
      call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
      call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
      call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
      call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
      call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
    end select
    sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
  end subroutine sf_test_init

```

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  and consequently  $f(r) = 2r$ .

```

<SF base: sf test int: TBP>+=
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => sf_test_complete_kinematics

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
real(default) :: xb1
if (map) then
    x(1) = r(1)**2
    f = 2 * r(1)
else
    x(1) = r(1)
    f = 1
end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
if (size (x) == 3) x(2:3) = r(2:3)
call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
sf_int%x = x(1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
end select
end subroutine sf_test_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

(SF base: sf test int: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => sf_test_inverse_kinematics

(SF base: procedures)+≡
subroutine sf_test_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default) :: xb1
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    if (map) then
        r(1) = sqrt (x(1))
        f = 2 * r(1)
    else
        r(1) = x(1)
        f = 1
    end if
    xb1 = 1 - x(1)
    if (size (x) == 3) r(2:3) = x(2:3)
    rb = 1 - r
    sf_int%x = x(1)
    if (set_mom) then
        call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
        select case (sf_int%status)
        case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
        end select
    end if
end if

```

```
end subroutine sf_test_inverse_kinematics
```

Apply the structure function. The matrix element becomes unity and the application always succeeds.

If the `mode` indicator is one, the matrix element is equal to the parameter  $x$ .

```
<SF base: sf test int: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => sf_test_apply
<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_apply (sf_int, scale)
    class(sf_test_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    select case (sf_int%data%mode)
    case (0)
      call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
        cmplx (1._default, kind=default))
    case (1)
      call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
        cmplx (sf_int%x, kind=default))
    end select
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
  end subroutine sf_test_apply
```

### 10.3.12 Test implementation: pair spectrum

Another template, this time for a incoming particle pair, splitting into two radiated and two outgoing particles.

#### Configuration data

For simplicity, the spectrum contains two mirror images of the previous structure-function configuration: the incoming and all outgoing particles are test scalars.

We have two versions, one with radiated particles, one without.

```
<SF base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: sf_test_spectrum_data_t
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_in
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_out
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_rad
    logical :: with_radiation = .true.
    real(default) :: m = 0
  contains
    <SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>
  end type sf_test_spectrum_data_t
```

Output.

```
<SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_test_spectrum_data_write
```

*<SF base: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
  class(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test spectrum data:"
  write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "model      = ", char (data%model%get_name ())
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "incoming = "
  call flavor_write (data%flv_in, u); write (u, *)
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "outgoing = "
  call flavor_write (data%flv_out, u); write (u, *)
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "radiated = "
  call flavor_write (data%flv_rad, u); write (u, *)
  write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "mass      = ", data%m
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_write

```

Initialization.

*<SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => sf_test_spectrum_data_init

```

*<SF base: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_init (data, model, pdg_in, with_radiation)
  class(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), intent(out) :: data
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
  logical, intent(in) :: with_radiation
  data%model => model
  data%with_radiation = with_radiation
  if (pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1) /= 25) then
    call msg_fatal ("Test structure function: input flavor must be 's'")
  end if
  call flavor_init (data%flv_in, 25, model)
  data%m = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in)
  call flavor_init (data%flv_out, 25, model)
  if (with_radiation) then
    call flavor_init (data%flv_rad, 25, model)
  end if
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_init

```

Return the number of parameters: 2, since we have only collinear splitting here.

*<SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: get_n_par => sf_test_spectrum_data_get_n_par

```

*<SF base: procedures>+≡*

```

function sf_test_spectrum_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
  class(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer :: n
  n = 2
end function sf_test_spectrum_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG codes: 25

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => sf_test_spectrum_data_get_pdg_out

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    pdg_out(1) = 25
    pdg_out(2) = 25
  end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the matching interaction.

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => &
    sf_test_spectrum_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (sf_test_spectrum_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_data_allocate_sf_int

```

## Interaction

```

<SF base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: sf_test_spectrum_t
    type(sf_test_spectrum_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
  contains
    <SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>
  end type sf_test_spectrum_t

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => sf_test_spectrum_type_string

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  function sf_test_spectrum_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "Test Spectrum"
  end function sf_test_spectrum_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => sf_test_spectrum_write

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_spectrum_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u

```

```

u = output_unit (unit)
if (associated (object%data)) then
  call object%data%write (u)
  call object%base_write (u, testflag)
else
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test spectrum data: [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_write

```

Initialize. We know that `data` will be of concrete type `sf_test_spectrum_data_t`, but we have to cast this explicitly.

For this implementation, we set the incoming and outgoing masses equal to the physical particle mass, but keep the radiated mass zero.

Optionally, we can provide minimum and maximum values for the momentum transfer.

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => sf_test_spectrum_init

<SF base: procedures>+=
  subroutine sf_test_spectrum_init (sf_int, data)
    class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(6) :: mask
    type(helicity_t) :: hel0
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(6) :: qn
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .false.)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
      if (data%with_radiation) then
        call sf_int%base_init (mask(1:6), &
          [data%m**2, data%m**2], &
          [0._default, 0._default], &
          [data%m**2, data%m**2])
        sf_int%data => data
        call helicity_init (hel0, 0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), data%flv_in, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), data%flv_rad, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(4), data%flv_rad, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(5), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(6), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn(1:6))
        call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
        call sf_int%set_radiated ([3,4])
        call sf_int%set_outgoing ([5,6])
      else
        call sf_int%base_init (mask(1:4), &
          [data%m**2, data%m**2], &
          [real(default) :: ], &
          [data%m**2, data%m**2])
        sf_int%data => data
        call helicity_init (hel0, 0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), data%flv_in, hel0)

```



```

        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(4), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn(1:4))
        call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
        call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3,4])
    end if
    call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
end select
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_init

```

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  (as above) for both  $x$  parameters and consequently  $f(r) = 4r_1r_2$ .

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>+=
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => sf_test_spectrum_complete_kinematics

<SF base: procedures>+=
    subroutine sf_test_spectrum_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        real(default), dimension(2) :: xb1
        if (map) then
            x = r**2
            f = 4 * r(1) * r(2)
        else
            x = r
            f = 1
        end if
        if (sf_int%data%with_radiation) then
            xb1 = 1 - x
            call sf_int%split_momenta (x, xb1)
        else
            call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
        end if
        select case (sf_int%status)
        case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
        end select
    end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>+=
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => sf_test_spectrum_inverse_kinematics

<SF base: procedures>+=
    subroutine sf_test_spectrum_inverse_kinematics &

```

```

      (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
real(default), intent(out) :: f
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
real(default), dimension(2) :: xb1
logical :: set_mom
set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
if (map) then
  r = sqrt (x)
  f = 4 * r(1) * r(2)
else
  r = x
  f = 1
end if
rb = 1 - r
if (set_mom) then
  if (sf_int%data%with_radiation) then
    xb1 = 1 - x
    call sf_int%split_momenta (x, xb1)
  else
    call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
  end if
  select case (sf_int%status)
  case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
  end select
end if
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_inverse_kinematics

```

Apply the structure function. The matrix element becomes unity and the application always succeeds.

```

<SF base: sf test spectrum: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => sf_test_spectrum_apply

<SF base: procedures>+≡
subroutine sf_test_spectrum_apply (sf_int, scale)
  class(sf_test_spectrum_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
    cmplx (1._default, kind=default))
  sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine sf_test_spectrum_apply

```

### 10.3.13 Test implementation: generator spectrum

A generator for two beams, no radiation (for simplicity).

## Configuration data

For simplicity, the spectrum contains two mirror images of the previous structure-function configuration: the incoming and all outgoing particles are test scalars.

We have two versions, one with radiated particles, one without.

```
<SF base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: sf_test_generator_data_t
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_in
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_out
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_rad
    real(default) :: m = 0
  contains
    <SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>
  end type sf_test_generator_data_t
```

Output.

```
<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => sf_test_generator_data_write

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_generator_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test generator data:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "model      = ", char (data%model%get_name ())
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "incoming  = "
    call flavor_write (data%flv_in, u); write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "outgoing  = "
    call flavor_write (data%flv_out, u); write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "mass      = ", data%m
  end subroutine sf_test_generator_data_write
```

Initialization.

```
<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => sf_test_generator_data_init

<SF base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_test_generator_data_init (data, model, pdg_in)
    class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    data%model => model
    if (pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1) /= 25) then
      call msg_fatal ("Test generator: input flavor must be 's'")
    end if
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in, 25, model)
    data%m = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in)
    call flavor_init (data%flv_out, 25, model)
  end subroutine sf_test_generator_data_init
```

This structure function is a generator.

```

<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_generator => sf_test_generator_data_is_generator

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    function sf_test_generator_data_is_generator (data) result (flag)
        class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        logical :: flag
        flag = .true.
    end function sf_test_generator_data_is_generator

```

Return the number of parameters: 2, since we have only collinear splitting here.

```

<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_par => sf_test_generator_data_get_n_par

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    function sf_test_generator_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
        class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        integer :: n
        n = 2
    end function sf_test_generator_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG codes: 25

```

<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_pdg_out => sf_test_generator_data_get_pdg_out

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
        class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
        pdg_out(1) = 25
        pdg_out(2) = 25
    end subroutine sf_test_generator_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the matching interaction.

```

<SF base: sf test generator data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_sf_int => &
        sf_test_generator_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
        class(sf_test_generator_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
        allocate (sf_test_generator_t :: sf_int)
    end subroutine sf_test_generator_data_allocate_sf_int

```

## Interaction

```

<SF base: test types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_int_t) :: sf_test_generator_t
        type(sf_test_generator_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    contains

```

```

    <SF base: sf test generator: TBP>
end type sf_test_generator_t

```

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>≡
    procedure :: type_string => sf_test_generator_type_string

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    function sf_test_generator_type_string (object) result (string)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(in) :: object
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "Test Generator"
    end function sf_test_generator_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => sf_test_generator_write

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_write (object, unit, testflag)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (associated (object%data)) then
            call object%data%write (u)
            call object%base_write (u, testflag)
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF test generator data: [undefined]"
        end if
    end subroutine sf_test_generator_write

```

Initialize. We know that data will be of concrete type `sf_test_generator_data_t`, but we have to cast this explicitly.

For this implementation, we set the incoming and outgoing masses equal to the physical particle mass. No radiation.

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => sf_test_generator_init

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_init (sf_int, data)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(4) :: mask
        type(helicity_t) :: hel0
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn
        mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .false.)
        select type (data)
        type is (sf_test_generator_data_t)
            call sf_int%base_init (mask(1:4), &
                [data%m**2, data%m**2], &
                [real(default) :: ], &
                [data%m**2, data%m**2])
            sf_int%data => data

```

```

        call helicity_init (hel0, 0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), data%flv_in, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn(4), data%flv_out, hel0)
        call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn(1:4))
        call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
        call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3,4])
        call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
    end select
    sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end subroutine sf_test_generator_init

```

This structure function is a generator.

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_generator => sf_test_generator_is_generator

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    function sf_test_generator_is_generator (sf_int) result (flag)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
        logical :: flag
        flag = sf_int%data%is_generator ()
    end function sf_test_generator_is_generator

```

Generate free parameters. This mock generator always produces the nubmers 0.8 and 0.5.

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_free => sf_test_generator_generate_free

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_generate_free (sf_int, r, rb, x_free)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(inout) :: x_free
        r = [0.8, 0.5]
        rb= 1 - r
        x_free = x_free * product (r)
    end subroutine sf_test_generator_generate_free

```

Recover momentum fractions. Since the x values are free, we also set the x\_free parameter.

```

<SF base: sf test generator: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: recover_x => sf_test_generator_recover_x

<SF base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_test_generator_recover_x (sf_int, x, x_free)
        class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
        call sf_int%base_recover_x (x)
        if (present (x_free)) x_free = x_free * product (x)
    end subroutine sf_test_generator_recover_x

```

Set kinematics. Since this is a generator, just transfer input to output.

```

(SF base: sf test generator: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => sf_test_generator_complete_kinematics

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_test_generator_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
    class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    x = r
    f = 1
    call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
  end subroutine sf_test_generator_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

(SF base: sf test generator: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => sf_test_generator_inverse_kinematics

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_test_generator_inverse_kinematics &
    (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    r = x
    rb = 1 - x
    f = 1
    if (set_mom) call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
  end subroutine sf_test_generator_inverse_kinematics

```

Apply the structure function. The matrix element becomes unity and the application always succeeds.

```

(SF base: sf test generator: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: apply => sf_test_generator_apply

(SF base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine sf_test_generator_apply (sf_int, scale)
    class(sf_test_generator_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
      cmplx (1._default, kind=default))
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
  end subroutine sf_test_generator_apply

```

## Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```
<SF base: execute tests>≡
  call test (sf_base_1, "sf_base_1", &
    "structure function configuration", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize and display &
      &test structure function data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in)
    end select

    call data%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle code:"
    call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
    pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
    write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))")  pdg1

    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_1"

  end subroutine sf_base_1
```



## Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the test structure function.

```
(SF base: execute tests)+≡
  call test (sf_base_2, "sf_base_2", &
    "structure function instance", &
    u, results)

(SF base: tests)+≡
  subroutine sf_base_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)
    call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
```

```

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=1"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 1
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics with mapping for r=0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.8_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute inverse kinematics for x=0.64 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

x = 0.64_default
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call sf_int%apply (scale=0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_2"

end subroutine sf_base_2

```

## Collinear kinematics

Scan over the possibilities for mass assignment and on-shell projections, collinear case.

```
<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_3, "sf_base_3", &
    "alternatives for collinear kinematics", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: check various kinematical setups"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*                   for collinear structure-function splitting."
    write (u, "(A)")  "                   (two masses equal, one zero)"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    pdg_in = 25
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
```

```

call sf_int%init (data)

call sf_int%write (u)

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"

E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set radiated mass to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = 0
sf_int%mo2 = sf_int%mi2

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set outgoing mass to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = sf_int%mi2
sf_int%mo2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming mass to zero"

k = vector4_moving (E, E, 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

```

```

sf_int%mr2 = sf_int%mi2
sf_int%mo2 = sf_int%mi2
sf_int%mi2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set all masses to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = 0
sf_int%mo2 = 0
sf_int%mi2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_3"

end subroutine sf_base_3

```

## Non-collinear kinematics

Scan over the possibilities for mass assignment and on-shell projections, non-collinear case.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_base_4, "sf_base_4", &

```



```

        "alternatives for non-collinear kinematics", &
        u, results)
<SF base: tests>+=
subroutine sf_base_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: check various kinematical setups"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*                   for free structure-function splitting."
    write (u, "(A)")  "                   (two masses equal, one zero)"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
        var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
        call data%init (model, pdg_in, collinear=.false.)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)

    call sf_int%write (u)

    allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
    allocate (rb(size (r)))
    allocate (x (size (r)))

    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"

E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set radiated mass to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = 0
sf_int%mo2 = sf_int%mi2

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set outgoing mass to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = sf_int%mi2

```

```

sf_int%mo2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming mass to zero"

k = vector4_moving (E, E, 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

sf_int%mr2 = sf_int%mi2
sf_int%mo2 = sf_int%mi2
sf_int%mi2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set all masses to zero"

sf_int%mr2 = 0
sf_int%mo2 = 0
sf_int%mi2 = 0

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-Initialize structure-function object with Q bounds"

call reset_interaction_counter ()

select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, collinear=.false., &
        qbounds = [1._default, 100._default])
end select

call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.125, keeping momentum"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.125_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_4"

end subroutine sf_base_4

```

## Pair spectrum

Construct and display a structure function object for a pair spectrum (a structure function involving two particles simultaneously).

```
<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_5, "sf_base_5", &
    "pair spectrum with radiation", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1, pdg2
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &a pair spectrum object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.true.)
    end select

    write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Outgoing particle codes:"
    call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
    pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
    pdg2 = pdg_out(2)
    write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))")  pdg1, pdg2
```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize spectrum object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momenta with sqrts=1000"

E = 500
k(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
k(2) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.4,0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.4_default, 0.8_default]
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics with mapping for r=0.6,0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

r = [0.6_default, 0.8_default]
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()

```

```

deallocate (sf_int)

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute inverse kinematics for x=0.36,0.64 &
&and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

x = [0.36_default, 0.64_default]
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call sf_int%apply (scale=0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_5"

end subroutine sf_base_5

```

## Pair spectrum without radiation

Construct and display a structure function object for a pair spectrum (a structure function involving two particles simultaneously).

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_6, "sf_base_6", &
    "pair spectrum without radiation", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in

```



```

type(flavor_t) :: flv
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
real(default) :: E
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
real(default) :: f

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_6"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &a pair spectrum object"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.false.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize spectrum object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momenta with sqrts=1000"

E = 500
k(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
k(2) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.4,0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.4_default, 0.8_default]

```

```

rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute inverse kinematics for x=0.4,0.8 &
    &and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

x = [0.4_default, 0.8_default]
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%apply (scale=0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_6"

end subroutine sf_base_6

```

## Direct access to structure function

Probe a structure function directly.

```
<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_7, "sf_base_7", &
    "direct access", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_7 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: value

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_7"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: check direct access method"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in)
    end select

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe structure function: states"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A,IO)")  "n_states = ", sf_int%get_n_states ()
    write (u, "(A,IO)")  "n_in      = ", sf_int%get_n_in ()
    write (u, "(A,IO)")  "n_rad     = ", sf_int%get_n_rad ()
    write (u, "(A,IO)")  "n_out     = ", sf_int%get_n_out ()
```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "state(1) = "
call quantum_numbers_write (sf_int%get_state (1), u)
write (u, *)

allocate (value (sf_int%get_n_states ()))
call sf_int%compute_values (value, &
    E=[500._default], x=[0.5_default], xb=[0.5_default], scale=0._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "value (E=500, x=0.5) ="
write (u, "(9(1x," // FMT_19 // "))" value

call sf_int%compute_values (value, &
    x=[0.1_default], xb=[0.9_default], scale=0._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "value (E=500, x=0.1) ="
write (u, "(9(1x," // FMT_19 // "))" value

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Initialize spectrum object"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (value)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)
deallocate (data)

allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.false.)
end select

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

write (u, "(A)") "* Probe spectrum: states"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A,IO)") "n_states = ", sf_int%get_n_states ()
write (u, "(A,IO)") "n_in      = ", sf_int%get_n_in ()
write (u, "(A,IO)") "n_rad     = ", sf_int%get_n_rad ()
write (u, "(A,IO)") "n_out     = ", sf_int%get_n_out ()
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "state(1) = "
call quantum_numbers_write (sf_int%get_state (1), u)
write (u, *)

allocate (value (sf_int%get_n_states ()))
call sf_int%compute_value (1, value(1), &
    E = [500._default, 500._default], &

```

```

        x = [0.5_default, 0.6_default], &
        xb= [0.5_default, 0.4_default], &
        scale = 0._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "value (E=500,500, x=0.5,0.6) ="
write (u, "(9(1x," // FMT_19 // "))" value

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_base_7"

end subroutine sf_base_7

```

## Structure function chain configuration

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_base_8, "sf_base_8", &
        "structure function chain configuration", &
        u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_base_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_strfun
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_spectrum
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
    type(sf_chain_t) :: sf_chain

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_base_8"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: set up a structure-function chain"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)") "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
        var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

```

```

pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data_strfun)
select type (data_strfun)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data_strfun%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data_spectrum)
select type (data_spectrum)
type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
    call data_spectrum%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.true.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with beams only"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain%init (beam_data)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (1))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with spectrum and structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (sf_config)
allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1,2], data_spectrum)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

```

```

call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_8"

end subroutine sf_base_8

```

### Structure function instance configuration

We create a structure-function chain instance which implements a configured structure-function chain. We link the momentum entries in the interactions and compute kinematics.

We do not actually connect the interactions and create evaluators. We skip this step and manually advance the status of the chain instead.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_base_9, "sf_base_9", &
    "structure function chain instance", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_base_9 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(flavor_t) :: flv
type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_strfun
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_spectrum
type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: sf_config
type(sf_chain_t), target :: sf_chain
type(sf_chain_instance_t), target :: sf_chain_instance
type(sf_channel_t), dimension(2) :: sf_channel
type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p
integer :: j

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_9"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up a structure-function chain &
    &and create an instance"
write (u, "(A)")  "* compute kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data_strfun)
select type (data_strfun)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data_strfun%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data_spectrum)
select type (data_spectrum)
type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
    call data_spectrum%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.true.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with beams only"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain%init (beam_data)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
sf_chain_instance%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS
call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [real(default) ::])

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call sf_chain_instance%get_out_momenta (p)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Outgoing momenta:"

do j = 1, 2
    write (u, "(A)")
    call vector4_write (p(j), u)
end do

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (1))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)

call sf_channel(1)%init (1)
call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping ([1])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(1))

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
sf_chain_instance%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS
call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [0.8_default])

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call sf_chain_instance%get_out_momenta (p)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Outgoing momenta:"

do j = 1, 2
    write (u, "(A)")
    call vector4_write (p(j), u)
end do

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with spectrum and structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (sf_config)
allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1,2], data_spectrum)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)

call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%activate_mapping ([2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(2))

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
sf_chain_instance%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS

```

```

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics &
    (1, [0.5_default, 0.6_default, 0.8_default])

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call sf_chain_instance%get_out_momenta (p)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Outgoing momenta:"

do j = 1, 2
    write (u, "(A)")
    call vector4_write (p(j), u)
end do

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_9"

end subroutine sf_base_9

```

## Structure function chain mappings

Set up a structure function chain instance with a pair of single-particle structure functions. We test different global mappings for this setup.

Again, we skip evaluators.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_base_10, "sf_base_10", &
    "structure function chain mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_base_10 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_strfun

```

```

type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: sf_config
type(sf_chain_t), target :: sf_chain
type(sf_chain_instance_t), target :: sf_chain_instance
type(sf_channel_t), dimension(2) :: sf_channel
real(default), dimension(2) :: x_saved

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_10"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up a structure-function chain"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and check mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data_strfun)
select type (data_strfun)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data_strfun%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with structure function pair &
    &and standard mapping"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data_strfun)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)

call sf_channel(1)%init (2)
call sf_channel(1)%set_s_mapping ([1,2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(1))

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
sf_chain_instance%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS
call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [0.8_default, 0.6_default])

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Invert the kinematics calculation"
write (u, "(A)")

x_saved = sf_chain_instance%x

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)

call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%set_s_mapping ([1, 2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(2))

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
sf_chain_instance%status = SF_DONE_CONNECTIONS
call sf_chain_instance%inverse_kinematics (x_saved)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_10"

end subroutine sf_base_10

```

## Structure function chain evaluation

Here, we test the complete workflow for structure-function chains. First, we create the template chain, then initialize an instance. We set up links, mask, and evaluators. Finally, we set kinematics and evaluate the matrix elements and their products.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_11, "sf_base_11", &
    "structure function chain evaluation", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_11 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model

```

```

type(flavor_t) :: flv
type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_strfun
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_spectrum
type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: sf_config
type(sf_chain_t), target :: sf_chain
type(sf_chain_instance_t), target :: sf_chain_instance
type(sf_channel_t), dimension(2) :: sf_channel
type(particle_set_t) :: pset
type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
logical :: ok

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_11"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up a structure-function chain"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           create an instance and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data_strfun)
select type (data_strfun)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data_strfun%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_test_spectrum_data_t :: data_spectrum)
select type (data_spectrum)
type is (sf_test_spectrum_data_t)
    call data_spectrum%init (model, pdg_in, with_radiation=.true.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with beams only"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain%init (beam_data)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

```

```

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [real(default) ::])
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()
call particle_set_init (pset, ok, int, int, FM_IGNORE_HELICITY, &
    [0._default, 0._default], .false., .true.)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover chain:"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()
call particle_set_fill_interaction (pset, int, 2)

call sf_chain_instance%recover_kinematics (1)
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call particle_set_final (pset)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (1))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

```

```

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_channel(1)%init (1)
call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping ([1])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(1))
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [0.8_default])
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()
call particle_set_init (pset, ok, int, int, FM_IGNORE_HELICITY, &
    [0._default, 0._default], .false., .true.)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover chain:"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_channel(1)%init (1)
call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping ([1])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(1))
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()
call particle_set_fill_interaction (pset, int, 2)

call sf_chain_instance%recover_kinematics (1)
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call particle_set_final (pset)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with spectrum and structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (sf_config)
allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1,2], data_spectrum)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%activate_mapping ([2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(2))
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics &
    (1, [0.5_default, 0.6_default, 0.8_default])
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()
call particle_set_init (pset, ok, int, int, FM_IGNORE_HELICITY, &
    [0._default, 0._default], .false., .true.)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover chain:"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%activate_mapping ([2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(2))
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

int => sf_chain_instance%get_out_int_ptr ()

```



```

call particle_set_fill_interaction (pset, int, 2)

call sf_chain_instance%recover_kinematics (1)
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

call particle_set_final (pset)
call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_11"

end subroutine sf_base_11

```

## Multichannel case

We set up a structure-function chain as before, but with three different parameterizations. The first instance is without mappings, the second one with single-particle mappings, and the third one with two-particle mappings.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_base_12, "sf_base_12", &
          "multi-channel structure function chain", &
          u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_base_12 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: sf_config
  type(sf_chain_t), target :: sf_chain
  type(sf_chain_instance_t), target :: sf_chain_instance
  real(default), dimension(2) :: x_saved
  real(default), dimension(2,3) :: p_saved
  type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_channel

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_12"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up and evaluate a multi-channel &

```

```

        &structure-function chain"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with structure function pair &
    &and three different mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 3)

call allocate_sf_channels (sf_channel, n_channel = 3, n_strfun = 2)

! channel 1: no mapping
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (1, sf_channel(1))

! channel 2: single-particle mappings
call sf_channel(2)%activate_mapping ([1,2])
! call sf_chain_instance%activate_mapping (2, [1,2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (2, sf_channel(2))

! channel 3: two-particle mapping
call sf_channel(3)%set_s_mapping ([1,2])
! call sf_chain_instance%set_s_mapping (3, [1, 2])
call sf_chain_instance%set_channel (3, sf_channel(3))

call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute kinematics in channel 1 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, [0.8_default, 0.6_default])
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Invert the kinematics calculation"
write (u, "(A)")

x_saved = sf_chain_instance%x

call sf_chain_instance%inverse_kinematics (x_saved)
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute kinematics in channel 2 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

p_saved = sf_chain_instance%p

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (2, p_saved(:,2))
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute kinematics in channel 3 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (3, p_saved(:,3))
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call write_separator_double (u)
call sf_chain_instance%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

call model_list%final ()

```

```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_12"

end subroutine sf_base_12

```

## Generated spectrum

Construct and evaluate a structure function object for a pair spectrum which is evaluated as a beam-event generator.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_base_13, "sf_base_13", &
    "pair spectrum generator", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_base_13 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f, x_free

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_13"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &a pair generator object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
    pdg_in = 25

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (sf_test_generator_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (sf_test_generator_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in)

```

```

end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize generator object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate free r values"
write (u, "(A)")

x_free = 1
call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momenta with sqrts=1000"

E = 500
k(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
k(2) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)

call sf_int%seed_kinematics (k)
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
x_free = 1
call sf_int%recover_x (x, x_free)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x

```

```

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute inverse kinematics &
    &and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%apply (scale=0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_13"

end subroutine sf_base_13

```

## Structure function chain evaluation

Here, we test the complete workflow for a structure-function chain with generator. First, we create the template chain, then initialize an instance. We set up links, mask, and evaluators. Finally, we set kinematics and evaluate the matrix elements and their products.

```

<SF base: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_base_14, "sf_base_14", &
    "structure function generator evaluation", &
    u, results)

<SF base: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_base_14 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(flavor_t) :: flv
type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
type(beam_data_t), target :: beam_data
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_strfun
class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data_generator
type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: sf_config
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_in
type(sf_chain_t), target :: sf_chain
type(sf_chain_instance_t), target :: sf_chain_instance

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_base_14"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set up a structure-function chain"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           create an instance and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)
pdg_in = 25

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_data, &
    1000._default, [flv, flv])

allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data_strfun)
select type (data_strfun)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data_strfun%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_test_generator_data_t :: data_generator)
select type (data_generator)
type is (sf_test_generator_data_t)
    call data_generator%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up chain with generator and structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1,2], data_generator)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data_strfun)
call sf_chain%init (beam_data, sf_config)

call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel = 1)
call sf_chain_instance%link_interactions ()
call sf_chain_instance%exchange_mask ()
call sf_chain_instance%init_evaluators ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Inject integration parameter"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (p_in (sf_chain%get_n_bound ()), source = 0.9_default)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "p_in =", p_in

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%compute_kinematics (1, p_in)
call sf_chain_instance%evaluate (scale=0._default)

call sf_chain_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract integration parameter"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_chain_instance%get_mcpair (1, p_in)
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "p_in =", p_in

call sf_chain_instance%final ()
call sf_chain%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_base_14"

end subroutine sf_base_14

```

## 10.4 Photon radiation: ISR

```

<sf_isr.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module sf_isr

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use constants, only: pi !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use sm_physics, only: Li2 !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use pdg_arrays
    use models
    use flavors
    use colors
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices
    use polarizations

```



```

    use interactions
    use sf_mappings
    use sf_aux
    use sf_base

    <Standard module head>

    <SF isr: public>

    <SF isr: parameters>

    <SF isr: types>

    contains

    <SF isr: procedures>

    <SF isr: tests>

    end module sf_isr

```

### 10.4.1 Physics

The ISR structure function is in the most crude approximation (LLA without  $\alpha$  corrections, i.e.  $\epsilon^0$ )

$$f_0(x) = \epsilon(1-x)^{-1+\epsilon} \quad \text{with} \quad \epsilon = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_e^2 \ln \frac{s}{m^2}, \quad (10.27)$$

where  $m$  is the mass of the incoming (and outgoing) particle, which is initially assumed on-shell.

Here, the form of  $\epsilon$  results from the kinematical bounds for the momentum squared of the outgoing particle, which in the limit  $m^2 \ll s$  are given by

$$t_0 = -2\bar{x}E(E+p) + m^2 \approx -\bar{x}s, \quad (10.28)$$

$$t_1 = -2\bar{x}E(E-p) + m^2 \approx xm^2, \quad (10.29)$$

so the integration over the propagator  $1/(t-m^2)$  yields

$$\ln \frac{t_0 - m^2}{t_1 - m^2} = \ln \frac{s}{m^2}. \quad (10.30)$$

In  $f_0(x)$ , there is an integrable singularity at  $x = 1$  which does not spoil the integration, but would lead to an unbounded  $f_{\max}$ . Therefore, we map this singularity like

$$x = 1 - (1-x')^{1/\epsilon} \quad (10.31)$$

such that

$$\int dx f_0(x) = \int dx' \quad (10.32)$$

The structure function has three parameters:  $\alpha$ ,  $m_{\text{in}}$  of the incoming particle and  $s$ , the hard scale. Internally, we store the exponent  $\epsilon$  which is the relevant parameter. (In conventional notation,  $\epsilon = \beta/2$ .) As defaults, we take the actual

values of  $\alpha$  (which is probably  $\alpha(s)$ ), the actual mass  $m_{\text{in}}$  and the squared total c.m. energy  $s$ .

Including  $\epsilon$ ,  $\epsilon^2$ , and  $\epsilon^3$  corrections, the successive approximation of the ISR structure function read

$$f_0(x) = \epsilon(1-x)^{-1+\epsilon} \quad (10.33)$$

$$f_1(x) = g_1(\epsilon) f_0(x) - \frac{\epsilon}{2}(1+x) \quad (10.34)$$

$$f_2(x) = g_2(\epsilon) f_0(x) - \frac{\epsilon}{2}(1+x) - \frac{\epsilon^2}{8} \left( \frac{1+3x^2}{1-x} \ln x + 4(1+x) \ln(1-x) + 5+x \right) \quad (10.35)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_3(x) = & g_3(\epsilon) f_0(x) - \frac{\epsilon}{2}(1+x) \\ & - \frac{\epsilon^2}{8} \left( \frac{1+3x^2}{1-x} \ln x + 4(1+x) \ln(1-x) + 5+x \right) \\ & - \frac{\epsilon^3}{48} \left( (1+x) [6 \text{Li}_2(x) + 12 \ln^2(1-x) - 3\pi^2] + 6(x+5) \ln(1-x) \right. \\ & \left. + \frac{1}{1-x} \left[ \frac{3}{2}(1+8x+3x^2) \ln x + 12(1+x^2) \ln x \ln(1-x) \right. \right. \\ & \left. \left. - \frac{1}{2}(1+7x^2) \ln^2 x + \frac{1}{4}(39-24x-15x^2) \right] \right) \end{aligned} \quad (10.36)$$

where the successive approximations to the prefactor of the leading singularity

$$g(\epsilon) = \frac{\exp(\epsilon(-\gamma_E + \frac{3}{4}))}{\Gamma(1+\epsilon)}, \quad (10.37)$$

are given by

$$g_0(\epsilon) = 1 \quad (10.38)$$

$$g_1(\epsilon) = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon \quad (10.39)$$

$$g_2(\epsilon) = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon + \frac{27-8\pi^2}{96}\epsilon^2 \quad (10.40)$$

$$g_3(\epsilon) = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon + \frac{27-8\pi^2}{96}\epsilon^2 + \frac{27-24\pi^2+128\zeta(3)}{384}\epsilon^3, \quad (10.41)$$

where, numerically

$$\zeta(3) = 1.20205690315959428539973816151 \dots \quad (10.42)$$

Although one could calculate the function  $g(\epsilon)$  exactly, truncating its Taylor expansion ensures the exact normalization of the truncated structure function at each given order:

$$\int_0^1 dx f_i(x) = 1 \quad \text{for all } i. \quad (10.43)$$

Effectively, the  $O(\epsilon)$  correction reduces the low- $x$  tail of the structure function by 50% while increasing the coefficient of the singularity by  $O(\epsilon)$ . Relative

to this, the  $O(\epsilon^2)$  correction slightly enhances  $x > \frac{1}{2}$  compared to  $x < \frac{1}{2}$ . At  $x = 0$ ,  $f_2(x)$  introduces a logarithmic singularity which should be cut off at  $x_0 = O(e^{-1/\epsilon})$ : for lower  $x$  the perturbative series breaks down. The  $f_3$  correction is slightly positive for low  $x$  values and negative near  $x = 1$ , where the  $\text{Li}_2$  piece slightly softens the singularity at  $x = 1$ .

Instead of the definition for  $\epsilon$  given above, it is customary to include a universal nonlogarithmic piece:

$$\epsilon = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_e^2 \left( \ln \frac{s}{m^2} - 1 \right) \quad (10.44)$$

### 10.4.2 Implementation

In the concrete implementation, the zeroth order mapping (10.31) is implemented, and the Jacobian is equal to  $f_i(x)/f_0(x)$ . This can be written as

$$\frac{f_0(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 \quad (10.45)$$

$$\frac{f_1(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon - \frac{1-x^2}{2(1-x')} \quad (10.46)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{f_2(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon + \frac{27-8\pi^2}{96}\epsilon^2 - \frac{1-x^2}{2(1-x')} \\ - \frac{(1+3x^2)\ln x + (1-x)(4(1+x)\ln(1-x) + 5+x)}{8(1-x')}\epsilon \end{aligned} \quad (10.47)$$

For  $x = 1$  (i.e., numerically indistinguishable from 1), this reduces to

$$\frac{f_0(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 \quad (10.48)$$

$$\frac{f_1(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon \quad (10.49)$$

$$\frac{f_2(x)}{f_0(x)} = 1 + \frac{3}{4}\epsilon + \frac{27-8\pi^2}{96}\epsilon^2 \quad (10.50)$$

The last line in (10.47) is zero for

$$x_{\min} = 0.00714053329734592839549879772019 \quad (10.51)$$

(Mathematica result), independent of  $\epsilon$ . For  $x$  values less than this we ignore this correction because of the logarithmic singularity which should in principle be resummed.

### 10.4.3 The ISR data block

```

<SF isr: public>≡
  public :: isr_data_t

<SF isr: types>≡
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: isr_data_t
  private
  type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_in

```

```

    real(default) :: alpha = 0
    real(default) :: q_max = 0
    real(default) :: real_mass = 0
    real(default) :: mass = 0
    real(default) :: eps = 0
    real(default) :: log = 0
    logical :: recoil = .false.
    integer :: order = 3
    integer :: error = NONE
contains
  <SF isr: isr data: TBP>
end type isr_data_t

```

Error codes

```

<SF isr: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter :: NONE = 0
  integer, parameter :: ZERO_MASS = 1
  integer, parameter :: Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL = 2
  integer, parameter :: EPS_TOO_LARGE = 3
  integer, parameter :: INVALID_ORDER = 4
  integer, parameter :: CHARGE_MIX = 5
  integer, parameter :: CHARGE_ZERO = 6
  integer, parameter :: MASS_MIX = 7

```

Generate flavor-dependent ISR data:

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => isr_data_init

<SF isr: procedures>≡
  subroutine isr_data_init &
    (data, model, pdg_in, alpha, q_max, mass, order, recoil)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: alpha
    real(default), intent(in) :: q_max
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: mass
    integer, intent(in), optional :: order
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recoil
    integer :: i, n_flv
    real(default) :: charge
    data%model => model
    n_flv = pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in)
    allocate (data%flv_in (n_flv))
    do i = 1, n_flv
      call flavor_init (data%flv_in(i), pdg_array_get (pdg_in, i), model)
    end do
    data%alpha = alpha
    data%q_max = q_max
    if (present (order)) then
      call data%set_order (order)
    end if
    if (present (recoil)) then
      data%recoil = recoil
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

end if
data%real_mass = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1))
if (present (mass)) then
  if (mass > 0) then
    data%mass = mass
  else
    data%mass = data%real_mass
    if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in) /= data%mass)) then
      data%error = MASS_MIX; return
    end if
  end if
else
  data%mass = data%real_mass
  if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in) /= data%mass)) then
    data%error = MASS_MIX; return
  end if
end if
if (data%mass == 0) then
  data%error = ZERO_MASS; return
else if (data%mass >= data%q_max) then
  data%error = Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL; return
end if
data%log = log (1 + (data%q_max / data%mass)**2)
charge = flavor_get_charge (data%flv_in(1))
if (any (abs (flavor_get_charge (data%flv_in)) /= abs (charge))) then
  data%error = CHARGE_MIX; return
else if (charge == 0) then
  data%error = CHARGE_ZERO; return
end if
data%eps = data%alpha / pi * charge ** 2 &
  * (2 * log (data%q_max / data%mass) - 1)
if (data%eps > 1) then
  data%error = EPS_TOO_LARGE; return
end if
end subroutine isr_data_init

```

Explicitly set ISR order

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_order => isr_data_set_order
<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine isr_data_set_order (data, order)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    integer, intent(in) :: order
    if (order < 0 .or. order > 3) then
      data%error = INVALID_ORDER
    else
      data%order = order
    end if
  end subroutine isr_data_set_order

```

Handle error conditions. Should always be done after initialization, unless we are sure everything is ok.

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡

```

```

procedure :: check => isr_data_check
<SF isr: procedures>+≡
subroutine isr_data_check (data)
  class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  select case (data%error)
  case (ZERO_MASS)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Particle mass is zero")
  case (Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Particle mass exceeds Qmax")
  case (EPS_TOO_LARGE)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Expansion parameter too large, " // &
      "perturbative expansion breaks down")
  case (INVALID_ORDER)
    call msg_error ("ISR: LLA order invalid (valid values are 0,1,2,3)")
  case (MASS_MIX)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Incoming particle masses must be uniform")
  case (CHARGE_MIX)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Incoming particle charges must be uniform")
  case (CHARGE_ZERO)
    call msg_fatal ("ISR: Incoming particle must be charged")
  end select
end subroutine isr_data_check

```

Output

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
procedure :: write => isr_data_write
<SF isr: procedures>+≡
subroutine isr_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
  class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "ISR data:"
  if (allocated (data%flv_in)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") " flavor = "
    do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(',',1x)", advance="no")
      call flavor_write (data%flv_in(i), u)
    end do
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " alpha = ", data%alpha
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " q_max = ", data%q_max
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " mass = ", data%mass
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " eps = ", data%eps
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " log = ", data%log
    write (u, "(3x,A,I2)") " order = ", data%order
    write (u, "(3x,A,L2)") " recoil = ", data%recoil
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
  end if
end subroutine isr_data_write

```

For ISR, there is the option to generate transverse momentum is generated. Hence, there can be up to three parameters,  $x$ , and two angles.

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => isr_data_get_n_par

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  function isr_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    if (data%recoil) then
      n = 3
    else
      n = 1
    end if
  end function isr_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. For ISR, these are identical to the incoming particles.

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => isr_data_get_pdg_out

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine isr_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    pdg_out(1) = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in)
  end subroutine isr_data_get_pdg_out

```

Return the `eps` value. We need it for an appropriate mapping of structure-function parameters.

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_eps => isr_data_get_eps

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  function isr_data_get_eps (data) result (eps)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    real(default) :: eps
    eps = data%eps
  end function isr_data_get_eps

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF isr: isr data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => isr_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine isr_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(isr_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (isr_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine isr_data_allocate_sf_int

```

#### 10.4.4 The ISR object

The `isr_t` data type is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  interaction, i.e., we allow for single-photon emission only (but use the multi-photon resummed radiator function). The particles are ordered as (incoming, photon, outgoing).

There is no need to handle several flavors (and data blocks) in parallel, since ISR is always applied immediately after beam collision. (ISR for partons is accounted for by the PDFs themselves.) Polarization is carried through, i.e., we retain the polarization of the incoming particle and treat the emitted photon as unpolarized. Color is trivially carried through. This implies that particles 1 and 3 should be locked together. For ISR we don't need the `q` variable.

```
<SF isr: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: isr_t
    type(isr_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default) :: x = 0
    real(default) :: xb= 0
  contains
    <SF isr: isr: TBP>
  end type isr_t
```

Type string: has to be here, but there is no string variable on which ISR depends. Hence, a dummy routine.

```
<SF isr: isr: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => isr_type_string

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  function isr_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(isr_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "ISR: e+ e- ISR spectrum"
    else
      string = "ISR: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function isr_type_string
```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```
<SF isr: isr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => isr_write

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine isr_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(isr_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "xb=", object%xb
```



```

        end if
        call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)" "ISR data: [undefined]"
    end if
end subroutine isr_write

```

### 10.4.5 Kinematics

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  were trivial. The ISR structure function allows for a straightforward mapping of the unit interval. So, to leading order, the structure function value is unity, but the  $x$  value is transformed. Higher orders affect the function value.

The structure function implementation applies the above mapping to the input (random) number  $\mathbf{r}$  to generate the momentum fraction  $\mathbf{x}$  and the function value  $\mathbf{f}$ . For numerical stability reasons, we also output  $\mathbf{xb}$ , which is  $\bar{x} = 1 - x$ .

For the ISR structure function, the mapping Jacobian cancels the structure function (to order zero). We apply the cancellation explicitly, therefore both the Jacobian  $\mathbf{f}$  and the zeroth-order value (see the `apply` method) are unity if mapping is turned on. If mapping is turned off, the Jacobian  $\mathbf{f}$  includes the value of the (zeroth-order) structure function, and strongly peaked.

```

<SF isr: isr: TBP>+=
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => isr_complete_kinematics

<SF isr: procedures>+=
    subroutine isr_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(isr_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        real(default) :: eps
        eps = sf_int%data%eps
        if (map) then
            call map_power_1 (sf_int%xb, f, rb(1), eps)
        else
            sf_int%xb = rb(1)
            if (rb(1) > 0) then
                f = 1
            else
                f = 0
            end if
        end if
        sf_int%x = 1 - sf_int%xb
        x(1) = sf_int%x
        if (size (x) == 3) x(2:3) = r(2:3)
        call sf_int%split_momentum (x, sf_int%xb)
        select case (sf_int%status)
        case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
            sf_int%x = 0
            sf_int%xb= 0

```

```

        f = 0
    end select
end subroutine isr_complete_kinematics

```

Overriding the default method: we compute the  $x$  array from the momentum configuration. In the specific case of ISR, we also set the internally stored  $x$  and  $\bar{x}$  values, so they can be used in the following routine.

Note: the extraction of  $\bar{x}$  is not numerically safe, but it can't be as long as the base `recover_x` isn't.

```

<SF isr: isr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recover_x => sf_isr_recover_x

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_isr_recover_x (sf_int, x, x_free)
    class(isr_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    call sf_int%base_recover_x (x, x_free)
    sf_int%x = x(1)
    sf_int%xb = 1 - x(1)
  end subroutine sf_isr_recover_x

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

For extracting  $x$ , we rely on the stored  $\bar{x}$  value, since the  $x$  value in the argument is likely imprecise. This means that either `complete_kinematics` or `recover_x` must be called first, for the current sampling point (but maybe another channel).

```

<SF isr: isr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => isr_inverse_kinematics

<SF isr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine isr_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(isr_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default) :: eps
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    eps = sf_int%data%eps
    if (map) then
      call map_power_inverse_1 (sf_int%xb, f, rb(1), eps)
    else
      rb(1) = sf_int%xb
      if (rb(1) > 0) then
        f = 1
      else
        f = 0
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine isr_inverse_kinematics

```

```

        end if
    end if
    r(1) = 1 - rb(1)
    if (size(r) == 3) then
        r(2:3) = x(2:3)
        rb(2:3) = 1 - r(2:3)
    end if
    if (set_mom) then
        call sf_int%split_momentum (x, sf_int%xb)
        select case (sf_int%status)
            case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
                r = 0
                rb = 0
                f = 0
            end select
        end if
    end if
end subroutine isr_inverse_kinematics

```

$\langle SF \text{ isr: } isr: TBP \rangle + \equiv$

```

procedure :: init => isr_init

```

$\langle SF \text{ isr: } procedures \rangle + \equiv$

```

subroutine isr_init (sf_int, data)
    class(isr_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
    integer, dimension(3) :: hel_lock
    type(polarization_t) :: pol
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn_fc, qn_hel
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_photon
    type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn_photon, qn
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel
    real(default) :: m2
    integer :: i
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., &
        mask_h = [.false., .true., .false.])
    hel_lock = [3, 0, 1]
    select type (data)
        type is (isr_data_t)
            m2 = data%mass**2
            call sf_int%base_init (mask, [m2], [0._default], [m2], &
                hel_lock = hel_lock)
            sf_int%data => data
            call flavor_init (flv_photon, PHOTON, data%model)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_photon, flv_photon)
            do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
                call polarization_init_generic (pol, data%flv_in(i))
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(1), &
                    flv = data%flv_in(i), &
                    col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i), 1))
            call state_iterator_init (it_hel, pol%state)
            do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel))
                qn_hel = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel)
                qn = qn_hel(1) .merge. qn_fc(1)
            end do
            end if
        end select
    end subroutine

```

```

        call interaction_add_state &
            (sf_int%interaction_t, [qn, qn_photon, qn])
        call state_iterator_advance (it_hel)
    end do
    call polarization_final (pol)
end do
call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
end subroutine isr_init

```

#### 10.4.6 ISR application

For ISR, we could in principle compute kinematics and function value in a single step. In order to be able to reweight matrix elements including structure functions we split kinematics and structure function calculation. The structure function works on a single beam, assuming that the input momentum has been set.

For the structure-function evaluation, we rely on the fact that the power mapping, which we apply in the kinematics method (if the `map` flag is set), has a Jacobian which is just the inverse lowest-order structure function. With mapping active, the two should cancel exactly.

After splitting momenta, we set the outgoing momenta on-shell. We choose to conserve momentum, so energy conservation may be violated.

```

⟨SF isr: isr: TBP⟩+=
    procedure :: apply => isr_apply

⟨SF isr: procedures⟩+=
    subroutine isr_apply (sf_int, scale)
        class(isr_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(default) :: f, finv, x, xb, eps, rb
        real(default) :: log_x, log_xb, x_2
        real(default), parameter :: &
            & xmin = 0.00714053329734592839549879772019_default
        real(default), parameter :: &
            & zeta3 = 1.20205690315959428539973816151_default
        real(default), parameter :: &
            & g1 = 3._default / 4._default, &
            & g2 = (27 - 8*pi**2) / 96._default, &
            & g3 = (27 - 24*pi**2 + 128*zeta3) / 384._default
        associate (data => sf_int%data)
            eps = sf_int%data%eps
            x = sf_int%x
            xb = sf_int%xb
            call map_power_inverse_1 (xb, finv, rb, eps)
            if (finv > 0) then
                f = 1 / finv
            else

```

```

        f = 0
    end if
    if (f > 0 .and. data%order > 0) then
        f = f * (1 + g1 * eps)
        x_2 = x*x
        if (rb>0) f = f * (1 - (1-x_2) / (2 * rb))
        if (data%order > 1) then
            f = f * (1 + g2 * eps**2)
            if (rb>0 .and. xb>0 .and. x>xmin) then
                log_x = log_prec (x, xb)
                log_xb = log_prec (xb, x)
                f = f * (1 - ((1+3*x_2)*log_x + xb * (4*(1+x)*log_xb + 5 + x)) &
                    / ( 8 * rb) * eps)
            end if
            if (data%order > 2) then
                f = f * (1 + g3 * eps**3)
                if (rb > 0 .and. xb > 0 .and. x > xmin) then
                    f = f * (1 - ((1+x) * xb &
                        * (6 * Li2(x) + 12 * log_xb**2 - 3 * pi**2) &
                        + 1.5_default * (1 + 8*x + 3*x_2) * log_x &
                        + 6 * (x+5) * xb * log_xb &
                        + 12 * (1+x_2) * log_x * log_xb &
                        - (1 + 7*x_2) * log_x**2 / 2 &
                        + (39 - 24*x - 15*x_2) / 4) &
                        / ( 48 * rb) * eps**2)
                end if
            end if
        end if
    end if
    end associate
    call interaction_set_matrix_element &
        (sf_int%interaction_t, cmplx (f, kind=default))
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine isr_apply

```

### 10.4.7 Unit tests

```

<SF isr: public>+=
    public :: sf_isr_test

<SF isr: tests>≡
    subroutine sf_isr_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF isr: execute tests>
    end subroutine sf_isr_test

```

### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF isr: execute tests>≡

```

```

call test (sf_isr_1, "sf_isr_1", &
          "structure function configuration", &
          u, results)
<SF_isr: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_isr_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_isr_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
    &test structure function data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
  pdg_in = ELECTRON

  allocate (isr_data_t :: data)
  call data%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
  write (u, "(A)")

  select type (data)
  type is (isr_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 10._default, &
      0.000511_default, order = 3, recoil = .false.)
  end select

  call data%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
  call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
  pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
  write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1

  call model_list%final ()
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_isr_1"

    end subroutine sf_isr_1

```

### Structure function without mapping

Direct ISR evaluation. This is the use case for a double-beam structure function.  
The parameter pair is mapped in the calling program.

```

<SF isr: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_isr_2, "sf_isr_2", &
        "no ISR mapping", &
        u, results)

<SF isr: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_isr_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
        class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
        type(vector4_t) :: k
        real(default) :: E
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
        real(default) :: f, f_isr

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_isr_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
            &test structure function object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
            var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
        pdg_in = ELECTRON
        call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)

        call reset_interaction_counter ()

        allocate (isr_data_t :: data)
        select type (data)
        type is (isr_data_t)
            call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 500._default, &
                0.000511_default, order = 3, recoil = .false.)
        end select

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.9, no ISR mapping, &
    &collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.9_default
rb = 1 - r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "rb=", rb

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Invert kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate ISR structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure-function value, default order"
write (u, "(A)")

```



```

f_isr = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", f_isr
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", f_isr * f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-evaluate structure function, leading order"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (sf_int)
type is (isr_t)
    sf_int%data%order = 0
end select
call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
f_isr = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", f_isr
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", f_isr * f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_isr_2"

end subroutine sf_isr_2

```

## Structure function with mapping

Apply the optimal ISR mapping. This is the use case for a single-beam structure function.

```

<SF_isr: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_isr_3, "sf_isr_3", &
        "ISR mapping", &
        u, results)

<SF_isr: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_isr_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x

```

```

real(default) :: f, f_isr

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_isr_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
                  &test structure function object"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
pdg_in = ELECTRON

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (isr_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (isr_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 500._default, &
        0.000511_default, order = 3, recoil = .false.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.7, with ISR mapping, &
                  &collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.7_default
rb = 1 - r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // ")))" "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // ")))" "rb=", rb

```

```

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Invert kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate ISR structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure-function value, default order"
write (u, "(A)")

f_isr = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", f_isr
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", f_isr * f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-evaluate structure function, leading order"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (sf_int)
type is (isr_t)
  sf_int%data%order = 0
end select
call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
f_isr = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", f_isr
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", f_isr * f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_isr_3"

    end subroutine sf_isr_3

```

## Non-collinear ISR splitting

Construct and display a structure function object based on the ISR structure function. We blank out numerical fluctuations for 32bit.

```

<SF isr: execute tests>+=
    call test (sf_isr_4, "sf_isr_4", &
        "ISR non-collinear", &
        u, results)

<SF isr: tests>+=
    subroutine sf_isr_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
        class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
        type(vector4_t) :: k
        type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
        real(default) :: E
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
        real(default) :: f, f_isr
        character(len=80) :: buffer
        integer :: u_scratch, iostat

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_isr_4"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
            &test structure function object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
            var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
        call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
        pdg_in = ELECTRON

        call reset_interaction_counter ()

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (isr_data_t :: data)

```

```

select type (data)
type is (isr_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 500._default, &
        0.000511_default, order = 3, recoil = .true.)
end select

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5/0.5/0.25, with ISR mapping, "
write (u, "(A)")  "          non-coll., keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.25_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)

```

```

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate ISR structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)
call sf_int%apply (scale = 10._default)
u_scratch = free_unit ()
open (u_scratch, status="scratch", action = "readwrite")
call sf_int%write (u_scratch, testflag = .true.)
rewind (u_scratch)
do
  read (u_scratch, "(A)", iostat=iostat) buffer
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  if (buffer(1:27) == " P =  0.00000000E+00  9.57") then
    buffer = replace (buffer, 28, "XXXXXX")
  end if
  if (buffer(1:27) == " P =  0.00000000E+00 -9.57") then
    buffer = replace (buffer, 28, "XXXXXX")
  end if
  write (u, "(A)") buffer
end do
close (u_scratch)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure-function value"
write (u, "(A)")

f_isr = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, 1)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", f_isr
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", f_isr * f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_isr_4"

end subroutine sf_isr_4

```

### Structure function pair with mapping

Apply the ISR mapping for a ISR pair. structure function.

$\langle SF \text{ isr: execute tests} \rangle + \equiv$

```

call test (sf_isr_5, "sf_isr_5", &
  "ISR pair mapping", &
  u, results)
<SF_isr: tests>+=
subroutine sf_isr_5 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(sf_mapping_t), allocatable :: mapping
  class(sf_int_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: k
  real(default) :: E, f_map
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: p, pb, r, rb, x
  real(default), dimension(2) :: f, f_isr
  integer :: i

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_isr_5"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &test structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
  pdg_in = ELECTRON

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  allocate (isr_data_t :: data)
  select type (data)
  type is (isr_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 500._default, &
      0.000511_default, order = 3, recoil = .false.)
  end select

  allocate (sf_ip_mapping_t :: mapping)
  select type (mapping)
  type is (sf_ip_mapping_t)
    select type (data)
    type is (isr_data_t)
      call mapping%init (eps = data%eps)
    end select
    call mapping%set_index (1, 1)
    call mapping%set_index (2, 2)
  end select

```

```

call mapping%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (isr_t :: sf_int (2))

do i = 1, 2
    call sf_int(i)%init (data)
    call sf_int(i)%set_beam_index ([i])
end do

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momenta with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
k(2) = vector4_moving (E, - sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
do i = 1, 2
    call vector4_write (k(i), u)
    call sf_int(i)%seed_kinematics (k(i:i))
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for p=[0.7,0.4], collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (p (2 * data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (pb(size (p)))
allocate (r (size (p)))
allocate (rb(size (p)))
allocate (x (size (p)))

p = [0.7_default, 0.4_default]
pb= 1 - p
call mapping%compute (r, rb, f_map, p, pb)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "p =", p
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "pb=", pb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "fm=", f_map

do i = 1, 2
    call sf_int(i)%complete_kinematics (x(i:i), f(i), r(i:i), rb(i:i), &
        map=.false.)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f =", f

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Invert kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

do i = 1, 2
    call sf_int(i)%inverse_kinematics (x(i:i), f(i), r(i:i), rb(i:i), &
        map=.false.)
end do
call mapping%inverse (r, rb, f_map, p, pb)

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "p =", p
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "pb=", pb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "fm=", f_map

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate ISR structure function"

call sf_int(1)%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int(2)%apply (scale = 100._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure function #1"
write (u, "(A)")
call sf_int(1)%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure function #2"
write (u, "(A)")
call sf_int(2)%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Structure-function value, default order"
write (u, "(A)")

do i = 1, 2
    f_isr(i) = interaction_get_matrix_element (sf_int(i)%interaction_t, 1)
end do

write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr          =", &
    product (f_isr)
write (u, "(A,9(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") "f_isr * f_map =", &
    product (f_isr * f) * f_map

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

do i = 1, 2
    call sf_int(i)%final ()
end do
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```
      write (u, "(A)")  
      write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_isr_5"  
  
end subroutine sf_isr_5
```

## 10.5 EPA

```

⟨sf_epa.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module sf_epa

    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    ⟨Use strings⟩
    use constants, only: pi !NODEP!
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use pdg_arrays
    use models
    use flavors
    use colors
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices
    use polarizations
    use interactions
    use sf_aux
    use sf_base

    ⟨Standard module head⟩

    ⟨SF epa: public⟩

    ⟨SF epa: parameters⟩

    ⟨SF epa: types⟩

    contains

    ⟨SF epa: procedures⟩

    ⟨SF epa: tests⟩

  end module sf_epa

```

### 10.5.1 Physics

The EPA structure function for a photon inside an (elementary) particle  $p$  with energy  $E$ , mass  $m$  and charge  $q_p$  (e.g., electron) is given by ( $\bar{x} \equiv 1 - x$ )

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_p^2 \frac{1}{x} & \left[ \left( \bar{x} + \frac{x^2}{2} \right) \ln \frac{Q_{\max}^2}{Q_{\min}^2} \right. \\
 & \left. - \left( 1 - \frac{x}{2} \right)^2 \ln \frac{x^2 + \frac{Q_{\max}^2}{E^2}}{x^2 + \frac{Q_{\min}^2}{E^2}} - x^2 \frac{m^2}{Q_{\min}^2} \left( 1 - \frac{Q_{\min}^2}{Q_{\max}^2} \right) \right]. \quad (10.52)
 \end{aligned}$$

If no explicit  $Q$  bounds are provided, the kinematical bounds are

$$-Q_{\max}^2 = t_0 = -2\bar{x}(E^2 + p\bar{p}) + 2m^2 \approx -4\bar{x}E^2, \quad (10.53)$$

$$-Q_{\min}^2 = t_1 = -2\bar{x}(E^2 - p\bar{p}) + 2m^2 \approx -\frac{x^2}{\bar{x}}m^2. \quad (10.54)$$

The second and third terms in (10.52) are negative definite (and subleading). Noting that  $\bar{x} + x^2/2$  is bounded between  $1/2$  and  $1$ , we derive that  $f(x)$  is always smaller than

$$\bar{f}(x) = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_p^2 \frac{L - 2 \ln x}{x} \quad \text{where} \quad L = \ln \frac{\min(4E_{\max}^2, Q_{\max}^2)}{\max(m^2, Q_{\min}^2)}, \quad (10.55)$$

where we allow for explicit  $Q$  bounds that narrow the kinematical range. Therefore, we generate this distribution:

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} dx \bar{f}(x) = C(x_0, x_1) \int_0^1 dx' \quad (10.56)$$

We set

$$\ln x = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ L - \sqrt{L^2 - 4 [x' \ln x_1 (L - \ln x_1) + \bar{x}' \ln x_0 (L - \ln x_0)]} \right\} \quad (10.57)$$

such that  $x(0) = x_0$  and  $x(1) = x_1$  and

$$\frac{dx}{dx'} = \left( \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_p^2 \right)^{-1} x \frac{C(x_0, x_1)}{L - 2 \ln x} \quad (10.58)$$

with

$$C(x_0, x_1) = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_p^2 [\ln x_1 (L - \ln x_1) - \ln x_0 (L - \ln x_0)] \quad (10.59)$$

such that (10.56) is satisfied. Finally, we have

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} dx f(x) = C(x_0, x_1) \int_0^1 dx' \frac{f(x(x'))}{\bar{f}(x(x'))} \quad (10.60)$$

where  $x'$  is calculated from  $x$  via (10.57).

The structure of the mapping is most obvious from:

$$x'(x) = \frac{\log x (L - \log x) - \log x_0 (L - \log x_0)}{\log x_1 (L - \log x_1) - \log x_0 (L - \log x_0)}. \quad (10.61)$$

### 10.5.2 The EPA data block

The EPA parameters are:  $\alpha$ ,  $E_{\max}$ ,  $m$ ,  $Q_{\min}$ , and  $x_{\min}$ . Instead of  $m$  we can use the incoming particle PDG code as input; from this we can deduce the mass and charge.

Internally we store in addition  $C_{0/1} = \frac{\alpha}{\pi} q_e^2 \ln x_{0/1} (L - \ln x_{0/1})$ , the c.m. energy squared and the incoming particle mass.

```
<SF epa: public>≡
public :: epa_data_t
```

```

<SF epa: types>≡
type, extends(sf_data_t) :: epa_data_t
private
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_in
real(default) :: alpha
real(default) :: x_min
real(default) :: x_max
real(default) :: q_min
real(default) :: q_max
real(default) :: E_max
real(default) :: mass
real(default) :: log
real(default) :: a
real(default) :: c0
real(default) :: c1
real(default) :: dc
integer :: error = NONE
logical :: recoil = .false.
contains
<SF epa: epa_data: TBP>
end type epa_data_t

```

#### Error codes

```

<SF epa: parameters>≡
integer, parameter :: NONE = 0
integer, parameter :: ZERO_QMIN = 1
integer, parameter :: Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL = 2
integer, parameter :: ZERO_XMIN = 3
integer, parameter :: MASS_MIX = 4
integer, parameter :: NO_EPA = 5

<SF epa: epa_data: TBP>≡
procedure :: init => epa_data_init

<SF epa: procedures>≡
subroutine epa_data_init &
    (data, model, pdg_in, alpha, x_min, q_min, E_max, mass, recoil)
class(epa_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
real(default), intent(in) :: alpha, x_min, q_min, E_max
real(default), intent(in), optional :: mass
logical, intent(in), optional :: recoil
integer :: n_flv, i
data%model => model
n_flv = pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in)
allocate (data%flv_in (n_flv))
do i = 1, n_flv
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in(i), pdg_array_get (pdg_in, i), model)
end do
data%alpha = alpha
data%E_max = E_max
data%x_min = x_min
data%x_max = 1

```

```

if (data%x_min == 0) then
  data%error = ZERO_XMIN; return
end if
data%q_min = q_min
data%q_max = 2 * data%E_max
select case (char (data%model%get_name ()))
case ("QCD","Test")
  data%error = NO_EPA; return
end select
if (present (recoil)) then
  data%recoil = recoil
end if
if (present (mass)) then
  data%mass = mass
else
  data%mass = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1))
  if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in) /= data%mass)) then
    data%error = MASS_MIX; return
  end if
end if
if (max (data%mass, data%q_min) == 0) then
  data%error = ZERO_QMIN; return
else if (max (data%mass, data%q_min) >= data%E_max) then
  data%error = Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL; return
end if
data%log = log (4 * (data%E_max / max (data%mass, data%q_min)) ** 2 )
data%a = data%alpha / pi
data%c0 = log (data%x_min) * (data%log - log (data%x_min))
data%c1 = log (data%x_max) * (data%log - log (data%x_max))
data%dc = data%c1 - data%c0
end subroutine epa_data_init

```

Handle error conditions. Should always be done after initialization, unless we are sure everything is ok.

```

<SF epa: epa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: check => epa_data_check

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_data_check (data)
    class(epa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    select case (data%error)
    case (NO_EPA)
      call msg_fatal ("EPA structure function not available for model " &
        // char (data%model%get_name ()) // ".")
    case (ZERO_QMIN)
      call msg_fatal ("EPA: Particle mass is zero")
    case (Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL)
      call msg_fatal ("EPA: Particle mass exceeds Qmax")
    case (ZERO_XMIN)
      call msg_fatal ("EPA: x_min must be larger than zero")
    case (MASS_MIX)
      call msg_fatal ("EPA: incoming particle masses must be uniform")
    end select
  end subroutine epa_data_check

```

Output

```

<SF epa: epa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => epa_data_write

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(epa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "EPA data:"
    if (allocated (data%flv_in)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") " flavor = "
      do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        if (i > 1) write (u, "(',',1x)", advance="no")
        call flavor_write (data%flv_in(i), u)
      end do
      write (u, *)
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " alpha = ", data%alpha
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x_min = ", data%x_min
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x_max = ", data%x_max
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " q_min = ", data%q_min
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " q_max = ", data%q_max
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " E_max = ", data%e_max
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " mass = ", data%mass
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " a = ", data%a
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " c0 = ", data%c0
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " c1 = ", data%c1
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " log = ", data%log
      write (u, "(3x,A,L2)") " recoil = ", data%recoil
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine epa_data_write

```

The number of kinematic parameters.

```

<SF epa: epa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => epa_data_get_n_par

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  function epa_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(epa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    if (data%recoil) then
      n = 3
    else
      n = 1
    end if
  end function epa_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. The outgoing particle is always the photon while the radiated particle is identical to the incoming one.

```

<SF epa: epa_data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => epa_data_get_pdg_out

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(epa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    pdg_out(1) = PHOTON
  end subroutine epa_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF epa: epa_data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => epa_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(epa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (epa_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine epa_data_allocate_sf_int

```

### 10.5.3 The EPA object

The `epa_t` data type is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  interaction. We should be able to handle several flavors in parallel, since EPA is not necessarily applied immediately after beam collision: Photons may be radiated from quarks. In that case, the partons are massless and  $q_{\min}$  applies instead, so we do not need to generate several kinematical configurations in parallel.

The squared charge values multiply the matrix elements, depending on the flavour. We scan the interaction after building it, so we have the correct assignments.

The particles are ordered as (incoming, radiated, photon), where the photon initiates the hard interaction.

We generate an unpolarized photon and transfer initial polarization to the radiated parton. Color is transferred in the same way.

```

<SF epa: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: epa_t
    type(epa_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default) :: x = 0
    real(default) :: xb = 0
    real(default) :: E = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: charge2
  contains
    <SF epa: epa: TBP>
  end type epa_t

```



Type string: has to be here, but there is no string variable on which EPA depends. Hence, a dummy routine.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => epa_type_string

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  function epa_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(epa_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "EPA: equivalent photon approx."
    else
      string = "EPA: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function epa_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => epa_write

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(epa_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
        if (object%status >= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
          write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "E =", object%E
        end if
      end if
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "EPA data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine epa_write

```

Prepare the interaction object. We have to construct transition matrix elements for all flavor and helicity combinations.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => epa_init

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_init (sf_int, data)
    class(epa_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
    integer, dimension(3) :: hel_lock
    type(polarization_t) :: pol

```

```

type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn_fc, qn_hel
type(flavor_t) :: flv_photon
type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn_photon, qn
type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel
integer :: i
mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., &
    mask_h = [.false., .false., .true.])
hel_lock = [2, 1, 0]
select type (data)
type is (epa_data_t)
    call sf_int%base_init (mask, [data%mass**2], &
        [data%mass**2], [0._default], hel_lock = hel_lock)
    sf_int%data => data
    call flavor_init (flv_photon, PHOTON, data%model)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_photon, flv_photon)
    do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        call polarization_init_generic (pol, data%flv_in(i))
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(1), &
            flv = data%flv_in(i), &
            col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i), 1))
        call state_iterator_init (it_hel, pol%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel))
            qn_hel = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel)
            qn = qn_hel(1) .merge. qn_fc(1)
            call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, &
                [qn, qn, qn_photon])
            call state_iterator_advance (it_hel)
        end do
        call polarization_final (pol)
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
    call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
    call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
    call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
end select
end subroutine epa_init

```

Prepare the charge array. This is separate from the previous routine since the state matrix may be helicity-contracted.

$\langle SF \text{ epa: epa: TBP} \rangle + \equiv$

```

procedure :: setup_constants => epa_setup_constants

```

$\langle SF \text{ epa: procedures} \rangle + \equiv$

```

subroutine epa_setup_constants (sf_int)
    class(epa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    integer :: i, n_me
    n_me = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (sf_int%interaction_t)
    allocate (sf_int%charge2 (n_me))
    call state_iterator_init (it, &
        interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (sf_int%interaction_t))
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
        i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
        sf_int%charge2(i) = &

```

```

        flavor_get_charge (state_iterator_get_flavor (it, 1)) ** 2
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end subroutine epa_setup_constants

```

### 10.5.4 Kinematics

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

The EPA structure function allows for a straightforward mapping of the unit interval. The  $x$  value is transformed, and the mapped structure function becomes unity at its upper boundary.

The structure function implementation applies the above mapping to the input (random) number `r` to generate the momentum fraction `x` and the function value `f`. For numerical stability reasons, we also output `xb`, which is  $\bar{x} = 1 - x$ .

```

⟨SF epa: epa: TBP⟩+=
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => epa_complete_kinematics
⟨SF epa: procedures⟩+=
  subroutine epa_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
    class(epa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    real(default) :: xb1
    real(default) :: delta, sqrt_delta, lx
    if (map) then
      associate (data => sf_int%data)
        delta = data%log ** 2 - 4 * (r(1) * data%c1 + rb(1) * data%c0)
        if (delta > 0) then
          sqrt_delta = sqrt (delta)
          lx = (data%log - sqrt_delta) / 2
        else
          sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
          f = 0
          return
        end if
        x(1) = exp (lx)
        f = x(1) * data%dc / sqrt_delta
      end associate
    else
      x(1) = r(1)
      if (sf_int%data%x_min < x(1) .and. x(1) < sf_int%data%x_max) then
        f = 1
      else
        sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
        f = 0
        return
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
if (size(x) == 3) x(2:3) = r(2:3)
call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = x(1)
  sf_int%xb= xb1
  sf_int%E = &
    energy (interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1))
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = 0
  sf_int%xb= 0
  f = 0
end select
end subroutine epa_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => epa_inverse_kinematics

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine epa_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(epa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default) :: lx, delta, sqrt_delta, c
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    if (map) then
      associate (data => sf_int%data)
        lx = log (x(1))
        sqrt_delta = data%log - 2 * lx
        delta = sqrt_delta ** 2
        c = (data%log ** 2 - delta) / 4
        r (1) = (c - data%c0) / data%dc
        rb(1) = (data%c1 - c) / data%dc
        f = x(1) * data%dc / sqrt_delta
      end associate
    else
      r (1) = x(1)
      rb(1) = 1 - x(1)
      if (sf_int%data%x_min < x(1) .and. x(1) < sf_int%data%x_max) then
        f = 1
      else
        f = 0
      end if
    end if
  end if

```

```

if (size(r) == 3) then
  r (2:3) = x(2:3)
  rb(2:3) = 1 - x(2:3)
end if
if (set_mom) then
  call sf_int%split_momentum (x, sf_int%xb)
  select case (sf_int%status)
  case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = x(1)
    sf_int%xb = 1 - x(1)
    sf_int%E = &
      energy (interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1))
  case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = 0
    f = 0
  end select
end if
end subroutine epa_inverse_kinematics

```

Overriding the default method: we compute the  $\mathbf{x}$  array from the momentum configuration. In the specific case of EPA, we also set the internally stored  $x$  and  $\bar{x}$  values, so they can be used in the following routine.

Note: the extraction of  $\bar{x}$  is not numerically safe, but it can't be as long as the base `recover_x` isn't.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recover_x => sf_epa_recover_x

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sf_epa_recover_x (sf_int, x, x_free)
    class(epa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
    call sf_int%base_recover_x (x, x_free)
    sf_int%x = x(1)
    sf_int%xb = 1 - x(1)
  end subroutine sf_epa_recover_x

```

### 10.5.5 EPA application

For EPA, we can in principle compute kinematics and function value in a single step. In order to be able to reweight events, kinematics and structure function application are separated. This function works on a single beam, assuming that the input momentum has been set. We need three random numbers as input: one for  $x$ , and two for the polar and azimuthal angles. Alternatively, for the no-recoil case, we can skip  $p_T$  generation; in this case, we only need one.

For obtaining splitting kinematics, we rely on the assumption that all in-particles are mass-degenerate (or there is only one), so the generated  $x$  values are identical.

```

<SF epa: epa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => epa_apply

```

```

<SF epa: procedures>+≡
subroutine epa_apply (sf_int, scale)
  class(epa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  real(default) :: x, xb, qminsq, qmaxsq, f, E
  associate (data => sf_int%data)
    x = sf_int%x
    xb= sf_int%xb
    E = sf_int%E
    qminsq = max (x ** 2 / xb * data%mass ** 2, data%q_min ** 2)
    qmaxsq = min (4 * xb * E ** 2, data%q_max ** 2)
    if (qminsq < qmaxsq) then
      f = data%a / x &
        * ((xb + x ** 2 / 2) * log (qmaxsq / qminsq) &
          - (1 - x / 2) ** 2 &
          * log ((x**2 + qmaxsq / E ** 2) / (x**2 + qminsq / E ** 2)) &
          - x ** 2 * data%mass ** 2 / qminsq * (1 - qminsq / qmaxsq))
    else
      f = 0
    end if
    call interaction_set_matrix_element &
      (sf_int%interaction_t, cmplx (f, kind=default) * sf_int%charge2)
  end associate
  sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine epa_apply

```

### 10.5.6 Unit tests

```

<SF epa: public>+≡
public :: sf_epa_test

<SF epa: tests>≡
subroutine sf_epa_test (u, results)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <SF epa: execute tests>
end subroutine sf_epa_test

```

#### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF epa: execute tests>≡
call test (sf_epa_1, "sf_epa_1", &
  "structure function configuration", &
  u, results)

<SF epa: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_epa_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model

```

```

type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_epa_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize and display &
                    &test structure function data"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
pdg_in = ELECTRON

allocate (epa_data_t :: data)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (data)
type is (epa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 0.01_default, &
        10._default, 50._default, 0.000511_default, recoil = .false.)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_epa_1"

end subroutine sf_epa_1

```

### Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EPA structure function.

```

<SF epa: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_epa_2, "sf_epa_2", &
    "structure function instance", &
    u, results)

<SF epa: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_epa_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_epa_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
    pdg_in = ELECTRON

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (epa_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (epa_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 0.01_default, &
        10._default, 50._default, 0.000511_default, recoil = .false.)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)
    call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
    call sf_int%setup_constants ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
    write (u, "(A)")

```



```

E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, no EPA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false., &
    set_momenta=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EPA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_epa_2"

end subroutine sf_epa_2

```

## Standard mapping

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EPA structure function, applying the standard single-particle mapping.

```

<SF epa: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_epa_3, "sf_epa_3", &
    "apply mapping", &
    u, results)

<SF epa: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_epa_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_epa_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
    pdg_in = ELECTRON

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

```

```

allocate (epa_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (epa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 0.01_default, &
        10._default, 50._default, 0.000511_default, recoil = .false.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, with EPA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

```

```

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true., &
    set_momenta=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Evaluate EPA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_epa_3"

end subroutine sf_epa_3

```

### Non-collinear case

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EPA structure function.

```

<SF epa: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_epa_4, "sf_epa_4", &
        "non-collinear", &
        u, results)

<SF epa: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_epa_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
        class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
        type(vector4_t) :: k
        type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
        real(default) :: E, m
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x

```

```

real(default) :: f

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_epa_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
                  &test structure function object"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, ELECTRON, model)
pdg_in = ELECTRON

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (epa_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (epa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 0.01_default, &
        10._default, 50._default, 5.0_default, recoil = .true.)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500, me = 5 GeV"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
m = 5
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - m**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.5/0.5/0.25, with EPA mapping, "
write (u, "(A)")  "          non-coll., keeping energy, me = 5 GeV"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.25_default]
rb = 1 - r

```

```

sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true., &
    set_momenta=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EPA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u, testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_epa_4"

end subroutine sf_epa_4

```

## Structure function for multiple flavors

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EPA structure function. The incoming state has multiple particles with non-uniform charge.

```
(SF epa: execute tests)+≡
  call test (sf_epa_5, "sf_epa_5", &
    "multiple flavors", &
    u, results)

(SF epa: tests)+≡
  subroutine sf_epa_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_epa_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
      var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 1, model)
    pdg_in = [1, 2, -1, -2]

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (epa_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (epa_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, 1./137._default, 0.01_default, &
        10._default, 50._default, 0.000511_default, recoil = .false.)
      call data%check ()
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)
    call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
```

```

call sf_int%setup_constants ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, no EPA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EPA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_epa_5"

end subroutine sf_epa_5

```



## 10.6 EWA

```
<sf_ewa.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module sf_ewa  
  
  <Use kinds>  
  <Use strings>  
  use constants, only: pi !NODEP!  
  <Use file utils>  
  use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
  use diagnostics !NODEP!  
  use lorentz !NODEP!  
  use unit_tests  
  use os_interface  
  use pdg_arrays  
  use models  
  use flavors  
  use colors  
  use quantum_numbers  
  use state_matrices  
  use polarizations  
  use interactions  
  use sf_aux  
  use sf_base  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <SF ewa: public>  
  
  <SF ewa: parameters>  
  
  <SF ewa: types>  
  
  contains  
  
  <SF ewa: procedures>  
  
  <SF ewa: tests>  
  
end module sf_ewa
```

### 10.6.1 Physics

The EWA structure function for a  $Z$  or  $W$  inside a fermion (lepton or quark) depends on the vector-boson polarization. We distinguish transversal ( $\pm$ ) and

longitudinal (0) polarization.

$$F_+(x) = \frac{1}{16\pi^2} \frac{(v-a)^2 + (v+a)^2 \bar{x}^2}{x} \left[ \ln \left( \frac{p_{\perp,\max}^2 + \bar{x}M^2}{\bar{x}M^2} \right) - \frac{p_{\perp,\max}^2}{p_{\perp,\max}^2 + \bar{x}M^2} \right] \quad (10.62)$$

$$F_-(x) = \frac{1}{16\pi^2} \frac{(v+a)^2 + (v-a)^2 \bar{x}^2}{x} \left[ \ln \left( \frac{p_{\perp,\max}^2 + \bar{x}M^2}{\bar{x}M^2} \right) - \frac{p_{\perp,\max}^2}{p_{\perp,\max}^2 + \bar{x}M^2} \right] \quad (10.63)$$

$$F_0(x) = \frac{v^2 + a^2}{8\pi^2} \frac{2\bar{x}}{x} \frac{p_{\perp,\max}^2}{p_{\perp,\max}^2 + \bar{x}M^2} \quad (10.64)$$

where  $p_{\perp,\max}$  is the cutoff in transversal momentum,  $M$  is the vector-boson mass,  $v$  and  $a$  are the vector and axial-vector couplings, and  $\bar{x} \equiv 1-x$ . Note that the longitudinal structure function is finite for large cutoff, while the transversal structure function is logarithmically divergent.

The maximal transverse momentum is given by the kinematical limit, it is

$$p_{\perp,\max} = \bar{x}\sqrt{s}/2. \quad (10.65)$$

The vector and axial couplings for a fermion branching into a  $W$  are

$$v_W = \frac{g}{2\sqrt{2}}, \quad a_W = \frac{g}{2\sqrt{2}}. \quad (10.66)$$

For  $Z$  emission, this is replaced by

$$v_Z = \frac{g}{2\cos\theta_w} (t_3 - 2q\sin^2\theta_w), \quad a_Z = \frac{g}{2\cos\theta_w} t_3, \quad (10.67)$$

where  $t_3 = \pm\frac{1}{2}$  is the fermion isospin, and  $q$  its charge.

For an initial antifermion, the signs of the axial couplings are inverted. Note that a common sign change of  $v$  and  $a$  is irrelevant.

The EWA depends on the parameters  $g$ ,  $\sin^2\theta_w$ ,  $M_W$ , and  $M_Z$ . These can all be taken from the SM input, and the prefactors are calculated from those and the incoming particle type.

Since these structure functions have a  $1/x$  singularity (which is not really relevant in practice, however, since the vector boson mass is finite), we map this singularity allowing for nontrivial  $x$  bounds:

$$x = \exp(\bar{r} \ln x_0 + r \ln x_1) \quad (10.68)$$

such that

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} \frac{dx}{x} = (\ln x_1 - \ln x_0) \int_0^1 dr. \quad (10.69)$$

As a user parameter, we have the cutoff  $p_{\perp,\max}$ . The divergence  $1/x$  also requires a  $x_0$  cutoff; and for completeness we introduce a corresponding  $x_1$ . Physically, the minimal sensible value of  $x$  is  $M^2/s$ , although the approximation loses its value already at higher  $x$  values.

## 10.6.2 The EWA data block

The EWA parameters are:  $p_{T,\max}$ ,  $c_V$ ,  $c_A$ , and  $m$ . Instead of  $m$  we can use the incoming particle PDG code as input; from this we can deduce the mass and charges. In the initialization phase it is not yet determined whether a  $W$  or a  $Z$  is radiated, hence we set the vector and axial-vector couplings equal to the common prefactors  $g/2 = e/2/\sin\theta_W$ .

In principle, for EWA it would make sense to allow the user to also set the upper bound for  $x$ ,  $x_{\max}$ , but we fix it to one here.

```

<SF ewa: public>≡
    public :: ewa_data_t

<SF ewa: types>≡
    type, extends(sf_data_t) :: ewa_data_t
    private
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_in
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_out
    real(default) :: pt_max
    real(default) :: sqrts
    real(default) :: x_min
    real(default) :: x_max
    real(default) :: mass
    real(default) :: m_out
    real(default) :: q_min
    real(default) :: cv
    real(default) :: ca
    real(default) :: costhw
    real(default) :: sinthw
    real(default) :: mW
    real(default) :: mZ
    real(default) :: coeff
    logical :: mass_set = .false.
    logical :: keep_momentum
    logical :: keep_energy
    integer :: id = 0
    integer :: error = NONE
    contains
    <SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>
end type ewa_data_t

```

Error codes

```

<SF ewa: parameters>≡
    integer, parameter :: NONE = 0
    integer, parameter :: ZERO_QMIN = 1
    integer, parameter :: Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL = 2
    integer, parameter :: ZERO_XMIN = 3
    integer, parameter :: MASS_MIX = 4
    integer, parameter :: ZERO_SW = 5
    integer, parameter :: ISOSPIN_MIX = 6
    integer, parameter :: WRONG_PRT = 7
    integer, parameter :: MASS_MIX_OUT = 8
    integer, parameter :: NO_EWA = 9

```

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => ewa_data_init

<SF ewa: procedures>≡
  subroutine ewa_data_init (data, model, pdg_in, x_min, pt_max, &
    sqrts, keep_momentum, keep_energy, mass)
    class(ewa_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: x_min, pt_max, sqrts
    logical, intent(in) :: keep_momentum, keep_energy
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: mass
    real(default) :: g, ee
    integer :: n_flv, i
    data%model => model
    if (.not. any (pdg_in .match. &
      [1,2,3,4,5,6,11,13,15,-1,-2,-3,-4,-5,-6,-11,-13,-15])) then
      data%error = WRONG_PRT; return
    end if
    n_flv = pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in)
    allocate (data%flv_in (n_flv))
    allocate (data%flv_out(n_flv))
    do i = 1, n_flv
      call flavor_init (data%flv_in(i), pdg_array_get (pdg_in, i), model)
    end do
    data%pt_max = pt_max
    data%sqrts = sqrts
    data%x_min = x_min
    data%x_max = 1
    if (data%x_min == 0) then
      data%error = ZERO_XMIN; return
    end if
    select case (char (data%model%get_name ()))
    case ("QCD","QED","Test")
      data%error = NO_EWA; return
    end select
    ee = model_get_parameter_value (data%model, var_str ("ee"))
    data%sinhw = model_get_parameter_value (data%model, var_str ("sw"))
    data%costhw = model_get_parameter_value (data%model, var_str ("cw"))
    data%mZ = model_get_parameter_value (data%model, var_str ("mZ"))
    data%mW = model_get_parameter_value (data%model, var_str ("mW"))
    if (data%sinhw /= 0) then
      g = ee / data%sinhw
    else
      data%error = ZERO_SW; return
    end if
    data%cv = g / 2._default
    data%ca = g / 2._default
    data%coeff = 1._default / (8._default * PI**2)
    data%keep_momentum = keep_momentum
    data%keep_energy = keep_energy
    if (present (mass)) then
      data%mass = mass
      data%m_out = mass
      data%mass_set = .true.

```

```

else
  data%mass = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1))
  if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in) /= data%mass)) then
    data%error = MASS_MIX; return
  end if
end if
end subroutine ewa_data_init

```

Set the vector boson ID for distinguishing  $W$  and  $Z$  bosons.

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_id => ewa_set_id

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_set_id (data, id)
    class(ewa_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    integer, intent(in) :: id
    integer :: i, isospin, pdg
    if (.not. allocated (data%flv_in)) &
      call msg_bug ("EWA: incoming particles not set")
    data%id = id
    select case (data%id)
    case (23)
      data%m_out = data%mass
      data%flv_out = data%flv_in
    case (24)
      do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        pdg = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in(i))
        isospin = flavor_get_isospin_type (data%flv_in(i))
        if (isospin > 0) then
          !!! up-type quark or neutrinos
          if (flavor_is_antiparticle (data%flv_in(i))) then
            call flavor_init (data%flv_out(i), pdg + 1, data%model)
          else
            call flavor_init (data%flv_out(i), pdg - 1, data%model)
          end if
        else
          !!! down-type quark or lepton
          if (flavor_is_antiparticle (data%flv_in(i))) then
            call flavor_init (data%flv_out(i), pdg - 1, data%model)
          else
            call flavor_init (data%flv_out(i), pdg + 1, data%model)
          end if
        end if
      end do
      if (.not. data%mass_set) then
        data%m_out = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_out(1))
        if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_out) /= data%m_out)) then
          data%error = MASS_MIX_OUT; return
        end if
      end if
    end select
  end subroutine ewa_set_id

```

Handle error conditions. Should always be done after initialization, unless we are sure everything is ok.

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: check => ewa_data_check

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_data_check (data)
    class(ewa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    select case (data%error)
    case (WRONG_PRT)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA structure function only accessible for " &
        // "SM quarks and leptons.")
    case (NO_EWA)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA structure function not available for model " &
        // char (data%model%get_name ()))
    case (ZERO_SW)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: Vanishing value of sin(theta_w)")
    case (ZERO_QMIN)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: Particle mass is zero")
    case (Q_MAX_TOO_SMALL)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: Particle mass exceeds Qmax")
    case (ZERO_XMIN)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: x_min must be larger than zero")
    case (MASS_MIX)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: incoming particle masses must be uniform")
    case (MASS_MIX_OUT)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: outgoing particle masses must be uniform")
    case (ISOSPIN_MIX)
      call msg_fatal ("EWA: incoming particle isospins must be uniform")
    end select
  end subroutine ewa_data_check

```

Output

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => ewa_data_write

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(ewa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "EWA data:"
    if (allocated (data%flv_in) .and. allocated (data%flv_out)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") " flavor(in) = "
      do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        if (i > 1) write (u, "(',',1x)", advance="no")
        call flavor_write (data%flv_in(i), u)
      end do
    end
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") " flavor(out) = "
    do i = 1, size (data%flv_out)
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(',',1x)", advance="no")
    end do
  end subroutine ewa_data_write

```

```

        call flavor_write (data%flv_out(i), u)
    end do
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x_min      = ", data%x_min
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x_max      = ", data%x_max
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " pt_max     = ", data%pt_max
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " sqrts      = ", data%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " mass       = ", data%mass
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " cv         = ", data%cv
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " ca         = ", data%ca
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " coeff      = ", data%coeff
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " costhw     = ", data%costhw
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " sinthw     = ", data%sinhw
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " mZ         = ", data%mZ
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " mW         = ", data%mW
    write (u, "(3x,A,L2)") " keep_mom. = ", data%keep_momentum
    write (u, "(3x,A,L2)") " keep_en.  = ", data%keep_energy
    write (u, "(3x,A,I2)") " PDG (VB) = ", data%id
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
end if
end subroutine ewa_data_write

```

The number of parameters is one for collinear splitting, in case one of the options `keep_energy` or `keep_momentum` is set, we take the recoil into account.

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_par => ewa_data_get_n_par

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
    function ewa_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
        class(ewa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        integer :: n
        if (data%keep_energy .or. data%keep_momentum) then
            n = 3
        else
            n = 1
        end if
    end function ewa_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. This depends, whether this is a charged-current or neutral-current interaction.

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_pdg_out => ewa_data_get_pdg_out

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ewa_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
        class(ewa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
        integer :: i, n_flv
        if (allocated (data%flv_out)) then
            n_flv = size (data%flv_out)
        else
            n_flv = 0
        end if
    end subroutine ewa_data_get_pdg_out

```

```

end if
allocate (pdg1 (n_flv))
do i = 1, n_flv
    pdg1(i) = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_out(i))
end do
pdg_out(1) = pdg1
end subroutine ewa_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF ewa: ewa data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_sf_int => ewa_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ewa_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
        class(ewa_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
        allocate (ewa_t :: sf_int)
    end subroutine ewa_data_allocate_sf_int

```

### 10.6.3 The EWA object

The `ewa_t` data type is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  interaction. We should be able to handle several flavors in parallel, since EWA is not necessarily applied immediately after beam collision:  $W/Z$  bosons may be radiated from quarks. In that case, the partons are massless and  $q_{\min}$  applies instead, so we do not need to generate several kinematical configurations in parallel.

The particles are ordered as (incoming, radiated,  $W/Z$ ), where the  $W/Z$  initiates the hard interaction.

In the case of EPA, we generated an unpolarized photon and transferred initial polarization to the radiated parton. Color is transferred in the same way. I do not know whether the same can/should be done for EWA, as the structure functions depend on the  $W/Z$  polarization. If we are having  $Z$  bosons, both up- and down-type fermions can participate. Otherwise, with a  $W^+$  an up-type fermion is transferred to a down-type fermion, and the other way round.

```

<SF ewa: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_int_t) :: ewa_t
        type(ewa_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
        real(default) :: x = 0
        real(default) :: xb = 0
        integer :: n_me = 0
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: cv
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: ca
    contains
        <SF ewa: ewa: TBP>
    end type ewa_t

```

Type string: has to be here, but there is no string variable on which EWA depends. Hence, a dummy routine.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>≡
    procedure :: type_string => ewa_type_string

```



```

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
function ewa_type_string (object) result (string)
  class(ewa_t), intent(in) :: object
  type(string_t) :: string
  if (associated (object%data)) then
    string = "EWA: equivalent W/Z approx."
  else
    string = "EWA: [undefined]"
  end if
end function ewa_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => ewa_write

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(ewa_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
      end if
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "EWA data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine ewa_write

```

The current implementation requires uniform isospin for all incoming particles, therefore we need to probe only the first one.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => ewa_init

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_init (sf_int, data)
    class(ewa_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
    integer, dimension(3) :: hel_lock
    type(polarization_t) :: pol
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn_fc, qn_hel, qn_fc_fin
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_z, flv_wp, flv_wm
    type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn_z, qn_wp, qn_wm, qn, qn_out, qn_w
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel
    integer :: i, isospin
    select type (data)
    type is (ewa_data_t)
      mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., &

```

```

        mask_h = [.false., .false., .true.])
hel_lock = [2, 1, 0]
select case (data%id)
case (23)
    !!! Z boson, flavor is not changing
    call sf_int%base_init (mask, [data%mass**2], [data%mass**2], &
        [data%mZ**2], hel_lock = hel_lock)
    sf_int%data => data
    call flavor_init (flv_z, Z_BOSON, data%model)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_z, flv_z)
    do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        call polarization_init_generic (pol, data%flv_in(i))
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(1), &
            flv = data%flv_in(i), &
            col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i), 1))
        call state_iterator_init (it_hel, pol%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel))
            qn_hel = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel)
            qn = qn_hel(1) .merge. qn_fc(1)
            call interaction_add_state &
                (sf_int%interaction_t, [qn, qn, qn_z])
            call state_iterator_advance (it_hel)
        end do
        call polarization_final (pol)
    end do
case (24)
    call sf_int%base_init (mask, [data%mass**2], [data%m_out**2], &
        [data%mW**2], hel_lock = hel_lock)
    sf_int%data => data
    call flavor_init (flv_wp, W_BOSON, data%model)
    call flavor_init (flv_wm, - W_BOSON, data%model)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_wp, flv_wp)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_wm, flv_wm)
    do i = 1, size (data%flv_in)
        isospin = flavor_get_isospin_type (data%flv_in(i))
        if (isospin > 0) then
            !!! up-type quark or neutrinos
            if (flavor_is_antiparticle (data%flv_in(i))) then
                qn_w = qn_wm
            else
                qn_w = qn_wp
            end if
        else
            !!! down-type quark or lepton
            if (flavor_is_antiparticle (data%flv_in(i))) then
                qn_w = qn_wp
            else
                qn_w = qn_wm
            end if
        end if
        call polarization_init_generic (pol, data%flv_in(i))
        call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(1), &
            flv = data%flv_in(i), &
            col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i), 1))
    end do
end select

```

```

        call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc_fin(1), &
            flv = data%flv_out(i), &
            col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_out(i), 1))
        call state_iterator_init (it_hel, pol%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel))
            qn_hel = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel)
            qn = qn_hel(1) .merge. qn_fc(1)
            qn_out = qn_hel(1) .merge. qn_fc_fin(1)
            call interaction_add_state &
                (sf_int%interaction_t, [qn, qn_out, qn_w])
            call state_iterator_advance (it_hel)
        end do
        call polarization_final (pol)
    end do
case default
    call msg_fatal ("EWA initialization failed: wrong particle type.")
end select
call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
if (data%keep_momentum) then
    if (data%keep_energy) then
        call msg_fatal ("EWA: momentum and energy" // &
            "cannot be simultaneously conserved.")
    else
        sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_MOMENTUM
    end if
else
    if (data%keep_energy) then
        sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
    end if
end if
call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
end select
end subroutine ewa_init

```

Prepare the coupling arrays. This is separate from the previous routine since the state matrix may be helicity-contracted.

*(SF ewa: ewa: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: setup_constants => ewa_setup_constants

```

*(SF ewa: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine ewa_setup_constants (sf_int)
    class(ewa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    real(default) :: q, t3
    integer :: i
    sf_int%n_me = interaction_get_n_matrix_elements (sf_int%interaction_t)
    allocate (sf_int%cv (sf_int%n_me))
    allocate (sf_int%ca (sf_int%n_me))
    associate (data => sf_int%data)
        select case (data%id)
            case (23)

```

```

call state_iterator_init (it, &
    interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (sf_int%interaction_t))
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    flv = state_iterator_get_flavor (it, 1)
    q = flavor_get_charge (flv)
    t3 = flavor_get_isospin (flv)
    if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
        sf_int%cv(i) = - data%cv &
            * (t3 - 2._default * q * data%sinthw**2) / data%costhw
        sf_int%ca(i) = data%ca * t3 / data%costhw
    else
        sf_int%cv(i) = data%cv &
            * (t3 - 2._default * q * data%sinthw**2) / data%costhw
        sf_int%ca(i) = data%ca * t3 / data%costhw
    end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
case (24)
call state_iterator_init (it, &
    interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (sf_int%interaction_t))
do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    if (flavor_is_antiparticle (state_iterator_get_flavor (it, 1))) &
        then
            sf_int%cv(i) = data%cv / sqrt(2._default)
            sf_int%ca(i) = - data%ca / sqrt(2._default)
        else
            sf_int%cv(i) = data%cv / sqrt(2._default)
            sf_int%ca(i) = data%ca / sqrt(2._default)
        end if
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
end do
end select
end associate
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end subroutine ewa_setup_constants

```

#### 10.6.4 Kinematics

Set kinematics. The EWA structure function allows for a straightforward mapping of the unit interval. So, to leading order, the structure function value is unity, but the  $x$  value is transformed. Higher orders affect the function value. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, the exponential mapping for the  $1/x$  singularity discussed above is applied.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => ewa_complete_kinematics

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ewa_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(ewa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
real(default), intent(out) :: f
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
real(default) :: xb1, e_1
real(default) :: x0, x1, lx0, lx1, lx
e_1 = energy (interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1))
if (sf_int%data%keep_momentum .or. sf_int%data%keep_energy) then
  select case (sf_int%data%id)
    case (23)
      x0 = max (sf_int%data%x_min, sf_int%data%mz / e_1)
    case (24)
      x0 = max (sf_int%data%x_min, sf_int%data%mw / e_1)
  end select
else
  x0 = sf_int%data%x_min
end if
x1 = sf_int%data%x_max
if ( x0 >= x1) then
  f = 0
  sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
  return
end if
if (map) then
  lx0 = log (x0)
  lx1 = log (x1)
  lx = lx1 * r(1) + lx0 * rb(1)
  x(1) = exp(lx)
  f = x(1) * (lx1 - lx0)
else
  x(1) = r(1)
  if (x0 < x(1) .and. x(1) < x1) then
    f = 1
  else
    sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
    f = 0
    return
  end if
end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
if (size(x) == 3) x(2:3) = r(2:3)
call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = x(1)
  sf_int%xb = xb1
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = 0
  sf_int%xb = 0
  f = 0
end select
end subroutine ewa_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => ewa_inverse_kinematics

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ewa_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(ewa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default) :: x0, x1, lx0, lx1, lx, e_1
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    e_1 = energy (interaction_get_momentum (sf_int%interaction_t, 1))
    if (sf_int%data%keep_momentum .or. sf_int%data%keep_energy) then
      select case (sf_int%data%id)
        case (23)
          x0 = max (sf_int%data%x_min, sf_int%data%mz / e_1)
        case (24)
          x0 = max (sf_int%data%x_min, sf_int%data%mw / e_1)
      end select
    else
      x0 = sf_int%data%x_min
    end if
    x1 = sf_int%data%x_max
    if (map) then
      lx0 = log (x0)
      lx1 = log (x1)
      lx = log (x(1))
      r(1) = (lx - lx0) / (lx1 - lx0)
      rb(1) = (lx1 - lx) / (lx1 - lx0)
      f = x(1) * (lx1 - lx0)
    else
      r (1) = x(1)
      rb(1) = 1 - x(1)
      if (x0 < x(1) .and. x(1) < x1) then
        f = 1
      else
        f = 0
      end if
    end if
    if (size(r) == 3) then
      r (2:3) = x(2:3)
      rb(2:3) = 1 - x(2:3)
    end if
    if (set_mom) then
      call sf_int%split_momentum (x, sf_int%xb)
      select case (sf_int%status)
        case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)

```

```

        sf_int%x = x(1)
        sf_int%xb = 1 - x(1)
    case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
        sf_int%x = 0
        f = 0
    end select
end if
end subroutine ewa_inverse_kinematics

```

### 10.6.5 EWA application

For EWA, we can compute kinematics and function value in a single step. This function works on a single beam, assuming that the input momentum has been set. We need four random numbers as input: one for  $x$ , one for  $Q^2$ , and two for the polar and azimuthal angles. Alternatively, we can skip  $p_T$  generation; in this case, we only need one.

For obtaining splitting kinematics, we rely on the assumption that all in-particles are mass-degenerate (or there is only one), so the generated  $x$  values are identical.

```

<SF ewa: ewa: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: apply => ewa_apply

<SF ewa: procedures>+≡
    subroutine ewa_apply (sf_int, scale)
        class(ewa_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(default) :: x, xb, pt2, c1, c2
        real(default) :: cv, ca
        real(default) :: f, fm, fp, fL
        integer :: i
        associate (data => sf_int%data)
            x = sf_int%x
            xb = sf_int%xb
            pt2 = min ((data%pt_max)**2, (xb * data%sqrts / 2)**2)
            select case (data%id)
            case (23)
                !!! Z boson structure function
                c1 = log (1 + pt2 / (xb * (data%mZ)**2))
                c2 = 1 / (1 + (xb * (data%mZ)**2) / pt2)
            case (24)
                !!! W boson structure function
                c1 = log (1 + pt2 / (xb * (data%mW)**2))
                c2 = 1 / (1 + (xb * (data%mW)**2) / pt2)
            end select
            do i = 1, sf_int%n_me
                cv = sf_int%cv(i)
                ca = sf_int%ca(i)
                fm = data%coeff * &
                    ((cv + ca)**2 + ((cv - ca) * xb)**2) * (c1 - c2) / (2 * x)
                fp = data%coeff * &
                    ((cv - ca)**2 + ((cv + ca) * xb)**2) * (c1 - c2) / (2 * x)
                fL = data%coeff * &

```

```

        (cv**2 + ca**2) * (2 * xb / x) * c2
    f = fp + fm + fL
    if (f /= 0) then
        fp = fp / f
        fm = fm / f
        fL = fL / f
    end if
    call interaction_set_matrix_element &
        (sf_int%interaction_t, i, cmplx (f, kind=default))
end do
end associate
sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine ewa_apply

```

### 10.6.6 Unit tests

```

<SF ewa: public>+≡
    public :: sf_ewa_test

<SF ewa: tests>≡
    subroutine sf_ewa_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF ewa: execute tests>
    end subroutine sf_ewa_test

```

### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF ewa: execute tests>≡
    call test (sf_ewa_1, "sf_ewa_1", &
        "structure function configuration", &
        u, results)

<SF ewa: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_ewa_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_ewa_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
            &test structure function data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
        write (u, "(A)")
    end subroutine sf_ewa_1

```



```

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
    var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
pdg_in = 2

allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize for Z boson"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (data)
type is (ewa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
        500._default, 5000._default, .false., .false.)
    call data%set_id (23)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize for W boson"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (data)
allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (ewa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
        500._default, 5000._default, .false., .false.)
    call data%set_id (24)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_ewa_1"

end subroutine sf_ewa_1

```

## Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EWA structure function.

```

<SF ewa: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_ewa_2, "sf_ewa_2", &
    "structure function instance", &
    u, results)

<SF ewa: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_ewa_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_ewa_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
      var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 2, model)
    pdg_in = 2

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (ewa_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
        500._default, 3000._default, .false., .false.)

```

```

        call data%set_id (24)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=1500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 1500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, no EWA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)

```

```

call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false., &
    set_momenta=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EWA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_ewa_2"

end subroutine sf_ewa_2

```

## Standard mapping

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EWA structure function, applying the standard single-particle mapping.

```

<SF ewa: execute tests>+≡
    call test (sf_ewa_3, "sf_ewa_3", &
        "apply mapping", &
        u, results)

<SF ewa: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_ewa_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_ewa_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
                  &test structure function object"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
                           var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 2, model)
pdg_in = 2

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (ewa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
                  500._default, 3000._default, .false., .false.)
    call data%set_id (24)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=1500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 1500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, with EWA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r

```

```

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true., &
    set_momenta=.true.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EWA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_ewa_3"

end subroutine sf_ewa_3

```

## Non-collinear case

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EPA structure function.

```
(SF ewa: execute tests)+≡
  call test (sf_ewa_4, "sf_ewa_4", &
    "non-collinear", &
    u, results)

(SF ewa: tests)+≡
  subroutine sf_ewa_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_ewa_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &test structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
      var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 2, model)
    pdg_in = 2

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (ewa_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
        500._default, 3000.0_default, .false., .true.)
      call data%set_id (24)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)
```

```

call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=1500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 1500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.5/0.5/0.25, with EWA mapping, "
write (u, "(A)")  "          non-coll., keeping energy"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.5_default, 0.5_default, 0.25_default]
rb = 1 - r
sf_int%on_shell_mode = KEEP_ENERGY
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x and r from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.true., &
    set_momenta=.true.)
call interaction_pacify_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, 1e-10_default)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x

```



```

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EWA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 1500._default)
call sf_int%write (u, testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_ewa_4"

end subroutine sf_ewa_4

```

### Structure function for multiple flavors

Construct and display a structure function object based on the EWA structure function. The incoming state has multiple particles with non-uniform quantum numbers.

```

<SF ewa: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_ewa_5, "sf_ewa_5", &
  "structure function instance", &
  u, results)

<SF ewa: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_ewa_5 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t) :: k
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: f

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_ewa_5"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &test structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
    var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 2, model)
pdg_in = [1, 2, -1, -2]

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (ewa_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, 0.01_default, &
        500._default, 3000._default, .false., .false.)
    call data%set_id (24)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])
call sf_int%setup_constants ()

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=1500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 1500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call pacify (k, 1e-10_default)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for r=0.4, no EWA mapping, collinear"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.4_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate EWA structure function"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_ewa_5"

end subroutine sf_ewa_5

```

## 10.7 Lepton collider beamstrahlung: CIRCE1

```
<sf_circe1.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module sf_circe1  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use os_interface  
    use unit_tests  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use rng_base  
    use pdg_arrays  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use colors  
    use quantum_numbers  
    use state_matrices  
    use polarizations  
    use interactions  
    use sf_mappings  
    use sf_aux  
    use sf_base  
    use circe1, circe1_rng_t => rng_type !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <SF circe1: public>  
  
    <SF circe1: types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <SF circe1: procedures>  
  
    <SF circe1: tests>  
  
  end module sf_circe1
```

### 10.7.1 Physics

Beamstrahlung is applied before ISR. The CIRCE1 implementation has a single structure function for both beams (which makes sense since it has to be switched on or off for both beams simultaneously). Nevertheless it is factorized:

The functional form in the CIRCE1 parameterization is defined for electrons or photons

$$f(x) = \alpha x^\beta (1-x)^\gamma \quad (10.70)$$

for  $x < 1 - \epsilon$  (resp.  $x > \epsilon$  in the photon case). In the remaining interval, the standard form is zero, with a delta singularity at  $x = 1$  (resp.  $x = 0$ ). Equivalently, the delta part may be distributed uniformly among this interval. This latter form is implemented in the `kirke` version of the `CIRCE1` subroutines, and is used here.

The parameter `circe1\_eps` sets the peak mapping of the `CIRCE1` structure function. Its default value is  $10^{-5}$ . The other parameters are the parameterization version and revision number, the accelerator type, and the  $\sqrt{s}$  value used by `CIRCE1`. The chattiness can also be set.

Since the energy is distributed in a narrow region around unity (for electrons) or zero (for photons), it is advantageous to map the interval first. The mapping is controlled by the parameter `circe1\_epsilon` which is taken from the `CIRCE1` internal data structure.

The  $\sqrt{s}$  value, if not explicitly set, is taken from the process data. Note that interpolating  $\sqrt{s}$  is not recommended; one should rather choose one of the distinct values known to `CIRCE1`.

## 10.7.2 The CIRCE1 data block

The `CIRCE1` parameters are: The incoming flavors, the flags whether the photon or the lepton is the parton in the hard interaction, the flags for the generation mode (generator/mapping/no mapping), the mapping parameter  $\epsilon$ ,  $\sqrt{s}$  and several steering parameters: `ver`, `rev`, `acc`, `chat`.

In generator mode, the  $x$  values are actually discarded and a random number generator is used instead.

```

<SF circe1: public>≡
  public :: circe1_data_t

<SF circe1: types>≡
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: circe1_data_t
  private
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv_in
    integer, dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    real(default), dimension(2) :: m_in = 0
    logical, dimension(2) :: photon = .false.
    logical :: generate = .false.
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    real(default) :: sqrts = 0
    real(default) :: eps = 0
    integer :: ver = 0
    integer :: rev = 0
    character(6) :: acc = "?"
    integer :: chat = 0
  contains
    <SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>
  end type circe1_data_t

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => circe1_data_init

```

```

<SF circe1: procedures>≡
  subroutine circe1_data_init &
    (data, model, pdg_in, sqrts, eps, out_photon, &
     ver, rev, acc, chat)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), intent(in) :: eps
    logical, dimension(2), intent(in) :: out_photon
    character(*), intent(in) :: acc
    integer, intent(in) :: ver, rev, chat
    data%model => model
    if (any (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) /= 1)) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE1: incoming beam particles must be unique")
    end if
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in(1), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(1), 1), model)
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in(2), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(2), 1), model)
    data%pdg_in = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in)
    data%m_in = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in)
    data%sqrts = sqrts
    data%eps = eps
    data%photon = out_photon
    data%ver = ver
    data%rev = rev
    data%acc = acc
    data%chat = chat
    call data%check ()
    call circex (0.d0, 0.d0, dble (data%sqrts), &
      data%acc, data%ver, data%rev, data%chat)
  end subroutine circe1_data_init

```

Activate the generator mode. We import a RNG factory into the data type, which can then spawn RNG generator objects.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_generator_mode => circe1_data_set_generator_mode

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe1_data_set_generator_mode (data, rng_factory)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng_factory
    data%generate = .true.
    call move_alloc (from = rng_factory, to = data%rng_factory)
  end subroutine circe1_data_set_generator_mode

```

Handle error conditions.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: check => circe1_data_check

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe1_data_check (data)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_electron, flv_photon
    call flavor_init (flv_electron, ELECTRON, data%model)

```

```

call flavor_init (flv_photon, PHOTON, data%model)
if (flavor_get_pdg (flv_electron) == UNDEFINED &
    .or. flavor_get_pdg (flv_photon) == UNDEFINED) then
    call msg_fatal ("CIRCE1: model must contain photon and electron")
end if
if (any (abs (data%pdg_in) /= ELECTRON) &
    .or. (data%pdg_in(1) /= - data%pdg_in(2))) then
    call msg_fatal ("CIRCE1: applicable only for e+e- or e-e+ collisions")
end if
if (data%eps <= 0) then
    call msg_error ("CIRCE1: circe1_eps = 0: integration will &
        &miss x=1 peak")
end if
end subroutine circe1_data_check

```

## Output

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write => circe1_data_write

<SF circe1: procedures>+=
  subroutine circe1_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "CIRCE1 data:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,A))") "prt_in  =", &
        char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(1))), &
        char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(2)))
    write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x,L1))") "photon  =", data%photon
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "generate =", data%generate
    write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "m_in   =", data%m_in
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "sqrts  =", data%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "eps     =", data%eps
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "ver      =", data%ver
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "rev      =", data%rev
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "acc      =", data%acc
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "chat     =", data%chat
    if (data%generate) call data%rng_factory%write (u)
  end subroutine circe1_data_write

```

Return true if this structure function is in generator mode. In that case, all parameters are free, otherwise bound. (We do not support mixed cases.) Default is: no generator.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: is_generator => circe1_data_is_generator

<SF circe1: procedures>+=
  function circe1_data_is_generator (data) result (flag)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    logical :: flag
    flag = data%generate
  end function circe1_data_is_generator

```

The number of parameters is two, collinear splitting for the two beams.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => circe1_data_get_n_par

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  function circe1_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    n = 2
  end function circe1_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. This is either the incoming particle (if a photon is radiated), or the photon if that is the particle of the hard interaction. The latter is determined via the photon flag. There are two entries for the two beams.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => circe1_data_get_pdg_out

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe1_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer :: i, n
    n = 2
    do i = 1, n
      if (data%photon(i)) then
        pdg_out(i) = PHOTON
      else
        pdg_out(i) = data%pdg_in(i)
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine circe1_data_get_pdg_out

```

This variant is not inherited, it returns integers.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_int => circe1_data_get_pdg_int

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  function circe1_data_get_pdg_int (data) result (pdg)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, dimension(2) :: pdg
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, 2
      if (data%photon(i)) then
        pdg(i) = PHOTON
      else
        pdg(i) = data%pdg_in(i)
      end if
    end do
  end function circe1_data_get_pdg_int

```



Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF circe1: circe1 data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => circe1_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF circe1: procedures>+=
  subroutine circe1_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(circe1_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (circe1_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine circe1_data_allocate_sf_int

```

### 10.7.3 Random Number Generator for CIRCE

The CIRCE implementation now supports a generic random-number generator object that allows for a local state as a component. To support this, we must extend the abstract type provided by CIRCE and delegate the generator call to the (also abstract) RNG used by WHIZARD.

```

<SF circe1: types>+=
  type, extends (circe1_rng_t) :: rng_obj_t
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
  contains
    procedure :: generate => rng_obj_generate
  end type rng_obj_t

<SF circe1: procedures>+=
  subroutine rng_obj_generate (rng_obj, u)
    class(rng_obj_t), intent(inout) :: rng_obj
    real(double), intent(out) :: u
    real(default) :: x
    call rng_obj%rng%generate (x)
    u = x
  end subroutine rng_obj_generate

```

### 10.7.4 The CIRCE1 object

This is a  $2 \rightarrow 4$  interaction, where, depending on the parameters, any two of the four outgoing particles are connected to the hard interactions, the others are radiated. Knowing that all particles are colorless, we do not have to deal with color.

The flavors are sorted such that the first two particles are the incoming leptons, the next two are the radiated particles, and the last two are the partons initiating the hard interaction.

CIRCE1 does not support polarized beams explicitly. For simplicity, we nevertheless carry beam polarization through to the outgoing electrons and make the photons unpolarized.

```

<SF circe1: types>+=
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: circe1_t
    type(circe1_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default), dimension(2) :: x = 0

```

```

    real(default) :: f = 0
    logical, dimension(2) :: continuum = .true.
    logical, dimension(2) :: peak = .true.
    type(rng_obj_t) :: rng_obj
contains
  <SF circe1: circe1: TBP>
end type circe1_t

```

Type string: has to be here, but there is no string variable on which CIRCE1 depends. Hence, a dummy routine.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => circe1_type_string

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  function circe1_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(circe1_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "CIRCE1: beamstrahlung"
    else
      string = "CIRCE1: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function circe1_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => circe1_write

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe1_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(circe1_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%data%generate) call object%rng_obj%rng%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(3x,A,2(1x," // FMT_17 // "))" "x =", object%x
        if (object%status >= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
          write (u, "(3x,A,1x," // FMT_17 // "))" "f =", object%f
        end if
      end if
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)" "CIRCE1 data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine circe1_write

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => circe1_init

```

```

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
subroutine circe1_init (sf_int, data)
  class(circe1_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
  class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
  logical, dimension(6) :: mask_h
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(6) :: mask
  integer, dimension(6) :: hel_lock
  type(polarization_t) :: pol1, pol2
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(1) :: qn_fc1, qn_hel1, qn_fc2, qn_hel2
  type(flavor_t) :: flv_photon
  real(default), dimension(2) :: mi2, mr2, mo2
  type(quantum_numbers_t) :: qn_photon, qn1, qn2
  type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(6) :: qn
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel1, it_hel2
  hel_lock = 0
  mask_h = .false.
  select type (data)
  type is (circe1_data_t)
    mi2 = data%mi_in**2
    if (data%photon(1)) then
      hel_lock(1) = 3; hel_lock(3) = 1; mask_h(5) = .true.
      mr2(1) = mi2(1)
      mo2(1) = 0._default
    else
      hel_lock(1) = 5; hel_lock(5) = 1; mask_h(3) = .true.
      mr2(1) = 0._default
      mo2(1) = mi2(1)
    end if
    if (data%photon(2)) then
      hel_lock(2) = 4; hel_lock(4) = 2; mask_h(6) = .true.
      mr2(2) = mi2(2)
      mo2(2) = 0._default
    else
      hel_lock(2) = 6; hel_lock(6) = 2; mask_h(4) = .true.
      mr2(2) = 0._default
      mo2(2) = mi2(2)
    end if
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., mask_h)
    call sf_int%base_init (mask, mi2, mr2, mo2, &
      hel_lock = hel_lock)
    sf_int%data => data
    call flavor_init (flv_photon, PHOTON, data%model)
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_photon, flv_photon)
    call polarization_init_generic (pol1, data%flv_in(1))
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc1(1), flv = data%flv_in(1))
    call polarization_init_generic (pol2, data%flv_in(2))
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc2(1), flv = data%flv_in(2))
    call state_iterator_init (it_hel1, pol1%state)

    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel1))
      qn_hel1 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel1)
      qn1 = qn_hel1(1) .merge. qn_fc1(1)
      qn(1) = qn1
      if (data%photon(1)) then

```

```

        qn(3) = qn1; qn(5) = qn_photon
    else
        qn(3) = qn_photon; qn(5) = qn1
    end if
    call state_iterator_init (it_hel2, pol2%state)
    do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel2))
        qn_hel2 = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel2)
        qn2 = qn_hel2(1) .merge. qn_fc2(1)
        qn(2) = qn2
        if (data%photon(2)) then
            qn(4) = qn2; qn(6) = qn_photon
        else
            qn(4) = qn_photon; qn(6) = qn2
        end if
        call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
        call state_iterator_advance (it_hel2)
    end do
    call state_iterator_advance (it_hel1)
end do
call polarization_final (pol1)
call polarization_final (pol2)
call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
call sf_int%set_radiated ([3,4])
call sf_int%set_outgoing ([5,6])
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
if (sf_int%data%generate) then
    call sf_int%data%rng_factory%make (sf_int%rng_obj%rng)
end if
end subroutine circe1_init

```

### 10.7.5 Kinematics

Refer to the `data` component.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_generator => circe1_is_generator

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
    function circe1_is_generator (sf_int) result (flag)
        class(circe1_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
        logical :: flag
        flag = sf_int%data%is_generator ()
    end function circe1_is_generator

```

Generate free parameters, if generator mode is on. Otherwise, the parameters will be discarded.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_free => circe1_generate_free

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
    subroutine circe1_generate_free (sf_int, r, rb, x_free)
        class(circe1_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
real(default), intent(inout) :: x_free

if (sf_int%data%generate) then
  call circe_generate (r, sf_int%data%get_pdg_int (), sf_int%rng_obj)
  rb = 1 - r
  x_free = x_free * product (r)
else
  r = 0
  rb = 1
end if
end subroutine circe1_generate_free

```

Generator mode: depending on the particle codes, call one of the available `girce` generators. Illegal particle code combinations should have been caught during data initialization.

```

⟨SF circe1: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine circe_generate (x, pdg, rng_obj)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: x
  integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg
  class(rng_obj_t), intent(inout) :: rng_obj
  real(double) :: xc1, xc2
  select case (abs (pdg(1)))
  case (ELECTRON)
    select case (abs (pdg(2)))
    case (ELECTRON)
      call gircee (xc1, xc2, rng_obj = rng_obj)
    case (PHOTON)
      call girceg (xc1, xc2, rng_obj = rng_obj)
    end select
  case (PHOTON)
    select case (abs (pdg(2)))
    case (ELECTRON)
      call girceg (xc2, xc1, rng_obj = rng_obj)
    case (PHOTON)
      call gircgg (xc1, xc2, rng_obj = rng_obj)
    end select
  end select
  x = [xc1, xc2]
end subroutine circe_generate

```

Set kinematics. The  $r$  values (either from integration or from the generator call above) are copied to  $x$  unchanged, and  $f$  is unity. We store the  $x$  values, so we can use them for the evaluation later.

```

⟨SF circe1: circe1: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => circe1_complete_kinematics

⟨SF circe1: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine circe1_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
  class(circe1_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
real(default), dimension(2) :: xb1
x = r
sf_int%x = x
f = 1
xb1 = 1 - x
call sf_int%split_momenta (x, xb1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
end select
end subroutine circe1_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. In generator mode, the  $r$  values are meaningless, but we copy them anyway.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => circe1_inverse_kinematics

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe1_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(circe1_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default), dimension(2) :: xb1
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    r = x
    rb = 1 - x
    sf_int%x = x
    f = 1
    if (set_mom) then
      xb1 = 1 - x
      call sf_int%split_momenta (x, xb1)
      select case (sf_int%status)
      case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS); f = 0
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine circe1_inverse_kinematics

```

### 10.7.6 CIRCE1 application

CIRCE is applied for the two beams at once. We can safely assume that no structure functions are applied before this, so the incoming particles are on-shell electrons/positrons.

The scale is ignored.

```

<SF circe1: circe1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => circe1_apply

```

```

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
subroutine circe1_apply (sf_int, scale)
  class(circe1_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  real(default), dimension(2) :: xb
  real(double), dimension(2) :: xc
  real(double), parameter :: one = 1
  associate (data => sf_int%data)
    xc = sf_int%x
    xb = 1 - sf_int%x
    if (data%generate) then
      sf_int%f = 1
    else
      sf_int%f = 0
      if (all (sf_int%continuum)) then
        sf_int%f = circe (xc(1), xc(2), data%pdg_in(1), data%pdg_in(2))
      end if
      if (sf_int%continuum(2) .and. sf_int%peak(1)) then
        sf_int%f = sf_int%f &
          + circe (one, xc(2), data%pdg_in(1), data%pdg_in(2)) &
          * peak (xb(1), data%eps)
      end if
      if (sf_int%continuum(1) .and. sf_int%peak(2)) then
        sf_int%f = sf_int%f &
          + circe (xc(1), one, data%pdg_in(1), data%pdg_in(2)) &
          * peak (xb(2), data%eps)
      end if
      if (all (sf_int%peak)) then
        sf_int%f = sf_int%f &
          + circe (one, one, data%pdg_in(1), data%pdg_in(2)) &
          * peak (xb(1), data%eps) * peak (xb(2), data%eps)
      end if
    end if
  end associate
  call interaction_set_matrix_element &
    (sf_int%interaction_t, cmplx (sf_int%f, kind=default))
  sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine circe1_apply

```

This is a smeared delta peak at zero, as an endpoint singularity. We choose an exponentially decreasing function, starting at zero, with integral (from 0 to 1)  $1 - e^{-1/\epsilon}$ . For small  $\epsilon$ , this reduces to one.

```

<SF circe1: procedures>+≡
function peak (x, eps) result (f)
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, eps
  real(default) :: f
  f = exp (-x / eps) / eps
end function peak

```

## 10.7.7 Unit tests

```

<SF circe1: public>+≡

```

```

public :: sf_circe1_test
<SF circe1: tests>≡
  subroutine sf_circe1_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <SF circe1: execute tests>
  end subroutine sf_circe1_test

```

## Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF circe1: execute tests>≡
  call test (sf_circe1_1, "sf_circe1_1", &
    "structure function configuration", &
    u, results)
<SF circe1: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_circe1_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1, pdg2
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe1_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
      &CIRCE structure function data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
    pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

    allocate (circe1_data_t :: data)
    call data%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
    write (u, "(A)")

    select type (data)
    type is (circe1_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, &
        sqrts = 500._default, &

```



```

        eps = 1e-6_default, &
        out_photon = [.false., .false.], &
        ver = 0, &
        rev = 0, &
        acc = "SBAND", &
        chat = 0)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
pdg2 = pdg_out(2)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1, pdg2

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe1_1"

end subroutine sf_circe1_1

```

## Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the PDF builtin structure function.

```

<SF circe1: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_circe1_2, "sf_circe1_2", &
    "structure function instance", &
    u, results)

<SF circe1: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_circe1_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
    type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: q
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe1_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &

```

```

        &circe1 structure function object"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv(1), ELECTRON, model)
call flavor_init (flv(2), -ELECTRON, model)
pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (circe1_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (circe1_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, &
        sqrts = 500._default, &
        eps = 1e-6_default, &
        out_photon = [.false., .false.], &
        ver = 0, &
        rev = 0, &
        acc = "SBAND", &
        chat = 0)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.95,0.85."
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))

```

```

allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = [0.9_default, 0.8_default]
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1, 2])

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe1_2"

end subroutine sf_circe1_2

```

## Generator mode

Construct and evaluate a structure function object in generator mode.

*(SF circe1: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (sf_circe1_3, "sf_circe1_3", &
          "generator mode", &
          u, results)
<SF circe1: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_circe1_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: f, x_free

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe1_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
                    &circe1 structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
                             var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv(1), ELECTRON, model)
  call flavor_init (flv(2), -ELECTRON, model)
  pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
  pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  allocate (circe1_data_t :: data)
  allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
  select type (data)
  type is (circe1_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in, &
                   sqrts = 500._default, &
                   eps = 1e-6_default, &
                   out_photon = [.false., .false.], &
                   ver = 0, &
                   rev = 0, &
                   acc = "SBAND", &
                   chat = 0)
    call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
  end select

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])
select type (sf_int)
type is (circe1_t)
    call sf_int%rng_obj%rng%init (3)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E,-sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate x"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0
rb = 0
x_free = 1
call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe1_3"

```

```
end subroutine sf_circe1_3
```

## 10.8 Lepton Collider Beamstrahlung and Photon collider: CIRCE2

```
<sf_circe2.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module sf_circe2  
  
  <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!  
  <Use strings>  
  <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use os_interface  
    use unit_tests  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use rng_base  
    use selectors  
    use pdg_arrays  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use helicities  
    use quantum_numbers  
    use state_matrices  
    use polarizations  
    use interactions  
    use sf_aux  
    use sf_base  
    use circe2, circe2_rng_t => rng_type !NODEP!  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <SF circe2: public>  
  
  <SF circe2: types>  
  
contains  
  
  <SF circe2: procedures>  
  
  <SF circe2: tests>  
  
end module sf_circe2
```

### 10.8.1 Physics

CIRCE2 describes photon spectra Beamstrahlung is applied before ISR. The CIRCE2 implementation has a single structure function for both beams (which makes sense since it has to be switched on or off for both beams simultaneously).

## 10.8.2 The CIRCE2 data block

The CIRCE2 parameters are: file and collider specification, incoming (= outgoing) particles. The luminosity is returned by `circe2_luminosity`.

```
<SF circe2: public>≡
  public :: circe2_data_t

<SF circe2: types>≡
  type, extends (sf_data_t) :: circe2_data_t
  private
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv_in
    integer, dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    real(default) :: sqrts = 0
    logical :: polarized = .false.
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(string_t) :: filename
    type(string_t) :: file
    type(string_t) :: design
    real(default) :: lumi = 0
    real(default), dimension(4) :: lumi_hel_frac = 0
    integer, dimension(0:4) :: h1 = [0, -1, -1, 1, 1]
    integer, dimension(0:4) :: h2 = [0, -1, 1, -1, 1]
    integer :: error = 1
  contains
    <SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>
  end type circe2_data_t

<SF circe2: types>+≡
  type(circe2_state) :: circe2_global_state

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => circe2_data_init

<SF circe2: procedures>≡
  subroutine circe2_data_init &
    (data, os_data, model, pdg_in, sqrts, polarized, file, design)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    logical, intent(in) :: polarized
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: file, design
    integer :: h
    data%model => model
    if (any (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) /= 1)) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: incoming beam particles must be unique")
    end if
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in(1), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(1), 1), model)
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in(2), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(2), 1), model)
    data%pdg_in = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in)
    data%sqrts = sqrts
    data%polarized = polarized
```



```

data%filename = file
data%design = design
call data%check_file (os_data)
call circe2_load (circe2_global_state, trim (char(data%file)), &
    trim (char(data%design)), data%sqrts, data%error)
data%lumi = circe2_luminosity (circe2_global_state, data%pdg_in, [0, 0])
call data%check ()
if (data%polarized) then
    do h = 1, 4
        data%lumi_hel_frac(h) = &
            circe2_luminosity (circe2_global_state, data%pdg_in, &
                [data%h1(h), data%h2(h)]) &
            / data%lumi
    end do
end if
end subroutine circe2_data_init

```

Activate the generator mode. We import a RNG factory into the data type, which can then spawn RNG generator objects.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+=
    procedure :: set_generator_mode => circe2_data_set_generator_mode

<SF circe2: procedures>+=
    subroutine circe2_data_set_generator_mode (data, rng_factory)
        class(circe2_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
        class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng_factory
        call move_alloc (from = rng_factory, to = data%rng_factory)
    end subroutine circe2_data_set_generator_mode

```

Check whether the requested data file is in the system directory or in the current directory.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+=
    procedure :: check_file => circe2_check_file

<SF circe2: procedures>+=
    subroutine circe2_check_file (data, os_data)
        class(circe2_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        logical :: exist
        type(string_t) :: file
        file = data%filename
        inquire (file = char (file), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
            data%file = file
        else
            file = os_data%whizard_circe2path // "/" // data%filename
            inquire (file = char (file), exist = exist)
            if (exist) then
                data%file = file
            else
                call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: data file '" // char (data%filename) &
                    // "' not found")
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine circe2_check_file
```

Handle error conditions.

```
<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: check => circe2_data_check

<SF circe2: procedures>+=
  subroutine circe2_data_check (data)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_photon, flv_electron
    call flavor_init (flv_photon, PHOTON, data%model)
    if (flavor_get_pdg (flv_photon) == UNDEFINED) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: model must contain photon")
    end if
    call flavor_init (flv_electron, ELECTRON, data%model)
    if (flavor_get_pdg (flv_electron) == UNDEFINED) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: model must contain electron")
    end if
    if (any (abs (data%pdg_in) /= PHOTON .and. abs (data%pdg_in) /= ELECTRON)) &
      then
        call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: applicable only for e+e- or photon collisions")
      end if
    select case (data%error)
    case (-1)
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: data file not found.")
    case (-2)
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: beam parameters do not match data file.")
    case (-3)
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: invalid format of data file.")
    case (-4)
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: data file too large.")
    end select
    if (data%lumi == 0) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: luminosity vanishes for specified beams.")
    end if
  end subroutine circe2_data_check
```

Output

```
<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write => circe2_data_write

<SF circe2: procedures>+=
  subroutine circe2_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, h
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "CIRCE2 data:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "file = ", char(data%filename)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "design = ", char(data%design)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "sqrts = ", data%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A,A)") "prt_in = ", &
      char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(1))), &
```

```

        ", ", char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(2)))
write (u, "(3x,A,L1)"          "polarized = ", data%polarized
write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "luminosity = ", data%lumi
if (data%polarized) then
  do h = 1, 4
    write (u, "(6x,'(',I2,1x,I2,')',1x,'=',1x)", advance="no") &
      data%h1(h), data%h2(h)
    write (u, "(6x, " // FMT_19 // ")") data%lumi_hel_frac(h)
  end do
end if
call data%rng_factory%write (u)
end subroutine circe2_data_write

```

This is always in generator mode.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_generator => circe2_data_is_generator

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  function circe2_data_is_generator (data) result (flag)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function circe2_data_is_generator

```

The number of parameters is two, collinear splitting for the two beams.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => circe2_data_get_n_par

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  function circe2_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    n = 2
  end function circe2_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. They are equal to the incoming ones.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => circe2_data_get_pdg_out

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer :: i, n
    n = 2
    do i = 1, n
      pdg_out(i) = data%pdg_in(i)
    end do
  end subroutine circe2_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF circe2: circe2 data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => circe2_data_allocate_sf_int

```

```

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(circe2_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (circe2_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine circe2_data_allocate_sf_int

```

### 10.8.3 Random Number Generator for CIRCE

The CIRCE implementation now supports a generic random-number generator object that allows for a local state as a component. To support this, we must extend the abstract type provided by CIRCE and delegate the generator call to the (also abstract) RNG used by WHIZARD.

```

<SF circe2: types>+≡
  type, extends (circe2_rng_t) :: rng_obj_t
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
  contains
    procedure :: generate => rng_obj_generate
  end type rng_obj_t

```

```

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rng_obj_generate (rng_obj, u)
    class(rng_obj_t), intent(inout) :: rng_obj
    real(default), intent(out) :: u
    real(default) :: x
    call rng_obj%rng%generate (x)
    u = x
  end subroutine rng_obj_generate

```

### 10.8.4 The CIRCE2 object

For CIRCE2 spectra it does not make sense to describe the state matrix as a radiation interaction, even if photons originate from laser backscattering. Instead, it is a  $2 \rightarrow 2$  interaction where the incoming particles are identical to the outgoing ones.

The current implementation of CIRCE2 does support polarization and classical correlations, but no entanglement, so the density matrix of the outgoing particles is diagonal. The incoming particles are unpolarized (user-defined polarization for beams is meaningless, since polarization is described by the data file). The outgoing particles are polarized or polarization-averaged, depending on user request.

When assigning matrix elements, we scan the previously initialized state matrix. For each entry, we extract helicity and call the structure function. In the unpolarized case, the helicity is undefined and replaced by value zero. In the polarized case, there are four entries. If the generator is used, only one entry is nonzero in each call. Which one, is determined by comparing with a previously (randomly, distributed by relative luminosity) selected pair of helicities.

```

<SF circe2: types>+≡

```

```

type, extends (sf_int_t) :: circe2_t
  type(circe2_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
  type(rng_obj_t) :: rng_obj
  type(selector_t) :: selector
  integer :: h_sel = 0
contains
  <SF circe2: circe2: TBP>
end type circe2_t

```

Type string: show file and design of CIRCE2 structure function.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => circe2_type_string
<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  function circe2_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(circe2_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "CIRCE2: " // object%data%design
    else
      string = "CIRCE2: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function circe2_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => circe2_write
<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(circe2_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "CIRCE2 data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine circe2_write

```

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => circe2_init
<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_init (sf_int, data)
    class(circe2_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    logical, dimension(4) :: mask_h
    real(default), dimension(0) :: null_array
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(4) :: mask
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn

```

```

type(helicity_t) :: hel
integer :: h
select type (data)
type is (circe2_data_t)
  mask_h(1:2) = .true.
  mask_h(3:4) = .not. data%polarized
  mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., mask_h)
  call sf_int%base_init (mask, [0._default, 0._default], &
    null_array, [0._default, 0._default])
  sf_int%data => data
  if (data%polarized) then
    call sf_int%selector%init (data%lumi_hel_frac)
  end if
  call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), flv = data%flv_in(1))
  call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), flv = data%flv_in(2))
  if (data%polarized) then
    do h = 1, 4
      call helicity_init (hel, data%h1(h))
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), flv = data%flv_in(1), hel = hel)
      call helicity_init (hel, data%h2(h))
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(4), flv = data%flv_in(2), hel = hel)
      call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
    end do
  else
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), flv = data%flv_in(1))
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(4), flv = data%flv_in(2))
    call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
  end if
  call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
  call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
  call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3,4])
  call sf_int%data%rng_factory%make (sf_int%rng_obj%rng)
  sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
end subroutine circe2_init

```

### 10.8.5 Kinematics

Refer to the data component.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_generator => circe2_is_generator

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  function circe2_is_generator (sf_int) result (flag)
    class(circe2_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
    logical :: flag
    flag = sf_int%data%is_generator ()
  end function circe2_is_generator

```

Generate free parameters. We first select a helicity, which we have to store, then generate  $x$  values for that helicity.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡

```

```

procedure :: generate_free => circe2_generate_whizard_free
<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
subroutine circe2_generate_whizard_free (sf_int, r, rb, x_free)
  class(circe2_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
  real(default), intent(inout) :: x_free
  integer :: h_sel
  if (sf_int%data%polarized) then
    call sf_int%selector%generate (sf_int%rng_obj%rng, h_sel)
  else
    h_sel = 0
  end if
  sf_int%h_sel = h_sel
  call circe2_generate_whizard (r, sf_int%data%pdg_in, &
    [sf_int%data%h1(h_sel), sf_int%data%h2(h_sel)], &
    sf_int%rng_obj)
  rb = 1 - r
  x_free = x_free * product (r)
end subroutine circe2_generate_whizard_free

```

Generator mode: call the CIRCE2 generator for the given particles and helicities. (For unpolarized generation, helicities are zero.)

```

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
subroutine circe2_generate_whizard (x, pdg, hel, rng_obj)
  real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: x
  integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg
  integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: hel
  class(rng_obj_t), intent(inout) :: rng_obj
  call circe2_generate (circe2_global_state, rng_obj, x, pdg, hel)
end subroutine circe2_generate_whizard

```

Set kinematics. Trivial here.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
procedure :: complete_kinematics => circe2_complete_kinematics
<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
subroutine circe2_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
  class(circe2_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
  logical, intent(in) :: map
  if (map) then
    call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: map flag not supported")
  else
    x = r
    f = 1
  end if
  call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
end subroutine circe2_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => circe2_inverse_kinematics

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(circe2_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    if (map) then
      call msg_fatal ("CIRCE2: map flag not supported")
    else
      r = x
      rb = 1 - r
      f = 1
    end if
    if (set_mom) then
      call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
    end if
  end subroutine circe2_inverse_kinematics

```

### 10.8.6 CIRCE2 application

This function works on both beams. In polarized mode, we set only the selected helicity. In unpolarized mode, the interaction has only one entry, and the factor is unity.

```

<SF circe2: circe2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => circe2_apply

<SF circe2: procedures>+≡
  subroutine circe2_apply (sf_int, scale)
    class(circe2_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    complex(default) :: f
    integer :: h
    associate (data => sf_int%data)
      f = 1
      if (data%polarized) then
        h = sf_int%h_sel
      else
        h = 1
      end if
      call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, h, f)
    end associate
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
  end subroutine circe2_apply

```



### 10.8.7 Unit tests

```
<SF circe2: public>+≡
  public :: sf_circe2_test

<SF circe2: tests>≡
  subroutine sf_circe2_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF circe2: execute tests>
  end subroutine sf_circe2_test
```

#### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```
<SF circe2: execute tests>≡
  call test (sf_circe2_1, "sf_circe2_1", &
    "structure function configuration", &
    u, results)

<SF circe2: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_circe2_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1, pdg2
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe2_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
      &CIRCE structure function data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    pdg_in(1) = PHOTON
    pdg_in(2) = PHOTON

    allocate (circe2_data_t :: data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize (unpolarized)"
    write (u, "(A)")
```

```

select type (data)
type is (circe2_data_t)
  call data%init (os_data, model, pdg_in, &
    sqrts = 500._default, &
    polarized = .false., &
    file = var_str ("teslagg_500_polavg.circe"), &
    design = var_str ("TESLA/GG"))
  call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
pdg2 = pdg_out(2)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1, pdg2

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize (polarized)"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)

select type (data)
type is (circe2_data_t)
  call data%init (os_data, model, pdg_in, &
    sqrts = 500._default, &
    polarized = .true., &
    file = var_str ("teslagg_500.circe"), &
    design = var_str ("TESLA/GG"))
  call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
end select

call data%write (u)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe2_1"

end subroutine sf_circe2_1

```

### Generator mode, unpolarized

Construct and evaluate a structure function object in generator mode.

*<SF circe2: execute tests>+≡*

```

call test (sf_circe2_2, "sf_circe2_2", &
  "generator, unpolarized", &
  u, results)

```

```

<SF circe2: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_circe2_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: f, x_free

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe2_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &circe2 structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv(1), PHOTON, model)
  call flavor_init (flv(2), PHOTON, model)
  pdg_in(1) = PHOTON
  pdg_in(2) = PHOTON

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  allocate (circe2_data_t :: data)
  allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
  select type (data)
  type is (circe2_data_t)
    call data%init (os_data, model, pdg_in, &
      sqrts = 500._default, &
      polarized = .false., &
      file = var_str ("teslagg_500_polavg.circe"), &
      design = var_str ("TESLA/GG"))
    call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
  end select

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
  call sf_int%init (data)
  call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])
  select type (sf_int)

```

```

type is (circe2_t)
  call sf_int%rng_obj%rng%init (3)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E,-sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate x"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0
rb = 0
x_free = 1
call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe2_2"

end subroutine sf_circe2_2

```

## Generator mode, polarized

Construct and evaluate a structure function object in generator mode.

```

<SF circe2: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_circe2_3, "sf_circe2_3", &
    "generator, polarized", &
    u, results)

<SF circe2: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_circe2_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: f, x_free

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_circe2_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
      &circe2 structure function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv(1), PHOTON, model)
    call flavor_init (flv(2), PHOTON, model)
    pdg_in(1) = PHOTON
    pdg_in(2) = PHOTON

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (circe2_data_t :: data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    select type (data)
    type is (circe2_data_t)
      call data%init (os_data, model, pdg_in, &
        sqrts = 500._default, &
        polarized = .true., &
        file = var_str ("teslagg_500.circe"), &
        design = var_str ("TESLA/GG"))
      call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])
select type (sf_int)
type is (circe2_t)
    call sf_int%rng_obj%rng%init (3)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E,-sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate x"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0
rb = 0
x_free = 1
call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_circe2_3"

end subroutine sf_circe2_3

```

## 10.9 Energy-scan spectrum

This spectrum is actually a trick that allows us to plot the c.m. energy dependence of a cross section without scanning the input energy. We start with the observation that a spectrum  $f(x)$ , applied to one of the incoming beams only, results in a cross section

$$\sigma = \int dx f(x) \hat{\sigma}(xs). \quad (10.71)$$

We want to compute the distribution of  $E = \sqrt{\hat{s}} = \sqrt{xs}$ , i.e.,

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dE} = \frac{2\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{s}} \frac{d\sigma}{dx} = \frac{2\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{s}} f(x) \hat{\sigma}(xs), \quad (10.72)$$

so if we set

$$f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{s}}{2\sqrt{x}}, \quad (10.73)$$

we get the distribution

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dE} = \hat{\sigma}(\hat{s} = E^2). \quad (10.74)$$

We implement this as a spectrum with a single parameter  $x$ . The parameters for the individual beams are computed as  $x_i = \sqrt{x}$ , so they are equal and the kinematics is always symmetric.

`<sf_escan.f90>≡`  
`<File header>`

`module sf_escan`

`<Use kinds>`

`<Use strings>`

`<Use file utils>`

`use limits, only: FMT_12 !NODEP!`

`use diagnostics !NODEP!`

`use lorentz !NODEP!`

`use os_interface`

`use unit_tests`

`use pdg_arrays`

`use models`

`use flavors`

`use helicities`

`use colors`

`use quantum_numbers`

`use state_matrices`

`use polarizations`

`use interactions`

`use sf_aux`

`use sf_base`

`<Standard module head>`

`<SF_escan: public>`

`<SF_escan: types>`

```

contains

<SF escan: procedures>

<SF escan: tests>

end module sf_escan

```

### 10.9.1 Data type

The `norm` is unity if the total cross section should be normalized to one, and  $\sqrt{s}$  if it should be normalized to the total energy. In the latter case, the differential distribution  $d\sigma/d\sqrt{\hat{s}}$  coincides with the partonic cross section  $\hat{\sigma}$  as a function of  $\sqrt{\hat{s}}$ .

```

<SF escan: public>≡
    public :: escan_data_t

<SF escan: types>≡
    type, extends(sf_data_t) :: escan_data_t
        private
            type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: flv_in
            integer, dimension(2) :: n_flv = 0
            real(default) :: norm = 1
        contains
            <SF escan: escan data: TBP>
        end type escan_data_t

<SF escan: escan data: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => escan_data_init

<SF escan: procedures>≡
    subroutine escan_data_init (data, model, pdg_in, norm)
        class(escan_data_t), intent(out) :: data
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg_in
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: norm
        real(default), dimension(2) :: m2
        integer :: i, j
        data%n_flv = pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in)
        allocate (data%flv_in (maxval (data%n_flv), 2))
        do i = 1, 2
            do j = 1, data%n_flv(i)
                call flavor_init (data%flv_in(j, i), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(i), j), &
                    model)
            end do
        end do
        m2 = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1,:))
        do i = 1, 2
            if (any (flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1:data%n_flv(i),i)) /= m2(i))) then
                call msg_fatal ("Energy scan: incoming particle mass must be uniform")
            end if
        end do
        if (present (norm)) data%norm = norm
    end subroutine

```



```
end subroutine escan_data_init
```

Output

```
<SF escan: escan data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => escan_data_write

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  subroutine escan_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(escan_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, i, j
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Energy-scan data:"
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "prt_in = "
    do i = 1, 2
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(',',1x)", advance="no")
      do j = 1, data%n_flv(i)
        if (j > 1) write (u, "(:',)", advance="no")
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") &
          char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(j,i)))
      end do
    end do
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") "norm   =", data%norm
  end subroutine escan_data_write
```

Kinematics is completely collinear, hence there is only one parameter for a pair spectrum.

```
<SF escan: escan data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => escan_data_get_n_par

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  function escan_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(escan_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    n = 1
  end function escan_data_get_n_par
```

Return the outgoing particles PDG codes. This is always the same as the incoming particle, where we use two indices for the two beams.

```
<SF escan: escan data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => escan_data_get_pdg_out

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  subroutine escan_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(escan_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer :: i, n
    n = 2
    do i = 1, n
      pdg_out(i) = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in(1:data%n_flv(i),i))
    end do
```

```
end subroutine escan_data_get_pdg_out
```

Allocate the interaction record.

```
<SF escan: escan data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => escan_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  subroutine escan_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(escan_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (escan_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine escan_data_allocate_sf_int
```

## 10.9.2 The Energy-scan object

This is a spectrum, not a radiation. We create an interaction with two incoming and two outgoing particles, flavor, color, and helicity being carried through.  $x$  nevertheless is only one-dimensional, as we are always using only one beam parameter.

```
<SF escan: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: escan_t
    type(escan_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
  contains
    <SF escan: escan: TBP>
  end type escan_t
```

Type string: for the energy scan this is just a dummy function.

```
<SF escan: escan: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => escan_type_string

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  function escan_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(escan_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "Escan: energy scan"
    else
      string = "Escan: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function escan_type_string
```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```
<SF escan: escan: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => escan_write

<SF escan: procedures>+≡
  subroutine escan_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(escan_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
```

```

u = output_unit (unit)
if (associated (object%data)) then
    call object%data%write (u)
    call object%base_write (u, testflag)
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Energy scan data: [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine escan_write

```

*(SF escan: escan: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init => escan_init

```

*(SF escan: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine escan_init (sf_int, data)
    class(escan_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(4) :: mask
    integer, dimension(4) :: hel_lock
    real(default), dimension(2) :: m2
    real(default), dimension(0) :: mr2
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn_fc, qn_hel, qn
    type(polarization_t) :: pol1, pol2
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel1, it_hel2
    integer :: j1, j2
    select type (data)
    type is (escan_data_t)
        hel_lock = [3, 4, 1, 2]
        m2 = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in(1,:))
        call sf_int%base_init (mask, m2, mr2, m2, hel_lock = hel_lock)
        sf_int%data => data
        do j1 = 1, data%n_flv(1)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(1), &
                flv = data%flv_in(j1,1), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(j1,1)))
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(3), &
                flv = data%flv_in(j1,1), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(j1,1)))
            call polarization_init_generic (pol1, data%flv_in(j1,1))
        do j2 = 1, data%n_flv(2)
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(2), &
                flv = data%flv_in(j2,2), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(j2,2)))
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(4), &
                flv = data%flv_in(j2,2), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(j2,2)))
            call polarization_init_generic (pol2, data%flv_in(j2,2))
            call state_iterator_init (it_hel1, pol1%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel1))
            qn_hel(1:1) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel1)
            qn_hel(3:3) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel1)
            call state_iterator_init (it_hel2, pol2%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel2))
            qn_hel(2:2) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel2)
            qn_hel(4:4) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel2)

```

```

        qn = qn_hel .merge. qn_fc
        call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
        call state_iterator_advance (it_hel2)
    end do
    call state_iterator_advance (it_hel1)
end do
call polarization_final (pol2)
end do
call polarization_final (pol1)
end do
call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3,4])
call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
end subroutine escan_init

```

### 10.9.3 Kinematics

Set kinematics. We have a single parameter, but reduce both beams. The map flag is ignored.

```

<SF escan: escan: TBP>+=
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => escan_complete_kinematics

<SF escan: procedures>+=
  subroutine escan_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
    class(escan_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default) :: sqrt_x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    x = r
    sqrt_x = sqrt (x(1))
    if (sqrt_x > 0) then
      f = 1 / (2 * sqrt_x)
    else
      f = 0
      sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
      return
    end if
    call sf_int%reduce_momenta ([sqrt_x, sqrt_x])
  end subroutine escan_complete_kinematics

```

Recover  $x$ . The base procedure should return two momentum fractions for the two beams, while we have only one parameter. This is the product of the extracted momentum fractions.

```

<SF escan: escan: TBP>+=
  procedure :: recover_x => escan_recover_x

```

```

<SF escan: procedures>+=
subroutine escan_recover_x (sf_int, x, x_free)
  class(escan_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), intent(inout), optional :: x_free
  real(default), dimension(2) :: xi
  call sf_int%base_recover_x (xi, x_free)
  x = product (xi)
end subroutine escan_recover_x

```

Compute inverse kinematics.

```

<SF escan: escan: TBP>+=
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => escan_inverse_kinematics

<SF escan: procedures>+=
subroutine escan_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
  class(escan_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
  real(default), intent(out) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
  logical, intent(in) :: map
  logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
  real(default) :: sqrt_x
  logical :: set_mom
  set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
  sqrt_x = sqrt (x(1))
  if (sqrt_x > 0) then
    f = 1 / (2 * sqrt_x)
  else
    f = 0
    sf_int%status = SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS
    return
  end if
  r = x
  rb = 1 - r
  if (set_mom) then
    call sf_int%reduce_momenta ([sqrt_x, sqrt_x])
  end if
end subroutine escan_inverse_kinematics

```

#### 10.9.4 Energy scan application

Here, we insert the predefined norm.

```

<SF escan: escan: TBP>+=
  procedure :: apply => escan_apply

<SF escan: procedures>+=
subroutine escan_apply (sf_int, scale)
  class(escan_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  real(default) :: f
  associate (data => sf_int%data)

```

```

        f = data%norm
    end associate
    call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
        cmplx (f, kind=default))
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine escan_apply

```

### 10.9.5 Unit tests

```

<SF escan: public>+≡
    public :: sf_escan_test

<SF escan: tests>≡
    subroutine sf_escan_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF escan: execute tests>
    end subroutine sf_escan_test

```

#### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF escan: execute tests>≡
    call test (sf_escan_1, "sf_escan_1", &
        "structure function configuration", &
        u, results)

<SF escan: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_escan_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_out
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1, pdg2
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_escan_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize and display &
            &energy-scan structure function data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
            var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
        pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
        pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

        allocate (escan_data_t :: data)
        select type (data)

```

```

type is (escan_data_t)
  call data%init (model, pdg_in, norm = 2._default)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
pdg2 = pdg_out(2)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1, pdg2

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: sf_escan_1"

end subroutine sf_escan_1

```

g@

### Probe the structure-function object

Active the beam event reader, generate an event.

```

<SF escan: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_escan_2, "sf_escan_2", &
    "generate event", &
    u, results)

<SF escan: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_escan_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: x_free, f

  write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: sf_escan_2"
  write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: initialize and display &
    &beam-events structure function data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()

```

```

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
    var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv(1), ELECTRON, model)
call flavor_init (flv(2), -ELECTRON, model)
pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (escan_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (escan_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set dummy parameters and generate x"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.8
rb = 1 - r
x_free = 1

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

```



```

call sf_int%recover_x (x, x_free)
call sf_int%inverse_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "xf=", x_free

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_escan_2"

end subroutine sf_escan_2

```

## 10.10 Using beam event data

Instead of an analytic beam description, beam data may be provided in form of an event file. In its most simple form, the event file contains pairs of  $x$  values, relative to nominal beam energies. More advanced formats may include polarization, etc. The current implementation carries beam polarization through, if specified.

The code is very similar to the energy scan described above.

```

<sf_beam_events.f90>≡
<File header>

module sf_beam_events

  <Use kinds>
  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use os_interface
  use unit_tests
  use pdg_arrays
  use models

```

```

    use flavors
    use helicities
    use colors
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices
    use polarizations
    use interactions
    use sf_aux
    use sf_base

    <Standard module head>

    <SF beam events: public>

    <SF beam events: types>

contains

    <SF beam events: procedures>

    <SF beam events: tests>

end module sf_beam_events

```

### 10.10.1 Data type

```

<SF beam events: public>≡
    public :: beam_events_data_t

<SF beam events: types>≡
    type, extends(sf_data_t) :: beam_events_data_t
        private
            type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv_in
            type(string_t) :: dir
            type(string_t) :: file
            integer :: unit = 0
            logical :: warn_eof = .true.
        contains
            <SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>
        end type beam_events_data_t

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => beam_events_data_init

<SF beam events: procedures>≡
    subroutine beam_events_data_init (data, model, pdg_in, dir, file, warn_eof)
        class(beam_events_data_t), intent(out) :: data
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: pdg_in
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: dir
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
        logical, intent(in), optional :: warn_eof
        if (any (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) /= 1)) then
            call msg_fatal ("Beam events: incoming beam particles must be unique")

```

```

end if
call flavor_init (data%flv_in(1), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(1), 1), model)
call flavor_init (data%flv_in(2), pdg_array_get (pdg_in(2), 1), model)
data%dir = dir
data%file = file
if (present (warn_eof)) data%warn_eof = warn_eof
end subroutine beam_events_data_init

```

Return true since this spectrum is always in generator mode.

```

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_generator => beam_events_data_is_generator

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  function beam_events_data_is_generator (data) result (flag)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function beam_events_data_is_generator

```

The number of parameters is two. They are free parameters.

```

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => beam_events_data_get_n_par

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  function beam_events_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n
    n = 2
  end function beam_events_data_get_n_par

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => beam_events_data_get_pdg_out

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_events_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer :: i, n
    n = 2
    do i = 1, n
      pdg_out(i) = flavor_get_pdg (data%flv_in(i))
    end do
  end subroutine beam_events_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => beam_events_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_events_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (beam_events_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine beam_events_data_allocate_sf_int

```

Output

```

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => beam_events_data_write

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_events_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam-event file data:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A,A)") "prt_in = ", &
      char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(1))), &
      ", ", char (flavor_get_name (data%flv_in(2)))
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "file   = '", char (data%file), "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)")  "unit   = ", data%unit
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)")  "warn   = ", data%warn_eof
  end subroutine beam_events_data_write

```

The data file needs to be opened and closed explicitly:

```

<SF beam events: beam events data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: open => beam_events_data_open
  procedure :: close => beam_events_data_close

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine beam_events_data_open (data)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    type(string_t) :: filename
    logical :: exist
    if (data%unit == 0) then
      filename = data%file
      if (filename == "") &
        call msg_fatal ("Beam events: $beam_events_file is not set")
      inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
      if (exist) then
        call msg_message ("Beam events: reading from file '" &
          // char (data%file) // "'")
        data%unit = free_unit ()
        open (unit = data%unit, file = char (filename), action = "read", &
          status = "old")
      else
        filename = data%dir // "/" // data%file
        inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
          call msg_message ("Beam events: reading from file '" &
            // char (data%file) // "'")
          data%unit = free_unit ()
          open (unit = data%unit, file = char (filename), action = "read", &
            status = "old")
        else
          call msg_fatal ("Beam events: file '" &
            // char (data%file) // "' not found")
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine beam_events_data_open

```

```

        end if
    else
        call msg_bug ("Beam events: file '" &
            // char (data%file) // "' is already open")
    end if
end subroutine beam_events_data_open

subroutine beam_events_data_close (data)
    class(beam_events_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    if (data%unit /= 0) then
        close (data%unit)
        call msg_message ("Beam events: closed file '" &
            // char (data%file) // "'")
        data%unit = 0
    end if
end subroutine beam_events_data_close

```

### 10.10.2 The beam events object

Flavor and polarization carried through, no radiated particles.

```

<SF beam events: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_int_t) :: beam_events_t
        type(beam_events_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
        integer :: count = 0
    contains
        <SF beam events: beam events: TBP>
    end type beam_events_t

```

Type string: show beam events file.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>≡
    procedure :: type_string => beam_events_type_string

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    function beam_events_type_string (object) result (string)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(in) :: object
        type(string_t) :: string
        if (associated (object%data)) then
            string = "Beam events: " // object%data%file
        else
            string = "Beam events: [undefined]"
        end if
    end function beam_events_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => beam_events_write

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine beam_events_write (object, unit, testflag)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    end subroutine beam_events_write

```

```

integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit)
if (associated (object%data)) then
    call object%data%write (u)
    call object%base_write (u, testflag)
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Beam events data: [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine beam_events_write

```

*<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => beam_events_init

```

*<SF beam events: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine beam_events_init (sf_int, data)
    class(beam_events_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    real(default), dimension(2) :: m2
    real(default), dimension(0) :: mr2
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(4) :: mask
    integer, dimension(4) :: hel_lock
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(4) :: qn_fc, qn_hel, qn
    type(polarization_t) :: pol1, pol2
    type(state_iterator_t) :: it_hel1, it_hel2
    integer :: i
    select type (data)
    type is (beam_events_data_t)
        m2 = flavor_get_mass (data%flv_in) ** 2
        hel_lock = [3, 4, 1, 2]
        mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .false.)
        call sf_int%base_init (mask, m2, mr2, m2, hel_lock = hel_lock)
        sf_int%data => data
        do i = 1, 2
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(i), &
                flv = data%flv_in(i), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i)))
            call quantum_numbers_init (qn_fc(i+2), &
                flv = data%flv_in(i), &
                col = color_from_flavor (data%flv_in(i)))
        end do
        call polarization_init_generic (pol1, data%flv_in(1))
        call state_iterator_init (it_hel1, pol1%state)
        do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel1))
            qn_hel(1:1) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel1)
            qn_hel(3:3) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel1)
            call polarization_init_generic (pol2, data%flv_in(2))
            call state_iterator_init (it_hel2, pol2%state)
            do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it_hel2))
                qn_hel(2:2) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel2)
                qn_hel(4:4) = state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it_hel2)
                qn = qn_hel .merge. qn_fc
                call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
                call state_iterator_advance (it_hel2)
            end do
        end do
    end select
end subroutine beam_events_init

```

```

        call polarization_final (pol2)
        call state_iterator_advance (it_hell)
    end do
    call polarization_final (pol2)
    call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
    call sf_int%set_incoming ([1,2])
    call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3,4])
    call sf_int%data%open ()
    sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
end subroutine beam_events_init

```

This spectrum type needs a finalizer, which closes the data file.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => sf_beam_events_final

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine sf_beam_events_final (object)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call object%data%close ()
        call interaction_final (object%interaction_t)
    end subroutine sf_beam_events_final

```

### 10.10.3 Kinematics

Refer to the data component.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_generator => beam_events_is_generator

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    function beam_events_is_generator (sf_int) result (flag)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(in) :: sf_int
        logical :: flag
        flag = sf_int%data%is_generator ()
    end function beam_events_is_generator

```

Generate free parameters. We read them from file.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_free => beam_events_generate_free

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine beam_events_generate_free (sf_int, r, rb, x_free)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r, rb
        real(default), intent(inout) :: x_free
        integer :: iostat
        associate (data => sf_int%data)
            if (data%unit /= 0) then
                read (data%unit, fmt=*, iostat=iostat) r
                if (iostat > 0) then
                    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") &
                        "Beam events: I/O error after reading ", sf_int%count, &

```

```

        " events"
        call msg_fatal ()
    else if (iostat < 0) then
        if (sf_int%count == 0) then
            call msg_fatal ("Beam events: file is empty")
        else if (sf_int%data%warn_eof) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") &
                "Beam events: End of file after reading ", sf_int%count, &
                " events, rewinding"
            call msg_warning ()
        end if
        rewind (data%unit)
        sf_int%count = 0
        call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
    else
        sf_int%count = sf_int%count + 1
        rb = 1 - r
        x_free = x_free * product (r)
    end if
else
    call msg_bug ("Beam events: file is not open for reading")
end if
end associate
end subroutine beam_events_generate_free

```

Set kinematics. Trivial transfer since this is a pure generator.

If map is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  and consequently  $f(r) = 2r$ .

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => beam_events_complete_kinematics

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine beam_events_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        if (map) then
            call msg_fatal ("Beam events: map flag not supported")
        else
            x = r
            f = 1
        end if
        call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
    end subroutine beam_events_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Trivial in this case.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => beam_events_inverse_kinematics

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine beam_events_inverse_kinematics &

```



```

        (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
class(beam_events_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
real(default), intent(out) :: f
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
logical :: set_mom
set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
if (map) then
    call msg_fatal ("Beam events: map flag not supported")
else
    r = x
    f = 1
end if
rb = 1 - r
if (set_mom) then
    call sf_int%reduce_momenta (x)
end if
end subroutine beam_events_inverse_kinematics

```

#### 10.10.4 Beam events application

Trivial, just set the unit weight.

```

<SF beam events: beam events: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: apply => beam_events_apply

<SF beam events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine beam_events_apply (sf_int, scale)
        class(beam_events_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(default) :: f
        f = 1
        call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, &
            cmplx (f, kind=default))
        sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
    end subroutine beam_events_apply

```

#### 10.10.5 Unit tests

```

<SF beam events: public>+≡
    public :: sf_beam_events_test

<SF beam events: tests>≡
    subroutine sf_beam_events_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <SF beam events: execute tests>
    end subroutine sf_beam_events_test

```

## Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```
<SF beam events: execute tests>≡
  call test (sf_beam_events_1, "sf_beam_events_1", &
    "structure function configuration", &
    u, results)

<SF beam events: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_beam_events_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1, pdg2
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_beam_events_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
      &beam-events structure function data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
    pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

    allocate (beam_events_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (beam_events_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, var_str (""), var_str ("beam_events.dat"))
    end select

    call data%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particle codes:"
    call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
    pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
    pdg2 = pdg_out(2)
    write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1, pdg2

    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_beam_events_1"

  end subroutine sf_beam_events_1
```

g@

## Probe the structure-function object

Active the beam event reader, generate an event.

```
(SF beam events: execute tests)+≡
  call test (sf_beam_events_2, "sf_beam_events_2", &
    "generate event", &
    u, results)

(SF beam events: tests)+≡
  subroutine sf_beam_events_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
    type(vector4_t) :: k1, k2
    real(default) :: E
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
    real(default) :: x_free, f
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_beam_events_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
      &beam-events structure function data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), &
      var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv(1), ELECTRON, model)
    call flavor_init (flv(2), -ELECTRON, model)
    pdg_in(1) = ELECTRON
    pdg_in(2) = -ELECTRON

    call reset_interaction_counter ()

    allocate (beam_events_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (beam_events_data_t)
      call data%init (model, pdg_in, &
        var_str (""), var_str ("test_beam_events.dat"))
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
    call sf_int%init (data)
```

```

call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1,2])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 250
k1 = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(1))**2), 3)
k2 = vector4_moving (E,-sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv(2))**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k1, u)
call vector4_write (k2, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k1, k2])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set dummy parameters and generate x."
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0
rb = 0
x_free = 1
call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "rb=", rb
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "xf=", x_free
select type (sf_int)
type is (beam_events_t)
    write (u, "(A,1x,I0)")  "count =", sf_int%count
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%apply (scale = 0._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate more events, rewind"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (sf_int)
type is (beam_events_t)
    do i = 1, 3
        call sf_int%generate_free (r, rb, x_free)
        write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "r =", r
        write (u, "(A,1x,I0)")  "count =", sf_int%count
    end do
end select

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_beam_events_2"

end subroutine sf_beam_events_2

```

## 10.11 LHAPDF

Parton distribution functions (PDFs) are available via an interface to the LHAPDF standard library.

The default PDF for protons set is chosen to be CTEQ6ll (LO fit with LO  $\alpha_s$ ).

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    character(*), parameter, public :: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PROTON = "cteq6ll.LHpdf"
    character(*), parameter, public :: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PION   = "ABFKWPI.LHgrid"
    character(*), parameter, public :: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PHOTON = "GSG960.LHgrid"
    character(*), parameter, public :: LHAPDF6_DEFAULT_PROTON = "CT10"
```

### 10.11.1 The module

```
<sf_lhapdf.f90>≡
<File header>

    module sf_lhapdf

        <Use kinds>
        <Use strings>
        use system_dependencies, only: LHAPDF_PDFSETS_PATH !NODEP!
        use system_dependencies, only: LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE !NODEP!
        use system_dependencies, only: LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE !NODEP!
        use limits, only: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PROTON !NODEP!
        use limits, only: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PION !NODEP!
        use limits, only: LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PHOTON !NODEP!
        use limits, only: LHAPDF6_DEFAULT_PROTON !NODEP!
        use limits, only: FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!
        <Use file utils>
        use diagnostics !NODEP!
        use lorentz !NODEP!
        use unit_tests
        use os_interface
        use sm_qcd
        use pdg_arrays
        use models
        use flavors
        use colors
        use quantum_numbers
        use state_matrices
        use polarizations
        use interactions
        use sf_aux
        use sf_base
        use lhpdf !NODEP!
        use hoppet_interface

        <Standard module head>

        <SF lhpdf: public>

        <SF lhpdf: types>
```

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*

contains

*<SF lhpdf: procedures>*

*<SF lhpdf: tests>*

end module sf\_lhpdf

### 10.11.2 LHAPDF library interface

Here we specify explicit interfaces for all LHAPDF routines that we use below.

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*≡

```
interface
  subroutine InitPDFsetM (set, file)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    character(*), intent(in) :: file
  end subroutine InitPDFsetM
end interface
```

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*+≡

```
interface
  subroutine InitPDFM (set, mem)
    integer, intent(in) :: set, mem
  end subroutine InitPDFM
end interface
```

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*+≡

```
interface
  subroutine numberPDFM (set, n_members)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    integer, intent(out) :: n_members
  end subroutine numberPDFM
end interface
```

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*+≡

```
interface
  subroutine evolvePDFM (set, x, q, ff)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    double precision, intent(in) :: x, q
    double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
  end subroutine evolvePDFM
end interface
```

*<SF lhpdf: interfaces>*+≡

```
interface
  subroutine evolvePDFphotonM (set, x, q, ff, fphot)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    double precision, intent(in) :: x, q
    double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
  end subroutine evolvePDFphotonM
end interface
```

```

        double precision, intent(out) :: fphot
    end subroutine evolvePDFphotonM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    subroutine evolvePDFpM (set, x, q, s, scheme, ff)
        integer, intent(in) :: set
        double precision, intent(in) :: x, q, s
        integer, intent(in) :: scheme
        double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
    end subroutine evolvePDFpM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    subroutine GetXminM (set, mem, xmin)
        integer, intent(in) :: set, mem
        double precision, intent(out) :: xmin
    end subroutine GetXminM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    subroutine GetXmaxM (set, mem, xmax)
        integer, intent(in) :: set, mem
        double precision, intent(out) :: xmax
    end subroutine GetXmaxM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    subroutine GetQ2minM (set, mem, q2min)
        integer, intent(in) :: set, mem
        double precision, intent(out) :: q2min
    end subroutine GetQ2minM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    subroutine GetQ2maxM (set, mem, q2max)
        integer, intent(in) :: set, mem
        double precision, intent(out) :: q2max
    end subroutine GetQ2maxM
end interface

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
interface
    function has_photon () result(flag)
        logical :: flag
    end function has_photon
end interface

```



### 10.11.3 The LHAPDF status

This type holds the initialization status of the LHAPDF system. Entry 1 is for proton PDFs, entry 2 for pion PDFs, entry 3 for photon PDFs.

```
<SF lhpdf: public>≡
    public :: lhpdf_status_t

<SF lhpdf: types>≡
    type :: lhpdf_status_t
    private
        logical, dimension(3) :: initialized = .false.
    end type lhpdf_status_t

<SF lhpdf: public>+≡
    public :: lhpdf_status_reset

<SF lhpdf: procedures>≡
    subroutine lhpdf_status_reset (lhpdf_status)
        type(lhpdf_status_t), intent(inout) :: lhpdf_status
        lhpdf_status%initialized = .false.
    end subroutine lhpdf_status_reset

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
    function lhpdf_status_is_initialized (lhpdf_status, set) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(lhpdf_status_t), intent(in) :: lhpdf_status
        integer, intent(in), optional :: set
        if (present (set)) then
            select case (set)
            case (1:3);    flag = lhpdf_status%initialized(set)
            case default;  flag = .false.
            end select
        else
            flag = any (lhpdf_status%initialized)
        end if
    end function lhpdf_status_is_initialized

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lhpdf_status_set_initialized (lhpdf_status, set)
        type(lhpdf_status_t), intent(inout) :: lhpdf_status
        integer, intent(in) :: set
        lhpdf_status%initialized(set) = .true.
    end subroutine lhpdf_status_set_initialized
```

### 10.11.4 LHAPDF initialization

Before using LHAPDF, we have to initialize it with a particular data set and member. This applies not just if we use structure functions, but also if we just

use an  $\alpha_s$  formula. The integer `set` should be 1 for proton, 2 for pion, and 3 for photon, but this is just convention.

If the particular set has already been initialized, do nothing. This implies that whenever we want to change the setup for a particular set, we have to reset the LHAPDF status. `lhpdf_initialize` has an obvious name clash with `lhpdf_init`, the reason it works for `pdf_builtin` is that these things are outsourced to a separate module (inc. `lhpdf_status` etc.).

```

<SF lhpdf: public>+≡
    public :: lhpdf_initialize

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lhpdf_initialize (status, set, prefix, file, member, pdf, b_match)
        type(lhpdf_status_t), intent(inout) :: status
        integer, intent(in) :: set
        type(string_t), intent(inout) :: prefix
        type(string_t), intent(inout) :: file
        type(lhpdf_pdf_t), intent(inout), optional :: pdf
        integer, intent(inout) :: member
        logical, intent(in), optional :: b_match
        if (prefix == "") prefix = LHAPDF_PDFSETS_PATH
        if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
            if (lhpdf_status_is_initialized (status, set)) return
            if (file == "") then
                select case (set)
                case (1); file = LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PROTON
                case (2); file = LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PION
                case (3); file = LHAPDF5_DEFAULT_PHOTON
                end select
            end if
            if (data_file_exists (prefix // "/" // file)) then
                call InitPDFsetM (set, char (prefix // "/" // file))
            else
                call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF: Data file '" &
                    // char (file) // "' not found in '" // char (prefix) // "'.")
                return
            end if
            if (.not. dataset_member_exists (set, member)) then
                call msg_error (" LHAPDF: Chosen member does not exist for set '" &
                    // char (file) // "', using default.")
                member = 0
            end if
            call InitPDFM (set, member)
        else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
            if (lhpdf_status_is_initialized (status, set) .and. &
                pdf%is_associated ()) return
            if (file == "") then
                select case (set)
                case (1); file = LHAPDF6_DEFAULT_PROTON
                case (2);
                    call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF6: no pion PDFs supported (yet)")
                case (3);
                    call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF6: no photon PDFs supported (yet)")
                end select
            end if

```

```

        if (data_file_exists (prefix // "/" // file // "/" // file // ".info")) then
            call pdf%init (char (file), member)
        else
            call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF: Data file '" &
                // char (file) // "' not found in '" // char (prefix) // "'.")
            return
        end if
    end if
end if
if (present (b_match)) then
    if (b_match) then
        if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
            call hoppet_init (.false.)
        else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
            call hoppet_init (.false., pdf)
        end if
    end if
end if
call lhpdf_status_set_initialized (status, set)
contains
function data_file_exists (fq_name) result (exist)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: fq_name
    logical :: exist
    inquire (file = char(fq_name), exist = exist)
end function data_file_exists
function dataset_member_exists (set, member) result (exist)
    integer, intent(in) :: set, member
    logical :: exist
    integer :: n_members
    call numberPDFM (set, n_members)
    exist = member >= 0 .and. member <= n_members
end function dataset_member_exists
end subroutine lhpdf_initialize

```

### 10.11.5 Kinematics

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  and consequently  $f(r) = 2r$ .

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>≡
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => lhpdf_complete_kinematics
<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lhpdf_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(lhpdf_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        real(default) :: xb1
        if (map) then
            call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF: map flag not supported")

```

```

else
  x(1) = r(1)
  f = 1
end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = x(1)
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
  sf_int%x = 0
  f = 0
end select
end subroutine lhpdf_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse_kinematics => lhpdf_inverse_kinematics

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lhpdf_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
    class(lhpdf_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
    logical, intent(in) :: map
    logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
    real(default) :: xb1
    logical :: set_mom
    set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
    if (map) then
      call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF: map flag not supported")
    else
      r(1) = x(1)
      f = 1
    end if
    xb1 = 1 - x(1)
    rb = 1 - r
    if (set_mom) then
      call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
      select case (sf_int%status)
      case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
        sf_int%x = x(1)
      case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
        sf_int%x = 0
        f = 0
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine lhpdf_inverse_kinematics

```

### 10.11.6 The LHAPDF data block

The data block holds the incoming flavor (which has to be proton, pion, or photon), the corresponding pointer to the global access data (1, 2, or 3), the flag `invert` which is set for an antiproton, the bounds as returned by LHAPDF for the specified set, and a mask that determines which partons will be actually in use.

```

<SF lhpdf: public>+≡
    public :: lhpdf_data_t

<SF lhpdf: types>+≡
    type, extends (sf_data_t) :: lhpdf_data_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: prefix
    type(string_t) :: file
    type(lhpdf_pdf_t) :: pdf
    integer :: member = 0
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_in
    integer :: set = 0
    logical :: invert = .false.
    logical :: photon = .false.
    logical :: has_photon = .false.
    integer :: photon_scheme = 0
    real(default) :: xmin = 0, xmax = 0
    real(default) :: qmin = 0, qmax = 0
    logical, dimension(-6:6) :: mask = .true.
    logical :: mask_photon = .true.
    logical :: hoppet_b_matching = .false.
    contains
    <SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>
end type lhpdf_data_t

```

Generate PDF data. This is provided as a function, but it has the side-effect of initializing the requested PDF set. A finalizer is not needed.

The library uses double precision, so since the default precision may be quadruple, we use auxiliary variables for type casting.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => lhpdf_data_init

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lhpdf_data_init &
        (data, status, model, pdg_in, prefix, file, member, photon_scheme, &
         hoppet_b_matching)
    class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(lhpdf_status_t), intent(inout) :: status
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: prefix, file
    integer, intent(in), optional :: member
    integer, intent(in), optional :: photon_scheme
    logical, intent(in), optional :: hoppet_b_matching
    double precision :: xmin, xmax, q2min, q2max
    external :: InitPDFsetM, InitPDFM, numberPDFM

```

```

external :: GetXminM, GetXmaxM, GetQ2minM, GetQ2maxM
if (.not. LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE .and. .not. LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
  call msg_fatal ("LHAPDF requested but library is not linked")
  return
end if
data%model => model
if (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) /= 1) &
  call msg_fatal ("PDF: incoming particle must be unique")
call flavor_init (data%flv_in, pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1), model)
select case (pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1))
case (PROTON)
  data%set = 1
case (-PROTON)
  data%set = 1
  data%invert = .true.
case (PIPLUS)
  data%set = 2
case (-PIPLUS)
  data%set = 2
  data%invert = .true.
case (PHOTON)
  data%set = 3
  data%photon = .true.
  if (present (photon_scheme)) data%photon_scheme = photon_scheme
case default
  call msg_fatal (" LHAPDF: " &
    // "incoming particle must be (anti)proton, pion, or photon.")
  return
end select
if (present (prefix)) then
  data%prefix = prefix
else
  data%prefix = ""
end if
if (present (file)) then
  data%file = file
else
  data%file = ""
end if
if (present (hoppet_b_matching)) data%hoppet_b_matching = hoppet_b_matching
if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
  call lhpdf_initialize &
    (status, data%set, data%prefix, data%file, data%member, &
    b_match = data%hoppet_b_matching)
  call GetXminM (data%set, data%member, xmin)
  call GetXmaxM (data%set, data%member, xmax)
  call GetQ2minM (data%set, data%member, q2min)
  call GetQ2maxM (data%set, data%member, q2max)
  data%xmin = xmin
  data%xmax = xmax
  data%qmin = sqrt (q2min)
  data%qmax = sqrt (q2max)
  data%has_photon = has_photon ()
else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then

```

```

        call lhpdf_initialize &
            (status, data%set, data%prefix, data%file, data%member, &
             data%pdf, data%hoppet_b_matching)
        data%xmin = data%pdf%getxmin ()
        data%xmax = data%pdf%getxmax ()
        data%qmin = sqrt(data%pdf%getq2min ())
        data%qmax = sqrt(data%pdf%getq2max ())
        data%has_photon = data%pdf%has_photon ()
    end if
end subroutine lhpdf_data_init

```

Enable/disable partons explicitly. If a mask entry is true, applying the PDF will generate the corresponding flavor on output.

```

<LHAPDF: lhpdf data: TBP>≡
    procedure :: set_mask => lhpdf_data_set_mask

<LHAPDF: procedures>≡
    subroutine lhpdf_data_set_mask (data, mask)
        class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
        logical, dimension(-6:6), intent(in) :: mask
        data%mask = mask
    end subroutine lhpdf_data_set_mask

```

Return the public part of the data set.

```

<LHAPDF: public>≡
    public :: lhpdf_data_get_public_info

<LHAPDF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lhpdf_data_get_public_info &
        (data, lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file, lhpdf_member)
        type(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        type(string_t), intent(out) :: lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file
        integer, intent(out) :: lhpdf_member
        lhpdf_dir = data%prefix
        lhpdf_file = data%file
        lhpdf_member = data%member
    end subroutine lhpdf_data_get_public_info

```

Return the number of the member of the data set.

```

<LHAPDF: public>+≡
    public :: lhpdf_data_get_set

<LHAPDF: procedures>+≡
    function lhpdf_data_get_set(data) result(set)
        type(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        integer :: set
        set = data%set
    end function lhpdf_data_get_set

```

Output

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => lhpdf_data_write

```

```

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+=
subroutine lhpdf_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
  class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  logical :: verb
  integer :: u
  if (present (verbose)) then
    verb = verbose
  else
    verb = .false.
  end if
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "LHAPDF data:"
  if (data%set /= 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "flavor      = "
    call flavor_write (data%flv_in, u); write (u, *)
    if (verb) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)")      " prefix      = ", char (data%prefix)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)")      " prefix      = ", &
        " <empty (non-verbose version)>"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)")      " file          = ", char (data%file)
    write (u, "(3x,A,I3)")      " member       = ", data%member
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x(min)       = ", data%xmin
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " x(max)       = ", data%xmax
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " Q(min)       = ", data%qmin
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") " Q(max)       = ", data%qmax
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)")      " invert       = ", data%invert
    if (data%photon) write (u, "(3x,A,I3)") &
      " IP2 (scheme) = ", data%photon_scheme
    write (u, "(3x,A,6(1x,L1),1x,A,1x,L1,1x,A,6(1x,L1))") &
      " mask        = ", &
        data%mask(-6:-1), " ", data%mask(0), " ", data%mask(1:6)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)")      " photon mask = ", data%mask_photon
    if (data%set == 1) write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") &
      " hoppet_b    = ", data%hoppet_b_matching
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
  end if
end subroutine lhpdf_data_write

```

The number of parameters is one. We do not generate transverse momentum.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>+=
procedure :: get_n_par => lhpdf_data_get_n_par

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+=
function lhpdf_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
  class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer :: n
  n = 1
end function lhpdf_data_get_n_par

```



Return the outgoing particle PDG codes. This is based on the mask.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => lhpdf_data_get_pdg_out

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lhpdf_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
    integer :: n, np, i
    n = count (data%mask)
    np = 0; if (data%has_photon .and. data%mask_photon) np = 1
    allocate (pdg1 (n + np))
    pdg1(1:n) = pack ([i, i = -6, 6], data%mask)
    if (np == 1) pdg1(n+np) = PHOTON
    pdg_out(1) = pdg1
  end subroutine lhpdf_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => lhpdf_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lhpdf_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (lhpdf_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine lhpdf_data_allocate_sf_int

```

Return the numerical PDF set index.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdf_set => lhpdf_data_get_pdf_set

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  function lhpdf_data_get_pdf_set (data) result (pdf_set)
    class(lhpdf_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: pdf_set
    pdf_set = data%set
  end function lhpdf_data_get_pdf_set

```

### 10.11.7 The LHAPDF object

The `lhpdf_t` data type is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  interaction which describes the splitting of an (anti)proton into a parton and a beam remnant. We stay in the strict forward-splitting limit, but allow some invariant mass for the beam remnant such that the outgoing parton is exactly massless. For a real event, we would replace this by a parton cascade, where the outgoing partons have virtuality as dictated by parton-shower kinematics, and transverse momentum is generated.

This is the LHAPDF object which holds input data together with the interaction. We also store the  $x$  momentum fraction and the scale, since kinematics and function value are requested at different times.

The PDF application is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  splitting process, where the particles are ordered as (hadron, remnant, parton).

Polarization is ignored completely. The beam particle is colorless, while partons and beam remnant carry color. The remnant gets a special flavor code.

```

<SF lhpdf: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: lhpdf_t
    type(lhpdf_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default) :: x = 0
    real(default) :: q = 0
    real(default) :: s = 0
  contains
    <SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>
  end type lhpdf_t

```

Type string: display the chosen PDF set.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: type_string => lhpdf_type_string

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  function lhpdf_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(lhpdf_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "LHAPDF: " // object%data%file
    else
      string = "LHAPDF: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function lhpdf_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => lhpdf_write

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lhpdf_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(lhpdf_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
        if (object%status >= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
          write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "Q =", object%q
        end if
      end if
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "LHAPDF data: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine lhpdf_write

```

```
end subroutine lhpdf_write
```

Initialize. We know that `data` will be of concrete type `sf_lhpdf_data_t`, but we have to cast this explicitly.

For this implementation, we set the incoming and outgoing masses equal to the physical particle mass, but keep the radiated mass zero.

```
<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => lhpdf_init
<SF lhpdf: procedures>+=
  subroutine lhpdf_init (sf_int, data)
    class(lhpdf_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
    type(flavor_t) :: flv, flv_remnant
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
    integer :: i
    select type (data)
    type is (lhpdf_data_t)
      mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .true.)
      call sf_int%base_init (mask, [0._default], [0._default], [0._default])
      sf_int%data => data
      do i = -6, 6
        if (data%mask(i)) then
          call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in)
          if (i == 0) then
            call flavor_init (flv, GLUON, data%model)
            call flavor_init (flv_remnant, HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET, data%model)
          else
            call flavor_init (flv, i, data%model)
            call flavor_init (flv_remnant, &
              sign (HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, -i), data%model)
          end if
          call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), &
            flv = flv_remnant, col = color_from_flavor (flv_remnant, 1))
          call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), &
            flv = flv, col = color_from_flavor (flv, 1, reverse=.true.))
          call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
        end if
      end do
    if (data%has_photon .and. data%mask_photon) then
      call flavor_init (flv, PHOTON, data%model)
      call flavor_init (flv_remnant, HADRON_REMNANT_SINGLET, data%model)
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), flv = flv_remnant, &
        col = color_from_flavor (flv_remnant, 1))
      call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), flv = flv, &
        col = color_from_flavor (flv, 1, reverse=.true.))
      call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
    end if
    call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
    call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
    call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
    call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
    sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
```

```

end select
end subroutine lhpdf_init

```

### 10.11.8 Structure function

We have to cast the LHAPDF arguments to/from double precision (possibly from/to quadruple precision), if necessary. Furthermore, some structure functions can yield negative results (sea quarks close to  $x = 1$ ). We set these unphysical values to zero.

```

<SF lhpdf: lhpdf: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => lhpdf_apply
<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lhpdf_apply (sf_int, scale)
    class(lhpdf_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default) :: x, s
    double precision :: xx, qq, ss
    double precision, dimension(-6:6) :: ff
    double precision :: fphot
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: fc
    external :: evolvePDFM, evolvePDFpM
    associate (data => sf_int%data)
      sf_int%q = scale
      x = sf_int%x
      s = sf_int%s
      qq = min (data% qmax, scale)
      qq = max (data% qmin, qq)
      if (.not. data% photon) then
        xx = x
        if (data% invert) then
          if (data% has_photon) then
            if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
              call evolvePDFphotonM &
                (data% set, xx, qq, ff(6:-6:-1), fphot)
            else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
              call data%pdf%evolve_pdfphotonm &
                (xx, qq, ff(6:-6:-1), fphot)
            end if
          else if
            if (data%hoppet_b_matching) then
              call hoppet_eval (xx, qq, ff(6:-6:-1))
            else
              if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
                call evolvePDFM (data% set, xx, qq, ff(6:-6:-1))
              else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
                call data%pdf%evolve_pdfm (xx, qq, ff(6:-6:-1))
              end if
            end if
          end if
        else if
          if (data% has_photon) then
            if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then

```

```

        call evolvePDFphotonM (data% set, xx, qq, ff, fphot)
    else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
        call data%pdf%evolve_pdfphotonm (xx, qq, ff, fphot)
    end if
else
    if (data%hoppet_b_matching) then
        call hoppet_eval (xx, qq, ff)
    else
        if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
            call evolvePDFM (data% set, xx, qq, ff)
        else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
            call data%pdf%evolve_pdfm (xx, qq, ff)
        end if
    end if
end if
end if
else
    ss = s
    if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
        call evolvePDFpM (data% set, xx, qq, &
            ss, data% photon_scheme, ff)
    else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
        call data%pdf%evolve_pdfpm (xx, qq, ss, &
            data%photon_scheme, ff)
    end if
end if
if (data%has_photon) then
    allocate (fc (count ([data%mask, data%mask_photon])))
    fc = max (pack ([ff, fphot] / x, &
        [data% mask, data%mask_photon]), 0._default)
else
    allocate (fc (count (data%mask)))
    fc = max (pack (ff / x, data%mask), 0._default)
end if
end associate
call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, fc)
sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine lhpdf_apply

```

### 10.11.9 Strong Coupling

Since the PDF codes provide a function for computing the running  $\alpha_s$  value, we make this available as an implementation of the abstract `alpha_qcd_t` type, which is used for matrix element evaluation.

```

<SF lhpdf: public>+≡
    public :: alpha_qcd_lhpdf_t

<SF lhpdf: types>+≡
    type, extends (alpha_qcd_t) :: alpha_qcd_lhpdf_t
        type(string_t) :: pdfset_dir
        type(string_t) :: pdfset_file
        integer :: pdfset_member = -1
        type(lhpdf_pdf_t) :: pdf

```

```

contains
  <SF lhpdf: alpha qcd: TBP>
end type alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t

```

Output. As in earlier versions we leave the LHAPDF path out.

```

<SF lhpdf: alpha qcd: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => alpha_qcd_lhapdf_write

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine alpha_qcd_lhapdf_write (object, unit)
    class(alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (lhpdf):"
    write (u, "(5x,A,A)") "PDF set      = ", char (object%pdfset_file)
    write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "PDF member = ", object%pdfset_member
  end subroutine alpha_qcd_lhapdf_write

```

Calculation: the numeric member ID selects the correct PDF set, which must be properly initialized.

```

<SF lhpdf: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    double precision function alphasPDF (Q)
      double precision, intent(in) :: Q
    end function alphasPDF
  end interface

<SF lhpdf: alpha qcd: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get => alpha_qcd_lhapdf_get

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  function alpha_qcd_lhapdf_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
    class(alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default) :: alpha
    if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
      alpha = alphasPDF (dble (scale))
    else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
      alpha = alpha_qcd%pdf%alphas_pdf (dble (scale))
    end if
  end function alpha_qcd_lhapdf_get

```

Initialization. We need to access the (quasi-global) initialization status.

```

<SF lhpdf: alpha qcd: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => alpha_qcd_lhapdf_init

<SF lhpdf: procedures>+≡
  subroutine alpha_qcd_lhapdf_init (alpha_qcd, status, file, member, path)
    class(alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t), intent(out) :: alpha_qcd
    type(lhapdf_status_t), intent(inout) :: status
    type(string_t), intent(inout) :: file
    integer, intent(inout) :: member

```

```

type(string_t), intent(inout) :: path
alpha_qcd%pdfset_file = file
alpha_qcd%pdfset_member = member
if (alpha_qcd%pdfset_member < 0) &
    call msg_fatal ("QCD parameter initialization: PDF set " &
        // char (file) // " is unknown")
if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
    call lhpdf_initialize (status, 1, path, file, member)
else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
    call lhpdf_initialize &
        (status, 1, path, file, member, alpha_qcd%pdf)
end if
end subroutine alpha_qcd_lhpdf_init

```

### 10.11.10 Unit tests

```

<SF lhpdf: public>+≡
public :: sf_lhpdf_test

<SF lhpdf: tests>≡
subroutine sf_lhpdf_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<SF lhpdf: execute tests>
end subroutine sf_lhpdf_test

```

### Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```

<SF lhpdf: execute tests>≡
if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
    call test (sf_lhpdf_1, "sf_lhpdf5_1", &
        "structure function configuration", &
        u, results)
else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
    call test (sf_lhpdf_1, "sf_lhpdf6_1", &
        "structure function configuration", &
        u, results)
end if

<SF lhpdf: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_lhpdf_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data
    type(lhpdf_status_t) :: status

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_lhapdf_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
    &test structure function data"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), &
    var_str ("QCD.mdl"), os_data, model)
pdg_in = PROTON

allocate (lhpdf_data_t :: data)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (data)
type is (lhpdf_data_t)
    call data%init (status, model, pdg_in)
end select

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Outgoing particle codes:"
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))")  pdg1

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_lhapdf_1"

end subroutine sf_lhapdf_1

```

## Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the PDF builtin structure function.

```

<SF lhpdf: execute tests>+≡
if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
    call test (sf_lhapdf_2, "sf_lhapdf5_2", &
        "structure function instance", &
        u, results)

```



```

else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
  call test (sf_lhapdf_2, "sf_lhapdf6_2", &
    "structure function instance", &
    u, results)
end if

<SF lhpdf: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_lhapdf_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(lhapdf_status_t) :: status
  type(vector4_t) :: k
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: f

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_lhapdf_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &test structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), &
    var_str ("QCD.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv, PROTON, model)
  pdg_in = PROTON

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

  allocate (lhpdf_data_t :: data)
  select type (data)
  type is (lhpdf_data_t)
    call data%init (status, model, pdg_in)
  end select

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
  call sf_int%init (data)
  call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

  call sf_int%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for Q = 100 GeV"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u, testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```

```

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_lhapdf_2"

end subroutine sf_lhapdf_2

```

## Strong Coupling

Test  $\alpha_s$  as an implementation of the `alpha_qcd_t` abstract type.

```

<SF lhpdf: execute tests>+≡
  if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
    call test (sf_lhapdf_3, "sf_lhapdf5_3", &
      "running alpha_s", &
      u, results)
  else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
    call test (sf_lhapdf_3, "sf_lhapdf6_3", &
      "running alpha_s", &
      u, results)
  end if

<SF lhpdf: tests>+≡
  subroutine sf_lhapdf_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(lhapdf_status_t) :: status
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    type(string_t) :: name, path
    integer :: member

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_lhapdf_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and evaluate alpha_s"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)

    if (LHAPDF5_AVAILABLE) then
      name = "cteq6ll.LHpdf"
      member = 1
      path = ""
    else if (LHAPDF6_AVAILABLE) then
      name = "CT10"
      member = 1
      path = ""
    end if

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize qcd object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t :: qcd%alpha)
select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t)
  call alpha%init (status, name, member, path)
end select
call qcd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for Q = 100"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,F8.5)")  "alpha = ", qcd%alpha%get (100._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_lhapdf_3"

end subroutine sf_lhapdf_3

```

## 10.12 Builtin PDF sets

For convenience in order not to depend on the external package LHAPDF, we ship some PDFs with WHIZARD.

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
  character(*), parameter, public :: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PROTON = "CTEQ6L"
  character(*), parameter, public :: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PION   = "NONE"
  character(*), parameter, public :: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PHOTON = "MRST2004QEDp"

```

### 10.12.1 The module

```

(sf_pdf_builtin.f90)≡
  <File header>

  module sf_pdf_builtin

    <Use kinds>
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!

    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PROTON !NODEP!
    use limits, only: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PION !NODEP!
    use limits, only: PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PHOTON !NODEP!
    use limits, only: FMT_17 !NODEP!

    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!

```

```

use lorentz !NODEP!
use pdf_builtin !NODEP!
use unit_tests
use os_interface
use sm_qcd
use pdg_arrays
use models
use flavors
use colors
use quantum_numbers
use state_matrices
use polarizations
use interactions
use sf_aux
use sf_base
use hoppet_interface

⟨Standard module head⟩

⟨SF pdf builtin: public⟩

⟨SF pdf builtin: types⟩

contains

⟨SF pdf builtin: procedures⟩

⟨SF pdf builtin: tests⟩

end module sf_pdf_builtin

```

### 10.12.2 The PDF builtin data block

The data block holds the incoming flavor (which has to be proton, pion, or photon), the corresponding pointer to the global access data (1, 2, or 3), the flag `invert` which is set for an antiproton, the bounds as returned by LHAPDF for the specified set, and a mask that determines which partons will be actually in use.

```

⟨SF pdf builtin: public⟩≡
    public :: pdf_builtin_data_t

⟨SF pdf builtin: types⟩≡
    type, extends (sf_data_t) :: pdf_builtin_data_t
    private
    integer :: id = -1
    type (string_t) :: name
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_in
    logical :: invert
    logical :: has_photon
    logical :: photon
    logical, dimension(-6:6) :: mask
    logical :: mask_photon

```

```

    logical :: hoppet_b_matching = .false.
contains
  <SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin data: TBP>
end type pdf_builtin_data_t

```

Generate PDF data and initialize the requested set. Pion and photon PDFs are disabled at the moment until we ship appropriate structure functions. needed.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => pdf_builtin_data_init

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_data_init (data, pdf_status, &
    model, pdg_in, name, path, hoppet_b_matching)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(pdf_builtin_status_t), intent(inout) :: pdf_status
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: pdg_in
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: path
    logical, intent(in), optional :: hoppet_b_matching
    data%model => model
    if (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) /= 1) &
      call msg_fatal ("PDF: incoming particle must be unique")
    call flavor_init (data%flv_in, pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1), model)
    data%mask = .true.
    data%mask_photon = .true.
    select case (pdg_array_get (pdg_in, 1))
    case (PROTON)
      data%name = var_str (PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PROTON)
      data%invert = .false.
      data%photon = .false.
    case (-PROTON)
      data%name = var_str (PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PROTON)
      data%invert = .true.
      data%photon = .false.
      ! case (PIPLUS)
      !   data%name = var_str (PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PION)
      !   data%invert = .false.
      !   data%photon = .false.
      ! case (-PIPLUS)
      !   data%name = var_str (PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PION)
      !   data%invert = .true.
      !   data%photon = .false.
      ! case (PHOTON)
      !   data%name = var_str (PDF_BUILTIN_DEFAULT_PHOTON)
      !   data%invert = .false.
      !   data%photon = .true.
    case default
      call msg_fatal ("PDF: " &
        // "incoming particle must either proton or antiproton.")
      return
    end select
    data%name = name
    data%id = pdf_get_id (data%name)

```

```

    if (data%id < 0) call msg_fatal ("unknown PDF set " // char (data%name))
    data%has_photon = pdf_provides_photon (data%id)
    if (present (hoppet_b_matching)) data%hoppet_b_matching = hoppet_b_matching
    call pdf_init (pdf_status, data%id, path)
    if (data%hoppet_b_matching) call hoppet_init (.true., pdf_id = data%id)
end subroutine pdf_builtin_data_init

```

Enable/disable partons explicitly. If a mask entry is true, applying the PDF will generate the corresponding flavor on output.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_mask => pdf_builtin_data_set_mask

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_data_set_mask (data, mask)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    logical, dimension(-6:6), intent(in) :: mask
    data%mask = mask
  end subroutine pdf_builtin_data_set_mask

```

Output.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => pdf_builtin_data_write

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "PDF builtin data:"
    if (data%id < 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
      return
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "flavor      = "
    call flavor_write (data%flv_in, u); write (u, *)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "name      = ", char (data%name)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "invert    = ", data%invert
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "has photon = ", data%has_photon
    write (u, "(3x,A,6(1x,L1),1x,A,1x,L1,1x,A,6(1x,L1))") &
      "mask      = ", &
      data%mask(-6:-1), " ", data%mask(0), " ", data%mask(1:6)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "photon mask = ", data%mask_photon
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "hoppet_b    = ", data%hoppet_b_matching
  end subroutine pdf_builtin_data_write

```

The number of parameters is one. We do not generate transverse momentum.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => pdf_builtin_data_get_n_par

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  function pdf_builtin_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)

```

```

class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(in) :: data
integer :: n
n = 1
end function pdf_builtin_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG codes. This is based on the mask.

```

<SF pdf_builtin: pdf_builtin_data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_out => pdf_builtin_data_get_pdg_out

<SF pdf_builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
    integer :: n, np, i
    n = count (data%mask)
    np = 0; if (data%has_photon .and. data%mask_photon) np = 1
    allocate (pdg1 (n + np))
    pdg1(1:n) = pack ([i, i = -6, 6], data%mask)
    if (np == 1) pdg1(n+np) = PHOTON
    pdg_out(1) = pdg1
  end subroutine pdf_builtin_data_get_pdg_out

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF pdf_builtin: pdf_builtin_data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => pdf_builtin_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF pdf_builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (pdf_builtin_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine pdf_builtin_data_allocate_sf_int

```

Return the numerical PDF set index.

```

<SF pdf_builtin: pdf_builtin_data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdf_set => pdf_builtin_data_get_pdf_set

<SF pdf_builtin: procedures>+≡
  function pdf_builtin_data_get_pdf_set (data) result (pdf_set)
    class(pdf_builtin_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: pdf_set
    pdf_set = data%id
  end function pdf_builtin_data_get_pdf_set

```

### 10.12.3 The PDF object

The PDF  $1 \rightarrow 2$  interaction which describes the splitting of an (anti)proton into a parton and a beam remnant. We stay in the strict forward-splitting limit, but allow some invariant mass for the beam remnant such that the outgoing parton



is exactly massless. For a real event, we would replace this by a parton cascade, where the outgoing partons have virtuality as dictated by parton-shower kinematics, and transverse momentum is generated.

The PDF application is a  $1 \rightarrow 2$  splitting process, where the particles are ordered as (hadron, remnant, parton).

Polarization is ignored completely. The beam particle is colorless, while partons and beam remnant carry color. The remnant gets a special flavor code.

```

<SF pdf builtin: types>+≡
  type, extends (sf_int_t) :: pdf_builtin_t
    type(pdf_builtin_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
    real(default) :: x = 0
    real(default) :: q = 0
  contains
    <SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP>
  end type pdf_builtin_t

```

Type string: display the chosen PDF set.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP>≡
  procedure :: type_string => pdf_builtin_type_string

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  function pdf_builtin_type_string (object) result (string)
    class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      string = "PDF builtin: " // object%data%name
    else
      string = "PDF builtin: [undefined]"
    end if
  end function pdf_builtin_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => pdf_builtin_write

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
        if (object%status >= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
          write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "Q =", object%q
        end if
      end if
      call object%base_write (u, testflag)
    else

```

```

        write (u, "(1x,A)") "PDF builtin data: [undefined]"
    end if
end subroutine pdf_builtin_write

```

Initialize. We know that `data` will be of concrete type `sf_test_data_t`, but we have to cast this explicitly.

For this implementation, we set the incoming and outgoing masses equal to the physical particle mass, but keep the radiated mass zero.

Optionally, we can provide minimum and maximum values for the momentum transfer.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP>+=
    procedure :: init => pdf_builtin_init

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+=
    subroutine pdf_builtin_init (sf_int, data)
        class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
        class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(3) :: mask
        type(flavor_t) :: flv, flv_remnant
        type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(3) :: qn
        integer :: i
        select type (data)
        type is (pdf_builtin_data_t)
            mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .true.)
            call sf_int%base_init (mask, [0._default], [0._default], [0._default])
            sf_int%data => data
            do i = -6, 6
                if (data%mask(i)) then
                    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(1), data%flv_in)
                    if (i == 0) then
                        call flavor_init (flv, GLUON, data%model)
                        call flavor_init (flv_remnant, HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET, data%model)
                    else
                        call flavor_init (flv, i, data%model)
                        call flavor_init (flv_remnant, &
                            sign (HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, -i), data%model)
                    end if
                    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), &
                        flv = flv_remnant, col = color_from_flavor (flv_remnant, 1))
                    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), &
                        flv = flv, col = color_from_flavor (flv, 1, reverse=.true.))
                    call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
                end if
            end do
            if (data%has_photon .and. data%mask_photon) then
                call flavor_init (flv, PHOTON, data%model)
                call flavor_init (flv_remnant, HADRON_REMNANT_SINGLET, data%model)
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(2), flv = flv_remnant, &
                    col = color_from_flavor (flv_remnant, 1))
                call quantum_numbers_init (qn(3), flv = flv, &
                    col = color_from_flavor (flv, 1, reverse = .true.))
                call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
            end if
            call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
        end type
    end subroutine

```

```

        call sf_int%set_incoming ([1])
        call sf_int%set_radiated ([2])
        call sf_int%set_outgoing ([3])
        sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
    end select
end subroutine pdf_builtin_init

```

#### 10.12.4 Kinematics

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  and consequently  $f(r) = 2r$ .

```

⟨SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: complete_kinematics => pdf_builtin_complete_kinematics

⟨SF pdf builtin: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine pdf_builtin_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
        class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        real(default) :: xb1
        if (map) then
            call msg_fatal ("PDF builtin: map flag not supported")
        else
            x(1) = r(1)
            f = 1
        end if
        xb1 = 1 - x(1)
        call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
        select case (sf_int%status)
        case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
            sf_int%x = x(1)
        case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
            sf_int%x = 0
            f = 0
        end select
    end subroutine pdf_builtin_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

⟨SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => pdf_builtin_inverse_kinematics

⟨SF pdf builtin: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine pdf_builtin_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
        class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x

```

```

real(default), intent(out) :: f
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
logical, intent(in) :: map
logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
real(default) :: xb1
logical :: set_mom
set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
if (map) then
  call msg_fatal ("PDF builtin: map flag not supported")
else
  r(1) = x(1)
  f = 1
end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
rb = 1 - r
if (set_mom) then
  call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
  select case (sf_int%status)
  case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = x(1)
  case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = 0
    f = 0
  end select
end if
end subroutine pdf_builtin_inverse_kinematics

```

### 10.12.5 Structure function

Once the scale is also known, we can actually call the PDF and set the values. Contrary to LHAPDF, the wrapper already takes care of adjusting to the  $x$  and  $Q$  bounds. Account for the Jacobian.

```

<SF pdf builtin: pdf builtin: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: apply => pdf_builtin_apply

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pdf_builtin_apply (sf_int, scale)
    class(pdf_builtin_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default), dimension(-6:6) :: ff
    real(double), dimension(-6:6) :: ff_dbl
    real(default) :: x, fph
    real(double) :: xx, qq
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: fc
    associate (data => sf_int%data)
      sf_int%q = scale
      x = sf_int%x
      xx = x
      qq = scale
      if (data%invert) then
        if (data%has_photon) then
          call pdf_evolve (data%id, x, scale, ff(6:-6:-1), fph)

```

```

else
  if (data%hoppet_b_matching) then
    call hoppet_eval (xx, qq, ff_dbl(6:-6:-1))
    ff = ff_dbl
  else
    call pdf_evolve (data%id, x, scale, ff(6:-6:-1))
  end if
end if
else
  if (data%has_photon) then
    call pdf_evolve (data%id, x, scale, ff, fph)
  else
    if (data%hoppet_b_matching) then
      call hoppet_eval (xx, qq, ff_dbl)
      ff = ff_dbl
    else
      call pdf_evolve (data%id, x, scale, ff)
    end if
  end if
end if
if (data%has_photon) then
  allocate (fc (count ([data%mask, data%mask_photon])))
  fc = max (pack ([ff, fph], &
    [data%mask, data%mask_photon]), 0._default)
else
  allocate (fc (count (data%mask)))
  fc = max (pack (ff, data%mask), 0._default)
end if
end associate
call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, fc)
sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine pdf_builtin_apply

```

### 10.12.6 Strong Coupling

Since the PDF codes provide a function for computing the running  $\alpha_s$  value, we make this available as an implementation of the abstract `alpha_qcd_t` type, which is used for matrix element evaluation.

```

<SF pdf builtin: public>+≡
  public :: alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t

<SF pdf builtin: types>+≡
  type, extends (alpha_qcd_t) :: alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t
    type(string_t) :: pdfset_name
    integer :: pdfset_id = -1
  contains
    <SF pdf builtin: alpha qcd: TBP>
  end type alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t

```

Output.

```

<SF pdf builtin: alpha qcd: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_write

```

```

<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
subroutine alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_write (object, unit)
  class(alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "QCD parameters (pdf_builtin):"
  write (u, "(5x,A,A)") "PDF set = ", char (object%pdfset_name)
  write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "PDF ID = ", object%pdfset_id
end subroutine alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_write

```

Calculation: the numeric ID selects the correct PDF set, which must be properly initialized.

```

<SF pdf builtin: alpha qcd: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get => alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_get
<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
function alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_get (alpha_qcd, scale) result (alpha)
  class(alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t), intent(in) :: alpha_qcd
  real(default), intent(in) :: scale
  real(default) :: alpha
  alpha = pdf_alphas (alpha_qcd%pdfset_id, scale)
end function alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_get

```

Initialization. We need to access the (quasi-global) initialization status.

```

<SF pdf builtin: alpha qcd: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_init
<SF pdf builtin: procedures>+≡
subroutine alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_init (alpha_qcd, status, name, path)
  class(alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t), intent(out) :: alpha_qcd
  type(pdf_builtin_status_t), intent(inout) :: status
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: path
  alpha_qcd%pdfset_name = name
  alpha_qcd%pdfset_id = pdf_get_id (name)
  if (alpha_qcd%pdfset_id < 0) &
    call msg_fatal ("QCD parameter initialization: PDF set " &
      // char (name) // " is unknown")
  call pdf_init (status, alpha_qcd%pdfset_id, path)
end subroutine alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_init

```

### 10.12.7 Unit tests

```

<SF pdf builtin: public>+≡
  public :: sf_pdf_builtin_test
<SF pdf builtin: tests>≡
subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_test (u, results)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<SF pdf builtin: execute tests>
end subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_test

```

## Test structure function data

Construct and display a test structure function data object.

```
<SF pdf builtin: execute tests>≡
    call test (sf_pdf_builtin_1, "sf_pdf_builtin_1", &
               "structure function configuration", &
               u, results)

<SF pdf builtin: tests>+≡
    subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data
        type(pdf_builtin_status_t) :: status
        type(string_t) :: name

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_pdf_builtin_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
                           &test structure function data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Create empty data object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), &
                                    var_str ("QCD.mdl"), os_data, model)
        pdg_in = PROTON

        allocate (pdf_builtin_data_t :: data)
        call data%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
        write (u, "(A)")

        name = "CTEQ6L"

        select type (data)
            type is (pdf_builtin_data_t)
                call data%init (status, model, pdg_in, name, &
                                os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath)
            end select

        call data%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Outgoing particle codes:"
```

```

call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(2x,99(1x,I0))") pdg1

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_pdf_builtin_1"

end subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_1

```

## Test and probe structure function

Construct and display a structure function object based on the PDF builtin structure function.

```

<SF pdf builtin: execute tests>+≡
call test (sf_pdf_builtin_2, "sf_pdf_builtin_2", &
  "structure function instance", &
  u, results)

<SF pdf builtin: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  class(sf_int_t), allocatable :: sf_int
  type(pdf_builtin_status_t) :: status
  type(string_t) :: name
  type(vector4_t) :: k
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q
  real(default) :: E
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: r, rb, x
  real(default) :: f

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_pdf_builtin_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and fill &
    &test structure function object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), &
    var_str ("QCD.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv, PROTON, model)
  pdg_in = PROTON

```



```

call reset_interaction_counter ()

name = "CTEQ6L"

allocate (pdf_builtin_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (pdf_builtin_data_t)
    call data%init (status, model, pdg_in, name, &
        os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize structure-function object"
write (u, "(A)")

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize incoming momentum with E=500"
write (u, "(A)")
E = 500
k = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
call vector4_write (k, u)
call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics for x=0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (r (data%get_n_par ()))
allocate (rb(size (r)))
allocate (x (size (r)))

r = 0.5_default
rb = 1 - r
call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "x =", x
write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))")  "f =", f

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover x from momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

q = interaction_get_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%final ()
deallocate (sf_int)

```

```

call data%allocate_sf_int (sf_int)
call sf_int%init (data)
call sf_int%set_beam_index ([1])

call sf_int%seed_kinematics ([k])
call interaction_set_momenta (sf_int%interaction_t, q, outgoing=.true.)
call sf_int%recover_x (x)

write (u, "(A,9(1x,F10.7))") "x =", x

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for Q = 100 GeV"
write (u, "(A)")

call sf_int%complete_kinematics (x, f, r, rb, map=.false.)
call sf_int%apply (scale = 100._default)
call sf_int%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call sf_int%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_pdf_builtin_2"

end subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_2

```

## Strong Coupling

Test  $\alpha_s$  as an implementation of the `alpha_qcd_t` abstract type.

```

<SF pdf builtin: execute tests>+≡
  call test (sf_pdf_builtin_3, "sf_pdf_builtin_3", &
    "running alpha_s", &
    u, results)

<SF pdf builtin: tests>+≡
subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(pdf_builtin_status_t) :: status
  type(qcd_t) :: qcd
  type(string_t) :: name

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: sf_pdf_builtin_3"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and evaluate alpha_s"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize configuration data"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)

name = "CTEQ6L"

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize qcd object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t :: qcd%alpha)
select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t)
  call alpha%init (status, name, os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath)
end select
call qcd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for Q = 100"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,F8.5)")  "alpha = ", qcd%alpha%get (100._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: sf_pdf_builtin_3"

end subroutine sf_pdf_builtin_3

```

## 10.13 User Plugin for Structure Functions

This variant gives access to user-defined structure functions or spectra.

### 10.13.1 The module

```

<sf_user.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module sf_user

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use limits, only: FMT_17 !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use c_particles !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use subevents

```

```

use user_code_interface
use pdg_arrays
use models
use flavors
use helicities
use colors
use quantum_numbers
use state_matrices
use polarizations
use interactions
use sf_aux
use sf_base

```

*⟨Standard module head⟩*

*⟨SF user: public⟩*

*⟨SF user: types⟩*

contains

*⟨SF user: procedures⟩*

end module sf\_user

### 10.13.2 The user structure function data block

The data block holds the procedure pointers that are used for retrieving static information, as well as the actual evaluation.

*⟨SF user: public⟩*≡

```
public :: user_data_t
```

*⟨SF user: types⟩*≡

```

type, extends(sf_data_t) :: user_data_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: name
  integer :: n_in
  integer :: n_out
  integer :: n_tot
  integer :: n_states
  integer :: n_col
  integer :: n_dim
  integer :: n_var
  integer, dimension(2) :: pdg_in
  type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
  procedure(user_int_info), nopass, pointer :: info => null ()
  procedure(user_int_mask), nopass, pointer :: mask => null ()
  procedure(user_int_state), nopass, pointer :: state => null ()
  procedure(user_int_kinematics), nopass, pointer :: kinematics => null ()
  procedure(user_int_evaluate), nopass, pointer :: evaluate => null ()
contains
  ⟨SF user: user data: TBP⟩
end type user_data_t

```

Assign procedure pointers from a dynamically loaded library, given the specified name.

We have to distinguish three cases: (1) Both beams are affected, and the user spectrum implements both beams. There is a single data object. (2) Both beams are affected, and the user spectrum applies to single beams. Fill two different objects. (3) A single beam is affected.

```

<SF User: public>≡
  public :: sf_user_data_init

<SF User: procedures>≡
  subroutine sf_user_data_init (data, name, flv, model)
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: flv
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer(c_int) :: n_in
    integer(c_int) :: n_out
    integer(c_int) :: n_states
    integer(c_int) :: n_col
    integer(c_int) :: n_dim
    integer(c_int) :: n_var
    data%name = name
    data%pdg_in = flavor_get_pdg (flv)
    data%model => model
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name // "_info"), data%info)
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name // "_mask"), data%mask)
    call c_f_procpointer (user_code_find_proc (name // "_state"), data%state)
    call c_f_procpointer &
      (user_code_find_proc (name // "_kinematics"), data%kinematics)
    call c_f_procpointer &
      (user_code_find_proc (name // "_evaluate"), data%evaluate)
    n_in = 1
    n_out = 2
    n_states = 1
    n_col = 2
    n_dim = 1
    n_var = 1
    call data%info (n_in, n_out, n_states, n_col, n_dim, n_var)
    data%n_in = n_in
    data%n_out = n_out
    data%n_tot = n_in + n_out
    data%n_states = n_states
    data%n_col = n_col
    data%n_dim = n_dim
    data%n_var = n_var
  end subroutine sf_user_data_init

```

Output

```

<SF user: user data: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => user_data_write

```

```

<SF user: procedures>≡
subroutine user_data_write (data, unit, verbose)
  class(user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "User structure function: ", char (data%name)
end subroutine user_data_write

```

Retrieving contents

```

<SF User: public>+≡
  public :: sf_user_data_get_name

<SF User: procedures>+≡
  function sf_user_data_get_name (data) result (name)
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    name = data%name
  end function sf_user_data_get_name

<SF User: public>+≡
  public :: sf_user_data_get_n_in
  public :: sf_user_data_get_n_out
  public :: sf_user_data_get_n_tot
  public :: sf_user_data_get_n_dim
  public :: sf_user_data_get_n_var

<SF User: procedures>+≡
  function sf_user_data_get_n_in (data) result (n_in)
    integer :: n_in
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    n_in = data%n_in
  end function sf_user_data_get_n_in

  function sf_user_data_get_n_out (data) result (n_out)
    integer :: n_out
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    n_out = data%n_out
  end function sf_user_data_get_n_out

  function sf_user_data_get_n_tot (data) result (n_tot)
    integer :: n_tot
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    n_tot = data%n_tot
  end function sf_user_data_get_n_tot

  function sf_user_data_get_n_dim (data) result (n_dim)
    integer :: n_dim
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    n_dim = data%n_dim
  end function sf_user_data_get_n_dim

  function sf_user_data_get_n_var (data) result (n_var)

```

```

integer :: n_var
type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
n_var = data%n_var
end function sf_user_data_get_n_var

```

### 10.13.3 The interaction

We fill the interaction by looking up the table of states using the interface functions.

For particles which have a known flavor (as indicated by the mask), we compute the mass squared, so we can use it for the invariant mass of the particle objects.

```

<SF user: user: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => user_init

<SF user: procedures>+≡
  subroutine user_init (sf_int, data)
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    class(user_t), intent(out) :: sf_int
    class(sf_data_t), intent(in), target :: data
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: hel_lock
    integer(c_int) :: m_flv, m_hel, m_col, i_lock
    type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
    integer(c_int) :: f, h
    integer(c_int), dimension(:), allocatable :: c
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(helicity_t) :: hel
    type(color_t) :: col
    integer :: i, s
    integer(c_int) :: i_prt, i_state
    select type (data)
    type is (user_data_t)
      allocate (mask (data%n_tot))
      allocate (hel_lock (data%n_tot))
      allocate (qn (data%n_tot))
      allocate (c (data%n_col))
      do i = 1, size (mask)
        i_prt = i
        m_flv = 0; m_col = 0; m_hel = 0; i_lock = 0
        call data%mask (i_prt, m_flv, m_col, m_hel, i_lock)
        mask(i) = &
          new_quantum_numbers_mask (m_flv /= 0, m_col /= 0, m_hel /= 0)
        hel_lock(i) = i_lock
      end do
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    !!! Will have to be filled in later.
    ! call sf_int%base_init (mask, &
    !   hel_lock = hel_lock)
    call interaction_init &
      (sf_int%interaction_t, data%n_in, 0, data%n_out, mask=mask, &
        hel_lock=hel_lock, set_relations=.true.)

```

```

do s = 1, data%n_states
  i_state = s
  do i = 1, data%n_tot
    i_prt = i
    f = 0; h = 0; c = 0
    call data%state (i_state, i_prt, f, h, c)
    if (m_flv == 0) then
      call flavor_init (flv, int (f), data%model)
    else
      call flavor_init (flv)
    end if
    if (m_hel == 0) then
      call helicity_init (hel, int (h))
    else
      call helicity_init (hel)
    end if
    if (m_col == 0) then
      call color_init_from_array (col, int (c))
    else
      call color_init (col)
    end if
    call quantum_numbers_init (qn(i), flv, col, hel)
  end do
  call interaction_add_state (sf_int%interaction_t, qn)
end do
call interaction_freeze (sf_int%interaction_t)
!!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
!!! What has to be inserted here?
! call sf_int%set_incoming (??)
! call sf_int%set_radiated (??)
! call sf_int%set_outgoing (??)
sf_int%status = SF_INITIAL
end select
end subroutine user_init

```

Allocate the interaction record.

```

<SF user: user data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_int => user_data_allocate_sf_int

<SF user: procedures>+≡
  subroutine user_data_allocate_sf_int (data, sf_int)
    class(user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    class(sf_int_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: sf_int
    allocate (user_t :: sf_int)
  end subroutine user_data_allocate_sf_int

```

The number of parameters is one. We do not generate transverse momentum.

```

<SF user: user data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => user_data_get_n_par

<SF user: procedures>+≡
  function user_data_get_n_par (data) result (n)
    class(user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer :: n

```



```

    n = data%n_var
end function user_data_get_n_par

```

Return the outgoing particle PDG codes. This has to be inferred from the states (right?). JRR: WK please check.

```

<SF user: user data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_pdg_out => user_data_get_pdg_out

<SF user: procedures>+≡
    subroutine user_data_get_pdg_out (data, pdg_out)
        class(user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_out
        !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
        !!! integer :: n, np, i
        !!! n = count (data%mask)
        !!! np = 0; if (data%has_photon .and. data%mask_photon) np = 1
        !!! allocate (pdg_out (n + np))
        !!! pdg_out(1:n) = pack ([i, i = -6, 6], data%mask)
        !!! if (np == 1) pdg_out(n+np) = PHOTON
    end subroutine user_data_get_pdg_out

```

#### 10.13.4 The user structure function

For maximal flexibility, user structure functions separate kinematics from dynamics just as the PDF interface does. (JRR: Ok, I guess this now done for all structure functions, right?) We create `c_prt_t` particle objects from the incoming momenta (all other quantum numbers are irrelevant) and call the user-supplied kinematics function to compute the outgoing momenta, along with other variables that will be needed for matrix element evaluation. If known, we use the mass squared computed above. !!! JRR: WK please check (#529) I don't know actually whether this really fits into the setup done by WK.

```

<SF user: types>+≡
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    type, extends (sf_int_t) :: user_t
        type(user_data_t), pointer :: data => null ()
        real(default) :: x = 0
        real(default) :: q = 0
    contains
        <SF user: user: TBP>
    end type user_t

```

Type string: display the name of the user structure function.

```

<SF user: user: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: type_string => user_type_string

<SF user: procedures>+≡
    function user_type_string (object) result (string)
        class(user_t), intent(in) :: object
        type(string_t) :: string
        if (associated (object%data)) then
            string = "User structure function: " // object%data%name

```

```

else
  string = "User structure function: [undefined]"
end if
end function user_type_string

```

Output. Call the interaction routine after displaying the configuration.

```

<SF user: user: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => user_write

<SF user: procedures>+≡
  subroutine user_write (object, unit, testflag)
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    !!! Guess these variables do not exist for user strfun (?)
    class(user_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%data)) then
      call object%data%write (u)
      if (object%status >= SF_DONE_KINEMATICS) then
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "SF parameters:"
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "x =", object%x
        if (object%status >= SF_FAILED_EVALUATION) then
          write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_17 // ")") "Q =", object%q
        end if
      end if
    end if
    call object%base_write (u, testflag)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "User structure function data: [undefined]"
  end if
end subroutine user_write

```

### 10.13.5 Kinematics

Set kinematics. If `map` is unset, the  $r$  and  $x$  values coincide, and the Jacobian  $f(r)$  is trivial.

If `map` is set, we are asked to provide an efficient mapping. For the test case, we set  $x = r^2$  and consequently  $f(r) = 2r$ .

```

<SF user: user: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: complete_kinematics => user_complete_kinematics

<SF user: procedures>+≡
  subroutine user_complete_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map)
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    !!! This cannot be correct, as the CIRCE1 structure function has
    !!! twice the variables (2->4 instead of 1->2 splitting)
    class(user_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), intent(out) :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: rb

```

```

logical, intent(in) :: map
real(default) :: xb1
if (map) then
    call msg_fatal ("User structure function: map flag not supported")
else
    x(1) = r(1)
    f = 1
end if
xb1 = 1 - x(1)
call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
select case (sf_int%status)
case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = x(1)
case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)
    sf_int%x = 0
    f = 0
end select
end subroutine user_complete_kinematics

```

Compute inverse kinematics. Here, we start with the  $x$  array and compute the “input”  $r$  values and the Jacobian  $f$ . After this, we can set momenta by the same formula as for normal kinematics.

```

<SF user: user: TBP>+=
    procedure :: inverse_kinematics => user_inverse_kinematics

<SF user: procedures>+=
    subroutine user_inverse_kinematics (sf_int, x, f, r, rb, map, set_momenta)
        !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
        !!! This cannot be correct, as the CIRCE1 structure function has
        !!! twice the variables (2->4 instead of 1->2 splitting)
        class(user_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
        real(default), intent(out) :: f
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: rb
        logical, intent(in) :: map
        logical, intent(in), optional :: set_momenta
        real(default) :: xb1
        logical :: set_mom
        set_mom = .false.; if (present (set_momenta)) set_mom = set_momenta
        if (map) then
            call msg_fatal ("User structure function: map flag not supported")
        else
            r(1) = x(1)
            f = 1
        end if
        xb1 = 1 - x(1)
        rb = 1 - r
        if (set_mom) then
            call sf_int%split_momentum (x, xb1)
            select case (sf_int%status)
            case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
                sf_int%x = x(1)
            case (SF_FAILED_KINEMATICS)

```

```

        sf_int%x = 0
        f = 0
    end select
end if
end subroutine user_inverse_kinematics

```

```

<SF User: public>+≡
public :: interaction_set_kinematics_sf_user

<SF User: procedures>+≡
subroutine interaction_set_kinematics_sf_user (int, x, r, data)
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r
    type(sf_user_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(vector4_t), dimension(data%n_in) :: p_in
    type(vector4_t), dimension(data%n_out) :: p_out
    type(c_prt_t), dimension(data%n_in) :: prt_in
    type(c_prt_t), dimension(data%n_out) :: prt_out
    real(c_double), dimension(data%n_var) :: xval
    call interaction_get_momenta_sub (int, p_in, outgoing=.false.)
    prt_in = vector4_to_c_prt (p_in)
    prt_in%type = PRT_INCOMING
    call data%kinematics (prt_in, real (r, c_double), prt_out, xval)
    x = xval
    p_out = vector4_from_c_prt (prt_out)
    call interaction_set_momenta (int, p_out, outgoing=.true.)
end subroutine interaction_set_kinematics_sf_user

```

The matrix-element evaluation may require a scale parameter, therefore this routine is separate. We take the variables computed above together with the event energy scale and call the user function that computes the matrix elements.

```

<SF user: user: TBP>+≡
procedure :: apply => user_apply

<SF user: procedures>+≡
subroutine user_apply (sf_int, scale) !, x, data)
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    class(user_t), intent(inout) :: sf_int
    real(default), intent(in) :: scale
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    real(c_double), dimension(sf_int%data%n_states) :: fval
    complex(default), dimension(sf_int%data%n_states) :: fc
    associate (data => sf_int%data)
        !!! This is wrong, has to be replaced
        ! allocate (x, size (sf_int%x))
        x = sf_int%x
        call data%evaluate (real (x, c_double), real (scale, c_double), fval)
        fc = fval
        call interaction_set_matrix_element (sf_int%interaction_t, fc)
    end associate
    sf_int%status = SF_EVALUATED
end subroutine user_apply

```

## 10.14 HOPPET interface

Interface to the HOPPET wrapper necessary to perform the LO vs. NLO matching of processes containing an initial b quark.

```
<hoppet_interface.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module hoppet_interface  
    use lhapdf !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    public :: hoppet_init, hoppet_eval  
  
  contains  
  
    subroutine hoppet_init (pdf_builtin, pdf, pdf_id)  
      logical, intent(in) :: pdf_builtin  
      type(lhapdf_pdf_t), intent(inout), optional :: pdf  
      integer, intent(in), optional :: pdf_id  
      external InitForWhizard  
      call InitForWhizard (pdf_builtin, pdf, pdf_id)  
    end subroutine hoppet_init  
  
    subroutine hoppet_eval (x, q, f)  
      double precision, intent(in) :: x, q  
      double precision, intent(out) :: f(-6:6)  
      external EvalForWhizard  
      call EvalForWhizard (x, q, f)  
    end subroutine hoppet_eval  
  
  end module hoppet_interface
```

## Chapter 11

# Phase space and hard matrix elements

These modules contain the internal representation and evaluation of phase space and the interface to (hard-)process evaluation.

**mappings** Generate invariant masses and decay angles from given random numbers (or the inverse operation). Each mapping pertains to a particular node in a phase-space tree. Different mappings account for uniform distributions, resonances, zero-mass behavior, and so on.

**phs\_trees** Phase space parameterizations for scattering processes are defined recursively as if there was an initial particle decaying. This module sets up a representation in terms of abstract trees, where each node gets a unique binary number. Each tree is stored as an array of branches, where integers indicate the connections. This emulates pointers in a transparent way. Real pointers would also be possible, but seem to be less efficient for this particular case.

**phs\_forests** The type defined by this module collects the decay trees corresponding to a given process and the applicable mappings. To set this up, a file is read which is either written by the user or by the **cascades** module functions. The module also contains the routines that evaluate phase space, i.e., generate momenta from random numbers and back.

**cascades** This module is a Feynman diagram generator with the particular purpose of finding the phase space parameterizations best suited for a given process. It uses a model file to set up the possible vertices, generates all possible diagrams, identifies resonances and singularities, and simplifies the list by merging equivalent diagrams and dropping irrelevant ones. This process can be controlled at several points by user-defined parameters. Note that it depends on the particular values of particle masses, so it cannot be done before reading the input file.

## 11.1 Process data block

We define a simple transparent type that contains universal constant process data. We will reference objects of this type for the phase-space setup, for interfacing with process libraries, for implementing matrix-element generation, and in the master process-handling module.

```
<process_constants.f90>≡
  <File header>
```

```
  module process_constants
```

```
    <Use kinds>
```

```
    <Use strings>
```

```
    <Standard module head>
```

```
    <Process constants: public>
```

```
    <Process constants: types>
```

```
  end module process_constants
```

The data type is just a block of public objects, only elementary types, no type-bound procedures.

```
<Process constants: public>≡
```

```
  public :: process_constants_t
```

```
<Process constants: types>≡
```

```
  type :: process_constants_t
```

```
    type(string_t) :: id
```

```
    type(string_t) :: model_name
```

```
    character(32) :: md5sum = ""
```

```
    logical :: openmp_supported = .false.
```

```
    integer :: n_in = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_out = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_flv = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_hel = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_col = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_cin = 0
```

```
    integer :: n_cf = 0
```

```
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv_state
```

```
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: hel_state
```

```
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: col_state
```

```
    logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: ghost_flag
```

```
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: color_factors
```

```
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: cf_index
```

```
  end type process_constants_t
```

## 11.2 Abstract phase-space module

In this module we define an abstract base type (and a trivial test implementation) for multi-channel phase-space parameterizations.

```
<phs_base.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module phs_base  
  
  <Use kinds>  
  <Use strings>  
  <Use file utils>  
  use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!  
  use constants !NODEP!  
  use diagnostics !NODEP!  
  use lorentz !NODEP!  
  use unit_tests  
  use os_interface  
  use md5  
  use variables  
  use models  
  use flavors  
  use process_constants  
  use sf_mappings  
  use sf_base  
  
  <Standard module head>  
  
  <PHS base: public>  
  
  <PHS base: types>  
  
  <PHS base: interfaces>  
  
  <PHS base: test types>  
  
  contains  
  
  <PHS base: procedures>  
  
  <PHS base: tests>  
  
end module phs_base
```

### 11.2.1 Phase-space channels

The kinematics configuration may generate multiple parameterizations of phase space. Some of those have specific properties, such as a resonance in the s channel.



## Channel properties

This is the abstract type for the channel properties. We need them as a data transfer container, so everything is public and transparent.

```
<PHS base: public>≡
  public :: channel_prop_t

<PHS base: types>≡
  type, abstract :: channel_prop_t
  contains
    procedure (channel_prop_to_string), deferred :: to_string
    generic :: operator (==) => is_equal
    procedure (channel_eq), deferred :: is_equal
  end type channel_prop_t

<PHS base: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    function channel_prop_to_string (object) result (string)
      import
        class(channel_prop_t), intent(in) :: object
        type(string_t) :: string
      end function channel_prop_to_string
  end interface

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function channel_eq (prop1, prop2) result (flag)
      import
        class(channel_prop_t), intent(in) :: prop1, prop2
        logical :: flag
      end function channel_eq
  end interface
```

Here is a resonance as a channel property. Mass and width are stored here in physical units.

```
<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: resonance_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
  type, extends (channel_prop_t) :: resonance_t
    real(default) :: mass = 0
    real(default) :: width = 0
  contains
    procedure :: to_string => resonance_to_string
    procedure :: is_equal => resonance_is_equal
  end type resonance_t
```

Print mass and width.

```
<PHS base: procedures>≡
  function resonance_to_string (object) result (string)
    class(resonance_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    character(32) :: buffer
```

```

    string = "resonant: m ="
    write (buffer, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") object%mass
    string = string // trim (buffer) // " GeV, w ="
    write (buffer, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") object%width
    string = string // trim (buffer) // " GeV"
end function resonance_to_string

```

Equality.

```

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
function resonance_is_equal (prop1, prop2) result (flag)
  class(resonance_t), intent(in) :: prop1
  class(channel_prop_t), intent(in) :: prop2
  logical :: flag
  select type (prop2)
  type is (resonance_t)
    flag = prop1%mass == prop2%mass .and. prop1%width == prop2%width
  class default
    flag = .false.
  end select
end function resonance_is_equal

```

This is the limiting case of a resonance, namely an on-shell particle. We just store the mass in physical units.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: on_shell_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
  type, extends (channel_prop_t) :: on_shell_t
    real(default) :: mass = 0
  contains
    procedure :: to_string => on_shell_to_string
    procedure :: is_equal => on_shell_is_equal
  end type on_shell_t

```

Print mass and width.

```

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
function on_shell_to_string (object) result (string)
  class(on_shell_t), intent(in) :: object
  type(string_t) :: string
  character(32) :: buffer
  string = "on shell: m ="
  write (buffer, "(" // FMT_19 // ")") object%mass
  string = string // trim (buffer) // " GeV"
end function on_shell_to_string

```

Equality.

```

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
function on_shell_is_equal (prop1, prop2) result (flag)
  class(on_shell_t), intent(in) :: prop1
  class(channel_prop_t), intent(in) :: prop2
  logical :: flag
  select type (prop2)

```

```

type is (on_shell_t)
  flag = prop1%mass == prop2%mass
class default
  flag = .false.
end select
end function on_shell_is_equal

```

## Channel equivalences

This type describes an equivalence. The current channel is equivalent to channel `c`. The equivalence involves a permutation `perm` of integration dimensions and, within each integration dimension, a mapping `mode`.

```

<PHS base: types>+≡
type :: phs_equivalence_t
  integer :: c = 0
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: perm
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: mode
contains
  <PHS base: phs equivalence: TBP>
end type phs_equivalence_t

```

The mapping modes are

```

<PHS base: types>+≡
integer, parameter, public :: &
  EQ_IDENTITY = 0, EQ_INVERT = 1, EQ_SYMMETRIC = 2, EQ_INVARIANT = 3

```

In particular, if a channel is equivalent to itself in the `EQ_SYMMETRIC` mode, the integrand can be assumed to be symmetric w.r.t. a reflection  $x \rightarrow 1 - x$  of the corresponding integration variable.

These are the associated tags, for output:

```

<PHS base: types>+≡
character, dimension(0:3), parameter :: TAG = ["+", "-", ":", "x"]

```

Write an equivalence.

```

<PHS base: phs equivalence: TBP>≡
procedure :: write => phs_equivalence_write

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
subroutine phs_equivalence_write (object, unit)
  class(phs_equivalence_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, j
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(5x,'=',1x,I0,1x)", advance = "no") object%c
  if (allocated (object%perm)) then
    write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") "("
    do j = 1, size (object%perm)
      if (j > 1) write (u, "(1x)", advance = "no")
      write (u, "(I0,A1)", advance = "no") &
        object%perm(j), TAG(object%mode(j))
    end do
  end if
end subroutine phs_equivalence_write

```

```

        write (u, "(A)" " ")
    else
        write (u, "(A)")
    end if
end subroutine phs_equivalence_write

```

Initialize an equivalence. This allocates the `perm` and `mode` arrays with equal size.

```

<PHS base: phs equivalence: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => phs_equivalence_init

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_equivalence_init (eq, n_dim)
        class(phs_equivalence_t), intent(out) :: eq
        integer, intent(in) :: n_dim
        allocate (eq%perm (n_dim), source = 0)
        allocate (eq%mode (n_dim), source = EQ_IDENTITY)
    end subroutine phs_equivalence_init

```

## Channel objects

The channel entry holds (optionally) specific properties.

`sf_channel` is the structure-function channel that corresponds to this phase-space channel. The structure-function channel may be set up with a specific mapping that depends on the phase-space channel properties. (The default setting is to leave the properties empty.)

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
    public :: phs_channel_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
    type :: phs_channel_t
        class(channel_prop_t), allocatable :: prop
        integer :: sf_channel = 1
        type(phs_equivalence_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: eq
    contains
        <PHS base: phs channel: TBP>
    end type phs_channel_t

```

Output.

```

<PHS base: phs channel: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => phs_channel_write

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_channel_write (object, unit)
        class(phs_channel_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, j
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") object%sf_channel
        if (allocated (object%prop)) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") char (object%prop%to_string ())
        else

```

```

        write (u, *)
    end if
    if (allocated (object%eq)) then
        do j = 1, size (object%eq)
            call object%eq(j)%write (u)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine phs_channel_write

```

Identify the channel with an s-channel resonance.

```

<PHS base: phs channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_resonant => channel_set_resonant

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine channel_set_resonant (channel, mass, width)
        class(phs_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
        real(default), intent(in) :: mass, width
        allocate (resonance_t :: channel%prop)
        select type (prop => channel%prop)
            type is (resonance_t)
                prop%mass = mass
                prop%width = width
        end select
    end subroutine channel_set_resonant

```

Identify the channel with an on-shell particle.

```

<PHS base: phs channel: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_on_shell => channel_set_on_shell

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine channel_set_on_shell (channel, mass)
        class(phs_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
        real(default), intent(in) :: mass
        allocate (on_shell_t :: channel%prop)
        select type (prop => channel%prop)
            type is (on_shell_t)
                prop%mass = mass
        end select
    end subroutine channel_set_on_shell

```

### 11.2.2 Property collection

We can set up a list of all distinct channel properties for a given set of channels.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
    public :: phs_channel_collection_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
    type :: prop_entry_t
        integer :: i = 0
        class(channel_prop_t), allocatable :: prop
        type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
    end type prop_entry_t

```

```

type :: phs_channel_collection_t
  integer :: n = 0
  type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
contains
  <PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>
end type phs_channel_collection_t

```

Finalizer for the list.

```

<PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => phs_channel_collection_final

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_channel_collection_final (object)
    class(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    do while (associated (object%first))
      entry => object%first
      object%first => entry%next
      deallocate (entry)
    end do
  end subroutine phs_channel_collection_final

```

Output.

Note: eliminating the `string` auxiliary triggers an ICE in gfortran 4.7.2.

```

<PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => phs_channel_collection_write

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_channel_collection_write (object, unit)
    class(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(string_t) :: string
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    entry => object%first
    do while (associated (entry))
      if (allocated (entry%prop)) then
        string = entry%prop%to_string ()
        write (u, "(1x,I0,1x,A)" entry%i, char (string)
      else
        write (u, "(1x,I0)" entry%i
      end if
      entry => entry%next
    end do
  end subroutine phs_channel_collection_write

```

Push a new property to the stack if it is not yet included. Simultaneously, set the `sf_channel` entry in the phase-space channel object to the index of the matching entry, or the new entry if there was no match.

```

<PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: push => phs_channel_collection_push

```

```

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
subroutine phs_channel_collection_push (coll, channel)
class(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(inout) :: coll
type(phs_channel_t), intent(inout) :: channel
type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: entry, new
if (associated (coll%first)) then
  entry => coll%first
do
  if (allocated (entry%prop)) then
    if (allocated (channel%prop)) then
      if (entry%prop == channel%prop) then
        channel%sf_channel = entry%i
        return
      end if
    end if
  else if (.not. allocated (channel%prop)) then
    channel%sf_channel = entry%i
    return
  end if
  if (associated (entry%next)) then
    entry => entry%next
  else
    exit
  end if
end do
allocate (new)
entry%next => new
else
  allocate (new)
  coll%first => new
end if
coll%n = coll%n + 1
new%i = coll%n
channel%sf_channel = new%i
if (allocated (channel%prop)) then
  allocate (new%prop, source = channel%prop)
end if
end subroutine phs_channel_collection_push

```

Return the number of collected distinct channels.

```

<PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_n => phs_channel_collection_get_n

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
function phs_channel_collection_get_n (coll) result (n)
class(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(in) :: coll
integer :: n
n = coll%n
end function phs_channel_collection_get_n

```

Return a specific channel (property object).

```

<PHS base: phs channel collection: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_entry => phs_channel_collection_get_entry

```

```

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
subroutine phs_channel_collection_get_entry (coll, i, prop)
  class(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(in) :: coll
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  class(channel_prop_t), intent(out), allocatable :: prop
  type(prop_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer :: k
  if (i > 0 .and. i <= coll%n) then
    entry => coll%first
    do k = 2, i
      entry => entry%next
    end do
    if (allocated (entry%prop)) then
      if (allocated (prop)) deallocate (prop)
      allocate (prop, source = entry%prop)
    end if
  else
    call msg_bug ("PHS channel collection: get entry: illegal index")
  end if
end subroutine phs_channel_collection_get_entry

```

### 11.2.3 Kinematics configuration

Here, we store the universal information that is specifically relevant for phase-space generation. It is a subset of the process data, supplemented by basic information on phase-space parameterization channels.

A concrete implementation will contain more data, that describe the phase space in detail.

MD5 sums: the phase space setup depends on the process, it depends on the model parameters (the masses, that is), and on the configuration parameters. (It doesn't depend on the QCD setup.)

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
public :: phs_config_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
type, abstract :: phs_config_t
! private
type(string_t) :: id
integer :: n_in = 0
integer :: n_out = 0
integer :: n_tot = 0
integer :: n_state = 0
integer :: n_par = 0
integer :: n_channel = 0
real(default) :: sqrts = 0
logical :: sqrts_fixed = .true.
logical :: cm_frame = .true.
logical :: azimuthal_dependence = .false.
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: dim_flat
logical :: provides_equivalences = .false.
logical :: provides_chains = .false.
logical :: vis_channels = .false.

```



```

integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: chain
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: flv
type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
character(32) :: md5sum_process = ""
character(32) :: md5sum_model_par = ""
character(32) :: md5sum_phs_config = ""
contains
  <PHS base: phs config: TBP>
end type phs_config_t

```

Finalizer, deferred.

```

<PHS base: phs config: TBP>≡
  procedure (phs_config_final), deferred :: final
<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_config_final (object)
      import
      class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine phs_config_final
  end interface

```

Output. We provide an implementation for the output of the base-type contents and an interface for the actual write method.

```

<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure (phs_config_write), deferred :: write
  procedure :: base_write => phs_config_write
<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_config_write (object, unit)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i, j
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "ID          = '", char (object%id), "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_in       = ", object%n_in
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_out      = ", object%n_out
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_tot      = ", object%n_tot
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_state    = ", object%n_state
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_par      = ", object%n_par
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_channel  = ", object%n_channel
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "sqrts      = ", object%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "s_fixed    = ", object%sqrts_fixed
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "cm_frame   = ", object%cm_frame
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "azim.dep.  = ", object%azimuthal_dependence
    if (allocated (object%dim_flat)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "flat dim. = ", object%dim_flat
    end if
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Flavor combinations:"
    do i = 1, object%n_state
      write (u, "(3x,I0,':')", advance="no") i
      do j = 1, object%n_tot
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &

```

```

        char (flavor_get_name (object%flv(j,i)))
    end do
    write (u, *)
end do
if (allocated (object%channel)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Phase-space / structure-function channels:"
    do i = 1, object%n_channel
        write (u, "(3x,I0,':')", advance="no") i
        call object%channel(i)%write (u)
    end do
end if
if (object%md5sum_process /= "") then
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (process)      = '", &
        object%md5sum_process, "'"
end if
if (object%md5sum_model_par /= "") then
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (model par) = '", &
        object%md5sum_model_par, "'"
end if
if (object%md5sum_phs_config /= "") then
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (phs config) = '", &
        object%md5sum_phs_config, "'"
end if
end subroutine phs_config_write

```

Similarly, a basic initializer and an interface. The model pointer is taken as an argument; we may verify that this has the expected model name.

The intent is *inout*. We want to be able to set parameters in advance.

*(PHS base: phs config: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: init => phs_config_init
```

*(PHS base: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_config_init (phs_config, data, model)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    type(process_constants_t), intent(in) :: data
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer :: i, j
    phs_config%id = data%id
    phs_config%n_in = data%n_in
    phs_config%n_out = data%n_out
    phs_config%n_tot = data%n_in + data%n_out
    phs_config%n_state = data%n_flv
    if (data%model_name == model%get_name ()) then
        phs_config%model => model
    else
        call msg_bug ("phs_config_init: model name mismatch")
    end if
    allocate (phs_config%flv (phs_config%n_tot, phs_config%n_state))
    do i = 1, phs_config%n_state
        do j = 1, phs_config%n_tot
            call flavor_init (phs_config%flv(j,i), data%flv_state(j,i), &
                phs_config%model)
        end do
    end do
end do

```

```

    phs_config%md5sum_process = data%md5sum
end subroutine phs_config_init

```

This procedure should complete the phase-space configuration. We need the `sqrts` value as overall scale, which is known only after the beams have been defined. The procedure should determine the number of channels, their properties (if any), and allocate and fill the `channel` array accordingly.

*(PHS base: phs config: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure (phs_config_configure), deferred :: configure

```

*(PHS base: interfaces)*+≡

```

    abstract interface
        subroutine phs_config_configure (phs_config, sqrts, &
            sqrts_fixed, cm_frame, azimuthal_dependence, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
            import
            class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
            real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
            logical, intent(in), optional :: sqrts_fixed
            logical, intent(in), optional :: cm_frame
            logical, intent(in), optional :: azimuthal_dependence
            logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
            logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
        end subroutine phs_config_configure
    end interface

```

Manually assign structure-function channel indices to the phase-space channel objects. (Used by a test routine.)

*(PHS base: phs config: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure :: set_sf_channel => phs_config_set_sf_channel

```

*(PHS base: procedures)*+≡

```

    subroutine phs_config_set_sf_channel (phs_config, sf_channel)
        class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: sf_channel
        phs_config%channel%sf_channel = sf_channel
    end subroutine phs_config_set_sf_channel

```

Collect new channels not yet in the collection from this phase-space configuration object. At the same time, assign structure-function channels.

*(PHS base: phs config: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure :: collect_channels => phs_config_collect_channels

```

*(PHS base: procedures)*+≡

```

    subroutine phs_config_collect_channels (phs_config, coll)
        class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        type(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(inout) :: coll
        integer :: c
        do c = 1, phs_config%n_channel
            call coll%push (phs_config%channel(c))
        end do
    end subroutine phs_config_collect_channels

```

Compute the MD5 sum. We abuse the `write` method. In type implementations, `write` should only display information that is relevant for the MD5 sum. The data include the process MD5 sum which is taken from the process constants, and the MD5 sum of the model parameters. This may change, so it is computed here.

```

(PHS base: phs config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => phs_config_compute_md5sum

(PHS base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_config_compute_md5sum (phs_config)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    integer :: u
    phs_config%md5sum_model_par = model_get_parameters_md5sum (phs_config%model)
    phs_config%md5sum_phs_config = ""
    u = free_unit ()
    open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
    call phs_config%write (u)
    rewind (u)
    phs_config%md5sum_phs_config = md5sum (u)
    close (u)
  end subroutine phs_config_compute_md5sum

```

Print an informative message after phase-space configuration.

```

(PHS base: phs config: TBP)+≡
  procedure (phs_startup_message), deferred :: startup_message
  procedure :: base_startup_message => phs_startup_message

(PHS base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_startup_message (phs_config, unit)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,3(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
      "Phase space:", &
      phs_config%n_channel, "channels,", &
      phs_config%n_par, "dimensions"
    call msg_message (unit = unit)
  end subroutine phs_startup_message

```

This procedure should be implemented such that the phase-space configuration object allocates a phase-space instance of matching type.

```

(PHS base: phs config: TBP)+≡
  procedure (phs_config_allocate_instance), nopass, deferred :: &
    allocate_instance

(PHS base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_config_allocate_instance (phs)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(inout), pointer :: phs
    end subroutine phs_config_allocate_instance
  end interface

```

### 11.2.4 Extract data

Return the number of MC input parameters.

```
<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_par => phs_config_get_n_par

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  function phs_config_get_n_par (phs_config) result (n)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer :: n
    n = phs_config%n_par
  end function phs_config_get_n_par
```

Return dimensions (parameter indices) for which the phase-space dimension is flat, so integration and event generation can be simplified.

```
<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_flat_dimensions => phs_config_get_flat_dimensions

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  function phs_config_get_flat_dimensions (phs_config) result (dim_flat)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: dim_flat
    if (allocated (phs_config%dim_flat)) then
      allocate (dim_flat (size (phs_config%dim_flat)))
      dim_flat = phs_config%dim_flat
    else
      allocate (dim_flat (0))
    end if
  end function phs_config_get_flat_dimensions
```

Return the number of phase-space channels.

```
<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_channel => phs_config_get_n_channel

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  function phs_config_get_n_channel (phs_config) result (n)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer :: n
    n = phs_config%n_channel
  end function phs_config_get_n_channel
```

Return the structure-function channel that corresponds to the phase-space channel c. If the channel array is not allocated (which happens if there is no structure function), return zero.

```
<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_sf_channel => phs_config_get_sf_channel

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  function phs_config_get_sf_channel (phs_config, c) result (c_sf)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    integer :: c_sf
    if (allocated (phs_config%channel)) then
      c_sf = phs_config%channel(c)%sf_channel
    end if
  end function phs_config_get_sf_channel
```

```

    else
      c_sf = 0
    end if
  end function phs_config_get_sf_channel

```

Return the mass(es) of the incoming particle(s). We take the first flavor combination in the array, assuming that masses must be degenerate among flavors.

```

<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_masses_in => phs_config_get_masses_in

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_config_get_masses_in (phs_config, m)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: m
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, phs_config%n_in
      m(i) = flavor_get_mass (phs_config%flv(i,1))
    end do
  end subroutine phs_config_get_masses_in

```

Return the MD5 sum of the configuration.

```

<PHS base: phs config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum => phs_config_get_md5sum

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  function phs_config_get_md5sum (phs_config) result (md5sum)
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    character(32) :: md5sum
    md5sum = phs_config%md5sum_phs_config
  end function phs_config_get_md5sum

```

### 11.2.5 Phase-space point instance

The `phs_t` object holds the workspace for phase-space generation. In the base object, we have the MC input parameters `r` and the Jacobian factor `f`, for each channel, and the incoming and outgoing momenta.

Note: The `active_channel` array is not used yet, all elements are initialized with `.true..` It should be touched by the integrator if it decides to drop irrelevant channels.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: phs_t

<PHS base: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: phs_t
    class(phs_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
    logical :: r_defined = .false.
    integer :: selected_channel = 0
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: active_channel
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: r
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: m_in
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: m_out

```

```

    real(default) :: flux = 0
    real(default) :: volume = 0
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: lt_cm_to_lab
    logical :: p_defined = .false.
    real(default) :: sqrts_hat = 0
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
    logical :: q_defined = .false.
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: q
contains
  <PHS base: phs: TBP>
end type phs_t

```

Output. Since phase space may get complicated, we include a `verbose` option for the abstract `write` procedure.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>≡
  procedure (phs_write), deferred :: write
<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_write (object, unit, verbose)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    end subroutine phs_write
  end interface

```

This procedure can be called to print the contents of the base type.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_write => phs_base_write
<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_base_write (object, unit)
    class(phs_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, c, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Partonic phase space: parameters"
    if (object%r_defined) then
      write (u, *)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "[undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,999(1x," // FMT_19 // "))") "m_in   =", object%m_in
    write (u, "(3x,A,999(1x," // FMT_19 // "))") "m_out   =", object%m_out
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Flux    =", object%flux
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Volume  =", object%volume
    if (allocated (object%f)) then
      do c = 1, size (object%f, 2)
        write (u, "(1x,A,IO,A)", advance="no") "Channel #", c, ":"
        if (c == object%selected_channel) then
          write (u, "(1x,A)") "[selected]"
        else
          write (u, *)
        end if
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine phs_base_write

```

```

        end if
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "r ="
        do i = 1, size (object%r, 1)
            write (u, "(1x,F9.7)", advance="no") object%r(i,c)
        end do
        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(3x,A,1x,ES13.7)") "f =", object%f(c)
    end do
end if
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Partonic phase space: momenta"
if (object%p_defined) then
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "sqrts = ", object%sqrts_hat
end if
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Incoming:"
if (object%p_defined) then
    write (u, *)
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "[undefined]"
end if
if (allocated (object%p)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%p)
        call vector4_write (object%p(i), u)
    end do
end if
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Outgoing:"
if (object%q_defined) then
    write (u, *)
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "[undefined]"
end if
if (allocated (object%q)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%q)
        call vector4_write (object%q(i), u)
    end do
end if
if (object%p_defined .and. .not. object%config%cm_frame) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Transformation c.m -> lab frame"
    call lorentz_transformation_write (object%lt_cm_to_lab, u)
end if
end subroutine phs_base_write

```

Finalizer. The base type does not need it, but extensions may.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
    procedure (phs_final), deferred :: final

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine phs_final (object)
            import
            class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: object
        end subroutine phs_final
    end interface

```



Initializer. Everything should be contained in the `process_data` configuration object, so we can require a universal interface.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure (phs_init), deferred :: init

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_init (phs, phs_config)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(out) :: phs
      class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: phs_config
    end subroutine phs_init
  end interface

```

The base version will just allocate the arrays. It should be called at the beginning of the implementation of `phs_init`.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_init => phs_base_init

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_base_init (phs, phs_config)
    class(phs_t), intent(out) :: phs
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: phs_config
    phs%config => phs_config
    allocate (phs%active_channel (phs%config%n_channel))
    phs%active_channel = .true.
    allocate (phs%r (phs%config%n_par, phs%config%n_channel)); phs%r = 0
    allocate (phs%f (phs%config%n_channel)); phs%f = 0
    allocate (phs%p (phs%config%n_in))
    allocate (phs%q (phs%config%n_out))
    allocate (phs%m_in (phs%config%n_in), &
      source = flavor_get_mass (phs_config%flv(:phs_config%n_in, 1)))
    allocate (phs%m_out (phs%config%n_out), &
      source = flavor_get_mass (phs_config%flv(phs_config%n_in+1:, 1)))
    call phs%compute_flux ()
  end subroutine phs_base_init

```

Manually select a channel.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_channel => phs_base_select_channel

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_base_select_channel (phs, channel)
    class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    integer, intent(in), optional :: channel
    if (present (channel)) then
      phs%selected_channel = channel
    else
      phs%selected_channel = 0
    end if
  end subroutine phs_base_select_channel

```

Set incoming momenta. Assume that array shapes match. If requested, compute the Lorentz transformation from the c.m. to the lab frame and apply that transformation to the incoming momenta.

In the c.m. frame, the sum of three-momenta is zero. In a scattering process, the  $z$  axis is the direction of the first beam, the second beam is along the negative  $z$  axis. The transformation from the c.m. to the lab frame is a rotation from the  $z$  axis to the boost axis followed by a boost, such that the c.m. momenta are transformed into the lab-frame momenta. In a decay process, we just boost along the flight direction, without rotation.

```

(PHS base: phs: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_incoming_momenta => phs_set_incoming_momenta

(PHS base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_set_incoming_momenta (phs, p)
    class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    type(vector4_t) :: p0, p1
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: lt0
    phs%p = p
    if (phs%config%cm_frame) then
      phs%sqrts_hat = phs%config%sqrts
      phs%p = p
    else
      p0 = sum (p)
      if (phs%config%sqrts_fixed) then
        phs%sqrts_hat = phs%config%sqrts
      else
        phs%sqrts_hat = p0 ** 1
      end if
      lt0 = boost (p0, phs%sqrts_hat)
      select case (phs%config%n_in)
      case (1)
        phs%lt_cm_to_lab = lt0
      case (2)
        p1 = inverse (lt0) * p(1)
        phs%lt_cm_to_lab = lt0 * rotation_to_2nd (3, space_part (p1))
      end select
      phs%p = inverse (phs%lt_cm_to_lab) * p
    end if
    phs%p_defined = .true.
  end subroutine phs_set_incoming_momenta

```

Set outgoing momenta. Assume that array shapes match. The incoming momenta must be known, so can apply the Lorentz transformation from c.m. to lab (inverse) to the momenta.

```

(PHS base: phs: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_outgoing_momenta => phs_set_outgoing_momenta

(PHS base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_set_outgoing_momenta (phs, q)
    class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: q
    if (phs%p_defined) then

```

```

        if (phs%config%cm_frame) then
            phs%q = q
        else
            phs%q = inverse (phs%lt_cm_to_lab) * q
        end if
        phs%q_defined = .true.
    end if
end subroutine phs_set_outgoing_momenta

```

Return outgoing momenta. Apply the c.m. to lab transformation if necessary.

*(PHS base: phs: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: get_outgoing_momenta => phs_get_outgoing_momenta

```

*(PHS base: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine phs_get_outgoing_momenta (phs, q)
        class(phs_t), intent(in) :: phs
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: q
        if (phs%p_defined .and. phs%q_defined) then
            if (phs%config%cm_frame) then
                q = phs%q
            else
                q = phs%lt_cm_to_lab * phs%q
            end if
        else
            q = vector4_null
        end if
    end subroutine phs_get_outgoing_momenta

```

Return the input parameter array for a channel.

*(PHS base: phs: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: get_mcpair => phs_get_mcpair

```

*(PHS base: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine phs_get_mcpair (phs, c, r)
        class(phs_t), intent(in) :: phs
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
        if (phs%r_defined) then
            r = phs%r(:,c)
        else
            r = 0
        end if
    end subroutine phs_get_mcpair

```

Return the Jacobian factor for a channel.

*(PHS base: phs: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: get_f => phs_get_f

```

*(PHS base: procedures)+≡*

```

    function phs_get_f (phs, c) result (f)
        class(phs_t), intent(in) :: phs
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default) :: f
        if (phs%r_defined) then

```

```

        f = phs%f(c)
    else
        f = 0
    end if
end function phs_get_f

```

Return the overall factor, which is the product of the flux factor for the incoming partons and the phase-space volume for the outgoing partons.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_overall_factor => phs_get_overall_factor

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    function phs_get_overall_factor (phs) result (f)
        class(phs_t), intent(in) :: phs
        real(default) :: f
        f = phs%flux * phs%volume
    end function phs_get_overall_factor

```

Compute flux factor. We do this during initialization (when the incoming momenta  $\mathbf{p}$  are undefined), unless `sqrts` is variable. We do this again once for each phase-space point, but then we skip the calculation if `sqrts` is fixed.

There are three different flux factors.

1. For a decaying massive particle, the factor is

$$f = (2\pi)^4/(2M) \quad (11.1)$$

2. For a  $2 \rightarrow n$  scattering process with  $n > 1$ , the factor is

$$f = (2\pi)^4/(2\sqrt{\lambda}) \quad (11.2)$$

where for massless incoming particles,  $\sqrt{\lambda} = s$ .

3. For a  $2 \rightarrow 1$  on-shell production process, the factor includes an extra  $1/(2\pi)^3$  factor and a  $1/m^2$  factor from the phase-space delta function  $\delta(x_1 x_2 - m^2/s)$ , which originate from the one-particle phase space that we integrate out.

$$f = 2\pi/(2sm^2) \quad (11.3)$$

The delta function is handled by the structure-function parameterization.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_flux => phs_compute_flux

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_compute_flux (phs)
        class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
        real(default) :: s_hat, lda
        select case (phs%config%n_in)
        case (1)
            if (.not. phs%p_defined) then
                phs%flux = twopi4 / (2 * phs%m_in(1))
            end if
        case (2)

```

```

    if (phs%p_defined) then
      if (phs%config%sqrts_fixed) then
        return
      else
        s_hat = sum (phs%p) ** 2
      end if
    else
      if (phs%config%sqrts_fixed) then
        s_hat = phs%config%sqrts ** 2
      else
        return
      end if
    end if
    select case (phs%config%n_out)
    case (2:)
      lda = lambda (s_hat, phs%m_in(1) ** 2, phs%m_in(2) ** 2)
      if (lda > 0) then
        phs%flux = conv * twopi4 / (2 * sqrt (lda))
      else
        phs%flux = 0
      end if
    case (1)
      phs%flux = conv * twopi &
        / (2 * phs%config%sqrts ** 2 * phs%m_out(1) ** 2)
    case default
      phs%flux = 0
    end select
  end select
end subroutine phs_compute_flux

```

Evaluate the phase-space point for a particular channel and compute momenta, Jacobian, and phase-space volume. This is, of course, deferred to the implementation.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure (phs_evaluate_selected_channel), deferred :: &
    evaluate_selected_channel

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_evaluate_selected_channel (phs, c_in, r_in)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
      integer, intent(in) :: c_in
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: r_in
    end subroutine phs_evaluate_selected_channel
  end interface

```

Compute the inverse mappings to completely fill the **r** and **f** arrays, for the non-selected channels.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure (phs_evaluate_other_channels), deferred :: &
    evaluate_other_channels

```

```

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_evaluate_other_channels (phs, c_in)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
      integer, intent(in) :: c_in
    end subroutine phs_evaluate_other_channels
  end interface

```

Inverse evaluation. If all momenta are known, we compute the inverse mappings to fill the **r** and **f** arrays.

```

<PHS base: phs: TBP>+≡
  procedure (phs_inverse), deferred :: inverse

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine phs_inverse (phs)
      import
      class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    end subroutine phs_inverse
  end interface

```

### 11.2.6 Auxiliary stuff

The **pacify** subroutine, which is provided by the **Lorentz** module, has the purpose of setting numbers to zero which are (by comparing with a **tolerance** parameter) considered equivalent with zero. This is useful for numerical checks.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: pacify

<PHS base: interfaces>+≡
  interface pacify
    module procedure pacify_phs
  end interface pacify

<PHS base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pacify_phs (phs)
    class(phs_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    if (phs%p_defined) then
      call pacify (phs%p, 30 * epsilon (1._default) * phs%config%sqrts)
      call pacify (phs%lt_cm_to_lab, 30 * epsilon (1._default))
    end if
    if (phs%q_defined) then
      call pacify (phs%q, 30 * epsilon (1._default) * phs%config%sqrts)
    end if
  end subroutine pacify_phs

```

### 11.2.7 Unit tests

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: phs_base_test

```

```

<PHS base: tests>≡
  subroutine phs_base_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <PHS base: execute tests>
  end subroutine phs_base_test

```

## Test process data

We provide a procedure that initializes a test case for the process constants. This set of process data contains just the minimal contents that we need for the phase space. The rest is left uninitialized.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: init_test_process_data

<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine init_test_process_data (id, data)
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: id
    if (present (id)) then
      data%id = id
    else
      data%id = "testproc"
    end if
    data%model_name = "Test"
    data%n_in = 2
    data%n_out = 2
    data%n_flv = 1
    allocate (data%flv_state (data%n_in + data%n_out, data%n_flv))
    data%flv_state = 25
  end subroutine init_test_process_data

```

This is the variant for a decay process.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: init_test_decay_data

<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine init_test_decay_data (id, data)
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: id
    if (present (id)) then
      data%id = id
    else
      data%id = "testproc"
    end if
    data%model_name = "Test"
    data%n_in = 1
    data%n_out = 2
    data%n_flv = 1
    allocate (data%flv_state (data%n_in + data%n_out, data%n_flv))
    data%flv_state(:,1) = [25, 6, -6]
  end subroutine init_test_decay_data

```

## Test kinematics configuration

This is a trivial implementation of the `phs_config_t` configuration object.

```
<PHS base: public>+≡
    public :: phs_test_config_t
<PHS base: test types>≡
    type, extends (phs_config_t) :: phs_test_config_t
        logical :: create_equivalences = .false.
    contains
        procedure :: final => phs_test_config_final
        procedure :: write => phs_test_config_write
        procedure :: configure => phs_test_config_configure
        procedure :: startup_message => phs_test_config_startup_message
        procedure, nopass :: allocate_instance => phs_test_config_allocate_instance
    end type phs_test_config_t
```

The finalizer is empty.

```
<PHS base: tests>+≡
    subroutine phs_test_config_final (object)
        class(phs_test_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine phs_test_config_final
```

The `cm_frame` parameter is not tested here; we defer this to the `phs_single` implementation.

```
<PHS base: tests>+≡
    subroutine phs_test_config_write (object, unit)
        class(phs_test_config_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Partonic phase-space configuration:"
        call object%base_write (unit)
    end subroutine phs_test_config_write

    subroutine phs_test_config_configure (phs_config, sqrts, &
        sqrts_fixed, cm_frame, azimuthal_dependence, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
        class(phs_test_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        logical, intent(in), optional :: sqrts_fixed
        logical, intent(in), optional :: cm_frame
        logical, intent(in), optional :: azimuthal_dependence
        logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
        logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
        phs_config%n_channel = 2
        phs_config%n_par = 2
        phs_config%sqrts = sqrts
        if (present (sqrts_fixed)) then
            phs_config%sqrts_fixed = sqrts_fixed
        end if
        if (present (cm_frame)) then
            phs_config%cm_frame = cm_frame
        end if
```



```

    if (present (azimuthal_dependence)) then
        phs_config%azimuthal_dependence = azimuthal_dependence
    end if
    if (allocated (phs_config%channel)) deallocate (phs_config%channel)
    allocate (phs_config%channel (phs_config%n_channel))
    if (phs_config%create_equivalences) then
        call setup_test_equivalences (phs_config)
        call setup_test_channel_props (phs_config)
    end if
    call phs_config%compute_md5sum ()
end subroutine phs_test_config_configure

```

If requested, we make up an arbitrary set of equivalences.

*(PHS base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine setup_test_equivalences (phs_config)
    class(phs_test_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    integer :: i
    associate (channel => phs_config%channel(1))
        allocate (channel%eq (2))
        do i = 1, size (channel%eq)
            call channel%eq(i)%init (phs_config%n_par)
        end do
        associate (eq => channel%eq(1))
            eq%c = 1; eq%perm = [1, 2]; eq%mode = [EQ_IDENTITY, EQ_SYMMETRIC]
        end associate
        associate (eq => channel%eq(2))
            eq%c = 2; eq%perm = [2, 1]; eq%mode = [EQ_INVARIANT, EQ_IDENTITY]
        end associate
    end associate
end subroutine setup_test_equivalences

```

Ditto, for channel properties.

*(PHS base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine setup_test_channel_props (phs_config)
    class(phs_test_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    associate (channel => phs_config%channel(2))
        call channel%set_resonant (140._default, 3.1415_default)
    end associate
end subroutine setup_test_channel_props

```

Startup message

*(PHS base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_test_config_startup_message (phs_config, unit)
    class(phs_test_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    call phs_config%base_startup_message (unit)
    write (msg_buffer, "(A)") "Phase space: Test"
    call msg_message (unit = unit)
end subroutine phs_test_config_startup_message

```

The instance type that matches `phs_test_config_t` is `phs_test_t`.

*(PHS base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_test_config_allocate_instance (phs)
  class(phs_t), intent(inout), pointer :: phs
  allocate (phs_test_t :: phs)
end subroutine phs_test_config_allocate_instance

```

## Test kinematics implementation

This implementation of kinematics generates a simple two-particle configuration from the incoming momenta. The incoming momenta must be in the c.m. system, all masses equal.

There are two channels: one generates  $\cos\theta$  and  $\phi$  uniformly, in the other channel we map the  $r_1$  parameter which belongs to  $\cos\theta$ .

We should store the mass parameter that we need.

```

<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: phs_test_t
<PHS base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (phs_t) :: phs_test_t
    real(default) :: m = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
  contains
    <PHS base: phs test: TBP>
  end type phs_test_t

```

Output. The specific data are displayed only if **verbose** is set.

```

<PHS base: phs test: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => phs_test_write
<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_test_write (object, unit, verbose)
    class(phs_test_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    logical :: verb
    u = output_unit (unit)
    verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    if (verb) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Partonic phase space: data"
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "m = ", object%m
    end if
    call object%base_write (u)
  end subroutine phs_test_write

```

The finalizer is empty.

```

<PHS base: phs test: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => phs_test_final
<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_test_final (object)
    class(phs_test_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine phs_test_final

```

Initialization: set the mass value.

```

(PHS base: phs test: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init => phs_test_init

(PHS base: tests)+≡
  subroutine phs_test_init (phs, phs_config)
    class(phs_test_t), intent(out) :: phs
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: phs_config
    call phs%base_init (phs_config)
    phs%m = flavor_get_mass (phs%config%flv(1,1))
    allocate (phs%x (phs_config%n_par), source = 0._default)
  end subroutine phs_test_init

```

Evaluation. In channel 1, we uniformly generate  $\cos\theta$  and  $\phi$ , with Jacobian normalized to one. In channel 2, we prepend a mapping  $r_1 \rightarrow r_1^{(1/3)}$  with Jacobian  $f = 3r_1^2$ .

The component  $\mathbf{x}$  is allocated in the first subroutine, used and deallocated in the second one.

```

(PHS base: phs test: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_selected_channel => phs_test_evaluate_selected_channel
  procedure :: evaluate_other_channels => phs_test_evaluate_other_channels

(PHS base: tests)+≡
  subroutine phs_test_evaluate_selected_channel (phs, c_in, r_in)
    class(phs_test_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    integer, intent(in) :: c_in
    real(default), intent(in), dimension(:) :: r_in
    if (phs%p_defined) then
      call phs%select_channel (c_in)
      phs%r(:,c_in) = r_in
      select case (c_in)
        case (1)
          phs%x = r_in
        case (2)
          phs%x(1) = r_in(1) ** (1 / 3._default)
          phs%x(2) = r_in(2)
      end select
      call compute_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%p, phs%q, phs%x)
      phs%volume = 1
      phs%q_defined = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine phs_test_evaluate_selected_channel

  subroutine phs_test_evaluate_other_channels (phs, c_in)
    class(phs_test_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    integer, intent(in) :: c_in
    integer :: c, n_channel
    if (phs%p_defined) then
      n_channel = phs%config%n_channel
      do c = 1, n_channel
        if (c /= c_in) then
          call inverse_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%p, phs%q, phs%x)
          select case (c)
            case (1)

```

```

        phs%r(:,c) = phs%x
    case (2)
        phs%r(1,c) = phs%x(1) ** 3
        phs%r(2,c) = phs%x(2)
    end select
end if
end do
phs%f(1) = 1
if (phs%r(1,2) /= 0) then
    phs%f(2) = 1 / (3 * phs%r(1,2) ** (2/3._default))
else
    phs%f(2) = 0
end if
phs%r_defined = .true.
end if
end subroutine phs_test_evaluate_other_channels

```

Inverse evaluation.

```

<PHS base: phs test: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: inverse => phs_test_inverse

<PHS base: tests>+≡
    subroutine phs_test_inverse (phs)
        class(phs_test_t), intent(inout) :: phs
        integer :: c, n_channel
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
        if (phs%p_defined .and. phs%q_defined) then
            call phs%select_channel ()
            n_channel = phs%config%n_channel
            allocate (x (phs%config%n_par))
            do c = 1, n_channel
                call inverse_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%p, phs%q, x)
                select case (c)
                case (1)
                    phs%r(:,c) = x
                case (2)
                    phs%r(1,c) = x(1) ** 3
                    phs%r(2,c) = x(2)
                end select
            end do
            phs%f(1) = 1
            if (phs%r(1,2) /= 0) then
                phs%f(2) = 1 / (3 * phs%r(1,2) ** (2/3._default))
            else
                phs%f(2) = 0
            end if
            phs%volume = 1
            phs%r_defined = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine phs_test_inverse

```

## Uniform angular distribution

These procedures implement the uniform angular distribution, generated from two parameters  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ :

$$\cos \theta = 1 - 2x_1, \quad \phi = 2\pi x_2 \quad (11.4)$$

We generate a rotation (Lorentz transformation) which rotates the positive  $z$  axis into this point on the unit sphere. This rotation is applied to the  $\mathbf{p}$  momenta, which are assumed to be back-to-back, on-shell, and with the correct mass.

We do not compute a Jacobian (constant). The uniform distribution is assumed to be normalized.

```
<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: compute_kinematics_solid_angle
<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine compute_kinematics_solid_angle (p, q, x)
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: p
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2), intent(out) :: q
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: x
    real(default) :: ct, st, phi
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: rot
    integer :: i
    ct = 1 - 2*x(1)
    st = sqrt (1 - ct**2)
    phi = twopi * x(2)
    rot = rotation (phi, 3) * rotation (ct, st, 2)
    do i = 1, 2
      q(i) = rot * p(i)
    end do
  end subroutine compute_kinematics_solid_angle
```

This is the inverse transformation. We assume that the outgoing momenta are rotated versions of the incoming momenta, back-to-back. Thus, we determine the angles from  $q(1)$  alone.  $p$  is unused.

```
<PHS base: public>+≡
  public :: inverse_kinematics_solid_angle
<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine inverse_kinematics_solid_angle (p, q, x)
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: q
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(out) :: x
    real(default) :: ct, phi
    ct = polar_angle_ct (q(1))
    phi = azimuthal_angle (q(1))
    x(1) = (1 - ct) / 2
    x(2) = phi / twopi
  end subroutine inverse_kinematics_solid_angle
```

## Phase-space configuration data

Construct and display a test phase-space configuration object.

```
<PHS base: execute tests>≡
```

```

call test (phs_base_1, "phs_base_1", &
          "phase-space configuration", &
          u, results)
<PHS base: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_base_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_base_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize and display &
    &test phase-space configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
    &phase-space configuration"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_base_1"), process_data)

  allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_data)
  call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

  call phs_data%write (u)

  call phs_data%final ()
  call model_list%final ()
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_base_1"

end subroutine phs_base_1

```

## Phase space evaluation

Compute kinematics for given parameters, also invert the calculation.

```

<PHS base: execute tests>+≡
call test (phs_base_2, "phs_base_2", &
          "phase-space evaluation", &
          u, results)
<PHS base: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_base_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u

```

```

type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(flavor_t) :: flv
type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
real(default) :: sqrts, E
class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p, q

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_base_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple two-channel phase space"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
    &phase-space configuration"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_base_2"), process_data)

allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
select type (phs)
type is (phs_test_t)
    call phs%init (phs_data)
end select

call phs%write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

E = sqrts / 2
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)

```

```

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point in channel 1 &
    &for x = 0.5, 0.125"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, [0.5_default, 0.125_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point in channel 2 &
    &for x = 0.125, 0.125"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (2, [0.125_default, 0.125_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (2)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
deallocate (phs)
call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

sqrt_s = 1000._default
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_test_config_t)
    call phs_data%configure (sqrt_s)
end select

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call phs%write (u)

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_base_2"

```



```
end subroutine phs_base_2
```

## Phase-space equivalences

Construct a test phase-space configuration which contains channel equivalences.

```
(PHS base: execute tests)+≡
  call test (phs_base_3, "phs_base_3", &
    "channel equivalences", &
    u, results)

(PHS base: tests)+≡
  subroutine phs_base_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_base_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: construct phase-space configuration data &
      &with equivalences"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
      &phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_base_3"), process_data)

    allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_data)
    call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
    select type (phs_data)
    type is (phs_test_config_t)
      phs_data%create_equivalences = .true.
    end select

    call phs_data%configure (1000._default)
    call phs_data%write (u)

    call phs_data%final ()
    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_base_3"

  end subroutine phs_base_3
```

## MD5 sum checks

Construct a test phase-space configuration, compute and compare MD5 sums.

```
<PHS base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (phs_base_4, "phs_base_4", &
    "MD5 sum", &
    u, results)

<PHS base: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_base_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_base_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: compute and compare MD5 sums"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Model parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    call var_list_write (var_list, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
      &phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_base_4"), process_data)
    process_data%md5sum = "test_process_data_m6sum_12345678"

    allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_data)
    call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

    call phs_data%compute_md5sum ()
    call phs_data%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify model parameter"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("ms"), 100._default, &
```

```

        is_known=.true.)
call var_list_write (var_list, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* PHS configuration"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%compute_md5sum ()
call phs_data%write (u)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_base_4"

end subroutine phs_base_4

```

## Phase-space channel collection

Set up an array of various phase-space channels and collect them in a list.

```

<PHS base: execute tests>+≡
call test (phs_base_5, "phs_base_5", &
    "channel collection", &
    u, results)

<PHS base: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_base_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
    type(phs_channel_collection_t) :: coll
    integer :: i, n

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_base_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: collect channel properties"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up an array of channels"
    write (u, "(A)")

    n = 6

    allocate (channel (n))
    call channel(2)%set_resonant (75._default, 3._default)
    call channel(4)%set_resonant (130._default, 1._default)
    call channel(5)%set_resonant (75._default, 3._default)
    call channel(6)%set_on_shell (33._default)

    do i = 1, n
        write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") i
        call channel(i)%write (u)
    end do

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Collect distinct properties"
write (u, "(A)")

do i = 1, n
    call coll%push (channel(i))
end do

write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n = ", coll%get_n ()
write (u, "(A)")

call coll%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Channel array with collection index assigned"
write (u, "(A)")

do i = 1, n
    write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no")  i
    call channel(i)%write (u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call coll%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_base_5"

end subroutine phs_base_5

```

## 11.3 Single-particle phase space

This module implements the phase space for a single particle, i.e., the solid angle, in a straightforward parameterization with a single channel. The phase-space implementation may be used either for  $1 \rightarrow 2$  decays or for  $2 \rightarrow 2$  scattering processes, so the number of incoming particles is the only free parameter in the configuration. In the latter case, we should restrict its use to non-resonant s-channel processes, because there is no mapping of the scattering angle.

(We might extend this later to account for generic  $2 \rightarrow 2$  situations, e.g., account for a Coulomb singularity or detect an s-channel resonance structure that requires matching structure-function mappings.)

This is derived from the `phs_test` implementation in the `phs_base` module above, even more simplified, but intended for actual use.

```
(phs_single.f90)≡
  <File header>

  module phs_single

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use constants !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use variables
    use models
    use flavors
    use process_constants
    use sf_mappings
    use sf_base
    use phs_base

    <Standard module head>

    <PHS single: public>

    <PHS single: types>

    contains

    <PHS single: procedures>

    <PHS single: tests>

  end module phs_single
```

### 11.3.1 Configuration

```
<PHS single: public>≡
  public :: phs_single_config_t
```

```

<PHS single: types>≡
  type, extends (phs_config_t) :: phs_single_config_t
  contains
    <PHS single: phs single config: TBP>
  end type phs_single_config_t

```

The finalizer is empty.

```

<PHS single: phs single config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => phs_single_config_final

<PHS single: procedures>≡
  subroutine phs_single_config_final (object)
    class(phs_single_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine phs_single_config_final

```

Output.

```

<PHS single: phs single config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => phs_single_config_write

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_config_write (object, unit)
    class(phs_single_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Partonic phase-space configuration (single-particle):"
    call object%base_write (unit)
  end subroutine phs_single_config_write

```

Configuration: there is only one channel and two parameters. The second parameter is the azimuthal angle, which may be a flat dimension.

```

<PHS single: phs single config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: configure => phs_single_config_configure

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_config_configure (phs_config, sqrts, &
    sqrts_fixed, cm_frame, azimuthal_dependence, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
    class(phs_single_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    logical, intent(in), optional :: sqrts_fixed
    logical, intent(in), optional :: cm_frame
    logical, intent(in), optional :: azimuthal_dependence
    logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
    if (phs_config%n_out == 2) then
      phs_config%n_channel = 1
      phs_config%n_par = 2
      phs_config%sqrts = sqrts
      if (present (sqrts_fixed)) phs_config%sqrts_fixed = sqrts_fixed
      if (present (cm_frame)) phs_config%cm_frame = cm_frame
      if (present (azimuthal_dependence)) then
        phs_config%azimuthal_dependence = azimuthal_dependence
      if (.not. azimuthal_dependence) then

```

```

        allocate (phs_config%dim_flat (1))
        phs_config%dim_flat(1) = 2
    end if
end if
if (allocated (phs_config%channel)) deallocate (phs_config%channel)
allocate (phs_config%channel (1))
call phs_config%compute_md5sum ()
else
    call msg_fatal ("Single-particle phase space requires n_out = 2")
end if
end subroutine phs_single_config_configure

```

Startup message, after configuration is complete.

```

<PHS single: phs single config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: startup_message => phs_single_config_startup_message
<PHS single: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_single_config_startup_message (phs_config, unit)
        class(phs_single_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        call phs_config%base_startup_message (unit)
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
            "Phase space: single-particle"
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
    end subroutine phs_single_config_startup_message

```

Allocate an instance: the actual phase-space object.

```

<PHS single: phs single config: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: allocate_instance => phs_single_config_allocate_instance
<PHS single: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_single_config_allocate_instance (phs)
        class(phs_t), intent(inout), pointer :: phs
        allocate (phs_single_t :: phs)
    end subroutine phs_single_config_allocate_instance

```

### 11.3.2 Kinematics implementation

We generate  $\cos\theta$  and  $\phi$  uniformly, covering the solid angle.

Note: The incoming momenta must be in the c.m. system.

```

<PHS single: public>+≡
    public :: phs_single_t
<PHS single: types>+≡
    type, extends (phs_t) :: phs_single_t
        contains
        <PHS single: phs single: TBP>
    end type phs_single_t

```

Output. The `verbose` setting is irrelevant, we just display the contents of the base object.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => phs_single_write

```

```

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_write (object, unit, verbose)
    class(phs_single_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call object%base_write (u)
  end subroutine phs_single_write

```

The finalizer is empty.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => phs_single_final

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_final (object)
    class(phs_single_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine phs_single_final

```

Initialization. We allocate arrays (**base\_init**) and adjust the phase-space volume. The massless two-particle phase space volume is

$$\Phi_2 = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^5} = 2.55294034614 \times 10^{-5} \quad (11.5)$$

For a decay with nonvanishing masses ( $m_3, m_4$ ), there is a correction factor

$$\Phi_2(m)/\Phi_2(0) = \frac{1}{\hat{s}} \lambda^{1/2}(\hat{s}, m_3^2, m_4^2). \quad (11.6)$$

For a scattering process with nonvanishing masses, the correction factor is

$$\Phi_2(m)/\Phi_2(0) = \frac{1}{\hat{s}^2} \lambda^{1/2}(\hat{s}, m_1^2, m_2^2) \lambda^{1/2}(\hat{s}, m_3^2, m_4^2). \quad (11.7)$$

If the energy is fixed, this is constant. Otherwise, we have to account for varying  $\hat{s}$ .

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => phs_single_init

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_init (phs, phs_config)
    class(phs_single_t), intent(out) :: phs
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: phs_config
    call phs%base_init (phs_config)
    phs%volume = 1 / (4 * twopi5)
    call phs%compute_factor ()
  end subroutine phs_single_init

```

Compute the correction factor for nonzero masses. We do this during initialization (when the incoming momenta **p** are undefined), unless **sqrts** is variable. We do this again once for each phase-space point, but then we skip the calculation if **sqrts** is fixed.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_factor => phs_single_compute_factor

```



```

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
subroutine phs_single_compute_factor (phs)
class(phs_single_t), intent(inout) :: phs
real(default) :: s_hat
select case (phs%config%n_in)
case (1)
  if (.not. phs%p_defined) then
    if (sum (phs%m_out) < phs%m_in(1)) then
      s_hat = phs%m_in(1) ** 2
      phs%f(1) = 1 / s_hat &
        * sqrt (lambda (s_hat, phs%m_out(1)**2, phs%m_out(2)**2))
    else
      print *, "m_in = ", phs%m_in
      print *, "m_out = ", phs%m_out
      call msg_fatal ("Decay is kinematically forbidden")
    end if
  end if
case (2)
  if (phs%config%sqrts_fixed) then
    if (phs%p_defined) return
    s_hat = phs%config%sqrts ** 2
  else
    if (.not. phs%p_defined) return
    s_hat = sum (phs%p) ** 2
  end if
  if (sum (phs%m_in)**2 < s_hat .and. sum (phs%m_out)**2 < s_hat) then
    phs%f(1) = 1 / s_hat * &
      ( lambda (s_hat, phs%m_in (1)**2, phs%m_in (2)**2) &
        * lambda (s_hat, phs%m_out(1)**2, phs%m_out(2)**2) ) &
      ** 0.25_default
  else
    phs%f(1) = 0
  end if
end select
end subroutine phs_single_compute_factor

```

Evaluation. We uniformly generate  $\cos\theta$  and  $\phi$ , with Jacobian normalized to one.

There is only a single channel, so the second subroutine does nothing.

Note: the current implementation works for elastic scattering only.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
procedure :: evaluate_selected_channel => phs_single_evaluate_selected_channel
procedure :: evaluate_other_channels => phs_single_evaluate_other_channels

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
subroutine phs_single_evaluate_selected_channel (phs, c_in, r_in)
class(phs_single_t), intent(inout) :: phs
integer, intent(in) :: c_in
real(default), intent(in), dimension(:) :: r_in
!!! Catching a gfortran bogus warning
type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p_dum
if (phs%p_defined) then
  call phs%select_channel (c_in)
  phs%r(:,c_in) = r_in

```

```

select case (phs%config%n_in)
case (2)
  if (all (phs%m_in == phs%m_out)) then
    call compute_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%p, phs%q, r_in)
  else
    call msg_bug ("PHS single: inelastic scattering not implemented")
  end if
case (1)
  !!! Catching a gfortran bogus warning
  !!! call compute_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%decay_p (), phs%q, x)
  p_dum = phs%decay_p ()
  call compute_kinematics_solid_angle (p_dum, phs%q, r_in)
end select
call phs%compute_factor ()
phs%q_defined = .true.
phs%r_defined = .true.
end if
end subroutine phs_single_evaluate_selected_channel

subroutine phs_single_evaluate_other_channels (phs, c_in)
  class(phs_single_t), intent(inout) :: phs
  integer, intent(in) :: c_in
end subroutine phs_single_evaluate_other_channels

```

Auxiliary: split a decaying particle at rest into the decay products, aligned along the  $z$  axis.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: decay_p => phs_single_decay_p

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  function phs_single_decay_p (phs) result (p)
    class(phs_single_t), intent(in) :: phs
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p
    real(default) :: k
    real(default), dimension(2) :: E
    k = sqrt (lambda (phs%m_in(1) ** 2, phs%m_out(1) ** 2, phs%m_out(2) ** 2)) &
      / (2 * phs%m_in(1))
    E = sqrt (phs%m_out ** 2 + k ** 2)
    p(1) = vector4_moving (E(1), k, 3)
    p(2) = vector4_moving (E(2), -k, 3)
  end function phs_single_decay_p

```

Inverse evaluation.

```

<PHS single: phs single: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => phs_single_inverse

<PHS single: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_inverse (phs)
    class(phs_single_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    if (phs%p_defined .and. phs%q_defined) then
      call phs%select_channel ()
      allocate (x (phs%config%n_par))
      call inverse_kinematics_solid_angle (phs%p, phs%q, x)
    end if
  end subroutine phs_single_inverse

```

```

        phs%r(:,1) = x
        call phs%compute_factor ()
        phs%r_defined = .true.
    end if
end subroutine phs_single_inverse

```

### 11.3.3 Unit tests

```

<PHS single: public>+≡
    public :: phs_single_test

<PHS single: tests>≡
    subroutine phs_single_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <PHS single: execute tests>
    end subroutine phs_single_test

```

#### Phase-space configuration data

Construct and display a test phase-space configuration object. Also check the azimuthal\_dependence flag.

```

<PHS single: execute tests>≡
    call test (phs_single_1, "phs_single_1", &
        "phase-space configuration", &
        u, results)

<PHS single: tests>+≡
    subroutine phs_single_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
        class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data
        real(default) :: sqrts

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_single_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
            &phase-space configuration data"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
            var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
            &phase-space configuration"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_single_1"), process_data)

```

```

allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

sqrt_s = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrt_s, azimuthal_dependence=.false.)

call phs_data%write (u)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_single_1"

end subroutine phs_single_1

```

## Phase space evaluation

Compute kinematics for given parameters, also invert the calculation.

```

<PHS single: execute tests>+≡
  call test (phs_single_2, "phs_single_2", &
    "phase-space evaluation", &
    u, results)

<PHS single: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    real(default) :: sqrt_s, E
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
    class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p, q

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_single_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple two-channel phase space"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
      &phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_single_2"), process_data)

allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs%write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

E = sqrts / 2
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point &
    &for x = 0.5, 0.125"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, [0.5_default, 0.125_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
deallocate (phs)
call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()

```

```

call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call phs%write (u)

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_single_2"

end subroutine phs_single_2

```

### Phase space for non-c.m. system

Compute kinematics for given parameters, also invert the calculation. Since this will involve cancellations, we call `pacify` to eliminate numerical noise.

```

<PHS single: execute tests>+≡
  call test (phs_single_3, "phs_single_3", &
    "phase-space evaluation in lab frame", &
    u, results)

<PHS single: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_single_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    real(default) :: sqrts, E
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
    class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
    type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p, q
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: lt

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_single_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple two-channel phase space"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           without c.m. kinematics assumption"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
      &phase-space configuration"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_single_3"), process_data)

allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts, cm_frame=.false., sqrts_fixed=.false.)

call phs_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs%write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta in lab system"
write (u, "(A)")

lt = boost (0.1_default, 1) * boost (0.3_default, 3)

E = sqrts / 2
p(1) = lt * vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
p(2) = lt * vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)

call vector4_write (p(1), u)
call vector4_write (p(2), u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point &
    &for x = 0.5, 0.125"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, [0.5_default, 0.125_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call pacify (phs)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract outgoing momenta in lab system"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
call vector4_write (q(1), u)
call vector4_write (q(2), u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (phs)
call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call pacify (phs)
call phs%write (u)

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_single_3"

end subroutine phs_single_3

```

## Decay Phase space evaluation

Compute kinematics for given parameters, also invert the calculation. This time, implement a decay process.

```

<PHS single: execute tests>+≡
  call test (phs_single_4, "phs_single_4", &
    "decay phase-space evaluation", &
    u, results)

<PHS single: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_single_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
  class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
  type(vector4_t), dimension(1) :: p

```



```

type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: q

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_single_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple two-channel phase space"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("ff"), 0.4_default, is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (model)
call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a decay and a matching &
    &phase-space configuration"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_decay_data (var_str ("phs_single_4"), process_data)

allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

call phs_data%configure (flavor_get_mass (flv))

call phs_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs%write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

p(1) = vector4_at_rest (flavor_get_mass (flv))

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point &
    &for x = 0.5, 0.125"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, [0.5_default, 0.125_default])

```

```

call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
deallocate (phs)
call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs_data%configure (flavor_get_mass (flv))

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call phs%write (u)

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_single_4"

end subroutine phs_single_4

```

## 11.4 Mappings

Mappings are objects that encode the transformation of the interval  $(0,1)$  to a physical variable  $m^2$  or  $\cos\theta$  (and back), as it is used in the phase space parameterization. The mapping objects contain fixed parameters, the associated methods implement the mapping and inverse mapping operations, including the computation of the Jacobian (phase space factor).

```
<mappings.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module mappings  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: TC !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use constants, only: pi !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use md5  
    use models  
    use flavors  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Mappings: public>  
  
    <Mappings: parameters>  
  
    <Mappings: types>  
  
    <Mappings: interfaces>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Mappings: procedures>  
  
  end module mappings
```

### 11.4.1 Default parameters

This type holds the default parameters, needed for setting the scale in cases where no mass parameter is available. The contents are public.

```
<Mappings: public>≡  
  public :: mapping_defaults_t  
  
<Mappings: types>≡  
  type :: mapping_defaults_t  
    real(default) :: energy_scale = 10  
    real(default) :: invariant_mass_scale = 10  
    real(default) :: momentum_transfer_scale = 10  
    logical :: step_mapping = .true.  
    logical :: step_mapping_exp = .true.
```

```

        logical :: enable_s_mapping = .false.
contains
    <Mappings: mapping defaults: TBP>
end type mapping_defaults_t

```

Output.

```

<Mappings: mapping defaults: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => mapping_defaults_write

<Mappings: procedures>≡
    subroutine mapping_defaults_write (object, unit)
        class(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "energy scale = ", &
            object%energy_scale
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "mass scale = ", &
            object%invariant_mass_scale
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "q scale = ", &
            object%momentum_transfer_scale
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "step mapping = ", &
            object%step_mapping
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "step exp. mode = ", &
            object%step_mapping_exp
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "allow s mapping = ", &
            object%enable_s_mapping
    end subroutine mapping_defaults_write

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: mapping_defaults_md5sum

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    function mapping_defaults_md5sum (mapping_defaults) result (md5sum_map)
        character(32) :: md5sum_map
        type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: mapping_defaults
        integer :: u
        u = free_unit ()
        open (u, status = "scratch")
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%energy_scale
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%invariant_mass_scale
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%momentum_transfer_scale
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%step_mapping
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%step_mapping_exp
        write (u, *) mapping_defaults%enable_s_mapping
        rewind (u)
        md5sum_map = md5sum (u)
        close (u)
    end function mapping_defaults_md5sum

```

### 11.4.2 The Mapping type

Each mapping has a type (e.g., s-channel, infrared), a binary code (redundant, but useful for debugging), and a reference particle. The flavor code of this particle is stored for bookkeeping reasons, what matters are the mass and width of this particle. Furthermore, depending on the type, various mapping parameters can be set and used.

The parameters **a1** to **a3** (for  $m^2$  mappings) and **b1** to **b3** (for  $\cos \theta$  mappings) are values that are stored once to speed up the calculation, if **variable\_limits** is false. The exact meaning of these parameters depends on the mapping type. The limits are fixed if there is a fixed c.m. energy.

```

⟨Mappings: public⟩+≡
    public :: mapping_t

⟨Mappings: types⟩+≡
    type :: mapping_t
    private
        integer :: type = NO_MAPPING
        integer(TC) :: bincode
        type(flavor_t) :: flv
        real(default) :: mass = 0
        real(default) :: width = 0
        logical :: a_unknown = .true.
        real(default) :: a1 = 0
        real(default) :: a2 = 0
        real(default) :: a3 = 0
        logical :: b_unknown = .true.
        real(default) :: b1 = 0
        real(default) :: b2 = 0
        real(default) :: b3 = 0
        logical :: variable_limits = .true.
    end type mapping_t

```

The valid mapping types. The extra type STEP\_MAPPING is used only internally.

```

⟨Mappings: parameters⟩≡
    ⟨Mapping modes⟩

```

### 11.4.3 Screen output

Do not write empty mappings.

```

⟨Mappings: public⟩+≡
    public :: mapping_write

⟨Mappings: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine mapping_write (map, unit, verbose)
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: map
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        integer :: u
        character(len=9) :: str
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        select case(map%type)
        case(S_CHANNEL); str = "s_channel"

```

```

case(COLLINEAR); str = "collinear"
case(INFRARED); str = "infrared "
case(RADIATION); str = "radiation"
case(T_CHANNEL); str = "t_channel"
case(U_CHANNEL); str = "u_channel"
case(STEP_MAPPING_E); str = "step_exp"
case(STEP_MAPPING_H); str = "step_hyp"
case(ON_SHELL); str = "on_shell"
case default; str = "???????"
end select
if (map%type /= NO_MAPPING) then
  write (u, '(1x,A,I4,A)') &
    "Branch #", map%bincode, ": " // &
    "Mapping (" // str // ") for particle " // &
    "' ' // char (flavor_get_name (map%flv)) // ' '"
  if (present (verbose)) then
    if (verbose) then
      select case (map%type)
      case (S_CHANNEL, RADIATION, STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
        write (u, "(1x,A,3(" // FMT_19 // "))" ) &
          " m/w = ", map%mass, map%width
      case default
        write (u, "(1x,A,3(" // FMT_19 // "))" ) &
          " m = ", map%mass
      end select
      select case (map%type)
      case (S_CHANNEL, T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL, &
        STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H, &
        COLLINEAR, INFRARED, RADIATION)
        write (u, "(1x,A,3(" // FMT_19 // "))" ) &
          " a1/2/3 = ", map%a1, map%a2, map%a3
      end select
      select case (map%type)
      case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL, COLLINEAR)
        write (u, "(1x,A,3(" // FMT_19 // "))" ) &
          " b1/2/3 = ", map%b1, map%b2, map%b3
      end select
    end if
  end if
end if
end subroutine mapping_write

```

#### 11.4.4 Define a mapping

The initialization routine sets the mapping type and the particle (binary code and flavor code) for which the mapping applies (e.g., a  $Z$  resonance in branch #3). We only need the absolute value of the flavor code.

*(Mappings: public)*+≡

public :: mapping\_init

*(Mappings: procedures)*+≡

subroutine mapping\_init (mapping, bincode, type, f, model)  
 type(mapping\_t), intent(inout) :: mapping

```

integer(TC), intent(in) :: bincode
type(string_t), intent(in) :: type
integer, intent(in), optional :: f
type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model
mapping%bincode = bincode
select case (char (type))
case ("s_channel"); mapping%type = S_CHANNEL
case ("collinear"); mapping%type = COLLINEAR
case ("infrared"); mapping%type = INFRARED
case ("radiation"); mapping%type = RADIATION
case ("t_channel"); mapping%type = T_CHANNEL
case ("u_channel"); mapping%type = U_CHANNEL
case ("step_exp"); mapping%type = STEP_MAPPING_E
case ("step_hyp"); mapping%type = STEP_MAPPING_H
case ("on_shell"); mapping%type = ON_SHELL
case default
    call msg_bug ("Mappings: encountered undefined mapping key '" &
        // char (type) // "'")
end select
if (present (f) .and. present (model)) &
    call flavor_init (mapping%flv, abs (f), model)
end subroutine mapping_init

```

This sets the actual mass and width, using a parameter set. Since the auxiliary parameters will only be determined when the mapping is first called, they are marked as unknown.

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: mapping_set_parameters

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mapping_set_parameters (map, mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
        type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
        type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: mapping_defaults
        logical, intent(in) :: variable_limits
        if (map%type /= NO_MAPPING) then
            map%mass = flavor_get_mass (map%flv)
            map%width = flavor_get_width (map%flv)
            map%variable_limits = variable_limits
            map%a_unknown = .true.
            map%b_unknown = .true.
            select case (map%type)
            case (S_CHANNEL)
                if (map%mass <= 0) then
                    call mapping_write (map)
                    call msg_fatal &
                        & (" S-channel resonance must have positive mass")
                else if (map%width <= 0) then
                    call mapping_write (map)
                    call msg_fatal &
                        & (" S-channel resonance must have positive width")
                end if
            case (RADIATION)
                map%width = max (map%width, mapping_defaults%energy_scale)
            case (INFRARED, COLLINEAR)

```

```

        map%mass = max (map%mass, mapping_defaults%invariant_mass_scale)
    case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL)
        map%mass = max (map%mass, mapping_defaults%momentum_transfer_scale)
    end select
end if
end subroutine mapping_set_parameters

```

For a step mapping the mass and width are set directly, instead of being determined from the flavor parameter (which is meaningless here). They correspond to the effective upper bound of phase space due to a resonance, as opposed to the absolute upper bound.

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: mapping_set_step_mapping_parameters

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mapping_set_step_mapping_parameters (map, &
        mass, width, variable_limits)
        type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
        real(default), intent(in) :: mass, width
        logical, intent(in) :: variable_limits
        select case (map%type)
        case (STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
            map%variable_limits = variable_limits
            map%a_unknown = .true.
            map%b_unknown = .true.
            map%mass = mass
            map%width = width
        end select
    end subroutine mapping_set_step_mapping_parameters

```

#### 11.4.5 Retrieve contents

Return true if there is any / an s-channel mapping.

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: mapping_is_set
    public :: mapping_is_s_channel
    public :: mapping_is_on_shell

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    function mapping_is_set (mapping) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
        flag = mapping%type /= NO_MAPPING
    end function mapping_is_set

    function mapping_is_s_channel (mapping) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
        flag = mapping%type == S_CHANNEL
    end function mapping_is_s_channel

    function mapping_is_on_shell (mapping) result (flag)

```



```

    logical :: flag
    type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
    flag = mapping%type == ON_SHELL
end function mapping_is_on_shell

```

Return stored mass and width, respectively.

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: mapping_get_mass
    public :: mapping_get_width

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    function mapping_get_mass (mapping) result (mass)
        real(default) :: mass
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
        mass = mapping%mass
    end function mapping_get_mass

    function mapping_get_width (mapping) result (width)
        real(default) :: width
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: mapping
        width = mapping%width
    end function mapping_get_width

```

## 11.4.6 Compare mappings

Equality for single mappings and arrays

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
    public :: operator(==)

<Mappings: interfaces>≡
    interface operator(==)
        module procedure mapping_equal
    end interface

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
    function mapping_equal (m1, m2) result (equal)
        type(mapping_t), intent(in) :: m1, m2
        logical :: equal
        if (m1%type == m2%type) then
            select case (m1%type)
            case (NO_MAPPING)
                equal = .true.
            case (S_CHANNEL, RADIATION, STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
                equal = (m1%mass == m2%mass) .and. (m1%width == m2%width)
            case default
                equal = (m1%mass == m2%mass)
            end select
        else
            equal = .false.
        end if
    end function mapping_equal

```

### 11.4.7 Mappings of the invariant mass

Inserting an  $x$  value between 0 and 1, we want to compute the corresponding invariant mass  $m^2(x)$  and the jacobian, aka phase space factor  $f(x)$ . We also need the reverse operation.

In general, the phase space factor  $f$  is defined by

$$\frac{1}{s} \int_{m_{\min}^2}^{m_{\max}^2} dm^2 g(m^2) = \int_0^1 dx \frac{1}{s} \frac{dm^2}{dx} g(m^2(x)) = \int_0^1 dx f(x) g(x), \quad (11.8)$$

where thus

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{s} \frac{dm^2}{dx}. \quad (11.9)$$

With this mapping, a function of the form

$$g(m^2) = c \frac{dx(m^2)}{dm^2} \quad (11.10)$$

is mapped to a constant:

$$\frac{1}{s} \int_{m_{\min}^2}^{m_{\max}^2} dm^2 g(m^2) = \int_0^1 dx f(x) g(m^2(x)) = \int_0^1 dx \frac{c}{s}. \quad (11.11)$$

Here is the mapping routine. Input are the available energy squared  $s$ , the limits for  $m^2$ , and the  $x$  value. Output are the  $m^2$  value and the phase space factor  $f$ .

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
  public :: mapping_compute_msq_from_x

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mapping_compute_msq_from_x (map, s, msq_min, msq_max, msq, f, x)
    type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
    real(default), intent(in) :: s, msq_min, msq_max
    real(default), intent(out) :: msq, f
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    real(default) :: z, msq0, msq1, tmp
    integer :: type
    type = map%type
    if (s == 0) &
      call msg_fatal (" Applying msq mapping for zero energy")
    <Modify mapping type if necessary>
    select case(type)
    case (NO_MAPPING)
      <Constants for trivial msq mapping>
      <Apply trivial msq mapping>
    case (S_CHANNEL)
      <Constants for s-channel resonance mapping>
      <Apply s-channel resonance mapping>
    case (COLLINEAR, INFRARED, RADIATION)
      <Constants for s-channel pole mapping>
      <Apply s-channel pole mapping>
    case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL)
      <Constants for t-channel pole mapping>
      <Apply t-channel pole mapping>
  end subroutine

```

```

case (STEP_MAPPING_E)
  <Constants for exponential step mapping>
  <Apply exponential step mapping>
case (STEP_MAPPING_H)
  <Constants for hyperbolic step mapping>
  <Apply hyperbolic step mapping>
case default
  call msg_fatal ( " Attempt to apply undefined msq mapping")
end select
end subroutine mapping_compute_msq_from_x

```

The inverse mapping

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
  public :: mapping_compute_x_from_msq

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mapping_compute_x_from_msq (map, s, msq_min, msq_max, msq, f, x)
    type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
    real(default), intent(in) :: s, msq_min, msq_max
    real(default), intent(in) :: msq
    real(default), intent(out) :: f, x
    real(default) :: msq0, msq1, tmp, z
    integer :: type
    type = map%type
    if (s == 0) &
      call msg_fatal (" Applying inverse msq mapping for zero energy")
    <Modify mapping type if necessary>
    select case (type)
    case (NO_MAPPING)
      <Constants for trivial msq mapping>
      <Apply inverse trivial msq mapping>
    case (S_CHANNEL)
      <Constants for s-channel resonance mapping>
      <Apply inverse s-channel resonance mapping>
    case (COLLINEAR, INFRARED, RADIATION)
      <Constants for s-channel pole mapping>
      <Apply inverse s-channel pole mapping>
    case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL)
      <Constants for t-channel pole mapping>
      <Apply inverse t-channel pole mapping>
    case (STEP_MAPPING_E)
      <Constants for exponential step mapping>
      <Apply inverse exponential step mapping>
    case (STEP_MAPPING_H)
      <Constants for hyperbolic step mapping>
      <Apply inverse hyperbolic step mapping>
    case default
      call msg_fatal ( " Attempt to apply undefined msq mapping")
    end select
  end subroutine mapping_compute_x_from_msq

```

### Trivial mapping

We simply map the boundaries of the interval  $(m_{\min}, m_{\max})$  to  $(0, 1)$ :

$$m^2 = (1 - x)m_{\min}^2 + xm_{\max}^2; \quad (11.12)$$

the inverse is

$$x = \frac{m^2 - m_{\min}^2}{m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2}. \quad (11.13)$$

Hence

$$f(x) = \frac{m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2}{s}, \quad (11.14)$$

and we have, as required,

$$f(x) \frac{dx}{dm^2} = \frac{1}{s}. \quad (11.15)$$

We store the constant parameters the first time the mapping is called – or, if limits vary, recompute them each time.

```

⟨Constants for trivial msq mapping⟩≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    map%a1 = 0
    map%a2 = msq_max - msq_min
    map%a3 = map%a2 / s
    map%a_unknown = .false.
  end if

⟨Apply trivial msq mapping⟩≡
  msq = (1-x) * msq_min + x * msq_max
  f = map%a3

⟨Apply inverse trivial msq mapping⟩≡
  if (map%a2 /= 0) then
    x = (msq - msq_min) / map%a2
  else
    x = 0
  end if
  f = map%a3

```

Resonance or step mapping does not make much sense if the resonance mass is outside the kinematical bounds. If this is the case, revert to `NO_MAPPING`. This is possible even if the kinematical bounds vary from event to event.

```

⟨Modify mapping type if necessary⟩≡
  select case (type)
  case (S_CHANNEL, STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
    msq0 = map%mass**2
    if (msq0 < msq_min .or. msq0 > msq_max) type = NO_MAPPING
  end select

```

### Breit-Wigner mapping

A Breit-Wigner resonance with mass  $M$  and width  $\Gamma$  is flattened by the following mapping:

This mapping does not make much sense if the resonance mass is too low. If this is the case, revert to `NO_MAPPING`. There is a tricky point with this if the

mass is too high: `msq_max` is not a constant if structure functions are around. However, switching the type depending on the overall energy does not change the integral, it is just another branching point.

$$m^2 = M(M + t\Gamma), \quad (11.16)$$

where

$$t = \tan \left[ (1-x) \arctan \frac{m_{\min}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} + x \arctan \frac{m_{\max}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} \right]. \quad (11.17)$$

The inverse:

$$x = \frac{\arctan \frac{m^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} - \arctan \frac{m_{\min}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma}}{\arctan \frac{m_{\max}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} - \arctan \frac{m_{\min}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma}} \quad (11.18)$$

The phase-space factor of this transformation is

$$f(x) = \frac{M\Gamma}{s} \left( \arctan \frac{m_{\max}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} - \arctan \frac{m_{\min}^2 - M^2}{M\Gamma} \right) (1 + t^2). \quad (11.19)$$

This maps any function proportional to

$$g(m^2) = \frac{M\Gamma}{(m^2 - M^2)^2 + M^2\Gamma^2} \quad (11.20)$$

to a constant times  $1/s$ .

```

⟨Constants for s-channel resonance mapping⟩≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    msq0 = map%mass ** 2
    map%a1 = atan ((msq_min - msq0) / (map%mass * map%width))
    map%a2 = atan ((msq_max - msq0) / (map%mass * map%width))
    map%a3 = (map%a2 - map%a1) * (map%mass * map%width) / s
    map%a_unknown = .false.
  end if

⟨Apply s-channel resonance mapping⟩≡
  z = (1-x) * map%a1 + x * map%a2
  if (-pi/2 < z .and. z < pi/2) then
    tmp = tan (z)
    msq = map%mass * (map%mass + map%width * tmp)
    f = map%a3 * (1 + tmp**2)
  else
    msq = 0
    f = 0
  end if

⟨Apply inverse s-channel resonance mapping⟩≡
  tmp = (msq - msq0) / (map%mass * map%width)
  x = (atan (tmp) - map%a1) / (map%a2 - map%a1)
  f = map%a3 * (1 + tmp**2)

```

### Mapping for massless splittings

This mapping accounts for approximately scale-invariant behavior where  $\ln M^2$  is evenly distributed.

$$m^2 = m_{\min}^2 + M^2 (\exp(xL) - 1) \quad (11.21)$$

where

$$L = \ln \left( \frac{m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2}{M^2} + 1 \right). \quad (11.22)$$

The inverse:

$$x = \frac{1}{L} \ln \left( \frac{m^2 - m_{\min}^2}{M^2} + 1 \right) \quad (11.23)$$

The constant  $M$  is a characteristic scale. Above this scale ( $m^2 - m_{\min}^2 \gg M^2$ ), this mapping behaves like  $x \propto \ln m^2$ , while below the scale it reverts to a linear mapping.

The phase-space factor is

$$f(x) = \frac{M^2}{s} \exp(xL) L. \quad (11.24)$$

A function proportional to

$$g(m^2) = \frac{1}{(m^2 - m_{\min}^2) + M^2} \quad (11.25)$$

is mapped to a constant, i.e., a simple pole near  $m_{\min}$  with a regulator mass  $M$ .

This type of mapping is useful for massless collinear and infrared singularities, where the scale is stored as the mass parameter. In the radiation case (IR radiation off massive particle), the heavy particle width is the characteristic scale.

```

⟨Constants for s-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    if (type == RADIATION) then
      msq0 = map%width**2
    else
      msq0 = map%mass**2
    end if
    map%a1 = msq0
    map%a2 = log ((msq_max - msq_min) / msq0 + 1)
    map%a3 = map%a2 / s
    map%a_unknown = .false.
  end if

⟨Apply s-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  msq1 = map%a1 * exp (x * map%a2)
  msq = msq1 - map%a1 + msq_min
  f = map%a3 * msq1

⟨Apply inverse s-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  msq1 = msq - msq_min + map%a1
  x = log (msq1 / map%a1) / map%a2
  f = map%a3 * msq1

```

### Mapping for t-channel poles

This is also approximately scale-invariant, and we use the same type of mapping as before. However, we map  $1/x$  singularities at both ends of the interval; again, the mapping becomes linear when the distance is less than  $M^2$ :

$$m^2 = \begin{cases} m_{\min}^2 + M^2 (\exp(xL) - 1) & \text{for } 0 < x < \frac{1}{2} \\ m_{\max}^2 - M^2 (\exp((1-x)L) - 1) & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} \leq x < 1 \end{cases} \quad (11.26)$$

where

$$L = 2 \ln \left( \frac{m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2}{2M^2} + 1 \right). \quad (11.27)$$

The inverse:

$$x = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{L} \ln \left( \frac{m^2 - m_{\min}^2}{M^2} + 1 \right) & \text{for } m^2 < (m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2)/2 \\ 1 - \frac{1}{L} \ln \left( \frac{m_{\max}^2 - m^2}{M^2} + 1 \right) & \text{for } m^2 \geq (m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2)/2 \end{cases} \quad (11.28)$$

The phase-space factor is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{M^2}{s} \exp(xL) L. & \text{for } 0 < x < \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{M^2}{s} \exp((1-x)L) L. & \text{for } \frac{1}{2} \leq x < 1 \end{cases} \quad (11.29)$$

A (continuous) function proportional to

$$g(m^2) = \begin{cases} 1/(m^2 - m_{\min}^2) + M^2 & \text{for } m^2 < (m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2)/2 \\ 1/((m_{\max}^2 - m^2) + M^2) & \text{for } m^2 \geq (m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2)/2 \end{cases} \quad (11.30)$$

is mapped to a constant by this mapping, i.e., poles near both ends of the interval.

```

⟨Constants for t-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    msq0 = map%mass**2
    map%a1 = msq0
    map%a2 = 2 * log ((msq_max - msq_min)/(2*msq0) + 1)
    map%a3 = map%a2 / s
    map%a_unknown = .false.
  end if

⟨Apply t-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  if (x < .5_default) then
    msq1 = map%a1 * exp (x * map%a2)
    msq = msq1 - map%a1 + msq_min
  else
    msq1 = map%a1 * exp ((1-x) * map%a2)
    msq = -(msq1 - map%a1) + msq_max
  end if
  f = map%a3 * msq1

⟨Apply inverse t-channel pole mapping⟩≡
  if (msq < (msq_max + msq_min)/2) then
    msq1 = msq - msq_min + map%a1
    x = log (msq1/map%a1) / map%a2

```

```

else
  msq1 = msq_max - msq + map%a1
  x = 1 - log (msq1/map%a1) / map%a2
end if
f = map%a3 * msq1

```

#### 11.4.8 Step mapping

Step mapping is useful when the allowed range for a squared-mass variable is large, but only a fraction at the lower end is populated because the particle in question is an (off-shell) decay product of a narrow resonance. I.e., if the resonance was forced to be on-shell, the upper end of the range would be the resonance mass, minus the effective (real or resonance) mass of the particle(s) in the sibling branch of the decay.

The edge of this phase space section has a width which is determined by the width of the parent, plus the width of the sibling branch. (The widths might be added in quadrature, but this precision is probably not important.)

##### Fermi function

A possible mapping is derived from the Fermi function which has precisely this behavior. The Fermi function is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp \frac{x-\mu}{\gamma}} \quad (11.31)$$

where  $x$  is taken as the invariant mass squared,  $\mu$  is the invariant mass squared of the edge, and  $\gamma$  is the effective width which is given by the widths of the parent and the sibling branch. (Widths might be added in quadrature, but we do not require this level of precision.)

$$x = \frac{m^2 - m_{\min}^2}{\Delta m^2} \quad (11.32)$$

$$\mu = \frac{m_{\max, \text{eff}}^2 - m_{\min}^2}{\Delta m^2} \quad (11.33)$$

$$\gamma = \frac{2m_{\max, \text{eff}}\Gamma}{\Delta m^2} \quad (11.34)$$

with

$$\Delta m^2 = m_{\max}^2 - m_{\min}^2 \quad (11.35)$$

$m^2$  is thus given by

$$m^2(x) = xm_{\max}^2 + (1-x)m_{\min}^2 \quad (11.36)$$

For the mapping, we compute the integral  $g(x)$  of the Fermi function, normalized such that  $g(0) = 0$  and  $g(1) = 1$ . We introduce the abbreviations

$$\alpha = 1 - \gamma \ln \frac{1 + \beta e^{1/\gamma}}{1 + \beta} \quad (11.37)$$

$$\beta = e^{-\mu/\gamma} \quad (11.38)$$



and obtain

$$g(x) = \frac{1}{\alpha} \left( x - \gamma \ln \frac{1 + \beta e^{x/\gamma}}{1 + \beta} \right) \quad (11.39)$$

The actual mapping is the inverse function  $h(y) = g^{-1}(y)$ ,

$$h(y) = -\gamma \ln \left( e^{-\alpha y/\gamma} (1 + \beta) - \beta \right) \quad (11.40)$$

The Jacobian is

$$\frac{dh}{dy} = \alpha \left( 1 - e^{\alpha y/\gamma} \frac{\beta}{1 + \beta} \right)^{-1} \quad (11.41)$$

which is equal to  $1/(dg/dx)$ , namely

$$\frac{dg}{dx} = \frac{1}{\alpha} \frac{1}{1 + \beta e^{x/\gamma}} \quad (11.42)$$

The final result is

$$\int_{m_{\min}^2}^{m_{\max}^2} dm^2 F(m^2) = \Delta m^2 \int_0^1 dx F(m^2(x)) \quad (11.43)$$

$$= \Delta m^2 \int_0^1 dy F(m^2(h(y))) \frac{dh}{dy} \quad (11.44)$$

Here is the implementation. We fill `a1`, `a2`, `a3` with  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$ , respectively.

```

<Constants for exponential step mapping>≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    map%a3 = max (2 * map%mass * map%width / (msq_max - msq_min), 0.01_default)
    map%a2 = exp (- (map%mass**2 - msq_min) / (msq_max - msq_min) &
                  / map%a3)
    map%a1 = 1 - map%a3 * log ((1 + map%a2 * exp (1 / map%a3)) / (1 + map%a2))
  end if

<Apply exponential step mapping>≡
  tmp = exp (- x * map%a1 / map%a3) * (1 + map%a2)
  z = - map%a3 * log (tmp - map%a2)
  msq = z * msq_max + (1 - z) * msq_min
  f = map%a1 / (1 - map%a2 / tmp) * (msq_max - msq_min) / s

<Apply inverse exponential step mapping>≡
  z = (msq - msq_min) / (msq_max - msq_min)
  tmp = 1 + map%a2 * exp (z / map%a3)
  x = (z - map%a3 * log (tmp / (1 + map%a2))) &
      / map%a1
  f = map%a1 * tmp * (msq_max - msq_min) / s

```

## Hyperbolic mapping

The Fermi function has the drawback that it decreases exponentially. It might be preferable to take a function with a power-law decrease, such that the high-mass region is not completely depopulated.

Here, we start with the actual mapping which we take as

$$h(y) = \frac{b}{a - y} - \frac{b}{a} + \mu y \quad (11.45)$$

with the abbreviation

$$a = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{4b}{1-\mu}} \right) \quad (11.46)$$

This is a hyperbola in the  $xy$  plane. The derivative is

$$\frac{dh}{dy} = \frac{b}{(a-y)^2} + \mu \quad (11.47)$$

The constants correspond to

$$\mu = \frac{m_{\max, \text{eff}}^2 - m_{\min}^2}{\Delta m^2} \quad (11.48)$$

$$b = \frac{1}{\mu} \left( \frac{2m_{\max, \text{eff}} \Gamma}{\Delta m^2} \right)^2 \quad (11.49)$$

The inverse function is the solution of a quadratic equation,

$$g(x) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left( a + \frac{x}{\mu} + \frac{b}{a\mu} \right) - \sqrt{\left( a - \frac{x}{\mu} \right)^2 + 2 \frac{b}{a\mu} \left( a + \frac{x}{\mu} \right) + \left( \frac{b}{a\mu} \right)^2} \right] \quad (11.50)$$

The constants  $a_{1,2,3}$  are identified with  $a, b, \mu$ .

```

<Constants for hyperbolic step mapping>≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%a_unknown) then
    map%a3 = (map%mass**2 - msq_min) / (msq_max - msq_min)
    map%a2 = max ((2 * map%mass * map%width / (msq_max - msq_min))**2 &
                  / map%a3, 1e-6_default)
    map%a1 = (1 + sqrt (1 + 4 * map%a2 / (1 - map%a3))) / 2
  end if

<Apply hyperbolic step mapping>≡
  z = map%a2 / (map%a1 - x) - map%a2 / map%a1 + map%a3 * x
  msq = z * msq_max + (1 - z) * msq_min
  f = (map%a2 / (map%a1 - x)**2 + map%a3) * (msq_max - msq_min) / s

<Apply inverse hyperbolic step mapping>≡
  z = (msq - msq_min) / (msq_max - msq_min)
  tmp = map%a2 / (map%a1 * map%a3)
  x = ((map%a1 + z / map%a3 + tmp) &
        - sqrt ((map%a1 - z / map%a3)**2 + 2 * tmp * (map%a1 + z / map%a3) &
                + tmp**2)) / 2
  f = (map%a2 / (map%a1 - x)**2 + map%a3) * (msq_max - msq_min) / s

```

### 11.4.9 Mappings of the polar angle

The other type of singularity, a simple pole just outside the integration region, can occur in the integration over  $\cos \theta$ . This applies to exchange of massless (or light) particles.

Double poles (Coulomb scattering) are also possible, but only in certain cases. These are also handled by the single-pole mapping.

The mapping is analogous to the previous  $m^2$  pole mapping, but with a different normalization and notation of variables:

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 d \cos \theta g(\theta) = \int_0^1 dx \frac{d \cos \theta}{dx} g(\theta(x)) = \int_0^1 dx f(x) g(x), \quad (11.51)$$

where thus

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{d \cos \theta}{dx}. \quad (11.52)$$

With this mapping, a function of the form

$$g(\theta) = c \frac{dx(\cos \theta)}{d \cos \theta} \quad (11.53)$$

is mapped to a constant:

$$\int_{-1}^1 d \cos \theta g(\theta) = \int_0^1 dx f(x) g(\theta(x)) = \int_0^1 dx c. \quad (11.54)$$

```

<Mappings: public>+≡
  public :: mapping_compute_ct_from_x

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mapping_compute_ct_from_x (map, s, ct, st, f, x)
    type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
    real(default), intent(in) :: s
    real(default), intent(out) :: ct, st, f
    real(default), intent(in) :: x
    real(default) :: tmp, ct1
    select case (map%type)
    case (NO_MAPPING, S_CHANNEL, INFRARED, RADIATION, &
          STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
      <Apply trivial ct mapping>
    case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL, COLLINEAR)
      <Constants for ct pole mapping>
      <Apply ct pole mapping>
    case default
      call msg_fatal (" Attempt to apply undefined ct mapping")
    end select
  end subroutine mapping_compute_ct_from_x

<Mappings: public>+≡
  public :: mapping_compute_x_from_ct

<Mappings: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mapping_compute_x_from_ct (map, s, ct, f, x)
    type(mapping_t), intent(inout) :: map
    real(default), intent(in) :: s
    real(default), intent(in) :: ct
    real(default), intent(out) :: f, x
    real(default) :: ct1
    select case (map%type)
    case (NO_MAPPING, S_CHANNEL, INFRARED, RADIATION, &
          STEP_MAPPING_E, STEP_MAPPING_H)
      <Apply inverse trivial ct mapping>

```

```

case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL, COLLINEAR)
  <Constants for ct pole mapping>
  <Apply inverse ct pole mapping>
case default
  call msg_fatal (" Attempt to apply undefined inverse ct mapping")
end select
end subroutine mapping_compute_x_from_ct

```

### Trivial mapping

This is just the mapping of the interval  $(-1, 1)$  to  $(0, 1)$ :

$$\cos \theta = -1 + 2x \quad (11.55)$$

and

$$f(x) = 1 \quad (11.56)$$

with the inverse

$$x = \frac{1 + \cos \theta}{2} \quad (11.57)$$

```

<Apply trivial ct mapping>≡
  tmp = 2 * (1-x)
  ct = 1 - tmp
  st = sqrt (tmp * (2-tmp))
  f = 1
<Apply inverse trivial ct mapping>≡
  x = (ct + 1) / 2
  f = 1

```

### Pole mapping

As above for  $m^2$ , we simultaneously map poles at both ends of the  $\cos \theta$  interval. The formulae are completely analogous:

$$\cos \theta = \begin{cases} \frac{M^2}{s} [\exp(xL) - 1] - 1 & \text{for } x < \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{M^2}{s} [\exp((1-x)L) - 1] + 1 & \text{for } x \geq \frac{1}{2} \end{cases} \quad (11.58)$$

where

$$L = 2 \ln \frac{M^2 + s}{M^2}. \quad (11.59)$$

Inverse:

$$x = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2L} \ln \frac{1 + \cos \theta + M^2/s}{M^2/s} & \text{for } \cos \theta < 0 \\ 1 - \frac{1}{2L} \ln \frac{1 - \cos \theta + M^2/s}{M^2/s} & \text{for } \cos \theta \geq 0 \end{cases} \quad (11.60)$$

The phase-space factor:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{M^2}{s} \exp(xL) L & \text{for } x < \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{M^2}{s} \exp((1-x)L) L & \text{for } x \geq \frac{1}{2} \end{cases} \quad (11.61)$$

```

<Constants for ct pole mapping>≡
  if (map%variable_limits .or. map%b_unknown) then

```

```

        map%b1 = map%mass**2 / s
        map%b2 = log ((map%b1 + 1) / map%b1)
        map%b3 = 0
        map%b_unknown = .false.
    end if

    <Apply ct pole mapping>≡
    if (x < .5_default) then
        ct1 = map%b1 * exp (2 * x * map%b2)
        ct = ct1 - map%b1 - 1
    else
        ct1 = map%b1 * exp (2 * (1-x) * map%b2)
        ct = -(ct1 - map%b1) + 1
    end if
    if (ct >= -1 .and. ct <= 1) then
        st = sqrt (1 - ct**2)
        f = ct1 * map%b2
    else
        ct = 1;  st = 0;  f = 0
    end if

    <Apply inverse ct pole mapping>≡
    if (ct < 0) then
        ct1 = ct + map%b1 + 1
        x = log (ct1 / map%b1) / (2 * map%b2)
    else
        ct1 = -ct + map%b1 + 1
        x = 1 - log (ct1 / map%b1) / (2 * map%b2)
    end if
    f = ct1 * map%b2

```

## 11.5 Phase-space trees

The phase space evaluation is organized in terms of trees, where each branch corresponds to three integrations:  $m^2$ ,  $\cos\theta$ , and  $\phi$ . The complete tree thus makes up a specific parameterization of the multidimensional phase-space integral. For the multi-channel integration, the phase-space tree is a single channel.

The trees imply mappings of formal Feynman tree graphs into arrays of integer numbers: Each branch, corresponding to a particular line in the graph, is assigned an integer code  $c$  (with kind value  $\text{TC} = \text{tree code}$ ).

In this integer, each bit determines whether a particular external momentum flows through the line. The external branches therefore have codes 1, 2, 4, 8, ... An internal branch has those bits ORed corresponding to the momenta flowing through it. For example, a branch with momentum  $p_1 + p_4$  has code  $2^0 + 2^3 = 1 + 8 = 9$ .

There is a two-fold ambiguity: Momentum conservation implies that the branch with code

$$c_0 = \sum_{i=1}^{n(\text{ext})} 2^{i-1} \quad (11.62)$$

i.e. the branch with momentum  $p_1 + p_2 + \dots p_n$  has momentum zero, which is equivalent to tree code 0 by definition. Correspondingly,

$$c \quad \text{and} \quad c_0 - c = c \text{ XOR } c_0 \quad (11.63)$$

are equivalent. E.g., if there are five externals with codes  $c = 1, 2, 4, 8, 16$ , then  $c = 9$  and  $\bar{c} = 31 - 9 = 22$  are equivalent.

This ambiguity may be used to assign a direction to the line: If all momenta are understood as outgoing,  $c = 9$  in the example above means  $p_1 + p_4$ , but  $c = 22$  means  $p_2 + p_3 + p_5 = -(p_1 + p_4)$ .

Here we make use of the ambiguity in a slightly different way. First, the initial particles are singled out as those externals with the highest bits, the IN-bits. (Here: 8 and 16 for a  $2 \rightarrow 3$  scattering process, 16 only for a  $1 \rightarrow 4$  decay.) Then we invert those codes where all IN-bits are set. For a decay process this maps each tree of an equivalence class onto a unique representative (that one with the smallest integer codes). For a scattering process we proceed further:

The ambiguity remains in all branches where only one IN-bit is set, including the initial particles. If there are only externals with this property, we have an  $s$ -channel graph which we leave as it is. In all other cases, an internal with only one IN-bit is a  $t$ -channel line, which for phase space integration should be associated with one of the initial momenta as a reference axis. We take that one whose bit is set in the current tree code. (E.g., for branch  $c = 9$  we use the initial particle  $c = 8$  as reference axis, whereas for the same branch we would take  $c = 16$  if it had been assigned  $\bar{c} = 31 - 9 = 22$  as tree code.) Thus, different ways of coding the same  $t$ -channel graph imply different phase space parameterizations.

$s$ -channel graphs have a unique parameterization. The same sets of parameterizations are used for  $t$ -channel graphs, except for the reference frames of their angular parts. We map each  $t$ -channel graph onto an  $s$ -channel graph as follows:

Working in ascending order, for each  $t$ -channel line (whose code has exactly one IN-bit set) the attached initial line is flipped upstream, while the outgoing

line is flipped downstream. (This works only if  $t$ -channel graphs are always parameterized beginning at their outer vertices, which we require as a restriction.) After all possible flips have been applied, we have an  $s$ -channel graph. We only have to remember the initial particle a vertex was originally attached to.

```

<phs_trees.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module phs_trees

    <Use kinds>
      use kinds, only: TC !NODEP!
    <Use strings>
      use constants, only: twopi, twopi2, twopi5 !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
      use limits, only: FMT_19 !NODEP!
      use diagnostics !NODEP!
      use lorentz !NODEP!
      use permutations, only: permutation_t, permutation_size
      use permutations, only: permutation_init, permutation_find
      use permutations, only: tc_decay_level, tc_permute
      use models
      use flavors
      use mappings

    <Standard module head>

    <PHS trees: public>

    <PHS trees: types>

    contains

    <PHS trees: procedures>

  end module phs_trees

```

### 11.5.1 Particles

We define a particle type which contains only four-momentum and invariant mass squared, and a flag that tells whether the momentum is filled or not.

```

<PHS trees: public>≡
  public :: phs_prt_t

<PHS trees: types>≡
  type :: phs_prt_t
    private
    logical :: defined = .false.
    type(vector4_t) :: p
    real(default) :: p2
  end type phs_prt_t

```

Set contents:

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡

```

```

public :: phs_prt_set_defined
public :: phs_prt_set_undefined
public :: phs_prt_set_momentum
public :: phs_prt_set_msq

<PHS trees: procedures>≡
elemental subroutine phs_prt_set_defined (prt)
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  prt%defined = .true.
end subroutine phs_prt_set_defined

elemental subroutine phs_prt_set_undefined (prt)
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  prt%defined = .false.
end subroutine phs_prt_set_undefined

elemental subroutine phs_prt_set_momentum (prt, p)
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
  prt%p = p
end subroutine phs_prt_set_momentum

elemental subroutine phs_prt_set_msq (prt, p2)
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  real(default), intent(in) :: p2
  prt%p2 = p2
end subroutine phs_prt_set_msq

```

Access methods:

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
public :: phs_prt_is_defined
public :: phs_prt_get_momentum
public :: phs_prt_get_msq

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
elemental function phs_prt_is_defined (prt) result (defined)
  logical :: defined
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
  defined = prt%defined
end function phs_prt_is_defined

elemental function phs_prt_get_momentum (prt) result (p)
  type(vector4_t) :: p
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
  p = prt%p
end function phs_prt_get_momentum

elemental function phs_prt_get_msq (prt) result (p2)
  real(default) :: p2
  type(phs_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
  p2 = prt%p2
end function phs_prt_get_msq

```



Addition of momenta (invariant mass square is computed).

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_prt_combine

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    elemental subroutine phs_prt_combine (prt, prt1, prt2)
        type(phs_prt_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(phs_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
        prt%defined = .true.
        prt%p = prt1%p + prt2%p
        prt%p2 = prt%p ** 2
    end subroutine phs_prt_combine

```

Output

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_prt_write

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_prt_write (prt, unit)
        type(phs_prt_t), intent(in) :: prt
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        if (prt%defined) then
            call vector4_write (prt%p, u)
            write (u, "(1x,A,1x," // FMT_19 // ")") "T = ", prt%p2
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
        end if
    end subroutine phs_prt_write

```

## 11.5.2 The phase-space tree type

### Definition

In the concrete implementation, each branch  $c$  may have two *daughters*  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that  $c_1 + c_2 = c$ , a *sibling*  $c_s$  and a *mother*  $c_m$  such that  $c + c_s = c_m$ , and a *friend* which is kept during flips, such that it can indicate a fixed reference frame. Absent entries are set  $c = 0$ .

First, declare the branch type. There is some need to have this public. Give initializations for all components, so no `init` routine is necessary. The branch has some information about the associated coordinates and about connections.

```

<PHS trees: types>+≡
    type :: phs_branch_t
        private
        logical :: set = .false.
        logical :: inverted_decay = .false.
        logical :: inverted_axis = .false.
        integer(TC) :: mother = 0
        integer(TC) :: sibling = 0
        integer(TC) :: friend = 0
        integer(TC) :: origin = 0

```

```

integer(TC), dimension(2) :: daughter = 0
integer :: firstborn = 0
logical :: has_children = .false.
logical :: has_friend = .false.
end type phs_branch_t

```

The tree type: No initialization, this is done by `phs_tree_init`. In addition to the branch array which

The branches are collected in an array which holds all possible branches, of which only a few are set. After flips have been applied, the branch  $c_M = \sum_{i=1}^{n(\text{fin})} 2^{i-1}$  must be there, indicating the mother of all decay products. In addition, we should check for consistency at the beginning.

`n_branches` is the number of those actually set. `n externals` defines the number of significant bit, and `mask` is a code where all bits are set. Analogous: `n_in` and `mask_in` for the incoming particles.

The mapping array contains the mappings associated to the branches (corresponding indices). The array `mass_sum` contains the sum of the real masses of the external final-state particles associated to the branch. During phase-space evaluation, this determines the boundaries.

```

(PHS trees: public)+≡
    public :: phs_tree_t
(PHS trees: types)+≡
    type :: phs_tree_t
    private
    integer :: n_branches, n externals, n_in, n_msq, n_angles
    integer(TC) :: n_branches_tot, n_branches_out
    integer(TC) :: mask, mask_in, mask_out
    type(phs_branch_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: branch
    type(mapping_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mapping
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mass_sum
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: effective_mass
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: effective_width
end type phs_tree_t

```

The maximum number of external particles that can be represented is related to the bit size of the integer that stores binary codes. With the default integer of 32 bit on common machines, this is more than enough space. If TC is actually the default integer kind, there is no need to keep it separate, but doing so marks this as a special type of integer. So, just state that the maximum number is 32:

```

(Limits: public parameters)+≡
    integer, parameter, public :: MAX_EXTERNAL = 32

```

### Constructor and destructor

Allocate memory for a phase-space tree with given number of externals and incoming. The number of allocated branches can easily become large, but appears manageable for realistic cases, e.g., for `n_in=2` and `n_out=8` we get  $2^{10} - 1 = 1023$ .

```

(PHS trees: public)+≡
    public :: phs_tree_init
    public :: phs_tree_final

```

Here we set the masks for incoming and for all externals.

```

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine phs_tree_init (tree, n_in, n_out, n_masses, n_angles)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out, n_masses, n_angles
    integer(TC) :: i
    tree%n_externals = n_in + n_out
    tree%n_branches_tot = 2**(n_in+n_out) - 1
    tree%n_branches_out = 2**n_out - 1
    tree%mask = 0
    do i = 0, n_in + n_out - 1
      tree%mask = ibset (tree%mask, i)
    end do
    tree%n_in = n_in
    tree%mask_in = 0
    do i = n_out, n_in + n_out - 1
      tree%mask_in = ibset (tree%mask_in, i)
    end do
    tree%mask_out = ieor (tree%mask, tree%mask_in)
    tree%n_msq = n_masses
    tree%n_angles = n_angles
    allocate (tree%branch (tree%n_branches_tot))
    tree%n_branches = 0
    allocate (tree%mapping (tree%n_branches_out))
    allocate (tree%mass_sum (tree%n_branches_out))
    allocate (tree%effective_mass (tree%n_branches_out))
    allocate (tree%effective_width (tree%n_branches_out))
  end subroutine phs_tree_init

  elemental subroutine phs_tree_final (tree)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    deallocate (tree%branch)
    deallocate (tree%mapping)
    deallocate (tree%mass_sum)
    deallocate (tree%effective_mass)
    deallocate (tree%effective_width)
  end subroutine phs_tree_final

```

## Screen output

Write only the branches that are set:

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
  public :: phs_tree_write

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_write (tree, unit)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    integer(TC) :: k
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, '(3X,A,1x,I0,5X,A,I3)') &
      'External:', tree%n_externals, 'Mask:', tree%mask
  end subroutine phs_tree_write

```

```

write (u, '(3X,A,1x,I0,5X,A,I3)') &
    'Incoming:', tree%n_in, 'Mask:', tree%mask_in
write (u, '(3X,A,1x,I0,5X,A,I3)') &
    'Branches:', tree%n_branches
do k = size (tree%branch), 1, -1
    if (tree%branch(k)%set) &
        call phs_branch_write (tree%branch(k), unit=unit, kval=k)
end do
do k = 1, size (tree%mapping)
    call mapping_write (tree%mapping (k), unit, verbose=.true.)
end do
write (u, "(3x,A)") "Arrays: mass_sum, effective_mass, effective_width"
do k = 1, size (tree%mass_sum)
    if (tree%branch(k)%set) then
        write (u, "(5x,I0,3(2x," // FMT_19 // ")") k, tree%mass_sum(k), &
            tree%effective_mass(k), tree%effective_width(k)
    end if
end do
end subroutine phs_tree_write

subroutine phs_branch_write (b, unit, kval)
    type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer(TC), intent(in), optional :: kval
    integer :: u
    integer(TC) :: k
    character(len=6) :: tmp
    character(len=1) :: firstborn(2), sign_decay, sign_axis
    integer :: i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    k = 0; if (present (kval)) k = kval
    if (b%origin /= 0) then
        write(tmp, '(A,I4,A)') '(', b%origin, ')'
    else
        tmp = ' '
    end if
    do i=1, 2
        if (b%firstborn == i) then
            firstborn(i) = "*"
        else
            firstborn(i) = " "
        end if
    end do
    if (b%inverted_decay) then
        sign_decay = "-"
    else
        sign_decay = "+"
    end if
    if (b%inverted_axis) then
        sign_axis = "-"
    else
        sign_axis = "+"
    end if
    if (b%has_children) then

```

```

        if (b%has_friend) then
            write(u,'(4X,A1,I0,3x,A,1X,A,I0,A1,1x,I0,A1,1X,A1,1X,A,1x,I0)') &
                & ' ', k, tmp, &
                & 'Daughters: ', &
                & b%daughter(1), firstborn(1), &
                & b%daughter(2), firstborn(2), sign_decay, &
                & 'Friend: ', b%friend
        else
            write(u,'(4X,A1,I0,3x,A,1X,A,I0,A1,1x,I0,A1,1X,A1,1X,A)') &
                & ' ', k, tmp, &
                & 'Daughters: ', &
                & b%daughter(1), firstborn(1), &
                & b%daughter(2), firstborn(2), sign_decay, &
                & '(axis '//sign_axis//')'
        end if
    else
        write(u,'(5X,I0)') k
    end if
end subroutine phs_branch_write

```

### 11.5.3 PHS tree setup

#### Transformation into an array of branch codes and back

Assume that the tree/array has been created before with the appropriate length and is empty.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_from_array

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_from_array (tree, a)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
        integer(TC), dimension(:), intent(in) :: a
        integer :: i
        integer(TC) :: k
        <Set branches from array a>
        <Set external branches if necessary>
        <Check number of branches>
        <Determine the connections>
    contains
        <Subroutine: set relatives>
    end subroutine phs_tree_from_array

```

First, set all branches specified by the user. If all IN-bits are set, we invert the branch code.

```

<Set branches from array a>≡
    do i=1, size(a)
        k = a(i)
        if (iand(k, tree%mask_in) == tree%mask_in) k = ieor(tree%mask, k)
        tree%branch(k)%set = .true.
        tree%n_branches = tree%n_branches+1
    end do

```

The external branches are understood, so set them now if not yet done. In all cases ensure that the representative with one bit set is used, except for decays where the in-particle is represented by all OUT-bits set instead.

```

<Set external branches if necessary>≡
do i=0, tree%n_externals-1
  k = ibset(0,i)
  if (iand(k, tree%mask_in) == tree%mask_in) k = ieor(tree%mask, k)
  if (tree%branch(ieor(tree%mask, k))%set) then
    tree%branch(ieor(tree%mask, k))%set = .false.
    tree%branch(k)%set = .true.
  else if (.not.tree%branch(k)%set) then
    tree%branch(k)%set = .true.
    tree%n_branches = tree%n_branches+1
  end if
end do

```

Now the number of branches set can be checked. Here we assume that the tree is binary. For three externals there are three branches in total, and for each additional external branch we get another internal one.

```

<Check number of branches>≡
if (tree%n_branches /= tree%n_externals*2-3) then
  call phs_tree_write (tree)
  call msg_bug &
    & (" Wrong number of branches set in phase space tree")
end if

```

For all branches that are set, except for the externals, we try to find the daughter branches:

```

<Determine the connections>≡
do k=1, size (tree%branch)
  if (tree%branch(k)%set .and. tc_decay_level (k) /= 1) then
    call branch_set_relatives(k)
  end if
end do

```

To this end, we scan all codes less than the current code, whether we can find two branches which are set and which together give the current code. After that, the tree may still not be connected, but at least we know if a branch does not have daughters: This indicates some inconsistency.

The algorithm ensures that, at this stage, the first daughter has a smaller code value than the second one.

```

<Subroutine: set relatives>≡
subroutine branch_set_relatives (k)
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
  integer(TC) :: m,n
  do m=1, k-1
    if(iand(k,m)==m) then
      n = ieor(k,m)
      if ( tree%branch(m)%set .and. tree%branch(n)%set ) then
        tree%branch(k)%daughter(1) = m; tree%branch(k)%daughter(2) = n
        tree%branch(m)%mother      = k; tree%branch(n)%mother      = k
        tree%branch(m)%sibling      = n; tree%branch(n)%sibling      = m
        tree%branch(k)%has_children = .true.
      return
    end if
  end do
end subroutine

```

```

        end if
    end if
end do
call phs_tree_write (tree)
call msg_bug &
    & (" Missing daughter branch(es) in phase space tree")
end subroutine branch_set_relatives

```

The inverse: this is trivial, fortunately.

### Flip $t$ -channel into $s$ -channel

Flipping the tree is done upwards, beginning from the decay products. First we select a  $t$ -channel branch  $k$ : one which is set, which does have an IN-bit, and which is not an external particle.

Next, we determine the adjacent in-particle (called the 'friend'  $f$  here, since it will provide the reference axis for the angular integration). In addition, we look for the 'mother' and 'sibling' of this particle. If the latter field is empty, we select the (unique) other out-particle which has no mother, calling the internal subroutine `find_orphan`.

The flip is done as follows: We assume that the first daughter  $d$  is an  $s$ -channel line, which is true if the daughters are sorted. This will stay the first daughter. The second one is a  $t$ -channel line; it is exchanged with the 'sibling'  $s$ . The new line which replaces the branch  $k$  is just the sum of  $s$  and  $d$ . In addition, we have to rearrange the relatives of  $s$  and  $d$ , as well of  $f$ .

Finally, we flip 'sibling' and 'friend' and set the new  $s$ -channel branch  $n$  which replaces the  $t$ -channel branch  $k$ . After this is complete, we are ready to execute another flip.

[Although the friend is not needed for the final flip, since it would be an initial particle anyway, we need to know whether we have  $t$ - or  $u$ -channel.]

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_flip_t_to_s_channel

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_flip_t_to_s_channel (tree)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
        integer(TC) :: k, f, m, n, d, s
        if (tree%n_in == 2) then
            FLIP: do k=3, tree%mask-1
                if (.not. tree%branch(k)%set) cycle FLIP
                f = iand(k,tree%mask_in)
                if (f==0 .or. f==k) cycle FLIP
                m = tree%branch(k)%mother
                s = tree%branch(k)%sibling
                if (s==0) call find_orphan(s)
                d = tree%branch(k)%daughter(1)
                n = ior(d,s)
                tree%branch(k)%set = .false.
                tree%branch(n)%set = .true.
                tree%branch(n)%origin = k
                tree%branch(n)%daughter(1) = d; tree%branch(d)%mother = n
                tree%branch(n)%daughter(2) = s; tree%branch(s)%mother = n
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

        tree%branch(n)%has_children = .true.
        tree%branch(d)%sibling = s; tree%branch(s)%sibling = d
        tree%branch(n)%sibling = f; tree%branch(f)%sibling = n
        tree%branch(n)%mother      = m
        tree%branch(f)%mother      = m
        if (m/=0) then
            tree%branch(m)%daughter(1) = n
            tree%branch(m)%daughter(2) = f
        end if
        tree%branch(n)%friend = f
        tree%branch(n)%has_friend = .true.
        tree%branch(n)%firstborn = 2
    end do FLIP
end if
contains
    subroutine find_orphan(s)
        integer(TC) :: s
        do s=1, tree%mask_out
            if (tree%branch(s)%set .and. tree%branch(s)%mother==0) return
        end do
        call phs_tree_write (tree)
        call msg_bug (" Can't flip phase space tree to channel")
    end subroutine find_orphan
end subroutine phs_tree_flip_t_to_s_channel

```

After the tree has been flipped, one may need to determine what has become of a particular  $t$ -channel branch. This function gives the bincode of the flipped tree. If the original bincode does not contain IN-bits, we leave it as it is.

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

function tc_flipped (tree, kt) result (ks)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: kt
    integer(TC) :: ks
    if (iand (kt, tree%mask_in) == 0) then
        ks = kt
    else
        ks = tree%branch(iand (kt, tree%mask_out))%mother
    end if
end function tc_flipped

```

Scan a tree and make sure that the first daughter has always a smaller code than the second one. Furthermore, delete any `friend` entry in the root branch – this branching has the incoming particle direction as axis anyway. Keep track of reordering by updating `inverted_axis`, `inverted_decay` and `firstborn`.

*(PHS trees: public)*+≡

```

public :: phs_tree_canonicalize

```

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_canonicalize (tree)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    integer :: n_out
    integer(TC) :: k_out
    call branch_canonicalize (tree%branch(tree%mask_out))

```



```

n_out = tree%n_externals - tree%n_in
k_out = tree%mask_out
if (tree%branch(k_out)%has_friend &
    & .and. tree%branch(k_out)%friend == ibset (0, n_out)) then
    tree%branch(k_out)%inverted_axis = .not.tree%branch(k_out)%inverted_axis
end if
tree%branch(k_out)%has_friend = .false.
tree%branch(k_out)%friend = 0
contains
recursive subroutine branch_canonicalize (b)
    type(phas_branch_t), intent(inout) :: b
    integer(TC) :: d1, d2
    if (b%has_children) then
        d1 = b%daughter(1)
        d2 = b%daughter(2)
        if (d1 > d2) then
            b%daughter(1) = d2
            b%daughter(2) = d1
            b%inverted_decay = .not.b%inverted_decay
            if (b%firstborn /= 0) b%firstborn = 3 - b%firstborn
        end if
        call branch_canonicalize (tree%branch(b%daughter(1)))
        call branch_canonicalize (tree%branch(b%daughter(2)))
    end if
end subroutine branch_canonicalize
end subroutine phs_tree_canonicalize

```

## Mappings

Initialize a mapping for the current tree. This is done while reading from file, so the mapping parameters are read, but applied to the flipped tree. Thus, the size of the array of mappings is given by the number of outgoing particles only.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_init_mapping

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_init_mapping (tree, k, type, pdg, model)
        type(phas_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: type
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer(TC) :: kk
        kk = tc_flipped (tree, k)
        call mapping_init (tree%mapping(kk), kk, type, pdg, model)
    end subroutine phs_tree_init_mapping

```

Set the physical parameters for the mapping, using a specific parameter set. Also set the mass sum array.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_set_mapping_parameters

```

```

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_set_mapping_parameters &
    (tree, mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: mapping_defaults
    logical, intent(in) :: variable_limits
    integer(TC) :: k
    do k = 1, tree%n_branches_out
      call mapping_set_parameters &
        (tree%mapping(k), mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
    end do
  end subroutine phs_tree_set_mapping_parameters

```

Return the mapping for the sum of all outgoing particles. This should either be no mapping or a global s-channel mapping.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
  public :: phs_tree_assign_s_mapping

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_assign_s_mapping (tree, mapping)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
    type(mapping_t), intent(out) :: mapping
    mapping = tree%mapping(tree%mask_out)
  end subroutine phs_tree_assign_s_mapping

```

## Kinematics

Fill the mass sum array, starting from the external particles and working down to the tree root. For each bincode  $k$  we scan the bits in  $k$ ; if only one is set, we take the physical mass of the corresponding external particle; if more than one is set, we sum up the two masses (which we know have already been set).

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
  public :: phs_tree_set_mass_sum

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_set_mass_sum (tree, flv)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer(TC) :: k
    integer :: i
    tree%mass_sum = 0
    do k = 1, tree%n_branches_out
      do i = 0, size(flv) - 1
        if (btest(k,i)) then
          if (ibclr(k,i) == 0) then
            tree%mass_sum(k) = flavor_get_mass (flv(i+1))
          else
            tree%mass_sum(k) = &
              tree%mass_sum(ibclr(k,i)) + tree%mass_sum(ibset(0,i))
          end if
        end if
      end do
    end do
  end subroutine phs_tree_set_mass_sum

```

```

        end do
    end do
end subroutine phs_tree_set_mass_sum

```

Set the effective masses and widths. For each non-resonant branch in a tree, the effective mass is equal to the sum of the effective masses of the children (and analogous for the width). External particles have their real mass and width zero. For resonant branches, we insert mass and width from the corresponding mapping.

This routine has `phs_tree_set_mass_sum` and `phs_tree_set_mapping_parameters` as prerequisites.

*(PHS trees: public)*+≡

```

public :: phs_tree_set_effective_masses

```

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_set_effective_masses (tree)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    tree%effective_mass = 0
    tree%effective_width = 0
    call set_masses_x (tree%mask_out)
contains
    recursive subroutine set_masses_x (k)
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        integer(TC) :: k1, k2
        if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
            k1 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(1)
            k2 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(2)
            call set_masses_x (k1)
            call set_masses_x (k2)
            if (mapping_is_s_channel (tree%mapping(k))) then
                tree%effective_mass(k) = mapping_get_mass (tree%mapping(k))
                tree%effective_width(k) = mapping_get_width (tree%mapping(k))
            else
                tree%effective_mass(k) = &
                    tree%effective_mass(k1) + tree%effective_mass(k2)
                tree%effective_width(k) = &
                    tree%effective_width(k1) + tree%effective_width(k2)
            end if
        else
            tree%effective_mass(k) = tree%mass_sum(k)
        end if
    end subroutine set_masses_x
end subroutine phs_tree_set_effective_masses

```

Define step mappings, recursively, for the decay products of all intermediate resonances. Step mappings account for the fact that a branch may originate from a resonance, which almost replaces the upper limit on the possible invariant mass. The step mapping implements a smooth cutoff that interpolates between the resonance and the real kinematic limit. The mapping width determines the sharpness of the cutoff.

Step mappings are inserted only for branches that are not mapped otherwise. At each branch, we record the mass that is effectively available for phase

space, by taking the previous limit and subtracting the effective mass of the sibling branch. Widths are added, not subtracted.

If we encounter a resonance decay, we discard the previous limit and replace it by the mass and width of the resonance, also subtracting the sibling branch.

Initially, the limit is zero, so it becomes negative at any branch. Only if there is a resonance, the limit becomes positive. Whenever the limit is positive, and the current branch decays, we activate a step mapping for the current branch.

As a result, step mappings are implemented for all internal lines that originate from an intermediate resonance decay.

The flag `variable_limits` applies to the ultimate limit from the available energy, not to the intermediate resonances whose masses are always fixed.

This routine requires `phs_tree_set_effective_masses`

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
  public :: phs_tree_set_step_mappings

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_set_step_mappings (tree, exp_type, variable_limits)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    logical, intent(in) :: exp_type
    logical, intent(in) :: variable_limits
    type(string_t) :: map_str
    integer(TC) :: k
    if (exp_type) then
      map_str = "step_exp"
    else
      map_str = "step_hyp"
    end if
    k = tree%mask_out
    call set_step_mappings_x (k, 0._default, 0._default)
contains
  recursive subroutine set_step_mappings_x (k, m_limit, w_limit)
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
    real(default), intent(in) :: m_limit, w_limit
    integer(TC), dimension(2) :: kk
    real(default), dimension(2) :: m, w
    if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
      if (m_limit > 0) then
        if (.not. mapping_is_set (tree%mapping(k))) then
          call mapping_init (tree%mapping(k), k, map_str)
          call mapping_set_step_mapping_parameters (tree%mapping(k), &
            m_limit, w_limit, &
            variable_limits)
        end if
      end if
      kk = tree%branch(k)%daughter
      m = tree%effective_mass(kk)
      w = tree%effective_width(kk)
      if (mapping_is_s_channel (tree%mapping(k))) then
        call set_step_mappings_x (kk(1), &
          mapping_get_mass (tree%mapping(k)) - m(2), &
          mapping_get_width (tree%mapping(k)) + w(2))
        call set_step_mappings_x (kk(2), &
          mapping_get_mass (tree%mapping(k)) - m(1), &

```

```

        mapping_get_width (tree%mapping(k)) + w(1))
else if (m_limit > 0) then
    call set_step_mappings_x (kk(1), &
        m_limit - m(2), &
        w_limit + w(2))
    call set_step_mappings_x (kk(2), &
        m_limit - m(1), &
        w_limit + w(1))
else
    call set_step_mappings_x (kk(1), &
        - m(2), &
        + w(2))
    call set_step_mappings_x (kk(2), &
        - m(1), &
        + w(1))
end if
end if
end subroutine set_step_mappings_x
end subroutine phs_tree_set_step_mappings

```

### Structural comparison

This function allows to check whether one tree is the permutation of another one. The permutation is applied to the second tree in the argument list. We do not make up a temporary permuted tree, but compare the two trees directly. The branches are scanned recursively, where for each daughter we check the friend and the mapping as well. Once a discrepancy is found, the recursion is exited immediately.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_equivalent

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    function phs_tree_equivalent (t1, t2, perm) result (is_equal)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: t1, t2
        type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
        logical :: equal, is_equal
        integer(TC) :: k1, k2, mask_in
        k1 = t1%mask_out
        k2 = t2%mask_out
        mask_in = t1%mask_in
        equal = .true.
        call check (t1%branch(k1), t2%branch(k2), k1, k2)
        is_equal = equal
contains
        recursive subroutine check (b1, b2, k1, k2)
            type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b1, b2
            integer(TC), intent(in) :: k1, k2
            integer(TC), dimension(2) :: d1, d2, pd2
            integer :: i
            if (.not.b1%has_friend .and. .not.b2%has_friend) then
                equal = .true.
            else if (b1%has_friend .and. b2%has_friend) then
                equal = (b1%friend == tc_permute (b2%friend, perm, mask_in))
            end if
        end subroutine check
    end function phs_tree_equivalent

```

```

end if
if (equal) then
  if (b1%has_children .and. b2%has_children) then
    d1 = b1%daughter
    d2 = b2%daughter
    do i=1, 2
      pd2(i) = tc_permute (d2(i), perm, mask_in)
    end do
    if (d1(1)==pd2(1) .and. d1(2)==pd2(2)) then
      equal = (b1%firstborn == b2%firstborn)
      if (equal) call check &
        & (t1%branch(d1(1)), t2%branch(d2(1)), d1(1), d2(1))
      if (equal) call check &
        & (t1%branch(d1(2)), t2%branch(d2(2)), d1(2), d2(2))
    else if (d1(1)==pd2(2) .and. d1(2)==pd2(1)) then
      equal = ( (b1%firstborn == 0 .and. b2%firstborn == 0) &
        & .or. (b1%firstborn == 3 - b2%firstborn) )
      if (equal) call check &
        & (t1%branch(d1(1)), t2%branch(d2(2)), d1(1), d2(2))
      if (equal) call check &
        & (t1%branch(d1(2)), t2%branch(d2(1)), d1(2), d2(1))
    else
      equal = .false.
    end if
  end if
end if
if (equal) then
  equal = (t1%mapping(k1) == t2%mapping(k2))
end if
end subroutine check
end function phs_tree_equivalent

```

Scan two decay trees and determine the correspondence of mass variables, i.e., the permutation that transfers the ordered list of mass variables belonging to the second tree into the first one. Mass variables are assigned beginning from branches and ending at the root.

*(PHS trees: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_tree_find_msq_permutation
```

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_find_msq_permutation (tree1, tree2, perm2, msq_perm)
  type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree1, tree2
  type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm2
  type(permutation_t), intent(out) :: msq_perm
  type(permutation_t) :: perm1
  integer(TC) :: mask_in, root
  integer(TC), dimension(:), allocatable :: index1, index2
  integer :: i
  allocate (index1 (tree1%n_msq), index2 (tree2%n_msq))
  call permutation_init (perm1, permutation_size (perm2))
  mask_in = tree1%mask_in
  root = tree1%mask_out
  i = 0
  call tree_scan (tree1, root, perm1, index1)

```

```

i = 0
call tree_scan (tree2, root, perm2, index2)
call permutation_find (msq_perm, index1, index2)
contains
recursive subroutine tree_scan (tree, k, perm, index)
  type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
  type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
  integer, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: index
  if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
    call tree_scan (tree, tree%branch(k)%daughter(1), perm, index)
    call tree_scan (tree, tree%branch(k)%daughter(2), perm, index)
    i = i + 1
    if (i <= size (index)) index(i) = tc_permute (k, perm, mask_in)
  end if
end subroutine tree_scan
end subroutine phs_tree_find_msq_permutation

```

*<PHS trees: public>+≡*

```
public :: phs_tree_find_angle_permutation
```

*<PHS trees: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine phs_tree_find_angle_permutation &
  (tree1, tree2, perm2, angle_perm, sig2)
  type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree1, tree2
  type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm2
  type(permutation_t), intent(out) :: angle_perm
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: sig2
  type(permutation_t) :: perm1
  integer(TC) :: mask_in, root
  integer(TC), dimension(:), allocatable :: index1, index2
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: sig1
  integer :: i
  allocate (index1 (tree1%n_angles), index2 (tree2%n_angles))
  allocate (sig1 (tree1%n_angles), sig2 (tree2%n_angles))
  call permutation_init (perm1, permutation_size (perm2))
  mask_in = tree1%mask_in
  root = tree1%mask_out
  i = 0
  call tree_scan (tree1, root, perm1, index1, sig1)
  i = 0
  call tree_scan (tree2, root, perm2, index2, sig2)
  call permutation_find (angle_perm, index1, index2)
contains
recursive subroutine tree_scan (tree, k, perm, index, sig)
  type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
  type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
  integer, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: index
  logical, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: sig
  integer(TC) :: k1, k2, kp
  logical :: s
  if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
    k1 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(1)

```

```

        k2 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(2)
        s = (tc_permute(k1, perm, mask_in) < tc_permute(k2, perm, mask_in))
        kp = tc_permute (k, perm, mask_in)
        i = i + 1
        index(i) = kp
        sig(i) = s
        i = i + 1
        index(i) = - kp
        sig(i) = s
        call tree_scan (tree, k1, perm, index, sig)
        call tree_scan (tree, k2, perm, index, sig)
    end if
end subroutine tree_scan
end subroutine phs_tree_find_angle_permutation

```

### 11.5.4 Phase-space evaluation

#### Phase-space volume

We compute the phase-space volume recursively, following the same path as for computing other kinematical variables. However, the volume depends just on  $\sqrt{\hat{s}}$ , not on the momentum configuration.

Note: counting branches, we may replace this by a simple formula.

```

(PHS trees: public)+≡
    public :: phs_tree_compute_volume

(PHS trees: procedures)+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_compute_volume (tree, sqrts, volume)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        real(default), intent(out) :: volume
        integer(TC) :: k
        k = tree%mask_out
        if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
            call compute_volume_x (tree%branch(k), k, volume, .true.)
        else
            volume = 1
        end if
    contains
    recursive subroutine compute_volume_x (b, k, volume, initial)
        type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        real(default), intent(out) :: volume
        logical, intent(in) :: initial
        integer(TC) :: k1, k2
        real(default) :: v1, v2
        k1 = b%daughter(1); k2 = b%daughter(2)
        if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children) then
            call compute_volume_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, v1, .false.)
        else
            v1 = 1
        end if
        if (tree%branch(k2)%has_children) then

```



```

        call compute_volume_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, v2, .false.)
    else
        v2 = 1
    end if
    if (initial) then
        volume = v1 * v2 / (4 * twopi5)
    else
        volume = v1 * v2 * sqrts**2 / (4 * twopi2)
    end if
end subroutine compute_volume_x
end subroutine phs_tree_compute_volume

```

### Determine momenta

This is done in two steps: First the masses are determined. This step may fail, in which case `ok` is set to false. If successful, we generate angles and the actual momenta. The array `decay_p` serves for transferring the individual three-momenta of the daughter particles in their mother rest frame from the mass generation to the momentum generation step.

```

<PHS trees: public>+≡
    public :: phs_tree_compute_momenta_from_x

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_compute_momenta_from_x &
        (tree, prt, factor, volume, sqrts, x, ok)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
        type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: prt
        real(default), intent(out) :: factor, volume
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
        logical, intent(out) :: ok
        real(default), dimension(tree%mask_out) :: decay_p
        integer :: n1, n2
        n1 = tree%n_msq
        n2 = n1 + tree%n_angles
        call phs_tree_set_msq &
            (tree, prt, factor, volume, decay_p, sqrts, x(1:n1), ok)
        if (ok) call phs_tree_set_angles &
            (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x(n1+1:n2))
    end subroutine phs_tree_compute_momenta_from_x

```

Mass generation is done recursively. The `ok` flag causes the filled tree to be discarded if set to `.false.`. This happens if a three-momentum turns out to be imaginary, indicating impossible kinematics. The index `ix` tells us how far we have used up the input array `x`.

```

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_tree_set_msq &
        (tree, prt, factor, volume, decay_p, sqrts, x, ok)
        type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
        type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: prt
        real(default), intent(out) :: factor, volume
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: decay_p

```

```

real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
logical, intent(out) :: ok
integer :: ix
integer(TC) :: k
real(default) :: m_tot
ok = .true.
ix = 1
k = tree%mask_out
m_tot = tree%mass_sum(k)
decay_p(k) = 0.
if (m_tot < sqrts .or. k == 1) then
  if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
    call set_msq_x (tree%branch(k), k, factor, volume, .true.)
  else
    factor = 1
    volume = 1
  end if
else
  ok = .false.
end if
contains
recursive subroutine set_msq_x (b, k, factor, volume, initial)
  type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
  real(default), intent(out) :: factor, volume
  logical, intent(in) :: initial
  real(default) :: msq, m, m_min, m_max, m1, m2, msq1, msq2, lda, rlda
  integer(TC) :: k1, k2
  real(default) :: f1, f2, v1, v2
  k1 = b%daughter(1); k2 = b%daughter(2)
  if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children) then
    call set_msq_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, f1, v1, .false.)
    if (.not.ok) return
  else
    f1 = 1; v1 = 1
  end if
  if (tree%branch(k2)%has_children) then
    call set_msq_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, f2, v2, .false.)
    if (.not.ok) return
  else
    f2 = 1; v2 = 1
  end if
  m_min = tree%mass_sum(k)
  if (initial) then
    msq = sqrts**2
    m = sqrts
    m_max = sqrts
    factor = f1 * f2
    volume = v1 * v2 / (4 * twopi5)
  else
    m_max = sqrts - m_tot + m_min
    call mapping_compute_msq_from_x &
      (tree%mapping(k), sqrts**2, m_min**2, m_max**2, msq, factor, &

```

```

        x(ix)); ix = ix + 1
    if (msq >= 0) then
        m = sqrt (msq)
        factor = f1 * f2 * factor
        volume = v1 * v2 * sqrts**2 / (4 * twopi2)
        call phs_prt_set_msq (prt(k), msq)
        call phs_prt_set_defined (prt(k))
    else
        ok = .false.
    end if
end if
if (ok) then
    msq1 = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k1)); m1 = sqrt (msq1)
    msq2 = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k2)); m2 = sqrt (msq2)
    lda = lambda (msq, msq1, msq2)
    if (lda > 0 .and. m > m1 + m2 .and. m <= m_max) then
        rllda = sqrt (lda)
        decay_p(k1) = rllda / (2*m)
        decay_p(k2) = - decay_p(k1)
        factor = rllda / msq * factor
    else
        ok = .false.
    end if
end if
end subroutine set_msq_x
end subroutine phs_tree_set_msq

```

The heart of phase space generation: Now we have the invariant masses, let us generate angles. At each branch, we take a Lorentz transformation and augment it by a boost to the current particle rest frame, and by rotations  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  around the  $z$  and  $y$  axis, respectively. This transformation is passed down to the daughter particles, if present.

*(PHS trees: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine phs_tree_set_angles (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), intent(inout) :: factor
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: decay_p
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    integer :: ix
    integer(TC) :: k
    ix = 1
    k = tree%mask_out
    call set_angles_x (tree%branch(k), k)
contains
    recursive subroutine set_angles_x (b, k, L0)
        type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: L0
        real(default) :: m, msq, ct, st, phi, f, E, p, bg
        type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L, LL
        integer(TC) :: k1, k2
    end subroutine set_angles_x
end subroutine phs_tree_set_angles

```

```

type(vector3_t) :: axis
p = decay_p(k)
msq = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k)); m = sqrt (msq)
E = sqrt (msq + p**2)
if (present (L0)) then
  call phs_prt_set_momentum (prt(k), L0 * vector4_moving (E,p,3))
else
  call phs_prt_set_momentum (prt(k), vector4_moving (E,p,3))
end if
call phs_prt_set_defined (prt(k))
if (b%has_children) then
  k1 = b%daughter(1)
  k2 = b%daughter(2)
  if (m > 0) then
    bg = p / m
  else
    bg = 0
  end if
  phi = x(ix) * twopi; ix = ix + 1
  call mapping_compute_ct_from_x &
    (tree%mapping(k), sqrts**2, ct, st, f, x(ix)); ix = ix + 1
  factor = factor * f
  if (.not. b%has_friend) then
    L = LT_compose_r2_r3_b3 (ct, st, cos(phi), sin(phi), bg)
    !!! The function above is equivalent to:
    ! L = boost (bg,3) * rotation (phi,3) * rotation (ct,st,2)
  else
    LL = boost (-bg,3); if (present (L0)) LL = LL * inverse(L0)
    axis = space_part ( &
      LL * phs_prt_get_momentum (prt(tree%branch(k)%friend)) )
    L = boost(bg,3) * rotation_to_2nd (vector3_canonical(3), axis) &
      * LT_compose_r2_r3_b3 (ct, st, cos(phi), sin(phi), 0._default)
  end if
  if (present (L0)) L = L0 * L
  call set_angles_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, L)
  call set_angles_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, L)
end if
end subroutine set_angles_x
end subroutine phs_tree_set_angles

```

## Recover random numbers

For the other channels we want to compute the random numbers that would have generated the momenta that we already know.

*(PHS trees: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_tree_compute_x_from_momenta
```

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_compute_x_from_momenta (tree, prt, factor, sqrts, x)
  type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
  type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
  real(default), intent(out) :: factor
  real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts

```

```

real(default), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: x
real(default), dimension(tree%mask_out) :: decay_p
integer :: n1, n2
n1 = tree%n_msq
n2 = n1 + tree%n_angles
call phs_tree_get_msq &
    (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x(1:n1))
call phs_tree_get_angles &
    (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x(n1+1:n2))
end subroutine phs_tree_compute_x_from_momenta

```

The inverse operation follows exactly the same steps. The tree is *inout* because it contains mappings whose parameters can be reset when the mapping is applied.

(*PHS trees: procedures*) $\equiv$

```

subroutine phs_tree_get_msq (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default), intent(out) :: factor
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: decay_p
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: x
    integer :: ix
    integer(TC) :: k
    real(default) :: m_tot
    ix = 1
    k = tree%mask_out
    m_tot = tree%mass_sum(k)
    decay_p(k) = 0.
    if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
        call get_msq_x (tree%branch(k), k, factor, .true.)
    else
        factor = 1
    end if
contains
    recursive subroutine get_msq_x (b, k, factor, initial)
        type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        real(default), intent(out) :: factor
        logical, intent(in) :: initial
        real(default) :: msq, m, m_min, m_max, msq1, msq2, lda, rlda
        integer(TC) :: k1, k2
        real(default) :: f1, f2
        k1 = b%daughter(1); k2 = b%daughter(2)
        if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children) then
            call get_msq_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, f1, .false.)
        else
            f1 = 1
        end if
        if (tree%branch(k2)%has_children) then
            call get_msq_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, f2, .false.)
        else
            f2 = 1
        end if
    end subroutine get_msq_x
end subroutine phs_tree_get_msq

```

```

end if
m_min = tree%mass_sum(k)
m_max = sqrts - m_tot + m_min
msq = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k)); m = sqrt (msq)
if (initial) then
    factor = f1 * f2
else
    call mapping_compute_x_from_msq &
        (tree%mapping(k), sqrts**2, m_min**2, m_max**2, msq, factor, &
            x(ix)); ix = ix + 1
    factor = f1 * f2 * factor
end if
msq1 = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k1))
msq2 = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k2))
lda = lambda (msq, msq1, msq2)
if (lda > 0) then
    rlda = sqrt (lda)
    decay_p(k1) = rlda / (2 * m)
    decay_p(k2) = - decay_p(k1)
    factor = rlda / msq * factor
else
    decay_p(k1) = 0
    decay_p(k2) = 0
    factor = 0
end if
end subroutine get_msq_x
end subroutine phs_tree_get_msq

```

This subroutine is the most time-critical part of the whole program. Therefore, we do not exactly parallel the angle generation routine above but make sure that things get evaluated only if they are really needed, at the expense of readability. Particularly important is to have as few multiplications of Lorentz transformations as possible.

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_get_angles (tree, prt, factor, decay_p, sqrts, x)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default), intent(inout) :: factor
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: decay_p
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    integer :: ix
    integer(TC) :: k
    ix = 1
    k = tree%mask_out
    if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) call get_angles_x (tree%branch(k), k)
contains
    recursive subroutine get_angles_x (b, k, ct0, st0, phi0, L0)
        type(phs_branch_t), intent(in) :: b
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: ct0, st0, phi0
        type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: L0
        real(default) :: cp0, sp0, m, msq, ct, st, phi, bg, f
    end subroutine get_angles_x
end subroutine phs_tree_get_angles

```

```

type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L, LL
type(vector4_t) :: p1, pf
type(vector3_t) :: n, axis
integer(TC) :: k1, k2, kf
logical :: has_friend, need_L
k1 = b%daughter(1)
k2 = b%daughter(2)
kf = b%friend
has_friend = b%has_friend
if (present(L0)) then
    p1 = L0 * phs_prt_get_momentum (prt(k1))
    if (has_friend) pf = L0 * phs_prt_get_momentum (prt(kf))
else
    p1 = phs_prt_get_momentum (prt(k1))
    if (has_friend) pf = phs_prt_get_momentum (prt(kf))
end if
if (present(phi0)) then
    cp0 = cos (phi0)
    sp0 = sin (phi0)
end if
msq = phs_prt_get_msq (prt(k)); m = sqrt (msq)
if (m > 0) then
    bg = decay_p(k) / m
else
    bg = 0
end if
if (has_friend) then
    if (present (phi0)) then
        axis = axis_from_p_r3_r2_b3 (pf, cp0, -sp0, ct0, -st0, -bg)
        LL = rotation_to_2nd (axis, vector3_canonical (3)) &
            * LT_compose_r3_r2_b3 (cp0, -sp0, ct0, -st0, -bg)
    else
        axis = axis_from_p_b3 (pf, -bg)
        LL = rotation_to_2nd (axis, vector3_canonical(3))
        if (bg /= 0) LL = LL * boost(-bg, 3)
    end if
    n = space_part (LL * p1)
else if (present (phi0)) then
    n = axis_from_p_r3_r2_b3 (p1, cp0, -sp0, ct0, -st0, -bg)
else
    n = axis_from_p_b3 (p1, -bg)
end if
phi = azimuthal_angle (n)
x(ix) = phi / twopi; ix = ix + 1
ct = polar_angle_ct (n)
st = sqrt (1 - ct**2)
call mapping_compute_x_from_ct (tree%mapping(k), sqrts**2, ct, f, &
    x(ix)); ix = ix + 1
factor = factor * f
if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children .or. tree%branch(k2)%has_children) then
    need_L = .true.
    if (has_friend) then
        if (present (L0)) then
            L = LL * L0
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```

        else
            L = LL
        end if
    else if (present (L0)) then
        L = LT_compose_r3_r2_b3 (cp0, -sp0, ct0, -st0, -bg) * L0
    else if (present (phi0)) then
        L = LT_compose_r3_r2_b3 (cp0, -sp0, ct0, -st0, -bg)
    else if (bg /= 0) then
        L = boost(-bg, 3)
    else
        need_L = .false.
    end if
    if (need_L) then
        if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children) &
            call get_angles_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, ct, st, phi, L)
        if (tree%branch(k2)%has_children) &
            call get_angles_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, ct, st, phi, L)
    else
        if (tree%branch(k1)%has_children) &
            call get_angles_x (tree%branch(k1), k1, ct, st, phi)
        if (tree%branch(k2)%has_children) &
            call get_angles_x (tree%branch(k2), k2, ct, st, phi)
    end if
end if
end subroutine get_angles_x
end subroutine phs_tree_get_angles

```

### Auxiliary stuff

This calculates all momenta that are not yet known by summing up daughter particle momenta. The external particles must be known. Only composite particles not yet known are calculated.

*(PHS trees: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_tree_combine_particles
```

*(PHS trees: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_tree_combine_particles (tree, prt)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: prt
    call combine_particles_x (tree%mask_out)
contains
    recursive subroutine combine_particles_x (k)
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        integer :: k1, k2
        if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
            k1 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(1); k2 = tree%branch(k)%daughter(2)
            call combine_particles_x (k1)
            call combine_particles_x (k2)
            if (.not. prt(k)%defined) then
                call phs_prt_combine (prt(k), prt(k1), prt(k2))
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine combine_particles_x
end subroutine combine_particles_x

```



```
end subroutine phs_tree_combine_particles
```

The previous routine is to be evaluated at runtime. Instead of scanning trees, we can as well set up a multiplication table. This is generated here. Note that the table is `intent(out)`.

```
<PHS trees: public>+≡
  public :: phs_tree_setup_prt_combinations

<PHS trees: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_tree_setup_prt_combinations (tree, comb)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(in) :: tree
    integer, dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: comb
    comb = 0
    call setup_prt_combinations_x (tree%mask_out)
contains
  recursive subroutine setup_prt_combinations_x (k)
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
    integer, dimension(2) :: kk
    if (tree%branch(k)%has_children) then
      kk = tree%branch(k)%daughter
      call setup_prt_combinations_x (kk(1))
      call setup_prt_combinations_x (kk(2))
      comb(:,k) = kk
    end if
  end subroutine setup_prt_combinations_x
end subroutine phs_tree_setup_prt_combinations
```

## 11.6 The phase-space forest

Simply stated, a phase-space forest is a collection of phase-space trees. More precisely, a `phs_forest` object contains all parameterizations of phase space that `WHIZARD` will use for a single hard process, prepared in the form of `phs_tree` objects. This is suitable for evaluation by the `VAMP` integration package: each parameterization (tree) is a valid channel in the multi-channel adaptive integration, and each variable in a tree corresponds to an integration dimension, defined by an appropriate mapping of the  $(0, 1)$  interval to the allowed range of the integration variable.

The trees are grouped in groves. The trees (integration channels) within a grove share a common weight, assuming that they are related by some approximate symmetry.

Trees/channels that are related by an exact symmetry are connected by an array of equivalences; each equivalence object holds the data that relate one channel to another.

The phase-space setup, i.e., the detailed structure of trees and forest, are read from a file. Therefore, this module also contains the syntax definition and the parser needed for interpreting this file.

```
(phs_forests.f90)≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module phs_forests  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    use kinds, only: TC !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_19 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use permutations  
    use ifiles  
    use syntax_rules  
    use lexers  
    use parser  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use interactions  
  
    use phs_base  
    use mappings  
    use phs_trees  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <PHS forests: public>  
  
    <PHS forests: types>  
  
    <PHS forests: interfaces>
```

```

<PHS forests: variables>

contains

<PHS forests: procedures>

<PHS forests: tests>

end module phs_forests

```

### 11.6.1 Phase-space setup parameters

This transparent container holds the parameters that the algorithm needs for phase-space setup, with reasonable defaults.

The threshold mass (for considering a particle as effectively massless) is specified separately for s- and t-channel. The default is to treat  $W$  and  $Z$  bosons as massive in the s-channel, but as massless in the t-channel. The  $b$ -quark is treated always massless, the  $t$ -quark always massive.

```

<PHS forests: public>≡
  public :: phs_parameters_t

<PHS forests: types>≡
  type :: phs_parameters_t
    real(default) :: sqrts = 0
    real(default) :: m_threshold_s = 50._default
    real(default) :: m_threshold_t = 100._default
    integer :: off_shell = 1
    integer :: t_channel = 2
    logical :: keep_nonresonant = .true.
  end type phs_parameters_t

```

Write phase-space parameters to file.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_parameters_write

<PHS forests: procedures>≡
  subroutine phs_parameters_write (phs_par, unit)
    type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "sqrts          = ", phs_par%sqrts
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "m_threshold_s = ", phs_par%m_threshold_s
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "m_threshold_t = ", phs_par%m_threshold_t
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "off_shell = ", phs_par%off_shell
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "t_channel = ", phs_par%t_channel
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "keep_nonresonant = ", phs_par%keep_nonresonant
  end subroutine phs_parameters_write

```

Read phase-space parameters from file.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_parameters_read

```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine phs_parameters_read (phs_par, unit)
  type(phs_parameters_t), intent(out) :: phs_par
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  character(20) :: dummy
  character :: equals
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%sqrts
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%m_threshold_s
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%m_threshold_t
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%off_shell
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%t_channel
  read (unit, *) dummy, equals, phs_par%keep_nonresonant
end subroutine phs_parameters_read
```

Comparison.

*(PHS forests: interfaces)*≡

```
interface operator(==)
  module procedure phs_parameters_eq
end interface
interface operator(/=)
  module procedure phs_parameters_ne
end interface
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```
function phs_parameters_eq (phs_par1, phs_par2) result (equal)
  logical :: equal
  type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par1, phs_par2
  equal = phs_par1%sqrts == phs_par2%sqrts &
    .and. phs_par1%m_threshold_s == phs_par2%m_threshold_s &
    .and. phs_par1%m_threshold_t == phs_par2%m_threshold_t &
    .and. phs_par1%off_shell == phs_par2%off_shell &
    .and. phs_par1%t_channel == phs_par2%t_channel &
    .and. (phs_par1%keep_nonresonant .eqv. phs_par2%keep_nonresonant)
end function phs_parameters_eq

function phs_parameters_ne (phs_par1, phs_par2) result (ne)
  logical :: ne
  type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par1, phs_par2
  ne = phs_par1%sqrts /= phs_par2%sqrts &
    .or. phs_par1%m_threshold_s /= phs_par2%m_threshold_s &
    .or. phs_par1%m_threshold_t /= phs_par2%m_threshold_t &
    .or. phs_par1%off_shell /= phs_par2%off_shell &
    .or. phs_par1%t_channel /= phs_par2%t_channel &
    .or. (phs_par1%keep_nonresonant .neqv. phs_par2%keep_nonresonant)
end function phs_parameters_ne
```

## 11.6.2 Equivalences

This type holds information about equivalences between phase-space trees. We make a linked list, where each node contains the two trees which are equivalent and the corresponding permutation of external particles. Two more arrays are

to be filled: The permutation of mass variables and the permutation of angular variables, where the signature indicates a necessary exchange of daughter branches.

```

(PHS forests: types)+≡
  type :: equivalence_t
  private
    integer :: left, right
    type(permutation_t) :: perm
    type(permutation_t) :: msq_perm, angle_perm
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: angle_sig
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  end type equivalence_t

```

```

(PHS forests: types)+≡
  type :: equivalence_list_t
  private
    integer :: length = 0
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: first => null ()
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: last => null ()
  end type equivalence_list_t

```

Append an equivalence to the list

```

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
  subroutine equivalence_list_add (eql, left, right, perm)
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(inout) :: eql
    integer, intent(in) :: left, right
    type(permutation_t), intent(in) :: perm
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: eq
    allocate (eq)
    eq%left = left
    eq%right = right
    eq%perm = perm
    if (associated (eql%last)) then
      eql%last%next => eq
    else
      eql%first => eq
    end if
    eql%last => eq
    eql%length = eql%length + 1
  end subroutine equivalence_list_add

```

Delete the list contents. Has to be pure because it is called from an elemental subroutine.

```

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
  pure subroutine equivalence_list_final (eql)
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(inout) :: eql
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: eq
    do while (associated (eql%first))
      eq => eql%first
      eql%first => eql%first%next
      deallocate (eq)
    end do
  end subroutine equivalence_list_final

```

```

    eql%last => null ()
    eql%length = 0
end subroutine equivalence_list_final

```

Make a deep copy of the equivalence list. This allows for deep copies of groves and forests.

```

<PHS forests: interfaces>+≡
  interface assignment(=)
    module procedure equivalence_list_assign
  end interface

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine equivalence_list_assign (eql_out, eql_in)
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(out) :: eql_out
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(in) :: eql_in
    type(equivalence_t), pointer :: eq, eq_copy
    eq => eql_in%first
    do while (associated (eq))
      allocate (eq_copy)
      eq_copy = eq
      eq_copy%next => null ()
      if (associated (eql_out%first)) then
        eql_out%last%next => eq_copy
      else
        eql_out%first => eq_copy
      end if
      eql_out%last => eq_copy
      eq => eq%next
    end do
  end subroutine equivalence_list_assign

```

The number of list entries

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  elemental function equivalence_list_length (eql) result (length)
    integer :: length
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(in) :: eql
    length = eql%length
  end function equivalence_list_length

```

Recursively write the equivalences list

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine equivalence_list_write (eql, unit)
    type(equivalence_list_t), intent(in) :: eql
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    if (associated (eql%first)) then
      call equivalence_write_rec (eql%first, u)
    else
      write (u, *) " [empty]"
    end if
  contains

```

```

recursive subroutine equivalence_write_rec (eq, u)
  type(equivalence_t), intent(in) :: eq
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer :: i
  write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0,1x,I0,2x,A)", advance="no") &
    "Equivalence:", eq%left, eq%right, "Final state permutation:"
  call permutation_write (eq%perm, u)
  write (u, "(1x,12x,1x,A,1x)", advance="no") &
    "      msq permutation:  "
  call permutation_write (eq%msq_perm, u)
  write (u, "(1x,12x,1x,A,1x)", advance="no") &
    "      angle permutation:"
  call permutation_write (eq%angle_perm, u)
  write (u, "(1x,12x,1x,26x)", advance="no")
  do i = 1, size (eq%angle_sig)
    if (eq%angle_sig(i)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "+"
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "-"
    end if
  end do
  write (u, *)
  if (associated (eq%next)) call equivalence_write_rec (eq%next, u)
end subroutine equivalence_write_rec
end subroutine equivalence_list_write

```

### 11.6.3 Groves

A grove is a group of trees (phase-space channels) that share a common weight in the integration. Within a grove, channels can be declared equivalent, so they also share their integration grids (up to symmetries). The grove contains a list of equivalences. The `tree_count_offset` is the total number of trees of the preceding groves; when the trees are counted per forest (integration channels), the offset has to be added to all tree indices.

```

<PHS forests: types>+≡
  type :: phs_grove_t
  private
  integer :: tree_count_offset
  type(phs_tree_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tree
  type(equivalence_list_t) :: equivalence_list
end type phs_grove_t

```

Call `phs_tree_init` which is also elemental:

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  elemental subroutine phs_grove_init &
    (grove, n_trees, n_in, n_out, n_masses, n_angles)
  type(phs_grove_t), intent(inout) :: grove
  integer, intent(in) :: n_trees, n_in, n_out, n_masses, n_angles
  grove%tree_count_offset = 0
  allocate (grove%tree (n_trees))
  call phs_tree_init (grove%tree, n_in, n_out, n_masses, n_angles)

```

```
end subroutine phs_grove_init
```

The trees do not have pointer components, thus no call to `phs_tree_final`:

```
(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
  elemental subroutine phs_grove_final (grove)
    type(phs_grove_t), intent(inout) :: grove
    deallocate (grove%tree)
    call equivalence_list_final (grove%equivalence_list)
  end subroutine phs_grove_final
```

Deep copy.

```
(PHS forests: interfaces)+≡
  interface assignment(=)
    module procedure phs_grove_assign0
    module procedure phs_grove_assign1
  end interface

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_grove_assign0 (grove_out, grove_in)
    type(phs_grove_t), intent(out) :: grove_out
    type(phs_grove_t), intent(in) :: grove_in
    grove_out%tree_count_offset = grove_in%tree_count_offset
    if (allocated (grove_in%tree)) then
      allocate (grove_out%tree (size (grove_in%tree)))
      grove_out%tree = grove_in%tree
    end if
    grove_out%equivalence_list = grove_in%equivalence_list
  end subroutine phs_grove_assign0

  subroutine phs_grove_assign1 (grove_out, grove_in)
    type(phs_grove_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: grove_out
    type(phs_grove_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: grove_in
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (grove_in)
      call phs_grove_assign0 (grove_out(i), grove_in(i))
    end do
  end subroutine phs_grove_assign1
```

Get the global (s-channel) mappings. Implemented as a subroutine which returns an array (slice).

```
(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_grove_assign_s_mappings (grove, mapping)
    type(phs_grove_t), intent(in) :: grove
    type(mapping_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: mapping
    integer :: i
    if (size (mapping) == size (grove%tree)) then
      do i = 1, size (mapping)
        call phs_tree_assign_s_mapping (grove%tree(i), mapping(i))
      end do
    else
      call msg_bug ("phs_grove_assign_s_mappings: array size mismatch")
    end if
```



```
end subroutine phs_grove_assign_s_mappings
```

#### 11.6.4 The forest type

This is a collection of trees and associated particles. In a given tree, each branch code corresponds to a particle in the `prt` array. Furthermore, we have an array of mass sums which is independent of the decay tree and of the particular event. The mappings directly correspond to the decay trees, and the decay groves collect the trees in classes. The permutation list consists of all permutations of outgoing particles that map the decay forest onto itself.

The particle codes `flv` (one for each external particle) are needed for determining masses and such. The trees and associated information are collected in the `grove` array, together with a lookup table that associates tree indices to groves. Finally, the `prt` array serves as workspace for phase-space evaluation.

The `prt_combination` is a list of index pairs, namely the particle momenta pairs that need to be combined in order to provide all momentum combinations that the phase-space trees need to know.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_t

<PHS forests: types>+≡
  type :: phs_forest_t
    private
    integer :: n_in, n_out, n_tot
    integer :: n_masses, n_angles, n_dimensions
    integer :: n_trees, n_equivalences
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
    type(phs_grove_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: grove
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: grove_lookup
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out
    type(phs_prt_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
    integer(TC), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: prt_combination
    type(mapping_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: s_mapping
  contains
    <PHS forests: phs forest: TBP>
  end type phs_forest_t
```

The initialization merely allocates memory. We have to know how many trees there are in each grove, so we can initialize everything. The number of groves is the size of the `n_tree` array.

In the `grove_lookup` table we store the grove index that belongs to each absolute tree index. The difference between the absolute index and the relative (to the grove) index is stored, for each grove, as `tree_count_offset`.

The particle array is allocated according to the total number of branches each tree has, but not filled.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_init
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_init (forest, n_tree, n_in, n_out)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: n_tree
  integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
  integer :: g, count, k_root
  forest%n_in = n_in
  forest%n_out = n_out
  forest%n_tot = n_in + n_out
  forest%n_masses = max (n_out - 2, 0)
  forest%n_angles = max (2*n_out - 2, 0)
  forest%n_dimensions = forest%n_masses + forest%n_angles
  forest%n_trees = sum (n_tree)
  forest%n_equivalences = 0
  allocate (forest%grove (size (n_tree)))
  call phs_grove_init &
    (forest%grove, n_tree, n_in, n_out, forest%n_masses, forest%n_angles)
  allocate (forest%grove_lookup (forest%n_trees))
  count = 0
  do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
    forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset = count
    forest%grove_lookup (count+1:count+n_tree(g)) = g
    count = count + n_tree(g)
  end do
  allocate (forest%pvt_in (n_in))
  allocate (forest%pvt_out (n_out))
  k_root = 2**forest%n_tot - 1
  allocate (forest%pvt (k_root))
  allocate (forest%pvt_combination (2, k_root))
  allocate (forest%s_mapping (forest%n_trees))
end subroutine phs_forest_init

```

Assign the global (s-channel) mappings.

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```

public :: phs_forest_set_s_mappings

```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_set_s_mappings (forest)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  integer :: g, i0, i1, n
  do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
    call phs_forest_get_grove_bounds (forest, g, i0, i1, n)
    call phs_grove_assign_s_mappings &
      (forest%grove(g), forest%s_mapping(i0:i1))
  end do
end subroutine phs_forest_set_s_mappings

```

The grove finalizer is called because it contains the equivalence list:

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```

public :: phs_forest_final

```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_final (forest)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest

```

```

    if (allocated (forest%grove)) then
        call phs_grove_final (forest%grove)
        deallocate (forest%grove)
    end if
    if (allocated (forest%grove_lookup)) deallocate (forest%grove_lookup)
    if (allocated (forest%prt)) deallocate (forest%prt)
    if (allocated (forest%s_mapping)) deallocate (forest%s_mapping)
end subroutine phs_forest_final

```

## 11.6.5 Screen output

Write the particles that are non-null, then the trees which point to them:

```

<PHS forests: public>+=
    public :: phs_forest_write

<PHS forests: phs forest: TBP>=
    procedure :: write => phs_forest_write

<PHS forests: procedures>+=
    subroutine phs_forest_write (forest, unit)
        class(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        integer :: i, g, k
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Phase space forest:"
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_in  = ", forest%n_in
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_out = ", forest%n_out
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_tot = ", forest%n_tot
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_masses = ", forest%n_masses
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_angles = ", forest%n_angles
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_dim  = ", forest%n_dimensions
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_trees = ", forest%n_trees
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_equiv = ", forest%n_equivalences
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "flavors ="
        if (allocated (forest%flv)) then
            do i = 1, size (forest%flv)
                write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") flavor_get_pdg (forest%flv(i))
            end do
            write (u, "(A)")
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "[empty]"
        end if
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Particle combinations:"
        if (allocated (forest%prt_combination)) then
            do k = 1, size (forest%prt_combination, 2)
                if (forest%prt_combination(1, k) /= 0) then
                    write (u, "(3x,I0,1x,'<=',1x,I0,1x,'+',1x,I0)") &
                        k, forest%prt_combination(:,k)
                end if
            end do
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") " [empty]"
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

end if
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Groves and trees:"
if (allocated (forest%grove)) then
    do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
        write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0)") "Grove    ", g
        call phs_grove_write (forest%grove(g), unit)
    end do
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "    [empty]"
end if
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Total number of equivalences: ", &
    forest%n_equivalences
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Global s-channel mappings:"
if (allocated (forest%s_mapping)) then
    do i = 1, size (forest%s_mapping)
        associate (mapping => forest%s_mapping(i))
            if (mapping_is_s_channel (mapping) &
                .or. mapping_is_on_shell (mapping)) then
                write (u, "(1x,I0,':',1x)", advance="no") i
                call mapping_write (forest%s_mapping(i), unit)
            end if
        end associate
    end do
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "    [empty]"
end if
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Incoming particles:"
if (allocated (forest%prt_in)) then
    if (any (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt_in))) then
        do i = 1, size (forest%prt_in)
            if (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt_in(i))) then
                write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "Particle", i
                call phs_prt_write (forest%prt_in(i), u)
            end if
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[all undefined]"
    end if
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "    [empty]"
end if
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Outgoing particles:"
if (allocated (forest%prt_out)) then
    if (any (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt_out))) then
        do i = 1, size (forest%prt_out)
            if (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt_out(i))) then
                write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "Particle", i
                call phs_prt_write (forest%prt_out(i), u)
            end if
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[all undefined]"
    end if
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "    [empty]"
end if

```

```

        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[all undefined]"
    end if
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "[empty]"
end if
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Tree particles:"
if (allocated (forest%prt)) then
    if (any (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt))) then
        do i = 1, size (forest%prt)
            if (phs_prt_is_defined (forest%prt(i))) then
                write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "Particle", i
                call phs_prt_write (forest%prt(i), u)
            end if
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[all undefined]"
    end if
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[empty]"
end if
end subroutine phs_forest_write

subroutine phs_grove_write (grove, unit)
    type(phs_grove_t), intent(in) :: grove
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    integer :: t
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    do t = 1, size (grove%tree)
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Tree", t
        call phs_tree_write (grove%tree(t), unit)
    end do
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Equivalence list:"
    call equivalence_list_write (grove%equivalence_list, unit)
end subroutine phs_grove_write

```

Deep copy.

*<PHS forests: public>+≡*

```
public :: assignment(=)
```

*<PHS forests: interfaces>+≡*

```
interface assignment(=)
```

```
    module procedure phs_forest_assign
```

```
end interface
```

*<PHS forests: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine phs_forest_assign (forest_out, forest_in)
```

```
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(out) :: forest_out
```

```
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest_in
```

```
    forest_out%n_in = forest_in%n_in
```

```
    forest_out%n_out = forest_in%n_out
```

```
    forest_out%n_tot = forest_in%n_tot
```

```
    forest_out%n_masses = forest_in%n_masses
```

```

forest_out%n_angles = forest_in%n_angles
forest_out%n_dimensions = forest_in%n_dimensions
forest_out%n_trees = forest_in%n_trees
forest_out%n_equivalences = forest_in%n_equivalences
if (allocated (forest_in%flv)) then
  allocate (forest_out%flv (size (forest_in%flv)))
  forest_out%flv = forest_in%flv
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%grove)) then
  allocate (forest_out%grove (size (forest_in%grove)))
  forest_out%grove = forest_in%grove
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%grove_lookup)) then
  allocate (forest_out%grove_lookup (size (forest_in%grove_lookup)))
  forest_out%grove_lookup = forest_in%grove_lookup
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%prt_in)) then
  allocate (forest_out%prt_in (size (forest_in%prt_in)))
  forest_out%prt_in = forest_in%prt_in
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%prt_out)) then
  allocate (forest_out%prt_out (size (forest_in%prt_out)))
  forest_out%prt_out = forest_in%prt_out
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%prt)) then
  allocate (forest_out%prt (size (forest_in%prt)))
  forest_out%prt = forest_in%prt
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%s_mapping)) then
  allocate (forest_out%s_mapping (size (forest_in%s_mapping)))
  forest_out%s_mapping = forest_in%s_mapping
end if
if (allocated (forest_in%prt_combination)) then
  allocate (forest_out%prt_combination &
    (2, size (forest_in%prt_combination, 2)))
  forest_out%prt_combination = forest_in%prt_combination
end if
end subroutine phs_forest_assign

```

### 11.6.6 Accessing contents

Get the number of integration parameters

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_n_parameters

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  function phs_forest_get_n_parameters (forest) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
    n = forest%n_dimensions
  end function phs_forest_get_n_parameters

```

Get the number of integration channels

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_n_channels

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  function phs_forest_get_n_channels (forest) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
    n = forest%n_trees
  end function phs_forest_get_n_channels
```

Get the number of groves

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_n_groves

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  function phs_forest_get_n_groves (forest) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
    n = size (forest%grove)
  end function phs_forest_get_n_groves
```

Get the index bounds for a specific grove.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_grove_bounds

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_get_grove_bounds (forest, g, i0, i1, n)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
    integer, intent(in) :: g
    integer, intent(out) :: i0, i1, n
    n = size (forest%grove(g)%tree)
    i0 = forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset + 1
    i1 = forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset + n
  end subroutine phs_forest_get_grove_bounds
```

Get the number of equivalences

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_n_equivalences

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  function phs_forest_get_n_equivalences (forest) result (n)
    integer :: n
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
    n = forest%n_equivalences
  end function phs_forest_get_n_equivalences
```

Return true if a particular channel has a global (s-channel) mapping; also return the resonance mass and width for this mapping.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_get_s_mapping
  public :: phs_forest_get_on_shell
```

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+=
subroutine phs_forest_get_s_mapping (forest, channel, flag, mass, width)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
  integer, intent(in) :: channel
  logical, intent(out) :: flag
  real(default), intent(out) :: mass, width
  flag = mapping_is_s_channel (forest%s_mapping(channel))
  if (flag) then
    mass = mapping_get_mass (forest%s_mapping(channel))
    width = mapping_get_width (forest%s_mapping(channel))
  else
    mass = 0
    width = 0
  end if
end subroutine phs_forest_get_s_mapping

subroutine phs_forest_get_on_shell (forest, channel, flag, mass)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
  integer, intent(in) :: channel
  logical, intent(out) :: flag
  real(default), intent(out) :: mass
  flag = mapping_is_on_shell (forest%s_mapping(channel))
  if (flag) then
    mass = mapping_get_mass (forest%s_mapping(channel))
  else
    mass = 0
  end if
end subroutine phs_forest_get_on_shell

```

### 11.6.7 Read the phase space setup from file

The phase space setup is stored in a file. The file may be generated by the `cascades` module below, or by other means. This file has to be read and parsed to create the PHS forest as the internal phase-space representation.

Create lexer and syntax:

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+=
subroutine define_phs_forest_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ phase_space_list = process_phase_space*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ process_phase_space = " &
    // "process_def process_header phase_space")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ process_def = process process_list")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY process")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS process_list = process_tag*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE process_tag")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ process_header = " &
    // "md5sum_process = md5sum " &
    // "md5sum_model_par = md5sum " &
    // "md5sum_phs_config = md5sum " &
    // "sqrts = real " &
    // "m_threshold_s = real " &
    // "m_threshold_t = real " &

```



```

// "off_shell = integer " &
// "t_channel = integer " &
// "keep_nonresonant = logical")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '='")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY md5sum_process")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY md5sum_model_par")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY md5sum_phs_config")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sqrts")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY m_threshold_s")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY m_threshold_t")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY off_shell")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY t_channel")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY keep_nonresonant")
call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO md5sum = '""' ... '""'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "REA real")
call ifile_append (ifile, "INT integer")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE logical")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ phase_space = grove_def+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ grove_def = grove tree_def+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY grove")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ tree_def = tree bincodes mapping*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY tree")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ bincodes = bincodes*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "INT bincodes")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ mapping = map bincodes channel pdg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY map")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT channel = &
    &s_channel | t_channel | u_channel | &
    &collinear | infrared | radiation | on_shell")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY s_channel")
! call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY t_channel")    !!! Key already exists
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY u_channel")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY collinear")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY infrared")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY radiation")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY on_shell")
call ifile_append (ifile, "INT pdg")
end subroutine define_phs_forest_syntax

```

The model-file syntax and lexer are fixed, therefore stored as module variables:

```

<PHS forests: variables>≡
type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_phs_forest

```

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
public :: syntax_phs_forest_init

```

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
subroutine syntax_phs_forest_init ()
type(ifile_t) :: ifile
call define_phs_forest_syntax (ifile)
call syntax_init (syntax_phs_forest, ifile)
call ifile_final (ifile)
end subroutine syntax_phs_forest_init

```

```

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine lexer_init_phs_forest (lexer)
    type(lexer_t), intent(out) :: lexer
    call lexer_init (lexer, &
      comment_chars = "#!", &
      quote_chars = "'", &
      quote_match = '"', &
      single_chars = "", &
      special_class = ["="] , &
      keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_phs_forest))
  end subroutine lexer_init_phs_forest

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: syntax_phs_forest_final

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine syntax_phs_forest_final ()
    call syntax_final (syntax_phs_forest)
  end subroutine syntax_phs_forest_final

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: syntax_phs_forest_write

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine syntax_phs_forest_write (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    call syntax_write (syntax_phs_forest, unit)
  end subroutine syntax_phs_forest_write

```

The concrete parser and interpreter. Generate an input stream for the external `unit`, read the parse tree (with given `syntax` and `lexer`) from this stream, and transfer the contents of the parse tree to the PHS forest.

We look for the matching `process` tag, count groves and trees for initializing the forest, and fill the trees.

If the optional parameters are set, compare the parameters stored in the file to those. Set `match` true if everything agrees.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_read

<PHS forests: interfaces>+≡
  interface phs_forest_read
    module procedure phs_forest_read_file
    module procedure phs_forest_read_unit
    module procedure phs_forest_read_parse_tree
  end interface

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_read_file &
    (forest, filename, process_id, n_in, n_out, model, found, &
      md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, &
      md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(out) :: forest
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename

```

```

type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
logical, intent(out) :: found
character(32), intent(in), optional :: &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in), optional :: phs_par
logical, intent(out), optional :: match
type(parse_tree_t), target :: parse_tree
type(stream_t), target :: stream
type(lexer_t) :: lexer
call lexer_init_phs_forest (lexer)
call stream_init (stream, char (filename))
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_phs_forest, lexer)
call phs_forest_read (forest, parse_tree, &
    process_id, n_in, n_out, model, found, &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
call stream_final (stream)
call lexer_final (lexer)
call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
end subroutine phs_forest_read_file

subroutine phs_forest_read_unit &
    (forest, unit, process_id, n_in, n_out, model, found, &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
type(phs_forest_t), intent(out) :: forest
integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
logical, intent(out) :: found
character(32), intent(in), optional :: &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in), optional :: phs_par
logical, intent(out), optional :: match
type(parse_tree_t), target :: parse_tree
type(stream_t), target :: stream
type(lexer_t) :: lexer
call lexer_init_phs_forest (lexer)
call stream_init (stream, unit)
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_phs_forest, lexer)
call phs_forest_read (forest, parse_tree, &
    process_id, n_in, n_out, model, found, &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
call stream_final (stream)
call lexer_final (lexer)
call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
end subroutine phs_forest_read_unit

subroutine phs_forest_read_parse_tree &
    (forest, parse_tree, process_id, n_in, n_out, model, found, &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)

```

```

type(phs_forest_t), intent(out) :: forest
type(parse_tree_t), intent(in), target :: parse_tree
type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
logical, intent(out) :: found
character(32), intent(in), optional :: &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in), optional :: phs_par
logical, intent(out), optional :: match
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node_header, node_phs, node_grove
integer :: n_grove, g
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_tree
integer :: t
! call parse_tree_write (parse_tree)      !!! Debugging
node_header => parse_tree_get_process_ptr (parse_tree, process_id)
found = associated (node_header); if (.not. found) return
if (present (match)) then
    call phs_forest_check_input (node_header, &
        md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
    if (.not. match) return
end if
node_phs => parse_node_get_next_ptr (node_header)
n_grove = parse_node_get_n_sub (node_phs)
allocate (n_tree (n_grove))
do g = 1, n_grove
    node_grove => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_phs, g)
    n_tree(g) = parse_node_get_n_sub (node_grove) - 1
end do
call phs_forest_init (forest, n_tree, n_in, n_out)
do g = 1, n_grove
    node_grove => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_phs, g)
    do t = 1, n_tree(g)
        call phs_tree_set (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
            parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_grove, t+1), model)
    end do
end do
end subroutine phs_forest_read_parse_tree

```

Check the input for consistency. If any MD5 sum or phase-space parameter disagrees, the phase-space file cannot be used. The MD5 sum checks are skipped if the stored MD5 sum is empty.

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_check_input (pn_header, &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config, phs_par, match)
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_header
character(32), intent(in) :: &
    md5sum_process, md5sum_model_par, md5sum_phs_config
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in), optional :: phs_par
logical, intent(out) :: match
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_md5sum, pn_rval, pn_ival, pn_lval
character(32) :: md5sum
type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par_old

```

```

character(1) :: lstr
pn_md5sum => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_header, 3)
md5sum = parse_node_get_string (pn_md5sum)
if (md5sum /= "" .and. md5sum /= md5sum_process) then
    call msg_message ("Phase space: discarding old configuration &
        &(process changed)")
    match = .false.; return
end if
pn_md5sum => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_md5sum, 3)
md5sum = parse_node_get_string (pn_md5sum)
if (md5sum /= "" .and. md5sum /= md5sum_model_par) then
    call msg_message ("Phase space: discarding old configuration &
        &(model parameters changed)")
    match = .false.; return
end if
pn_md5sum => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_md5sum, 3)
md5sum = parse_node_get_string (pn_md5sum)
if (md5sum /= "" .and. md5sum /= md5sum_phs_config) then
    call msg_message ("Phase space: discarding old configuration &
        &(configuration parameters changed)")
    match = .false.; return
end if
if (present (phs_par)) then
    pn_rval => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_md5sum, 3)
    phs_par_old%sqrts = parse_node_get_real (pn_rval)
    pn_rval => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_rval, 3)
    phs_par_old%m_threshold_s = parse_node_get_real (pn_rval)
    pn_rval => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_rval, 3)
    phs_par_old%m_threshold_t = parse_node_get_real (pn_rval)
    pn_ival => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_rval, 3)
    phs_par_old%off_shell = parse_node_get_integer (pn_ival)
    pn_ival => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_ival, 3)
    phs_par_old%t_channel = parse_node_get_integer (pn_ival)
    pn_lval => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_ival, 3)
    lstr = parse_node_get_string (pn_lval)
    read (lstr, "(L1)") phs_par_old%keep_nonresonant
    if (phs_par_old /= phs_par) then
        call msg_message &
            ("Phase space: discarding old configuration &
                &(configuration parameters changed)")
        match = .false.; return
    end if
end if
match = .true.
end subroutine phs_forest_check_input

```

Initialize a specific tree in the forest, using the contents of the 'tree' node. First, count the bincodes, allocate an array and read them in, and make the tree. Each *t*-channel tree is flipped to *s*-channel. Then, find mappings and initialize them.

(*PHS forests: procedures*) $\vdash$  $\equiv$

```

subroutine phs_tree_set (tree, node, model)
    type(phs_tree_t), intent(inout) :: tree
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: node

```

```

type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: node_bincodes, node_mapping
integer :: n_bincodes, offset
integer(TC), dimension(:), allocatable :: bincode
integer :: b, n_mappings, m
integer(TC) :: k
type(string_t) :: type
integer :: pdg
node_bincodes => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, 2)
if (associated (node_bincodes)) then
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (node_bincodes)))
  case ("bincodes")
    n_bincodes = parse_node_get_n_sub (node_bincodes)
    offset = 2
  case default
    n_bincodes = 0
    offset = 1
  end select
else
  n_bincodes = 0
  offset = 2
end if
allocate (bincode (n_bincodes))
do b = 1, n_bincodes
  bincode(b) = parse_node_get_integer &
    (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_bincodes, b))
end do
call phs_tree_from_array (tree, bincode)
call phs_tree_flip_t_to_s_channel (tree)
call phs_tree_canonicalize (tree)
n_mappings = parse_node_get_n_sub (node) - offset
do m = 1, n_mappings
  node_mapping => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node, m + offset)
  k = parse_node_get_integer &
    (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_mapping, 2))
  type = parse_node_get_key &
    (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_mapping, 3))
  pdg = parse_node_get_integer &
    (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (node_mapping, 4))
  call phs_tree_init_mapping (tree, k, type, pdg, model)
end do
end subroutine phs_tree_set

```

### 11.6.8 Preparation

The trees that we read from file do not carry flavor information. This is set separately:

The flavor list must be unique for a unique set of masses; if a given particle can have different flavor, the mass must be degenerate, so we can choose one of the possible flavor combinations.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
public :: phs_forest_set_flavors

```

```

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
subroutine phs_forest_set_flavors (forest, flv)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  allocate (forest%flv (size (flv)))
  forest%flv = flv
end subroutine phs_forest_set_flavors

```

Once the parameter set is fixed, the masses and the widths of the particles are known and the `mass_sum` arrays as well as the mapping parameters can be computed. Note that order is important: we first compute the mass sums, then the ordinary mappings. The resonances obtained here determine the effective masses, which in turn are used to implement step mappings for resonance decay products that are not mapped otherwise.

```

(PHS forests: public)+≡
public :: phs_forest_set_parameters

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
subroutine phs_forest_set_parameters &
  (forest, mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: mapping_defaults
  logical, intent(in) :: variable_limits
  integer :: g, t
  do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
    do t = 1, size (forest%grove(g)%tree)
      call phs_tree_set_mass_sum &
        (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), forest%flv(forest%n_in+1:))
      call phs_tree_set_mapping_parameters (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
        mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
      call phs_tree_set_effective_masses (forest%grove(g)%tree(t))
      if (mapping_defaults%step_mapping) then
        call phs_tree_set_step_mappings (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
          mapping_defaults%step_mapping_exp, variable_limits)
      end if
    end do
  end do
end subroutine phs_forest_set_parameters

```

Generate the particle combination table. Scan all trees and merge their individual combination tables. At the end, valid entries are non-zero, and they indicate the indices of a pair of particles to be combined to a new particle. If a particle is accessible by more than one tree (this is usual), only keep the first possibility.

```

(PHS forests: public)+≡
public :: phs_forest_setup_prt_combinations

(PHS forests: procedures)+≡
subroutine phs_forest_setup_prt_combinations (forest)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  integer :: g, t
  integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: tree_prt_combination
  forest%prt_combination = 0
  allocate (tree_prt_combination (2, size (forest%prt_combination, 2)))

```

```

do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
  do t = 1, size (forest%grove(g)%tree)
    call phs_tree_setup_prt_combinations &
      (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), tree_prt_combination)
    where (tree_prt_combination /= 0 .and. forest%prt_combination == 0)
      forest%prt_combination = tree_prt_combination
    end where
  end do
end do
end subroutine phs_forest_setup_prt_combinations

```

### 11.6.9 Accessing the particle arrays

Set the incoming particles from the contents of an interaction.

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_forest_set_prt_in
```

*(PHS forests: interfaces)*+≡

```
interface phs_forest_set_prt_in
  module procedure phs_forest_set_prt_in_int, phs_forest_set_prt_in_mom
end interface phs_forest_set_prt_in

```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_in_int (forest, int, lt_cm_to_lab)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
  if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) then
    call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_in, &
      inverse (lt_cm_to_lab) * &
      interaction_get_momenta (int, outgoing=.false.))
  else
    call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_in, &
      interaction_get_momenta (int, outgoing=.false.))
  end if
  call phs_prt_set_msq (forest%prt_in, &
    flavor_get_mass (forest%flv(:forest%n_in)) ** 2)
  call phs_prt_set_defined (forest%prt_in)
end subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_in_int

```

```

subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_in_mom (forest, mom, lt_cm_to_lab)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  type(vector4_t), dimension(size (forest%prt_in)), intent(in) :: mom
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
  if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) then
    call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_in, &
      inverse (lt_cm_to_lab) * mom)
  else
    call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_in, mom)
  end if
  call phs_prt_set_msq (forest%prt_in, &
    flavor_get_mass (forest%flv(:forest%n_in)) ** 2)
  call phs_prt_set_defined (forest%prt_in)

```



```
end subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_in_mom
```

Set the outgoing particles from the contents of an interaction.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_set_prt_out

<PHS forests: interfaces>+≡
  interface phs_forest_set_prt_out
    module procedure phs_forest_set_prt_out_int, phs_forest_set_prt_out_mom
  end interface phs_forest_set_prt_out

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_out_int (forest, int, lt_cm_to_lab)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
    if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) then
      call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_out, &
        inverse (lt_cm_to_lab) * &
        interaction_get_momenta (int, outgoing=.true.))
    else
      call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_out, &
        interaction_get_momenta (int, outgoing=.true.))
    end if
    call phs_prt_set_msq (forest%prt_out, &
      flavor_get_mass (forest%flv(forest%n_in+1:)) ** 2)
    call phs_prt_set_defined (forest%prt_out)
  end subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_out_int

  subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_out_mom (forest, mom, lt_cm_to_lab)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
    type(vector4_t), dimension(size (forest%prt_out)), intent(in) :: mom
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
    if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) then
      call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_out, &
        inverse (lt_cm_to_lab) * mom)
    else
      call phs_prt_set_momentum (forest%prt_out, mom)
    end if
    call phs_prt_set_msq (forest%prt_out, &
      flavor_get_mass (forest%flv(forest%n_in+1:)) ** 2)
    call phs_prt_set_defined (forest%prt_out)
  end subroutine phs_forest_set_prt_out_mom
```

Combine particles as described by the particle combination table. Particle momentum sums will be calculated only if the resulting particle is contained in at least one of the trees in the current forest. The others are kept undefined.

```
<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_combine_particles

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_combine_particles (forest)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
    integer :: k
```

```

integer, dimension(2) :: kk
do k = 1, size (forest%prt_combination, 2)
  kk = forest%prt_combination(:,k)
  if (kk(1) /= 0) then
    call phs_prt_combine (forest%prt(k), &
      forest%prt(kk(1)), forest%prt(kk(2)))
  end if
end do
end subroutine phs_forest_combine_particles

```

Extract the outgoing particles and insert into an interaction.

*(PHS forests: public)+≡*

```
public :: phs_forest_get_prt_out
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine phs_forest_get_prt_out (forest, int, lt_cm_to_lab)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
  type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
  if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) then
    call interaction_set_momenta (int, &
      lt_cm_to_lab * &
      phs_prt_get_momentum (forest%prt_out), outgoing=.true.)
  else
    call interaction_set_momenta (int, &
      phs_prt_get_momentum (forest%prt_out), outgoing=.true.)
  end if
end subroutine phs_forest_get_prt_out

```

Extract the outgoing particle momenta

*(PHS forests: public)+≡*

```
public :: phs_forest_get_momenta_out
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)+≡*

```

function phs_forest_get_momenta_out (forest, lt_cm_to_lab) result (p)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
  type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in), optional :: lt_cm_to_lab
  type(vector4_t), dimension(size (forest%prt_out)) :: p
  p = phs_prt_get_momentum (forest%prt_out)
  if (present (lt_cm_to_lab)) p = p * lt_cm_to_lab
end function phs_forest_get_momenta_out

```

## 11.6.10 Find equivalences among phase-space trees

Scan phase space for equivalences. We generate the complete set of unique permutations for the given list of outgoing particles, and use this for scanning equivalences within each grove. We scan all pairs of trees, using all permutations. This implies that trivial equivalences are included, and equivalences between different trees are recorded twice. This is intentional.

*(PHS forests: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine phs_grove_set_equivalences (grove, perm_array)
```

```

type(phs_grove_t), intent(inout) :: grove
type(permutation_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: perm_array
type(equivalence_t), pointer :: eq
integer :: t1, t2, i
do t1 = 1, size (grove%tree)
  do t2 = 1, size (grove%tree)
    SCAN_PERM: do i = 1, size (perm_array)
      if (phs_tree_equivalent &
        (grove%tree(t1), grove%tree(t2), perm_array(i))) then
        call equivalence_list_add &
          (grove%equivalence_list, t1, t2, perm_array(i))
        eq => grove%equivalence_list%last
        call phs_tree_find_msq_permutation &
          (grove%tree(t1), grove%tree(t2), eq%perm, &
            eq%msq_perm)
        call phs_tree_find_angle_permutation &
          (grove%tree(t1), grove%tree(t2), eq%perm, &
            eq%angle_perm, eq%angle_sig)
      end if
    end do SCAN_PERM
  end do
end do
end subroutine phs_grove_set_equivalences

```

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_forest_set_equivalences
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_set_equivalences (forest)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
  type(permutation_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: perm_array
  integer :: i
  call permutation_array_make &
    (perm_array, flavor_get_pdg (forest%flv(forest%n_in+1:)))
  do i = 1, size (forest%grove)
    call phs_grove_set_equivalences (forest%grove(i), perm_array)
  end do
  forest%n_equivalences = sum (forest%grove%equivalence_list%length)
end subroutine phs_forest_set_equivalences

```

### 11.6.11 Interface for channel equivalences

Here, we store the equivalence list in the appropriate containers that the `phs_base` module provides. There is one separate list for each channel.

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_forest_get_equivalences
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_get_equivalences (forest, channel, azimuthal_dependence)
  type(phs_forest_t), intent(in) :: forest
  type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: channel
  logical, intent(in) :: azimuthal_dependence
  integer :: n_masses, n_angles

```

```

integer :: mode_azimuthal_angle
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_eq
type(equivalence_t), pointer :: eq
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: perm, mode
integer :: g, c, j, left, right
n_masses = forest%n_masses
n_angles = forest%n_angles
allocate (n_eq (forest%n_trees), source = 0)
allocate (perm (forest%n_dimensions))
allocate (mode (forest%n_dimensions), source = EQ_IDENTITY)
do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
  eq => forest%grove(g)%equivalence_list%first
  do while (associated (eq))
    left = eq%left + forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
    n_eq(left) = n_eq(left) + 1
    eq => eq%next
  end do
end do
do c = 1, size (channel)
  allocate (channel(c)%eq (n_eq(c)))
  do j = 1, n_eq(c)
    call channel(c)%eq(j)%init (forest%n_dimensions)
  end do
end do
n_eq = 0
if (azimuthal_dependence) then
  mode_azimuthal_angle = EQ_IDENTITY
else
  mode_azimuthal_angle = EQ_INVARIANT
end if
do g = 1, size (forest%grove)
  eq => forest%grove(g)%equivalence_list%first
  do while (associated (eq))
    left = eq%left + forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
    right = eq%right + forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
    do j = 1, n_masses
      perm(j) = permute (j, eq%msq_perm)
      mode(j) = EQ_IDENTITY
    end do
    do j = 1, n_angles
      perm(n_masses+j) = n_masses + permute (j, eq%angle_perm)
      if (j == 1) then
        mode(n_masses+j) = mode_azimuthal_angle ! first az. angle
      else if (mod(j,2) == 1) then
        mode(n_masses+j) = EQ_SYMMETRIC ! other az. angles
      else if (eq%angle_sig(j)) then
        mode(n_masses+j) = EQ_IDENTITY ! polar angle +
      else
        mode(n_masses+j) = EQ_INVERT ! polar angle -
      end if
    end do
    n_eq(left) = n_eq(left) + 1
    associate (eq_cur => channel(left)%eq(n_eq(left)))
      eq_cur%c = right
    end associate
  end do
end do

```

```

        eq_cur%perm = perm
        eq_cur%mode = mode
    end associate
    eq => eq%next
end do
end do
end subroutine phs_forest_get_equivalences

```

### 11.6.12 Phase-space evaluation

Given one row of the **x** parameter array and the corresponding channel index, compute first all relevant momenta and then recover the remainder of the **x** array, the Jacobians **phs\_factor**, and the phase-space volume.

The output argument **ok** indicates whether this was successful.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
    public :: phs_forest_evaluate_selected_channel

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_forest_evaluate_selected_channel &
        (forest, channel, active, sqrts, x, phs_factor, volume, ok)
        type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
        integer, intent(in) :: channel
        logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: active
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(inout) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: phs_factor
        real(default), intent(out) :: volume
        logical, intent(out) :: ok
        integer :: g, t
        integer(TC) :: k, k_root, k_in

        g = forest%grove_lookup (channel)
        t = channel - forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
        call phs_prt_set_undefined (forest%prt)
        call phs_prt_set_undefined (forest%prt_out)
        k_in = forest%n_tot

        do k = 1, forest%n_in
            forest%prt(ibset(0, k_in-k)) = forest%prt_in(k)
        end do

        do k = 1, forest%n_out
            call phs_prt_set_msq (forest%prt(ibset(0, k-1)), &
                flavor_get_mass (forest%flv(forest%n_in+k)) ** 2)
        end do

        k_root = 2**forest%n_out - 1
        select case (forest%n_in)
        case (1)
            forest%prt(k_root) = forest%prt_in(1)
        case (2)
            call phs_prt_combine &

```

```

        (forest%prt(k_root), forest%prt_in(1), forest%prt_in(2))
    end select
    call phs_tree_compute_momenta_from_x (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
        forest%prt, phs_factor(channel), volume, sqrts, x(:,channel), ok)
    if (ok) then
        do k = 1, forest%n_out
            forest%prt_out(k) = forest%prt(ibset(0,k-1))
        end do
    end if
end subroutine phs_forest_evaluate_selected_channel

```

The remainder: recover  $x$  values for all channels except for the current channel.

NOTE: OpenMP not used for the first loop. `combine_particles` is not a channel-local operation.

*(PHS forests: public)*+≡

```
public :: phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels
```

*(PHS forests: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels &
    (forest, channel, active, sqrts, x, phs_factor, combine)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
    integer, intent(in) :: channel
    logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: active
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(inout) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: phs_factor
    logical, intent(in) :: combine
    integer :: g, t, ch, n_channel

    n_channel = forest%n_trees
    if (combine) then
        do ch = 1, n_channel
            if (ch == channel) cycle
            if (active(ch)) then
                g = forest%grove_lookup(ch)
                t = ch - forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
                call phs_tree_combine_particles &
                    (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), forest%prt)
            end if
        end do
    end if

    !OMP PARALLEL PRIVATE (g,t,ch) SHARED(active,forest,sqrts,x,channel)
    !OMP DO SCHEDULE(STATIC)
    do ch = 1, n_channel
        if (ch == channel) cycle
        if (active(ch)) then
            g = forest%grove_lookup(ch)
            t = ch - forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
            call phs_tree_compute_x_from_momenta &
                (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
                    forest%prt, phs_factor(ch), sqrts, x(:,ch))
        end if
    end do

```

```

!OMP END DO
!OMP END PARALLEL

end subroutine phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels

```

The complement: recover one row of the `x` array and the associated Jacobian entry, corresponding to `channel`, from incoming and outgoing momenta. Also compute the phase-space volume.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_recover_channel

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_recover_channel &
    (forest, channel, sqrts, x, phs_factor, volume)
    type(phs_forest_t), intent(inout) :: forest
    integer, intent(in) :: channel
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(inout) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: phs_factor
    real(default), intent(out) :: volume
    integer :: g, t
    integer(TC) :: k, k_in
    g = forest%grove_lookup (channel)
    t = channel - forest%grove(g)%tree_count_offset
    call phs_prt_set_undefined (forest%prt)
    k_in = forest%n_tot
    forall (k = 1:forest%n_in)
      forest%prt(ibset(0,k_in-k)) = forest%prt_in(k)
    end forall
    forall (k = 1:forest%n_out)
      forest%prt(ibset(0,k-1)) = forest%prt_out(k)
    end forall
    call phs_forest_combine_particles (forest)
    call phs_tree_compute_volume &
      (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), sqrts, volume)
    call phs_tree_compute_x_from_momenta &
      (forest%grove(g)%tree(t), &
       forest%prt, phs_factor(channel), sqrts, x(:,channel))
  end subroutine phs_forest_recover_channel

```

### 11.6.13 Unit tests

Write a possible phase-space file for a  $2 \rightarrow 3$  process and make the corresponding forest, print the forest. Choose some in-particle momenta and a random-number array and evaluate out-particles and phase-space factors.

```

<PHS forests: public>+≡
  public :: phs_forest_test

<PHS forests: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_forest_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results

```

```

    <PHS forests: execute tests>
end subroutine phs_forest_test

```

```

<PHS forests: execute tests>≡
    call test (phs_forest_1, "phs_forest_1", &
        "check phs forest setup", &
        u, results)

```

```

<PHS forests: tests>≡
subroutine phs_forest_1 (u)
    use os_interface
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(phs_forest_t) :: forest
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(string_t) :: process_id
    type(flavor_t), dimension(5) :: flv
    type(string_t) :: filename
    type(interaction_t) :: int
    integer, parameter :: unit_fix = 20
    type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defaults
    logical :: found_process, ok
    integer :: n_channel, ch, i
    logical, dimension(4) :: active = .true.
    real(default) :: sqrts = 1000
    real(default), dimension(5,4) :: x
    real(default), dimension(4) :: factor
    real(default) :: volume

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: PHS forest"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test PHS forest routines"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading model file"

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call model_list%read_model &
        (var_str("SM"), var_str("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create phase-space file 'phs_forest_test.phs'"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call flavor_init (flv, [11, -11, 11, -11, 22], model)
    open (file="phs_forest_test.phs", unit=unit_fix, action="write")
    write (unit_fix, *) "process foo"
    write (unit_fix, *) 'md5sum_process      = "6ABA33BC2927925D0F073B1C1170780A"'
    write (unit_fix, *) 'md5sum_model_par   = "1A0B151EE6E2DEB92D880320355A3EAB"'
    write (unit_fix, *) 'md5sum_phs_config = "B6A8877058809A8BDD54753CDAB83ACE"'
    write (unit_fix, *) "sqrts              = 100.00000000000000"

```



```

write (unit_fix, *) "m_threshold_s = 50.000000000000000"
write (unit_fix, *) "m_threshold_t = 100.000000000000000"
write (unit_fix, *) "off_shell = 2"
write (unit_fix, *) "t_channel = 6"
write (unit_fix, *) "keep_nonresonant = F"
write (unit_fix, *) ""
write (unit_fix, *) " grove"
write (unit_fix, *) " tree 3 7"
write (unit_fix, *) " map 3 s_channel 23"
write (unit_fix, *) " tree 5 7"
write (unit_fix, *) " tree 6 7"
write (unit_fix, *) " grove"
write (unit_fix, *) " tree 9 11"
write (unit_fix, *) " map 9 t_channel 22"
close (unit_fix)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read phase-space file 'phs_forest_test.phs'"

call syntax_phs_forest_init ()
process_id = "foo"
filename = "phs_forest_test.phs"
call phs_forest_read &
      (forest, filename, process_id, 2, 3, model, found_process)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters, flavors, equiv, momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_forest_set_flavors (forest, flv)
call phs_forest_set_parameters (forest, mapping_defaults, .false.)
call phs_forest_setup_prt_combinations (forest)
call phs_forest_set_equivalences (forest)
call interaction_init (int, 2, 0, 3)
call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
      vector4_moving (500._default, 500._default, 3), 1)
call interaction_set_momentum (int, &
      vector4_moving (500._default, -500._default, 3), 2)
call phs_forest_set_prt_in (forest, int)
n_channel = 2
x = 0
x(:,n_channel) = [0.3, 0.4, 0.1, 0.9, 0.6]
write (u, "(A)")  " Input values:"
write (u, "(3x,5(1x," // FMT_12 // "))")  x(:,n_channel)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluating phase space"

call phs_forest_evaluate_selected_channel (forest, &
      n_channel, active, sqrts, x, factor, volume, ok)
call phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels (forest, &
      n_channel, active, sqrts, x, factor, combine=.true.)
call phs_forest_get_prt_out (forest, int)
write (u, "(A)")  " Output values:"

```

```

do ch = 1, 4
  write (u, "(3x,5(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") x(:,ch)
end do
call interaction_write (int, u)
write (u, "(A)" ) "   Factors:"
write (u, "(3x,5(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") factor
write (u, "(A)" ) "   Volume:"
write (u, "(3x,5(1x," // FMT_12 // "))") volume
call phs_forest_write (forest, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute equivalences"

n_channel = 4
allocate (channel (n_channel))
call phs_forest_get_equivalences (forest, &
  channel, .true.)
do i = 1, n_channel
  write (u, "(1x,I0,':')", advance = "no") ch
  call channel(i)%write (u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_list%final ()
call phs_forest_final (forest)
call syntax_phs_forest_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_forest_1"

end subroutine phs_forest_1

```

## 11.7 Finding phase space parameterizations

If the phase space configuration is not found in the appropriate file, we should generate one.

The idea is to construct all Feynman diagrams subject to certain constraints which eliminate everything that is probably irrelevant for the integration. These Feynman diagrams (cascades) are grouped in groves by finding equivalence classes related by symmetry and ordered with respect to their importance (resonances). Finally, the result (or part of it) is written to file and used for the integration.

This module may eventually disappear and be replaced by CAML code. In particular, we need here a set of Feynman rules (vertices with particle codes, but not the factors). Thus, the module works for the Standard Model only.

Note that this module is stand-alone, it communicates to the main program only via the generated ASCII phase-space configuration file.

`<cascades.f90>`≡

```

<File header>

module cascades

  <Use kinds>
    use kinds, only: TC, i8, i32 !NODEP!
  <Use strings>
    use limits, only: CASCADE_SET_FILL_RATIO, MAX_WARN_RESONANCE !NODEP!
    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_19 !NODEP!
  <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use hashes
    use sorting
    use pdg_arrays, only: UNDEFINED
    use models
    use flavors
    use phs_forests

  <Standard module head>

  <Cascades: public>

  <Cascades: parameters>

  <Cascades: types>

  <Cascades: interfaces>

contains

  <Cascades: procedures>

  <Cascades: tests>

end module cascades

```

### 11.7.1 The mapping modes

The valid mapping modes, to be used below. We will make use of the convention that mappings of internal particles have a positive value. Only for positive values, the flavor code is propagated when combining cascades.

```

<Mapping modes>≡
  integer, parameter :: &
    & EXTERNAL_PRT = -1, &
    & NO_MAPPING = 0, S_CHANNEL = 1, T_CHANNEL = 2, U_CHANNEL = 3, &
    & RADIATION = 4, COLLINEAR = 5, INFRARED = 6, &
    & STEP_MAPPING_E = 11, STEP_MAPPING_H = 12, &
    & ON_SHELL = 99

  <Cascades: parameters>≡
    <Mapping modes>

```

### 11.7.2 The cascade type

A cascade is essentially the same as a decay tree (both definitions may be merged in a later version). It contains a linked tree of nodes, each of which representing an internal particle. In contrast to decay trees, each node has a definite particle code. These nodes need not be modified, therefore we can use pointers and do not have to copy them. Thus, physically each cascades has only a single node, the mother particle. However, to be able to compare trees quickly, we store in addition an array of binary codes which is always sorted in ascending order. This is accompanied by a corresponding list of particle codes. The index is the location of the corresponding cascade in the cascade set, this may be used to access the daughters directly.

The real mass is the particle mass belonging to the particle code. The minimal mass is the sum of the real masses of all its daughters; this is the kinematical cutoff. The effective mass may be zero if the particle mass is below a certain threshold; it may be the real mass if the particle is resonant; or it may be some other value.

The logical `t_channel` is set if this a  $t$ -channel line, while `initial` is true only for an initial particle. Note that both initial particles are also `t_channel` by definition, and that they are distinguished by the direction of the tree: One of them decays and is the root of the tree, while the other one is one of the leaves.

The cascade is a list of nodes (particles) which are linked via the `daughter` entries. The node is the mother particle of the decay cascade. Much of the information in the nodes is repeated in arrays, to be accessible more easily. The arrays will be kept sorted by binary codes.

The counter `n_off_shell` is increased for each internal line that is neither resonant nor log-enhanced. It is set to zero if the current line is resonant, since this implies on-shell particle production and subsequent decay.

The counter `n_t_channel` is non-negative once an initial particle is included in the tree: then, it counts the number of  $t$ -channel lines.

The `multiplicity` is the number of branchings to follow until all daughters are on-shell. A resonant or non-decaying particle has multiplicity one. Merging nodes, the multiplicities add unless the mother is a resonance. An initial or final node has multiplicity zero.

The arrays correspond to the subnode tree `tree` of the current cascade. PDG codes are stored only for those positions which are resonant, with the exception of the last entry, i.e., the current node. Other positions, in particular external legs, are assigned undefined PDG code.

A cascade is uniquely identified by its tree, the tree of PDG codes, and the tree of mappings. The tree of resonances is kept only to mask the PDG tree as described above.

*(Cascades: types)*≡

```
type :: cascade_t
  private
  ! counters
  integer :: index = 0
  integer :: grove = 0
  ! status
  logical :: active = .false.
  logical :: complete = .false.
```

```

logical :: incoming = .false.
! this node
integer(TC) :: bincode = 0
type(flavor_t) :: flv
integer :: pdg = UNDEFINED
logical :: is_vector = .false.
real(default) :: m_min = 0
real(default) :: m_rea = 0
real(default) :: m_eff = 0
integer :: mapping = NO_MAPPING
logical :: on_shell = .false.
logical :: resonant = .false.
logical :: log_enhanced = .false.
logical :: t_channel = .false.
! global tree properties
integer :: multiplicity = 0
integer :: internal = 0
integer :: n_off_shell = 0
integer :: n_resonances = 0
integer :: n_log_enhanced = 0
integer :: n_t_channel = 0
integer :: res_hash = 0
! the sub-node tree
integer :: depth = 0
integer(TC), dimension(:), allocatable :: tree
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: tree_pdg
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: tree_mapping
logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: tree_resonant
! branch connections
logical :: has_children = .false.
type(cascade_t), pointer :: daughter1 => null ()
type(cascade_t), pointer :: daughter2 => null ()
type(cascade_t), pointer :: mother => null ()
! next in list
type(cascade_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type cascade_t

```

```

(Cascades: procedures)≡
subroutine cascade_init (cascade, depth)
type(cascade_t), intent(out) :: cascade
integer, intent(in) :: depth
integer, save :: index = 0
index = cascade_index ()
cascade%index = index
cascade%depth = depth
cascade%active = .true.
allocate (cascade%tree (depth))
allocate (cascade%tree_pdg (depth))
allocate (cascade%tree_mapping (depth))
allocate (cascade%tree_resonant (depth))
end subroutine cascade_init

```

Keep and increment a global index

```

(Cascades: procedures)+=

```

```

function cascade_index (seed) result (index)
  integer :: index
  integer, intent(in), optional :: seed
  integer, save :: i = 0
  if (present (seed)) i = seed
  i = i + 1
  index = i
end function cascade_index

```

We need three versions of writing cascades. This goes to the phase-space file:

(*Cascades: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine cascade_write_file_format (cascade, model, unit)
  type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  integer :: u, i
1  format(3x,A,1x,40(1x,I4))
2  format(3x,A,1x,I3,1x,A,1x,I7,1x,'!',1x,A)
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_reduced (cascade%tree, u)
  write (u, "(A)")
  do i = 1, cascade%depth
    call flavor_init (flv, cascade%tree_pdg(i), model)
    select case (cascade%tree_mapping(i))
    case (NO_MAPPING, EXTERNAL_PRT)
    case (S_CHANNEL)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 's_channel', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (T_CHANNEL)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 't_channel', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (U_CHANNEL)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 'u_channel', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (RADIATION)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 'radiation', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (COLLINEAR)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 'collinear', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (INFRARED)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 'infrared ', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))
    case (ON_SHELL)
      write(u,2) 'map', &
        cascade%tree(i), 'on_shell ', abs (cascade%tree_pdg(i)), &
        char (flavor_get_name (flv))

```

```

        case default
            call msg_bug (" Impossible mapping mode encountered")
        end select
    end do
contains
    subroutine write_reduced (array, unit)
        integer(TC), dimension(:), intent(in) :: array
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        integer :: i
        write (u, "(3x,A,1x)", advance="no") "tree"
        do i = 1, size (array)
            if (decay_level (array(i)) > 1) then
                write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") array(i)
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine write_reduced

    elemental function decay_level (k) result (l)
        integer(TC), intent(in) :: k
        integer :: l
        integer :: i
        l = 0
        do i = 0, bit_size(k) - 1
            if (btest(k,i)) l = l + 1
        end do
    end function decay_level

    subroutine start_comment (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        write(u, '(1x,A)', advance='no') '!'
    end subroutine start_comment
end subroutine cascade_write_file_format

```

This creates metapost source for graphical display:

*(Cascades: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_write_graph_format (cascade, count, unit)
    type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade
    integer, intent(in) :: count
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    integer(TC) :: mask
    type(string_t) :: left_str, right_str
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    mask = 2**((cascade%depth+3)/2) - 1
    left_str = ""
    right_str = ""
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{minipage}{105pt}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\vspace{30pt}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{center}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{fmfgraph*}(55,55)"
    call graph_write (cascade, mask)
    write (u, '(A)') "\fmfleft{" // char (extract (left_str, 2)) // "}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\fmfright{" // char (extract (right_str, 2)) // "}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\end{fmfgraph*}\\\"
    write (u, '(A,I5,A)') "\fbox{$", count, "$"

```

```

write (u, '(A)') "\end{center}"
write (u, '(A)') "\end{minipage}"
write (u, '(A)') "%"
contains
recursive subroutine graph_write (cascade, mask, reverse)
  type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: mask
  logical, intent(in), optional :: reverse
  logical :: rev
  rev = .false.; if (present(reverse)) rev = reverse
  if (cascade%has_children) then
    if (.not.rev) then
      call vertex_write (cascade, cascade%daughter1, mask)
      call vertex_write (cascade, cascade%daughter2, mask)
    else
      call vertex_write (cascade, cascade%daughter2, mask, .true.)
      call vertex_write (cascade, cascade%daughter1, mask, .true.)
    end if
    if (cascade%complete) then
      call vertex_write (cascade, cascade%mother, mask, .true.)
      write (u, '(A,I0,A)') "\fmfv{d.shape=square}{v0}"
    end if
  else
    if (cascade%incoming) then
      call external_write (cascade%bincode, &
        flavor_get_tex_name (flavor_anti (cascade%flv)), left_str)
    else
      call external_write (cascade%bincode, &
        flavor_get_tex_name (cascade%flv), right_str)
    end if
  end if
end subroutine graph_write
recursive subroutine vertex_write (cascade, daughter, mask, reverse)
  type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade, daughter
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: mask
  logical, intent(in), optional :: reverse
  integer :: bincode
  if (cascade%complete) then
    bincode = 0
  else
    bincode = cascade%bincode
  end if
  call graph_write (daughter, mask, reverse)
  if (daughter%has_children) then
    call line_write (bincode, daughter%bincode, daughter%flv, &
      mapping=daughter%mapping)
  else
    call line_write (bincode, daughter%bincode, daughter%flv)
  end if
end subroutine vertex_write
subroutine line_write (i1, i2, flv, mapping)
  integer(TC), intent(in) :: i1, i2
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  integer, intent(in), optional :: mapping

```



```

integer :: k1, k2
type(string_t) :: prt_type
select case (flavor_get_spin_type (flv))
case (SCALAR);      prt_type = "plain"
case (SPINOR);      prt_type = "fermion"
case (VECTOR);      prt_type = "boson"
case (VECTORSPINOR); prt_type = "fermion"
case (TENSOR);      prt_type = "dbl_wiggly"
case default;       prt_type = "dashes"
end select
if (flavor_is_antiparticle (flv)) then
  k1 = i2; k2 = i1
else
  k1 = i1; k2 = i2
end if
if (present (mapping)) then
  select case (mapping)
  case (S_CHANNEL)
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=blue,lab=\sm\blue$" // &
      & char (flavor_get_tex_name (flv)) // "$}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  case (T_CHANNEL, U_CHANNEL)
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=cyan,lab=\sm\cyan$" // &
      & char (flavor_get_tex_name (flv)) // "$}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  case (RADIATION)
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=green,lab=\sm\green$" // &
      & char (flavor_get_tex_name (flv)) // "$}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  case (COLLINEAR)
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=magenta,lab=\sm\magenta$" // &
      & char (flavor_get_tex_name (flv)) // "$}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  case (INFRARED)
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=red,lab=\sm\red$" // &
      & char (flavor_get_tex_name (flv)) // "$}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  case default
    write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
      & ",f=black}" // &
      & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
  end select
else
  write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmf{" // char (prt_type) // &
    & "}" // &
    & "{v", k1, ",v", k2, "}"
end if
end subroutine line_write
subroutine external_write (bincode, name, ext_str)

```

```

integer(TC), intent(in) :: bincode
type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
type(string_t), intent(inout) :: ext_str
character(len=20) :: str
write (str, '(A2,I0)') ",v", bincode
ext_str = ext_str // trim (str)
write (u, '(A,I0,A,I0,A)') "\fmflabel{\sm$" &
// char (name) &
// "\",(", bincode, ")" &
// "${v", bincode, "]"
end subroutine external_write
end subroutine cascade_write_graph_format

```

This is for screen/debugging output:

```

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
subroutine cascade_write (cascade, unit)
type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
character(9) :: depth
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A,(1x,I7))") 'Cascade #', cascade%index
write (u, "(A,(1x,I7))") ' Grove:      #', cascade%grove
write (u, "(A,3(1x,L1))") ' act/cmp/inc: ', &
    cascade%active, cascade%complete, cascade%incoming
write (u, "(A,I0)") ' Bincode:      ', cascade%bincode
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ' Flavor:      '
call flavor_write (cascade%flv, unit)
write (u, "(A,I9)") ' Active flavor:', cascade%pdg
write (u, "(A,L1)") ' Is vector:      ', cascade%is_vector
write (u, "(A,3(1x," // FMT_19 // ")") ' Mass (m/r/e): ', &
    cascade%m_min, cascade%m_rea, cascade%m_eff
write (u, "(A,I1)") ' Mapping:      ', cascade%mapping
write (u, "(A,3(1x,L1))") ' res/log/tch: ', &
    cascade%resonant, cascade%log_enhanced, cascade%t_channel
write (u, "(A,(1x,I7))") ' Multiplicity: ', cascade%multiplicity
write (u, "(A,2(1x,I7))") ' n intern/off: ', &
    cascade%internal, cascade%n_off_shell
write (u, "(A,3(1x,I7))") ' n res/log/tch:', &
    cascade%n_resonances, cascade%n_log_enhanced, cascade%n_t_channel
write (u, "(A,I7)") ' Depth:      ', cascade%depth
write (depth, "(I7)") cascade%depth
write (u, "(A," // depth // "(1x,I7))") &
    ' Tree:      ', cascade%tree
write (u, "(A," // depth // "(1x,I7))") &
    ' Tree(PDG):      ', cascade%tree_pdg
write (u, "(A," // depth // "(1x,I7))") &
    ' Tree(mapping):', cascade%tree_mapping
write (u, "(A," // depth // "(1x,L1))") &
    ' Tree(res):      ', cascade%tree_resonant
if (cascade%has_children) then
    write (u, "(A,I7,1x,I7)") ' Daughter1/2: ', &
        cascade%daughter1%index, cascade%daughter2%index
end if

```

```

        if (associated (cascade%mother)) then
            write (u, "(A,I7)" ) ' Mother:      ', cascade%mother%index
        end if
    end subroutine cascade_write

```

### 11.7.3 Creating new cascades

This initializes a single-particle cascade (external, final state). The PDG entry in the tree is set undefined because the cascade is not resonant. However, the flavor entry is set, so the cascade flavor is identified nevertheless.

*(Cascades: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_init_outgoing (cascade, flv, pos, m_thr)
    type(cascade_t), intent(out) :: cascade
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    integer, intent(in) :: pos
    real(default), intent(in) :: m_thr
    call cascade_init (cascade, 1)
    cascade%bincode = ibset (0_TC, pos-1)
    cascade%flv = flv
    cascade%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (cascade%flv))
    cascade%is_vector = flavor_get_spin_type (flv) == VECTOR
    cascade%m_min = flavor_get_mass (flv)
    cascade%m_rea = cascade%m_min
    if (cascade%m_rea >= m_thr) then
        cascade%m_eff = cascade%m_rea
    end if
    cascade%on_shell = .true.
    cascade%multiplicity = 1
    cascade%tree(1) = cascade%bincode
    cascade%tree_pdg(1) = cascade%pdg
    cascade%tree_mapping(1) = EXTERNAL_PRT
    cascade%tree_resonant(1) = .false.
end subroutine cascade_init_outgoing

```

The same for an incoming line:

*(Cascades: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_init_incoming (cascade, flv, pos, m_thr)
    type(cascade_t), intent(out) :: cascade
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    integer, intent(in) :: pos
    real(default), intent(in) :: m_thr
    call cascade_init (cascade, 1)
    cascade%incoming = .true.
    cascade%bincode = ibset (0_TC, pos-1)
    cascade%flv = flavor_anti (flv)
    cascade%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (flv))
    cascade%is_vector = flavor_get_spin_type (flv) == VECTOR
    cascade%m_min = flavor_get_mass (flv)
    cascade%m_rea = cascade%m_min
    if (cascade%m_rea >= m_thr) then
        cascade%m_eff = cascade%m_rea
    end if
end subroutine cascade_init_incoming

```

```

cascade%on_shell = .true.
cascade%n_t_channel = 0
cascade%n_off_shell = 0
cascade%tree(1) = cascade%bincode
cascade%tree_pdg(1) = cascade%pdg
cascade%tree_mapping(1) = EXTERNAL_PRT
cascade%tree_resonant(1) = .false.
end subroutine cascade_init_incoming

```

#### 11.7.4 Tools

This function returns true if the two cascades share no common external particle. This is a requirement for joining them.

```

<Cascades: interfaces>+=
  interface operator(.disjunct.)
    module procedure cascade_disjunct
  end interface

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  function cascade_disjunct (cascade1, cascade2) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade1, cascade2
    flag = iand (cascade1%bincode, cascade2%bincode) == 0
  end function cascade_disjunct

```

Compute a hash code for the resonance pattern of a cascade. We count the number of times each particle appears as a resonance.

We pack the PDG codes of the resonances in two arrays (s-channel and t-channel), sort them both, concatenate the results, transfer to i8 integers, and compute the hash code from this byte stream.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_assign_resonance_hash (cascade)
    type(cascade_t), intent(inout) :: cascade
    integer(i8), dimension(1) :: mold
    cascade%res_hash = hash (transfer &
      (concat (sort (pack (cascade%tree_pdg, &
        cascade%tree_resonant)), &
        sort (pack (cascade%tree_pdg, &
          cascade%tree_mapping == T_CHANNEL .or. &
          cascade%tree_mapping == U_CHANNEL))), &
        mold))
  end subroutine cascade_assign_resonance_hash

```

#### 11.7.5 Hash entries for cascades

We will set up a hash array which contains keys of and pointers to cascades. We hold a list of cascade (pointers) within each bucket. This is not for collision resolution, but for keeping similar, but unequal cascades together.

```

<Cascades: types>+=

```

```

type :: cascade_p
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade => null ()
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: next => null ()
end type cascade_p

```

Here is the bucket or hash entry type:

```

<Cascades: types>+≡
type :: hash_entry_t
  integer(i32) :: hashval = 0
  integer(i8), dimension(:), allocatable :: key
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: first => null ()
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: last => null ()
end type hash_entry_t

```

Finalize: just deallocate the list; the contents are just pointers.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
subroutine hash_entry_final (hash_entry)
  type(hash_entry_t), intent(inout) :: hash_entry
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: current
  do while (associated (hash_entry%first))
    current => hash_entry%first
    hash_entry%first => current%next
    deallocate (current)
  end do
end subroutine hash_entry_final

```

Output: concise format for debugging, just list cascade indices.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
subroutine hash_entry_write (hash_entry, unit)
  type(hash_entry_t), intent(in) :: hash_entry
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: current
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Entry:"
  do i = 1, size (hash_entry%key)
    write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance="no") hash_entry%key(i)
  end do
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "->"
  current => hash_entry%first
  do while (associated (current))
    write (u, "(1x,I7)", advance="no") current%cascade%index
    current => current%next
  end do
  write (u, *)
end subroutine hash_entry_write

```

This function adds a cascade pointer to the bucket. If ok is present, check first if it is already there and return failure if yes. If cascade\_ptr is also present, set it to the current cascade if successful. If not, set it to the cascade that is already there.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+≡

```

```

subroutine hash_entry_add_cascade_ptr (hash_entry, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  type(hash_entry_t), intent(inout) :: hash_entry
  type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
  logical, intent(out), optional :: ok
  type(cascade_t), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: current
  if (present (ok)) then
    call hash_entry_check_cascade (hash_entry, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
    if (.not. ok) return
  end if
  allocate (current)
  current%cascade => cascade
  if (associated (hash_entry%last)) then
    hash_entry%last%next => current
  else
    hash_entry%first => current
  end if
  hash_entry%last => current
end subroutine hash_entry_add_cascade_ptr

```

This function checks whether a cascade is already in the bucket. For incomplete cascades, we look for an exact match. It should suffice to verify the tree, the PDG codes, and the mapping modes. This is the information that is written to the phase space file.

For complete cascades, we ignore the PDG code at positions with mappings infrared, collinear, or t/u-channel. Thus a cascade which is distinguished only by PDG code at such places, is flagged existent. If the convention is followed that light particles come before heavier ones (in the model definition), this ensures that the lightest particle is kept in the appropriate place, corresponding to the strongest peak.

For external cascades (incoming/outgoing) we take the PDG code into account even though it is zeroed in the PDG-code tree.

*(Cascades: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine hash_entry_check_cascade (hash_entry, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  type(hash_entry_t), intent(in), target :: hash_entry
  type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
  logical, intent(out) :: ok
  type(cascade_t), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
  type(cascade_p), pointer :: current
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: tree_pdg
  ok = .true.
  allocate (tree_pdg (size (cascade%tree_pdg)))
  if (cascade%complete) then
    where (cascade%tree_mapping == INFRARED .or. &
           cascade%tree_mapping == COLLINEAR .or. &
           cascade%tree_mapping == T_CHANNEL .or. &
           cascade%tree_mapping == U_CHANNEL)
      tree_pdg = 0
    elsewhere
      tree_pdg = cascade%tree_pdg
    end where
  else
    tree_pdg = cascade%tree_pdg
  end if
end subroutine hash_entry_check_cascade

```

```

end if
current => hash_entry%first
do while (associated (current))
  if (current%cascade%depth == cascade%depth) then
    if (all (current%cascade%tree == cascade%tree)) then
      if (all (current%cascade%tree_mapping == cascade%tree_mapping)) &
      then
        if (all (current%cascade%tree_pdg .match. tree_pdg)) then
          if (present (cascade_ptr)) cascade_ptr => current%cascade
          ok = .false.; return
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if
  current => current%next
end do
if (present (cascade_ptr)) cascade_ptr => cascade
end subroutine hash_entry_check_cascade

```

For PDG codes, we specify that the undefined code matches any code. This is already defined for flavor objects, but here we need it for the codes themselves.

```

<Cascades: interfaces>+≡
  interface operator(.match.)
    module procedure pdg_match
  end interface

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
  elemental function pdg_match (pdg1, pdg2) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    integer(TC), intent(in) :: pdg1, pdg2
    select case (pdg1)
    case (0)
      flag = .true.
    case default
      select case (pdg2)
      case (0)
        flag = .true.
      case default
        flag = pdg1 == pdg2
      end select
    end select
  end function pdg_match

```

### 11.7.6 The cascade set

The cascade set will later be transformed into the decay forest. It is set up as a linked list. In addition to the usual **first** and **last** pointers, there is a **first\_t** pointer which points to the first t-channel cascade (after all s-channel cascades), and a **first\_k** pointer which points to the first final cascade (with a keystone).

As an auxiliary device, the object contains a hash array with associated parameters where an additional pointer is stored for each cascade. The keys are

made from the relevant cascade data. This hash is used for fast detection (and thus avoidance) of double entries in the cascade list.

```

<Cascades: public>≡
    public :: cascade_set_t

<Cascades: types>+≡
    type :: cascade_set_t
    private
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    integer :: n_in, n_out, n_tot
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: flv
    integer :: depth_out, depth_tot
    real(default) :: sqrts = 0
    real(default) :: m_threshold_s = 0
    real(default) :: m_threshold_t = 0
    integer :: off_shell = 0
    integer :: t_channel = 0
    logical :: keep_nonresonant
    integer :: n_groves = 0
    ! The cascade list
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: first => null ()
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: last => null ()
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: first_t => null ()
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: first_k => null ()
    ! The hashtable
    integer :: n_entries = 0
    real :: fill_ratio = 0
    integer :: n_entries_max = 0
    integer(i32) :: mask = 0
    logical :: fatal_beam_decay = .true.
    type(hash_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
end type cascade_set_t

```

Return true if there are cascades which are active and complete, so the phase space file would be nonempty.

```

<Cascades: public>+≡
    public :: cascade_set_is_valid

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
    function cascade_set_is_valid (cascade_set) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(in) :: cascade_set
        type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
        flag = .false.
        cascade => cascade_set%first_k
        do while (associated (cascade))
            if (cascade%active .and. cascade%complete) then
                flag = .true.
                return
            end if
            cascade => cascade%next
        end do
    end function cascade_set_is_valid

```



The initializer sets up the hash table with some initial size guessed by looking at the number of external particles. We choose 256 for 3 external particles and a factor of 4 for each additional particle, limited at  $2^{30}=1\text{G}$ .

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    real, parameter, public :: CASCADE_SET_FILL_RATIO = 0.1

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cascade_set_init (cascade_set, model, n_in, n_out, phs_par, &
        fatal_beam_decay, flv)
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(out) :: cascade_set
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
        type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par
        logical, intent(in) :: fatal_beam_decay
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), intent(in), optional :: flv
        integer :: size_guess
        cascade_set%model => model
        cascade_set%n_in = n_in
        cascade_set%n_out = n_out
        cascade_set%n_tot = n_in + n_out
        if (present (flv)) then
            allocate (cascade_set%flv (size (flv, 1), size (flv, 2)))
            call flavor_init (cascade_set%flv, flavor_get_pdg (flv), model)
        end if
        select case (n_in)
        case (1); cascade_set%depth_out = 2 * n_out - 3
        case (2); cascade_set%depth_out = 2 * n_out - 1
        end select
        cascade_set%depth_tot = 2 * cascade_set%n_tot - 3
        cascade_set%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
        cascade_set%m_threshold_s = phs_par%m_threshold_s
        cascade_set%m_threshold_t = phs_par%m_threshold_t
        cascade_set%off_shell = phs_par%off_shell
        cascade_set%t_channel = phs_par%t_channel
        cascade_set%keep_nonresonant = phs_par%keep_nonresonant
        cascade_set%fill_ratio = CASCADE_SET_FILL_RATIO
        size_guess = ishft (256, min (2 * (cascade_set%n_tot - 3), 22))
        cascade_set%n_entries_max = size_guess * cascade_set%fill_ratio
        cascade_set%mask = size_guess - 1
        allocate (cascade_set%entry (0:cascade_set%mask))
        cascade_set%fatal_beam_decay = fatal_beam_decay
    end subroutine cascade_set_init

```

The finalizer has to delete both the hash and the list.

```

<Cascades: public>+≡
    public :: cascade_set_final

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cascade_set_final (cascade_set)
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
        type(cascade_t), pointer :: current
        integer :: i
        if (allocated (cascade_set%entry)) then
            do i = 0, cascade_set%mask

```

```

        call hash_entry_final (cascade_set%entry(i))
    end do
    deallocate (cascade_set%entry)
end if
do while (associated (cascade_set%first))
    current => cascade_set%first
    cascade_set%first => cascade_set%first%next
    deallocate (current)
end do
end subroutine cascade_set_final

```

Write the process in ASCII format, in columns that are headed by the corresponding bincode.

```

<Cascades: public>+≡
    public :: cascade_set_write_process_bincode_format

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cascade_set_write_process_bincode_format (cascade_set, unit)
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(in), target :: cascade_set
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: bincode, field_width
        integer :: n_in, n_out, n_tot, n_flv
        integer :: u, f, i, bc
        character(20) :: str
        type(string_t) :: fmt_head
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: fmt_proc
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        if (.not. allocated (cascade_set%flv)) return
        write (u, "('!',1x,A)") "List of subprocesses with particle bincodes:"
        n_in = cascade_set%n_in
        n_out = cascade_set%n_out
        n_tot = cascade_set%n_tot
        n_flv = size (cascade_set%flv, 2)
        allocate (bincode (n_tot), field_width (n_tot), fmt_proc (n_tot))
        bc = 1
        do i = 1, n_out
            bincode(n_in + i) = bc
            bc = 2 * bc
        end do
        do i = n_in, 1, -1
            bincode(i) = bc
            bc = 2 * bc
        end do
        do i = 1, n_tot
            write (str, "(I0)") bincode(i)
            field_width(i) = len_trim (str)
            do f = 1, n_flv
                field_width(i) = max (field_width(i), &
                    len (flavor_get_name (cascade_set%flv(i,f))))
            end do
        end do
        fmt_head = "('!',)"
        do i = 1, n_tot
            fmt_head = fmt_head // ",1x,"

```

```

      fmt_proc(i) = "(1x,"
      write (str, "(I0)") field_width(i)
      fmt_head = fmt_head // "I" // trim(str)
      fmt_proc(i) = fmt_proc(i) // "A" // trim(str)
      if (i == n_in) then
        fmt_head = fmt_head // ",1x,'  '"
      end if
    end do
  end do
  fmt_proc = fmt_proc // ")"
  fmt_head = fmt_head // ")"
  write (u, char (fmt_head)) bincode
  do f = 1, n_flv
    write (u, "('!')", advance="no")
    do i = 1, n_tot
      write (u, char (fmt_proc(i)), advance="no") &
        char (flavor_get_name (cascade_set%flv(i,f)))
      if (i == n_in) write (u, "(1x,'=>')", advance="no")
    end do
    write (u, *)
  end do
  write (u, char (fmt_head)) bincode
end subroutine cascade_set_write_process_bincode_format

```

Write the process as a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X expression.

(*Cascades: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine cascade_set_write_process_tex_format (cascade_set, unit)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(in), target :: cascade_set
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, f, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  if (.not. allocated (cascade_set%flv)) return
  write (u, "(A)") "\begin{align*}"
  do f = 1, size (cascade_set%flv, 2)
    do i = 1, cascade_set%n_in
      if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\quad "
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") &
        char (flavor_get_tex_name (cascade_set%flv(i,f)))
    end do
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\quad &\to\quad "
    do i = cascade_set%n_in + 1, cascade_set%n_tot
      if (i > cascade_set%n_in + 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "\quad "
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") &
        char (flavor_get_tex_name (cascade_set%flv(i,f)))
    end do
    if (f < size (cascade_set%flv, 2)) then
      write (u, "(A)") "\\ "
    else
      write (u, "(A)") ""
    end if
  end do
  write (u, "(A)") "\end{align*}"
end subroutine cascade_set_write_process_tex_format

```

Three output routines: phase-space file, graph source code, and screen output.

This version generates the phase space file. It deals only with complete cascades.

```

(Cascades: public) +=
    public :: cascade_set_write_file_format

(Cascades: procedures) +=
    subroutine cascade_set_write_file_format (cascade_set, unit)
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(in), target :: cascade_set
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
        integer :: u, grove, count
        logical :: first_in_grove
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        count = 0
        do grove = 1, cascade_set%n_groves
            first_in_grove = .true.
            cascade => cascade_set%first_k
            do while (associated (cascade))
                if (cascade%active .and. cascade%complete) then
                    if (cascade%grove == grove) then
                        if (first_in_grove) then
                            first_in_grove = .false.
                            write (u, *)
                            write (u, "(1x,'!',1x,A,1x,I0,A)", advance='no') &
                                'Multiplicity =', cascade%multiplicity, ","
                            select case (cascade%n_resonances)
                                case (0)
                                    write (u, '(1x,A)', advance='no') 'no resonances, '
                                case (1)
                                    write (u, '(1x,A)', advance='no') '1 resonance, '
                                case default
                                    write (u, '(1x,I0,1x,A)', advance='no') &
                                        cascade%n_resonances, 'resonances, '
                            end select
                            write (u, '(1x,I0,1x,A)', advance='no') &
                                cascade%n_log_enhanced, 'logs, '
                            write (u, '(1x,I0,1x,A)', advance='no') &
                                cascade%n_off_shell, 'off-shell, '
                            select case (cascade%n_t_channel)
                                case (0); write (u, '(1x,A)') 's-channel graph'
                                case (1); write (u, '(1x,A)') '1 t-channel line'
                                case default
                                    write(u,'(1x,I0,1x,A)') &
                                        cascade%n_t_channel, 't-channel lines'
                            end select
                            write (u, '(1x,A,I0)') 'grove #', grove
                        end if
                        count = count + 1
                        write (u, "(1x,'!',1x,A,I0)") "Channel #", count
                        call cascade_write_file_format (cascade, cascade_set%model, u)
                    end if
                end if
                cascade => cascade%next
            end while
        end do
    end subroutine

```

```

        end do
    end do
end subroutine cascade_set_write_file_format

```

This is the graph output format, the driver-file

*<Cascades: public>+≡*

```

    public :: cascade_set_write_graph_format

```

*<Cascades: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_set_write_graph_format &
    (cascade_set, filename, process_id, unit)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(in), target :: cascade_set
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename, process_id
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
    integer :: u, grove, count, pgcount
    logical :: first_in_grove
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, '(A)') "\documentclass[10pt]{article}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{amsmath}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{feynmp}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{url}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\usepackage{color}"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\textwidth 18.5cm"
    write (u, '(A)') "\evensidemargin -1.5cm"
    write (u, '(A)') "\oddsidemargin -1.5cm"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\blue}{\color{blue}}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\green}{\color{green}}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\red}{\color{red}}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\magenta}{\color{magenta}}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\cyan}{\color{cyan}}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\newcommand{\sm}{\footnotesize}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\setlength{\parindent}{0pt}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\setlength{\parsep}{20pt}"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{document}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{fmffile}{ " // char (filename) // "}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\fmfcmd{color magenta; magenta = red + blue;}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\fmfcmd{color cyan; cyan = green + blue;}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{fmfshrink}{0.5}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\begin{flushleft}"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\noindent" // &
        & "\textbf{\large\texttt{WHIZARD}} phase space channels" // &
        & "\hfill\today"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\vspace{10pt}"
    write (u, '(A)') "\noindent" // &
        & "\textbf{Process:} \url{ " // char (process_id) // "}"
    call cascade_set_write_process_tex_format (cascade_set, u)
    write (u, *)
    write (u, '(A)') "\noindent" // &

```

```

& "\textbf{Note:} These are pseudo Feynman graphs that "
write (u, '(A)') "visualize phase-space parameterizations " // &
& ("('integration channels')). "
write (u, '(A)') "They do \emph{not} indicate Feynman graphs used for the " // &
& "matrix element."
write (u, *)
write (u, '(A)') "\textbf{Color code:} " // &
& "{\blue resonance,} " // &
& "{\cyan t-channel,} " // &
& "{\green radiation,} "
write (u, '(A)') "{\red infrared,} " // &
& "{\magenta collinear,} " // &
& "external/off-shell"
write (u, *)
write (u, '(A)') "\noindent" // &
& "\textbf{Black square:} Keystone, indicates ordering of " // &
& "phase space parameters."
write (u, *)
write (u, '(A)') "\vspace{-20pt}"
count = 0
pgcount = 0
do grove = 1, cascade_set%n_groves
  first_in_grove = .true.
  cascade => cascade_set%first
  do while (associated (cascade))
    if (cascade%active .and. cascade%complete) then
      if (cascade%grove == grove) then
        if (first_in_grove) then
          first_in_grove = .false.
          write (u, *)
          write (u, '(A)') "\vspace{20pt}"
          write (u, '(A)') "\begin{tabular}{l}"
          write (u, '(A,I5,A)') &
            & "\fbox{\bf Grove \boldmath$, grove, "$} \\[10pt]"
          write (u, '(A,I1,A)') "Multiplicity: ", &
            cascade%multiplicity, "\\"
          write (u, '(A,I1,A)') "Resonances: ", &
            cascade%n_resonances, "\\"
          write (u, '(A,I1,A)') "Log-enhanced: ", &
            cascade%n_log_enhanced, "\\"
          write (u, '(A,I1,A)') "Off-shell: ", &
            cascade%n_off_shell, "\\"
          write (u, '(A,I1,A)') "t-channel: ", &
            cascade%n_t_channel, ""
          write (u, '(A)') "\end{tabular}"
        end if
        count = count + 1
        call cascade_write_graph_format (cascade, count, unit)
        if (pgcount >= 250) then
          write (u, '(A)') "\clearpage"
          pgcount = 0
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if
end if

```

```

        cascade => cascade%next
    end do
end do
write (u, '(A)') "\end{flushleft}"
write (u, '(A)') "\end{fmfshrink}"
write (u, '(A)') "\end{fmffile}"
write (u, '(A)') "\end{document}"
end subroutine cascade_set_write_graph_format

```

This is for screen output and debugging:

```

<Cascades: public>+=
    public :: cascade_set_write

<Cascades: procedures>+=
    subroutine cascade_set_write (cascade_set, unit, active_only, complete_only)
        type(cascade_set_t), intent(in), target :: cascade_set
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: active_only, complete_only
        logical :: active, complete
        type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        active = .true.; if (present (active_only)) active = active_only
        complete = .false.; if (present (complete_only)) complete = complete_only
        write (u, "(A)") "Cascade set:"
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "Model:"
        if (associated (cascade_set%model)) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") char (cascade_set%model%get_name ())
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "[none]"
        end if
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "n_in/out/tot ="
        write (u, "(3(1x,I7))" &
            cascade_set%n_in, cascade_set%n_out, cascade_set%n_tot
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "depth_out/tot ="
        write (u, "(2(1x,I7))" cascade_set%depth_out, cascade_set%depth_tot
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "mass thr(s/t) ="
        write (u, "(2(1x," // FMT_19 // "))" &
            cascade_set%m_threshold_s, cascade_set%m_threshold_t
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "off shell ="
        write (u, "(1x,I7)") cascade_set%off_shell
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "keep_nonreson ="
        write (u, "(1x,L1)") cascade_set%keep_nonresonant
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "n_groves ="
        write (u, "(1x,I7)") cascade_set%n_groves
        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)") "Cascade list:"
        if (associated (cascade_set%first)) then
            cascade => cascade_set%first
            do while (associated (cascade))
                if (active .and. .not. cascade%active) cycle
                if (complete .and. .not. cascade%complete) cycle
                call cascade_write (cascade, unit)
                cascade => cascade%next
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine cascade_set_write

```

```

        end do
    else
        write (u, "(A)") "[empty]"
    end if
    write (u, "(A)") "Hash array"
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "n_entries      ="
    write (u, "(1x,I7)") cascade_set%n_entries
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "fill_ratio    ="
    write (u, "(1x," // FMT_12 // ")") cascade_set%fill_ratio
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "n_entries_max ="
    write (u, "(1x,I7)") cascade_set%n_entries_max
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "mask          ="
    write (u, "(1x,I0)") cascade_set%mask
    do i = 0, ubound (cascade_set%entry, 1)
        if (associated (cascade_set%entry(i)%key)) then
            write (u, "(1x,I7)") i
            call hash_entry_write (cascade_set%entry(i), u)
        end if
    end do
end subroutine cascade_set_write

```

### 11.7.7 Adding cascades

Add a deep copy of a cascade to the set. The copy has all content of the original, but the pointers are nullified. We do not care whether insertion was successful or not. The pointer argument, if present, is assigned to the input cascade, or to the hash entry if it is already present.

The procedure is recursive: any daughter or mother entries are also deep-copied and added to the cascade set before the current copy is added.

(*Cascades: procedures*)+≡

```

recursive subroutine cascade_set_add_copy &
    (cascade_set, cascade_in, cascade_ptr)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in) :: cascade_in
    type(cascade_t), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
    logical :: ok
    allocate (cascade)
    cascade = cascade_in
    if (associated (cascade_in%daughter1)) call cascade_set_add_copy &
        (cascade_set, cascade_in%daughter1, cascade%daughter1)
    if (associated (cascade_in%daughter2)) call cascade_set_add_copy &
        (cascade_set, cascade_in%daughter2, cascade%daughter2)
    if (associated (cascade_in%mother)) call cascade_set_add_copy &
        (cascade_set, cascade_in%mother, cascade%mother)
    cascade%next => null ()
    call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
    if (.not. ok) deallocate (cascade)
end subroutine cascade_set_add_copy

```



Add a cascade to the set. This does not deep-copy. We first try to insert it in the hash array. If successful, add it to the list. Failure indicates that it is already present, and we drop it.

The hash key is built solely from the tree array, so neither particle codes nor resonances count, just topology.

Technically, hash and list receive only pointers, so the cascade can be considered as being in either of both. We treat it as part of the list.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(cascade_ptr), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
    integer(i8), dimension(1) :: mold
    call cascade_set_hash_insert &
      (cascade_set, transfer (cascade%tree, mold), cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
    if (ok) call cascade_set_list_add (cascade_set, cascade)
  end subroutine cascade_set_add

```

Add a new cascade to the list:

```

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_set_list_add (cascade_set, cascade)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout) :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
    if (associated (cascade_set%last)) then
      cascade_set%last%next => cascade
    else
      cascade_set%first => cascade
    end if
    cascade_set%last => cascade
  end subroutine cascade_set_list_add

```

Add a cascade entry to the hash array:

```

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_set_hash_insert &
    (cascade_set, key, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(cascade_ptr), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
    integer(i32) :: h
    if (cascade_set%n_entries >= cascade_set%n_entries_max) &
      call cascade_set_hash_expand (cascade_set)
    h = hash (key)
    call cascade_set_hash_insert_rec &
      (cascade_set, h, h, key, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  end subroutine cascade_set_hash_insert

```

Double the hashtable size when necessary:

```

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_set_hash_expand (cascade_set)

```

```

type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
type(hash_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: table_tmp
type(cascade_p), pointer :: current
integer :: i, s
allocate (table_tmp (0:cascade_set%mask))
table_tmp = cascade_set%entry
deallocate (cascade_set%entry)
s = 2 * size (table_tmp)
cascade_set%n_entries = 0
cascade_set%n_entries_max = s * cascade_set%fill_ratio
cascade_set%mask = s - 1
allocate (cascade_set%entry (0:cascade_set%mask))
do i = 0, ubound (table_tmp, 1)
  current => table_tmp(i)%first
  do while (associated (current))
    call cascade_set_hash_insert_rec &
      (cascade_set, table_tmp(i)%hashval, table_tmp(i)%hashval, &
        table_tmp(i)%key, current%cascade)
    current => current%next
  end do
end do
end subroutine cascade_set_hash_expand

```

Insert the cascade at the bucket determined by the hash value. If the bucket is filled, check first for a collision (unequal keys). In that case, choose the following bucket and repeat. Otherwise, add the cascade to the bucket.

If the bucket is empty, record the hash value, allocate and store the key, and then add the cascade to the bucket.

If ok is present, before insertion we check whether the cascade is already stored, and return failure if yes.

*(Cascades: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine cascade_set_hash_insert_rec &
  (cascade_set, h, hashval, key, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout) :: cascade_set
integer(i32), intent(in) :: h, hashval
integer(i8), dimension(:), intent(in) :: key
type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade
logical, intent(out), optional :: ok
type(cascade_t), optional, pointer :: cascade_ptr
integer(i32) :: i
i = iand (h, cascade_set%mask)
if (allocated (cascade_set%entry(i)%key)) then
  if (size (cascade_set%entry(i)%key) /= size (key)) then
    call cascade_set_hash_insert_rec &
      (cascade_set, h + 1, hashval, key, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  else if (any (cascade_set%entry(i)%key /= key)) then
    call cascade_set_hash_insert_rec &
      (cascade_set, h + 1, hashval, key, cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  else
    call hash_entry_add_cascade_ptr &
      (cascade_set%entry(i), cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
  end if
else

```

```

        cascade_set%entry(i)%hashval = hashval
        allocate (cascade_set%entry(i)%key (size (key)))
        cascade_set%entry(i)%key = key
        call hash_entry_add_cascade_ptr &
            (cascade_set%entry(i), cascade, ok, cascade_ptr)
        cascade_set%n_entries = cascade_set%n_entries + 1
    end if
end subroutine cascade_set_hash_insert_rec

```

### 11.7.8 External particles

We want to initialize the cascade set with the outgoing particles. In case of multiple processes, initial cascades are prepared for all of them. The hash array check ensures that no particle appears more than once at the same place.

*(Cascades: interfaces)+≡*

```

interface cascade_set_add_outgoing
    module procedure cascade_set_add_outgoing1
    module procedure cascade_set_add_outgoing2
end interface

```

*(Cascades: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_set_add_outgoing2 (cascade_set, flv)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer :: pos, prc, n_out, n_prc
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
    logical :: ok
    n_out = size (flv, dim=1)
    n_prc = size (flv, dim=2)
    do prc = 1, n_prc
        do pos = 1, n_out
            allocate (cascade)
            call cascade_init_outgoing &
                (cascade, flv(pos,prc), pos, cascade_set%m_threshold_s)
            call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok)
            if (.not. ok) then
                deallocate (cascade)
            end if
        end do
    end do
end subroutine cascade_set_add_outgoing2

subroutine cascade_set_add_outgoing1 (cascade_set, flv)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer :: pos, n_out
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
    logical :: ok
    n_out = size (flv, dim=1)
    do pos = 1, n_out
        allocate (cascade)
        call cascade_init_outgoing &

```

```

        (cascade, flv(pos), pos, cascade_set%m_threshold_s)
    call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok)
    if (.not. ok) then
        deallocate (cascade)
    end if
end do
end subroutine cascade_set_add_outgoing1

```

The incoming particles are added one at a time. Nevertheless, we may have several processes which are looped over. At the first opportunity, we set the pointer `first_t` in the cascade set which should point to the first t-channel cascade.

Return the indices of the first and last cascade generated.

*<Cascades: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface cascade_set_add_incoming
    module procedure cascade_set_add_incoming0
    module procedure cascade_set_add_incoming1
end interface

```

*<Cascades: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_set_add_incoming1 (cascade_set, n1, n2, pos, flv)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    integer, intent(out) :: n1, n2
    integer, intent(in) :: pos
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer :: prc, n_prc
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
    logical :: ok
    n1 = 0
    n2 = 0
    n_prc = size (flv)
    do prc = 1, n_prc
        allocate (cascade)
        call cascade_init_incoming &
            (cascade, flv(prc), pos, cascade_set%m_threshold_t)
        call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok)
        if (ok) then
            if (n1 == 0) n1 = cascade%index
            n2 = cascade%index
            if (.not. associated (cascade_set%first_t)) then
                cascade_set%first_t => cascade
            end if
        else
            deallocate (cascade)
        end if
    end do
end subroutine cascade_set_add_incoming1

subroutine cascade_set_add_incoming0 (cascade_set, n1, n2, pos, flv)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    integer, intent(out) :: n1, n2
    integer, intent(in) :: pos
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv

```

```

type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
logical :: ok
n1 = 0
n2 = 0
allocate (cascade)
call cascade_init_incoming &
    (cascade, flv, pos, cascade_set%m_threshold_t)
call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade, ok)
if (ok) then
    if (n1 == 0) n1 = cascade%index
    n2 = cascade%index
    if (.not. associated (cascade_set%first_t)) then
        cascade_set%first_t => cascade
    end if
else
    deallocate (cascade)
end if
end subroutine cascade_set_add_incoming0

```

### 11.7.9 Cascade combination I: flavor assignment

We have two disjunct cascades, now use the vertex table to determine the possible flavors of the combination cascade. For each possibility, try to generate a new cascade. The total cascade depth has to be one less than the limit, because this is reached by setting the keystone.

(*Cascades: procedures*)+≡

```

subroutine cascade_match_pair (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, s_channel)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2
    logical, intent(in) :: s_channel
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg3
    integer :: i, depth_max
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    if (s_channel) then
        depth_max = cascade_set%depth_out
    else
        depth_max = cascade_set%depth_tot
    end if
    if (cascade1%depth + cascade2%depth < depth_max) then
        call model_match_vertex (cascade_set%model, &
            flavor_get_pdg (cascade1%flv), &
            flavor_get_pdg (cascade2%flv), &
            pdg3)
        do i = 1, size (pdg3)
            call flavor_init (flv, pdg3(i), cascade_set%model)
            if (s_channel) then
                call cascade_combine_s (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, flv)
            else
                call cascade_combine_t (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, flv)
            end if
        end do
        deallocate (pdg3)
    end if
end subroutine cascade_match_pair

```

```

    end if
end subroutine cascade_match_pair

```

The triplet version takes a third cascade, and we check whether this triplet has a matching vertex in the database. If yes, we make a keystone cascade.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+≡
subroutine cascade_match_triplet &
    (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3, s_channel)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2, cascade3
    logical, intent(in) :: s_channel
    integer :: depth_max
    depth_max = cascade_set%depth_tot
    if (cascade1%depth + cascade2%depth + cascade3%depth == depth_max) then
        if (model_check_vertex (cascade_set%model, &
            flavor_get_pdg (cascade1%flv), &
            flavor_get_pdg (cascade2%flv), &
            flavor_get_pdg (cascade3%flv))) then
            call cascade_combine_keystone &
                (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3, s_channel)
        end if
    end if
end subroutine cascade_match_triplet

```

### 11.7.10 Cascade combination II: kinematics setup and check

Having three matching flavors, we start constructing the combination cascade. We look at the mass hierarchies and determine whether the cascade is to be kept. In passing we set mapping modes, resonance properties and such.

If successful, the cascade is finalized. For a resonant cascade, we prepare in addition a copy without the resonance.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+≡
subroutine cascade_combine_s (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, flv)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade3, cascade4
    logical :: keep
    keep = .false.
    allocate (cascade3)
    call cascade_init (cascade3, cascade1%depth + cascade2%depth + 1)
    cascade3%bincode = ior (cascade1%bincode, cascade2%bincode)
    cascade3%flv = flavor_anti (flv)
    cascade3%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (cascade3%flv))
    cascade3%is_vector = flavor_get_spin_type (flv) == VECTOR
    cascade3%m_min = cascade1%m_min + cascade2%m_min
    cascade3%m_rea = flavor_get_mass (flv)
    if (cascade3%m_rea > cascade_set%m_threshold_s) then
        cascade3%m_eff = cascade3%m_rea
    end if
    ! Potentially resonant cases [sqrts = m_rea for on-shell decay]

```

```

if (cascade3%m_rea > cascade3%m_min &
    .and. cascade3%m_rea <= cascade_set%sqrts) then
    if (flavor_get_width (flv) /= 0) then
        if (cascade1%on_shell .or. cascade2%on_shell) then
            keep = .true.
            cascade3%mapping = S_CHANNEL
            cascade3%resonant = .true.
        end if
    else
        call warn_decay (flv)
    end if
! Collinear and IR singular cases
else if (cascade3%m_rea < cascade_set%sqrts) then
    ! Massless splitting
    if (cascade1%m_eff == 0 .and. cascade2%m_eff == 0 &
        .and. cascade3%depth <= 3) then
        keep = .true.
        cascade3%log_enhanced = .true.
        if (cascade3%is_vector) then
            if (cascade1%is_vector .and. cascade2%is_vector) then
                cascade3%mapping = COLLINEAR    ! three-vector-vertex
            else
                cascade3%mapping = INFRARED      ! vector splitting into matter
            end if
        else
            if (cascade1%is_vector .or. cascade2%is_vector) then
                cascade3%mapping = COLLINEAR    ! vector radiation off matter
            else
                cascade3%mapping = INFRARED      ! scalar radiation/splitting
            end if
        end if
    ! IR radiation off massive particle
    else if (cascade3%m_eff > 0 .and. cascade1%m_eff > 0 &
        .and. cascade2%m_eff == 0 &
        .and. (cascade1%on_shell .or. cascade1%mapping == RADIATION) &
        .and. abs (cascade3%m_eff - cascade1%m_eff) &
            < cascade_set%m_threshold_s) &
        then
        keep = .true.
        cascade3%log_enhanced = .true.
        cascade3%mapping = RADIATION
    else if (cascade3%m_eff > 0 .and. cascade2%m_eff > 0 &
        .and. cascade1%m_eff == 0 &
        .and. (cascade2%on_shell .or. cascade2%mapping == RADIATION) &
        .and. abs (cascade3%m_eff - cascade2%m_eff) &
            < cascade_set%m_threshold_s) &
        then
        keep = .true.
        cascade3%log_enhanced = .true.
        cascade3%mapping = RADIATION
    end if
end if
! Non-singular cases, including failed resonances
if (.not. keep) then

```

```

! Two on-shell particles from a virtual mother
if (cascade1%on_shell .or. cascade2%on_shell) then
  keep = .true.
  cascade3%m_eff = max (cascade3%m_min, &
                        cascade1%m_eff + cascade2%m_eff)
  if (cascade3%m_eff < cascade_set%m_threshold_s) then
    cascade3%m_eff = 0
  end if
end if
end if
! Complete and register the cascade (two in case of resonance)
if (keep) then
  cascade3%on_shell = cascade3%resonant .or. cascade3%log_enhanced
  if (cascade3%resonant) then
    cascade3%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (cascade3%flv))
    if (cascade_set%keep_nonresonant) then
      allocate (cascade4)
      cascade4 = cascade3
      cascade4%index = cascade_index ()
      cascade4%pdg = UNDEFINED
      cascade4%mapping = NO_MAPPING
      cascade4%resonant = .false.
      cascade4%on_shell = .false.
    end if
    cascade3%m_min = cascade3%m_rea
    call cascade_fusion (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3)
    if (cascade_set%keep_nonresonant) then
      call cascade_fusion (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade4)
    end if
  else
    call cascade_fusion (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3)
  end if
else
  deallocate (cascade3)
end if
contains
subroutine warn_decay (flv)
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  integer :: i
  integer, dimension(MAX_WARN_RESONANCE), save :: warned_code = 0
  LOOP_WARNED: do i = 1, MAX_WARN_RESONANCE
    if (warned_code(i) == 0) then
      warned_code(i) = flavor_get_pdg (flv)
      write (msg_buffer, "(A)") &
        & " Intermediate decay of zero-width particle " &
        & // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
        & // " may be possible."
      call msg_warning
      exit LOOP_WARNED
    else if (warned_code(i) == flavor_get_pdg (flv)) then
      exit LOOP_WARNED
    end if
  end do LOOP_WARNED
end subroutine warn_decay

```



```
end subroutine cascade_combine_s
```

*(Limits: public parameters)+=*

```
integer, parameter, public :: MAX_WARN_RESONANCE = 50
```

This is the t-channel version. `cascade1` is t-channel and contains the seed, `cascade2` is s-channel. We check for kinematically allowed beam decay (which is a fatal error), or massless splitting / soft radiation. The cascade is kept in all remaining cases and submitted for registration.

*(Cascades: procedures)+=*

```
subroutine cascade_combine_t (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, flv)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
  type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2
  type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade3
  allocate (cascade3)
  call cascade_init (cascade3, cascade1%depth + cascade2%depth + 1)
  cascade3%bincode = ior (cascade1%bincode, cascade2%bincode)
  cascade3%flv = flavor_anti (flv)
  cascade3%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (cascade3%flv))
  cascade3%is_vector = flavor_get_spin_type (flv) == VECTOR
  if (cascade1%incoming) then
    cascade3%m_min = cascade2%m_min
  else
    cascade3%m_min = cascade1%m_min + cascade2%m_min
  end if
  cascade3%m_rea = flavor_get_mass (flv)
  if (cascade3%m_rea > cascade_set%m_threshold_t) then
    cascade3%m_eff = max (cascade3%m_rea, cascade2%m_eff)
  else if (cascade2%m_eff > cascade_set%m_threshold_t) then
    cascade3%m_eff = cascade2%m_eff
  else
    cascade3%m_eff = 0
  end if
  ! Allowed decay of beam particle
  if (cascade1%incoming &
    .and. cascade1%m_rea > cascade2%m_rea + cascade3%m_rea) then
    call beam_decay (cascade_set%fatal_beam_decay)
  ! Massless splitting
  else if (cascade1%m_eff == 0 &
    .and. cascade2%m_eff < cascade_set%m_threshold_t &
    .and. cascade3%m_eff == 0) then
    cascade3%mapping = U_CHANNEL
    cascade3%log_enhanced = .true.
  ! IR radiation off massive particle
  else if (cascade1%m_eff /= 0 .and. cascade2%m_eff == 0 &
    .and. cascade3%m_eff /= 0 &
    .and. (cascade1%on_shell .or. cascade1%mapping == RADIATION) &
    .and. abs (cascade1%m_eff - cascade3%m_eff) &
      < cascade_set%m_threshold_t) &
    then
    cascade3%pdg = abs (flavor_get_pdg (flv))
    cascade3%log_enhanced = .true.
    cascade3%mapping = RADIATION
```

```

end if
cascade3%t_channel = .true.
call cascade_fusion (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3)
contains
subroutine beam_decay (fatal_beam_decay)
  logical, intent(in) :: fatal_beam_decay
  write (msg_buffer, "(1x,A,1x,'->',1x,A,1x,A)") &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade1%flv)), &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade3%flv)), &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade2%flv))
  call msg_message
  write (msg_buffer, "(1x,'mass(',A,')' =',1x,E17.10)") &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade1%flv)), cascade1%m_rea
  call msg_message
  write (msg_buffer, "(1x,'mass(',A,')' =',1x,E17.10)") &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade3%flv)), cascade3%m_rea
  call msg_message
  write (msg_buffer, "(1x,'mass(',A,')' =',1x,E17.10)") &
    char (flavor_get_name (cascade2%flv)), cascade2%m_rea
  call msg_message
  if (fatal_beam_decay) then
    call msg_fatal (" Phase space: Initial beam particle can decay")
  else
    call msg_warning (" Phase space: Initial beam particle can decay")
  end if
end subroutine beam_decay
end subroutine cascade_combine_t

```

Here we complete a decay cascade. The third input is the single-particle cascade for the initial particle. There is no resonance or mapping assignment. The only condition for keeping the cascade is the mass sum of the final state, which must be less than the available energy.

Two modifications are necessary for scattering cascades: a pure s-channel diagram (cascade1 is the incoming particle) do not have a logarithmic mapping at top-level. And in a t-channel diagram, the last line exchanged is mapped t-channel, not u-channel. Finally, we can encounter the case of a  $2 \rightarrow 1$  process, where cascade1 is incoming, and cascade2 is the outgoing particle. In all three cases we register a new cascade with the modified mapping.

*(Cascades: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cascade_combine_keystone &
  (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3, s_channel)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
  type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2, cascade3
  logical, intent(in) :: s_channel
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade4, cascade0
  logical :: keep, ok
  keep = .false.
  allocate (cascade4)
  call cascade_init &
    (cascade4, cascade1%depth + cascade2%depth + cascade3%depth)
  cascade4%complete = .true.
  if (s_channel) then
    cascade4%bincode = ior (cascade1%bincode, cascade2%bincode)

```

```

else
    cascade4%bincode = cascade3%bincode
end if
cascade4%flv = cascade3%flv
cascade4%pdg = cascade3%pdg
cascade4%mapping = EXTERNAL_PRT
cascade4%is_vector = cascade3%is_vector
cascade4%m_min = cascade1%m_min + cascade2%m_min
cascade4%m_rea = cascade3%m_rea
cascade4%m_eff = cascade3%m_rea
if (cascade4%m_min < cascade_set%sqrts) then
    keep = .true.
end if
if (keep) then
    if (cascade1%incoming .and. cascade2%log_enhanced) then
        allocate (cascade0)
        cascade0 = cascade2
        cascade0%next => null ()
        cascade0%index = cascade_index ()
        cascade0%mapping = NO_MAPPING
        cascade0%log_enhanced = .false.
        cascade0%n_log_enhanced = cascade0%n_log_enhanced - 1
        cascade0%tree_mapping(cascade0%depth) = NO_MAPPING
        call cascade_keystone &
            (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade0, cascade3, cascade4, ok)
        if (ok) then
            call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade0, ok)
        else
            deallocate (cascade0)
        end if
    else if (cascade1%t_channel .and. cascade1%mapping == U_CHANNEL) then
        allocate (cascade0)
        cascade0 = cascade1
        cascade0%next => null ()
        cascade0%index = cascade_index ()
        cascade0%mapping = T_CHANNEL
        cascade0%tree_mapping(cascade0%depth) = T_CHANNEL
        call cascade_keystone &
            (cascade_set, cascade0, cascade2, cascade3, cascade4, ok)
        if (ok) then
            call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade0, ok)
        else
            deallocate (cascade0)
        end if
    else if (cascade1%incoming .and. cascade2%depth == 1) then
        allocate (cascade0)
        cascade0 = cascade2
        cascade0%next => null ()
        cascade0%index = cascade_index ()
        cascade0%mapping = ON_SHELL
        cascade0%tree_mapping(cascade0%depth) = ON_SHELL
        call cascade_keystone &
            (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade0, cascade3, cascade4, ok)
        if (ok) then

```

```

        call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade0, ok)
    else
        deallocate (cascade0)
    end if
else
    call cascade_keystone &
        (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3, cascade4, ok)
    end if
else
    deallocate (cascade4)
end if
end subroutine cascade_combine_keystone

```

### 11.7.11 Cascade combination III: node connections and tree fusion

Here we assign global tree properties. If the allowed number of off-shell lines is exceeded, discard the new cascade. Otherwise, assign the trees, sort them, and assign connections. Finally, append the cascade to the list. This may fail (because in the hash array there is already an equivalent cascade). On failure, discard the cascade.

(*Cascades: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine cascade_fusion (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade3
    integer :: i1, i2, i3, i4
    logical :: ok
    cascade3%internal = (cascade3%depth - 3) / 2
    if (cascade3%resonant) then
        cascade3%multiplicity = 1
        cascade3%n_resonances = &
            cascade1%n_resonances + cascade2%n_resonances + 1
    else
        cascade3%multiplicity = cascade1%multiplicity + cascade2%multiplicity
        cascade3%n_resonances = cascade1%n_resonances + cascade2%n_resonances
    end if
    if (cascade3%log_enhanced) then
        cascade3%n_log_enhanced = &
            cascade1%n_log_enhanced + cascade2%n_log_enhanced + 1
    else
        cascade3%n_log_enhanced = &
            cascade1%n_log_enhanced + cascade2%n_log_enhanced
    end if
    if (cascade3%resonant) then
        cascade3%n_off_shell = 0
    else if (cascade3%log_enhanced) then
        cascade3%n_off_shell = cascade1%n_off_shell + cascade2%n_off_shell
    else
        cascade3%n_off_shell = cascade1%n_off_shell + cascade2%n_off_shell + 1
    end if
    if (cascade3%t_channel) then

```

```

        cascade3%n_t_channel = cascade1%n_t_channel + 1
    end if
    if (cascade3%n_off_shell > cascade_set%off_shell) then
        deallocate (cascade3)
    else if (cascade3%n_t_channel > cascade_set%t_channel) then
        deallocate (cascade3)
    else
        i1 = cascade1%depth
        i2 = i1 + 1
        i3 = i1 + cascade2%depth
        i4 = cascade3%depth
        cascade3%tree(:i1) = cascade1%tree
        where (cascade1%tree_mapping > NO_MAPPING)
            cascade3%tree_pdg(:i1) = cascade1%tree_pdg
        elsewhere
            cascade3%tree_pdg(:i1) = UNDEFINED
        end where
        cascade3%tree_mapping(:i1) = cascade1%tree_mapping
        cascade3%tree_resonant(:i1) = cascade1%tree_resonant
        cascade3%tree(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree
        where (cascade2%tree_mapping > NO_MAPPING)
            cascade3%tree_pdg(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_pdg
        elsewhere
            cascade3%tree_pdg(i2:i3) = UNDEFINED
        end where
        cascade3%tree_mapping(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_mapping
        cascade3%tree_resonant(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_resonant
        cascade3%tree(i4) = cascade3%bincode
        cascade3%tree_pdg(i4) = cascade3%pdg
        cascade3%tree_mapping(i4) = cascade3%mapping
        cascade3%tree_resonant(i4) = cascade3%resonant
        call tree_sort (cascade3%tree, &
            cascade3%tree_pdg, cascade3%tree_mapping, cascade3%tree_resonant)
        cascade3%has_children = .true.
        cascade3%daughter1 => cascade1
        cascade3%daughter2 => cascade2
        call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade3, ok)
        if (.not. ok) deallocate (cascade3)
    end if
end subroutine cascade_fusion

```

Here we combine a cascade pair with an incoming particle, i.e., we set a keystone. Otherwise, this is similar. On the first opportunity, we set the `first_k` pointer in the cascade set.

*(Cascades: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine cascade_keystone &
    (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, cascade3, cascade4, ok)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    type(cascade_t), intent(in), target :: cascade1, cascade2, cascade3
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade4
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    integer :: i1, i2, i3, i4
    cascade4%internal = (cascade4%depth - 3) / 2

```

```

cascade4%multiplicity = cascade1%multiplicity + cascade2%multiplicity
cascade4%n_resonances = cascade1%n_resonances + cascade2%n_resonances
cascade4%n_off_shell = cascade1%n_off_shell + cascade2%n_off_shell
cascade4%n_log_enhanced = &
    cascade1%n_log_enhanced + cascade2%n_log_enhanced
cascade4%n_t_channel = cascade1%n_t_channel + cascade2%n_t_channel
if (cascade4%n_off_shell > cascade_set%off_shell) then
    deallocate (cascade4)
    ok = .false.
else if (cascade4%n_t_channel > cascade_set%t_channel) then
    deallocate (cascade4)
    ok = .false.
else
    i1 = cascade1%depth
    i2 = i1 + 1
    i3 = i1 + cascade2%depth
    i4 = cascade4%depth
    cascade4%tree(:i1) = cascade1%tree
    where (cascade1%tree_mapping > NO_MAPPING)
        cascade4%tree_pdg(:i1) = cascade1%tree_pdg
    elsewhere
        cascade4%tree_pdg(:i1) = UNDEFINED
    end where
    cascade4%tree_mapping(:i1) = cascade1%tree_mapping
    cascade4%tree_resonant(:i1) = cascade1%tree_resonant
    cascade4%tree(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree
    where (cascade2%tree_mapping > NO_MAPPING)
        cascade4%tree_pdg(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_pdg
    elsewhere
        cascade4%tree_pdg(i2:i3) = UNDEFINED
    end where
    cascade4%tree_mapping(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_mapping
    cascade4%tree_resonant(i2:i3) = cascade2%tree_resonant
    cascade4%tree(i4) = cascade4%bincode
    cascade4%tree_pdg(i4) = UNDEFINED
    cascade4%tree_mapping(i4) = cascade4%mapping
    cascade4%tree_resonant(i4) = .false.
    call tree_sort (cascade4%tree, &
        cascade4%tree_pdg, cascade4%tree_mapping, cascade4%tree_resonant)
    cascade4%has_children = .true.
    cascade4%daughter1 => cascade1
    cascade4%daughter2 => cascade2
    cascade4%mother => cascade3
    call cascade_set_add (cascade_set, cascade4, ok)
    if (ok) then
        if (.not. associated (cascade_set%first_k)) then
            cascade_set%first_k => cascade4
        end if
    else
        deallocate (cascade4)
    end if
end if
end subroutine cascade_keystone

```

Sort a tree (array of binary codes) and particle code array simultaneously, by ascending binary codes. A convenient method is to use the `maxloc` function iteratively, to find and remove the largest entry in the tree array one by one.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+=
subroutine tree_sort (tree, pdg, mapping, resonant)
  integer(TC), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: tree
  integer, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg, mapping
  logical, dimension(:), intent(inout) :: resonant
  integer(TC), dimension(size(tree)) :: tree_tmp
  integer, dimension(size(pdg)) :: pdg_tmp, mapping_tmp
  logical, dimension(size(resonant)) :: resonant_tmp
  integer, dimension(1) :: pos
  integer :: i
  tree_tmp = tree
  pdg_tmp = pdg
  mapping_tmp = mapping
  resonant_tmp = resonant
  do i = size(tree), 1, -1
    pos = maxloc (tree_tmp)
    tree(i) = tree_tmp (pos(1))
    pdg(i) = pdg_tmp (pos(1))
    mapping(i) = mapping_tmp (pos(1))
    resonant(i) = resonant_tmp (pos(1))
    tree_tmp(pos(1)) = 0
  end do
end subroutine tree_sort

```

### 11.7.12 Cascade set generation

These procedures loop over cascades and build up the cascade set. After each iteration of the innermost loop, we set a breakpoint.

s-channel: We use a nested scan to combine all cascades with all other cascades.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+=
subroutine cascade_set_generate_s (cascade_set)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade1, cascade2
  cascade1 => cascade_set%first
  LOOP1: do while (associated (cascade1))
    cascade2 => cascade_set%first
    LOOP2: do while (associated (cascade2))
      if (cascade2%index >= cascade1%index) exit LOOP2
      if (cascade1 .disjunct. cascade2) then
        call cascade_match_pair (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, .true.)
      end if
      call terminate_now_if_signal ()
      cascade2 => cascade2%next
    end do LOOP2
    cascade1 => cascade1%next
  end do LOOP1
end subroutine cascade_set_generate_s

```

The t-channel cascades are directed and have a seed (one of the incoming particles) and a target (the other one). We loop over all possible seeds and targets. Inside this, we loop over all t-channel cascades (`cascade1`) and s-channel cascades (`cascade2`) and try to combine them.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+=
  subroutine cascade_set_generate_t (cascade_set, pos_seed, pos_target)
    type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
    integer, intent(in) :: pos_seed, pos_target
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade_seed, cascade_target
    type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade1, cascade2
    integer(TC) :: bc_seed, bc_target
    bc_seed = ibset (0_TC, pos_seed-1)
    bc_target = ibset (0_TC, pos_target-1)
    cascade_seed => cascade_set%first_t
    LOOP_SEED: do while (associated (cascade_seed))
      if (cascade_seed%bincode == bc_seed) then
        cascade_target => cascade_set%first_t
        LOOP_TARGET: do while (associated (cascade_target))
          if (cascade_target%bincode == bc_target) then
            cascade1 => cascade_set%first_t
            LOOP_T: do while (associated (cascade1))
              if ((cascade1 .disjunct. cascade_target) &
                  .and. .not. (cascade1 .disjunct. cascade_seed)) then
                cascade2 => cascade_set%first
                LOOP_S: do while (associated (cascade2))
                  if ((cascade2 .disjunct. cascade_target) &
                      .and. (cascade2 .disjunct. cascade1)) then
                    call cascade_match_pair &
                      (cascade_set, cascade1, cascade2, .false.)
                  end if
                  call terminate_now_if_signal ()
                  cascade2 => cascade2%next
                end do LOOP_S
              end if
              call terminate_now_if_signal ()
              cascade1 => cascade1%next
            end do LOOP_T
          end if
          call terminate_now_if_signal ()
          cascade_target => cascade_target%next
        end do LOOP_TARGET
      end if
      cascade_seed => cascade_seed%next
    end do LOOP_SEED
  end subroutine cascade_set_generate_t

```

This part completes the phase space for decay processes. It is similar to s-channel cascade generation, but combines two cascade with the particular cascade of the incoming particle. This particular cascade is expected to be pointed at by `first_t`.

```

(Cascades: procedures)+=
  subroutine cascade_set_generate_decay (cascade_set)

```



```

type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade1, cascade2
type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade_in
cascade_in => cascade_set%first_t
cascade1 => cascade_set%first
do while (associated (cascade1))
  if (cascade1 .disjunct. cascade_in) then
    cascade2 => cascade1%next
    do while (associated (cascade2))
      if ((cascade2 .disjunct. cascade1) &
          .and. (cascade2 .disjunct. cascade_in)) then
        call cascade_match_triplet (cascade_set, &
                                     cascade1, cascade2, cascade_in, .true.)
      end if
      call terminate_now_if_signal ()
      cascade2 => cascade2%next
    end do
  end if
  call terminate_now_if_signal ()
  cascade1 => cascade1%next
end do
end subroutine cascade_set_generate_decay

```

This part completes the phase space for scattering processes. We combine a t-channel cascade (containing the seed) with a s-channel cascade and the target.

*(Cascades: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine cascade_set_generate_scattering &
  (cascade_set, ns1, ns2, nt1, nt2, pos_seed, pos_target)
type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
integer, intent(in) :: pos_seed, pos_target
integer, intent(in) :: ns1, ns2, nt1, nt2
type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade_seed, cascade_target
type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade1, cascade2
integer(TC) :: bc_seed, bc_target
bc_seed = ibset (0_TC, pos_seed-1)
bc_target = ibset (0_TC, pos_target-1)
cascade_seed => cascade_set%first_t
LOOP_SEED: do while (associated (cascade_seed))
  if (cascade_seed%index < ns1) then
    cascade_seed => cascade_seed%next
    cycle LOOP_SEED
  else if (cascade_seed%index > ns2) then
    exit LOOP_SEED
  else if (cascade_seed%bincode == bc_seed) then
    cascade_target => cascade_set%first_t
    LOOP_TARGET: do while (associated (cascade_target))
      if (cascade_target%index < nt1) then
        cascade_target => cascade_target%next
        cycle LOOP_TARGET
      else if (cascade_target%index > nt2) then
        exit LOOP_TARGET
      else if (cascade_target%bincode == bc_target) then
        cascade1 => cascade_set%first_t

```

```

      LOOP_T: do while (associated (cascade1))
        if ((cascade1 .disjunct. cascade_target) &
            .and. .not. (cascade1 .disjunct. cascade_seed)) then
          cascade2 => cascade_set%first
          LOOP_S: do while (associated (cascade2))
            if ((cascade2 .disjunct. cascade_target) &
                .and. (cascade2 .disjunct. cascade1)) then
              call cascade_match_triplet (cascade_set, &
                                          cascade1, cascade2, cascade_target, .false.)
            end if
            call terminate_now_if_signal ()
            cascade2 => cascade2%next
          end do LOOP_S
        end if
        call terminate_now_if_signal ()
        cascade1 => cascade1%next
      end do LOOP_T
    end if
    call terminate_now_if_signal ()
    cascade_target => cascade_target%next
  end do LOOP_TARGET
end if
call terminate_now_if_signal ()
cascade_seed => cascade_seed%next
end do LOOP_SEED
end subroutine cascade_set_generate_scattering

```

### 11.7.13 Groves

Before assigning groves, assign hashcodes to the resonance patterns, so they can easily be compared.

*(Cascades: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine cascade_set_assign_resonance_hash (cascade_set)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout) :: cascade_set
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
  cascade => cascade_set%first_k
  do while (associated (cascade))
    call cascade_assign_resonance_hash (cascade)
    cascade => cascade%next
  end do
end subroutine cascade_set_assign_resonance_hash

```

After all cascades are recorded, we group the complete cascades in groves. A grove consists of cascades with identical multiplicity, number of resonances, log-enhanced, t-channel lines, and resonance flavors.

*(Cascades: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine cascade_set_assign_groves (cascade_set)
  type(cascade_set_t), intent(inout), target :: cascade_set
  type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade1, cascade2
  integer :: multiplicity
  integer :: n_resonances, n_log_enhanced, n_t_channel, n_off_shell
  integer :: res_hash

```

```

integer :: grove
grove = 0
cascade1 => cascade_set%first_k
do while (associated (cascade1))
  if (cascade1%active .and. cascade1%complete &
      .and. cascade1%grove == 0) then
    grove = grove + 1
    cascade1%grove = grove
    multiplicity = cascade1%multiplicity
    n_resonances = cascade1%n_resonances
    n_log_enhanced = cascade1%n_log_enhanced
    n_off_shell = cascade1%n_off_shell
    n_t_channel = cascade1%n_t_channel
    res_hash = cascade1%res_hash
    cascade2 => cascade1%next
    do while (associated (cascade2))
      if (cascade2%grove == 0) then
        if (cascade2%multiplicity == multiplicity &
            .and. cascade2%n_resonances == n_resonances &
            .and. cascade2%n_log_enhanced == n_log_enhanced &
            .and. cascade2%n_off_shell == n_off_shell &
            .and. cascade2%n_t_channel == n_t_channel &
            .and. cascade2%res_hash == res_hash) then
          cascade2%grove = grove
        end if
      end if
      call terminate_now_if_signal ()
      cascade2 => cascade2%next
    end do
  end if
  call terminate_now_if_signal ()
  cascade1 => cascade1%next
end do
cascade_set%n_groves = grove
end subroutine cascade_set_assign_groves

```

### 11.7.14 Generate the phase space file

Generate a complete phase space configuration.

For each flavor assignment: First, all s-channel graphs that can be built up from the outgoing particles. Then we distinguish (1) decay, where we complete the s-channel graphs by connecting to the input line, and (2) scattering, where we now generate t-channel graphs by introducing an incoming particle, and complete this by connecting to the other incoming particle.

After all cascade sets have been generated, merge them into a common set. This eliminates redundancies between flavor assignments.

```

<Cascades: public>+=
  public :: cascade_set_generate

<Cascades: procedures>+=
  subroutine cascade_set_generate &
    (cascade_set, model, n_in, n_out, flv, phs_par, fatal_beam_decay)

```

```

type(cascade_set_t), intent(out) :: cascade_set
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par
logical, intent(in) :: fatal_beam_decay
type(cascade_set_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: cset
type(cascade_t), pointer :: cascade
integer :: i
if (phase_space_vanishes (phs_par%sqrts, n_in, flv)) return
call cascade_set_init (cascade_set, model, n_in, n_out, phs_par, &
    fatal_beam_decay, flv)
allocate (cset (size (flv, 2)))
do i = 1, size (cset)
    call cascade_set_generate_single (cset(i), &
        model, n_in, n_out, flv(:,i), phs_par, fatal_beam_decay)
    cascade => cset(i)%first_k
    do while (associated (cascade))
        if (cascade%active .and. cascade%complete) then
            call cascade_set_add_copy (cascade_set, cascade)
        end if
        cascade => cascade%next
    end do
    call cascade_set_final (cset(i))
end do
cascade_set%first_k => cascade_set%first
call cascade_set_assign_resonance_hash (cascade_set)
call cascade_set_assign_groves (cascade_set)
end subroutine cascade_set_generate

```

This generates phase space for a single channel, without assigning groves.

*(Cascades: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine cascade_set_generate_single (cascade_set, &
    model, n_in, n_out, flv, phs_par, fatal_beam_decay)
type(cascade_set_t), intent(out) :: cascade_set
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
integer, intent(in) :: n_in, n_out
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: phs_par
logical, intent(in) :: fatal_beam_decay
integer :: n11, n12, n21, n22
call cascade_set_init (cascade_set, model, n_in, n_out, phs_par, &
    fatal_beam_decay)
call cascade_set_add_outgoing (cascade_set, flv(n_in+1:))
call cascade_set_generate_s (cascade_set)
select case (n_in)
case(1)
    call cascade_set_add_incoming &
        (cascade_set, n11, n12, n_out + 1, flv(1))
    call cascade_set_generate_decay (cascade_set)
case(2)
    call cascade_set_add_incoming &
        (cascade_set, n11, n12, n_out + 1, flv(2))

```

```

        call cascade_set_add_incoming &
            (cascade_set, n21, n22, n_out + 2, flv(1))
        call cascade_set_generate_t (cascade_set, n_out + 1, n_out + 2)
        call cascade_set_generate_t (cascade_set, n_out + 2, n_out + 1)
        call cascade_set_generate_scattering &
            (cascade_set, n11, n12, n21, n22, n_out + 1, n_out + 2)
        call cascade_set_generate_scattering &
            (cascade_set, n21, n22, n11, n12, n_out + 2, n_out + 1)
    end select
end subroutine cascade_set_generate_single

```

Sanity check: Before anything else is done, check if there could possibly be any phase space.

```

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
function phase_space_vanishes (sqrts, n_in, flv) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: mass
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mass_in, mass_out
    integer :: n_prt, n_flv
    flag = .false.
    if (sqrts <= 0) then
        call msg_error ("Phase space vanishes (sqrts must be positive)")
        flag = .true.; return
    end if
    n_prt = size (flv, 1)
    n_flv = size (flv, 2)
    allocate (mass (n_prt, n_flv), mass_in (n_flv), mass_out (n_flv))
    mass = flavor_get_mass (flv)
    mass_in = sum (mass(:n_in,:), 1)
    mass_out = sum (mass(n_in+1:,:), 1)
    if (any (mass_in > sqrts)) then
        call msg_error ("Mass sum of incoming particles " &
            // "is more than available energy")
        flag = .true.; return
    end if
    if (any (mass_out > sqrts)) then
        call msg_error ("Mass sum of outgoing particles " &
            // "is more than available energy")
        flag = .true.; return
    end if
end function phase_space_vanishes

```

### 11.7.15 Unit tests

```

<Cascades: public>+≡
    public :: cascade_test

<Cascades: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cascade_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u

```

```

    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Cascades: execute tests>
end subroutine cascade_test

```

Checking the basic setup up of the phase space cascade parameterizations.

```

<Cascades: execute tests>≡
    call test (cascade_1, "cascade_1", &
        "check cascade setup", &
        u, results)

<Cascades: tests>≡
    subroutine cascade_1 (u)
        use os_interface
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(flavor_t), dimension(5,2) :: flv
        type(cascade_set_t) :: cascade_set
        type(string_t) :: name, filename
        type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
        name = "SM"
        filename = "SM.mdl"

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: Cascades"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test cascade phase space functions"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initializing"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call os_data_init (os_data)

        call model_list%read_model (name, filename, os_data, model)
        call model_write (model, unit = u, verbose=.true.)

        call flavor_init (flv(1,1), 2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(2,1), -2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(3,1), 1, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(4,1), -1, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(5,1), 21, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(1,2), 2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(2,2), -2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(3,2), 2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(4,2), -2, model)
        call flavor_init (flv(5,2), 21, model)
        phs_par%sqrts = 1000._default
        phs_par%off_shell = 2

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Generating the cascades"
        write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call cascade_set_generate (cascade_set, model, 2, 3, flv, phs_par,.true.)
call cascade_set_write (cascade_set, u)
call cascade_set_write_file_format (cascade_set, u)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call cascade_set_final (cascade_set)
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: cascade_1"

end subroutine cascade_1

```

## 11.8 WOOD phase space

This is the module that interfaces the `phs_forests` phase-space treatment and the `cascades` module for generating phase-space channels. As an extension of the `phs_base` abstract type, the phase-space configuration and instance implement the standard API.

(Currently, this is the only generic phase-space implementation of WHIZARD. For trivial two-particle phase space, there is `phs_wood` as an alternative.)

`<phs_wood.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```

module phs_wood

<Use kinds>
<Use strings>
<Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use os_interface
  use md5
  use constants !NODEP!
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use variables
  use models
  use flavors
  use process_constants
  use sf_mappings
  use sf_base
  use phs_base
  use mappings
  use phs_forests
  use cascades

<Standard module head>

```

```

<PHS wood: public>

<PHS wood: types>

contains

<PHS wood: procedures>

<PHS wood: tests>

end module phs_wood

```

### 11.8.1 Configuration

```

<PHS wood: public>≡
    public :: phs_wood_config_t

<PHS wood: types>≡
    type, extends (phs_config_t) :: phs_wood_config_t
        character(32) :: md5sum_forest = ""
        integer :: io_unit = 0
        logical :: io_unit_keep_open = .false.
        logical :: use_equivalences = .false.
        logical :: fatal_beam_decay = .true.
        type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defaults
        type(phs_parameters_t) :: par
        type(string_t) :: run_id
        type(cascade_set_t), allocatable :: cascade_set
        type(phs_forest_t) :: forest
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    contains
        <PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>
    end type phs_wood_config_t

```

Finalizer. We should delete the cascade set and the forest subobject.

Also close the I/O unit, just in case. (We assume that `io_unit` is not standard input/output.)

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => phs_wood_config_final

<PHS wood: procedures>≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_final (object)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
        logical :: opened
        if (object%io_unit /= 0) then
            inquire (unit = object%io_unit, opened = opened)
            if (opened) close (object%io_unit)
        end if
        call object%clear_phase_space ()
        call phs_forest_final (object%forest)
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_final

```



Output. The contents of the PHS forest are not printed explicitly.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => phs_wood_config_write

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_write (object, unit)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") &
            "Partonic phase-space configuration (phase-space forest):"
        call object%base_write (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Phase-space configuration parameters:"
        call phs_parameters_write (object%par, u)
        call object%mapping_defaults%write (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Run ID: ", char (object%run_id), ""
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_write

```

Print the PHS forest contents.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_forest => phs_wood_config_write_forest

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_write_forest (object, unit)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        call phs_forest_write (object%forest, u)
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_write_forest

```

Set the phase-space parameters that the configuration generator requests.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_parameters => phs_wood_config_set_parameters

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_set_parameters (phs_config, par)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in) :: par
        phs_config%par = par
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_set_parameters

```

Enable the generation of channel equivalences (when calling `configure`).

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: enable_equivalences => phs_wood_config_enable_equivalences

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_enable_equivalences (phs_config)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        phs_config%use_equivalences = .true.
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_enable_equivalences

```

Set the phase-space mapping parameters that the configuration generator requests.g

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_mapping_defaults => phs_wood_config_set_mapping_defaults
(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_set_mapping_defaults (phs_config, mapping_defaults)
    class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in) :: mapping_defaults
    phs_config%mapping_defaults = mapping_defaults
  end subroutine phs_wood_config_set_mapping_defaults

```

Define the input stream for the phase-space file as an open logical unit. The unit must be connected.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_input => phs_wood_config_set_input
(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_set_input (phs_config, unit)
    class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    phs_config%io_unit = unit
    rewind (unit)
  end subroutine phs_wood_config_set_input

```

### 11.8.2 Phase-space generation

This subroutine generates a phase space configuration using the `cascades` module. Note that this may take time, and the `cascade_set` subobject may consume a large amount of memory.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: generate_phase_space => phs_wood_config_generate_phase_space
(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_generate_phase_space (phs_config)
    class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    integer :: off_shell, extra_off_shell
    call msg_message ("Phase space: generating configuration ...")
    off_shell = phs_config%par%off_shell
    allocate (phs_config%cascade_set)
    do extra_off_shell = 0, max (phs_config%n_tot - 3, 0)
      phs_config%par%off_shell = off_shell + extra_off_shell
      call cascade_set_generate (phs_config%cascade_set, &
        phs_config%model, phs_config%n_in, phs_config%n_out, &
        phs_config%flv, &
        phs_config%par, phs_config%fatal_beam_decay)
      if (cascade_set_is_valid (phs_config%cascade_set)) then
        exit
      else
        call msg_message ("Phase space: ... failed. &
          &Increasing phs_off_shell ...")
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine

```

```

    if (cascade_set_is_valid (phs_config%cascade_set)) then
        call msg_message ("Phase space: ... success.")
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Phase-space: generation failed")
    end if
end subroutine phs_wood_config_generate_phase_space

```

Using the generated phase-space configuration, write an appropriate phase-space file to the stored (or explicitly specified) I/O unit.

*(PHS wood: phs\_wood\_config: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure :: write_phase_space => phs_wood_config_write_phase_space

```

*(PHS wood: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_wood_config_write_phase_space (phs_config, &
    filename_vis, unit)
class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: filename_vis
type(string_t) :: setenv_tex, setenv_mp, pipe, pipe_dvi
integer :: u, unit_tex, unit_dev, status
if (allocated (phs_config%cascade_set)) then
    if (present (unit)) then
        u = unit
    else
        u = phs_config%io_unit
    end if
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "process ", char (phs_config%id)
    write (u, "(A)")
    call cascade_set_write_process_bincode_format (phs_config%cascade_set, u)
    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A32,A)") "md5sum_process      = ", &
        "'", phs_config%md5sum_process, "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A32,A)") "md5sum_model_par  = ", &
        "'", phs_config%md5sum_model_par, "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A32,A)") "md5sum_phs_config = ", &
        "'", phs_config%md5sum_phs_config, "'"
    call phs_parameters_write (phs_config%par, u)
    call cascade_set_write_file_format (phs_config%cascade_set, u)
    if (phs_config%vis_channels) then
        unit_tex = free_unit ()
        open (unit=unit_tex, file=char(filename_vis // ".tex"), &
            action="write", status="replace")
        call cascade_set_write_graph_format (phs_config%cascade_set, &
            filename_vis // "-graphs", phs_config%id, unit_tex)
        close (unit_tex)
        call msg_message ("Phase space: visualizing channels in file " &
            // char(trim(filename_vis)) // "...")
        if (phs_config%os_data%event_analysis_ps) then
            BLOCK: do
                unit_dev = free_unit ()
                open (file = "/dev/null", unit = unit_dev, &
                    action = "write", iostat = status)
                if (status /= 0) then
                    pipe = ""

```

```

        pipe_dvi = ""
    else
        pipe = " > /dev/null"
        pipe_dvi = " 2>/dev/null 1>/dev/null"
    end if
    close (unit_dev)
    if (phs_config%os_data%whizard_texpath /= "") then
        setenv_tex = "TEXINPUTS=" // &
            phs_config%os_data%whizard_texpath // " :$TEXINPUTS "
        setenv_mp = "MPINPUTS=" // &
            phs_config%os_data%whizard_texpath // " :$MPINPUTS "
    else
        setenv_tex = ""
        setenv_mp = ""
    end if
    call os_system_call (setenv_tex // &
        phs_config%os_data%latex // " " // &
        filename_vis // ".tex " // pipe, status)
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
    if (phs_config%os_data%mpost /= "") then
        call os_system_call (setenv_mp // &
            phs_config%os_data%mpost // " " // &
            filename_vis // "-graphs.mp" // pipe, status)
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Could not use MetaPOST.")
    end if
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
    call os_system_call (setenv_tex // &
        phs_config%os_data%latex // " " // &
        filename_vis // ".tex" // pipe, status)
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
    call os_system_call &
        (phs_config%os_data%dvips // " -o " // filename_vis &
        // ".ps " // filename_vis // ".dvi" // pipe_dvi, status)
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
    if (phs_config%os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
        call os_system_call (phs_config%os_data%ps2pdf // " " // &
            filename_vis // ".ps", status)
        if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
    end if
    exit BLOCK
end do BLOCK
if (status /= 0) then
    call msg_error ("Unable to compile analysis output file")
end if
end if
else
    call msg_fatal ("Phase-space configuration: &
        &no phase space object generated")
end if
end subroutine phs_wood_config_write_phase_space

```

Clear the phase-space configuration. This is useful since the object may become

really large.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: clear_phase_space => phs_wood_config_clear_phase_space

(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_clear_phase_space (phs_config)
    class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    if (allocated (phs_config%cascade_set)) then
      call cascade_set_final (phs_config%cascade_set)
      deallocate (phs_config%cascade_set)
    end if
  end subroutine phs_wood_config_clear_phase_space

```

### 11.8.3 Phase-space configuration

We read the phase-space configuration from the stored I/O unit. If this is not set, we assume that we have to generate a phase space configuration. When done, we open a scratch file and write the configuration.

If `rebuild` is set, we should trash any existing phase space file and build a new one. Otherwise, we try to use an old one, which we check for existence and integrity. If `ignore_mismatch` is set, we reuse an existing file even if it does not match the current setup.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: configure => phs_wood_config_configure

(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_configure (phs_config, sqrts, &
    sqrts_fixed, cm_frame, azimuthal_dependence, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
    class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    logical, intent(in), optional :: sqrts_fixed
    logical, intent(in), optional :: cm_frame
    logical, intent(in), optional :: azimuthal_dependence
    logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
    type(string_t) :: filename, filename_vis
    logical :: variable_limits
    logical :: ok, exist, found, check, match, rebuild_phs
    integer :: g, c0, c1, n
    phs_config%sqrts = sqrts
    phs_config%par%sqrts = sqrts
    if (present (sqrts_fixed)) &
      phs_config%sqrts_fixed = sqrts_fixed
    if (present (cm_frame)) &
      phs_config%cm_frame = cm_frame
    if (present (azimuthal_dependence)) &
      phs_config%azimuthal_dependence = azimuthal_dependence
    if (present (rebuild)) then
      rebuild_phs = rebuild
    else
      rebuild_phs = .true.
    end if
    if (present (ignore_mismatch)) then

```

```

        check = .not. ignore_mismatch
        if (ignore_mismatch) &
            call msg_warning ("Reading phs file: MD5 sum check disabled")
    else
        check = .true.
    end if
    phs_config%md5sum_forest = ""
    call phs_config%compute_md5sum ()
    if (phs_config%io_unit == 0) then
        if (phs_config%run_id /= "") then
            filename = phs_config%id // "." // phs_config%run_id // ".phs"
            filename_vis = phs_config%id // "." // phs_config%run_id // "_phs"
        else
            filename = phs_config%id // ".phs"
            filename_vis = phs_config%id // "_phs"
        end if
        if (.not. rebuild_phs) then
            if (check) then
                call phs_config%read_phs_file (exist, found, match)
                rebuild_phs = .not. (exist .and. found .and. match)
            else
                call phs_config%read_phs_file (exist, found)
                rebuild_phs = .not. (exist .and. found)
            end if
        end if
        if (rebuild_phs) then
            call phs_config%generate_phase_space ()
            phs_config%io_unit = free_unit ()
            if (phs_config%id /= "") then
                call msg_message ("Phase space: writing configuration file '" &
                    // char (filename) // "'")
                open (phs_config%io_unit, file = char (filename), &
                    status = "replace", action = "readwrite")
            else
                open (phs_config%io_unit, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
            end if
            call phs_config%write_phase_space (filename_vis)
            rewind (phs_config%io_unit)
        else
            call msg_message ("Phase space: keeping configuration file '" &
                // char (filename) // "'")
        end if
    end if
    if (phs_config%io_unit == 0) then
        ok = .true.
    else
        call phs_forest_read (phs_config%forest, phs_config%io_unit, &
            phs_config%id, phs_config%n_in, phs_config%n_out, &
            phs_config%model, ok)
        if (.not. phs_config%io_unit_keep_open) then
            close (phs_config%io_unit)
            phs_config%io_unit = 0
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```

if (ok) then
  call phs_forest_set_flavors (phs_config%forest, phs_config%flv(:,1))
  variable_limits = .not. phs_config%cm_frame
  call phs_forest_set_parameters &
    (phs_config%forest, phs_config%mapping_defaults, variable_limits)
  call phs_forest_setup_prt_combinations (phs_config%forest)
  phs_config%n_channel = phs_forest_get_n_channels (phs_config%forest)
  phs_config%n_par = phs_forest_get_n_parameters (phs_config%forest)
  allocate (phs_config%channel (phs_config%n_channel))
  if (phs_config%use_equivalences) then
    call phs_forest_set_equivalences (phs_config%forest)
    call phs_forest_get_equivalences (phs_config%forest, &
      phs_config%channel, phs_config%azimuthal_dependence)
    phs_config%provides_equivalences = .true.
  end if
  call phs_forest_set_s_mappings (phs_config%forest)
  call phs_config%record_on_shell ()
  if (phs_config%mapping_defaults%enable_s_mapping) then
    call phs_config%record_s_mappings ()
  end if
  allocate (phs_config%chain (phs_config%n_channel), source = 0)
  do g = 1, phs_forest_get_n_groves (phs_config%forest)
    call phs_forest_get_grove_bounds (phs_config%forest, g, c0, c1, n)
    phs_config%chain (c0:c1) = g
  end do
  phs_config%provides_chains = .true.
  call phs_config%compute_md5sum_forest ()
else
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)" &
    "Phase space: process '", &
    char (phs_config%id), "' not found in configuration file"
  )
  call msg_fatal ()
end if
end subroutine phs_wood_config_configure

```

Identify resonances which are marked by s-channel mappings for the whole phase space and report them to the channel array.

*(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡*

procedure :: record\_s\_mappings => phs\_wood\_config\_record\_s\_mappings

*(PHS wood: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine phs_wood_config_record_s_mappings (phs_config)
  class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
  logical :: flag
  real(default) :: mass, width
  integer :: c
  do c = 1, phs_config%n_channel
    call phs_forest_get_s_mapping (phs_config%forest, c, flag, mass, width)
    if (flag) then
      if (mass == 0) then
        call msg_fatal ("Phase space: s-channel resonance " &
          // " has zero mass")
      end if
      if (width == 0) then

```

```

        call msg_fatal ("Phase space: s-channel resonance " &
            // " has zero width")
    end if
    call phs_config%channel(c)%set_resonant (mass, width)
end if
end do
end subroutine phs_wood_config_record_s_mappings

```

Identify on-shell mappings for the whole phase space and report them to the channel array.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: record_on_shell => phs_wood_config_record_on_shell

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_record_on_shell (phs_config)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        logical :: flag
        real(default) :: mass
        integer :: c
        do c = 1, phs_config%n_channel
            call phs_forest_get_on_shell (phs_config%forest, c, flag, mass)
            if (flag) then
                call phs_config%channel(c)%set_on_shell (mass)
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_record_on_shell

```

The MD5 sum of the forest is computed in addition to the MD5 sum of the configuration. The reason is that the forest may depend on a user-provided external file. On the other hand, this MD5 sum encodes all information that is relevant for further processing. Therefore, the `get_md5sum` method returns this result, once it is available.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_md5sum_forest => phs_wood_config_compute_md5sum_forest

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_config_compute_md5sum_forest (phs_config)
        class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
        integer :: u
        u = free_unit ()
        open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
        call phs_config%write_forest (u)
        rewind (u)
        phs_config%md5sum_forest = md5sum (u)
        close (u)
    end subroutine phs_wood_config_compute_md5sum_forest

```

Return the most relevant MD5 sum. This overrides the method of the base type.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum => phs_wood_config_get_md5sum

```



```

(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
function phs_wood_config_get_md5sum (phs_config) result (md5sum)
  class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config
  character(32) :: md5sum
  if (phs_config%md5sum_forest /= "") then
    md5sum = phs_config%md5sum_forest
  else
    md5sum = phs_config%md5sum_phs_config
  end if
end function phs_wood_config_get_md5sum

```

Check whether a phase-space configuration for the current process exists. We look for the phase-space file that should correspond to the current process. If we find it, we check the MD5 sums stored in the file against the MD5 sums in the current configuration (if required).

If successful, read the PHS file.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: read_phs_file => phs_wood_read_phs_file

(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
subroutine phs_wood_read_phs_file (phs_config, exist, found, match)
  class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(inout) :: phs_config
  logical, intent(out) :: exist
  logical, intent(out) :: found
  logical, intent(out), optional :: match
  type(string_t) :: filename
  integer :: u
  filename = phs_config%id // ".phs"
  inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
  if (exist) then
    u = free_unit ()
    open (u, file = char (filename), action = "read", status = "old")
    call phs_forest_read (phs_config%forest, u, &
      phs_config%id, phs_config%n_in, phs_config%n_out, &
      phs_config%model, found, &
      phs_config%md5sum_process, &
      phs_config%md5sum_model_par, &
      phs_config%md5sum_phs_config, &
      match = match)
    close (u)
  else
    found = .false.
    if (present (match)) match = .false.
  end if
end subroutine phs_wood_read_phs_file

```

Startup message, after configuration is complete.

```

(PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: startup_message => phs_wood_config_startup_message

(PHS wood: procedures)+≡
subroutine phs_wood_config_startup_message (phs_config, unit)
  class(phs_wood_config_t), intent(in) :: phs_config

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: n_groves, n_eq
n_groves = phs_forest_get_n_groves (phs_config%forest)
n_eq = phs_forest_get_n_equivalences (phs_config%forest)
call phs_config%base_startup_message (unit)
if (phs_config%n_channel == 1) then
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(IO,A))") &
    "Phase space: found ", phs_config%n_channel, &
    " channel, collected in ", n_groves, &
    " grove."
else if (n_groves == 1) then
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(IO,A))") &
    "Phase space: found ", phs_config%n_channel, &
    " channels, collected in ", n_groves, &
    " grove."
else
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(IO,A))") &
    "Phase space: found ", phs_config%n_channel, &
    " channels, collected in ", &
    phs_forest_get_n_groves (phs_config%forest), &
    " groves."
end if
call msg_message (unit = unit)
if (phs_config%use_equivalences) then
  if (n_eq == 1) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,IO,A)") &
      "Phase space: Using ", n_eq, &
      " equivalence between channels."
  else
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,IO,A)") &
      "Phase space: Using ", n_eq, &
      " equivalences between channels."
  end if
else
  write (msg_buffer, "(A)") &
    "Phase space: no equivalences between channels used."
end if
call msg_message (unit = unit)
write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,IO,1x,A))") &
  "Phase space: wood"
call msg_message (unit = unit)
end subroutine phs_wood_config_startup_message

```

Allocate an instance: the actual phase-space object.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood config: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: allocate_instance => phs_wood_config_allocate_instance

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_config_allocate_instance (phs)
    class(phs_t), intent(inout), pointer :: phs
    allocate (phs_wood_t :: phs)
  end subroutine phs_wood_config_allocate_instance

```

### 11.8.4 Kinematics implementation

We generate  $\cos\theta$  and  $\phi$  uniformly, covering the solid angle.

```
<PHS wood: public>+≡
    public :: phs_wood_t
<PHS wood: types>+≡
    type, extends (phs_t) :: phs_wood_t
        real(default) :: sqrts = 0
        type(phs_forest_t) :: forest
    contains
        <PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>
    end type phs_wood_t
```

Output. The `verbose` setting is irrelevant, we just display the contents of the base object.

```
<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => phs_wood_write
<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_write (object, unit, verbose)
        class(phs_wood_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        call object%base_write (u)
    end subroutine phs_wood_write
```

Write the forest separately.

```
<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_forest => phs_wood_write_forest
<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_write_forest (object, unit)
        class(phs_wood_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        call phs_forest_write (object%forest, u)
    end subroutine phs_wood_write_forest
```

Finalizer.

```
<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => phs_wood_final
<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
    subroutine phs_wood_final (object)
        class(phs_wood_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call phs_forest_final (object%forest)
    end subroutine phs_wood_final
```

Initialization. We allocate arrays (`base_init`) and adjust the phase-space volume. The two-particle phase space volume is

$$\Phi_2 = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^5} = 2.55294034614 \times 10^{-5} \quad (11.64)$$

independent of the particle masses.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => phs_wood_init
<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_init (phs, phs_config)
    class(phs_wood_t), intent(out) :: phs
    class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: phs_config
    call phs%base_init (phs_config)
    select type (phs_config)
      type is (phs_wood_config_t)
        phs%forest = phs_config%forest
      end select
  end subroutine phs_wood_init

```

### 11.8.5 Evaluation

We compute the outgoing momenta from the incoming momenta and the input parameter set `r_in` in channel `r_in`. We also compute the `r` parameters and Jacobians `f` for all other channels.

We do *not* need to apply a transformation from/to the c.m. frame, because in `phs_base` the momenta are already boosted to the c.m. frame before assigning them in the `phs` object, and inversely boosted when extracting them.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_selected_channel => phs_wood_evaluate_selected_channel
  procedure :: evaluate_other_channels => phs_wood_evaluate_other_channels
<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_evaluate_selected_channel (phs, c_in, r_in)
    class(phs_wood_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    integer, intent(in) :: c_in
    real(default), intent(in), dimension(:) :: r_in
    logical :: ok
    phs%q_defined = .false.
    if (phs%p_defined) then
      call phs_forest_set_prt_in (phs%forest, phs%p)
      phs%r(:,c_in) = r_in
      call phs_forest_evaluate_selected_channel (phs%forest, &
        c_in, phs%active_channel, &
        phs%sqrts_hat, phs%r, phs%f, phs%volume, ok)
      if (ok) then
        phs%q = phs_forest_get_momenta_out (phs%forest)
        phs%q_defined = .true.
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine phs_wood_evaluate_selected_channel

```

```

subroutine phs_wood_evaluate_other_channels (phs, c_in)
  class(phs_wood_t), intent(inout) :: phs
  integer, intent(in) :: c_in
  if (phs%q_defined) then
    call phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels (phs%forest, &
      c_in, phs%active_channel, &
      phs%sqrts_hat, phs%r, phs%f, combine=.true.)
    phs%r_defined = .true.
  end if
end subroutine phs_wood_evaluate_other_channels

```

Inverse evaluation.

```

<PHS wood: phs wood: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: inverse => phs_wood_inverse

<PHS wood: procedures>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_inverse (phs)
    class(phs_wood_t), intent(inout) :: phs
    if (phs%p_defined .and. phs%q_defined) then
      call phs_forest_set_prt_in (phs%forest, phs%p)
      call phs_forest_set_prt_out (phs%forest, phs%q)
      call phs_forest_recover_channel (phs%forest, &
        1, &
        phs%sqrts_hat, phs%r, phs%f, phs%volume)
      call phs_forest_evaluate_other_channels (phs%forest, &
        1, phs%active_channel, &
        phs%sqrts_hat, phs%r, phs%f, combine=.false.)
      phs%r_defined = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine phs_wood_inverse

```

## 11.8.6 Unit tests

```

<PHS wood: public>+≡
  public :: phs_wood_test

<PHS wood: tests>≡
  subroutine phs_wood_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <PHS wood: execute tests>
  end subroutine phs_wood_test

<PHS wood: public>+≡
  public :: phs_wood_vis_test

<PHS wood: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_vis_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <PHS wood: execute vis tests>
  end subroutine phs_wood_vis_test

```

## Phase-space configuration data

Construct and display a test phase-space configuration object. Also check the `azimuthal_dependence` flag.

This auxiliary routine writes a phase-space configuration file to unit `u_phs`.

*(PHS wood: public)*+≡

```
public :: write_test_phs_file
```

*(PHS wood: tests)*+≡

```
subroutine write_test_phs_file (u_phs, procname)
  integer, intent(in) :: u_phs
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: procname
  if (present (procname)) then
    write (u_phs, "(A,A)") "process ", char (procname)
  else
    write (u_phs, "(A)") "process testproc"
  end if
  write (u_phs, "(A,A)") "  md5sum_process   = ", ''''
  write (u_phs, "(A,A)") "  md5sum_model_par  = ", ''''
  write (u_phs, "(A,A)") "  md5sum_phs_config = ", ''''
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  sqrts              = 1000"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  m_threshold_s   = 50"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  m_threshold_t   = 100"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  off_shell       = 2"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  t_channel       = 6"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  keep_nonresonant = T"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  grove #1"
  write (u_phs, "(A)") "  tree 3"
end subroutine write_test_phs_file
```

*(PHS wood: execute tests)*≡

```
call test (phs_wood_1, "phs_wood_1", &
  "phase-space configuration", &
  u, results)
```

*(PHS wood: tests)*+≡

```
subroutine phs_wood_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data
  type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defaults
  real(default) :: sqrts
  integer :: u_phs, iostat
  character(32) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: phs_wood_1"
  write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: initialize and display &
    &phase-space configuration data"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
```

```

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_1"), process_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a scratch phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_phs = free_unit ()
open (u_phs, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
call write_test_phs_file (u_phs, var_str ("phs_wood_1"))
rewind (u_phs)
do
    read (u_phs, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
    if (iostat /= 0)  exit
    write (u, "(A)")  trim (buffer)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup phase-space configuration object"
write (u, "(A)")

mapping_defaults%step_mapping = .false.

allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_input (u_phs)
    call phs_data%set_mapping_defaults (mapping_defaults)
end select

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs_data%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%write_forest (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

close (u_phs)
call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()

```

```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_1"

end subroutine phs_wood_1

```

## Phase space evaluation

Compute kinematics for given parameters, also invert the calculation.

*(PHS wood: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (phs_wood_2, "phs_wood_2", &
  "phase-space evaluation", &
  u, results)

```

*(PHS wood: tests)+≡*

```

subroutine phs_wood_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
  real(default) :: sqrts, E
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
  class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p, q
  integer :: u_phs

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test simple single-channel phase space"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
  call flavor_init (flv, 25, model)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and a matching &
    &phase-space configuration"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_2"), process_data)
  u_phs = free_unit ()
  open (u_phs, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
  call write_test_phs_file (u_phs, var_str ("phs_wood_2"))
  rewind (u_phs)

  allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
  call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
  select type (phs_data)
  type is (phs_wood_config_t)

```



```

        call phs_data%set_input (u_phs)
end select

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs%write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

E = sqrts / 2
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (flv)**2), 3)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point &
    &for x = 0.125, 0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, [0.125_default, 0.5_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call phs%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
select type (phs)
type is (phs_wood_t)
    call phs%write_forest (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

```

```

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()
call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call phs%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
select type (phs)
type is (phs_wood_t)
    call phs%write_forest (u)
end select

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

close (u_phs)
call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_2"

end subroutine phs_wood_2

```

## Phase-space generation

Generate phase space for a simple process.

```

<PHS wood: execute tests>+≡
    call test (phs_wood_3, "phs_wood_3", &
        "phase-space generation", &
        u, results)

<PHS wood: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_wood_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data
    integer :: iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate a phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
        var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

```

```

call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and phase-space parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_3"), process_data)
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

phs_par%sqrts = 1000
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    phs_data%io_unit_keep_open = .true.
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a scratch phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%configure (phs_par%sqrts)

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    rewind (phs_data%io_unit)
    do
        read (phs_data%io_unit, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat /= 0) exit
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_3"

end subroutine phs_wood_3

```

### Nontrivial process

Generate phase space for a  $2 \rightarrow 3$  process.

*(PHS wood: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (phs_wood_4, "phs_wood_4", &
    "nontrivial process", &
    u, results)

```

*(PHS wood: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine phs_wood_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
  type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable, target :: phs_data
  integer :: iostat
  character(80) :: buffer
  class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
  real(default) :: E, pL
  type(vector4_t), dimension(2) :: p
  type(vector4_t), dimension(3) :: q

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate a phase-space configuration"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

  call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and phase-space parameters"
  write (u, "(A)")

  process_data%id = "phs_wood_4"
  process_data%model_name = "Test"
  process_data%n_in = 2
  process_data%n_out = 3
  process_data%n_flv = 1
  allocate (process_data%flv_state (process_data%n_in + process_data%n_out, &
    process_data%n_flv))
  process_data%flv_state(:,1) = [25, 25, 25, 6, -6]

  allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
  call phs_data%init(process_data, model)

  phs_par%sqrts = 1000
  select type (phs_data)
  type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    phs_data%io_unit_keep_open = .true.
  end select

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a scratch phase-space file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call phs_data%configure (phs_par%sqrts)

```

```

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    rewind (phs_data%io_unit)
    do
        read (phs_data%io_unit, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat /= 0)  exit
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize the phase-space instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set incoming momenta"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    E = phs_data%sqrts / 2
    pL = sqrt (E**2 - flavor_get_mass (phs_data%flv(1,1))**2)
end select
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, pL, 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -pL, 3)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute phase-space point &
    &for x = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%evaluate_selected_channel (1, &
    [0.1_default, 0.2_default, 0.3_default, 0.4_default, 0.5_default])
call phs%evaluate_other_channels (1)
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inverse kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs%get_outgoing_momenta (q)
call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%allocate_instance (phs)
call phs%init (phs_data)

call phs%set_incoming_momenta (p)
call phs%compute_flux ()

```

```

call phs%set_outgoing_momenta (q)

call phs%inverse ()
call phs%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call phs%final ()
deallocate (phs)

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_4"

end subroutine phs_wood_4

```

## Equivalences

Generate phase space for a simple process, including channel equivalences.

```

<PHS wood: execute tests>+≡
  call test (phs_wood_5, "phs_wood_5", &
    "equivalences", &
    u, results)

<PHS wood: tests>+≡
  subroutine phs_wood_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate a phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

    call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and phase-space parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_5"), process_data)

```

```

allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

phs_par%sqrts = 1000
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    call phs_data%enable_equivalences ()
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a scratch phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%configure (phs_par%sqrts)
call phs_data%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%write_forest (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_5"

end subroutine phs_wood_5

```

## MD5 sum checks

Generate phase space for a simple process. Repeat this with and without parameter change.

```

<PHS wood: execute tests>+≡
    call test (phs_wood_6, "phs_wood_6", &
        "phase-space generation", &
        u, results)

<PHS wood: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_wood_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data

```

```

logical :: exist, found, match
integer :: u_phs
character(*), parameter :: filename = "phs_wood_6_p.phs"
type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_6"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate and check phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process and phase-space parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_6"), process_data)
process_data%id = "phs_wood_6_p"
process_data%md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)

phs_par%sqrts = 1000
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Remove previous phs file, if any"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file = filename, exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    u_phs = free_unit ()
    open (u_phs, file = filename, action = "write")
    close (u_phs, status = "delete")
end if

write (u, "(A)")  "* Check phase-space file (should fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%read_phs_file (exist, found, match)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "exist = ", exist
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "found = ", found
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "match = ", match
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a phase-space file"

```



```

write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%configure (phs_par%sqrts)

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (process)    = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_process, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (model par)  = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_model_par, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (phs config) = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_phs_config, "'"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Check MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%final ()
deallocate (phs_data)
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
phs_par%sqrts = 1000
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    phs_data%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
    phs_data%par%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
end select
call phs_data%compute_md5sum ()

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (process)    = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_process, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (model par)  = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_model_par, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (phs config) = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_phs_config, "'"

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%read_phs_file (exist, found, match)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "exist = ", exist
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "found = ", found
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "match = ", match
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify sqrts and check MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%final ()
deallocate (phs_data)
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
phs_par%sqrts = 500
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify phs parameter and check MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%final ()
deallocate (phs_data)
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
process_data%md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
phs_par%sqrts = 1000
phs_par%off_shell = 17
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    phs_data%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
    phs_data%par%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
end select
call phs_data%compute_md5sum ()

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (process)    = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_process, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (model par)  = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_model_par, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (phs config) = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_phs_config, "'"

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%read_phs_file (exist, found, match)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "exist = ", exist
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "found = ", found
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "match = ", match
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify model parameter and check MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")

call phs_data%final ()
deallocate (phs_data)
allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("ms"), 100._default, &
    is_known = .true.)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
phs_par%sqrts = 1000
phs_par%off_shell = 1
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_parameters (phs_par)
    phs_data%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
    phs_data%par%sqrts = phs_par%sqrts
end select
call phs_data%compute_md5sum ()

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (process)    = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_process, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (model par) = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_model_par, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (phs config) = '", &
    phs_data%md5sum_phs_config, "'"

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%read_phs_file (exist, found, match)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "exist = ", exist
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "found = ", found
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "match = ", match
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_6"

end subroutine phs_wood_6

```

```

<PHS wood: execute vis tests>≡
call test (phs_wood_vis_1, "phs_wood_vis_1", &
    "visualizing phase space channels", &
    u, results)

<PHS wood: tests>+≡
subroutine phs_wood_vis_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_data
    type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defaults
    type(string_t) :: vis_file, pdf_file, ps_file
    real(default) :: sqrts
    logical :: exist, exist_pdf, exist_ps
    integer :: u_phs, iostat, u_vis
    character(95) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: phs_wood_vis_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: visualizing the &
        &phase-space configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process"
write (u, "(A)")

call init_test_process_data (var_str ("phs_wood_vis_1"), process_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a scratch phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_phs = free_unit ()
open (u_phs, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
call write_test_phs_file (u_phs, var_str ("phs_wood_vis_1"))
rewind (u_phs)
do
    read (u_phs, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
    if (iostat /= 0) exit
    write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup phase-space configuration object"
write (u, "(A)")

mapping_defaults%step_mapping = .false.

allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs_data)
call phs_data%init (process_data, model)
select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%set_input (u_phs)
    call phs_data%set_mapping_defaults (mapping_defaults)
    phs_data%os_data = os_data
    phs_data%io_unit = 0
    phs_data%io_unit_keep_open = .true.
    phs_data%vis_channels = .true.
end select

sqrts = 1000._default
call phs_data%configure (sqrts)

call phs_data%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

select type (phs_data)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs_data%write_forest (u)
end select

vis_file = "phs_wood_vis_1_phs.tex"

```

```

ps_file = "phs_wood_vis_1_phs.ps"
pdf_file = "phs_wood_vis_1_phs.pdf"
inquire (file = char (vis_file), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    u_vis = free_unit ()
    open (u_vis, file = char (vis_file), action = "read", status = "old")
    iostat = 0
    do while (iostat == 0)
        read (u_vis, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat == 0) write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_vis)
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Visualize LaTeX file is missing]"
end if
inquire (file = char (ps_file), exist = exist_ps)
if (exist_ps) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[Visualize Postscript file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Visualize Postscript file is missing/non-regular]"
end if
inquire (file = char (pdf_file), exist = exist_pdf)
if (exist_pdf) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[Visualize PDF file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Visualize PDF file is missing/non-regular]"
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

close (u_phs)
call phs_data%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: phs_wood_vis_1"

end subroutine phs_wood_vis_1

```

## Chapter 12

# Random Number Generation

The integration and event generation modules need a random-number generator. Here, we provide an abstract interface for a random-number generator and a concrete implementation.

**Module rng\_base:** Abstract type for interfacing or implementing a r.n.g.

**Module rng\_tao:** Implementation as an interface to the TAO random number generator which the VAMP package provides.

**Module selectors:** Select from a range of integers based on a set of weights and a random-number generator.

### 12.1 Generic Random-Number Generator

For all generator implementations, we define a **rng** type which represents the state of a random-number generator with the associated methods that produce a random number. Furthermore, we define a **rng\_factory** type. An object of this type is capable of allocating a sequence of **rng** objects. These generator states should be, if possible, statistically independent, so they can be used in parallel in different places of the event-generation chain.

```
<rng_base.f90>≡  
  <File header>
```

```
module rng_base
```

```
  use kinds !NODEP!
```

```
  <Use file utils>
```

```
  use unit_tests
```

```
  <Standard module head>
```

```
  <RNG base: public>
```

```
  <RNG base: types>
```

```
<RNG base: interfaces>
```

```
<RNG base: test types>
```

```
contains
```

```
<RNG base: tests>
```

```
end module rng_base
```

### 12.1.1 Generator type

The `rng` object is actually the state of the random-number generator. The methods `initialize/reset` and `call` the generator for this state.

```
<RNG base: public>≡
```

```
public :: rng_t
```

```
<RNG base: types>≡
```

```
type, abstract :: rng_t
```

```
contains
```

```
<RNG base: rng: TBP>
```

```
end type rng_t
```

The `init` method initializes the generator and sets a seed. We should implement the interface such that a single integer is sufficient for a seed.

The seed may be omitted. The behavior without seed is not defined, however.

```
<RNG base: rng: TBP>≡
```

```
procedure (rng_init), deferred :: init
```

```
<RNG base: interfaces>≡
```

```
abstract interface
```

```
subroutine rng_init (rng, seed)
```

```
import
```

```
class(rng_t), intent(out) :: rng
```

```
integer, intent(in), optional :: seed
```

```
end subroutine rng_init
```

```
end interface
```

The `final` method deallocates memory where necessary and allows for another call of `init` to reset the generator.

```
<RNG base: rng: TBP>+≡
```

```
procedure (rng_final), deferred :: final
```

```
<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
```

```
abstract interface
```

```
subroutine rng_final (rng)
```

```
import
```

```
class(rng_t), intent(inout) :: rng
```

```
end subroutine rng_final
```

```
end interface
```



Output. We should, at least, identify the generator.

```

<RNG base: rng: TBP>+≡
  procedure (rng_write), deferred :: write
<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_write (rng, unit, indent)
      import
      class(rng_t), intent(in) :: rng
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    end subroutine rng_write
  end interface

```

These routines generate a single and an array of default-precision random numbers, respectively.

```

<RNG base: rng: TBP>+≡
  generic :: generate => generate_single, generate_array
  procedure (rng_generate_single), deferred :: generate_single
  procedure (rng_generate_array), deferred :: generate_array
<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_generate_single (rng, x)
      import
      class(rng_t), intent(inout) :: rng
      real(default), intent(out) :: x
    end subroutine rng_generate_single
  end interface

  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_generate_array (rng, x)
      import
      class(rng_t), intent(inout) :: rng
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    end subroutine rng_generate_array
  end interface

```

### 12.1.2 RNG Factory

A factory object has a `make` method that allocates and initializes a new generator of appropriate type. It uses a 16-bit integer for initialization. For a real-life implementation, the factory should return a sequence of statistically independent generators, and for different seeds, the sequences should also be independent.

```

<RNG base: public>+≡
  public :: rng_factory_t
<RNG base: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: rng_factory_t
    contains
    <RNG base: rng factory: TBP>
  end type rng_factory_t

```

Output. Should be short, just report the seed and current state of the factory.

```

<RNG base: rng factory: TBP>≡
  procedure (rng_factory_write), deferred :: write

<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_factory_write (object, unit)
      import
      class(rng_factory_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    end subroutine rng_factory_write
  end interface

```

Initialize. It should be possible to do this repeatedly, resetting the state. The default seed should be 0.

```

<RNG base: rng factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure (rng_factory_init), deferred :: init

<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_factory_init (factory, seed)
      import
      class(rng_factory_t), intent(out) :: factory
      integer(i16), intent(in), optional :: seed
    end subroutine rng_factory_init
  end interface

```

Spawn a new generator.

```

<RNG base: rng factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure (rng_factory_make), deferred :: make

<RNG base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine rng_factory_make (factory, rng)
      import
      class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout) :: factory
      class(rng_t), intent(out), allocatable :: rng
    end subroutine rng_factory_make
  end interface

```

### 12.1.3 Unit tests

```

<RNG base: public>+≡
  public :: rng_base_test

<RNG base: tests>≡
  subroutine rng_base_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <RNG base: execute tests>
  end subroutine rng_base_test

```

## Test generator

The test 'mock' random generator generates a repeating series with the numbers 0.1, 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 0.9. It has an integer stored as state. The integer must be one of 1, 3, 5, 7, 9.

```
<RNG base: public>+≡
    public :: rng_test_t

<RNG base: test types>≡
    type, extends (rng_t) :: rng_test_t
        integer :: state = 1
    contains
        procedure :: write => rng_test_write
        procedure :: init => rng_test_init
        procedure :: final => rng_test_final
        procedure :: generate_single => rng_test_generate_single
        procedure :: generate_array => rng_test_generate_array
    end type rng_test_t
```

Output. The state is a single number, so print it.

```
<RNG base: tests>+≡
    subroutine rng_test_write (rng, unit, indent)
        class(rng_test_t), intent(in) :: rng
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u, ind
        u = output_unit (unit)
        ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
        call write_indent (u, ind)
        write (u, "(A,IO,A)") "Random-number generator: &
            &test (state = ", rng%state, ")"
    end subroutine rng_test_write
```

The default seed is 1.

```
<RNG base: tests>+≡
    subroutine rng_test_init (rng, seed)
        class(rng_test_t), intent(out) :: rng
        integer, intent(in), optional :: seed
        if (present (seed)) rng%state = seed
    end subroutine rng_test_init
```

Nothing to finalize:

```
<RNG base: tests>+≡
    subroutine rng_test_final (rng)
        class(rng_test_t), intent(inout) :: rng
    end subroutine rng_test_final
```

Generate a single number and advance the state.

```
<RNG base: tests>+≡
    subroutine rng_test_generate_single (rng, x)
        class(rng_test_t), intent(inout) :: rng
        real(default), intent(out) :: x
        x = rng%state / 10._default
```

```

    rng%state = mod (rng%state + 2, 10)
end subroutine rng_test_generate_single

```

The array generator calls the single-item generator multiple times.

```

<RNG base: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_test_generate_array (rng, x)
  class(rng_test_t), intent(inout) :: rng
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (x)
    call rng%generate (x(i))
  end do
end subroutine rng_test_generate_array

```

### Test Factory

This factory makes `rng_test_t` generators, initialized with integers 1, 3, 5, 7, 9 if given the input 0, 1, 2, 3, 4. The generators within one sequence are all identical, however.

```

<RNG base: public>+≡
  public :: rng_test_factory_t

<RNG base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (rng_factory_t) :: rng_test_factory_t
    integer :: seed = 1
    contains
    <RNG base: rng test factory: TBP>
  end type rng_test_factory_t

```

Output.

```

<RNG base: rng test factory: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => rng_test_factory_write

<RNG base: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_test_factory_write (object, unit)
  class(rng_test_factory_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "RNG factory: test (", object%seed, ")"
end subroutine rng_test_factory_write

```

Initialize, translating the given seed.

```

<RNG base: rng test factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => rng_test_factory_init

<RNG base: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_test_factory_init (factory, seed)
  class(rng_test_factory_t), intent(out) :: factory
  integer(i16), intent(in), optional :: seed
  if (present (seed)) factory%seed = mod (seed * 2 + 1, 10)
end subroutine rng_test_factory_init

```

```

<RNG base: rng test factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make => rng_test_factory_make

<RNG base: tests>+≡
  subroutine rng_test_factory_make (factory, rng)
    class(rng_test_factory_t), intent(inout) :: factory
    class(rng_t), intent(out), allocatable :: rng
    allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
    select type (rng)
    type is (rng_test_t)
      call rng%init (int (factory%seed))
    end select
  end subroutine rng_test_factory_make

```

## Generator check

Initialize the generator and draw random numbers.

```

<RNG base: execute tests>≡
  call test (rng_base_1, "rng_base_1", &
    "rng initialization and call", &
    u, results)

<RNG base: tests>+≡
  subroutine rng_base_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    real(default) :: x
    real(default), dimension(2) :: x2

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rng_base_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and call a test random-number &
      &generator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize generator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
    call rng%init (3)

    call rng%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Get random number"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rng%generate (x)
    write (u, "(A,2(1x,F9.7))")  "x =", x

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Get random number pair"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call rng%generate (x2)
write (u, "(A,2(1x,F9.7))")  "x =", x2

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call rng%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rng_base_1"

end subroutine rng_base_1

```

## Factory check

Set up a factory and spawn generators.

```

<RNG base: execute tests>+≡
call test (rng_base_2, "rng_base_2", &
  "rng factory", &
  u, results)

<RNG base: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_base_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(rng_test_factory_t) :: rng_factory
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rng_base_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and use a rng factory"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize factory"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%init ()
  call rng_factory%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Make a generator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%make (rng)
  call rng%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call rng%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rng_base_2"

end subroutine rng_base_2

```

## 12.2 TAO Random-Number Generator

This module provides an implementation for the generic random-number generator. Actually, we interface the TAO random-number generator which is available via the VAMP package.

```
<rng_tao.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module rng_tao  
  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
<Use file utils>  
    use unit_tests  
    use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!  
  
    use rng_base  
  
<Standard module head>  
  
<RNG tao: public>  
  
<RNG tao: types>  
  
contains  
  
<RNG tao: procedures>  
  
<RNG tao: tests>  
  
end module rng_tao
```

### 12.2.1 Generator type

The rng object is actually the state of the random-number generator. The methods initialize/reset and call the generator for this state.

We keep the seed, in case we want to recover it later, and count the number of calls since seeding.

```
<RNG tao: public>≡  
    public :: rng_tao_t  
  
<RNG tao: types>≡  
    type, extends (rng_t) :: rng_tao_t  
        integer :: seed = 0  
        integer :: n_calls = 0  
        type(tao_random_state) :: state  
    contains  
        <RNG tao: rng tao: TBP>  
    end type rng_tao_t
```

Output: Display seed and number of calls.

```

(RNG tao: rng tao: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => rng_tao_write

(RNG tao: procedures)≡
  subroutine rng_tao_write (rng, unit, indent)
    class(rng_tao_t), intent(in) :: rng
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(A)") "TA0 random-number generator:"
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0)") "seed = ", rng%seed
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0)") "calls = ", rng%n_calls
  end subroutine rng_tao_write

```

The `init` method initializes the generator and sets a seed. We should implement the interface such that a single integer is sufficient for a seed.

The seed may be omitted. The default seed is 0.

```

(RNG tao: rng tao: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init => rng_tao_init

(RNG tao: procedures)+≡
  subroutine rng_tao_init (rng, seed)
    class(rng_tao_t), intent(out) :: rng
    integer, intent(in), optional :: seed
    if (present (seed)) rng%seed = seed
    call tao_random_create (rng%state, rng%seed)
  end subroutine rng_tao_init

```

The `final` method deallocates memory where necessary and allows for another call of `init` to reset the generator.

```

(RNG tao: rng tao: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: final => rng_tao_final

(RNG tao: procedures)+≡
  subroutine rng_tao_final (rng)
    class(rng_tao_t), intent(inout) :: rng
    call tao_random_destroy (rng%state)
  end subroutine rng_tao_final

```

These routines generate a single and an array of default-precision random numbers, respectively.

We have to convert from explicit double to abstract default precision. Under normal conditions, both are equivalent, however. Unless, someone decides to do single precision, there is always an interface for `tao_random_numbers`.

```

(RNG tao: rng tao: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: generate_single => rng_tao_generate_single
  procedure :: generate_array => rng_tao_generate_array

```



```

<RNG tao: procedures>+=
  subroutine rng_tao_generate_single (rng, x)
    class(rng_tao_t), intent(inout) :: rng
    real(default), intent(out) :: x
    real(default) :: r
    call tao_random_number (rng%state, r)
    x = r
    rng%n_calls = rng%n_calls + 1
  end subroutine rng_tao_generate_single

  subroutine rng_tao_generate_array (rng, x)
    class(rng_tao_t), intent(inout) :: rng
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default) :: r
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (x)
      call tao_random_number (rng%state, r)
      x(i) = r
    end do
    rng%n_calls = rng%n_calls + size (x)
  end subroutine rng_tao_generate_array

```

## Factory

This factory makes `rng_tao_t` generators, initialized with the seeds

$$s_i = s_0 * 2^{16} + i \quad (12.1)$$

where  $s_0$  is the seed (a 16-bit integer) given to the factory object, and  $i$  is the index in the generated sequence of generators, starting with zero.

```

<RNG tao: public>+=
  public :: rng_tao_factory_t

<RNG tao: types>+=
  type, extends (rng_factory_t) :: rng_tao_factory_t
    integer(i16) :: s = 0
    integer(i16) :: i = 0
  contains
    <RNG tao: rng tao factory: TBP>
  end type rng_tao_factory_t

```

Output.

```

<RNG tao: rng tao factory: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => rng_tao_factory_write

<RNG tao: procedures>+=
  subroutine rng_tao_factory_write (object, unit)
    class(rng_tao_factory_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A,2(I0,A))") &
      "RNG factory: tao (" , object%s, ", ", object%i, ")"

```

```
end subroutine rng_tao_factory_write
```

Initialize, translating the given seed.

```
<RNG tao: rng tao factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => rng_tao_factory_init

<RNG tao: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rng_tao_factory_init (factory, seed)
    class(rng_tao_factory_t), intent(out) :: factory
    integer(i16), intent(in), optional :: seed
    if (present (seed)) factory%s = seed
  end subroutine rng_tao_factory_init

<RNG tao: rng tao factory: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make => rng_tao_factory_make

<RNG tao: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rng_tao_factory_make (factory, rng)
    class(rng_tao_factory_t), intent(inout) :: factory
    class(rng_t), intent(out), allocatable :: rng
    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    select type (rng)
      type is (rng_tao_t)
        call rng%init (factory%s * 65536 + factory%i)
        factory%i = int (factory%i + 1, kind = i16)
      end select
  end subroutine rng_tao_factory_make
```

### 12.2.2 Unit tests

```
<RNG tao: public>+≡
  public :: rng_tao_test

<RNG tao: tests>≡
  subroutine rng_tao_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <RNG tao: execute tests>
  end subroutine rng_tao_test
```

### Generator check

Initialize the generator and draw random numbers.

```
<RNG tao: execute tests>≡
  call test (rng_tao_1, "rng_tao_1", &
    "rng initialization and call", &
    u, results)
```

```

<RNG tao: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_tao_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(rng_t), allocatable, target :: rng

  real(default) :: x
  real(default), dimension(2) :: x2

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rng_tao_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and call the TAO random-number &
    &generator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize generator (default seed)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
  call rng%init ()

  call rng%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Get random number"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng%generate (x)
  write (u, "(A,2(1x,F9.7))")  "x =", x

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Get random number pair"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng%generate (x2)
  write (u, "(A,2(1x,F9.7))")  "x =", x2

  write (u, "(A)")
  call rng%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call rng%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rng_tao_1"

end subroutine rng_tao_1

```

## Factory check

Set up a factory and spawn generators.

```

<RNG tao: execute tests>+≡

```

```

call test (rng_tao_2, "rng_tao_2", &
          "rng_factory", &
          u, results)
<RNG tao: tests>+≡
subroutine rng_tao_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(rng_tao_factory_t) :: rng_factory
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
  real(default) :: x

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rng_tao_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and use a rng_factory"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize factory"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%init ()
  call rng_factory%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Make a generator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%make (rng)
  call rng%write (u)
  call rng%generate (x)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(1x,A,F7.5)")  "x = ", x
  call rng%final ()
  deallocate (rng)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Repeat"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%make (rng)
  call rng%write (u)
  call rng%generate (x)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(1x,A,F7.5)")  "x = ", x
  call rng%final ()
  deallocate (rng)

  write (u, *)
  call rng_factory%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize factory with different seed"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rng_factory%init (1_i16)
  call rng_factory%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Make a generator"
write (u, "(A)")

call rng_factory%make (rng)
call rng%write (u)
call rng%generate (x)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,F7.5)")  "x = ", x
call rng%final ()
deallocate (rng)

write (u, *)
call rng_factory%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rng_tao_2"

end subroutine rng_tao_2

```

## 12.3 Select from a weighted sample

```

⟨selectors.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

module selectors

  use kinds !NODEP!
  ⟨Use file utils⟩
  use unit_tests
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use rng_base

  ⟨Standard module head⟩

  ⟨Selectors: public⟩

  ⟨Selectors: types⟩

contains

  ⟨Selectors: procedures⟩

  ⟨Selectors: tests⟩

end module selectors

```

### 12.3.1 Selector type

The rng object is actually the state of the random-number generator. The methods initialize/reset and call the generator for this state.

```

<Selectors: public>≡
    public :: selector_t

<Selectors: types>≡
    type :: selector_t
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: map
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weight
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: acc
    contains
        <Selectors: selector: TBP>
    end type selector_t

```

Display contents.

```

<Selectors: selector: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => selector_write

<Selectors: procedures>≡
    subroutine selector_write (object, unit)
        class(selector_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Selector: i, weight, acc. weight"
        if (allocated (object%weight)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%weight)
                write (u, "(3x,I0,1x,ES19.12,1x,ES19.12)") &
                    object%map(i), object%weight(i), object%acc(i)
            end do
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
        end if
    end subroutine selector_write

```

We pack the input weight array such that zero-weight entries are removed. We also normalize it. This makes a `map` array for mapping the selected weight to the actual entry necessary.

```

<Selectors: selector: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => selector_init

<Selectors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine selector_init (selector, weight)
        class(selector_t), intent(out) :: selector
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: weight
        real(default) :: s
        integer :: n, i
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask
        if (size (weight) == 0) &
            call msg_bug ("Selector init: zero-size weight array")
        if (any (weight < 0)) &
            call msg_bug ("Selector init: negative weight")
        s = sum (weight)
        if (s == 0) &
            call msg_bug ("Selector init: all weights are zero")
        allocate (mask (size (weight)), &

```

```

        source = weight /= 0)
n = count (mask)
allocate (selector%map (n), &
        source = pack ([i, i = 1, size (weight)], mask))
allocate (selector%weight (n), &
        source = pack (weight / s, mask))
allocate (selector%acc (n))
selector%acc(1) = selector%weight(1)
do i = 2, n - 1
    selector%acc(i) = selector%acc(i-1) + selector%weight(i)
end do
selector%acc(n) = 1
end subroutine selector_init

```

Select an entry based upon the number  $x$ , which should be a uniformly distributed random number between 0 and 1.

```

<Selectors: selector: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: select => selector_select

<Selectors: procedures>+≡
    function selector_select (selector, x) result (n)
        class(selector_t), intent(in) :: selector
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        integer :: n
        integer :: i
        if (x < 0 .or. x > 1) &
            call msg_bug ("Selector: random number out of range")
        do i = 1, size (selector%acc)
            if (x <= selector%acc(i)) exit
        end do
        n = selector%map(i)
    end function selector_select

```

Use the provided random-number generator to select an entry. (Unless there is only one entry.)

```

<Selectors: selector: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate => selector_generate

<Selectors: procedures>+≡
    subroutine selector_generate (selector, rng, n)
        class(selector_t), intent(in) :: selector
        class(rng_t), intent(inout) :: rng
        integer, intent(out) :: n
        real(default) :: x
        select case (size (selector%acc))
        case (1); n = 1
        case default
            call rng%generate (x)
            n = selector%select (x)
        end select
    end subroutine selector_generate

```

Determine the normalized weight for a selected entry. We use a linear search for the inverse lookup, assuming that efficiency is not an issue for this function.

```

<Selectors: selector: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_weight => selector_get_weight

<Selectors: procedures>+≡
    function selector_get_weight (selector, n) result (weight)
        class(selector_t), intent(in) :: selector
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        real(default) :: weight
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (selector%weight)
            if (selector%map(i) == n) then
                weight = selector%weight(i)
                return
            end if
        end do
        weight = 0
    end function selector_get_weight

```

### 12.3.2 Unit tests

```

<Selectors: public>+≡
    public :: selectors_test

<Selectors: tests>≡
    subroutine selectors_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Selectors: execute tests>
    end subroutine selectors_test

```

#### Basic check

Initialize the selector and draw random numbers.

```

<Selectors: execute tests>≡
    call test (selectors_1, "selectors_1", &
        "rng initialization and call", &
        u, results)

<Selectors: tests>+≡
    subroutine selectors_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(selector_t) :: selector
        class(rng_t), allocatable, target :: rng
        integer :: i, n

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: selectors_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize a selector and test it"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize selector"

```



```

write (u, "(A)")

call selector%init &
    ([2._default, 3.5_default, 0._default, &
      2._default, 0.5_default, 2._default])
call selector%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Select numbers using predictable test generator"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
call rng%init (1)

do i = 1, 5
    call selector%generate (rng, n)
    write (u, "(1x,I0)")  n
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Select numbers using real input number"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "select(0.00) = ", selector%select (0._default)
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "select(0.77) = ", selector%select (0.77_default)
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "select(1.00) = ", selector%select (1._default)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Get weight"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)")  "weight(2) =", selector%get_weight(2)
write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)")  "weight(3) =", selector%get_weight(3)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call rng%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: selectors_1"

end subroutine selectors_1

```

## Chapter 13

# Multi-Channel Integration

In this chapter we provide a generic module for handling multi-channel phase space and concrete implementations.

**Module mci\_base:** The abstract types and their methods. It provides a test integrator that is referenced in later unit tests.

**Module mci\_midpoint:** A simple integrator that uses the midpoint rule to sample the integrand uniformly over the unit hypercube. There is only one integration channel, so this can be matched only to single-channel phase space.

**Module mci\_vamp:** Interface for the VAMP package.

### 13.1 Generic Integrator

This module provides a multi-channel integrator (MCI) base type, a corresponding configuration type, and methods for integration and event generation.

```
<mci_base.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module mci_base  
  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_14, FMT_17 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use cputime  
  
    use phs_base  
    use rng_base  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <MCI base: public>
```

```

    <MCI base: types>

    <MCI base: interfaces>

    <MCI base: test types>

contains

    <MCI base: procedures>

    <MCI base: tests>

end module mci_base

```

### 13.1.1 MCI: integrator

The MCI object contains the methods for integration and event generation. For the actual work and data storage, it spawns an MCI instance object.

The base object contains the number of integration dimensions and the number of channels as configuration data. Further configuration data are stored in the concrete extensions.

The MCI sum contains all relevant information about the integrand. It can be used for comparing the current configuration against a previous one. If they match, we can skip an actual integration. (Implemented only for the VAMP version.)

There is a random-number generator (its state with associated methods) available as `rng`. It may or may not be used for integration. It will be used for event generation.

```

<MCI base: public>≡
    public :: mci_t

<MCI base: types>≡
    type, abstract :: mci_t
        integer :: n_dim = 0
        integer :: n_channel = 0
        integer :: n_chain = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: chain
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: chain_weights
        character(32) :: md5sum = ""
        logical :: integral_known = .false.
        logical :: error_known = .false.
        logical :: efficiency_known = .false.
        real(default) :: integral = 0
        real(default) :: error = 0
        real(default) :: efficiency = 0
        logical :: use_timer = .false.
        type(timer_t) :: timer
        class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    contains
        <MCI base: mci: TBP>
    end type mci_t

```

Finalizer: the random-number generator may need one.

```

(MCI base: mci: TBP)≡
  procedure :: base_final => mci_final
  procedure (mci_final), deferred :: final

(MCI base: procedures)≡
  subroutine mci_final (object)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%final ()
  end subroutine mci_final

```

Output: basic and extended output.

```

(MCI base: mci: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: base_write => mci_write
  procedure (mci_write), deferred :: write

(MCI base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine mci_write (object, unit, pacify, md5sum_version)
    class(mci_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    logical, intent(in), optional :: md5sum_version
    logical :: md5sum_ver
    integer :: u, i, j
    character(len=7) :: fmt
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_17, FMT_14, pacify)
    u = output_unit (unit)
    md5sum_ver = .false.
    if (present (md5sum_version)) md5sum_ver = md5sum_version
    if (object%use_timer .and. .not. md5sum_ver) then
      write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
      call object%timer%write (u)
    end if
    if (object%integral_known) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") &
        "Integral" = ", object%integral
    end if
    if (object%error_known) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") &
        "Error" = ", object%error
    end if
    if (object%efficiency_known) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") &
        "Efficiency" = ", object%efficiency
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of channels" = ", object%n_channel
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of dimensions" = ", object%n_dim
    if (object%n_chain > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of chains" = ", object%n_chain
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Chains:"
      do i = 1, object%n_chain
        write (u, "(5x,I0,':')", advance = "no") i
        do j = 1, object%n_channel
          if (object%chain(j) == i) &

```

```

                write (u, "(1x,I0)", advance = "no")  j
            end do
            write (u, "(A)")
        end do
    end if
end subroutine mci_write

```

Print an informative message when starting integration.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+=
    procedure (mci_startup_message), deferred :: startup_message
    procedure :: base_startup_message => mci_startup_message

<MCI base: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_startup_message (mci, unit, n_calls)
        class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, n_calls
        if (mci%n_chain > 0) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,3(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
                "Integrator:", mci%n_chain, "chains,", &
                mci%n_channel, "channels,", &
                mci%n_dim, "dimensions"
        else
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,3(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
                "Integrator:", &
                mci%n_channel, "channels,", &
                mci%n_dim, "dimensions"
        end if
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
    end subroutine mci_startup_message

```

Record the index of the MCI object within a process. For multi-component processes with more than one integrator, the integrator should know about its own index, so file names can be unique, etc. The default implementation does nothing, however.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+=
    procedure :: record_index => mci_record_index

<MCI base: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_record_index (mci, i_mci)
        class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    end subroutine mci_record_index

```

There is no Initializer for the abstract type, but a generic setter for the number of channels and dimensions. We make two aliases available, to be able to override it.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+=
    procedure :: set_dimensions => mci_set_dimensions
    procedure :: base_set_dimensions => mci_set_dimensions

<MCI base: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_set_dimensions (mci, n_dim, n_channel)
        class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: n_dim
integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
mci%n_dim = n_dim
mci%n_channel = n_channel
end subroutine mci_set_dimensions

```

Declare particular dimensions as flat. This information can be used to simplify integration. When generating events, the flat dimensions should be sampled with uniform and uncorrelated distribution. It depends on the integrator what to do with that information.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_declare_flat_dimensions), deferred :: declare_flat_dimensions

<MCI base: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_declare_flat_dimensions (mci, dim_flat)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: dim_flat
    end subroutine mci_declare_flat_dimensions
  end interface

```

Declare particular channels as equivalent, possibly allowing for permutations or reflections of dimensions. We use the information stored in the `phs_channel_t` object array that the phase-space module provides.

(We do not test this here, deferring the unit test to the `mci_vamp` implementation where we actually use this feature.)

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_declare_equivalences), deferred :: declare_equivalences

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_declare_equivalences (mci, channel, dim_offset)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: channel
      integer, intent(in) :: dim_offset
    end subroutine mci_declare_equivalences
  end interface

```

Declare particular channels as chained together. The implementation may use this array for keeping their weights equal to each other, etc.

The chain array is an array sized by the number of channels. For each channel, there is an integer entry that indicates the corresponding chains. The total number of chains is the maximum value of this entry.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: declare_chains => mci_declare_chains

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_declare_chains (mci, chain)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: chain
    allocate (mci%chain (size (chain)))

```

```

mci%n_chain = maxval (chain)
allocate (mci%chain_weights (mci%n_chain), source = 0._default)
mci%chain = chain
end subroutine mci_declare_chains

```

Collect channel weights according to chains and store them in the `chain_weights` for output. We sum up the weights for all channels that share the same `chain` index and store the results in the `chain_weights` array.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: collect_chain_weights => mci_collect_chain_weights

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_collect_chain_weights (mci, weight)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: weight
    integer :: i, c
    if (allocated (mci%chain)) then
      mci%chain_weights = 0
      do i = 1, size (mci%chain)
        c = mci%chain(i)
        mci%chain_weights(c) = mci%chain_weights(c) + weight(i)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine mci_collect_chain_weights

```

Check if there are chains.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: has_chains => mci_has_chains

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  function mci_has_chains (mci) result (flag)
    class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
    logical :: flag
    flag = allocated (mci%chain)
  end function mci_has_chains

```

Output of the chain weights, kept separate from the main `write` method.

[The formatting will work as long as the number of chains is less than  $10^{10}$ ...]

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_chain_weights => mci_write_chain_weights

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_write_chain_weights (mci, unit)
    class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i, n, n_digits
    character(4) :: ifmt
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (allocated (mci%chain_weights)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Weights of channel chains (groves):"
      n_digits = 0
      n = size (mci%chain_weights)
      do while (n > 0)

```

```

        n = n / 10
        n_digits = n_digits + 1
    end do
    write (ifmt, "(A1,I1)") "I", n_digits
    do i = 1, size (mci%chain_weights)
        write (u, "(3x," // ifmt // ",F13.10)") i, mci%chain_weights(i)
    end do
end if
end subroutine mci_write_chain_weights

```

Set the MD5 sum, independent of initialization.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_md5sum => mci_set_md5sum

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_set_md5sum (mci, md5sum)
        class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        character(32), intent(in) :: md5sum
        mci%md5sum = md5sum
    end subroutine mci_set_md5sum

```

Initialize a new integration pass. This is not necessarily meaningful, so we provide an empty base method. The `mci_vamp` implementation overrides this.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: add_pass => mci_add_pass

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_add_pass (mci, adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final)
        class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_grids
        logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_weights
        logical, intent(in), optional :: final
    end subroutine mci_add_pass

```

Allocate an instance with matching type. This must be deferred.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
    procedure (mci_allocate_instance), deferred :: allocate_instance

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine mci_allocate_instance (mci, mci_instance)
            import
            class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
            class(mci_instance_t), intent(out), pointer :: mci_instance
        end subroutine mci_allocate_instance
    end interface

```

Import a random-number generator. We transfer the allocation of an existing generator state into the object. The generator state may already be initialized, or we can reset it by its `init` method.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: import_rng => mci_import_rng

```



```

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_import_rng (mci, rng)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(rng_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng
    call move_alloc (rng, mci%rng)
  end subroutine mci_import_rng

```

Activate or deactivate the timer.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_timer => mci_set_timer

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_set_timer (mci, active)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    logical, intent(in) :: active
    mci%use_timer = active
  end subroutine mci_set_timer

```

Start and stop signal for the timer, if active. The elapsed time can then be retrieved from the MCI record.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: start_timer => mci_start_timer
  procedure :: stop_timer => mci_stop_timer

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_start_timer (mci)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    if (mci%use_timer) call mci%timer%start ()
  end subroutine mci_start_timer

  subroutine mci_stop_timer (mci)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    if (mci%use_timer) call mci%timer%stop ()
  end subroutine mci_stop_timer

```

Sampler test. Evaluate the sampler a given number of times. Results are discarded, so we don't need the MCI instance which would record them.

The evaluation channel is iterated, and the *x* parameters are randomly chosen.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: sampler_test => mci_sampler_test

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_sampler_test (mci, sampler, n_calls)
    class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x_in, f
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x_out
    real(default) :: val
    integer :: i, c
    allocate (x_in (mci%n_dim))
    allocate (f (mci%n_channel))

```

```

allocate (x_out (mci%n_dim, mci%n_channel))
do i = 1, n_calls
  c = mod (i, mci%n_channel) + 1
  call mci%rng%generate_array (x_in)
  call sampler%evaluate (c, x_in, val, x_out, f)
end do
end subroutine mci_sampler_test

```

Integrate: this depends on the implementation. We foresee a pacify flag to take care of small numerical noise on different platforms.

```

⟨MCI base: mci: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure (mci_integrate), deferred :: integrate

⟨MCI base: interfaces⟩+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_integrate (mci, instance, sampler, &
      n_it, n_calls, results, pacify)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
      integer, intent(in) :: n_it
      integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
      logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
      class(mci_results_t), intent(inout), optional :: results
    end subroutine mci_integrate
  end interface

```

Event generation. Depending on the implementation, event generation may or may not require a previous integration pass.

Instead of a black-box **simulate** method, we require an initializer, a finalizer, and procedures for generating a single event. This allows us to interface simulation event by event from the outside, and it facilitates the further processing of an event after successful generation. For integration, this is not necessary.

The initializer has **intent(inout)** for the **mci** passed object. The reason is that the initializer can read integration results and grids from file, where the results can modify the **mci** record.

```

⟨MCI base: mci: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure (mci_prepare_simulation), deferred :: prepare_simulation

⟨MCI base: interfaces⟩+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_prepare_simulation (mci)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    end subroutine mci_prepare_simulation
  end interface

```

The generated event will reside in in the **instance** object (overall results and weight) and in the **sampler** object (detailed data). In the real application, we can subsequently call methods of the **sampler** in order to further process the generated event.

The `target` attributes are required by the VAMP implementation, which uses pointers to refer to the instance and sampler objects from within the integration function.

```

(MCI base: mci: TBP)+≡
  procedure (mci_generate), deferred :: generate_weighted_event
  procedure (mci_generate), deferred :: generate_unweighted_event

(MCI base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_generate (mci, instance, sampler)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
    end subroutine mci_generate
  end interface

```

This is analogous, but we rebuild the event from the information stored in `state` instead of generating it.

Note: currently unused outside of tests, might be deleted later.

```

(MCI base: mci: TBP)+≡
  procedure (mci_rebuild), deferred :: rebuild_event

(MCI base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_rebuild (mci, instance, sampler, state)
      import
      class(mci_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
      class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: state
    end subroutine mci_rebuild
  end interface

```

Return the value of the integral, error, efficiency, and time per call.

```

(MCI base: mci: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_integral => mci_get_integral
  procedure :: get_error => mci_get_error
  procedure :: get_efficiency => mci_get_efficiency
  procedure :: get_time => mci_get_time

(MCI base: procedures)+≡
  function mci_get_integral (mci) result (integral)
    class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: integral
    if (mci%integral_known) then
      integral = mci%integral
    else
      call msg_bug ("The integral is unknown. This is presumably a" // &
        "WHIZARD bug.")
    end if
  end function mci_get_integral

  function mci_get_error (mci) result (error)

```

```

class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
real(default) :: error
if (mci%error_known) then
    error = mci%error
else
    error = 0
end if
end function mci_get_error

function mci_get_efficiency (mci) result (efficiency)
class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
real(default) :: efficiency
if (mci%efficiency_known) then
    efficiency = mci%efficiency
else
    efficiency = 0
end if
end function mci_get_efficiency

function mci_get_time (mci) result (time)
class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
real(default) :: time
if (mci%use_timer) then
    time = mci%timer
else
    time = 0
end if
end function mci_get_time

```

Return the MD5 sum of the configuration. This may be overridden in an extension, to return a different MD5 sum.

```

<MCI base: mci: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum => mci_get_md5sum

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
    function mci_get_md5sum (mci) result (md5sum)
        class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci
        character(32) :: md5sum
        md5sum = mci%md5sum
    end function mci_get_md5sum

```

### 13.1.2 MCI instance

The base type contains an array of channel weights. The value `mci_weight` is the combined MCI weight that corresponds to a particular sampling point.

For convenience, we also store the `x` and Jacobian values for this sampling point.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
    public :: mci_instance_t

```

```

<MCI base: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: mci_instance_t
    logical :: valid = .false.
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: w
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x
    integer :: selected_channel = 0
    real(default) :: mci_weight = 0
    real(default) :: integrand = 0
  contains
    <MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>
  end type mci_instance_t

```

Output: deferred

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>≡
  procedure (mci_instance_write), deferred :: write
<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_instance_write (object, unit, pacify)
      import
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    end subroutine mci_instance_write
  end interface

```

A finalizer, just in case.

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_instance_final), deferred :: final
<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_instance_final (object)
      import
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine mci_instance_final
  end interface

```

Init: basic initializer for the arrays, otherwise deferred. Assigning the mci object is also deferred, because it depends on the concrete type.

The weights are initialized with an uniform normalized value.

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_instance_base_init), deferred :: init
  procedure :: base_init => mci_instance_base_init
<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_instance_base_init (mci_instance, mci)
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(out) :: mci_instance
    class(mci_t), intent(in), target :: mci
    allocate (mci_instance%w (mci%n_channel))
    allocate (mci_instance%f (mci%n_channel))
    allocate (mci_instance%x (mci%n_dim, mci%n_channel))

```

```

    if (size (mci_instance%w) /= 0) then
        mci_instance%w = 1._default / size (mci_instance%w)
    end if
    mci_instance%f = 0
    mci_instance%x = 0
end subroutine mci_instance_base_init

```

Compute the overall weight factor for a configuration of  $x$  values and Jacobians  $f$ . The  $x$  values come in `n_channel` rows with `n_dim` entries each. The  $f$  factors constitute an array with `n_channel` entries.

We assume that the  $x$  and  $f$  arrays are already stored inside the MC instance. The result is also stored there.

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure (mci_instance_compute_weight), deferred :: compute_weight

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine mci_instance_compute_weight (mci, c)
            import
            class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
            integer, intent(in) :: c
        end subroutine mci_instance_compute_weight
    end interface

```

Record the integrand as returned by the sampler. Depending on the implementation, this may merely copy the value, or do more complicated things.

We may need the MCI weight for the actual computations, so this should be called after the previous routine.

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure (mci_instance_record_integrand), deferred :: record_integrand

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine mci_instance_record_integrand (mci, integrand)
            import
            class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
            real(default), intent(in) :: integrand
        end subroutine mci_instance_record_integrand
    end interface

```

Sample a point directly: evaluate the sampler, then compute the weight and the weighted integrand. Finally, record the integrand within the MCI instance.

If a signal (interrupt) was raised recently, we abort the calculation before entering the sampler. Thus, a previous calculation will have completed and any data are already recorded, but any new point can be discarded. If the `abort` flag is present, we may delay the interrupt, so we can do some cleanup.

```

<MCI base: mci_instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: evaluate => mci_instance_evaluate

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_instance_evaluate (mci, sampler, c, x)
        class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci

```

```

class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
integer, intent(in) :: c
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
real(default) :: val
call sampler%evaluate (c, x, val, mci%x, mci%f)
mci%valid = sampler%is_valid ()
if (mci%valid) then
  call mci%compute_weight (c)
  call mci%record_integrand (val)
end if
end subroutine mci_instance_evaluate

```

Initiate and terminate simulation. In contrast to integration, we implement these as methods of the process instance, since the `mci` configuration object is unchanged.

The safety factor reduces the acceptance probability for unweighted events. The implementation of this feature depends on the concrete type.

```

<MCI base: mci instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_instance_init_simulation), deferred :: init_simulation
  procedure (mci_instance_final_simulation), deferred :: final_simulation

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_instance_init_simulation (instance, safety_factor)
      import
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
    end subroutine mci_instance_init_simulation
  end interface

  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_instance_final_simulation (instance)
      import
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    end subroutine mci_instance_final_simulation
  end interface

```

Assuming that the sampler is in a completely defined state, just extract the data that `evaluate` would compute. Also record the integrand.

```

<MCI base: mci instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: fetch => mci_instance_fetch

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_instance_fetch (mci, sampler, c)
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default) :: val
    mci%valid = sampler%is_valid ()
    if (mci%valid) then
      call sampler%fetch (val, mci%x, mci%f)
      call mci%compute_weight (c)
      call mci%record_integrand (val)
    end if
  end subroutine mci_instance_fetch

```

```

    end if
end subroutine mci_instance_fetch

```

The value, i.e., the weighted integrand, is the integrand (which should be taken as-is from the sampler) multiplied by the MCI weight.

```

⟨MCI base: mci instance: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: get_value => mci_instance_get_value

⟨MCI base: procedures⟩+≡
  function mci_instance_get_value (mci) result (value)
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: value
    if (mci%valid) then
      value = mci%integrand * mci%pci_weight
    else
      value = 0
    end if
  end function mci_instance_get_value

```

This is an extra routine. By default, the event weight is equal to the value returned by the previous routine. However, if we select a channel for event generation not just based on the channel weights, the event weight has to account for this bias, so the event weight that applies to event generation is different. In that case, we should override the default routine.

```

⟨MCI base: mci instance: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: get_event_weight => mci_instance_get_value

```

Excess weight can occur during unweighted event generation, if the assumed maximum value of the integrand is too small. This excess should be normalized in the same way as the event weight above (which for unweighted events becomes unity).

```

⟨MCI base: mci instance: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure (mci_instance_get_event_excess), deferred :: get_event_excess

⟨MCI base: interfaces⟩+≡
  abstract interface
    function mci_instance_get_event_excess (mci) result (excess)
      import
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
      real(default) :: excess
    end function mci_instance_get_event_excess
  end interface

```

### 13.1.3 MCI state

This object can hold the relevant information that allows us to reconstruct the MCI instance without re-evaluating the sampler completely.

We store the `x_in` MC input parameter set, which coincides with the section of the complete `x` array that belongs to a particular channel. We also store the MC function value. When we want to reconstruct the state, we can use the input array to recover the complete `x` and `f` arrays (i.e., the kinematics), but do not need to recompute the MC function value (the dynamics).



The `mci_state_t` may be extended, to allow storing/recalling more information. In that case, we would override the type-bound procedures. However, the base type is also a concrete type and self-contained.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
  public :: mci_state_t

<MCI base: types>+≡
  type :: mci_state_t
    integer :: selected_channel = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x_in
    real(default) :: val
  contains
    <MCI base: mci state: TBP>
  end type mci_state_t

```

Output:

```

<MCI base: mci state: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => mci_state_write

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_state_write (object, unit)
    class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "MCI state:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Channel   = ", object%selected_channel
    write (u, "(3x,A,999(1x,F12.10))") "x (in)   =", object%x_in
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "Integrand = ", object%val
  end subroutine mci_state_write

```

To store the object, we take the relevant section of the `x` array. The channel used for storing data is taken from the `instance` object, but it could be arbitrary in principle.

```

<MCI base: mci instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: store => mci_instance_store

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_instance_store (mci, state)
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    class(mci_state_t), intent(out) :: state
    state%selected_channel = mci%selected_channel
    allocate (state%x_in (size (mci%x, 1)))
    state%x_in = mci%x(:,mci%selected_channel)
    state%val = mci%integrand
  end subroutine mci_instance_store

```

Recalling the state, we must consult the sampler in order to fully reconstruct the `x` and `f` arrays. The integrand value is known, and we also give it to the sampler, bypassing evaluation.

The final steps are equivalent to the `evaluate` method above.

```

<MCI base: mci instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recall => mci_instance_recall

```

```

<MCI base: procedures>+≡
subroutine mci_instance_recall (mci, sampler, state)
  class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: state
  if (size (state%x_in) == size (mci%x, 1) &
      .and. state%selected_channel <= size (mci%x, 2)) then
    call sampler%rebuild (state%selected_channel, &
        state%x_in, state%val, mci%x, mci%f)
    call mci%compute_weight (state%selected_channel)
    call mci%record_integrand (state%val)
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Recalling event: mismatch in channel or dimension")
  end if
end subroutine mci_instance_recall

```

### 13.1.4 MCI sampler

A sampler is an object that implements a multi-channel parameterization of the unit hypercube. Specifically, it is able to compute, given a channel and a set of  $x$  MC parameter values, a the complete set of  $x$  values and associated Jacobian factors  $f$  for all channels.

Furthermore, the sampler should return a single real value, the integrand, for the given point in the hypercube.

It must implement a method `evaluate` for performing the above computations.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
public :: mci_sampler_t

<MCI base: types>+≡
type, abstract :: mci_sampler_t
contains
  <MCI base: mci sampler: TBP>
end type mci_sampler_t

```

Output, deferred to the implementation.

```

<MCI base: mci sampler: TBP>≡
procedure (mci_sampler_write), deferred :: write

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
abstract interface
  subroutine mci_sampler_write (object, unit, testflag)
    import
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  end subroutine mci_sampler_write
end interface

```

The evaluation routine. Input is the channel index `c` and the one-dimensional parameter array `x_in`. Output are the integrand value `val`, the two-dimensional parameter array `x` and the Jacobian array `f`.

```

(MCI base: mci_sampler: TBP)+≡
  procedure (mci_sampler_evaluate), deferred :: evaluate

(MCI base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_sampler_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
      import
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
      integer, intent(in) :: c
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
      real(default), intent(out) :: val
      real(default), dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: x
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    end subroutine mci_sampler_evaluate
  end interface

```

Query the validity of the sampling point. Can be called after `evaluate`.

```

(MCI base: mci_sampler: TBP)+≡
  procedure (mci_sampler_is_valid), deferred :: is_valid

(MCI base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    function mci_sampler_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
      import
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(in) :: sampler
      logical :: valid
    end function mci_sampler_is_valid
  end interface

```

The shortcut. Again, the channel index `c` and the parameter array `x_in` are input. However, we also provide the integrand value `val`, and we just require that the complete parameter array `x` and Jacobian array `f` are recovered.

```

(MCI base: mci_sampler: TBP)+≡
  procedure (mci_sampler_rebuild), deferred :: rebuild

(MCI base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_sampler_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
      import
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
      integer, intent(in) :: c
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
      real(default), intent(in) :: val
      real(default), dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: x
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    end subroutine mci_sampler_rebuild
  end interface

```

This routine should extract the important data from a sampler that has been filled by other means. We fetch the integrand value `val`, the two-dimensional parameter array `x` and the Jacobian array `f`.

```

<MCI base: mci_sampler: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_sampler_fetch), deferred :: fetch

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_sampler_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
      import
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(in) :: sampler
      real(default), intent(out) :: val
      real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    end subroutine mci_sampler_fetch
  end interface

```

### 13.1.5 Results record

This is an abstract type which allows us to implement callback: each integration results can optionally be recorded to an instance of this object. The actual object may store a new result, average results, etc. It may also display a result on-line or otherwise, whenever the `record` method is called.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
  public :: mci_results_t

<MCI base: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: mci_results_t
  contains
    <MCI base: mci_results: TBP>
  end type mci_results_t

```

The output routine is deferred. We provide an extra `verbose` flag, which could serve any purpose.

```

<MCI base: mci_results: TBP>≡
  procedure (mci_results_write), deferred :: write

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_results_write (object, unit, verbose, suppress)
      import
      class(mci_results_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, suppress
    end subroutine mci_results_write
  end interface

```

This is the `record` method, which can be called directly from the integrator.

```

<MCI base: mci_results: TBP>+≡
  procedure (mci_results_record), deferred :: record

```

```

<MCI base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine mci_results_record (object, n_it, &
      n_calls, integral, error, efficiency, chain_weights, suppress)
      import
      class(mci_results_t), intent(inout) :: object
      integer, intent(in) :: n_it
      integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
      real(default), intent(in) :: integral
      real(default), intent(in) :: error
      real(default), intent(in) :: efficiency
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: chain_weights
      logical, intent(in), optional :: suppress
    end subroutine mci_results_record
  end interface

```

### 13.1.6 Unit tests

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
  public :: mci_base_test

<MCI base: tests>≡
  subroutine mci_base_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <MCI base: execute tests>
  end subroutine mci_base_test

```

### Test implementation of the configuration type

The concrete type contains the number of requested calls and the integral result, to be determined.

The `max_factor` entry is set for the actual test integration, where the integrand is not unity but some other constant value. This value should be set here, such that the actual maximum of the integrand is known when vetoing unweighted events.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
  public :: mci_test_t

<MCI base: test types>≡
  type, extends (mci_t) :: mci_test_t
    integer :: divisions = 0
    integer :: tries = 0
    real(default) :: max_factor = 1
  contains
    procedure :: final => mci_test_final
    procedure :: write => mci_test_write
    procedure :: startup_message => mci_test_startup_message
    procedure :: declare_flat_dimensions => mci_test_ignore_flat_dimensions
    procedure :: declare_equivalences => mci_test_ignore_equivalences
    procedure :: set_divisions => mci_test_set_divisions
    procedure :: set_max_factor => mci_test_set_max_factor

```

```

    procedure :: allocate_instance => mci_test_allocate_instance
    procedure :: integrate => mci_test_integrate
    procedure :: prepare_simulation => mci_test_ignore_prepare_simulation
    procedure :: generate_weighted_event => mci_test_generate_weighted_event
    procedure :: generate_unweighted_event => &
        mci_test_generate_unweighted_event
    procedure :: rebuild_event => mci_test_rebuild_event
end type mci_test_t

```

Finalizer: base version is sufficient

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_test_final (object)
        class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call object%base_final ()
    end subroutine mci_test_final

```

Output: trivial

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_test_write (object, unit, pacify, md5sum_version)
        class(mci_test_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
        logical, intent(in), optional :: md5sum_version
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test integrator:"
        call object%base_write (u, pacify, md5sum_version)
        if (object%divisions /= 0) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of divisions = ", object%divisions
        end if
        if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%write (u)
    end subroutine mci_test_write

```

Short version.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_test_startup_message (mci, unit, n_calls)
        class(mci_test_t), intent(in) :: mci
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, n_calls
        call mci%base_startup_message (unit = unit, n_calls = n_calls)
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)") &
            "Integrator: Test:", mci%divisions, "divisions"
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
    end subroutine mci_test_startup_message

```

This is a no-op for the test integrator.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_test_ignore_flat_dimensions (mci, dim_flat)
        class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: dim_flat
    end subroutine mci_test_ignore_flat_dimensions

```

Ditto.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_ignore_equivalences (mci, channel, dim_offset)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    type(phas_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: channel
    integer, intent(in) :: dim_offset
  end subroutine mci_test_ignore_equivalences

```

Set the number of divisions to a nonzero value.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_set_divisions (object, divisions)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: divisions
    object%divisions = divisions
  end subroutine mci_test_set_divisions

```

Set the maximum factor (default is 1).

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_set_max_factor (object, max_factor)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: object
    real(default), intent(in) :: max_factor
    object%max_factor = max_factor
  end subroutine mci_test_set_max_factor

```

Allocate instance with matching type.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_allocate_instance (mci, mci_instance)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(in) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(out), pointer :: mci_instance
    allocate (mci_test_instance_t :: mci_instance)
  end subroutine mci_test_allocate_instance

```

Integrate: sample at the midpoints of uniform bits and add the results. We implement this for one and for two dimensions. In the latter case, we scan over two channels and multiply with the channel weights.

The arguments `n_it` and `n_calls` are ignored in this implementations.

The test integrator does not set error or efficiency, so those will remain undefined.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_integrate (mci, instance, sampler, &
    n_it, n_calls, results, pacify)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    class(mci_results_t), intent(inout), optional :: results
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: integral
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    integer :: i, j, c

```

```

select type (instance)
type is (mci_test_instance_t)
  allocate (integral (mci%n_channel))
  integral = 0
  allocate (x (mci%n_dim))
  select case (mci%n_dim)
  case (1)
    do c = 1, mci%n_channel
      do i = 1, mci%divisions
        x(1) = (i - 0.5_default) / mci%divisions
        call instance%evaluate (sampler, c, x)
        integral(c) = integral(c) + instance%get_value ()
      end do
    end do
    mci%integral = dot_product (instance%w, integral) &
      / mci%divisions
    mci%integral_known = .true.
  case (2)
    do c = 1, mci%n_channel
      do i = 1, mci%divisions
        x(1) = (i - 0.5_default) / mci%divisions
        do j = 1, mci%divisions
          x(2) = (j - 0.5_default) / mci%divisions
          call instance%evaluate (sampler, c, x)
          integral(c) = integral(c) + instance%get_value ()
        end do
      end do
    end do
    mci%integral = dot_product (instance%w, integral) &
      / mci%divisions / mci%divisions
    mci%integral_known = .true.
  end select
  if (present (results)) then
    call results%record (n_it, n_calls, &
      mci%integral, mci%error, &
      efficiency = 0._default)
  end if
end select
end subroutine mci_test_integrate

```

Simulation initializer and finalizer: nothing to do here.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_ignore_prepare_simulation (mci)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  end subroutine mci_test_ignore_prepare_simulation

```

Event generator. We use mock random numbers for first selecting the channel and then setting the  $x$  values. The results reside in the state of **instance** and **sampler**.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_generate_weighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
    class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
  end subroutine mci_test_generate_weighted_event

```



```

class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
real(default) :: r
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
integer :: c
select type (instance)
type is (mci_test_instance_t)
  allocate (x (mci%n_dim))
  select case (mci%n_channel)
  case (1)
    c = 1
    call mci%rng%generate (x(1))
  case (2)
    call mci%rng%generate (r)
    if (r < instance%w(1)) then
      c = 1
    else
      c = 2
    end if
    call mci%rng%generate (x)
  end select
  call instance%evaluate (sampler, c, x)
end select
end subroutine mci_test_generate_weighted_event

```

For unweighted events, we generate weighted events and apply a simple rejection step to the relative event weight, until an event passes.

(This might result in an endless loop if we happen to be in sync with the mock random generator cycle. Therefore, limit the number of tries.)

*(MCI base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine mci_test_generate_unweighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
  class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
  class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
  real(default) :: r
  integer :: i
  select type (instance)
  type is (mci_test_instance_t)
    mci%tries = 0
    do i = 1, 10
      call mci%generate_weighted_event (instance, sampler)
      mci%tries = mci%tries + 1
      call mci%rng%generate (r)
      if (r < instance%rel_value) exit
    end do
  end select
end subroutine mci_test_generate_unweighted_event

```

Here, we rebuild the event from the state without consulting the rng.

*(MCI base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine mci_test_rebuild_event (mci, instance, sampler, state)
  class(mci_test_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
  class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler

```

```

class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: state
select type (instance)
type is (mci_test_instance_t)
    call instance%recall (sampler, state)
end select
end subroutine mci_test_rebuild_event

```

### Instance of the test MCI type

This instance type simulates the VAMP approach. We implement the VAMP multi-channel formula, but keep the channel-specific probability functions  $g_i$  smooth and fixed. We also keep the weights fixed.

The setup is as follows: we have  $n$  mappings of the unit hypercube

$$x = x(x^{(k)}) \quad \text{where } x = (x_1, \dots). \quad (13.1)$$

The Jacobian factors are the determinants

$$f^{(k)}(x^{(k)}) = \left| \frac{\partial x}{\partial x^{(k)}} \right| \quad (13.2)$$

We introduce arbitrary probability functions

$$g^{(k)}(x^{(k)}) \quad \text{with} \quad \int dx^{(k)} g^{(k)}(x^{(k)}) = 1 \quad (13.3)$$

and weights

$$w_k \quad \text{with} \quad \sum_k w_k = 1 \quad (13.4)$$

and construct the joint probability function

$$g(x) = \sum_k w_k \frac{g^{(k)}(x^{(k)}(x))}{f^{(k)}(x^{(k)}(x))} \quad (13.5)$$

which also satisfies

$$\int g(x) dx = 1. \quad (13.6)$$

The algorithm implements a resolution of unity as follows

$$\begin{aligned}
1 &= \int dx = \int \frac{g(x)}{g(x)} dx \\
&= \sum_k w_k \int \frac{g^{(k)}(x^{(k)}(x))}{f^{(k)}(x^{(k)}(x))} \frac{dx}{g(x)} \\
&= \sum_k w_k \int g^{(k)}(x^{(k)}) \frac{dx^{(k)}}{g(x(x^{(k)}))}
\end{aligned} \quad (13.7)$$

where each of the integrals in the sum is evaluated using the channel-specific variables  $x^{(k)}$ .

We provide two examples: (1) trivial with one channel, one dimension, and all functions unity and (2) two channels and two dimensions with

$$\begin{aligned} x(x^{(1)}) &= (x_1^{(1)}, x_2^{(1)}) \\ x(x^{(2)}) &= (x_1^{(2)2}, x_2^{(2)}) \end{aligned} \quad (13.8)$$

hence

$$f^{(1)} \equiv 1, \quad f^{(2)}(x^{(2)}) = 2x_1^{(2)} \quad (13.9)$$

The probability functions are

$$g^{(1)} \equiv 1, \quad g^{(2)}(x^{(2)}) = 2x_2^{(2)} \quad (13.10)$$

In the concrete implementation of the integrator instance we store values for the channel probabilities  $g_i$  and the accumulated probability  $g$ .

We also store the result (product of integrand and MCI weight), the expected maximum for the result in each channel.

```

<MCI base: public>+≡
  public :: mci_test_instance_t
<MCI base: test types>+≡
  type, extends (mci_instance_t) :: mci_test_instance_t
    type(mci_test_t), pointer :: mci => null ()
    real(default) :: g = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: gi
    real(default) :: value = 0
    real(default) :: rel_value = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: max
  contains
    procedure :: write => mci_test_instance_write
    procedure :: final => mci_test_instance_final
    procedure :: init => mci_test_instance_init
    procedure :: compute_weight => mci_test_instance_compute_weight
    procedure :: record_integrand => mci_test_instance_record_integrand
    procedure :: init_simulation => mci_test_instance_init_simulation
    procedure :: final_simulation => mci_test_instance_final_simulation
    procedure :: get_event_excess => mci_test_instance_get_event_excess
  end type mci_test_instance_t

```

Output: trivial

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_instance_write (object, unit, pacify)
    class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: u, c
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A,ES13.7)") "Result value = ", object%value
    write (u, "(1x,A,ES13.7)") "Rel. weight = ", object%rel_value
    write (u, "(1x,A,ES13.7)") "Integrand = ", object%integrand
    write (u, "(1x,A,ES13.7)") "MCI weight = ", object%pci_weight
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "c = ", object%selected_channel
  end subroutine mci_test_instance_write

```

```

write (u, "(3x,A,ES13.7)") "g = ", object%g
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Channel parameters:"
do c = 1, object%nci%n_channel
  write (u, "(1x,I0,A,4(1x,ES13.7))") c, ": w/f/g/m =", &
    object%w(c), object%f(c), object%gi(c), object%max(c)
  write (u, "(4x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "x =", object%x(:,c)
end do
end subroutine mci_test_instance_write

```

The finalizer is empty.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_test_instance_final (object)
  class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
end subroutine mci_test_instance_final

```

Initializer. We make use of the analytical result that the maximum of the weighted integrand, in each channel, is equal to 1 (one-dimensional case) and 2 (two-dimensional case), respectively.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_test_instance_init (mci_instance, mci)
  class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(out) :: mci_instance
  class(mci_t), intent(in), target :: mci
  call mci_instance%base_init (mci)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_test_t)
    mci_instance%mci => mci
  end select
  allocate (mci_instance%gi (mci%n_channel))
  mci_instance%gi = 0
  allocate (mci_instance%max (mci%n_channel))
  select case (mci%n_channel)
  case (1)
    mci_instance%max = 1._default
  case (2)
    mci_instance%max = 2._default
  end select
end subroutine mci_test_instance_init

```

Compute weight: we implement the VAMP multi-channel formula. The channel probabilities `gi` are predefined functions.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_test_instance_compute_weight (mci, c)
  class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  integer :: i
  mci%selected_channel = c
  select case (mci%mci%n_dim)
  case (1)
    mci%gi(1) = 1
  case (2)
    mci%gi(1) = 1
    mci%gi(2) = 2 * mci%x(2,2)
  end select
end subroutine mci_test_instance_compute_weight

```

```

end select
mci%g = 0
do i = 1, mci%mci%n_channel
    mci%g = mci%g + mci%w(i) * mci%gi(i) / mci%f(i)
end do
mci%mci_weight = mci%gi(c) / mci%g
end subroutine mci_test_instance_compute_weight

```

Record the integrand. Apply the Jacobian weight to get the absolute value. Divide by the channel maximum and by any overall factor to get the value relative to the maximum.

```

⟨MCI base: tests⟩+≡
subroutine mci_test_instance_record_integrand (mci, integrand)
    class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    real(default), intent(in) :: integrand
    mci%integrand = integrand
    mci%value = mci%integrand * mci%mci_weight
    mci%rel_value = mci%value / mci%max(mci%selected_channel) &
        / mci%mci%max_factor
end subroutine mci_test_instance_record_integrand

```

Nothing to do here.

```

⟨MCI base: tests⟩+≡
subroutine mci_test_instance_init_simulation (instance, safety_factor)
    class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
end subroutine mci_test_instance_init_simulation

subroutine mci_test_instance_final_simulation (instance)
    class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
end subroutine mci_test_instance_final_simulation

```

Return always zero.

```

⟨MCI base: tests⟩+≡
function mci_test_instance_get_event_excess (mci) result (excess)
    class(mci_test_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: excess
    excess = 0
end function mci_test_instance_get_event_excess

```

## Test sampler

The test sampler implements a fixed configuration, either trivial (one-channel, one-dimension), or slightly nontrivial (two-channel, two-dimension). In the second channel, the first parameter is mapped according to  $x_1 = x_1^{(2)2}$ , so we have  $f^{(2)}(x^{(2)}) = 2x_1^{(2)}$ .

For display purposes, we store the return values inside the object. This is not strictly necessary.

```

⟨MCI base: test types⟩+≡
type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_t

```

```

    real(default) :: integrand = 0
    integer :: selected_channel = 0
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
contains
    procedure :: init => test_sampler_init
    procedure :: write => test_sampler_write
    procedure :: compute => test_sampler_compute
    procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_is_valid
    procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_evaluate
    procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_rebuild
    procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_fetch
end type test_sampler_t

```

*(MCI base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine test_sampler_init (sampler, n)
    class(test_sampler_t), intent(out) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: n
    allocate (sampler%x (n, n))
    allocate (sampler%f (n))
end subroutine test_sampler_init

```

Output

*(MCI base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine test_sampler_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(test_sampler_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u, c
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES13.7)") "Integrand = ", object%integrand
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Channel = ", object%selected_channel
    do c = 1, size (object%f)
        write (u, "(1x,I0,' ',1x,A,ES13.7)") c, "f = ", object%f(c)
        write (u, "(4x,A,9(1x,F9.7))") "x =", object%x(:,c)
    end do
end subroutine test_sampler_write

```

Compute  $x$  and Jacobians, given the input parameter array. This is called both by `evaluate` and `rebuild`.

*(MCI base: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine test_sampler_compute (sampler, c, x_in)
    class(test_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    sampler%selected_channel = c
    select case (size (sampler%f))
    case (1)
        sampler%x(:,1) = x_in
        sampler%f = 1
    case (2)

```

```

select case (c)
case (1)
  sampler%x(:,1) = x_in
  sampler%x(1,2) = sqrt (x_in(1))
  sampler%x(2,2) = x_in(2)
case (2)
  sampler%x(1,1) = x_in(1) ** 2
  sampler%x(2,1) = x_in(2)
  sampler%x(:,2) = x_in
end select
sampler%f(1) = 1
sampler%f(2) = 2 * sampler%x(1,2)
end select
end subroutine test_sampler_compute

```

The point is always valid.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
function test_sampler_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
  class(test_sampler_t), intent(in) :: sampler
  logical :: valid
  valid = .true.
end function test_sampler_is_valid

```

The integrand is always equal to 1.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
  class(test_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
  real(default), intent(out) :: val
  real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
  call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
  sampler%integrand = 1
  val = sampler%integrand
  x = sampler%x
  f = sampler%f
end subroutine test_sampler_evaluate

```

Construct kinematics from the input  $x$  array. Set the integrand instead of evaluating it.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
  class(test_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
  real(default), intent(in) :: val
  real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
  call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
  sampler%integrand = val
  x = sampler%x

```

```

        f = sampler%f
    end subroutine test_sampler_rebuild

```

Recall contents.

```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    val = sampler%integrand
    x = sampler%x
    f = sampler%f
end subroutine test_sampler_fetch

```

### Test results object

This mock object just stores and displays the current result.

```

<MCI base: test types>+≡
type, extends (mci_results_t) :: mci_test_results_t
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    real(default) :: integral = 0
    real(default) :: error = 0
    real(default) :: efficiency = 0
contains
    <MCI base: mci test results: TBP>
end type mci_test_results_t

```

Output.

```

<MCI base: mci test results: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => mci_test_results_write

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_test_results_write (object, unit, verbose, suppress)
    class(mci_test_results_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, suppress
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0)") "Iterations = ", object%n_it
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0)") "Calls      = ", object%n_calls
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F12.10)") "Integral  = ", object%integral
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F12.10)") "Error     = ", object%error
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,F12.10)") "Efficiency = ", object%efficiency
end subroutine mci_test_results_write

```

Record result.

```

<MCI base: mci test results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: record => mci_test_results_record

```



```

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_test_results_record (object, n_it, n_calls, &
    integral, error, efficiency, chain_weights, suppress)
    class(mci_test_results_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    real(default), intent(in) :: integral
    real(default), intent(in) :: error
    real(default), intent(in) :: efficiency
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: chain_weights
    logical, intent(in), optional :: suppress
    object%n_it = n_it
    object%n_calls = n_calls
    object%integral = integral
    object%error = error
    object%efficiency = efficiency
  end subroutine mci_test_results_record

```

## Integrator configuration data

Construct and display a test integrator configuration object.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>≡
  call test (mci_base_1, "mci_base_1", &
    "integrator configuration", &
    u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_base_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

    real(default) :: integrand

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &
      &test integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)

    call mci%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)

```

```

call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_t)
    call sampler%init (2)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate sampler for given point and channel"
write (u, "(A)")

call sampler%evaluate (1, [0.25_default, 0.8_default], &
    integrand, mci_instance%x, mci_instance%f)

call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute MCI weight"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%compute_weight (1)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Get integrand and compute weight for another point"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 2, [0.5_default, 0.6_default])
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall results, again"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

call mci_instance%fetch (sampler, 2)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Retrieve value"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,ES13.7)")  "Weighted integrand = ", &
    mci_instance%get_value ()

call mci_instance%final ()

```

```

call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_1"

end subroutine mci_base_1

```

### Trivial integral

Use the MCI approach to compute a trivial one-dimensional integral.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_base_2, "mci_base_2", &
  "integration", &
  u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_base_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: perform a test integral"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_test_t)
    call mci%set_divisions (10)
  end select

  call mci%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
  select type (sampler)
  type is (test_sampler_t)
    call sampler%init (1)
  end select

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 0, 0)

call mci%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_2"

end subroutine mci_base_2

```

### Nontrivial integral

Use the MCI approach to compute a simple two-dimensional integral with two channels.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_base_3, "mci_base_3", &
    "integration (two channels)", &
    u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_base_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: perform a nontrivial test integral"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_test_t)
      call mci%set_divisions (10)
    end select

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_t)
  call sampler%init (2)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 0, 0)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with higher resolution"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
  call mci%set_divisions (100)
end select

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 0, 0)
call mci%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_3"

end subroutine mci_base_3

```

## Event generation

We generate “random” events, one weighted and one unweighted. The test implementation does not require an integration pass, we can generate events immediately.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_base_4, "mci_base_4", &
    "event generation (two channels)", &
    u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_base_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_4"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, instance, sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
    call mci%set_divisions (10)
end select

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_t)
    call sampler%init (2)
end select

allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
call mci%import_rng (rng)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate weighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

call sampler%write (u)
write (u, *)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

select type (mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
    write (u, "(A,I0)")  " Success in try ", mci%tries
    write (u, "(A)")
end select

call sampler%write (u)
write (u, *)
call mci_instance%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_4"

    end subroutine mci_base_4

```

### Store and recall data

We generate an event and store the relevant data, i.e., the input parameters and the result value for a particular channel. Then we use those data to recover the event, as far as the MCI record is concerned.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_base_5, "mci_base_5", &
        "store and recall", &
        u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_base_5 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
        class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
        class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
        class(mci_state_t), allocatable :: state

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_5"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: store and recall an event"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, instance, sampler"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
        call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
        select type (mci)
            type is (mci_test_t)
                call mci%set_divisions (10)
        end select

        call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
        call mci_instance%init (mci)

        allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
        select type (sampler)
            type is (test_sampler_t)
                call sampler%init (2)
        end select

        allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
        call mci%import_rng (rng)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate weighted event"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

```

```

call sampler%write (u)
write (u, *)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Store data"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (state)
call mci_instance%store (state)
call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)

call state%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall data and rebuild event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)
call mci%rebuild_event (mci_instance, sampler, state)

call sampler%write (u)
write (u, *)
call mci_instance%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_5"

end subroutine mci_base_5

```

## Chained channels

Chain channels together. In the base configuration, this just fills entries in an extra array (each channel may belong to a chain). In type implementations, this will be used for grouping equivalent channels by keeping their weights equal.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_base_6, "mci_base_6", &
  "chained channels", &
  u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_base_6 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_6"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize and display &

```



```

        &test integrator with chains"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 5)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Introduce chains"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%declare_chains ([1, 2, 2, 1, 2])

call mci%write (u)

call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_6"

end subroutine mci_base_6

```

## Recording results

Compute a simple two-dimensional integral and record the result.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_base_7, "mci_base_7", &
    "recording results", &
    u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_base_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(mci_results_t), allocatable :: results

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_7"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: perform a nontrivial test integral &
    &and record results"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_test_t)
    call mci%set_divisions (10)
  end select

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_t)
    call sampler%init (2)
end select

allocate (mci_test_results_t :: results)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000, results)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Display results"
write (u, "(A)")

call results%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_7"

end subroutine mci_base_7

```

## Timer

Simple checks for the embedded timer.

```

<MCI base: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_base_8, "mci_base_8", &
        "timer", &
        u, results)

<MCI base: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_base_8 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_base_8"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check timer availability"
    end subroutine mci_base_8

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator with timer"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_test_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
    call mci%set_divisions (10)
end select

call mci%set_timer (active = .true.)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Start timer"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%start_timer ()
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Stop timer"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%stop_timer ()
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Readout"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,F6.3)")  "Time = ", mci%get_time ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Deactivate timer"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%set_timer (active = .false.)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_base_8"

end subroutine mci_base_8

```

## 13.2 Simple midpoint integration

This is a most simple implementation of an integrator. The algorithm is the straightforward multi-dimensional midpoint rule, i.e., the integration hypercube is binned uniformly, the integrand is evaluated at the midpoints of each bin, and the result is the average. The binning is equivalent for all integration dimensions.

This rule is accurate to the order  $h^2$ , where  $h$  is the bin width. Given that  $h = N^{-1/d}$ , where  $d$  is the integration dimension and  $N$  is the total number of sampling points, we get a relative error of order  $N^{-2/d}$ . This is superior to MC integration if  $d < 4$ , and equivalent if  $d = 4$ . It is not worse than higher-order formulas (such as Gauss integration) if the integrand is not smooth, e.g., if it contains cuts.

The integrator is specifically single-channel. However, we do not limit the dimension.

```
<mci_midpoint.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module mci_midpoint  
  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    use phs_base  
    use rng_base  
    use mci_base  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <MCI midpoint: public>  
  
    <MCI midpoint: types>  
  
    <MCI midpoint: test types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <MCI midpoint: procedures>  
  
    <MCI midpoint: tests>  
  
  end module mci_midpoint
```

### 13.2.1 Integrator

The object contains the methods for integration and event generation. For the actual work and data storage, it spawns an instance object.

After an integration pass, we update the `max` parameter to indicate the maximum absolute value of the integrand that the integrator encountered. This

is required for event generation.

```

<MCI midpoint: public>≡
    public :: mci_midpoint_t

<MCI midpoint: types>≡
    type, extends (mci_t) :: mci_midpoint_t
        integer :: n_dim_binned = 0
        logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: dim_is_binned
        logical :: calls_known = .false.
        integer :: n_calls = 0
        integer :: n_calls_pos = 0
        integer :: n_calls_nul = 0
        integer :: n_calls_neg = 0
        real(default) :: integral_pos = 0
        real(default) :: integral_neg = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_bin
        logical :: max_known = .false.
        real(default) :: max = 0
        real(default) :: min = 0
        real(default) :: max_abs = 0
        real(default) :: min_abs = 0
    contains
        <MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>
    end type mci_midpoint_t

```

Finalizer: base version is sufficient

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => mci_midpoint_final

<MCI midpoint: procedures>≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_final (object)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call object%base_final ()
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_final

```

Output.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => mci_midpoint_write

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_write (object, unit, pacify, md5sum_version)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
        logical, intent(in), optional :: md5sum_version
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Single-channel midpoint rule integrator:"
        call object%base_write (u, pacify, md5sum_version)
        if (object%n_dim_binned < object%n_dim) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,99(1x,I0))") "Flat dimensions      =", &
                pack ([i, i = 1, object%n_dim], mask = .not. object%dim_is_binned)
            write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of binned dim =", object%n_dim_binned
        end if
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_write

```

```

if (object%calls_known) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,99(1x,I0))") "Number of bins      =", object%n_bin
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of calls      =", object%n_calls
  if (object%n_calls_pos /= object%n_calls) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "  positive value    =", object%n_calls_pos
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "  zero value        =", object%n_calls_nul
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "  negative value    =", object%n_calls_neg
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") &
      "Integral (pos. part) =", object%integral_pos
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") &
      "Integral (neg. part) =", object%integral_neg
  end if
end if
if (object%max_known) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Maximum of integrand =", object%max
  write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Minimum of integrand =", object%min
  if (object%min /= object%min_abs) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Maximum (abs. value) =", object%max_abs
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Minimum (abs. value) =", object%min_abs
  end if
end if
if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%write (u)
end subroutine mci_midpoint_write

```

Startup message: short version.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: startup_message => mci_midpoint_startup_message

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_startup_message (mci, unit, n_calls)
    class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(in) :: mci
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, n_calls
    call mci%base_startup_message (unit = unit, n_calls = n_calls)
    if (mci%n_dim_binned < mci%n_dim) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
        "Integrator: Midpoint rule:", &
        mci%n_dim_binned, "binned dimensions"
    else
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
        "Integrator: Midpoint rule"
    end if
    call msg_message (unit = unit)
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_startup_message

```

The number of channels must be one.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_dimensions => mci_midpoint_set_dimensions

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_set_dimensions (mci, n_dim, n_channel)
    class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: n_dim
    integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
    if (n_channel == 1) then

```

```

        mci%n_channel = n_channel
        mci%n_dim = n_dim
        allocate (mci%dim_is_binned (mci%n_dim))
        mci%dim_is_binned = .true.
        mci%n_dim_binned = count (mci%dim_is_binned)
        allocate (mci%n_bin (mci%n_dim))
        mci%n_bin = 0
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Attempt to initialize single-channel integrator &
            &for multiple channels")
    end if
end subroutine mci_midpoint_set_dimensions

```

Declare particular dimensions as flat. These dimensions will not be binned.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: declare_flat_dimensions => mci_midpoint_declare_flat_dimensions

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_declare_flat_dimensions (mci, dim_flat)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: dim_flat
        integer :: d
        mci%n_dim_binned = mci%n_dim - size (dim_flat)
        do d = 1, size (dim_flat)
            mci%dim_is_binned(dim_flat(d)) = .false.
        end do
        mci%n_dim_binned = count (mci%dim_is_binned)
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_declare_flat_dimensions

```

Declare particular channels as equivalent. This has no effect.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: declare_equivalences => mci_midpoint_ignore_equivalences

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_ignore_equivalences (mci, channel, dim_offset)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: channel
        integer, intent(in) :: dim_offset
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_ignore_equivalences

```

Allocate instance with matching type.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_instance => mci_midpoint_allocate_instance

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_allocate_instance (mci, mci_instance)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(in) :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), intent(out), pointer :: mci_instance
        allocate (mci_midpoint_instance_t :: mci_instance)
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_allocate_instance

```

Integrate. The number of dimensions is arbitrary. We make sure that the number of calls is evenly distributed among the dimensions. The actual number of calls will typically be smaller than the requested number, but never smaller than 1.

The sampling over a variable number of dimensions implies a variable number of nested loops. We implement this by a recursive subroutine, one loop in each recursion level.

The number of iterations `n_it` is ignored. Also, the error is set to zero in the current implementation.

With this integrator, we allow the calculation to abort immediately when forced by a signal. There is no state that we can save, hence we do not catch an interrupt.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: integrate => mci_midpoint_integrate

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_integrate (mci, instance, sampler, n_it, n_calls, &
    results, pacify)
    class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    class(mci_results_t), intent(inout), optional :: results
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    real(default) :: integral, integral_pos, integral_neg
    integer :: n_bin
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_midpoint_instance_t)
      allocate (x (mci%n_dim))
      integral = 0
      integral_pos = 0
      integral_neg = 0
      select case (mci%n_dim_binned)
      case (1)
        n_bin = n_calls
      case (2:)
        n_bin = max (int (n_calls ** (1. / mci%n_dim_binned)), 1)
      end select
      where (mci%dim_is_binned)
        mci%n_bin = n_bin
      elsewhere
        mci%n_bin = 1
      end where
      mci%n_calls = product (mci%n_bin)
      mci%n_calls_pos = 0
      mci%n_calls_nul = 0
      mci%n_calls_neg = 0
      mci%calls_known = .true.
      call sample_dim (mci%n_dim)
      mci%integral = integral / mci%n_calls
      mci%integral_pos = integral_pos / mci%n_calls

```



```

        mci%integral_neg = integral_neg / mci%n_calls
        mci%integral_known = .true.
        call instance%set_max ()
        if (present (results)) then
            call results%record (1, mci%n_calls, &
                mci%integral, mci%error, mci%efficiency)
        end if
    end select
contains
    recursive subroutine sample_dim (d)
        integer, intent(in) :: d
        integer :: i
        real(default) :: value
        do i = 1, mci%n_bin(d)
            x(d) = (i - 0.5_default) / mci%n_bin(d)
            if (d > 1) then
                call sample_dim (d - 1)
            else
                if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                call instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, x)
                value = instance%get_value ()
                if (value > 0) then
                    mci%n_calls_pos = mci%n_calls_pos + 1
                    integral = integral + value
                    integral_pos = integral_pos + value
                else if (value == 0) then
                    mci%n_calls_nul = mci%n_calls_nul + 1
                else
                    mci%n_calls_neg = mci%n_calls_neg + 1
                    integral = integral + value
                    integral_neg = integral_neg + value
                end if
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine sample_dim
end subroutine mci_midpoint_integrate

```

Simulation initializer and finalizer: nothing to do here.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_simulation => mci_midpoint_ignore_prepare_simulation
<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_ignore_prepare_simulation (mci)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_ignore_prepare_simulation

```

Generate weighted event.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_weighted_event => mci_midpoint_generate_weighted_event
<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_generate_weighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
        class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_generate_weighted_event

```

```

class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
real(default), dimension(mci%n_dim) :: x
select type (instance)
type is (mci_midpoint_instance_t)
  call mci%rng%generate (x)
  call instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, x)
  instance%excess_weight = 0
end select
end subroutine mci_midpoint_generate_weighted_event

```

For unweighted events, we generate weighted events and apply a simple rejection step to the relative event weight, until an event passes.

Note that we use the `max_abs` value stored in the configuration record, not the one stored in the instance. The latter may change during event generation. After an event generation pass is over, we may update the value for a subsequent pass.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: generate_unweighted_event => &
    mci_midpoint_generate_unweighted_event

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_generate_unweighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
    class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
    real(default) :: x, norm, int
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_midpoint_instance_t)
      if (mci%max_known .and. mci%max_abs > 0) then
        norm = abs (mci%max_abs * instance%safety_factor)
        REJECTION: do
          call mci%generate_weighted_event (instance, sampler)
          if (sampler%is_valid ()) then
            call mci%rng%generate (x)
            int = abs (instance%integrand)
            if (x * norm <= int) then
              if (norm > 0 .and. norm < int) then
                instance%excess_weight = int / norm - 1
              end if
            end if
            exit REJECTION
          end if
        end do REJECTION
      else
        call msg_fatal ("Unweighted event generation: &
          &maximum of integrand is zero or unknown")
      end if
    end select
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_generate_unweighted_event

```

Rebuild an event, using the state input.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: rebuild_event => mci_midpoint_rebuild_event
  <MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_rebuild_event (mci, instance, sampler, state)
      class(mci_midpoint_t), intent(inout) :: mci
      class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
      class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: state
      select type (instance)
        type is (mci_midpoint_instance_t)
          call instance%recall (sampler, state)
        end select
      end subroutine mci_midpoint_rebuild_event

```

### 13.2.2 Integrator instance

Covering the case of flat dimensions, we store a complete  $x$  array. This is filled when generating events.

```

  <MCI midpoint: public>+≡
    public :: mci_midpoint_instance_t

  <MCI midpoint: types>+≡
    type, extends (mci_instance_t) :: mci_midpoint_instance_t
      type(mci_midpoint_t), pointer :: mci => null ()
      logical :: max_known = .false.
      real(default) :: max = 0
      real(default) :: min = 0
      real(default) :: max_abs = 0
      real(default) :: min_abs = 0
      real(default) :: safety_factor = 1
      real(default) :: excess_weight = 0
    contains
      <MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>
    end type mci_midpoint_instance_t

```

Output.

```

  <MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => mci_midpoint_instance_write

  <MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_write (object, unit, pacify)
      class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
      integer :: u
      u = output_unit (unit)
      write (u, "(1x,A,9(1x,F12.10))") "x =", object%x(:,1)
      write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Integrand = ", object%integrand
      write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Weight      = ", object%mci_weight
      if (object%safety_factor /= 1) then
        write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Safety f  = ", object%safety_factor
      end if
      if (object%excess_weight /= 0) then

```

```

        write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Excess      = ", object%excess_weight
    end if
    if (object%max_known) then
        write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Maximum    = ", object%max
        write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Minimum    = ", object%min
        if (object%min /= object%min_abs) then
            write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Max.(abs) = ", object%max_abs
            write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)") "Min.(abs) = ", object%min_abs
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_write

```

The finalizer is empty.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => mci_midpoint_instance_final

<MCI midpoint: tests>≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_final (object)
        class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_final

```

Initializer.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => mci_midpoint_instance_init

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_init (mci_instance, mci)
        class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(out) :: mci_instance
        class(mci_t), intent(in), target :: mci
        call mci_instance%base_init (mci)
        select type (mci)
        type is (mci_midpoint_t)
            mci_instance%mci => mci
            call mci_instance%get_max ()
            mci_instance%selected_channel = 1
        end select
    end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_init

```

Copy the stored extrema of the integrand in the instance record.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_max => mci_midpoint_instance_get_max

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_get_max (instance)
        class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        associate (mci => instance%mci)
            if (mci%max_known) then
                instance%max_known = .true.
                instance%max = mci%max
                instance%min = mci%min
                instance%max_abs = mci%max_abs
                instance%min_abs = mci%min_abs
            end if
        end associate
    end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_get_max
```

Reverse operations: recall the extrema, but only if they are wider than the extrema already stored in the configuration. Also recalculate the efficiency value.

```
<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_max => mci_midpoint_instance_set_max

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_set_max (instance)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    associate (mci => instance%mci)
      if (instance%max_known) then
        if (mci%max_known) then
          mci%max = max (mci%max, instance%max)
          mci%min = min (mci%min, instance%min)
          mci%max_abs = max (mci%max_abs, instance%max_abs)
          mci%min_abs = min (mci%min_abs, instance%min_abs)
        else
          mci%max = instance%max
          mci%min = instance%min
          mci%max_abs = instance%max_abs
          mci%min_abs = instance%min_abs
          mci%max_known = .true.
        end if
      if (mci%max_abs /= 0) then
        if (mci%integral == mci%integral_pos) then
          mci%efficiency = mci%integral / mci%max_abs
          mci%efficiency_known = .true.
        else if (mci%n_calls /= 0) then
          mci%efficiency = &
            (mci%n_calls_pos * mci%integral_pos &
              - mci%n_calls_neg * mci%integral_neg) &
            / mci%n_calls / mci%max_abs
          mci%efficiency_known = .true.
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end associate
end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_set_max
```

The weight is the Jacobian of the mapping for the only channel.

```
<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_weight => mci_midpoint_instance_compute_weight

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_compute_weight (mci, c)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    select case (c)
      case (1)
        mci%weight = mci%f(1)
      case default
        call msg_fatal ("MCI midpoint integrator: only single channel supported")
    end select
  end subroutine
```

```

end select
end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_compute_weight

```

Record the integrand. Update stored values for maximum and minimum.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record_integrand => mci_midpoint_instance_record_integrand

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_record_integrand (mci, integrand)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    real(default), intent(in) :: integrand
    mci%integrand = integrand
    if (mci%max_known) then
      mci%max = max (mci%max, integrand)
      mci%min = min (mci%min, integrand)
      mci%max_abs = max (mci%max_abs, abs (integrand))
      mci%min_abs = min (mci%min_abs, abs (integrand))
    else
      mci%max = integrand
      mci%min = integrand
      mci%max_abs = abs (integrand)
      mci%min_abs = abs (integrand)
      mci%max_known = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_record_integrand

```

We store the safety factor, otherwise nothing to do here.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_simulation => mci_midpoint_instance_init_simulation
  procedure :: final_simulation => mci_midpoint_instance_final_simulation

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_init_simulation (instance, safety_factor)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
    if (present (safety_factor)) instance%safety_factor = safety_factor
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_init_simulation

  subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_final_simulation (instance)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_instance_final_simulation

```

Return excess weight for the current event.

```

<MCI midpoint: mci midpoint instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_event_excess => mci_midpoint_instance_get_event_excess

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  function mci_midpoint_instance_get_event_excess (mci) result (excess)
    class(mci_midpoint_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: excess
    excess = mci%excess_weight
  end function mci_midpoint_instance_get_event_excess

```

### 13.2.3 Unit tests

```

<MCI midpoint: public>+≡
  public :: mci_midpoint_test

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <MCI midpoint: execute tests>
  end subroutine mci_midpoint_test

```

#### Test sampler

A test sampler object should implement a function with known integral that we can use to check the integrator.

This is the function  $f(x) = 3x^2$  with integral  $\int_0^1 f(x) dx = 1$  and maximum  $f(1) = 3$ . If the integration dimension is greater than one, the function is extended as a constant in the other dimension(s).

Mimicking the behavior of a process object, we store the argument and result inside the sampler, so we can `fetch` results.

```

<MCI midpoint: test types>≡
  type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_1_t
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    real(default) :: val
  contains
  <MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>
  end type test_sampler_1_t

```

Output: There is nothing stored inside, so just print an informative line.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => test_sampler_1_write

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 3 x^2"
  end subroutine test_sampler_1_write

```

Evaluation: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_1_evaluate

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c

```

```

    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    if (allocated (sampler%x)) deallocate (sampler%x)
    allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in)))
    sampler%x = x_in
    sampler%val = 3 * x_in(1) ** 2
    call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
end subroutine test_sampler_1_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_1_is_valid

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
    function test_sampler_1_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
        class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        logical :: valid
        valid = .true.
    end function test_sampler_1_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_1_rebuild

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_1_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
        real(default), intent(in) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        if (allocated (sampler%x)) deallocate (sampler%x)
        allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in)))
        sampler%x = x_in
        sampler%val = val
        x(:,1) = sampler%x
        f = 1
    end subroutine test_sampler_1_rebuild

```

Extract the results.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_1_fetch

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_1_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        val = sampler%val
        x(:,1) = sampler%x

```



```

    f = 1
end subroutine test_sampler_1_fetch

```

This is the function  $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2y$  with integral  $\int_0^1 f(x,y) dx dy = 2$  and maximum  $f(1) = 5$ .

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test types⟩+≡
  type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_2_t
    real(default) :: val
    real(default), dimension(2) :: x
  contains
    ⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩
  end type test_sampler_2_t

```

Output: There is nothing stored inside, so just print an informative line.

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => test_sampler_2_write

⟨MCI midpoint: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_2_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 3 x^2 + 2 y"
  end subroutine test_sampler_2_write

```

Evaluate: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_2_evaluate

⟨MCI midpoint: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_2_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    sampler%x = x_in
    sampler%val = 3 * x_in(1) ** 2 + 2 * x_in(2)
    call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
  end subroutine test_sampler_2_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_2_is_valid

⟨MCI midpoint: tests⟩+≡
  function test_sampler_2_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    logical :: valid

```

```

        valid = .true.
    end function test_sampler_2_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_2_rebuild

⟨MCI midpoint: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_2_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
        real(default), intent(in) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        sampler%x = x_in
        sampler%val = val
        x(:,1) = sampler%x
        f = 1
    end subroutine test_sampler_2_rebuild

```

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_2_fetch

⟨MCI midpoint: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_2_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        val = sampler%val
        x(:,1) = sampler%x
        f = 1
    end subroutine test_sampler_2_fetch

```

This is the function  $f(x) = (1 - 3x^2)\theta(x - 1/2)$  with integral  $\int_0^1 f(x) dx = -3/8$ , minimum  $f(1) = -2$  and maximum  $f(1/2) = 1/4$ . If the integration dimension is greater than one, the function is extended as a constant in the other dimension(s).

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test types⟩+≡
    type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_4_t
        real(default) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
    contains
        ⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP⟩
    end type test_sampler_4_t

```

Output: There is nothing stored inside, so just print an informative line.

```

⟨MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP⟩≡
    procedure :: write => test_sampler_4_write

```

```

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_4_write (object, unit, testflag)
  class(test_sampler_4_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 1 - 3 x^2"
end subroutine test_sampler_4_write

```

Evaluation: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_4_evaluate

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_4_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
  class(test_sampler_4_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
  real(default), intent(out) :: val
  real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
  if (x_in(1) >= .5_default) then
    sampler%val = 1 - 3 * x_in(1) ** 2
  else
    sampler%val = 0
  end if
  if (.not. allocated (sampler%x)) allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in)))
  sampler%x = x_in
  call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
end subroutine test_sampler_4_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_4_is_valid

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
function test_sampler_4_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
  class(test_sampler_4_t), intent(in) :: sampler
  logical :: valid
  valid = .true.
end function test_sampler_4_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_4_rebuild

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
subroutine test_sampler_4_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
  class(test_sampler_4_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in

```

```

    real(default), intent(in) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    sampler%x = x_in
    sampler%val = val
    x(:,1) = sampler%x
    f = 1
end subroutine test_sampler_4_rebuild

```

```

<MCI midpoint: test sampler 4: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_4_fetch

```

```

<MCI midpoint: procedures>+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_4_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_4_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        val = sampler%val
        x(:,1) = sampler%x
        f = 1
    end subroutine test_sampler_4_fetch

```

## One-dimensional integration

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler.

```

<MCI midpoint: execute tests>≡
    call test (mci_midpoint_1, "mci_midpoint_1", &
        "one-dimensional integral", &
        u, results)

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_midpoint_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
        class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
        call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)

        call mci%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
        write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.8_default])
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.7"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.7_default])
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.9"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.9_default])
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_1"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_1

```

## Two-dimensional integration

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler.

*(MCI midpoint: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (mci_midpoint_2, "mci_midpoint_2", &
  "two-dimensional integral", &
  u, results)

```

```

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_midpoint_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (2, 1)

  call mci%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)
  call sampler%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.8, y = 0.2"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.8_default, 0.2_default])
  call mci_instance%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_calls = 1000"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
  call mci%write (u)

  call mci_instance%final ()
  call mci%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_2"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_2

```

## Two-dimensional integration with flat dimension

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler, where the function is constant in the second dimension.

```
(MCI midpoint: execute tests)+≡
  call test (mci_midpoint_3, "mci_midpoint_3", &
    "two-dimensional integral with flat dimension", &
    u, results)

(MCI midpoint: tests)+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function with one flat dimension"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_midpoint_t)
      call mci%set_dimensions (2, 1)
      call mci%declare_flat_dimensions ([2])
    end select

    call mci%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
    call sampler%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.8, y = 0.2"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.8_default, 0.2_default])
    call mci_instance%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_calls = 1000"
    write (u, "(A)")
```

```

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_3"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_3

```

### Integrand with sign flip

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler.

```

<MCI midpoint: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_midpoint_4, "mci_midpoint_4", &
  "integrand with sign flip", &
  u, results)

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_midpoint_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function with sign flip &
    &in one dimension"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)

  call mci%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (test_sampler_4_t :: sampler)
  call sampler%write (u)

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for x = 0.8"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%evaluate (sampler, 1, [0.8_default])
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_4"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_4

```

## Weighted events

Generate weighted events. Without rejection, we do not need to know maxima and minima, so we can start generating events immediately. We have two dimensions.

```

<MCI midpoint: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_midpoint_5, "mci_midpoint_5", &
    "weighted events", &
    u, results)

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_midpoint_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    class(mci_state_t), allocatable :: state

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate weighted events"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (2, 1)

    call mci%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize random-number generator"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate weighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate weighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Store data"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (state)
call mci_instance%store (state)
call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)

call state%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall data and rebuild event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)
call mci%rebuild_event (mci_instance, sampler, state)

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_5"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_5

```

### Unweighted events

Generate unweighted events. The integrand has a sign flip in it.

```

<MCI midpoint: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_midpoint_6, "mci_midpoint_6", &
  "unweighted events", &
  u, results)

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_midpoint_6 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_6"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate unweighted events"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (test_sampler_4_t :: sampler)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize random-number generator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
  call rng%init ()

```

```

call mci%import_rng (rng)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate (determine maximum of integrand"
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_6"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_6

```

## Excess weight

Generate unweighted events. With only 2 points for integration, the maximum of the integrand is too low, and we produce excess weight.

```

<MCI midpoint: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_midpoint_7, "mci_midpoint_7", &
  "excess weight", &
  u, results)

<MCI midpoint: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_midpoint_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_midpoint_7"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate unweighted event &
    &with excess weight"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (test_sampler_4_t :: sampler)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize random-number generator"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate (determine maximum of integrand"
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 2)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%init_simulation ()
call mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Use getter methods"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,1x,ES19.12)")  "weight =", mci_instance%get_event_weight ()
write (u, "(1x,A,1x,ES19.12)")  "excess =", mci_instance%get_event_excess ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Apply safety factor"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%init_simulation (safety_factor = 2.1_default)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Use getter methods"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,1x,ES19.12)") "weight =", mci_instance%get_event_weight ()
write (u, "(1x,A,1x,ES19.12)") "excess =", mci_instance%get_event_excess ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_midpoint_7"

end subroutine mci_midpoint_7

```

### 13.3 VAMP interface

The standard method for integration is **VAMP**: the multi-channel version of the VEGAS algorithm. Each parameterization (channel) of the hypercube is binned in each dimension. The binning is equally equidistant, but an iteration of the integration procedure, the binning is updated for each dimension, according to the variance distribution of the integrand, summed over all other dimension. In the next iteration, the binning approximates (hopefully) follows the integrand more closely, and the accuracy of the result is increased. Furthermore, the relative weight of the individual channels is also updated after an iteration.

The bin distribution is denoted as the grid for a channel, which we can write to file and reuse later.

In our implementation we specify the generic **VAMP** algorithm more tightly: the number of bins is equal for all dimensions, the initial weights are all equal. The user controls whether to update bins and/or weights after each iteration. The integration is organized in passes, each one consisting of several iterations with a common number of calls to the integrand. The first passes are intended as warmup, so the results are displayed but otherwise discarded. In the final pass, the integration estimates for the individual iterations are averaged for the final result.

```

⟨mci_vamp.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

module mci_vamp

  use kinds !NODEP!
  ⟨Use strings⟩
  ⟨Use file utils⟩
  use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_14, FMT_17, FMT_19 !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use constants !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use md5

```

```

    use phs_base
    use rng_base
    use rng_tao
    use mci_base

    use vamp !NODEP!
    use exceptions !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <MCI vamp: public>

    <MCI vamp: types>

    <MCI vamp: interfaces>

    <MCI vamp: test types>

contains

    <MCI vamp: procedures>

    <MCI vamp: tests>

end module mci_vamp

```

### 13.3.1 Grid parameters

This is a transparent container. It holds the parameters that are stored in grid files, and are checked when grid files are read.

```

<MCI vamp: public>≡
    public :: grid_parameters_t

<MCI vamp: types>≡
    type :: grid_parameters_t
        integer :: threshold_calls = 0
        integer :: min_calls_per_channel = 10
        integer :: min_calls_per_bin = 10
        integer :: min_bins = 3
        integer :: max_bins = 20
        logical :: stratified = .true.
        logical :: use_vamp_equivalences = .true.
        real(default) :: channel_weights_power = 0.25_default
        real(default) :: accuracy_goal = 0
        real(default) :: error_goal = 0
        real(default) :: rel_error_goal = 0
    contains
        <MCI vamp: grid parameters: TBP>
    end type grid_parameters_t

```

I/O:

```

<MCI vamp: grid parameters: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => grid_parameters_write

```

*<MCI vamp: procedures>≡*

```

subroutine grid_parameters_write (object, unit)
  class(grid_parameters_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "threshold_calls      = ", &
    object%threshold_calls
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "min_calls_per_channel = ", &
    object%min_calls_per_channel
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "min_calls_per_bin    = ", &
    object%min_calls_per_bin
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "min_bins          = ", &
    object%min_bins
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "max_bins          = ", &
    object%max_bins
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "stratified        = ", &
    object%stratified
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "use_vamp_equivalences = ", &
    object%use_vamp_equivalences
  write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7)") "channel_weights_power = ", &
    object%channel_weights_power
  if (object%accuracy_goal > 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7)") "accuracy_goal      = ", &
      object%accuracy_goal
  end if
  if (object%error_goal > 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7)") "error_goal        = ", &
      object%error_goal
  end if
  if (object%rel_error_goal > 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,F10.7)") "rel_error_goal    = ", &
      object%rel_error_goal
  end if
end subroutine grid_parameters_write

```

### 13.3.2 History parameters

The history parameters are also stored in a transparent container. This is not a part of the grid definition, and should not be included in the MD5 sum.

*<MCI vamp: public>+≡*

```

public :: history_parameters_t

```

*<MCI vamp: types>+≡*

```

type :: history_parameters_t
  logical :: global = .true.
  logical :: global_verbose = .false.
  logical :: channel = .false.
  logical :: channel_verbose = .false.
contains
  <MCI vamp: history parameters: TBP>
end type history_parameters_t

```



I/O:

```
<MCI vamp: history parameters: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => history_parameters_write

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine history_parameters_write (object, unit)
    class(history_parameters_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "history(global)          = ", object%global
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "history(global) verb. = ", object%global_verbose
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "history(channels)       = ", object%channel
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "history(chann.) verb. = ", object%channel_verbose
  end subroutine history_parameters_write
```

### 13.3.3 Integration pass

We store the parameters for each integration pass in a linked list.

```
<MCI vamp: types>+≡
  type :: pass_t
    integer :: i_pass = 0
    integer :: i_first_it = 0
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    integer :: n_bins = 0
    logical :: adapt_grids = .false.
    logical :: adapt_weights = .false.
    logical :: is_final_pass = .false.
    logical :: integral_defined = .false.
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: calls
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: integral
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: error
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: efficiency
    type(vamp_history), dimension(:), allocatable :: v_history
    type(vamp_history), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: v_histories
    type(pass_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  contains
    <MCI vamp: pass: TBP>
  end type pass_t
```

Finalizer. The VAMP histories contain a pointer array.

```
<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => pass_final

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pass_final (object)
    class(pass_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%v_history)) then
      call vamp_delete_history (object%v_history)
    end if
    if (allocated (object%v_histories)) then
      call vamp_delete_history (object%v_histories)
    end if
  end subroutine pass_final
```

```

end if
end subroutine pass_final

```

Output. Note that the precision of the numerical values should match the precision for comparing output from file with data.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => pass_write
<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pass_write (object, unit, pacify)
    class(pass_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: u, i
    character(len=7) :: fmt
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_17, FMT_14, pacify)
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_it          = ", object%n_it
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_calls       = ", object%n_calls
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_bins        = ", object%n_bins
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "adapt grids  = ", object%adapt_grids
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "adapt weights = ", object%adapt_weights
    if (object%integral_defined) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Results: [it, calls, integral, error, efficiency]"
      do i = 1, object%n_it
        write (u, "(5x,I0,1x,I0,3(1x," // fmt // ")") &
          i, object%calls(i), object%integral(i), object%error(i), &
          object%efficiency(i)
      end do
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Results: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine pass_write

```

Read and reconstruct the pass.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read => pass_read
<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pass_read (object, u, n_pass, n_it)
    class(pass_t), intent(out) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: u, n_pass, n_it
    integer :: i, j
    character(80) :: buffer
    object%i_pass = n_pass + 1
    object%i_first_it = n_it + 1
    call read_ival (u, object%n_it)
    call read_ival (u, object%n_calls)
    call read_ival (u, object%n_bins)
    call read_lval (u, object%adapt_grids)
    call read_lval (u, object%adapt_weights)
    allocate (object%calls (object%n_it), source = 0)
    allocate (object%integral (object%n_it), source = 0._default)
    allocate (object%error (object%n_it), source = 0._default)

```

```

allocate (object%efficiency (object%n_it), source = 0._default)
read (u, "(A)") buffer
select case (trim (adjustl (buffer)))
case ("Results: [it, calls, integral, error, efficiency]")
  do i = 1, object%n_it
    read (u, *) &
      j, object%calls(i), object%integral(i), object%error(i), &
      object%efficiency(i)
  end do
  object%integral_defined = .true.
case ("Results: [undefined]")
  object%integral_defined = .false.
case default
  call msg_fatal ("Reading integration pass: corrupted file")
end select
end subroutine pass_read

```

Write the VAMP history for this pass. (The subroutine writes the whole array at once.)

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_history => pass_write_history

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pass_write_history (pass, unit)
    class(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (allocated (pass%v_history)) then
      call vamp_write_history (u, pass%v_history)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Global history: [undefined]"
    end if
    if (allocated (pass%v_histories)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Channel histories:"
      call vamp_write_history (u, pass%v_histories)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Channel histories: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine pass_write_history

```

Given a number of calls and iterations, compute remaining data.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: configure => pass_configure

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pass_configure (pass, n_it, n_calls, min_calls, &
    min_bins, max_bins, min_channel_calls)
    class(pass_t), intent(inout) :: pass
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it, n_calls, min_channel_calls
    integer, intent(in) :: min_calls, min_bins, max_bins
    pass%n_it = n_it
    if (min_calls /= 0) then
      pass%n_bins = max (min_bins, &

```

```

        min (n_calls / min_calls, max_bins))
    else
        pass%n_bins = max_bins
    end if
    pass%n_calls = max (n_calls, max (min_calls, min_channel_calls))
    if (pass%n_calls /= n_calls) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)" "VAMP: too few calls, resetting " &
            // "n_calls to ", pass%n_calls
        call msg_warning ()
    end if
    allocate (pass%calls (n_it), source = 0)
    allocate (pass%integral (n_it), source = 0._default)
    allocate (pass%error (n_it), source = 0._default)
    allocate (pass%efficiency (n_it), source = 0._default)
end subroutine pass_configure

```

Allocate the VAMP history and give options. We assume that the `configure` routine above has been executed, so the number of iterations is known.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: configure_history => pass_configure_history

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pass_configure_history (pass, n_channels, par)
        class(pass_t), intent(inout) :: pass
        integer, intent(in) :: n_channels
        type(history_parameters_t), intent(in) :: par
        if (par%global) then
            allocate (pass%v_history (pass%n_it))
            call vamp_create_history (pass%v_history, &
                verbose = par%global_verbose)
        end if
        if (par%channel) then
            allocate (pass%v_histories (pass%n_it, n_channels))
            call vamp_create_history (pass%v_histories, &
                verbose = par%channel_verbose)
        end if
    end subroutine pass_configure_history

```

Given two pass objects, compare them. All parameters must match. Where integrations are done in both (number of calls nonzero), the results must be equal (up to numerical noise).

The allocated array sizes might be different, but should match up to the common `n_it` value.

```

<MCI vamp: interfaces>≡
    interface operator (.matches.)
        module procedure pass_matches
    end interface operator (.matches.)

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    function pass_matches (pass, ref) result (ok)
        type(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass, ref
        integer :: n
        logical :: ok

```

```

ok = .true.
if (ok) ok = pass%i_pass == ref%i_pass
if (ok) ok = pass%i_first_it == ref%i_first_it
if (ok) ok = pass%n_it == ref%n_it
if (ok) ok = pass%n_calls == ref%n_calls
if (ok) ok = pass%n_bins == ref%n_bins
if (ok) ok = pass%adapt_grids .eqv. ref%adapt_grids
if (ok) ok = pass%adapt_weights .eqv. ref%adapt_weights
if (ok) ok = pass%integral_defined .eqv. ref%integral_defined
if (pass%integral_defined) then
  n = pass%n_it
  if (ok) ok = all (pass%calls(:n) == ref%calls(:n))
  if (ok) ok = all (pass%integral(:n) .matches. ref%integral(:n))
  if (ok) ok = all (pass%error(:n) .matches. ref%error(:n))
  if (ok) ok = all (pass%efficiency(:n) .matches. ref%efficiency(:n))
end if
end function pass_matches

```

Update a pass object, given a reference. The parameters must match, except for the `n_it` entry. The number of complete iterations must be less or equal to the reference, and the number of complete iterations in the reference must be no larger than `n_it`. Where results are present in both passes, they must match. Where results are present in the reference only, the pass is updated accordingly.

```

(MCI vamp: pass: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: update => pass_update

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine pass_update (pass, ref, ok)
    class(pass_t), intent(inout) :: pass
    type(pass_t), intent(in) :: ref
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    integer :: n, n_ref
    ok = .true.
    if (ok) ok = pass%i_pass == ref%i_pass
    if (ok) ok = pass%i_first_it == ref%i_first_it
    if (ok) ok = pass%n_calls == ref%n_calls
    if (ok) ok = pass%n_bins == ref%n_bins
    if (ok) ok = pass%adapt_grids .eqv. ref%adapt_grids
    if (ok) ok = pass%adapt_weights .eqv. ref%adapt_weights
    if (ok) then
      if (ref%integral_defined) then
        if (.not. allocated (pass%calls)) then
          allocate (pass%calls (pass%n_it), source = 0)
          allocate (pass%integral (pass%n_it), source = 0._default)
          allocate (pass%error (pass%n_it), source = 0._default)
          allocate (pass%efficiency (pass%n_it), source = 0._default)
        end if
        n = count (pass%calls /= 0)
        n_ref = count (ref%calls /= 0)
        ok = n <= n_ref .and. n_ref <= pass%n_it
        if (ok) ok = all (pass%calls(:n) == ref%calls(:n))
        if (ok) ok = all (pass%integral(:n) .matches. ref%integral(:n))
        if (ok) ok = all (pass%error(:n) .matches. ref%error(:n))
        if (ok) ok = all (pass%efficiency(:n) .matches. ref%efficiency(:n))
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine pass_update

```

```

        if (ok) then
            pass%calls(n+1:n_ref) = ref%calls(n+1:n_ref)
            pass%integral(n+1:n_ref) = ref%integral(n+1:n_ref)
            pass%error(n+1:n_ref) = ref%error(n+1:n_ref)
            pass%efficiency(n+1:n_ref) = ref%efficiency(n+1:n_ref)
            pass%integral_defined = any (pass%calls /= 0)
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine pass_update

```

Match two real numbers: they are equal up to a tolerance, which is  $10^{-8}$ , matching the number of digits that are output by `pass_write`. In particular, if one number is exactly zero, the other one must also be zero.

```

<MCI vamp: interfaces>+≡
interface operator (.matches.)
    module procedure real_matches
end interface operator (.matches.)

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
elemental function real_matches (x, y) result (ok)
    real(default), intent(in) :: x, y
    logical :: ok
    real(default), parameter :: tolerance = 1.e-8_default
    ok = abs (x - y) <= tolerance * max (abs (x), abs (y))
end function real_matches

```

Return the index of the most recent complete integration. If there is none, return zero.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_integration_index => pass_get_integration_index

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
function pass_get_integration_index (pass) result (n)
    class (pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
    integer :: n
    integer :: i
    n = 0
    if (allocated (pass%calls)) then
        do i = 1, pass%n_it
            if (pass%calls(i) == 0) exit
            n = i
        end do
    end if
end function pass_get_integration_index

```

Return the most recent integral and error, if available.

```

<MCI vamp: pass: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_calls => pass_get_calls
    procedure :: get_integral => pass_get_integral
    procedure :: get_error => pass_get_error
    procedure :: get_efficiency => pass_get_efficiency

```

```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
function pass_get_calls (pass) result (calls)
  class(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
  integer :: calls
  integer :: n
  n = pass%get_integration_index ()
  if (n /= 0) then
    calls = pass%calls(n)
  else
    calls = 0
  end if
end function pass_get_calls

function pass_get_integral (pass) result (integral)
  class(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
  real(default) :: integral
  integer :: n
  n = pass%get_integration_index ()
  if (n /= 0) then
    integral = pass%integral(n)
  else
    integral = 0
  end if
end function pass_get_integral

function pass_get_error (pass) result (error)
  class(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
  real(default) :: error
  integer :: n
  n = pass%get_integration_index ()
  if (n /= 0) then
    error = pass%error(n)
  else
    error = 0
  end if
end function pass_get_error

function pass_get_efficiency (pass) result (efficiency)
  class(pass_t), intent(in) :: pass
  real(default) :: efficiency
  integer :: n
  n = pass%get_integration_index ()
  if (n /= 0) then
    efficiency = pass%efficiency(n)
  else
    efficiency = 0
  end if
end function pass_get_efficiency

```

### 13.3.4 Integrator

```

<MCI vamp: public>+=
public :: mci_vamp_t

```

```

<MCI vamp: types>+≡
  type, extends (mci_t) :: mci_vamp_t
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: dim_is_flat
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    type(history_parameters_t) :: history_par
    integer :: min_calls = 0
    type(pass_t), pointer :: first_pass => null ()
    type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass => null ()
    type(vamp_equivalences_t) :: equivalences
    logical :: rebuild = .true.
    logical :: check_grid_file = .true.
    logical :: grid_filename_set = .false.
    logical :: negative_weights = .false.
    logical :: verbose = .false.
    type(string_t) :: grid_filename
    character(32) :: md5sum_adapted = ""
  contains
    <MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>
  end type mci_vamp_t

```

Reset: delete integration-pass entries.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>≡
  procedure :: reset => mci_vamp_reset

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_reset (object)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass
    do while (associated (object%first_pass))
      current_pass => object%first_pass
      object%first_pass => current_pass%next
      call current_pass%final ()
      deallocate (current_pass)
    end do
    object%current_pass => null ()
  end subroutine mci_vamp_reset

```

Finalizer: reset and finalize the equivalences list.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => mci_vamp_final

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_final (object)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call object%reset ()
    call vamp_equivalences_final (object%equivalences)
    call object%base_final ()
  end subroutine mci_vamp_final

```

Output. Do not output the grids themselves, this may result in tons of data.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => mci_vamp_write

```



```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_write (object, unit, pacify, md5sum_version)
  class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
  logical, intent(in), optional :: md5sum_version
  type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "VAMP integrator:"
  call object%base_write (u, pacify, md5sum_version)
  if (allocated (object%dim_is_flat)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,999(1x,I0))") "Flat dimensions      =", &
      pack ([i, i = 1, object%n_dim], object%dim_is_flat)
  end if
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Grid parameters:"
  call object%grid_par%write (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "min_calls              = ", object%min_calls
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "negative weights          = ", &
    object%negative_weights
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "verbose                  = ", &
    object%verbose
  if (object%grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences) then
    call vamp_equivalences_write (object%equivalences, u)
  end if
  current_pass => object%first_pass
  do while (associated (current_pass))
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Integration pass:"
    call current_pass%write (u, pacify)
    current_pass => current_pass%next
  end do
  if (object%md5sum_adapted /= "") then
    write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (including results) = '", &
      object%md5sum_adapted, "'"
  end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_write

```

Write the history parameters.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
procedure :: write_history_parameters => mci_vamp_write_history_parameters

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_write_history_parameters (mci, unit)
  class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "VAMP history parameters:"
  call mci%history_par%write (unit)
end subroutine mci_vamp_write_history_parameters

```

Write the history, iterating over passes. We keep this separate from the generic write routine.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=

```

```

        procedure :: write_history => mci_vamp_write_history
<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_vamp_write_history (mci, unit)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass
        integer :: i_pass
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (associated (mci%first_pass)) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "VAMP history (global):"
            i_pass = 0
            current_pass => mci%first_pass
            do while (associated (current_pass))
                i_pass = i_pass + 1
                write (u, "(1x,A,I0,':')") "Pass #", i_pass
                call current_pass%write_history (u)
                current_pass => current_pass%next
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine mci_vamp_write_history

```

Compute the MD5 sum, including the configuration MD5 sum and the printout, which incorporates the current results.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
    procedure :: compute_md5sum => mci_vamp_compute_md5sum
<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_vamp_compute_md5sum (mci, pacify)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
        integer :: u
        mci%md5sum_adapted = ""
        u = free_unit ()
        open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
        write (u, "(A)") mci%md5sum
        call mci%write (u, pacify, md5sum_version = .true.)
        rewind (u)
        mci%md5sum_adapted = md5sum (u)
        close (u)
    end subroutine mci_vamp_compute_md5sum

```

Return the MD5 sum: If available, return the adapted one.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_md5sum => mci_vamp_get_md5sum
<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
    function mci_vamp_get_md5sum (mci) result (md5sum)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
        character(32) :: md5sum
        if (mci%md5sum_adapted /= "") then
            md5sum = mci%md5sum_adapted
        else

```

```

        md5sum = mci%md5sum
    end if
end function mci_vamp_get_md5sum

```

Startup message: short version.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: startup_message => mci_vamp_startup_message

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_startup_message (mci, unit, n_calls)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, n_calls
        integer :: num_calls, n_bins
        if (present (n_calls)) then
            num_calls = n_calls
        else
            num_calls = 0
        end if
        if (mci%min_calls /= 0) then
            n_bins = max (mci%grid_par%min_bins, &
                min (num_calls / mci%min_calls, &
                    mci%grid_par%max_bins))
        else
            n_bins = mci%grid_par%max_bins
        end if
        call mci%base_startup_message (unit = unit, n_calls = n_calls)
        if (mci%grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
                "Integrator: Using VAMP channel equivalences"
            call msg_message (unit = unit)
        end if
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A),L1)") &
            "Integrator:", num_calls, &
            "initial calls,", n_bins, &
            "bins, stratified = ", &
            mci%grid_par%stratified
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,2(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
            "Integrator: VAMP"
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
    end subroutine mci_vamp_startup_message

```

Set the MCI index (necessary for processes with multiple components). We append the index to the grid filename, just before the final dotted suffix.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: record_index => mci_vamp_record_index

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_record_index (mci, i_mci)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        type(string_t) :: basename, suffix
        character(32) :: buffer
        if (mci%grid_filename_set) then

```

```

        basename = mci%grid_filename
        call split (basename, suffix, ".", back=.true.)
        write (buffer, "(I0)") i_mci
        if (basename /= "") then
            mci%grid_filename = basename // "_m" // trim (buffer) // "." // suffix
        else
            mci%grid_filename = suffix // "_m" // trim (buffer) // ".vg"
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_record_index

```

Set the grid parameters.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_grid_parameters => mci_vamp_set_grid_parameters

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_set_grid_parameters (mci, grid_par)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        type(grid_parameters_t), intent(in) :: grid_par
        mci%grid_par = grid_par
        mci%min_calls = grid_par%min_calls_per_bin * mci%n_channel
    end subroutine mci_vamp_set_grid_parameters

```

Set the history parameters.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_history_parameters => mci_vamp_set_history_parameters

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_set_history_parameters (mci, history_par)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        type(history_parameters_t), intent(in) :: history_par
        mci%history_par = history_par
    end subroutine mci_vamp_set_history_parameters

```

Set the rebuild flag, also the flag for checking the grid file.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_rebuild_flag => mci_vamp_set_rebuild_flag

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_set_rebuild_flag (mci, rebuild, check_grid_file)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        logical, intent(in) :: rebuild
        logical, intent(in) :: check_grid_file
        mci%rebuild = rebuild
        mci%check_grid_file = check_grid_file
    end subroutine mci_vamp_set_rebuild_flag

```

Set the filename.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_grid_filename => mci_vamp_set_grid_filename

```

```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_set_grid_filename (mci, name, run_id)
  class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: run_id
  if (present (run_id)) then
    mci%grid_filename = name // "." // run_id // ".vg"
  else
    mci%grid_filename = name // ".vg"
  end if
  mci%grid_filename_set = .true.
end subroutine mci_vamp_set_grid_filename

```

Declare particular dimensions as flat.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
  procedure :: declare_flat_dimensions => mci_vamp_declare_flat_dimensions

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_declare_flat_dimensions (mci, dim_flat)
  class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: dim_flat
  integer :: d
  allocate (mci%dim_is_flat (mci%n_dim), source = .false.)
  do d = 1, size (dim_flat)
    mci%dim_is_flat(dim_flat(d)) = .true.
  end do
end subroutine mci_vamp_declare_flat_dimensions

```

Declare equivalences. We have an array of channel equivalences, provided by the phase-space module. Here, we translate this into the `vamp_equivalences` array.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
  procedure :: declare_equivalences => mci_vamp_declare_equivalences

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_declare_equivalences (mci, channel, dim_offset)
  class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
  type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: channel
  integer, intent(in) :: dim_offset
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: perm, mode
  integer :: n_channels, n_dim, n_equivalences
  integer :: c, i, j, left, right
  n_channels = mci%n_channel
  n_dim = mci%n_dim
  n_equivalences = 0
  do c = 1, n_channels
    n_equivalences = n_equivalences + size (channel(c)%eq)
  end do
  call vamp_equivalences_init (mci%equivalences, &
    n_equivalences, n_channels, n_dim)
  allocate (perm (n_dim))
  allocate (mode (n_dim))
  perm(1:dim_offset) = [(i, i = 1, dim_offset)]
  mode(1:dim_offset) = VEQ_IDENTITY

```

```

c = 1
j = 0
do i = 1, n_equivalences
  if (j < size (channel(c)%eq)) then
    j = j + 1
  else
    c = c + 1
    j = 1
  end if
  associate (eq => channel(c)%eq(j))
    left = c
    right = eq%c
    perm(dim_offset+1:) = eq%perm + dim_offset
    mode(dim_offset+1:) = eq%mode
    call vamp_equivalence_set (mci%equivalences, &
      i, left, right, perm, mode)
  end associate
end do
call vamp_equivalences_complete (mci%equivalences)
end subroutine mci_vamp_declare_equivalences

```

Allocate instance with matching type.

```

⟨MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP⟩+=
  procedure :: allocate_instance => mci_vamp_allocate_instance

⟨MCI vamp: procedures⟩+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_allocate_instance (mci, mci_instance)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(out), pointer :: mci_instance
    allocate (mci_vamp_instance_t :: mci_instance)
  end subroutine mci_vamp_allocate_instance

```

Allocate a new integration pass. We can preset everything that does not depend on the number of iterations and calls. This is postponed to the `integrate` method.

In the final pass, we do not check accuracy goal etc., since we can assume that the user wants to perform and average all iterations in this pass.

```

⟨MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP⟩+=
  procedure :: add_pass => mci_vamp_add_pass

⟨MCI vamp: procedures⟩+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_add_pass (mci, adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final
    integer :: i_pass, i_it
    type(pass_t), pointer :: new
    allocate (new)
    if (associated (mci%current_pass)) then
      i_pass = mci%current_pass%i_pass + 1
      i_it = mci%current_pass%i_first_it + mci%current_pass%n_it
      mci%current_pass%next => new
    else
      i_pass = 1
    end if
  end subroutine mci_vamp_add_pass

```

```

        i_it = 1
        mci%first_pass => new
    end if
    mci%current_pass => new
    new%i_pass = i_pass
    new%i_first_it = i_it
    if (present (adapt_grids)) then
        new%adapt_grids = adapt_grids
    else
        new%adapt_grids = .false.
    end if
    if (present (adapt_weights)) then
        new%adapt_weights = adapt_weights
    else
        new%adapt_weights = .false.
    end if
    if (present (final)) then
        new%is_final_pass = final
    else
        new%is_final_pass = .false.
    end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_add_pass

```

Update the list of integration passes. All passes except for the last one must match exactly. For the last one, integration results are updated. The reference output may contain extra passes, these are ignored.

*(MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: update_from_ref => mci_vamp_update_from_ref

```

*(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine mci_vamp_update_from_ref (mci, mci_ref, success)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_t), intent(in) :: mci_ref
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass, ref_pass
    select type (mci_ref)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
        current_pass => mci%first_pass
        ref_pass => mci_ref%first_pass
        success = .true.
        do while (success .and. associated (current_pass))
            if (associated (ref_pass)) then
                if (associated (current_pass%next)) then
                    success = current_pass .matches. ref_pass
                else
                    call current_pass%update (ref_pass, success)
                    if (current_pass%integral_defined) then
                        mci%integral = current_pass%get_integral ()
                        mci%error = current_pass%get_error ()
                        mci%efficiency = current_pass%get_efficiency ()
                        mci%integral_known = .true.
                        mci%error_known = .true.
                        mci%efficiency_known = .true.
                    end if
                end if
            end if
        end while
    end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_update_from_ref

```

```

        end if
        current_pass => current_pass%next
        ref_pass => ref_pass%next
    else
        success = .false.
    end if
end do
end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_update_from_ref

```

Update the MCI record (i.e., the integration passes) by reading from input stream. The stream should contain a `write` output from a previous run. We first check the MD5 sum of the configuration parameters. If that matches, we proceed directly to the stored integration passes. If successful, we may continue to read the file; the position will be after a blank line that must follow the MCI record.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: update => mci_vamp_update
<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_update (mci, u, success)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        logical, intent(out) :: success
        character(80) :: buffer
        character(32) :: md5sum_file
        type(mci_vamp_t) :: mci_file
        integer :: n_pass, n_it
        call read_sval (u, md5sum_file)
        if (mci%check_grid_file) then
            success = md5sum_file == mci%md5sum
        else
            success = .true.
        end if
        if (success) then
            read (u, *)
            read (u, "(A)") buffer
            if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) == "VAMP integrator:") then
                n_pass = 0
                n_it = 0
                do
                    read (u, "(A)") buffer
                    select case (trim (adjustl (buffer)))
                    case ("")
                        exit
                    case ("Integration pass:")
                        call mci_file%add_pass ()
                        call mci_file%current_pass%read (u, n_pass, n_it)
                        n_pass = n_pass + 1
                        n_it = n_it + mci_file%current_pass%n_it
                    end select
                end do
                call mci%update_from_ref (mci_file, success)
                call mci_file%final ()
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine mci_vamp_update

```



```

        else
            call msg_fatal ("VAMP: reading grid file: corrupted data")
        end if
    end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_update

```

Read / write grids from / to file.

*(MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: write_grids => mci_vamp_write_grids
    procedure :: read_grids_header => mci_vamp_read_grids_header
    procedure :: read_grids_data => mci_vamp_read_grids_data
    procedure :: read_grids => mci_vamp_read_grids

```

*(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine mci_vamp_write_grids (mci, instance)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer :: u
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
        if (mci%grid_filename_set) then
            if (instance%grids_defined) then
                u = free_unit ()
                open (u, file = char (mci%grid_filename), &
                    action = "write", status = "replace")
                write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5sum = '", mci%md5sum, "'"
                write (u, *)
                call mci%write (u)
                write (u, *)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "VAMP grids:"
                call vamp_write_grids (instance%grids, u, &
                    write_integrals = .true.)
                close (u)
            else
                call msg_bug ("VAMP: write grids: grids undefined")
            end if
        else
            call msg_bug ("VAMP: write grids: filename undefined")
        end if
    end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_write_grids

```

```

subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids_header (mci, success)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    logical :: exist
    integer :: u
    success = .false.
    if (mci%grid_filename_set) then
        inquire (file = char (mci%grid_filename), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
            u = free_unit ()
            open (u, file = char (mci%grid_filename), &
                action = "read", status = "old")

```

```

        call mci%update (u, success)
        close (u)
        if (.not. success) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") &
                "VAMP: parameter mismatch, discarding grid file '", &
                char (mci%grid_filename), "'"
            call msg_message ()
        end if
    end if
else
    call msg_bug ("VAMP: read grids: filename undefined")
end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids_header

subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids_data (mci, instance, read_integrals)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    logical, intent(in), optional :: read_integrals
    integer :: u
    character(80) :: buffer
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
        if (.not. instance%grids_defined) then
            u = free_unit ()
            open (u, file = char (mci%grid_filename), &
                action = "read", status = "old")
            do
                read (u, "(A)") buffer
                if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) == "VAMP grids:") exit
            end do
            call vamp_read_grids (instance%grids, u, read_integrals)
            close (u)
            instance%grids_defined = .true.
        else
            call msg_bug ("VAMP: read grids: grids already defined")
        end if
    end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids_data

subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids (mci, instance, success)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    logical :: exist
    integer :: u
    character(80) :: buffer
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
        success = .false.
        if (mci%grid_filename_set) then
            if (.not. instance%grids_defined) then
                inquire (file = char (mci%grid_filename), exist = exist)
                if (exist) then
                    u = free_unit ()

```

```

open (u, file = char (mci%grid_filename), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
call mci%update (u, success)
if (success) then
  read (u, "(A)") buffer
  if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) == "VAMP grids:") then
    call vamp_read_grids (instance%grids, u)
  else
    call msg_fatal ("VAMP: reading grid file: &
                   &corrupted grid data")
  end if
else
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") &
    "VAMP: parameter mismatch, discarding grid file '", &
    char (mci%grid_filename), "'"
  call msg_message ()
end if
close (u)
instance%grids_defined = success
end if
else
  call msg_bug ("VAMP: read grids: grids already defined")
end if
else
  call msg_bug ("VAMP: read grids: filename undefined")
end if
end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_read_grids

```

Auxiliary: Read real, integer, string value. We search for an equals sign, the value must follow.

```

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
subroutine read_rval (u, rval)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  real(default), intent(out) :: rval
  character(80) :: buffer
  read (u, "(A)") buffer
  buffer = adjustl (buffer(scan (buffer, "=") + 1:))
  read (buffer, *) rval
end subroutine read_rval

subroutine read_ival (u, ival)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(out) :: ival
  character(80) :: buffer
  read (u, "(A)") buffer
  buffer = adjustl (buffer(scan (buffer, "=") + 1:))
  read (buffer, *) ival
end subroutine read_ival

subroutine read_sval (u, sval)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(*), intent(out) :: sval

```

```

character(80) :: buffer
read (u, "(A)") buffer
buffer = adjustl (buffer(scan (buffer, "=") + 1:))
read (buffer, *) sval
end subroutine read_sval

subroutine read_lval (u, lval)
integer, intent(in) :: u
logical, intent(out) :: lval
character(80) :: buffer
read (u, "(A)") buffer
buffer = adjustl (buffer(scan (buffer, "=") + 1:))
read (buffer, *) lval
end subroutine read_lval

```

Integrate. Perform a new integration pass (possibly reusing previous results), which may consist of several iterations.

Note: we record the integral once per iteration. The integral stored in the `mci` record itself is the last integral of the current iteration, no averaging done. The `results` record may average results.

Note: recording the efficiency is not supported yet.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
  procedure :: integrate => mci_vamp_integrate

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_integrate (mci, instance, sampler, &
    n_it, n_calls, results, pacify)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    class(mci_results_t), intent(inout), optional :: results
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: it
    logical :: reshape, from_file, success
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
      if (associated (mci%current_pass)) then
        mci%current_pass%integral_defined = .false.
        call mci%current_pass%configure (n_it, n_calls, &
          mci%min_calls, mci%grid_par%min_bins, &
          mci%grid_par%max_bins, &
          mci%grid_par%min_calls_per_channel * mci%n_channel)
        call mci%current_pass%configure_history &
          (mci%n_channel, mci%history_par)
        instance%pass_complete = .false.
        instance%it_complete = .false.
        call instance%new_pass (reshape)
        if (.not. instance%grids_defined .or. instance%grids_from_file) then
          if (mci%grid_filename_set .and. .not. mci%rebuild) then
            call mci%read_grids_header (success)
            from_file = success
            if (.not. instance%grids_defined .and. success) then

```

```

        call mci%read_grids_data (instance)
    end if
else
    from_file = .false.
end if
else
    from_file = .false.
end if
if (from_file) then
    if (.not. mci%check_grid_file) &
        call msg_warning ("Reading grid file: MD5 sum check disabled")
    call msg_message ("VAMP: " &
        // "using grids and results from file '" &
        // char (mci%grid_filename) // "'")
else if (.not. instance%grids_defined) then
    call instance%create_grids ()
end if
do it = 1, instance%n_it
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    instance%grids_from_file = from_file .and. &
        it <= mci%current_pass%get_integration_index ()
    if (.not. instance%grids_from_file) then
        instance%it_complete = .false.
        call instance%adapt_grids ()
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call instance%adapt_weights ()
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call instance%discard_integrals (reshape)
        if (mci%grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences) then
            call instance%sample_grids (mci%rng, sampler, &
                mci%equivalences)
        else
            call instance%sample_grids (mci%rng, sampler)
        end if
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        instance%it_complete = .true.
        if (instance%integral /= 0) then
            mci%current_pass%calls(it) = instance%calls
            mci%current_pass%integral(it) = instance%integral
            if (abs (instance%error / instance%integral) &
                > epsilon (1._default)) then
                mci%current_pass%error(it) = instance%error
            end if
            mci%current_pass%efficiency(it) = instance%efficiency
        end if
        mci%current_pass%integral_defined = .true.
    end if
end if
if (present (results)) then
    if (mci%has_chains ()) then
        call mci%collect_chain_weights (instance%w)
        call results%record (1, &
            n_calls      = mci%current_pass%calls(it), &
            integral     = mci%current_pass%integral(it), &
            error        = mci%current_pass%error(it), &

```

```

        efficiency = mci%current_pass%efficiency(it), &
        chain_weights = mci%chain_weights, &
        suppress = pacify)
    else
        call results%record (1, &
            n_calls      = mci%current_pass%calls(it), &
            integral     = mci%current_pass%integral(it), &
            error        = mci%current_pass%error(it), &
            efficiency   = mci%current_pass%efficiency(it), &
            suppress     = pacify)
    end if
end if
if (.not. instance%grids_from_file &
    .and. mci%grid_filename_set) then
    call mci%write_grids (instance)
end if
call instance%allow_adaptation ()
reshape = .false.
if (.not. mci%current_pass%is_final_pass) then
    call mci%check_goals (it, success)
    if (success) exit
end if
end do
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
instance%pass_complete = .true.
mci%integral = mci%current_pass%get_integral()
mci%error = mci%current_pass%get_error()
mci%efficiency = mci%current_pass%get_efficiency()
mci%integral_known = .true.
mci%error_known = .true.
mci%efficiency_known = .true.
call mci%compute_md5sum (pacify)
else
    call msg_bug ("MCI integrate: current_pass object not allocated")
end if
end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_integrate

```

Check whether we are already finished with this pass.

*(MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: check_goals => mci_vamp_check_goals

```

*(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine mci_vamp_check_goals (mci, it, success)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: it
    logical, intent(out) :: success
    success = .false.
    if (mci%error_reached (it)) then
        mci%current_pass%n_it = it
        call msg_message ("VAMP: error goal reached; &
            &skipping iterations")
        success = .true.
    return

```

```

end if
if (mci%rel_error_reached (it)) then
  mci%current_pass%n_it = it
  call msg_message ("VAMP: relative error goal reached; &
    &skipping iterations")
  success = .true.
  return
end if
if (mci%accuracy_reached (it)) then
  mci%current_pass%n_it = it
  call msg_message ("VAMP: accuracy goal reached; &
    &skipping iterations")
  success = .true.
  return
end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_check_goals

```

Return true if the error, relative error, or accuracy goal has been reached, if any.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
  procedure :: error_reached => mci_vamp_error_reached
  procedure :: rel_error_reached => mci_vamp_rel_error_reached
  procedure :: accuracy_reached => mci_vamp_accuracy_reached

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  function mci_vamp_error_reached (mci, it) result (flag)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: it
    logical :: flag
    real(default) :: error_goal, error
    error_goal = mci%grid_par%error_goal
    if (error_goal > 0) then
      associate (pass => mci%current_pass)
        if (pass%integral_defined) then
          error = abs (pass%error(it))
          flag = error < error_goal
        else
          flag = .false.
        end if
      end associate
    else
      flag = .false.
    end if
  end function mci_vamp_error_reached

  function mci_vamp_rel_error_reached (mci, it) result (flag)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: it
    logical :: flag
    real(default) :: rel_error_goal, rel_error
    rel_error_goal = mci%grid_par%rel_error_goal
    if (rel_error_goal > 0) then
      associate (pass => mci%current_pass)
        if (pass%integral_defined) then

```

```

        if (pass%integral(it) /= 0) then
            rel_error = abs (pass%error(it) / pass%integral(it))
            flag = rel_error < rel_error_goal
        else
            flag = .true.
        end if
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end associate
else
    flag = .false.
end if
end function mci_vamp_rel_error_reached

function mci_vamp_accuracy_reached (mci, it) result (flag)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(in) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: it
    logical :: flag
    real(default) :: accuracy_goal, accuracy
    accuracy_goal = mci%grid_par%accuracy_goal
    if (accuracy_goal > 0) then
        associate (pass => mci%current_pass)
            if (pass%integral_defined) then
                if (pass%integral(it) /= 0) then
                    accuracy = abs (pass%error(it) / pass%integral(it)) &
                        * sqrt (real (pass%calls(it), default))
                    flag = accuracy < accuracy_goal
                else
                    flag = .true.
                end if
            else
                flag = .false.
            end if
        end associate
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function mci_vamp_accuracy_reached

```

Prepare an event generation pass. Should be called before a sequence of events is generated, then we should call the corresponding finalizer.

The pass-specific data of the previous integration pass are retained, but we reset the number of iterations and calls to zero. The latter now counts the number of events (calls to the sampling function, actually).

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_simulation => mci_vamp_prepare_simulation

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_prepare_simulation (mci)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        logical :: success
        if (mci%grid_filename_set) then
            call mci%read_grids_header (success)

```



```

        call mci%compute_md5sum ()
        if (.not. success) then
            call msg_fatal ("Simulate: " &
                // "reading integration grids from file '" &
                // char (mci%grid_filename) // "' failed")
        end if
    else
        call msg_bug ("VAMP: simulation: no grids, no grid filename")
    end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_prepare_simulation

```

Generate weighted event. Note that the event weight (`vamp_weight`) is not just the MCI weight. `vamp_next_event` selects a channel based on the channel weights multiplied by the (previously recorded) maximum integrand value of the channel. The MCI weight is renormalized accordingly, to cancel this effect on the result.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+=
    procedure :: generate_weighted_event => mci_vamp_generate_weighted_event
<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
    subroutine mci_vamp_generate_weighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
        class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
        class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
        class(vamp_data_t), allocatable :: data
        type(exception) :: vamp_exception
        select type (instance)
        type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
            instance%vamp_weight_set = .false.
            allocate (mci_workspace_t :: data)
            select type (data)
            type is (mci_workspace_t)
                data%sampler => sampler
                data%instance => instance
            end select
            select type (rng => mci%rng)
            type is (rng_tao_t)
                if (instance%grids_defined) then
                    call vamp_next_event ( &
                        instance%vamp_x, &
                        rng%state, &
                        instance%grids, &
                        vamp_sampling_function, &
                        data, &
                        phi = phi_trivial, &
                        weight = instance%vamp_weight, &
                        exc = vamp_exception)
                    call handle_vamp_exception (vamp_exception, mci%verbose)
                    instance%vamp_excess = 0
                    instance%vamp_weight_set = .true.
                else
                    call msg_bug ("VAMP: generate event: grids undefined")
                end if
            end select
        type is (rng_tao_t)
            if (instance%grids_defined) then
                call vamp_next_event ( &
                    instance%vamp_x, &
                    rng%state, &
                    instance%grids, &
                    vamp_sampling_function, &
                    data, &
                    phi = phi_trivial, &
                    weight = instance%vamp_weight, &
                    exc = vamp_exception)
                call handle_vamp_exception (vamp_exception, mci%verbose)
                instance%vamp_excess = 0
                instance%vamp_weight_set = .true.
            else
                call msg_bug ("VAMP: generate event: grids undefined")
            end if
        end select
    end subroutine
class default

```

```

        call msg_fatal ("VAMP event generation: &
                        &random-number generator must be TAO")
    end select
end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_generate_weighted_event

```

Generate unweighted event.

*(MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: generate_unweighted_event => &
        mci_vamp_generate_unweighted_event

```

*(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine mci_vamp_generate_unweighted_event (mci, instance, sampler)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
    class(vamp_data_t), allocatable :: data
    type(exception) :: vamp_exception
    select type (instance)
    type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
        instance%vamp_weight_set = .false.
        allocate (mci_workspace_t :: data)
        select type (data)
        type is (mci_workspace_t)
            data%sampler => sampler
            data%instance => instance
        end select
        select type (rng => mci%rng)
        type is (rng_tao_t)
            if (instance%grids_defined) then
                REJECTION: do
                    call vamp_next_event ( &
                        instance%vamp_x, &
                        rng%state, &
                        instance%grids, &
                        vamp_sampling_function, &
                        data, &
                        phi = phi_trivial, &
                        excess = instance%vamp_excess, &
                        exc = vamp_exception)
                    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                    if (sampler%is_valid ()) exit REJECTION
                end do REJECTION
                call handle_vamp_exception (vamp_exception, mci%verbose)
                instance%vamp_weight = 1
                instance%vamp_weight_set = .true.
            else
                call msg_bug ("VAMP: generate event: grids undefined")
            end if
        class default
            call msg_fatal ("VAMP event generation: &
                            &random-number generator must be TAO")
        end select
    end select
end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine mci_vamp_generate_unweighted_event
```

Rebuild an event, using the `state` input.

Note: This feature is currently unused.

```
<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: rebuild_event => mci_vamp_rebuild_event

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_rebuild_event (mci, instance, sampler, state)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    class(mci_state_t), intent(in) :: state
    call msg_bug ("MCI vamp rebuild event not implemented yet")
  end subroutine mci_vamp_rebuild_event

<MCI vamp: mci vamp: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: pacify => mci_vamp_pacify

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_pacify (object, efficiency_reset, error_reset)
    class(mci_vamp_t), intent(inout) :: object
    logical, intent(in), optional :: efficiency_reset, error_reset
    logical :: err_reset
    type(pass_t), pointer :: current_pass
    err_reset = .false.
    if (present (error_reset)) err_reset = error_reset
    current_pass => object%first_pass
    do while (associated (current_pass))
      if (allocated (current_pass%error) .and. err_reset) then
        current_pass%error = 0
      end if
      if (allocated (current_pass%efficiency) .and. err_reset) then
        current_pass%efficiency = 1
      end if
      current_pass => current_pass%next
    end do
  end subroutine mci_vamp_pacify
```

### 13.3.5 Sampler as Workspace

In the full setup, the sampling function requires the process instance object as workspace. We implement this by (i) implementing the process instance as a type extension of the abstract `sampler_t` object used by the MCI implementation and (ii) providing such an object as an extra argument to the sampling function that VAMP can call. To minimize cross-package dependencies, we use an abstract type `vamp_workspace` that VAMP declares and extend this by including a pointer to the `sampler` and `instance` objects. In the body of the sampling function, we dereference this pointer and can then work with the contents.

```
<MCI vamp: types>+≡
```

```

type, extends (vamp_data_t) :: mci_workspace_t
  class(mci_sampler_t), pointer :: sampler => null ()
  class(mci_vamp_instance_t), pointer :: instance => null ()
end type mci_workspace_t

```

### 13.3.6 Integrator instance

The history entries should point to the corresponding history entry in the `pass_t` object. If there is none, we may allocate a local history, which is then just transient.

```

⟨MCI vamp: public⟩+≡
  public :: mci_vamp_instance_t

⟨MCI vamp: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (mci_instance_t) :: mci_vamp_instance_t
    type(mci_vamp_t), pointer :: mci => null ()
    logical :: grids_defined = .false.
    logical :: grids_from_file = .false.
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: it = 0
    logical :: pass_complete = .false.
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    integer :: calls = 0
    logical :: it_complete = .false.
    logical :: enable_adapt_grids = .false.
    logical :: enable_adapt_weights = .false.
    logical :: allow_adapt_grids = .false.
    logical :: allow_adapt_weights = .false.
    logical :: negative_weights = .false.
    integer :: n_adapt_grids = 0
    integer :: n_adapt_weights = 0
    logical :: generating_events = .false.
    real(default) :: safety_factor = 1
    type(vamp_grids) :: grids
    real(default) :: g = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: gi
    real(default) :: integral = 0
    real(default) :: error = 0
    real(default) :: efficiency = 0
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: vamp_x
    logical :: vamp_weight_set = .false.
    real(default) :: vamp_weight = 0
    real(default) :: vamp_excess = 0
    logical :: allocate_global_history = .false.
    type(vamp_history), dimension(:), pointer :: v_history => null ()
    logical :: allocate_channel_history = .false.
    type(vamp_history), dimension(:, :), pointer :: v_histories => null ()
  contains
    ⟨MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP⟩
  end type mci_vamp_instance_t

```

Output.

```
(MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => mci_vamp_instance_write

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_write (object, unit, pacify)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: u, i
    character(len=7) :: fmt
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_17, FMT_14, pacify)
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Integrand = ", object%integrand
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Weight      = ", object%mc_i_weight
    if (object%vamp_weight_set) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "VAMP wgt = ", object%vamp_weight
      if (object%vamp_excess /= 0) then
        write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "VAMP exc = ", &
          object%vamp_excess
      end if
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "adapt grids  = ", object%enable_adapt_grids
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "adapt weights = ", object%enable_adapt_weights
    if (object%grids_defined) then
      if (object%grids_from_file) then
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "VAMP grids: read from file"
      else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "VAMP grids: defined"
      end if
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "VAMP grids: [undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_it          = ", object%n_it
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "it            = ", object%it
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "pass complete = ", object%it_complete
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_calls       = ", object%n_calls
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "calls         = ", object%calls
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "it complete   = ", object%it_complete
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n adapt.(g)   = ", object%n_adapt_grids
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n adapt.(w)   = ", object%n_adapt_weights
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "gen. events   = ", object%generating_events
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "neg. weights  = ", object%negative_weights
    if (object%safety_factor /= 1) write &
      (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") "safety f = ", object%safety_factor
    write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") "integral = ", object%integral
    write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") "error    = ", object%error
    write (u, "(3x,A," // fmt // ")") "eff.     = ", object%efficiency
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "weights:"
    do i = 1, size (object%w)
      write (u, "(5x,I0,1x," // FMT_12 // ")") i, object%w(i)
    end do
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_write
```

Write the grids to the specified unit.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_grids => mci_vamp_instance_write_grids

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_write_grids (object, unit)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (object%grids_defined) then
      call vamp_write_grids (object%grids, u, write_integrals = .true.)
    end if
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_write_grids

```

Finalizer: the history arrays are pointer arrays and need finalization.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => mci_vamp_instance_final

<MCI vamp: tests>≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_final (object)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (object%allocate_global_history) then
      if (associated (object%v_history)) then
        call vamp_delete_history (object%v_history)
        deallocate (object%v_history)
      end if
    end if
    if (object%allocate_channel_history) then
      if (associated (object%v_histories)) then
        call vamp_delete_history (object%v_histories)
        deallocate (object%v_histories)
      end if
    end if
    if (object%grids_defined) then
      call vamp_delete_grids (object%grids)
      object%grids_defined = .false.
    end if
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_final

```

Initializer.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => mci_vamp_instance_init

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_init (mci_instance, mci)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(out) :: mci_instance
    class(mci_t), intent(in), target :: mci
    call mci_instance%base_init (mci)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
      mci_instance%mci => mci
      allocate (mci_instance%gi (mci%n_channel))
      mci_instance%allocate_global_history = .not. mci%history_par%global

```

```

        mci_instance%allocate_channel_history = .not. mci%history_par%channel
        mci_instance%negative_weights = mci%negative_weights
    end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_init

```

Prepare a new integration pass: write the pass-specific settings to the `instance` object. This should be called initially, together with the `create_grids` procedure, and whenever we start a new integration pass.

Set `reshape` if the number of calls is different than previously (unless it was zero, indicating the first pass).

We link VAMP histories to the allocated histories in the current pass object, so the recorded results are persistent. However, if there are no histories present there, we allocate them locally. In that case, the histories will disappear together with the MCI instance object.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: new_pass => mci_vamp_instance_new_pass

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_instance_new_pass (instance, reshape)
        class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        logical, intent(out) :: reshape
        type(pass_t), pointer :: current
        associate (mci => instance%mci)
            current => mci%current_pass
            instance%n_it = current%n_it
            if (instance%n_calls == 0) then
                reshape = .false.
                instance%n_calls = current%n_calls
            else if (instance%n_calls == current%n_calls) then
                reshape = .false.
            else
                reshape = .true.
                instance%n_calls = current%n_calls
            end if
            instance%it = 0
            instance%calls = 0
            instance%enable_adapt_grids = current%adapt_grids
            instance%enable_adapt_weights = current%adapt_weights
            instance%generating_events = .false.
            if (instance%allocate_global_history) then
                if (associated (instance%v_history)) then
                    call vamp_delete_history (instance%v_history)
                    deallocate (instance%v_history)
                end if
                allocate (instance%v_history (instance%n_it))
                call vamp_create_history (instance%v_history, verbose = .false.)
            else
                instance%v_history => current%v_history
            end if
            if (instance%allocate_channel_history) then
                if (associated (instance%v_histories)) then
                    call vamp_delete_history (instance%v_histories)
                    deallocate (instance%v_histories)
                end if
            end if
        end associate
    end subroutine

```

```

        end if
        allocate (instance%v_histories (instance%n_it, mci%n_channel))
        call vamp_create_history (instance%v_histories, verbose = .false.)
    else
        instance%v_histories => current%v_histories
    end if
end associate
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_new_pass

```

Create a grid set within the `instance` object, using the data of the current integration pass. Also reset counters that track this grid set.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: create_grids => mci_vamp_instance_create_grids

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_instance_create_grids (instance)
        class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        type (pass_t), pointer :: current
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: num_div
        real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: region
        associate (mci => instance%mci)
            current => mci%current_pass
            allocate (num_div (mci%n_dim))
            allocate (region (2, mci%n_dim))
            region(1,:) = 0
            region(2,:) = 1
            num_div = current%n_bins
            instance%n_adapt_grids = 0
            instance%n_adapt_weights = 0
            if (.not. instance%grids_defined) then
                call vamp_create_grids (instance%grids, &
                    region, &
                    current%n_calls, &
                    weights = instance%w, &
                    num_div = num_div, &
                    stratified = mci%grid_par%stratified)
                instance%grids_defined = .true.
            else
                call msg_bug ("VAMP: create grids: grids already defined")
            end if
        end associate
    end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_create_grids

```

Reset a grid set, so we can start a fresh integration pass. In effect, we delete results of previous integrations, but keep the grid shapes, weights, and variance arrays, so adaptation is still possible. The grids are prepared for a specific number of calls (per iteration) and sampling mode (stratified/importance).

The `vamp_discard_integrals` implementation will reshape the grids only if the argument `num_calls` is present.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: discard_integrals => mci_vamp_instance_discard_integrals

```



```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_discard_integrals (instance, reshape)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    logical, intent(in) :: reshape
    instance%calls = 0
    instance%integral = 0
    instance%error = 0
    instance%efficiency = 0
    associate (mci => instance%mci)
      if (instance%grids_defined) then
        if (mci%grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences) then
          if (reshape) then
            call vamp_discard_integrals (instance%grids, &
              num_calls = instance%n_calls, &
              stratified = mci%grid_par%stratified, &
              eq = mci%equivalences)
          else
            call vamp_discard_integrals (instance%grids, &
              stratified = mci%grid_par%stratified, &
              eq = mci%equivalences)
          end if
        else
          if (reshape) then
            call vamp_discard_integrals (instance%grids, &
              num_calls = instance%n_calls, &
              stratified = mci%grid_par%stratified)
          else
            call vamp_discard_integrals (instance%grids, &
              stratified = mci%grid_par%stratified)
          end if
        end if
      else
        call msg_bug ("VAMP: discard integrals: grids undefined")
      end if
    end associate
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_discard_integrals

```

After grids are created (with equidistant binning and equal weight), adaptation is redundant. Therefore, we should allow it only after a complete integration step has been performed, calling this.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+=
  procedure :: allow_adaptation => mci_vamp_instance_allow_adaptation

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_allow_adaptation (instance)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    instance%allow_adapt_grids = .true.
    instance%allow_adapt_weights = .true.
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_allow_adaptation

```

Adapt grids.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+=
  procedure :: adapt_grids => mci_vamp_instance_adapt_grids

```

```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_instance_adapt_grids (instance)
class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
if (instance%enable_adapt_grids .and. instance%allow_adapt_grids) then
  if (instance%grids_defined) then
    call vamp_refine_grids (instance%grids)
    instance%n_adapt_grids = instance%n_adapt_grids + 1
  else
    call msg_bug ("VAMP: adapt grids: grids undefined")
  end if
end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_adapt_grids

```

Adapt weights. Use the variance array returned by VAMP for recalculating the weight array. The parameter `channel_weights_power` dampens fluctuations.

If the number of calls in a given channel falls below a user-defined threshold, the weight is not lowered further but kept at this threshold. The other channel weights are reduced accordingly.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+=
procedure :: adapt_weights => mci_vamp_instance_adapt_weights

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
subroutine mci_vamp_instance_adapt_weights (instance)
class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
real(default) :: w_sum, w_avg_ch, sum_w_underflow, w_min
integer :: n_ch, ch, n_underflow
logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: mask, underflow
type(exception) :: vamp_exception
if (instance%enable_adapt_weights .and. instance%allow_adapt_weights) then
  associate (mci => instance%mci)
    if (instance%grids_defined) then
      instance%w = instance%grids%weights &
        * vamp_get_variance (instance%grids%grids) &
        ** mci%grid_par%channel_weights_power
      w_sum = sum (instance%w)
      if (w_sum /= 0) then
        instance%w = instance%w / w_sum
        if (mci%n_chain /= 0) then
          allocate (mask (mci%n_channel))
          do ch = 1, mci%n_chain
            mask = mci%chain == ch
            n_ch = count (mask)
            if (n_ch /= 0) then
              w_avg_ch = sum (instance%w, mask) / n_ch
              where (mask) instance%w = w_avg_ch
            end if
          end do
        end if
      end if
      if (mci%grid_par%threshold_calls /= 0) then
        w_min = &
          real (mci%grid_par%threshold_calls, default) &
          / instance%n_calls
        allocate (underflow (mci%n_channel))
        underflow = instance%w /= 0 .and. abs (instance%w) < w_min
      end if
    end associate
  end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_adapt_weights

```

```

        n_underflow = count (underflow)
        sum_w_underflow = sum (instance%w, mask=underflow)
        if (sum_w_underflow /= 1) then
            where (underflow)
                instance%w = w_min
            elsewhere
                instance%w = instance%w &
                    * (1 - n_underflow * w_min) / (1 - sum_w_underflow)
            end where
        end if
    end if
end if
call vamp_update_weights (instance%grids, instance%w, &
    exc = vamp_exception)
call handle_vamp_exception (vamp_exception, mci%verbose)
else
    call msg_bug ("VAMP: adapt weights: grids undefined")
end if
end associate
instance%n_adapt_weights = instance%n_adapt_weights + 1
end if
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_adapt_weights

```

Integration: sample the VAMP grids. The number of calls etc. are already stored inside the grids. We provide the random-number generator, the sampling function, and a link to the workspace object, which happens to contain a pointer to the sampler object. The sampler object thus becomes the workspace of the sampling function.

Note: in the current implementation, the random-number generator must be the TAO generator. This explicit dependence should be removed from the VAMP implementation.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: sample_grids => mci_vamp_instance_sample_grids

<MCI vamp: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_instance_sample_grids (instance, rng, sampler, eq)
        class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
        class(rng_t), intent(inout) :: rng
        class(mci_sampler_t), intent(inout), target :: sampler
        type(vamp_equivalences_t), intent(in), optional :: eq
        class(vamp_data_t), allocatable :: data
        type(exception) :: vamp_exception
        allocate (mci_workspace_t :: data)
        select type (data)
            type is (mci_workspace_t)
                data%sampler => sampler
                data%instance => instance
            end select
        select type (rng)
            type is (rng_tao_t)
                instance%it = instance%it + 1
                instance%calls = 0
                if (instance%grids_defined) then

```

```

        call vamp_sample_grids ( &
            rng%state, &
            instance%grids, &
            vamp_sampling_function, &
            data, &
            1, &
            eq = eq, &
            history = instance%v_history(instance%it:), &
            histories = instance%v_histories(instance%it:,:), &
            integral = instance%integral, &
            std_dev = instance%error, &
            exc = vamp_exception, &
            negative_weights = instance%negative_weights)
        call handle_vamp_exception (vamp_exception, instance%mc%verbose)
        instance%efficiency = instance%get_efficiency ()
    else
        call msg_bug ("VAMP: sample grids: grids undefined")
    end if
class default
    call msg_fatal ("VAMP integration: random-number generator must be TAO")
end select
end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_sample_grids

```

Compute the reweighting efficiency for the current grids, suitable averaged over all active channels.

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_efficiency_array => mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency_array
    procedure :: get_efficiency => mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
    function mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency_array (mci) result (efficiency)
        class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: efficiency
        allocate (efficiency (mci%mc%n_channel))
        where (mci%grids%grids%f_max /= 0)
            efficiency = mci%grids%grids%mu(1) / abs (mci%grids%grids%f_max)
        elsewhere
            efficiency = 0
        end where
    end function mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency_array

    function mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency (mci) result (efficiency)
        class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
        real(default) :: efficiency
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weight
        real(default) :: norm
        allocate (weight (mci%mc%n_channel))
        weight = mci%grids%weights * abs (mci%grids%grids%f_max)
        norm = sum (weight)
        if (norm /= 0) then
            efficiency = dot_product (mci%get_efficiency_array (), weight) / norm
        else
            efficiency = 1
        end if
    end function

```

```
end function mci_vamp_instance_get_efficiency
```

Prepare an event generation pass. Should be called before a sequence of events is generated, then we should call the corresponding finalizer.

The pass-specific data of the previous integration pass are retained, but we reset the number of iterations and calls to zero. The latter now counts the number of events (calls to the sampling function, actually).

```

(MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_simulation => mci_vamp_instance_init_simulation
(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_init_simulation (instance, safety_factor)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
    associate (mci => instance%mci)
      allocate (instance%vamp_x (mci%n_dim))
      instance%it = 0
      instance%calls = 0
      instance%generating_events = .true.
      if (present (safety_factor)) instance%safety_factor = safety_factor
      if (.not. instance%grids_defined) then
        if (mci%grid_filename_set) then
          if (.not. mci%check_grid_file) &
            call msg_warning ("Reading grid file: MD5 sum check disabled")
          call msg_message ("Simulate: " &
            // "using integration grids from file '" &
            // char (mci%grid_filename) // "'")
          call mci%read_grids_data (instance)
          if (instance%safety_factor /= 1) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,ES10.3,A)") "Simulate: &
              &applying safety factor", instance%safety_factor, &
              " to event rejection"
            call msg_message ()
            instance%grids%grids%f_max = &
              instance%grids%grids%f_max * instance%safety_factor
          end if
        else
          call msg_bug ("VAMP: simulation: no grids, no grid filename")
        end if
      end if
    end associate
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_init_simulation

```

Finalize an event generation pass. Should be called before a sequence of events is generated, then we should call the corresponding finalizer.

```

(MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: final_simulation => mci_vamp_instance_final_simulation
(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_final_simulation (instance)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    if (allocated (instance%vamp_x)) deallocate (instance%vamp_x)
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_final_simulation

```

### 13.3.7 Sampling function

The VAMP sampling function has a well-defined interface which we have to implement. The `data` argument allows us to pass pointers to the `sampler` and `instance` objects, so we can access configuration data and fill point-dependent contents within these objects.

The `weights` and `channel` argument must be present in the call.

Note: we would normally declare the `instance` pointer with the concrete type, or just use the `data` component directly. Unfortunately, gfortran 4.6 forgets the inherited base-type methods in that case.

Note: this is the place where we must look for external signals, i.e., interrupt from the OS. We would like to raise a VAMP exception which is then caught by `vamp_sample_grids` as the caller, so it dumps its current state and returns (with the signal still pending). WHIZARD will then terminate gracefully. Of course, VAMP should be able to resume from the dump.

In the current implementation, we handle the exception in place and terminate immediately. The incomplete current integration pass is lost.

```
(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
function vamp_sampling_function &
  (xi, data, weights, channel, grids) result (f)
  real(default) :: f
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: xi
  class(vamp_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: weights
  integer, intent(in), optional :: channel
  type(vamp_grid), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: grids
  type(exception) :: exc
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: instance
  logical :: verbose
  character(*), parameter :: FN = "WHIZARD sampling function"
  select type (data)
  type is (mci_workspace_t)
    instance => data%instance
    select type (instance)
    class is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
      instance%calls = instance%calls + 1
      verbose = instance%mci%verbose
    end select
    call instance%evaluate (data%sampler, channel, xi)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) then
      call raise_exception (exc, EXC_FATAL, FN, "signal received")
      call handle_vamp_exception (exc, verbose)
      call terminate_now_if_signal ()
    end if
    f = instance%get_value ()
  end select
end function vamp_sampling_function
```

This is supposed to be the mapping between integration channels. The VAMP event generating procedures technically require it, but it is meaningless in our setup where all transformations happen inside the sampler object. So, this implementation is trivial:

```

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  pure function phi_trivial (xi, channel_dummy) result (x)
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: xi
    integer, intent(in) :: channel_dummy
    real(default), dimension(size(xi)) :: x
    x = xi
  end function phi_trivial

```

### 13.3.8 Integrator instance: evaluation

Here, we compute the multi-channel reweighting factor for the current channel, that accounts for the Jacobians of the transformations from/to all other channels.

The computation of the VAMP probabilities may consume considerable time, therefore we enable parallel evaluation. (Collecting the contributions to `mci%g` is a reduction, which we should also implement via OpenMP.)

```

<MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_weight => mci_vamp_instance_compute_weight

<MCI vamp: procedures>+=
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_compute_weight (mci, c)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    integer :: i
    mci%selected_channel = c
    !$OMP PARALLEL PRIVATE(i) SHARED(mci)
    !$OMP DO
    do i = 1, mci%nc
      if (mci%w(i) /= 0) then
        mci%gi(i) = vamp_probability (mci%grids%grids(i), mci%x(:,i))
      else
        mci%gi(i) = 0
      end if
    end do
    !$OMP END DO
    !$OMP END PARALLEL
    mci%g = 0
    if (mci%gi(c) /= 0) then
      do i = 1, mci%nc
        if (mci%w(i) /= 0 .and. mci%f(i) /= 0) then
          mci%g = mci%g + mci%w(i) * mci%gi(i) / mci%f(i)
        end if
      end do
    end if
    if (mci%g /= 0) then
      mci%weight = mci%gi(c) / mci%g
    else
      mci%weight = 0
    end if
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_compute_weight

```

Record the integrand.

```

(MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: record_integrand => mci_vamp_instance_record_integrand

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_instance_record_integrand (mci, integrand)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(inout) :: mci
    real(default), intent(in) :: integrand
    mci%integrand = integrand
  end subroutine mci_vamp_instance_record_integrand

```

Get the event weight. The default routine returns the same value that we would use for integration. This is correct if we select the integration channel according to the channel weight. `vamp_next_event` does differently, so we should rather rely on the weight that VAMP returns. This is the value stored in `vamp_weight`. We override the default TBP accordingly.

```

(MCI vamp: mci vamp instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_event_weight => mci_vamp_instance_get_event_weight
  procedure :: get_event_excess => mci_vamp_instance_get_event_excess

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  function mci_vamp_instance_get_event_weight (mci) result (value)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: value
    if (mci%vamp_weight_set) then
      value = mci%vamp_weight
    else
      call msg_bug ("VAMP: attempt to read undefined event weight")
    end if
  end function mci_vamp_instance_get_event_weight

  function mci_vamp_instance_get_event_excess (mci) result (value)
    class(mci_vamp_instance_t), intent(in) :: mci
    real(default) :: value
    if (mci%vamp_weight_set) then
      value = mci%vamp_excess
    else
      call msg_bug ("VAMP: attempt to read undefined event excess weight")
    end if
  end function mci_vamp_instance_get_event_excess

```

### 13.3.9 VAMP exceptions

A VAMP routine may have raised an exception. Turn this into a WHIZARD error message.

An external signal could raise a fatal exception, but this should be delayed and handled by the correct termination routine.

```

(MCI vamp: procedures)+≡
  subroutine handle_vamp_exception (exc, verbose)
    type(exception), intent(in) :: exc
    logical, intent(in) :: verbose
    integer :: exc_level

```



```

if (verbose) then
    exc_level = EXC_INFO
else
    exc_level = EXC_ERROR
end if
if (exc%level >= exc_level) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,':',1x,A)" trim (exc%origin), trim (exc%message)
    select case (exc%level)
    case (EXC_INFO); call msg_message ()
    case (EXC_WARN); call msg_warning ()
    case (EXC_ERROR); call msg_error ()
    case (EXC_FATAL)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) then
            call msg_message ()
        else
            call msg_fatal ()
        end if
    end select
end if
end subroutine handle_vamp_exception

```

### 13.3.10 Unit tests

```

<MCI vamp: public>+≡
    public :: mci_vamp_test

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <MCI vamp: execute tests>
    end subroutine mci_vamp_test

```

### Test sampler

A test sampler object should implement a function with known integral that we can use to check the integrator.

In mode 1, the function is  $f(x) = 3x^2$  with integral  $\int_0^1 f(x) dx = 1$  and maximum  $f(1) = 3$ . If the integration dimension is greater than one, the function is extended as a constant in the other dimension(s).

In mode 2, the function is  $11x^{10}$ , also with integral 1.

```

<MCI vamp: test types>≡
    type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_1_t
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
        real(default) :: val
        integer :: mode = 1
    contains
    <MCI vamp: test sampler 1: TBP>
    end type test_sampler_1_t

```

Output: There is nothing stored inside, so just print an informative line.

```

(MCI vamp: test_sampler_1: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => test_sampler_1_write

(MCI vamp: tests)+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    select case (object%mode)
    case (1)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 3 x^2"
    case (2)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 11 x^10"
    case (3)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test sampler: f(x) = 11 x^10 * 2 * cos^2 (2 pi y)"
    end select
  end subroutine test_sampler_1_write

```

Evaluation: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

(MCI vamp: test_sampler_1: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_1_evaluate

(MCI vamp: tests)+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    if (allocated (sampler%x)) deallocate (sampler%x)
    allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in)))
    sampler%x = x_in
    select case (sampler%mode)
    case (1)
      sampler%val = 3 * x_in(1) ** 2
    case (2)
      sampler%val = 11 * x_in(1) ** 10
    case (3)
      sampler%val = 11 * x_in(1) ** 10 * 2 * cos (twopi * x_in(2)) ** 2
    end select
    call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
  end subroutine test_sampler_1_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

(MCI vamp: test_sampler_1: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_1_is_valid

```

```

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
function test_sampler_1_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
  class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: sampler
  logical :: valid
  valid = .true.
end function test_sampler_1_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_1_rebuild
<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    if (allocated (sampler%x)) deallocate (sampler%x)
    allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in)))
    sampler%x = x_in
    sampler%val = val
    x(:,1) = sampler%x
    f = 1
  end subroutine test_sampler_1_rebuild

```

Extract the results.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 1: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_1_fetch
<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_1_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_1_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    val = sampler%val
    x(:,1) = sampler%x
    f = 1
  end subroutine test_sampler_1_fetch

```

## Two-channel, two dimension test sampler

This sampler implements the function

$$f(x, y) = 4 \sin^2(\pi x) \sin^2(\pi y) + 2 \sin^2(\pi v) \quad (13.11)$$

where

$$x = u^v \quad u = xy \quad (13.12)$$

$$y = u^{(1-v)} \quad v = \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\log(x/y)}{\log xy} \right) \quad (13.13)$$

Each term contributes 1 to the integral. The first term in the function is peaked along a cross aligned to the coordinates  $x$  and  $y$ , while the second term is peaked along the diagonal  $x = y$ .

The Jacobian is

$$\frac{\partial(x,y)}{\partial(u,v)} = |\log u| \quad (13.14)$$

```

<MCI vamp: test types>+≡
  type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_2_t
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
    real(default) :: val
  contains
    <MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP>
  end type test_sampler_2_t

```

Output: There is nothing stored inside, so just print an informative line.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => test_sampler_2_write

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_2_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Two-channel test sampler 2"
  end subroutine test_sampler_2_write

```

Kinematics: compute  $x$  and Jacobians, given the input parameter array.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => test_sampler_2_compute

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine test_sampler_2_compute (sampler, c, x_in)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default) :: xx, yy, uu, vv
    if (.not. allocated (sampler%x)) &
      allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in), 2))
    if (.not. allocated (sampler%f)) &
      allocate (sampler%f (2))
    select case (c)
    case (1)
      xx = x_in(1)
      yy = x_in(2)
      uu = xx * yy
      vv = (1 + log (xx/yy) / log (xx*yy)) / 2
    case (2)
      uu = x_in(1)
      vv = x_in(2)
      xx = uu ** vv

```

```

        yy = uu ** (1 - vv)
    end select
    sampler%val = (2 * sin (pi * xx) * sin (pi * yy)) ** 2 &
        + 2 * sin (pi * vv) ** 2
    sampler%f(1) = 1
    sampler%f(2) = abs (log (uu))
    sampler%x(:,1) = [xx, yy]
    sampler%x(:,2) = [uu, vv]
end subroutine test_sampler_2_compute

```

Evaluation: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_2_evaluate

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_2_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
        call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
    end subroutine test_sampler_2_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_2_is_valid

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    function test_sampler_2_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
        class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        logical :: valid
        valid = .true.
    end function test_sampler_2_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_2_rebuild

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_2_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
        real(default), intent(in) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
        x = sampler%x
        f = sampler%f
    end subroutine test_sampler_2_rebuild

```

```
end subroutine test_sampler_2_rebuild
```

Extract the results.

```
<MCI vamp: test sampler 2: TBP>+=
  procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_2_fetch

<MCI vamp: tests>+=
  subroutine test_sampler_2_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
    class(test_sampler_2_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    val = sampler%val
    x = sampler%x
    f = sampler%f
  end subroutine test_sampler_2_fetch
```

## Two-channel, one dimension test sampler

This sampler implements the function

$$f(x, y) = a * 5x^4 + b * 5(1 - x)^4 \quad (13.15)$$

Each term contributes 1 to the integral, multiplied by  $a$  or  $b$ , respectively. The first term is peaked at  $x = 1$ , the second one at  $x = 0$ .

We implement the two mappings

$$x = u^{1/5} \quad \text{and} \quad x = 1 - v^{1/5}, \quad (13.16)$$

with Jacobians

$$\frac{\partial(x)}{\partial(u)} = u^{-4/5}/5 \quad \text{and} \quad v^{-4/5}/5, \quad (13.17)$$

respectively. The first mapping concentrates points near  $x = 1$ , the second one near  $x = 0$ .

```
<MCI vamp: test types>+=
  type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: test_sampler_3_t
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: f
    real(default) :: val
    real(default) :: a = 1
    real(default) :: b = 1
  contains
    <MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP>
  end type test_sampler_3_t
```

Output: display  $a$  and  $b$

```
<MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => test_sampler_3_write
```

```

<MCI vamp: tests>+=
subroutine test_sampler_3_write (object, unit, testflag)
  class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Two-channel test sampler 3"
  write (u, "(3x,A,F5.2)") "a = ", object%a
  write (u, "(3x,A,F5.2)") "b = ", object%b
end subroutine test_sampler_3_write

```

Kinematics: compute  $x$  and Jacobians, given the input parameter array.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute => test_sampler_3_compute

<MCI vamp: tests>+=
subroutine test_sampler_3_compute (sampler, c, x_in)
  class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
  real(default) :: u, v, xx
  if (.not. allocated (sampler%x)) &
    allocate (sampler%x (size (x_in), 2))
  if (.not. allocated (sampler%f)) &
    allocate (sampler%f (2))
  select case (c)
  case (1)
    u = x_in(1)
    xx = u ** 0.2_default
    v = (1 - xx) ** 5._default
  case (2)
    v = x_in(1)
    xx = 1 - v ** 0.2_default
    u = xx ** 5._default
  end select
  sampler%val = sampler%a * 5 * xx ** 4 + sampler%b * 5 * (1 - xx) ** 4
  sampler%f(1) = 0.2_default * u ** (-0.8_default)
  sampler%f(2) = 0.2_default * v ** (-0.8_default)
  sampler%x(:,1) = [u]
  sampler%x(:,2) = [v]
end subroutine test_sampler_3_compute

```

Evaluation: compute the function value. The output  $x$  parameter (only one channel) is identical to the input  $x$ , and the Jacobian is 1.

```

<MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP>+=
  procedure :: evaluate => test_sampler_3_evaluate

<MCI vamp: tests>+=
subroutine test_sampler_3_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
  class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
  real(default), intent(out) :: val

```

```

    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
    call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
end subroutine test_sampler_3_evaluate

```

The point is always valid.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: is_valid => test_sampler_3_is_valid

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    function test_sampler_3_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
        class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        logical :: valid
        valid = .true.
    end function test_sampler_3_is_valid

```

Rebuild: compute all but the function value.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: rebuild => test_sampler_3_rebuild

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_3_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
        integer, intent(in) :: c
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
        real(default), intent(in) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        call sampler%compute (c, x_in)
        x = sampler%x
        f = sampler%f
    end subroutine test_sampler_3_rebuild

```

Extract the results.

```

⟨MCI vamp: test sampler 3: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: fetch => test_sampler_3_fetch

⟨MCI vamp: tests⟩+≡
    subroutine test_sampler_3_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
        class(test_sampler_3_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        val = sampler%val
        x = sampler%x
        f = sampler%f
    end subroutine test_sampler_3_fetch

```

## One-dimensional integration

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler.



Note: We would like to check the precise contents of the grid allocated during integration, but the output format for reals is very long (for good reasons), so the last digits in the grid content display are numerical noise. So, we just check the integration results.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>≡
  call test (mci_vamp_1, "mci_vamp_1", &
    "one-dimensional integral", &
    u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
      &(single channel)"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
      grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
      call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    call rng%init ()
    call mci%import_rng (rng)

    call mci%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test sampler"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
    call sampler%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")  "    (lower precision to avoid"
write (u, "(A)")  "        numerical noise)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass ()
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000, pacify = .true.)
call mci%write (u, .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u, .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_1"

end subroutine mci_vamp_1

```

## Multiple iterations

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler. Integrate with five iterations without grid adaptation.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_2, "mci_vamp_2", &
        "multiple iterations", &
        u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
        &(single channel)"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_1_t)
    sampler%mode = 2
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 100"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .false.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 100)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_2"

end subroutine mci_vamp_2

```

## Grid adaptation

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler. Integrate with three iterations and in-between grid adaptations.

```
(MCI vamp: execute tests)+≡
  call test (mci_vamp_3, "mci_vamp_3", &
    "grid adaptation", &
    u, results)

(MCI vamp: tests)+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
      &(single channel)"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           and adapt grid"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
      grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
      call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    call rng%init ()
    call mci%import_rng (rng)

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
    select type (sampler)
    type is (test_sampler_1_t)
      sampler%mode = 2
    end select
    call sampler%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 100"
    write (u, "(A)")

    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
```

```

        call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
    end select
    call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 100)
    call mci%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci_instance%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call mci_instance%final ()
    call mci%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_3"

end subroutine mci_vamp_3

```

## Two-dimensional integral

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler. Integrate with three iterations and in-between grid adaptations.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_4, "mci_vamp_4", &
        "two-dimensional integration", &
        u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
        class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
        class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
        class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_4"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions &
            &(single channel)"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* and adapt grid"

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
        call mci%set_dimensions (2, 1)
        select type (mci)
        type is (mci_vamp_t)

```

```

        grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
        call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_1_t)
    sampler%mode = 3
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_4"

end subroutine mci_vamp_4

```

## Two-channel integral

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler with two channels.

Integrate with three iterations and in-between grid adaptations.

*(MCI vamp: execute tests)* +≡

```

call test (mci_vamp_5, "mci_vamp_5", &
          "two-dimensional integration", &
          u, results)
<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_5 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_5"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions &
                    &(two channels)"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and adapt grid"

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
  end select

  allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
  call rng%init ()
  call mci%import_rng (rng)

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)
  call sampler%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
  write (u, "(A)")

  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
  end select
  call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
  call mci%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_5"

end subroutine mci_vamp_5

```

## Weight adaptation

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler with two channels.

Integrate with three iterations and in-between weight adaptations.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_vamp_6, "mci_vamp_6", &
  "weight adaptation", &
  u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_6 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_6"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
    &(two channels)"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and adapt weights"

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
  end select

  allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
  call rng%init ()

```



```

call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_3_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_3_t)
    sampler%a = 0.9_default
    sampler%b = 0.1_default
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_weights = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)
deallocate (mci)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-initialize with chained channels"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
call mci%declare_chains ([1,1])
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()

```

```

call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%add_pass (adapt_weights = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_6"

end subroutine mci_vamp_6

```

## Equivalences

Construct an integrator and use it for a one-dimensional sampler with two channels.

Integrate with three iterations and in-between grid adaptations. Apply an equivalence between the two channels, so the binning of the two channels is forced to coincide. Compare this with the behavior without equivalences.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_vamp_7, "mci_vamp_7", &
    "use channel equivalences", &
    u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  type(phs_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: channel
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

```

```

real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: x
integer :: u_grid, iostat, i, div, ch
character(16) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_7"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check effect of channel equivalences"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_3_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_3_t)
    sampler%a = 0.7_default
    sampler%b = 0.3_default
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 2 and n_calls = 1000, &
    &adapt grids"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 2, 1000)

call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write grids and extract binning"
write (u, "(A)")

u_grid = free_unit ()
open (u_grid, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")

```

```

select type (mci_instance)
type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
    call vamp_write_grids (mci_instance%grids, u_grid)
end select
rewind (u_grid)
allocate (x (0:20, 2))
do div = 1, 2
    FIND_BINS1: do
        read (u_grid, "(A)") buffer
        if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) == "begin d%x") then
            do
                read (u_grid, *, iostat = iostat) i, x(i,div)
                if (iostat /= 0) exit FIND_BINS1
            end do
        end if
    end do FIND_BINS1
end do
close (u_grid)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Equal binning in both channels = ", &
    all (x(:,1) == x(:,2))
deallocate (x)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()
deallocate (mci_instance)
deallocate (mci)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Re-initialize integrator, instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .true.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

write (u, "(A)") "* Define equivalences"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (channel (2))
do ch = 1, 2
    allocate (channel(ch)%eq (2))
    do i = 1, 2
        associate (eq => channel(ch)%eq(i))
            call eq%init (1)
            eq%c = i
        end associate
    end do
end do

```

```

        eq%perm = [1]
        eq%mode = [0]
    end associate
end do
write (u, "(ix,I0,':')", advance = "no")  ch
call channel(ch)%write (u)
end do
call mci%declare_equivalences (channel, dim_offset = 0)

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 2 and n_calls = 1000, &
    &adapt grids"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 2, 1000)

call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write grids and extract binning"
write (u, "(A)")

u_grid = free_unit ()
open (u_grid, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
select type (mci_instance)
type is (mci_vamp_instance_t)
    call vamp_write_grids (mci_instance%grids, u_grid)
end select
rewind (u_grid)
allocate (x (0:20, 2))
do div = 1, 2
    FIND_BINS2: do
        read (u_grid, "(A)")  buffer
        if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) == "begin d%x") then
            do
                read (u_grid, *, iostat = iostat)  i, x(i,div)
                if (iostat /= 0)  exit FIND_BINS2
            end do
        end if
    end do FIND_BINS2
end do
close (u_grid)

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Equal binning in both channels = ", &
    all (x(:,1) == x(:,2))
deallocate (x)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_7"

end subroutine mci_vamp_7

```

## Multiple passes

Integrate with three passes and different settings for weight and grid adaptation.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_8, "mci_vamp_8", &
        "integration passes", &
        u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
        &(two channels)"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           in three passes"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
        grid_par%stratified = .false.
        grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
        call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    call rng%init ()

```

```

call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_3_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_3_t)
    sampler%a = 0.9_default
    sampler%b = 0.1_default
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with grid and weight adaptation"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true., adapt_weights = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with grid adaptation"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate without adaptation"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass ()

```

```

end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Contents of mci_instance:"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_8"

end subroutine mci_vamp_8

```

## Weighted events

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler with two channels. Integrate and generate a weighted event.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
call test (mci_vamp_9, "mci_vamp_9", &
  "weighted event", &
  u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_9 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_9"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions &
    &(two channels)"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and generate a weighted event"

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.

```



```

        grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
        call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    call rng%init ()
    call mci%import_rng (rng)

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)
    call sampler%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%add_pass ()
    call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
    call mci%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a weighted event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci_instance%init_simulation ()
    call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

    write (u, "(1x,A)")  "MCI instance:"
    call mci_instance%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call mci_instance%final_simulation ()
    call mci_instance%final ()
    call mci%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_9"

end subroutine mci_vamp_9

```

## Grids I/O

Construct an integrator and allocate grids. Write grids to file, read them in again and compare.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_10, "mci_vamp_10", &
        "grids I/O", &
        u, results)

```

```

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_10 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
  class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
  class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
  type(string_t) :: file1, file2
  character(80) :: buffer1, buffer2
  integer :: u1, u2, iostat1, iostat2
  logical :: equal, success

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_10"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: write and read VAMP grids"

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
  call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
  end select

  allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
  call rng%init ()
  call mci%import_rng (rng)

  mci%md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"

  call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
  call mci_instance%init (mci)

  allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)
  call sampler%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call mci%add_pass ()
  call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Write grids to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  file1 = "mci_vamp_10.1"
  select type (mci)
  type is (mci_vamp_t)

```

```

        call mci%set_grid_filename (file1)
        call mci%write_grids (mci_instance)
end select

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()
deallocate (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Read grids from file"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

mci%md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%set_grid_filename (file1)
    call mci%add_pass ()
    call mci%current_pass%configure (1, 1000, &
        mci%min_calls, &
        mci%grid_par%min_bins, mci%grid_par%max_bins, &
        mci%grid_par%min_calls_per_channel * mci%n_channel)
    call mci%read_grids_header (success)
    call mci%compute_md5sum ()
    call mci%read_grids_data (mci_instance, read_integrals = .true.)
end select
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write grids again"
write (u, "(A)")

file2 = "mci_vamp_10.2"
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%set_grid_filename (file2)
    call mci%write_grids (mci_instance)
end select

u1 = free_unit ()
open (u1, file = char (file1) // ".vg", action = "read", status = "old")

```

```

u2 = free_unit ()
open (u2, file = char (file2) // ".vg", action = "read", status = "old")

equal = .true.
iostat1 = 0
iostat2 = 0
do while (equal .and. iostat1 == 0 .and. iostat2 == 0)
    read (u1, "(A)", iostat = iostat1) buffer1
    read (u2, "(A)", iostat = iostat2) buffer2
    equal = buffer1 == buffer2 .and. iostat1 == iostat2
end do
close (u1)
close (u2)

if (equal) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Success: grid files are identical"
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Failure: grid files differ"
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_10"

end subroutine mci_vamp_10

```

## Weighted events

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler with two channels. Integrate, write grids, and generate a weighted event using the grids from file.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_11, "mci_vamp_11", &
        "weighted events with grid I/O", &
        u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
    subroutine mci_vamp_11 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
        class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
        class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
        class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
        class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_11"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions &
            &(two channels)"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "*"                and generate a weighted event"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    call mci%set_grid_filename (var_str ("mci_vamp_11"))
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%add_pass ()
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate a weighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%init_simulation ()
call mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final_simulation ()
call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_11"

end subroutine mci_vamp_11

```

## Weighted events

Construct an integrator and use it for a two-dimensional sampler with two channels. Integrate, write grids, and generate a weighted event using the grids from file.

```
<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_vamp_12, "mci_vamp_12", &
    "unweighted events with grid I/O", &
    u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_12 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_12"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in two dimensions &
      &(two channels)"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           and generate an unweighted event"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
      grid_par%stratified = .false.
      grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
      call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
      call mci%set_grid_filename (var_str ("mci_vamp_12"))
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
    call rng%init ()
    call mci%import_rng (rng)

    call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
    call mci_instance%init (mci)

    allocate (test_sampler_2_t :: sampler)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 3 and n_calls = 1000"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call mci%add_pass ()
    call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 1, 1000)
```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci_instance%init_simulation ()
call mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, sampler)

write (u, "(1x,A)")  "MCI instance:"
call mci_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final_simulation ()
call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_12"

end subroutine mci_vamp_12

```

## Update integration results

Compare two mci objects; match the two and update the first if successful.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_vamp_13, "mci_vamp_13", &
    "updating integration results", &
    u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_13 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci, mci_ref
    logical :: success

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_13"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: match and update integrators"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator with no passes"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (2, 2)

```

```

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  grid_par%stratified = .false.
  grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
  call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize reference"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci_ref)
call mci_ref%set_dimensions (2, 2)
select type (mci_ref)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci_ref%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
end select

select type (mci_ref)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci_ref%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
  call mci_ref%current_pass%configure (2, 1000, 0, 1, 5, 0)
  mci_ref%current_pass%calls = [77, 77]
  mci_ref%current_pass%integral = [1.23_default, 3.45_default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%error = [0.23_default, 0.45_default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%efficiency = [0.1_default, 0.6_default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%integral_defined = .true.

  call mci_ref%add_pass ()
  call mci_ref%current_pass%configure (2, 2000, 0, 1, 7, 0)
  mci_ref%current_pass%calls = [99, 0]
  mci_ref%current_pass%integral = [7.89_default, 0._default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%error = [0.89_default, 0._default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%efficiency = [0.86_default, 0._default]
  mci_ref%current_pass%integral_defined = .true.
end select

call mci_ref%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update integrator (no-op, should succeed)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Add pass to integrator"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
  call mci%current_pass%configure (2, 1000, 0, 1, 5, 0)
  mci%current_pass%calls = [77, 77]
  mci%current_pass%integral = [1.23_default, 3.45_default]
  mci%current_pass%error = [0.23_default, 0.45_default]
  mci%current_pass%efficiency = [0.1_default, 0.6_default]
  mci%current_pass%integral_defined = .true.
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Update integrator (no-op, should succeed)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Add pass to integrator, wrong parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%add_pass ()
  call mci%current_pass%configure (2, 1000, 0, 1, 7, 0)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Update integrator (should fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset and add passes to integrator"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)

```

```

        call mci%reset ()
        call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
        call mci%current_pass%configure (2, 1000, 0, 1, 5, 0)
        mci%current_pass%calls = [77, 77]
        mci%current_pass%integral = [1.23_default, 3.45_default]
        mci%current_pass%error = [0.23_default, 0.45_default]
        mci%current_pass%efficiency = [0.1_default, 0.6_default]
        mci%current_pass%integral_defined = .true.

        call mci%add_pass ()
        call mci%current_pass%configure (2, 2000, 0, 1, 7, 0)
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Update integrator (should succeed)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update again (no-op, should succeed)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Add extra result to integrator"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    mci%current_pass%calls(2) = 1234
end select

write (u, "(A)")  "* Update integrator (should fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%update_from_ref (mci_ref, success)
end select

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "success = ", success
write (u, "(A)")
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci%final ()
call mci_ref%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_13"

end subroutine mci_vamp_13

```

## Accuracy Goal

Integrate with multiple iterations. Skip iterations once an accuracy goal has been reached.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
  call test (mci_vamp_14, "mci_vamp_14", &
    "accuracy goal", &
    u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
  subroutine mci_vamp_14 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_14"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
      &(single channel)"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* and check accuracy goal"

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
    call mci%set_dimensions (1, 1)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_vamp_t)
      grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
      grid_par%accuracy_goal = 5E-2_default
      call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    end select

    allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)

```

```

call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_1_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_1_t)
    sampler%mode = 2
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with n_it = 5 and n_calls = 100"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 5, 100)
call mci%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: mci_vamp_14"

end subroutine mci_vamp_14

```

## VAMP history

Integrate with three passes and different settings for weight and grid adaptation. Then show the VAMP history.

```

<MCI vamp: execute tests>+≡
    call test (mci_vamp_15, "mci_vamp_15", &
        "VAMP history", &
        u, results)

<MCI vamp: tests>+≡
subroutine mci_vamp_15 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
    type(history_parameters_t) :: history_par
    class(mci_t), allocatable, target :: mci
    class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci_instance => null ()
    class(mci_sampler_t), allocatable :: sampler
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: mci_vamp_15"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate function in one dimension &
                    &(two channels)"
write (u, "(A)")  "*                      in three passes, show history"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize integrator, sampler, instance"
write (u, "(A)")

history_par%channel = .true.

allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
call mci%set_dimensions (1, 2)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    grid_par%stratified = .false.
    grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = .false.
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    call mci%set_history_parameters (history_par)
end select

allocate (rng_tao_t :: rng)
call rng%init ()
call mci%import_rng (rng)

call mci%allocate_instance (mci_instance)
call mci_instance%init (mci)

allocate (test_sampler_3_t :: sampler)
select type (sampler)
type is (test_sampler_3_t)
    sampler%a = 0.9_default
    sampler%b = 0.1_default
end select
call sampler%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Pass 1: grid and weight adaptation"

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true., adapt_weights = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Pass 2: grid adaptation"

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%add_pass (adapt_grids = .true.)
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Pass 3: without adaptation"

select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%add_pass ()
end select
call mci%integrate (mci_instance, sampler, 3, 1000)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Contents of MCI record, with history"
write (u, "(A)")

call mci%write (u)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
  call mci%write_history (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Cleanup"

call mci_instance%final ()
call mci%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: mci_vamp_15"

end subroutine mci_vamp_15

```

## Chapter 14

# Process Libraries

This chapter consists of two modules which organize and interface the interaction matrix elements for a variety of elementary processes.

**prclib\_interfaces** This module deals with matrix-element code which is accessible via external libraries (Fortran libraries or generic C-compatible libraries) and must either be generated by the program or provided by the user explicitly.

The module defines and uses an abstract type `prc_writer_t` and two abstract extensions, one for a Fortran module and one for a C-compatible library. The implementation provides the specific methods for writing the appropriate parts in external matrix element code.

**prc\_core\_def** This module defines the abstract types `prc_core_def_t` and `prc_driver_t`. The implementation of the former provides the configuration for processes of a certain class, while the latter accesses the corresponding matrix element, in particular those generated by the appropriate `prc_writer_t` object.

**process\_libraries** This module combines the functionality of the previous module with the means for holding processes definitions (the internal counterpart of appropriate declarations in the user interface), for handling matrix elements which do not need external code, and for accessing the matrix elements by the procedures for matrix-element evaluation, integration and event generation.

**test\_me** This module provides a test implementation for the abstract types in the `prc_core_def` module. The implementation is intended for self-tests of several later modules. The implementation is internal, i.e., no external code has is generated.

All data structures which are specific for a particular way of generating code or evaluating matrix element are kept abstract and thus generic. Later modules such as `prc_omega` provide implementations, in the form of type extensions for the various abstract types.

## 14.1 Process library interface

The module `prclib_interfaces` handles external matrix-element code.

### 14.1.1 Overview

The top-level data structure is the `prclib_driver_t` data type. The associated type-bound procedures deal with the generation of external code, compilation and linking, and accessing the active external library.

An object of type `prclib_driver_t` consists of the following parts:

1. Metadata that identify name and status of the library driver, etc.
2. An array of process records (`prclib_driver_record_t`), one for each external matrix element.
3. A record of type `dlaccess_t` which handles the operating-system part of linking a dynamically loadable library.
4. A collection of procedure pointers which have a counterpart in the external library interface. Given the unique identifier of a matrix element, the procedures retrieve generic matrix-element information such as the particle content and helicity combination tables. There is also a procedure which returns pointers to the more specific procedures that a matrix element provides, called *features*.

The process records of type `prclib_driver_record_t` handle the individual matrix elements. Each record identifies a process by name (`id`), names the physics model to be loaded for this process, lists the features that the associated matrix-element code provides, and holds a `writer` object which handles all operations that depend on the process type. The numbering of process records is identical to the numbering of matrix-element codes in the external library.

The writer object is of abstract type `prc_writer_t`. The module defines two basic, also abstract, extensions: `prc_writer_f_module_t` and `prc_writer_c_lib_t`. The first version is for matrix-element code that is available in form of Fortran modules. The writer contains type-bound procedures which create appropriate `use` directives and C-compatible wrapper functions for the given set of Fortran modules and their features. The second version is for matrix-element code that is available in form of a C-compatible library (this includes Fortran libraries with proper C bindings). The writer needs not write wrapper function, but explicit interface blocks for the matrix-element features.

Each matrix-element variant is encoded in an appropriate extension of `prc_writer_t`. For instance, `O'MEGA` matrix elements provide an implementation `omega_writer_t` which extends `prc_writer_f_module_t`.

### 14.1.2 Workflow

We expect that the functionality provided by this module is called in the following order:

1. The caller initializes the `prclib_driver_t` object and fills the array of `prclib_record_t` entries with the appropriate process data and process-specific writer objects.



2. It calls the `generate_makefile` method to set up an appropriate makefile in the current directory. The makefile will handle source generation, compilation and linking both for the individual matrix elements (unless this has to be done manually) and for the common external driver code which interfaces those matrix element.
3. The `generate_driver_code` writes the common driver as source code to file.
4. The methods `make_source`, `make_compile`, and `make_link` individually perform the corresponding steps in building the library. Wherever possible, they simply use the generated makefile. By calling `make`, we make sure that we can avoid unnecessary recompilation. For the compilation and linking steps, the makefile will employ `libtool`.
5. The `load` method loads the library procedures into the corresponding procedure pointers, using the `dlopen` mechanism via the `dlaccess` subobject.

### 14.1.3 The module

```

<prclib_interfaces.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module prclib_interfaces

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use limits, only: TAB !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface

    <Standard module head>

    <Prclib interfaces: public>

    <Prclib interfaces: types>

    <Prclib interfaces: interfaces>

    <Prclib interfaces: test types>

    contains

    <Prclib interfaces: procedures>

    <Prclib interfaces: tests>

  end module prclib_interfaces

```

### 14.1.4 Writers

External matrix element code provides externally visible procedures, which we denote as *features*. The features consist of informational subroutines and functions which are mandatory (universal features) and matrix-element specific subroutines and functions (specific features). The driver interfaces the generic features directly, while it returns the specific features in form of `bind(C)` procedure pointers to the caller. For instance, function `n_in` is generic, while the matrix matrix-element value itself is specific.

To implement these tasks, the driver needs `use` directives for Fortran module procedures, interface blocks for other external stuff, wrapper code, and Makefile snippets.

#### Generic writer

In the `prc_writer_t` data type, we collect the procedures which implement the writing tasks. The type is abstract. The concrete implementations are defined by an extension which is specific for the process type.

The MD5 sum stored here should be the MD5 checksum of the current process component, which can be calculated once the process is configured completely. It can be used by implementations which work with external files, such as O'MEGA.

```
<Prclib interfaces: public>≡
  public :: prc_writer_t

<Prclib interfaces: types>≡
  type, abstract :: prc_writer_t
    character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    contains
    <Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>
  end type prc_writer_t
```

In any case, it is useful to have a string representation of the writer type. This must be implemented by all extensions.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>≡
  procedure(get_const_string), nopass, deferred :: type_name

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    function get_const_string () result (string)
      import
      type(string_t) :: string
    end function get_const_string
  end interface
```

Return the name of a procedure that implements a given feature, as it is provided by the external matrix-element code. For a reasonable default, we take the feature name unchanged.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_procname => prc_writer_get_procname
```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>≡
function prc_writer_get_procname (feature) result (name)
  type(string_t) :: name
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
  name = feature
end function prc_writer_get_procname

```

Return the name of a procedure that implements a given feature with the bind(C) property, so it can be accessed via a C procedure pointer and handled by dlopen. We need this for all special features of a matrix element, since the interface has to return a C function pointer for it. For a default implementation, we prefix the external procedure name by the process ID.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_c_procname => prc_writer_get_c_procname

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
function prc_writer_get_c_procname (writer, id, feature) result (name)
  class(prc_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
  type(string_t) :: name
  name = id // "_" // feature
end function prc_writer_get_c_procname

```

Common signature of code-writing procedures. The procedure may use the process ID, and the feature name. (Not necessarily all of them.)

```

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
abstract interface
  subroutine write_code_file (writer, id)
    import
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  end subroutine write_code_file
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine write_code (writer, unit, id)
    import
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  end subroutine write_code
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine write_code_os (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
    import
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  end subroutine write_code_os
end interface

```

```

abstract interface
  subroutine write_feature_code (writer, unit, id, feature)
    import
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
  end subroutine write_feature_code
end interface

```

There must be a procedure which writes an interface block for a given feature. If the external matrix element is implemented as a Fortran module, this is required only for the specific features which are returned as procedure pointers.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure(write_feature_code), deferred :: write_interface

```

There must also be a procedure which writes Makefile code which is specific for the current process, but not the feature.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure(write_code_os), deferred :: write_makefile_code

```

This procedure writes code process-specific source-code file (which need not be Fortran). It may be a no-op, if the source code is generated by Make instead.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure(write_code_file), deferred :: write_source_code

```

## Writer for Fortran-module matrix elements

If the matrix element is available as a Fortran module, we have specific requirements: (i) the features are imported via `use` directives, (ii) the specific features require `bind(C)` wrappers.

The type is still abstract, all methods must be implemented explicitly for a specific matrix-element variant.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
  public :: prc_writer_f_module_t

<Prclib interfaces: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_writer_t), abstract :: prc_writer_f_module_t
  contains
    <Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>
  end type prc_writer_f_module_t

```

Return the name of the Fortran module. As a default implementation, we take the process ID unchanged.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_module_name => prc_writer_get_module_name

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  function prc_writer_get_module_name (id) result (name)
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    name = id
  end function prc_writer_get_module_name

```

Write a `use` directive that associates the driver reference with the procedure in the matrix element code. By default, we use the C name for this.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_use_line => prc_writer_write_use_line

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_writer_write_use_line (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t) :: id, feature
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use ", char (writer%get_module_name (id)), &
      ", only: ", char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
      " => ", char (writer%get_procname (feature))
  end subroutine prc_writer_write_use_line

```

Write a wrapper routine for a feature. This also associates a C name the module procedure. The details depend on the writer variant.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_write_wrapper), deferred :: write_wrapper

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_write_wrapper (writer, unit, id, feature)
      import
      class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
      integer, intent(in) :: unit
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    end subroutine prc_write_wrapper
  end interface

```

This is used for testing only: initialize the writer with a specific MD5 sum string.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_test => prc_writer_init_test

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_writer_init_test (writer)
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(out) :: writer
    writer%md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"
  end subroutine prc_writer_init_test

```

## Writer for C-library matrix elements

This applies if the matrix element is available as a C library or a Fortran library with `bind(C)` compatible interface. We can use the basic version.

The type is still abstract, all methods must be implemented explicitly for a specific matrix-element variant.

```

<Prclib interfaces: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_writer_t), abstract :: prc_writer_c_lib_t
  contains
    <Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>
  end type prc_writer_c_lib_t

```

### 14.1.5 Process records in the library driver

A process record holds the process (component) ID, the physics `model_name`, and the array of `features` that are implemented by the corresponding matrix element code.

The `writer` component holds procedures. The procedures write source code for the current record, either for the driver or for the Makefile.

```

<Prclib interfaces: types>+≡
  type :: prclib_driver_record_t
    type(string_t) :: id
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: feature
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: writer => null ()
  contains
    <Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>
  end type prclib_driver_record_t

```

Output routine. We indent the output, so it smoothly integrates into the output routine for the whole driver.

Note: the pointer `writer` is introduced as a workaround for a NAG compiler bug.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => prclib_driver_record_write

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_record_write (object, unit)
    class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    integer :: j
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: writer
    write (unit, "(3x,A,2x,['',A,']')") &
      char (object%id), char (object%model_name)
    if (allocated (object%feature)) then
      writer => object%writer
      write (unit, "(5x,A,A)", advance="no") &
        char (writer%type_name ()), ":"
      do j = 1, size (object%feature)
        write (unit, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
          char (object%feature(j))
      end do
      write (unit, *)
    end if
  end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write

```

Get the C procedure name for a feature.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_c_procname => prclib_driver_record_get_c_procname

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  function prclib_driver_record_get_c_procname (record, feature) result (name)
    type(string_t) :: name
    class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature

```

```

        name = record%writer%get_c_procname (record%id, feature)
    end function prclib_driver_record_get_c_procname

```

Write a USE directive for a given feature. Applies only if the record corresponds to a Fortran module.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_use_line => prclib_driver_record_write_use_line
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_use_line (record, unit, feature)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
        select type (writer => record%writer)
            class is (prc_writer_f_module_t)
                call writer%write_use_line (unit, record%id, feature)
            end select
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_use_line

```

The alternative: write an interface block for a given feature, unless the record corresponds to a Fortran module.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_interface => prclib_driver_record_write_interface
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_interface (record, unit, feature)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
        select type (writer => record%writer)
            class is (prc_writer_f_module_t)
                class default
                    call writer%write_interface (unit, record%id, feature)
                end select
        end select
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_interface

```

Write all special feature interfaces for the current record. Do this for all process variants.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_interfaces => prclib_driver_record_write_interfaces
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_interfaces (record, unit)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (record%feature)
            call record%writer%write_interface (unit, record%id, record%feature(i))
        end do
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_interfaces

```

Write the wrapper routines for this record, if it corresponds to a Fortran module.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_wrappers => prclib_driver_record_write_wrappers

```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_wrappers (record, unit)
    class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    integer :: i
    select type (writer => record%writer)
    class is (prc_writer_f_module_t)
      do i = 1, size (record%feature)
        call writer%write_wrapper (unit, record%id, record%feature(i))
      end do
    end select
  end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_wrappers

```

Write the Makefile code for this record.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_makefile_code => prclib_driver_record_write_makefile_code

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_makefile_code &
    (record, unit, os_data, testflag)
    class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    call record%writer%write_makefile_code (unit, record%id, os_data, testflag)
  end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_makefile_code

```

Write source-code files for this record. (Does nothing if the source code is handled by Makefile rules.)

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_source_code => prclib_driver_record_write_source_code

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_source_code (record)
    class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
    call record%writer%write_source_code (record%id)
  end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_source_code

```

### 14.1.6 The process library driver object

A `prclib_driver_t` object provides the interface to external matrix element code. The code is provided by an external library which is either statically or dynamically linked.

The dynamic and static versions of the library are two different implementations of the abstract base type.

The `basename` identifies the library, both by file names and by Fortran variable names.

The `loaded` flag becomes true once all procedure pointers to the matrix element have been assigned.

For a dynamical external library, the communication proceeds via a `dlaccess` object.



`n_processes` is the number of external process code components that are referenced by this library. The code is addressed by index (`i_lib` in the process library entry above). This number should be equal to the number returned by `get_n_prc`.

For each external process, there is a separate **record** which holds the data that are needed for the driver parts which are specific for a given process component. The actual pointers for the loaded library will be assigned elsewhere.

The remainder is a collection of procedure pointers, which can be assigned once all external code has been compiled and linked. The procedure pointers all take a process component code index as an argument. Most return information about the process component that should match the process definition. The `get_fptr` procedures return a function pointer, which is the actual means to compute matrix elements or retrieve associated data.

Finally, the `unload_hook` and `reload_hook` pointers allow for the insertion of additional code when a library is loaded.

*(Prclib interfaces: public)+≡*

`public :: prclib_driver_t`

*(Prclib interfaces: types)+≡*

```
type, abstract :: prclib_driver_t
  type(string_t) :: basename
  character(32) :: md5sum = ""
  logical :: loaded = .false.
  type(string_t) :: libname
  type(string_t) :: modellibs_ldflags
  integer :: n_processes = 0
  type(prclib_driver_record_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: record
  procedure(prc_get_n_processes), nopass, pointer :: &
    get_n_processes => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_stringptr), nopass, pointer :: &
    get_process_id_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_stringptr), nopass, pointer :: &
    get_model_name_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_stringptr), nopass, pointer :: &
    get_md5sum_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_log), nopass, pointer :: &
    get_omp_status => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_in => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_out => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_flv => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_hel => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_col => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_cin => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_int), nopass, pointer :: get_n_cf => null ()
  procedure(prc_set_int_tab1), nopass, pointer :: &
    set_flv_state_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_set_int_tab1), nopass, pointer :: &
    set_hel_state_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_set_col_state), nopass, pointer :: &
    set_col_state_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_set_color_factors), nopass, pointer :: &
    set_color_factors_ptr => null ()
  procedure(prc_get_fptr), nopass, pointer :: get_fptr => null ()
```

```

contains
  <Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>
end type prclib_driver_t

```

This is the dynamic version. It contains a `dlaccess` object for communicating with the OS.

```

<Prclib interfaces: types>+≡
  type, extends (prclib_driver_t) :: prclib_driver_dynamic_t
    type(dlaccess_t) :: dlaccess
    contains
      <Prclib interfaces: prclib driver dynamic: TBP>
    end type prclib_driver_dynamic_t

```

Print just the metadata. Procedure pointers cannot be printed.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => prclib_driver_write

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_write (object, unit, libpath)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: libpath
    logical :: write_lib
    integer :: i
    write_lib = .true.
    if (present (libpath)) write_lib = libpath
    write (unit, "(1x,A,A)") &
      "External matrix-element code library: ", char (object%basename)
    select type (object)
    type is (prclib_driver_dynamic_t)
      write (unit, "(3x,A,L1)") "static      = F"
    class default
      write (unit, "(3x,A,L1)") "static      = T"
    end select
    write (unit, "(3x,A,L1)") "loaded      = ", object%loaded
    write (unit, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum    = '", object%md5sum, "'"
    if (write_lib) then
      write (unit, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Mdl flags = '", &
        char (object%modellibs_ldflags), "'"
    end if
    select type (object)
    type is (prclib_driver_dynamic_t)
      write (unit, *)
      call object%dlaccess%write (unit)
    end select
    write (unit, *)
    if (allocated (object%record)) then
      write (unit, "(1x,A)") "Matrix-element code entries:"
      do i = 1, object%n_processes
        call object%record(i)%write (unit)
      end do
    else
      write (unit, "(1x,A)") "Matrix-element code entries: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine prclib_driver_write

```

Allocate a library as either static or dynamic. For static libraries, the procedure defers control to an external procedure which knows about the available static libraries. By default, this procedure is empty, but when we build a stand-alone executable, we replace the dummy by an actual dispatcher for the available static libraries. If the static dispatcher was not successful, we allocate a dynamic library.

The default version of `dispatch_prclib_static` resides in the `prebuilt` section of the `WHIZARD` tree, in a separate library. It does nothing, but can be replaced by a different procedure that allocates a static library driver if requested by name.

Note: `intent(out)` for the `driver` argument segfaults with gfortran 4.7.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_prclib_driver

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_prclib_driver &
        (driver, basename, modellibs_ldflags)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: driver
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: modellibs_ldflags
        procedure(dispatch_prclib_driver) :: dispatch_prclib_static
        if (allocated (driver)) deallocate (driver)
        call dispatch_prclib_static (driver, basename)
        if (.not. allocated (driver)) then
            allocate (prclib_driver_dynamic_t :: driver)
        end if
        driver%basename = basename
        driver%modellibs_ldflags = modellibs_ldflags
    end subroutine dispatch_prclib_driver

```

Initialize the ID array and set `n_processes` accordingly.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => prclib_driver_init

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_init (driver, n_processes)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: n_processes
        driver%n_processes = n_processes
        allocate (driver%record (n_processes))
    end subroutine prclib_driver_init

```

Set the MD5 sum. This is separate because the MD5 sum may be known only after initialization.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_md5sum => prclib_driver_set_md5sum

```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_set_md5sum (driver, md5sum)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
    character(32), intent(in) :: md5sum
    driver%md5sum = md5sum
  end subroutine prclib_driver_set_md5sum

```

Set the process record for a specific library entry. If the index is zero, we do nothing.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_record => prclib_driver_set_record

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_set_record (driver, i, &
    id, model_name, features, writer)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: features
    class(prc_writer_t), intent(in), pointer :: writer
    if (i > 0) then
      associate (record => driver%record(i))
        record%id = id
        record%model_name = model_name
        allocate (record%feature (size (features)))
        record%feature = features
        record%writer => writer
      end associate
    end if
  end subroutine prclib_driver_set_record

```

Write all USE directives for a given feature, scanning the array of processes. Only Fortran-module processes count. Then, write interface blocks for the remaining processes.

The implicit none statement must go in-between.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_interfaces => prclib_driver_write_interfaces

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_write_interfaces (driver, unit, feature)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      call driver%record(i)%write_use_line (unit, feature)
    end do
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "implicit none"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      call driver%record(i)%write_interface (unit, feature)
    end do
  end subroutine prclib_driver_write_interfaces

```

### 14.1.7 Write makefile

The makefile contains constant parts, parts that depend on the library name, and parts that depend on the specific processes and their types.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_makefile => prclib_driver_generate_makefile

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_generate_makefile (driver, unit, os_data, testflag)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        integer :: i
        write (unit, "(A)") "# WHIZARD: Makefile for process library '" &
            // char (driver%basename) // "'"
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Automatically generated file, do not edit"
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Integrity check (don't modify the following line!)"
        write (unit, "(A)") "MD5SUM = '" // driver%md5sum // "'"
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Library name"
        write (unit, "(A)") "BASE = " // char (driver%basename)
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Compiler"
        write (unit, "(A)") "FC = " // char (os_data%fc)
        write (unit, "(A)") "CC = " // char (os_data%cc)
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Included libraries"
        write (unit, "(A)") "FCINCL = " // char (os_data%whizard_includes)
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Compiler flags"
        write (unit, "(A)") "FCFLAGS = " // char (os_data%fcflags)
        write (unit, "(A)") "FCFLAGS_PIC = " // char (os_data%fcflags_pic)
        write (unit, "(A)") "CFLAGS = " // char (os_data%cflags)
        write (unit, "(A)") "CFLAGS_PIC = " // char (os_data%cflags_pic)
        write (unit, "(A)") "LDFLAGS = " // char (os_data%whizard_ldflags) &
            // " " // char (os_data%ldflags) // " " // &
            char (driver%modellibs_ldflags)
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# LaTeX setup"
        write (unit, "(A)") "LATEX = " // char (os_data%latex)
        write (unit, "(A)") "MPOST = " // char (os_data%mpost)
        write (unit, "(A)") "DVIPS = " // char (os_data%dvips)
        write (unit, "(A)") "PS2PDF = " // char (os_data%ps2pdf)
        write (unit, "(A)") 'TEX_FLAGS = "$$TEXINPUTS:' // &
            char(os_data%whizard_texpath) // ', "'
        write (unit, "(A)") 'MP_FLAGS = "$$MPINPUTS:' // &
            char(os_data%whizard_texpath) // ', "'
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "# Libtool"
        write (unit, "(A)") "LIBTOOL = " // char (os_data%whizard_libtool)
        write (unit, "(A)") "FCOMPILE = $(LIBTOOL) --tag=FC --mode=compile"
        write (unit, "(A)") "CCOMPILE = $(LIBTOOL) --tag=CC --mode=compile"
        write (unit, "(A)") "LINK = $(LIBTOOL) --tag=FC --mode=link"
```

```

write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Compile commands (default)"
write (unit, "(A)") "LTF_COMPILE = $(FC_COMPILE) $(FC) -c &
    &$(FC_INCL) $(FC_FLAGS) $(FC_FLAGS_PIC)"
write (unit, "(A)") "LTCC_COMPILE = $(CC_COMPILE) $(CC) -c &
    &$(C_FLAGS) $(C_FLAGS_PIC)"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Default target"
write (unit, "(A)") "all: link diags"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Matrix-element code files"
do i = 1, size (driver%record)
    call driver%record(i)%write_makefile_code (unit, os_data, testflag)
end do
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Library driver"
write (unit, "(A)") "$(BASE).lo: $(BASE).f90 $(OBJECTS)"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "$(LTF_COMPILE) $<"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Library"
write (unit, "(A)") "$(BASE).la: $(BASE).lo $(OBJECTS)"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "$(LINK) $(FC) -module -rpath /dev/null &
    &$(FC_FLAGS) $(LD_FLAGS) -o $(BASE).la $^"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Main targets"
write (unit, "(A)") "link: compile $(BASE).la"
write (unit, "(A)") "compile: source $(OBJECTS) $(TEX_OBJECTS) $(BASE).lo"
write (unit, "(A)") "compile_tex: $(TEX_OBJECTS)"
write (unit, "(A)") "source: $(SOURCES) $(BASE).f90 $(TEX_SOURCES)"
write (unit, "(A)") ".PHONY: link diags compile compile_tex source"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Specific cleanup targets"
do i = 1, size (driver%record)
    write (unit, "(A)") "clean-" // char (driver%record(i)%id) // ":"
    write (unit, "(A)") ".PHONY: clean-" // char (driver%record(i)%id)
end do
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "# Generic cleanup targets"
write (unit, "(A)") "clean-library:"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(BASE).la"
write (unit, "(A)") "clean-objects:"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(BASE).lo $(BASE)_driver.mod &
    &$(CLEAN_OBJECTS)"
write (unit, "(A)") "clean-source:"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(CLEAN_SOURCES)"
write (unit, "(A)") "clean-driver:"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(BASE).f90"
write (unit, "(A)") "clean-makefile:"
write (unit, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(BASE).makefile"
write (unit, "(A)") ".PHONY: clean-library clean-objects &
    &clean-source clean-driver clean-makefile"
write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "clean: clean-library clean-objects clean-source"
write (unit, "(A)") "distclean: clean clean-driver clean-makefile"

```

```

        write (unit, "(A)") ".PHONY: clean distclean"
    end subroutine prclib_driver_generate_makefile

```

### 14.1.8 Write driver file

This procedure writes the process library driver source code to the specified output unit. The individual routines for writing source-code procedures are given below.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_driver_code => prclib_driver_generate_code

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_generate_code (driver, unit)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t) :: prefix
        integer :: i

        prefix = driver%basename // "_"

        write (unit, "(A)") "! WHIZARD matrix-element code interface"
        write (unit, "(A)") "!"
        write (unit, "(A)") "! Automatically generated file, do not edit"
        call driver%write_module (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_lib_md5sum_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_n_processes_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_process_id_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_model_name_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_md5sum_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_string_to_array_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_omp_status_fun (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_in"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_out"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_flv"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_hel"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_col"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_cin"))
        call driver%write_get_int_fun (unit, prefix, var_str ("n_cf"))
        call driver%write_set_int_sub (unit, prefix, var_str ("flv_state"))
        call driver%write_set_int_sub (unit, prefix, var_str ("hel_state"))
        call driver%write_set_col_state_sub (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_set_color_factors_sub (unit, prefix)
        call driver%write_get_fptr_sub (unit, prefix)
        do i = 1, driver%n_processes
            call driver%record(i)%write_wrappers (unit)
        end do
    end subroutine prclib_driver_generate_code

```

The driver module is used and required *only* if we intend to link the library statically. Then, it provides the (static) driver type as a concrete implementation of the abstract library driver. This type contains the internal dispatcher for assigning the library procedures to their appropriate procedure pointers. In

the dynamical case, the assignment is done via the base-type dispatcher which invokes the DL mechanism.

However, compiling this together with the rest in any case should not do any harm.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: write_module => prclib_driver_write_module

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_write_module (unit, prefix)
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "! Module: define library driver as an extension &
      &of the abstract driver type."
    write (unit, "(A)") "! This is used _only_ by the library dispatcher &
      &of a static executable."
    write (unit, "(A)") "! For a dynamical library, the stand-alone proce&
      &dures are linked via libdl."
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "module " &
      // char (prefix) // "driver"
    write (unit, "(A)") "  use iso_c_binding"
    write (unit, "(A)") "  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string"
    write (unit, "(A)") "  use diagnostics"
    write (unit, "(A)") "  use prclib_interfaces"
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "  implicit none"
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "  type, extends (prclib_driver_t) :: " &
      // char (prefix) // "driver_t"
    write (unit, "(A)") "    contains"
    write (unit, "(A)") "      procedure :: get_c_funptr => " &
      // char (prefix) // "driver_get_c_funptr"
    write (unit, "(A)") "  end type " &
      // char (prefix) // "driver_t"
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "  contains"
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "  function " &
      // char (prefix) // "driver_get_c_funptr (driver, feature) result &
      &(c_fptr)"
    write (unit, "(A)") "    class(" &
      // char (prefix) // "driver_t", intent(inout) :: driver"
    write (unit, "(A)") "      type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature"
    write (unit, "(A)") "      type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr"
    call write_decl ("get_n_processes", "get_n_processes")
    call write_decl ("get_stringptr", "get_process_id_ptr")
    call write_decl ("get_stringptr", "get_model_name_ptr")
    call write_decl ("get_stringptr", "get_md5sum_ptr")
    call write_decl ("get_log", "get_openmp_status")
    call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_in")
    call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_out")
    call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_flv")
    call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_hel")

```



```

call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_col")
call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_cin")
call write_decl ("get_int", "get_n_cf")
call write_decl ("set_int_tab1", "set_flv_state_ptr")
call write_decl ("set_int_tab1", "set_hel_state_ptr")
call write_decl ("set_col_state", "set_col_state_ptr")
call write_decl ("set_color_factors", "set_color_factors_ptr")
call write_decl ("get_fptr", "get_fptr")
write (unit, "(A)" "    select case (char (feature))")
call write_case ("get_n_processes")
call write_case ("get_process_id_ptr")
call write_case ("get_model_name_ptr")
call write_case ("get_md5sum_ptr")
call write_case ("get_openmp_status")
call write_case ("get_n_in")
call write_case ("get_n_out")
call write_case ("get_n_flv")
call write_case ("get_n_hel")
call write_case ("get_n_col")
call write_case ("get_n_cin")
call write_case ("get_n_cf")
call write_case ("set_flv_state_ptr")
call write_case ("set_hel_state_ptr")
call write_case ("set_col_state_ptr")
call write_case ("set_color_factors_ptr")
call write_case ("get_fptr")
write (unit, "(A)" "    case default")
write (unit, "(A)" "        call msg_bug ('prclib2 driver setup: unknown &
&function name')")
write (unit, "(A)" "    end select")
write (unit, "(A)" "    end function " &
    // char (prefix) // "driver_get_c_funptr")
write (unit, "(A)" "")
write (unit, "(A)" "end module " &
    // char (prefix) // "driver")
write (unit, "(A)" "")
write (unit, "(A)" "!! Stand-alone external procedures: used for both &
&static and dynamic linkage")
contains
subroutine write_decl (template, feature)
    character(*), intent(in) :: template, feature
    write (unit, "(A)" "    procedure(prc_" // template // ") &"
    write (unit, "(A)" "        :: " &
    // char (prefix) // feature
end subroutine write_decl
subroutine write_case (feature)
    character(*), intent(in) :: feature
    write (unit, "(A)" "    case ('" // feature // "')")
    write (unit, "(A)" "        c_fptr = c_funloc (" &
    // char (prefix) // feature // ")")
end subroutine write_case
end subroutine prclib_driver_write_module

```

This function provides the overall library MD5sum. The function is for internal

use (therefore not `bind(C)`), the external interface is via the `get_md5sum_ptr` procedure with index 0.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_lib_md5sum_fun => prclib_driver_write_lib_md5sum_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_write_lib_md5sum_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "! The MD5 sum of the library"
        write (unit, "(A)") "function " // char (prefix) &
            // "md5sum () result (md5sum)"
        write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
        write (unit, "(A)") " character(32) :: md5sum"
        write (unit, "(A)") " md5sum = ' " // driver%md5sum // "' "
        write (unit, "(A)") "end function " // char (prefix) // "md5sum"
    end subroutine prclib_driver_write_lib_md5sum_fun

```

### 14.1.9 Interface bodies for informational functions

These interfaces implement the communication between WHIZARD (the main program) and the process-library driver. The procedures are all `BIND(C)`, so they can safely be exposed by the library and handled by the `dlopen` mechanism, which apparently understands only C calling conventions.

In the sections below, for each procedure, we provide both the interface itself and a procedure that writes the corresponding procedure as source code to the process library driver.

#### Process count

Return the number of processes contained in the library.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: prc_get_n_processes

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        function prc_get_n_processes () result (n) bind(C)
            import
            integer(c_int) :: n
        end function prc_get_n_processes
    end interface

```

Here is the code.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_get_n_processes_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_get_n_processes_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix

```

```

write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "! Return the number of processes in this library"
write (unit, "(A)") "function " // char (prefix) &
    // "get_n_processes () result (n) bind(C)"
write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (unit, "(A,I0)") " n = ", driver%n_processes
write (unit, "(A)") "end function " // char (prefix) &
    // "get_n_processes"
end subroutine write_get_n_processes_fun

```

## Informational string functions

These functions return constant information about the matrix-element code.

The following procedures have to return strings. With the BIND(C) constraint, we choose to return the C pointer to a string, and its length, so the procedures implement this interface. They are actually subroutines.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
public :: prc_get_stringptr

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
abstract interface
  subroutine prc_get_stringptr (i, cptr, len) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i
    type(c_ptr), intent(out) :: cptr
    integer(c_int), intent(out) :: len
  end subroutine prc_get_stringptr
end interface

```

To hide this complication, we introduce a subroutine that converts the returned C pointer to a `string_t` object. As a side effect, we deallocate the original after conversion – otherwise, we might have a memory leak.

For the conversion, we first pointer-convert the C pointer to a Fortran character array pointer, length 1 and size `len`. Using argument association and an internal subroutine, we convert this to a character array with length `len` and size 1. Using ordinary assignment, we finally convert this to `string_t`.

The function takes the pointer-returning function as an argument. The index `i` identifies the process in the library.

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
subroutine get_string_via_cptr (string, i, get_stringptr)
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: string
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  procedure(prc_get_stringptr) :: get_stringptr
  type(c_ptr) :: cptr
  integer(c_int) :: pid, len
  character(kind=c_char), dimension(:), pointer :: c_array
  pid = i
  call get_stringptr (pid, cptr, len)
  if (c_associated (cptr)) then
    call c_f_pointer (cptr, c_array, shape = [len])
  end if
end subroutine

```

```

        call set_string (c_array)
        call get_stringptr (0_c_int, cptr, len)
    else
        string = ""
    end if
contains
    subroutine set_string (buffer)
        character(len, kind=c_char), dimension(1), intent(in) :: buffer
        string = buffer(1)
    end subroutine set_string
end subroutine get_string_via_cptr

```

Since the module procedures return Fortran strings, we have to convert them. This is the necessary auxiliary routine. The routine is not BIND(C), it is not accessed from outside.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: write_string_to_array_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_string_to_array_fun (unit, prefix)
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(A)") "! Auxiliary: convert character string &
            &to array pointer"
        write (unit, "(A)") "subroutine " // char (prefix) &
            // "string_to_array (string, a)"
        write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
        write (unit, "(A)") " character(*), intent(in) :: string"
        write (unit, "(A)") " character(kind=c_char), dimension(:), &
            &allocatable, intent(out) :: a"
        write (unit, "(A)") " integer :: i"
        write (unit, "(A)") " allocate (a (len (string)))"
        write (unit, "(A)") " do i = 1, size (a)"
        write (unit, "(A)") "     a(i) = string(i:i)"
        write (unit, "(A)") " end do"
        write (unit, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
            // "string_to_array"
    end subroutine write_string_to_array_fun

```

The above routine is called by other functions. It is not in a module, so they need its interface explicitly.

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_string_to_array_interface (unit, prefix)
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
        write (unit, "(2x,A)") "interface"
        write (unit, "(2x,A)") " subroutine " // char (prefix) &
            // "string_to_array (string, a)"
        write (unit, "(2x,A)") " use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(2x,A)") " implicit none"
        write (unit, "(2x,A)") " character(*), intent(in) :: string"
    end subroutine write_string_to_array_interface

```

```

write (unit, "(2x,A)") "      character(kind=c_char), dimension(:), &
&allocatable, intent(out) :: a"
write (unit, "(2x,A)") "      end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
// "string_to_array"
write (unit, "(2x,A)") "end interface"
end subroutine write_string_to_array_interface

```

Here are the info functions which return strings, implementing the interface `prc_get_stringptr`.

Return the process ID for each process.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_get_process_id_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine write_get_process_id_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    integer :: i
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "! Return the process ID of process #i &
      &(as a C pointer to a character array)"
    write (unit, "(A)") "subroutine " // char (prefix) &
      // "get_process_id_ptr (i, cptr, len) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
    write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
    write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i"
    write (unit, "(A)") " type(c_ptr), intent(out) :: cptr"
    write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(out) :: len"
    write (unit, "(A)") " character(kind=c_char), dimension(:), &
      &allocatable, target, save :: a"
    call write_string_to_array_interface (unit, prefix)
    write (unit, "(A)") " select case (i)"
    write (unit, "(A)") " case (0); if (allocated (a)) deallocate (a)"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      write (unit, "(A,I0,9A)") " case (" , i, ")"; " , &
        "call " , char (prefix), "string_to_array ('", &
        char (driver%record(i)%id), "'", a)"
    end do
    write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
    write (unit, "(A)") " if (allocated (a)) then"
    write (unit, "(A)") "   cptr = c_loc (a)"
    write (unit, "(A)") "   len = size (a)"
    write (unit, "(A)") " else"
    write (unit, "(A)") "   cptr = c_null_ptr"
    write (unit, "(A)") "   len = 0"
    write (unit, "(A)") " end if"
    write (unit, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
      // "get_process_id_ptr"
  end subroutine write_get_process_id_fun

```

Return the model name, given explicitly.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_get_model_name_fun

```

*<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine write_get_model_name_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
  integer :: i
  write (unit, "(A)") ""
  write (unit, "(A)") "! Return the model name for process #i &
    &(as a C pointer to a character array)"
  write (unit, "(A)") "subroutine " // char (prefix) &
    // "get_model_name_ptr (i, cptr, len) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
  write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
  write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i"
  write (unit, "(A)") " type(c_ptr), intent(out) :: cptr"
  write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(out) :: len"
  write (unit, "(A)") " character(kind=c_char), dimension(:), &
    &allocatable, target, save :: a"
  call write_string_to_array_interface (unit, prefix)
  write (unit, "(A)") " select case (i)"
  write (unit, "(A)") " case (0); if (allocated (a)) deallocate (a)"
  do i = 1, driver%n_processes
    write (unit, "(A,I0,9A)") " case (" , i, ")"; " , &
      "call " , char (prefix), "string_to_array ('" , &
      char (driver%record(i)%model_name), &
      "' , a)"
  end do
  write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
  write (unit, "(A)") " if (allocated (a)) then"
  write (unit, "(A)") "   cptr = c_loc (a)"
  write (unit, "(A)") "   len = size (a)"
  write (unit, "(A)") " else"
  write (unit, "(A)") "   cptr = c_null_ptr"
  write (unit, "(A)") "   len = 0"
  write (unit, "(A)") " end if"
  write (unit, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
    // "get_model_name_ptr"
end subroutine write_get_model_name_fun

```

Call the MD5 sum function for the process. The function calls the corresponding function of the matrix-element code, and it returns the C address of a character array with length 32.

*<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡*

procedure :: write\_get\_md5sum\_fun

*<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine write_get_md5sum_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
  integer :: i
  write (unit, "(A)") ""
  write (unit, "(A)") "! Return the MD5 sum for the process configuration &
    &(as a C pointer to a character array)"

```

```

write (unit, "(A)") "subroutine " // char (prefix) &
// "get_md5sum_ptr (i, cptr, len) bind(C)"
write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
call driver%write_interfaces (unit, var_str ("md5sum"))
write (unit, "(A)") " interface"
write (unit, "(A)") " function " // char (prefix) &
// "md5sum () result (md5sum)"
write (unit, "(A)") " character(32) :: md5sum"
write (unit, "(A)") " end function " // char (prefix) // "md5sum"
write (unit, "(A)") " end interface"
write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i"
write (unit, "(A)") " type(c_ptr), intent(out) :: cptr"
write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(out) :: len"
write (unit, "(A)") " character(kind=c_char), dimension(32), &
&target, save :: md5sum"
write (unit, "(A)") " select case (i)"
write (unit, "(A)") " case (0)"
write (unit, "(A)") " call copy (" // char (prefix) // "md5sum ())"
write (unit, "(A)") " cptr = c_loc (md5sum)"
do i = 1, driver%n_processes
write (unit, "(A,I0,A)") " case (" , i, ")"
call driver%record(i)%write_md5sum_call (unit)
end do
write (unit, "(A)") " case default"
write (unit, "(A)") " cptr = c_null_ptr"
write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
write (unit, "(A)") " len = 32"
write (unit, "(A)") "contains"
write (unit, "(A)") " subroutine copy (md5sum_tmp)"
write (unit, "(A)") " character, dimension(32), intent(in) :: &
&md5sum_tmp"
write (unit, "(A)") " md5sum = md5sum_tmp"
write (unit, "(A)") " end subroutine copy"
write (unit, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
// "get_md5sum_ptr"
end subroutine write_get_md5sum_fun

```

The actual call depends on the type of matrix element.

*<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: write_md5sum_call => prclib_driver_record_write_md5sum_call
```

*<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_md5sum_call (record, unit)
class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
integer, intent(in) :: unit
call record%writer%write_md5sum_call (unit, record%id)
end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_md5sum_call

```

The interface goes into the writer base type:

*<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure(write_code), deferred :: write_md5sum_call
```

In the Fortran module case, we take a detour. The string returned by the Fortran function is copied into a fixed-size array. The copy routine is an internal

subroutine of `get_md5sum_ptr`. We return the C address of the target array.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_md5sum_call => prc_writer_f_module_write_md5sum_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_md5sum_call (writer, unit, id)
    class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "call copy (" , &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("md5sum"))), " ()"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "cptr = c_loc (md5sum)"
  end subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_md5sum_call

```

In the C library case, the library function returns a C pointer, which we can just copy.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write_md5sum_call => prc_writer_c_lib_write_md5sum_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_md5sum_call (writer, unit, id)
    class(prc_writer_c_lib_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") &
      "cptr = ", &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("get_md5sum"))), " ()"
  end subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_md5sum_call

```

## Actual references to the info functions

The string-valued info functions return C character arrays. For the API of the library driver, we provide convenience functions which (re)convert those arrays into `string_t` objects.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_process_id => prclib_driver_get_process_id
  procedure :: get_model_name => prclib_driver_get_model_name
  procedure :: get_md5sum => prclib_driver_get_md5sum

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  function prclib_driver_get_process_id (driver, i) result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    call get_string_via_cptr (string, i, driver%get_process_id_ptr)
  end function prclib_driver_get_process_id

  function prclib_driver_get_model_name (driver, i) result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    call get_string_via_cptr (string, i, driver%get_model_name_ptr)
  end function prclib_driver_get_model_name

```



```

function prclib_driver_get_md5sum (driver, i) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  call get_string_via_cptra (string, i, driver%get_md5sum_ptr)
end function prclib_driver_get_md5sum

```

## Informational logical functions

When returning a logical value, we use the C boolean type, which may differ from Fortran.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
  public :: prc_get_log

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_get_log (pid) result (l) bind(C)
      import
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
      logical(c_bool) :: l
    end function prc_get_log
  end interface

```

Return a logical flag which tells whether OpenMP is supported for a specific process code.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_get_openmp_status_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine write_get_openmp_status_fun (driver, unit, prefix)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    integer :: i
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "! Return the OpenMP support status"
    write (unit, "(A)") "function " // char (prefix) &
      // "get_openmp_status (i) result (openmp_status) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
    call driver%write_interfaces (unit, var_str ("openmp_supported"))
    write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: i"
    write (unit, "(A)") " logical(c_bool) :: openmp_status"
    write (unit, "(A)") " select case (i)"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      write (unit, "(A,I0,9A)") " case (" , i, "); ", &
        "openmp_status = ", &
        char (driver%record(i)%get_c_procname &
          (var_str ("openmp_supported"))), " ()"
    end do
    write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
    write (unit, "(A)") "end function " // char (prefix) &
      // "get_openmp_status"
  end subroutine write_get_openmp_status_fun

```

## Informational integer functions

Various process metadata are integer values. We can use a single interface for all of them.

```
<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: prc_get_int

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        function prc_get_int (pid) result (n) bind(C)
        import
            integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
            integer(c_int) :: n
        end function prc_get_int
    end interface
```

This function returns any data of type integer, for each process.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_get_int_fun

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_get_int_fun (driver, unit, prefix, feature)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
        integer :: i
        write (unit, "(A)") ""
        write (unit, "(9A)") "! Return the value of ", char (feature)
        write (unit, "(9A)") "function ", char (prefix), &
            "get_", char (feature), " (pid)", &
            " result (" , char (feature), ") bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(9A)") " use iso_c_binding"
        call driver%write_interfaces (unit, feature)
        write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid"
        write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int) :: ", char (feature)
        write (unit, "(9A)") " select case (pid)"
        do i = 1, driver%n_processes
            write (unit, "(2x,A,I0,9A)") "case (" , i, "); ", &
                char (feature), " = ", &
                char (driver%record(i)%get_c_procname (feature)), &
                " ()"
        end do
        write (unit, "(9A)") " end select"
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end function ", char (prefix), &
            "get_", char (feature)
    end subroutine write_get_int_fun
```

Write a case line that assigns the value of the external function to the current return value.

```
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_case_int_fun (record, unit, i, feature)
```

```

class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
integer, intent(in) :: unit
integer, intent(in) :: i
type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
write (unit, "(5x,A,I0,9A)") "case (" , i, ")"; " , &
      char (feature), " = " , char (record%get_c_procname (feature))
end subroutine write_case_int_fun

```

## Flavor and helicity tables

Transferring tables is more complicated. First, a two-dimensional array.

*<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡*

```
public :: prc_set_int_tab1
```

*<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡*

```

abstract interface
  subroutine prc_set_int_tab1 (pid, tab, shape) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
    integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: tab
    integer(c_int), dimension(2), intent(in) :: shape
  end subroutine prc_set_int_tab1
end interface

```

This subroutine returns a table of integers.

*<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: write_set_int_sub
```

*<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine write_set_int_sub (driver, unit, prefix, feature)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
  integer :: i
  write (unit, "(A)") ""
  write (unit, "(9A)") "! Set table: " , char (feature)
  write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine " , char (prefix), &
    "set_" , char (feature), "_ptr (pid, " , char (feature), &
    " , shape) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(9A)") " use iso_c_binding"
  call driver%write_interfaces (unit, feature)
  write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid"
  write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: " , &
    char (feature)
  write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(2), intent(in) :: shape"
  write (unit, "(9A)") " integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: " , &
    char (feature), "_tmp"
  write (unit, "(9A)") " integer :: i, j"
  write (unit, "(9A)") " select case (pid)"
  do i = 1, driver%n_processes
    write (unit, "(2x,A,I0,A)") "case (" , i, ")"
    call driver%record(i)%write_int_sub_call (unit, feature)
  end do

```

```

        write (unit, "(9A)") " end select"
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (prefix), &
            "set_", char (feature), "_ptr"
    end subroutine write_set_int_sub

```

The actual call depends on the type of matrix element.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_int_sub_call => prclib_driver_record_write_int_sub_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_int_sub_call (record, unit, feature)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
        call record%writer%write_int_sub_call (unit, record%id, feature)
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_int_sub_call

```

The interface goes into the writer base type:

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure(write_feature_code), deferred :: write_int_sub_call

```

In the Fortran module case, we need an extra copy in the (academical) situation where default integer and `c_int` differ. Otherwise, we just associate a Fortran array with the C pointer and let the matrix-element subroutine fill the array.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_int_sub_call => prc_writer_f_module_write_int_sub_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_int_sub_call (writer, unit, id, feature)
        class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "allocate (", char (feature), "_tmp ", &
            "(shape(1), shape(2)))"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "call ", &
            char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
            " (", char (feature), "_tmp)"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "forall (i=1:shape(1), j=1:shape(2)) "
        write (unit, "(8x,9A)") char (feature), "(i + shape(1)*(j-1)) = ", &
            char (feature), "_tmp", "(i,j)"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end forall"
    end subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_int_sub_call

```

In the C library case, we just transfer the C pointer to the library function.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_int_sub_call => prc_writer_c_lib_write_int_sub_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_int_sub_call (writer, unit, id, feature)
        class(prc_writer_c_lib_t), intent(in) :: writer
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "call ", &
            char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), " (", char (feature), ")"

```

```
end subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_int_sub_call
```

## Color state table

The color-state specification needs a table of integers (one array per color flow) and a corresponding array of color-ghost flags.

```
<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
  public :: prc_set_col_state

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_set_col_state (pid, col_state, ghost_flag, shape) bind(C)
      import
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
      integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: col_state
      logical(c_bool), dimension(*), intent(out) :: ghost_flag
      integer(c_int), dimension(3), intent(in) :: shape
    end subroutine prc_set_col_state
  end interface

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_set_col_state_sub

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine write_set_col_state_sub (driver, unit, prefix)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    integer :: i
    type(string_t) :: feature
    feature = "col_state"
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(9A)") "! Set tables: col_state, ghost_flag"
    write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (prefix), &
      "set_col_state_ptr (pid, col_state, ghost_flag, shape) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(9A)") " use iso_c_binding"
    call driver%write_interfaces (unit, feature)
    write (unit, "(9A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid"
    write (unit, "(9A)") &
      " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: col_state"
    write (unit, "(9A)") &
      " logical(c_bool), dimension(*), intent(out) :: ghost_flag"
    write (unit, "(9A)") &
      " integer(c_int), dimension(3), intent(in) :: shape"
    write (unit, "(9A)") &
      " integer, dimension(:, :, :), allocatable :: col_state_tmp"
    write (unit, "(9A)") &
      " logical, dimension(:, :, :), allocatable :: ghost_flag_tmp"
    write (unit, "(9A)") " integer :: i, j, k"
    write (unit, "(A)") " select case (pid)"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      write (unit, "(A,I0,A)") " case (" , i, ")"
      call driver%record(i)%write_col_state_call (unit)
    end do
```

```

        write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (prefix), &
            "set_col_state_ptr"
    end subroutine write_set_col_state_sub

```

The actual call depends on the type of matrix element.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_col_state_call => prclib_driver_record_write_col_state_call

```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_col_state_call (record, unit)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        call record%writer%write_col_state_call (unit, record%id)
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_col_state_call

```

The interface goes into the writer base type:

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure(write_code), deferred :: write_col_state_call

```

In the Fortran module case, we need an extra copy in the (academical) situation where default integer and `c_int` differ. Otherwise, we just associate a Fortran array with the C pointer and let the matrix-element subroutine fill the array.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_col_state_call => prc_writer_f_module_write_col_state_call

```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_col_state_call (writer, unit, id)
        class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        write (unit, "(9A)") " allocate (col_state_tmp ", &
            "(shape(1), shape(2), shape(3)))"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "allocate (ghost_flag_tmp ", &
            "(shape(2), shape(3)))"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "call ", &
            char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("col_state"))), &
            " (col_state_tmp, ghost_flag_tmp)"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "forall (i = 1:shape(2), j = 1:shape(3))"
        write (unit, "(8x,9A)") "forall (k = 1:shape(1))"
        write (unit, "(11x,9A)") &
            "col_state(k + shape(1) * (i + shape(2)*(j-1) - 1)) ", &
            "= col_state_tmp(k,i,j)"
        write (unit, "(8x,9A)") "end forall"
        write (unit, "(8x,9A)") &
            "ghost_flag(i + shape(2)*(j-1)) = ghost_flag_tmp(i,j)"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end forall"
    end subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_col_state_call

```

In the C library case, we just transfer the C pointer to the library function.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_col_state_call => prc_writer_c_lib_write_col_state_call

```

```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_col_state_call (writer, unit, id)
  class(prc_writer_c_lib_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "call ", &
    char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("col_state"))), &
    " (col_state, ghost_flag)"
  end subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_col_state_call

```

## Color factors

For the color-factor information, we return two integer arrays and a complex array.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
public :: prc_set_color_factors

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
abstract interface
  subroutine prc_set_color_factors &
    (pid, cf_index1, cf_index2, color_factors, shape) bind(C)
  import
  integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
  integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: cf_index1, cf_index2
  complex(c_default_complex), dimension(*), intent(out) :: color_factors
  integer(c_int), dimension(1), intent(in) :: shape
end subroutine prc_set_color_factors
end interface

```

This subroutine returns the color-flavor factor table.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
procedure :: write_set_color_factors_sub

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
subroutine write_set_color_factors_sub (driver, unit, prefix)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
  integer :: i
  type(string_t) :: feature
  feature = "color_factors"
  write (unit, "(A)" "")
  write (unit, "(A)" "! Set tables: color factors")
  write (unit, "(9A)" "subroutine ", char (prefix), &
    "set_color_factors_ptr (pid, cf_index1, cf_index2, color_factors, ", &
    "shape) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(A)" " use iso_c_binding")
  write (unit, "(A)" " use kinds")
  write (unit, "(A)" " use omega_color")
  call driver%write_interfaces (unit, feature)
  write (unit, "(A)" " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid")
  write (unit, "(A)" " integer(c_int), dimension(1), intent(in) :: shape")
  write (unit, "(A)" " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: &

```

```

        &cf_index1, cf_index2"
write (unit, "(A)") " complex(c_default_complex), dimension(*), &
    &intent(out) :: color_factors"
write (unit, "(A)") " type(omega_color_factor), dimension(:), &
    &allocatable :: cf"
write (unit, "(A)") " select case (pid)"
do i = 1, driver%n_processes
    write (unit, "(2x,A,IO,A)") "case (" , i, ")"
    call driver%record(i)%write_color_factors_call (unit)
end do
write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
write (unit, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (prefix) &
    // "set_color_factors_ptr"
end subroutine write_set_color_factors_sub

```

The actual call depends on the type of matrix element.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver record: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_color_factors_call => prclib_driver_record_write_color_factors_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_color_factors_call (record, unit)
        class(prclib_driver_record_t), intent(in) :: record
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        call record%writer%write_color_factors_call (unit, record%id)
    end subroutine prclib_driver_record_write_color_factors_call

```

The interface goes into the writer base type:

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure(write_code), deferred :: write_color_factors_call

In the Fortran module case, the matrix-element procedure fills an array of
omega_color_factor elements. We distribute this array among two integer
arrays and one complex-valued array, for which we have the C pointers.

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer f module: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_color_factors_call => prc_writer_f_module_write_color_factors_call

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_color_factors_call (writer, unit, id)
        class(prc_writer_f_module_t), intent(in) :: writer
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        write (unit, "(5x,A)") "allocate (cf (shape(1)))"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "call ", &
            char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("color_factors"))), " (cf)"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "cf_index1(1:shape(1)) = cf%i1"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "cf_index2(1:shape(1)) = cf%i2"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "color_factors(1:shape(1)) = cf%factor"
    end subroutine prc_writer_f_module_write_color_factors_call

```

In the C library case, we just transfer the C pointers to the library function.  
There are three arrays.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_color_factors_call => &
        prc_writer_c_lib_write_color_factors_call

```



```

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_color_factors_call (writer, unit, id)
  class(prc_writer_c_lib_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "call ", &
    char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("color_factors"))), &
    " (cf_index1, cf_index2, color_factors)"
  end subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_color_factors_call

```

#### 14.1.10 Interfaces for C-library matrix element

If the matrix element code is not provided as a Fortran module but as a C or bind(C) Fortran library, we need explicit interfaces for the library functions. They are not identical to the Fortran module versions. They transfer pointers directly.

The implementation is part of the `prc_writer_c_lib` type, which serves as base type for all C-library writers. It writes specific interfaces depending on the feature.

We bind this as the method `write_standard_interface` instead of `write_interface`, because we have to override the latter. Otherwise we could not call the method because the writer type is abstract.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prc writer c lib: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_standard_interface => prc_writer_c_lib_write_interface

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_interface (writer, unit, id, feature)
  class(prc_writer_c_lib_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
  select case (char (feature))
  case ("md5sum")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "function ", &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("get_md5sum"))), &
      " () result (cptr) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "type(c_ptr) :: cptr"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end function ", &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, var_str ("get_md5sum")))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"
  case ("openmp_supported")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "function ", &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
      " () result (status) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "logical(c_bool) :: status"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end function ", &
      char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))

```

```

        write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"
case ("n_in", "n_out", "n_flv", "n_hel", "n_col", "n_cin", "n_cf")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "function ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " () result (n) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "integer(c_int) :: n"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end function ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"
case ("flv_state", "hel_state")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " (", char (feature), ") bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) ", &
        ":: ", char (feature)
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"
case ("col_state")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " (col_state, ghost_flag) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) ", &
        ":: col_state"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "logical(c_bool), dimension(*), intent(out) ", &
        ":: ghost_flag"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"
case ("color_factors")
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " (cf_index1, cf_index2, color_factors) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "integer(c_int), dimension(*), &
        &intent(out) :: cf_index1"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "integer(c_int), dimension(*), &
        &intent(out) :: cf_index2"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)" "complex(c_default_complex), dimension(*), &
        &intent(out) :: color_factors"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)" "end subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)" "end interface"

```

```

end select
end subroutine prc_writer_c_lib_write_interface

```

### 14.1.11 Retrieving the tables

In the previous section we had the writer routines for procedures that return tables, actually C pointers to tables. Here, we write convenience routines that unpack them and move the contents to suitable Fortran arrays.

The flavor and helicity tables are two-dimensional integer arrays. We use intermediate storage for correctly transforming C to Fortran data types.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_flv_state => prclib_driver_set_flv_state
  procedure :: set_hel_state => prclib_driver_set_hel_state

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_set_flv_state (driver, i, flv_state)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, dimension(:,,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: flv_state
    integer :: n_tot, n_flv
    integer(c_int) :: pid
    integer(c_int), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: c_flv_state
    pid = i
    n_tot = driver%get_n_in (pid) + driver%get_n_out (pid)
    n_flv = driver%get_n_flv (pid)
    allocate (flv_state (n_tot, n_flv))
    allocate (c_flv_state (n_tot, n_flv))
    call driver%set_flv_state_ptr &
      (pid, c_flv_state, int ([n_tot, n_flv], kind=c_int))
    flv_state = c_flv_state
  end subroutine prclib_driver_set_flv_state

  subroutine prclib_driver_set_hel_state (driver, i, hel_state)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, dimension(:,,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: hel_state
    integer :: n_tot, n_hel
    integer(c_int) :: pid
    integer(c_int), dimension(:,,:), allocatable, target :: c_hel_state
    pid = i
    n_tot = driver%get_n_in (pid) + driver%get_n_out (pid)
    n_hel = driver%get_n_hel (pid)
    allocate (hel_state (n_tot, n_hel))
    allocate (c_hel_state (n_tot, n_hel))
    call driver%set_hel_state_ptr &
      (pid, c_hel_state, int ([n_tot, n_hel], kind=c_int))
    hel_state = c_hel_state
  end subroutine prclib_driver_set_hel_state

```

The color-flow table is three-dimensional, otherwise similar. We simultaneously set the ghost-flag table, which consists of logical entries.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡

```

```

        procedure :: set_col_state => prclib_driver_set_col_state
    (Prclib interfaces: procedures)+≡
        subroutine prclib_driver_set_col_state (driver, i, col_state, ghost_flag)
            class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
            integer, intent(in) :: i
            integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: col_state
            logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: ghost_flag
            integer :: n_cin, n_tot, n_col
            integer(c_int) :: pid
            integer(c_int), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: c_col_state
            logical(c_bool), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: c_ghost_flag
            pid = i
            n_cin = driver%get_n_cin (pid)
            n_tot = driver%get_n_in (pid) + driver%get_n_out (pid)
            n_col = driver%get_n_col (pid)
            allocate (col_state (n_cin, n_tot, n_col))
            allocate (c_col_state (n_cin, n_tot, n_col))
            allocate (ghost_flag (n_tot, n_col))
            allocate (c_ghost_flag (n_tot, n_col))
            call driver%set_col_state_ptr (pid, &
                c_col_state, c_ghost_flag, int ([n_cin, n_tot, n_col], kind=c_int))
            col_state = c_col_state
            ghost_flag = c_ghost_flag
        end subroutine prclib_driver_set_col_state

```

The color-factor table is a sparse matrix: a two-column array of indices and one array which contains the corresponding factors.

```

    (Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP)+≡
        procedure :: set_color_factors => prclib_driver_set_color_factors
    (Prclib interfaces: procedures)+≡
        subroutine prclib_driver_set_color_factors (driver, i, color_factors, cf_index)
            class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
            integer, intent(in) :: i
            complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: color_factors
            integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: cf_index
            integer :: n_cf
            integer(c_int) :: pid
            complex(c_default_complex), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: c_color_factors
            integer(c_int), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: c_cf_index1
            integer(c_int), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: c_cf_index2
            pid = i
            n_cf = driver%get_n_cf (pid)
            allocate (color_factors (n_cf))
            allocate (c_color_factors (n_cf))
            allocate (c_cf_index1 (n_cf))
            allocate (c_cf_index2 (n_cf))
            call driver%set_color_factors_ptr (pid, &
                c_cf_index1, c_cf_index2, &
                c_color_factors, int ([n_cf], kind=c_int))
            color_factors = c_color_factors
            allocate (cf_index (2, n_cf))
            cf_index(1,:) = c_cf_index1
            cf_index(2,:) = c_cf_index2

```

```
end subroutine prclib_driver_set_color_factors
```

### 14.1.12 Returning a procedure pointer

The functions that directly access the matrix element, event by event, are assigned to a process-specific driver object as procedure pointers. For the `dlopen` interface, we use C function pointers. This subroutine returns such a pointer:

```
<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
  public :: prc_get_fptr

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr) bind(C)
      import
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid
      integer(c_int), intent(in) :: fid
      type(c_funptr), intent(out) :: fptr
    end subroutine prc_get_fptr
  end interface
```

This procedure writes the source code for the procedure pointer returning subroutine.

All C functions that are provided by the matrix element code of a specific process are handled here. The selection consists of a double layered `select case` construct.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_get_fptr_sub

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine write_get_fptr_sub (driver, unit, prefix)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    integer :: i, j
    write (unit, "(A)") ""
    write (unit, "(A)") "! Return C pointer to a procedure:"
    write (unit, "(A)") "! pid = process index; fid = function index"
    write (unit, "(4A)") "subroutine ", char(prefix), "get_fptr ", &
      "(pid, fid, fptr) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
    write (unit, "(A)") " use kinds"
    write (unit, "(A)") " implicit none"
    write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: pid"
    write (unit, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(in) :: fid"
    write (unit, "(A)") " type(c_funptr), intent(out) :: fptr"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      call driver%record(i)%write_interfaces (unit)
    end do
    write (unit, "(A)") " select case (pid)"
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      write (unit, "(2x,A,I0,A)") "case (", i, ")"
      write (unit, "(5x,A)") "select case (fid)"
```

```

        associate (record => driver%record(i))
        do j = 1, size (record%feature)
            write (unit, "(5x,A,I0,9A)") "case (" , j, "); ", &
                "fptr = c_funloc (" , &
                char (record%get_c_procname (record%feature(j))), &
                ")"
        end do
        end associate
        write (unit, "(5x,A)") "end select"
    end do
    write (unit, "(A)") " end select"
    write (unit, "(3A)") "end subroutine ", char (prefix), "get_fptr"
end subroutine write_get_fptr_sub

```

The procedures for which we want to return a pointer (the 'features' of the matrix element code) are actually Fortran module procedures. If we want to have a C signature, we must write wrapper functions for all of them. The procedures, their signatures, and the appropriate writer routines are specific for the process type.

To keep this generic, we do not provide the writer routines here, but just the interface for a writer routine. The actual routines are stored in the process record.

The `prefix` indicates the library, the `id` indicates the process, and `procname` is the bare name of the procedure to be written.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: write_driver_code

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine write_driver_code (unit, prefix, id, procname)
            import
            integer, intent(in) :: unit
            type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
            type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
            type(string_t), intent(in) :: procname
        end subroutine write_driver_code
    end interface

```

### 14.1.13 Hooks

Interface for additional library unload / reload hooks (currently unused!)

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: prclib_unload_hook
    public :: prclib_reload_hook

<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine prclib_unload_hook (libname)
            import
            type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
        end subroutine prclib_unload_hook
    end interface

```

```

subroutine prclib_reload_hook (libname)
  import
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
end subroutine prclib_reload_hook
end interface

```

#### 14.1.14 Make source, compile, link

Since we should have written a Makefile, these tasks amount to simple `make` calls. Note that the Makefile targets depend on each other, so calling `link` executes also the `source` and `compile` steps, when necessary.

The first routine writes source-code files for the individual processes. First it calls the writer routines directly for each process, then it calls `make source`. The `make` command may either post-process the files, or it may do the complete work, e.g., calling an external program that generates the files.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_source => prclib_driver_make_source

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_make_source (driver, os_data)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, driver%n_processes
      call driver%record(i)%write_source_code ()
    end do
    call os_system_call ("make source " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end subroutine prclib_driver_make_source

```

Compile matrix element source code and the driver source code.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_compile => prclib_driver_make_compile

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_make_compile (driver, os_data)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    call os_system_call ("make compile " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end subroutine prclib_driver_make_compile

```

Combine all matrix-element code together with the driver in a process library on disk.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_link => prclib_driver_make_link

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_make_link (driver, os_data)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    call os_system_call ("make link " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end subroutine prclib_driver_make_link

```

```
end subroutine prclib_driver_make_link
```

### 14.1.15 Clean up generated files

The task of cleaning any generated files should also be deferred to Makefile targets. Apart from removing everything, removing specific files may be useful for partial rebuilds. (Note that removing the makefile itself can only be done once, for obvious reasons.)

If there is no makefile, do nothing.

*(Prclib interfaces: prclib\_driver: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: clean_library => prclib_driver_clean_library
procedure :: clean_objects => prclib_driver_clean_objects
procedure :: clean_source => prclib_driver_clean_source
procedure :: clean_driver => prclib_driver_clean_driver
procedure :: clean_makefile => prclib_driver_clean_makefile
procedure :: clean => prclib_driver_clean
procedure :: distclean => prclib_driver_distclean
```

*(Prclib interfaces: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine prclib_driver_clean_library (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean-library " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_library

subroutine prclib_driver_clean_objects (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean-objects " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_objects

subroutine prclib_driver_clean_source (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean-source " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_source

subroutine prclib_driver_clean_driver (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean-driver " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
```



```

end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_driver

subroutine prclib_driver_clean_makefile (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean-makefile " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_makefile

subroutine prclib_driver_clean (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make clean " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_clean

subroutine prclib_driver_distclean (driver, os_data)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
    call os_system_call ("make distclean " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
  end if
end subroutine prclib_driver_distclean

```

This Make target should remove all files that apply to a specific process. We execute this when we want to force remaking source code. Note that source targets need not have prerequisites, so just calling `make_source` would not do anything if the files exist.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: clean_proc => prclib_driver_clean_proc

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_clean_proc (driver, i, os_data)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(string_t) :: id
    if (driver%makefile_exists ()) then
      id = driver%record(i)%id
      call os_system_call ("make clean-" // driver%record(i)%id // " " &
        // os_data%makeflags &
        // " -f " // driver%basename // ".makefile")
    end if
  end subroutine prclib_driver_clean_proc

```

### 14.1.16 Further Tools

Check for the appropriate makefile.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: makefile_exists => prclib_driver_makefile_exists

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    function prclib_driver_makefile_exists (driver) result (flag)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        logical :: flag
        inquire (file = char (driver%basename) // ".makefile", exist = flag)
    end function prclib_driver_makefile_exists
```

### 14.1.17 Load the library

Once the library has been linked, we can dlopen it and assign all procedure pointers to their proper places in the library driver object. The loaded flag is set only if all required pointers have become assigned.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: load => prclib_driver_load

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prclib_driver_load (driver, os_data, noerror)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        logical, intent(in), optional :: noerror
        type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr
        logical :: ignore

        ignore = .false.; if (present (noerror)) ignore = noerror

        driver%libname = os_get_dlname (driver%basename, os_data, noerror, noerror)
        if (driver%libname == "") return
        select type (driver)
        type is (prclib_driver_dynamic_t)
            if (.not. dlaccess_is_open (driver%dlaccess)) then
                call dlaccess_init &
                    (driver%dlaccess, var_str ("."), driver%libname, os_data)
                if (.not. ignore) call driver%check_dLError ()
            end if
            driver%loaded = dlaccess_is_open (driver%dlaccess)
        class default
            driver%loaded = .true.
        end select
        if (.not. driver%loaded) return

        c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_processes"))
        call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_processes)
        driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_processes)

        c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_process_id_ptr"))
        call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_process_id_ptr)
        driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_process_id_ptr)
```

```

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_model_name_ptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_model_name_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_model_name_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_md5sum_ptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_md5sum_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_md5sum_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_openmp_status"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_openmp_status)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_openmp_status)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_in"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_in)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_in)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_out"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_out)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_out)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_flv"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_flv)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_flv)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_hel"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_hel)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_hel)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_col"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_col)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_col)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_cin"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_cin)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_cin)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_n_cf"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_n_cf)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_n_cf)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("set_flv_state_ptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%set_flv_state_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%set_flv_state_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("set_hel_state_ptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%set_hel_state_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%set_hel_state_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("set_col_state_ptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%set_col_state_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%set_col_state_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("set_color_factors_ptr"))

```

```

call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%set_color_factors_ptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%set_color_factors_ptr)

c_fptr = driver%get_c_funptr (var_str ("get_fptr"))
call c_f_procpointer (c_fptr, driver%get_fptr)
driver%loaded = driver%loaded .and. associated (driver%get_fptr)

end subroutine prclib_driver_load

```

Unload. To be sure, nullify the procedure pointers.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: unload => prclib_driver_unload

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_unload (driver)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
    select type (driver)
      type is (prclib_driver_dynamic_t)
        if (dlaccess_is_open (driver%dlaccess)) then
          call dlaccess_final (driver%dlaccess)
          call driver%check_dlerror ()
        end if
      end select
    driver%loaded = .false.
    nullify (driver%get_n_processes)
    nullify (driver%get_process_id_ptr)
    nullify (driver%get_model_name_ptr)
    nullify (driver%get_md5sum_ptr)
    nullify (driver%get_openmp_status)
    nullify (driver%get_n_in)
    nullify (driver%get_n_out)
    nullify (driver%get_n_flv)
    nullify (driver%get_n_hel)
    nullify (driver%get_n_col)
    nullify (driver%get_n_cin)
    nullify (driver%get_n_cf)
    nullify (driver%set_flv_state_ptr)
    nullify (driver%set_hel_state_ptr)
    nullify (driver%set_col_state_ptr)
    nullify (driver%set_color_factors_ptr)
    nullify (driver%get_fptr)
  end subroutine prclib_driver_unload

```

This subroutine checks the `dlerror` content and issues a fatal error if it finds an error there.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver dynamic: TBP>≡
  procedure :: check_dlerror => prclib_driver_check_dlerror

<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prclib_driver_check_dlerror (driver)
    class(prclib_driver_dynamic_t), intent(in) :: driver
    if (dlaccess_has_error (driver%dlaccess)) then
      call msg_fatal (char (dlaccess_get_error (driver%dlaccess)))
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine prclib_driver_check_dlerror
```

Get the handle (C function pointer) for a given “feature” of the matrix element code, so it can be assigned to the appropriate procedure pointer slot. In the static case, this is a trivial pointer assignment, hard-coded into the driver type implementation.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure (prclib_driver_get_c_funptr), deferred :: get_c_funptr
<Prclib interfaces: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prclib_driver_get_c_funptr (driver, feature) result (c_fptr)
      import
      class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout) :: driver
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
      type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr
    end function prclib_driver_get_c_funptr
  end interface
```

In the dynamic-library case, we call the DL interface to retrieve the C pointer to a named procedure.

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver dynamic: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_c_funptr => prclib_driver_dynamic_get_c_funptr
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  function prclib_driver_dynamic_get_c_funptr (driver, feature) result (c_fptr)
    class(prclib_driver_dynamic_t), intent(inout) :: driver
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
    type(c_funptr) :: c_fptr
    type(string_t) :: prefix, full_name
    prefix = driver%basename // "_"
    full_name = prefix // feature
    c_fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (driver%dlaccess, full_name)
    call driver%check_dlerror ()
  end function prclib_driver_dynamic_get_c_funptr
```

#### 14.1.18 MD5 sums

Recall the MD5 sum written in the Makefile

```
<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum_makefile => prclib_driver_get_md5sum_makefile
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
  function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_makefile (driver) result (md5sum)
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    character(32) :: md5sum
    type(string_t) :: filename
    character(80) :: buffer
    logical :: exist
    integer :: u, iostat
    md5sum = ""
    filename = driver%basename // ".makefile"
```

```

inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
  u = free_unit ()
  open (u, file = char (filename), action = "read", status = "old")
  iostat = 0
  do
    read (u, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
    if (iostat /= 0)  exit
    buffer = adjustl (buffer)
    select case (buffer(1:9))
    case ("MD5SUM = ")
      read (buffer(11:), "(A32)")  md5sum
      exit
    end select
  end do
  close (u)
end if
end function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_makefile

```

Recall the MD5 sum written in the driver source code.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum_driver => prclib_driver_get_md5sum_driver
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_driver (driver) result (md5sum)
  class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
  character(32) :: md5sum
  type(string_t) :: filename
  character(80) :: buffer
  logical :: exist
  integer :: u, iostat
  md5sum = ""
  filename = driver%basename // ".f90"
  inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
  if (exist) then
    u = free_unit ()
    open (u, file = char (filename), action = "read", status = "old")
    iostat = 0
    do
      read (u, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
      if (iostat /= 0)  exit
      buffer = adjustl (buffer)
      select case (buffer(1:9))
      case ("md5sum = ")
        read (buffer(11:), "(A32)")  md5sum
        exit
      end select
    end do
    close (u)
  end if
end function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_driver

```

Recall the MD5 sum written in the matrix element source code.

```

<Prclib interfaces: prclib driver: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: get_md5sum_source => prclib_driver_get_md5sum_source
<Prclib interfaces: procedures>+≡
    function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_source (driver, i) result (md5sum)
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        character(32) :: md5sum
        type(string_t) :: filename
        character(80) :: buffer
        logical :: exist
        integer :: u, iostat
        md5sum = ""

        filename = driver%record(i)%id // ".f90"
        inquire (file = char (filename), exist = exist)
        if (exist) then
            u = free_unit ()
            open (u, file = char (filename), action = "read", status = "old")
            iostat = 0
            do
                read (u, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
                if (iostat /= 0) exit
                buffer = adjustl (buffer)
                select case (buffer(1:9))
                case ("md5sum = ")
                    read (buffer(11:), "(A32)")  md5sum
                    exit
                end select
            end do
            close (u)
        end if
    end function prclib_driver_get_md5sum_source

```

### 14.1.19 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
    public :: prclib_interfaces_test

<Prclib interfaces: tests>≡
    subroutine prclib_interfaces_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Prclib interfaces: execute tests>
    end subroutine prclib_interfaces_test

```

### Empty process list

Test 1: Create a driver object and display its contents. One of the feature lists references a writer procedure; this is just a dummy that does nothing useful.

```

<Prclib interfaces: execute tests>≡
    call test (prclib_interfaces_1, "prclib_interfaces_1", &

```

```

        "create driver object", &
        u, results)
<Prclib interfaces: tests>+=
subroutine prclib_interfaces_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_1_md5sum"
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_1

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display the driver object contents"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib"), var_str (""))
    call driver%init (3)
    call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

    allocate (test_writer_1_t :: test_writer_1)

    call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test1"), var_str ("test_model"), &
        [var_str ("init")], test_writer_1)

    call driver%set_record (2, var_str ("test2"), var_str ("foo_model"), &
        [var_str ("another_proc")], test_writer_1)

    call driver%set_record (3, var_str ("test3"), var_str ("test_model"), &
        [var_str ("init"), var_str ("some_proc")], test_writer_1)

    call driver%write (u)

    deallocate (test_writer_1)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_1"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_1

```

The writer: the procedures write just comment lines. We can fix an instance of this as a parameter (since it has no mutable content) and just reference the fixed parameter.

NOTE: temporarily made public.

```

<Prclib interfaces: test types>=
type, extends (prc_writer_t) :: test_writer_1_t
contains
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => test_writer_1_type_name
    procedure :: write_makefile_code => test_writer_1_mk
    procedure :: write_source_code => test_writer_1_src
    procedure :: write_interface => test_writer_1_if
    procedure :: write_md5sum_call => test_writer_1_md5sum
    procedure :: write_int_sub_call => test_writer_1_int_sub
    procedure :: write_col_state_call => test_writer_1_col_state

```



```

        procedure :: write_color_factors_call => test_writer_1_col_factors
    end type test_writer_1_t

```

*(Prclib interfaces: tests)* +=

```

function test_writer_1_type_name () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "test_1"
end function test_writer_1_type_name

subroutine test_writer_1_mk (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    write (unit, "(5A)")    "# Makefile code for process ", char (id), &
        " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_1_mk

subroutine test_writer_1_src (writer, id)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
end subroutine test_writer_1_src

subroutine test_writer_1_if (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)")    "! Interface code for ", &
        char (id), "_", char (writer%get_procname (feature)), &
        " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_1_if

subroutine test_writer_1_md5sum (writer, unit, id)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)")    "! MD5sum call for ", char (id), " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_1_md5sum

subroutine test_writer_1_int_sub (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)")    "! ", char (feature), " call for ", &
        char (id), " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_1_int_sub

subroutine test_writer_1_col_state (writer, unit, id)
    class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)")    "! col_state call for ", &
        char (id), " goes here."

```

```

end subroutine test_writer_1_col_state

subroutine test_writer_1_col_factors (writer, unit, id)
  class(test_writer_1_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "! color_factors call for ", &
    char (id), " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_1_col_factors

```

## Process library driver file

Test 2: Write the driver file for a test case with two processes. The first process needs no wrapper (C library), the second one needs wrappers (Fortran module library).

```

<Prclib interfaces: execute tests>+≡
  call test (prclib_interfaces_2, "prclib_interfaces_2", &
    "write driver file", &
    u, results)

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine prclib_interfaces_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_2_md5sum"
  class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_1, test_writer_2

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check the generated driver source code"
  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object (2 processes)"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib2"), var_str (""))
  call driver%init (2)
  call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

  allocate (test_writer_1_t :: test_writer_1)
  allocate (test_writer_2_t :: test_writer_2)

  call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test1"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_1)

  call driver%set_record (2, var_str ("test2"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1"), var_str ("proc2")], test_writer_2)

  call driver%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the driver file"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call driver%generate_driver_code (u)

deallocate (test_writer_1)
deallocate (test_writer_2)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_2"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_2

```

A writer with wrapper code: the procedures again write just comment lines. Since all procedures are NOPASS, we can reuse two of the TBP.

*(Prclib interfaces: test types)+≡*

```

type, extends (prc_writer_f_module_t) :: test_writer_2_t
contains
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => test_writer_2_type_name
  procedure :: write_makefile_code => test_writer_2_mk
  procedure :: write_source_code => test_writer_2_src
  procedure :: write_interface => test_writer_2_if
  procedure :: write_wrapper => test_writer_2_wr
end type test_writer_2_t

```

*(Prclib interfaces: tests)+≡*

```

function test_writer_2_type_name () result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  string = "test_2"
end function test_writer_2_type_name

subroutine test_writer_2_mk (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
  class(test_writer_2_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  write (unit, "(5A)")  "# Makefile code for process ", char (id), &
    " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_2_mk

subroutine test_writer_2_src (writer, id)
  class(test_writer_2_t), intent(in) :: writer
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
end subroutine test_writer_2_src

subroutine test_writer_2_if (writer, unit, id, feature)
  class(test_writer_2_t), intent(in) :: writer
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)")  "! Interface code for ", &
    char (writer%get_module_name (id)), "_", &
    char (writer%get_procname (feature)), " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_2_if

subroutine test_writer_2_wr (writer, unit, id, feature)
  class(test_writer_2_t), intent(in) :: writer

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
write (unit, *)
write (unit, "(9A)")  "!! Wrapper code for ", &
    char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), " goes here."
end subroutine test_writer_2_wr

```

## Process library makefile

Test 3: Write the makefile for compiling and linking the process library (processes and driver code). There are two processes, one with one method, one with two methods.

To have predictable output, we reset the system-dependent initial components of `os_data` to known values.

```

<Prclib interfaces: execute tests>+≡
    call test (prclib_interfaces_3, "prclib_interfaces_3", &
        "write makefile", &
        u, results)

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
    subroutine prclib_interfaces_3 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_3_md5sum"
        class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_1, test_writer_2

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        os_data%fc = "fortran-compiler"
        os_data%whizard_includes = "-I module-dir"
        os_data%fcflags = "-C=all"
        os_data%fcflags_pic = "-PIC"
        os_data%cc = "c-compiler"
        os_data%cflags = "-I include-dir"
        os_data%cflags_pic = "-PIC"
        os_data%whizard_ldflags = ""
        os_data%ldflags = ""
        os_data%whizard_libtool = "my-libtool"
        os_data%latex = "latex -halt-on-error"
        os_data%mpost = "mpost --math=scaled -halt-on-error"
        os_data%dvips = "dvips"
        os_data%ps2pdf = "ps2pdf14"
        os_data%whizard_texpath = ""

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_3"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check the generated Makefile"
        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object (2 processes)"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib3"), var_str (""))
        call driver%init (2)
        call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

```

```

allocate (test_writer_1_t :: test_writer_1)
allocate (test_writer_2_t :: test_writer_2)

call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test1"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_1)

call driver%set_record (2, var_str ("test2"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1"), var_str ("proc2")], test_writer_2)

call driver%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write Makefile"
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

call driver%generate_makefile (u, os_data)

deallocate (test_writer_1)
deallocate (test_writer_2)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_3"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_3

```

## Compile test with Fortran module

Test 4: Write driver and makefile and try to compile and link the library driver.

There is a single test process with a single feature. The process code is provided as a Fortran module, therefore we need a wrapper for the featured procedure.

```

<Prclib interfaces: execute tests>+≡
    call test (prclib_interfaces_4, "prclib_interfaces_4", &
        "compile and link (Fortran module)", &
        u, results)

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine prclib_interfaces_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_4
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    integer :: u_file

    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv_state
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: hel_state
    integer, dimension(:,:,:), allocatable :: col_state
    logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: ghost_flag
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: cf_index
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: color_factors
    character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_4_md5sum"
    character(32) :: md5sum_file

```

```

type(c_funptr) :: proc1_ptr
interface
    subroutine proc1_t (n) bind(C)
        import
        integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n
    end subroutine proc1_t
end interface
procedure(proc1_t), pointer :: proc1
integer(c_int) :: n

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: compile, link, and load process library"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           with (fake) matrix-element code &
                    &as a Fortran module"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object (1 process)"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)

allocate (test_writer_4_t :: test_writer_4)
call test_writer_4%init_test ()

call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib4"), var_str (""))
call driver%init (1)
call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test4"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_4)

call driver%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write Makefile"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib4.makefile", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_makefile (u_file, os_data)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall MD5 sum from Makefile"
write (u, "(A)")

md5sum_file = driver%get_md5sum_makefile ()
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum = '", md5sum_file, "'"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib4.f90", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_driver_code (u_file)
close (u_file)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall MD5 sum from driver source"
write (u, "(A)")

md5sum_file = driver%get_md5sum_driver ()
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum = '", md5sum_file, "'"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write matrix-element source code"
call driver%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recall MD5 sum from matrix-element source"
write (u, "(A)")

md5sum_file = driver%get_md5sum_source (1)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum = '", md5sum_file, "'"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile source code"
call driver%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link library"
call driver%make_link (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Load library"
call driver%load (os_data)

write (u, *)
call driver%write (u)
write (u, *)

if (driver%loaded) then
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Call library functions:"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes = ", driver%get_n_processes ()
  write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "process_id = '", &
    char (driver%get_process_id (1)), "'"
  write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "model_name = '", &
    char (driver%get_model_name (1)), "'"
  write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum (lib) = '", &
    char (driver%get_md5sum (0)), "'"
  write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum (proc) = '", &
    char (driver%get_md5sum (1)), "'"
  write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "openmp_status = ", driver%get_openmp_status (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in = ", driver%get_n_in (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out = ", driver%get_n_out (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv = ", driver%get_n_flv (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel = ", driver%get_n_hel (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col = ", driver%get_n_col (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin = ", driver%get_n_cin (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf = ", driver%get_n_cf (1)

```

```

call driver%set_flv_state (1, flv_state)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "flv_state =", flv_state

call driver%set_hel_state (1, hel_state)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "hel_state =", hel_state

call driver%set_col_state (1, col_state, ghost_flag)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col_state =", col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost_flag =", ghost_flag

call driver%set_color_factors (1, color_factors, cf_index)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color_factors =", color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf_index =", cf_index

call driver%get_fptr (1, 1, proc1_ptr)
call c_f_procpointer (proc1_ptr, proc1)
if (associated (proc1)) then
  write (u, *)
  call proc1 (n)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1(1) = ", n
end if

end if

deallocate (test_writer_4)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_4"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_4

```

This version of test-code writer actually writes an interface and wrapper code.

The wrapped function is a no-parameter function with integer result.

The stored MD5 sum may be modified.

We will reuse this later, therefore public.

```

<Prclib interfaces: public>+≡
  public :: test_writer_4_t

<Prclib interfaces: test types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_writer_f_module_t) :: test_writer_4_t
  contains
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => test_writer_4_type_name
    procedure, nopass :: get_module_name => &
      test_writer_4_get_module_name
    procedure :: write_makefile_code => test_writer_4_mk
    procedure :: write_source_code => test_writer_4_src
    procedure :: write_interface => test_writer_4_if
    procedure :: write_wrapper => test_writer_4_wr
  end type test_writer_4_t

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
  function test_writer_4_type_name () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "test_4"
  end function

```



```

end function test_writer_4_type_name

function test_writer_4_get_module_name (id) result (name)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(string_t) :: name
    name = "tpr_" // id
end function test_writer_4_get_module_name

subroutine test_writer_4_mk (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
    class(test_writer_4_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    write (unit, "(5A)") "SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += tpr_", char (id), ".mod"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".lo: ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(LTF_COMPILE) $<"
end subroutine test_writer_4_mk

subroutine test_writer_4_src (writer, id)
    class(test_writer_4_t), intent(in) :: writer
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    call write_test_module_file (id, var_str ("proc1"), writer%md5sum)
end subroutine test_writer_4_src

subroutine test_writer_4_if (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(test_writer_4_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "interface"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " (n) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "implicit none"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "end interface"
end subroutine test_writer_4_if

subroutine test_writer_4_wr (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(test_writer_4_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    write (unit, *)
    write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", &
        char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
        " (n) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"

```

```

write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id), ", only: ", &
char (writer%get_procname (feature))
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "implicit none"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (n)"
write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", &
char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
end subroutine test_writer_4_wr

```

We need a test module file (actually, one for each process in the test above) that allows us to check compilation and linking. The test module implements a colorless  $1 \rightarrow 2$  process, and it implements one additional function (feature), the name given as an argument.

```

(Prclib interfaces: tests) +=
subroutine write_test_module_file (basename, feature, md5sum)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
  character(32), intent(in) :: md5sum
  integer :: u
  u = free_unit ()
  open (u, file = char (basename) // ".f90", &
status = "replace", action = "write")
  write (u, "(A)") "! (Pseudo) matrix element code file &
&for WHIZARD self-test"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "module tpr_" // char (basename)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "use kinds"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "use omega_color, OCF => omega_color_factor"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "implicit none"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "private"
  write (u, *)
  call write_test_me_code_1 (u)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: " // char (feature)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "contains"
  write (u, *)
  call write_test_me_code_2 (u, md5sum)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "subroutine " // char (feature) // " (n)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") " integer, intent(out) :: n"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") " n = 42"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end subroutine " // char (feature)
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "end module tpr_" // char (basename)
  close (u)
end subroutine write_test_module_file

```

The following two subroutines provide building blocks for a matrix-element source code file, useful only for testing the workflow. The first routine writes the header part, the other routine the implementation of the procedures listed

in the header.

*(Prclib interfaces: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine write_test_me_code_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: md5sum"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: openmp_supported"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_in"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_out"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_flv"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_hel"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_cin"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_col"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: n_cf"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: flv_state"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: hel_state"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: col_state"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "public :: color_factors"
end subroutine write_test_me_code_1

subroutine write_test_me_code_2 (u, md5sum)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(32), intent(in) :: md5sum
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function md5sum ()"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  character(len=32) :: md5sum"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  md5sum = ' " // md5sum // "' "
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function md5sum"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function openmp_supported () result (status)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  logical :: status"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  status = .false."
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function openmp_supported"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_in () result (n)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 1"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_in"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_out () result (n)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 2"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_out"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_flv () result (n)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 1"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_flv"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_hel () result (n)"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 1"
  write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_hel"
  write (u, *)

```

```

write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_cin () result (n)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 2"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_cin"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_col () result (n)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 1"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_col"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure function n_cf () result (n)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer :: n"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  n = 1"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end function n_cf"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure subroutine flv_state (a)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer, dimension(:,,:), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  a = reshape ([1,2,3], [3,1])"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end subroutine flv_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure subroutine hel_state (a)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer, dimension(:,,:), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  a = reshape ([0,0,0], [3,1])"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end subroutine hel_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure subroutine col_state (a, g)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  integer, dimension(:, :, :), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  logical, dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: g"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  a = reshape ([0,0, 0,0, 0,0], [2,3,1])"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  g = reshape ([.false., .false., .false.], [3,1])"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end subroutine col_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(2x,A)") "pure subroutine color_factors (cf)"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  type(OCF), dimension(:), intent(out) :: cf"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "  cf = [ OCF(1,1,+1._default) ]"
write (u, "(2x,A)") "end subroutine color_factors"
end subroutine write_test_me_code_2

```

## Compile test with Fortran bind(C) library

Test 5: Write driver and makefile and try to compile and link the library driver.

There is a single test process with a single feature. The process code is provided as a Fortran library of independent procedures. These procedures are bind(C).

```

<Prclib interfaces: execute tests>+≡
  call test (prclib_interfaces_5, "prclib_interfaces_5", &
    "compile and link (Fortran library)", &
    u, results)

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
  subroutine prclib_interfaces_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver

```

```

class(proc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_5
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
integer :: u_file

integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv_state
integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: hel_state
integer, dimension(:,:,:), allocatable :: col_state
logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: ghost_flag
integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: cf_index
complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: color_factors
character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_5_md5sum"

type(c_funptr) :: proc1_ptr
interface
    subroutine proc1_t (n) bind(C)
        import
        integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n
    end subroutine proc1_t
end interface
procedure(proc1_t), pointer :: proc1
integer(c_int) :: n

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_5"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: compile, link, and load process library"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           with (fake) matrix-element code &
    &as a Fortran bind(C) library"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object (1 process)"
write (u, "(A)")

call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (test_writer_5_t :: test_writer_5)

call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib5"), var_str (""))
call driver%init (1)
call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test5"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_5)

call driver%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib5.makefile", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_makefile (u_file, os_data)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib5.f90", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_driver_code (u_file)
close (u_file)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write matrix-element source code"
call driver%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile source code"
call driver%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link library"
call driver%make_link (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Load library"
call driver%load (os_data)

write (u, *)
call driver%write (u)
write (u, *)

if (driver%loaded) then
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Call library functions:"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes   = ", driver%get_n_processes ()
  write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "process_id    = ", &
    char (driver%get_process_id (1))
  write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model_name    = ", &
    char (driver%get_model_name (1))
  write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "md5sum       = ", &
    char (driver%get_md5sum (1))
  write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "openmp_status = ", driver%get_openmp_status (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in        = ", driver%get_n_in (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out       = ", driver%get_n_out (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv       = ", driver%get_n_flv (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel       = ", driver%get_n_hel (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col       = ", driver%get_n_col (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin       = ", driver%get_n_cin (1)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf        = ", driver%get_n_cf (1)

  call driver%set_flv_state (1, flv_state)
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "flv_state =", flv_state

  call driver%set_hel_state (1, hel_state)
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "hel_state =", hel_state

  call driver%set_col_state (1, col_state, ghost_flag)
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "col_state =", col_state
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))")  "ghost_flag =", ghost_flag

  call driver%set_color_factors (1, color_factors, cf_index)
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))")  "color_factors =", color_factors
  write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "cf_index =", cf_index

  call driver%get_fptr (1, 1, proc1_ptr)
  call c_f_procpointer (proc1_ptr, proc1)
  if (associated (proc1)) then
    write (u, *)

```

```

        call proc1 (n)
        write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1(1) = ", n
    end if

end if

deallocate (test_writer_5)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_5"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_5

```

This version of test-code writer writes interfaces for all standard features plus one specific feature. The interfaces are all bind(C), so no wrapper is needed.

```

<Prclib interfaces: test types>+=
type, extends (prc_writer_c_lib_t) :: test_writer_5_t
contains
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => test_writer_5_type_name
    procedure :: write_makefile_code => test_writer_5_mk
    procedure :: write_source_code => test_writer_5_src
    procedure :: write_interface => test_writer_5_if
end type test_writer_5_t

```

The

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+=
function test_writer_5_type_name () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "test_5"
end function test_writer_5_type_name

subroutine test_writer_5_mk (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
    class(test_writer_5_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    write (unit, "(5A)") "SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".lo: ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$ (LTF_COMPILE) $<"
end subroutine test_writer_5_mk

subroutine test_writer_5_src (writer, id)
    class(test_writer_5_t), intent(in) :: writer
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    call write_test_f_lib_file (id, var_str ("proc1"))
end subroutine test_writer_5_src

subroutine test_writer_5_if (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(test_writer_5_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    select case (char (feature))

```

```

case ("proc1")
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "interface"
  write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", &
    char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)), &
    " (n) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
  write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "implicit none"
  write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n"
  write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", &
    char (writer%get_c_procname (id, feature))
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "end interface"
case default
  call writer%write_standard_interface (unit, id, feature)
end select
end subroutine test_writer_5_if

```

We need a test module file (actually, one for each process in the test above) that allows us to check compilation and linking. The test module implements a colorless  $1 \rightarrow 2$  process, and it implements one additional function (feature), the name given as an argument.

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine write_test_f_lib_file (basename, feature)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
  integer :: u
  u = free_unit ()
  open (u, file = char (basename) // ".f90", &
    status = "replace", action = "write")
  write (u, "(A)") "!(Pseudo) matrix element code file &
    &for WHIZARD self-test"
  call write_test_me_code_3 (u, char (basename))
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)") "subroutine " // char (basename) // "_" &
    // char (feature) // " (n) bind(C)"
  write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
  write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
  write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n"
  write (u, "(A)") " n = 42"
  write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine " // char (basename) // "_" &
    // char (feature)
  close (u)
end subroutine write_test_f_lib_file

```

The following matrix-element source code is identical to the previous one, but modified such as to provide independent procedures without a module envelope.

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine write_test_me_code_3 (u, id)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(*), intent(in) :: id
  write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_get_md5sum () &
    &result (cptr) bind(C)"
  write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
  write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"

```



```

write (u, "(A)") " type(c_ptr) :: c_ptr"
write (u, "(A)") " character(c_char), dimension(32), &
&target, save :: md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") " md5sum = copy (c_char_&
&'1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef')"
write (u, "(A)") " c_ptr = c_loc (md5sum)"
write (u, "(A)") "contains"
write (u, "(A)") " function copy (md5sum)"
write (u, "(A)") " character(c_char), dimension(32) :: copy"
write (u, "(A)") " character(c_char), dimension(32), intent(in) :: &
&md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") " copy = md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") " end function copy"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_get_md5sum"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_openmp_supported () &
&result (status) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " logical(c_bool) :: status"
write (u, "(A)") " status = .false."
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_openmp_supported"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_in () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_in"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_out () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 2"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_out"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_flv () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_flv"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_hel () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_hel"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_cin () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"

```

```

write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 2"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_cin"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_col () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_col"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "function " // id // "_n_cf () result (n) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int) :: n"
write (u, "(A)") " n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "end function " // id // "_n_cf"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "subroutine " // id // "_flv_state (flv_state) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: flv_state"
write (u, "(A)") " flv_state(1:3) = [1,2,3]"
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine " // id // "_flv_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "subroutine " // id // "_hel_state (hel_state) bind(C)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: hel_state"
write (u, "(A)") " hel_state(1:3) = [0,0,0]"
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine " // id // "_hel_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "subroutine " // id // "_col_state &"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) &"
write (u, "(A)") " col_state"
write (u, "(A)") " logical(c_bool), dimension(*), intent(out) &"
write (u, "(A)") " ghost_flag"
write (u, "(A)") " col_state(1:6) = [0,0, 0,0, 0,0]"
write (u, "(A)") " ghost_flag(1:3) = [.false., .false., .false.]"
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine " // id // "_col_state"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "subroutine " // id // "_color_factors &"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_c_binding"
write (u, "(A)") " use kinds"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: cf_index1"
write (u, "(A)") " integer(c_int), dimension(*), intent(out) :: cf_index2"
write (u, "(A)") " complex(c_default_complex), dimension(*), &"
write (u, "(A)") " intent(out) :: color_factors"
write (u, "(A)") " cf_index1(1:1) = [1]"

```

```

write (u, "(A)") " cf_index2(1:1) = [1]"
write (u, "(A)") " color_factors(1:1) = [1]"
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine " // id // "_color_factors"
end subroutine write_test_me_code_3

```

## Compile test with genuine C library

Test 6: Write driver and makefile and try to compile and link the library driver.

There is a single test process with a single feature. The process code is provided as a C library of independent procedures. These procedures should match the Fortran bind(C) interface.

```

(Prclib interfaces: execute tests)+≡
  call test (prclib_interfaces_6, "prclib_interfaces_6", &
    "compile and link (C library)", &
    u, results)

(Prclib interfaces: tests)+≡
  subroutine prclib_interfaces_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_6
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    integer :: u_file

    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv_state
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: hel_state
    integer, dimension(:,:,:), allocatable :: col_state
    logical, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: ghost_flag
    integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: cf_index
    complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: color_factors
    character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "prclib_interfaces_6_md5sum"

    type(c_funptr) :: proc1_ptr
    interface
      subroutine proc1_t (n) bind(C)
        import
        integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n
      end subroutine proc1_t
    end interface
    procedure(proc1_t), pointer :: proc1
    integer(c_int) :: n

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_6"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: compile, link, and load process library"
    write (u, "(A)") "* with (fake) matrix-element code &
      &as a C library"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)") "* Create a prclib driver object (1 process)"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (test_writer_6_t :: test_writer_6)

```

```

call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib6"), var_str (""))
call driver%init (1)
call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)

call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test6"), var_str ("Test_model"), &
    [var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_6)

call driver%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib6.makefile", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_makefile (u_file, os_data)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib6.f90", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_driver_code (u_file)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write matrix-element source code"
call driver%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile source code"
call driver%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link library"
call driver%make_link (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Load library"
call driver%load (os_data)

write (u, *)
call driver%write (u)
write (u, *)

if (driver%loaded) then
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Call library functions:"
    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes   = ", driver%get_n_processes ()
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "process_id    = ", &
        char (driver%get_process_id (1))
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model_name    = ", &
        char (driver%get_model_name (1))
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "md5sum        = ", &
        char (driver%get_md5sum (1))
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "openmp_status = ", driver%get_openmp_status (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in         = ", driver%get_n_in (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out        = ", driver%get_n_out (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv        = ", driver%get_n_flv (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel        = ", driver%get_n_hel (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col        = ", driver%get_n_col (1)

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cin = ", driver%get_n_cin (1)
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cf = ", driver%get_n_cf (1)

call driver%set_flv_state (1, flv_state)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "flv_state =", flv_state

call driver%set_hel_state (1, hel_state)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "hel_state =", hel_state

call driver%set_col_state (1, col_state, ghost_flag)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col_state =", col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost_flag =", ghost_flag

call driver%set_color_factors (1, color_factors, cf_index)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color_factors =", color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf_index =", cf_index

call driver%get_fptr (1, 1, proc1_ptr)
call c_f_procpointer (proc1_ptr, proc1)
if (associated (proc1)) then
  write (u, *)
  call proc1 (n)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1(1) = ", n
end if

end if

deallocate (test_writer_6)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_6"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_6

```

This version of test-code writer writes interfaces for all standard features plus one specific feature. The interfaces are all `bind(C)`, so no wrapper is needed.

The driver part is identical to the Fortran case, so we simply extend the previous `test_writer_5` type. We only have to override the Makefile writer.

```

<Prclib interfaces: test types>+≡
type, extends (test_writer_5_t) :: test_writer_6_t
contains
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => test_writer_6_type_name
  procedure :: write_makefile_code => test_writer_6_mk
  procedure :: write_source_code => test_writer_6_src
end type test_writer_6_t

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
function test_writer_6_type_name () result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  string = "test_6"
end function test_writer_6_type_name

subroutine test_writer_6_mk (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
  class(test_writer_6_t), intent(in) :: writer

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
write (unit, "(5A)") "SOURCES += ", char (id), ".c"
write (unit, "(5A)") "OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".lo: ", char (id), ".c"
write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(LTCCOMPILE) $<"
end subroutine test_writer_6_mk

subroutine test_writer_6_src (writer, id)
class(test_writer_6_t), intent(in) :: writer
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
call write_test_c_lib_file (id, var_str ("proc1"))
end subroutine test_writer_6_src

```

We need a test module file (actually, one for each process in the test above) that allows us to check compilation and linking. The test module implements a colorless  $1 \rightarrow 2$  process, and it implements one additional function (feature), the name given as an argument.

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine write_test_c_lib_file (basename, feature)
type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
integer :: u
u = free_unit ()
open (u, file = char (basename) // ".c", &
      status = "replace", action = "write")
write (u, "(A)") "/* (Pseudo) matrix element code file &
&for WHIZARD self-test */"
write (u, "(A)") "#include <stdbool.h>"
write (u, *)
call write_test_me_code_4 (u, char (basename))
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "void " // char (basename) // "_" &
// char (feature) // "(int* n) {"
write (u, "(A)") "    *n = 42;"
write (u, "(A)") "}"
close (u)
end subroutine write_test_c_lib_file

```

The following matrix-element source code is equivalent to the code in the previous example, but coded in C.

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine write_test_me_code_4 (u, id)
integer, intent(in) :: u
character(*), intent(in) :: id
write (u, "(A)") "char* " // id // "_get_md5sum() {"
write (u, "(A)") "    return ""1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"";"
write (u, "(A)") "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "bool " // id // "_openmp_supported() {"
write (u, "(A)") "    return false;"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_in() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 1;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_out() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 2;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_flv() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 1;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_hel() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 1;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_cin() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 2;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_col() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 1;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "int " // id // "_n_cf() {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    return 1;"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "void " // id // "_flv_state( int (*a)[] ) {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    static int flv_state[1][3] = { { 1, 2, 3 } };"
write (u, "(A)")  "    int j;"
write (u, "(A)")  "    for (j = 0; j < 3; j++) { (*a)[j] &
    &= flv_state[0][j]; }"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "void " // id // "_hel_state( int (*a)[] ) {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    static int hel_state[1][3] = { { 0, 0, 0 } };"
write (u, "(A)")  "    int j;"
write (u, "(A)")  "    for (j = 0; j < 3; j++) { (*a)[j] &
    &= hel_state[0][j]; }"
write (u, "(A)")  "}"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "void " // id // "_col_state&
    &( int (*a)[], bool (*g)[] ) {"
write (u, "(A)")  "    static int col_state[1][3][2] = &
    &{ { {0, 0}, {0, 0}, {0, 0} } };"
write (u, "(A)")  "    static bool ghost_flag[1][3] = &
    &{ { false, false, false } };"
write (u, "(A)")  "    int j,k;"
write (u, "(A)")  "    for (j = 0; j < 3; j++) {"
write (u, "(A)")  "        for (k = 0; k < 2; k++) {"
write (u, "(A)")  "            (*a)[j*2+k] = col_state[0][j][k];"

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "    }"
write (u, "(A)") "    (*g)[j] = ghost_flag[0][j];"
write (u, "(A)") "    }"
write (u, "(A)") "}"
write (u, *)
if (c_default_complex == c_long_double_complex) then
  write (u, "(A)") "void " // id // "_color_factors&"
    &( int (*cf_index1)[], int (*cf_index2)[], &
    &long double _Complex (*color_factors)[] ) {"
else
  write (u, "(A)") "void " // id // "_color_factors&"
    &( int (*cf_index1)[], int (*cf_index2)[], &
    &double _Complex (*color_factors)[] ) {"
end if
write (u, "(A)") "  (*color_factors)[0] = 1;"
write (u, "(A)") "  (*cf_index1)[0] = 1;"
write (u, "(A)") "  (*cf_index2)[0] = 1;"
write (u, "(A)") "}"
end subroutine write_test_me_code_4

```

## Test cleanup targets

Test 7: Repeat test 4 (create, compile, link Fortran module and driver) and properly clean up all generated files.

*(Prclib interfaces: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (prclib_interfaces_7, "prclib_interfaces_7", &
  "cleanup", &
  u, results)

```

*(Prclib interfaces: tests)+≡*

```

subroutine prclib_interfaces_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: test_writer_4
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  integer :: u_file
  character(32), parameter :: md5sum = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_interfaces_7"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: compile and link process library"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           with (fake) matrix-element code &"
    &as a Fortran module"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           then clean up generated files"
  write (u, *)
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a prclib driver object (1 process)"

  allocate (test_writer_4_t :: test_writer_4)

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call dispatch_prclib_driver (driver, var_str ("prclib7"), var_str (""))
  call driver%init (1)
  call driver%set_md5sum (md5sum)
  call driver%set_record (1, var_str ("test7"), var_str ("Test_model"), &

```



```

[var_str ("proc1")], test_writer_4)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib7.makefile", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_makefile (u_file, os_data)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file="prclib7.f90", status="replace", action="write")
call driver%generate_driver_code (u_file)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write matrix-element source code"
call driver%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile source code"
call driver%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link library"
call driver%make_link (os_data)


write (u, "(A)")  "* File check"
write (u, *)
call check_file (u, "test7.f90")
call check_file (u, "tpr_test7.mod")
call check_file (u, "test7.lo")
call check_file (u, "prclib7.makefile")
call check_file (u, "prclib7.f90")
call check_file (u, "prclib7.lo")
call check_file (u, "prclib7.la")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete library"
write (u, *)
call driver%clean_library (os_data)
call check_file (u, "prclib7.la")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete object code"
write (u, *)
call driver%clean_objects (os_data)
call check_file (u, "test7.lo")
call check_file (u, "tpr_test7.mod")
call check_file (u, "prclib7.lo")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete source code"
write (u, *)
call driver%clean_source (os_data)
call check_file (u, "test7.f90")

```

```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete driver source code"
write (u, *)
call driver%clean_driver (os_data)
call check_file (u, "prclib7.f90")

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete makefile"
write (u, *)
call driver%clean_makefile (os_data)
call check_file (u, "prclib7.makefile")

deallocate (test_writer_4)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_interfaces_7"
end subroutine prclib_interfaces_7

```

Auxiliary routine: check and report existence of a file

```

<Prclib interfaces: tests>+≡
subroutine check_file (u, file)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(*), intent(in) :: file
  logical :: exist
  inquire (file=file, exist=exist)
  write (u, "(2x,A,A,L1)") file, " = ", exist
end subroutine check_file

```

## 14.2 Abstract process core configuration

In this module, we define abstract data types that handle the method-specific part of defining a process (including all of its options) and accessing an external matrix element.

There are no unit tests, these are deferred to the `process_libraries` module below.

```

<prc_core_def.f90>≡
<File header>

module prc_core_def

  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!

  use process_constants
  use prclib_interfaces

  <Standard module head>

  <Prc core def: public>

```

```

    <Prc core def: types>

    <Prc core def: interfaces>

    contains

    <Prc core def: procedures>

    end module prc_core_def

```

### 14.2.1 Process core definition type

For storing configuration data that depend on the specific process variant, we introduce a polymorphic type. At this point, we just declare an abstract base type. This allows us to defer the implementation to later modules.

There should be no components that need explicit finalization, otherwise we would have to call a finalizer from the `process_component_def_t` wrapper.

```

<Prc core def: public>≡
    public :: prc_core_def_t

<Prc core def: types>≡
    type, abstract :: prc_core_def_t
        class(prc_writer_t), allocatable :: writer
    contains
        <Prc core def: process core def: TBP>
    end type prc_core_def_t

```

Interfaces for the deferred methods.

This returns a string. No passed argument; the string is constant and depends just on the type.

```

<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>≡
    procedure (prc_core_def_get_string), nopass, deferred :: type_string

<Prc core def: interfaces>≡
    abstract interface
        function prc_core_def_get_string () result (string)
            import
                type(string_t) :: string
            end function prc_core_def_get_string
    end interface

```

The `write` method should display the content completely.

```

<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
    procedure (prc_core_def_write), deferred :: write

<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine prc_core_def_write (object, unit)
            import
                class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in) :: object
                integer, intent(in) :: unit
            end subroutine prc_core_def_write

```

```
end interface
```

The `read` method should fill the content completely.

```
<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure (prc_core_def_read), deferred :: read
<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_def_read (object, unit)
      import
      class(prc_core_def_t), intent(out) :: object
      integer, intent(in) :: unit
    end subroutine prc_core_def_read
  end interface
```

This communicates a MD5 checksum to the writer inside the `core_def` object, if there is any. Usually, this checksum is not yet known at the time when the writer is initialized.

```
<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_md5sum => prc_core_def_set_md5sum
<Prc core def: procedures>≡
  subroutine prc_core_def_set_md5sum (core_def, md5sum)
    class(prc_core_def_t), intent(inout) :: core_def
    character(32) :: md5sum
    if (allocated (core_def%writer)) core_def%writer%md5sum = md5sum
  end subroutine prc_core_def_set_md5sum
```

Allocate an appropriate driver object which corresponds to the chosen process core definition.

For internal matrix element (i.e., those which do not need external code), the driver should have access to all matrix element information from the beginning. In short, it is the matrix-element code.

For external matrix elements, the driver will get access to the external matrix element code.

```
<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_def_allocate_driver), deferred :: allocate_driver
<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine prc_core_def_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
      import
      class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in) :: object
      class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
    end subroutine prc_core_def_allocate_driver
  end interface
```

This flag tells whether the particular variant needs external code. We implement a default function which returns false. The flag depends only on the type, therefore we implement it as `nopass`.

```
<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: needs_code => prc_core_def_needs_code
```

```

<Prc core def: procedures>+≡
  function prc_core_def_needs_code () result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    flag = .false.
  end function prc_core_def_needs_code

```

This subroutine allocates an array which holds the name of all features that this process core implements. This feature applies to matrix element code that is not coded as a Fortran module but communicates via independent library functions, which follow the C calling conventions. The addresses of those functions are returned as C function pointers, which can be converted into Fortran procedure pointers. The conversion is done in code specific for the process variant; here we just retrieve the C function pointer.

The array returned here serves the purpose of writing specific driver code. The driver interfaces only those C functions which are supported for the given process core.

If the process core does not require external code, this array is meaningless.

```

<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_def_get_features), nopass, deferred &
    :: get_features

<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_def_get_features (features)
      import
      type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
    end subroutine prc_core_def_get_features
  end interface

```

Assign pointers to the process-specific procedures to the driver, if the process is external.

```

<Prc core def: process core def: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_def_connect), deferred :: connect

<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_def_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
      import
      class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in) :: def
      class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
      integer, intent(in) :: i
      class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
    end subroutine prc_core_def_connect
  end interface

```

## 14.2.2 Process core template

We must be able to automatically allocate a process core definition object with the appropriate type, given only the type name.

To this end, we introduce a `prc_template_t` type which is simply a wrapper for an empty `prc_core_def_t` object. Choosing one of the templates from an array, we can allocate the target object.

```

<Prc core def: public>+≡
    public :: prc_template_t

<Prc core def: types>+≡
    type :: prc_template_t
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    end type prc_template_t

```

The allocation routine. We use the `source` option of the `allocate` statement. The `mold` option would probably more appropriate, but is a F2008 feature.

```

<Prc core def: public>+≡
    public :: allocate_core_def

<Prc core def: procedures>+≡
    subroutine allocate_core_def (template, name, core_def)
        type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: template
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (template)
            if (template(i)%core_def%type_string () == name) then
                allocate (core_def, source = template(i)%core_def)
                return
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine allocate_core_def

```

### 14.2.3 Process driver

For each process component, we implement a driver object which holds the calls to the matrix element and various auxiliary routines as procedure pointers. Any actual calculation will use this object to communicate with the process.

Depending on the type of process (as described by a corresponding `prc_core_def` object), the procedure pointers may refer to external or internal code, and there may be additional procedures for certain types. The base type defined here is abstract.

```

<Prc core def: public>+≡
    public :: prc_core_driver_t

<Prc core def: types>+≡
    type, abstract :: prc_core_driver_t
        contains
        <Prc core def: process driver: TBP>
    end type prc_core_driver_t

```

This returns the process type. No reference to contents.

```

<Prc core def: process driver: TBP>≡
    procedure(prc_core_driver_type_name), nopass, deferred :: type_name

```

```

<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_core_driver_type_name () result (type)
      import
        type(string_t) :: type
      end function prc_core_driver_type_name
  end interface

```

#### 14.2.4 Process driver for intrinsic process

This is an abstract extension for the driver type. It has one additional method, namely a subroutine that fills the record of constant process data. For an external process, this task is performed by the external library driver instead.

```

<Prc core def: public>+≡
  public :: process_driver_internal_t

<Prc core def: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_core_driver_t), abstract :: process_driver_internal_t
  contains
    <Prc core def: process driver internal: TBP>
  end type process_driver_internal_t

<Prc core def: process driver internal: TBP>≡
  procedure(process_driver_fill_constants), deferred :: fill_constants

<Prc core def: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine process_driver_fill_constants (driver, data)
      import
        class(process_driver_internal_t), intent(in) :: driver
        type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
      end subroutine process_driver_fill_constants
  end interface

```

### 14.3 Particle Specifiers

In this module we introduce a type for specifying a particle or particle alternative. In addition to the particle specifiers (strings separated by colons), the type contains an optional flag **polarized** and a string **decay**. If the **polarized** flag is set, particle polarization information should be kept when generating events for this process. If the **decay** string is set, it is the ID of a decay process which should be applied to this particle when generating events.

In input/output form, the **polarized** flag is indicated by an asterisk (\*) in brackets, and the **decay** is indicated by its ID in brackets.

The **read** and **write** procedures in this module are not type-bound but generic procedures which handle scalar and array arguments.

```

<particle_specifiers.f90>≡
  <File header>

```

```

module particle_specifiers

  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests

  <Standard module head>

  <Particle specifiers: public>

  <Particle specifiers: types>

  <Particle specifiers: interfaces>

  contains

  <Particle specifiers: procedures>

  <Particle specifiers: tests>

end module particle_specifiers

```

### 14.3.1 Base type

This is an abstract type which can hold a single particle or an expression.

```

<Particle specifiers: types>≡
  type, abstract :: prt_spec_expr_t
  contains
  <Particle specifiers: prt spec expr: TBP>
end type prt_spec_expr_t

```

Output, as a string.

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec expr: TBP>≡
  procedure (prt_spec_expr_to_string), deferred :: to_string

<Particle specifiers: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    function prt_spec_expr_to_string (object) result (string)
    import
    class(prt_spec_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
  end function prt_spec_expr_to_string
end interface

```

Call an `expand` method for all enclosed subexpressions (before handling the current expression).

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure (prt_spec_expr_expand_sub), deferred :: expand_sub

<Particle specifiers: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prt_spec_expr_expand_sub (object)

```



```

import
class(prt_spec_expr_t), intent(inout) :: object
end subroutine prt_spec_expr_expand_sub
end interface

```

### 14.3.2 Wrapper type

This wrapper can hold a particle expression of any kind. We need it so we can make variadic arrays.

```

⟨Particle specifiers: public⟩≡
  public :: prt_expr_t
⟨Particle specifiers: types⟩+≡
  type :: prt_expr_t
    class(prt_spec_expr_t), allocatable :: x
    contains
    ⟨Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP⟩
  end type prt_expr_t

```

Output as a string: delegate.

```

⟨Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: to_string => prt_expr_to_string
⟨Particle specifiers: procedures⟩≡
  recursive function prt_expr_to_string (object) result (string)
    class(prt_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    if (allocated (object%x)) then
      string = object%x%to_string ()
    else
      string = ""
    end if
  end function prt_expr_to_string

```

Allocate the expression as a particle specifier and copy the value.

```

⟨Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: init_spec => prt_expr_init_spec
⟨Particle specifiers: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine prt_expr_init_spec (object, spec)
    class(prt_expr_t), intent(out) :: object
    type(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: spec
    allocate (prt_spec_t :: object%x)
    select type (x => object%x)
    type is (prt_spec_t)
      x = spec
    end select
  end subroutine prt_expr_init_spec

```

Allocate as a list/sum and allocate for a given length

```

⟨Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: init_list => prt_expr_init_list
  procedure :: init_sum => prt_expr_init_sum

```

```

(Particle specifiers: procedures)+≡
subroutine prt_expr_init_list (object, n)
  class(prt_expr_t), intent(out) :: object
  integer, intent(in) :: n
  allocate (prt_spec_list_t :: object%x)
  select type (x => object%x)
  type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    allocate (x%expr (n))
  end select
end subroutine prt_expr_init_list

subroutine prt_expr_init_sum (object, n)
  class(prt_expr_t), intent(out) :: object
  integer, intent(in) :: n
  allocate (prt_spec_sum_t :: object%x)
  select type (x => object%x)
  type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
    allocate (x%expr (n))
  end select
end subroutine prt_expr_init_sum

```

Return the number of terms. This is unity, except if the expression is a sum.

```

(Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_n_terms => prt_expr_get_n_terms

(Particle specifiers: procedures)+≡
function prt_expr_get_n_terms (object) result (n)
  class(prt_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer :: n
  if (allocated (object%x)) then
    select type (x => object%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
      n = size (x%expr)
    class default
      n = 1
    end select
  else
    n = 0
  end if
end function prt_expr_get_n_terms

```

Transform one of the terms, as returned by the previous method, to an array of particle specifiers. The array has more than one entry if the selected term is a list. This makes sense only if the expression has been completely expanded, so the list contains only atoms.

```

(Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: term_to_array => prt_expr_term_to_array

(Particle specifiers: procedures)+≡
recursive subroutine prt_expr_term_to_array (object, array, i)
  class(prt_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
  type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), allocatable :: array
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  integer :: j

```

```

if (allocated (array)) deallocate (array)
select type (x => object%x)
type is (prt_spec_t)
    allocate (array (1))
    array(1) = x
type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    allocate (array (size (x%expr)))
    do j = 1, size (array)
        select type (y => x%expr(j)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_t)
            array(j) = y
        end select
    end do
type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
    call x%expr(i)%term_to_array (array, 1)
end select
end subroutine prt_expr_term_to_array

```

### 14.3.3 The atomic type

The trivial case is a single particle, including optional decay and polarization attributes.

#### Definition

The particle is unstable if the `decay` array is allocated. The `polarized` flag and decays may not be set simultaneously.

```

<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
    public :: prt_spec_t

<Particle specifiers: types>+≡
    type, extends (prt_spec_expr_t) :: prt_spec_t
        private
        type(string_t) :: name
        logical :: polarized = .false.
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
    contains
        <Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>
    end type prt_spec_t

```

#### I/O

Output. Old-style subroutines.

```

<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
    public :: prt_spec_write

<Particle specifiers: interfaces>+≡
    interface prt_spec_write
        module procedure prt_spec_write1
        module procedure prt_spec_write2
    end interface prt_spec_write

```

*<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine prt_spec_write1 (object, unit, advance)
  type(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: advance
  character(3) :: adv
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  adv = "yes"; if (present (advance)) adv = advance
  write (u, "(A)", advance = adv) char (object%to_string ())
end subroutine prt_spec_write1

```

Write an array as a list of particle specifiers.

*<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine prt_spec_write2 (prt_spec, unit, advance)
  type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_spec
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  character(len=*), intent(in), optional :: advance
  character(3) :: adv
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  adv = "yes"; if (present (advance)) adv = advance
  do i = 1, size (prt_spec)
    if (i > 1) write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " ", "
    call prt_spec_write (prt_spec(i), u, advance="no")
  end do
  write (u, "(A)", advance = adv)
end subroutine prt_spec_write2

```

Read. Input may be string or array of strings.

*<Particle specifiers: public>+≡*

```

public :: prt_spec_read

```

*<Particle specifiers: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface prt_spec_read
  module procedure prt_spec_read1
  module procedure prt_spec_read2
end interface prt_spec_read

```

Read a single particle specifier

*<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡*

```

pure subroutine prt_spec_read1 (prt_spec, string)
  type(prt_spec_t), intent(out) :: prt_spec
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
  type(string_t) :: arg, buffer
  integer :: b1, b2, c, n, i
  b1 = scan (string, "(")
  b2 = scan (string, ")")
  if (b1 == 0) then
    prt_spec%name = trim (adjustl (string))
  else
    prt_spec%name = trim (adjustl (extract (string, 1, b1-1)))
    arg = trim (adjustl (extract (string, b1+1, b2-1)))
    if (arg == "*") then

```

```

        prt_spec%polarized = .true.
    else
        n = 0
        buffer = arg
        do
            if (verify (buffer, " ") == 0) exit
            n = n + 1
            c = scan (buffer, "+")
            if (c == 0) exit
            buffer = extract (buffer, c+1)
        end do
        allocate (prt_spec%decay (n))
        buffer = arg
        do i = 1, n
            c = scan (buffer, "+")
            if (c == 0) c = len (buffer) + 1
            prt_spec%decay(i) = trim (adjustl (extract (buffer, 1, c-1)))
            buffer = extract (buffer, c+1)
        end do
    end if
end if
end subroutine prt_spec_read1

```

Read a particle specifier array, given as a single string. The array is allocated to the correct size.

*(Particle specifiers: procedures)*+≡

```

pure subroutine prt_spec_read2 (prt_spec, string)
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: prt_spec
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    type(string_t) :: buffer
    integer :: c, i, n
    n = 0
    buffer = string
    do
        n = n + 1
        c = scan (buffer, ",")
        if (c == 0) exit
        buffer = extract (buffer, c+1)
    end do
    allocate (prt_spec (n))
    buffer = string
    do i = 1, size (prt_spec)
        c = scan (buffer, ",")
        if (c == 0) c = len (buffer) + 1
        call prt_spec_read (prt_spec(i), &
            trim (adjustl (extract (buffer, 1, c-1))))
        buffer = extract (buffer, c+1)
    end do
end subroutine prt_spec_read2

```

## Constructor

Initialize a particle specifier.

```
<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
    public :: new_prt_spec

<Particle specifiers: interfaces>+≡
    interface new_prt_spec
        module procedure new_prt_spec
        module procedure new_prt_spec_polarized
        module procedure new_prt_spec_unstable
    end interface new_prt_spec

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function new_prt_spec (name) result (prt_spec)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(prt_spec_t) :: prt_spec
        prt_spec%name = name
    end function new_prt_spec

    elemental function new_prt_spec_polarized (name, polarized) result (prt_spec)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        logical, intent(in) :: polarized
        type(prt_spec_t) :: prt_spec
        prt_spec%name = name
        prt_spec%polarized = polarized
    end function new_prt_spec_polarized

    pure function new_prt_spec_unstable (name, decay) result (prt_spec)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: decay
        type(prt_spec_t) :: prt_spec
        prt_spec%name = name
        allocate (prt_spec%decay (size (decay)))
        prt_spec%decay = decay
    end function new_prt_spec_unstable
```

## Access Methods

Return the particle name without qualifiers

```
<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>≡
    procedure :: get_name => prt_spec_get_name

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
    elemental function prt_spec_get_name (prt_spec) result (name)
        class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: prt_spec
        type(string_t) :: name
        name = prt_spec%name
    end function prt_spec_get_name
```

Return the name with qualifiers

```
<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: to_string => prt_spec_to_string
```

```

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
function prt_spec_to_string (object) result (string)
  class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: object
  type(string_t) :: string
  integer :: i
  string = object%name
  if (allocated (object%decay)) then
    string = string // "("
    do i = 1, size (object%decay)
      if (i > 1) string = string // " + "
      string = string // object%decay(i)
    end do
    string = string // ")"
  else if (object%polarized) then
    string = string // "(*)"
  end if
end function prt_spec_to_string

```

Return the polarization flag

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_polarized => prt_spec_is_polarized
<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prt_spec_is_polarized (prt_spec) result (flag)
    class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: prt_spec
    logical :: flag
    flag = prt_spec%polarized
  end function prt_spec_is_polarized

```

The particle is unstable if there is a decay array.

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_unstable => prt_spec_is_unstable
<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prt_spec_is_unstable (prt_spec) result (flag)
    class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: prt_spec
    logical :: flag
    flag = allocated (prt_spec%decay)
  end function prt_spec_is_unstable

```

Return the number of decay channels

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_decays => prt_spec_get_n_decays
<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  elemental function prt_spec_get_n_decays (prt_spec) result (n)
    class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: prt_spec
    integer :: n
    if (allocated (prt_spec%decay)) then
      n = size (prt_spec%decay)
    else
      n = 0
    end if
  end function prt_spec_get_n_decays

```

Return the decay channels

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_decays => prt_spec_get_decays

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prt_spec_get_decays (prt_spec, decay)
    class(prt_spec_t), intent(in) :: prt_spec
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: decay
    if (allocated (prt_spec%decay)) then
      allocate (decay (size (prt_spec%decay)))
      decay = prt_spec%decay
    else
      allocate (decay (0))
    end if
  end subroutine prt_spec_get_decays

```

## Miscellaneous

There is nothing to expand here:

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: expand_sub => prt_spec_expand_sub

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prt_spec_expand_sub (object)
    class(prt_spec_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine prt_spec_expand_sub

```

### 14.3.4 List

A list of particle specifiers, indicating, e.g., the final state of a process.

```

<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
  public :: prt_spec_list_t

<Particle specifiers: types>+≡
  type, extends (prt_spec_expr_t) :: prt_spec_list_t
    type(prt_spec_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: expr
    contains
    <Particle specifiers: prt spec list: TBP>
  end type prt_spec_list_t

```

Output: Concatenate the components. Insert brackets if the component is also a list. The components of the `expr` array, if any, should all be filled.

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec list: TBP>≡
  procedure :: to_string => prt_spec_list_to_string

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  recursive function prt_spec_list_to_string (object) result (string)
    class(prt_spec_list_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(string_t) :: string
    integer :: i
    string = ""
    if (allocated (object%expr)) then

```



```

do i = 1, size (object%expr)
  if (i > 1) string = string // ", "
  select type (x => object%expr(i)%x)
  type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    string = string // "(" // x%to_string () // ")"
  class default
    string = string // x%to_string ()
  end select
end do
end if
end function prt_spec_list_to_string

```

Flatten: if there is a subexpression which is also a list, include the components as direct members of the current list.

```

⟨Particle specifiers: prt spec list: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: flatten => prt_spec_list_flatten

⟨Particle specifiers: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine prt_spec_list_flatten (object)
    class(prt_spec_list_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(prt_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tmp_expr
    integer :: i, n_flat, i_flat
    n_flat = 0
    do i = 1, size (object%expr)
      select type (y => object%expr(i)%x)
      type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        n_flat = n_flat + size (y%expr)
      class default
        n_flat = n_flat + 1
      end select
    end do
    if (n_flat > size (object%expr)) then
      allocate (tmp_expr (n_flat))
      i_flat = 0
      do i = 1, size (object%expr)
        select type (y => object%expr(i)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_list_t)
          tmp_expr (i_flat + 1 : i_flat + size (y%expr)) = y%expr
          i_flat = i_flat + size (y%expr)
        class default
          tmp_expr (i_flat + 1) = object%expr(i)
          i_flat = i_flat + 1
        end select
      end do
    end if
    if (allocated (tmp_expr)) &
      call move_alloc (from = tmp_expr, to = object%expr)
  end subroutine prt_spec_list_flatten

```

Convert a list of sums into a sum of lists. (Subexpressions which are not sums are left untouched.)

```

⟨Particle specifiers: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine distribute_prt_spec_list (object)

```

```

class(prt_spec_expr_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: object
class(prt_spec_expr_t), allocatable :: new_object
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n, ii
integer :: k, n_expr, n_terms, i_term
select type (object)
type is (prt_spec_list_t)
  n_expr = size (object%expr)
  allocate (n (n_expr), source = 1)
  allocate (ii (n_expr), source = 1)
  do k = 1, size (object%expr)
    select type (y => object%expr(k)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
      n(k) = size (y%expr)
    end select
  end do
  n_terms = product (n)
  if (n_terms > 1) then
    allocate (prt_spec_sum_t :: new_object)
    select type (new_object)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
      allocate (new_object%expr (n_terms))
      do i_term = 1, n_terms
        allocate (prt_spec_list_t :: new_object%expr(i_term)%x)
        select type (x => new_object%expr(i_term)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_list_t)
          allocate (x%expr (n_expr))
          do k = 1, n_expr
            select type (y => object%expr(k)%x)
            type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
              x%expr(k) = y%expr(ii(k))
            class default
              x%expr(k) = object%expr(k)
            end select
          end do
        end select
        INCR_INDEX: do k = n_expr, 1, -1
          if (ii(k) < n(k)) then
            ii(k) = ii(k) + 1
            exit INCR_INDEX
          else
            ii(k) = 1
          end if
        end do INCR_INDEX
      end do
    end select
  end if
end select
if (allocated (new_object)) call move_alloc (from = new_object, to = object)
end subroutine distribute_prt_spec_list

```

Apply expand to all components of the list.

*(Particle specifiers: prt spec list: TBP)* +=  
 procedure :: expand\_sub => prt\_spec\_list\_expand\_sub

```

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine prt_spec_list_expand_sub (object)
  class(prt_spec_list_t), intent(inout) :: object
  integer :: i
  if (allocated (object%expr)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%expr)
      call object%expr(i)%expand ()
    end do
  end if
end subroutine prt_spec_list_expand_sub

```

### 14.3.5 Sum

A sum of particle specifiers, indicating, e.g., a sum of final states.

```

<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
public :: prt_spec_sum_t

<Particle specifiers: types>+≡
type, extends (prt_spec_expr_t) :: prt_spec_sum_t
  type(prt_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: expr
contains
  <Particle specifiers: prt spec sum: TBP>
end type prt_spec_sum_t

```

Output: Concatenate the components. Insert brackets if the component is a list or also a sum. The components of the `expr` array, if any, should all be filled.

```

<Particle specifiers: prt spec sum: TBP>≡
procedure :: to_string => prt_spec_sum_to_string

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
recursive function prt_spec_sum_to_string (object) result (string)
  class(prt_spec_sum_t), intent(in) :: object
  type(string_t) :: string
  integer :: i
  string = ""
  if (allocated (object%expr)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%expr)
      if (i > 1) string = string // " + "
      select type (x => object%expr(i)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_list_t)
          string = string // "(" // x%to_string () // ")"
        type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
          string = string // "(" // x%to_string () // ")"
        class default
          string = string // x%to_string ()
      end select
    end do
  end if
end function prt_spec_sum_to_string

```

Flatten: if there is a subexpression which is also a sum, include the components as direct members of the current sum.

This is identical to `prt_spec_list_flatten` above, except for the type.

```

(Particle specifiers: prt spec sum: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: flatten => prt_spec_sum_flatten

(Particle specifiers: procedures)+≡
  subroutine prt_spec_sum_flatten (object)
    class(prt_spec_sum_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(prt_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tmp_expr
    integer :: i, n_flat, i_flat
    n_flat = 0
    do i = 1, size (object%expr)
      select type (y => object%expr(i)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
          n_flat = n_flat + size (y%expr)
          class default
            n_flat = n_flat + 1
        end select
      end do
    if (n_flat > size (object%expr)) then
      allocate (tmp_expr (n_flat))
      i_flat = 0
      do i = 1, size (object%expr)
        select type (y => object%expr(i)%x)
          type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
            tmp_expr (i_flat + 1 : i_flat + size (y%expr)) = y%expr
            i_flat = i_flat + size (y%expr)
          class default
            tmp_expr (i_flat + 1) = object%expr(i)
            i_flat = i_flat + 1
          end select
        end do
      end if
      if (allocated (tmp_expr)) &
        call move_alloc (from = tmp_expr, to = object%expr)
    end subroutine prt_spec_sum_flatten

```

Apply `expand` to all terms in the sum.

```

(Particle specifiers: prt spec sum: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: expand_sub => prt_spec_sum_expand_sub

(Particle specifiers: procedures)+≡
  recursive subroutine prt_spec_sum_expand_sub (object)
    class(prt_spec_sum_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (object%expr)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%expr)
        call object%expr(i)%expand ()
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine prt_spec_sum_expand_sub

```

### 14.3.6 Expression Expansion

The `expand` method transforms each particle specifier expression into a sum of lists, according to the rules

$$a, (b, c) \rightarrow a, b, c \quad (14.1)$$

$$a + (b + c) \rightarrow a + b + c \quad (14.2)$$

$$a, b + c \rightarrow (a, b) + (a, c) \quad (14.3)$$

Note that the precedence of comma and plus are opposite to this expansion, so the parentheses in the final expression are necessary.

We assume that subexpressions are filled, i.e., arrays are allocated.

```

<Particle specifiers: prt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: expand => prt_expr_expand

<Particle specifiers: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine prt_expr_expand (expr)
    class(prt_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    if (allocated (expr%x)) then
      call distribute_prt_spec_list (expr%x)
      call expr%x%expand_sub ()
      select type (x => expr%x)
        type is (prt_spec_list_t)
          call x%flatten ()
        type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
          call x%flatten ()
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine prt_expr_expand

```

### 14.3.7 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Particle specifiers: public>+≡
  public :: particle_specifiers_test

<Particle specifiers: tests>≡
  subroutine particle_specifiers_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Particle specifiers: execute tests>
  end subroutine particle_specifiers_test

```

### Particle specifier array

Define, read and write an array of particle specifiers.

```

<Particle specifiers: execute tests>≡
  call test (particle_specifiers_1, "particle_specifiers_1", &
    "Handle particle specifiers", &
    u, results)

```

*<Particle specifiers: tests>+≡*

```

subroutine particle_specifiers_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_spec
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
  type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_decay
  integer :: i, j

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: particle_specifiers_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Read and write a particle specifier array"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (prt_spec (5))
  prt_spec = [ &
    new_prt_spec (var_str ("a")), &
    new_prt_spec (var_str ("b"), .true.), &
    new_prt_spec (var_str ("c"), [var_str ("dec1")]), &
    new_prt_spec (var_str ("d"), [var_str ("dec1"), var_str ("dec2")]), &
    new_prt_spec (var_str ("e"), no_decay) &
  ]
  do i = 1, size (prt_spec)
    write (u, "(A)")  char (prt_spec(i)%to_string ())
  end do
  write (u, "(A)")

  call prt_spec_read (prt_spec, &
    var_str (" a, b( *), c( dec1), d (dec1 + dec2 ), e()"))
  call prt_spec_write (prt_spec, u)

  do i = 1, size (prt_spec)
    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A,A)")  char (prt_spec(i)%get_name ()), ":"
    write (u, "(A,L1)")  "polarized = ", prt_spec(i)%is_polarized ()
    write (u, "(A,L1)")  "unstable = ", prt_spec(i)%is_unstable ()
    write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_decays = ", prt_spec(i)%get_n_decays ()
    call prt_spec(i)%get_decays (decay)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "decays   ="
    do j = 1, size (decay)
      write (u, "(ix,A)", advance="no") char (decay(j))
    end do
    write (u, "(A)")
  end do

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: particle_specifiers_1"
end subroutine particle_specifiers_1

```

## Particle specifier expressions

Nested expressions (only basic particles, no decay specs).

*<Particle specifiers: execute tests>+≡*

```

call test (particle_specifiers_2, "particle_specifiers_2", &

```

```

        "Particle specifier expressions", &
        u, results)

(Particle specifiers: tests)+=
subroutine particle_specifiers_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(prt_spec_t) :: a, b, c, d, e, f
    type(prt_expr_t) :: pe1, pe2, pe3
    type(prt_expr_t) :: pe4, pe5, pe6, pe7, pe8, pe9
    integer :: i
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pa

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: particle_specifiers_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Create and display particle expressions"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Basic expressions"
    write (u, *)

    a = new_prt_spec (var_str ("a"))
    b = new_prt_spec (var_str ("b"))
    c = new_prt_spec (var_str ("c"))
    d = new_prt_spec (var_str ("d"))
    e = new_prt_spec (var_str ("e"))
    f = new_prt_spec (var_str ("f"))

    call pe1%init_spec (a)
    write (u, "(A)")  char (pe1%to_string ())

    call pe2%init_sum (2)
    select type (x => pe2%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
        call x%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call x%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    write (u, "(A)")  char (pe2%to_string ())

    call pe3%init_list (2)
    select type (x => pe3%x)
    type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        call x%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call x%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    write (u, "(A)")  char (pe3%to_string ())

    write (u, *)
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Nested expressions"
    write (u, *)

    call pe4%init_list (2)
    select type (x => pe4%x)
    type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        call x%expr(1)%init_sum (2)
        select type (y => x%expr(1)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_sum_t)

```

```

        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    call x%expr(2)%init_spec (c)
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe4%to_string ())

call pe5%init_list (2)
select type (x => pe5%x)
type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    call x%expr(1)%init_list (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(1)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    call x%expr(2)%init_spec (c)
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe5%to_string ())

call pe6%init_sum (2)
select type (x => pe6%x)
type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
    call x%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
    call x%expr(2)%init_sum (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(2)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (b)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (c)
    end select
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe6%to_string ())

call pe7%init_list (2)
select type (x => pe7%x)
type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    call x%expr(1)%init_sum (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(1)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call y%expr(2)%init_list (2)
        select type (z => y%expr(2)%x)
        type is (prt_spec_list_t)
            call z%expr(1)%init_spec (b)
            call z%expr(2)%init_spec (c)
        end select
    end select
    call x%expr(2)%init_spec (d)
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe7%to_string ())

call pe8%init_sum (2)
select type (x => pe8%x)
type is (prt_spec_sum_t)

```



```

    call x%expr(1)%init_list (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(1)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    call x%expr(2)%init_list (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(2)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_list_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (c)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (d)
    end select
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe8%to_string ())

call pe9%init_list (3)
select type (x => pe9%x)
type is (prt_spec_list_t)
    call x%expr(1)%init_sum (2)
    select type (y => x%expr(1)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (a)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (b)
    end select
    call x%expr(2)%init_spec (c)
    call x%expr(3)%init_sum (3)
    select type (y => x%expr(3)%x)
    type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
        call y%expr(1)%init_spec (d)
        call y%expr(2)%init_spec (e)
        call y%expr(3)%init_spec (f)
    end select
end select
write (u, "(A)") char (pe9%to_string ())

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Expand as sum"
write (u, *)

call pe1%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe1%to_string ())

call pe4%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe4%to_string ())

call pe5%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe5%to_string ())

call pe6%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe6%to_string ())

call pe7%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe7%to_string ())

```

```

call pe8%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe8%to_string ())

call pe9%expand ()
write (u, "(A)") char (pe9%to_string ())

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transform to arrays:"

write (u, "(A)")  "* Atomic specifier"
do i = 1, pe1%get_n_terms ()
  call pe1%term_to_array (pa, i)
  call prt_spec_write (pa, u)
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* List"
do i = 1, pe5%get_n_terms ()
  call pe5%term_to_array (pa, i)
  call prt_spec_write (pa, u)
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sum of atoms"
do i = 1, pe6%get_n_terms ()
  call pe6%term_to_array (pa, i)
  call prt_spec_write (pa, u)
end do

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)")  "* Sum of lists"
do i = 1, pe9%get_n_terms ()
  call pe9%term_to_array (pa, i)
  call prt_spec_write (pa, u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: particle_specifiers_2"
end subroutine particle_specifiers_2

```

## 14.4 Process library access

Processes (the code and data that are necessary for evaluating matrix elements of a particular process or process component) are organized in process libraries. In full form, process libraries contain generated and dynamically compiled and linked code, so they are actual libraries on the OS level. Alternatively, there may be simple processes that can be generated without referring to external libraries, and external libraries that are just linked in.

This module interfaces the OS to create, build, and use process libraries.

We work with two related data structures. There is the list of process configurations that stores the user input and data derived from it. A given process

configuration list is scanned for creating a process library, which consists of both data and code. The creation step involves calling external programs and incorporating external code.

For the subsequent integration and event generation steps, we read the process library. We also support partial (re)creation of the process library. To this end, we should be able to reconstruct the configuration data records from the process library.

```

<process_libraries.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module process_libraries

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use md5
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use lexers
    use variables
    use user_code_interface
    use models
    use flavors

    use process_constants
    use prclib_interfaces
    use prc_core_def
    use particle_specifiers

    <Standard module head>

    <Process libraries: public>

    <Process libraries: parameters>

    <Process libraries: types>

    <Process libraries: interfaces>

    <Process libraries: test declarations>

    contains

    <Process libraries: procedures>

    <Process libraries: tests>

  end module process_libraries

```

### 14.4.1 Auxiliary stuff

Here is a small subroutine that strips the left-hand side and the equals sign off an equation.

```
(Process libraries: procedures)≡  
  subroutine strip_prefix (buffer)  
    character(*), intent(inout) :: buffer  
    type(string_t) :: string, prefix  
    string = buffer  
    call split (string, prefix, "=")  
    buffer = string  
  end subroutine strip_prefix
```

### 14.4.2 Process definition objects

We collect process configuration data in a derived type, `process_def_t`. A process can be a collection of several components which are treated as a single entity for the purpose of observables and event generation. Multiple process components may initially be defined by the user. The system may add additional components, e.g., subtraction terms. The common data type is `process_component_def_t`. Within each component, there are several universal data items, and a part which depend on the particular process variant. The latter is covered by an abstract type `prc_core_def_t` and its extensions.

#### Wrapper for components

We define a wrapper type for the configuration of individual components.

The string `basename` is used for building file, module, and function names for the current process component. Initially, it will be built from the corresponding process basename by appending an alphanumeric suffix.

The logical `initial` tells whether this is a user-defined (true) or system-generated (false) configuration.

The numbers `n_in`, `n_out`, and `n_tot` denote the incoming, outgoing and total number of particles (partons) participating in the process component, respectively. These are the nominal particles, as input by the user (recombination may change the particle content, for the output events).

The string arrays `prt_in` and `prt_out` hold the particle specifications as provided by the user. For a system-generated process component, they remain deallocated.

The `method` string is used to determine the type of process matrix element and how it is obtained.

The `description` string collects the information about particle content and method in a single human-readable string.

The pointer object `core_def` is allocated according to the actual process variant, which depends on the method. The subobject holds any additional configuration data that is relevant for the process component.

We assume that no finalizer is needed.

```
(Process libraries: public)≡  
  public :: process_component_def_t
```

```

(Process libraries: types)≡
  type :: process_component_def_t
    private
      type(string_t) :: basename
      logical :: initial = .false.
      integer :: n_in = 0
      integer :: n_out = 0
      integer :: n_tot = 0
      type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
      type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out
      type(string_t) :: method
      type(string_t) :: description
      class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
      character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    contains
      (Process libraries: process component def: TBP)
end type process_component_def_t

```

Display the complete content.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => process_component_def_write

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_write (object, unit)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Component ID          = ", char (object%basename)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Initial component    = ", object%initial
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0,1x,I0,1x,I0)") "N (in, out, tot)    = ", &
      object%n_in, object%n_out, object%n_tot
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "Particle content    = "
    if (allocated (object%prt_in)) then
      call prt_spec_write (object%prt_in, u, advance="no")
    else
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " => "
    if (allocated (object%prt_out)) then
      call prt_spec_write (object%prt_out, u, advance="no")
    else
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(A)")
    if (object%method /= "") then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Method              = ", &
        char (object%method)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Method              = [undefined]"
    end if
    if (allocated (object%core_def)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Process variant      = ", &
        char (object%core_def%type_string ())
    end if
  end subroutine process_component_def_write

```

```

        call object%core_def%write (u)
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Process variant      = [undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (def)        = ', object%md5sum, '"
end subroutine process_component_def_write

```

Read the process component definition. Allocate the process variant definition with appropriate type, matching the type name on file with the provided templates.

```

<Process libraries: process component def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => process_component_def_read

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_component_def_read (component, unit, core_def_templates)
        class(process_component_def_t), intent(out) :: component
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: core_def_templates
        character(80) :: buffer
        type(string_t) :: var_buffer, prefix, in_state, out_state
        type(string_t) :: variant_type

        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        call strip_prefix (buffer)
        component%basename = trim (adjustl (buffer))

        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        call strip_prefix (buffer)
        read (buffer, *) component%initial

        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        call strip_prefix (buffer)
        read (buffer, *) component%n_in, component%n_out, component%n_tot

        call get (unit, var_buffer)
        call split (var_buffer, prefix, "=") ! keeps 'in => out'
        call split (var_buffer, prefix, "=") ! actually: separator is '=>'

        in_state = prefix
        if (component%n_in > 0) then
            call prt_spec_read (component%prt_in, in_state)
        end if

        out_state = extract (var_buffer, 2)
        if (component%n_out > 0) then
            call prt_spec_read (component%prt_out, out_state)
        end if

        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        call strip_prefix (buffer)
        component%method = trim (adjustl (buffer))
        if (component%method == "[undefined]") &
            component%method = ""
    end subroutine

```

```

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
variant_type = trim (adjustl (buffer))
call allocate_core_def &
    (core_def_templates, variant_type, component%core_def)
if (allocated (component%core_def)) then
    call component%core_def/read (unit)
end if

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
read (buffer(3:34), "(A32)") component%md5sum

end subroutine process_component_def_read

```

Short account.

```

<Process libraries: process component def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: show => process_component_def_show

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_show (object, unit)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(6x,A)", advance="no") char (object%basename)
    if (.not. object%initial) &
        write (u, "('*')", advance="no")
    write (u, "(:',1x)", advance="no")
    if (allocated (object%prt_in)) then
        call prt_spec_write (object%prt_in, u, advance="no")
    else
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") " => "
    if (allocated (object%prt_out)) then
        call prt_spec_write (object%prt_out, u, advance="no")
    else
        write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[undefined]"
    end if
    if (object%method /= "") then
        write (u, "(2x,['A,'])" char (object%method)
    else
        write (u, *)
    end if
  end subroutine process_component_def_show

```

Compute the MD5 sum of a process component. We reset the stored MD5 sum to the empty string (so a previous value is not included in the calculation), the write a temporary file and calculate the MD5 sum of that file.

This implies that all data that are displayed by the `write` method become part of the MD5 sum calculation.

The `model` is not part of the object, but must be included in the MD5 sum. Otherwise, modifying the model and nothing else would not trigger remaking the process-component source. Note that the model parameters may change later and therefore are not incorporated.

After the MD5 sum of the component has been computed, we communicate it to the `writer` subobject of the specific `core_def` component. Although these types are abstract, the MD5-related features are valid for the abstract types.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_component_def_compute_md5sum

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_compute_md5sum (component, model)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(model_t), intent(in), pointer :: model
    integer :: u
    component%md5sum = ""
    u = free_unit ()
    open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
    if (associated (model)) write (u, "(A32)") model_get_md5sum (model)
    call component%write (u)
    rewind (u)
    component%md5sum = md5sum (u)
    close (u)
    if (allocated (component%core_def)) then
      call component%core_def%set_md5sum (component%md5sum)
    end if
  end subroutine process_component_def_compute_md5sum

```

Allocate the process driver (with a suitable type) for a process component. For internal processes, we may set all data already at this stage.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: allocate_driver => process_component_def_allocate_driver

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_allocate_driver (component, driver)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
    if (allocated (component%core_def)) then
      call component%core_def%allocate_driver (driver, component%basename)
    end if
  end subroutine process_component_def_allocate_driver

```

Tell whether the process core needs external code.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: needs_code => process_component_def_needs_code

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_component_def_needs_code (component) result (flag)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    logical :: flag
    flag = component%core_def%needs_code ()
  end function process_component_def_needs_code

```



If there is external code, the `core_def` subobject should provide a writer object. This method returns a pointer to the writer.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_writer_ptr => process_component_def_get_writer_ptr

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_component_def_get_writer_ptr (component) result (writer)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in), target :: component
    class(prc_writer_t), pointer :: writer
    writer => component%core_def%writer
  end function process_component_def_get_writer_ptr

```

Return an array which holds the names of all C functions that this process component implements.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_features => process_component_def_get_features

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_component_def_get_features (component) result (features)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: features
    call component%core_def%get_features (features)
  end function process_component_def_get_features

```

Assign procedure pointers in the driver component (external processes). For internal processes, this is meaningless.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: connect => process_component_def_connect

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_connect &
    (component, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
    select type (proc_driver)
    class is (process_driver_internal_t)
      ! nothing to do
    class default
      call component%core_def%connect (lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    end select
  end subroutine process_component_def_connect

```

Return a pointer to the process core definition, which is of abstract type.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_core_def_ptr => process_component_get_core_def_ptr

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_component_get_core_def_ptr (component) result (ptr)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in), target :: component
    class(prc_core_def_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => component%core_def
  end function process_component_get_core_def_ptr

```

Return nominal particle counts, as input by the user.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_n_in => process_component_def_get_n_in
  procedure :: get_n_out => process_component_def_get_n_out
  procedure :: get_n_tot => process_component_def_get_n_tot

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_component_def_get_n_in (component) result (n_in)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    integer :: n_in
    n_in = component%n_in
  end function process_component_def_get_n_in

  function process_component_def_get_n_out (component) result (n_out)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    integer :: n_out
    n_out = component%n_out
  end function process_component_def_get_n_out

  function process_component_def_get_n_tot (component) result (n_tot)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    integer :: n_tot
    n_tot = component%n_tot
  end function process_component_def_get_n_tot

```

Allocate and return string arrays for the incoming and outgoing particles.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_prt_in => process_component_def_get_prt_in
  procedure :: get_prt_out => process_component_def_get_prt_out

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_component_def_get_prt_in (component, prt)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: prt
    integer :: i
    allocate (prt (component%n_in))
    do i = 1, component%n_in
      prt(i) = component%prt_in(i)%to_string ()
    end do
  end subroutine process_component_def_get_prt_in

  subroutine process_component_def_get_prt_out (component, prt)
    class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: prt
    integer :: i
    allocate (prt (component%n_out))
    do i = 1, component%n_out
      prt(i) = component%prt_out(i)%to_string ()
    end do
  end subroutine process_component_def_get_prt_out

```

Return the MD5 sum.

```

(Process libraries: process component def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum => process_component_def_get_md5sum

```

```

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
function process_component_def_get_md5sum (component) result (md5sum)
  class(process_component_def_t), intent(in) :: component
  character(32) :: md5sum
  md5sum = component%md5sum
end function process_component_def_get_md5sum

```

## Process definition

The process component definitions are collected in a common process definition object.

The `id` is the ID string that the user has provided for identifying this process. It must be a string that is allowed as part of a Fortran variable name, since it may be used for generating code.

The number `n_in` is 1 or 2 for a decay or scattering process, respectively. This must be identical to `n_in` for all components.

The initial and extra component definitions (see above) are allocated as the `initial` and `extra` arrays, respectively. The latter are determined from the former.

The `md5sum` is used to verify the integrity of the configuration.

```

<Process libraries: public>+≡
public :: process_def_t

<Process libraries: types>+≡
type :: process_def_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: id
  integer :: num_id = 0
  type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  integer :: n_in = 0
  integer :: n_initial = 0
  integer :: n_extra = 0
  type(process_component_def_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: initial
  type(process_component_def_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: extra
  character(32) :: md5sum = ""
contains
  <Process libraries: process def: TBP>
end type process_def_t

```

Write the process definition including components:

```

<Process libraries: process def: TBP>≡
procedure :: write => process_def_write

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_def_write (object, unit)
  class(process_def_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  integer :: i
  write (unit, "(1x,A,A,A)") "ID = '", char (object%id), "'"
  if (object%num_id /= 0) &
    write (unit, "(1x,A,I0)") "ID(num) = ", object%num_id

```

```

select case (object%n_in)
case (1); write (unit, "(1x,A)") "Decay"
case (2); write (unit, "(1x,A)") "Scattering"
case default
    write (unit, "(1x,A)") "[Undefined process]"
    return
end select
if (object%model_name /= "") then
    write (unit, "(1x,A,A)") "Model = ", char (object%model_name)
else
    write (unit, "(1x,A)") "Model = [undefined]"
end if
write (unit, "(1x,A,I0)") "Initially defined component(s) = ", &
    object%n_initial
write (unit, "(1x,A,I0)") "Extra generated component(s) = ", &
    object%n_extra
write (unit, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum = '", object%md5sum, "'"
if (allocated (object%initial)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%initial)
        write (unit, "(1x,A,I0)") "Component #", i
        call object%initial(i)%write (unit)
    end do
end if
if (allocated (object%extra)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%extra)
        write (unit, "(1x,A,I0)") "Component #", object%n_initial + i
        call object%extra(i)%write (unit)
    end do
end if
end subroutine process_def_write

```

Read the process definition including components.

*(Process libraries: process def: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: read => process_def_read

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_def_read (object, unit, core_def_templates)
class(process_def_t), intent(out) :: object
integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: core_def_templates
integer :: i, i1, i2
character(80) :: buffer, ref
read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
i1 = scan (buffer, "'")
i2 = scan (buffer, "'", back=.true.)
if (i2 > i1) then
    object%id = buffer(i1+1:i2-1)
else
    object%id = ""
end if

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
select case (buffer(2:11))

```

```

case ("Decay      "); object%n_in = 1
case ("Scattering"); object%n_in = 2
case default
    return
end select

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
object%model_name = trim (adjustl (buffer))
if (object%model_name == "[undefined]") object%model_name = ""

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
read (buffer, *) object%n_initial

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
read (buffer, *) object%n_extra

read (unit, "(A)") buffer
call strip_prefix (buffer)
read (buffer(3:34), "(A32)") object%md5sum

if (object%n_initial > 0) then
    allocate (object%initial (object%n_initial))
    do i = 1, object%n_initial
        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        write (ref, "(1x,A,I0)") "Component #", i
        if (buffer /= ref) return ! Wrong component header
        call object%initial(i)%read (unit, core_def_templates)
    end do
end if

end subroutine process_def_read

```

Short account.

```

<Process libraries: process def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: show => process_def_show

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_def_show (object, unit)
        class(process_def_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        integer :: i
        write (unit, "(4x,A)", advance="no") char (object%id)
        if (object%num_id /= 0) &
            write (unit, "(1x,'( ',I0,' )'", advance="no") object%num_id
        if (object%model_name /= "") &
            write (unit, "(1x,'[ ',A,' ]'", advance="no") char (object%model_name)
        if (allocated (object%initial)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%initial)
                call object%initial(i)%show (unit)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

    if (allocated (object%extra)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%extra)
        call object%extra(i)%show (unit)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine process_def_show

```

Initialize an entry (initialize the process definition inside). We allocate the 'initial' set of components. Extra components remain unallocated.

The model should be present as a pointer. This allows us to retrieve the model's MD5 sum. However, for various tests it is sufficient to have the name.

We create the basenames for the process components by appending a suffix which we increment for each component.

```

<Process libraries: process def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => process_def_init

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_def_init (def, id, &
    model, model_name, n_in, n_components, num_id)
    class(process_def_t), intent(out) :: def
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: id
    type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_in
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_components
    integer, intent(in), optional :: num_id
    character(16) :: suffix
    integer :: i
    if (present (id)) then
      def%id = id
    else
      def%id = ""
    end if
    if (present (num_id)) then
      def%num_id = num_id
    end if
    if (present (model)) then
      def%model => model
      def%model_name = model%get_name ()
    else
      def%model => null ()
      if (present (model_name)) then
        def%model_name = model_name
      else
        def%model_name = ""
      end if
    end if
    if (present (n_in)) def%n_in = n_in
    if (present (n_components)) then
      def%n_initial = n_components
      allocate (def%initial (n_components))
    end if
    def%initial%initial = .true.
    def%initial%method = ""
  end subroutine process_def_init

```

```

do i = 1, def%n_initial
  write (suffix, "(A,I0)")  "_i", i
  def%initial(i)%basename = def%id // trim (suffix)
end do
def%initial%description = ""
end subroutine process_def_init

```

Initialize an initial component. The particle content must be specified. The process core block is not (yet) allocated.

We assume that the particle arrays match the `n_in` and `n_out` values in size. The model is referred to by name; it is identified as an existing model later. The index `i` must refer to an existing element of the component array.

Data specific for the process core of a component are imported as the `core_def` argument. We should allocate an object of class `prc_core_def_t` with the appropriate specific type, fill it, and transfer it to the process component definition here. The allocation is moved, so the original allocated object is returned empty.

```

<Process libraries: process def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: import_component => process_def_import_component

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_def_import_component (def, &
    i, n_out, prt_in, prt_out, method, variant)
    class(process_def_t), intent(inout) :: def
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_out
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: prt_in
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: prt_out
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: method
    class(prc_core_def_t), &
      intent(inout), allocatable, optional :: variant
    integer :: p
    associate (comp => def%initial(i))
      if (present (n_out)) then
        comp%n_in = def%n_in
        comp%n_out = n_out
        comp%n_tot = def%n_in + n_out
      end if
      if (present (prt_in)) then
        allocate (comp%prt_in (size (prt_in)))
        comp%prt_in = prt_in
      end if
      if (present (prt_out)) then
        allocate (comp%prt_out (size (prt_out)))
        comp%prt_out = prt_out
      end if
      if (present (method)) comp%method = method
      if (present (variant)) then
        call move_alloc (variant, comp%core_def)
      end if
      if (allocated (comp%prt_in) .and. allocated (comp%prt_out)) then
        associate (d => comp%description)
          d = ""

```

```

do p = 1, size (prt_in)
  if (p > 1) d = d // ", "
  d = d // comp%prt_in(p)%to_string ()
end do
d = d // " => "
do p = 1, size (prt_out)
  if (p > 1) d = d // ", "
  d = d // comp%prt_out(p)%to_string ()
end do
if (comp%method /= "") then
  d = d // " [" // comp%method // "]"
end if
end associate
end if
end associate
end subroutine process_def_import_component

```

Compute the MD5 sum for this process definition. We compute the MD5 sums for all components individually, then concatenate a string of those and compute the MD5 sum of this string. We also include the model name. All other data part of the component definitions.

```

(Process libraries: process def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_def_compute_md5sum

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_def_compute_md5sum (def)
    class(process_def_t), intent(inout) :: def
    integer :: i
    type(string_t) :: buffer
    buffer = def%model_name
    do i = 1, def%n_initial
      call def%initial(i)%compute_md5sum (def%model)
      buffer = buffer // def%initial(i)%md5sum
    end do
    do i = 1, def%n_extra
      call def%extra(i)%compute_md5sum (def%model)
      buffer = buffer // def%initial(i)%md5sum
    end do
    def%md5sum = md5sum (char (buffer))
  end subroutine process_def_compute_md5sum

```

Return the MD5 sum of the process or of a process component.

```

(Process libraries: process def: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum => process_def_get_md5sum

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_def_get_md5sum (def, i_component) result (md5sum)
    class(process_def_t), intent(in) :: def
    integer, intent(in), optional :: i_component
    character(32) :: md5sum
    if (present (i_component)) then
      md5sum = def%initial(i_component)%md5sum
    else
      md5sum = def%md5sum
    end if
  end function process_def_get_md5sum

```



```

    end if
end function process_def_get_md5sum

```

This query tells whether a specific process component relies on external code. This includes all traditional WHIZARD matrix elements which rely on O'MEGA for code generation. Other process components (trivial decays, subtraction terms) do not require external code.

NOTE: Implemented only for initial component.

The query is passed to the process component.

```

⟨Process libraries: process def: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: needs_code => process_def_needs_code

⟨Process libraries: procedures⟩+≡
  function process_def_needs_code (def, i_component) result (flag)
    class(process_def_t), intent(in) :: def
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    logical :: flag
    flag = def%initial(i_component)%needs_code ()
  end function process_def_needs_code

```

## Process definition list

A list of process definitions is the starting point for creating a process library. The list is built when reading the user input. When reading an existing process library, the list is used for cross-checking and updating the configuration.

We need a type for the list entry. The simplest way is to extend the process definition type, so all methods apply to the process definition directly.

```

⟨Process libraries: public⟩+≡
  public :: process_def_entry_t

⟨Process libraries: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (process_def_t) :: process_def_entry_t
  private
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  end type process_def_entry_t

```

This is the type for the list itself.

```

⟨Process libraries: types⟩+≡
  type :: process_def_list_t
  private
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
  contains
    ⟨Process libraries: process def list: TBP⟩
  end type process_def_list_t

```

The deallocates the list iteratively. We assume that the list entries do not need finalization themselves.

```

⟨Process libraries: process def list: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: final => process_def_list_final

```

```

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_def_list_final (list)
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(inout) :: list
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  nullify (list%last)
  do while (associated (list%first))
    current => list%first
    list%first => current%next
    deallocate (current)
  end do
end subroutine process_def_list_final

```

Write the complete list.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => process_def_list_write

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_def_list_write (object, unit, libpath)
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: libpath
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer :: i, u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  if (associated (object%first)) then
    i = 1
    entry => object%first
    do while (associated (entry))
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Process #", i, ":"
      call entry%write (u)
      i = i + 1
      entry => entry%next
      if (associated (entry)) write (u, *)
    end do
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process definition list: [empty]"
  end if
end subroutine process_def_list_write

```

Short account.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: show => process_def_list_show

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_def_list_show (object, unit)
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  if (associated (object%first)) then
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "Processes:"
    entry => object%first
    do while (associated (entry))

```

```

        call entry%show (u)
        entry => entry%next
    end do
else
    write (u, "(2x,A)") "Processes: [empty]"
end if
end subroutine process_def_list_show

```

Read the complete list. We need an array of templates for the component sub-objects of abstract `prc_core_t` type, to allocate them with the correct specific type.

NOTE: Error handling is missing. Reading will just be aborted on error, or an I/O error occurs.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => process_def_list_read

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_def_list_read (object, unit, core_def_templates)
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(out) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: core_def_templates
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        character(80) :: buffer, ref
        integer :: i
        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        write (ref, "(1x,A)") "Process definition list: [empty]"
        if (buffer == ref) return ! OK: empty library
        backspace (unit)
        READ_ENTRIES: do i = 1, huge (0)
            if (i > 1) read (unit, *, end=1)
            read (unit, "(A)") buffer

            write (ref, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Process #", i, ":"
            if (buffer /= ref) return ! Wrong process header: done.
            allocate (entry)
            call entry%read (unit, core_def_templates)
            call object%append (entry)
        end do READ_ENTRIES
1    continue ! EOF: done
    end subroutine process_def_list_read

```

Append an entry to the list. The entry should be allocated as a pointer, and the pointer allocation is transferred. The original pointer is returned null.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: append => process_def_list_append

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_def_list_append (list, entry)
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(inout) :: list
        type(process_def_entry_t), intent(inout), pointer :: entry
        if (list%contains (entry%id)) then
            call msg_fatal ("Recording process: '" // char (entry%id) &
                // "' has already been defined")

```

```

end if
if (associated (list%first)) then
    list%last%next => entry
else
    list%first => entry
end if
list%last => entry
entry => null ()
end subroutine process_def_list_append

```

### Probe the process definition list

Return the number of processes supported by the library.

```

(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get_n_processes => process_def_list_get_n_processes

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
    function process_def_list_get_n_processes (list) result (n)
        integer :: n
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
        n = 0
        current => list%first
        do while (associated (current))
            n = n + 1
            current => current%next
        end do
    end function process_def_list_get_n_processes

```

Allocate an array with the process IDs supported by the library.

```

(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get_process_id_list => process_def_list_get_process_id_list

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_def_list_get_process_id_list (list, id)
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: id
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
        integer :: i
        allocate (id (list%get_n_processes ()))
        i = 0
        current => list%first
        do while (associated (current))
            i = i + 1
            id(i) = current%id
            current => current%next
        end do
    end subroutine process_def_list_get_process_id_list

```

Return true if a given process is in the library.

```

(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: contains => process_def_list_contains

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)*+≡

```
function process_def_list_contains (list, id) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  current => list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (id == current%id) then
      flag = .true.; return
    end if
    current => current%next
  end do
  flag = .false.
end function process_def_list_contains
```

Return the index of the entry that corresponds to a given process.

*(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: get_entry_index => process_def_list_get_entry_index
```

*(Process libraries: procedures)*+≡

```
function process_def_list_get_entry_index (list, id) result (n)
  integer :: n
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  n = 0
  current => list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    n = n + 1
    if (id == current%id) then
      return
    end if
    current => current%next
  end do
  n = 0
end function process_def_list_get_entry_index
```

Return the numerical ID for a process.

*(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: get_num_id => process_def_list_get_num_id
```

*(Process libraries: procedures)*+≡

```
function process_def_list_get_num_id (list, id) result (num_id)
  integer :: num_id
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  current => list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (id == current%id) then
      num_id = current%num_id
      return
    end if
  end do
```

```

        current => current%next
    end do
    num_id = 0
end function process_def_list_get_num_id

```

Return the model name for a given process in the library.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_model_name => process_def_list_get_model_name

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    function process_def_list_get_model_name (list, id) result (model_name)
        type(string_t) :: model_name
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
        current => list%first
        do while (associated (current))
            if (id == current%id) then
                model_name = current%model_name
                return
            end if
            current => current%next
        end do
        model_name = ""
    end function process_def_list_get_model_name

```

Return the number of incoming particles of a given process in the library. This tells us whether the process is a decay or a scattering.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_in => process_def_list_get_n_in

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    function process_def_list_get_n_in (list, id) result (n)
        integer :: n
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
        current => list%first
        do while (associated (current))
            if (id == current%id) then
                n = current%n_in
                return
            end if
            current => current%next
        end do
    end function process_def_list_get_n_in

```

Return the number of components of a given process in the library.

```

<Process libraries: process def list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_components => process_def_list_get_n_components

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    function process_def_list_get_n_components (list, id) result (n)

```

```

integer :: n
class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
current => list%first
do while (associated (current))
  if (id == current%id) then
    n = current%n_initial + current%n_extra
    return
  end if
  current => current%next
end do
end function process_def_list_get_n_components

```

Return a pointer to a specific process component definition.

*(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_component_def_ptr => process_def_list_get_component_def_ptr

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)+≡*

```

function process_def_list_get_component_def_ptr (list, id, i) result (ptr)
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  ptr => null ()
  current => list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (id == current%id) then
      if (i <= current%n_initial) then
        ptr => current%initial(i)
      else if (i <= current%n_initial + current%n_extra) then
        ptr => current%extra(i-current%n_initial)
      end if
      return
    end if
    current => current%next
  end do
end function process_def_list_get_component_def_ptr

```

Return the list of component IDs of a given process in the library.

*(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_component_list => process_def_list_get_component_list

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_def_list_get_component_list (list, id, cid)
  class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: cid
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
  integer :: i, n
  current => list%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (id == current%id) then

```

```

        allocate (cid (current%n_initial + current%n_extra))
        do i = 1, current%n_initial
            cid(i) = current%initial(i)%basename
        end do
        n = current%n_initial
        do i = 1, current%n_extra
            cid(n + i) = current%extra(i)%basename
        end do
        return
    end if
    current => current%next
end do
end subroutine process_def_list_get_component_list

```

Return the list of component description strings for a given process in the library.

*(Process libraries: process def list: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: get_component_description_list => &
        process_def_list_get_component_description_list

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine process_def_list_get_component_description_list &
        (list, id, description)
        class(process_def_list_t), intent(in) :: list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: description
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: current
        integer :: i, n
        current => list%first
        do while (associated (current))
            if (id == current%id) then
                allocate (description (current%n_initial + current%n_extra))
                do i = 1, current%n_initial
                    description(i) = current%initial(i)%description
                end do
                n = current%n_initial
                do i = 1, current%n_extra
                    description(n + i) = current%extra(i)%description
                end do
                return
            end if
            current => current%next
        end do
    end subroutine process_def_list_get_component_description_list

```

### 14.4.3 Process library

The process library object is the interface between the process definition data, as provided by the user, generated or linked process code on file, and the process run data that reference the process code.



## Process library entry

For each process component that is part of the library, there is a separate library entry (`process_library_entry_t`). The library entry connects a process definition with the specific code (if any) in the compiled driver library.

The `status` indicates how far the process has been processed by the system (definition, code generation, compilation, linking). A process with status `STAT_LOADED` is accessible for computing matrix elements.

The `def` pointer identifies the corresponding process definition. The process component within that definition is identified by the `i_component` index.

The `i_external` index refers to the compiled library driver. If it is zero, there is no associated matrix-element code.

The `driver` component holds the pointers to the matrix-element specific functions, in particular the matrix element function itself.

```
<Process libraries: types>+≡
type :: process_library_entry_t
  private
    integer :: status = STAT_UNKNOWN
    type(process_def_t), pointer :: def => null ()
    integer :: i_component = 0
    integer :: i_external = 0
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  contains
    <Process libraries: process library entry: TBP>
end type process_library_entry_t
```

Here are the available status codes. An entry starts with `UNKNOWN` status. Once the association with a valid process definition is established, the status becomes `CONFIGURED`. If matrix element source code is to be generated by the system or provided from elsewhere, `CODE_GENERATED` indicates that this is done. The `COMPILED` status is next, it also applies to processes which are accessed as pre-compiled binaries. Finally, the library is linked and process pointers are set; this is marked as `LOADED`.

For a process library, the initial status is `OPEN`, since process definitions may be added. After configuration, the process content is fixed and the status becomes `CONFIGURED`. The further states are as above, always referring to the lowest status among the process entries.

```
<Process libraries: parameters>≡
integer, parameter :: STAT_UNKNOWN = 0
integer, parameter :: STAT_OPEN = 1
integer, parameter :: STAT_CONFIGURED = 2
integer, parameter :: STAT_SOURCE = 3
integer, parameter :: STAT_COMPILED = 4
integer, parameter :: STAT_LINKED = 5
integer, parameter :: STAT_ACTIVE = 6
```

These are the associated code letters, for output:

```
<Process libraries: parameters>+≡
character, dimension(0:6), parameter :: STATUS_LETTER = &
  ["?", "o", "f", "s", "c", "l", "a"]
```

This produces a condensed account of the library entry. The status is indicated by a letter in brackets, then the ID and component index of the associated process definition, finally the library index, if available.

```

(Process libraries: process library entry: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: to_string => process_library_entry_to_string

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
    function process_library_entry_to_string (object) result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        class(process_library_entry_t), intent(in) :: object
        character(32) :: buffer
        string = "[" // STATUS_LETTER(object%status) // "]"
        select case (object%status)
        case (STAT_UNKNOWN)
        case default
            if (associated (object%def)) then
                write (buffer, "(IO)") object%i_component
                string = string // " " // object%def%id // "." // trim (buffer)
            end if
            if (object%i_external /= 0) then
                write (buffer, "(IO)") object%i_external
                string = string // " = ext:" // trim (buffer)
            else
                string = string // " = int"
            end if
            if (allocated (object%driver)) then
                string = string // " (" // object%driver%type_name () // ")"
            end if
        end select
    end function process_library_entry_to_string

```

Initialize with data. Used for the unit tests.

```

(Process libraries: process library entry: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: init => process_library_entry_init

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_library_entry_init (object, &
        status, def, i_component, i_external)
        class(process_library_entry_t), intent(out) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: status
        type(process_def_t), target, intent(in) :: def
        integer, intent(in) :: i_component
        integer, intent(in) :: i_external
        object%status = status
        object%def => def
        object%i_component = i_component
        object%i_external = i_external
    end subroutine process_library_entry_init

```

Assign pointers for all process-specific features. We have to combine the method from the `core_def` specification, the assigned pointers within the library driver, the index within that driver, and the process driver which should receive the links.

```

(Process libraries: process library entry: TBP)+≡

```

```

    procedure :: connect => process_library_entry_connect
<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_entry_connect (entry, lib_driver, i)
        class(process_library_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        call entry%def%initial(entry%i_component)%connect &
            (lib_driver, i, entry%driver)
    end subroutine process_library_entry_connect

```

## The process library object

The `process_library_t` type is an extension of the `process_def_list_t` type. Thus, it automatically contains the process definition list.

The `basename` identifies the library generically.

The `external` flag is true if any process within the library needs external code, so the library must correspond to an actual code library (statically or dynamically linked).

The `entry` array contains all process components that can be handled by this library. Each entry refers to the process (component) definition and to the associated external matrix element code, if there is any.

The `driver` object is needed only if `external` is true. This object handles all interactions with external matrix-element code.

The `md5sum` summarizes the complete `process_def_list_t` base object. It can be used to check if the library configuration has changed.

```

<Process libraries: public>+≡
    public :: process_library_t
<Process libraries: types>+≡
    type, extends (process_def_list_t) :: process_library_t
        private
        type(string_t) :: basename
        integer :: n_entries = 0
        logical :: external = .false.
        integer :: status = STAT_UNKNOWN
        logical :: static = .false.
        logical :: driver_exists = .false.
        logical :: makefile_exists = .false.
        type(process_library_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
        class(prclib_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
        character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    contains
        <Process libraries: process library: TBP>
    end type process_library_t

```

For the output, we write first the metadata and the DL access record, then the library entries in short form, and finally the process definition list which is the base object.

Don't write the MD5 sum since this is used to generate it.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => process_library_write

```

*<Process libraries: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine process_library_write (object, unit, libpath)
  class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: libpath
  integer :: i, u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "Process library: ", char (object%basename)
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "external      = ", object%external
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "makefile exists = ", object%makefile_exists
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "driver exists  = ", object%driver_exists
  write (u, "(3x,A,A1)") "code status   = ", &
    STATUS_LETTER (object%status)
  write (u, *)
  if (allocated (object%entry)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Process library entries:"
    write (u, "(1x,I0)") object%n_entries
    do i = 1, size (object%entry)
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,A)") "Entry #", i, ": ", &
        char (object%entry(i)%to_string ())
    end do
    write (u, *)
  end if
  if (object%external) then
    call object%driver%write (u, libpath)
    write (u, *)
  end if
  call object%process_def_list_t%write (u)
end subroutine process_library_write

```

Condensed version for screen output.

*<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡*

procedure :: show => process\_library\_show

*<Process libraries: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine process_library_show (object, unit)
  class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(A,A)") "Process library: ", char (object%basename)
  write (u, "(2x,A,L1)") "external      = ", object%external
  if (object%static) then
    write (u, "(2x,A,L1)") "static          = ", .true.
  else
    write (u, "(2x,A,L1)") "makefile exists = ", object%makefile_exists
    write (u, "(2x,A,L1)") "driver exists  = ", object%driver_exists
  end if
  write (u, "(2x,A,A1)", advance="no") "code status   = "
  select case (object%status)
  case (STAT_UNKNOWN);   write (u, "(A)") "[unknown]"
  case (STAT_OPEN);      write (u, "(A)") "open"
  case (STAT_CONFIGURED); write (u, "(A)") "configured"
  case (STAT_SOURCE);    write (u, "(A)") "source code exists"
  end select
end subroutine process_library_show

```

```

        case (STAT_COMPILED);   write (u, "(A)") "compiled"
        case (STAT_LINKED);     write (u, "(A)") "linked"
        case (STAT_ACTIVE);     write (u, "(A)") "active"
    end select
    call object%process_def_list_t%show (u)
end subroutine process_library_show

```

The initializer defines just the basename. We may now add process definitions to the library.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+=
    procedure :: init => process_library_init

<Process libraries: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_library_init (lib, basename)
        class(process_library_t), intent(out) :: lib
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        lib%basename = basename
        lib%status = STAT_OPEN
        call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (basename) &
            // "': initialized")
    end subroutine process_library_init

```

This alternative initializer declares the library as static. We should now add process definitions to the library, but all external process code exists already. We need the driver object, and we should check the defined processes against the stored ones.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+=
    procedure :: init_static => process_library_init_static

<Process libraries: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_library_init_static (lib, basename)
        class(process_library_t), intent(out) :: lib
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        lib%basename = basename
        lib%status = STAT_OPEN
        lib%static = .true.
        call msg_message ("Static process library '" // char (basename) &
            // "': initialized")
    end subroutine process_library_init_static

```

The `configure` procedure scans the allocated entries in the process definition list. The configuration proceeds in three passes.

In the first pass, we scan the process definition list and count the number of process components and the number of components which need external code. This is used to allocate the `entry` array.

In the second pass, we initialize the `entry` elements which connect process definitions, process driver objects, and external code.

In the third pass, we initialize the library driver object, allocating an entry for each external matrix element.

NOTE: Currently we handle only `initial` process components; `extra` components are ignored.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+=
    procedure :: configure => process_library_configure

```

*(Process libraries: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine process_library_configure (lib, os_data)
  class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: def_entry
  integer :: n_entries, n_external, i_entry, i_external
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  integer :: i_component

  n_entries = 0
  n_external = 0
  if (allocated (lib%entry)) deallocate (lib%entry)

  def_entry => lib%first
  do while (associated (def_entry))
    do i_component = 1, def_entry%n_initial
      n_entries = n_entries + 1
      if (def_entry%initial(i_component)%needs_code ()) then
        n_external = n_external + 1
        lib%external = .true.
      end if
    end do
    def_entry => def_entry%next
  end do
  lib%n_entries = n_entries

  allocate (lib%entry (n_entries))
  i_entry = 0
  i_external = 0
  def_entry => lib%first
  do while (associated (def_entry))
    do i_component = 1, def_entry%n_initial
      i_entry = i_entry + 1
      associate (lib_entry => lib%entry(i_entry))
        lib_entry%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
        lib_entry%def => def_entry%process_def_t
        lib_entry%i_component = i_component
        if (def_entry%initial(i_component)%needs_code ()) then
          i_external = i_external + 1
          lib_entry%i_external = i_external
        end if
        call def_entry%initial(i_component)%allocate_driver &
          (lib_entry%driver)
      end associate
    end do
    def_entry => def_entry%next
  end do

  call dispatch_prclib_driver (lib%driver, &
    lib%basename, lib%get_modellibs_ldflags (os_data))
  call lib%driver%init (n_external)
  do i_entry = 1, n_entries
    associate (lib_entry => lib%entry(i_entry))
      i_component = lib_entry%i_component
    end associate
  end do

```

```

        model_name = lib_entry%def%model_name
        associate (def => lib_entry%def%initial(i_component))
            if (def%needs_code ()) then
                call lib%driver%set_record (lib_entry%i_external, &
                    def%basename, &
                    model_name, &
                    def%get_features (), def%get_writer_ptr ())
            end if
        end associate
    end associate
end do

if (lib%static) then
    if (lib%n_entries /= 0) lib_entry%status = STAT_LINKED
    lib%status = STAT_LINKED
else if (lib%external) then
    where (lib_entry%i_external == 0) lib_entry%status = STAT_LINKED
    lib%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
    lib%makefile_exists = .false.
    lib%driver_exists = .false.
else
    if (lib%n_entries /= 0) lib_entry%status = STAT_LINKED
    lib%status = STAT_LINKED
end if
end subroutine process_library_configure

```

Compute the MD5 sum. We concatenate the individual MD5 sums of all processes (which, in turn, are derived from the MD5 sums of their components) and compute the MD5 sum of that.

This should be executed *after* configuration, where the driver was initialized, since otherwise the MD5 sum stored in the driver would be overwritten.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_library_compute_md5sum

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_compute_md5sum (lib)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: def_entry
        type(string_t) :: buffer
        buffer = lib%basename
        def_entry => lib%first
        do while (associated (def_entry))
            call def_entry%compute_md5sum ()
            buffer = buffer // def_entry%md5sum
            def_entry => def_entry%next
        end do
        lib%md5sum = md5sum (char (buffer))
        call lib%driver%set_md5sum (lib%md5sum)
    end subroutine process_library_compute_md5sum

```

Write an appropriate makefile, if there are external processes. Unless **force** is in effect, first check if there is already a makefile with the correct MD5 sum. If

yes, do nothing.

```
<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_makefile => process_library_write_makefile

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_write_makefile (lib, os_data, force, testflag)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        logical, intent(in) :: force
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        character(32) :: md5sum_file
        logical :: generate
        integer :: unit
        if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
            generate = .true.
            if (.not. force) then
                md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum_makefile ()
                if (lib%md5sum == md5sum_file) then
                    call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                                     // "': keeping makefile")
                    generate = .false.
                end if
            end if
            if (generate) then
                call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                                 // "': writing makefile")
                unit = free_unit ()
                open (unit, file = char (lib%driver%basename // ".makefile"), &
                     status="replace", action="write")
                call lib%driver%generate_makefile (unit, os_data, testflag)
                close (unit)
            end if
            lib%makefile_exists = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine process_library_write_makefile
```

Write the driver source code for the library to file, if there are external processes.

```
<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_driver => process_library_write_driver

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_write_driver (lib, force)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        logical, intent(in) :: force
        character(32) :: md5sum_file
        logical :: generate
        integer :: unit
        if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
            generate = .true.
            if (.not. force) then
                md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum_driver ()
                if (lib%md5sum == md5sum_file) then
                    call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                                     // "': keeping driver")
                end if
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine process_library_write_driver
```



```

        generate = .false.
    end if
end if
if (generate) then
    call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
        // "': writing driver")
    unit = free_unit ()
    open (unit, file = char (lib%driver%basename // ".f90"), &
        status="replace", action="write")
    call lib%driver%generate_driver_code (unit)
    close (unit)
end if
lib%driver_exists = .true.
end if
end subroutine process_library_write_driver

```

Update the compilation status of an external library.

Strictly speaking, this is not necessary for a one-time run, since the individual library methods will update the status themselves. However, it allows us to identify compilation steps that we can skip because the file exists or is already loaded, for the whole library or for particular entries.

Independently, the building process is controlled by a makefile. Thus, previous files are reused if they are not modified by the current compilation.

1. If it is not already loaded, attempt to load the library. If successful, check the overall MD5 sum. If it matches, just keep it loaded and mark as ACTIVE. If not, check the MD5 sum for all linked process components. Where it matches, mark the entry as COMPILED. Then, unload the library and mark as CONFIGURED.

Thus, we can identify compiled files for all matrix elements which are accessible via the previous compiled library, even if it is no longer up to date.

2. If the library is now in CONFIGURED state, look for valid source files. Each entry that is just in CONFIGURED state will advance to SOURCE if the MD5 sum matches. Finally, advance the whole library to SOURCE if all entries are at least in this condition.

*(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: update_status => process_library_update_status
```

*(Process libraries: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_library_update_status (lib, os_data)
    class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    character(32) :: md5sum_file
    integer :: i, i_external, i_component
    if (lib%external) then
        select case (lib%status)
        case (STAT_CONFIGURED:STAT_LINKED)
            call lib%driver%load (os_data, noerror=.true.)
        end select
    if (lib%driver%loaded) then

```

```

md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum (0)
if (lib%md5sum == md5sum_file) then
  call lib%load_entries ()
  lib%entry%status = STAT_ACTIVE
  lib%status = STAT_ACTIVE
  call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
    // "': active")
else
  do i = 1, lib%n_entries
    associate (entry => lib%entry(i))
      i_external = entry%i_external
      i_component = entry%i_component
      if (i_external /= 0) then
        md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum (i_external)
        if (entry%def%get_md5sum (i_component) == md5sum_file) then
          entry%status = STAT_COMPILED
        else
          entry%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
        end if
      end if
    end associate
  end do
  call lib%driver%unload ()
  lib%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
end if
end if
select case (lib%status)
case (STAT_CONFIGURED)
  do i = 1, lib%n_entries
    associate (entry => lib%entry(i))
      i_external = entry%i_external
      i_component = entry%i_component
      if (i_external /= 0) then
        select case (entry%status)
        case (STAT_CONFIGURED)
          md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum_source (i_external)
          if (entry%def%get_md5sum (i_component) == md5sum_file) then
            entry%status = STAT_SOURCE
          end if
        end select
      end if
    end associate
  end do
  if (all (lib%entry%status >= STAT_SOURCE)) then
    md5sum_file = lib%driver%get_md5sum_driver ()
    if (lib%md5sum == md5sum_file) then
      lib%status = STAT_SOURCE
    end if
  end if
end select
end if
end subroutine process_library_update_status

```

This procedure triggers code generation for all processes where this is possible.

We generate code only for external processes of status `STAT_CONFIGURED`, which then advance to `STAT_SOURCE`. If, for a particular process, the status is already advanced, we do not remove previous files, so `make` will consider them as up to date if they exist. Otherwise, we remove those files to force a fresh `make`.

Finally, if any source code has been generated, we need a driver file.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: make_source => process_library_make_source

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_library_make_source (lib, os_data, keep_old_source)
    class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_old_source
    logical :: keep_old
    integer :: i, i_external
    keep_old = .false.
    if (present(keep_old_source)) keep_old = keep_old_source
    if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
      select case (lib%status)
      case (STAT_CONFIGURED)
        if (keep_old) then
          call msg_message ("Process library '" // char(lib%basename) &
            // "': keeping source code")
        else
          call msg_message ("Process library '" // char(lib%basename) &
            // "': creating source code")
          do i = 1, size(lib%entry)
            associate (entry => lib%entry(i))
              i_external = entry%i_external
              if (i_external /= 0 &
                .and. lib%entry(i)%status == STAT_CONFIGURED) then
                call lib%driver%clean_proc (i_external, os_data)
              end if
            end associate
          end do
          call lib%driver%make_source (os_data)
        end if
        lib%status = STAT_SOURCE
        where (lib%entry%i_external /= 0 &
          .and. lib%entry%status == STAT_CONFIGURED)
          lib%entry%status = STAT_SOURCE
        end where
        lib%status = STAT_SOURCE
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine process_library_make_source

```

Compile the generated code and update the status codes. Try to make the sources first, just in case. This includes compiling possible  $\text{\LaTeX}$ Feynman diagram files.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡

```

```

        procedure :: make_compile => process_library_make_compile
    <Process libraries: procedures>+≡
        subroutine process_library_make_compile (lib, os_data, keep_old_source)
            class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
            type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
            logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_old_source
            if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
                select case (lib%status)
                case (STAT_CONFIGURED)
                    call lib%make_source (os_data, keep_old_source)
                end select
                if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                select case (lib%status)
                case (STAT_SOURCE)
                    call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                        // "': compiling sources")
                    call lib%driver%make_compile (os_data)
                    where (lib%entry%i_external /= 0 &
                        .and. lib%entry%status == STAT_SOURCE)
                        lib%entry%status = STAT_COMPILED
                    end where
                    lib%status = STAT_COMPILED
                end select
            end if
        end subroutine process_library_make_compile

```

Link the process library. Try to compile first, just in case.

```

    <Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
        procedure :: make_link => process_library_make_link
    <Process libraries: procedures>+≡
        subroutine process_library_make_link (lib, os_data, keep_old_source)
            class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
            type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
            logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_old_source
            if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
                select case (lib%status)
                case (STAT_CONFIGURED:STAT_SOURCE)
                    call lib%make_compile (os_data, keep_old_source)
                end select
                if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                select case (lib%status)
                case (STAT_COMPILED)
                    call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                        // "': linking")
                    call lib%driver%make_link (os_data)
                    lib%entry%status = STAT_LINKED
                    lib%status = STAT_LINKED
                end select
            end if
        end subroutine process_library_make_link

```

Load the process library, i.e., assign pointers to the library functions.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: load => process_library_load

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_library_load (lib, os_data, keep_old_source)
    class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_old_source
    select case (lib%status)
    case (STAT_CONFIGURED:STAT_COMPILED)
      call lib%make_link (os_data, keep_old_source)
    end select
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    select case (lib%status)
    case (STAT_LINKED)
      if (lib%external) then
        call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
          // "': loading")
        call lib%driver%load (os_data)
        call lib%load_entries ()
      end if
      lib%entry%status = STAT_ACTIVE
      lib%status = STAT_ACTIVE
    end select
  end subroutine process_library_load

```

This is the actual loading part for the process methods.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: load_entries => process_library_load_entries

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_library_load_entries (lib)
    class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (lib%entry)
      associate (entry => lib%entry(i))
        if (entry%i_external /= 0) then
          call entry%connect (lib%driver, entry%i_external)
        end if
      end associate
    end do
  end subroutine process_library_load_entries

```

Unload the library, if possible. This reverts the status to “linked”.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: unload => process_library_unload

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_library_unload (lib)
    class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
    select case (lib%status)
    case (STAT_ACTIVE)
      if (lib%external) then

```

```

        call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
            // "': unloading")
        call lib%driver%unload ()
    end if
    lib%entry%status = STAT_LINKED
    lib%status = STAT_LINKED
end select
end subroutine process_library_unload

```

Unload, clean all generated files and revert the library status. If `distclean` is set, also remove the makefile and the driver source.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: clean => process_library_clean

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_clean (lib, os_data, distclean)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        logical, intent(in) :: distclean
        call lib%unload ()
        if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
            call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                // "': removing old files")
            if (distclean) then
                call lib%driver%distclean (os_data)
            else
                call lib%driver%clean (os_data)
            end if
        end if
        where (lib%entry%i_external /= 0)
            lib%entry%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
        elsewhere
            lib%entry%status = STAT_LINKED
        end where
        if (lib%external) then
            lib%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
        else
            lib%status = STAT_LINKED
        end if
    end subroutine process_library_clean

```

Unload and clean the compiled library and all generated object files, so force a recompilation.

```

<XXX Process libraries: process library: TBP>≡
    procedure :: clean_objects => process_library_clean_objects

<XXX Process libraries: procedures>≡
    subroutine process_library_clean_objects (lib, os_data)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        call lib%unload ()
        if (lib%external .and. .not. lib%static) then
            call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                // "': removing compiled objects")

```

```

        call lib%driver%clean_library (os_data)
        call lib%driver%clean_objects (os_data)
    end if
    where (lib%entry%i_external /= 0)
        lib%entry%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
    elsewhere
        lib%entry%status = STAT_LINKED
    end where
    if (lib%external) then
        lib%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
    else
        lib%status = STAT_LINKED
    end if
end subroutine process_library_clean_objects

```

Unload and revert the library status to INITIAL. This allows for appending new processes. No files are deleted.

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: open => process_library_open

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_library_open (lib)
        class(process_library_t), intent(inout) :: lib
        select case (lib%status)
        case (STAT_OPEN)
        case default
            call lib%unload ()
            if (.not. lib%static) then
                lib%entry%status = STAT_OPEN
                lib%status = STAT_OPEN
                call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                    // "': open")
            else
                call msg_error ("Static process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
                    // "': processes can't be appended")
            end if
        end select
    end subroutine process_library_open

```

#### 14.4.4 Use the library

Return the base name of the library

```

<Process libraries: process library: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_name => process_library_get_name

<Process libraries: procedures>+≡
    function process_library_get_name (lib) result (name)
        class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: lib
        type(string_t) :: name
        name = lib%basename
    end function process_library_get_name

```

Once activated, we view the process library object as an interface for accessing the matrix elements.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: is_active => process_library_is_active

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  function process_library_is_active (lib) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: lib
    flag = lib%status == STAT_ACTIVE
  end function process_library_is_active

```

Retrieve constants using the process library driver. We assume that the process code has been loaded, if external.

```

(Process libraries: process library entry: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: fill_constants => process_library_entry_fill_constants

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_library_entry_fill_constants (entry, driver, data)
    class(process_library_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: driver
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
    integer :: i
    if (entry%i_external /= 0) then
      i = entry%i_external
      data%id = driver%get_process_id (i)
      data%model_name = driver%get_model_name (i)
      data%md5sum = driver%get_md5sum (i)
      data%openmp_supported = driver%get_openmp_status (i)
      data%n_in = driver%get_n_in (i)
      data%n_out = driver%get_n_out (i)
      data%n_flv = driver%get_n_flv (i)
      data%n_hel = driver%get_n_hel (i)
      data%n_col = driver%get_n_col (i)
      data%n_cin = driver%get_n_cin (i)
      data%n_cf = driver%get_n_cf (i)
      call driver%set_flv_state (i, data%flv_state)
      call driver%set_hel_state (i, data%hel_state)
      call driver%set_col_state (i, data%col_state, data%ghost_flag)
      call driver%set_color_factors (i, data%color_factors, data%cf_index)
    else
      select type (proc_driver => entry%driver)
      class is (process_driver_internal_t)
        call proc_driver%fill_constants (data)
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine process_library_entry_fill_constants

```

Retrieve the constants and a connected driver for a process, identified by a process ID and a subprocess index. We scan the process entries until we have found a match.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: connect_process => process_library_connect_process

```



```

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
subroutine process_library_connect_process &
    (lib, id, i_component, data, proc_driver)
    class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: Lib
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable, intent(out) :: proc_driver
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (lib%entry)
        associate (entry => lib%entry(i))
            if (entry%def%id == id .and. entry%i_component == i_component) then
                call entry%fill_constants (lib%driver, data)
                allocate (proc_driver, source=entry%driver)
                return
            end if
        end associate
    end do
    call msg_fatal ("Process library '" // char (lib%basename) &
        // "': process '" // char (id) // "' not found")
end subroutine process_library_connect_process

```

#### 14.4.5 Collect model-specific libraries

This returns appropriate linker flags for the model parameter libraries that are used by the generated matrix element. At the end, the main libwhizard is appended (again), because functions from that may be required.

Extra models in the local user space need to be treated individually.

```

(Process libraries: process library: TBP)+≡
procedure :: get_modellibs_ldflags => process_library_get_modellibs_ldflags

(Process libraries: procedures)+≡
function process_library_get_modellibs_ldflags (prc_lib, os_data) result (flags)
    class(process_library_t), intent(in) :: prc_lib
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(string_t) :: flags
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: models
    type(string_t) :: modelname, modllib, modllib_full
    logical :: exist
    integer :: i, j, mi
    flags = " -lomega"
    if ((.not. os_data%use_testfiles) .and. &
        os_dir_exist (os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local)) &
        flags = flags // " -L" // os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local
    flags = flags // " -L" // os_data%whizard_models_libpath
    allocate (models(prc_lib%n_entries + 1))
    models = ""
    mi = 1
    if (allocated (prc_lib%entry)) then
        SCAN: do i = 1, prc_lib%n_entries
            if (associated (prc_lib%entry(i)%def)) then
                if (associated (prc_lib%entry(i)%def%model)) then
                    modelname = model_get_name (prc_lib%entry(i)%def%model)

```

```

        else
            cycle SCAN
        end if
    else
        cycle SCAN
    end if
do j = 1, mi
    if (models(mi) == modelname) cycle SCAN
end do
models(mi) = modelname
mi = mi + 1
if (os_data%use_libtool) then
    modellib = "libparameters_" // modelname // ".la"
else
    modellib = "libparameters_" // modelname // ".a"
end if
exist = .false.
if (.not. os_data%use_testfiles) then
    modellib_full = os_data%whizard_models_libpath_local &
        // "/" // modellib
    inquire (file=char (modellib_full), exist=exist)
end if
if (.not. exist) then
    modellib_full = os_data%whizard_models_libpath &
        // "/" // modellib
    inquire (file=char (modellib_full), exist=exist)
end if
if (exist) flags = flags // " -lparameters_" // modelname
end do SCAN
end if
deallocate (models)
flags = flags // " -lwhizard"
end function process_library_get_modellibs_ldflags

```

#### 14.4.6 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Process libraries: public>+≡
    public :: process_libraries_test

<Process libraries: tests>≡
    subroutine process_libraries_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Process libraries: execute tests>
    end subroutine process_libraries_test

```

#### Empty process list

Test 1: Write an empty process list.

```

<Process libraries: execute tests>≡

```

```

    call test (process_libraries_1, "process_libraries_1", &
              "empty process list", &
              u, results)
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
subroutine process_libraries_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_def_list_t) :: process_def_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: Display an empty process definition list"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call process_def_list%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_1"
end subroutine process_libraries_1

```

### Process definition list

Test 2: Process definition list with processes and components. Construct the list, write to file, read it in again, and display. Finalize and delete the list after use.

We define a trivial 'test' type for the process variant. The test type contains just one (meaningless) data item, which is an integer.

```

<Process libraries: test declarations>≡
type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: prcdef_2_t
    integer :: data = 0
    logical :: file = .false.
contains
    <Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>
end type prcdef_2_t

```

The process variant is named 'test'.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_string => prcdef_2_type_string
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
function prcdef_2_type_string () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "test"
end function prcdef_2_type_string

```

Write the contents (the integer value).

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => prcdef_2_write
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
subroutine prcdef_2_write (object, unit)
    class(prcdef_2_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit

```

```

        write (unit, "(3x,A,I0)") "Test data          = ", object%data
    end subroutine prcdef_2_write

```

Recover the integer value.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => prcdef_2_read

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_2_read (object, unit)
        class(prcdef_2_t), intent(out) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        character(80) :: buffer
        read (unit, "(A)") buffer
        call strip_prefix (buffer)
        read (buffer, *) object%data
    end subroutine prcdef_2_read

```

No external procedures.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: get_features => prcdef_2_get_features

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_2_get_features (features)
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
        allocate (features (0))
    end subroutine prcdef_2_get_features

```

No code generated.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_code => prcdef_2_generate_code

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_2_generate_code (object, &
        basename, model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
        class(prcdef_2_t), intent(in) :: object
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    end subroutine prcdef_2_generate_code

```

Allocate the driver with the appropriate type.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_driver => prcdef_2_allocate_driver

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_2_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
        class(prcdef_2_t), intent(in) :: object
        class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        allocate (prctest_2_t :: driver)
    end subroutine prcdef_2_allocate_driver

```

Nothing to connect.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 2: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: connect => prcdef_2_connect  
  
<Process libraries: tests>+≡  
  subroutine prcdef_2_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)  
    class(prcdef_2_t), intent(in) :: def  
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver  
    integer, intent(in) :: i  
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver  
  end subroutine prcdef_2_connect
```

The associated driver type.

```
<Process libraries: types>+≡  
  type, extends (process_driver_internal_t) :: prctest_2_t  
  contains  
    <Process libraries: prctest 2: TBP>  
  end type prctest_2_t
```

Return the type name.

```
<Process libraries: prctest 2: TBP>≡  
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => prctest_2_type_name  
  
<Process libraries: procedures>+≡  
  function prctest_2_type_name () result (type)  
    type(string_t) :: type  
    type = "test"  
  end function prctest_2_type_name
```

This should fill constant process data. We do not check those here, however, therefore nothing done.

```
<Process libraries: prctest 2: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: fill_constants => prctest_2_fill_constants  
  
<Process libraries: procedures>+≡  
  subroutine prctest_2_fill_constants (driver, data)  
    class(prctest_2_t), intent(in) :: driver  
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data  
  end subroutine prctest_2_fill_constants
```

Here is the actual test.

For reading, we need a list of templates, i.e., an array containing allocated objects for all available process variants. This is the purpose of `process_core_templates`. Here, we have only a single template for the 'test' variant.

```
<Process libraries: execute tests>+≡  
  call test (process_libraries_2, "process_libraries_2", &  
    "process definition list", &  
    u, results)
```

```

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
subroutine process_libraries_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_core_templates
  type(process_def_list_t) :: process_def_list
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry => null ()
  class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: test_def
  integer :: scratch_unit

  write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: process_libraries_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*" Purpose: Construct a process definition list,"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"           write it to file and reread it"
  write (u, "(A)")  ""
  write (u, "(A)")  "*" Construct a process definition list"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"   First process definition: empty"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"   Second process definition: two components"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"       First component: empty"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"       Second component: test data"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"   Third process definition:"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"       Embedded decays and polarization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (process_core_templates (1))
  allocate (prcdef_2_t :: process_core_templates(1)%core_def)

  allocate (entry)
  call entry%init (var_str ("first"), n_in = 0, n_components = 0)
  call entry%compute_md5sum ()
  call process_def_list%append (entry)

  allocate (entry)
  call entry%init (var_str ("second"), model_name = var_str ("Test"), &
    n_in = 1, n_components = 2)
  allocate (prcdef_2_t :: test_def)
  select type (test_def)
  type is (prcdef_2_t); test_def%data = 42
  end select
  call entry%import_component (2, n_out = 2, &
    prt_in  = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c")]), &
    method  = var_str ("test"), &
    variant = test_def)
  call entry%compute_md5sum ()
  call process_def_list%append (entry)

  allocate (entry)
  call entry%init (var_str ("third"), model_name = var_str ("Test"), &
    n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
  allocate (prcdef_2_t :: test_def)
  call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 3, &
    prt_in  = &
      new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a"), var_str ("b")]), &
    prt_out = &
      [new_prt_spec (var_str ("c")), &

```

```

        new_prt_spec (var_str ("d"), .true.), &
        new_prt_spec (var_str ("e"), [var_str ("e_decay")]))], &
        method = var_str ("test"), &
        variant = test_def)
call entry%compute_md5sum ()
call process_def_list%append (entry)
call process_def_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)") ""
write (u, "(A)") "* Write the process definition list to (scratch) file"

scratch_unit = free_unit ()
open (unit = scratch_unit, status="scratch", action = "readwrite")
call process_def_list%write (scratch_unit)
call process_def_list%final ()

write (u, "(A)") "* Reread it"
write (u, "(A)") ""

rewind (scratch_unit)
call process_def_list%read (scratch_unit, process_core_templates)
close (scratch_unit)

call process_def_list%write (u)
call process_def_list%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: process_libraries_2"
end subroutine process_libraries_2

```

## Process library object

Test 3: Process library object with several process definitions and library entries. Just construct the object, modify some initial content, and write the result. The modifications are mostly applied directly, so we do not test anything but the contents and the output routine.

```

<Process libraries: execute tests>+≡
    call test (process_libraries_3, "process_libraries_3", &
        "recover process definition list from file", &
        u, results)

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
subroutine process_libraries_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry

    write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: process_libraries_3"
    write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: Construct a process library object &
        &with entries"
    write (u, "(A)") ""
    write (u, "(A)") "* Construct and display a process library object"
    write (u, "(A)") "*   with 5 entries"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "*"   associated with 3 matrix element codes"
write (u, "(A)")  "*"   corresponding to 3 process definitions"
write (u, "(A)")  "*"   with 2, 1, 1 components, respectively"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%init (var_str ("testlib"))

lib%status = STAT_ACTIVE
lib%n_entries = 5
allocate (lib%entry (lib%n_entries))

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("test_a"), n_in = 2, n_components = 2)
call lib%entry(3)%init (STAT_SOURCE, entry%process_def_t, 2, 2)
allocate (prctest_2_t :: lib%entry(3)%driver)
call lib%entry(4)%init (STAT_COMPILED, entry%process_def_t, 1, 0)
call lib%append (entry)

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("test_b"), n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call lib%entry(2)%init (STAT_CONFIGURED, entry%process_def_t, 1, 1)
call lib%append (entry)

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("test_c"), n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call lib%entry(5)%init (STAT_LINKED, entry%process_def_t, 1, 3)
allocate (prctest_2_t :: lib%entry(5)%driver)
call lib%append (entry)

call lib%write (u)
call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output end: process_libraries_3"
end subroutine process_libraries_3

```

### Process library for test matrix element (no file)

Test 4: We proceed through the library generation and loading phases with a test matrix element type that needs no code written on file.

```

<Process libraries: execute tests>+≡
  call test (process_libraries_4, "process_libraries_4", &
    "build and load internal process library", &
    u, results)

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine process_libraries_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: build a process library with an &
                    &internal (pseudo) matrix element"
write (u, "(A)")  "*          No Makefile or code should be generated"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry &
                    &(no external code)"
write (u, "(A)")
call os_data_init (os_data)
call lib%init (var_str ("proclibs4"))

allocate (prcdef_2_t :: core_def)

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("proclibs4_a"), n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 2, variant = core_def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%compute_md5sum ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_link (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Load (no-op)"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u)
call lib%final ()

```

```

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_4"
    end subroutine process_libraries_4

```

### Build workflow for test matrix element

Test 5: We write source code for a dummy process.

We define another trivial type for the process variant. The test type contains just no variable data, but produces code on file.

```

<Process libraries: test declarations>+≡
    type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: prcdef_5_t
    contains
    <Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>
end type prcdef_5_t

```

The process variant is named `test_file`.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_string => prcdef_5_type_string

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    function prcdef_5_type_string () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "test_file"
    end function prcdef_5_type_string

```

We reuse the writer `test_writer_4` from the previous module.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => prcdef_5_init

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_5_init (object)
        class(prcdef_5_t), intent(out) :: object
        allocate (test_writer_4_t :: object%writer)
    end subroutine prcdef_5_init

```

Nothing to write.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => prcdef_5_write

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_5_write (object, unit)
        class(prcdef_5_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
    end subroutine prcdef_5_write

```

Nothing to read.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => prcdef_5_read

```

```

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine prcdef_5_read (object, unit)
    class(prcdef_5_t), intent(out) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
  end subroutine prcdef_5_read

```

Allocate the driver with the appropriate type.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_driver => prcdef_5_allocate_driver

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine prcdef_5_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
    class(prcdef_5_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
    allocate (prctest_5_t :: driver)
  end subroutine prcdef_5_allocate_driver

```

This time we need code:

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: needs_code => prcdef_5_needs_code

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  function prcdef_5_needs_code () result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function prcdef_5_needs_code

```

For the test case, we implement a single feature proc1.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_features => prcdef_5_get_features

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine prcdef_5_get_features (features)
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
    allocate (features (1))
    features = [ var_str ("proc1") ]
  end subroutine prcdef_5_get_features

```

Nothing to connect.

```

<Process libraries: prcdef 5: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: connect => prcdef_5_connect

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine prcdef_5_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    class(prcdef_5_t), intent(in) :: def
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
  end subroutine prcdef_5_connect

```

The driver type.

```

(Process libraries: types)+≡
  type, extends (prc_core_driver_t) :: prctest_5_t
  contains
    (Process libraries: prctest 5: TBP)
  end type prctest_5_t

```

Return the type name.

```

(Process libraries: prctest 5: TBP)≡
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => prctest_5_type_name

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
  function prctest_5_type_name () result (type)
    type(string_t) :: type
    type = "test_file"
  end function prctest_5_type_name

```

Here is the actual test:

```

(Process libraries: execute tests)+≡
  call test (process_libraries_5, "process_libraries_5", &
    "build external process library", &
    u, results)

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
  subroutine process_libraries_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: build a process library with an &
      &external (pseudo) matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call lib%init (var_str ("proclibs5"))
    call os_data_init (os_data)

    allocate (prcdef_5_t :: core_def)
    select type (core_def)
    type is (prcdef_5_t)
      call core_def%init ()
    end select

    allocate (entry)
    call entry%init (var_str ("proclibs5_a"), &
      model_name = var_str ("Test_Model"), &
      n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
    call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 2, &
      prt_in = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
      prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c")]), &

```

```

        method = var_str ("test"), &
        variant = core_def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute MD5 sum"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%compute_md5sum ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_compile (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Link"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_link (os_data)

call lib%write (u, libpath = .false.)

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_5"
end subroutine process_libraries_5

```

## Build and load library with test matrix element

Test 6: We write source code for a dummy process.

This process variant is identical to the previous case, but it supports a driver for the test procedure 'proc1'.

```

<Process libraries: test declarations>+≡
type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: prcdef_6_t
contains
  <Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>
end type prcdef_6_t

```

The process variant is named `test_file`.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_string => prcdef_6_type_string
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    function prcdef_6_type_string () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "test_file"
    end function prcdef_6_type_string
```

We reuse the writer `test_writer_4` from the previous module.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => prcdef_6_init
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_init (object)
        class(prcdef_6_t), intent(out) :: object
        allocate (test_writer_4_t :: object%writer)
        call object%writer%init_test ()
    end subroutine prcdef_6_init
```

Nothing to write.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => prcdef_6_write
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_write (object, unit)
        class(prcdef_6_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
    end subroutine prcdef_6_write
```

Nothing to read.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => prcdef_6_read
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_read (object, unit)
        class(prcdef_6_t), intent(out) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
    end subroutine prcdef_6_read
```

Allocate the driver with the appropriate type.

```
<Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_driver => prcdef_6_allocate_driver
<Process libraries: tests>+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
        class(prcdef_6_t), intent(in) :: object
        class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        allocate (prctest_6_t :: driver)
    end subroutine prcdef_6_allocate_driver
```

This time we need code:

```

(Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP)+≡
    procedure, nopass :: needs_code => prcdef_6_needs_code

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
    function prcdef_6_needs_code () result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        flag = .true.
    end function prcdef_6_needs_code

```

For the test case, we implement a single feature `proc1`.

```

(Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP)+≡
    procedure, nopass :: get_features => prcdef_6_get_features

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_get_features (features)
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
        allocate (features (1))
        features = [ var_str ("proc1") ]
    end subroutine prcdef_6_get_features

```

The interface of the only specific feature.

```

(Process libraries: interfaces)≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine proc1_t (n) bind(C)
            import
            integer(c_int), intent(out) :: n
        end subroutine proc1_t
    end interface

```

Connect the feature `proc1` with the process driver.

```

(Process libraries: prcdef 6: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: connect => prcdef_6_connect

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
    subroutine prcdef_6_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
        class(prcdef_6_t), intent(in) :: def
        class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
        integer(c_int) :: pid, fid
        type(c_funptr) :: fptr
        select type (proc_driver)
            type is (prctest_6_t)
                pid = i
                fid = 1
                call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
                call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%proc1)
            end select
    end subroutine prcdef_6_connect

```

The driver type.

```
<Process libraries: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_core_driver_t) :: prctest_6_t
    procedure(proc1_t), nopass, pointer :: proc1 => null ()
    contains
      <Process libraries: prctest 6: TBP>
    end type prctest_6_t
```

Return the type name.

```
<Process libraries: prctest 6: TBP>≡
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => prctest_6_type_name

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  function prctest_6_type_name () result (type)
    type(string_t) :: type
    type = "test_file"
  end function prctest_6_type_name
```

Here is the actual test:

```
<Process libraries: execute tests>+≡
  call test (process_libraries_6, "process_libraries_6", &
    "build and load external process library", &
    u, results)

<Process libraries: tests>+≡
  subroutine process_libraries_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name_list
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: proc_driver
    integer :: i
    integer(c_int) :: n

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: build and load a process library"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           with an external (pseudo) matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           Check single-call linking"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call lib%init (var_str ("proclibs6"))
    call os_data_init (os_data)

    allocate (prcdef_6_t :: core_def)
    select type (core_def)
    type is (prcdef_6_t)
      call core_def%init ()
    end select
```



```

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("proclibs6_a"), &
    model_name = var_str ("Test_model"), &
    n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 2, &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c")]), &
    method = var_str ("test"), &
    variant = core_def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code, compile, link, load"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u, libpath = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "name" = ', ' , &
    char (lib%get_name ()), "' "
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active" = ', ' , &
    lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes" = ', ' , &
    lib%get_n_processes ()
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no")  "processes" = "
call lib%get_process_id_list (name_list)
do i = 1, size (name_list)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no")  char (name_list(i))
end do
write (u, *)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "proclibs6_a is process" = ', ' , &
    lib%contains (var_str ("proclibs6_a"))
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "proclibs6_a has index" = ', ' , &
    lib%get_entry_index (var_str ("proclibs6_a"))
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "foobar is process" = ', ' , &
    lib%contains (var_str ("foobar"))
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "foobar has index" = ', ' , &
    lib%get_entry_index (var_str ("foobar"))
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in(proclibs6_a)" = ', ' , &

```

```

        lib%get_n_in (var_str ("proclibs6_a"))
write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "model_name(proclibs6_a) = ", &
        char (lib%get_model_name (var_str ("proclibs6_a")))
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_components(proclibs6_a) = ", &
        lib%get_n_components (var_str ("proclibs6_a"))
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "components(proclibs6_a) ="
call lib%get_component_list (var_str ("proclibs6_a"), name_list)
do i = 1, size (name_list)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (name_list(i))
end do
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of proclibs6_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("proclibs6_a"), 1, data, proc_driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "component ID      = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "model name      = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "md5sum          = ', data%md5sum, '"
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "openmp supported = ", data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_in      = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_out     = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_flv    = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_hel    = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_col    = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cin    = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cf     = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "flv state =", data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "hel state =", data%hel_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col state =", data%col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color factors =", data%color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf index =", data%cf_index

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Call feature of proclibs6_a:"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (proc_driver)
type is (prctest_6_t)
        call proc_driver%proc1 (n)
        write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 = ", n
end select

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_6"
end subroutine process_libraries_6

```

## MD5 sums

Check MD5 sum calculation.

```
(Process libraries: execute tests)+≡
    call test (process_libraries_7, "process_libraries_7", &
              "process definition list", &
              u, results)

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
    subroutine process_libraries_7 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(prc_template_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_core_templates
        type(process_def_entry_t) :: entry
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: test_def

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_7"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Construct a process definition list &
                           &and check MD5 sums"
        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Construct a process definition list"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Process: two components"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (process_core_templates (1))
        allocate (prcdef_2_t :: process_core_templates(1)%core_def)

        call entry%init (var_str ("first"), model_name = var_str ("Test"), &
                        n_in = 1, n_components = 2)
        allocate (prcdef_2_t :: test_def)
        select type (test_def)
        type is (prcdef_2_t); test_def%data = 31
        end select
        call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 3, &
            prt_in  = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
            prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c"), &
                                    var_str ("e")]), &
            method  = var_str ("test"), &
            variant = test_def)
        allocate (prcdef_2_t :: test_def)
        select type (test_def)
        type is (prcdef_2_t); test_def%data = 42
        end select
        call entry%import_component (2, n_out = 2, &
            prt_in  = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
            prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c")]), &
            method  = var_str ("test"), &
            variant = test_def)
        call entry%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute MD5 sums"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call entry%compute_md5sum ()
        call entry%write (u)
```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recalculate MD5 sums (should be identical)"
write (u, "(A)")

call entry%compute_md5sum ()
call entry%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify a component and recalculate MD5 sums"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (test_def => entry%initial(2)%core_def)
type is (prcdef_2_t)
    test_def%data = 54
end select
call entry%compute_md5sum ()
call entry%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify the model and recalculate MD5 sums"
write (u, "(A)")

entry%model_name = "foo"
call entry%compute_md5sum ()
call entry%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_7"
end subroutine process_libraries_7

```

Here is the actual test:

```

(Process libraries: execute tests)+≡
    call test (process_libraries_8, "process_libraries_8", &
        "library status checks", &
        u, results)

(Process libraries: tests)+≡
subroutine process_libraries_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_libraries_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: build and load a process library"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           with an external (pseudo) matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           Check status updates"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call lib%init (var_str ("proclibs8"))

```

```

call os_data_init (os_data)

allocate (prcdef_6_t :: core_def)
select type (core_def)
type is (prcdef_6_t)
    call core_def%init ()
end select

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("proclibs8_a"), &
    model_name = var_str ("Test_model"), &
    n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 2, &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("c")]), &
    method = var_str ("test"), &
    variant = core_def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%compute_md5sum ()

associate (def => lib%entry(1)%def%initial(1))
    select type (writer => lib%driver%record(1)%writer)
    type is (test_writer_4_t)
        writer%md5sum = def%md5sum
    end select
end associate

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Update status"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%update_status (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver source code"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .false.)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%make_source (os_data)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile and load"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%load (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Append process and reconfigure"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (prcdef_6_t :: core_def)
select type (core_def)
type is (prcdef_6_t)
    call core_def%init ()
end select

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("proclibs8_b"), &
    model_name = var_str ("Test_model"), &
    n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = 2, &
    prt_in  = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("a")]), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec ([var_str ("b"), var_str ("d")]), &
    method  = var_str ("test"), &
    variant = core_def)
call lib%append (entry)

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%compute_md5sum ()
associate (def => lib%entry(2)%def%initial(1))
    select type (writer => lib%driver%record(2)%writer)
    type is (test_writer_4_t)
        writer%md5sum = def%md5sum
    end select
end associate
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .false.)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update status"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%update_status (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write source code"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%make_source (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset status"
write (u, "(A)")

lib%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
lib%entry%status = STAT_CONFIGURED
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update status"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%update_status (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Partial cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update status"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call lib%update_status (os_data)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library loaded = ", lib%driver%loaded
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "lib status   = ", lib%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc1 status = ", lib%entry(1)%status
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "proc2 status = ", lib%entry(2)%status

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete cleanup"

call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .true.)
call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_libraries_8"
end subroutine process_libraries_8

```

## 14.5 Process Library Stacks

For storing and handling multiple libraries, we define process library stacks. These are ordinary stacks where new entries are pushed onto the top.

```

⟨prclib_stacks.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module prclib_stacks

    ⟨Use strings⟩
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use models

    use process_libraries

    ⟨Standard module head⟩

    ⟨Prclib stacks: public⟩

    ⟨Prclib stacks: types⟩

    contains

    ⟨Prclib stacks: procedures⟩

    ⟨Prclib stacks: tests⟩

  end module prclib_stacks

```



### 14.5.1 The stack entry type

A stack entry is a process library object, augmented by a pointer to the next entry. We do not need specific methods, all relevant methods are inherited.

On higher level, process libraries should be prepared as process entry objects.

```
<Prclib stacks: public>≡  
    public :: prclib_entry_t  
  
<Prclib stacks: types>≡  
    type, extends (process_library_t) :: prclib_entry_t  
        type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()  
    end type prclib_entry_t
```

### 14.5.2 The prclib stack type

For easy conversion and lookup it is useful to store the filling number in the object. The content is stored as a linked list.

```
<Prclib stacks: public>+≡  
    public :: prclib_stack_t  
  
<Prclib stacks: types>+≡  
    type :: prclib_stack_t  
        integer :: n = 0  
        type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()  
    contains  
        <Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>  
    end type prclib_stack_t
```

Finalizer. Iteratively deallocate the stack entries. The resulting empty stack can be immediately recycled, if necessary.

```
<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>≡  
    procedure :: final => prclib_stack_final  
  
<Prclib stacks: procedures>≡  
    subroutine prclib_stack_final (object)  
        class(prclib_stack_t), intent(inout) :: object  
        type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib  
        do while (associated (object%first))  
            lib => object%first  
            object%first => lib%next  
            call lib%final ()  
            deallocate (lib)  
        end do  
        object%n = 0  
    end subroutine prclib_stack_final
```

Output. The entries on the stack will be ordered LIFO, i.e., backwards.

```
<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>+≡  
    procedure :: write => prclib_stack_write
```

```

<Prclib stacks: procedures>+≡
subroutine prclib_stack_write (object, unit, libpath)
  class(prclib_stack_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: libpath
  type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  call write_separator_double (u)
  select case (object%n)
  case (0)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process library stack: [empty]"
  case default
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process library stack:"
    lib => object%first
    do while (associated (lib))
      call write_separator (u)
      call lib%write (u, libpath)
      lib => lib%next
    end do
  end select
  call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine prclib_stack_write

```

### 14.5.3 Operating on Stacks

We take a library entry pointer and push it onto the stack. The previous pointer is nullified. Subsequently, the library entry is ‘owned’ by the stack and will be finalized when the stack is deleted.

```

<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>+≡
procedure :: push => prclib_stack_push

<Prclib stacks: procedures>+≡
subroutine prclib_stack_push (stack, lib)
  class(prclib_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
  type(prclib_entry_t), intent(inout), pointer :: lib
  lib%next => stack%first
  stack%first => lib
  lib => null ()
  stack%n = stack%n + 1
end subroutine prclib_stack_push

```

### 14.5.4 Accessing Contents

Return a pointer to the topmost stack element. The result type is just the bare `process_library_t`. There is no `target` attribute required since the stack elements are allocated via pointers.

```

<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_first_ptr => prclib_stack_get_first_ptr

```

```

<Prclib stacks: procedures>+≡
function prclib_stack_get_first_ptr (stack) result (ptr)
  class(prclib_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
  type(process_library_t), pointer :: ptr
  ptr => stack%first%process_library_t
end function prclib_stack_get_first_ptr

```

Return a complete list of the libraries (names) in the stack. The list is in the order in which the elements got pushed onto the stack, so the 'first' entry is listed last.

```

<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_names => prclib_stack_get_names
<Prclib stacks: procedures>+≡
subroutine prclib_stack_get_names (stack, libname)
  class(prclib_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: libname
  type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
  integer :: i
  allocate (libname (stack%n))
  i = stack%n
  lib => stack%first
  do while (associated (lib))
    libname(i) = lib%get_name ()
    i = i - 1
    lib => lib%next
  end do
end subroutine prclib_stack_get_names

```

Return a pointer to the library with given name.

```

<Prclib stacks: prclib stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_library_ptr => prclib_stack_get_library_ptr
<Prclib stacks: procedures>+≡
function prclib_stack_get_library_ptr (stack, libname) result (ptr)
  class(prclib_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
  type(process_library_t), pointer :: ptr
  type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: current
  current => stack%first
  do while (associated (current))
    if (current%get_name () == libname) then
      ptr => current%process_library_t
      return
    end if
    current => current%next
  end do
  ptr => null ()
end function prclib_stack_get_library_ptr

```

### 14.5.5 Unit tests

```

<Prclib stacks: public>+≡

```

```

public :: prclib_stacks_test
<Prclib stacks: tests>≡
  subroutine prclib_stacks_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Prclib stacks: execute tests>
  end subroutine prclib_stacks_test

```

### Write an empty process library stack

The most trivial test is to write an uninitialized process library stack.

```

<Prclib stacks: execute tests>≡
  call test (prclib_stacks_1, "prclib_stacks_1", &
    "write an empty process library stack", &
    u, results)
<Prclib stacks: tests>+≡
  subroutine prclib_stacks_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(prclib_stack_t) :: stack

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_stacks_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display an empty process library stack"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call stack%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_stacks_1"

  end subroutine prclib_stacks_1

```

### Fill a process library stack

Fill a process library stack with two (identical) processes.

```

<Prclib stacks: execute tests>+≡
  call test (prclib_stacks_2, "prclib_stacks_2", &
    "fill a process library stack", &
    u, results)
<Prclib stacks: tests>+≡
  subroutine prclib_stacks_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(prclib_stack_t) :: stack
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prclib_stacks_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: fill a process library stack"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize two (empty) libraries &

```

```

        &and push them on the stack"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib1"))
call stack%push (lib)

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib2"))
call stack%push (lib)

call stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call stack%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prclib_stacks_2"

end subroutine prclib_stacks_2

```

## 14.6 Trivial matrix element for tests

For the purpose of testing the workflow, we implement here two matrix elements with the simplest possible structure.

This matrix element generator can only generate a single scattering process and a single decay process. The scattering process is a quartic interaction of a massless, neutral and colorless scalar  $s$  with unit coupling results in a trivial  $2 \rightarrow 2$  scattering process. The matrix element is implemented internally, so we do not need the machinery of external process libraries. The decay process is a decay of  $s$  into a pair of colored fermions  $f$ .

```

<prc_test.f90>≡
<File header>

module prc_test

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use strings>
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface

    use process_constants
    use prclib_interfaces
    use prc_core_def
    use particle_specifiers
    use process_libraries

    <Standard module head>

```

```

    <Test ME: public>

    <Test ME: types>

    contains

    <Test ME: procedures>

    <Test ME: tests>

end module prc_test

```

### 14.6.1 Process definition

For the process definition we implement an extension of the `prc_core_def_t` abstract type.

```

<Test ME: public>≡
    public :: prc_test_def_t

<Test ME: types>≡
    type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: prc_test_def_t
        type(string_t) :: model_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out
    contains
        <Test ME: test me def: TBP>
    end type prc_test_def_t

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_string => prc_test_def_type_string

<Test ME: procedures>≡
    function prc_test_def_type_string () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "test_me"
    end function prc_test_def_type_string

```

There is no 'feature' here since there is no external code.

```

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: get_features => prc_test_def_get_features

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_test_def_get_features (features)
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
        allocate (features (0))
    end subroutine prc_test_def_get_features

```

Initialization: set some data (not really useful).

```

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => prc_test_def_init

```

```

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_def_init (object, model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
    class(prc_test_def_t), intent(out) :: object
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    object%model_name = model_name
    allocate (object%prt_in (size (prt_in)))
    object%prt_in = prt_in
    allocate (object%prt_out (size (prt_out)))
    object%prt_out = prt_out
  end subroutine prc_test_def_init

```

Write/read process- and method-specific data. (No-op)

```

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => prc_test_def_write

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_def_write (object, unit)
    class(prc_test_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
  end subroutine prc_test_def_write

```

```

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read => prc_test_def_read

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_def_read (object, unit)
    class(prc_test_def_t), intent(out) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
  end subroutine prc_test_def_read

```

Allocate the driver for test ME matrix elements. We get the actual component ID (basename), and we can transfer all process-specific data from the process definition.

```

<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_driver => prc_test_def_allocate_driver

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_def_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
    class(prc_test_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
    allocate (prc_test_t :: driver)
    select type (driver)
    type is (prc_test_t)
      driver%id = basename
      driver%model_name = object%model_name
      select case (size (object%prt_in))
      case (1); driver%scattering = .false.
      case (2); driver%scattering = .true.
      end select
    end select
  end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine prc_test_def_allocate_driver
```

Nothing to connect. This subroutine will not be called.

```
<Test ME: test me def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: connect => prc_test_def_connect

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_def_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    class(prc_test_def_t), intent(in) :: def
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
  end subroutine prc_test_def_connect
```

## 14.6.2 Driver

```
<Test ME: public>+≡
  public :: prc_test_t

<Test ME: types>+≡
  type, extends (process_driver_internal_t) :: prc_test_t
    type(string_t) :: id
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    logical :: scattering = .true.
  contains
    <Test ME: test me driver: TBP>
  end type prc_test_t
```

In contrast to generic matrix-element implementations, we can hard-wire the amplitude method as a type-bound procedure.

```
<Test ME: test me driver: TBP>≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_amplitude => prc_test_get_amplitude

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  function prc_test_get_amplitude (p) result (amp)
    complex(default) :: amp
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: p
    amp = 1
  end function prc_test_get_amplitude
```

The reported type is the same as for the `prc_test_def_t` type.

```
<Test ME: test me driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => prc_test_type_name

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
  function prc_test_type_name () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "test_me"
  end function prc_test_type_name
```

Fill process constants.

```
<Test ME: test me driver: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: fill_constants => prc_test_fill_constants
```



```

<Test ME: procedures>+=
subroutine prc_test_fill_constants (driver, data)
  class(prc_test_t), intent(in) :: driver
  type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
  data%id = driver%id
  data%model_name = driver%model_name
  if (driver%scattering) then
    data%n_in = 2
    data%n_out = 2
    data%n_flv = 1
    data%n_hel = 1
    data%n_col = 1
    data%n_cin = 2
    data%n_cf = 1
    allocate (data%flv_state (4, 1))
    data%flv_state = 25
    allocate (data%hel_state (4, 1))
    data%hel_state = 0
    allocate (data%col_state (2, 4, 1))
    data%col_state = 0
    allocate (data%ghost_flag (4, 1))
    data%ghost_flag = .false.
    allocate (data%color_factors (1))
    data%color_factors = 1
    allocate (data%cf_index (2, 1))
    data%cf_index = 1
  else
    data%n_in = 1
    data%n_out = 2
    data%n_flv = 1
    data%n_hel = 2
    data%n_col = 1
    data%n_cin = 2
    data%n_cf = 1
    allocate (data%flv_state (3, 1))
    data%flv_state(:,1) = [25, 6, -6]
    allocate (data%hel_state (3, 2))
    data%hel_state(:,1) = [0, 1, -1]
    data%hel_state(:,2) = [0, -1, 1]
    allocate (data%col_state (2, 3, 1))
    data%col_state = reshape ([0,0, 1,0, 0,-1], [2,3,1])
    allocate (data%ghost_flag (3, 1))
    data%ghost_flag = .false.
    allocate (data%color_factors (1))
    data%color_factors = 3
    allocate (data%cf_index (2, 1))
    data%cf_index = 1
  end if
end subroutine prc_test_fill_constants

```

### 14.6.3 Shortcut

Since this module is there for testing purposes, we set up a subroutine that does all the work at once: create a library with the two processes (scattering and decay), configure and load, and set up the driver.

```
<Test ME: public>+≡
    public :: prc_test_create_library

<Test ME: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_test_create_library &
        (libname, lib, scattering, decay, procname1, procname2)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
        type(process_library_t), intent(out) :: lib
        logical, intent(in), optional :: scattering, decay
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: procname1, procname2
        type(string_t) :: model_name, procname
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        logical :: sca, dec
        sca = .true.; if (present (scattering)) sca = scattering
        dec = .false.; if (present (decay)) dec = decay

        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call lib%init (libname)
        model_name = "Test"

        if (sca) then
            if (present (procname1)) then
                procname = procname1
            else
                procname = libname
            end if
            allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
            prt_in = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]
            prt_out = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]
            allocate (prc_test_def_t :: def)
            select type (def)
            type is (prc_test_def_t)
                call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
            end select
            allocate (entry)
            call entry%init (procname, model_name = model_name, &
                n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
            call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
                prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
                prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
                method = var_str ("test_me"), &
                variant = def)
            call lib%append (entry)
        end if

        if (dec) then
            if (present (procname2)) then
```

```

        procname = procname2
    else
        procname = libname
    end if
    if (allocated (prt_in)) deallocate (prt_in, prt_out)
    allocate (prt_in (1), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("s")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("f"), var_str ("fbar")]
    allocate (prc_test_def_t :: def)
    select type (def)
    type is (prc_test_def_t)
        call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
    end select
    allocate (entry)
    call entry%init (procname, model_name = model_name, &
        n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
    call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
        prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
        prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
        method = var_str ("test_decay"), &
        variant = def)
    call lib%append (entry)
end if

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%load (os_data)
end subroutine prc_test_create_library

```

#### 14.6.4 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Test ME: public>+≡
    public :: prc_test_test

<Test ME: tests>≡
    subroutine prc_test_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Test ME: execute tests>
    end subroutine prc_test_test

```

#### Generate and load the scattering process

The process is  $ss \rightarrow ss$ , where  $s$  is a trivial scalar particle, for vanishing mass and unit coupling. We initialize the process, build the library, and compute the particular matrix element for momenta of unit energy and right-angle scattering. (The scattering is independent of angle.) The matrix element is equal to unity.

```

<Test ME: execute tests>≡
    call test (prc_test_1, "prc_test_1", &
        "build and load trivial process", &
        u, results)

```

*<Test ME: tests>+≡*

```

subroutine prc_test_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(process_library_t) :: lib
  class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
  type(process_constants_t) :: data
  class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  real(default), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
  integer :: i

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_test_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a trivial process"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           build a library and &
    &access the matrix element"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call lib%init (var_str ("prc_test1"))

  model_name = "Test"
  allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
  prt_in  = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]
  prt_out = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]

  allocate (prc_test_def_t :: def)
  select type (def)
  type is (prc_test_def_t)
    call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
  end select
  allocate (entry)
  call entry%init (var_str ("prc_test1_a"), model_name = model_name, &
    n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
  call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in  = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method  = var_str ("test_me"), &
    variant = def)
  call lib%append (entry)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call lib%configure (os_data)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Load library"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call lib%load (os_data)

  call lib%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is active          = ", &
lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_processes        = ", &
lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of prc_test1_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("prc_test1_a"), 1, data, driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "component ID      = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "model name        = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "md5sum           = '", data%md5sum, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "openmp supported = ", data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_in = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_out = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_flv = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_hel = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_col = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cin = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_cf = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "flv state =", data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))") "hel state =", data%hel_state(:,1)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col state =", data%col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color factors =", data%color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf index =", data%cf_index

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 1.0_default, &
1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default,-1.0_default, &
1.0_default, 1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, &
1.0_default,-1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default &
], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (driver)
type is (prc_test_t)

```

```

        write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp| =", abs (driver%get_amplitude (p))
    end select

    call lib%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_test_1"

end subroutine prc_test_1

```

## Shortcut

This is identical to the previous test, but we create the library be a single command. This is handy for other modules which use the test process.

```

<Test ME: execute tests>+≡
    call test (prc_test_2, "prc_test_2", &
        "build and load trivial process using shortcut", &
        u, results)

<Test ME: tests>+≡
    subroutine prc_test_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_library_t) :: lib
        class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
        type(process_constants_t) :: data
        real(default), dimension(0:3,4) :: p

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_test_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a trivial process"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* build a library and &
            &access the matrix element"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a process library with one entry"

        call prc_test_create_library (var_str ("prc_test2"), lib)
        call lib%connect_process (var_str ("prc_test2"), 1, data, driver)

        p = reshape ([ &
            1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 1.0_default, &
            1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default,-1.0_default, &
            1.0_default, 1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, &
            1.0_default,-1.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default &
            ], [4,4])

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        select type (driver)
        type is (prc_test_t)
            write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp| =", abs (driver%get_amplitude (p))
        end select
    end subroutine prc_test_2

```

```

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_test_2"

end subroutine prc_test_2

```

### Generate and load the decay process

The process is  $s \rightarrow f\bar{f}$ , where  $s$  is a trivial scalar particle and  $f$  is a colored fermion. We initialize the process, build the library, and compute the particular matrix element for a fixed momentum configuration. (The decay is independent of angle.) The matrix element is equal to unity.

```

<Test ME: execute tests>+≡
  call test (prc_test_3, "prc_test_3", &
    "build and load trivial decay", &
    u, results)

<Test ME: tests>+≡
  subroutine prc_test_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    real(default), dimension(0:3,3) :: p
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_test_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a trivial decay process"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* build a library and &
      &access the matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call lib%init (var_str ("prc_test3"))

    model_name = "Test"
    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("s")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("f"), var_str ("F")]

    allocate (prc_test_def_t :: def)
    select type (def)
    type is (prc_test_def_t)
      call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)

```

```

end select
allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("prc_test3_a"), model_name = model_name, &
    n_in = 1, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method = var_str ("test_me"), &
    variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Load library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active" = ", &
    lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes" = ", &
    lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of prc_test3_a.i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("prc_test3_a"), 1, data, driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "component ID" = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model name" = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum" = ', ', data%md5sum, ''
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "openmp supported = ", data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "flv state =", data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))")  "hel state =", data%hel_state(:,1)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))")  "hel state =", data%hel_state(:,2)
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "col state =", data%col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))")  "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))")  "color factors =", data%color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "cf index =", data%cf_index

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    125._default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, &
    62.5_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 62.5_default, &
    62.5_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, -62.5_default &
    ], [4,3])
do i = 1, 3
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F8.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (driver)
type is (prc_test_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp| =", abs (driver%get_amplitude (p))
end select

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_test_3"

end subroutine prc_test_3

```

## Shortcut

This is identical to the previous test, but we create the library be a single command. This is handy for other modules which use the test process.

```

<Test ME: execute tests>+≡
    call test (prc_test_4, "prc_test_4", &
        "build and load trivial decay using shortcut", &
        u, results)

<Test ME: tests>+≡
    subroutine prc_test_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_library_t) :: lib
        class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
        type(process_constants_t) :: data
        real(default), dimension(0:3,3) :: p

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_test_4"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a trivial decay process"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* build a library and &
            &access the matrix element"
        write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a process library with one entry"

call prc_test_create_library (var_str ("prc_test4"), lib, &
    scattering=.false., decay=.true.)
call lib%connect_process (var_str ("prc_test4"), 1, data, driver)

p = reshape ([ &
    125._default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, &
    62.5_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default, 62.5_default, &
    62.5_default, 0.0_default, 0.0_default,-62.5_default &
    ], [4,3])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (driver)
type is (prc_test_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp| =", abs (driver%get_amplitude (p))
end select

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_test_4"

end subroutine prc_test_4

```

## Chapter 15

# Integration and Process Objects

This is the central part of the WHIZARD package. It provides the functionality for evaluating structure functions, kinematics and matrix elements, integration and event generation. It combines the various parts that deal with those tasks individually and organizes the data transfer between them.

**integration\_results** This module handles results from integrating processes. It records passes and iterations, calculates statistical averages, and provides the user output of integration results.

**prc\_core** Here, we define the abstract `prc_core_t` type which handles all specific features of kinematics matrix-element evaluation that depend on a particular class of processes.

**parton\_states** A `parton_state_t` object represents an elementary partonic interaction. There are two versions: one for the isolated elementary process, one for the elementary process convoluted with the structure-function chain. The parton state is an effective state. It needs not coincide with the seed-kinematics state which is used in evaluating phase space.

**processes** Here, all pieces are combined for the purpose of evaluating the elementary processes. The whole algorithm is coded in terms of abstract data types as defined in the appropriate modules: `prc_core` for matrix-element evaluation, `prc_core_def` for the associated configuration and driver, `sf_base` for beams and structure-functions, `phs_base` for phase space, and `mci_base` for integration and event generation.

**process\_stacks** Process stacks collect process objects.

### 15.1 Integration results

We record integration results and errors in a dedicated type. This allows us to do further statistics such as weighted average, chi-squared, grouping by integration passes, etc.

Note WHIZARD 2.2.0: This code is taken from the previous `processes` module essentially unchanged and converted into a separate module. It lacks an overhaul and, in particular, self-tests.

```

<integration_results.f90>≡
  module integration_results

    use limits, only: FMT_12, FMT_14, GML_MIN_RANGE_RATIO !NODEP!
    use limits, only: INTEGRATION_ERROR_TOLERANCE !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use md5
    use os_interface
    use mci_base

    <Standard module head>

    <Integration results: public>

    <Integration results: parameters>

    <Integration results: types>

    contains

    <Integration results: procedures>

  end module integration_results

```

### 15.1.1 Integration results entry

This object collects the results of an integration pass and makes them available to the outside.

The results object has to distinguish the process type:

We store the process type, the index of the integration pass and the absolute iteration index, the number of iterations contained in this result (for averages), and the integral (cross section or partial width), error estimate, efficiency.

For intermediate results, we set a flag if this result is an improvement w.r.t. previous ones.

The process type indicates decay or scattering. Dummy entries (skipped iterations) have a process type of `PRC_UNKNOWN`.

```

<Integration results: types>≡
  type :: integration_entry_t
    private
    integer :: process_type = PRC_UNKNOWN
    integer :: pass = 0
    integer :: it = 0
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    logical :: improved = .false.
    real(default) :: integral = 0

```

```

        real(default) :: error = 0
        real(default) :: efficiency = 0
        real(default) :: chi2 = 0
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: chain_weights
    end type integration_entry_t

```

The possible values of the type indicator:

```

<Integration results: parameters>≡
    integer, parameter, public :: PRC_UNKNOWN = 0
    integer, parameter, public :: PRC_DECAY = 1
    integer, parameter, public :: PRC_SCATTERING = 2

```

Initialize with all relevant data

```

<Integration results: procedures>≡
    subroutine integration_entry_init (entry, &
        process_type, pass, it, n_it, n_calls, improved, &
        integral, error, efficiency, chi2, chain_weights)
        type(integration_entry_t), intent(out) :: entry
        integer, intent(in) :: process_type, pass, it, n_it, n_calls
        logical, intent(in) :: improved
        real(default), intent(in) :: integral, error, efficiency
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: chi2
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: chain_weights
        entry%process_type = process_type
        entry%pass = pass
        entry%it = it
        entry%n_it = n_it
        entry%n_calls = n_calls
        entry%improved = improved
        entry%integral = integral
        entry%error = error
        entry%efficiency = efficiency
        if (present (chi2)) &
            entry%chi2 = chi2
        if (present (chain_weights)) then
            allocate (entry%chain_weights (size (chain_weights)))
            entry%chain_weights = chain_weights
        end if
    end subroutine integration_entry_init

```

Access values, some of them computed on demand:

```

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    elemental function integration_entry_get_pass (entry) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
        n = entry%pass
    end function integration_entry_get_pass

    elemental function integration_entry_get_n_calls (entry) result (n)
        integer :: n
        type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
        n = entry%n_calls

```

```

end function integration_entry_get_n_calls

elemental function integration_entry_get_integral (entry) result (int)
    real(default) :: int
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    int = entry%integral
end function integration_entry_get_integral

elemental function integration_entry_get_error (entry) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    err = entry%error
end function integration_entry_get_error

elemental function integration_entry_get_relative_error (entry) result (err)
    real(default) :: err
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    if (entry%integral /= 0) then
        err = entry%error / entry%integral
    else
        err = 0
    end if
end function integration_entry_get_relative_error

elemental function integration_entry_get_accuracy (entry) result (acc)
    real(default) :: acc
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    acc = accuracy (entry%integral, entry%error, entry%n_calls)
end function integration_entry_get_accuracy

elemental function accuracy (integral, error, n_calls) result (acc)
    real(default) :: acc
    real(default), intent(in) :: integral, error
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    if (integral /= 0) then
        acc = error / integral * sqrt (real (n_calls, default))
    else
        acc = 0
    end if
end function accuracy

elemental function integration_entry_get_efficiency (entry) result (eff)
    real(default) :: eff
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    eff = entry%efficiency
end function integration_entry_get_efficiency

elemental function integration_entry_get_chi2 (entry) result (chi2)
    real(default) :: chi2
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    chi2 = entry%chi2
end function integration_entry_get_chi2

elemental function integration_entry_has_improved (entry) result (flag)

```

```

logical :: flag
type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
flag = entry%improved
end function integration_entry_has_improved

elemental function integration_entry_get_n_groves (entry) result (n_groves)
integer :: n_groves
type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
if (allocated (entry%chain_weights)) then
    n_groves = size (entry%chain_weights, 1)
else
    n_groves = 0
end if
end function integration_entry_get_n_groves

```

Output. This writes the header line for the result account below:

```

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
subroutine write_header (process_type, unit, logfile)
integer, intent(in) :: process_type
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
logical, intent(in), optional :: logfile
character(5) :: phys_unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
select case (process_type)
case (PRC_DECAY);      phys_unit = "[GeV]"
case (PRC_SCATTERING); phys_unit = "[fb] "
case default
    phys_unit = ""
end select
write (msg_buffer, "(A)") &
    "It      Calls Integral" // phys_unit // &
    " Error" // phys_unit // &
    " Err[%]  Acc Eff[%]  Chi2 N[It] |"
call msg_message (unit=u, logfile=logfile)
end subroutine write_header

```

This writes a separator for result display:

```

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
subroutine write_hline (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)")  "|" // (repeat("-", 77)) // "|"
flush (u)
end subroutine write_hline

subroutine write_dline (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)")  "|" // (repeat("=", 77)) // "|"
flush (u)

```

```
end subroutine write_dline
```

This writes the standard result account into one screen line. The verbose version uses multiple lines and prints the unabridged values. Dummy entries are not written.

*(Integration results: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine integration_entry_write (entry, unit, verbose, suppress)
  type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  logical, intent(in), optional :: suppress
  integer :: u
  character(1) :: star
  character(12) :: fmt
  logical :: verb, supp
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
  supp = .false.; if (present (suppress)) supp = suppress
  if (verb) then
    write (u, *) "process_type = ", entry%process_type
    write (u, *) "      pass = ", entry%pass
    write (u, *) "      it = ", entry%it
    write (u, *) "      n_it = ", entry%n_it
    write (u, *) "      n_calls = ", entry%n_calls
    write (u, *) "      improved = ", entry%improved
    write (u, *) "      integral = ", entry%integral
    write (u, *) "      error = ", entry%error
    write (u, *) "      efficiency = ", entry%efficiency
    write (u, *) "      chi2 = ", entry%chi2
    if (allocated (entry%chain_weights)) then
      write (u, *) "      n_groves = ", size (entry%chain_weights)
      write (u, *) "chain_weights = ", entry%chain_weights
    else
      write (u, *) "      n_groves = 0"
    end if
  else if (entry%process_type /= PRC_UNKNOWN) then
    if (entry%improved .and. .not. supp) then
      star = "*"
    else
      star = " "
    end if
    call pac_fmt (fmt, FMT_14, "1x," // FMT_12 // ",1x", suppress)
    if (entry%n_it /= 1) then
      write (u, "(1x,I3,1x,I10,1x," // fmt // ",1x,ES9.2,1x,F7.2," // &
        "1x,F7.2,A1,1x,F6.2,1x,F7.2,1x,I3)") &
        entry%it, &
        entry%n_calls, &
        entry%integral, &
        abs(entry%error), &
        abs(integration_entry_get_relative_error (entry)) * 100, &
        abs(integration_entry_get_accuracy (entry)), &
        star, &
        entry%efficiency * 100, &
```



```

        entry%chi2, &
        entry%n_it
    else
        write (u, "(1x,I3,1x,I10,1x," // fmt // ",1x,ES9.2,1x,F7.2," // &
            "1x,F7.2,A1,1x,F6.2,1x,F7.2,1x,I3)") &
            entry%it, &
            entry%n_calls, &
            entry%integral, &
            abs(entry%error), &
            abs(integration_entry_get_relative_error (entry)) * 100, &
            abs(integration_entry_get_accuracy (entry)), &
            star, &
            entry%efficiency * 100
    end if
end if
flush (u)
end subroutine integration_entry_write

```

Read the entry, assuming it has been written in verbose format.

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine integration_entry_read (entry, unit)
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(out) :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    character(30) :: dummy
    character :: equals
    integer :: n_groves
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%process_type
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%pass
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%it
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%n_it
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%n_calls
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%improved
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%integral
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%error
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%efficiency
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%chi2
    read (unit, *) dummy, equals, n_groves
    if (n_groves /= 0) then
        allocate (entry%chain_weights (n_groves))
        read (unit, *) dummy, equals, entry%chain_weights
    end if
end subroutine integration_entry_read

```

Write an account of the channel weights, accumulated by groves.

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine integration_entry_write_chain_weights (entry, unit)
    type(integration_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    if (allocated (entry%chain_weights)) then
        do i = 1, size (entry%chain_weights)
            write (u, "(1x,I3)", advance="no") nint (entry%chain_weights(i) * 100)

```

```

        end do
        write (u, *)
    end if
end subroutine integration_entry_write_chain_weights

```

Compute the average for all entries in the specified integration pass. The integrals are weighted w.r.t. their individual errors.

The quoted error of the result is the expected error, computed from the weighted average of the given individual errors.

This should be compared to the actual distribution of the results, from which we also can compute an error estimate if there is more than one iteration. The ratio of the distribution error and the averaged error, is the  $\chi^2$  value.

All error distributions are assumed Gaussian, of course. The  $\chi^2$  value is a partial check for this assumption. If it is significantly greater than unity, there is something wrong with the individual errors.

The efficiency returned is the one of the last entry in the integration pass.

If any error vanishes, averaging by this algorithm would fail. In this case, we simply average the entries and use the deviations from this average (if any) to estimate the error.

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

function compute_average (entry, pass) result (result)
    type(integration_entry_t) :: result
    type(integration_entry_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: pass
    integer :: i
    logical, dimension(size(entry)) :: mask
    real(default), dimension(size(entry)) :: ivar
    real(default) :: sum_ivar, variance
    result%process_type = entry(1)%process_type
    result%pass = pass
    mask = entry%pass == pass .and. entry%process_type /= PRC_UNKNOWN
    result%it = maxval (entry%it, mask)
    result%n_it = count (mask)
    result%n_calls = sum (entry%n_calls, mask)
    if (.not. any (mask .and. entry%error == 0)) then
        where (mask)
            ivar = 1 / entry%error ** 2
        elsewhere
            ivar = 0
        end where
        sum_ivar = sum (ivar, mask)
        if (sum_ivar /= 0) then
            variance = 1 / sum_ivar
        else
            variance = 0
        end if
        result%integral = sum (entry%integral * ivar, mask) * variance
        if (result%n_it > 1) then
            result%chi2 = &
                sum ((entry%integral - result%integral)**2 * ivar, mask) &
                / (result%n_it - 1)
        end if
    end if
end function

```

```

else if (result%n_it /= 0) then
  result%integral = sum (entry%integral, mask) / result%n_it
  if (result%n_it > 1) then
    variance = &
      sum ((entry%integral - result%integral)**2, mask) &
      / (result%n_it - 1)
    if (result%integral /= 0) then
      if (abs (variance / result%integral) &
          < 100 * epsilon (1._default)) then
        variance = 0
      end if
    end if
    result%chi2 = variance / result%n_it
  else
    variance = 0
  end if
end if
result%error = sqrt (variance)
do i = size (entry), 1, -1
  if (mask(i)) then
    result%efficiency = entry(i)%efficiency
    exit
  end if
end do
end function compute_average

```

### 15.1.2 Combined integration results

We collect a list of results which grows during the execution of the program. This is implemented as an array which grows if necessary; so we can easily compute averages.

We implement this as an extension of the `mci_results_t` which is defined in `mci_base` as an abstract type. We thus decouple the implementation of the integrator from the implementation of the results display, but nevertheless can record intermediate results during integration. This implies that the present extension implements a `record` method.

```

<Integration results: public>≡
  public :: integration_results_t

<Integration results: types>+≡
  type, extends (mci_results_t) :: integration_results_t
  private
  integer :: process_type = PRC_UNKNOWN
  integer :: current_pass = 0
  integer :: n_pass = 0
  integer :: n_it = 0
  logical :: screen = .false.
  integer :: unit = 0
  real(default) :: error_threshold = 0
  type(integration_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
  type(integration_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: average
contains

```

```

    <Integration results: integration results: TBP>
end type integration_results_t

```

The array is extended in chunks of 10 entries.

```

<Integration results: parameters>+≡
    integer, parameter :: RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE = 10

```

The standard does not require to explicitly initialize the integers; however, some gfortran version has a bug here and misses the default initialization in the type definition.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => integration_results_init

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_init (results, process_type)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(out) :: results
        integer, intent(in) :: process_type
        results%process_type = process_type
        results%n_pass = 0
        results%n_it = 0
        allocate (results%entry (RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
        allocate (results%average (RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
    end subroutine integration_results_init

```

Set additional parameters: the `error_threshold` declares that any error value (in absolute numbers) smaller than this is to be considered zero.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_error_threshold => integration_results_set_error_threshold

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_set_error_threshold (results, error_threshold)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        real(default), intent(in) :: error_threshold
        results%error_threshold = error_threshold
    end subroutine integration_results_set_error_threshold

```

Output (ASCII format). The `verbose` format is used for writing the header in grid files.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => integration_results_write

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_write (object, unit, verbose, suppress)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        logical, intent(in), optional :: suppress
        logical :: verb
        integer :: u, n
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
        if (.not. verb) then
            call write_dline (unit)

```

```

if (object%n_it /= 0) then
  call write_header (object%entry(1)%process_type, unit, &
    logfile=.false.)
  call write_dline (unit)
  do n = 1, object%n_it
    if (n > 1) then
      if (object%entry(n)%pass /= object%entry(n-1)%pass) then
        call write_hline (unit)
        call integration_entry_write &
          (object%average(object%entry(n-1)%pass), &
            unit, suppress = suppress)
        call write_hline (unit)
      end if
    end if
    call integration_entry_write (object%entry(n), unit, &
      suppress = suppress)
  end do
  call write_hline(unit)
  call integration_entry_write (object%average(object%n_pass), &
    unit, suppress = suppress)
else
  call msg_message ("[WHIZARD integration results: empty]", unit)
end if
call write_dline (unit)
else
write (u, *) "begin(integration_results)"
write (u, *) "  n_pass = ", object%n_pass
write (u, *) "    n_it = ", object%n_it
if (object%n_it > 0) then
  write (u, *) "begin(integration_pass)"
  do n = 1, object%n_it
    if (n > 1) then
      if (object%entry(n)%pass /= object%entry(n-1)%pass) then
        write (u, *) "end(integration_pass)"
        write (u, *) "begin(integration_pass)"
      end if
    end if
    write (u, *) "begin(iteration)"
    call integration_entry_write (object%entry(n), unit, &
      verbose = verb, suppress = suppress)
    write (u, *) "end(iteration)"
  end do
  write (u, *) "end(integration_pass)"
end if
write (u, *) "end(integration_results)"
end if
flush (u)
end subroutine integration_results_write

```

During integration, we do not want to print all results at once, but each intermediate result as soon as we get it. Thus, the previous procedure is chopped in pieces. First piece: store the output unit and a flag whether we want to print to standard output as well. Then write the header if the results are still empty,

i.e., before integration has started. The second piece writes a single result to the saved output channels. We call this from the `record` method, which can be called from the integrator directly. The third piece writes the average result, once a pass has been completed. The fourth piece writes a footer (if any), assuming that this is the final result.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: display_init => integration_results_display_init
  procedure :: display_current => integration_results_display_current
  procedure :: display_pass => integration_results_display_pass
  procedure :: display_final => integration_results_display_final

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
  subroutine integration_results_display_init &
    (results, process_type, screen, unit)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    integer, intent(in) :: process_type
    logical, intent(in) :: screen
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    if (present (unit)) results%unit = unit
    u = output_unit ()
    results%screen = screen
    if (results%n_it == 0) then
      if (results%screen) then
        call write_dline (u)
        call write_header (process_type, u, &
          logfile=.false.)
        call write_dline (u)
      end if
      if (results%unit /= 0) then
        call write_dline (results%unit)
        call write_header (process_type, results%unit, &
          logfile=.false.)
        call write_dline (results%unit)
      end if
    else
      if (results%screen) then
        call write_hline (u)
      end if
      if (results%unit /= 0) then
        call write_hline (results%unit)
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine integration_results_display_init

  subroutine integration_results_display_current (results, pacify)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    integer :: u
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    u = output_unit ()
    if (results%screen) then
      call integration_entry_write (results%entry(results%n_it), u, &
        suppress = pacify)
    end if

```

```

    if (results%unit /= 0) then
        call integration_entry_write (results%entry(results%n_it), &
            results%unit, suppress = pacify)
    end if
end subroutine integration_results_display_current

subroutine integration_results_display_pass (results, pacify)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit ()
    if (results%screen) then
        call write_hline (u)
        call integration_entry_write &
            (results%average(results%entry(results%n_it)%pass), &
                u, suppress = pacify)
    end if
    if (results%unit /= 0) then
        call write_hline (results%unit)
        call integration_entry_write &
            (results%average(results%entry(results%n_it)%pass), &
                results%unit, suppress = pacify)
    end if
end subroutine integration_results_display_pass

subroutine integration_results_display_final (results)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit ()
    if (results%screen) then
        call write_dline (u)
    end if
    if (results%unit /= 0) then
        call write_dline (results%unit)
    end if
    results%screen = .false.
    results%unit = 0
end subroutine integration_results_display_final

```

Write a concise table of chain weights, i.e., the channel history where channels are collected by chains.

*(Integration results: integration results: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: write_chain_weights => &
        integration_results_write_chain_weights

```

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine integration_results_write_chain_weights (results, unit)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i, n
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        if (allocated (results%entry(1)%chain_weights) .and. results%n_it /= 0) then
            call msg_message ("Phase-space chain (grove) weight history: " &
                // "(numbers in %)", unit)

```

```

write (u, "(A9)", advance="no")  "| chain |"
do i = 1, integration_entry_get_n_groves (results%entry(1))
  write (u, "(1x,I3)", advance="no")  i
end do
write (u, *)
call write_dline (unit)
do n = 1, results%n_it
  if (n > 1) then
    if (results%entry(n)%pass /= results%entry(n-1)%pass) then
      call write_hline (unit)
    end if
  end if
  write (u, "(1x,I6,1x,A1)", advance="no")  n, "|"
  call integration_entry_write_chain_weights (results%entry(n), unit)
end do
flush (u)
call write_dline(unit)
end if
end subroutine integration_results_write_chain_weights

```

Read the list from file. The file must be written using the `verbose` option of the writing routine.

*(Integration results: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine integration_results_read (results, unit)
  type(integration_results_t), intent(out) :: results
  integer, intent(in) :: unit
  character(80) :: buffer
  character :: equals
  integer :: pass, it
  read (unit, *) buffer
  if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "begin(integration_results)") then
    call read_err (); return
  end if
  read (unit, *) buffer, equals, results%n_pass
  read (unit, *) buffer, equals, results%n_it
  allocate (results%entry (results%n_it + RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
  allocate (results%average (results%n_it + RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
  it = 0
  do pass = 1, results%n_pass
    read (unit, *) buffer
    if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "begin(integration_pass)") then
      call read_err (); return
    end if
    READ_ENTRIES: do
      read (unit, *) buffer
      if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "begin(iteration)") then
        exit READ_ENTRIES
      end if
      it = it + 1
      call integration_entry_read (results%entry(it), unit)
      read (unit, *) buffer
      if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "end(iteration)") then
        call read_err (); return
      end if
    end do
  end do
end subroutine integration_results_read

```



```

        end if
    end do READ_ENTRIES
    if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "end(integration_pass)") then
        call read_err (); return
    end if
    results%average(pass) = compute_average (results%entry, pass)
end do
read (unit, *) buffer
if (trim (adjustl (buffer)) /= "end(integration_results)") then
    call read_err (); return
end if
contains
subroutine read_err ()
    call msg_fatal ("Reading integration results from file: syntax error")
end subroutine read_err
end subroutine integration_results_read

```

Check integration results for consistency. We compare against an array of pass indices and call numbers. If there is a difference, up to the number of iterations done so far, we return failure. Dummy entries (where `pass = 0`) are ignored.

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

function integration_results_iterations_are_consistent &
    (results, pass, n_calls) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: pass, n_calls
    integer :: n_it
    n_it = results%n_it
    flag = size (pass) >= n_it .and. size (n_calls) >= n_it
    if (flag) then
        flag = all (results%entry(:n_it)%pass == pass(:n_it) &
            .and. &
            (results%entry(:n_it)%n_calls == n_calls(:n_it) &
            .or. &
            results%entry(:n_it)%process_type == PRC_UNKNOWN))
    end if
end function integration_results_iterations_are_consistent

```

Discard all results starting from the specified iteration.

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine integration_results_discard (results, it)
    type(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    integer, intent(in) :: it
    if (it <= results%n_it) then
        select case (it)
        case (:1)
            results%n_it = 0
            results%n_pass = 0
            results%current_pass = 0
        case default
            results%n_it = it - 1
            results%n_pass = maxval (results%entry(1:results%n_it)%pass)
            results%current_pass = results%n_pass
        end select
    end if
end subroutine integration_results_discard

```

```

        end select
    end if
end subroutine integration_results_discard

```

Expand the list of entries if the limit has been reached:

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: expand => integration_results_expand

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_expand (results)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        type(integration_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry_tmp
        if (results%n_it == size (results%entry)) then
            allocate (entry_tmp (results%n_it))
            entry_tmp = results%entry
            deallocate (results%entry)
            allocate (results%entry (results%n_it + RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
            results%entry(:results%n_it) = entry_tmp
            deallocate (entry_tmp)
        end if
        if (results%n_pass == size (results%average)) then
            allocate (entry_tmp (results%n_pass))
            entry_tmp = results%average
            deallocate (results%average)
            allocate (results%average (results%n_it + RESULTS_CHUNK_SIZE))
            results%average(:results%n_pass) = entry_tmp
            deallocate (entry_tmp)
        end if
    end subroutine integration_results_expand

```

Increment the `current_pass` counter. Can be done before integration; after integration, the recording method may use the value of this counter to define the entry.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: new_pass => integration_results_new_pass

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_new_pass (results)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        results%current_pass = results%current_pass + 1
    end subroutine integration_results_new_pass

```

Append a new entry to the list and, if appropriate, compute the average.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: append_entry => integration_results_append_entry

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_append_entry (results, entry)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        type(integration_entry_t), intent(in), optional :: entry
        if (results%n_it == 0) then
            results%n_it = 1
            results%n_pass = 1
        else

```

```

        call results%expand ()
        if (present (entry)) then
            if (entry%pass /= results%entry(results%n_it)%pass) &
                results%n_pass = results%n_pass + 1
            end if
            results%n_it = results%n_it + 1
        end if
        if (present (entry)) then
            results%entry(results%n_it) = entry
            results%average(results%n_pass) = &
                compute_average (results%entry, entry%pass)
        end if
    end subroutine integration_results_append_entry

```

Enter results into the results list. For the error value, we may compare them with a given threshold. This guards against numerical noise, if the exact error would be zero.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: append => integration_results_append

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
    subroutine integration_results_append (results, &
        n_it, n_calls, &
        integral, error, efficiency, &
        chain_weights)
        class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        integer, intent(in) :: n_it, n_calls
        real(default), intent(in) :: integral, error, efficiency
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: chain_weights
        logical :: improved
        type(integration_entry_t) :: entry
        real(default) :: err_checked
        if (results%n_it /= 0) then
            improved = abs(accuracy (integral, error, n_calls)) &
                < abs(integration_entry_get_accuracy (results%entry(results%n_it)))
        else
            improved = .true.
        end if
        if (abs (error) >= results%error_threshold) then
            err_checked = error
        else
            err_checked = 0
        end if
        call integration_entry_init (entry, &
            results%process_type, results%current_pass, &
            results%n_it+1, n_it, n_calls, improved, &
            integral, err_checked, efficiency, &
            chain_weights=chain_weights)
        call results%append_entry (entry)
    end subroutine integration_results_append

```

Enter an empty result into the results list.

```

<Integration results: public>+≡

```

```

public :: integration_results_append_null
<Integration results: procedures>+≡
subroutine integration_results_append_null (results, pass, n_it)
  type(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  integer, intent(in) :: pass, n_it
  type(integration_entry_t) :: entry
  call integration_entry_init (entry, &
    PRC_UNKNOWN, results%current_pass, n_it, 1, 0, .false., &
    0._default, 0._default, 0._default)
  call results%append_entry (entry)
end subroutine integration_results_append_null

```

Record an integration pass executed by an mci integrator object.

There is a tolerance below we treat an error (relative to the integral) as zero.

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
real(default), parameter, public :: INTEGRATION_ERROR_TOLERANCE = 1e-10

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
procedure :: record => integration_results_record

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
subroutine integration_results_record &
  (object, n_it, n_calls, integral, error, efficiency, &
  chain_weights, suppress)
  class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: object
  integer, intent(in) :: n_it, n_calls
  real(default), intent(in) :: integral, error, efficiency
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: chain_weights
  real(default) :: err
  logical, intent(in), optional :: suppress

  if (abs (error) >= abs (integral) * INTEGRATION_ERROR_TOLERANCE) then
    err = error
  else
    err = 0
  end if
  call object%append (n_it, n_calls, integral, err, efficiency, chain_weights)
  call object%display_current (suppress)
end subroutine integration_results_record

```

### 15.1.3 Access results

Return true if the results object has entries.

```

<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
procedure :: exist => integration_results_exist

<Integration results: procedures>+≡
function integration_results_exist (results) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
  flag = results%n_pass > 0
end function integration_results_exist

```

Retrieve information from the results record. If `last` is set and true, take the last iteration. If `it` is set instead, take this iteration. If `pass` is set, take this average. If none is set, take the final average.

If the result would be invalid, the entry is not assigned. Due to default initialization, this returns a null entry.

*(Integration results: integration results: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: get_entry => results_get_entry
```

*(Integration results: procedures)+≡*

```
function results_get_entry (results, last, it, pass) result (entry)
  class(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
  type(integration_entry_t) :: entry
  logical, intent(in), optional :: last
  integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
  if (present (last)) then
    if (allocated (results%entry) .and. results%n_it > 0) then
      entry = results%entry(results%n_it)
    else
      call error ()
    end if
  else if (present (it)) then
    if (allocated (results%entry) .and. it > 0 .and. it <= results%n_it) then
      entry = results%entry(it)
    else
      call error ()
    end if
  else if (present (pass)) then
    if (allocated (results%average) &
      .and. pass > 0 .and. pass <= results%n_pass) then
      entry = results%average (pass)
    else
      call error ()
    end if
  else
    if (allocated (results%average) .and. results%n_pass > 0) then
      entry = results%average (results%n_pass)
    else
      call error ()
    end if
  end if
contains
  subroutine error ()
    call msg_fatal ("Requested integration result is not available")
  end subroutine error
end function results_get_entry
```

The individual procedures. The `results` record should have the `target` attribute, but only locally within the function.

*(Integration results: integration results: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: get_n_calls => integration_results_get_n_calls
procedure :: get_integral => integration_results_get_integral
procedure :: get_error => integration_results_get_error
procedure :: get_accuracy => integration_results_get_accuracy
```

```

procedure :: get_chi2 => integration_results_get_chi2
procedure :: get_efficiency => integration_results_get_efficiency

(Integration results: procedures)+=
function integration_results_get_n_calls (results, last, it, pass) &
    result (n_calls)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
    integer :: n_calls
    logical, intent(in), optional :: last
    integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
    n_calls = integration_entry_get_n_calls &
        (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_n_calls

function integration_results_get_integral (results, last, it, pass) &
    result (integral)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
    real(default) :: integral
    logical, intent(in), optional :: last
    integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
    integral = integration_entry_get_integral &
        (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_integral

function integration_results_get_error (results, last, it, pass) &
    result (error)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
    real(default) :: error
    logical, intent(in), optional :: last
    integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
    error = integration_entry_get_error &
        (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_error

function integration_results_get_accuracy (results, last, it, pass) &
    result (accuracy)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
    real(default) :: accuracy
    logical, intent(in), optional :: last
    integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
    accuracy = integration_entry_get_accuracy &
        (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_accuracy

function integration_results_get_chi2 (results, last, it, pass) &
    result (chi2)
    class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
    real(default) :: chi2
    logical, intent(in), optional :: last
    integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
    chi2 = integration_entry_get_chi2 &
        (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_chi2

function integration_results_get_efficiency (results, last, it, pass) &

```

```

        result (efficiency)
class(integration_results_t), intent(in), target :: results
real(default) :: efficiency
logical, intent(in), optional :: last
integer, intent(in), optional :: it, pass
efficiency = integration_entry_get_efficiency &
    (results%get_entry (last, it, pass))
end function integration_results_get_efficiency

```

Return the last pass index and the index of the last iteration *within* the last pass. The third routine returns the absolute index of the last iteration.

(*Integration results: procedures*) +=

```

function integration_results_get_current_pass (results) result (pass)
    integer :: pass
    type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    pass = results%n_pass
end function integration_results_get_current_pass

function integration_results_get_current_it (results) result (it)
    integer :: it
    type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    if (allocated (results%entry)) then
        it = count (results%entry(1:results%n_it)%pass == results%n_pass)
    else
        it = 0
    end if
end function integration_results_get_current_it

function integration_results_get_last_it (results) result (it)
    integer :: it
    type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    it = results%n_it
end function integration_results_get_last_it

```

Return the index of the best iteration (lowest accuracy value) within the current pass. If none qualifies, return zero.

(*Integration results: procedures*) +=

```

function integration_results_get_best_it (results) result (it)
    integer :: it
    type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
    integer :: i
    real(default) :: acc, acc_best
    acc_best = -1
    it = 0
    do i = 1, results%n_it
        if (results%entry(i)%pass == results%n_pass) then
            acc = integration_entry_get_accuracy (results%entry(i))
            if (acc_best < 0 .or. acc <= acc_best) then
                acc_best = acc
                it = i
            end if
        end if
    end do
end function

```

```
end function integration_results_get_best_it
```

Compute the MD5 sum by printing everything and checksumming the resulting file.

```
<Integration results: procedures>+≡
function integration_results_get_md5sum (results) result (md5sum_results)
  character(32) :: md5sum_results
  type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
  integer :: u
  u = free_unit ()
  open (unit = u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
  call integration_results_write (results, u, verbose=.true.)
  rewind (u)
  md5sum_results = md5sum (u)
  close (u)
end function integration_results_get_md5sum
```

This is (ab)used to suppress numerical noise when integrating constant matrix elements.

```
<Integration results: integration results: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: pacify => integration_results_pacify
<Integration results: procedures>+≡
subroutine integration_results_pacify (results, efficiency_reset)
  class(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  logical, intent(in), optional :: efficiency_reset
  integer :: i
  logical :: reset
  reset = .false.
  if (present (efficiency_reset)) reset = efficiency_reset
  if (allocated (results%entry)) then
    do i = 1, size (results%entry)
      call pacify (results%entry(i)%error, &
        results%entry(i)%integral * 1.E-9_default)
      if (reset) results%entry(i)%efficiency = 1
    end do
  end if
  if (allocated (results%average)) then
    do i = 1, size (results%average)
      call pacify (results%average(i)%error, &
        results%average(i)%integral * 1.E-9_default)
      if (reset) results%average(i)%efficiency = 1
    end do
  end if
end subroutine integration_results_pacify
```

#### 15.1.4 Results display

Write a driver file for history visualization.

The ratio of  $y$  range over  $y$  value must not become too small, otherwise we run into an arithmetic overflow in GAMELAN. 2% appears to be safe.

```
<Limits: public parameters>+≡
```



```

real, parameter, public :: GML_MIN_RANGE_RATIO = 0.02
<Integration results: public>+=
public :: integration_results_write_driver
<Integration results: procedures>+=
subroutine integration_results_write_driver (results, filename, eff_reset)
  type(integration_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
  logical, intent(in), optional :: eff_reset
  type(string_t) :: file_tex
  integer :: unit
  integer :: n, i, n_pass, pass
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ipass
  real(default) :: ymin, ymax, yavg, ydif, y0, y1
  logical :: reset
  file_tex = filename // ".tex"
  unit = free_unit ()
  open (unit=unit, file=char(file_tex), action="write", status="replace")
  reset = .false.; if (present (eff_reset)) reset = eff_reset
  n = results%n_it
  n_pass = results%n_pass
  allocate (ipass (results%n_pass))
  ipass(1) = 0
  pass = 2
  do i = 1, n-1
    if (integration_entry_get_pass (results%entry(i)) &
      /= integration_entry_get_pass (results%entry(i+1))) then
      ipass(pass) = i
      pass = pass + 1
    end if
  end do
  ymin = minval (integration_entry_get_integral (results%entry(:n)) &
    - integration_entry_get_error (results%entry(:n)))
  ymax = maxval (integration_entry_get_integral (results%entry(:n)) &
    + integration_entry_get_error (results%entry(:n)))
  yavg = (ymax + ymin) / 2
  ydif = (ymax - ymin)
  if (ydif * 1.5 > GML_MIN_RANGE_RATIO * yavg) then
    y0 = yavg - ydif * 0.75
    y1 = yavg + ydif * 0.75
  else
    y0 = yavg * (1 - GML_MIN_RANGE_RATIO / 2)
    y1 = yavg * (1 + GML_MIN_RANGE_RATIO / 2)
  end if
  write (unit, "(A)") "\documentclass{article}"
  write (unit, "(A)") "\usepackage{a4wide}"
  write (unit, "(A)") "\usepackage{gamelan}"
  write (unit, "(A)") "\usepackage{amsmath}"
  write (unit, "(A)") ""
  write (unit, "(A)") "\begin{document}"
  write (unit, "(A)") "\begin{gmlfile}"
  write (unit, "(A)") "\section*{Integration Results Display}"
  write (unit, "(A)") ""
  write (unit, "(A)") "Process: \verb|" // char (filename) // "|"

```

```

write (unit, "(A)") ""
write (unit, "(A)") "\vspace*{2\baselineskip}"
write (unit, "(A)") "\unitlength 1mm"
write (unit, "(A)") "\begin{gmlcode}"
write (unit, "(A)") " picture sym; sym = fshape (circle scaled 1mm());"
write (unit, "(A)") " color col.band; col.band = 0.9white;"
write (unit, "(A)") " color col.eband; col.eband = 0.98white;"
write (unit, "(A)") "\end{gmlcode}"
write (unit, "(A)") "\begin{gmlgraph*}(130,180)[history]"
write (unit, "(A)") " setup (linear, linear);"
write (unit, "(A,I0,A)") " history.n_pass = ", n_pass, ";"
write (unit, "(A,I0,A)") " history.n_it = ", n, ";"
write (unit, "(A,A,A)") " history.y0 = #""", char (mp_format (y0)), """,;"
write (unit, "(A,A,A)") " history.y1 = #""", char (mp_format (y1)), """,;"
write (unit, "(A)") &
    " graphrange (#0.5, history.y0), (#(n+0.5), history.y1);"
do pass = 1, n_pass
    write (unit, "(A,I0,A,I0,A)") &
        " history.pass[" , pass, "] = ", ipass(pass), ";"
    write (unit, "(A,I0,A,A,A)") &
        " history.avg[" , pass, "] = #""", &
        char (mp_format &
            (integration_entry_get_integral (results%average(pass))))), &
        """,;"
    write (unit, "(A,I0,A,A,A)") &
        " history.err[" , pass, "] = #""", &
        char (mp_format &
            (integration_entry_get_error (results%average(pass))))), &
        """,;"
    write (unit, "(A,I0,A,A,A)") &
        " history.chi[" , pass, "] = #""", &
        char (mp_format &
            (integration_entry_get_chi2 (results%average(pass))))), &
        """,;"
end do
write (unit, "(A,I0,A,I0,A)") &
    " history.pass[" , n_pass + 1, "] = ", n, ";"
write (unit, "(A)") " for i = 1 upto history.n_pass:"
write (unit, "(A)") " if history.chi[i] greater one:"
write (unit, "(A)") " fill plot ("
write (unit, "(A)") &
    " (#(history.pass[i] +.5), " &
    // "history.avg[i] minus history.err[i] times history.chi[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
    " (#(history.pass[i+1]+.5), " &
    // "history.avg[i] minus history.err[i] times history.chi[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
    " (#(history.pass[i+1]+.5), " &
    // "history.avg[i] plus history.err[i] times history.chi[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
    " (#(history.pass[i] +.5), " &
    // "history.avg[i] plus history.err[i] times history.chi[i])"
write (unit, "(A)") " ) withcolor col.eband fi;"
write (unit, "(A)") " fill plot ("

```

```

write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i] +.5), history.avg[i] minus history.err[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i+1]+.5), history.avg[i] minus history.err[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i+1]+.5), history.avg[i] plus history.err[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i] +.5), history.avg[i] plus history.err[i])"
write (unit, "(A)") "      ) withcolor col.band;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      draw plot ("
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i] +.5), history.avg[i]),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i+1]+.5), history.avg[i])"
write (unit, "(A)") "      ) dashed evenly;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      endfor"
write (unit, "(A)") "      for i = 1 upto history.n_pass + 1:"
write (unit, "(A)") "      draw plot ("
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i]+.5), history.y0),"
write (unit, "(A)") &
"      (#(history.pass[i]+.5), history.y1)"
write (unit, "(A)") "      ) dashed withdots;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      endfor"
do i = 1, n
  write (unit, "(A,I0,A,A,A,A,A)") "      plot (history) (#", &
    i, ", #""", &
    char (mp_format (integration_entry_get_integral (results%entry(i)))),&
    """) vbar #""", &
    char (mp_format (integration_entry_get_error (results%entry(i)))) , &
    """;"
end do
write (unit, "(A)") "      draw piecewise from (history) " &
  // "withsymbol sym;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      fullgrid.lr (5,20);"
write (unit, "(A)") "      standardgrid.bt (n);"
write (unit, "(A)") "      begingmleps ""Whizard-Logo.eps"";"
write (unit, "(A)") "      base := (120*unitlength,170*unitlength);"
write (unit, "(A)") "      height := 9.6*unitlength;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      width := 11.2*unitlength;"
write (unit, "(A)") "      endgmleps;"
write (unit, "(A)") "\end{gmlgraph*}"
write (unit, "(A)") "\end{gmlfile}"
write (unit, "(A)") "\clearpage"
write (unit, "(A)") "\begin{verbatim}"
if (reset) then
  call results%pacify (reset)
end if
call integration_results_write (results, unit)
write (unit, "(A)") "\end{verbatim}"
write (unit, "(A)") "\end{document}"
close (unit)
end subroutine integration_results_write_driver

```

Call L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and Metapost for the history driver file, and convert to PS and PDF.

```

<Integration results: public>+=
    public :: integration_results_compile_driver
<Integration results: procedures>+=
    subroutine integration_results_compile_driver (results, filename, os_data)
        type(integration_results_t), intent(in) :: results
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        integer :: unit_dev, status
        type(string_t) :: file_tex, file_dvi, file_ps, file_pdf, file_mp
        type(string_t) :: setenv_tex, setenv_mp, pipe, pipe_dvi
        if (.not. os_data%event_analysis) then
            call msg_warning ("Skipping integration history display " &
                // "because latex or mpost is not available")
            return
        end if
        file_tex = filename // ".tex"
        file_dvi = filename // ".dvi"
        file_ps = filename // ".ps"
        file_pdf = filename // ".pdf"
        file_mp = filename // ".mp"
        call msg_message ("Creating integration history display "&
            // char (file_ps) // " and " // char (file_pdf))
        BLOCK: do
            unit_dev = free_unit ()
            open (file = "/dev/null", unit = unit_dev, &
                action = "write", iostat = status)
            if (status /= 0) then
                pipe = ""
                pipe_dvi = ""
            else
                pipe = " > /dev/null"
                pipe_dvi = " 2>/dev/null 1>/dev/null"
            end if
            close (unit_dev)
            if (os_data%whizard_texpath /= "") then
                setenv_tex = &
                    "TEXINPUTS=" // os_data%whizard_texpath // ":$TEXINPUTS "
                setenv_mp = &
                    "MPINPUTS=" // os_data%whizard_texpath // ":$MPINPUTS "
            else
                setenv_tex = ""
                setenv_mp = ""
            end if
            call os_system_call (setenv_tex // os_data%latex // " " // &
                file_tex // pipe, status)
            if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
            if (os_data%gml /= "") then
                call os_system_call (setenv_mp // os_data%gml // " " // &
                    file_mp // pipe, status)
            else
                call msg_error ("Could not use GAMELAN/MetaPOST.")
                exit BLOCK
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
call os_system_call (setenv_tex // os_data%latex // " " // &
    file_tex // pipe, status)
if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
if (os_data%event_analysis_ps) then
    call os_system_call (os_data%dvips // " " // &
        file_dvi // pipe_dvi, status)
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
else
    call msg_warning ("Skipping PostScript generation because dvips " &
        // "is not available")
    exit BLOCK
end if
if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
    call os_system_call (os_data%ps2pdf // " " // &
        file_ps, status)
    if (status /= 0) exit BLOCK
else
    call msg_warning ("Skipping PDF generation because ps2pdf " &
        // "is not available")
    exit BLOCK
end if
exit BLOCK
end do BLOCK
if (status /= 0) then
    call msg_error ("Unable to compile integration history display")
end if
end subroutine integration_results_compile_driver

```

## 15.2 Abstract process core

In this module we provide abstract data types for process classes. Each process class represents a set of processes which are handled by a common “method”, e.g., by the O’MEGA matrix-element generator. The process class is also able to select a particular implementation for the phase-space and integration modules.

For a complete implementation of a process class, we have to provide extensions of the following abstract types:

**prc\_core\_def\_t** process and matrix-element configuration

**prc\_writer\_t** (optional) writing external matrix-element code

**prc\_driver\_t** accessing the matrix element (internal or external)

**prc\_core\_t** evaluating kinematics and matrix element. The process core also selects phase-space and integrator implementations as appropriate for the process class and configuration.

In the actual process-handling data structures, each process component contains an instance of such a process class as its core. This allows us to keep the **processes** module below, which supervises matrix-element evaluation, integration, and event generation, free of any reference to concrete implementations (for the process class, phase space, and integrator).

There are no unit tests, these are deferred to the `processes` module.

```

<prc_core.f90>≡
  <File header>
  module prc_core

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use interactions

    use sf_base
    use process_constants
    use mci_base

    use prc_core_def
    use process_libraries

    <Standard module head>

    <Prc core: public>

    <Prc core: types>

    <Prc core: interfaces>

    contains

    <Prc core: procedures>

  end module prc_core

```

### 15.2.1 The process core

The process core is of abstract data type. Different types of matrix element will be represented by different implementations.

```

<Prc core: public>≡
  public :: prc_core_t

<Prc core: types>≡
  type, abstract :: prc_core_t
    class(prc_core_def_t), pointer :: def => null ()
    logical :: data_known = .false.
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    logical :: use_color_factors = .false.
    integer :: nc = 3
  contains
    <Prc core: process core: TBP>
  end type prc_core_t

```

In any case there must be an output routine.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>≡
  procedure(prc_core_write), deferred :: write

<Prc core: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_write (object, unit)
      import
      class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    end subroutine prc_core_write
  end interface

```

For initialization, we assign a pointer to the process entry in the relevant library. This allows us to access all process functions via the implementation of `prc_core_t`.

We declare the `object` as `intent(inout)`, since just after allocation it may be useful to store some extra data in the object, which we can then use in the actual initialization. This applies to extensions of `prc_core` which override the `init` method.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => prc_core_init
  procedure :: base_init => prc_core_init

<Prc core: procedures>≡
  subroutine prc_core_init (object, def, lib, id, i_component)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(inout) :: object
    class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in), target :: def
    type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    object%def => def
    call lib%connect_process (id, i_component, object%data, object%driver)
    object%data_known = .true.
  end subroutine prc_core_init

```

Return true if the matrix element generation was successful. This can be tested by looking at the number of generated flavor states, which should be nonzero.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: has_matrix_element => prc_core_has_matrix_element

<Prc core: procedures>+≡
  function prc_core_has_matrix_element (object) result (flag)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    logical :: flag
    flag = object%data%n_flv /= 0
  end function prc_core_has_matrix_element

```

Return true if a MC dataset should be attached to this process component. False if it shares the dataset with another component.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_get_flag), deferred :: needs_mcset

```

```

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_core_get_flag (object) result (flag)
      import
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
        logical :: flag
    end function prc_core_get_flag
  end interface

```

Return an integer number

```

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_core_get_integer (object) result (i)
      import
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer :: i
    end function prc_core_get_integer
  end interface

```

Return the number of distinct terms requested by this process component.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_get_integer), deferred :: get_n_terms

```

Tell whether a particular combination of flavor/helicity/color state is allowed for the matrix element.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_is_allowed), deferred :: is_allowed

```

```

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_core_is_allowed (object, i_term, f, h, c) result (flag)
      import
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term, f, h, c
        logical :: flag
    end function prc_core_is_allowed
  end interface

```

Set the constant process data for a specific term. By default, these are the constants stored inside the object, ignoring the term index. Type extensions may override this and provide term-specific data.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_constants => prc_core_get_constants

<Prc core: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_core_get_constants (object, data, i_term)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(process_constants_t), intent(out) :: data
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    data = object%data
  end subroutine prc_core_get_constants

```



The strong coupling is not among the process constants. The default implementation is to return a negative number, which indicates that  $\alpha_s$  is not available. This may be overridden by an implementation that provides an (event-specific) value. The value can be stored in the `tmp` workspace.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_alpha_s => prc_core_get_alpha_s

<Prc core: procedures>+≡
  function prc_core_get_alpha_s (object, tmp) result (alpha)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(workspace_t), intent(in), allocatable :: tmp
    real(default) :: alpha
    alpha = -1
  end function prc_core_get_alpha_s

```

Allocate the workspace associated to a process component. The default is that there is no workspace, so we do nothing. A type extension may override this and allocate a workspace object of appropriate type, which can be used in further calculations.

In any case, the `intent(out)` attribute deletes any previously allocated workspace.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_workspace => prc_core_ignore_workspace

<Prc core: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_core_ignore_workspace (object, tmp)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
  end subroutine prc_core_ignore_workspace

```

Initialize the structure-function instance that corresponds to a process component. In ordinary cases, this amounts to a straightforward copy of the given template, but the process core may also choose to modify the setup, and it may access its own workspace.

The `sf_chain_instance` is the object that we want to prepare. The `sf_chain` argument is a template for its structure. For the initialization, we also need the number of channels `n_channel`.

Note: crash with nagfor 5.3.1 if `sf_chain_instance` is declared `intent(out)`, as would be more appropriate.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_sf_chain => prc_core_init_sf_chain

<Prc core: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_core_init_sf_chain &
    (object, sf_chain_instance, sf_chain, n_channel, tmp)
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: sf_chain_instance
    type(sf_chain_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
    integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
    call sf_chain_instance%init (sf_chain, n_channel)
  end subroutine prc_core_init_sf_chain

```

Compute the momenta in the hard interaction, taking the seed kinematics as input. The `i_term` index tells us which term we want to compute. (The standard method is to just transfer the momenta to the hard interaction.)

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_compute_hard_kinematics), deferred :: &
    compute_hard_kinematics

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_compute_hard_kinematics &
      (object, p_seed, i_term, int_hard, tmp)
    import
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_seed
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
  end subroutine prc_core_compute_hard_kinematics
end interface

```

Compute the momenta in the effective interaction, taking the hard kinematics as input. (This is called only if parton recombination is to be applied for the process variant.)

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_compute_eff_kinematics), deferred :: &
    compute_eff_kinematics

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_compute_eff_kinematics &
      (object, i_term, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
    import
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_hard
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
  end subroutine prc_core_compute_eff_kinematics
end interface

```

Recover the missing pieces. We know the incoming momenta of the `p_seed` array and the outgoing momenta of the `int_eff` interaction. We have to recover the outgoing momenta of `p_seed` and the incoming momenta of `int_eff`.

(The trivial case is that these are identical.)

Furthermore, if `int_hard` and `int_eff` are not aliased, we have to set the momenta there. In the trivial case, `int_eff` is a pointer to `int_hard`, so `int_hard` should not be touched at all.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_recover_kinematics), deferred :: &
    recover_kinematics

```

```

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine prc_core_recover_kinematics &
      (object, p_seed, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
    import
      class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
      type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: p_seed
      type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
      type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
      class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
    end subroutine prc_core_recover_kinematics
  end interface

```

The process core must implement this function. Here, *j* is the index of the particular term we want to compute. The amplitude may depend on the factorization and renormalization scales.

The *tmp* (workspace) argument may be used if it is provided by the caller. Otherwise, the routine should compute the result directly.

```

<Prc core: process core: TBP>+≡
  procedure(prc_core_compute_amplitude), deferred :: compute_amplitude

<Prc core: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    function prc_core_compute_amplitude &
      (object, j, p, f, h, c, fac_scale, ren_scale, tmp) result (amp)
    import
      class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in) :: j
      type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
      integer, intent(in) :: f, h, c
      real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale, ren_scale
      class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable, optional :: tmp
      complex(default) :: amp
    end function prc_core_compute_amplitude
  end interface

```

### 15.2.2 Storage for intermediate results

The abstract *workspace\_t* type allows process cores to set up temporary workspace. The object is an extra argument for each of the individual calculations between kinematics setup and matrix-element evaluation.

```

<Prc core: public>+≡
  public :: workspace_t

<Prc core: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: workspace_t
  contains
    procedure(workspace_write), deferred :: write
  end type workspace_t

```

For debugging, we should at least have an output routine.

```

<Prc core: interfaces>+=
  abstract interface
    subroutine workspace_write (object, unit)
      import
      class(workspace_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    end subroutine workspace_write
  end interface

```

### 15.2.3 Helicity selection data

This is intended for use with O'MEGA, but may also be made available to other process methods. We set thresholds for counting the times a specific helicity amplitude is zero. When the threshold is reached, we skip this amplitude in subsequent calls.

For initializing the helicity counters, we need an object that holds the two parameters, the threshold (large real number) and the cutoff (integer).

A helicity value suppressed by more than **threshold** (a value which multiplies **epsilon**, to be compared with the average of the current amplitude, default is  $10^{10}$ ) is treated as zero. A matrix element is assumed to be zero and not called again if it has been zero **cutoff** times.

```

<Prc core: public>+=
  public :: helicity_selection_t

<Prc core: types>+=
  type :: helicity_selection_t
    logical :: active = .false.
    real(default) :: threshold = 0
    integer :: cutoff = 0
  contains
    <Prc core: helicity selection: TBP>
  end type helicity_selection_t

```

Output. If the selection is inactive, print nothing.

```

<Prc core: helicity selection: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => helicity_selection_write

<Prc core: procedures>+=
  subroutine helicity_selection_write (object, unit)
    class(helicity_selection_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (object%active) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Helicity selection data:"
      write (u, "(5x,A,ES17.10)") &
        "threshold =", object%threshold
      write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") &
        "cutoff    = ", object%cutoff
    end if
  end subroutine helicity_selection_write

```

## 15.3 Process observables

We define an abstract `subevt_expr_t` object as an extension of the `subevt_t` type. The object contains a local variable list, variable instances (as targets for pointers in the variable list), and evaluation trees. The evaluation trees reference both the variables and the `subevt`.

There are two instances of the abstract type: one for process instances, one for physical events. Both have a common logical expression `selection` which determines whether the object passes user-defined cuts.

The intention is that we fill the `subevt_t` base object and compute the variables once we have evaluated a kinematical phase space point (or a complete event). We then evaluate the expressions and can use the results in further calculations.

The `process_expr_t` extension contains furthermore scale and weight expressions. The `event_expr_t` extension contains a reweighting-factor expression and a logical expression for event analysis. In practice, we will link the variable list of the `event_obs` object to the variable list of the currently active `process_obs` object, such that the process variables are available to both objects. Event variables are meaningful only for physical events.

```
<subevt_expr.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  module subevt_expr  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use limits, only: FMT_12 !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use os_interface  
  
    use ifiles  
    use lexers  
    use parser  
  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use subevents  
    use variables  
    use expressions  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use interactions  
    use particles  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Subevt expr: public>  
  
    <Subevt expr: types>
```

```

contains

<Subvt expr: procedures>

<Subvt expr: tests>

end module subvt_expr

```

### 15.3.1 Abstract base type

```

<Subvt expr: types>≡
type, extends (subvt_t), abstract :: subvt_expr_t
  logical :: subvt_filled = .false.
  type(var_list_t) :: var_list
  real(default) :: sqrts_hat = 0
  integer :: n_in = 0
  integer :: n_out = 0
  integer :: n_tot = 0
  logical :: has_selection = .false.
  type(eval_tree_t) :: selection
contains
  <Subvt expr: subvt expr: TBP>
end type subvt_expr_t

```

Output: Base and extended version. We already have a `write` routine for the `subvt_t` parent type.

```

<Subvt expr: subvt expr: TBP>≡
  procedure :: base_write => subvt_expr_write

<Subvt expr: procedures>≡
  subroutine subvt_expr_write (object, unit)
    class(subvt_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Local variables:"
    call write_separator (u)
    call var_list_write (object%var_list, u, follow_link=.false.)
    call write_separator (u)
    if (object%subvt_filled) then
      call object%subvt_t%write (u)
      if (object%has_selection) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Selection expression:"
        call write_separator (u)
        call eval_tree_write (object%selection, u)
      end if
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "subvt: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine subvt_expr_write

```

Finalizer.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure (subevt_expr_final), deferred :: final
  procedure :: base_final => subevt_expr_final

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_final (object)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call var_list_final (object%var_list)
    if (object%has_selection) then
      call eval_tree_final (object%selection)
    end if
  end subroutine subevt_expr_final

```

### 15.3.2 Initialization

Initialization: define local variables and establish pointers.

The common variables are **sqrts** (the nominal beam energy, fixed), **sqrts\_hat** (the actual energy), **n\_in**, **n\_out**, and **n\_tot** for the **subevt**. With the exception of **sqrts**, all are implemented as pointers to subobjects.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure (subevt_expr_setup_vars), deferred :: setup_vars
  procedure :: base_setup_vars => subevt_expr_setup_vars

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_setup_vars (expr, sqrts)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    call var_list_final (expr%var_list)
    call var_list_append_real (expr%var_list, &
      var_str ("sqrts"), sqrts, &
      locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &
      var_str ("sqrts_hat"), expr%sqrts_hat, &
      is_known = expr%subevt_filled, &
      locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_int_ptr (expr%var_list, &
      var_str ("n_in"), expr%n_in, &
      is_known = expr%subevt_filled, &
      locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_int_ptr (expr%var_list, &
      var_str ("n_out"), expr%n_out, &
      is_known = expr%subevt_filled, &
      locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_int_ptr (expr%var_list, &
      var_str ("n_tot"), expr%n_tot, &
      is_known = expr%subevt_filled, &
      locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
  end subroutine subevt_expr_setup_vars

```

Link a variable list to the local one. This could be done event by event, but before evaluating expressions.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link_var_list => subevt_expr_link_var_list

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_link_var_list (expr, var_list)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    call var_list_link (expr%var_list, var_list)
  end subroutine subevt_expr_link_var_list

```

Compile the selection expression. If the pointer is disassociated, there is no expression.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_selection => subevt_expr_setup_selection

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_setup_selection (expr, pn_selection)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_selection
    if (associated (pn_selection)) then
      call eval_tree_init_lexpr (expr%selection, &
        pn_selection, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
      expr%has_selection = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine subevt_expr_setup_selection

```

### 15.3.3 Evaluation

Reset to initial state, i.e., mark the subevt as invalid.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset => subevt_expr_reset
  procedure :: base_reset => subevt_expr_reset

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_reset (expr)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    expr%subevt_filled = .false.
  end subroutine subevt_expr_reset

```

Evaluate the selection expression and return the result. There is also a deferred version: this should evaluate the remaining expressions if the event has passed.

```

<Subevt expr: subevt expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_evaluate => subevt_expr_evaluate

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_evaluate (expr, passed)
    class(subevt_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    if (expr%has_selection) then
      call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%selection)
    end if
  end subroutine subevt_expr_evaluate

```



```

        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%selection)) then
            passed = eval_tree_get_log (expr%selection)
        else
            call msg_error ("Evaluate selection expression: result undefined")
            passed = .false.
        end if
    else
        passed = .true.
    end if
end subroutine subevt_expr_evaluate

```

### 15.3.4 Implementation for partonic events

This implementation contains the expressions that we can evaluate for the partonic process during integration.

```

⟨Subevt expr: public⟩≡
    public :: parton_expr_t

⟨Subevt expr: types⟩+≡
    type, extends (subevt_expr_t) :: parton_expr_t
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_beam
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_in
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_out
        logical :: has_scale = .false.
        logical :: has_fac_scale = .false.
        logical :: has_ren_scale = .false.
        logical :: has_weight = .false.
        type(eval_tree_t) :: scale
        type(eval_tree_t) :: fac_scale
        type(eval_tree_t) :: ren_scale
        type(eval_tree_t) :: weight
    contains
        ⟨Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP⟩
    end type parton_expr_t

```

Finalizer.

```

⟨Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP⟩≡
    procedure :: final => parton_expr_final

⟨Subevt expr: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine parton_expr_final (object)
        class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call object%base_final ()
        if (object%has_scale) then
            call eval_tree_final (object%scale)
        end if
        if (object%has_fac_scale) then
            call eval_tree_final (object%fac_scale)
        end if
        if (object%has_ren_scale) then
            call eval_tree_final (object%ren_scale)
        end if
        if (object%has_weight) then

```

```

        call eval_tree_final (object%weight)
    end if
end subroutine parton_expr_final

```

Output: continue writing the active expressions, after the common selection expression.

Note: the `prefix` argument is declared in the `write` method of the `subevt_t` base type. Here, it is unused.

```

<Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => parton_expr_write

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_expr_write (object, unit, prefix)
        class(parton_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        character(*), intent(in), optional :: prefix
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        call object%base_write (u)
        if (object%subevt_filled) then
            if (object%has_scale) then
                call write_separator (u)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Scale expression:"
                call write_separator (u)
                call eval_tree_write (object%scale, u)
            end if
            if (object%has_fac_scale) then
                call write_separator (u)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Factorization scale expression:"
                call write_separator (u)
                call eval_tree_write (object%fac_scale, u)
            end if
            if (object%has_ren_scale) then
                call write_separator (u)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Renormalization scale expression:"
                call write_separator (u)
                call eval_tree_write (object%ren_scale, u)
            end if
            if (object%has_weight) then
                call write_separator (u)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Weight expression:"
                call write_separator (u)
                call eval_tree_write (object%weight, u)
            end if
        end if
    end if
end subroutine parton_expr_write

```

Define variables.

```

<Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_vars => parton_expr_setup_vars

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_expr_setup_vars (expr, sqrts)
        class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr

```

```

    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    call expr%base_setup_vars (sqrts)
end subroutine parton_expr_setup_vars

```

Compile the scale expressions. If a pointer is disassociated, there is no expression.

```

<Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_scales => parton_expr_setup_scales

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_setup_scales &
    (expr, pn_scale, pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_scale
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale
    if (associated (pn_scale)) then
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr%scale, &
        pn_scale, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
      expr%has_scale = .true.
    end if
    if (associated (pn_fac_scale)) then
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr%fac_scale, &
        pn_fac_scale, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
      expr%has_fac_scale = .true.
    end if
    if (associated (pn_ren_scale)) then
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr%ren_scale, &
        pn_ren_scale, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
      expr%has_ren_scale = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine parton_expr_setup_scales

```

Compile the weight expression.

```

<Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_weight => parton_expr_setup_weight

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_setup_weight (expr, pn_weight)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_weight
    if (associated (pn_weight)) then
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr%weight, &
        pn_weight, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
      expr%has_weight = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine parton_expr_setup_weight

```

Filling the partonic state consists of two parts. The first routine prepares the subevt without assigning momenta. It takes the particles from an `interaction_t`. It needs the indices and flavors for the beam, incoming, and outgoing particles.

We can assume that the particle content of the subevt does not change.

Therefore, we set the event variables `n_in`, `n_out`, `n_tot` already in this initialization step.

```

(Subvt expr: parton expr: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_subvt => parton_expr_setup_subvt

(Subvt expr: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_setup_subvt (expr, int, &
    i_beam, i_in, i_out, f_beam, f_in, f_out)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_beam, i_in, i_out
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: f_beam, f_in, f_out
    allocate (expr%i_beam (size (i_beam)))
    allocate (expr%i_in (size (i_in)))
    allocate (expr%i_out (size (i_out)))
    expr%i_beam = i_beam
    expr%i_in = i_in
    expr%i_out = i_out
    call interaction_to_subvt (int, &
      expr%i_beam, expr%i_in, expr%i_out, expr%subvt_t)
    call subvt_set_pdg_beam (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_pdg (f_beam))
    call subvt_set_pdg_incoming (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_pdg (f_in))
    call subvt_set_pdg_outgoing (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_pdg (f_out))
    call subvt_set_p2_beam (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_mass (f_beam) ** 2)
    call subvt_set_p2_incoming (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_mass (f_in) ** 2)
    call subvt_set_p2_outgoing (expr%subvt_t, flavor_get_mass (f_out) ** 2)
    expr%n_in = size (i_in)
    expr%n_out = size (i_out)
    expr%n_tot = expr%n_in + expr%n_out
  end subroutine parton_expr_setup_subvt

```

The second part takes the momenta from the interaction object and thus completes the subvt. The partonic energy can then be computed.

```

(Subvt expr: parton expr: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: fill_subvt => parton_expr_fill_subvt

(Subvt expr: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_fill_subvt (expr, int)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
    call interaction_momenta_to_subvt (int, &
      expr%i_beam, expr%i_in, expr%i_out, expr%subvt_t)
    expr%sqrts_hat = subvt_get_sqrts_hat (expr%subvt_t)
    expr%subvt_filled = .true.
  end subroutine parton_expr_fill_subvt

```

Evaluate, if the event passes the selection. For absent expressions we take default values.

```

(Subvt expr: parton expr: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => parton_expr_evaluate

(Subvt expr: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_evaluate &
    (expr, passed, scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight)

```

```

class(parton_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
logical, intent(out) :: passed
real(default), intent(out) :: scale
real(default), intent(out) :: fac_scale
real(default), intent(out) :: ren_scale
real(default), intent(out) :: weight
call expr%base_evaluate (passed)
if (passed) then
  if (expr%has_scale) then
    call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%scale)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%scale)) then
      scale = eval_tree_get_real (expr%scale)
    else
      call msg_error ("Evaluate scale expression: result undefined")
      scale = 0
    end if
  else
    scale = expr%sqrts_hat
  end if
  if (expr%has_fac_scale) then
    call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%fac_scale)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%fac_scale)) then
      fac_scale = eval_tree_get_real (expr%fac_scale)
    else
      call msg_error ("Evaluate factorization scale expression: &
        &result undefined")
      fac_scale = 0
    end if
  else
    fac_scale = scale
  end if
  if (expr%has_ren_scale) then
    call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%ren_scale)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%ren_scale)) then
      ren_scale = eval_tree_get_real (expr%ren_scale)
    else
      call msg_error ("Evaluate renormalization scale expression: &
        &result undefined")
      ren_scale = 0
    end if
  else
    ren_scale = scale
  end if
  if (expr%has_weight) then
    call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%weight)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%weight)) then
      weight = eval_tree_get_real (expr%weight)
    else
      call msg_error ("Evaluate weight expression: result undefined")
      weight = 0
    end if
  else
    weight = 1
  end if
end if

```

```

    end if
end subroutine parton_expr_evaluate

```

Return the beam/incoming parton indices.

```

<Subevt expr: parton expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_beam_index => parton_expr_get_beam_index
  procedure :: get_in_index => parton_expr_get_in_index

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_expr_get_beam_index (expr, i_beam)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(in) :: expr
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_beam
    i_beam = expr%i_beam
  end subroutine parton_expr_get_beam_index

  subroutine parton_expr_get_in_index (expr, i_in)
    class(parton_expr_t), intent(in) :: expr
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_in
    i_in = expr%i_in
  end subroutine parton_expr_get_in_index

```

### 15.3.5 Implementation for full events

This implementation contains the expressions that we can evaluate for the full event. It also contains data that pertain to the event, suitable for communication with external event formats. These data simultaneously serve as pointer targets for the variable lists hidden in the expressions (eval trees).

Squared matrix element and weight values: when reading events from file, the `ref` value is the number in the file, while the `prc` value is the number that we calculate from the momenta in the file, possibly with different parameters. When generating events the first time, or if we do not recalculate, the numbers should coincide. Furthermore, the array of `alt` values is copied from an array of alternative event records. These values should represent calculated values.

```

<Subevt expr: public>+≡
  public :: event_expr_t

<Subevt expr: types>+≡
  type, extends (subevt_expr_t) :: event_expr_t
    logical :: has_reweight = .false.
    logical :: has_analysis = .false.
    type(eval_tree_t) :: reweight
    type(eval_tree_t) :: analysis
    logical :: has_id = .false.
    type(string_t) :: id
    logical :: has_num_id = .false.
    integer :: num_id = 0
    logical :: has_index = .false.
    integer :: index = 0
    logical :: has_sqme_ref = .false.
    real(default) :: sqme_ref = 0
    logical :: has_sqme_prc = .false.
    real(default) :: sqme_prc = 0

```

```

    logical :: has_weight_ref = .false.
    real(default) :: weight_ref = 0
    logical :: has_weight_prc = .false.
    real(default) :: weight_prc = 0
    logical :: has_excess_prc = .false.
    real(default) :: excess_prc = 0
    integer :: n_alt = 0
    logical :: has_sqme_alt = .false.
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: sqme_alt
    logical :: has_weight_alt = .false.
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weight_alt
contains
  <Subvt expr: event expr: TBP>
end type event_expr_t

```

Finalizer for the expressions.

```

<Subvt expr: event expr: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => event_expr_final

<Subvt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_expr_final (object)
    class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call object%base_final ()
    if (object%has_reweight) then
      call eval_tree_final (object%reweight)
    end if
    if (object%has_analysis) then
      call eval_tree_final (object%analysis)
    end if
  end subroutine event_expr_final

```

Output: continue writing the active expressions, after the common selection expression.

Note: the `prefix` argument is declared in the `write` method of the `subvt_t` base type. Here, it is unused.

```

<Subvt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => event_expr_write

<Subvt expr: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_expr_write (object, unit, prefix)
    class(event_expr_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    character(*), intent(in), optional :: prefix
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call object%base_write (u)
    if (object%subvt_filled) then
      if (object%has_reweight) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Reweighting expression:"
        call write_separator (u)
        call eval_tree_write (object%reweight, u)
      end if
      if (object%has_analysis) then

```

```

        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Analysis expression:"
        call write_separator (u)
        call eval_tree_write (object%analysis, u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine event_expr_write

```

Initializer. This is required only for the `sqme_alt` and `weight_alt` arrays.

```

<Subevt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => event_expr_init

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_init (expr, n_alt)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(out) :: expr
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_alt
        if (present (n_alt)) then
            expr%n_alt = n_alt
            allocate (expr%sqme_alt (n_alt), source = 0._default)
            allocate (expr%weight_alt (n_alt), source = 0._default)
        end if
    end subroutine event_expr_init

```

Define variables. We have the variables of the base type plus specific variables for full events. There is the event index.

```

<Subevt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_vars => event_expr_setup_vars

<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_setup_vars (expr, sqrts)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        call expr%base_setup_vars (sqrts)
        call var_list_append_string_ptr (expr%var_list, &
            var_str ("process_id"), expr%id, &
            is_known = expr%has_id, &
            locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_int_ptr (expr%var_list, &
            var_str ("process_num_id"), expr%num_id, &
            is_known = expr%has_num_id, &
            locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &
            var_str ("sqme"), expr%sqme_prc, &
            is_known = expr%has_sqme_prc, &
            locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &
            var_str ("sqme_ref"), expr%sqme_ref, &
            is_known = expr%has_sqme_ref, &
            locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_int_ptr (expr%var_list, &
            var_str ("event_index"), expr%index, &
            is_known = expr%has_index, &
            locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &

```



```

        var_str ("event_weight"), expr%weight_prc, &
        is_known = expr%has_weight_prc, &
        locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &
        var_str ("event_weight_ref"), expr%weight_ref, &
        is_known = expr%has_weight_ref, &
        locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_real_ptr (expr%var_list, &
        var_str ("event_excess"), expr%excess_prc, &
        is_known = expr%has_excess_prc, &
        locked = .true., verbose = .false., intrinsic = .true.)
end subroutine event_expr_setup_vars

```

Compile the analysis expression. If the pointer is disassociated, there is no expression.

```

<Subevt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_analysis => event_expr_setup_analysis
<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_setup_analysis (expr, pn_analysis)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_analysis
        if (associated (pn_analysis)) then
            call eval_tree_init_lexpr (expr%analysis, &
                pn_analysis, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
            expr%has_analysis = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine event_expr_setup_analysis

```

Compile the reweight expression.

```

<Subevt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_reweight => event_expr_setup_reweight
<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_setup_reweight (expr, pn_reweight)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout), target :: expr
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_reweight
        if (associated (pn_reweight)) then
            call eval_tree_init_expr (expr%reweight, &
                pn_reweight, expr%var_list, expr%subevt_t)
            expr%has_reweight = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine event_expr_setup_reweight

```

Store the string or numeric process ID. This should be done during initialization.

```

<Subevt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_process_id => event_expr_set_process_id
    procedure :: set_process_num_id => event_expr_set_process_num_id
<Subevt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_set_process_id (expr, id)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id

```

```

    expr%id = id
    expr%has_id = .true.
end subroutine event_expr_set_process_id

subroutine event_expr_set_process_num_id (expr, num_id)
    class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
    integer, intent(in) :: num_id
    expr%num_id = num_id
    expr%has_num_id = .true.
end subroutine event_expr_set_process_num_id

```

Reset / set the data that pertain to a particular event.

*(Subevt expr: event expr: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: reset => event_expr_reset
    procedure :: set => event_expr_set

```

*(Subevt expr: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine event_expr_reset (expr)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
        call expr%base_reset ()
        expr%has_sqme_ref = .false.
        expr%has_sqme_prc = .false.
        expr%has_sqme_alt = .false.
        expr%has_weight_ref = .false.
        expr%has_weight_prc = .false.
        expr%has_weight_alt = .false.
        expr%has_excess_prc = .false.
    end subroutine event_expr_reset

    subroutine event_expr_set (expr, &
        weight_ref, weight_prc, weight_alt, &
        excess_prc, &
        sqme_ref, sqme_prc, sqme_alt)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight_ref, weight_prc
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: excess_prc
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: sqme_ref, sqme_prc
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: sqme_alt, weight_alt
        if (present (sqme_ref)) then
            expr%has_sqme_ref = .true.
            expr%sqme_ref = sqme_ref
        end if
        if (present (sqme_prc)) then
            expr%has_sqme_prc = .true.
            expr%sqme_prc = sqme_prc
        end if
        if (present (sqme_alt)) then
            expr%has_sqme_alt = .true.
            expr%sqme_alt = sqme_alt
        end if
        if (present (weight_ref)) then
            expr%has_weight_ref = .true.
            expr%weight_ref = weight_ref
        end if
    end subroutine event_expr_set

```

```

    if (present (weight_prc)) then
        expr%has_weight_prc = .true.
        expr%weight_prc = weight_prc
    end if
    if (present (weight_alt)) then
        expr%has_weight_alt = .true.
        expr%weight_alt = weight_alt
    end if
    if (present (excess_prc)) then
        expr%has_excess_prc = .true.
        expr%excess_prc = excess_prc
    end if
end subroutine event_expr_set

```

Fill the event expression: take the particle data and kinematics from a `particle_set` object.

We allow the particle content to change for each event. Therefore, we set the event variables each time.

Also increment the event index; initialize it if necessary.

```

<Subvt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fill_subvt => event_expr_fill_subvt

<Subvt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_fill_subvt (expr, particle_set)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
        type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
        call particle_set_to_subvt (particle_set, expr%subvt_t)
        expr%sqrts_hat = subvt_get_sqrts_hat (expr%subvt_t)
        expr%n_in = particle_set_get_n_in (particle_set)
        expr%n_out = particle_set_get_n_out (particle_set)
        expr%n_tot = expr%n_in + expr%n_out
        expr%subvt_filled = .true.
        if (expr%has_index) then
            expr%index = expr%index + 1
        else
            expr%index = 1
            expr%has_index = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine event_expr_fill_subvt

```

Evaluate, if the event passes the selection. For absent expressions we take default values.

```

<Subvt expr: event expr: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: evaluate => event_expr_evaluate

<Subvt expr: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_expr_evaluate (expr, passed, reweight, analysis_flag)
        class(event_expr_t), intent(inout) :: expr
        logical, intent(out) :: passed
        real(default), intent(out) :: reweight
        logical, intent(out) :: analysis_flag
        call expr%base_evaluate (passed)
        if (passed) then

```

```

    if (expr%has_reweight) then
        call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%reweight)
        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%reweight)) then
            reweight = eval_tree_get_real (expr%reweight)
        else
            call msg_error ("Evaluate reweight expression: &
                &result undefined")
            reweight = 0
        end if
    else
        reweight = 1
    end if
    if (expr%has_analysis) then
        call eval_tree_evaluate (expr%analysis)
        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr%analysis)) then
            analysis_flag = eval_tree_get_log (expr%analysis)
        else
            call msg_error ("Evaluate analysis expression: &
                &result undefined")
            analysis_flag = .false.
        end if
    else
        analysis_flag = .true.
    end if
end if
end subroutine event_expr_evaluate

```

### 15.3.6 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Subvt expr: public>+≡
    public :: subvt_expr_test

<Subvt expr: tests>≡
    subroutine subvt_expr_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Subvt expr: execute tests>
    end subroutine subvt_expr_test

```

### Parton-event expressions

```

<Subvt expr: execute tests>≡
    call test (subvt_expr_1, "subvt_expr_1", &
        "parton-event expressions", &
        u, results)

<Subvt expr: tests>+≡
    subroutine subvt_expr_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: expr_text
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    end subroutine

```

```

type(stream_t) :: stream
type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_cuts, pt_scale, pt_fac_scale, pt_ren_scale
type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_weight
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_cuts, pn_scale, pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_weight
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(parton_expr_t), target :: expr
real(default) :: E, Ex, m
type(vector4_t), dimension(6) :: p
integer :: i, pdg
logical :: passed
real(default) :: scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: subevt_expr_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Set up a subevt and associated &
&process-specific expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_pexpr_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Expression texts"
write (u, "(A)")

expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
write (u, "(A,A)") "cuts = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (pt_cuts, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_cuts => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_cuts)

expr_text = "sqrts"
write (u, "(A,A)") "scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_scale, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_scale => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_scale)

expr_text = "sqrts_hat"
write (u, "(A,A)") "fac_scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_fac_scale, stream, .true.)

```

```

call stream_final (stream)
pn_fac_scale => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_fac_scale)

expr_text = "100"
write (u, "(A,A)") "ren_scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_ren_scale, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_ren_scale => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_ren_scale)

expr_text = "n_tot - n_in - n_out"
write (u, "(A,A)") "weight = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_weight, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_weight => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_weight)

call ifile_final (ifile)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Initialize process expr"
write (u, "(A)")

call expr%setup_vars (1000._default)
call var_list_append_real (expr%var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)
call expr%link_var_list (model_get_var_list_ptr (model))

call expr%setup_selection (pn_cuts)
call expr%setup_scales (pn_scale, pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale)
call expr%setup_weight (pn_weight)

call write_separator (u)
call expr%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Fill subevt and evaluate expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call subevt_init (expr%subevt_t, 6)
E = 500._default
Ex = 400._default
m = 125._default
pdg = 25
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - m**2), 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - m**2), 3)
p(3) = vector4_moving (Ex, sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 3)
p(4) = vector4_moving (Ex, -sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 3)
p(5) = vector4_moving (Ex, sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 1)
p(6) = vector4_moving (Ex, -sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 1)

```

```

call expr%reset ()
do i = 1, 2
  call subevt_set_beam (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
do i = 3, 4
  call subevt_set_incoming (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
do i = 5, 6
  call subevt_set_outgoing (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
expr%sqrts_hat = subevt_get_sqrts_hat (expr%subevt_t)
expr%n_in = 2
expr%n_out = 2
expr%n_tot = 4
expr%subevt_filled = .true.

call expr%evaluate (passed, scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight)

write (u, "(A,L1)")      "Event has passed      = ", passed
write (u, "(A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Scale          = ", scale
write (u, "(A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Factorization scale = ", fac_scale
write (u, "(A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Renormalization scale = ", ren_scale
write (u, "(A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Weight          = ", weight
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call expr%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call expr%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: subevt_expr_1"

end subroutine subevt_expr_1

```

## Parton-event expressions

```

<Subevt expr: execute tests>+≡
  call test (subevt_expr_2, "subevt_expr_2", &
    "parton-event expressions", &
    u, results)

<Subevt expr: tests>+≡
  subroutine subevt_expr_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u

```

```

type(string_t) :: expr_text
type(ifile_t) :: ifile
type(stream_t) :: stream
type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_selection
type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_reweight, pt_analysis
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_selection
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_reweight, pn_analysis
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(event_expr_t), target :: expr
real(default) :: E, Ex, m
type(vector4_t), dimension(6) :: p
integer :: i, pdg
logical :: passed
real(default) :: reweight
logical :: analysis_flag

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: subevt_expr_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Set up a subevt and associated &
    &process-specific expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_pexpr_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Expression texts"
write (u, "(A)")

expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
write (u, "(A,A)") "selection = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (pt_selection, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_selection => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_selection)

expr_text = "n_tot - n_in - n_out"
write (u, "(A,A)") "reweight = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_reweight, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_reweight => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_reweight)

expr_text = "true"
write (u, "(A,A)") "analysis = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)

```



```

call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (pt_analysis, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
pn_analysis => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_analysis)

call ifile_final (ifile)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process expr"
write (u, "(A)")

call expr%setup_vars (1000._default)
call expr%link_var_list (model_get_var_list_ptr (model))
call var_list_append_real (expr%var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)

call expr%setup_selection (pn_selection)
call expr%setup_analysis (pn_analysis)
call expr%setup_reweight (pn_reweight)

call write_separator (u)
call expr%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Fill subevt and evaluate expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call subevt_init (expr%subevt_t, 6)
E = 500._default
Ex = 400._default
m = 125._default
pdg = 25
p(1) = vector4_moving (E, sqrt (E**2 - m**2), 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (E, -sqrt (E**2 - m**2), 3)
p(3) = vector4_moving (Ex, sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 3)
p(4) = vector4_moving (Ex, -sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 3)
p(5) = vector4_moving (Ex, sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 1)
p(6) = vector4_moving (Ex, -sqrt (Ex**2 - m**2), 1)

call expr%reset ()
do i = 1, 2
  call subevt_set_beam (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
do i = 3, 4
  call subevt_set_incoming (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
do i = 5, 6
  call subevt_set_outgoing (expr%subevt_t, i, pdg, p(i), m**2)
end do
expr%sqrts_hat = subevt_get_sqrts_hat (expr%subevt_t)
expr%n_in = 2
expr%n_out = 2
expr%n_tot = 4

```

```

expr%subevt_filled = .true.

call expr%evaluate (passed, reweight, analysis_flag)

write (u, "(A,L1)")      "Event has passed      = ", passed
write (u, "(A," // FMT_12 // ")") "Reweighting factor  = ", reweight
write (u, "(A,L1)")      "Analysis flag        = ", analysis_flag
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call expr%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call expr%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: subevt_expr_2"

end subroutine subevt_expr_2

```

## 15.4 Parton states

A `parton_state_t` object contains the effective kinematics and dynamics of an elementary partonic interaction, with or without the beam/structure function state included. The type is abstract and has two distinct extensions. The `isolated_state_t` extension describes the isolated elementary interaction where the `int_eff` subobject contains the complex transition amplitude, exclusive in all quantum numbers. The particle content and kinematics describe the effective partonic state. The `connected_state_t` extension contains the partonic `subevt` and the expressions for cuts and scales which use it.

In the isolated state, the effective partonic interaction may either be identical to the hard interaction, in which case it is just a pointer to the latter. Or it may involve a rearrangement of partons, in which case we allocate it explicitly and flag this by `int_is_allocated`.

The `trace` evaluator contains the absolute square of the effective transition amplitude matrix, summed over final states. It is also summed over initial states, depending on the the beam setup allows. The result is used for integration.

The `matrix` evaluator is the counterpart of `trace` which is kept exclusive in all observable quantum numbers. The `flows` evaluator is furthermore exclusive in colors, but neglecting all color interference. The `matrix` and `flows` evaluators are filled only for sampling points that become part of physical events.

Note: It would be natural to make the evaluators allocatable. However, this causes memory corruption in gfortran 4.6.3. The extra `has_XXX` flags indicate whether evaluators are active, instead.

This module contains no unit tests. The tests are covered by the `processes` module below.

```

<parton_states.f90>≡
  <File header>
  module parton_states

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use parser
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use subevents
    use variables
    use expressions
    use models
    use flavors
    use helicities
    use colors
    use quantum_numbers
    use state_matrices
    use polarizations
    use interactions
    use evaluators

    use beams
    use sf_base
    use process_constants
    use prc_core
    use subevt_expr

    <Standard module head>

    <Parton states: public>

    <Parton states: types>

    contains

    <Parton states: procedures>

  end module parton_states

```

#### 15.4.1 Abstract base type

The common part are the evaluators, one for the trace (summed over all quantum numbers), one for the transition matrix (summed only over unobservable quantum numbers), and one for the flow distribution (transition matrix without interferences, exclusive in color flow).

```

<Parton states: types>≡
  type, abstract :: parton_state_t
    logical :: has_trace = .false.
    logical :: has_matrix = .false.

```

```

    logical :: has_flows = .false.
    type(evaluator_t) :: trace
    type(evaluator_t) :: matrix
    type(evaluator_t) :: flows
    contains
    ⟨Parton states: parton state: TBP⟩
end type parton_state_t

```

The `isolated_state_t` extension contains the `sf_chain_eff` object and the (hard) effective interaction `int_eff`, separately, both implemented as a pointer. The evaluators (trace, matrix, flows) apply to the hard interaction only.

If the effective interaction differs from the hard interaction, the pointer is allocated explicitly. Analogously for `sf_chain_eff`.

```

⟨Parton states: public⟩≡
    public :: isolated_state_t

⟨Parton states: types⟩+≡
    type, extends (parton_state_t) :: isolated_state_t
        logical :: sf_chain_is_allocated = .false.
        type(sf_chain_instance_t), pointer :: sf_chain_eff => null ()
        logical :: int_is_allocated = .false.
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_eff => null ()
    contains
    ⟨Parton states: isolated state: TBP⟩
end type isolated_state_t

```

The `connected_state_t` extension contains all data that enable the evaluation of observables for the effective connected state. The evaluators connect the (effective) structure-function chain and hard interaction that were kept separate in the `isolated_state_t`.

The `flows_sf` evaluator is an extended copy of the structure-function

The `expr` subobject consists of the `subevt`, a simple event record, expressions for cuts etc. which refer to this record, and a `var_list` which contains event-specific variables, linked to the process variable list. Variables used within the expressions are looked up in `var_list`.

```

⟨Parton states: types⟩+≡
    public :: connected_state_t

⟨Parton states: types⟩+≡
    type, extends (parton_state_t) :: connected_state_t
        logical :: has_flows_sf = .false.
        type(evaluator_t) :: flows_sf
        logical :: has_expr = .false.
        type(parton_expr_t) :: expr
    contains
    ⟨Parton states: connected state: TBP⟩
end type connected_state_t

```

Output: each evaluator is written only when it is active. The `sf_chain` is only written if it is explicitly allocated.

```

⟨Parton states: parton state: TBP⟩≡
    procedure :: write => parton_state_write

```

*(Parton states: procedures)*≡

```

subroutine parton_state_write (state, unit, testflag)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(in) :: state
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  select type (state)
  class is (isolated_state_t)
    if (state%sf_chain_is_allocated) then
      call write_separator (u)
      call state%sf_chain_eff%write (u)
    end if
    if (state%int_is_allocated) then
      call write_separator (u)
      write (u, "(1x,A)" &
        "Effective interaction:")
      call write_separator (u)
      call interaction_write (state%int_eff, u, testflag = testflag)
    end if
  class is (connected_state_t)
    if (state%has_flows_sf) then
      call write_separator (u)
      write (u, "(1x,A)" &
        "Evaluator (extension of the beam evaluator &
        &with color contractions):")
      call write_separator (u)
      call state%flows_sf%write (u, testflag = testflag)
    end if
  end select
  if (state%has_trace) then
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)" &
      "Evaluator (trace of the squared transition matrix):")
    call write_separator (u)
    call state%trace%write (u, testflag = testflag)
  end if
  if (state%has_matrix) then
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)" &
      "Evaluator(squared transition matrix):")
    call write_separator (u)
    call state%matrix%write (u, testflag = testflag)
  end if
  if (state%has_flows) then
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)" &
      "Evaluator (squared color-flow matrix):")
    call write_separator (u)
    call state%flows%write (u, testflag = testflag)
  end if
  select type (state)
  class is (connected_state_t)
    if (state%has_expr) then

```

```

        call write_separator (u)
        call state%expr%write (u)
    end if
end select
end subroutine parton_state_write

```

Finalize interaction and evaluators, but only if allocated.

```

<Parton states: parton state: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => parton_state_final

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_state_final (state)
        class(parton_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
        if (state%has_flows) then
            call evaluator_final (state%flows)
            state%has_flows = .false.
        end if
        if (state%has_matrix) then
            call evaluator_final (state%matrix)
            state%has_matrix = .false.
        end if
        if (state%has_trace) then
            call evaluator_final (state%trace)
            state%has_trace = .false.
        end if
        select type (state)
        class is (connected_state_t)
            if (state%has_flows_sf) then
                call evaluator_final (state%flows_sf)
                state%has_flows_sf = .false.
            end if
            call state%expr%final ()
        class is (isolated_state_t)
            if (state%int_is_allocated) then
                call interaction_final (state%int_eff)
                deallocate (state%int_eff)
                state%int_is_allocated = .false.
            end if
            if (state%sf_chain_is_allocated) then
                call state%sf_chain_eff%final ()
            end if
        end select
    end subroutine parton_state_final

```

## 15.4.2 Common Initialization

Initialize the isolated parton state. In this version, the effective structure-function chain `sf_chain_eff` and the effective interaction `int_eff` both are trivial pointers to the seed structure-function chain and to the hard interaction, respectively.

```

<Parton states: isolated state: TBP>≡
    procedure :: init => isolated_state_init_pointers

```

```

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
subroutine isolated_state_init_pointers (state, sf_chain, int)
  class(isolated_state_t), intent(out) :: state
  type(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
  type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int
  state%sf_chain_eff => sf_chain
  state%int_eff => int
end subroutine isolated_state_init_pointers

```

### 15.4.3 Evaluator initialization: isolated state

Create an evaluator for the trace of the squared transition matrix. The trace goes over all outgoing quantum numbers. Whether we trace over incoming quantum numbers other than color, depends on the given `qn_mask_in`.

There are two options: explicitly computing the color factor table (`use_cf` false; `nc` defined), or taking the color factor table from the hard matrix element data.

```

(Parton states: isolated state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_square_trace => isolated_state_setup_square_trace
(Parton states: procedures)+≡
subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_trace (state, core, qn_mask_in, &
  col)
  class(isolated_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
  class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
  type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
  associate (data => core%data)
    allocate (qn_mask (data%n_in + data%n_out))
    qn_mask(:data%n_in) = &
      new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., .false.) &
      .or. qn_mask_in
    qn_mask(data%n_in+1:) = &
      new_quantum_numbers_mask (.true., .true., .true.)
    if (core%use_color_factors) then
      call evaluator_init_square (state%trace, &
        state%int_eff, qn_mask, &
        data%cf_index, data%color_factors, col, nc=core%nc)
    else
      call evaluator_init_square (state%trace, &
        state%int_eff, qn_mask, nc=core%nc)
    end if
  end associate
  state%has_trace = .true.
end subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_trace

```

Setup the evaluator for the transition matrix, exclusive in helicities where this is requested.

For all unstable final-state particles we keep polarization according to the applicable decay options. If the process is a decay itself, this applies also to the initial state.

For all polarized final-state particles, we keep polarization including off-diagonal entries. We drop helicity completely for unpolarized final-state particles.

For the initial state, if the particle has not been handled yet, we apply the provided `qn_mask_in` which communicates the beam properties.

```

(Parton states: isolated state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_square_matrix => isolated_state_setup_square_matrix
(Parton states: procedures)+≡
  subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_matrix &
    (state, core, model, qn_mask_in, col)
    class(isolated_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: col
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
    integer :: i
    logical :: helmask, helmask_hd
    associate (data => core%data)
      allocate (qn_mask (data%n_in + data%n_out))
      allocate (flv (data%n_flv))
      do i = 1, data%n_in + data%n_out
        call flavor_init (flv, data%flv_state(i,:), model)
        if ((data%n_in == 1 .or. i > data%n_in) &
            .and. any (.not. flavor_is_stable (flv))) then
          helmask = all (flavor_decays_isotropically (flv))
          helmask_hd = all (flavor_decays_diagonal (flv))
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., helmask, &
            mask_hd = helmask_hd)
        else if (i > data%n_in) then
          helmask = all (.not. flavor_is_polarized (flv))
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., helmask)
        else
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., .false.) &
            .or. qn_mask_in(i)
        end if
      end do
      if (core%use_color_factors) then
        call evaluator_init_square (state%matrix, &
          state%int_eff, qn_mask, &
          data%cf_index, data%color_factors, col, nc=core%nc)
      else
        call evaluator_init_square (state%matrix, state%int_eff, &
          qn_mask, nc=core%nc)
      end if
    end associate
    state%has_matrix = .true.
  end subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_matrix

```

This procedure initializes the evaluator that computes the contributions to color flows, neglecting color interference. The incoming-particle mask can be used to sum over incoming flavor.



Helicity handling: see above.

```

(Parton states: isolated state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_square_flows => isolated_state_setup_square_flows

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
  subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_flows (state, core, model, qn_mask_in)
    class(isolated_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: qn_mask_in
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
    integer :: i
    logical :: helmask, helmask_hd
    associate (data => core%data)
      allocate (qn_mask (data%n_in + data%n_out))
      allocate (flv (data%n_flv))
      do i = 1, data%n_in + data%n_out
        call flavor_init (flv, data%flv_state(i,:), model)
        if ((data%n_in == 1 .or. i > data%n_in) &
            .and. any (.not. flavor_is_stable (flv))) then
          helmask = all (flavor_decays_isotropically (flv))
          helmask_hd = all (flavor_decays_diagonal (flv))
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., helmask, &
            mask_hd = helmask_hd)
        else if (i > data%n_in) then
          helmask = all (.not. flavor_is_polarized (flv))
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., helmask)
        else
          qn_mask(i) = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .false.) &
            .or. qn_mask_in(i)
        end if
      end do
      call evaluator_init_square (state%flows, state%int_eff, qn_mask, &
        expand_color_flows = .true.)
    end associate
    state%has_flows = .true.
  end subroutine isolated_state_setup_square_flows

```

#### 15.4.4 Evaluator initialization: connected state

Setup a trace evaluator as a product of two evaluators (incoming state, effective interaction). In the result, all quantum numbers are summed over.

If the optional `int` interaction is provided, use this for the first factor in the convolution. Otherwise, use the final interaction of the stored `sf_chain`.

The `resonant` flag applies if we want to construct a decay chain. The resonance property can propagate to the final event output.

```

(Parton states: connected state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_connected_trace => connected_state_setup_connected_trace

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
  subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_trace &
    (state, isolated, int, resonant)

```

```

class (connected_state_t), intent (inout), target :: state
type (isolated_state_t), intent (in), target :: isolated
type (interaction_t), intent (in), optional, target :: int
logical, intent (in), optional :: resonant
type (quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
type (interaction_t), pointer :: src_int
mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.true., .true., .true.)
if (present (int)) then
    src_int => int
else
    src_int => isolated%sf_chain_eff%get_out_int_ptr ()
end if
call evaluator_init_product &
    (state%trace, src_int, isolated%trace, mask, mask, &
    connections_are_resonant = resonant)
state%has_trace = .true.
end subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_trace

```

Setup a matrix evaluator as a product of two evaluators (incoming state, effective interaction). In the intermediate state, color and helicity is summed over. In the final state, we keep the quantum numbers which are present in the original evaluators.

```

<Parton states: connected state: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_connected_matrix => connected_state_setup_connected_matrix

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
    subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_matrix &
        (state, isolated, int, resonant)
    class (connected_state_t), intent (inout), target :: state
    type (isolated_state_t), intent (in), target :: isolated
    type (interaction_t), intent (in), optional, target :: int
    logical, intent (in), optional :: resonant
    type (quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
    type (interaction_t), pointer :: src_int
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .true., .true.)
    if (present (int)) then
        src_int => int
    else
        src_int => isolated%sf_chain_eff%get_out_int_ptr ()
    end if
    call evaluator_init_product &
        (state%matrix, src_int, isolated%matrix, mask, &
        connections_are_resonant = resonant)
    state%has_matrix = .true.
end subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_matrix

```

Setup a matrix evaluator as a product of two evaluators (incoming state, effective interaction). In the intermediate state, only helicity is summed over. In the final state, we keep the quantum numbers which are present in the original evaluators.

If the optional `int` interaction is provided, use this for the first factor in the convolution. Otherwise, use the final interaction of the stored `sf_chain`, after creating an intermediate interaction that includes a correlated color state. We

assume that for a caller-provided `int`, this is not necessary.

```

(Parton states: connected state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_connected_flows => connected_state_setup_connected_flows

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
  subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_flows &
    (state, isolated, int, resonant)
    class(connected_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    type(isolated_state_t), intent(in), target :: isolated
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), optional, target :: int
    logical, intent(in), optional :: resonant
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t) :: mask
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: src_int
    mask = new_quantum_numbers_mask (.false., .false., .true.)
    if (present (int)) then
      src_int => int
    else
      src_int => isolated%sf_chain_eff%get_out_int_ptr ()
      call evaluator_init_color_contractions (state%flows_sf, src_int)
      state%has_flows_sf = .true.
      src_int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%flows_sf)
    end if
    call evaluator_init_product &
      (state%flows, src_int, isolated%flows, mask, &
        connections_are_resonant = resonant)
    state%has_flows = .true.
  end subroutine connected_state_setup_connected_flows

```

### 15.4.5 Cuts and expressions

Set up the `subevt` that corresponds to the connected interaction. The index arrays refer to the interaction.

We assign the particles as follows: the beam particles are the first two (decay process: one) entries in the trace evaluator. The incoming partons are identified by their link to the outgoing partons of the structure-function chain. The outgoing partons are those of the trace evaluator, which include radiated partons during the structure-function chain.

```

(Parton states: connected state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_subevt => connected_state_setup_subevt

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
  subroutine connected_state_setup_subevt (state, sf_chain, f_beam, f_in, f_out)
    class(connected_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    type(sf_chain_instance_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: f_beam, f_in, f_out
    integer :: n_beam, n_in, n_out, n_vir, n_tot, i, j
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_beam, i_in, i_out
    integer :: sf_out_i
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int, sf_int
    int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%trace)
    sf_int => sf_chain%get_out_int_ptr ()
    n_beam = size (f_beam)
    n_in = size (f_in)

```

```

n_out = size (f_out)
n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (int)
n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int)
allocate (i_beam (n_beam), i_in (n_in), i_out (n_out))
i_beam = [(i, i = 1, n_beam)]
do j = 1, n_in
    sf_out_i = sf_chain%get_out_i (j)
    i_in(j) = interaction_find_link (int, sf_int, sf_out_i)
end do
i_out = [(i, i = n_vir + 1, n_tot)]
call state%expr%setup_subevt (int, &
    i_beam, i_in, i_out, f_beam, f_in, f_out)
state%has_expr = .true.
end subroutine connected_state_setup_subevt

```

Initialize the variable list specific for this state/term. We insert event variables (`sqrts_hat`) and link the process variable list. The variable list acquires pointers to subobjects of `state`, which must therefore have a `target` attribute.

```

<Parton states: connected state: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_var_list => connected_state_setup_var_list

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
    subroutine connected_state_setup_var_list (state, process_var_list, beam_data)
        class(connected_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: process_var_list
        type(beam_data_t), intent(in) :: beam_data
        call state%expr%setup_vars (beam_data_get_sqrts (beam_data))
        call state%expr%link_var_list (process_var_list)
    end subroutine connected_state_setup_var_list

```

Allocate the cut expression etc.

```

<Parton states: connected state: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_expressions => connected_state_setup_expressions

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
    subroutine connected_state_setup_expressions (state, &
        pn_cuts, pn_scale, pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale, pn_weight)
        class(connected_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_cuts
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_scale
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_fac_scale
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_ren_scale
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_weight
        call state%expr%setup_selection (pn_cuts)
        call state%expr%setup_scales (pn_scale, pn_fac_scale, pn_ren_scale)
        call state%expr%setup_weight (pn_weight)
    end subroutine connected_state_setup_expressions

```

Reset the expression object: invalidate the subevt.

```

<Parton states: connected state: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: reset_expressions => connected_state_reset_expressions

```

```

(Parton states: procedures) +=
  subroutine connected_state_reset_expressions (state)
    class(connected_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
    if (state%has_expr) call state%expr%reset ()
  end subroutine connected_state_reset_expressions

```

### 15.4.6 Evaluation

Transfer momenta to the trace evaluator and fill the `subevt` with this effective kinematics, if applicable.

Note: we may want to apply a boost for the `subevt`.

```

(Parton states: parton state: TBP) +=
  procedure :: receive_kinematics => parton_state_receive_kinematics

(Parton states: procedures) +=
  subroutine parton_state_receive_kinematics (state)
    class(parton_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    if (state%has_trace) then
      call evaluator_receive_momenta (state%trace)
      select type (state)
        class is (connected_state_t)
          if (state%has_expr) then
            int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%trace)
            call state%expr%fill_subevt (int)
          end if
        end select
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine parton_state_receive_kinematics

```

Recover kinematics: We assume that the trace evaluator is filled with momenta. Send those momenta back to the sources, then fill the variables and subevent as above.

The incoming momenta of the connected state are not connected to the isolated state but to the beam interaction. Therefore, the incoming momenta within the isolated state do not become defined, yet. Instead, we reconstruct the beam (and ISR) momentum configuration.

```

(Parton states: parton state: TBP) +=
  procedure :: send_kinematics => parton_state_send_kinematics

(Parton states: procedures) +=
  subroutine parton_state_send_kinematics (state)
    class(parton_state_t), intent(inout), target :: state
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    if (state%has_trace) then
      call evaluator_send_momenta (state%trace)
      select type (state)
        class is (connected_state_t)
          int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%trace)
          call state%expr%fill_subevt (int)
        end select
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine parton_state_send_kinematics

```

```
end subroutine parton_state_send_kinematics
```

Evaluate the expressions. The routine evaluates first the cut expression. If the event passes, it evaluates the other expressions. Where no expressions are defined, default values are inserted.

```
<Parton states: connected state: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_expressions => connected_state_evaluate_expressions

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
  subroutine connected_state_evaluate_expressions (state, passed, &
    scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight)
    class(connected_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
    logical, intent(out) :: passed
    real(default), intent(out) :: scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight
    if (state%has_expr) then
      call state%expr%evaluate (passed, scale, fac_scale, ren_scale, weight)
    end if
  end subroutine connected_state_evaluate_expressions
```

Evaluate the structure-function chain, if it is allocated explicitly. The argument is the factorization scale.

If the chain is merely a pointer, the chain should already be evaluated at this point.

```
<Parton states: isolated state: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_sf_chain => isolated_state_evaluate_sf_chain

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
  subroutine isolated_state_evaluate_sf_chain (state, fac_scale)
    class(isolated_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
    real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale
    if (state%sf_chain_is_allocated) then
      call state%sf_chain_eff%evaluate (fac_scale)
    end if
  end subroutine isolated_state_evaluate_sf_chain
```

Evaluate the trace.

```
<Parton states: parton state: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_trace => parton_state_evaluate_trace

<Parton states: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_state_evaluate_trace (state)
    class(parton_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
    if (state%has_trace) then
      call state%trace%evaluate ()
    end if
  end subroutine parton_state_evaluate_trace
```

Evaluate the extra evaluators that we need for physical events.

```
<Parton states: parton state: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_event_data => parton_state_evaluate_event_data
```

```

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
subroutine parton_state_evaluate_event_data (state)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
  select type (state)
  type is (connected_state_t)
    if (state%has_flows_sf) then
      call evaluator_receive_momenta (state%flows_sf)
      call state%flows_sf%evaluate ()
    end if
  end select
  if (state%has_matrix) then
    call evaluator_receive_momenta (state%matrix)
    call state%matrix%evaluate ()
  end if
  if (state%has_flows) then
    call evaluator_receive_momenta (state%flows)
    call state%flows%evaluate ()
  end if
end subroutine parton_state_evaluate_event_data

```

Normalize the helicity density matrix by its trace, i.e., factor out the trace and put it into an overall normalization factor. The trace and flow evaluators are unchanged.

```

(Parton states: parton state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: normalize_matrix_by_trace => &
    parton_state_normalize_matrix_by_trace

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
subroutine parton_state_normalize_matrix_by_trace (state)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(inout) :: state
  if (state%has_matrix) then
    call evaluator_normalize_by_trace (state%matrix)
  end if
end subroutine parton_state_normalize_matrix_by_trace

```

## 15.4.7 Accessing the state

Three functions return a pointer to the event-relevant interactions.

```

(Parton states: parton state: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_trace_int_ptr => parton_state_get_trace_int_ptr
  procedure :: get_matrix_int_ptr => parton_state_get_matrix_int_ptr
  procedure :: get_flows_int_ptr => parton_state_get_flows_int_ptr

(Parton states: procedures)+≡
function parton_state_get_trace_int_ptr (state) result (ptr)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(in), target :: state
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
  if (state%has_trace) then
    ptr => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%trace)
  else
    ptr => null ()
  end if
end function

```

```

end function parton_state_get_trace_int_ptr

function parton_state_get_matrix_int_ptr (state) result (ptr)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(in), target :: state
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
  if (state%has_matrix) then
    ptr => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%matrix)
  else
    ptr => null ()
  end if
end function parton_state_get_matrix_int_ptr

function parton_state_get_flows_int_ptr (state) result (ptr)
  class(parton_state_t), intent(in), target :: state
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
  if (state%has_flows) then
    ptr => evaluator_get_int_ptr (state%flows)
  else
    ptr => null ()
  end if
end function parton_state_get_flows_int_ptr

```

Return the indices of the beam particles and the outgoing particles within the trace (and thus, matrix and flows) evaluator, respectively.

*(Parton states: connected state: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_beam_index => connected_state_get_beam_index
procedure :: get_in_index => connected_state_get_in_index

```

*(Parton states: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine connected_state_get_beam_index (state, i_beam)
  class(connected_state_t), intent(in) :: state
  integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_beam
  call state%expr%get_beam_index (i_beam)
end subroutine connected_state_get_beam_index

subroutine connected_state_get_in_index (state, i_in)
  class(connected_state_t), intent(in) :: state
  integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_in
  call state%expr%get_in_index (i_in)
end subroutine connected_state_get_in_index

```

## 15.5 Complete Elementary Processes

This module combines hard interactions, phase space, and (for scatterings) structure functions and interfaces them to the integration module.

The process object implements the combination of a fixed beam and structure-function setup with a number of elementary processes. The latter are called process components. The process object represents an entity which is supposedly observable. It should be meaningful to talk about the cross section of a process.



The individual components of a process are, technically, processes themselves, but they may have unphysical cross sections which have to be added for a physical result. Process components may be exclusive tree-level elementary processes, dipole subtraction term, loop corrections, etc.

The beam and structure function setup is common to all process components. Thus, there is only one instance of this part.

The process may be a scattering process or a decay process. In the latter case, there are no structure functions, and the beam setup consists of a single particle. Otherwise, the two classes are treated on the same footing.

Once a sampling point has been chosen, a process determines a set of partons with a correlated density matrix of quantum numbers. In general, each sampling point will generate, for each process component, one or more distinct parton configurations. This is the **computed** state. The computed state is the subject of the multi-channel integration algorithm.

For NLO computations, it is necessary to project the computed states onto another set of parton configurations (e.g., by recombining certain pairs). This is the **observed** state. When computing partonic observables, the information is taken from the observed state.

For the purpose of event generation, we will later select one parton configuration from the observed state and collapse the correlated quantum state. This configuration is then dressed by applying parton shower, decays and hadronization. The decay chain, in particular, combines a scattering process with possible subsequent decay processes on the parton level, which are full-fledged process objects themselves.

```

<processes.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module processes

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    use system_dependencies !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use md5
    use cputime
    use os_interface

    use ifiles
    use lexers
    use parser

    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use sm_qcd
    use pdg_arrays
    use subevents
    use variables
    use expressions
    use models
    use flavors

```

```

use helicities
use colors
use quantum_numbers
use state_matrices
use polarizations
use interactions
use evaluators
use particles
use beam_structures
use beams
use sf_mappings
use sf_base
use process_constants
use phs_base
use phs_single
use rng_base
use mci_base
use mci_midpoint
use mci_vamp

use vamp !NODEP!

use prclib_interfaces
use prc_core_def
use process_libraries
use prc_test

use integration_results
use prc_core
use parton_states

<Standard module head>

<Processes: public>

<Processes: parameters>

<Processes: types>

<Processes: process part types>

<Processes: process type>

<Processes: interfaces>

<Processes: test types>

contains

<Processes: procedures>

<Processes: tests>

end module processes

```

### 15.5.1 The Process Object

A process object is the workspace for creating process instances for event generation. After initialization, its contents are filled by integration passes which shape the integration grids and compute cross sections. Processes are set up initially from user-level configuration data. After calculating integrals and thus developing integration grid data, the program may use a process object or a copy of it for the purpose of generating events

The process object consists of several subobjects with their specific purposes. The corresponding types are defined below. (Technically, the subobject type definitions have to come before the process type definition, but with NOWEB magic we reverse this order here.)

The **type** determines whether we are considering a decay or a scattering process.

The **meta** object describes the process and its environment. All contents become fixed when the object is initialized.

The **config** object holds physical and technical configuration data that have been obtained during process initialization, and which are common to all process components.

The individual process components are configured in the **component** objects. These objects contain more configuration parameters and workspace, as needed for the specific process variant.

The **term** objects describe parton configurations which are technically used as phase-space points. Each process component may split into several terms with distinct kinematics and particle content. Furthermore, each term may project on a different physical state, e.g., by particle recombination. The **term** object provides the framework for this projection, for applying cuts, weight, and thus completing the process calculation.

The **beam\_config** object describes the incoming particles, either the decay mother or the scattering beams. It also contains the structure-function information.

The **mci\_entry** objects configure a MC input parameter set and integrator, each. The number of parameters depends on the process component and on the beam and structure-function setup.

*(Processes: public)*≡

```
public :: process_t
```

*(Processes: process type)*≡

```
type :: process_t
private
type(process_metadata_t) :: &
    meta
type(process_config_data_t) :: &
    config
type(process_counter_t) :: &
    counter
type(process_component_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
    component
type(process_term_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
    term
type(process_beam_config_t) :: &
    beam_config
```

```

        type(process_mci_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
            mci_entry
    contains
        <Processes: process: TBP>
    end type process_t

```

This procedure is an important debugging and inspection tool; it is not used during normal operation. The process object is written to a file (identified by unit, which may also be standard output). Optional flags determine whether we show everything or just the interesting parts.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => process_write

<Processes: procedures>≡
    subroutine process_write (process, screen, unit, &
        show_all, show_var_list, &
        show_os_data, &
        show_rng_factory, show_model, show_expressions, &
        show_sfchain, &
        show_equivalences, show_history, show_histories, &
        show_forest, show_x, &
        show_subevt, show_evaluators, pacify)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    logical, intent(in) :: screen
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_all
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_rng_factory
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_model, show_expressions
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_sfchain
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_equivalences
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_history, show_histories
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_forest, show_x
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_subevt, show_evaluators
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    logical :: all
    logical :: var_list
    logical :: counters
    logical :: os_data
    logical :: rng_factory, model, expressions
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (present (show_all)) then
        all = show_all
    else
        all = .false.
    end if
    var_list = .false.
    counters = .true.
    os_data = .false.
    model = .false.
    rng_factory = .true.
    expressions = .false.

```

```

if (present (show_var_list)) then
    all = .false.; var_list = show_var_list
end if
if (present (show_os_data)) then
    all = .false.; os_data = show_os_data
end if
if (present (show_rng_factory)) then
    all = .false.; rng_factory = show_rng_factory
end if
if (present (show_model)) then
    all = .false.; model = show_model
end if
if (present (show_expressions)) then
    all = .false.; expressions = show_expressions
end if
if (all) then
    var_list = .true.
    rng_factory = .true.
    model = .true.
    expressions = .true.
end if
if (screen) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A)") repeat ("-", 72)
    call msg_message ()
else
    call write_separator_double (u)
end if
call process%meta%write (u, var_list, screen)
if (process%meta%type == PRC_UNKNOWN) then
    call write_separator_double (u)
    return
else
    if (.not. screen) call write_separator (u)
end if
if (screen) return
call process%config%write &
    (u, counters, os_data, rng_factory, model, expressions)
call write_separator_double (u)
if (allocated (process%component)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process component configuration:"
    do i = 1, size (process%component)
        call write_separator (u)
        call process%component(i)%write (u)
    end do
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process component configuration: [undefined]"
end if
call write_separator_double (u)
if (allocated (process%term)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process term configuration:"
    do i = 1, size (process%term)
        call write_separator (u)
        call process%term(i)%write (u)
    end do

```

```

else
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process term configuration: [undefined]"
end if
call write_separator_double (u)
call process%beam_config%write (u)
call write_separator_double (u)
if (allocated (process%mc_entry)) then
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Multi-channel integrator configurations:"
  do i = 1, size (process%mc_entry)
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "MCI #", i, ":"
    call process%mc_entry(i)%write (u, pacify)
  end do
end if
call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine process_write

```

Screen output. Write a short account of the process configuration and the current results. The verbose version lists the components, the short version just the results.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: show => process_show

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_show (object, unit, verbose)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u
    logical :: verb
    u = output_unit (unit)
    verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    if (verb) then
      call object%meta%show (u, object%config%model%get_name ())
      select case (object%meta%type)
        case (PRC_DECAY)
          write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "Computed width ="
        case (PRC_SCATTERING)
          write (u, "(2x,A)", advance="no") "Computed cross section ="
        case default; return
      end select
    else
      write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (object%meta%id)
      select case (object%meta%num_id)
        case (0)
          write (u, "(::)")
        case default
          write (u, "(1x,'(,I0,')','::~)") object%meta%num_id
      end select
      write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
    end if
    write (u, "(ES14.7,1x,'+-',ES9.2)", advance="no") &
      object%get_integral_tot (), object%get_error_tot ()
    select case (object%meta%type)

```

```

    case (PRC_DECAY)
        write (u, "(1x,A)" "GeV"
    case (PRC_SCATTERING)
        write (u, "(1x,A)" "fb"
    end select
end subroutine process_show

```

Finalizer. Explicitly iterate over all subobjects that may contain allocated pointers.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => process_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_final (process)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        integer :: i
        call process%meta%final ()
        call process%config%final ()
        if (allocated (process%component)) then
            do i = 1, size (process%component)
                call process%component(i)%final ()
            end do
        end if
        if (allocated (process%term)) then
            do i = 1, size (process%term)
                call process%term(i)%final ()
            end do
        end if
        call process%beam_config%final ()
        if (allocated (process%mci_entry)) then
            do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
                call process%mci_entry(i)%final ()
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine process_final

```

## Process setup

Initialize a process. We need a process library, the name of the process, and a run ID.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => process_init

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_init &
        (process, proc_id, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
        class(process_t), intent(out) :: process
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: proc_id
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: run_id
        type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        type(qcd_t), intent(in) :: qcd
        class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng_factory
    end subroutine process_init

```

```

type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
if (.not. lib%is_active ()) then
    call msg_bug ("Process init: inactive library not handled yet")
end if
if (.not. lib%contains (proc_id)) then
    call msg_fatal ("Process library doesn't contain process '" &
        // char (proc_id) // "'")
    return
end if
associate (meta => process%meta)
    call meta%init (proc_id, run_id, lib)
    call process%config%init (meta, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
    allocate (process%component (meta%n_components))
end associate
end subroutine process_init

```

Store a snapshot of a variable list. We link this snapshot to the current model instance and use it to update the model parameters in this instance. After update, synchronize the var list, i.e., fetch any new values of derived parameters.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+=
    procedure :: set_var_list => process_set_var_list

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_set_var_list (process, var_list)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
        call var_list_init_snapshot (process%meta%var_list, var_list)
        call var_list_set_original_pointers (process%meta%var_list, &
            model_get_var_list_ptr (process%config%model))
        call var_list_restore (process%meta%var_list)
        call model_parameters_update (process%config%model)
        call var_list_synchronize (process%meta%var_list, &
            model_get_var_list_ptr (process%config%model))
    end subroutine process_set_var_list

```

Initialize the process components, one by one, using a template for the process core object. The template is taken only for allocating the correct type; the contents are set by extracting the process entry from the library.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+=
    procedure :: init_component => process_init_component

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_init_component &
        (process, index, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: index
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in), allocatable :: core_template
        class(mci_t), intent(in), allocatable :: mci_template
        class(phs_config_t), intent(in), allocatable :: phs_config_template
        call process%component(index)%init (index, &
            process%meta, process%config, &
            core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
        if (.not. process%component(index)%active) then

```



```

        call process%meta%deactivate_component(index)
    end if
end subroutine process_init_component

```

Determine the process terms for each process component.

$\langle Processes: process: TBP \rangle + \equiv$

```

    procedure :: setup_terms => process_setup_terms

```

$\langle Processes: procedures \rangle + \equiv$

```

subroutine process_setup_terms (process)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    integer :: i, j, k
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entry
    integer :: n_components, n_tot
    model => process%config%model
    n_components = process%meta%n_components
    allocate (n_entry (n_components), source = 0)
    do i = 1, n_components
        associate (component => process%component(i))
            if (component%active) n_entry(i) = component%core%get_n_terms ()
        end associate
    end do
    n_tot = sum (n_entry)
    allocate (process%term (n_tot))
    k = 0
    do i = 1, n_components
        associate (component => process%component(i))
            if (.not. component%active) cycle
            associate (core => component%core)
                allocate (component%i_term (n_entry(i)))
                do j = 1, n_entry(i)
                    component%i_term(j) = k + j
                    call process%term(k+j)%init (k+j, i, j, core, model)
                end do
            end associate
        end associate
        k = k + n_entry(i)
    end do
    process%config%n_terms = n_tot
end subroutine process_setup_terms

```

Initialize the beam setup. This is the trivial version where the incoming state of the matrix element coincides with the initial state of the process. For a scattering process, we need the c.m. energy, all other variables are set to their default values (no polarization, lab frame and c.m. frame coincide, etc.)

We assume that all components consistently describe a scattering process, i.e., two incoming particles.

Note: The current layout of the `beam_data_t` record requires that the flavor for each beam is unique. For processes with multiple flavors in the initial state, one has to set up beams explicitly. This restriction could be removed by extending the code in the `beams` module.

$\langle Processes: process: TBP \rangle + \equiv$

```

    procedure :: setup_beams_sqrts => process_setup_beams_sqrts
  (Processes: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_setup_beams_sqrts (process, sqrts, beam_structure)
      class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
      real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
      type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
      type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: pdg_in
      integer, dimension(2) :: pdg_scattering
      type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv_in
      integer :: i, i0
      allocate (pdg_in (2, process%meta%n_components))
      i0 = 0
      do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
        if (process%component(i)%active) then
          pdg_in(:,i) = process%component(i)%get_pdg_in ()
          if (i0 == 0) i0 = i
        end if
      end do
      do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
        if (.not. process%component(i)%active) then
          pdg_in(:,i) = pdg_in(:,i0)
        end if
      end do
      if (all (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) == 1) .and. &
        all (pdg_in(1,:) == pdg_in(1,i0)) .and. &
        all (pdg_in(2,:) == pdg_in(2,i0))) then
        pdg_scattering = pdg_array_get (pdg_in(:,i0), 1)
        call flavor_init (flv_in, pdg_scattering, process%config%model)
        call process%beam_config%init_scattering (flv_in, sqrts, beam_structure)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("Setting up process '" // char (process%meta%id) // "':", &
          [var_str ("-----"), &
            var_str ("Inconsistent initial state. This happens if either "), &
            var_str ("several processes with non-matching initial states "), &
            var_str ("have been added, or for a single process with an "), &
            var_str ("initial state flavor sum. In that case, please set beams "), &
            var_str ("explicitly [singling out a flavor / structure function.]"))]
      end if
    end subroutine process_setup_beams_sqrts

```

This is the version that applies to decay processes. The energy is the particle mass, hence no extra argument.

```

  (Processes: process: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: setup_beams_decay => process_setup_beams_decay
  (Processes: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_setup_beams_decay (process, rest_frame, beam_structure)
      class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
      logical, intent(in), optional :: rest_frame
      type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
      type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: pdg_in
      integer, dimension(1) :: pdg_decay
      type(flavor_t), dimension(1) :: flv_in
      integer :: i, i0

```

```

allocate (pdg_in (1, process%meta%n_components))
i0 = 0
do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
  if (process%component(i)%active) then
    pdg_in(:,i) = process%component(i)%get_pdg_in ()
    if (i0 == 0) i0 = i
  end if
end do
do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
  if (.not. process%component(i)%active) then
    pdg_in(:,i) = pdg_in(:,i0)
  end if
end do
if (all (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in) == 1) &
    .and. all (pdg_in(1,:) == pdg_in(1,i0))) then
  pdg_decay = pdg_array_get (pdg_in(:,i0), 1)
  call flavor_init (flv_in, pdg_decay, process%config%model)
  call process%beam_config%init_decay (flv_in, rest_frame, beam_structure)
else
  call msg_fatal ("Setting up decay '" &
    // char (process%meta%id) // "' : decaying particle not unique")
end if
end subroutine process_setup_beams_decay

```

We have to make sure that the masses of the various flavors in a given position in the particle string coincide.

*(Processes: process: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: check_masses => process_check_masses

```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_check_masses (process)
  class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: mass
  integer :: i, j
  do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
    if (.not. process%component(i)%active) cycle
    associate (data => process%component(i)%core%data)
      allocate (flv (data%n_flv), mass (data%n_flv))
      do j = 1, data%n_in + data%n_out
        call flavor_init (flv, data%flv_state(j,:), process%config%model)
        mass = flavor_get_mass (flv)
        if (any (mass /= mass(1))) then
          call msg_fatal ("Process '" // char (process%meta%id) // "' : " &
            // "mass values in flavor combination do not coincide. ")
        end if
      end do
      deallocate (flv, mass)
    end associate
  end do
end subroutine process_check_masses

```

For some structure functions we need to get the list of initial state flavors. This is a two-dimensional array. The first index is the beam index, the second index

is the component index. Each array element is itself a PDG array object, which consists of the list of incoming PDG values for this beam and component.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_in => process_get_pdg_in

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_get_pdg_in (process, pdg_in)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: pdg_in
    integer :: i
    allocate (pdg_in (process%config%n_in, process%meta%n_components))
    do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
      if (process%component(i)%active) then
        pdg_in(:,i) = process%component(i)%get_pdg_in ()
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine process_get_pdg_in

```

Initialize from a complete beam setup.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_beams_beam_structure => process_setup_beams_beam_structure

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_setup_beams_beam_structure &
    (process, beam_structure, sqrts, model, decay_rest_frame)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    logical, intent(in), optional :: decay_rest_frame
    if (process%get_n_in () == beam_structure%get_n_beam ()) then
      call process%beam_config%init_beam_structure &
        (beam_structure, sqrts, model, decay_rest_frame)
    else if (beam_structure%get_n_beam () == 0) then
      call msg_fatal ("Asymmetric beams: missing beam particle specification")
    else
      call msg_fatal ("Mismatch of process and beam setup (scattering/decay)")
    end if
  end subroutine process_setup_beams_beam_structure

```

Notify the user about beam setup.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: beams_startup_message => process_beams_startup_message

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_beams_startup_message (process, unit, beam_structure)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
    call process%beam_config%startup_message (unit, beam_structure)
  end subroutine process_beams_startup_message

```

We complete the kinematics configuration after the beam setup, but before we configure the chain of structure functions. The reason is that we need the total energy `sqrts` for the kinematics, but the structure-function setup requires the number of channels, which depends on the kinematics configuration. For instance, the kinematics module may return the need for parameterizing an s-channel resonance.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: configure_phs => process_configure_phs

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_configure_phs (process, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
    logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
    real(default) :: sqrts
    integer :: i
    sqrts = process%get_sqrts ()
    do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
      associate (component => process%component(i))
        if (component%active) then
          call component%configure_phs &
            (sqrts, process%beam_config, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
        end if
      end associate
    end do
  end subroutine process_configure_phs

```

Insert the structure-function configuration data. First allocate the storage, then insert data one by one. The third procedure declares a mapping (of the MC input parameters) for a specific channel and structure-function combination.

We take the number of channels from the corresponding entry in the `config_data` section.

Otherwise, these are simple wrapper routines. The extra level in the call tree may allow for simple addressing of multiple concurrent beam configurations, not implemented currently.

If we do not want structure functions, we simply do not call those procedures.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_sf_chain => process_init_sf_chain
  generic :: set_sf_channel => set_sf_channel_single
  procedure :: set_sf_channel_single => process_set_sf_channel
  generic :: set_sf_channel => set_sf_channel_array
  procedure :: set_sf_channel_array => process_set_sf_channel_array

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_init_sf_chain (process, sf_config, sf_trace_file)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: sf_config
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sf_trace_file
    type(string_t) :: file
    if (present (sf_trace_file)) then
      if (sf_trace_file /= "") then
        file = sf_trace_file
      else

```

```

        file = process%get_id () // "_sftrace.dat"
    end if
    call process%beam_config%init_sf_chain (sf_config, file)
else
    call process%beam_config%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
end if
end subroutine process_init_sf_chain

subroutine process_set_sf_channel (process, c, sf_channel)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    type(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: sf_channel
    call process%beam_config%set_sf_channel (c, sf_channel)
end subroutine process_set_sf_channel

subroutine process_set_sf_channel_array (process, sf_channel)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: sf_channel
    integer :: c
    call process%beam_config%allocate_sf_channels (size (sf_channel))
    do c = 1, size (sf_channel)
        call process%beam_config%set_sf_channel (c, sf_channel(c))
    end do
end subroutine process_set_sf_channel_array

```

Notify about the structure-function setup.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: sf_startup_message => process_sf_startup_message

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_sf_startup_message (process, sf_string, unit)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sf_string
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        call process%beam_config%sf_startup_message (sf_string, unit)
    end subroutine process_sf_startup_message

```

As soon as both the kinematics configuration and the structure-function setup are complete, we match parameterizations (channels) for both. The matching entries are (re)set in the component phase-space configuration, while the structure-function configuration is left intact.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: collect_channels => process_collect_channels

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_collect_channels (process, coll)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(inout) :: coll
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
            associate (component => process%component(i))
                if (component%active) then
                    call component%collect_channels (coll)
                end if
            end associate
        end do
    end subroutine process_collect_channels

```

```

        end associate
    end do
end subroutine process_collect_channels

```

Independently, we should be able to check if any component doesn't contain phase-space parameters. Such a process can only be integrated if there are structure functions.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: contains_trivial_component => process_contains_trivial_component

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_contains_trivial_component (process) result (flag)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        logical :: flag
        integer :: i
        flag = .true.
        do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
            associate (component => process%component(i))
                if (component%active) then
                    if (component%get_n_phs_par () == 0) return
                end if
            end associate
        end do
        flag = .false.
    end function process_contains_trivial_component

```

Determine the MC parameter set structure and the MCI configuration for each process component. We need data from the structure-function and phase-space setup, so those should be complete before this is called. We also make a random-number generator instance for each MCI group.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_mci => process_setup_mci

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_setup_mci (process)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        integer :: n_mci, i_mci
        integer :: i
        n_mci = 0
        do i = 1, process%meta%n_components
            associate (component => process%component(i))
                if (component%active .and. component%core%needs_mcset ()) then
                    n_mci = n_mci + 1
                    component%i_mci = n_mci
                end if
            end associate
        end do
        process%config%n_mci = n_mci
        if (.not. allocated (process%config%rng_factory)) &
            call msg_bug ("Process setup: rng factory not allocated")
        allocate (process%mc_entry (n_mci))
        i_mci = 0
        do i = 1, process%meta%n_components

```

```

        associate (component => process%component(i))
        if (component%active .and. component%core%needs_mcset ()) then
            i_mci = i_mci + 1
            associate (mci_entry => process%mci_entry(i_mci))
                call mci_entry%init (process%meta%type, &
                    i_mci, i, component, process%beam_config, &
                    process%config%rng_factory)
            end associate
        end if
    end associate
end do
do i_mci = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
    call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%set_parameters (process%meta%var_list)
end do
end subroutine process_setup_mci

```

Set cuts. This is a parse node, namely the right-hand side of the `cut` assignment. When creating an instance, we compile this into an evaluation tree. The parse node may be null.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_cuts => process_set_cuts

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_set_cuts (process, pn_cuts)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_cuts
        process%config%pn_cuts => pn_cuts
    end subroutine process_set_cuts

```

Analogously for the other expressions.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_scale => process_set_scale
    procedure :: set_fac_scale => process_set_fac_scale
    procedure :: set_ren_scale => process_set_ren_scale
    procedure :: set_weight => process_set_weight

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_set_scale (process, pn_scale)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_scale
        process%config%pn_scale => pn_scale
    end subroutine process_set_scale

    subroutine process_set_fac_scale (process, pn_fac_scale)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_fac_scale
        process%config%pn_fac_scale => pn_fac_scale
    end subroutine process_set_fac_scale

    subroutine process_set_ren_scale (process, pn_ren_scale)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_ren_scale
        process%config%pn_ren_scale => pn_ren_scale
    end subroutine process_set_ren_scale

```



```

subroutine process_set_weight (process, pn_weight)
  class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_weight
  process%config%pn_weight => pn_weight
end subroutine process_set_weight

```

## MD5 sum

The MD5 sum of the process object should reflect the state completely, including integration results. It is used for checking the integrity of event files. This global checksum includes checksums for the various parts. In particular, the MCI object receives a checksum that includes the configuration of all configuration parts relevant for an individual integration. This checksum is used for checking the integrity of integration grids.

We do not need MD5 sums for the process terms, since these are generated from the component definitions.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_compute_md5sum

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_compute_md5sum (process)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    integer :: i
    call process%config%compute_md5sum ()
    do i = 1, process%config%n_components
      associate (component => process%component(i))
        if (component%active) then
          call component%compute_md5sum ()
        end if
      end associate
    end do
    call process%beam_config%compute_md5sum ()
    do i = 1, process%config%n_mci
      call process%mc_entry(i)%compute_md5sum &
        (process%config, process%component, process%beam_config)
    end do
  end subroutine process_compute_md5sum

```

## Integration and event generation

The sampler test should just evaluate the squared matrix element `n_calls` times, discarding the results, and return. This can be done before integration, e.g., for timing estimates.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: sampler_test => process_sampler_test

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_sampler_test (process, instance, i_mci, n_calls)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%sampler_test (instance, n_calls)
end subroutine process_sampler_test

```

Integrate the process, using a previously initialized process instance. We select one of the available MCI integrators by its index *i\_mci* and thus integrate over (structure functions and) phase space for the associated (group of) process component(s).

The finalizer should be called after all integration passes have been completed. It will, for instance, write a summary of the integration results.

*integrate\_dummy* does a “dummy” integration in the sense that nothing is done but just empty integration results appended.

```

(Processes: process: TBP) +=
  procedure :: integrate => process_integrate
  procedure :: final_integration => process_final_integration
  procedure :: integrate_dummy => process_integrate_dummy

(Processes: procedures) +=
  subroutine process_integrate (process, instance, i_mci, n_it, n_calls, &
    adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final, pacify)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_grids
    logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_weights
    logical, intent(in), optional :: final, pacify
    call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%integrate (instance, n_it, n_calls, &
      adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final, pacify)
  end subroutine process_integrate

  subroutine process_final_integration (process, i_mci)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%final_integration ()
  end subroutine process_final_integration

  subroutine process_integrate_dummy (process)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(integration_results_t) :: results
    integer :: u_log
    u_log = logfile_unit ()
    call results%init (process%meta%type)
    call results%display_init (process%meta%type, screen = .true., unit = u_log)
    call results%new_pass ()
    call results%record (1, 0, 0._default, 0._default, 0._default)
    call results%display_final ()
  end subroutine process_integrate_dummy

```

Display the final results for the sum of all components. (This is useful, obviously, only if there is more than one component.)

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+=
  procedure :: display_summed_results => process_display_summed_results

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_display_summed_results (process)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(integration_results_t) :: results
    integer :: u_log
    u_log = logfile_unit ()
    call results%init (process%meta%type)
    call results%display_init (process%meta%type, screen = .true., unit = u_log)
    call results%new_pass ()
    call results%record (1, 0, &
      process%get_integral (), &
      process%get_error (), &
      process%get_efficiency ())
    call results%display_final ()
  end subroutine process_display_summed_results

```

Run LaTeX/Metapost to generate a ps/pdf file for the integration history. We (re)write the driver file – just in case it has been missed before – then we compile it.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+=
  procedure :: display_integration_history => &
    process_display_integration_history

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_display_integration_history &
    (process, i_mci, filename, os_data, eff_reset)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: eff_reset
    call integration_results_write_driver &
      (process%mci_entry(i_mci)%results, filename, eff_reset)
    call integration_results_compile_driver &
      (process%mci_entry(i_mci)%results, filename, os_data)
  end subroutine process_display_integration_history

```

Write a complete logfile (with hardcoded name based on the process ID). We do not write internal data.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write_logfile => process_write_logfile

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_write_logfile (process, i_mci, filename)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    type(time_t) :: time
    integer :: unit, u
    unit = free_unit ()
    open (unit = unit, file = char (filename), action = "write", &

```

```

        status = "replace")
u = output_unit (unit)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
call process%meta%write (u, .false., .false.)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Integral   = ", &
    process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_integral ()
write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Error      = ", &
    process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_error ()
write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Accuracy   = ", &
    process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_accuracy ()
write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Chi2       = ", &
    process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_chi2 ()
write (u, "(3x,A,ES17.10)") "Efficiency = ", &
    process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_efficiency ()
call process%mc_entry(i_mci)%get_time (time, 10000)
if (time%is_known ()) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,A)") "T(10k evt) = ", char (time%to_string_dhms ())
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "T(10k evt) = [undefined]"
end if
call process%mc_entry(i_mci)%results%write (u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
call process%mc_entry(i_mci)%results%write_chain_weights (u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
call process%mc_entry(i_mci)%counter%write (u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
select type (mci => process%mc_entry(i_mci)%mci)
type is (mci_midpoint_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "MC Integrator is Midpoint rule"
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "MC Integrator is VAMP"
    call write_separator (u)
    call mci%write_history (u)
    call write_separator (u)
    if (mci%grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences) then
        call vamp_equivalences_write (mci%equivalences, u)
    else
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "No VAMP equivalences have been used"
    end if
    call write_separator (u)
    call process%mc_entry(i_mci)%write_chain_weights (u)
class default
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "MC Integrator: [unknown]"
end select
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
call process%beam_config%data%write (u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
if (associated (process%config%pn_cuts)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Cut expression:"
    call process%config%pn_cuts%write (u)
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "No cuts used."
end if

```

```

call write_separator (u)
if (associated (process%config%pn_scale)) then
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Scale expression:"
  call process%config%pn_scale%write (u)
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "No scale expression was given."
end if
call write_separator (u)
if (associated (process%config%pn_fac_scale)) then
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Factorization scale expression:"
  call process%config%pn_fac_scale%write (u)
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "No factorization scale expression was given."
end if
call write_separator (u)
if (associated (process%config%pn_ren_scale)) then
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Renormalization scale expression:"
  call process%config%pn_ren_scale%write (u)
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "No renormalization scale expression was given."
end if
call write_separator (u)
if (associated (process%config%pn_weight)) then
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Weight expression:"
  call process%config%pn_weight%write (u)
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "No weight expression was given."
end if
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Summary of quantum-number states:"
write (u, "(1x,A)") " + sign: allowed and contributing"
write (u, "(1x,A)") " no + : switched off at runtime"
call process%write_state_summary (u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
write (u, "(A)") "Variable list:"
call var_list_write (process%meta%var_list, u)
write (u, "(A)") repeat ("#", 79)
close (u)
end subroutine process_write_logfile

```

Display the quantum-number combinations of the process components, and their current status (allowed or switched off).

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_state_summary => process_write_state_summary

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_write_state_summary (process, unit)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: i, i_component, u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    do i = 1, size (process%term)
      call write_separator (u)

```

```

        i_component = process%term(i)%i_component
        if (i_component /= 0) then
            call process%term(i)%write_state_summary &
                (process%component(i_component)%core, unit)
        end if
    end do
end subroutine process_write_state_summary

```

Prepare event generation for the specified MCI entry. This implies, in particular, checking the phase-space file.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_simulation => process_prepare_simulation
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_prepare_simulation (process, i_mci)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%prepare_simulation ()
    end subroutine process_prepare_simulation

```

Generate a weighted event. We select one of the available MCI integrators by its index `i_mci` and thus generate an event for the associated (group of) process component(s). The arguments exactly correspond to the initializer and finalizer above.

The resulting event is stored in the `process_instance` object, which also holds the workspace of the integrator.

Note: The `process` object is declared `intent(inout)` because it contains the random-number state, which changes for each event. Otherwise, all volatile data are inside the `instance` object.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_weighted_event => process_generate_weighted_event
    procedure :: generate_unweighted_event => process_generate_unweighted_event
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_generate_weighted_event (process, instance, i_mci)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%generate_weighted_event (instance)
    end subroutine process_generate_weighted_event

    subroutine process_generate_unweighted_event (process, instance, i_mci)
        class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
        type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        call process%mci_entry(i_mci)%generate_unweighted_event (instance)
    end subroutine process_generate_unweighted_event

```

This replaces the event generation methods for the situation that the process instance object has been filled by other means (i.e., reading and/or recalculating its contents). We just have to fill in missing MCI data, especially the event weight.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: recover_event => process_recover_event
  <Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_recover_event (process, instance, i_term)
      class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
      type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      integer, intent(in) :: i_term
      call process%mci_entry(instance%i_mci)%recover_event (instance, i_term)
    end subroutine process_recover_event

```

## Retrieve process data

Tell whether integral (and error) are known.

```

  <Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    generic :: has_integral => has_integral_tot, has_integral_mci
    procedure :: has_integral_tot => process_has_integral_tot
    procedure :: has_integral_mci => process_has_integral_mci

  <Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_has_integral_mci (process, i_mci) result (flag)
      class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
      integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
      logical :: flag
      flag = process%mci_entry(i_mci)%has_integral ()
    end function process_has_integral_mci

    function process_has_integral_tot (process) result (flag)
      class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
      logical :: flag
      integer :: i
      flag = .true.
      do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
        flag = flag .and. process%mci_entry(i)%has_integral ()
      end do
    end function process_has_integral_tot

```

Return the current integral and error obtained by the integrator *i\_mci*.

```

  <Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    generic :: get_integral => get_integral_tot, get_integral_mci
    generic :: get_error => get_error_tot, get_error_mci
    generic :: get_efficiency => get_efficiency_tot, get_efficiency_mci
    procedure :: get_integral_tot => process_get_integral_tot
    procedure :: get_integral_mci => process_get_integral_mci
    procedure :: get_error_tot => process_get_error_tot
    procedure :: get_error_mci => process_get_error_mci
    procedure :: get_efficiency_tot => process_get_efficiency_tot
    procedure :: get_efficiency_mci => process_get_efficiency_mci

  <Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_integral_mci (process, i_mci) result (integral)
      class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
      integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
      real(default) :: integral

```

```

        integral = process%mci_entry(i_mci)%get_integral ()
    end function process_get_integral_mci

function process_get_error_mci (process, i_mci) result (error)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    real(default) :: error
    error = process%mci_entry(i_mci)%get_error ()
end function process_get_error_mci

function process_get_efficiency_mci (process, i_mci) result (efficiency)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    real(default) :: efficiency
    efficiency = process%mci_entry(i_mci)%get_efficiency ()
end function process_get_efficiency_mci

function process_get_integral_tot (process) result (integral)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    real(default) :: integral
    integer :: i
    integral = 0
    do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
        integral = integral + process%mci_entry(i)%get_integral ()
    end do
end function process_get_integral_tot

function process_get_error_tot (process) result (error)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    real(default) :: error
    real(default) :: variance
    integer :: i
    variance = 0
    do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
        variance = variance + process%mci_entry(i)%get_error () ** 2
    end do
    error = sqrt (variance)
end function process_get_error_tot

function process_get_efficiency_tot (process) result (efficiency)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    real(default) :: efficiency
    real(default) :: den, eff, int
    integer :: i
    den = 0
    do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
        int = process%get_integral (i)
        if (int > 0) then
            eff = process%mci_entry(i)%get_efficiency ()
            if (eff > 0) then
                den = den + int / eff
            else
                efficiency = 0
                return
            end if
        end if
    end do
end function process_get_efficiency_tot

```



```

        end if
    end if
end do
if (den > 0) then
    efficiency = process%get_integral () / den
else
    efficiency = 0
end if
end function process_get_efficiency_tot

```

Return the MD5 sums that summarize the process component definitions. These values should be independent of parameters, beam details, expressions, etc. They can be used for checking the integrity of a process when reusing an old event file.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum_prc => process_get_md5sum_prc

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_md5sum_prc (process, i_component) result (md5sum)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: i_component
        character(32) :: md5sum
        if (process%component(i_component)%active) then
            md5sum = process%component(i_component)%config%get_md5sum ()
        else
            md5sum = ""
        end if
    end function process_get_md5sum_prc

```

Return the MD5 sums that summarize the state of the MCI integrators. These values should encode all process data, integration and phase space configuration, etc., and the integration results. They can thus be used for checking the integrity of an event-generation setup when reusing an old event file.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum_mci => process_get_md5sum_mci

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_md5sum_mci (process, i_mci) result (md5sum)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        character(32) :: md5sum
        md5sum = process%mci_entry(i_mci)%get_md5sum ()
    end function process_get_md5sum_mci

```

Return the MD5 sum of the process configuration. This should encode the process setup, data, and expressions, but no integration results.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum_cfg => process_get_md5sum_cfg

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_md5sum_cfg (process) result (md5sum)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        character(32) :: md5sum

```

```

md5sum = process%config%md5sum
end function process_get_md5sum_cfg

```

### 15.5.2 Metadata

This information describes the process and its environment. It is fixed upon initialization.

The `id` string is the name of the process object, as given by the user. The matrix element generator will use this string for naming Fortran procedures and types, so it should qualify as a Fortran name.

The `num_id` is meaningful if nonzero. It is used for communication with external programs or file standards which do not support string IDs.

The `run_id` string distinguishes among several runs for the same process. It identifies process instances with respect to adapted integration grids and similar run-specific data. The run ID is kept when copying processes for creating instances, however, so it does not distinguish event samples.

The `var_list` is a snapshot of the variable list, taken at the point where the process was initialized.

The `lib` pointer accesses the process library where the process definition and the process driver are located.

The `lib_index` is the index of entry in the process library that corresponds to the current process.

The `component_id` array identifies the individual process components.

The `component_description` is an array of human-readable strings that characterize the process components, for instance `a, b => c, d`.

The `active` mask array marks those components which are active. The others are skipped.

```

<Processes: process part types>≡
  type :: process_metadata_t
    private
    integer :: type = PRC_UNKNOWN
    type(string_t) :: id
    integer :: num_id = 0
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(var_list_t) :: var_list
    type(process_library_t), pointer :: lib => null ()
    integer :: lib_index = 0
    integer :: n_components = 0
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: component_id
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: component_description
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: active
  contains
    <Processes: process metadata: TBP>
  end type process_metadata_t

```

The local var list is a snapshot and needs a finalizer.

```

<Processes: process metadata: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => process_metadata_final

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_metadata_final (meta)
    class(process_metadata_t), intent(inout) :: meta
    call var_list_final (meta%var_list, follow_link=.true.)
  end subroutine process_metadata_final

```

Output: ID and run ID. We write the variable list only upon request.

```

<Processes: process metadata: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => process_metadata_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_metadata_write (meta, u, var_list, screen)
    class(process_metadata_t), intent(in) :: meta
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    logical, intent(in) :: var_list, screen
    integer :: i
    select case (meta%type)
    case (PRC_UNKNOWN)
      if (screen) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(A)") "Process [undefined]"
      else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process [undefined]"
      end if
      return
    case (PRC_DECAY)
      if (screen) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,A,A,A)") "Process [decay]:", &
          "'", char (meta%id), "'"
      else
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Process [decay]:"
      end if
    case (PRC_SCATTERING)
      if (screen) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,A,A,A)") "Process [scattering]:", &
          "'", char (meta%id), "'"
      else
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Process [scattering]:"
      end if
    case default
      call msg_bug ("process_write: undefined process type")
    end select
    if (screen) then
      call msg_message ()
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "'", char (meta%id), "'"
    end if
    if (meta%num_id /= 0) then
      if (screen) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A,I0)") "ID (num)      = ", meta%num_id
        call msg_message ()
      else
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "ID (num)      = ", meta%num_id
      end if
    end if
  end if

```

```

if (screen) then
  if (meta%run_id /= "") then
    write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A,A,A)") "Run ID          = ', &
      char (meta%run_id), "'
    call msg_message ()
  end if
else
  write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Run ID          = ', char (meta%run_id), "'
end if
if (associated (meta%lib)) then
  if (screen) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A,A,A)") "Library name = ', &
      char (meta%lib%get_name ()), "'
    call msg_message ()
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Library name = ', &
      char (meta%lib%get_name ()), "'
  end if
else
  if (screen) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A)") "Library name = [not associated]"
    call msg_message ()
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Library name = [not associated]"
  end if
end if
if (screen) then
  write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A,I0)") "Process index = ", meta%lib_index
  call msg_message ()
else
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Process index = ", meta%lib_index
end if
if (allocated (meta%component_id)) then
  if (screen) then
    if (any (meta%active)) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A)") "Process components:"
    else
      write (msg_buffer, "(2x,A)") "Process components: [none]"
    end if
    call msg_message ()
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Process components:"
  end if
  do i = 1, size (meta%component_id)
    if (.not. meta%active(i)) cycle
    if (screen) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(4x,I0,9A)") i, ": ', &
        char (meta%component_id (i)), "': ", &
        char (meta%component_description (i))
      call msg_message ()
    else
      write (u, "(5x,I0,9A)") i, ": ', &
        char (meta%component_id (i)), "': ", &
        char (meta%component_description (i))
    end if
  end do
end if

```

```

        end if
    end do
end if
if (screen) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A)") repeat ("-", 72)
    call msg_message ()
else
    call write_separator (u)
end if
if (screen) return
if (var_list) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Variable list:"
    call write_separator (u)
    call var_list_write (meta%var_list, u)
else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Variable list: [not shown]"
end if
end subroutine process_metadata_write

```

Short output: list components.

*(Processes: process metadata: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: show => process_metadata_show
```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_metadata_show (meta, u, model_name)
class(process_metadata_t), intent(in) :: meta
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
integer :: i
select case (meta%type)
case (PRC_UNKNOWN)
    write (u, "(A)") "Process: [undefined]"
    return
case default
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Process:"
end select
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (meta%id)
select case (meta%num_id)
case (0)
case default
    write (u, "(1x,'(,IO,')')", advance="no") meta%num_id
end select
select case (char (model_name))
case ("")
case default
    write (u, "(1x,[',A,']')", advance="no") char (model_name)
end select
write (u, *)
if (allocated (meta%component_id)) then
    do i = 1, size (meta%component_id)
        if (meta%active(i)) then
            write (u, "(2x,IO,':',1x,A)" i, &
                    char (meta%component_description (i))
            end if
        end if
    end do
end if

```

```

        end do
    end if
end subroutine process_metadata_show

```

Initialize.

```

<Processes: process metadata: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => process_metadata_init

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_metadata_init (meta, id, run_id, lib)
        class(process_metadata_t), intent(out) :: meta
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: run_id
        type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib
        select case (lib%get_n_in (id))
        case (1); meta%type = PRC_DECAY
        case (2); meta%type = PRC_SCATTERING
        case default
            call msg_bug ("Process '" // char (id) // "': impossible n_in")
        end select
        meta%id = id
        meta%run_id = run_id
        meta%lib => lib
        meta%lib_index = lib%get_entry_index (id)
        meta%num_id = lib%get_num_id (id)
        call lib%get_component_list (id, meta%component_id)
        meta%n_components = size (meta%component_id)
        call lib%get_component_description_list (id, meta%component_description)
        allocate (meta%active (meta%n_components), source = .true.)
    end subroutine process_metadata_init

```

Mark a component as inactive.

```

<Processes: process metadata: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: deactivate_component => process_metadata_deactivate_component

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_metadata_deactivate_component (meta, i)
        class(process_metadata_t), intent(inout) :: meta
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        call msg_message ("Process component '" &
            // char (meta%component_id(i)) // "': matrix element vanishes")
        meta%active(i) = .false.
    end subroutine process_metadata_deactivate_component

```

### 15.5.3 Generic Configuration Data

This information concerns physical and technical properties of the process. It is fixed upon initialization, using data from the process specification and the variable list.

The number `n_in` is the number of incoming beam particles, simultaneously the number of incoming partons, 1 for a decay and 2 for a scattering process. (The number of outgoing partons may depend on the process component.)

The number `n_components` is the number of components that constitute the current process.

The number `n_terms` is the number of distinct contributions to the scattering matrix that constitute the current process. Each component may generate several terms.

The number `n_mci` is the number of independent MC integration configurations that this process uses. Distinct process components that share a MCI configuration may be combined pointwise. (Nevertheless, a given MC variable set may correspond to several “nearby” kinematical configurations.) This is also the number of distinct sampling-function results that this process can generate. Process components that use distinct variable sets are added only once after an integration pass has completed.

The `model` pointer identifies the physics model and its parameters. This is a pointer to an external object.

The `rng_factory` component spawns independent random-number generators for use in integration, event generation, and event postprocessing.

Various `parse_node_t` objects are taken from the SINDARIN input. They encode expressions for evaluating cuts and scales. The workspaces for evaluating those expressions are set up in the `effective_state` subobjects. Note that these are really pointers, so the actual nodes are not stored inside the process object.

The `md5sum` is taken and used to verify the process configuration when re-reading data from file.

```

<Processes: process part types>+=
  type :: process_config_data_t
    private
      integer :: n_in = 0
      integer :: n_components = 0
      integer :: n_terms = 0
      integer :: n_mci = 0
      type(os_data_t) :: os_data
      class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
      type(string_t) :: model_name
      type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
      type(qcd_t) :: qcd
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_cuts => null ()
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_scale => null ()
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_fac_scale => null ()
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_ren_scale => null ()
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_weight => null ()
      character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    contains
      <Processes: process config data: TBP>
  end type process_config_data_t

```

Here, we may compress the expressions for cuts etc.

```

<Processes: process config data: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => process_config_data_write

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_config_data_write (config, u, &
    counters, os_data, rng_factory, model, expressions)

```

```

class(process_config_data_t), intent(in) :: config
integer, intent(in) :: u
logical, intent(in) :: counters
logical, intent(in) :: os_data
logical, intent(in) :: rng_factory
logical, intent(in) :: model
logical, intent(in) :: expressions
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Configuration data:"
if (counters) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of incoming particles = ", &
        config%n_in
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of process components = ", &
        config%n_components
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of process terms      = ", &
        config%n_terms
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of MCI configurations = ", &
        config%n_mci
end if
if (os_data) then
    call os_data_write (config%os_data, u)
end if
if (associated (config%model)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Model = ", char (config%model_name)
    if (model) then
        call write_separator (u)
        call config%model%write (u)
        call write_separator (u)
    end if
else
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Model = ", char (config%model_name), &
        " [not associated]"
end if
call config%qcd%write (u, show_md5sum = .false.)
if (rng_factory) then
    if (allocated (config%rng_factory)) then
        write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")
        call config%rng_factory%write (u)
    end if
end if
call write_separator (u)
if (expressions) then
    if (associated (config%pn_cuts)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Cut expression:"
        call config%pn_cuts%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (config%pn_scale)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Scale expression:"
        call config%pn_scale%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (config%pn_fac_scale)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Factorization scale expression:"
    end if
end if

```



```

        call config%pn_fac_scale%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (config%pn_ren_scale)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Renormalization scale expression:"
        call config%pn_ren_scale%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (config%pn_weight)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Weight expression:"
        call config%pn_weight%write (u)
    end if
else
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Expressions (cut, scales, weight): [not shown]"
end if
if (config%md5sum /= "") then
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (config) = '", config%md5sum, "'"
end if
end if
end subroutine process_config_data_write

```

Initialize. We use information from the process metadata and from the process library, given the process ID. We also store the currently active OS data set.

Using the model name that the library gives us, we try to load the model here. Reading from the global model library, we are sure that we are looking at the model associated to the process, not the selected one at the user level. However, when the mode names are the same, the models will be identical.

Instead of storing a model pointer, we create an instance which contains the current values of model parameters. The captured values are now disconnected from user-level changes and will stay for the lifetime of the process object. Allocating the model via a pointer guarantees the **target** attribute.

The RNG factory object is imported by moving the allocation.

```

<Processes: process config data: TBP>+=
    procedure :: init => process_config_data_init

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_config_data_init &
        (config, meta, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
        class(process_config_data_t), intent(out) :: config
        type(process_metadata_t), intent(in) :: meta
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        type(qcd_t), intent(in) :: qcd
        class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng_factory
        type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
        type(string_t) :: filename
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        config%n_in = meta%lib%get_n_in (meta%id)
        config%n_components = size (meta%component_id)
        config%os_data = os_data
        config%qcd = qcd
        call move_alloc (from = rng_factory, to = config%rng_factory)
        config%model_name = meta%lib%get_model_name (meta%id)
    end subroutine

```

```

    if (config%model_name /= "") then
        filename = config%model_name // ".mdl"
        call model_list%read_model (config%model_name, &
            filename, config%os_data, model)
        allocate (config%model)
        call model_init_instance (config%model, model)
    end if
end subroutine process_config_data_init

```

Since the captured model is a separate object allocated via a pointer, we need a finalizer.

```

<Processes: process config data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => process_config_data_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_config_data_final (config)
        class(process_config_data_t), intent(inout) :: config
        if (associated (config%model)) then
            call model_final (config%model)
            deallocate (config%model)
        end if
    end subroutine process_config_data_final

```

Compute the MD5 sum of the configuration data. This encodes, in particular, the model and the expressions for cut, scales, weight, etc. It should not contain the IDs and number of components, etc., since the MD5 sum should be useful for integrating individual components.

This is done only once. If the MD5 sum is nonempty, the calculation is skipped.

```

<Processes: process config data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_config_data_compute_md5sum

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_config_data_compute_md5sum (config)
        class(process_config_data_t), intent(inout) :: config
        integer :: u
        if (config%md5sum == "") then
            u = free_unit ()
            open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
            call config%write (u, counters = .false., os_data = .false., &
                rng_factory = .false., model = .true., expressions = .true.)
            rewind (u)
            config%md5sum = md5sum (u)
            close (u)
        end if
    end subroutine process_config_data_compute_md5sum

```

#### 15.5.4 Beam configuration

The object `data` holds all details about the initial beam configuration. The allocatable array `sf` holds the structure-function configuration blocks. There

are `n_strfun` entries in the structure-function chain (not counting the initial beam object). We maintain `n_channel` independent parameterizations of this chain. If this is greater than zero, we need a multi-channel sampling algorithm, where for each point one channel is selected to generate kinematics.

The number of parameters that are required for generating a structure-function chain is `n_sfpar`.

The flag `azimuthal_dependence` tells whether the process setup is symmetric about the beam axis in the c.m. system. This implies that there is no transversal beam polarization. The flag `lab_is_cm_frame` is obvious.

```

<Processes: process part types>+=
  type :: process_beam_config_t
    private
    type(beam_data_t) :: data
    integer :: n_strfun = 0
    integer :: n_channel = 1
    integer :: n_sfpar = 0
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf
    type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_channel
    logical :: azimuthal_dependence = .false.
    logical :: lab_is_cm_frame = .true.
    character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    logical :: sf_trace = .false.
    type(string_t) :: sf_trace_file
  contains
    <Processes: process beam config: TBP>
  end type process_beam_config_t

```

Here we write beam data only if they are actually used.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>=
  procedure :: write => process_beam_config_write

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_beam_config_write (object, u)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer :: i, c
    call object%data%write (u)
    if (object%data%initialized) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Azimuthal dependence      = ", &
        object%azimuthal_dependence
      write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Lab frame is c.m. frame = ", &
        object%lab_is_cm_frame
      if (object%md5sum /= "") then
        write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (beams/strf) = '", &
          object%md5sum, "'"
      end if
      if (allocated (object%sf)) then
        do i = 1, size (object%sf)
          call object%sf(i)%write (u)
        end do
        if (any_sf_channel_has_mapping (object%sf_channel)) then
          write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Structure-function mappings per channel:"
          do c = 1, object%n_channel

```

```

        write (u, "(3x,I0,':')", advance="no") c
        call object%sf_channel(c)%write (u)
    end do
end if
end if
end if
end subroutine process_beam_config_write

```

The beam data have a finalizer. We assume that there is none for the structure-function data.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => process_beam_config_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_final (object)
        class(process_beam_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
        call beam_data_final (object%data)
    end subroutine process_beam_config_final

```

Initialize the beam setup with a given beam structure object.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_beam_structure => process_beam_config_init_beam_structure

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_init_beam_structure &
        (beam_config, beam_structure, sqrts, model, decay_rest_frame)
        class(process_beam_config_t), intent(out) :: beam_config
        type(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
        logical, intent(in), optional :: decay_rest_frame
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        call beam_data_init_structure (beam_config%data, &
            beam_structure, sqrts, model, decay_rest_frame)
        beam_config%lab_is_cm_frame = beam_data_cm_frame (beam_config%data)
    end subroutine process_beam_config_init_beam_structure

```

Initialize the beam setup for a scattering process with specified flavor combination, other properties taken from the beam structure object (if any).

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_scattering => process_beam_config_init_scattering

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_init_scattering &
        (beam_config, flv_in, sqrts, beam_structure)
        class(process_beam_config_t), intent(out) :: beam_config
        type(flavor_t), dimension(2), intent(in) :: flv_in
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
        if (present (beam_structure)) then
            if (beam_structure%polarized ()) then
                call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_config%data, sqrts, flv_in, &
                    beam_structure%get_smatrix (), beam_structure%get_pol_f ())
            else

```

```

        call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_config%data, sqrts, flv_in)
    end if
else
    call beam_data_init_sqrts (beam_config%data, sqrts, flv_in)
end if
end subroutine process_beam_config_init_scattering

```

Initialize the beam setup for a decay process with specified flavor, other properties taken from the beam structure object (if present).

For a cascade decay, we set `rest_frame` to false, indicating a event-wise varying momentum. The beam data itself are initialized for the particle at rest.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_decay => process_beam_config_init_decay
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_init_decay &
        (beam_config, flv_in, rest_frame, beam_structure)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(out) :: beam_config
    type(flavor_t), dimension(1), intent(in) :: flv_in
    logical, intent(in), optional :: rest_frame
    type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
    if (present (beam_structure)) then
        if (beam_structure%polarized ()) then
            call beam_data_init_decay (beam_config%data, flv_in, &
                beam_structure%get_smatrix (), beam_structure%get_pol_f (), &
                rest_frame = rest_frame)
        else
            call beam_data_init_decay (beam_config%data, flv_in, &
                rest_frame = rest_frame)
        end if
    else
        call beam_data_init_decay (beam_config%data, flv_in, &
            rest_frame = rest_frame)
    end if
    beam_config%lab_is_cm_frame = beam_data_cm_frame (beam_config%data)
end subroutine process_beam_config_init_decay

```

Print an informative message.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: startup_message => process_beam_config_startup_message
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_startup_message &
        (beam_config, unit, beam_structure)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(beam_structure_t), intent(in), optional :: beam_structure
    integer :: u
    u = free_unit ()
    open (u, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
    if (present (beam_structure)) then
        call beam_structure%write (u)
    end if
    call beam_data_write (beam_config%data, u)

```

```

rewind (u)
do
  read (u, "(1x,A)", end=1) msg_buffer
  call msg_message ()
end do
1 continue
close (u)
end subroutine process_beam_config_startup_message

```

Allocate the structure-function array.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_sf_chain => process_beam_config_init_sf_chain
<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_beam_config_init_sf_chain &
    (beam_config, sf_config, sf_trace_file)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(inout) :: beam_config
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: sf_config
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: sf_trace_file
    integer :: i
    beam_config%n_strfun = size (sf_config)
    allocate (beam_config%sf (beam_config%n_strfun))
    do i = 1, beam_config%n_strfun
      associate (sf => sf_config(i))
        call beam_config%sf(i)%init (sf%i, sf%data)
        if (.not. sf%data%is_generator ()) then
          beam_config%n_sfpar = beam_config%n_sfpar + sf%data%get_n_par ()
        end if
      end associate
    end do
    if (present (sf_trace_file)) then
      beam_config%sf_trace = .true.
      beam_config%sf_trace_file = sf_trace_file
    end if
  end subroutine process_beam_config_init_sf_chain

```

Allocate the structure-function mapping channel array, given the requested number of channels.

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_sf_channels => process_beam_config_allocate_sf_channels
<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_beam_config_allocate_sf_channels (beam_config, n_channel)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(inout) :: beam_config
    integer, intent(in) :: n_channel
    beam_config%n_channel = n_channel
    call allocate_sf_channels (beam_config%sf_channel, &
      n_channel = n_channel, &
      n_strfun = beam_config%n_strfun)
  end subroutine process_beam_config_allocate_sf_channels

```

Set a structure-function mapping channel for an array of structure-function entries, for a single channel. (The default is no mapping.)

```

<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: set_sf_channel => process_beam_config_set_sf_channel
  (Processes: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_set_sf_channel (beam_config, c, sf_channel)
      class(process_beam_config_t), intent(inout) :: beam_config
      integer, intent(in) :: c
      type(sf_channel_t), intent(in) :: sf_channel
      beam_config%sf_channel(c) = sf_channel
    end subroutine process_beam_config_set_sf_channel

```

Print an informative startup message.

```

  (Processes: process beam config: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: sf_startup_message => process_beam_config_sf_startup_message
  (Processes: procedures)+≡
    subroutine process_beam_config_sf_startup_message &
      (beam_config, sf_string, unit)
      class(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: sf_string
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      if (beam_config%n_strfun > 0) then
        call msg_message ("Beam structure: " // char (sf_string), unit = unit)
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,3(1x,I0,1x,A))") &
          "Beam structure:", &
          beam_config%n_channel, "channels,", &
          beam_config%n_sfpar, "dimensions"
        call msg_message (unit = unit)
        if (beam_config%sf_trace) then
          call msg_message ("Beam structure: tracing &
            &values in '" // char (beam_config%sf_trace_file) // "'")
        end if
      end if
    end subroutine process_beam_config_sf_startup_message

```

Return the PDF set currently in use, if any. This should be unique, so we scan the structure functions until we get a nonzero number.

(This implies that if the PDF set is not unique (e.g., proton and photon structure used together), this doesn't work correctly.)

```

  (Processes: process beam config: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: get_pdf_set => process_beam_config_get_pdf_set
  (Processes: procedures)+≡
    function process_beam_config_get_pdf_set (beam_config) result (pdf_set)
      class(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
      integer :: pdf_set
      integer :: i
      if (allocated (beam_config%sf)) then
        do i = 1, size (beam_config%sf)
          pdf_set = beam_config%sf(i)%get_pdf_set ()
          if (pdf_set /= 0) return
        end do
      else
        pdf_set = 0
      end if
    end function

```

```
end function process_beam_config_get_pdf_set
```

Compute the MD5 sum for the complete beam setup. We rely on the default output of `write` to contain all relevant data.

This is done only once, when the MD5 sum is still empty.

```
<Processes: process beam config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_beam_config_compute_md5sum

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_beam_config_compute_md5sum (beam_config)
    class(process_beam_config_t), intent(inout) :: beam_config
    integer :: u
    if (beam_config%md5sum == "") then
      u = free_unit ()
      open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
      call beam_config%write (u)
      rewind (u)
      beam_config%md5sum = md5sum (u)
      close (u)
    end if
  end subroutine process_beam_config_compute_md5sum
```

## Process call statistics

This object can record process calls, categorized by evaluation status. It is a part of the `mci_entry` component below.

```
<Processes: types>≡
  type :: process_counter_t
    integer :: total = 0
    integer :: failed_kinematics = 0
    integer :: failed_cuts = 0
    integer :: passed = 0
    integer :: evaluated = 0
    integer :: complete = 0
  contains
    <Processes: process counter: TBP>
  end type process_counter_t
```

Here are the corresponding numeric codes:

```
<Processes: parameters>≡
  integer, parameter :: STAT_UNDEFINED = 0
  integer, parameter :: STAT_INITIAL = 1
  integer, parameter :: STAT_ACTIVATED = 2
  integer, parameter :: STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA = 3
  integer, parameter :: STAT_FAILED_KINEMATICS = 4
  integer, parameter :: STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS = 5
  integer, parameter :: STAT_HARD_KINEMATICS = 6
  integer, parameter :: STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS = 7
  integer, parameter :: STAT_FAILED_CUTS = 8
  integer, parameter :: STAT_PASSED_CUTS = 9
  integer, parameter :: STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE = 10
```



```
integer, parameter :: STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE = 11
```

Output.

```
<Processes: process counter: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => process_counter_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_counter_write (object, unit)
    class(process_counter_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (object%total > 0) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Call statistics (current run):"
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "total          = ", object%total
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "failed kin. = ", object%failed_kinematics
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "failed cuts = ", object%failed_cuts
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "passed cuts = ", object%passed
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "evaluated  = ", object%evaluated
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Call statistics (current run): [no calls]"
    end if
  end subroutine process_counter_write
```

Reset. Just enforce default initialization.

```
<Processes: process counter: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset => process_counter_reset

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_counter_reset (counter)
    class(process_counter_t), intent(out) :: counter
  end subroutine process_counter_reset
```

We record an event according to the lowest status code greater or equal to the actual status. This is actually done by the process instance; the process object just copies the instance counter.

```
<Processes: process counter: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record => process_counter_record

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_counter_record (counter, status)
    class(process_counter_t), intent(inout) :: counter
    integer, intent(in) :: status
    if (status <= STAT_FAILED_KINEMATICS) then
      counter%failed_kinematics = counter%failed_kinematics + 1
    else if (status <= STAT_FAILED_CUTS) then
      counter%failed_cuts = counter%failed_cuts + 1
    else if (status <= STAT_PASSED_CUTS) then
      counter%passed = counter%passed + 1
    else
      counter%evaluated = counter%evaluated + 1
    end if
    counter%total = counter%total + 1
  end subroutine process_counter_record
```

### 15.5.5 Multi-channel integration

The `process_mci_entry_t` block contains, for each process component that is integrated independently, the configuration data for its MC input parameters. Each input parameter set is handled by a `mci_t` integrator.

The MC input parameter set is broken down into the parameters required by the structure-function chain and the parameters required by the phase space of the elementary process.

The MD5 sum collects all information about the associated processes that may affect the integration. It does not contain the MCI object itself or integration results.

MC integration is organized in passes. Each pass may consist of several iterations, and for each iteration there is a number of calls. We store explicitly the values that apply to the current pass. Previous values are archived in the `results` object.

The `counter` receives the counter statistics from the associated process instance, for diagnostics.

The `results` object records results, broken down in passes and iterations.

```

<Processes: process part types>+=
  type :: process_mci_entry_t
    integer :: i_mci = 0
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_component
    integer :: process_type = PRC_UNKNOWN
    integer :: n_par = 0
    integer :: n_par_sf = 0
    integer :: n_par_phs = 0
    character(32) :: md5sum = ""
    integer :: pass = 0
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    logical :: activate_timer = .false.
    real(default) :: error_threshold = 0
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci
    type(process_counter_t) :: counter
    type(integration_results_t) :: results
  contains
    <Processes: process mci entry: TBP>
  end type process_mci_entry_t

```

Finalizer for the `mci` component.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>=
  procedure :: final => process_mci_entry_final

<Processes: procedures>+=
  subroutine process_mci_entry_final (object)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%mci)) call object%mci%final ()
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_final

```

Output. Write pass/iteration information only if set (the pass index is nonzero). Write the MCI block only if it exists (for some self-tests it does not). Write results only if there are any.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => process_mci_entry_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_write (object, unit, pacify)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Associated components = ", object%i_component
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MC input parameters   = ", object%n_par
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MC parameters (SF)    = ", object%n_par_sf
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MC parameters (PHS)   = ", object%n_par_phs
    if (object%pass > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Current pass          = ", object%pass
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of iterations  = ", object%n_it
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of calls       = ", object%n_calls
    end if
    if (object%md5sum /= "") then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (components) = '", object%md5sum, "'"
    end if
    if (allocated (object%mci)) then
      call object%mci%write (u)
    end if
    call object%counter%write (u)
    if (object%results%exist ()) then
      call object%results%write (u, suppress = pacify)
      call object%results%write_chain_weights (u)
    end if
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_write

```

Write the weights that are assigned to the chains of channels (call groves in the wood phase-space implementation. This depends on the implementation and is delegated to the mci component.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_chain_weights => process_mci_entry_write_chain_weights

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_write_chain_weights (mci_entry, unit)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    if (allocated (mci_entry%mci)) then
      call mci_entry%mci%write_chain_weights (unit)
    end if
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_write_chain_weights

```

Initialize. From the existing configuration, we obtain the number of channels and the number of parameters, separately for the structure-function chain and for the associated process component. We assume that the phase-space object has already been configured.

The allocation of the MCI integrator with the appropriate concrete type is the duty of the process core.

We assume that there is only one component associated with a MCI entry. This restriction should be relaxed.

```

(Processes: process mci entry: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init => process_mci_entry_init

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_init (mci_entry, &
    process_type, i_mci, i_component, component, beam_config, rng_factory)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(out) :: mci_entry
    integer, intent(in) :: process_type
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    type(process_component_t), intent(in), target :: component
    type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
    class(rng_factory_t), intent(inout) :: rng_factory
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    associate (phs_config => component%phs_config)
      mci_entry%i_mci = i_mci
      allocate (mci_entry%i_component (1))
      mci_entry%i_component(1) = i_component
      mci_entry%n_par_sf = beam_config%n_sfpar
      mci_entry%n_par_phs = phs_config%get_n_par ()
      mci_entry%n_par = mci_entry%n_par_sf + mci_entry%n_par_phs
      mci_entry%process_type = process_type
      if (allocated (component%mci_template)) then
        allocate (mci_entry%mci, source=component%mci_template)
        call mci_entry%mci%record_index (mci_entry%i_mci)
        call mci_entry%mci%set_dimensions &
          (mci_entry%n_par, phs_config%get_n_channel ())
        call mci_entry%mci%declare_flat_dimensions &
          (phs_config%get_flat_dimensions ())
        if (phs_config%provides_equivalences) then
          call mci_entry%mci%declare_equivalences &
            (phs_config%channel, mci_entry%n_par_sf)
        end if
        if (phs_config%provides_chains) then
          call mci_entry%mci%declare_chains (phs_config%chain)
        end if
        call rng_factory%make (rng)
        call mci_entry%mci%import_rng (rng)
      end if
    end associate
    call mci_entry%results%init (process_type)
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_init

```

Set some additional parameters.

```

(Processes: process mci entry: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_parameters => process_mci_entry_set_parameters

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_set_parameters (mci_entry, var_list)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry

```

```

type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
real(default) :: error_threshold
error_threshold = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("error_threshold"))
mci_entry%activate_timer = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"))
call mci_entry%results%set_error_threshold (error_threshold)
end subroutine process_mci_entry_set_parameters

```

Compute a MD5 sum that summarizes all information that could influence integration results, for the associated process components. We take the process-configuration MD5 sum which represents parameters, cuts, etc., the MD5 sums for the process component definitions and their phase space objects (which should be configured), and the beam configuration MD5 sum. (The QCD setup is included in the process configuration data MD5 sum.)

Done only once, when the MD5 sum is still empty.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_mci_entry_compute_md5sum

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_mci_entry_compute_md5sum (mci_entry, &
        config, component, beam_config)
        class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
        type(process_config_data_t), intent(in) :: config
        type(process_component_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: component
        type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
        type(string_t) :: buffer
        integer :: i
        if (mci_entry%md5sum == "") then
            buffer = config%md5sum // beam_config%md5sum
            do i = 1, size (component)
                if (component(i)%active) then
                    buffer = buffer // component(i)%config%get_md5sum () &
                        // component(i)%md5sum_phs
                end if
            end do
            mci_entry%md5sum = md5sum (char (buffer))
        end if
        if (allocated (mci_entry%pci)) then
            call mci_entry%pci%set_md5sum (mci_entry%md5sum)
        end if
    end subroutine process_mci_entry_compute_md5sum

```

Test the MCI sampler by calling it a given number of time, discarding the results. The instance should be initialized.

The `mci_entry` is `intent(inout)` because the integrator contains the random-number state.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: sampler_test => process_mci_entry_sampler_test

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_mci_entry_sampler_test (mci_entry, instance, n_calls)
        class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry

```

```

type(process_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
call instance%choose_mci (mci_entry%i_mci)
call instance%reset_counter ()
call mci_entry%mci%sampler_test (instance, n_calls)
mci_entry%counter = instance%get_counter ()
end subroutine process_mci_entry_sampler_test

```

Integrate. The instance should be initialized.

The `integrate` method counts as an integration pass; the pass count is increased by one. We transfer the pass parameters (number of iterations and number of calls) to the actual integration routine.

The `mci_entry` is `intent(inout)` because the integrator contains the random-number state.

Note: The results are written to screen and to logfile. This behavior is hardcoded.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: integrate => process_mci_entry_integrate
  procedure :: final_integration => process_mci_entry_final_integration

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_integrate (mci_entry, instance, n_it, n_calls, &
    adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final, pacify)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: n_it
    integer, intent(in) :: n_calls
    logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_grids
    logical, intent(in), optional :: adapt_weights
    logical, intent(in), optional :: final, pacify
    integer :: u_log
    u_log = logfile_unit ()
    call instance%choose_mci (mci_entry%i_mci)
    call instance%reset_counter ()
    mci_entry%pass = mci_entry%pass + 1
    mci_entry%n_it = n_it
    mci_entry%n_calls = n_calls
    if (mci_entry%pass == 1) &
      call mci_entry%mci%startup_message (n_calls = n_calls)
    call mci_entry%mci%set_timer (active = mci_entry%activate_timer)
    call mci_entry%results%display_init &
      (mci_entry%process_type, screen = .true., unit = u_log)
    call mci_entry%results%new_pass ()
    associate (mci_instance => instance%mci_work(mci_entry%i_mci)%mci)
      call mci_entry%mci%add_pass (adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final)
      call mci_entry%mci%start_timer ()
      call mci_entry%mci%integrate (mci_instance, instance, n_it, &
        n_calls, mci_entry%results, pacify = pacify)
      call mci_entry%mci%stop_timer ()
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end associate
    mci_entry%counter = instance%get_counter ()
    call mci_entry%results%display_pass (pacify)

```

```

end subroutine process_mci_entry_integrate

subroutine process_mci_entry_final_integration (mci_entry)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
  call mci_entry%results%display_final ()
  call mci_entry%time_message ()
end subroutine process_mci_entry_final_integration

```

If appropriate, issue an informative message about the expected time for an event sample.

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_time => process_mci_entry_get_time
  procedure :: time_message => process_mci_entry_time_message

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_get_time (mci_entry, time, sample)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
    type(time_t), intent(out) :: time
    integer, intent(in) :: sample
    real(default) :: time_last_pass, efficiency, calls
    time_last_pass = mci_entry%mci%get_time ()
    calls = mci_entry%results%get_n_calls ()
    efficiency = mci_entry%mci%get_efficiency ()
    if (time_last_pass > 0 .and. calls > 0 .and. efficiency > 0) then
      time = nint (time_last_pass / calls / efficiency * sample)
    end if
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_get_time

  subroutine process_mci_entry_time_message (mci_entry)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
    type(time_t) :: time
    integer :: sample
    sample = 10000
    call mci_entry%get_time (time, sample)
    if (time%is_known ()) then
      call msg_message ("Time estimate for generating 10000 events: " &
        // char (time%to_string_dhms ()))
    end if
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_time_message

```

Prepare event generation. (For the test integrator, this does nothing. It is relevant for the VAMP integrator.)

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: prepare_simulation => process_mci_entry_prepare_simulation

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_prepare_simulation (mci_entry)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
    call mci_entry%mci%prepare_simulation ()
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_prepare_simulation

```

Generate an event. The instance should be initialized, otherwise event generation is directed by the mci integrator subobject. The integrator instance

is contained in a `mci_work` subobject of the process instance, which simultaneously serves as the sampler object. (We avoid the anti-aliasing rules if we assume that the sampling itself does not involve the integrator instance contained in the process instance.)

Regarding weighted events, we only take events which are valid, which means that they have valid kinematics and have passed cuts. Therefore, we have a rejection loop. For unweighted events, the unweighting routine should already take care of this.

```

(Processes: process mci entry: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: generate_weighted_event => &
    process_mci_entry_generate_weighted_event
  procedure :: generate_unweighted_event => &
    process_mci_entry_generate_unweighted_event
  procedure :: recover_event => process_mci_entry_recover_event

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_mci_entry_generate_weighted_event (mci_entry, instance)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    call instance%choose_mci (mci_entry%i_mci)
    associate (mci_instance => instance%mci_work(mci_entry%i_mci)%mci)
      REJECTION: do
        call mci_entry%mci%generate_weighted_event (mci_instance, instance)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        if (instance%is_valid ()) exit REJECTION
      end do REJECTION
    end associate
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_generate_weighted_event

  subroutine process_mci_entry_generate_unweighted_event (mci_entry, instance)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    call instance%choose_mci (mci_entry%i_mci)
    associate (mci_instance => instance%mci_work(mci_entry%i_mci)%mci)
      call mci_entry%mci%generate_unweighted_event (mci_instance, instance)
    end associate
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_generate_unweighted_event

  subroutine process_mci_entry_recover_event (mci_entry, instance, i_term)
    class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(inout) :: mci_entry
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    integer :: channel
    mci_entry%i_mci = instance%i_mci
    channel = instance%get_channel ()
    associate (mci_instance => instance%mci_work(mci_entry%i_mci)%mci)
      call mci_instance%fetch (instance, channel)
    end associate
  end subroutine process_mci_entry_recover_event

```

Extract results.

```

(Processes: process mci entry: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: has_integral => process_mci_entry_has_integral

```



```

procedure :: get_integral => process_mci_entry_get_integral
procedure :: get_error => process_mci_entry_get_error
procedure :: get_accuracy => process_mci_entry_get_accuracy
procedure :: get_chi2 => process_mci_entry_get_chi2
procedure :: get_efficiency => process_mci_entry_get_efficiency

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_mci_entry_has_integral (mci_entry) result (flag)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  logical :: flag
  flag = mci_entry%results%exist ()
end function process_mci_entry_has_integral

function process_mci_entry_get_integral (mci_entry) result (integral)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  real(default) :: integral
  integral = mci_entry%results%get_integral ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_integral

function process_mci_entry_get_error (mci_entry) result (error)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  real(default) :: error
  error = mci_entry%results%get_error ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_error

function process_mci_entry_get_accuracy (mci_entry) result (accuracy)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  real(default) :: accuracy
  accuracy = mci_entry%results%get_accuracy ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_accuracy

function process_mci_entry_get_chi2 (mci_entry) result (chi2)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  real(default) :: chi2
  chi2 = mci_entry%results%get_chi2 ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_chi2

function process_mci_entry_get_efficiency (mci_entry) result (efficiency)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: mci_entry
  real(default) :: efficiency
  efficiency = mci_entry%results%get_efficiency ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_efficiency

```

Return the MCI checksum. This may be the one used for configuration, but may also incorporate results, if they change the state of the integrator (adaptation).

```

<Processes: process mci entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_md5sum => process_mci_entry_get_md5sum

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_mci_entry_get_md5sum (entry) result (md5sum)
  class(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in) :: entry
  character(32) :: md5sum
  md5sum = entry%mdci%get_md5sum ()
end function process_mci_entry_get_md5sum

```

### 15.5.6 Process Components

A process component is an individual contribution to a process (scattering or decay) which needs not be physical. The sum over all components should be physical.

The `index` identifies this component within its parent process.

The actual process component is stored in the `core` subobject. We use a polymorphic subobject instead of an extension of `process_component_t`, because the individual entries in the array of process components can have different types. In short, `process_component_t` is a wrapper for the actual process variants.

If the `active` flag is false, we should skip this component. This happens if the associated process has vanishing matrix element.

The index array `i_term` points to the individual terms generated by this component. The indices refer to the parent process.

The index `i_mci` is the index of the MC integrator and parameter set which are associated to this process component.

```

<Processes: process part types>+≡
  type :: process_component_t
    private
      type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config => null ()
      integer :: index = 0
      class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core
      logical :: active = .false.
      class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
      integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_term
      integer :: i_mci = 0
      class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config
      character(32) :: md5sum_phs = ""
    contains
      <Processes: process component: TBP>
    end type process_component_t

```

Finalizer. The MCI template may (potentially) need a finalizer. The process configuration finalizer may include closing an open scratch file.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => process_component_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_component_final (object)
    class(process_component_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%mci_template)) then
      call object%mci_template%final ()
    end if
    if (allocated (object%phs_config)) then
      call object%phs_config%final ()
    end if
  end subroutine process_component_final

```

The meaning of `verbose` depends on the process variant.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => process_component_write

```

*<Processes: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine process_component_write (object, unit)
  class(process_component_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  if (allocated (object%core)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Component #", object%index
    if (associated (object%config)) then
      call object%config%write (u)
      if (object%md5sum_phs /= "") then
        write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (phs)          = ', &
          object%md5sum_phs, "'
      end if
    end if
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process core:"
    call object%core%write (u)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process component: [not allocated]"
  end if
  if (.not. object%active) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "[Inactive]"
    return
  end if
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Referenced data:"
  if (allocated (object%i_term)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,999(1x,I0))") "Terms              =", &
      object%i_term
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Terms              = [undefined]"
  end if
  if (object%i_mci /= 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MC dataset              = ", object%i_mci
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "MC dataset              = [undefined]"
  end if
  if (allocated (object%phs_config)) then
    call object%phs_config%write (u)
  end if
end subroutine process_component_write

```

Initialize the component.

*<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡*

procedure :: init => process\_component\_init

*<Processes: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine process_component_init (component, &
  i_component, meta, config, &
  core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
  class(process_component_t), intent(out) :: component
  integer, intent(in) :: i_component
  type(process_metadata_t), intent(in) :: meta
  type(process_config_data_t), intent(in) :: config
  class(prc_core_t), intent(in), allocatable :: core_template

```

```

class(mci_t), intent(in), allocatable :: mci_template
class(phs_config_t), intent(in), allocatable :: phs_config_template
component%index = i_component
component%config => meta%lib%get_component_def_ptr (meta%id, i_component)
allocate (component%core, source=core_template)
call component%core%init (component%config%get_core_def_ptr (), &
    meta%lib, meta%id, i_component)
component%active = component%core%has_matrix_element ()
if (component%active) then
    if (allocated (mci_template)) &
        allocate (component%mci_template, source=mci_template)
    allocate (component%phs_config, source=phs_config_template)
    call component%phs_config%init (component%core%data, config%model)
end if
end subroutine process_component_init

```

Finalize the phase-space configuration.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: configure_phs => process_component_configure_phs
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_component_configure_phs &
        (component, sqrts, beam_config, rebuild, ignore_mismatch)
        class(process_component_t), intent(inout) :: component
        real(default), intent(in) :: sqrts
        type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
        logical, intent(in), optional :: rebuild
        logical, intent(in), optional :: ignore_mismatch
        logical :: no_strfun
        no_strfun = beam_config%n_strfun == 0
        call component%phs_config%configure (sqrts, &
            azimuthal_dependence = beam_config%azimuthal_dependence, &
            sqrts_fixed = no_strfun, &
            cm_frame = beam_config%lab_is_cm_frame .and. no_strfun, &
            rebuild = rebuild, ignore_mismatch = ignore_mismatch)
        call component%phs_config%startup_message ()
    end subroutine process_component_configure_phs

```

The process component possesses two MD5 sums: the checksum of the component definition, which should be available when the component is initialized, and the phase-space MD5 sum, which is available after configuration.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_md5sum => process_component_compute_md5sum
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_component_compute_md5sum (component)
        class(process_component_t), intent(inout) :: component
        component%md5sum_phs = component%phs_config%get_md5sum ()
    end subroutine process_component_compute_md5sum

```

Match phase-space channels with structure-function channels, where applicable.

This calls a method of the `phs_config` phase-space implementation.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: collect_channels => process_component_collect_channels

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_component_collect_channels (component, coll)
    class(process_component_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(inout) :: coll
    call component%phs_config%collect_channels (coll)
  end subroutine process_component_collect_channels

```

Return the number of phase-space parameters.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_phs_par => process_component_get_n_phs_par

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_component_get_n_phs_par (component) result (n_par)
    class(process_component_t), intent(in) :: component
    integer :: n_par
    n_par = component%phs_config%get_n_par ()
  end function process_component_get_n_phs_par

```

Return the incoming flavor combination as an array of PDG arrays, one for a decay or two for a scattering process.

```

<Processes: process component: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_pdg_in => process_component_get_pdg_in

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_component_get_pdg_in (component) result (pdg_in)
    class(process_component_t), intent(in) :: component
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_tmp
    integer :: i
    associate (data => component%core%data)
      allocate (pdg_in (data%n_in))
      do i = 1, data%n_in
        pdg_tmp = data%flv_state(i,:)
        pdg_in(i) = sort_abs (pdg_tmp, unique = .true.)
      end do
    end associate
  end function process_component_get_pdg_in

```

### 15.5.7 Process terms

For straightforward tree-level calculations, each process component corresponds to a unique elementary interaction. However, in the case of NLO calculations with subtraction terms, a process component may split into several separate contributions to the scattering, which are qualified by interactions with distinct kinematics and particle content. We represent their configuration as **process\_term\_t** objects, the actual instances will be introduced below as **term\_instance\_t**. In any case, the process term contains an elementary interaction with a definite quantum-number and momentum content.

The index **i\_term\_global** identifies the term relative to the process.

The index **i\_component** identifies the process component which generates this term, relative to the parent process.

The index `i_term` identifies the term relative to the process component (not the process).

The `data` subobject holds all process constants.

The number of allowed flavor/helicity/color combinations is stored as `n_allowed`. This is the total number of independent entries in the density matrix. For each combination, the index of the flavor, helicity, and color state is stored in the arrays `flv`, `hel`, and `col`, respectively.

The flag `rearrange` is true if we need to rearrange the particles of the hard interaction, to obtain the effective parton state.

The interaction `int` holds the quantum state for the (resolved) hard interaction, the parent-child relations of the particles, and their momenta. The momenta are not filled yet; this is postponed to copies of `int` which go into the process instances.

If recombination is in effect, we should allocate `int_eff` to describe the rearranged partonic state.

```

<Processes: process part types>+≡
  type :: process_term_t
    integer :: i_term_global = 0
    integer :: i_component = 0
    integer :: i_term = 0
    integer :: n_allowed = 0
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    real(default) :: alpha_s = 0
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: flv, hel, col
    logical :: rearrange = .false.
    type(interaction_t) :: int
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_eff => null ()
  contains
    <Processes: process term: TBP>
  end type process_term_t

```

For the output, we skip the process constants and the tables of allowed quantum numbers. Those can also be read off from the interaction object.

```

<Processes: process term: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => process_term_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_term_write (term, unit)
    class(process_term_t), intent(in) :: term
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Term #", term%i_term_global
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Process component index      = ", &
      term%i_component
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Term index w.r.t. component = ", &
      term%i_term
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Rearrange partons          = ", &
      term%rearrange
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Hard interaction:"
    call write_separator (u)

```

```

call interaction_write (term%int, u)
if (term%rearrange) then
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Rearranged hard interaction:"
  call write_separator (u)
  call interaction_write (term%int_eff, u)
end if
end subroutine process_term_write

```

Write an account of all quantum number states and their current status.

*(Processes: process term: TBP)+≡*

```

  procedure :: write_state_summary => process_term_write_state_summary

```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_term_write_state_summary (term, core, unit)
  class(process_term_t), intent(in) :: term
  class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i, f, h, c
  type(state_iterator_t) :: it
  character :: sgn
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Term #", term%i_term_global
  call state_iterator_init (it, interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (term%int))
  do while (state_iterator_is_valid (it))
    i = state_iterator_get_me_index (it)
    f = term%flv(i)
    h = term%hel(i)
    c = term%col(i)
    if (core%is_allowed (term%i_term, f, h, c)) then
      sgn = "+"
    else
      sgn = " "
    end if
    write (u, "(1x,A1,1x,I0,2x)", advance="no") sgn, i
    call quantum_numbers_write (state_iterator_get_quantum_numbers (it), u)
    write (u, *)
    call state_iterator_advance (it)
  end do
end subroutine process_term_write_state_summary

```

Finalizer: the int and potentially int\_eff components have a finalizer that we must call.

*(Processes: process term: TBP)+≡*

```

  procedure :: final => process_term_final

```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_term_final (term)
  class(process_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
  call interaction_final (term%int)
  if (term%rearrange) then
    call interaction_final (term%int_eff)
    deallocate (term%int_eff)
  end if
end subroutine process_term_final

```

```
end subroutine process_term_final
```

Initialize the term. We copy the process constants from the `core` object and set up the `int` hard interaction accordingly.

The `alpha_s` value is useful for writing external event records. This is the constant value which may be overridden by a event-specific running value. If the model does not contain the strong coupling, the value is zero.

The `rearrange` part is commented out; this or something equivalent could become relevant for NLO algorithms.

```
(Processes: process term: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init => process_term_init

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_term_init &
    (term, i_term_global, i_component, i_term, core, model)
    class(process_term_t), intent(inout), target :: term
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term_global
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    term%i_term_global = i_term_global
    term%i_component = i_component
    term%i_term = i_term
    call core%get_constants (term%data, i_term)
    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    if (var_list_exists (var_list, var_str ("alphas"))) then
      term%alpha_s = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("alphas"))
    else
      term%alpha_s = -1
    end if
    call term%setup_interaction (core, model)
!   if (term%rearrange) then
!     call term%setup_effective_interaction (core, term%int, term%int_eff)
!   end if
  end subroutine process_term_init
```

We fetch the process constants which determine the quantum numbers and use those to create the interaction. The interaction contains incoming and outgoing particles, no virtuals. The incoming particles are parents of the outgoing ones.

Keeping previous WHIZARD conventions, we invert the color assignment (but not flavor or helicity) for the incoming particles. When the color-flow square matrix is evaluated, this inversion is done again, so in the color-flow sequence we get the color assignments of the matrix element.

```
(Processes: process term: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_interaction => process_term_setup_interaction

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_term_setup_interaction (term, core, model)
    class(process_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
```



```

integer :: n_tot
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
type(color_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: col
type(helicity_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: hel
type(quantum_numbers_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn
integer :: i, n, f, h, c
associate (data => term%data)
    n_tot = data%n_in + data%n_out
    n = 0
    do f = 1, data%n_flv
        do h = 1, data%n_hel
            do c = 1, data%n_col
                if (core%is_allowed (term%i_term, f, h, c)) n = n + 1
            end do
        end do
    end do
    allocate (term%flv (n), term%col (n), term%hel (n))
    term%n_allowed = n
    allocate (flv (n_tot), col (n_tot), hel (n_tot))
    allocate (qn (n_tot))
    call interaction_init &
        (term%int, data%n_in, 0, data%n_out, set_relations=.true.)
    i = 0
    do f = 1, data%n_flv
        do h = 1, data%n_hel
            do c = 1, data%n_col
                if (core%is_allowed (term%i_term, f, h, c)) then
                    i = i + 1
                    term%flv(i) = f
                    term%hel(i) = h
                    term%col(i) = c
                    call flavor_init (flv, data%flv_state(:,f), model)
                    call color_init_from_array (col, data%col_state(:,c), &
                        data%ghost_flag(:,c))
                    call color_invert (col(:data%n_in))
                    call helicity_init (hel, data%hel_state(:,h))
                    call quantum_numbers_init (qn, flv, col, hel)
                    call interaction_add_state (term%int, qn)
                end if
            end do
        end do
    end do
    call interaction_freeze (term%int)
end associate
end subroutine process_term_setup_interaction

```

### 15.5.8 Default Iterations

If the user does not specify the passes and iterations for integration, we should be able to give reasonable defaults. These depend on the process, therefore we implement the following procedures as methods of the process object. The algorithm is not very sophisticated yet, it may be improved by looking at the

process in more detail.

We investigate only the first process component, assuming that it characterizes the complexity of the process reasonable well.

The number of passes is limited to two: one for adaption, one for integration.

```

(Processes: process: TBP) +=
  procedure :: get_n_pass_default => process_get_n_pass_default
  procedure :: adapt_grids_default => process_adapt_grids_default
  procedure :: adapt_weights_default => process_adapt_weights_default

(Processes: procedures) +=
  function process_get_n_pass_default (process) result (n_pass)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer :: n_pass
    integer :: n_eff
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
    config => process%component(1)%config
    n_eff = config%get_n_tot () - 2
    select case (n_eff)
    case (1)
      n_pass = 1
    case default
      n_pass = 2
    end select
  end function process_get_n_pass_default

  function process_adapt_grids_default (process, pass) result (flag)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: pass
    logical :: flag
    integer :: n_eff
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
    config => process%component(1)%config
    n_eff = config%get_n_tot () - 2
    select case (n_eff)
    case (1)
      flag = .false.
    case default
      select case (pass)
      case (1); flag = .true.
      case (2); flag = .false.
      case default
        call msg_bug ("adapt grids default: impossible pass index")
      end select
    end select
  end function process_adapt_grids_default

  function process_adapt_weights_default (process, pass) result (flag)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: pass
    logical :: flag
    integer :: n_eff
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
    config => process%component(1)%config
    n_eff = config%get_n_tot () - 2

```

```

select case (n_eff)
case (1)
    flag = .false.
case default
    select case (pass)
    case (1); flag = .true.
    case (2); flag = .false.
    case default
        call msg_bug ("adapt weights default: impossible pass index")
    end select
end select
end function process_adapt_weights_default

```

The number of iterations and calls per iteration depends on the number of outgoing particles.

*(Processes: process: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_n_it_default => process_get_n_it_default
procedure :: get_n_calls_default => process_get_n_calls_default

```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

function process_get_n_it_default (process, pass) result (n_it)
class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: pass
integer :: n_it
integer :: n_eff
type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
config => process%component(1)%config
n_eff = config%get_n_tot () - 2
select case (pass)
case (1)
    select case (n_eff)
    case (1); n_it = 1
    case (2); n_it = 3
    case (3); n_it = 5
    case (4:5); n_it = 10
    case (6); n_it = 15
    case (7:); n_it = 20
    end select
case (2)
    select case (n_eff)
    case (:3); n_it = 3
    case (4:); n_it = 5
    end select
end select
end function process_get_n_it_default

function process_get_n_calls_default (process, pass) result (n_calls)
class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: pass
integer :: n_calls
integer :: n_eff
type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
config => process%component(1)%config
n_eff = config%get_n_tot () - 2

```

```

select case (pass)
case (1)
  select case (n_eff)
  case (1); n_calls = 100
  case (2); n_calls = 1000
  case (3); n_calls = 5000
  case (4); n_calls = 10000
  case (5); n_calls = 20000
  case (6:); n_calls = 50000
  end select
case (2)
  select case (n_eff)
  case (:3); n_calls = 10000
  case (4); n_calls = 20000
  case (5); n_calls = 50000
  case (6); n_calls = 100000
  case (7:); n_calls = 200000
  end select
end select
end function process_get_n_calls_default

```

### 15.5.9 Constant process data

The following methods return basic process data that stay constant after initialization.

The process and IDs.

```

⟨Processes: process: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: get_id => process_get_id
  procedure :: get_num_id => process_get_num_id
  procedure :: get_run_id => process_get_run_id
  procedure :: get_library_name => process_get_library_name

⟨Processes: procedures⟩+≡
  function process_get_id (process) result (id)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    type(string_t) :: id
    id = process%meta%id
  end function process_get_id

  function process_get_num_id (process) result (id)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer :: id
    id = process%meta%num_id
  end function process_get_num_id

  function process_get_run_id (process) result (id)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    type(string_t) :: id
    id = process%meta%run_id
  end function process_get_run_id

  function process_get_library_name (process) result (id)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process

```

```

    type(string_t) :: id
    id = process%meta%lib%get_name ()
end function process_get_library_name

```

The number of incoming particles.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_in => process_get_n_in

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_n_in (process) result (n)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer :: n
        n = process%config%n_in
    end function process_get_n_in

```

The number of MCI data sets.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_mci => process_get_n_mci

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_n_mci (process) result (n)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer :: n
        n = process%config%n_mci
    end function process_get_n_mci

```

The number of process components, total.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_components => process_get_n_components

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_n_components (process) result (n)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer :: n
        n = process%meta%n_components
    end function process_get_n_components

```

The number of process terms, total.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_terms => process_get_n_terms

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_get_n_terms (process) result (n)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer :: n
        n = process%config%n_terms
    end function process_get_n_terms

```

Return the indices of the components that belong to a specific MCI entry.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_i_component => process_get_i_component

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_get_i_component (process, i_mci, i_component)
class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
integer, dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: i_component
associate (mci_entry => process%mci_entry(i_mci))
    allocate (i_component (size (mci_entry%i_component)))
    i_component = mci_entry%i_component
end associate
end subroutine process_get_i_component

```

Return the ID of a specific component.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_component_id => process_get_component_id

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_get_component_id (process, i_component) result (id)
class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: i_component
type(string_t) :: id
id = process%meta%component_id(i_component)
end function process_get_component_id

```

Return a pointer to the definition of a specific component.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
procedure :: get_component_def_ptr => process_get_component_def_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_get_component_def_ptr (process, i_component) result (ptr)
class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: i_component
type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: ptr
ptr => process%meta%lib%get_component_def_ptr (process%meta%id, i_component)
end function process_get_component_def_ptr

```

These procedures extract and restore (by transferring the allocation) the process core. This is useful for changing process parameters from outside this module.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
procedure :: extract_component_core => process_extract_component_core
procedure :: restore_component_core => process_restore_component_core

<Processes: procedures>+≡
subroutine process_extract_component_core (process, i_component, core)
class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: i_component
class(prc_core_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: core
call move_alloc (from = process%component(i_component)%core, to = core)
end subroutine process_extract_component_core

subroutine process_restore_component_core (process, i_component, core)
class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
integer, intent(in) :: i_component
class(prc_core_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: core

```

```

    call move_alloc (from = core, to = process%component(i_component)%core)
end subroutine process_restore_component_core

```

The block of process constants.

```

⟨Processes: process: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: get_constants => process_get_constants

⟨Processes: procedures⟩+≡
    function process_get_constants (process, i) result (data)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(process_constants_t) :: data
        data = process%component(i)%core%data
    end function process_get_constants

```

Return the set of outgoing flavors that are associated with a particular term. We deduce this from the effective interaction.

```

⟨Processes: process: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: get_term_flv_out => process_get_term_flv_out

⟨Processes: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine process_get_term_flv_out (process, i_term, flv)
        class(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable, intent(out) :: flv
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
        int => process%term(i_term)%int_eff
        if (.not. associated (int)) int => process%term(i_term)%int
        call interaction_get_flv_out (int, flv)
    end subroutine process_get_term_flv_out

```

Return true if there is any unstable particle in any of the process terms. We decide this based on the provided model instance, not the one that is stored in the process object.

```

⟨Processes: process: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: contains_unstable => process_contains_unstable

⟨Processes: procedures⟩+≡
    function process_contains_unstable (process, model) result (flag)
        class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        logical :: flag
        integer :: i_term
        type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv
        flag = .false.
        do i_term = 1, process%get_n_terms ()
            call process%get_term_flv_out (i_term, flv)
            call flavor_set_model (flv, model)
            flag = .not. all (flavor_is_stable (flv))
            deallocate (flv)
            if (flag) return
        end do
    end function process_contains_unstable

```

The nominal process energy.

```
<Processes: process: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: get_sqrts => process_get_sqrts  
  
<Processes: procedures>+≡  
  function process_get_sqrts (process) result (sqrts)  
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process  
    real(default) :: sqrts  
    sqrts = beam_data_get_sqrts (process%beam_config%data)  
  end function process_get_sqrts  
  
<Processes: process: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: has_matrix_element => process_has_matrix_element  
  
<Processes: procedures>+≡  
  function process_has_matrix_element (process, i) result (flag)  
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process  
    integer, intent(in), optional :: i  
    logical :: flag  
    if (present (i)) then  
      flag = process%component(i)%active  
    else  
      flag = any (process%component%active)  
    end if  
  end function process_has_matrix_element
```

Pointer to the beam data object.

```
<Processes: process: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: get_beam_data_ptr => process_get_beam_data_ptr  
  
<Processes: procedures>+≡  
  function process_get_beam_data_ptr (process) result (beam_data)  
    class(process_t), intent(in), target :: process  
    type(beam_data_t), pointer :: beam_data  
    beam_data => process%beam_config%data  
  end function process_get_beam_data_ptr
```

Return true if lab and c.m. frame coincide for this process.

```
<Processes: process: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: cm_frame => process_cm_frame  
  
<Processes: procedures>+≡  
  function process_cm_frame (process) result (flag)  
    class(process_t), intent(in), target :: process  
    logical :: flag  
    type(beam_data_t), pointer :: beam_data  
    beam_data => process%beam_config%data  
    flag = beam_data_cm_frame (beam_data)  
  end function process_cm_frame
```

Get the PDF set currently in use, if any.

```
<Processes: process: TBP>+≡  
  procedure :: get_pdf_set => process_get_pdf_set
```



```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_get_pdf_set (process) result (pdf_set)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer :: pdf_set
    pdf_set = process%beam_config%get_pdf_set ()
  end function process_get_pdf_set

```

Pointer to the process variable list.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_var_list_ptr => process_get_var_list_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_get_var_list_ptr (process) result (ptr)
    class(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => process%meta%var_list
  end function process_get_var_list_ptr

```

Pointer to the common model.

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_model_ptr => process_get_model_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_get_model_ptr (process) result (ptr)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    type(model_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => process%config%model
  end function process_get_model_ptr

```

Use the embedded RNG factory to spawn a new random-number generator instance. (This modifies the state of the factory.)

```

<Processes: process: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_rng => process_make_rng

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_make_rng (process, rng)
    class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    class(rng_t), intent(out), allocatable :: rng
    if (allocated (process%config%rng_factory)) then
      call process%config%rng_factory%make (rng)
    else
      call msg_bug ("Process: make rng: factory not allocated")
    end if
  end subroutine process_make_rng

```

### 15.5.10 Compute an amplitude

Each process variant should allow for computing an amplitude value directly, without generating a process instance.

The process component is selected by the index *i*. The term within the process component is selected by *j*. The momentum combination is transferred

as the array **p**. The function sets the specific quantum state via the indices of a flavor **f**, helicity **h**, and color **c** combination. Each index refers to the list of flavor, helicity, and color states, respectively, as stored in the process data.

Optionally, we may set factorization and renormalization scale. If unset, the partonic c.m. energy is inserted.

The function checks arguments for validity. For invalid arguments (quantum states), we return zero.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_amplitude => process_compute_amplitude

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  function process_compute_amplitude &
    (process, i, j, p, f, h, c, fac_scale, ren_scale) result (amp)
    class(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    integer, intent(in) :: i, j
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    integer, intent(in) :: f, h, c
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: fac_scale, ren_scale
    real(default) :: fscale, rscale
    complex(default) :: amp
    amp = 0
    if (0 < i .and. i <= process%meta%n_components) then
      if (process%component(i)%active) then
        associate (data => process%component(i)%core%data)
          if (size (p) == data%n_in + data%n_out &
              .and. 0 < f .and. f <= data%n_flv &
              .and. 0 < h .and. h <= data%n_hel &
              .and. 0 < c .and. c <= data%n_col) then
            if (present (fac_scale)) then
              fscale = fac_scale
            else
              fscale = sum (p(data%n_in+1:)) ** 1
            end if
            if (present (ren_scale)) then
              rscale = ren_scale
            else
              rscale = fscale
            end if
            amp = process%component(i)%core% &
                  compute_amplitude (j, p, f, h, c, fscale, rscale)
          end if
        end associate
      else
        amp = 0
      end if
    end if
  end function process_compute_amplitude

```

This is for suppression of numerical noise in the integration results stored in the `process_mci_entry` type. As the error and efficiency enter the MD5 sum, we recompute it.

```

(Processes: process: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: pacify => process_pacify

```

*<Processes: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine process_pacify (process, efficiency_reset, error_reset)
  class(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
  logical, intent(in), optional :: efficiency_reset, error_reset
  logical :: eff_reset, err_reset
  integer :: i
  eff_reset = .false.
  err_reset = .false.
  if (present (efficiency_reset)) eff_reset = efficiency_reset
  if (present (error_reset)) err_reset = error_reset
  if (allocated (process%mci_entry)) then
    do i = 1, size (process%mci_entry)
      call process%mci_entry(i)%results%pacify (efficiency_reset)
      if (allocated (process%mci_entry(i)%mci)) then
        if (process%mci_entry(i)%mci%error_known .and. err_reset) &
          process%mci_entry(i)%mci%error = 0
        if (process%mci_entry(i)%mci%efficiency_known .and. &
          eff_reset) process%mci_entry(i)%mci%efficiency = 1
        select type (mci => process%mci_entry(i)%mci)
        type is (mci_vamp_t)
          call mci%pacify (efficiency_reset, error_reset)
          call mci%compute_md5sum ()
        end select
      end if
    end do
  end if
end subroutine process_pacify

```

## 15.5.11 Process instances

### Kinematics instance

In this data type we combine all objects (instances) necessary for generating (or recovering) a kinematical configuration. The components work together as an implementation of multi-channel phase space.

**sf\_chain** is an instance of the structure-function chain. It is used both for generating kinematics and, after the proper scale has been determined, evaluating the structure function entries.

**phs** is an instance of the phase space for the elementary process.

The array **f** contains the products of the Jacobians that originate from parameter mappings in the structure-function chain or in the phase space. We allocate this explicitly if either **sf\_chain** or **phs** are explicitly allocated, otherwise we can take over a pointer.

All components are implemented as pointers to (anonymous) targets. For each component, there is a flag that tells whether this component is to be regarded as a proper component ('owned' by the object) or as a pointer.

*<Processes: types>+≡*

```

type :: kinematics_t
  integer :: n_in = 0
  integer :: n_channel = 0
  integer :: selected_channel = 0

```

```

type(sf_chain_instance_t), pointer :: sf_chain => null ()
class(phs_t), pointer :: phs => null ()
real(default), dimension(:), pointer :: f => null ()
real(default) :: phs_factor
logical :: sf_chain_allocated = .false.
logical :: phs_allocated = .false.
logical :: f_allocated = .false.
contains
  (Processes: kinematics: TBP)
end type kinematics_t

```

Output. Show only those components which are marked as owned.

```

(Processes: kinematics: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => kinematics_write
(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine kinematics_write (object, unit)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, c
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (object%f_allocated) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Flux * PHS volume:"
      write (u, "(2x,ES19.12)") object%phs_factor
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Jacobian factors per channel:"
      do c = 1, size (object%f)
        write (u, "(3x,I0,':',1x,ES13.7)", advance="no") c, object%f(c)
        if (c == object%selected_channel) then
          write (u, "(1x,A)") "[selected]"
        else
          write (u, *)
        end if
      end do
    end if
    if (object%sf_chain_allocated) then
      call write_separator (u)
      call object%sf_chain%write (u)
    end if
    if (object%phs_allocated) then
      call write_separator (u)
      call object%phs%write (u)
    end if
  end subroutine kinematics_write

```

Finalizer. Delete only those components which are marked as owned.

```

(Processes: kinematics: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: final => kinematics_final
(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine kinematics_final (object)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (object%sf_chain_allocated) then
      call object%sf_chain%final ()
      deallocate (object%sf_chain)
    end if
  end subroutine kinematics_final

```

```

        object%sf_chain_allocated = .false.
    end if
    if (object%phs_allocated) then
        call object%phs%final ()
        deallocate (object%phs)
        object%phs_allocated = .false.
    end if
    if (object%f_allocated) then
        deallocate (object%f)
        object%f_allocated = .false.
    end if
end subroutine kinematics_final

```

Allocate the structure-function chain instance, initialize it as a copy of the `sf_chain` template, and prepare it for evaluation.

The `sf_chain` remains a target because the (usually constant) beam momenta are taken from there.

*(Processes: kinematics: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure :: init_sf_chain => kinematics_init_sf_chain

```

*(Processes: procedures)*+≡

```

    subroutine kinematics_init_sf_chain (k, core, sf_chain, config, tmp)
        class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
        type(sf_chain_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
        type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: config
        class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
        integer :: n_strfun, n_channel
        integer :: c
        k%n_in = beam_data_get_n_in (config%data)
        n_strfun = config%n_strfun
        n_channel = config%n_channel
        allocate (k%sf_chain)
        k%sf_chain_allocated = .true.
        call core%init_sf_chain (k%sf_chain, sf_chain, n_channel, tmp)
        if (n_strfun /= 0) then
            do c = 1, n_channel
                call k%sf_chain%set_channel (c, config%sf_channel(c))
            end do
        end if
        call k%sf_chain%link_interactions ()
        call k%sf_chain%exchange_mask ()
        call k%sf_chain%init_evaluators ()
    end subroutine kinematics_init_sf_chain

```

Allocate and initialize the phase-space part and the array of Jacobian factors.

*(Processes: kinematics: TBP)*+≡

```

    procedure :: init_phs => kinematics_init_phs

```

*(Processes: procedures)*+≡

```

    subroutine kinematics_init_phs (k, config)
        class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
        class(phs_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
        k%n_channel = config%get_n_channel ()

```

```

    call config%allocate_instance (k%phs)
    call k%phs%init (config)
    k%phs_allocated = .true.
    allocate (k%f (k%n_channel))
    k%f = 0
    k%f_allocated = .true.
end subroutine kinematics_init_phs

```

Initialize the kinematics in form of simple pointers. In essence, this is a shallow copy, but we have to set the flags correctly to indicate this fact.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_ptr => kinematics_init_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine kinematics_init_ptr (k, k_in)
        class(kinematics_t), intent(out) :: k
        type(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: k_in
        k%n_in = k_in%n_in
        k%n_channel = k_in%n_channel
        k%sf_chain => k_in%sf_chain
        k%phs => k_in%phs
        k%f => k_in%f
    end subroutine kinematics_init_ptr

```

Generate kinematics, given a phase-space channel and a MC parameter set. The main result is the momentum array p, but we also fill the momentum entries in the structure-function chain and the Jacobian-factor array f. Regarding phase space, We fill only the parameter arrays for the selected channel.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute_selected_channel => kinematics_compute_selected_channel

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine kinematics_compute_selected_channel &
        (k, mci_work, phs_channel, p, success)
        class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
        type(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
        integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
        type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p
        logical, intent(out) :: success
        integer :: sf_channel
        k%selected_channel = phs_channel
        sf_channel = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (phs_channel)
        call k%sf_chain%compute_kinematics (sf_channel, mci_work%get_x_strfun ())
        call k%sf_chain%get_out_momenta (p(1:k%n_in))
        call k%phs%set_incoming_momenta (p(1:k%n_in))
        call k%phs%compute_flux ()
        call k%phs%select_channel (phs_channel)
        call k%phs%evaluate_selected_channel &
            (phs_channel, mci_work%get_x_process ())
        if (k%phs%q_defined) then
            call k%phs%get_outgoing_momenta (p(k%n_in+1:))
            k%phs_factor = k%phs%get_overall_factor ()
            success = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine kinematics_compute_selected_channel

```

```

    else
      k%phs_factor = 0
      success = .false.
    end if
  end subroutine kinematics_compute_selected_channel

```

Complete kinematics by filling the non-selected phase-space parameter arrays.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_other_channels => kinematics_compute_other_channels

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine kinematics_compute_other_channels (k, mci_work, phs_channel)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
    type(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
    integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
    integer :: c, c_sf
    call k%phs%evaluate_other_channels (phs_channel)
    do c = 1, k%n_channel
      c_sf = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (c)
      k%f(c) = k%sf_chain%get_f (c_sf) * k%phs%get_f (c)
    end do
  end subroutine kinematics_compute_other_channels

```

Just fetch the outgoing momenta of the `sf_chain` subobject, which become the incoming (seed) momenta of the hard interaction.

This is a stripped down-version of the above which we use when recovering kinematics. Momenta are known, but no MC parameters yet.

(We do not use the `get_out_momenta` method of the chain, since this relies on the structure-function interactions, which are not necessary filled here. We do rely on the momenta of the last evaluator in the chain, however.)

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_incoming_momenta => kinematics_get_incoming_momenta

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine kinematics_get_incoming_momenta (k, p)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: k
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(out) :: p
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    integer :: i
    int => k%sf_chain%get_out_int_ptr ()
    do i = 1, k%n_in
      p(i) = interaction_get_momentum (int, k%sf_chain%get_out_i (i))
    end do
  end subroutine kinematics_get_incoming_momenta

```

This inverts the remainder of the above `compute` method. We know the momenta and recover the rest, as far as needed. If we select a channel, we can complete the inversion and reconstruct the MC parameter set.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recover_mcpair => kinematics_recover_mcpair

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
subroutine kinematics_recover_mcpair (k, mci_work, phs_channel, p)
  class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
  type(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
  integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
  type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
  integer :: c, c_sf
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x_sf, x_phs
  c = phs_channel
  c_sf = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (c)
  k%selected_channel = c
  call k%sf_chain%recover_kinematics (c_sf)
  call k%phs%set_incoming_momenta (p(1:k%n_in))
  call k%phs%compute_flux ()
  call k%phs%set_outgoing_momenta (p(k%n_in+1:))
  call k%phs%inverse ()
  do c = 1, k%n_channel
    c_sf = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (c)
    k%f(c) = k%sf_chain%get_f (c_sf) * k%phs%get_f (c)
  end do
  k%phs_factor = k%phs%get_overall_factor ()
  c = phs_channel
  c_sf = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (c)
  allocate (x_sf (k%sf_chain%config%get_n_bound ()))
  allocate (x_phs (k%phs%config%get_n_par ()))
  call k%phs%select_channel (c)
  call k%sf_chain%get_mcpair (c_sf, x_sf)
  call k%phs%get_mcpair (c, x_phs)
  call mci_work%set_x_strfun (x_sf)
  call mci_work%set_x_process (x_phs)
end subroutine kinematics_recover_mcpair

```

Retrieve the MC input parameter array for a specific channel. We assume that the kinematics is complete, so this is known for all channels.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_mcpair => kinematics_get_mcpair

<Processes: procedures>+≡
subroutine kinematics_get_mcpair (k, phs_channel, r)
  class(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: k
  integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: r
  integer :: sf_channel, n_par_sf, n_par_phs
  sf_channel = k%phs%config%get_sf_channel (phs_channel)
  n_par_phs = k%phs%config%get_n_par ()
  n_par_sf = k%sf_chain%config%get_n_bound ()
  if (n_par_sf > 0) then
    call k%sf_chain%get_mcpair (sf_channel, r(1:n_par_sf))
  end if
  if (n_par_phs > 0) then
    call k%phs%get_mcpair (phs_channel, r(n_par_sf+1:))
  end if
end subroutine kinematics_get_mcpair

```



Evaluate the structure function chain, assuming that kinematics is known.

The status must be precisely `SF_DONE_KINEMATICS`. We thus avoid evaluating the chain twice via different pointers to the same target.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_sf_chain => kinematics_evaluate_sf_chain

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine kinematics_evaluate_sf_chain (k, fac_scale)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(inout) :: k
    real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale
    select case (k%sf_chain%get_status ())
    case (SF_DONE_KINEMATICS)
      call k%sf_chain%evaluate (fac_scale)
    end select
  end subroutine kinematics_evaluate_sf_chain

```

Recover beam momenta, i.e., return the beam momenta stored in the current `sf_chain` to their source. This is a side effect.

```

<Processes: kinematics: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: return_beam_momenta => kinematics_return_beam_momenta

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine kinematics_return_beam_momenta (k)
    class(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: k
    call k%sf_chain%return_beam_momenta ()
  end subroutine kinematics_return_beam_momenta

```

## Process component instance

The actual calculation of a sampling point is done from here.

The `config` pointer accesses the corresponding configuration in the `process` object.

The `active` flag indicates that we are currently computing this component, together with all other components that share the same MC parameter set. Inactive components are using a different MC parameter set and are not in use for this sampling point.

The `k_seed` subobject contains the kinematics (structure-function chain, phase space, etc.) that implements the ‘seed’ configuration of momenta. This version of the process kinematics is accessed by the MCI setup.

`p_seed` is the array of momenta that we compute from the MC input parameters, via the `k_seed` subobject. Depending on the process variant, these may or may not coincide with the momenta that enter the process terms associated to this component.

The `tmp` object can be used for storing intermediate results. Its precise type and contents depend on the process variant.

```

<Processes: types>+≡
  type :: component_instance_t
    type(process_component_t), pointer :: config => null ()
    logical :: active = .false.
    type(kinematics_t) :: k_seed
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_seed

```

```

        logical :: sqme_known = .false.
        real(default) :: sqme = 0
        class(workspace_t), allocatable :: tmp
contains
    <Processes: component instance: TBP>
end type component_instance_t

```

In the header, fetch the component index from the configuration record. `process_component_t` configuration block.

We write the `sf_chain` subobject only upon request, since its instances appear elsewhere.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => component_instance_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine component_instance_write (object, unit, testflag)
        class(component_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (object%active) then
            if (associated (object%config)) then
                write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Component #", object%config%index
            else
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Component [undefined]"
            end if
        else
            write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Component #", object%config%index, &
                " [inactive]"
        end if
        if (allocated (object%p_seed)) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "Seed momenta:"
            do i = 1, size (object%p_seed)
                call vector4_write (object%p_seed(i), u, testflag = testflag)
            end do
        end if
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Squared matrix element:"
        if (object%sqme_known) then
            write (u, "(2x,ES19.12)") object%sqme
        else
            write (u, "(2x,A)") "[undefined]"
        end if
        call object%k_seed%write (u)
        if (allocated (object%tmp)) then
            call write_separator (u)
            call object%tmp%write (u)
        end if
    end subroutine component_instance_write

```

Finalizer

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => component_instance_final

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_final (object)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call object%k_seed%final ()
  end subroutine component_instance_final

```

Initialize: associate the configuration pointer. Also initialize the process workspace, if there is anything to do. This initialization is a matter of the process core.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => component_instance_init

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_init (component, config)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(out) :: component
    type(process_component_t), intent(in), target :: config
    integer :: n_in, n_tot
    component%config => config
    associate (core => component%config%core)
      n_in = core%data%n_in
      n_tot = n_in + core%data%n_out
      allocate (component%p_seed (n_tot))
      call core%allocate_workspace (component%tmp)
    end associate
  end subroutine component_instance_init

```

Initialize the seed-kinematics configuration. All subobjects are allocated explicitly.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_kinematics => component_instance_setup_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_setup_kinematics (component, sf_chain, config)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(sf_chain_t), intent(in), target :: sf_chain
    type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: config
    call component%k_seed%init_sf_chain &
      (component%config%core, sf_chain, config, component%tmp)
    call component%k_seed%init_phs (component%config%phs_config)
  end subroutine component_instance_setup_kinematics

```

Setup seed kinematics, starting from the MC parameter set given as argument. As a result, the `k_seed` kinematics object is evaluated (except for the structure-function matrix-element evaluation, which we postpone until we know the factorization scale), and we have a valid `p_seed` momentum array.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_seed_kinematics => &
    component_instance_compute_seed_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_compute_seed_kinematics &
    (component, mci_work, phs_channel, success)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: component
    type(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
logical, intent(out) :: success
call component%k_seed%compute_selected_channel &
    (mci_work, phs_channel, component%p_seed, success)
end subroutine component_instance_compute_seed_kinematics

```

Inverse: recover missing parts of the kinematics, given a complete set of seed momenta. Select a channel and reconstruct the MC parameter set.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recover_mcpair => component_instance_recover_mcpair

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_recover_mcpair (component, mci_work, phs_channel)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: component
    type(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
    integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
    call component%k_seed%recover_mcpair &
        (mci_work, phs_channel, component%p_seed)
  end subroutine component_instance_recover_mcpair

```

Compute the momenta in the hard interactions, one for each term that constitutes this process component. In simple cases this amounts to just copying momenta. In more advanced cases, we may generate distinct sets of momenta from the seed kinematics.

The interactions in the term instances are accessed individually. We may choose to calculate all terms at once together with the seed kinematics, use `component%tmp` for storage, and just fill the interactions here.

```

<Processes: component instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_hard_kinematics => &
      component_instance_compute_hard_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine component_instance_compute_hard_kinematics &
      (component, term, skip_term)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(term_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: term
    integer, intent(in), optional :: skip_term
    integer :: j, i
    associate (core => component%config%core)
      associate (i_term => component%config%i_term)
        do j = 1, size(i_term)
          i = i_term(j)
          if (present(skip_term)) then
            if (i == skip_term) cycle
          end if
          call core%compute_hard_kinematics &
              (component%p_seed, i, term(i)%int_hard, component%tmp)
        end do
      end associate
    end associate
  end subroutine component_instance_compute_hard_kinematics

```

Here, we invert this. We fetch the incoming momenta which reside in the appropriate `sf_chain` object, stored within the `k_seed` subobject. On the other hand, we have the outgoing momenta of the effective interaction. We rely on the process core to compute the remaining seed momenta and to fill the momenta within the hard interaction. (The latter is trivial if hard and effective interaction coincide.)

After this is done, the incoming momenta in the trace evaluator that corresponds to the hard (effective) interaction, are still left undefined. We remedy this by calling `receive_kinematics` once.

```

(Processes: component instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover_seed_kinematics => &
    component_instance_recover_seed_kinematics

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine component_instance_recover_seed_kinematics (component, term)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    integer :: n_in
    n_in = component%k_seed%n_in
    call component%k_seed%get_incoming_momenta (component%p_seed(1:n_in))
    associate (core => component%config%core)
      call core%recover_kinematics &
        (component%p_seed, term%int_hard, term%isolated%int_eff, &
         component%tmp)
      call term%isolated%receive_kinematics ()
    end associate
  end subroutine component_instance_recover_seed_kinematics

```

Compute the integration parameters for all channels except the selected one.

```

(Processes: component instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_other_channels => &
    component_instance_compute_other_channels

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine component_instance_compute_other_channels &
    (component, mci_work, phs_channel)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: component
    type(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
    integer, intent(in) :: phs_channel
    call component%k_seed%compute_other_channels (mci_work, phs_channel)
  end subroutine component_instance_compute_other_channels

```

Recover beam momenta, i.e., return the beam momenta as currently stored in the kinematics subobject to their source. This is a side effect.

```

(Processes: component instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: return_beam_momenta => component_instance_return_beam_momenta

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine component_instance_return_beam_momenta (component)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(in) :: component
    call component%k_seed%return_beam_momenta ()
  end subroutine component_instance_return_beam_momenta

```

Evaluate the trace of the transition matrix, convoluted with the initial state, and summed over all terms. The trace evaluators of the individual terms have only a single matrix element. We implicitly drop the imaginary part of the terms, which should be zero anyway.

```

(Processes: component instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_sqme => component_instance_evaluate_sqme

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine component_instance_evaluate_sqme (component, term)
    class(component_instance_t), intent(inout) :: component
    type(term_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(in), target :: term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    real(default) :: sqme
    integer :: j, i
    component%sqme = 0
    associate (i_term => component%config%i_term)
      do j = 1, size (i_term)
        i = i_term(j)
        if (term(i)%passed) then
          int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (term(i)%connected%trace)
          sqme = interaction_get_matrix_element (int, 1)
          component%sqme = component%sqme + sqme * term(i)%weight
        end if
      end do
    end associate
    component%sqme_known = .true.
  end subroutine component_instance_evaluate_sqme

```

## Term instance

A `term_instance_t` object contains all data that describe a term. Each process component consists of one or more distinct terms which may differ in kinematics, but whose squared transition matrices have to be added pointwise.

The `active` flag is set when this term is connected to an active process component. Inactive terms are skipped for kinematics and evaluation.

The `k_term` object is the instance of the kinematics setup (structure-function chain, phase space, etc.) that applies specifically to this term. In ordinary cases, it consists of straight pointers to the seed kinematics.

The `amp` array stores the amplitude values when we get them from evaluating the associated matrix-element code.

The `int_hard` interaction describes the elementary hard process. It receives the momenta and the amplitude entries for each sampling point.

The `isolated` object holds the effective parton state for the elementary interaction. The amplitude entries are computed from `int_hard`.

The `connected` evaluator set convolutes this scattering matrix with the beam (and possibly structure-function) density matrix.

The `checked` flag is set once we have applied cuts on this term. The result of this is stored in the `passed` flag. Once the term has passed cuts, we calculate the various scale and weight expressions.

```

(Processes: types)+≡
  type :: term_instance_t

```

```

type(process_term_t), pointer :: config => null ()
logical :: active = .false.
type(kinematics_t) :: k_term
complex(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: amp
type(interaction_t) :: int_hard
type(isolated_state_t) :: isolated
type(connected_state_t) :: connected
logical :: checked = .false.
logical :: passed = .false.
real(default) :: scale = 0
real(default) :: fac_scale = 0
real(default) :: ren_scale = 0
real(default) :: weight = 1
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p_hard
contains
  (Processes: term instance: TBP)
end type term_instance_t

```

(Processes: term instance: TBP)≡

```

  procedure :: write => term_instance_write

```

(Processes: procedures)+≡

```

subroutine term_instance_write (term, unit, show_eff_state, testflag)
  class(term_instance_t), intent(in) :: term
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: show_eff_state
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u
  logical :: state
  u = output_unit (unit)
  state = .true.; if (present (show_eff_state)) state = show_eff_state
  if (term%active) then
    if (associated (term%config)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,I0,A)") "Term #", term%config%i_term, &
        " (component #", term%config%i_component, ")"
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Term [undefined]"
    end if
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Term #", term%config%i_term, &
      " [inactive]"
  end if
  if (term%checked) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "passed cuts" = ", term%passed
  end if
  if (term%passed) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "overall scale" = ", term%scale
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "factorization scale" = ", term%fac_scale
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "renormalization scale" = ", term%ren_scale
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "reweighting factor" = ", term%weight
  end if
  call term%k_term%write (u)
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Amplitude (transition matrix of the &

```

```

        &hard interaction):"
    call write_separator (u)
    call interaction_write (term%int_hard, u, testflag = testflag)
    if (state .and. term%isolated%has_trace) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)" "Evaluators for the hard interaction:")
        call term%isolated%write (u, testflag = testflag)
    end if
    if (state .and. term%connected%has_trace) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)" "Evaluators for the connected process:")
        call term%connected%write (u, testflag = testflag)
    end if
end subroutine term_instance_write

```

The interactions and evaluators must be finalized.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => term_instance_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine term_instance_final (term)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
        call term%k_term%final ()
        call term%connected%final ()
        call term%isolated%final ()
        call interaction_final (term%int_hard)
    end subroutine term_instance_final

```

For initialization, we make use of defined assignment for the `interaction_t` type. This creates a deep copy.

The hard interaction (incoming momenta) is linked to the structure function instance. In the isolated state, we either set pointers to both, or we create modified copies (`rearrange`) as effective structure-function chain and interaction, respectively.

Finally, we set up the `subevt` component that will be used for evaluating observables, collecting particles from the trace evaluator in the effective connected state. Their quantum numbers must be determined by following back source links and set explicitly, since they are already eliminated in that trace.

The `rearrange` parts are still commented out; they could become relevant for a NLO algorithm.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => term_instance_init

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine term_instance_init (term, &
        config, k_seed, beam_config, core, process_var_list)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(out), target :: term
        type(process_term_t), intent(in), target :: config
        type(kinematics_t), intent(in) :: k_seed
        type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in) :: beam_config
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: sf_chain_int, trace_int, src_int
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
        type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: process_var_list

```



```

type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask_in
type(state_matrix_t), pointer :: state_matrix
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv_int, flv_src, f_in, f_out
integer :: n_in, n_vir, n_out, n_tot
integer :: i, j
term%config => config
if (config%rearrange) then
    ! rearrangement of seed to hard kinematics not implemented yet
    ! allocate k_term distinct from k_seed as needed.
else
    ! here, k_term trivially accesses k_seed via pointers
    call term%k_term%init_ptr (k_seed)
end if
allocate (term%amp (config%n_allowed))
term%int_hard = config%int
allocate (term%p_hard (interaction_get_n_tot (term%int_hard)))
sf_chain_int => term%k_term%sf_chain%get_out_int_ptr ()
n_in = interaction_get_n_in (term%int_hard)
do j = 1, n_in
    i = term%k_term%sf_chain%get_out_i (j)
    call interaction_set_source_link (term%int_hard, j, sf_chain_int, i)
end do
if (config%rearrange) then
    ! rearrangement hard to effective kinematics not implemented yet
    ! should use term%config%int_eff as template
    ! allocate distinct sf_chain in term%connected as needed
else
    ! here, int_hard and sf_chain are trivially accessed via pointers
    call term%isolated%init (term%k_term%sf_chain, term%int_hard)
end if
allocate (mask_in (n_in))
mask_in = term%k_term%sf_chain%get_out_mask ()
call term%isolated%setup_square_trace (core, mask_in, term%config%col)
call term%connected%setup_connected_trace (term%isolated)
associate (int_eff => term%isolated%int_eff)
    state_matrix => interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (int_eff)
    n_tot = interaction_get_n_tot (int_eff)
    allocate (flv_int (n_tot))
    flv_int = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &
        (state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers (state_matrix, 1))
    allocate (f_in (n_in))
    f_in = flv_int(1:n_in)
    deallocate (flv_int)
end associate
trace_int => evaluator_get_int_ptr (term%connected%trace)
n_in = interaction_get_n_in (trace_int)
n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (trace_int)
n_out = interaction_get_n_out (trace_int)
allocate (f_out (n_out))
do j = 1, n_out
    call interaction_find_source (trace_int, n_in + n_vir + j, src_int, i)
    if (associated (src_int)) then
        state_matrix => interaction_get_state_matrix_ptr (src_int)
        allocate (flv_src (interaction_get_n_tot (src_int)))
    end if
end do

```

```

        flv_src = quantum_numbers_get_flavor &
            (state_matrix_get_quantum_numbers (state_matrix, 1))
        f_out(j) = flv_src(i)
        deallocate (flv_src)
    end if
end do
call term%connected%setup_subevt (term%isolated%sf_chain_eff, &
    beam_config%data%flv, f_in, f_out)
call term%connected%setup_var_list (process_var_list, beam_config%data)
end subroutine term_instance_init

```

For initializing the expressions, we need the local variable list and the parse trees.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_expressions => term_instance_setup_expressions
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine term_instance_setup_expressions (term, meta, config)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: term
        type(process_metadata_t), intent(in), target :: meta
        type(process_config_data_t), intent(in) :: config
        call term%connected%setup_expressions ( &
            config%pn_cuts, &
            config%pn_scale, &
            config%pn_fac_scale, &
            config%pn_ren_scale, &
            config%pn_weight)
    end subroutine term_instance_setup_expressions

```

Prepare the extra evaluators that we need for processing events.

The quantum numbers mask of the incoming particle

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_event_data => term_instance_setup_event_data
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine term_instance_setup_event_data (term, core, model)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: term
        class(prc_core_t), intent(in) :: core
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        integer :: n_in
        type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mask_in
        n_in = interaction_get_n_in (term%int_hard)
        allocate (mask_in (n_in))
        mask_in = term%k_term%sf_chain%get_out_mask ()
        call term%isolated%setup_square_matrix (core, model, mask_in, &
            term%config%col)
        call term%isolated%setup_square_flows (core, model, mask_in)
        call term%connected%setup_connected_matrix (term%isolated)
        call term%connected%setup_connected_flows (term%isolated)
    end subroutine term_instance_setup_event_data

```

Reset the term instance: clear the parton-state expressions and deactivate.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: reset => term_instance_reset

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine term_instance_reset (term)
    class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    call term%connected%reset_expressions ()
    term%active = .false.
  end subroutine term_instance_reset

```

Complete the kinematics computation for the effective parton states.

We assume that the `compute_hard_kinematics` method of the process component instance has already been called, so the `int_hard` contains the correct hard kinematics. The duty of this procedure is first to compute the effective kinematics and store this in the `int_eff` effective interaction inside the `isolated` parton state. The effective kinematics may differ from the kinematics in the hard interaction. It may involve parton recombination or parton splitting. The `rearrange_partons` method is responsible for this part.

We may also call a method to compute the effective structure-function chain at this point. This is not implemented yet.

In the simple case that no rearrangement is necessary, as indicated by the `rearrange` flag, the effective interaction is a pointer to the hard interaction, and we can skip the rearrangement method. Similarly for the effective structure-function chain. (If we have an algorithm that uses rearrangement, it should evaluate `k_term` explicitly.)

The final step of kinematics setup is to transfer the effective kinematics to the evaluators and to the `subevt`.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_eff_kinematics => &
    term_instance_compute_eff_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine term_instance_compute_eff_kinematics (term, component)
    class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    type(component_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: component
    integer :: i_component, i_term
    term%checked = .false.
    term%passed = .false.
    if (term%config%rearrange) then
      ! should evaluate k_term first if allocated separately, not impl. yet
      i_component = term%config%i_component
      i_term = term%config%i_term
      associate (core => component(i_component)%config%core)
        call core%compute_eff_kinematics &
          (i_term, term%int_hard, term%isolated%int_eff, &
            component(i_component)%tmp)
      end associate
    end if
    call term%isolated%receive_kinematics ()
    call term%connected%receive_kinematics ()
  end subroutine term_instance_compute_eff_kinematics

```

Inverse. Reconstruct the connected state from the momenta in the trace evaluator (which we assume to be set), then reconstruct the isolated state as far

as possible. The second part finalizes the momentum configuration, using the incoming seed momenta

```

(Processes: term instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover_hard_kinematics => &
    term_instance_recover_hard_kinematics

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine term_instance_recover_hard_kinematics (term, component)
    class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    type(component_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: component
    term%checked = .false.
    term%passed = .false.
    call term%connected%send_kinematics ()
    call term%isolated%send_kinematics ()
  end subroutine term_instance_recover_hard_kinematics

```

Check the term whether it passes cuts and, if successful, evaluate scales and weights. The factorization scale is also given to the term kinematics, enabling structure-function evaluation.

```

(Processes: term instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_expressions => &
    term_instance_evaluate_expressions

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine term_instance_evaluate_expressions (term)
    class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    call term%connected%evaluate_expressions (term%passed, &
      term%scale, term%fac_scale, term%ren_scale, term%weight)
    term%checked = .true.
  end subroutine term_instance_evaluate_expressions

```

Evaluate the trace: first evaluate the hard interaction, then the trace evaluator. We use the `evaluate_interaction` method of the process component which generated this term. The `subevt` and cut expressions are not yet filled.

The `component` argument is `intent(inout)` because the `compute_amplitude` method may modify the `tmp` workspace object.

```

(Processes: term instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_interaction => term_instance_evaluate_interaction

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine term_instance_evaluate_interaction (term, component)
    class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
    type(component_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: component
    integer :: i_component, i_term, i
    i_component = term%config%i_component
    i_term = term%config%i_term
    term%p_hard = interaction_get_momenta (term%int_hard)
    associate (core => component(i_component)%config%core)
      do i = 1, term%config%n_allowed
        term%amp(i) = core%compute_amplitude (i_term, term%p_hard, &
          term%config%flv(i), term%config%hel(i), term%config%col(i), &
          term%fac_scale, term%ren_scale, &
          component(i_component)%tmp)
      end do
    end associate
  end subroutine term_instance_evaluate_interaction

```

```

        end do
        call interaction_set_matrix_element (term%int_hard, term%amp)
    end associate
end subroutine term_instance_evaluate_interaction

```

Evaluate the trace. First evaluate the structure-function chain (i.e., the density matrix of the incoming partons). Do this twice, in case the sf-chain instances within `k_term` and `isolated` differ. Next, evaluate the hard interaction, then compute the convolution with the initial state.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: evaluate_trace => term_instance_evaluate_trace

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine term_instance_evaluate_trace (term)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
        call term%k_term%evaluate_sf_chain (term%fac_scale)
        call term%isolated%evaluate_sf_chain (term%fac_scale)
        call term%isolated%evaluate_trace ()
        call term%connected%evaluate_trace ()
    end subroutine term_instance_evaluate_trace

```

Evaluate the extra data that we need for processing the object as a physical event.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: evaluate_event_data => term_instance_evaluate_event_data

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine term_instance_evaluate_event_data (term)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(inout) :: term
        call term%isolated%evaluate_event_data ()
        call term%connected%evaluate_event_data ()
    end subroutine term_instance_evaluate_event_data

```

Return data that might be useful for external processing. The factorization scale:

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_fac_scale => term_instance_get_fac_scale

<Processes: procedures>+=
    function term_instance_get_fac_scale (term) result (fac_scale)
        class(term_instance_t), intent(in) :: term
        real(default) :: fac_scale
        fac_scale = term%fac_scale
    end function term_instance_get_fac_scale

```

We take the strong coupling from the process core. The value is calculated when a new event is requested, so we should call it only after the event has been evaluated. If it is not available there (a negative number is returned), we take the value stored in the term configuration, which should be determined by the model. If the model does not provide a value, the result is zero.

```

<Processes: term instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: get_alpha_s => term_instance_get_alpha_s

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function term_instance_get_alpha_s (term, component) result (alpha_s)
  class(term_instance_t), intent(in) :: term
  type(component_instance_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: component
  real(default) :: alpha_s
  integer :: i_component
  i_component = term%config%i_component
  associate (core => component(i_component)%config%core)
    alpha_s = core%get_alpha_s (component(i_component)%tmp)
  end associate
  if (alpha_s < 0) alpha_s = term%config%alpha_s
end function term_instance_get_alpha_s

```

### MC parameter set and MCI instance

For each process component that is associated with a multi-channel integration (MCI) object, the `mci_work_t` object contains the currently active parameter set. It also holds the implementation of the `mci_instance_t` that the integrator needs for doing its work.

```

<Processes: types>+≡
type :: mci_work_t
  type(process_mci_entry_t), pointer :: config => null ()
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: x
  class(mci_instance_t), pointer :: mci => null ()
  type(process_counter_t) :: counter
contains
  <Processes: mci work: TBP>
end type mci_work_t

```

First write configuration data, then the current values.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => mci_work_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
subroutine mci_work_write (mci_work, unit, testflag)
  class(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Active MCI instance #", &
    mci_work%config%i_mci, " ="
  write (u, "(2x)", advance="no")
  do i = 1, mci_work%config%n_par
    write (u, "(1x,F7.5)", advance="no") mci_work%x(i)
    if (i == mci_work%config%n_par_sf) &
      write (u, "(1x,'|')", advance="no")
  end do
  write (u, *)
  if (associated (mci_work%mci)) then
    call mci_work%mci%write (u, pacify = testflag)
    call mci_work%counter%write (u)
  end if
end subroutine mci_work_write

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine mci_work_write

```

The mci component may require finalization.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => mci_work_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_work_final (mci_work)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
        if (associated (mci_work%mci)) then
            call mci_work%mci%final ()
            deallocate (mci_work%mci)
        end if
    end subroutine mci_work_final

```

Initialize with the maximum length that we will need. Contents are not initialized.

The integrator inside the `mci_entry` object is responsible for allocating and initializing its own instance, which is referred to by a pointer in the `mci_work` object.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => mci_work_init

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_work_init (mci_work, mci_entry)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(out) :: mci_work
        type(process_mci_entry_t), intent(in), target :: mci_entry
        mci_work%config => mci_entry
        allocate (mci_work%x (mci_entry%n_par))
        if (allocated (mci_entry%mci)) then
            call mci_entry%mci%allocate_instance (mci_work%mci)
            call mci_work%mci%init (mci_entry%mci)
        end if
    end subroutine mci_work_init

```

Set parameters explicitly, either all at once, or separately for the structure-function and process parts.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set => mci_work_set
    procedure :: set_x_strfun => mci_work_set_x_strfun
    procedure :: set_x_process => mci_work_set_x_process

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_work_set (mci_work, x)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
        mci_work%x = x
    end subroutine mci_work_set

    subroutine mci_work_set_x_strfun (mci_work, x)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x

```

```

    mci_work%x(1 : mci_work%config%n_par_sf) = x
end subroutine mci_work_set_x_strfun

subroutine mci_work_set_x_process (mci_work, x)
    class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    mci_work%x(mci_work%config%n_par_sf + 1 : mci_work%config%n_par) = x
end subroutine mci_work_set_x_process

```

Return the array of active components, i.e., those that correspond to the currently selected MC parameter set.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_active_components => mci_work_get_active_components

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function mci_work_get_active_components (mci_work) result (i_component)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_component
        allocate (i_component (size (mci_work%config%i_component)))
        i_component = mci_work%config%i_component
    end function mci_work_get_active_components

```

Return the active parameters as a simple array with correct length. Do this separately for the structure-function parameters and the process parameters.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_x_strfun => mci_work_get_x_strfun
    procedure :: get_x_process => mci_work_get_x_process

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function mci_work_get_x_strfun (mci_work) result (x)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
        real(default), dimension(mci_work%config%n_par_sf) :: x
        x = mci_work%x(1 : mci_work%config%n_par_sf)
    end function mci_work_get_x_strfun

    function mci_work_get_x_process (mci_work) result (x)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
        real(default), dimension(mci_work%config%n_par_phs) :: x
        x = mci_work%x(mci_work%config%n_par_sf + 1 : mci_work%config%n_par)
    end function mci_work_get_x_process

```

Initialize and finalize event generation for the specified MCI entry. This also resets the counter.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_simulation => mci_work_init_simulation
    procedure :: final_simulation => mci_work_final_simulation

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_work_init_simulation (mci_work, safety_factor)
        class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
        call mci_work%mc_i%init_simulation (safety_factor)
        call mci_work%counter%reset ()
    end subroutine mci_work_init_simulation

```



```

end subroutine mci_work_init_simulation

subroutine mci_work_final_simulation (mci_work)
  class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
  call mci_work%mci%final_simulation ()
end subroutine mci_work_final_simulation

```

Counter.

```

<Processes: mci work: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset_counter => mci_work_reset_counter
  procedure :: record_call => mci_work_record_call
  procedure :: get_counter => mci_work_get_counter

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine mci_work_reset_counter (mci_work)
    class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
    call mci_work%counter%reset ()
  end subroutine mci_work_reset_counter

  subroutine mci_work_record_call (mci_work, status)
    class(mci_work_t), intent(inout) :: mci_work
    integer, intent(in) :: status
    call mci_work%counter%record (status)
  end subroutine mci_work_record_call

  function mci_work_get_counter (mci_work) result (counter)
    class(mci_work_t), intent(in) :: mci_work
    type(process_counter_t) :: counter
    counter = mci_work%counter
  end function mci_work_get_counter

```

## The process instance

A process instance contains all process data that depend on the sampling point and thus change often. In essence, it is an event record at the elementary (parton) level. We do not call it such, to avoid confusion with the actual event records. If decays are involved, the latter are compositions of several elementary processes (i.e., their instances).

We implement the process instance as an extension of the `mci_sampler_t` that we need for computing integrals and generate events.

The base type contains: the `integrand`, the `selected_channel`, the two-dimensional array `x` of parameters, and the one-dimensional array `f` of Jacobians. These subobjects are public and used for communicating with the multi-channel integrator.

The `process` pointer accesses the process of which this record is an instance. It is required whenever the calculation needs invariant configuration data, therefore the process should stay in memory for the whole lifetime of its instances.

The `evaluation_status` code is used to check the current status. In particular, failure at various stages is recorded there.

The `count` object records process evaluations, broken down according to status.

The **sqme** value is the single real number that results from evaluating and tracing the kinematics and matrix elements. This is the number that is handed over to an integration routine.

The **weight** value is the event weight. It is defined when an event has been generated from the process instance, either weighted or unweighted. The value is the **sqme** value times Jacobian weights from the integration, or unity, respectively.

The **i\_mci** index chooses a subset of components that are associated with a common parameter set and integrator, i.e., that are added coherently.

The **sf\_chain** subobject is a realization of the beam and structure-function configuration in the **process** object. It is not used for calculation directly but serves as the template for the sf-chain instances that are contained in the **component** objects.

The **component** subobjects determine the state of each component.

The **term** subobjects are workspace for evaluating kinematics, matrix elements, cuts etc.

The **mci\_work** subobject contains the array of real input parameters (random numbers) that generates the kinematical point. It also contains the workspace for the MC integrators. The active entry of the **mci\_work** array is selected by the **i\_mci** index above.

```

<Processes: public>+≡
    public :: process_instance_t

<Processes: types>+≡
    type, extends (mci_sampler_t) :: process_instance_t
        type(process_t), pointer :: process => null ()
        integer :: evaluation_status = STAT_UNDEFINED
        real(default) :: sqme = 0
        real(default) :: weight = 0
        real(default) :: excess = 0
        integer :: i_mci = 0
        integer :: selected_channel = 0
        type(sf_chain_t) :: sf_chain
        type(component_instance_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: component
        type(term_instance_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: term
        type(mci_work_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mci_work
    contains
        <Processes: process instance: TBP>
    end type process_instance_t

```

The output routine contains a header with the most relevant information about the process, copied from **process\_metadata\_write**. We mark the active components by an asterisk.

The next section is the MC parameter input. The following sections are written only if the evaluation status is beyond setting the parameters, or if the **verbose** option is set.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write_header => process_instance_write_header
    procedure :: write => process_instance_write

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_write_header (object, unit, testflag)

```

```

class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit)
call write_separator_double (u)
if (associated (object%process)) then
  associate (meta => object%process%meta)
    select case (meta%type)
      case (PRC_UNKNOWN)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process instance [undefined]"
        return
      case (PRC_DECAY)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Process instance [decay]:"
      case (PRC_SCATTERING)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Process instance [scattering]:"
      case default
        call msg_bug ("process_instance_write: undefined process type")
    end select
    write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "'", char (meta%id), "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Run ID = '", char (meta%run_id), "'"
    if (allocated (meta%component_id)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Process components:"
      do i = 1, size (meta%component_id)
        if (object%component(i)%active) then
          write (u, "(3x,'*')", advance="no")
        else
          write (u, "(4x)", advance="no")
        end if
        write (u, "(1x,I0,9A)") i, ": '", &
          char (meta%component_id (i)), "' : ", &
          char (meta%component_description (i))
      end do
    end if
  end associate
else
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process instance [undefined process]"
  return
end if
write (u, "(3x,A)", advance = "no") "status = "
select case (object%evaluation_status)
case (STAT_INITIAL);      write (u, "(A)") "initialized"
case (STAT_ACTIVATED);    write (u, "(A)") "activated"
case (STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA); write (u, "(A)") "beam momenta set"
case (STAT_FAILED_KINEMATICS); write (u, "(A)") "failed kinematics"
case (STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS); write (u, "(A)") "seed kinematics"
case (STAT_HARD_KINEMATICS); write (u, "(A)") "hard kinematics"
case (STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS); write (u, "(A)") "effective kinematics"
case (STAT_FAILED_CUTS);  write (u, "(A)") "failed cuts"
case (STAT_PASSED_CUTS);  write (u, "(A)") "passed cuts"
case (STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE); write (u, "(A)") "evaluated trace"
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "sqme = ", object%sqme
case (STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE); write (u, "(A)") "event complete"

```

```

        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "sqme = ", object%sqme
        write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "weight = ", object%weight
        if (object%excess /= 0) &
            write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "excess = ", object%excess
        case default;
            write (u, "(A)") "undefined"
        end select
    if (object%i_mci /= 0) then
        call write_separator (u)
        call object%_mci_work(object%i_mci)%write (u, testflag)
    end if
    call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine process_instance_write_header

subroutine process_instance_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call object%write_header (u)
    if (object%evaluation_status >= STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA) then
        call object%sf_chain%write (u)
        call write_separator_double (u)
        if (object%evaluation_status >= STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "Active components:"
            do i = 1, size (object%component)
                if (object%component(i)%active) then
                    call write_separator (u)
                    call object%component(i)%write (u, testflag)
                end if
            end do
        if (object%evaluation_status >= STAT_HARD_KINEMATICS) then
            call write_separator_double (u)
            write (u, "(1x,A)") "Active terms:"
            if (any (object%term%active)) then
                do i = 1, size (object%term)
                    if (object%term(i)%active) then
                        call write_separator (u)
                        call object%term(i)%write (u, &
                            show_eff_state = &
                            object%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS, &
                            testflag = testflag)
                    end if
                end do
            end if
        end if
        call write_separator_double (u)
    end if
end if
end subroutine process_instance_write

```

Finalize all subobjects that may contain allocated pointers.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => process_instance_final

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_final (instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (instance%mci_work)) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%mci_work)
        call instance%mci_work(i)%final ()
      end do
    end if
    call instance%sf_chain%final ()
    if (allocated (instance%component)) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%component)
        call instance%component(i)%final ()
      end do
    end if
    if (allocated (instance%term)) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%term)
        call instance%term(i)%final ()
      end do
    end if
    instance%evaluation_status = STAT_UNDEFINED
  end subroutine process_instance_final

```

Revert the process instance to initial state. We do not deallocate anything, just reset the state index and deactivate all components and terms.

We do not reset the choice of the MCI set `i_mci` unless this is required explicitly.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset => process_instance_reset

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_reset (instance, reset_mci)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reset_mci
    integer :: i
    instance%component%active = .false.
    do i = 1, size (instance%term)
      call instance%term(i)%reset ()
    end do
    instance%term%checked = .false.
    instance%term%passed = .false.
    if (present (reset_mci)) then
      if (reset_mci) instance%i_mci = 0
    end if
    instance%selected_channel = 0
    instance%evaluation_status = STAT_INITIAL
  end subroutine process_instance_reset

```

Activate the components and terms that correspond to a currently selected MCI parameter set.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: activate => process_instance_activate
  <Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_activate (instance)
      class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
      integer :: i, j
      associate (mci_work => instance%mci_work(instance%i_mci))
        instance%component(mci_work%get_active_components ())%active &
          = .true.
        do i = 1, size (instance%component)
          associate (component => instance%component(i))
            if (component%active) then
              do j = 1, size (component%config%i_term)
                instance%term(component%config%i_term(j))%active &
                  = .true.
              end do
            end if
          end associate
        end do
      end associate
      instance%evaluation_status = STAT_ACTIVATED
    end subroutine process_instance_activate

```

Initialization connects the instance with a process. All initial information is transferred from the process object. The process object contains templates for the interaction subobjects (beam and term), but no evaluators. The initialization routine creates evaluators for the matrix element trace, other evaluators are left untouched.

The **instance** object must have the **target** attribute (also in any caller) since the initialization routine assigns various pointers to subobject of **instance**.

```

  <Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => process_instance_init
  <Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_init (instance, process)
      class(process_instance_t), intent(out), target :: instance
      type(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
      integer :: i, i_component
      instance%process => process
      call instance%setup_sf_chain (process%beam_config)
      allocate (instance%mci_work (process%config%n_mci))
      do i = 1, size (instance%mci_work)
        call instance%mci_work(i)%init (process%mci_entry(i))
      end do
      allocate (instance%component (process%config%n_components))
      do i_component = 1, size (instance%component)
        if (process%component(i_component)%active) then
          associate (component => instance%component(i_component))
            call component%init (process%component(i_component))
            call component%setup_kinematics &
              (instance%sf_chain, process%beam_config)
          end associate
        end if
      end do
    end subroutine

```

```

allocate (instance%term (process%config%n_terms))
do i = 1, size (instance%term)
  associate (term => instance%term(i))
    i_component = process%term(i)%i_component
    if (i_component /= 0) then
      associate (component => instance%component(i_component))
        call term%init (process%term(i), &
          component%k_seed, &
          process%beam_config, &
          process%component(i_component)%core, &
          process%meta%var_list)
        call term%setup_expressions (process%meta, process%config)
      end associate
    end if
  end associate
end do
instance%evaluation_status = STAT_INITIAL
end subroutine process_instance_init

```

Subroutine of the initialization above: initialize the beam and structure-function chain template. We establish pointers to the configuration data, so `beam_config` must have a `target` attribute.

The resulting chain is not used directly for calculation. It will acquire instances which are stored in the process-component instance objects.

*(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: setup_sf_chain => process_instance_setup_sf_chain

```

*(Processes: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine process_instance_setup_sf_chain (instance, config)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
  type(process_beam_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
  integer :: n_strfun
  n_strfun = config%n_strfun
  if (n_strfun /= 0) then
    call instance%sf_chain%init (config%data, config%sf)
  else
    call instance%sf_chain%init (config%data)
  end if
  if (config%sf_trace) then
    call instance%sf_chain%setup_tracing (config%sf_trace_file)
  end if
end subroutine process_instance_setup_sf_chain

```

This initialization routine should be called only for process instances which we intend as a source for physical events. It initializes the evaluators in the parton states of the terms. They describe the (semi-)exclusive transition matrix and the distribution of color flow for the partonic process, convoluted with the beam and structure-function chain.

If the model is not provided explicitly, we may use the model instance that belongs to the process. However, an explicit model allows us to override particle settings.

*(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: setup_event_data => process_instance_setup_event_data

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+=
subroutine process_instance_setup_event_data (instance, model)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
  type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model
  type(model_t), pointer :: current_model
  integer :: i, i_component
  if (present (model)) then
    current_model => model
  else
    current_model => instance%process%config%model
  end if
  do i = 1, size (instance%term)
    associate (term => instance%term(i))
      if (associated (term%config)) then
        i_component = term%config%i_component
        associate (component => instance%process%component(i_component))
          call term%setup_event_data (component%core, current_model)
        end associate
      end if
    end associate
  end do
end subroutine process_instance_setup_event_data

```

Choose a MC parameter set and the corresponding integrator.

The choice persists beyond calls of the `reset` method above. This method is automatically called here.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
procedure :: choose_mci => process_instance_choose_mci

<Processes: procedures>+=
subroutine process_instance_choose_mci (instance, i_mci)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
  integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
  instance%i_mci = i_mci
  call instance%reset ()
end subroutine process_instance_choose_mci

```

Explicitly set a MC parameter set. Works only if we are in initial state. We assume that the length of the parameter set is correct.

After setting the parameters, activate the components and terms that correspond to the chosen MC parameter set.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
procedure :: set_mcpair => process_instance_set_mcpair

<Processes: procedures>+=
subroutine process_instance_set_mcpair (instance, x)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
  if (instance%evaluation_status == STAT_INITIAL) then
    associate (mci_work => instance%mci_work(instance%i_mci))
      call mci_work%set (x)
    end associate
    call instance%activate ()
  end if
end subroutine process_instance_set_mcpair

```



```

    end if
end subroutine process_instance_set_mcpair

```

Receive the beam momentum/momenta from a source interaction. This applies to a cascade decay process instance, where the ‘beam’ momentum varies event by event.

The master beam momentum array is contained in the main structure function chain subobject `sf_chain`. The sf-chain instance that reside in the components will take their beam momenta from there.

The procedure transforms the instance status into `STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA`. For process instance with fixed beam, this intermediate status is skipped.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: receive_beam_momenta => process_instance_receive_beam_momenta

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_receive_beam_momenta (instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_INITIAL) then
      call instance%sf_chain%receive_beam_momenta ()
      instance%evaluation_status = STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_receive_beam_momenta

```

Set the beam momentum/momenta explicitly. Otherwise, analogous to the previous procedure.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_beam_momenta => process_instance_set_beam_momenta

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_set_beam_momenta (instance, p)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_INITIAL) then
      call instance%sf_chain%set_beam_momenta (p)
      instance%evaluation_status = STAT_BEAM_MOMENTA
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_set_beam_momenta

```

Recover the initial beam momenta (those in the `sf_chain` component), given a valid (recovered) `sf_chain_instance` in one of the active components. We need to do this only if the lab frame is not the c.m. frame, otherwise those beams would be fixed anyway.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recover_beam_momenta => process_instance_recover_beam_momenta

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_recover_beam_momenta (instance, i_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    integer :: i
    if (.not. instance%process%beam_config%lab_is_cm_frame) then
      if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS) then
        i = instance%term(i_term)%config%i_component

```

```

        call instance%component(i)%return_beam_momenta ()
    end if
end if
end subroutine process_instance_recover_beam_momenta

```

Explicitly choose MC integration channel. We assume here that the channel count is identical for all active components.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: select_channel => process_instance_select_channel

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_instance_select_channel (instance, channel)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: channel
        instance%selected_channel = channel
    end subroutine process_instance_select_channel

```

First step of process evaluation: set up seed kinematics. That is, for each active process component, compute a momentum array from the MC input parameters.

If `skip_term` is set, we skip the component that accesses this term. We can assume that the associated data have already been recovered, and we are just computing the rest.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: compute_seed_kinematics => &
        process_instance_compute_seed_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_instance_compute_seed_kinematics (instance, skip_term)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in), optional :: skip_term
        integer :: channel, skip_component, i
        logical :: success
        channel = instance%selected_channel
        if (channel == 0) then
            call msg_bug ("Compute seed kinematics: undefined integration channel")
        end if
        if (present (skip_term)) then
            skip_component = instance%term(skip_term)%config%i_component
        else
            skip_component = 0
        end if
        if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_ACTIVATED) then
            success = .true.
            do i = 1, size (instance%component)
                if (i == skip_component) cycle
                if (instance%component(i)%active) then
                    call instance%component(i)%compute_seed_kinematics &
                        (instance%mc_work(instance%i_mci), channel, success)
                    if (.not. success) exit
                end if
            end do
            if (success) then
                instance%evaluation_status = STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine process_instance_compute_seed_kinematics

```

```

        else
            instance%evaluation_status = STAT_FAILED_KINEMATICS
        end if
    end if
end subroutine process_instance_compute_seed_kinematics

```

Inverse: recover missing parts of the kinematics from the momentum configuration, which we know for a single term and component. Given a channel, reconstruct the MC parameter set.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: recover_mcpar => process_instance_recover_mcpar

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_instance_recover_mcpar (instance, i_term)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        integer :: channel
        integer :: i
        if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS) then
            channel = instance%selected_channel
            if (channel == 0) then
                call msg_bug ("Recover MC parameters: undefined integration channel")
            end if
            i = instance%term(i_term)%config%i_component
            call instance%component(i)%recover_mcpar &
                (instance%mc_i_work(instance%i_mci), channel)
        end if
    end subroutine process_instance_recover_mcpar

```

Second step of process evaluation: compute all momenta, for all active components, from the seed kinematics.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+=
    procedure :: compute_hard_kinematics => &
        process_instance_compute_hard_kinematics

<Processes: procedures>+=
    subroutine process_instance_compute_hard_kinematics (instance, skip_term)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in), optional :: skip_term
        integer :: i
        if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
            do i = 1, size (instance%component)
                if (instance%component(i)%active) then
                    call instance%component(i)% &
                        compute_hard_kinematics (instance%term, skip_term)
                end if
            end do
            instance%evaluation_status = STAT_HARD_KINEMATICS
        end if
    end subroutine process_instance_compute_hard_kinematics

```

Inverse: recover seed kinematics. We know the beam momentum configuration and the outgoing momenta of the effective interaction, for one specific term.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover_seed_kinematics => &
    process_instance_recover_seed_kinematics

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_recover_seed_kinematics (instance, i_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS) then
      associate (i_component => instance%term(i_term)%config%i_component)
        call instance%component(i_component)% &
          recover_seed_kinematics (instance%term(i_term))
      end associate
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_recover_seed_kinematics

```

Third step of process evaluation: compute the effective momentum configurations, for all active terms, from the hard kinematics.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: compute_eff_kinematics => &
    process_instance_compute_eff_kinematics

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_compute_eff_kinematics (instance, skip_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in), optional :: skip_term
    integer :: i
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_HARD_KINEMATICS) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%term)
        if (present (skip_term)) then
          if (i == skip_term) cycle
        end if
        if (instance%term(i)%active) then
          call instance%term(i)% &
            compute_eff_kinematics (instance%component)
        end if
      end do
      instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_compute_eff_kinematics

```

Inverse: recover the hard kinematics from effective kinematics for one term, then compute effective kinematics for the other terms.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover_hard_kinematics => &
    process_instance_recover_hard_kinematics

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_recover_hard_kinematics (instance, i_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    integer :: i

```

```

if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS) then
  call instance%term(i_term)%recover_hard_kinematics (instance%component)
  do i = 1, size (instance%term)
    if (i /= i_term) then
      if (instance%term(i)%active) then
        call instance%term(i)% &
          compute_eff_kinematics (instance%component)
      end if
    end if
  end do
  instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS
end if
end subroutine process_instance_recover_hard_kinematics

```

Fourth step of process evaluation: check cuts for all terms. Where successful, compute any scales and weights. Otherwise, deactivate the term. If any of the terms has passed, set the state to STAT\_PASSED\_CUTS.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_expressions => &
    process_instance_evaluate_expressions

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_evaluate_expressions (instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer :: i
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%term)
        if (instance%term(i)%active) then
          call instance%term(i)%evaluate_expressions ()
        end if
      end do
      if (any (instance%term%passed)) then
        instance%evaluation_status = STAT_PASSED_CUTS
      else
        instance%evaluation_status = STAT_FAILED_CUTS
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_evaluate_expressions

```

Fifth step of process evaluation: fill the parameters for the non-selected channels, that have not been used for seeding. We should do this after evaluating cuts, since we may save some expensive calculations if the phase space point fails the cuts.

If `skip_term` is set, we skip the component that accesses this term. We can assume that the associated data have already been recovered, and we are just computing the rest.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_other_channels => &
    process_instance_compute_other_channels

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_compute_other_channels (instance, skip_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: skip_term
integer :: channel, skip_component, i
channel = instance%selected_channel
if (channel == 0) then
    call msg_bug ("Compute other channels: undefined integration channel")
end if
if (present (skip_term)) then
    skip_component = instance%term(skip_term)%config%i_component
else
    skip_component = 0
end if
if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_PASSED_CUTS) then
    do i = 1, size (instance%component)
        if (i == skip_component) cycle
        if (instance%component(i)%active) then
            call instance%component(i)%compute_other_channels &
                (instance%mc_i_work(instance%i_mci), channel)
        end if
    end do
end if
end subroutine process_instance_compute_other_channels

```

Sixth step of process evaluation: evaluate the matrix elements, and compute the trace (summed over quantum numbers) for all terms. Finally, sum up the terms, iterating over all active process components.

*(Processes: process instance: TBP)* +=

```

    procedure :: evaluate_trace => process_instance_evaluate_trace

```

*(Processes: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine process_instance_evaluate_trace (instance)
class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
integer :: i
if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_PASSED_CUTS) then
    do i = 1, size (instance%term)
        associate (term => instance%term(i))
            if (term%active .and. term%passed) then
                call term%evaluate_interaction (instance%component)
                call term%evaluate_trace ()
            end if
        end associate
    end do
    instance%sqme = 0
    do i = 1, size (instance%component)
        associate (component => instance%component(i))
            if (component%active) then
                call component%evaluate_sqme (instance%term)
                instance%sqme = instance%sqme + component%sqme
            end if
        end associate
    end do
    instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE
else
    ! failed kinematics, failed cuts: set sqme to zero
    instance%sqme = 0

```

```

end if
end subroutine process_instance_evaluate_trace

```

Final step of process evaluation: evaluate the matrix elements, and compute the trace (summed over quantum numbers) for all terms. Finally, sum up the terms, iterating over all active process components.

If `weight` is provided, we already know the kinematical event weight (the MCI weight which depends on the kinematics sampling algorithm, but not on the matrix element), so we do not need to take it from the MCI record.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_event_data => process_instance_evaluate_event_data
(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_evaluate_event_data (instance, weight)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight
    integer :: i
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%term)
        associate (term => instance%term(i))
          if (term%active .and. term%passed) then
            call term%evaluate_event_data ()
          end if
        end associate
      end do
      if (present (weight)) then
        instance%weight = weight
      else
        instance%weight = &
          instance%mci_work(instance%i_mci)%mci%get_event_weight ()
        instance%excess = &
          instance%mci_work(instance%i_mci)%mci%get_event_excess ()
      end if
      instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE
    else
      ! failed kinematics etc.: set weight to zero
      instance%weight = 0
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_evaluate_event_data

```

For unweighted event generation, we should reset the reported event weight to unity (signed) or zero. The latter case is appropriate for an event which failed for whatever reason.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: normalize_weight => process_instance_normalize_weight
(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_normalize_weight (instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    if (instance%weight /= 0) then
      instance%weight = sign (1._default, instance%weight)
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_normalize_weight

```

This is a convenience routine that performs the computations of the steps 1 to 5 in a single step. The arguments are the input for `set_mcp`. After this, the evaluation status should be either `STAT_FAILED_KINEMATICS`, `STAT_FAILED_CUTS` or `STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE`.

Before calling this, we should call `choose_mci`.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: evaluate_sqme => process_instance_evaluate_sqme

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_evaluate_sqme (instance, channel, x)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: channel
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x
    call instance%reset ()
    call instance%set_mcp (x)
    call instance%select_channel (channel)
    call instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
    call instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()
    call instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
    call instance%evaluate_expressions ()
    call instance%compute_other_channels ()
    call instance%evaluate_trace ()
  end subroutine process_instance_evaluate_sqme

```

This is the inverse. Assuming that the final trace evaluator contains a valid momentum configuration, recover kinematics and recalculate the matrix elements and their trace.

To be precise, we first recover kinematics for the given term and associated component, then recalculate from that all other terms and active components. The `channel` is not really required to obtain the matrix element, but it allows us to reconstruct the exact MC parameter set that corresponds to the given phase space point.

Before calling this, we should call `choose_mci`.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: recover => process_instance_recover

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_recover (instance, channel, i_term, update_sqme)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: channel
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    logical, intent(in) :: update_sqme
    call instance%activate ()
    instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS
    call instance%recover_hard_kinematics (i_term)
    call instance%recover_seed_kinematics (i_term)
    call instance%select_channel (channel)
    call instance%recover_mcp (i_term)
    call instance%recover_beam_momenta (i_term)
    call instance%compute_seed_kinematics (i_term)
    call instance%compute_hard_kinematics (i_term)
    call instance%compute_eff_kinematics (i_term)
    call instance%compute_other_channels (i_term)
  end subroutine process_instance_recover

```



```

    call instance%evaluate_expressions ()
    if (update_sqme) call instance%evaluate_trace ()
end subroutine process_instance_recover

```

The `evaluate` method is required by the `sampler_t` base type of which the process instance is an extension.

The requirement is that after the process instance is evaluated, the integrand, the selected channel, the  $x$  array, and the  $f$  Jacobian array are exposed by the `sampler_t` object.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => process_instance_evaluate

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_evaluate (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(out) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    call sampler%evaluate_sqme (c, x_in)
    if (sampler%is_valid ()) call sampler%fetch (val, x, f)
    call sampler%record_call ()
  end subroutine process_instance_evaluate

```

The phase-space point is valid if the event has valid kinematics and has passed the cuts.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_valid => process_instance_is_valid

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_instance_is_valid (sampler) result (valid)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: sampler
    logical :: valid
    valid = sampler%evaluation_status >= STAT_PASSED_CUTS
  end function process_instance_is_valid

```

The `rebuild` method should rebuild the kinematics section out of the `x_in` parameter set. The integrand value `val` should not be computed, but is provided as input.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: rebuild => process_instance_rebuild

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_rebuild (sampler, c, x_in, val, x, f)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: sampler
    integer, intent(in) :: c
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in) :: x_in
    real(default), intent(in) :: val
    real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
    call msg_bug ("process_instance_rebuild not implemented yet")
    x = 0

```

```

    f = 0
end subroutine process_instance_rebuild

```

This is another method required by the `sampler_t` base type: fetch the data that are relevant for the MCI record.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fetch => process_instance_fetch

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_fetch (sampler, val, x, f)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: sampler
        real(default), intent(out) :: val
        real(default), dimension(:,:), intent(out) :: x
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: f
        integer :: i, cc
        integer :: n_channel
        val = 0
        FIND_COMPONENT: do i = 1, size (sampler%component)
            associate (component => sampler%component(i))
                if (component%active) then
                    associate (k => component%k_seed)
                        n_channel = k%n_channel
                        do cc = 1, n_channel
                            call k%get_mcpair (cc, x(:,cc))
                        end do
                        f = k%f
                        val = sampler%sqme * k%phs_factor
                    end associate
                end if
            end do FIND_COMPONENT
        end do
    end subroutine process_instance_fetch

```

Initialize and finalize event generation for the specified MCI entry.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_simulation => process_instance_init_simulation
    procedure :: final_simulation => process_instance_final_simulation

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_init_simulation (instance, i_mci, safety_factor)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: safety_factor
        call instance%mci_work(i_mci)%init_simulation (safety_factor)
    end subroutine process_instance_init_simulation

    subroutine process_instance_final_simulation (instance, i_mci)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        call instance%mci_work(i_mci)%final_simulation ()
    end subroutine process_instance_final_simulation

```

### 15.5.12 Accessing the process instance

Once the seed kinematics is complete, we can retrieve the MC input parameters for all channels, not just the seed channel.

Note: We choose the first active component. This makes sense only if the seed kinematics is identical for all active components.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: get_mcpair => process_instance_get_mcpair

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_instance_get_mcpair (instance, channel, x)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: channel
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(out) :: x
    integer :: i
    if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_SEED_KINEMATICS) then
      do i = 1, size (instance%component)
        if (instance%component(i)%active) then
          call instance%component(i)%k_seed%get_mcpair (channel, x)
          return
        end if
      end do
      call msg_bug ("Process instance: get_mcpair: no active channels")
    else
      call msg_bug ("Process instance: get_mcpair: no seed kinematics")
    end if
  end subroutine process_instance_get_mcpair

```

Return true if the `sqme` value is known. This also implies that the event is kinematically valid and has passed all cuts.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: has_evaluated_trace => process_instance_has_evaluated_trace

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  function process_instance_has_evaluated_trace (instance) result (flag)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
    logical :: flag
    flag = instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE
  end function process_instance_has_evaluated_trace

```

Return true if the event is complete. In particular, the event must be kinematically valid, passed all cuts, and the event data have been computed.

```

(Processes: process instance: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: is_complete_event => process_instance_is_complete_event

(Processes: procedures)+≡
  function process_instance_is_complete_event (instance) result (flag)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
    logical :: flag
    flag = instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE
  end function process_instance_is_complete_event

```

Select a term for the process instance which is to provide the event record.

Note: this should be done using random numbers and applying probabilities for the various terms and components that belong to the selected MCI group. The current implementation simply selects the first term for the first active component.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_i_term => process_instance_select_i_term

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_select_i_term (instance, i_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
    integer, intent(out) :: i_term
    integer :: i_mci, i_component
    i_mci = instance%i_mci
    i_component = instance%process%mc_entry(i_mci)%i_component(1)
    i_term = instance%process%component(i_component)%i_term(1)
  end subroutine process_instance_select_i_term

```

Return pointer to the master beam interaction.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_beam_int_ptr => process_instance_get_beam_int_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_instance_get_beam_int_ptr (instance) result (ptr)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => instance%sf_chain%get_beam_int_ptr ()
  end function process_instance_get_beam_int_ptr

```

Return pointers to the matrix and flows interactions, given a term index.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_trace_int_ptr => process_instance_get_trace_int_ptr
  procedure :: get_matrix_int_ptr => process_instance_get_matrix_int_ptr
  procedure :: get_flows_int_ptr => process_instance_get_flows_int_ptr

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  function process_instance_get_trace_int_ptr (instance, i_term) result (ptr)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => instance%term(i_term)%connected%get_trace_int_ptr ()
  end function process_instance_get_trace_int_ptr

  function process_instance_get_matrix_int_ptr (instance, i_term) result (ptr)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => instance%term(i_term)%connected%get_matrix_int_ptr ()
  end function process_instance_get_matrix_int_ptr

  function process_instance_get_flows_int_ptr (instance, i_term) result (ptr)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: ptr

```

```

    ptr => instance%term(i_term)%connected%get_flows_int_ptr ()
end function process_instance_get_flows_int_ptr

```

Return pointers to the parton states of a selected term.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_isolated_state_ptr => &
        process_instance_get_isolated_state_ptr
    procedure :: get_connected_state_ptr => &
        process_instance_get_connected_state_ptr
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    function process_instance_get_isolated_state_ptr (instance, i_term) &
        result (ptr)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        type(isolated_state_t), pointer :: ptr
        ptr => instance%term(i_term)%isolated
    end function process_instance_get_isolated_state_ptr

    function process_instance_get_connected_state_ptr (instance, i_term) &
        result (ptr)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        type(connected_state_t), pointer :: ptr
        ptr => instance%term(i_term)%connected
    end function process_instance_get_connected_state_ptr

```

Return the indices of the beam particles and incoming partons within the currently active state matrix, respectively.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_beam_index => process_instance_get_beam_index
    procedure :: get_in_index => process_instance_get_in_index
<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_instance_get_beam_index (instance, i_term, i_beam)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_beam
        call instance%term(i_term)%connected%get_beam_index (i_beam)
    end subroutine process_instance_get_beam_index

    subroutine process_instance_get_in_index (instance, i_term, i_in)
        class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term
        integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: i_in
        call instance%term(i_term)%connected%get_in_index (i_in)
    end subroutine process_instance_get_in_index

```

Return squared matrix element and event weight, and event weight excess where applicable.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_sqme => process_instance_get_sqme
    procedure :: get_weight => process_instance_get_weight
    procedure :: get_excess => process_instance_get_excess

```

```

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_instance_get_sqme (instance) result (sqme)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  real(default) :: sqme
  if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVALUATED_TRACE) then
    sqme = instance%sqme
  else
    sqme = 0
  end if
end function process_instance_get_sqme

function process_instance_get_weight (instance) result (weight)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  real(default) :: weight
  if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE) then
    weight = instance%weight
  else
    weight = 0
  end if
end function process_instance_get_weight

function process_instance_get_excess (instance) result (excess)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  real(default) :: excess
  if (instance%evaluation_status >= STAT_EVENT_COMPLETE) then
    excess = instance%excess
  else
    excess = 0
  end if
end function process_instance_get_excess

```

Return the currently selected MCI channel.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_channel => process_instance_get_channel

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_instance_get_channel (instance) result (channel)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  integer :: channel
  channel = instance%selected_channel
end function process_instance_get_channel

```

Return factorization scale and strong coupling. We have to select a term instance.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_fac_scale => process_instance_get_fac_scale
  procedure :: get_alpha_s => process_instance_get_alpha_s

<Processes: procedures>+≡
function process_instance_get_fac_scale (instance, i_term) result (fac_scale)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  integer, intent(in) :: i_term
  real(default) :: fac_scale
  fac_scale = instance%term(i_term)%get_fac_scale ()

```

```

end function process_instance_get_fac_scale

function process_instance_get_alpha_s (instance, i_term) result (alpha_s)
  class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: instance
  integer, intent(in) :: i_term
  real(default) :: alpha_s
  alpha_s = instance%term(i_term)%get_alpha_s (instance%component)
end function process_instance_get_alpha_s

```

Counter.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset_counter => process_instance_reset_counter
  procedure :: record_call => process_instance_record_call
  procedure :: get_counter => process_instance_get_counter

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_reset_counter (process_instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: process_instance
    call process_instance%mci_work(process_instance%i_mci)%reset_counter ()
  end subroutine process_instance_reset_counter

  subroutine process_instance_record_call (process_instance)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: process_instance
    call process_instance%mci_work(process_instance%i_mci)%record_call &
      (process_instance%evaluation_status)
  end subroutine process_instance_record_call

  function process_instance_get_counter (process_instance) result (counter)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in) :: process_instance
    type(process_counter_t) :: counter
    counter = process_instance%mci_work(process_instance%i_mci)%get_counter ()
  end function process_instance_get_counter

```

### 15.5.13 Particle sets

Here we provide two procedures that convert the process instance from/to a particle set. The conversion applies to the trace evaluator which has no quantum-number information, thus it involves only the momenta and the parent-child relations. We keep virtual particles.

Nevertheless, it is possible to reconstruct the complete structure from a particle set. The reconstruction implies a re-evaluation of the structure function and matrix-element codes.

The `i_term` index is needed for both input and output, to select among different active trace evaluators.

In both cases, the `instance` object must be properly initialized.

```

<Processes: process instance: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_trace => process_instance_get_trace
  procedure :: set_trace => process_instance_set_trace

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_instance_get_trace (instance, pset, i_term)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: instance

```

```

    type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: pset
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    logical :: ok
    int => instance%get_trace_int_ptr (i_term)
    call particle_set_init (pset, ok, int, int, FM_IGNORE_HELICITY, &
        [0._default, 0._default], .false., .true.)
end subroutine process_instance_get_trace

subroutine process_instance_set_trace (instance, pset, i_term, recover_beams)
    class(process_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: instance
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: pset
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    integer :: n_in
    int => instance%get_trace_int_ptr (i_term)
    n_in = instance%process%get_n_in ()
    call particle_set_fill_interaction (pset, int, n_in, recover_beams)
end subroutine process_instance_set_trace

```

The `pacify` subroutine has the purpose of setting numbers to zero which are (by comparing with a `tolerance` parameter) considered equivalent with zero. We do this in some unit tests. Here, we apply this to the phase space subobject of the process instance.

```

<Processes: public>+≡
    public :: pacify

<Processes: interfaces>≡
    interface pacify
        module procedure pacify_process_instance
    end interface pacify

<Processes: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pacify_process_instance (instance)
        type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: instance
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (instance%component)
            call pacify (instance%component(i)%k_seed%phs)
        end do
    end subroutine pacify_process_instance

```

#### 15.5.14 Unit tests

```

<Processes: public>+≡
    public :: processes_test

<Processes: tests>≡
    subroutine processes_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Processes: execute tests>

```



```
end subroutine processes_test
```

## Test process type

For the following tests, we define a simple implementation of the abstract `prc_core_t`, designed such as to complement the `prc_test_t` process definition type.

Note that it is not given that the actual process is defined as `prc_test_t` type. We enforce this by calling `prc_test_create_library`. The driver component in the process core will then become of type `prc_test_t`.

```
<Processes: public>+≡
  public :: test_t

<Processes: test types>≡
  type, extends (prc_core_t) :: test_t
    contains
      procedure :: write => test_write
      procedure :: needs_mcset => test_needs_mcset
      procedure :: get_n_terms => test_get_n_terms
      procedure :: is_allowed => test_is_allowed
      procedure :: compute_hard_kinematics => test_compute_hard_kinematics
      procedure :: compute_eff_kinematics => test_compute_eff_kinematics
      procedure :: recover_kinematics => test_recover_kinematics
      procedure :: compute_amplitude => test_compute_amplitude
    end type test_t

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine test_write (object, unit)
    class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "test type implementing prc_test"
  end subroutine test_write
```

This process type always needs a MC parameter set and a single term. This only state is always allowed.

```
<Processes: tests>+≡
  function test_needs_mcset (object) result (flag)
    class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function test_needs_mcset

  function test_get_n_terms (object) result (n)
    class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer :: n
    n = 1
  end function test_get_n_terms

  function test_is_allowed (object, i_term, f, h, c) result (flag)
```

```

class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in) :: i_term, f, h, c
logical :: flag
flag = .true.
end function test_is_allowed

```

Transfer the generated momenta directly to the hard interaction in the (only) term. We assume that everything has been set up correctly, so the array fits.

```

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine test_compute_hard_kinematics &
  (object, p_seed, i_term, int_hard, tmp)
class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_seed
integer, intent(in) :: i_term
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
call interaction_set_momenta (int_hard, p_seed)
end subroutine test_compute_hard_kinematics

```

This procedure is not called for `test_t`, just a placeholder.

```

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine test_compute_eff_kinematics &
  (object, i_term, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in) :: i_term
type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_hard
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
end subroutine test_compute_eff_kinematics

```

Transfer the incoming momenta of `p_seed` directly to the effective interaction, and vice versa for the outgoing momenta.

`int_hard` is left untouched since `int_eff` is an alias (via pointer) to it.

```

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine test_recover_kinematics &
  (object, p_seed, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: p_seed
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
integer :: n_in
n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_eff)
call interaction_set_momenta (int_eff, p_seed(1:n_in), outgoing = .false.)
p_seed(n_in+1:) = interaction_get_momenta (int_eff, outgoing = .true.)
end subroutine test_recover_kinematics

```

Compute the amplitude. The driver ignores all quantum numbers and, in fact, returns a constant. Nevertheless, we properly transfer the momentum vectors.

```

<Processes: tests>+≡
function test_compute_amplitude &

```

```

      (object, j, p, f, h, c, fac_scale, ren_scale, tmp) result (amp)
class(test_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in) :: j
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
integer, intent(in) :: f, h, c
real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale, ren_scale
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable, optional :: tmp
complex(default) :: amp
real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: parray
integer :: i, n_tot
select type (driver => object%driver)
type is (prc_test_t)
  if (driver%scattering) then
    n_tot = 4
  else
    n_tot = 3
  end if
  allocate (parray (0:3,n_tot))
  forall (i = 1:n_tot) parray(:,i) = vector4_get_components (p(i))
  amp = driver%get_amplitude (parray)
end select
end function test_compute_amplitude

```

### Write an empty process object

The most trivial test is to write an uninitialized process object.

```

<Processes: execute tests>≡
  call test (processes_1, "processes_1", &
    "write an empty process object", &
    u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine processes_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_t) :: process

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display an empty process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call process%write (.false., u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_1"

  end subroutine processes_1

```

### Initialize a process object

Initialize a process and display it.

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡

```

```

call test (processes_2, "processes_2", &
    "initialize a simple process object", &
    u, results)
<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine processes_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: initialize a simple process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a test library with one process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    libname = "processes2"
    procname = libname
    run_id = "run2"
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (process)
    call process%init &
        (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

    allocate (test_t :: core_template)
    allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
    call process%init_component &
        (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

    call process%setup_mci ()

    call process%write (.false., u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call process%final ()

```

```

deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_2"

end subroutine processes_2

```

### Compute a trivial matrix element

Initialize a process, retrieve some information and compute a matrix element.

We use the same trivial process as for the previous test. All momentum and state dependence is trivial, so we just test basic functionality.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_3, "processes_3", &
    "retrieve a trivial matrix element", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: p

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a process &
      &and compute a matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a test library with one process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    libname = "processes3"
    procname = libname
    run_id = "run3"
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

```

```

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_test_t :: mci_template)
select type (mci_template)
type is (mci_test_t)
    call mci_template%set_dimensions (2, 2)
    call mci_template%set_divisions (100)
end select
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Return the number of process components"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_components = ", process%get_n_components ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Return the number of flavor states"
write (u, "(A)")

data = process%get_constants (1)

write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_flv(1) = ", data%n_flv

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Return the first flavor state"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A,4(1x,I0))")  "flv_state(1) =", data%flv_state (:,1)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up kinematics &
    &[arbitrary, the matrix element is constant]"

allocate (p (4))

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Retrieve the matrix element"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A,F5.3,' + ',F5.3,' I')")  "me (1, p, 1, 1, 1) = ", &
    process%compute_amplitude (1, 1, p, 1, 1, 1)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

```

```

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_3"

end subroutine processes_3

```

### Generate a process instance

Initialize a process and process instance, choose a sampling point and fill the process instance.

We use the same trivial process as for the previous test. All momentum and state dependence is trivial, so we just test basic functionality.

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡
call test (processes_4, "processes_4", &
  "create and fill a process instance (partonic event)", &
  u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine processes_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(string_t) :: libname
  type(string_t) :: procname
  type(string_t) :: run_id
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(qcd_t) :: qcd
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
  class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
  real(default) :: sqrts
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(particle_set_t) :: pset

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a process &
    &and fill a process instance"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a test process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  libname = "processes4"
  procname = libname
  run_id = "run4"
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
  call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrt_s = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrt_s (sqrt_s)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inject a set of random numbers"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_mcpars ([0._default, 0._default])
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up hard kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels ()

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate matrix element and square"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%evaluate_trace ()
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)

call process_instance%activate ()
process_instance%evaluation_status = STAT_EFF_KINEMATICS
call process_instance%recover_hard_kinematics (i_term = 1)
call process_instance%recover_seed_kinematics (i_term = 1)
call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%recover_mcpair (i_term = 1)

call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics (skip_term = 1)
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics (skip_term = 1)
call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics (skip_term = 1)

call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels (skip_term = 1)
call process_instance%evaluate_trace ()
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (pset)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()

```

```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_4"

end subroutine processes_4

```

## Handle partonic cuts

Initialize a process and process instance, choose a sampling point and fill the process instance, evaluating a given cut configuration.

We use the same trivial process as for the previous test. All momentum and state dependence is trivial, so we just test basic functionality.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_5, "processes_5", &
    "handle cuts (partonic event)", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: cut_expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a process &
      &and fill a process instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a cut expression"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_pexpr_init ()
    cut_expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
    call ifile_append (ifile, cut_expr_text)
    call stream_init (stream, ifile)
    call parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, .true.)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a test process"
write (u, "(A)")

libname = "processes5"
procname = libname
run_id = "run5"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
call process%set_var_list (model_get_var_list_ptr (process%config%model))
call var_list_append_real &
    (process%meta%var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization and set cuts"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%set_cuts (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree))
call process%write (.false., u, show_var_list=.true., show_expressions=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inject a set of random numbers"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_mcpair ([0._default, 0._default])

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up kinematics and subevt, check cuts (should fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels ()

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for another set (should succeed)"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%reset ()
call process_instance%set_mcpair ([0.5_default, 0.125_default])
call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels ()
call process_instance%evaluate_trace ()

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for another set using convenience procedure &
                    &(failure)"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (1, [0.0_default, 0.2_default])

call process_instance%write_header (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate for another set using convenience procedure &
                    &(success)"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (1, [0.1_default, 0.2_default])

call process_instance%write_header (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

```

```

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_5"

end subroutine processes_5

```

## Scales and such

Initialize a process and process instance, choose a sampling point and fill the process instance, evaluating a given cut configuration.

We use the same trivial process as for the previous test. All momentum and state dependence is trivial, so we just test basic functionality.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_6, "processes_6", &
    "handle scales and weight (partonic event)", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_scale, pt_fac_scale, pt_ren_scale, pt_weight
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a process &
      &and fill a process instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_pexpr_init ()

expr_text = "sqrts - 100 GeV"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_scale, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)

expr_text = "sqrts_hat"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "fac_scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_fac_scale, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)

expr_text = "eval sqrt (M2) [collect [s]]"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "ren_scale = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_ren_scale, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)

expr_text = "n_tot * n_in * n_out * (eval Phi / pi [s])"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "weight = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_weight, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)

call ifile_final (ifile)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a test process"
write (u, "(A)")

libname = "processes4"
procname = libname
run_id = "run4"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

```

```

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
call process%set_var_list (model_get_var_list_ptr (process%config%model))

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrt_s = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrt_s (sqrt_s)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization and set cuts"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%set_scale (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_scale))
call process%set_fac_scale (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_fac_scale))
call process%set_ren_scale (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_ren_scale))
call process%set_weight (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_weight))
call process%write (.false., u, show_expressions=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (1, [0.5_default, 0.125_default])

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call parse_tree_final (pt_scale)
call parse_tree_final (pt_fac_scale)
call parse_tree_final (pt_ren_scale)
call parse_tree_final (pt_weight)
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

```

```

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_6"

end subroutine processes_6

```

## Structure function configuration

Configure structure functions (multi-channel) in a process object.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_7, "processes_7", &
    "process configuration with structure functions", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_7 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
    type(sf_channel_t), dimension(2) :: sf_channel

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_7"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize a process with &
      &structure functions"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    libname = "processes7"
    procname = libname
    run_id = "run7"
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

```



```

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set beam, structure functions, and mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()

model => model_list%get_model_ptr (var_str ("Test"))
pdg_in = 25
allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data)
call process%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
deallocate (sf_config)

call process%beam_config%allocate_sf_channels (3)

call sf_channel(1)%init (2)
call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (2, sf_channel(1))

call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%set_s_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (3, sf_channel(2))

call process%setup_mci ()

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_7"

end subroutine processes_7

```

## Evaluating a process with structure function

Configure structure functions (single-channel) in a process object, create an instance, compute kinematics and evaluate.

Note the order of operations when setting up structure functions and phase space. The beams are first, they determine the `sqrts` value. We can also set up the chain of structure functions. We then configure the phase space. From this, we can obtain information about special configurations (resonances, etc.), which we need for allocating the possible structure-function channels (parameterizations and mappings). Finally, we match phase-space channels onto structure-function channels.

In the current example, this matching is trivial; we only have one structure-function channel.

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡
  call test (processes_8, "processes_8", &
    "process evaluation with structure functions", &
    u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine processes_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
    type(sf_channel_t) :: sf_channel
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: evaluate a process with &
      &structure functions"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
write (u, "(A)")

libname = "processes8"
procname = libname
run_id = "run8"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set beam, structure functions, and mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)

model => model_list%get_model_ptr (var_str ("Test"))
pdg_in = 25
allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data)
call process%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
deallocate (sf_config)

call process%configure_phs ()

call process%beam_config%allocate_sf_channels (1)

call sf_channel%init (2)
call sf_channel%activate_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (1, sf_channel)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_mci ()

```

```

call process%setup_terms ()

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up kinematics and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (1, &
    [0.8_default, 0.8_default, 0.1_default, 0.2_default])
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (2)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%recover &
    (channel = 1, i_term = 1, update_sqme = .true.)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (pset)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

```

```

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_8"

end subroutine processes_8

```

### Multi-channel phase space and structure function

This is an extension of the previous example. This time, we have two distinct structure-function channels which are matched to the two distinct phase-space channels.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_9, "processes_9", &
    "multichannel kinematics and structure functions", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_9 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
    type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
    type(sf_channel_t) :: sf_channel
    real(default), dimension(4) :: x_saved
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_9"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: evaluate a process with &
      &structure functions"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           in a multi-channel configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

libname = "processes9"
procname = libname
run_id = "run9"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set beam, structure functions, and mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)

model => model_list%get_model_ptr (var_str ("Test"))
pdg_in = 25
allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data)
call process%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
deallocate (sf_config)

call process%configure_phs ()

call process%beam_config%allocate_sf_channels (2)

call sf_channel%init (2)
call process%set_sf_channel (1, sf_channel)

call sf_channel%init (2)
call sf_channel%activate_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (2, sf_channel)

call process%component(1)%phs_config%set_sf_channel ([1, 2])

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_mci ()
call process%setup_terms ()

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up kinematics in channel 1 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (1, &
    [0.8_default, 0.8_default, 0.1_default, 0.2_default])
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract MC input parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "Channel 1:"
call process_instance%get_mcpair (1, x_saved)
write (u, "(2x,9(1x,F7.5))") x_saved

write (u, "(A)")  "Channel 2:"
call process_instance%get_mcpair (2, x_saved)
write (u, "(2x,9(1x,F7.5))") x_saved

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up kinematics in channel 2 and evaluate"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%evaluate_sqme (2, x_saved)
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover process instance for channel 2"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (2)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

```

```

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%recover &
    (channel = 2, i_term = 1, update_sqme = .true.)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (pset)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_9"

end subroutine processes_9

```

## Event generation

Activate the MC integrator for the process object and use it to generate a single event. Note that the test integrator does not require integration in preparation for generating events.

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡
  call test (processes_10, "processes_10", &
    "event generation", &
    u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine processes_10 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_10"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events for a process without &
                    &structure functions"
write (u, "(A)")  "*                      in a multi-channel configuration"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
write (u, "(A)")

libname = "processes10"
procname = libname
run_id = "run10"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_test_t :: mci_template)
select type (mci_template)
type is (mci_test_t); call mci_template%set_divisions (100)
end select
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()

call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate weighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (mci => process%mci_entry(1)%mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
  ! This ensures that the next 'random' numbers are 0.3, 0.5, 0.7
  call mci%rng%init (3)
  ! Include the constant PHS factor in the stored maximum of the integrand
  call mci%set_max_factor (conv * twopi4 &
    / (2 * sqrt (lambda (sqrt2 **2, 125._default**2, 125._default**2))))
end select

call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate unweighted event"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%generate_unweighted_event (process_instance, 1)
select type (mci => process%mci_entry(1)%mci)
type is (mci_test_t)
  write (u, "(A,I0)")  " Success in try ", mci%tries
  write (u, "(A)")
end select

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_10"

end subroutine processes_10

```

## Integration

Activate the MC integrator for the process object and use it to integrate over phase space.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_11, "processes_11", &

```

```

        "integration", &
        u, results)
    (Processes: tests)+≡
    subroutine processes_11 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_library_t), target :: lib
        type(string_t) :: libname
        type(string_t) :: procname
        type(string_t) :: run_id
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd
        class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
        class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
        class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
        real(default) :: sqrts
        type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_11"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: integrate a process without &
            &structure functions"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*               in a multi-channel configuration"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        libname = "processes11"
        procname = libname
        run_id = "run11"
        call os_data_init (os_data)
        allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
        call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call reset_interaction_counter ()

        allocate (process)
        call process%init &
            (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

        allocate (test_t :: core_template)
        allocate (mci_test_t :: mci_template)
        select type (mci_template)
        type is (mci_test_t)
            call mci_template%set_divisions (100)
        end select
        allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
        call process%init_component &
            (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()

call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with default test parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, n_it=1, n_calls=10000)
call process%final_integration (1)

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,ES13.7)")  " Integral divided by phs factor = ", &
    process%get_integral (1) &
    / process_instance%component(1)%k_seed%phs_factor

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_11"

end subroutine processes_11

```

## Complete events

For the purpose of simplifying further tests, we implement a convenience routine that initializes a process and prepares a single event. This is a wrapup of the test `processes_10`.

```
(Processes: public)+≡
    public :: prepare_test_process

(Processes: procedures)+≡
    subroutine prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
        type(process_t), intent(out), target :: process
        type(process_instance_t), intent(out), target :: process_instance
        type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
        type(process_library_t), target :: lib
        type(string_t) :: libname
        type(string_t) :: procname
        type(string_t) :: run_id
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd
        class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
        class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
        class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
        real(default) :: sqrts
        libname = "processes_test"
        procname = libname
        run_id = "run_test"
        call os_data_init (os_data)
        allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
        call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
        call reset_interaction_counter ()
        call process%init &
            (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
        allocate (test_t :: core_template)
        allocate (mci_test_t :: mci_template)
        select type (mci_template)
            type is (mci_test_t); call mci_template%set_divisions (100)
        end select
        allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
        call process%init_component &
            (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
        sqrts = 1000
        call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
        call process%configure_phs ()
        call process%setup_mci ()
        call process%setup_terms ()
        call process_instance%init (process)
        select type (mci => process%mci_entry(1)%mci)
            type is (mci_test_t)
                ! This ensures that the next 'random' numbers are 0.3, 0.5, 0.7
                call mci%rng%init (3)
                ! Include the constant PHS factor in the stored maximum of the integrand
                call mci%set_max_factor (conv * twopi4 &
                    / (2 * sqrt (lambda (sqrts **2, 125._default**2, 125._default**2))))
            end select
    end select
```

```
end subroutine prepare_test_process
```

Here we do the cleanup of the process and process instance emitted by the previous routine.

```
<Processes: public>+≡
  public :: cleanup_test_process

<Processes: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
    type(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout) :: process_instance
    call process_instance%final ()
    call process%final ()
  end subroutine cleanup_test_process
```

This is the actual test. Prepare the test process and event, fill all evaluators, and display the results. Use a particle set as temporary storage, read kinematics and recalculate the event.

```
<Processes: execute tests>+≡
  call test (processes_12, "processes_12", &
    "event post-processing", &
    u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine processes_12 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_12"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate a complete partonic event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize process and process instance &
      &and generate event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (process)
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    call process%prepare_simulation (1)
    call process_instance%init_simulation (1)
    call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
    call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

    call process_instance%write (u)

    call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
```

```

call process_instance%final_simulation (1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover kinematics and recalculate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (2)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%recover &
    (channel = 1, i_term = 1, update_sqme = .true.)

call process%recover_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_12"

end subroutine processes_12

```

### Colored interaction

This test specifically checks the transformation of process data (flavor, helicity, and color) into an interaction in a process term.

We use the `test_t` process core (which has no nontrivial particles), but call only the `is_allowed` method, which always returns true.

```

(Processes: execute tests) + ≡
call test (processes_13, "processes_13", &
    "colored interaction", &
    u, results)

```

```

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine processes_13 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(process_term_t) :: term
  class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_12"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialized a colored interaction"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up a process constants block"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), var_str ("QCD.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)
  allocate (test_t :: core)

  associate (data => term%data)
    data%n_in = 2
    data%n_out = 3
    data%n_flv = 2
    data%n_hel = 2
    data%n_col = 2
    data%n_cin = 2

    allocate (data%flv_state (5, 2))
    data%flv_state (:,1) = [ 1, 21, 1, 21, 21]
    data%flv_state (:,2) = [ 2, 21, 2, 21, 21]

    allocate (data%hel_state (5, 2))
    data%hel_state (:,1) = [1, 1, 1, 1, 0]
    data%hel_state (:,2) = [1,-1, 1,-1, 0]

    allocate (data%col_state (2, 5, 2))
    data%col_state (:,:,1) = &
      reshape ([[1, 0], [2,-1], [3, 0], [2,-3], [0,0]], [2,5])
    data%col_state (:,:,2) = &
      reshape ([[1, 0], [2,-3], [3, 0], [2,-1], [0,0]], [2,5])

    allocate (data%ghost_flag (5, 2))
    data%ghost_flag(1:4,:) = .false.
    data%ghost_flag(5,:) = .true.

  end associate

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up the interaction"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call reset_interaction_counter ()

```



```

call term%setup_interaction (core, model)
call interaction_write (term%int, u)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_13"
end subroutine processes_13

```

## MD5 sums

Configure a process with structure functions (multi-channel) and compute MD5 sums

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡
call test (processes_14, "processes_14", &
  "process configuration and MD5 sum", &
  u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
subroutine processes_14 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(string_t) :: libname
  type(string_t) :: procname
  type(string_t) :: run_id
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(qcd_t) :: qcd
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
  class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
  real(default) :: sqrts
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in
  class(sf_data_t), allocatable, target :: data
  type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
  type(sf_channel_t), dimension(3) :: sf_channel

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_14"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize a process with &
    &structure functions"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and compute MD5 sum"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  libname = "processes7"
  procname = libname
  run_id = "run7"

```

```

call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
call lib%compute_md5sum ()

call syntax_model_file_init ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_test_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set beam, structure functions, and mappings"
write (u, "(A)")

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()

model => model_list%get_model_ptr (var_str ("Test"))
pdg_in = 25
allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
select type (data)
type is (sf_test_data_t)
    call data%init (model, pdg_in)
end select

call process%beam_config%allocate_sf_channels (3)

allocate (sf_config (2))
call sf_config(1)%init ([1], data)
call sf_config(2)%init ([2], data)
call process%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
deallocate (sf_config)

call sf_channel(1)%init (2)
call process%set_sf_channel (1, sf_channel(1))

call sf_channel(2)%init (2)
call sf_channel(2)%activate_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (2, sf_channel(2))

call sf_channel(3)%init (2)
call sf_channel(3)%set_s_mapping ([1,2])
call process%set_sf_channel (3, sf_channel(3))

call process%setup_mci ()

call process%compute_md5sum ()

```

```

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_14"

end subroutine processes_14

```

## Decay Process Evaluation

Initialize and evaluate a decay process.

```

(Processes: execute tests) +=
  call test (processes_15, "processes_15", &
    "decay process", &
    u, results)

(Processes: tests) +=
  subroutine processes_15 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_15"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize a decay process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a test library with one process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    libname = "processes15"
    procname = libname

```

```

run_id = "run15"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib, scattering = .false., &
    decay = .true.)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("ff"), 0.4_default, is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_beams_decay ()
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (3)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Inject a set of random numbers"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)

```

```

call process_instance%set_mcpair ([0._default, 0._default])
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up hard kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate matrix element and square"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels ()
call process_instance%evaluate_trace ()
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (3)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%recover (1, 1, .true.)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (pset)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

```

```

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_15"

end subroutine processes_15

```

### Integration: decay

Activate the MC integrator for the decay object and use it to integrate over phase space.

```

<Processes: execute tests>+≡
  call test (processes_16, "processes_16", &
    "decay integration", &
    u, results)

<Processes: tests>+≡
  subroutine processes_16 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(string_t) :: procname
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_16"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate a process without &
      &structure functions"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           in a multi-channel configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    libname = "processes16"
    procname = libname
    run_id = "run16"
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib, scattering = .false., &

```

```

        decay = .true.)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("ff"), 0.4_default, is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (model)

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_beams_decay ()
call process%configure_phs ()

call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate with default test parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, n_it=1, n_calls=10000)
call process%final_integration (1)

call process%write (.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,ES13.7)")  " Integral divided by phs factor = ", &
    process%get_integral (1) &
    / process_instance%component(1)%k_seed/phs_factor

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: processes_16"

end subroutine processes_16

```

## Decay Process Evaluation

Initialize and evaluate a decay process for a moving particle.

*(Processes: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (processes_17, "processes_17", &
  "decay of moving particle", &
  u, results)

```

*(Processes: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine processes_17 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(string_t) :: libname
  type(string_t) :: procname
  type(string_t) :: run_id
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(qcd_t) :: qcd
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
  class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
  class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(particle_set_t) :: pset
  type(flavor_t) :: flv_beam
  real(default) :: m, p, E

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: processes_17"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize a decay process object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load a test library with one process"
  write (u, "(A)")

```



```

libname = "processes17"
procname = libname
run_id = "run17"
call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib, scattering = .false., &
    decay = .true.)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("ff"), 0.4_default, is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a trivial beam setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_beams_decay (rest_frame = .false.)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Complete process initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%setup_terms ()
call process%write(.false., u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (3)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parent momentum and random numbers"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_mcpars ([0._default, 0._default])

call flavor_init (flv_beam, 25, model)
m = flavor_get_mass (flv_beam)
p = 3 * m / 4
E = sqrt (m**2 + p**2)
call process_instance%set_beam_momenta ([vector4_moving (E, p, 3)])

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up hard kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%select_channel (1)
call process_instance%compute_seed_kinematics ()
call process_instance%compute_hard_kinematics ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Evaluate matrix element and square"
write (u, "(A)")

call process_instance%compute_eff_kinematics ()
call process_instance%evaluate_expressions ()
call process_instance%compute_other_channels ()
call process_instance%evaluate_trace ()
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%get_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Particle content:"
write (u, "(A)")

call write_separator (u)
call particle_set_write (pset, u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter (3)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)

call process_instance%choose_mci (1)
call process_instance%set_trace (pset, 1)
call process_instance%recover (1, 1, .true.)

```

```

call process_instance%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (pset)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: processes_17"

end subroutine processes_17

```

## 15.6 Process Stacks

For storing and handling multiple processes, we define process stacks. These are ordinary stacks where new process entries are pushed onto the top. We allow for multiple entries with identical process ID, but distinct run ID.

The implementation is essentially identical to the `prclib_stacks` module above. Unfortunately, Fortran supports no generic programming, so we do not make use of this fact.

When searching for a specific process ID, we will get (a pointer to) the top-most process entry with that ID on the stack, which was entered last. Usually, this is the best version of the process (in terms of integral, etc.) Thus the stack terminology makes sense.

(`process_stacks.f90`)≡  
*⟨File header⟩*

```

module process_stacks

  ⟨Use strings⟩
  ⟨Use file utils⟩
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use os_interface
  use sm_qcd
  use variables
  use models
  use rng_base

  use process_libraries
  use prc_test
  use processes

```

```

    <Standard module head>

    <Process stacks: public>

    <Process stacks: types>

    contains

    <Process stacks: procedures>

    <Process stacks: tests>

    end module process_stacks

```

### 15.6.1 The process entry type

A process entry is a process object, augmented by a pointer to the next entry. We do not need specific methods, all relevant methods are inherited.

On higher level, processes should be prepared as process entry objects.

```

    <Process stacks: public>≡
        public :: process_entry_t

    <Process stacks: types>≡
        type, extends (process_t) :: process_entry_t
            type(process_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
        end type process_entry_t

```

### 15.6.2 The process stack type

For easy conversion and lookup it is useful to store the filling number in the object. The content is stored as a linked list.

The `var_list` component stores process-specific results, so they can be retrieved as (pseudo) variables.

```

    <Process stacks: public>+≡
        public :: process_stack_t

    <Process stacks: types>+≡
        type :: process_stack_t
            integer :: n = 0
            type(process_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
            type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
        contains
            <Process stacks: process stack: TBP>
        end type process_stack_t

```

Finalizer. Iteratively deallocate the stack entries. The resulting empty stack can be immediately recycled, if necessary.

```

    <Process stacks: process stack: TBP>≡
        procedure :: final => process_stack_final

```

```

<Process stacks: procedures>≡
  subroutine process_stack_final (object)
    class(process_stack_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process
    if (associated (object%var_list)) then
      call var_list_final (object%var_list)
      deallocate (object%var_list)
    end if
    do while (associated (object%first))
      process => object%first
      object%first => process%next
      call process%final ()
      deallocate (process)
    end do
    object%n = 0
  end subroutine process_stack_final

```

Output. The processes on the stack will be ordered LIFO, i.e., backwards.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => process_stack_write

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_stack_write (object, unit, pacify)
    class(process_stack_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    select case (object%n)
    case (0)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process stack: [empty]"
      call write_separator_double (u)
    case default
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process stack:"
      process => object%first
      do while (associated (process))
        call process%write (.false., u, pacify = pacify)
        process => process%next
      end do
    end select
  end subroutine process_stack_write

```

The variable list is printed by a separate routine, since it should be linked to the global variable list, anyway.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_var_list => process_stack_write_var_list

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
  subroutine process_stack_write_var_list (object, unit)
    class(process_stack_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    if (associated (object%var_list)) then

```

```

        call var_list_write (object%var_list, unit)
    end if
end subroutine process_stack_write_var_list

```

Short output.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: show => process_stack_show

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_stack_show (object, unit)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        select case (object%n)
        case (0)
        case default
            process => object%first
            do while (associated (process))
                call process%show (u, verbose=.false.)
                process => process%next
            end do
        end select
    end subroutine process_stack_show

```

### 15.6.3 Push

We take a process pointer and push it onto the stack. The previous pointer is nullified. Subsequently, the process is ‘owned’ by the stack and will be finalized when the stack is deleted.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: push => process_stack_push

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_stack_push (stack, process)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
        type(process_entry_t), intent(inout), pointer :: process
        process%next => stack%first
        stack%first => process
        process => null ()
        stack%n = stack%n + 1
    end subroutine process_stack_push

```

Initialize the process variable list and link it to a global variable list.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_var_list => process_stack_init_var_list

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_stack_init_var_list (stack, var_list)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
        type(var_list_t), intent(inout), optional :: var_list

```

```

        allocate (stack%var_list)
        if (present (var_list)) call var_list_link (var_list, stack%var_list)
    end subroutine process_stack_init_var_list

```

Initialize process variables for a given process ID, without setting values.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_result_vars => process_stack_init_result_vars

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_stack_init_result_vars (stack, id)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        call var_list_init_num_id (stack%var_list, id)
        call var_list_init_process_results (stack%var_list, id)
    end subroutine process_stack_init_result_vars

```

Fill process variables with values. This is executed after the integration pass.

Note: We set only integral and error. With multiple MCI records possible, the results for `n_calls`, `chi2` etc. are not necessarily unique. (We might set the efficiency, though.)

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fill_result_vars => process_stack_fill_result_vars

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_stack_fill_result_vars (stack, id)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(process_t), pointer :: process
        process => stack%get_process_ptr (id)
        if (associated (process)) then
            call var_list_init_num_id (stack%var_list, id, process%get_num_id ())
            if (process%has_integral ()) then
                call var_list_init_process_results (stack%var_list, id, &
                    integral = process%get_integral (), &
                    error = process%get_error ())
            end if
        else
            call msg_bug ("process_stack_fill_result_vars: unknown process ID")
        end if
    end subroutine process_stack_fill_result_vars

```

## 15.6.4 Data Access

Tell if a process exists.

```

<Process stacks: process stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: exists => process_stack_exists

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    function process_stack_exists (stack, id) result (flag)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        logical :: flag

```

```

    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    process => stack%get_process_ptr (id)
    flag = associated (process)
end function process_stack_exists

```

Return a pointer to a process with specific ID.

```

<Process stacks: process_stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_process_ptr => process_stack_get_process_ptr

<Process stacks: procedures>+≡
    function process_stack_get_process_ptr (stack, id) result (ptr)
        class(process_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(process_t), pointer :: ptr
        type(process_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        ptr => null ()
        entry => stack%first
        do while (associated (entry))
            if (entry%get_id () == id) then
                ptr => entry%process_t
                return
            end if
            entry => entry%next
        end do
    end function process_stack_get_process_ptr

```

### 15.6.5 Unit tests

```

<Process stacks: public>+≡
    public :: process_stacks_test

<Process stacks: tests>≡
    subroutine process_stacks_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Process stacks: execute tests>
    end subroutine process_stacks_test

```

#### Write an empty process stack

The most trivial test is to write an uninitialized process stack.

```

<Process stacks: execute tests>≡
    call test (process_stacks_1, "process_stacks_1", &
        "write an empty process stack", &
        u, results)

<Process stacks: tests>+≡
    subroutine process_stacks_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_stack_t) :: stack

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_stacks_1"
    end subroutine process_stacks_1

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "*"   Purpose: display an empty process stack"
write (u, "(A)")

call stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output end: process_stacks_1"

end subroutine process_stacks_1

```

### Fill a process stack

Fill a process stack with two (identical) processes.

```

<Process stacks: execute tests>+≡
call test (process_stacks_2, "process_stacks_2", &
  "fill a process stack", &
  u, results)

<Process stacks: tests>+≡
subroutine process_stacks_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_stack_t) :: stack
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(string_t) :: libname
  type(string_t) :: procname
  type(string_t) :: run_id
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(qcd_t) :: qcd
  class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process => null ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: process_stacks_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*"   Purpose: fill a process stack"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "*" Build, initialize and store two test processes"
  write (u, "(A)")

  libname = "process_stacks2"
  procname = libname
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
  call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  allocate (process)
  run_id = "run1"
  call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
  call stack%push (process)

  allocate (process)

```

```

run_id = "run2"
call process%init &
    (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
call stack%push (process)

call stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call stack%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_stacks_2"

end subroutine process_stacks_2

```

### Fill a process stack

Fill a process stack with two (identical) processes.

```

(Process stacks: execute tests) +=
    call test (process_stacks_3, "process_stacks_3", &
        "process variables", &
        u, results)

(Process stacks: tests) +=
    subroutine process_stacks_3 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_stack_t) :: stack
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(string_t) :: procname
        type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process => null ()
        type(process_instance_t), target :: process_instance

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_stacks_3"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: setup process variables"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process variables"
        write (u, "(A)")

        procname = "processes_test"
        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process variables"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call stack%init_var_list ()
        call stack%init_result_vars (procname)
        call stack%write_var_list (u)
    end subroutine process_stacks_3

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and integrate a test process"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
call prepare_test_process (process%process_t, process_instance, model_list)
call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, 1, 1000)
call process_instance%final ()
call process%final_integration (1)
call stack%push (process)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Fill process variables"
write (u, "(A)")

call stack%fill_result_vars (procname)
call stack%write_var_list (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call stack%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_stacks_3"

end subroutine process_stacks_3

```

## Chapter 16

# Parton shower and interface to hadronization

This is the code for the WHIZARD QCD parton shower for final state radiation (FSR) and initial state radiation (ISR) as well as the interface to the PYTHIA module for showering and hadronization.

*<Version>*≡  
2.2.0

*<Date>*≡  
Mar 03 2014

*<File header>*≡  
! WHIZARD *<Version>* *<Date>*  
!  
! Copyright (C) 1999-2014 by  
! Wolfgang Kilian <kilian@physik.uni-siegen.de>  
! Thorsten Ohl <ohl@physik.uni-wuerzburg.de>  
! Juergen Reuter <juergen.reuter@desy.de>  
!  
! with contributions from  
! Christian Speckner <cnspeckn@googlemail.com>  
! and Fabian Bach, Felix Braam, Sebastian Schmidt, Daniel Wiesler  
!  
! WHIZARD is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it  
! under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by  
! the Free Software Foundation; either version 2, or (at your option)  
! any later version.  
!  
! WHIZARD is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but  
! WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of  
! MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the  
! GNU General Public License for more details.  
!  
! You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License  
! along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software  
! Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.  
!

```
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
! This file has been stripped of most comments.  For documentation, refer
! to the source 'shower.nw'
```

We are strict with our names:

```
<Standard module head>≡
  implicit none
  private
```

This is the way to invoke the kinds module (not contained in this source)

```
<Use kinds>≡
  use kinds, only: default !NODEP!
```

And we make heavy use of variable-length strings

```
<Use strings>≡
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!
```

## 16.1 Basics of the shower

```
<shower_base.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module shower_base

    <Use kinds>
    use constants !NODEP!
    use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <Shower base: public>

    <Shower base: parameters>

    <Shower base: interfaces>

    contains

    <Shower base: procedures>

    end module shower_base
```

### 16.1.1 PDF Interface of the shower

```
<Shower base: public>≡
  public :: shower_pdf

<Shower base: interfaces>≡
  interface
    subroutine shower_pdf (set, x, q, ff)
      integer, intent(in) :: set
      double precision, intent(in) :: x, q
      double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
    end subroutine shower_pdf
```

```
end interface
```

### 16.1.2 Parameters

This decides whether to print out additional information.

```
<Shower base: parameters>≡
    logical, parameter, public :: D_print = .false.
```

These parameters are the cut-off scale  $t_{\text{cut}}$ , given in  $\text{GeV}^2$  (PARJ(82)), the cut-off scale for the  $P_t^2$ -ordered shower in  $\text{GeV}^2$ , and the two shower parameters PARP(72) and PARP(61), respectively.

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    real(default), public :: D_Min_t = one
    real(default), public :: D_min_scale = 0.5_default
    real(default), public :: D_Lambda_fsr = 0.29_default
    real(default), public :: D_Lambda_isr = 0.29_default
```

The parameter MSTJ(45) gives the maximum number of flavours in gluon decay to quarks:

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    integer, public :: D_Nf = 5
```

These two parameters decide whether to use constant or running  $\alpha_s$  in the form of the function  $D.\alpha_s(t)$  for the FSR and ISR (MSTJ(44), MSTP(64)), respectively. The next is the parameter PARU(111), which sets the value for constant  $\alpha_s$ , and the flag whether to use  $P_t$ -ordered ISR.

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    logical, public :: D_running_alpha_s_fsr = .true.
    logical, public :: D_running_alpha_s_isr = .true.
    real(default), public :: D_constalpha_s = 0.20_default
    logical, public :: isr_pt_ordered = .false.
```

This flag sets emitted timelike partons in the spacelike shower on shell, true corresponds to MSTP(63) = 0.

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    logical, public :: isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons = .true.
```

Flag whether ISR is angular ordered (MSTP(62)).

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    logical, public :: isr_angular_ordered = .true.
```

Treating either  $u$  and  $d$ , or all quarks except  $t$  as massless:

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    logical, public :: treat_light_quarks_massless = .true.
    logical, public :: treat_duscb_quarks_massless = .false.
```

The width and the cutoff of the Gaussian primordial  $k_t$  distribution, PARP(91) and PARP(93), in  $\text{GeV}$ :

```
<Shower base: parameters>+≡
    real(default), public :: primordial_kt_width = 1.5_default
    real(default), public :: primordial_kt_cutoff = five
```

The parameter `PARP(66)`, the minimal energy of the emitted timelike parton in the ISR (`PARP(65)`), the factor for the first scale, as well as the factor by which the integral in the Sudakov factor is suppressed for the respective first scale in ISR. Higher values here correspond to higher starting scales.

```

(Shower base: parameters)+≡
  real(default), public :: maxz_isr = 0.999_default
  real(default), public :: minenergy_timelike = one
  real(default), public :: tscalefactor_isr = one
  real(default), public :: first_integral_suppression_factor = one

```

Temporary parameters for the  $P_t$ -ordered shower:

```

(Shower base: parameters)+≡
  real(default), public :: scalefactor1 = 0.02_default
  real(default), public :: scalefactor2 = 0.02_default

```

Then, there are the variables for the PDF functions:

```

(Shower base: parameters)+≡
  integer, public :: shower_pdf_set = 0

```

And the PDF function itself, as a procedure pointer:

```

(Shower base: parameters)+≡
  procedure(shower_pdf), pointer, public :: shower_pdf_func

```

```

(Shower base: procedures)≡
  subroutine randomseed (seed)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: seed
    integer :: clock

    if (present (seed)) then
      clock = seed
    else
      call system_clock (count = clock)
    end if
    call tao_random_seed (clock)
  end subroutine randomseed

```

```

(Shower base: public)+≡
  public :: D_alpha_s_isr
  public :: D_alpha_s_fsr

```

```

(Shower base: procedures)+≡
  function D_alpha_s_isr (tin) result(alpha_s)
    real(default), intent(in) :: tin
    real(default) :: b, t
    real(default) :: alpha_s

    !   arbitrary lower cut off for scale
    !   t = MAX(max(one * D_Min_t, 1.1_default * D_Lambda_isr**2), ABS(tin))
    t = max (max (0.1_default * D_Min_t, &
      1.1_default * D_Lambda_isr**2), abs(tin))

    if (D_running_alpha_s_isr) then
      b = (33._default - two * number_of_flavors(t)) / (12._default * pi)
      alpha_s = one / (b * log(t / (D_Lambda_isr**2)))
    end if
  end function D_alpha_s_isr

```

```

        else
            alpha_s = D_constalpha_s
        end if
    end function D_alpha_s_isr

function D_alpha_s_fsr (tin) result(alpha_s)
    real(default), intent(in) :: tin
    real(default) :: b, t
    real(default) :: alpha_s

!    arbitrary lower cut off for scale
!    t= max( max (one * D_Min_t, 1.1_default * D_Lambda**2), ABS(tin))
    t = max (max (0.1_default * D_Min_t, &
        1.1_default * D_Lambda_fsr**2), abs(tin))

    if (D_running_alpha_s_fsr) then
        b = (33._default - two * number_of_flavors(t)) / (12._default * pi)
        alpha_s = one / (b * log(t / (D_Lambda_fsr**2)))
    else
        alpha_s = D_constalpha_s
    end if
end function D_alpha_s_fsr

```

Mass and mass squared selection functions. All masses are in GeV. Light quarks are assumed to be ordered,  $m_1 < m_2 < m_3 \dots$ , and they get current masses, not elementary ones. Mesons and baryons other than proton and neutron are needed as beam-remnants. Particles with PDG number zero are taken massless, as well as proper beam remnants and any other particles.

```

<Shower base: public>+≡
    public :: mass_type
    public :: mass_squared_type

<Shower base: procedures>+≡
    function mass_type (type) result (mass)
        integer, intent(in) :: type
        real(default) :: mass
        mass = sqrt (mass_squared_type (type))
    end function mass_type

    function mass_squared_type (type) result (mass2)
        integer, intent(in) :: type
        real(default) :: mass2

        select case (abs (type))
        case (1,2)
            if (treat_light_quarks_massless .or. &
                treat_duscb_quarks_massless) then
                mass2 = zero
            else
                mass2 = 0.330_default**2
            end if
        case (3)
            if (treat_duscb_quarks_massless) then
                mass2 = zero

```



```

        else
            mass2 = 0.500_default**2
        end if
    case (4)
        if (treat_duscb_quarks_massless) then
            mass2 = zero
        else
            mass2 = 1.500_default**2
        end if
    case (5)
        if (treat_duscb_quarks_massless) then
            mass2 = zero
        else
            mass2 = 4.800_default**2
        end if
    case (6)
        mass2 = 175.00_default**2
    case (21)
        mass2 = zero
    case (2112) ! Neutron
        mass2 = 0.939565_default**2
    case (2212) ! Proton
        mass2 = 0.93827_default**2
    case (411) ! D+
        mass2 = 1.86960_default**2
    case (421) ! D0
        mass2 = 1.86483_default**2
    case (511) ! B0
        mass2 = 5.27950_default**2
    case (521) ! B+
        mass2 = 5.27917_default**2
    case (2224) !Delta++
        mass2 = 1.232_default**2
    case (3212) !Sigma0
        mass2 = 1.192642_default**2
    case (3222) !Sigma+
        mass2 = 1.18937_default**2
    case (4212) ! Sigma_c+
        mass2 = 2.4529_default**2
    case (4222) ! Sigma_c++
        mass2 = 2.45402_default**2
    case (5212) ! Sigma_b0
        mass2 = 5.8152_default**2
    case (5222) ! Sigma_b+
        mass2 = 5.8078_default**2
    case (0) ! I take 0 to be partons whose type is not yet clear
        mass2 = zero
    case (9999) ! beam remnant
        mass2 = zero ! don't know how to handle the beamremnant
    case default !others not implemented
        mass2 = zero
    end select
end function mass_squared_type

```

The number of flavours allowed in an actual  $g \rightarrow qq$  splitting.

```

<Shower base: public>+=
  public :: number_of_flavors

<Shower base: procedures>+=
  function number_of_flavors (t) result (nr)
    real(default), intent(in) :: t
    integer :: nr
    integer :: i
    nr = 0
    if (t < 0.25_default * D_Min_t) return    ! arbitrary cut off ?WRONG?
    do i = 1, min (D_Nf, 3)
      ! to do: take heavier quarks(-> cuts on allowed costheta in g->qq) into account
      if ((four * mass_squared_type (i) + D_Min_t) < t ) then
        nr = i
      else
        exit
      end if
    end do
  end function number_of_flavors

```

Splitting functions. They are also defined in `sm_physics`. This should be unified at some point.

```

<Shower base: public>+=
  public :: P_qqg
  public :: P_gqq
  public :: P_ggg

<Shower base: procedures>+=
  function P_qqg (z) result (P)
    !!! quark => quark + gluon
    real(default), intent(in) :: z
    real(default) :: P
    P = (four / three) * (one + z**2) / (one - z)
  end function P_qqg

  function P_gqq (z) result (P)
    !!! gluon => quark + antiquark
    real(default), intent(in) :: z
    real(default) :: P
    P = 0.5_default * (z**2 + (one - z)**2)
    !!! anti-symmetrized version -> needs change of first and second daughter
    !!! in 50% of branchings
    !   P = (one - z)**2
  end function P_gqq

  function P_ggg (z) result (P)
    !!! gluon => gluon + gluon
    real(default), intent(in) :: z
    real(default) :: P
    P = three * ((one - z) / z + z / (one - z) + z * (one - z))
    !!! anti-symmetrized version -> needs to be symmetrized in color connections
    !   P = three * ( two * z / (one - z) + z * (one - z) )
  end function P_ggg

```

Analytically integrated splitting kernels.

```

(Shower base: public)+≡
  public :: integral_over_P_gqq
  public :: integral_over_P_ggg
  public :: integral_over_P_qqg

(Shower base: procedures)+≡
  function integral_over_P_gqq (zmin, zmax) result (integral)
    real(default), intent(in) :: zmin, zmax
    real(default) :: integral
    integral = 0.5_default * ((two / three) * &
      (zmax**3 - zmin**3) - (zmax**2 - zmin**2) + (zmax - zmin))
  end function integral_over_P_gqq

  function integral_over_P_ggg (zmin, zmax) result (integral)
    real(default), intent(in) :: zmin, zmax
    real(default) :: integral
    integral = three * ((log(zmax) - two * zmax - &
      log(one - zmax) + zmax**2 / two - zmax**3 / three) - &
      (log(zmin) - zmin - zmin - log(one - zmin) + zmin**2 &
      / two - zmin**3 / three) )
  end function integral_over_P_ggg

  function integral_over_P_qqg (zmin, zmax) result (integral)
    real(default), intent(in) :: zmin, zmax
    real(default) :: integral
    integral = (two / three) * ( - zmax**2 + zmin**2 - &
      two * (zmax - zmin) + four * &
      log((one - zmin) / (one - zmax)))
  end function integral_over_P_qqg

```

Methods to set parameters, once there should be a better interface.

```

(Shower base: public)+≡
  public :: shower_set_D_min_t
  public :: shower_set_D_lambda_fsr
  public :: shower_set_D_lambda_isr
  public :: shower_set_D_Nf
  public :: shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_fsr
  public :: shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_isr
  public :: shower_set_D_constantalpha_s
  public :: shower_set_isr_pt_ordered
  public :: shower_set_isr_angular_ordered
  public :: shower_set_primordial_kt_width
  public :: shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff
  public :: shower_set_maxz_isr
  public :: shower_set_minenergy_timelike
  public :: shower_set_tscalefactor_isr
  public :: shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons
  public :: shower_set_pdf_func
  public :: shower_set_pdf_set

(Shower base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine shower_set_D_Min_t (input)
    real(default) :: input

```

```

    D_Min_t = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_Min_t

subroutine shower_set_D_Lambda_fsr (input)
    real(default) :: input
    D_Lambda_fsr = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_Lambda_fsr

subroutine shower_set_D_Lambda_isr (input)
    real(default) :: input
    D_Lambda_isr = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_Lambda_isr

subroutine shower_set_D_Nf (input)
    integer :: input
    D_Nf = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_Nf

subroutine shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_fsr (input)
    logical :: input
    D_running_alpha_s_fsr = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_fsr

subroutine shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_isr (input)
    logical :: input
    D_running_alpha_s_isr = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_isr

subroutine shower_set_D_constantalpha_s (input)
    real(default) :: input
    D_constalpha_s = input
end subroutine shower_set_D_constantalpha_s

subroutine shower_set_isr_pt_ordered (input)
    logical :: input
    isr_pt_ordered = input
end subroutine shower_set_isr_pt_ordered

subroutine shower_set_isr_angular_ordered (input)
    logical :: input
    isr_angular_ordered = input
end subroutine shower_set_isr_angular_ordered

subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_width (input)
    real(default) :: input
    primordial_kt_width = input
end subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_width

subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff (input)
    real(default) :: input
    primordial_kt_cutoff = input
end subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff

subroutine shower_set_maxz_isr (input)

```

```

    real(default) :: input
    maxz_isr = input
end subroutine shower_set_maxz_isr

subroutine shower_set_minenergy_timelike (input)
    real(default) :: input
    minenergy_timelike = input
end subroutine shower_set_minenergy_timelike

subroutine shower_set_tscalefactor_isr (input)
    real(default) :: input
    tscalefactor_isr = input
end subroutine shower_set_tscalefactor_isr

subroutine shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons (input)
    logical :: input
    isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons = input
end subroutine shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons

subroutine shower_set_pdf_func (func)
    procedure(shower_pdf), pointer, intent(in) :: func
    shower_pdf_func => func
end subroutine shower_set_pdf_func

subroutine shower_set_pdf_set (set)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    shower_pdf_set = set
end subroutine shower_set_pdf_set

```

## 16.2 Parton module for the shower

*<shower\_partons.f90>*≡  
*<File header>*

module shower\_partons

*<Use kinds>*

```

    use constants !NODEP!
    use limits, only: TAB !NODEP!
    use file_utils !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use shower_base

```

*<Standard module head>*

*<Shower partons: public>*

*<Shower partons: types>*

contains

*<Shower partons: procedures>*

end module shower\_partons

### 16.2.1 The basic type defintions

The type `parton_t` defines a parton for the shower. The `x` value of the parton is only needed for spacelike showers. The pointer `initial` is only needed for partons in initial showers, it points to the hadron the parton is coming from. An auxiliary value for the  $P_t$ -ordered ISR is `aux_pt`. Then, there are two auxiliary entries for the clustering of CKKW pseudo weights and CKKW matching, `ckkwlabel` and `ckkwscale`.

*<Shower partons: public>*≡

public :: parton\_t

*<Shower partons: types>*≡

```
type :: parton_t
  integer :: nr = 0
  integer :: type = 0
  type(vector4_t) :: momentum = vector4_null
  real(default) :: t = zero
  real(default) :: scale = zero
  real(default) :: z = zero
  real(default) :: costheta = zero
  real(default) :: x = zero
  logical :: simulated = .false.
  logical :: belongstoFSR = .true.
  logical :: belongstointeraction = .false.
  type(parton_t), pointer :: parent => null ()
  type(parton_t), pointer :: child1 => null ()
  type(parton_t), pointer :: child2 => null ()
  type(parton_t), pointer :: initial => null ()
  integer :: c1 = 0, c2 = 0
  integer :: aux_pt = 0
  integer :: ckkwlabel = 0
  real(default) :: ckkwscale = zero
  integer :: ckkwtype = -1
  integer :: interactionnr = 0
end type parton_t
```

*<Shower partons: public>*+≡

public :: parton\_pointer\_t

*<Shower partons: types>*+≡

```
type :: parton_pointer_t
  type(parton_t), pointer :: p => null ()
end type parton_pointer_t
```

### 16.2.2 Routines

*<Shower partons: public>*+≡

public :: parton\_copy

```

(Shower partons: procedures)+≡
  subroutine parton_copy (prt1, prt2)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt1
    type(parton_t), intent(out) :: prt2
    prt2%nr = prt1%nr
    prt2%type = prt1%type
    prt2%momentum = prt1%momentum
    prt2%t = prt1%t
    prt2%scale = prt1%scale
    prt2%z = prt1%z
    prt2%costheta = prt1%costheta
    prt2%x = prt1%x
    prt2%simulated = prt1%simulated
    prt2%belongstoFSR = prt1%belongstoFSR
    prt2%belongstointeraction = prt1%belongstointeraction
    prt2%interactionnr = prt1%interactionnr
    if (associated (prt1%parent)) prt2%parent => prt1%parent
    if (associated (prt1%child1)) prt2%child1 => prt1%child1
    if (associated (prt1%child2)) prt2%child2 => prt1%child2
    if (associated (prt1%initial)) prt2%initial => prt1%initial
    prt2%c1 = prt1%c1
    prt2%c2 = prt1%c2
    prt2%aux_pt = prt1%aux_pt
  end subroutine parton_copy

```

This returns the angle between the daughters assuming them to be massless.

```

(Shower partons: public)+≡
  public :: parton_get_costheta

(Shower partons: procedures)+≡
  function parton_get_costheta (prt) result (costheta)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: costheta
    if (prt%z * (one - prt%z) * parton_get_energy(prt)**2 > zero) then
      costheta = one - prt%t / (two * prt%z * (one - prt%z) * &
        parton_get_energy(prt)**2)
    else
      costheta = - one
    end if
  end function parton_get_costheta

```

The same for massive daughters.

```

(Shower partons: public)+≡
  public :: parton_get_costheta_correct

(Shower partons: procedures)+≡
  function parton_get_costheta_correct (prt) result (costheta)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: costheta
    if (parton_is_branched (prt)) then
      if (parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .and. &
        parton_is_simulated (prt%child2) .and. &
        sqrt (max (zero, (prt%z)**2 * parton_get_energy(prt)**2 &
          - prt%child1%t)) * &

```

```

      sqrt (max (zero, (1.-prt%z)**2 * parton_get_energy(prt)**2 &
                  - prt%child2%t)) > zero) then
costheta = &
  (prt%t - prt%child1%t - prt%child2%t - 2. * prt%z * &
  (1.-prt%z) * parton_get_energy(prt)**2) / &
  (-2.* sqrt((prt%z)**2 * parton_get_energy(prt)**2 &
  - prt%child1%t) * &
  sqrt( (1.-prt%z)**2 * parton_get_energy(prt)**2 - prt%child2%t))
else
  costheta = parton_get_costheta (prt)
end if
else
  costheta = parton_get_costheta (prt)
end if
end function parton_get_costheta_correct

```

This function returns the angle between the momentum vectors of the parton and first daughter.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_get_costheta_motherfirst

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_get_costheta_motherfirst (prt) result (costheta)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: costheta
    if (parton_is_branched (prt)) then
      if ((parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .or. parton_is_final (prt%child1) &
        .or. parton_is_branched (prt%child1)) .and. &
        (parton_is_simulated (prt%child2) .or. &
        parton_is_final (prt%child2) &
        .or. parton_is_branched (prt%child2)) .and. &
        (space_part_norm (prt%momentum) * space_part_norm &
        (prt%child1%momentum) > zero)) then
        costheta = (space_part (prt%momentum) * &
          space_part(prt%child1%momentum)) / &
          (space_part_norm (prt%momentum) * &
          space_part_norm (prt%child1%momentum))
      else
        costheta = -two
      end if
    else
      costheta = -two
    end if
  end function parton_get_costheta_motherfirst

```

Get the parton velocities.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_get_beta

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function get_beta (t,E) result (beta)
    real(default), intent(in) :: t,E
    real(default) :: beta
    beta = sqrt (max (1.E-6_default, one - t /(E**2)))

```



```

end function get_beta

function parton_get_beta (prt) result (beta)
  type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
  real(default) :: beta
  beta = get_beta (prt%t, vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0))
end function parton_get_beta

```

Write routine.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_write

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_write (prt, unit)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return

    write (u, "(1x,4A)", advance = "no") "Shower parton <nr>", &
      TAB, "<type>", TAB
    write (u, "(1x,3A)") "<parent>", TAB, "<mom(0:3)>"
    write (u, "(2x,I5,3A)", advance = "no") prt%nr, TAB, TAB, TAB
    if (parton_is_final (prt)) then
      write (u, "(1x,I5,1x,A)", advance = "no") prt%type, TAB
    else
      write (u, "('[,I5,']',A)", advance = "no") prt%type, TAB
    end if
    if (associated (prt%parent)) then
      write (u, "(I5,2A)", advance = "no") prt%parent%nr, TAB, TAB
    else
      write (u, "(5x,2A)", advance = "no") TAB, TAB
    end if
    write (u, "(4(ES12.5,A))" &
      vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0), TAB, &
      vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 1), TAB, &
      vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 2), TAB, &
      vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 3)
    write (u, "(1x,5A)", advance = "no") "<p4square>", TAB, TAB, "<t>", TAB
    write (u, "(1x,7A)") TAB, "<scale>", TAB, TAB, "<c1>", TAB, "<c2>"
    write (u, "(3(ES12.5,A))", advance = "no") &
      parton_p4square(prt), TAB, prt%t, TAB // TAB, prt%scale, TAB
    write (u, "(2(I4,A))" prt%c1, TAB, prt%c2, TAB
    if (parton_is_branched (prt)) then
      if (prt%belongstoFSR) then
        write(u, "(3x,5(ES8.5,1x),A1)", advance = "no") &
          parton_get_costheta (prt), &
          parton_get_costheta_correct (prt), prt%costheta, prt%z, &
          parton_get_costheta_motherfirst (prt), 'b'
      else
        write(u, "(3x,5(ES8.5,1x),A1)", advance = "no") prt%z, prt%x, &
          parton_get_costheta_correct (prt), prt%costheta, &
          parton_get_costheta_motherfirst (prt), 'b'
      end if
    end if

```

```

else
  if (prt%belongstoFSR) then
    write (u, "(43x)", advance = "no")
  else
    write (u, "(9x,ES8.5,26x)", advance = "no") prt%x
  end if
end if
write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") " Parton "
if (prt%belongstoFSR) then
  write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") "is FSR, "
else
  if (associated (prt%initial)) then
    write (u, "(A,I1)", advance = "no") "from hadron, ", prt%initial%nr
  else
    write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") " "
  end if
end if
if (parton_is_final (prt)) then
  write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") "is final, "
else
  write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") " "
end if
if (parton_is_simulated (prt)) then
  write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") "is simulated, "
else
  write (u, "(A)", advance = "no") " "
end if
if (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2)) then
  write (u, "(A,2(I5),A)", advance = "no") &
    "has children: ", prt%child1%nr, prt%child2%nr, ", "
else if (associated (prt%child1)) then
  write (u, "(A,1(I5),A)", advance = "no") &
    "has children: ", prt%child1%nr, ", "
end if
if (prt%belongstointeraction) then
  write (u, "(A,I2)") "belongs to", &
    prt%interactionnr
else
  write (u, "(A,I2)") "does not belong to ", &
    prt%interactionnr
end if
write (u, "(A)") TAB
end subroutine parton_write

```

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*  
 public :: parton\_is\_final

*<Shower partons: procedures>+≡*  
 function parton\_is\_final (prt) result (is\_final)  
 type(parton\_t), intent(in) :: prt  
 logical :: is\_final  
 is\_final = .false.  
 if (prt%belongstoFSR) then  
 is\_final = .not. associated (prt%child1) .and. &

```

        (.not. prt%belongstointeraction .or. &
        (prt%belongstointeraction .and. prt%simulated))
    end if
end function parton_is_final

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_branched

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_branched (prt) result (is_branched)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_branched
        is_branched = associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2)
    end function parton_is_branched

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_set_simulated

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_set_simulated (prt, sim)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        logical, intent(in), optional :: sim
        if (present (sim)) then
            prt%simulated = sim
        else
            prt%simulated = .true.
        end if
    end subroutine parton_set_simulated

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_simulated

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_simulated (prt) result (is_simulated)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_simulated
        is_simulated = prt%simulated
    end function parton_is_simulated

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_get_momentum

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_get_momentum (prt, i) result (mom)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        real(default) :: mom
        select case (i)
        case (0)
            mom = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum,0)
        case (1)
            mom = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum,1)
        case (2)
            mom = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum,2)

```

```

        case (3)
            mom = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum,3)
        case default
            mom = 0
        end select
    end function parton_get_momentum

    <Shower partons: public>+≡
        public :: parton_set_momentum

    <Shower partons: procedures>+≡
        subroutine parton_set_momentum (prt, EE, ppx, ppy, ppz)
            type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
            real(default), intent(in) :: EE, ppx, ppy, ppz
            prt%momentum = vector4_moving &
                (EE, vector3_moving ([ppx, ppy, ppz]))
        end subroutine parton_set_momentum

    <Shower partons: public>+≡
        public :: parton_set_energy

    <Shower partons: procedures>+≡
        subroutine parton_set_energy (prt, E)
            type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
            real(default), intent(in) :: E
            call vector4_set_component (prt%momentum, 0, E)
        end subroutine parton_set_energy

    <Shower partons: public>+≡
        public :: parton_get_energy

    <Shower partons: procedures>+≡
        function parton_get_energy (prt) result (E)
            type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
            real(default) :: E
            E = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0)
        end function parton_get_energy

    <Shower partons: public>+≡
        public :: parton_set_parent

    <Shower partons: procedures>+≡
        subroutine parton_set_parent (prt, parent)
            type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
            type(parton_t), intent(in) , target :: parent
            prt%parent => parent
        end subroutine parton_set_parent

    <Shower partons: public>+≡
        public :: parton_get_parent

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_get_parent (prt) result (parent)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        type(parton_t), pointer :: parent
        parent => prt%parent
    end function parton_get_parent

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_set_initial

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_set_initial (prt, initial)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(parton_t), intent(in) , target :: initial
        prt%initial => initial
    end subroutine parton_set_initial

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_get_initial

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_get_initial (prt) result (initial)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        type(parton_t), pointer :: initial
        initial => prt%initial
    end function parton_get_initial

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_set_child

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_set_child (prt, child, i)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(parton_t), intent(in), target :: child
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        if (i == 1) then
            prt%child1 => child
        else
            prt%child2 => child
        end if
    end subroutine parton_set_child

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_get_child

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_get_child (prt, i) result (child)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(parton_t), pointer :: child
        child => null ()
        if (i == 1) then
            child => prt%child1
        else

```

```

        child => prt%child2
    end if
end function parton_get_child

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_quark

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_quark (prt) result (is_quark)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_quark
        is_quark = abs (prt%type) <= 6 .and. prt%type /= 0
    end function parton_is_quark

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_squark

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_squark (prt) result (is_squark)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_squark
        is_squark = ((abs(prt%type) >= 1000001) .and. (abs(prt%type) <= 1000006)) &
            .or. ((abs(prt%type) >= 2000001) .and. (abs(prt%type) <= 2000006))
    end function parton_is_squark

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_gluon

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_gluon (prt) result (is_gluon)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_gluon
        is_gluon = prt%type == 21 .or. prt%type == 9
    end function parton_is_gluon

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_gluino

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_gluino (prt) result (is_gluino)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_gluino
        is_gluino = prt%type == 1000021
    end function parton_is_gluino

```

Only the proton is implemented yet.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_is_hadron

```

```

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function parton_is_hadron (prt) result (is_hadron)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        logical :: is_hadron
        is_hadron = abs (prt%type) == 2212
    end function parton_is_hadron

```

```

end function parton_is_hadron

TODO: SUSY partons.

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_is_colored

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_is_colored (prt) result (is_colored)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    logical :: is_colored
    is_colored = parton_is_quark (prt) .or. parton_is_gluon (prt)
  end function parton_is_colored

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_p4square

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_p4square (prt) result (p4square)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: p4square
    p4square = prt%momentum**2
  end function parton_p4square

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_p3square

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_p3square (prt) result (p3square)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: p3square
    p3square = parton_p3abs (prt)**2
  end function parton_p3square

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_p3abs

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_p3abs (prt) result (p3abs)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: p3abs
    p3abs = space_part_norm (prt%momentum)
  end function parton_p3abs

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_mass

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_mass (prt) result (mass)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: mass
    mass = mass_type (prt%type)
  end function parton_mass

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_mass_squared

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function parton_mass_squared (prt) result (mass_squared)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: mass_squared
    mass_squared = mass_squared_type (prt%type)
  end function parton_mass_squared

```

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: P_prt_to_child1

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function P_prt_to_child1 (prt) result (retvalue)
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
    real(default) :: retvalue
    retvalue = zero
    if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
      if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
        retvalue = P_gqq (prt%z)
      else if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
        retvalue = P_ggg (prt%z) + P_ggg (one - prt%z)
      end if
    else if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
      if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
        retvalue = P_qqq (prt%z)
      else if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
        retvalue = P_qqg (one - prt%z)
      end if
    end if
  end function P_prt_to_child1

```

This function returns whether the kinematics of the branching of parton prt into its daughters are allowed or not.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: thetabar

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  function thetabar (prt, recoiler, E3out) result (retvalue)
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    type(parton_t), intent(in) :: recoiler
    real(default), intent(out), optional :: E3out
    logical :: retvalue
    real(default) :: ctheta, cthetachild1
    real(default) p1, p4, p3, E3, shat

    shat = (prt%child1%momentum + recoiler%momentum)**2
    E3 = 0.5_default * (shat / prt%z - recoiler%t + prt%child1%t - &
      parton_mass_squared (prt%child2)) / sqrt(shat)
    if (present (E3out)) then
      E3out = E3
    end if
    !!! absolute values of momenta in a 3 -> 1 + 4 branching

```



```

p3 = sqrt (E3**2 - prt%t)
p1 = sqrt (parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 - prt%child1%t)
p4 = sqrt (max (zero, (E3 - parton_get_energy (prt%child1))**2 &
- prt%child2%t))
if (p3 > zero) then
  retvalue = ((p1 + p4 >= p3) .and. (p3 >= abs(p1 - p4)) )
  if (retvalue .and. isr_angular_ordered) then
    !!! check angular ordering
    if (associated (prt%child1)) then
      if (associated (prt%child1%child2)) then
        ctheta = (E3**2 - p1**2 - p4**2 + prt%t) / (two * p1 * p4)
        cthetachild1 = (parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 - &
          space_part (prt%child1%child1%momentum)**2 &
          - space_part (prt%child1%child2%momentum)**2 + prt%child1%t) &
          / (two * space_part (prt%child1%child1%momentum)**1 * &
          space_part(prt%child1%child2%momentum)**1)
        retvalue= (ctheta > cthetachild1)
      end if
    end if
  end if
else
  retvalue = .false.
end if
end function thetabar

```

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*

```
public :: parton_apply_z
```

*<Shower partons: procedures>+≡*

```

recursive subroutine parton_apply_z(prt, newz)
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  real(default), intent(in) :: newz
  if (D_print) print *, "old z:", prt%z , " new z: ", newz
  prt%z = newz
  if (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2)) then
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, newz * parton_get_energy (prt))
    call parton_apply_z (prt%child1, prt%child1%z)
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, (1.-newz) * parton_get_energy (prt))
    call parton_apply_z (prt%child2, prt%child2%z)
  end if
end subroutine parton_apply_z

```

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*

```
public :: parton_apply_cstheta
```

*<Shower partons: procedures>+≡*

```

recursive subroutine parton_apply_cstheta (prt)
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  prt%z = 0.5_default * (one + parton_get_beta (prt) * prt%costheta)
  if (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2) ) then
    if (parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .and. &
      parton_is_simulated (prt%child2)) then
      prt%z = 0.5_default * (one + (prt%child1%t - prt%child2%t) / &
        prt%t + parton_get_beta (prt) * prt%costheta * &

```

```

        sqrt((prt%t - prt%child1%t - prt%child2%t)**2 - &
        4 * prt%child1%t * prt%child2%t) / prt%t)
    if (prt%type /= 94) then
        call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, &
            prt%z * parton_get_energy (prt))
        call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, (one - prt%z) * &
            parton_get_energy (prt))
    end if
    call parton_generate_ps (prt)
    call parton_apply_cosheta (prt%child1)
    call parton_apply_cosheta (prt%child2)
end if
end if
end subroutine parton_apply_cosheta

```

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*  
 public :: parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo

*<Shower partons: procedures>+≡*  
 subroutine parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo (prt, L)  
 type(parton\_t), intent(inout) :: prt  
 type(lorentz\_transformation\_t), intent(in) :: L  
 prt%momentum = L \* prt%momentum  
 end subroutine parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*  
 public :: parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive

*<Shower partons: procedures>+≡*  
 recursive subroutine parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive (prt, L)  
 type(parton\_t), intent(inout) :: prt  
 type(lorentz\_transformation\_t), intent(in) :: L  
 if (prt%type /= 2212 .and. prt%type /= 9999) then  
 !!! don't boost hadrons and beam-remnants  
 call parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo (prt, L)  
 end if  
 if (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2)) then  
 if ((parton\_p3abs(prt%child1) == zero) .and. &  
 (parton\_p3abs(prt%child2) == zero) .and. &  
 (.not. prt%child1%belongstointeraction) .and. &  
 (.not. prt%child2%belongstointeraction)) then  
 !!! don't boost unevolved timelike partons  
 else  
 call parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive (prt%child1, L)  
 call parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive (prt%child2, L)  
 end if  
 else  
 if (associated (prt%child1)) then  
 call parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive (prt%child1, L)  
 end if  
 if (associated (prt%child2)) then  
 call parton\_apply\_lorentztrafo\_recursive (prt%child2, L)  
 end if  
 end if
 end if

```
end subroutine parton_apply_lorentztrafo_recursive
```

This takes the three-momentum of a parton and generates three-momenta of its children.

```
<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_generate_ps

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_generate_ps (prt)
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), dimension(1:3, 1:3) :: directions
    integer i,j
    real(default) :: scproduct, pabs, plabs, p2abs, x, ptabs, phi
    real(default), dimension(1:3) :: momentum

    type(vector3_t) :: pchild1_direction
    type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L, rotation

    if (D_print) print *, " generate_ps for parton " , prt%nr
    if (.not. (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2))) then
      print *, "no children for generate_ps"
      return
    end if
    !!! test if parton is a virtual parton from the imagined parton shower history
    if (prt%type == 94) then
      L = inverse (boost (prt%momentum, sqrt(prt%t)))
      !!! boost to restframe of mother
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt, L)
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child1, L)
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child2, L)
      !!! Store child1's momenta
      pchild1_direction = direction (space_part (prt%child1%momentum))
      !!! Redistribute energy
      call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, (parton_get_energy (prt)**2- &
        prt%child2%t + prt%child1%t) / (two * parton_get_energy (prt)))
      call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, parton_get_energy (prt) - &
        parton_get_energy (prt%child1))

      ! rescale momenta and set momenta to be along z-axis
      prt%child1%momentum = vector4_moving (parton_get_energy (prt%child1), &
        vector3_canonical(3) * sqrt(parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 - &
        prt%child1%t))
      prt%child2%momentum = vector4_moving (parton_get_energy (prt%child2), &
        vector3_canonical(3) * (-sqrt(parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 - &
        prt%child2%t)))

      !!! rotate so that total momentum is along former total momentum
      rotation = rotation_to_2nd (space_part (prt%child1%momentum), &
        pchild1_direction)
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child1, rotation)
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child2, rotation)

      L = inverse (L)          !!! inverse of the boost to restframe of mother
      call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt, L)
```

```

call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child1, L)
call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt%child2, L)
else
  !!! directions(1,:) -> direction of the parent parton
  if (parton_p3abs (prt) == zero) return
  do i = 1, 3
    directions(1,i) = parton_get_momentum (prt,i) / parton_p3abs (prt)
  end do
  !!! directions(2,:) and directions(3,:) -> two random directions
  !!! perpendicular to the direction of the parent parton
  do i = 1, 3
    do j = 2, 3
      call tao_random_number (directions(j,i))
    end do
  end do
  do i = 2, 3
    scproduct = zero
    do j = 1, i - 1
      scproduct = directions(i,1) * directions(j,1) + &
        directions(i,2) * directions(j,2) + directions(i,3) * directions(j,3)
      directions(i,1) = directions(i,1) - directions(j,1) * scproduct
      directions(i,2) = directions(i,2) - directions(j,2) * scproduct
      directions(i,3) = directions(i,3) - directions(j,3) * scproduct
    end do
    scproduct = directions(i,1)**2 + directions(i,2)**2 + directions(i,3)**2
    do j = 1, 3
      directions(i,j) = directions(i,j) / sqrt(scproduct)
    end do
  end do
  <Enforce right-handed system for directions>

  pabs = parton_p3abs(prt)
  if ((parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 - prt%child1%t < 0) .or. &
    (parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 - prt%child2%t < 0)) then
    if (D_print) print *, "err: error at generate_ps(), E^2 < t"
    return
  end if
  plabs = sqrt (parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 - prt%child1%t)
  p2abs = sqrt (parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 - prt%child2%t)
  x = (pabs**2 + plabs**2 - p2abs**2) / (two * pabs)
  if (pabs > plabs + p2abs .or. &
    pabs < abs(plabs - p2abs)) then
    if (D_print) then
      print *, "error at generate_ps, Dreiecksungleichung for parton ", &
        prt%nr, " ", parton_p3abs(prt), " ", plabs, " ", p2abs
      call parton_write (prt)
      call parton_write (prt%child1)
      call parton_write (prt%child2)
    end if
    return
  end if
  !!! Due to numerical problems transverse momentum could be imaginary ->
  !!! set transverse momentum to zero
  ptabs = sqrt (max (plabs * plabs - x * x, zero))

```

```

      call tao_random_number (phi)
      phi = twopi * phi
      do i = 1, 3
        momentum(i) = x * directions(1,i) + ptabs * &
          (cos(phi) * directions(2,i) + sin(phi) * directions(3,i))
      end do
      call parton_set_momentum (prt%child1, parton_get_energy (prt%child1), &
        momentum(1), momentum(2), momentum(3))
      do i = 1, 3
        momentum(i) = (parton_p3abs(prt) - x) * directions(1,i) - &
          ptabs * (cos(phi) * directions(2,i) + sin(phi) * directions(3,i))
      end do
      call parton_set_momentum (prt%child2, parton_get_energy (prt%child2), &
        momentum(1), momentum(2), momentum(3))
    end if
  end subroutine parton_generate_ps

```

```

<Enforce right-handed system for directions>≡
  if ((directions(1,1) * (directions(2,2) * directions(3,3) - &
    directions(2,3) * directions(3,2)) + &
    directions(1,2) * (directions(2,3) * directions(3,1) - &
    directions(2,1) * directions(3,3)) + &
    directions(1,3) * (directions(2,1) * directions(3,2) - &
    directions(2,2) * directions(3,1))) < 0) then
    directions(3,1) = - directions(3,1)
    directions(3,2) = - directions(3,2)
    directions(3,3) = - directions(3,3)
  end if

```

This routine is similar to `parton_generate_ps`, but now for the ISR. It takes the three-momentum of a parton's first child as fixed and generates the two remaining three-momenta.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_generate_ps_ini

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_generate_ps_ini(prt)
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), dimension(1:3, 1:3) :: directions
    integer :: i,j
    real(default) :: scproduct, pabs, plabs, p2abs, x, ptabs, phi
    real(default), dimension(1:3) :: momentum

    if (D_print) print *, " generate_ps_ini for parton " , prt%nr
    if (.not. (associated(prt%child1) .and. associated(prt%child2))) then
      print *, "error in parton_generate_ps_ini"
      return
    end if

    if (parton_is_hadron(prt) .eqv. .false.) then
      !!! generate ps for normal partons
      do i = 1, 3
        directions(1,i) = parton_get_momentum (prt%child1,i) / &
          parton_p3abs(prt%child1)

```

```

end do
do i = 1, 3
  do j = 2, 3
    call tao_random_number (directions(j,i))
  end do
end do
do i = 2, 3
  scproduct = zero
  do j = 1, i - 1
    scproduct = directions(i,1) * directions(j,1) + &
      directions(i,2) * directions(j,2) + directions(i,3) * directions(j,3)
    directions(i,1) = directions(i,1) - directions(j,1) * scproduct
    directions(i,2) = directions(i,2) - directions(j,2) * scproduct
    directions(i,3) = directions(i,3) - directions(j,3) * scproduct
  end do
  scproduct = directions(i,1)**2 + directions(i,2)**2 + directions(i,3)**2
  do j = 1, 3
    directions(i,j) = directions(i,j) / sqrt(scproduct)
  end do
end do
<Enforce right-handed system for directions>

pabs = parton_p3abs (prt%child1)
p1abs = sqrt (parton_get_energy (prt)**2 - prt%t)
p2abs = sqrt (max(zero, parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 - &
  prt%child2%t))

x = (pabs**2 + p1abs**2 - p2abs**2) / (two * pabs)
if (pabs > p1abs + p2abs .or. pabs < abs(p1abs - p2abs)) then
  print *, "error at generate_ps, Dreiecksungleichung for parton ", &
    prt%nr, " ", pabs, " ", p1abs, " ", p2abs
  call parton_write (prt)
  call parton_write (prt%child1)
  call parton_write (prt%child2)
  return
end if
if (D_print) print *, "x:", x
ptabs = sqrt (p1abs * p1abs - x**2)
call tao_random_number (phi)
phi = twopi * phi
do i = 1, 3
  momentum(i) = x * directions(1,i) + ptabs * (cos(phi) * &
    directions(2,i) + sin(phi) * directions(3,i))
end do
call parton_set_momentum (prt, parton_get_energy(prt), &
  momentum(1), momentum(2), momentum(3))
do i = 1, 3
  momentum(i) = (x - pabs) * directions(1,i) + ptabs * (cos(phi) * &
    directions(2,i) + sin(phi) * directions(3,i))
end do
call parton_set_momentum (prt%child2, parton_get_energy(prt%child2), &
  momentum(1), momentum(2), momentum(3))
else
  !!! for first partons just set beam remnants momentum

```

```

        prt%child2%momentum = prt%momentum - prt%child1%momentum
    end if
end subroutine parton_generate_ps_ini

```

### 16.2.3 The analytic FSR

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
    public :: parton_next_t_ana

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    subroutine parton_next_t_ana (prt)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        integer :: gtoqq
        real(default) :: integral, random

        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        if (D_print) then
            print *, "next_t_ana for parton " , prt%nr
        end if

        ! check if branchings are possible at all
        if (min (prt%t, parton_get_energy(prt)**2) < &
            parton_mass_squared(prt) + D_Min_t) then
            prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
            call parton_set_simulated (prt)
            return
        end if

        integral = zero
        call tao_random_number (random)
        do
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call parton_simulate_stept (prt, integral, random, gtoqq, .false.)
            if (parton_is_simulated (prt)) then
                if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
                    !!! Abusing the x-variable to store the information to which
                    !!! quark flavour the gluon branches (if any)
                    prt%x = one * gtoqq + 0.1_default
                    !!! x = gtoqq + 0.1 -> int(x) will be the quark flavour or
                    !!! zero for g -> gg
                end if
                exit
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine parton_next_t_ana

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
    function cmax (prt, tt) result (cma)
        type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: tt
        real(default) :: cma
        real(default) :: t, cost

```

```

if (present(tt)) then
  t = tt
else
  t = prt%t
end if

if (associated (prt%parent)) then
  cost = parton_get_costheta (prt%parent)
  cma = min (0.99999_default, sqrt( max(zero, one - t/ &
    (parton_get_beta(prt) *parton_get_energy(prt))**2 * &
    (one + cost) / (one - cost))))
else
  cma = 0.99999_default
end if
end function cmax

```

Simulation routine. The variable `lookatsister` takes constraints from the sister parton into account, if not given it is assumed `.true.`. `a` and `x` are three-dimensional arrays for values used for the integration.

```

<Shower partons: public>+≡
  public :: parton_simulate_stept

<Shower partons: procedures>+≡
  subroutine parton_simulate_stept &
    (prt, integral, random, gtoqq, lookatsister)
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), intent(inout) :: integral
    real(default), intent(inout) :: random
    integer, intent(out) :: gtoqq
    logical, intent(in), optional :: lookatsister

    type(parton_t), pointer :: sister
    real(default) :: tstep, tmin, oldt
    real(default) :: c, cstep
    real(default), dimension(3) :: z, P
    real(default) :: to_integral
    real(default) :: a11,a12,a13,a21,a22,a23
    real(default) :: cmax_t
    real(default) :: temprand
    real(default), dimension(3) :: a, x

    ! higher values -> faster but coarser
    real(default), parameter :: tstepfactor = 0.02_default
    real(default), parameter :: tstepmin = 0.5_default
    real(default), parameter :: cstepfactor = 0.8_default
    real(default), parameter :: cstepmin = 0.03_default

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    gtoqq = 111 ! illegal value
    call parton_set_simulated (prt, .false.)

    <Set sister if lookatsister is true or not given>

    tmin = D_Min_t + parton_mass_squared (prt)

```



```

if (parton_is_quark(prt)) then
  to_integral = three * pi * log(one / random)
else if (parton_is_gluon(prt)) then
  to_integral = four * pi * log(one / random)
else
  prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
  call parton_set_simulated (prt)
  return
end if

if (associated (sister)) then
  if (sqrt(prt%t) > sqrt(prt%parent%t) - &
      sqrt(parton_mass_squared (sister))) then
    prt%t = (sqrt (prt%parent%t) - sqrt (parton_mass_squared (sister)))*2
  end if
end if

if (prt%t > parton_get_energy(prt)**2) then
  prt%t = parton_get_energy(prt)**2
end if

if (prt%t <= tmin) then
  prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
  call parton_set_simulated (prt)
  return
end if

! simulate the branchings between prt%t and prt%t - tstep
tstep = max(tstepfactor * (prt%t - 0.9_default * tmin), tstepmin)
cmax_t = cmax(prt)
c = - cmax_t ! take highest t -> minimal constraint
cstep = max(cstepfactor * (one - abs(c)), cstepmin)
! get values at border of "previous" bin -> to be used in first bin
z(3) = 0.5_default + 0.5_default * get_beta (prt%t - &
  0.5_default * tstep, parton_get_energy (prt)) * c
if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
  P(3) = P_ggg (z(3)) + P_gqq (z(3)) * number_of_flavors (prt%t)
else
  P(3) = P_qqg (z(3))
end if
a(3) = D_alpha_s_fsr (z(3) * (one - z(3)) * prt%t) * P(3) / &
  (prt%t - 0.5_default * tstep)

do while (c < cmax_t .and. (integral < to_integral))
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  cmax_t = cmax (prt)
  cstep = max (cstepfactor * (one - abs(c)**2), cstepmin)
  if (c + cstep > cmax_t) then
    cstep = cmax_t - c
  end if
  if (cstep < 1E-9_default) then
    !!! reject too small bins
    exit
  end if
  z(1) = z(3)

```

```

z(2) = 0.5_default + 0.5_default * get_beta &
      (prt%t - 0.5_default * tstep, parton_get_energy (prt)) * &
      (c + 0.5_default * cstep)
z(3) = 0.5_default + 0.5_default * get_beta &
      (prt%t - 0.5_default * tstep, parton_get_energy (prt)) * (c + cstep)
P(1) = P(3)
if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
  P(2) = P_ggg(z(2)) + P_gqq(z(2)) * number_of_flavors (prt%t)
  P(3) = P_ggg(z(3)) + P_gqq(z(3)) * number_of_flavors (prt%t)
else
  P(2) = P_qqg(z(2))
  P(3) = P_qqg(z(3))
end if
! get values at borders of the integral and in the middle
a(1) = a(3)
a(2) = D_alpha_s_fsr(z(2) * (one - z(2)) * prt%t) * P(2) / &
      (prt%t - 0.5_default * tstep)
a(3) = D_alpha_s_fsr(z(3) * (one - z(3)) * prt%t) * P(3) / &
      (prt%t - 0.5_default * tstep)

! fit x(1) + x(2)/(1 + c) + x(3)/(1 - c) to these values !! a little tricky
a11 = (one+c+0.5_default*cstep) * (one-c-0.5_default*cstep) - &
      (one-c) * (one+c+0.5_default*cstep)
a12 = (one-c-0.5_default*cstep) - (one+c+0.5_default*cstep) * &
      (one-c) / (one+c)
a13 = a(2) * (one+c+0.5_default*cstep) * (one-c-0.5_default*cstep) - &
      a(1) * (one-c) * (one+c+0.5_default*cstep)
a21 = (one+c+cstep) * (one-c-cstep) - (one+c+cstep) * (one-c)
a22 = (one-c-cstep) - (one+c+cstep) * (one-c) / (one+c)
a23 = a(3) * (one+c+cstep) * (one-c-cstep) - &
      a(1) * (one-c) * (one+c+cstep)

x(2) = (a23 - a21 * a13 / a11) / (a22 - a12 * a21 / a11)
x(1) = (a13 - a12 * x(2)) / a11
x(3) = a(1) * (one - c) - x(1) * (one - c) - x(2) * (one - c) / (one + c)

integral = integral + tstep * (x(1) * cstep + x(2) * &
      log((one + c + cstep) / (one + c)) - x(3) * &
      log((one - c - cstep) / (one - c)))

if (integral > to_integral) then
  oldt = prt%t
  call tao_random_number (temprand)
  prt%t = prt%t - temprand * tstep
  call tao_random_number (temprand)
  prt%costheta = c + (0.5_default - temprand) * cstep
  call parton_set_simulated (prt)

  if (prt%t < D_Min_t + parton_mass_squared(prt)) then
    prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
  end if
  if (prt%costheta.lt.-cmax_t .or. prt%costheta.gt.cmax_t) then
    ! reject branching due to violation of costheta-limits
    call tao_random_number (random)
  end if
end if

```

```

        if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
            to_integral = three * pi * log(one / random)
        else if (parton_is_gluon(prt)) then
            to_integral = four * pi * log(one / random)
        end if
        integral = zero
        prt%t = oldt
        call parton_set_simulated (prt, .false.)
    end if
    if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
        ! decide between g->gg and g->qqbar splitting
        z(1) = 0.5_default + 0.5_default * prt%costheta
        call tao_random_number (temprand)
        if (P_ggg(z(1)) > temprand * (P_ggg (z(1)) + P_gqq (z(1)) * &
            number_of_flavors(prt%t))) then
            gtoqq = 0
        else
            call tao_random_number (temprand)
            gtoqq = 1 + temprand * number_of_flavors (prt%t)
        end if
    end if
    else
        c = c + cstep
    end if
    cmax_t = cmax (prt)
end do
if (integral <= to_integral) then
    prt%t = prt%t - tstep
    if (prt%t < D_Min_t + parton_mass_squared (prt)) then
        prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
        call parton_set_simulated(prt)
    end if
end if
end subroutine parton_simulate_step

```

*<Set sister if lookatsister is true or not given>≡*

```

sister => null()
SET_SISTER: do
    if (present (lookatsister)) then
        if (.not. lookatsister) then
            exit SET_SISTER
        end if
    end if
    if (prt%nr == prt%parent%child1%nr) then
        sister => prt%parent%child2
    else
        sister => prt%parent%child1
    end if
    exit SET_SISTER
end do SET_SISTER

```

From the whole ISR algorithm all functionality has been moved to `shower_core.f90`. Only `maxzz` remains here, because more than one module needs to access it.

*<Shower partons: public>+≡*

```

public :: maxzz
<Shower partons: procedures>+=
function maxzz (shat, s) result (maxz)
  real(default), intent(in) :: shat,s
  real(default) :: maxz
  maxz= min (maxz_isr, one - (two * minenergy_timelike * sqrt(shat)) / s)
end function maxzz

```

## 16.3 Main shower module

```

<shower_core.f90>≡
<File header>

module shower_core

  <Use kinds>
  use constants !NODEP!
  use limits !NODEP!
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use file_utils !NODEP!
  use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!
  use shower_base
  use shower_partons
  use ckkw_pseudo_weights

  <Standard module head>

  <Shower core: public>

  <Shower core: parameters>

  <Shower core: types>

  contains

  <Shower core: procedures>

end module shower_core

<Shower core: public>≡
  public :: shower_interaction_t

<Shower core: types>≡
  type :: shower_interaction_t
    type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
  end type shower_interaction_t

  type :: shower_interaction_pointer_t
    type(shower_interaction_t), pointer :: i => null ()
  end type shower_interaction_pointer_t

```

The main type of `shower_core`:

```

<Shower core: public>+≡
    public :: shower_t

<Shower core: types>+≡
    type :: shower_t
        type(shower_interaction_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
            interactions
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
        integer :: next_free_nr
        integer :: next_color_nr
        logical :: valid
    contains
        <Shower core: shower: TBP>
    end type shower_t

```

The parameters of the shower module:

```

<Shower core: parameters>≡
    ! real(default), parameter :: alphasmax = one
    ! real(default), parameter :: xpdfmax = 10._default
    real(default), save :: alphasxpdfmax = 12._default

<Shower core: shower: TBP>≡
    procedure :: add_interaction_2ton => shower_add_interaction_2ton

<Shower core: procedures>≡
    subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton (shower, partons)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), intent(in), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
        type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t) :: ckkw_pseudo_weights
        call shower%add_interaction_2ton_CKKW (partons, ckkw_pseudo_weights)
    end subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton

```

In this routine, `y` and `ymin` are the jet measures, `w` and `wmax` are weights, `s` is the kinematic energy squared of the interaction. The flag `isr_is_possible` checks whether the initial parton is set, lepton-hadron collisions are not implemented (yet). As a workaround: as WHIZARD can treat partons as massless, there might be partons with  $E < m$ : if such a parton is found, quarks will be treated massless.

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: add_interaction_2ton_CKKW => shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW

<Shower core: procedures>+≡
    subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW &
        (shower, partons, ckkw_pseudo_weights)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), intent(in), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
        type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: ckkw_pseudo_weights

        integer :: n_partons, n_out, n_partons_shower
        integer :: i, j, imin, jmin
        real(default) :: y, ymin
        real(default) :: w, wmax
    end subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW

```

```

real(default) :: random, sum
! real(default) :: s
type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: new_partons
type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
integer :: n_int
type(shower_interaction_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: temp
type(vector4_t) :: prtmomentum, childmomentum
logical :: isr_is_possible
type(lorentz_transformation_t) :: L

if (signal_is_pending ()) return
n_partons = size (partons)
n_out = n_partons - 2
if (n_out < 2) then
    call msg_bug &
        ("Shower core: trying to add a 2-> (something<2) interaction")
end if
! print *, " adding a 2-> ", n_out, " interaction"

isr_is_possible = associated (partons(1)%p%initial) .and. &
    associated (partons(2)%p%initial)

if (associated (partons(1)%p%initial) .and. &
    parton_is_quark (partons(1)%p)) then
    if (parton_get_energy (partons(1)%p) < &
        2._double * parton_mass (partons(1)%p)) then
        if (abs(partons(1)%p%type) < 2) then
            treat_light_quarks_massless = .true.
        else
            treat_duscb_quarks_massless = .true.
        end if
    end if
end if
if (associated (partons(2)%p%initial) .and. &
    parton_is_quark (partons(2)%p)) then
    if (parton_get_energy (partons(2)%p) < &
        two * parton_mass (partons(2)%p)) then
        if (abs(partons(2)%p%type) < 2) then
            treat_light_quarks_massless = .true.
        else
            treat_duscb_quarks_massless = .true.
        end if
    end if
end if

<Add a new interaction to shower%interactions>

if (associated (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p%initial)) &
    call parton_set_simulated &
        (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p%initial)
if (associated (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p%initial)) &
    call parton_set_simulated &
        (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p%initial)
if (isr_is_possible) then

```

```

!!! boost to the CMFrame of the incoming partons
L = boost (-(shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p%momentum + &
  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p%momentum), &
  (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p%momentum + &
  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p%momentum)**1 )
do i = 1, n_partons
  call parton_apply_lorentztrafo &
    (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p, L)
end do
end if
do i = 1, size (partons)
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  !!! ensure that partons are marked as belonging to the hard interaction
  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p%belongstointeraction &
    = .true.
  !!! ensure that incoming partons are marked as belonging to ISR
  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p%belongstoFSR = i > 2

  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p%interactionnr &
    = n_int
  !!! include a 2^(i - 1) number as a label for the ckkw clustering
  shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p%ckkwlabel = 2**(i - 1)
end do

<Add partons from shower%interactions to shower%partons>

if (isr_is_possible) then
  if (isr_pt_ordered) then
    call shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_pt &
      (shower, shower%interactions(size (shower%interactions))%i)
  else
    call shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana_test &
      (shower, shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p, &
      shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p)
  end if
end if

!!! generate pseudo parton shower history and add all partons to
!!! shower%partons-array
!!! TODO initial -> initial + final branchings ??
allocate (new_partons(1:(n_partons - 2)))
do i = 1, size (new_partons)
  nullify (new_partons(i)%p)
end do
do i = 1, size (new_partons)
  new_partons(i)%p => shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i + 2)%p
end do
imin = 0
jmin = 0

if (allocated (ckkw_pseudo_weights%weights)) then
  <Perform clustering using the CKKW weights>
else
  <Perform clustering in the usual way>

```

```

end if

!!! add all partons to the shower
<Count number of associated shower%partons(i)%p>

!!! set the FSR starting scale for all partons
do i = 1, size (new_partons)
  !!! the imaginary mother is the only parton remaining in new_partons
  if (.not. associated (new_partons(i)%p)) cycle

  call set_starting_scale (new_partons(i)%p, &
    get_starting_scale (new_partons(i)%p))
  exit
end do

deallocate (new_partons)

!!! call shower%write ()
!!! print *, "end of shower_interactionadd2ton"

contains

<Procedures of shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW>
end subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW

<Add a new interaction to shower%interactions>≡
if (allocated (shower%interactions)) then
  n_int = size (shower%interactions) + 1
else
  n_int = 1
end if
allocate (temp (1:n_int))
do i = 1, n_int - 1
  allocate (temp(i)%i)
  temp(i)%i = shower%interactions(i)%i
end do
allocate (temp(n_int)%i)
allocate (temp(n_int)%i%partons(1:n_partons))
do i = 1, n_partons
  allocate (temp(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p)
  call parton_copy (partons(i)%p, temp(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p)
end do
if (allocated (shower%interactions)) deallocate(shower%interactions)
allocate (shower%interactions(1:n_int))
do i = 1, n_int
  shower%interactions(i)%i => temp(i)%i
end do
deallocate (temp)

<Add partons from shower%interactions to shower%partons>≡
if (allocated (shower%partons)) then
  allocate (new_partons(1:size(shower%partons) + &
    size(shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons)))
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)

```



```

        new_partons(i)%p => shower%partons(i)%p
    end do
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons)
        new_partons(size(shower%partons) + i)%p => &
            shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p
    end do
    deallocate (shower%partons)
else
    allocate (new_partons(1:size(shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons)))
    do i = 1, size (partons)
        new_partons(i)%p => shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p
    end do
end if
allocate (shower%partons(1:size (new_partons)))
do i = 1, size (new_partons)
    shower%partons(i)%p => new_partons(i)%p
end do
deallocate (new_partons)
!!! call shower%write ()

(Perform clustering using the CKKW weights)≡
CKKW_CLUSTERING: do
    !!! search for the combination with the highest weight
    wmax = zero
    CKKW_OUTER: do i = 1, size (new_partons)
        CKKW_INNER: do j = i + 1, size (new_partons)
            if (.not. associated (new_partons(i)%p)) cycle
            if (.not. associated (new_partons(j)%p)) cycle
            w = ckkw_pseudo_weights%weights(new_partons(i)%p%ckkwlabel + &
                new_partons(j)%p%ckkwlabel)
            if (w > wmax .or. wmax == zero) then
                wmax = w
                imin = i
                jmin = j
            end if
        end do CKKW_INNER
    end do CKKW_OUTER
    if (wmax > zero) then
        call shower%add_parent (new_partons(imin)%p)
        call parton_set_child (new_partons(imin)%p%parent, &
            new_partons(jmin)%p, 2)
        call parton_set_parent (new_partons(jmin)%p, &
            new_partons(imin)%p%parent)
        prt => new_partons(imin)%p%parent
        prt%nr = shower_get_next_free_nr (shower)
        prt%type = 94
        !!! something for internal use needed, 81-100 should be reserved
        !!! for internal purposes

        prt%momentum = new_partons(imin)%p%momentum + &
            new_partons(jmin)%p%momentum
        prt%t = prt%momentum**2

        !!! auxilliary values for the ckkw matching
        !!! for now, randomly choose the type of the intermediate

```

```

prt%ckkwlabel = new_partons(imin)%p%ckkwlabel + &
    new_partons(jmin)%p%ckkwlabel
sum = zero
call tao_random_number (random)
CKKW_TYPE: do i = 0, 4
    if (sum + &
        ckkw_pseudo_weights%weights_by_type(prt%ckkwlabel, i) > &
        random * ckkw_pseudo_weights%weights(prt%ckkwlabel) ) then
        prt%ckkwtype = i
        exit ckkw_type
    end if
    sum = sum + &
        ckkw_pseudo_weights%weights_by_type(prt%ckkwlabel, i)
end do CKKW_TYPE

!!! TODO -> calculate costheta and store it for
!!!         later use in generate_ps

if (space_part_norm(prt%momentum) > 1E-10_default) then
    prtmomentum = prt%momentum
    childmomentum = prt%child1%momentum
    prtmomentum = boost (-parton_get_beta(prt) / &
        sqrt(one - &
            (parton_get_beta(prt)**2), space_part (prt%momentum) / &
            space_part_norm(prt%momentum)) * prtmomentum
    childmomentum = boost (-parton_get_beta(prt) / &
        sqrt(one - &
            (parton_get_beta(prt)**2), space_part (prt%momentum) / &
            space_part_norm(prt%momentum)) * childmomentum
    prt%costheta = enclosed_angle_ct(prtmomentum, childmomentum)
else
    prt%costheta = - one
end if

prt%belongstointeraction = .true.
prt%belongstoFSR = &
    new_partons(imin)%p%belongstoFSR .and. &
    new_partons(jmin)%p%belongstoFSR

nullify (new_partons(imin)%p)
nullify (new_partons(jmin)%p)
new_partons(imin)%p => prt
else
    exit CKKW_CLUSTERING
end if
end do CKKW_CLUSTERING

<Perform clustering in the usual way>≡
CLUSTERING: do
    !!! search for the partons to be clustered together
    ymin = zero
    OUTER: do i = 1, size (new_partons)
        INNER: do j = i + 1, size (new_partons)
            !!! calculate the jet measure
            if (.not.associated (new_partons(i)%p)) cycle INNER

```

```

    if (.not.associated (new_partons(j)%p)) cycle INNER
    if (.not. shower_clustering_allowed &
        (shower, new_partons, i,j)) &
        cycle inner
    !!! Durham jet-measure ! don't care about constants
    y = min (parton_get_energy (new_partons(i)%p), &
        parton_get_energy (new_partons(j)%p)) * &
        (one - enclosed_angle_ct &
        (new_partons(i)%p%momentum, &
        new_partons(j)%p%momentum))
    if (y < ymin .or. ymin == zero) then
        ymin = y
        imin = i
        jmin = j
    end if
end do INNER
end do OUTER
if (ymin > zero) then
    call shower%add_parent (new_partons(imin)%p)
    call parton_set_child &
        (new_partons(imin)%p%parent, new_partons(jmin)%p, 2)
    call parton_set_parent &
        (new_partons(jmin)%p, new_partons(imin)%p%parent)
    prt => new_partons(imin)%p%parent
    prt%nr = shower_get_next_free_nr (shower)
    prt%type = 94
    !!! something for internal use needed, 81-100 should be
    !!! reserved for internal purposes

    prt%momentum = new_partons(imin)%p%momentum + &
        new_partons(jmin)%p%momentum
    prt%t = prt%momentum**2
    !!! TODO -> calculate costheta and store it for
    !!! later use in generate_ps

    if (space_part_norm(prt%momentum) > 1E-10_default) then
        prtmomentum = prt%momentum
        childmomentum = prt%child1%momentum
        prtmomentum = boost (-parton_get_beta(prt) / sqrt(one - &
            (parton_get_beta(prt))**2), space_part(prt%momentum) / &
            space_part_norm(prt%momentum)) * prtmomentum
        childmomentum = boost (-parton_get_beta(prt) / &
            sqrt(one - &
            (parton_get_beta(prt))**2), space_part(prt%momentum) / &
            space_part_norm(prt%momentum)) * childmomentum
        prt%costheta = enclosed_angle_ct(prtmomentum, childmomentum)
    else
        prt%costheta = - one
    end if

    prt%belongstointeraction = .true.
    nullify (new_partons(imin)%p)
    nullify (new_partons(jmin)%p)
    new_partons(imin)%p => prt

```

```

        else
            exit CLUSTERING
        end if
    end do CLUSTERING

    (Count number of associated shower%partons(i)%p)≡
    n_partons_shower = 0
    if (allocated (shower%partons)) then
        do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
            if (associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) &
                n_partons_shower = n_partons_shower + 1
            end do
        end if

    (Procedures of shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW)≡
    function shower_clustering_allowed (shower, partons, i, j) result (allowed)
        type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        logical :: allowed
        type(parton_pointer_t), intent(in), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
        integer, intent(in) :: i, j
        !!! TODO implement checking if clustering is allowed, e.g.
        !!!      in e+e- -> qqg don't cluster the quarks together first
        allowed = .true.
    end function shower_clustering_allowed

    (Procedures of shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW)+≡
    recursive subroutine transfer_pointers (destiny, start, prt)
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: destiny
        integer, intent(inout) :: start
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        destiny(start)%p => prt
        start = start + 1
        if (associated (prt%child1)) then
            call transfer_pointers (destiny, start, prt%child1)
        end if
        if (associated (prt%child2)) then
            call transfer_pointers (destiny, start, prt%child2)
        end if
    end subroutine transfer_pointers

    (Procedures of shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW)+≡
    recursive function get_starting_scale (prt) result (scale)
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        real(default) :: scale
        scale = huge (scale)
        if (associated (prt%child1) .and. associated (prt%child2)) then
            scale = min(scale, prt%t)
        end if
        if (associated (prt%child1)) then
            scale = min (scale, get_starting_scale (prt%child1))
        end if
        if (associated (prt%child2)) then
            scale = min (scale, get_starting_scale (prt%child2))
        end if
    end if

```

```
end function get_starting_scale
```

```

<Procedures of shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW>+=
recursive subroutine set_starting_scale (prt, scale)
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
  real(default) :: scale
  if (prt%type /= 94) then
    if (scale > D_Min_t + parton_mass_squared (prt)) then
      prt%t = scale
    else
      prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
      call parton_set_simulated (prt)
    end if
  end if
  if (associated (prt%child1)) then
    call set_starting_scale (prt%child1, scale)
  end if
  if (associated (prt%child2)) then
    call set_starting_scale (prt%child2, scale)
  end if
end subroutine set_starting_scale

```

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+=
procedure :: simulate_no_isr_shower => shower_simulate_no_isr_shower

```

```

<Shower core: procedures>+=
subroutine shower_simulate_no_isr_shower (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: i, j
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
  do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
    do j = 1, 2
      prt => shower%interactions(i)%i%partons(j)%p
      if (associated (prt%initial)) then
        !!! for virtuality ordered: remove unneeded partons
        if (associated (prt%parent)) then
          if (.not. parton_is_hadron(prt%parent)) then
            if (associated (prt%parent%parent)) then
              if (.not. parton_is_hadron (prt%parent)) then
                call shower_remove_parton_from_partons &
                  (shower, prt%parent%parent)
              end if
            end if
          end if
          call shower_remove_parton_from_partons &
            (shower, prt%parent)
        end if
      end if
      call parton_set_parent (prt, prt%initial)
      call parton_set_child (prt%initial, prt, 1)
      if (associated (prt%initial%child2)) then
        call shower_remove_parton_from_partons &
          (shower, prt%initial%child2)
        deallocate (prt%initial%child2)
      end if
    end if
  end do
end subroutine

```

```

        call shower%add_child (prt%initial, 2)
    end if
end do
end do
end subroutine shower_simulate_no_isr_shower

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+=
    procedure :: simulate_no_fsr_shower => shower_simulate_no_fsr_shower

<Shower core: procedures>+=
    subroutine shower_simulate_no_fsr_shower (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        integer :: i, j
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
            do j = 3, size (shower%interactions(i)%i%partons)
                prt => shower%interactions(i)%i%partons(j)%p
                call parton_set_simulated (prt)
                prt%scale = 0._double
                prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
            end do
        end do
    end subroutine shower_simulate_no_fsr_shower

<Shower core: procedures>+=
    subroutine swap_pointers (prtp1, prtp2)
        type(parton_pointer_t), intent(inout) :: prtp1, prtp2
        type(parton_pointer_t) :: prtptemp
        prtptemp%p => prtp1%p
        prtp1%p => prtp2%p
        prtp2%p => prtptemp%p
    end subroutine swap_pointers

This removes emitted timelike partons.

<Shower core: procedures>+=
    recursive subroutine shower_remove_parton_from_partons (shower, prt)
        type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        integer :: i
        if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. associated (prt%child2)) then
            call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive (shower, prt%child2)
        end if
        do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
            if (associated (shower%partons(i)%p, prt)) then
                shower%partons(i)%p => null()
                exit
            end if
            if (i == size (shower%partons)) then
                ! call msg_bug ("Shower core: parton to be removed not found")
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine shower_remove_parton_from_partons

```

This removes the parton prt and all its children.

*(Shower core: procedures)*+≡

```
recursive subroutine shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
  if (associated (prt%child1)) then
    call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive (shower, prt%child1)
    deallocate (prt%child1)
  end if
  if (associated (prt%child2)) then
    call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive (shower, prt%child2)
    deallocate (prt%child2)
  end if
  call shower_remove_parton_from_partons (shower, prt)
end subroutine shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive
```

*(Shower core: shower: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: sort_partons => shower_sort_partons
```

*(Shower core: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine shower_sort_partons (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: i, j, maxsort, size_partons
  logical :: changed
  !!! print *, " shower_sort_partons"
  if (.not. allocated (shower%partons)) return
  size_partons = size (shower%partons)
  maxsort = 0
  do i = 1, size_partons
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) maxsort = i
  end do
  size_partons = size (shower%partons)
  if (size_partons <= 1) return
  do i = 1, maxsort
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) then
      !!! set unsimulated ISR partons to be "typeless" to prevent
      !!! influences from "wrong" masses
      if (.not. shower%partons(i)%p%belongstoFSR .and. &
        .not. parton_is_simulated (shower%partons(i)%p) .and. &
        .not. shower%partons(i)%p%belongstointeraction) then
        shower%partons(i)%p%type = 0
      end if
    end if
  end do
  !!! Just a Bubblesort
  !!! Different algorithms needed for t-ordered and pt^2-ordered shower
  !!! Pt-ordered:
  if (isr_pt_ordered) then
    OUTERDO_PT: do i = 1, maxsort - 1
      changed = .false.
      INNERDO_PT: do j = 1, maxsort - i
```

```

if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (.not. associated (shower%partons(j + 1)%p)) cycle
if (.not. associated (shower%partons(j)%p)) then
    !!! change if j + 1 ist assoaciated and j is not
    call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
    changed = .true.
else if (shower%partons(j)%p%scale < &
    shower%partons(j + 1)%p%scale) then
    call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
    changed = .true.
else if (shower%partons(j)%p%scale == &
    shower%partons(j + 1)%p%scale) then
    if (shower%partons(j)%p%nr > shower%partons(j + 1)%p%nr) then
        call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
        changed = .true.
    end if
end if
end do INNERDO_PT
if (.not. changed) exit OUTERDO_PT
end do outerdo_pt
!!! |t|-ordered
else
    OUTERDO_T: do i = 1, maxsort - 1
        changed = .false.
        INNERDO_T: do j = 1, maxsort - i
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            if (.not. associated (shower%partons(j + 1)%p)) cycle
            if (.not. associated (shower%partons(j)%p)) then
                !!! change if j+1 ist assoaciated and j isn't
                call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
                changed = .true.
            else if (.not. shower%partons(j)%p%belongstointeraction .and. &
                shower%partons(j + 1)%p%belongstointeraction) then
                !!! move partons belonging to the interaction to the front
                call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
                changed = .true.
            else if (.not. shower%partons(j)%p%belongstointeraction .and. &
                .not. shower%partons(j + 1)%p%belongstointeraction ) then
                if (abs (shower%partons(j)%p%t) - parton_mass_squared &
                    (shower%partons(j)%p) < &
                    abs(shower%partons(j + 1)%p%t) - parton_mass_squared &
                    (shower%partons(j + 1)%p)) then
                    call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), shower%partons(j + 1))
                    changed = .true.
                else
                    if (abs (shower%partons(j)%p%t) - parton_mass_squared &
                        (shower%partons(j)%p) == &
                        abs(shower%partons(j + 1)%p%t) - parton_mass_squared &
                        (shower%partons(j + 1)%p)) then
                        if (shower%partons(j)%p%nr > &
                            shower%partons(j + 1)%p%nr) then
                            call swap_pointers (shower%partons(j), &
                                shower%partons(j + 1))
                            changed = .true.
                        end if
                    end if
                end if
            end if
        end do INNERDO_T
    end do OUTERDO_T
end if

```



```

        end if
    end if
    end if
    end if
    end do INNERDO_T
    if (.not. changed) exit OUTERDO_T
    end do OUTERDO_T
end if
!!! print *, " shower_sort_partons finished"
end subroutine shower_sort_partons

```

Creation and finalization.

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: create => shower_create
<Shower core: procedures>+≡
    subroutine shower_create (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        shower%next_free_nr = 1
        shower%next_color_nr = 1
        if (allocated (shower%interactions)) then
            call msg_bug ("Shower: creating new shower while old one " // &
                "still associated (interactions)")
        end if
        if (allocated (shower%partons)) then
            call msg_bug ("Shower: creating new shower while old one " // &
                "still associated (partons)")
        end if
        treat_light_quarks_massless = .true.
        treat_duscb_quarks_massless = .false.
        shower%valid = .true.
    end subroutine shower_create

```

Deallocate the interaction pointers.

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => shower_final
<Shower core: procedures>+≡
    subroutine shower_final (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        integer :: i
        if (.not. allocated (shower%interactions)) return
        do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
            if (allocated (shower%interactions(i)%i%partons)) &
                deallocate (shower%interactions(i)%i%partons)
            deallocate (shower%interactions(i)%i)
        end do
        deallocate (shower%interactions)
        deallocate (shower%partons)
    end subroutine shower_final

```

Bookkeeping functions.

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_next_free_nr => shower_get_next_free_nr

```

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
function shower_get_next_free_nr (shower) result (next_number)
class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
integer :: next_number
next_number = shower%next_free_nr
shower%next_free_nr = shower%next_free_nr + 1
end function shower_get_next_free_nr

(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡
procedure :: set_next_color_nr => shower_set_next_color_nr

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_set_next_color_nr (shower, index)
class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
integer, intent(in) :: index
if (index < shower%next_color_nr) then
call msg_error ("in shower_set_next_color_nr")
else
shower%next_color_nr = max(shower%next_color_nr, index)
end if
end subroutine shower_set_next_color_nr

(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡
procedure :: get_next_color_nr => shower_get_next_color_nr

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
function shower_get_next_color_nr (shower) result (next_color)
class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
integer :: next_color
next_color = shower%next_color_nr
shower%next_color_nr = shower%next_color_nr + 1
end function shower_get_next_color_nr

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_enlarge_partons_array (shower, length)
type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
integer, intent(in) :: length
integer :: i, oldlength
type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: new_partons
!!! print *, "shower_enlarge_partons_array ", length
if (length > 0) then
if (allocated (shower%partons)) then
oldlength = size (shower%partons)
allocate (new_partons(1:oldlength))
do i = 1, oldlength
new_partons(i)%p => shower%partons(i)%p
end do
deallocate (shower%partons)
else
oldlength = 0
end if
allocate (shower%partons(1:oldlength + length))
do i = 1, oldlength

```

```

        shower%partons(i)%p => new_partons(i)%p
    end do
    do i = oldlength + 1, oldlength + length
        shower%partons(i)%p => null()
    end do
else
    call msg_bug ("Shower: no parton_pointers added in shower%partons")
end if
!!! print *, "  shower_enlarge_partons_array finished"
end subroutine shower_enlarge_partons_array

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: add_child => shower_add_child

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_add_child (shower, prt, child)
    class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    !!! type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: child
    integer :: i, lastfree
    type(parton_pointer_t) :: newprt
    !!! print *, " shower_add_child for parton ", prt%nr
    if (child /= 1 .and. child /= 2) then
        call msg_bug ("Shower: Adding child in nonexisting place")
    end if
    allocate (newprt%p)
    newprt%p%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
    !!! add new parton as child
    if (child == 1) then
        prt%child1 => newprt%p
    else
        prt%child2 => newprt%p
    end if
    newprt%p%parent => prt
    newprt%p%interactionnr = prt%interactionnr
    !!! add new parton to shower%partons list
    if (associated (shower%partons (size(shower%partons))%p)) then
        call shower_enlarge_partons_array (shower, 10)
    end if
    !!! find last free pointer and let it point to the new parton
    lastfree = 0
    do i = size (shower%partons), 1, -1
        if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
            lastfree = i
        end if
    end do
    if (lastfree == 0) then
        call msg_bug ("Shower: no free pointers found")
    end if
    shower%partons(lastfree)%p => newprt%p
end subroutine shower_add_child

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: add_parent => shower_add_parent
(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_add_parent (shower, prt)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
  integer :: i, lastfree
  type(parton_pointer_t) :: newprt
  !!! print *, " shower_add_parent for parton ", prt%nr
  allocate (newprt%p)
  newprt%p%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
  !!! add new parton as parent
  newprt%p%child1 => prt
  prt%parent => newprt%p
  newprt%p%interactionnr = prt%interactionnr
  !!! add new parton to shower%partons list
  if (.not. allocated (shower%partons)) then
    call shower_enlarge_partons_array (shower, 10)
  else if (associated (shower%partons(size(shower%partons))%p)) then
    call shower_enlarge_partons_array (shower, 10)
  end if
  !!! find last free pointer and let it point to the new parton
  lastfree = 0
  do i = size(shower%partons), 1, -1
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
      lastfree = i
    end if
  end do
  if (lastfree == 0) then
    call msg_bug ("Shower: no free pointers found")
  end if
  shower%partons(lastfree)%p => newprt%p
  ! print *, " shower_add_parent finished"
end subroutine shower_add_parent

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
function shower_get_total_momentum (shower, c) result (mom)
  type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  integer, intent(in) :: c
  real(default) :: mom
  integer :: i
  mom = zero
  if (.not. allocated (shower%partons)) return
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    if (parton_is_final (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
      select case (c)
      case (0)
        mom = mom + vector4_get_component(shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 0)
      case (1)
        mom = mom + vector4_get_component(shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 1)
      case (2)
        mom = mom + vector4_get_component(shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 2)
      case (3)

```

```

        mom = mom + vector4_get_component(shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 3)
    case default
        call msg_error ("Shower: wrong component of 4momentum")
    end select
end if
end do
end function shower_get_total_momentum

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

function shower_get_nr_of_partons (shower, mine, include_remnants) &
    result (nr)
    type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: mine
    logical, intent(in), optional :: include_remnants
    integer :: nr
    integer :: i
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    real(default) :: minenergy
    nr = 0
    if (present (mine)) then
        minenergy = mine
    else
        minenergy = zero
    end if
    do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
        prt => shower%partons(i)%p
        if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
        if (.not. parton_is_final (prt)) cycle
        if (prt%type == 9999) then
            if (present (include_remnants)) then
                if (.not. include_remnants) cycle
            end if
        end if
        if (present(mine)) then
            if (parton_get_energy (prt) > mine) then
                nr = nr + 1
            end if
        else
            nr = nr + 1
        end if
    end do
end function shower_get_nr_of_partons

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

function shower_get_nr_of_final_colored_ME_partons (shower) result(nr)
    type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
    integer :: nr
    integer :: i, j
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    nr = 0
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
        do j = 1, size (shower%interactions(i)%i%partons)
            prt => shower%interactions(i)%i%partons(j)%p

```

```

        if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
        if (.not. parton_is_colored (prt)) cycle
        if (prt%belongstointeraction .and. prt%belongstoFSR .and. &
            (prt%type /= 94)) then
            nr = nr +1
        end if
    end do
end do
end function shower_get_nr_of_final_colored_ME_partons

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: get_final_colored_ME_partons => &
        shower_get_final_colored_ME_partons

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine shower_get_final_colored_ME_partons (shower, partons)
        class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: partons
        integer :: i, j, index, s
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        if (allocated(partons)) deallocate(partons)
        s = shower_get_nr_of_final_colored_ME_partons (shower)
        if (s == 0) return
        allocate (partons(1:s))
        index = 0
        do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
            do j = 1, size (shower%interactions(i)%i%partons)
                prt => shower%interactions(i)%i%partons(j)%p
                if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
                if (.not. parton_is_colored (prt)) cycle
                if (prt%belongstointeraction .and. prt%belongstoFSR .and. &
                    (prt%type /= 94)) then
                    index = index + 1
                    partons(index)%p => prt
                end if
            end do
        end do
    end subroutine shower_get_final_colored_ME_partons

```

*<Shower core: public>+≡*

```

    public :: shower_get_final_partons

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine shower_get_final_partons (shower, partons, include_remnants)
        type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: partons
        logical, intent(in), optional :: include_remnants
        integer :: i, j
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        if (allocated(partons)) deallocate (partons)
        allocate (partons(1:shower_get_nr_of_partons(shower, &
            include_remnants = include_remnants)))
        j = 0
        do i = 1, size (shower%partons)

```

```

prt => shower%partons(i)%p
if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
if (.not. parton_is_final (prt)) cycle
!!! remnant
if (prt%type == 9999) then
  if (present (include_remnants)) then
    if (.not. include_remnants) cycle
  end if
end if
j = j + 1
partons(j)%p => prt
end do
end subroutine shower_get_final_partons

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive function interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton(prt) result (finished)
  type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
  logical :: finished
  if (prt%belongstoFSR) then
    !!! FSR partons
    if (associated (prt%child1)) then
      finished = interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%child1) &
        .and. interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%child2)
    else
      finished = prt%t <= parton_mass_squared(prt)
    end if
  else
    !!! search for emitted timelike partons in ISR shower
    if (.not. associated (prt%initial)) then
      !!! no initial -> no ISR
      finished = .true.
    else if (.not. associated (prt%parent)) then
      finished = .false.
    else
      if (.not. parton_is_hadron (prt%parent)) then
        if (associated (prt%child2)) then
          finished = interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%parent) .and. &
            interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%child2)
        else
          finished = interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%parent)
        end if
      else
        if (associated (prt%child2)) then
          finished = interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton (prt%child2)
        else
          !!! only second partons can come here -> if that happens FSR
          !!! evolution is not existing
          finished = .true.
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if
end function interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```
function interaction_fsr_is_finished (interaction) result (finished)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  logical :: finished
  integer :: i
  finished = .true.
  if (.not. allocated (interaction%partons)) return
  do i = 1, size (interaction%partons)
    if (.not. interaction_fsr_is_finished_for_parton &
      (interaction%partons(i)%p)) then
      finished = .false.
      exit
    end if
  end do
end function interaction_fsr_is_finished
```

*<Shower core: public>+≡*

```
public :: shower_interaction_get_shat
```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```
function shower_interaction_get_shat (interaction) result (shat)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  real(default) :: shat
  shat = (interaction%partons(1)%p%momentum + &
    interaction%partons(2)%p%momentum)**2
end function shower_interaction_get_shat
```

*<Shower core: public>+≡*

```
public :: shower_interaction_get_s
```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```
function shower_interaction_get_s (interaction) result (s)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  real(default) :: s
  s = (interaction%partons(1)%p%initial%momentum + &
    interaction%partons(2)%p%initial%momentum)**2
end function shower_interaction_get_s
```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```
function shower_fsr_is_finished (shower) result (finished)
  type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  logical :: finished
  integer :: i
  finished = .true.
  if (.not.allocated (shower%interactions)) return
  do i = 1, size(shower%interactions)
    if (.not. interaction_fsr_is_finished (shower%interactions(i)%i)) then
      finished = .false.
      exit
    end if
  end do
end function shower_fsr_is_finished
```



*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```
function shower_isr_is_finished (shower) result (finished)
  type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  logical :: finished
  integer :: i
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
  finished = .true.
  if (.not.allocated (shower%partons)) return
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    prt => shower%partons(i)%p
    if (isr_pt_ordered) then
      if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt) &
        .and. prt%scale > zero) then
        finished = .false.
        exit
      end if
    else
      if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt) &
        .and. prt%t < zero) then
        finished = .false.
        exit
      end if
    end if
  end do
end function shower_isr_is_finished
```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```
function shower_is_finished (shower) result (finished)
  type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  logical :: finished
  finished = shower_isr_is_finished (shower) .and. &
    shower_fsr_is_finished(shower)
end function shower_is_finished
```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron (interaction, prt1, prt2)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
  prt1 => null ()
  prt2 => null ()
  prt1 => interaction%partons(1)%p
  do
    if (associated (prt1%parent)) then
      if (parton_is_hadron (prt1%parent)) then
        exit
      else if ((.not. isr_pt_ordered .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt1%parent)) &
        .or. (isr_pt_ordered .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt1))) then
        exit
      else
        prt1 => prt1%parent
      end if
    else

```

```

        exit
    end if
end do
prt2 => interaction%partons(2)%p
do
    if (associated (prt2%parent)) then
        if (parton_is_hadron (prt2%parent)) then
            exit
        else if ((.not. isr_pt_ordered .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt2%parent)) &
            .or. (isr_pt_ordered .and. .not. parton_is_simulated (prt2))) then
            exit
        else
            prt2 => prt2%parent
        end if
    else
        exit
    end if
end do
end subroutine interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: update_beamremnants => shower_update_beamremnants

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_update_beamremnants (shower)
    class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_t), pointer :: hadron, remnant
    integer :: i
    real(default) :: random
    !!! only proton in first interaction !!!
    !!! currently only first beam-remnant will be updated
    do i = 1,2
        if (associated (shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(i)%p%initial)) then
            hadron => shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(i)%p%initial
        else
            cycle
        end if
        remnant => hadron%child2
        if (associated (remnant)) then
            remnant%momentum = hadron%momentum - hadron%child1%momentum
        end if
        !!! generate flavor of the beam-remnant if beam was proton
        if (abs (hadron%type) == 2212 .and. associated (hadron%child1)) then
            if (parton_is_quark (hadron%child1)) then
                !!! decide if valence (u,d) or sea quark (s,c,b)
                if ((abs (hadron%child1%type) <= 2) .and. &
                    (hadron%type * hadron%child1%type > zero)) then
                    !!! valence quark
                    if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 1) then
                        !!! if d then remaining diquark is uu_1
                        remnant%type = sign (2203, hadron%type)
                    else
                        call tao_random_number (random)
                        !!! if u then remaining diquark is either

```

```

        if (random < 0.75_default) then
            !!! with 75% a ud_0
            remnant%type = sign (2101, hadron%type)
        else
            !!! with 25% a ud_1
            remnant%type = sign (2103, hadron%type)
        end if
    end if
    remnant%c1 = hadron%child1%c2
    remnant%c2 = hadron%child1%c1
else if ((hadron%type * hadron%child1%type) < zero) then
    !!! antiquark
    if (.not. associated (remnant%child1)) then
        call shower%add_child (remnant, 1)
    end if
    if (.not. associated (remnant%child2)) then
        call shower%add_child (remnant, 2)
    end if
    call tao_random_number (random)
    if (random < 0.6666_default) then
        !!! 2/3 into udq + u
        if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 1) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (2112, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 2) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (2212, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 3) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (3212, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 4) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (4212, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 5) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (5212, hadron%type)
        end if
        remnant%child2%type = sign (2, hadron%type)
    else
        !!! 1/3 into uuq + d
        if (abs (hadron%child1%type).eq.1) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (2212, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type).eq.2) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (2224, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type).eq.3) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (3222, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type).eq.4) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (4222, hadron%type)
        else if (abs (hadron%child1%type).eq.5) then
            remnant%child1%type = sign (5222, hadron%type)
        end if
        remnant%child2%type = sign (1, hadron%type)
    end if
    remnant%c1 = hadron%child1%c2
    remnant%c2 = hadron%child1%c1
    remnant%child1%c1 = 0
    remnant%child1%c2 = 0
    remnant%child2%c1 = remnant%c1
    remnant%child2%c2 = remnant%c2

```

```

else
  !!! sea quark
  if (.not. associated (remnant%child1)) then
    call shower%add_child (remnant, 1)
  end if
  if (.not. associated (remnant%child2)) then
    call shower%add_child (remnant, 2)
  end if
  call tao_random_number (random)
  if (random < 0.5_default) then
    !!! 1/2 into usbar + ud_0
    if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 3) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (321, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 4) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (421, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 5) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (521, hadron%type)
    end if
    remnant%child2%type = sign (2101, hadron%type)
  else if (random < 0.6666_default) then
    !!! 1/6 into usbar + ud_1
    if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 3) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (321, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 4) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (421, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 5) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (521, hadron%type)
    end if
    remnant%child2%type = sign (2103, hadron%type)
  else
    !!! 1/3 into dsbar + uu_1
    if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 3) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (311, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 4) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (411, hadron%type)
    else if (abs (hadron%child1%type) == 5) then
      remnant%child1%type = sign (511, hadron%type)
    end if
    remnant%child2%type = sign (2203, hadron%type)
  end if
  remnant%c1 = hadron%child1%c2
  remnant%c2 = hadron%child1%c1
  remnant%child2%c1 = remnant%c1
  remnant%child2%c2 = remnant%c2
end if
else if (parton_is_gluon (hadron%child1)) then
  if (.not. associated (remnant%child1)) then
    call shower%add_child (remnant, 1)
  end if
  if (.not. associated (remnant%child2)) then
    call shower%add_child (remnant, 2)
  end if
  call tao_random_number (random)
  if (random < 0.5_default) then

```

```

        !!! 1/2 into u + ud_0
        remnant%child1%type = sign (2, hadron%type)
        remnant%child2%type = sign (2101, hadron%type)
    else if (random < 0.6666_default) then
        !!! 1/6 into u + ud_1
        remnant%child1%type = sign (2, hadron%type)
        remnant%child2%type = sign (2103, hadron%type)
    else
        !!! 1/3 into d + uu_1
        remnant%child1%type = sign (1, hadron%type)
        remnant%child2%type = sign (2203, hadron%type)
    end if
    remnant%c1 = hadron%child1%c2
    remnant%c2 = hadron%child1%c1
    if (sign (1,hadron%type) > 0) then
        remnant%child1%c1 = remnant%c1
        remnant%child2%c2 = remnant%c2
    else
        remnant%child1%c2 = remnant%c2
        remnant%child2%c1 = remnant%c1
    end if
end if
if (associated (remnant%child1)) then
    !!! don't care about on-shellness for now
    remnant%child1%momentum = 0.5_default * remnant%momentum
    remnant%child2%momentum = 0.5_default * remnant%momentum
    !!! but care about on-shellness for baryons
    if (mod (remnant%child1%type, 100) >= 10) then
        !!! check if the third quark is set -> meson or baryon
        remnant%child1%t = parton_mass_squared(remnant%child1)
        remnant%child1%momentum = vector4_moving( &
            energy(remnant%child1%momentum), &
            ( space_part(remnant%child1%momentum) / &
              space_part_norm(remnant%child1%momentum) ) *sqrt( &
                energy(remnant%child1%momentum)**2 - remnant%child1%t))
        remnant%child2%momentum = remnant%momentum &
            - remnant%child1%momentum
    end if
end if
end if
end do
end subroutine shower_update_beamremnants

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction, L)
    type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    integer :: i
    !!! ISR part
    do i = 1,2
        prt => interaction%partons(i)%p
        !!! loop over ancestors
        MOTHERS: do

```

```

    !!! boost parton
    call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (prt, L)
    if (associated (prt%child2)) then
        !!! boost emitted timelike parton (and daughters)
        call parton_apply_lorentztrafo_recursive (prt%child2, L)
    end if
    if (associated (prt%parent)) then
        if (.not. parton_is_hadron (prt%parent)) then
            prt => prt%parent
        else
            exit
        end if
    else
        exit
    end if
end do MOTHERS
end do
!!! FSR part
if (associated (interaction%partons(3)%p%parent)) then
    !!! pseudo Parton-Shower histora has been generated -> find
    !!! mother and go on from there recursively
    prt => interaction%partons(3)%p
    do while (associated (prt%parent))
        prt => prt%parent
    end do
    call parton_apply_lorentztrafo_recursive (prt, L)
else
    do i = 3, size (interaction%partons)
        call parton_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction%partons(i)%p, L)
    end do
end if
!!! print *, " end interaction_apply_lorentztrafo"
end subroutine interaction_apply_lorentztrafo

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_apply_lorentztrafo (shower, L)
    type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(lorentz_transformation_t), intent(in) :: L
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
        call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (shower%interactions(i)%i, L)
    end do
end subroutine shower_apply_lorentztrafo

```

This boosts partons belonging to the interaction to the center-of-mass frame of its partons nearest to the hadron.

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_boost_to_CMframe (interaction)
    type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
    type(vector4_t) :: beta
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
    call interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron (interaction, prt1, prt2)
    beta = prt1%momentum + prt2%momentum

```

```

beta = beta / vector4_get_component(beta,0)
if (beta**2 > one) then
  call msg_error ("Shower, boost to CM frame: beta > 1")
  return
end if
if (space_part(beta)**2 > 1E-14_default) then
  call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo(interaction, &
    boost(space_part(beta)**1 / &
      sqrt(one - space_part(beta)**2), -direction(beta)))
end if
end subroutine interaction_boost_to_CMframe

```

This boosts every interaction to the center-of-mass-frame of its partons nearest to the hadron.

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_boost_to_CMframe (shower)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
    call interaction_boost_to_CMframe (shower%interactions(i)%i)
  end do
  call shower%update_beamremnants ()
end subroutine shower_boost_to_CMframe

```

This boost all partons so that initial partons have their assigned  $x$ -value.

```

(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡
procedure :: boost_to_labframe => shower_boost_to_labframe

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_boost_to_labframe (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
    call interaction_boost_to_labframe (shower%interactions(i)%i)
  end do
end subroutine shower_boost_to_labframe

```

This boosts all partons so that initial partons have their assigned  $x$ -value.

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine interaction_boost_to_labframe (interaction)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
  type(vector3_t) :: beta
  call interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron (interaction, prt1, prt2)
  if (.not. associated (prt1%initial) .or. .not. associated (prt2%initial)) then
    return
  end if
  !!! if no branching at all occurred, take original partons
  ! if (prt1%child1%belongstointeraction .and. prt2%child1%belongstointeraction) then
  !   prt1 => prt1%child1
  !   prt2 => prt2%child1
  ! end if
  !!! transform partons to overall labframe.

```

```

beta = vector3_canonical(3) * &
      ((prt1%x * vector4_get_component (prt2%momentum, 0) - &
        prt2%x * vector4_get_component (prt1%momentum, 0)) / &
        (prt1%x * vector4_get_component (prt2%momentum, 3) - &
          prt2%x * vector4_get_component (prt1%momentum, 3)))
if (beta**1 > 1E-10_default) &
    call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction, &
      boost (beta**1 / sqrt(one - beta**2), -direction(beta)))
end subroutine interaction_boost_to_labframe

```

Only rotate to z if initial hadrons are given (and they are assumed to be aligned along the z-axis).

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_rotate_to_z (interaction)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
  call interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron (interaction, prt1, prt2)
  if (associated (prt1%initial)) then
    call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction, &
      rotation_to_2nd (space_part (prt1%momentum), &
        vector3_canonical(3) * sign (one, &
          vector4_get_component(prt1%initial%momentum,3)))
    end if
end subroutine interaction_rotate_to_z

```

Rotate initial partons to lie along  $\pm z$  axis.

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_rotate_to_z (shower)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
    call interaction_rotate_to_z (shower%interactions(i)%i)
  end do
  call shower%update_beamremnants ()
end subroutine shower_rotate_to_z

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_generate_primordial_kt (interaction)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
  type(parton_t), pointer :: had1, had2
  type(vector4_t) :: momenta(2)
  type(vector3_t) :: beta
  real(default) :: pt (2), phi(2)
  real(default) :: shat
  !!! variables for boosting and rotating
  real(default) :: btheta, bphi
  integer :: i
  if (primordial_kt_width == zero) return
  !!! print *, "interaction_generate_primordial_kt"
  !!! Return if there are no initials, electron-hadron collision not implemented
  if (.not. associated (interaction%partons(1)%p%initial) .or. &
    .not. associated (interaction%partons(2)%p%initial)) then

```



```

        return
    end if
    had1 => interaction%partons(1)%p%initial
    had2 => interaction%partons(2)%p%initial
    !!! copy momenta and energy
    momenta(1) = had1%child1%momentum
    momenta(2) = had2%child1%momentum
    GENERATE_PT_PHI: do i = 1, 2
        !!! generate transverse momentum and phi
        GENERATE_PT: do
            call tao_random_number (pt (i))
            pt(i) = primordial_kt_width * sqrt(-log(pt(i)))
            if (pt(i) < primordial_kt_cutoff) exit
        end do GENERATE_PT
        call tao_random_number (phi (i))
        phi(i) = twopi * phi(i)
    end do GENERATE_PT_PHI
    !!! adjust momenta
    shat = (momenta(1) + momenta(2))*2
    momenta(1) = vector4_moving (vector4_get_component (momenta(1),0), &
        vector3_moving ([pt(1) * cos(phi(1)), pt(1) * sin(phi(1)), &
        vector4_get_component (momenta(1), 3)]))
    momenta(2) = vector4_moving (vector4_get_component (momenta(2),0), &
        vector3_moving ([pt(2) * cos(phi(2)), pt(2) * sin(phi(2)), &
        vector4_get_component (momenta(2), 3)]))
    beta = vector3_moving ([vector4_get_component (momenta(1), 1) + &
        vector4_get_component (momenta(2), 1) , &
        vector4_get_component (momenta(1), 2) + &
        vector4_get_component (momenta(2), 2), zero]) / sqrt(shat)
    momenta(1) = boost (beta**1 / sqrt(one - beta**2), -direction(beta)) * momenta(1)
    bphi = azimuthal_angle (momenta(1))
    btheta = polar_angle (momenta(1))
    call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction, &
        rotation (cos(bphi), sin(bphi), 3) * rotation(cos(btheta), &
        sin(btheta), 2) * rotation(cos(-bphi), sin(-bphi), 3))
    call interaction_apply_lorentztrafo (interaction, &
        boost (beta**1 / sqrt(one - beta**2), -direction(beta)))
end subroutine interaction_generate_primordial_kt

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: generate_primordial_kt => shower_generate_primordial_kt

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine shower_generate_primordial_kt (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        integer :: i
        ! print *, "shower_generate_primordial_kt"
        ! call shower%write ()
        do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
            call interaction_generate_primordial_kt (shower%interactions(i)%i)
        end do
        call shower%update_beamremnants ()
        ! call shower%write ()
    end subroutine shower_generate_primordial_kt

```

Output.

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine interaction_write (interaction, unit)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i, u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  if (associated (interaction%partons(1)%p)) then
    if (associated (interaction%partons(1)%p%initial)) &
      call parton_write (interaction%partons(1)%p%initial, u)
  end if
  if (associated (interaction%partons(2)%p)) then
    if (associated (interaction%partons(2)%p%initial)) &
      call parton_write (interaction%partons(2)%p%initial, u)
  end if
  if (allocated (interaction%partons)) then
    do i = 1, size (interaction%partons)
      call parton_write (interaction%partons(i)%p, u)
    end do
  end if
  write (u, "(A)")
end subroutine interaction_write

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: write => shower_write

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_write (shower, unit)
  class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i, u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  if (size (shower%interactions) > 0) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Interactions: "
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
      write (u, "(4x,A,I0)") "Interaction number ", i
      if (.not. associated (shower%interactions(i)%i)) then
        call msg_fatal ("Shower: missing interaction in shower")
      end if
      call interaction_write (shower%interactions(i)%i, u)
    end do
  else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[no interactions in shower]"
  end if
  write (u, "(A)")
  if (allocated (shower%partons)) then
    write (u, "(5x,A)") "Partons:"
    do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
      ! print *, " i = ", i
      if (associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
        call parton_write(shower%partons(i)%p, u)
        if (i < size (shower%partons)) then

```

```

        if (associated (shower%partons(i + 1)%p)) then
            if (shower%partons(i)%p%belongstointeraction .and. &
                .not. shower%partons(i + 1)%p%belongstointeraction) then
                write (u, "(A)") &
                    "-----"
                ! stop "END"
            end if
        end if
    end if
end if
end do
else
    write (u, "(5x,A)") "[no partons in shower]"
end if
write (u, "(4x,A,4(ES12.5,A))") "Total Momentum [0:3]: ", &
    shower_get_total_momentum (shower, 0), TAB, &
    shower_get_total_momentum (shower, 1), TAB, &
    shower_get_total_momentum (shower, 2), TAB, &
    shower_get_total_momentum (shower, 3), TAB
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "ISR finished: ", shower_isr_is_finished (shower)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "FSR finished: ", shower_fsr_is_finished (shower)
end subroutine shower_write

```

*<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: write_lhef => shower_write_lhef

```

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_write_lhef (shower, unit)
    class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    integer :: i
    integer :: c1, c2
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write(u,'(A)') '<LesHouchesEvents version="1.0">'
    write(u,'(A)') '<-- not a complete lhe file - just one event -->'
    write(u,'(A)') '<event>'
    write(u, *) 2 + shower_get_nr_of_partons (shower), 1, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0
    !!! write incoming partons
    do i = 1, 2
        if (abs (shower%partons(i)%p%type) < 1000) then
            c1 = 0
            c2 = 0
            if (parton_is_colored (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
                if (shower%partons(i)%p%c1 /= 0) c1 = 500 + shower%partons(i)%p%c1
                if (shower%partons(i)%p%c2 /= 0) c2 = 500 + shower%partons(i)%p%c2
            end if
            write(u,*) shower%partons(i)%p%type, -1, 0, 0, c1, c2, &
                vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 1), &
                vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 2), &
                vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 3), &
                vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 0), &
                shower%partons(i)%p%momentum**2, zero, 9.0
        else

```

```

        write(u,*) shower%partons(i)%p%type, -9, 0, 0, 0, 0, &
            vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 1), &
            vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 2), &
            vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 3), &
            vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 0), &
            shower%partons(i)%p%momentum**2, zero, 9.0
    end if
end do
!!! write outgoing partons
do i = 3, size (shower%partons)
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    if (.not. parton_is_final (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    c1 = 0
    c2 = 0
    if (parton_is_colored (shower%partons(i)%p)) then
        if (shower%partons(i)%p%c1 .ne. 0) c1 = 500 + shower%partons(i)%p%c1
        if (shower%partons(i)%p%c2 .ne. 0) c2 = 500 + shower%partons(i)%p%c2
    end if
    write(u,*) shower%partons(i)%p%type, 1, 1, 2, c1, c2, &
        vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 1), &
        vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 2), &
        vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 3), &
        vector4_get_component (shower%partons(i)%p%momentum, 0), &
        shower%partons(i)%p%momentum**2, zero, 9.0
end do
write(u,'(A)') '</event>'
write(u,'(A)') '</LesHouchesEvents>'
end subroutine shower_write_lhef

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, prt)
    type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
    type(parton_t), pointer :: remnant => null()
    ! print *, " shower_replace_parent_by_hadron for parton ", prt%nr
    if (associated (prt%parent)) then
        call shower_remove_parton_from_partons (shower, prt%parent)
        deallocate (prt%parent)
    end if
    if (.not. associated (prt%initial%child2)) then
        call shower%add_child (prt%initial, 2)
    end if
    prt%parent => prt%initial
    prt%parent%child1 => prt
    ! make other child to be a beam-remnant
    remnant => prt%initial%child2
    remnant%type = 9999
    remnant%momentum = prt%parent%momentum - prt%momentum
    remnant%x = one - prt%x
    remnant%parent => prt%initial
    remnant%t = zero
end subroutine shower_replace_parent_by_hadron

```

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_get_first_ISR_scale_for_parton (shower, prt, tmax)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: tmax
  real(default) :: t, tstep, random, integral, temp1
  real(default) :: temprand
  if (present(tmax)) then
    t = max (max (-tscalefactor_isr * parton_get_energy (prt)**2, &
      -abs(tmax)), prt%t)
  else
    t = max (-tscalefactor_isr * parton_get_energy (prt)**2, prt%t)
  end if
  call tao_random_number (random)
  random = -twopi * log(random)
  !!! compare Integral and log(random) instead of random and exp(-Integral)
  random = random / first_integral_suppression_factor
  integral = zero
  call parton_set_simulated (prt, .false.)
  do
    call tao_random_number (temprand)
    tstep = max (abs (0.01_default * t) * temprand, 0.1_default * D_Min_t)
    if (t + 0.5_default * tstep > - D_Min_t) then
      prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
      call parton_set_simulated (prt)
      exit
    end if
    prt%t = t + 0.5_default * tstep
    temp1 = integral_over_z_simple (prt, (random - integral) / tstep)
    integral = integral + tstep * temp1
    if (integral > random) then
      prt%t = t + 0.5_default * tstep
      exit
    end if
    t = t + tstep
  end do
  if (prt%t > - D_Min_t) then
    call shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, prt)
  end if
  ! print *, "  shower_get_first_ISR_scale_for_parton finished"

```

contains

```

function integral_over_z_simple (prt, final) result (integral)
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  ! real(default), intent(in) :: shat, s,
  real(default), intent(in) :: final
  real(default) :: integral

  real(default), parameter :: zstepfactor = one
  real(default), parameter :: zstepmin = 0.0001_default
  real(default) :: z, zstep, minz, maxz
  real(default) :: pdfsum
  integer :: quark

```

```

integral = zero
if (D_print) then
  print *, "integral_over_z_simple for t = ", prt%t
end if
minz = prt%x
! maxz = maxx(shat, s)
maxz = maxx_isr
z = minz
!!! TODO -> Adapt zstep to structure of divergencies
if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
  !!! gluon coming from g->gg
  do
    call tao_random_number (temprand)
    zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * z * (one - z))
    zstep = min(zstep, maxz - z)
    integral = integral + zstep * (D_alpha_s_isr ((one - &
      (z + 0.5_default * zstep)) * abs(prt%t)) / (abs(prt%t))) * &
      P_ggg (z + 0.5_default * zstep) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
        prt%x / (z + 0.5_default * zstep), abs(prt%t), 21)
    if (integral > final) then
      exit
    end if
    z = z + zstep
    if (z >= maxz) then
      exit
    end if
  end do
  !!! gluon coming from q->qg ! correctly implemented yet?
  if (integral < final) then
    z = minz
    do
      call tao_random_number (temprand)
      zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * z * (one - z))
      zstep = min(zstep, maxz - z)
      pdfsum = zero
      do quark = -D_Nf, D_Nf
        if (quark == 0) cycle
        pdfsum = pdfsum + get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
          prt%x / (z + 0.5_default * zstep), abs(prt%t), quark)
      end do
      integral = integral + zstep * (D_alpha_s_isr &
        ((z + 0.5_default * zstep) * abs(prt%t)) / (abs(prt%t))) * &
        P_qqg (one - (z + 0.5_default * zstep)) * pdfsum
      if (integral > final) then
        exit
      end if
      z = z + zstep
      if (z >= maxz) then
        exit
      end if
    end do
  end if
else if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then

```

```

!!! quark coming from q->qg
do
  call tao_random_number(temprand)
  zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * z * (one - z))
  zstep = min(zstep, maxz - z)
  integral = integral + zstep * (D_alpha_s_isr ((one - &
    (z + 0.5_default * zstep)) * abs(prt%t)) / (abs(prt%t))) * &
    P_qqg (z + 0.5_default * zstep) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
    prt%x / (z + 0.5_default * zstep), abs(prt%t), prt%type)
  if (integral > final) then
    exit
  end if
  z = z + zstep
  if (z >= maxz) then
    exit
  end if
end do
!!! quark coming from g->qqbar
if (integral < final) then
  z = minz
  do
    call tao_random_number (temprand)
    zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * z*(one - z))
    zstep = min(zstep, maxz - z)
    integral = integral + zstep * (D_alpha_s_isr &
      ((one - (z + 0.5_default * zstep)) * abs(prt%t)) / (abs(prt%t))) * &
      P_gqq (z + 0.5_default * zstep) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
      prt%x / (z + 0.5_default * zstep), abs(prt%t), 21)
    if (integral > final) then
      exit
    end if
    z = z + zstep
    if (z >= maxz) then
      exit
    end if
  end do
end if

end if
integral = integral / get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x, &
  abs(prt%t), prt%type)
end function integral_over_z_simple

end subroutine shower_get_first_ISR_scale_for_parton

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_pt (shower, interaction)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
  real(default) :: s
  ! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_pt"
  !!! get sqrts of interaction
  s = (interaction%partons(1)%p%momentum + &
    interaction%partons(2)%p%momentum)**2

```

```

interaction%partons(1)%p%scale = tscalefactor_isr * 0.25_default * s
interaction%partons(2)%p%scale = tscalefactor_isr * 0.25_default * s
! call shower%add_parent (interaction%partons(1)%p)
! call shower$add_parent (interaction%partons(2)%p)
!
! interaction%partons(1)%p%parent%scale = 0.5_default * sqrts
! interaction%partons(1)%p%parent%momentum = &
!   interaction%partons(1)%p%momentum
! interaction%partons(1)%p%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
! interaction%partons(1)%p%parent%initial => &
!   interaction%partons(1)%p%initial
! interaction%partons(2)%p%parent%scale = 0.5_default * sqrts
! interaction%partons(2)%p%parent%momentum = &
!   interaction%partons(2)%p%momentum
! interaction%partons(2)%p%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
! interaction%partons(2)%p%parent%initial => &
!   interaction%partons(2)%p%initial
!
! call shower%add_child (interaction%partons(1)%p%parent, 2)
! call shower%add_child (interaction%partons(2)%p%parent, 2)
! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_pt finished"
end subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_pt

```

(*Shower core: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana_test (shower, prt1, prt2)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt1, prt2
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt, prta, prtb
  real(default) :: pini(0:3), scale, factor
  integer :: i
  ! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana"
  if (.not. associated (prt1%initial) .or. .not. associated (prt2%initial)) then
    return
  end if
  do i = 0, 3
    pini(i) = parton_get_momentum (prt1,i) + parton_get_momentum (prt2,i)
  end do
  scale = - (pini(0)**2 - pini(1)**2 - pini(2)**2 - pini(3)**2)
  call parton_set_simulated (prt1)
  call parton_set_simulated (prt2)
  call shower%add_parent (prt1)
  call shower%add_parent (prt2)
  factor = sqrt (vector4_get_component (prt1%momentum, 0)**2 - scale) / &
    space_part_norm(prt1%momentum)
  prt1%parent%type = prt1%type
  prt1%parent%z = 1._double
  prt1%parent%momentum = prt1%momentum
  prt1%parent%t = scale
  prt1%parent%x = prt1%x
  prt1%parent%initial => prt1%initial
  prt1%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
  prt1%parent%c1 = prt1%c1
  prt1%parent%c2 = prt1%c2

```



```

prt2%parent%type= prt2%type
prt2%parent%z = 1._double
prt2%parent%momentum = prt2%momentum
prt2%parent%t = scale
prt2%parent%x = prt2%x
prt2%parent%initial => prt2%initial
prt2%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
prt2%parent%c1 = prt2%c1
prt2%parent%c2 = prt2%c2

do
  call shower_get_first_ISR_scale_for_parton (shower, prt1%parent)
  call shower_get_first_ISR_scale_for_parton (shower, prt2%parent)

  !!! redistribute energy among first partons
  prta => prt1%parent
  prtb => prt2%parent

  do i = 0, 3
    pini(i) = parton_get_momentum (prt1,i) + parton_get_momentum (prt2,i)
  end do
  call parton_set_energy (prta, (pini(0)**2 - prtb%t + prta%t) &
    / (two * pini(0)))
  call parton_set_energy (prtb, pini(0) &
    - vector4_get_component (prta%momentum, 0))

  ! if (abs( (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 0)-&
  !   prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 0))/ &
  !   (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 3)-&
  !   prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 3)) ).gt. 1._double) then
  !   print *, "cycle", abs( (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 0)-&
  !     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 0))/ &
  !     (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 3)-&
  !     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 3)) )
  !   cycle
  ! else
  exit
  ! end if
end do
!   print *, "BETA+", (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 0)-&
!     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 0))/ &
!     (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 3)-&
!     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 3))
!!! TODO check the code above
call parton_set_simulated (prt1%parent)
call parton_set_simulated (prt2%parent)
!!! rescale momenta
do i = 1, 2
  if (i == 1) then
    prt => prt1%parent
  else
    prt => prt2%parent
  end if
  factor = sqrt (vector4_get_component (prt%momentum,0)**2 - prt%t) &

```

```

        / space_part_norm (prt%momentum)
    prt%momentum = vector4_moving (vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0), &
        factor * space_part (prt%momentum))
end do

if (prt1%parent%t < 0._double) then
    call shower%add_parent (prt1%parent)
    prt1%parent%parent%momentum = prt1%parent%momentum
    prt1%parent%parent%t = prt1%parent%t
    prt1%parent%parent%x = prt1%parent%x
    prt1%parent%parent%initial => prt1%parent%initial
    prt1%parent%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
    call shower%add_child (prt1%parent%parent, 2)
end if

if (prt2%parent%t < 0._double) then
    call shower%add_parent (prt2%parent)
    prt2%parent%parent%momentum = prt2%parent%momentum
    prt2%parent%parent%t = prt2%parent%t
    prt2%parent%parent%x = prt2%parent%x
    prt2%parent%parent%initial => prt2%parent%initial
    prt2%parent%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
    call shower%add_child (prt2%parent%parent, 2)
end if

! print *, "after isr_ana_test"
! call shower%write ()
! print *, "BETA:"
! call vector3_write(vector3_canonical(3) * &
!     ( (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 0)-&
!     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 0))/ &
!     (prt1%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt2%parent%momentum, 3)-&
!     prt2%parent%x * vector4_get_component(prt1%parent%momentum, 3)) ) )

! print *, "after isr_ana_test finished"

end subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana_test

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana (shower, prt1, prt2)
    type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt1, prt2
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    real(default) :: pini(0:3), scale, factor
    real(default) :: oldscale(1:2)
    type(parton_pointer_t) :: temppp
    integer :: i

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    ! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana"

    if (.not. associated (prt1%initial) .or. &
        .not. associated (prt2%initial)) then
        return
    end if
end if

```

```

do i = 0,3
  pini(i) = parton_get_momentum (prt1,i) + parton_get_momentum (prt2,i)
end do
scale = - (pini(0)**2 - pini(1)**2 - pini(2)**2 - pini(3)**2)

prt1%t = -tscalefactor_isr * abs(scale)
prt2%t = -tscalefactor_isr * abs(scale)
!!! rescale momenta
do i = 1, 2
  if (i == 1) then
    prt => prt1
  else
    prt => prt2
  end if

  factor = sqrt (parton_get_energy (prt)**2 - prt%t) / &
    space_part_norm(prt%momentum)

  prt%momentum = vector4_moving (parton_get_energy (prt), &
    factor * space_part (prt%momentum))
end do

!!! ensure that belongstointeraction bits are set correctly
prt1%belongstointeraction = .true.
prt2%belongstointeraction = .true.

call shower%add_parent (prt1)
call shower%add_parent (prt2)

call parton_set_simulated (prt1)
prt1%parent%type = prt1%type
prt1%parent%z = one
prt1%parent%momentum = prt1%momentum
prt1%parent%t = scale
prt1%parent%x = prt1%x
prt1%parent%initial => prt1%initial
prt1%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
prt1%parent%c1 = prt1%c1
prt1%parent%c2 = prt1%c2
call shower%add_child (prt1%parent, 2)

call parton_set_simulated (prt2)
prt2%parent%type = prt2%type
prt2%parent%z = one
prt2%parent%momentum = prt2%momentum
prt2%parent%t = scale
prt2%parent%x = prt2%x
prt2%parent%initial => prt2%initial
prt2%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
prt2%parent%c1 = prt2%c1
prt2%parent%c2 = prt2%c2
call shower%add_child (prt2%parent, 2)

```

```

FIRST_BRANCHINGS: do
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  oldscales(1) = prt1%parent%t
  oldscales(2) = prt2%parent%t
  if (abs(prt1%parent%t) > abs(prt2%parent%t)) then
    temppp%p => prt1%parent
  else
    temppp%p => prt2%parent
  end if
  if (.not. parton_is_simulated(temppp%p) .and. .not. parton_is_hadron &
    (temppp%p)) then
    call shower_isr_step (shower, temppp%p)
    if (parton_is_simulated(temppp%p)) then
      ! call parton_generate_ps_ini(prt2%parent)
      if (temppp%p%t < zero) then
        call shower%execute_next_isr_branching (temppp)
        ! call shower%write ()
      else
        call shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, temppp%p%child1)
      end if
    end if
  end if
  if (oldscales(1) == prt1%parent%t .and. &
    oldscales(2) == prt2%parent%t) then
    exit FIRST_BRANCHINGS
  end if
end do FIRST_BRANCHINGS

! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana finished"
end subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_isr_ana

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡

```

!! subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_fsr_ana (shower, prt1, prt2)
!!   type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
!!   type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
!!   real(default) :: pini(4)
!!   integer i
!!
!!   ! print *, "shower_prepare_for_simulate_fsr_ana"
!!
!!   !!! Define imagined single initiator of shower
!!   call shower%add_child (prt1, 1)
!!   do i = 1, 4
!!     pini(i) = parton_get_momentum (prt1,i - 1) + parton_get_momentum (prt2, i - 1)
!!   end do
!!   call parton_set_simulated (prt1)
!!   call parton_set_child (prt1, prt1%child1, 1)
!!   call parton_set_child (prt1, prt1%child1, 2)
!!   call parton_set_simulated (prt2)
!!   call parton_set_child (prt2, prt1%child1, 1)
!!   call parton_set_child (prt2, prt1%child1, 2)
!!
!!   prt1%child1%type = 94

```

```

!! prt1%child1%z = parton_get_energy (prt1) / &
!!   (parton_get_energy (prt1) + parton_get_energy (prt2))
!! call parton_set_simulated (prt1%child1)
!! call parton_set_parent (prt1%child1, prt1)
!! call parton_set_momentum (prt1%child1, pini(1), pini(2), pini(3), pini(4))
!! prt1%child1%t = parton_p4square(prt1%child1)
!! prt1%child1%costheta = -one
!!
!! call shower%add_child (prt1%child1, 1)
!! call shower%add_child (prt1%child1, 2)
!!
!! prt1%child1%child1%typ = prt1%typ
!! prt1%child1%child1%momentum = prt1%momentum
!! prt1%child1%child1%t = prt1%child1%t
!! call parton_set_parent (prt1%child1%child1, prt1%child1)
!! prt1%child1%child1%c1 = prt1%c1
!! prt1%child1%child1%c2 = prt1%c2
!!
!! prt1%child1%child2%typ = prt2%typ
!! prt1%child1%child2%momentum = prt2%momentum
!! prt1%child1%child2%t = prt2%child1%t
!! call parton_set_parent (prt1%child1%child2, prt1%child1)
!! prt1%child1%child2%c1 = prt2%c1
!! prt1%child1%child2%c2 = prt2%c2
!!
!! ! print *, " shower_prepare_for_simulate_fsr_ana finished"
!! end subroutine shower_prepare_for_simulate_fsr_ana

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_add_children_of_emitted_timelike_parton (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt

  if (prt%t > parton_mass_squared (prt) + D_Min_t) then
    if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
      !!! q -> qg
      call shower%add_child (prt, 1)
      prt%child1%type = prt%type
      call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, prt%z * parton_get_energy (prt))
      prt%child1%t = prt%t
      call shower%add_child (prt, 2)
      prt%child2%type = 21
      call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, (one - prt%z) * &
        parton_get_energy (prt))
      prt%child2%t = prt%t
    else
      if (int (prt%x) > 0) then
        call shower%add_child (prt, 1)
        prt%child1%type = int (prt%x)
        call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, prt%z * parton_get_energy (prt))
        prt%child1%t = prt%t
        call shower%add_child (prt, 2)
        prt%child2%type = -int (prt%x)
        call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, (one - prt%z) * &

```

```

        parton_get_energy (prt))
    prt%child2%t= prt%t
else
    call shower%add_child (prt, 1)
    prt%child1%type = 21
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child1, prt%z * parton_get_energy (prt))
    prt%child1%t = prt%t
    call shower%add_child (prt, 2)
    prt%child2%type = 21
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, (one - prt%z) * &
        parton_get_energy (prt))
    prt%child2%t = prt%t
end if
end if
end if
end subroutine shower_add_children_of_emitted_timelike_parton

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_simulate_children_ana (shower,prt)
    type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default), dimension(1:2) :: t, random, integral
    integer, dimension(1:2) :: gtoqq
    integer :: daughter
    type(parton_t), pointer :: daughterprt
    integer :: n_loop

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    gtoqq = 0

    if (D_print) print *, " simulate_children_ana for parton " , prt%nr

    if (.not. associated (prt%child1) .or. .not. associated (prt%child2)) then
        call msg_error ("Shower: error in simulate_children_ana: no children.")
        return
    end if
end if

```

*(Set beam-remnants and internal partons as simulated)*

```

integral = zero

!!! impose constraints by angular ordering -> cf. (26) of Gaining analytic control
!!! check if no branchings are possible
if (.not. prt%child1%simulated) then
    prt%child1%t = min (prt%child1%t, &
        0.5_default * parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2 * (one - &
        parton_get_cotheta (prt)))
    if (min (prt%child1%t, parton_get_energy (prt%child1)**2) < &
        parton_mass_squared (prt%child1) + D_Min_t) then
        prt%child1%t = parton_mass_squared (prt%child1)
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child1)
    end if
end if
if (.not. prt%child2%simulated) then

```

```

prt%child2%t = min (prt%child2%t, &
    0.5_default * parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 * (one - &
    parton_get_costheta (prt)))
if (min (prt%child2%t, parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2) < &
    parton_mass_squared (prt%child2) + D_Min_t) then
    prt%child2%t = parton_mass_squared (prt%child2)
    call parton_set_simulated (prt%child2)
end if
end if

call tao_random_number (random)

n_loop = 0
do
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    n_loop = n_loop + 1
    if (n_loop > 900) then
        !!! try with massless quarks
        treat_duscb_quarks_massless = .true.
    end if
    if (n_loop > 1000) then
        call shower%write ()
        call msg_message (" simulate_children_ana failed for parton ", prt%nr)
        call msg_error ("BUG: too many loops in simulate_children_ana (?)")
        shower%valid = .false.
        return
    end if

    t(1) = prt%child1%t
    t(2) = prt%child2%t

    !!! check if a branching in the range t(i) to t(i) - tstep(i) occurs

    !!! check for child1
    if (.not. parton_is_simulated (prt%child1)) then
        call parton_simulate_stept &
            (prt%child1, integral(1), random(1), gtoqq(1))
    end if
    !!! check for child2
    if (.not. parton_is_simulated(prt%child2)) then
        call parton_simulate_stept &
            (prt%child2, integral(2), random(2), gtoqq(2))
    end if

    if (parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .and. &
        parton_is_simulated (prt%child2)) then
        if (sqrt (prt%t) <= sqrt (prt%child1%t) + sqrt (prt%child2%t)) then
            {Repeat the simulation for the parton with the lower virtuality}
        else
            exit
        end if
    end if
end do

```

```

        call parton_apply_cosheta (prt)

        (Add children)
        call shower_parton_update_color_connections (shower, prt)
    end subroutine shower_simulate_children_ana

(Set beam-remnants and internal partons as simulated)≡
    if (abs (prt%type) >= 90 .and. abs (prt%type) <= 93) then
        !!! prt is beam-remnant
        call parton_set_simulated (prt)
        return
    end if

    !!! check if partons are "internal" -> fixed scale
    if (prt%child1%type == 94) then
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child1)
    end if
    if (prt%child2%type == 94) then
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child2)
    end if

(Repeat the simulation for the parton with the lower virtuality)≡
    !!! virtuality : t - m**2 (assuming it's not fixed)
    if (prt%child1%type == 94 .and. prt%child2%type == 94) then
        call msg_fatal &
            ("Shower: both partons fixed, but momentum not conserved")
    else if (prt%child1%type == 94) then
        !!! reset child2
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child2, .false.)
        prt%child2%t = min (prt%child1%t, (sqrt (prt%t) - &
            sqrt (prt%child1%t))**2)
        integral(2) = zero
        call tao_random_number (random(2))
    else if (prt%child2%type.eq.94) then
        ! reset child1
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child1, .false.)
        prt%child1%t = min (prt%child2%t, (sqrt (prt%t) - &
            sqrt (prt%child2%t))**2)
        integral(1) = zero
        call tao_random_number (random(1))
    else if (prt%child1%t - parton_mass_squared (prt%child1) > &
        prt%child2%t - parton_mass_squared (prt%child2)) then
        !!! reset child2
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child2, .false.)
        prt%child2%t = min (prt%child1%t, (sqrt (prt%t) - &
            sqrt (prt%child1%t))**2)
        integral(2) = zero
        call tao_random_number (random(2))
    else
        !!! reset child1 ! TODO choose child according to their t
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child1, .false.)
        prt%child1%t = min (prt%child2%t, (sqrt (prt%t) - &
            sqrt (prt%child2%t))**2)
        integral(1) = zero

```



```

        call tao_random_number (random(1))
    end if
    <Add children>≡
    do daughter = 1, 2
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        if (daughter == 1) then
            daughterprt => prt%child1
        else
            daughterprt => prt%child2
        end if
        if (daughterprt%t < parton_mass_squared (daughterprt) + D_Min_t) then
            cycle
        end if
        if (.not. (parton_is_quark (daughterprt) .or. &
            parton_is_gluon (daughterprt))) then
            cycle
        end if
        if (parton_is_quark (daughterprt)) then
            !!! q -> qg
            call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 1)
            daughterprt%child1%type = daughterprt%type
            call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child1, &
                daughterprt%z * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
            daughterprt%child1%t = daughterprt%t
            call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 2)
            daughterprt%child2%type = 21
            call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child2, (one - &
                daughterprt%z) * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
            daughterprt%child2%t = daughterprt%t
        else if (parton_is_gluon (daughterprt)) then
            if (gtoqq(daughter) > 0) then
                call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 1)
                daughterprt%child1%type = gtoqq (daughter)
                call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child1, &
                    daughterprt%z * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
                daughterprt%child1%t = daughterprt%t
                call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 2)
                daughterprt%child2%type = - gtoqq (daughter)
                call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child2, (one - &
                    daughterprt%z) * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
                daughterprt%child2%t = daughterprt%t
            else
                call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 1)
                daughterprt%child1%type = 21
                call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child1, &
                    daughterprt%z * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
                daughterprt%child1%t = daughterprt%t
                call shower%add_child (daughterprt, 2)
                daughterprt%child2%type = 21
                call parton_set_energy (daughterprt%child2, (one - &
                    daughterprt%z) * parton_get_energy (daughterprt))
                daughterprt%child2%t = daughterprt%t
            end if
        end if
    end if

```

```

end do

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_generate_next_fsr_branchings (shower)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer i, index
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt

  !!! find mother with highest t to be simulated
  index = 0
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    prt => shower%partons(i)%p
    if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
    if (prt%belongstointeraction) cycle
    if (associated(prt%child1) .and. associated(prt%child2)) then
      if (parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .and. &
          parton_is_simulated (prt%child2)) cycle
    end if
    if (parton_is_final (prt)) cycle

    index = i
    exit
  end do

  if (index.eq.0) then
    call msg_message ("Shower: no branchable partons found")
    return
  end if

  prt => shower%partons(index)%p
  call shower_simulate_children_ana(shower, prt)

end subroutine shower_generate_next_fsr_branchings

```

The recoiler is `otherprt`. Instead of the random number and the exponential of the integral, we compare the logarithm of the random number and the integral.

```

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
subroutine shower_isr_step_pt (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), target, intent(inout) :: prt
  type(parton_t), pointer :: otherprt

  real(default) :: scale, scalestep
  real(default) :: integral, random, factor
  real(default) :: temprand1, temprand2

  otherprt => shower_find_recoiler (shower, prt)

  scale = prt%scale
  call tao_random_number (temprand1)
  call tao_random_number (temprand2)
  scalestep = max (abs (scalefactor1 * scale) * temprand1, &
                  scalefactor2 * temprand2 * D_Min_scale)
  call tao_random_number (random)

```

```

random = - twopi * log(random)
integral = zero

if (scale - 0.5_default * scalestep < D_Min_scale) then
  !!! close enough to cut-off scale -> ignore
  prt%scale = zero
  prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
  call parton_set_simulated (prt)
else
  prt%scale = scale - 0.5_default * scalestep
  factor = scalestep * (D_alpha_s_isr (prt%scale) / (prt%scale * &
    get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x, prt%scale, prt%type)))
  integral = integral + factor * integral_over_z_isr_pt &
    (prt, otherprt, (random - integral) / factor)
  if (integral > random) then
    !!! prt%scale set above and prt%z set in integral_over_z_isr_pt
    call parton_set_simulated (prt)
    prt%t = - prt%scale / (one - prt%z)
  else
    prt%scale = scale - scalestep
  end if
end if

contains

function integral_over_z_isr_pt (prt, otherprt, final) &
  result (integral)
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt, otherprt
  real(default), intent(in) :: final
  real(default) :: integral
  real(default) :: mbr, r
  real(default) :: zmin, zmax, z, zstep
  integer :: n_bin
  integer, parameter :: n_total_bins = 100
  real(default) :: quarkpdfsum
  real(default) :: temprand
  integer :: quark

  quarkpdfsum = zero
  if (D_print) then
    print *, "integral_over_z_isr_pt for scale = ", prt%scale
  end if

  integral = zero
  mbr = (prt%momentum + otherprt%momentum)**1
  zmin = prt%x
  zmax = min (one - (sqrt (prt%scale) / mbr) * &
    (sqrt(one + 0.25_default * prt%scale / mbr**2) - &
    0.25_default * sqrt(prt%scale) / mbr), maxz_isr)
  zstep = (zmax - zmin) / n_total_bins

  if (zmin > zmax) then
    !!! print *, " error in integral_over_z_isr_pt: zmin > zmax ", &
    !!!      zmin, zmax, prt%scale, mbr

```

```

        integral = zero
        return
    end if

    !!! divide the range [zmin:zmax] in n_total_bins ->
    BINS: do n_bin = 1, n_total_bins
        z = zmin + zstep * (n_bin - 0.5_default)
        !!! z-value in the middle of the bin

        if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
            QUARKS: do quark = -D_Nf, D_Nf
                if (quark == 0) cycle quarks
                quarkpdfsum = quarkpdfsum + get_pdf &
                    (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, prt%scale, quark)
            end do QUARKS
            !!! g -> gg or q -> gq
            integral = integral + (zstep / z) * ((P_ggg (z) + &
                P_ggg (one - z)) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
                    prt%x / z, prt%scale, 21) + P_qqg (one - z) * quarkpdfsum)
        else if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
            !!! q -> qg or g -> qq
            integral = integral + (zstep / z) * ( P_qqg (z) * &
                get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, prt%scale, prt%type) + &
                P_gqq(z) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, prt%scale, 21))
        else
            ! call msg_fatal ("Bug neither quark nor gluon in" &
                ! // " integral_over_z_isr_pt")
        end if
        if (integral > final) then
            prt%z = z
            call tao_random_number (temprand)
            !!! decide typ of father partons
            if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
                if (temprand > (P_qqg (one - z) * quarkpdfsum) / &
                    ((P_ggg (z) + P_ggg (one - z)) * get_pdf &
                        (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, prt%scale, 21) &
                        + P_qqg (one - z) * quarkpdfsum)) then
                    !!! gluon => gluon + gluon
                    prt%aux_pt = 21
                else
                    !!! quark => quark + gluon
                    !!! decide which quark flavor the parent is
                    r = temprand * quarkpdfsum
                    WHICH_QUARK: do quark = -D_Nf, D_Nf
                        if (quark == 0) cycle WHICH_QUARK
                        if (r > quarkpdfsum - get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
                            prt%x / z, prt%scale, quark)) then
                            prt%aux_pt = quark
                            exit WHICH_QUARK
                        else
                            quarkpdfsum = quarkpdfsum - get_pdf &
                                (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, prt%scale, quark)
                        end if
                    end do WHICH_QUARK
                end if
            end if
        end do BINS
    end if

```

```

        end if

        else if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
            if (temprand > (P_qqg (z) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, &
                prt%x / z, prt%scale, prt%type)) / &
                (P_qqg (z) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, &
                prt%scale, prt%type) + &
                P_gqq (z) * get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x / z, &
                prt%scale, 21))) then
                !!! gluon => quark + antiquark
                prt%aux_pt = 21
            else
                !!! quark => quark + gluon
                prt%aux_pt = prt%type
            end if
        end if
    end if
    exit BINS
end if
end do BINS
end function integral_over_z_isr_pt
end subroutine shower_isr_step_pt

```

This function returns a pointer to the parton with the next ISR branching, while FSR branchings are ignored.

*(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: generate_next_isr_branching_veto => &
        shower_generate_next_isr_branching_veto

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

    function shower_generate_next_isr_branching_veto &
        (shower) result (next_brancher)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t) :: next_brancher
        integer :: i
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        real(default) :: random
        !!! pointers to branchable partons
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
        integer :: n_partons
        real(default) :: weight
        real(default) :: temp1, temp2, temp3, E3

        if (signal_is_pending ()) return

        if (isr_pt_ordered) then
            next_brancher = shower%generate_next_isr_branching ()
            return
        end if
        next_brancher%p => null()
        !!! branchable partons
        n_partons = 0
        do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
            prt => shower%partons(i)%p
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return

```

```

        if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
        if (prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
        if (parton_is_final (prt)) cycle
        if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. parton_is_simulated (prt)) cycle
        n_partons = n_partons + 1
    end do
    !!! print *, "n_partons = ", n_partons
    if (n_partons == 0) then
        return
    end if
    allocate (partons(1:n_partons))
    n_partons = 1
    do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
        prt => shower%partons(i)%p
        if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
        if (prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
        if (parton_is_final (prt)) cycle
        if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. parton_is_simulated (prt)) cycle
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        partons(n_partons)%p => shower%partons(i)%p
        n_partons = n_partons + 1
    end do
    ! print *, "trials"
    !!! generate initial trial scales
    do i = 1, size (partons)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call generate_next_trial_scale (partons(i)%p)
    end do
    ! print *, "trials finished"

do
    ! call shower%write ()
    !!! search for parton with the highest trial scale
    prt => partons(1)%p
    do i = 1, size (partons)
        if (prt%t >= zero) cycle
        if (abs (partons(i)%p%t) > abs (prt%t)) then
            prt => partons(i)%p
        end if
    end do

    if (prt%t >= zero) then
        next_brancher%p => null()
        exit
    end if
    !!! generate trial z and type of mother prt
    call generate_trial_z_and_typ (prt)

    !!! weight with pdf and alpha_s

    temp1 = (D_alpha_s_isr ((one - prt%z) * abs(prt%t)) &
        / sqrt (alphasxpdfmax))
    temp2 = get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x, prt%t, &
        prt%type) / sqrt (alphasxpdfmax)

```

```

temp3 = get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x, prt%child1%t, &
prt%child1%type) / &
get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x, prt%t, prt%child1%type)
if (temp1 * temp2 * temp3 > one) then
print *, "weights:", temp1, temp2, temp3
end if
weight = (D_alpha_s_isr ((one - prt%z) * abs(prt%t))) * &
get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%x, prt%t, prt%type) * &
get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x, prt%child1%t, &
prt%child1%type) / &
get_xpdf (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x, prt%t, prt%child1%type)
if (weight > alphaspdfmax) then
print *, "Setting alphaspdfmax from ", alphaspdfmax, " to ", weight
alphaspdfmax = weight
end if
weight = weight / alphaspdfmax
call tao_random_number (random)
! print *, weight , ">", random, "?"
if (weight < random) then
!!! discard branching
call generate_next_trial_scale (prt)
cycle
end if
!!! branching accepted so far
!!! generate emitted parton
prt%child2%t = abs(prt%t)
call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, sqrt (abs(prt%t)))
if (isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons) then
prt%child2%t = parton_mass_squared(prt%child2)
else
call parton_next_t_ana (prt%child2)
end if

if (thetabar (prt, shower_find_recoiler (shower, prt), E3)) then
!!! setting energies
call parton_set_energy (prt, E3)
call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, &
E3 - parton_get_energy (prt%child1))

!!! found branching
call parton_generate_ps_ini (prt)
next_brancher%p => prt
call parton_set_simulated (prt)
exit
else
call generate_next_trial_scale (prt)
cycle
end if
end do
if (.not. associated (next_brancher%p)) then
!!! no further branching found -> all partons emitted by hadron
print *, "--all partons emitted by hadrons---"
do i = 1, size(partons)
call shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, partons(i)%p%child1)

```

```

        end do
    end if
    !!! some bookkeeping
    call shower%sort_partons ()
    ! call shower_boost_to_CMframe(shower)          ! really necessary?
    ! call shower_rotate_to_z(shower)              ! really necessary?
contains

subroutine generate_next_trial_scale(prt)
    type(parton_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default) :: random, F
    real(default) :: zmax = 0.99_default !! ??
    ! print *, "generate next_trial"
    call tao_random_number (random)
    F = one      !!! TODO
    F = alphasxpdfmax / (two * pi)
    if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
        F = F * (integral_over_P_gqq (prt%child1%x, zmax) + &
            integral_over_P_qqq (prt%child1%x, zmax))
    else if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
        F = F * (integral_over_P_ggg (prt%child1%x, zmax) + &
            two * D_Nf * &
            integral_over_P_qqq (one - zmax, one - prt%child1%x))
    else
        print *, "neither quark nor gluon in generate_next_trial_scale"
    end if
    F = F / get_xpdf (prt%child1%initial%type, prt%child1%x, &
        prt%child1%t, prt%child1%type)
    prt%t = prt%t * random**(one / F)
    if (abs (prt%t) - parton_mass_squared (prt) < D_Min_t) then
        prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
    end if
    ! print *, "generate next_trial finished"
end subroutine generate_next_trial_scale

subroutine generate_trial_z_and_typ(prt)
    type(parton_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: prt
    real(default) :: random
    real(default) :: z, zstep, zmin, integral
    real(default) :: zmax = 0.99_default !! ??
    ! print *, "generate next_z"
    call tao_random_number(random)
    integral = zero
    !!! decide which branching a->bc occurs
    if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
        if (random < integral_over_P_qqq (prt%child1%x, zmax) / &
            (integral_over_P_qqq (prt%child1%x, zmax) + &
            integral_over_P_gqq(prt%child1%x, zmax))) then
            prt%type = prt%child1%type
            prt%child2%type = 21
            integral = integral_over_P_qqq (prt%child1%x, zmax)
        else
            prt%type = 21
            prt%child2%type = - prt%child1%type
        end if
    end if

```



```

        integral = integral_over_P_gqq (prt%child1%x, zmax)
    end if
else if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
    if (random < integral_over_P_ggg (prt%child1%x, zmax) / &
        (integral_over_P_ggg (prt%child1%x, zmax) + two * D_Nf * &
        integral_over_P_qqg (one - zmax, &
        one - prt%child1%x))) then
        prt%type = 21
        prt%child2%type = 21
        integral = integral_over_P_ggg (prt%child1%x, zmax)
    else
        call tao_random_number (random)
        prt%type = 1 + floor(random * D_Nf)
        call tao_random_number (random)
        if (random > 0.5_default) prt%type = - prt%type
        prt%child2%type = prt%type
        integral = integral_over_P_qqg (one - zmax, &
        one - prt%child1%x)
    end if
else
    print *, "neither quark nor gluon in generate_next_trial_scale"
end if
!!! generate the z-value
!!! z between prt%child1%x and zmax
! prt%z = one - random * (one - prt%child1%x)      ! TODO

call tao_random_number(random)
zmin = prt%child1%x
zstep = max(0.1_default, 0.5_default * (zmax - zmin))
z = zmin
! print *, zmin, z
if (zmin > zmax) then
    print *, " zmin = ", zmin, " zmax = ", zmax
    call msg_fatal ("Shower: zmin greater than zmax")
end if
!!! procedure pointers would be helpful here
if (parton_is_quark (prt) .and. parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
    do
        ! print *, 1, z, zstep, zmin, zmax
        zstep = min(zstep, 0.5_default * (zmax - z))
        if (abs(zstep) < 0.00001) exit
        if (integral_over_P_qqg (zmin, z) < random * integral) then
            if (integral_over_P_qqg (zmin, min(z + zstep, zmax)) &
                < random * integral) then
                z = min (z + zstep, zmax)
                cycle
            else
                zstep = zstep * 0.5_default
                cycle
            end if
        end if
    end do
else if (parton_is_quark (prt) .and. parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
    do

```

```

! print *, 2, z, zstep
zstep = min(zstep, 0.5_default * (zmax - z))
if (abs(zstep) < 0.00001) exit
if (integral_over_P_qqg (zmin, z) < random * integral) then
  if (integral_over_P_qqg (zmin, min(z + zstep, zmax)) &
    < random * integral) then
    z = min(z + zstep, zmax)
    cycle
  else
    zstep = zstep * 0.5_default
    cycle
  end if
end if
end do
else if (parton_is_gluon (prt) .and. parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
do
  ! print *, 3, z, zstep
  zstep = min(zstep, 0.5_default * (zmax - z))
  if (abs (zstep) < 0.00001) exit
  if (integral_over_P_gqq (zmin, z) < random * integral) then
    if (integral_over_P_gqq (zmin, min(z + zstep, zmax)) &
      < random * integral) then
      z = min (z + zstep, zmax)
      cycle
    else
      zstep = zstep * 0.5_default
      cycle
    end if
  end if
end do
else if (parton_is_gluon (prt) .and. parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
do
  ! print *, 4, z, zstep
  zstep = min(zstep, 0.5_default * (zmax - z))
  if (abs (zstep) < 0.00001) exit
  if (integral_over_P_ggg(zmin, z) < random * integral) then
    if (integral_over_P_ggg (zmin, min(z + zstep, zmax)) &
      < random * integral) then
      z = min(z + zstep, zmax)
      cycle
    else
      zstep = zstep * 0.5_default
      cycle
    end if
  end if
end do
else
end if
prt%z = z
prt%x = prt%child1%x / prt%z
! print *, "generate next_z finished"
end subroutine generate_trial_z_and_typ
end function shower_generate_next_isr_branching_veto

```

*{Shower core: procedures}*+≡

```

function shower_find_recoiler (shower, prt) result(recoiler)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
  type(parton_t), pointer :: recoiler
  type(parton_t), pointer :: otherprt1, otherprt2
  integer :: n_int
  logical :: goon
  otherprt1 => null()
  otherprt2 => null()
  DO_INTERACTIONS: do n_int = 1, size(shower%interactions)
    otherprt1=>shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(1)%p
    otherprt2=>shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(2)%p
    PARTON1: do
      if (associated (otherprt1%parent)) then
        if (.not. parton_is_hadron(otherprt1%parent) .and. &
            parton_is_simulated (otherprt1%parent)) then
          otherprt1 => otherprt1%parent
          if (associated (otherprt1, prt)) then
            exit PARTON1
          end if
        else
          exit PARTON1
        end if
      else
        exit PARTON1
      end if
    end do PARTON1
    PARTON2: do
      if (associated (otherprt2%parent)) then
        if (.not. parton_is_hadron(otherprt2%parent) .and. &
            parton_is_simulated (otherprt2%parent)) then
          otherprt2 => otherprt2%parent
          if (associated (otherprt2, prt)) then
            exit PARTON2
          end if
        else
          exit PARTON2
        end if
      else
        exit PARTON2
      end if
    end do PARTON2

    if (associated (otherprt1, prt) .or. associated (otherprt2, prt)) then
      exit DO_INTERACTIONS
    end if
    if (associated (otherprt1%parent, prt) .or. &
        associated (otherprt2%parent, prt)) then
      exit DO_INTERACTIONS
    end if
  end do DO_INTERACTIONS

  recoiler => null()

```

```

if (associated (otherprt1%parent, prt)) then
  recoiler => otherprt2
else if (associated (otherprt2%parent, prt)) then
  recoiler => otherprt1
else if (associated (otherprt1, prt)) then
  recoiler => otherprt2
else if (associated (otherprt2, prt)) then
  recoiler => otherprt1
else
  call shower%write ()
  call parton_write (prt)
  call msg_error ("Shower: no otherparton found")
end if
end function shower_find_recoiler

```

*(Shower core: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine shower_isr_step (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), target, intent(inout) :: prt
  type(parton_t), pointer :: otherprt => null()
  real(default) :: t, tstep
  real(default) :: integral, random
  real(default) :: temprand1, temprand2
  ! print *, "shower_isr_step for parton ", prt%nr
  otherprt => shower_find_recoiler(shower, prt)
  ! if (.not. otherprt%child1%belongstointeraction) then
  !   otherprt => otherprt%child1
  ! end if

  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  t = max(prt%t, prt%child1%t)
  call tao_random_number(random)
  ! compare Integral and log(random) instead of random and exp(-Integral)
  random = - twopi * log(random)
  integral = zero
  call tao_random_number (temprand1)
  call tao_random_number (temprand2)
  tstep = max (abs (0.02_default * t) * temprand1, &
    0.02_default * temprand2 * D_Min_t)
  if (t + 0.5_default * tstep > - D_Min_t) then
    prt%t = parton_mass_squared (prt)
    call parton_set_simulated (prt)
  else
    prt%t = t + 0.5_default * tstep
    integral = integral + tstep * &
      integral_over_z_isr (prt, otherprt, (random - integral) / tstep)
    if (integral > random) then
      prt%t = t + 0.5_default * tstep
      prt%x = prt%child1%x / prt%z
      call parton_set_simulated (prt)
    else
      prt%t = t + tstep
    end if
  end if
end if

```

```

! print *, " shower_isr_step finished"

contains
function integral_over_z_isr (prt, otherprt, final) result (integral)
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt, otherprt
  real(default), intent(in) :: final
  real(default) integral
  real(default) :: minz, maxz, z, shat,s
  integer :: quark

  !!! calculate shat -> s of parton-parton system
  shat= (otherprt%momentum + prt%child1%momentum)**2
  !!! calculate s -> s of hadron-hadron system
  s= (otherprt%initial%momentum + prt%initial%momentum)**2
  integral = zero
  minz = prt%child1%x
  maxz = maxzz (shat, s)

  !!! for gluon
  if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
    !!! 1: g->gg
    prt%type = 21
    prt%child2%type = 21
    z = minz
    prt%child2%t = abs(prt%t)
    call integral_over_z_part_isr &
      (prt,otherprt, shat, minz, maxz, integral, final)
    if (integral > final) then
      ! print *, "prt%type = ", prt%type
      return
    end if
    !!! 2: q->qg
    do quark = -D_Nf, D_Nf
      if (quark == 0) cycle
      prt%type = quark
      prt%child2%type = quark
      z = minz
      prt%child2%t = abs(prt%t)
      call integral_over_z_part_isr &
        (prt,otherprt, shat, minz, maxz, integral, final)
      if (integral > final) then
        ! print *, "prt%type = ", prt%type
        return
      end if
    end do
  else if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
    !!! 1: q->qg
    prt%type = prt%child1%type
    prt%child2%type = 21
    z = minz
    prt%child2%t = abs(prt%t)
    call integral_over_z_part_isr &
      (prt,otherprt, shat, minz, maxz, integral, final)
  end if
end function

```

```

        if (integral > final) then
            ! print *, "prt%type = ", prt%type
            return
        end if
        !!! 2: g->qqbar
        prt%type = 21
        prt%child2%type = -prt%child1%type
        z = minz
        prt%child2%t = abs(prt%t)
        call integral_over_z_part_isr &
            (prt, otherprt, shat, minz, maxz, integral, final)
        if (integral > final) then
            ! print *, "prt%type = ", prt%type
            return
        end if
    end if
end function integral_over_z_isr

subroutine integral_over_z_part_isr &
    (prt, otherprt, shat, minz, maxz, retvalue, final)
    type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt, otherprt
    real(default), intent(in) :: shat, minz, maxz, final
    real(default), intent(inout) :: retvalue
    real(default) :: z, zstep
    real(default) :: r1, r3, s1, s3
    real(default) :: pdf_divisor
    real(default) :: temprand
    real(default), parameter :: zstepfactor = 0.1_default
    real(default), parameter :: zstepmin = 0.0001_default
    if (D_print) print *, "integral_over_z_part_isr"
    pdf_divisor = get_pdf &
        (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x, prt%t, prt%child1%type)
    z = minz
    s1 = shat + abs(otherprt%t) + abs(prt%child1%t)
    r1 = sqrt (s1**2 - four * abs(otherprt%t * prt%child1%t))
    ZLOOP: do
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        if (z >= maxz) then
            exit
        end if
        call tao_random_number (temprand)
        if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
            if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
                !!! g-> gg -> divergencies at z->0 and z->1
                zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * z * (one - z))
            else
                !!! q-> gq -> divergencies at z->0
                zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * (one - z))
            end if
        else
            if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
                !!! g-> qqbar -> no divergencies
                zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor)
            else

```

```

        !!! q-> qg -> divergencies at z->1
        zstep = max(zstepmin, temprand * zstepfactor * (one - z))
    end if
end if
zstep = min(zstep, maxx - z)
prt%z = z + 0.5_default * zstep
s3 = shat / prt%z + abs(otherprt%t) + abs(prt%t)
r3 = sqrt (s3**2 - four * abs(otherprt%t * prt%t))
!!! TODO: WHY is this if needed?
if (otherprt%t /= zero) then
    prt%child2%t = min ((s1 * s3 - r1 * r3) / &
        (two * abs(otherprt%t)) - abs(prt%child1%t) - &
        abs(prt%t), abs(prt%child1%t))
else
    prt%child2%t = abs(prt%child1%t)
end if
do
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, sqrt (abs(prt%child2%t)))
    if (isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons) then
        prt%child2%t = parton_mass_squared (prt%child2)
    else
        call parton_next_t_ana (prt%child2)
    end if
    !!! take limits by recoiler into account
    call parton_set_energy (prt, (shat / prt%z + &
        abs(otherprt%t) - abs(prt%child1%t) - &
        prt%child2%t) / (two * sqrt(shat)))
    call parton_set_energy (prt%child2, &
        parton_get_energy (prt) - parton_get_energy (prt%child1))
    !!! check if E and t of prt%child2 are consistent
    if (parton_get_energy (prt%child2)**2 < prt%child2%t &
        .and. prt%child2%t > parton_mass_squared (prt%child2)) then
        !!! E is too small to have  $p_T^2 = E^2 - t > 0$ 
        !!! -> cycle to find another solution
        cycle
    else
        !!! E is big enough -> exit
        exit
    end if
end do
if (thetabar (prt, otherprt) .and. pdf_divisor > zero &
    .and. parton_get_energy (prt%child2) > zero) then
    retvalue = retvalue + (zstep / prt%z) * &
        (D_alpha_s_isr ((one - prt%z) * prt%t) * &
        P_prt_to_child1 (prt) * &
        get_pdf (prt%initial%type, prt%child1%x / prt%z, &
        prt%t, prt%type)) / (abs(prt%t) * pdf_divisor)
end if
if (retvalue > final) then
    exit
else
    z = z + zstep
end if
end do ZLOOP

```

```

        end subroutine integral_over_z_part_isr
    end subroutine shower_isr_step

```

This returns a pointer to the parton with the next ISR branching, again FSR branchings are ignored.

```

(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: generate_next_isr_branching => &
        shower_generate_next_isr_branching

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
    function shower_generate_next_isr_branching &
        (shower) result (next_brancher)
    class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_pointer_t) :: next_brancher
    integer i, index
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    real(default) :: maxscale
    next_brancher%p => null()
    do
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        if (shower_isr_is_finished (shower)) exit
        !!! find mother with highest |t| or pt to be simulated
        index = 0
        maxscale = zero
        call shower%sort_partons ()
        do i = 1,size (shower%partons)
            prt => shower%partons(i)%p
            if (.not. associated (prt)) cycle
            if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) then
                if (prt%belongstointeraction) cycle
            end if
            if (prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
            if (parton_is_final (prt)) cycle
            if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR .and. parton_is_simulated (prt)) cycle
            index = i
            exit
        end do
        if (index == 0) then
            ! print *, " no branchable partons found"
            return
        end if

        prt => shower%partons(index)%p

        !!! ISR simulation
        if (isr_pt_ordered) then
            call shower_isr_step_pt (shower, prt)
        else
            call shower_isr_step (shower, prt)
        end if
        if (parton_is_simulated (prt)) then
            if (prt%t < zero) then
                next_brancher%p => prt
                if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) call parton_generate_ps_ini (prt)
            end if
        end if
    end do
end function shower_generate_next_isr_branching

```



```

        exit
    else
        if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) then
            call shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, prt%child1)
        else
            call shower_replace_parent_by_hadron (shower, prt)
        end if
    end if
end if
end do

!!! some bookkeeping
call shower%sort_partons ()
call shower_boost_to_CMframe (shower)          !!! really necessary?
call shower_rotate_to_z (shower)              !!! really necessary?
! print *, "shower_generate_next_isr_branching finished"
end function shower_generate_next_isr_branching

```

This is a loop which searches for all emitted and branched partons.

```

<Shower core: shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_fsr_for_isr_partons => &
        shower_generate_fsr_for_partons_emitted_in_ISR

<Shower core: procedures>+≡
    subroutine shower_generate_fsr_for_partons_emitted_in_ISR (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        integer :: n_int, i
        type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
        if (isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons) return

        INTERACTIONS_LOOP: do n_int = 1, size (shower%interactions)
            INCOMING_PARTONS_LOOP: do i = 1, 2
                if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                prt => shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(i)%p
                PARENT_PARTONS_LOOP: do
                    if (associated (prt%parent)) then
                        if (.not. parton_is_hadron (prt%parent)) then
                            prt => prt%parent
                        else
                            exit
                        end if
                    else
                        exit
                    end if
                    if (associated (prt%child2)) then
                        if (parton_is_branched (prt%child2)) then
                            call shower_parton_generate_fsr (shower, prt%child2)
                        end if
                    else
                        ! call msg_fatal ("Shower: no child2 associated?")
                    end if
                end do PARENT_PARTONS_LOOP
            end do INCOMING_PARTONS_LOOP
        end do INTERACTIONS_LOOP
    end subroutine

```

```
end subroutine shower_generate_fsr_for_partons_emitted_in_ISR
```

This executes the branching generated by `shower_generate_next_isr_branching`, that means it generates the flavours, momenta, etc.

```
(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: execute_next_isr_branching => shower_execute_next_isr_branching

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
  subroutine shower_execute_next_isr_branching (shower, prtp)
    class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_pointer_t), intent(inout) :: prtp
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt, otherprt
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prta, prtb, prtc, prtr
    real(default) :: mar, mbr
    real(default) :: phirand
    ! print *, "shower_execute_next_isr_branching"
    if (.not. associated (prtp%p)) then
      call msg_fatal ("Shower: prtp not associated")
    end if

    prt => prtp%p

    if ((.not. isr_pt_ordered .and. prt%t > - D_Min_t) .or. &
        (isr_pt_ordered .and. prt%scale < D_Min_scale)) then
      call msg_error ("Shower: no branching to be executed.")
    end if

    otherprt => shower_find_recoiler (shower, prt)
    if (isr_pt_ordered) then
      !!! get the recoiler
      otherprt => shower_find_recoiler (shower, prt)
      if (associated (otherprt%parent)) then
        !!! Why only for pt ordered
        if (.not. parton_is_hadron (otherprt%parent) .and. &
            isr_pt_ordered) otherprt => otherprt%parent
      end if
      if (.not. associated (prt%parent)) then
        call shower%add_parent (prt)
      end if
      prt%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.
      if (.not. associated (prt%parent%child2)) then
        call shower%add_child (prt%parent, 2)
      end if

      prta => prt%parent          !!! new parton a with branching a->bc
      prtb => prt                !!! former parton
      prtc => prt%parent%child2   !!! emitted parton
      prtr => otherprt            !!! recoiler

      mbr = (prtb%momentum + prtr%momentum)**1
      mar = mbr / sqrt(prt%z)

      !!! 1. assume you are in the restframe
      !!! 2. rotate by random phi
```

```

call tao_random_number (phirand)
phirand = twopi * phirand
call shower_apply_lorentztrafo (shower, &
    rotation(cos(phirand), sin(phirand),vector3_canonical(3)))
!!! 3. Put the b off-shell
!!! and
!!! 4. construct the massless a
!!! and the parton (eventually emitted by a)

!!! generate the flavour of the parent (prta)
if (prtb%aux_pt /= 0) prta%type = prtb%aux_pt
if (parton_is_quark (prtb)) then
    if (prta%type == prtb%type) then
        !!! (anti)-quark -> (anti-)quark + gluon
        prta%type = prtb%type    ! quarks have same flavour
        prtc%type = 21           ! emitted gluon
    else
        !!! gluon -> quark + antiquark
        prta%type = 21
        prtc%type = - prtb%type
    end if
else if (parton_is_gluon (prtb)) then
    prta%type = 21
    prtc%type = 21
else
    ! STOP "Bug in shower_execute_nexT_branching: neither quark nor gluon"
end if

prta%initial => prtb%initial
prta%belongstoFSR = .false.
prta%scale = prtb%scale
prta%x = prtb%x / prtb%z

prtb%momentum = vector4_moving ((mbr**2 + prtb%t) / (two * mbr), &
    vector3_canonical(3) * &
    sign ((mbr**2 - prtb%t) / (two * mbr), &
    vector4_get_component (prtb%momentum, 3)))
prtr%momentum = vector4_moving ((mbr**2 - prtb%t) / (two * mbr), &
    vector3_canonical(3) * &
    sign( (mbr**2 - prtb%t) / (two * mbr), &
    vector4_get_component(prtr%momentum, 3)))

prta%momentum = vector4_moving ((0.5_default / mbr) * &
    ((mbr**2 / prtb%z) + prtb%t - parton_mass_squared(prtc)), &
    vector3_null)
prta%momentum = vector4_moving (parton_get_energy (prta), &
    vector3_canonical(3) * &
    (0.5_default / vector4_get_component (prtb%momentum, 3)) * &
    ((mbr**2 / prtb%z) - two &
    * parton_get_energy(prtr) * parton_get_energy(prta) ) )
if (parton_get_energy(prta)**2 - vector4_get_component &
    (prta%momentum,3)**2 - parton_mass_squared (prtc) &
    > zero) then
    !!! This SHOULD be always fulfilled???

```

```

        prta%momentum = vector4_moving (parton_get_energy (prta), &
        vector3_moving([sqrt (parton_get_energy(prta)**2 - &
        vector4_get_component (prta%momentum, 3)**2 - &
        parton_mass_squared (prtc)), zero, &
        vector4_get_component(prta%momentum, 3) ]))
    end if
    prtc%momentum = prta%momentum - prtb%momentum

    !!! 5. rotate to have a along z-axis
    call shower_boost_to_CMframe (shower)
    call shower_rotate_to_z (shower)
    !!! 6. rotate back in phi
    call shower_apply_lorentztrafo (shower, rotation &
    (cos(-phirand), sin(-phirand), vector3_canonical(3)))
else
    if (prt%child2%t > parton_mass_squared(prt%child2)) then
        call shower_add_children_of_emitted_timelike_parton &
        (shower, prt%child2)
        call parton_set_simulated (prt%child2)
    end if

    call shower%add_parent (prt)
    call shower%add_child (prt%parent, 2)

    prt%parent%momentum = prt%momentum
    prt%parent%t = prt%t
    prt%parent%x = prt%x
    prt%parent%initial => prt%initial
    prt%parent%belongstoFSR = .false.

    prta => prt
    prtb => prt%child1
    prtc => prt%child2
end if
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (isr_pt_ordered) then
    call parton_generate_ps_ini (prt%parent)
else
    call parton_generate_ps_ini (prt)
end if

!!! add color connections
if (parton_is_quark (prtb)) then

    if (prta%type == prtb%type) then
        if (prtb%type > 0) then
            !!! quark -> quark + gluon
            prtc%c2 = prtb%c1
            prtc%c1 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
            prta%c1 = prtc%c1
        else
            !!! antiquark -> antiquark + gluon
            prtc%c1 = prtb%c2
            prtc%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```

        prta%c2 = prtc%c2
    end if
else
    !!! gluon -> quark + antiquark
    if (prtb%type > 0) then
        !!! gluon -> quark + antiquark
        prta%c1 = prtb%c1
        prtc%c1 = 0
        prtc%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prta%c2 = prtc%c2
    else
        !!! gluon -> antiquark + quark
        prta%c2 = prtb%c2
        prtc%c1 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prtc%c2 = 0
        prta%c1 = prtc%c1
    end if
end if
else if (parton_is_gluon (prtb)) then
    if (parton_is_gluon (prta)) then
        !!! g -> gg
        prtc%c2 = prtb%c1
        prtc%c1 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prta%c1 = prtc%c1
        prta%c2 = prtb%c2
    else if (parton_is_quark (prta)) then
        if (prta%type > 0) then
            prta%c1 = prtb%c1
            prta%c2 = 0
            prtc%c1 = prtb%c2
            prtc%c2 = 0
        else
            prta%c1 = 0
            prta%c2 = prtb%c2
            prtc%c1 = 0
            prtc%c2 = prtb%c1
        end if
    end if
end if
else
    ! STOP "Bug in shower_execute_next_branching:
    !   neither quark nor gluon"
end if

call shower%sort_partons ()
call shower_boost_to_CMframe (shower)
call shower_rotate_to_z (shower)

! print *, "  shower_execute_next_isr_branching finished"
end subroutine shower_execute_next_isr_branching

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_remove_parents_and_stuff (shower, prt)
type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt

```

```

type(parton_t), pointer :: actprt, nextprt
! print *, " shower_remove_parents for parton ", prt%nr
nextprt => prt%parent
actprt => null()
!!! remove children of emitted timelike parton
if (associated (prt%child2)) then
  if (associated (prt%child2%child1)) then
    call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive &
      (shower, prt%child2%child1)
  end if
  prt%child2%child1 => null()
  if (associated (prt%child2%child2)) then
    call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive &
      (shower, prt%child2%child2)
  end if
  prt%child2%child2 => null()
end if
do
  actprt => nextprt
  if (.not. associated (actprt)) then
    exit
  else if (parton_is_hadron (actprt)) then
    !!! remove beam-remnant
    call shower_remove_parton_from_partons (shower, actprt%child2)
    exit
  end if
  if (associated (actprt%parent)) then
    nextprt => actprt%parent
  else
    nextprt => null()
  end if
  ! print *, " removing parton ", actprt%child2%nr
  call shower_remove_parton_from_partons_recursive &
    (shower, actprt%child2)
  ! print *, " removing parton ", actprt%nr
  call shower_remove_parton_from_partons (shower, actprt)

end do
prt%parent=>null()

!      print *, " shower_remove_parents for parton finished"
end subroutine shower_remove_parents_and_stuff

```

*(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: get_ISR_scale => shower_get_ISR_scale

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

!!! MERGIND: not sure which function is the right one
!!!   function shower_get_ISR_scale(shower) result (scale)
!!!     class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
!!!     real(default) :: scale
!!!
!!!     type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
!!!     integer :: i

```

```

!!!
!!!      scale = (10._default)**10
!!!      do i = 1, size(shower%interactions)
!!!          call interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron(shower%interactions(i)%i, &
!!!              prt1, prt2)
!!!          call shower%write ()
!!!          call parton_write(prt1)
!!!          call parton_write(prt2)
!!!
!!!          if (isr_pt_ordered) then
!!!              if ((parton_is_hadron(prt1%parent).eqv..false.).and.(abs(prt1%parent%scale).gt.scale))
!!!                  if ((parton_is_hadron(prt1%parent).eqv..false.).and.(abs(prt2%parent%scale).gt.scale))
!!!                      else
!!!                          if ((parton_is_simulated(prt1)).and.(abs(prt1%t).lt.scale)) scale = abs(prt1%t)
!!!                          if ((parton_is_simulated(prt2)).and.(abs(prt2%t).lt.scale)) scale = abs(prt2%t)
!!!!!!!!          if ((parton_is_hadron(prt1%parent).eqv..false.).and.(abs(prt2%parent%t).gt.scale))
!!!              end if
!!!          end do
!!!          print *, "returning: ", scale
!!!!      pause
!!!      end function shower_get_ISR_scale

```

```

function shower_get_ISR_scale (shower) result (scale)
    class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
    real(default) :: scale
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt1, prt2
    integer :: i
    scale = zero
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
        call interaction_find_partons_nearest_to_hadron &
            (shower%interactions(i)%i, prt1, prt2)
        if (.not. parton_is_simulated (prt1) .and. abs(prt1%scale) > scale) &
            scale = abs(prt1%scale)
        if (.not. parton_is_simulated (prt1) .and. abs(prt2%scale) > scale) &
            scale = abs(prt2%scale)
    end do
    ! call shower%write ()
    ! call parton_write(prt1)
    ! call parton_write(prt2)
    ! print *, "returning: ", scale
end function shower_get_ISR_scale

```

*(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: set_max_isr_scale => shower_set_max_isr_scale

```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_set_max_isr_scale (shower, newscale)
    class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    real(default), intent(in) :: newscale
    real(default) :: scale
    type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
    integer :: i,j
    print *, "shower_set_max_isr_scale", newscale
    call shower%write ()

```

```

if (isr_pt_ordered) then
  scale = newscale
else
  scale = -abs(newscale)
end if

INTERACTIONS: do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
  PARTONS: do j = 1, 2
    prt => shower%interactions(i)%i%partons(j)%p
    do
      if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) then
        if (prt%belongstointeraction) prt => prt%parent
      end if
      if (prt%t < scale) then
        if (associated (prt%parent)) then
          prt => prt%parent
        else
          exit    !!! unresolved prt found
        end if
      else
        exit    !!! prt with scale above newscale found
      end if
    end do
    if (.not. isr_pt_ordered) then
      if (prt%child1%belongstointeraction .or. &
        parton_is_hadron (prt)) then
        !!! don't reset scales of "first" spacelike partons
        !!!   in virtuality ordered shower or hadrons
        cycle
      end if
    else
      if (parton_is_hadron (prt)) then
        !!! don't reset scales of hadrons
        cycle
      end if
    end if
    if (isr_pt_ordered) then
      prt%scale = scale
    else
      prt%t = scale
    end if
    call parton_set_simulated (prt, .false.)
    call shower_remove_parents_and_stuff (shower, prt)
  end do PARTONS
end do INTERACTIONS

call shower%write ()
print *, "shower_set_max_isr_scale finished"
end subroutine shower_set_max_isr_scale

```

*(Shower core: shower: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: interaction_generate_fsr_2ton => &
  shower_interaction_generate_fsr_2ton

```



*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!

!!!! new version

!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!

```

!!!      subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr(shower, interaction)
!!!      type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
!!!      type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
!!!      type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons      ! array of partons whose c
!!!
!!!      ! arrange partons to be included in <partons>
!!!      ! for qqbar state: include imaginary mother + first branching
!!!      call shower_prepare_for_simulate_fsr_ana(shower, interaction%out1%p, interaction%out2%p)
!!!
!!!      allocate(partons(1:1))
!!!      partons(1)%p => interaction%out1%p%child1
!!!      call shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr(shower, partons)
!!!      call shower_parton_update_color_connections(shower, interaction%out1%p%child1%child1)
!!!      call shower_parton_update_color_connections(shower, interaction%out1%p%child1%child2)
!!!      end subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr

```

```

subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr_2ton (shower, interaction)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
  type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
  prt => interaction%partons(3)%p
  do
    if (.not. associated (prt%parent)) exit
    prt => prt%parent
  end do
  call shower_parton_generate_fsr (shower, prt)
  call shower_parton_update_color_connections (shower, prt)
end subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr_2ton

```

Perform the FSR for one parton, it is assumed, that the parton already branched.  
Hence, its children are to be simulated this procedure is intended for branched  
FSR-partons emitted in the ISR.

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_parton_generate_fsr (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout), target :: prt
  type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  if (.not. parton_is_branched (prt)) then
    print *, " error in shower_parton_generate_fsr: parton not branched"
    return
  end if
  if (parton_is_simulated (prt%child1) .or. &
      parton_is_simulated (prt%child2)) then
    ! print *, " error in shower_parton_generate_fsr: children
    !         already simulated for parton ", prt%nr
    ! call shower%write ()
    return
  end if

```

```

end if

allocate (partons(1:1))
partons(1)%p => prt
call shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr (shower, partons)

end subroutine shower_parton_generate_fsr

(Shower core: procedures)+≡
recursive subroutine shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr &
    (shower, partons)
    type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
    type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: &
        partons
    type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons_new
    integer :: i, size_partons, size_partons_new
    size_partons = size (partons)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (size_partons == 0) return
    !!! sort partons -> necessary ?? -> probably not
    !!! simulate highest/first parton
    call shower_simulate_children_ana (shower, partons(1)%p)
    !!! check for new daughters to be included in new_partons
    size_partons_new = size_partons - 1 !!! partons(1) not needed anymore
    if (parton_is_branched (partons(1)%p%child1)) &
        size_partons_new = size_partons_new + 1
    if (parton_is_branched (partons(1)%p%child2)) &
        size_partons_new = size_partons_new + 1

    allocate (partons_new(1:size_partons_new))

    if (size_partons > 1) then
        do i = 2, size_partons
            partons_new(i - 1)%p => partons(i)%p
        end do
    end if
    if (parton_is_branched (partons(1)%p%child1)) &
        partons_new(size_partons)%p => partons(1)%p%child1
    if (parton_is_branched (partons(1)%p%child2)) then
        !!! check if child1 is already included
        if (size_partons_new == size_partons) then
            partons_new(size_partons)%p => partons(1)%p%child2
        else if (size_partons_new == size_partons + 1) then
            partons_new(size_partons + 1)%p => partons(1)%p%child2
        else
            call msg_fatal ("Shower: wrong sizes in" &
                // "shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr")
        end if
    end if
    deallocate(partons)

    ! print *, "end subroutine shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr"
    call shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr (shower, partons_new)

```

```
end subroutine shower_parton_pointer_array_generate_fsr
```

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```
recursive subroutine shower_parton_update_color_connections &
  (shower, prt)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  real(default) :: temprand
  if (.not. associated (prt%child1) .or. &
      .not. associated (prt%child2)) return

  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
    if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
      !!! give the quark the colorpartner and the antiquark
      !!! the anticolorpartner
      if (prt%child1%type > 0) then
        !!! child1 is quark, child2 is antiquark
        prt%child1%c1 = prt%c1
        prt%child2%c2 = prt%c2
      else
        !!! child1 is antiquark, child2 is quark
        prt%child1%c2 = prt%c2
        prt%child2%c1 = prt%c1
      end if
    else
      !!! g -> gg splitting -> random choosing of partners
      call tao_random_number (temprand)
      if (temprand > 0.5_default) then
        prt%child1%c1 = prt%c1
        prt%child1%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prt%child2%c1 = prt%child1%c2
        prt%child2%c2 = prt%c2
      else
        prt%child1%c2 = prt%c2
        prt%child2%c1 = prt%c1
        prt%child2%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prt%child1%c1 = prt%child2%c2
      end if
    end if
  else if (parton_is_quark (prt)) then
    if (parton_is_quark (prt%child1)) then
      if (prt%child1%type > 0) then
        !!! q -> q + g
        prt%child2%c1 = prt%c1
        prt%child2%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prt%child1%c1 = prt%child2%c2
      else
        !!! qbar -> qbar + g
        prt%child2%c2 = prt%c2
        prt%child2%c1 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
        prt%child1%c2 = prt%child2%c1
      end if
    else

```

```

    if (prt%child2%type > 0) then
      !!! q -> g + q
      prt%child1%c1 = prt%c1
      prt%child1%c2 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
      prt%child2%c1 = prt%child1%c2
    else
      !!! qbar -> g + qbar
      prt%child1%c2 = prt%c2
      prt%child1%c1 = shower%get_next_color_nr ()
      prt%child2%c2 = prt%child1%c1
    end if
  end if
end if

call shower_parton_update_color_connections (shower, prt%child1)
call shower_parton_update_color_connections (shower, prt%child2)
end subroutine shower_parton_update_color_connections

```

The next two routines are for PDFs. Wrapper function to return parton densities. Note that the arguments for `evolvepdf` need to be defined as double explicitly.

*(Shower core: procedures)+≡*

```

function get_pdf (mother, x, Q2, daughter) result (pdf)
  !   type(shower_t), intent(in), pointer :: shower
  integer, intent(in) :: mother, daughter
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, Q2
  real(default) :: pdf
  real(double), save :: f(-6:6) = 0._double
  real(double), save :: lastx, lastQ2 = 0._double

  if (abs (mother) /= 2212) then
    call msg_fatal ("Shower: pdf only implemented for (anti-)proton")
  else
    if (x > zero .and. x < one) then
      if (dble(Q2) /= lastQ2 .or. dble(x) /= lastx) then
        ! call evolvePDF(DBLE(x),sqrt(abs(DBLE(Q2))),f)  !! LHAPDF
        call shower_pdf_func &
          (shower_pdf_set, dble(x), sqrt (abs (dble(Q2))), f)
      end if
      if (abs (daughter) >= 1 .and. abs (daughter) <= 6) then
        pdf = max (f(daughter * sign (1,mother)), 1E-10_default) / x
      else if (daughter == 21) then
        pdf = max (f(0), 1E-10_default) / x
      else
        print *, "error in pdf, unknown daughter", daughter
        pdf = zero
      end if
    else
      pdf = zero
    end if
  end if
  lastQ2 = dble(Q2)
  lastx = dble(x)

```

```
end function get_pdf
```

Wrapper function to return momentum densities. The arguments for `evolvepdf` need to be defined as `double` explicitly.

*<Shower core: procedures>+≡*

```
function get_xpdf (mother, x, Q2, daughter) result (pdf)
!   type(shower_t), intent(in), pointer :: shower
integer, intent(in) :: mother, daughter
real(default), intent(in) :: x, Q2
real(default) :: pdf
real(double), save :: f(-6:6) = 0._double
real(double), save :: lastx, lastQ2 = 0._double

if (abs (mother) /= 2212) then
  call msg_fatal ("Shower: pdf only implemented for (anti-)proton")
else
  if (x > zero .and. x < one) then
    if (dble(Q2) /= lastQ2 .or. dble(x) /= lastx) then
      ! call evolvePDF(DBLE(x),sqrt(abs(DBLE(Q2))),f)  !! LHAPDF
      call shower_pdf_func &
        (shower_pdf_set, dble(x), sqrt (abs (dble(Q2))), f)
    end if
    if (abs(daughter) >= 1 .and. abs(daughter) <= 6) then
      pdf = max (f (daughter * sign (1,mother)), 1E-10_default)
    else if (daughter == 21) then
      pdf = max(f(0), 1E-10_default)
    else
      print *, "error in pdf, unknown daughter", daughter
      pdf = zero
    end if
  else
    pdf = zero
  end if
end if
lastQ2 = dble(Q2)
lastx = dble(x)
end function get_xpdf
```

## 16.4 Talking to PYTHIA

*<shower\_topythia.f90>≡*

*<File header>*

```
module shower_topythia
```

*<Use kinds>*

```
use lorentz !NODEP!
use shower_base
use shower_partons
use shower_core
```

```

<Standard module head>

<Shower2pythia: public>

contains

<Shower2pythia: procedures>

    end module shower_topythia

<Shower2pythia: public>≡
    public :: shower_converttopythia

<Shower2pythia: procedures>≡
    subroutine shower_converttopythia (shower)
        IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
        IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
        !!!      C... Commonblocks.
        COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
        COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
        COMMON/PYDAT2/KCHG(500,4),PMAS(500,4),PARF(2000),VCKM(4,4)
        COMMON/PYDAT3/MDCY(500,3),MDME(8000,2),BRAT(8000),KFDP(8000,5)
        COMMON/PYSUBS/MSEL,MSELPD,MSUB(500),KFIN(2,-40:40),CKIN(200)
        COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
        SAVE /PYJETS/,/PYDAT1/,/PYDAT2/,/PYDAT3/,/PYSUBS/,/PYPARS/

        type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
        type(parton_t), pointer :: pp, ppparent
        integer :: i, j, nz

        !!! currently only works for one interaction

        do i = 1, 2
            !!! get history of the event
            pp => shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(i)%p
            !!! add these partons to the event record
            if (associated (pp%initial)) then
                !!! add hadrons
                K(i,1) = 21
                K(i,2) = pp%initial%type
                K(i,3) = 0
                P(i,1) = vector4_get_component (pp%initial%momentum,1)
                P(i,2) = vector4_get_component (pp%initial%momentum,2)
                P(i,3) = vector4_get_component (pp%initial%momentum,3)
                P(i,4) = vector4_get_component (pp%initial%momentum,0)
                P(I,5) = pp%initial%momentum**2
                !!! add partons emitted by the hadron
                ppparent => pp
                do while (associated (ppparent%parent))
                    if (parton_is_hadron (ppparent%parent)) then
                        exit
                    else
                        ppparent => ppparent%parent
                    end if
                end while
            end if
        end do
    end subroutine

```

```

end do
K(i+2,1) = 21
K(i+2,2) = ppparent%type
K(i+2,3) = i
P(i+2,1) = vector4_get_component (ppparent%momentum,1)
P(i+2,2) = vector4_get_component (ppparent%momentum,2)
P(i+2,3) = vector4_get_component (ppparent%momentum,3)
P(i+2,4) = vector4_get_component (ppparent%momentum,0)
P(I+2,5) = ppparent%momentum**2
!!! add partons in the initial state of the ME
K(i+4,1) = 21
K(i+4,2) = pp%type
K(i+4,3) = i
P(i+4,1) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,1)
P(i+4,2) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,2)
P(i+4,3) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,3)
P(i+4,4) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,0)
P(I+4,5) = pp%momentum**2
else
!!! for e+e- without ISR all entries are the same
K(i,1) = 21
K(i,2) = pp%type
K(i,3) = 0
P(i,1) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,1)
P(i,2) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,2)
P(i,3) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,3)
P(i,4) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum,0)
P(I,5) = pp%momentum**2
do j = 1, 5
P(i+2,j) = P(1,j)
K(i+2,j) = K(1,j)
K(i+2,3) = i
P(i+4,j) = P(1,j)
K(i+4,j) = K(1,j)
K(i+4,3) = i
end do
P(i+4,5) = 0.
end if
end do
N = 6
!!! create intermediate (fake) Z-Boson
K(7,1) = 21
K(7,2) = 23
K(7,3) = 0
P(7,1) = P(5,1) + P(6,1)
P(7,2) = P(5,2) + P(6,2)
P(7,3) = P(5,3) + P(6,3)
P(7,4) = P(5,4) + P(6,4)
P(7,5) = P(7,4)**2 - P(7,3)**2 - P(7,2)**2 - P(7,1)**2
N = 7
!!! include partons in the final state of the hard matrix element
do i = 1, size (shower%interactions(1)%i%partons) - 2
!!! get partons that are in the final state of the hard matrix element
pp => shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2+i)%p

```

```

!!! add these partons to the event record
K(7+I,1) = 21
K(7+I,2) = pp%type
K(7+I,3) = 7
P(7+I,1) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum, 1)
P(7+I,2) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum, 2)
P(7+I,3) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum, 3)
P(7+I,4) = vector4_get_component (pp%momentum, 0)
P(7+I,5) = P(7+I,4)**2 - P(7+I,3)**2 - P(7+I,2)**2 - P(7+I,1)**2
N = 7 + I
end do
!!! include "Z" (again)
N = N + 1
K(N,1) = 11
K(N,2) = 23
K(N,3) = 7
P(N,1) = P(7,1)
P(N,2) = P(7,2)
P(N,3) = P(7,3)
P(N,4) = P(7,4)
P(N,5) = P(7,5)
nz = N
!!! include partons from the final state of the parton shower
call shower_transfer_final_partons_to_pythia (shower, 8)
!!! set "children" of "Z"
K(nz,4) = 11
K(nz,5) = N
!!! mark spacers
MSTU(73) = N
MSTU(74) = N

!!! be sure to remove the next partons (=first obsolete partons)
K(N+1,1) = 0
K(N+1,2) = 0
K(N+1,3) = 0
K(N+2,1) = 0
K(N+2,2) = 0
K(N+2,3) = 0
K(N+3,1) = 0
K(N+3,2) = 0
K(N+3,3) = 0
!!! otherwise they might be interpreted as thrust information
end subroutine shower_converttopythia

```

*<Shower2pythia: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_transfer_final_partons_to_pythia (shower, first)
  IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
  IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
  ! C... Commonblocks.
  COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
  COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
  COMMON/PYDAT2/KCHG(500,4),PMAS(500,4),PARF(2000),VCKM(4,4)
  COMMON/PYDAT3/MDCY(500,3),MDME(8000,2),BRAT(8000),KFDP(8000,5)
  COMMON/PYSUBS/MSEL,MSELPD,MSUB(500),KFIN(2,-40:40),CKIN(200)

```



```
COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
SAVE /PYJETS/,/PYDAT1/,/PYDAT2/,/PYDAT3/,/PYSUBS/,/PYPARS/
```

```
type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
integer, intent(in) :: first
type(parton_t), pointer :: prt
integer :: i, j, n_finals
type(parton_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: final_partons
type(parton_t) :: temp_parton
integer :: minindex, maxindex
```

```
prt => null()
```

```
!!! !!! old version using (anti-)colorpartner pointers
!!!
!!!      partons: do i = 1, size(shower%partons)
!!!          ! loop over partons to find quarks = beginnings of color strings
!!!          if (.not. associated(shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
!!!          prt=> shower%partons(i)%p
!!!          if (associated(prt%child1)) cycle
!!!          if (.not. parton_is_quark(prt)) cycle
!!!          if (.not. prt%type > 0 ) cycle
!!!
!!!          color_string: do
!!!              ! transfer prt to PYHIA
!!!              N = N+1
!!!              K(N,1) = 2
!!!              K(N,2) = prt%type
!!!              K(N,3) = first
!!!              K(N,4) = 0
!!!              K(N,5) = 0
!!!              P(N,1) = vector4_get_component(prt%momentum, 1)
!!!              P(N,2) = vector4_get_component(prt%momentum, 2)
!!!              P(N,3) = vector4_get_component(prt%momentum, 3)
!!!              P(N,4) = vector4_get_component(prt%momentum, 0)
!!!              P(N,5) = prt%t
!!!
!!!              if (associated(prt%colorpartner)) then
!!!                  prt=>prt%colorpartner
!!!                  cycle color_string
!!!              else
!!!                  K(N,1) = 1 !mark end of string
!!!                  exit color_string
!!!              end if
!!!          end do color_string
!!!      end do partons
```

```
!!! new version using color indices
```

```
!!! get total number of final partons
n_finals = 0
do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    prt => shower%partons(i)%p
```

```

        if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
        if (associated (prt%child1)) cycle
        n_finals = n_finals + 1
    end do
    !!! print *, "n_finals=", n_finals

    allocate (final_partons(1:n_finals))
    j = 1
    do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
        if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
        prt => shower%partons(i)%p
        if (.not. prt%belongstoFSR) cycle
        if (associated (prt%child1)) cycle
        final_partons(j) = shower%partons(i)%p
        j = j + 1
    end do

    !!! move quark to front as beginning of color string
    minindex = 1
    maxindex = size (final_partons)
    FIND_Q: do i = minindex, maxindex
        if (final_partons(i)%type >= 1 .and. final_partons(i)%type <= 6) then
            temp_parton = final_partons(minindex)
            final_partons(minindex) = final_partons(i)
            final_partons(i) = temp_parton
            exit FIND_Q
        end if
    end do FIND_Q

    !!! sort so that connected partons are next to each other, don't care about zeros
    do i = 1, size (final_partons)
        !!! ensure that final_partons begins with a color (not an anticolor)
        if (final_partons(i)%c1 > 0 .and. final_partons(i)%c2 == 0) then
            if (i == 1) then
                exit
            else
                temp_parton = final_partons(1)
                final_partons(1) = final_partons(i)
                final_partons(i) = temp_parton
                exit
            end if
        end if
    end do

    do i = 1, size (final_partons) - 1
        !!! search for color partner and move it to i + 1
        PARTNERS: do j = i + 1, size (final_partons)
            if (final_partons(j)%c2 == final_partons(i)%c1) exit PARTNERS
        end do PARTNERS
        if (j > size (final_partons)) then
            print *, "no color connected parton found" !WRONG???
            print *, "particle: ", final_partons(i)%nr, " index: ", &
                final_partons(i)%c1
            exit
        end if
    end do

```

```

        end if
        temp_parton = final_partons(i + 1)
        final_partons(i + 1) = final_partons(j)
        final_partons(j) = temp_parton
    end do

    !!! transferring partons
    do i = 1, size (final_partons)
        prt = final_partons(i)
        N = N + 1
        K(N,1) = 2
        if (prt%c1 == 0) K(N,1) = 1          !!! end of color string
        K(N,2) = prt%type
        K(N,3) = first
        K(N,4) = 0
        K(N,5) = 0
        P(N,1) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 1)
        P(N,2) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 2)
        P(N,3) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 3)
        P(N,4) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0)
        P(N,5) = prt%momentum**2
    end do
    deallocate (final_partons)
end subroutine shower_transfer_final_partons_to_pythia

```

*(Shower2pythia: procedures)*+≡

```

recursive subroutine shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt, mode, first)
    IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
    IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
    !      C... Commonblocks.
    COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
    COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
    COMMON/PYDAT2/KCHG(500,4),PMAS(500,4),PARF(2000),VCKM(4,4)
    COMMON/PYDAT3/MDCY(500,3),MDME(8000,2),BRAT(8000),KFDP(8000,5)
    COMMON/PYSUBS/MSEL,MSELPD,MSUB(500),KFIN(2,-40:40),CKIN(200)
    COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
    SAVE /PYJETS/,/PYDAT1/,/PYDAT2/,/PYDAT3/,/PYSUBS/,/PYPARS/

    type(parton_t), intent(in), target :: prt
    integer, intent(in) :: mode, first
    integer :: n_emissions
    type(parton_t), pointer :: tempprt, finalprt
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: costhetas
    type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: emittedpartons
    integer :: i, max
    real(default) :: maxcostheta

    n_emissions = 0

    if (parton_is_final(prt)) then
        N = N + 1
        K(N,1) = 2
        if (parton_is_quark(prt)) then
            ! check if quark is end of a color connection

```

```

        if (prt%type < 0) then
            K(N,1) = 1
        end if
    end if
    K(N,2) = prt%type
    K(N,3) = first
    K(N,4) = 0
    K(N,5) = 0
    P(N,1) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 1)
    P(N,2) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 2)
    P(N,3) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 3)
    P(N,4) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0)
    P(N,5) = prt%t
else
    !!! search for following final partons
    if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
        if (parton_is_gluon(prt%child1)) then
            !!! g-> gg so sequence is unimportant
            call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child1, 1, first)
            call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child2, 1, first)
        else
            !!! g-> qqbar -> use antiquark first,
            !!!         so that color flow is given correctly
            if (prt%child1%type < 0) then
                call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child1, 1, first)
                call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child2, 2, first)
            else
                call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child2, 2, first)
                call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child1, 1, first)
            end if
        end if
    end if
else
    !!! parton is quark
    !!! find the emitted gluons and order them by the emission angle
    n_emissions = 0
    tempprt = prt
    do
        !!! calculate how many emissions there are
        if (associated (tempprt%child1)) then
            tempprt => tempprt%child1
            n_emissions = n_emissions + 1
            cycle
        else
            exit
        end if
    end do

    allocate (costhetas(1:n_emissions))
    allocate (emittedpartons(1:n_emissions))

    tempprt => prt
    n_emissions = 1
    do
        if (associated (tempprt%child1)) then

```

```

        costhetas(n_emissions) = parton_get_costheta_correct (tempprt)
        emittedpartons(n_emissions)%p => tempprt%child2
        n_emissions = n_emissions +1
        tempprt => tempprt%child1
        cycle
    else
        finalprt=>tempprt
        exit
    end if
end do

!!! if mode .eq. 1 write quark first
if (mode == 1) &
    call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (finalprt, 1, first)

!!! if mode .eq. 2 write out gluons in recursive order <= replace
!!!     costheta by 1- costheta
if (mode == 2) then
    do i = 1, size (costhetas)
        costhetas(i) = one - costhetas(i)
    end do
end if

do
    max = 0
    maxcostheta = zero
    do i = 1, size (costhetas)
        if (costhetas(i) > maxcostheta) then
            maxcostheta = costhetas(i)
            max = i
        end if
    end do
    if (maxcostheta == zero) then
        exit
    end if

    call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted &
        (emittedpartons(max)%p, mode, first)
    costhetas(max) = zero
end do

!!! if mode .eq. 2 write quark last
if (mode .eq. 2) then
    call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (finalprt, 2, first)
end if

! if (mode == 1) then
!     call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child1, 1, first)
!     call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child2, 1, first)
! else
!     call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child2, 2, first)
!     call shower_topythia_recursive_weighted (prt%child1, 2, first)
! end if
end if

```

```

end if
end subroutine shower_topythia_recursive_weighted

```

*(Shower2pythia: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine shower_topythia_recursive (prt, mode, first)
  IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
  IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
  !    C... Commonblocks.
  COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
  COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
  COMMON/PYDAT2/KCHG(500,4),PMAS(500,4),PARF(2000),VCKM(4,4)
  COMMON/PYDAT3/MDCY(500,3),MDME(8000,2),BRAT(8000),KFDP(8000,5)
  COMMON/PYSUBS/MSEL,MSELPD,MSUB(500),KFIN(2,-40:40),CKIN(200)
  COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
  SAVE /PYJETS/,/PYDAT1/,/PYDAT2/,/PYDAT3/,/PYSUBS/,/PYPARS/

  type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
  integer, intent(in) :: mode, first

  if (parton_is_final (prt)) then
    N = N + 1
    K(N,1) = 2
    if (parton_is_quark(prt)) then
      !!! check if quark is end of a color connection
      if (prt%type < 0) then
        K(N,1) = 1
      end if
    end if
    K(N,2) = prt%type
    K(N,3) = first
    K(N,4) = 0
    K(N,5) = 0
    P(N,1) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 1)
    P(N,2) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 2)
    P(N,3) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 3)
    P(N,4) = vector4_get_component (prt%momentum, 0)
    P(N,5) = prt%t
  else
    !!! search for following final partons
    if (parton_is_gluon (prt)) then
      if (parton_is_gluon (prt%child1)) then
        !!! g-> gg so sequence is unimportant
        call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child1, 1, first)
        call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child2, 1, first)
      else
        !!! g-> qqbar -> use antiquark first, so that color flow
        !!!      is given correctly
        if (prt%child1%type < 0) then
          call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child1, 1, first)
          call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child2, 2, first)
        else
          call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child2, 2, first)
          call shower_topythia_recursive (prt%child1, 1, first)
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if

```



```

C*      g + g and q + qbar -> t + tbar + H code by Zoltan Kunszt      **
C*      MSSM Higgs mass calculation code by M. Carena,                **
C*      J.R. Espinosa, M. Quiros and C.E.M. Wagner                    **
C*      UED implementation by M. Elcacimi, D. Goujdami, H. Przysieznia **
C*      PYGAUS adapted from CERN library (K.S. Kolbig)                **
C*      NRQCD/colour octet production of onium by S. Wolf              **
C*                                                                      **
C*      The latest program version and documentation is found on WWW   **
C*      http://www.thep.lu.se/~torbjorn/Pythia.html                    **
C*                                                                      **
C*      Copyright Torbjorn Sjostrand, Lund 2010                        **
C*                                                                      **
C*****
C*****

C...UPINIT
C...Dummy routine, to be replaced by a user implementing external
C...processes. Is supposed to fill the HEPRUP commonblock with info
C...on incoming beams and allowed processes.

C...New example: handles a standard Les Houches Events File.

      SUBROUTINE UPINIT

C...Double precision and integer declarations.
      IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
      IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)

C...PYTHIA commonblock: only used to provide read unit MSTP(161).
      COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
      SAVE /PYPARS/

C...User process initialization commonblock.
      INTEGER MAXPUP
      PARAMETER (MAXPUP=100)
      INTEGER IDBMUP,PDFGUP,PDFSUP,IDWTUP,NPRUP,LPRUP
      DOUBLE PRECISION EBMUP,XSECUP,XERRUP,XMAXUP
      COMMON/HEPRUP/IDBMUP(2),EBMUP(2),PDFGUP(2),PDFSUP(2),
      &IDWTUP,NPRUP,XSECUP(MAXPUP),XERRUP(MAXPUP),XMAXUP(MAXPUP),
      &LPRUP(MAXPUP)
      SAVE /HEPRUP/

C...Lines to read in assumed never longer than 200 characters.
      PARAMETER (MAXLEN=200)
      CHARACTER*(MAXLEN) STRING

C...Format for reading lines.
      CHARACTER*6 STRFMT
      STRFMT='(A000)'
      WRITE(STRFMT(3:5),'(I3)') MAXLEN

C...Loop until finds line beginning with "<init>" or "<init ".
      100 READ(MSTP(161),STRFMT,END=130,ERR=130) STRING
      IBEG=0

```



```

110 IBEG=IBEG+1
C...Allow indentation.
      IF (STRING (IBEG:IBEG).EQ.' '.AND.IBEG.LT.MAXLEN-5) GOTO 110
      IF (STRING (IBEG:IBEG+5).NE.'<init>'.AND.
&STRING (IBEG:IBEG+5).NE.'<init ' ) GOTO 100

C...Read first line of initialization info.
      READ (MSTP (161),*,END=130,ERR=130) IDBMUP (1),IDBMUP (2),EBMUP (1),
&EBMUP (2),PDFGUP (1),PDFGUP (2),PDFSUP (1),PDFSUP (2),IDWTUP,NPRUP

C...Read NPRUP subsequent lines with information on each process.
      DO 120 IPR=1,NPRUP
        READ (MSTP (161),*,END=130,ERR=130) XSECUP (IPR),XERRUP (IPR),
& XMAXUP (IPR),LPRUP (IPR)
120 CONTINUE
      RETURN

C...Error exit: give up if initialization does not work.
130 WRITE (*,*) ' Failed to read LHEF initialization information.'
      WRITE (*,*) ' Event generation will be stopped.'
      CALL PYSTOP (12)

      RETURN
      END

C...Old example: handles a simple Pythia 6.4 initialization file.

c      SUBROUTINE UPINIT

C...Double precision and integer declarations.
c      IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION (A-H, O-Z)
c      IMPLICIT INTEGER (I-N)

C...Commonblocks.
c      COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
c      COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
c      SAVE /PYDAT1/,/PYPARS/

C...User process initialization commonblock.
c      INTEGER MAXPUP
c      PARAMETER (MAXPUP=100)
c      INTEGER IDBMUP,PDFGUP,PDFSUP,IDWTUP,NPRUP,LPRUP
c      DOUBLE PRECISION EBMUP,XSECUP,XERRUP,XMAXUP
c      COMMON/HEPRUP/IDBMUP (2),EBMUP (2),PDFGUP (2),PDFSUP (2),
c      &IDWTUP,NPRUP,XSECUP (MAXPUP),XERRUP (MAXPUP),XMAXUP (MAXPUP),
c      &LPRUP (MAXPUP)
c      SAVE /HEPRUP/

C...Read info from file.
c      IF (MSTP (161).GT.0) THEN
c        READ (MSTP (161),*,END=110,ERR=110) IDBMUP (1),IDBMUP (2),EBMUP (1),
c      & EBMUP (2),PDFGUP (1),PDFGUP (2),PDFSUP (1),PDFSUP (2),IDWTUP,NPRUP
c        DO 100 IPR=1,NPRUP
c          READ (MSTP (161),*,END=110,ERR=110) XSECUP (IPR),XERRUP (IPR),

```

```

c      &      XMAXUP(IPR),LPRUP(IPR)
c 100      CONTINUE
c          RETURN
C...Error or prematurely reached end of file.
c 110      WRITE(MSTU(11),5000)
c          STOP

C...Else not implemented.
c          ELSE
c              WRITE(MSTU(11),5100)
c              STOP
c          ENDIF

C...Format for error printout.
c 5000 FORMAT(1X,'Error: UPINIT routine failed to read information'/
c      &1X,'Execution stopped!')
c 5100 FORMAT(1X,'Error: You have not implemented UPINIT routine'/
c      &1X,'Dummy routine in PYTHIA file called instead.'/
c      &1X,'Execution stopped!')

c          RETURN
c          END

C*****

C...UPEVNT
C...Dummy routine, to be replaced by a user implementing external
C...processes. Depending on cross section model chosen, it either has
C...to generate a process of the type IDPRUP requested, or pick a type
C...itself and generate this event. The event is to be stored in the
C...HEPEUP commonblock, including (often) an event weight.

C...New example: handles a standard Les Houches Events File.

      SUBROUTINE UPEVNT

C...Double precision and integer declarations.
      IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
      IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)

C...PYTHIA commonblock: only used to provide read unit MSTP(162).
      COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
      SAVE /PYPARS/

C...Added by WHIZARD
      COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
      SAVE/PYDAT1/

C...User process event common block.
      INTEGER MAXNUP
      PARAMETER (MAXNUP=500)
      INTEGER NUP,IDPRUP,IDUP,ISTUP,MOTHUP,ICOLUP
      DOUBLE PRECISION XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,PUP,VTIMUP,SPINUP
      COMMON/HEPEUP/NUP,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,IDUP(MAXNUP),

```

```

&ISTUP(MAXNUP),MOTHUP(2,MAXNUP),ICOLUP(2,MAXNUP),PUP(5,MAXNUP),
&VTIMUP(MAXNUP),SPINUP(MAXNUP)
SAVE /HEPEUP/

C...Lines to read in assumed never longer than 200 characters.
PARAMETER (MAXLEN=200)
CHARACTER*(MAXLEN) STRING

C...Format for reading lines.
CHARACTER*6 STRFMT
STRFMT='(A000)'
WRITE(STRFMT(3:5),'(I3)') MAXLEN

C...Loop until finds line beginning with "<event>" or "<event ".
100 READ(MSTP(162),STRFMT,END=130,ERR=130) STRING
IBEG=0
110 IBEG=IBEG+1
C...Allow indentation.
IF(STRING(IBEG:IBEG).EQ.' '.AND.IBEG.LT.MAXLEN-6) GOTO 110
IF(STRING(IBEG:IBEG+6).NE.'<event>'.AND.
&STRING(IBEG:IBEG+6).NE.'<event ') GOTO 100

C...Read first line of event info.
READ(MSTP(162),*,END=130,ERR=130) NUP,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,
&AQEDUP,AQCDUP

C...Read NUP subsequent lines with information on each particle.
DO 120 I=1,NUP
READ(MSTP(162),*,END=130,ERR=130) IDUP(I),ISTUP(I),
& MOTHUP(1,I),MOTHUP(2,I),ICOLUP(1,I),ICOLUP(2,I),
& (PUP(J,I),J=1,5),VTIMUP(I),SPINUP(I)
120 CONTINUE
RETURN

C...Error exit, typically when no more events.
130 CONTINUE
C WRITE(*,*) ' Failed to read LHEF event information.'
C WRITE(*,*) ' Will assume end of file has been reached.'
NUP=0
MSTI(51)=1
C...Added by WHIZARD, mark these failed events
MSTU(23)=1

RETURN
END

C...Old example: handles a simple Pythia 6.4 event file.

c SUBROUTINE UPEVNT

C...Double precision and integer declarations.
c IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
c IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)

```

```

C...Commonblocks.
c      COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
c      COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
c      SAVE /PYDAT1/,/PYPARS/

C...User process event common block.
c      INTEGER MAXNUP
c      PARAMETER (MAXNUP=500)
c      INTEGER NUP,IDPRUP,IDUP,ISTUP,MOTHUP,ICOLUP
c      DOUBLE PRECISION XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,PUP,VTIMUP,SPINUP
c      COMMON/HEPEUP/NUP,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,IDUP(MAXNUP),
c      &ISTUP(MAXNUP),MOTHUP(2,MAXNUP),ICOLUP(2,MAXNUP),PUP(5,MAXNUP),
c      &VTIMUP(MAXNUP),SPINUP(MAXNUP)
c      SAVE /HEPEUP/

C...Read info from file.
c      IF(MSTP(162).GT.0) THEN
c          READ(MSTP(162),*,END=110,ERR=110) NUP,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,
c      & AQEDUP,AQCDUP
c          DO 100 I=1,NUP
c              READ(MSTP(162),*,END=110,ERR=110) IDUP(I),ISTUP(I),
c      & MOTHUP(1,I),MOTHUP(2,I),ICOLUP(1,I),ICOLUP(2,I),
c      & (PUP(J,I),J=1,5),VTIMUP(I),SPINUP(I)
c      100 CONTINUE
c          RETURN
C...Special when reached end of file or other error.
c      110 NUP=0

C...Else not implemented.
c      ELSE
c          WRITE(MSTU(11),5000)
c          STOP
c      ENDIF

C...Format for error printout.
c      5000 FORMAT(1X,'Error: You have not implemented UPEVNT routine'/
c      &1X,'Dummy routine in PYTHIA file called instead.'/
c      &1X,'Execution stopped!')

c      RETURN
c      END

C*****

C...UPVETO
C...Dummy routine, to be replaced by user, to veto event generation
C...on the parton level, after parton showers but before multiple
C...interactions, beam remnants and hadronization is added.
C...If resonances like W, Z, top, Higgs and SUSY particles are handed
C...undecayed from UPEVNT, or are generated by PYTHIA, they will also
C...be undecayed at this stage; if decayed their decay products will
C...have been allowed to shower.

C...All partons at the end of the shower phase are stored in the

```

```

C...HEPEVT commonblock. The interesting information is
C...NHEP = the number of such partons, in entries 1 <= i <= NHEP,
C...IDHEP(I) = the particle ID code according to PDG conventions,
C...PHEP(J,I) = the (p_x, p_y, p_z, E, m) of the particle.
C...All ISTHEP entries are 1, while the rest is zeroed.

C...The user decision is to be conveyed by the IVETO value.
C...IVETO = 0 : retain current event and generate in full;
C...      = 1 : abort generation of current event and move to next.

      SUBROUTINE UPVETO(IVETO)

C...HEPEVT commonblock.
      PARAMETER (NMXHEP=4000)
      COMMON/HEPEVT/NEVHEP,NHEP,ISTHEP(NMXHEP),IDHEP(NMXHEP),
&JMOHEP(2,NMXHEP),JDAHEP(2,NMXHEP),PHEP(5,NMXHEP),VHEP(4,NMXHEP)
      DOUBLE PRECISION PHEP,VHEP
      SAVE /HEPEVT/

C...Next few lines allow you to see what info PYVETO extracted from
C...the full event record for the first two events.
C...Delete if you don't want it.
      DATA NLIST/0/
      SAVE NLIST
      IF(NLIST.LE.2) THEN
        WRITE(*,*) ' Full event record at time of UPVETO call:'
        CALL PYLIST(1)
        WRITE(*,*) ' Part of event record made available to UPVETO:'
        CALL PYLIST(5)
        NLIST=NLIST+1
      ENDIF

C...Make decision here.
      IVETO = 0

      RETURN
      END

```

## 16.5 Matching

### 16.5.1 MLM matching

```

<mlm_matching.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module mlm_matching

    <Use kinds>
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!

```

```

    use file_utils !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <MLM matching: public>

    <MLM matching: types>

contains

    <MLM matching: procedures>

end module mlm_matching

```

This is a container for the (colored) parton momenta as well as the jet momenta.

```

    <MLM matching: public>≡
        public :: mlm_matching_data_t
    <MLM matching: types>≡
        type :: mlm_matching_data_t
            logical :: is_hadron_collision = .false.
            type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, public :: P_ME
            type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, public :: P_PS
            type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, private :: JETS_ME
            type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, private :: JETS_PS
        end type mlm_matching_data_t

    <MLM matching: public>+≡
        public :: mlm_matching_settings_t
    <MLM matching: types>+≡
        type :: mlm_matching_settings_t
            real(default) :: mlm_Qcut_ME = one
            real(default) :: mlm_Qcut_PS = one
            real(default) :: mlm_ptmin, mlm_etamax, mlm_Rmin, mlm_Emin
            real(default) :: mlm_ETclusfactor = 0.2_default
            real(default) :: mlm_ETclusminE = five
            real(default) :: mlm_etaclusfactor = one
            real(default) :: mlm_Rclusfactor = one
            real(default) :: mlm_Eclusfactor = one
            integer :: kt_imode_hadronic = 4313
            integer :: kt_imode_leptonic = 1111
            integer :: mlm_nmaxMEjets = 0
        end type mlm_matching_settings_t

    <MLM matching: public>+≡
        public :: mlm_matching_settings_write
    <MLM matching: procedures>≡
        subroutine mlm_matching_settings_write (settings, unit)
            type(mlm_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
            integer :: u
            u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
            write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &

```

```

      "mlm_Qcut_ME           = ", settings%mlm_Qcut_ME
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_Qcut_PS           = ", settings%mlm_Qcut_PS
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_ptmin             = ", settings%mlm_ptmin
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_etamax            = ", settings%mlm_etamax
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_Rmin              = ", settings%mlm_Rmin
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_Emin              = ", settings%mlm_Emin
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0)") &
      "mlm_nmaxMEjets        = ", settings%mlm_nmaxMEjets
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_ETclusfactor (D=0.2) = ", settings%mlm_ETclusfactor
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_ETclusminE (D=5.0) = ", settings%mlm_ETclusminE
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_etaclusfactor (D=1.0) = ", settings%mlm_etaclusfactor
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_Rclusfactor (D=1.0) = ", settings%mlm_Rclusfactor
write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "mlm_Eclusfactor (D=1.0) = ", settings%mlm_Eclusfactor
end subroutine mlm_matching_settings_write

```

*<MLM matching: public>+≡*

```
public :: mlm_matching_data_write
```

*<MLM matching: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine mlm_matching_data_write (data, unit)
  type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: i
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return

  write (u, "(1x,A)") "MLM matching data:"
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Momenta of ME partons:"
  if (allocated (data%P_ME)) then
    do i = 1, size (data%P_ME)
      write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
      call vector4_write (data%P_ME(i), unit = u)
    end do
  else
    write (u, "(5x,A)") "[empty]"
  end if
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Momenta of ME jets:"
  if (allocated (data%JETS_ME)) then
    do i = 1, size (data%JETS_ME)
      write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
      call vector4_write (data%JETS_ME(i), unit = u)
    end do
  else

```

```

        write (u, "(5x,A)") "[empty]"
    end if
    call write_separator (u)
    write(u, "(3x,A)") "Momenta of shower partons:"
    if (allocated (data%P_PS)) then
        do i = 1, size (data%P_PS)
            write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
            call vector4_write (data%P_PS(i), unit = u)
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(5x,A)") "[empty]"
    end if
    call write_separator (u)
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Momenta of shower jets:"
    if (allocated (data%JETS_PS)) then
        do i = 1, size (data%JETS_PS)
            write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
            call vector4_write (data%JETS_PS(i), unit = u)
        end do
    else
        write (u, "(5x,A)") "[empty]"
    end if
    call write_separator (u)
end subroutine mlm_matching_data_write

```

*<MLM matching: public>+≡*

```
public :: mlm_matching_data_final
```

*<MLM matching: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine mlm_matching_data_final (data)
    type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    ! if (allocated (data%P_ME)) deallocate(data%P_ME)
    if (allocated (data%P_PS)) deallocate (data%P_PS)
    if (allocated (data%JETS_ME)) deallocate(data%JETS_ME)
    if (allocated (data%JETS_PS)) deallocate(data%JETS_PS)
end subroutine mlm_matching_data_final

```

*<MLM matching: public>+≡*

```
public :: mlm_matching_apply
```

*<MLM matching: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine mlm_matching_apply (data, settings, vetoed)
    type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
    type(mlm_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
    logical, intent(out) :: vetoed

    integer :: i, j
    integer :: n_jets_ME, n_jets_PS, n_jets_PS_atycut
    real(double) :: ycut
    real(double), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: PP
    real(double), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: Y
    real(double), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: P_JETS
    real(double), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: P_ME
    integer, dimension(:, :), allocatable :: JET

```



```

integer :: NJET, NSUB
integer :: imode
!!! TODO: (bcn 2014-03-26) Why is ECUT hard coded to 1?
!!! It is the denominator of the KT measure. Candidate for removal
real(double) :: ECUT = 1._double
integer :: ip1,ip2

! KTCLUS COMMON BLOCK
INTEGER NMAX,NUM,HIST
PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
DOUBLE PRECISION P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETOT,RSQ,KTLAST
COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM

vetoed = .true.
if (signal_is_pending ()) return

<Set n_jets_ME/PS from data (or equal zero)>

<Jet clustering for partons after matrix element>

<Jet clustering for partons after shower>

! call data_write(data)

<Veto: too many or not enough jets after PS>

<Cluster ME jets with PS jets one at a time>

vetoed = .false.
999 continue
end subroutine mlm_matching_apply

<Set n_jets_ME/PS from data (or equal zero)>≡
if (allocated (data%P_ME)) then
! print *, "number of partons after ME: ", size(data%P_ME)
n_jets_ME = size (data%P_ME)
else
n_jets_ME = 0
end if
if (allocated (data%p_PS)) then
! print *, "number of partons after PS: ", size(data%p_PS)
n_jets_PS = size (data%p_PS)
else
n_jets_PS = 0
end if

<Jet clustering for partons after matrix element>≡
if (n_jets_ME > 0) then
ycut = (settings%mlm_ptmin)**2
! ycut = settings%mlm_Qcut_ME**2
allocate (PP(1:4, 1:N_jets_ME))
do i = 1, n_jets_ME
PP(1,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_ME(i), 1)

```

```

        PP(2,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_ME(i), 2)
        PP(3,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_ME(i), 3)
        PP(4,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_ME(i), 0)
    end do

    <Set imode for lepton or hadron collisions>

    allocate (P_ME(1:4,1:n_jets_ME))
    allocate (JET(1:n_jets_ME))
    allocate (Y(1:n_jets_ME))

    !!! TODO: (bcn 2014-03-26) has he forgotten mlm_Rclusfactor here? #
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call KTCLUR (imode, PP, n_jets_ME, &
        dble (settings%mlm_Rclusfactor * settings%mlm_Rmin), ECUT, y, *999)
    call KTRECO (1, PP, n_jets_ME, ECUT, ycut, ycut, P_ME, JET, &
        NJET, NSUB, *999)

    n_jets_ME = NJET
    if (NJET > 0) then
        allocate (data%JETS_ME (1:NJET))
        do i = 1, NJET
            data%JETS_ME(i) = vector4_moving (REAL(P_ME(4,i), default), &
                vector3_moving([REAL(P_ME(1,i), default), &
                    REAL(P_ME(2,i), default), REAL(P_ME(3,i), default)]))
        end do
    end if
    deallocate (P_ME)
    deallocate (JET)
    deallocate (Y)
    deallocate (PP)
end if

<Jet clustering for partons after shower>≡
if (n_jets_PS > 0) then
    ycut = (settings%mlm_ptmin + max (settings%mlm_ETclusminE, &
        settings%mlm_ETclusfactor * settings%mlm_ptmin))*2
    ! ycut = settings%mlm_Qcut_PS**2
    allocate (PP(1:4, 1:n_jets_PS))
    do i = 1, n_jets_PS
        PP(1,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_PS(i), 1)
        PP(2,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_PS(i), 2)
        PP(3,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_PS(i), 3)
        PP(4,i) = vector4_get_component (data%p_PS(i), 0)
    end do

    <Set imode for lepton or hadron collisions>

    allocate (P_JETS(1:4,1:n_jets_PS))
    allocate (JET(1:n_jets_PS))
    allocate (Y(1:n_jets_PS))

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call KTCLUR (imode, PP, n_jets_PS, &
        dble (settings%mlm_Rclusfactor * settings%mlm_Rmin), &

```

```

        ECUT, y, *999)
    call KTRECO (1, PP, n_jets_PS, ECUT, ycut, ycut, P_JETS, JET, &
        NJET, NSUB, *999)
    n_jets_PS_atycut = NJET
    if (n_jets_ME == settings%mlm_nmaxMEjets .and. NJET > 0) then
        ! print *, " resetting ycut to ", Y(settings%mlm_nmaxMEjets)
        ycut = y(settings%mlm_nmaxMEjets)
        call KTRECO (1, PP, n_jets_PS, ECUT, ycut, ycut, P_JETS, JET, &
            NJET, NSUB, *999)
    end if

    ! !Sample of code for a FastJet interface
    ! palg = 1d0          ! 1.0d0 = kt, 0.0d0 = Cam/Aachen, -1.0d0 = anti-kt
    ! R = 0.7_double     ! radius parameter
    ! f = 0.75_double    ! overlap threshold
    ! !call fastjetppgenkt(PP,n,R,palg,P_JETS,NJET)    ! KT-Algorithm
    ! !call fastjetsiscone(PP,n,R,f,P_JETS,NJET)      ! SiSCone-Algorithm

    if (NJET > 0) then
        allocate (data%JETS_PS(1:NJET))
        do i = 1, NJET
            data%JETS_PS(i) = vector4_moving (REAL(P_JETS(4,i), default), &
                vector3_moving([REAL(P_JETS(1,i), default), &
                    REAL(P_JETS(2,i), default), REAL(P_JETS(3,i), default)]))
        end do
    end if

    deallocate (P_JETS)
    deallocate (JET)
    deallocate (Y)
else
    n_jets_PS_atycut = 0
end if

<Set imode for lepton or hadron collisions>≡
    if (data%is_hadron_collision) then
        imode = settings%kt_imode_hadronic
    else
        imode = settings%kt_imode_leptonic
    end if

<Veto: too many or not enough jets after PS>≡
    if (n_jets_PS_atycut < n_jets_ME) then
        ! print *, "DISCARDING: Not enough PS jets: ", n_jets_PS_atycut
        return
    end if
    if (n_jets_PS_atycut > n_jets_ME .and. n_jets_ME /= settings%mlm_nmaxMEjets) then
        ! print *, "DISCARDING: Too many PS jets: ", n_jets_PS_atycut
        return
    end if

<Cluster ME jets with PS jets one at a time>≡
    if (allocated(data%JETS_PS)) then
        ! print *, "number of jets after PS: ", size(data%JETS_PS)
        n_jets_PS = size (data%JETS_PS)
    else

```

```

        n_jets_PS = 0
    end if
    if (n_jets_ME > 0 .and. n_jets_PS > 0) then
        n_jets_PS = size (data%JETS_PS)
        if (allocated (PP)) deallocate(PP)
        allocate (PP(1:4, 1:n_jets_PS + 1))
        do i = 1, n_jets_PS
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            ! call vector4_write(data%jets_PS(i))
            PP(1,i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_PS(i), 1)
            PP(2,i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_PS(i), 2)
            PP(3,i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_PS(i), 3)
            PP(4,i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_PS(i), 0)
        end do
        if (allocated (Y)) deallocate(Y)
        allocate (Y(1:n_jets_PS + 1))
        y = zero
        do i = 1, n_jets_ME
            ! print *, "ME JET"
            ! call vector4_write(data%jets_ME(i))
            PP(1,n_jets_PS + 2 - i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_ME(i), 1)
            PP(2,n_jets_PS + 2 - i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_ME(i), 2)
            PP(3,n_jets_PS + 2 - i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_ME(i), 3)
            PP(4,n_jets_PS + 2 - i) = vector4_get_component (data%JETS_ME(i), 0)
            !!! This makes more sense than hardcoding
            ! call KTCLUS (4313, PP, (n_jets_PS + 2 - i), 1.0_double, Y, *999)
            call KTCLUR (imode, PP, (n_jets_PS + 2 - i), &
                dble (settings%mlm_Rclusfactor * settings%mlm_Rmin), &
                ECUT, y, *999)
            ! print *, "    Y=" , y
            ! print *, y(n_jets_PS + 1 - i), " " , ycut
            if (0.99 * y(n_jets_PS + 1 - (i - 1)).gt.ycut) then
                ! print *, "DISCARDING: Jet ", i, " not clusterd"
                return
            end if
            !!! search for and remove PS jet clustered with ME Jet
            ! print *, "i=", i, n_jets_PS, n_jets_ME
            ! do j = 1, n_jets_PS + 2 - i
            !     print *, PP(1,j), PP(2,j), PP(3,j), PP(4,j)
            ! end do
            ! print *, " n_jets_PS=", n_jets_PS
            ip1 = HIST(n_jets_PS + 2 - i) / NMAX
            ip2 = mod(hist(n_jets_PS + 2 - i), NMAX)
            if ((ip2 /= n_jets_PS + 2 - i) .or. (ip1 <= 0)) then
                ! print *, "DISCARDING: Jet ", i, " not clustered ", ip1, ip2, &
                !     hist(n_jets_PS + 2 - i)
                return
            else
                ! print *, "PARTON clustered", ip1, ip2, hist(n_jets_PS + 2 - i)
                PP(:,IP1) = zero
                do j = IP1, n_jets_PS - i
                    PP(:, j) = PP(:,j + 1)
                end do
            end if
        end if
    end if

```

```

        end do
    end if
<MLM matching: procedures>+≡
!C-----
!C-----
!C-----
!C      KTCLUS: written by Mike Seymour, July 1992.
!C      Last modified November 2000.
!C      Please send comments or suggestions to Mike.Seymour@rl.ac.uk
!C
!C      This is a general-purpose kt clustering package.
!C      It can handle ee, ep and pp collisions.
!C      It is loosely based on the program of Siggi Bethke.
!C
!C      The time taken (on a 10MIP machine) is (0.2microsec)*N**3
!C      where N is the number of particles.
!C      Over 90 percent of this time is used in subroutine KTPMIN, which
!C      simply finds the minimum member of a one-dimensional array.
!C      It is well worth thinking about optimization: on the SPARCstation
!C      a factor of two increase was obtained simply by increasing the
!C      optimization level from its default value.
!C
!C      The approach is to separate the different stages of analysis.
!C      KTCLUS does all the clustering and records a merging history.
!C      It returns a simple list of the y values at which each merging
!C      occurred. Then the following routines can be called to give extra
!C      information on the most recently analysed event.
!C      KTCLUR is identical but includes an R parameter, see below.
!C      KTYCUT gives the number of jets at each given YCUT value.
!C      KTYSUB gives the number of sub-jets at each given YCUT value.
!C      KTBEBAM gives same info as KTCLUS but only for merges with the beam
!C      KTJOIN gives same info as KTCLUS but for merges of sub-jets.
!C      KTRECO reconstructs the jet momenta at a given value of YCUT.
!C      It also gives information on which jets at scale YCUT belong to
!C      which macro-jets at scale YMAC, for studying sub-jet properties.
!C      KTIINCL reconstructs the jet momenta according to the inclusive jet
!C      definition of Ellis and Soper.
!C      KTISUB, KTIJOI and KTIREC are like KTYSUB, KTJOIN and KTRECO,
!C      except that they only apply to one inclusive jet at a time,
!C      with the pt of that jet automatically used for ECUT.
!C      KTWICH gives a list of which particles ended up in which jets.
!C      KTWCHS gives the same thing, but only for subjets.
!C      Note that the numbering of jets used by these two routines is
!C      guaranteed to be the same as that used by KTRECO.
!C
!C      The collision type and analysis type are indicated by the first
!C      argument of KTCLUS. IMODE=<TYPE><ANGLE><MONO><RECOM> where
!C      TYPE:  1=>ee, 2=>ep with p in -z direction, 3=>pe, 4=>pp
!C      ANGLE: 1=>angular kt def., 2=>DeltaR, 3=>f(DeltaEta,DeltaPhi)
!C              where f()=2(cosh(eta)-cos(phi)) is the QCD emission metric
!C      MONO:  1=>derive relative pseudoparticle angles from jets
!C              2=>monotonic definitions of relative angles
!C      RECOM: 1=>E recombination scheme, 2=>pt scheme, 3=>pt**2 scheme
!C

```

```

!C      There are also abbreviated forms for the most common combinations:
!C      IMODE=1 => E scheme in e+e-                      (=1111)
!C           2 => E scheme in ep                          (=2111)
!C           3 => E scheme in pe                          (=3111)
!C           4 => E scheme in pp                          (=4111)
!C           5 => covariant E scheme in pp                (=4211)
!C           6 => covariant pt-scheme in pp                (=4212)
!C           7 => covariant monotonic pt**2-scheme in pp   (=4223)
!C
!C      KTRECO no longer needs to reconstruct the momenta according to the
!C      same recombination scheme in which they were clustered. Its first
!C      argument gives the scheme, taking the same values as RECOM above.
!C
!C      Note that unlike previous versions, all variables which hold y
!C      values have been named in a consistent way:
!C      Y() is the output scale at which jets were merged,
!C      YCUT is the input scale at which jets should be counted, and
!C      jet-momenta reconstructed etc,
!C      YMAC is the input macro-jet scale, used in determining whether
!C      or not each jet is a sub-jet.
!C      The original scheme defined in our papers is equivalent to always
!C      setting YMAC=1.
!C      Whenever a YCUT or YMAC variable is used, it is rounded down
!C      infinitesimally, so that for example, setting YCUT=Y(2) refers
!C      to the scale where the event is 2-jet, even if rounding errors
!C      have shifted its value slightly.
!C
!C      An R parameter can be used in hadron-hadron collisions by
!C      calling KTCLUR instead of KTCLUS. This is as suggested by
!C      Ellis and Soper, but implemented slightly differently,
!C      as in M.H. Seymour, LU TP 94/2 (submitted to Nucl. Phys. B.).
!C      R**2 multiplies the single Kt everywhere it is used.
!C      Calling KTCLUR with R=1 is identical to calling KTCLUS.
!C      R plays a similar role to the jet radius in a cone-type algorithm,
!C      but is scaled up by about 40% (ie R=0.7 in a cone algorithm is
!C      similar to this algorithm with R=1).
!C      Note that R.EQ.1 must be used for the e+e- and ep versions,
!C      and is strongly recommended for the hadron-hadron version.
!C      However, R values smaller than 1 have been found to be useful for
!C      certain applications, particularly the mass reconstruction of
!C      highly-boosted colour-singlets such as high-pt hadronic Ws,
!C      as in M.H. Seymour, LU TP 93/8 (to appear in Z. Phys. C.).
!C      Situations in which R<1 is useful are likely to also be those in
!C      which the inclusive reconstruction method is more useful.
!C
!C      Also included is a set of routines for doing Lorentz boosts:
!C      KTLBST finds the boost matrix to/from the cm frame of a 4-vector
!C      KTRROT finds the rotation matrix from one vector to another
!C      KTMUL multiplies together two matrices
!C      KTMUL multiplies a vector by a matrix
!C      KTINVT inverts a transformation matrix (nb NOT a general 4 by 4)
!C      KTFRAM boosts a list of vectors between two arbitrary frames
!C      KTBREI boosts a list of vectors between the lab and Breit frames
!C      KTHADR boosts a list of vectors between the lab and hadronic cmf

```

```

!C      The last two need the momenta in the +z direction of the lepton
!C      and hadron beams, and the 4-momentum of the outgoing lepton.
!C
!C      The main reference is:
!C      S. Catani, Yu.L. Dokshitzer, M.H. Seymour and B.R. Webber,
!C      Nucl.Phys.B406(1993)187.
!C      The ep version was proposed in:
!C      S. Catani, Yu.L. Dokshitzer and B.R. Webber,
!C      Phys.Lett.285B(1992)291.
!C      The inclusive reconstruction method was proposed in:
!C      S.D. Ellis and D.E. Soper,
!C      Phys.Rev.D48(1993)3160.
!C
!C-----
!C-----
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTCLUS(IMODE,PP,NN,ECUT,Y,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---DO CLUSTER ANALYSIS OF PARTICLES IN PP
!C
!C  IMODE   = INPUT   : DESCRIBED ABOVE
!C  PP(I,J) = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth PARTICLE: I=1,4 => PX,PY,PZ,E
!C  NN      = INPUT   : NUMBER OF PARTICLES
!C  ECUT    = INPUT   : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  Y(J)    = OUTPUT  : VALUE OF Y FOR WHICH EVENT CHANGES FROM BEING
!C                   J JET TO J-1 JET
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED (MOST LIKELY DUE TO TOO MANY PARTICLES)
!C
!C  NOTE THAT THE MOMENTA ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION,
!C  AND ALL OTHER FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER IMODE,NN
      DOUBLE PRECISION PP(4,*)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ECUT,Y(*),ONE
      ONE=1
      CALL KTCLUR(IMODE,PP,NN,ONE,ECUT,Y,*999)
      RETURN
999 RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTCLUS
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTCLUR(IMODE,PP,NN,R,ECUT,Y,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---DO CLUSTER ANALYSIS OF PARTICLES IN PP
!C
!C  IMODE   = INPUT   : DESCRIBED ABOVE
!C  PP(I,J) = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth PARTICLE: I=1,4 => PX,PY,PZ,E
!C  NN      = INPUT   : NUMBER OF PARTICLES
!C  R        = INPUT   : ELLIS AND SOPER'S R PARAMETER, SEE ABOVE.
!C  ECUT    = INPUT   : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  Y(J)    = OUTPUT  : VALUE OF Y FOR WHICH EVENT CHANGES FROM BEING
!C                   J JET TO J-1 JET
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED (MOST LIKELY DUE TO TOO MANY PARTICLES)

```

```

!C
!C  NOTE THAT THE MOMENTA ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION,
!C  AND ALL OTHER FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,IM,IMODE,TYPE,ANGL,MONO,RECO,N,I,J,NN, &
             IMIN,JMIN,KMIN,NUM,HIST,INJET,IABBR,NABBR
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512,NABBR=7)
      DOUBLE PRECISION PP(4,*)
      integer :: u
!C---CHANGE      DOUBLE PRECISION R,ECUT,Y(*),P,KT,ETOT,RSQ,KTP,KTS,KTPAIR,KTSING, &
      DOUBLE PRECISION R,ECUT,Y(*),P,KT,ETOT,RSQ,KTP,KTS, &
      KTMIN,ETSQ,KTLAST,KTMAX,KTTMP
      LOGICAL FIRST
      CHARACTER TITLE(4,4)*10
!C---KT RECORDS THE KT**2 OF EACH MERGING.
!C---KTLAST RECORDS FOR EACH MERGING, THE HIGHEST ECUT**2 FOR WHICH THE
!C  RESULT IS NOT MERGED WITH THE BEAM (COULD BE LARGER THAN THE
!C  KT**2 AT WHICH IT WAS MERGED IF THE KT VALUES ARE NOT MONOTONIC).
!C  THIS MAY SOUND POINTLESS, BUT ITS USEFUL FOR DETERMINING WHETHER
!C  SUB-JETS SURVIVED TO SCALE Y=YMAC OR NOT.
!C---HIST RECORDS MERGING HISTORY:
!C  N=>DELETED TRACK N, M*NMAX+N=>MERGED TRACKS M AND N (M<N).
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      DIMENSION INJET(NMAX),IABBR(NABBR)
      DATA FIRST,TITLE,IABBR/.TRUE., &
             'e+e-      ','ep      ','pe      ','pp      ', &
             'angle      ','DeltaR    ','f(DeltaR) ','*****', &
             'no         ','yes      ','*****', '*****', &
             'E          ','Pt      ','Pt**2     ','*****', &
             1111,2111,3111,4111,4211,4212,4223/
!C---CHECK INPUT
      IM=IMODE
      IF (IM.GE.1.AND.IM.LE.NABBR) IM=IABBR(IM)
      TYPE=MOD(IM/1000,10)
      ANGL=MOD(IM/100,10)
      MONO=MOD(IM/10,10)
      RECO=MOD(IM,10)
      IF (NN.GT.NMAX) CALL KTWARN('KT-MAX',100,*999)
      IF (NN.LT.1) CALL KTWARN('KT-LT1',100,*999)
      IF (NN.LT.2.AND.TYPE.EQ.1) CALL KTWARN('KT-LT2',100,*999)
      IF (TYPE.LT.1.OR.TYPE.GT.4.OR.ANGL.LT.1.OR.ANGL.GT.4.OR. &
      MONO.LT.1.OR.MONO.GT.2.OR.RECO.LT.1.OR.RECO.GT.3) CALL KTWARN('KTCLUS',101,*999)
      u = output_unit ()
      IF (FIRST) THEN
        WRITE (u,'(/,1X,54(''*'')/A)') &
          ' KTCLUS: written by Mike Seymour, July 1992.'
        WRITE (u,'(A)') &
          ' Last modified November 2000.'
        WRITE (u,'(A)') &
          ' Please send comments or suggestions to Mike.Seymour@rl.ac.uk'
        WRITE (u,'(/A,I2,2A)') &
          ' Collision type =',TYPE,' = ',TITLE(TYPE,1)
        WRITE (u,'(A,I2,2A)') &

```



```

      '      Angular variable =', ANGL, ' = ', TITLE(ANGL,2)
WRITE (u, '(A,I2,2A)') &
      ' Monotonic definition =', MONO, ' = ', TITLE(MONO,3)
WRITE (u, '(A,I2,2A)') &
      ' Recombination scheme =', RECO, ' = ', TITLE(RECO,4)
IF (R.NE.1) THEN
  WRITE (u, '(A,F5.2)') &
    '      Radius parameter =', R
  IF (TYPE.NE.4) WRITE (u, '(A)') &
    ' R.NE.1 is strongly discouraged for this collision type!'
ENDIF
WRITE (u, '(1X,54('' '*''))')
FIRST=.FALSE.
ENDIF
!C---COPY PP TO P
N=NN
NUM=NN
CALL KTCOPY(PP,N,P,(RECO.NE.1))
ETOT=0
DO I=1,N
  ETOT=ETOT+P(4,I)
END DO
IF (ETOT.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTCLUS',102,*999)
IF (ECUT.EQ.0) THEN
  ETSQ=1/ETOT**2
ELSE
  ETSQ=1/ECUT**2
ENDIF
RSQ=R**2
!C---CALCULATE ALL PAIR KT's
DO I=1,N-1
  DO J=I+1,N
    KTP(J,I)=-1
    KTP(I,J)=KTPAIR(ANGL,P(1,I),P(1,J),KTP(J,I))
  END DO
END DO
!C---CALCULATE ALL SINGLE KT's
DO I=1,N
  KTS(I)=KTSING(ANGL,TYPE,P(1,I))
END DO
KTMAX=0
!C---MAIN LOOP
300 CONTINUE
!C---FIND MINIMUM MEMBER OF KTP
CALL KTPMIN(KTP,NMAX,N,IMIN,JMIN)
!C---FIND MINIMUM MEMBER OF KTS
CALL KTSMIN(KTS,NMAX,N,KMIN)
!C---STORE Y VALUE OF TRANSITION FROM N TO N-1 JETS
KTMIN=KTP(IMIN,JMIN)
KTTMP=RSQ*KTS(KMIN)
IF ((TYPE.GE.2.AND.TYPE.LE.4).AND. &
    (KTTMP.LE.KTMIN.OR.N.EQ.1)) &
  KTMIN=KTTMP
KT(N)=KTMIN

```

```

      Y(N)=KT(N)*ETSQ
!C---IF MONO.GT.1, SEQUENCE IS SUPPOSED TO BE MONOTONIC, IF NOT, WARN
      IF (KTMIN.LT.KTMAX.AND.MONO.GT.1) CALL KTWARN('KTCLUS',1,*999)
      IF (KTMIN.GE.KTMAX) KTMAX=KTMIN
!C---IF LOWEST KT IS TO A BEAM, THROW IT AWAY AND MOVE LAST ENTRY UP
      IF (KTMIN.EQ.KTMP) THEN
        CALL KTMOVE(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,N,KMIN,1)
!C---UPDATE HISTORY AND CROSS-REFERENCES
        HIST(N)=KMIN
        INJET(N)=KMIN
        DO I=N,NN
          IF (INJET(I).EQ.KMIN) THEN
            KTLAST(I)=KTMAX
            INJET(I)=0
          ELSEIF (INJET(I).EQ.N) THEN
            INJET(I)=KMIN
          ENDIF
        END DO
!C---OTHERWISE MERGE JETS IMIN AND JMIN AND MOVE LAST ENTRY UP
      ELSE
        CALL KTMERG(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,IMIN,JMIN,N,TYPE,ANGL,MONO,RECO)
        CALL KTMOVE(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,N,JMIN,1)
!C---UPDATE HISTORY AND CROSS-REFERENCES
        HIST(N)=IMIN*NMAX+JMIN
        INJET(N)=IMIN
        DO I=N,NN
          IF (INJET(I).EQ.JMIN) THEN
            INJET(I)=IMIN
          ELSEIF (INJET(I).EQ.N) THEN
            INJET(I)=JMIN
          ENDIF
        END DO
      ENDIF
!C---THATS ALL THERE IS TO IT
      N=N-1
      IF (N.GT.1 .OR. N.GT.0.AND.(TYPE.GE.2.AND.TYPE.LE.4)) GOTO 300
      IF (N.EQ.1) THEN
        KT(N)=1D20
        Y(N)=KT(N)*ETSQ
      ENDIF
      RETURN
999 RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTCLUR
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTYCUT(ECUT,NY,YCUT,NJET,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---COUNT THE NUMBER OF JETS AT EACH VALUE OF YCUT, FOR EVENT WHICH HAS
!C  ALREADY BEEN ANALYSED BY KTCLUS.
!C
!C  ECUT    = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  NY      = INPUT : NUMBER OF YCUT VALUES
!C  YCUT(J) = INPUT : Y VALUES AT WHICH NUMBERS OF JETS ARE COUNTED
!C  NJET(J) =OUTPUT : NUMBER OF JETS AT YCUT(J)
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT

```

```

!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NY,NJET(NY),NMAX,HIST,I,J,NUM
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION YCUT(NY),ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETSQ,ECUT,KTLAST, &
        ROUND
      PARAMETER (ROUND=0.99999D0)
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
        KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      IF (ETOT.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTYCUT',100,*999)
      IF (ECUT.EQ.0) THEN
        ETSQ=1/ETOT**2
      ELSE
        ETSQ=1/ECUT**2
      ENDIF
      DO I=1,NY
        NJET(I)=0
      END DO
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
        DO J=1,NY
          IF (NJET(J).EQ.0.AND.KT(I)*ETSQ.GE.ROUND*YCUT(J)) NJET(J)=I
        END DO
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTYCUT
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTYSUB(ECUT,NY,YCUT,YMAC,NSUB,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---COUNT THE NUMBER OF SUB-JETS AT EACH VALUE OF YCUT, FOR EVENT WHICH
!C  HAS ALREADY BEEN ANALYSED BY KTCLUS.
!C  REMEMBER THAT A SUB-JET IS DEFINED AS A JET AT Y=YCUT WHICH HAS NOT
!C  YET BEEN MERGED WITH THE BEAM AT Y=YMAC.
!C
!C  ECUT    = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  NY      = INPUT : NUMBER OF YCUT VALUES
!C  YCUT(J) = INPUT : Y VALUES AT WHICH NUMBERS OF SUB-JETS ARE COUNTED
!C  YMAC    = INPUT : Y VALUE USED TO DEFINE MACRO-JETS, TO DETERMINE
!C              WHICH JETS ARE SUB-JETS
!C  NSUB(J) =OUTPUT : NUMBER OF SUB-JETS AT YCUT(J)
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NY,NSUB(NY),NMAX,HIST,I,J,NUM
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION YCUT(NY),YMAC,ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETSQ,ECUT, &
        KTLAST,ROUND
      PARAMETER (ROUND=0.99999D0)
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
        KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM

```

```

      IF (ETOT.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTYSUB',100,*999)
      IF (ECUT.EQ.0) THEN
        ETSQ=1/ETOT**2
      ELSE
        ETSQ=1/ECUT**2
      ENDIF
      DO I=1,NY
        NSUB(I)=0
      END DO
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
        DO J=1,NY
          IF (NSUB(J).EQ.0.AND.KT(I)*ETSQ.GE.ROUND*YCUT(J)) NSUB(J)=I
          IF (NSUB(J).NE.0.AND.KTLAST(I)*ETSQ.LT.ROUND*YMAC) &
            NSUB(J)=NSUB(J)-1
        END DO
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTYSUB
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTBEAM(ECUT,Y,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---GIVE SAME INFORMATION AS LAST CALL TO KTCLUS EXCEPT THAT ONLY
!C  TRANSITIONS WHERE A JET WAS MERGED WITH THE BEAM JET ARE RECORDED
!C
!C  ECUT      = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  Y(J)      =OUTPUT : Y VALUE WHERE Jth HARDEST JET WAS MERGED WITH BEAM
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,HIST,NUM,I,J
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ECUT,ETSQ,Y(*),KTLAST
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
        KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      IF (ETOT.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTBEAM',100,*999)
      IF (ECUT.EQ.0) THEN
        ETSQ=1/ETOT**2
      ELSE
        ETSQ=1/ECUT**2
      ENDIF
      J=1
      DO I=1,NUM
        IF (HIST(I).LE.NMAX) THEN
          Y(J)=ETSQ*KT(I)
          J=J+1
        ENDIF
      END DO
      DO I=J,NUM
        Y(I)=0
      END DO
      RETURN

```

```

999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTBEAM
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTJOIN(ECUT,YMAC,Y,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---GIVE SAME INFORMATION AS LAST CALL TO KTCLUS EXCEPT THAT ONLY
!C TRANSITIONS WHERE TWO SUB-JETS WERE JOINED ARE RECORDED
!C REMEMBER THAT A SUB-JET IS DEFINED AS A JET AT Y=YCUT WHICH HAS NOT
!C YET BEEN MERGED WITH THE BEAM AT Y=YMAC.
!C
!C  ECUT    = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C  YMAC    = INPUT : VALUE OF Y USED TO DEFINE MACRO-JETS
!C  Y(J)    =OUTPUT : Y VALUE WHERE EVENT CHANGED FROM HAVING
!C                      N+J SUB-JETS TO HAVING N+J-1, WHERE N IS
!C                      THE NUMBER OF MACRO-JETS AT SCALE YMAC
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,HIST,NUM,I,J
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ECUT,ETSQ,Y(*),YMAC,KTLAST, &
      ROUND
      PARAMETER (ROUND=0.99999D0)
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      IF (ETOT.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTJOIN',100,*999)
      IF (ECUT.EQ.0) THEN
        ETSQ=1/ETOT**2
      ELSE
        ETSQ=1/ECUT**2
      ENDIF
      J=1
      DO I=1,NUM
        IF (HIST(I).GT.NMAX.AND.ETSQ*KTLAST(I).GE.ROUND*YMAC) THEN
          Y(J)=ETSQ*KT(I)
          J=J+1
        ENDIF
      END DO
      DO I=J,NUM
        Y(I)=0
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTJOIN
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTRCO(RECO,PP,NN,ECUT,YCUT,YMAC,PJET,JET,NJET,NSUB,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---RECONSTRUCT KINEMATICS OF JET SYSTEM, WHICH HAS ALREADY BEEN
!C ANALYSED BY KTCLUS. NOTE THAT NO CONSISTENCY CHECK IS MADE: USER
!C IS TRUSTED TO USE THE SAME PP VALUES AS FOR KTCLUS
!C
!C  RECO    = INPUT : RECOMBINATION SCHEME (NEED NOT BE SAME AS KTCLUS)

```

```

!C PP(I,J) = INPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth PARTICLE: I=1,4 => PX,PY,PZ,E
!C NN      = INPUT : NUMBER OF PARTICLES
!C ECUT    = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C YCUT    = INPUT : Y VALUE AT WHICH TO RECONSTRUCT JET MOMENTA
!C YMAC    = INPUT : Y VALUE USED TO DEFINE MACRO-JETS, TO DETERMINE
!C           WHICH JETS ARE SUB-JETS
!C PJET(I,J)=OUTPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth JET AT SCALE YCUT
!C JET(J)   =OUTPUT : THE MACRO-JET WHICH CONTAINS THE Jth JET,
!C           SET TO ZERO IF JET IS NOT A SUB-JET
!C NJET     =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF JETS
!C NSUB     =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF SUB-JETS (EQUAL TO THE NUMBER OF
!C           NON-ZERO ENTRIES IN JET())
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C NOTE THAT THE MOMENTA ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION,
!C AND ALL OTHER FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,RECO,NUM,N,NN,NJET,NSUB,JET(*),HIST,IMIN,JMIN,I,J
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION PP(4,*),PJET(4,*)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ECUT,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETOT,RSQ,ETSQ,YP,YP2,YP3,YP4,YP5,YP6,YP7,YP8,YP9,YP10,YP11,YP12,YP13,YP14,YP15,YP16,YP17,YP18,YP19,YP20,YP21,YP22,YP23,YP24,YP25,YP26,YP27,YP28,YP29,YP30,YP31,YP32,YP33,YP34,YP35,YP36,YP37,YP38,YP39,YP40,YP41,YP42,YP43,YP44,YP45,YP46,YP47,YP48,YP49,YP50,YP51,YP52,YP53,YP54,YP55,YP56,YP57,YP58,YP59,YP60,YP61,YP62,YP63,YP64,YP65,YP66,YP67,YP68,YP69,YP70,YP71,YP72,YP73,YP74,YP75,YP76,YP77,YP78,YP79,YP80,YP81,YP82,YP83,YP84,YP85,YP86,YP87,YP88,YP89,YP90,YP91,YP92,YP93,YP94,YP95,YP96,YP97,YP98,YP99,YP100,YP101,YP102,YP103,YP104,YP105,YP106,YP107,YP108,YP109,YP110,YP111,YP112,YP113,YP114,YP115,YP116,YP117,YP118,YP119,YP120,YP121,YP122,YP123,YP124,YP125,YP126,YP127,YP128,YP129,YP130,YP131,YP132,YP133,YP134,YP135,YP136,YP137,YP138,YP139,YP140,YP141,YP142,YP143,YP144,YP145,YP146,YP147,YP148,YP149,YP150,YP151,YP152,YP153,YP154,YP155,YP156,YP157,YP158,YP159,YP160,YP161,YP162,YP163,YP164,YP165,YP166,YP167,YP168,YP169,YP170,YP171,YP172,YP173,YP174,YP175,YP176,YP177,YP178,YP179,YP180,YP181,YP182,YP183,YP184,YP185,YP186,YP187,YP188,YP189,YP190,YP191,YP192,YP193,YP194,YP195,YP196,YP197,YP198,YP199,YP200,YP201,YP202,YP203,YP204,YP205,YP206,YP207,YP208,YP209,YP210,YP211,YP212,YP213,YP214,YP215,YP216,YP217,YP218,YP219,YP220,YP221,YP222,YP223,YP224,YP225,YP226,YP227,YP228,YP229,YP230,YP231,YP232,YP233,YP234,YP235,YP236,YP237,YP238,YP239,YP240,YP241,YP242,YP243,YP244,YP245,YP246,YP247,YP248,YP249,YP250,YP251,YP252,YP253,YP254,YP255,YP256,YP257,YP258,YP259,YP260,YP261,YP262,YP263,YP264,YP265,YP266,YP267,YP268,YP269,YP270,YP271,YP272,YP273,YP274,YP275,YP276,YP277,YP278,YP279,YP280,YP281,YP282,YP283,YP284,YP285,YP286,YP287,YP288,YP289,YP290,YP291,YP292,YP293,YP294,YP295,YP296,YP297,YP298,YP299,YP300,YP301,YP302,YP303,YP304,YP305,YP306,YP307,YP308,YP309,YP310,YP311,YP312,YP313,YP314,YP315,YP316,YP317,YP318,YP319,YP320,YP321,YP322,YP323,YP324,YP325,YP326,YP327,YP328,YP329,YP330,YP331,YP332,YP333,YP334,YP335,YP336,YP337,YP338,YP339,YP340,YP341,YP342,YP343,YP344,YP345,YP346,YP347,YP348,YP349,YP350,YP351,YP352,YP353,YP354,YP355,YP356,YP357,YP358,YP359,YP360,YP361,YP362,YP363,YP364,YP365,YP366,YP367,YP368,YP369,YP370,YP371,YP372,YP373,YP374,YP375,YP376,YP377,YP378,YP379,YP380,YP381,YP382,YP383,YP384,YP385,YP386,YP387,YP388,YP389,YP390,YP391,YP392,YP393,YP394,YP395,YP396,YP397,YP398,YP399,YP400,YP401,YP402,YP403,YP404,YP405,YP406,YP407,YP408,YP409,YP410,YP411,YP412,YP413,YP414,YP415,YP416,YP417,YP418,YP419,YP420,YP421,YP422,YP423,YP424,YP425,YP426,YP427,YP428,YP429,YP430,YP431,YP432,YP433,YP434,YP435,YP436,YP437,YP438,YP439,YP440,YP441,YP442,YP443,YP444,YP445,YP446,YP447,YP448,YP449,YP450,YP451,YP452,YP453,YP454,YP455,YP456,YP457,YP458,YP459,YP460,YP461,YP462,YP463,YP464,YP465,YP466,YP467,YP468,YP469,YP470,YP471,YP472,YP473,YP474,YP475,YP476,YP477,YP478,YP479,YP480,YP481,YP482,YP483,YP484,YP485,YP486,YP487,YP488,YP489,YP490,YP491,YP492,YP493,YP494,YP495,YP496,YP497,YP498,YP499,YP500,YP501,YP502,YP503,YP504,YP505,YP506,YP507,YP508,YP509,YP510,YP511,YP512,YP513,YP514,YP515,YP516,YP517,YP518,YP519,YP520,YP521,YP522,YP523,YP524,YP525,YP526,YP527,YP528,YP529,YP530,YP531,YP532,YP533,YP534,YP535,YP536,YP537,YP538,YP539,YP540,YP541,YP542,YP543,YP544,YP545,YP546,YP547,YP548,YP549,YP550,YP551,YP552,YP553,YP554,YP555,YP556,YP557,YP558,YP559,YP560,YP561,YP562,YP563,YP564,YP565,YP566,YP567,YP568,YP569,YP570,YP571,YP572,YP573,YP574,YP575,YP576,YP577,YP578,YP579,YP580,YP581,YP582,YP583,YP584,YP585,YP586,YP587,YP588,YP589,YP590,YP591,YP592,YP593,YP594,YP595,YP596,YP597,YP598,YP599,YP600,YP601,YP602,YP603,YP604,YP605,YP606,YP607,YP608,YP609,YP610,YP611,YP612,YP613,YP614,YP615,YP616,YP617,YP618,YP619,YP620,YP621,YP622,YP623,YP624,YP625,YP626,YP627,YP628,YP629,YP630,YP631,YP632,YP633,YP634,YP635,YP636,YP637,YP638,YP639,YP640,YP641,YP642,YP643,YP644,YP645,YP646,YP647,YP648,YP649,YP650,YP651,YP652,YP653,YP654,YP655,YP656,YP657,YP658,YP659,YP660,YP661,YP662,YP663,YP664,YP665,YP666,YP667,YP668,YP669,YP670,YP671,YP672,YP673,YP674,YP675,YP676,YP677,YP678,YP679,YP680,YP681,YP682,YP683,YP684,YP685,YP686,YP687,YP688,YP689,YP690,YP691,YP692,YP693,YP694,YP695,YP696,YP697,YP698,YP699,YP700,YP701,YP702,YP703,YP704,YP705,YP706,YP707,YP708,YP709,YP710,YP711,YP712,YP713,YP714,YP715,YP716,YP717,YP718,YP719,YP720,YP721,YP722,YP723,YP724,YP725,YP726,YP727,YP728,YP729,YP730,YP731,YP732,YP733,YP734,YP735,YP736,YP737,YP738,YP739,YP740,YP741,YP742,YP743,YP744,YP745,YP746,YP747,YP748,YP749,YP750,YP751,YP752,YP753,YP754,YP755,YP756,YP757,YP758,YP759,YP760,YP761,YP762,YP763,YP764,YP765,YP766,YP767,YP768,YP769,YP770,YP771,YP772,YP773,YP774,YP775,YP776,YP777,YP778,YP779,YP780,YP781,YP782,YP783,YP784,YP785,YP786,YP787,YP788,YP789,YP790,YP791,YP792,YP793,YP794,YP795,YP796,YP797,YP798,YP799,YP800,YP801,YP802,YP803,YP804,YP805,YP806,YP807,YP808,YP809,YP810,YP811,YP812,YP813,YP814,YP815,YP816,YP817,YP818,YP819,YP820,YP821,YP822,YP823,YP824,YP825,YP826,YP827,YP828,YP829,YP830,YP831,YP832,YP833,YP834,YP835,YP836,YP837,YP838,YP839,YP840,YP841,YP842,YP843,YP844,YP845,YP846,YP847,YP848,YP849,YP850,YP851,YP852,YP853,YP854,YP855,YP856,YP857,YP858,YP859,YP860,YP861,YP862,YP863,YP864,YP865,YP866,YP867,YP868,YP869,YP870,YP871,YP872,YP873,YP874,YP875,YP876,YP877,YP878,YP879,YP880,YP881,YP882,YP883,YP884,YP885,YP886,YP887,YP888,YP889,YP890,YP891,YP892,YP893,YP894,YP895,YP896,YP897,YP898,YP899,YP900,YP901,YP902,YP903,YP904,YP905,YP906,YP907,YP908,YP909,YP910,YP911,YP912,YP913,YP914,YP915,YP916,YP917,YP918,YP919,YP920,YP921,YP922,YP923,YP924,YP925,YP926,YP927,YP928,YP929,YP930,YP931,YP932,YP933,YP934,YP935,YP936,YP937,YP938,YP939,YP940,YP941,YP942,YP943,YP944,YP945,YP946,YP947,YP948,YP949,YP950,YP951,YP952,YP953,YP954,YP955,YP956,YP957,YP958,YP959,YP960,YP961,YP962,YP963,YP964,YP965,YP966,YP967,YP968,YP969,YP970,YP971,YP972,YP973,YP974,YP975,YP976,YP977,YP978,YP979,YP980,YP981,YP982,YP983,YP984,YP985,YP986,YP987,YP988,YP989,YP990,YP991,YP992,YP993,YP994,YP995,YP996,YP997,YP998,YP999,YP1000,YP1001,YP1002,YP1003,YP1004,YP1005,YP1006,YP1007,YP1008,YP1009,YP1010,YP1011,YP1012,YP1013,YP1014,YP1015,YP1016,YP1017,YP1018,YP1019,YP1020,YP1021,YP1022,YP1023,YP1024,YP1025,YP1026,YP1027,YP1028,YP1029,YP1030,YP1031,YP1032,YP1033,YP1034,YP1035,YP1036,YP1037,YP1038,YP1039,YP1040,YP1041,YP1042,YP1043,YP1044,YP1045,YP1046,YP1047,YP1048,YP1049,YP1050,YP1051,YP1052,YP1053,YP1054,YP1055,YP1056,YP1057,YP1058,YP1059,YP1060,YP1061,YP1062,YP1063,YP1064,YP1065,YP1066,YP1067,YP1068,YP1069,YP1070,YP1071,YP1072,YP1073,YP1074,YP1075,YP1076,YP1077,YP1078,YP1079,YP1080,YP1081,YP1082,YP1083,YP1084,YP1085,YP1086,YP1087,YP1088,YP1089,YP1090,YP1091,YP1092,YP1093,YP1094,YP1095,YP1096,YP1097,YP1098,YP1099,YP1100,YP1101,YP1102,YP1103,YP1104,YP1105,YP1106,YP1107,YP1108,YP1109,YP1110,YP1111,YP1112,YP1113,YP1114,YP1115,YP1116,YP1117,YP1118,YP1119,YP1120,YP1121,YP1122,YP1123,YP1124,YP1125,YP1126,YP1127,YP1128,YP1129,YP1130,YP1131,YP1132,YP1133,YP1134,YP1135,YP1136,YP1137,YP1138,YP1139,YP1140,YP1141,YP1142,YP1143,YP1144,YP1145,YP1146,YP1147,YP1148,YP1149,YP1150,YP1151,YP1152,YP1153,YP1154,YP1155,YP1156,YP1157,YP1158,YP1159,YP1160,YP1161,YP1162,YP1163,YP1164,YP1165,YP1166,YP1167,YP1168,YP1169,YP1170,YP1171,YP1172,YP1173,YP1174,YP1175,YP1176,YP1177,YP1178,YP1179,YP1180,YP1181,YP1182,YP1183,YP1184,YP1185,YP1186,YP1187,YP1188,YP1189,YP1190,YP1191,YP1192,YP1193,YP1194,YP1195,YP1196,YP1197,YP1198,YP1199,YP1200,YP1201,YP1202,YP1203,YP1204,YP1205,YP1206,YP1207,YP1208,YP1209,YP1210,YP1211,YP1212,YP1213,YP1214,YP1215,YP1216,YP1217,YP1218,YP1219,YP1220,YP1221,YP1222,YP1223,YP1224,YP1225,YP1226,YP1227,YP1228,YP1229,YP1230,YP1231,YP1232,YP1233,YP1234,YP1235,YP1236,YP1237,YP1238,YP1239,YP1240,YP1241,YP1242,YP1243,YP1244,YP1245,YP1246,YP1247,YP1248,YP1249,YP1250,YP1251,YP1252,YP1253,YP1254,YP1255,YP1256,YP1257,YP1258,YP1259,YP1260,YP1261,YP1262,YP1263,YP1264,YP1265,YP1266,YP1267,YP1268,YP1269,YP1270,YP1271,YP1272,YP1273,YP1274,YP1275,YP1276,YP1277,YP1278,YP1279,YP1280,YP1281,YP1282,YP1283,YP1284,YP1285,YP1286,YP1287,YP1288,YP1289,YP1290,YP1291,YP1292,YP1293,YP1294,YP1295,YP1296,YP1297,YP1298,YP1299,YP1300,YP1301,YP1302,YP1303,YP1304,YP1305,YP1306,YP1307,YP1308,YP1309,YP1310,YP1311,YP1312,YP1313,YP1314,YP1315,YP1316,YP1317,YP1318,YP1319,YP1320,YP1321,YP1322,YP1323,YP1324,YP1325,YP1326,YP1327,YP1328,YP1329,YP1330,YP1331,YP1332,YP1333,YP1334,YP1335,YP1336,YP1337,YP1338,YP1339,YP1340,YP1341,YP1342,YP1343,YP1344,YP1345,YP1346,YP1347,YP1348,YP1349,YP1350,YP1351,YP1352,YP1353,YP1354,YP1355,YP1356,YP1357,YP1358,YP1359,YP1360,YP1361,YP1362,YP1363,YP1364,YP1365,YP1366,YP1367,YP1368,YP1369,YP1370,YP1371,YP1372,YP1373,YP1374,YP1375,YP1376,YP1377,YP1378,YP1379,YP1380,YP1381,YP1382,YP1383,YP1384,YP1385,YP1386,YP1387,YP1388,YP1389,YP1390,YP1391,YP1392,YP1393,YP1394,YP1395,YP1396,YP1397,YP1398,YP1399,YP1400,YP1401,YP1402,YP1403,YP1404,YP1405,YP1406,YP1407,YP1408,YP1409,YP1410,YP1411,YP1412,YP1413,YP1414,YP1415,YP1416,YP1417,YP1418,YP1419,YP1420,YP1421,YP1422,YP1423,YP1424,YP1425,YP1426,YP1427,YP1428,YP1429,YP1430,YP1431,YP1432,YP1433,YP1434,YP1435,YP1436,YP1437,YP1438,YP1439,YP1440,YP1441,YP1442,YP1443,YP1444,YP1445,YP1446,YP1447,YP1448,YP1449,YP1450,YP1451,YP1452,YP1453,YP1454,YP1455,YP1456,YP1457,YP1458,YP1459,YP1460,YP1461,YP1462,YP1463,YP1464,YP1465,YP1466,YP1467,YP1468,YP1469,YP1470,YP1471,YP1472,YP1473,YP1474,YP1475,YP1476,YP1477,YP1478,YP1479,YP1480,YP1481,YP1482,YP1483,YP1484,YP1485,YP1486,YP1487,YP1488,YP1489,YP1490,YP1491,YP1492,YP1493,YP1494,YP1495,YP1496,YP1497,YP1498,YP1499,YP1500,YP1501,YP1502,YP1503,YP1504,YP1505,YP1506,YP1507,YP1508,YP1509,YP1510,YP1511,YP1512,YP1513,YP1514,YP1515,YP1516,YP1517,YP1518,YP1519,YP1520,YP1521,YP1522,YP1523,YP1524,YP1525,YP1526,YP1527,YP1528,YP1529,YP1530,YP1531,YP1532,YP1533,YP1534,YP1535,YP1536,YP1537,YP1538,YP1539,YP1540,YP1541,YP1542,YP1543,YP1544,YP1545,YP1546,YP1547,YP1548,YP1549,YP1550,YP1551,YP1552,YP1553,YP1554,YP1555,YP1556,YP1557,YP1558,YP1559,YP1560,YP1561,YP1562,YP1563,YP1564,YP1565,YP1566,YP1567,YP1568,YP1569,YP1570,YP1571,YP1572,YP1573,YP1574,YP1575,YP1576,YP1577,YP1578,YP1579,YP1580,YP1581,YP1582,YP1583,YP1584,YP1585,YP1586,YP1587,YP1588,YP1589,YP1590,YP1591,YP1592,YP1593,YP1594,YP1595,YP1596,YP1597,YP1598,YP1599,YP1600,YP1601,YP1602,YP1603,YP1604,YP1605,YP1606,YP1607,YP1608,YP1609,YP1610,YP1611,YP1612,YP1613,YP1614,YP1615,YP1616,YP1617,YP1618,YP1619,YP1620,YP1621,YP1622,YP1623,YP1624,YP1625,YP1626,YP1627,YP1628,YP1629,YP1630,YP1631,YP1632,YP1633,YP1634,YP1635,YP1636,YP1637,YP1638,YP1639,YP1640,YP1641,YP1642,YP1643,YP1644,YP1645,YP1646,YP1647,YP1648,YP1649,YP1650,YP1651,YP1652,YP1653,YP1654,YP1655,YP1656,YP1657,YP1658,YP1659,YP1660,YP1661,YP1662,YP1663,YP1664,YP1665,YP1666,YP1667,YP1668,YP1669,YP1670,YP1671,YP1672,YP1673,YP1674,YP1675,YP1676,YP1677,YP1678,YP1679,YP1680,YP1681,YP1682,YP1683,YP1684,YP1685,YP1686,YP1687,YP1688,YP1689,YP1690,YP1691,YP1692,YP1693,YP1694,YP1695,YP1696,YP1697,YP1698,YP1699,YP1700,YP1701,YP1702,YP1703,YP1704,YP1705,YP1706,YP1707,YP1708,YP1709,YP1710,YP1711,YP1712,YP1713,YP1714,YP1715,YP1716,YP1717,YP1718,YP1719,YP1720,YP1721,YP1722,YP1723,YP1724,YP1725,YP1726,YP1727,YP1728,YP1729,YP1730,YP1731,YP1732,YP1733,YP1734,YP1735,YP1736,YP1737,YP1738,YP1739,YP1740,YP1741,YP1742,YP1743,YP1744,YP1745,YP1746,YP1747,YP1748,YP1749,YP1750,YP1751,YP1752,YP1753,YP1754,YP1755,YP1756,YP1757,YP1758,YP1759,YP1760,YP1761,YP1762,YP1763,YP1764,YP1765,YP1766,YP1767,YP1768,YP1769,YP1770,YP1771,YP1772,YP1773,YP1774,YP1775,YP1776,YP1777,YP1778,YP1779,YP1780,YP1781,YP1782,YP1783,YP1784,YP1785,YP1786,YP1787,YP1788,YP1789,YP1790,YP1791,YP1792,YP1793,YP1794,YP1795,YP1796,YP1797,YP1798,YP1799,YP1800,YP1801,YP1802,YP1803,YP1804,YP1805,YP1806,YP1807,YP1808,YP1809,YP1810,YP1811,YP1812,YP1813,YP1814,YP1815,YP1816,YP1817,YP1818,YP1819,YP1820,YP1821,YP1822,YP1823,YP1824,YP1825,YP1826,YP1827,YP1828,YP1829,YP1830,YP1831,YP1832,YP1833,YP1834,YP1835,YP1836,YP1837,YP1838,YP1839,YP1840,YP1841,YP1842,YP1843,YP1844,YP1845,YP1846,YP1847,YP1848,YP1849,YP1850,YP1851,YP1852,YP1853,YP1854,YP1855,YP1856,YP1857,YP1858,YP1859,YP1860,YP1861,YP1862,YP1863,YP1864,YP1865,YP1866,YP1867,YP1868,YP1869,YP1870,YP1871,YP1872,YP1873,YP1874,YP1875,YP1876,YP1877,YP1878,YP1879,YP1880,YP1881,YP1882,YP1883,YP1884,YP1885,YP1886,YP1887,YP1888,YP1889,YP1890,YP1891,YP1892,YP1893,YP1894,YP1895,YP1896,YP1897,YP1898,YP1899,YP1900,YP1901,YP1902,YP1903,YP1904,YP1905,YP1906,YP1907,YP1908,YP1909,YP1910,YP1911,YP1912,YP1913,YP1914,YP1915,YP1916,YP1917,YP1918,YP1919,YP1920,YP1921,YP1922,YP1923,YP1924,YP1925,YP1926,YP1927,YP1928,YP1929,YP1930,YP1931,YP1932,YP1933,YP1934,YP1935,YP1936,YP1937,YP1938,YP1939,YP1940,YP1941,YP1942,YP1943,YP1944,YP1945,YP1946,YP1947,YP1948,YP1949,YP1950,YP1951,YP1952,YP1953,YP1954,YP1955,YP1956,YP1957,YP1958,YP1959,YP1960,YP1961,YP1962,YP1963,YP1964,YP1965,YP1966,YP1967,YP1968,YP1969,YP1970,YP1971,YP1972,YP1973,YP1974,YP1975,YP1976,YP1977,YP1978,YP1979,YP1980,YP1981,YP1982,YP1983,YP1984,YP1985,YP1986,YP1987,YP1988,YP1989,YP1990,YP1991,YP1992,YP1993,YP1994,YP1995,YP1996,YP1997,YP1998,YP1999,YP2000,YP2001,YP2002,YP2003,YP2004,YP2005,YP2006,YP2007,YP2008,YP2009,YP2010,YP2011,YP2012,YP2013,YP2014,YP2015,YP2016,YP2017,YP2018,YP2019,YP2020,YP2021,YP2022,YP2023,YP2024,YP2025,YP2026,YP2027,YP2028,YP2029,YP2030,YP2031,YP2032,YP2033,YP2034,YP2035,YP2036,YP2037,YP2038,YP2039,YP2040,YP2041,YP2042,YP2043,YP2044,YP2045,YP2046,YP2047,YP2048,YP2049,YP2050,YP2051,YP2052,YP2053,YP2054,YP2055,YP2056,YP2057,YP2058,YP2059,YP2060,YP2061,YP2062,YP2063,YP2064,YP2065,YP2066,YP2067,YP2068,YP2069,YP2070,YP2071,YP2072,YP2073,YP2074,YP2075,YP2076,YP2077,YP2078,YP2079,YP2080,YP2081,YP2082,YP2083,YP2084,YP2085,YP2086,YP2087,YP2088,YP2089,YP2090,YP2091,YP2092,YP2093,YP2094,YP2095,YP2096,YP2097,YP2098,YP2099,YP2100,YP2101,YP2102,YP2103,YP2104,YP2105,YP2106,YP2107,YP2108,YP2109,YP2110,YP2111,YP2112,YP2113,YP2114,YP2115,YP2116,YP2117,YP2118,YP2119,YP2120,YP2121,YP2122,YP2123,YP2124,YP2125,YP2126,YP2127,YP2128,YP2129,YP2130,YP2131,YP2132,YP2133,YP2134,YP2135,YP2136,YP2137,YP2138,YP2139,YP2140,YP2141,YP2142,YP2143,YP2144,YP2145,YP2146,YP2147,YP2148,YP2149,YP2150,YP2151,YP2152,YP2153,YP2154,YP2155,YP2156,YP2157,YP2158,YP2159,YP2160,YP2161,YP2162,YP2163,YP2164,YP2165,YP2166,YP2167,YP2168,YP2169,YP2170,YP2171,YP2172,YP2173,YP2174,YP2175,YP2176,YP2177,YP2178,YP
```

```

!C---IF YCUT IS TOO LARGE THERE ARE NO JETS
      NJET=N
      NSUB=N
      IF (N.EQ.0) RETURN
!C---SET UP OUTPUT MOMENTA
      DO I=1,NJET
        IF (RECO.EQ.1) THEN
          DO J=1,4
            PJET(J,I)=P(J,I)
          END DO
        ELSE
          PJET(1,I)=P(6,I)*COS(P(8,I))
          PJET(2,I)=P(6,I)*SIN(P(8,I))
          PJET(3,I)=P(6,I)*SINH(P(7,I))
          PJET(4,I)=P(6,I)*COSH(P(7,I))
        ENDIF
        JET(I)=I
      END DO
!C---KEEP MERGING UNTIL YMAC TO FIND THE FATE OF EACH JET
300   IF (ETSQ*KT(N).LT.ROUND*YMAC) THEN
      IF (HIST(N).LE.NMAX) THEN
        IMIN=0
        JMIN=HIST(N)
        NSUB=NSUB-1
      ELSE
        IMIN=HIST(N)/NMAX
        JMIN=HIST(N)-IMIN*NMAX
        IF (ETSQ*KTLAST(N).LT.ROUND*YMAC) NSUB=NSUB-1
      ENDIF
      DO I=1,NJET
        IF (JET(I).EQ.JMIN) JET(I)=IMIN
        IF (JET(I).EQ.N) JET(I)=JMIN
      END DO
      N=N-1
      IF (N.GT.0) GOTO 300
    ENDIF
    RETURN
999   RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTRECO
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTINCL(RECO,PP,NN,PJET,JET,NJET,*)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---RECONSTRUCT KINEMATICS OF JET SYSTEM, WHICH HAS ALREADY BEEN
!C ANALYSED BY KTCLUS ACCORDING TO THE INCLUSIVE JET DEFINITION. NOTE
!C THAT NO CONSISTENCY CHECK IS MADE: USER IS TRUSTED TO USE THE SAME
!C PP VALUES AS FOR KTCLUS
!C
!C RECO      = INPUT : RECOMBINATION SCHEME (NEED NOT BE SAME AS KTCLUS)
!C PP(I,J)   = INPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth PARTICLE: I=1,4 => PX,PY,PZ,E
!C NN        = INPUT : NUMBER OF PARTICLES
!C PJET(I,J)=OUTPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth JET AT SCALE YCUT
!C JET(J)    =OUTPUT : THE JET WHICH CONTAINS THE Jth PARTICLE
!C NJET      =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF JETS
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT

```

```

!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT THE MOMENTA ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION,
!C  AND ALL OTHER FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,RECO,NUM,N,NN,NJET,JET(*),HIST,IMIN,JMIN,I,J
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION PP(4,*),PJET(4,*)
      DOUBLE PRECISION P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETOT,RSQ,KTLAST
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
            KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
!C---CHECK INPUT
      IF (RECO.LT.1.OR.RECO.GT.3) CALL KTWARN('KTINCL',100,*999)
!C---COPY PP TO P
      N=NN
      IF (NUM.NE.NN) CALL KTWARN('KTINCL',101,*999)
      CALL KTCOPY(PP,N,P,(RECO.NE.1))
!C---INITIALLY EVERY PARTICLE IS IN ITS OWN JET
      DO I=1,NN
        JET(I)=I
      END DO
!C---KEEP MERGING TO THE BITTER END
      NJET=0
200  IF (N.GT.0) THEN
      IF (HIST(N).LE.NMAX) THEN
        IMIN=0
        JMIN=HIST(N)
        NJET=NJET+1
        IF (RECO.EQ.1) THEN
          DO J=1,4
            PJET(J,NJET)=P(J,JMIN)
          END DO
        ELSE
          PJET(1,NJET)=P(6,JMIN)*COS(P(8,JMIN))
          PJET(2,NJET)=P(6,JMIN)*SIN(P(8,JMIN))
          PJET(3,NJET)=P(6,JMIN)*SINH(P(7,JMIN))
          PJET(4,NJET)=P(6,JMIN)*COSH(P(7,JMIN))
        ENDIF
        CALL KTMOVE(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,N,JMIN,0)
      ELSE
        IMIN=HIST(N)/NMAX
        JMIN=HIST(N)-IMIN*NMAX
        CALL KTMERG(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,IMIN,JMIN,N,0,0,0,RECO)
        CALL KTMOVE(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,N,JMIN,0)
      ENDIF
      DO I=1,NN
        IF (JET(I).EQ.JMIN) JET(I)=IMIN
        IF (JET(I).EQ.N) JET(I)=JMIN
        IF (JET(I).EQ.0) JET(I)=-NJET
      END DO
      N=N-1
      GOTO 200
    ENDIF
!C---FINALLY EVERY PARTICLE MUST BE IN AN INCLUSIVE JET

```



```

      DO I=1,NN
!C---IF THERE ARE ANY UNASSIGNED PARTICLES SOMETHING MUST HAVE GONE WRONG
      IF (JET(I).GE.0) CALL KTWARN('KTINCL',102,*999)
      JET(I)=-JET(I)
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTINCL
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTISUB(N,NY,YCUT,NSUB,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---COUNT THE NUMBER OF SUB-JETS IN THE Nth INCLUSIVE JET OF AN EVENT
!C  THAT HAS ALREADY BEEN ANALYSED BY KTCLUS.
!C
!C  N          = INPUT : WHICH INCLUSIVE JET TO USE
!C  NY         = INPUT : NUMBER OF YCUT VALUES
!C  YCUT(J)    = INPUT : Y VALUES AT WHICH NUMBERS OF SUB-JETS ARE COUNTED
!C  NSUB(J)    =OUTPUT : NUMBER OF SUB-JETS AT YCUT(J)
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER N,NY,NSUB(NY),NMAX,HIST,I,J,NUM,NM
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION YCUT(NY),ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,KTLAST,ROUND,EPS
      PARAMETER (ROUND=0.99999D0)
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      DATA EPS/1D-6/
      DO I=1,NY
      NSUB(I)=0
      END DO
!C---FIND WHICH MERGING CORRESPONDS TO THE NTH INCLUSIVE JET
      NM=0
      J=0
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
      IF (HIST(I).LE.NMAX) J=J+1
      IF (J.EQ.N) THEN
      NM=I
      GOTO 120
      ENDIF
      END DO
120  CONTINUE
!C---GIVE UP IF THERE ARE LESS THAN N INCLUSIVE JETS
      IF (NM.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTISUB',100,*999)
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
      DO J=1,NY
      IF (NSUB(J).EQ.0.AND.RSQ*KT(I).GE.ROUND*YCUT(J)*KT(NM)) &
      NSUB(J)=I
      IF (NSUB(J).NE.0.AND.ABS(KTLAST(I)-KTLAST(NM)).GT.EPS) &
      NSUB(J)=NSUB(J)-1
      END DO
      END DO

```

```

      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTISUB
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTIJOI(N,Y,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---GIVE SAME INFORMATION AS LAST CALL TO KTCLUS EXCEPT THAT ONLY
!C MERGES OF TWO SUB-JETS INSIDE THE Nth INCLUSIVE JET ARE RECORDED
!C
!C N      = INPUT : WHICH INCLUSIVE JET TO USE
!C Y(J)   =OUTPUT : Y VALUE WHERE JET CHANGED FROM HAVING
!C                   J+1 SUB-JETS TO HAVING J
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,HIST,NUM,I,J,N,NM
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ETOT,RSQ,P,KT,KTP,KTS,Y(*),KTLAST,EPS
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      DATA EPS/1D-6/
!C---FIND WHICH MERGING CORRESPONDS TO THE NTH INCLUSIVE JET
      NM=0
      J=0
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
        IF (HIST(I).LE.NMAX) J=J+1
        IF (J.EQ.N) THEN
          NM=I
          GOTO 105
        ENDIF
      END DO
105  CONTINUE
!C---GIVE UP IF THERE ARE LESS THAN N INCLUSIVE JETS
      IF (NM.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTIJOI',100,*999)
      J=1
      DO I=1,NUM
        IF (HIST(I).GT.NMAX.AND.ABS(KTLAST(I)-KTLAST(NM)).LT.EPS) THEN
          Y(J)=RSQ*KT(I)/KT(NM)
          J=J+1
        ENDIF
      END DO
      DO I=J,NUM
        Y(I)=0
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTIJOI
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTIREC(RECO,PP,NN,N,YCUT,PSUB,NSUB,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---RECONSTRUCT KINEMATICS OF SUB-JET SYSTEM IN THE Nth INCLUSIVE JET
!C OF AN EVENT THAT HAS ALREADY BEEN ANALYSED BY KTCLUS

```

```

!C
!C RECO      = INPUT : RECOMBINATION SCHEME (NEED NOT BE SAME AS KTCLUS)
!C PP(I,J)   = INPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth PARTICLE: I=1,4 => PX,PY,PZ,E
!C NN        = INPUT : NUMBER OF PARTICLES
!C N         = INPUT : WHICH INCLUSIVE JET TO USE
!C YCUT      = INPUT : Y VALUE AT WHICH TO RECONSTRUCT JET MOMENTA
!C PSUB(I,J)=OUTPUT : 4-MOMENTUM OF Jth SUB-JET AT SCALE YCUT
!C NSUB      =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF SUB-JETS
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C NOTE THAT THE MOMENTA ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION,
!C AND ALL OTHER FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,RECO,NUM,NN,NJET,NSUB,JET,HIST,I,J,N,NM
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION PP(4,*),PSUB(4,*)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ECUT,P,KT,KTP,KTS,ETOT,RSQ,YPAC,YMAC,KTLAST
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      DIMENSION JET(NMAX)
!C---FIND WHICH MERGING CORRESPONDS TO THE NTH INCLUSIVE JET
      NM=0
      J=0
      DO I=NUM,1,-1
        IF (HIST(I).LE.NMAX) J=J+1
        IF (J.EQ.N) THEN
          NM=I
          GOTO 110
        ENDIF
      END DO
110  CONTINUE
!C---GIVE UP IF THERE ARE LESS THAN N INCLUSIVE JETS
      IF (NM.EQ.0) CALL KTWARN('KTIREC',102,*999)
!C---RECONSTRUCT THE JETS AT THE APPROPRIATE SCALE
      ECUT=SQRT(KT(NM)/RSQ)
      YMAC=RSQ
      CALL KTRECO(RECO,PP,NN,ECUT,YPAC,YMAC,PSUB,JET,NJET,NSUB,*999)
!C---GET RID OF THE ONES THAT DO NOT END UP IN THE JET WE WANT
      NSUB=0
      DO I=1,NJET
        IF (JET(I).EQ.HIST(NM)) THEN
          NSUB=NSUB+1
          DO J=1,4
            PSUB(J,NSUB)=PSUB(J,I)
          END DO
        ENDIF
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTIREC
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTWICH(ECUT,YPAC,JET,NJET,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE

```

```

!C---GIVE A LIST OF WHICH JET EACH ORIGINAL PARTICLE ENDED UP IN AT SCALE
!C YCUT, TOGETHER WITH THE NUMBER OF JETS AT THAT SCALE.
!C
!C ECUT      = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C YCUT      = INPUT : Y VALUE AT WHICH TO DEFINE JETS
!C JET(J)    =OUTPUT : THE JET WHICH CONTAINS THE Jth PARTICLE,
!C              SET TO ZERO IF IT WAS PUT INTO THE BEAM JETS
!C NJET      =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF JETS AT SCALE YCUT (SO JET()
!C              ENTRIES WILL BE IN THE RANGE 0 -> NJET)
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER JET(*),NJET,NTEMP
      DOUBLE PRECISION ECUT,YCUT
      CALL KTWCHS(ECUT,YCUT,YCUT,JET,NJET,NTEMP,*999)
      RETURN
999 RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTWICH
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTWCHS(ECUT,YCUT,YMAC,JET,NJET,NSUB,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---GIVE A LIST OF WHICH SUB-JET EACH ORIGINAL PARTICLE ENDED UP IN AT
!C SCALE YCUT, WITH MACRO-JET SCALE YMAC, TOGETHER WITH THE NUMBER OF
!C JETS AT SCALE YCUT AND THE NUMBER OF THEM WHICH ARE SUB-JETS.
!C
!C ECUT      = INPUT : DENOMINATOR OF KT MEASURE. IF ZERO, ETOT IS USED
!C YCUT      = INPUT : Y VALUE AT WHICH TO DEFINE JETS
!C YMAC      = INPUT : Y VALUE AT WHICH TO DEFINE MACRO-JETS
!C JET(J)    =OUTPUT : THE JET WHICH CONTAINS THE Jth PARTICLE,
!C              SET TO ZERO IF IT WAS PUT INTO THE BEAM JETS
!C NJET      =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF JETS AT SCALE YCUT (SO JET()
!C              ENTRIES WILL BE IN THE RANGE 0 -> NJET)
!C NSUB      =OUTPUT : THE NUMBER OF SUB-JETS AT SCALE YCUT, WITH
!C              MACRO-JETS DEFINED AT SCALE YMAC (SO ONLY NSUB
!C              OF THE JETS 1 -> NJET WILL APPEAR IN JET())
!C LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C NOTE THAT ALL FLOATING POINT VARIABLES ARE DECLARED DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
      INTEGER NMAX,JET(*),NJET,NSUB,HIST,NUM,I,J,JSUB
      PARAMETER (NMAX=512)
      DOUBLE PRECISION P1(4,NMAX),P2(4,NMAX)
      DOUBLE PRECISION ECUT,YCUT,YMAC,ZERO,ETOT,RSQ,P,KTP,KTS,KT,KTLAST
      COMMON /KTCOMM/ETOT,RSQ,P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX), &
      KT(NMAX),KTLAST(NMAX),HIST(NMAX),NUM
      DIMENSION JSUB(NMAX)
!C---THE MOMENTA HAVE TO BEEN GIVEN LEGAL VALUES,
!C EVEN THOUGH THEY WILL NEVER BE USED
      DATA ((P1(J,I),I=1,NMAX),J=1,4),ZERO &
      /NMAX*1,NMAX*0,NMAX*0,NMAX*1,0/
!C---FIRST GET A LIST OF WHICH PARTICLE IS IN WHICH JET AT YCUT

```

```

      CALL KTRECO(1,P1,NUM,ECUT,ZERO,YCUT,P2,JET,NJET,NSUB,*999)
!C---THEN FIND OUT WHICH JETS ARE SUBJETS
      CALL KTRECO(1,P1,NUM,ECUT,YCUT,YMAC,P2,JSUB,NJET,NSUB,*999)
!C---AND MODIFY JET() ACCORDINGLY
      DO I=1,NUM
        IF (JET(I).NE.0) THEN
          IF (JSUB(JET(I)).EQ.0) JET(I)=0
        ENDIF
      END DO
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTWCHS
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTFRAM(IOPT,CMF,SIGN,Z,XZ,N,P,Q,*)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---BOOST PARTICLES IN P TO/FROM FRAME GIVEN BY CMF, Z, XZ.
!C---IN THIS FRAME CMZ IS STATIONARY,
!C          Z IS ALONG THE (SIGN)Z-AXIS (SIGN=+ OR -)
!C          XZ IS IN THE X-Z PLANE (WITH POSITIVE X COMPONENT)
!C---IF Z HAS LENGTH ZERO, OR SIGN=0, NO ROTATION IS PERFORMED
!C---IF XZ HAS ZERO COMPONENT PERPENDICULAR TO Z IN THAT FRAME,
!C  NO AZIMUTHAL ROTATION IS PERFORMED
!C
!C  IOPT   = INPUT   : 0=TO FRAME, 1=FROM FRAME
!C  CMF(I) = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM WHICH IS STATIONARY IN THE FRAME
!C  SIGN   = INPUT   : DIRECTION OF Z IN THE FRAME, NOTE THAT
!C                   ONLY ITS SIGN IS USED, NOT ITS MAGNITUDE
!C  Z(I)   = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM WHICH LIES ON THE (SIGN)Z-AXIS
!C  XZ(I)  = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM WHICH LIES IN THE X-Z PLANE
!C  N      = INPUT   : NUMBER OF PARTICLES IN P
!C  P(I,J) = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM OF JTH PARTICLE BEFORE
!C  Q(I,J) = OUTPUT  : 4-MOMENTUM OF JTH PARTICLE AFTER
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL MOMENTA ARE DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
!C  NOTE THAT IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH P=Q
!C
      INTEGER IOPT,I,N
      DOUBLE PRECISION CMF(4),SIGN,Z(4),XZ(4),P(4,N),Q(4,N), &
        R(4,4),NEW(4),OLD(4)
      IF (IOPT.LT.0.OR.IOPT.GT.1) CALL KTWARN('KTFRAM',200,*999)
!C---FIND BOOST TO GET THERE FROM LAB
      CALL KTUNIT(R)
      CALL KTLBST(0,R,CMF,*999)
!C---FIND ROTATION TO PUT BOOSTED Z ON THE (SIGN)Z AXIS
      IF (SIGN.NE.0) THEN
        CALL KTMUL(R,Z,OLD)
        IF (OLD(1).NE.0.OR.OLD(2).NE.0.OR.OLD(3).NE.0) THEN
          NEW(1)=0
          NEW(2)=0
          NEW(3)=SIGN
          NEW(4)=ABS(SIGN)
        ENDIF
      ENDIF

```

```

      CALL KTRROT(R,OLD,NEW,*999)
!C---FIND ROTATION TO PUT BOOSTED AND ROTATED XZ INTO X-Z PLANE
      CALL KTMUL(R,XZ,OLD)
      IF (OLD(1).NE.0.OR.OLD(2).NE.0) THEN
        NEW(1)=1
        NEW(2)=0
        NEW(3)=0
        NEW(4)=1
        OLD(3)=0
!C---NOTE THAT A POTENTIALLY AWKWARD SPECIAL CASE IS AVERTED, BECAUSE IF
!C  OLD AND NEW ARE EXACTLY BACK-TO-BACK, THE ROTATION AXIS IS UNDEFINED
!C  BUT IN THAT CASE KTRROT WILL USE THE Z AXIS, AS REQUIRED
      CALL KTRROT(R,OLD,NEW,*999)
    ENDIF
  ENDIF
  ENDIF
!C---INVERT THE TRANSFORMATION IF NECESSARY
  IF (IOPT.EQ.1) CALL KTINVT(R,R)
!C---APPLY THE RESULT TO ALL THE VECTORS
  DO I=1,N
    CALL KTMUL(R,P(1,I),Q(1,I))
  END DO
  RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTFRAM
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTBREI(IOPT,PLEP,PHAD,POUT,N,P,Q,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---BOOST PARTICLES IN P TO/FROM BREIT FRAME
!C
!C  IOPT    = INPUT   : 0/2=TO BREIT FRAME, 1/3=FROM BREIT FRAME
!C                      0/1=NO AZIMUTHAL ROTATION AFTERWARDS
!C                      2/3=LEPTON PLANE ROTATED INTO THE X-Z PLANE
!C  PLEP    = INPUT   : MOMENTUM OF INCOMING LEPTON IN +Z DIRECTION
!C  PHAD    = INPUT   : MOMENTUM OF INCOMING HADRON IN +Z DIRECTION
!C  POUT(I) = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM OF OUTGOING LEPTON
!C  N       = INPUT   : NUMBER OF PARTICLES IN P
!C  P(I,J)  = INPUT   : 4-MOMENTUM OF JTH PARTICLE BEFORE
!C  Q(I,J)  = OUTPUT  : 4-MOMENTUM OF JTH PARTICLE AFTER
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF FOR ANY REASON THE EVENT
!C  COULD NOT BE PROCESSED (MOST LIKELY DUE TO PARTICLES HAVING SMALLER
!C  ENERGY THAN MOMENTUM)
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL MOMENTA ARE DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
!C  NOTE THAT IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH P=Q
!C
      INTEGER IOPT,N
      DOUBLE PRECISION PLEP,PHAD,POUT(4),P(4,N),Q(4,N), &
        CMF(4),Z(4),XZ(4),DOT,QDQ
!C---CHECK INPUT
      IF (IOPT.LT.0.OR.IOPT.GT.3) CALL KTWARN('KTBREI',200,*999)
!C---FIND 4-MOMENTUM OF BREIT FRAME (TIMES AN ARBITRARY FACTOR)
      DOT=ABS(PHAD)*(ABS(PLEP)-POUT(4))-PHAD*(PLEP-POUT(3))

```

```

      QDQ=(ABS(PLEP)-POUT(4))**2-(PLEP-POUT(3))**2-POUT(2)**2-POUT(1)**2
      CMF(1)=DOT*(          -POUT(1))
      CMF(2)=DOT*(          -POUT(2))
      CMF(3)=DOT*(      PLEP -POUT(3))-QDQ*      PHAD
      CMF(4)=DOT*(ABS(PLEP)-POUT(4))-QDQ*ABS(PHAD)
!C---FIND ROTATION TO PUT INCOMING HADRON BACK ON Z-AXIS
      Z(1)=0
      Z(2)=0
      Z(3)=PHAD
      Z(4)=ABS(PHAD)
      XZ(1)=0
      XZ(2)=0
      XZ(3)=0
      XZ(4)=0
!C---DO THE BOOST
      IF (IOPT.LE.1) THEN
        CALL KTFRAM(IOPT,CMF,PHAD,Z,XZ,N,P,Q,*999)
      ELSE
        CALL KTFRAM(IOPT-2,CMF,PHAD,Z,POUT,N,P,Q,*999)
      ENDIF
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTBREI
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTHADR(IOPT,PLEP,PHAD,POUT,N,P,Q,*)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---BOOST PARTICLES IN P TO/FROM HADRONIC CMF
!C
!C  ARGUMENTS ARE EXACTLY AS FOR KTBREI
!C
!C  NOTE THAT ALL MOMENTA ARE DOUBLE PRECISION
!C
!C  NOTE THAT IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH P=Q
!C
      INTEGER IOPT,N
      DOUBLE PRECISION PLEP,PHAD,POUT(4),P(4,N),Q(4,N), &
        CMF(4),Z(4),XZ(4)
!C---CHECK INPUT
      IF (IOPT.LT.0.OR.IOPT.GT.3) CALL KTWARN('KTHADR',200,*999)
!C---FIND 4-MOMENTUM OF HADRONIC CMF
      CMF(1)=          -POUT(1)
      CMF(2)=          -POUT(2)
      CMF(3)=      PLEP -POUT(3)+      PHAD
      CMF(4)=ABS(PLEP)-POUT(4)+ABS(PHAD)
!C---FIND ROTATION TO PUT INCOMING HADRON BACK ON Z-AXIS
      Z(1)=0
      Z(2)=0
      Z(3)=PHAD
      Z(4)=ABS(PHAD)
      XZ(1)=0
      XZ(2)=0
      XZ(3)=0
      XZ(4)=0
!C---DO THE BOOST

```

```

      IF (IOPT.LE.1) THEN
        CALL KTFRAM(IOPT,CMF,PHAD,Z,XZ,N,P,Q,*999)
      ELSE
        CALL KTFRAM(IOPT-2,CMF,PHAD,Z,POUT,N,P,Q,*999)
      ENDIF
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1
      END SUBROUTINE KTHADR
!C-----
      FUNCTION KTPAIR(ANGL,P,Q,ANGLE)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---CALCULATE LOCAL KT OF PAIR, USING ANGULAR SCHEME:
!C  1=>ANGULAR, 2=>DeltaR, 3=>f(DeltaEta,DeltaPhi)
!C  WHERE f(eta,phi)=2(COSH(eta)-COS(phi)) IS THE QCD EMISSION METRIC
!C---IF ANGLE<0, IT IS SET TO THE ANGULAR PART OF THE LOCAL KT ON RETURN
!C  IF ANGLE>0, IT IS USED INSTEAD OF THE ANGULAR PART OF THE LOCAL KT
      INTEGER ANGL,I
!  CHANGE      DOUBLE PRECISION P(9),Q(9),KTPAIR,R,KTMDPI,ANGLE,ETA,PHI,ESQ
      DOUBLE PRECISION P(9),Q(9),KTPAIR,R,ANGLE,ETA,PHI,ESQ
!C---COMPONENTS OF MOMENTA ARE PX,PY,PZ,E,1/P,PT,ETA,PHI,PT**2
      R=ANGLE
      IF (ANGL.EQ.1) THEN
        IF (R.LE.0) R=2*(1-(P(1)*Q(1)+P(2)*Q(2)+P(3)*Q(3))*(P(5)*Q(5)))
        ESQ=MIN(P(4),Q(4))**2
      ELSEIF (ANGL.EQ.2.OR.ANGL.EQ.3) THEN
        IF (R.LE.0) THEN
          ETA=P(7)-Q(7)
          PHI=KTMDPI(P(8)-Q(8))
          IF (ANGL.EQ.2) THEN
            R=ETA**2+PHI**2
          ELSE
            R=2*(COSH(ETA)-COS(PHI))
          ENDIF
        ENDIF
        ESQ=MIN(P(9),Q(9))
      ELSEIF (ANGL.EQ.4) THEN
        ESQ=(1d0/(P(5)*Q(5))-P(1)*Q(1)-P(2)*Q(2)- &
          P(3)*Q(3))*2d0/(P(5)*Q(5))/(0.0001d0+1d0/P(5)+1d0/Q(5))**2
        R=1d0
      ELSE
        CALL KTWARN('KTPAIR',200,*999)
        STOP
      ENDIF
      KTPAIR=ESQ*R
      IF (ANGLE.LT.0) ANGLE=R
999 END FUNCTION KTPAIR
!C-----
      FUNCTION KTSING(ANGL,TYPE,P)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---CALCULATE KT OF PARTICLE, USING ANGULAR SCHEME:
!C  1=>ANGULAR, 2=>DeltaR, 3=>f(DeltaEta,DeltaPhi)
!C---TYPE=1 FOR E+E-, 2 FOR EP, 3 FOR PE, 4 FOR PP
!C  FOR EP, PROTON DIRECTION IS DEFINED AS -Z
!C  FOR PE, PROTON DIRECTION IS DEFINED AS +Z

```



```

      INTEGER ANGL,TYPE
      DOUBLE PRECISION P(9),KTSING,COSTH,R,SMALL
      DATA SMALL/1D-4/
      IF (ANGL.EQ.1.OR.ANGL.EQ.4) THEN
        COSTH=P(3)*P(5)
        IF (TYPE.EQ.2) THEN
          COSTH=-COSTH
        ELSEIF (TYPE.EQ.4) THEN
          COSTH=ABS(COSTH)
        ELSEIF (TYPE.NE.1.AND.TYPE.NE.3) THEN
          CALL KTWARN('KTSING',200,*999)
          STOP
        ENDIF
        R=2*(1-COSTH)
!C---IF CLOSE TO BEAM, USE APPROX 2*(1-COS(THETA))=SIN**2(THETA)
        IF (R.LT.SMALL) R=(P(1)**2+P(2)**2)*P(5)**2
        KTSING=P(4)**2*R
        ELSEIF (ANGL.EQ.2.OR.ANGL.EQ.3) THEN
          KTSING=P(9)
        ELSE
          CALL KTWARN('KTSING',201,*999)
          STOP
        ENDIF
999 END FUNCTION KTSING
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTPMIN(A,NMAX,N,IMIN,JMIN)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---FIND THE MINIMUM MEMBER OF A(NMAX,NMAX) WITH IMIN < JMIN <= N
      INTEGER NMAX,N,IMIN,JMIN,KMIN,I,J,K
!C---REMEMBER THAT A(X+(Y-1)*NMAX)=A(X,Y)
!C   THESE LOOPING VARIABLES ARE J=Y-2, I=X+(Y-1)*NMAX
      DOUBLE PRECISION A(*),AMIN
      K=1+NMAX
      KMIN=K
      AMIN=A(KMIN)
      DO J=0,N-2
        DO I=K,K+J
          IF (A(I).LT.AMIN) THEN
            KMIN=I
            AMIN=A(KMIN)
          ENDIF
        END DO
        K=K+NMAX
      END DO
      JMIN=KMIN/NMAX+1
      IMIN=KMIN-(JMIN-1)*NMAX
      END SUBROUTINE KTPMIN
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTSMIN(A,NMAX,N,IMIN)
      IMPLICIT NONE
!C---FIND THE MINIMUM MEMBER OF A
      INTEGER N,NMAX,IMIN,I
      DOUBLE PRECISION A(NMAX)
      IMIN=1

```

```

      DO I=1,N
        IF (A(I).LT.A(IMIN)) IMIN=I
      END DO
    END SUBROUTINE KTSMIN
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTCOPY(A,N,B,ONSHLL)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---COPY FROM A TO B. 5TH=1/(3-MTM), 6TH=PT, 7TH=ETA, 8TH=PHI, 9TH=PT**2
!C IF ONSHLL IS .TRUE. PARTICLE ENTRIES ARE PUT ON-SHELL BY SETTING E=P
        INTEGER I,N
        DOUBLE PRECISION A(4,N)
        LOGICAL ONSHLL
        DOUBLE PRECISION B(9,N),ETAMAX,SINMIN,EPS
        DATA ETAMAX,SINMIN,EPS/10,0,1D-6/
!C---SINMIN GETS CALCULATED ON FIRST CALL
        IF (SINMIN.EQ.0) SINMIN=1/COSH(ETAMAX)
        DO I=1,N
          B(1,I)=A(1,I)
          B(2,I)=A(2,I)
          B(3,I)=A(3,I)
          B(4,I)=A(4,I)
          B(5,I)=SQRT(A(1,I)**2+A(2,I)**2+A(3,I)**2)
          IF (ONSHLL) B(4,I)=B(5,I)
          IF (B(5,I).EQ.0) B(5,I)=1D-10
          B(5,I)=1/B(5,I)
          B(9,I)=A(1,I)**2+A(2,I)**2
          B(6,I)=SQRT(B(9,I))
          B(7,I)=B(6,I)*B(5,I)
          IF (B(7,I).GT.SINMIN) THEN
            B(7,I)=A(4,I)**2-A(3,I)**2
            IF (B(7,I).LE.EPS*B(4,I)**2.OR. ONSHLL) B(7,I)=B(9,I)
            B(7,I)=LOG((B(4,I)+ABS(B(3,I)))**2/B(7,I))/2
          ELSE
            B(7,I)=ETAMAX+2
          ENDIF
          B(7,I)=SIGN(B(7,I),B(3,I))
          IF (A(1,I).EQ.0 .AND. A(2,I).EQ.0) THEN
            B(8,I)=0
          ELSE
            B(8,I)=ATAN2(A(2,I),A(1,I))
          ENDIF
        END DO
      END SUBROUTINE KTCOPY
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTMERG(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,I,J,N,TYPE,ANGL,MONO,RECO)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---MERGE THE Jth PARTICLE IN P INTO THE Ith PARTICLE
!C J IS ASSUMED GREATER THAN I. P CONTAINS N PARTICLES BEFORE MERGING.
!C---ALSO RECALCULATING THE CORRESPONDING KTP AND KTS VALUES IF MONO.GT.0
!C FROM THE RECOMBINED ANGULAR MEASURES IF MONO.GT.1
!C---NOTE THAT IF MONO.LE.0, TYPE AND ANGL ARE NOT USED
        INTEGER ANGL,RECO,TYPE,I,J,K,N,NMAX,MONO
        DOUBLE PRECISION P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX),PT,PTT, &
! CHANGE          KTMDPI,KTUP,PI,PJ,ANG,KTPAIR,KTSING,ETAMAX,EPS

```

```

      KTUP,PI,PJ,ANG,ETAMAX,EPS
      KTUP(I,J)=KTP(MAX(I,J),MIN(I,J))
      DATA ETAMAX,EPS/10,1D-6/
      IF (J.LE.I) CALL KTWARN('KTMERG',200,*999)
!C---COMBINE ANGULAR MEASURES IF NECESSARY
      IF (MONO.GT.1) THEN
        DO K=1,N
          IF (K.NE.I.AND.K.NE.J) THEN
            IF (RECO.EQ.1) THEN
              PI=P(4,I)
              PJ=P(4,J)
            ELSEIF (RECO.EQ.2) THEN
              PI=P(6,I)
              PJ=P(6,J)
            ELSEIF (RECO.EQ.3) THEN
              PI=P(9,I)
              PJ=P(9,J)
            ELSE
              CALL KTWARN('KTMERG',201,*999)
              STOP
            ENDIF
            IF (PI.EQ.0.AND.PJ.EQ.0) THEN
              PI=1
              PJ=1
            ENDIF
            KTP(MAX(I,K),MIN(I,K))= &
              (PI*KTUP(I,K)+PJ*KTUP(J,K))/(PI+PJ)
          ENDIF
        END DO
      ENDIF
      IF (RECO.EQ.1) THEN
!C---VECTOR ADDITION
        P(1,I)=P(1,I)+P(1,J)
        P(2,I)=P(2,I)+P(2,J)
        P(3,I)=P(3,I)+P(3,J)
!c      P(4,I)=P(4,I)+P(4,J) ! JA
        P(5,I)=SQRT(P(1,I)**2+P(2,I)**2+P(3,I)**2)
        P(4,I)=P(5,I) ! JA (Massless scheme)
        IF (P(5,I).EQ.0) THEN
          P(5,I)=1
        ELSE
          P(5,I)=1/P(5,I)
        ENDIF
      ELSEIF (RECO.EQ.2) THEN
!C---PT WEIGHTED ETA-PHI ADDITION
        PT=P(6,I)+P(6,J)
        IF (PT.EQ.0) THEN
          PTT=1
        ELSE
          PTT=1/PT
        ENDIF
        P(7,I)=(P(6,I)*P(7,I)+P(6,J)*P(7,J))*PTT
        P(8,I)=KTMDPI(P(8,I)+P(6,J)*PTT*KTMDPI(P(8,J)-P(8,I)))
        P(6,I)=PT

```

```

        P(9,I)=PT**2
    ELSEIF (RECO.EQ.3) THEN
!C---PT**2 WEIGHTED ETA-PHI ADDITION
        PT=P(9,I)+P(9,J)
        IF (PT.EQ.0) THEN
            PTT=1
        ELSE
            PTT=1/PT
        ENDIF
        P(7,I)=(P(9,I)*P(7,I)+P(9,J)*P(7,J))*PTT
        P(8,I)=KTMDPI(P(8,I)+P(9,J)*PTT*KTMDPI(P(8,J)-P(8,I)))
        P(6,I)=P(6,I)+P(6,J)
        P(9,I)=P(6,I)**2
    ELSE
        CALL KTWARN('KTMERG',202,*999)
        STOP
    ENDIF
!C---IF MONO.GT.0 CALCULATE NEW KT MEASURES. IF MONO.GT.1 USE ANGULAR ONES.
    IF (MONO.LE.0) RETURN
!C---CONVERTING BETWEEN 4-MTM AND PT,ETA,PHI IF NECESSARY
    IF (ANGL.NE.1.AND.RECO.EQ.1) THEN
        P(9,I)=P(1,I)**2+P(2,I)**2
        P(7,I)=P(4,I)**2-P(3,I)**2
        IF (P(7,I).LE.EPS*P(4,I)**2) P(7,I)=P(9,I)
        IF (P(7,I).GT.0) THEN
            P(7,I)=LOG((P(4,I)+ABS(P(3,I)))**2/P(7,I))/2
            IF (P(7,I).GT.ETAMAX) P(7,I)=ETAMAX+2
        ELSE
            P(7,I)=ETAMAX+2
        ENDIF
        P(7,I)=SIGN(P(7,I),P(3,I))
        IF (P(1,I).NE.0.AND.P(2,I).NE.0) THEN
            P(8,I)=ATAN2(P(2,I),P(1,I))
        ELSE
            P(8,I)=0
        ENDIF
    ELSEIF (ANGL.EQ.1.AND.RECO.NE.1) THEN
        P(1,I)=P(6,I)*COS(P(8,I))
        P(2,I)=P(6,I)*SIN(P(8,I))
        P(3,I)=P(6,I)*SINH(P(7,I))
        P(4,I)=P(6,I)*COSH(P(7,I))
        IF (P(4,I).NE.0) THEN
            P(5,I)=1/P(4,I)
        ELSE
            P(5,I)=1
        ENDIF
    ENDIF
    ANG=0
    DO K=1,N
        IF (K.NE.I.AND.K.NE.J) THEN
            IF (MONO.GT.1) ANG=KTUP(I,K)
            KTP(MIN(I,K),MAX(I,K))= &
                KTPAIR(ANGL,P(1,I),P(1,K),ANG)
        ENDIF
    
```

```

        END DO
        KTS(I)=KTSING(ANGL,TYPE,P(1,I))
999 END SUBROUTINE KTMERG
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTMOVE(P,KTP,KTS,NMAX,N,J,IOPT)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---MOVE THE Nth PARTICLE IN P TO THE Jth POSITION
!C---ALSO MOVING KTP AND KTS IF IOPT.GT.0
        INTEGER I,J,N,NMAX,IOPT
        DOUBLE PRECISION P(9,NMAX),KTP(NMAX,NMAX),KTS(NMAX)
        DO I=1,9
          P(I,J)=P(I,N)
        END DO
        IF (IOPT.LE.0) RETURN
        DO I=1,J-1
          KTP(I,J)=KTP(I,N)
          KTP(J,I)=KTP(N,I)
        END DO
        DO I=J+1,N-1
          KTP(J,I)=KTP(I,N)
          KTP(I,J)=KTP(N,I)
        END DO
        KTS(J)=KTS(N)
      END SUBROUTINE KTMOVE
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTUNIT(R)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C  SET R EQUAL TO THE 4 BY 4 IDENTITY MATRIX
        DOUBLE PRECISION R(4,4)
        INTEGER I,J
        DO I=1,4
          DO J=1,4
            R(I,J)=0
            IF (I.EQ.J) R(I,J)=1
          END DO
        END DO
      END SUBROUTINE KTUNIT
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTLBST(IOPT,R,A,*)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C  PREMULTIPLY R BY THE 4 BY 4 MATRIX TO
!C  LORENTZ BOOST TO/FROM THE CM FRAME OF A
!C  IOPT=0 => TO
!C  IOPT=1 => FROM
!C
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF A IS NOT TIME-LIKE
!C
        INTEGER IOPT,I,J
        DOUBLE PRECISION R(4,4),A(4),B(4),C(4,4),M
        DO I=1,4
          B(I)=A(I)
        END DO
        M=B(4)**2-B(1)**2-B(2)**2-B(3)**2
        IF (M.LE.0) CALL KTWARN('KTLBST',100,*999)

```

```

M=SQRT(M)
B(4)=B(4)+M
M=1/(M*B(4))
IF (IOPT.EQ.0) THEN
  B(4)=-B(4)
ELSEIF (IOPT.NE.1) THEN
  CALL KTWARN('KTLBST',200,*999)
  STOP
ENDIF
DO I=1,4
  DO J=1,4
    C(I,J)=B(I)*B(J)*M
    IF (I.EQ.J) C(I,J)=C(I,J)+1
  END DO
END DO
C(4,4)=C(4,4)-2
CALL KTMUL(C,R,R)
RETURN
999  RETURN 1
END SUBROUTINE KTLBST
!C-----
SUBROUTINE KTRROT(R,A,B,*)
  IMPLICIT NONE
!C  PREMULTIPLY R BY THE 4 BY 4 MATRIX TO
!C  ROTATE FROM VECTOR A TO VECTOR B BY THE SHORTEST ROUTE
!C  IF THEY ARE EXACTLY BACK-TO-BACK, THE ROTATION AXIS IS THE VECTOR
!C  WHICH IS PERPENDICULAR TO THEM AND THE X AXIS, UNLESS THEY ARE
!C  PERPENDICULAR TO THE Y AXIS, WHEN IT IS THE VECTOR WHICH IS
!C  PERPENDICULAR TO THEM AND THE Y AXIS.
!C  NOTE THAT THESE CONDITIONS GUARANTEE THAT IF BOTH ARE PERPENDICULAR
!C  TO THE Z AXIS, IT WILL BE USED AS THE ROTATION AXIS.
!C
!C  LAST ARGUMENT IS LABEL TO JUMP TO IF EITHER HAS LENGTH ZERO
!C
  DOUBLE PRECISION R(4,4),M(4,4),A(4),B(4),C(4),D(4),AL,BL,CL,DL,EPS
!C---SQRT(2*EPS) IS THE ANGLE IN RADIANES OF THE SMALLEST ALLOWED ROTATION
!C  NOTE THAT IF YOU CONVERT THIS PROGRAM TO SINGLE PRECISION, YOU WILL
!C  NEED TO INCREASE EPS TO AROUND 0.5E-4
  PARAMETER (EPS=0.5D-6)
  AL=A(1)**2+A(2)**2+A(3)**2
  BL=B(1)**2+B(2)**2+B(3)**2
  IF (AL.LE.0.OR.BL.LE.0) CALL KTWARN('KTRROT',100,*999)
  AL=1/SQRT(AL)
  BL=1/SQRT(BL)
  CL=(A(1)*B(1)+A(2)*B(2)+A(3)*B(3))*AL*BL
!C---IF THEY ARE COLLINEAR, DON'T NEED TO DO ANYTHING
  IF (CL.GE.1-EPS) THEN
    RETURN
!C---IF THEY ARE BACK-TO-BACK, USE THE AXIS PERP TO THEM AND X AXIS
  ELSEIF (CL.LE.-1+EPS) THEN
    IF (ABS(B(2)).GT.EPS) THEN
      C(1)= 0
      C(2)=-B(3)
      C(3)= B(2)

```

```

!C---UNLESS THEY ARE PERPENDICULAR TO THE Y AXIS,
      ELSE
        C(1)= B(3)
        C(2)= 0
        C(3)=-B(1)
      ENDIF
!C---OTHERWISE FIND ROTATION AXIS
      ELSE
        C(1)=A(2)*B(3)-A(3)*B(2)
        C(2)=A(3)*B(1)-A(1)*B(3)
        C(3)=A(1)*B(2)-A(2)*B(1)
      ENDIF
      CL=C(1)**2+C(2)**2+C(3)**2
      IF (CL.LE.0) CALL KTWARN('KTRROT',101,*999)
      CL=1/SQRT(CL)
!C---FIND ROTATION TO INTERMEDIATE AXES FROM A
      D(1)=A(2)*C(3)-A(3)*C(2)
      D(2)=A(3)*C(1)-A(1)*C(3)
      D(3)=A(1)*C(2)-A(2)*C(1)
      DL=AL*CL
      M(1,1)=A(1)*AL
      M(1,2)=A(2)*AL
      M(1,3)=A(3)*AL
      M(1,4)=0
      M(2,1)=C(1)*CL
      M(2,2)=C(2)*CL
      M(2,3)=C(3)*CL
      M(2,4)=0
      M(3,1)=D(1)*DL
      M(3,2)=D(2)*DL
      M(3,3)=D(3)*DL
      M(3,4)=0
      M(4,1)=0
      M(4,2)=0
      M(4,3)=0
      M(4,4)=1
      CALL KTMMUL(M,R,R)
!C---AND ROTATION FROM INTERMEDIATE AXES TO B
      D(1)=B(2)*C(3)-B(3)*C(2)
      D(2)=B(3)*C(1)-B(1)*C(3)
      D(3)=B(1)*C(2)-B(2)*C(1)
      DL=BL*CL
      M(1,1)=B(1)*BL
      M(2,1)=B(2)*BL
      M(3,1)=B(3)*BL
      M(1,2)=C(1)*CL
      M(2,2)=C(2)*CL
      M(3,2)=C(3)*CL
      M(1,3)=D(1)*DL
      M(2,3)=D(2)*DL
      M(3,3)=D(3)*DL
      CALL KTMMUL(M,R,R)
      RETURN
999  RETURN 1

```

```

      END SUBROUTINE KTRROT
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTMUL(M,A,B)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C   4 BY 4 MATRIX TIMES 4 VECTOR: B=M*A.
!C   ALL ARE DOUBLE PRECISION
!C   IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH B=A
!C   FIRST SUBSCRIPT=ROWS, SECOND=COLUMNS
        DOUBLE PRECISION M(4,4),A(4),B(4),C(4)
        INTEGER I,J
        DO I=1,4
          C(I)=0
          DO J=1,4
            C(I)=C(I)+M(I,J)*A(J)
          END DO
        END DO
        DO I=1,4
          B(I)=C(I)
        END DO
      END SUBROUTINE KTMUL
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTMUL(A,B,C)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C   4 BY 4 MATRIX MULTIPLICATION: C=A*B.
!C   ALL ARE DOUBLE PRECISION
!C   IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH C=A OR B.
!C   FIRST SUBSCRIPT=ROWS, SECOND=COLUMNS
        DOUBLE PRECISION A(4,4),B(4,4),C(4,4),D(4,4)
        INTEGER I,J,K
        DO I=1,4
          DO J=1,4
            D(I,J)=0
            DO K=1,4
              D(I,J)=D(I,J)+A(I,K)*B(K,J)
            END DO
          END DO
        END DO
        DO I=1,4
          DO J=1,4
            C(I,J)=D(I,J)
          END DO
        END DO
      END SUBROUTINE KTMUL
!C-----
      SUBROUTINE KTINVT(A,B)
        IMPLICIT NONE
!C---INVERT TRANSFORMATION MATRIX A
!C
!C   A = INPUT   : 4 BY 4 TRANSFORMATION MATRIX
!C   B = OUTPUT  : INVERTED TRANSFORMATION MATRIX
!C
!C   IF A IS NOT A TRANSFORMATION MATRIX YOU WILL GET STRANGE RESULTS
!C
!C   NOTE THAT IT IS SAFE TO CALL WITH A=B

```



```

!C      DOUBLE PRECISION A(4,4),B(4,4),C(4,4)
        INTEGER I,J
!C---TRANPOSE
        DO I=1,4
            DO J=1,4
                C(I,J)=A(J,I)
            END DO
        END DO
!C---NEGATE ENERGY-MOMENTUM MIXING TERMS
        DO I=1,3
            C(4,I)=-C(4,I)
            C(I,4)=-C(I,4)
        END DO
!C---OUTPUT
        DO I=1,4
            DO J=1,4
                B(I,J)=C(I,J)
            END DO
        END DO
        END SUBROUTINE KTINVT
!C-----
        FUNCTION KTMDPI(PHI)
            IMPLICIT NONE
!C---RETURNS PHI, MOVED ONTO THE RANGE [-PI,PI)
            DOUBLE PRECISION KTMDPI,PHI,PI,TWOPI,THRPI,EPS
            PARAMETER (PI=3.14159265358979324D0,TWOPI=6.28318530717958648D0, &
                THRPI=9.42477796076937972D0)
            PARAMETER (EPS=1D-15)
            KTMDPI=PHI
            IF (KTMDPI.LE.PI) THEN
                IF (KTMDPI.GT.-PI) THEN
                    GOTO 100
                ELSEIF (KTMDPI.GT.-THRPI) THEN
                    KTMDPI=KTMDPI+TWOPI
                ELSE
                    KTMDPI=-MOD(PI-KTMDPI,TWOPI)+PI
                ENDIF
            ELSEIF (KTMDPI.LE.THRPI) THEN
                KTMDPI=KTMDPI-TWOPI
            ELSE
                KTMDPI=MOD(PI+KTMDPI,TWOPI)-PI
            ENDIF
100    IF (ABS(KTMDPI).LT.EPS) KTMDPI=0
        END FUNCTION KTMDPI
!C-----
        SUBROUTINE KTWARN(SUBRTN,ICODE,*)
!C      DEALS WITH ERRORS DURING EXECUTION
!C      SUBRTN = NAME OF CALLING SUBROUTINE
!C      ICODE = ERROR CODE:      - 99 PRINT WARNING & CONTINUE
!C                                100-199 PRINT WARNING & JUMP
!C                                200-   PRINT WARNING & STOP DEAD
!C-----
        INTEGER ICODE

```

```

        CHARACTER*6 SUBRTN
        WRITE (6,10) SUBRTN,ICODE
10      FORMAT(/' KTWARN CALLED FROM SUBPROGRAM ',A6,' : CODE =',I4/)
        IF (ICODE.LT.100) RETURN
        IF (ICODE.LT.200) RETURN 1
        STOP
    END SUBROUTINE KTWARN
!C-----
!C-----
!C-----

```

## 16.5.2 CKKW matching

```

⟨ckkw_matching.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module ckkw_matching

    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use file_utils !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!
    use shower_base
    use shower_partons
    use shower_core
    use ckkw_pseudo_weights

    ⟨Standard module head⟩

    ⟨CKKW matching: public⟩

    ⟨CKKW matching: types⟩

    contains

    ⟨CKKW matching: procedures⟩

  end module ckkw_matching

  ⟨CKKW matching: public⟩≡
    public :: ckkw_matching_settings_t
  ⟨CKKW matching: types⟩≡
    type :: ckkw_matching_settings_t
      real(default) :: alphaS = 0.118_default
      real(default) :: Qmin = one
      integer :: n_max_jets = 0
    end type ckkw_matching_settings_t

  ⟨CKKW matching: public⟩+≡
    public :: ckkw_matching_apply

```

*<CKKW matching: procedures>≡*

```

subroutine ckkw_matching_apply (shower, settings, weights, veto)
  type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(ckkw_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
  type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: weights
  logical, intent(out) :: veto

  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: scales
  real(double) :: weight, sf
  real(default) :: rand
  integer :: i

  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  weight = 1.0

  call shower%write ()

  !!! the pseudo parton shower is already simulated by shower_add_interaction
  !!! get the respective clustering scales
  allocate (scales(1:size(shower%partons)))
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    if (shower%partons(i)%p%type == 94) then
      scales(i) = 2.0 * min (parton_get_energy (shower%partons(i)%p%child1), &
        parton_get_energy (shower%partons(i)%p%child2))*2 * &
        (1.0 - (space_part (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%momentum) * &
          space_part (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%momentum)) / &
          (space_part (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%momentum)**1 * &
            space_part (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%momentum)**1))
      scales(i) = sqrt (scales(i))
      shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale = scales(i)
      print *, scales(i)
    end if
  end do

  print *, " scales finished"
  !!! if (highest multiplicity) -> reweight with PDF(mu_F) / PDF(mu_cut)
  call shower%write ()

  !!! Reweight and possibly veto the whole event

  !!! calculate the relative alpha_S weight

  !! calculate the Sudakov weights for internal lines
  !! calculate the Sudakov weights for external lines
  do i = 1, size (shower%partons)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (.not. associated (shower%partons(i)%p)) cycle
    if (shower%partons(i)%p%type == 94) then
      !!! get type
      !!! check that all particles involved are colored
      if ((parton_is_colored (shower%partons(i)%p) .or. &
        shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwtype > 0) .and. &
        (parton_is_colored (shower%partons(i)%p%child1) .or. &

```

```

        shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype > 0) .and. &
        (parton_is_colored (shower%partons(i)%p%child1) .or. &
        shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype > 0)) then
    print *, "reweight with alphaS(" , shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, &
        ") for particle ", shower%partons(i)%p%nr
    if (shower%partons(i)%p%belongstoFSR) then
        print *, "FSR"
        weight = weight * D_alpha_s_fsr (shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale**2) &
            / settings%alphas
    else
        print *, "ISR"
        weight = weight * &
            D_alpha_s_isr (shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale**2) &
            / settings%alphas
    end if
else
    print *, "no reweight with alphaS for ", shower%partons(i)%p%nr
end if
if (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%type == 94) then
    print *, "internal line from ", &
        shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwscale, &
        " to ", shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, &
        " for type ", shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype
    if (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype == 0) then
        sf = 1.0
    else if (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype == 1) then
        sf = SudakovQ (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwscale, &
            shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
        print *, "SFQ = ", sf
    else if (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwtype == 2) then
        sf = SudakovG (shower%partons(i)%p%child1%ckkwscale, &
            shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
        print *, "SFG = ", sf
    else
        print *, "SUSY not yet implemented"
    end if
    weight = weight * min (one, sf)
else
    print *, "external line from ", settings%Qmin, &
        shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale
    if (parton_is_quark (shower%partons(i)%p%child1)) then
        sf = SudakovQ (settings%Qmin, &
            shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
        print *, "SFQ = ", sf
    else if (parton_is_gluon (shower%partons(i)%p%child1)) then
        sf = SudakovG (settings%Qmin, &
            shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
        print *, "SFG = ", sf
    else
        print *, "not yet implemented (" , &
            shower%partons(i)%p%child2%type, ")"
        sf = one
    end if
    weight = weight * min (one, sf)

```

```

end if
if (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%type == 94) then
  print *, "internal line from ", shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwscale, &
    " to ", shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, &
    " for type ", shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwtype
  if (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwtype == 0) then
    sf = 1.0
  else if (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwtype == 1) then
    sf = SudakovQ (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwscale, &
      shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
    print *, "SFQ = ", sf
  else if (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwtype == 2) then
    sf = SudakovG (shower%partons(i)%p%child2%ckkwscale, &
      shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
    print *, "SFG = ", sf
  else
    print *, "SUSY not yet implemented"
  end if
  weight = weight * min (one, sf)
else
  print *, "external line from ", settings%Qmin, &
    shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale
  if (parton_is_quark (shower%partons(i)%p%child2)) then
    sf = SudakovQ (settings%Qmin, &
      shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
    print *, "SFQ = ", sf
  else if (parton_is_gluon (shower%partons(i)%p%child2)) then
    sf = SudakovG (settings%Qmin, &
      shower%partons(i)%p%ckkwscale, .true.)
    print *, "SFG = ", sf
  else
    print *, "not yet implemented (", &
      shower%partons(i)%p%child2%type, ")"
    sf = one
  end if
  weight = weight * min (one, sf)
end if
end if
end do

call tao_random_number(rand)

print *, "final weight: ", weight

!!!!!! WRONG
veto = .false.
veto = (rand > weight)
if (veto) then
  return
end if

!!! finally perform the parton shower
!!! veto emissions that are too hard

```

```

deallocate (scales)
end subroutine ckkw_matching_apply

```

```

<CKKW matching: procedures>+≡
function GammaQ (smallq, largeq, fsr) result (gamma)
  real(default), intent(in) :: smallq, largeq
  logical, intent(in) :: fsr
  real(default) :: gamma
  gamma = (8._default / three) / (pi * smallq)
  gamma = gamma * (log(largeq / smallq) - 0.75)
  if (fsr) then
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_fsr (smallq**2)
  else
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_isr (smallq**2)
  end if
end function GammaQ

```

```

<CKKW matching: procedures>+≡
function GammaG(smallq, largeq, fsr) result(gamma)
  real(default), intent(in) :: smallq, largeq
  logical, intent(in) :: fsr
  real(default) :: gamma
  gamma = 6._default / (pi * smallq)
  gamma = gamma * ( log(largeq / smallq) - 11.0 / 12.0)
  if (fsr) then
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_fsr(smallq**2)
  else
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_isr(smallq**2)
  end if
end function GammaG

```

```

<CKKW matching: procedures>+≡
function GammaF (smallq, fsr) result (gamma)
  real(default), intent(in) :: smallq
  logical, intent(in) :: fsr
  real(default) :: gamma
  gamma = number_of_flavors (smallq) / (three * pi * smallq)
  if (fsr) then
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_fsr (smallq**2)
  else
    gamma = gamma * D_alpha_s_isr (smallq**2)
  end if
end function GammaF

```

```

<CKKW matching: procedures>+≡
function SudakovQ (Q1, Q, fsr) result (sf)
  real(default), intent(in) :: Q1, Q
  logical, intent(in) :: fsr
  real(default) :: sf
  real(default) :: integral
  integer, parameter :: NTRIES = 100
  integer :: i

```

```

real(default) :: rand
integral = zero
do i = 1, NTRIES
    call tao_random_number (rand)
    integral = integral + GammaQ (Q1 + rand * (Q - Q1), Q, fsr)
end do
integral = integral / NTRIES
sf = exp (-integral)
end function SudakovQ

```

*(CKKW matching: procedures)+≡*

```

function SudakovG (Q1, Q, fsr) result (sf)
    real(default), intent(in) :: Q1, Q
    logical, intent(in) :: fsr
    real(default) :: sf
    real(default) :: integral
    integer, parameter :: NTRIES = 100
    integer :: i
    real(default) :: rand
    integral = zero
    do i = 1, NTRIES
        call tao_random_number (rand)
        integral = integral + GammaG (Q1 + rand * (Q - Q1), Q, fsr) + &
            GammaF (Q1 +rand * (Q - Q1), fsr)
    end do
    integral = integral / NTRIES
    sf = exp (-integral)
end function SudakovG

```

### CKKW (pseudo) weights

The type `ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t` gives the (relative) weights for different clusterings of the final particles, as given in Eq. (2.7) of hep-ph/0503281v1. Each particle has a binary labelling (power of 2) (first particle = 1, second particle = 2, third particle = 4, ...). Each recombination therefore corresponds to an integer, that is not a power of 2. For multiple subsequent recombinations, no different weights for different sequences of clustering are stored. It is assumed that the weight of a multiply recombined state is a combination of the states with one fewer recombination and that these states' contributions are proportional to their weights. For a  $2 - > n$  event, the weights array thus has the size  $2^{(2+n)-1}$ . The `weights_by_type` array gives the weights depending on the type of the particle, the first index is the same as for weights, the second index gives the type of the new mother particle:

- 0: uncolored ( $\gamma$ ,  $Z$ ,  $W$ , Higgs)
- 1: colored (quark)
- 2: gluon
- 3: squark
- 4: gluino

`alphaS` gives the value for  $\alpha_s$  used in the generation of the matrix element. This is needed for the reweighting using the values for a running  $\alpha_s$  at the scales of the clusterings.

```

<ckkw_pseudo_weights.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module ckkw_pseudo_weights

    <Use kinds>
      use file_utils !NODEP!
      use constants !NODEP!

    <Standard module head>

    <CKKW pseudo weights: public>

    <CKKW pseudo weights: types>

    contains

    <CKKW pseudo weights: procedures>

  end module ckkw_pseudo_weights

<CKKW pseudo weights: public>≡
  public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t

<CKKW pseudo weights: types>≡
  type :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t
    real(default) :: alphaS
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weights
    real(default), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: weights_by_type
  end type ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t

<CKKW pseudo weights: public>+≡
  public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init

<CKKW pseudo weights: procedures>≡
  subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init (weights)
    type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(out) :: weights
    weights%alphaS = zero
    if (allocated (weights%weights)) deallocate(weights%weights)
    if (allocated (weights%weights_by_type)) &
      deallocate(weights%weights_by_type)
  end subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init

<CKKW pseudo weights: public>+≡
  public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write

<CKKW pseudo weights: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write (weights, unit)
    type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: weights
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: s, i, u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return

```



```

s = size (weights%weights)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "CKKW (pseudo) shower weights: "
do i = 1, s
  write (u, "(3x,I0,2(ES19.12))") i, weights%weights(i), &
    weights%weights_by_type(i,:)
end do
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I0)") "alphaS =", weights%alphaS
end subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write

```

This is a collection of dummy replacement routines.

```

<shower_dummy.f90>≡
module pythia_dummy
  public :: pyinit
  public :: pygive
  public :: pylist
  public :: pyevnt
  public :: pyp
  public :: upinit
contains
  subroutine pylist (i)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine pylist

  subroutine pyinit (frame, beam, target, win)
    character*(*), intent(in) :: frame, beam, target
    double precision, intent(in) :: win
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine pyinit
  subroutine upinit
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine upinit
  subroutine pygive (chin)
    character chin*(*)
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine pygive
  subroutine pyevnt()
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine pyevnt
  subroutine pyexec()
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine pyexec
  function pyp(I,J)
    integer, intent(in) :: i,j
    double precision :: pyp
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end function pyp
end module pythia_dummy

```

```

module ckkw_pseudo_weights
  use kinds, only: default, double !NODEP!

```

```

implicit none

public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t
public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write
public :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init

type :: ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t
    real(default) :: alphaS
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weights
    real(default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: weights_by_type
end type ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t

contains

subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init (weights)
    type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(out) :: weights
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init

subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write (weights)
    type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: weights
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_write

end module ckkw_pseudo_weights

module shower_base
    use kinds, only: default !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    public :: shower_set_minenergy_timelike
    public :: shower_set_d_min_t
    public :: shower_set_d_nf
    public :: shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_fsr
    public :: shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_isr
    public :: shower_set_d_lambda_fsr
    public :: shower_set_d_lambda_isr
    public :: shower_set_d_constantalpha_s
    public :: shower_set_maxz_isr
    public :: shower_set_isr_pt_ordered
    public :: shower_set_isr_angular_ordered
    public :: shower_set_primordial_kt_width
    public :: shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff
    public :: shower_set_tscalefactor_isr
    public :: shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons
    public :: shower_set_pdf_func
    public :: shower_set_pdf_set
    public :: shower_pdf

    real(default), public :: D_Min_t = one

    interface
        subroutine shower_pdf (set, x, q, ff)
            integer, intent(in) :: set

```

```

        double precision, intent(in) :: x, q
        double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
    end subroutine shower_pdf
end interface
contains
subroutine shower_set_minenergy_timelike (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_minenergy_timelike
subroutine shower_set_d_min_t (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_min_t
subroutine shower_set_d_nf (input)
    integer, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_nf
subroutine shower_set_isr_pt_ordered (input)
    logical, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_isr_pt_ordered
subroutine shower_set_isr_angular_ordered (input)
    logical, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_isr_angular_ordered
subroutine shower_set_d_lambda_fsr (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_lambda_fsr
subroutine shower_set_d_lambda_isr (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_lambda_isr
subroutine shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_fsr (input)
    logical, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_fsr
subroutine shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_isr (input)
    logical, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_running_alpha_s_isr
subroutine shower_set_d_constantalpha_s (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_d_constantalpha_s
subroutine shower_set_maxz_isr (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_maxz_isr
subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_width (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_width
subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff (input)

```

```

    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff
subroutine shower_set_tscalefactor_isr (input)
    real(default), intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_tscalefactor_isr
subroutine shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons (input)
    logical, intent(in) :: input
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons
subroutine shower_set_pdf_func(func)
    procedure(shower_pdf), pointer, intent(in) :: func
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_pdf_func

subroutine shower_set_pdf_set(set)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_pdf_set
end module shower_base

module shower_partons
    use kinds, only: default !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!

    <Shower partons: public>

    <Shower partons: types>

contains
    subroutine parton_set_simulated (prt, sim)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        logical, intent(in), optional :: sim
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine parton_set_simulated
    subroutine parton_set_momentum (prt, EE, ppx, ppy, ppz)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        real(default), intent(in) :: EE, ppx, ppy, ppz
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine parton_set_momentum
    subroutine parton_set_initial (prt, initial)
        type(parton_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(parton_t), intent(in) , target :: initial
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine parton_set_initial
end module shower_partons

module shower_core
    use kinds, only: default
    use shower_base
    use shower_partons
    use ckkw_pseudo_weights

```

```

    use pythia_dummy

    <Shower core: public>

    <Shower core: types>

    <Shower core: parameters>

contains
    function shower_get_next_free_nr (shower) result(next_number)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        integer :: next_number
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end function shower_get_next_free_nr
    function shower_generate_next_isr_branching (shower) result (next_brancher)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t) :: next_brancher
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end function shower_generate_next_isr_branching
    function shower_generate_next_isr_branching_veto (shower) &
        result (next_brancher)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t) :: next_brancher
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end function shower_generate_next_isr_branching_veto
    subroutine shower_generate_fsr_for_partons_emitted_in_isr (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine shower_generate_fsr_for_partons_emitted_in_isr
    subroutine interaction_generate_primordial_kt (interaction)
        type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine interaction_generate_primordial_kt
    subroutine shower_generate_primordial_kt (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine shower_generate_primordial_kt
    subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr_2ton (shower, interaction)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(shower_interaction_t), intent(inout) :: interaction
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine shower_interaction_generate_fsr_2ton
    subroutine shower_execute_next_isr_branching (shower, prtp)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), intent(inout) :: prtp
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine shower_execute_next_isr_branching
    subroutine shower_boost_to_labframe (shower)
        class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine shower_boost_to_labframe
    subroutine shower_get_final_colored_ME_partons(shower, partons)
        class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
        type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: &

```

```

partons
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_get_final_colored_ME_partons
subroutine shower_get_final_partons (shower, partons, include_remnants)
  type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: partons
  logical, intent(in), optional :: include_remnants
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_get_final_partons
subroutine shower_write (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_write
subroutine shower_sort_partons (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_sort_partons
subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton (shower, partons)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_pointer_t), intent(inout), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
    partons
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton
subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW &
  (shower, partons, ckkw_pseudo_weights)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_pointer_t), intent(in), dimension(:), allocatable :: partons
  type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: ckkw_pseudo_weights
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_add_interaction_2ton_CKKW
subroutine shower_simulate_no_isr_shower (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_simulate_no_isr_shower
subroutine shower_simulate_no_fsr_shower (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_simulate_no_fsr_shower
subroutine shower_update_beamremnants (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_update_beamremnants
subroutine shower_set_next_color_nr (shower, index)
  class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  integer, intent(in) :: index
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_next_color_nr
subroutine shower_create (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_create
subroutine shower_final (shower)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  <Shower dummy: error message>

```

```

end subroutine shower_final
subroutine shower_write_lhef (shower, unit)
  class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_write_lhef
function shower_interaction_get_s (interaction) result(s)
  type(shower_interaction_t), intent(in) :: interaction
  real(default) :: s
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end function shower_interaction_get_s
function shower_get_ISR_scale (shower) result (scale)
  class(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
  real(default) :: scale
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end function shower_get_ISR_scale
function shower_get_next_color_nr (shower) result(next_color)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  integer :: next_color
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end function shower_get_next_color_nr
subroutine shower_set_max_isr_scale (shower, newscale)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  real(default), intent(in) :: newscale
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_set_max_isr_scale
subroutine shower_add_child (shower, prt, child)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
  integer, intent(in) :: child
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_add_child
subroutine shower_add_parent (shower, prt)
  class(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
  type(parton_t), intent(in) :: prt
  <Shower dummy: error message>
end subroutine shower_add_parent
end module shower_core

module shower_topythia
<Use kinds>
  use shower_base
  use shower_partons
  use shower_core
<Shower2pythia: public>
contains
  subroutine shower_converttopythia (shower)
    type(shower_t), intent(in) :: shower
    <Shower dummy: error message>
  end subroutine shower_converttopythia
end module shower_topythia

module mlm_matching
<Use kinds>

```

```

    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    use constants !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!

    <MLM matching: public>

    <MLM matching: types>

contains

    subroutine mlm_matching_settings_write (settings, unit)
        type(mlm_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine mlm_matching_settings_write

    subroutine mlm_matching_data_final (data)
        type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine mlm_matching_data_final

    subroutine mlm_matching_apply (data, settings, vetoed)
        type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
        type(mlm_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
        logical, intent(out) :: vetoed
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine mlm_matching_apply
end module mlm_matching


module ckkw_matching
    <Use kinds>
    use kinds, only: double !NODEP!
    use shower_core
    use ckkw_pseudo_weights

    <Standard module head>

    <CKKW matching: public>

    <CKKW matching: types>

contains

    subroutine ckkw_matching_apply (shower, settings, weights, veto)
        type(shower_t), intent(inout) :: shower
        type(ckkw_matching_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
        type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(in) :: weights
        logical, intent(out) :: veto
        veto = .false.
        <Shower dummy: error message>
    end subroutine ckkw_matching_apply

```



```

end module ckkw_matching
(Shower dummy: error message)≡
  write (0, "(A)") "*****"
  write (0, "(A)") "*** Error: Shower has not been enabled, WHIZARD terminates ***"
  write (0, "(A)") "*****"
  stop

```

# Chapter 17

## Events

With a process object and the associated methods at hand, we can generate events for elementary processes and, by subsequent transformation, for complete physical processes.

We have the following modules:

**event\_transforms** Abstract base type for transforming a physical process with process instance and included evaluators, etc., into a new object. The following modules extend this base type.

**decays** Combine the elementary process with elementary decay processes and thus transform the elementary event into a decayed event, still at the parton level.

**showers** (not re-activated yet) Create QED/QCD showers out of the partons that are emitted by elementary processes. This should be interleaved with showering of radiated particles (structure functions) and multiple interactions.

**hadrons** (not implemented yet) Apply hadronization to the partonic events, interleaved with hadron decays. (The current setup relies on hadronizing partonic events externally.)

**events** Combine all pieces to generate full events.

### 17.1 Abstract Event Transforms

```
(event_transforms.f90)≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module event_transforms  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use os_interface
```

```

use sm_qcd
use models
use state_matrices
use interactions
use particles
use subevents
use process_libraries
use prc_core
use prc_test
use rng_base
use mci_base
use mci_midpoint
use phs_base
use phs_single
use processes
use process_stacks

⟨Standard module head⟩

⟨Event transforms: public⟩

⟨Event transforms: types⟩

⟨Event transforms: interfaces⟩

contains

⟨Event transforms: procedures⟩

⟨Event transforms: tests⟩

end module event_transforms

```

### 17.1.1 Abstract base type

Essentially, all methods are abstract, but some get minimal base versions. We know that there will be a random-number generator at top level, and that we will relate to an elementary process.

The model is stored separately. It may contain modified setting that differ from the model instance stored in the process object.

Each event transform contains a particle set that it can fill for further use. There is a flag that indicates this.

We will collect event transforms in a list, therefore we include a `previous` and `next` pointers.

```

⟨Event transforms: public⟩≡
  public :: evt_t

⟨Event transforms: types⟩≡
  type, abstract :: evt_t
    type(process_t), pointer :: process => null ()
    type(process_instance_t), pointer :: process_instance => null ()
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()

```

```

class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
integer :: rejection_count = 0
logical :: particle_set_exists = .false.
type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set
class(evt_t), pointer :: previous => null ()
class(evt_t), pointer :: next => null ()
contains
  <Event transforms: evt: TBP>
end type evt_t

```

Finalizer. In any case, we finalize the r.n.g. The process instance is a pointer and should not be finalized here.

```

<Event transforms: evt: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => evt_final
  procedure :: base_final => evt_final

<Event transforms: procedures>≡
  subroutine evt_final (object)
    class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%final ()
    if (object%particle_set_exists) &
      call particle_set_final (object%particle_set)
  end subroutine evt_final

```

Output. We can print r.n.g. info.

```

<Event transforms: evt: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_write => evt_write

<Event transforms: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_write (object, unit, verbose, testflag)
    class(evt_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%process)) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Associated process: '", &
        char (object%process%get_id ()), "'"
    end if
    if (allocated (object%rng)) then
      call object%rng%write (u, 1)
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Number of tries = ", object%rejection_count
    end if
    if (object%particle_set_exists) then
      call write_separator (u)
      call particle_set_write (object%particle_set, u, testflag)
    end if
  end subroutine evt_write

```

Connect the transform with a process instance (and thus with the associated process). Use this to allocate the master random-number generator.

This is not an initializer; we may initialize the transform by implementation-specific methods.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: connect => evt_connect
  procedure :: base_connect => evt_connect

(Event transforms: procedures)+≡
  subroutine evt_connect (evt, process_instance, model, process_stack)
    class(evt_t), intent(inout), target :: evt
    type(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: process_instance
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
    evt%process => process_instance%process
    evt%process_instance => process_instance
    evt%model => model
    call evt%process%make_rng (evt%rng)
  end subroutine evt_connect

```

Reset internal state.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: reset => evt_reset
  procedure :: base_reset => evt_reset

(Event transforms: procedures)+≡
  subroutine evt_reset (evt)
    class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    evt%rejection_count = 0
    evt%particle_set_exists = .false.
  end subroutine evt_reset

```

Prepare for a new event: reset internal state, if necessary. We provide MCI and term index of the parent process.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure (evt_prepare_new_event), deferred :: prepare_new_event

(Event transforms: interfaces)≡
  interface
    subroutine evt_prepare_new_event (evt, i_mci, i_term)
      import
      class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
      integer, intent(in) :: i_mci, i_term
    end subroutine evt_prepare_new_event
  end interface

```

Generate a weighted event, using a valid initiator event in the process instance, and the random-number generator. The returned event probability should be a number between zero and one that we can use for rejection.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure (evt_generate_weighted), deferred :: generate_weighted

(Event transforms: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine evt_generate_weighted (evt, probability)

```

```

import
class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
real(default), intent(out) :: probability
end subroutine evt_generate_weighted
end interface

```

The unweighted event generation routine is actually implemented. It uses the random-number generator for simple rejection. Of course, the implementation may override this and implement a different way of generating an unweighted event.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: generate_unweighted => evt_generate_unweighted
  procedure :: base_generate_unweighted => evt_generate_unweighted
(Event transforms: procedures)+≡
  subroutine evt_generate_unweighted (evt)
    class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    real(default) :: p, x
    evt%rejection_count = 0
    REJECTION: do
      evt%rejection_count = evt%rejection_count + 1
      call evt%generate_weighted (p)
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
      call evt%rng%generate (x)
      if (x < p) exit REJECTION
    end do REJECTION
  end subroutine evt_generate_unweighted

```

Make a particle set. This should take the most recent evaluator (or whatever stores the event), factorize the density matrix if necessary, and store as a particle set.

If applicable, the factorization should make use of the `factorization_mode` and `keep_correlations` settings.

The values `r`, if set, should control the factorization in more detail, e.g., bypassing the random-number generator.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡
  procedure (evt_make_particle_set), deferred :: make_particle_set
(Event transforms: interfaces)+≡
  interface
    subroutine evt_make_particle_set &
      (evt, factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
    import
    class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    integer, intent(in) :: factorization_mode
    logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
  end subroutine evt_make_particle_set
  end interface

```

Copy an existing particle set into the event record. This bypasses all methods to evaluate the internal state, but may be sufficient for further processing.

```

(Event transforms: evt: TBP)+≡

```

```

    procedure :: set_particle_set => evt_set_particle_set
  <Event transforms: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_set_particle_set (evt, particle_set, i_mci, i_term)
      class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
      type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
      integer, intent(in) :: i_term, i_mci
      call evt%prepare_new_event (i_mci, i_term)
      evt%particle_set = particle_set
      evt%particle_set_exists = .true.
    end subroutine evt_set_particle_set

```

This procedure can help in the previous task, if the particles are available in the form of an interaction object. (We need two interactions, one with color summed over, and one with the probability distributed among flows.)

We use the two values from the random number generator for factorizing the state. For testing purposes, we can provide those numbers explicitly.

```

  <Event transforms: evt: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: factorize_interactions => evt_factorize_interactions
  <Event transforms: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_factorize_interactions &
      (evt, int_matrix, int_flows, factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
      class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
      type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: int_matrix, int_flows
      integer, intent(in) :: factorization_mode
      logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations
      real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
      real(default), dimension(2) :: x
      if (present (r)) then
        if (size (r) == 2) then
          x = r
        else
          call msg_bug ("event factorization: size of r array must be 2")
        end if
      else
        call evt%rng%generate (x)
      end if
      call particle_set_init (evt%particle_set, evt%particle_set_exists, &
        int_matrix, int_flows, factorization_mode, x, &
        keep_correlations, keep_virtual=.true.)
      evt%particle_set_exists = .true.
    end subroutine evt_factorize_interactions

```

Mark the incoming particles as incoming in the particle set. This is necessary because in the interaction objects they are usually marked as virtual.

In the inquiry functions we set the term index to one; the indices of beams and incoming particles should be identical for all process terms.

We use the initial elementary process for obtaining the indices. Thus, we implicitly assume that the beam and incoming indices stay the same across event transforms. If this is not true for a transform (say, MPI), it should override this method.

```

  <Event transforms: evt: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: tag_incoming => evt_tag_incoming
  <Event transforms: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_tag_incoming (evt)
      class(evt_t), intent(inout) :: evt
      integer :: i_term, n_in
      integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: beam_index, in_index
      n_in = evt%process%get_n_in ()
      i_term = 1
      allocate (beam_index (n_in))
      call evt%process_instance%get_beam_index (i_term, beam_index)
      call particle_set_reset_status (evt%particle_set, &
        beam_index, PRT_BEAM)
      allocate (in_index (n_in))
      call evt%process_instance%get_in_index (i_term, in_index)
      call particle_set_reset_status (evt%particle_set, &
        in_index, PRT_INCOMING)
    end subroutine evt_tag_incoming

```

### 17.1.2 Implementation: Trivial transform

This transform contains just a pointer to process and process instance. The `generate` methods do nothing.

```

  <Event transforms: public>+≡
    public :: evt_trivial_t

  <Event transforms: types>+≡
    type, extends (evt_t) :: evt_trivial_t
      contains
      <Event transforms: evt trivial: TBP>
    end type evt_trivial_t

```

The finalizer is trivial. Some output:

```

  <Event transforms: evt trivial: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => evt_trivial_write

  <Event transforms: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_trivial_write (object, unit, verbose, testflag)
      class(evt_trivial_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
      logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose, testflag
      integer :: u
      u = output_unit (unit)
      call write_separator_double (u)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event transform: trivial (hard process)"
      call write_separator (u)
      call object%base_write (u, testflag = testflag)
    end subroutine evt_trivial_write

```

Nothing to do here:

```

  <Event transforms: evt trivial: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_new_event => evt_trivial_prepare_new_event

```



```

<Event transforms: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_trivial_prepare_new_event (evt, i_mci, i_term)
    class(evt_trivial_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci, i_term
    call evt%reset ()
  end subroutine evt_trivial_prepare_new_event

```

The weighted generator is, surprisingly, trivial.

```

<Event transforms: evt trivial: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: generate_weighted => evt_trivial_generate_weighted

<Event transforms: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_trivial_generate_weighted (evt, probability)
    class(evt_trivial_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    real(default), intent(out) :: probability
    probability = 1
  end subroutine evt_trivial_generate_weighted

```

This routine makes a particle set, using the associated process instance as-is.

```

<Event transforms: evt trivial: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_particle_set => evt_trivial_make_particle_set

<Event transforms: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_trivial_make_particle_set &
    (evt, factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
    class(evt_trivial_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    integer, intent(in) :: factorization_mode
    logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations
    real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
    integer :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_matrix, int_flows
    if (evt%process_instance%is_complete_event ()) then
      call evt%process_instance%select_i_term (i_term)
      int_matrix => evt%process_instance%get_matrix_int_ptr (i_term)
      int_flows => evt%process_instance%get_flows_int_ptr (i_term)
      call evt%factorize_interactions (int_matrix, int_flows, &
        factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
      call evt%tag_incoming ()
    else
      call msg_bug ("Event factorization: event is incomplete")
    end if
  end subroutine evt_trivial_make_particle_set

```

### 17.1.3 Unit tests

```

<Event transforms: public>+≡
  public :: event_transforms_test

<Event transforms: tests>≡
  subroutine event_transforms_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Event transforms: execute tests>

```

```
end subroutine event_transforms_test
```

## Test trivial event transform

The trivial transform, as an instance of the abstract transform, does nothing but to trigger event generation for an elementary process.

```
(Event transforms: execute tests)≡
  call test (event_transforms_1, "event_transforms_1", &
    "trivial event transform", &
    u, results)

(Event transforms: tests)+≡
  subroutine event_transforms_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, run_id
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    class(evt_t), allocatable :: evt
    integer :: factorization_mode
    logical :: keep_correlations

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: event_transforms_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: handle trivial transform"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment and parent process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
      var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)

    libname = "event_transforms_1_lib"
    procname1 = "event_transforms_1_p"
    run_id = "event_transforms_1"

    call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib, &
      scattering = .true., procname1 = procname1)
    call reset_interaction_counter ()
    allocate (process)
    call process%init &
```

```

(procname1, run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()
call process%setup_terms ()

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, n_it=1, n_calls=100)
call process%final_integration (1)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize trivial event transform"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (evt_trivial_t :: evt)
call evt%connect (process_instance, model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate event and subsequent transform"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%generate_unweighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

call evt%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
call evt%generate_unweighted ()

select type (evt)
type is (evt_trivial_t)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    call evt%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Obtain particle set"
write (u, "(A)")

factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
keep_correlations = .false.

```

```

call evt%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

select type (evt)
type is (evt_trivial_t)
  call write_separator_double (u)
  call evt%write (u)
  call write_separator_double (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call evt%final ()
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: event_transforms_1"

end subroutine event_transforms_1

```

## 17.2 Decays

```

<decays.f90>≡
  <File header>

module decays

  <Use kinds>
  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use os_interface

  use sm_qcd
  use flavors
  use quantum_numbers
  use state_matrices
  use interactions
  use evaluators
  use variables
  use models
  use rng_base
  use selectors
  use prc_core
  use prc_test
  use process_libraries

```

```

    use mci_base
    use mci_midpoint
    use phs_base
    use phs_single
    use parton_states
    use processes
    use process_stacks
    use event_transforms

    <Standard module head>

    <Decays: public>

    <Decays: types>

    <Decays: interfaces>

contains

    <Decays: procedures>

    <Decays: tests>

end module decays

```

### 17.2.1 Final-State Particle Configuration

A final-state particle may be either stable or unstable. Here is an empty abstract type as the parent of both, with holds just the flavor information.

```

<Decays: types>≡
    type, abstract :: any_config_t
    contains
    <Decays: any config: TBP>
    end type any_config_t

```

Finalizer, depends on the implementation.

```

<Decays: any config: TBP>≡
    procedure (any_config_final), deferred :: final

<Decays: interfaces>≡
    interface
        subroutine any_config_final (object)
            import
            class(any_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
        end subroutine any_config_final
    end interface

```

The output is also deferred:

```

<Decays: any config: TBP>+≡
    procedure (any_config_write), deferred :: write

```

```

<Decays: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine any_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
      import
      class(any_config_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
      logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    end subroutine any_config_write
  end interface

```

This is a container for a stable or unstable particle configurator. We need this wrapper for preparing arrays that mix stable and unstable particles.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type :: particle_config_t
    class(any_config_t), allocatable :: c
  end type particle_config_t

```

## 17.2.2 Final-State Particle

In theory, for the particle instance we only need to consider the unstable case. However, it is more straightforward to treat configuration and instance on the same footing, and to introduce a wrapper for particle objects as above. This also works around a compiler bug in gfortran.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: any_t
    contains
    <Decays: any: TBP>
  end type any_t

```

Finalizer, depends on the implementation.

```

<Decays: any: TBP>≡
  procedure (any_final), deferred :: final

<Decays: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine any_final (object)
      import
      class(any_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine any_final
  end interface

```

The output is also deferred:

```

<Decays: any: TBP>+≡
  procedure (any_write), deferred :: write

<Decays: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine any_write (object, unit, indent)
      import
      class(any_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent

```

```

        end subroutine any_write
    end interface

```

This is a container for a stable or unstable outgoing particle. We need this wrapper for preparing arrays that mix stable and unstable particles.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
    type :: particle_out_t
        class(any_t), allocatable :: c
    end type particle_out_t

```

### 17.2.3 Decay Term Configuration

A decay term is a distinct final state, corresponding to a process term. Each decay process may give rise to several terms with, possibly, differing flavor content.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
    type :: decay_term_config_t
        type(particle_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
        contains
        <Decays: decay term config: TBP>
    end type decay_term_config_t

```

Finalizer, recursive.

```

<Decays: decay term config: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => decay_term_config_final

<Decays: procedures>≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_config_final (object)
        class(decay_term_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
        integer :: i
        if (allocated (object%prt)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%prt)
                if (allocated (object%prt(i)%c)) call object%prt(i)%c%final ()
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine decay_term_config_final

```

Output, with optional indentation

```

<Decays: decay term config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => decay_term_config_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
        class(decay_term_config_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        integer :: i, j, u, ind
        logical :: verb
        u = output_unit (unit)
        ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
        verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose

```

```

call write_indent (u, ind)
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Final state:"
do i = 1, size (object%prt)
  select type (prt_config => object%prt(i)%c)
  type is (stable_config_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
      char (flavor_get_name (prt_config%flv(1)))
    do j = 2, size (prt_config%flv)
      write (u, "(:',A)", advance="no") &
        char (flavor_get_name (prt_config%flv(j)))
    end do
  type is (unstable_config_t)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") &
      char (flavor_get_name (prt_config%flv))
  end select
end do
write (u, *)
if (verb) then
  do i = 1, size (object%prt)
    call object%prt(i)%c%write (u, ind)
  end do
end if
end subroutine decay_term_config_write

```

Initialize, given a set of flavors. For each flavor, we must indicate whether the particle is stable. The second index of the flavor array runs over alternatives for each decay product; alternatives are allowed only if the decay product is itself stable.

*(Decays: decay term config: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init => decay_term_config_init

```

*(Decays: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine decay_term_config_init &
  (term, flv, stable, model, process_stack)
class(decay_term_config_t), intent(out) :: term
type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv
logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: stable
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
integer :: i
allocate (term%prt (size (flv, 1)))
do i = 1, size (flv, 1)
  associate (prt => term%prt(i))
    if (stable(i)) then
      allocate (stable_config_t :: prt%c)
    else
      allocate (unstable_config_t :: prt%c)
    end if
    select type (prt_config => prt%c)
    type is (stable_config_t)
      call prt_config%init (flv(i,:))
    type is (unstable_config_t)
      if (all (flv(i,:) == flv(i,1))) then

```



```

        call prt_config%init (flv(i,1))
        call flavor_get_decays (flv(i,1), decay)
        call prt_config%init_decays (decay, model, process_stack)
    else
        call prt_config%write ()
        call msg_fatal ("Decay configuration: &
            &unstable product must be unique")
    end if
end select
end associate
end do
end subroutine decay_term_config_init

```

Recursively compute widths and branching ratios for all unstable particles.

```

<Decays: decay term config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute => decay_term_config_compute

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_config_compute (term)
        class(decay_term_config_t), intent(inout) :: term
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (term%prt)
            select type (unstable_config => term%prt(i)%c)
                type is (unstable_config_t)
                    call unstable_config%compute ()
            end select
        end do
    end subroutine decay_term_config_compute

```

#### 17.2.4 Decay Term

A decay term instance is selected when we generate an event for the associated process instance. When evaluated, it triggers further decays down the chain.

Only unstable products are allocated as child particles.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
    type :: decay_term_t
        type(decay_term_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
        type(particle_out_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: particle_out
    contains
        <Decays: decay term: TBP>
    end type decay_term_t

```

Finalizer.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => decay_term_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_final (object)
        class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: object
        integer :: i
        if (allocated (object%particle_out)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%particle_out)

```

```

        call object%particle_out(i)%c%final ()
    end do
end if
end subroutine decay_term_final

```

Output.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => decay_term_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_write (object, unit, indent)
        class(decay_term_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: i, u, ind
        u = output_unit (unit)
        ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
        call object%config%write (u, ind, verbose = .false.)
        do i = 1, size (object%particle_out)
            call object%particle_out(i)%c%write (u, ind)
        end do
    end subroutine decay_term_write

```

Recursively write the embedded process instances.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_process_instances => decay_term_write_process_instances

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_write_process_instances (term, unit, verbose)
        class(decay_term_t), intent(in) :: term
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
            select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
                type is (unstable_t)
                    call unstable%write_process_instances (unit, verbose)
            end select
        end do
    end subroutine decay_term_write_process_instances

```

Initialization, using the configuration object. We allocate particle objects in parallel to the particle configuration objects which we use to initialize them, one at a time.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => decay_term_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_term_init (term, config)
        class(decay_term_t), intent(out) :: term
        type(decay_term_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
        integer :: i
        term%config => config
        allocate (term%particle_out (size (config%prt)))

```

```

do i = 1, size (config%prt)
  select type (prt_config => config%prt(i)%c)
    type is (stable_config_t)
      allocate (stable_t :: term%particle_out(i)%c)
      select type (stable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
        type is (stable_t)
          call stable%init (prt_config)
        end select
      type is (unstable_config_t)
        allocate (unstable_t :: term%particle_out(i)%c)
        select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
          type is (unstable_t)
            call unstable%init (prt_config)
          end select
        end select
      end select
    end do
  end subroutine decay_term_init

```

Implement a RNG instance, spawned by the process object.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_rng => decay_term_make_rng

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_term_make_rng (term, process)
    class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    type(process_t), intent(inout) :: process
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
      select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
        type is (unstable_t)
          call process%make_rng (rng)
          call unstable%import_rng (rng)
        end select
      end do
    end subroutine decay_term_make_rng

```

Link the interactions for unstable decay products to the interaction of the parent process.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link_interactions => decay_term_link_interactions

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_term_link_interactions (term, trace)
    class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: trace
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
      select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
        type is (unstable_t)
          call unstable%link_interactions (i, trace)
        end select
      end do
    end subroutine decay_term_link_interactions

```

Recursively generate a decay chain, for each of the unstable particles in the final state.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_chain => decay_term_select_chain
<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_term_select_chain (term)
    class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
      select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
        type is (unstable_t)
          call unstable%select_chain ()
        end select
      end do
    end subroutine decay_term_select_chain

```

Recursively generate a decay event, for each of the unstable particles in the final state.

```

<Decays: decay term: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: generate => decay_term_generate
<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_term_generate (term)
    class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
      select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
        type is (unstable_t)
          call unstable%generate ()
        end select
      end do
    end subroutine decay_term_generate

```

### 17.2.5 Decay Root Configuration

At the root of a decay chain, there is a parent process. The decay root stores a pointer to the parent process and the set of decay configurations.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type :: decay_root_config_t
    type(string_t) :: process_id
    type(process_t), pointer :: process => null ()
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(decay_term_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: term_config
  contains
    <Decays: decay root config: TBP>
  end type decay_root_config_t

```

The finalizer is recursive since there may be cascade decays.

```

<Decays: decay root config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => decay_root_config_final

```

```

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_root_config_final (object)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
  integer :: i
  if (allocated (object%term_config)) then
    do i = 1, size (object%term_config)
      call object%term_config(i)%final ()
    end do
  end if
end subroutine decay_root_config_final

```

The output routine is also recursive, and it contains an adjustable indentation.

```

<Decays: decay root config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => decay_root_config_write
  procedure :: write_header => decay_root_config_write_header
  procedure :: write_terms => decay_root_config_write_terms

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_root_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer :: u, ind
  u = output_unit (unit)
  ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
  call write_indent (u, ind)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Final-state decay tree:"
  call object%write_header (unit, indent)
  call object%write_terms (unit, indent, verbose)
end subroutine decay_root_config_write

subroutine decay_root_config_write_header (object, unit, indent)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u, ind
  u = output_unit (unit)
  ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
  call write_indent (u, ind)
  if (associated (object%process)) then
    write (u, 3) "process ID      =", char (object%process_id), "*"
  else
    write (u, 3) "process ID      =", char (object%process_id)
  end if
3  format (3x,A,2(1x,A))
end subroutine decay_root_config_write_header

recursive subroutine decay_root_config_write_terms &
  (object, unit, indent, verbose)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer :: i, u, ind
  logical :: verb
  u = output_unit (unit)

```

```

ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
if (verb .and. allocated (object%term_config)) then
  do i = 1, size (object%term_config)
    call object%term_config(i)%write (u, ind + 1)
  end do
end if
end subroutine decay_root_config_write_terms

```

Initialize for a named process and (optionally) a pre-determined number of terms.

*<Decays: decay root config: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => decay_root_config_init

```

*<Decays: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine decay_root_config_init (decay, model, process_id, n_terms)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(out) :: decay
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
  integer, intent(in), optional :: n_terms
  decay%model => model
  decay%process_id = process_id
  if (present (n_terms)) then
    allocate (decay%term_config (n_terms))
  end if
end subroutine decay_root_config_init

```

Declare a decay term, given an array of flavors.

*<Decays: decay root config: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init_term => decay_root_config_init_term

```

*<Decays: procedures>+≡*

```

recursive subroutine decay_root_config_init_term &
  (decay, i, flv, stable, model, process_stack)
  class(decay_root_config_t), intent(inout) :: decay
  integer, intent(in) :: i
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: flv
  logical, dimension(:), intent(in) :: stable
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
  call decay%term_config(i)%init (flv, stable, model, process_stack)
end subroutine decay_root_config_init_term

```

Connect the decay root configuration with a process object (which should represent the parent process). This includes initialization, therefore intent(out).

The flavor state is retrieved from the process term object. However, we have to be careful: the flavor object points to the model instance that is stored in the process object. This model instance may not contain the current setting for unstable particles and decay. Therefore, we assign the model directly.

If the `process_instance` argument is provided, we use this for the flavor state. This applies to the decay root only, where the process can be entangled with a beam setup, and the latter contains beam remnants as further outgoing

particles. These must be included in the set of outgoing flavors, since the decay application is also done on the connected state.

Infer stability from the particle properties, using the first row in the set of flavor states. For unstable particles, we look for decays, recursively, available from the process stack (if present).

```

<Decays: decay root config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: connect => decay_root_config_connect

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_root_config_connect &
    (decay, process, model, process_stack, process_instance)
    class(decay_root_config_t), intent(out) :: decay
    type(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
    type(process_instance_t), intent(in), optional, target :: process_instance
    type(connected_state_t), pointer :: connected_state
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: flv
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: stable
    integer :: i
    call decay%init (model, process%get_id (), process%get_n_terms ())
    do i = 1, size (decay%term_config)
      if (present (process_instance)) then
        connected_state => process_instance%get_connected_state_ptr (i)
        int => connected_state%get_matrix_int_ptr ()
        call interaction_get_flv_out (int, flv)
      else
        call process%get_term_flv_out (i, flv)
      end if
      call flavor_set_model (flv, model)
      allocate (stable (size (flv, 1)))
      stable = flavor_is_stable (flv(:, 1))
      call decay%init_term (i, flv, stable, model, process_stack)
      deallocate (flv, stable)
    end do
    decay%process => process
  end subroutine decay_root_config_connect

```

Recursively compute widths, errors, and branching ratios.

```

<Decays: decay root config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => decay_root_config_compute

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_root_config_compute (decay)
    class(decay_root_config_t), intent(inout) :: decay
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (decay%term_config)
      call decay%term_config(i)%compute ()
    end do
  end subroutine decay_root_config_compute

```

### 17.2.6 Decay Root Instance

This is the common parent type for decay and decay root. The process instance points to the parent process. The model pointer is separate because particle settings may be updated w.r.t. the parent process object.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: decay_gen_t
    type(decay_term_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: term
    type(process_instance_t), pointer :: process_instance => null ()
    integer :: selected_mci = 0
    integer :: selected_term = 0
  contains
    <Decays: decay gen: TBP>
  end type decay_gen_t

```

The decay root represents the parent process. When an event is generated, the generator selects the term to which the decay chain applies (if possible).

The process instance is just a pointer.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (decay_gen_t) :: decay_root_t
    type(decay_root_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
  contains
    <Decays: decay root: TBP>
  end type decay_root_t

```

The finalizer has to recursively finalize the terms, but we can skip the process instance which is not explicitly allocated.

```

<Decays: decay gen: TBP>≡
  procedure :: base_final => decay_gen_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_gen_final (object)
    class(decay_gen_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (object%term)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%term)
        call object%term(i)%final ()
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine decay_gen_final

```

No extra finalization for the decay root.

```

<Decays: decay root: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => decay_root_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_root_final (object)
    class(decay_root_t), intent(inout) :: object
    call object%base_final ()
  end subroutine decay_root_final

```



Output.

```

<Decays: decay root: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => decay_root_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_root_write (object, unit)
    class(decay_root_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (associated (object%config)) then
      call object%config%write (unit, verbose = .false.)
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Final-state decay tree: [not configured]"
    end if
    if (object%selected_mci > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected MCI      = ", object%selected_mci
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Selected MCI      = [undefined]"
    end if
    if (object%selected_term > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected term    = ", object%selected_term
      call object%term(object%selected_term)%write (u, 1)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Selected term    = [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine decay_root_write

```

Write the process instances, recursively.

```

<Decays: decay gen: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_process_instances => decay_gen_write_process_instances

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_gen_write_process_instances (decay, unit, verbose)
    class(decay_gen_t), intent(in) :: decay
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    logical :: verb
    verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    if (associated (decay%process_instance)) then
      if (verb) then
        call decay%process_instance%write (unit)
      else
        call decay%process_instance%write_header (unit)
      end if
    end if
    if (decay%selected_term > 0) then
      call decay%term(decay%selected_term)%write_process_instances (unit, verb)
    end if
  end subroutine decay_gen_write_process_instances

```

Generic initializer. All can be done recursively.

```

<Decays: decay gen: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: base_init => decay_gen_init

```

```

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_gen_init (decay, term_config)
  class(decay_gen_t), intent(out) :: decay
  type(decay_term_config_t), dimension(:), intent(in), target :: term_config
  integer :: i
  allocate (decay%term (size (term_config)))
  do i = 1, size (decay%term)
    call decay%term(i)%init (term_config(i))
  end do
end subroutine decay_gen_init

```

Specific initializer. We assign the configuration object, which should correspond to a completely initialized decay configuration tree. We also connect to an existing process instance. Then, we recursively link the child interactions to the parent process.

```

<Decays: decay root: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => decay_root_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
subroutine decay_root_init (decay_root, config, process_instance)
  class(decay_root_t), intent(out) :: decay_root
  type(decay_root_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
  type(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: process_instance
  call decay_root%base_init (config%term_config)
  decay_root%config => config
  decay_root%process_instance => process_instance
  call decay_root%make_term_rng (config%process)
  call decay_root%link_term_interactions ()
end subroutine decay_root_init

```

Implement random-number generators for unstable decay selection in all terms. This is not recursive.

We also make use of the fact that `process` is a pointer; the (state of the RNG factory inside the) target process will be modified by the rng-spawning method, but not the pointer.

```

<Decays: decay gen: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_term_rng => decay_gen_make_term_rng

<Decays: procedures>+≡
subroutine decay_gen_make_term_rng (decay, process)
  class(decay_gen_t), intent(inout) :: decay
  type(process_t), intent(in), pointer :: process
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (decay%term)
    call decay%term(i)%make_rng (process)
  end do
end subroutine decay_gen_make_term_rng

```

Recursively link interactions of the enclosed decay terms to the corresponding terms in the current process instance.

Note: A bug in nagfor requires the extra `i_term` variable.

```

<Decays: decay gen: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link_term_interactions => decay_gen_link_term_interactions

```

```

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_gen_link_term_interactions (decay)
  class(decay_gen_t), intent(inout) :: decay
  integer :: i, i_term
  type(interaction_t), pointer :: trace
  associate (instance => decay%process_instance)
    do i = 1, size (decay%term)
      i_term = i
      trace => instance%get_trace_int_ptr (i_term)
      call decay%term(i_term)%link_interactions (trace)
    end do
  end associate
end subroutine decay_gen_link_term_interactions

```

Select a decay chain: decay modes and process components.

```

<Decays: decay root: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_chain => decay_root_select_chain

<Decays: procedures>+≡
subroutine decay_root_select_chain (decay_root)
  class(decay_root_t), intent(inout) :: decay_root
  if (decay_root%selected_term > 0) then
    call decay_root%term(decay_root%selected_term)%select_chain ()
  else
    call msg_bug ("Decays: no term selected for parent process")
  end if
end subroutine decay_root_select_chain

```

Generate a decay tree, i.e., for the selected term in the parent process, recursively generate a decay event for all unstable particles.

Factor out the trace of the connected state of the parent process. This trace should not be taken into account for unweighting the decay chain, since it was already used for unweighting the parent event, or it determines the overall event weight.

```

<Decays: decay root: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: generate => decay_root_generate

<Decays: procedures>+≡
subroutine decay_root_generate (decay_root)
  class(decay_root_t), intent(inout) :: decay_root
  type(connected_state_t), pointer :: connected_state
  if (decay_root%selected_term > 0) then
    connected_state => decay_root%process_instance%get_connected_state_ptr &
      (decay_root%selected_term)
    call connected_state%normalize_matrix_by_trace ()
    call decay_root%term(decay_root%selected_term)%generate ()
  else
    call msg_bug ("Decays: no term selected for parent process")
  end if
end subroutine decay_root_generate

```

## 17.2.7 Decay Configuration

A decay configuration describes a distinct decay mode of a particle. Each decay mode may include several terms, which correspond to the terms in the associated process. In addition to the base type, the decay configuration object contains the integral of the parent process and the selector for the MCI group inside this process.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (decay_root_config_t) :: decay_config_t
    real(default) :: weight = 0
    real(default) :: integral = 0
    real(default) :: abs_error = 0
    real(default) :: rel_error = 0
    type(selector_t) :: mci_selector
  contains
    <Decays: decay_config: TBP>
  end type decay_config_t

```

The output routine extends the decay-root writer by listing numerical component values.

```

<Decays: decay_config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => decay_config_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
    class(decay_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Decay:"
    call object%write_header (unit, indent)
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 2) "branching ratio =", object%weight * 100
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "partial width  =", object%integral
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "error (abs)    =", object%abs_error
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "error (rel)    =", object%rel_error
1   format (3x,A,ES19.12)
2   format (3x,A,F11.6,1x,'%')
    call object%write_terms (unit, indent, verbose)
  end subroutine decay_config_write

```

Connect a decay configuration with a process object (which should represent the decay). This includes initialization, therefore intent(out). We first connect the process itself, then do initializations that are specific for this decay.

Infer stability from the particle properties, using the first row in the set of flavor states. Once we can deal with predetermined decay chains, they should

be used instead.

```

<Decays: decay config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: connect => decay_config_connect

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_config_connect &
        (decay, process, model, process_stack, process_instance)
        class(decay_config_t), intent(out) :: decay
        type(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
        type(process_instance_t), intent(in), optional, target :: process_instance
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: integral_mci
        integer :: i, n_mci
        call decay%decay_root_config_t%connect (process, model, process_stack)
        decay%integral = process%get_integral ()
        decay%abs_error = process%get_error ()
        if (process%cm_frame ()) then
            call msg_fatal ("Decay process " // char (process%get_id ()) &
                // ": unusable because rest frame is fixed.")
        end if
        n_mci = process%get_n_mci ()
        allocate (integral_mci (n_mci))
        do i = 1, n_mci
            integral_mci(i) = process%get_integral_mci (i)
        end do
        call decay%mc_selector%init (integral_mci)
    end subroutine decay_config_connect

```

Compute embedded branchings and the relative error. This method does not apply to the decay root.

```

<Decays: decay config: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compute => decay_config_compute

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_config_compute (decay)
        class(decay_config_t), intent(inout) :: decay
        call decay%decay_root_config_t%compute ()
        if (decay%integral == 0) then
            call decay%write ()
            call msg_fatal ("Decay configuration: partial width is zero")
        end if
        decay%rel_error = decay%abs_error / decay%integral
    end subroutine decay_config_compute

```

## 17.2.8 Decay Instance

The decay contains a collection of terms. One of them is selected when the decay is evaluated. This is similar to the decay root, but we implement it independently.

The process instance object is allocated via a pointer, so it automatically behaves as a target.

```

<Decays: types>+≡

```

```

type, extends (decay_gen_t) :: decay_t
  type(decay_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
contains
  <Decays: decay: TBP>
end type decay_t

```

The finalizer is recursive.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => decay_final
<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_final (object)
    class(decay_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i
    call object%base_final ()
    do i = 1, object%config%process%get_n_mci ()
      call object%process_instance%final_simulation (i)
    end do
    call object%process_instance%final ()
    deallocate (object%process_instance)
  end subroutine decay_final

```

Output.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => decay_write
<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_write (object, unit, indent, recursive)
    class(decay_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent, recursive
    integer :: u, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call object%config%write (unit, indent, verbose = .false.)
    if (allocated (object%rng)) then
      call object%rng%write (u, ind + 1)
    end if
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    if (object%selected_mci > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected MCI    = ", object%selected_mci
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Selected MCI    = [undefined]"
    end if
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    if (object%selected_term > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected term  = ", object%selected_term
      call object%term(object%selected_term)%write (u, ind + 1)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Selected term  = [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine decay_write

```

Initializer. Base initialization is done recursively. Then, we prepare the current process instance and allocate a random-number generator for term selection. For all unstable particles, we also allocate a r.n.g. as spawned by the current process.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => decay_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_init (decay, config)
    class(decay_t), intent(out) :: decay
    type(decay_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
    integer :: i
    call decay%base_init (config%term_config)
    decay%config => config
    allocate (decay%process_instance)
    call decay%process_instance%init (decay%config%process)
    call decay%process_instance%setup_event_data (decay%config%model)
    do i = 1, decay%config%process%get_n_mci ()
      call decay%process_instance%init_simulation (i)
    end do
    call decay%config%process%make_rng (decay%rng)
    call decay%make_term_rng (decay%config%process)
  end subroutine decay_init

```

Link interactions to the parent process. `i_prt` is the index of the current outgoing particle in the parent interaction, for which we take the trace evaluator. We link it to the beam particle in the beam interaction of the decay process instance. Then, repeat the procedure for the outgoing particles.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link_interactions => decay_link_interactions

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine decay_link_interactions (decay, i_prt, trace)
    class(decay_t), intent(inout) :: decay
    integer, intent(in) :: i_prt
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: trace
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: beam_int
    integer :: n_in, n_vir
    beam_int => decay%process_instance%get_beam_int_ptr ()
    n_in = interaction_get_n_in (trace)
    n_vir = interaction_get_n_vir (trace)
    call interaction_set_source_link (beam_int, 1, trace, &
      n_in + n_vir + i_prt)
    call decay%link_term_interactions ()
  end subroutine decay_link_interactions

```

Determine a decay chain. For each unstable particle we select one of the possible decay modes, and for each decay process we select one of the possible decay MCI components, calling the random-number generators. We do not generate momenta, yet.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_chain => decay_select_chain

```

```

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_select_chain (decay)
  class(decay_t), intent(inout) :: decay
  real(default) :: x
  integer :: i
  call decay%rng%generate (x)
  decay%selected_mci = decay%config%mc_selector%select (x)
  call decay%process_instance%choose_mci (decay%selected_mci)
  call decay%process_instance%select_i_term (decay%selected_term)
  do i = 1, size (decay%term)
    call decay%term(i)%select_chain ()
  end do
end subroutine decay_select_chain

```

Generate a decay. We first receive the beam momenta from the parent process (assuming that this is properly linked), then call the associated process object for a new event.

Factor out the trace of the helicity density matrix of the isolated state (the one that will be used for the decay chain). The trace is taken into account for unweighting the individual decay event and should therefore be ignored for unweighting the correlated decay chain afterwards.

```

<Decays: decay: TBP>+≡
procedure :: generate => decay_generate

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine decay_generate (decay)
  class(decay_t), intent(inout) :: decay
  type(isolated_state_t), pointer :: isolated_state
  integer :: i
  call decay%process_instance%receive_beam_momenta ()
  call decay%config%process%generate_unweighted_event &
    (decay%process_instance, decay%selected_mci)
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  call decay%process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()
  isolated_state => &
    decay%process_instance%get_isolated_state_ptr (decay%selected_term)
  call isolated_state%normalize_matrix_by_trace ()
  do i = 1, size (decay%term)
    call decay%term(i)%generate ()
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  end do
end subroutine decay_generate

```

## 17.2.9 Stable Particles

This is a stable particle. The flavor can be ambiguous (e.g., partons).

```

<Decays: types>+≡
type, extends (any_config_t) :: stable_config_t
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
contains
  <Decays: stable config: TBP>

```



```
end type stable_config_t
```

The finalizer is empty:

```
<Decays: stable config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => stable_config_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stable_config_final (object)
    class(stable_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine stable_config_final
```

Output.

```
<Decays: stable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => stable_config_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine stable_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
    class(stable_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, i, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(1x,'+',1x,A)", advance = "no") "Stable:"
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance = "no") char (flavor_get_name (object%flv(1)))
    do i = 2, size (object%flv)
      write (u, "(:',A)", advance = "no") &
        char (flavor_get_name (object%flv(i)))
    end do
    write (u, *)
  end subroutine stable_config_write
```

Initializer. We are presented with an array of flavors, but there may be double entries which we remove, so we store only the distinct flavors.

```
<Decays: stable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => stable_config_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stable_config_init (config, flv)
    class(stable_config_t), intent(out) :: config
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    integer, dimension (size (flv)) :: pdg
    logical, dimension (size (flv)) :: mask
    integer :: i
    pdg = flavor_get_pdg (flv)
    mask(1) = .true.
    forall (i = 2 : size (pdg))
      mask(i) = all (pdg(i) /= pdg(1:i-1))
    end forall
    allocate (config%flv (count (mask)))
    config%flv = pack (flv, mask)
  end subroutine stable_config_init
```

Here is the corresponding object instance. Except for the pointer to the configuration, there is no content.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (any_t) :: stable_t
    type(stable_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
    contains
      <Decays: stable: TBP>
    end type stable_t

```

The finalizer does nothing.

```

<Decays: stable: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => stable_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stable_final (object)
    class(stable_t), intent(inout) :: object
  end subroutine stable_final

```

We can delegate output to the configuration object.

```

<Decays: stable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => stable_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stable_write (object, unit, indent)
    class(stable_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    call object%config%write (unit, indent)
  end subroutine stable_write

```

Initializer: just assign the configuration.

```

<Decays: stable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => stable_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stable_init (stable, config)
    class(stable_t), intent(out) :: stable
    type(stable_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
    stable%config => config
  end subroutine stable_init

```

### 17.2.10 Unstable Particles

A branching configuration enables us to select among distinct decay modes of a particle. We store the particle flavor (with its implicit link to a model), an array of decay configurations, and a selector object.

The total width, absolute and relative error are stored as `integral`, `abs_error`, and `rel_error`, respectively.

The flavor must be unique in this case.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (any_config_t) :: unstable_config_t
    type(flavor_t) :: flv

```

```

    real(default) :: integral = 0
    real(default) :: abs_error = 0
    real(default) :: rel_error = 0
    type(selector_t) :: selector
    type(decay_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay_config
contains
  <Decays: unstable config: TBP>
end type unstable_config_t

```

Finalizer. The branching configuration can be a recursive structure.

```

<Decays: unstable config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => unstable_config_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_config_final (object)
    class(unstable_config_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (object%decay_config)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%decay_config)
        call object%decay_config(i)%final ()
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine unstable_config_final

```

Output. Since this may be recursive, we include indentation.

```

<Decays: unstable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => unstable_config_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_config_write (object, unit, indent, verbose)
    class(unstable_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    integer :: u, i, ind
    logical :: verb
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, "(1x,'+',1x,A,1x,A)") "Unstable:", &
      char (flavor_get_name (object%flv))
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "total width =", object%integral
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "error (abs) =", object%abs_error
    call write_indent (u, ind)
    write (u, 1) "error (rel) =", object%rel_error
1  format (5x,A,ES19.12)
    if (verb .and. allocated (object%decay_config)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%decay_config)
        call object%decay_config(i)%write (u, ind + 1)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine unstable_config_write

```

Initializer. For the unstable particle, the flavor is unique.

```

<Decays: unstable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => unstable_config_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine unstable_config_init (config, flv)
    class(unstable_config_t), intent(out) :: config
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    config%flv = flv
  end subroutine unstable_config_init

```

Further initialization: determine the number of decay modes. We can assume that the flavor of the particle has been set already.

If the process stack is given, we can delve recursively into actually assigning decay processes. Otherwise, we just initialize with decay process names.

```

<Decays: unstable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_decays => unstable_config_init_decays

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_config_init_decays &
    (unstable, decay_id, model, process_stack)
    class(unstable_config_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: decay_id
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
    integer :: i
    allocate (unstable%decay_config (size (decay_id)))
    do i = 1, size (decay_id)
      associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(i))
        if (present (process_stack)) then
          call decay%connect (process_stack%get_process_ptr (decay_id(i)), &
            model, process_stack)
        else
          call decay%init (model, decay_id(i))
        end if
      end associate
    end do
  end subroutine unstable_config_init_decays

```

Compute the total width and branching ratios, initializing the decay selector.

```

<Decays: unstable config: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute => unstable_config_compute

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_config_compute (unstable)
    class(unstable_config_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (unstable%decay_config)
      call unstable%decay_config(i)%compute ()
    end do
    unstable%integral = sum (unstable%decay_config%integral)
    if (unstable%integral <= 0) then

```

```

        call unstable%write ()
        call msg_fatal ("Decay configuration: computed total width is zero")
    end if
    unstable%abs_error = sqrt (sum (unstable%decay_config%abs_error ** 2))
    unstable%rel_error = unstable%abs_error / unstable%integral
    call unstable%selector%init (unstable%decay_config%integral)
    do i = 1, size (unstable%decay_config)
        unstable%decay_config(i)%weight &
            = unstable%selector%get_weight (i)
    end do
end subroutine unstable_config_compute

```

Now we define the instance of an unstable particle.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
type, extends (any_t) :: unstable_t
    type(unstable_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    integer :: selected_decay = 0
    type(decay_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
contains
    <Decays: unstable: TBP>
end type unstable_t

```

Recursive finalizer.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => unstable_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine unstable_final (object)
    class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i
    if (allocated (object%decay)) then
        do i = 1, size (object%decay)
            call object%decay(i)%final ()
        end do
    end if
end subroutine unstable_final

```

Output.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => unstable_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
recursive subroutine unstable_write (object, unit, indent)
    class(unstable_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call object%config%write (u, ind, verbose=.false.)
    if (allocated (object%rng)) then
        call object%rng%write (u, ind + 2)
    end if
end subroutine unstable_write

```

```

call write_indent (u, ind)
if (object%selected_decay > 0) then
  write (u, "(5x,A,I0)") "Sel. decay = ", object%selected_decay
  call object%decay(object%selected_decay)%write (u, ind + 1)
else
  write (u, "(5x,A)") "Sel. decay = [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine unstable_write

```

Write the embedded process instances.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_process_instances => unstable_write_process_instances

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_write_process_instances &
    (unstable, unit, verbose)
    class(unstable_t), intent(in) :: unstable
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    if (unstable%selected_decay > 0) then
      call unstable%decay(unstable%selected_decay)% &
        write_process_instances (unit, verbose)
    end if
  end subroutine unstable_write_process_instances

```

Initialization, using the configuration object.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => unstable_init

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_init (unstable, config)
    class(unstable_t), intent(out) :: unstable
    type(unstable_config_t), intent(in), target :: config
    integer :: i
    unstable%config => config
    allocate (unstable%decay (size (config%decay_config)))
    do i = 1, size (config%decay_config)
      call unstable%decay(i)%init (config%decay_config(i))
    end do
  end subroutine unstable_init

```

Recursively link interactions to the parent process. `i_prt` is the index of the current outgoing particle in the parent interaction.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link_interactions => unstable_link_interactions

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine unstable_link_interactions (unstable, i_prt, trace)
    class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
    integer, intent(in) :: i_prt
    type(interaction_t), intent(in), target :: trace
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (unstable%decay)

```

```

        call unstable%decay(i)%link_interactions (i_prt, trace)
    end do
end subroutine unstable_link_interactions

```

Import the random-number generator state.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: import_rng => unstable_import_rng

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine unstable_import_rng (unstable, rng)
        class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
        class(rng_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: rng
        call move_alloc (from = rng, to = unstable%rng)
    end subroutine unstable_import_rng

```

Generate a decay chain. First select a decay mode, then call the `select_chain` method of the selected mode.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: select_chain => unstable_select_chain

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine unstable_select_chain (unstable)
        class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
        real(default) :: x
        call unstable%rng%generate (x)
        unstable%selected_decay = unstable%config%selector%select (x)
        call unstable%decay(unstable%selected_decay)%select_chain ()
    end subroutine unstable_select_chain

```

Generate a decay event.

```

<Decays: unstable: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate => unstable_generate

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine unstable_generate (unstable)
        class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
        call unstable%decay(unstable%selected_decay)%generate ()
    end subroutine unstable_generate

```

### 17.2.11 Decay Chain

While the decay configuration tree and the decay tree are static entities (during a simulation run), the decay chain is dynamically generated for each event. The reason is that with the possibility of several decay modes for each particle, and several terms for each process, the total number of distinct decay chains is not under control.

Each entry in the decay chain is a connected parton state. The origin of the chain is a connected state in the parent process (not part of the chain itself). For each decay, mode and term chosen, we convolute this with the isolated (!) state of the current decay, to generate a new connected state. We accumulate this chain by recursively traversing the allocated decay tree. Whenever a particle

decays, it becomes virtual and is replaced by its decay product, while all other particles stay in the parton state as spectators.

Technically, we implement the decay chain as a stack structure and include information from the associated decay object for easier debugging. This is a decay chain entry:

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (connected_state_t) :: decay_chain_entry_t
    integer :: index = 0
    type(decay_config_t), pointer :: config => null ()
    integer :: selected_mci = 0
    integer :: selected_term = 0
    type(decay_chain_entry_t), pointer :: previous => null ()
  end type decay_chain_entry_t

```

This is the complete chain; we need just a pointer to the last entry. We also include a pointer to the master process instance, which serves as the seed for the decay chain.

The evaluator `correlated_trace` traces over all quantum numbers for the final spin-correlated (but color-summed) evaluator of the decay chain. This allows us to compute the probability for a momentum configuration, given that all individual density matrices (of the initial process and the subsequent decays) have been normalized to one.

Note: This trace is summed over color, so color is treated exactly when computing spin correlations. However, we do not keep non-diagonal color correlations. When an event is accepted, we compute probabilities for all color states and can choose one of them.

```

<Decays: types>+≡
  type :: decay_chain_t
    type(process_instance_t), pointer :: process_instance => null ()
    integer :: selected_term = 0
    type(evaluator_t) :: correlated_trace
    type(decay_chain_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
  contains
    <Decays: decay_chain: TBP>
  end type decay_chain_t

```

The finalizer recursively deletes and deallocates the entries.

```

<Decays: decay_chain: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => decay_chain_final

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_chain_final (object)
    class(decay_chain_t), intent(inout) :: object
    type(decay_chain_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    do while (associated (object%last))
      entry => object%last
      object%last => entry%previous
      call entry%final ()
      deallocate (entry)
    end do
    call evaluator_final (object%correlated_trace)
  end subroutine decay_chain_final

```



Doing output recursively allows us to display the chain in chronological order.

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => decay_chain_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_chain_write (object, unit)
    class(decay_chain_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Decay chain:"
    call write_entries (object%last)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Evaluator (correlated trace of the decay chain):"
    call write_separator (u)
    call object%correlated_trace%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
contains
  recursive subroutine write_entries (entry)
    type(decay_chain_entry_t), intent(in), pointer :: entry
    if (associated (entry)) then
      call write_entries (entry%previous)
      call write_separator_double (u)
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Decay #", entry%index
      call entry%config%write_header (u)
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected MCI    = ", entry%selected_mci
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected term  = ", entry%selected_term
      call entry%config%term_config(entry%selected_term)%write (u, indent=1)
      call entry%write (u)
    end if
  end subroutine write_entries
end subroutine decay_chain_write

```

Build a decay chain, recursively following the selected decays and terms in a decay tree. Before start, we finalize the chain, deleting any previous contents.

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: build => decay_chain_build

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine decay_chain_build (chain, decay_root)
    class(decay_chain_t), intent(inout), target :: chain
    type(decay_root_t), intent(in) :: decay_root
    type(quantum_numbers_mask_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: qn_mask
    type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_last_decay
    call chain%final ()
    if (decay_root%selected_term > 0) then
      chain%process_instance => decay_root%process_instance
      chain%selected_term = decay_root%selected_term
      call chain%build_term_entries (decay_root%term(decay_root%selected_term))
    end if
    int_last_decay => chain%last%get_matrix_int_ptr ()
    allocate (qn_mask (interaction_get_n_tot (int_last_decay)))

```

```

call quantum_numbers_mask_init (qn_mask, &
    mask_f = .true., mask_c = .true., mask_h = .true.)
call evaluator_init_qn_sum (chain%correlated_trace, int_last_decay, qn_mask)
end subroutine decay_chain_build

```

Build the entries that correspond to a decay term. We have to scan all unstable particles.

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: build_term_entries => decay_chain_build_term_entries

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_chain_build_term_entries (chain, term)
        class(decay_chain_t), intent(inout) :: chain
        type(decay_term_t), intent(in) :: term
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
            select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
                type is (unstable_t)
                    if (unstable%selected_decay > 0) then
                        call chain%build_decay_entries &
                            (unstable%decay(unstable%selected_decay))
                    end if
                end select
            end do
        end subroutine decay_chain_build_term_entries

```

Build the entries that correspond to a specific decay. The decay term should have been determined, so we allocate a decay chain entry and fill it, then proceed to child decays.

For the first entry, we convolute the connected state of the parent process instance with the isolated state of the current decay (which does not contain an extra beam entry for the parent). For subsequent entries, we take the previous entry as first factor.

In principle, each chain entry (as a parton state) is capable of holding a subevent object and associated expressions. We currently do not make use of that feature.

Before generating the decays, factor out the trace of the helicity density matrix of the parent parton state. This trace has been used for unweighting the original event (unweighted case) or it determines the overall weight, so it should not be taken into account in the decay chain generation.

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: build_decay_entries => decay_chain_build_decay_entries

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine decay_chain_build_decay_entries (chain, decay)
        class(decay_chain_t), intent(inout) :: chain
        type(decay_t), intent(in) :: decay
        type(decay_chain_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        type(connected_state_t), pointer :: previous_state
        type(isolated_state_t), pointer :: current_decay
        allocate (entry)
        if (associated (chain%last)) then

```

```

    entry%previous => chain%last
    entry%index = entry%previous%index + 1
    previous_state => entry%previous%connected_state_t
else
    entry%index = 1
    previous_state => &
        chain%process_instance%get_connected_state_ptr (chain%selected_term)
end if
entry%config => decay%config
entry%selected_mci = decay%selected_mci
entry%selected_term = decay%selected_term
current_decay => decay%process_instance%get_isolated_state_ptr &
    (decay%selected_term)
call entry%setup_connected_trace &
    (current_decay, previous_state%get_trace_int_ptr (), resonant=.true.)
call entry%setup_connected_matrix &
    (current_decay, previous_state%get_matrix_int_ptr (), resonant=.true.)
call entry%setup_connected_flows &
    (current_decay, previous_state%get_flows_int_ptr (), resonant=.true.)
chain%last => entry
call chain%build_term_entries (decay%term(decay%selected_term))
end subroutine decay_chain_build_decay_entries

```

Recursively fill the decay chain with momenta and evaluate the matrix elements. Since all evaluators should have correct source entries at this point, momenta are automatically retrieved from the appropriate process instance.

Like we did above for the parent process, factor out the trace for each subsequent decay (the helicity density matrix in the isolated state, which is taken for the convolution).

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: evaluate => decay_chain_evaluate

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine decay_chain_evaluate (chain)
        class(decay_chain_t), intent(inout) :: chain
        call evaluate (chain%last)
        call evaluator_receive_momenta (chain%correlated_trace)
        call chain%correlated_trace%evaluate ()
contains
        recursive subroutine evaluate (entry)
            type(decay_chain_entry_t), intent(inout), pointer :: entry
            if (associated (entry)) then
                call evaluate (entry%previous)
                call entry%receive_kinematics ()
                call entry%evaluate_trace ()
                call entry%evaluate_event_data ()
            end if
        end subroutine evaluate
    end subroutine decay_chain_evaluate

```

Return the probability of a decay chain. This is given as the trace of the density matrix with intermediate helicity correlations, normalized by the product of the uncorrelated density matrix traces. This works only if an event has been

evaluated and the `correlated_trace` evaluator is filled. By definition, this evaluator has only one matrix element, and this must be real.

```

<Decays: decay chain: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_probability => decay_chain_get_probability

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  function decay_chain_get_probability (chain) result (x)
    class(decay_chain_t), intent(in) :: chain
    real(default) :: x
    x = evaluator_get_matrix_element (chain%correlated_trace, 1)
  end function decay_chain_get_probability

```

### 17.2.12 Decay as Event Transform

The `evt_decay` object combines decay configuration, decay tree, and chain in a single object, as an implementation of the `evt` (event transform) abstract type.

```

<Decays: public>≡
  public :: evt_decay_t

<Decays: types>+≡
  type, extends (evt_t) :: evt_decay_t
    type(decay_root_config_t) :: decay_root_config
    type(decay_root_t) :: decay_root
    type(decay_chain_t) :: decay_chain
  contains
    <Decays: evt decay: TBP>
  end type evt_decay_t

```

Output. We display the currently selected decay tree, which includes configuration data, and the decay chain, i.e., the evaluators.

```

<Decays: evt decay: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => evt_decay_write

<Decays: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_decay_write (object, unit, &
    show_decay_tree, &
    show_processes, &
    verbose)
    class(evt_decay_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_decay_tree, show_processes, verbose
    logical :: dec, prc, verb
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    dec = .true.; if (present (show_decay_tree)) dec = show_decay_tree
    prc = .false.; if (present (show_processes)) prc = show_processes
    verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event transform: partonic decays"
    call write_separator_double (u)
    call object%base_write (u)
    if (dec) then
      call write_separator (u)
    end if
  end subroutine evt_decay_write

```

```

        call object%decay_root%write (u)
        if (verb) then
            call object%decay_chain%write (u)
        end if
        if (prc) then
            call object%decay_root%write_process_instances (u, verb)
        end if
    else
        call write_separator_double (u)
    end if
end subroutine evt_decay_write

```

Connect with a process instance and process. This initializes the decay configuration. The process stack is used to look for process objects that implement daughter decays.

When all processes are assigned, configure the decay tree instance, using the decay tree configuration. First obtain the branching ratios, then allocate the decay tree. This is done once for all events.

```

<Decays: evt decay: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: connect => evt_decay_connect

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_decay_connect (evt, process_instance, model, process_stack)
        class(evt_decay_t), intent(inout), target :: evt
        type(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: process_instance
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
        call evt%base_connect (process_instance, model)
        call evt%decay_root_config%connect (process_instance%process, &
            model, process_stack, process_instance)
        call evt%decay_root_config%compute ()
        call evt%decay_root%init (evt%decay_root_config, evt%process_instance)
    end subroutine evt_decay_connect

```

Prepare a new event: Select a decay chain and build the corresponding chain object.

```

<Decays: evt decay: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_new_event => evt_decay_prepare_new_event

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_decay_prepare_new_event (evt, i_mci, i_term)
        class(evt_decay_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci, i_term
        call evt%reset ()
        evt%decay_root%selected_mci = i_mci
        evt%decay_root%selected_term = i_term
        call evt%decay_root%select_chain ()
        call evt%decay_chain%build (evt%decay_root)
    end subroutine evt_decay_prepare_new_event

```

Generate a weighted event and assign the resulting weight (probability). We use a chain initialized by the preceding subroutine, fill it with momenta and

evaluate.

```

<Decays: evt decay: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_weighted => evt_decay_generate_weighted

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_decay_generate_weighted (evt, probability)
        class(evt_decay_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        real(default), intent(out) :: probability
        call evt%decay_root%generate ()
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call evt%decay_chain%evaluate ()
        probability = evt%decay_chain%get_probability ()
    end subroutine evt_decay_generate_weighted

```

To create a usable event, we have to transform the interaction into a particle set; this requires factorization for the correlated density matrix, according to the factorization mode.

```

<Decays: evt decay: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: make_particle_set => evt_decay_make_particle_set

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_decay_make_particle_set &
        (evt, factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
        class(evt_decay_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        integer, intent(in) :: factorization_mode
        logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
        type(interaction_t), pointer :: int_matrix, int_flows
        type(decay_chain_entry_t), pointer :: last_entry
        last_entry => evt%decay_chain%last
        int_matrix => last_entry%get_matrix_int_ptr ()
        int_flows => last_entry%get_flows_int_ptr ()
        call evt%factorize_interactions (int_matrix, int_flows, &
            factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
        call evt%tag_incoming ()
    end subroutine evt_decay_make_particle_set

```

Eliminate numerical noise for the associated process instances.

```

<Decays: public>+≡
    public :: pacify

<Decays: interfaces>+≡
    interface pacify
        module procedure pacify_decay
    end interface pacify

<Decays: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pacify_decay (evt)
        class(evt_decay_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        call pacify_decay_gen (evt%decay_root)
    contains
        recursive subroutine pacify_decay_gen (decay)
            class(decay_gen_t), intent(inout) :: decay
            if (associated (decay%process_instance)) then

```

```

        call pacify (decay%process_instance)
    end if
    if (decay%selected_term > 0) then
        call pacify_term (decay%term(decay%selected_term))
    end if
end subroutine pacify_decay_gen
recursive subroutine pacify_term (term)
    class(decay_term_t), intent(inout) :: term
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (term%particle_out)
        select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
            type is (unstable_t); call pacify_unstable (unstable)
        end select
    end do
end subroutine pacify_term
recursive subroutine pacify_unstable (unstable)
    class(unstable_t), intent(inout) :: unstable
    if (unstable%selected_decay > 0) then
        call pacify_decay_gen (unstable%decay(unstable%selected_decay))
    end if
end subroutine pacify_unstable
end subroutine pacify_decay

```

### 17.2.13 Unit tests

```

<Decays: public>+≡
    public :: decays_test

<Decays: tests>≡
    subroutine decays_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Decays: execute tests>
end subroutine decays_test

```

### Testbed

As a variation of the `prepare_test_process` routine used elsewhere, we define here a routine that creates two processes (scattering  $ss \rightarrow ss$  and decay  $s \rightarrow f\bar{f}$ ), compiles and integrates them and prepares for event generation.

```

<Decays: public>+≡
    public :: prepare_testbed

<Decays: tests>+≡
    subroutine prepare_testbed &
        (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
         scattering, decay, decay_rest_frame)
        type(process_library_t), intent(out), target :: lib
        type(process_stack_t), intent(out) :: process_stack
        type(model_list_t), intent(out) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer, intent(out) :: model
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
    end subroutine prepare_testbed

```

```

type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
logical, intent(in) :: scattering, decay
logical, intent(in), optional :: decay_rest_frame
type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, procname2, run_id
type(qcd_t) :: qcd
class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt_data
real(default) :: sqrts

libname = prefix // "_lib"
procname1 = prefix // "_p"
procname2 = prefix // "_d"
run_id = prefix

call model_list%read_model (var_str ("Test"), &
    var_str ("Test.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("ff"), 0.4_default, is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (model)

if (scattering .and. decay) then
    prt_data => model_get_particle_ptr (model, 25)
    call particle_data_set (prt_data, p_is_stable = .false.)
end if

call prc_test_create_library (libname, lib, &
    scattering = .true., decay = .true., &
    procname1 = procname1, procname2 = procname2)

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (test_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)

if (scattering) then
    allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
    allocate (process)
    call process%init (procname1, &
        run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
    call process%init_component &
        (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
    sqrts = 1000
    call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
    call process%configure_phs ()
    call process%setup_mci ()
    call process%setup_terms ()

```



```

        allocate (process_instance)
        call process_instance%init (process%process_t)
        call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, n_it=1, n_calls=100)
        call process%final_integration (1)
        call process_instance%final ()
        deallocate (process_instance)

        call process%prepare_simulation (1)
        call process_stack%push (process)
    end if

    if (decay) then
        allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
        allocate (process)
        call process%init (procname2, &
            run_id, lib, os_data, qcd, rng_factory, model_list)
        call process%init_component &
            (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
        if (present (decay_rest_frame)) then
            call process%setup_beams_decay (rest_frame = decay_rest_frame)
        else
            call process%setup_beams_decay (rest_frame = .not. scattering)
        end if
        call process%configure_phs ()
        call process%setup_mci ()
        call process%setup_terms ()

        allocate (process_instance)
        call process_instance%init (process%process_t)
        call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, n_it=1, n_calls=100)
        call process%final_integration (1)
        call process_instance%final ()
        deallocate (process_instance)

        call process%prepare_simulation (1)
        call process_stack%push (process)
    end if

end subroutine prepare_testbed

```

### Simple decay configuration

We define a branching configuration with two decay modes. We set the integral values by hand, so we do not need to evaluate processes, yet.

```

<Decays: execute tests>≡
    call test (decays_1, "decays_1", &
        "branching and decay configuration", &
        u, results)

<Decays: tests>+≡
    subroutine decays_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u

```

```

type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(flavor_t) :: flv_h
type(flavor_t), dimension(2,1) :: flv_hbb, flv_hgg
type(unstable_config_t), allocatable :: unstable

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Set up branching and decay configuration"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
    var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

call flavor_init (flv_h, 25, model)
call flavor_init (flv_hbb(:,1), [5, -5], model)
call flavor_init (flv_hgg(:,1), [22, 22], model)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up branching and decay"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (unstable)
unstable%flv = flv_h
call unstable%init_decays ([var_str ("h_bb"), var_str ("h_gg")], model)

associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(1))
    allocate (decay%term_config (1))
    call decay%init_term (1, flv_hbb, stable = [.true., .true.], model=model)
    decay%integral = 1.234e-3_default
    decay%abs_error = decay%integral * .02_default
end associate

associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(2))
    allocate (decay%term_config (1))
    call decay%init_term (1, flv_hgg, stable = [.true., .true.], model=model)
    decay%integral = 3.085e-4_default
    decay%abs_error = decay%integral * .08_default
end associate

call unstable%compute ()
call unstable%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call unstable%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_1"

end subroutine decays_1

```

## Cascade decay configuration

We define a branching configuration with one decay, which is followed by another branching.

```

<Decays: execute tests>+≡
  call test (decays_2, "decays_2", &
    "cascade decay configuration", &
    u, results)

<Decays: tests>+≡
  subroutine decays_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(flavor_t) :: flv_h, flv_wp, flv_wm
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2,1) :: flv_hww, flv_wud, flv_wen
    type(unstable_config_t), allocatable :: unstable
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Set up cascade branching"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), &
      var_str ("SM.mdl"), os_data, model)

    call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [var_str ("h_ww")])
    call model_set_unstable (model, 24, [var_str ("w_ud"), var_str ("w_en")])

    call flavor_init (flv_h, 25, model)
    call flavor_init (flv_hww(:,1), [24, -24], model)
    call flavor_init (flv_wp, 24, model)
    call flavor_init (flv_wm, -24, model)
    call flavor_init (flv_wud(:,1), [2, -1], model)
    call flavor_init (flv_wen(:,1), [-11, 12], model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up branching and decay"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (unstable)
    unstable%flv = flv_h

```

```

call flavor_get_decays (unstable%flv, decay)
call unstable%init_decays (decay, model)

associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(1))

  decay%integral = 1.e-3_default
  decay%abs_error = decay%integral * .01_default

  allocate (decay%term_config (1))
  call decay%init_term (1, flv_hww, stable = [.false., .true.], model=model)

  select type (w => decay%term_config(1)%prt(1)%c)
  type is (unstable_config_t)

    associate (w_decay => w%decay_config(1))
      w_decay%integral = 2._default
      allocate (w_decay%term_config (1))
      call w_decay%init_term (1, flv_wud, stable = [.true., .true.], &
        model=model)
    end associate
    associate (w_decay => w%decay_config(2))
      w_decay%integral = 1._default
      allocate (w_decay%term_config (1))
      call w_decay%init_term (1, flv_wen, stable = [.true., .true.], &
        model=model)
    end associate
    call w%compute ()

  end select

end associate

call unstable%compute ()
call unstable%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call unstable%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_2"

end subroutine decays_2

```

## Decay and Process Object

We define a branching configuration with one decay and connect this with an actual process object.

*(Decays: execute tests)* +=

```

call test (decays_3, "decays_3", &
    "associate process", &
    u, results)
<Decays: tests>+≡
subroutine decays_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: prefix
    type(string_t) :: procname2
    type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(unstable_config_t), allocatable :: unstable

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Connect a decay configuration &
        &with a process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment and integrate process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    prefix = "decays_3"
    call prepare_testbed &
        (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
        scattering=.false., decay=.true., decay_rest_frame=.false.)

    procname2 = prefix // "_d"
    process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname2)
    call process%write (.false., u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up branching and decay"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (unstable)
    call flavor_init (unstable%flv, 25, model)
    call unstable%init_decays ([procname2], model)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Connect decay with process object"
    write (u, "(A)")

    associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(1))
        call decay%connect (process, model)
    end associate

    call unstable%compute ()
    call unstable%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call unstable%final ()
call process_stack%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_3"

end subroutine decays_3

```

## Decay and Process Object

Building upon the previous test, we set up a decay instance and generate a decay event.

```

<Decays: execute tests>+≡
  call test (decays_4, "decays_4", &
    "decay instance", &
    u, results)

<Decays: tests>+≡
  subroutine decays_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(string_t) :: prefix, procname2
    class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
    type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(unstable_config_t), allocatable, target :: unstable
    type(unstable_t), allocatable :: instance

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: Create a decay process and evaluate &
      &an instance"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment, process, &
      &and decay configuration"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    prefix = "decays_4"
    call prepare_testbed &
      (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &

```

```

        scattering=.false., decay=.true., decay_rest_frame = .false.)

procname2 = prefix // "_d"
process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname2)

allocate (unstable)
call flavor_init (unstable%flv, 25, model)
call unstable%init_decays ([procname2], model)

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2])

associate (decay => unstable%decay_config(1))
    call decay%connect (process, model)
end associate

call unstable%compute ()

allocate (rng_test_t :: rng)

allocate (instance)
call instance%init (unstable)
call instance%import_rng (rng)

call instance%select_chain ()
call instance%generate ()
call instance%write (u)

write (u, *)
call instance%write_process_instances (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call instance%final ()
call process_stack%final ()
call unstable%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_4"

end subroutine decays_4

```

### Decay with Parent Process

We define a scattering process  $ss \rightarrow ss$  and subsequent decays  $s \rightarrow f\bar{f}$ .

```

<Decays: execute tests> +=
    call test (decays_5, "decays_5", &
        "parent process and decay", &
        u, results)

<Decays: tests> +=

```

```

subroutine decays_5 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(string_t) :: prefix, procname1, procname2
  type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
  type(process_t), pointer :: process
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(decay_root_config_t), target :: decay_root_config
  type(decay_root_t) :: decay_root
  type(decay_chain_t) :: decay_chain
  integer :: i

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_5"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: Handle a process with subsequent decays"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment and parent process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  prefix = "decays_5"
  procname1 = prefix // "_p"
  procname2 = prefix // "_d"
  call prepare_testbed &
    (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
     scattering=.true., decay=.true.)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2])

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay tree configuration"
  write (u, "(A)")

  process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)
  call decay_root_config%connect (process, model, process_stack)
  call decay_root_config%compute ()
  call decay_root_config%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay tree"

  allocate (process_instance)
  call process_instance%init (process)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
  call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

```



```

call decay_root%init (decay_root_config, process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Select decay chain"
write (u, "(A)")

decay_root%selected_mci = 1
!!! Not yet implemented; there is only one term anyway:
! call process_instance%select_i_term (decay_root%selected_term)
decay_root%selected_term = 1
call decay_root%select_chain ()

call decay_chain%build (decay_root)

call decay_root%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate event"
write (u, "(A)")

call process%generate_unweighted_event (process_instance, &
    decay_root%selected_mci)
call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

call decay_root%generate ()

associate (term => decay_root%term(1))
  do i = 1, 2
    select type (unstable => term%particle_out(i)%c)
      type is (unstable_t)
        associate (decay => unstable%decay(1))
          call pacify (decay%process_instance)
        end associate
      end select
    end do
  end associate

write (u, "(A)")  "* Process instances"
write (u, "(A)")

call decay_root%write_process_instances (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate decay chain"
write (u, "(A)")

call decay_chain%evaluate ()
call decay_chain%write (u)

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,ES19.12)")  "chain probability =", &
    decay_chain%get_probability ()

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call decay_chain%final ()
call decay_root%final ()
call decay_root_config%final ()
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process%final ()
call process_stack%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_5"

end subroutine decays_5

```

## Decay as Event Transform

Again, we define a scattering process  $ss \rightarrow ss$  and subsequent decays  $s \rightarrow f\bar{f}$ .

```

<Decays: execute tests>+≡
    call test (decays_6, "decays_6", &
               "evt_decay object", &
               u, results)

<Decays: tests>+≡
    subroutine decays_6 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(process_library_t), target :: lib
        type(string_t) :: prefix, procname1, procname2
        type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
        type(process_t), pointer :: process
        type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
        type(evt_decay_t), target :: evt_decay
        integer :: factorization_mode
        logical :: keep_correlations

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: decays_6"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: Handle a process with subsequent decays"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment and parent process"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call os_data_init (os_data)

        prefix = "decays_6"
        procname1 = prefix // "_p"

```

```

procname2 = prefix // "_d"
call prepare_testbed &
    (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
    scattering=.true., decay=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay process"

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2])

process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)
allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay object"

call evt_decay%connect (process_instance, model, process_stack)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate scattering event"

call process%generate_unweighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Select decay chain and generate event"
write (u, "(A)")

call evt_decay%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
call evt_decay%generate_unweighted ()

factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
keep_correlations = .false.
call evt_decay%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

call evt_decay%write (u, verbose = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call evt_decay%final ()
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process_stack%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: decays_6"

end subroutine decays_6

```

## 17.3 Shower

```
<shower.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module shower  
  
    use kinds, only: default, double !NODEP!  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use constants, only : pi, twopi !NODEP!  
    use limits, only: LF !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use shower_base !NODEP!  
    use shower_partons !NODEP!  
    use shower_core !NODEP!  
    use shower_topythia !NODEP!  
    use muli, muli_output_unit => output_unit !NODEP!  
    use mlm_matching !NODEP!  
    use ckkw_pseudo_weights !NODEP!  
    use ckkw_matching !NODEP!  
    use tao_random_numbers !NODEP!  
    use pdf_builtin !NODEP!  
  
    use unit_tests  
    use os_interface  
    use xml  
  
    use sm_qcd  
    use flavors  
    use colors  
    use particles  
    use state_matrices  
    use subevents  
    use models  
    use variables  
    use beam_structures  
    use hep_common  
    use process_libraries  
    use prc_core  
    use prc_omega  
    use rng_base  
    use rng_tao  
    use mci_base  
    use mci_midpoint  
    use phs_base  
    use phs_single  
    use processes  
    use event_transforms
```

*⟨Standard module head⟩*

*⟨Shower: public⟩*

*⟨Shower: parameters⟩*

*⟨Shower: types⟩*

**contains**

*⟨Shower: procedures⟩*

*⟨Shower: tests⟩*

**end module shower**

### 17.3.1 PDF Parameters

The shower has to know about the PDF set used for the parent process, if any.  
We support the following:

```
⟨Shower: parameters⟩≡
    integer, parameter :: STRF_NONE = 0
    integer, parameter :: STRF_LHAPDF = 1
    integer, parameter :: STRF_PDF_BUILTIN = 2
```

### 17.3.2 Configuration Parameters

```
⟨Shower: public⟩≡
    public :: shower_settings_t

⟨Shower: types⟩≡
    type :: shower_settings_t
        logical :: ps_isr_active = .false.
        logical :: ps_fsr_active = .false.
        logical :: ps_use_PYTHIA_shower = .false.
        logical :: hadronization_active = .false.
        logical :: mlm_matching = .false.
        logical :: ckkw_matching = .false.
        logical :: muli_active = .false.

        logical :: ps_PYTHIA_verbose = .false.
        type(string_t) :: ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE

        !!! values present in PYTHIA and WHIZARDS PS,
        !!! comments denote corresponding PYTHIA values
        real(default) :: ps_mass_cutoff = 1._default      ! PARJ(82)
        real(default) :: ps_fsr_lambda = 0.29_default     ! PARP(72)
        real(default) :: ps_isr_lambda = 0.29_default     ! PARP(61)
        integer :: ps_max_n_flavors = 5                  ! MSTJ(45)
        logical :: ps_isr_alpha_s_running = .true.       ! MSTP(64)
        logical :: ps_fsr_alpha_s_running = .true.       ! MSTJ(44)
        real(default) :: ps_fixed_alpha_s = 0._default   ! PARU(111)
```

```

logical :: ps_isr_pt_ordered = .false.
logical :: ps_isr_angular_ordered = .true.          ! MSTP(62)
real(default) :: ps_isr_primordial_kt_width = 0._default ! PARP(91)
real(default) :: ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff = 5._default ! PARP(93)
real(default) :: ps_isr_z_cutoff = 0.999_default ! 1-PARP(66)
real(default) :: ps_isr_minenergy = 2._default      ! PARP(65)
real(default) :: ps_isr_tscalefactor = 1._default
logical :: ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons = .true. ! MSTP(63)

!!! MLM settings
type(mlm_matching_settings_t) :: ms

!!! CKKW Matching
type(ckkw_matching_settings_t) :: ckkw_settings
type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t) :: ckkw_weights
contains
  <Shower: shower settings: TBP>
end type shower_settings_t

```

Read in the shower, matching and hadronization settings

```

<Shower: shower settings: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => shower_settings_init

<Shower: procedures>≡
  subroutine shower_settings_init (shower_settings, var_list)
    class(shower_settings_t), intent(out) :: shower_settings
    type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list

    shower_settings%ps_isr_active = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_active"))
    shower_settings%ps_fsr_active = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_active"))
    shower_settings%hadronization_active = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?hadronization_active"))
    shower_settings%mlm_matching = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?mlm_matching"))
    shower_settings%ckkw_matching = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ckkw_matching"))
    shower_settings%multi_active = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?multi_active"))

    if (.not. shower_settings%ps_fsr_active .and. &
      .not. shower_settings%ps_isr_active .and. &
      .not. shower_settings%hadronization_active .and. &
      .not. shower_settings%mlm_matching) then
      return
    end if

    shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_use_PYTHIA_shower"))
    shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_verbose = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_PYTHIA_verbose"))
    shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE = &
      var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE"))

```

```

shower_settings%ps_mass_cutoff = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_mass_cutoff"))
shower_settings%ps_fsr_lambda = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_fsr_lambda"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_lambda = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_lambda"))
shower_settings%ps_max_n_flavors = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("ps_max_n_flavors"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_alpha_s_running = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_alpha_s_running"))
shower_settings%ps_fsr_alpha_s_running = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_alpha_s_running"))
shower_settings%ps_fixed_alpha_s = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_fixed_alpha_s"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_pt_ordered = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_pt_ordered"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_angular_ordered = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_angular_ordered"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_width = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_primordial_kt_width"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_z_cutoff = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_z_cutoff"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_minenergy = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_minenergy"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_tscalefactor = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_tscalefactor"))
shower_settings%ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
        var_str ("?ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons"))

!!! MLM matching
shower_settings%ms%mlm_Qcut_ME = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_Qcut_ME"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_Qcut_PS = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_Qcut_PS"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_ptmin = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_ptmin"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_etamax = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_etamax"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_Rmin = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_Rmin"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_Emin = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_Emin"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_nmaxMEjets = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("mlm_nmaxMEjets"))

shower_settings%ms%mlm_ETclusfactor = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_ETclusfactor"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_ETclusminE = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_ETclusminE"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_etaclusfactor = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mlm_etaclusfactor"))

```

```

shower_settings%ms%mlm_Rclusfactor = &
    var_list_get_rval(var_list, var_str ("mlm_Rclusfactor"))
shower_settings%ms%mlm_Eclusfactor = &
    var_list_get_rval(var_list, var_str ("mlm_Eclusfactor"))

!!! CKKW matching
! TODO
end subroutine shower_settings_init

```

*<Shower: shower settings: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: write => shower_settings_write

```

*<Shower: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine shower_settings_write (object, unit)
class(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Shower settings:"
call write_separator (u)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Master switches:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)") &
    "ps_isr_active           = ", object%ps_isr_active
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)") &
    "ps_fsr_active           = ", object%ps_fsr_active
write (u, "(1x,A)") "General settings:"
if (object%ps_isr_active .or. object%ps_fsr_active) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)") &
        "ps_use_PYTHIA_shower       = ", object%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_mass_cutoff             = ", object%ps_mass_cutoff
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,I1)") &
        "ps_max_n_flavors           = ", object%ps_max_n_flavors
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") " [ISR and FSR off]"
end if
if (object%ps_isr_active) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "ISR settings:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)") &
        "ps_isr_pt_ordered           = ", object%ps_isr_pt_ordered
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_isr_lambda               = ", object%ps_isr_lambda
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)") &
        "ps_isr_alpha_s_running       = ", object%ps_isr_alpha_s_running
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_isr_primordial_kt_width   = ", object%ps_isr_primordial_kt_width
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff = ", &
        object%ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_isr_z_cutoff             = ", object%ps_isr_z_cutoff
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
        "ps_isr_minenergy            = ", object%ps_isr_minenergy
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &

```



```

        "ps_isr_tscalefactor" = ", object%ps_isr_tscalefactor
else if (object%ps_fsr_active) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)" " [ISR off]"
end if
if (object%ps_fsr_active) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)" "FSR settings:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)" &
        "ps_fsr_lambda" = ", object%ps_fsr_lambda
    write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)" &
        "ps_fsr_alpha_s_running" = ", object%ps_fsr_alpha_s_running
else if (object%ps_isr_active) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)" " [FSR off]"
end if
write (u, "(1x,A)" "Hadronization settings:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)" &
    "hadronization_active" = ", object%hadronization_active
write (u, "(1x,A)" "Matching Settings:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)" &
    "mlm_matching" = ", object%mlm_matching
if (object%mlm_matching) then
    call mlm_matching_settings_write (object%ms, u)
end if
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)" &
    "ckkw_matching" = ", object%ckkw_matching
if (object%ckkw_matching) then
    ! TODO ckkw settings etc.
end if
write (u, "(1x,A)" "PYTHIA specific settings:"
write (u, "(3x,A,1x,L1)" &
    "ps_PYTHIA_verbose" = ", object%ps_PYTHIA_verbose
write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)" &
    "ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE" = ', ', &
    char(object%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE), "' "
end subroutine shower_settings_write

```

### 17.3.3 Shower Application Interface

The wrapper subroutine for the shower and the hadronization interface and MLM matching. This should be the only subroutine called from WHIZARD.

*(Shower: public)*+≡

```
public :: apply_shower_particle_set
```

*(Shower: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine apply_shower_particle_set &
    (particle_set, shower_settings, model, model_hadrons, &
    os_data, pdf_type, pdf_set, valid, vetoed)
type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: shower_settings
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
integer, intent(in) :: pdf_type
integer, intent(in) :: pdf_set

```

```

logical, intent(inout) :: valid
logical, intent(inout) :: vetoed
real(kind=double) :: pdftest
logical, parameter :: debug = .false., to_file = .false.

type(mlm_matching_data_t) :: mlm_matching_data
logical, save :: matching_disabled=.false.
procedure(shower_pdf), pointer :: pdf_func => null()

interface
  subroutine evolvePDFM (set, x, q, ff)
    integer, intent(in) :: set
    double precision, intent(in) :: x, q
    double precision, dimension(-6:6), intent(out) :: ff
  end subroutine evolvePDFM
end interface

if (.not. shower_settings%ps_fsr_active .and. &
    .not. shower_settings%ps_isr_active .and. &
    .not. shower_settings%hadronization_active .and. &
    .not. shower_settings%mlm_matching) then
  ! return if nothing to do
  return
end if

! return if already invalid or vetoed
if (.not. valid .or. vetoed) return

if (signal_is_pending ()) return

! ensure that lhapdf is initialized
if (pdf_type .eq. STRF_LHAPDF) then
  if (shower_settings%ps_isr_active .and. &
      (abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
                             (particle_set, 1))) >= 1000) .and. &
      (abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
                             (particle_set, 2))) >= 1000)) then
    call GetQ2max (0,pdftest)
    if (pdftest == 0._double) then
      call msg_fatal ("ISR QCD shower enabled, but LHAPDF not" // &
                     "initialized," // LF // "      aborting simulation")
      return
    end if
  end if
  pdf_func => evolvePDFM
else if (pdf_type == STRF_PDF_BUILTIN) then
  if (shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower) then
    call msg_fatal ("Builtin PDFs cannot be used for PYTHIA showers," &
                   // LF // "      aborting simulation")
    return
  end if
  pdf_func => pdf_evolve_LHAPDF
end if
if (shower_settings%mlm_matching .and. shower_settings%ckkw_matching) then

```

```

        call msg_fatal ("Both MLM and CKKW matching activated," // &
            LF // "      aborting simulation")
        return
    end if

    if (debug) call shower_settings%write ()

    if (shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower .or. &
        shower_settings%hadronization_active) then
        if (.not. shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_verbose) then
            call PYGIVE ('MSTU(12)=12345')
            call PYGIVE ('MSTU(13)=0')
        else
            call PYGIVE ('MSTU(13)=1')
        end if
    end if

    if (debug) print *, "Shower: beam checks"

    if (.not. matching_disabled) then
        !!! Check if the beams are hadrons
        if ((abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, 1))) <= 18) .and. &
            (abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, 2))) <= 18)) then
            mlm_matching_data%is_hadron_collision = .false.
        else if ((abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, 1))) >= 1000) .and. &
            (abs (particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, 2))) >= 1000)) then
            mlm_matching_data%is_hadron_collision = .true.
        else
            call msg_error (" Matching didn't recognize beams setup," // &
                LF // "      disabling matching")
            matching_disabled = .true.
            return
        end if
    end if

    !!! SHOWER
    if (shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower .or. &
        (.not. shower_settings%ps_fsr_active .and. &
        .not. shower_settings%ps_isr_active .and. &
        shower_settings%hadronization_active)) then
        call apply_PYTHIAshower_particle_set (particle_set, &
            shower_settings, mlm_matching_data%P_ME, model, model_hadrons, &
            valid)
        if (debug) call pylist(2)
    else
        call apply_WHIZARDshower_particle_set (particle_set, &
            shower_settings, mlm_matching_data%P_ME, model, model_hadrons, &
            os_data, pdf_func, pdf_set, valid, vetoed)
        if (vetoed) return
    end if
    if (debug) then

```

```

        call particle_set_write (particle_set)
        print *, " after SHOWER"
    end if

    if (shower_settings%mlm_matching .and. &
        (matching_disabled.eqv..false.)) then
        !!! MLM stage 2 -> PS jets and momenta
        call matching_transfer_PS &
            (mlm_matching_data, particle_set, shower_settings)
        !!! MLM stage 3 -> reconstruct and possible reject
        call mlm_matching_apply (mlm_matching_data, shower_settings%ms, vetoed)
        if (vetoed) then
            call mlm_matching_data_final (mlm_matching_data)
            return
        end if
    endif

    !!! HADRONIZATION
    if (shower_settings%hadronization_active) then
        !! Assume that the event record is still in the PYTHIA COMMON BLOCKS
        !! transferred there by one of the shower routines
        if (valid) then
            call apply_PYTHIAhadronization (particle_set, &
                shower_settings, model, model_hadrons, valid)
        end if
    end if

    !!! FINAL

    call mlm_matching_data_final (mlm_matching_data)

    if (debug) print *, "SHOWER+HAD+MATCHING finished"

contains

    subroutine shower_set_PYTHIA_error (mstu23)
        ! PYTHIA common blocks
        IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
        IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
        COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
        SAVE/PYDAT1/

        integer, intent(in) :: mstu23

        MSTU(23) = mstu23
    end subroutine shower_set_PYTHIA_error

    function shower_get_PYTHIA_error () result (mstu23)
        ! PYTHIA common blocks
        IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
        IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
        COMMON/PYDAT1/MSTU(200),PARU(200),MSTJ(200),PARJ(200)
        SAVE/PYDAT1/

        integer :: mstu23

```

```

    mstu23 = MSTU(23)
end function shower_get_PYTHIA_error

subroutine apply_PYTHIAshower_particle_set &
    (particle_set, shower_settings, JETS_ME, model, model_hadrons, valid)
<HEP common: parameters>
<HEP common: variables>
<HEP common: common blocks>

    type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
    type(particle_set_t) :: pset_reduced
    type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: shower_settings
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: JETS_ME
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
    logical, intent(inout) :: valid
    real(kind=default) :: rand

    ! units for transfer from WHIZARD to PYTHIA and back
    integer :: u_W2P, u_P2W
    integer, save :: pythia_initialized_for_NPRUP = 0
    logical, save :: pythia_warning_given = .false.
    logical, save :: msg_written = .false.
    type(string_t) :: remaining_PYGIVE, partial_PYGIVE
    character*10 buffer

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return

    if (debug) then
        print *, "debugging the shower"
        print *, IDBMUP(1), IDBMUP(2)
        print *, EBMUP, PDFGUP, PDFSUP, IDWTUP
        print *, "NPRUP = ", NPRUP
    end if

    ! check if the beam particles are quarks
    if (any (abs(IDBMUP) <= 8)) then
        ! PYTHIA doesn't support these settings
        if (.not. pythia_warning_given) then
            call msg_error ("PYTHIA doesn't support quarks as beam particles," &
                // LF // "      neglecting ISR, FSR and hadronization")
            pythia_warning_given = .true.
        end if
        return
    end if

    call particle_set_reduce (particle_set, pset_reduced)
    call hepeup_from_particle_set (pset_reduced)
    call hepeup_set_event_parameters (proc_id=1)

    u_W2P = free_unit ()
    if (debug .and. to_file) then
        open (unit=u_W2P, status="replace", &

```

```

        file="whizardout1.lhe", action="readwrite")
else
    open (unit=u_W2P, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
end if
call shower_W2P_write_event (u_W2P)
rewind (u_W2P)
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
write (buffer, "(I10)") u_W2P
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(161)="//buffer)
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(162)="//buffer)
if (debug) write (*, "(A)") buffer
if (shower_settings%ps_isr_active) then
    call PYGIVE ("MSTP(61)=1")
else
    call PYGIVE ("MSTP(61)=0") !!! switch off ISR
end if
if (shower_settings%ps_fsr_active) then
    call PYGIVE ("MSTP(71)=1")
else
    call PYGIVE ("MSTP(71)=0") !!! switch off FSR
end if
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(111)=0") !!! switch off hadronization

if (pythia_initialized_for_NPRUP >= NPRUP) then
    if (debug) print *, "calling upinit"
    call upinit
    if (debug) print *, "returned from upinit"
else
    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_mass_cutoff
    call PYGIVE ("PARJ(82)="//buffer)
    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_isr_tscalefactor
    call PYGIVE ("PARP(71)="//buffer)

    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_fsr_lambda
    call PYGIVE ("PARP(72)="//buffer)
    write(buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_isr_lambda
    call PYGIVE ("PARP(61)="//buffer)
    write (buffer, "(I10)") shower_settings%ps_max_n_flavors
    call PYGIVE ("MSTJ(45)="//buffer)
    if (shower_settings%ps_isr_alpha_s_running) then
        call PYGIVE ("MSTP(64)=2")
    else
        call PYGIVE ("MSTP(64)=0")
    end if
    if (shower_settings%ps_fsr_alpha_s_running) then
        call PYGIVE ("MSTJ(44)=2")
    else
        call PYGIVE ("MSTJ(44)=0")
    end if
    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_fixed_alpha_s
    call PYGIVE ("PARU(111)="//buffer)
    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_width
    call PYGIVE ("PARP(91)="//buffer)
    write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff

```

```

call PYGIVE ("PARP(93)="//buffer)
write (buffer, "(F10.5)") 1._double - shower_settings%ps_isr_z_cutoff
call PYGIVE ("PARP(66)="//buffer)
write (buffer, "(F10.5)") shower_settings%ps_isr_minenergy
call PYGIVE ("PARP(65)="//buffer)
if (shower_settings%ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons) then
  call PYGIVE ("MSTP(63)=0")
else
  call PYGIVE ("MSTP(63)=2")
end if
if (shower_settings%mlm_matching) then
  CALL PYGIVE ('MSTP(62)=2')
  CALL PYGIVE ('MSTP(67)=0')
end if
if (debug) print *, "calling pyinit"
call PYINIT ("USER", "", "", 0D0)

call tao_random_number (rand)
write (buffer, "(I10)") floor (rand*900000000)
call pygive ("MRPY(1)="//buffer)
call pygive ("MRPY(2)=0")

if (len(shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE) > 0) then
  remaining_PYGIVE = shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE
  do while (len (remaining_PYGIVE)>0)
    call split (remaining_PYGIVE, partial_PYGIVE, ";")
    call PYGIVE (char (partial_PYGIVE))
  end do
  if (shower_get_PYTHIA_error() /= 0) then
    call msg_fatal &
      (" PYTHIA did not recognize ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE setting.")
  end if
end if

pythia_initialized_for_NPRUP = NPRUP
end if

if (.not. msg_written) then
  call msg_message ("Using PYTHIA interface for parton showers")
  msg_written = .true.
end if
call PYEVNT ()

if (debug) write (*, "(A)") "called pyevnt"

u_P2W = free_unit ()
write (buffer, "(I10)") u_P2W
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(163)="//buffer)
if (debug .and. to_file) then
  open (unit = u_P2W, file="pythiaout.lhe", status="replace", &
    action="readwrite")
else
  open (unit = u_P2W, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
end if

```

```

if (debug) write (*, "(A)") "calling PYLHEO"
!!! convert pythia /PYJETS/ to lhef given in MSTU(163)=u_P2W
call PYLHEO
!!! read and add lhef from u_P2W
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
call shower_add_lhef_to_particle_set &
    (particle_set, u_P2W, model, model_hadrons)
close (unit=u_P2W)

!!! Transfer momenta of the partons in the final state of
!!! the hard interaction
if (shower_settings%mlm_matching) &
    call get_ME_momenta_from_PYTHIA (JETS_ME)

if (shower_get_PYTHIA_error () > 0) then
    !!! clean up, discard shower and exit
    call shower_set_PYTHIA_error (0)
    valid = .false.
end if
close (unit=u_W2P)
end subroutine apply_PYTHIAshower_particle_set

subroutine apply_WHIZARDshower_particle_set &
    (particle_set, shower_settings, JETS_ME, model, model_hadrons, &
    os_data, pdf_func, pdf_set, valid, vetoed)
type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: shower_settings
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(inout) :: JETS_ME
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
procedure(shower_pdf), pointer, intent(in) :: pdf_func
integer, intent(in) :: pdf_set
logical, intent(inout) :: valid
logical, intent(out) :: vetoed

type(multi_type), save :: mi
type(shower_t) :: shower
type(parton_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: partons, hadrons
type(parton_pointer_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: &
    parton_pointers, final_ME_partons
real(kind=default) :: mi_scale, ps_scale, shat, phi
type(parton_pointer_t) :: temppp
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: connections
integer :: n_loop, i, j, k
integer :: n_hadrons, n_in, n_out
integer :: n_int
integer :: max_color_nr
integer, dimension(2) :: col_array
integer, dimension(1) :: parent
type(flavor_t) :: flv
type(color_t) :: col
logical, save :: msg_written = .false.
type(string_t) :: filename

```



```

integer, dimension(2,4) :: color_corr
integer :: color_i, color_j
character*5 buffer
integer :: u_S2W

vetoed = .false.

if (signal_is_pending ()) return

! transfer settings from shower_settings to shower
call shower_set_D_Min_t (shower_settings%ps_mass_cutoff**2)
call shower_set_D_Lambda_fsr (shower_settings%ps_fsr_lambda)
call shower_set_D_Lambda_isr (shower_settings%ps_isr_lambda)
call shower_set_D_Nf (shower_settings%ps_max_n_flavors)
call shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_fsr &
    (shower_settings%ps_fsr_alpha_s_running)
call shower_set_D_running_alpha_s_isr &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_alpha_s_running)
call shower_set_D_constantalpha_s &
    (shower_settings%ps_fixed_alpha_s)
call shower_set_isr_pt_ordered &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_pt_ordered)
call shower_set_isr_angular_ordered &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_angular_ordered)
call shower_set_primordial_kt_width &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_width)
call shower_set_primordial_kt_cutoff &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff)
call shower_set_maxz_isr (shower_settings%ps_isr_z_cutoff)
call shower_set_minenergy_timelike (shower_settings%ps_isr_minenergy)
call shower_set_tscalefactor_isr (shower_settings%ps_isr_tscalefactor)
call shower_set_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons)
call shower_set_pdf_set (pdf_set)
call shower_set_pdf_func (pdf_func)

if (.not.msg_written) then
    call msg_message ("Using WHIZARD's internal showering")
    msg_written = .true.
end if

n_loop = 0
TRY_SHOWER: do ! just a loop to be able to discard events
    n_loop = n_loop + 1
    if (n_loop > 1000) call msg_fatal &
        ("Shower: too many loops (try_shower)")
    call shower%create ()
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    max_color_nr = 0

    n_hadrons = 0
    n_in = 0
    n_out = 0
    do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)

```

```

        if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, i)) == PRT_BEAM) &
            n_hadrons = n_hadrons + 1
        if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, i)) == PRT_INCOMING) &
            n_in = n_in + 1
        if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, i)) == PRT_OUTGOING) &
            n_out = n_out + 1
    end do

    allocate (connections (1:particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)))
    connections = 0

    allocate (hadrons (1:2))
    allocate (partons (1:n_in+n_out))
    allocate (parton_pointers (1:n_in+n_out))

    j=0
    if (n_hadrons > 0) then
        ! Transfer hadrons
        do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
            if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
                (particle_set, i)) == PRT_BEAM) then
                j = j+1
                hadrons(j)%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
                hadrons(j)%momentum = particle_get_momentum &
                    (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
                hadrons(j)%t = hadrons(j)%momentum**2
                hadrons(j)%type = particle_get_pdg &
                    (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
                col_array=particle_get_color (particle_set_get_particle &
                    (particle_set, i))
                hadrons(j)%c1 = col_array(1)
                hadrons(j)%c2 = col_array(2)
                max_color_nr = max (max_color_nr, abs(hadrons(j)%c1), &
                    abs(hadrons(j)%c2))
                hadrons(j)%interactionnr = 1
                connections(i)=j
            end if
        end do
    end if

    ! transfer incoming partons
    j = 0
    do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
        if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
            (particle_set, i)) == PRT_INCOMING) then
            j = j+1
            partons(j)%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
            partons(j)%momentum = particle_get_momentum &
                (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
            partons(j)%t = partons(j)%momentum**2
            partons(j)%type = particle_get_pdg &

```

```

        (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
col_array=particle_get_color &
        (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
partons(j)%c1 = col_array (1)
partons(j)%c2 = col_array (2)
parton_pointers(j)%p => partons(j)
max_color_nr = max (max_color_nr, abs (partons(j)%c1), &
        abs (partons(j)%c2))
connections(i)=j
! insert dependences on hadrons
if (particle_get_n_parents (particle_set_get_particle &
        (particle_set, i))==1) then
        parent = particle_get_parents (particle_set_get_particle &
                (particle_set, i))
        partons(j)%initial => hadrons (connections (parent(1)))
        partons(j)%x = space_part_norm (partons(j)%momentum) / &
                space_part_norm (partons(j)%initial%momentum)
end if
end if
end do
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
!!! transfer outgoing partons
do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
        if (particle_get_status (particle_set_get_particle &
                (particle_set, i)) == PRT_OUTGOING) then
                j = j + 1
                partons(j)%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
                partons(j)%momentum = particle_get_momentum &
                        (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
                partons(j)%t = partons(j)%momentum**2
                partons(j)%type = particle_get_pdg &
                        (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
                col_array=particle_get_color &
                        (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i))
                partons(j)%c1 = col_array(1)
                partons(j)%c2 = col_array(2)
                parton_pointers(j)%p => partons(j)
                max_color_nr = max (max_color_nr, abs &
                        (partons(j)%c1), abs (partons(j)%c2))
                connections(i) = j
        end if
end do

deallocate (connections)

! insert these partons in shower
call shower%set_next_color_nr (1 + max_color_nr)
call shower%add_interaction_2ton_CKKW &
        (parton_pointers, shower_settings%ckkw_weights)

if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (shower_settings%multi_active) then
        !!! Initialize multi pdf sets, unless initialized
        if (mi%is_initialized ()) then

```

```

        call mi%restart ()
    else
        if (debug) then
            ! call shower%write ()
            ! print *, "-----"
            ! call interaction_write (shower%interactions(i)%i)
            ! print *, "-----"
            ! call vector4_write &
            !     (shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(1)%p%momentum)
            ! call vector4_write &
            !     (shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2)%p%momentum)
            ! print *, "-----"
        end if
        call mi%initialize (&
            GeV2_scale_cutoff=D_Min_t, &
            GeV2_s=shower_interaction_get_s &
            (shower%interactions(1)%i), &
            muli_dir=char(os_data%whizard_mulipath))
    end if

    !!! initial interaction
    call mi%apply_initial_interaction ( &
        GeV2_s=shower_interaction_get_s(shower%interactions(1)%i), &
        x1=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(1)%p%parent%x, &
        x2=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2)%p%parent%x, &
        pdg_f1=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(1)%p%parent%type, &
        pdg_f2=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2)%p%parent%type, &
        n1=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(1)%p%parent%nr, &
        n2=shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2)%p%parent%nr)
    end if

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return

    if (shower_settings%ckkw_matching) then
        ! CKKW Matching
        call ckkw_matching_apply (shower, &
            shower_settings%ckkw_settings, &
            shower_settings%ckkw_weights, vetoed)
        if (vetoed) then
            return
        end if
    end if

    if (shower_settings%ps_isr_active) then
        i = 0
        BRANCHINGS: do
            i = i+1
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            if (shower_settings%multi_active) then
                call mi%generate_gev2_pt2 &
                    (shower%get_ISR_scale (), mi_scale)
            else
                mi_scale = 0.0
            end if
        end if
    end if

```

```

!!! Shower: debugging
!!! shower%generate_next_isr_branching returns a pointer to
!!! the parton with the next ISR-branching, this parton's
!!! scale is the scale of the next branching
! temppp=shower%generate_next_isr_branching_veto ()
temppp = shower%generate_next_isr_branching ()

if (.not. associated (temppp%p) .and. &
    mi_scale < D_Min_t) then
    exit BRANCHINGS
end if
!!! check if branching or interaction occurs next
if (associated (temppp%p)) then
    ps_scale = abs(temppp%p%t)
else
    ps_scale = 0._default
end if
if (mi_scale > ps_scale) then
    !!! discard branching evolution lower than mi_scale
    call shower%set_max_ISR_scale (mi_scale)
    if (associated (temppp%p)) &
        call parton_set_simulated(temppp%p, .false.)

    !!! execute new interaction
    deallocate (partons)
    deallocate (parton_pointers)
    allocate (partons(1:4))
    allocate (parton_pointers(1:4))
    do j = 1, 4
        partons(j)%nr = shower%get_next_free_nr ()
        partons(j)%belongstointeraction = .true.
        parton_pointers(j)%p => partons(j)
    end do
    call mi%generate_partons (partons(1)%nr, partons(2)%nr, &
        partons(1)%x, partons(2)%x, &
        partons(1)%type, partons(2)%type, &
        partons(3)%type, partons(4)%type)
    !!! calculate momenta
    shat = partons(1)%x * partons(2)%x * &
        shower_interaction_get_s(shower%interactions(1)%i)
    call parton_set_momentum (partons(1), &
        0.5_default*sqrt(shat), 0._default, 0._default, &
        0.5_default*sqrt(shat))
    call parton_set_momentum (partons(2), &
        0.5_default*sqrt(shat), 0._default, 0._default, &
        -0.5_default*sqrt(shat))
    call parton_set_initial (partons(1), &
        shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(1)%p%initial)
    call parton_set_initial (partons(2), &
        shower%interactions(1)%i%partons(2)%p%initial)
    partons(1)%belongstoFSR = .false.
    partons(2)%belongstoFSR = .false.
    !!! calculate color connections

```

```

call mi%get_color_correlations &
    (shower%get_next_color_nr (), &
    max_color_nr,color_corr)
call shower%set_next_color_nr (max_color_nr)

partons(1)%c1 = color_corr(1,1)
partons(1)%c2 = color_corr(2,1)
partons(2)%c1 = color_corr(1,2)
partons(2)%c2 = color_corr(2,2)
partons(3)%c1 = color_corr(1,3)
partons(3)%c2 = color_corr(2,3)
partons(4)%c1 = color_corr(1,4)
partons(4)%c2 = color_corr(2,4)

call tao_random_number (phi)
phi = 2*pi*phi
call parton_set_momentum (partons(3), &
    0.5_default*sqrt(shat), sqrt(mi_scale)*cos(phi), &
    sqrt(mi_scale)*sin(phi), sqrt(0.25_default*shat - &
    mi_scale))
call parton_set_momentum (partons(4), &
    0.5_default*sqrt(shat), -sqrt(mi_scale)*cos(phi), &
    -sqrt(mi_scale)*sin(phi), -sqrt(0.25_default*shat - &
    mi_scale))
partons(3)%belongstoFSR = .true.
partons(4)%belongstoFSR = .true.

call shower%add_interaction_2ton (parton_pointers)
n_int = size (shower%interactions)
do k = 1, 2
    call mi%replace_parton &
        (shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(k)%p%initial%nr, &
        shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(k)%p%nr, &
        shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(k)%p%parent%nr, &
        shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(k)%p%type, &
        shower%interactions(n_int)%i%partons(k)%p%x, &
        mi_scale)
end do
call shower%write ()
else
    !!! execute the next branching 'found' in the previous step
    call shower%execute_next_isr_branching (temppp)
    if (shower_settings%multi_active) then
        call mi%replace_parton (temppp%p%initial%nr, &
            temppp%p%child1%nr, temppp%p%nr, &
            temppp%p%type, temppp%p%x, ps_scale)
    end if

    if (debug) call shower%write ()
end if
end do BRANCHINGS

call shower%generate_fsr_for_isr_partons ()
if (debug) call shower%write ()

```

```

else
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call shower%simulate_no_isr_shower ()
end if

!!! some bookkeeping, needed after the shower is done
call shower%boost_to_labframe ()
call shower%generate_primordial_kt ()
call shower%update_beamremnants ()
!!! clean-up muli: we should finalize the muli pdf sets when
!!!     all runs are done.
! call mi%finalize ()

if (shower_settings%ps_fsr_active) then
    do i = 1, size (shower%interactions)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call shower%interaction_generate_fsr_2ton &
            (shower%interactions(i)%i)
    end do
else
    call shower%simulate_no_fsr_shower ()
end if
if (debug) then
    call shower%write ()
    write (*, "(A)") "SHOWER_FINISHED"
end if

if (shower_settings%mlm_matching) then
    !!! transfer momenta of the partons in the final state of
    !!!     the hard ininteraction
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (allocated (JETS_ME)) deallocate (JETS_ME)
    call shower%get_final_colored_ME_partons (final_ME_partons)
    if (allocated (final_ME_partons)) then
        allocate (JETS_ME(1:size (final_ME_partons)))
        do i = 1, size (final_ME_partons)
            !!! transfer
            JETS_ME(i) = final_ME_partons(i)%p%momentum
        end do
        deallocate (final_ME_partons)
    end if
end if

u_S2W = free_unit ()
if (debug .and. to_file) then
    open (unit=u_S2W, file="showerout.lhe", &
        status="replace", action="readwrite")
else
    open (unit=u_S2W, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
end if
call shower%write_lhef (u_S2W)
call shower_add_lhef_to_particle_set &
    (particle_set, u_S2W, model, model_hadrons)
close (u_S2W)

```

```

    !!! move the particle data to the PYTHIA COMMON BLOCKS in case
    !!! hadronization is active
    if (shower_settings%hadronization_active) then
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call shower_converttopythia (shower)
    end if
    deallocate (partons)
    deallocate (parton_pointers)
    exit TRY_SHOWER
end do TRY_SHOWER
if (debug) then
    call particle_set_write (particle_set)
    print *, &
        "-----apply_shower_particle_set-----"
    print *, &
        "-----"
    if (size (shower%interactions) >= 2) then
        call shower%write ()
    end if
end if

call shower%final ()
!!! clean-up muli: we should finalize the muli pdf sets
!!!      when all runs are done.
! call mi%finalize()
return
end subroutine apply_WHIZARDshower_particle_set

subroutine get_ME_momenta_from_PYTHIA (JETS_ME)
    IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
    IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)
    COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
    SAVE /PYJETS/

    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: JETS_ME
    real(kind=default), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: pdum
    integer :: i, j, n_jets

    if (allocated (JETS_ME)) deallocate (JETS_ME)
    if (allocated (pdum)) deallocate (pdum)

    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    !!! final ME partons start in 7th row of event record
    i = 7
    !!! find number of jets
    n_jets = 0
    do
        if (K(I,1) /= 21) exit
        if ((K(I,2) == 21) .or. (abs(K(I,2)) <= 6)) then
            n_jets = n_jets + 1
        end if
        i = i + 1
    end do

```



```

if (n_jets == 0) return
allocate (JETS_ME(1:n_jets))
allocate (pdum(1:n_jets,4))

!!! transfer jets
i = 7
j = 1
pdum = p
do
  if (K(I,1) /= 21) exit
  if ((K(I,2) == 21) .or. (abs(K(I,2)).le.6)) then
    JETS_ME(j)= vector4_moving (pdum(I,4), &
      vector3_moving ( [pdum(I,1),pdum(I,2),pdum(I,3)] ))
    j = j + 1
  end if
  i = i + 1
end do
end subroutine get_ME_momenta_from_PYTHIA

subroutine matching_transfer_PS &
  (data, particle_set, settings)
  !!! transfer partons after parton shower to data%P_PS
  type(mlm_matching_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
  type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
  type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
  integer :: i, j, n_jets_PS
  integer, dimension(2) :: col
  type(particle_t) :: tempprt
  real(double) :: eta, E, pl
  type(vector4_t) :: p_tmp

  !!! loop over particles and extract final colored ones with eta<etamax
  n_jets_PS = 0
  do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    tempprt = particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i)
    if (particle_get_status (tempprt) /= PRT_OUTGOING) cycle
    col = particle_get_color (tempprt)
    if (all (col == 0)) cycle
    if (data%is_hadron_collision) then
      p_tmp = particle_get_momentum (tempprt)
      if (energy (p_tmp) - longitudinal_part (p_tmp) < 1.E-10_default .or. &
        energy (p_tmp) + longitudinal_part (p_tmp) < 1.E-10_default) then
        eta = pseudorapidity (p_tmp)
      else
        eta = rapidity (p_tmp)
      end if
    if (eta > settings%ms%mlm_etaClusfactor * &
      settings%ms%mlm_etamax) then
      if (debug) then
        print *, "REJECTING"
        call particle_write (tempprt)
      end if
    end if
  end do

```

```

        cycle
    end if
end if
n_jets_PS = n_jets_PS + 1
end do

allocate (data%P_PS(1:n_jets_PS))
if (debug) write (*, "(A,1x,I0)") "n_jets_ps =", n_jets_ps

j = 1
do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
    tempprt = particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i)
    if (particle_get_status (tempprt) /= PRT_OUTGOING) cycle
    col = particle_get_color (tempprt)
    if(all(col == 0)) cycle
    if (data%is_hadron_collision) then
        p_tmp = particle_get_momentum (tempprt)
        if (energy (p_tmp) - longitudinal_part (p_tmp) < 1.E-10_default .or. &
            energy (p_tmp) + longitudinal_part (p_tmp) < 1.E-10_default) then
            eta = pseudorapidity (p_tmp)
        else
            eta = rapidity (p_tmp)
        end if
        if (eta > settings%ms%mlm_etaClusfactor * &
            settings%ms%mlm_etamax) cycle
    end if
    data%P_PS(j) = particle_get_momentum (tempprt)
    j = j + 1
end do
end subroutine matching_transfer_PS

subroutine apply_PYTHIAhadronization &
    (particle_set, shower_settings, model, model_hadrons, valid)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
    type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: shower_settings
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
    logical, intent(inout) :: valid
    integer :: u_W2P, u_P2W
    type(string_t) :: remaining_PYGIVE, partial_PYGIVE
    logical, save :: msg_written = .false.
    character*10 buffer

    if (.not. shower_settings%hadronization_active) return
    if (.not. valid) return
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return

    u_W2P = free_unit ()
    if (debug) then
        open (unit=u_W2P, status="replace", file="whizardout.lhe", &
            action="readwrite")
    else
        open (unit=u_W2P, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
    end if

```

```

call shower_W2P_write_event (u_W2P)
rewind (u_W2P)
write (buffer, "(I10)") u_W2P
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(161)=" // buffer)
call PYGIVE ("MSTP(162)=" // buffer)

!!! Assume that the event is still present in the PYTHIA common blocks
! call pygive ("MSTP(61)=0") ! switch off ISR
! call pygive ("MSTP(71)=0") ! switch off FSR

if (.not. shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower .and. &
    len(shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE) > 0) then
    remaining_PYGIVE = shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE
    do while (len(remaining_PYGIVE) > 0)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call split (remaining_PYGIVE, partial_PYGIVE, ";")
        call PYGIVE (char (partial_PYGIVE))
    end do
    if (shower_get_PYTHIA_error () /= 0) then
        call msg_fatal ("PYTHIA didn't recognize ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE setting")
    end if
end if

if (.not. (shower_settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower .and. &
    (shower_settings%ps_isr_active.or. &
    shower_settings%ps_fsr_active))) then
    if (len(shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE) > 0) then
        remaining_PYGIVE = shower_settings%ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE
        do while (len(remaining_PYGIVE) > 0)
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call split (remaining_PYGIVE, partial_PYGIVE, ";")
            call PYGIVE (char(partial_PYGIVE))
        end do
        if (shower_get_PYTHIA_error () /= 0) then
            call msg_fatal &
                ("PYTHIA did not recognize ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE setting")
        end if
    end if
end if

if (.not.msg_written) then
    call msg_message &
        ("Using PYTHIA interface for hadronization and decays")
    msg_written = .true.
end if

call PYGIVE ("MSTP(111)=1") !!! switch on hadronization
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
call PYEXEC

if (shower_get_PYTHIA_error () > 0) then
    !!! clean up, discard shower and exit
    call shower_set_PYTHIA_error (0)
    close (u_W2P)

```

```

        valid = .false.
    else
        !!! convert back
        u_P2W = free_unit ()
        write (buffer, "(I10)") u_P2W
        call PYGIVE ("MSTP(163)=" // buffer)
        if (debug .and. to_file) then
            open (unit=u_P2W, file="pythiaout2.lhe", status="replace", &
                action="readwrite")
        else
            open (unit=u_P2W, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
        end if
        !!! convert pythia /PYJETS/ to lhef given in MSTU(163)=u1
        call pylheo
        !!! read and add lhef from u_P2W
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call shower_add_lhef_to_particle_set &
            (particle_set, u_P2W, model, model_hadrons)
        close (u_W2P)
        close (u_P2W)
        valid = .true.
    end if
end subroutine apply_PYTHIAhadronization

subroutine shower_W2P_write_event (unit)
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag_lhef, tag_head, tag_init, &
        tag_event, tag_gen_n, tag_gen_v
    allocate (tag_lhef, tag_head, tag_init, tag_event, &
        tag_gen_n, tag_gen_v)
    call tag_lhef%init (var_str ("LesHouchesEvents"), &
        [xml_attribute (var_str ("version"), var_str ("1.0"))], .true.)
    call tag_head%init (var_str ("header"), .true.)
    call tag_init%init (var_str ("init"), .true.)
    call tag_event%init (var_str ("event"), .true.)
    call tag_gen_n%init (var_str ("generator_name"), .true.)
    call tag_gen_v%init (var_str ("generator_version"), .true.)
    call tag_lhef%write (unit); write (unit, *)
    call tag_head%write (unit); write (unit, *)
    write (unit, "(2x)", advance = "no")
    call tag_gen_n%write (var_str ("WHIZARD"), unit)
    write (unit, *)
    write (unit, "(2x)", advance = "no")
    call tag_gen_v%write (var_str ("<Version>"), unit)
    write (unit, *)
    call tag_head%close (unit); write (unit, *)
    call tag_init%write (unit); write (unit, *)
    call heprup_write_lhef (unit)
    call tag_init%close (unit); write (unit, *)
    call tag_event%write (unit); write (unit, *)
    call hepeup_write_lhef (unit)
    call tag_event%close (unit); write (unit, *)
    call tag_lhef%close (unit); write (unit, *)
    deallocate (tag_lhef, tag_head, tag_init, tag_event, &

```

```

tag_gen_n, tag_gen_v)
end subroutine shower_W2P_write_event

```

```

end subroutine apply_shower_particle_set

```

Read in the LHE file opened in unit u and add the final particles to the `particle_set`, the outgoing particles of the existing `particle_set` are set to be virtual before the outgoing particles from the LHEF are added to the `particle_set` as outgoing particles. At the same time, it is searched for pairs of existing and new particles with equal momenta and PDG code, these pairs are marked as connected. All remaining existing former outgoing particles are set to be the mothers of all remaining new outgoing particles.

*(Shower: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine shower_add_lhef_to_particle_set &
  (particle_set, u, model_in, model_hadrons)
  type(particle_set_t), intent(inout) :: particle_set
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_in
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
  type(string_t) :: filename
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(color_t) :: col
  logical :: logging_save

  type(model_t), pointer :: model
  integer :: newsize, oldsize
  type(particle_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: temp_prt
  integer :: i, j
  integer :: n_available_parents;
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: available_parents
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: available_children
  logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: direct_child
  type(vector4_t) :: diffmomentum
  integer, PARAMETER :: MAXLEN=200
  CHARACTER*(MAXLEN) STRING
  integer ibeg
  INTEGER :: NUP,IDPRUP,IDUP,ISTUP
  real(kind=double) :: XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,VTIMUP,SPINUP
  integer :: MOTHUP(1:2),ICOLUP(1:2)
  real(kind=double) :: PUP(1:5)
  real(kind=default):: pup_dum(1:5)
  character*5 buffer

  CHARACTER*6 STRFMT
  STRFMT='(A000)'
  WRITE(STRFMT(3:5),'(I3)') MAXLEN

  rewind (u)

  !!! get newsize of particle_set, newsize = old size of
  !!!   particle_set + #entries - 2 (incoming partons in lhef)
  oldsize = particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
  !!! Loop until finds line beginning with "<event>" or "<event ".
  do

```

```

read (u,*,END=501,ERR=502) STRING
IBEG=0
do
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  IBEG = IBEG + 1
  ! Allow indentation.
  IF (STRING(IBEG:IBEG).EQ.' ' .and. IBEG < MAXLEN-6) cycle
  exit
end do
IF (string(IBEG:IBEG+6) /= '<event>' .and. &
    string(IBEG:IBEG+6) /= '<event >' ) cycle
exit
end do
!!! Read first line of event info -> number of entries
read (u, *, END=503, ERR=504) NUP, IDPRUP, XWGTUP, SCALUP, AQEDUP, AQCDUP
newsize = oldsize + NUP - 2
allocate (temp_prt (1:newsize))

allocate (available_parents (1:oldsize))
available_parents = 0
do i = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  temp_prt (i) = particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, i)
  if (particle_get_status (temp_prt (i)) == PRT_OUTGOING .or. &
      particle_get_status (temp_prt (i)) == PRT_BEAM_REMNANT) then
    call particle_reset_status (temp_prt (i), PRT_VIRTUAL)
    available_parents (i) = i
  end if
end do

allocate (available_children (1:newsize))
allocate (direct_child (1:newsize))
available_children = 0
direct_child = .false.

!!! transfer particles from lhef to particle_set
!!!...Read NUP subsequent lines with information on each particle.
DO I = 1, NUP
  READ (u,*,END=200,ERR=505) IDUP, ISTUP, MOTHUP(1), MOTHUP(2), &
    ICOLUP(1), ICOLUP(2), (PUP (J),J=1,5), VTIMUP, SPINUP
  if ((I.eq.1).or.(I.eq.2)) cycle

  call particle_reset_status (temp_prt(oldsize+i-2), PRT_OUTGOING)
  !!! Settings for unpolarized particles
  ! particle_set%prt (oldsize+i-2)%polarization = 0 ! =PRT_UNPOLARIZED !??
  if (model_test_particle (model_in, IDUP)) then
    model => model_in
  else if (model_test_particle (model_hadrons, IDUP)) then
    model => model_hadrons
  else
    write (buffer, "(I5)") IDUP
    call msg_error ("Parton " // buffer // &
        " found neither in given model file nor in SM_hadrons")
    return
  end if
end do

```

```

end if
call flavor_init (flv, IDUP, model)
call particle_set_flavor (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2), flv)

if (IABS(IDUP) == 2212 .or. IABS(IDUP) == 2112) then
  ! PYTHIA sometimes sets color indices for protons and neutrons (?)
  ICOLUP (1) = 0
  ICOLUP (2) = 0
end if
call color_init_col_acl (col, ICOLUP (1), ICOLUP (2))
call particle_set_color (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2), col)
!!! Settings for unpolarized particles
! particle_set%prt (oldsize+i-2)%hel = ??
! particle_set%prt (oldsize+i-2)%pol = ??
pup_dum = PUP
call particle_set_momentum (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2), &
  vector4_moving (pup_dum (4), &
    vector3_moving ([pup_dum (1), pup_dum (2), pup_dum (3)])))

available_children (oldsize+i-2) = oldsize+i-2
!!! search for an existing particle with the same momentum
!!! -> treat these as mother and daughter
do j = 1, size (available_parents)
  if (available_parents (j) == 0) cycle
  diffmomentum = particle_get_momentum &
    (temp_prt (available_parents (j))) - &
    particle_get_momentum (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2))
  if (abs(diffmomentum**2) < 1E-10_default .and. &
    particle_get_pdg (temp_prt (available_parents (j))).eq. &
    particle_get_pdg (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2))) then
    direct_child (available_parents (j)) = .true.
    direct_child (oldsize+i-2) = .true.
    call particle_set_parents (temp_prt (oldsize+i-2), &
      [available_parents(j)] )
    call particle_set_children (temp_prt (available_parents(j)), &
      [oldsize+i-2] )
    available_parents (j) = 0
    available_children (oldsize+i-2) = 0
  end if
end do
end do

!!! remove zeros in available parents and available children
available_parents = pack (available_parents , available_parents /= 0)
available_children = pack (available_children, available_children /= 0)

do i = 1, size (available_parents)
  if (direct_child (available_parents (i))) cycle
  call particle_set_children &
    (temp_prt (available_parents (i)), available_children)
end do
do i = oldsize + 1, newsize
  if (direct_child (i)) cycle
  call particle_set_parents (temp_prt(i), available_parents)

```

```

end do

! transfer to particle_set
call particle_set_replace (particle_set, temp_prt)
if (allocated (available_children)) deallocate (available_children)
if (allocated (available_parents)) deallocate (available_parents)
deallocate (direct_child)
deallocate (temp_prt)

200 continue
return

501 write(*,*) "READING LHEF failed 501"
return
502 write(*,*) "READING LHEF failed 502"
return
503 write(*,*) "READING LHEF failed 503"
return
504 write(*,*) "READING LHEF failed 504"
return
505 write(*,*) "READING LHEF failed 504"
return
end subroutine shower_add_lhef_to_particle_set

(Shower: procedures)+≡
!!!!!!!!!!PYTHIA STYLE!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
!!! originally PYLHEF subroutine from PYTHIA 6.4.22

!C...Write out the showered event to a Les Houches Event File.
!C...Take MSTP(161) as the input for <init>...</init>

SUBROUTINE PYLHEO

!C...Double precision and integer declarations.
IMPLICIT DOUBLE PRECISION(A-H, O-Z)
IMPLICIT INTEGER(I-N)

!C...PYTHIA commonblock: only used to provide read/write units and version.
COMMON/PYPARS/MSTP(200),PARP(200),MSTI(200),PARI(200)
COMMON/PYJETS/N,NPAD,K(4000,5),P(4000,5),V(4000,5)
SAVE /PYPARS/
SAVE /PYJETS/

!C...User process initialization commonblock.
INTEGER MAXPUP
PARAMETER (MAXPUP=100)
INTEGER IDBMUP,PDFGUP,PDFSUP,IDWTUP,NPRUP,LPRUP
DOUBLE PRECISION EBMUP,XSECUP,XERRUP,XMAXUP
COMMON/HEPRUP/IDBMUP(2),EBMUP(2),PDFGUP(2),PDFSUP(2),IDWTUP,NPRUP,XSECUP(MAXPUP),XERRUP(MAXPUP)
SAVE /HEPRUP/

!C...User process event common block.
INTEGER MAXNUP
PARAMETER (MAXNUP=500)
INTEGER NUP,IDPRUP,IDUP,ISTUP,MOTHUP,ICOLUP

```



```

        PARAMETER (KSUSY1=1000000,KSUSY2=2000000,KTECHN=3000000, &
            KEXCIT=4000000,KDIMEN=5000000)
        DOUBLE PRECISION XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,PUP,VTIMUP,SPINUP
        COMMON/HEPEUP/NUP,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP,IDUP(MAXNUP),ISTUP(MAXNUP),MOTHUP(2,MAXNUP),
            PUP(5,MAXNUP),VTIMUP(MAXNUP),SPINUP(MAXNUP)
        SAVE /HEPEUP/

!C...Lines to read in assumed never longer than 200 characters.
        PARAMETER (MAXLEN=200)
        CHARACTER*(MAXLEN) STRING

        INTEGER LEN

!C...Format for reading lines.
        CHARACTER*6 STRFMT
        STRFMT='(A000)'
        WRITE(STRFMT(3:5),'(I3)') MAXLEN

!C...Rewind initialization and event files.
        REWIND MSTP(161)
        REWIND MSTP(162)

!C...Write header info.
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '<LesHouchesEvents version="1.0">'
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '<!--'
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A,I1,A1,I3)') 'File generated with PYTHIA ',MSTP(181),'.',MSTP(182)
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') ' and the WHIZARD2 interface'
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '-->'

!C...Loop until finds line beginning with "<init>" or "<init ".
        100 READ(MSTP(161),STRFMT,END=400,ERR=400) STRING
        IBEG=0
        110 IBEG=IBEG+1
!C...Allow indentation.
        IF(STRING(IBEG:IBEG).EQ.' '.AND.IBEG.LT.MAXLEN-5) GOTO 110
        IF(STRING(IBEG:IBEG+5).NE.'<init>'.AND.STRING(IBEG:IBEG+5).NE.'<init ') GOTO 100

!C...Read first line of initialization info and get number of processes.
        READ(MSTP(161),'(A)',END=400,ERR=400) STRING
        READ(STRING*,ERR=400) IDBMUP(1),IDBMUP(2),EBMUP(1),EBMUP(2),PDFGUP(1),PDFGUP(2),PDFSUP(1),P

!C...Copy initialization lines, omitting trailing blanks.
!C...Embed in <init> ... </init> block.
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '<init>'
        DO IPR=0,NPRUP
            IF(IPR.GT.0) READ(MSTP(161),'(A)',END=400,ERR=400) STRING
            LEN=MAXLEN+1
        120   LEN=LEN-1
            IF(LEN.GT.1.AND.STRING(LEN:LEN).EQ.' ') GOTO 120
            WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)',ERR=400) STRING(1:LEN)
        end DO
        WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '</init>'

!!!! Find the numbers of entries of the <event block>

```

```

NENTRIES = 2      ! incoming partons (nearest to the beam particles)
DO I=1,N
  if((K(I,1).eq.1) .or. (K(I,1).eq.2)) then
    if(P(I,4) < 1D-10) cycle
    NENTRIES = NENTRIES + 1
  end if
end DO

!C...Begin an <event> block. Copy event lines, omitting trailing blanks.
WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '<event>'
WRITE(MSTP(163),*) NENTRIES,IDPRUP,XWGTUP,SCALUP,AQEDUP,AQCDUP

DO I=3,4          ! the incoming partons nearest to the beam particles
  WRITE(MSTP(163),*) K(I,2),-1,0,0,0,0,(P(I,J),J=1,5),0,-9
end DO
NDANGLING_COLOR = 0
NCOLOR = 0
NDANGLING_ANTIC = 0
NANTIC = 0
NNEXTC = 1      ! TODO find next free color number ??
DO I=1,N
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  if((K(I,1).eq.1) .or. (K(I,1).eq.2)) then
    ! workaround for zero energy photon in electron ISR
    if (P(I,4) < 1E-10_default) cycle
    if ((K(I,2).eq.21) .or. (IABS(K(I,2)) <= 8) .or. &
        (IABS(K(I,2)) >= KSUSY1+1 .and. IABS(K(I,2)) <= KSUSY1+8) &
        .or. &
        (IABS(K(I,2)) >= KSUSY2+1 .and. IABS(K(I,2)) <= KSUSY2+8) .or. &
        (IABS(K(I,2)) >= 1000 .and. IABS(K(I,2)) <= 9999) ) then
      if(NDANGLING_COLOR.eq.0 .and. NDANGLING_ANTIC.eq.0) then
        ! new color string
        ! Gluon and gluino only color octets implemented so far
        if(K(I,2).eq.21 .or. K(I,2).eq.1000021) then
          NCOLOR = NNEXTC
          NDANGLING_COLOR = NCOLOR
          NNEXTC = NNEXTC + 1
          NANTIC = NNEXTC
          NDANGLING_ANTIC = NANTIC
          NNEXTC = NNEXTC + 1
        elseif(K(I,2) .gt. 0) then ! particles to have color
          NCOLOR = NNEXTC
          NDANGLING_COLOR = NCOLOR
          NANTIC = 0
          NNEXTC = NNEXTC + 1
        elseif(K(I,2) .lt. 0) then ! antiparticles to have anticolor
          NANTIC = NNEXTC
          NDANGLING_ANTIC = NANTIC
          NCOLOR = 0
          NNEXTC = NNEXTC + 1
        end if
      else if(K(I,1).eq.1) then
        ! end of string
        NCOLOR = NDANGLING_ANTIC
      end if
    end if
  end if
end DO

```

```

        NANTIC = NDANGLING_COLOR
        NDANGLING_COLOR = 0
        NDANGLING_ANTIC = 0
    else
        ! inside the string
        if(NDANGLING_COLOR .ne. 0) then
            NANTIC = NDANGLING_COLOR
            NCOLOR = NNEXTC
            NDANGLING_COLOR = NNEXTC
            NNEXTC = NNEXTC +1
        else if(NDANGLING_ANTIC .ne. 0) then
            NCOLOR = NDANGLING_ANTIC
            NANTIC = NNEXTC
            NDANGLING_ANTIC = NNEXTC
            NNEXTC = NNEXTC +1
        else
            print *, "ERROR IN PYLHEO"
        end if
    end if
else
    NCOLOR = 0
    NANTIC = 0
end if

    !!! As no intermediate are given out here, assume the
    !!! incoming partons to be the mothers
    WRITE(MSTP(163),*) K(I,2),1,1,2,NCOLOR,NANTIC,(P(I,J),J=1,5),0, -9
end if
end DO

!C..End the <event> block. Loop back to look for next event.
WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '</event>'

!C...Successfully reached end of event loop: write closing tag
!C...and remove temporary intermediate files (unless asked not to).
320 WRITE(MSTP(163),'(A)') '</LesHouchesEvents>'
RETURN

!!C...Error exit.
400 WRITE(*,*) ' PYLHEO file joining failed!'

RETURN
END SUBROUTINE PYLHEO

```

### 17.3.4 Event Transform

```

<Shower: public>+≡
    public :: evt_shower_t

<Shower: types>+≡
    type, extends (evt_t) :: evt_shower_t
    type(shower_settings_t) :: settings
    type(model_t), pointer :: model_hadrons => null ()

```

```

    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    integer :: pdf_type = STRF_NONE
    integer :: pdf_set = 0
contains
  <Shower: evt shower: TBP>
end type evt_shower_t

```

Output.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => evt_shower_write

<Shower: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_shower_write (object, unit, testflag)
    class(evt_shower_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event transform: shower"
    call write_separator (u)
    call object%base_write (u, testflag = testflag)
    call write_separator (u)
    call object%settings%write (u)
  end subroutine evt_shower_write

```

Initialize the parameters. The `model_hadrons` is supposed to be the SM variant that contains all hadrons that may be generated in the shower.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => evt_shower_init

<Shower: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_shower_init (evt, settings, model_hadrons, os_data)
    class(evt_shower_t), intent(out) :: evt
    type(shower_settings_t), intent(in) :: settings
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model_hadrons
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    evt%settings = settings
    evt%os_data = os_data
    evt%model_hadrons => model_hadrons
  end subroutine evt_shower_init

```

Use the process and beam structure to determine PDF parameters.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_pdf => evt_shower_setup_pdf

<Shower: procedures>+≡
  subroutine evt_shower_setup_pdf (evt, process, beam_structure)
    class(evt_shower_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    type(process_t), intent(in) :: process
    type(beam_structure_t), intent(in) :: beam_structure
    if (beam_structure%contains ("lhpdf")) then
      evt%pdf_type = STRF_LHAPDF
    end if
  end subroutine evt_shower_setup_pdf

```

```

    evt%pdf_set = process%get_pdf_set ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)") "Shower: interfacing LHAPDF set #", &
        evt%pdf_set
    call msg_message ()
else if (beam_structure%contains ("pdf_builtin")) then
    evt%pdf_type = STRF_PDF_BUILTIN
    evt%pdf_set = process%get_pdf_set ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)") "Shower: interfacing PDF builtin set #", &
        evt%pdf_set
    call msg_message ()
end if
end subroutine evt_shower_setup_pdf

```

Prepare: nothing to do here.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: prepare_new_event => evt_shower_prepare_new_event

<Shower: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_shower_prepare_new_event (evt, i_mci, i_term)
        class(evt_shower_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci, i_term
        call evt%reset ()
    end subroutine evt_shower_prepare_new_event

```

Here we take the particle set from the previous event transform (assuming that there is always one) and apply the shower algorithm. The result is stored in the event transform of the current object. We always return a probability of unity as we don't have the analytic weight of the combination of shower, MLM matching and hadronization. A subdivision into multiple event transformations might be useful. Invalid or vetoed events have to be discarded by the caller which is why we mark the particle set as invalid.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate_weighted => evt_shower_generate_weighted

<Shower: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_shower_generate_weighted (evt, probability)
        class(evt_shower_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        real(default), intent(out) :: probability
        logical :: valid, vetoed
        valid = .true.
        vetoed = .false.
        if (evt%previous%particle_set_exists) then
            evt%particle_set = evt%previous%particle_set
            if (evt%settings%ps_use_PYTHIA_shower .or. &
                evt%settings%hadronization_active) then
                call evt%assure_heprup ()
            end if
            if (evt%settings%ckkw_matching) then
                call ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_init (evt%settings%ckkw_weights)
                call ckkw_fake_pseudo_shower_weights (evt%settings%ckkw_settings, &
                    evt%settings%ckkw_weights, evt%particle_set)
            end if
            call apply_shower_particle_set (evt%particle_set, &

```

```

        evt%settings, evt%model, evt%model_hadrons, &
        evt%os_data, evt%pdf_type, evt%pdf_set, valid, vetoed)
    probability = 1
    !!! BCN: WK please check: In 2.1.1 vetoed events reduced sim%n_events by
    ! one while invalid events did not. This bookkeeping should be reenabled
    ! to have the correct cross section / luminosity.
    if (valid .and. .not. vetoed) then
        evt%particle_set_exists = .true.
    else
        evt%particle_set_exists = .false.
    end if
else
    call msg_bug ("Shower: input particle set does not exist")
end if
end subroutine evt_shower_generate_weighted

```

The particle set was already made by the routine above (or the event was vetoed). So we do nothing here. The factorization parameters are irrelevant.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: make_particle_set => evt_shower_make_particle_set

<Shower: procedures>+≡
    subroutine evt_shower_make_particle_set &
        (evt, factorization_mode, keep_correlations, r)
        class(evt_shower_t), intent(inout) :: evt
        integer, intent(in) :: factorization_mode
        logical, intent(in) :: keep_correlations
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
    end subroutine evt_shower_make_particle_set

```

## Matching and hadronization functions

The HEPRUP (event) common block is needed for the interface to the shower. Filling of it is triggered by some output file formats. If these are not present, the common block is filled with some dummy information. Be generous with the number of processes in HEPRUP so that PYTHIA only rarely needs to be reinitialized in case events with higher process ids are generated.

```

<Shower: evt shower: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: assure_heprup => event_shower_assure_heprup

<Shower: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_shower_assure_heprup (evt)
        class(evt_shower_t), intent(in) :: evt
        integer :: i, num_id
        integer, parameter :: min_processes = 10

        <HEP common: parameters>
        <HEP common: variables>
        <HEP common: common blocks>

        num_id = 1
        if (LPRUP (num_id) /= 0) return
    end subroutine event_shower_assure_heprup

```

```

call heprup_init ( &
  [ particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
    (evt%particle_set, 1)), &
    particle_get_pdg (particle_set_get_particle &
    (evt%particle_set, 2)) ] , &
  [ vector4_get_component (particle_get_momentum &
    (particle_set_get_particle (evt%particle_set, 1)), 0), &
    vector4_get_component (particle_get_momentum &
    (particle_set_get_particle (evt%particle_set, 2)), 0) ], &
  num_id, .false., .false.)
do i = 1, (num_id / min_processes + 1) * min_processes
  call heprup_set_process_parameters (i = i, process_id = &
    i, cross_section = 1._default, error = 1._default)
end do
end subroutine event_shower_assure_heprup

```

Generate fake ckkw weights. This can be dropped, once information from the matrix element generation is available.

```

<Shower: public>+≡
  public :: ckkw_fake_pseudo_shower_weights

<Shower: procedures>+≡
  subroutine ckkw_fake_pseudo_shower_weights &
    (ckkw_pseudo_shower_settings, &
     ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights, particle_set)
    type(ckkw_matching_settings_t), intent(inout) :: &
      ckkw_pseudo_shower_settings
    type(ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights_t), intent(inout) :: &
      ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
    integer :: i, j, k
    integer :: n
    type(vector4_t) :: momentum

    ckkw_pseudo_shower_settings%alphaS = 1.0_default
    ckkw_pseudo_shower_settings%Qmin = 1.0_default
    ckkw_pseudo_shower_settings%n_max_jets = 3

    n = 2**particle_set_get_n_tot(particle_set)
    if (allocated (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights)) then
      deallocate (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights)
    end if
    allocate (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights (1:n))
    do i = 1, n
      momentum = vector4_null
      do j = 1, particle_set_get_n_tot (particle_set)
        if (btest (i,j-1)) then
          momentum = momentum + particle_get_momentum &
            (particle_set_get_particle (particle_set, j))
        end if
      end do
      if (momentum**1 > 0.0) then
        ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights(i) = 1.0 / (momentum**2)
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine

```

```

        end if
    end do
    ! equally distribute the weights by type
    if (allocated (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights_by_type)) then
        deallocate (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights_by_type)
    end if
    allocate (ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights_by_type (1:n, 0:4))
    do i = 1, n
        do j = 0, 4
            ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights_by_type(i,j) = &
                0.2 * ckkw_pseudo_shower_weights%weights(i)
        end do
    end do
end subroutine ckkw_fake_pseudo_shower_weights

```

### 17.3.5 Unit Tests

```

<Shower: public>+≡
    public :: shower_test

<Shower: tests>≡
    subroutine shower_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Shower: execute tests>
end subroutine shower_test

```

### Testbed

This sequence sets up a two-jet process, ready for generating events.

```

<Shower: tests>+≡
    subroutine setup_testbed &
        (prefix, os_data, lib, model_list, model, process, process_instance)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: prefix
        type(os_data_t), intent(out) :: os_data
        type(process_library_t), intent(out), target :: lib
        type(model_list_t), intent(out) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer, intent(out) :: model
        type(process_t), target, intent(out) :: process
        type(process_instance_t), target, intent(out) :: process_instance
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
        type(string_t) :: model_name, libname, procname, run_id
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd
        class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
        class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
        class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
        real(default) :: sqrts
    end subroutine

```



```

model_name = "SM"
libname = prefix // "_lib"
procname = prefix // "p"
run_id = "1"

call os_data_init (os_data)
allocate (rng_tao_factory_t :: rng_factory)
call model_list%read_model (model_name, model_name // ".mdl", &
    os_data, model)
model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (model_vars, var_str ("me"), 0._default, &
    is_known = .true.)

call lib%init (libname)

allocate (prt_in (2), source = [var_str ("e-"), var_str ("e+")])
allocate (prt_out (2), source = [var_str ("d"), var_str ("dbar")])

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (procname, model, n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call omega_make_process_component (entry, 1, &
    model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
    report_progress=.true.)
call lib%append (entry)

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

call process%init (procname, run_id, lib, os_data, &
    qcd, rng_factory, model_list)

allocate (prc_omega_t :: core_template)
allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci_template)
allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs_config_template)

select type (core_template)
type is (prc_omega_t)
    call core_template%set_parameters (model = model)
end select
call process%init_component &
    (1, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)

sqrts = 1000
call process%setup_beams_sqrts (sqrts)
call process%configure_phs ()
call process%setup_mci ()
call process%setup_terms ()

call process_instance%init (process)
call process%integrate (process_instance, 1, 1, 1000)
call process%final_integration (1)

```

```

call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
call process_instance%init_simulation (1)
call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%evaluate_event_data ()

end subroutine setup_testbed

```

## FSR Shower

We generate a two-jet event and shower it using default settings for the WHIZARD FSR shower.

```

<Shower: execute tests>≡
call test (shower_1, "shower_1", &
  "disabled shower", &
  u, results)

<Shower: tests>+≡
subroutine shower_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model, model_hadrons
  type(process_t), target :: process
  type(process_instance_t), target :: process_instance
  integer :: factorization_mode
  logical :: keep_correlations
  class(evt_t), allocatable, target :: evt_trivial
  class(evt_t), allocatable, target :: evt_shower
  type(shower_settings_t) :: settings

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: shower_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: Two-jet event with disabled shower"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call os_data_init (os_data)
  call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"), &
    os_data, model_hadrons)
  call setup_testbed (var_str ("shower_1"), &
    os_data, lib, model_list, model, process, process_instance)

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up trivial transform"
  write (u, "(A)")

  allocate (evt_trivial_t :: evt_trivial)
  call evt_trivial%connect (process_instance, model)
  call evt_trivial%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
  call evt_trivial%generate_unweighted ()

```

```

factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
keep_correlations = .false.
call evt_trivial%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

select type (evt_trivial)
type is (evt_trivial_t)
  call evt_trivial%write (u)
  call write_separator_double (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up shower event transform"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (evt_shower_t :: evt_shower)
select type (evt_shower)
type is (evt_shower_t)
  call evt_shower%init (settings, model_hadrons, os_data)
end select

call evt_shower%connect (process_instance, model)
evt_trivial%next => evt_shower
evt_shower%previous => evt_trivial

call evt_shower%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
call evt_shower%generate_unweighted ()
call evt_shower%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

select type (evt_shower)
type is (evt_shower_t)
  call evt_shower%write (u)
  call write_separator_double (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call evt_shower%final ()
call evt_trivial%final ()
call process_instance%final ()
call process%final ()
call lib%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: shower_1"

end subroutine shower_1

```

## Trivial Test

We generate a two-jet event and shower it using default settings. Since the default settings have all

```
(Shower: execute tests)+≡
    call test (shower_2, "shower_2", &
               "final-state shower", &
               u, results)

(Shower: tests)+≡
    subroutine shower_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(process_library_t), target :: lib
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model, model_hadrons
        type(process_t), target :: process
        type(process_instance_t), target :: process_instance
        integer :: factorization_mode
        logical :: keep_correlations
        class(evt_t), allocatable, target :: evt_trivial
        class(evt_t), allocatable, target :: evt_shower
        type(shower_settings_t) :: settings

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: shower_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: Two-jet event with FSR shower"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize environment"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call os_data_init (os_data)
        call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"), &
                                     os_data, model_hadrons)
        call setup_testbed (var_str ("shower_2"), &
                             os_data, lib, model_list, model, process, process_instance)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up trivial transform"
        write (u, "(A)")

        allocate (evt_trivial_t :: evt_trivial)
        call evt_trivial%connect (process_instance, model)
        call evt_trivial%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
        call evt_trivial%generate_unweighted ()

        factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
        keep_correlations = .false.
        call evt_trivial%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

        select type (evt_trivial)
        type is (evt_trivial_t)
            call evt_trivial%write (u)
            call write_separator_double (u)
        end select
```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set up shower event transform"
write (u, "(A)")

settings%ps_fsr_active = .true.

allocate (evt_shower_t :: evt_shower)
select type (evt_shower)
type is (evt_shower_t)
    call evt_shower%init (settings, model_hadrons, os_data)
end select

call evt_shower%connect (process_instance, model)
evt_trivial%next => evt_shower
evt_shower%previous => evt_trivial

call evt_shower%prepare_new_event (1, 1)
call evt_shower%generate_unweighted ()
call evt_shower%make_particle_set (factorization_mode, keep_correlations)

select type (evt_shower)
type is (evt_shower_t)
    call evt_shower%write (u, testflag = .true.)
    call write_separator_double (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call evt_shower%final ()
call evt_trivial%final ()
call process_instance%final ()
call process%final ()
call lib%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: shower_2"

end subroutine shower_2

```

## 17.4 Complete Events

This module combines hard processes with decay chains, shower, and hadronization (not implemented yet) to complete events. It also manages the input and output of event records in various formats.

`<events.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```

module events

  <Use kinds>
  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use limits, only: FMT_12 !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use os_interface

  use ifiles
  use lexers
  use parser

  use subevents
  use variables
  use expressions
  use models

  use state_matrices
  use particles
  use interactions
  use subevt_expr
  use rng_base
  use process_libraries
  use processes
  use process_stacks
  use event_transforms
  use decays
  use shower

  <Standard module head>

  <Events: public>

  <Events: parameters>

  <Events: types>

  <Events: interfaces>

contains

  <Events: procedures>

  <Events: tests>

end module events

```

### 17.4.1 Event configuration

The parameters govern the transformation of an event to a particle set.

The `safety_factor` reduces the acceptance probability for unweighting. If

greater than one, excess events become less likely, but the reweighting efficiency also drops.

The `sigma` and `n` values, if nontrivial, allow for reweighting the events according to the requested `norm_mode`.

Various `parse_node_t` objects are taken from the SINDARIN input. They encode expressions that apply to the current event. The workspaces for evaluating those expressions are set up in the `event_expr_t` objects. Note that these are really pointers, so the actual nodes are not stored inside the event object.

```

<Events: types>≡
  type :: event_config_t
    logical :: unweighted = .false.
    integer :: norm_mode = NORM_UNDEFINED
    integer :: factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
    logical :: keep_correlations = .false.
    real(default) :: sigma = 1
    integer :: n = 1
    real(default) :: safety_factor = 1
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_selection => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_reweight => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_analysis => null ()
  contains
    <Events: event config: TBP>
  end type event_config_t

```

Output.

```

<Events: event config: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => event_config_write

<Events: procedures>≡
  subroutine event_config_write (object, unit, show_expressions)
    class(event_config_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_expressions
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Unweighted          = ", object%unweighted
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Normalization      = ", &
      char (event_normalization_string (object%norm_mode))
    write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "Helicity handling = "
    select case (object%factorization_mode)
    case (FM_IGNORE_HELICITY)
      write (u, "(A)") "drop"
    case (FM_SELECT_HELICITY)
      write (u, "(A)") "select"
    case (FM_FACTOR_HELICITY)
      write (u, "(A)") "factorize"
    end select
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Keep correlations = ", object%keep_correlations
    if (object%safety_factor /= 1) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_12 // ")") &
        "Safety factor      = ", object%safety_factor
    end if
    if (present (show_expressions)) then

```

```

    if (show_expressions) then
    if (associated (object%pn_selection)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Event selection expression:"
        call object%pn_selection%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (object%pn_reweight)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Event reweighting expression:"
        call object%pn_reweight%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (object%pn_analysis)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Analysis expression:"
        call object%pn_analysis%write (u)
    end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine event_config_write

```

## 17.4.2 Event normalization

The parameters for event normalization. For unweighted events, `NORM_UNIT` is intended as default, while for weighted events, it is `NORM_SIGMA`.

Note: the unit test for this is in `eio_data_2` below.

*(Events: parameters)*≡

```

integer, parameter, public :: NORM_UNDEFINED = 0
integer, parameter, public :: NORM_UNIT = 1
integer, parameter, public :: NORM_N_EVT = 2
integer, parameter, public :: NORM_SIGMA = 3
integer, parameter, public :: NORM_S_N = 4

```

These functions translate between the user representation and the internal one.

*(Events: public)*≡

```

public :: event_normalization_mode
public :: event_normalization_string

```

*(Events: procedures)*+≡

```

function event_normalization_mode (string, unweighted) result (mode)
    integer :: mode
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: string
    logical, intent(in) :: unweighted
    select case (lower_case (char (string)))
    case ("auto")
        if (unweighted) then
            mode = NORM_UNIT
        else
            mode = NORM_SIGMA
        end if
    case ("1")
        mode = NORM_UNIT
    case ("1/n")

```



```

        mode = NORM_N_EVT
    case ("sigma")
        mode = NORM_SIGMA
    case ("sigma/n")
        mode = NORM_S_N
    case default
        call msg_fatal ("Event normalization: unknown value '" &
            // char (string) // "'")
    end select
end function event_normalization_mode

function event_normalization_string (norm_mode) result (string)
    integer, intent(in) :: norm_mode
    type(string_t) :: string
    select case (norm_mode)
    case (NORM_UNDEFINED); string = "[undefined]"
    case (NORM_UNIT);      string = "'1'"
    case (NORM_N_EVT);     string = "'1/n'"
    case (NORM_SIGMA);     string = "'sigma'"
    case (NORM_S_N);       string = "'sigma/n'"
    case default;          string = "???"
    end select
end function event_normalization_string

```

We place this here as a generic helper, so we can update event weights whenever we need, not just in connection with an event sample data object.

```

<Events: public>+≡
    public :: event_normalization_update

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_normalization_update (weight, sigma, n, mode_new, mode_old)
        real(default), intent(inout) :: weight
        real(default), intent(in) :: sigma
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        integer, intent(in) :: mode_new, mode_old
        if (mode_new /= mode_old) then
            if (sigma > 0 .and. n > 0) then
                weight = weight / factor (mode_old) * factor (mode_new)
            else
                call msg_fatal ("Event normalization update: null sample")
            end if
        end if
    contains
        function factor (mode)
            real(default) :: factor
            integer, intent(in) :: mode
            select case (mode)
            case (NORM_UNIT);   factor = 1._default
            case (NORM_N_EVT);   factor = 1._default / n
            case (NORM_SIGMA);   factor = sigma
            case (NORM_S_N);     factor = sigma / n
            case default
                call msg_fatal ("Event normalization update: undefined mode")
            end select
        end function factor
    end subroutine event_normalization_update

```

```

end function factor
end subroutine event_normalization_update

```

### 17.4.3 The event type

Each event has a single elementary process as its core. This process may be dressed by a shower, a decay chain etc. For this core we implement pointers to a process instance.

The actual (dressed) event record is implemented as a `particle_set` object.

A list of event transforms (class `evt_t`) transform the connected interactions of the process instance into the final particle set. In this list, the first transform is always the trivial one, which just factorizes the process instance. Subsequent transforms may apply decays, etc. The `particle_set` pointer identifies the particle set that we want to be analyzed and returned by the event, usually the last one.

Squared matrix element and weight values: when reading events from file, the `ref` value is the number in the file, while the `prc` value is the number that we calculate from the momenta in the file, possibly with different parameters. When generating events the first time, or if we do not recalculate, the numbers should coincide. Furthermore, the array of `alt` values is copied from an array of alternative event records. These values should represent calculated values.

The `sqme` and `weight` values mirror corresponding values in the `expr` subobject. The idea is that when generating or reading events, the event record is filled first, then the `expr` object acquires copies. These copies are used for writing events and as targets for pointer variables in the analysis expression.

All data that involve user-provided expressions (selection, reweighting, analysis) are handled by the `expr` subobject. In particular, evaluating the event-selection expression sets the `passed` flag. Furthermore, the `expr` subobject collects data that can be used in the analysis and should be written to file, including copies of `sqme` and `weight`.

```

<Events: public>+≡
public :: event_t

<Events: types>+≡
type :: event_t
  type(event_config_t) :: config
  type(process_t), pointer :: process => null ()
  type(process_instance_t), pointer :: instance => null ()
  class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
  integer :: selected_i_mci = 0
  integer :: selected_i_term = 0
  integer :: selected_channel = 0
  logical :: is_complete = .false.
  class(evt_t), pointer :: transform_first => null ()
  class(evt_t), pointer :: transform_last => null ()
  logical :: particle_set_exists = .false.
  type(particle_set_t), pointer :: particle_set => null ()
  logical :: sqme_ref_is_known = .false.
  real(default) :: sqme_ref = 0
  logical :: sqme_prc_is_known = .false.
  real(default) :: sqme_prc = 0

```

```

    logical :: weight_ref_is_known = .false.
    real(default) :: weight_ref = 0
    logical :: weight_prc_is_known = .false.
    real(default) :: weight_prc = 0
    logical :: excess_prc_is_known = .false.
    real(default) :: excess_prc = 0
    integer :: n_alt = 0
    logical :: sqme_alt_is_known = .false.
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: sqme_alt
    logical :: weight_alt_is_known = .false.
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weight_alt
    type(event_expr_t) :: expr
    logical :: selection_evaluated = .false.
    logical :: passed = .false.
    real(default) :: reweight = 1
    logical :: analysis_flag = .false.
contains
  <Events: event: TBP>
end type event_t

```

Finalizer: the list of event transforms is deleted iteratively.

```

<Events: event: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => event_final
<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_final (object)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: object
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
    if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%final ()
    call object%expr%final ()
    do while (associated (object%transform_first))
      evt => object%transform_first
      object%transform_first => evt%next
      call evt%final ()
      deallocate (evt)
    end do
  end subroutine event_final

```

Output.

Particle set: this is a pointer to one of the event transforms, so it should suffice to print the latter.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => event_write
<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_write (object, unit, show_process, show_transforms, &
    show_decay, verbose, testflag)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_process, show_transforms, show_decay
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    logical :: prc, trans, dec, verb
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt

```

```

integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit)
prc = .true.; if (present (show_process)) prc = show_process
trans = .true.; if (present (show_transforms)) trans = show_transforms
dec = .true.; if (present (show_decay)) dec = show_decay
verb = .false.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose
call write_separator_double (u)
if (object%is_complete) then
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event"
else
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event [incomplete]"
end if
call write_separator (u)
call object%config%write (u)
if (object%sqme_ref_is_known .or. object%weight_ref_is_known) then
  call write_separator (u)
end if
if (object%sqme_ref_is_known) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "Squared matrix el. = ", object%sqme_ref
  if (object%sqme_alt_is_known) then
    do i = 1, object%n_alt
      write (u, "(5x,A,ES19.12,1x,I0)") &
        "alternate sqme = ", object%sqme_alt(i), i
    end do
  end if
end if
if (object%weight_ref_is_known) then
  write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "Event weight = ", object%weight_ref
  if (object%weight_alt_is_known) then
    do i = 1, object%n_alt
      write (u, "(5x,A,ES19.12,1x,I0)") &
        "alternate weight = ", object%weight_alt(i), i
    end do
  end if
end if
if (object%selected_i_mci /= 0) then
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected MCI group = ", object%selected_i_mci
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected term = ", object%selected_i_term
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Selected channel = ", object%selected_channel
end if
if (object%selection_evaluated) then
  call write_separator (u)
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Passed selection = ", object%passed
  if (object%passed) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") &
      "Reweighting factor = ", object%reweight
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") &
      "Analysis flag = ", object%analysis_flag
  end if
end if
if (associated (object%instance)) then
  if (prc) then
    if (verb) then

```

```

        call object%instance%write (u, testflag)
    else
        call object%instance%write_header (u)
    end if
end if
if (trans) then
    evt => object%transform_first
    do while (associated (evt))
        select type (evt)
            type is (evt_trivial_t)
                call evt%write (u, verbose = verbose, testflag = testflag)
            type is (evt_decay_t)
                call evt%write (u, show_decay_tree = dec, &
                    show_processes = dec .and. verb, verbose = verb)
            type is (evt_shower_t)
                call evt%write (u)
        end select
        call write_separator_double (u)
        evt => evt%next
    end do
else
    call write_separator_double (u)
end if
if (object%expr%subevt_filled) then
    call object%expr%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
end if
else
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Process instance: [undefined]"
    call write_separator_double (u)
end if
end subroutine event_write

```

#### 17.4.4 Initialization

Initialize: set configuration parameters, using a variable list. We do not call this `init`, because this method name will be used by a type extension.

The default normalization is `NORM_SIGMA`, since the default generation mode is weighted.

For unweighted events, we may want to apply a safety factor to event rejection. (By default, this factor is unity and can be ignored.)

We also allocate the trivial event transform, which is always the first one.

*(Events: event: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: basic_init => event_init
```

*(Events: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine event_init (event, var_list, n_alt)
    class(event_t), intent(out) :: event
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), optional :: var_list
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n_alt
    type(string_t) :: norm_string

```

```

logical :: polarized_events
if (present (var_list)) then
  event%config%unweighted = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
    var_str ("?unweighted"))
  norm_string = var_list_get_sval (var_list, &
    var_str ("sample_normalization"))
  event%config%norm_mode = &
    event_normalization_mode (norm_string, event%config%unweighted)
  polarized_events = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?polarized_events"))
  if (polarized_events) then
    event%config%factorization_mode = FM_SELECT_HELICITY
  else
    event%config%factorization_mode = FM_IGNORE_HELICITY
  end if
  if (event%config%unweighted) then
    event%config%safety_factor = var_list_get_rval (var_list, &
      var_str ("safety_factor"))
  end if
else
  event%config%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
end if
if (present (n_alt)) then
  event%n_alt = n_alt
  allocate (event%sqme_alt (n_alt))
  allocate (event%weight_alt (n_alt))
  call event%expr%init (n_alt)
end if
allocate (evt_trivial_t :: event%transform_first)
event%transform_last => event%transform_first
end subroutine event_init

```

Set the `sigma` and `n` values in the configuration record that determine non-standard event normalizations. If these numbers are not set explicitly, the default value for both is unity, and event renormalization has no effect.

*(Events: event: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: set_sigma => event_set_sigma
procedure :: set_n => event_set_n

```

*(Events: procedures)+≡*

```

elemental subroutine event_set_sigma (event, sigma)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  real(default), intent(in) :: sigma
  event%config%sigma = sigma
end subroutine event_set_sigma

elemental subroutine event_set_n (event, n)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  integer, intent(in) :: n
  event%config%n = n
end subroutine event_set_n

```

Append an event transform (decays, etc.). The transform is not yet connected

to a process. The transform is then considered to belong to the event object, and will be finalized together with it. The original pointer is removed.

We can assume that the trivial transform is already present in the event object, at least.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: import_transform => event_import_transform

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_import_transform (event, evt)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    class(evt_t), intent(inout), pointer :: evt
    event%transform_last%next => evt
    evt%previous => event%transform_last
    event%transform_last => evt
    evt => null ()
  end subroutine event_import_transform

```

We link the event to an existing process instance. This includes the variable list, which is linked to the process variable list. Note that this is not necessarily identical to the variable list used for event initialization.

The variable list will contain pointers to **event** subobjects, therefore the **target** attribute.

Once we have a process connected, we can use it to obtain an event generator instance.

The model and process stack may be needed by event transforms. The current model setting may be different from the model in the process (regarding unstable particles, etc.). The process stack can be used for assigning extra processes that we need for the event transforms.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: connect => event_connect

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_connect (event, process_instance, model, process_stack)
    class(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    type(process_instance_t), intent(in), target :: process_instance
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(process_stack_t), intent(in), optional :: process_stack
    type(string_t) :: id
    integer :: num_id
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
    event%process => process_instance%process
    event%instance => process_instance
    id = event%process%get_id ()
    if (id /= "") call event%expr%set_process_id (id)
    num_id = event%process%get_num_id ()
    if (num_id /= 0) call event%expr%set_process_num_id (num_id)
    call event%expr%setup_vars (event%process%get_sqrts ())
    call event%expr%link_var_list (event%process%get_var_list_ptr ())
    call event%process%make_rng (event%rng)
    evt => event%transform_first
    do while (associated (evt))
      call evt%connect (process_instance, model, process_stack)
      evt => evt%next
    end do
  end subroutine event_connect

```

```

        end do
    end subroutine event_connect

```

Set the parse nodes for the associated expressions, individually. The parse-node pointers may be null.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: set_selection => event_set_selection
    procedure :: set_reweight => event_set_reweight
    procedure :: set_analysis => event_set_analysis

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_set_selection (event, pn_selection)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_selection
        event%config%pn_selection => pn_selection
    end subroutine event_set_selection

    subroutine event_set_reweight (event, pn_reweight)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_reweight
        event%config%pn_reweight => pn_reweight
    end subroutine event_set_reweight

    subroutine event_set_analysis (event, pn_analysis)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_analysis
        event%config%pn_analysis => pn_analysis
    end subroutine event_set_analysis

```

Create evaluation trees from the parse trees. The `target` attribute is required because the expressions contain pointers to event subobjects.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: setup_expressions => event_setup_expressions

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_setup_expressions (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
        call event%expr%setup_selection (event%config%pn_selection)
        call event%expr%setup_analysis (event%config%pn_analysis)
        call event%expr%setup_reweight (event%config%pn_reweight)
    end subroutine event_setup_expressions

```

### 17.4.5 Evaluation

To fill the `particle_set`, i.e., the event record proper, we have to apply all event transforms in order. The last transform should fill its associated particle set, factorizing the state matrix according to the current settings. There are several parameters in the event configuration that control this.

We always fill the particle set for the first transform (the hard process) and the last transform, if different from the first (the fully dressed process).

Each event transform is an event generator of its own. We choose to generate an *unweighted* event for each of them, even if the master event is assumed to



be weighted. Thus, the overall event weight is the one of the hard process only. (There may be more options in future extensions.)

We can generate the two random numbers that the factorization needs. For testing purpose, we allow for providing them explicitly, as an option.

*(Events: event: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: evaluate_transforms => event_evaluate_transforms
```

*(Events: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine event_evaluate_transforms (event, r)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
  class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
  integer :: i_term
  event%particle_set_exists = .false.
  call event%check ()
  if (event%instance%is_complete_event ()) then
    call event%instance%select_i_term (i_term)
    event%selected_i_term = i_term
    evt => event%transform_first
    do while (associated (evt))
      call evt%prepare_new_event &
        (event%selected_i_mci, event%selected_i_term)
      evt => evt%next
    end do
    evt => event%transform_first
    do while (associated (evt))
      call evt%generate_unweighted ()
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
      call evt%make_particle_set (event%config%factorization_mode, &
        event%config%keep_correlations)
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
      if (.not. evt%particle_set_exists) exit
      evt => evt%next
    end do
    evt => event%transform_last
    if (associated (evt) .and. evt%particle_set_exists) then
      event%particle_set => evt%particle_set
      call event%accept_particle_set ()
    end if
  end if
end subroutine event_evaluate_transforms
```

Evaluate the event-related expressions, given a valid `particle_set`. If `update_sqme` is set, we use the process instance for the `sqme_prc` value. The `sqme_ref` value is always taken from the event record.

*(Events: event: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: evaluate_expressions => event_evaluate_expressions
```

*(Events: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine event_evaluate_expressions (event)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  if (event%particle_set_exists) then
    call event%expr%fill_subevt (event%particle_set)
  end if
```

```

    if (event%weight_ref_is_known) then
        call event%expr%set (weight_ref = event%weight_ref)
    end if
    if (event%weight_prc_is_known) then
        call event%expr%set (weight_prc = event%weight_prc)
    end if
    if (event%excess_prc_is_known) then
        call event%expr%set (excess_prc = event%excess_prc)
    end if
    if (event%sqme_ref_is_known) then
        call event%expr%set (sqme_ref = event%sqme_ref)
    end if
    if (event%sqme_prc_is_known) then
        call event%expr%set (sqme_prc = event%sqme_prc)
    end if
    if (event%particle_set_exists) then
        call event%expr%evaluate &
            (event%passed, event%reweight, event%analysis_flag)
        event%selection_evaluated = .true.
    end if
end subroutine event_evaluate_expressions

```

Set alternate sqme and weight arrays. This should be merged with the previous routine, if the expressions are allowed to refer to these values.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: store_alt_values => event_store_alt_values

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_store_alt_values (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        if (event%weight_alt_is_known) then
            call event%expr%set (weight_alt = event%weight_alt)
        end if
        if (event%sqme_alt_is_known) then
            call event%expr%set (sqme_alt = event%sqme_alt)
        end if
    end subroutine event_store_alt_values

```

#### 17.4.6 Reset to empty state

Applying this, current event contents are marked as incomplete but are not deleted. In particular, the initialization is kept.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: reset => event_reset

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_reset (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
        event%selected_i_mci = 0
        event%selected_i_term = 0
        event%selected_channel = 0
    end subroutine event_reset

```

```

event%is_complete = .false.
event%particle_set_exists = .false.
event%sqme_ref_is_known = .false.
event%sqme_prc_is_known = .false.
event%sqme_alt_is_known = .false.
event%weight_ref_is_known = .false.
event%weight_prc_is_known = .false.
event%weight_alt_is_known = .false.
event%excess_prc_is_known = .false.
call event%expr%reset ()
event%selection_evaluated = .false.
event%passed = .false.
event%analysis_flag = .false.
if (associated (event%instance)) then
    call event%instance%reset (reset_mci = .true.)
end if
evt => event%transform_first
do while (associated (evt))
    call evt%reset ()
    evt => evt%next
end do
end subroutine event_reset

```

### 17.4.7 Squared Matrix Element and Weight

Set the appropriate entry directly.

*(Events: event: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: set => event_set

```

*(Events: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine event_set (event, &
    weight_ref, weight_prc, weight_alt, &
    excess_prc, &
    sqme_ref, sqme_prc, sqme_alt)
class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight_ref, weight_prc
real(default), intent(in), optional :: sqme_ref, sqme_prc
real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: sqme_alt, weight_alt
real(default), intent(in), optional :: excess_prc
if (present (sqme_ref)) then
    event%sqme_ref_is_known = .true.
    event%sqme_ref = sqme_ref
end if
if (present (sqme_prc)) then
    event%sqme_prc_is_known = .true.
    event%sqme_prc = sqme_prc
end if
if (present (sqme_alt)) then
    event%sqme_alt_is_known = .true.
    event%sqme_alt = sqme_alt
end if
if (present (weight_ref)) then
    event%weight_ref_is_known = .true.

```

```

        event%weight_ref = weight_ref
    end if
    if (present (weight_prc)) then
        event%weight_prc_is_known = .true.
        event%weight_prc = weight_prc
    end if
    if (present (weight_alt)) then
        event%weight_alt_is_known = .true.
        event%weight_alt = weight_alt
    end if
    if (present (excess_prc)) then
        event%excess_prc_is_known = .true.
        event%excess_prc = excess_prc
    end if
end subroutine event_set

```

Transfer the result of the process instance calculation to the event record header.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: import_instance_results => event_import_instance_results

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_import_instance_results (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        if (associated (event%instance)) then
            if (event%instance%has_evaluated_trace ()) then
                call event%set ( &
                    sqme_prc = event%instance%get_sqme (), &
                    weight_prc = event%instance%get_weight (), &
                    excess_prc = event%instance%get_excess () &
                )
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine event_import_instance_results

```

Duplicate the instance result / the reference result in the event record.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: accept_sqme_ref => event_accept_sqme_ref
    procedure :: accept_sqme_prc => event_accept_sqme_prc
    procedure :: accept_weight_ref => event_accept_weight_ref
    procedure :: accept_weight_prc => event_accept_weight_prc

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_accept_sqme_ref (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        if (event%sqme_ref_is_known) then
            call event%set (sqme_prc = event%sqme_ref)
        end if
    end subroutine event_accept_sqme_ref

    subroutine event_accept_sqme_prc (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        if (event%sqme_prc_is_known) then
            call event%set (sqme_ref = event%sqme_prc)
        end if
    end subroutine event_accept_sqme_prc

```

```

end subroutine event_accept_sqme_prc

subroutine event_accept_weight_ref (event)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  if (event%weight_ref_is_known) then
    call event%set (weight_prc = event%weight_ref)
  end if
end subroutine event_accept_weight_ref

subroutine event_accept_weight_prc (event)
  class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  if (event%weight_prc_is_known) then
    call event%set (weight_ref = event%weight_prc)
  end if
end subroutine event_accept_weight_prc

```

Update the weight normalization, just after generation. Unweighted and weighted events are generated with a different default normalization. The intended normalization is stored in the configuration record.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: update_normalization => event_update_normalization

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_update_normalization (event, mode_ref)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    integer, intent(in), optional :: mode_ref
    integer :: mode_old
    if (present (mode_ref)) then
      mode_old = mode_ref
    else if (event%config%unweighted) then
      mode_old = NORM_UNIT
    else
      mode_old = NORM_SIGMA
    end if
    call event_normalization_update (event%weight_prc, &
      event%config%sigma, event%config%n, &
      mode_new = event%config%norm_mode, &
      mode_old = mode_old)
    call event_normalization_update (event%excess_prc, &
      event%config%sigma, event%config%n, &
      mode_new = event%config%norm_mode, &
      mode_old = mode_old)
  end subroutine event_update_normalization

```

The event is complete if it has a particle set plus valid entries for the sqme and weight values.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: check => event_check

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_check (event)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    event%is_complete = event%particle_set_exists &
      .and. event%sqme_ref_is_known &

```

```

        .and. event%sqme_prc_is_known &
        .and. event%weight_ref_is_known &
        .and. event%weight_prc_is_known
    if (event%n_alt /= 0) then
        event%is_complete = event%is_complete &
        .and. event%sqme_alt_is_known &
        .and. event%weight_alt_is_known
    end if
end subroutine event_check

```

### 17.4.8 Generation

Assuming that we have a valid process associated to the event, we generate an event. We complete the event data, then factorize the spin density matrix and transfer it to the particle set.

When done, we retrieve squared matrix element and weight. In case of explicit generation, the reference values coincide with the process values, so we **accept** the latter.

The explicit random number argument **r** should be generated by a random-number generator. It is taken for the factorization algorithm, bypassing the event-specific random-number generator. This is useful for deterministic testing.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: generate => event_generate

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_generate (event, i_mci, r)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
        real(default), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: r
        call event%reset ()
        event%selected_i_mci = i_mci
        if (event%config%unweighted) then
            call event%process%generate_unweighted_event (event%instance, i_mci)
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call event%instance%evaluate_event_data ()
            call event%instance%normalize_weight ()
        else
            call event%process%generate_weighted_event (event%instance, i_mci)
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call event%instance%evaluate_event_data ()
        end if
        event%selected_channel = event%instance%get_channel ()
        call event%import_instance_results ()
        call event%accept_sqme_prc ()
        call event%update_normalization ()
        call event%accept_weight_prc ()
        call event%evaluate_transforms (r)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call event%check ()
    end subroutine event_generate

```

Get a copy of the particle set belonging to the hard process.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_particle_set_hard_proc => event_get_particle_set_hard_proc

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_get_particle_set_hard_proc (event, pset)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    type(particle_set_t), intent(out) :: pset
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
    evt => event%transform_first
    pset = evt%particle_set
  end subroutine event_get_particle_set_hard_proc

```

### 17.4.9 Recovering an event

Select MC group, term, and integration channel.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select => event_select

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_select (event, i_mci, i_term, channel)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci, i_term, channel
    if (associated (event%instance)) then
      event%selected_i_mci = i_mci
      event%selected_i_term = i_term
      event%selected_channel = channel
    else
      call msg_bug ("Event: select term: process instance undefined")
    end if
  end subroutine event_select

```

Copy a particle set into the event record.

We deliberately use the first (the trivial) transform for this, i.e., the hard process. Thus, with the current implementation, event readers can only be used for reading hard events. However, once we have reconstructed the master process, we may apply all event transforms to generate a fully dressed event.

Since this makes all subsequent event transforms invalid, we call `reset` on them.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_particle_set_hard_proc => event_set_particle_set_hard_proc

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_set_particle_set_hard_proc (event, particle_set)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in) :: particle_set
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
    evt => event%transform_first
    call evt%set_particle_set (particle_set, &
      event%selected_i_mci, event%selected_i_term)
    event%particle_set => evt%particle_set
    call event%accept_particle_set ()
  end subroutine event_set_particle_set_hard_proc

```

```

    evt => evt%next
  do while (associated (evt))
    call evt%reset ()
    evt => evt%next
  end do
end subroutine event_set_particle_set_hard_proc

```

Mark the particle set as existing, assuming that it has just been filled somehow.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: accept_particle_set => event_accept_particle_set

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_accept_particle_set (event)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    event%particle_set_exists = .true.
  end subroutine event_accept_particle_set

```

Here we try to recover an event from the `particle_set` subobject and recalculate the structure functions and matrix elements. We have the appropriate `process` object and an initialized `process_instance` at hand, so beam and configuration data are known. From the `particle_set`, we get the momenta.

The quantum-number information may be incomplete, e.g., helicity information may be partial or absent. We recover the event just from the momentum configuration.

We do not transfer the matrix element from the process instance to the event record, as we do when generating an event. The event record may contain the matrix element as read from file, and the current calculation may use different parameters. We thus can compare old and new values.

The event `weight` may also be known already. If yes, we pass it to the `evaluate_event_data` procedure. It should already be normalized. If we have an `weight_factor` value, we obtain the event weight by multiplying the computed `sqme` by this factor. Otherwise, we make use of the MCI setup (which should be valid then) to compute the event weight, and we should normalize the result just as when generating events.

Evaluating event expressions must also be done separately.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: recalculate => event_recalculate

<Events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_recalculate &
    (event, update_sqme, weight_factor, recover_beams)
    class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    logical, intent(in) :: update_sqme
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight_factor
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    integer :: i_mci, i_term, channel
    if (event%particle_set_exists) then
      i_mci = event%selected_i_mci
      i_term = event%selected_i_term
      channel = event%selected_channel
      if (i_mci == 0 .or. i_term == 0 .or. channel == 0) then
        call msg_bug ("Event: recalculate: undefined selection parameters")
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine event_recalculate

```



```

end if
call event%instance%choose_mci (i_mci)
call event%instance%set_trace (event%particle_set, i_term, recover_beams)
call event%instance%recover (channel, i_term, update_sqme)
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (update_sqme .and. present (weight_factor)) then
  call event%instance%evaluate_event_data &
    (weight = event%instance%get_sqme () * weight_factor)
else if (event%weight_ref_is_known) then
  call event%instance%evaluate_event_data &
    (weight = event%weight_ref)
else
  call event%process%recover_event (event%instance, i_term)
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  call event%instance%evaluate_event_data ()
  if (event%config%unweighted) then
    call event%instance%normalize_weight ()
  end if
end if
end if
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (update_sqme) then
  call event%import_instance_results ()
else
  call event%accept_sqme_ref ()
  call event%accept_weight_ref ()
end if
else
  call msg_bug ("Event: can't recalculate, particle set is undefined")
end if
end subroutine event_recalculate

```

#### 17.4.10 Access content

Pointer to the associated process object.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_process_ptr => event_get_process_ptr

<Events: procedures>+≡
  function event_get_process_ptr (event) result (ptr)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    type(process_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => event%process
  end function event_get_process_ptr

```

Tell whether the particle set is defined:

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: has_particle_set => event_has_particle_set

<Events: procedures>+≡
  function event_has_particle_set (event) result (flag)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    logical :: flag
    flag = event%particle_set_exists

```

```
end function event_has_particle_set
```

Pointer to the particle set.

```
<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_particle_set_ptr => event_get_particle_set_ptr
<Events: procedures>+≡
  function event_get_particle_set_ptr (event) result (ptr)
    class(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
    type(particle_set_t), pointer :: ptr
    ptr => event%particle_set
  end function event_get_particle_set_ptr
```

Return the current values of indices: the MCI group of components, the term index (different terms corresponding, potentially, to different effective kinematics), and the MC integration channel. The `i_mci` call is delegated to the current process instance.

```
<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_i_mci => event_get_i_mci
  procedure :: get_i_term => event_get_i_term
  procedure :: get_channel => event_get_channel
<Events: procedures>+≡
  function event_get_i_mci (event) result (i_mci)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    integer :: i_mci
    i_mci = event%selected_i_mci
  end function event_get_i_mci

  function event_get_i_term (event) result (i_term)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    integer :: i_term
    i_term = event%selected_i_term
  end function event_get_i_term

  function event_get_channel (event) result (channel)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    integer :: channel
    channel = event%selected_channel
  end function event_get_channel
```

Return the currently selected normalization mode, or alternate normalization mode.

```
<Events: event: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_norm_mode => event_get_norm_mode
<Events: procedures>+≡
  elemental function event_get_norm_mode (event) result (norm_mode)
    class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    integer :: norm_mode
    norm_mode = event%config%norm_mode
  end function event_get_norm_mode
```

Return the kinematical weight, defined as the ratio of event weight and squared matrix element.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_kinematical_weight => event_get_kinematical_weight

<Events: procedures>+≡
    function event_get_kinematical_weight (event) result (f)
        class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
        real(default) :: f
        if (event%sqme_ref_is_known .and. event%weight_ref_is_known &
            .and. event%sqme_ref /= 0) then
            f = event%weight_ref / event%sqme_ref
        else
            f = 0
        end if
    end function event_get_kinematical_weight

```

Return data used by external event formats.

```

<Events: event: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_fac_scale => event_get_fac_scale
    procedure :: get_alpha_s => event_get_alpha_s

<Events: procedures>+≡
    function event_get_fac_scale (event) result (fac_scale)
        class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
        real(default) :: fac_scale
        fac_scale = event%instance%get_fac_scale (event%selected_i_term)
    end function event_get_fac_scale

    function event_get_alpha_s (event) result (alpha_s)
        class(event_t), intent(in) :: event
        real(default) :: alpha_s
        alpha_s = event%instance%get_alpha_s (event%selected_i_term)
    end function event_get_alpha_s

```

Eliminate numerical noise in the subevt expression and in the event transforms (which includes associated process instances).

```

<Events: public>+≡
    public :: pacify

<Events: interfaces>≡
    interface pacify
        module procedure pacify_event
    end interface pacify

<Events: procedures>+≡
    subroutine pacify_event (event)
        class(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
        class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
        if (event%particle_set_exists) call pacify (event%particle_set)
        if (event%expr%subevt_filled) call pacify (event%expr)
        evt => event%transform_first
        do while (associated (evt))
            select type (evt)

```

```

        type is (evt_decay_t); call pacify (evt)
    end select
    evt => evt%next
end do
end subroutine pacify_event

```

### 17.4.11 Unit tests

```

<Events: public>+≡
    public :: events_test

<Events: tests>≡
    subroutine events_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Events: execute tests>
    end subroutine events_test

```

#### Empty event record

```

<Events: execute tests>≡
    call test (events_1, "events_1", &
        "empty event record", &
        u, results)

<Events: tests>+≡
    subroutine events_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(event_t), target :: event

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display an empty event object"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call event%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_1"

    end subroutine events_1

```

#### Simple event

```

<Events: execute tests>+≡
    call test (events_2, "events_2", &
        "generate event", &
        u, results)

```

```

<Events: tests>+≡
subroutine events_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate and display an event"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"

  allocate (process)
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event object"

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"

  call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Fill event object"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
  call event%evaluate_expressions ()
  call event%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call event%final ()
  deallocate (event)

  call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
  deallocate (process_instance)
  deallocate (process)

  call model_list%final ()
  call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_2"

end subroutine events_2

```

## Event expressions

After generating an event, fill the `subevt` and evaluate expressions for selection, reweighting, and analysis.

```

<Events: execute tests>+≡
  call test (events_3, "events_3", &
    "expression evaluation", &
    u, results)

<Events: tests>+≡
  subroutine events_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_selection, pt_reweight, pt_analysis
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and evaluate expressions"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call syntax_pexpr_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Expression texts"
    write (u, "(A)")

    expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
    write (u, "(A,A)") "selection = ", char (expr_text)
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
    call stream_init (stream, ifile)
    call parse_tree_init_lexpr (pt_selection, stream, .true.)
    call stream_final (stream)

    expr_text = "1 + sqrts_hat / sqrts"
    write (u, "(A,A)") "reweight = ", char (expr_text)
    call ifile_clear (ifile)
    call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
    call stream_init (stream, ifile)
    call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_reweight, stream, .true.)
    call stream_final (stream)

    expr_text = "true"

```

```

write (u, "(A,A)") "analysis = ", char (expr_text)
call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (pt_analysis, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)

call ifile_final (ifile)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process event"

allocate (process)
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process%set_var_list &
    (model_get_var_list_ptr (process%get_model_ptr ()))
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event object and set expressions"

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()

call event%set_selection (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_selection))
call event%set_reweight (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_reweight))
call event%set_analysis (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_analysis))

call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())
call var_list_append_real &
    (event%expr%var_list, var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default)
call event%setup_expressions ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"

call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Fill event object and evaluate expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)

```

```

deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_3"

end subroutine events_3

```

### Recovering an event

Generate an event and store the particle set. Then reset the event record, recall the particle set, and recover the event from that.

```

<Events: execute tests>+≡
  call test (events_4, "events_4", &
    "recover event", &
    u, results)

<Events: tests>+≡
  subroutine events_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate and recover an event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event and save particle set"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (process)
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
    call event%evaluate_expressions ()
    call event%write (u)

    particle_set = event%particle_set

```



```

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover event from particle set"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call event%select (1, 1, 1)
call event%set_particle_set_hard_proc (particle_set)
call event%recalculate (update_sqme = .true.)
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Transfer sqme and evaluate expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call event%accept_sqme_prc ()
call event%accept_weight_prc ()
call event%check ()
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset contents"
write (u, "(A)")

call event%reset ()
event%transform_first%particle_set_exists = .false.
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (particle_set)

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

```

```

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_4"

end subroutine events_4

```

## Partially Recovering an event

Generate an event and store the particle set. Then reset the event record, recall the particle set, and recover the event as far as possible without recomputing the squared matrix element.

```

<Events: execute tests>+≡
  call test (events_5, "events_5", &
    "partially recover event", &
    u, results)

<Events: tests>+≡
  subroutine events_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set
    real(default) :: sqme, weight
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate and recover an event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event and save particle set"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (process)
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
    call event%evaluate_expressions ()
    call event%write (u)

    particle_set = event%particle_set
    sqme = event%sqme_ref

```

```

weight = event%weight_ref

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recover event from particle set"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call event%select (1, 1, 1)
call event%set_particle_set_hard_proc (particle_set)
call event%recalculate (update_sqme = .false.)
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Manually set sqme and evaluate expressions"
write (u, "(A)")

call event%set (sqme_ref = sqme, weight_ref = weight)
call event%accept_sqme_ref ()
call event%accept_weight_ref ()
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call particle_set_final (particle_set)

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_5"

```

```
end subroutine events_5
```

## Decays

Generate an event with subsequent decays.

```
(Events: execute tests)+≡
  call test (events_6, "events_6", &
    "decays", &
    u, results)

(Events: tests)+≡
  subroutine events_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: prefix, procname1, procname2
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt_decay
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event with subsequent decays"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process and decay"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call os_data_init (os_data)

    prefix = "events_6"
    procname1 = prefix // "_p"
    procname2 = prefix // "_d"
    call prepare_testbed &
      (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
        scattering=.true., decay=.true.)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize decay process"

    call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2])

    process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)
    allocate (process_instance)
    call process_instance%init (process)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
    call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

    write (u, "(A)")
```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event transform: decay"

allocate (evt_decay_t :: evt_decay)
call evt_decay%connect (process_instance, model, process_stack)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event object"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, model)
call event%import_transform (evt_decay)

call event%write (u, show_decay = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate event"
write (u, "(A)")

call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

call process_stack%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_6"

end subroutine events_6

```

## Decays

Generate a decay event with varying options.

```

<Events: execute tests>+≡
  call test (events_7, "events_7", &
    "decay options", &
    u, results)

<Events: tests>+≡
  subroutine events_7 (u)

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: u
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(string_t) :: prefix, procname2
type(process_library_t), target :: lib
type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
type(process_t), pointer :: process
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: events_7"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check decay options"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare test process"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)

prefix = "events_7"
procname2 = prefix // "_d"
call prepare_testbed &
      (lib, process_stack, model_list, model, prefix, os_data, &
       scattering=.false., decay=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate decay event, default options"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2])

process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname2)
allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data (model)
call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate decay event, helicity-diagonal decay"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2], diagonal = .true.)

process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname2)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data (model)

```

```

call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate decay event, isotropic decay, &
    &polarized final state"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_set_unstable (model, 25, [procname2], isotropic = .true.)
call model_set_polarized (model, 6)
call model_set_polarized (model, -6)

process => process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname2)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data (model)
call process_instance%init_simulation (1)

call process%generate_weighted_event (process_instance, 1)
call process_instance%write (u)

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call process_stack%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: events_7"

end subroutine events_7

```

## Chapter 18

# Matrix Element Implementations

In this chapter, we define concrete implementations for the workflow, from matrix-element code generation via matrix-element access to integration and event generation.

### 18.1 Template matrix elements

Here, we provide template matrix elements that are in structure very similar to O'MEGA matrix elements, but do not need its infrastructure. Per default, the matrix elements are flat, i.e. they have the constant value one. Analogous to the O'MEGA implementation, this section implements the interface to the templates (via the makefile) and the driver.

```
<prc_template_me.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module prc_template_me  
  
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    <Use strings>  
    use limits, only: TAB !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use os_interface  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use flavors  
    use sm_qcd  
    use interactions  
    use variables  
    use models  
  
    use process_constants  
    use prclib_interfaces
```



```

    use prc_core_def
    use particle_specifiers
    use process_libraries
    use prc_core

    <Standard module head>

    <Template matrix elements: public>

    <Template matrix elements: types>

    <Template matrix elements: interfaces>

    contains

    <Template matrix elements: procedures>

    <Template matrix elements: tests>

    end module prc_template_me

```

### 18.1.1 Process definition

For the process definition we implement an extension of the `prc_core_def_t` abstract type.

```

    <Template matrix elements: public>≡
        public :: template_me_def_t

    <Template matrix elements: types>≡
        type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: template_me_def_t
        contains
        <Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>
        end type template_me_def_t

    <Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>≡
        procedure, nopass :: type_string => template_me_def_type_string

    <Template matrix elements: procedures>≡
        function template_me_def_type_string () result (string)
            type(string_t) :: string
            string = "template"
        end function template_me_def_type_string

```

Initialization: allocate the writer for the template matrix element. Also set any data for this process that the writer needs.

```

    <Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
        procedure :: init => template_me_def_init

    <Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
        subroutine template_me_def_init &
            (object, model, prt_in, prt_out, unity)
            class(template_me_def_t), intent(out) :: object
            type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
            type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in

```

```

    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    logical, intent(in) :: unity
    allocate (template_me_writer_t :: object%writer)
    select type (writer => object%writer)
    type is (template_me_writer_t)
        call writer%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity)
    end select
end subroutine template_me_def_init

```

Write/read process- and method-specific data.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => template_me_def_write

```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_def_write (object, unit)
        class(template_me_def_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        select type (writer => object%writer)
        type is (template_me_writer_t)
            call writer%write (unit)
        end select
    end subroutine template_me_def_write

```

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read => template_me_def_read

```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_def_read (object, unit)
        class(template_me_def_t), intent(out) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        call msg_bug &
            ("WHIZARD template process definition: input not supported (yet)")
    end subroutine template_me_def_read

```

Allocate the driver for template matrix elements.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: allocate_driver => template_me_def_allocate_driver

```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_def_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
        class(template_me_def_t), intent(in) :: object
        class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
        allocate (template_me_driver_t :: driver)
    end subroutine template_me_def_allocate_driver

```

We need code:

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: needs_code => template_me_def_needs_code

```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
function template_me_def_needs_code () result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
end function template_me_def_needs_code

```

These are the features that a template matrix element provides.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡
procedure, nopass :: get_features => template_me_def_get_features

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine template_me_def_get_features (features)
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
    allocate (features (6))
    features = [ &
        var_str ("init"), &
        var_str ("update_alpha_s"), &
        var_str ("is_allowed"), &
        var_str ("new_event"), &
        var_str ("get_amplitude")]
end subroutine template_me_def_get_features

```

The interface of the specific features.

```

<Template matrix elements: interfaces>≡
abstract interface
    subroutine init_t (par) bind(C)
        import
        real(c_default_float), dimension(*), intent(in) :: par
    end subroutine init_t
end interface

abstract interface
    subroutine update_alpha_s_t (alpha_s) bind(C)
        import
        real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: alpha_s
    end subroutine update_alpha_s_t
end interface

abstract interface
    subroutine is_allowed_t (flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)
        import
        integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col
        logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag
    end subroutine is_allowed_t
end interface

abstract interface
    subroutine new_event_t (p) bind(C)
        import
        real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), intent(in) :: p
    end subroutine new_event_t
end interface

```

```

abstract interface
  subroutine get_amplitude_t (flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col
    complex(c_default_complex), intent(out):: amp
  end subroutine get_amplitude_t
end interface

```

Connect the template matrix element features with the process driver.

*<Template matrix elements: template ME def: TBP>+≡*

```

  procedure :: connect => template_me_def_connect

```

*<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡*

```

  subroutine template_me_def_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    class(template_me_def_t), intent(in) :: def
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
    integer(c_int) :: pid, fid
    type(c_funptr) :: fptr
    select type (proc_driver)
    type is (template_me_driver_t)
      pid = i
      fid = 1
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%init)
      fid = 2
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%update_alpha_s)
      fid = 3
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%is_allowed)
      fid = 4
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%new_event)
      fid = 5
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%get_amplitude)
    end select
  end subroutine template_me_def_connect

```

### 18.1.2 The Template Matrix element writer

Unlike O'MEGA, the template matrix element is directly written by the main WHIZARD program, so there will be no entry in the makefile for calling an external program. The template matrix element writer is responsible for writing interfaces and wrappers.

*<Template matrix elements: types>+≡*

```

  type, extends (prc_writer_f_module_t) :: template_me_writer_t
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    logical :: unity

```

```

    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out
    integer :: n_in
    integer :: n_out
    integer :: n_tot
contains
    <Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>
end type template_me_writer_t

```

The reported type is the same as for the `template_me_def_t` type.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => template_me_writer_type_name
<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    function template_me_writer_type_name () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "template"
    end function template_me_writer_type_name

```

Taking into account the prefix for template ME module names.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: get_module_name => template_me_writer_get_module_name
<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    function template_me_writer_get_module_name (id) result (name)
        type(string_t) :: name
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        name = "tpr_" // id
    end function template_me_writer_get_module_name

```

Output. This is called by `template_me_def_write`.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => template_me_writer_write
<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_writer_write (object, unit)
        class(template_me_writer_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        integer :: i, j
        write (unit, "(5x,A,I0)") "# incoming part. = ", object%n_in
        write (unit, "(7x,A)", advance="no") &
            "    Initial state: "
        do i = 1, object%n_in - 1
            write (unit, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (object%prt_in(i))
        end do
        write (unit, "(1x,A)") char (object%prt_in(object%n_in))
        write (unit, "(5x,A,I0)") "# outgoing part. = ", object%n_out
        write (unit, "(7x,A)", advance="no") &
            "    Final state:  "
        do j = 1, object%n_out - 1
            write (unit, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (object%prt_out(i))
        end do
        write (unit, "(1x,A)") char (object%prt_out(object%n_out))
        write (unit, "(5x,A,I0)") "# part. (total) = ", object%n_tot
    end subroutine template_me_writer_write

```

```
end subroutine template_me_writer_write
```

Initialize with process data.

```
<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => template_me_writer_init

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  subroutine template_me_writer_init (writer, model, &
    prt_in, prt_out, unity)
    class(template_me_writer_t), intent(out) :: writer
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    logical, intent(in) :: unity
    writer%model => model
    writer%model_name = model%get_name ()
    writer%n_in = size (prt_in)
    writer%n_out = size (prt_out)
    writer%n_tot = size (prt_in) + size (prt_out)
    allocate (writer%prt_in (size (prt_in)), source = prt_in)
    allocate (writer%prt_out (size (prt_out)), source = prt_out)
    writer%unity = unity
  end subroutine template_me_writer_init
```

The makefile is the driver file for the test matrix elements.

```
<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write_makefile_code => template_me_write_makefile_code

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  subroutine template_me_write_makefile_code (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)
    class(template_me_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
    write (unit, "(5A)") "SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "clean-", char (id), ":"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "rm -f tpr_", char (id), ".mod"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "rm -f ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += tpr_", char (id), ".mod"
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
    write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".lo: ", char (id), ".f90"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(LTF_COMPILE) $<"
  end subroutine template_me_write_makefile_code
```

The source is written by this routine.

```
<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+=
  procedure :: write_source_code => template_me_write_source_code

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  subroutine template_me_write_source_code (writer, id)
    class(template_me_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
```

```

type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
integer, dimension(writer%n_in) :: prt_in, mult_in, col_in
type(flavor_t), dimension(1:writer%n_in) :: flv_in
integer, dimension(writer%n_out) :: prt_out, mult_out
integer, dimension(writer%n_tot) :: prt, mult
integer, dimension(:, :), allocatable :: sxxx
integer :: dummy, status
type(flavor_t), dimension(1:writer%n_out) :: flv_out
type(string_t) :: proc_str, comment_str
integer :: u, i, j
integer :: hel, hel_in, hel_out, fac, factor, col_fac
type(string_t) :: filename
comment_str = ""
do i = 1, writer%n_in
    comment_str = comment_str // writer%prt_in(i) // " "
end do
do j = 1, writer%n_out
    comment_str = comment_str // writer%prt_out(j) // " "
end do
do i = 1, writer%n_in
    prt_in(i) = model_get_particle_pdg (writer%model, writer%prt_in(i))
    call flavor_init (flv_in(i), prt_in(i), writer%model)
    mult_in(i) = flavor_get_multiplicity (flv_in(i))
    col_in(i) = abs(flavor_get_color_type (flv_in(i)))
    mult(i) = mult_in(i)
end do
do j = 1, writer%n_out
    prt_out(j) = model_get_particle_pdg (writer%model, writer%prt_out(j))
    call flavor_init (flv_out(j), prt_out(j), writer%model)
    mult_out(j) = flavor_get_multiplicity (flv_out(j))
    mult(writer%n_in + j) = mult_out(j)
end do
prt(1:writer%n_in) = prt_in(1:writer%n_in)
prt(writer%n_in+1:writer%n_tot) = prt_out(1:writer%n_out)
proc_str = converter (prt)
hel_in = product (mult_in)
hel_out = product (mult_out)
col_fac = product (col_in)
hel = hel_in * hel_out
fac = hel
dummy = 1
factor = 1
if (writer%n_out >= 3) then
    do i = 3, writer%n_out
        factor = factor * (i - 2) * (i - 1)
    end do
end if
factor = factor * col_fac
allocate (sxxx(1:hel, 1:writer%n_tot))
call create_spin_table (dummy, hel, fac, mult, sxxx)
call msg_message ("Writing test matrix element for process '" &
    // char (id) // "'")
filename = id // ".f90"
u = free_unit ()

```

```

open (unit=u, file=char(filename), action="write")
write (u, "(A)") "!! File generated automatically by WHIZARD"
write (u, "(A)") "!"
write (u, "(A)") "!! Note that irresp. of what you demanded WHIZARD"
write (u, "(A)") "!! treats this as colorless process"
write (u, "(A)") "!"
write (u, "(A)") "module tpr_" // char(id)
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  use kinds"
write (u, "(A)") "  use omega_color, OCF => omega_color_factor"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") "  private"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: number_particles_in, number_particles_out"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: number_spin_states, spin_states"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: number_flavor_states, flavor_states"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: number_color_flows, color_flows"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: number_color_indices, number_color_factors, &"
write (u, "(A)") "    color_factors, color_sum, openmp_supported"
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: init, final, update_alpha_s"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  public :: new_event, is_allowed, get_amplitude"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  real(default), parameter :: &"
write (u, "(A)") "    & conv = 0.38937966e12_default"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  real(default), parameter :: &"
write (u, "(A)") "    & pi = 3.1415926535897932384626433832795028841972_default"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  real(default), parameter :: &"
if (writer%unity) then
  write (u, "(A)") "    & const = 1"
else
  write (u, "(A,1x,I0,A)") "    & const = (16 * pi / conv) * " &
    // "(16 * pi**2)**(", writer%n_out, "-2) "
end if
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A,1x,I0)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_prt = ", &
  writer%n_tot
write (u, "(A,1x,I0)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_in = ", &
  writer%n_in
write (u, "(A,1x,I0)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_out = ", &
  writer%n_out
write (u, "(A)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_cflow = 1"
write (u, "(A)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_cindex = 2"
write (u, "(A)") "  !!! We ignore tensor products and take only one flavor state."
write (u, "(A)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_flv = 1"
write (u, "(A,1x,I0)") "  integer, parameter, private :: n_hel = ", hel
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "  logical, parameter, private :: T = .true."
write (u, "(A)") "  logical, parameter, private :: F = .false."
write (u, "(A)") "

```



```

do i = 1, hel
  write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_prt), parameter, private :: &"
  write (u, "(A)") " " // s_conv(i) // " = (/ " // &
    char(converter(sxxx(i,1:writer%n_tot))) // " /)"
end do
write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_prt,n_hel), parameter, private :: table_spin_states =
write (u, "(A)") " reshape ( (/ & "
do i = 1, hel-1
  write (u, "(A)") " " // s_conv(i) // ", & "
end do
write (u, "(A)") " " // s_conv(hel) // " & "
write (u, "(A)") " /), (/ n_prt, n_hel /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_prt), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " f0001 = (/ " // char(proc_str) // " /) ! " // char(comment_str)
write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_prt,n_flv), parameter, private :: table_flavor_states
write (u, "(A)") " reshape ( (/ f0001 /), (/ n_prt, n_flv /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_cindex, n_prt), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " c0001 = reshape ( (/ " // char (dummy_colorizer (flv_in)) // " " // &
  (repeat ("0,0, ", writer%n_out-1)) // "0,0 /), " // " (/ n_cindex, n_prt /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " integer, dimension(n_cindex, n_prt, n_cflow), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " table_color_flows = reshape ( (/ c0001 /), (/ n_cindex, n_prt, n_cflow /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " logical, dimension(n_prt), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " g0001 = (/ " // (repeat ("F, ", writer%n_tot-1)) // "F /) "
write (u, "(A)") " logical, dimension(n_prt, n_cflow), parameter, private " &
  // ":: table_ghost_flags = &"
write (u, "(A)") " reshape ( (/ g0001 /), (/ n_prt, n_cflow /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " integer, parameter, private :: n_cfactors = 1"
write (u, "(A)") " type(OCF), dimension(n_cfactors), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " table_color_factors = (/ OCF(1,1,+1._default) /)"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " logical, dimension(n_flv), parameter, private :: a0001 = (/ T /)"
write (u, "(A)") " logical, dimension(n_flv, n_cflow), parameter, private :: &"
write (u, "(A)") " flv_col_is_allowed = reshape ( (/ a0001 /), (/ n_flv, n_cflow /) )"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " complex(default), dimension (n_flv, n_hel, n_cflow), private, save :: amp"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " logical, dimension(n_hel), private, save :: hel_is_allowed = T"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") "contains"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function md5sum ()"
write (u, "(A)") " character(len=32) :: md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") " ! DON'T EVEN THINK of modifying the following line!"
write (u, "(A)") " md5sum = "" // writer%md5sum // ""
write (u, "(A)") " end function md5sum"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " subroutine init (par)"
write (u, "(A)") " real(default), dimension(*), intent(in) :: par"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine init"
write (u, "(A)") " "

```

```

write (u, "(A)") " subroutine final ()"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine final"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " subroutine update_alpha_s (alpha_s)"
write (u, "(A)") "   real(default), intent(in) :: alpha_s"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine update_alpha_s"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_particles_in () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "   n = n_in"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_particles_in"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_particles_out () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "   n = n_out"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_particles_out"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_spin_states () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "   n = size (table_spin_states, dim=2)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_spin_states"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure subroutine spin_states (a)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer, dimension(:,,:), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(A)") "   a = table_spin_states"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine spin_states"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_flavor_states () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "   n = 1"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_flavor_states"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure subroutine flavor_states (a)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer, dimension(:,,:), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(A)") "   a = table_flavor_states"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine flavor_states"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_color_indices () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "   n = size(table_color_flows, dim=1)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_color_indices"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure subroutine color_factors (cf)"
write (u, "(A)") "   type(OCF), dimension(:,), intent(out) :: cf"
write (u, "(A)") "   cf = table_color_factors"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine color_factors"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function color_sum (flv, hel) result (amp2)"
write (u, "(A)") "   integer, intent(in) :: flv, hel"
write (u, "(A)") "   real(kind=default) :: amp2"
write (u, "(A)") "   amp2 = real (omega_color_sum (flv, hel, amp, table_color_factors))"
write (u, "(A)") " end function color_sum"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_color_flows () result (n)"

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "      integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "      n = size (table_color_flows, dim=3)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_color_flows"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure subroutine color_flows (a, g)"
write (u, "(A)") "      integer, dimension(:, :, :), intent(out) :: a"
write (u, "(A)") "      logical, dimension(:, :), intent(out) :: g"
write (u, "(A)") "      a = table_color_flows"
write (u, "(A)") "      g = table_ghost_flags"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine color_flows"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function number_color_factors () result (n)"
write (u, "(A)") "      integer :: n"
write (u, "(A)") "      n = size (table_color_factors)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function number_color_factors"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function openmp_supported () result (status)"
write (u, "(A)") "      logical :: status"
write (u, "(A)") "      status = .false."
write (u, "(A)") " end function openmp_supported"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " subroutine new_event (p)"
write (u, "(A)") "      real(default), dimension(0:3,*), intent(in) :: p"
write (u, "(A)") "      call calculate_amplitudes (amp, p)"
write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine new_event"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function is_allowed (flv, hel, col) result (yorn)"
write (u, "(A)") "      logical :: yorn"
write (u, "(A)") "      integer, intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
write (u, "(A)") "      yorn = hel_is_allowed(hel) .and. flv_col_is_allowed(flv,col)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function is_allowed"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure function get_amplitude (flv, hel, col) result (amp_result)"
write (u, "(A)") "      complex(default) :: amp_result"
write (u, "(A)") "      integer, intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
write (u, "(A)") "      amp_result = amp (flv, hel, col)"
write (u, "(A)") " end function get_amplitude"
write (u, "(A)") " "
write (u, "(A)") " pure subroutine calculate_amplitudes (amp, k)"
write (u, "(A)") "      complex(default), dimension(:, :, :), intent(out) :: amp"
write (u, "(A)") "      real(default), dimension(0:3,*), intent(in) :: k"
write (u, "(A)") "      real(default) :: fac"
write (u, "(A)") "      integer :: i"
write (u, "(A)") "      ! We give all helicities the same weight!"
if (writer%unity) then
    write (u, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)") "      fac = ", col_fac
    write (u, "(A)") "      amp = const * sqrt(fac)"
else
    write (u, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)") "      fac = ", factor
    write (u, "(A)") "      amp = sqrt((2 * (k(0,1)*k(0,2) &"
    write (u, "(A,1x,I0,A)") "      - dot_product (k(1:,1), k(1:,2)))) ** (3-, &"
    write (u, "(A)") "      writer%n_out, ")) * sqrt(const * fac)"
end if
write (u, "(A,1x,I0,A)") "      amp = amp / sqrt(", hel_out, "._default)"

```

```

write (u, "(A)") " end subroutine calculate_amplitudes"
write (u, "(A)") "
write (u, "(A)") "end module tpr_" // char(id)
close (u, iostat=status)
deallocate (sxxx)
contains
function s_conv (num) result (chrt)
  integer, intent(in) :: num
  character(len=10) :: chrt
  write (chrt, "(I10)") num
  chrt = trim(adjustl(chrt))
  if (num < 10) then
    chrt = "s000" // chrt
  else if (num < 100) then
    chrt = "s00" // chrt
  else if (num < 1000) then
    chrt = "s0" // chrt
  else
    chrt = "s" // chrt
  end if
end function s_conv
function converter (flv) result (str)
  integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
  type(string_t) :: str
  character(len=150), dimension(size(flv)) :: chrt
  integer :: i
  str = ""
  do i = 1, size(flv) - 1
    write (chrt(i), "(I10)") flv(i)
    str = str // var_str(trim(adjustl(chrt(i)))) // ", "
  end do
  write (chrt(size(flv)), "(I10)") flv(size(flv))
  str = str // trim(adjustl(chrt(size(flv))))
end function converter
integer function sj (j,m)
  integer, intent(in) :: j, m
  if (((j == 1) .and. (m == 1)) .or. &
      ((j == 2) .and. (m == 2)) .or. &
      ((j == 3) .and. (m == 3)) .or. &
      ((j == 4) .and. (m == 3)) .or. &
      ((j == 5) .and. (m == 4))) then
    sj = 1
  else if (((j == 2) .and. (m == 1)) .or. &
          ((j == 3) .and. (m == 1)) .or. &
          ((j == 4) .and. (m == 2)) .or. &
          ((j == 5) .and. (m == 2))) then
    sj = -1
  else if (((j == 3) .and. (m == 2)) .or. &
          ((j == 5) .and. (m == 3))) then
    sj = 0
  else if (((j == 4) .and. (m == 1)) .or. &
          ((j == 5) .and. (m == 1))) then
    sj = -2
  else if (((j == 4) .and. (m == 4)) .or. &

```

```

        ((j == 5) .and. (m == 5))) then
            sj = 2
        else
            call msg_fatal ("template_me_write_source_code: Wrong spin type")
        end if
    end function sj
recursive subroutine create_spin_table (index, nhel, fac, mult, inta)
    integer, intent(inout) :: index, fac
    integer, intent(in) :: nhel
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: mult
    integer, dimension(nhel,size(mult)), intent(out) :: inta
    integer :: j
    if (index > size(mult)) return
    fac = fac / mult(index)
    do j = 1, nhel
        inta(j,index) = sj (mult(index),mod(((j-1)/fac),mult(index))+1)
    end do
    index = index + 1
    call create_spin_table (index, nhel, fac, mult, inta)
end subroutine create_spin_table
function dummy_colorizer (flv) result (str)
    type(flavor_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: flv
    type(string_t) :: str
    integer :: i, k
    str = ""
    k = 0
    do i = 1, size(flv)
        k = k + 1
        select case (flavor_get_color_type (flv(i)))
            case (1,-1)
                str = str // "0,0, "
            case (3)
                str = str // int2string(k) // ",0, "
            case (-3)
                str = str // "0," // int2string(-k) // ", "
            case (8)
                str = str // int2string(k) // "," // int2string(-k-1) // ", "
                k = k + 1
            case default
                call msg_error ("Color type not supported.")
        end select
    end do
    str = adjustl(trim(str))
end function dummy_colorizer
end subroutine template_me_write_source_code

```

Return the name of a procedure that implements a given feature, as it is provided by the template matrix-element code. Template ME names are chosen completely in analogy to the O'MEGA matrix element conventions.

*<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+≡*

procedure, nopass :: get\_procname => template\_me\_writer\_get\_procname

*<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡*

function template\_me\_writer\_get\_procname (feature) result (name)

```

type(string_t) :: name
type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
select case (char (feature))
case ("n_in");   name = "number_particles_in"
case ("n_out");  name = "number_particles_out"
case ("n_flv");  name = "number_flavor_states"
case ("n_hel");  name = "number_spin_states"
case ("n_col");  name = "number_color_flows"
case ("n_cin");  name = "number_color_indices"
case ("n_cf");   name = "number_color_factors"
case ("flv_state"); name = "flavor_states"
case ("hel_state"); name = "spin_states"
case ("col_state"); name = "color_flows"
case default
    name = feature
end select
end function template_me_writer_get_procname

```

The interfaces for the template-specific features.

*<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: write_interface => template_me_write_interface

```

*<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine template_me_write_interface (writer, unit, id, feature)
class(template_me_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
type(string_t) :: name
name = writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "interface"
select case (char (feature))
case ("init")
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (par) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(*), &
        &intent(in) :: par"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("update_alpha_s")
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (alpha_s) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: alpha_s"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("is_allowed")
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " &
        &(flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag"
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("new_event")
    write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (p) bind(C)"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
    write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), &

```

```

        &intent(in) :: p"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    case ("get_amplitude")
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " &
            &(flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "complex(c_default_complex), intent(out) &
            &:: amp"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    end select
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "end interface"
end subroutine template_me_write_interface

```

The wrappers have to take into account conversion between C and Fortran data types.

NOTE: The case `c_default_float`  $\neq$  default is not yet covered.

*<Template matrix elements: template ME writer: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: write_wrapper => template_me_write_wrapper

```

*<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine template_me_write_wrapper (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(template_me_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    type(string_t) :: name
    name = writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)
    write (unit, *)
    select case (char (feature))
    case ("init")
        write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (par) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id)
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(*), &
            &intent(in) :: par"
        if (c_default_float == default) then
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (par)"
        end if
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    case ("update_alpha_s")
        write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (alpha_s) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id)
        if (c_default_float == default) then
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) &
                &:: alpha_s"
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (alpha_s)"
        end if
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    case ("is_allowed")
        write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), &
            " (flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)"

```

```

write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id)
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "flag = ", char (feature), &
    " (int (flv), int (hel), int (col))"
write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("new_event")
write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (p) bind(C)"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id)
if (c_default_float == default) then
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), &
    &intent(in) :: p"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (p)"
end if
write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("get_amplitude")
write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), &
    " (flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use tpr_", char (id)
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "complex(c_default_complex), intent(out) &
    &:: amp"
write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "amp = ", char (feature), &
    " (int (flv), int (hel), int (col))"
write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
end select
end subroutine template_me_write_wrapper

```

### 18.1.3 Driver

```

<Template matrix elements: types>+≡
type, extends (prc_core_driver_t) :: template_me_driver_t
    procedure(init_t), nopass, pointer :: &
        init => null ()
    procedure(update_alpha_s_t), nopass, pointer :: &
        update_alpha_s => null ()
    procedure(is_allowed_t), nopass, pointer :: &
        is_allowed => null ()
    procedure(new_event_t), nopass, pointer :: &
        new_event => null ()
    procedure(get_amplitude_t), nopass, pointer :: &
        get_amplitude => null ()
contains
<Template matrix elements: template ME driver: TBP>
end type template_me_driver_t

```



The reported type is the same as for the `template_me_def_t` type.

```

<Template matrix elements: template ME driver: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => template_me_driver_type_name

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    function template_me_driver_type_name () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "template"
    end function template_me_driver_type_name

```

### 18.1.4 High-level process definition

This procedure wraps the details filling a process-component definition entry as appropriate for an template matrix element.

NOTE: For calling the `import_component` method, we must explicitly address the `process_def_t` parent object. The natural way to call the method of the extended type triggers a bug in gfortran 4.6. The string array arguments `prt_in` and `prt_out` become corrupted and cause a segfault.

```

<Template matrix elements: public>+≡
    public :: template_me_make_process_component

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_make_process_component (entry, component_index, &
        model, model_name, prt_in, prt_out, unity)
        class(process_def_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
        integer, intent(in) :: component_index
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
        logical, intent(in) :: unity
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
        allocate (template_me_def_t :: def)
        select type (def)
        type is (template_me_def_t)
            call def%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity)
        end select
        call entry%process_def_t%import_component (component_index, &
            n_out = size (prt_out), &
            prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
            prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
            method = var_str ("template"), &
            variant = def)
    end subroutine template_me_make_process_component

```

### 18.1.5 The `prc_template_me_t` wrapper

This is an instance of the generic `prc_core_t` object. It contains a pointer to the process definition (`template_me_def_t`), a data component (`process_constants_t`), and the matrix-element driver (`template_me_driver_t`).

```

<Template matrix elements: public>+≡

```

```

    public :: prc_template_me_t
<Template matrix elements: types>+≡
    type, extends (prc_core_t) :: prc_template_me_t
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
    contains
        <Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>
    end type prc_template_me_t

```

The workspace associated to a `prc_template_me_t` object contains a single flag. The flag is used to suppress re-evaluating the matrix element for each quantum-number combination, after the first amplitude belonging to a given kinematics has been computed.

We can also store the value of a running coupling once it has been calculated for an event. The default value is negative, which indicates an undefined value in this context.

```

<Template matrix elements: types>+≡
    type, extends (workspace_t) :: template_me_state_t
        logical :: new_kinematics = .true.
        real(default) :: alpha_qcd = -1
    contains
        procedure :: write => template_me_state_write
    end type template_me_state_t

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine template_me_state_write (object, unit)
        class(template_me_state_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Template ME state: new kinematics = ", &
            object%new_kinematics
    end subroutine template_me_state_write

```

Allocate the workspace with the above specific type.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>≡
    procedure :: allocate_workspace => prc_template_me_allocate_workspace

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_template_me_allocate_workspace (object, tmp)
        class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
        class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
        allocate (template_me_state_t :: tmp)
    end subroutine prc_template_me_allocate_workspace

```

The following procedures are inherited from the base type as deferred, thus must be implemented. The corresponding unit tests are skipped here; the procedures are tested when called from the `processes` module.

Output: print just the ID of the associated matrix element. Then display any stored parameters.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => prc_template_me_write

```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_write (object, unit)
  class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "Template process core:"
  if (object%data_known) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)" char (object%data%id)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)" "[undefined]"
  end if
  if (allocated (object%par)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)" "Parameter array:"
    do i = 1, size (object%par)
      write (u, "(5x,I0,1x,ES17.10)" i, object%par(i)
    end do
  end if
end subroutine prc_template_me_write

```

Temporarily store the parameter array inside the `prc_template_me` object, so we can use it later during the actual initialization.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+≡
procedure :: set_parameters => prc_template_me_set_parameters

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_set_parameters (prc_template_me, model)
  class(prc_template_me_t), intent(inout) :: prc_template_me
  type(model_t), intent(in), target, optional :: model
  if (present (model)) then
    if (allocated (prc_template_me%par)) deallocate (prc_template_me%par)
    call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, prc_template_me%par)
  end if
end subroutine prc_template_me_set_parameters

```

To fully initialize the process core, we perform base initialization, then initialize the external matrix element code.

This procedure overrides the `init` method of the base type, which we nevertheless can access via its binding `base_init`. When done, we have an allocated driver. The driver will call the `init` procedure for the external matrix element, and thus transfer the parameter set to where it finally belongs.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+≡
procedure :: init => prc_template_me_init

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_init (object, def, lib, id, i_component)
  class(prc_template_me_t), intent(inout) :: object
  class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in), target :: def
  type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  integer, intent(in) :: i_component
  call object%base_init (def, lib, id, i_component)
  call object%activate_parameters ()

```

```
end subroutine prc_template_me_init
```

Activate the stored parameters by transferring them to the external matrix element.

```
<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: activate_parameters => prc_template_me_activate_parameters

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  subroutine prc_template_me_activate_parameters (object)
    class (prc_template_me_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (allocated (object%driver)) then
      if (allocated (object%par)) then
        select type (driver => object%driver)
          type is (template_me_driver_t)
            if (associated (driver%init)) call driver%init (object%par)
          end select
        else
          call msg_bug ("prc_template_me_activate: parameter set is not allocated")
        end if
      else
        call msg_bug ("prc_template_me_activate: driver is not allocated")
      end if
    end subroutine prc_template_me_activate_parameters
```

The template ME process is an independent process which needs its own Monte Carlo parameter set for integration.

```
<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: needs_mcset => prc_template_me_needs_mcset

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  function prc_template_me_needs_mcset (object) result (flag)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function prc_template_me_needs_mcset
```

There is only one term for this tree-level process.

```
<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_n_terms => prc_template_me_get_n_terms

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  function prc_template_me_get_n_terms (object) result (n)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer :: n
    n = 1
  end function prc_template_me_get_n_terms
```

Tell whether a particular combination of flavor, helicity, color is allowed. Here we have to consult the matrix-element driver.

```
<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: is_allowed => prc_template_me_is_allowed
```

```

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
function prc_template_me_is_allowed (object, i_term, f, h, c) result (flag)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term, f, h, c
    logical :: flag
    logical(c_bool) :: cflag
    select type (driver => object%driver)
    type is (template_me_driver_t)
        call driver%is_allowed (f, h, c, cflag)
        flag = cflag
    end select
end function prc_template_me_is_allowed

```

Transfer the generated momenta directly to the hard interaction in the (only) term. We assume that everything has been set up correctly, so the array fits.

We reset the `new_kinematics` flag, so that the next call to `compute_amplitude` will evaluate the matrix element.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+≡
procedure :: compute_hard_kinematics => &
    prc_template_me_compute_hard_kinematics

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_compute_hard_kinematics &
    (object, p_seed, i_term, int_hard, tmp)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_seed
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
    call interaction_set_momenta (int_hard, p_seed)
    if (allocated (tmp)) then
        select type (tmp)
        type is (template_me_state_t); tmp%new_kinematics = .true.
        end select
    end if
end subroutine prc_template_me_compute_hard_kinematics

```

This procedure is not called for `prc_template_me_t`, just a placeholder.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+≡
procedure :: compute_eff_kinematics => &
    prc_template_me_compute_eff_kinematics

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_compute_eff_kinematics &
    (object, i_term, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_hard
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
end subroutine prc_template_me_compute_eff_kinematics

```

Recover the momenta within the hard interaction. For tree-level processes, this is a trivial copy of the incoming seed and outgoing effective momenta. The effective interaction is a pointer to the hard interaction, so the latter is ignored.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: recover_kinematics => prc_template_me_recover_kinematics

<Template matrix elements: tests>=
  subroutine prc_template_me_recover_kinematics &
    (object, p_seed, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: p_seed
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
    integer :: n_in
    n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_eff)
    call interaction_set_momenta (int_eff, p_seed(1:n_in), outgoing = .false.)
    p_seed(n_in+1:) = interaction_get_momenta (int_eff, outgoing = .true.)
  end subroutine prc_template_me_recover_kinematics

```

Compute the amplitude. For the tree-level process, we can ignore the scale settings. The term index  $j$  is also irrelevant.

We first call `new_event` for the given momenta (which we must unpack), then retrieve the amplitude value for the given quantum numbers.

If the `tmp` status flag is present, we can make sure that we call `new_event` only once for a given kinematics. After the first call, we unset the `new_kinematics` flag.

```

<Template matrix elements: prc template ME: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_amplitude => prc_template_me_compute_amplitude

<Template matrix elements: procedures>+=
  function prc_template_me_compute_amplitude &
    (object, j, p, f, h, c, fac_scale, ren_scale, tmp) result (amp)
    class(prc_template_me_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: j
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
    integer, intent(in) :: f, h, c
    real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale, ren_scale
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable, optional :: tmp
    complex(default) :: amp
    integer :: n_tot, i
    real(c_default_float), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: parray
    complex(c_default_complex) :: camp
    logical :: new_event
    select type (driver => object%driver)
    type is (template_me_driver_t)
      new_event = .true.
    if (present (tmp)) then
      if (allocated (tmp)) then
        select type (tmp)
        type is (template_me_state_t)
          new_event = tmp%new_kinematics
          tmp%new_kinematics = .false.
        end select
      end if
    end select
  end function prc_template_me_compute_amplitude

```

```

        end if
    end if
    if (new_event) then
        n_tot = object%data%n_in + object%data%n_out
        allocate (parray (0:3, n_tot))
        forall (i = 1:n_tot) parray(:,i) = vector4_get_components (p(i))
        call driver%new_event (parray)
    end if
    if (object%is_allowed (1, f, h, c)) then
        call driver%get_amplitude &
            (int (f, c_int), int (h, c_int), int (c, c_int), camp)
        amp = camp
    else
        amp = 0
    end if
end select
end function prc_template_me_compute_amplitude

```

We do not overwrite the `prc_core_t` routine for  $\alpha_s$ .

### 18.1.6 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures. There is a separate test for testing O'MEGA diagram generation as this depends on a working analysis setup.

```

<Template matrix elements: public>+≡
    public :: prc_template_me_test

<Template matrix elements: tests>+≡
    subroutine prc_template_me_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Template matrix elements: execute tests>
    end subroutine prc_template_me_test

```

### Generate, compile and load a simple process matrix element

The process is  $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$  for vanishing masses and  $e = 0.3$ . We initialize the process, build the library, and compute a particular matrix element for momenta of unit energy and right-angle scattering. The matrix element, as it happens, is equal to  $e^2$ . (Note that are no conversion factors applied, so this result is exact.)

For GNU `make`, `makeflags` is set to `-j1`. This eliminates a potential clash with a `-j<n>` flag if this test is called from a parallel make.

```

<Template matrix elements: execute tests>≡
    call test (prc_template_me_1, "prc_template_me_1", &
        "build and load simple template process", &
        u, results)

<Template matrix elements: tests>+≡
    subroutine prc_template_me_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_library_t) :: lib

```

```

class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(model_t), pointer :: model
type(string_t) :: model_name
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
type(process_constants_t) :: data
class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
integer, parameter :: ci = c_int
real(cdf), dimension(4) :: par
real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
logical(c_bool) :: flag
complex(c_default_complex) :: amp
integer :: i

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_template_me_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a template matrix element,"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           normalized to give unit integral,"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           build a library, link, load, and &
           &access the matrix element"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%init (var_str ("template_me1"))
call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

model => null ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)
model_name = model%get_name ()
allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
prt_in = [var_str ("e+"), var_str ("e-")]
prt_out = [var_str ("m+"), var_str ("m-")]

allocate (template_me_def_t :: def)
select type (def)
type is (template_me_def_t)
    call def%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity = .false.)
end select
allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("template_me1_a"), model_name = model_name, &
    n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method = var_str ("template"), &
    variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Clean any left-over files"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code, compile, link, load"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u, libpath = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active                = ", &
    lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes              = ", &
    lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of template_me1_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("template_me1_a"), 1, data, driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "component ID      = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model name        = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum          = '", data%md5sum, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "flv state =", data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))")  "hel state =", data%hel_state(:,1)
do i = 2, 16
    write (u, "(12x,4(1x,I2))")  data%hel_state(:,i)
end do
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "col state =", data%col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))")  "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))")  "color factors =", data%color_factors

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf index =", data%cf_index

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters for template_me1_a and initialize:"
write (u, "(A)")

par = [0.3_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf]
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "ee  = ", par(1)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "me  = ", par(2)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mmu  = ", par(3)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mtau = ", par(4)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf,-1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf,-1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

select type (driver)
type is (template_me_driver_t)
    call driver%init (par)

    call driver%new_event (p)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call driver%is_allowed (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, flag)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is_allowed (1, 6, 1) = ", flag

    call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
end select

call lib%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_template_me_1"

end subroutine prc_template_me_1

<Template matrix elements: execute tests>+≡
call test (prc_template_me_2, "prc_template_me_2", &

```

```

        "build and load simple template_unity process", &
        u, results)
<Template matrix elements: tests>+≡
subroutine prc_template_me_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
    integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
    integer, parameter :: ci = c_int
    real(cdf), dimension(4) :: par
    real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
    logical(c_bool) :: flag
    complex(c_default_complex) :: amp
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_template_me_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: create a template matrix element,"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*               being identical to unity,"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*               build a library, link, load, and &
        &access the matrix element"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call lib%init (var_str ("template_me2"))
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    model => null ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"), &
        os_data, model)
    model_name = model%get_name ()
    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("e+"), var_str ("e-")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("m+"), var_str ("m-")]

    allocate (template_me_def_t :: def)
    select type (def)
    type is (template_me_def_t)
        call def%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity = .true.)
    end select
    allocate (entry)
    call entry%init (var_str ("template_me2_a"), model_name = model_name, &
        n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
    call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
        prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &

```

```

        prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
        method = var_str ("template_unity"), &
        variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Clean any left-over files"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code, compile, link, load"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u, libpath = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active"           = ", &
        lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes"         = ", &
        lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of template_me2_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("template_me2_a"), 1, data, driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "component ID"         = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model name"           = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum"             = "'", data%md5sum, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in" = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out" = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv" = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel" = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col" = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin" = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf" = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "flv state =" , data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))")  "hel state =" , data%hel_state(:,1)

```

```

do i = 2, 16
    write (u, "(12x,4(1x,I2))") data%hel_state(:,i)
end do
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col state =", data%col_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color factors =", data%color_factors
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf index =", data%cf_index

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters for template_me2_a and initialize:"
write (u, "(A)")

par = [0.3_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf]
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "ee  = ", par(1)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "me  = ", par(2)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mmu = ", par(3)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mtau = ", par(4)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
    ], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

select type (driver)
type is (template_me_driver_t)
    call driver%init (par)

    call driver%new_event (p)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call driver%is_allowed (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, flag)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is_allowed (1, 6, 1) = ", flag

    call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
end select

call lib%final ()
call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_template_me_2"

end subroutine prc_template_me_2

```

## 18.2 O'MEGA Interface

The standard method for process computation with WHIZARD is the O'MEGA matrix element generator.

This section implements the interface to the code generator (via the makefile) and the driver for the features provided by the O'MEGA matrix element.

```

<prc_omega.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module prc_omega

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    <Use strings>
    use limits, only: TAB !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use os_interface
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use sm_qcd
    use interactions
    use variables
    use models

    use process_constants
    use prclib_interfaces
    use prc_core_def
    use particle_specifiers
    use process_libraries
    use prc_core

    <Standard module head>

    <Omega interface: public>

    <Omega interface: types>

    <Omega interface: interfaces>

    contains

    <Omega interface: procedures>

    <Omega interface: tests>

  end module prc_omega

```

## 18.2.1 Process definition

For the process definition we implement an extension of the `prc_core_def_t` abstract type.

```

<Omega interface: public>≡
    public :: omega_def_t

<Omega interface: types>≡
    type, extends (prc_core_def_t) :: omega_def_t
    contains
    <Omega interface: omega def: TBP>
    end type omega_def_t

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_string => omega_def_type_string

<Omega interface: procedures>≡
    function omega_def_type_string () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "omega"
    end function omega_def_type_string

```

Initialization: allocate the writer for the O'MEGA matrix element. Also set any data for this process that the writer needs.

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => omega_def_init

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine omega_def_init (object, model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
        restrictions, openmp_support, report_progress, extra_options, &
        diags, diags_color)
        class(omega_def_t), intent(out) :: object
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: restrictions
        logical, intent(in), optional :: openmp_support
        logical, intent(in), optional :: report_progress
        logical, intent(in), optional :: diags, diags_color
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extra_options
        allocate (omega_writer_t :: object%writer)
        select type (writer => object%writer)
            type is (omega_writer_t)
                call writer%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
                    restrictions, openmp_support, report_progress, &
                    extra_options, diags, diags_color)
            end select
    end subroutine omega_def_init

```

Write/read process- and method-specific data.

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => omega_def_write

```

```

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_def_write (object, unit)
    class(omega_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    select type (writer => object%writer)
    type is (omega_writer_t)
      call writer%write (unit)
    end select
  end subroutine omega_def_write

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read => omega_def_read

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_def_read (object, unit)
    class(omega_def_t), intent(out) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    call msg_bug ("O'Mega process definition: input not supported yet")
  end subroutine omega_def_read

```

Allocate the driver for O'MEGAmatrix elements.

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: allocate_driver => omega_def_allocate_driver

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_def_allocate_driver (object, driver, basename)
    class(omega_def_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(out), allocatable :: driver
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename
    allocate (omega_driver_t :: driver)
  end subroutine omega_def_allocate_driver

```

We need code:

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: needs_code => omega_def_needs_code

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  function omega_def_needs_code () result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    flag = .true.
  end function omega_def_needs_code

```

These are the features that an O'MEGA matrix element provides.

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_features => omega_def_get_features

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_def_get_features (features)
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: features
    allocate (features (6))
    features = [ &
      var_str ("init"), &
      var_str ("update_alpha_s"), &

```



```

        var_str ("reset_helicity_selection"), &
        var_str ("is_allowed"), &
        var_str ("new_event"), &
        var_str ("get_amplitude")]
end subroutine omega_def_get_features

```

The interface of the specific features.

$\langle \textit{Omega interface: interfaces} \rangle \equiv$

```

abstract interface
  subroutine init_t (par) bind(C)
    import
    real(c_default_float), dimension(*), intent(in) :: par
  end subroutine init_t
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine update_alpha_s_t (alpha_s) bind(C)
    import
    real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: alpha_s
  end subroutine update_alpha_s_t
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine reset_helicity_selection_t (threshold, cutoff) bind(C)
    import
    real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: threshold
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: cutoff
  end subroutine reset_helicity_selection_t
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine is_allowed_t (flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col
    logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag
  end subroutine is_allowed_t
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine new_event_t (p) bind(C)
    import
    real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), intent(in) :: p
  end subroutine new_event_t
end interface

abstract interface
  subroutine get_amplitude_t (flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col
    complex(c_default_complex), intent(out) :: amp
  end subroutine get_amplitude_t
end interface

```

Connect the O'MEGA features with the process driver.

```

<Omega interface: omega def: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: connect => omega_def_connect

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_def_connect (def, lib_driver, i, proc_driver)
    class(omega_def_t), intent(in) :: def
    class(prclib_driver_t), intent(in) :: lib_driver
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    class(prc_core_driver_t), intent(inout) :: proc_driver
    integer(c_int) :: pid, fid
    type(c_funptr) :: fptr
    select type (proc_driver)
    type is (omega_driver_t)
      pid = i
      fid = 1
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%init)
      fid = 2
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%update_alpha_s)
      fid = 3
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%reset_helicity_selection)
      fid = 4
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%is_allowed)
      fid = 5
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%new_event)
      fid = 6
      call lib_driver%get_fptr (pid, fid, fptr)
      call c_f_procpointer (fptr, proc_driver%get_amplitude)
    end select
  end subroutine omega_def_connect

```

### 18.2.2 The O'MEGA writer

The O'MEGA writer is responsible for inserting the appropriate lines in the make-file that call O'MEGA, and for writing interfaces and wrappers.

```

<Omega interface: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_writer_f_module_t) :: omega_writer_t
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t) :: process_mode
    type(string_t) :: process_string
    type(string_t) :: restrictions
    logical :: openmp_support = .false.
    logical :: report_progress = .false.
    logical :: diags = .false.
    logical :: diags_color = .false.
    type(string_t) :: extra_options
  contains

```

```

    <Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>
end type omega_writer_t

```

The reported type is the same as for the omega\_def\_t type.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>≡
    procedure, nopass :: type_name => omega_writer_type_name

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    function omega_writer_type_name () result (string)
        type(string_t) :: string
        string = "omega"
    end function omega_writer_type_name

```

Taking into account the prefix for O'MEGA module names.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure, nopass :: get_module_name => omega_writer_get_module_name

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    function omega_writer_get_module_name (id) result (name)
        type(string_t) :: name
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        name = "opr_" // id
    end function omega_writer_get_module_name

```

Output. This is called by omega\_def\_write.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => omega_writer_write

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine omega_writer_write (object, unit)
        class(omega_writer_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        write (unit, "(5x,A,A)") "Model name      = ", &
            ''' // char (object%model_name) // '''
        write (unit, "(5x,A,A)") "Mode string   = ", &
            ''' // char (object%process_mode) // '''
        write (unit, "(5x,A,A)") "Process string = ", &
            ''' // char (object%process_string) // '''
        write (unit, "(5x,A,A)") "Restrictions  = ", &
            ''' // char (object%restrictions) // '''
        write (unit, "(5x,A,L1)") "OpenMP support = ", object%openmp_support
        write (unit, "(5x,A,L1)") "Report progress = ", object%report_progress
        write (unit, "(5x,A,A)") "Extra options  = ", &
            ''' // char (object%extra_options) // '''
        write (unit, "(5x,A,L1)") "Write diagrams  = ", object%diags
        write (unit, "(5x,A,L1)") "Write color diag. = ", object%diags_color
    end subroutine omega_writer_write

```

Initialize with process data.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => omega_writer_init

```

```

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
subroutine omega_writer_init (writer, model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
    restrictions, openmp_support, report_progress, extra_options, &
    diags, diags_color)
class(omega_writer_t), intent(out) :: writer
type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: restrictions
logical, intent(in), optional :: openmp_support
logical, intent(in), optional :: report_progress
logical, intent(in), optional :: diags, diags_color
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extra_options
integer :: i
writer%model_name = model_name
if (present (restrictions)) then
    writer%restrictions = restrictions
else
    writer%restrictions = ""
end if
if (present (openmp_support)) writer%openmp_support = openmp_support
if (present (report_progress)) writer%report_progress = report_progress
if (present (diags)) writer%diags = diags
if (present (diags_color)) writer%diags_color = diags_color
if (present (extra_options)) then
    writer%extra_options = " " // extra_options
else
    writer%extra_options = ""
end if
select case (size (prt_in))
case (1); writer%process_mode = " -decay"
case (2); writer%process_mode = " -scatter"
end select
associate (s => writer%process_string)
s = " '"
do i = 1, size (prt_in)
    if (i > 1) s = s // " "
    s = s // prt_in(i)
end do
s = s // " ->"
do i = 1, size (prt_out)
    s = s // " " // prt_out(i)
end do
s = s // "'"
end associate
end subroutine omega_writer_init

```

The makefile implements the actual O'MEGA call. For old L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distributions, we filter out the hyperref options for O'MEGA diagrams, at least in the testsuite.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+=
procedure :: write_makefile_code => omega_write_makefile_code

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
subroutine omega_write_makefile_code (writer, unit, id, os_data, testflag)

```

```

class(omega_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
integer, intent(in) :: unit
type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
type(string_t) :: omega_binary, omega_path
type(string_t) :: restrictions_string
type(string_t) :: openmp_string
type(string_t) :: kmatrix_string
type(string_t) :: progress_string
type(string_t) :: diagrams_string
logical :: escape_hyperref
escape_hyperref = .false.
if (present (testflag)) escape_hyperref = testflag
omega_binary = "omega_" // writer%model_name // ".opt"
omega_path = os_data%whizard_omega_binpath // "/" // omega_binary
if (writer%restrictions /= "") then
    restrictions_string = " -cascade '" // writer%restrictions // "'"
else
    restrictions_string = ""
end if
if (writer%openmp_support) then
    openmp_string = " -target:openmp"
else
    openmp_string = ""
end if
if (writer%report_progress) then
    progress_string = " -fusion:progress"
else
    progress_string = ""
end if
if (writer%diags) then
    if (writer%diags_color) then
        diagrams_string = " -diagrams:C " // char(id) // &
            "_diags -diagrams_LaTeX"
    else
        diagrams_string = " -diagrams " // char(id) // &
            "_diags -diagrams_LaTeX"
    end if
else
    if (writer%diags_color) then
        diagrams_string = " -diagrams:c " // char(id) // &
            "_diags -diagrams_LaTeX"
    else
        diagrams_string = ""
    end if
end if
select case (char (writer%model_name))
case ("SM_rx", "SSC", "NoH_rx", "AltH")
    kmatrix_string = " -target:kmatrix_write"
case default
    kmatrix_string = ""
end select
write (unit, "(5A)") "SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"

```

```

if (writer%diags .or. writer%diags_color) then
  write (unit, "(5A)") "TEX_SOURCES += ", char (id), "_diags.tex"
  if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
    write (unit, "(5A)") "TEX_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.pdf"
  else
    write (unit, "(5A)") "TEX_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.ps"
  end if
end if
write (unit, "(5A)") "OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".f90:"
write (unit, "(99A)") TAB, char (omega_path), &
  " -o ", char (id), ".f90", &
  " -target:whizard", &
  " -target:parameter_module_parameters-", char (writer%model_name), &
  " -target:module opr-", char (id), &
  " -target:md5sum '", writer%md5sum, "'", &
  char (openmp_string), &
  char (progress_string), &
  char (kmatrix_string), &
  char (writer%process_mode), char (writer%process_string), &
  char (restrictions_string), char (diagrams_string), &
  char (writer%extra_options)
if (writer%diags .or. writer%diags_color) &
  write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), "_diags.tex: ", char (id), ".f90"
write (unit, "(5A)") "clean-", char (id), ":"
write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "rm -f ", char (id), ".f90"
write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "rm -f opr-", char (id), ".mod"
write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "rm -f ", char (id), ".lo"
write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_SOURCES += ", char (id), ".f90"
if (writer%diags .or. writer%diags_color) then
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_SOURCES += ", char (id), "_diags.tex"
end if
write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += opr-", char (id), ".mod"
write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), ".lo"
if (writer%diags .or. writer%diags_color) then
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.aux"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.log"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.dvi"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.toc"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.out"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.[1-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.[1-9][0-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.[1-9][0-9][0-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.t[1-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.t[1-9][0-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.t[1-9][0-9][0-9]"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.mp"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags-fmf.log"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.dvi"
  write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.ps"
  if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) &
    write (unit, "(5A)") "CLEAN_OBJECTS += ", char (id), "_diags.pdf"
end if
write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), ".lo: ", char (id), ".f90"

```

```

write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(LTF_COMPILE) $<"
if (writer%diags .or. writer%diags_color) then
  if (os_data%event_analysis_ps) then
    if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
      write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), "_diags.pdf: ", char (id), "_diags.tex"
    else
      write (unit, "(5A)") char (id), "_diags.ps: ", char (id), "_diags.tex"
    end if
  if (escape_hyperref) then
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "-cat ", char (id), "_diags.tex | \"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, " sed -e\" // &
      \"s/\\usepackage\\[colorlinks\\]{hyperref}.*/%\\usepackage\" // &
      \"\\[colorlinks\\]{hyperref}/\" > \"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, " ", char (id), "_diags.tex.tmp"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "mv -f ", char (id), "_diags.tex.tmp \"
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, " ", char (id), "_diags.tex"
  end if
  write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "-TEXINPUTS=$(TEX_FLAGS) $(LATEX) \" // &
    char (id) // "_diags.tex"
  write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "MPINPUTS=$(MP_FLAGS) $(MPOST) \" // &
    char (id) // "_diags-fmf.mp"
  write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "TEXINPUTS=$(TEX_FLAGS) $(LATEX) \" // &
    char (id) // "_diags.tex"
  write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(DVIPS) -o \" // char (id) // "_diags.ps \" // &
    char (id) // "_diags.dvi"
  if (os_data%event_analysis_pdf) then
    write (unit, "(5A)") TAB, "$(PS2PDF) \" // char (id) // "_diags.ps"
  end if
end if
end if
end if
end subroutine omega_write_makefile_code

```

The source is written by the makefile, so nothing to do here.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_source_code => omega_write_source_code

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_write_source_code (writer, id)
    class(omega_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
  end subroutine omega_write_source_code

```

Return the name of a procedure that implements a given feature, as it is provided by the external matrix-element code. O'MEGA names some procedures differently, therefore we translate here and override the binding of the base type.

```

<Omega interface: omega writer: TBP>+≡
  procedure, nopass :: get_procname => omega_writer_get_procname

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  function omega_writer_get_procname (feature) result (name)
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
    select case (char (feature))
      case ("n_in"); name = "number_particles_in"
    end select
  end function

```

```

case ("n_out"); name = "number_particles_out"
case ("n_flv"); name = "number_flavor_states"
case ("n_hel"); name = "number_spin_states"
case ("n_col"); name = "number_color_flows"
case ("n_cin"); name = "number_color_indices"
case ("n_cf"); name = "number_color_factors"
case ("flv_state"); name = "flavor_states"
case ("hel_state"); name = "spin_states"
case ("col_state"); name = "color_flows"
case default
    name = feature
end select
end function omega_writer_get_procname

```

The interfaces for the O'MEGA-specific features.

```

(Omega interface: omega writer: TBP) +=
    procedure :: write_interface => omega_write_interface

(Omega interface: procedures) +=
    subroutine omega_write_interface (writer, unit, id, feature)
        class(omega_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
        integer, intent(in) :: unit
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: feature
        type(string_t) :: name
        name = writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "interface"
        select case (char (feature))
        case ("init")
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (par) bind(C)"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(*), &
                &intent(in) :: par"
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
        case ("update_alpha_s")
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (alpha_s) bind(C)"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: alpha_s"
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
        case ("reset_helicity_selection")
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " &
                &(threshold, cutoff) bind(C)"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) :: threshold"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: cutoff"
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
        case ("is_allowed")
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " &
                &(flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
            write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag"
            write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
        case ("new_event")

```



```

        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (p) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), &
            &intent(in) :: p"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    case ("get_amplitude")
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " &
            &(flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "import"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
        write (unit, "(7x,9A)") "complex(c_default_complex), intent(out) &
            &:: amp"
        write (unit, "(5x,9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    end select
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "end interface"
end subroutine omega_write_interface

```

The wrappers have to take into account conversion between C and Fortran data types.

NOTE: The case `c_default_float`  $\neq$  `default` is not yet covered.

*(Omega interface: omega writer: TBP)+ $\equiv$*

```

procedure :: write_wrapper => omega_write_wrapper

```

*(Omega interface: procedures)+ $\equiv$*

```

subroutine omega_write_wrapper (writer, unit, id, feature)
    class(omega_writer_t), intent(in) :: writer
    integer, intent(in) :: unit
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id, feature
    type(string_t) :: name
    name = writer%get_c_procname (id, feature)
    write (unit, *)
    select case (char (feature))
    case ("init")
        write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (par) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(*), &
            &intent(in) :: par"
        if (c_default_float == default) then
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (par)"
        end if
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    case ("update_alpha_s")
        write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (alpha_s) bind(C)"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
        write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
        if (c_default_float == default) then
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) &
                &:: alpha_s"
            write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (alpha_s)"
        end if
        write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
    end select
end subroutine omega_write_wrapper

```

```

case ("reset_helicity_selection")
  write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), &
    " (threshold, cutoff) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
  if (c_default_float == default) then
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), intent(in) &
      &:: threshold"
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: cutoff"
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), &
      " (threshold, int (cutoff))"
  end if
  write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("is_allowed")
  write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), &
    " (flv, hel, col, flag) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "logical(c_bool), intent(out) :: flag"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "flag = ", char (feature), &
    " (int (flv), int (hel), int (col))"
  write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("new_event")
  write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), " (p) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
  if (c_default_float == default) then
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "real(c_default_float), dimension(0:3,*), &
      &intent(in) :: p"
    write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "call ", char (feature), " (p)"
  end if
  write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
case ("get_amplitude")
  write (unit, "(9A)") "subroutine ", char (name), &
    " (flv, hel, col, amp) bind(C)"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use iso_c_binding"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use kinds"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "use opr_", char (id)
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "integer(c_int), intent(in) :: flv, hel, col"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "complex(c_default_complex), intent(out) &
    &:: amp"
  write (unit, "(2x,9A)") "amp = ", char (feature), &
    " (int (flv), int (hel), int (col))"
  write (unit, "(9A)") "end subroutine ", char (name)
end select
end subroutine omega_write_wrapper

```

### 18.2.3 Driver

```

<Omega interface: types>+≡
  type, extends (prc_core_driver_t) :: omega_driver_t
    procedure(init_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      init => null ()
    procedure(update_alpha_s_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      update_alpha_s => null ()
    procedure(reset_helicity_selection_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      reset_helicity_selection => null ()
    procedure(is_allowed_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      is_allowed => null ()
    procedure(new_event_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      new_event => null ()
    procedure(get_amplitude_t), nopass, pointer :: &
      get_amplitude => null ()
  contains
    <Omega interface: omega_driver: TBP>
  end type omega_driver_t

```

The reported type is the same as for the `omega_def_t` type.

```

<Omega interface: omega_driver: TBP>≡
  procedure, nopass :: type_name => omega_driver_type_name

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  function omega_driver_type_name () result (string)
    type(string_t) :: string
    string = "omega"
  end function omega_driver_type_name

```

### 18.2.4 High-level process definition

This procedure wraps the details filling a process-component definition entry as appropriate for an O'MEGA matrix element.

NOTE: For calling the `import_component` method, we must explicitly address the `process_def_t` parent object. The natural way to call the method of the extended type triggers a bug in gfortran 4.6. The string array arguments `prt_in` and `prt_out` become corrupted and cause a segfault.

```

<Omega interface: public>+≡
  public :: omega_make_process_component

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine omega_make_process_component (entry, component_index, &
    model_name, prt_in, prt_out, restrictions, openmp_support, &
    report_progress, extra_options, diags, diags_color)
    class(process_def_entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: component_index
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: restrictions
    logical, intent(in), optional :: openmp_support
    logical, intent(in), optional :: report_progress

```

```

logical, intent(in), optional :: diags, diags_color
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extra_options
class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
allocate (omega_def_t :: def)
select type (def)
type is (omega_def_t)
    call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
        restrictions, openmp_support, report_progress, &
        extra_options, diags, diags_color)
end select
call entry%process_def_t%import_component (component_index, &
    n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method = var_str ("omega"), &
    variant = def)
end subroutine omega_make_process_component

```

### 18.2.5 The prc\_omega\_t wrapper

This is an instance of the generic `prc_core_t` object. It contains a pointer to the process definition (`omega_def_t`), a data component (`process_constants_t`), and the matrix-element driver (`omega_driver_t`).

```

<Omega interface: public>+≡
    public :: prc_omega_t

<Omega interface: types>+≡
    type, extends (prc_core_t) :: prc_omega_t
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
        type(helicity_selection_t) :: helicity_selection
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    contains
        <Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>
    end type prc_omega_t

```

The workspace associated to a `prc_omega_t` object contains a single flag. The flag is used to suppress re-evaluating the matrix element for each quantum-number combination, after the first amplitude belonging to a given kinematics has been computed.

We can also store the value of a running coupling once it has been calculated for an event. The default value is negative, which indicates an undefined value in this context.

```

<Omega interface: types>+≡
    type, extends (workspace_t) :: omega_state_t
        logical :: new_kinematics = .true.
        real(default) :: alpha_qcd = -1
    contains
        procedure :: write => omega_state_write
    end type omega_state_t

```

```

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine omega_state_write (object, unit)
  class(omega_state_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "0'Mega state: new kinematics = ", &
    object%new_kinematics
end subroutine omega_state_write

```

Allocate the workspace with the above specific type.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>≡
  procedure :: allocate_workspace => prc_omega_allocate_workspace

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_omega_allocate_workspace (object, tmp)
  class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
  class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
  allocate (omega_state_t :: tmp)
end subroutine prc_omega_allocate_workspace

```

The following procedures are inherited from the base type as deferred, thus must be implemented. The corresponding unit tests are skipped here; the procedures are tested when called from the `processes` module.

Output: print just the ID of the associated matrix element. Then display any stored parameters and the helicity selection data. (The latter are printed only if active.)

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => prc_omega_write

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine prc_omega_write (object, unit)
  class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "0'Mega process core:"
  if (object%data_known) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") char (object%data%id)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "[undefined]"
  end if
  if (allocated (object%par)) then
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "Parameter array:"
    do i = 1, size (object%par)
      write (u, "(5x,I0,1x,ES17.10)") i, object%par(i)
    end do
  end if
  call object%helicity_selection%write (u)
  call object%qcd%write (u)
end subroutine prc_omega_write

```

Temporarily store the parameter array inside the `prc_omega` object, so we can use it later during the actual initialization. Also store threshold and cutoff for helicity selection.

```

<Omega interface: prc_omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: set_parameters => prc_omega_set_parameters

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_set_parameters (prc_omega, model, &
    helicity_selection, qcd, use_color_factors)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(inout) :: prc_omega
    type(model_t), intent(in), target, optional :: model
    type(helicity_selection_t), intent(in), optional :: helicity_selection
    type(qcd_t), intent(in), optional :: qcd
    logical, intent(in), optional :: use_color_factors
    if (present (model)) then
      if (allocated (prc_omega%par)) deallocate (prc_omega%par)
      call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, prc_omega%par)
    end if
    if (present (helicity_selection)) then
      prc_omega%helicity_selection = helicity_selection
    end if
    if (present (qcd)) then
      prc_omega%qcd = qcd
    end if
    if (present (use_color_factors)) then
      prc_omega%use_color_factors = use_color_factors
    end if
  end subroutine prc_omega_set_parameters

```

To fully initialize the process core, we perform base initialization, then initialize the external matrix element code.

This procedure overrides the `init` method of the base type, which we nevertheless can access via its binding `base_init`. When done, we have an allocated driver. The driver will call the `init` procedure for the external matrix element, and thus transfer the parameter set to where it finally belongs.

If requested, we initialize the helicity selection counter.

```

<Omega interface: prc_omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: init => prc_omega_init

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_init (object, def, lib, id, i_component)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(inout) :: object
    class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in), target :: def
    type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: id
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    call object%base_init (def, lib, id, i_component)
    call object%activate_parameters ()
  end subroutine prc_omega_init

```

Activate the stored parameters by transferring them to the external matrix element. Also reset the helicity selection, if requested.

```

<Omega interface: prc_omega: TBP>+=

```

```

    procedure :: activate_parameters => prc_omega_activate_parameters
<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine prc_omega_activate_parameters (object)
        class (prc_omega_t), intent(inout) :: object
        if (allocated (object%driver)) then
            if (allocated (object%par)) then
                select type (driver => object%driver)
                type is (omega_driver_t)
                    if (associated (driver%init)) call driver%init (object%par)
                end select
            else
                call msg_bug ("prc_omega_activate: parameter set is not allocated")
            end if
            call object%reset_helicity_selection ()
        else
            call msg_bug ("prc_omega_activate: driver is not allocated")
        end if
    end subroutine prc_omega_activate_parameters

```

The O'MEGA process is an independent process which needs its own Monte Carlo parameter set for integration.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: needs_mcset => prc_omega_needs_mcset
<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    function prc_omega_needs_mcset (object) result (flag)
        class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
        logical :: flag
        flag = .true.
    end function prc_omega_needs_mcset

```

There is only one term for this tree-level process.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_terms => prc_omega_get_n_terms
<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    function prc_omega_get_n_terms (object) result (n)
        class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer :: n
        n = 1
    end function prc_omega_get_n_terms

```

Tell whether a particular combination of flavor, helicity, color is allowed. Here we have to consult the matrix-element driver.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: is_allowed => prc_omega_is_allowed
<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
    function prc_omega_is_allowed (object, i_term, f, h, c) result (flag)
        class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in) :: i_term, f, h, c
        logical :: flag
        logical(c_bool) :: cflag

```

```

select type (driver => object%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
  call driver%is_allowed (f, h, c, cflag)
  flag = cflag
end select
end function prc_omega_is_allowed

```

Transfer the generated momenta directly to the hard interaction in the (only) term. We assume that everything has been set up correctly, so the array fits.

We reset the `new_kinematics` flag, so that the next call to `compute_amplitude` will evaluate the matrix element.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_hard_kinematics => prc_omega_compute_hard_kinematics

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_compute_hard_kinematics &
    (object, p_seed, i_term, int_hard, tmp)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p_seed
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
    call interaction_set_momenta (int_hard, p_seed)
    if (allocated (tmp)) then
      select type (tmp)
      type is (omega_state_t); tmp%new_kinematics = .true.
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine prc_omega_compute_hard_kinematics

```

This procedure is not called for `prc_omega_t`, just a placeholder.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: compute_eff_kinematics => prc_omega_compute_eff_kinematics

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_compute_eff_kinematics &
    (object, i_term, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in) :: i_term
    type(interaction_t), intent(in) :: int_type
    type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
    class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
  end subroutine prc_omega_compute_eff_kinematics

```

Recover the momenta within the hard interaction. For tree-level processes, this is a trivial copy of the incoming seed and outgoing effective momenta. The effective interaction is a pointer to the hard interaction, so the latter is ignored.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: recover_kinematics => prc_omega_recover_kinematics

<Omega interface: tests>=
  subroutine prc_omega_recover_kinematics &
    (object, p_seed, int_hard, int_eff, tmp)

```



```

class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: p_seed
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_hard
type(interaction_t), intent(inout) :: int_eff
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: tmp
integer :: n_in
n_in = interaction_get_n_in (int_eff)
call interaction_set_momenta (int_eff, p_seed(1:n_in), outgoing = .false.)
p_seed(n_in+1:) = interaction_get_momenta (int_eff, outgoing = .true.)
end subroutine prc_omega_recover_kinematics

```

Reset the helicity selection counters and start counting zero helicities. We assume that the `helicity_selection` object is allocated. Otherwise, reset and switch off helicity counting.

In the test routine, the driver is allocated but the driver methods are not. Therefore, guard against a disassociated method.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset_helicity_selection => prc_omega_reset_helicity_selection

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine prc_omega_reset_helicity_selection (object)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(inout) :: object
    select type (driver => object%driver)
      type is (omega_driver_t)
        if (associated (driver%reset_helicity_selection)) then
          if (object%helicity_selection%active) then
            call driver%reset_helicity_selection &
              (real (object%helicity_selection%threshold, &
                c_default_float), &
              int (object%helicity_selection%cutoff, c_int))
          else
            call driver%reset_helicity_selection &
              (0._c_default_float, 0_c_int)
          end if
        end if
      end select
    end subroutine prc_omega_reset_helicity_selection

```

Compute the amplitude. For the tree-level process, we can ignore the scale settings. The term index `j` is also irrelevant.

We first call `new_event` for the given momenta (which we must unpack), then retrieve the amplitude value for the given quantum numbers.

If the `tmp` status flag is present, we can make sure that we call `new_event` only once for a given kinematics. After the first call, we unset the `new_kinematics` flag.

The `is_allowed` query is not redundant, since the status may change during the run if helicities are switched off.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_amplitude => prc_omega_compute_amplitude

<Omega interface: procedures>+≡
  function prc_omega_compute_amplitude &
    (object, j, p, f, h, c, fac_scale, ren_scale, tmp) result (amp)

```

```

class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in) :: j
type(vector4_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: p
integer, intent(in) :: f, h, c
real(default), intent(in) :: fac_scale, ren_scale
class(workspace_t), intent(inout), allocatable, optional :: tmp
real(default) :: alpha_qcd
complex(default) :: amp
integer :: n_tot, i
real(c_default_float), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: parray
complex(c_default_complex) :: camp
logical :: new_event
select type (driver => object%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
    new_event = .true.
    if (present (tmp)) then
        if (allocated (tmp)) then
            select type (tmp)
            type is (omega_state_t)
                new_event = tmp%new_kinematics
                tmp%new_kinematics = .false.
            end select
        end if
    end if
    if (new_event) then
        if (allocated (object%qcd%alpha)) then
            alpha_qcd = object%qcd%alpha%get (fac_scale)
            call driver%update_alpha_s (alpha_qcd)
            if (present (tmp)) then
                if (allocated (tmp)) then
                    select type (tmp)
                    type is (omega_state_t)
                        tmp%alpha_qcd = alpha_qcd
                    end select
                end if
            end if
        end if
        n_tot = object%data%n_in + object%data%n_out
        allocate (parray (0:3, n_tot))
        do i = 1, n_tot
            parray(:, i) = vector4_get_components (p(i))
        end do
        call driver%new_event (parray)
    end if
    if (object%is_allowed (1, f, h, c)) then
        call driver%get_amplitude &
            (int (f, c_int), int (h, c_int), int (c, c_int), camp)
        amp = camp
    else
        amp = 0
    end if
end select
end function prc_omega_compute_amplitude

```

After the amplitude has been computed, we may read off the current value of  $\alpha_s$ . This works only if  $\alpha_s$  varies, and if the workspace `tmp` is present which stores this value.

```

<Omega interface: prc omega: TBP>+=
  procedure :: get_alpha_s => prc_omega_get_alpha_s

<Omega interface: procedures>+=
  function prc_omega_get_alpha_s (object, tmp) result (alpha)
    class(prc_omega_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(workspace_t), intent(in), allocatable :: tmp
    real(default) :: alpha
    alpha = -1
    if (allocated (object%qcd%alpha) .and. allocated (tmp)) then
      select type (tmp)
        type is (omega_state_t)
          alpha = tmp%alpha_qcd
        end select
      end if
    end function prc_omega_get_alpha_s

```

## 18.2.6 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures. There is a separate test for testing O'MEGA diagram generation as this depends on a working analysis setup.

```

<Omega interface: public>+=
  public :: prc_omega_test

<Omega interface: tests>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Omega interface: execute tests>
  end subroutine prc_omega_test

<Omega interface: public>+=
  public :: prc_omega_diags_test

<Omega interface: tests>+=
  subroutine prc_omega_diags_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Omega interface: execute diags tests>
  end subroutine prc_omega_diags_test

```

## Generate, compile and load a simple process matrix element

The process is  $e^+e^- \rightarrow \mu^+\mu^-$  for vanishing masses and  $e = 0.3$ . We initialize the process, build the library, and compute a particular matrix element for momenta of unit energy and right-angle scattering. The matrix element, as it happens, is equal to  $e^2$ . (Note that are no conversion factors applied, so this result is exact.)

For GNU make, makeflags is set to -j1. This eliminates a potential clash with a -j<n> flag if this test is called from a parallel make.

*(Omega interface: execute tests)*≡

```
call test (prc_omega_1, "prc_omega_1", &
  "build and load simple OMega process", &
  u, results)
```

*(Omega interface: tests)*+≡

```
subroutine prc_omega_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t) :: lib
  class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
  type(process_constants_t) :: data
  class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
  integer, parameter :: ci = c_int
  real(cdf), dimension(4) :: par
  real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
  logical(c_bool) :: flag
  complex(c_default_complex) :: amp
  integer :: i

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create a simple process with OMega"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* build a library, link, load, and &
    &access the matrix element"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call lib%init (var_str ("omega1"))
  call os_data_init (os_data)

  model_name = "QED"
  allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
  prt_in = [var_str ("e+"), var_str ("e-")]
  prt_out = [var_str ("m+"), var_str ("m-")]

  allocate (omega_def_t :: def)
  select type (def)
  type is (omega_def_t)
    call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
  end select
  allocate (entry)
  call entry%init (var_str ("omega1_a"), model_name = model_name, &
    n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
  call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method = var_str ("omega"), &
```

```

        variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure library"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write makefile"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Clean any left-over files"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write driver"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write process source code, compile, link, load"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%load (os_data)

call lib%write (u, libpath = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active           = ", &
    lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes         = ", &
    lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of omega1_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("omega1_a"), 1, data, driver)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "component ID      = ", char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,A)")  "model name       = ", char (data%model_name)
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "md5sum           = '", data%md5sum, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "openmp supported = ", data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_in      = ", data%n_in
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_out     = ", data%n_out
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_flv    = ", data%n_flv
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_hel    = ", data%n_hel
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_col    = ", data%n_col
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cin    = ", data%n_cin
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_cf     = ", data%n_cf
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))")  "flv state =", data%flv_state
write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I2))")  "hel state =", data%hel_state(:,1)
do i = 2, 16

```

```

        write (u, "(12x,4(1x,I2))") data%hel_state(:,i)
    end do
    write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "col state =", data%col_state
    write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,L1))") "ghost flag =", data%ghost_flag
    write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,F5.3))") "color factors =", data%color_factors
    write (u, "(1x,A,10(1x,I0))") "cf index =", data%cf_index

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters for omega1_a and initialize:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    par = [0.3_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf]
    write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "ee  = ", par(1)
    write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "me  = ", par(2)
    write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mmu = ", par(3)
    write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mtau = ", par(4)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    p = reshape ([ &
        1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
        1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, &
        1.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &
        1.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
        ], [4,4])
    do i = 1, 4
        write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
    end do

    select type (driver)
    type is (omega_driver_t)
        call driver%init (par)

        call driver%new_event (p)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call driver%is_allowed (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, flag)
        write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is_allowed (1, 6, 1) = ", flag

        call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
    end select

    call lib%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_1"

end subroutine prc_omega_1

```

### Check prc\_omega\_t wrapper and options

The process is  $e^-e^+ \rightarrow e^-e^+$  for vanishing masses and  $e = 0.3$ . We build the library using the high-level procedure `omega_make_process_component` and the “black box” `prc_omega_t` object. Two variants with different settings for restrictions and OpenMP.

For GNU make, `makeflags` is set to `-j1`. This eliminates a potential clash with a `-j<n>` flag if this test is called from a parallel make.

```
(Omega interface: execute tests)+≡
  call test (prc_omega_2, "prc_omega_2", &
    "OMega option passing", &
    u, results)

(Omega interface: tests)+≡
  subroutine prc_omega_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t), target :: lib
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
    type(string_t) :: restrictions
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
    type(prc_omega_t) :: prc1, prc2
    type(process_constants_t) :: data
    integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
    integer, parameter :: ci = c_int
    real(cdf), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
    real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
    complex(c_default_complex) :: amp
    integer :: i
    logical :: exist

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create simple processes with OMega"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           use the prc_omega wrapper for this"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           and check OMega options"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with two entries, &
      &different options."
    write (u, "(A)")  "* (1) e- e+ -> e- e+  &
      &(all diagrams, no OpenMP, report progress)"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* (2) e- e+ -> e- e+  &
      &(s-channel only, with OpenMP, report progress to file)"

    call lib%init (var_str ("omega2"))
    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
```

```

model_name = "QED"
call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)

allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
prt_in = [var_str ("e-"), var_str ("e+")]
prt_out = prt_in
restrictions = "3+4~A"

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("omega2_a"), &
    model, n_in = 2, n_components = 2)

call omega_make_process_component (entry, 1, &
    model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
    report_progress=.true.)
call omega_make_process_component (entry, 2, &
    model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
    restrictions=restrictions, openmp_support=.true., &
    extra_options=var_str ("-fusion:progress_file omega2.log"))

call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Remove left-over file"
write (u, "(A)")

call delete_file ("omega2.log")
inquire (file="omega2.log", exist=exist)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "omega2.log exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load library"

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Check extra output of OMega"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file="omega2.log", exist=exist)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "omega2.log exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active          = ", &

```



```

lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "n_processes          = ", &
lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters for omega2_a and initialize:"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("ee"), 0.3_default, &
is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("me"), 0._default, &
is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mmu"), 0._default, &
is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mtau"), 0._default, &
is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, par)

write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "ee   = ", par(1)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "me   = ", par(2)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mmu  = ", par(3)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)") "mtau = ", par(4)

call prc1%set_parameters (model)
call prc2%set_parameters (model)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of omega2_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

config => lib%get_component_def_ptr (var_str ("omega2_a"), 1)
call prc1%init (config%get_core_def_ptr (), &
lib, var_str ("omega2_a"), 1)
call prc1%get_constants (data, 1)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "component ID      = ", &
char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "openmp supported = ", &
data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "model name      = ', &
char (data%model_name), "'

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Constants of omega2_a_i2:"
write (u, "(A)")

config => lib%get_component_def_ptr (var_str ("omega2_a"), 2)
call prc2%init (config%get_core_def_ptr (), &
lib, var_str ("omega2_a"), 2)
call prc2%get_constants (data, 1)

write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "component ID      = ", &
char (data%id)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "openmp supported = ", &

```

```

data%openmp_supported
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "model name          = ', &
char (data%model_name), "'

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf,-1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf,-1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
    ], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
write (u, "(A)")

select type (driver => prc1%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
    call driver%new_event (p)
    call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,E11.4)") "(1) |amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
end select

select type (driver => prc2%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
    call driver%new_event (p)
    call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,E11.4)") "(2) |amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf,-1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, sqrt(0.5_cdf), 0.0_cdf, sqrt(0.5_cdf), &
    1.0_cdf,-sqrt(0.5_cdf), 0.0_cdf,-sqrt(0.5_cdf) &
    ], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

select type (driver => prc1%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
  call driver%new_event (p)
  call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
  write (u, "(2x,A,1x,E11.4)" "(1) |amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp))
end select

select type (driver => prc2%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
  call driver%new_event (p)
  call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
  write (u, "(2x,A,1x,E11.4)" "(2) |amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp))
end select

call lib%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_2"

end subroutine prc_omega_2

```

### Check helicity selection

The process is  $e^-e^+ \rightarrow e^-e^+$  for vanishing masses. We call the matrix element several times to verify the switching off of irrelevant helicities.

```

<Omega interface: execute tests>+≡
  call test (prc_omega_3, "prc_omega_3", &
    "helicity selection", &
    u, results)

<Omega interface: tests>+≡
subroutine prc_omega_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t), target :: lib
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list => null ()
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
  type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
  type(prc_omega_t) :: prc1
  type(process_constants_t) :: data
  integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
  real(cdf), dimension(:), allocatable :: par
  real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
  type(helicity_selection_t) :: helicity_selection
  integer :: i, h

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create simple process with OMega"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and check helicity selection"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library."
write (u, "(A)")  "* (1) e- e+ -> e- e+   (all diagrams, no OpenMP)"

call lib%init (var_str ("omega3"))
call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()

model_name = "QED"
call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"), os_data, model)
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)

allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
prt_in = [var_str ("e-"), var_str ("e+")]
prt_out = prt_in

allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("omega3_a"), &
    model, n_in = 2, n_components = 1)

call omega_make_process_component (entry, 1, &
    model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and load library"

call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active           = ", &
    lib%is_active ()
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "n_processes         = ", &
    lib%get_n_processes ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters for omega3_a and initialize:"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("ee"), 0.3_default, &
    is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("me"), 0._default, &

```

```

        is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mmu"), 0._default, &
        is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mtau"), 0._default, &
        is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_to_c_array (model, par)

write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)" "ee  = ", par(1)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)" "me  = ", par(2)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)" "mmu = ", par(3)
write (u, "(2x,A,F6.4)" "mtau = ", par(4)

call prc1%set_parameters (model, helicity_selection)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Helicity states of omega3_a_i1:"
write (u, "(A)")

config => lib%get_component_def_ptr (var_str ("omega3_a"), 1)
call prc1%init (config%get_core_def_ptr (), &
        lib, var_str ("omega3_a"), 1)
call prc1%get_constants (data, 1)

do i = 1, data%n_hel
        write (u, "(3x,I2,':',4(1x,I2))" i, data%hel_state(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initially allowed helicities:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(4x,16(1x,I2))" [(h, h = 1, data%n_hel)]
write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
do h = 1, data%n_hel
        write (u, "(2x,I1)", advance = "no") prc1%is_allowed (1, 1, h, 1)
end do
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset helicity selection (cutoff = 4)"
write (u, "(A)")

helicity_selection%active = .true.
helicity_selection%threshold = 1e10_default
helicity_selection%cutoff = 4
call helicity_selection%write (u)

call prc1%set_parameters (model, helicity_selection)
call prc1%reset_helicity_selection ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allowed helicities:"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(4x,16(1x,I2))") [(h, h = 1, data%n_hel)]
write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
do h = 1, data%n_hel
    write (u, "(2x,L1)", advance = "no") prc1%is_allowed (1, 1, h, 1)
end do
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, 1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &
    1.0_cdf, -1.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
    ], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
    write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.4))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute scattering matrix 5 times"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(4x,16(1x,I2))") [(h, h = 1, data%n_hel)]

select type (driver => prc1%driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
    do i = 1, 5
        call driver%new_event (p)
        write (u, "(2x,I2)", advance = "no") i
        do h = 1, data%n_hel
            write (u, "(2x,L1)", advance = "no") prc1%is_allowed (1, 1, h, 1)
        end do
        write (u, "(A)")
    end do
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset helicity selection again"
write (u, "(A)")

call prc1%activate_parameters ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Allowed helicities:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(4x,16(1x,I2))") [(h, h = 1, data%n_hel)]
write (u, "(4x)", advance = "no")
do h = 1, data%n_hel
    write (u, "(2x,L1)", advance = "no") prc1%is_allowed (1, 1, h, 1)
end do
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call lib%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_3"

end subroutine prc_omega_3

```

### QCD coupling

The process is  $u\bar{u} \rightarrow d\bar{d}$  for vanishing masses. We compute the amplitude for a fixed configuration once, then reset  $\alpha_s$ , then compute again.

For GNU make, makeflags is set to -j1. This eliminates a potential clash with a -j<n> flag if this test is called from a parallel make.

```

<Omega interface: execute tests>+≡
call test (prc_omega_4, "prc_omega_4", &
  "update QCD alpha", &
  u, results)

<Omega interface: tests>+≡
subroutine prc_omega_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(process_library_t) :: lib
  class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
  type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  type(os_data_t) :: os_data
  type(string_t) :: model_name
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
  type(process_constants_t) :: data
  class(prc_core_driver_t), allocatable :: driver
  integer, parameter :: cdf = c_default_float
  integer, parameter :: ci = c_int
  real(cdf), dimension(6) :: par
  real(cdf), dimension(0:3,4) :: p
  logical(c_bool) :: flag
  complex(c_default_complex) :: amp
  integer :: i
  real(cdf) :: alpha_s

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: create a QCD process with OMega"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*               and check alpha_s dependence"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
  write (u, "(A)")
  call lib%init (var_str ("prc_omega_4_lib"))
  call os_data_init (os_data)

  model_name = "QCD"

```

```

allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
prt_in = [var_str ("u"), var_str ("ubar")]
prt_out = [var_str ("d"), var_str ("dbar")]

allocate (omega_def_t :: def)
select type (def)
type is (omega_def_t)
  call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
end select
allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("prc_omega_4_p"), model_name = model_name, &
  n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
  prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
  prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
  method = var_str ("omega"), &
  variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure and compile process"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API:"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active = ", lib%is_active ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set parameters:"
write (u, "(A)")

alpha_s = 0.1178_cdf

par = [alpha_s, 0._cdf, 0._cdf, 0._cdf, 173.1_cdf, 1.523_cdf]
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "alpha_s = ", par(1)
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "ms      = ", par(2)
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "mc      = ", par(3)
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "mb      = ", par(4)
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "mtop    = ", par(5)
write (u, "(2x,A,F8.4)")  "wtop    = ", par(6)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics:"
write (u, "(A)")

p = reshape ([ &
  100.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 100.0_cdf, &
  100.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, -100.0_cdf, &
  100.0_cdf, 100.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, &

```



```

100.0_cdf,-100.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf, 0.0_cdf &
], [4,4])
do i = 1, 4
  write (u, "(2x,A,I0,A,4(1x,F7.1))") "p", i, " =", p(:,i)
end do

call lib%connect_process (var_str ("prc_omega_4_p"), 1, data, driver)

select type (driver)
type is (omega_driver_t)
  call driver%init (par)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element:"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call driver%new_event (p)

  call driver%is_allowed (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, flag)
  write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is_allowed (1, 6, 1) = ", flag

  call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Double alpha_s and compute matrix element again:"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call driver%update_alpha_s (2 * alpha_s)
  call driver%new_event (p)

  call driver%is_allowed (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, flag)
  write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "is_allowed (1, 6, 1) = ", flag

  call driver%get_amplitude (1_ci, 6_ci, 1_ci, amp)
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)
end select

call lib%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_4"

end subroutine prc_omega_4

```

## Amplitude and QCD coupling

The same process as before. Here, we initialize with a running  $\alpha_s$  coupling and compute twice with different scales. We use the high-level method `compute_amplitude`.

```

<Omega interface: execute tests>+≡
call test (prc_omega_5, "prc_omega_5", &
  "running QCD alpha", &

```

```

        u, results)
(Omega interface: tests)+≡
subroutine prc_omega_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(process_library_t) :: lib
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: cdef_ptr
    class(prc_core_def_t), pointer :: def_ptr
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core
    class(workspace_t), allocatable :: tmp
    type(vector4_t), dimension(4) :: p
    complex(default) :: amp
    real(default) :: fac_scale
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: create a QCD process with OMega"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*               and check alpha_s dependence"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
    write (u, "(A)")
    call lib%init (var_str ("prc_omega_5_lib"))
    call os_data_init (os_data)

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call model_list%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), var_str ("QCD.mdl"), &
        os_data, model)
    model_name = "QCD"

    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("u"), var_str ("ubar")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("d"), var_str ("dbar")]

    allocate (omega_def_t :: def)
    select type (def)
    type is (omega_def_t)
        call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
    end select
    allocate (entry)
    call entry%init (var_str ("prc_omega_5_p"), model_name = model_name, &
        n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
    call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
        prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
        prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
        method = var_str ("omega"), &
        variant = def)

```

```

call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure and compile process"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active = ", lib%is_active ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Set kinematics"
write (u, "(A)")

p(1) = vector4_moving (100._default, 100._default, 3)
p(2) = vector4_moving (100._default,-100._default, 3)
p(3) = vector4_moving (100._default, 100._default, 1)
p(4) = vector4_moving (100._default,-100._default, 1)
do i = 1, 4
  call vector4_write (p(i), u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup QCD data"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t :: qcd%alpha)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup process core"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (prc_omega_t :: core)
cdef_ptr => lib%get_component_def_ptr (var_str ("prc_omega_5_p"), 1)
def_ptr => cdef_ptr%get_core_def_ptr ()

select type (core)
type is (prc_omega_t)
  call core%allocate_workspace (tmp)
  call core%set_parameters (model, qcd = qcd)
  call core%init (def_ptr, lib, var_str ("prc_omega_5_p"), 1)
  call core%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compute matrix element"
write (u, "(A)")

fac_scale = 100
write (u, "(1x,A,F4.0)")  "factorization scale = ", fac_scale

```

```

    amp = core%compute_amplitude &
           (1, p, 1, 6, 1, fac_scale, 100._default)

    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Modify factorization scale and &
                        &compute matrix element again"
    write (u, "(A)")

    fac_scale = 200
    write (u, "(1x,A,F4.0)") "factorization scale = ", fac_scale

    amp = core%compute_amplitude &
           (1, p, 1, 6, 1, fac_scale, 100._default)

    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,E11.4)") "|amp (1, 6, 1)| =", abs (amp)

end select

call lib%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_5"

end subroutine prc_omega_5

```

### Generate matrix element diagrams

The same process as before. No amplitude is computed here, instead we just generate Feynman (and color flow) diagrams, and check whether PS and PDF files have been generated. This test is only run if event analysis is possible.

```

<Omega interface: execute diags tests>≡
    call test (prc_omega_diags_1, "prc_omega_diags_1", &
              "generate Feynman diagrams", &
              u, results)

<Omega interface: tests>+≡
    subroutine prc_omega_diags_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(process_library_t) :: lib
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: def
        type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type(string_t) :: model_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
        type(string_t) :: diags_file, pdf_file, ps_file
        logical :: exist, exist_pdf, exist_ps

```

```

integer :: iostat, u_diags
character(128) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: prc_omega_diags_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate Feynman diagrams"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process library with one entry"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%init (var_str ("prc_omega_diags_1_lib"))
call os_data_init (os_data)

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM"), var_str ("SM.mdl"), &
    os_data, model)
model_name = "SM"

allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
prt_in = [var_str ("u"), var_str ("ubar")]
prt_out = [var_str ("d"), var_str ("dbar")]

allocate (omega_def_t :: def)
select type (def)
type is (omega_def_t)
    call def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
        diags = .true., diags_color = .true.)
end select
allocate (entry)
call entry%init (var_str ("prc_omega_diags_1_p"), model_name = model_name, &
    n_in = 2, n_components = 1)
call entry%import_component (1, n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = new_prt_spec (prt_in), &
    prt_out = new_prt_spec (prt_out), &
    method = var_str ("omega"), &
    variant = def)
call lib%append (entry)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure and compile process"
write (u, "(A)")  "    and generate diagrams"
write (u, "(A)")
call lib%configure (os_data)
call lib%write_makefile (os_data, force = .true., testflag = .true.)
call lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
call lib%write_driver (force = .true.)
call lib%load (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Probe library API"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "is active = ", lib%is_active ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Check produced diagram files"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

diags_file = "prc_omega_diags_1_p_i1_diags.tex"
ps_file   = "prc_omega_diags_1_p_i1_diags.ps"
pdf_file  = "prc_omega_diags_1_p_i1_diags.pdf"
inquire (file = char (diags_file), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    u_diags = free_unit ()
    open (u_diags, file = char (diags_file), action = "read", status = "old")
    iostat = 0
    do while (iostat == 0)
        read (u_diags, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat == 0) write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_diags)
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Feynman diagrams LaTeX file is missing]"
end if
inquire (file = char (ps_file), exist = exist_ps)
if (exist_ps) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[Feynman diagrams Postscript file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Feynman diagrams Postscript file is missing/non-regular]"
end if
inquire (file = char (pdf_file), exist = exist_pdf)
if (exist_pdf) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[Feynman diagrams PDF file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[Feynman diagrams PDF file is missing/non-regular]"
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call lib%final ()

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: prc_omega_diags_1"

end subroutine prc_omega_diags_1

```

# Chapter 19

## Event I/O

In this chapter we provide a generic handler for event I/O and the various implementations: raw, HepMC, Les Houches, etc.

### 19.1 Event Sample Data

We define a simple and transparent container for (meta)data that are associated with an event sample.

```
<eio_data.f90>≡  
<File header>  
  
module eio_data  
  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
<Use file utils>  
<Use strings>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    use events  
  
<EIO data: public>  
  
<EIO data: types>  
  
contains  
  
<EIO data: procedures>  
  
<EIO data: tests>  
  
end module eio_data
```

#### 19.1.1 Event Sample Data

These are data that apply to an event sample as a whole. They are given in an easily portable form (no fancy structure) and are used for initializing event

formats.

There are two MD5 sums here. `md5sum_proc` depends only on the definition of the contributing processes. A sample with matching checksum can be rescanned with modified model parameters, beam structure etc, to recalculate observables. `md5sum_config` includes all relevant data. Rescanning a sample with matching checksum will produce identical observables. (A third checksum might be added which depends on the event sample itself. This is not needed, so far.)

If alternate weights are part of the event sample (`n_alt` nonzero), there is a configuration MD5 sum for each of them.

```

(EIO data: public)≡
    public :: event_sample_data_t

(EIO data: types)≡
    type :: event_sample_data_t
        character(32) :: md5sum_proc = ""
        character(32) :: md5sum_cfg = ""
        logical :: unweighted = .true.
        logical :: negative_weights = .false.
        integer :: norm_mode = NORM_UNDEFINED
        integer :: n_beam = 0
        integer, dimension(2) :: pdg_beam = 0
        real(default), dimension(2) :: energy_beam = 0
        integer :: n_proc = 0
        integer :: n_evt = 0
        integer :: split_n_evt = 0
        integer :: split_index = 0
        real(default) :: total_cross_section = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: proc_num_id
        integer :: n_alt = 0
        character(32), dimension(:), allocatable :: md5sum_alt
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: cross_section
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: error
    contains
        (EIO data: event sample data: TBP)
    end type event_sample_data_t

```

Initialize: allocate for the number of processes

```

(EIO data: event sample data: TBP)≡
    procedure :: init => event_sample_data_init

(EIO data: procedures)≡
    subroutine event_sample_data_init (data, n_proc, n_alt)
        class(event_sample_data_t), intent(out) :: data
        integer, intent(in) :: n_proc
        integer, intent(in), optional :: n_alt
        data%n_proc = n_proc
        allocate (data%proc_num_id (n_proc), source = 0)
        allocate (data%cross_section (n_proc), source = 0._default)
        allocate (data%error (n_proc), source = 0._default)
        if (present (n_alt)) then
            data%n_alt = n_alt
            allocate (data%md5sum_alt (n_alt))
        end if
    end subroutine

```



```

        data%md5sum_alt = ""
    end if
end subroutine event_sample_data_init

```

Output.

*(EIO data: event sample data: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: write => event_sample_data_write

```

*(EIO data: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine event_sample_data_write (data, unit)
    class(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event sample properties:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (proc) = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "unweighted = ", data%unweighted
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "negative weights = ", data%negative_weights
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "normalization = ", &
        char (event_normalization_string (data%norm_mode))
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "number of beams = ", data%n_beam
    write (u, "(5x,A,2(1x,I19))") "PDG = ", &
        data%pdg_beam(:data%n_beam)
    write (u, "(5x,A,2(1x,ES19.12))") "Energy = ", &
        data%energy_beam(:data%n_beam)
    if (data%n_evt > 0) then
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "number of events = ", data%n_evt
    end if
    if (data%total_cross_section /= 0) then
        write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "total cross sec. = ", &
            data%total_cross_section
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "num of processes = ", data%n_proc
    do i = 1, data%n_proc
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Process #", data%proc_num_id (i)
        select case (data%n_beam)
            case (1)
                write (u, "(5x,A,ES19.12)") "Width = ", data%cross_section(i)
            case (2)
                write (u, "(5x,A,ES19.12)") "CSec = ", data%cross_section(i)
        end select
        write (u, "(5x,A,ES19.12)") "Error = ", data%error(i)
    end do
    if (data%n_alt > 0) then
        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "num of alt wgt = ", data%n_alt
        do i = 1, data%n_alt
            write (u, "(5x,A,A,A,1x,I0)") "MD5 sum (cfg) = '", &
                data%md5sum_alt(i), "'", i
        end do
    end if
end subroutine event_sample_data_write

```

### 19.1.2 Unit tests

```

<EIO data: public>+≡
    public :: eio_data_test

<EIO data: tests>≡
    subroutine eio_data_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <EIO data: execute tests>
    end subroutine eio_data_test

```

## Event Sample Data

Print the contents of a sample data block.

```
(EIO data: execute tests)≡  
    call test (eio_data_1, "eio_data_1", &  
        "event sample data", &  
        u, results)  
  
<(EIO data: tests)>+==  
    subroutine eio_data_1 (u)  
        integer, intent(in) :: u  
        type(event_sample_data_t) :: data  
  
        write (u, "(A)")   "* Test output: eio_data_1"  
        write (u, "(A)")   "* Purpose: display event sample data"  
        write (u, "(A)")  
  
        write (u, "(A)")   "* Decay process, one component"  
        write (u, "(A)")  
  
        call data%init (1, 1)  
        data%n_beam = 1  
        data%pdg_beam(1) = 25  
        data%energy_beam(1) = 125  
  
        data%norm_mode = NORM_UNIT  
  
        data%proc_num_id = [42]  
        data%cross_section = [1.23e-4_default]  
        data$error = 5e-6_default  
  
        data/md5sum_prc = "abcdefghijklmnopabcdefghijklmnop"  
        data/md5sum_cfg = "12345678901234561234567890123456"  
        data/md5sum_alt(1) = "uuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuuu"  
  
        call data%write (u)  
  
        write (u, "(A)")  
        write (u, "(A)")   "* Scattering process, two components"  
        write (u, "(A)")  
  
        call data%init (2)
```

```

data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = [2212, -2212]
data%energy_beam = [8._default, 10._default]

data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA

data%proc_num_id = [12, 34]
data%cross_section = [100._default, 88._default]
data%error = [1._default, 0.1_default]

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_data_1"

end subroutine eio_data_1

```

## Event Normalization

Check the functions for translating modes and updating weights.

```

<EIO data: execute tests>+≡
  call test (eio_data_2, "eio_data_2", &
    "event normalization", &
    u, results)

<EIO data: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_data_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: s
    logical :: unweighted
    real(default) :: w, sigma
    integer :: n

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_data_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: handle event normalization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Normalization strings"
    write (u, "(A)")

    s = "auto"
    unweighted = .true.
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,L1,1x,A)") char (s), unweighted, &
      char (event_normalization_string &
        (event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))
    s = "AUTO"
    unweighted = .false.
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,L1,1x,A)") char (s), unweighted, &
      char (event_normalization_string &
        (event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))

    unweighted = .true.

```

```

s = "1"
write (u, "(2(1x,A))") char (s), char (event_normalization_string &
(event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))
s = "1/n"
write (u, "(2(1x,A))") char (s), char (event_normalization_string &
(event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))
s = "Sigma"
write (u, "(2(1x,A))") char (s), char (event_normalization_string &
(event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))
s = "sigma/N"
write (u, "(2(1x,A))") char (s), char (event_normalization_string &
(event_normalization_mode (s, unweighted)))

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Normalization update"
write (u, "(A)")

sigma = 5
n = 2

w0 = 1

w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_UNIT, NORM_UNIT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_N_EVT, NORM_UNIT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_SIGMA, NORM_UNIT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_S_N, NORM_UNIT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w

write (u, *)

w0 = 0.5

w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_UNIT, NORM_N_EVT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_N_EVT, NORM_N_EVT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_SIGMA, NORM_N_EVT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_S_N, NORM_N_EVT)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w

write (u, *)

```

```

w0 = 5.0

w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_UNIT, NORM_SIGMA)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_N_EVT, NORM_SIGMA)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_SIGMA, NORM_SIGMA)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_S_N, NORM_SIGMA)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w

write (u, *)

w0 = 2.5

w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_UNIT, NORM_S_N)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_N_EVT, NORM_S_N)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_SIGMA, NORM_S_N)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w
w = w0
call event_normalization_update (w, sigma, n, NORM_S_N, NORM_S_N)
write (u, "(2(F6.3))") w0, w

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_data_2"

end subroutine eio_data_2

```

## 19.2 Abstract I/O Handler

This module defines an abstract object for event I/O and the associated methods.

There are `output` and `input` methods which write or read a single event from/to the I/O stream, respectively. The I/O stream itself may be a file, a common block, or an externally linked structure, depending on the concrete implementation.

A `write` method prints the current content of the implementation-dependent event record in human-readable form.

The `init_in/init_out` and `final` prepare and finalize the I/O stream, respectively. There is also a `switch_inout` method which turns an input stream into an output stream where events can be appended.

Optionally, output files can be split in chunks of well-defined size. The `split_out` method takes care of this.

```

<eio_base.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module eio_base

    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    <Use strings>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use models
    use particles
    use beams
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data

    <Standard module head>

    <EIO base: public>

    <EIO base: types>

    <EIO base: interfaces>

    <EIO base: test types>

    contains

    <EIO base: procedures>

    <EIO base: tests>

  end module eio_base

```

### 19.2.1 Process pointer

For handling multiple processes, we need an array of process pointers. This requires a wrapper:

```

<EIO base: public>≡
  public :: process_ptr_t

<EIO base: types>≡
  type :: process_ptr_t
    type(process_t), pointer :: ptr => null ()
  end type process_ptr_t

```

## 19.2.2 Type

We can assume that most implementations will need the file extension as a fixed string and, if they support file splitting, the current file index.

The fallback model is useful for implementations that are able to read unknown files which may contain hadrons etc., not in the current hard-interaction model.

```
<EIO base: public>+≡
  public :: eio_t

<EIO base: types>+≡
  type, abstract :: eio_t
    type(string_t) :: sample
    type(string_t) :: extension
    type(string_t) :: filename
    logical :: split = .false.
    integer :: split_n_evt = 0
    integer :: split_index = 0
    type(model_t), pointer :: fallback_model => null ()
  contains
    <EIO base: eio: TBP>
  end type eio_t
```

Write to screen. If possible, this should display the contents of the current event, i.e., the last one that was written or read.

```
<EIO base: eio: TBP>≡
  procedure (eio_write), deferred :: write

<EIO base: interfaces>≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_write (object, unit)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(in) :: object
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    end subroutine eio_write
  end interface
```

Finalize. This should write/read footer data and close input/output channels.

```
<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
  procedure (eio_final), deferred :: final

<EIO base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_final (object)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine eio_final
  end interface
```

Determine splitting parameters from the event sample data.

```
<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_splitting => eio_set_splitting
```

```

(EIO base: procedures)≡
  subroutine eio_set_splitting (eio, data)
    class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    eio%split = data%split_n_evt > 0
    if (eio%split) then
      eio%split_n_evt = data%split_n_evt
      eio%split_index = data%split_index
    end if
  end subroutine eio_set_splitting

```

Generate a filename, taking a possible split index into account.

```

(EIO base: eio: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_filename => eio_set_filename

(EIO base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_set_filename (eio)
    class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    character(32) :: buffer
    if (eio%split) then
      write (buffer, "(I0,'.')") eio%split_index
      eio%filename = eio%sample // "." // trim (buffer) // eio%extension
    else
      eio%filename = eio%sample // "." // eio%extension
    end if
  end subroutine eio_set_filename

```

Set the fallback model.

```

(EIO base: eio: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: set_fallback_model => eio_set_fallback_model

(EIO base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_set_fallback_model (eio, model)
    class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    eio%fallback_model => model
  end subroutine eio_set_fallback_model

```

Initialize for output. We provide process pointers. This should open an event file if appropriate and write header data. Some methods may require event sample data.

```

(EIO base: eio: TBP)+≡
  procedure (eio_init_out), deferred :: init_out

(EIO base: interfaces)+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
      type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
      type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
      type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
      logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    end subroutine eio_init_out
  end interface

```



```

        end subroutine eio_init_out
    end interface

```

Initialize for input. We provide process names. This should open an event file if appropriate and read header data. The `md5sum` can be used to check the integrity of the configuration, it it provides a checksum to compare with. In case the extension has changed the extension is also given as an argument.

The `data` argument is `intent(inout)`: we may read part of it and keep other parts and/or check them against the data in the file.

```

<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
    procedure (eio_init_in), deferred :: init_in

<EIO base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine eio_init_in (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
            import
            class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
            type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
            type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
            type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
            type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
            logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        end subroutine eio_init_in
    end interface

```

Re-initialize for output. This should change the status of any event file from input to output and position it for appending new events.

```

<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
    procedure (eio_switch_inout), deferred :: switch_inout

<EIO base: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine eio_switch_inout (eio, success)
            import
            class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
            logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        end subroutine eio_switch_inout
    end interface

```

This is similar: split the output, i.e., close the current file and open a new one. The default implementation does nothing. For the feature to work, an implementation must override this.

```

<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: split_out => eio_split_out

<EIO base: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_split_out (eio)
        class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    end subroutine eio_split_out

```

Output an event. All data can be taken from the `event` record. The index `i_prc` identifies the process among the processes that are contained in the current sample. The `reading` flag, if present, indicates that the event was read from file, not generated.

```

<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
  procedure (eio_output), deferred :: output

<EIO base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
      type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
      integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
      logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
    end subroutine eio_output
  end interface

```

Input an event. This should fill all event data that cannot be inferred from the associated process.

The input is broken down into two parts. First we read the `i_prc` index. So we know which process to expect in the subsequent event. If we have reached end of file, we also will know. Then, we read the event itself.

The parameter `iostat` is supposed to be set as the Fortran standard requires, negative for EOF and positive for error.

```

<EIO base: eio: TBP>+≡
  procedure (eio_input_i_prc), deferred :: input_i_prc
  procedure (eio_input_event), deferred :: input_event

<EIO base: interfaces>+≡
  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
      integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
      integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    end subroutine eio_input_i_prc
  end interface

  abstract interface
    subroutine eio_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
      import
      class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
      type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
      integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    end subroutine eio_input_event
  end interface

```

### 19.2.3 Unit tests

```

<EIO base: public>+≡
  public :: eio_base_test

```

```

<EIO base: tests>≡
  subroutine eio_base_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <EIO base: execute tests>
  end subroutine eio_base_test

```

## Test type for event I/O

The contents simulate the contents of an external file. We have the `sample` string as the file name, `sqrts` and the array of `process_ids` as metadata, and the array of momenta `event_p` as the list of events. The second index is the event index. The `event_i` component is the pointer to the current event, `event_n` is the total number of stored events.

```

<EIO base: test types>≡
  type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_test_t
    real(default) :: sqrts
    type(string_t) :: process_id
    integer :: event_n = 0
    integer :: event_i = 0
    integer :: i_prc = 0
    type(vector4_t), dimension(:,,:), allocatable :: event_p
  contains
    <EIO base: eio test: TBP>
  end type eio_test_t

```

Write to screen. Pretend that this is an actual event format.

```

<EIO base: eio test: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => eio_test_write

<EIO base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_test_write (object, unit)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Test event stream"
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Process ID = '", char (object%process_id), "'"
    write (u, "(3x,A,ES19.12)") "sqrts      = ", object%sqrts
    if (object%event_i /= 0) then
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Event #", object%event_i, ":"
      do i = 1, size (object%event_p, 1)
        call vector4_write (object%event_p(i, object%event_i), u)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine eio_test_write

```

Finalizer. For the test case, we just reset the event count, but keep the stored “events”. For the real implementations, the events would be stored on an external medium, so we would delete the object contents.

```

<EIO base: eio test: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => eio_test_final

```

```

(EIO base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_test_final (object)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: object
    object%event_i = 0
  end subroutine eio_test_final

```

Initialization: We store the process IDs and the energy from the beam-data object. We also allocate the momenta (i.e., the simulated event record) for a fixed maximum size of 10 events, 2 momenta each. There is only a single process.

```

(EIO base: eio test: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_out => eio_test_init_out

(EIO base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_test_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    type(beam_data_t), pointer :: beam_data
    eio%sample = sample
    eio%process_id = process_ptr(1)%ptr%get_id ()
    beam_data => process_ptr(1)%ptr%get_beam_data_ptr ()
    eio%sqrts = beam_data_get_sqrts (beam_data)
    eio%event_n = 0
    eio%event_i = 0
    allocate (eio%event_p (2, 10))
    if (present (success)) success = .true.
  end subroutine eio_test_init_out

```

Initialization for input. Nothing to do for the test type.

```

(EIO base: eio test: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_in => eio_test_init_in

(EIO base: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_test_init_in &
    (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    if (present (success)) success = .true.
  end subroutine eio_test_init_in

```

Switch from output to input. Again, nothing to do for the test type.

```

(EIO base: eio test: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: switch_inout => eio_test_switch_inout

```

```

<EIO base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_test_switch_inout (eio, success)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    if (present (success)) success = .true.
  end subroutine eio_test_switch_inout

```

Output. Increment the event counter and store the momenta of the current event.

```

<EIO base: eio test: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: output => eio_test_output

<EIO base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_test_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
    integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
    type(particle_set_t), pointer :: pset
    type(particle_t) :: prt
    eio%event_n = eio%event_n + 1
    eio%event_i = eio%event_n
    eio%i_prc = i_prc
    pset => event%get_particle_set_ptr ()
    prt = particle_set_get_particle (pset, 3)
    eio%event_p(1, eio%event_i) = particle_get_momentum (prt)
    prt = particle_set_get_particle (pset, 4)
    eio%event_p(2, eio%event_i) = particle_get_momentum (prt)
  end subroutine eio_test_output

```

Input. Increment the event counter and retrieve the momenta of the current event. For the test case, we do not actually modify the current event.

```

<EIO base: eio test: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_test_input_i_prc
  procedure :: input_event => eio_test_input_event

<EIO base: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_test_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    i_prc = eio%i_prc
    iostat = 0
  end subroutine eio_test_input_i_prc

  subroutine eio_test_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
    class(eio_test_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    eio%event_i = eio%event_i + 1
    iostat = 0
  end subroutine eio_test_input_event

```

## Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods using the `eio_test_t` type.

```
<EIO base: execute tests>≡
    call test (eio_base_1, "eio_base_1", &
               "read and write event contents", &
               u, results)

<EIO base: tests>+≡
    subroutine eio_base_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
        type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
        type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
        type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
        class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
        integer :: i_prc, iostat
        type(string_t) :: sample

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_base_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate and read/write an event"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

        allocate (process)
        process_ptr%ptr => process
        allocate (process_instance)
        call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
        call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

        allocate (event)
        call event%basic_init ()
        call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
        write (u, "(A)")

        sample = "eio_test1"

        allocate (eio_test_t :: eio)

        call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])
        call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
        call eio%output (event, 42)
        call eio%write (u)
        call eio%final ()

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event"
        write (u, "(A)")
```

```

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])
call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
call eio%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "i = ", i_prc

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and append another event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%switch_inout ()
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call eio%output (event, 5)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read both events"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])
call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
call eio%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "i = ", i_prc

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_base_1"

end subroutine eio_base_1

```

## 19.3 Raw Event I/O

The raw format is for internal use only. All data are stored unformatted, so they can be efficiently be re-read on the same machine, but not necessarily on another machine.

```
<eio_raw.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module eio_raw  
  
    use kinds !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    <Use strings>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
  
    use lorentz !NODEP!  
    use variables  
    use models  
    use particles  
    use beams  
    use processes  
    use events  
    use eio_data  
    use eio_base  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <EIO raw: public>  
  
    <EIO raw: types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <EIO raw: procedures>  
  
    <EIO raw: tests>  
  
  end module eio_raw
```

### 19.3.1 Type

```
<EIO raw: public>≡  
  public :: eio_raw_t  
  
<EIO raw: types>≡  
  type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_raw_t  
    logical :: reading = .false.  
    logical :: writing = .false.  
    integer :: unit = 0  
    integer :: norm_mode = NORM_UNDEFINED  
    real(default) :: sigma = 1  
    integer :: n = 1  
    integer :: n_alt = 0
```



```

        logical :: check = .false.
contains
  <EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>
end type eio_raw_t

```

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => eio_raw_write

<EIO raw: procedures>≡
  subroutine eio_raw_write (object, unit)
    class(eio_raw_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Raw event stream:"
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Check MD5 sum      = ", object%check
    if (object%n_alt > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Alternate weights = ", object%n_alt
    end if
    if (object%reading) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Reading from file = ", char (object%filename)
    else if (object%writing) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file   = ", char (object%filename)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
    end if
  end subroutine eio_raw_write

```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => eio_raw_final

<EIO raw: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_raw_final (object)
    class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (object%reading .or. object%writing) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing raw file '", &
        char (object%filename), "'"
      call msg_message ()
      close (object%unit)
      object%reading = .false.
      object%writing = .false.
    end if
  end subroutine eio_raw_final

```

Set the `check` flag which determines whether we compare checksums on input.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: set_parameters => eio_raw_set_parameters

<EIO raw: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_raw_set_parameters (eio, check, extension)

```

```

class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
logical, intent(in) :: check
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
eio%check = check
if (present (extension)) then
    eio%extension = extension
else
    eio%extension = "evx"
end if
end subroutine eio_raw_set_parameters

```

Initialize event writing.

*(EIO raw: eio raw: TBP)*+≡

```

procedure :: init_out => eio_raw_init_out

```

*(EIO raw: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eio_raw_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
logical, intent(out), optional :: success
character(32) :: md5sum_prc, md5sum_cfg
character(32), dimension(:), allocatable :: md5sum_alt
integer :: i
eio%extension = "evx"
eio%filename = sample // "." // eio%extension
eio%unit = free_unit ()
write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to raw file '", &
    char (eio%filename), "'"
call msg_message ()
eio%writing = .true.
if (present (data)) then
    md5sum_prc = data%md5sum_prc
    md5sum_cfg = data%md5sum_cfg
    eio%norm_mode = data%norm_mode
    eio%sigma = data%total_cross_section
    eio%n = data%n_evt
    eio%n_alt = data%n_alt
    if (eio%n_alt > 0) then
        allocate (md5sum_alt (data%n_alt), source = data%md5sum_alt)
    end if
else
    md5sum_prc = ""
    md5sum_cfg = ""
end if
open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), form = "unformatted", &
    action = "write", status = "replace")
write (eio%unit) md5sum_prc
write (eio%unit) md5sum_cfg
write (eio%unit) eio%norm_mode
write (eio%unit) eio%n_alt
do i = 1, eio%n_alt
    write (eio%unit) md5sum_alt(i)

```

```

end do
if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine eio_raw_init_out

```

Initialize event reading.

*(EIO raw: eio raw: TBP)*+≡

```

procedure :: init_in => eio_raw_init_in

```

*(EIO raw: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eio_raw_init_in &
  (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
  class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
  type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
  logical, intent(out), optional :: success
  character(32) :: md5sum_prc, md5sum_cfg
  character(32), dimension(:), allocatable :: md5sum_alt
  integer :: i
  if (present (success)) success = .true.
  if (present (extension)) then
    eio%extension = extension
  else
    eio%extension = "evx"
  end if
  eio%filename = sample // "." // eio%extension
  eio%unit = free_unit ()
  if (present (data)) then
    eio%sigma = data%total_cross_section
    eio%n = data%n_evt
  end if
  write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: reading from raw file '", &
    char (eio%filename), "'"
  call msg_message ()
  eio%reading = .true.
  open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), form = "unformatted", &
    action = "read", status = "old")
  read (eio%unit) md5sum_prc
  read (eio%unit) md5sum_cfg
  read (eio%unit) eio%norm_mode
  read (eio%unit) eio%n_alt
  if (present (data)) then
    if (eio%n_alt /= data%n_alt) then
      if (present (success)) success = .false. !
      return
    end if
  end if
  allocate (md5sum_alt (eio%n_alt))
  do i = 1, eio%n_alt
    read (eio%unit) md5sum_alt(i)
  end do
  if (present (success)) then
    if (present (data)) then

```

```

        if (eio%check) then
            if (data%md5sum_prc /= "") then
                success = success .and. md5sum_prc == data%md5sum_prc
            end if
            if (data%md5sum_cfg /= "") then
                success = success .and. md5sum_cfg == data%md5sum_cfg
            end if
            do i = 1, eio%n_alt
                if (data%md5sum_alt(i) /= "") then
                    success = success .and. md5sum_alt(i) == data%md5sum_alt(i)
                end if
            end do
        else
            call msg_warning ("Reading event file: MD5 sum check disabled")
        end if
    end if
end if
end subroutine eio_raw_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_raw_switch_inout

<EIO raw: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_raw_switch_inout (eio, success)
        class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: appending to raw file '", &
            char (eio%filename), "'"
        call msg_message ()
        close (eio%unit, status = "keep")
        eio%reading = .false.
        open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), form = "unformatted", &
            action = "write", position = "append", status = "old")
        eio%writing = .true.
        if (present (success)) success = .true.
    end subroutine eio_raw_switch_inout

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and squared matrix element, then the particle set.

We always write the particle set of the hard process. (Note: this should be reconsidered.) We do make a physical copy.

On output, we write the `prc` values for weight and `sqme`, since these are the values just computed. On input, we store the values as `ref` values. The caller can then decide whether to recompute values and thus obtain distinct `prc` values, or just accept them.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: output => eio_raw_output

<EIO raw: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_raw_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
        class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event

```

```

logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
type(particle_set_t) :: pset
integer :: i
if (eio%writing) then
  if (event%has_particle_set ()) then
    write (eio%unit) i_prc
    write (eio%unit) event%get_i_mci ()
    write (eio%unit) event%get_i_term ()
    write (eio%unit) event%get_channel ()
    write (eio%unit) event%expr%weight_prc
    write (eio%unit) event%expr%excess_prc
    write (eio%unit) event%expr%sqme_prc
    do i = 1, eio%n_alt
      write (eio%unit) event%expr%weight_alt(i)
      write (eio%unit) event%expr%sqme_alt(i)
    end do
    call event%get_particle_set_hard_proc (pset)
    call particle_set_write_raw (pset, eio%unit)
    call particle_set_final (pset)
  else
    call msg_bug ("Event: write raw: particle set is undefined")
  end if
else
  call eio%write ()
  call msg_fatal ("Raw event file is not open for writing")
end if
end subroutine eio_raw_output

```

Input an event.

Note: the particle set is physically copied. If there is a performance issue, we might choose to pointer-assign it instead, with a different version of `event%set_particle_set_hard_proc`.

```

<EIO raw: eio raw: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_raw_input_i_prc
  procedure :: input_event => eio_raw_input_event

<EIO raw: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_raw_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
    class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    if (eio%reading) then
      read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) i_prc
    else
      call eio%write ()
      call msg_fatal ("Raw event file is not open for reading")
    end if
  end subroutine eio_raw_input_i_prc

  subroutine eio_raw_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
    class(eio_raw_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat

```

```

integer :: i_mci, i_term, channel, i
real(default) :: weight, excess, sqme
real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: weight_alt, sqme_alt
type(particle_set_t) :: pset
if (eio%reading) then
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) i_mci
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) i_term
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) channel
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) weight
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) excess
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) sqme
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  call event%reset ()
  call event%select (i_mci, i_term, channel)
  if (eio%norm_mode /= NORM_UNDEFINED) then
    call event_normalization_update (weight, &
      eio%sigma, eio%n, event%get_norm_mode (), eio%norm_mode)
    call event_normalization_update (excess, &
      eio%sigma, eio%n, event%get_norm_mode (), eio%norm_mode)
  end if
  call event%set (sqme_ref = sqme, weight_ref = weight, &
    excess_prc = excess)
  if (eio%n_alt /= 0) then
    allocate (sqme_alt (eio%n_alt), weight_alt (eio%n_alt))
    do i = 1, eio%n_alt
      read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) weight_alt(i)
      if (iostat /= 0) return
      read (eio%unit, iostat = iostat) sqme_alt(i)
      if (iostat /= 0) return
    end do
    call event%set (sqme_alt = sqme_alt, weight_alt = weight_alt)
  end if
  call particle_set_read_raw (pset, eio%unit, iostat)
  if (iostat /= 0) return
  if (associated (event%process)) then
    call particle_set_set_model (pset, event%process%get_model_ptr ())
  end if
  call event%set_particle_set_hard_proc (pset)
  call particle_set_final (pset)
else
  call eio%write ()
  call msg_fatal ("Raw event file is not open for reading")
end if
end subroutine eio_raw_input_event

```

### 19.3.2 Unit tests

*(EIO raw: public)* +≡

```

public :: eio_raw_test
<EIO raw: tests>≡
  subroutine eio_raw_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <EIO raw: execute tests>
  end subroutine eio_raw_test

```

## Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```

<EIO raw: execute tests>≡
  call test (eio_raw_1, "eio_raw_1", &
    "read and write event contents", &
    u, results)
<EIO raw: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_raw_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    integer :: i_prc, iostat
    type(string_t) :: sample

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_raw_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate and read/write an event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    sample = "eio_raw_1"

    allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)

```

```

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 42)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (i_prc):", iostat
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (event):", iostat
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "i_prc = ", i_prc
write (u, "(A)")
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and append another event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%switch_inout ()
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 5)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

```



```

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read both events"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (i_prc/1):", iostat
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (event/1):", iostat
call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (i_prc/2):", iostat
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (event/2):", iostat
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "i_prc = ", i_prc
write (u, "(A)")
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_raw_1"

end subroutine eio_raw_1

```

## Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```
(EIO raw: execute tests)+≡
    call test (eio_raw_2, "eio_raw_2", &
               "handle multiple weights", &
               u, results)

(EIO raw: tests)+≡
    subroutine eio_raw_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(var_list_t) :: var_list
        type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
        type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
        type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
        type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
        type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
        class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
        integer :: i_prc, iostat
        type(string_t) :: sample

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_raw_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate and read/write an event"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*                   with multiple weights"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

        allocate (process)
        process_ptr%ptr => process
        allocate (process_instance)
        call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
        call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

        call data%init (n_proc = 1, n_alt = 2)

        call var_list_append_log (var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), .false., &
                                  intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_string (var_list, var_str ("$sample_normalization"), &
                                      var_str ("auto"), intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_real (var_list, var_str ("safety_factor"), &
                                    1._default, intrinsic = .true.)

        allocate (event)
        call event%basic_init (var_list, n_alt = 2)
        call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
        write (u, "(A)")

        sample = "eio_raw_2"
```

```

allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%set (sqme_alt = [2._default, 3._default])
call event%set (weight_alt = [2 * event%weight_ref, 3 * event%weight_ref])
call event%store_alt_values ()
call event%check ()

call event%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 42)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)
call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr], data)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
allocate (event)
call event%basic_init (var_list, n_alt = 2)
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (i_prc):", iostat
call eio%input_event (event, iostat)
if (iostat /= 0) write (u, "(A,I0)")  "I/O error (event):", iostat
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)")  "i_prc = ", i_prc
write (u, "(A)")
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

call event%final ()

```

```

deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output end: eio_raw_2"

end subroutine eio_raw_2

```

## 19.4 Event Generation Checkpoints

This is an output-only format. Its only use is to write screen messages every  $n$  events, to inform the user about progress.

```

<eio_checkpoints.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module eio_checkpoints

    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    <Use strings>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    use cputime
    use models
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data
    use eio_base

    <Standard module head>

    <EIO checkpoints: public>

    <EIO checkpoints: parameters>

    <EIO checkpoints: types>

    contains

    <EIO checkpoints: procedures>

    <EIO checkpoints: tests>

  end module eio_checkpoints

```

### 19.4.1 Type

```
<EIO checkpoints: public>≡
  public :: eio_checkpoints_t
<EIO checkpoints: types>≡
  type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_checkpoints_t
    logical :: active = .false.
    logical :: running = .false.
    integer :: val = 0
    integer :: n_events = 0
    integer :: n_read = 0
    integer :: i_evt = 0
    logical :: blank = .false.
    type(timer_t) :: timer
  contains
    <EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>
  end type eio_checkpoints_t
```

### 19.4.2 Specific Methods

Set parameters that are specifically used with LHEF.

```
<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>≡
  procedure :: set_parameters => eio_checkpoints_set_parameters
<EIO checkpoints: procedures>≡
  subroutine eio_checkpoints_set_parameters (eio, checkpoint, blank)
    class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(in) :: checkpoint
    logical, intent(in), optional :: blank
    eio%val = checkpoint
    if (present (blank)) eio%blank = blank
  end subroutine eio_checkpoints_set_parameters
```

### 19.4.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current status.

```
<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => eio_checkpoints_write
<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_checkpoints_write (object, unit)
    class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (object%active) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event-sample checkpoints: active"
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "interval = ", object%val
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_events = ", object%n_events
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_read = ", object%n_read
```

```

        write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_current = ", object%i_evt
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "blanking = ", object%blank
        call object%timer%write (u)
    else
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event-sample checkpoints: off"
    end if
end subroutine eio_checkpoints_write

```

Finalizer: trivial.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => eio_checkpoints_final

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_final (object)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: object
        object%active = .false.
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_final

```

Activate checkpointing for event generation or writing.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_out => eio_checkpoints_init_out

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_init_out &
        (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        if (present (data)) then
            if (eio%val > 0) then
                eio%active = .true.
                eio%i_evt = 0
                eio%n_read = 0
                eio%n_events = data%n_evt
            end if
        end if
        if (present (success)) success = .true.
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_init_out

```

No checkpointing for event reading.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_in => eio_checkpoints_init_in

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_init_in &
        (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success

```

```

        call msg_bug ("Event checkpoints: event input not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: also not supported.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_checkpoints_switch_inout

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_switch_inout (eio, success)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        call msg_bug ("Event checkpoints: in-out switch not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_switch_inout

```

Checkpoints: display progress for the current event, if applicable.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: output => eio_checkpoints_output

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
        integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
        logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
        logical :: rd
        rd = .false.; if (present (reading)) rd = reading
        if (eio%active) then
            if (.not. eio%running) call eio%startup ()
            if (eio%running) then
                eio%i_evt = eio%i_evt + 1
                if (rd) then
                    eio%n_read = eio%n_read + 1
                else if (mod (eio%i_evt, eio%val) == 0) then
                    call eio%message (eio%blank)
                end if
                if (eio%i_evt == eio%n_events) call eio%shutdown ()
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_output

```

When the first event is called, we have to initialize the screen output.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: startup => eio_checkpoints_startup

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_startup (eio)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        if (eio%active .and. eio%i_evt < eio%n_events) then
            call msg_message ("")
            call msg_message (checkpoint_bar)
            call msg_message (checkpoint_head)
            call msg_message (checkpoint_bar)
        end if
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_startup

```

```

        write (msg_buffer, checkpoint_fmt) 0., 0, eio%n_events - eio%i_evt, "???"
        call msg_message ()
        eio%running = .true.
        call eio%timer%start ()
    end if
end subroutine eio_checkpoints_startup

```

This message is printed at every checkpoint.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: message => eio_checkpoints_message

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_message (eio, testflag)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        real :: t
        type(time_t) :: time_remaining
        type(string_t) :: time_string
        call eio%timer%stop ()
        t = eio%timer
        call eio%timer%restart ()
        time_remaining = &
            nint (t / (eio%i_evt - eio%n_read) * (eio%n_events - eio%i_evt))
        time_string = time_remaining%to_string_ms (blank = testflag)
        write (msg_buffer, checkpoint_fmt) &
            100 * (eio%i_evt - eio%n_read) / real (eio%n_events - eio%n_read), &
            eio%i_evt - eio%n_read, &
            eio%n_events - eio%i_evt, &
            char (time_string)
        call msg_message ()
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_message

```

When the last event is called, wrap up.

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: shutdown => eio_checkpoints_shutdown

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_checkpoints_shutdown (eio)
        class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        if (mod (eio%i_evt, eio%val) /= 0) then
            write (msg_buffer, checkpoint_fmt) &
                100., eio%i_evt - eio%n_read, 0, "0m:00s"
            call msg_message ()
        end if
        call msg_message (checkpoint_bar)
        call msg_message ("")
        eio%running = .false.
    end subroutine eio_checkpoints_shutdown

```

```

<EIO checkpoints: eio checkpoints: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_checkpoints_input_i_prc
    procedure :: input_event => eio_checkpoints_input_event

```



```

<EIO checkpoints: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_checkpoints_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
  class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
  integer, intent(out) :: iostat
  call msg_bug ("Event checkpoints: event input not supported")
  i_prc = 0
  iostat = 1
end subroutine eio_checkpoints_input_i_prc

subroutine eio_checkpoints_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
  class(eio_checkpoints_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
  integer, intent(out) :: iostat
  call msg_bug ("Event checkpoints: event input not supported")
  iostat = 1
end subroutine eio_checkpoints_input_event

```

#### 19.4.4 Message header

```

<EIO checkpoints: parameters>≡
character(*), parameter :: &
  checkpoint_head = "| % complete | events generated | events remaining &
  &| time remaining"
character(*), parameter :: &
  checkpoint_bar = "|=====
  &=====|"
character(*), parameter :: &
  checkpoint_fmt = "(' ',F5.1,T16,I9,T35,I9,T58,A)"

```

#### 19.4.5 Unit tests

```

<EIO checkpoints: public>+≡
public :: eio_checkpoints_test

<EIO checkpoints: tests>≡
subroutine eio_checkpoints_test (u, results)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<EIO checkpoints: execute tests>
end subroutine eio_checkpoints_test

```

#### Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```

<EIO checkpoints: execute tests>≡
call test (eio_checkpoints_1, "eio_checkpoints_1", &
  "read and write event contents", &
  u, results)

```

```

(EIO checkpoints: tests) +=
subroutine eio_checkpoints_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: i, n_events

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_checkpoints_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate a number of events &
    &with screen output"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate events"
  write (u, "(A)")

  sample = "eio_checkpoints_1"

  allocate (eio_checkpoints_t :: eio)

  n_events = 10
  call data%init (1, 0)
  data%n_evt = n_events

  select type (eio)
  type is (eio_checkpoints_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (checkpoint = 4)
  end select

  call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)

  do i = 1, n_events
    call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
    call eio%output (event, i_prc = 0)
  end do

```

```

end do

write (u, "(A)")  "* Checkpointing status"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_checkpoints_1"

end subroutine eio_checkpoints_1

```

## 19.5 HEP Common Blocks

Long ago, to transfer data between programs one had to set up a common block and link both programs as libraries to the main executable. The HEP community standardizes several of those common blocks.

The modern way of data exchange uses data files with standard formats. However, the LHEF standard data format derives from a common block (actually, two).

WHIZARD used to support those common blocks, and LHEF was implemented via writing/reading blocks. We still keep this convention, but intend to eliminate common blocks (or any other static storage) from the workflow in the future. This will gain flexibility towards concurrent running of program images.

We encapsulate everything here in a module. The module holds the variables which are part of the common block.

Note: This code is taken essentially unchanged from WHIZARD 2.1 and does not (yet) provide unit tests.

```

<hep_common.f90>≡
  <File header>

```

```

module hep_common

  use kinds !NODEP!
  <Use file utils>
  <Use strings>

```

```

use diagnostics !NODEP!

use lorentz !NODEP!
use flavors
use colors
use polarizations
use models
use particles
use subevents
use processes

⟨Standard module head⟩

⟨HEP common: public⟩

⟨HEP common: interfaces⟩

⟨HEP common: parameters⟩

⟨HEP common: variables⟩

⟨HEP common: common blocks⟩

contains

⟨HEP common: procedures⟩

end module hep_common

```

### 19.5.1 Event characteristics

The maximal number of particles in an event record.

```

⟨HEP common: parameters⟩≡
    integer, parameter :: MAXNUP = 500

```

The number of particles in this event.

```

⟨HEP common: variables⟩≡
    integer :: NUP

```

The process ID for this event.

```

⟨HEP common: variables⟩+≡
    integer :: IDPRUP

```

The weight of this event ( $\pm 1$  for unweighted events).

```

⟨HEP common: variables⟩+≡
    double precision :: XWGTUP

```

The factorization scale that is used for PDF calculation ( $-1$  if undefined).

```

⟨HEP common: variables⟩+≡
    double precision :: SCALUP

```

The QED and QCD couplings  $\alpha$  used for this event ( $-1$  if undefined).

```

⟨HEP common: variables⟩+≡
    double precision :: AQEDUP
    double precision :: AQCDUP

```

## 19.5.2 Particle characteristics

The PDG code:

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
integer, dimension(MAXNUP) :: IDUP
```

The status code. Incoming:  $-1$ , outgoing:  $+1$ . Intermediate t-channel propagator:  $-2$  (currently not used by WHIZARD). Intermediate resonance whose mass should be preserved:  $2$ . Intermediate resonance for documentation:  $3$  (currently not used). Beam particles:  $-9$ .

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
integer, dimension(MAXNUP) :: ISTUP
```

Index of first and last mother.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
integer, dimension(2,MAXNUP) :: MOTHUP
```

Color line index of the color and anticolor entry for the particle. The standard recommends using large numbers; we start from MAXNUP+1.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
integer, dimension(2,MAXNUP) :: ICOLUP
```

Momentum, energy, and invariant mass:  $(p_x, p_y, p_z, E, M)$ . For space-like particles,  $M$  is the negative square root of the absolute value of the invariant mass.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
double precision, dimension(5,MAXNUP) :: PUP
```

Invariant lifetime (distance) from production to decay in mm.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
double precision, dimension(MAXNUP) :: VTIMUP
```

Cosine of the angle between the spin-vector and a particle and the 3-momentum of its mother, given in the lab frame. If undefined/unpolarized:  $9$ .

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
double precision, dimension(MAXNUP) :: SPINUP
```

## 19.5.3 The HEPRUP common block

This common block is filled once per run.

### Run characteristics

The maximal number of different processes.

```
<HEP common: parameters>+≡  
integer, parameter :: MAXPUP = 100
```

The beam PDG codes.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
integer, dimension(2) :: IDBMUP
```

The beam energies in GeV.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡  
double precision, dimension(2) :: EBMUP
```

The PDF group and set for the two beams. (Undefined: use  $-1$ ; LHAPDF: use group = 0).

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    integer, dimension(2) :: PDFGUP
    integer, dimension(2) :: PDFSUP
```

The (re)weighting model. 1: events are weighted, the shower generator (SHG) selects processes according to the maximum weight (in pb) and unweights events. 2: events are weighted, the SHG selects processes according to their cross section (in pb) and unweights events. 3: events are unweighted and simply run through the SHG. 4: events are weighted, and the SHG keeps the weight. Negative numbers: negative weights are allowed (and are reweighted to  $\pm 1$  by the SHG, if allowed).

WHIZARD only supports modes 3 and 4, as the SHG is not given control over process selection. This is consistent with writing events to file, for offline showering.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    integer :: IDWTUP
```

The number of different processes.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    integer :: NPRUP
```

## Process characteristics

Cross section and error in pb. (Cross section is needed only for IDWTUP = 2, so here both values are given for informational purposes only.)

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    double precision, dimension(MAXPUP) :: XSECUP
    double precision, dimension(MAXPUP) :: XERRUP
```

Maximum weight, i.e., the maximum value that XWGTUP can take. Also unused for the supported weighting models. It is  $\pm 1$  for unweighted events.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    double precision, dimension(MAXPUP) :: XMAXUP
```

Internal ID of the selected process, matches IDPRUP below.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
    integer, dimension(MAXPUP) :: LPRUP
```

## The common block

```
<HEP common: common blocks>≡
    common /HEPRUP/ &
        IDBMUP, EBMUP, PDFGUP, PDFSUP, IDWTUP, NPRUP, &
        XSECUP, XERRUP, XMAXUP, LPRUP
    save /HEPRUP/
```

Fill the run characteristics of the common block. The initialization sets the beam properties, number of processes, and weighting model.

```
<HEP common: public>≡
    public :: heprup_init
```

```

<HEP common: procedures>≡
  subroutine heprup_init &
    (beam_pdg, beam_energy, n_processes, unweighted, negative_weights)
    integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: beam_pdg
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(in) :: beam_energy
    integer, intent(in) :: n_processes
    logical, intent(in) :: unweighted
    logical, intent(in) :: negative_weights
    IDBMUP = beam_pdg
    EBMUP = beam_energy
    PDFGUP = -1
    PDFSUP = -1
    if (unweighted) then
      IDWTUP = 3
    else
      IDWTUP = 4
    end if
    if (negative_weights) IDWTUP = - IDWTUP
    NPRUP = n_processes
  end subroutine heprup_init

```

Extract parameters from the common block. We leave it to the caller to specify which parameters it actually needs.

PDFGUP and PDFSUP are not extracted. IDWTUP=1,2 are not supported by WHIZARD, but correspond to weighted events.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: heprup_get_run_parameters

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine heprup_get_run_parameters &
    (beam_pdg, beam_energy, n_processes, unweighted, negative_weights)
    integer, dimension(2), intent(out), optional :: beam_pdg
    real(default), dimension(2), intent(out), optional :: beam_energy
    integer, intent(out), optional :: n_processes
    logical, intent(out), optional :: unweighted
    logical, intent(out), optional :: negative_weights
    if (present (beam_pdg)) beam_pdg = IDBMUP
    if (present (beam_energy)) beam_energy = EBMUP
    if (present (n_processes)) n_processes = NPRUP
    if (present (unweighted)) then
      select case (abs (IDWTUP))
        case (3)
          unweighted = .true.
        case (4)
          unweighted = .false.
        case (1,2) ! not supported by WHIZARD
          unweighted = .false.
        case default
          call msg_fatal ("HEPRUP: unsupported IDWTUP value")
      end select
    end if
    if (present (negative_weights)) then
      negative_weights = IDWTUP < 0
    end if

```

```
end subroutine heprup_get_run_parameters
```

Specify PDF set info. Since we support only LHAPDF, the group entry is zero.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: heprup_set_lhapdf_id

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine heprup_set_lhapdf_id (i_beam, pdf_id)
    integer, intent(in) :: i_beam, pdf_id
    PDFGUP(i_beam) = 0
    PDFSUP(i_beam) = pdf_id
  end subroutine heprup_set_lhapdf_id
```

Fill the characteristics for a particular process. Only the process ID is mandatory. Note that WHIZARD computes cross sections in fb, so we have to rescale to pb. The maximum weight is meaningless for unweighted events.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: heprup_set_process_parameters

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine heprup_set_process_parameters &
    (i, process_id, cross_section, error, max_weight)
    integer, intent(in) :: i, process_id
    real(default), intent(in), optional :: cross_section, error, max_weight
    real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
    LPRUP(i) = process_id
    if (present (cross_section)) then
      XSECUP(i) = cross_section * pb_per_fb
    else
      XSECUP(i) = 0
    end if
    if (present (error)) then
      XERRUP(i) = error * pb_per_fb
    else
      XERRUP(i) = 0
    end if
    select case (IDWTUP)
    case (3); XMAXUP(i) = 1
    case (4)
      if (present (max_weight)) then
        XMAXUP(i) = max_weight * pb_per_fb
      else
        XMAXUP(i) = 0
      end if
    end select
  end subroutine heprup_set_process_parameters
```

Extract the process parameters, as far as needed.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: heprup_get_process_parameters
```



```

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine heprup_get_process_parameters &
    (i, process_id, cross_section, error, max_weight)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, intent(out), optional :: process_id
    real(default), intent(out), optional :: cross_section, error, max_weight
    real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
    if (present (process_id)) process_id = LPRUP(i)
    if (present (cross_section)) then
        cross_section = XSECUP(i) / pb_per_fb
    end if
    if (present (error)) then
        error = XERRUP(i) / pb_per_fb
    end if
    if (present (max_weight)) then
        select case (IDWTUP)
        case (3)
            max_weight = 1
        case (4)
            max_weight = XMAXUP(i) / pb_per_fb
        case (1,2) ! not supported by WHIZARD
            max_weight = 0
        case default
            call msg_fatal ("HEPRUP: unsupported IDWTUP value")
        end select
    end if
end subroutine heprup_get_process_parameters

```

#### 19.5.4 Run parameter output (verbose)

This is a verbose output of the HEPRUP block.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
public :: heprup_write_verbose

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine heprup_write_verbose (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)") "HEPRUP Common Block"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "IDBMUP", IDBMUP, &
        "PDG code of beams"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',G12.5,1x,G12.5,8x,A)") "EBMUP ", EBMUP, &
        "Energy of beams in GeV"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "PDFGUP", PDFGUP, &
        "PDF author group [-1 = undefined]"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "PDFSUP", PDFSUP, &
        "PDF set ID [-1 = undefined]"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,9x,3x,8x,A)") "IDWTUP", IDWTUP, &
        "LHA code for event weight mode"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,9x,3x,8x,A)") "NPRUP ", NPRUP, &
        "Number of user subprocesses"
    do i = 1, NPRUP

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Subprocess #", i
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "XSECUP", XSECUP(i), &
"Cross section in pb"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "XERRUP", XERRUP(i), &
"Cross section error in pb"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "XMAXUP", XMAXUP(i), &
"Maximum event weight (cf. IDWTUP)"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,12x,8x,A)") "LPRUP ", LPRUP(i), &
"Subprocess ID"
end do
end subroutine heprup_write_verbose

```

### 19.5.5 Run parameter output (other formats)

This routine writes the initialization block according to the LHEF standard. It uses the current contents of the HEPRUP block.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
public :: heprup_write_lhef

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine heprup_write_lhef (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(2(1x,I0),2(1x,ES17.10),6(1x,I0))") &
IDBMUP, EBMUP, PDFGUP, PDFSUP, IDWTUP, NPRUP
do i = 1, NPRUP
write (u, "(3(1x,ES17.10),1x,I0)") &
XSECUP(i), XERRUP(i), XMAXUP(i), LPRUP(i)
end do
end subroutine heprup_write_lhef

```

This routine is a complete dummy at the moment. It uses the current contents of the HEPRUP block. At the end, it should depend on certain input flags for the different ASCII event formats.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
public :: heprup_write_ascii

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine heprup_write_ascii (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(2(1x,I0),2(1x,ES17.10),6(1x,I0))") &
IDBMUP, EBMUP, PDFGUP, PDFSUP, IDWTUP, NPRUP
do i = 1, NPRUP
write (u, "(3(1x,ES17.10),1x,I0)") &
XSECUP(i), XERRUP(i), XMAXUP(i), LPRUP(i)
end do
end subroutine heprup_write_ascii

```

## Run parameter input (LHEF)

In a LHEF file, the parameters are written in correct order on separate lines, but we should not count on the precise format. List-directed input should just work.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: heprup_read_lhef

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine heprup_read_lhef (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        integer :: i
        read (u, *) &
            IDBMUP, EBMUP, PDFGUP, PDFSUP, IDWTUP, NPRUP
        do i = 1, NPRUP
            read (u, *) &
                XSECUP(i), XERRUP(i), XMAXUP(i), LPRUP(i)
        end do
    end subroutine heprup_read_lhef
```

## 19.5.6 The HEPEUP common block

```
<HEP common: common blocks>+≡
    common /HEPEUP/ &
        NUP, IDPRUP, XWGTUP, SCALUP, AQEDUP, AQCDUP, &
        IDUP, ISTUP, MOTHUP, ICOLUP, PUP, VTIMUP, SPINUP
    save /HEPEUP/
```

### Initialization

Fill the event characteristics of the common block. The initialization sets only the number of particles and initializes the rest with default values. The other routine sets the optional parameters.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepeup_init
    public :: hepeup_set_event_parameters

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepeup_init (n_tot)
        integer, intent(in) :: n_tot
        NUP = n_tot
        IDPRUP = 0
        XWGTUP = 1
        SCALUP = -1
        AQEDUP = -1
        AQCDUP = -1
    end subroutine hepeup_init

    subroutine hepeup_set_event_parameters &
        (proc_id, weight, scale, alpha_qed, alpha_qcd)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: proc_id
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight, scale, alpha_qed, alpha_qcd
```

```

    if (present (proc_id)) IDPRUP = proc_id
    if (present (weight)) XWGTUP = weight
    if (present (scale)) SCALUP = scale
    if (present (alpha_qed)) AQEDUP = alpha_qed
    if (present (alpha_qcd)) AQCDUP = alpha_qcd
end subroutine hepeup_set_event_parameters

```

Extract event information. The caller determines the parameters.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepeup_get_event_parameters

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepeup_get_event_parameters &
        (proc_id, weight, scale, alpha_qed, alpha_qcd)
        integer, intent(out), optional :: proc_id
        real(default), intent(out), optional :: weight, scale, alpha_qed, alpha_qcd
        if (present (proc_id)) proc_id = IDPRUP
        if (present (weight)) weight = XWGTUP
        if (present (scale)) scale = SCALUP
        if (present (alpha_qed)) alpha_qed = AQEDUP
        if (present (alpha_qcd)) alpha_qcd = AQCDUP
    end subroutine hepeup_get_event_parameters

```

## Particle data

Below we need the particle status codes which are actually defined in the `subevents` module.

Set the entry for a specific particle. All parameters are set with the exception of lifetime and spin, where default values are stored.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepeup_set_particle

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepeup_set_particle (i, pdg, status, parent, col, p, m2)
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg, status
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: parent
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: col
        real(default), intent(in) :: m2
        if (i > MAXNUP) then
            call msg_error (arr=[ &
                var_str ("Too many particles in HEPEUP common block. " // &
                    "If this happened "), &
                var_str ("during event output, your events will be " // &
                    "invalid; please consider "), &
                var_str ("switching to a modern event format like HEPMC. " // &
                    "If you are not "), &
                var_str ("using an old, HEPEUP based format and " // &
                    "nevertheless get this error,"), &
                var_str ("please notify the WHIZARD developers,") ])
            return
        end if
    end subroutine hepeup_set_particle

```

```

IDUP(i) = pdg
select case (status)
case (PRT_BEAM);          ISTUP(i) = -9
case (PRT_INCOMING);      ISTUP(i) = -1
case (PRT_BEAM_REMNANT);  ISTUP(i) = 3
case (PRT_OUTGOING);      ISTUP(i) = 1
case (PRT_RESONANT);      ISTUP(i) = 2
case (PRT_VIRTUAL);       ISTUP(i) = 3
case default;             ISTUP(i) = 0
end select
select case (size (parent))
case (0);      MOTHUP(:,i) = 0
case (1);      MOTHUP(1,i) = parent(1); MOTHUP(2,i) = 0
case default;  MOTHUP(:,i) = [ parent(1), parent(size (parent)) ]
end select
if (col(1) > 0) then
    ICOLUP(1,i) = 500 + col(1)
else
    ICOLUP(1,i) = 0
end if
if (col(2) > 0) then
    ICOLUP(2,i) = 500 + col(2)
else
    ICOLUP(2,i) = 0
end if
PUP(1:3,i) = vector3_get_components (space_part (p))
PUP(4,i) = energy (p)
PUP(5,i) = sign (sqrt (abs (m2)), m2)
VTIMUP(i) = 0
SPINUP(i) = 9
end subroutine hepeup_set_particle

```

Set the lifetime, actually  $c\tau$  measured in mm, where  $\tau$  is the invariant lifetime.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepeup_set_particle_lifetime

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepeup_set_particle_lifetime (i, lifetime)
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        real(default), intent(in) :: lifetime
        VTIMUP(i) = lifetime
    end subroutine hepeup_set_particle_lifetime

```

Set the particle spin entry. We need the cosine of the angle of the spin axis with respect to the three-momentum of the parent particle.

If the particle has a full polarization density matrix given, we need the particle momentum and polarization as well as the mother-particle momentum. The polarization is transformed into a spin vector (which is sensible only for spin-1/2 or massless particles), which then is transformed into the lab frame (by a rotation of the 3-axis to the particle momentum axis). Finally, we compute the scalar product of this vector with the mother-particle three-momentum.

This puts severe restrictions on the applicability of this definition, and Lorentz invariance is lost. Unfortunately, the Les Houches Accord requires this

computation.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepeup_set_particle_spin

<HEP common: interfaces>≡
  interface hepeup_set_particle_spin
    module procedure hepeup_set_particle_spin_pol
  end interface

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_set_particle_spin_pol (i, p, pol, p_mother)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
    type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p_mother
    type(vector3_t) :: s3, p3
    type(vector4_t) :: s4
    s3 = vector3_moving (polarization_get_axis (pol))
    p3 = space_part (p)
    s4 = rotation_to_2nd (3, p3) * vector4_moving (0._default, s3)
    SPINUP(i) = enclosed_angle_ct (s4, p_mother)
  end subroutine hepeup_set_particle_spin_pol

```

Extract particle data. The caller decides which ones to retrieve.

Status codes: beam remnants share the status code with virtual particles. However, for the purpose of WHIZARD we should identify them. We use the PDG code for this.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepeup_get_particle

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_get_particle (i, pdg, status, parent, col, p, m2)
    integer, intent(in) :: i
    integer, intent(out), optional :: pdg, status
    integer, dimension(:), intent(out), optional :: parent
    type(vector4_t), intent(out), optional :: p
    integer, dimension(2), intent(out), optional :: col
    real(default), dimension(5,MAXNUP) :: pup_def
    real(default), intent(out), optional :: m2
    if (present (pdg)) pdg = IDUP(i)
    if (present (status)) then
      select case (ISTUP(i))
        case (-9); status = PRT_BEAM
        case (-1); status = PRT_INCOMING
        case (1); status = PRT_OUTGOING
        case (2); status = PRT_RESONANT
        case (3);
          select case (abs (IDUP(i)))
            case (HADRON_REMNANT, HADRON_REMNANT_SINGLET, &
                  HADRON_REMNANT_TRIPLET, HADRON_REMNANT_OCTET)
              status = PRT_BEAM_REMNANT
            case default
              status = PRT_VIRTUAL
          end select
        end select
      case default
    end if
  end subroutine hepeup_get_particle

```

```

        status = PRT_UNDEFINED
    end select
end if
if (present (parent)) then
    select case (size (parent))
    case (0)
    case (1);    parent(1) = MOTHUP(1,i)
    case (2);    parent = MOTHUP(:,i)
    end select
end if
if (present (col)) then
    col = ICOLUP(:,i)
end if
if (present (p)) then
    pup_def = PUP
    p = vector4_moving (pup_def(4,i), vector3_moving (pup_def(1:3,i)))
end if
if (present (m2)) then
    m2 = sign (PUP(5,i) ** 2, PUP(5,i))
end if
end subroutine hepeup_get_particle

```

### 19.5.7 The HEPEVT common block

For the LEP Monte Carlos, a standard common block has been proposed in AKV89. We strongly recommend its use. (The description is an abbreviated transcription of AKV89, Vol. 3, pp. 327-330).

NMXHEP is the maximum number of entries:

```

<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, parameter :: NMXHEP = 4000

```

NEVHEP is normally the event number, but may take special values as follows:

0 the program does not keep track of event numbers. -1 a special initialization record. -2 a special final record.

```

<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer :: NEVHEP

```

NHEP holds the number of entries for this event.

```

<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer :: NHEP

```

The entry ISTHEP(N) gives the status code for the Nth entry, with the following semantics: 0 a null entry. 1 an existing entry, which has not decayed or fragmented. 2 a decayed or fragmented entry, which is retained for event history information. 3 documentation line. 4- 10 reserved for future standards. 11-200 at the disposal of each model builder. 201- at the disposal of users.

```

<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, dimension(NMXHEP) :: ISTHEP

```

The Particle Data Group has proposed standard particle codes, which are to be stored in IDHEP(N).

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, dimension(NMXHEP) :: IDHEP
```

JMOHEP(1,N) points to the mother of the Nth entry, if any. It is set to zero for initial entries. JMOHEP(2,N) points to the second mother, if any.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, dimension(2, NMXHEP) :: JMOHEP
```

JDAHEP(1,N) and JDAHEP(2,N) point to the first and last daughter of the Nth entry, if any. These are zero for entries which have not yet decayed. The other daughters are stored in between these two.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, dimension(2, NMXHEP) :: JDAHEP
```

In PHEP we store the momentum of the particle, more specifically this means that PHEP(1,N), PHEP(2,N), and PHEP(3,N) contain the momentum in the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  direction (as defined by the machine people), measured in GeV/c. PHEP(4,N) contains the energy in GeV and PHEP(5,N) the mass in GeV/ $c^2$ . The latter may be negative for spacelike partons.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
double precision, dimension(5, NMXHEP) :: PHEP
```

Finally VHEP is the place to store the position of the production vertex. VHEP(1,N), VHEP(2,N), and VHEP(3,N) contain the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  coordinate (as defined by the machine people), measured in mm. VHEP(4,N) contains the production time in mm/c.

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
double precision, dimension(4, NMXHEP) :: VHEP
```

As an amendment to the proposed standard common block HEPEVT, we also have a polarisation common block HEPSPN, as described in AKV89. SHEP(1,N), SHEP(2,N), and SHEP(3,N) give the  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  component of the spinvector  $s$  of a fermion in the fermions restframe.

Furthermore, we add the polarization of the corresponding outgoing particles:

```
<HEP common: variables>+≡
integer, dimension(NMXHEP) :: hepevt_pol
```

By convention, SHEP(4,N) is always 1. All this is taken from StdHep 4.06 manual and written using Fortran90 conventions.

```
<HEP common: common blocks>+≡
common /HEPEVT/ &
NEVHEP, NHEP, ISTHEP, IDHEP, &
JMOHEP, JDAHEP, PHEP, VHEP
save /HEPEVT/
```



Here we store HEPEVT parameters of the WHIZARD 1 realization which are not part of the HEPEVT common block.

```

<HEP common: variables>+≡
    integer :: hepevt_n_out, hepevt_n_remnants

<HEP common: variables>+≡
    double precision :: hepevt_weight, hepevt_function_value
    double precision :: hepevt_function_ratio

```

Filling HEPEVT: If the event count is not provided, set NEVHEP to zero. If the event count is -1 or -2, the record corresponds to initialization and finalization, and the event is irrelevant.

Note that the event count may be larger than  $2^{31}$  (2 GEvents). In that case, cut off the upper bits since NEVHEP is probably limited to default integer.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepevt_init
    public :: hepevt_set_event_parameters

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepevt_init (n_tot, n_out)
        integer, intent(in) :: n_tot, n_out
        NHEP                = n_tot
        NEVHEP              = 0
        hepevt_n_out        = n_out
        hepevt_n_remnants = 0
        hepevt_weight       = 1
        hepevt_function_value = 0
        hepevt_function_ratio = 1
    end subroutine hepevt_init

    subroutine hepevt_set_event_parameters &
        (weight, function_value, function_ratio, i_evt)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: i_evt
        real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight, function_value, &
            function_ratio
        if (present (i_evt)) NEVHEP = i_evt
        if (present (weight)) hepevt_weight = weight
        if (present (function_value)) hepevt_function_value = &
            function_value
        if (present (function_ratio)) hepevt_function_ratio = &
            function_ratio
    end subroutine hepevt_set_event_parameters

```

Set the entry for a specific particle. All parameters are set with the exception of lifetime and spin, where default values are stored.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
    public :: hepevt_set_particle

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepevt_set_particle (i, pdg, status, parent, child, p, m2, hel)
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg, status
        integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: parent

```

```

integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: child
type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
real(default), intent(in) :: m2
integer, intent(in) :: hel
IDHEP(i) = pdg
select case (status)
  case (PRT_BEAM);      ISTHEP(i) = 2
  case (PRT_INCOMING);  ISTHEP(i) = 2
  case (PRT_OUTGOING);  ISTHEP(i) = 1
  case (PRT_VIRTUAL);   ISTHEP(i) = 2
  case (PRT_RESONANT);  ISTHEP(i) = 2
  case default;         ISTHEP(i) = 0
end select
select case (size (parent))
case (0);      JMOHEP(:,i) = 0
case (1);      JMOHEP(1,i) = parent(1); JMOHEP(2,i) = 0
case default;  JMOHEP(:,i) = [ parent(1), parent(size (parent)) ]
end select
select case (size (child))
case (0);      JDAHEP(:,i) = 0
case (1);      JDAHEP(:,i) = child(1)
case default;  JDAHEP(:,i) = [ child(1), child(size (child)) ]
end select
PHEP(1:3,i) = vector3_get_components (space_part (p))
PHEP(4,i) = energy (p)
PHEP(5,i) = sign (sqrt (abs (m2)), m2)
VHEP(1:4,i) = 0
hepevt_pol(i) = hel
end subroutine hepevt_set_particle

```

### 19.5.8 Event output

This is a verbose output of the HEPEVT block.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepevt_write_verbose

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepevt_write_verbose (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(A)") "HEPEVT Common Block"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "NEVHEP", NEVHEP, &
      "Event number"
    write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "NHEP ", NHEP, &
      "Number of particles in event"
    do i = 1, NHEP
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Particle #", i
      write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)", advance="no") &
        "ISTHEP", ISTHEP(i), "Status code: "
      select case (ISTHEP(i))
      case ( 0); write (u, "(A)") "null entry"
      case ( 1); write (u, "(A)") "outgoing"

```

```

case ( 2); write (u, "(A)") "decayed"
case ( 3); write (u, "(A)") "documentation"
case (4:10); write (u, "(A)") "[unspecified]"
case (11:200); write (u, "(A)") "[model-specific]"
case (201:); write (u, "(A)") "[user-defined]"
case default; write (u, "(A)") "[undefined]"
end select
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "IDHEP ", IDHEP(i), &
"PDG code of particle"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "JMOHEP", JMOHEP(:,i), &
"Index of first/second mother"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "JDAHEP", JDAHEP(:,i), &
"Index of first/last daughter"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,ES12.5,8x,A)") "PHEP12", &
PHEP(1:2,i), "Transversal momentum (x/y) in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PHEP3 ", PHEP(3,i), &
"Longitudinal momentum (z) in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PHEP4 ", PHEP(4,i), &
"Energy in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PHEP5 ", PHEP(5,i), &
"Invariant mass in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,ES12.5,8x,A)") "VHEP12", VHEP(1:2,i), &
"Transversal displacement (xy) in mm"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "VHEP3 ", VHEP(3,i), &
"Longitudinal displacement (z) in mm"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "VHEP4 ", VHEP(4,i), &
"Production time in mm"
end do
end subroutine hepevt_write_verbose

```

This is a verbose output of the HEPEUP block.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
public :: hepeup_write_verbose

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine hepeup_write_verbose (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(A)") "HEPEUP Common Block"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "NUP ", NUP, &
"Number of particles in event"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "IDPRUP", IDPRUP, &
"Subprocess ID"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,20x,A)") "XWGTUP", XWGTUP, &
"Event weight"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,20x,A)") "SCALUP", SCALUP, &
"Event energy scale in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,20x,A)") "AQEDUP", AQEDUP, &
"QED coupling [-1 = undefined]"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,20x,A)") "AQCDUP", AQCDUP, &
"QCD coupling [-1 = undefined]"
do i = 1, NUP
write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "Particle #", i

```

```

write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)") "IDUP ", IDUP(i), &
"PDG code of particle"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,20x,A)", advance="no") &
"ISTUP ", ISTUP(i), "Status code: "
select case (ISTUP(i))
case (-1); write (u, "(A)") "incoming"
case ( 1); write (u, "(A)") "outgoing"
case (-2); write (u, "(A)") "spacelike"
case ( 2); write (u, "(A)") "resonance"
case ( 3); write (u, "(A)") "resonance (doc)"
case (-9); write (u, "(A)") "beam"
case default; write (u, "(A)") "[undefined]"
end select
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "MOTHUP", MOTHUP(:,i), &
"Index of first/last mother"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',I9,3x,1x,I9,3x,8x,A)") "ICOLUP", ICOLUP(:,i), &
"Color/anticolor flow index"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,ES12.5,8x,A)") "PUP1/2", PUP(1:2,i), &
"Transversal momentum (x/y) in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PUP3 ", PUP(3,i), &
"Longitudinal momentum (z) in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PUP4 ", PUP(4,i), &
"Energy in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "PUP5 ", PUP(5,i), &
"Invariant mass in GeV"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "VTIMUP", VTIMUP(i), &
"Invariant lifetime in mm"
write (u, "(3x,A6,' = ',ES12.5,1x,12x,8x,A)") "SPINUP", SPINUP(i), &
"cos(spin angle) [9 = undefined]"
end do
end subroutine hepeup_write_verbose

```

### 19.5.9 Event output in various formats

This routine writes event output according to the LHEF standard. It uses the current contents of the HEPEUP block.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
public :: hepeup_write_lhef
public :: hepeup_write_lha

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
subroutine hepeup_write_lhef (unit)
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
write (u, "(2(1x,I0),4(1x,ES17.10))") &
NUP, IDPRUP, XWGTUP, SCALUP, AQEDUP, AQCDUP
do i = 1, NUP
write (u, "(6(1x,I0),7(1x,ES17.10))") &
IDUP(i), ISTUP(i), MOTHUP(:,i), ICOLUP(:,i), &
PUP(:,i), VTIMUP(i), SPINUP(i)
end do
end subroutine hepeup_write_lhef

```

```

subroutine hepeup_write_lha (unit)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u, i
  integer, dimension(MAXNUP) :: spin_up
  spin_up = SPINUP
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  write (u, "(2(1x,I5),1x,ES17.10,3(1x,ES13.6))") &
    NUP, IDPRUP, XWGTUP, SCALUP, AQEDUP, AQCDUP
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") IDUP(:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") MOTHUP(1,:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") MOTHUP(2,:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") ICOLUP(1,:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") ICOLUP(2,:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") ISTUP(:NUP)
  write (u, "(500(1x,I5))") spin_up(:NUP)
  do i = 1, NUP
    write (u, "(1x,I5,4(1x,ES17.10))") i, PUP([ 4,1,2,3 ], i)
  end do
end subroutine hepeup_write_lha

```

This routine writes event output according to the HEPEVT standard. It uses the current contents of the HEPEVT block and some additional parameters according to the standard in WHIZARD 1. For the long ASCII format, the value of the sample function (i.e. the product of squared matrix element, structure functions and phase space factor is printed out). The option of reweighting matrix elements with respect to some reference cross section is not implemented in WHIZARD 2 for this event format, therefore the second entry in the long ASCII format (the function ratio) is always one. The ATHENA format is an implementation of the HEPEVT format that is readable by the ATLAS ATHENA software framework. It is very similar to the WHIZARD 1 HEPEVT format, except that it contains an event counter, a particle counter inside the event, and has the HEPEVT ISTHEP status before the PDG code. The MOKKA format is a special ASCII format that contains the information to be parsed to the MOKKA LC fast simulation software.

```

<HEP common: public>+=
  public :: hepevt_write_hepevt
  public :: hepevt_write_ascii
  public :: hepevt_write_athena
  public :: hepevt_write_mokka

<HEP common: procedures>+=
  subroutine hepevt_write_hepevt (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(3(1x,I0),(1x,ES17.10))") &
      NHEP, hepevt_n_out, hepevt_n_remnants, hepevt_weight
    do i = 1, NHEP
      write (u, "(7(1x,I0))") &
        ISTHEP(i), IDHEP(i), JMOHEP(:,i), JDAHEP(:,i), hepevt_pol(i)
      write (u, "(5(1x,ES17.10))") PHEP(:,i)
    end do
  end subroutine hepevt_write_hepevt

```

```

        write (u, "(5(1x,ES17.10))") VHEP(:,i), 0.d0
    end do
end subroutine hepevt_write_hepevt

subroutine hepevt_write_ascii (unit, long)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in) :: long
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(3(1x,I0),(1x,ES17.10))") &
        NHEP, hepevt_n_out, hepevt_n_remnants, hepevt_weight
    do i = 1, NHEP
        if (ISTHEP(i) /= 1) cycle
        write (u, "(2(1x,I0))") IDHEP(i), hepevt_pol(i)
        write (u, "(5(1x,ES17.10))") PHEP(:,i)
    end do
    if (long) then
        write (u, "(2(1x,ES17.10))") &
            hepevt_function_value, hepevt_function_ratio
    end if
end subroutine hepevt_write_ascii

subroutine hepevt_write_athena (unit, i_evt)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, i_evt
    integer :: u, i, num_event
    num_event = 0
    if (present (i_evt)) num_event = i_evt
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(2(1x,I0))") num_event, NHEP
    do i = 1, NHEP
        write (u, "(7(1x,I0))") &
            i, ISTHEP(i), IDHEP(i), JMOHEP(:,i), JDAHEP(:,i)
        write (u, "(5(1x,ES17.10))") PHEP(:,i)
        write (u, "(5(1x,ES17.10))") VHEP(1:4,i)
    end do
end subroutine hepevt_write_athena

subroutine hepevt_write_mokka (unit)
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    write (u, "(3(1x,I0),(1x,ES17.10))") &
        NHEP, hepevt_n_out, hepevt_n_remnants, hepevt_weight
    do i = 1, NHEP
        write (u, "(4(1x,I0),4(1x,ES17.10))") &
            ISTHEP(i), IDHEP(i), JDAHEP(1,i), JDAHEP(2,i), &
            PHEP(1:3,i), PHEP(5,i)
    end do
end subroutine hepevt_write_mokka

```

### 19.5.10 Event input in various formats

This routine writes event output according to the LHEF standard. It uses the current contents of the HEPEUP block.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepeup_read_lhef

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_read_lhef (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer :: i
    read (u, *) &
      NUP, IDPRUP, XWGTUP, SCALUP, AQEDUP, AQCDUP
    do i = 1, NUP
      read (u, *) &
        IDUP(i), ISTUP(i), MOTHUP(:,i), ICOLUP(:,i), &
          PUP(:,i), VTIMUP(i), SPINUP(i)
    end do
  end subroutine hepeup_read_lhef
```

### 19.5.11 Data Transfer: particle sets

The WHIZARD format for handling particle data in events is `particle_set_t`. We have to interface this to the common blocks.

We first create a new particle set that contains only the particles that are supported by the LHEF format. These are: beam, incoming, resonant, outgoing. We drop particles with unknown, virtual or beam-remnant status.

From this set we fill the common block. Event information such as process ID and weight is not transferred here; this has to be done by the caller. The spin information is set only if the particle has a unique mother, and if its polarization is fully defined.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepeup_from_particle_set

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_from_particle_set (particle_set, keep_beams)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in), target :: particle_set
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    type(particle_t), pointer :: prt
    type(particle_set_t), target :: pset_hepevt
    integer :: i, n_parents
    integer, dimension(1) :: i_mother
    call particle_set_to_hepevt_form (particle_set, pset_hepevt, keep_beams)
    call hepeup_init (pset_hepevt%n_tot)
    do i = 1, pset_hepevt%n_tot
      prt => pset_hepevt%prt(i)
      call hepeup_set_particle (i, &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        particle_get_status (prt), &
        particle_get_parents (prt), &
        particle_get_color (prt), &
        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_p2 (prt))
    end do
  end subroutine hepeup_from_particle_set
```

```

n_parents = particle_get_n_parents (prt)
if (n_parents == 1) then
  i_mother = particle_get_parents (prt)
  select case (particle_get_polarization_status (prt))
  case (PRT_GENERIC_POLARIZATION)
    call hepeup_set_particle_spin (i, &
      particle_get_momentum (prt), &
      particle_get_polarization (prt), &
      particle_get_momentum (pset_hepevt%prt(i_mother(1))))
  end select
end if
end do
call particle_set_final (pset_hepevt)
end subroutine hepeup_from_particle_set

```

Input. The particle set should be allocated properly, but we replace the particle contents.

If there are no beam particles in the event, we try to reconstruct beam particles and beam remnants. We assume for simplicity that the beam particles, if any, are the first two particles. If they are absent, the first two particles should be the incoming partons.

```

<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepeup_to_particle_set

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_to_particle_set &
    (particle_set, recover_beams, model, alt_model)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(inout), target :: particle_set
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model, alt_model
    type(particle_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt
    integer, dimension(2) :: parent
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: child
    integer :: i, j, k, pdg, status
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(color_t) :: col
    integer, dimension(2) :: c
    type(vector4_t) :: p
    real(default) :: p2
    logical :: reconstruct
    integer :: off
    if (present (recover_beams)) then
      reconstruct = recover_beams .and. .not. all (ISTUP(1:2) == PRT_BEAM)
    else
      reconstruct = .false.
    end if
    if (reconstruct) then
      off = 4
    else
      off = 0
    end if
    allocate (prt (NUP + off), child (NUP + off))
    do i = 1, NUP
      k = i + off

```



```

call hepeup_get_particle (i, pdg, status, col = c, p = p, m2 = p2)
call flavor_init (flv, pdg, model, alt_model)
call particle_set_flavor (prt(k), flv)
call particle_reset_status (prt(k), status)
call color_init (col, c)
call particle_set_color (prt(k), col)
call particle_set_momentum (prt(k), p, p2)
where (MOTHUP(:,i) /= 0)
    parent = MOTHUP(:,i) + off
elsewhere
    parent = 0
end where
call particle_set_parents (prt(k), parent)
child = [(j, j = 1 + off, NUP + off)]
where (MOTHUP(1,:NUP) /= i .and. MOTHUP(2,:NUP) /= i) child = 0
call particle_set_children (prt(k), child)
end do
if (reconstruct) then
do k = 1, 2
    call particle_reset_status (prt(k), PRT_BEAM)
    call particle_set_children (prt(k), [k+2,k+4])
end do
do k = 3, 4
    call particle_reset_status (prt(k), PRT_BEAM_REMNANT)
    call particle_set_parents (prt(k), [k-2])
end do
do k = 5, 6
    call particle_set_parents (prt(k), [k-4])
end do
else
    call handle_beams (prt)
end if
call particle_set_replace (particle_set, prt)
end subroutine hepeup_to_particle_set

```

Beams and beam remnants require a special handling. WHIZARD's interactions are set up such that in the list of children of beam particles, the remnant comes before the interacting parton. To enforce this, we may have to reorder things.

The beam particles will always be the first two particles.

*(HEP common: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine handle_beams (prt)
type(particle_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: prt
integer :: i
integer, dimension(2) :: child
do i = 1, 2
    select case (particle_get_status (prt(i)))
    case (PRT_BEAM)
        child = particle_get_children (prt(i))
        if (particle_get_status (prt(child(2))) == PRT_BEAM_REMNANT) then
            call particle_set_children (prt(i), child([2,1]))
        end if
    end select
end do
end do

```

```
end subroutine handle_beams
```

The HEPEVT common block is quite similar, but does contain less information, e.g. no color flows (it was LEP time). The spin information is set only if the particle has a unique mother, and if its polarization is fully defined.

```
<HEP common: public>+≡
  public :: hepevt_from_particle_set

<HEP common: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepevt_from_particle_set (particle_set, keep_beams)
    type(particle_set_t), intent(in), target :: particle_set
    type(particle_t), pointer :: prt
    type(particle_set_t), target :: pset_hepevt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    integer :: i
    call particle_set_to_hepevt_form (particle_set, pset_hepevt, keep_beams)
    call hepevt_init (pset_hepevt%n_tot, pset_hepevt%n_out)
    do i = 1, pset_hepevt%n_tot
      prt => pset_hepevt%prt(i)
      call hepevt_set_particle (i, &
        particle_get_pdg (prt), &
        particle_get_status (prt), &
        particle_get_parents (prt), &
        particle_get_children (prt), &
        particle_get_momentum (prt), &
        particle_get_p2 (prt), &
        particle_get_helicity (prt))
    end do
    call particle_set_final (pset_hepevt)
  end subroutine hepevt_from_particle_set
```

## 19.6 HEP Common and Events

This is a separate module that manages data exchange between the common blocks and `event_t` objects. We separate this from the previous module in order to avoid a circular module dependency.

```
<hep_events.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module hep_events

    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!

    use models
    use particles
    use processes
    use hep_common
    use events
```

*<Standard module head>*

*<HEP events: public>*

contains

*<HEP events: procedures>*

end module hep\_events

### 19.6.1 Data Transfer: events

Fill the HEPEUP block, given a WHIZARD event object.

*<HEP events: public>*≡

public :: hepeup\_from\_event

*<HEP events: procedures>*≡

```
subroutine hepeup_from_event (event, keep_beams, process_index)
  type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
  logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
  integer, intent(in), optional :: process_index
  type(particle_set_t), pointer :: particle_set
  real(default) :: scale, alpha_qcd
  if (event%has_particle_set ()) then
    particle_set => event%get_particle_set_ptr ()
    call hepeup_from_particle_set (particle_set, keep_beams)
    if (present (process_index)) &
      call hepeup_set_event_parameters (proc_id = process_index)
    scale = event%get_fac_scale ()
    if (scale /= 0) &
      call hepeup_set_event_parameters (scale = scale)
    alpha_qcd = event%get_alpha_s ()
    if (alpha_qcd /= 0) &
      call hepeup_set_event_parameters (alpha_qcd = alpha_qcd)
    if (event%weight_prc_is_known) then
      call hepeup_set_event_parameters (weight = event%weight_prc)
    else
      call msg_bug ("HEPEUP: process weight is unknown")
    end if
  else
    call msg_bug ("HEPEUP: event incomplete")
  end if
end subroutine hepeup_from_event
```

Reverse.

Note: The current implementation sets the particle set of the hard process and is therefore not useful if the event on file is dressed. This should be reconsidered.

Note: setting of scale or alpha is not yet supported by the `event_t` object. Ticket #628.

*<HEP events: public>*+≡

public :: hepeup\_to\_event

```

<HEP events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepeup_to_event &
    (event, fallback_model, process_index, recover_beams)
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: fallback_model
    integer, intent(out), optional :: process_index
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    real(default) :: weight, scale, alpha_qcd
    type(particle_set_t) :: particle_set
    process => event%get_process_ptr ()
    model => process%get_model_ptr ()
    call hepeup_to_particle_set &
      (particle_set, recover_beams, model, fallback_model)
    call event%set_particle_set_hard_proc (particle_set)
    call particle_set_final (particle_set)
    if (present (process_index)) then
      call hepeup_get_event_parameters (proc_id = process_index)
    end if
    call hepeup_get_event_parameters (weight = weight, &
      scale = scale, alpha_qcd = alpha_qcd)
    call event%set (weight_ref = weight)
    !!! Not implemented yet:
    !   if (scale > 0) call event%set_scales (scale)
    !   if (alpha_qcd > 0) call event%set_alpha_qcd (alpha_qcd)
  end subroutine hepeup_to_event

```

Fill the HEPEVT (event) common block:

```

<HEP events: public>+≡
  public :: hepevt_from_event

<HEP events: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepevt_from_event (event, i_evt, keep_beams)
    type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
    integer, intent(in), optional :: i_evt
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    type(particle_set_t), pointer :: particle_set
    if (event%has_particle_set ()) then
      particle_set => event%get_particle_set_ptr ()
      call hepevt_from_particle_set (particle_set, keep_beams)
      if (event%weight_prc_is_known .and. event%sqme_prc_is_known) then
        call hepevt_set_event_parameters ( &
          weight = event%weight_prc, &
          function_value = event%sqme_prc)
      else
        call msg_bug ("HEPEVT: event weight and/or sqme unknown")
      end if
      if (present (i_evt)) &
        call hepevt_set_event_parameters (i_evt = i_evt)
    else
      call msg_bug ("HEPEVT: event incomplete")
    end if
  end subroutine hepevt_from_event

```

## 19.7 LHEF Input/Output

The LHEF event record is standardized. It is an ASCII format. We try our best at using it for both input and output.

`<eio_lhef.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```
module eio_lhef

  use kinds !NODEP!
  <Use file utils>
  <Use strings>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use os_interface
  use unit_tests

  use xml
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use models
  use particles
  use beams
  use processes
  use events
  use eio_data
  use eio_base
  use hep_common
  use hep_events

  <Standard module head>

  <EIO LHEF: public>

  <EIO LHEF: types>

  <EIO LHEF: interfaces>

  contains

  <EIO LHEF: procedures>

  <EIO LHEF: tests>

end module eio_lhef
```

### 19.7.1 Type

With sufficient confidence that it will always be three characters, we can store the version string with a default value.

*<EIO LHEF: public>*≡  
public :: eio\_lhef\_t

```

<EIO LHEF: types>≡
type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_lhef_t
    logical :: writing = .false.
    logical :: reading = .false.
    integer :: unit = 0
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    type(cstream_t) :: cstream
    character(3) :: version = "1.0"
    logical :: keep_beams = .false.
    logical :: recover_beams = .true.
    logical :: unweighted = .true.
    logical :: write_sqme_ref = .false.
    logical :: write_sqme_prc = .false.
    logical :: write_sqme_alt = .false.
    integer :: n_alt = 0
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: proc_num_id
    integer :: i_weight_sqme = 0
    type(xml_tag_t) :: tag_lhef, tag_head, tag_init, tag_event
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag_gen_n, tag_gen_v
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag_generator, tag_xsecinfo
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag_sqme_ref, tag_sqme_prc
    type(xml_tag_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tag_sqme_alt, tag_wgts_alt
    type(xml_tag_t), allocatable :: tag_weight, tag_weightinfo, tag_weights
contains
    <EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>
end type eio_lhef_t

```

## 19.7.2 Specific Methods

Set parameters that are specifically used with LHEF.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>≡
    procedure :: set_parameters => eio_lhef_set_parameters

<EIO LHEF: procedures>≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_set_parameters (eio, keep_beams, recover_beams, version, &
        extension, &
        write_sqme_ref, write_sqme_prc, write_sqme_alt)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    character(*), intent(in), optional :: version
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    logical, intent(in), optional :: write_sqme_ref
    logical, intent(in), optional :: write_sqme_prc
    logical, intent(in), optional :: write_sqme_alt
    if (present (keep_beams)) eio%keep_beams = keep_beams
    if (present (recover_beams)) eio%recover_beams = recover_beams
    if (present (version)) then
        select case (version)
        case ("1.0", "2.0", "3.0")
            eio%version = version
        case default
            call msg_error ("LHEF version " // version &

```

```

        // " is not supported.  Inserting 2.0")
        eio%version = "2.0"
    end select
end if
if (present (extension)) then
    eio%extension = extension
else
    eio%extension = "lhe"
end if
if (present (write_sqme_ref)) eio%write_sqme_ref = write_sqme_ref
if (present (write_sqme_prc)) eio%write_sqme_prc = write_sqme_prc
if (present (write_sqme_alt)) eio%write_sqme_alt = write_sqme_alt
end subroutine eio_lhef_set_parameters

```

### 19.7.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => eio_lhef_write

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_write (object, unit)
        class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "LHEF event stream:"
        if (object%writing) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file   = ", char (object%filename)
        else if (object%reading) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Reading from file = ", char (object%filename)
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
        end if
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Keep beams      = ", object%keep_beams
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Recover beams   = ", object%recover_beams
        write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Version         = ", object%version
        write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "File extension  = ', &
            char (object%extension), '"
        if (allocated (object%proc_num_id)) then
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "Numerical process IDs:"
            do i = 1, size (object%proc_num_id)
                write (u, "(5x,I0,': ',I0)") i, object%proc_num_id(i)
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine eio_lhef_write

```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => eio_lhef_final

```

*<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine eio_lhef_final (object)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: object
  if (allocated (object%proc_num_id)) deallocate (object%proc_num_id)
  if (object%writing) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing LHEF file '", &
      char (object%filename), "'"
    call msg_message ()
    call object%write_footer ()
    close (object%unit)
    object%writing = .false.
  else if (object%reading) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing LHEF file '", &
      char (object%filename), "'"
    call msg_message ()
    call object%cstream%final ()
    object%reading = .false.
  end if
end subroutine eio_lhef_final

```

Common initialization for input and output.

*<EIO LHEF: eio\_lhef: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: common_init => eio_lhef_common_init

```

*<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine eio_lhef_common_init (eio, sample, data, extension)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
  if (.not. present (data)) &
    call msg_bug ("LHEF initialization: missing data")
  eio%data = data
  if (data%n_beam /= 2) &
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: defined for scattering processes only")
  eio%unweighted = data%unweighted
  if (eio%unweighted) then
    select case (data%norm_mode)
    case (NORM_UNIT)
    case default; call msg_fatal &
      ("LHEF: normalization for unweighted events must be '1'")
    end select
  else
    select case (data%norm_mode)
    case (NORM_SIGMA)
    case default; call msg_fatal &
      ("LHEF: normalization for weighted events must be 'sigma'")
    end select
  end if
  eio%n_alt = data%n_alt
  eio%sample = sample
  if (present (extension)) then
    eio%extension = extension
  else

```



```

        eio%extension = "lhe"
    end if
    call eio%set_filename ()
    eio%unit = free_unit ()
    call eio%init_tags (data)
    allocate (eio%proc_num_id (data%n_proc), source = data%proc_num_id)
end subroutine eio_lhef_common_init

```

Initialize the tag objects. Some tags depend on the LHEF version. In particular, the tags that in LHEF 2.0 identify individual weights by name in each event block, in LHEF 3.0 are replaced by info tags in the init block and a single `weights` tag in the event block. The name attributes of those tags are specific for WHIZARD.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_tags => eio_lhef_init_tags

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_init_tags (eio, data)
        class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
        real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
        integer :: i
        call eio%tag_lhef%init ( &
            var_str ("LesHouchesEvents"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("version"), var_str (eio%version))], &
            .true.)
        call eio%tag_head%init ( &
            var_str ("header"), &
            .true.)
        call eio%tag_init%init ( &
            var_str ("init"), &
            .true.)
        call eio%tag_event%init (var_str ("event"), &
            .true.)
        select case (eio%version)
        case ("1.0")
            allocate (eio%tag_gen_n)
            call eio%tag_gen_n%init ( &
                var_str ("generator_name"), &
                .true.)
            allocate (eio%tag_gen_v)
            call eio%tag_gen_v%init ( &
                var_str ("generator_version"), &
                .true.)
        end select
        select case (eio%version)
        case ("2.0", "3.0")
            allocate (eio%tag_generator)
            call eio%tag_generator%init ( &
                var_str ("generator"), &
                [xml_attribute (var_str ("version"), var_str ("<Version>"))], &
                .true.)
            allocate (eio%tag_xsecinfo)
            call eio%tag_xsecinfo%init ( &

```

```

        var_str ("xsecinfo"), &
        [xml_attribute (var_str ("neve"), str (data%n_evt)), &
        xml_attribute (var_str ("totxsec"), &
        str (data%total_cross_section * pb_per_fb))]]
end select
select case (eio%version)
case ("2.0")
    allocate (eio%tag_weight)
    call eio%tag_weight%init (var_str ("weight"), &
        [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"))])
    if (eio%write_sqme_ref) then
        allocate (eio%tag_sqme_ref)
        call eio%tag_sqme_ref%init (var_str ("weight"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("sqme_ref"))], &
            .true.)
    end if
    if (eio%write_sqme_prc) then
        allocate (eio%tag_sqme_prc)
        call eio%tag_sqme_prc%init (var_str ("weight"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("sqme_prc"))], &
            .true.)
    end if
    if (eio%n_alt > 0) then
        if (eio%write_sqme_alt) then
            allocate (eio%tag_sqme_alt (1))
            call eio%tag_sqme_alt(1)%init (var_str ("weight"), &
                [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("sqme_alt"))], &
                .true.)
        end if
        allocate (eio%tag_wgts_alt (1))
        call eio%tag_wgts_alt(1)%init (var_str ("weight"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("wgts_alt"))], &
            .true.)
    end if
case ("3.0")
    if (eio%write_sqme_ref) then
        allocate (eio%tag_sqme_ref)
        call eio%tag_sqme_ref%init (var_str ("weightinfo"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("sqme_ref"))])
    end if
    if (eio%write_sqme_prc) then
        allocate (eio%tag_sqme_prc)
        call eio%tag_sqme_prc%init (var_str ("weightinfo"), &
            [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), var_str ("sqme_prc"))])
    end if
    if (eio%n_alt > 0) then
        if (eio%write_sqme_alt) then
            allocate (eio%tag_sqme_alt (eio%n_alt))
            do i = 1, eio%n_alt
                call eio%tag_sqme_alt(i)%init (var_str ("weightinfo"), &
                    [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), &
                    var_str ("sqme_alt") // str (i))])
            end do
        end if
    end if
end if

```

```

        allocate (eio%tag_wgts_alt (eio%n_alt))
        do i = 1, eio%n_alt
            call eio%tag_wgts_alt(i)%init (var_str ("weightinfo"), &
                [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"), &
                    var_str ("wgts_alt") // str (i))])
        end do
    end if
    allocate (eio%tag_weightinfo)
    call eio%tag_weightinfo%init (var_str ("weightinfo"), &
        [xml_attribute (var_str ("name"))])
    allocate (eio%tag_weights)
    call eio%tag_weights%init (var_str ("weights"), .true.)
end select
end subroutine eio_lhef_init_tags

```

Initialize event writing.

*<EIO LHEF: eio\_lhef: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: init_out => eio_lhef_init_out

```

*<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine eio_lhef_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    integer :: u, i
    if (.not. present (data)) &
        call msg_bug ("LHEF initialization: missing data")
    eio%sample = sample
    call eio%set_splitting (data)
    call eio%common_init (sample, data)
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to LHEF file '", &
        char (eio%filename), ""
    call msg_message ()
    eio%writing = .true.
    u = eio%unit
    open (u, file = char (eio%filename), &
        action = "write", status = "replace")
    call eio%write_header ()
    call heprup_init &
        (data%pdg_beam, &
        data%energy_beam, &
        n_processes = data%n_proc, &
        unweighted = data%unweighted, &
        negative_weights = data%negative_weights)
    do i = 1, data%n_proc
        call heprup_set_process_parameters (i = i, &
            process_id = data%proc_num_id(i), &
            cross_section = data%cross_section(i), &
            error = data%error(i))
    end do
    call eio%tag_init%write (u); write (u, *)
    call heprup_write_lhef (u)

```

```

select case (eio%version)
case ("2.0"); call eio%write_init_20 (data)
case ("3.0"); call eio%write_init_30 (data)
end select
call eio%tag_init%close (u); write (u, *)
if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine eio_lhef_init_out

```

Initialize event reading. First read the LHEF tag and version, then read the header and skip over its contents, then read the init block. (We require the opening and closing tags of the init block to be placed on separate lines without extra stuff.)

For input, we do not (yet?) support split event files.

*(EIO LHEF: eio\_lhef: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init_in => eio_lhef_init_in

```

*(EIO LHEF: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine eio_lhef_init_in &
  (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
logical, intent(out), optional :: success
logical :: exist, ok, closing
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data_file
type(string_t) :: string
integer :: u
eio%split = .false.
call eio%common_init (sample, data, extension)
write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: reading from LHEF file '", &
  char (eio%filename), "'"
call msg_message ()
inquire (file = char (eio%filename), exist = exist)
if (.not. exist) call msg_fatal ("Events: LHEF file not found.")
eio%reading = .true.
u = eio%unit
open (u, file = char (eio%filename), &
  action = "read", status = "old")
call eio%cstream%init (u)
call eio%read_header ()
call eio%tag_init%read (eio%cstream, ok)
if (.not. ok) call err_init
select case (eio%version)
case ("1.0"); call eio%read_init_10 (data_file)
  call eio%tag_init%read_content (eio%cstream, string, closing)
  if (string /= "" .or. .not. closing) call err_init
case ("2.0"); call eio%read_init_20 (data_file)
case ("3.0"); call eio%read_init_30 (data_file)
end select
call eio%merge_data (data, data_file)
if (present (success)) success = .true.

```

contains

```
subroutine err_init
  call msg_fatal ("LHEF: syntax error in init tag")
end subroutine err_init
```

end subroutine eio\_lhef\_init\_in

Merge event sample data: we can check the data in the file against our assumptions and set or reset parameters.

*(EIO LHEF: eio\_lhef: TBP)*+≡

```
procedure :: merge_data => eio_merge_data
```

*(EIO LHEF: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine eio_merge_data (eio, data, data_file)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout) :: data
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data_file
  real, parameter :: tolerance = 1000 * epsilon (1._default)
  if (data%unweighted .neqv. data_file%unweighted) call err_weights
  if (data%negative_weights .neqv. data_file%negative_weights) &
    call err_weights
  if (data%norm_mode /= data_file%norm_mode) call err_norm
  if (data%n_beam /= data_file%n_beam) call err_beams
  if (any (data%pdg_beam /= data_file%pdg_beam)) call err_beams
  if (any (abs ((data%energy_beam - data_file%energy_beam)) &
    > (data%energy_beam + data_file%energy_beam) * tolerance)) &
    call err_beams
  if (data%n_proc /= data_file%n_proc) call err_proc
  if (any (data%proc_num_id /= data_file%proc_num_id)) call err_proc
  where (data%cross_section == 0)
    data%cross_section = data_file%cross_section
    data%error = data_file%error
  end where
  data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)
  if (data_file%n_evt > 0) then
    if (data%n_evt > 0 .and. data_file%n_evt /= data%n_evt) call err_n_evt
    data%n_evt = data_file%n_evt
  end if
contains
  subroutine err_weights
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: mismatch in event weight properties")
  end subroutine err_weights
  subroutine err_norm
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: mismatch in event normalization")
  end subroutine err_norm
  subroutine err_beams
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: mismatch in beam properties")
  end subroutine err_beams
  subroutine err_proc
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: mismatch in process definitions")
  end subroutine err_proc
  subroutine err_n_evt
    call msg_error ("LHEF: mismatch in specified number of events (ignored)")
```

```

        end subroutine err_n_evt
    end subroutine eio_merge_data

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_lhef_switch_inout

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_switch_inout (eio, success)
        class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        call msg_bug ("LHEF: in-out switch not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_lhef_switch_inout

```

Split event file: increment the counter, close the current file, open a new one. If the file needs a header, repeat it for the new file. (We assume that the common block contents are still intact.)

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: split_out => eio_lhef_split_out

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_split_out (eio)
        class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        integer :: u
        if (eio%split) then
            eio%split_index = eio%split_index + 1
            call eio%set_filename ()
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to LHEF file '", &
                char (eio%filename), "'"
            call msg_message ()
            call eio%write_footer ()
            u = eio%unit
            close (u)
            open (u, file = char (eio%filename), &
                action = "write", status = "replace")
            call eio%write_header ()
            call eio%tag_init%write (u); write (u, *)
            call heprup_write_lhef (u)
            select case (eio%version)
            case ("2.0"); call eio%write_init_20 (eio%data)
            case ("3.0"); call eio%write_init_30 (eio%data)
            end select
            call eio%tag_init%close (u); write (u, *)
        end if
    end subroutine eio_lhef_split_out

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and squared matrix element, then the particle set.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: output => eio_lhef_output

```

```

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
  integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
  logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (eio%unit); if (u < 0) return
  if (eio%writing) then
    call hepeup_from_event (event, &
      process_index = eio%proc_num_id (i_prc), &
      keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    write (u, '(A)') "<event>"
    call hepeup_write_lhef (eio%unit)
    select case (eio%version)
    case ("2.0"); call eio%write_event_20 (event)
    case ("3.0"); call eio%write_event_30 (event)
    end select
    write (u, '(A)') "</event>"
  else
    call eio%write ()
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF file is not open for writing")
  end if
end subroutine eio_lhef_output

```

Input an event. Upon input of `i_prc`, we can just read in the whole HEPEUP common block. These data are known to come first. The `i_prc` value can be deduced from the IDPRUP value by a table lookup.

Reading the common block bypasses the `cstream` which accesses the input unit. This is consistent with the LHEF specification. After the common-block data have been swallowed, we can resume reading from stream.

We don't catch actual I/O errors. However, we return a negative value in `iostat` if we reached the terminating `</LesHouchesEvents>` tag.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_lhef_input_i_prc

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
  integer, intent(out) :: iostat
  integer :: i, proc_num_id
  type(string_t) :: s
  logical :: ok
  iostat = 0
  call eio%tag_lhef%read_content (eio%cstream, s, ok)
  if (ok) then
    if (s == "") then
      iostat = -1
    else
      call err_close
    end if
  end if
  return

```

```

else
    call eio%cstream%revert_record (s)
end if
call eio%tag_event%read (eio%cstream, ok)
if (.not. ok) then
    call err_evt1
    return
end if
call hepeup_read_lhef (eio%unit)
call hepeup_get_event_parameters (proc_id = proc_num_id)
i_prc = 0
FIND_I_PRC: do i = 1, size (eio%proc_num_id)
    if (eio%proc_num_id(i) == proc_num_id) then
        i_prc = i
        exit FIND_I_PRC
    end if
end do FIND_I_PRC
if (i_prc == 0) call err_index
contains
subroutine err_close
    call msg_error ("LHEF: reading events: syntax error in closing tag")
    iostat = 1
end subroutine
subroutine err_evt1
    call msg_error ("LHEF: reading events: invalid event tag, &
        &aborting read")
    iostat = 2
end subroutine err_evt1
subroutine err_index
    call msg_error ("LHEF: reading events: undefined process ID " &
        // char (str (proc_num_id)) // ", aborting read")
    iostat = 3
end subroutine err_index
end subroutine eio_lhef_input_i_prc

```

Since we have already read the event information from file, this input routine can transfer the common-block contents to the event record. Also, we read any further information in the event record.

Since LHEF doesn't give this information, we must assume that the MCI group, term, and channel can all be safely set to 1. This works if there is only one MCI group and term. The channel doesn't matter for the matrix element.

*<EIO LHEF: eio lhef: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: input_event => eio_lhef_input_event

```

*<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine eio_lhef_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    type(particle_set_t), pointer :: pset
    type(string_t) :: s
    logical :: closing
    iostat = 0
    call event%reset ()

```



```

call event%select (1, 1, 1)
call hepeup_to_event (event, eio%fallback_model, &
    recover_beams = eio%recover_beams)
!   if (associated (event%process)) then
!       pset => event%get_particle_set_ptr ()
!       call particle_set_set_model (pset, event%process%get_model_ptr ())
!   end if
select case (eio%version)
case ("1.0")
    call eio%tag_event%read_content (eio%cstream, s, closing = closing)
    if (s /= "" .or. .not. closing) call err_evt2
case ("2.0"); call eio%read_event_20 (event)
case ("3.0"); call eio%read_event_30 (event)
end select
contains
subroutine err_evt2
    call msg_error ("LHEF: reading events: syntax error in event record, &
        &aborting read")
    iostat = 2
end subroutine err_evt2

end subroutine eio_lhef_input_event

```

#### 19.7.4 Les Houches Event File: header/footer

These two routines write the header and footer for the Les Houches Event File format (LHEF).

The current version writes no information except for the generator name and version (v.1.0 only).

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_header => eio_lhef_write_header
    procedure :: write_footer => eio_lhef_write_footer

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_write_header (eio)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (eio%unit); if (u < 0) return
    call eio%tag_lhef%write (u); write (u, *)
    call eio%tag_head%write (u); write (u, *)
    select case (eio%version)
    case ("1.0")
        write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")
        call eio%tag_gen_n%write (var_str ("WHIZARD"), u)
        write (u, *)
        write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")
        call eio%tag_gen_v%write (var_str ("<Version>"), u)
        write (u, *)
    end select
    call eio%tag_head%close (u); write (u, *)
end subroutine eio_lhef_write_header

subroutine eio_lhef_write_footer (eio)

```

```

class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
integer :: u
u = output_unit (eio%unit); if (u < 0) return
call eio%tag_lhef%close (u)
end subroutine eio_lhef_write_footer

```

Reading the header just means finding the tags and ignoring any contents. When done, we should stand just after the header tag.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_header => eio_lhef_read_header

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_lhef_read_header (eio)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical :: success, closing
    type(string_t) :: content
    call eio%tag_lhef%read (eio%cstream, success)
    if (.not. success .or. .not. eio%tag_lhef%has_content) call err_lhef
    if (eio%tag_lhef%get_attribute (1) /= eio%version) call err_version
    call eio%tag_head%read (eio%cstream, success)
    if (.not. success) call err_header
    if (eio%tag_head%has_content) then
      SKIP_HEADER_CONTENT: do
        call eio%tag_head%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
        if (closing) exit SKIP_HEADER_CONTENT
      end do SKIP_HEADER_CONTENT
    end if
  contains
    subroutine err_lhef
      call msg_fatal ("LHEF: LesHouchesEvents tag absent or corrupted")
    end subroutine err_lhef
    subroutine err_header
      call msg_fatal ("LHEF: header tag absent or corrupted")
    end subroutine err_header
    subroutine err_version
      call msg_error ("LHEF: version mismatch: expected " &
        // eio%version // ", found " &
        // char (eio%tag_lhef%get_attribute (1)))
    end subroutine err_version
  end subroutine eio_lhef_read_header

```

### 19.7.5 Version-Specific Code: 1.0

In version 1.0, the init tag contains just HEPUP data. While a `cstream` is connected to the input unit, we bypass it temporarily for the purpose of reading the HEPUP contents. This is consistent with the LHEF standard.

This routine does not read the closing tag of the init block.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_init_10 => eio_lhef_read_init_10

```

```

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_10 (eio, data)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(out) :: data
  integer :: n_proc, i
  call heprup_read_lhef (eio%unit)
  call heprup_get_run_parameters (n_processes = n_proc)
  call data%init (n_proc)
  data%n_beam = 2
  call heprup_get_run_parameters ( &
    unweighted = data%unweighted, &
    negative_weights = data%negative_weights, &
    beam_pdg = data%pdg_beam, &
    beam_energy = data%energy_beam)
  if (data%unweighted) then
    data%norm_mode = NORM_UNIT
  else
    data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
  end if
  do i = 1, n_proc
    call heprup_get_process_parameters (i, &
      process_id = data%proc_num_id(i), &
      cross_section = data%cross_section(i), &
      error = data%error(i))
  end do
end subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_10

```

### 19.7.6 Version-Specific Code: 2.0

This is the init information for the 2.0 format, after the HEPRUP data. We have the following tags:

- **generator** Generator name and version.
- **xsecinfo** Cross section and weights data. We have the total cross section and number of events (assuming that the event file is intact), but information on minimum and maximum weights is not available before the file is complete. We just write the mandatory tags. (Note that the default values of the other tags describe a uniform unit weight, but we can determine most values only after the sample is complete.)
- **cutsinfo** This optional tag is too specific to represent the possibilities of WHIZARD, so we skip it.
- **procinfo** This optional tag is useful for giving details of NLO calculations. Skipped.
- **mergetype** Optional, also not applicable.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
procedure :: write_init_20 => eio_lhef_write_init_20

```

```

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_write_init_20 (eio, data)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
  integer :: u
  u = eio%unit
  call eio%tag_generator%write (u)
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "WHIZARD"
  call eio%tag_generator%close (u); write (u, *)
  call eio%tag_xsecinfo%write (u); write (u, *)
end subroutine eio_lhef_write_init_20

```

When reading the init block, we first call the 1.0 routine that fills HEPRUP. Then we consider the possible tags. Only the `generator` and `xsecinfo` tags are of interest. We skip everything else except for the closing tag.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_init_20 => eio_lhef_read_init_20

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_20 (eio, data)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(out) :: data
  real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
  type(string_t) :: content
  logical :: found, closing
  call eio_lhef_read_init_10 (eio, data)
  SCAN_INIT_TAGS: do
    call eio%tag_generator%read (eio%cstream, found)
    if (found) then
      if (.not. eio%tag_generator%has_content) call err_generator
      call eio%tag_generator%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
      call msg_message ("LHEF: Event file has been generated by " &
        // char (content) // " " &
        // char (eio%tag_generator%get_attribute (1)))
      cycle SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_xsecinfo%read (eio%cstream, found)
    if (found) then
      if (eio%tag_xsecinfo%has_content) call err_xsecinfo
      cycle SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_init%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
    if (closing) then
      if (content /= "") call err_init
      exit SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
  end do SCAN_INIT_TAGS
  data%n_evt = &
    read_ival (eio%tag_xsecinfo%get_attribute (1))
  data%total_cross_section = &
    read_rval (eio%tag_xsecinfo%get_attribute (2)) / pb_per_fb
contains
subroutine err_generator
  call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid generator tag")

```

```

end subroutine err_generator
subroutine err_xsecinfo
  call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid xsecinfo tag")
end subroutine err_xsecinfo
subroutine err_init
  call msg_fatal ("LHEF: syntax error after init tag")
end subroutine err_init
end subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_20

```

This is additional event-specific information for the 2.0 format, after the HEP-EUP data. We can specify weights, starting from the master weight and adding alternative weights. The alternative weights are collected in a common tag.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_event_20 => eio_lhef_write_event_20
<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_lhef_write_event_20 (eio, event)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    type(string_t) :: s
    integer :: i, u
    u = eio%unit
    if (eio%write_sqme_ref) then
      s = str (event%sqme_ref)
      call eio%tag_sqme_ref%write (s, u); write (u, *)
    end if
    if (eio%write_sqme_prc) then
      s = str (event%sqme_prc)
      call eio%tag_sqme_prc%write (s, u); write (u, *)
    end if
    if (eio%n_alt > 0) then
      if (eio%write_sqme_alt) then
        s = str (event%sqme_alt(1))
        do i = 2, eio%n_alt
          s = s // " " // str (event%sqme_alt(i)); write (u, *)
        end do
        call eio%tag_sqme_alt(1)%write (s, u)
      end if
      s = str (event%weight_alt(1))
      do i = 2, eio%n_alt
        s = s // " " // str (event%weight_alt(i)); write (u, *)
      end do
      call eio%tag_wgts_alt(1)%write (s, u)
    end if
  end subroutine eio_lhef_write_event_20

```

Read extra event data. If there is a weight entry labeled `sqme_prc`, we take this as the squared matrix-element value (the new *reference* value `sqme_ref`). Other tags, including tags written by the above writer, are skipped.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_event_20 => eio_lhef_read_event_20
<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡

```

```

subroutine eio_lhef_read_event_20 (eio, event)
  class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
  type(string_t) :: content
  logical :: found, closing
  SCAN_EVENT_TAGS: do
    call eio%tag_weight%read (eio%cstream, found)
    if (found) then
      if (.not. eio%tag_weight%has_content) call err_weight
      call eio%tag_weight%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
      if (.not. closing) call err_weight
      if (eio%tag_weight%get_attribute (1) == "sqme_prc") then
        call event%set (sqme_ref = read_rval (content))
      end if
      cycle SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_event%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
    if (closing) then
      if (content /= "") call err_event
      exit SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
    end if
  end do SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
contains
  subroutine err_weight
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid weight tag in event record")
  end subroutine err_weight
  subroutine err_event
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: syntax error after event tag")
  end subroutine err_event
end subroutine eio_lhef_read_event_20

```

### 19.7.7 Version-Specific Code: 3.0

This is the init information for the 3.0 format, after the HEPRUP data. We have the following tags:

- **generator** Generator name and version.
- **xsecinfo** Cross section and weights data. We have the total cross section and number of events (assuming that the event file is intact), but information on minimum and maximum weights is not available before the file is complete. We just write the mandatory tags. (Note that the default values of the other tags describe a uniform unit weight, but we can determine most values only after the sample is complete.)
- **cutsinfo** This optional tag is too specific to represent the possibilities of WHIZARD, so we skip it.
- **procinfo** This optional tag is useful for giving details of NLO calculations. Skipped.
- **weightinfo** Determine the meaning of optional weights, whose values are given in the event record.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_init_30 => eio_lhef_write_init_30

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_lhef_write_init_30 (eio, data)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
    real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (eio%unit)
    call eio%tag_generator%write (u)
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "WHIZARD"
    call eio%tag_generator%close (u); write (u, *)
    call eio%tag_xsecinfo%write (u); write (u, *)
    if (eio%write_sqme_ref) then
      call eio%tag_sqme_ref%write (u); write (u, *)
    end if
    if (eio%write_sqme_prc) then
      call eio%tag_sqme_prc%write (u); write (u, *)
    end if
    if (eio%write_sqme_alt) then
      do i = 1, eio%n_alt
        call eio%tag_sqme_alt(i)%write (u); write (u, *)
      end do
    end if
    do i = 1, eio%n_alt
      call eio%tag_wgts_alt(i)%write (u); write (u, *)
    end do
  end subroutine eio_lhef_write_init_30

```

When reading the init block, we first call the 1.0 routine that fills HEPRUP. Then we consider the possible tags. Only the **generator** and **xsecinfo** tags are of interest. We skip everything else except for the closing tag.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: read_init_30 => eio_lhef_read_init_30

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_30 (eio, data)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(out) :: data
    real(default), parameter :: pb_per_fb = 1.e-3_default
    type(string_t) :: content
    logical :: found, closing
    integer :: n_weightinfo
    call eio_lhef_read_init_10 (eio, data)
    n_weightinfo = 0
    eio%i_weight_sqme = 0
    SCAN_INIT_TAGS: do
      call eio%tag_generator%read (eio%cstream, found)
      if (found) then
        if (.not. eio%tag_generator%has_content) call err_generator
        call eio%tag_generator%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
        call msg_message ("LHEF: Event file has been generated by " &
          // char (content) // " " &

```

```

        // char (eio%tag_generator%get_attribute (1))
        cycle SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_xsecinfo%read (eio%cstream, found)
    if (found) then
        if (eio%tag_xsecinfo%has_content) call err_xsecinfo
        cycle SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_weightinfo%read (eio%cstream, found)
    if (found) then
        if (eio%tag_weightinfo%has_content) call err_xsecinfo
        n_weightinfo = n_weightinfo + 1
        if (eio%tag_weightinfo%get_attribute (1) == "sqme_prc") then
            eio%i_weight_sqme = n_weightinfo
        end if
        cycle SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
    call eio%tag_init%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
    if (closing) then
        if (content /= "") call err_init
        exit SCAN_INIT_TAGS
    end if
end do SCAN_INIT_TAGS
data%n_evt = &
    read_ival (eio%tag_xsecinfo%get_attribute (1))
data%total_cross_section = &
    read_rval (eio%tag_xsecinfo%get_attribute (2)) / pb_per_fb
contains
    subroutine err_generator
        call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid generator tag")
    end subroutine err_generator
    subroutine err_xsecinfo
        call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid xsecinfo tag")
    end subroutine err_xsecinfo
    subroutine err_init
        call msg_fatal ("LHEF: syntax error after init tag")
    end subroutine err_init
end subroutine eio_lhef_read_init_30

```

This is additional event-specific information for the 3.0 format, after the HEP-EUP data. We can specify weights, starting from the master weight and adding alternative weights. The weight tags are already allocated, so we just have to transfer the weight values to strings, assemble them and write them to file. All weights are collected in a single tag.

Note: If efficiency turns out to be an issue, we may revert to traditional character buffer writing. However, we need to know the maximum length.

```

<EIO LHEF: eio_lhef: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_event_30 => eio_lhef_write_event_30

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_write_event_30 (eio, event)
        class(eio_lhef_t), intent(in) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(in) :: event
    end subroutine

```



```

type(string_t) :: s
integer :: u, i
u = eio%unit
s = ""
if (eio%write_sqme_ref) then
    s = s // str (event%sqme_ref) // " "
end if
if (eio%write_sqme_prc) then
    s = s // str (event%sqme_prc) // " "
end if
if (eio%n_alt > 0) then
    if (eio%write_sqme_alt) then
        s = s // str (event%sqme_alt(1)) // " "
        do i = 2, eio%n_alt
            s = s // str (event%sqme_alt(i)) // " "
        end do
    end if
    s = s // str (event%weight_alt(1)) // " "
    do i = 2, eio%n_alt
        s = s // str (event%weight_alt(i)) // " "
    end do
end if
if (len_trim (s) > 0) then
    call eio%tag_weights%write (trim (s), u); write (u, *)
end if
end subroutine eio_lhef_write_event_30

```

Read extra event data. If there is a `weights` tag and if there was a `weightinfo` entry labeled `sqme_prc`, we extract the corresponding entry from the `weights` string and store this as the event's squared matrix-element value. Other tags, including tags written by the above writer, are skipped.

*(EIO LHEF: eio\_lhef: TBP)*+≡

```

procedure :: read_event_30 => eio_lhef_read_event_30

```

*(EIO LHEF: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine eio_lhef_read_event_30 (eio, event)
    class(eio_lhef_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(inout) :: event
    type(string_t) :: content, string
    logical :: found, closing
    integer :: i
    SCAN_EVENT_TAGS: do
        call eio%tag_weights%read (eio%cstream, found)
        if (found) then
            if (.not. eio%tag_weights%has_content) call err_weights
            call eio%tag_weights%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
            if (.not. closing) call err_weights
            if (eio%i_weight_sqme > 0) then
                SCAN_WEIGHTS: do i = 1, eio%i_weight_sqme
                    call split (content, string, " ")
                    content = adjustl (content)
                    if (i == eio%i_weight_sqme) then
                        call event%set (sqme_ref = read_rval (string))
                    exit SCAN_WEIGHTS
                end do
            end if
        end if
    end do

```

```

        end if
    end do SCAN_WEIGHTS
end if
cycle SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
end if
call eio%tag_event%read_content (eio%cstream, content, closing)
if (closing) then
    if (content /= "") call err_event
    exit SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
end if
end do SCAN_EVENT_TAGS
contains
subroutine err_weights
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: invalid weights tag in event record")
end subroutine err_weights
subroutine err_event
    call msg_fatal ("LHEF: syntax error after event tag")
end subroutine err_event
end subroutine eio_lhef_read_event_30

```

### 19.7.8 Auxiliary

Create a string from a number. We use fixed format for the reals and variable format for integers.

```

<EIO LHEF: interfaces>≡
    interface str
        module procedure str_int, str_real
    end interface

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    function str_int (i) result (s)
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        type(string_t) :: s
        character(32) :: buffer
        write (buffer, "(I0)") i
        s = var_str (trim (buffer))
    end function str_int

    function str_real (x) result (s)
        real(default), intent(in) :: x
        type(string_t) :: s
        character(32) :: buffer
        write (buffer, "(ES17.10)") x
        s = var_str (trim (adjustl (buffer)))
    end function str_real

```

Auxiliary: Read real, integer, string value.

```

<EIO LHEF: procedures>+≡
    function read_rval (s) result (rval)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
        real(default) :: rval
        character(80) :: buffer

```

```

    buffer = s
    read (buffer, *) rval
end function read_rval

function read_ival (s) result (ival)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: s
    integer :: ival
    character(80) :: buffer
    buffer = s
    read (buffer, *) ival
end function read_ival

```

### 19.7.9 Unit tests

```

<EIO LHEF: public>+≡
    public :: eio_lhef_test

<EIO LHEF: tests>≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <EIO LHEF: execute tests>
    end subroutine eio_lhef_test

```

### Version 1.0 Output

We test the implementation of all I/O methods. We start with output according to version 1.0.

```

<EIO LHEF: execute tests>≡
    call test (eio_lhef_1, "eio_lhef_1", &
        "write version 1.0", &
        u, results)

<EIO LHEF: tests>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
        type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
        type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
        type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
        type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
        class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
        type(string_t) :: sample
        integer :: u_file, iostat
        character(80) :: buffer

        write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: eio_lhef_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*"  Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
    end subroutine eio_lhef_1

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%unweighted = .true.
data%norm_mode = NORM_UNIT
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_lhef_1"

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters ()
end select

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // "." // eio%extension), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
    read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
    if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>")  buffer = "[...]"

```

```

        if (iostat /= 0) exit
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_file)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    deallocate (eio)
    allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_lhef_t)
        call eio%set_parameters ()
    end select

    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_lhef_t)
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
    end select
    call eio%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call event%final ()
    deallocate (event)

    call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
    deallocate (process_instance)
    deallocate (process)

    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_1"

end subroutine eio_lhef_1

```

## Version 2.0 Output

Version 2.0 has added a lot of options to the LHEF format. We implement some of them.

```

<EIO LHEF: execute tests>+≡
    call test (eio_lhef_2, "eio_lhef_2", &
        "write version 2.0", &
        u, results)

<EIO LHEF: tests>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list

```

```

type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_lhef_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%unweighted = .false.
data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_lhef_2"

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (version = "2.0", write_sqme_prc = .true.)
end select

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])

```

```

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // "." // eio%extension), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (buffer(1:10) == "<generator")  buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0)  exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_2"

end subroutine eio_lhef_2

```

### Version 3.0 Output

Version 3.0 is an update which removes some tags (which we didn't use anyway) and suggests a new treatment of weights.

*(EIO LHEF: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (eio_lhef_3, "eio_lhef_3", &
  "write version 3.0", &
  u, results)

```

*(EIO LHEF: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine eio_lhef_3 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event

```

```

type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_lhef_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%unweighted = .false.
data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_lhef_3"

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (version = "3.0", write_sqme_prc = .true.)
end select

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])

```



```

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lhe"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:10) == "<generator") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_3"

end subroutine eio_lhef_3

```

## Version 1.0 Input

Check input of a version-1.0 conforming LHEF file.

```

<EIO LHEF: execute tests>+≡
  call test (eio_lhef_4, "eio_lhef_4", &
            "read version 1.0", &
            u, results)

<EIO LHEF: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_lhef_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: fallback_model
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event

```

```

type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat, i_prc

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_lhef_4"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: read a LHEF 1.0 file"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write a LHEF data file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
sample = "eio_lhef_4"
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lhe"), &
      status = "replace", action = "readwrite")

write (u_file, "(A)")  '<LesHouchesEvents version="1.0">'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  <arbitrary_tag opt="foo">content</arbitrary_tag>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  Text'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  <another_tag />'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  25 25  5.0000000000E+02  5.0000000000E+02 &
& -1 -1 -1 -1 3 1'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  1.0000000000E-01  1.0000000000E-03 &
& 1.0000000000E+00 42'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  4 42  3.0574068604E+08  1.0000000000E+03 &
& -1.0000000000E+00 -1.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  25 -1 0 0 0 0  0.0000000000E+00  0.0000000000E+00 &
& 4.8412291828E+02  5.0000000000E+02  1.2500000000E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  25 -1 0 0 0 0  0.0000000000E+00  0.0000000000E+00 &
& -4.8412291828E+02  5.0000000000E+02  1.2500000000E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  25 1 1 2 0 0 -1.4960220911E+02 -4.6042825611E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  5.0000000000E+02  1.2500000000E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  25 1 1 2 0 0  1.4960220911E+02  4.6042825611E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  5.0000000000E+02  1.2500000000E+02 &
& 0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</LesHouchesEvents>'
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"), &
    os_data, fallback_model)

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (recover_beams = .false.)
end select
call eio%set_fallback_model (fallback_model)

call data%init (1)
data%n_beam = 2
data%unweighted = .true.
data%norm_mode = NORM_UNIT
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%norm_mode = NORM_UNIT
call data%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize and read header"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call eio%write (u)

write (u, *)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%tag_lhef%write (u); write (u, *)
end select

write (u, *)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read event"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    write (u, "(A,I0,A,I0)") "Found process #", i_prc, &
        " with ID = ", eio%proc_num_id(i_prc)
end select

call eio%input_event (event, iostat)

call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read closing"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
write (u, "(A,I0)") "iostat = ", iostat

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_4"

end subroutine eio_lhef_4

```

## Version 2.0 Input

Check input of a version-2.0 conforming LHEF file.

```

<EIO LHEF: execute tests>+≡
    call test (eio_lhef_5, "eio_lhef_5", &
        "read version 2.0", &
        u, results)

<EIO LHEF: tests>+≡
    subroutine eio_lhef_5 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: fallback_model
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event

```

```

type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat, i_prc

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_lhef_5"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: read a LHEF 2.0 file"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write a LHEF data file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
sample = "eio_lhef_5"
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lhe"), &
      status = "replace", action = "readwrite")

write (u_file, "(A)")  '<LesHouchesEvents version="2.0">'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 25  5.0000000000E+02  5.0000000000E+02 &
&-1 -1 -1 -1 4 1'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '  1.0000000000E-01  1.0000000000E-03 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 42'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<generator version="2.2.0">WHIZARD&
&</generator>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<xsecinfo neve="1" totxsec="1.0000000000E-01" />'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 4 42  3.0574068604E+08  1.0000000000E+03 &
&-1.0000000000E+00 -1.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 -1 0 0 0 0  0.0000000000E+00 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 4.8412291828E+02  5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02  0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 -1 0 0 0 0  0.0000000000E+00 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 -4.8412291828E+02  5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02  0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 1 1 2 0 0 -1.4960220911E+02 &
&-4.6042825611E+02  0.0000000000E+00  5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02  0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 1 1 2 0 0  1.4960220911E+02 &
& 4.6042825611E+02  0.0000000000E+00  5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02  0.0000000000E+00  9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<weight name="sqme_prc">1.0000000000E+00</weight>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</LesHouchesEvents>'
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"), &
    os_data, fallback_model)

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (version = "2.0", recover_beams = .false.)
end select
call eio%set_fallback_model (fallback_model)

call data%init (1)
data%unweighted = .false.
data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
call data%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize and read header"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call eio%write (u)

write (u, *)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%tag_lhef%write (u); write (u, *)
end select

write (u, *)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)

```

```

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    write (u, "(A,I0,A,I0)") "Found process #", i_prc, &
        " with ID = ", eio%proc_num_id(i_prc)
end select

call eio%input_event (event, iostat)

call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read closing"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
write (u, "(A,I0)") "iostat = ", iostat

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_5"

end subroutine eio_lhef_5

```

### Version 3.0 Input

Check input of a version-3.0 conforming LHEF file.

```

<EIO LHEF: execute tests>+≡
    call test (eio_lhef_6, "eio_lhef_6", &
        "read version 3.0", &
        u, results)

<EIO LHEF: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_lhef_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: fallback_model
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process

```

```

type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat, i_prc

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_lhef_6"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: read a LHEF 3.0 file"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Write a LHEF data file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
sample = "eio_lhef_6"
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lhe"), &
      status = "replace", action = "readwrite")

write (u_file, "(A)")  '<LesHouchesEvents version="3.0">'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</header>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 25 5.0000000000E+02 5.0000000000E+02 &
&-1 -1 -1 -1 4 1'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 1.0000000000E-01 1.0000000000E-03 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 42'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<generator version="2.2.0">WHIZARD&
&</generator>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<xsecinfo neve="1" totxsec="1.0000000000E-01" />'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<weightinfo name="sqme_prc" />'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</init>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 4 42 3.0574068604E+08 1.0000000000E+03 &
&-1.0000000000E+00 -1.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 -1 0 0 0 0 0.0000000000E+00 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 4.8412291828E+02 5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02 0.0000000000E+00 9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 -1 0 0 0 0 0.0000000000E+00 &
& 0.0000000000E+00 -4.8412291828E+02 5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02 0.0000000000E+00 9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 1 1 2 0 0 -1.4960220911E+02 &
&-4.6042825611E+02 0.0000000000E+00 5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02 0.0000000000E+00 9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  ' 25 1 1 2 0 0 1.4960220911E+02 &
& 4.6042825611E+02 0.0000000000E+00 5.0000000000E+02 &
& 1.2500000000E+02 0.0000000000E+00 9.0000000000E+00'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '<weights>1.0000000000E+00</weights>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</event>'
write (u_file, "(A)")  '</LesHouchesEvents>'
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"
write (u, "(A)")

```



```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call os_data_init (os_data)
call model_list%read_model (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"), &
    os_data, fallback_model)

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (version = "3.0", recover_beams = .false.)
end select
call eio%set_fallback_model (fallback_model)

call data%init (1)
data%unweighted = .false.
data%norm_mode = NORM_SIGMA
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
call data%write (u)
write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize and read header"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call eio%write (u)

write (u, *)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    call eio%tag_lhef%write (u); write (u, *)
end select

write (u, *)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read event"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)

```

```

select type (eio)
type is (eio_lhef_t)
    write (u, "(A,I0,A,I0)") "Found process #", i_prc, &
        " with ID = ", eio%proc_num_id(i_prc)
end select

call eio%input_event (event, iostat)

call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Read closing"
write (u, "(A)")

call eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
write (u, "(A,I0)") "iostat = ", iostat

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_lhef_6"

end subroutine eio_lhef_6

```

## 19.8 HepMC events

This section provides the interface to the HepMC C++ library for handling Monte-Carlo events.

Each C++ class of HepMC that we use is mirrored by a Fortran type, which contains as its only component the C pointer to the C++ object.

Each C++ method of HepMC that we use has a C wrapper function. This function takes a pointer to the host object as its first argument. Further arguments are either C pointers, or in the case of simple types (integer, real), interoperable C/Fortran objects.

The C wrapper functions have explicit interfaces in the Fortran module. They are called by Fortran wrapper procedures. These are treated as methods of the corresponding Fortran type.

(hepmc\_interface.f90)≡

```

<File header>

module hepmc_interface

    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use constants !NODEP!
    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use models
    use flavors
    use colors
    use helicities
    use quantum_numbers
    use polarizations

    <Standard module head>

    <HepMC interface: public>

    <HepMC interface: types>

    <HepMC interface: interfaces>

contains

    <HepMC interface: procedures>

    <HepMC interface: tests>

end module hepmc_interface

```

### 19.8.1 Interface check

This function can be called in order to verify that we are using the actual HepMC library, and not the dummy version.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>≡
    interface
        logical(c_bool) function hepmc_available () bind(C)
            import
        end function hepmc_available
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>≡
    public :: hepmc_is_available

<HepMC interface: procedures>≡
    function hepmc_is_available () result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        flag = hepmc_available ()
    end function hepmc_is_available

```

## 19.8.2 FourVector

The C version of four-vectors is often transferred by value, and the associated procedures are all inlined. The wrapper needs to transfer by reference, so we create FourVector objects on the heap which have to be deleted explicitly. The input is a `vector4_t` or `vector3_t` object from the `lorentz` module.

```
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_four_vector_t
```

```
<HepMC interface: types>≡
    type :: hepmc_four_vector_t
    private
        type(c_ptr) :: obj
    end type hepmc_four_vector_t
```

In the C constructor, the zero-component (fourth argument) is optional; if missing, it is set to zero. The Fortran version has initializer form and takes either a three-vector or a four-vector. A further version extracts the four-vector from a HepMC particle object.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        type(c_ptr) function new_four_vector_xyz (x, y, z) bind(C)
            import
                real(c_double), value :: x, y, z
            end function new_four_vector_xyz
    end interface
    interface
        type(c_ptr) function new_four_vector_xyz_t (x, y, z, t) bind(C)
            import
                real(c_double), value :: x, y, z, t
            end function new_four_vector_xyz_t
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_four_vector_init

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface hepmc_four_vector_init
        module procedure hepmc_four_vector_init_v4
        module procedure hepmc_four_vector_init_v3
        module procedure hepmc_four_vector_init_hepmc_prt
    end interface

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_v4 (pp, p)
        type(hepmc_four_vector_t), intent(out) :: pp
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        real(default), dimension(0:3) :: pa
        pa = vector4_get_components (p)
        pp%obj = new_four_vector_xyz_t &
            (real (pa(1), c_double), &
             real (pa(2), c_double), &
             real (pa(3), c_double), &
             real (pa(0), c_double))
    end subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_v4
```

```

subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_v3 (pp, p)
  type(hepmc_four_vector_t), intent(out) :: pp
  type(vector3_t), intent(in) :: p
  real(default), dimension(3) :: pa
  pa = vector3_get_components (p)
  pp%obj = new_four_vector_xyz &
    (real (pa(1), c_double), &
     real (pa(2), c_double), &
     real (pa(3), c_double))
end subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_v3

subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_hepmc_prt (pp, prt)
  type(hepmc_four_vector_t), intent(out) :: pp
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
  pp%obj = gen_particle_momentum (prt%obj)
end subroutine hepmc_four_vector_init_hepmc_prt

```

Here, the destructor is explicitly needed.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine four_vector_delete (p_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: p_obj
    end subroutine four_vector_delete
  end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_four_vector_final

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_four_vector_final (p)
    type(hepmc_four_vector_t), intent(inout) :: p
    call four_vector_delete (p%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_four_vector_final

```

Convert to a Lorentz vector.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    function four_vector_px (p_obj) result (px) bind(C)
      import
      real(c_double) :: px
      type(c_ptr), value :: p_obj
    end function four_vector_px
  end interface
  interface
    function four_vector_py (p_obj) result (py) bind(C)
      import
      real(c_double) :: py
      type(c_ptr), value :: p_obj
    end function four_vector_py
  end interface
  interface
    function four_vector_pz (p_obj) result (pz) bind(C)

```

```

        import
        real(c_double) :: pz
        type(c_ptr), value :: p_obj
    end function four_vector_pz
end interface
interface
    function four_vector_e (p_obj) result (e) bind(C)
        import
        real(c_double) :: e
        type(c_ptr), value :: p_obj
    end function four_vector_e
end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_four_vector_to_vector4
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_four_vector_to_vector4 (pp, p)
        type(hepmc_four_vector_t), intent(in) :: pp
        type(vector4_t), intent(out) :: p
        real(default) :: E
        real(default), dimension(3) :: p3
        E = four_vector_e (pp%obj)
        p3(1) = four_vector_px (pp%obj)
        p3(2) = four_vector_py (pp%obj)
        p3(3) = four_vector_pz (pp%obj)
        p = vector4_moving (E, vector3_moving (p3))
    end subroutine hepmc_four_vector_to_vector4

```

### 19.8.3 Polarization

Polarization objects are temporarily used for assigning particle polarization. We add a flag `polarized`. If this is false, the polarization is not set and should not be transferred to `hepmc_particle` objects.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_polarization_t
<HepMC interface: types>+≡
    type :: hepmc_polarization_t
        private
        logical :: polarized = .false.
        type(c_ptr) :: obj
    end type hepmc_polarization_t

```

Constructor. The C wrapper takes polar and azimuthal angle as arguments. The Fortran version allows for either a complete polarization density matrix, or for a definite (diagonal) helicity.

*HepMC does not allow to specify the degree of polarization, therefore we have to map it to either 0 or 1. We choose 0 for polarization less than 0.5 and 1 for polarization greater than 0.5. Even this simplification works only for spin-1/2 and for massless particles; massive vector bosons cannot be treated this way. In particular, zero helicity is always translated as unpolarized.*

*For massive vector bosons, we arbitrarily choose the convention that the longitudinal (zero) helicity state is mapped to the theta angle  $\pi/2$ . This works under the condition that helicity is projected onto one of the basis states.*

```

(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_polarization (theta, phi) bind(C)
    import
      real(c_double), value :: theta, phi
    end function new_polarization
  end interface

(HepMC interface: public)+≡
  public :: hepmc_polarization_init

(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡
  interface hepmc_polarization_init
    module procedure hepmc_polarization_init_pol
    module procedure hepmc_polarization_init_hel
    module procedure hepmc_polarization_init_int
  end interface

(HepMC interface: procedures)+≡
  subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_pol (hpol, pol)
    type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(out) :: hpol
    type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
    real(default) :: r, theta, phi
    if (polarization_is_polarized (pol)) then
      call polarization_to_angles (pol, r, theta, phi)
      if (r >= 0.5) then
        hpol%polarized = .true.
        hpol%obj = new_polarization &
          (real (theta, c_double), real (phi, c_double))
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_pol

  subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_hel (hpol, hel)
    type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(out) :: hpol
    type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
    integer, dimension(2) :: h
    if (helicity_is_defined (hel)) then
      h = helicity_get (hel)
      select case (h(1))
        case (1:)
          hpol%polarized = .true.
          hpol%obj = new_polarization (0._c_double, 0._c_double)
        case (:-1)
          hpol%polarized = .true.
          hpol%obj = new_polarization (real (pi, c_double), 0._c_double)
        case (0)
          hpol%polarized = .true.
          hpol%obj = new_polarization (real (pi/2, c_double), 0._c_double)
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_hel

```

```

subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_int (hpol, hel)
  type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(out) :: hpol
  integer, intent(in) :: hel
  select case (hel)
  case (1:)
    hpol%polarized = .true.
    hpol%obj = new_polarization (0._c_double, 0._c_double)
  case (:-1)
    hpol%polarized = .true.
    hpol%obj = new_polarization (real (pi, c_double), 0._c_double)
  case (0)
    hpol%polarized = .true.
    hpol%obj = new_polarization (real (pi/2, c_double), 0._c_double)
  end select
end subroutine hepmc_polarization_init_int

```

Destructor. The C object is deallocated only if the polarized flag is set.

*<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface
  subroutine polarization_delete (pol_obj) bind(C)
  import
  type(c_ptr), value :: pol_obj
  end subroutine polarization_delete
end interface

```

*<HepMC interface: public>+≡*

```

public :: hepmc_polarization_final

```

*<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine hepmc_polarization_final (hpol)
  type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(inout) :: hpol
  if (hpol%polarized) call polarization_delete (hpol%obj)
end subroutine hepmc_polarization_final

```

Recover polarization from HepMC polarization object (with the abovementioned deficiencies).

*<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡*

```

interface
  function polarization_theta (pol_obj) result (theta) bind(C)
  import
  real(c_double) :: theta
  type(c_ptr), value :: pol_obj
  end function polarization_theta
end interface
interface
  function polarization_phi (pol_obj) result (phi) bind(C)
  import
  real(c_double) :: phi
  type(c_ptr), value :: pol_obj
  end function polarization_phi
end interface

```

*<HepMC interface: public>+≡*

```

public :: hepmc_polarization_to_pol

```



```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_polarization_to_pol (hpol, flv, pol)
    type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(in) :: hpol
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    type(polarization_t), intent(out) :: pol
    real(default) :: theta, phi
    theta = polarization_theta (hpol%obj)
    phi = polarization_phi (hpol%obj)
    call polarization_init_angles (pol, flv, 1._default, theta, phi)
  end subroutine hepmc_polarization_to_pol

```

Recover helicity. Here,  $\phi$  is ignored and only the sign of  $\cos \theta$  is relevant, mapped to positive/negative helicity.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_polarization_to_hel

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_polarization_to_hel (hpol, flv, hel)
    type(hepmc_polarization_t), intent(in) :: hpol
    type(flavor_t), intent(in) :: flv
    type(helicity_t), intent(out) :: hel
    real(default) :: theta
    integer :: hmax
    theta = polarization_theta (hpol%obj)
    hmax = flavor_get_spin_type (flv) / 2
    call helicity_init (hel, sign (hmax, nint (cos (theta))))
  end subroutine hepmc_polarization_to_hel

```

#### 19.8.4 GenParticle

Particle objects have the obvious meaning.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_particle_t

<HepMC interface: types>+≡
  type :: hepmc_particle_t
  private
  type(c_ptr) :: obj
  end type hepmc_particle_t

```

Constructor. The C version takes a FourVector object, which in the Fortran wrapper is created on the fly from a `vector4` Lorentz vector.

No destructor is needed as long as all particles are entered into vertex containers.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_gen_particle (prt_obj, pdg_id, status) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    integer(c_int), value :: pdg_id, status
  end function new_gen_particle
  end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_init

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_particle_init (prt, p, pdg, status)
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(out) :: prt
        type(vector4_t), intent(in) :: p
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg, status
        type(hepmc_four_vector_t) :: pp
        call hepmc_four_vector_init (pp, p)
        prt%obj = new_gen_particle (pp%obj, int (pdg, c_int), int (status, c_int))
        call hepmc_four_vector_final (pp)
    end subroutine hepmc_particle_init

```

Set the particle color flow.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine gen_particle_set_flow (prt_obj, code_index, code) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
            integer(c_int), value :: code_index, code
        end subroutine gen_particle_set_flow
    end interface

```

Set the particle color. Either from a color\_t object or directly from a pair of integers.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface hepmc_particle_set_color
        module procedure hepmc_particle_set_color_col
        module procedure hepmc_particle_set_color_int
    end interface hepmc_particle_set_color

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_set_color

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_particle_set_color_col (prt, col)
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        type(color_t), intent(in) :: col
        integer(c_int) :: c
        c = color_get_col (col)
        if (c /= 0) call gen_particle_set_flow (prt%obj, 1_c_int, c)
        c = color_get_acl (col)
        if (c /= 0) call gen_particle_set_flow (prt%obj, 2_c_int, c)
    end subroutine hepmc_particle_set_color_col

    subroutine hepmc_particle_set_color_int (prt, col)
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
        integer, dimension(2), intent(in) :: col
        integer(c_int) :: c
        c = col(1)
        if (c /= 0) call gen_particle_set_flow (prt%obj, 1_c_int, c)
        c = col(2)
        if (c /= 0) call gen_particle_set_flow (prt%obj, 2_c_int, c)
    end subroutine hepmc_particle_set_color_int

```

Set the particle polarization. For the restrictions on particle polarization in HepMC, see above `hepmc_polarization_init`.

*(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡*

```
interface
  subroutine gen_particle_set_polarization (prt_obj, pol_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj, pol_obj
  end subroutine gen_particle_set_polarization
end interface
```

*(HepMC interface: public)+≡*

```
public :: hepmc_particle_set_polarization
```

*(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡*

```
interface hepmc_particle_set_polarization
  module procedure hepmc_particle_set_polarization_pol
  module procedure hepmc_particle_set_polarization_hel
  module procedure hepmc_particle_set_polarization_int
end interface
```

*(HepMC interface: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_pol (prt, pol)
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  type(polarization_t), intent(in) :: pol
  type(hepmc_polarization_t) :: hpol
  call hepmc_polarization_init (hpol, pol)
  if (hpol%polarized) call gen_particle_set_polarization (prt%obj, hpol%obj)
  call hepmc_polarization_final (hpol)
end subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_pol
```

```
subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_hel (prt, hel)
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  type(helicity_t), intent(in) :: hel
  type(hepmc_polarization_t) :: hpol
  call hepmc_polarization_init (hpol, hel)
  if (hpol%polarized) call gen_particle_set_polarization (prt%obj, hpol%obj)
  call hepmc_polarization_final (hpol)
end subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_hel
```

```
subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_int (prt, hel)
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(inout) :: prt
  integer, intent(in) :: hel
  type(hepmc_polarization_t) :: hpol
  call hepmc_polarization_init (hpol, hel)
  if (hpol%polarized) call gen_particle_set_polarization (prt%obj, hpol%obj)
  call hepmc_polarization_final (hpol)
end subroutine hepmc_particle_set_polarization_int
```

Return the HepMC barcode (unique integer ID) of the particle.

*(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡*

```
interface
  function gen_particle_barcode (prt_obj) result (barcode) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int) :: barcode
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
  end function gen_particle_barcode
```

```

        end function gen_particle_barcode
    end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_particle_get_barcode

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        function hepmc_particle_get_barcode (prt) result (barcode)
            integer :: barcode
            type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
            barcode = gen_particle_barcode (prt%obj)
        end function hepmc_particle_get_barcode

```

Return the four-vector component of the particle object as a `vector4_t` Lorentz vector.

```

    <HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
        interface
            type(c_ptr) function gen_particle_momentum (prt_obj) bind(C)
                import
                type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
            end function gen_particle_momentum
        end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_particle_get_momentum

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        function hepmc_particle_get_momentum (prt) result (p)
            type(vector4_t) :: p
            type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
            type(hepmc_four_vector_t) :: pp
            call hepmc_four_vector_init (pp, prt)
            call hepmc_four_vector_to_vector4 (pp, p)
            call hepmc_four_vector_final (pp)
        end function hepmc_particle_get_momentum

```

Return the invariant mass squared of the particle object. HepMC stores the signed invariant mass (no squaring).

```

    <HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
        interface
            function gen_particle_generated_mass (prt_obj) result (mass) bind(C)
                import
                real(c_double) :: mass
                type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
            end function gen_particle_generated_mass
        end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_particle_get_mass_squared

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        function hepmc_particle_get_mass_squared (prt) result (m2)
            real(default) :: m2
            type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
            real(default) :: m
            m = gen_particle_generated_mass (prt%obj)

```

```

    m2 = sign (m**2, m)
end function hepmc_particle_get_mass_squared

```

Return the PDG ID:

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
    function gen_particle_pdg_id (prt_obj) result (pdg_id) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int) :: pdg_id
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    end function gen_particle_pdg_id
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
public :: hepmc_particle_get_pdg

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
function hepmc_particle_get_pdg (prt) result (pdg)
    integer :: pdg
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    pdg = gen_particle_pdg_id (prt%obj)
end function hepmc_particle_get_pdg

```

Return the status code:

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
    function gen_particle_status (prt_obj) result (status) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int) :: status
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    end function gen_particle_status
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
public :: hepmc_particle_get_status

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
function hepmc_particle_get_status (prt) result (status)
    integer :: status
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    status = gen_particle_status (prt%obj)
end function hepmc_particle_get_status

```

Return the production/decay vertex (as a pointer, no finalization necessary).

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
    type(c_ptr) function gen_particle_production_vertex (prt_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    end function gen_particle_production_vertex
end interface
interface
    type(c_ptr) function gen_particle_end_vertex (prt_obj) bind(C)
    import

```

```

        type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    end function gen_particle_end_vertex
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_production_vertex
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_decay_vertex

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_particle_get_production_vertex (prt) result (v)
        type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        v%obj = gen_particle_production_vertex (prt%obj)
    end function hepmc_particle_get_production_vertex

    function hepmc_particle_get_decay_vertex (prt) result (v)
        type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        v%obj = gen_particle_end_vertex (prt%obj)
    end function hepmc_particle_get_decay_vertex

```

Return the number of parents/children.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_n_parents
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_n_children

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_particle_get_n_parents (prt) result (n_parents)
        integer :: n_parents
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
        v = hepmc_particle_get_production_vertex (prt)
        if (hepmc_vertex_is_valid (v)) then
            n_parents = hepmc_vertex_get_n_in (v)
        else
            n_parents = 0
        end if
    end function hepmc_particle_get_n_parents

    function hepmc_particle_get_n_children (prt) result (n_children)
        integer :: n_children
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
        v = hepmc_particle_get_decay_vertex (prt)
        if (hepmc_vertex_is_valid (v)) then
            n_children = hepmc_vertex_get_n_out (v)
        else
            n_children = 0
        end if
    end function hepmc_particle_get_n_children

```

Convenience function: Return the array of parent particles for a given HepMC particle. The contents are HepMC barcodes that still have to be mapped to the particle indices.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡

```

```

public :: hepmc_particle_get_parent_barcodes
public :: hepmc_particle_get_child_barcodes

(HepMC interface: procedures)+≡
function hepmc_particle_get_parent_barcodes (prt) result (parent_barcode)
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: parent_barcode
    type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
    type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t) :: it
    integer :: i
    v = hepmc_particle_get_production_vertex (prt)
    if (hepmc_vertex_is_valid (v)) then
        allocate (parent_barcode (hepmc_vertex_get_n_in (v)))
        if (size (parent_barcode) /= 0) then
            call hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_init (it, v)
            do i = 1, size (parent_barcode)
                parent_barcode(i) = hepmc_particle_get_barcode &
                    (hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_get (it))
                call hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_advance (it)
            end do
            call hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_final (it)
        end if
    else
        allocate (parent_barcode (0))
    end if
end function hepmc_particle_get_parent_barcodes

function hepmc_particle_get_child_barcodes (prt) result (child_barcode)
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: child_barcode
    type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v
    type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t) :: it
    integer :: i
    v = hepmc_particle_get_decay_vertex (prt)
    if (hepmc_vertex_is_valid (v)) then
        allocate (child_barcode (hepmc_vertex_get_n_out (v)))
        call hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_init (it, v)
        if (size (child_barcode) /= 0) then
            do i = 1, size (child_barcode)
                child_barcode(i) = hepmc_particle_get_barcode &
                    (hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_get (it))
                call hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_advance (it)
            end do
            call hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_final (it)
        end if
    else
        allocate (child_barcode (0))
    end if
end function hepmc_particle_get_child_barcodes

```

Return the polarization (assuming that the particle is completely polarized).  
 Note that the generated polarization object needs finalization.

```

(HepMC interface: interfaces)+≡
interface

```

```

        type(c_ptr) function gen_particle_polarization (prt_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
        end function gen_particle_polarization
    end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_polarization
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_particle_get_polarization (prt) result (pol)
        type(hepmc_polarization_t) :: pol
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        pol%obj = gen_particle_polarization (prt%obj)
    end function hepmc_particle_get_polarization

Return the particle color as a two-dimensional array (color, anticolor).
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        function gen_particle_flow (prt_obj, code_index) result (code) bind(C)
            import
            integer(c_int) :: code
            type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
            integer(c_int), value :: code_index
        end function gen_particle_flow
    end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_particle_get_color
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_particle_get_color (prt) result (col)
        integer, dimension(2) :: col
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        col(1) = gen_particle_flow (prt%obj, 1)
        col(2) = - gen_particle_flow (prt%obj, 2)
    end function hepmc_particle_get_color

```

### 19.8.5 GenVertex

Vertices are made of particles (incoming and outgoing).

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_t
<HepMC interface: types>+≡
    type :: hepmc_vertex_t
    private
        type(c_ptr) :: obj
    end type hepmc_vertex_t

```

Constructor. Two versions, one plain, one with the position in space and time (measured in mm) as argument. The Fortran version has initializer form, and the vertex position is an optional argument.



A destructor is unnecessary as long as all vertices are entered into an event container.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_gen_vertex () bind(C)
    import
    end function new_gen_vertex
  end interface
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_gen_vertex_pos (prt_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: prt_obj
    end function new_gen_vertex_pos
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_vertex_init
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_vertex_init (v, x)
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(out) :: v
    type(vector4_t), intent(in), optional :: x
    type(hepmc_four_vector_t) :: pos
    if (present (x)) then
      call hepmc_four_vector_init (pos, x)
      v%obj = new_gen_vertex_pos (pos%obj)
      call hepmc_four_vector_final (pos)
    else
      v%obj = new_gen_vertex ()
    end if
  end subroutine hepmc_vertex_init

```

Return true if the vertex pointer is non-null:

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    function gen_vertex_is_valid (v_obj) result (flag) bind(C)
    import
    logical(c_bool) :: flag
    type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end function gen_vertex_is_valid
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_vertex_is_valid
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  function hepmc_vertex_is_valid (v) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
    flag = gen_vertex_is_valid (v%obj)
  end function hepmc_vertex_is_valid

```

Add a particle to a vertex, incoming or outgoing.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface

```

```

        subroutine gen_vertex_add_particle_in (v_obj, prt_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj, prt_obj
        end subroutine gen_vertex_add_particle_in
    end interface
interface
    subroutine gen_vertex_add_particle_out (v_obj, prt_obj) bind(C)
        import
        type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj, prt_obj
    end subroutine gen_vertex_add_particle_out
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in
    public :: hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v, prt)
        type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(inout) :: v
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        call gen_vertex_add_particle_in (v%obj, prt%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in

    subroutine hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v, prt)
        type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(inout) :: v
        type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt
        call gen_vertex_add_particle_out (v%obj, prt%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out

Return the number of incoming/outgoing particles.

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        function gen_vertex_particles_in_size (v_obj) result (size) bind(C)
            import
            integer(c_int) :: size
            type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
        end function gen_vertex_particles_in_size
    end interface
interface
    function gen_vertex_particles_out_size (v_obj) result (size) bind(C)
        import
        integer(c_int) :: size
        type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end function gen_vertex_particles_out_size
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_get_n_in
    public :: hepmc_vertex_get_n_out

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_vertex_get_n_in (v) result (n_in)
        integer :: n_in
        type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
        n_in = gen_vertex_particles_in_size (v%obj)
    end function hepmc_vertex_get_n_in

```

```

function hepmc_vertex_get_n_out (v) result (n_out)
  integer :: n_out
  type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
  n_out = gen_vertex_particles_out_size (v%obj)
end function hepmc_vertex_get_n_out

```

### 19.8.6 Vertex-particle-in iterator

This iterator iterates over all incoming particles in an vertex. We store a pointer to the vertex in addition to the iterator. This allows for simple end checking.

The iterator is actually a constant iterator; it can only read.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t

<HepMC interface: types>+≡
  type :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t
  private
  type(c_ptr) :: obj
  type(c_ptr) :: v_obj
end type hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t

```

Constructor. The iterator is initialized at the first particle in the vertex.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function &
      new_vertex_particles_in_const_iterator (v_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end function new_vertex_particles_in_const_iterator
  end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_init

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_init (it, v)
    type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(out) :: it
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
    it%obj = new_vertex_particles_in_const_iterator (v%obj)
    it%v_obj = v%obj
  end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_init

```

Destructor. Necessary because the iterator is allocated on the heap.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_delete (it_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
    end subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_delete
  end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_final
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_final (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_delete (it%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_final

```

Increment

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_advance (it_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
        end subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_advance
    end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_advance
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_advance (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_advance (it%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_advance

```

Reset to the beginning

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_reset &
            (it_obj, v_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, v_obj
        end subroutine vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_reset
    end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_reset
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_reset (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_reset (it%obj, it%v_obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_reset

```

Test: return true as long as we are not past the end.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        function vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_is_valid &
            (it_obj, v_obj) result (flag) bind(C)
            import
            logical(c_bool) :: flag
            type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, v_obj
        end function vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_is_valid
    end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_is_valid

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_is_valid (it) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
        flag = vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_is_valid (it%obj, it%v_obj)
    end function hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_is_valid

```

Return the particle pointed to by the iterator. (The particle object should not be finalized, since it contains merely a pointer to the particle which is owned by the vertex.)

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        type(c_ptr) function &
            vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_get (it_obj) bind(C)
        import
        type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
        end function vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_get
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_get

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_get (it) result (prt)
        type(hepmc_particle_t) :: prt
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
        prt%obj = vertex_particles_in_const_iterator_get (it%obj)
    end function hepmc_vertex_particle_in_iterator_get

```

### 19.8.7 Vertex-particle-out iterator

This iterator iterates over all incoming particles in an vertex. We store a pointer to the vertex in addition to the iterator. This allows for simple end checking.

The iterator is actually a constant iterator; it can only read.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t

<HepMC interface: types>+≡
    type :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t
    private
    type(c_ptr) :: obj
    type(c_ptr) :: v_obj
    end type hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t

```

Constructor. The iterator is initialized at the first particle in the vertex.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        type(c_ptr) function &
            new_vertex_particles_out_const_iterator (v_obj) bind(C)
        import
    end interface

```

```

        type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end function new_vertex_particles_out_const_iterator
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_init

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_init (it, v)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(out) :: it
        type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
        it%obj = new_vertex_particles_out_const_iterator (v%obj)
        it%v_obj = v%obj
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_init

```

Destructor. Necessary because the iterator is allocated on the heap.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_delete (it_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
        end subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_delete
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_final

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_final (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_delete (it%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_final

```

Increment

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_advance (it_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
        end subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_advance
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_advance

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_advance (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_advance (it%obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_advance

```

Reset to the beginning

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_reset &

```

```

        (it_obj, v_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, v_obj
    end subroutine vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_reset
end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_reset

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_reset (it)
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
        call vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_reset (it%obj, it%v_obj)
    end subroutine hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_reset

```

Test: return true as long as we are not past the end.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        function vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_is_valid &
            (it_obj, v_obj) result (flag) bind(C)
        import
        logical(c_bool) :: flag
        type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, v_obj
        end function vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_is_valid
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_is_valid

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_is_valid (it) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
        flag = vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_is_valid (it%obj, it%v_obj)
    end function hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_is_valid

```

Return the particle pointed to by the iterator. (The particle object should not be finalized, since it contains merely a pointer to the particle which is owned by the vertex.)

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        type(c_ptr) function &
            vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_get (it_obj) bind(C)
        import
        type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
        end function vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_get
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_get

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_get (it) result (prt)
        type(hepmc_particle_t) :: prt
        type(hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
        prt%obj = vertex_particles_out_const_iterator_get (it%obj)
    end function hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_get

```

```
end function hepmc_vertex_particle_out_iterator_get
```

### 19.8.8 GenEvent

The main object of HepMC is a GenEvent. The object is filled by GenVertex objects, which in turn contain GenParticle objects.

```
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_t

<HepMC interface: types>+≡
  type :: hepmc_event_t
  private
  type(c_ptr) :: obj
end type hepmc_event_t
```

Constructor. Arguments are process ID (integer) and event ID (integer).

The Fortran version has initializer form.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_gen_event (proc_id, event_id) bind(C)
    import
    integer(c_int), value :: proc_id, event_id
    end function new_gen_event
  end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_init

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_init (evt, proc_id, event_id)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(out) :: evt
    integer, intent(in), optional :: proc_id, event_id
    integer(c_int) :: pid, eid
    pid = 0; if (present (proc_id)) pid = proc_id
    eid = 0; if (present (event_id)) eid = event_id
    evt%obj = new_gen_event (pid, eid)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_init
```

Destructor.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_delete (evt_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    end subroutine gen_event_delete
  end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_final
```



```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_final (evt)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    call gen_event_delete (evt%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_final

```

Screen output. Printing to file is possible in principle (using a C++ output channel), by allowing an argument. Printing to an open Fortran unit is obviously not possible.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_print (evt_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    end subroutine gen_event_print
  end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_print

```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_print (evt)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    call gen_event_print (evt%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_print

```

Get the event number.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    integer(c_int) function gen_event_event_number (evt_obj) bind(C)
      use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    end function gen_event_event_number
  end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_get_event_index

```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  function hepmc_event_get_event_index (evt) result (i_proc)
    integer :: i_proc
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    i_proc = gen_event_event_number (evt%obj)
  end function hepmc_event_get_event_index

```

Set the numeric signal process ID

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_set_signal_process_id (evt_obj, proc_id) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
      integer(c_int), value :: proc_id
    end subroutine gen_event_set_signal_process_id
  end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_event_set_process_id

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_event_set_process_id (evt, proc)
        type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
        integer, intent(in) :: proc
        integer(c_int) :: i_proc
        i_proc = proc
        call gen_event_set_signal_process_id (evt%obj, i_proc)
    end subroutine hepmc_event_set_process_id

```

Get the numeric signal process ID

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        integer(c_int) function gen_event_signal_process_id (evt_obj) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
        end function gen_event_signal_process_id
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_event_get_process_id

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    function hepmc_event_get_process_id (evt) result (i_proc)
        integer :: i_proc
        type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
        i_proc = gen_event_signal_process_id (evt%obj)
    end function hepmc_event_get_process_id

```

Set the event energy scale

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
    interface
        subroutine gen_event_set_event_scale (evt_obj, scale) bind(C)
            import
            type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
            real(c_double), value :: scale
        end subroutine gen_event_set_event_scale
    end interface

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
    public :: hepmc_event_set_scale

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine hepmc_event_set_scale (evt, scale)
        type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
        real(default), intent(in) :: scale
        real(c_double) :: cscale
        cscale = scale
        call gen_event_set_event_scale (evt%obj, cscale)
    end subroutine hepmc_event_set_scale

```

Get the event energy scale

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡  
  interface  
    real(c_double) function gen_event_event_scale (evt_obj) bind(C)  
    import  
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj  
    end function gen_event_event_scale  
  end interface  
  
<HepMC interface: public>+≡  
  public :: hepmc_event_get_scale  
  
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡  
  function hepmc_event_get_scale (evt) result (scale)  
    real(default) :: scale  
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt  
    scale = gen_event_event_scale (evt%obj)  
  end function hepmc_event_get_scale
```

Set the value of  $\alpha_{\text{QCD}}$ .

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡  
  interface  
    subroutine gen_event_set_alpha_qcd (evt_obj, a) bind(C)  
    import  
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj  
    real(c_double), value :: a  
    end subroutine gen_event_set_alpha_qcd  
  end interface  
  
<HepMC interface: public>+≡  
  public :: hepmc_event_set_alpha_qcd  
  
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡  
  subroutine hepmc_event_set_alpha_qcd (evt, alpha)  
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt  
    real(default), intent(in) :: alpha  
    real(c_double) :: a  
    a = alpha  
    call gen_event_set_alpha_qcd (evt%obj, a)  
  end subroutine hepmc_event_set_alpha_qcd
```

Get the value of  $\alpha_{\text{QCD}}$ .

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡  
  interface  
    real(c_double) function gen_event_alpha_qcd (evt_obj) bind(C)  
    import  
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj  
    end function gen_event_alpha_qcd  
  end interface  
  
<HepMC interface: public>+≡  
  public :: hepmc_event_get_alpha_qcd
```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
function hepmc_event_get_alpha_qcd (evt) result (alpha)
  real(default) :: alpha
  type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
  alpha = gen_event_alpha_qcd (evt%obj)
end function hepmc_event_get_alpha_qcd

```

Set the value of  $\alpha_{\text{QED}}$ .

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
  subroutine gen_event_set_alpha_qed (evt_obj, a) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    real(c_double), value :: a
  end subroutine gen_event_set_alpha_qed
end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
public :: hepmc_event_set_alpha_qed

```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
subroutine hepmc_event_set_alpha_qed (evt, alpha)
  type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
  real(default), intent(in) :: alpha
  real(c_double) :: a
  a = alpha
  call gen_event_set_alpha_qed (evt%obj, a)
end subroutine hepmc_event_set_alpha_qed

```

Get the value of  $\alpha_{\text{QED}}$ .

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
  real(c_double) function gen_event_alpha_qed (evt_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
  end function gen_event_alpha_qed
end interface

```

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
public :: hepmc_event_get_alpha_qed

```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
function hepmc_event_get_alpha_qed (evt) result (alpha)
  real(default) :: alpha
  type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
  alpha = gen_event_alpha_qed (evt%obj)
end function hepmc_event_get_alpha_qed

```

Clear a weight value to the end of the weight container.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
interface
  subroutine gen_event_clear_weights (evt_obj) bind(C)
    use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
  end subroutine gen_event_clear_weights
end interface

```

```

        end subroutine gen_event_clear_weights
    end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_event_clear_weights

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        subroutine hepmc_event_clear_weights (evt)
            type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
            call gen_event_clear_weights (evt%obj)
        end subroutine hepmc_event_clear_weights

```

Add a weight value to the end of the weight container.

```

    <HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
        interface
            subroutine gen_event_add_weight (evt_obj, w) bind(C)
                use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
                type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
                real(c_double), value :: w
            end subroutine gen_event_add_weight
        end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_event_add_weight

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        subroutine hepmc_event_add_weight (evt, weight)
            type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
            real(default), intent(in) :: weight
            real(c_double) :: w
            w = weight
            call gen_event_add_weight (evt%obj, w)
        end subroutine hepmc_event_add_weight

```

Get the size of the weight container (the number of valid elements).

```

    <HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
        interface
            integer(c_int) function gen_event_weights_size (evt_obj) bind(C)
                use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
                type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
            end function gen_event_weights_size
        end interface

    <HepMC interface: public>+≡
        public :: hepmc_event_get_weights_size

    <HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
        function hepmc_event_get_weights_size (evt) result (n)
            integer :: n
            type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
            n = gen_event_weights_size (evt%obj)
        end function hepmc_event_get_weights_size

```

Get the value of the weight with index i. (Count from 1, while C counts from zero.)

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    real(c_double) function gen_event_weight (evt_obj, i) bind(C)
      use iso_c_binding !NODEP!
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
      integer(c_int), value :: i
    end function gen_event_weight
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_get_weight
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  function hepmc_event_get_weight (evt, index) result (weight)
    real(default) :: weight
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    integer, intent(in) :: index
    integer(c_int) :: i
    i = index - 1
    weight = gen_event_weight (evt%obj, i)
  end function hepmc_event_get_weight

```

Add a vertex to the event container.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_add_vertex (evt_obj, v_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
      type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end subroutine gen_event_add_vertex
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_add_vertex
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
    call gen_event_add_vertex (evt%obj, v%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_add_vertex

```

Mark a particular vertex as the signal process (hard interaction).

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_set_signal_process_vertex (evt_obj, v_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
      type(c_ptr), value :: v_obj
    end subroutine gen_event_set_signal_process_vertex
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_set_signal_process_vertex

```

```

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_set_signal_process_vertex (evt, v)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(in) :: v
    call gen_event_set_signal_process_vertex (evt%obj, v%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_set_signal_process_vertex

```

Set the beam particles explicitly.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_set_beam_particles

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_set_beam_particles (evt, prt1, prt2)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(in) :: prt1, prt2
    logical(c_bool) :: flag
    flag = gen_event_set_beam_particles (evt%obj, prt1%obj, prt2%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_set_beam_particles

```

The C function returns a boolean which we do not use.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    logical(c_bool) function gen_event_set_beam_particles &
      (evt_obj, prt1_obj, prt2_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj, prt1_obj, prt2_obj
    end function gen_event_set_beam_particles
  end interface

```

Set the cross section and error explicitly. Note that HepMC uses pb, while WHIZARD uses fb.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_set_cross_section

<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_set_cross_section (evt, xsec, xsec_err)
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(inout) :: evt
    real(default), intent(in) :: xsec, xsec_err
    call gen_event_set_cross_section &
      (evt%obj, &
        real (xsec * 1e-3_default, c_double), &
        real (xsec_err * 1e-3_default, c_double))
  end subroutine hepmc_event_set_cross_section

```

The C function returns a boolean which we do not use.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine gen_event_set_cross_section (evt_obj, xs, xs_err) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    real(c_double), value :: xs, xs_err
    end subroutine gen_event_set_cross_section
  end interface

```

```
end interface
```

### 19.8.9 Event-particle iterator

This iterator iterates over all particles in an event. We store a pointer to the event in addition to the iterator. This allows for simple end checking.

The iterator is actually a constant iterator; it can only read.

```
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t
<HepMC interface: types>+≡
  type :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t
  private
    type(c_ptr) :: obj
    type(c_ptr) :: evt_obj
  end type hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t
```

Constructor. The iterator is initialized at the first particle in the event.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_event_particle_const_iterator (evt_obj) bind(C)
    import
      type(c_ptr), value :: evt_obj
    end function new_event_particle_const_iterator
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_init
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_init (it, evt)
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(out) :: it
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    it%obj = new_event_particle_const_iterator (evt%obj)
    it%evt_obj = evt%obj
  end subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_init
```

Destructor. Necessary because the iterator is allocated on the heap.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_delete (it_obj) bind(C)
    import
      type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
    end subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_delete
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_final
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_final (it)
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
    call event_particle_const_iterator_delete (it%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_final
```



Increment

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_advance (it_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
    end subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_advance
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance (it)
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
    call event_particle_const_iterator_advance (it%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_advance
```

Reset to the beginning

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_reset (it_obj, evt_obj) bind(C)
      import
      type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, evt_obj
    end subroutine event_particle_const_iterator_reset
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_reset
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_reset (it)
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(inout) :: it
    call event_particle_const_iterator_reset (it%obj, it%evt_obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_event_particle_iterator_reset
```

Test: return true as long as we are not past the end.

```
<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    function event_particle_const_iterator_is_valid &
      (it_obj, evt_obj) result (flag) bind(C)
      import
      logical(c_bool) :: flag
      type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj, evt_obj
    end function event_particle_const_iterator_is_valid
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_is_valid
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  function hepmc_event_particle_iterator_is_valid (it) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    flag = event_particle_const_iterator_is_valid (it%obj, it%evt_obj)
  end function hepmc_event_particle_iterator_is_valid
```

Return the particle pointed to by the iterator. (The particle object should not be finalized, since it contains merely a pointer to the particle which is owned by the vertex.)

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function event_particle_const_iterator_get (it_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: it_obj
    end function event_particle_const_iterator_get
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_event_particle_iterator_get
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  function hepmc_event_particle_iterator_get (it) result (prt)
    type(hepmc_particle_t) :: prt
    type(hepmc_event_particle_iterator_t), intent(in) :: it
    prt%obj = event_particle_const_iterator_get (it%obj)
  end function hepmc_event_particle_iterator_get

```

### 19.8.10 I/O streams

There is a specific I/O stream type for handling the output of GenEvent objects (i.e., Monte Carlo event samples) to file. Opening the file is done by the constructor, closing by the destructor.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_t
<HepMC interface: types>+≡
  type :: hepmc_iostream_t
  private
  type(c_ptr) :: obj
  end type hepmc_iostream_t

```

Constructor for an output stream associated to a file.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_io_gen_event_out (filename) bind(C)
    import
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: filename
    end function new_io_gen_event_out
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_open_out
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_iostream_open_out (iostream, filename)
    type(hepmc_iostream_t), intent(out) :: iostream
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    iostream%obj = new_io_gen_event_out (char (filename) // c_null_char)
  end subroutine hepmc_iostream_open_out

```

Constructor for an input stream associated to a file.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    type(c_ptr) function new_io_gen_event_in (filename) bind(C)
    import
      character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: filename
    end function new_io_gen_event_in
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_open_in
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_iostream_open_in (iostream, filename)
    type(hepmc_iostream_t), intent(out) :: iostream
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: filename
    iostream%obj = new_io_gen_event_in (char (filename) // c_null_char)
  end subroutine hepmc_iostream_open_in

```

Destructor:

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine io_gen_event_delete (io_obj) bind(C)
    import
      type(c_ptr), value :: io_obj
    end subroutine io_gen_event_delete
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_close
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_iostream_close (iostream)
    type(hepmc_iostream_t), intent(inout) :: iostream
    call io_gen_event_delete (iostream%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_iostream_close

```

Write a single event to the I/O stream.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    subroutine io_gen_event_write_event (io_obj, evt_obj) bind(C)
    import
      type(c_ptr), value :: io_obj, evt_obj
    end subroutine io_gen_event_write_event
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_write_event
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_iostream_write_event (iostream, evt)
    type(hepmc_iostream_t), intent(inout) :: iostream
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    call io_gen_event_write_event (iostream%obj, evt%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_iostream_write_event

```

Read a single event from the I/O stream. Return true if successful.

```

<HepMC interface: interfaces>+≡
  interface
    logical(c_bool) function io_gen_event_read_event (io_obj, evt_obj) bind(C)
    import
    type(c_ptr), value :: io_obj, evt_obj
    end function io_gen_event_read_event
  end interface
<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_iostream_read_event
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_iostream_read_event (iostream, evt, ok)
    type(hepmc_iostream_t), intent(inout) :: iostream
    type(hepmc_event_t), intent(in) :: evt
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    ok = io_gen_event_read_event (iostream%obj, evt%obj)
  end subroutine hepmc_iostream_read_event

```

### 19.8.11 Unit tests

This test example is an abridged version from the build-from-scratch example in the HepMC distribution. We create two vertices for  $p \rightarrow q$  PDF splitting, then a vertex for a  $qq \rightarrow W^- g$  hard-interaction process, and finally a vertex for  $W^- \rightarrow qq$  decay. The setup is for LHC kinematics.

Extending the original example, we set color flow for the incoming quarks and polarization for the outgoing photon. For the latter, we have to define a particle-data object for the photon, so a flavor object can be correctly initialized.

```

<HepMC interface: public>+≡
  public :: hepmc_test
<HepMC interface: procedures>+≡
  subroutine hepmc_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <HepMC interface: execute tests>
  end subroutine hepmc_test

<HepMC interface: execute tests>≡
  call test (hepmc_interface_1, "hepmc_interface_1", &
    "check HepMC interface", &
    u, results)

<HepMC interface: tests>≡
  subroutine hepmc_interface_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    type(hepmc_event_t) :: evt
    type(hepmc_vertex_t) :: v1, v2, v3, v4
    type(hepmc_particle_t) :: prt1, prt2, prt3, prt4, prt5, prt6, prt7, prt8
    type(hepmc_iostream_t) :: iostream
    type(flavor_t) :: flv

```

```

type(color_t) :: col
type(polarization_t) :: pol
type(particle_data_t), target :: photon_data
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: HepMC interface"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test HepMC interface"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

! Initialize a photon flavor object and some polarization
call particle_data_init (photon_data, var_str ("PHOTON"), 22)
call particle_data_set (photon_data, spin_type=VECTOR)
call particle_data_freeze (photon_data)
call flavor_init (flv, photon_data)
call polarization_init_angles &
    (pol, flv, 0.6_default, 1._default, 0.5_default)

! Event initialization
call hepmc_event_init (evt, 20, 1)

write (u, "(A)")  "* p -> q splitting"
write (u, "(A)")

! $p\to q$ splittings
call hepmc_vertex_init (v1)
call hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v1)
call hepmc_vertex_init (v2)
call hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v2)
call particle_init (prt1, &
    0._default, 0._default, 7000._default, 7000._default, &
    2212, 3)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v1, prt1)
call particle_init (prt2, &
    0._default, 0._default, -7000._default, 7000._default, &
    2212, 3)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v2, prt2)
call particle_init (prt3, &
    .750_default, -1.569_default, 32.191_default, 32.238_default, &
    1, 3)
call color_init_from_array (col, [501])
call hepmc_particle_set_color (prt3, col)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v1, prt3)
call particle_init (prt4, &
    -3.047_default, -19._default, -54.629_default, 57.920_default, &
    -2, 3)
call color_init_from_array (col, [-501])
call hepmc_particle_set_color (prt4, col)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v2, prt4)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Hard interaction"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

! Hard interaction
call hepmc_vertex_init (v3)
call hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v3)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v3, prt3)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v3, prt4)
call particle_init (prt6, &
    -3.813_default, 0.113_default, -1.833_default, 4.233_default, &
    22, 1)
call hepmc_particle_set_polarization (prt6, pol)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v3, prt6)
call particle_init (prt5, &
    1.517_default, -20.68_default, -20.605_default, 85.925_default, &
    -24, 3)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v3, prt5)
call hepmc_event_set_signal_process_vertex (evt, v3)

! $W^-$ decay
call vertex_init_pos (v4, &
    0.12_default, -0.3_default, 0.05_default, 0.004_default)
call hepmc_event_add_vertex (evt, v4)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_in (v4, prt5)
call particle_init (prt7, &
    -2.445_default, 28.816_default, 6.082_default, 29.552_default, &
    1, 1)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v4, prt7)
call particle_init (prt8, &
    3.962_default, -49.498_default, -26.687_default, 56.373_default, &
    -2, 1)
call hepmc_vertex_add_particle_out (v4, prt8)

! Event output
call hepmc_event_print (evt)
write (u, "(A)") "Writing to file 'hepmc_test.hepmc'"
write (u, "(A)")

call hepmc_iostream_open_out (iostream, var_str ("hepmc_test.hepmc"))
call hepmc_iostream_write_event (iostream, evt)
call hepmc_iostream_close (iostream)

write (u, "(A)") "Writing completed"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "hepmc_test.hepmc", &
    action = "read", status = "old")
do
    read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
    if (buffer(1:14) == "HepMC::Version") buffer = "[...]"
    if (iostat /= 0) exit
    write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)

```

```

end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

! Wrapup
call polarization_final (pol)
call hepmc_event_final (evt)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: hepmc_interface_1"

contains

subroutine vertex_init_pos (v, x, y, z, t)
  type(hepmc_vertex_t), intent(out) :: v
  real(default), intent(in) :: x, y, z, t
  type(vector4_t) :: xx
  xx = vector4_moving (t, vector3_moving ([x, y, z]))
  call hepmc_vertex_init (v, xx)
end subroutine vertex_init_pos

subroutine particle_init (prt, px, py, pz, E, pdg, status)
  type(hepmc_particle_t), intent(out) :: prt
  real(default), intent(in) :: px, py, pz, E
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg, status
  type(vector4_t) :: p
  p = vector4_moving (E, vector3_moving ([px, py, pz]))
  call hepmc_particle_init (prt, p, pdg, status)
end subroutine particle_init

end subroutine hepmc_interface_1

```

## 19.9 HepMC Output

The HepMC event record is standardized. It is an ASCII format. We try our best at using it for both input and output.

```

<eio_hepmc.f90>≡
  <File header>

module eio_hepmc

  use kinds !NODEP!
  <Use file utils>
  <Use strings>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests

  use lorentz !NODEP!

```

```

    use models
    use particles
    use subevents
    use beams
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data
    use eio_base
    use hepmc_interface

    <Standard module head>

    <EIO HepMC: public>

    <EIO HepMC: types>

    contains

    <EIO HepMC: procedures>

    <EIO HepMC: tests>

    end module eio_hepmc

```

### 19.9.1 Type

```

<EIO HepMC: public>≡
    public :: eio_hepmc_t

<EIO HepMC: types>≡
    type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_hepmc_t
        logical :: writing = .false.
        logical :: keep_beams = .false.
        type(hepmc_iostream_t) :: iostream
    contains
        <EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP>
    end type eio_hepmc_t

```

### 19.9.2 Specific Methods

Set parameters that are specifically used with HepMC.

```

<EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP>≡
    procedure :: set_parameters => eio_hepmc_set_parameters

<EIO HepMC: procedures>≡
    subroutine eio_hepmc_set_parameters (eio, keep_beams, extension)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
        if (present (keep_beams)) eio%keep_beams = keep_beams
        if (present (extension)) then
            eio%extension = extension
        else

```



```

        eio%extension = "hepmc"
    end if
end subroutine eio_hepmc_set_parameters

```

### 19.9.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: write => eio_hepmc_write

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
    subroutine eio_hepmc_write (object, unit)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "HepMC event stream:"
        if (object%writing) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file   = ", char (object%filename)
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
        end if
        write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Keep beams      = ", object%keep_beams
    end subroutine eio_hepmc_write

```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: final => eio_hepmc_final

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
    subroutine eio_hepmc_final (object)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: object
        if (object%writing) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing HepMC file '", &
                char (object%filename), "'"
            call msg_message ()
            call hepmc_iostream_close (object%iostream)
            object%writing = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine eio_hepmc_final

```

Split event file: increment the counter, close the current file, open a new one. If the file needs a header, repeat it for the new file.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: split_out => eio_hepmc_split_out

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
    subroutine eio_hepmc_split_out (eio)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        if (eio%split) then
            eio%split_index = eio%split_index + 1

```

```

        call eio%set_filename ()
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to HepMC file '", &
            char (eio%filename), "'"
        call msg_message ()
        call hepmc_iostream_close (eio%iostream)
        call hepmc_iostream_open_out (eio%iostream, eio%filename)
    end if
end subroutine eio_hepmc_split_out

```

Initialize event writing.

*(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: init_out => eio_hepmc_init_out

```

*(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine eio_hepmc_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        if (.not. present (data)) &
            call msg_bug ("HepMC initialization: missing data")
        if (data%n_beam /= 2) &
            call msg_fatal ("HepMC: defined for scattering processes only")
        if (.not. data%unweighted) &
            call msg_fatal ("HepMC: events must be unweighted")
        call eio%set_splitting (data)
        eio%sample = sample
        eio%extension = "hepmc"
        call eio%set_filename ()
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to HepMC file '", &
            char (eio%filename), "'"
        call msg_message ()
        eio%writing = .true.
        call hepmc_iostream_open_out (eio%iostream, eio%filename)
        if (present (success)) success = .true.
    end subroutine eio_hepmc_init_out

```

Initialize event reading.

*(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: init_in => eio_hepmc_init_in

```

*(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine eio_hepmc_init_in &
        (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
        class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        call msg_bug ("HepMC: event input not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_hepmc_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: switch_inout => eio_hepmc_switch_inout

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_hepmc_switch_inout (eio, success)
    class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    call msg_bug ("HepMC: in-out switch not supported")
    if (present (success)) success = .false.
  end subroutine eio_hepmc_switch_inout

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and squared matrix element, then the particle set.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: output => eio_hepmc_output

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_hepmc_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
    class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
    integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
    type(hepmc_event_t) :: hepmc_event
    type(particle_set_t), pointer :: pset_ptr
    if (eio%writing) then
      pset_ptr => event%get_particle_set_ptr ()
      call hepmc_event_init (hepmc_event, proc_id = i_prc)
      call hepmc_event_from_particle_set (hepmc_event, pset_ptr)
      call hepmc_iostream_write_event (eio%iostream, hepmc_event)
      call hepmc_event_final (hepmc_event)
    else
      call eio%write ()
      call msg_fatal ("HepMC file is not open for writing")
    end if
  end subroutine eio_hepmc_output

```

Input an event.

```

(EIO HepMC: eio hepmc: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_hepmc_input_i_prc
  procedure :: input_event => eio_hepmc_input_event

(EIO HepMC: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_hepmc_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
    class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    call msg_bug ("HepMC: event input not supported")
    i_prc = 0
    iostat = 1
  end subroutine eio_hepmc_input_i_prc

```

```

subroutine eio_hepmc_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
  class(eio_hepmc_t), intent(inout) :: eio
  type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
  integer, intent(out) :: iostat
  call msg_bug ("HepMC: event input not supported")
  iostat = 1
end subroutine eio_hepmc_input_event

```

#### 19.9.4 Unit tests

```

<EIO HepMC: public>+≡
  public :: eio_hepmc_test

<EIO HepMC: tests>≡
  subroutine eio_hepmc_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <EIO HepMC: execute tests>
  end subroutine eio_hepmc_test

```

#### Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```

<EIO HepMC: execute tests>≡
  call test (eio_hepmc_1, "eio_hepmc_1", &
    "read and write event contents", &
    u, results)

<EIO HepMC: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_hepmc_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(116) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_hepmc_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process

```

```

allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_hepmc_1"

allocate (eio_hepmc_t :: eio)

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 42)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents (blanking out last two digits):"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".hepmc"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  if (trim (buffer) == "") cycle
  if (buffer(1:14) == "HepMC::Version") cycle
  if (buffer(1:10) == "P 10001 25") &
    call buffer_blanker (buffer, 32, 55, 78)
  if (buffer(1:10) == "P 10002 25") &
    call buffer_blanker (buffer, 33, 56, 79)
  if (buffer(1:10) == "P 10003 25") &
    call buffer_blanker (buffer, 29, 53, 78, 101)
  if (buffer(1:10) == "P 10004 25") &
    call buffer_blanker (buffer, 28, 51, 76, 99)
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_hepmc_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_hepmc_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_hepmc_1"

contains

subroutine buffer_blanker (buf, pos1, pos2, pos3, pos4)
  character(len=*), intent(inout) :: buf
  integer, intent(in) :: pos1, pos2, pos3
  integer, intent(in), optional :: pos4
  type(string_t) :: line
  line = var_str (trim (buf))
  line = replace (line, pos1, "XX")
  line = replace (line, pos2, "XX")
  line = replace (line, pos3, "XX")
  if (present (pos4)) then
    line = replace (line, pos4, "XX")
  end if
  line = replace (line, "4999999999999", "5000000000000")
  buf = char (line)
end subroutine buffer_blanker

end subroutine eio_hepmc_1

```

## 19.10 ASCII File Formats

Here, we implement several ASCII file formats. It is possible to switch between them using flags.

$\langle \text{eio\_ascii.f90} \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{File header} \rangle$

```
module eio_ascii

  use kinds !NODEP!
   $\langle \text{Use file utils} \rangle$ 
   $\langle \text{Use strings} \rangle$ 
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests

  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use models
  use particles
  use beams
  use processes
  use events
  use eio_data
  use eio_base
  use hep_common
  use hep_events

   $\langle \text{Standard module head} \rangle$ 

   $\langle \text{EIO ascii: public} \rangle$ 

   $\langle \text{EIO ascii: types} \rangle$ 

  contains

   $\langle \text{EIO ascii: procedures} \rangle$ 

   $\langle \text{EIO ascii: tests} \rangle$ 

end module eio_ascii
```

### 19.10.1 Type

$\langle \text{EIO ascii: public} \rangle \equiv$   
public :: eio\_ascii\_t

$\langle \text{EIO ascii: types} \rangle \equiv$   
type, abstract, extends (eio\_t) :: eio\_ascii\_t  
 logical :: writing = .false.  
 integer :: unit = 0  
 logical :: keep\_beams = .false.  
contains  
  $\langle \text{EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP} \rangle$   
end type eio\_ascii\_t

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_ascii_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_ascii_t
  end type eio_ascii_ascii_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_athena_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_athena_t
  end type eio_ascii_athena_t

```

The debug format has a few options that can be controlled by Sindarin variables.

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_debug_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_debug_t
    logical :: show_process = .true.
    logical :: show_transforms = .true.
    logical :: show_decay = .true.
    logical :: verbose = .true.
  end type eio_ascii_debug_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_hepevt_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_hepevt_t
  end type eio_ascii_hepevt_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t
  end type eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_lha_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_lha_t
  end type eio_ascii_lha_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_lha_verb_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_lha_verb_t
  end type eio_ascii_lha_verb_t

```



```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_long_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_long_t
  end type eio_ascii_long_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_mokka_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_mokka_t
  end type eio_ascii_mokka_t

```

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
  public :: eio_ascii_short_t

<EIO ascii: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_ascii_t) :: eio_ascii_short_t
  end type eio_ascii_short_t

```

## 19.10.2 Specific Methods

Set parameters that are specifically used with ASCII file formats. In particular, this is the file extension.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>≡
  procedure :: set_parameters => eio_ascii_set_parameters

<EIO ascii: procedures>≡
  subroutine eio_ascii_set_parameters (eio, keep_beams, extension, &
    show_process, show_transforms, show_decay, verbose)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    logical, intent(in), optional :: show_process, show_transforms, show_decay
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    if (present (keep_beams)) eio%keep_beams = keep_beams
    if (present (extension)) then
      eio%extension = extension
    else
      select type (eio)
      type is (eio_ascii_ascii_t)
        eio%extension = "evt"
      type is (eio_ascii_athena_t)
        eio%extension = "athena.evt"
      type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
        eio%extension = "debug"
      type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t)
        eio%extension = "hepevt"
      type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t)
        eio%extension = "hepevt.verb"
      type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
        eio%extension = "lha"
    end select
  end subroutine

```

```

        type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
            eio%extension = "lha.verb"
        type is (eio_ascii_long_t)
            eio%extension = "long.evt"
        type is (eio_ascii_mokka_t)
            eio%extension = "mokka.evt"
        type is (eio_ascii_short_t)
            eio%extension = "short.evt"
        end select
    end if
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
    if (present (show_process)) eio%show_process = show_process
    if (present (show_transforms)) eio%show_transforms = show_transforms
    if (present (show_decay)) eio%show_decay = show_decay
    if (present (verbose)) eio%verbose = verbose
end select
end subroutine eio_ascii_set_parameters

```

### 19.10.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

*(EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: write => eio_ascii_write

```

*(EIO ascii: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine eio_ascii_write (object, unit)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    select type (object)
    type is (eio_ascii_ascii_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (default format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_athena_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (ATHENA format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (Debugging format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (HEPEVT format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (verbose HEPEVT format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (LHA format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (verbose LHA format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_long_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (long format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_mokka_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (MOKKA format):"
    type is (eio_ascii_short_t)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "ASCII event stream (short format):"
    end select
end subroutine eio_ascii_write

```

```

end select
if (object%writing) then
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file  = ", char (object%filename)
else
    write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
end if
write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Keep beams      = ", object%keep_beams
select type (object)
type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Show process      = ", object%show_process
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Show transforms   = ", object%show_transforms
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Show decay tree    = ", object%show_decay
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Verbose output     = ", object%verbose
end select
end subroutine eio_ascii_write

```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => eio_ascii_final

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_ascii_final (object)
        class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: object
        if (object%writing) then
            write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing ASCII file '", &
                char (object%filename), "'"
            call msg_message ()
            close (object%unit)
            object%writing = .false.
        end if
    end subroutine eio_ascii_final

```

Initialize event writing.

Check weight normalization. This applies to all ASCII-type files that use the HEPUP common block. We can't allow normalization conventions that are not covered by the HEPUP definition.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_out => eio_ascii_init_out

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_ascii_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
        class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        integer :: i
        if (.not. present (data)) &
            call msg_bug ("ASCII initialization: missing data")
        if (data%n_beam /= 2) &
            call msg_fatal ("ASCII: defined for scattering processes only")
        eio%sample = sample
        call eio%check_normalization (data)
        call eio%set_splitting (data)
    end subroutine eio_ascii_init_out

```

```

call eio%set_filename ()
eio%unit = free_unit ()
write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to ASCII file '", &
char (eio%filename), "'"
call msg_message ()
eio%writing = .true.
open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), &
action = "write", status = "replace")
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
call heprup_init &
(data%pdg_beam, &
data%energy_beam, &
n_processes = data%n_proc, &
unweighted = data%unweighted, &
negative_weights = data%negative_weights)
do i = 1, data%n_proc
call heprup_set_process_parameters (i = i, &
process_id = data%proc_num_id(i), &
cross_section = data%cross_section(i), &
error = data%error(i))
end do
call heprup_write_ascii (eio%unit)
type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
call heprup_init &
(data%pdg_beam, &
data%energy_beam, &
n_processes = data%n_proc, &
unweighted = data%unweighted, &
negative_weights = data%negative_weights)
do i = 1, data%n_proc
call heprup_set_process_parameters (i = i, &
process_id = data%proc_num_id(i), &
cross_section = data%cross_section(i), &
error = data%error(i))
end do
call heprup_write_verbose (eio%unit)
end select
if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine eio_ascii_init_out

```

Some event properties do not go well with some output formats. In particular, many formats require unweighted events.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
procedure :: check_normalization => eio_ascii_check_normalization

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_check_normalization (eio, data)
class(eio_ascii_t), intent(in) :: eio
type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in) :: data
if (data%unweighted) then
else
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_athena_t); call msg_fatal &

```

```

        ("Event output (Athena format): events must be unweighted.")
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t); call msg_fatal &
        ("Event output (HEPEVT format): events must be unweighted.")
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t); call msg_fatal &
        ("Event output (HEPEVT format): events must be unweighted.")
end select
select case (data%norm_mode)
case (NORM_SIGMA)
case default
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
        call msg_fatal &
            ("Event output (LHA): normalization for weighted events &
            &must be 'sigma'")
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
        call msg_fatal &
            ("Event output (LHA): normalization for weighted events &
            &must be 'sigma'")
    end select
end select
end if
end subroutine eio_ascii_check_normalization

```

Initialize event reading.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_in => eio_ascii_init_in

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_ascii_init_in &
        (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    call msg_bug ("ASCII: event input not supported")
    if (present (success)) success = .false.
end subroutine eio_ascii_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_ascii_switch_inout

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_ascii_switch_inout (eio, success)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    call msg_bug ("ASCII: in-out switch not supported")
    if (present (success)) success = .false.
end subroutine eio_ascii_switch_inout

```

Split event file: increment the counter, close the current file, open a new one. If the file needs a header, repeat it for the new file. (We assume that the common block contents are still intact.)

```

(EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: split_out => eio_ascii_split_out

(EIO ascii: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_ascii_split_out (eio)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    if (eio%split) then
      eio%split_index = eio%split_index + 1
      call eio%set_filename ()
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to ASCII file '", &
        char (eio%filename), "'"
      call msg_message ()
      close (eio%unit)
      open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), &
        action = "write", status = "replace")
      select type (eio)
        type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
          call heprup_write_ascii (eio%unit)
        type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
          call heprup_write_verbose (eio%unit)
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine eio_ascii_split_out

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and squared matrix element, then the particle set.

```

(EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: output => eio_ascii_output

(EIO ascii: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_ascii_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
    class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
    integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
    logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
    if (eio%writing) then
      select type (eio)
        type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
          call hepeup_from_event (event, &
            process_index = i_prc, &
            keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
          call hepeup_write_lha (eio%unit)
        type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
          call hepeup_from_event (event, &
            process_index = i_prc, &
            keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
          call hepeup_write_verbose (eio%unit)
        type is (eio_ascii_ascii_t)
          call event%write (eio%unit, &
            show_process = .false., &
            show_transforms = .false., &

```

```

        show_decay = .false., &
        verbose = .false.)
type is (eio_ascii_athena_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_athena (eio%unit)
type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
    call event%write (eio%unit, &
        show_process = eio%show_process, &
        show_transforms = eio%show_transforms, &
        show_decay = eio%show_decay, &
        verbose = eio%verbose)
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_hepevt (eio%unit)
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_verbose (eio%unit)
type is (eio_ascii_long_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_ascii (eio%unit, .true.)
type is (eio_ascii_mokka_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_mokka (eio%unit)
type is (eio_ascii_short_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
        i_evt = event%expr%index, &
        keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call hepevt_write_ascii (eio%unit, .false.)
end select
else
    call eio%write ()
    call msg_fatal ("ASCII file is not open for writing")
end if
end subroutine eio_ascii_output

```

Input an event.

```

<EIO ascii: eio ascii: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_ascii_input_i_prc
    procedure :: input_event => eio_ascii_input_event

<EIO ascii: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_ascii_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
        class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
    end subroutine

```

```

integer, intent(out) :: iostat
call msg_bug ("ASCII: event input not supported")
i_prc = 0
iostat = 1
end subroutine eio_ascii_input_i_prc

subroutine eio_ascii_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
class(eio_ascii_t), intent(inout) :: eio
type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
integer, intent(out) :: iostat
call msg_bug ("ASCII: event input not supported")
iostat = 1
end subroutine eio_ascii_input_event

```

#### 19.10.4 Unit tests

```

<EIO ascii: public>+≡
public :: eio_ascii_test

<EIO ascii: tests>≡
subroutine eio_ascii_test (u, results)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<EIO ascii: execute tests>
end subroutine eio_ascii_test

```

#### Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `ascii`:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>≡
call test (eio_ascii_1, "eio_ascii_1", &
          "read and write event contents, format [ascii]", &
          u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_1 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII ascii format"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

```



```

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_1"

allocate (eio_ascii_ascii_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".evt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"

```

```

        if (iostat /= 0) exit
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_file)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    deallocate (eio)
    allocate (eio_ascii_ascii_t :: eio)

    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_ascii_t)
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
    end select
    call eio%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call event%final ()
    deallocate (event)

    call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
    deallocate (process_instance)
    deallocate (process)

    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_1"

end subroutine eio_ascii_1

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `athena`:

*(EIO ascii: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (eio_ascii_2, "eio_ascii_2", &
    "read and write event contents, format [athena]", &
    u, results)

```

*(EIO ascii: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine eio_ascii_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat

```

```

character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII athena format"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_2"

allocate (eio_ascii_athena_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char(sample // ".athena.evt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_athena_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_athena_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_2"

end subroutine eio_ascii_2

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method debug:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
  call test (eio_ascii_3, "eio_ascii_3", &
            "read and write event contents, format [debug]", &
            u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_ascii_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process

```

```

type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, iostat
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII debug format"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_3"

allocate (eio_ascii_debug_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)

```

```

call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".debug"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>")  buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0)  exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_debug_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_3"

end subroutine eio_ascii_3

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `hepevt`:

*(EIO ascii: execute tests)* +≡

```

call test (eio_ascii_4, "eio_ascii_4", &
  "read and write event contents, format [hepevt]", &
  u, results)

```

```

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII hepevt format"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  call data%init (1)
  data%n_evt = 1
  data%n_beam = 2
  data%pdg_beam = 25
  data%energy_beam = 500
  data%proc_num_id = [42]
  data%cross_section(1) = 100
  data%error(1) = 1
  data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
  write (u, "(A)")

  sample = "eio_ascii_4"

  allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_t :: eio)

  select type (eio)
  class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select

```

```

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".hepevt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>")  buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0)  exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_4"

end subroutine eio_ascii_4

```



We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `lha` (old LHA):

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
  call test (eio_ascii_5, "eio_ascii_5", &
    "read and write event contents, format [lha]", &
    u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
  subroutine eio_ascii_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII LHA format"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    call data%init (1)
    data%n_evt = 1
    data%n_beam = 2
    data%pdg_beam = 25
    data%energy_beam = 500
    data%proc_num_id = [42]
    data%cross_section(1) = 100
    data%error(1) = 1
    data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    sample = "eio_ascii_5"

```

```

allocate (eio_ascii_lha_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lha"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_lha_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_5"

end subroutine eio_ascii_5

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method long:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
call test (eio_ascii_6, "eio_ascii_6", &
  "read and write event contents, format [long]", &
  u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_6 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_6"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event in ASCII long format"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  call data%init (1)
  data%n_evt = 1
  data%n_beam = 2
  data%pdg_beam = 25
  data%energy_beam = 500
  data%proc_num_id = [42]
  data%cross_section(1) = 100
  data%error(1) = 1
  data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_6"

allocate (eio_ascii_long_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".long.evt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_long_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_long_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)

```

```

deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_6"

end subroutine eio_ascii_6

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method mokka:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
call test (eio_ascii_7, "eio_ascii_7", &
          "read and write event contents, format [mokka]", &
          u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_7"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event in ASCII mokka format"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  call data%init (1)
  data%n_evt = 1
  data%n_beam = 2
  data%pdg_beam = 25

```

```

data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_7"

allocate (eio_ascii_mokka_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".mokka.evt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_mokka_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_mokka_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_7"

end subroutine eio_ascii_7

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `short`:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
call test (eio_ascii_8, "eio_ascii_8", &
          "read and write event contents, format [short]", &
          u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_8 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_8"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event in ASCII short format"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()

```

```

call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_8"

allocate (eio_ascii_short_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".short.evt"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_short_t :: eio)

select type (eio)

```



```

type is (eio_ascii_short_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_8"

end subroutine eio_ascii_8

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `lha` (old LHA) in verbose version:

```

<EIO ascii: execute tests>+≡
  call test (eio_ascii_9, "eio_ascii_9", &
    "read and write event contents, format [lha_verb]", &
    u, results)

<EIO ascii: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_ascii_9 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_9"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII LHA verbose format"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)

```

```

process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_9"

allocate (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".lha.verb"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_9"

end subroutine eio_ascii_9

```

We test the implementation of all I/O methods, method `hepevt_verb`:

*(EIO ascii: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (eio_ascii_10, "eio_ascii_10", &
    "read and write event contents, format [hepevt_verb]", &
    u, results)

```

*(EIO ascii: tests)+≡*

```

subroutine eio_ascii_10 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_ascii_10"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in ASCII hepevt verbose format"
write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

call data%init (1)
data%n_evt = 1
data%n_beam = 2
data%pdg_beam = 25
data%energy_beam = 500
data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_ascii_10"

allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()
end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".hepevt.verb"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"

```

```

        if (iostat /= 0) exit
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_file)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    deallocate (eio)
    allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t :: eio)

    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t)
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
    end select
    call eio%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call event%final ()
    deallocate (event)

    call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
    deallocate (process_instance)
    deallocate (process)

    call model_list%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_ascii_10"

end subroutine eio_ascii_10

```

## 19.11 STDHEP File Formats

Here, we implement the two existing STDHEP file formats, one based on the HEPRUP/HEPEUP common blocks, the other based on the HEPEVT common block. The second one is actually the standard STDHEP format.

```

<eio_stdhep.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module eio_stdhep

    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    <Use strings>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

```

```

    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use models
    use particles
    use beams
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data
    use eio_base
    use hep_common
    use hep_events

    <Standard module head>

    <EIO stdhep: public>

    <EIO stdhep: types>

    <EIO stdhep: variables>

contains

    <EIO stdhep: procedures>

    <EIO stdhep: tests>

end module eio_stdhep

```

### 19.11.1 Type

```

<EIO stdhep: public>≡
    public :: eio_stdhep_t

<EIO stdhep: types>≡
    type, abstract, extends (eio_t) :: eio_stdhep_t
        logical :: writing = .false.
        logical :: reading = .false.
        integer :: unit = 0
        logical :: keep_beams = .false.
        integer(i64) :: n_events_expected = 0
    contains
        <EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>
    end type eio_stdhep_t

<EIO stdhep: public>+≡
    public :: eio_stdhep_hepevt_t

<EIO stdhep: types>+≡
    type, extends (eio_stdhep_t) :: eio_stdhep_hepevt_t
    end type eio_stdhep_hepevt_t

<EIO stdhep: public>+≡
    public :: eio_stdhep_hepeup_t

```

```

<EIO stdhep: types>+≡
  type, extends (eio_stdhep_t) :: eio_stdhep_hepeup_t
end type eio_stdhep_hepeup_t

```

### 19.11.2 Specific Methods

Set parameters that are specifically used with STDHEP file formats.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>≡
  procedure :: set_parameters => eio_stdhep_set_parameters

<EIO stdhep: procedures>≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_set_parameters (eio, keep_beams, extension)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_beams
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    if (present (keep_beams)) eio%keep_beams = keep_beams
    if (present (extension)) then
      eio%extension = extension
    else
      select type (eio)
        type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
          eio%extension = "hep"
        type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
          eio%extension = "up.hep"
      end select
    end if
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_set_parameters

```

### 19.11.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => eio_stdhep_write

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_write (object, unit)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "STDHEP event stream:"
    if (object%writing) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file  = ", char (object%filename)
    else if (object%reading) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Reading from file = ", char (object%filename)
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Keep beams      = ", object%keep_beams
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_write

```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```
(EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: final => eio_stdhep_final

(EIO stdhep: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_final (object)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (object%writing) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing STDHEP file '", &
        char (object%filename), "'"
      call msg_message ()
      call stdhep_end
      object%writing = .false.
    else if (object%reading) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing STDHEP file '", &
        char (object%filename), "'"
      call msg_message ()
      object%reading = .false.
    end if
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_final
```

Common initialization for input and output.

```
(EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: common_init => eio_stdhep_common_init

(EIO stdhep: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_common_init (eio, sample, data, extension)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
    if (.not. present (data)) &
      call msg_bug ("STDHEP initialization: missing data")
    if (data%n_beam /= 2) &
      call msg_fatal ("STDHEP: defined for scattering processes only")
    if (present (extension)) then
      eio%extension = extension
    else
      select type (eio)
        type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
          eio%extension = "hep"
        type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
          eio%extension = "up.hep"
      end select
    end if
    call eio%set_filename ()
    eio%unit = free_unit ()
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_common_init
```

Split event file: increment the counter, close the current file, open a new one. If the file needs a header, repeat it for the new file. (We assume that the common block contents are still intact.)

```
(EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: split_out => eio_stdhep_split_out
```



```

(EIO stdhep: procedures)+≡
subroutine eio_stdhep_split_out (eio)
class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
if (eio%split) then
    eio%split_index = eio%split_index + 1
    call eio%set_filename ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to STDHEP file '", &
        char (eio%filename), "'"
    call msg_message ()
    call stdhep_end
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
        call stdhep_init_out (char (eio%filename), &
            "WHIZARD event sample", eio%n_events_expected)
        call stdhep_write (STDHEP_HEPRUP)
    type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
        call stdhep_init_out (char (eio%filename), &
            "WHIZARD event sample", eio%n_events_expected)
    end select
end if
end subroutine eio_stdhep_split_out

```

Initialize event writing.

```

(EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP)+≡
procedure :: init_out => eio_stdhep_init_out

(EIO stdhep: procedures)+≡
subroutine eio_stdhep_init_out (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
logical, intent(out), optional :: success
integer :: i
if (.not. present (data)) &
    call msg_bug ("STDHEP initialization: missing data")
eio%sample = sample
call eio%set_splitting (data)
call eio%common_init (sample, data)
eio%n_events_expected = data%n_evt
write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to STDHEP file '", &
    char (eio%filename), "'"
call msg_message ()
eio%writing = .true.
select type (eio)
type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
    call heprup_init &
        (data%pdg_beam, &
        data%energy_beam, &
        n_processes = data%n_proc, &
        unweighted = data%unweighted, &
        negative_weights = data%negative_weights)
do i = 1, data%n_proc
    call heprup_set_process_parameters (i = i, &

```

```

        process_id = data%proc_num_id(i), &
        cross_section = data%cross_section(i), &
        error = data%error(i))
    end do
    call stdhep_init_out (char (eio%filename), &
        "WHIZARD event sample", eio%n_events_expected)
    call stdhep_write (STDHEP_HEPRUP)
    type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
    call stdhep_init_out (char (eio%filename), &
        "WHIZARD event sample", eio%n_events_expected)
    end select
    if (present (success)) success = .true.
end subroutine eio_stdhep_init_out

```

Initialize event reading.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_in => eio_stdhep_init_in

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_stdhep_init_in &
        (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
        class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
        type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success

        call msg_bug ("STDHEP: event input not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_stdhep_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_stdhep_switch_inout

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_stdhep_switch_inout (eio, success)
        class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        call msg_bug ("STDHEP: in-out switch not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_stdhep_switch_inout

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and squared matrix element, then the particle set.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: output => eio_stdhep_output

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_stdhep_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
        class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
if (eio%writing) then
  select type (eio)
  type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
    call hepeup_from_event (event, &
      process_index = i_prc, &
      keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call stdhep_write (STDHEP_HEPEUP)
  type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
    call hepevt_from_event (event, &
      i_evt = event%expr%index, &
      keep_beams = eio%keep_beams)
    call stdhep_write (STDHEP_HEPEVT)
  end select
else
  call eio%write ()
  call msg_fatal ("STDHEP file is not open for writing")
end if
end subroutine eio_stdhep_output

```

Input an event.

```

<EIO stdhep: eio stdhep: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_stdhep_input_i_prc
  procedure :: input_event => eio_stdhep_input_event

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    call msg_bug ("STDHEP: event input not supported")
    i_prc = 0
    iostat = 1
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_input_i_prc

  subroutine eio_stdhep_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
    class(eio_stdhep_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    call msg_bug ("STDHEP: event input not supported")
    iostat = 1
  end subroutine eio_stdhep_input_event

```

STDHEP specific routines.

```

<EIO stdhep: public>+≡
  public :: stdhep_init_out
  public :: stdhep_init_in
  public :: stdhep_write
  public :: stdhep_end

<EIO stdhep: procedures>+≡
  subroutine stdhep_init_out (file, title, nevt)
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: file, title

```

```

integer(i64), intent(in) :: nevt
integer(i32) :: nevt32
external stdxwinit, stdxwrt
nevt32 = min (nevt, int (huge (1_i32), i64))
call stdxwinit (file, title, nevt32, istr, lok)
call stdxwrt (100, istr, lok)
end subroutine stdhep_init_out

subroutine stdhep_init_in (file, nevt)
character(len=*), intent(in) :: file
integer(i64), intent(in) :: nevt
integer(i32) :: nevt32
external stdx
end subroutine stdhep_init_in

subroutine stdhep_write (ilbl)
integer, intent(in) :: ilbl
external stdxwrt
call stdxwrt (ilbl, istr, lok)
end subroutine stdhep_write

subroutine stdhep_read (ilbl, lok)
integer, intent(out) :: ilbl
logical, intent(out) :: lok
external stdxrd
call stdxrd (ilbl, istr, lok)
end subroutine stdhep_read

subroutine stdhep_end
external stdxend, stdxwrt
call stdxwrt (200, istr, lok)
call stdxend (istr)
end subroutine stdhep_end

```

#### 19.11.4 Variables

*<EIO stdhep: variables>*≡

```

integer, save :: istr, lok
integer, parameter :: &
    STDHEP_HEPEVT = 1, STDHEP_HEPEUP = 11, STDHEP_HEPRUP = 12

```

#### 19.11.5 Unit tests

*<EIO stdhep: public>*+≡

```

public :: eio_stdhep_test

```

*<EIO stdhep: tests>*≡

```

subroutine eio_stdhep_test (u, results)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<EIO stdhep: execute tests>
end subroutine eio_stdhep_test

```

## Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of the STDHEP HEPEVT I/O method:

```
(EIO stdhep: execute tests)≡
  call test (eio_stdhep_1, "eio_stdhep_1", &
    "read and write event contents, format [stdhep]", &
    u, results)

(EIO stdhep: tests)+≡
  subroutine eio_stdhep_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: eio_stdhep_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*" Purpose: generate an event in STDHEP HEPEVT format"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*" and write weight to file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "*" Initialize test process"

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    call data%init (1)
    data%n_evt = 1
    data%n_beam = 2
    data%pdg_beam = 25
    data%energy_beam = 500
    data%proc_num_id = [42]
    data%cross_section(1) = 100
    data%error(1) = 1
    data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

    write (u, "(A)")
```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_stdhep_1"

allocate (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t :: eio)

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (sample // ".hep"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>")  buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0)  exit
end do
!!! JRR: WK please check: should be replaced by a XDR reader? (#530)
!  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
!  The number of lines is system-dependent!
write (u, "(A)") "      Successfully read STDHEP HEPEVT file"
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)

```

```

deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_stdhep_1"

end subroutine eio_stdhep_1

```

We test the implementation of the STDHEP HEPEUP I/O method:

```

<EIO stdhep: execute tests>+=
  call test (eio_stdhep_2, "eio_stdhep_2", &
    "read and write event contents, format [stdhep]", &
    u, results)

<EIO stdhep: tests>+=
  subroutine eio_stdhep_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t) :: sample
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_stdhep_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate an event in STDHEP HEPEUP format"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           and write weight to file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

    call data%init (1)
    data%n_evt = 1
    data%n_beam = 2
    data%pdg_beam = 25
    data%energy_beam = 500

```

```

data%proc_num_id = [42]
data%cross_section(1) = 100
data%error(1) = 1
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_stdhep_2"

allocate (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t :: eio)

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data)
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 1)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents:"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char(sample // ".up.hep"), &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
  if (buffer(1:21) == " <generator_version>") buffer = "[...]"
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
end do
!!! JRR: WK please check: should be replaced by a XDR reader? (#530)
! write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
! The number of lines is system-dependent!
write (u, "(A)") "      Successfully read STDHEP HEPEUP file"
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset data"
write (u, "(A)")

deallocate (eio)
allocate (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t :: eio)

select type (eio)
type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams = .true.)
end select
call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```



```

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_stdhep_2"

end subroutine eio_stdhep_2

```

## 19.12 Event Weight Output

This is an output-only format. For each event, we print the indices that identify process, process part (MCI group), and term. As numerical information we print the squared matrix element (trace) and the event weight.

```

(eio_weights.f90)≡
  <File header>

  module eio_weights

    use kinds !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
    <Use strings>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests

    use lorentz !NODEP!
    use variables
    use models
    use particles
    use beams
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data
    use eio_base

    <Standard module head>

    <EIO weights: public>

    <EIO weights: types>

    contains

    <EIO weights: procedures>

```

```

    <EIO weights: tests>

```

```

end module eio_weights

```

### 19.12.1 Type

```

<EIO weights: public>≡
    public :: eio_weights_t
<EIO weights: types>≡
    type, extends (eio_t) :: eio_weights_t
        logical :: writing = .false.
        integer :: unit = 0
        logical :: pacify = .false.
    contains
        <EIO weights: eio weights: TBP>
    end type eio_weights_t

```

### 19.12.2 Specific Methods

Set pacify flags.

```

<EIO weights: eio weights: TBP>≡
    procedure :: set_parameters => eio_weights_set_parameters
<EIO weights: procedures>≡
    subroutine eio_weights_set_parameters (eio, pacify)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
        if (present (pacify)) eio%pacify = pacify
    end subroutine eio_weights_set_parameters

```

### 19.12.3 Common Methods

Output. This is not the actual event format, but a readable account of the current object status.

```

<EIO weights: eio weights: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => eio_weights_write
<EIO weights: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_weights_write (object, unit)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Weight stream:"
        if (object%writing) then
            write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Writing to file  = ", char (object%filename)
            write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Reduced I/O prec. = ", object%pacify
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "[closed]"
        end if
    end if

```

```
end subroutine eio_weights_write
```

Finalizer: close any open file.

```
(EIO weights: eio weights: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: final => eio_weights_final

(EIO weights: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_weights_final (object)
    class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (object%writing) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: closing weight stream file '", &
        char (object%filename), "'"
      call msg_message ()
      close (object%unit)
      object%writing = .false.
    end if
  end subroutine eio_weights_final
```

Initialize event writing.

```
(EIO weights: eio weights: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_out => eio_weights_init_out

(EIO weights: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_weights_init_out &
    (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success)
    class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(in), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    eio%filename = sample // ".weights.dat"
    eio%unit = free_unit ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") "Events: writing to weight stream file '", &
      char (eio%filename), "'"
    call msg_message ()
    eio%writing = .true.
    open (eio%unit, file = char (eio%filename), &
      action = "write", status = "replace")
    if (present (success)) success = .true.
  end subroutine eio_weights_init_out
```

Initialize event reading.

```
(EIO weights: eio weights: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: init_in => eio_weights_init_in

(EIO weights: procedures)+≡
  subroutine eio_weights_init_in &
    (eio, sample, process_ptr, data, success, extension)
    class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: extension
    type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
    type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
```

```

        call msg_bug ("Weight stream: event input not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_weights_init_in

```

Switch from input to output: reopen the file for reading.

```

(EIO weights: eio weights: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: switch_inout => eio_weights_switch_inout

(EIO weights: procedures)+≡
    subroutine eio_weights_switch_inout (eio, success)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        call msg_bug ("Weight stream: in-out switch not supported")
        if (present (success)) success = .false.
    end subroutine eio_weights_switch_inout

```

Output an event. Write first the event indices, then weight and two values of the squared matrix element: `sqme_ref` is the value stored in the event record, and `sqme_prc` is the one stored in the process instance. (They can differ: when recalculating, the former is read from file and the latter is the result of the new calculation.)

For the alternative entries, the `sqme` value is always obtained by a new calculation, and thus qualifies as `sqme_prc`.

```

(EIO weights: eio weights: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: output => eio_weights_output

(EIO weights: procedures)+≡
    subroutine eio_weights_output (eio, event, i_prc, reading)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
        integer, intent(in) :: i_prc
        logical, intent(in), optional :: reading
        integer :: i_mci, i_term, n_alt, i
        real(default) :: weight, sqme_ref, sqme_prc
        if (eio%writing) then
            i_mci = event%get_i_mci ()
            i_term = event%get_i_term ()
            weight = event%weight_prc
            sqme_ref = event%sqme_ref
            sqme_prc = event%sqme_prc
            n_alt = event%n_alt
1         format (I0,3(1x,ES17.10),3(1x,I0))
2         format (I0,3(1x,ES15.8),3(1x,I0))
            if (eio%pacify) then
                write (eio%unit, 2) 0, weight, sqme_prc, sqme_ref, &
                    i_prc, i_mci, i_term
            else
                write (eio%unit, 1) 0, weight, sqme_prc, sqme_ref, &
                    i_prc, i_mci, i_term
            end if
            do i = 1, n_alt
                weight = event%weight_alt(i)
                sqme_prc = event%sqme_alt(i)
            end do
        else
            i_mci = event%i_mci
            i_term = event%i_term
            weight = event%weight
            sqme_ref = event%sqme_ref
            sqme_prc = event%sqme_prc
            n_alt = event%n_alt
        end if
    end subroutine eio_weights_output

```

```

        if (eio%pacify) then
            write (eio%unit, 2) i, weight, sqme_prc
        else
            write (eio%unit, 1) i, weight, sqme_prc
        end if
    end do
else
    call eio%write ()
    call msg_fatal ("Weight stream file is not open for writing")
end if
end subroutine eio_weights_output

```

Input an event.

```

<EIO weights: eio weights: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: input_i_prc => eio_weights_input_i_prc
    procedure :: input_event => eio_weights_input_event

<EIO weights: procedures>+≡
    subroutine eio_weights_input_i_prc (eio, i_prc, iostat)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
        integer, intent(out) :: iostat
        call msg_bug ("Weight stream: event input not supported")
        i_prc = 0
        iostat = 1
    end subroutine eio_weights_input_i_prc

    subroutine eio_weights_input_event (eio, event, iostat)
        class(eio_weights_t), intent(inout) :: eio
        type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
        integer, intent(out) :: iostat
        call msg_bug ("Weight stream: event input not supported")
        iostat = 1
    end subroutine eio_weights_input_event

```

#### 19.12.4 Unit tests

```

<EIO weights: public>+≡
    public :: eio_weights_test

<EIO weights: tests>≡
    subroutine eio_weights_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <EIO weights: execute tests>
    end subroutine eio_weights_test

```

#### Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```

<EIO weights: execute tests>≡

```

```

call test (eio_weights_1, "eio_weights_1", &
          "read and write event contents", &
          u, results)
<EIO weights: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_weights_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_list_t) :: model_list
  type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(string_t) :: sample
  integer :: u_file
  character(80) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_weights_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process
  allocate (process_instance)
  call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
  call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

  allocate (event)
  call event%basic_init ()
  call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
  write (u, "(A)")

  sample = "eio_weights_1"

  allocate (eio_weights_t :: eio)

  call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])
  call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])

  call eio%output (event, i_prc = 42)
  call eio%write (u)
  call eio%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents: &
                    &(weight, sqme(evt), sqme(prc), i_prc, i_mci, i_term)"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "eio_weights_1.weights.dat", &
      action = "read", status = "old")
read (u_file, "(A)") buffer
write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_weights_1"

end subroutine eio_weights_1

```

## Test I/O methods

We test the implementation of all I/O methods.

```

<EIO weights: execute tests>+≡
call test (eio_weights_2, "eio_weights_2", &
          "multiple weights", &
          u, results)

<EIO weights: tests>+≡
subroutine eio_weights_2 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(model_list_t) :: model_list
type(var_list_t) :: var_list
type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
type(string_t) :: sample
integer :: u_file, i
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: eio_weights_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate an event and write weight to file"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize test process"

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

call var_list_append_log (var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), .false., &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_string (var_list, var_str ("sample_normalization"), &
    var_str ("auto"), intrinsic = .true.)

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init (var_list, n_alt = 2)
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate and write an event"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "eio_weights_2"

allocate (eio_weights_t :: eio)

call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])
select type (eio)
type is (eio_weights_t)
    call eio%set_parameters (pacify = .true.)
end select
call event%generate (1, [0._default, 0._default])
call event%set (sqme_alt = [2._default, 3._default])
call event%set (weight_alt = [2 * event%weight_prc, 3 * event%weight_prc])

call eio%output (event, i_prc = 42)
call eio%write (u)
call eio%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* File contents: &
    &(weight, sqme(evt), sqme(prc), i_prc, i_mci, i_term)"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "eio_weights_2.weights.dat", &
    action = "read", status = "old")
do i = 1, 3
    read (u_file, "(A)")  buffer
    write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```



```

call event%final ()
deallocate (event)

call cleanup_test_process (process, process_instance)
deallocate (process_instance)
deallocate (process)

call model_list%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: eio_weights_2"

end subroutine eio_weights_2

```

## Chapter 20

# The SUSY Les Houches Accord

The SUSY Les Houches Accord defines a standard interfaces for storing the physics data of SUSY models. Here, we provide the means for reading, storing, and writing such data.

`<slha_interface.f90>`≡

*<File header>*

```
module slha_interface
```

*<Use kinds>*

*<Use strings>*

```
  use limits, only: EOF, VERSION_STRING !NODEP!
```

```
  use constants !NODEP!
```

*<Use file utils>*

```
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
```

```
  use unit_tests
```

```
  use os_interface
```

```
  use ifiles
```

```
  use lexers
```

```
  use syntax_rules
```

```
  use parser
```

```
  use variables
```

```
  use expressions
```

```
  use models
```

*<Standard module head>*

*<SLHA: public>*

*<SLHA: parameters>*

*<SLHA: variables>*

```
  save
```

```
contains
```

*<SLHA: procedures>*

*<SLHA: tests>*

```
end module slha_interface
```

## 20.0.5 Preprocessor

SLHA is a mixed-format standard. It should be read in assuming free format (but line-oriented), but it has some fixed-format elements.

To overcome this difficulty, we implement a preprocessing step which transforms the SLHA into a format that can be swallowed by our generic free-format lexer and parser. Each line with a blank first character is assumed to be a data line. We prepend a 'DATA' keyword to these lines. Furthermore, to enforce line-orientation, each line is appended a '\$' key which is recognized by the parser. To do this properly, we first remove trailing comments, and skip lines consisting only of comments.

The preprocessor reads from a stream and puts out an `ifile`. Blocks that are not recognized are skipped. For some blocks, data items are quoted, so they can be read as strings if necessary.

*<SLHA: parameters>*≡

```
integer, parameter :: MODE_SKIP = 0, MODE_DATA = 1, MODE_INFO = 2
```

*<SLHA: procedures>*≡

```
subroutine slha_preprocess (stream, ifile)
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  type(ifile_t), intent(out) :: ifile
  type(string_t) :: buffer, line, item
  integer :: iostat
  integer :: mode
  mode = MODE
  SCAN_FILE: do
    call stream_get_record (stream, buffer, iostat)
    select case (iostat)
    case (0)
      call split (buffer, line, "#")
      if (len_trim (line) == 0) cycle SCAN_FILE
      select case (char (extract (line, 1, 1)))
      case ("B", "b")
        mode = check_block_handling (line)
        call ifile_append (ifile, line // "$")
      case ("D", "d")
        mode = MODE_DATA
        call ifile_append (ifile, line // "$")
      case (" ")
        select case (mode)
        case (MODE_DATA)
          call ifile_append (ifile, "DATA" // line // "$")
        case (MODE_INFO)
          line = adjustl (line)
          call split (line, item, " ")
```

```

        call ifile_append (ifile, "INFO" // " " // item // " " &
            // '""' // trim (adjustl (line)) // ' "$')
    end select
case default
    call msg_message (char (line))
    call msg_fatal ("SLHA: Incomprehensible line")
end select
case (EOF)
    exit SCAN_FILE
case default
    call msg_fatal ("SLHA: I/O error occured while reading SLHA input")
end select
end do SCAN_FILE
end subroutine slha_preprocess

```

Return the mode that we should treat this block with. We need to recognize only those blocks that we actually use.

```

⟨SLHA: procedures⟩+=
function check_block_handling (line) result (mode)
    integer :: mode
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: line
    type(string_t) :: buffer, key, block_name
    buffer = trim (line)
    call split (buffer, key, " ")
    buffer = adjustl (buffer)
    call split (buffer, block_name, " ")
    block_name = trim (adjustl (upper_case (block_name)))
    select case (char (block_name))
    case ("MODESEL", "MINPAR", "SMINPUTS")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("MASS")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("NMIX", "UMIX", "VMIX", "STOPMIX", "SBOTMIX", "STAUMIX")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("NMHMIX", "NMAMIX", "NMNMIX", "NMSSMRUN")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("ALPHA", "HMIX")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("AU", "AD", "AE")
        mode = MODE_DATA
    case ("SPINFO", "DCINFO")
        mode = MODE_INFO
    case default
        mode = MODE_SKIP
    end select
end function check_block_handling

```

## 20.0.6 Lexer and syntax

```

⟨SLHA: variables⟩=
type(syntax_t), target :: syntax_slha

```

```

<SLHA: public>≡
    public :: syntax_slha_init

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_slha_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        call define_slha_syntax (ifile)
        call syntax_init (syntax_slha, ifile)
        call ifile_final (ifile)
    end subroutine syntax_slha_init

<SLHA: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_slha_final

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_slha_final ()
        call syntax_final (syntax_slha)
    end subroutine syntax_slha_final

<SLHA: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_slha_write

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_slha_write (unit)
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        call syntax_write (syntax_slha, unit)
    end subroutine syntax_slha_write

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    subroutine define_slha_syntax (ifile)
        type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ slha = chunk*")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT chunk = block_def | decay_def")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_def = " &
            // "BLOCK block_spec '$' block_line*")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY BLOCK")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_spec = block_name qvalue?")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE block_name")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ qvalue = qname '=' real")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE qname")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '='")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "REA real")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '$'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT block_line = block_data | block_info")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_data = DATA data_line '$'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY DATA")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ data_line = data_item+")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT data_item = signed_number | number")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ signed_number = sign number")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT sign = '+' | '-'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT number = integer | real")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "INT integer")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '-'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ block_info = INFO info_line '$'")
    end subroutine define_slha_syntax

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY INFO")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ info_line = integer string_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO string_literal = '""'...'""')
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ decay_def = " &
    // "DECAY decay_spec '$' decay_data*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY DECAY")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ decay_spec = pdg_code data_item")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT pdg_code = signed_integer | integer")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ signed_integer = sign integer")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ decay_data = DATA decay_line '$'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ decay_line = data_item integer pdg_code+")
end subroutine define_slha_syntax

```

The SLHA specification allows for string data items in certain places. Currently, we do not interpret them, but the strings, which are not quoted, must be parsed somehow. The hack for this problem is to allow essentially all characters as special characters, so the string can be read before it is discarded.

```

<SLHA: public>+≡
    public :: lexer_init_slha

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    subroutine lexer_init_slha (lexer)
        type(lexer_t), intent(out) :: lexer
        call lexer_init (lexer, &
            comment_chars = "#", &
            quote_chars = "'", &
            quote_match = "'", &
            single_chars = "+-=$", &
            special_class = [ "" ], &
            keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_slha), &
            upper_case_keywords = .true.) ! $
    end subroutine lexer_init_slha

```

## 20.0.7 Interpreter

### Find blocks

From the parse tree, find the node that represents a particular block. If `required` is true, issue an error if not found. Since `block_name` is always invoked with capital letters, we have to capitalize `pn_block_name`.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
    function slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, block_name, required) result (pn_block)
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
        type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: block_name
        logical, intent(in) :: required
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root, pn_block_spec, pn_block_name
        pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)
        pn_block => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_root)
        do while (associated (pn_block))
            select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_block)))

```

```

        case ("block_def")
            pn_block_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block, 2)
            pn_block_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block_spec)
            if (trim (adjustl (upper_case (parse_node_get_string &
                (pn_block_name)))) == block_name) then
                return
            end if
        end select
        pn_block => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_block)
    end do
    if (required) then
        call msg_fatal ("SLHA: block '" // char (block_name) // "' not found")
    end if
end function slha_get_block_ptr

```

Scan the file for the first/next DECAY block.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
function slha_get_first_decay_ptr (parse_tree) result (pn_decay)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_decay
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)
    pn_decay => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_root)
    do while (associated (pn_decay))
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_decay)))
            case ("decay_def")
                return
        end select
        pn_decay => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_decay)
    end do
end function slha_get_first_decay_ptr

function slha_get_next_decay_ptr (pn_block) result (pn_decay)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_decay
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
    pn_decay => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_block)
    do while (associated (pn_decay))
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_decay)))
            case ("decay_def")
                return
        end select
        pn_decay => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_decay)
    end do
end function slha_get_next_decay_ptr

```

### Extract and transfer data from blocks

Given the parse node of a block, find the parse node of a particular switch or data line. Return this node and the node of the data item following the integer code.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
subroutine slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code)

```

```

type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_data
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_item
integer, intent(in) :: code
pn_data => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block, 4)
call slha_next_index_ptr (pn_data, pn_item, code)
end subroutine slha_find_index_ptr

subroutine slha_find_index_pair_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code1, code2)
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_data
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_item
integer, intent(in) :: code1, code2
pn_data => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block, 4)
call slha_next_index_pair_ptr (pn_data, pn_item, code1, code2)
end subroutine slha_find_index_pair_ptr

```

Starting from the pointer to a data line, find a data line with the given integer code.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_next_index_ptr (pn_data, pn_item, code)
type(parse_node_t), intent(inout), pointer :: pn_data
integer, intent(in) :: code
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_item
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_line, pn_code
do while (associated (pn_data))
  pn_line => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_data, 2)
  pn_code => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_code)))
    case ("integer")
      if (parse_node_get_integer (pn_code) == code) then
        pn_item => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_code)
        return
      end if
    end select
  pn_data => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_data)
end do
pn_item => null ()
end subroutine slha_next_index_ptr

```

Starting from the pointer to a data line, find a data line with the given integer code pair.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_next_index_pair_ptr (pn_data, pn_item, code1, code2)
type(parse_node_t), intent(inout), pointer :: pn_data
integer, intent(in) :: code1, code2
type(parse_node_t), intent(out), pointer :: pn_item
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_line, pn_code1, pn_code2
do while (associated (pn_data))
  pn_line => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_data, 2)
  pn_code1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_code1)))
    case ("integer")

```



```

        if (parse_node_get_integer (pn_code1) == code1) then
            pn_code2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_code1)
            if (associated (pn_code2)) then
                select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_code2)))
                    case ("integer")
                        if (parse_node_get_integer (pn_code2) == code2) then
                            pn_item => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_code2)
                            return
                        end if
                    end select
                end if
            end if
        end select
        pn_data => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_data)
    end do
    pn_item => null ()
end subroutine slha_next_index_pair_ptr

```

## Handle info data

Return all strings with index *i*. The result is an allocated string array. Since we do not know the number of matching entries in advance, we build an intermediate list which is transferred to the final array and deleted before exiting.

(*SLHA: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine retrieve_strings_in_block (pn_block, code, str_array)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
    integer, intent(in) :: code
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: str_array
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_data, pn_item
    type :: str_entry_t
        type(string_t) :: str
        type(str_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
    end type str_entry_t
    type(str_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
    type(str_entry_t), pointer :: current => null ()
    integer :: n
    n = 0
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        n = n + 1
        allocate (first)
        first%str = parse_node_get_string (pn_item)
        current => first
        do while (associated (pn_data))
            pn_data => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_data)
            call slha_next_index_ptr (pn_data, pn_item, code)
            if (associated (pn_item)) then
                n = n + 1
                allocate (current%next)
                current => current%next
                current%str = parse_node_get_string (pn_item)
            end if
        end do
    end if
end subroutine

```

```

        end do
        allocate (str_array (n))
        n = 0
        do while (associated (first))
            n = n + 1
            current => first
            str_array(n) = current%str
            first => first%next
            deallocate (current)
        end do
    else
        allocate (str_array (0))
    end if
end subroutine retrieve_strings_in_block

```

### Transfer data from SLHA to variables

Extract real parameter with index *i*. If it does not exist, retrieve it from the variable list, using the given name.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

function get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, code, name, var_list) result (var)
    real(default) :: var
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
    integer, intent(in) :: code
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_data, pn_item
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        var = get_real_parameter (pn_item)
    else
        var = var_list_get_rval (var_list, name)
    end if
end function get_parameter_in_block

```

Extract a real data item with index *i*. If it does exist, set it in the variable list, using the given name. If the variable is not present in the variable list, ignore it.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine set_data_item (pn_block, code, name, var_list)
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
    integer, intent(in) :: code
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_data, pn_item
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        call var_list_set_real &
            (var_list, name, get_real_parameter (pn_item), &
             is_known=.true., ignore=.true.)
    end if
end subroutine set_data_item

```

Extract a real matrix element with index  $i, j$ . If it does exist, set it in the variable list, using the given name. If the variable is not present in the variable list, ignore it.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine set_matrix_element (pn_block, code1, code2, name, var_list)
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_block
  integer, intent(in) :: code1, code2
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_data, pn_item
  call slha_find_index_pair_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, code1, code2)
  if (associated (pn_item)) then
    call var_list_set_real &
      (var_list, name, get_real_parameter (pn_item), &
        is_known=.true., ignore=.true.)
  end if
end subroutine set_matrix_element

```

## Transfer data from variables to SLHA

Get a real/integer parameter with index  $i$  from the variable list and write it to the current output file. In the integer case, we account for the fact that the variable is type real. If it does not exist, do nothing.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine write_integer_data_item (u, code, name, var_list, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
  integer :: item
  if (var_list_exists (var_list, name)) then
    item = nint (var_list_get_rval (var_list, name))
    call write_integer_parameter (u, code, item, comment)
  end if
end subroutine write_integer_data_item

subroutine write_real_data_item (u, code, name, var_list, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
  real(default) :: item
  if (var_list_exists (var_list, name)) then
    item = var_list_get_rval (var_list, name)
    call write_real_parameter (u, code, item, comment)
  end if
end subroutine write_real_data_item

```

Get a real data item with two integer indices from the variable list and write it to the current output file. If it does not exist, do nothing.

*<SLHA: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine write_matrix_element (u, code1, code2, name, var_list, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code1, code2
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
  real(default) :: item
  if (var_list_exists (var_list, name)) then
    item = var_list_get_rval (var_list, name)
    call write_real_matrix_element (u, code1, code2, item, comment)
  end if
end subroutine write_matrix_element
```

## 20.0.8 Auxiliary function

Write a block header.

*<SLHA: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine write_block_header (u, name, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  character(*), intent(in) :: name, comment
  write (u, "(A,1x,A,3x,'#',1x,A)") "BLOCK", name, comment
end subroutine write_block_header
```

Extract a real parameter that may be defined real or integer, signed or unsigned.

*<SLHA: procedures>+≡*

```
function get_real_parameter (pn_item) result (var)
  real(default) :: var
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_item
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_sign, pn_var
  integer :: sign
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_item)))
  case ("signed_number")
    pn_sign => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_item)
    pn_var => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_sign)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_sign)))
    case ("+" ); sign = +1
    case ("-") ; sign = -1
    end select
  case default
    sign = +1
    pn_var => pn_item
  end select
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var)))
  case ("integer"); var = sign * parse_node_get_integer (pn_var)
  case ("real");   var = sign * parse_node_get_real (pn_var)
  end select
end function get_real_parameter
```

Auxiliary: Extract an integer parameter that may be defined signed or unsigned.  
A real value is an error.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```
function get_integer_parameter (pn_item) result (var)
  integer :: var
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn_item
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_sign, pn_var
  integer :: sign
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_item)))
  case ("signed_integer")
    pn_sign => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_item)
    pn_var => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_sign)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_sign)))
    case ("+"); sign = +1
    case ("-"); sign = -1
    end select
  case ("integer")
    sign = +1
    pn_var => pn_item
  case default
    call parse_node_write (pn_var)
    call msg_error ("SLHA: Integer parameter expected")
    var = 0
    return
  end select
  var = sign * parse_node_get_integer (pn_var)
end function get_integer_parameter
```

Write an integer parameter with a single index directly to file, using the required output format.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine write_integer_parameter (u, code, item, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code
  integer, intent(in) :: item
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
1  format (1x, I9, 3x, 3x, I9, 4x, 3x, '#', 1x, A)
  write (u, 1) code, item, comment
end subroutine write_integer_parameter
```

Write a real parameter with two indices directly to file, using the required output format.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```
subroutine write_real_parameter (u, code, item, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code
  real(default), intent(in) :: item
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
1  format (1x, I9, 3x, 1P, E16.8, 0P, 3x, '#', 1x, A)
  write (u, 1) code, item, comment
end subroutine write_real_parameter
```

Write a real parameter with a single index directly to file, using the required output format.

```
(SLHA: procedures)+≡
subroutine write_real_matrix_element (u, code1, code2, item, comment)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  integer, intent(in) :: code1, code2
  real(default), intent(in) :: item
  character(*), intent(in) :: comment
1  format (1x, I2, 1x, I2, 3x, 1P, E16.8, 0P, 3x, '#', 1x, A)
  write (u, 1) code1, code2, item, comment
end subroutine write_real_matrix_element
```

## The concrete SLHA interpreter

SLHA codes for particular physics models

```
(SLHA: parameters)+≡
integer, parameter :: MDL_MSSM = 0
integer, parameter :: MDL_NMSSM = 1
```

Take the parse tree and extract relevant data. Select the correct model and store all data that is present in the appropriate variable list. Finally, update the variable record.

```
(SLHA: procedures)+≡
subroutine slha_interpret_parse_tree &
  (parse_tree, os_data, model_list, model, input, spectrum, decays)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
  type(model_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: model
  logical, intent(in) :: input, spectrum, decays
  logical :: errors
  integer :: mssm_type
  call slha_handle_MODSEL (parse_tree, os_data, model_list, model, mssm_type)
  if (associated (model)) then
    if (input) then
      call slha_handle_SMINPUTS (parse_tree, model)
      call slha_handle_MINPAR (parse_tree, model, mssm_type)
    end if
    if (spectrum) then
      call slha_handle_info_block (parse_tree, "SPINFO", errors)
      if (errors) return
      call slha_handle_MASS (parse_tree, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "NMIX", "mn_", 4, 4, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "NMNMIX", "mixn_", 5, 5, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "UMIX", "mu_", 2, 2, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "VMIX", "mv_", 2, 2, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "STOPMIX", "mt_", 2, 2, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "SBOTMIX", "mb_", 2, 2, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "STAUMIX", "ml_", 2, 2, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "NMHMIX", "mixh0_", 3, 3, model)
      call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "NMAMIX", "mixa0_", 2, 3, model)
      call slha_handle_ALPHA (parse_tree, model)
```

```

        call slha_handle_HMIX (parse_tree, model)
        call slha_handle_NMSSMRUN (parse_tree, model)
        call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "AU", "Au_", 3, 3, model)
        call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "AD", "Ad_", 3, 3, model)
        call slha_handle_matrix_block (parse_tree, "AE", "Ae_", 3, 3, model)
    end if
    if (decays) then
        call slha_handle_info_block (parse_tree, "DCINFO", errors)
        if (errors) return
        call slha_handle_decays (parse_tree, model)
    end if
end if
end subroutine slha_interpret_parse_tree

```

## Info blocks

Handle the informational blocks SPINFO and DCINFO. The first two items are program name and version. Items with index 3 are warnings. Items with index 4 are errors. We reproduce these as WHIZARD warnings and errors.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine slha_handle_info_block (parse_tree, block_name, errors)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    character(*), intent(in) :: block_name
    logical, intent(out) :: errors
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: msg
    integer :: i
    pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, var_str (block_name), required=.true.)
    if (.not. associated (pn_block)) then
        call msg_error ("SLHA: Missing info block '" &
            // trim (block_name) // "'; ignored.")
        errors = .true.
        return
    end if
    select case (block_name)
    case ("SPINFO")
        call msg_message ("SLHA: SUSY spectrum program info:")
    case ("DCINFO")
        call msg_message ("SLHA: SUSY decay program info:")
    end select
    call retrieve_strings_in_block (pn_block, 1, msg)
    do i = 1, size (msg)
        call msg_message ("SLHA: " // char (msg(i)))
    end do
    call retrieve_strings_in_block (pn_block, 2, msg)
    do i = 1, size (msg)
        call msg_message ("SLHA: " // char (msg(i)))
    end do
    call retrieve_strings_in_block (pn_block, 3, msg)
    do i = 1, size (msg)
        call msg_warning ("SLHA: " // char (msg(i)))
    end do
end subroutine

```

```

end do
call retrieve_strings_in_block (pn_block, 4, msg)
do i = 1, size (msg)
    call msg_error ("SLHA: " // char (msg(i)))
end do
errors = size (msg) > 0
end subroutine slha_handle_info_block

```

## MODSEL

Handle the overall model definition. Only certain models are recognized. The soft-breaking model templates that determine the set of input parameters:

*(SLHA: parameters)+≡*

```

integer, parameter :: MSSM_GENERIC = 0
integer, parameter :: MSSM_SUGRA = 1
integer, parameter :: MSSM_GMSB = 2
integer, parameter :: MSSM_AMSB = 3

```

*(SLHA: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine slha_handle_MODSEL &
    (parse_tree, os_data, model_list, model, mssm_type)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: model
    integer, intent(out) :: mssm_type
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block, pn_data, pn_item
    type(string_t) :: model_name
    type(string_t) :: filename
    pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, var_str ("MODSEL"), required=.true.)
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, 1)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        mssm_type = get_integer_parameter (pn_item)
    else
        mssm_type = MSSM_GENERIC
    end if
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, 3)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        select case (parse_node_get_integer (pn_item))
        case (MDL_MSSM); model_name = "MSSM"
        case (MDL_NMSSM); model_name = "NMSSM"
        case default
            call msg_fatal ("SLHA: unknown model code in MODSEL")
            return
        end select
    else
        model_name = "MSSM"
    end if
    call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, 4)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        call msg_fatal (" R-parity violation is currently not supported by WHIZARD.")
    end if
end subroutine

```



```

end if
call slha_find_index_ptr (pn_block, pn_data, pn_item, 5)
if (associated (pn_item)) then
    call msg_fatal (" CP violation is currently not supported by WHIZARD.")
end if
select case (char (model_name))
    case ("MSSM")
        select case (char (model%get_name ()))
            case ("MSSM","MSSM_CKM","MSSM_Grav","MSSM_Hgg")
                model_name = model%get_name ()
            case default
                call msg_fatal (" User-defined model and model in SLHA input file do not match.")
        end select
    case ("NMSSM")
        select case (char (model%get_name ()))
            case ("NMSSM","NMSSM_CKM","NMSSM_Hgg")
                model_name = model%get_name ()
            case default
                call msg_fatal (" User-defined model and model in SLHA input file do not match.")
        end select
    case default
        call msg_fatal (" SLHA model selection failure.")
end select
filename = model_name // ".mdl"
model => null ()
call model_list%read_model (model_name, filename, os_data, model)
if (associated (model)) then
    call msg_message ("SLHA: Initializing model '" &
        // char (model_name) // "'")
else
    call msg_fatal ("SLHA: Initialization failed for model '" &
        // char (model_name) // "'")
end if
end subroutine slha_handle_MODSEL

```

Write a MODSEL block, based on the contents of the current model.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_write_MODSEL (u, model, mssm_type)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer, intent(out) :: mssm_type
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    integer :: model_id
    type(string_t) :: mtype_string
    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    if (var_list_exists (var_list, var_str ("mtype"))) then
        mssm_type = nint (var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mtype")))
    else
        call msg_error ("SLHA: parameter 'mtype' (SUSY breaking scheme) " &
            // "is unknown in current model, no SLHA output possible")
        mssm_type = -1
        return
    end if
end subroutine

```

```

call write_block_header (u, "MODSEL", "SUSY model selection")
select case (mssm_type)
case (0); mtype_string = "Generic MSSM"
case (1); mtype_string = "SUGRA"
case (2); mtype_string = "GMSB"
case (3); mtype_string = "AMSB"
case default
mtype_string = "unknown"
end select
call write_integer_parameter (u, 1, mssm_type, &
"SUSY-breaking scheme: " // char (mtype_string))
select case (char (model%get_name ()))
case ("MSSM"); model_id = MDL_MSSM
case ("NMSSM"); model_id = MDL_NMSSM
case default
model_id = 0
end select
call write_integer_parameter (u, 3, model_id, &
"SUSY model type: " // char (model%get_name ()))
end subroutine slha_write_MODSEL

```

## SMINPUTS

Read SM parameters and update the variable list accordingly. If a parameter is not defined in the block, we use the previous value from the model variable list. For the basic parameters we have to do a small recalculation, since SLHA uses the  $G_F$ - $\alpha$ - $m_Z$  scheme, while WHIZARD derives them from  $G_F$ ,  $m_W$ , and  $m_Z$ .

(*SLHA: procedures*) +=

```

subroutine slha_handle_SMINPUTS (parse_tree, model)
type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
real(default) :: alpha_em_i, GF, alphas, mZ
real(default) :: ee, vv, cw_sw, cw2, mW
real(default) :: mb, mtop, mtau
type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
(parse_tree, var_str ("SMINPUTS"), required=.true.)
if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
alpha_em_i = &
get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 1, var_str ("alpha_em_i"), var_list)
GF = get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 2, var_str ("GF"), var_list)
alphas = &
get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 3, var_str ("alphas"), var_list)
mZ = get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 4, var_str ("mZ"), var_list)
mb = get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 5, var_str ("mb"), var_list)
mtop = get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 6, var_str ("mtop"), var_list)
mtau = get_parameter_in_block (pn_block, 7, var_str ("mtau"), var_list)
ee = sqrt (4 * pi / alpha_em_i)
vv = 1 / sqrt (sqrt (2._default) * GF)
cw_sw = ee * vv / (2 * mZ)

```

```

if (2*cw_sw <= 1) then
  cw2 = (1 + sqrt (1 - 4 * cw_sw**2)) / 2
  mW = mZ * sqrt (cw2)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("GF"), GF, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mZ"), mZ, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mW"), mW, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mtau"), mtau, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mb"), mb, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("mtop"), mtop, .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("alphas"), alphas, .true.)
else
  call msg_fatal ("SLHA: Unphysical SM parameter values")
  return
end if
end subroutine slha_handle_SMINPUTS

```

Write a SMINPUTS block.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine slha_write_SMINPUTS (u, model)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
  var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
  call write_block_header (u, "SMINPUTS", "SM input parameters")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 1, var_str ("alpha_em_i"), var_list, &
    "Inverse electromagnetic coupling alpha (Z pole)")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 2, var_str ("GF"), var_list, &
    "Fermi constant")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 3, var_str ("alphas"), var_list, &
    "Strong coupling alpha_s (Z pole)")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 4, var_str ("mZ"), var_list, &
    "Z mass")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 5, var_str ("mb"), var_list, &
    "b running mass (at mb)")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 6, var_str ("mtop"), var_list, &
    "top mass")
  call write_real_data_item (u, 7, var_str ("mtau"), var_list, &
    "tau mass")
end subroutine slha_write_SMINPUTS

```

## MINPAR

The block of SUSY input parameters. They are accessible to WHIZARD, but they only get used when an external spectrum generator is invoked. The precise set of parameters depends on the type of SUSY breaking, which by itself is one of the parameters.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine slha_handle_MINPAR (parse_tree, model, mssm_type)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  integer, intent(in) :: mssm_type
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list

```

```

type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, &
    var_str ("mtype"), real(mssm_type, default), is_known=.true.)
pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
    (parse_tree, var_str ("MINPAR"), required=.true.)
select case (mssm_type)
case (MSSM_SUGRA)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 1, var_str ("m_zero"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 2, var_str ("m_half"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 4, var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 5, var_str ("A0"), var_list)
case (MSSM_GMSB)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 1, var_str ("Lambda"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 2, var_str ("M_mes"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 4, var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 5, var_str ("N_5"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 6, var_str ("c_grav"), var_list)
case (MSSM_AMSB)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 1, var_str ("m_zero"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 2, var_str ("m_grav"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 4, var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list)
case default
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list)
end select
end subroutine slha_handle_MINPAR

```

Write a MINPAR block as appropriate for the current model type.

*(SLHA: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine slha_write_MINPAR (u, model, mssm_type)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    integer, intent(in) :: mssm_type
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    call write_block_header (u, "MINPAR", "Basic SUSY input parameters")
    select case (mssm_type)
    case (MSSM_SUGRA)
        call write_real_data_item (u, 1, var_str ("m_zero"), var_list, &
            "Common scalar mass")
        call write_real_data_item (u, 2, var_str ("m_half"), var_list, &
            "Common gaugino mass")
        call write_real_data_item (u, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list, &
            "tan(beta)")
        call write_integer_data_item (u, 4, &
            var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list, &
            "Sign of mu")
        call write_real_data_item (u, 5, var_str ("A0"), var_list, &
            "Common trilinear coupling")
    case (MSSM_GMSB)
        call write_real_data_item (u, 1, var_str ("Lambda"), var_list, &

```

```

        "Soft-breaking scale")
    call write_real_data_item (u, 2, var_str ("M_mes"), var_list, &
        "Messenger scale")
    call write_real_data_item (u, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list, &
        "tan(beta)")
    call write_integer_data_item (u, 4, &
        var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list, &
        "Sign of mu")
    call write_integer_data_item (u, 5, var_str ("N_5"), var_list, &
        "Messenger index")
    call write_real_data_item (u, 6, var_str ("c_grav"), var_list, &
        "Gravitino mass factor")
case (MSSM_AMSB)
    call write_real_data_item (u, 1, var_str ("m_zero"), var_list, &
        "Common scalar mass")
    call write_real_data_item (u, 2, var_str ("m_grav"), var_list, &
        "Gravitino mass")
    call write_real_data_item (u, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list, &
        "tan(beta)")
    call write_integer_data_item (u, 4, &
        var_str ("sgn_mu"), var_list, &
        "Sign of mu")
case default
    call write_real_data_item (u, 3, var_str ("tanb"), var_list, &
        "tan(beta)")
end select
end subroutine slha_write_MINPAR

```

## Mass spectrum

Set masses. Since the particles are identified by PDG code, read the line and try to set the appropriate particle mass in the current model. At the end, update parameters, just in case the  $W$  or  $Z$  mass was included.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+=
subroutine slha_handle_MASS (parse_tree, model)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block, pn_data, pn_line, pn_code
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_mass
    integer :: pdg
    real(default) :: mass
    pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, var_str ("MASS"), required=.true.)
    if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
    pn_data => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block, 4)
    do while (associated (pn_data))
        pn_line => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_data, 2)
        pn_code => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line)
        if (associated (pn_code)) then
            pdg = get_integer_parameter (pn_code)
            pn_mass => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_code)
            if (associated (pn_mass)) then

```

```

        mass = get_real_parameter (pn_mass)
        call model_set_particle_mass (model, pdg, mass)
    else
        call msg_error ("SLHA: Block MASS: Missing mass value")
    end if
else
    call msg_error ("SLHA: Block MASS: Missing PDG code")
end if
pn_data => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_data)
end do
end subroutine slha_handle_MASS

```

## Widths

Set widths. For each DECAY block, extract the header, read the PDG code and width, and try to set the appropriate particle width in the current model.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_handle_decays (parse_tree, model)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_decay, pn_decay_spec, pn_code, pn_width
    integer :: pdg
    real(default) :: width
    pn_decay => slha_get_first_decay_ptr (parse_tree)
    do while (associated (pn_decay))
        pn_decay_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_decay, 2)
        pn_code => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_decay_spec)
        pdg = get_integer_parameter (pn_code)
        pn_width => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_code)
        width = get_real_parameter (pn_width)
        call model_set_particle_width (model, pdg, width)
        pn_decay => slha_get_next_decay_ptr (pn_decay)
    end do
end subroutine slha_handle_decays

```

## Mixing matrices

Read mixing matrices. We can treat all matrices by a single procedure if we just know the block name, variable prefix, and matrix dimension. The matrix dimension must be less than 10. For the pseudoscalar Higgses in NMSSM-type models we need off-diagonal matrices, so we generalize the definition.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_handle_matrix_block &
    (parse_tree, block_name, var_prefix, dim1, dim2, model)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    character(*), intent(in) :: block_name, var_prefix
    integer, intent(in) :: dim1, dim2
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    integer :: i, j

```

```

character(len=len(var_prefix)+2) :: var_name
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
    (parse_tree, var_str (block_name), required=.false.)
if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
do i = 1, dim1
    do j = 1, dim2
        write (var_name, "(A,I1,I1)") var_prefix, i, j
        call set_matrix_element (pn_block, i, j, var_str (var_name), var_list)
    end do
end do
end subroutine slha_handle_matrix_block

```

## Higgs data

Read the block ALPHA which holds just the Higgs mixing angle.

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_handle_ALPHA (parse_tree, model)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block, pn_line, pn_data, pn_item
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    real(default) :: al_h
    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, var_str ("ALPHA"), required=.false.)
    if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
    pn_data => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_block, 4)
    pn_line => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_data, 2)
    pn_item => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line)
    if (associated (pn_item)) then
        al_h = get_real_parameter (pn_item)
        call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("al_h"), al_h, &
            is_known=.true., ignore=.true.)
    end if
end subroutine slha_handle_ALPHA

```

Read the block HMX for the Higgs mixing parameters

*(SLHA: procedures)* +=

```

subroutine slha_handle_HMX (parse_tree, model)
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
    type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
    pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
        (parse_tree, var_str ("HMX"), required=.false.)
    if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 1, var_str ("mu_h"), var_list)
    call set_data_item (pn_block, 2, var_str ("tanb_h"), var_list)
end subroutine slha_handle_HMX

```

Read the block NMSSMRUN for the specific NMSSM parameters

```

<SLHA: procedures>+=
subroutine slha_handle_NMSSMRUN (parse_tree, model)
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(in) :: parse_tree
  type(model_t), intent(inout), target :: model
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_block
  type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
  var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (model)
  pn_block => slha_get_block_ptr &
    (parse_tree, var_str ("NMSSMRUN"), required=.false.)
  if (.not. (associated (pn_block))) return
  call set_data_item (pn_block, 1, var_str ("ls"), var_list)
  call set_data_item (pn_block, 2, var_str ("ks"), var_list)
  call set_data_item (pn_block, 3, var_str ("a_ls"), var_list)
  call set_data_item (pn_block, 4, var_str ("a_ks"), var_list)
  call set_data_item (pn_block, 5, var_str ("nmu"), var_list)
end subroutine slha_handle_NMSSMRUN

```

## 20.0.9 Parser

Read a SLHA file from stream, including preprocessing, and make up a parse tree.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+=
subroutine slha_parse_stream (stream, parse_tree)
  type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  type(stream_t), target :: stream_tmp
  call slha_preprocess (stream, ifile)
  call stream_init (stream_tmp, ifile)
  call lexer_init_slha (lexer)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream_tmp)
  call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_slha, lexer)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
  call stream_final (stream_tmp)
  call ifile_final (ifile)
end subroutine slha_parse_stream

```

Read a SLHA file chosen by name. Check first the current directory, then the directory where SUSY input files should be located.

```

<SLHA: procedures>+=
subroutine slha_parse_file (file, os_data, parse_tree)
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
  type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
  type(parse_tree_t), intent(out) :: parse_tree
  logical :: exist
  type(string_t) :: filename
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  call msg_message ("Reading SLHA input file '" // char (file) // "'")
  filename = file

```



```

inquire (file=char(filename), exist=exist)
if (.not. exist) then
  filename = os_data%whizard_susypath // "/" // file
  inquire (file=char(filename), exist=exist)
  if (.not. exist) then
    call msg_fatal ("SLHA input file '" // char (file) // "' not found")
    return
  end if
end if
call stream_init (stream, char (filename))
call slha_parse_stream (stream, parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
end subroutine slha_parse_file

```

### 20.0.10 API

Read the SLHA file, parse it, and interpret the parse tree. The model parameters retrieved from the file will be inserted into the appropriate model, which is loaded and modified in the background. The pointer to this model is returned as the last argument.

```

<SLHA: public>+≡
  public :: slha_read_file

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
  subroutine slha_read_file &
    (file, os_data, model_list, model, input, spectrum, decays)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    type(model_list_t), intent(inout) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer, intent(inout) :: model
    logical, intent(in) :: input, spectrum, decays
    type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
    call slha_parse_file (file, os_data, parse_tree)
    if (associated (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree))) then
      call slha_interpret_parse_tree &
        (parse_tree, os_data, model_list, model, input, spectrum, decays)
      call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
      call model_parameters_update (model)
    end if
  end subroutine slha_read_file

```

Write the SLHA contents, as far as possible, to external file.

```

<SLHA: public>+≡
  public :: slha_write_file

<SLHA: procedures>+≡
  subroutine slha_write_file (file, model, input, spectrum, decays)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
    type(model_t), target, intent(in) :: model
    logical, intent(in) :: input, spectrum, decays
    integer :: mssm_type
    integer :: u

```

```

u = free_unit ()
call msg_message ("Writing SLHA output file '" // char (file) // "'")
open (unit=u, file=char(file), action="write", status="replace")
write (u, "(A)")  "# SUSY Les Houches Accord"
write (u, "(A)")  "# Output generated by " // trim (VERSION_STRING)
call slha_write_MODSEL (u, model, mssm_type)
if (input) then
  call slha_write_SMINPUTS (u, model)
  call slha_write_MINPAR (u, model, mssm_type)
end if
if (spectrum) then
  call msg_bug ("SLHA: spectrum output not supported yet")
end if
if (decays) then
  call msg_bug ("SLHA: decays output not supported yet")
end if
close (u)
end subroutine slha_write_file

```

## 20.0.11 Unit tests

```

<SLHA: public>+=
  public :: slha_test

<SLHA: procedures>+=
  subroutine slha_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <SLHA: execute tests>
end subroutine slha_test

```

Checking the basics of the SLHA interface.

```

<SLHA: execute tests>=
  call test (slha_1, "slha_1", &
    "check SLHA interface", &
    u, results)

<SLHA: tests>=
  subroutine slha_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(os_data_t), pointer :: os_data => null ()
    type(parse_tree_t), pointer :: parse_tree => null ()
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer
    character(*), parameter :: file_slha = "slha_test.dat"
    type(model_list_t) :: model_list
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: SLHA Interface"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test SLHA file reading and writing"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initializing"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

allocate (os_data)
allocate (parse_tree)
call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call model_list%read_model &
    (var_str("MSSM"), var_str("MSSM.mdl"), os_data, model)
call syntax_slha_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Reading SLHA file spslap_decays.slha"
write (u, "(A)")

call slha_parse_file (var_str ("spslap_decays.slha"), os_data, parse_tree)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Writing the parse tree:"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_tree_write (parse_tree, u)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Interpreting the parse tree"
write (u, "(A)")

call slha_interpret_parse_tree (parse_tree, os_data, model_list, model, &
    input=.true., spectrum=.true., decays=.true.)
call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Writing out the list of variables (reals only):"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_write (model_get_var_list_ptr (model), &
    only_type = V_REAL, unit = u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Writing SLHA output to '" // file_slha // "'"
write (u, "(A)")

call slha_write_file (var_str (file_slha), model, input=.true., &
    spectrum=.false., decays=.false.)
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = file_slha, action = "read", status = "old")
do
    read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat) buffer
    if (buffer(1:37) == "# Output generated by WHIZARD version") then
        buffer = "[...]"
    end if
    if (iostat /= 0) exit
    write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```
call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
deallocate (parse_tree)
deallocate (os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: slha_1"
write (u, "(A)")

end subroutine slha_1
```

## Chapter 21

# NLO infrastructure

### 21.1 BLHA interface

These modules implement the communication with one loop matrix element providers according to the Binoth LesHouches Accord Interface. The actual matrix element(s) are loaded as a dynamic library.

The module is split into a configuration interface which manages configuration and handles the request and contract files, a module which interfaces the OLP matrix elements and a driver.

```
<blha_config.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module blha_config  
  
    <Use strings>  
    use constants !NODEP!  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use md5  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use quantum_numbers  
    use pdg_arrays  
    use sorting  
    use lexers  
    use parser  
    use syntax_rules  
    use ifiles  
    use limits, only: EOF !NODEP!  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <BLHA config: public>  
  
    <BLHA config: parameters>  
  
    <BLHA config: types>
```

```

    <BLHA config: variables>

    <BLHA config: interfaces>

    contains

    <BLHA config: procedures>

    end module blha_config

<blha_interface.f90>≡
    <File header>

    module blha_interface

    <Use strings>
        use constants !NODEP!
    <Use file utils>
        use diagnostics !NODEP!
        use sm_physics !NODEP!
        use md5
        use lorentz !NODEP!
        use models
        use flavors
        use quantum_numbers
        use interactions
        use evaluators
        use particles
        use quantum_numbers
        use blha_config
        use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding !NODEP!
        use os_interface

    <Standard module head>

    <BLHA interface: public>

    <BLHA interface: types>

    <BLHA interface: interfaces>

    contains

    <BLHA interface: procedures>

    end module blha_interface

<blha_driver.f90>≡
    <File header>

    module blha_driver

    <Use strings>
        use constants !NODEP!

```

```

<Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use sm_physics !NODEP!
  use md5
  use lorentz !NODEP!
  use models
  use flavors
  use quantum_numbers
  use interactions
  use evaluators
  use particles
  use quantum_numbers
  use blha_config
  use blha_interface

```

```

<Standard module head>

```

```

<BLHA driver: public>

```

```

contains

```

```

<BLHA driver: procedures>

```

```

end module blha_driver

```

### 21.1.1 Configuration

Parameters to enumerate the different options in the order.

```

<BLHA config: parameters>≡
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_MEST_SUM=1, BLHA_MEST_AVG=2, BLHA_MEST_OTHER=3
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_CT_QCD=1, BLHA_CT_EW=2, BLHA_CT_QED=3, BLHA_CT_OTHER=4
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_IRREG_CDR=1, BLHA_IRREG_DRED=2, BLHA_IRREG_THV=3, &
    BLHA_IRREG_MREG=4, BLHA_IRREG_OTHER=5
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_SUBMODE_NONE = 1, BLHA_SUBMODE_OTHER = 2
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_MPS_ONSHELL=1, BLHA_MPS_OTHER=2
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_MODE_GOSAM=1, BLHA_MODE_FEYNARTS = 2, BLHA_MODE_GENERIC=3
  integer, public, parameter :: &
    BLHA_OM_NONE=1, BLHA_OM_NOCPL=2, BLHA_OM_OTHER=3

```

This type encapsulates a BLHA request.

```

<BLHA config: public>≡
  public :: blha_configuration_t
  public :: blha_cfg_process_node_t

<BLHA config: types>≡
  type :: blha_cfg_process_node_t
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_in, pdg_out

```

```

        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: fingerprint
        integer :: nsub
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ids
        type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: next => null ()
    end type blha_cfg_process_node_t

type :: blha_configuration_t
    type(string_t) :: name
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: md5
    logical :: dirty = .true.
    integer :: n_proc = 0
    integer :: mode = BLHA_MODE_GENERIC
    type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: processes => null ()
    integer, dimension(2) :: matrix_element_square_type = BLHA_MEST_SUM
    type(string_t), dimension (2) :: matrix_element_square_type_other
    integer :: correction_type = BLHA_CT_QCD
    type(string_t) :: correction_type_other
    integer :: irreg = BLHA_IRREG_THV
    type(string_t) :: irreg_other
    integer :: massive_particle_scheme = BLHA_MPS_ONSHELL
    type(string_t) :: massive_particle_scheme_other
    integer :: subtraction_mode = BLHA_SUBMODE_NONE
    type(string_t) :: subtraction_mode_other
    type(string_t) :: model_file
    logical :: subdivide_subprocesses = .false.
    integer :: alphas_power = -1, alpha_power = -1
    integer :: operation_mode = BLHA_OM_NONE
    type(string_t) :: operation_mode_other
end type blha_configuration_t

```

Initializer.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: blha_configuration_init

<BLHA config: procedures>≡
    subroutine blha_configuration_init (cfg, name, model, mode)
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(out) :: cfg
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(model_t), target, intent(in) :: model
        integer, intent(in), optional :: mode
        cfg%name = name
        cfg%model => model
        if (present (mode)) cfg%mode = mode
    end subroutine blha_configuration_init

```

Finalizer.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: blha_configuration_final

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
    subroutine blha_configuration_final (cfg)
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
        type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: cur, next
    end subroutine blha_configuration_final

```



```

cur => cfg%processes
do while (associated (cur))
    next => cur%next
    deallocate (cur)
    nullify (cur)
    cur => next
end do
end subroutine blha_configuration_final

```

Merge sort a process list w.r.t. to the process fingerprints. This is necessary for canonicalizing the process list prior to calculating the MD5 sum.

*(BLHA config: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine sort_processes (list, n)
    type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: list
    integer, intent(in), optional :: n
    type :: pnode
        type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: p
    end type pnode
    type(pnode), dimension(:), allocatable :: array
    integer :: count, i, s, i1, i2, i3
    type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: node
    if (present (n)) then
        count = n
    else
        node => list
        count = 0
        do while (associated (node))
            node => node%next
            count = count + 1
        end do
    end if
    ! Store list nodes into an array
    if (count == 0) return
    allocate (array(count))
    i = 1
    node => list
    do i = 1, count
        array(i)%p => node
        node => node%next
    end do
    s = 1
    ! Merge sort the array
    do while (s < count)
        i = 0
        i1 = 1
        i2 = s
        do while (i2 < count)
            i3 = min (s*(i+2), count)
            array(i1:i3) = merge (array(i1:i2), array(i2+1:i3))
            i = i + 2
            i1 = s*i+1
            i2 = s*(i+1)
        end do

```

```

        s = s * 2
    end do
    ! Relink according to their new order
    list => array(1)%p
    nullify (array(count)%p%next)
    node => list
    do i = 2, count
        node%next => array(i)%p
        node => node%next
    end do

contains

! .le. comparision
function lt (n1, n2) result (predicate)
    type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), intent(in) :: n1, n2
    logical :: predicate
    integer :: i
    predicate = .true.
    do i = 1, size (n1%fingerprint)
        if (n1%fingerprint(i) < n2%fingerprint(i)) return
        if (n1%fingerprint(i) > n2%fingerprint(i)) then
            predicate = .false.
            return
        end if
    end do
end function lt

! Sorting core --- merge two sorted chunks
function merge (l1, l2) result (lo)
    type(pnode), dimension(:), intent(in) :: l1, l2
    type(pnode), dimension(size (l1) + size (l2)) :: lo
    integer :: i, i1, i2
    i1 = 1
    i2 = 1
    do i = 1, size (lo)
        if (i1 > size (l1)) then
            lo(i)%p => l2(i2)%p
            i2 = i2 + 1
        elseif (i2 > size (l2)) then
            lo(i)%p => l1(i1)%p
            i1 = i1 + 1
        elseif (lt (l1(i1)%p, l2(i2)%p)) then
            lo(i)%p => l1(i1)%p
            i1 = i1 + 1
        else
            lo(i)%p => l2(i2)%p
            i2 = i2 + 1
        end if
    end do
end function merge

end subroutine sort_processes

```

Append a process. This expands the flavor sum, sorts it and then eliminates any duplicates.

*<BLHA config: public>+≡*

public :: blha\_configuration\_append\_process

*<BLHA config: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine blha_configuration_append_process (cfg, pdg_in, pdg_out, nsub, ids)
  type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
  type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: pdg_in, pdg_out
  integer, optional, intent(in) :: nsub
  integer, optional, dimension(:), intent(in) :: ids
  type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: root, node, tmp
  ! Multiindex for counting through the PDG numbers
  integer, dimension(size (pdg_in)) :: i_in
  integer, dimension(size (pdg_out)) :: i_out
  ! Handle the list of lists
  type :: ilist
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i
  end type ilist
  type(ilist), dimension(size (pdg_in)) :: ilist_i
  type(ilist), dimension(size (pdg_out)) :: ilist_o
  integer :: i, j, nproc
  logical :: inc
  ! Extract PDGs into integer lists
  do i = 1, size (pdg_in)
    ilist_i(i)%i = pdg_in(i)
  end do
  do i = 1, size (pdg_out)
    ilist_o(i)%i = pdg_out(i)
  end do
  i_in = 1
  i_out = 1
  allocate (root)
  node => root
  ! Perform the expansion
  nproc = 0
  EXPAND: do
    ! Transfer the PDG selection...
    allocate (node%pdg_in(size (pdg_in)))
    allocate (node%pdg_out(size (pdg_out)))
    allocate (node%fingerprint (size (pdg_in) + size (pdg_out)))
    if (present (nsub)) node%nsub = nsub
    if (present (ids)) then
      allocate (node%ids(size (ids)))
      node%ids = ids
    end if
    forall (j=1:size(ilist_i)) &
      node%pdg_in(j) = ilist_i(j)%i(i_in(j))
    forall (j=1:size(ilist_o)) &
      node%pdg_out(j) = ilist_o(j)%i(i_out(j))
    node%fingerprint = [ node%pdg_in, sort (node%pdg_out) ]
    nproc = nproc + 1
    inc = .false.
    ! ... and increment the multiindex
  end do
```

```

do j = 1, size (i_out)
  if (i_out(j) < size (ilist_o(j)%i)) then
    i_out(j) = i_out(j) + 1
    inc = .true.
    exit
  else
    i_out(j) = 1
  end if
end do
if (.not. inc) then
  do j = 1, size (i_in)
    if (i_in(j) < size (ilist_i(j)%i)) then
      i_in(j) = i_in(j) + 1
      inc = .true.
      exit
    else
      i_in(j) = 1
    end if
  end do
end if
if (.not. inc) exit EXPAND
allocate (node%next)
node => node%next
end do EXPAND
! Do the sorting
call sort_processes (root, nproc)
! Kill duplicates
node => root
do while (associated (node))
  if (.not. associated (node%next)) exit
  if (all (node%fingerprint == node%next%fingerprint)) then
    tmp => node%next%next
    deallocate (node%next)
    node%next => tmp
    nproc = nproc - 1
  else
    node => node%next
  end if
end do
! Append the remaining list
if (associated (cfg%processes)) then
  node => cfg%processes
  do while (associated (node%next))
    node => node%next
  end do
  node%next => root
else
  cfg%processes => root
end if
cfg%n_proc = cfg%n_proc + nproc
cfg%dirty = .true.
end subroutine blha_configuration_append_process

```

Change parameter(s).

*<BLHA config: public>+≡*

public :: blha\_configuration\_set

*<BLHA config: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine blha_configuration_set ( cfg, &
    matrix_element_square_type_hel, matrix_element_square_type_hel_other, &
    matrix_element_square_type_col, matrix_element_square_type_col_other, &
    correction_type, correction_type_other, &
    irreg, irreg_other, &
    massive_particle_scheme, massive_particle_scheme_other, &
    subtraction_mode, subtraction_mode_other, &
    model_file, subdivide_subprocesses, alphas_power, alpha_power, &
    operation_mode, operation_mode_other)
type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
integer, optional, intent(in) :: matrix_element_square_type_hel
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: matrix_element_square_type_hel_other
integer, optional, intent(in) :: matrix_element_square_type_col
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: matrix_element_square_type_col_other
integer, optional, intent(in) :: correction_type
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: correction_type_other
integer, optional, intent(in) :: irreg
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: irreg_other
integer, optional, intent(in) :: massive_particle_scheme
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: massive_particle_scheme_other
integer, optional, intent(in) :: subtraction_mode
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: subtraction_mode_other
type(string_t), optional, intent(in) :: model_file
logical, optional, intent(in) :: subdivide_subprocesses
integer, intent(in), optional :: alphas_power, alpha_power
integer, intent(in), optional :: operation_mode
type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: operation_mode_other
if (present (matrix_element_square_type_hel)) &
    cfg%matrix_element_square_type(1) = matrix_element_square_type_hel
if (present (matrix_element_square_type_hel_other)) &
    cfg%matrix_element_square_type_other(1) = matrix_element_square_type_hel_other
if (present (matrix_element_square_type_col)) &
    cfg%matrix_element_square_type(2) = matrix_element_square_type_col
if (present (matrix_element_square_type_col_other)) &
    cfg%matrix_element_square_type_other(2) = matrix_element_square_type_col_other
if (present (correction_type)) &
    cfg%correction_type = correction_type
if (present (correction_type_other)) &
    cfg%correction_type_other = correction_type_other
if (present (irreg)) &
    cfg%irreg = irreg
if (present (irreg_other)) &
    cfg%irreg_other = irreg_other
if (present (massive_particle_scheme)) &
    cfg%massive_particle_scheme = massive_particle_scheme
if (present (massive_particle_scheme_other)) &
    cfg%massive_particle_scheme_other = massive_particle_scheme_other
if (present (subtraction_mode)) &
    cfg%subtraction_mode = subtraction_mode
if (present (subtraction_mode_other)) &
```

```

        cfg%subtraction_mode_other = subtraction_mode_other
    if (present (model_file)) &
        cfg%model_file = model_file
    if (present (subdivide_subprocesses)) &
        cfg%subdivide_subprocesses = subdivide_subprocesses
    if (present (alphas_power)) &
        cfg%alphas_power = alphas_power
    if (present (alpha_power)) &
        cfg%alpha_power = alpha_power
    if (present (operation_mode)) &
        cfg%operation_mode = operation_mode
    if (present (operation_mode_other)) &
        cfg%operation_mode_other = operation_mode_other
    cfg%dirty = .true.
end subroutine blha_configuration_set

```

Write the BLHA file. Internal mode is intended for md5summing only.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: blha_configuration_write

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
    subroutine blha_configuration_write (cfg, unit, internal)
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(in) :: cfg
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        logical, intent(in), optional :: internal
        integer :: u
        logical :: full
        type(string_t) :: buf
        type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: node
        integer :: i
        character(3) :: pdg_char
        character(len=25), parameter :: pad = ""
        u = output_unit (unit)
        full = .true.; if (present (internal)) full = .not. internal
        if (full .and. cfg%dirty) call msg_bug ( &
            "BUG: attempted to write out a dirty BLHA configuration")
        if (full) then
            write (u,'(A)') "# BLHA order written by WHIZARD <Version>"
            write (u,'(A)')
        end if
        select case (cfg%mode)
            case (BLHA_MODE_GOSAM); buf = "GoSam"
            case default; buf = "vanilla"
        end select
        write (u,'(A)') "# BLHA interface mode: " // char (buf)
        write (u,'(A)') "# process: " // char (cfg%name)
        write (u,'(A)') "# model: " // char (cfg%model%get_name ())
        if (full) then
            write (u,'(A)')
            write (u,'(A)') '#@WO MD5 "' // char (cfg%md5) // '" '
            write (u,'(A)')
        end if
        if (all (cfg%matrix_element_square_type == BLHA_MEST_SUM)) then
            buf = "CHsummed"

```

```

elseif (all (cfg%matrix_element_square_type == BLHA_MEST_AVG)) then
    buf = "CHaveraged"
else
    buf = (render_mest ("H", cfg%matrix_element_square_type(1), &
        cfg%matrix_element_square_type_other(1)) // " ") // &
        render_mest ("C", cfg%matrix_element_square_type(2), &
            cfg%matrix_element_square_type_other(2))
end if
write (u,'(A25,A)') "MatrixElementSquareType" // pad, char (buf)
select case (cfg%correction_type)
    case (BLHA_CT_QCD); buf = "QCD"
    case (BLHA_CT_EW); buf = "EW"
    case (BLHA_CT_QED); buf = "QED"
    case default; buf = cfg%correction_type_other
end select
write (u,'(A25,A)') "CorrectionType" // pad, char (buf)
select case (cfg%irreg)
    case (BLHA_IRREG_CDR); buf = "CDR"
    case (BLHA_IRREG_DRED); buf = "DRED"
    case (BLHA_IRREG_THV); buf = "tHV"
    case (BLHA_IRREG_MREG); buf = "MassReg"
    case default; buf = cfg%irreg_other
end select
write (u,'(A25,A)') "IRregularisation" // pad, char (buf)
select case (cfg%massive_particle_scheme)
    case (BLHA_MPS_ONSHELL); buf = "OnShell"
    case default; buf = cfg%massive_particle_scheme_other
end select
write (u,'(A25,A)') "MassiveParticleScheme" // pad, char (buf)
select case (cfg%subtraction_mode)
    case (BLHA_SUBMODE_NONE); buf = "None"
    case default; buf = cfg%subtraction_mode_other
end select
write (u,'(A25,A)') "IRsubtractionMethod" // pad, char (buf)
write (u,'(A25,A)') "ModelFile" // pad, char (cfg%model_file)
if (cfg%subdivide_subprocesses) then
    write (u,'(A25,A)') "SubdivideSubprocesses" // pad, "yes"
else
    write (u,'(A25,A)') "SubdivideSubprocess" // pad, "no"
end if
if (cfg%alphas_power >= 0) write (u,'(A25,A)') &
    "AlphasPower" // pad, int2char (cfg%alphas_power)
if (cfg%alpha_power >= 0) write (u,'(A25,A)') &
    "AlphaPower " // pad, int2char (cfg%alpha_power)
if (full) then
    write (u,'(A)')
    write (u,'(A)') "# Process definitions"
    write (u,'(A)')
end if
node => cfg%processes
do while (associated (node))
    buf = ""
    do i = 1, size (node%pdg_in)
        write (pdg_char,'(I3)') node%pdg_in(i)
    end do
end do

```

```

        buf = (buf // pdg_char) // " "
    end do
    buf = buf // "-> "
    do i = 1, size (node%pdg_out)
        write (pdg_char,'(I3)') node%pdg_out(i)
        buf = (buf // pdg_char) // " "
    end do
    write (u,'(A)') char (trim (buf))
    node => node%next
end do

contains

function render_mest (prefix, mest, other) result (tag)
    character, intent(in) :: prefix
    integer, intent(in) :: mest
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: other
    type(string_t) :: tag
    select case (mest)
    case (BLHA_MEST_AVG); tag = prefix // "averaged"
    case (BLHA_MEST_SUM); tag = prefix // "summed"
    case default; tag = other
    end select
end function render_mest

end subroutine blha_configuration_write

```

“Freeze” the configuration by calculating the MD5 sum.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: blha_configuration_freeze

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
    subroutine blha_configuration_freeze (cfg)
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
        integer :: u
        if (.not. cfg%dirty) return
        call sort_processes (cfg%processes)
        u = free_unit ()
        open (unit=u, status="scratch", action="readwrite")
        call blha_configuration_write (cfg, u, internal=.true.)
        rewind (u)
        cfg%md5 = md5sum (u)
        cfg%dirty = .false.
        close (u)
    end subroutine blha_configuration_freeze

```

Read a contract file, again creating a blha\_configuration\_t object.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: blha_read_contract

<BLHA config: interfaces>≡
    interface blha_read_contract
        module procedure blha_read_contract_unit, &
            blha_read_contract_file
    end interface

```



```
end interface blha_read_contract
```

(*BLHA config: procedures*) $\vdash$

```
subroutine blha_read_contract_file (cfg, ok, fname, success)
  type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
  logical, intent(out) :: ok
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: fname
  logical, intent(out), optional :: success
  integer :: u, stat
  u = free_unit ()
  open (u, file=char (fname), status="old", action="read", iostat=stat)
  if (stat /= 0) then
    if (present (success)) then
      success = .false.
      return
    else
      call msg_bug ('Unable to open contract file "' // char (fname) // '"')
    end if
  end if
  call blha_read_contract_unit (cfg, ok, u, success)
  close (u)
end subroutine blha_read_contract_file
```

```
subroutine blha_read_contract_unit (cfg, ok, u, success)
  type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
  logical, intent(out) :: ok
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  logical, intent(out), optional :: success
  type(stream_t) :: stream
  type(ifile_t) :: preprocessed
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
  type(string_t) :: md5
  call stream_init (stream, u)
  call contract_preprocess (stream, preprocessed)
  call stream_final (stream)
  call stream_init (stream, preprocessed)
  call blha_init_lexer (lexer)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_blha_contract, lexer)
  call blha_transfer_contract (cfg, ok, parse_tree, success)
  call blha_configuration_write (cfg, internal=.true.)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
  call stream_final (stream)
  call ifile_final (preprocessed)
  if (ok) then
    md5 = cfg%md5
    call blha_configuration_freeze (cfg)
    if (char (trim (md5 )) /= "") then
      if (md5 /= cfg%md5) then
        call msg_warning ("BLHA contract does not match the recorded " &
          // "checksum --- this counts as an error!")
        ok = .false.
      end if
    end if
  end if
```

```

    else
        call msg_warning ("It seems the OLP scrubbed our checksum, unable " &
            // "to check contract consistency.")
    end if
end if
end if
end subroutine blha_read_contract_unit

```

Walk the parse tree and transfer the results to the `blha_configuration` object. The `goto` is a poor man's replacement for exceptions which would be an appropriate error handling mechanism here.

*(BLHA config: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine blha_transfer_contract (cfg, ok, parse_tree, success)
    type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(in), target :: parse_tree
    logical, intent(out), optional :: success
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root, pn_line, pn_request, &
        pn_result, pn_key, pn_opt, pn_state_in, pn_state_out, pn_pdg
    type(string_t) :: emsg
    integer :: nopt, i, nsub
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: ids
    logical, dimension(2) :: flags
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_in, pdg_out
    ok = .true.
    pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)
    pn_line => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_root)
    do while (associated (pn_line))
        pn_request => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line)
        if (.not. associated (pn_request)) cycle
        if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_request)) == "process") then
            pn_result => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_line, 2)
            pn_state_in => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_request, 1)
            pn_state_out => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_request, 3)
            allocate (pdg_in (parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_state_in)))
            allocate (pdg_out (parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_state_out)))
            i = 1
            pn_pdg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_state_in)
            do while (associated (pn_pdg))
                pdg_in(i) = [get_int (pn_pdg)]
                pn_pdg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_pdg)
                i = i + 1
            end do
            i = 1
            pn_pdg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_state_out)
            do while (associated (pn_pdg))
                pdg_out(i) = [get_int (pn_pdg)]
                pn_pdg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_pdg)
                i = i + 1
            end do
            i = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_result)
            emsg = "broken process line"
            if (i < 2) goto 10
            pn_opt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_result, 2)

```

```

do while (associated (pn_opt))
  if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_opt)) == "string") then
    call msg_warning ("While reading the BLHA contract: " // &
      'the OLP returned an error for a process: "' // &
      char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)) // "')
    ok = .false.
    return
  end if
  pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_opt)
end do
pn_opt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_result, 2)
nsub = get_int (pn_opt)
if (nsub /= i - 2) goto 10
allocate (ids(nsub))
i = 1
pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_opt)
do while (associated (pn_opt))
  ids(i) = get_int (pn_opt)
  pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_opt)
end do
call blha_configuration_append_process (cfg, pdg_in, pdg_out, &
  nsub=nsub, ids=ids)
deallocate (pdg_in, pdg_out, ids)
else
  pn_result => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_request), 2)
  pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_request)
  pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
  nopt = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_request) - 1
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_key)))
    case ("md5")
      cfg%md5 = parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
    case ("modelfile")
      cfg%model_file = get_fname (pn_opt)
      call check_result (pn_result, "ModelFile")
    case ("irregularisation")
      select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
        case ("cdr"); cfg%irreg = BLHA_IRREG_CDR
        case ("dred"); cfg%irreg = BLHA_IRREG_DRED
        case ("thv"); cfg%irreg = BLHA_IRREG_THV
        case ("mreg"); cfg%irreg = BLHA_IRREG_MREG
        case default
          cfg%irreg = BLHA_IRREG_OTHER
          cfg%irreg_other = parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
      end select
      call check_result (pn_result, "IRRegularisation")
    case ("irsubtractionmethod")
      select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
        case ("none"); cfg%subtraction_mode = BLHA_SUBMODE_NONE
        case default
          cfg%subtraction_mode = BLHA_SUBMODE_OTHER
          cfg%subtraction_mode_other = parse_node_get_string(pn_opt)
      end select
      call check_result (pn_result, "IRSubtractionMethod")
    case ("massiveparticlescheme")

```

```

select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
  case ("onshell")
    cfg%massive_particle_scheme = BLHA_MPS_ONSHELL
  case default
    cfg%massive_particle_scheme = BLHA_MPS_OTHER
    cfg%massive_particle_scheme_other = &
      parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
end select
call check_result (pn_result, "MassiveParticleScheme")
case ("matrilelementsquaretype")
  select case (nopt)
    case (1)
      select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
        case ("chsummed")
          cfg%matrix_element_square_type = BLHA_MEST_SUM
        case ("chaveraged")
          cfg%matrix_element_square_type = BLHA_MEST_AVG
        case default
          msg = "invalid MatrixElementSquareType: " // &
            parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
          goto 10
        end select
      case (2)
        do i = 1, 2
          pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key, i)
          select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (&
            pn_opt))))
            case ("csummed")
              cfg%matrix_element_square_type(2) = BLHA_MEST_SUM
              flags(2) = .true.
            case ("caveraged")
              cfg%matrix_element_square_type(2) = BLHA_MEST_AVG
              flags(2) = .true.
            case ("hsummed")
              cfg%matrix_element_square_type(1) = BLHA_MEST_SUM
              flags(1) = .true.
            case ("haveraged")
              cfg%matrix_element_square_type(1) = BLHA_MEST_AVG
              flags(1) = .true.
            case default
              msg = "invalid MatrixElementSquareType: " // &
                parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
              goto 10
            end select
          end do
        if (.not. all (flags)) then
          msg = "MatrixElementSquareType: setup not exhaustive"
          goto 10
        end if
      case default
        msg = "MatrixElementSquareType: too many options"
        goto 10
      end select
    end select
  call check_result (pn_result, "MatrixElementSquareType")

```

```

        case ("correctiontype")
            select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
                case ("qcd"); cfg%correction_type = BLHA_CT_QCD
                case ("qed"); cfg%correction_type = BLHA_CT_QED
                case ("ew"); cfg%correction_type = BLHA_CT_EW
                case default
                    cfg%correction_type = BLHA_CT_OTHER
                    cfg%correction_type_other = parse_node_get_string (pn_opt)
            end select
            call check_result (pn_result, "CorrectionType")
        case ("alphaspower")
            cfg%alphas_power = get_int (pn_opt)
            call check_result (pn_result, "AlphasPower")
        case ("alphapower")
            cfg%alpha_power = get_int (pn_opt)
            call check_result (pn_result, "AlphaPower")
        case ("subdividesubprocess")
            select case (lower_case (char (parse_node_get_string (pn_opt))))
                case ("yes"); cfg%subdivide_subprocesses = .true.
                case ("no"); cfg%subdivide_subprocesses = .false.
                case default
                    emsg = 'SubdivideSubprocess: invalid argument "' // &
                        parse_node_get_string (pn_opt) // '"'
                    goto 10
            end select
            call check_result (pn_result, "SubdivideSubprocess")
        case default
            emsg = "unknown statement: " // parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_key)
            goto 10
        end select
    end if
    pn_line => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_line)
end do
if (present (success)) success = .true.
return
10 continue
if (present (success)) then
    call msg_error ("Error reading BLHA contract: " // char (emsg))
    success = .false.
    return
else
    call msg_fatal ("Error reading BLHA contract: " // char (emsg))
end if

contains

function get_int (pn) result (i)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn
    integer :: i
    if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)) == "integer") then
        i = parse_node_get_integer (pn)
    else
        i = parse_node_get_integer (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2))
        if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn))) &

```

```

        == "-") i = -i
    end if
end function get_int

subroutine check_result (pn, step)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn
    character(*), intent(in) :: step
    type(string_t) :: res
    res = parse_node_get_string (pn)
    if (char (trim (res)) == "") then
        call msg_warning ("BLHA contract file: " // step // &
            ": OLP didn't return a status --- assuming an error")
        ok = .false.
    elseif (char (upper_case (res)) /= "OK") then
        call msg_warning ("BLHA contract file: " // step // &
            ": OLP error " // char (res) // ' ')
        ok = .false.
    end if
end subroutine check_result

function get_fname (pn) result (fname)
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn
    type(string_t) :: fname
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_component
    if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)) == "string") then
        fname = parse_node_get_string (pn)
    else
        fname = ""
        pn_component => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        do while (associated (pn_component))
            if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_component)) == "id") then
                fname = fname // parse_node_get_string (pn_component)
            else
                fname = fname // parse_node_get_key (pn_component)
            end if
            pn_component => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_component)
        end do
    end if
end function get_fname

end subroutine blha_transfer_contract

```

Initialize the lexer.

*(BLHA config: procedures)*+≡

```

subroutine blha_init_lexer (lexer)
    type(lexer_t), intent(inout) :: lexer
    call lexer_init (lexer, &
        comment_chars = "#", &
        quote_chars = '"', &
        quote_match = '"', &
        single_chars = '{ } | . / \ : ,', &
        special_class = ["->"], &
        keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_blha_contract), &
        upper_case_keywords = .false. &
    )
end subroutine blha_init_lexer

```

```

    )
end subroutine blha_init_lexer

```

Define the parser syntax table.

```

<BLHA config: variables>≡
    type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_blha_contract

<BLHA config: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_blha_contract_init

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_blha_contract_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ contract = line*")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '->")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '.'"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '/'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '\\")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '-'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '|')")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY ':'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE id")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "INT integer")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT sign = '+' | '-'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ signed_integer = sign integer")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "QUO string = '...'"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO line = '{' line_contents '}'")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ line_contents = request result?")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT request = definition | process")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT definition = option_unary | option_nary | " &
            // "option_path | option_numeric")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY matrixelementsquaretype")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY irregularisation")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY massiveparticlescheme")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY irsubtractionmethod")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY modelfile")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY operationmode")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY subdividesubprocess")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY alphaspower")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY alphapower")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY correctiontype")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY md5")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ option_unary = key_unary arg")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ option_nary = key_nary arg+")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ option_path = key_path arg_path")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ option_numeric = key_numeric arg_numeric")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT key_unary = irregularisation | " &
            // "massiveparticlescheme | irsubtractionmethod | subdividesubprocess | " &
            // "correctiontype | md5")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT key_nary = matrixelementsquaretype | " &
            // "operationmode")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT key_numeric = alphaspower | alphapower")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT key_path = modelfile")
        call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT arg = id | string")
    end subroutine

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT arg_numeric = integer | signed_integer")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT arg_path = filename | string")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ filename = filename_atom+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT filename_atom = id | '.' | '/' | '\ ' | ':'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ process = state '->' state")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ state = pdg+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT pdg = integer | signed_integer")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ result = '|' result_atom+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT result_atom = integer | string")
call syntax_init (syntax_blha_contract, ifile)
call ifile_final (ifile)
end subroutine syntax_blha_contract_init

```

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
public :: syntax_blha_contract_final

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
subroutine syntax_blha_contract_final
  call syntax_final (syntax_blha_contract)
end subroutine syntax_blha_contract_final

```

As the contract file is line-oriented, we apply a preprocessing step which reformats the file in a way suitable for our free-form parser.

```

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
subroutine contract_preprocess (stream, ifile)
  type(stream_t), intent(inout) :: stream
  type(ifile_t), intent(out) :: ifile
  type(string_t) :: buf, reg, transformed
  integer :: stat, n
  buf = ""
  LINES: do
    call stream_get_record (stream, reg, stat)
    select case (stat)
      case (0)
      case (EOF); exit LINES
      case default
        call msg_bug ("I/O error while reading BLHA contract file")
    end select
    buf = buf // trim (reg)
    ! Take care of continuation lines
    if (char (extract (buf, len (buf), len(buf))) == '&') then
      buf = extract (buf, 1, len (buf) - 1) // " "
      cycle LINES
    end if
    buf = adjustl (buf)
    ! Transform #@WO comments into ordinary statements
    if (char (extract (buf, 1, 4)) == "#@WO") &
      buf = extract (buf, 5)
    ! Kill comments and blank lines
    if ((char (trim (buf)) == "") .or. &
      (char (extract (buf, 1, 1)) == "#")) then
      buf = ""
      cycle LINES
    end if
  end do
end subroutine contract_preprocess

```



```

        end if
        ! Chop off any end-of-line comments
        call split (buf, reg, "#")
        ! Split line into order and result
        call split (reg, buf, "|")
        reg = trim (adjustl (reg))
        buf = trim (adjustl (buf))
        ! Check whether the order is a process definition
        n = scan (buf, ">")
        if (n == 0) then
            ! No -> quote result
            reg = ('"' // reg // '"')
        else
            ! Yes -> leave any numbers as they are, quote any leftovers
            n = scan (reg, "0123456789", back=.true.)
            if (n < len (reg)) &
                reg = char (extract (reg, 1, n)) // ' ' // &
                    char (trim (adjustl (extract (reg, n+1)))) // ' '
        end if
        ! Enclose the line into curly brackets
        transformed = "{" // char (buf) // " | " // char (reg) // "}"
        call ifile_append (ifile, transformed)
        buf = ""
    end do LINES
end subroutine contract_preprocess

```

Test.

```

<BLHA config: public>+≡
public :: blha_config_test

<BLHA config: procedures>+≡
subroutine blha_config_test (model, cfg, ok)
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(2) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(4) :: pdg_out
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(blha_configuration_t), intent(out) :: cfg
    logical, intent(out) :: ok
    integer :: u
    logical :: flag
    ok = .false.
    pdg_in(1) = [1, 2, -1, -2]
    pdg_in(2) = pdg_in(1)
    pdg_out(1) = pdg_in(1)
    pdg_out(2) = [11]
    pdg_out(3) = [-11]
    pdg_out(4) = pdg_out(1)
    call blha_configuration_init (cfg, var_str ("test"), model)
    call blha_configuration_set (cfg, alphas_power = 2, alpha_power = 3)
    call blha_configuration_append_process (cfg, pdg_in, pdg_out)
    call blha_configuration_freeze (cfg)
    print *
    call blha_configuration_write (cfg)
    print *
    call blha_configuration_final (cfg)

```

```

call blha_configuration_init (cfg, var_str ("test"), model, &
    mode=BLHA_MODE_GOSAM)
call blha_configuration_set (cfg, alphas_power = 0, &
    model_file = var_str ("test.slha"))
pdg_in(1) = [1]
pdg_in(2) = [-1]
pdg_out(1) = [22]
pdg_out(2) = [22]
call blha_configuration_append_process (cfg, pdg_in, pdg_out(1:2))
call blha_configuration_freeze (cfg)
u = free_unit ()
open (u, file="test.blha.order", action="write", status="replace")
call blha_configuration_write (cfg, u)
call blha_configuration_final (cfg)
inquire (file="test.blha.contract", exist=flag)
if (.not. flag) return
call blha_configuration_init (cfg, var_str ("test"), model, mode=BLHA_MODE_GOSAM)
call blha_read_contract (cfg, ok, var_str ("test.blha.contract"), success=flag)
print *, "Reading back processed configuration: success? ", ok
end subroutine blha_config_test

```

### 21.1.2 OLP matrix element interface

The prototypes of the OLP functions.

*(BLHA interface: interfaces)*≡

```

abstract interface
  subroutine ext_olp_start (file, status) bind(c)
    import
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: file
    integer(c_int), intent(out) :: status
  end subroutine ext_olp_start

  subroutine ext_olp_evalsubprocess &
    (label, momenta, scale, parameters, amp) bind(c)
    import
    integer(c_int), intent(in), value :: label
    real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(in) :: momenta
    real(c_double), intent(in), value :: scale
    real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(in) :: parameters
    real(c_double), dimension(*), intent(out) :: amp
  end subroutine ext_olp_evalsubprocess

  subroutine ext_olp_finalize () bind(c)
  end subroutine ext_olp_finalize

  subroutine ext_olp_option (assignment, status) bind(c)
    import
    character(c_char), dimension(*), intent(in) :: assignment
    integer(c_int), intent(out) :: status
  end subroutine ext_olp_option
end interface

```

The OLP library is encapsulated together with the configuration in derived type:

```

<BLHA interface: public>≡
    public :: blha_olp_t

<BLHA interface: types>≡
    type :: blha_olp_t
        private
            type(blha_configuration_t) :: cfg
            type(string_t) :: library
            integer :: n_in, n_out, n_flv, n_hel, n_col
            integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: flv_state
            logical :: color_summed = .true., flavor_summed = .true.
            logical :: loaded = .false.
            type(dlaccess_t) :: lib_handle
            procedure(ext_olp_start), pointer, nopass :: olp_start => null ()
            procedure(ext_olp_evalsubprocess), pointer, nopass :: &
                olp_evalsubprocess => null ()
            procedure(ext_olp_finalize), pointer, nopass :: olp_finalize => null ()
            procedure(ext_olp_option), pointer, nopass :: olp_option => null ()
        end type blha_olp_t

```

Init the blha\_olp\_t object and try to dlopen the library.

```

<BLHA interface: public>+≡
    public :: blha_olp_init

<BLHA interface: procedures>≡
    subroutine blha_olp_init (olp, cfg, library, success)
        type(blha_olp_t), intent(out) :: olp
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: library
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(in) :: cfg
        logical, intent(out), optional :: success
        type(blha_cfg_process_node_t), pointer :: node
        type(string_t) :: prefix, libname
        type(c_funptr) :: fptr
        integer :: olp_status
        success = .true.
        node => cfg%processes
        if (.not. associated (node)) then
            call error ("blha_interface_init: empty process list")
            return
        end if
        olp%n_in = size (node%pdg_in)
        olp%n_out = size (node%pdg_out)
        do while (associated (node))
            if ((olp%n_in /= size (node%pdg_in)) .or. &
                (olp%n_out /= size (node%pdg_out))) then
                call error ("blha_interface_init: inconsistent process list")
                return
            end if
            node => node%next
        end do
        if (present (library)) then
            olp%library = library
        else

```

```

        olp%library = cfg%name // ".so"
    end if
    if (char (extract (olp%library, 1, 1)) == "/") then
        prefix = ""
        libname = extract (olp%library, 2)
    else
        prefix = "."
        libname = olp%library
    end if
    call dlaccess_init (olp%lib_handle, prefix, libname)
    if (dlaccess_has_error (olp%lib_handle)) then
        call error ("blha_interface_init: error opening library: " // &
            char (dlaccess_get_error (olp%lib_handle)))
        call dlaccess_final (olp%lib_handle)
        return
    end if
    fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (olp%lib_handle, var_str ("OLP_Start"))
    if (.not. check_dlstate ()) return
    call c_f_procpointer (fptr, olp%olp_start)
    fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (olp%lib_handle, var_str ("OLP_EvalSubProcess"))
    if (.not. check_dlstate ()) return
    call c_f_procpointer (fptr, olp%olp_evalsubprocess)
    if (olp%cfg%mode == BLHA_MODE_GOSAM) then
        fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (olp%lib_handle, var_str ("OLP_Finalize"))
        if (.not. check_dlstate ()) return
        call c_f_procpointer (fptr, olp%olp_finalize)
        fptr = dlaccess_get_c_funptr (olp%lib_handle, var_str ("OLP_Option"))
        if (.not. check_dlstate ()) return
        call c_f_procpointer (fptr, olp%olp_option)
    end if
    call olp%olp_start (string_f2c (cfg%model_file), olp_status)
    if (olp_status /= 1) then
        call error ("blha_interface_init: OLP initialization failed")
        call dlaccess_final (olp%lib_handle)
    end if
    success = .true.
    olp%loaded = .true.
contains

function check_dlstate () result (ok)
    logical :: ok
    ok = .not. dlaccess_has_error (olp%lib_handle)
    if (.not. ok) then
        call error ("blha_interface_init: error loading library: " // &
            char (dlaccess_get_error (olp%lib_handle)))
        call dlaccess_final (olp%lib_handle)
    end if
end function check_dlstate

subroutine error (msg)
    character(*), intent(in) :: msg
    if (present (success)) then
        call msg_error (msg)
    end if
end subroutine error

```

```

        success = .false.
    else
        call msg_fatal (msg)
    end if
end subroutine error

end subroutine blha_olp_init

```

Finalizer.

```

<BLHA interface: public>+≡
    public :: blha_olp_final

<BLHA interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine blha_olp_final (olp)
        type(blha_olp_t), intent(inout) :: olp
        if (.not. olp%loaded) return
        if (associated (olp%olp_finalize)) call olp%olp_finalize
        call dlaccess_final (olp%lib_handle)
        olp%loaded = .false.
    end subroutine blha_olp_final

```

Test.

```

<BLHA interface: public>+≡
    public :: blha_interface_test

<BLHA interface: procedures>+≡
    subroutine blha_interface_test (cfg, ok)
        type(blha_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: cfg
        type(blha_olp_t) :: olp
        logical, intent(out) :: ok
        call blha_olp_init (olp, cfg, library=var_str ("blha_test.so"), success=ok)
        print *, "loading OLP library: success?", ok
        call blha_olp_final (olp)
    end subroutine blha_interface_test

```

### 21.1.3 OLP driver

```

<BLHA driver: public>≡
    public :: blha_test

<BLHA driver: procedures>≡
    subroutine blha_test (model)
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        type (blha_configuration_t) :: cfg
        logical :: ok
        call blha_config_test (model, cfg, ok)
        if (ok) call blha_interface_test (cfg, ok)
    end subroutine blha_test

```

## Chapter 22

# Integration and simulation

This layer of modules is just below the top-level API. We lay out specific data types for integration and simulation and implement the corresponding algorithms as methods acting on them. This helps to keep the command-level implementation concise and simple.

### 22.1 Iterations

This module defines a container for the list of iterations and calls, to be submitted to integration.

```
<iterations.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module iterations  
  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use processes  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Iterations: public>  
  
    <Iterations: types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Iterations: procedures>  
  
    <Iterations: tests>  
  
  end module iterations
```

### 22.1.1 The iterations list

Each integration pass has a number of iterations and a number of calls per iteration. The last pass produces the end result; the previous passes are used for adaptation.

The flags `adapt_grid` and `adapt_weight` are used only if `custom_adaptation` is set. Otherwise, default settings are used that depend on the integration pass.

```

<Iterations: types>≡
  type :: iterations_spec_t
  private
    integer :: n_it = 0
    integer :: n_calls = 0
    logical :: custom_adaptation = .false.
    logical :: adapt_grids = .false.
    logical :: adapt_weights = .false.
  end type iterations_spec_t

```

We build up a list of iterations.

```

<Iterations: public>≡
  public :: iterations_list_t

<Iterations: types>+≡
  type :: iterations_list_t
  private
    integer :: n_pass = 0
    type(iterations_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pass
  contains
    <Iterations: iterations list: TBP>
  end type iterations_list_t

```

Initialize an iterations list. For each pass, we have to specify the number of iterations and calls. We may provide the adaption conventions explicitly, either as character codes or as logicals.

For passes where the adaptation conventions are not specified, we use the following default setting: adapt weights and grids for all passes except the last one.

```

<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => iterations_list_init

<Iterations: procedures>≡
  subroutine iterations_list_init &
    (it_list, n_it, n_calls, adapt, adapt_code, adapt_grids, adapt_weights)
    class(iterations_list_t), intent(inout) :: it_list
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: n_it, n_calls
    logical, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: adapt
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: adapt_code
    logical, dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: adapt_grids, adapt_weights
    integer :: i
    it_list%n_pass = size(n_it)
    if (allocated(it_list%pass)) deallocate(it_list%pass)
    allocate(it_list%pass(it_list%n_pass))
    it_list%pass%n_it = n_it
    it_list%pass%n_calls = n_calls
  end subroutine

```

```

if (present (adapt)) then
  it_list%pass%custom_adaptation = adapt
  do i = 1, it_list%n_pass
    if (adapt(i)) then
      if (verify (adapt_code(i), "wg") /= 0) then
        call msg_error ("iteration specification: " &
          // "adaptation code letters must be 'w' or 'g'")
      end if
      it_list%pass(i)%adapt_grids = scan (adapt_code(i), "g") /= 0
      it_list%pass(i)%adapt_weights = scan (adapt_code(i), "w") /= 0
    end if
  end do
else if (present (adapt_grids) .and. present (adapt_weights)) then
  it_list%pass%custom_adaptation = .true.
  it_list%pass%adapt_grids = adapt_grids
  it_list%pass%adapt_weights = adapt_weights
end if
do i = 1, it_list%n_pass - 1
  if (.not. it_list%pass(i)%custom_adaptation) then
    it_list%pass(i)%adapt_grids = .true.
    it_list%pass(i)%adapt_weights = .true.
  end if
end do
end subroutine iterations_list_init

```

*<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: clear => iterations_list_clear

```

*<Iterations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine iterations_list_clear (it_list)
  class(iterations_list_t), intent(inout) :: it_list
  it_list%n_pass = 0
  deallocate (it_list%pass)
end subroutine iterations_list_clear

```

Write the list of iterations.

*<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: write => iterations_list_write

```

*<Iterations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine iterations_list_write (it_list, unit)
  class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(A)") char (it_list%to_string ())
end subroutine iterations_list_write

```

The output as a single-line string.

*<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: to_string => iterations_list_to_string

```

*<Iterations: procedures>+≡*

```

function iterations_list_to_string (it_list) result (buffer)

```



```

class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
type(string_t) :: buffer
character(30) :: ibuf
integer :: i
buffer = "iterations = "
if (it_list%n_pass > 0) then
  do i = 1, it_list%n_pass
    if (i > 1) buffer = buffer // ", "
    write (ibuf, "(I0,':',I0)") &
      it_list%pass(i)%n_it, it_list%pass(i)%n_calls
    buffer = buffer // trim (ibuf)
    if (it_list%pass(i)%custom_adaptation &
      .or. it_list%pass(i)%adapt_grids &
      .or. it_list%pass(i)%adapt_weights) then
      buffer = buffer // ':'
      if (it_list%pass(i)%adapt_grids) buffer = buffer // "g"
      if (it_list%pass(i)%adapt_weights) buffer = buffer // "w"
      buffer = buffer // ""
    end if
  end do
else
  buffer = buffer // "[undefined]"
end if
end function iterations_list_to_string

```

## 22.1.2 Tools

Return the total number of passes.

```

<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_pass => iterations_list_get_n_pass

<Iterations: procedures>+≡
  function iterations_list_get_n_pass (it_list) result (n_pass)
    class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
    integer :: n_pass
    n_pass = it_list%n_pass
  end function iterations_list_get_n_pass

```

Return the number of calls for a specific pass.

```

<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: get_n_calls => iterations_list_get_n_calls

<Iterations: procedures>+≡
  function iterations_list_get_n_calls (it_list, pass) result (n_calls)
    class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
    integer :: n_calls
    integer, intent(in) :: pass
    if (pass <= it_list%n_pass) then
      n_calls = it_list%pass(pass)%n_calls
    else
      n_calls = 0
    end if
  end function iterations_list_get_n_calls

```

Get the adaptation mode (automatic/custom) and, for custom adaptation, the flags for a specific pass.

```

<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: adapt_grids => iterations_list_adapt_grids
    procedure :: adapt_weights => iterations_list_adapt_weights

<Iterations: procedures>+≡
    function iterations_list_adapt_grids (it_list, pass) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
        integer, intent(in) :: pass
        if (pass <= it_list%n_pass) then
            flag = it_list%pass(pass)%adapt_grids
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function iterations_list_adapt_grids

    function iterations_list_adapt_weights (it_list, pass) result (flag)
        logical :: flag
        class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
        integer, intent(in) :: pass
        if (pass <= it_list%n_pass) then
            flag = it_list%pass(pass)%adapt_weights
        else
            flag = .false.
        end if
    end function iterations_list_adapt_weights

```

Return the total number of iterations / the iterations for a specific pass.

```

<Iterations: iterations list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_n_it => iterations_list_get_n_it

<Iterations: procedures>+≡
    function iterations_list_get_n_it (it_list, pass) result (n_it)
        class(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
        integer :: n_it
        integer, intent(in) :: pass
        if (pass <= it_list%n_pass) then
            n_it = it_list%pass(pass)%n_it
        else
            n_it = 0
        end if
    end function iterations_list_get_n_it

```

### 22.1.3 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Iterations: public>+≡
    public :: iterations_test

```

```

<Iterations: tests>≡
  subroutine iterations_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Iterations: execute tests>
  end subroutine iterations_test

```

## Empty list

```

<Iterations: execute tests>≡
  call test (iterations_1, "iterations_1", &
    "empty iterations list", &
    u, results)

<Iterations: tests>+≡
  subroutine iterations_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(iterations_list_t) :: it_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: iterations_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display empty iterations list"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call it_list%write (u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: iterations_1"

  end subroutine iterations_1

```

## Fill list

```

<Iterations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (iterations_2, "iterations_2", &
    "create iterations list", &
    u, results)

<Iterations: tests>+≡
  subroutine iterations_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(iterations_list_t) :: it_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: iterations_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: fill and display iterations list"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Minimal setup (2 passes)"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call it_list%init ([2, 4], [5000, 20000])

    call it_list%write (u)
    call it_list%clear ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Setup with flags (3 passes)"
write (u, "(A)")

call it_list%init ([2, 4, 5], [5000, 20000, 400], &
    [.false., .true., .true.], &
    [var_str (""), var_str ("g"), var_str ("wg")])

call it_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extract data"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_pass = ", it_list%get_n_pass ()
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_calls(2) = ", it_list%get_n_calls (2)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A,I0)")  "n_it(3) = ", it_list%get_n_it (3)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: iterations_2"

end subroutine iterations_2

```

## 22.2 User-controlled File I/O

The SINDARIN language includes commands that write output to file (input may be added later). We identify files by their name, and manage the unit internally. We need procedures for opening, closing, and printing files.

```

⟨user_files.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module user_files

    ⟨Use strings⟩
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use ifiles
    use analysis

    ⟨Standard module head⟩

    ⟨User files: public⟩

    ⟨User files: types⟩

    ⟨User files: interfaces⟩

    contains

```

*<User files: procedures>*

```
end module user_files
```

### 22.2.1 The file type

This is a type that describes an open user file and its properties. The entry is part of a doubly-linked list.

```
<User files: types>≡
  type :: file_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: name
    integer :: unit = -1
    logical :: reading = .false.
    logical :: writing = .false.
    type(file_t), pointer :: prev => null ()
    type(file_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  end type file_t
```

The initializer opens the file.

```
<User files: procedures>≡
  subroutine file_init (file, name, action, status, position)
    type(file_t), intent(out) :: file
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: action, status, position
    file%unit = free_unit ()
    file%name = name
    open (unit = file%unit, file = char (file%name), &
          action = action, status = status, position = position)
    select case (action)
    case ("read")
      file%reading = .true.
    case ("write")
      file%writing = .true.
    case ("readwrite")
      file%reading = .true.
      file%writing = .true.
    end select
  end subroutine file_init
```

The finalizer closes it.

```
<User files: procedures>+≡
  subroutine file_final (file)
    type(file_t), intent(inout) :: file
    close (unit = file%unit)
    file%unit = -1
  end subroutine file_final
```

Check if a file is open with correct status.

```
<User files: procedures>+≡
```

```

function file_is_open (file, action) result (flag)
  logical :: flag
  type(file_t), intent(in) :: file
  character(*), intent(in) :: action
  select case (action)
  case ("read")
    flag = file%reading
  case ("write")
    flag = file%writing
  case ("readwrite")
    flag = file%reading .and. file%writing
  case default
    call msg_bug ("Checking file '" // char (file%name) &
      // "' : illegal action specifier")
  end select
end function file_is_open

```

Write to the file. Error if in wrong mode. If there is no string, just write an empty record. If there is a string, respect the **advancing** option.

```

<User files: procedures>+≡
subroutine file_write_string (file, string, advancing)
  type(file_t), intent(in) :: file
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: string
  logical, intent(in), optional :: advancing
  if (file%writing) then
    if (present (string)) then
      if (present (advancing)) then
        if (advancing) then
          write (file%unit, "(A)") char (string)
        else
          write (file%unit, "(A)", advance="no") char (string)
        end if
      else
        write (file%unit, "(A)") char (string)
      end if
    else
      write (file%unit, *)
    end if
  else
    call msg_error ("Writing to file: File '" // char (file%name) &
      // "' is not open for writing.")
  end if
end subroutine file_write_string

```

Write a whole ifile, line by line.

```

<User files: procedures>+≡
subroutine file_write_ifile (file, ifile)
  type(file_t), intent(in) :: file
  type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
  type(line_p) :: line
  call line_init (line, ifile)
  do while (line_is_associated (line))
    call file_write_string (file, line_get_string_advance (line))
  end do
end subroutine file_write_ifile

```

```

        end do
    end subroutine file_write_ifile

```

Write an analysis object (or all objects) to an open file.

```

<User files: procedures>+≡
subroutine file_write_analysis (file, tag)
    type(file_t), intent(in) :: file
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: tag
    if (file%writing) then
        if (present (tag)) then
            call analysis_write (tag, unit = file%unit)
        else
            call analysis_write (unit = file%unit)
        end if
    else
        call msg_error ("Writing analysis to file: File ' " // char (file%name) &
            // "' is not open for writing.")
    end if
end subroutine file_write_analysis

```

### 22.2.2 The file list

We maintain a list of all open files and their attributes. The list must be doubly-linked because we may delete entries.

```

<User files: public>≡
    public :: file_list_t

<User files: types>+≡
    type :: file_list_t
        type(file_t), pointer :: first => null ()
        type(file_t), pointer :: last => null ()
    end type file_list_t

```

There is no initialization routine, but a finalizer which deletes all:

```

<User files: public>+≡
    public :: file_list_final

<User files: procedures>+≡
subroutine file_list_final (file_list)
    type(file_list_t), intent(inout) :: file_list
    type(file_t), pointer :: current
    do while (associated (file_list%first))
        current => file_list%first
        file_list%first => current%next
        call file_final (current)
        deallocate (current)
    end do
    file_list%last => null ()
end subroutine file_list_final

```

Find an entry in the list. Return null pointer on failure.

```
<User files: procedures>+≡
function file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name) result (current)
    type(file_t), pointer :: current
    type(file_list_t), intent(in) :: file_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    current => file_list%first
    do while (associated (current))
        if (current%name == name) return
        current => current%next
    end do
end function file_list_get_file_ptr
```

Check if a file is open, public version:

```
<User files: public>+≡
public :: file_list_is_open

<User files: procedures>+≡
function file_list_is_open (file_list, name, action) result (flag)
    logical :: flag
    type(file_list_t), intent(in) :: file_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: action
    type(file_t), pointer :: current
    current => file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name)
    if (associated (current)) then
        flag = file_is_open (current, action)
    else
        flag = .false.
    end if
end function file_list_is_open
```

Append a new file entry, i.e., open this file. Error if it is already open.

```
<User files: public>+≡
public :: file_list_open

<User files: procedures>+≡
subroutine file_list_open (file_list, name, action, status, position)
    type(file_list_t), intent(inout) :: file_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    character(len=*), intent(in) :: action, status, position
    type(file_t), pointer :: current
    if (.not. associated (file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name))) then
        allocate (current)
        call msg_message ("Opening file '" // char (name) // "' for output")
        call file_init (current, name, action, status, position)
        if (associated (file_list%last)) then
            file_list%last%next => current
            current%prev => file_list%last
        else
            file_list%first => current
        end if
        file_list%last => current
    else
```



```

        call msg_error ("Opening file: File '" // char (name) &
            // "' is already open.")
    end if
end subroutine file_list_open

```

Delete a file entry, i.e., close this file. Error if it is not open.

```

<User files: public>+≡
    public :: file_list_close

<User files: procedures>+≡
    subroutine file_list_close (file_list, name)
        type(file_list_t), intent(inout) :: file_list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(file_t), pointer :: current
        current => file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name)
        if (associated (current)) then
            if (associated (current%prev)) then
                current%prev%next => current%next
            else
                file_list%first => current%next
            end if
            if (associated (current%next)) then
                current%next%prev => current%prev
            else
                file_list%last => current%prev
            end if
            call msg_message ("Closing file '" // char (name) // "' for output")
            call file_final (current)
            deallocate (current)
        else
            call msg_error ("Closing file: File '" // char (name) &
                // "' is not open.")
        end if
    end subroutine file_list_close

```

Write a string to file. Error if it is not open.

```

<User files: public>+≡
    public :: file_list_write

<User files: interfaces>≡
    interface file_list_write
        module procedure file_list_write_string
        module procedure file_list_write_ifile
    end interface

<User files: procedures>+≡
    subroutine file_list_write_string (file_list, name, string, advancing)
        type(file_list_t), intent(in) :: file_list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: string
        logical, intent(in), optional :: advancing
        type(file_t), pointer :: current
        current => file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name)
        if (associated (current)) then

```

```

        call file_write_string (current, string, advancing)
    else
        call msg_error ("Writing to file: File '" // char (name) &
            // "'is not open.")
    end if
end subroutine file_list_write_string

subroutine file_list_write_ifile (file_list, name, ifile)
    type(file_list_t), intent(in) :: file_list
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
    type(line_p) :: line
    type(file_t), pointer :: current
    current => file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name)
    if (associated (current)) then
        call file_write_ifile (current, ifile)
    else
        call msg_error ("Writing to file: File '" // char (name) &
            // "'is not open.")
    end if
end subroutine file_list_write_ifile

```

Write an analysis object or all objects to data file. Error if it is not open. If the file name is empty, write to standard output.

```

<User files: public>+≡
    public :: file_list_write_analysis

<User files: procedures>+≡
    subroutine file_list_write_analysis (file_list, name, tag)
        type(file_list_t), intent(in) :: file_list
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: tag
        type(file_t), pointer :: current
        if (name == "") then
            if (present (tag)) then
                call analysis_write (tag)
            else
                call analysis_write
            end if
        else
            current => file_list_get_file_ptr (file_list, name)
            if (associated (current)) then
                call file_write_analysis (current, tag)
            else
                call msg_error ("Writing analysis to file: File '" // char (name) &
                    // "' is not open.")
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine file_list_write_analysis

```

## 22.3 Runtime data

```
<rt_data.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module rt_data  
  
    <Use kinds>  
    <Use strings>  
    <Use file utils>  
    use system_dependencies !NODEP!  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use pdf_builtin !NODEP!  
    use sf_lhapdf !NODEP!  
    use os_interface  
    use ifiles  
    use lexers  
    use parser  
    use models  
    use flavors  
    use jets  
    use variables  
    use expressions  
    use polarizations  
    use beams  
    use process_libraries  
    use prclib_stacks  
    use prc_core  
    use beam_structures  
    use user_files  
    use process_stacks  
    use iterations  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <RT data: public>  
  
    <RT data: types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <RT data: procedures>  
  
    <RT data: tests>  
  
  end module rt_data
```

### 22.3.1 Container for parse nodes

The runtime data set contains a bunch of parse nodes (chunks of code that have not been compiled into evaluation trees but saved for later use). We collect them here.

This implementation has the useful effect that an assignment between two objects of this type will establish a pointer-target relationship for all components.

```

<RT data: types>≡
  type :: rt_parse_nodes_t
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: cuts_lexpr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: scale_expr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: fac_scale_expr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: ren_scale_expr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: weight_expr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: selection_lexpr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: reweight_expr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: analysis_lexpr => null ()
    type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: alt_setup
  contains
    <RT data: rt parse nodes: TBP>
  end type rt_parse_nodes_t

```

Clear individual components. The parse nodes are nullified. No finalization needed since the pointer targets are part of the global parse tree.

```

<RT data: rt parse nodes: TBP>≡
  procedure :: clear => rt_parse_nodes_clear

<RT data: procedures>≡
  subroutine rt_parse_nodes_clear (rt_pn, name)
    class(rt_parse_nodes_t), intent(inout) :: rt_pn
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    select case (char (name))
    case ("cuts")
      rt_pn%cuts_lexpr => null ()
    case ("scale")
      rt_pn%scale_expr => null ()
    case ("factorization_scale")
      rt_pn%fac_scale_expr => null ()
    case ("renormalization_scale")
      rt_pn%ren_scale_expr => null ()
    case ("weight")
      rt_pn%weight_expr => null ()
    case ("selection")
      rt_pn%selection_lexpr => null ()
    case ("reweight")
      rt_pn%reweight_expr => null ()
    case ("analysis")
      rt_pn%analysis_lexpr => null ()
    end select
  end subroutine rt_parse_nodes_clear

```

Output for the parse nodes.

```

<RT data: rt parse nodes: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => rt_parse_nodes_write

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_parse_nodes_write (object, unit)

```

```

class(rt_parse_nodes_t), intent(in) :: object
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit)
call wrt ("Cuts", object%cuts_lexpr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Scale", object%scale_expr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Factorization scale", object%fac_scale_expr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Renormalization scale", object%ren_scale_expr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Weight", object%weight_expr)
call write_separator_double (u)
call wrt ("Event selection", object%selection_lexpr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Event reweighting factor", object%reweight_expr)
call write_separator (u)
call wrt ("Event analysis", object%analysis_lexpr)
if (allocated (object%alt_setup)) then
  call write_separator_double (u)
  write (u, "(1x,A,':')") "Alternative setups"
  do i = 1, size (object%alt_setup)
    call write_separator (u)
    call wrt ("Commands", object%alt_setup(i)%ptr)
  end do
end if
contains
subroutine wrt (title, pn)
  character(*), intent(in) :: title
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn
  if (associated (pn)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A,':')") title
    call write_separator (u)
    call parse_node_write_rec (pn, u)
  else
    write (u, "(1x,A,':',1x,A)") title, "[undefined]"
  end if
end subroutine wrt
end subroutine rt_parse_nodes_write

```

Screen output for individual components. (This should eventually be more condensed, currently we print the internal representation tree.)

```

<RT data: rt parse nodes: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: show => rt_parse_nodes_show

<RT data: procedures>+≡
subroutine rt_parse_nodes_show (rt_pn, name, unit)
  class(rt_parse_nodes_t), intent(in) :: rt_pn
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)

```

```

select case (char (name))
case ("cuts")
    pn => rt_pn%cuts_lexpr
case ("scale")
    pn => rt_pn%scale_expr
case ("factorization_scale")
    pn => rt_pn%fac_scale_expr
case ("renormalization_scale")
    pn => rt_pn%ren_scale_expr
case ("weight")
    pn => rt_pn%weight_expr
case ("selection")
    pn => rt_pn%selection_lexpr
case ("reweight")
    pn => rt_pn%reweight_expr
case ("analysis")
    pn => rt_pn%analysis_lexpr
end select
if (associated (pn)) then
    write (u, "(A,1x,A,1x,A)") "Expression:", char (name), "(parse tree):"
    call parse_node_write_rec (pn, u)
else
    write (u, "(A,1x,A,A)") "Expression:", char (name), ": [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine rt_parse_nodes_show

```

### 22.3.2 Container for particle data

If we locally modify particle properties, we must be able to revert them to their original status. This transparent container stores the original state for a stack of particles.

```

<RT data: types>+=
type :: rt_particle_entry_t
    integer :: pdg = 0
    logical :: stable = .true.
    logical :: isotropic = .false.
    logical :: diagonal = .false.
    logical :: polarized = .false.
    type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: next => null ()
end type rt_particle_entry_t

<RT data: types>+=
type :: rt_particle_stack_t
    type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
    type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: first => null ()
contains
    <RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>
end type rt_particle_stack_t

```

Finalize the stack.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>=

```

```

    procedure :: final => rt_particle_stack_final
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_particle_stack_final (object)
        class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(inout) :: object
        type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        do while (associated (object%first))
            entry => object%first
            object%first => entry%next
            deallocate (entry)
        end do
        object%model => null ()
    end subroutine rt_particle_stack_final

```

Write the current contents of the particle stack, if it is nonempty.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => rt_particle_stack_write
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_particle_stack_write (object, unit)
        class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u
        type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: entry
        u = output_unit (unit)
        if (.not. object%is_empty ()) then
            write (u, "(1x,A)" "Stored particle data"
            if (associated (object%model)) then
                write (u, "(3x,A,A)" "Model = ", char (object%model%get_name ())
            else
                write (u, "(3x,A,A)" "Model = [undefined]"
            end if
            entry => object%first
            do while (associated (entry))
                write (u, "(3x,I0,':',4(2x,A,L1))" entry%pdg, &
                    "stable = ", entry%stable, &
                    "isotropic = ", entry%isotropic, &
                    "diagonal = ", entry%diagonal, &
                    "polarized = ", entry%polarized
                entry => entry%next
            end do
        end if
    end subroutine rt_particle_stack_write

```

Initialize for a model.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => rt_particle_stack_init
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_particle_stack_init (stack, model)
        class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(out) :: stack
        type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
        stack%model => model
    end subroutine rt_particle_stack_init

```

Reset a stack: if the model changes, discard the previous stack and re-initialize.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: reset => rt_particle_stack_reset

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_particle_stack_reset (stack, model)
    class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    if (associated (stack%model)) then
      if (model%get_name () /= stack%model%get_name ()) then
        call stack%final ()
        call stack%init (model)
      end if
    else
      call stack%init (model)
    end if
  end subroutine rt_particle_stack_reset

```

Push an entry on the stack, storing the current state of the particle in the model.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: push => rt_particle_stack_push

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_particle_stack_push (stack, pdg)
    class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: entry
    type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt_data
    logical :: anti
    allocate (entry)
    entry%pdg = pdg
    anti = pdg < 0
    prt_data => model_get_particle_ptr (stack%model, pdg)
    entry%stable = particle_data_is_stable (prt_data, anti)
    entry%polarized = particle_data_is_polarized (prt_data, anti)
    entry%isotropic = particle_data_decays_isotropically (prt_data, anti)
    entry%diagonal = particle_data_decays_diagonal (prt_data, anti)
    entry%next => stack%first
    stack%first => entry
  end subroutine rt_particle_stack_push

```

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_empty => rt_particle_stack_is_empty

```

```

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  function rt_particle_stack_is_empty (stack) result (flag)
    class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
    logical :: flag
    flag = .not. associated (stack%first)
  end function rt_particle_stack_is_empty

```

Check whether a particle is already on the stack.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: contains => rt_particle_stack_contains

```



```

<RT data: procedures>+≡
function rt_particle_stack_contains (stack, pdg) result (flag)
  class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(in) :: stack
  integer, intent(in) :: pdg
  logical :: flag
  type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  flag = .false.
  entry => stack%first
  do while (associated (entry))
    if (entry%pdg == pdg) then
      flag = .true.; return
    end if
    entry => entry%next
  end do
end function rt_particle_stack_contains

```

Restore the previous state of the model that is referenced by the particle stack. Then, we can delete the stack since it is no longer necessary.

```

<RT data: rt particle stack: TBP>+≡
procedure :: restore_model => rt_particle_stack_restore_model

<RT data: procedures>+≡
subroutine rt_particle_stack_restore_model (stack)
  class(rt_particle_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
  type(rt_particle_entry_t), pointer :: entry
  type(particle_data_t), pointer :: prt_data
  if (associated (stack%model)) then
    entry => stack%first
    do while (associated (entry))
      prt_data => model_get_particle_ptr (stack%model, entry%pdg)
      if (entry%pdg > 0) then
        call particle_data_set (prt_data, &
          p_is_stable = entry%stable, &
          p_polarized = entry%polarized, &
          p_decays_isotropically = entry%isotropic, &
          p_decays_diagonal = entry%diagonal)
      else
        call particle_data_set (prt_data, &
          a_is_stable = entry%stable, &
          a_polarized = entry%polarized, &
          a_decays_isotropically = entry%isotropic, &
          a_decays_diagonal = entry%diagonal)
      end if
      entry => entry%next
    end do
  end if
  call stack%final ()
end subroutine rt_particle_stack_restore_model

```

### 22.3.3 The data type

This is a big data container which contains everything that is used and modified during the command flow. A local copy of this can be used to temporarily

override defaults. The data set is transparent.

```

<RT data: public>≡
    public :: rt_data_t

<RT data: types>+≡
    type :: rt_data_t
        type(lexer_t), pointer :: lexer => null ()
        type(var_list_t) :: var_list
        type(iterations_list_t) :: it_list
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(model_list_t) :: model_list
        type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
        type(model_t), pointer :: fallback_model => null ()
        type(rt_particle_stack_t) :: particle_stack
        type(prclib_stack_t) :: prclib_stack
        type(process_library_t), pointer :: prclib => null ()
        type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
        type(pdf_builtin_status_t) :: pdf_builtin_status
        type(lhapdf_status_t) :: lhpdf_status
        type(rt_parse_nodes_t) :: pn
        type(process_stack_t) :: process_stack
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sample_fmt
        type(file_list_t), pointer :: out_files => null ()
        logical :: quit = .false.
        integer :: quit_code = 0
        type(string_t) :: logfile
    contains
    <RT data: rt data: TBP>
end type rt_data_t

```

## 22.3.4 Output

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => rt_data_write

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_write (object, unit, vars, pacify)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: vars
        logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        call write_separator_double (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Runtime data:"
        if (present (vars)) then
            if (size (vars) /= 0) then
                call write_separator_double (u)
                write (u, "(1x,A)") "Selected variables:"
                call write_separator (u)
                call object%write_vars (u, vars)
            end if
        else
            call write_separator_double (u)

```

```

        call var_list_write (object%var_list, u, follow_link=.true.)
    end if
    if (object%it_list%get_n_pass () > 0) then
        call write_separator_double (u)
        write (u, "(1x)", advance="no")
        call object%it_list%write (u)
    end if
    if (associated (object%model)) then
        call write_separator_double (u)
        call object%model_list%write (u)
        if (.not. object%particle_stack%is_empty ()) then
            call write_separator (u)
            call object%particle_stack%write (u)
        end if
    end if
    call object%prclib_stack%write (u)
    call object%beam_structure%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    call object%pn%write (u)
    if (allocated (object%sample_fmt)) then
        call write_separator (u)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "Event sample formats = "
        do i = 1, size (object%sample_fmt)
            if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") ", "
            write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (object%sample_fmt(i))
        end do
        write (u, "(A)")
    end if
    call object%process_stack%write (u, pacify)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,L1)") "quit      :", object%quit
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "quit_code:", object%quit_code
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,A)") "Logfile  :", "" // trim (char (object%logfile)) // ""
    call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine rt_data_write

```

Write only selected variables.

*<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: write_vars => rt_data_write_vars
```

*<RT data: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine rt_data_write_vars (object, unit, vars)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: vars
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    if (present (vars)) then
        do i = 1, size (vars)
            call var_list_write_var (object%var_list, vars(i), unit = u, &
                follow_link = .true.)
        end do
    end if
end subroutine rt_data_write_vars

```

Write only the model list.

```
<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_model_list => rt_data_write_model_list

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_write_model_list (object, unit)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call object%model_list%write (u)
  end subroutine rt_data_write_model_list
```

Write only the library stack.

```
<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_libraries => rt_data_write_libraries

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_write_libraries (object, unit, libpath)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    logical, intent(in), optional :: libpath
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call object%prclib_stack%write (u, libpath)
  end subroutine rt_data_write_libraries
```

Write only the beam data.

```
<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_beams => rt_data_write_beams

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_write_beams (object, unit)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    call object%beam_structure%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
  end subroutine rt_data_write_beams
```

Write only the process and event expressions.

```
<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write_expr => rt_data_write_expr

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_write_expr (object, unit)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
```

```

    call write_separator_double (u)
    call object%pn%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine rt_data_write_expr

```

Write only the process stack.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_process_stack => rt_data_write_process_stack

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_write_process_stack (object, unit)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        call object%process_stack%write (unit)
    end subroutine rt_data_write_process_stack

```

### 22.3.5 Clear

The `clear` command can remove the contents of various subobjects. The objects themselves should stay.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: clear_beams => rt_data_clear_beams

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_clear_beams (global)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        call global%beam_structure%final_sf ()
        call global%beam_structure%final_pol ()
        call global%beam_structure%final_mom ()
    end subroutine rt_data_clear_beams

```

### 22.3.6 Initialization

Initialize runtime data. This defines special variables such as `sqrts`, and should be done only for the instance that is actually global. Local copies will inherit the special variables.

We link the global variable list to the process stack variable list, so the latter is always available (and kept global).

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: global_init => rt_data_global_init

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_global_init (global, paths, logfile)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(out), target :: global
        type(paths_t), intent(in), optional :: paths
        type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: logfile
        logical, target, save :: known = .true.
        integer :: seed
        real(default), parameter :: real_specimen = 1.
        call os_data_init (global%os_data, paths)
        if (present (logfile)) then

```

```

        global%logfile = logfile
    else
        global%logfile = ""
    end if
    allocate (global%out_files)
    call system_clock (seed)
    call var_list_append_log_ptr &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("?logging"), logging, known, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_int &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), seed, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("model_name"), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_int &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("process_num_id"), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), var_str ("omega"), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_log &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("?report_progress"), .true., &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("restrictions"), var_str (""), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("omega_flags"), var_str (""), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_log &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("?read_color_factors"), .true., &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
    !   call var_list_append_string &
    !       (global%var_list, var_str ("user_procs_cut"), var_str (""), &
    !       intrinsic=.true.)
    !   call var_list_append_string &
    !       (global%var_list, var_str ("user_procs_event_shape"), var_str (""), &
    !       intrinsic=.true.)
    !   call var_list_append_string &
    !       (global%var_list, var_str ("user_procs_obs1"), var_str (""), &
    !       intrinsic=.true.)
    !   call var_list_append_string &
    !       (global%var_list, var_str ("user_procs_obs2"), var_str (""), &
    !       intrinsic=.true.)
    !   call var_list_append_string &
    !       (global%var_list, var_str ("user_procs_sf"), var_str (""), &
    !       intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_log &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_input"), .true., &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_log &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_spectrum"), .true., &

```

```

        intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_decays"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$_library_name"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrt_s"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("luminosity"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?sf_trace"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$_sf_trace_file"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?sf_allow_s_mapping"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
if (present (paths)) then
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("$_lhpdf_dir"), paths%lhpdfdir, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
else
    call var_list_append_string &
        (global%var_list, var_str ("$_lhpdf_dir"), var_str (""), &
        intrinsic=.true.)
end if
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$_lhpdf_file"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$_lhpdf_photon_file"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"), 0, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_photon_scheme"), 0, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?hoppet_b_matching"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("isr_alpha"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("isr_q_max"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("isr_mass"), 0._default, &

```

```

        intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("isr_order"), 3, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?isr_recoil"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("epa_alpha"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("epa_x_min"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("epa_q_min"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("epa_e_max"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("epa_mass"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?epa_recoil"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("ewa_x_min"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("ewa_pt_max"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("ewa_mass"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ewa_keep_momentum"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ewa_keep_energy"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon1"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon2"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_sqrts"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_generate"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_map"), .true., &

```



```

        intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_mapping_slope"), 2._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_eps"), 1e-5_default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_ver"), 0, intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_rev"), 0, intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$circe1_acc"), var_str ("SBAND"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_chat"), 0, intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe2_polarized"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$circe2_file"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$circe2_design"), var_str ("*"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("$beam_events_file"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?beam_events_warn_eof"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?energy_scan_normalize"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_is_fixed"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lhapdf"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_pdf_builtin"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_order"), 0, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_nf"), 5, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_mz"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lambda_qcd"), .false., &

```

```

        intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("lambda_qcd"), 200.e-3_default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?fatal_beam_decay"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?helicity_selection_active"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("helicity_selection_threshold"), &
    1E10_default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("helicity_selection_cutoff"), 1000, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("rng_method"), var_str ("tao"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), var_str ("vamp"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("threshold_calls"), 10, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_channel"), 10, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_bin"), 10, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("min_bins"), 3, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("max_bins"), 20, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?stratified"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?vamp_verbose"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?vamp_history_global"), &
    .true., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?vamp_history_global_verbose"), &
    .false., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("?vamp_history_channels"), &
.false., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?vamp_history_channels_verbose"), &
.false., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("channel_weights_power"), 0.25_default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), var_str ("default"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_channels"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?check_phs_file"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_file"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_only"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_threshold_s"), 50._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_threshold_t"), 100._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_off_shell"), 2, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_t_channel"), 6, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_e_scale"), 10._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_m_scale"), 10._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
(global%var_list, var_str ("phs_q_scale"), 10._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_keep_nonresonant"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_step_mapping"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_step_mapping_exp"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_s_mapping"), .true., &
  intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("n_calls_test"), 0, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_grid_file"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("accuracy_goal"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("error_goal"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("relative_error_goal"), 0._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("error_threshold"), &
    0._default, intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?diags"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?diags_color"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_event_file"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$event_file_version"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("n_events"), 0, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("safety_factor"), 1._default, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?negative_weights"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"), .false., &
  intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?recover_beams"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?update_event"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?update_sqme"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?update_weight"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?allow_decays"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?auto_decays"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("auto_decays_multiplicity"), 2, &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?auto_decays_radiative"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?decay_rest_frame"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?isotropic_decay"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?diagonal_decay"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("sample"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_normalization"), var_str ("auto"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?sample_pacify"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_max_tries"), 10000, &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_split_n_evt"), 0, &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_split_index"), 0, &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_string &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("$rescan_input_format"), var_str ("raw"), &
  intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?read_raw"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?write_raw"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_raw"), var_str ("evx"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_default"), var_str ("evt"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$debug_extension"), var_str ("debug"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_process"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_transforms"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_decay"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_verbose"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepevt"), var_str ("hepevt"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_ascii_short"), &
    var_str ("short.evt"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_ascii_long"), &
    var_str ("long.evt"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_athena"), &
    var_str ("athena.evt"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_mokka"), &
    var_str ("mokka.evt"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$lhef_version"), var_str ("2.0"), &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$lhef_extension"), var_str ("lhe"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_prc"), .true., &
    intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_ref"), .false., &
intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_alt"), .true., &
intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_lha"), var_str ("lha"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepmc"), var_str ("hepmc"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_stdhep"), var_str ("hep"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_stdhep_up"), &
var_str ("up.hep"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepevt_verb"), &
var_str ("hepevt.verb"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_lha_verb"), &
var_str ("lha.verb"), intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("n_bins"), 20, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
var_str ("?normalize_bins"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$obs_label"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$obs_unit"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$title"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$description"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$x_label"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
var_str ("$y_label"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("graph_width_mm"), 130, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("graph_height_mm"), 90, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &

```

```

(global%var_list, var_str ("?y_log"), .false., &
  intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?x_log"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("x_min"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("x_max"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("y_min"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("y_max"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_bg"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_fg"), var_str (""), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_histogram"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_base"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_pieewise"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?fill_curve"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_curve"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_errors"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?draw_symbols"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$fill_options"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$draw_options"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("$err_options"), &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &

```



```

(global%var_list, var_str ("symbol"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, &
var_str ("tolerance"), 0._default, &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("checkpoint"), 0, &
intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?pacify"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("out_file"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?out_advance"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
!!! JRR: WK please check (#542)
! call var_list_append_log &
! (global%var_list, var_str ("?out_custom"), .false., &
! intrinsic=.true.)
! call var_list_append_string &
! (global%var_list, var_str ("out_comment"), var_str ("# "), &
! intrinsic=.true.)
! call var_list_append_log &
! (global%var_list, var_str ("?out_header"), .true., &
! intrinsic=.true.)
! call var_list_append_log &
! (global%var_list, var_str ("?out_yerr"), .true., &
! intrinsic=.true.)
! call var_list_append_log &
! (global%var_list, var_str ("?out_xerr"), .true., &
! intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, var_str ("real_range"), &
range (real_specimen), intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, var_str ("real_precision"), &
precision (real_specimen), intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str ("real_epsilon"), &
epsilon (real_specimen), intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str ("real_tiny"), &
tiny (real_specimen), intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
!!! FastJet parameters
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("kt_algorithm"), &
kt_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("cambridge_algorithm"), &
cambridge_algorithm, intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("antikt_algorithm"), &
antikt_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &

```

```

var_str ("genkt_algorithm"), &
genkt_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("cambridge_for_passive_algorithm"), &
cambridge_for_passive_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("genkt_for_passive_algorithm"), &
genkt_for_passive_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("ee_kt_algorithm"), &
ee_kt_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("ee_genkt_algorithm"), &
ee_genkt_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("plugin_algorithm"), &
plugin_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("undefined_jet_algorithm"), &
undefined_jet_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true., locked = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
var_str ("jet_algorithm"), undefined_jet_algorithm, &
intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, &
var_str ("jet_r"), 0._default, &
intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?polarized_events"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
!!! Default settings for shower
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?allow_shower"), .true., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_active"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_use_PYTHIA_shower"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_PYTHIA_verbose"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("$_ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE"), var_str (""), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_active"), .false., &

```

```

        intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("ps_mass_cutoff"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("ps_fsr_lambda"), 0.29_default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("ps_isr_lambda"), 0.29_default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("ps_max_n_flavors"), 5, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_alpha_s_running"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_alpha_s_running"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ps_fixed_alpha_s"), &
    0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_pt_ordered"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_angular_ordered"), .true., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("ps_isr_primordial_kt_width"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("ps_isr_primordial_kt_cutoff"), 5._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("ps_isr_z_cutoff"), 0.999_default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("ps_isr_minenergy"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("ps_isr_tscalefactor"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("?ps_isr_only_onshell_emitted_partons"), .false., intrinsic=.true.)
!!! Default settings for hadronization
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?hadronization_active"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
!!! Setting for mlm matching
call var_list_append_log &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?mlm_matching"), .false., &
    intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("mlm_Qcut_ME"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("mlm_Qcut_PS"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("mlm_ptmin"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("mlm_etamax"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
    ("mlm_Rmin"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &

```

```

("mlm_Emin"), 0._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_nmaxMEjets"), 0, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_ETclusfactor"), 0.2_default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_ETclusminE"), 5._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_etaclusfactor"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_Rclusfactor"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, var_str &
("mlm_Eclusfactor"), 1._default, intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?ckkw_matching"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?muli_active"), .false., &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_string &
(global%var_list, var_str ("pdf_builtin_set"), var_str ("CTEQ6L"), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
openmp_is_active (), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?openmp_is_active"), &
openmp_is_active (), &
locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("openmp_num_threads_default"), &
openmp_get_default_max_threads (), &
locked=.true., intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_int &
(global%var_list, var_str ("openmp_num_threads"), &
openmp_get_max_threads (), &
intrinsic=.true.)
call var_list_append_log &
(global%var_list, var_str ("?openmp_logging"), &
.true., intrinsic=.true.)
call global%init_pointer_variables ()
call global%process_stack%init_var_list (global%var_list)
end subroutine rt_data_global_init

```

### 22.3.7 Local copies

This is done at compile time when a local copy of runtime data is needed: Link the variable list and initialize all derived parameters. This allows for synchronizing them with local variable changes without affecting global data.

Also re-initialize pointer variables, so they point to local copies of their targets.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: local_init => rt_data_local_init

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_local_init (local, global, env)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: local
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
    integer, intent(in), optional :: env
    call var_list_link (local%var_list, global%var_list)
    if (associated (global%model)) then
      call var_list_init_copies (local%var_list, &
        model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model), &
        derived_only = .true.)
    end if
    call local%init_pointer_variables ()
    local%fallback_model => global%fallback_model
    local%os_data = global%os_data
    local%logfile = global%logfile
  end subroutine rt_data_local_init

```

This copies global objects, for which local modifications should be kept.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: copy_globals => rt_data_copy_globals

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_copy_globals (global, local)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: local
    local%model_list = global%model_list
    local%prclib_stack = global%prclib_stack
    local%process_stack = global%process_stack
  end subroutine rt_data_copy_globals

```

These variables point to objects which get local copies:

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_pointer_variables => rt_data_init_pointer_variables

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_init_pointer_variables (local)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: local
    logical, target, save :: known = .true.
    call var_list_append_string_ptr &
      (local%var_list, var_str (" $fc"), local%os_data%fc, known, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
    call var_list_append_string_ptr &
      (local%var_list, var_str (" $fcflags"), local%os_data%fcflags, known, &
        intrinsic=.true.)
  end subroutine rt_data_init_pointer_variables

```

This is done at execution time: Copy data, transfer pointers. `local` has `intent(inout)` because its local variable list has already been prepared by the previous routine.

To be pedantic, the local pointers to model and library should point to the entries in the local copies. (However, as long as these are just shallow copies with identical content, this is actually irrelevant.)

The process library and process stacks behave as global objects. The copies of the process library and process stacks should be shallow copies, so the contents stay identical. Since objects may be pushed on the stack in the local environment, upon restoring the global environment, we should reverse the assignment. Then the added stack elements will end up on the global stack. (This should be reconsidered in a parallel environment.)

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: link => rt_data_link

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_link (local, global)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: local
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
    local%lexer => global%lexer
    call global%copy_globals (local)
    local%os_data = global%os_data
    local%logfile = global%logfile
    call var_list_link (local%var_list, global%var_list)
    if (associated (global%model)) then
      local%model => &
        local%model_list%get_model_ptr (global%model%get_name ())
      call var_list_synchronize (local%var_list, &
        model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model), reset_pointers = .true.)
      call local%particle_stack%init (local%model)
    end if
    if (associated (global%prclib)) then
      local%prclib => &
        local%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (global%prclib%get_name ())
    end if
    local%it_list = global%it_list
    local%beam_structure = global%beam_structure
    local%lhpdf_status = global%lhpdf_status
    local%pn = global%pn
    if (allocated (local%sample_fmt)) deallocate (local%sample_fmt)
    if (allocated (global%sample_fmt)) then
      allocate (local%sample_fmt (size (global%sample_fmt)), &
        source = global%sample_fmt)
    end if
    local%out_files => global%out_files
  end subroutine rt_data_link

```

Restore the previous state of data; in particular, the variable list. This applies only to model variables (which are copies); other variables are automatically restored when local variables are removed.

If the **keep\_local** flag is set, we want to retain current settings in the local environment. In particular, we create an instance of the currently selected model (which thus becomes separated from the model library!), and we synchronize the local variable list with it. The other local variables are also kept.

Some command (**read\_slha**) reads in model variables as local entities. In this case, the original values of model variables should not be restored, but the

global variable list should be synchronized. However, this matters only if the local model is identical to the global model; otherwise, restoring will apply to a different model.

Finally, model list, process library stack, and process stack are copied back. Thus, they behave like global objects: all changes in the local environment are kept in the global context. Note that these are shallow copies.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: restore => rt_data_restore

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_restore (global, local, keep_model_vars, keep_local)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: local
    logical, intent(in), optional :: keep_model_vars, keep_local
    logical :: same_model, restore, delete
    delete = .true.; if (present (keep_local)) delete = .not. keep_local
    if (delete) then
      call var_list_undefine (local%var_list, follow_link=.false.)
    else
      if (associated (local%model)) then
        call model_pointer_to_instance (local%model)
        call var_list_synchronize (local%var_list, &
          model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model), reset_pointers = .true.)
      end if
    end if
    if (associated (global%model)) then
      call local%particle_stack%restore_model ()
      same_model = &
        global%model%get_name () == local%model%get_name ()
      if (present (keep_model_vars) .and. same_model) then
        restore = .not. keep_model_vars
      else
        if (.not. same_model) call msg_message ("Restoring model '" // &
          char (global%model%get_name ()) // "'")
        restore = .true.
      end if
      if (restore) then
        call var_list_restore (global%var_list)
      else
        call var_list_synchronize &
          (global%var_list, model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model))
      end if
    end if
    call global%restore_globals (local)
  end subroutine rt_data_restore

```

This restores global objects, for which local modifications should be kept.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: restore_globals => rt_data_restore_globals

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_restore_globals (global, local)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
    class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: local

```

```

    global%model_list = local%model_list
    global%prclib_stack = local%prclib_stack
    global%process_stack = local%process_stack
end subroutine rt_data_restore_globals

```

### 22.3.8 Finalization

Finalizer for the variable list and the structure-function list. This is done only for the global RT dataset; local copies contain pointers to this and do not need a finalizer.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => rt_data_global_final

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_global_final (global)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
    call global%process_stack%final ()
    call global%prclib_stack%final ()
    call global%particle_stack%final ()
    call global%model_list%final ()
    call var_list_final (global%var_list)
    if (associated (global%out_files)) then
      call file_list_final (global%out_files)
      deallocate (global%out_files)
    end if
  end subroutine rt_data_global_final

```

The local copy needs a finalizer just for the variable list, which consists of local copies.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: local_final => rt_data_local_final

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_local_final (local)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: local
    call var_list_final (local%var_list)
  end subroutine rt_data_local_final

```

### 22.3.9 Filling Contents

Initialize the fallback model. This model is used whenever the current model does not describe all physical particles (hadrons, mainly). It is not supposed to be modified, and the pointer should remain linked to this model.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_fallback_model => rt_data_init_fallback_model

<RT data: procedures>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_init_fallback_model (global, name, filename)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name, filename
    call global%model_list%read_model &

```



```

        (name, filename, global%os_data, global%fallback_model)
    end subroutine rt_data_init_fallback_model

```

Read a model, filling the model list component and assigning this as the current model. Copy the model variables to the global var list.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: read_model => rt_data_read_model

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_read_model (global, name, filename, synchronize)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name, filename
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
        logical, intent(in), optional :: synchronize
        logical :: sync
        sync = .true.; if (present (synchronize)) sync = synchronize
        call global%model_list%read_model &
            (name, filename, global%os_data, global%model)
        if (associated (global%model)) then
            call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$model_name"), &
                name, is_known = .true.)
            model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
            call var_list_init_copies (global%var_list, model_vars)
            if (sync) then
                call var_list_synchronize (global%var_list, model_vars, &
                    reset_pointers = .true.)
            end if
            call global%particle_stack%reset (global%model)
        end if
    end subroutine rt_data_read_model

```

Select a model, assuming that it has already been read.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: select_model => rt_data_select_model

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_select_model (global, name)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
        global%model => global%model_list%get_model_ptr (name)
        if (associated (global%model)) then
            call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$model_name"), &
                name, is_known = .true.)
            model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
            call var_list_synchronize (global%var_list, model_vars, &
                reset_pointers = .true.)
            call global%particle_stack%reset (global%model)
        end if
    end subroutine rt_data_select_model

```

Modify particle properties. If necessary, we save the old status in the `particle_stack` subobject, then modify the entry in the local model directly.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡

```

```

    procedure :: modify_particle => rt_data_modify_particle
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_modify_particle &
        (global, pdg, polarized, stable, decay, isotropic_decay, diagonal_decay)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        integer, intent(in) :: pdg
        logical, intent(in), optional :: polarized, stable
        logical, intent(in), optional :: isotropic_decay, diagonal_decay
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in), optional :: decay
        if (.not. global%particle_stack%contains (pdg)) then
            call global%particle_stack%push (pdg)
        end if
        if (present (polarized)) then
            if (polarized) then
                call model_set_polarized (global%model, pdg)
            else
                call model_set_unpolarized (global%model, pdg)
            end if
        end if
        if (present (stable)) then
            if (stable) then
                call model_set_stable (global%model, pdg)
            else if (present (decay)) then
                call model_set_unstable &
                    (global%model, pdg, decay, isotropic_decay, diagonal_decay)
            else
                call msg_bug ("Setting particle unstable: missing decay processes")
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine rt_data_modify_particle

```

Add a library (available via a pointer of type `prclib_entry_t`) to the stack and update the pointer and variable list to the current library. The pointer association of `prclib_entry` will be discarded.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: add_prclib => rt_data_add_prclib
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_add_prclib (global, prclib_entry)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(prclib_entry_t), intent(inout), pointer :: prclib_entry
        call global%prclib_stack%push (prclib_entry)
        call global%update_prclib (global%prclib_stack%get_first_ptr ())
    end subroutine rt_data_add_prclib

```

Given a pointer to a process library, make this the currently active library.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: update_prclib => rt_data_update_prclib
<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_update_prclib (global, lib)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(process_library_t), intent(in), target :: lib

```

```

type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
global%prclib => lib
var => var_list_get_var_ptr (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("library_name"), follow_link = .false.)
if (associated (var)) then
    call var_entry_set_string (var, &
        global%prclib%get_name (), is_known=.true.)
else
    call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, &
        var_str ("library_name"), global%prclib%get_name (), &
        intrinsic = .true.)
end if
end subroutine rt_data_update_prclib

```

### 22.3.10 Get contents

The helicity selection data are distributed among several parameters. Here, we collect them in a single record.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_helicity_selection => rt_data_get_helicity_selection

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    function rt_data_get_helicity_selection (rt_data) result (helicity_selection)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: rt_data
        type(helicity_selection_t) :: helicity_selection
        associate (var_list => rt_data%var_list)
            helicity_selection%active = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                var_str ("?helicity_selection_active"))
            if (helicity_selection%active) then
                helicity_selection%threshold = var_list_get_rval (var_list, &
                    var_str ("helicity_selection_threshold"))
                helicity_selection%cutoff = var_list_get_ival (var_list, &
                    var_str ("helicity_selection_cutoff"))
            end if
        end associate
    end function rt_data_get_helicity_selection

```

Show the beam setup: beam structure and relevant global variables.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: show_beams => rt_data_show_beams

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_show_beams (rt_data, unit)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: rt_data
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        type(string_t) :: s
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit)
        associate (beams => rt_data%beam_structure, var_list => rt_data%var_list)
            call beams%write (u)
            if (.not. beams%asymmetric () .and. beams%get_n_beam () == 2) then
                write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12,1x,'GeV')") "sqrts =", &
                    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("sqrts"))
            end if
        end associate
    end subroutine rt_data_show_beams

```

```

end if
if (beams%contains ("pdf_builtin")) then
  s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("pdf_builtin_set"))
  if (s /= "") then
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,3A)") "PDF set =", "'", char (s), "'"
  else
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "PDF set =", "[undefined]"
  end if
end if
if (beams%contains ("lhpdf")) then
  s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_dir"))
  if (s /= "") then
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,3A)") "LHAPDF dir      =", "'", char (s), "'"
  end if
  s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_file"))
  if (s /= "") then
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,3A)") "LHAPDF file   =", "'", char (s), "'"
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "LHAPDF member =", &
      var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"))
  else
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "LHAPDF file   =", "[undefined]"
  end if
end if
if (beams%contains ("lhpdf_photon")) then
  s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_dir"))
  if (s /= "") then
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,3A)") "LHAPDF dir      =", "'", char (s), "'"
  end if
  s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_photon_file"))
  if (s /= "") then
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,3A)") "LHAPDF file   =", "'", char (s), "'"
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "LHAPDF member =", &
      var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"))
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "LHAPDF scheme =", &
      var_list_get_ival (var_list, &
        var_str ("lhpdf_photon_scheme"))
  else
    write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "LHAPDF file   =", "[undefined]"
  end if
end if
if (beams%contains ("isr")) then
  write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "ISR alpha =", &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_alpha"))
  write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "ISR Q max =", &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_q_max"))
  write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "ISR mass  =", &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_mass"))
  write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "ISR order  =", &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("isr_order"))
  write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "ISR recoil =", &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?isr_recoil"))
end if
if (beams%contains ("epa")) then
  write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EPA alpha  =", &

```

```

        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_alpha"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EPA x min =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_x_min"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EPA Q min =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_q_min"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EPA E max =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_e_max"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EPA mass =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_mass"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "EPA recoil =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?epa_recoil"))
end if
if (beams%contains ("ewa")) then
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EWA x min =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_x_min"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EWA Pt max =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_pt_max"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "EWA mass =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_mass"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "EWA mom cons. =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
        var_str ("?ewa_keep_momentum"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "EWA energ. cons. =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
        var_str ("ewa_keep_energy"))
end if
if (beams%contains ("circe1")) then
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "CIRCE1 version =", &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_ver"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "CIRCE1 revision =", &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_rev"))
s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe1_acc"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "CIRCE1 acceler. =", char (s)
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,I0)") "CIRCE1 chattin. =", &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_chat"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "CIRCE1 sqrts =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("circe1_sqrts"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "CIRCE1 epsil. =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("circe1_eps"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "CIRCE1 phot. 1 =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon1"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "CIRCE1 phot. 2 =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon2"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "CIRCE1 generat. =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_generate"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "CIRCE1 mapping =", &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_map"))
write (u, "(2x,A,ES19.12)") "CIRCE1 map. slope =", &
        var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("circe1_mapping_slope"))
end if
if (beams%contains ("circe2")) then
s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe2_design"))
write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "CIRCE2 design =", char (s)
s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe2_file"))

```

```

        write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "CIRCE2 file      =", char (s)
        write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "CIRCE2 polarized =", &
            var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe2_polarized"))
    end if
    if (beams%contains ("beam_events")) then
        s = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$beam_events_file"))
        write (u, "(2x,A,1x,A)") "Beam events file      =", char (s)
        write (u, "(2x,A,1x,L1)") "Beam events EOF warn =", &
            var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?beam_events_warn_eof"))
    end if
end associate
end subroutine rt_data_show_beams

```

Return the collision energy as determined by the current beam settings. Without beam setup, this is the `sqrts` variable.

If the value is meaningless for a setup, the function returns zero.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_sqrts => rt_data_get_sqrts

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    function rt_data_get_sqrts (rt_data) result (sqrts)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: rt_data
        real(default) :: sqrts
        sqrts = var_list_get_rval (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"))
    end function rt_data_get_sqrts

```

For testing purposes, the `rt_data_t` contents can be pacified to suppress numerical fluctuations in (constant) test matrix elements.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: pacify => rt_data_pacify

<RT data: procedures>+≡
    subroutine rt_data_pacify (rt_data, efficiency_reset, error_reset)
        class(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: rt_data
        logical, intent(in), optional :: efficiency_reset, error_reset
        type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process
        process => rt_data%process_stack%first
        do while (associated (process))
            call process%pacify (efficiency_reset, error_reset)
            process => process%next
        end do
    end subroutine rt_data_pacify

```

### 22.3.11 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<RT data: public>+≡
    public :: rt_data_test

```

```

<RT data: tests>≡
  subroutine rt_data_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <RT data: execute tests>
  end subroutine rt_data_test

```

## Initial content

Force system-dependent objects to well-defined values. Some of the variables are locked and therefore must be addressed directly.

This is, of course, only required for testing purposes. In principle, the `real_specimen` variables could be set to their values in `rt_data_t`, but this depends on the precision again, so we set them to some dummy values.

```

<RT data: rt data: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: fix_system_dependencies => rt_data_fix_system_dependencies

<RT data: tests>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_fix_system_dependencies (rt_data)
    class(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: rt_data
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    var_list => rt_data%var_list

    call var_list_set_log (var_list, &
      var_str ("?omega_omp"), .false., is_known = .true.)

    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("?omp_is_active"), V_LOG)
    call var_entry_set_log (var, .false., is_known = .true.)
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("omp_num_threads_default"), V_INT)
    call var_entry_set_int (var, 1, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (var_list, &
      var_str ("omp_num_threads"), 1, is_known = .true.)
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("real_range"), V_INT)
    call var_entry_set_int (var, 307, is_known = .true.)
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("real_precision"), V_INT)
    call var_entry_set_int (var, 15, is_known = .true.)
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("real_epsilon"), V_REAL)
    call var_entry_set_real (var, 1.e-16_default, is_known = .true.)
    var => var_list_get_var_ptr (var_list, &
      var_str ("real_tiny"), V_REAL)
    call var_entry_set_real (var, 1.e-300_default, is_known = .true.)

    rt_data%os_data%fc = "Fortran-compiler"
    rt_data%os_data%fcflags = "Fortran-flags"

  end subroutine rt_data_fix_system_dependencies

```

Display the RT data in the state just after (global) initialization.

```

<RT data: execute tests>≡
  call test (rt_data_1, "rt_data_1", &
    "initialize", &
    u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_1"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize global runtime data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%global_init (logfile = var_str ("rt_data.log"))

    call rt_data%fix_system_dependencies ()
    call var_list_set_int (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
      0, is_known=.true.)

    call rt_data%it_list%init ([2, 3], [5000, 20000])

    call rt_data%write (u)

    call rt_data%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_1"

  end subroutine rt_data_1

```

## Fill values

Fill in empty slots in the runtime data block.

```

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
  call test (rt_data_2, "rt_data_2", &
    "fill", &
    u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(string_t) :: cut_expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize global runtime data &
      &and fill contents"

```



```

write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call rt_data%global_init ()
call rt_data%fix_system_dependencies ()

call rt_data%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))

call var_list_set_real (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("sqrt"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)
call flavor_init (flv, [25,25], rt_data%model)

call var_list_set_string (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("run1"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("luminosity"), &
    33._default, is_known = .true.)

call syntax_pexpr_init ()
cut_expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
call ifile_append (ifile, cut_expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, .true.)
rt_data%pn%cuts_lexpr => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

allocate (rt_data%sample_fmt (2))
rt_data%sample_fmt(1) = "foo_fmt"
rt_data%sample_fmt(2) = "bar_fmt"

call rt_data%write (u)

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

call rt_data%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_2"

end subroutine rt_data_2

```

## Save and restore

Set up a local runtime data block, change some contents, restore the global block.

For a model variable, the save-restore procedure is nontrivial. We first allocate a local copy of this variable and set a pointer to the original model variable.

We set a new value, update the dependent variables and synchronize them with the local variable list, if modified. When restoring the old data, we recover the model variables from the stored values and delete the local instances.

```

(RT data: execute tests)+≡
  call test (rt_data_3, "rt_data_3", &
    "save/restore", &
    u, results)

(RT data: tests)+≡
  subroutine rt_data_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data, local
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
    type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
    type(string_t) :: cut_expr_text
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize global runtime data &
      &and fill contents;"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* copy to local block and back"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Init global data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call rt_data%global_init ()
    call rt_data%fix_system_dependencies ()
    call var_list_set_int (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
      0, is_known=.true.)

    call rt_data%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))

    call var_list_set_real (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
      1000._default, is_known = .true.)
    call flavor_init (flv, [25,25], rt_data%model)

    call rt_data%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), [1])
    call rt_data%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("pdf_builtin"))

    call var_list_set_string (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
      var_str ("run1"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_real (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("luminosity"), &
      33._default, is_known = .true.)

    call syntax_pexpr_init ()
    cut_expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
    call ifile_append (ifile, cut_expr_text)

```

```

call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, .true.)
rt_data%pn%cuts_lexpr => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

allocate (rt_data%sample_fmt (2))
rt_data%sample_fmt(1) = "foo_fmt"
rt_data%sample_fmt(2) = "bar_fmt"

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("library_1"))
call rt_data%add_prclib (lib)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Init and modify local data"
write (u, "(A)")

call local%local_init (rt_data)
call local%link (rt_data)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "model associated  = ", associated (local%model)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "library associated = ", associated (local%prclib)
write (u, *)

var => var_list_get_var_ptr (local%var_list, var_str ("ms"))
if (var_entry_is_copy (var)) then
  call var_list_init_copy (local%var_list, var, user=.true.)
  model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model)
  call var_list_set_original_pointer (local%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    model_vars)
  call var_list_set_real (local%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    150._default, is_known = .true., model_name = var_str ("Test"))
  call model_parameters_update (local%model)
  call var_list_synchronize (local%var_list, model_vars)
end if

call var_list_append_string (local%var_list, &
  var_str ("integration_method"), intrinsic = .true., user = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (local%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
  var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)

call var_list_append_string (local%var_list, &
  var_str ("phs_method"), intrinsic = .true., user = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (local%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
  var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)

local%os_data%fc = "Local compiler"

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("library_2"))
call local%add_prclib (lib)

call local%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Restore global data"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call rt_data%restore (local)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "model associated  = ", associated (rt_data%model)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "library associated = ", associated (rt_data%prclib)
write (u, *)

call rt_data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
call ifile_final (ifile)
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

call rt_data%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_3"

end subroutine rt_data_3

```

## Show variables

Display selected variables in the global record.

```

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
  call test (rt_data_4, "rt_data_4", &
    "show variables", &
    u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data

    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display selected variables"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%global_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* No variables:"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%write_vars (u, empty_string_array)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Two variables:"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call rt_data%write_vars (u, &
    [var_str ("?unweighted"), var_str ("phs_method")])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Display whole record with selected variables"
write (u, "(A)")

call rt_data%write (u, &
    vars = [var_str ("?unweighted"), var_str ("phs_method")])

call rt_data%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_4"

end subroutine rt_data_4

```

### Show parts

Display only selected parts in the state just after (global) initialization.

```

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
    call test (rt_data_5, "rt_data_5", &
        "show parts", &
        u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
subroutine rt_data_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: display parts of rt data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%global_init ()
    call rt_data%write_libraries (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%write_beams (u)

    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%write_process_stack (u)

    call rt_data%final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_5"

end subroutine rt_data_5

```

## Local Model

Locally modify a model and restore the global one. We need an auxiliary function to determine the status of a model particle:

```
<RT data: tests>+≡
  function is_stable (pdg, rt_data) result (flag)
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: rt_data
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    call flavor_init (flv, pdg, rt_data%model)
    flag = flavor_is_stable (flv)
  end function is_stable

  function is_polarized (pdg, rt_data) result (flag)
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: rt_data
    logical :: flag
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    call flavor_init (flv, pdg, rt_data%model)
    flag = flavor_is_polarized (flv)
  end function is_polarized

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
  call test (rt_data_6, "rt_data_6", &
    "local model", &
    u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
  subroutine rt_data_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data, local
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
    type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var_entry
    type(string_t) :: var_name

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: apply and keep local modifications to model"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call rt_data%global_init ()
    call rt_data%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"), &
      synchronize=.true.)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Original model"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call rt_data%write_model_list (u)
    write (u, *)
```

```

write (u, "(A,L1)") "s is stable      = ", is_stable (25, rt_data)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "f is polarized = ", is_polarized (6, rt_data)

write (u, *)

var_name = "ff"

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Global model variable: "
model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (rt_data%model)
call var_list_write_var (model_vars, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Global variable: "
call var_list_write_var (rt_data%var_list, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Apply local modifications: unstable"
write (u, "(A)")

call local%local_init (rt_data)
call local%link (rt_data)

var_entry => var_list_get_var_ptr &
      (rt_data%var_list, var_name, V_REAL, follow_link=.false.)
call var_list_init_copy (local%var_list, var_entry, user=.true.)

call var_list_set_original_pointer (local%var_list, var_name, &
      model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model))
call var_list_set_real (local%var_list, var_name, 0.4_default, &
      is_known = .true., verbose = .true., model_name = var_str ("Test"))
call var_list_restore (local%var_list)
call model_parameters_update (local%model)

call local%modify_particle (25, stable = .false., decay = [var_str ("d1")])
call local%modify_particle (6, stable = .false., &
      decay = [var_str ("f1")], isotropic_decay = .true.)
call local%modify_particle (-6, stable = .false., &
      decay = [var_str ("f2"), var_str ("f3")], diagonal_decay = .true.)

call model_write (local%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Further modifications"
write (u, "(A)")

call local%modify_particle (6, stable = .false., &
      decay = [var_str ("f1")], &
      diagonal_decay = .true., isotropic_decay = .false.)
call local%modify_particle (-6, stable = .false., &
      decay = [var_str ("f2"), var_str ("f3")], &
      diagonal_decay = .false., isotropic_decay = .true.)
call model_write (local%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Further modifications: f stable but polarized"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call local%modify_particle (6, stable = .true., polarized = .true.)
call local%modify_particle (-6, stable = .true.)
call model_write (local%model, u)

write (u, *)

call local%particle_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Global model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (local%model, u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)")  "s is stable      = ", is_stable (25, rt_data)
write (u, "(A,L1)")  "f is polarized = ", is_polarized (6, rt_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Local model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (local%model, u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)")  "s is stable      = ", is_stable (25, local)
write (u, "(A,L1)")  "f is polarized = ", is_polarized (6, local)

write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "Global model variable: "
model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (rt_data%model)
call var_list_write_var (model_vars, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "Local model variable: "
call var_list_write_var (model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model), &
    var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "Global variable: "
call var_list_write_var (rt_data%var_list, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no")  "Local variable: "
call var_list_write_var (local%var_list, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Restore global"

call rt_data%restore (local, keep_local = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Global model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (rt_data%model, u)

```



```

write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "s is stable    = ", is_stable (25, rt_data)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "f is polarized = ", is_polarized (6, rt_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Local model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (local%model, u)
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "s is stable    = ", is_stable (25, local)
write (u, "(A,L1)") "f is polarized = ", is_polarized (6, local)

write (u, *)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Global model variable: "
model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (rt_data%model)
call var_list_write_var (model_vars, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Local model variable: "
call var_list_write_var (model_get_var_list_ptr (local%model), &
    var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Global variable: "
call var_list_write_var (rt_data%var_list, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "Local variable: "
call var_list_write_var (local%var_list, var_name, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call model_final (local%model)
deallocate (local%model)

call rt_data%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_6"

end subroutine rt_data_6

```

## Result variables

Initialize result variables and check that they are accessible via the global variable list.

```

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
call test (rt_data_7, "rt_data_7", &
    "result variables", &
    u, results)

```

```

<RT data: tests>+≡
subroutine rt_data_7 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_7"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set and access result variables"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process variables"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rt_data%global_init ()
  call rt_data%process_stack%init_result_vars (var_str ("testproc"))

  call var_list_write_var (rt_data%var_list, &
    var_str ("integral(testproc)"), u)
  call var_list_write_var (rt_data%var_list, &
    var_str ("error(testproc)"), u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call rt_data%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_7"

end subroutine rt_data_7

```

## Beam energy

If beam parameters are set, the variable `sqrts` is not necessarily the collision energy. The method `get_sqrts` fetches the correct value.

```

<RT data: execute tests>+≡
  call test (rt_data_8, "rt_data_8", &
    "beam energy", &
    u, results)

<RT data: tests>+≡
subroutine rt_data_8 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(rt_data_t), target :: rt_data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: rt_data_8"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: get correct collision energy"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call rt_data%global_init ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Set sqrts"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_real (rt_data%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
write (u, "(1x,A,ES19.12)")  "sqrts =", rt_data%get_sqrts ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call rt_data%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: rt_data_8"

end subroutine rt_data_8

```

## 22.4 Select implementations

For abstract types (process core, integrator, phase space, etc.), we need a way to dynamically select a concrete type, using either data given by the user or a previous selection of a concrete type. This is done by subroutines in the current module.

This module provides no new types, just procedures.

```

⟨dispatch.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

  module dispatch

    ⟨Use kinds⟩
    use kinds, only: i16 !NODEP!
    ⟨Use strings⟩
    use limits, only: MZ_REF, ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF !NODEP!
    use constants, only: PI !NODEP!
    ⟨Use file utils⟩
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use os_interface
    use unit_tests
    use sm_qcd
    use pdg_arrays
    use variables
    use flavors
    use interactions
    use models
    use process_constants
    use pdf_builtin !NODEP!
    use sf_mappings
    use sf_base
    use sf_pdf_builtin
    use sf_lhapdf
    use sf_circe1

```

```

use sf_circe2
use sf_isr
use sf_epa
use sf_ewa
use sf_escan
use sf_beam_events
use sf_user
use rng_base
use rng_tao
use mci_base
use mci_midpoint
use mci_vamp
use phs_base
use mappings
use phs_forests
use phs_single
use phs_wood
use prc_core_def
use prc_test
use beams
use prc_omega
use prc_template_me
use prc_core
use processes
use shower
use event_transforms
use decays
use beam_structures
use eio_base
use eio_raw
use eio_checkpoints
use eio_lhef
use eio_hepmc
use eio_stdhep
use eio_ascii
use eio_weights
use rt_data

<Standard module head>

<Dispatch: public>

<Dispatch: types>

contains

<Dispatch: procedures>

<Dispatch: tests>

end module dispatch

```

## 22.4.1 Process Core Definition

The `prc_core_def_t` abstract type can be instantiated by providing a `$method` string variable.

Note: `core_def` has `intent(inout)` because gfortran 4.7.1 crashes for `intent(out)`.

```

<Dispatch: public>≡
    public :: dispatch_core_def
<Dispatch: procedures>≡
    subroutine dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: core_def
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
        type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
        type(string_t) :: method
        type(string_t) :: model_name
        type(string_t) :: restrictions
        logical :: openmp_support
        logical :: report_progress
        logical :: diags, diags_color
        type(string_t) :: extra_options
        type(model_t), pointer :: model
        model => global%model
        associate (var_list => global%var_list)
            method = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("method"))
            model_name = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("model_name"))
            select case (char (method))
            case ("unit_test")
                allocate (prc_test_def_t :: core_def)
                select type (core_def)
                type is (prc_test_def_t)
                    call core_def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out)
                end select
            case ("template")
                allocate (template_me_def_t :: core_def)
                select type (core_def)
                type is (template_me_def_t)
                    call core_def%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity = .false.)
                end select
            case ("template_unity")
                allocate (template_me_def_t :: core_def)
                select type (core_def)
                type is (template_me_def_t)
                    call core_def%init (model, prt_in, prt_out, unity = .true.)
                end select
            case ("omega")
                diags = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                    var_str ("diags"))
                diags_color = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                    var_str ("diags_color"))
                restrictions = var_list_get_sval (var_list, &
                    var_str ("restrictions"))
                openmp_support = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                    var_str ("omega_openmp"))
            end select
        end associate
    end subroutine

```

```

report_progress = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
var_str ("?report_progress"))
extra_options = var_list_get_sval (var_list, &
var_str ("$omega_flags"))
allocate (omega_def_t :: core_def)
select type (core_def)
type is (omega_def_t)
call core_def%init (model_name, prt_in, prt_out, &
restrictions, openmp_support, report_progress, &
extra_options, diags, diags_color)
end select
case default
call msg_fatal ("Process configuration: method '" &
// char (method) // "' not implemented")
end select
end associate
end subroutine dispatch_core_def

```

## 22.4.2 Process core allocation

Here we allocate an object of abstract type `prc_core_t` with a concrete type that matches a process definition. The `prc_omega_t` extension will require the current parameter set, so we take the opportunity to grab it from the model.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
public :: dispatch_core

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
subroutine dispatch_core (core, core_def, model, &
helicity_selection, qcd, use_color_factors)
class(prc_core_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: core
class(prc_core_def_t), intent(in) :: core_def
type(model_t), intent(in), target, optional :: model
type(helicity_selection_t), intent(in), optional :: helicity_selection
type(qcd_t), intent(in), optional :: qcd
logical, intent(in), optional :: use_color_factors
select type (core_def)
type is (prc_test_def_t)
allocate (test_t :: core)
type is (template_me_def_t)
allocate (prc_template_me_t :: core)
select type (core)
type is (prc_template_me_t)
call core%set_parameters (model)
end select
type is (omega_def_t)
allocate (prc_omega_t :: core)
select type (core)
type is (prc_omega_t)
call core%set_parameters (model, &
helicity_selection, qcd, use_color_factors)
end select
class default
call msg_bug ("Process core: unexpected process definition type")

```

```

        end select
    end subroutine dispatch_core

```

### 22.4.3 Process core update and restoration

Here we take an existing object of abstract type `prc_core_t` and update the parameters as given by the current state of `model`. Optionally, we can save the previous state as `saved_core`. The second routine restores the original from the save.

(In the test case, there is no possible update.)

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_core_update
    public :: dispatch_core_restore

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_core_update (core, model, helicity_selection, qcd, &
        saved_core)
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: core
        type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model
        type(helicity_selection_t), intent(in), optional :: helicity_selection
        type(qcd_t), intent(in), optional :: qcd
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable, intent(inout), optional :: saved_core
        if (present (saved_core)) then
            allocate (saved_core, source = core)
        end if
        select type (core)
        type is (test_t)
        type is (prc_omega_t)
            call core%set_parameters (model, helicity_selection, qcd)
            call core%activate_parameters ()
        class default
            call msg_bug ("Process core update: unexpected process definition type")
        end select
    end subroutine dispatch_core_update

    subroutine dispatch_core_restore (core, saved_core)
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: core
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: saved_core
        call move_alloc (from = saved_core, to = core)
        select type (core)
        type is (test_t)
        type is (prc_omega_t)
            call core%activate_parameters ()
        class default
            call msg_bug ("Process core restore: unexpected process definition type")
        end select
    end subroutine dispatch_core_restore

```

### 22.4.4 Integrator allocation

Allocate an integrator according to the variable `$integration_method`.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_mci

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_mci (mci, global, process_id)
        class(mci_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: mci
        type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
        type(string_t) :: run_id
        type(string_t) :: integration_method
        type(grid_parameters_t) :: grid_par
        type(history_parameters_t) :: history_par
        logical :: rebuild_grids, check_grid_file, negative_weights, verbose
        integration_method = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
            var_str ("integration_method"))
        select case (char (integration_method))
        case ("midpoint")
            allocate (mci_midpoint_t :: mci)
        case ("vamp", "default")
            associate (var_list => global%var_list)
                grid_par%threshold_calls = &
                    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("threshold_calls"))
                grid_par%min_calls_per_channel = &
                    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_channel"))
                grid_par%min_calls_per_bin = &
                    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_bin"))
                grid_par%min_bins = &
                    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("min_bins"))
                grid_par%max_bins = &
                    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("max_bins"))
                grid_par%stratified = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?stratified"))
                grid_par%use_vamp_equivalences = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"))
                grid_par%channel_weights_power = &
                    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("channel_weights_power"))
                grid_par%accuracy_goal = &
                    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("accuracy_goal"))
                grid_par%error_goal = &
                    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("error_goal"))
                grid_par%rel_error_goal = &
                    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("relative_error_goal"))
                history_par%global = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                        var_str ("?vamp_history_global"))
                history_par%global_verbose = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                        var_str ("?vamp_history_global_verbose"))
                history_par%channel = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                        var_str ("?vamp_history_channels"))
                history_par%channel_verbose = &
                    var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
                        var_str ("?vamp_history_channels_verbose"))
                verbose = var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?vamp_verbose"))
            end associate
        end select
    end subroutine

```



```

    check_grid_file = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?check_grid_file"))
    run_id = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$run_id"))
    rebuild_grids = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_grids"))
    negative_weights = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?negative_weights"))
end associate
allocate (mci_vamp_t :: mci)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%set_grid_parameters (grid_par)
    if (run_id /= "") then
        call mci%set_grid_filename (process_id, run_id)
    else
        call mci%set_grid_filename (process_id)
    end if
    call mci%set_history_parameters (history_par)
    call mci%set_rebuild_flag (rebuild_grids, check_grid_file)
    mci%negative_weights = negative_weights
    mci%verbose = verbose
end select
case default
    call msg_fatal ("Integrator '" &
        // char (integration_method) // "' not implemented")
end select
end subroutine dispatch_mci

```

## 22.4.5 Phase-space allocation

Allocate a phase-space object according to the variable \$phs\_method.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_phs

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_phs (phs, global, process_id, mapping_defaults, phs_par)
        class(phs_config_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: phs
        type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
        type(mapping_defaults_t), intent(in), optional :: mapping_defaults
        type(phs_parameters_t), intent(in), optional :: phs_par
        type(string_t) :: phs_method, phs_file, run_id
        logical :: use_equivalences, vis_channels, fatal_beam_decay
        integer :: u_phs
        logical :: exist
        phs_method = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
            var_str ("$phs_method"))
        phs_file = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
            var_str ("$phs_file"))
        use_equivalences = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
            var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"))
        vis_channels = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &

```

```

        var_str ("?vis_channels"))
fatal_beam_decay = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
        var_str ("?fatal_beam_decay"))
run_id = &
        var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"))
select case (char (phs_method))
case ("single")
    allocate (phs_single_config_t :: phs)
    if (vis_channels) then
        call msg_warning ("Visualizing phase space channels not " // &
            "available for method 'single'.")
    end if
case ("wood", "default")
    allocate (phs_wood_config_t :: phs)
    select type (phs)
    type is (phs_wood_config_t)
        if (phs_file /= "") then
            inquire (file = char (phs_file), exist = exist)
            if (exist) then
                call msg_message ("Phase space: reading configuration from '" &
                    // char (phs_file) // "'")
                u_phs = free_unit ()
                open (u_phs, file = char (phs_file), &
                    action = "read", status = "old")
                call phs%set_input (u_phs)
            else
                call msg_fatal ("Phase space: configuration file '" &
                    // char (phs_file) // "' not found")
            end if
        end if
    end if
    if (present (phs_par)) &
        call phs%set_parameters (phs_par)
    if (use_equivalences) &
        call phs%enable_equivalences ()
    if (present (mapping_defaults)) &
        call phs%set_mapping_defaults (mapping_defaults)
    phs%vis_channels = vis_channels
    phs%fatal_beam_decay = fatal_beam_decay
    phs%os_data = global%os_data
    phs%run_id = run_id
end select
case default
    call msg_fatal ("Phase space: parameterization method '" &
        // char (phs_method) // "' not implemented")
end select
end subroutine dispatch_phs

```

### 22.4.6 Random-number generator

Allocate a random-number generator factory according to the variable `$rng_method`, using the current seed in the global record. We take only the lower 15 bits of the seed, so the actual value fits into a positive 16-bit signed integer.

Since we want to guarantee that all random-number generators in a run are independent, we increment the global seed by one after creating the rng factory. If the user wants to have identical sequences, he can always set the seed manually, before it is used.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_rng_factory

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
        class(rng_factory_t), allocatable, intent(out) :: rng_factory
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(string_t) :: rng_method
        integer :: seed
        character(30) :: buffer
        integer(i16) :: s
        rng_method = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("rng_method"))
        seed = var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"))
        s = mod (seed, 32768)
        select case (char (rng_method))
        case ("unit_test")
            allocate (rng_test_factory_t :: rng_factory)
            call msg_message ("RNG: Initializing Test random-number generator")
        case ("tao")
            allocate (rng_tao_factory_t :: rng_factory)
            call msg_message ("RNG: Initializing TAO random-number generator")
        case default
            call msg_fatal ("Random-number generator '" &
                // char (rng_method) // "' not implemented")
        end select
        write (buffer, "(I0)") s
        call msg_message ("RNG: Setting seed for random-number generator to " &
            // trim (buffer))
        call rng_factory%init (s)
        call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), seed + 1, &
            is_known = .true.)
    end subroutine dispatch_rng_factory

```

## 22.4.7 Structure function configuration data

This data type is a container for transferring structure-function specific data from the `dispatch_sf_data` to the `dispatch_sf_channels` subroutine.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: sf_prop_t

<Dispatch: types>≡
    type :: sf_prop_t
        real(default), dimension(2) :: isr_eps = 1
    end type sf_prop_t

```

Allocate a structure-function configuration object according to the `sf_method` string.

The `sf_prop` object can be used to transfer structure-function specific data up and to the `dispatch_sf_channels` subroutine below, so they can be used for particular mappings.

The `global` object is `intent(inout)` because the PDF status may change during initialization.

The `pdg_in` array is the array of incoming flavors, corresponding to the upstream structure function or the beam array. This will be checked for the structure function in question and replaced by the outgoing flavors. The `pdg_prc` array is the array of incoming flavors (beam index, component index) for the hard process.

```

(Dispatch: public) +=
  public :: dispatch_sf_data

(Dispatch: procedures) +=
  subroutine dispatch_sf_data (data, sf_method, i_beam, sf_prop, global, &
    pdg_in, pdg_prc)
    class(sf_data_t), allocatable, intent(inout) :: data
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: sf_method
    integer, dimension(:), intent(in) :: i_beam
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), intent(inout) :: pdg_in
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: pdg_prc
    type(sf_prop_t), intent(inout) :: sf_prop
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_out
    real(default) :: sqrts, isr_alpha, isr_q_max, isr_mass
    integer :: isr_order
    logical :: isr_recoil
    real(default) :: epa_alpha, epa_x_min, epa_q_min, epa_e_max, epa_mass
    logical :: epa_recoil
    real(default) :: ewa_x_min, ewa_pt_max, ewa_mass
    logical :: ewa_keep_momentum, ewa_keep_energy
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_prc1
    integer :: ewa_id
    type(string_t) :: pdf_name
    type(string_t) :: lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file
    type(string_t), dimension(13) :: lhpdf_photon_sets
    integer :: lhpdf_member, lhpdf_photon_scheme
    logical :: hoppet_b_matching
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    logical :: circe1_photon1, circe1_photon2, circe1_generate
    real(default) :: circe1_sqrts, circe1_eps
    integer :: circe1_version, circe1_chattiness, &
      circe1_revision
    character(6) :: circe1_accelerator
    logical :: circe2_polarized
    type(string_t) :: circe2_design, circe2_file
    logical :: beam_events_warn_eof
    type(string_t) :: beam_events_dir, beam_events_file
    logical :: escan_normalize
    lhpdf_photon_sets = [var_str ("DOGO.LHgrid"), var_str ("DOG1.LHgrid"), &
      var_str ("DGG.LHgrid"), var_str ("LACG.LHgrid"), &
      var_str ("GSG0.LHgrid"), var_str ("GSG1.LHgrid"), &
      var_str ("GSG960.LHgrid"), var_str ("GSG961.LHgrid"), &

```

```

        var_str ("GRVGO.LHgrid"), var_str ("GRVG1.LHgrid"), &
        var_str ("ACFGPG.LHgrid"), var_str ("WHITG.LHgrid"), &
        var_str ("SASG.LHgrid")]
model => global%model
sqrts = global%get_sqrts ()
associate (var_list => global%var_list)
    select case (char (sf_method))
    case ("sf_test_0", "sf_test_1")
        allocate (sf_test_data_t :: data)
        select type (data)
        type is (sf_test_data_t)
            select case (char (sf_method))
            case ("sf_test_0"); call data%init (model, pdg_in(i_beam(1)))
            case ("sf_test_1"); call data%init (model, pdg_in(i_beam(1)), &
                mode = 1)
            end select
        end select
    case ("pdf_builtin")
        allocate (pdf_builtin_data_t :: data)
        select type (data)
        type is (pdf_builtin_data_t)
            pdf_name = &
                var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("pdf_builtin_set"))
            hoppet_b_matching = &
                var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("hoppet_b_matching"))
            call data%init (global%pdf_builtin_status, &
                model, pdg_in(i_beam(1)), &
                name = pdf_name, &
                path = global%os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath, &
                hoppet_b_matching = hoppet_b_matching)
            end select
    case ("pdf_builtin_photon")
        call msg_fatal ("Currently, there are no photon PDFs built into WHIZARD,", &
            [var_str ("for the photon content inside a proton or neutron use"), &
            var_str ("the 'lhpdf_photon' structure function.")])
    case ("lhpdf")
        allocate (lhpdf_data_t :: data)
        if (pdg_array_get (pdg_in(i_beam(1)), 1) == PHOTON) then
            call msg_fatal ("The 'lhpdf' structure is intended only for protons and", &
                [var_str ("pions, please use 'lhpdf_photon' for photon beams.")])
        end if
        lhpdf_dir = &
            var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_dir"))
        lhpdf_file = &
            var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_file"))
        lhpdf_member = &
            var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"))
        lhpdf_photon_scheme = &
            var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_photon_scheme"))
        hoppet_b_matching = &
            var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("hoppet_b_matching"))
        select type (data)
        type is (lhpdf_data_t)
            call data%init &

```

```

        (global%lhpdf_status, model, pdg_in(i_beam(1)), &
         lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file, lhpdf_member, &
         lhpdf_photon_scheme, hoppet_b_matching)
    end select
case ("lhpdf_photon")
    allocate (lhpdf_data_t :: data)
    if (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_in(i_beam(1))) /= 1 .or. &
        pdg_array_get (pdg_in(i_beam(1)), 1) /= PHOTON) then
        call msg_fatal ("The 'lhpdf_photon' structure function is exclusively for", &
            [var_str ("photon PDFs, i.e. for photons as beam particles")])
    end if
    lhpdf_dir = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_dir"))
    lhpdf_file = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_photon_file"))
    lhpdf_member = &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"))
    lhpdf_photon_scheme = &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_photon_scheme"))
    if (.not. any (lhpdf_photon_sets == lhpdf_file)) then
        call msg_fatal ("This PDF set is not supported or not " // &
            "intended for photon beams.")
    end if
    select type (data)
    type is (lhpdf_data_t)
        call data%init &
            (global%lhpdf_status, model, pdg_in(i_beam(1)), &
             lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file, lhpdf_member, &
             lhpdf_photon_scheme)
    end select
case ("isr")
    allocate (isr_data_t :: data)
    isr_alpha = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_alpha"))
    if (isr_alpha == 0) then
        isr_alpha = (var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ee"))) &
            ** 2 / (4 * PI)
    end if
    isr_q_max = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_q_max"))
    if (isr_q_max == 0) then
        isr_q_max = sqrts
    end if
    isr_mass = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("isr_mass"))
    isr_order = var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("isr_order"))
    isr_recoil = var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?isr_recoil"))
    select type (data)
    type is (isr_data_t)
        call data%init &
            (model, pdg_in (i_beam(1)), isr_alpha, isr_q_max, &
             isr_mass, isr_order, isr_recoil)
        call data%check ()
        sf_prop%isr_eps(i_beam(1)) = data%get_eps ()
    end select
case ("epa")
    allocate (epa_data_t :: data)

```

```

epa_alpha = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_alpha"))
if (epa_alpha == 0) then
    epa_alpha = (var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ee"))) &
        ** 2 / (4 * PI)
end if
epa_x_min = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_x_min"))
epa_q_min = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_q_min"))
epa_e_max = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_e_max"))
if (epa_e_max == 0) then
    epa_e_max = sqrts
end if
epa_mass = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("epa_mass"))
epa_recoil = var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?epa_recoil"))
select type (data)
type is (epa_data_t)
    call data%init &
        (model, pdg_in (i_beam(1)), epa_alpha, epa_x_min, &
        epa_q_min, epa_e_max, epa_mass, epa_recoil)
    call data%check ()
end select
case ("ewa")
    allocate (ewa_data_t :: data)
    allocate (pdg_prc1 (size (pdg_prc, 2)))
    pdg_prc1 = pdg_prc(i_beam(1),:)
    if (any (pdg_array_get_length (pdg_prc1) /= 1) &
        .or. any (pdg_prc1 /= pdg_prc1(1))) then
        call msg_fatal &
            ("EWA: process incoming particle (W/Z) must be unique")
    end if
    ewa_id = abs (pdg_array_get (pdg_prc1(1), 1))
    ewa_x_min = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_x_min"))
    ewa_pt_max = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_pt_max"))
    if (ewa_pt_max == 0) then
        ewa_pt_max = sqrts
    end if
    ewa_mass = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("ewa_mass"))
    ewa_keep_momentum = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
        var_str ("?ewa_keep_momentum"))
    ewa_keep_energy = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
        var_str ("?ewa_keep_energy"))
    if (ewa_keep_momentum .and. ewa_keep_energy) &
        call msg_fatal (" EWA cannot conserve both energy " &
            // "and momentum.")
    select type (data)
    type is (ewa_data_t)
        call data%init &
            (model, pdg_in (i_beam(1)), ewa_x_min, &
            ewa_pt_max, sqrts, ewa_keep_momentum, &
            ewa_keep_energy, ewa_mass)
        call data%set_id (ewa_id)
        call data%check ()
    end select
case ("circe1")
    allocate (circe1_data_t :: data)

```

```

select type (data)
type is (circe1_data_t)
  circe1_photon1 = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon1"))
  circe1_photon2 = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_photon2"))
  circe1_sqrts = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("circe1_sqrts"))
  circe1_eps = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("circe1_eps"))
  if (circe1_sqrts <= 0) circe1_sqrts = sqrts
  circe1_generate = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe1_generate"))
  circe1_version = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_ver"))
  circe1_revision = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_rev"))
  circe1_accelerator = &
    char (var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe1_acc")))
  circe1_chattiness = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("circe1_chat"))
  call data%init (model, pdg_in, circe1_sqrts, circe1_eps, &
    [circe1_photon1, circe1_photon2], &
    circe1_version, circe1_revision, circe1_accelerator, &
    circe1_chattiness)
  if (circe1_generate) then
    call msg_message ("Circe1: activating generator mode")
    call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
    call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
  end if
end select
case ("circe2")
  allocate (circe2_data_t :: data)
  select type (data)
  type is (circe2_data_t)
    circe2_polarized = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?circe2_polarized"))
    circe2_file = &
      var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe2_file"))
    circe2_design = &
      var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$circe2_design"))
    call data%init (global%os_data, model, pdg_in, sqrts, &
      circe2_polarized, circe2_file, circe2_design)
    call msg_message ("Circe2: activating generator mode")
    call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
    call data%set_generator_mode (rng_factory)
  end select
case ("beam_events")
  allocate (beam_events_data_t :: data)
  select type (data)
  type is (beam_events_data_t)
    beam_events_dir = global%os_data%whizard_beamsimpath
    beam_events_file = var_list_get_sval (var_list, &
      var_str ("$beam_events_file"))

```



```

        beam_events_warn_eof = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
            var_str ("?beam_events_warn_eof"))
        call data%init (model, pdg_in, &
            beam_events_dir, beam_events_file, beam_events_warn_eof)
    end select
case ("energy_scan")
    escan_normalize = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?energy_scan_normalize"))
    allocate (escan_data_t :: data)
    select type (data)
    type is (escan_data_t)
        if (escan_normalize) then
            call data%init (model, pdg_in)
        else
            call data%init (model, pdg_in, sqrts)
        end if
    end select
case default
    call msg_bug ("Structure function '" &
        // char (sf_method) // "' not implemented yet")
    end select
end associate
if (allocated (data)) then
    allocate (pdg_out (size (pdg_prc, 1)))
    call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
    pdg_in(i_beam) = pdg_out
end if
end subroutine dispatch_sf_data

```

This is an auxiliary procedure, used by the beam-structure expansion: tell for a given structure function name, whether it corresponds to a pair spectrum ( $n = 2$ ), a single-particle structure function ( $n = 1$ ), or nothing ( $n = 0$ ). Though `energy_scan` can in principle also be a pair spectrum, it always has only one parameter.

*(Dispatch: procedures)*+≡

```

function strfun_mode (name) result (n)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: name
    integer :: n
    select case (char (name))
    case ("none")
        n = 0
    case ("sf_test_0", "sf_test_1")
        n = 1
    case ("pdf_builtin", "pdf_builtin_photon", &
        "lhpdf", "lhpdf_photon")
        n = 1
    case ("isr", "epa", "ewa")
        n = 1
    case ("circe1", "circe2")
        n = 2
    case ("beam_events")
        n = 2
    case ("energy_scan")

```

```

        n = 2
    case default
        call msg_bug ("Structure function '" // char (name) &
            // "' not supported yet")
    end select
end function strfun_mode

```

Dispatch a whole structure-function chain, given beam data and beam structure data.

This could be done generically, but we should look at the specific combination of structure functions in order to select appropriate mappings.

The `beam_structure` argument gets copied because we want to expand it to canonical form (one valid structure-function entry per record) before proceeding further.

The `pdg_prc` argument is the array of incoming flavors. The first index is the beam index, the second one the process component index. Each element is itself a PDG array, notrivial if there is a flavor sum for the incoming state of this component.

The dispatcher is divided in two parts. The first part configures the structure function data themselves. After this, we can configure the phase space for the elementary process.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_sf_config

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_sf_config (sf_config, sf_prop, global, pdg_prc)
        type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: sf_config
        type(sf_prop_t), intent(out) :: sf_prop
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: sf_data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,:), intent(in) :: pdg_prc
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_in
        type(flavor_t) :: flv_in
        integer :: n_beam, n_record, i
        beam_structure = global%beam_structure
        call beam_structure%expand (strfun_mode)
        n_record = beam_structure%get_n_record ()
        allocate (sf_config (n_record))
        n_beam = beam_structure%get_n_beam ()
        if (n_beam > 0) then
            allocate (prt_in (n_beam), pdg_in (n_beam))
            prt_in = beam_structure%get_prt ()
            do i = 1, n_beam
                call flavor_init (flv_in, prt_in(i), global%model)
                pdg_in(i) = flavor_get_pdg (flv_in)
            end do
        else
            n_beam = size (pdg_prc, 1)
            allocate (pdg_in (n_beam))
            pdg_in = pdg_prc(:,1)
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

do i = 1, n_record
  call dispatch_sf_data (sf_data, &
    beam_structure%get_name (i), &
    beam_structure%get_i_entry (i), &
    sf_prop, global, pdg_in, pdg_prc)
  call sf_config(i)%init (beam_structure%get_i_entry (i), sf_data)
  deallocate (sf_data)
end do
end subroutine dispatch_sf_config

```

The second part configures channel mappings, using some conditions from the phase space configuration. If there are no structure functions, we enable a default setup with a single (dummy) structure-function channel. Otherwise, we look at the channel collection that we got from the phase-space configuration step. Each entry should be translated into an independent structure-function channel, where typically there is one default entry, which could be mapped using a standard s-channel mapping if the structure function setup recommends this, and other entries with s-channel resonances. The latter need to be translated into global mappings from the structure-function chain.

*<Dispatch: public>+≡*

```
public :: dispatch_sf_channels
```

*<Dispatch: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine dispatch_sf_channels (sf_channel, sf_string, sf_prop, coll, global)
  type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: sf_channel
  type(string_t), intent(out) :: sf_string
  type(sf_prop_t), intent(in) :: sf_prop
  type(phs_channel_collection_t), intent(in) :: coll
  type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
  type(beam_structure_t) :: beam_structure
  class(channel_prop_t), allocatable :: prop
  integer :: n_strfun, n_sf_channel, i
  logical :: sf_allow_s_mapping, circe1_map, circe1_generate
  logical :: s_mapping_enable, endpoint_mapping, power_mapping
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: s_mapping, single_mapping
  real(default) :: sqrts, s_mapping_power
  real(default) :: circe1_mapping_slope, endpoint_mapping_slope
  real(default) :: power_mapping_eps
  sqrts = global%get_sqrts ()
  beam_structure = global%beam_structure
  call beam_structure%expand (strfun_mode)
  n_strfun = beam_structure%get_n_record ()
  sf_string = beam_structure%to_string (sf_only = .true.)
  sf_allow_s_mapping = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?sf_allow_s_mapping"))
  circe1_generate = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_generate"))
  circe1_map = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_map"))
  circe1_mapping_slope = &
    var_list_get_rval (global%var_list, var_str ("circe1_mapping_slope"))
  s_mapping_enable = .false.
  s_mapping_power = 1

```

```

endpoint_mapping = .false.
endpoint_mapping_slope = 1
power_mapping = .false.
select case (char (sf_string))
case ("", "[any particles]")
case ("pdf_builtin, none", &
      "pdf_builtin_photon, none", &
      "none, pdf_builtin", &
      "none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
      "lhpdf, none", &
      "lhpdf_photon, none", &
      "none, lhpdf", &
      "none, lhpdf_photon")
case ("pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin", &
      "pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
      "pdf_builtin_photon, none => none, pdf_builtin", &
      "pdf_builtin_photon, none => none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
      "lhpdf, none => none, lhpdf", &
      "lhpdf, none => none, lhpdf_photon", &
      "lhpdf_photon, none => none, lhpdf", &
      "lhpdf_photon, none => none, lhpdf_photon")
      allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
      s_mapping_enable = .true.
      s_mapping_power = 2
case ("pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin => epa, none => none, epa", &
      "pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin => ewa, none => none, ewa", &
      "pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin => ewa, none => none, epa", &
      "pdf_builtin, none => none, pdf_builtin => epa, none => none, ewa")
      allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
      s_mapping_enable = .true.
      s_mapping_power = 2
case ("isr, none", &
      "none, isr")
      allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
case ("isr, none => none, isr")
      allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
      power_mapping = .true.
      power_mapping_eps = minval (sf_prop%isr_eps)
case ("isr, none => none, isr => epa, none => none, epa", &
      "isr, none => none, isr => ewa, none => none, ewa", &
      "isr, none => none, isr => ewa, none => none, epa", &
      "isr, none => none, isr => epa, none => none, ewa")
      allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
      power_mapping = .true.
      power_mapping_eps = minval (sf_prop%isr_eps)
case ("circe1 => isr, none => none, isr => epa, none => none, epa", &
      "circe1 => isr, none => none, isr => ewa, none => none, ewa", &
      "circe1 => isr, none => none, isr => ewa, none => none, epa", &
      "circe1 => isr, none => none, isr => epa, none => none, ewa")
      if (circe1_generate) then
        allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
      else
        allocate (s_mapping (3), source = [1, 2, 3])
      endpoint_mapping = .true.

```

```

        endpoint_mapping_slope = circe1_mapping_slope
    end if
    power_mapping = .true.
    power_mapping_eps = minval (sf_prop%isr_eps)
    case ("pdf_builtin, none => none, isr", &
        "pdf_builtin_photon, none => none, isr", &
        "lhpdf, none => none, isr", &
        "lhpdf_photon, none => none, isr")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
    case ("isr, none => none, pdf_builtin", &
        "isr, none => none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
        "isr, none => none, lhpdf", &
        "isr, none => none, lhpdf_photon")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
    case ("epa, none", &
        "none, epa")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
    case ("epa, none => none, epa")
        allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
    case ("epa, none => none, isr", &
        "isr, none => none, epa", &
        "ewa, none => none, isr", &
        "isr, none => none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
    case ("pdf_builtin, none => none, epa", &
        "pdf_builtin_photon, none => none, epa", &
        "lhpdf, none => none, epa", &
        "lhpdf_photon, none => none, epa")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
    case ("pdf_builtin, none => none, ewa", &
        "pdf_builtin_photon, none => none, ewa", &
        "lhpdf, none => none, ewa", &
        "lhpdf_photon, none => none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
    case ("epa, none => none, pdf_builtin", &
        "epa, none => none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
        "epa, none => none, lhpdf", &
        "epa, none => none, lhpdf_photon")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
    case ("ewa, none => none, pdf_builtin", &
        "ewa, none => none, pdf_builtin_photon", &
        "ewa, none => none, lhpdf", &
        "ewa, none => none, lhpdf_photon")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
    case ("ewa, none", &
        "none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [1])
    case ("ewa, none => none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
    case ("energy_scan, none => none, energy_scan")
        allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
    case ("sf_test_1, none => none, sf_test_1")
        allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [1, 2])
    case ("circe1")

```

```

if (circe1_generate) then
  ! no mapping
else if (circe1_map) then
  allocate (s_mapping (1), source = [1])
  endpoint_mapping = .true.
  endpoint_mapping_slope = circe1_mapping_slope
else
  allocate (s_mapping (1), source = [1])
  s_mapping_enable = .true.
end if
case ("circe1 => isr, none => none, isr")
  if (circe1_generate) then
    allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
  else
    allocate (s_mapping (3), source = [1, 2, 3])
    endpoint_mapping = .true.
    endpoint_mapping_slope = circe1_mapping_slope
  end if
  power_mapping = .true.
  power_mapping_eps = minval (sf_prop%isr_eps)
case ("circe1 => isr, none", &
      "circe1 => none, isr")
  allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
case ("circe1 => epa, none => none, epa")
  if (circe1_generate) then
    allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Circe/EPA: supported with ?circe1_generate=true &
                  &only")
  end if
case ("circe1 => ewa, none => none, ewa")
  if (circe1_generate) then
    allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Circe/EWA: supported with ?circe1_generate=true &
                  &only")
  end if
case ("circe1 => epa, none", &
      "circe1 => none, epa")
  if (circe1_generate) then
    allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Circe/EPA: supported with ?circe1_generate=true &
                  &only")
  end if
case ("circe1 => epa, none => none, isr", &
      "circe1 => isr, none => none, epa", &
      "circe1 => ewa, none => none, isr", &
      "circe1 => isr, none => none, ewa")
  if (circe1_generate) then
    allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Circe/EPA: supported with ?circe1_generate=true &
                  &only")

```

```

        end if
    case ("circe2")
    case ("beam_events")
    case ("beam_events => isr, none => none, isr")
        allocate (s_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
        power_mapping = .true.
        power_mapping_eps = minval (sf_prop%isr_eps)
    case ("beam_events => isr, none", &
        "beam_events => none, isr")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
    case ("beam_events => epa, none => none, epa")
        allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
    case ("beam_events => epa, none", &
        "beam_events => none, epa", &
        "beam_events => ewa, none", &
        "beam_events => none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (1), source = [2])
    case ("beam_events => epa, none => none, isr", &
        "beam_events => isr, none => none, epa", &
        "beam_events => ewa, none => none, isr", &
        "beam_events => isr, none => none, ewa")
        allocate (single_mapping (2), source = [2, 3])
    case ("energy_scan")
    case default
        call msg_fatal ("Beam structure: " &
            // char (sf_string) // " not supported")
    end select
    if (sf_allow_s_mapping .and. coll%n > 0) then
        n_sf_channel = coll%n
        allocate (sf_channel (n_sf_channel))
        do i = 1, n_sf_channel
            call sf_channel(i)%init (n_strfun)
            if (allocated (single_mapping)) then
                call sf_channel(i)%activate_mapping (single_mapping)
            end if
            if (allocated (prop)) deallocate (prop)
            call coll%get_entry (i, prop)
            if (allocated (prop)) then
                if (endpoint_mapping .and. power_mapping) then
                    select type (prop)
                    type is (resonance_t)
                        call sf_channel(i)%set_eir_mapping (s_mapping, &
                            a = endpoint_mapping_slope, eps = power_mapping_eps, &
                            m = prop%mass / sqrts, w = prop%width / sqrts)
                    type is (on_shell_t)
                        call sf_channel(i)%set_eio_mapping (s_mapping, &
                            a = endpoint_mapping_slope, eps = power_mapping_eps, &
                            m = prop%mass / sqrts)
                    end select
                else if (endpoint_mapping) then
                    select type (prop)
                    type is (resonance_t)
                        call sf_channel(i)%set_epr_mapping (s_mapping, &
                            a = endpoint_mapping_slope, &

```

```

        m = prop%mass / sqrts, w = prop%width / sqrts)
type is (on_shell_t)
    call sf_channel(i)%set_epo_mapping (s_mapping, &
        a = endpoint_mapping_slope, &
        m = prop%mass / sqrts)
end select
else if (power_mapping) then
    select type (prop)
    type is (resonance_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_ipr_mapping (s_mapping, &
            eps = power_mapping_eps, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts, w = prop%width / sqrts)
    type is (on_shell_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_ipo_mapping (s_mapping, &
            eps = power_mapping_eps, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts)
    end select
else if (allocated (s_mapping)) then
    select type (prop)
    type is (resonance_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_res_mapping (s_mapping, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts, w = prop%width / sqrts)
    type is (on_shell_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_os_mapping (s_mapping, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts)
    end select
else if (allocated (single_mapping)) then
    select type (prop)
    type is (resonance_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_res_mapping (single_mapping, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts, w = prop%width / sqrts)
    type is (on_shell_t)
        call sf_channel(i)%set_os_mapping (single_mapping, &
            m = prop%mass / sqrts)
    end select
end if
else if (endpoint_mapping .and. power_mapping) then
    call sf_channel(i)%set_ei_mapping (s_mapping, &
        a = endpoint_mapping_slope, eps = power_mapping_eps)
else if (endpoint_mapping .and. .not. allocated (single_mapping)) then
    call sf_channel(i)%set_ep_mapping (s_mapping, &
        a = endpoint_mapping_slope)
else if (power_mapping .and. .not. allocated (single_mapping)) then
    call sf_channel(i)%set_ip_mapping (s_mapping, &
        eps = power_mapping_eps)
else if (s_mapping_enable .and. .not. allocated (single_mapping)) then
    call sf_channel(i)%set_s_mapping (s_mapping, &
        power = s_mapping_power)
end if
end do
else if (sf_allow_s_mapping) then
    allocate (sf_channel (1))
    call sf_channel(1)%init (n_strfun)
    if (allocated (single_mapping)) then

```



```

        call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping (single_mapping)
    else if (endpoint_mapping .and. power_mapping) then
        call sf_channel(1)%set_ei_mapping (s_mapping, &
            a = endpoint_mapping_slope, eps = power_mapping_eps)
    else if (endpoint_mapping) then
        call sf_channel(1)%set_ep_mapping (s_mapping, &
            a = endpoint_mapping_slope)
    else if (power_mapping) then
        call sf_channel(1)%set_ip_mapping (s_mapping, &
            eps = power_mapping_eps)
    else if (s_mapping_enable) then
        call sf_channel(1)%set_s_mapping (s_mapping, &
            power = s_mapping_power)
    end if
else
    allocate (sf_channel (1))
    call sf_channel(1)%init (n_strfun)
    if (allocated (single_mapping)) then
        call sf_channel(1)%activate_mapping (single_mapping)
    end if
end if
end subroutine dispatch_sf_channels

```

## 22.4.8 Event I/O stream

*<Dispatch: public>+≡*

public :: dispatch\_eio

*<Dispatch: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine dispatch_eio (eio, method, global)
    class(eio_t), intent(inout), allocatable :: eio
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: method
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
    logical :: check, keep_beams, recover_beams
    logical :: write_sqme_prc, write_sqme_ref, write_sqme_alt
    type(string_t) :: lhef_version, lhef_extension
    type(string_t) :: extension_default, debug_extension, extension_hepmc, &
        extension_lha, extension_hepevt, extension_ascii_short, &
        extension_ascii_long, extension_athena, extension_mokka, &
        extension_stdhep, extension_stdhep_up, extension_raw, &
        extension_hepevt_verb, extension_lha_verb
    integer :: checkpoint
    logical :: show_process, show_transforms, show_decay, verbose, pacify
    select case (char (method))
    case ("raw")
        allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)
        select type (eio)
        type is (eio_raw_t)
            check = var_list_get_lval &
                (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_event_file"))
            extension_raw = &
                var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_raw"))
            call eio%set_parameters (check, extension_raw)

```

```

        end select
    case ("checkpoint")
        allocate (eio_checkpoints_t :: eio)
        select type (eio)
        type is (eio_checkpoints_t)
            checkpoint = var_list_get_ival &
                (global%var_list, var_str ("checkpoint"))
            pacify = var_list_get_lval &
                (global%var_list, var_str ("?pacify"))
            call eio%set_parameters (checkpoint, blank = pacify)
        end select
    case ("lhef")
        allocate (eio_lhef_t :: eio)
        select type (eio)
        type is (eio_lhef_t)
            keep_beams = &
                var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
            recover_beams = &
                var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?recover_beams"))
            lhef_version = &
                var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$lhef_version"))
            lhef_extension = &
                var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$lhef_extension"))
            write_sqme_prc = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
                var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_prc"))
            write_sqme_ref = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
                var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_ref"))
            write_sqme_alt = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
                var_str ("?lhef_write_sqme_alt"))
            call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, recover_beams, &
                char (lhef_version), lhef_extension, &
                write_sqme_ref, write_sqme_prc, write_sqme_alt)
        end select
    case ("hepmc")
        allocate (eio_hepmc_t :: eio)
        select type (eio)
        type is (eio_hepmc_t)
            keep_beams = &
                var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
            extension_hepmc = var_list_get_sval ( &
                global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepmc"))
            call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_hepmc)
        end select
    case ("stdhep")
        allocate (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t :: eio)
        select type (eio)
        type is (eio_stdhep_hepevt_t)
            keep_beams = &
                var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
            extension_stdhep = var_list_get_sval ( &
                global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_stdhep"))
            call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_stdhep)
        end select
    case ("stdhep_up")

```

```

allocate (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_stdhep_hepeup_t)
  keep_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
  extension_stdhep_up = var_list_get_sval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_stdhep_up"))
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_stdhep_up)
end select
case ("ascii")
allocate (eio_ascii_ascii_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_ascii_t)
  keep_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
  extension_default = var_list_get_sval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_default"))
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_default)
end select
case ("athena")
allocate (eio_ascii_athena_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_athena_t)
  keep_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
  extension_athena = var_list_get_sval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_athena"))
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_athena)
end select
case ("debug")
allocate (eio_ascii_debug_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_debug_t)
  keep_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
  debug_extension = var_list_get_sval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("$debug_extension"))
  show_process = var_list_get_lval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_process"))
  show_transforms = var_list_get_lval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_transforms"))
  show_decay = var_list_get_lval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_decay"))
  verbose = var_list_get_lval ( &
    global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_verbose"))
  call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, debug_extension, &
    show_process, show_transforms, show_decay, verbose)
end select
case ("hepevt")
allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_t)
  keep_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))

```

```

        extension_hepevt = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepevt"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_hepevt)
    end select
case ("hepevt_verb")
    allocate (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_hepevt_verb_t)
        keep_beams = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
        extension_hepevt_verb = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_hepevt_verb"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_hepevt_verb)
    end select
case ("lha")
    allocate (eio_ascii_lha_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_t)
        keep_beams = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
        extension_lha = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_lha"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_lha)
    end select
case ("lha_verb")
    allocate (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_lha_verb_t)
        keep_beams = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
        extension_lha_verb = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_lha_verb"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_lha_verb)
    end select
case ("long")
    allocate (eio_ascii_long_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_long_t)
        keep_beams = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
        extension_ascii_long = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_ascii_long"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_ascii_long)
    end select
case ("mokka")
    allocate (eio_ascii_mokka_t :: eio)
    select type (eio)
    type is (eio_ascii_mokka_t)
        keep_beams = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
        extension_mokka = var_list_get_sval ( &
            global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_mokka"))
        call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_mokka)
    end select

```

```

case ("short")
  allocate (eio_ascii_short_t :: eio)
  select type (eio)
  type is (eio_ascii_short_t)
    keep_beams = &
      var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?keep_beams"))
    extension_ascii_short = var_list_get_sval ( &
      global%var_list, var_str ("$extension_ascii_short"))
    call eio%set_parameters (keep_beams, extension_ascii_short)
  end select
case ("weight_stream")
  allocate (eio_weights_t :: eio)
  select type (eio)
  type is (eio_weights_t)
    pacify = var_list_get_lval &
      (global%var_list, var_str ("?pacify"))
    call eio%set_parameters (pacify = pacify)
  end select
case default
  call msg_fatal ("Event I/O method ' ' // char (method) &
    // ' ' not implemented")
end select
call eio%set_fallback_model (global%fallback_model)
end subroutine dispatch_eio

```

#### 22.4.9 QCD coupling

Allocate the `alpha` (running coupling) component of the `qcd` block with a concrete implementation, depending on the variable settings in the `global` record.

If a fixed  $\alpha_s$  is requested, we do not allocate the `qcd%alpha` object. In this case, the matrix element code will just take the model parameter as-is, which implies fixed  $\alpha_s$ . If the object is allocated, the  $\alpha_s$  value is computed and updated for each matrix-element call.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
  public :: dispatch_qcd

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
  subroutine dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
    type(qcd_t), intent(inout) :: qcd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    logical :: fixed, from_mz, from_pdf_builtin, from_lhapdf, from_lambda_qcd
    real(default) :: mz, alpha_val, lambda
    integer :: nf, order, lhpdf_member
    type(string_t) :: pdfset, lhpdf_dir, lhpdf_file
    var_list => global%var_list
    fixed = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_is_fixed"))
    from_mz = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_mz"))
    from_pdf_builtin = &
      var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_pdf_builtin"))

```

```

from_lhapdf = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lhapdf"))
from_lambda_qcd = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lambda_qcd"))
pdfset = &
    var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("pdf_builtin_set"))
lambda = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("lambda_qcd"))
nf = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_nf"))
order = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_order"))
lhpdf_dir = &
    var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_dir"))
lhpdf_file = &
    var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_file"))
lhpdf_member = &
    var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("lhpdf_member"))
var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
if (var_list_exists (var_list, var_str ("mZ"))) then
    mz = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("mZ"))
else
    mz = MZ_REF
end if
if (var_list_exists (var_list, var_str ("alphas"))) then
    alpha_val = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("alphas"))
else
    alpha_val = ALPHA_QCD_MZ_REF
end if
if (allocated (qcd%alpha)) deallocate (qcd%alpha)
if (from_lhapdf .and. from_pdf_builtin) then
    call msg_fatal (" Mixing alphas evolution", &
        [var_str (" from LHAPDF and builtin PDF is not permitted")])
end if
select case (count ([from_mz, from_pdf_builtin, from_lhapdf, from_lambda_qcd]))
case (0)
    if (fixed) then
        allocate (alpha_qcd_fixed_t :: qcd%alpha)
    else
        call msg_fatal ("QCD alpha: no calculation mode set")
    end if
case (2:)
    call msg_fatal ("QCD alpha: calculation mode is ambiguous")
case (1)
    if (fixed) then
        call msg_fatal ("QCD alpha: use '?alpha_s_is_fixed = false' for " // &
            "running alphas")
    else if (from_mz) then
        allocate (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t :: qcd%alpha)
    else if (from_pdf_builtin) then
        allocate (alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t :: qcd%alpha)
    else if (from_lhapdf) then
        allocate (alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t :: qcd%alpha)
    else if (from_lambda_qcd) then

```

```

        allocate (alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t :: qcd%alpha)
    end if
    call msg_message ("QCD alpha: using a running strong coupling")
end select
select type (alpha => qcd%alpha)
type is (alpha_qcd_fixed_t)
    alpha%val = alpha_val
type is (alpha_qcd_from_scale_t)
    alpha%mu_ref = mz
    alpha%ref = alpha_val
    alpha%order = order
    alpha%nf = nf
type is (alpha_qcd_from_lambda_t)
    alpha%lambda = lambda
    alpha%order = order
    alpha%nf = nf
type is (alpha_qcd_pdf_builtin_t)
    call alpha%init (global%pdf_builtin_status, pdfset, &
        global%os_data%pdf_builtin_datapath)
type is (alpha_qcd_lhapdf_t)
    call alpha%init (global%lhpdf_status, lhpdf_file, &
        lhpdf_member, lhpdf_dir)
end select
end subroutine dispatch_qcd

```

#### 22.4.10 Parton Shower

Transfer the settings and parameters for shower and hadronization from the global object to the shower\_settings object.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_shower

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_shower (shower_settings, global)
        class(shower_settings_t), intent(inout) :: shower_settings
        type(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
        var_list => global%var_list
        call shower_settings%init (var_list)
    end subroutine dispatch_shower

```

#### 22.4.11 Event Transform

An event transform is responsible for dressing a partonic event. Since event transforms are not mutually exclusive but are concatenated, we provide individual dispatchers for each of them.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_evt_decay
    public :: dispatch_evt_shower

```

```

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
subroutine dispatch_evt_decay (evt, global)
  class(evt_t), intent(out), pointer :: evt
  type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
  logical :: allow_decays
  allow_decays = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?allow_decays"))
  if (allow_decays) then
    allocate (evt_decay_t :: evt)
    call msg_message ("Simulate: activating decays")
  else
    evt => null ()
  end if
end subroutine dispatch_evt_decay

subroutine dispatch_evt_shower (evt, global, process)
  class(evt_t), intent(out), pointer :: evt
  type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
  type(process_t), intent(in), optional, target :: process
  logical :: allow_shower
  type(shower_settings_t) :: settings
  allow_shower = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?allow_shower"))
  if (allow_shower) then
    allocate (evt_shower_t :: evt)
    call msg_message ("Simulate: activating parton shower")
    call dispatch_shower (settings, global)
    if (settings%mlm_matching) &
      call msg_message ("Simulate: applying MLM matching")
    if (settings%ckkw_matching) &
      call msg_warning ("Simulate: CKKW(-L) matching not yet supported")
    if (settings%hadronization_active) &
      call msg_message ("Simulate: applying hadronization")
    select type (evt)
    type is (evt_shower_t)
      call evt%init (settings, global%fallback_model, global%os_data)
      if (present (process)) &
        call evt%setup_pdf (process, global%beam_structure)
    end select
  else
    evt => null ()
  end if
end subroutine dispatch_evt_shower

```

## 22.4.12 SLHA Interface

This is a container for the settings for the SLHA Interface

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
  public :: dispatch_slha

<Dispatch: procedures>+≡
subroutine dispatch_slha (global, input, spectrum, decays)
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global

```



```

logical, intent(out) :: input, spectrum, decays
input = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?slha_read_input"))
spectrum = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?slha_read_spectrum"))
decays = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?slha_read_decays"))
end subroutine dispatch_slha

```

### 22.4.13 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Dispatch: public>+≡
    public :: dispatch_test

<Dispatch: tests>≡
    subroutine dispatch_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Dispatch: execute tests>
    end subroutine dispatch_test

```

#### Select type: process definition

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>≡
    call test (dispatch_1, "dispatch_1", &
        "process configuration method", &
        u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t), dimension(2) :: prt_in, prt_out
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select process configuration method"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)

        prt_in = [var_str ("a"), var_str ("b")]
        prt_out = [var_str ("c"), var_str ("d")]

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate core_def as prc_test_def"

        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
            var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
        call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)
    end subroutine dispatch_1

```

```

select type (core_def)
type is (prc_test_def_t)
    call core_def%write (u)
end select

deallocate (core_def)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate core_def as omega_def"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
    var_str ("omega"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)
select type (core_def)
type is (omega_def_t)
    call core_def%write (u)
end select

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_1"

end subroutine dispatch_1

```

### Select type: process core

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
    call test (dispatch_2, "dispatch_2", &
        "process core", &
        u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t), dimension(2) :: prt_in, prt_out
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
        class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select process configuration method"
        write (u, "(A)")  "                and allocate process core"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()

        prt_in = [var_str ("a"), var_str ("b")]
        prt_out = [var_str ("c"), var_str ("d")]

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate core as test_t"
    end subroutine dispatch_2

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)
call dispatch_core (core, core_def)
select type (core)
type is (test_t)
    call core%write (u)
end select

deallocate (core)
deallocate (core_def)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate core as prc_omega_t"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("omega"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)

call global%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?helicity_selection_active"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("helicity_selection_threshold"), &
    1e9_default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("helicity_selection_cutoff"), &
    10, is_known = .true.)

call dispatch_core (core, core_def, &
    global%model, global%get_helicity_selection ())
call core_def%allocate_driver (core%driver, var_str (""))

select type (core)
type is (prc_omega_t)
    call core%write (u)
end select

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_2"

end subroutine dispatch_2

```

## Select type: integrator core

```
<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
  call test (dispatch_3, "dispatch_3", &
    "integration method", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
  subroutine dispatch_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci
    type(string_t) :: process_id

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select integration method"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call global%global_init ()
    process_id = "dispatch_3"

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate MCI as midpoint_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("integration_method"), &
      var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
    call dispatch_mci (mci, global, process_id)
    select type (mci)
    type is (mci_midpoint_t)
      call mci%write (u)
    end select

    call mci%final ()
    deallocate (mci)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate MCI as vamp_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("integration_method"), &
      var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("threshold_calls"), &
      1, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_channel"), &
      2, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("min_calls_per_bin"), &
      3, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("min_bins"), &
      4, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("max_bins"), &
      5, is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?stratified"), &
      .false., is_known = .true.)
```

```

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("channel_weights_power"), &
    4._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?vamp_history_global_verbosity"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?vamp_history_channels"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?vamp_history_channels_verbosity"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?stratified"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call dispatch_mci (mci, global, process_id)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%write (u)
    call mci%write_history_parameters (u)
end select

call mci%final ()
deallocate (mci)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate MCI as vamp_t, allow for negative weights"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?negative_weights"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)

call dispatch_mci (mci, global, process_id)
select type (mci)
type is (mci_vamp_t)
    call mci%write (u)
    call mci%write_history_parameters (u)
end select

call mci%final ()
deallocate (mci)

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_3"

end subroutine dispatch_3

```

## Select type: phase-space configuration object

```
<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
  call test (dispatch_4, "dispatch_4", &
    "phase-space configuration", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
  subroutine dispatch_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs
    type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
    type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defs

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select phase-space configuration method"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call global%global_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate PHS as phs_single_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("phs_method"), &
      var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
    call dispatch_phs (phs, global, var_str ("dispatch_4"))
    call phs%write (u)

    call phs%final ()
    deallocate (phs)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate PHS as phs_wood_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("phs_method"), &
      var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
    call dispatch_phs (phs, global, var_str ("dispatch_4"))
    call phs%write (u)

    call phs%final ()
    deallocate (phs)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Setting parameters for phs_wood_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    phs_par%m_threshold_s = 123
    phs_par%m_threshold_t = 456
    phs_par%t_channel = 42
    phs_par%off_shell = 17
    phs_par%keep_nonresonant = .false.
```

```

mapping_defs%energy_scale = 987
mapping_defs%invariant_mass_scale = 654
mapping_defs%momentum_transfer_scale = 321
mapping_defs%step_mapping = .false.
mapping_defs%step_mapping_exp = .false.
mapping_defs%enable_s_mapping = .true.
call dispatch_phs (phs, global, var_str ("dispatch_4"), &
    mapping_defs, phs_par)
call phs%write (u)

call phs%final ()

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_4"

end subroutine dispatch_4

```

### Select type: random number generator

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
call test (dispatch_5, "dispatch_5", &
    "random-number generator", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
subroutine dispatch_5 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(rt_data_t), target :: global
class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_5"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select random-number generator"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate RNG factory as rng_test_factory_t"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("rng_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("seed"), 1, is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
call rng_factory%write (u)
deallocate (rng_factory)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate RNG factory as rng_tao_factory_t"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("rng_method"), &
    var_str ("tao"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
call rng_factory%write (u)
deallocate (rng_factory)

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_5"

end subroutine dispatch_5

```

## Phase-space configuration with file

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
call test (dispatch_6, "dispatch_6", &
    "configure phase space using file", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
subroutine dispatch_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(os_data_t) :: os_data
    type(process_constants_t) :: process_data
    class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs
    integer :: u_phs

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select 'wood' phase-space &
        &for a test process"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* and read phs configuration from file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize a process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call global%global_init ()

    call os_data_init (os_data)
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))

    call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

    call init_test_process_data (var_str ("dispatch_6"), process_data)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Write phase-space file"

    u_phs = free_unit ()

```



```

open (u_phs, file = "dispatch_6.phs", action = "write", status = "replace")
call write_test_phs_file (u_phs, var_str ("dispatch_6"))
close (u_phs)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate PHS as phs_wood_t"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("phs_file"), &
    var_str ("dispatch_6.phs"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_phs (phs, global, var_str ("dispatch_6"))

call phs%init (process_data, global%model)
call phs%configure (sqrtts = 1000._default)

call phs%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
select type (phs)
type is (phs_wood_config_t)
    call phs%write_forest (u)
end select

call phs%final ()

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_6"

end subroutine dispatch_6

```

## Select type: structure-function data

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
    call test (dispatch_7, "dispatch_7", &
        "structure-function data", &
        u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_7 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        type(string_t) :: prt, sf_method
        type(sf_prop_t) :: sf_prop
        class(sf_data_t), allocatable :: data
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_in
        type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1,1) :: pdg_prc

```

```

type(pdg_array_t), dimension(1) :: pdg_out
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg1

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_7"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select and configure &
                  &structure function data"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%global_init ()

call os_data_init (os_data)
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), var_str ("QCD.mdl"))

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
                      14000._default, is_known = .true.)
prt = "p"
call global%beam_structure%init_sf ([prt, prt], [1])
pdg_in = 2212

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Initialized = ", &
      pdf_builtin_status_is_initialized (global%pdf_builtin_status)
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate data as sf_pdf_builtin_t"
write (u, "(A)")

sf_method = "pdf_builtin"
call dispatch_sf_data &
      (data, sf_method, [1], sf_prop, global, pdg_in, pdg_prc)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Initialized = ", &
      pdf_builtin_status_is_initialized (global%pdf_builtin_status)
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,99(1x,I0))") "PDG(out) = ", pdg1

deallocate (data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Reset and allocate data for different PDF set"
write (u, "(A)")

call pdf_builtin_status_reset (global%pdf_builtin_status)
pdg_in = 2212

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Initialized = ", &
      pdf_builtin_status_is_initialized (global%pdf_builtin_status)
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("pdf_builtin_set"), &
    var_str ("CTEQ6M"), is_known = .true.)
sf_method = "pdf_builtin"
call dispatch_sf_data &
    (data, sf_method, [1], sf_prop, global, pdg_in, pdg_prc)
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "Initialized = ", &
    pdf_builtin_status_is_initialized (global%pdf_builtin_status)
call data%get_pdg_out (pdg_out)
pdg1 = pdg_out(1)
write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(1x,A,99(1x,I0))") "PDG(out) = ", pdg1

deallocate (data)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: dispatch_7"

end subroutine dispatch_7

```

## Beam structure

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
call test (dispatch_8, "dispatch_8", &
    "beam structure", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
subroutine dispatch_8 (u)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(os_data_t) :: os_data
type(flavor_t), dimension(2) :: flv
type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
type(sf_prop_t) :: sf_prop
type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_channel
type(phs_channel_collection_t) :: coll
type(string_t) :: sf_string
integer :: i
type(pdg_array_t), dimension (2,1) :: pdg_prc

write (u, "(A)") "* Test output: dispatch_8"
write (u, "(A)") "* Purpose: configure a structure-function chain"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%global_init ()

call os_data_init (os_data)

```

```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%read_model (var_str ("QCD"), var_str ("QCD.mdl"))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate LHC beams with PDF builtin"
write (u, "(A)")

call flavor_init (flv(1), PROTON, global%model)
call flavor_init (flv(2), PROTON, global%model)

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    14000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("pdf_builtin"))

call dispatch_sf_config (sf_config, sf_prop, global, pdg_prc)
do i = 1, size (sf_config)
    call sf_config(i)%write (u)
end do

call dispatch_sf_channels (sf_channel, sf_string, sf_prop, coll, global)
write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Mapping configuration:"
do i = 1, size (sf_channel)
    write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")
    call sf_channel(i)%write (u)
end do

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate ILC beams with CIRCE1"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%read_model (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"))
call flavor_init (flv(1), ELECTRON, global%model)
call flavor_init (flv(2), -ELECTRON, global%model)

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    500._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?circe1_generate"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("circe1"))

call dispatch_sf_config (sf_config, sf_prop, global, pdg_prc)
do i = 1, size (sf_config)
    call sf_config(i)%write (u)
end do

call dispatch_sf_channels (sf_channel, sf_string, sf_prop, coll, global)
write (u, "(1x,A)")  "Mapping configuration:"
do i = 1, size (sf_channel)
    write (u, "(2x)", advance = "no")

```

```

        call sf_channel(i)%write (u)
    end do

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call global%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_8"

end subroutine dispatch_8

```

## Event I/O

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
    call test (dispatch_9, "dispatch_9", &
        "event I/O", &
        u, results)
<Dispatch: tests>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_9 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_9"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: allocate an event I/O (eio) stream"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()
        call global%init_fallback_model &
            (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as raw"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("raw"), global)

        call eio%write (u)

        call eio%final ()
        deallocate (eio)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as checkpoints:"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("checkpoint"), global)

        call eio%write (u)

```

```

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as LHEF:"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("lhef_extension"), &
    var_str ("lhe_custom"), is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("lhef"), global)

call eio%write (u)

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as HepMC:"
write (u, "(A)")

call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("hepmc"), global)

call eio%write (u)

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as weight_stream"
write (u, "(A)")

call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("weight_stream"), global)

call eio%write (u)

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate as debug format"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?debug_verbose"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_eio (eio, var_str ("debug"), global)

call eio%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call global%final ()

```

```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: dispatch_9"

end subroutine dispatch_9

```

## Update process core parameters

This test dispatches a process core, temporarily modifies parameters, then restores the original.

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
  call test (dispatch_10, "dispatch_10", &
    "process core update", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
  subroutine dispatch_10 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t), dimension(2) :: prt_in, prt_out
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core, saved_core
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list

    write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: dispatch_10"
    write (u, "(A)")  "** Purpose: select process configuration method,"
    write (u, "(A)")  "          allocate process core,"
    write (u, "(A)")  "          temporarily reset parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

    prt_in = [var_str ("a"), var_str ("b")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("c"), var_str ("d")]

    write (u, "(A)")  "** Allocate core as prc_omega_t"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
      var_str ("omega"), is_known = .true.)
    call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_in, prt_out, global)

    call global%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))

    call dispatch_core (core, core_def, global%model)
    call core_def%allocate_driver (core%driver, var_str (""))

    select type (core)
    type is (prc_omega_t)
      call core%write (u)
    end select

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Update core with modified model and helicity selection"
write (u, "(A)")

var_list => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
call var_list_set_real (var_list, var_str ("gy"), 2._default, &
    is_known = .true.)
call model_parameters_update (global%model)

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?helicity_selection_active"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("helicity_selection_threshold"), &
    2e10_default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("helicity_selection_cutoff"), &
    5, is_known = .true.)

call dispatch_core_update (core, global%model, &
    global%get_helicity_selection (), &
    saved_core = saved_core)
select type (core)
type is (prc_omega_t)
    call core%write (u)
end select

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Restore core from save"
write (u, "(A)")

call dispatch_core_restore (core, saved_core)
select type (core)
type is (prc_omega_t)
    call core%write (u)
end select

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_10"

end subroutine dispatch_10

```

## QCD Coupling

This test dispatches an qcd object, which is used to compute the (running) coupling by one of several possible methods.

```

(Dispatch: execute tests) +=
    call test (dispatch_11, "dispatch_11", &

```



```

        "QCD coupling", &
        u, results)
    (Dispatch: tests)+≡
    subroutine dispatch_11 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(qcd_t) :: qcd
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_11"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: select QCD coupling formula"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()
        call global%read_model (var_str ("SM"), var_str ("SM.mdl"))
        model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate alpha_s as fixed"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_is_fixed"), &
            .true., is_known = .true.)
        call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
        call qcd%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate alpha_s as running (built-in)"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_is_fixed"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_mz"), &
            .true., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_int &
            (global%var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_order"), 1, is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_real &
            (model_vars, var_str ("alphas"), 0.1234_default, &
            is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_real &
            (model_vars, var_str ("mZ"), 91.234_default, &
            is_known=.true.)
        call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
        call qcd%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate alpha_s as running (built-in, Lambda defined)"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_mz"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
            var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lambda_qcd"), &
            .true., is_known = .true.)

```

```

call var_list_set_real &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("lambda_qcd"), 250.e-3_default, &
   is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_order"), 2, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("alpha_s_nf"), 4, is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
call qcd%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate alpha_s as running (using builtin PDF set)"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
  var_str ("?alpha_s_from_lambda_qcd"), &
  .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log &
  (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_from_pdf_builtin"), &
  .true., is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
call qcd%write (u)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_11"

end subroutine dispatch_11

```

## Shower settings

This test dispatches an `shower_settings` object, which is used to steer the initial and final state.

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
  call test (dispatch_12, "dispatch_12", &
    "Shower settings", &
    u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
  subroutine dispatch_12 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(shower_settings_t) :: shower_settings

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_12"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: setting ISR/FSR shower"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Default settings"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call global%global_init ()
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?alpha_s_is_fixed"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_shower (shower_settings, global)
call write_separator (u)
call shower_settings%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Switch on ISR/FSR showers, hadronization"
write (u, "(A)")  "          and MLM matching"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_active"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_active"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?hadronization_active"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?mlm_matching"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("ps_max_n_flavors"), 4, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("ps_isr_z_cutoff"), 0.1234_default, &
    is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("mlm_etamax"), 3.456_default, is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("ps_PYTHIA_PYGIVE"), var_str ("abcdefgh"), is_known=.true.)
call dispatch_shower (shower_settings, global)
call write_separator (u)
call shower_settings%write (u)
call write_separator (u)

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_12"

end subroutine dispatch_12

```

## Event transforms

This test dispatches an `evt` (event transform) object. Currently, the only non-trivial transform is the partonic decay chain..

```

<Dispatch: execute tests>+≡
    call test (dispatch_13, "dispatch_13", &
        "event transforms", &
        u, results)

<Dispatch: tests>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_13 (u)

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: u
type(rt_data_t), target :: global
class(evt_t), pointer :: evt

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_13"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: configure event transform"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Partonic decays"
write (u, "(A)")

call dispatch_evt_decay (evt, global)
select type (evt)
type is (evt_decay_t)
    call evt%write (u, show_decay_tree = .true., verbose = .true.)
end select

call evt%final ()
deallocate (evt)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Shower"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?allow_shower"), .true., &
    is_known = .true.)
call dispatch_evt_shower (evt, global)
select type (evt)
type is (evt_shower_t)
    call evt%write (u)
    call write_separator_double (u)
end select

call evt%final ()
deallocate (evt)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_13"

end subroutine dispatch_13

```

## SLHA interface

This rather trivial sets all input values for the SLHA interface to false.

*(Dispatch: execute tests)*+≡

```

call test (dispatch_14, "dispatch_14", &
          "SLHA interface", &
          u, results)
<Dispatch: tests>+≡
subroutine dispatch_14 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  logical :: input, spectrum, decays

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: dispatch_14"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: SLHA interface settings"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Default settings"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call global%global_init ()
  call dispatch_slha (global, &
                     input = input, spectrum = spectrum, decays = decays)

  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_input      =", input
  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_spectrum   =", spectrum
  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_decays     =", decays

  call global%final ()
  call global%global_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Set all entries to [false]"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_input"), &
                        .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_spectrum"), &
                        .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?slha_read_decays"), &
                        .false., is_known = .true.)

  call dispatch_slha (global, &
                     input = input, spectrum = spectrum, decays = decays)

  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_input      =", input
  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_spectrum   =", spectrum
  write (u, "(A,1x,L1)") " slha_read_decays     =", decays

  call global%final ()

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: dispatch_14"

end subroutine dispatch_14

```

## 22.5 Process Configuration

This module communicates between the toplevel command structure with its runtime data set and the process-library handling modules which collect the definition of individual processes. Its primary purpose is to select from the available matrix-element generating methods and configure the entry in the process library accordingly.

```
<process_configurations.f90>≡  
  <File header>  
  
  module process_configurations  
  
    <Use strings>  
    use diagnostics !NODEP!  
    use unit_tests  
    use variables  
    use models  
    use prc_core_def  
    use particle_specifiers  
    use process_libraries  
    use prclib_stacks  
    use prc_test  
    use prc_omega  
    use rt_data  
    use dispatch  
  
    <Standard module head>  
  
    <Process configurations: public>  
  
    <Process configurations: types>  
  
    contains  
  
    <Process configurations: procedures>  
  
    <Process configurations: tests>  
  
  end module process_configurations
```

### 22.5.1 Data Type

```
<Process configurations: public>≡  
  public :: process_configuration_t  
  
<Process configurations: types>≡  
  type :: process_configuration_t  
    type(process_def_entry_t), pointer :: entry => null ()  
    type(string_t) :: id  
    integer :: num_id = 0  
  contains  
    <Process configurations: process configuration: TBP>  
  end type process_configuration_t
```

Initialize a process. We only need the name, the number of incoming particles, and the number of components.

```

(Process configurations: process configuration: TBP)≡
  procedure :: init => process_configuration_init

(Process configurations: procedures)≡
  subroutine process_configuration_init &
    (config, prc_name, n_in, n_components, global)
    class(process_configuration_t), intent(out) :: config
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: prc_name
    integer, intent(in) :: n_in
    integer, intent(in) :: n_components
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    model => global%model
    config%id = prc_name
    allocate (config%entry)
    if (var_list_is_known (global%var_list, var_str ("process_num_id"))) then
      config%num_id = &
        var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, var_str ("process_num_id"))
      call config%entry%init (prc_name, &
        model = model, n_in = n_in, n_components = n_components, &
        num_id = config%num_id)
    else
      call config%entry%init (prc_name, &
        model = model, n_in = n_in, n_components = n_components)
    end if
  end subroutine process_configuration_init

```

Initialize a process component. The details depend on the process method, which determines the type of the process component core. We set the incoming and outgoing particles (as strings, to be interpreted by the process driver). All other information is taken from the variable list.

The dispatcher gets only the names of the particles. The process component definition gets the complete specifiers which contains a polarization flag and names of decay processes, where applicable.

```

(Process configurations: process configuration: TBP)+≡
  procedure :: setup_component => process_configuration_setup_component

(Process configurations: procedures)+≡
  subroutine process_configuration_setup_component &
    (config, i_component, prt_in, prt_out, global)
    class(process_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: config
    integer, intent(in) :: i_component
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_in
    type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: prt_out
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_str_in
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_str_out
    class(prc_core_def_t), allocatable :: core_def
    type(string_t) :: method
    integer :: i
    allocate (prt_str_in (size (prt_in)))
    allocate (prt_str_out (size (prt_out)))

```

```

forall (i = 1:size (prt_in)) prt_str_in(i) = prt_in(i)% get_name ()
forall (i = 1:size (prt_out)) prt_str_out(i) = prt_out(i)%get_name ()
call dispatch_core_def (core_def, prt_str_in, prt_str_out, global)
method = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str (" $method"))
call config%entry%import_component (i_component, &
    n_out = size (prt_out), &
    prt_in = prt_in, &
    prt_out = prt_out, &
    method = method, &
    variant = core_def)
end subroutine process_configuration_setup_component

```

Record a process configuration: append it to the currently selected process definition library.

```

<Process configurations: process configuration: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: record => process_configuration_record

<Process configurations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine process_configuration_record (config, global)
        class(process_configuration_t), intent(inout) :: config
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
        if (associated (global%prclib)) then
            call global%prclib%open ()
            call global%prclib%append (config%entry)
            if (config%num_id /= 0) then
                write (msg_buffer, "(5A,I0,A)") "Process library '", &
                    char (global%prclib%get_name ()), &
                    "' : recorded process '", char (config%id), "' (" , &
                    config%num_id, ")"
            else
                write (msg_buffer, "(5A)") "Process library '", &
                    char (global%prclib%get_name ()), &
                    "' : recorded process '", char (config%id), "'"
            end if
            call msg_message ()
        else
            call msg_fatal ("Recording process '" // char (config%id) &
                // "' : active process library undefined")
        end if
    end subroutine process_configuration_record

```

## 22.5.2 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Process configurations: public>+≡
    public :: process_configurations_test

<Process configurations: tests>≡
    subroutine process_configurations_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        <Process configurations: execute tests>
    end subroutine process_configurations_test

```



## Minimal setup

The workflow for setting up a minimal process configuration with the test matrix element method.

We wrap this in a public procedure, so we can reuse it in later modules. The procedure prepares a process definition list for two processes (one `prc_test` and one `omega` type) and appends this to the process library stack in the global data set.

The `mode` argument determines which processes to build.

The `procname` argument replaces the predefined `procname(s)`.

*(Process configurations: public)*+≡

```
public :: prepare_test_library
```

*(Process configurations: tests)*+≡

```
subroutine prepare_test_library (global, libname, mode, procname)
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
  integer, intent(in) :: mode
  type(string_t), intent(in), dimension(:), optional :: procname

  type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
  type(string_t) :: prc_name
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
  integer :: n_components
  type(process_configuration_t) :: prc_config

  allocate (lib)
  call lib%init (libname)
  call global%add_prclib (lib)

  if (btest (mode, 0) .or. btest (mode, 2)) then
    call global%read_model (var_str ("Test"), var_str ("Test.mdl"))
  end if

  if (btest (mode, 1)) then
    call global%read_model (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"))
  end if

  if (btest (mode, 0)) then

    call global%select_model (var_str ("Test"))

    if (present (procname)) then
      prc_name = procname(1)
    else
      prc_name = "prc_config_a"
    end if
    n_components = 1
    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("s"), var_str ("s")]
  end if
end subroutine
```

```

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"),&
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)

call prc_config%init (prc_name, size (prt_in), n_components, global)
call prc_config%setup_component (1, &
    new_prt_spec (prt_in), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)
call prc_config%record (global)

deallocate (prt_in, prt_out)

end if

if (btest (mode, 1)) then

    call global%select_model (var_str ("QED"))

    if (present (procname)) then
        prc_name = procname(2)
    else
        prc_name = "prc_config_b"
    end if
    n_components = 1
    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("e+"), var_str ("e-")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("m+"), var_str ("m-")]

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"),&
        var_str ("omega"), is_known = .true.)

    call prc_config%init (prc_name, size (prt_in), n_components, global)
    call prc_config%setup_component (1, &
        new_prt_spec (prt_in), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)
    call prc_config%record (global)

    deallocate (prt_in, prt_out)

end if

if (btest (mode, 2)) then

    call global%select_model (var_str ("Test"))

    if (present (procname)) then
        prc_name = procname(1)
    else
        prc_name = "prc_config_a"
    end if
    n_components = 1
    allocate (prt_in (1), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("s")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("f"), var_str ("fbar")]

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"),&

```

```

        var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)

    call prc_config%init (prc_name, size (prt_in), n_components, global)
    call prc_config%setup_component (1, &
        new_prt_spec (prt_in), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)
    call prc_config%record (global)

    deallocate (prt_in, prt_out)

end if

end subroutine prepare_test_library

```

The actual test: the previous procedure with some prelude and postlude. In the global variable list, just before printing we reset the variables where the value may depend on the system and run environment.

```

<Process configurations: execute tests>≡
    call test (process_configurations_1, "process_configurations_1", &
        "test processes", &
        u, results)

<Process configurations: tests>+≡
    subroutine process_configurations_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_configurations_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: configure test processes"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure processes as prc_test, model Test"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*                               and omega, model QED"
        write (u, *)

        call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("process_num_id"), &
            42, is_known = .true.)
        call prepare_test_library (global, var_str ("prc_config_lib_1"), 3)

        global%os_data%fc = "Fortran-compiler"
        global%os_data%fcflags = "Fortran-flags"

        call global%write_libraries (u)

        call global%final ()
        call syntax_model_file_final ()

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_configurations_1"

```

```
end subroutine process_configurations_1
```

## O'MEGA options

Slightly extended example where we pass O'MEGA options to the library. The `prepare_test_library` contents are spelled out.

```
(Process configurations: execute tests)+≡
  call test (process_configurations_2, "process_configurations_2", &
    "omega options", &
    u, results)

(Process configurations: tests)+≡
  subroutine process_configurations_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global

    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
    type(string_t) :: prc_name
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in, prt_out
    integer :: n_components
    type(process_configuration_t) :: prc_config

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: process_configurations_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: configure test processes with options"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Configure processes as omega, model QED"
    write (u, *)

    libname = "prc_config_lib_2"

    allocate (lib)
    call lib%init (libname)
    call global%add_prclib (lib)

    call global%read_model (var_str ("QED"), var_str ("QED.mdl"))

    prc_name = "prc_config_c"
    n_components = 2
    allocate (prt_in (2), prt_out (2))
    prt_in = [var_str ("e+"), var_str ("e-")]
    prt_out = [var_str ("m+"), var_str ("m-")]

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
      var_str ("omega"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
      .false., is_known = .true.)
```

```

call prc_config%init (prc_name, size (prt_in), n_components, global)

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?report_progress"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call prc_config%setup_component (1, &
    new_prt_spec (prt_in), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?report_progress"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_omp"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("restrictions"), &
    var_str ("3+4~A"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("omega_flags"), &
    var_str ("-fusion:progress_file omega_prc_config.log"), &
    is_known = .true.)
call prc_config%setup_component (2, &
    new_prt_spec (prt_in), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)

call prc_config%record (global)

deallocate (prt_in, prt_out)

global%os_data%fc = "Fortran-compiler"
global%os_data%fcflags = "Fortran-flags"

call global%write_vars (u, [ &
    var_str ("model_name"), &
    var_str ("method"), &
    var_str ("?report_progress"), &
    var_str ("restrictions"), &
    var_str ("omega_flags")])
write (u, "(A)")
call global%write_libraries (u)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: process_configurations_2"

end subroutine process_configurations_2

```

## 22.6 Compilation

This module manages compilation and loading of process libraries. It is needed as a separate module because integration depends on it.

`<compilations.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```

module compilations

  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use limits, only: TAB !NODEP!
  use os_interface
  use unit_tests
  use md5
  use variables
  use models
  use process_libraries
  use prclib_stacks
  use rt_data
  use process_configurations

  <Standard module head>

  <Compilations: public>

  <Compilations: types>

  contains

  <Compilations: procedures>

  <Compilations: tests>

end module compilations

```

### 22.6.1 The data type

The compilation item handles the compilation and loading of a single process library.

```

<Compilations: types>≡
  type :: compilation_item_t
    type(string_t) :: libname
    type(process_library_t), pointer :: lib => null ()
    logical :: recompile_library = .false.
  contains
    <Compilations: compilation item: TBP>
  end type compilation_item_t

```

Initialize:

```

<Compilations: compilation item: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => compilation_item_init

<Compilations: procedures>≡
  subroutine compilation_item_init (comp, libname, stack, var_list)
    class(compilation_item_t), intent(out) :: comp
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
    type(prclib_stack_t), intent(inout) :: stack
    type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
  end subroutine

```

```

comp%libname = libname
comp%lib => stack%get_library_ptr (comp%libname)
if (.not. associated (comp%lib)) then
    call msg_fatal ("Process library '" // char (comp%libname) &
        // "' has not been declared.")
end if
comp%recompile_library = &
    var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?recompile_library"))
end subroutine compilation_item_init

```

Compile the current library. The force flag has the effect that we first delete any previous files, as far as accessible by the current makefile. It also guarantees that previous files not accessible by a makefile will be overwritten.

*<Compilations: compilation item: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: compile => compilation_item_compile

```

*<Compilations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine compilation_item_compile (comp, os_data, force, recompile)
class(compilation_item_t), intent(inout) :: comp
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
logical, intent(in) :: force, recompile
if (associated (comp%lib)) then
    call msg_message ("Process library '" &
        // char (comp%libname) // "': compiling ...")
    call comp%lib%configure (os_data)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call comp%lib%compute_md5sum ()
    call comp%lib%write_makefile (os_data, force)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (force) then
        call comp%lib%clean (os_data, distclean = .false.)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end if
    call comp%lib%write_driver (force)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    if (recompile) then
        call comp%lib%load (os_data, keep_old_source = .true.)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end if
    call comp%lib%update_status (os_data)
end if
end subroutine compilation_item_compile

```

Load the current library, just after compiling it.

*<Compilations: compilation item: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: load => compilation_item_load

```

*<Compilations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine compilation_item_load (comp, os_data)
class(compilation_item_t), intent(inout) :: comp
type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
if (associated (comp%lib)) then
    call comp%lib%load (os_data)
end if

```

```
end subroutine compilation_item_load
```

Message as a separate call:

```
<Compilations: compilation item: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: success => compilation_item_success

<Compilations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine compilation_item_success (comp)
    class(compilation_item_t), intent(in) :: comp
    if (associated (comp%lib)) then
      call msg_message ("Process library '" // char (comp%libname) &
        // "': ... success.")
    end if
  end subroutine compilation_item_success
```

## 22.6.2 API for library compilation and loading

This is a shorthand for compiling and loading a single library. The `compilation_item` object is used only internally.

The `global` data set may actually be local to the caller. The compilation affects the library specified by its name if it is on the stack, but it does not reset the currently selected library.

```
<Compilations: public>≡
  public :: compile_library

<Compilations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine compile_library (libname, global)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: libname
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(compilation_item_t) :: comp
    logical :: force, recompile
    force = &
      var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_library"))
    recompile = &
      var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?recompile_library"))
    call comp%init (libname, global%prclib_stack, global%var_list)
    call comp%compile (global%os_data, force, recompile)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call comp%load (global%os_data)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call comp%success ()
  end subroutine compile_library
```

## 22.6.3 Compiling static executable

This object handles the creation of a static executable which should contain a set of static process libraries.

```
<Compilations: types>+≡
  type :: compilation_t
  private
```



```

        type(string_t) :: exe_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: lib_name
contains
    <Compilations: compilation: TBP>
end type compilation_t

```

Output.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => compilation_write
<Compilations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine compilation_write (object, unit)
        class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(1x,A)") "Compilation object:"
        write (u, "(3x,3A)") "executable      = '", &
            char (object%exe_name), "' "
        write (u, "(3x,A)", advance="no") "process libraries ="
        do i = 1, size (object%lib_name)
            write (u, "(1x,3A)", advance="no") "' ", char (object%lib_name(i)), "' "
        end do
        write (u, *)
    end subroutine compilation_write

```

Initialize: we know the names of the executable and of the libraries.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => compilation_init
<Compilations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine compilation_init (compilation, exe_name, lib_name)
        class(compilation_t), intent(out) :: compilation
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: exe_name
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: lib_name
        compilation%exe_name = exe_name
        allocate (compilation%lib_name (size (lib_name)))
        compilation%lib_name = lib_name
    end subroutine compilation_init

```

Write the dispatcher subroutine for the compiled libraries. Also write a subroutine which returns the names of the compiled libraries.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_dispatcher => compilation_write_dispatcher
<Compilations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine compilation_write_dispatcher (compilation)
        class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: compilation
        type(string_t) :: file
        integer :: u, i
        file = compilation%exe_name // "_prclib_dispatcher.f90"
        call msg_message ("Static executable '" // char (compilation%exe_name) &
            // "': writing library dispatcher")
        u = free_unit ()
    end subroutine compilation_write_dispatcher

```

```

open (u, file = char (file), status="replace", action="write")
write (u, "(3A)") " ! Whizard: process libraries for executable '", &
char (compilation%exe_name), "'"
write (u, "(A)") " ! Automatically generated file, do not edit"
write (u, "(A)") " subroutine dispatch_prclib_static " // &
"(driver, basename, modellibs_ldflags)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string"
write (u, "(A)") " use prclib_interfaces"
do i = 1, size (compilation%lib_name)
associate (lib_name => compilation%lib_name(i))
write (u, "(A)") " use " // char (lib_name) // "_driver"
end associate
end do
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " class(prclib_driver_t), intent(inout), allocatable &
&:: driver"
write (u, "(A)") " type(string_t), intent(in) :: basename"
write (u, "(A)") " logical, intent(in), optional :: " // &
"modellibs_ldflags"
write (u, "(A)") " select case (char (basename))"
do i = 1, size (compilation%lib_name)
associate (lib_name => compilation%lib_name(i))
write (u, "(3A)") " case ('', char (lib_name), '')"
write (u, "(3A)") " allocate (" , char (lib_name), "_driver_t &
&:: driver)"
end associate
end do
write (u, "(A)") " end select"
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine dispatch_prclib_static"
write (u, *)
write (u, "(A)") "subroutine get_prclib_static (libname)"
write (u, "(A)") " use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string"
write (u, "(A)") " implicit none"
write (u, "(A)") " type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), &
&allocatable :: libname"
write (u, "(A,IO,A)") " allocate (libname (" , &
size (compilation%lib_name), "))"
do i = 1, size (compilation%lib_name)
associate (lib_name => compilation%lib_name(i))
write (u, "(A,IO,A,A,A)") " libname(" , i, ") = '", &
char (lib_name), "'"
end associate
end do
write (u, "(A)") "end subroutine get_prclib_static"
close (u)
end subroutine compilation_write_dispatcher

```

Write the Makefile subroutine for the compiled libraries.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>+≡
procedure :: write_makefile => compilation_write_makefile

<Compilations: procedures>+≡
subroutine compilation_write_makefile (compilation, os_data)
class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: compilation

```

```

type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
type(string_t) :: file
integer :: u, i
file = compilation%exe_name // ".makefile"
call msg_message ("Static executable '" // char (compilation%exe_name) &
// "': writing makefile")
u = free_unit ()
open (u, file = char (file), status="replace", action="write")
write (u, "(3A)" "# WHIZARD: Makefile for executable '", &
char (compilation%exe_name), "'")
write (u, "(A)" "# Automatically generated file, do not edit")
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Executable name")
write (u, "(A)" "EXE = " // char (compilation%exe_name)
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Compiler")
write (u, "(A)" "FC = " // char (os_data%fc)
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Included libraries")
write (u, "(A)" "FCINCL = " // char (os_data%whizard_includes)
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Compiler flags")
write (u, "(A)" "FCFLAGS = " // char (os_data%fcflags)
write (u, "(A)" "LDFLAGS = " // char (os_data%ldflags)
write (u, "(A)" "LDFLAGS_STATIC = " // char (os_data%ldflags_static)
write (u, "(A)" "LDFLAGS_HEPMC = " // char (os_data%ldflags_hePMC)
write (u, "(A)" "LDFLAGS_HOPPET = " // char (os_data%ldflags_hoppet)
write (u, "(A)" "LDWHIZARD = " // char (os_data%whizard_ldflags)
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Libtool")
write (u, "(A)" "LIBTOOL = " // char (os_data%whizard_libtool)
write (u, "(A)" "FCOMPILE = $(LIBTOOL) --tag=FC --mode=compile"
write (u, "(A)" "LINK = $(LIBTOOL) --tag=FC --mode=link"
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Compile commands (default)")
write (u, "(A)" "LTF_COMPILE = $(FCOMPILE) $(FC) -c $(FCINCL) $(FCFLAGS)"
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Default target")
write (u, "(A)" "all: link")
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Libraries")
do i = 1, size (compilation%lib_name)
  associate (lib_name => compilation%lib_name(i))
    write (u, "(A)" "LIBRARIES += " // char (lib_name) // ".la"
    write (u, "(A)" char (lib_name) // ".la:"
    write (u, "(A)" TAB // "$(MAKE) -f " // char (lib_name) // ".makefile"
  end associate
end do
write (u, "(A)" "")
write (u, "(A)" "# Library dispatcher")
write (u, "(A)" "DISP = $(EXE)_prclib_dispatcher"
write (u, "(A)" "$(DISP).lo: $(DISP).f90 $(LIBRARIES)"
write (u, "(A)" TAB // "$(LTF_COMPILE) $<"
write (u, "(A)" "")

```

```

write (u, "(A)") "# Executable"
write (u, "(A)") "$ (EXE): $(DISP).lo $(LIBRARIES)"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "$ (LINK) $(FC) -static-libtool-libs $(FCFLAGS) \"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "    $(LDWHIZARD) $(LDFLAGS) $(LDFLAGS_STATIC) \"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "    -o $(EXE) $^ $(LDFLAGS_HEPMC) $(LDFLAGS_HOPPET)"
write (u, "(A)") ""
write (u, "(A)") "# Main targets"
write (u, "(A)") "link: compile $(EXE)"
write (u, "(A)") "compile: $(LIBRARIES) $(DISP).lo"
write (u, "(A)") ".PHONY: link compile"
write (u, "(A)") ""
write (u, "(A)") "# Cleanup targets"
write (u, "(A)") "clean-exe:"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(EXE)"
write (u, "(A)") "clean-objects:"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(DISP).lo"
write (u, "(A)") "clean-source:"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(DISP).f90"
write (u, "(A)") "clean-makefile:"
write (u, "(A)") TAB // "rm -f $(EXE).makefile"
write (u, "(A)") ""
write (u, "(A)") "clean: clean-exe clean-objects clean-source"
write (u, "(A)") "distclean: clean clean-makefile"
write (u, "(A)") ".PHONY: clean distclean"
close (u)
end subroutine compilation_write_makefile

```

Compile the dispatcher source code.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_compile => compilation_make_compile

<Compilations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine compilation_make_compile (compilation, os_data)
    class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: compilation
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    call os_system_call ("make compile " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // compilation%exe_name // ".makefile")
  end subroutine compilation_make_compile

```

Link the dispatcher together with all matrix-element code and the WHIZARD and O'MEGA main libraries, to generate a static executable.

```

<Compilations: compilation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: make_link => compilation_make_link

<Compilations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine compilation_make_link (compilation, os_data)
    class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: compilation
    type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
    call os_system_call ("make link " // os_data%makeflags &
      // " -f " // compilation%exe_name // ".makefile")
  end subroutine compilation_make_link

```

Cleanup.

```
(Compilations: compilation: TBP)+≡
    procedure :: make_clean_exe => compilation_make_clean_exe

(Compilations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine compilation_make_clean_exe (compilation, os_data)
        class(compilation_t), intent(in) :: compilation
        type(os_data_t), intent(in) :: os_data
        call os_system_call ("make clean-exe " // os_data%makeflags &
            // " -f " // compilation%exe_name // ".makefile")
    end subroutine compilation_make_clean_exe
```

## 22.6.4 API for executable compilation

This is a shorthand for compiling and loading an executable, including the enclosed libraries. The `compilation` object is used only internally.

The `global` data set may actually be local to the caller. The compilation affects the library specified by its name if it is on the stack, but it does not reset the currently selected library.

```
(Compilations: public)+≡
    public :: compile_executable

(Compilations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine compile_executable (exename, libname, global)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: exename
        type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: libname
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(compilation_t) :: compilation
        type(compilation_item_t) :: item
        logical :: force, recompile
        integer :: i
        force = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_library"))
        recompile = &
            var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?recompile_library"))
        call compilation%init (exename, [libname])
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call compilation%write_dispatcher ()
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call compilation%write_makefile (global%os_data)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        do i = 1, size (libname)
            call item%init (libname(i), global%prclib_stack, global%var_list)
            call item%compile (global%os_data, force=force, recompile=recompile)
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call item%success ()
        end do
        call compilation%make_compile (global%os_data)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        call compilation%make_link (global%os_data)
    end subroutine compile_executable
```

### 22.6.5 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```
<Compilations: public>+≡
    public :: compilations_test
<Compilations: tests>≡
    subroutine compilations_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        <Compilations: execute tests>
    end subroutine compilations_test
```

#### Intrinsic Matrix Element

Compile an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type).

Note: In this and the following test, we reset the Fortran compiler and flag variables immediately before they are printed, so the test is portable.

```
<Compilations: execute tests>≡
    call test (compilations_1, "compilations_1", &
        "intrinsic test processes", &
        u, results)
<Compilations: tests>+≡
    subroutine compilations_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: compilations_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: configure and compile test process"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()

        libname = "compilation_1"
        procname = "prc_comp_1"
        call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])

        call compile_library (libname, global)

        call global%write_libraries (u)

        call global%final ()
        call syntax_model_file_final ()

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: compilations_1"

    end subroutine compilations_1
```

## External Matrix Element

Compile an external test matrix element (omega type)

```
(Compilations: execute tests)+≡
    call test (compilations_2, "compilations_2", &
        "external process (omega)", &
        u, results)

(Compilations: tests)+≡
    subroutine compilations_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: compilations_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: configure and compile test process"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)

        libname = "compilation_2"
        procname = "prc_comp_2"
        call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 2, [procname,procname])

        call compile_library (libname, global)

        call global%write_libraries (u, libpath = .false.)

        call global%final ()
        call syntax_model_file_final ()

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: compilations_2"

    end subroutine compilations_2
```

## External Matrix Element

Compile an external test matrix element (omega type) and create driver files for a static executable.

```
(Compilations: execute tests)+≡
    call test (compilations_3, "compilations_3", &
        "static executable: driver", &
        u, results)

(Compilations: tests)+≡
    subroutine compilations_3 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname, exename
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
```

```

type(compilation_t) :: compilation
integer :: u_file
character(80) :: buffer

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: compilations_3"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: make static executable"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize library"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

libname = "compilations_3_lib"
procname = "prc_comp_3"
exename = "compilations_3"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 2, [procname,procname])

call compilation%init (exename, [libname])
call compilation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write dispatcher"
write (u, "(A)")

call compilation%write_dispatcher ()

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (exename) // "_prclib_dispatcher.f90", &
    status = "old", action = "read")
do
    read (u_file, "(A)", end = 1) buffer
    write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
1 close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write Makefile"
write (u, "(A)")

associate (os_data => global%os_data)
    os_data%fc = "fortran-compiler"
    os_data%whizard_includes = "my-includes"
    os_data%fcflags = "my-fcflags"
    os_data%ldflags = "my-ldflags"
    os_data%ldflags_static = "my-ldflags-static"
    os_data%ldflags_hepmc = "my-ldflags-hepmc"
    os_data%ldflags_hoppet = "my-ldflags-hoppet"
    os_data%whizard_ldflags = "my-ldwhizard"

```



```

        os_data%whizard_libtool = "my-libtool"
    end associate

    call compilation%write_makefile (global%os_data)

    open (u_file, file = char (exename) // ".makefile", &
        status = "old", action = "read")
    do
        read (u_file, "(A)", end = 2) buffer
        write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
2   close (u_file)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

    call global%final ()
    call syntax_model_file_final ()

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: compilations_3"

end subroutine compilations_3

```

## 22.6.6 Test static build

The tests for building a static executable are separate, since they should be skipped if the WHIZARD build itself has static libraries disabled.

```

<Compilations: public>+≡
    public :: compilations_static_test

<Compilations: tests>+≡
    subroutine compilations_static_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Compilations: static tests>
    end subroutine compilations_static_test

```

## External Matrix Element

Compile an external test matrix element (omega type) and incorporate this in a new static WHIZARD executable.

```

<Compilations: static tests>≡
    call test (compilations_static_1, "compilations_static_1", &
        "static executable: compilation", &
        u, results)

<Compilations: tests>+≡
    subroutine compilations_static_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname, exename

```

```

type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(compilation_item_t) :: item
type(compilation_t) :: compilation
logical :: exist

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: compilations_static_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: make static executable"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize library"

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

libname = "compilations_static_1_lib"
procname = "prc_comp_stat_1"
exename = "compilations_static_1"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 2, [procname,procname])

call compilation%init (exename, [libname])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write dispatcher"

call compilation%write_dispatcher ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write Makefile"

call compilation%write_makefile (global%os_data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build libraries"

call item%init (libname, global%prclib_stack, global%var_list)
call item%compile (global%os_data, force=.true., recompile=.false.)
call item%success ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Check executable (should be absent)"
write (u, "(A)")

call compilation%make_clean_exe (global%os_data)
inquire (file = char (exename), exist = exist)
write (u, "(A,A,L1)") char (exename), " exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Build executable"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call compilation%make_compile (global%os_data)
call compilation%make_link (global%os_data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Check executable (should be present)"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file = char (exename), exist = exist)
write (u, "(A,A,L1)")  char (exename), " exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call compilation%make_clean_exe (global%os_data)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: compilations_static_1"

end subroutine compilations_static_1

```

## External Matrix Element

Compile an external test matrix element (omega type) and incorporate this in a new static WHIZARD executable. In this version, we use the wrapper `compile_executable` procedure.

```

(Compilations: static tests) +=
  call test (compilations_static_2, "compilations_static_2", &
    "static executable: shortcut", &
    u, results)

(Compilations: tests) +=
  subroutine compilations_static_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname, exename
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(compilation_item_t) :: item
    type(compilation_t) :: compilation
    logical :: exist
    integer :: u_file

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: compilations_static_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: make static executable"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize library and compile"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &

```

```

        .false., is_known = .true.)

libname = "compilations_static_2_lib"
procname = "prc_comp_stat_2"
exename = "compilations_static_2"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 2, [procname,procname])

call compile_executable (exename, [libname], global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Check executable (should be present)"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file = char (exename), exist = exist)
write (u, "(A,A,L1)") char (exename), " exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = char (exename), status = "old", action = "write")
close (u_file, status = "delete")

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: compilations_static_2"

end subroutine compilations_static_2

```

## 22.7 Integration

This module manages phase space setup, matrix-element evaluation and integration, as far as it is not done by lower-level routines, in particular in the `processes` module.

`<integrations.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

```

module integrations

  <Use kinds>
  <Use strings>
  <Use file utils>
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use os_interface
  use cputime
  use sm_qcd
  use ifiles
  use lexers

```

```

use parser
use flavors
use pdg_arrays
use variables
use expressions
use models
use interactions
use sf_mappings
use sf_base
use phs_base
use mappings
use phs_forests
use phs_wood
use rng_base
use mci_base
use process_libraries
use prc_core
use processes
use process_stacks
use iterations
use rt_data
use dispatch
use process_configurations
use compilations

<Standard module head>

<Integrations: public>

<Integrations: types>

contains

<Integrations: procedures>

<Integrations: tests>

end module integrations

```

### 22.7.1 The integration type

This type holds all relevant data, the integration methods operates on this. In contrast to the `simulation_t` introduced later, the `integration_t` applies to a single process.

```

<Integrations: public>≡
    public :: integration_t

<Integrations: types>≡
    type :: integration_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: process_id
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(process_t), pointer :: process => null ()
    logical :: rebuild_phs = .false.

```

```

    logical :: ignore_phs_mismatch = .false.
    logical :: phs_only = .false.
    logical :: process_has_me = .true.
    integer :: n_calls_test = 0
    logical :: vis_history = .true.
    type(string_t) :: history_filename
    type(string_t) :: log_filename
contains
  <Integrations: integration: TBP>
end type integration_t

```

## 22.7.2 Initialization

Initialization, first part: Create and initialize a process entry and push it on the stack. Only the basic process data (ID, run ID, etc.) are configured, we postpone the rest.

```

<Integrations: integration: TBP>≡
  procedure :: create_process => integration_create_process
<Integrations: procedures>≡
  subroutine integration_create_process (intg, process_id, global) !, verbose)
    class(integration_t), intent(out) :: intg
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
    type(var_list_t), pointer :: var_list
    type(qcd_t) :: qcd
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(process_entry_t), pointer :: process_entry

    var_list => global%var_list
    intg%process_id = process_id
    intg%run_id = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("run_id"))

    call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
    call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)

    allocate (process_entry)
    call process_entry%init (intg%process_id, intg%run_id, global%prclib, &
      global%os_data, qcd, rng_factory, global%model_list)
    call global%process_stack%push (process_entry)

  end subroutine integration_create_process

```

Complete process configuration.

If the `process` argument is given, use it. Otherwise, take the process object from the stack.

```

<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: setup_process => integration_setup_process
<Integrations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine integration_setup_process (intg, global, process, verbose)
    class(integration_t), intent(inout) :: intg

```

```

type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(process_t), intent(in), target, optional :: process
logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose

class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core_template
class(phs_config_t), allocatable :: phs_config_template
type(phs_parameters_t) :: phs_par
type(mapping_defaults_t) :: mapping_defs
class(mci_t), allocatable :: mci_template
type(qcd_t) :: qcd
integer :: n_components, n_in, i_component
type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: pdg_prc
type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: config
type(helicity_selection_t), allocatable :: helicity_selection
real(default) :: sqrts
logical :: decay_rest_frame, use_color_factors
type(sf_config_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_config
type(sf_prop_t) :: sf_prop
type(sf_channel_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sf_channel
type(phs_channel_collection_t) :: phs_channel_collection
logical :: sf_trace
type(string_t) :: sf_string, sf_trace_file
logical :: verb

verb = .true.; if (present (verbose)) verb = verbose

if (present (process)) then
    intg%process => process
    intg%process_id = process%get_id ()
    intg%run_id = process%get_run_id ()
else
    intg%process => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (intg%process_id)
end if

call intg%process%set_var_list (global%var_list)

intg%rebuild_phs = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"))
intg%ignore_phs_mismatch = &
    .not. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_phs_file"))
intg%phs_only = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_only"))
phs_par%m_threshold_s = var_list_get_rval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_threshold_s"))
phs_par%m_threshold_t = var_list_get_rval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_threshold_t"))
phs_par%off_shell = var_list_get_ival &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_off_shell"))
phs_par%keep_nonresonant = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_keep_nonresonant"))
phs_par%t_channel = var_list_get_ival &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_t_channel"))
mapping_defs%energy_scale = var_list_get_rval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_e_scale"))

```

```

mapping_defs%invariant_mass_scale = var_list_get_rval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_m_scale"))
mapping_defs%momentum_transfer_scale = var_list_get_rval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_q_scale"))
mapping_defs%step_mapping = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_step_mapping"))
mapping_defs%step_mapping_exp = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_step_mapping_exp"))
mapping_defs%enable_s_mapping = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_s_mapping"))

call dispatch_phs (phs_config_template, global, &
    intg%process_id, mapping_defs, phs_par)

intg%n_calls_test = &
    var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, var_str ("n_calls_test"))

!!! We avoid two dots in the filename due to a bug in certain MetaPost versions.
if (intg%run_id /= "") then
    intg%history_filename = intg%process_id // "." // intg%run_id &
        // "-history"
    intg%log_filename = intg%process_id // "." // intg%run_id // ".log"
else
    intg%history_filename = intg%process_id // "-history"
    intg%log_filename = intg%process_id // ".log"
end if

call dispatch_mci (mci_template, global, intg%process_id)

if (verb) then
    call msg_message ("Initializing integration for process " &
        // char (intg%process_id) // ":")
    if (intg%run_id /= "") then
        call msg_message ("Run ID = " // ' ' // char (intg%run_id) // ' ')
    end if
end if

helicity_selection = global%get_helicity_selection ()

intg%vis_history = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"))
use_color_factors = var_list_get_lval &
    (global%var_list, var_str ("?read_color_factors"))

call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)

n_components = intg%process%get_n_components ()
n_in = intg%process%get_n_in ()

do i_component = 1, n_components
    config => intg%process%get_component_def_ptr (i_component)
    call dispatch_core (core_template, config%get_core_def_ptr (), &
        intg%process%get_model_ptr (), helicity_selection, qcd, &
        use_color_factors)
end do

```



```

        call intg%process%init_component &
            (i_component, core_template, mci_template, phs_config_template)
        deallocate (core_template)
    end do

    call intg%process%write (screen = .true.)

    intg%process_has_me = intg%process%has_matrix_element ()
    if (.not. intg%process_has_me) then
        call msg_warning ("Process '" &
            // char (intg%process_id) // "' : matrix element vanishes")
    end if

    sqrts = global%get_sqrts ()
    decay_rest_frame = &
        var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?decay_rest_frame"))
    if (intg%process_has_me) then
        if (global%beam_structure%is_set ()) then
            call intg%process%setup_beams_beam_structure &
                (global%beam_structure, sqrts, global%model, decay_rest_frame)
        else if (n_in == 2) then
            call intg%process%setup_beams_sqrts &
                (sqrts, global%beam_structure)
        else
            call intg%process%setup_beams_decay &
                (decay_rest_frame, global%beam_structure)
        end if
    end if
    call intg%process%check_masses ()
    if (intg%process_has_me) call intg%process%beams_startup_message &
        (beam_structure = global%beam_structure)

    if (intg%process_has_me) then
        call intg%process%get_pdg_in (pdg_prc)
    else
        allocate (pdg_prc (n_in, n_components))
        pdg_prc = 0
    end if
    call dispatch_sf_config (sf_config, sf_prop, global, pdg_prc)
    sf_trace = &
        var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?sf_trace"))
    sf_trace_file = &
        var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$sf_trace_file"))
    if (sf_trace) then
        call intg%process%init_sf_chain (sf_config, sf_trace_file)
    else
        call intg%process%init_sf_chain (sf_config)
    end if

    if (intg%process_has_me) then
        call intg%process%configure_phs (intg%rebuild_phs, intg%ignore_phs_mismatch)
        if (size (sf_config) > 0) then
            call intg%process%collect_channels (phs_channel_collection)
        else if (intg%process%contains_trivial_component ()) then

```

```

        call msg_fatal ("Integrate: 2 -> 1 process can't be handled &
                        &with fixed-energy beams")
    end if

    call dispatch_sf_channels &
        (sf_channel, sf_string, sf_prop, phs_channel_collection, global)
    if (allocated (sf_channel)) then
        if (size (sf_channel) > 0) then
            call intg%process%set_sf_channel (sf_channel)
        end if
    end if
    call phs_channel_collection%final ()
    call intg%process%sf_startup_message (sf_string)
end if

call intg%process%setup_mci ()
call intg%process%setup_terms ()

if (associated (global%pn%cuts_lexpr)) then
    if (verb) call msg_message ("Applying user-defined cuts.")
    call intg%process%set_cuts (global%pn%cuts_lexpr)
else
    if (verb) call msg_warning ("No cuts have been defined.")
end if

if (associated (global%pn%scale_expr) .and. verb) then
    call msg_message ("Using user-defined general scale.")
    call intg%process%set_scale (global%pn%scale_expr)
end if

if (associated (global%pn%fac_scale_expr) .and. verb) then
    call msg_message ("Using user-defined factorization scale.")
    call intg%process%set_fac_scale (global%pn%fac_scale_expr)
end if

if (associated (global%pn%ren_scale_expr) .and. verb) then
    call msg_message ("Using user-defined renormalization scale.")
    call intg%process%set_ren_scale (global%pn%ren_scale_expr)
end if

if (associated (global%pn%weight_expr) .and. verb) then
    call msg_message ("Using user-defined reweighting factor.")
    call intg%process%set_weight (global%pn%weight_expr)
end if

call intg%process%compute_md5sum ()

end subroutine integration_setup_process

```

### 22.7.3 Integration

Integrate: do the final integration. Here, we do a multi-iteration integration. Again, we skip iterations that are already on file. Record the results in the global variable list.

*<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: evaluate => integration_evaluate
```

*<Integrations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine integration_evaluate &
    (intg, process_instance, i_mci, pass, it_list, pacify)
    class(integration_t), intent(inout) :: intg
    type(process_instance_t), intent(inout), target :: process_instance
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    integer, intent(in) :: pass
    type(iterations_list_t), intent(in) :: it_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: pacify
    integer :: n_calls, n_it
    logical :: adapt_grids, adapt_weights, final

    n_it = it_list%get_n_it (pass)
    n_calls = it_list%get_n_calls (pass)
    adapt_grids = it_list%adapt_grids (pass)
    adapt_weights = it_list%adapt_weights (pass)
    final = pass == it_list%get_n_pass ()

    call intg%process%integrate (process_instance, &
        i_mci, n_it, n_calls, adapt_grids, adapt_weights, &
        final, pacify)

end subroutine integration_evaluate

```

In case the user has not provided a list of iterations, make a reasonable default. This can depend on the process. The usual approach is to define two distinct passes, one for adaptation and one for integration.

*<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: make_iterations_list => integration_make_iterations_list

```

*<Integrations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine integration_make_iterations_list (intg, it_list)
    class(integration_t), intent(in) :: intg
    type(iterations_list_t), intent(out) :: it_list
    integer :: pass, n_pass
    integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_it, n_calls
    logical, dimension(:), allocatable :: adapt_grids, adapt_weights
    n_pass = intg%process%get_n_pass_default ()
    allocate (n_it (n_pass), n_calls (n_pass))
    allocate (adapt_grids (n_pass), adapt_weights (n_pass))
    do pass = 1, n_pass
        n_it(pass) = intg%process%get_n_it_default (pass)
        n_calls(pass) = intg%process%get_n_calls_default (pass)
        adapt_grids(pass) = intg%process%adapt_grids_default (pass)
        adapt_weights(pass) = intg%process%adapt_weights_default (pass)
    end do
    call it_list%init (n_it, n_calls, &
        adapt_grids = adapt_grids, adapt_weights = adapt_weights)
end subroutine integration_make_iterations_list

```

## 22.7.4 API for integration objects

This initializer does everything except assigning cuts/scale/weight expressions. If `ok` is false, initialization failed, and the integration should be skipped.

If `me_only` is set, prepare just matrix-element evaluation: no phase space, no iterations.

```

<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init => integration_init

<Integrations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine integration_init (intg, process_id, global)
    class(integration_t), intent(out) :: intg
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global

    call intg%create_process (process_id, global)
    call intg%setup_process (global)
  end subroutine integration_init

```

Do the integration for a single process, both warmup and final evaluation. The `eff_reset` flag is to suppress numerical noise in the graphical output of the integration history.

```

<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: integrate => integration_integrate

<Integrations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine integration_integrate (intg, global, eff_reset)
    class(integration_t), intent(inout) :: intg
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    logical, intent(in), optional :: eff_reset
    type(string_t) :: log_filename
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(iterations_list_t) :: it_list
    logical :: pacify
    integer :: pass, i_mci, n_mci, n_pass

    allocate (process_instance)
    call process_instance%init (intg%process)

    call openmp_set_num_threads_verbose &
      (var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, "openmp_num_threads"), &
       var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, "?openmp_logging"))
    pacify = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?pacify"))

    n_mci = intg%process%get_n_mci ()
    if (n_mci == 1) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") &
        "Starting integration for process '", &
        char (intg%process%get_id ()), "' "
      call msg_message ()
    end if
    do i_mci = 1, n_mci
      if (n_mci > 1) then
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A,IO)") &

```

```

        "Starting integration for process '", &
        char (intg%process%get_id ()), "' part ", i_mci
    call msg_message ()
end if
n_pass = global%it_list%get_n_pass ()
if (n_pass == 0) then
    call msg_message ("Integrate: iterations not specified, &
        &using default")
    call intg%make_iterations_list (it_list)
    n_pass = it_list%get_n_pass ()
else
    it_list = global%it_list
end if
call msg_message ("Integrate: " // char (it_list%to_string ()))
do pass = 1, n_pass
    call intg%evaluate (process_instance, i_mci, pass, it_list, pacify)
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
end do
call intg%process%final_integration (i_mci)
if (intg%vis_history) then
    call intg%process%display_integration_history &
        (i_mci, intg%history_filename, global%os_data, eff_reset)
end if
if (global%logfile == intg%log_filename) then
    if (intg%run_id /= "") then
        log_filename = intg%process_id // "." // intg%run_id // &
            ".var.log"
    else
        log_filename = intg%process_id // ".var.log"
    end if
    call msg_message ("Name clash for global logfile and process log: ", &
        arr=[var_str ("| Renaming log file from ") // global%logfile, &
            var_str ("|   to ") // log_filename // var_str (" .")])
else
    log_filename = intg%log_filename
end if
call intg%process%write_logfile (i_mci, log_filename)
end do

if (n_mci > 1) then
    call msg_message ("Integrate: sum of all components")
    call intg%process%display_summed_results ()
end if

call process_instance%final ()
deallocate (process_instance)

end subroutine integration_integrate

```

Do a dummy integration for a process which could not be initialized (e.g., has no matrix element). The result is zero.

$\langle \text{Integrations: integration: TBP} \rangle + \equiv$

procedure :: integrate\_dummy => integration\_integrate\_dummy

*<Integrations: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine integration_integrate_dummy (intg)
  class(integration_t), intent(inout) :: intg
  call intg%process%integrate_dummy ()
end subroutine integration_integrate_dummy
```

Just sample the matrix element under realistic conditions (but no cuts); throw away the results.

*<Integrations: integration: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: sampler_test => integration_sampler_test
```

*<Integrations: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine integration_sampler_test (intg, global)
  class(integration_t), intent(inout) :: intg
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
  integer :: n_mci, i_mci
  type(timer_t) :: timer_mci, timer_tot
  real(default) :: t_mci, t_tot
  allocate (process_instance)
  call process_instance%init (intg%process)
  n_mci = intg%process%get_n_mci ()
  if (n_mci == 1) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)") &
      "Test: probing process '", &
      char (intg%process%get_id ()), "'"
    call msg_message ()
  end if
  call timer_tot%start ()
  do i_mci = 1, n_mci
    if (n_mci > 1) then
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A,IO)") &
        "Test: probing process '", &
        char (intg%process%get_id ()), "' part ", i_mci
      call msg_message ()
    end if
    call timer_mci%start ()
    call intg%process%sampler_test &
      (process_instance, i_mci, intg%n_calls_test)
    call timer_mci%stop ()
    t_mci = timer_mci
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,ES12.5)") "Test: " &
      // "time in seconds (wallclock): ", t_mci
    call msg_message ()
  end do
  call timer_tot%stop ()
  t_tot = timer_tot
  if (n_mci > 1) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,ES12.5)") "Test: " &
      // "total time (wallclock): ", t_tot
    call msg_message ()
  end if
  call process_instance%final ()
end subroutine integration_sampler_test
```

Simply integrate, do a dummy integration if necessary. The `integration` object exists only internally.

The `init_only` flag can be used to skip the actual integration part. We will end up with a process object that is completely initialized, including phase space configuration.

The `eff_reset` flag is to suppress numerical noise in the visualization of the integration history.

```

(Integrations: public)+≡
    public :: integrate_process

(Integrations: procedures)+≡
    subroutine integrate_process (process_id, global, init_only, eff_reset)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        logical, intent(in), optional :: init_only, eff_reset
        type(string_t) :: prclib_name
        type(integration_t) :: intg
        character(32) :: buffer

        if (.not. associated (global%prclib)) then
            call msg_fatal ("Integrate: current process library is undefined")
            return
        end if

        if (.not. global%prclib%is_active ()) then
            call msg_message ("Integrate: current process library needs compilation")
            prclib_name = global%prclib%get_name ()
            call compile_library (prclib_name, global)
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            call msg_message ("Integrate: compilation done")
        end if

        call intg%init (process_id, global)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return

        if (present (init_only)) then
            if (init_only) return
        end if

        if (intg%n_calls_test > 0) then
            write (buffer, "(I0)") intg%n_calls_test
            call msg_message ("Integrate: test (" // trim (buffer) // " calls) ...")
            call intg%sampler_test (global)
            call msg_message ("Integrate: ... test complete.")
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        end if

        if (intg%phs_only) then
            call msg_message ("Integrate: phase space only, skipping integration")
        else
            if (intg%process_has_me) then
                call intg%integrate (global, eff_reset)
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine

```

```

        else
            call intg%integrate_dummy ()
        end if
    end if
end subroutine integrate_process

```

### 22.7.5 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Integrations: public>+≡
    public :: integrations_test

<Integrations: tests>≡
    subroutine integrations_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Integrations: execute tests>
    end subroutine integrations_test

<Integrations: public>+≡
    public :: integrations_history_test

<Integrations: tests>+≡
    subroutine integrations_history_test (u, results)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
    <Integrations: execute history tests>
    end subroutine integrations_history_test

```

#### Integration of test process

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type). The phase-space implementation is `phs_single` (single-particle phase space), the integrator is `mci_midpoint`.

The cross section for the  $2 \rightarrow 2$  process  $ss \rightarrow ss$  with its constant matrix element is given by

$$\sigma = c \times f \times \Phi_2 \times |M|^2. \quad (22.1)$$

$c$  is the conversion constant

$$c = 0.3894 \times 10^{12} \text{ fb GeV}^2. \quad (22.2)$$

$f$  is the flux of the incoming particles with mass  $m = 125 \text{ GeV}$  and energy  $\sqrt{s} = 1000 \text{ GeV}$

$$f = \frac{(2\pi)^4}{2\lambda^{1/2}(s, m^2, m^2)} = \frac{(2\pi)^4}{2\sqrt{s}\sqrt{s-4m^2}} = 8.048 \times 10^{-4} \text{ GeV}^{-2} \quad (22.3)$$

$\Phi_2$  is the volume of the two-particle phase space

$$\Phi_2 = \frac{1}{4(2\pi)^5} = 2.5529 \times 10^{-5}. \quad (22.4)$$



The squared matrix element  $|M|^2$  is unity. Combining everything, we obtain

$$\sigma = 8000 \text{ fb} \quad (22.5)$$

This number should appear as the final result.

Note: In this and the following test, we reset the Fortran compiler and flag variables immediately before they are printed, so the test is portable.

*(Integrations: execute tests)*≡

```
call test (integrations_1, "integrations_1", &
  "intrinsic test process", &
  u, results)
```

*(Integrations: tests)*+≡

```
subroutine integrations_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: libname, procname
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  call global%global_init ()

  libname = "integration_1"
  procname = "prc_config_a"

  call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1)
  call compile_library (libname, global)

  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("integrations1"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

  call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

  call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

  call reset_interaction_counter ()
  call integrate_process (procname, global)
```

```

call global%write (u, vars = [ &
    var_str ("method"), &
    var_str ("sqrts"), &
    var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("phs_method"), &
    var_str ("run_id")])

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_1"

end subroutine integrations_1

```

## Integration with cuts

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) with cuts set.

```

<Integrations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (integrations_2, "integrations_2", &
        "intrinsic test process with cut", &
        u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+≡
    subroutine integrations_2 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        type(string_t) :: cut_expr_text
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(stream_t) :: stream
        type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree

        type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_2"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process with cut"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Prepare a cut expression"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_pexpr_init ()
        cut_expr_text = "all Pt > 100 [s]"
        call ifile_append (ifile, cut_expr_text)
        call stream_init (stream, ifile)
        call parse_tree_init_lexpr (parse_tree, stream, .true.)

```

```

global%pn%cuts_lexpr => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Build and initialize a test process"
write (u, "(A)")

libname = "integration_3"
procname = "prc_config_a"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1)
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("integrations1"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%write (u, vars = empty_string_array)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_2"

end subroutine integrations_2

```

## Standard phase space

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the default (`phs_wood`) phase-space implementation. We use an explicit phase-space configuration file with a single channel and integrate by `mci_midpoint`.

*(Integrations: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (integrations_3, "integrations_3", &
    "standard phase space", &

```

```

        u, results)
<Integrations: tests>+=
subroutine integrations_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    integer :: u_phs

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

    call global%global_init ()

    libname = "integration_3"
    procname = "prc_config_a"

    call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1)
    call compile_library (libname, global)

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
        var_str ("integrations1"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
        var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
        var_str ("default"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
        var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_s_mapping"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
        0, is_known=.true.)

    call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
        1000._default, is_known = .true.)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Create a scratch phase-space file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    u_phs = free_unit ()
    open (u_phs, file = "integrations_3.phs", &
        status = "replace", action = "write")
    call write_test_phs_file (u_phs, var_str ("prc_config_a_i1"))
    close (u_phs)

```

```

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_file"), &
    var_str ("integrations_3.phs"), is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%write (u, vars = [ &
    var_str ("phs_method"), &
    var_str ("phs_file")])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_phs_forest_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_3"

end subroutine integrations_3

```

## VAMP integration

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the single-channel (`phs_single`) phase-space implementation. The integration method is `vamp`.

```

<Integrations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (integrations_4, "integrations_4", &
        "VAMP integration (one iteration)", &
        u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+≡
    subroutine integrations_4 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_4"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process using VAMP"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

```

```

call global%global_init ()

libname = "integrations_4_lib"
procname = "integrations_4"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%pacify (efficiency_reset = .true., error_reset = .true.)
call global%write (u, vars = [var_str ("$_integration_method")], &
    pacify = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_4"

end subroutine integrations_4

```

## Multiple iterations integration

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the single-channel (`phs_single`) phase-space implementation. The integration method is `vamp`. We launch three iterations.

```
<Integrations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (integrations_5, "integrations_5", &
               "VAMP integration (three iterations)", &
               u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+≡
    subroutine integrations_5 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_5"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process using VAMP"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()

        libname = "integrations_5_lib"
        procname = "integrations_5"

        call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
        call compile_library (libname, global)

        call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
                                   var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
                                   var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
                                   var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
                                   var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
                                   var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
                                   .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
                                   .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
                                   .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
                                0, is_known=.true.)

        call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
                                1000._default, is_known = .true.)
```

```

call global%it_list%init ([3], [1000])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%pacify (efficiency_reset = .true., error_reset = .true.)
call global%write (u, vars = [var_str ("integration_method")], &
    pacify = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_5"

end subroutine integrations_5

```

## Multiple passes integration

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the single-channel (`phs_single`) phase-space implementation. The integration method is `vamp`. We launch three passes with three iterations each.

```

<Integrations: execute tests>+≡
call test (integrations_6, "integrations_6", &
    "VAMP integration (three passes)", &
    u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+≡
subroutine integrations_6 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_vars

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_6"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process using VAMP"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()

    libname = "integrations_6_lib"

```



```

procname = "integrations_6"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([3, 3, 3], [1000, 1000, 1000], &
    adapt = [.true., .true., .false.], &
    adapt_code = [var_str ("wg"), var_str ("g"), var_str ("")])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%pacify (efficiency_reset = .true., error_reset = .true.)
call global%write (u, vars = no_vars, pacify = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_6"

end subroutine integrations_6

```

## VAMP and default phase space

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the default (`phs_wood`) phase-space implementation. The integration method is `vamp`. We launch three passes with three iterations each. We enable channel equivalences and groves.

```
<Integrations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (integrations_7, "integrations_7", &
               "VAMP integration with wood phase space", &
               u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+≡
    subroutine integrations_7 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_vars
        integer :: iostat, u_phs
        character(95) :: buffer
        type(string_t) :: phs_file
        logical :: exist

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_7"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process using VAMP"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

        call global%global_init ()

        libname = "integrations_7_lib"
        procname = "integrations_7"

        call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
        call compile_library (libname, global)

        call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
                                   var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
        call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
                                   var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
                                   var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
                                   var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
                                   var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
                                   var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
                                .true., is_known = .true.)
```

```

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"),&
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"),&
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_s_mapping"),&
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"),&
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([3, 3, 3], [1000, 1000, 1000], &
    adapt = [.true., .true., .false.], &
    adapt_code = [var_str ("wg"), var_str ("g"), var_str ("")])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%pacify (efficiency_reset = .true., error_reset = .true.)
call global%write (u, vars = no_vars, pacify = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_phs_forest_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generated phase-space file"
write (u, "(A)")

phs_file = procname // "_i1.r1.phs"
inquire (file = char (phs_file), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    u_phs = free_unit ()
    open (u_phs, file = char (phs_file), action = "read", status = "old")
    iostat = 0
    do while (iostat == 0)
        read (u_phs, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat == 0) write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_phs)
else
    write (u, "(A)")  "[file is missing]"
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_7"

```

```
end subroutine integrations_7
```

## Structure functions

Compile and integrate an intrinsic test matrix element (`prc_test` type) using the default (`phs_wood`) phase-space implementation. The integration method is `vamp`. There is a structure function of type `unit_test`.

We use a test structure function  $f(x) = x$  for both beams. Together with the  $1/x_1x_2$  factor from the phase-space flux and a unit matrix element, we should get the same result as previously for the process without structure functions. There is a slight correction due to the  $m_s$  mass which we set to zero here.

```
<Integrations: execute tests>+=
  call test (integrations_8, "integrations_8", &
    "integration with structure function", &
    u, results)

<Integrations: tests>+=
  subroutine integrations_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(flavor_t) :: flv

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: integrate test process using VAMP &
      &with structure function"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

    call global%global_init ()

    libname = "integrations_8_lib"
    procname = "integrations_8"

    call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
    call compile_library (libname, global)

    call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
    call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
      var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
      var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
      var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
```

```

        var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_s_mapping"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)

call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])
call integrate_process (procname, global)

call global%write (u, vars = [var_str ("ms")])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call global%final ()
call syntax_phs_forest_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_8"

end subroutine integrations_8

```

## Integration history for VAMP integration with default phase space

This test is only run when event analysis can be done.

*(Integrations: execute history tests)*≡

```

call test (integrations_history_1, "integrations_history_1", &
    "Test integration history files", &
    u, results)

```

*<Integrations: tests>+≡*

```
subroutine integrations_history_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: libname, procname
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_vars
  integer :: iostat, u_his
  character(91) :: buffer
  type(string_t) :: his_file, ps_file, pdf_file
  logical :: exist, exist_ps, exist_pdf

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: integrations_history_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test integration history files"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and parameters"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

  call global%global_init ()

  libname = "integrations_history_1_lib"
  procname = "integrations_history_1"

  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"),&
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?phs_s_mapping"),&
    .false., is_known = .true.)

  call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname])
  call compile_library (libname, global)

  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"),&
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"),&
    .true., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("error_threshold"),&
    5E-6_default, is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
```

```

0, is_known=.true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([2, 2, 2], [1000, 1000, 1000], &
    adapt = [.true., .true., .false.], &
    adapt_code = [var_str ("wg"), var_str ("g"), var_str ("")])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call integrate_process (procname, global, eff_reset = .true.)

call global%pacify (efficiency_reset = .true., error_reset = .true.)
call global%write (u, vars = no_vars, pacify = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generated history files"
write (u, "(A)")

his_file = procname // ".r1-history.tex"
ps_file  = procname // ".r1-history.ps"
pdf_file = procname // ".r1-history.pdf"
inquire (file = char (his_file), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    u_his = free_unit ()
    open (u_his, file = char (his_file), action = "read", status = "old")
    iostat = 0
    do while (iostat == 0)
        read (u_his, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
        if (iostat == 0) write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    end do
    close (u_his)
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[History LaTeX file is missing]"
end if
inquire (file = char (ps_file), exist = exist_ps)
if (exist_ps) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[History Postscript file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[History Postscript file is missing/non-regular]"
end if
inquire (file = char (pdf_file), exist = exist_pdf)
if (exist_pdf) then
    write (u, "(A)") "[History PDF file exists and is nonempty]"
else
    write (u, "(A)") "[History PDF file is missing/non-regular]"
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```

```

call global%final ()
call syntax_phs_forest_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: integrations_history_1"

end subroutine integrations_history_1

```

## 22.8 Event Streams

This module manages I/O from/to multiple concurrent event streams. Usually, there is at most one input stream, but several output streams. For the latter, we set up an array which can hold `eio_t` (event I/O) objects of different dynamic types simultaneously. One of them may be marked as an input channel.

```

<event_streams.f90>≡
  <File header>

  module event_streams

    <Use kinds>
    <Use strings>
    <Use file utils>
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use unit_tests
    use variables
    use models
    use processes
    use events
    use eio_data
    use eio_base
    use rt_data
    use dispatch

    <Standard module head>

    <Event streams: public>

    <Event streams: types>

    contains

    <Event streams: tests>

    <Event streams: procedures>

  end module event_streams

```

### 22.8.1 Event Stream Array

Each entry is an `eio_t` object. Since the type is dynamic, we need a wrapper:



```

<Event streams: types>≡
  type :: event_stream_entry_t
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  end type event_stream_entry_t

```

An array of event-stream entry objects. If one of the entries is an input channel, *i\_in* is the corresponding index.

```

<Event streams: public>≡
  public :: event_stream_array_t

<Event streams: types>+≡
  type :: event_stream_array_t
    type(event_stream_entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
    integer :: i_in = 0
  contains
    <Event streams: event stream array: TBP>
  end type event_stream_array_t

```

Output.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => event_stream_array_write

<Event streams: procedures>≡
  subroutine event_stream_array_write (object, unit)
    class(event_stream_array_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Event stream array:"
    if (allocated (object%entry)) then
      select case (size (object%entry))
      case (0)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "[empty]"
      case default
        do i = 1, size (object%entry)
          if (i == object%i_in) write (u, "(1x,A)") "Input stream:"
          call object%entry(i)%eio%write (u)
        end do
      end select
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "[undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine event_stream_array_write

```

Finalize all streams.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => event_stream_array_final

<Event streams: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_stream_array_final (es_array)
    class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (es_array%entry)
      call es_array%entry(i)%eio%final ()
    end do
  end subroutine event_stream_array_final

```

```

end do
end subroutine event_stream_array_final

```

Initialization. We use a generic `sample` name, open event I/O objects for all provided stream types (using the `dispatch_eio` routine), and initialize for the given list of process pointers. If there is an `input` argument, this channel is initialized as an input channel and appended to the array.

The `input_data` or, if not present, `data` may be modified. This happens if we open a stream for reading and get new information there.

*(Event streams: event stream array: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init => event_stream_array_init

```

*(Event streams: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine event_stream_array_init &
  (es_array, sample, stream_fmt, process_ptr, global, &
   data, input, input_sample, input_data, allow_switch, checkpoint, &
   error)
  class(event_stream_array_t), intent(out) :: es_array
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: sample
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: stream_fmt
  type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_ptr
  type(rt_data_t), intent(in) :: global
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: data
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: input
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: input_sample
  type(event_sample_data_t), intent(inout), optional :: input_data
  logical, intent(in), optional :: allow_switch
  integer, intent(in), optional :: checkpoint
  logical, intent(out), optional :: error
  type(string_t) :: sample_in
  integer :: n, i
  logical :: success, switch
  if (present (input)) then
    n = size (stream_fmt) + 1
  else
    n = size (stream_fmt)
  end if
  if (present (input_sample)) then
    sample_in = input_sample
  else
    sample_in = sample
  end if
  if (present (allow_switch)) then
    switch = allow_switch
  else
    switch = .true.
  end if
  if (present (error)) then
    error = .false.
  end if
  if (present (checkpoint)) then
    allocate (es_array%entry (n + 1))
    call dispatch_eio &
      (es_array%entry(n+1)%eio, var_str ("checkpoint"), global)

```

```

        call es_array%entry(n+1)%eio%init_out (sample, process_ptr, data)
    else
        allocate (es_array%entry (n))
    end if
    if (present (input)) then
        call dispatch_eio (es_array%entry(n)%eio, input, global)
        if (present (input_data)) then
            call es_array%entry(n)%eio%init_in &
                (sample_in, process_ptr, input_data, success)
        else
            call es_array%entry(n)%eio%init_in &
                (sample_in, process_ptr, data, success)
        end if
        if (success) then
            es_array%i_in = n
        else if (present (input_sample)) then
            if (present (error)) then
                error = .true.
            else
                call msg_fatal ("Events: &
                    &parameter mismatch in input, aborting")
            end if
        else
            call msg_message ("Events: &
                &parameter mismatch, discarding old event set")
            call es_array%entry(n)%eio%final ()
            if (switch) then
                call msg_message ("Events: generating new events")
                call es_array%entry(n)%eio%init_out &
                    (sample, process_ptr, data)
            end if
        end if
    end if
end if
do i = 1, size (stream_fmt)
    call dispatch_eio (es_array%entry(i)%eio, stream_fmt(i), global)
    call es_array%entry(i)%eio%init_out (sample, process_ptr, data)
end do
end subroutine event_stream_array_init

```

Switch the (only) input channel to an output channel, so further events are appended to the respective stream.

*(Event streams: event stream array: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: switch_inout => event_stream_array_switch_inout

```

*(Event streams: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine event_stream_array_switch_inout (es_array)
    class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
    integer :: n
    if (es_array%has_input ()) then
        n = es_array%i_in
        call es_array%entry(n)%eio%switch_inout ()
        es_array%i_in = 0
    else
        call msg_bug ("Reading events: switch_inout: no input stream selected")
    end if
end subroutine

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine event_stream_array_switch_inout

```

Output an event (with given process number) to all output streams. If there is no output stream, do nothing.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: output => event_stream_array_output

<Event streams: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_stream_array_output (es_array, event, i_prc, event_index)
        class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
        type(event_t), intent(in), target :: event
        integer, intent(in) :: i_prc, event_index
        integer :: i
        do i = 1, size (es_array%entry)
            if (i /= es_array%i_in) then
                associate (eio => es_array%entry(i)%eio)
                    if (eio%split) then
                        if (event_index > 1 .and. &
                            mod (event_index, eio%split_n_evt) == 1) then
                            call eio%split_out ()
                        end if
                    end if
                end if
                call eio%output (event, i_prc, reading = es_array%i_in /= 0)
            end associate
        end if
    end do
end subroutine event_stream_array_output

```

Input the `i_prc` index which selects the process for the current event. This is separated from reading the event, because it determines which event record to read. `iostat` may indicate an error or an EOF condition, as usual.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: input_i_prc => event_stream_array_input_i_prc

<Event streams: procedures>+≡
    subroutine event_stream_array_input_i_prc (es_array, i_prc, iostat)
        class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
        integer, intent(out) :: i_prc
        integer, intent(out) :: iostat
        integer :: n
        if (es_array%has_input ()) then
            n = es_array%i_in
            call es_array%entry(n)%eio%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
        else
            call msg_fatal ("Reading events: no input stream selected")
        end if
    end subroutine event_stream_array_input_i_prc

```

Input an event from the selected input stream. `iostat` may indicate an error or an EOF condition, as usual.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: input_event => event_stream_array_input_event

```

```

<Event streams: procedures>+≡
  subroutine event_stream_array_input_event (es_array, event, iostat)
    class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
    type(event_t), intent(inout), target :: event
    integer, intent(out) :: iostat
    integer :: n
    if (es_array%has_input ()) then
      n = es_array%i_in
      call es_array%entry(n)%eio%input_event (event, iostat)
    else
      call msg_fatal ("Reading events: no input stream selected")
    end if
  end subroutine event_stream_array_input_event

```

Return true if there is an input channel among the event streams.

```

<Event streams: event stream array: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: has_input => event_stream_array_has_input

<Event streams: procedures>+≡
  function event_stream_array_has_input (es_array) result (flag)
    class(event_stream_array_t), intent(in) :: es_array
    logical :: flag
    flag = es_array%i_in /= 0
  end function event_stream_array_has_input

```

## 22.8.2 Unit Tests

```

<Event streams: public>+≡
  public :: event_streams_test

<Event streams: tests>≡
  subroutine event_streams_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Event streams: execute tests>
  end subroutine event_streams_test

```

### Empty event stream

This should set up an empty event output stream array, including initialization, output, and finalization (which are all no-ops).

```

<Event streams: execute tests>≡
  call test (event_streams_1, "event_streams_1", &
    "empty event stream array", &
    u, results)

<Event streams: tests>+≡
  subroutine event_streams_1 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
    type(rt_data_t) :: global
    type(event_t) :: event

```

```

type(string_t) :: sample
type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
type(process_ptr_t), dimension(0) :: empty_process_ptr_array

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: event_streams_1"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: handle empty event stream array"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "event_streams_1"

call es_array%init &
      (sample, empty_string_array, empty_process_ptr_array, global)
call es_array%output (event, 42, 1)
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: event_streams_1"

end subroutine event_streams_1

```

## Nontrivial event stream

Here we generate a trivial event and choose `raw` output as an entry in the stream array.

```

<Event streams: execute tests>+≡
  call test (event_streams_2, "event_streams_2", &
            "nontrivial event stream array", &
            u, results)

<Event streams: tests>+≡
  subroutine event_streams_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
    type(rt_data_t) :: global
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(string_t) :: sample
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
    integer :: i_prc, iostat

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: event_streams_2"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: handle empty event stream array"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call global%init_fallback_model &
          (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

allocate (process)
process_ptr%ptr => process
allocate (process_instance)
call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, global%model_list)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

allocate (event)
call event%basic_init ()
call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())
call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
call event%evaluate_expressions ()
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Allocate raw eio stream and write event to file"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "event_streams_2"

call es_array%init (sample, [var_str ("raw")], [process_ptr], global)
call es_array%output (event, 1, 1)
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reallocate raw eio stream for reading"
write (u, "(A)")

sample = "foo"
call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    input = var_str ("raw"), input_sample = var_str ("event_streams_2"))
call es_array%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reread event"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)

write (u, "(1x,A,I0)") "i_prc = ", i_prc
write (u, "(A)")
call es_array%input_event (event, iostat)
call es_array%final ()

call event%write (u)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: event_streams_2"

```

```
end subroutine event_streams_2
```

## Switch in/out

Here we generate an event file and test switching from writing to reading when the file is exhausted.

```
<Event streams: execute tests>+≡
  call test (event_streams_3, "event_streams_3", &
    "switch input/output", &
    u, results)

<Event streams: tests>+≡
  subroutine event_streams_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
    type(rt_data_t) :: global
    type(event_t), allocatable, target :: event
    type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
    type(process_instance_t), allocatable, target :: process_instance
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    type(string_t) :: sample
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
    integer :: i_prc, iostat

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: event_streams_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: handle in/out switching"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call global%init_fallback_model &
      (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    allocate (process)
    process_ptr%ptr => process
    allocate (process_instance)
    call prepare_test_process (process, process_instance, global%model_list)
    call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

    allocate (event)
    call event%basic_init ()
    call event%connect (process_instance, process%get_model_ptr ())
    call event%generate (1, [0.4_default, 0.4_default])
    call event%evaluate_expressions ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate raw eio stream and write event to file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    sample = "event_streams_3"
```



```

call es_array%init (sample, [var_str ("raw")], [process_ptr], global)
call es_array%output (event, 1, 1)
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reallocate raw eio stream for reading"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    input = var_str ("raw"))
call es_array%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reread event"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
call es_array%input_event (event, iostat)

write (u, "(A)") "* Attempt to read another event (fail), then generate"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
if (iostat < 0) then
    call es_array%switch_inout ()
    call event%generate (1, [0.3_default, 0.3_default])
    call event%evaluate_expressions ()
    call es_array%output (event, 1, 2)
end if
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
call event%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reallocate raw eio stream for reading"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    input = var_str ("raw"))
call es_array%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reread two events and display 2nd event"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
call es_array%input_event (event, iostat)
call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)

call es_array%input_event (event, iostat)
call es_array%final ()

```

```

call event%write (u)

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: event_streams_3"

end subroutine event_streams_3

```

## Checksum

Here we generate an event file and repeat twice, once with identical parameters and once with modified parameters.

```

(Event streams: execute tests)+≡
call test (event_streams_4, "event_streams_4", &
  "check MD5 sum", &
  u, results)

(Event streams: tests)+≡
subroutine event_streams_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
  type(rt_data_t) :: global
  type(process_t), allocatable, target :: process
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  type(string_t) :: sample
  type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: event_streams_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: handle in/out switching"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate test process event"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call global%global_init ()
  call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_event_file"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)

  allocate (process)
  process_ptr%ptr => process

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Allocate raw eio stream for writing"
  write (u, "(A)")

  sample = "event_streams_4"

```

```

data%md5sum_cfg = "1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef"

call es_array%init &
    (sample, [var_str ("raw")], [process_ptr], global, data)
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reallocate raw eio stream for reading"
write (u, "(A)")

call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    data, input = var_str ("raw"))
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Reallocate modified raw eio stream for reading (fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

data%md5sum_cfg = "1234567890_____1234567890_____"
call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    data, input = var_str ("raw"))
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Repeat ignoring checksum"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_event_file"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call es_array%init (sample, empty_string_array, [process_ptr], global, &
    data, input = var_str ("raw"))
call es_array%write (u)
call es_array%final ()

call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Test output end: event_streams_4"

end subroutine event_streams_4

```

## 22.9 Simulation

This module manages simulation: event generation and reading/writing of event files. The `simulation` object is intended to be used (via a pointer) outside of WHIZARD, if events are generated individually by an external driver.

(simulations.f90)≡

*⟨File header⟩*

module simulations

*⟨Use kinds⟩*

*⟨Use strings⟩*

*⟨Use file utils⟩*

use limits, only: FMT\_19 !NODEP!

use diagnostics !NODEP!

use unit\_tests

use sm\_qcd

use md5

use ifiles

use lexers

use parser

use variables

use expressions

use flavors

use particles

use state\_matrices

use interactions

use models

use beams

use phs\_forests

use rng\_base

use selectors

use prc\_core

use prclib\_stacks

use processes

use events

use event\_transforms

use decays

use eio\_data

use eio\_base

use eio\_raw

use eio\_ascii

use rt\_data

use dispatch

use process\_configurations

use compilations

use integrations

use event\_streams

*⟨Standard module head⟩*

*⟨Simulations: public⟩*

*⟨Simulations: types⟩*

*⟨Simulations: interfaces⟩*

contains

*⟨Simulations: procedures⟩*

```
<Simulations: tests>
```

```
end module simulations
```

### 22.9.1 Event counting

In this object we collect statistical information about an event sample or sub-sample.

```
<Simulations: types>≡
  type :: counter_t
    integer :: total = 0
    integer :: generated = 0
    integer :: read = 0
    integer :: positive = 0
    integer :: negative = 0
    integer :: zero = 0
    integer :: excess = 0
    real(default) :: max_excess = 0
    real(default) :: sum_excess = 0
  contains
    <Simulations: counter: TBP>
  end type counter_t
```

Output.

```
<Simulations: counter: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => counter_write
<Simulations: procedures>≡
  subroutine counter_write (object, unit)
    class(counter_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
1   format (3x,A,I0)
2   format (5x,A,I0)
3   format (5x,A,ES19.12)
    write (u, 1) "Events total      = ", object%total
    write (u, 2) "generated        = ", object%generated
    write (u, 2) "read              = ", object%read
    write (u, 2) "positive weight = ", object%positive
    write (u, 2) "negative weight = ", object%negative
    write (u, 2) "zero weight      = ", object%zero
    write (u, 2) "excess weight    = ", object%excess
    if (object%excess /= 0) then
      write (u, 3) "max excess      = ", object%max_excess
      write (u, 3) "avg excess      = ", object%sum_excess / object%total
    end if
  end subroutine counter_write
```

This is a screen message: if there was an excess, display statistics.

```
<Simulations: counter: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: show_excess => counter_show_excess
```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine counter_show_excess (counter)
  class(counter_t), intent(in) :: counter
  if (counter%excess > 0) then
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A,1x,'(,F7.3,' %)'") &
      "Encountered events with excess weight:", counter%excess, &
      "events", 100 * counter%excess / real (counter%total)
    call msg_warning ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,ES10.3)") &
      "Maximum excess weight =", counter%max_excess
    call msg_message ()
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,ES10.3)") &
      "Average excess weight =", counter%sum_excess / counter%total
    call msg_message ()
  end if
end subroutine counter_show_excess

```

Count an event. The weight and event source are optional; by default we assume that the event has been generated and has positive weight.

*<Simulations: counter: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: record => counter_record

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine counter_record (counter, weight, excess, from_file)
  class(counter_t), intent(inout) :: counter
  real(default), intent(in), optional :: weight, excess
  logical, intent(in), optional :: from_file
  counter%total = counter%total + 1
  if (present (from_file)) then
    if (from_file) then
      counter%read = counter%read + 1
    else
      counter%generated = counter%generated + 1
    end if
  else
    counter%generated = counter%generated + 1
  end if
  if (present (weight)) then
    if (weight > 0) then
      counter%positive = counter%positive + 1
    else if (weight < 0) then
      counter%negative = counter%negative + 1
    else
      counter%zero = counter%zero + 1
    end if
  else
    counter%positive = counter%positive + 1
  end if
  if (present (excess)) then
    if (excess > 0) then
      counter%excess = counter%excess + 1
      counter%max_excess = max (counter%max_excess, excess)
      counter%sum_excess = counter%sum_excess + excess
    end if
  end if
end subroutine counter_record

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine counter_record

```

## 22.9.2 Simulation: component sets

For each set of process components that share a MCI entry in the process configuration, we keep a separate event record.

```

<Simulations: types>+≡
    type :: mci_set_t
    private
        integer :: n_components = 0
        integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_component
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: component_id
        logical :: has_integral = .false.
        real(default) :: integral = 0
        real(default) :: error = 0
        real(default) :: weight_mci = 0
        type(counter_t) :: counter
    contains
        <Simulations: mci set: TBP>
    end type mci_set_t

```

Output.

```

<Simulations: mci set: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => mci_set_write

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine mci_set_write (object, unit)
        class(mci_set_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit)
        write (u, "(3x,A)") "Components:"
        do i = 1, object%n_components
            write (u, "(5x,I0,A,A,A)") object%i_component(i), &
                ":", "'", char (object%component_id(i)), "'"
        end do
        if (object%has_integral) then
            write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Integral = ", object%integral
            write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Error = ", object%error
            write (u, "(3x,A,F13.10)") "Weight = ", object%weight_mci
        else
            write (u, "(3x,A)") "Integral = [undefined]"
        end if
        call object%counter%write (u)
    end subroutine mci_set_write

```

Initialize: Get the indices and names for the process components that will contribute to this set.

```

<Simulations: mci set: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => mci_set_init

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine mci_set_init (object, i_mci, process)
  class(mci_set_t), intent(out) :: object
  integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
  type(process_t), intent(in), target :: process
  integer :: i
  call process%get_i_component (i_mci, object%i_component)
  object%n_components = size (object%i_component)
  allocate (object%component_id (object%n_components))
  do i = 1, size (object%component_id)
    object%component_id(i) = &
      process%get_component_id (object%i_component(i))
  end do
  if (process%has_integral (i_mci)) then
    object%integral = process%get_integral (i_mci)
    object%error = process%get_error (i_mci)
    object%has_integral = .true.
  end if
end subroutine mci_set_init

```

### 22.9.3 Process-core Safe

This is an object that temporarily holds a process core object. We need this while rescanning a process with modified parameters. After the rescan, we want to restore the original state.

*<Simulations: types>+≡*

```

type :: core_safe_t
  class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core
end type core_safe_t

```

### 22.9.4 Process Object

The simulation works on process objects. This subroutine makes a process object available for simulation. The process is in the process stack. If integration is not yet done, do it.

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine prepare_process (process, process_id, integrate, global)
  type(process_t), pointer, intent(out) :: process
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
  logical, intent(in) :: integrate
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  process => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (process_id)
  if (.not. associated (process)) then
    if (integrate) then
      call msg_message ("Simulate: process '" &
        // char (process_id) // "' needs integration")
    else
      call msg_message ("Simulate: process '" &
        // char (process_id) // "' needs initialization")
    end if
  end if

```



```

call integrate_process (process_id, global, init_only = .not. integrate)
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
process => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (process_id)
if (associated (process)) then
  if (integrate) then
    call msg_message ("Simulate: integration done")
    call global%process_stack%fill_result_vars (process_id)
  else
    call msg_message ("Simulate: process initialization done")
  end if
else
  call msg_fatal ("Simulate: process '" &
    // char (process_id) // "' could not be initialized: aborting")
end if
end if
end subroutine prepare_process

```

### 22.9.5 Simulation entry

For each process that we consider for event generation, we need a separate entry. The entry separately records the process ID and run ID. The `weight_mci` array is used for selecting a component set (which shares a MCI record inside the process container) when generating an event for the current process.

The simulation entry is an extension of the `event_t` event record. This core object contains configuration data, pointers to the process and process instance, the expressions, flags and values that are evaluated at runtime, and the resulting particle set.

The entry explicitly allocate the `process_instance`, which becomes the process-specific workspace for the event record.

If entries with differing environments are present simultaneously, we may need to switch QCD parameters and/or the model event by event. In this case, the `qcd` and/or `model` components are present.

*(Simulations: types)+≡*

```

type, extends (event_t) :: entry_t
private
type(string_t) :: process_id
type(string_t) :: library
type(string_t) :: run_id
logical :: has_integral = .false.
real(default) :: integral = 0
real(default) :: error = 0
real(default) :: process_weight = 0
logical :: valid = .false.
type(counter_t) :: counter
integer :: n_in = 0
integer :: n_mci = 0
type(mci_set_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: mci_set
type(selector_t) :: mci_selector
type(core_safe_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: core_safe
type(model_t), pointer :: model => null ()
type(qcd_t) :: qcd

```

```

contains
  <Simulations: entry: TBP>≡
end type entry_t

```

Output. Write just the configuration, the event is written by a separate routine.

The `verbose` option is unused, it is required by the interface of the base-object method.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write_config => entry_write_config

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine entry_write_config (object, unit)
    class(entry_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Process   = ", char (object%process_id), ""
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Library   = ", char (object%library), ""
    write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "Run       = ", char (object%run_id), ""
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "is valid = ", object%valid
    if (object%has_integral) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Integral = ", object%integral
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Error     = ", object%error
      write (u, "(3x,A,F13.10)") "Weight    = ", object%process_weight
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Integral = [undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MCI sets = ", object%n_mci
    call object%counter%write (u)
    do i = 1, size (object%mci_set)
      write (u, "(A)")
      write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "MCI set #", i, ":"
      call object%mci_set(i)%write (u)
    end do
    if (allocated (object%core_safe)) then
      do i = 1, size (object%core_safe)
        write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Saved process-component core #", i, ":"
        call object%core_safe(i)%core%write (u)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine entry_write_config

```

Finalizer. The `instance` pointer component of the `event_t` base type points to a target which we did explicitly allocate in the `entry_init` procedure. Therefore, we finalize and explicitly deallocate it here. Then we call the finalizer of the base type.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: final => entry_final

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine entry_final (object)
    class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: object
    integer :: i

```

```

if (associated (object%instance)) then
  do i = 1, object%n_mci
    call object%instance%final_simulation (i)
  end do
  call object%instance%final ()
  deallocate (object%instance)
end if
call object%event_t%final ()
end subroutine entry_final

```

Initialization. Search for a process entry and allocate a process instance as an anonymous object, temporarily accessible via the `process_instance` pointer. Assign data by looking at the process object and at the environment.

If `n_alt` is set, we prepare for additional alternate sqme and weight entries.

If the process object is not found initially: if `integrate` is set, attempt an integration pass and try again. Otherwise, just initialize the object.

If `generate` is set, prepare the MCI objects for generating new events. For pure rescanning, this is not necessary.

When done, we assign the `instance` and `process` pointers of the base type by the `connect` method, so we can reference them later.

*<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => entry_init

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine entry_init (entry, process_id, integrate, generate, global, n_alt)
  class(entry_t), intent(inout), target :: entry
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
  logical, intent(in) :: integrate, generate
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  integer, intent(in), optional :: n_alt
  type(process_t), pointer :: process
  type(process_instance_t), pointer :: process_instance
  class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
  integer :: i
  logical :: enable_qcd

  enable_qcd = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_active")) &
    .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_active")) &
    .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str &
      ("?hadronization_active")) &
    .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?mlm_matching")) &
    .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ckkw_matching")) &
    .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?muli_active"))

  call prepare_process (process, process_id, integrate, global)
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return

  if (.not. process%has_matrix_element ()) then
    entry%has_integral = .true.
    entry%process_id = process_id
    entry%valid = .false.
    return
  end if

```

```

call entry%basic_init (global%var_list, n_alt)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()

entry%process_id = process_id
entry%library = process%get_library_name ()
entry%run_id = process%get_run_id ()
entry%n_in = process%get_n_in ()
entry%n_mci = process%get_n_mci ()
allocate (entry%mci_set (entry%n_mci))
do i = 1, size (entry%mci_set)
    call entry%mci_set(i)%init (i, process)
end do
if (process%has_integral ()) then
    entry%integral = process%get_integral ()
    entry%error = process%get_error ()
    call entry%set_sigma (entry%integral)
    entry%has_integral = .true.
end if

call entry%set_selection (global%pn%selection_lexpr)
call entry%set_reweight (global%pn%reweight_expr)
call entry%set_analysis (global%pn%analysis_lexpr)
if (generate) then
    do i = 1, entry%n_mci
        call process%prepare_simulation (i)
        call process_instance%init_simulation (i, entry%config%safety_factor)
    end do
end if

if (process%contains_unstable (global%model)) then
    call dispatch_evt_decay (evt, global)
    if (associated (evt)) call entry%import_transform (evt)
end if

if (enable_qcd) then
    call dispatch_evt_shower (evt, global, process)
    if (associated (evt)) call entry%import_transform (evt)
end if

call entry%connect (process_instance, global%model, global%process_stack)
call entry%setup_expressions ()
entry%model => process%get_model_ptr ()
call dispatch_qcd (entry%qcd, global)
entry%valid = .true.

end subroutine entry_init

```

Compute weights. The integral in the argument is the sum of integrals for all processes in the sample. After computing the process weights, we repeat the

normalization procedure for the process components.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: init_mci_selector => entry_init_mci_selector

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine entry_init_mci_selector (entry)
    class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    integer :: i
    if (entry%has_integral) then
      call entry%mci_selector%init (entry%mci_set%integral)
      do i = 1, entry%n_mci
        entry%mci_set(i)%weight_mci = entry%mci_selector%get_weight (i)
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine entry_init_mci_selector

```

Select a MCI entry, using the embedded random-number generator.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: select_mci => entry_select_mci

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  function entry_select_mci (entry) result (i_mci)
    class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    integer :: i_mci
    call entry%mci_selector%generate (entry%rng, i_mci)
  end function entry_select_mci

```

Record an event for this entry, i.e., increment the appropriate counters.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: record => entry_record

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine entry_record (entry, i_mci, from_file)
    class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    integer, intent(in) :: i_mci
    logical, intent(in), optional :: from_file
    real(default) :: weight, excess
    weight = entry%weight_prc
    excess = entry%excess_prc
    call entry%counter%record (weight, excess, from_file)
    call entry%mci_set(i_mci)%counter%record (weight, excess)
  end subroutine entry_record

```

Update and restore the process core that this entry accesses, when parameters change. If explicit arguments `model`, `qcd`, or `helicity_selection` are provided, use those. Otherwise use the parameters stored in the process object.

```

<Simulations: entry: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: update_process => entry_update_process
  procedure :: restore_process => entry_restore_process

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine entry_update_process (entry, model, qcd, helicity_selection)
    class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
    type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model

```

```

type(qcd_t), intent(in), optional :: qcd
type(helicity_selection_t), intent(in), optional :: helicity_selection
type(process_t), pointer :: process
class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core
integer :: i, n_components
type(model_t), pointer :: model_local
type(qcd_t) :: qcd_local
if (present (model)) then
    model_local => model
else
    model_local => entry%model
end if
if (present (qcd)) then
    qcd_local = qcd
else
    qcd_local = entry%qcd
end if
process => entry%get_process_ptr ()
n_components = process%get_n_components ()
allocate (entry%core_safe (n_components))
do i = 1, n_components
    if (process%has_matrix_element (i)) then
        call process%extract_component_core (i, core)
        call dispatch_core_update (core, &
            model_local, helicity_selection, qcd_local, &
            entry%core_safe(i)%core)
        call process%restore_component_core (i, core)
    end if
end do
end subroutine entry_update_process

subroutine entry_restore_process (entry)
class(entry_t), intent(inout) :: entry
type(process_t), pointer :: process
class(prc_core_t), allocatable :: core
integer :: i, n_components
process => entry%get_process_ptr ()
n_components = process%get_n_components ()
do i = 1, n_components
    if (process%has_matrix_element (i)) then
        call process%extract_component_core (i, core)
        call dispatch_core_restore (core, entry%core_safe(i)%core)
        call process%restore_component_core (i, core)
    end if
end do
deallocate (entry%core_safe)
end subroutine entry_restore_process

```

## 22.9.6 Entries for alternative environment

Entries for alternate environments. [No additional components anymore, so somewhat redundant.]

```

<Simulations: types>+≡
  type, extends (entry_t) :: alt_entry_t
  contains
    <Simulations: alt entry: TBP>
  end type alt_entry_t

```

The alternative entries are there to re-evaluate the event, given momenta, in a different context.

Therefore, we allocate a local process object and use this as the reference for the local process instance, when initializing the entry. We temporarily import the `process` object into an `integration_t` wrapper, to take advantage of the associated methods. The local process object is built in the context of the current environment, here called `global`. Then, we initialize the process instance.

The `master_process` object contains the integration results to which we refer when recalculating an event. Therefore, we use this object instead of the locally built `process` when we extract the integration results.

The locally built `process` object should be finalized when done. It remains accessible via the `event_t` base object of `entry`, which contains pointers to the process and instance.

```

<Simulations: alt entry: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init_alt => alt_entry_init

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine alt_entry_init (entry, process_id, &
    master_process, global)
    class(alternative_t), intent(inout), target :: entry
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: process_id
    type(process_t), intent(in), target :: master_process
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(process_instance_t), pointer :: process_instance
    class(evt_t), pointer :: evt
    type(string_t) :: run_id
    type(integration_t) :: intg
    integer :: i
    logical :: enable_qcd

    enable_qcd = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_isr_active")) &
      .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ps_fsr_active")) &
      .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str &
        ("?hadronization_active")) &
      .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?mlm_matching")) &
      .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?ckkw_matching")) &
      .or. var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?muli_active"))

    call msg_message ("Simulate: initializing alternate process setup ...")

    run_id = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"))
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), &
      .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?check_phs_file"), &

```

```

        .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)

call dispatch_qcd (entry%qcd, global)
call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)

allocate (process)
call process%init (process_id, run_id, global%prclib, &
        global%os_data, entry%qcd, rng_factory, global%model_list)
call intg%setup_process (global, process)

call entry%basic_init (global%var_list)

allocate (process_instance)
call process_instance%init (process)
call process_instance%setup_event_data ()
entry%process_id = process_id
entry%library = process%get_library_name ()
entry%run_id = run_id
entry%n_mci = process%get_n_mci ()
allocate (entry%mci_set (entry%n_mci))
do i = 1, size (entry%mci_set)
    call entry%mci_set(i)%init (i, master_process)
end do
if (master_process%has_integral ()) then
    entry%integral = master_process%get_integral ()
    entry%error = master_process%get_error ()
    call entry%set_sigma (entry%integral)
    entry%has_integral = .true.
end if

call entry%set_selection (global%pn%selection_lexpr)
call entry%set_reweight (global%pn%reweight_expr)
call entry%set_analysis (global%pn%analysis_lexpr)

if (process%contains_unstable (global%model)) then
    call dispatch_evt_decay (evt, global)
    if (associated (evt)) call entry%import_transform (evt)
end if

if (enable_qcd) then
    call dispatch_evt_shower (evt, global)
    if (associated (evt)) call entry%import_transform (evt)
end if

call entry%connect (process_instance, global%model, global%process_stack)
call entry%setup_expressions ()

entry%model => process%get_model_ptr ()

call msg_message ("... alternate process setup complete.")

end subroutine alt_entry_init

```



Copy the particle set from the master entry to the alternate entry. This is the particle set of the hard process.

```

<Simulations: alt entry: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: fill_particle_set => entry_fill_particle_set

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine entry_fill_particle_set (alt_entry, entry)
        class(alt_entry_t), intent(inout) :: alt_entry
        class(entry_t), intent(in), target :: entry
        type(particle_set_t) :: pset
        call entry%get_particle_set_hard_proc (pset)
        call alt_entry%set_particle_set_hard_proc (pset)
        call particle_set_final (pset)
    end subroutine entry_fill_particle_set

```

## 22.9.7 The simulation type

Each simulation object corresponds to an event sample, identified by the `sample_id`.

The simulation may cover several processes simultaneously. All process-specific data, including the event records, are stored in the `entry` subobjects. The `current` index indicates which record was selected last. `version` is foreseen to contain a tag on the WHIZARD event file version. It can be

```

<Simulations: public>≡
    public :: simulation_t

<Simulations: types>+≡
    type :: simulation_t
        private
        type(string_t) :: sample_id
        logical :: unweighted = .true.
        logical :: negative_weights = .false.
        integer :: norm_mode = NORM_UNDEFINED
        logical :: pacify = .false.
        integer :: n_max_tries = 10000
        integer :: n_prc = 0
        integer :: n_alt = 0
        logical :: has_integral = .false.
        logical :: valid
        real(default) :: integral = 0
        real(default) :: error = 0
        integer :: version = 1
        character(32) :: md5sum_prc = ""
        character(32) :: md5sum_cfg = ""
        character(32), dimension(:), allocatable :: md5sum_alt
        type(entry_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
        type(alt_entry_t), dimension(:,:), allocatable :: alt_entry
        type(selector_t) :: process_selector
        integer :: n_evt_requested = 0
        integer :: split_n_evt = 0
        integer :: split_index = 0
        type(counter_t) :: counter

```

```

class(rng_t), allocatable :: rng
integer :: i_prc = 0
integer :: i_mci = 0
real(default) :: weight = 0
real(default) :: excess = 0
contains
  <Simulations: simulation: TBP>
end type simulation_t

```

Output. `write_config` writes just the configuration. `write` as a method of the base type `event_t` writes the current event and process instance, depending on options.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => simulation_write

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_write (object, unit)
    class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: object
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_separator_double (u)
    write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "Event sample: '", char (object%sample_id), "'
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Processes      = ", object%n_prc
    if (object%n_alt > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Alt.wgts      = ", object%n_alt
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Unweighted    = ", object%unweighted
    write (u, "(3x,A,A)") "Event norm    = ", &
      char (event_normalization_string (object%norm_mode))
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Neg. weights = ", object%negative_weights
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Pacify       = ", object%pacify
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Max. tries   = ", object%n_max_tries
    if (object%has_integral) then
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Integral      = ", object%integral
      write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Error         = ", object%error
    else
      write (u, "(3x,A)") "Integral      = [undefined]"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,L1)") "Sim. valid    = ", object%valid
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Ev.file ver. = ", object%version
    if (object%md5sum_prc /= "") then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (proc) = '", object%md5sum_prc, "'"
    end if
    if (object%md5sum_cfg /= "") then
      write (u, "(3x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (config) = '", object%md5sum_cfg, "'"
    end if
    write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Events requested = ", object%n_evt_requested
    if (object%split_n_evt > 0) then
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "Events per file = ", object%split_n_evt
      write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "First file index = ", object%split_index
    end if
    call object%counter%write (u)
    call write_separator (u)

```

```

if (object%i_prc /= 0) then
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Current event:"
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0,A,A)") "Process #", &
    object%i_prc, ": ", &
    char (object%entry(object%i_prc)%process_id)
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "MCI set #", object%i_mci
  write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Weight    = ", object%weight
  if (object%excess /= 0) &
    write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "Excess    = ", object%excess
else
  write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A,A)") "Current event: [undefined]"
end if
call write_separator (u)
if (allocated (object%rng)) then
  call object%rng%write (u)
else
  write (u, "(3x,A)") "Random-number generator: [undefined]"
end if
if (allocated (object%entry)) then
  do i = 1, size (object%entry)
    if (i == 1) then
      call write_separator_double (u)
    else
      call write_separator (u)
    end if
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "Process #", i, ":"
    call object%entry(i)%write_config (u)
  end do
end if
call write_separator_double (u)
end subroutine simulation_write

```

Write the current event record. If an explicit index is given, write that event record.

We implement writing to unit (event contents / debugging format) and writing to an eio event stream (storage). We include a `testflag` in order to suppress numerical noise in the testsuite.

*<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡*

```

generic :: write_event => write_event_unit
procedure :: write_event_unit => simulation_write_event_unit

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine simulation_write_event_unit (object, unit, i_prc, verbose, testflag)
  class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
  integer, intent(in), optional :: i_prc
  logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
  integer :: current
  if (present (i_prc)) then
    current = i_prc
  else
    current = object%i_prc
  end if

```

```

    if (current > 0) then
        call object%entry(current)%write (unit, verbose = verbose, &
            testflag = testflag)
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Simulation: write event: no process selected")
    end if
end subroutine simulation_write_event_unit

```

This writes one of the alternate events, if allocated.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_alt_event => simulation_write_alt_event

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine simulation_write_alt_event (object, unit, j_alt, i_prc, &
        verbose, testflag)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: object
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
        integer, intent(in), optional :: j_alt
        integer, intent(in), optional :: i_prc
        logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
        logical, intent(in), optional :: testflag
        integer :: i, j
        if (present (j_alt)) then
            j = j_alt
        else
            j = 1
        end if
        if (present (i_prc)) then
            i = i_prc
        else
            i = object%i_prc
        end if
        if (i > 0) then
            if (j > 0 .and. j <= object%n_alt) then
                call object%alt_entry(i,j)%write (unit, verbose = verbose, &
                    testflag = testflag)
            else
                call msg_fatal ("Simulation: write alternate event: out of range")
            end if
        else
            call msg_fatal ("Simulation: write alternate event: no process selected")
        end if
    end subroutine simulation_write_alt_event

```

Finalizer.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => simulation_final

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine simulation_final (object)
        class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: object
        integer :: i, j
        if (allocated (object%entry)) then
            do i = 1, size (object%entry)

```

```

        call object%entry(i)%final ()
    end do
end if
if (allocated (object%alt_entry)) then
    do j = 1, size (object%alt_entry, 2)
        do i = 1, size (object%alt_entry, 1)
            call object%alt_entry(i,j)%final ()
        end do
    end do
end if
if (allocated (object%rng)) call object%rng%final ()
end subroutine simulation_final

```

Initialization. We can deduce all data from the given list of process IDs and the global data set. The process objects are taken from the stack. Once the individual integrals are known, we add them (and the errors), to get the sample integral.

If there are alternative environments, we suspend initialization for setting up alternative process objects, then restore the master process and its parameters. The generator or rescanner can then switch rapidly between processes.

If **integrate** is set, we make sure that all affected processes are integrated before simulation. This is necessary if we want to actually generate events. If **integrate** is unset, we don't need the integral because we just rescan existing events. In that case, we just need compiled matrix elements.

If **generate** is set, we prepare for actually generating events. Otherwise, we may only read and rescan events.

*<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init => simulation_init

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine simulation_init &
    (simulation, process_id, integrate, generate, global, alt_env)
class(simulation_t), intent(out), target :: simulation
type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: process_id
logical, intent(in) :: integrate, generate
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(rt_data_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), target, optional :: alt_env
class(rng_factory_t), allocatable :: rng_factory
type(string_t) :: norm_string, version_string
integer :: i, j
simulation%sample_id = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("sample"))
simulation%unweighted = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("unweighted"))
simulation%negative_weights = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("negative_weights"))
version_string = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("event_file_version"))
norm_string = var_list_get_sval (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("sample_normalization"))
simulation%norm_mode = &
    event_normalization_mode (norm_string, simulation%unweighted)
simulation%pacify = var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, &

```

```

        var_str ("?sample_pacify"))
simulation%n_max_tries = var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, &
        var_str ("sample_max_tries"))
simulation%split_n_evt = var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, &
        var_str ("sample_split_n_evt"))
simulation%split_index = var_list_get_ival (global%var_list, &
        var_str ("sample_split_index"))
select case (size (process_id))
case (0)
    call msg_error ("Simulation: no process selected")
case (1)
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)" &
        "Starting simulation for process '", &
        char (process_id(1)), "'")
    call msg_message ()
case default
    write (msg_buffer, "(A,A,A)" &
        "Starting simulation for processes '", &
        char (process_id(1)), "' etc.")
    call msg_message ()
end select
select case (char (version_string))
case ("2.0","2.1")
    simulation%version = 0
case default
    simulation%version = 1
end select
if (simulation%version == 0) then
    call msg_fatal ("Event file formats older than version 2.2 are " &
        // "not compatible with this version.")
end if
simulation%n_prc = size (process_id)
allocate (simulation%entry (simulation%n_prc))
if (present (alt_env)) then
    simulation%n_alt = size (alt_env)
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
        call simulation%entry(i)%init &
            (process_id(i), integrate, generate, global, simulation%n_alt)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end do
    if (.not. any (simulation%entry%valid)) then
        call msg_error ("Simulate: no process has a valid matrix element.")
        simulation%valid = .false.
        return
    end if
    call simulation%update_processes ()
    allocate (simulation%alt_entry (simulation%n_prc, simulation%n_alt))
    allocate (simulation%md5sum_alt (simulation%n_alt))
    simulation%md5sum_alt = ""
    do j = 1, simulation%n_alt
        do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
            call simulation%alt_entry(i,j)%init_alt (process_id(i), &
                simulation%entry(i)%get_process_ptr (), alt_env(j))
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        end do
    end do
end if

```

```

        end do
    end do
    call simulation%restore_processes ()
else
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
        call simulation%entry(i)%init &
            (process_id(i), integrate, generate, global)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end do
    if (.not. any (simulation%entry%valid)) then
        call msg_error ("Simulate: " &
            // "no process has a valid matrix element.")
        simulation%valid = .false.
        return
    end if
end if
call dispatch_rng_factory (rng_factory, global)
call rng_factory%make (simulation%rng)
if (all (simulation%entry%has_integral)) then
    simulation%integral = sum (simulation%entry%integral)
    simulation%error = sqrt (sum (simulation%entry%error ** 2))
    simulation%has_integral = .true.
    if (integrate .and. generate) then
        do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
            if (simulation%entry(i)%integral < 0 .and. .not. &
                simulation%negative_weights) then
                call msg_fatal ("Integral of process '" // &
                    char (process_id (i)) // "'is negative.")
            end if
        end do
    end if
else
    if (integrate .and. generate) &
        call msg_error ("Simulation contains undefined integrals.")
end if
if (simulation%integral > 0 .or. &
    (simulation%integral < 0 .and. simulation%negative_weights)) then
    simulation%valid = .true.
else if (generate) then
    call msg_error ("Simulate: " &
        // "sum of process integrals must be positive; skipping.")
    simulation%valid = .false.
    return
end if
if (simulation%valid) call simulation%compute_md5sum ()
end subroutine simulation_init

```

The number of events that we want to simulate is determined by the settings of `n_events`, `luminosity`, and `?unweighted`. For weighted events, we take `n_events` at face value as the number of matrix element calls. For unweighted events, if the process is a decay, `n_events` is the number of unweighted events. In these cases, the `luminosity` setting is ignored.

For unweighted events with a scattering process, we calculate the event num-

ber that corresponds to the luminosity, given the current value of the integral. We then compare this with `n_events` and choose the larger number.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_n_events => simulation_compute_n_events

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_compute_n_events (simulation, n_events, var_list)
    class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
    integer, intent(out) :: n_events
    type(var_list_t) :: var_list
    real(default) :: lumi, x_events_lumi
    integer :: n_events_lumi
    logical :: is_scattering
    n_events = var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("n_events"))
    lumi = var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("luminosity"))
    if (simulation%unweighted) then
      is_scattering = simulation%entry(1)%n_in == 2
      if (is_scattering) then
        x_events_lumi = abs (simulation%integral * lumi)
        if (x_events_lumi < huge (n_events)) then
          n_events_lumi = nint (x_events_lumi)
        else
          call msg_message ("Simulation: luminosity too large, &
            &limiting number of events")
          n_events_lumi = huge (n_events)
        end if
      if (n_events_lumi > n_events) then
        call msg_message ("Simulation: using n_events as computed from &
          &luminosity value")
        n_events = n_events_lumi
      else
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0)") &
          "Simulation: requested number of events =", n_events
        call msg_message ()
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,ES11.4)") &
          "          corr. to luminosity [fb-1] =", &
            n_events / simulation%integral
        call msg_message ()
      end if
    end if
  end if
end if
end subroutine simulation_compute_n_events

```

Compute the checksum of the process set. We retrieve the MD5 sums of all processes. This depends only on the process definitions, while parameters are not considered. The configuration checksum is retrieved from the MCI records in the process objects and furthermore includes beams, parameters, integration results, etc., so matching the latter should guarantee identical physics.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compute_md5sum => simulation_compute_md5sum

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_compute_md5sum (simulation)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation

```



```

type(process_t), pointer :: process
type(string_t) :: buffer
integer :: j, i, n_mci, i_mci, n_component, i_component
if (simulation%md5sum_prc == "") then
  buffer = ""
  do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
    if (.not. simulation%entry(i)%valid) cycle
    process => simulation%entry(i)%get_process_ptr ()
    n_component = process%get_n_components ()
    do i_component = 1, n_component
      if (process%has_matrix_element (i_component)) then
        buffer = buffer // process%get_md5sum_prc (i_component)
      end if
    end do
  end do
  simulation%md5sum_prc = md5sum (char (buffer))
end if
if (simulation%md5sum_cfg == "") then
  buffer = ""
  do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
    if (.not. simulation%entry(i)%valid) cycle
    process => simulation%entry(i)%get_process_ptr ()
    n_mci = process%get_n_mci ()
    do i_mci = 1, n_mci
      buffer = buffer // process%get_md5sum_mci (i_mci)
    end do
  end do
  simulation%md5sum_cfg = md5sum (char (buffer))
end if
do j = 1, simulation%n_alt
  if (simulation%md5sum_alt(j) == "") then
    buffer = ""
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
      process => simulation%alt_entry(i,j)%get_process_ptr ()
      buffer = buffer // process%get_md5sum_cfg ()
    end do
    simulation%md5sum_alt(j) = md5sum (char (buffer))
  end if
end do
end subroutine simulation_compute_md5sum

```

Initialize the process selector, using the entry integrals as process weights.

*<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: init_process_selector => simulation_init_process_selector

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine simulation_init_process_selector (simulation)
  class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
  integer :: i
  if (simulation%has_integral) then
    call simulation%process_selector%init (simulation%entry%integral)
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
      associate (entry => simulation%entry(i))
        if (.not. entry%valid) then

```

```

        call msg_warning ("Process '" // char (entry%process_id) // &
            "' : matrix element vanishes, no events can be generated.")
        cycle
    end if
    call entry%init_mci_selector ()
    entry%process_weight = simulation%process_selector%get_weight (i)
end associate
end do
end if
end subroutine simulation_init_process_selector

```

Select a process, using the random-number generator.

```

⟨Simulations: simulation: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: select_prc => simulation_select_prc

⟨Simulations: procedures⟩+≡
    function simulation_select_prc (simulation) result (i_prc)
        class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
        integer :: i_prc
        call simulation%process_selector%generate (simulation%rng, i_prc)
    end function simulation_select_prc

```

Select a MCI set for the selected process.

```

⟨Simulations: simulation: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: select_mci => simulation_select_mci

⟨Simulations: procedures⟩+≡
    function simulation_select_mci (simulation) result (i_mci)
        class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
        integer :: i_mci
        if (simulation%i_prc /= 0) then
            i_mci = simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc)%select_mci ()
        end if
    end function simulation_select_mci

```

Generate a predefined number of events. First select a process and a component set, then generate an event for that process and factorize the quantum state. The pair of random numbers can be used for factorization.

When generating events, we drop all configurations where the event is marked as incomplete. This happens if the event fails cuts. In fact, such events are dropped already by the sampler if unweighting is in effect, so this can happen only for weighted events. By setting a limit given by `sample_max_tries` (user parameter), we can avoid an endless loop.

```

⟨Simulations: simulation: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: generate => simulation_generate

⟨Simulations: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine simulation_generate (simulation, n, es_array)
        class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
        integer, intent(in) :: n
        type(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout), optional :: es_array
        type(string_t) :: str1, str2, str3
        logical :: generate_new
    end subroutine simulation_generate

```

```

integer :: i, j
simulation%n_evt_requested = n
call simulation%entry%set_n (n)
if (simulation%n_alt > 0) call simulation%alt_entry%set_n (n)
str1 = "Events: generating"
if (present (es_array)) then
    if (es_array%has_input ()) str1 = "Events: reading"
end if
if (simulation%entry(1)%config%unweighted) then
    str2 = "unweighted"
else
    str2 = "weighted"
end if
if (simulation%entry(1)%config%factorization_mode == &
    FM_IGNORE_HELICITY) then
    str3 = ", unpolarized"
else
    str3 = ", polarized"
end if
write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A,1x,A)") char (str1), n, &
    char (str2) // char(str3), "events ..."
call msg_message ()
write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,A)") "Events: event normalization mode", &
    char (event_normalization_string (simulation%norm_mode))
call msg_message ()
do i = 1, n
    if (present (es_array)) then
        call simulation%read_event (es_array, .true., generate_new)
    else
        generate_new = .true.
    end if
    if (generate_new) then
        simulation%i_prc = simulation%select_prc ()
        simulation%i_mci = simulation%select_mci ()
        associate (entry => simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
            do j = 1, simulation%n_max_tries
                if (.not. entry%valid) call msg_warning &
                    ("Process '" // char (entry%process_id) // "': " // &
                    "matrix element vanishes, no events can be generated.")
                call entry%generate (simulation%i_mci)
                if (signal_is_pending ()) return
                if (entry%particle_set_exists) exit
            end do
            if (.not. entry%particle_set_exists) then
                write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0,A)") "Simulation: failed to &
                    &generate valid event after ", &
                    simulation%n_max_tries, " tries (sample_max_tries)"
                call msg_fatal ()
            end if
            call entry%evaluate_expressions ()
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            simulation%weight = entry%weight_ref
            simulation%excess = entry%excess_prc
            call simulation%counter%record &

```

```

        (simulation%weight, simulation%excess)
        call entry%record (simulation%i_mci)
    end associate
else
    associate (entry => simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
        call entry%accept_sqme_ref ()
        call entry%accept_weight_ref ()
        call entry%check ()
        call entry%evaluate_expressions ()
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        simulation%weight = entry%weight_ref
        simulation%excess = entry%excess_prc
        call simulation%counter%record &
            (simulation%weight, simulation%excess, from_file=.true.)
        call entry%record (simulation%i_mci, from_file=.true.)
    end associate
end if
call simulation%calculate_alt_entries ()
if (signal_is_pending ()) return
if (simulation%pacify) call pacify (simulation)
if (present (es_array)) then
    call simulation%write_event (es_array)
end if
end do
call msg_message ("          ... event sample complete.")
call simulation%counter%show_excess ()
end subroutine simulation_generate

```

Compute the event matrix element and weight for all alternative environments, given the current event and selected process. We first copy the particle set, then temporarily update the process core with local parameters, recalculate everything, and restore the process core.

The event weight is obtained by rescaling the original event weight with the ratio of the new and old `sqme` values. (In particular, if the old value was zero, the weight will stay zero.)

Note: this may turn out to be inefficient because we always replace all parameters and recalculate everything, once for each event and environment. However, a more fine-grained control requires more code. In any case, while we may keep multiple process cores (which stay constant for a simulation run), we still have to update the external matrix element parameters event by event. The matrix element “object” is present only once.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: calculate_alt_entries => simulation_calculate_alt_entries

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    subroutine simulation_calculate_alt_entries (simulation)
        class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
        real(default) :: factor
        real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: sqme_alt, weight_alt
        integer :: n_alt, i, j
        i = simulation%i_prc
        n_alt = simulation%n_alt
        if (n_alt == 0) return

```

```

allocate (sqme_alt (n_alt), weight_alt (n_alt))
associate (entry => simulation%entry(i))
  do j = 1, n_alt
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    factor = entry%get_kinematical_weight ()
    associate (alt_entry => simulation%alt_entry(i,j))
      call alt_entry%update_process ()
      call alt_entry%select &
        (entry%get_i_mci (), entry%get_i_term (), entry%get_channel ())
      call alt_entry%fill_particle_set (entry)
      call alt_entry%recalculate &
        (update_sqme = .true., weight_factor = factor)
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
      call alt_entry%accept_sqme_prc ()
      call alt_entry%update_normalization ()
      call alt_entry%accept_weight_prc ()
      call alt_entry%check ()
      call alt_entry%evaluate_expressions ()
      if (signal_is_pending ()) return
      call alt_entry%restore_process ()
      sqme_alt(j) = alt_entry%sqme_ref
      weight_alt(j) = alt_entry%weight_ref
    end associate
  end do
  call entry%set (sqme_alt = sqme_alt, weight_alt = weight_alt)
  call entry%check ()
  call entry%store_alt_values ()
end associate
end subroutine simulation_calculate_alt_entries

```

Rescan an undefined number of events.

If `update_event` or `update_sqme` is set, we have to recalculate the event, starting from the particle set. If the latter is set, this includes the squared matrix element (i.e., the amplitude is evaluated). Otherwise, only kinematics and observables derived from it are recovered.

If any of the update flags is set, we will come up with separate `sqme_prc` and `weight_prc` values. (The latter is only distinct if `update_weight` is set.) Otherwise, we accept the reference values.

*<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: rescan => simulation_rescan
```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine simulation_rescan &
  (simulation, n, es_array, update_event, update_sqme, update_weight, &
   recover_beams, global)
class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
integer, intent(in) :: n
type(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
logical, intent(in) :: update_event, update_sqme, update_weight
logical, intent(in) :: recover_beams
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
type(qcd_t) :: qcd
type(string_t) :: str1, str2, str3

```

```

logical :: complete
str1 = "Rescanning"
if (simulation%entry(1)%config%unweighted) then
    str2 = "unweighted"
else
    str2 = "weighted"
end if
simulation%n_evt_requested = n
call simulation%entry%set_n (n)
if (update_sqme .or. update_weight) then
    call dispatch_qcd (qcd, global)
    call simulation%update_processes &
        (global%model, qcd, global%get_helicity_selection ())
    str3 = "(process parameters updated) "
else
    str3 = ""
end if
write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,A,1x,A,A,A)") char (str1), char (str2), &
    "events ", char (str3), "..."
call msg_message ()
do
    call simulation%read_event (es_array, .false., complete)
    if (complete) exit
    if (update_event .or. update_sqme .or. update_weight) then
        call simulation%recalculate (update_sqme, update_weight, &
            recover_beams)
        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
        associate (entry => simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
            call entry%update_normalization ()
            call entry%check ()
            call entry%evaluate_expressions ()
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            simulation%weight = entry%weight_prc
            call simulation%counter%record (simulation%weight, from_file=.true.)
            call entry%record (simulation%i_mci, from_file=.true.)
        end associate
    else
        associate (entry => simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
            call entry%accept_sqme_ref ()
            call entry%accept_weight_ref ()
            call entry%check ()
            call entry%evaluate_expressions ()
            if (signal_is_pending ()) return
            simulation%weight = entry%weight_ref
            call simulation%counter%record (simulation%weight, from_file=.true.)
            call entry%record (simulation%i_mci, from_file=.true.)
        end associate
    end if
    call simulation%calculate_alt_entries ()
    if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    call simulation%write_event (es_array)
end do
if (update_sqme .or. update_weight) then
    call simulation%restore_processes ()

```

```

    end if
end subroutine simulation_rescan

```

These routines take care of temporary parameter redefinitions that we want to take effect while recalculating the matrix elements. We extract the core(s) of the processes that we are simulating, apply the changes, and make sure that the changes are actually used. This is the duty of `dispatch_core_update`. When done, we restore the original versions using `dispatch_core_restore`.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: update_processes => simulation_update_processes
  procedure :: restore_processes => simulation_restore_processes

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_update_processes (simulation, &
    model, qcd, helicity_selection)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
    type(model_t), intent(in), optional, target :: model
    type(qcd_t), intent(in), optional :: qcd
    type(helicity_selection_t), intent(in), optional :: helicity_selection
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
      call simulation%entry(i)%update_process (model, qcd, helicity_selection)
    end do
  end subroutine simulation_update_processes

  subroutine simulation_restore_processes (simulation)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
      call simulation%entry(i)%restore_process ()
    end do
  end subroutine simulation_restore_processes

```

## 22.9.8 Event Stream I/O

Write an event to a generic `eio` event stream. The process index must be selected, or the current index must be available.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  generic :: write_event => write_event_eio
  procedure :: write_event_eio => simulation_write_event_eio

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_write_event_eio (object, eio, i_prc)
    class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: object
    class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer, intent(in), optional :: i_prc
    integer :: current
    if (present (i_prc)) then
      current = i_prc
    else
      current = object%i_prc
    end if
  end subroutine

```

```

if (current > 0) then
  if (object%split_n_evt > 0) then
    if (object%counter%total > 1 .and. &
        mod (object%counter%total, object%split_n_evt) == 1) then
      call eio%split_out ()
    end if
  end if
  call eio%output (object%entry(current)%event_t, current)
else
  call msg_fatal ("Simulation: write event: no process selected")
end if
end subroutine simulation_write_event_eio

```

Read an event from a generic eio event stream. The event stream element must specify the process within the sample (*i\_prc*), the MC group for this process (*i\_mci*), the selected term (*i\_term*), the selected MC integration **channel**, and the particle set of the event.

We may encounter EOF, which we indicate by storing 0 for the process index *i\_prc*. An I/O error will be reported, and we also abort reading.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  generic :: read_event => read_event_eio
  procedure :: read_event_eio => simulation_read_event_eio

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine simulation_read_event_eio (object, eio)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: object
    class(eio_t), intent(inout) :: eio
    integer :: iostat, current
    call eio%input_i_prc (current, iostat)
    select case (iostat)
    case (0)
      object%i_prc = current
      call eio%input_event (object%entry(current)%event_t, iostat)
    end select
    select case (iostat)
    case (:-1)
      object%i_prc = 0
      object%i_mci = 0
    case (1:)
      call msg_error ("Reading events: I/O error, aborting read")
      object%i_prc = 0
      object%i_mci = 0
    case default
      object%i_mci = object%entry(current)%get_i_mci ()
    end select
  end subroutine simulation_read_event_eio

```

## 22.9.9 Event Stream Array

Write an event using an array of event I/O streams. The process index must be selected, or the current index must be available.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡

```



```

generic :: write_event => write_event_es_array
procedure :: write_event_es_array => simulation_write_event_es_array

<Simulations: procedures>+=
subroutine simulation_write_event_es_array (object, es_array)
  class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: object
  class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
  integer :: i_prc, event_index
  i_prc = object%i_prc
  if (i_prc > 0) then
    event_index = object%counter%total
    call es_array%output (object%entry(i_prc)%event_t, i_prc, event_index)
  else
    call msg_fatal ("Simulation: write event: no process selected")
  end if
end subroutine simulation_write_event_es_array

```

Read an event using an array of event I/O streams. Reading is successful if there is an input stream within the array, and if a valid event can be read from that stream. If there is a stream, but EOF is passed when reading the first item, we switch the channel to output and return failure but no error message, such that new events can be appended to that stream.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+=
generic :: read_event => read_event_es_array
procedure :: read_event_es_array => simulation_read_event_es_array

<Simulations: procedures>+=
subroutine simulation_read_event_es_array (object, es_array, enable_switch, &
  fail)
  class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: object
  class(event_stream_array_t), intent(inout) :: es_array
  logical, intent(in) :: enable_switch
  logical, intent(out) :: fail
  integer :: iostat, i_prc
  if (es_array%has_input ()) then
    fail = .false.
    call es_array%input_i_prc (i_prc, iostat)
    select case (iostat)
    case (0)
      object%i_prc = i_prc
      call es_array%input_event (object%entry(i_prc)%event_t, iostat)
    case (:-1)
      write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)" &
        "... event file terminates after", &
        object%counter%read, "events."
      call msg_message ()
      if (enable_switch) then
        call es_array%switch_inout ()
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)" &
          "Generating remaining ", &
          object%n_evt_requested - object%counter%read, "events ..."
        call msg_message ()
      end if
      fail = .true.
    end select
  else
    fail = .true.
  end if
end subroutine simulation_read_event_es_array

```

```

        return
    end select
    select case (iostat)
    case (0)
        object%i_mci = object%entry(i_prc)%get_i_mci ()
    case default
        write (msg_buffer, "(A,1x,I0,1x,A)" &
            "Reading events: I/O error, aborting read after", &
            object%counter%read, "events."
        call msg_error ()
        object%i_prc = 0
        object%i_mci = 0
        fail = .true.
    end select
else
    fail = .true.
end if
end subroutine simulation_read_event_es_array

```

### 22.9.10 Recover event

Recalculate the process instance contents, given an event with known particle set. The indices for MC, term, and channel must be already set. The `recalculate` method of the selected entry will import the result into `sqme_prc` and `weight_prc`.

*<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: recalculate => simulation_recalculate

```

*<Simulations: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine simulation_recalculate (simulation, update_sqme, update_weight, &
        recover_beams)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
    logical, intent(in) :: update_sqme, update_weight
    logical, intent(in), optional :: recover_beams
    integer :: i_prc
    i_prc = simulation%i_prc
    associate (entry => simulation%entry(i_prc))
    if (update_weight) then
        call simulation%entry(i_prc)%recalculate &
            (update_sqme = update_sqme, recover_beams = recover_beams, &
            weight_factor = entry%get_kinematical_weight ())
    else
        call simulation%entry(i_prc)%recalculate &
            (update_sqme = update_sqme, recover_beams = recover_beams)
    end if
    end associate
end subroutine simulation_recalculate

```

### 22.9.11 Extract contents

Return an array of pointers to the currently selected processes.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_process_ptr => simulation_get_process_ptr

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    function simulation_get_process_ptr (simulation) result (ptr)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
        type(process_ptr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: ptr
        integer :: i
        allocate (ptr (simulation%n_prc))
        do i = 1, size (ptr)
            ptr(i)%ptr => simulation%entry(i)%get_process_ptr ()
        end do
    end function simulation_get_process_ptr

```

Return the MD5 sum that summarizes configuration and integration (but not the event file). Used for initializing the event streams.

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_md5sum_prc => simulation_get_md5sum_prc
    procedure :: get_md5sum_cfg => simulation_get_md5sum_cfg
    procedure :: get_md5sum_alt => simulation_get_md5sum_alt

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    function simulation_get_md5sum_prc (simulation) result (md5sum)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
        character(32) :: md5sum
        md5sum = simulation%md5sum_prc
    end function simulation_get_md5sum_prc

    function simulation_get_md5sum_cfg (simulation) result (md5sum)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
        character(32) :: md5sum
        md5sum = simulation%md5sum_cfg
    end function simulation_get_md5sum_cfg

    function simulation_get_md5sum_alt (simulation, i) result (md5sum)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        character(32) :: md5sum
        md5sum = simulation%md5sum_alt(i)
    end function simulation_get_md5sum_alt

```

Return data that may be useful for writing event files..

```

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: get_data => simulation_get_data

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
    function simulation_get_data (simulation, alt) result (data)
        class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
        logical, intent(in), optional :: alt
        type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
        type(process_t), pointer :: process
        type(beam_data_t), pointer :: beam_data
        integer :: n, i
        logical :: enable_alt

```

```

enable_alt = .true.; if (present (alt)) enable_alt = alt
process => simulation%entry(1)%get_process_ptr ()
beam_data => process%get_beam_data_ptr ()
if (enable_alt) then
  call data%init (simulation%n_prc, simulation%n_alt)
  do i = 1, simulation%n_alt
    data%md5sum_alt(i) = simulation%get_md5sum_alt (i)
  end do
else
  call data%init (simulation%n_prc)
end if
data%unweighted = simulation%unweighted
data%negative_weights = simulation%negative_weights
data%norm_mode = simulation%norm_mode
n = beam_data_get_n_in (beam_data)
data%n_beam = n
data%pdg_beam(:n) = flavor_get_pdg (beam_data_get_flavor (beam_data))
data%energy_beam(:n) = beam_data_get_energy (beam_data)
do i = 1, simulation%n_prc
  if (.not. simulation%entry(i)%valid) cycle
  process => simulation%entry(i)%get_process_ptr ()
  data%proc_num_id(i) = process%get_num_id ()
  if (data%proc_num_id(i) == 0) data%proc_num_id(i) = i
  if (simulation%entry(i)%has_integral) then
    data%cross_section(i) = simulation%entry(i)%integral
    data%error(i) = simulation%entry(i)%error
  end if
end do
data%total_cross_section = sum (data%cross_section)
data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
if (simulation%split_n_evt > 0) then
  data%split_n_evt = simulation%split_n_evt
  data%split_index = simulation%split_index
end if
end function simulation_get_data

```

Return a default name for the current event sample. This is the process ID of the first process.

*(Simulations: simulation: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: get_default_sample_name => simulation_get_default_sample_name
```

*(Simulations: procedures)+≡*

```

function simulation_get_default_sample_name (simulation) result (sample)
  class(simulation_t), intent(in) :: simulation
  type(string_t) :: sample
  type(process_t), pointer :: process
  sample = "whizard"
  if (simulation%n_prc > 0) then
    process => simulation%entry(1)%get_process_ptr ()
    if (associated (process)) then
      sample = process%get_id ()
    end if
  end if
end if

```

```

end function simulation_get_default_sample_name

<Simulations: simulation: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: is_valid => simulation_is_valid

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  function simulation_is_valid (simulation) result (valid)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
    logical :: valid
    valid = simulation%valid
  end function simulation_is_valid

```

### 22.9.12 Auxiliary

Call pacify: eliminate numerical noise.

```

<Simulations: interfaces>≡
  interface pacify
    module procedure pacify_simulation
  end interface

<Simulations: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pacify_simulation (simulation)
    class(simulation_t), intent(inout) :: simulation
    integer :: i, j
    i = simulation%i_prc
    if (i > 0) then
      call pacify (simulation%entry(i))
      do j = 1, simulation%n_alt
        call pacify (simulation%alt_entry(i,j))
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine pacify_simulation

```

### 22.9.13 Test

This is the master for calling self-test procedures.

```

<Simulations: public>+≡
  public :: simulations_test

<Simulations: tests>≡
  subroutine simulations_test (u, results)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
  <Simulations: execute tests>
  end subroutine simulations_test

```

## Initialization

Initialize a `simulation_t` object, including the embedded event records.

```
<Simulations: execute tests>≡
    call test (simulations_1, "simulations_1", &
               "initialization", &
               u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
    subroutine simulations_1 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, procname2
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(simulation_t), target :: simulation

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_1"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: initialize simulation"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_model_file_init ()

        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_omp"), &
                               .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
                               0, is_known = .true.)

        libname = "simulation_1a"
        procname1 = "simulation_1p"

        call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
        call compile_library (libname, global)

        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
                                   var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
                                   var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
                                   var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
                               .false., is_known = .true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
                               .false., is_known = .true.)

        call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
                                1000._default, is_known = .true.)

        call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("run_id"), &
                                   var_str ("simulations1"), is_known = .true.)
        call integrate_process (procname1, global)
```

```

libname = "simulation_1b"
procname2 = "sim_extra"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname2])
call compile_library (libname, global)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("simulations2"), is_known = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_sample"), &
    var_str ("sim1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname2, global)

call simulation%init ([procname1, procname2], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the first process"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%write_event (u, i_prc = 1)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_1"

end subroutine simulations_1

```

## Weighted events

Generate events for a single process.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (simulations_2, "simulations_2", &
        "weighted events", &
        u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
subroutine simulations_2 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(simulation_t), target :: simulation
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_2"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate events for a single process"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_2a"
procname1 = "simulation_2p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("simulations1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data = simulation%get_data ()

```



```

call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate three events"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (3)
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the last event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_2"

end subroutine simulations_2

```

## Unweighted events

Generate events for a single process.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (simulations_3, "simulations_3", &
    "unweighted events", &
    u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
  subroutine simulations_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(simulation_t), target :: simulation
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate unweighted events &
      &for a single process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()

```

```

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_omp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_3a"
procname1 = "simulation_3p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("simulations1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data = simulation%get_data ()
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate three events"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (3)
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the last event"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_3"

end subroutine simulations_3

```

## Simulating process with structure functions

Generate events for a single process.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+=
call test (simulations_4, "simulations_4", &
  "process with structure functions", &
  u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+=
subroutine simulations_4 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: libname, procname1
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  type(simulation_t), target :: simulation
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_4"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events for a single process &
    &with structure functions"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call syntax_phs_forest_init ()

  call global%global_init ()
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

  libname = "simulation_4a"
  procname1 = "simulation_4p"

  call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
  call compile_library (libname, global)

```

```

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)
call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_sample"), &
    var_str ("simulations4"), is_known = .true.)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data = simulation%get_data ()
call data%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate three events"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (3)
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the last event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_4"

end subroutine simulations_4

```

## Event I/O

Generate event for a test process, write to file and reread.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (simulations_5, "simulations_5", &
    "raw event I/O", &
    u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
  subroutine simulations_5 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
    class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
    type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_5"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events for a single process"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*           write to file and reread"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &

```

```

        .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_5a"
procname1 = "simulation_5p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("simulations5"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations5"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("sample"), &
    sample, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize raw event file"
write (u, "(A)")

process_ptr%ptr => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)

allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1)
call simulation%write_event (u)
call simulation%write_event (eio)

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event from file"
write (u, "(A)")

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()
allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)
call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])

call simulation%read_event (eio)
call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recalculate process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%recalculate (update_sqme = .true., update_weight = .true.)
call simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc)%evaluate_expressions ()
call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_5"

end subroutine simulations_5

```

## Event I/O

Generate event for a real process with structure functions, write to file and reread.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
call test (simulations_6, "simulations_6", &
  "raw event I/O with structure functions", &
  u, results)

```

*<Simulations: tests>+≡*

```

subroutine simulations_6 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation
  type(flavor_t) :: flv

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_6"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate events for a single process"
  write (u, "(A)")  "*               write to file and reread"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and integrate"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  call global%global_init ()
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

  libname = "simulation_6"
  procname1 = "simulation_6p"

  call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
  call compile_library (libname, global)

  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

  call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

```



```

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)
call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations6"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_sample"), &
    sample, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize raw event file"
write (u, "(A)")

process_ptr%ptr => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)

allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1)
call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)
call simulation%write_event (eio)

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event from file"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

```

```

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()
allocate (eio_raw_t :: eio)
call eio%init_in (sample, [process_ptr])

call simulation%read_event (eio)
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Recalculate process instance"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%recalculate (update_sqme = .true., update_weight = .true.)
call simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc)%evaluate_expressions ()
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call eio%final ()
call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_6"

end subroutine simulations_6

```

## Automatic Event I/O

Generate events with raw-format event file as cache: generate, reread, append.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (simulations_7, "simulations_7", &
    "automatic raw event I/O", &
    u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
  subroutine simulations_7 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
    type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation
    type(flavor_t) :: flv

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_7"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate events for a single process"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*               write to file and reread"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_7"
procname1 = "simulation_7p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)
call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations7"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("sample"), &
    sample, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize raw event file"
write (u, "(A)")

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
call es_array%init &
    (sample, [var_str ("raw")], simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, &
    data)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1, es_array)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event from file and generate another one"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .false., is_known = .true.)

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
call es_array%init (sample, &
    empty_string_array, simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, data, &
    input = var_str ("raw"))

call simulation%generate (2, es_array)

call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))

```

```

call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true.)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read both events from file"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
call es_array%init (sample, &
    empty_string_array, simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, data, &
    input = var_str ("raw"))

call simulation%generate (2, es_array)

call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_7"

end subroutine simulations_7

```

## Rescanning Events

Generate events and rescan the resulting raw event file.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (simulations_8, "simulations_8", &
        "rescan raw event file", &
        u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
subroutine simulations_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global

```

```

type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation
type(flavor_t) :: flv

write (u, "(A)")  "*" Test output: simulations_8"
write (u, "(A)")  "*" Purpose: generate events for a single process"
write (u, "(A)")  "*"           write to file and rescan"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "*" Initialize process and integrate"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_omp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_8"
procname1 = "simulation_8p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &

```

```

0._default, is_known = .true.)

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)
call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations8"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$_sample"), &
    sample, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize raw event file"
write (u, "(A)")

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (proc)   = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
call es_array%init &
    (sample, [var_str ("raw")], simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, &
    data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1, es_array)

call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Re-read the event from file"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .false., .false., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = ""
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (proc) = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
call es_array%init (sample, &
    empty_string_array, simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, data, &
    input = var_str ("raw"), input_sample = sample, allow_switch = .false.)

call simulation%rescan (1, es_array, &
    update_event = .false., &
    update_sqme = .false., &
    update_weight = .false., &
    recover_beams = .false., &
    global = global)

write (u, "(A)")

call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)") "* Re-read again and recalculate"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .false., .false., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = ""
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (proc) = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)") "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
call es_array%init (sample, &
    empty_string_array, simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, data, &
    input = var_str ("raw"), input_sample = sample, allow_switch = .false.)

call simulation%rescan (1, es_array, &
    update_event = .true., &
    update_sqme = .true., &
    update_weight = .false., &
    recover_beams = .false., &
    global = global)

```



```

write (u, "(A)")

call pacify (simulation%entry(simulation%i_prc))
call simulation%write_event (u, verbose = .true., testflag = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_8"

end subroutine simulations_8

```

## Rescanning Check

Generate events and rescan with process mismatch.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
  call test (simulations_9, "simulations_9", &
    "rescan mismatch", &
    u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
  subroutine simulations_9 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: empty_string_array
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
    type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
    type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    logical :: error

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_9"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: generate events for a single process"
    write (u, "(A)")  "*               write to file and rescan"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize process and integrate"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()

    call global%global_init ()
    call global%init_fallback_model &
      (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &

```

```

        .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

libname = "simulation_9"
procname1 = "simulation_9p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("wood"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("vamp"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?use_vamp_equivalences"), &
    .true., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)
call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name ([flv, flv]), [1])
call global%beam_structure%set_sf (1, 1, var_str ("sf_test_1"))

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations9"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("sample"), &

```

```

        sample, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize raw event file"
write (u, "(A)")

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = simulation%get_md5sum_cfg ()
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (proc)  = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
call es_array%init &
    (sample, [var_str ("raw")], simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, &
    data)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1, es_array)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation for different parameters"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()

allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1, procname1], .false., .false., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Attempt to re-read the events (should fail)"
write (u, "(A)")

data%md5sum_prc = simulation%get_md5sum_prc ()
data%md5sum_cfg = ""
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (proc)  = '", data%md5sum_prc, "'"
write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)")  "MD5 sum (config) = '", data%md5sum_cfg, "'"
call es_array%init (sample, &
    empty_string_array, simulation%get_process_ptr (), global, data, &
    input = var_str ("raw"), input_sample = sample, &
    allow_switch = .false., error = error)

write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "error = ", error

```

```

call simulation%rescan (1, es_array, &
    update_event = .false., &
    update_sqme = .false., &
    update_weight = .false., &
    recover_beams = .false., &
    global = global)

call es_array%final ()
call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_9"

end subroutine simulations_9

```

### Alternative weights

Generate an event for a single process and reweight it in a simultaneous calculation.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
call test (simulations_10, "simulations_10", &
    "alternative weight", &
    u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
subroutine simulations_10 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, expr_text
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(rt_data_t), dimension(1), target :: alt_env
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(stream_t) :: stream
    type(parse_tree_t) :: pt_weight
    type(simulation_t), target :: simulation
    type(event_sample_data_t) :: data

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_10"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: reweight event"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call syntax_pexpr_init ()

    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_omp"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
        0, is_known = .true.)

```

```

libname = "simulation_10a"
procname1 = "simulation_10p"

call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
call compile_library (libname, global)

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("simulations1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize alternative environment with custom weight"
write (u, "(A)")

call alt_env(1)%local_init (global)
call alt_env(1)%link (global)

expr_text = "2"
write (u, "(A,A)")  "weight = ", char (expr_text)
write (u, *)

call ifile_clear (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, expr_text)
call stream_init (stream, ifile)
call parse_tree_init_expr (pt_weight, stream, .true.)
call stream_final (stream)
alt_env(1)%pn%weight_expr => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (pt_weight)
call alt_env(1)%write_expr (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global, alt_env)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

data = simulation%get_data ()
call data%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate an event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1)
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the last event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Write the event record for the alternative setup"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%write_alt_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

call syntax_model_file_final ()
call syntax_pexpr_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: simulations_10"

end subroutine simulations_10

```

## Decays

Generate an event with subsequent partonic decays.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
    call test (simulations_11, "simulations_11", &
        "decay", &
        u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
    subroutine simulations_11 (u)

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: u
type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
type(string_t) :: prefix, procname1, procname2
type(simulation_t), target :: simulation

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: simulations_11"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: apply decay"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize processes"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
allocate (lib)
call global%add_prclib (lib)

call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

prefix = "simulation_11"
procname1 = prefix // "_p"
procname2 = prefix // "_d"
call prepare_testbed &
    (global%prclib, global%process_stack, global%model_list, &
    global%model, prefix, global%os_data, &
    scattering=.true., decay=.true.)
call model_set_unstable (global%model, 25, [procname2])

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize simulation object"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Generate event"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%generate (1)
call simulation%write (u)

write (u, *)

call simulation%write_event (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"
write (u, "(A)")

call simulation%final ()
call global%final ()

```

```

call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: simulations_11"

end subroutine simulations_11

```

## Split Event Files

Generate event for a real process with structure functions and write to file, accepting a limit for the number of events per file.

```

<Simulations: execute tests>+≡
call test (simulations_12, "simulations_12", &
  "split event files", &
  u, results)

<Simulations: tests>+≡
subroutine simulations_12 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(string_t) :: libname, procname1, sample
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(process_ptr_t) :: process_ptr
  class(eio_t), allocatable :: eio
  type(simulation_t), allocatable, target :: simulation
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  integer :: i_evt

  write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output: simulations_12"
  write (u, "(A)")  "**  Purpose: generate events for a single process"
  write (u, "(A)")  "**                and write to split event files"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "** Initialize process and integrate"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_model_file_init ()

  call global%global_init ()
  call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
  call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
    0, is_known = .true.)

  libname = "simulation_12"
  procname1 = "simulation_12p"

  call prepare_test_library (global, libname, 1, [procname1])
  call compile_library (libname, global)

  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)
  call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

```



```

call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, &
    var_str ("?rebuild_events"), .true., intrinsic = .true.)

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("ms"), &
    0._default, is_known = .true.)

call flavor_init (flv, 25, global%model)

call global%it_list%init ([1], [1000])

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$run_id"), &
    var_str ("r1"), is_known = .true.)
call integrate_process (procname1, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize event generation"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
sample = "simulations_12"
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$sample"), &
    sample, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_split_n_evt"), &
    2, is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("sample_split_index"), &
    42, is_known = .true.)
allocate (simulation)
call simulation%init ([procname1], .true., .true., global)
call simulation%init_process_selector ()

call simulation%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialize ASCII event file"
write (u, "(A)")

process_ptr%ptr => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (procname1)

allocate (eio_ascii_short_t :: eio)
select type (eio)
class is (eio_ascii_t); call eio%set_parameters ()

```

```

end select
call eio%init_out (sample, [process_ptr], data = simulation%get_data ())

write (u, "(A)")  "** Generate 5 events, distributed among three files"

do i_evt = 1, 5
    call simulation%generate (1)
    call simulation%write_event (eio)
end do

call eio%final ()
deallocate (eio)
call simulation%final ()
deallocate (simulation)

write (u, *)
call display_file ("simulations_12.42.short.evt", u)
write (u, *)
call display_file ("simulations_12.43.short.evt", u)
write (u, *)
call display_file ("simulations_12.44.short.evt", u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Cleanup"

call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "** Test output end: simulations_12"

end subroutine simulations_12

```

Auxiliary: display file contents.

*(Simulations: tests)*+≡

```

subroutine display_file (file, u)
    character(*), intent(in) :: file
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    character(256) :: buffer
    integer :: u_file
    write (u, "(3A)")  "** Contents of file '", file, "':"
    write (u, *)
    u_file = free_unit ()
    open (u_file, file = file, action = "read", status = "old")
    do
        read (u_file, "(A)", end = 1)  buffer
        write (u, "(A)")  trim (buffer)
    end do
1  continue
end subroutine display_file

```

# Chapter 23

## Top level API

### 23.1 Commands

This module defines the command language of the main input file.

$\langle \text{commands.f90} \rangle \equiv$   
 $\langle \text{File header} \rangle$

```
module commands

   $\langle \text{Use kinds} \rangle$ 
   $\langle \text{Use strings} \rangle$ 
  use constants !NODEP!
   $\langle \text{Use file utils} \rangle$ 
  use limits, only: FMT_14, FMT_19, SHOW_BUFFER_SIZE !NODEP!
  use limits, only: DEFAULT_ANALYSIS_FILENAME !NODEP!
  use limits, only: FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS1 !NODEP!
  use limits, only: FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS2 !NODEP!
  use limits, only: FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS3 !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use sm_qcd
  use pdf_builtin !NODEP!
  use sorting
  use sf_lhapdf
  use os_interface
  use ifiles
  use lexers
  use syntax_rules
  use parser
  use analysis
  use pdg_arrays
  use variables
  use expressions
  use models
  use auto_components
  use interactions
  use flavors
  use polarizations
```

```

use beams
use particle_specifiers
use process_libraries
use processes
use prclib_stacks
use slha_interface
use user_files
use eio_data
use rt_data
use dispatch
use process_configurations
use compilations
use integrations
use event_streams
use simulations

⟨Standard module head⟩

⟨Commands: public⟩

⟨Commands: types⟩

⟨Commands: variables⟩

⟨Commands: parameters⟩

⟨Commands: interfaces⟩

contains

⟨Commands: procedures⟩

⟨Commands: tests⟩

end module commands

```

### 23.1.1 The command type

The command type is a generic type that holds any command, compiled for execution.

Each command may come with its own local environment. The command list that determines this environment is allocated as `options`, if necessary. (It has to be allocated as a pointer because the type definition is recursive.) The local environment is available as a pointer which either points to the global environment, or is explicitly allocated and initialized.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩≡
type, abstract :: command_t
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn => null ()
  class(command_t), pointer :: next => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_opt => null ()
  type(command_list_t), pointer :: options => null ()
  type(rt_data_t), pointer :: local => null ()
contains

```

```

    <Commands: command: TBP>
end type command_t

```

Finalizer: If there is an option list, finalize the option list and deallocate. If not, the local environment is just a pointer.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => command_final

<Commands: procedures>≡
    recursive subroutine command_final (cmd)
        class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        if (associated (cmd%options)) then
            call cmd%options%final ()
            deallocate (cmd%options)
            call cmd%local%local_final ()
            deallocate (cmd%local)
        else
            cmd%local => null ()
        end if
    end subroutine command_final

```

Allocate a command with the appropriate concrete type. Store the parse node pointer in the command object, so we can reference to it when compiling.

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine dispatch_command (command, pn)
        class(command_t), intent(inout), pointer :: command
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
        case ("cmd_model")
            allocate (cmd_model_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_library")
            allocate (cmd_library_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_process")
            allocate (cmd_process_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_compile")
            allocate (cmd_compile_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_exec")
            allocate (cmd_exec_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_num", "cmd_complex", "cmd_real", "cmd_int", &
            "cmd_log_decl", "cmd_log", "cmd_string", "cmd_string_decl", &
            "cmd_alias", "cmd_result")
            allocate (cmd_var_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_slha")
            allocate (cmd_slha_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_show")
            allocate (cmd_show_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_clear")
            allocate (cmd_clear_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_expect")
            allocate (cmd_expect_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_beams")
            allocate (cmd_beams_t :: command)
        case ("cmd_beams_pol_density")

```

```

        allocate (cmd_beams_pol_density_t :: command)
case ("cmd_beams_pol_fraction")
        allocate (cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t :: command)
case ("cmd_beams_momentum")
        allocate (cmd_beams_momentum_t :: command)
case ("cmd_beams_theta")
        allocate (cmd_beams_theta_t :: command)
case ("cmd_beams_phi")
        allocate (cmd_beams_phi_t :: command)
case ("cmd_cuts")
        allocate (cmd_cuts_t :: command)
case ("cmd_scale")
        allocate (cmd_scale_t :: command)
case ("cmd_fac_scale")
        allocate (cmd_fac_scale_t :: command)
case ("cmd_ren_scale")
        allocate (cmd_ren_scale_t :: command)
case ("cmd_weight")
        allocate (cmd_weight_t :: command)
case ("cmd_selection")
        allocate (cmd_selection_t :: command)
case ("cmd_reweight")
        allocate (cmd_reweight_t :: command)
case ("cmd_iterations")
        allocate (cmd_iterations_t :: command)
case ("cmd_integrate")
        allocate (cmd_integrate_t :: command)
case ("cmd_observable")
        allocate (cmd_observable_t :: command)
case ("cmd_histogram")
        allocate (cmd_histogram_t :: command)
case ("cmd_plot")
        allocate (cmd_plot_t :: command)
case ("cmd_graph")
        allocate (cmd_graph_t :: command)
case ("cmd_record")
        allocate (cmd_record_t :: command)
case ("cmd_analysis")
        allocate (cmd_analysis_t :: command)
case ("cmd_alt_setup")
        allocate (cmd_alt_setup_t :: command)
case ("cmd_unstable")
        allocate (cmd_unstable_t :: command)
case ("cmd_stable")
        allocate (cmd_stable_t :: command)
case ("cmd_polarized")
        allocate (cmd_polarized_t :: command)
case ("cmd_unpolarized")
        allocate (cmd_unpolarized_t :: command)
case ("cmd_sample_format")
        allocate (cmd_sample_format_t :: command)
case ("cmd_simulate")
        allocate (cmd_simulate_t :: command)
case ("cmd_rescan")

```

```

        allocate (cmd_rescan_t :: command)
case ("cmd_write_analysis")
    allocate (cmd_write_analysis_t :: command)
case ("cmd_compile_analysis")
    allocate (cmd_compile_analysis_t :: command)
case ("cmd_open_out")
    allocate (cmd_open_out_t :: command)
case ("cmd_close_out")
    allocate (cmd_close_out_t :: command)
case ("cmd_printf")
    allocate (cmd_printf_t :: command)
case ("cmd_scan")
    allocate (cmd_scan_t :: command)
case ("cmd_if")
    allocate (cmd_if_t :: command)
case ("cmd_include")
    allocate (cmd_include_t :: command)
case ("cmd_quit")
    allocate (cmd_quit_t :: command)
case default
    print *, char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn))
    call msg_bug ("Command not implemented")
end select
command%pn => pn
end subroutine dispatch_command

```

Output. We allow for indentation so we can display a command tree.

```

⟨Commands: command: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure (command_write), deferred :: write

⟨Commands: interfaces⟩≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine command_write (cmd, unit, indent)
            import
            class(command_t), intent(in) :: cmd
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        end subroutine command_write
    end interface

```

Compile a command. The command type is already fixed, so this is a deferred type-bound procedure.

```

⟨Commands: command: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure (command_compile), deferred :: compile

⟨Commands: interfaces⟩+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine command_compile (cmd, global)
            import
            class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
            type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        end subroutine command_compile
    end interface

```

Execute a command. This will use and/or modify the runtime data set. If the `quit` flag is set, the caller should terminate command execution.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>+≡
    procedure (command_execute), deferred :: execute

<Commands: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine command_execute (cmd, global)
            import
            class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
            type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        end subroutine command_execute
    end interface

```

### 23.1.2 Options

The `options` command list is allocated, initialized, and executed, if the command is associated with an option text in curly braces. If present, a separate local runtime data set `local` will be allocated and initialized; otherwise, `local` becomes a pointer to the global dataset.

For output, we indent the options list.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write_options => command_write_options

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_write_options (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(command_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: ind
        ind = 1; if (present (indent)) ind = indent + 1
        if (associated (cmd%options)) call cmd%options%write (unit, ind)
    end subroutine command_write_options

```

Compile the options list, if any. This implies initialization of the local environment. Should be done once the `pn_opt` node has been assigned (if applicable), but before the actual command compilation.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile_options => command_compile_options

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_compile_options (cmd, global)
        class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        if (associated (cmd%pn_opt)) then
            allocate (cmd%local)
            call cmd%local%local_init (global)
            call global%copy_globals (cmd%local)
            allocate (cmd%options)
            call cmd%options%compile (cmd%pn_opt, cmd%local)
            call global%restore_globals (cmd%local)
        else
            cmd%local => global
        end if
    end subroutine command_compile_options

```



```

        end if
    end subroutine command_compile_options

```

Execute options. First prepare the local environment, then execute the command list.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute_options => cmd_execute_options

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine cmd_execute_options (cmd, global)
        class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        if (associated (cmd%options)) then
            call cmd%local%link (global)
            call cmd%options%execute (cmd%local)
        end if
    end subroutine cmd_execute_options

```

This must be called after the parent command has been executed, to undo temporary modifications to the global environment.

```

<Commands: command: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: reset_options => cmd_reset_options

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_reset_options (cmd, global)
        class(command_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        if (associated (cmd%options)) then
            call global%restore (cmd%local)
        end if
    end subroutine cmd_reset_options

```

### 23.1.3 Specific command types

#### Model configuration

The command declares a model, looks for the specified file and loads it.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_model_t
        private
        type(string_t) :: name
    contains
        <Commands: cmd model: TBP>
    end type cmd_model_t

```

#### Output

```

<Commands: cmd model: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_model_write

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_model_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_model_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  write (u, "(1x,A,1x,'"',A,'\"')") "model =", char (cmd%name)
end subroutine cmd_model_write

```

Compile. Get the model name and read the model from file, so it is readily available when the command list is executed.

```

<Commands: cmd model: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_model_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_model_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_model_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_name
  type(string_t) :: filename
  pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
  filename = cmd%name // ".mdl"
  call global%read_model (cmd%name, filename)
end subroutine cmd_model_compile

```

Execute: Insert a pointer into the global data record and reassign the variable list.

```

<Commands: cmd model: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_model_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_model_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_model_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  logical :: new_model
  new_model = .true.
  if (associated (global%model)) then
    new_model = global%model%get_name () /= cmd%name
  end if
  if (new_model) then
    if (global%model_list%model_exists (cmd%name)) then
      call msg_message ("Switching to model '" &
        // char (cmd%name) &
        // "': reassigning model parameters")
      call global%select_model (cmd%name)
    else
      call msg_fatal ("Switching to model '" &
        // char (cmd%name) &
        // "': unknown model name")
    end if
  end if
end subroutine cmd_model_execute

```

## Library configuration

We configure a process library that should hold the subsequently defined processes. If the referenced library exists already, just make it the currently active one.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_library_t
    private
      type(string_t) :: name
    contains
      <Commands: cmd library: TBP>
    end type cmd_library_t
```

Output.

```
<Commands: cmd library: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_library_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_library_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_library_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit)
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,'"',A,'\"') "library =", char (cmd%name)
  end subroutine cmd_library_write
```

Compile. Get the library name.

```
<Commands: cmd library: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_library_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_library_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_library_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_name
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
  end subroutine cmd_library_compile
```

Execute: Initialize a new library and push it on the library stack (if it does not yet exist). Insert a pointer to the library into the global data record. Then, try to load the library unless the `rebuild` flag is set.

```
<Commands: cmd library: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_library_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_library_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_library_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib_entry
```

```

type(process_library_t), pointer :: lib
logical :: rebuild_library
lib => global%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (cmd%name)
rebuild_library = &
    var_list_get_lval (global%var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_library"))
if (.not. (associated (lib))) then
    allocate (lib_entry)
    call lib_entry%init (cmd%name)
    lib => lib_entry%process_library_t
    call global%add_prclib (lib_entry)
else
    call global%update_prclib (lib)
end if
if (associated (lib) .and. .not. rebuild_library) then
    call lib%update_status (global%os_data)
end if
end subroutine cmd_library_execute

```

## Process configuration

We define a process-configuration command as a specific type. The incoming and outgoing particles are given evaluation-trees which we transform to PDG-code arrays. For transferring to O'MEGA, they are reconverted to strings.

For the incoming particles, we store parse nodes individually. We do not yet resolve the outgoing state, so we store just a single parse node.

This also includes the choice of method for the corresponding process: **omega** for O'MEGA matrix elements, **test** for special processes generated by WHIZARD, **external** for using an external matrix element and **dipole** for generating dipole subtraction terms.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_process_t
private
type(string_t) :: id
integer :: n_in = 0
type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_pdg_in
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_out => null ()
contains
⟨Commands: cmd process: TBP⟩
end type cmd_process_t

```

Output. The particle expressions are not resolved, so we just list the number of incoming particles.

```

⟨Commands: cmd process: TBP⟩≡
procedure :: write => cmd_process_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine cmd_process_write (cmd, unit, indent)
class(cmd_process_t), intent(in) :: cmd
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)

```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A,I0,A)") "process: ", char (cmd%id), " (", &
size (cmd%pn_pdg_in), " -> X)"
call cmd%write_options (u, indent)
end subroutine cmd_process_write

```

Compile. Find and assign the parse nodes.

```

⟨Commands: cmd process: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_process_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_process_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_process_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_id, pn_in, pn_codes
    integer :: i
    pn_id => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    pn_in => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_id, 2)
    cmd%pn_out => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_in, 2)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (cmd%pn_out)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    cmd%id = parse_node_get_string (pn_id)
    cmd%n_in = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_in)
    pn_codes => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_in)
    allocate (cmd%pn_pdg_in (cmd%n_in))
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      cmd%pn_pdg_in(i)%ptr => pn_codes
      pn_codes => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_codes)
    end do
  end subroutine cmd_process_compile

```

Command execution. Evaluate the subevents, transform PDG codes into strings, and add the current process configuration to the process library.

The initial state will be unique (one or two particles). For the final state, we allow for expressions. The expressions will be expanded until we have a sum of final states. Each distinct final state will get its own process component.

To identify equivalent final states, we transform the final state into an array of PDG codes, which we sort and compare. If a particle entry is actually a PDG array, only the first entry in the array is used for the comparison. The user should make sure that there is no overlap between different particles or arrays which would make the expansion ambiguous.

```

⟨Commands: cmd process: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_process_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_process_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_process_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_in, pdg_out
    type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg_out_tab
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_in
    type(string_t) :: prt_out, prt_out1
    type(process_configuration_t) :: prc_config
    type(prt_expr_t) :: prt_expr_out

```

```

type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_spec_in
type(prt_spec_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_spec_out
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: i_term
integer :: i, j, n_in, n_out, n_terms, n_components

n_in = size (cmd%pn_pdg_in)
allocate (prt_in (n_in), prt_spec_in (n_in))
do i = 1, n_in
    pdg_in = &
        eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_pdg_in(i)%ptr, cmd%local%var_list)
    prt_in(i) = make_flavor_string (pdg_in, cmd%local%model)
    prt_spec_in(i) = new_prt_spec (prt_in(i))
end do
call compile_prt_expr &
    (prt_expr_out, cmd%pn_out, cmd%local%var_list, cmd%local%model)
call prt_expr_out%expand ()
n_terms = prt_expr_out%get_n_terms ()
allocate (pdg_out_tab (n_terms))
allocate (i_term (n_terms), source = 0)
n_components = 0
SCAN_COMPONENTS: do i = 1, n_terms
    if (allocated (pdg)) deallocate (pdg)
    call prt_expr_out%term_to_array (prt_spec_out, i)
    n_out = size (prt_spec_out)
    allocate (pdg (n_out))
    do j = 1, n_out
        prt_out = prt_spec_out(j)%to_string ()
        call split (prt_out, prt_out1, ":")
        pdg(j) = model_get_particle_pdg (cmd%local%model, prt_out1)
    end do
    pdg_out = sort (pdg)
    do j = 1, n_components
        if (pdg_out == pdg_out_tab(j)) cycle SCAN_COMPONENTS
    end do
    n_components = n_components + 1
    i_term(n_components) = i
    pdg_out_tab(n_components) = pdg_out
end do SCAN_COMPONENTS
call prc_config%init (cmd%id, n_in, n_components, cmd%local)
do i = 1, n_components
    call prt_expr_out%term_to_array (prt_spec_out, i_term(i))
    call prc_config%setup_component (i, prt_spec_in, prt_spec_out, cmd%local)
end do
call prc_config%record (cmd%local)

end subroutine cmd_process_execute

```

This is a method of the eval tree, but cannot be coded inside the `expressions` module since it uses the `model` and `flv` types which are not available there.

(*Commands: procedures*)+≡

```

function make_flavor_string (aval, model) result (prt)
    type(string_t) :: prt

```

```

type(pdg_array_t), intent(in) :: aval
type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
integer :: i
pdg = aval
allocate (flv (size (pdg)))
call flavor_init (flv, pdg, model)
if (size (pdg) /= 0) then
    prt = flavor_get_name (flv(1))
    do i = 2, size (flv)
        prt = prt // ":" // flavor_get_name (flv(i))
    end do
else
    prt = "?"
end if
end function make_flavor_string

```

Compile a (possible nested) expression, to obtain a particle-specifier expression which we can process further.

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine compile_prt_expr (prt_expr, pn, var_list, model)
    type(prt_expr_t), intent(out) :: prt_expr
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
    type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
    type(model_t), intent(in), target :: model
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_entry, pn_term, pn_addition
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg
    type(string_t) :: prt_string
    integer :: n_entry, n_term, i
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
    case ("prt_state_list")
        n_entry = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn)
        pn_entry => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        if (n_entry == 1) then
            call compile_prt_expr (prt_expr, pn_entry, var_list, model)
        else
            call prt_expr%init_list (n_entry)
            select type (x => prt_expr%x)
            type is (prt_spec_list_t)
                do i = 1, n_entry
                    call compile_prt_expr (x%expr(i), pn_entry, var_list, model)
                    pn_entry => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_entry)
                end do
            end select
        end if
    case ("prt_state_sum")
        n_term = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn)
        pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        pn_addition => pn_term
        if (n_term == 1) then
            call compile_prt_expr (prt_expr, pn_term, var_list, model)
        else

```

```

        call prt_expr%init_sum (n_term)
        select type (x => prt_expr%x)
        type is (prt_spec_sum_t)
            do i = 1, n_term
                call compile_prt_expr (x%expr(i), pn_term, var_list, model)
                pn_addition => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_addition)
                if (associated (pn_addition)) &
                    pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_addition, 2)
            end do
        end select
    end if
case ("cexpr")
    pdg = eval_pdg_array (pn, var_list)
    prt_string = make_flavor_string (pdg, model)
    call prt_expr%init_spec (new_prt_spec (prt_string))
case default
    call parse_node_write_rec (pn)
    call msg_bug ("compile prt expr: impossible syntax rule")
end select
end subroutine compile_prt_expr

```

## Process compilation

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_compile_t
private
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: libname
logical :: make_executable = .false.
type(string_t) :: exec_name
contains
<Commands: cmd compile: TBP>
end type cmd_compile_t

```

Output: list all libraries to be compiled.

```

<Commands: cmd compile: TBP>≡
procedure :: write => cmd_compile_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_compile_write (cmd, unit, indent)
class(cmd_compile_t), intent(in) :: cmd
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "compile ("
if (allocated (cmd%libname)) then
    do i = 1, size (cmd%libname)
        if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") " ,"
        write (u, "(',' ", A, "',')", advance="no") char (cmd%libname(i))
    end do
end if
write (u, "(A)") ")"
end subroutine cmd_compile_write

```



Compile the libraries specified in the argument. If the argument is empty, compile all libraries which can be found in the process library stack.

*<Commands: cmd compile: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: compile => cmd_compile_compile
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine cmd_compile_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_compile_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_cmd, pn_clause, pn_arg, pn_lib
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_exec_name_spec, pn_exec_name
  integer :: n_lib, i
  pn_cmd => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
  pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cmd)
  pn_exec_name_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause, 2)
  if (associated (pn_exec_name_spec)) then
    pn_exec_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_exec_name_spec, 2)
  else
    pn_exec_name => null ()
  end if
  pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
  cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_cmd)
  call cmd%compile_options (global)
  if (associated (pn_arg)) then
    n_lib = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
  else
    n_lib = 0
  end if
  if (n_lib > 0) then
    allocate (cmd%libname (n_lib))
    pn_lib => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
    do i = 1, n_lib
      cmd%libname(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_lib)
      pn_lib => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_lib)
    end do
  end if
  if (associated (pn_exec_name)) then
    cmd%make_executable = .true.
    cmd%exec_name = parse_node_get_string (pn_exec_name)
  end if
end subroutine cmd_compile_compile
```

Command execution. Generate code, write driver, compile and link. Do this for all libraries in the list.

If no library names have been given and stored while compiling this command, we collect all libraries from the current stack and compile those.

We can compile static libraries (which actually just loads them). However, we can't incorporate in a generated executable.

*<Commands: cmd compile: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: execute => cmd_compile_execute
```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_compile_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_compile_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: libname, libname_static
  integer :: i
  if (allocated (cmd%libname)) then
    allocate (libname (size (cmd%libname)))
    libname = cmd%libname
  else
    call cmd%local%prclib_stack%get_names (libname)
  end if
  if (cmd%make_executable) then
    call get_prclib_static (libname_static)
    do i = 1, size (libname)
      if (any (libname_static == libname(i))) then
        call msg_fatal ("Compile: can't include static library '" &
          // char (libname(i)) // "'")
      end if
    end do
    call compile_executable (cmd%exec_name, libname, cmd%local)
  else
    do i = 1, size (libname)
      call compile_library (libname(i), cmd%local)
    end do
  end if
end subroutine cmd_compile_execute

```

This is the interface to the external procedure which returns the names of all static libraries which are part of the executable. (The default is none.) The routine must allocate the array.

```

<Commands: public>≡
  public :: get_prclib_static
<Commands: interfaces>+≡
interface
  subroutine get_prclib_static (libname)
    import
    type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(inout), allocatable :: libname
  end subroutine get_prclib_static
end interface

```

## Execute a shell command

The argument is a string expression.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_exec_t
  private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_command => null ()
contains
  <Commands: cmd_exec: TBP>
end type cmd_exec_t

```

Simply tell the status.

```
<Commands: cmd exec: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_exec_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_exec_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_exec_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    if (associated (cmd%pn_command)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "exec: [command associated]"
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "exec: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_exec_write
```

Compile the exec command.

```
<Commands: cmd exec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_exec_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_exec_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_exec_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_command
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    pn_command => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
    cmd%pn_command => pn_command
  end subroutine cmd_exec_compile
```

Execute the specified shell command.

```
<Commands: cmd exec: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_exec_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_exec_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_exec_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(string_t) :: command
    logical :: is_known
    integer :: status
    command = eval_string (cmd%pn_command, global%var_list, is_known=is_known)
    if (is_known) then
      if (command /= "") then
        call os_system_call (command, status, verbose=.true.)
        if (status /= 0) then
          write (msg_buffer, "(A,I0)") "Return code = ", status
          call msg_message ()
          call msg_error ("System command returned with nonzero status code")
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_exec_execute
```

```
end subroutine cmd_exec_execute
```

## Variable declaration

A variable can have various types. Hold the definition as an eval tree.

There are intrinsic variables, user variables, and model variables. The latter are further divided in independent variables and dependent variables.

Regarding model variables: When dealing with them, we always look at two variable lists in parallel. The global (or local) variable list contains the user-visible values. It includes variables that correspond to variables in the current model's list. These, in turn, are pointers to the model's parameter list, so the model is always in sync, internally. To keep the global variable list in sync with the model, the global variables carry the `is_copy` property and contain a separate pointer to the model variable. (The pointer is reassigned whenever the model changes.) Modifying the global variable changes two values simultaneously: the visible value and the model variable, via this extra pointer. After each modification, we update dependent parameters in the model variable list and re-synchronize the global variable list (again, using these pointers) with the model variable this. In the last step, modifications in the derived parameters become visible.

When we integrate a process, we capture the current variable list of the current model in a separate model instance, which is stored in the process object. Thus, the model parameters associated to this process at this time are preserved for the lifetime of the process object.

When we generate or rescan events, we can again capture a local model variable list in a model instance. This allows us to reweight event by event with different parameter sets simultaneously.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_var_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: name
    integer :: type = V_NONE
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_value => null ()
    logical :: is_intrinsic = .false.
    logical :: is_copy = .false.
    contains
    <Commands: cmd var: TBP>
  end type cmd_var_t
```

Output. We know name, type, and properties, but not the value.

```
<Commands: cmd var: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_var_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_var_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_var_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
```

```

write (u, "(1x,A,A,A)", advance="no") "var: ", char (cmd%name), " ("
select case (cmd%type)
case (V_NONE)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "[unknown]"
case (V_LOG)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "logical"
case (V_INT)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "int"
case (V_REAL)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "real"
case (V_CMPLX)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "complex"
case (V_STR)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "string"
case (V_PDG)
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") "alias"
end select
if (cmd%is_intrinsic) then
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ", intrinsic"
end if
if (cmd%is_copy) then
write (u, "(A)", advance="no") ", copy"
end if
write (u, "(A)") ")"
end subroutine cmd_var_write

```

Compile the lhs and determine the variable name and type. Check whether this variable can be created or modified as requested, and append the value to the variable list, if appropriate. The value is initially undefined. The rhs is assigned to a pointer, to be compiled and evaluated when the command is executed.

*<Commands: cmd var: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: compile => cmd_var_compile

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_var_compile (cmd, global)
class(cmd_var_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_var, pn_name
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_result, pn_proc
type(string_t) :: var_name
type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var_entry
integer :: type
logical :: new
pn_result => null ()
new = .false.
select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (cmd%pn)))
case ("cmd_log_decl"); type = V_LOG
pn_var => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
if (.not. associated (pn_var)) then ! handle masked syntax error
cmd%type = V_NONE; return
end if
pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
new = .true.
case ("cmd_log"); type = V_LOG

```

```

        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
case ("cmd_int");          type = V_INT
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        new = .true.
case ("cmd_real");          type = V_REAL
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        new = .true.
case ("cmd_complex");          type = V_CMPLX
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        new = .true.
case ("cmd_num");          type = V_NONE
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
case ("cmd_string_decl"); type = V_STR
        pn_var => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        if (.not. associated (pn_var)) then    ! handle masked syntax error
            cmd%type = V_NONE; return
        end if
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
        new = .true.
case ("cmd_string");          type = V_STR
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
case ("cmd_alias");          type = V_PDG
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        new = .true.
case ("cmd_result");          type = V_REAL
        pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
        pn_result => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_name)
        pn_proc => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_result)
case default
        call parse_node_mismatch &
            ("logical|int|real|complex|?|${alias|var_name}", cmd%pn) ! $
end select
if (.not. associated (pn_name)) then    ! handle masked syntax error
    cmd%type = V_NONE; return
end if
if (.not. associated (pn_result)) then
    var_name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
else
    var_name = parse_node_get_key (pn_result) &
        // "(" // parse_node_get_string (pn_proc) // ")"
end if
select case (type)
case (V_LOG);  var_name = "?" // var_name
case (V_STR);  var_name = "$" // var_name    ! $
end select
call var_list_check_user_var (global%var_list, var_name, type, new)
cmd%type = type
cmd%name = var_name
var_entry => var_list_get_var_ptr &
    (global%var_list, cmd%name, cmd%type, follow_link=.false.)
cmd%pn_value => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
if (.not. associated (cmd%pn_value)) cmd%type = V_NONE
if (associated (var_entry)) then
    cmd%is_intrinsic = var_entry_is_intrinsic (var_entry)

```

```

        cmd%is_copy = var_entry_is_copy (var_entry)
    else
        var_entry => var_list_get_var_ptr &
            (global%var_list, cmd%name, cmd%type, follow_link=.true.)
        if (associated (var_entry)) then
            cmd%is_intrinsic = var_entry_is_intrinsic (var_entry)
            if (var_entry_is_copy (var_entry)) then
                cmd%is_copy = .true.
                call var_list_init_copy (global%var_list, var_entry, user=.true.)
            end if
        end if
        if (.not. cmd%is_copy) then
            select case (cmd%type)
            case (V_LOG)
                call var_list_append_log (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            case (V_INT)
                call var_list_append_int (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            case (V_REAL)
                call var_list_append_real (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            case (V_CMPLX)
                call var_list_append_cmplx (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            case (V_PDG)
                call var_list_append_pdg_array (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            case (V_STR)
                call var_list_append_string (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    intrinsic=cmd%is_intrinsic, user=.true.)
            end select
        end if
    end if
end subroutine cmd_var_compile

```

Execute. Evaluate the definition and assign the variable value. If the variable is a copy, the original is a model variable. The original is set automatically, and an update of the dependent parameters is in order.

*(Commands: cmd var: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: execute => cmd_var_execute

```

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

    subroutine cmd_var_execute (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_var_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(string_t) :: model_name
        type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
        if (associated (global%model)) then
            model_name = global%model%get_name ()
            model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
            if (cmd%is_copy) then
                call var_list_set_original_pointer (global%var_list, cmd%name, &
                    model_vars)
            end if
        end if
    end subroutine cmd_var_execute

```

```

end if
call cmd%set_value (global%var_list, &
    verbose=.true., model_name=model_name)
if (cmd%is_copy) then
    call var_list_restore (global%var_list)
    call model_parameters_update (global%model)
    call var_list_synchronize (global%var_list, model_vars)
end if
else
    call cmd%set_value (global%var_list, verbose=.true.)
end if
end subroutine cmd_var_execute

```

Copy the value to the variable list, where the variable should already exist.

*<Commands: cmd var: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: set_value => cmd_var_set_value

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_var_set_value (var, var_list, verbose, model_name)
    class(cmd_var_t), intent(inout) :: var
    type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
    logical, intent(in), optional :: verbose
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: model_name
    logical :: lval, pacified
    integer :: ival
    real(default) :: rval
    complex(default) :: cval
    type(pdg_array_t) :: aval
    type(string_t) :: sval
    logical :: is_known
    pacified = var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?pacify"))
    select case (var%type)
    case (V_LOG)
        lval = eval_log (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
        call var_list_set_log (var_list, var%name, &
            lval, is_known, verbose=verbose, model_name=model_name)
    case (V_INT)
        ival = eval_int (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
        call var_list_set_int (var_list, var%name, &
            ival, is_known, verbose=verbose, model_name=model_name)
    case (V_REAL)
        rval = eval_real (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
        call var_list_set_real (var_list, var%name, &
            rval, is_known, verbose=verbose, &
            model_name=model_name, pacified = pacified)
    case (V_CMPLX)
        cval = eval_cmplx (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
        call var_list_set_cmplx (var_list, var%name, &
            cval, is_known, verbose=verbose, &
            model_name=model_name, pacified = pacified)
    case (V_PDG)
        aval = eval_pdg_array (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
        call var_list_set_pdg_array (var_list, var%name, &
            aval, is_known, verbose=verbose, model_name=model_name)
    end select
end subroutine cmd_var_set_value

```



```

    case (V_STR)
      sval = eval_string (var%pn_value, var_list, is_known=is_known)
      call var_list_set_string (var_list, var%name, &
        sval, is_known, verbose=verbose, model_name=model_name)
    end select
end subroutine cmd_var_set_value

```

## SLHA

Read a SLHA (SUSY Les Houches Accord) file to fill the appropriate model parameters. We do not access the current variable record, but directly work on the appropriate SUSY model, which is loaded if necessary.

We may be in read or write mode. In the latter case, we may write just input parameters, or the complete spectrum, or the spectrum with all decays.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_slha_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: file
  logical :: write_mode = .false.
  contains
  <Commands: cmd slha: TBP>
end type cmd_slha_t

```

Output.

```

<Commands: cmd slha: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_slha_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_slha_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_slha_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "slha: file name = ", char (cmd%file)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "slha: write mode = ", cmd%write_mode
  end subroutine cmd_slha_write

```

Compile. Read the filename and store it.

```

<Commands: cmd slha: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_slha_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_slha_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_slha_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key, pn_arg, pn_file
    pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_key)
    pn_file => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg)
  end subroutine cmd_slha_compile

```

```

select case (char (parse_node_get_key (pn_key)))
case ("read_slha")
    cmd%write_mode = .false.
case ("write_slha")
    cmd%write_mode = .true.
case default
    call parse_node_mismatch ("read_slha|write_slha", cmd%pn)
end select
cmd%file = parse_node_get_string (pn_file)
end subroutine cmd_slha_compile

```

Execute. Read or write the specified SLHA file. Behind the scenes, this will first read the WHIZARD model file, then read the SLHA file and assign the SLHA parameters as far as determined by `dispatch_slha`. Finally, the global variables are synchronized with the model. This is similar to executing `cmd_model`.

*(Commands: cmd slha: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_slha_execute

```

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_slha_execute (cmd, global)
class(cmd_slha_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
logical :: input, spectrum, decays
type(var_list_t), pointer :: model_vars
if (cmd%write_mode) then
    input = .true.
    spectrum = .false.
    decays = .false.
    call slha_write_file &
        (cmd%file, cmd%local%model, &
         input = input, spectrum = spectrum, decays = decays)
else
    call dispatch_slha (cmd%local, &
        input = input, spectrum = spectrum, decays = decays)
    call slha_read_file &
        (cmd%file, cmd%local%os_data, global%model_list, global%model, &
         input = input, spectrum = spectrum, decays = decays)
    model_vars => model_get_var_list_ptr (global%model)
    call var_list_synchronize (global%var_list, model_vars, &
        reset_pointers = .true.)
    call global%particle_stack%reset (global%model)
end if
end subroutine cmd_slha_execute

```

## Show values

This command shows the current values of variables or other objects, in a suitably condensed form.

*(Commands: types)+≡*

```

type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_show_t
private
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name

```

```

contains
  <Commands: cmd show: TBP>
end type cmd_show_t

```

Output: list the object names, not values.

```

<Commands: cmd show: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_show_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_show_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_show_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "show: "
    if (allocated (cmd%name)) then
      do i = 1, size (cmd%name)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (cmd%name(i))
      end do
      write (u, *)
    else
      write (u, "(5x,A)") "[undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_show_write

```

Compile. Allocate an array which is filled with the names of the variables to show.

```

<Commands: cmd show: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_show_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_show_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_show_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_var, pn_prefix, pn_name
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: i, n_args
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    if (associated (pn_arg)) then
      select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_arg)))
      case ("show_arg")
        cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg)
      case default
        cmd%pn_opt => pn_arg
        pn_arg => null ()
      end select
    end if
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    if (associated (pn_arg)) then
      n_args = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
      allocate (cmd%name (n_args))
      pn_var => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
      i = 0
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_show_compile

```

```

do while (associated (pn_var))
  i = i + 1
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var)))
  case ("model", "library", "beams", "iterations", &
        "cuts", "weight", "int", "real", "complex", &
        "scale", "factorization_scale", "renormalization_scale", &
        "selection", "reweight", "analysis", "pdg", &
        "stable", "unstable", "polarized", "unpolarized", &
        "results", "expect", "intrinsic", "string", "logical")
    cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_key (pn_var)
  case ("result_var")
    pn_prefix => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var)
    pn_name => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_prefix)
    if (associated (pn_name)) then
      cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_key (pn_prefix) &
        // "(" // parse_node_get_string (pn_name) // ")"
    else
      cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_key (pn_prefix)
    end if
  case ("log_var", "string_var", "alias_var")
    pn_prefix => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var)
    pn_name => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_prefix)
    key = parse_node_get_key (pn_prefix)
    if (associated (pn_name)) then
      select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_name)))
      case ("var_name")
        select case (char (key))
        case ("?", "$") ! $ sign
          cmd%name(i) = key // parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
        case ("alias")
          cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
        end select
      case default
        call parse_node_mismatch &
          ("var_name", pn_name)
      end select
    else
      cmd%name(i) = key
    end if
  case default
    cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_var)
  end select
  pn_var => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_var)
end do
else
  allocate (cmd%name (0))
end if
end subroutine cmd_show_compile

```

Execute. Scan the list of objects to show.

*<Limits: public parameters>+≡*

integer, parameter, public :: SHOW\_BUFFER\_SIZE = 4096

*<Commands: cmd show: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_show_execute

(Commands: procedures) +=
  subroutine cmd_show_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_show_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(model_t), pointer :: model
    type(string_t) :: name
    integer :: n, pdg
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(process_library_t), pointer :: prc_lib
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    logical :: pacified
    character(SHOW_BUFFER_SIZE) :: buffer
    integer :: i, j, u, u_log, u_out
    u = free_unit ()
    pacified = var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, &
      var_str ("?pacify"))
    open (u, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
    if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
      name = cmd%local%model%get_name ()
    end if
    if (size (cmd%name) == 0) then
      if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, model_name = name, &
          unit = u, pacified = pacified)
      else
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, unit = u, pacified = pacified)
      end if
    else
      do i = 1, size (cmd%name)
        select case (char (cmd%name(i)))
          case ("model")
            if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
              call model_show (cmd%local%model, u)
            else
              write (u, "(A)") "Model: [undefined]"
            end if
          case ("library")
            if (associated (cmd%local%prclib)) then
              call cmd%local%prclib%show (u)
            else
              write (u, "(A)") "Process library: [undefined]"
            end if
          case ("beams")
            call cmd%local%show_beams (u)
          case ("iterations")
            call cmd%local%it_list%write (u)
          case ("results")
            call cmd%local%process_stack%show (u)
          case ("stable")
            call model_show_stable (cmd%local%model, u)
          case ("polarized")
            call model_show_polarized (cmd%local%model, u)
          case ("unpolarized")

```

```

        call model_show_unpolarized (cmd%local%model, u)
case ("unstable")
    model => cmd%local%model
    call model_show_unstable (model, u)
    n = model_get_n_particles (model)
    do j = 1, n
        pdg = model_get_particle_pdg (model, j)
        call flavor_init (flv, pdg, model)
        if (.not. flavor_is_stable (flv)) &
            call show_unstable (cmd%local, pdg, u)
        if (flavor_has_antiparticle (flv)) then
            if (.not. flavor_is_stable (flavor_anti (flv))) &
                call show_unstable (cmd%local, -pdg, u)
        end if
    end do
case ("cuts", "weight", "scale", &
    "factorization_scale", "renormalization_scale", &
    "selection", "reweight", "analysis")
    call cmd%local%pn%show (cmd%name(i), u)
case ("expect")
    call expect_summary (force = .true.)
case ("logical")
    if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_LOG, &
            model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    else
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, &
            only_type=V_LOG, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    end if
case ("intrinsic")
    if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, intrinsic=.true., &
            model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    else
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, &
            intrinsic=.true., unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    end if
case ("int")
    if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_INT, &
            model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    else
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_INT, &
            unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    end if
case ("real")
    if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_REAL, &
            model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    else
        call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_REAL, &
            unit=u, pacified = pacified)
    end if
case ("complex")

```

```

        if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_CMPLX, &
                                model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        else
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_CMPLX, &
                                unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        end if
    case ("pdg")
        if (associated (cmd%local%model)) then
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_PDG, &
                                model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        else
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_PDG, &
                                unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        end if
    case ("string")
        if (associated (global%model)) then
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_STR, &
                                model_name = name, unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        else
            call var_list_write (cmd%local%var_list, only_type=V_STR, &
                                unit=u, pacified = pacified)
        end if
    case default
        if (var_list_exists (cmd%local%var_list, cmd%name(i))) then
            call var_list_write_var (cmd%local%var_list, cmd%name(i), &
                                    unit = u, pacified = pacified)
        else if (analysis_exists (cmd%name(i))) then
            call analysis_write (cmd%name(i), u)
        else if (cmd%local%process_stack%exists (cmd%name(i))) then
            process => cmd%local%process_stack%get_process_ptr (cmd%name(i))
            call process%show (u)
        else if (associated (cmd%local%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr &
                             (cmd%name(i)))) then
            prc_lib => cmd%local%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (cmd%name(i))
            call prc_lib%show (u)
        else
            call msg_error ("show: object '" // char (cmd%name(i)) &
                            // "' not found")
        end if
    end select
end do
end if
rewind (u)
u_log = logfile_unit ()
u_out = output_unit ()
do
    read (u, "(A)", end = 1) buffer
    if (u_log > 0) write (u_log, "(A)") trim (buffer)
    if (u_out > 0) write (u_out, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
1 close (u)
if (u_log > 0) flush (u_log)
if (u_out > 0) flush (u_out)

```

```
end subroutine cmd_show_execute
```

## Clear values

This command clears the current values of variables or other objects, where this makes sense. It parallels the `show` command. The objects are cleared, but not deleted.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_clear_t
    private
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: name
    contains
    <Commands: cmd clear: TBP>
  end type cmd_clear_t
```

Output: list the names of the objects to be cleared.

```
<Commands: cmd clear: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_clear_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_clear_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_clear_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "clear: "
    if (allocated (cmd%name)) then
      do i = 1, size (cmd%name)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") char (cmd%name(i))
      end do
      write (u, *)
    else
      write (u, "(5x,A)") "[undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_clear_write
```

Compile. Allocate an array which is filled with the names of the objects to be cleared.

Note: there is currently no need to account for options, but we prepare for that possibility.

```
<Commands: cmd clear: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_clear_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_clear_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_clear_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_var, pn_prefix, pn_name
    type(string_t) :: key
    integer :: i, n_args
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
```



```

if (associated (pn_arg)) then
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_arg)))
  case ("clear_arg")
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg)
  case default
    cmd%pn_opt => pn_arg
    pn_arg => null ()
  end select
end if
call cmd%compile_options (global)
if (associated (pn_arg)) then
  n_args = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
  allocate (cmd%name (n_args))
  pn_var => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
  i = 0
  do while (associated (pn_var))
    i = i + 1
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var)))
    case ("beams", "iterations", &
          "cuts", "weight", &
          "scale", "factorization_scale", "renormalization_scale", &
          "selection", "reweight", "analysis", &
          "unstable", "polarized", &
          "expect")
      cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_key (pn_var)
    case ("log_var", "string_var")
      pn_prefix => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var)
      pn_name => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_prefix)
      key = parse_node_get_key (pn_prefix)
      if (associated (pn_name)) then
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_name)))
        case ("var_name")
          select case (char (key))
          case ("?", "$") ! $ sign
            cmd%name(i) = key // parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
          end select
        case default
          call parse_node_mismatch &
            ("var_name", pn_name)
        end select
      else
        cmd%name(i) = key
      end if
    case default
      cmd%name(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_var)
    end select
    pn_var => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_var)
  end do
else
  allocate (cmd%name (0))
end if
end subroutine cmd_clear_compile

```

Execute. Scan the list of objects to clear.

Objects that can be shown but not cleared: model, library, results

*(Commands: cmd clear: TBP)+≡*

```
procedure :: execute => cmd_clear_execute
```

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```
subroutine cmd_clear_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_clear_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(var_entry_t), pointer :: var
  integer :: i
  logical :: success
  if (size (cmd%name) == 0) then
    call msg_warning ("clear: no object specified")
  else
    do i = 1, size (cmd%name)
      success = .true.
      select case (char (cmd%name(i)))
        case ("beams")
          call cmd%local%clear_beams ()
        case ("iterations")
          call cmd%local%it_list%clear ()
        case ("polarized")
          call model_clear_polarized (cmd%local%model)
        case ("unstable")
          call model_clear_unstable (cmd%local%model)
        case ("cuts", "weight", "scale", &
              "factorization_scale", "renormalization_scale", &
              "selection", "reweight", "analysis")
          call cmd%local%pn%clear (cmd%name(i))
        case ("expect")
          call expect_clear ()
        case default
          if (var_list_exists (cmd%local%var_list, cmd%name(i))) then
            var => var_list_get_var_ptr &
              (cmd%local%var_list, cmd%name(i), follow_link=.true.)
            if (.not. var_entry_is_locked (var)) then
              call var_entry_clear (var)
            else
              call msg_error ("clear: variable '" // char (cmd%name(i)) &
                             // "' is locked and can't be cleared")
              success = .false.
            end if
          else if (analysis_exists (cmd%name(i))) then
            call analysis_clear (cmd%name(i))
          else
            call msg_error ("clear: object '" // char (cmd%name(i)) &
                           // "' not found")
            success = .false.
          end if
        end select
      if (success) call msg_message ("cleared: " // char (cmd%name(i)))
    end do
  end if
end subroutine cmd_clear_execute
```

## Compare values of variables to expectation

The implementation is similar to the `show` command. There are just two arguments: two values that should be compared. For providing local values for the numerical tolerance, the command has a local argument list.

If the expectation fails, an error condition is recorded.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_expect_t
  private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr => null ()
  contains
  <Commands: cmd expect: TBP>
end type cmd_expect_t
```

Simply tell the status.

```
<Commands: cmd expect: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_expect_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_expect_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_expect_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    if (associated (cmd%pn_lexpr)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "expect: [expression associated]"
    else
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "expect: [undefined]"
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_expect_write
```

Compile. This merely assigns the parse node, the actual compilation is done at execution. This is necessary because the origin of variables (local/global) may change during execution.

```
<Commands: cmd expect: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_expect_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_expect_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_expect_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg)
    cmd%pn_lexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
  end subroutine cmd_expect_compile
```

Execute. Evaluate both arguments, print them and their difference (if numerical), and whether they agree. Record the result.

```
<Commands: cmd expect: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_expect_execute
```

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine cmd_expect_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_expect_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  logical :: success, is_known
  success = &
    eval_log (cmd%pn_lexpr, cmd%local%var_list, is_known=is_known)
  if (is_known) then
    if (success) then
      call msg_message ("expect: success")
    else
      call msg_error ("expect: failure")
    end if
  else
    call msg_error ("expect: undefined result")
    success = .false.
  end if
  call expect_record (success)
end subroutine cmd_expect_execute

```

## Beams

The beam command includes both beam and structure-function definition.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_beams_t
  private
  integer :: n_in = 0
  type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_pdg
  integer :: n_sf_record = 0
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: n_entry
  type(parse_node_p), dimension(:, :), allocatable :: pn_sf_entry
contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd beams: TBP⟩
end type cmd_beams_t

```

Output. The particle expressions are not resolved.

```

⟨Commands: cmd beams: TBP⟩≡
procedure :: write => cmd_beams_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine cmd_beams_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_beams_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  select case (cmd%n_in)
  case (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A)" "beams: 1 [decay]"
  case (2)
    write (u, "(1x,A)" "beams: 2 [scattering]"
  case default

```

```

        write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams: [undefined]"
    end select
    if (allocated (cmd%n_entry)) then
        if (cmd%n_sf_record > 0) then
            write (u, "(1x,A,99(1x,I0))") "structure function entries:", &
                cmd%n_entry
        end if
    end if
end subroutine cmd_beams_write

```

Compile. Find and assign the parse nodes.

Note: local environments are not yet supported.

*<Commands: cmd beams: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: compile => cmd_beams_compile

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_beams_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_beam_def, pn_beam_spec
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_beam_list
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_codes
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_strfun_seq, pn_strfun_pair
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_strfun_def
    integer :: i
    pn_beam_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
    pn_beam_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_beam_def)
    pn_strfun_seq => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_beam_spec)
    pn_beam_list => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_beam_spec)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    cmd%n_in = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_beam_list)
    allocate (cmd%pn_pdg (cmd%n_in))
    pn_codes => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_beam_list)
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
        cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr => pn_codes
        pn_codes => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_codes)
    end do
    if (associated (pn_strfun_seq)) then
        cmd%n_sf_record = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_beam_def) - 1
        allocate (cmd%n_entry (cmd%n_sf_record), source = 1)
        allocate (cmd%pn_sf_entry (2, cmd%n_sf_record))
        do i = 1, cmd%n_sf_record
            pn_strfun_pair => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_strfun_seq, 2)
            pn_strfun_def => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_strfun_pair)
            cmd%pn_sf_entry(1,i)%ptr => pn_strfun_def
            pn_strfun_def => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_strfun_def)
            cmd%pn_sf_entry(2,i)%ptr => pn_strfun_def
            if (associated (pn_strfun_def)) cmd%n_entry(i) = 2
            pn_strfun_seq => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_strfun_seq)
        end do
    else
        allocate (cmd%n_entry (0))
        allocate (cmd%pn_sf_entry (0, 0))
    end if
end if

```

```
end subroutine cmd_beams_compile
```

Command execution: Determine beam particles and structure-function names, if any. The results are stored in the `beam_structure` component of the `global` data block.

```
<Commands: cmd_beams: TBP>+≡
```

```
procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_execute
```

```
<Commands: procedures>+≡
```

```
subroutine cmd_beams_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_beams_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pdg_array
  integer, dimension(:), allocatable :: pdg
  type(flavor_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: flv
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_key
  type(string_t) :: sf_name
  integer :: i, j
  call lhpdf_status_reset (global%lhpdf_status)
  call pdf_builtin_status_reset (global%pdf_builtin_status)
  allocate (flv (cmd%n_in))
  do i = 1, cmd%n_in
    pdg_array = eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr, cmd%local%var_list)
    pdg = pdg_array
    select case (size (pdg))
    case (1)
      call flavor_init (flv(i), pdg(1), cmd%local%model)
    case default
      call msg_fatal ("Beams: beam particles must be unique")
    end select
  end do
  select case (cmd%n_in)
  case (1)
    if (cmd%n_sf_record > 0) then
      call msg_fatal ("Beam setup: no structure functions allowed &
        &for decay")
    end if
    call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv))
  case (2)
    call global%beam_structure%init_sf (flavor_get_name (flv), cmd%n_entry)
    do i = 1, cmd%n_sf_record
      do j = 1, cmd%n_entry(i)
        pn_key => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn_sf_entry(j,i)%ptr)
        sf_name = parse_node_get_key (pn_key)
        call global%beam_structure%set_sf (i, j, sf_name)
      end do
    end do
  end select
end subroutine cmd_beams_execute
```

## Density matrices for beam polarization

For holding beam polarization, we define a notation and a data structure for sparse matrices. The entries (and the index expressions) are numerical expressions, so we use evaluation trees.

Each entry in the sparse matrix is an n-tuple of expressions. The first tuple elements represent index values, the last one is an arbitrary (complex) number. Absent expressions are replaced by default-value rules.

Note: Here, and in some other commands, we would like to store an evaluation tree, not just a parse node pointer. However, the current expression handler wants all variables defined, so the evaluation tree can only be built by `evaluate`, i.e., compiled just-in-time and evaluated immediately.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type :: sentry_expr_t
    type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: expr
    contains
    <Commands: sentry expr: TBP>
  end type sentry_expr_t

```

Compile parse nodes into evaluation trees.

```

<Commands: sentry expr: TBP>≡
  procedure :: compile => sentry_expr_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sentry_expr_compile (sentry, pn)
    class(sentry_expr_t), intent(out) :: sentry
    type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr, pn_extra
    integer :: n_expr, i
    n_expr = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn)
    allocate (sentry%expr (n_expr))
    if (n_expr > 0) then
      i = 0
      pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
      pn_extra => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_expr)
      do i = 1, n_expr
        sentry%expr(i)%ptr => pn_expr
        if (associated (pn_extra)) then
          pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_extra, 2)
          pn_extra => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_extra)
        end if
      end do
    end if
  end subroutine sentry_expr_compile

```

Evaluate the expressions and return an index array of predefined length together with a complex value. If the value (as the last expression) is undefined, set it to unity. If index values are undefined, repeat the previous index value.

```

<Commands: sentry expr: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: evaluate => sentry_expr_evaluate

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine sentry_expr_evaluate (sentry, index, value, global)

```

```

class(sentry_expr_t), intent(inout) :: sentry
integer, dimension(:), intent(out) :: index
complex(default), intent(out) :: value
type(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
integer :: i, n_expr, n_index
type(eval_tree_t) :: eval_tree
n_expr = size (sentry%expr)
n_index = size (index)
if (n_expr <= n_index + 1) then
  do i = 1, min (n_expr, n_index)
    associate (expr => sentry%expr(i))
      call eval_tree_init_expr (eval_tree, expr%ptr, global%var_list)
      call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
        index(i) = eval_tree_get_int (eval_tree)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("Evaluating density matrix: undefined index")
      end if
    end associate
  end do
  do i = n_expr + 1, n_index
    index(i) = index(n_expr)
  end do
  if (n_expr == n_index + 1) then
    associate (expr => sentry%expr(n_expr))
      call eval_tree_init_expr (eval_tree, expr%ptr, global%var_list)
      call eval_tree_evaluate (eval_tree)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (eval_tree)) then
        value = eval_tree_get_cmplx (eval_tree)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("Evaluating density matrix: undefined index")
      end if
      call eval_tree_final (eval_tree)
    end associate
  else
    value = 1
  end if
else
  call msg_fatal ("Evaluating density matrix: index expression too long")
end if
end subroutine sentry_expr_evaluate

```

The sparse matrix itself consists of an arbitrary number of entries.

*<Commands: types>+≡*

```

type :: smatrix_expr_t
  type(sentry_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: entry
contains
  <Commands: smatrix expr: TBP>
end type smatrix_expr_t

```

Compile: assign sub-nodes to sentry-expressions and compile those.

*<Commands: smatrix expr: TBP>≡*

```

procedure :: compile => smatrix_expr_compile

```



```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine smatrix_expr_compile (smatrix_expr, pn)
class(smatrix_expr_t), intent(out) :: smatrix_expr
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_entry
integer :: n_entry, i
pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn, 2)
if (associated (pn_arg)) then
n_entry = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
allocate (smatrix_expr%entry (n_entry))
pn_entry => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
do i = 1, n_entry
call smatrix_expr%entry(i)%compile (pn_entry)
pn_entry => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_entry)
end do
else
allocate (smatrix_expr%entry (0))
end if
end subroutine smatrix_expr_compile

```

Evaluate the entries and build a new smatrix object, which contains just the numerical results.

```

⟨Commands: smatrix expr: TBP⟩+≡
procedure :: evaluate => smatrix_expr_evaluate

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine smatrix_expr_evaluate (smatrix_expr, smatrix, global)
class(smatrix_expr_t), intent(inout) :: smatrix_expr
type(smatrix_t), intent(out) :: smatrix
type(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
integer, dimension(2) :: idx
complex(default) :: value
integer :: i, n_entry
n_entry = size (smatrix_expr%entry)
call smatrix%init (2, n_entry)
do i = 1, n_entry
call smatrix_expr%entry(i)%evaluate (idx, value, global)
call smatrix%set_entry (i, idx, value)
end do
end subroutine smatrix_expr_evaluate

```

## Beam polarization density

The beam polarization command defines spin density matrix for one or two beams (scattering or decay).

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_beams_pol_density_t
private
integer :: n_in = 0
type(smatrix_expr_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: smatrix
contains
⟨Commands: cmd beams pol density: TBP⟩

```

```
end type cmd_beams_pol_density_t
```

Output.

```
<Commands: cmd_beams_pol_density: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_beams_pol_density_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_beams_pol_density_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    select case (cmd%n_in)
    case (1)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization setup: 1 [decay]"
    case (2)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization setup: 2 [scattering]"
    case default
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization setup: [undefined]"
    end select
  end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_write
```

Compile. Find and assign the parse nodes.

Note: local environments are not yet supported.

```
<Commands: cmd_beams_pol_density: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_beams_pol_density_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_pol_density_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_pol_spec, pn_smatrix
    integer :: i
    pn_pol_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    cmd%n_in = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_pol_spec)
    allocate (cmd%smatrix (cmd%n_in))
    pn_smatrix => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_pol_spec)
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      call cmd%smatrix(i)%compile (pn_smatrix)
      pn_smatrix => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_smatrix)
    end do
  end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_compile
```

Command execution: Fill polarization density matrices. No check yet, the matrices are checked and normalized when the actual beam object is created, just before integration. For intermediate storage, we use the `beam_structure` object in the `global` data set.

```
<Commands: cmd_beams_pol_density: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_pol_density_execute
```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_beams_pol_density_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(smatrix_t) :: smatrix
  integer :: i
  call global%beam_structure%init_pol (cmd%n_in)
  do i = 1, cmd%n_in
    call cmd%smatrix(i)%evaluate (smatrix, global)
    call global%beam_structure%set_smatrix (i, smatrix)
  end do
end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_density_execute

```

## Beam polarization fraction

In addition to the polarization density matrix, we can independently specify the polarization fraction for one or both beams.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t
  private
  integer :: n_in = 0
  type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: expr
contains
  <Commands: cmd beams pol fraction: TBP>
end type cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t

```

Output.

```

<Commands: cmd beams pol fraction: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_beams_pol_fraction_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  select case (cmd%n_in)
  case (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization fraction: 1 [decay]"
  case (2)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization fraction: 2 [scattering]"
  case default
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams polarization fraction: [undefined]"
  end select
end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_write

```

Compile. Find and assign the parse nodes.

Note: local environments are not yet supported.

```

<Commands: cmd beams pol fraction: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_beams_pol_fraction_compile

```

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_frac_spec, pn_expr
    integer :: i
    pn_frac_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    cmd%n_in = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_frac_spec)
    allocate (cmd%expr (cmd%n_in))
    pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_frac_spec)
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      cmd%expr(i)%ptr => pn_expr
      pn_expr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_expr)
    end do
  end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_compile

```

Command execution: Retrieve the numerical values of the beam polarization fractions. The results are stored in the `beam_structure` component of the `global` data block.

```

⟨Commands: cmd beams pol fraction: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_pol_fraction_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: pol_f
    type(eval_tree_t) :: expr
    integer :: i
    allocate (pol_f (cmd%n_in))
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr, cmd%expr(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
      call eval_tree_evaluate (expr)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr)) then
        pol_f(i) = eval_tree_get_real (expr)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("beams polarization fraction: undefined value")
      end if
      call eval_tree_final (expr)
    end do
    call global%beam_structure%set_pol_f (pol_f)
  end subroutine cmd_beams_pol_fraction_execute

```

## Beam momentum

This is completely analogous to the previous command, hence we can use inheritance.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t) :: cmd_beams_momentum_t
  contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd beams momentum: TBP⟩

```

```
end type cmd_beams_momentum_t
```

Output.

*<Commands: cmd beams momentum: TBP>≡*

```
procedure :: write => cmd_beams_momentum_write
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine cmd_beams_momentum_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_beams_momentum_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  select case (cmd%n_in)
  case (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams momentum: 1 [decay]"
  case (2)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams momentum: 2 [scattering]"
  case default
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams momentum: [undefined]"
  end select
end subroutine cmd_beams_momentum_write
```

Compile: inherited.

Command execution: Not inherited, but just the error string and the final command are changed.

*<Commands: cmd beams momentum: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_momentum_execute
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine cmd_beams_momentum_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_beams_momentum_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: p
  type(eval_tree_t) :: expr
  integer :: i
  allocate (p (cmd%n_in))
  do i = 1, cmd%n_in
    call eval_tree_init_expr (expr, cmd%expr(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (expr)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr)) then
      p(i) = eval_tree_get_real (expr)
    else
      call msg_fatal ("beams momentum: undefined value")
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (expr)
  end do
  call global%beam_structure%set_momentum (p)
end subroutine cmd_beams_momentum_execute
```

## Beam angles

Again, this is analogous. There are two angles, polar angle  $\theta$  and azimuthal angle  $\phi$ , which can be set independently for both beams.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t) :: cmd_beams_theta_t
  contains
    <Commands: cmd beams theta: TBP>
  end type cmd_beams_theta_t

  type, extends (cmd_beams_pol_fraction_t) :: cmd_beams_phi_t
  contains
    <Commands: cmd beams phi: TBP>
  end type cmd_beams_phi_t
```

Output.

```
<Commands: cmd beams theta: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_beams_theta_write

<Commands: cmd beams phi: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_beams_phi_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_theta_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_beams_theta_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    select case (cmd%n_in)
    case (1)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams theta: 1 [decay]"
    case (2)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams theta: 2 [scattering]"
    case default
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams theta: [undefined]"
    end select
  end subroutine cmd_beams_theta_write

  subroutine cmd_beams_phi_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_beams_phi_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    select case (cmd%n_in)
    case (1)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams phi: 1 [decay]"
    case (2)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams phi: 2 [scattering]"
    case default
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "beams phi: [undefined]"
    end select
  end subroutine cmd_beams_phi_write
```

Compile: inherited.

Command execution: Not inherited, but just the error string and the final command are changed.

```

<Commands: cmd beams theta: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_theta_execute

<Commands: cmd beams phi: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_beams_phi_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_beams_theta_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_theta_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: theta
    type(eval_tree_t) :: expr
    integer :: i
    allocate (theta (cmd%n_in))
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr, cmd%expr(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
      call eval_tree_evaluate (expr)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr)) then
        theta(i) = eval_tree_get_real (expr)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("beams theta: undefined value")
      end if
      call eval_tree_final (expr)
    end do
    call global%beam_structure%set_theta (theta)
  end subroutine cmd_beams_theta_execute

  subroutine cmd_beams_phi_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_beams_phi_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: phi
    type(eval_tree_t) :: expr
    integer :: i
    allocate (phi (cmd%n_in))
    do i = 1, cmd%n_in
      call eval_tree_init_expr (expr, cmd%expr(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
      call eval_tree_evaluate (expr)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (expr)) then
        phi(i) = eval_tree_get_real (expr)
      else
        call msg_fatal ("beams phi: undefined value")
      end if
      call eval_tree_final (expr)
    end do
    call global%beam_structure%set_phi (phi)
  end subroutine cmd_beams_phi_execute

```

## Cuts

Define a cut expression. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling it. Compilation is deferred to the process environment where the

cut expression is used.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_cuts_t
  private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr => null ()
  contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd cuts: TBP⟩
end type cmd_cuts_t

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that cuts have been defined.

```

⟨Commands: cmd cuts: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_cuts_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_cuts_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_cuts_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "cuts: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_cuts_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

⟨Commands: cmd cuts: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_cuts_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_cuts_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_cuts_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_lexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_cuts_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the cut expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

⟨Commands: cmd cuts: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_cuts_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_cuts_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_cuts_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%cuts_lexpr => cmd%pn_lexpr
  end subroutine cmd_cuts_execute

```

## General, Factorization and Renormalization Scales

Define a scale expression for either the renormalization or the factorization scale. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling



it. Compilation is deferred to the process environment where the expression is used.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_scale_t
    private
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
    contains
      ⟨Commands: cmd scale: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_scale_t

```

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_fac_scale_t
    private
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
    contains
      ⟨Commands: cmd fac scale: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_fac_scale_t

```

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_ren_scale_t
    private
      type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
    contains
      ⟨Commands: cmd ren scale: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_ren_scale_t

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that scale, renormalization and factorization have been defined, respectively.

```

⟨Commands: cmd scale: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_scale_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_scale_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_scale_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "scale: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_scale_write

⟨Commands: cmd fac scale: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_fac_scale_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_fac_scale_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_fac_scale_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "factorization scale: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_fac_scale_write

```

```

<Commands: cmd ren scale: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_ren_scale_write
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_ren_scale_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_ren_scale_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "renormalization scale: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_ren_scale_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

<Commands: cmd scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_scale_compile
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_scale_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_scale_compile

```

```

<Commands: cmd fac scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_fac_scale_compile
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_fac_scale_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_fac_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_fac_scale_compile

```

```

<Commands: cmd ren scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_ren_scale_compile
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_ren_scale_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_ren_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_ren_scale_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the scale expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

<Commands: cmd scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_scale_execute
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_scale_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%scale_expr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_scale_execute

```

```

<Commands: cmd fac scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_fac_scale_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_fac_scale_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_fac_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%fac_scale_expr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_fac_scale_execute

<Commands: cmd ren scale: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_ren_scale_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_ren_scale_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_ren_scale_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%ren_scale_expr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_ren_scale_execute

```

## Weight

Define a weight expression. The weight is applied to a process to be integrated, event by event. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling it. Compilation is deferred to the process environment where the expression is used.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_weight_t
  private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
  contains
  <Commands: cmd weight: TBP>
  end type cmd_weight_t

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that scale, renormalization and factorization have been defined, respectively.

```

<Commands: cmd weight: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_weight_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_weight_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_weight_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "weight expression: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_weight_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

<Commands: cmd weight: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_weight_compile

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_weight_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_weight_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_weight_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

<Commands: cmd weight: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_weight_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_weight_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_weight_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%weight_expr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_weight_execute

```

## Selection

Define a selection expression. This is to be applied upon simulation or event-file rescanning, event by event. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling it. Compilation is deferred to the environment where the expression is used.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_selection_t
  private
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
  contains
    <Commands: cmd selection: TBP>
  end type cmd_selection_t

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that scale, renormalization and factorization have been defined, respectively.

```

<Commands: cmd selection: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_selection_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_selection_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_selection_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "selection expression: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_selection_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

<Commands: cmd selection: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_selection_compile

```

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_selection_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_selection_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_selection_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

⟨Commands: cmd selection: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_selection_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_selection_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_selection_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%selection_lexpr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_selection_execute

```

## Reweight

Define a reweight expression. This is to be applied upon simulation or event-file rescanning, event by event. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling it. Compilation is deferred to the environment where the expression is used.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_reweight_t
  private
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
  contains
    ⟨Commands: cmd reweight: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_reweight_t

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that scale, renormalization and factorization have been defined, respectively.

```

⟨Commands: cmd reweight: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_reweight_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_reweight_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_reweight_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "reweight expression: [defined]"
  end subroutine cmd_reweight_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

⟨Commands: cmd reweight: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_reweight_compile

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_reweight_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_reweight_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%pn_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  end subroutine cmd_reweight_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

<Commands: cmd reweight: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_reweight_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_reweight_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_reweight_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    global%pn%reweight_expr => cmd%pn_expr
  end subroutine cmd_reweight_execute

```

## Alternative Simulation Setups

Together with simulation, we can re-evaluate event weights in the context of alternative setups. The `cmd_alt_setup_t` object is designed to hold these setups, which are brace-enclosed command lists. Compilation is deferred to the simulation environment where the setup expression is used.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_alt_setup_t
  private
    type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: setup
  contains
    <Commands: cmd alt setup: TBP>
  end type cmd_alt_setup_t

```

Output. Print just a message that the alternative setup list has been defined.

```

<Commands: cmd alt setup: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_alt_setup_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_alt_setup_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_alt_setup_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "alt_setup: ", size (cmd%setup), " entries"
  end subroutine cmd_alt_setup_write

```

Compile. Store the parse sub-trees in an array.

```

<Commands: cmd alt setup: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_alt_setup_compile

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_alt_setup_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_alt_setup_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_list, pn_setup
  integer :: i
  pn_list => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
  if (associated (pn_list)) then
    allocate (cmd%setup (parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_list)))
    i = 1
    pn_setup => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_list)
    do while (associated (pn_setup))
      cmd%setup(i)%ptr => pn_setup
      i = i + 1
      pn_setup => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_setup)
    end do
  else
    allocate (cmd%setup (0))
  end if
end subroutine cmd_alt_setup_compile

```

Execute. Transfer the array of command lists to the global environment.

```

<Commands: cmd alt setup: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_alt_setup_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_alt_setup_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_alt_setup_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  if (allocated (global%pn%alt_setup)) deallocate (global%pn%alt_setup)
  allocate (global%pn%alt_setup (size (cmd%setup)), source = cmd%setup)
end subroutine cmd_alt_setup_execute

```

## Integration

Integrate several processes, consecutively with identical parameters.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_integrate_t
  private
  integer :: n_proc = 0
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_id
  contains
  <Commands: cmd integrate: TBP>
  end type cmd_integrate_t

```

Output: we know the process IDs.

```

<Commands: cmd integrate: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_integrate_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_integrate_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_integrate_t), intent(in) :: cmd

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "integrate ("
do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
  if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") ", "
  write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (cmd%process_id(i))
end do
write (u, "(A)") ")"
end subroutine cmd_integrate_write

```

Compile.

*<Commands: cmd integrate: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: compile => cmd_integrate_compile

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_integrate_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_integrate_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_proclist, pn_proc
  integer :: i
  pn_proclist => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
  cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proclist)
  call cmd%compile_options (global)
  cmd%n_proc = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_proclist)
  allocate (cmd%process_id (cmd%n_proc))
  pn_proc => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_proclist)
  do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
    cmd%process_id(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_proc)
    call global%process_stack%init_result_vars (cmd%process_id(i))
    pn_proc => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proc)
  end do
end subroutine cmd_integrate_compile

```

Command execution. Integrate the process(es) with the predefined number of passes, iterations and calls. For structure functions, cuts, weight and scale, use local definitions if present; by default, the local definitions are initialized with the global ones.

Since the process acquires a snapshot of the variable list, so if the global list (or the local one) is deleted, this does no harm. This implies that later changes of the variable list do not affect the stored process.

*<Commands: cmd integrate: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_integrate_execute

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_integrate_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_integrate_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
    call integrate_process (cmd%process_id(i), cmd%local)
    call cmd%local%process_stack%fill_result_vars (cmd%process_id(i))
  end do
end subroutine cmd_integrate_execute

```



```

        if (signal_is_pending ()) return
    end do
end subroutine cmd_integrate_execute

```

## Observables

Declare an observable. After the declaration, it can be used to record data, and at the end one can retrieve average and error.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_observable_t
    private
        type(string_t) :: id
    contains
        ⟨Commands: cmd observable: TBP⟩
    end type cmd_observable_t

```

Output. We know the ID.

```

⟨Commands: cmd observable: TBP⟩≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_observable_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine cmd_observable_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_observable_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "observable: ", char (cmd%id)
    end subroutine cmd_observable_write

```

Compile. Just record the observable ID.

```

⟨Commands: cmd observable: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_observable_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine cmd_observable_compile (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_observable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_tag
        pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        if (associated (pn_tag)) then
            cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
        end if
        call cmd%compile_options (global)
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_tag)))
        case ("analysis_id")
            cmd%id = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
        case default
            call msg_bug ("observable: name expression not implemented (yet)")
        end select
    end subroutine cmd_observable_compile

```

Command execution. This declares the observable and allocates it in the analysis store.

```

<Commands: cmd observable: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_observable_execute
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_observable_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_observable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
    type(string_t) :: label, unit
    label = var_list_get_sval &
      (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("%obs_label"))
    unit = var_list_get_sval &
      (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("%obs_unit"))
    call graph_options_init (graph_options)
    call set_graph_options (graph_options, cmd%local%var_list)
    call analysis_init_observable (cmd%id, label, unit, graph_options)
  end subroutine cmd_observable_execute

```

## Histograms

Declare a histogram. At minimum, we have to set lower and upper bound and bin width.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_histogram_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: id
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lower_bound => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_upper_bound => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_bin_width => null ()
    contains
    <Commands: cmd histogram: TBP>
  end type cmd_histogram_t

```

Output. Just print the ID.

```

<Commands: cmd histogram: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_histogram_write
<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_histogram_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_histogram_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "histogram: ", char (cmd%id)
  end subroutine cmd_histogram_write

```

Compile. Record the histogram ID and initialize lower, upper bound and bin width.

```

<Commands: cmd histogram: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_histogram_compile

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_histogram_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_histogram_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_tag, pn_args, pn_arg1, pn_arg2, pn_arg3
  character(*), parameter :: e_illegal_use = &
    "illegal usage of 'histogram': insufficient number of arguments"
  pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
  pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
  if (associated (pn_args)) then
    pn_arg1 => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args)
    if (.not. associated (pn_arg1)) call msg_fatal (e_illegal_use)
    pn_arg2 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg1)
    if (.not. associated (pn_arg2)) call msg_fatal (e_illegal_use)
    pn_arg3 => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_arg2)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_args)
  end if
  call cmd%compile_options (global)
  select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_tag)))
  case ("analysis_id")
    cmd%id = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
  case default
    call msg_bug ("histogram: name expression not implemented (yet)")
  end select
  cmd%pn_lower_bound => pn_arg1
  cmd%pn_upper_bound => pn_arg2
  cmd%pn_bin_width => pn_arg3
end subroutine cmd_histogram_compile

```

Command execution. This declares the histogram and allocates it in the analysis store.

*<Commands: cmd histogram: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_histogram_execute

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_histogram_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_histogram_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  real(default) :: lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width
  integer :: bin_number
  logical :: bin_width_is_used, normalize_bins
  type(string_t) :: obs_label, obs_unit
  type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
  type(drawing_options_t) :: drawing_options

  lower_bound = eval_real (cmd%pn_lower_bound, cmd%local%var_list)
  upper_bound = eval_real (cmd%pn_upper_bound, cmd%local%var_list)
  if (associated (cmd%pn_bin_width)) then
    bin_width = eval_real (cmd%pn_bin_width, cmd%local%var_list)
    bin_width_is_used = .true.
  else if (var_list_is_known &
    (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("n_bins"))) then
    bin_number = var_list_get_ival &
      (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("n_bins"))
  end if

```

```

        bin_width_is_used = .false.
    else
        call msg_error ("Cmd '" // char (cmd%id) // &
            "' : neither bin width nor number is defined")
    end if
    normalize_bins = var_list_get_lval &
        (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?normalize_bins"))
    obs_label = var_list_get_sval &
        (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("$_obs_label"))
    obs_unit = var_list_get_sval &
        (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("$_obs_unit"))

    call graph_options_init (graph_options)
    call set_graph_options (graph_options, cmd%local%var_list)
    call drawing_options_init_histogram (drawing_options)
    call set_drawing_options (drawing_options, cmd%local%var_list)

    if (bin_width_is_used) then
        call analysis_init_histogram &
            (cmd%id, lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_width, &
                normalize_bins, &
                obs_label, obs_unit, &
                graph_options, drawing_options)
    else
        call analysis_init_histogram &
            (cmd%id, lower_bound, upper_bound, bin_number, &
                normalize_bins, &
                obs_label, obs_unit, &
                graph_options, drawing_options)
    end if
end subroutine cmd_histogram_execute

```

Set the graph options from a variable list.

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine set_graph_options (gro, var_list)
    type(graph_options_t), intent(inout) :: gro
    type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
    call graph_options_set (gro, title = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$_title")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, description = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$_description")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, x_label = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$_x_label")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, y_label = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$_y_label")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, width_mm = &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("graph_width_mm")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, height_mm = &
        var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("graph_height_mm")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, x_log = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?x_log")))
    call graph_options_set (gro, y_log = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?y_log")))

```

```

if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("x_min"))) &
  call graph_options_set (gro, x_min = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("x_min")))
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("x_max"))) &
  call graph_options_set (gro, x_max = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("x_max")))
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("y_min"))) &
  call graph_options_set (gro, y_min = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("y_min")))
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("y_max"))) &
  call graph_options_set (gro, y_max = &
    var_list_get_rval (var_list, var_str ("y_max")))
call graph_options_set (gro, gmlcode_bg = &
  var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_bg")))
call graph_options_set (gro, gmlcode_fg = &
  var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_fg")))
end subroutine set_graph_options

```

Set the drawing options from a variable list.

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine set_drawing_options (dro, var_list)
  type(drawing_options_t), intent(inout) :: dro
  type(var_list_t), intent(in) :: var_list
  if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_histogram"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_histogram"))) then
      call drawing_options_set (dro, with_hbars = .true.)
    else
      call drawing_options_set (dro, with_hbars = .false., &
        with_base = .false., fill = .false., piecewise = .false.)
    end if
  end if
  if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_base"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_base"))) then
      call drawing_options_set (dro, with_base = .true.)
    else
      call drawing_options_set (dro, with_base = .false., fill = .false.)
    end if
  end if
  if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_piecewise"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_piecewise"))) then
      call drawing_options_set (dro, piecewise = .true.)
    else
      call drawing_options_set (dro, piecewise = .false.)
    end if
  end if
  if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?fill_curve"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?fill_curve"))) then
      call drawing_options_set (dro, fill = .true., with_base = .true.)
    else
      call drawing_options_set (dro, fill = .false.)
    end if
  end if
  if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_curve"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_curve"))) then

```

```

        call drawing_options_set (dro, draw = .true.)
    else
        call drawing_options_set (dro, draw = .false.)
    end if
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_errors"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_errors"))) then
        call drawing_options_set (dro, err = .true.)
    else
        call drawing_options_set (dro, err = .false.)
    end if
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("?draw_symbols"))) then
    if (var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?draw_symbols"))) then
        call drawing_options_set (dro, symbols = .true.)
    else
        call drawing_options_set (dro, symbols = .false.)
    end if
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$fill_options"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, fill_options = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$fill_options")))
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$draw_options"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, draw_options = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$draw_options")))
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$err_options"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, err_options = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$err_options")))
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$symbol"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, symbol = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$symbol")))
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_bg"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, gmlcode_bg = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_bg")))
end if
if (var_list_is_known (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_fg"))) then
    call drawing_options_set (dro, gmlcode_fg = &
        var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("$gmlcode_fg")))
end if
end subroutine set_drawing_options

```

## Plots

Declare a plot. No mandatory arguments, just options.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_plot_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: id
contains

```

```

    <Commands: cmd plot: TBP>
end type cmd_plot_t

```

Output. Just print the ID.

```

<Commands: cmd plot: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_plot_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_plot_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_plot_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A,A)") "plot: ", char (cmd%id)
    end subroutine cmd_plot_write

```

Compile. Record the plot ID and initialize lower, upper bound and bin width.

```

<Commands: cmd plot: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_plot_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_plot_compile (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_plot_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_tag
        pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
        call cmd%init (pn_tag, global)
    end subroutine cmd_plot_compile

```

This init routine is separated because it is reused below for graph initialization.

```

<Commands: cmd plot: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init => cmd_plot_init

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_plot_init (plot, pn_tag, global)
        class(cmd_plot_t), intent(inout) :: plot
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), pointer :: pn_tag
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        call plot%compile_options (global)
        select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_tag)))
            case ("analysis_id")
                plot%id = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
            case default
                call msg_bug ("plot: name expression not implemented (yet)")
        end select
    end subroutine cmd_plot_init

```

Command execution. This declares the plot and allocates it in the analysis store.

```

<Commands: cmd plot: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => cmd_plot_execute

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_plot_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_plot_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
    type(drawing_options_t) :: drawing_options

    call graph_options_init (graph_options)
    call set_graph_options (graph_options, cmd%local%var_list)
    call drawing_options_init_plot (drawing_options)
    call set_drawing_options (drawing_options, cmd%local%var_list)

    call analysis_init_plot (cmd%id, graph_options, drawing_options)
  end subroutine cmd_plot_execute

```

## Graphs

Declare a graph. The graph is defined in terms of its contents. Both the graph and its contents may carry options.

The graph object contains its own ID as well as the IDs of its elements. For the elements, we reuse the `cmd_plot_t` defined above.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_graph_t
    private
    type(string_t) :: id
    integer :: n_elements = 0
    type(cmd_plot_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: el
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: element_id
  contains
    <Commands: cmd graph: TBP>
  end type cmd_graph_t

```

Output. Just print the ID.

```

<Commands: cmd graph: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_graph_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_graph_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_graph_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,A,A,I0,A)") "graph: ", char (cmd%id), &
      " (" , cmd%n_elements, " entries)"
  end subroutine cmd_graph_write

```

Compile. Record the graph ID and initialize lower, upper bound and bin width. For compiling the graph element syntax, we use part of the `cmd_plot_t` compiler.



Note: currently, we do not respect options, therefore just IDs on the RHS.

```

⟨Commands: cmd graph: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_graph_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_graph_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_graph_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term, pn_tag, pn_def, pn_app
    integer :: i

    pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_term)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_tag)))
    case ("analysis_id")
      cmd%id = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
    case default
      call msg_bug ("graph: name expression not implemented (yet)")
    end select
    pn_def => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term, 2)
    cmd%n_elements = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_def)
    allocate (cmd%element_id (cmd%n_elements))
    allocate (cmd%el (cmd%n_elements))
    pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_def)
    pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_term)
    cmd%el(1)%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
    call cmd%el(1)%init (pn_tag, global)
    cmd%element_id(1) = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
    pn_app => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_term)
    do i = 2, cmd%n_elements
      pn_term => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_app, 2)
      pn_tag => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_term)
      cmd%el(i)%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_tag)
      call cmd%el(i)%init (pn_tag, global)
      cmd%element_id(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_tag)
      pn_app => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_app)
    end do

  end subroutine cmd_graph_compile

```

Command execution. This declares the graph, allocates it in the analysis store, and copies the graph elements.

For the graph, we set graph and default drawing options. For the elements, we reset individual drawing options.

This accesses internals of the contained elements of type `cmd_plot_t`, see above. We might disentangle such an interdependency when this code is rewritten using proper type extension.

```

⟨Commands: cmd graph: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_graph_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_graph_execute (cmd, global)

```

```

class(cmd_graph_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options
type(drawing_options_t) :: drawing_options
integer :: i, type

call graph_options_init (graph_options)
call set_graph_options (graph_options, cmd%local%var_list)
call analysis_init_graph (cmd%id, cmd%n_elements, graph_options)

do i = 1, cmd%n_elements
  if (associated (cmd%el(i)%options)) then
    call cmd%el(i)%options%execute (cmd%el(i)%local)
  end if
  type = analysis_store_get_object_type (cmd%element_id(i))
  select case (type)
    case (AN_HISTOGRAM)
      call drawing_options_init_histogram (drawing_options)
    case (AN_PLOT)
      call drawing_options_init_plot (drawing_options)
  end select
  call set_drawing_options (drawing_options, cmd%local%var_list)
  if (associated (cmd%el(i)%options)) then
    call set_drawing_options (drawing_options, cmd%el(i)%local%var_list)
  end if
  call analysis_fill_graph (cmd%id, i, cmd%element_id(i), drawing_options)
end do
end subroutine cmd_graph_execute

```

## Analysis

Hold the analysis ID either as a string or as an expression:

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type :: analysis_id_t
    type(string_t) :: tag
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_sexpr => null ()
  end type analysis_id_t

```

Define the analysis expression. We store the parse tree for the right-hand side instead of compiling it. Compilation is deferred to the process environment where the analysis expression is used.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_analysis_t
    private
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr => null ()
  contains
    ⟨Commands: cmd analysis: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_analysis_t

```

Output. Print just a message that analysis has been defined.

```

⟨Commands: cmd analysis: TBP⟩≡

```

```

    procedure :: write => cmd_analysis_write
  <Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_analysis_write (cmd, unit, indent)
      class(cmd_analysis_t), intent(in) :: cmd
      integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
      integer :: u
      u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
      call write_indent (u, indent)
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "analysis: [defined]"
    end subroutine cmd_analysis_write

```

Compile. Simply store the parse (sub)tree.

```

  <Commands: cmd analysis: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_analysis_compile

  <Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_analysis_compile (cmd, global)
      class(cmd_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
      type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
      cmd%pn_lexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
    end subroutine cmd_analysis_compile

```

Instead of evaluating the cut expression, link the parse tree to the global data set, such that it is compiled and executed in the appropriate process context.

```

  <Commands: cmd analysis: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => cmd_analysis_execute

  <Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_analysis_execute (cmd, global)
      class(cmd_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
      type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
      global%pn%analysis_lexpr => cmd%pn_lexpr
    end subroutine cmd_analysis_execute

```

## Write histograms and plots

The data type encapsulating the command:

```

  <Commands: types>+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_write_analysis_t
      private
      type(analysis_id_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: id
      type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tag
    contains
      <Commands: cmd write analysis: TBP>
    end type cmd_write_analysis_t

```

Output. Just the keyword.

```

  <Commands: cmd write analysis: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_write_analysis_write

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_write_analysis_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_write_analysis_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "write_analysis"
end subroutine cmd_write_analysis_write

```

Compile.

```

<Commands: cmd write analysis: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_write_analysis_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_write_analysis_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_write_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_clause, pn_args, pn_id
  integer :: n, i
  pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
  pn_args => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause, 2)
  cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
  call cmd%compile_options (global)
  if (associated (pn_args)) then
    n = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_args)
    allocate (cmd%id (n))
    do i = 1, n
      pn_id => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args, i)
      if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_id)) == "analysis_id") then
        cmd%id(i)%tag = parse_node_get_string (pn_id)
      else
        cmd%id(i)%pn_sexpr => pn_id
      end if
    end do
  else
    allocate (cmd%id (0))
  end if
end subroutine cmd_write_analysis_compile

```

The output format for real data values:

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
character(*), parameter, public :: &
  DEFAULT_ANALYSIS_FILENAME = "whizard_analysis.dat"
character(len=1), dimension(2), parameter, public :: &
  FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS1 = [ "o", "a" ]
character(len=2), dimension(5), parameter, public :: &
  FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS2 = [ "mp", "ps", "vg", "lo", "la" ]
character(len=3), dimension(14), parameter, public :: &
  FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS3 = [ "aux", "dvi", "evt", "evx", "f03", "f90", &
    "f95", "log", "ltp", "mpx", "pdf", "phs", "sin", "tex" ]

```

As this contains a lot of similar code to `cmd_compile_analysis_execute` we outsource the main code to a subroutine.

```

<Commands: cmd write analysis: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => cmd_write_analysis_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_write_analysis_execute (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_write_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        call write_analysis_wrap (cmd%local%var_list, global%out_files, &
            cmd%id, tag = cmd%tag)
    end subroutine cmd_write_analysis_execute

```

If the `data_file` optional argument is present, this is called from `cmd_compile_analysis_execute`, which needs the file name for further processing, and requires the default format. For the moment, parameters and macros for custom data processing are disabled.

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_analysis_wrap (var_list, out_files, id, tag, data_file)
        type(var_list_t), intent(inout), target :: var_list
        type(file_list_t), intent(inout), target :: out_files
        type(analysis_id_t), dimension(:), intent(in), target :: id
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: tag
        type(string_t), intent(out), optional :: data_file
        type(string_t) :: defaultfile, file
        integer :: i
        logical :: keep_open !, custom, header, columns
        type(string_t) :: extension !, comment_prefix, separator
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#542)
    !     integer :: type
    !     type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    logical :: one_file !, has_writer
    !     type(analysis_iterator_t) :: iterator
    !     type(rt_data_t), target :: sandbox
    !     type(command_list_t) :: writer
    defaultfile = var_list_get_sval (var_list, var_str ("out_file"))
    if (present (data_file)) then
        if (defaultfile == "" .or. defaultfile == ".") then
            defaultfile = DEFAULT_ANALYSIS_FILENAME
        else
            if (scan (".", defaultfile) > 0) then
                call split (defaultfile, extension, ".", back=.true.)
                if (any (lower_case (char(extension)) == FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS1) .or. &
                    any (lower_case (char(extension)) == FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS2) .or. &
                    any (lower_case (char(extension)) == FORBIDDEN_ENDINGS3)) &
                    call msg_fatal ("The ending " // char(extension) // &
                        " is internal and not allowed as data file.")
                if (extension /= "") then
                    if (defaultfile /= "") then
                        defaultfile = defaultfile // "." // extension
                    else
                        defaultfile = "whizard_analysis." // extension
                    end if
                end if
            end if
        end if
    end if

```

```

        else
            defaultfile = defaultfile // ".dat"
        endif
    else
        defaultfile = defaultfile // ".dat"
    end if
end if
data_file = defaultfile
end if
one_file = defaultfile /= ""
if (one_file) then
    file = defaultfile
    keep_open = file_list_is_open (out_files, file, &
        action = "write")
    if (keep_open) then
        if (present (data_file)) then
            call msg_fatal ("Compiling analysis: File '" &
                // char (data_file) &
                // "' can't be used, it is already open.")
        else
            call msg_message ("Appending analysis data to file '" &
                // char (file) // "'")
        end if
    else
        call file_list_open (out_files, file, &
            action = "write", status = "replace", position = "asis")
        call msg_message ("Writing analysis data to file '" &
            // char (file) // "'")
    end if
end if

!!! JRR: WK please check. Custom data output. Ticket #542
!     if (present (data_file)) then
!         custom = .false.
!     else
!         custom = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
!             var_str ("?out_custom"))
!     end if
!     comment_prefix = var_list_get_sval (var_list, &
!         var_str ("?out_comment"))
!     header = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
!         var_str ("?out_header"))
!     write_yerr = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
!         var_str ("?out_yerr"))
!     write_xerr = var_list_get_lval (var_list, &
!         var_str ("?out_xerr"))

call get_analysis_tags (tag, id, var_list)
do i = 1, size (tag)
    call file_list_write_analysis &
        (out_files, file, tag(i))
end do
if (one_file .and. .not. keep_open) then
    call file_list_close (out_files, file)

```

```

end if

contains

subroutine get_analysis_tags (analysis_tag, id, var_list)
  type(string_t), dimension(:), intent(out), allocatable :: analysis_tag
  type(analysis_id_t), dimension(:), intent(in) :: id
  type(var_list_t), intent(in), target :: var_list
  if (size (id) /= 0) then
    allocate (analysis_tag (size (id)))
    do i = 1, size (id)
      if (associated (id(i)%pn_sexpr)) then
        analysis_tag(i) = eval_string (id(i)%pn_sexpr, var_list)
      else
        analysis_tag(i) = id(i)%tag
      end if
    end do
  else
    call analysis_store_get_ids (tag)
  end if
end subroutine get_analysis_tags

end subroutine write_analysis_wrap

```

## Compile analysis results

This command writes files in a form suitable for GAMELAN and executes the appropriate commands to compile them. The first part is identical to `cmd_write_analysis`.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_compile_analysis_t
  private
  type(analysis_id_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: id
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: tag
  contains
  <Commands: cmd compile analysis: TBP>
end type cmd_compile_analysis_t

```

Output. Just the keyword.

```

<Commands: cmd compile analysis: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_compile_analysis_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_compile_analysis_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "compile_analysis"
  end subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_write

```

Compile.

```

⟨Commands: cmd compile analysis: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_compile_analysis_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_compile_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_clause, pn_args, pn_id
    integer :: n, i
    pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
    pn_args => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause, 2)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    if (associated (pn_args)) then
      n = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_args)
      allocate (cmd%id (n))
      do i = 1, n
        pn_id => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_args, i)
        if (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_id)) == "analysis_id") then
          cmd%id(i)%tag = parse_node_get_string (pn_id)
        else
          cmd%id(i)%pn_sexpr => pn_id
        end if
      end do
    else
      allocate (cmd%id (0))
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_compile

```

First write the analysis data to file, then write a GAMELAN driver and produce MetaPost and T<sub>E</sub>X output.

```

⟨Commands: cmd compile analysis: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_compile_analysis_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_compile_analysis_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(string_t) :: file, basename, extension, driver_file
    integer :: u_driver
    logical :: has_gmlcode
    call write_analysis_wrap (cmd%local%var_list, &
      global%out_files, cmd%id, tag = cmd%tag, &
      data_file = file)
    basename = file
    if (scan (".", basename) > 0) then
      call split (basename, extension, ".", back=.true.)
    else
      extension = ""
    end if
    driver_file = basename // ".tex"
    u_driver = free_unit ()
    open (unit=u_driver, file=char(driver_file), &

```



```

        action="write", status="replace")
if (allocated (cmd%tag)) then
    call analysis_write_driver (file, cmd%tag, unit=u_driver)
    has_gmlcode = analysis_has_plots (cmd%tag)
else
    call analysis_write_driver (file, unit=u_driver)
    has_gmlcode = analysis_has_plots ()
end if
close (u_driver)
call msg_message ("Compiling analysis results display in '" &
    // char (driver_file) // "'")
call analysis_compile_tex (basename, has_gmlcode, global%os_data)
end subroutine cmd_compile_analysis_execute

```

## 23.2 User-controlled output to data files

### Open file (output)

Open a file for output.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_open_out_t
    private
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: file_expr => null ()
    contains
        <Commands: cmd open out: TBP>
    end type cmd_open_out_t

```

Finalizer for the embedded eval tree.

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_open_out_final (object)
        class(cmd_open_out_t), intent(inout) :: object
    end subroutine cmd_open_out_final

```

Output (trivial here).

```

<Commands: cmd open out: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_open_out_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_open_out_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_open_out_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "open_out: <filename>"
    end subroutine cmd_open_out_write

```

Compile: create an eval tree for the filename expression.

```

<Commands: cmd open out: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_open_out_compile

```

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_open_out_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_open_out_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    cmd%file_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    if (associated (cmd%file_expr)) then
      cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (cmd%file_expr)
    end if
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
  end subroutine cmd_open_out_compile

```

Execute: append the file to the global list of open files.

```

⟨Commands: cmd open out: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_open_out_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_open_out_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_open_out_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(eval_tree_t) :: file_expr
    type(string_t) :: file
    call eval_tree_init_sexpr (file_expr, cmd%file_expr, cmd%local%var_list)
    call eval_tree_evaluate (file_expr)
    if (eval_tree_result_is_known (file_expr)) then
      file = eval_tree_get_string (file_expr)
      call file_list_open (global%out_files, file, &
        action = "write", status = "replace", position = "asis")
    else
      call msg_fatal ("open_out: file name argument evaluates to unknown")
    end if
    call eval_tree_final (file_expr)
  end subroutine cmd_open_out_execute

```

## Open file (output)

Close an output file. Except for the `execute` method, everything is analogous to the open command, so we can just inherit.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (cmd_open_out_t) :: cmd_close_out_t
  private
  contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd close out: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_close_out_t

```

Execute: remove the file from the global list of output files.

```

⟨Commands: cmd close out: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_close_out_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_close_out_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_close_out_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global

```

```

type(eval_tree_t) :: file_expr
type(string_t) :: file
call eval_tree_init_sexpr (file_expr, cmd%file_expr, cmd%local%var_list)
call eval_tree_evaluate (file_expr)
if (eval_tree_result_is_known (file_expr)) then
    file = eval_tree_get_string (file_expr)
    call file_list_close (global%out_files, file)
else
    call msg_fatal ("close_out: file name argument evaluates to unknown")
end if
call eval_tree_final (file_expr)
end subroutine cmd_close_out_execute

```

### 23.2.1 Print custom-formatted values

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_printf_t
    private
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sexpr => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sprintf_fun => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sprintf_clause => null ()
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: sprintf => null ()
    contains
    <Commands: cmd printf: TBP>
end type cmd_printf_t

```

Finalize.

```

<Commands: cmd printf: TBP>≡
    procedure :: final => cmd_printf_final

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_printf_final (cmd)
        class(cmd_printf_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        call parse_node_final (cmd%sexpr, recursive = .false.)
        deallocate (cmd%sexpr)
        call parse_node_final (cmd%sprintf_fun, recursive = .false.)
        deallocate (cmd%sprintf_fun)
        call parse_node_final (cmd%sprintf_clause, recursive = .false.)
        deallocate (cmd%sprintf_clause)
        call parse_node_final (cmd%sprintf, recursive = .false.)
        deallocate (cmd%sprintf)
    end subroutine cmd_printf_final

```

Output. Do not print the parse tree, since this may get cluttered. Just a message that cuts have been defined.

```

<Commands: cmd printf: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_printf_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_printf_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_printf_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    end subroutine cmd_printf_write

```

```

integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "printf:"
end subroutine cmd_printf_write

```

Compile. We create a fake parse node (subtree) with a `sprintf` command with identical arguments which can then be handled by the corresponding evaluation procedure.

```

⟨Commands: cmd printf: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_printf_compile

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_printf_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_printf_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_cmd, pn_clause, pn_args, pn_format
    pn_cmd => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
    pn_clause => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cmd)
    pn_format => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_clause, 2)
    pn_args => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_clause)
    cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_cmd)
    call cmd%compile_options (global)
    allocate (cmd%sexpr)
    call parse_node_create_branch (cmd%sexpr, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("sexpr")))
    allocate (cmd%sprintf_fun)
    call parse_node_create_branch (cmd%sprintf_fun, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("sprintf_fun")))
    allocate (cmd%sprintf_clause)
    call parse_node_create_branch (cmd%sprintf_clause, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("sprintf_clause")))
    allocate (cmd%sprintf)
    call parse_node_create_key (cmd%sprintf, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("sprintf")))
    call parse_node_append_sub (cmd%sprintf_clause, cmd%sprintf)
    call parse_node_append_sub (cmd%sprintf_clause, pn_format)
    call parse_node_freeze_branch (cmd%sprintf_clause)
    call parse_node_append_sub (cmd%sprintf_fun, cmd%sprintf_clause)
    if (associated (pn_args)) then
      call parse_node_append_sub (cmd%sprintf_fun, pn_args)
    end if
    call parse_node_freeze_branch (cmd%sprintf_fun)
    call parse_node_append_sub (cmd%sexpr, cmd%sprintf_fun)
    call parse_node_freeze_branch (cmd%sexpr)
  end subroutine cmd_printf_compile

```

Execute. Evaluate the string (pretending this is a `sprintf` expression) and print it.

```

⟨Commands: cmd printf: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_printf_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_printf_execute (cmd, global)

```

```

class(cmd_printf_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(string_t) :: string, file
type(eval_tree_t) :: sprintf_expr
logical :: advance
advance = var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, &
    var_str ("?out_advance"))
file = var_list_get_sval (cmd%local%var_list, &
    var_str ("out_file"))
call eval_tree_init_sexpr (sprintf_expr, cmd%sexpr, cmd%local%var_list)
call eval_tree_evaluate (sprintf_expr)
if (eval_tree_result_is_known (sprintf_expr)) then
    string = eval_tree_get_string (sprintf_expr)
    if (len (file) == 0) then
        call msg_result (char (string))
    else
        call file_list_write (global%out_files, file, string, advance)
    end if
end if
end subroutine cmd_printf_execute

```

## Record data

The expression syntax already contains a `record` keyword; this evaluates to a logical which is always true, but it has the side-effect of recording data into analysis objects. Here we define a command as an interface to this construct.

```

<Commands: types>+=
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_record_t
private
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr => null ()
contains
<Commands: cmd record: TBP>
end type cmd_record_t

```

Output. With the compile hack below, there is nothing of interest to print here.

```

<Commands: cmd record: TBP>=
procedure :: write => cmd_record_write

<Commands: procedures>+=
subroutine cmd_record_write (cmd, unit, indent)
class(cmd_record_t), intent(in) :: cmd
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "record"
end subroutine cmd_record_write

```

Compile. This is a hack which transforms the `record` command into a `record` expression, which we handle in the expressions module.

```

<Commands: cmd record: TBP>+=
procedure :: compile => cmd_record_compile

```

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_record_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_record_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr, pn_lsinglet, pn_lterm, pn_record
    call parse_node_create_branch (pn_lexpr, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("lexpr")))
    call parse_node_create_branch (pn_lsinglet, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("lsinglet")))
    call parse_node_append_sub (pn_lexpr, pn_lsinglet)
    call parse_node_create_branch (pn_lterm, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("lterm")))
    call parse_node_append_sub (pn_lsinglet, pn_lterm)
    pn_record => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn)
    call parse_node_append_sub (pn_lterm, pn_record)
    cmd%pn_lexpr => pn_lexpr
  end subroutine cmd_record_compile

```

Command execution. Again, transfer this to the embedded expression and just forget the logical result.

```

⟨Commands: cmd record: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_record_execute

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_record_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_record_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    logical :: lval
    lval = eval_log (cmd%pn_lexpr, global%var_list)
  end subroutine cmd_record_execute

```

## Unstable particles

Mark a particle as unstable. For each unstable particle, we store a number of decay channels and compute their respective BRs.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_unstable_t
  private
    integer :: n_proc = 0
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_id
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_prt_in => null ()
  contains
    ⟨Commands: cmd unstable: TBP⟩
  end type cmd_unstable_t

```

Output: we know the process IDs.

```

⟨Commands: cmd unstable: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_unstable_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine cmd_unstable_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_unstable_t), intent(in) :: cmd

```

```

integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u, i
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0,1x,A)", advance="no") &
    "unstable:", 1, "("
do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
    if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") " ,"
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (cmd%process_id(i))
end do
write (u, "(A)" ) ")"
end subroutine cmd_unstable_write

```

Compile. Initiate an eval tree for the decaying particle and determine the decay channel process IDs.

*<Commands: cmd unstable: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: compile => cmd_unstable_compile

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_unstable_compile (cmd, global)
class(cmd_unstable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_list, pn_proc
integer :: i
cmd%pn_prt_in => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
pn_list => parse_node_get_next_ptr (cmd%pn_prt_in)
if (associated (pn_list)) then
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_list)))
    case ("unstable_arg")
        cmd%n_proc = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_list)
        cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_list)
    case default
        cmd%n_proc = 0
        cmd%pn_opt => pn_list
        pn_list => null ()
    end select
end if
call cmd%compile_options (global)
if (associated (pn_list)) then
    allocate (cmd%process_id (cmd%n_proc))
    pn_proc => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_list)
    do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
        cmd%process_id(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_proc)
        call cmd%local%process_stack%init_result_vars (cmd%process_id(i))
        pn_proc => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proc)
    end do
else
    allocate (cmd%process_id (0))
end if
end subroutine cmd_unstable_compile

```

Command execution. Evaluate the decaying particle and mark the decays in the current model object.

```

{Commands: cmd unstable: TBP}+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_unstable_execute

{Commands: procedures}+≡
  subroutine cmd_unstable_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_unstable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    logical :: auto_decays, auto_decays_radiative
    integer :: auto_decays_multiplicity
    logical :: isotropic_decay, diagonal_decay
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pa_in
    integer :: pdg_in
    type(string_t) :: libname_cur, libname_dec
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: auto_id, tmp_id
    integer :: n_proc_user
    integer :: i, u_tmp
    character(80) :: buffer
    associate (var_list => cmd%local%var_list)
      auto_decays = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?auto_decays"))
      if (auto_decays) then
        auto_decays_multiplicity = &
          var_list_get_ival (var_list, var_str ("auto_decays_multiplicity"))
        auto_decays_radiative = &
          var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?auto_decays_radiative"))
      end if
      isotropic_decay = &
        var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?isotropic_decay"))
      if (.not. isotropic_decay) then
        diagonal_decay = &
          var_list_get_lval (var_list, var_str ("?diagonal_decay"))
      else
        diagonal_decay = .false.
      end if
    end associate
    pa_in = eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_prt_in, cmd%local%var_list)
    if (pdg_array_get_length (pa_in) /= 1) &
      call msg_fatal ("Unstable: decaying particle must be unique")
    pdg_in = pdg_array_get (pa_in, 1)
    n_proc_user = cmd%n_proc
    if (auto_decays) then
      call create_auto_decays (pdg_in, &
        auto_decays_multiplicity, auto_decays_radiative, &
        libname_dec, auto_id, cmd%local)
      allocate (tmp_id (cmd%n_proc + size (auto_id)))
      tmp_id(:cmd%n_proc) = cmd%process_id
      tmp_id(cmd%n_proc+1:) = auto_id
      call move_alloc (from = tmp_id, to = cmd%process_id)
      cmd%n_proc = size (cmd%process_id)
    end if
    libname_cur = cmd%local%prclib%get_name ()
    do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
      if (i == n_proc_user + 1) then
        call cmd%local%update_prclib &
          (cmd%local%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (libname_dec))
      end if
    end do
  end subroutine

```



```

        end if
        if (.not. cmd%local%process_stack%exists (cmd%process_id(i))) then
            call var_list_set_log (cmd%local%var_list, &
                var_str ("?decay_rest_frame"), .false., is_known = .true.)
            call integrate_process (cmd%process_id(i), cmd%local)
            call cmd%local%process_stack%fill_result_vars (cmd%process_id(i))
        end if
    end do
    call cmd%local%update_prclib &
        (cmd%local%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (libname_cur))
    call cmd%local%modify_particle (pdg_in, stable = .false., &
        decay = cmd%process_id, &
        isotropic_decay = isotropic_decay, &
        diagonal_decay = diagonal_decay, &
        polarized = .false.)
    u_tmp = free_unit ()
    open (u_tmp, status = "scratch", action = "readwrite")
    call show_unstable (cmd%local, pdg_in, u_tmp)
    rewind (u_tmp)
    do
        read (u_tmp, "(A)", end = 1) buffer
        write (msg_buffer, "(A)") trim (buffer)
        call msg_message ()
    end do
1   continue
    close (u_tmp)
end subroutine cmd_unstable_execute

```

Show data for the current unstable particle. This is called both by the `unstable` and by the `show` command.

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine show_unstable (global, pdg, u)
    type(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
    integer, intent(in) :: pdg, u
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: decay
    real(default), dimension(:), allocatable :: br
    real(default) :: width
    type(process_t), pointer :: process
    type(process_component_def_t), pointer :: prc_def
    type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out, prt_out_str
    integer :: i, j
    call flavor_init (flv, pdg, global%model)
    call flavor_get_decays (flv, decay)
    if (.not. allocated (decay)) return
    allocate (prt_out_str (size (decay)))
    allocate (br (size (decay)))
    do i = 1, size (br)
        process => global%process_stack%get_process_ptr (decay(i))
        prc_def => process%get_component_def_ptr (1)
        call prc_def%get_prt_out (prt_out)
        prt_out_str(i) = prt_out(1)
        do j = 2, size (prt_out)

```

```

        prt_out_str(i) = prt_out_str(i) // ", " // prt_out(j)
    end do
    br(i) = process%get_integral ()
end do
if (all (br >= 0)) then
    if (any (br > 0)) then
        width = sum (br)
        br = br / sum (br)
        write (u, "(A)") "Unstable particle " &
            // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
            // ": computed branching ratios:"
        do i = 1, size (br)
            write (u, "(2x,A,':'," // FMT_14 // ",3x,A)") &
                char (decay(i)), br(i), char (prt_out_str(i))
        end do
        write (u, "(2x,'Total width ='," // FMT_14 // ", ' GeV (computed)')") width
        write (u, "(2x,'          ='," // FMT_14 // ", ' GeV (preset)')") &
            flavor_get_width (flv)
        if (flavor_decays_isotropically (flv)) then
            write (u, "(2x,A)") "Decay options: isotropic"
        else if (flavor_decays_diagonal (flv)) then
            write (u, "(2x,A)") "Decay options: &
                &projection on diagonal helicity states"
        else
            write (u, "(2x,A)") "Decay options: helicity treated exactly"
        end if
    else
        call msg_fatal ("Unstable particle " &
            // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
            // ": partial width vanishes for all decay channels")
    end if
else
    call msg_fatal ("Unstable particle " &
        // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
        // ": partial width is negative")
    end if
end if
end subroutine show_unstable

```

Auto decays: create process IDs and make up process configurations, using the PDG codes generated by the `ds_table` make method.

We allocate and use a self-contained process library that contains only the decay processes of the current particle. When done, we revert the global library pointer to the original library but return the name of the new one. The new library becomes part of the global library stack and can thus be referred to at any time.

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine create_auto_decays &
    (pdg_in, mult, rad, libname_dec, process_id, global)
integer, intent(in) :: pdg_in
integer, intent(in) :: mult
logical, intent(in) :: rad
type(string_t), intent(out) :: libname_dec
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable, intent(out) :: process_id

```

```

type(rt_data_t), intent(inout) :: global
type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib_entry
type(process_library_t), pointer :: lib
type(ds_table_t) :: ds_table
type(split_constraints_t) :: constraints
type(pdg_array_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: pa_out
character(80) :: buffer
character :: p_or_a
type(string_t) :: process_string, libname_cur
type(flavor_t) :: flv_in, flv_out
type(string_t) :: prt_in
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: prt_out
type(process_configuration_t) :: prc_config
integer :: i, j, k, n
call flavor_init (flv_in, pdg_in, global%model)
if (rad) then
    call constraints%init (2)
else
    call constraints%init (3)
    call constraints%set (3, constrain_radiation ())
end if
call constraints%set (1, constrain_n_tot (mult))
call constraints%set (2, constrain_mass_sum (flavor_get_mass (flv_in)))
call ds_table%make (global%model, pdg_in, constraints)
prt_in = flavor_get_name (flv_in)
if (pdg_in > 0) then
    p_or_a = "p"
else
    p_or_a = "a"
end if
call msg_message ("Creating decay process library for particle " &
    // char (prt_in))
libname_cur = global%prclib%get_name ()
write (buffer, "(A,A,I0)" "d", p_or_a, abs (pdg_in))
libname_dec = libname_cur // trim (buffer)
lib => global%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (libname_dec)
if (.not. (associated (lib))) then
    allocate (lib_entry)
    call lib_entry%init (libname_dec)
    lib => lib_entry%process_library_t
    call global%add_prclib (lib_entry)
else
    call global%update_prclib (lib)
end if
allocate (process_id (ds_table%get_length ()))
do i = 1, size (process_id)
    write (buffer, "(A,'_',A,I0,'_',I0)" "decay", p_or_a, abs (pdg_in), i)
    process_id(i) = trim (buffer)
    process_string = process_id(i) // ": " // prt_in // " =>"
    call ds_table%get_pdg_out (i, pa_out)
    allocate (prt_out (size (pa_out)))
    do j = 1, size (pa_out)
        do k = 1, pa_out(j)%get_length ()
            call flavor_init (flv_out, pa_out(j)%get (k), global%model)

```

```

        if (k == 1) then
            prt_out(j) = flavor_get_name (flv_out)
        else
            prt_out(j) = prt_out(j) // ":" // flavor_get_name (flv_out)
        end if
    end do
    process_string = process_string // " " // prt_out(j)
end do
call msg_message (char (process_string))
call prc_config%init (process_id(i), 1, 1, global)
call prc_config%setup_component (1, &
    new_prt_spec ([prt_in]), new_prt_spec (prt_out), global)
call prc_config%record (global)
deallocate (prt_out)
deallocate (pa_out)
end do
call ds_table%final ()
lib => global%prclib_stack%get_library_ptr (libname_cur)
call global%update_prclib (lib)
end subroutine create_auto_decays

```

### (Stable particles

Revert the unstable declaration for a list of particles.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_stable_t
    private
        type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_pdg
    contains
        <Commands: cmd stable: TBP>
    end type cmd_stable_t

```

Output: we know only the number of particles.

```

<Commands: cmd stable: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_stable_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_stable_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_stable_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "stable:", size (cmd%pn_pdg)
    end subroutine cmd_stable_write

```

Compile. Assign parse nodes for the particle IDs.

```

<Commands: cmd stable: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_stable_compile

```

```

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_stable_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_stable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_list, pn_ptr
  integer :: n, i
  pn_list => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
  cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_list)
  call cmd%compile_options (global)
  n = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_list)
  allocate (cmd%pn_pdg (n))
  pn_ptr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_list)
  i = 1
  do while (associated (pn_ptr))
    cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr => pn_ptr
    pn_ptr => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_ptr)
    i = i + 1
  end do
end subroutine cmd_stable_compile

```

Execute: apply the modifications to the current model.

```

<Commands: cmd stable: TBP>+≡
procedure :: execute => cmd_stable_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_stable_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_stable_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), target, intent(inout) :: global
  type(pdg_array_t) :: pa
  integer :: pdg
  type(flavor_t) :: flv
  integer :: i
  do i = 1, size (cmd%pn_pdg)
    pa = eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr, cmd%local%var_list)
    if (pdg_array_get_length (pa) /= 1) &
      call msg_fatal ("Stable: listed particles must be unique")
    pdg = pdg_array_get (pa, 1)
    call cmd%local%modify_particle (pdg, stable = .true., &
      isotropic_decay = .false., &
      diagonal_decay = .false., &
      polarized = .false.)
    call flavor_init (flv, pdg, cmd%local%model)
    call msg_message ("Particle " &
      // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
      // " declared as stable")
  end do
end subroutine cmd_stable_execute

```

## Polarized particles

These commands mark particles as (un)polarized, to be applied in subsequent simulation passes. Since this is technically the same as the `stable` command,

we take a shortcut and make this an extension, just overriding methods.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (cmd_stable_t) :: cmd_polarized_t
  contains
    <Commands: cmd polarized: TBP>
  end type cmd_polarized_t

  type, extends (cmd_stable_t) :: cmd_unpolarized_t
  contains
    <Commands: cmd unpolarized: TBP>
  end type cmd_unpolarized_t

```

Output: we know only the number of particles.

```

<Commands: cmd polarized: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_polarized_write

<Commands: cmd unpolarized: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_unpolarized_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_polarized_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_polarized_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "polarized:", size (cmd%pn_pdg)
  end subroutine cmd_polarized_write

  subroutine cmd_unpolarized_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_unpolarized_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,1x,I0)") "unpolarized:", size (cmd%pn_pdg)
  end subroutine cmd_unpolarized_write

```

Compile: accounted for by the base command.

Execute: apply the modifications to the current model.

```

<Commands: cmd polarized: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_polarized_execute

<Commands: cmd unpolarized: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_unpolarized_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_polarized_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_polarized_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), target, intent(inout) :: global
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pa
    integer :: pdg
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (cmd%pn_pdg)

```

```

    pa = eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr, cmd%local%var_list)
    if (pdg_array_get_length (pa) /= 1) &
        call msg_fatal ("Polarized: listed particles must be unique")
    pdg = pdg_array_get (pa, 1)
    call cmd%local%modify_particle (pdg, polarized = .true., &
        stable = .true., &
        isotropic_decay = .false., &
        diagonal_decay = .false.)
    call flavor_init (flv, pdg, cmd%local%model)
    call msg_message ("Particle " &
        // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
        // " declared as polarized")
end do
end subroutine cmd_polarized_execute

subroutine cmd_unpolarized_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_unpolarized_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), target, intent(inout) :: global
    type(pdg_array_t) :: pa
    integer :: pdg
    type(flavor_t) :: flv
    integer :: i
    do i = 1, size (cmd%pn_pdg)
        pa = eval_pdg_array (cmd%pn_pdg(i)%ptr, cmd%local%var_list)
        if (pdg_array_get_length (pa) /= 1) &
            call msg_fatal ("Unpolarized: listed particles must be unique")
        pdg = pdg_array_get (pa, 1)
        call cmd%local%modify_particle (pdg, polarized = .false., &
            stable = .true., &
            isotropic_decay = .false., &
            diagonal_decay = .false.)
        call flavor_init (flv, pdg, cmd%local%model)
        call msg_message ("Particle " &
            // char (flavor_get_name (flv)) &
            // " declared as unpolarized")
    end do
end subroutine cmd_unpolarized_execute

```

### Parameters: formats for event-sample output

Specify all event formats that are to be used for output files in the subsequent simulation run. (The raw format is on by default and can be turned off here.)

*<Commands: types>+≡*

```

    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_sample_format_t
    private
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: format
    contains
        <Commands: cmd sample format: TBP>
    end type cmd_sample_format_t

```

Output: here, everything is known.

*<Commands: cmd sample format: TBP>≡*

```

        procedure :: write => cmd_sample_format_write
    <Commands: procedures>+≡
        subroutine cmd_sample_format_write (cmd, unit, indent)
            class(cmd_sample_format_t), intent(in) :: cmd
            integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
            integer :: u, i
            u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
            call write_indent (u, indent)
            write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "sample_format = "
            do i = 1, size (cmd%format)
                if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") ", "
                write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (cmd%format(i))
            end do
            write (u, "(A)")
        end subroutine cmd_sample_format_write

```

Compile. Initialize evaluation trees.

```

    <Commands: cmd sample format: TBP>+≡
        procedure :: compile => cmd_sample_format_compile
    <Commands: procedures>+≡
        subroutine cmd_sample_format_compile (cmd, global)
            class(cmd_sample_format_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
            type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
            type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
            type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_format
            integer :: i, n_format
            pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
            if (associated (pn_arg)) then
                n_format = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
                allocate (cmd%format (n_format))
                pn_format => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
                i = 0
                do while (associated (pn_format))
                    i = i + 1
                    cmd%format(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_format)
                    pn_format => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_format)
                end do
            else
                allocate (cmd%format (0))
            end if
        end subroutine cmd_sample_format_compile

```

Execute. Transfer the list of format specifications to the corresponding array in the runtime data set.

```

    <Commands: cmd sample format: TBP>+≡
        procedure :: execute => cmd_sample_format_execute
    <Commands: procedures>+≡
        subroutine cmd_sample_format_execute (cmd, global)
            class(cmd_sample_format_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
            type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
            if (allocated (global%sample_fmt)) deallocate (global%sample_fmt)

```



```

        allocate (global%sample_fmt (size (cmd%format)), source = cmd%format)
    end subroutine cmd_sample_format_execute

```

## The simulate command

This is the actual SINDARIN command.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
    type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_simulate_t
        ! not private anymore as required by the whizard-c-interface
        integer :: n_proc = 0
        type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_id
    contains
        <Commands: cmd simulate: TBP>
    end type cmd_simulate_t

```

Output: we know the process IDs.

```

<Commands: cmd simulate: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_simulate_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_simulate_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_simulate_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u, i
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "simulate ("
        do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
            if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") ", "
            write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (cmd%process_id(i))
        end do
        write (u, "(A)") ")"
    end subroutine cmd_simulate_write

```

Compile. In contrast to WHIZARD 1 the confusing option to give the number of unweighted events for weighted events as if unweighting were to take place has been abandoned. (We both use `n_events` for weighted and unweighted events, the variable `n_calls` from WHIZARD 1 has been discarded.

```

<Commands: cmd simulate: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_simulate_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_simulate_compile (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_simulate_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_proclist, pn_proc
        integer :: i
        pn_proclist => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
        cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proclist)
        call cmd%compile_options (global)
        cmd%n_proc = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_proclist)
        allocate (cmd%process_id (cmd%n_proc))
    end subroutine cmd_simulate_compile

```

```

pn_proc => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_proclist)
do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
  cmd%process_id(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_proc)
  call global%process_stack%init_result_vars (cmd%process_id(i))
  pn_proc => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proc)
end do
end subroutine cmd_simulate_compile

```

Execute command: Simulate events. This is done via a `simulation_t` object and its associated methods.

Signal handling: the `generate` method may exit abnormally if there is a pending signal. The current logic ensures that the `es_array` output channels are closed before the `execute` routine returns. The program will terminate then in `command_list_execute`.

*<Commands: cmd simulate: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_simulate_execute

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_simulate_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_simulation_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(rt_data_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: alt_env
  integer :: n_events, n_fmt
  type(string_t) :: sample
  logical :: rebuild_events, read_raw, write_raw
  type(simulation_t), target :: sim
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sample_fmt
  type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
  type(event_sample_data_t) :: data
  integer :: i, checkpoint
  if (allocated (cmd%local%pn%alt_setup)) then
    allocate (alt_env (size (cmd%local%pn%alt_setup)))
    do i = 1, size (alt_env)
      call build_alt_setup (alt_env(i), cmd%local, &
        cmd%local%pn%alt_setup(i)%ptr)
    end do
    call sim%init (cmd%process_id, .true., .true., cmd%local, alt_env)
  else
    call sim%init (cmd%process_id, .true., .true., cmd%local)
  end if
  if (signal_is_pending ()) return
  if (sim%is_valid ()) then
    call sim%init_process_selector ()
    call openmp_set_num_threads_verbose &
      (var_list_get_ival (cmd%local%var_list, "openmp_num_threads"), &
        var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, "?openmp_logging"))
    call sim%compute_n_events (n_events, cmd%local%var_list)
    sample = var_list_get_sval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("sample"))
    if (sample == "") sample = sim%get_default_sample_name ()
    rebuild_events = &
      var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("rebuild_events"))
    read_raw = &
      var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("read_raw")) &
      .and. .not. rebuild_events
  end if
end subroutine cmd_simulate_execute

```

```

write_raw = &
    var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?write_raw"))
checkpoint = &
    var_list_get_ival (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("checkpoint"))
if (read_raw) then
    inquire (file = char (sample) // ".evx", exist = read_raw)
end if
if (allocated (cmd%local%sample_fmt)) then
    n_fmt = size (cmd%local%sample_fmt)
else
    n_fmt = 0
end if
data = sim%get_data ()
data%n_evt = n_events
if (read_raw) then
    allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt))
    if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt = cmd%local%sample_fmt
    call es_array%init (sample, &
        sample_fmt, sim%get_process_ptr (), cmd%local, &
        data = data, &
        input = var_str ("raw"), &
        allow_switch = write_raw, &
        checkpoint = checkpoint)
    call sim%generate (n_events, es_array)
    call es_array%final ()
else if (write_raw) then
    allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt + 1))
    if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt (:n_fmt) = cmd%local%sample_fmt
    sample_fmt(n_fmt+1) = var_str ("raw")
    call es_array%init (sample, &
        sample_fmt, sim%get_process_ptr (), cmd%local, &
        data = data, &
        checkpoint = checkpoint)
    call sim%generate (n_events, es_array)
    call es_array%final ()
else if (allocated (cmd%local%sample_fmt) .or. checkpoint > 0) then
    allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt))
    if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt = cmd%local%sample_fmt
    call es_array%init (sample, &
        sample_fmt, sim%get_process_ptr (), cmd%local, &
        data = data, &
        checkpoint = checkpoint)
    call sim%generate (n_events, es_array)
    call es_array%final ()
else
    call sim%generate (n_events)
end if
end if
call sim%final ()
end subroutine cmd_simulate_execute

```

Build an alternative setup: the parse tree is stored in the global environment.  
 We create a temporary command list to compile and execute this; the result

is an alternative local environment `alt_env` which we can hand over to the `simulate` command.

```

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
recursive subroutine build_alt_setup (alt_env, global, pn)
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: alt_env
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
  type(command_list_t), allocatable :: alt_options
  allocate (alt_options)
  call alt_env%local_init (global)
  call alt_env%link (global)
  call alt_options%compile (pn, alt_env)
  call alt_options%execute (alt_env)
  call global%restore (alt_env, keep_local = .true.)
  call alt_options%final ()
end subroutine build_alt_setup

```

## The rescan command

This is the actual SINDARIN command.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_rescan_t
! private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_filename => null ()
  integer :: n_proc = 0
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: process_id
contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd rescan: TBP⟩
end type cmd_rescan_t

```

Output: we know the process IDs.

```

⟨Commands: cmd rescan: TBP⟩≡
procedure :: write => cmd_rescan_write

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
subroutine cmd_rescan_write (cmd, unit, indent)
  class(cmd_rescan_t), intent(in) :: cmd
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
  integer :: u, i
  u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
  call write_indent (u, indent)
  write (u, "(1x,A)", advance="no") "rescan ("
  do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
    if (i > 1) write (u, "(A,1x)", advance="no") " ,"
    write (u, "(A)", advance="no") char (cmd%process_id(i))
  end do
  write (u, "(A)") ")"
end subroutine cmd_rescan_write

```

Compile. The command takes a suffix argument, namely the file name of requested event file.

```

⟨Commands: cmd rescan: TBP⟩+≡

```

```

procedure :: compile => cmd_rescan_compile
<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_rescan_compile (cmd, global)
class(cmd_rescan_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_filename, pn_proclist, pn_proc
integer :: i
pn_filename => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
pn_proclist => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_filename)
cmd%pn_opt => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proclist)
call cmd%compile_options (global)
cmd%pn_filename => pn_filename
cmd%n_proc = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_proclist)
allocate (cmd%process_id (cmd%n_proc))
pn_proc => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_proclist)
do i = 1, cmd%n_proc
    cmd%process_id(i) = parse_node_get_string (pn_proc)
    pn_proc => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_proc)
end do
end subroutine cmd_rescan_compile

```

Execute command: Rescan events. This is done via a `simulation_t` object and its associated methods.

```

<Commands: cmd rescan: TBP>+≡
procedure :: execute => cmd_rescan_execute
<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_rescan_execute (cmd, global)
class(cmd_rescan_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
type(rt_data_t), dimension(:), allocatable, target :: alt_env
type(string_t) :: sample
logical :: exist, write_raw, update_event, update_sqme, update_weight
logical :: recover_beams
type(simulation_t), target :: sim
type(event_sample_data_t) :: input_data, data
type(string_t) :: input_sample
integer :: n_fmt
type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: sample_fmt
type(string_t) :: input_format, input_ext, input_file
type(string_t) :: lhef_extension
type(event_stream_array_t) :: es_array
integer :: i, n_events
if (allocated (cmd%local%pn%alt_setup)) then
    allocate (alt_env (size (cmd%local%pn%alt_setup)))
    do i = 1, size (alt_env)
        call build_alt_setup (alt_env(i), cmd%local, &
            cmd%local%pn%alt_setup(i)%ptr)
    end do
    call sim%init (cmd%process_id, .false., .false., cmd%local, alt_env)
else
    call sim%init (cmd%process_id, .false., .false., cmd%local)
end if
call sim%compute_n_events (n_events, cmd%local%var_list)

```

```

input_sample = eval_string (cmd%pn_filename, cmd%local%var_list)
input_format = var_list_get_sval (cmd%local%var_list, &
    var_str ("$_rescan_input_format"))
sample = var_list_get_sval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("$_sample"))
if (sample == "") sample = sim%get_default_sample_name ()
write_raw = var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?write_raw"))
if (allocated (cmd%local%sample_fmt)) then
    n_fmt = size (cmd%local%sample_fmt)
else
    n_fmt = 0
end if
if (write_raw) then
    if (sample == input_sample) then
        call msg_error ("Rescan: ?write_raw = true: " &
            // "suppressing raw event output (filename clashes with input)")
        allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt))
        if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt = cmd%local%sample_fmt
    else
        allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt + 1))
        if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt (:n_fmt) = cmd%local%sample_fmt
        sample_fmt(n_fmt+1) = var_str ("raw")
    end if
else
    allocate (sample_fmt (n_fmt))
    if (n_fmt > 0) sample_fmt = cmd%local%sample_fmt
end if
update_event = &
    var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?update_event"))
update_sqme = &
    var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?update_sqme"))
update_weight = &
    var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?update_weight"))
recover_beams = &
    var_list_get_lval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("?recover_beams"))
if (update_event .or. update_sqme) then
    call msg_message ("Recalculating observables")
    if (update_sqme) then
        call msg_message ("Recalculating squared matrix elements")
    end if
end if
lhef_extension = &
    var_list_get_sval (cmd%local%var_list, var_str ("$_lhef_extension"))
select case (char (input_format))
case ("raw"); input_ext = "evx"
case ("lhef"); input_ext = lhef_extension
case default
    call msg_fatal ("rescan: input sample format '" // char (input_format) &
        // "' not supported")
end select
input_file = input_sample // "." // input_ext
inquire (file = char (input_file), exist = exist)
if (exist) then
    input_data = sim%get_data (alt = .false.)
    input_data%n_evt = n_events

```

```

data = sim%get_data ()
data%n_evt = n_events
input_data%md5sum_cfg = ""
call es_array%init (sample, &
    sample_fmt, sim%get_process_ptr (), cmd%local, data, &
    input = input_format, input_sample = input_sample, &
    input_data = input_data, &
    allow_switch = .false.)
call sim%rescan (n_events, es_array, &
    update_event = update_event, &
    update_sqme = update_sqme, &
    update_weight = update_weight, &
    recover_beams = recover_beams, &
    global = cmd%local)
call es_array%final ()
else
    call msg_fatal ("Rescan: event file '" &
        // char (input_file) // "' not found")
end if
call sim%final ()
end subroutine cmd_rescan_execute

```

### Parameters: number of iterations

Specify number of iterations and number of calls for one integration pass.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_iterations_t
private
integer :: n_pass = 0
type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_expr_n_it
type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_expr_n_calls
type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: pn_sexpr_adapt
contains
<Commands: cmd iterations: TBP>
end type cmd_iterations_t

```

Output. Display the number of passes, which is known after compilation.

```

<Commands: cmd iterations: TBP>≡
procedure :: write => cmd_iterations_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine cmd_iterations_write (cmd, unit, indent)
class(cmd_iterations_t), intent(in) :: cmd
integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
integer :: u
u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
call write_indent (u, indent)
select case (cmd%n_pass)
case (0)
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "iterations: [empty]"
case (1)
    write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "iterations: ", cmd%n_pass, " pass"

```

```

    case default
        write (u, "(1x,A,I0,A)") "iterations: ", cmd%n_pass, " passes"
    end select
end subroutine cmd_iterations_write

```

Compile. Initialize evaluation trees.

```

<Commands: cmd iterations: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_iterations_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_iterations_compile (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_iterations_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_n_it, pn_n_calls, pn_adapt
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_it_spec, pn_calls_spec, pn_adapt_spec
        integer :: i
        pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 3)
        if (associated (pn_arg)) then
            cmd%n_pass = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
            allocate (cmd%pn_expr_n_it (cmd%n_pass))
            allocate (cmd%pn_expr_n_calls (cmd%n_pass))
            allocate (cmd%pn_sexpr_adapt (cmd%n_pass))
            pn_it_spec => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
            i = 1
            do while (associated (pn_it_spec))
                pn_n_it => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_it_spec)
                pn_calls_spec => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_n_it)
                pn_n_calls => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_calls_spec, 2)
                pn_adapt_spec => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_calls_spec)
                if (associated (pn_adapt_spec)) then
                    pn_adapt => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_adapt_spec, 2)
                else
                    pn_adapt => null ()
                end if
                cmd%pn_expr_n_it(i)%ptr => pn_n_it
                cmd%pn_expr_n_calls(i)%ptr => pn_n_calls
                cmd%pn_sexpr_adapt(i)%ptr => pn_adapt
                i = i + 1
                pn_it_spec => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_it_spec)
            end do
        else
            allocate (cmd%pn_expr_n_it (0))
            allocate (cmd%pn_expr_n_calls (0))
        end if
    end subroutine cmd_iterations_compile

```

Execute. Evaluate the trees and transfer the results to the iteration list in the runtime data set.

```

<Commands: cmd iterations: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => cmd_iterations_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_iterations_execute (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_iterations_t), intent(inout) :: cmd

```



```

type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
integer, dimension(cmd%n_pass) :: n_it, n_calls
logical, dimension(cmd%n_pass) :: custom_adapt
type(string_t), dimension(cmd%n_pass) :: adapt_code
integer :: i
do i = 1, cmd%n_pass
  n_it(i) = eval_int (cmd%pn_expr_n_it(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
  n_calls(i) = &
    eval_int (cmd%pn_expr_n_calls(i)%ptr, global%var_list)
  if (associated (cmd%pn_sexpr_adapt(i)%ptr)) then
    adapt_code(i) = &
      eval_string (cmd%pn_sexpr_adapt(i)%ptr, &
        global%var_list, is_known = custom_adapt(i))
  else
    custom_adapt(i) = .false.
  end if
end do
call global%it_list%init (n_it, n_calls, custom_adapt, adapt_code)
end subroutine cmd_iterations_execute

```

## Range expressions

We need a special type for storing and evaluating range expressions.

*(Commands: parameters)*≡

```

integer, parameter :: STEP_NONE = 0
integer, parameter :: STEP_ADD = 1
integer, parameter :: STEP_SUB = 2
integer, parameter :: STEP_MUL = 3
integer, parameter :: STEP_DIV = 4
integer, parameter :: STEP_COMP_ADD = 11
integer, parameter :: STEP_COMP_MUL = 13

```

There is an abstract base type and two implementations: scan over integers and scan over reals.

*(Commands: types)*+≡

```

type, abstract :: range_t
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_expr => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_term => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_factor => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_value => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_literal => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_beg => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_end => null ()
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_step => null ()
  type(eval_tree_t) :: expr_beg
  type(eval_tree_t) :: expr_end
  type(eval_tree_t) :: expr_step
  integer :: step_mode = 0
  integer :: n_step = 0
contains
  (Commands: range: TBP)
end type range_t

```

These are the implementations:

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (range_t) :: range_int_t
    integer :: i_beg = 0
    integer :: i_end = 0
    integer :: i_step = 0
    contains
    ⟨Commands: range int: TBP⟩
  end type range_int_t

  type, extends (range_t) :: range_real_t
    real(default) :: r_beg = 0
    real(default) :: r_end = 0
    real(default) :: r_step = 0
    real(default) :: lr_beg = 0
    real(default) :: lr_end = 0
    real(default) :: lr_step = 0
    contains
    ⟨Commands: range real: TBP⟩
  end type range_real_t

```

Finalize the allocated dummy node. The other nodes are just pointers.

```

⟨Commands: range: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: final => range_final

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
  subroutine range_final (object)
    class(range_t), intent(inout) :: object
    if (associated (object%pn_expr)) then
      call parse_node_final (object%pn_expr, recursive = .false.)
      call parse_node_final (object%pn_term, recursive = .false.)
      call parse_node_final (object%pn_factor, recursive = .false.)
      call parse_node_final (object%pn_value, recursive = .false.)
      call parse_node_final (object%pn_literal, recursive = .false.)
      deallocate (object%pn_expr)
      deallocate (object%pn_term)
      deallocate (object%pn_factor)
      deallocate (object%pn_value)
      deallocate (object%pn_literal)
    end if
  end subroutine range_final

```

Output.

```

⟨Commands: range: TBP⟩+≡
  procedure (range_write), deferred :: write
  procedure :: base_write => range_write

⟨Commands: range int: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => range_int_write

⟨Commands: range real: TBP⟩≡
  procedure :: write => range_real_write

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine range_write (object, unit)
  class(range_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Range specification:"
  if (associated (object%pn_expr)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Dummy value:"
    call parse_node_write_rec (object%pn_expr, u)
  end if
  if (associated (object%pn_beg)) then
    write (u, "(1x,A)") "Initial value:"
    call parse_node_write_rec (object%pn_beg, u)
    call eval_tree_write (object%expr_beg, u)
    if (associated (object%pn_end)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Final value:"
      call parse_node_write_rec (object%pn_end, u)
      call eval_tree_write (object%expr_end, u)
    if (associated (object%pn_step)) then
      write (u, "(1x,A)") "Step value:"
      call parse_node_write_rec (object%pn_step, u)
      select case (object%step_mode)
        case (STEP_ADD);   write (u, "(1x,A)") "Step mode: +"
        case (STEP_SUB);   write (u, "(1x,A)") "Step mode: -"
        case (STEP_MUL);   write (u, "(1x,A)") "Step mode: *"
        case (STEP_DIV);   write (u, "(1x,A)") "Step mode: /"
        case (STEP_COMP_ADD); write (u, "(1x,A)") "Division mode: +"
        case (STEP_COMP_MUL); write (u, "(1x,A)") "Division mode: *"
      end select
    end if
  end if
else
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Expressions: [undefined]"
end if
end subroutine range_write

subroutine range_int_write (object, unit)
  class(range_int_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u
  u = output_unit (unit)
  call object%base_write (unit)
  write (u, "(1x,A)") "Range parameters:"
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "i_beg = ", object%i_beg
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "i_end = ", object%i_end
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "i_step = ", object%i_step
  write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_step = ", object%n_step
end subroutine range_int_write

subroutine range_real_write (object, unit)
  class(range_real_t), intent(in) :: object
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  integer :: u

```

```

u = output_unit (unit)
call object%base_write (unit)
write (u, "(1x,A)") "Range parameters:"
write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "r_beg = ", object%r_beg
write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "r_end = ", object%r_end
write (u, "(3x,A," // FMT_19 // ")") "r_step = ", object%r_end
write (u, "(3x,A,I0)") "n_step = ", object%n_step
end subroutine range_real_write

```

Initialize, given a range expression parse node. This is common to the implementations.

*(Commands: range: TBP)+≡*

```

procedure :: init => range_init

```

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

subroutine range_init (range, pn)
class(range_t), intent(out) :: range
type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_spec, pn_end, pn_step_spec, pn_op
select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)))
case ("expr")
case ("range_expr")
range%pn_beg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
pn_spec => parse_node_get_next_ptr (range%pn_beg)
if (associated (pn_spec)) then
pn_end => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_spec, 2)
range%pn_end => pn_end
pn_step_spec => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_end)
if (associated (pn_step_spec)) then
pn_op => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_step_spec)
range%pn_step => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_op)
select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_op)))
case ("/+"); range%step_mode = STEP_ADD
case ("/-"); range%step_mode = STEP_SUB
case ("/*"); range%step_mode = STEP_MUL
case ("//"); range%step_mode = STEP_DIV
case ("/+"); range%step_mode = STEP_COMP_ADD
case ("/*"); range%step_mode = STEP_COMP_MUL
case default
call range%write ()
call msg_bug ("Range: step mode not implemented")
end select
else
range%step_mode = STEP_ADD
end if
else
range%step_mode = STEP_NONE
end if
call range%create_value_node ()
case default
call msg_bug ("range expression: node type '" &
// char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn)) &
// "' not implemented")
end select
end subroutine range_init

```

```
end subroutine range_init
```

This method manually creates a parse node (actually, a cascade of parse nodes) that hold a constant value as a literal. The idea is that this node is inserted as the right-hand side of a fake variable assignment, which is prepended to each scan iteration. Before the variable assignment is compiled and executed, we can manually reset the value of the literal and thus pretend that the loop variable is assigned this value.

*<Commands: range: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: create_value_node => range_create_value_node
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine range_create_value_node (range)
  class(range_t), intent(inout) :: range
  allocate (range%pn_literal)
  allocate (range%pn_value)
  select type (range)
  type is (range_int_t)
    call parse_node_create_value (range%pn_literal, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("integer_literal")), &
      ival = 0)
    call parse_node_create_branch (range%pn_value, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("integer_value")))
  type is (range_real_t)
    call parse_node_create_value (range%pn_literal, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("real_literal")), &
      rval = 0._default)
    call parse_node_create_branch (range%pn_value, &
      syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("real_value")))
  class default
    call msg_bug ("range: create value node: type not implemented")
  end select
  call parse_node_append_sub (range%pn_value, range%pn_literal)
  call parse_node_freeze_branch (range%pn_value)
  allocate (range%pn_factor)
  call parse_node_create_branch (range%pn_factor, &
    syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("factor")))
  call parse_node_append_sub (range%pn_factor, range%pn_value)
  call parse_node_freeze_branch (range%pn_factor)
  allocate (range%pn_term)
  call parse_node_create_branch (range%pn_term, &
    syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("term")))
  call parse_node_append_sub (range%pn_term, range%pn_factor)
  call parse_node_freeze_branch (range%pn_term)
  allocate (range%pn_expr)
  call parse_node_create_branch (range%pn_expr, &
    syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("expr")))
  call parse_node_append_sub (range%pn_expr, range%pn_term)
  call parse_node_freeze_branch (range%pn_expr)
end subroutine range_create_value_node
```

Compile, given an environment.

*<Commands: range: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: compile => range_compile
  <Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine range_compile (range, global)
      class(range_t), intent(inout) :: range
      type(rt_data_t), intent(in), target :: global
      if (associated (range%pn_beg)) then
        call eval_tree_init_expr &
          (range%expr_beg, range%pn_beg, global%var_list)
        if (associated (range%pn_end)) then
          call eval_tree_init_expr &
            (range%expr_end, range%pn_end, global%var_list)
        if (associated (range%pn_step)) then
          call eval_tree_init_expr &
            (range%expr_step, range%pn_step, global%var_list)
        end if
      end if
    end if
  end if
end subroutine range_compile

```

Evaluate: compute the actual bounds and parameters that determine the values that we can iterate.

This is implementation-specific.

```

  <Commands: range: TBP>+≡
    procedure (range_evaluate), deferred :: evaluate

  <Commands: interfaces>+≡
    abstract interface
      subroutine range_evaluate (range)
        import
        class(range_t), intent(inout) :: range
      end subroutine range_evaluate
    end interface

```

The version for an integer variable. If the step is subtractive, we invert the sign and treat it as an additive step. For a multiplicative step, the step must be greater than one, and the initial and final values must be of same sign and strictly ordered. Analogously for a division step.

```

  <Commands: range int: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: evaluate => range_int_evaluate

  <Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine range_int_evaluate (range)
      class(range_int_t), intent(inout) :: range
      integer :: ival
      if (associated (range%pn_beg)) then
        call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_beg)
        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_beg)) then
          range%i_beg = eval_tree_get_int (range%expr_beg)
        else
          call range%write ()
          call msg_fatal &
            ("Range expression: initial value evaluates to unknown")
        end if
      end if
    end if

```

```

if (associated (range%pn_end)) then
  call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_end)
  if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_end)) then
    range%i_end = eval_tree_get_int (range%expr_end)
    if (associated (range%pn_step)) then
      call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_step)
      if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_step)) then
        range%i_step = eval_tree_get_int (range%expr_step)
        select case (range%step_mode)
          case (STEP_SUB); range%i_step = - range%i_step
        end select
      else
        call range%write ()
        call msg_fatal &
          ("Range expression: step value evaluates to unknown")
      end if
    else
      range%i_step = 1
    end if
  else
    call range%write ()
    call msg_fatal &
      ("Range expression: final value evaluates to unknown")
  end if
else
  range%i_end = range%i_beg
  range%i_step = 1
end if
select case (range%step_mode)
case (STEP_NONE)
  range%n_step = 1
case (STEP_ADD, STEP_SUB)
  if (range%i_step /= 0) then
    if (range%i_beg == range%i_end) then
      range%n_step = 1
    else if (sign (1, range%i_end - range%i_beg) &
      == sign (1, range%i_step)) then
      range%n_step = (range%i_end - range%i_beg) / range%i_step + 1
    else
      range%n_step = 0
    end if
  else
    call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (add): step value is zero")
  end if
case (STEP_MUL)
  if (range%i_step > 1) then
    if (range%i_beg == range%i_end) then
      range%n_step = 1
    else if (range%i_beg == 0) then
      call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (mul): initial value is zero")
    else if (sign (1, range%i_beg) == sign (1, range%i_end) &
      .and. abs (range%i_beg) < abs (range%i_end)) then
      range%n_step = 0
      ival = range%i_beg
    end if
  end if
end select

```

```

        do while (abs (ival) <= abs (range%i_end))
            range%n_step = range%n_step + 1
            ival = ival * range%i_step
        end do
    else
        range%n_step = 0
    end if
else
    call msg_fatal &
        ("range evaluation (mult): step value is one or less")
end if
case (STEP_DIV)
    if (range%i_step > 1) then
        if (range%i_beg == range%i_end) then
            range%n_step = 1
        else if (sign (1, range%i_beg) == sign (1, range%i_end) &
            .and. abs (range%i_beg) > abs (range%i_end)) then
            range%n_step = 0
            ival = range%i_beg
            do while (abs (ival) >= abs (range%i_end))
                range%n_step = range%n_step + 1
                if (ival == 0) exit
                ival = ival / range%i_step
            end do
        else
            range%n_step = 0
        end if
    else
        call msg_fatal &
            ("range evaluation (div): step value is one or less")
    end if
case (STEP_COMP_ADD)
    call msg_fatal ("range evaluation: &
        &step mode /+/ not allowed for integer variable")
case (STEP_COMP_MUL)
    call msg_fatal ("range evaluation: &
        &step mode /*/ not allowed for integer variable")
case default
    call range%write ()
    call msg_bug ("range evaluation: step mode not implemented")
end select
end if
end subroutine range_int_evaluate

```

The version for a real variable.

*<Commands: range real: TBP>+≡*

```

    procedure :: evaluate => range_real_evaluate

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

    subroutine range_real_evaluate (range)
        class(range_real_t), intent(inout) :: range
        if (associated (range%pn_beg)) then
            call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_beg)
            if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_beg)) then

```



```

        range%r_beg = eval_tree_get_real (range%expr_beg)
    else
        call range%write ()
        call msg_fatal &
            ("Range expression: initial value evaluates to unknown")
    end if
    if (associated (range%pn_end)) then
        call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_end)
        if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_end)) then
            range%r_end = eval_tree_get_real (range%expr_end)
            if (associated (range%pn_step)) then
                if (eval_tree_result_is_known (range%expr_step)) then
                    select case (range%step_mode)
                    case (STEP_ADD, STEP_SUB, STEP_MUL, STEP_DIV)
                        call eval_tree_evaluate (range%expr_step)
                        range%r_step = eval_tree_get_real (range%expr_step)
                        select case (range%step_mode)
                        case (STEP_SUB); range%r_step = - range%r_step
                        end select
                    case (STEP_COMP_ADD, STEP_COMP_MUL)
                        range%n_step = &
                            max (eval_tree_get_int (range%expr_step), 0)
                        end select
                    else
                        call range%write ()
                        call msg_fatal &
                            ("Range expression: step value evaluates to unknown")
                    end if
                else
                    call range%write ()
                    call msg_fatal &
                        ("Range expression (real): step value must be provided")
                end if
            else
                call range%write ()
                call msg_fatal &
                    ("Range expression: final value evaluates to unknown")
            end if
        end if
    else
        range%r_end = range%r_beg
        range%r_step = 1
    end if
    select case (range%step_mode)
    case (STEP_NONE)
        range%n_step = 1
    case (STEP_ADD, STEP_SUB)
        if (range%r_step /= 0) then
            if (sign (1._default, range%r_end - range%r_beg) &
                == sign (1._default, range%r_step)) then
                range%n_step = &
                    nint ((range%r_end - range%r_beg) / range%r_step + 1)
            else
                range%n_step = 0
            end if
        end if
    end select
end if

```

```

else
    call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (add): step value is zero")
end if
case (STEP_MUL)
    if (range%r_step > 1) then
        if (range%r_beg == 0 .or. range%r_end == 0) then
            call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (mul): bound is zero")
        else if (sign (1._default, range%r_beg) &
            == sign (1._default, range%r_end) &
            .and. abs (range%r_beg) <= abs (range%r_end)) then
            range%lr_beg = log (abs (range%r_beg))
            range%lr_end = log (abs (range%r_end))
            range%lr_step = log (range%r_step)
            range%n_step = nint &
                (abs ((range%lr_end - range%lr_beg) / range%lr_step) + 1)
        else
            range%n_step = 0
        end if
    else
        call msg_fatal &
            ("range evaluation (mult): step value is one or less")
    end if
case (STEP_DIV)
    if (range%r_step > 1) then
        if (range%r_beg == 0 .or. range%r_end == 0) then
            call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (div): bound is zero")
        else if (sign (1._default, range%r_beg) &
            == sign (1._default, range%r_end) &
            .and. abs (range%r_beg) >= abs (range%r_end)) then
            range%lr_beg = log (abs (range%r_beg))
            range%lr_end = log (abs (range%r_end))
            range%lr_step = -log (range%r_step)
            range%n_step = nint &
                (abs ((range%lr_end - range%lr_beg) / range%lr_step) + 1)
        else
            range%n_step = 0
        end if
    else
        call msg_fatal &
            ("range evaluation (mult): step value is one or less")
    end if
case (STEP_COMP_ADD)
    ! Number of steps already known
case (STEP_COMP_MUL)
    ! Number of steps already known
    if (range%r_beg == 0 .or. range%r_end == 0) then
        call msg_fatal ("range evaluation (mul): bound is zero")
    else if (sign (1._default, range%r_beg) &
        == sign (1._default, range%r_end)) then
        range%lr_beg = log (abs (range%r_beg))
        range%lr_end = log (abs (range%r_end))
    else
        range%n_step = 0
    end if

```

```

        case default
            call range%write ()
            call msg_bug ("range evaluation: step mode not implemented")
        end select
    end if
end subroutine range_real_evaluate

```

Return the number of iterations:

```

⟨Commands: range: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: get_n_iterations => range_get_n_iterations

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
    function range_get_n_iterations (range) result (n)
        class(range_t), intent(in) :: range
        integer :: n
        n = range%n_step
    end function range_get_n_iterations

```

Compute the value for iteration i and store it in the embedded token.

```

⟨Commands: range: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure (range_set_value), deferred :: set_value

⟨Commands: interfaces⟩+≡
    abstract interface
        subroutine range_set_value (range, i)
            import
            class(range_t), intent(inout) :: range
            integer, intent(in) :: i
        end subroutine range_set_value
    end interface

```

In the integer case, we compute the value directly for additive step. For multiplicative step, we perform a loop in the same way as above, where the number of iteration was determined.

```

⟨Commands: range int: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: set_value => range_int_set_value

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine range_int_set_value (range, i)
        class(range_int_t), intent(inout) :: range
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        integer :: k, ival
        select case (range%step_mode)
            case (STEP_NONE)
                ival = range%i_beg
            case (STEP_ADD, STEP_SUB)
                ival = range%i_beg + (i - 1) * range%i_step
            case (STEP_MUL)
                ival = range%i_beg
                do k = 1, i - 1
                    ival = ival * range%i_step
                end do
            case (STEP_DIV)

```

```

        ival = range%i_beg
        do k = 1, i - 1
            ival = ival / range%i_step
        end do
    case default
        call range%write ()
        call msg_bug ("range iteration: step mode not implemented")
    end select
    call parse_node_set_value (range%pn_literal, ival = ival)
end subroutine range_int_set_value

```

In the integer case, we compute the value directly for additive step. For multiplicative step, we perform a loop in the same way as above, where the number of iteration was determined.

```

⟨Commands: range real: TBP⟩+≡
    procedure :: set_value => range_real_set_value

⟨Commands: procedures⟩+≡
    subroutine range_real_set_value (range, i)
        class(range_real_t), intent(inout) :: range
        integer, intent(in) :: i
        real(default) :: rval, x
        select case (range%step_mode)
        case (STEP_NONE)
            rval = range%r_beg
        case (STEP_ADD, STEP_SUB, STEP_COMP_ADD)
            if (range%n_step > 1) then
                x = real (i - 1, default) / (range%n_step - 1)
            else
                x = 1._default / 2
            end if
            rval = x * range%r_end + (1 - x) * range%r_beg
        case (STEP_MUL, STEP_DIV, STEP_COMP_MUL)
            if (range%n_step > 1) then
                x = real (i - 1, default) / (range%n_step - 1)
            else
                x = 1._default / 2
            end if
            rval = sign &
                (exp (x * range%lr_end + (1 - x) * range%lr_beg), range%r_beg)
        case default
            call range%write ()
            call msg_bug ("range iteration: step mode not implemented")
        end select
        call parse_node_set_value (range%pn_literal, rval = rval)
    end subroutine range_real_set_value

```

## Scan over parameters and other objects

The scan command allocates a new parse node for the variable assignment (the lhs). The rhs of this parse node is assigned from the available rhs expressions

in the scan list, one at a time, so the compiled parse node can be prepended to the scan body.

Note: for the integer/real range array, the obvious implementation as a polymorphic array is suspended because in gfortran 4.7, polymorphic arrays are apparently broken.

```

<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_scan_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: name
  integer :: n_values = 0
  type(parse_node_p), dimension(:), allocatable :: scan_cmd
  !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
  !!! class(range_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: range
  type(range_int_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: range_int
  type(range_real_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: range_real
  contains
  <Commands: cmd_scan: TBP>
end type cmd_scan_t

```

Finalizer.

The auxiliary parse nodes that we have constructed have to be treated carefully: the embedded pointers all point to persistent objects somewhere else and should not be finalized, so we should not call the finalizer recursively.

```

<Commands: cmd_scan: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => cmd_scan_final

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  recursive subroutine cmd_scan_final (cmd)
  class(cmd_scan_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_var_single, pn_decl_single
  type(string_t) :: key
  integer :: i
  if (allocated (cmd%scan_cmd)) then
    do i = 1, size (cmd%scan_cmd)
      pn_var_single => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr)
      key = parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var_single)
      select case (char (key))
      case ("scan_string_decl", "scan_log_decl")
        pn_decl_single => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var_single, 2)
        call parse_node_final (pn_decl_single, recursive=.false.)
        deallocate (pn_decl_single)
      end select
      call parse_node_final (pn_var_single, recursive=.false.)
      deallocate (pn_var_single)
    end do
    deallocate (cmd%scan_cmd)
  end if
  !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
  !!! if (allocated (cmd%range)) then
  !!!   do i = 1, size (cmd%range)
  !!!     call cmd%range(i)%final ()
  !!!   end do
  !!! end if

```

```

    if (allocated (cmd%range_int)) then
        do i = 1, size (cmd%range_int)
            call cmd%range_int(i)%final ()
        end do
    end if
    if (allocated (cmd%range_real)) then
        do i = 1, size (cmd%range_real)
            call cmd%range_real(i)%final ()
        end do
    end if
end subroutine cmd_scan_final

```

Output.

```

<Commands: cmd scan: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: write => cmd_scan_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine cmd_scan_write (cmd, unit, indent)
        class(cmd_scan_t), intent(in) :: cmd
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        integer :: u
        u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(1x,A,1x,A,1x,'(',I0,')')") "scan:", char (cmd%name), &
            cmd%n_values
    end subroutine cmd_scan_write

```

Compile the scan command. We construct a new parse node that implements the variable assignment for a single element on the rhs, instead of the whole list that we get from the original parse tree. By simply copying the node, we copy all pointers and inherit the targets from the original. During execution, we should replace the rhs by the stored rhs pointers (the list elements), one by one, then (re)compile the redefined node.

```

<Commands: cmd scan: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => cmd_scan_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine cmd_scan_compile (cmd, global)
        class(cmd_scan_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_var, pn_body, pn_body_first
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_decl, pn_name
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_scan_cmd, pn_rhs
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_decl_single, pn_var_single
        type(syntax_rule_t), pointer :: var_rule_decl, var_rule
        type(string_t) :: key
        integer :: var_type
        integer :: i
        logical, parameter :: debug = .false.
        if (debug) then
            print *, "compile scan"
            call parse_node_write_rec (cmd%pn)
        end if
    end subroutine cmd_scan_compile

```

```

pn_var => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
pn_body => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_var)
if (associated (pn_body)) then
    pn_body_first => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_body)
else
    pn_body_first => null ()
end if
key = parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_var)
select case (char (key))
case ("scan_num")
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("cmd_num"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_int")
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("cmd_int"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_real")
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("cmd_real"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_complex")
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("cmd_complex"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_alias")
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("cmd_alias"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_string_decl")
    pn_decl => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_decl, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule_decl => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_string"))
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_string_decl"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_log_decl")
    pn_decl => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 2)
    pn_name => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_decl, 2)
    cmd%name = parse_node_get_string (pn_name)
    var_rule_decl => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_log"))
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_log_decl"))
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_name, 2)
case ("scan_cuts")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &

```

```

        var_str ("cmd_cuts"))
    cmd%name = "cuts"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_weight")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_weight"))
    cmd%name = "weight"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_scale")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_scale"))
    cmd%name = "scale"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_ren_scale")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_ren_scale"))
    cmd%name = "renormalization_scale"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_fac_scale")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_fac_scale"))
    cmd%name = "factorization_scale"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_selection")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_selection"))
    cmd%name = "selection"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_reweight")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_reweight"))
    cmd%name = "reweight"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_analysis")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_analysis"))
    cmd%name = "analysis"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_model")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_model"))
    cmd%name = "model"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case ("scan_library")
    var_rule => syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, &
        var_str ("cmd_library"))
    cmd%name = "library"
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_var, 3)
case default
    call msg_bug ("scan: case ' ' // char (key) // ' ' not implemented")
end select
if (associated (pn_arg)) then
    cmd%n_values = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_arg)
end if

```



```

allocate (cmd%scan_cmd (cmd%n_values))
select case (char (key))
case ("scan_num")
    var_type = var_list_get_type (global%var_list, cmd%name)
    select case (var_type)
    case (V_INT)
        !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
        !!! allocate (range_int_t :: cmd%range (cmd%n_values))
        allocate (cmd%range_int (cmd%n_values))
    case (V_REAL)
        !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
        !!! allocate (range_real_t :: cmd%range (cmd%n_values))
        allocate (cmd%range_real (cmd%n_values))
    case (V_CMPLX)
        call msg_fatal ("scan over complex variable not implemented")
    case (V_NONE)
        call msg_fatal ("scan: variable '" // char (cmd%name) //" undefined")
    case default
        call msg_bug ("scan: impossible variable type")
    end select
case ("scan_int")
    !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
    !!! allocate (range_int_t :: cmd%range (cmd%n_values))
    allocate (cmd%range_int (cmd%n_values))
case ("scan_real")
    !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
    !!! allocate (range_real_t :: cmd%range (cmd%n_values))
    allocate (cmd%range_real (cmd%n_values))
case ("scan_complex")
    call msg_fatal ("scan over complex variable not implemented")
end select
i = 1
if (associated (pn_arg)) then
    pn_rhs => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
else
    pn_rhs => null ()
end if
do while (associated (pn_rhs))
    allocate (pn_scan_cmd)
    call parse_node_create_branch (pn_scan_cmd, &
        syntax_get_rule_ptr (syntax_cmd_list, var_str ("command_list")))
    allocate (pn_var_single)
    pn_var_single = pn_var
    call parse_node_replace_rule (pn_var_single, var_rule)
    select case (char (key))
    case ("scan_num", "scan_int", "scan_real", &
        "scan_complex", "scan_alias", &
        "scan_cuts", "scan_weight", &
        "scan_scale", "scan_ren_scale", "scan_fac_scale", &
        "scan_selection", "scan_reweight", "scan_analysis", &
        "scan_model", "scan_library")
        if (allocated (cmd%range_int)) then
            call cmd%range_int(i)%init (pn_rhs)
            !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption

```

```

        !!! call cmd%range_int(i)%compile (global)
        call parse_node_replace_last_sub &
            (pn_var_single, cmd%range_int(i)%pn_expr)
    else if (allocated (cmd%range_real)) then
        call cmd%range_real(i)%init (pn_rhs)
        !!! !!! gfortran 4.7.x memory corruption
        !!! call cmd%range_real(i)%compile (global)
        call parse_node_replace_last_sub &
            (pn_var_single, cmd%range_real(i)%pn_expr)
    else
        call parse_node_replace_last_sub (pn_var_single, pn_rhs)
    end if
case ("scan_string_decl", "scan_log_decl")
    allocate (pn_decl_single)
    pn_decl_single = pn_decl
    call parse_node_replace_rule (pn_decl_single, var_rule_decl)
    call parse_node_replace_last_sub (pn_decl_single, pn_rhs)
    call parse_node_freeze_branch (pn_decl_single)
    call parse_node_replace_last_sub (pn_var_single, pn_decl_single)
case default
    call msg_bug ("scan: case ' ' // char (key) &
        // ' ' broken")
end select
call parse_node_freeze_branch (pn_var_single)
call parse_node_append_sub (pn_scan_cmd, pn_var_single)
call parse_node_append_sub (pn_scan_cmd, pn_body_first)
call parse_node_freeze_branch (pn_scan_cmd)
cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr => pn_scan_cmd
i = i + 1
pn_rhs => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_rhs)
end do
if (debug) then
    do i = 1, cmd%n_values
        print *, "scan command ", i
        call parse_node_write_rec (cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr)
        if (allocated (cmd%range_int)) call cmd%range_int(i)%write ()
        if (allocated (cmd%range_real)) call cmd%range_real(i)%write ()
    end do
    print *, "original"
    call parse_node_write_rec (cmd%pn)
end if
end subroutine cmd_scan_compile

```

Execute the loop for all values in the step list. We use the parse trees with single variable assignment that we have stored, to iteratively create a local environment, execute the stored commands, and destroy it again. When we encounter a range object, we execute the commands for each value that this object provides. Computing this value has the side effect of modifying the rhs of the variable assignment that heads the local command list, directly in the local parse tree.

```

<Commands: cmd_scan: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => cmd_scan_execute
<Commands: procedures>+≡

```

```

recursive subroutine cmd_scan_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_scan_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(rt_data_t), allocatable :: local
  integer :: i, j
  do i = 1, cmd%n_values
    if (allocated (cmd%range_int)) then
      call cmd%range_int(i)%compile (global)
      call cmd%range_int(i)%evaluate ()
      do j = 1, cmd%range_int(i)%get_n_iterations ()
        call cmd%range_int(i)%set_value (j)
        allocate (local)
        call build_alt_setup (local, global, cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr)
        deallocate (local)
      end do
    else if (allocated (cmd%range_real)) then
      call cmd%range_real(i)%compile (global)
      call cmd%range_real(i)%evaluate ()
      do j = 1, cmd%range_real(i)%get_n_iterations ()
        call cmd%range_real(i)%set_value (j)
        allocate (local)
        call build_alt_setup (local, global, cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr)
        deallocate (local)
      end do
    else
      allocate (local)
      call build_alt_setup (local, global, cmd%scan_cmd(i)%ptr)
      deallocate (local)
    end if
  end do
end subroutine cmd_scan_execute

```

## Conditionals

Conditionals are implemented as a list that is compiled and evaluated recursively; this allows for a straightforward representation of **else if** constructs. A `cmd_if_t` object can hold either an `else_if` clause which is another object of this type, or an `else_body`, but not both.

If- or else-bodies are no scoping units, so all data remain global and no copy-in copy-out is needed.

```

⟨Commands: types⟩+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_if_t
  private
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_if_lexpr => null ()
  type(command_list_t), pointer :: if_body => null ()
  type(cmd_if_t), dimension(:), pointer :: elsif_cmd => null ()
  type(command_list_t), pointer :: else_body => null ()
  contains
  ⟨Commands: cmd if: TBP⟩
end type cmd_if_t

```

Finalizer. There are no local options, therefore we can simply override the default finalizer.

```

(Commands: cmd if: TBP)≡
  procedure :: final => cmd_if_final

(Commands: procedures)≡
  recursive subroutine cmd_if_final (cmd)
    class(cmd_if_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    integer :: i
    if (associated (cmd%if_body)) then
      call command_list_final (cmd%if_body)
      deallocate (cmd%if_body)
    end if
    if (associated (cmd%elsif_cmd)) then
      do i = 1, size (cmd%elsif_cmd)
        call cmd_if_final (cmd%elsif_cmd(i))
      end do
      deallocate (cmd%elsif_cmd)
    end if
    if (associated (cmd%else_body)) then
      call command_list_final (cmd%else_body)
      deallocate (cmd%else_body)
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_if_final

```

Output. Recursively write the command lists.

```

(Commands: cmd if: TBP)≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_if_write

(Commands: procedures)≡
  subroutine cmd_if_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_if_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, ind, i
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(A)") "if <expr> then"
    if (associated (cmd%if_body)) then
      call cmd%if_body%write (unit, ind + 1)
    end if
    if (associated (cmd%elsif_cmd)) then
      do i = 1, size (cmd%elsif_cmd)
        call write_indent (u, indent)
        write (u, "(A)") "elsif <expr> then"
        if (associated (cmd%elsif_cmd(i)%if_body)) then
          call cmd%elsif_cmd(i)%if_body%write (unit, ind + 1)
        end if
      end do
    end if
    if (associated (cmd%else_body)) then
      call write_indent (u, indent)
      write (u, "(A)") "else"
      call cmd%else_body%write (unit, ind + 1)
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_if_write

```

```

        end if
    end subroutine cmd_if_write

```

Compile the conditional.

*(Commands: cmd if: TBP)+≡*

```

    procedure :: compile => cmd_if_compile

```

*(Commands: procedures)+≡*

```

recursive subroutine cmd_if_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_if_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_lexpr, pn_body
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_elseif_clauses, pn_cmd_elseif
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_else_clause, pn_cmd_else
    integer :: i, n_elseif
    pn_lexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    cmd%pn_if_lexpr => pn_lexpr
    pn_body => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_lexpr, 2)
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_body)))
    case ("command_list")
        allocate (cmd%if_body)
        call cmd%if_body%compile (pn_body, global)
        pn_elseif_clauses => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_body)
    case default
        pn_elseif_clauses => pn_body
    end select
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_elseif_clauses)))
    case ("elseif_clauses")
        n_elseif = parse_node_get_n_sub (pn_elseif_clauses)
        allocate (cmd%elseif_cmd (n_elseif))
        pn_cmd_elseif => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_elseif_clauses)
        do i = 1, n_elseif
            pn_lexpr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cmd_elseif, 2)
            cmd%elseif_cmd(i)%pn_if_lexpr => pn_lexpr
            pn_body => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_lexpr, 2)
            if (associated (pn_body)) then
                allocate (cmd%elseif_cmd(i)%if_body)
                call cmd%elseif_cmd(i)%if_body%compile (pn_body, global)
            end if
            pn_cmd_elseif => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_cmd_elseif)
        end do
        pn_else_clause => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_elseif_clauses)
    case default
        pn_else_clause => pn_elseif_clauses
    end select
    select case (char (parse_node_get_rule_key (pn_else_clause)))
    case ("else_clause")
        pn_cmd_else => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_else_clause)
        pn_body => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_cmd_else, 2)
        if (associated (pn_body)) then
            allocate (cmd%else_body)
            call cmd%else_body%compile (pn_body, global)
        end if
    end select
end select

```

```
end subroutine cmd_if_compile
```

(Recursively) execute the condition. Context remains global in all cases.

*<Commands: cmd if: TBP>+≡*

```
procedure :: execute => cmd_if_execute
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
recursive subroutine cmd_if_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_if_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  logical :: lval, is_known
  integer :: i
  lval = eval_log (cmd%pn_if_lexpr, global%var_list, is_known=is_known)
  if (is_known) then
    if (lval) then
      if (associated (cmd%if_body)) then
        call cmd%if_body%execute (global)
      end if
      return
    end if
  else
    call error_undecided ()
    return
  end if
  if (associated (cmd%elsif_cmd)) then
    SCAN_ELSEIF: do i = 1, size (cmd%elsif_cmd)
      lval = eval_log (cmd%elsif_cmd(i)%pn_if_lexpr, global%var_list, &
        is_known=is_known)
      if (is_known) then
        if (lval) then
          if (associated (cmd%elsif_cmd(i)%if_body)) then
            call cmd%elsif_cmd(i)%if_body%execute (global)
          end if
          return
        end if
      else
        call error_undecided ()
        return
      end if
    end do SCAN_ELSEIF
  end if
  if (associated (cmd%else_body)) then
    call cmd%else_body%execute (global)
  end if
contains
  subroutine error_undecided ()
    call msg_error ("Undefined result of conditional expression: " &
      // "neither branch will be executed")
  end subroutine error_undecided
end subroutine cmd_if_execute
```

## Include another command-list file

The include command allocates a local parse tree. This must not be deleted before the command object itself is deleted, since pointers may point to subobjects of it.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_include_t
  private
  type(string_t) :: file
  type(command_list_t), pointer :: command_list => null ()
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
  contains
  <Commands: cmd include: TBP>
end type cmd_include_t
```

Finalizer: delete the command list. No options, so we can simply override the default finalizer.

```
<Commands: cmd include: TBP>≡
  procedure :: final => cmd_include_final

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_include_final (cmd)
    class(cmd_include_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    call parse_tree_final (cmd%parse_tree)
    if (associated (cmd%command_list)) then
      call cmd%command_list%final ()
      deallocate (cmd%command_list)
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_include_final
```

Write: display the command list as-is, if allocated.

```
<Commands: cmd include: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_include_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_include_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_include_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u, ind
    u = output_unit (unit)
    ind = 0; if (present (indent)) ind = indent
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(A,A,A,A)") "include ", "'", char (cmd%file), "'"
    if (associated (cmd%command_list)) then
      call cmd%command_list%write (u, ind + 1)
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_include_write
```

Compile file contents: First parse the file, then immediately compile its contents. Use the global data set.

```
<Commands: cmd include: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_include_compile
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_include_compile (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_include_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg, pn_file
  type(string_t) :: file
  logical :: exist
  integer :: u
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
  pn_file => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
  file = parse_node_get_string (pn_file)
  inquire (file=char(file), exist=exist)
  if (exist) then
    cmd%file = file
  else
    cmd%file = global%os_data%whizard_cutspath // "/" // file
    inquire (file=char(cmd%file), exist=exist)
    if (.not. exist) then
      call msg_error ("Include file '" // char (file) // "' not found")
      return
    end if
  end if
  u = free_unit ()
  call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer, global%lexer)
  call stream_init (stream, char (cmd%file))
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
  call parse_tree_init (cmd%parse_tree, syntax_cmd_list, lexer)
  call stream_final (stream)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
  close (u)
  allocate (cmd%command_list)
  call cmd%command_list%compile (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (cmd%parse_tree), &
    global)
end subroutine cmd_include_compile

```

Execute file contents in the global context.

*<Commands: cmd include: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: execute => cmd_include_execute

```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine cmd_include_execute (cmd, global)
  class(cmd_include_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
  type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
  if (associated (cmd%command_list)) then
    call msg_message &
      ("Including Sindarin from '" // char (cmd%file) // "'")
    call cmd%command_list%execute (global)
    call msg_message &
      ("End of included '" // char (cmd%file) // "'")
  end if
end subroutine cmd_include_execute

```



## Quit command execution

The code is the return code of the whole program if it is terminated by this command.

```
<Commands: types>+≡
  type, extends (command_t) :: cmd_quit_t
  private
  logical :: has_code = .false.
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_code_expr => null ()
  contains
  <Commands: cmd quit: TBP>
end type cmd_quit_t
```

Output.

```
<Commands: cmd quit: TBP>≡
  procedure :: write => cmd_quit_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_quit_write (cmd, unit, indent)
    class(cmd_quit_t), intent(in) :: cmd
    integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
    integer :: u
    u = output_unit (unit); if (u < 0) return
    call write_indent (u, indent)
    write (u, "(1x,A,L1)") "quit: has_code = ", cmd%has_code
  end subroutine cmd_quit_write
```

Compile: allocate a quit object which serves as a placeholder.

```
<Commands: cmd quit: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: compile => cmd_quit_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_quit_compile (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_quit_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
    type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_arg
    pn_arg => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (cmd%pn, 2)
    if (associated (pn_arg)) then
      cmd%pn_code_expr => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn_arg)
      cmd%has_code = .true.
    end if
  end subroutine cmd_quit_compile
```

Execute: The quit command does not execute anything, it just stops command execution. This is achieved by setting quit flag and quit code in the global variable list. However, the return code, if present, is an expression which has to be evaluated.

```
<Commands: cmd quit: TBP>+≡
  procedure :: execute => cmd_quit_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
  subroutine cmd_quit_execute (cmd, global)
    class(cmd_quit_t), intent(inout) :: cmd
```

```

type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
logical :: is_known
if (cmd%has_code) then
    global%quit_code = eval_int (cmd%pn_code_expr, global%var_list, &
        is_known=is_known)
    if (.not. is_known) then
        call msg_error ("Undefined return code of quit/exit command")
    end if
end if
global%quit = .true.
end subroutine cmd_quit_execute

```

### 23.2.2 The command list

The command list holds a list of commands and relevant global data.

```

<Commands: public>+≡
    public :: command_list_t

<Commands: types>+≡
    type :: command_list_t
        ! not private anymore as required by the whizard-c-interface
        class(command_t), pointer :: first => null ()
        class(command_t), pointer :: last => null ()
        contains
        <Commands: command list: TBP>
    end type command_list_t

```

Output.

```

<Commands: command list: TBP>≡
    procedure :: write => command_list_write

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_list_write (cmd_list, unit, indent)
        class(command_list_t), intent(in) :: cmd_list
        integer, intent(in), optional :: unit, indent
        class(command_t), pointer :: cmd
        cmd => cmd_list%first
        do while (associated (cmd))
            call cmd%write (unit, indent)
            cmd => cmd%next
        end do
    end subroutine command_list_write

```

Append a new command to the list and free the original pointer.

```

<Commands: command list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: append => command_list_append

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine command_list_append (cmd_list, command)
        class(command_list_t), intent(inout) :: cmd_list
        class(command_t), intent(inout), pointer :: command
        if (associated (cmd_list%last)) then

```

```

        cmd_list%last%next => command
    else
        cmd_list%first => command
    end if
    cmd_list%last => command
    command => null ()
end subroutine command_list_append

```

Finalize.

```

<Commands: command list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => command_list_final

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_list_final (cmd_list)
        class(command_list_t), intent(inout) :: cmd_list
        class(command_t), pointer :: command
        do while (associated (cmd_list%first))
            command => cmd_list%first
            cmd_list%first => cmd_list%first%next
            call command%final ()
            deallocate (command)
        end do
        cmd_list%last => null ()
    end subroutine command_list_final

```

### 23.2.3 Compiling the parse tree

Transform a parse tree into a command list. Initialization is assumed to be done.

After each command, we set a breakpoint.

```

<Commands: command list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: compile => command_list_compile

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_list_compile (cmd_list, pn, global)
        class(command_list_t), intent(inout), target :: cmd_list
        type(parse_node_t), intent(in), target :: pn
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_cmd
        class(command_t), pointer :: command
        integer :: i
        pn_cmd => parse_node_get_sub_ptr (pn)
        do i = 1, parse_node_get_n_sub (pn)
            call dispatch_command (command, pn_cmd)
            call command%compile (global)
            call cmd_list%append (command)
            call terminate_now_if_signal ()
            pn_cmd => parse_node_get_next_ptr (pn_cmd)
        end do
    end subroutine command_list_compile

```

### 23.2.4 Executing the command list

Before executing a command we should execute its options (if any). After that, reset the options, i.e., remove temporary effects from the global state.

Also here, after each command we set a breakpoint.

```
<Commands: command list: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: execute => command_list_execute

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    recursive subroutine command_list_execute (cmd_list, global)
        class(command_list_t), intent(in) :: cmd_list
        type(rt_data_t), intent(inout), target :: global
        class(command_t), pointer :: command
        command => cmd_list%first
        COMMAND_COND: do while (associated (command))
            call command%execute_options (global)
            call command%execute (global)
            call command%reset_options (global)
            call terminate_now_if_signal ()
            if (global%quit) exit COMMAND_COND
            command => command%next
        end do COMMAND_COND
    end subroutine command_list_execute
```

### 23.2.5 Command list syntax

```
<Commands: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_cmd_list

<Commands: variables>≡
    type(syntax_t), target, save :: syntax_cmd_list

<Commands: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_cmd_list_init

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        call define_cmd_list_syntax (ifile)
        call syntax_init (syntax_cmd_list, ifile)
        call ifile_final (ifile)
    end subroutine syntax_cmd_list_init

<Commands: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_cmd_list_final

<Commands: procedures>+≡
    subroutine syntax_cmd_list_final ()
        call syntax_final (syntax_cmd_list)
    end subroutine syntax_cmd_list_final

<Commands: public>+≡
    public :: syntax_cmd_list_write
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine syntax_cmd_list_write (unit)
  integer, intent(in), optional :: unit
  call syntax_write (syntax_cmd_list, unit)
end subroutine syntax_cmd_list_write
```

*<Commands: procedures>+≡*

```
subroutine define_cmd_list_syntax (ifile)
  type(ifile_t), intent(inout) :: ifile
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ command_list = command*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT command = " &
    // "cmd_model | cmd_library | cmd_iterations | cmd_sample_format | " &
    // "cmd_var | cmd_slha | " &
    // "cmd_show | cmd_clear | " &
    // "cmd_expect | " &
    // "cmd_cuts | cmd_scale | cmd_fac_scale | cmd_ren_scale | " &
    // "cmd_weight | cmd_selection | cmd_reweight | " &
    // "cmd_beams | cmd_beams_pol_density | cmd_beams_pol_fraction | " &
    // "cmd_beams_momentum | cmd_beams_theta | cmd_beams_phi | " &
    // "cmd_integrate | " &
    // "cmd_observable | cmd_histogram | cmd_plot | cmd_graph | " &
    // "cmd_record | " &
    // "cmd_analysis | cmd_alt_setup | " &
    // "cmd_unstable | cmd_stable | cmd_simulate | cmd_rescan | " &
    // "cmd_process | cmd_compile | cmd_exec | " &
    // "cmd_scan | cmd_if | cmd_include | cmd_quit | " &
    // "cmd_polarized | cmd_unpolarized | " &
    // "cmd_open_out | cmd_close_out | cmd_printf | " &
    // "cmd_write_analysis | cmd_compile_analysis")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO options = '{' local_command_list '}'")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ local_command_list = local_command*")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT local_command = " &
    // "cmd_model | cmd_library | cmd_iterations | cmd_sample_format | " &
    // "cmd_var | cmd_slha | " &
    // "cmd_show | " &
    // "cmd_expect | " &
    // "cmd_cuts | cmd_scale | cmd_fac_scale | cmd_ren_scale | " &
    // "cmd_weight | cmd_selection | cmd_reweight | " &
    // "cmd_beams | cmd_beams_pol_density | cmd_beams_pol_fraction | " &
    // "cmd_beams_momentum | cmd_beams_theta | cmd_beams_phi | " &
    // "cmd_observable | cmd_histogram | cmd_plot | cmd_graph | " &
    // "cmd_clear | cmd_record | " &
    // "cmd_analysis | cmd_alt_setup | " &
    // "cmd_open_out | cmd_close_out | cmd_printf | " &
    // "cmd_write_analysis | cmd_compile_analysis")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_model = model '=' model_name")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY model")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT model_name = model_id | string_literal")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE model_id")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_library = library '=' lib_name")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY library")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT lib_name = lib_id | string_literal")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE lib_id")
  call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT cmd_var = " &
```

```

// "cmd_log_decl | cmd_log | " &
// "cmd_int | cmd_real | cmd_complex | cmd_num | " &
// "cmd_string_decl | cmd_string | cmd_alias | " &
// "cmd_result")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_log_decl = logical cmd_log")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_log = '?' var_name '=' lexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_int = int var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_real = real var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_complex = complex var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_num = var_name '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_string_decl = string cmd_string")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_string = " &
// "'$' var_name '=' sexpr") ! $
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_alias = alias var_name '=' cexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_result = result '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_slha = slha_action slha_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT slha_action = " &
// "read_slha | write_slha")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY read_slha")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY write_slha")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG slha_arg = ( string_literal )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_show = show show_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY show")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG show_arg = ( showable* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT showable = " &
// "model | library | beams | iterations | " &
// "cuts | weight | logical | string | pdg | " &
// "scale | factorization_scale | renormalization_scale | " &
// "selection | reweight | analysis | " &
// "stable | unstable | polarized | unpolarized | " &
// "expect | intrinsic | int | real | complex | " &
// "alias_var | string | results | result_var | " &
// "log_var | string_var | var_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY results")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY intrinsic")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ alias_var = alias var_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ result_var = result_key result_arg?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ log_var = '?' var_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ string_var = '$' var_name") ! $
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_clear = clear clear_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY clear")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG clear_arg = ( clearable* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT clearable = " &
// "beams | iterations | " &
// "cuts | weight | " &
// "scale | factorization_scale | renormalization_scale | " &
// "selection | reweight | analysis | " &
// "unstable | polarized | " &
// "expect | " &
// "log_var | string_var | var_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_expect = expect expect_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY expect")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG expect_arg = ( lexpr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_cuts = cuts '=' lexpr")

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_scale = scale '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_fac_scale = " &
// "factorization_scale '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_ren_scale = " &
// "renormalization_scale '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_weight = weight '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_selection = selection '=' lexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_reweight = reweight '=' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY cuts")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY scale")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY factorization_scale")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY renormalization_scale")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY weight")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY selection")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY reweight")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_process = process process_id '=' " &
// "process_prt '>' prt_state_list options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY process")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '>'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS process_prt = cexpr+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS prt_state_list = prt_state_sum+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_state_sum = " &
// "prt_state prt_state_addition*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ prt_state_addition = '+' prt_state")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT prt_state = grouped_prt_state_list | cexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_prt_state_list = " &
// "( prt_state_list )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_compile = compile_cmd options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ compile_cmd = compile_clause compile_arg?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ compile_clause = compile_exec_name_spec?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY compile")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ exec_name_spec = as exec_name")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY as")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT exec_name = exec_id | string_literal")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE exec_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG compile_arg = ( lib_name* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_exec = exec exec_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY exec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG exec_arg = ( sexpr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams = beams '=' beam_def")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ beam_def = beam_spec strfun_seq*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ beam_spec = beam_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS beam_list = cexpr, cexpr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams_pol_density = " &
// "beams_pol_density '=' beams_pol_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams_pol_density")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS beams_pol_spec = smatrix, smatrix?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ smatrix = '@' smatrix_arg")
! call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '@'")      !!! Key already exists
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG smatrix_arg = ( sentry* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ sentry = expr extra_sentry*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ extra_sentry = ':' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams_pol_fraction = " &

```

```

// "beams_pol_fraction '=' beams_par_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams_pol_fraction")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams_momentum = " &
// "beams_momentum '=' beams_par_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams_momentum")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams_theta = " &
// "beams_theta '=' beams_par_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams_theta")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_beams_phi = " &
// "beams_phi '=' beams_par_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beams_phi")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS beams_par_spec = expr, expr?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ strfun_seq = '=' strfun_pair")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS strfun_pair = strfun_def, strfun_def?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ strfun_def = strfun_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT strfun_id = " &
// "none | lhpdf | lhpdf_photon | pdf_builtin | pdf_builtin_photon | " &
// "isr | epa | ewa | circe1 | circe2 | energy_scan | " &
// "beam_events | user_sf_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY none")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY lhpdf")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY lhpdf_photon")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY pdf_builtin")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY pdf_builtin_photon")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY isr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY epa")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY ewa")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY circe1")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY circe2")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY energy_scan")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY beam_events")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ user_sf_spec = user_strfun user_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY user_strfun")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_integrate = " &
// "integrate proc_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY integrate")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG proc_arg = ( proc_id* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE proc_id")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_iterations = " &
// "iterations '=' iterations_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY iterations")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS iterations_list = iterations_spec+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT iterations_spec = it_spec")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ it_spec = expr calls_spec adapt_spec?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ calls_spec = ':' expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ adapt_spec = ':' sexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_sample_format = " &
// "sample_format '=' event_format_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY sample_format")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS event_format_list = event_format+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "IDE event_format")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_observable = " &
// "observable analysis_tag options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY observable")

```



```

call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_histogram = " &
// "histogram analysis_tag histogram_arg " &
// "options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY histogram")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG histogram_arg = (expr, expr, expr?)")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_plot = plot analysis_tag options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY plot")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_graph = graph graph_term '=' graph_def")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY graph")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ graph_term = analysis_tag options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ graph_def = graph_term graph_append*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ graph_append = '&' graph_term")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_analysis = analysis '=' lexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY analysis")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_alt_setup = " &
// "alt_setup '=' option_list_expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY alt_setup")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT option_list_expr = " &
// "grouped_option_list | option_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_option_list = ( option_list_expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS option_list = options+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_open_out = open_out open_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_close_out = close_out open_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY open_out")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY close_out")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG open_arg = (sexpr)")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_printf = printf_cmd options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ printf_cmd = printf_clause sprintf_args?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ printf_clause = printf sexpr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY printf")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_record = record_cmd")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_unstable = " &
// "unstable cexpr unstable_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY unstable")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG unstable_arg = ( proc_id* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_stable = stable stable_list options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY stable")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS stable_list = cexpr+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY polarized")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_polarized = polarized polarized_list options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS polarized_list = cexpr+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY unpolarized")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_unpolarized = unpolarized unpolarized_list options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "LIS unpolarized_list = cexpr+")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_simulate = " &
// "simulate proc_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY simulate")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_rescan = " &
// "rescan sexpr proc_arg options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY rescan")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_scan = scan scan_var scan_body?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY scan")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT scan_var = " &
// "scan_log_decl | scan_log | " &

```

```

// "scan_int | scan_real | scan_complex | scan_num | " &
// "scan_string_decl | scan_string | scan_alias | " &
// "scan_cuts | scan_weight | " &
// "scan_scale | scan_ren_scale | scan_fac_scale | " &
// "scan_selection | scan_reweight | scan_analysis | " &
// "scan_model | scan_library")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_log_decl = logical scan_log")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_log = '?' var_name '=' scan_log_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_log_arg = ( lexpr* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_int = int var_name '=' scan_num_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_real = real var_name '=' scan_num_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_complex = " &
// "complex var_name '=' scan_num_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_num = var_name '=' scan_num_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_num_arg = ( range* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT range = grouped_range | range_expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO grouped_range = ( range_expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ range_expr = expr range_spec?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ range_spec = '>' expr step_spec?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ step_spec = step_op expr")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT step_op = " &
// "'+' | '- ' | '*' | '/' | '+/' | '*/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '- '")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '*'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '+/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY '*/'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_string_decl = string scan_string")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_string = " &
// "'$' var_name '=' scan_string_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_string_arg = ( sexpr* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_alias = " &
// "alias var_name '=' scan_alias_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_alias_arg = ( cexpr* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_cuts = cuts '=' scan_lexpr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_lexpr_arg = ( lexpr* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_scale = scale '=' scan_expr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_expr_arg = ( expr* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_fac_scale = " &
// "factorization_scale '=' scan_expr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_ren_scale = " &
// "renormalization_scale '=' scan_expr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_weight = weight '=' scan_expr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_selection = selection '=' scan_lexpr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_reweight = reweight '=' scan_expr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_analysis = analysis '=' scan_lexpr_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_model = model '=' scan_model_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_model_arg = ( model_name* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ scan_library = library '=' scan_library_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG scan_library_arg = ( lib_name* )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "GRO scan_body = '{' command_list '}'")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_if = " &
// "if lexpr then command_list elsif_clauses else_clause endif")

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ elsif_clauses = cmd_elsif*")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_elsif = elsif lexpr then command_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ else_clause = cmd_else?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_else = else command_list")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_include = include include_arg")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY include")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG include_arg = ( string_literal )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_quit = quit_cmd quit_arg?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ALT quit_cmd = quit | exit")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY quit")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY exit")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG quit_arg = ( expr )")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_write_analysis = " &
// "write_analysis_clause options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ cmd_compile_analysis = " &
// "compile_analysis_clause options?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ write_analysis_clause = " &
// "write_analysis write_analysis_arg?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "SEQ compile_analysis_clause = " &
// "compile_analysis write_analysis_arg?")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY write_analysis")
call ifile_append (ifile, "KEY compile_analysis")
call ifile_append (ifile, "ARG write_analysis_arg = ( analysis_tag* )")
call define_expr_syntax (ifile, particles=.true., analysis=.true.)
end subroutine define_cmd_list_syntax

```

```

<Commands: public>+≡
public :: lexer_init_cmd_list

<Commands: procedures>+≡
subroutine lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer, parent_lexer)
type(lexer_t), intent(out) :: lexer
type(lexer_t), intent(in), optional, target :: parent_lexer
call lexer_init (lexer, &
comment_chars = "#!", &
quote_chars = "'", &
quote_match = "'", &
single_chars = "()[]{};,:%?$@", &
special_class = [ "+-*/^", "<>=~ " ], &
keyword_list = syntax_get_keyword_list_ptr (syntax_cmd_list), &
parent = parent_lexer)
end subroutine lexer_init_cmd_list

```

### 23.2.6 Unit Tests

```

<Commands: public>+≡
public :: commands_test

<Commands: tests>≡
subroutine commands_test (u, results)
integer, intent(in) :: u
type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
<Commands: execute tests>

```

```
end subroutine commands_test
```

## Prepare Sindarin code

This routine parses an internal file, prints the parse tree, and returns a parse node to the root. We use the routine in the tests below.

```
<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)
  type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
  type(parse_node_t), pointer, intent(out) :: pn_root
  integer, intent(in), optional :: u
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree

  call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
  call stream_init (stream, ifile)
  call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)

  call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_cmd_list, lexer)
  if (present (u)) call parse_tree_write (parse_tree, u)
  pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

  call stream_final (stream)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine parse_ifile
```

## Empty command list

Compile and execute an empty command list. Should do nothing but test the integrity of the workflow.

```
<Commands: execute tests>≡
  call test (commands_1, "commands_1", &
    "empty command list", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_1 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_1"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: compile and execute empty command list"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")
```

```

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse empty file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"

if (associated (pn_root)) then
  call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
end if

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_1"

end subroutine commands_1

```

## Read model

Execute a model assignment.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_2, "commands_2", &
    "model", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_2 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_2"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: set model"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)
write (u, "(A)")  "global model = '" &
    // char (global%model%get_name ()) // "'"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_2"

end subroutine commands_2

```

## Declare Process

Read a model, then declare a process. The process library is allocated explicitly. For the process definition, We take the default (**omega**) method. Since we do not compile, O'MEGA is not actually called.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
  call test (commands_3, "commands_3", &
    "process declaration", &
    u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
  subroutine commands_3 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_3"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
      .false., is_known = .true.)

    allocate (lib)
    call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd3"))
    call global%add_prclib (lib)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'process t3 = s, s => s, s')

    call ifile_write (ifile, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
```

```

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%prclib_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_3"

end subroutine commands_3

```

## Compile Process

Read a model, then declare a process and compile the library. The process library is allocated explicitly. For the process definition, We take the default (`unit_test`) method. There is no external code, so compilation of the library is merely a formal status change.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_4, "commands_4", &
    "compilation", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_4 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_4"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define process and compile library"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()

```



```

call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%global_init ()
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd4"))
call global%add_prclib (lib)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'process t4 = s, s => s, s')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile ("lib_cmd4")')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%prclib_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_4"

end subroutine commands_4

```

## Integrate Process

Read a model, then declare a process, compile the library, and integrate over phase space. We take the default (`unit_test`) method and use the simplest methods of phase-space parameterization and integration.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
    call test (commands_5, "commands_5", &
               "integration", &
               u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
    subroutine commands_5 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
        type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_5"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define process, iterations, and integrate"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
                                  var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
                                  var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
                                  var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("vis_history"), &
                                .false., is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_timer"), &
                                .false., is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
                                1000._default, is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_int (global%var_list, var_str ("seed"), &
                                0, is_known=.true.)

        allocate (lib)
        call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd5"))
        call global%add_prclib (lib)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'process t5 = s, s => s, s')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:1000')
```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (t5)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call reset_interaction_counter ()
call command_list%execute (global)

call global%it_list%write (u)
write (u, "(A)")
call global%process_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_5"

end subroutine commands_5

```

## Variables

Set intrinsic and user-defined variables.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_6, "commands_6", &
    "variables", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_6 (u)

```

```

integer, intent(in) :: u
type(ifile_t) :: ifile
type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_6"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define and set variables"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()
call global%write_vars (u, [ &
    var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    var_str ("sqrts")])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, '$run_id = "run1"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?unweighted = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'sqrts = 1000')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'int j = 10')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'real x = 1000.')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'complex z = 5')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'string $text = "abcd"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'logical ?flag = true')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

```

```

call global%write_vars (u, [ &
    var_str ("$_run_id"), &
    var_str ("?unweighted"), &
    var_str ("sqrts"), &
    var_str ("j"), &
    var_str ("x"), &
    var_str ("z"), &
    var_str ("$_text"), &
    var_str ("?flag")]])

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_6"

end subroutine commands_6

```

## Process library

Open process libraries explicitly.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
    call test (commands_7, "commands_7", &
        "process library", &
        u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
    subroutine commands_7 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_7"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare process libraries"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)
        global%os_data%fc = "Fortran-compiler"

```

```

global%os_data%fcflags = "Fortran-flags"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "lib_cmd7_1"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "lib_cmd7_2"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "lib_cmd7_1"')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write_libraries (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Test output end: commands_7"

end subroutine commands_7

```

## Generate events

Read a model, then declare a process, compile the library, and generate weighted events. We take the default (`unit_test`) method and use the simplest methods of phase-space parameterization and integration.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+=
  call test (commands_8, "commands_8", &
    "event generation", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+=
  subroutine commands_8 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_8"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define process, integrate, generate events"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call global%init_fallback_model &
      (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
      var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
      var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
      var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
      .false., is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
      .false., is_known = .true.)
    call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
      1000._default, is_known=.true.)

    allocate (lib)
    call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd8"))
    call global%add_prclib (lib)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'process commands_8_p = s, s => s, s')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:1000')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (commands_8_p)')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '?unweighted = false')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'n_events = 3')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '?read_raw = false')

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, 'simulate (commands_8_p)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_8"

end subroutine commands_8

```

## Define cuts

Declare a cut expression.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_9, "commands_9", &
    "cuts", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_9 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_vars

```



```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_9"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define cuts"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'cuts = all Pt > 0 [particle]')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write (u, vars = no_vars)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_9"

end subroutine commands_9

```

## Beams

Define beam setup.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
    call test (commands_10, "commands_10", &
               "beams", &
               u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
    subroutine commands_10 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_10"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define beams"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = QCD')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'sqrts = 1000')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'beams = p, p')

        call ifile_write (ifile, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
        call command_list%write (u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call command_list%execute (global)
```

```

call global%write_beams (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_10"

end subroutine commands_10

```

## Structure functions

Define beam setup with structure functions

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_11, "commands_11", &
    "structure functions", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_11 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_11"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define beams with structure functions"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = QCD')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'sqrts = 1100')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'beams = p, p => lhpdf => pdf_builtin, isr')

    call ifile_write (ifile, u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write_beams (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_11"

end subroutine commands_11

```

## Rescan events

Read a model, then declare a process, compile the library, and generate weighted events. We take the default (`unit_test`) method and use the simplest methods of phase-space parameterization and integration. Then, rescan the generated event sample.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_12, "commands_12", &
    "event rescanning", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_12 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global

```

```

type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_12"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events and rescan"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()

call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known=.true.)

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd12"))
call global%add_prclib (lib)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'process commands_12_p = s, s => s, s')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:1000')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (commands_12_p)')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?unweighted = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'n_events = 3')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?read_raw = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'simulate (commands_12_p)')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?write_raw = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'rescan "commands_12_p" (commands_12_p)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_12"

end subroutine commands_12

```

## Event Files

Set output formats for event files.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_13, "commands_13", &
    "event output formats", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_13 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib
    logical :: exist

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_13"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: generate events and rescan"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd13"))
call global%add_prclib (lib)

write (u, "(A)")  "*  Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'process commands_13_p = s, s => s, s')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:1000')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (commands_13_p)')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?unweighted = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'n_events = 1')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?read_raw = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'sample_format = weight_stream')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'simulate (commands_13_p)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Verify output files"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file = "commands_13_p.evx", exist = exist)
if (exist) write (u, "(1x,A)") "raw"

inquire (file = "commands_13_p.weights.dat", exist = exist)
if (exist) write (u, "(1x,A)") "weight_stream"

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_13"

end subroutine commands_13

```

## Compile Empty Libraries

(This is a regression test:) Declare two empty libraries and compile them.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
call test (commands_14, "commands_14", &
  "empty libraries", &
  u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_14 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_14"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define and compile empty libraries"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

```



```

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "lib1"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "lib2"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile ()')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%prclib_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call global%final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_14"

end subroutine commands_14

```

## Compile Process

Read a model, then declare a process and compile the library. The process library is allocated explicitly. For the process definition, We take the default (`unit_test`) method. There is no external code, so compilation of the library is merely a formal status change.

```

(Commands: execute tests)+≡
  call test (commands_15, "commands_15", &

```

```

        "compilation", &
        u, results)
{Commands: tests}+≡
subroutine commands_15 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_15"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define process and compile library"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
        var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
        var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"),&
        var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
        1000._default, is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"),&
        .false., is_known=.true.)
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"),&
        .false., is_known = .true.)

    allocate (lib)
    call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd15"))
    call global%add_prclib (lib)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'process t15 = s, s => s, s')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:1000')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (t15)')

    call ifile_write (ifile, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%prclib_stack%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_15"

end subroutine commands_15

```

## Observable

Declare an observable, fill it and display.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_16, "commands_16", &
    "observables", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_16 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_16"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare an observable"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_label = "foo"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_unit = "cm"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Observable foo"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is observable foo"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'observable foo')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Record two data items"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_record_data (var_str ("foo"), 1._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("foo"), 3._default)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis store"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_16"

```

```
end subroutine commands_16
```

## Histogram

Declare a histogram, fill it and display.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
  call test (commands_17, "commands_17", &
    "histograms", &
    u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
  subroutine commands_17 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(string_t), dimension(3) :: name
    integer :: i

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_17"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare histograms"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_label = "foo"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_unit = "cm"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Histogram foo"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is histogram foo"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'histogram foo (0,5,1)')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Histogram bar"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is histogram bar"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'n_bins = 2')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'histogram bar (0,5)')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Histogram gee"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is histogram gee"')
    call ifile_append (ifile, '?normalize_bins = true')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'histogram gee (0,5)')

    call ifile_write (ifile, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
    write (u, "(A)")
```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Record two data items"
write (u, "(A)")

name(1) = "foo"
name(2) = "bar"
name(3) = "gee"

do i = 1, 3
  call analysis_record_data (name(i), 0.1_default, &
    weight = 0.25_default)
  call analysis_record_data (name(i), 3.1_default)
  call analysis_record_data (name(i), 4.1_default, &
    excess = 0.5_default)
  call analysis_record_data (name(i), 7.1_default)
end do

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis store"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_17"

end subroutine commands_17

```

## Plot

Declare a plot, fill it and display contents.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
    call test (commands_18, "commands_18", &
        "plots", &
        u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
    subroutine commands_18 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_18"
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare a plot"
        write (u, "(A)")

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        call global%global_init ()

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_label = "foo"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '$obs_unit = "cm"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Plot foo"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is plot foo"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '$x_label = "x axis"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '$y_label = "y axis"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '?x_log = false')
        call ifile_append (ifile, '?y_log = true')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'x_min = -1')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'x_max = 1')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'y_min = 0.1')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'y_max = 1000')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'plot foo')

        call ifile_write (ifile, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
```

```

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Record two data items"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_record_data (var_str ("foo"), 0._default, 20._default, &
    xerr = 0.25_default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("foo"), 0.5_default, 0.2_default, &
    yerr = 0.07_default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("foo"), 3._default, 2._default)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis store"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_18"

end subroutine commands_18

```

## Graph

Combine two (empty) plots to a graph.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
    call test (commands_19, "commands_19", &
        "graphs", &
        u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
    subroutine commands_19 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global

```



```

type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_19"
write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: combine two plots to a graph"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'plot a')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'plot b')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Graph foo"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "This is graph foo"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'graph foo = a & b')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis object"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (var_str ("foo"), u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()

```

```

call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_19"

end subroutine commands_19

```

## Record Data

Record data in previously allocated analysis objects.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_20, "commands_20", &
    "record data", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_20 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_20"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: record data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization: create observable, histogram, plot"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

    call analysis_init_observable (var_str ("o"))
    call analysis_init_histogram (var_str ("h"), 0._default, 1._default, 3, &
      normalize_bins = .false.)
    call analysis_init_plot (var_str ("p"))

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'record o (1.234)')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'record h (0.5)')
    call ifile_append (ifile, 'record p (1, 2)')

    call ifile_write (ifile, u)

    write (u, "(A)")
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
    write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis object"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u, verbose = .true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_20"

end subroutine commands_20

```

## Analysis

Declare an analysis expression and use it to fill an observable during event generation.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_21, "commands_21", &
    "analysis expression", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_21 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_21"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: create and use analysis expression"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization: create observable"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call global%global_init ()
call global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))

call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("method"), &
    var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("phs_method"), &
    var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("integration_method"), &
    var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
    .false., is_known=.true.)
call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
    .false., is_known = .true.)
call var_list_set_real (global%var_list, var_str ("sqrts"), &
    1000._default, is_known=.true.)

allocate (lib)
call lib%init (var_str ("lib_cmd8"))
call global%add_prclib (lib)

call analysis_init_observable (var_str ("m"))

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'process commands_21_p = s, s => s, s')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'iterations = 1:100')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'integrate (commands_21_p)')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?unweighted = true')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'n_events = 3')
call ifile_append (ifile, '?read_raw = false')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'observable m')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'analysis = record m (eval M [s])')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'simulate (commands_21_p)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis object"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_21"

end subroutine commands_21

```

## Write Analysis

Write accumulated analysis data to file.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_22, "commands_22", &
    "write analysis", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_22 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(80) :: buffer

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_22"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: write analysis data"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization: create observable"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

call analysis_init_observable (var_str ("m"))
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("m"), 125._default)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, '$out_file = "commands_22.dat"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'write_analysis')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis data"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "commands_22.dat", &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (iostat /= 0)  exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)

```

```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_22"

end subroutine commands_22

```

## Compile Analysis

Write accumulated analysis data to file and compile.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_23, "commands_23", &
    "compile analysis", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_23 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
    integer :: u_file, iostat
    character(256) :: buffer
    logical :: exist
    type(graph_options_t) :: graph_options

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_23"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: write and compile analysis data"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization: create and fill histogram"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call global%global_init ()

    call graph_options_init (graph_options)
    call graph_options_set (graph_options, &
      title = var_str ("Histogram for test: commands 23"), &
      description = var_str ("This is a test."), &
      width_mm = 125, height_mm = 85)
    call analysis_init_histogram (var_str ("h"), &
      0._default, 10._default, 2._default, .false., &

```

```

graph_options = graph_options)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 1._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 1._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 1._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 1._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 3._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 3._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 3._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 5._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 7._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 7._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 7._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 7._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)
call analysis_record_data (var_str ("h"), 9._default)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, '$out_file = "commands_23.dat"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'compile_analysis')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Delete Postscript output"
write (u, "(A)")

inquire (file = "commands_23.ps", exist = exist)
if (exist) then
  u_file = free_unit ()
  open (u_file, file = "commands_23.ps", action = "write", status = "old")
  close (u_file, status = "delete")
end if
inquire (file = "commands_23.ps", exist = exist)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "Postscript output exists = ", exist

```



```

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* TeX file"
write (u, "(A)")

u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "commands_23.tex", &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
  write (u, "(A)") trim (buffer)
end do
close (u_file)
write (u, *)

inquire (file = "commands_23.ps", exist = exist)
write (u, "(1x,A,L1)")  "Postscript output exists = ", exist

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_23"

end subroutine commands_23

```

## Histogram

Declare a histogram, fill it and display.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_24, "commands_24", &
            "drawing options", &
            u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_24 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list

```

```

type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_24"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: check graph and drawing options"
write (u, "(A)")

write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, '$title = "Title"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$description = "Description"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$x_label = "X Label"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$y_label = "Y Label"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'graph_width_mm = 111')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'graph_height_mm = 222')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'x_min = -11')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'x_max = 22')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'y_min = -33')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'y_max = 44')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$gmlcode_bg = "GML Code BG"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$gmlcode_fg = "GML Code FG"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$fill_options = "Fill Options"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$draw_options = "Draw Options"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$err_options = "Error Options"')
call ifile_append (ifile, '$symbol = "Symbol"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'histogram foo (0,1)')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'plot bar')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Display analysis store"
write (u, "(A)")

call analysis_write (u, verbose=.true.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call analysis_final ()
call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_24"

end subroutine commands_24

```

## Local Environment

Declare a local environment.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
call test (commands_25, "commands_25", &
    "local process environment", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_25 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_25"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare local environment for process"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_model_file_init ()
    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    call global%global_init ()
    call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?omega_openmp"), &
        .false., is_known = .true.)

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call ifile_append (ifile, 'library = "commands_25_lib"')

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'process commands_25_p1 = g, g => g, g &
    &{ model = "QCD" }')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)
call global%write_libraries (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_25"

end subroutine commands_25

```

## Alternative Setups

Declare a list of alternative setups.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
    call test (commands_26, "commands_26", &
        "alternative setups", &
        u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
    subroutine commands_26 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list

```

```

type(rt_data_t), target :: global
type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_26"
write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: declare alternative setups for simulation"
write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'int i = 0')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'alt_setup = ({ i = 1 }, { i = 2 })')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write_expr (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_26"

end subroutine commands_26

```

## Unstable Particle

Define decay processes and declare a particle as unstable. Also check the commands stable, polarized, unpolarized.

```
(Commands: execute tests)+≡
    call test (commands_27, "commands_27", &
        "unstable and polarized particles", &
        u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
    subroutine commands_27 (u)
        integer, intent(in) :: u
        type(ifile_t) :: ifile
        type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
        type(rt_data_t), target :: global
        type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
        type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_27"
        write (u, "(A)")  "*   Purpose: modify particle properties"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call global%global_init ()
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$method"), &
            var_str ("unit_test"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$phs_method"), &
            var_str ("single"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_string (global%var_list, var_str ("$integration_method"), &
            var_str ("midpoint"), is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?vis_history"), &
            .false., is_known=.true.)
        call var_list_set_log (global%var_list, var_str ("?integration_timer"), &
            .false., is_known = .true.)

        allocate (lib)
        call lib%init (var_str ("commands_27_lib"))
        call global%add_prclib (lib)

        write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
        write (u, "(A)")

        call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "Test"')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'ff = 0.4')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'process d1 = s => f, fbar')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'unstable s (d1)')
        call ifile_append (ifile, 'polarized f, fbar')

        call ifile_write (ifile, u)

        write (u, "(A)")
        write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
        write (u, "(A)")
```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Show model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (global%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extra Input"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_final (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, '?diagonal_decay = true')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'unstable s (d1)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%final ()
call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Show model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (global%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Extra Input"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_final (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, '?isotropic_decay = true')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'unstable s (d1)')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%final ()
call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Show model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (global%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Extra Input"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_final (ifile)
call ifile_append (ifile, 'stable s')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'unpolarized f')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%final ()
call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)

```



```

call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Show model"
write (u, "(A)")

call model_write (global%model, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_model_file_init ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_27"

end subroutine commands_27

```

## Quit the program

Quit the program.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_28, "commands_28", &
    "quit", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_28 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root1, pn_root2
    type(string_t), dimension(0) :: no_vars

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_28"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: quit the program"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
    write (u, "(A)")

    call syntax_cmd_list_init ()

```

```

call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file: quit without code"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'quit')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root1, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root1, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write (u, vars = no_vars)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file: quit with code"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_final (ifile)
call command_list%final ()
call ifile_append (ifile, 'quit ( 3 + 4 )')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root2, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root2, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")

```

```

write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write (u, vars = no_vars)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_28"

end subroutine commands_28

```

## SLHA interface

Testing commands steering the SLHA interface.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
call test (commands_29, "commands_29", &
  "SLHA interface", &
  u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_29 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_29"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: test SLHA interface"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
  call syntax_model_file_init ()
  call syntax_slha_init ()
  call global%global_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Model MSSM, read SLHA file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call ifile_append (ifile, 'model = "MSSM"')

```

```

call ifile_append (ifile, '?slha_read_decays = true')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'read_slha ("sps1ap_decays.slha)")')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Model MSSM, default values:"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%model%write (u, verbose = .false., &
    show_vertices = .false., show_particles = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Selected global variables"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_write_var (global%var_list, var_str ("mch1"), u)
call var_list_write_var (global%var_list, var_str ("wch1"), u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

write (u, "(A)")  "* Model MSSM, values from SLHA file"
write (u, "(A)")

call global%model%write (u, verbose = .false., &
    show_vertices = .false., show_particles = .false.)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Selected global variables"
write (u, "(A)")

call var_list_write_var (global%var_list, var_str ("mch1"), u)
call var_list_write_var (global%var_list, var_str ("wch1"), u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

```

```

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_slha_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_29"

end subroutine commands_29

```

## Expressions for scales

Declare a scale, factorization scale or factorization scale expression.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
call test (commands_30, "commands_30", &
  "scales", &
  u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_30 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_30"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define scales"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
  call global%global_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call ifile_append (ifile, 'scale = 200 GeV')
  call ifile_append (ifile, &
    'factorization_scale = eval Pt [particle]')
  call ifile_append (ifile, &
    'renormalization_scale = eval E [particle]')

  call ifile_write (ifile, u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write_expr (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_30"

end subroutine commands_30

```

## Weight and reweight expressions

Declare an expression for event weights and reweighting.

```

<Commands: execute tests>+≡
  call test (commands_31, "commands_31", &
    "event weights/reweighting", &
    u, results)

<Commands: tests>+≡
  subroutine commands_31 (u)
    integer, intent(in) :: u
    type(ifile_t) :: ifile
    type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
    type(rt_data_t), target :: global
    type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_31"
    write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define weight/reweight"
    write (u, "(A)")

    write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"

```

```

write (u, "(A)")

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call global%global_init ()

write (u, "(A)")  "*  Input file"
write (u, "(A)")

call ifile_append (ifile, 'weight = eval Pz [particle]')
call ifile_append (ifile, 'reweight = eval M2 [particle]')

call ifile_write (ifile, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Parse file"
write (u, "(A)")

call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Compile command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)

call global%write_expr (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
call syntax_model_file_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "*  Test output end: commands_31"

end subroutine commands_31

```

## Selecting events

Declare an expression for selecting events in an analysis.

*(Commands: execute tests)+≡*

```

call test (commands_32, "commands_32", &
          "event selection", &
          u, results)
<Commands: tests>+≡
subroutine commands_32 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_32"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: define selection"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
  call global%global_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call ifile_append (ifile, 'selection = any PDG == 13 [particle]')

  call ifile_write (ifile, u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
  call command_list%write (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call command_list%execute (global)

  call global%write_expr (u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

  call ifile_final (ifile)

```



```

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_32"

end subroutine commands_32

```

## Executing shell commands

Execute a shell command.

```

(Commands: execute tests)+≡
call test (commands_33, "commands_33", &
  "execute shell command", &
  u, results)

(Commands: tests)+≡
subroutine commands_33 (u)
  integer, intent(in) :: u
  type(ifile_t) :: ifile
  type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
  type(rt_data_t), target :: global
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
  integer :: u_file, iostat
  character(3) :: buffer

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output: commands_33"
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Purpose: execute shell command"
  write (u, "(A)")

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Initialization"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
  call global%global_init ()

  write (u, "(A)")  "* Input file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call ifile_append (ifile, 'exec ("echo foo >> bar")')

  call ifile_write (ifile, u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Parse file"
  write (u, "(A)")

  call parse_ifile (ifile, pn_root, u)

  write (u, "(A)")
  write (u, "(A)")  "* Compile command list"
  write (u, "(A)")

```

```

call command_list%compile (pn_root, global)
call command_list%write (u)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Execute command list"
write (u, "(A)")

call command_list%execute (global)
u_file = free_unit ()
open (u_file, file = "bar", &
      action = "read", status = "old")
do
  read (u_file, "(A)", iostat = iostat)  buffer
  if (iostat /= 0) exit
end do
write (u, "(A,A)")  "should be 'foo': ", trim (buffer)
close (u_file)

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Cleanup"

call ifile_final (ifile)

call command_list%final ()
call global%final ()
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

write (u, "(A)")
write (u, "(A)")  "* Test output end: commands_33"

end subroutine commands_33

```

## 23.3 Toplevel module WHIZARD

```

⟨whizard.f90⟩≡
  ⟨File header⟩

module whizard

  ⟨Use file utils⟩
  ⟨Use strings⟩
  use limits, only: VERSION_STRING !NODEP!
  use limits, only: EOF, BACKSLASH !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use ifiles
  use formats
  use md5
  use os_interface
  use cputime
  use lexers

```

```
use parser
use xml
use colors
use state_matrices
use analysis
use variables
use user_code_interface
use expressions
use particles
use models
use auto_components
use sorting
use evaluators
use phs_forests
use beams
use polarizations
use sm_qcd
use sf_aux
use sf_mappings
use sf_base
use sf_pdf_builtin
use sf_lhapdf
use sf_circe1
use sf_circe2
use sf_isr
use sf_epa
use sf_ewa
use sf_escan
use sf_beam_events
use sf_user
use phs_base
use phs_single
use phs_wood
use rng_base
use rng_tao
use selectors
use mci_base
use mci_midpoint
use mci_vamp
use prclib_interfaces
use particle_specifiers
use process_libraries
use prclib_stacks
use hepmc_interface
use jets
use pdg_arrays
use interactions
use slha_interface
use cascades
use blha_driver
use blha_config
use prc_test
use prc_template_me
use prc_omega
```

```

use subevt_expr
use processes
use process_stacks
use event_transforms
use decays
use shower
use events

use eio_data
use eio_base
use eio_raw
use eio_checkpoints
use eio_lhef
use eio_hepmc
use eio_stdhep
use eio_ascii
use eio_weights

use iterations
use beam_structures
use rt_data
use dispatch
use process_configurations
use compilations
use integrations
use event_streams
use simulations

use commands

<Standard module head>

<WHIZARD: public>

<WHIZARD: types>

save

contains

<WHIZARD: procedures>

end module whizard

```

### 23.3.1 Options

Here we introduce a wrapper that holds various user options, so they can transparently be passed from the main program to the `whizard` object. Most parameters are used for initializing the `global` state.

```

<WHIZARD: public>≡
    public :: whizard_options_t

<WHIZARD: types>≡
    type :: whizard_options_t

```

```

type(string_t) :: preload_model
type(string_t) :: default_lib
type(string_t) :: preload_libraries
logical :: rebuild_library = .false.
logical :: recompile_library = .false.
logical :: rebuild_user
logical :: rebuild_phs = .false.
logical :: rebuild_grids = .false.
logical :: rebuild_events = .false.
end type whizard_options_t

```

### 23.3.2 Parse tree stack

We collect all parse trees that we generate in the `whizard` object. To this end, we create a stack of parse trees. They must not be finalized before the `global` object is finalized, because items such as a cut definition may contain references to the parse tree from which they were generated.

```

<WHIZARD: types> +=
  type, extends (parse_tree_t) :: pt_entry_t
    type(pt_entry_t), pointer :: previous => null ()
  end type pt_entry_t

```

This is the stack. Since we always prepend, we just need the `last` pointer.

```

<WHIZARD: types> +=
  type :: pt_stack_t
    type(pt_entry_t), pointer :: last => null ()
    contains
      <WHIZARD: pt_stack: TBP>
    end type pt_stack_t

```

The finalizer is called at the very end.

```

<WHIZARD: pt_stack: TBP> =
  procedure :: final => pt_stack_final

<WHIZARD: procedures> =
  subroutine pt_stack_final (pt_stack)
    class(pt_stack_t), intent(inout) :: pt_stack
    type(pt_entry_t), pointer :: current
    do while (associated (pt_stack%last))
      current => pt_stack%last
      pt_stack%last => current%previous
      call parse_tree_final (current%parse_tree_t)
      deallocate (current)
    end do
  end subroutine pt_stack_final

```

Create and push a new entry, keeping the previous ones.

```

<WHIZARD: pt_stack: TBP> +=
  procedure :: push => pt_stack_push

```

```

<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
  subroutine pt_stack_push (pt_stack, parse_tree)
    class(pt_stack_t), intent(inout) :: pt_stack
    type(parse_tree_t), intent(out), pointer :: parse_tree
    type(pt_entry_t), pointer :: current
    allocate (current)
    parse_tree => current%parse_tree_t
    current%previous => pt_stack%last
    pt_stack%last => current
  end subroutine pt_stack_push

```

### 23.3.3 The whizard object

An object of type `whizard_t` is the top-level wrapper for a `WHIZARD` instance. The object holds various default settings and the current state of the generator, the `global` object of type `rt_data_t`. This object contains, for instance, the list of variables and the process libraries.

Since components of the `global` subobject are frequently used as targets, the `whizard` object should also consistently carry the `target` attribute.

The various self-tests do not use this object. They initialize only specific subsets of the system, according to their needs.

Note: we intend to allow several concurrent instances. In the current implementation, there are still a few obstacles to this: the model library and the syntax tables are global variables, and the error handling uses global state. This should be improved.

```

<WHIZARD: public>+≡
  public :: whizard_t

<WHIZARD: types>+≡
  type :: whizard_t
    type(whizard_options_t) :: options
    type(rt_data_t) :: global
    type(pt_stack_t) :: pt_stack
  contains
    <WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>
  end type whizard_t

```

### 23.3.4 Initialization and finalization

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>≡
  procedure :: init => whizard_init

<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
  subroutine whizard_init (whizard, options, paths, logfile)
    class(whizard_t), intent(out), target :: whizard
    type(whizard_options_t), intent(in) :: options
    type(paths_t), intent(in), optional :: paths
    type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: logfile
    call init_syntax_tables ()
    whizard%options = options
    call whizard%global%global_init (paths, logfile)
  end subroutine whizard_init

```

```

call whizard%init_rebuild_flags ()
call whizard%preload_model ()
call whizard%preload_library ()
call whizard%global%init_fallback_model &
    (var_str ("SM_hadrons"), var_str ("SM_hadrons.mdl"))
end subroutine whizard_init

```

Apart from the global data which have been initialized above, the process and model lists need to be finalized.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: final => whizard_final
<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
    subroutine whizard_final (whizard)
        class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
        call whizard%global%final ()
        call whizard%pt_stack%final ()
    !!! JRR: WK please check (#529)
        !    call user_code_final ()
        call final_syntax_tables ()
    end subroutine whizard_final

```

Set the rebuild flags. They can be specified on the command line and set the initial value for the associated logical variables.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: init_rebuild_flags => whizard_init_rebuild_flags
<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
    subroutine whizard_init_rebuild_flags (whizard)
        class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
        associate (var_list => whizard%global%var_list, options => whizard%options)
            call var_list_append_log &
                (var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_library"), options%rebuild_library, &
                intrinsic=.true.)
            call var_list_append_log &
                (var_list, var_str ("?recompile_library"), &
                options%recompile_library, &
                intrinsic=.true.)
            call var_list_append_log &
                (var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_phase_space"), options%rebuild_phs, &
                intrinsic=.true.)
            call var_list_append_log &
                (var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_grids"), options%rebuild_grids, &
                intrinsic=.true.)
            call var_list_append_log &
                (var_list, var_str ("?rebuild_events"), options%rebuild_events, &
                intrinsic=.true.)
        end associate
    end subroutine whizard_init_rebuild_flags

```

This procedure preloads a model, if a model name is given.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+≡
    procedure :: preload_model => whizard_preload_model

```

```

{WHIZARD: procedures}+=
subroutine whizard_preload_model (whizard)
  class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
  type(string_t) :: model_name, filename
  model_name = whizard%options%preload_model
  if (model_name /= "") then
    filename = model_name // ".mdl"
    call whizard%global%read_model (model_name, filename)
    if (associated (whizard%global%model)) then
      call msg_message ("Preloaded model: " &
        // char (model_name))
    else
      call msg_fatal ("Preloading model " // char (model_name) &
        // " failed")
    end if
  else
    call msg_message ("No model preloaded")
  end if
end subroutine whizard_preload_model

```

This procedure preloads a library, if a library name is given.

Note: This version just opens a new library with that name. It does not load (yet) an existing library on file, as previous WHIZARD versions would do.

```

{WHIZARD: whizard: TBP}+=
procedure :: preload_library => whizard_preload_library

{WHIZARD: procedures}+=
subroutine whizard_preload_library (whizard)
  class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
  type(string_t) :: library_name, libs
  type(string_t), dimension(:), allocatable :: libname_static
  type(prclib_entry_t), pointer :: lib_entry
  integer :: i
  call get_prclib_static (libname_static)
  do i = 1, size (libname_static)
    allocate (lib_entry)
    call lib_entry%init_static (libname_static(i))
    call whizard%global%add_prclib (lib_entry)
  end do
  libs = adjustl (whizard%options%preload_libraries)
  if (libs == "" .and. whizard%options%default_lib /= "") then
    allocate (lib_entry)
    call lib_entry%init (whizard%options%default_lib)
    call whizard%global%add_prclib (lib_entry)
    call msg_message ("Preloaded library: " // &
      char (whizard%options%default_lib))
  end if
SCAN_LIBS: do while (libs /= "")
  call split (libs, library_name, " ")
  if (library_name /= "") then
    allocate (lib_entry)
    call lib_entry%init (library_name)
    call whizard%global%add_prclib (lib_entry)
    call msg_message ("Preloaded library: " // char (library_name))
  end if
end do

```



```

        end if
    end do SCAN_LIBS
end subroutine whizard_preload_library

```

### 23.3.5 Initialization and finalization (old version)

These procedures initialize and finalize global variables. Most of them are collected in the `global` data record located here, the others are syntax tables located in various modules, which do not change during program execution. Furthermore, there is a global model list and a global process store, which get filled during program execution but are finalized here.

During initialization, we can preload a default model and initialize a default library for setting up processes. The default library is loaded if requested by the setup. Further libraries can be loaded as specified by command-line flags. Initialize/finalize the syntax tables used by WHIZARD:

```

<WHIZARD: public>+≡
    public :: init_syntax_tables
    public :: final_syntax_tables

<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
    subroutine init_syntax_tables ()
        call syntax_model_file_init ()
        call syntax_phs_forest_init ()
        call syntax_pexpr_init ()
        call syntax_slha_init ()
        call syntax_blha_contract_init ()
        call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
    end subroutine init_syntax_tables

    subroutine final_syntax_tables ()
        call syntax_model_file_final ()
        call syntax_phs_forest_final ()
        call syntax_pexpr_final ()
        call syntax_slha_final ()
        call syntax_blha_contract_final ()
        call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
    end subroutine final_syntax_tables

```

Write the syntax tables to external files.

```

<WHIZARD: public>+≡
    public :: write_syntax_tables

<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
    subroutine write_syntax_tables ()
        integer :: unit
        character(*), parameter :: file_model = "whizard.model_file.syntax"
        character(*), parameter :: file_phs = "whizard.phase_space_file.syntax"
        character(*), parameter :: file_pexpr = "whizard.prt_expressions.syntax"
        character(*), parameter :: file_slha = "whizard.slha.syntax"
        character(*), parameter :: file_sindarin = "whizard.sindarin.syntax"
        unit = free_unit ()
        print *, "Writing file '" // file_model // "'"
    end subroutine write_syntax_tables

```

```

open (unit=unit, file=file_model, status="replace", action="write")
write (unit, "(A)")  VERSION_STRING
write (unit, "(A)")  "Syntax definition file: " // file_model
call syntax_model_file_write (unit)
close (unit)
print *, "Writing file '" // file_phs // "'"
open (unit=unit, file=file_phs, status="replace", action="write")
write (unit, "(A)")  VERSION_STRING
write (unit, "(A)")  "Syntax definition file: " // file_phs
call syntax_phs_forest_write (unit)
close (unit)
print *, "Writing file '" // file_pexpr // "'"
open (unit=unit, file=file_pexpr, status="replace", action="write")
write (unit, "(A)")  VERSION_STRING
write (unit, "(A)")  "Syntax definition file: " // file_pexpr
call syntax_pexpr_write (unit)
close (unit)
print *, "Writing file '" // file_slha // "'"
open (unit=unit, file=file_slha, status="replace", action="write")
write (unit, "(A)")  VERSION_STRING
write (unit, "(A)")  "Syntax definition file: " // file_slha
call syntax_slha_write (unit)
close (unit)
print *, "Writing file '" // file_sindarin // "'"
open (unit=unit, file=file_sindarin, status="replace", action="write")
write (unit, "(A)")  VERSION_STRING
write (unit, "(A)")  "Syntax definition file: " // file_sindarin
call syntax_cmd_list_write (unit)
close (unit)
end subroutine write_syntax_tables

```

### 23.3.6 Execute command lists

Process commands given on the command line, stored as an ifile. The whole input is read, compiled and executed as a whole.

*<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+≡*

```

procedure :: process_ifile => whizard_process_ifile

```

*<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡*

```

subroutine whizard_process_ifile (whizard, ifile, quit, quit_code)
  class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
  type(ifile_t), intent(in) :: ifile
  logical, intent(out) :: quit
  integer, intent(out) :: quit_code
  type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  call msg_message ("Reading commands given on the command line")
  call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
  call stream_init (stream, ifile)
  call whizard%process_stream (stream, lexer, quit, quit_code)
  call stream_final (stream)
  call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine whizard_process_ifile

```

Process standard input as a command list. The whole input is read, compiled and executed as a whole.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+=
  procedure :: process_stdin => whizard_process_stdin
<WHIZARD: procedures>+=
  subroutine whizard_process_stdin (whizard, quit, quit_code)
    class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
    logical, intent(out) :: quit
    integer, intent(out) :: quit_code
    type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
    type(stream_t), target :: stream
    call msg_message ("Reading commands from standard input")
    call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
    call stream_init (stream, 5)
    call whizard%process_stream (stream, lexer, quit, quit_code)
    call stream_final (stream)
    call lexer_final (lexer)
  end subroutine whizard_process_stdin

```

Process a file as a command list.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+=
  procedure :: process_file => whizard_process_file
<WHIZARD: procedures>+=
  subroutine whizard_process_file (whizard, file, quit, quit_code)
    class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: file
    logical, intent(out) :: quit
    integer, intent(out) :: quit_code
    type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
    type(stream_t), target :: stream
    logical :: exist
    call msg_message ("Reading commands from file '" // char (file) // "'")
    inquire (file=char(file), exist=exist)
    if (exist) then
      call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
      call stream_init (stream, char (file))
      call whizard%process_stream (stream, lexer, quit, quit_code)
      call stream_final (stream)
      call lexer_final (lexer)
    else
      call msg_error ("File '" // char (file) // "' not found")
    end if
  end subroutine whizard_process_file

```

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+=
  procedure :: process_stream => whizard_process_stream
<WHIZARD: procedures>+=
  subroutine whizard_process_stream (whizard, stream, lexer, quit, quit_code)
    class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
    type(stream_t), intent(inout), target :: stream

```

```

type(lexer_t), intent(inout), target :: lexer
logical, intent(out) :: quit
integer, intent(out) :: quit_code
type(parse_tree_t), pointer :: parse_tree
type(command_list_t), target :: command_list
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call whizard%pt_stack%push (parse_tree)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_cmd_list, lexer)
if (associated (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree))) then
    whizard%global%lexer => lexer
    call command_list%compile (parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree), &
        whizard%global)
end if
call command_list%execute (whizard%global)
call command_list%final ()
quit = whizard%global%quit
quit_code = whizard%global%quit_code
end subroutine whizard_process_stream

```

### 23.3.7 The WHIZARD shell

This procedure implements interactive mode. One line is processed at a time.

```

<WHIZARD: whizard: TBP>+=
    procedure :: shell => whizard_shell

<WHIZARD: procedures>+=
    subroutine whizard_shell (whizard, quit_code)
        class(whizard_t), intent(inout), target :: whizard
        integer, intent(out) :: quit_code
        type(lexer_t), target :: lexer
        type(stream_t), target :: stream
        type(string_t) :: prompt1
        type(string_t) :: prompt2
        type(string_t) :: input
        type(string_t) :: extra
        integer :: last
        integer :: iostat
        logical :: mask_tmp
        logical :: quit
        call msg_message ("Launching interactive shell")
        call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
        prompt1 = "whish? "
        prompt2 = "      > "
        COMMAND_LOOP: do
            call put (6, prompt1)
            call get (5, input, iostat=iostat)
            if (iostat > 0 .or. iostat == EOF) exit COMMAND_LOOP
            CONTINUE_INPUT: do
                last = len_trim (input)
                if (extract (input, last, last) /= BACKSLASH) exit CONTINUE_INPUT
                call put (6, prompt2)
                call get (5, extra, iostat=iostat)
                if (iostat > 0) exit COMMAND_LOOP
            end do
        end do
    end subroutine whizard_shell

```

```

        input = replace (input, last, extra)
    end do CONTINUE_INPUT
    call stream_init (stream, input)
    mask_tmp = mask_fatal_errors
    mask_fatal_errors = .true.
    call whizard%process_stream (stream, lexer, quit, quit_code)
    msg_count = 0
    mask_fatal_errors = mask_tmp
    call stream_final (stream)
    if (quit) exit COMMAND_LOOP
end do COMMAND_LOOP
print *
call lexer_final (lexer)
end subroutine whizard_shell

```

### 23.3.8 Self-tests

This is for developers only, but needs a well-defined interface.

```

<WHIZARD: public>+≡
    public :: whizard_check

<WHIZARD: procedures>+≡
    subroutine whizard_check (check, results)
        type(string_t), intent(in) :: check
        type(test_results_t), intent(inout) :: results
        type(os_data_t) :: os_data
        integer :: u
        call os_data_init (os_data)
        u = free_unit ()
        open (u, file="whizard_check." // char (check) // ".log", &
             action="write", status="replace")
        call msg_message (repeat ('=', 76), 0)
        call msg_message ("Running self-test: " // char (check), 0)
        call msg_message (repeat ('-', 76), 0)
        select case (char (check))
        case ("analysis")
            call analysis_test (u, results)
        case ("beams")
            call beam_test (u, results)
        case ("cascades")
            call cascade_test (u, results)
        case ("colors")
            call color_test (u, results)
        case ("evaluators")
            call evaluator_test (u, results)
        case ("expressions")
            call expressions_test (u, results)
        case ("formats")
            call format_test (u, results)
        case ("hepmc")
            call hepmc_test (u, results)
        case ("jets")
            call jets_test (u, results)

```

```

case ("pdg_arrays")
    call pdg_arrays_test (u, results)
case ("interactions")
    call interaction_test (u, results)
case ("lexers")
    call lexer_test (u, results)
case ("os_interface")
    call os_interface_test (u, results)
case ("cputime")
    call cputime_test (u, results)
case ("parser")
    call parse_test (u, results)
case ("sorting")
    call sorting_test (u, results)
case ("md5")
    call md5_test (u, results)
case ("xml")
    call xml_test (u, results)
case ("sm_qcd")
    call sm_qcd_test (u, results)
case ("models")
    call models_test (u, results)
case ("auto_components")
    call auto_components_test (u, results)
case ("particles")
    call particles_test (u, results)
case ("polarizations")
    call polarization_test (u, results)
case ("sf_aux")
    call sf_aux_test (u, results)
case ("sf_mappings")
    call sf_mappings_test (u, results)
case ("sf_base")
    call sf_base_test (u, results)
case ("sf_pdf_builtin")
    call sf_pdf_builtin_test (u, results)
case ("sf_lhapdf")
    call sf_lhapdf_test (u, results)
case ("sf_isr")
    call sf_isr_test (u, results)
case ("sf_epa")
    call sf_epa_test (u, results)
case ("sf_ewa")
    call sf_ewa_test (u, results)
case ("sf_circe1")
    call sf_circe1_test (u, results)
case ("sf_circe2")
    call sf_circe2_test (u, results)
case ("sf_beam_events")
    call sf_beam_events_test (u, results)
case ("sf_escan")
    call sf_escan_test (u, results)
case ("phs_base")
    call phs_base_test (u, results)

```

```

case ("phs_single")
    call phs_single_test (u, results)
case ("phs_forests")
    call phs_forest_test (u, results)
case ("phs_wood")
    call phs_wood_test (u, results)
case ("phs_wood_vis")
    call phs_wood_vis_test (u, results)
case ("mci_base")
    call mci_base_test (u, results)
case ("rng_base")
    call rng_base_test (u, results)
case ("rng_tao")
    call rng_tao_test (u, results)
case ("selectors")
    call selectors_test (u, results)
case ("mci_midpoint")
    call mci_midpoint_test (u, results)
case ("mci_vamp")
    call mci_vamp_test (u, results)
case ("prclib_interfaces")
    call prclib_interfaces_test (u, results)
case ("particle_specifiers")
    call particle_specifiers_test (u, results)
case ("process_libraries")
    call process_libraries_test (u, results)
case ("prclib_stacks")
    call prclib_stacks_test (u, results)
case ("slha_interface")
    call slha_test (u, results)
case ("state_matrices")
    call state_matrix_test (u, results)
case ("prc_test")
    call prc_test_test (u, results)
case ("subevt_expr")
    call subevt_expr_test (u, results)
case ("processes")
    call processes_test (u, results)
case ("process_stacks")
    call process_stacks_test (u, results)
case ("event_transforms")
    call event_transforms_test (u, results)
case ("decays")
    call decays_test (u, results)
case ("shower")
    call shower_test (u, results)
case ("events")
    call events_test (u, results)
case ("prc_template_me")
    call prc_template_me_test (u, results)
case ("prc_omega")
    call prc_omega_test (u, results)
case ("prc_omega_diags")
    call prc_omega_diags_test (u, results)

```

```

case ("eio_data")
    call eio_data_test (u, results)
case ("eio_base")
    call eio_base_test (u, results)
case ("eio_raw")
    call eio_raw_test (u, results)
case ("eio_checkpoints")
    call eio_checkpoints_test (u, results)
case ("eio_lhef")
    call eio_lhef_test (u, results)
case ("eio_hePMC")
    call eio_hePMC_test (u, results)
case ("eio_stdhep")
    call eio_stdhep_test (u, results)
case ("eio_ascii")
    call eio_ascii_test (u, results)
case ("eio_weights")
    call eio_weights_test (u, results)
case ("iterations")
    call iterations_test (u, results)
case ("beam_structures")
    call beam_structures_test (u, results)
case ("rt_data")
    call rt_data_test (u, results)
case ("dispatch")
    call dispatch_test (u, results)
case ("process_configurations")
    call process_configurations_test (u, results)
case ("compilations")
    call compilations_test (u, results)
case ("compilations_static")
    call compilations_static_test (u, results)
case ("integrations")
    call integrations_test (u, results)
case ("integrations_history")
    call integrations_history_test (u, results)
case ("event_streams")
    call event_streams_test (u, results)
case ("simulations")
    call simulations_test (u, results)
case ("commands")
    call commands_test (u, results)
case ("all")
    call analysis_test (u, results)
    call beam_test (u, results)
    call md5_test (u, results)
    call lexer_test (u, results)
    call sorting_test (u, results)
    call parse_test (u, results)
    call color_test (u, results)
    call evaluator_test (u, results)
    call expressions_test (u, results)
    call format_test (u, results)
    call hePMC_test (u, results)

```



```

call jets_test (u, results)
call os_interface_test (u, results)
call cputime_test (u, results)
call interaction_test (u, results)
call xml_test (u, results)
call sm_qcd_test (u, results)
call models_test (u, results)
call auto_components_test (u, results)
call particles_test (u, results)
call polarization_test (u, results)
call sf_aux_test (u, results)
call sf_mappings_test (u, results)
call sf_base_test (u, results)
call sf_pdf_builtin_test (u, results)
call sf_lhapdf_test (u, results)
call sf_isr_test (u, results)
call sf_epa_test (u, results)
call sf_ewa_test (u, results)
call sf_circe1_test (u, results)
call sf_circe2_test (u, results)
call sf_beam_events_test (u, results)
call sf_escan_test (u, results)
call phs_base_test (u, results)
call phs_single_test (u, results)
call phs_forest_test (u, results)
call phs_wood_test (u, results)
call phs_wood_vis_test (u, results)
call rng_base_test (u, results)
call cascade_test (u, results)
call rng_tao_test (u, results)
call selectors_test (u, results)
call mci_base_test (u, results)
call mci_midpoint_test (u, results)
call mci_vamp_test (u, results)
call prclib_interfaces_test (u, results)
call particle_specifiers_test (u, results)
call process_libraries_test (u, results)
call prclib_stacks_test (u, results)
call slha_test (u, results)
call state_matrix_test (u, results)
call prc_test_test (u, results)
call subevt_expr_test (u, results)
call processes_test (u, results)
call process_stacks_test (u, results)
call event_transforms_test (u, results)
call decays_test (u, results)
call shower_test (u, results)
call events_test (u, results)
call prc_omega_test (u, results)
call prc_omega_diags_test (u, results)
call prc_template_me_test (u, results)
call eio_data_test (u, results)
call eio_base_test (u, results)
call eio_raw_test (u, results)

```

```

        call eio_checkpoints_test (u, results)
        call eio_lhef_test (u, results)
        call eio_hepmc_test (u, results)
        call eio_stdhep_test (u, results)
        call eio_ascii_test (u, results)
        call eio_weights_test (u, results)
        call iterations_test (u, results)
        call beam_structures_test (u, results)
        call rt_data_test (u, results)
        call dispatch_test (u, results)
        call process_configurations_test (u, results)
        call compilations_test (u, results)
        call compilations_static_test (u, results)
        call integrations_test (u, results)
        call integrations_history_test (u, results)
        call event_streams_test (u, results)
        call simulations_test (u, results)
        call commands_test (u, results)
    case default
        call msg_fatal ("Self-test '" // char (check) // "' not implemented.")
    end select
    close (u)
end subroutine whizard_check

```

## 23.4 Driver program

The main program handles command options, initializes the environment, and runs WHIZARD in a particular mode (interactive, file, standard input).

```

<Limits: public parameters>+≡
    integer, parameter, public :: CMDLINE_ARG_LEN = 1000

<main.f90>≡
    <File header>

    program main

    <Use strings>
        use system_dependencies !NODEP!
        use limits, only: CMDLINE_ARG_LEN !NODEP!
        use diagnostics !NODEP!
        use unit_tests
        use ifiles
        use os_interface
        use whizard

    implicit none

    ! Main program variable declarations
    character(CMDLINE_ARG_LEN) :: arg
    character(2) :: option
    type(string_t) :: long_option, value
    integer :: i, j, arg_len, arg_status

```

```

logical :: look_for_options
logical :: interactive
logical :: banner
type(string_t) :: files, this, model, default_lib, library, libraries
type(string_t) :: check, checks, logfile
type(test_results_t) :: test_results
logical :: success
logical :: user_code_enable = .false.
integer :: n_user_src = 0, n_user_lib = 0
type(string_t) :: user_src, user_lib, user_target
type(paths_t) :: paths
logical :: rebuild_library, rebuild_user
logical :: rebuild_phs, rebuild_grids, rebuild_events
logical :: recompile_library
type(ifile_t) :: commands
type(string_t) :: command

type(whizard_options_t), allocatable :: options
type(whizard_t), allocatable, target :: whizard_instance

! Exit status
logical :: quit = .false.
integer :: quit_code = 0

! Initial values
look_for_options = .true.
interactive = .false.
files = ""
model = "SM"
default_lib = "default_lib"
library = ""
libraries = ""
banner = .true.
logging = .true.
logfile = "whizard.log"
check = ""
checks = ""
user_src = ""
user_lib = ""
user_target = ""
rebuild_library = .false.
rebuild_user = .false.
rebuild_phs = .false.
rebuild_grids = .false.
rebuild_events = .false.
recompile_library = .false.
call paths_init (paths)

! Read and process options
i = 0
SCAN_CMDLINE: do
  i = i + 1
  call get_command_argument (i, arg, arg_len, arg_status)
  select case (arg_status)

```

```

case (0)
case (-1)
    call msg_error (" Command argument truncated: '" // arg // "'")
case default
    exit SCAN_CMDLINE
end select
if (look_for_options) then
    select case (arg(1:2))
    case ("--")
        value = trim (arg)
        call split (value, long_option, "=")
        select case (char (long_option))
        case ("--version")
            call no_option_value (long_option, value)
            call print_version (); stop
        case ("--help")
            call no_option_value (long_option, value)
            call print_usage (); stop
        case ("--prefix")
            paths%prefix = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--exec-prefix")
            paths%exec_prefix = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--bindir")
            paths%bindir = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--libdir")
            paths%libdir = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--includedir")
            paths%includedir = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--datarootdir")
            paths%datarootdir = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--libtool")
            paths%libtool = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--lhapdfdir")
            paths%lhapdfdir = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--check")
            check = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            checks = checks // " " // check
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--execute")
            command = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
            call ifile_append (commands, command)
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
        case ("--interactive")
            call no_option_value (long_option, value)
            interactive = .true.
            cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    end select
end if

```

```

case ("--library")
    library = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
    libraries = libraries // " " // library
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-library")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    default_lib = ""
    library = ""
    libraries = ""
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--localprefix")
    paths%localprefix = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--logfile")
    logfile = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-logfile")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    logfile = ""
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--logging")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    logging = .true.
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-logging")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    logging = .false.
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--banner")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    banner = .true.
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-banner")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    banner = .false.
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--model")
    model = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-model")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    model = ""
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--rebuild")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    rebuild_library = .true.
    rebuild_user = .true.
    rebuild_phs = .true.
    rebuild_grids = .true.
    rebuild_events = .true.
    cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
case ("--no-rebuild")
    call no_option_value (long_option, value)
    rebuild_library = .false.

```

```

        recompile_library = .false.
        rebuild_user = .false.
        rebuild_phs = .false.
        rebuild_grids = .false.
        rebuild_events = .false.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--rebuild-library")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        rebuild_library = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--rebuild-user")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        rebuild_user = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--rebuild-phase-space")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        rebuild_phs = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--rebuild-grids")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        rebuild_grids = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--rebuild-events")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        rebuild_events = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--recompile")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        recompile_library = .true.
        rebuild_grids = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--user")
        user_code_enable = .true.
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--user-src")
        if (user_src == "") then
            user_src = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
        else
            user_src = user_src // " " &
                // get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
        end if
        n_user_src = n_user_src + 1
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--user-lib")
        if (user_lib == "") then
            user_lib = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
        else
            user_lib = user_lib // " " &
                // get_option_value (i, long_option, value)
        end if
        n_user_lib = n_user_lib + 1
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--user-target")
        user_target = get_option_value (i, long_option, value)

```

```

        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("--write-syntax-tables")
        call no_option_value (long_option, value)
        call init_syntax_tables ()
        call write_syntax_tables ()
        call final_syntax_tables ()
        stop
        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case default
        call print_usage ()
        call msg_fatal ("Option '" // trim (arg) // "' not recognized")
    end select
end select
select case (arg(1:1))
case ("-")
    j = 1
    if (len_trim (arg) == 1) then
        look_for_options = .false.
    else
        SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS: do
            j = j + 1
            if (j > len_trim (arg)) exit SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS
            option = "-" // arg(j:j)
            select case (option)
            case ("-V")
                call print_version (); stop
            case ("-?", "-h")
                call print_usage (); stop
            case ("-e")
                command = get_option_value (i, var_str (option))
                call ifile_append (commands, command)
                cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
            case ("-i")
                interactive = .true.
                cycle SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS
            case ("-l")
                if (j == len_trim (arg)) then
                    library = get_option_value (i, var_str (option))
                else
                    library = trim (arg(j+1:))
                end if
                libraries = libraries // " " // library
                cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
            case ("-L")
                if (j == len_trim (arg)) then
                    logfile = get_option_value (i, var_str (option))
                else
                    logfile = trim (arg(j+1:))
                end if
                cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
            case ("-m")
                if (j < len_trim (arg)) call msg_fatal &
                    ("Option '" // option // "' needs a value")
                model = get_option_value (i, var_str (option))
            end select
        end do
    end case
end select

```

```

        cycle SCAN_CMDLINE
    case ("-r")
        rebuild_library = .true.
        rebuild_user = .true.
        rebuild_phs = .true.
        rebuild_grids = .true.
        rebuild_events = .true.
        cycle SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS
    case ("-u")
        user_code_enable = .true.
        cycle SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS
    case default
        call print_usage ()
        call msg_fatal &
            ("Option '" // option // "' not recognized")
    end select
end do SCAN_SHORT_OPTIONS
end if
case default
    files = files // " " // trim (arg)
end select
else
    files = files // " " // trim (arg)
end if
end do SCAN_CMDLINE

! Overall initialization
if (logfile /= "") call logfile_init (logfile)
if (banner) call msg_banner ()

! Run any self-checks (and no commands)
if (checks /= "") then
    checks = trim (adjustl (checks))
    RUN_CHECKS: do while (checks /= "")
        call split (checks, check, " ")
        call whizard_check (check, test_results)
    end do RUN_CHECKS
    call test_results%wrapup (6, success)
    if (.not. success) quit_code = 7
    quit = .true.
end if

! Set options and initialize the whizard object
allocate (options)
options%preload_model = model
options%default_lib = default_lib
options%preload_libraries = libraries
options%rebuild_library = rebuild_library
options%recompile_library = recompile_library
options%rebuild_user = rebuild_user
options%rebuild_phs = rebuild_phs
options%rebuild_grids = rebuild_grids
options%rebuild_events = rebuild_events

```



```

allocate (whizard_instance)
call whizard_instance%init (options, paths, logfile)

call mask_term_signals ()

! Run commands given on the command line
if (.not. quit .and. ifile_get_length (commands) > 0) then
    call whizard_instance%process_ifile (commands, quit, quit_code)
end if

if (.not. quit) then
    ! Process commands from standard input
    if (.not. interactive .and. files == "") then
        call whizard_instance%process_stdin (quit, quit_code)

        ! ... or process commands from file
    else
        files = trim (adjustl (files))
        SCAN_FILES: do while (files /= "")
            call split (files, this, " ")
            call whizard_instance%process_file (this, quit, quit_code)
            if (quit) exit SCAN_FILES
        end do SCAN_FILES
    end if
end if

! Enter an interactive shell if requested
if (.not. quit .and. interactive) then
    call whizard_instance%shell (quit_code)
end if

! Overall finalization
call ifile_final (commands)

deallocate (options)

call whizard_instance%final ()
deallocate (whizard_instance)

call terminate_now_if_signal ()
call release_term_signals ()
call msg_terminate (quit_code = quit_code)

!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
contains

subroutine no_option_value (option, value)
    type(string_t), intent(in) :: option, value
    if (value /= "") then
        call msg_error (" Option '" // char (option) // "' should have no value")
    end if
end subroutine no_option_value

```

```

function get_option_value (i, option, value) result (string)
  type(string_t) :: string
  integer, intent(inout) :: i
  type(string_t), intent(in) :: option
  type(string_t), intent(in), optional :: value
  character(CMDLINE_ARG_LEN) :: arg
  character(CMDLINE_ARG_LEN) :: arg_value
  integer :: arg_len, arg_status
  logical :: has_value
  if (present (value)) then
    has_value = value /= ""
  else
    has_value = .false.
  end if
  if (has_value) then
    string = value
  else
    i = i + 1
    call get_command_argument (i, arg_value, arg_len, arg_status)
    select case (arg_status)
    case (0)
    case (-1)
      call msg_error (" Option value truncated: '" // arg // "'")
    case default
      call print_usage ()
      call msg_fatal (" Option '" // char (option) // "' needs a value")
    end select
    select case (arg(1:1))
    case ("-")
      call print_usage ()
      call msg_fatal (" Option '" // char (option) // "' needs a value")
    end select
    string = trim (arg_value)
  end if
end function get_option_value

subroutine print_version ()
  print "(A)", "WHIZARD " // WHIZARD_VERSION
  print "(A)", "Copyright (C) 1999-2014 Wolfgang Kilian, Thorsten Ohl, Juergen Reuter"
  print "(A)", "-----"
  print "(A)", "This is free software; see the source for copying conditions. There is NO"
  print "(A)", "warranty; not even for MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE."
  print *
end subroutine print_version

subroutine print_usage ()
  print "(A)", "WHIZARD " // WHIZARD_VERSION
  print "(A)", "Usage: whizard [OPTIONS] [FILE]"
  print "(A)", "Run WHIZARD with the command list taken from FILE(s)"
  print "(A)", "Options for resetting default directories and tools" &
    // "(GNU naming conventions):"
  print "(A)", "  --prefix DIR"
  print "(A)", "  --exec_prefix DIR"
  print "(A)", "  --bindir DIR"

```

```

print "(A)", "    --libdir DIR"
print "(A)", "    --includedir DIR"
print "(A)", "    --datarootdir DIR"
print "(A)", "    --libtool LOCAL_LIBTOOL"
print "(A)", "    --lhapdfdir DIR    (PDF sets directory)"
print "(A)", "Other options:"
print "(A)", "-h, --help            display this help and exit"
print "(A)", "    --banner            display banner at startup (default)"
print "(A)", "-e, --execute CMDS        execute SINDARIN CMDS before reading FILE(s)"
print "(A)", "-i, --interactive        run interactively after reading FILE(s)"
print "(A)", "-l, --library            preload process library NAME"
print "(A)", "    --localprefix DIR"
print "(A)", "    search in DIR for local models (default: ~/.whizard)"
print "(A)", "-L, --logfile FILE        write log to FILE (default: 'whizard.log')"
print "(A)", "    --logging            switch on logging at startup (default)"
print "(A)", "-m, --model NAME          preload model NAME (default: 'SM')"
print "(A)", "    --no-banner          do not display banner at startup"
print "(A)", "    --no-library          do not preload process library"
print "(A)", "    --no-logfile          do not write a logfile"
print "(A)", "    --no-logging          switch off logging at startup"
print "(A)", "    --no-model            do not preload a model"
print "(A)", "    --no-rebuild          do not force rebuilding"
print "(A)", "-r, --rebuild            rebuild all (see below)"
print "(A)", "    --rebuild-library"
print "(A)", "        rebuild process code library"
print "(A)", "    --rebuild-user        rebuild user-provided code"
print "(A)", "    --rebuild-phase-space"
print "(A)", "        rebuild phase-space configuration"
print "(A)", "    --rebuild-grids        rebuild integration grids"
print "(A)", "    --rebuild-events        rebuild event samples"
print "(A)", "    --recompile            recompile process code"
print "(A)", "-u --user                enable user-provided code"
print "(A)", "    --user-src FILE        user-provided source file"
print "(A)", "    --user-lib FILE        user-provided library file"
print "(A)", "    --user-target BN        basename of created user library (default: user)"
print "(A)", "-V, --version            output version information and exit"
print "(A)", "    --write-syntax-tables"
print "(A)", "        write the internal syntax tables to files and exit"
print "(A)", "-                further options are taken as filenames"
print *
print "(A)", "With no FILE, read standard input."
end subroutine print_usage

end program main

```

## 23.5 Whizard-C-Interface

`<whizard-c-interface.f90>`≡  
*<File header>*

*<Whizard-C-Interface: Internals>*  
*<Whizard-C-Interface: Init and Finalize>*  
*<Whizard-C-Interface: Interfaced Commads>*

*⟨Whizard-C-Interface: HepMC⟩*

*⟨Whizard-C-Interface: Internals⟩*≡

```

subroutine c_whizard_convert_string (c_string, f_string)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  character(kind=c_char), intent(in) :: c_string(*)
  type(string_t), intent(inout) :: f_string
  character(len=1) :: dummy_char
  integer :: dummy_i = 1

  f_string = ""
  do
    if (c_string(dummy_i) == c_null_char) then
      exit
    else if (c_string(dummy_i) == c_new_line) then
      dummy_char = CHAR(13)
      f_string = f_string // dummy_char
      dummy_char = CHAR(10)
    else
      dummy_char = c_string (dummy_i)
    end if
    f_string = f_string // dummy_char
    dummy_i = dummy_i + 1
  end do
  dummy_i = 1
end subroutine c_whizard_convert_string

subroutine c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, cmds)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!
  use commands
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use lexers
  use models
  use parser
  use whizard

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  type(whizard_t), pointer :: whizard_instance
  type(string_t) :: cmds
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer
  type(command_list_t), target :: cmd_list

  call c_f_pointer (w_c_instance, whizard_instance)
  call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)
  call syntax_cmd_list_init ()

```

```

call stream_init (stream, cmds)
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_cmd_list, lexer)
pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

if (associated (pn_root)) then
  call cmd_list%compile (pn_root, whizard_instance%global)
end if
call cmd_list%execute (whizard_instance%global)
call cmd_list%final ()

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
call lexer_final (lexer)
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()
end subroutine c_whizard_commands

```

*(Whizard-C-Interface: Init and Finalize)*≡

```

subroutine c_whizard_init (w_c_instance) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!
  use system_dependencies !NODEP!
  use limits, only: CMDLINE_ARG_LEN !NODEP!
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use unit_tests
  use ifiles
  use os_interface
  use whizard

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(out) :: w_c_instance
  character(CMDLINE_ARG_LEN) :: arg
  character(2) :: option
  type(string_t) :: long_option, value
  integer :: i, j, arg_len, arg_status
  logical :: look_for_options
  logical :: interactive
  logical :: banner
  type(string_t) :: files, this, model, default_lib, library, libraries
  type(string_t) :: check, checks, logfile
  type(test_results_t) :: test_results
  logical :: success
  logical :: user_code_enable = .false.
  integer :: n_user_src = 0, n_user_lib = 0
  type(string_t) :: user_src, user_lib
  type(paths_t) :: paths
  logical :: rebuild_library, rebuild_user
  logical :: rebuild_phs, rebuild_grids, rebuild_events
  logical :: recompile_library
  type(ifile_t) :: commands
  type(string_t) :: command

  type(whizard_options_t), allocatable :: options

```

```

type(whizard_t), pointer :: whizard_instance

! Exit status
logical :: quit = .false.
integer :: quit_code = 0

! Initial values
look_for_options = .true.
interactive = .false.
files = ""
model = "SM"
default_lib = "default_lib"
library = ""
libraries = ""
banner = .true.
logging = .true.
logfile = "whizard.log"
check = ""
checks = ""
user_src = ""
user_lib = ""
rebuild_library = .false.
recompile_library = .false.
rebuild_user = .false.
rebuild_phs = .false.
rebuild_grids = .false.
rebuild_events = .false.
call paths_init (paths)

! Overall initialization
if (logfile /= "") call logfile_init (logfile)
call mask_term_signals ()
if (banner) call msg_banner ()

! Set options and initialize the whizard object
allocate (options)
options%preload_model = model
options%default_lib = default_lib
options%preload_libraries = libraries
options%rebuild_library = rebuild_library
options%rebuild_user = rebuild_user
options%rebuild_phs = rebuild_phs
options%rebuild_grids = rebuild_grids
options%rebuild_events = rebuild_events

allocate (whizard_instance)
call whizard_instance%init (options, paths)

if (checks /= "") then
  checks = trim (adjustl (checks))
  RUN_CHECKS: do while (checks /= "")
    call split (checks, check, " ")
    call whizard_check (check, test_results)
  end do RUN_CHECKS

```

```

        call test_results%wrapup (6, success)
        if (.not. success) quit_code = 7
        quit = .true.
    end if

    w_c_instance = c_loc (whizard_instance)

end subroutine c_whizard_init

subroutine c_whizard_finalize (w_c_instance) bind(C)
    use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
    use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!
    use system_dependencies !NODEP!
    use limits, only: CMDLINE_ARG_LEN !NODEP!
    use diagnostics !NODEP!
    use ifiles
    use os_interface
    use whizard

    type(c_ptr), intent(in) :: w_c_instance
    type(whizard_t), pointer :: whizard_instance
    logical :: quit = .false.
    integer :: quit_code = 0

    call c_f_pointer (w_c_instance, whizard_instance)
    call whizard_instance%final ()
    deallocate (whizard_instance)
    call terminate_now_if_signal ()
    call release_term_signals ()
    call msg_terminate (quit_code = quit_code)
end subroutine c_whizard_finalize

subroutine c_whizard_process_string (w_c_instance, c_cmds_in) bind(C)
    use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
    use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

    implicit none

    type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
    character(kind=c_char) :: c_cmds_in(*)
    type(string_t) :: f_cmds

    call c_whizard_convert_string (c_cmds_in, f_cmds)
    call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, f_cmds)
end subroutine c_whizard_process_string

{ Whizard-C-Interface: Interfaced Commads }≡
subroutine c_whizard_model (w_c_instance, c_model) bind(C)
    use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
    use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

    implicit none

    type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance

```

```

character(kind=c_char) :: c_model(*)
type(string_t) :: model, mdl_str

call c_whizard_convert_string (c_model, model)
mdl_str = "model = " // model
call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, mdl_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_model

subroutine c_whizard_library (w_c_instance, c_library) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_library(*)
  type(string_t) :: library, lib_str

  call c_whizard_convert_string(c_library, library)
  lib_str = "library = " // library
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, lib_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_library

subroutine c_whizard_process (w_c_instance, c_id, c_in, c_out) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_id(*), c_in(*), c_out(*)
  type(string_t) :: proc_str, id, in, out

  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_id, id)
  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_in, in)
  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_out, out)
  proc_str = "process " // id // " = " // in // " => " // out
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, proc_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_process

subroutine c_whizard_compile (w_c_instance) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  type(string_t) :: cmp_str
  cmp_str = "compile"
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, cmp_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_compile

subroutine c_whizard_beams (w_c_instance, c_specs) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

```



```

implicit none

type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
character(kind=c_char) :: c_specs(*)
type(string_t) :: specs, beam_str

call c_whizard_convert_string (c_specs, specs)
beam_str = "beams = " // specs
call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, beam_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_beams

subroutine c_whizard_integrate (w_c_instance, c_process) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_process(*)
  type(string_t) :: process, int_str

  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_process, process)
  int_str = "integrate (" // process //" )"
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, int_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_integrate

subroutine c_whizard_matrix_element_test &
  (w_c_instance, c_process, n_calls) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  integer(kind=c_int) :: n_calls
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_process(*)
  type(string_t) :: process, me_str
  character(len=8) :: buffer

  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_process, process)
  write (buffer, "(I0)") n_calls
  me_str = "integrate (" // process // ") { ?phs_only = true" // &
    " n_calls_test = " // trim (buffer)
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, me_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_matrix_element_test

subroutine c_whizard_simulate (w_c_instance, c_id) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_id(*)

```

```

type(string_t) :: sim_str, id

call c_whizard_convert_string(c_id, id)
sim_str = "simulate (" // id // ")"
call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, sim_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_simulate

subroutine c_whizard_sqrts (w_c_instance, c_value, c_unit) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  character(kind=c_char) :: c_unit(*)
  integer(kind=c_int) :: c_value
  integer :: f_value
  character(len=8) :: f_val
  type(string_t) :: val, unit, sqrts_str

  f_value = c_value
  write (f_val,'(i8)') f_value
  val = f_val
  call c_whizard_convert_string (c_unit, unit)
  sqrts_str = "sqrts =" // val // unit
  call c_whizard_commands (w_c_instance, sqrts_str)
end subroutine c_whizard_sqrts

```

*{ Whizard-C-Interface: HepMC } ≡*

```

type(c_ptr) function c_whizard_hepmc_test &
  (w_c_instance, c_id, c_proc_id, c_event_id) bind(C)
  use, intrinsic :: iso_c_binding
  use iso_varying_string, string_t => varying_string !NODEP!
  use commands
  use diagnostics !NODEP!
  use events
  use hepmc_interface
  use lexers
  use models
  use parser
  use processes
  use rt_data
  use simulations
  use whizard
  use os_interface

  implicit none

  type(c_ptr), intent(inout) :: w_c_instance
  type(string_t) :: sim_str
  type(parse_tree_t) :: parse_tree
  type(parse_node_t), pointer :: pn_root
  type(stream_t), target :: stream
  type(lexer_t) :: lexer

```

```

type(command_list_t), pointer :: cmd_list
type(whizard_t), pointer :: whizard_instance

integer :: i_evt
type(simulation_t), target :: sim

character(kind=c_char), intent(in) :: c_id(*)
type(string_t) :: id
integer(kind=c_int), value :: c_proc_id, c_event_id
integer :: proc_id, event_id

type(hepmc_event_t), pointer :: hepmc_event

type(process_t), pointer :: process
integer :: proc

integer :: factorization_mode, try

call c_f_pointer (w_c_instance, whizard_instance)

call c_whizard_convert_string (c_id, id)
sim_str = "simulate (" // id // ")"

proc_id = c_proc_id
event_id = c_event_id

allocate (hepmc_event)
call hepmc_event_init (hepmc_event, c_proc_id, c_event_id)

call syntax_cmd_list_init ()
call lexer_init_cmd_list (lexer)

call stream_init (stream, sim_str)
call lexer_assign_stream (lexer, stream)
call parse_tree_init (parse_tree, syntax_cmd_list, lexer)
pn_root => parse_tree_get_root_ptr (parse_tree)

allocate (cmd_list)
if (associated (pn_root)) then
    call cmd_list%compile (pn_root, whizard_instance%global)
end if

call sim%init ([id], .true., .true., whizard_instance%global)

!!! This should generate a HepMC event as hepmc_event_t type
call msg_message ("Not enabled for the moment.")

call sim%final ()

call cmd_list%final ()

call parse_tree_final (parse_tree)
call stream_final (stream)
call lexer_final (lexer)

```

```
call syntax_cmd_list_final ()

c_whizard_hepmc_test = c_loc(hepmc_event)
return
end function c_whizard_hepmc_test
```

## Chapter 24

# Cross References

**24.1**   Identifiers

**24.2**   Chunks